



January 1.
1664.

WILL. MORICE.

Whitehall, Jan. 26. 1664.

Let this BOOK be Printed.

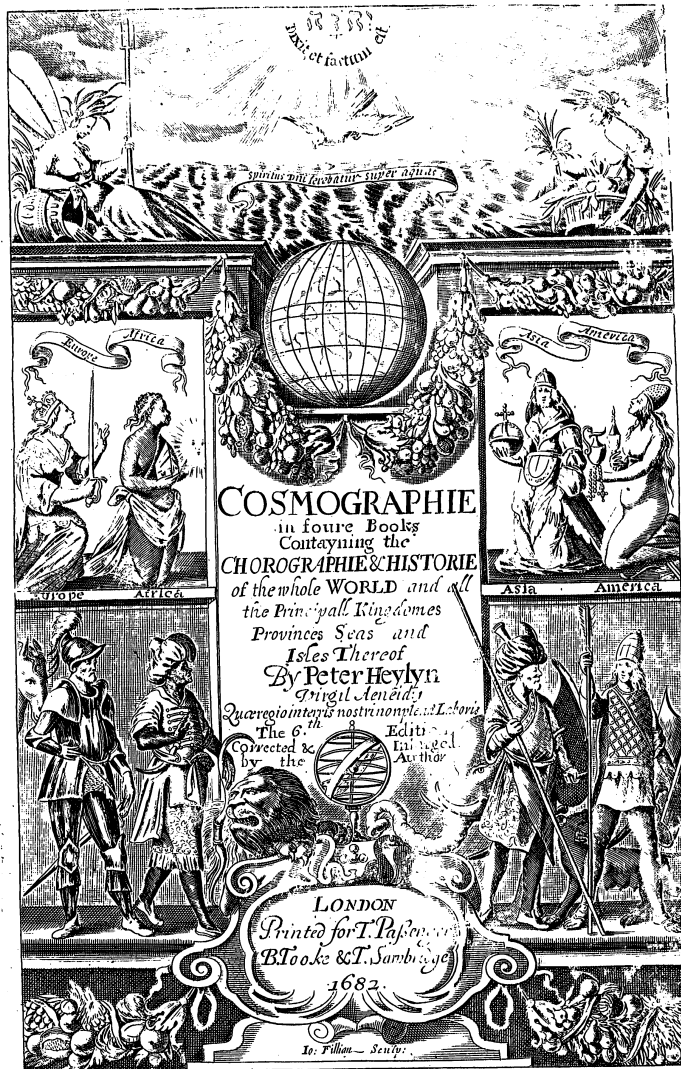
HEN. BENNET.

An Advertisement to the Reader concerning this large and exact Table, much wanted and desired in the First and Second, and now annexed to the Third and Fourth Impression of this Book.

How well it is observed, *That Humane Industry cannot begin and finish any thing at one and the same time*, this famous Book may be an instance; whole *first Edition* was but the *Monogram*, and *rude draughts*, to a more exact *Composure*; the *second* adding much *Matter* and *Method* to the *first*; and the *third* and *fourth* adding *Matter*, *Method*, and a most exact and full *Table* of both, to the *second*; containing all the *Provinces*, *Kingdoms*, *States*, *Principalities*, *Continents*, *Isles*, *Promontories*, *Isthmus's*, *Seas*, *Rivers*, *Havens*, *Mart-Towns*, *Cities*, *Strong-holds*, with their *Longitudes*, *Latitudes*, *Situations*, *Plantations*, *Inhabitants*, *Ancient* and *Modern Names*; and the *Book* and *Page* where they are satisfactorily discoursed of.

A Table (that notwithstanding every Methodical Book, such as this is, is its own Index : Every great Memory, like that of *Cæfar*, carrieth a Table of all Books in his Brain ; and every hopeful Student makes his own Table to all Claffical Authors) that carrieth with it its own Commendation. 1. To those that have not time to read Books, but Indexes. 2. To those that have not patience to go through the whole *Body*, and yet curiosity to observe the Remarkable parts of Geography. 3. To those that would recollect what they have forgotten of their reading. 4. To those that upon any emergent occasion, would see the Situation, Rivers, Havens, Strong-holds, Garrisons, Longitudes, Latitudes, Commodities, Products, Curiosities, Inhabitants, Genius, Condition, and History of any place in the World. 5. To those that read any Ancient or Modern Histories, or other Authors, and would be satisfied in the *Scene* of the Actions they read of, and the situation of the places there mentioned. 6. To those that aiming at exactness this way, would compare all the Ancient and Modern Geographers. And 7. To all the Perusers of this Book that complained of the intolerable defects of former Tables and Indexes ; of which number the Learned Compiler of this Table, who drew it up for his own satisfaction, and published it for the Publick, is one who witheth others as much benefit in the easie way of Perusing it, as he had in the more toilsom way of Collecting it.

The Matter added to this Impression, is much; and all under the Author's own hand, not long before he died; putting to it (as he said truly to his Friend that was with him in the perusal of it) his *last hand*.



COSMOGRAPHY
IN
FOUR BOOKS.
CONTAINING THE
Chorography and History
OF THE WHOLE
WORLD.
AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and the Isles thereof.

By PETER HETLYN.

With an Accurate and an Approved INDEX of all the Kingdoms, Provinces, Countries, Inhabitants, People, Cities, Mountains, Rivers, Seas, Islands, Ports, Bays, Capes, Forests, &c. of any Remarque in the whole World: Much wanted and desired in the former, and now annexed to this last Impression, Revised and Corrected by the Author himself immediately before his death.

Acts 17. 24, 26.

Deus qui fecit mundum & omnia que in eo sunt ; --- fecit ex uno omne genus hominum, inhabitare super universam faciem terræ, definiens tempora & terminos habitationis eorum.

Plin. in Procem. l. 7.

MUNDUS, & in eo Terra, Gentes, Maria, Insule, insignes Urbes, ad hunc modum se habent.

L O N D O N,

Printed for P. C. T. Passenger at the Three Bibles on London-bridge, B. Tooke at the Ship in St. Paul's Church-yard, and T. Sawbridge at the Three Flower de Luces in Little-Britain, MDCLXXXII.

943105

TO THE READER.

The AUTHOR rendreth this Account of his Undertaking and
Performance in the following Work

IT is a great complaint with many, That they want time, either to undertake great matters, or to accomplish those they have undertaken: Whereas it is more truly affirmed by *Seneca*, that we do not so much want, as waste it: *Non parum temporis habemus, sed multum perdimus*, as that Author hath it. We trifle out too much of our precious time, as he well observeth, *Aut male agendo, aut nihil agendo, aut aliud agendo*; either in doing ill, or nothing, or else things impertinent: and then cry out, that we want things convenient to perform those duties which are expected from us in our several places. Nor have we only time enough to spend, but some time to spare; some privacies and retreats from business; some breathing fits from the affairs of our *Vocations*: and even of them (those times of leisure and recess) we are to render an account, in *Cato's* judgment: *Optimè reddendum rationem judicabat Cato*, as was read in *Tully*. In which account, as all men generally are concerned, so am I interred therein as much as any. For being, by the unhappiness of my Destiny, or the infelicity of the Times, deprived of my Preferments, and divested of my Ministerial Function, (as to the ordinary and publick exercise thereof) I cannot chuse but say, I have leisure enough; the opportunity of spending more idle hours (if I were so minded) than I ever expected or desired. And though, perhaps, I could have spent those times of leisure which the change of my affairs hath given me, with greater benefit to my self, and more to the advantage of my private fortunes: yet that of *Cato* did so over-balance me, that I was willing to do somewhat which might witness to ensuing times, how I had passed away those hours, and employed that leisure. And when I was considering of some particulars within the compass of my power, and answerable to that small stock of Books which I had recruited, (mine own being taken from me, and disposed of, contrary unto publick Order) I was requested by some Friends, of no common quality, to review my *Geography*; to make it more compleat and useful to an *English Reader*: my vacancy from business, used by them as an Argument to induce me to it. A motion looked on, when first made, with neglect enough;

my desuetude from those younger Studies, my great want of Books, the sad complexion of the times, and the unhandsome entertainment which my Endeavors for the Publick had lately met with, seeming sufficient to dissuade me from the Undertaking. Little encouragement, God wot, to write Books for others, when I could not be permitted to enjoy my own; or to employ my self in order to a *Publick Service*, when not alone my private Fortunes, but the publick Patrimony of the Church, was destroyed and dissipated. But afterwards, being pressed unto it by some Members of Parliament, whom I found loth to be denied, and by some others of great Rank, but such different *Interests*, that I wondered how they could all center upon the same *Proposal*: I thought it, at the last, a more *Christian duty*, to satisfy the honest desires of so many men, than to sacrifice any longer to my own privacy and retiredness, to which I had intended to devote my self. So I resolved to venture on it, though well I saw that my condition in so doing might be resembled unto that of the *Israelites* in the Land of *Egypt*; of whom the *Task-masters* did expect the full tale of *Bricks*, and yet denied them their accustomed allowance of *Straw* and *Stubble*. My case, in this, not much unlike unto that of the Duke of *Alva*; Who being under the displeasure of the King of *Spain*, in quality of a Prisoner, without the least assurance of recovering the King's favour, or his own liberty; and yet employed, in that Conjunction, for the conquest of *Portugal*, was wont to say, *That he was sent to Conquer Kingdoms with his Fetters on*.

And here I cannot but remember a pretty accident which befel me in the Month of *January*, *An. 1640*. at what time it had been my ill fortune to suffer under some misapprehensions which had been entertain'd against me, and to be before the Committee for the Courts of Justice, on the complaint of *Mr. Prymme*, then newly return'd from his confinement, and in great credit with the Vulgar. Heard by them, confessed, I was, with a great deal of ingenious patience; but most despitigfully reviled and persecuted with excessive both noise and violence, by such as thronged about the doors of that Committee, to expect the issue: it being as natural to many weak and inconsiderate men,

To the Reader.

as it is to Dogs, to bark at those they do not know, and to accompany each other in those kinds of clamors. And though I had the happiness to come off clear, without any censure; and to recover by degrees, amongst knowing men, that estimation which before had been much endangered: yet such as took up matters upon trust and hear-say, look upon me as a Person forfeited and marked out for ruin. Amongst others, I was then encountered, in my passage from *Westminster* to *White-hall*, by a tall big Gentleman, who thrusting me rudely from the Wall, and looking over his shoulder on me in a scornful manner said, in a hoarse voice these words, *Geography is better than Divinity*; and so passed along. Whether his meaning were, That I was a better *Geographer* than *Divine*; or that *Geography* had been a Study of more credit and advantage to me in the eyes of men, than *Divinity* was like to prove, I am not able to determine. But sure I am, I have since thought very often of it; and that the thought thereof had its influence on me, in drawing me to look back on those younger Studies, in which I was resolved to have dealt no more: and thereto in the Preface to my *Microcosm*, had obliged my self.

And it is possible enough, that, in respect of that general promise, I may lie under the censure of inconstancy, and breach of *Covenant*, in that I had solemnly declared in the aforesaid Preface, that the Reader, should not fear any further enlargements, which might make him repent his (then) present Markets; that it had received my last hand; and that from thenceforth I would look upon it as a *Stranger* only. But it was meant with all, and expressed accordingly, unless it were for the amending of such Errors, of which, by the strength of mine own judgment, or any ingenious information, I should be convinced. And Errors, I must needs say, I have found so many on this last perusal, and those not only verbal, but material too, as did not only free me from that *Obligation*, but did oblige me to a further Review thereof. For being written in an Age, on which the pride of youth, and self-opinion, might have some predominances; I thought it freer from mistakes, than I since have found it. And those mistakes, by running through eight Editions (six of them without my perusal or supervising) so increased and multiplied, that I could no longer call it mine, or look upon it with any tolerable degree of patience. So that, in case the importunity of friends had not informed me, in a manner, upon this employment, the necessity of consulting my own fame, and leaving the Work fair behind me, to succeeding times, would have perfwaded me, in the end, to do somewhat in it. Which, though the last, was not the least of those inducements which inclined me to the undertaking of this present Work.

Having thus plainly and ingenuously laid down the reasons which did induce, though not

encourage me unto this performance; it is now fit I should declare what I have done in it, and what the Reader may expect from so great Enlargements. And first, the Reader is to know, that my design originally, was only to look over the former Book, to give it a *Review*, to purge it of the Errors which it had contracted; and not so much to make a new Book, as correct the old. But when I had more seriously considered of it, I found sufficient reason to change that purpose, to make it new both in Form and Matter; and to present it to the World with all those advantages which a new Book might carry with it. The greater pains I took about it, the greater I conceived would be the benefit, which might from thence redound to those who should please to read it. And I would willingly so far comply with all expectations, that the short Taper of my life should give light to others, in the consuming of it self. *Non nobis solum nati sumus*, may well become a *Christian's* mouth, though an *Heathen* speak it. But if all expectations be not satisfied in the compleatness of the Work, (as I fear they will not) I desire it may not be ascribed unto any neglect or fault of mine, but to the wants and difficulties which I was to struggle with. Books I had few to help my self with, of mine own; nor live I near so rich a *Clergy*, (most of the Benefices of these parts being poor and mean) as to supply my self from them with such Commodities. The greatest helps I had, was from *Oxford Library*; which, though but nine or ten miles off from my present dwelling; yet the charge and trouble of the Journey, with the loss of time, made my visits to that place less frequent; and consequently, the Neighbour-hood thereof less useful to me, than the generality of the Design might well comport with. So that when all things are considered as they ought to be, it rather may be wondered at, by an equal Reader, how I could come to write so much, with so little helps, upon a Subject of such a large and diffused variety; than that in any part thereof, I have writ too little. And to say truth, the Work so prospered in my hand, and swelled so much above my thought and expectation, that I hope I may, with modesty enough, use those words of *Jacob*, *Voluntas Dei fuit ut cito occurreret mihi quod volebam*; The Lord God brought it to me, as the *English* reads it.

In the pursuance of this Work, as I have taken on my self the parts of an *Historian* and *Geographer*; so have I not forgotten that I am an *English man*; and, which is somewhat more, a *Church-man*. As an *English man*, I have been mindful, upon all occasions, to commit to memory the noble Actions of my Country, exploited both by Sea and Land, in most parts of the World; and represented on the same Theaters upon which they were acted. And herein have followed the example of the great *Annalist*, *Baronius*;

To the Reader.

who pretending, in that great and laborious Work, a sincere History of the Church, and no more than so; yet tells the Pope, in his Epistle, that he principally did intend the same, *pro Sacrorum Traditionum Antiquitate, & Autoritate Romana Ecclesie*; to manifest therein the Antiquity of such Traditions, and for defence of that Authority and Power, which at this day are taught and exercised in the Church of *Rome*. And so much I may also say of my self in this performance, though without any by design to abuse the Reader, That though the *History* and *Chorography* of the World, be my principal business; yet I have apprehended every modest occasion of Recording the Heroick Acts of my Native Soil, and signing on the Registers of perpetual Fame, the Gallantry and brave Atchievements of the People of *England*; Exemplified in their many Victories and signal Services in *Italy*, *France*, *Spain*, *Scotland*, *Belgium*; in *Palestine*, *Cyprus*, *Africa* and *America*, and indeed, where not? Nor have I pretermitted their great zeal and piety, in converting to the Faith so many of the *German* and *Northern Nations*; *Franciscans*, *Thuringians*, *Hassians*, *Saxons*, *Danes*, *Frisons*; as also, amongst the *Scots* and *Picts*; together with those of *Lithuania*, and the people of *Norway*; by that means more enlarging Christ's Kingdom, than they did their own. And as I have been zealous to Record the Actions, so have I been as careful to assert the Rights of the *English* Nation: inherent personally in their Kings, by way of publick interest in the Subject also; as the whole Body doth partake of that sense and motion which is originally in the Head. And of this kind I reckon the true stating of the Title of the Kings of *England* to the Crown of *France*, demonstrating the Vassalage of the Kingdom of *Scotland* to the Crown of *England*; vouching the legal Interest of the *English* Nation, in right of the first Discovery of *Primer Seizure*, to *Esotland*, *Terra Cartivalis*, *New-found-Land*, *Nonnem Belgium*, *Guiana*, the Countries near the Cape of good Hope, several of the *Indian* Islands, and some other places, against all Pretenders: insinuating the precedency of the *English Kings*, before those of *Spain*; their Sovereignty and Dominion in the *British* Ocean: with the great benefit which might from thence arise unto us, invaded and almost ingrooved by the *Hanse* and *Hollanders*. And yet there is another thing which speaks me more an *English-man*, than all these together; which I shall fall on soon enough, and indeed too soon, the sacredness of the subject being well considered.

Next, as a *Church-man*, I have taken more especial notice of the ancient and present face of *Christianity*, in all parts of the World; the planting and Government of Churches, the *Heterodoxies* and opinions of those several Sects in-

to which it doth now stand dismembred. By which it will appear most clearly, amongst other things, that the Doctrine and Government of the Church, were of equal standing; that this Government was no other than that of *Bishops*; and that wheresoever *Christianity* did find any admittance, *Episcopacy* was admitted also as a part thereof: the Gospel being in most places first Preached by *Bishops*, or growing to esteem and strength under their Authority. And it is found on these Researches, that as *Episcopacy* was coeval with the Church it self, so the Subordination of *Bishops* to their several *Primates*, and the Co-ordination of those *Primates* among themselves in the common Government thereof, was of such antiquity (as being settled and confirmed in *St. Cyprian's* time, who flourished in the year 250.) that it is hard to trace the beginnings of it. *Debere Episcopos in commune Ecclesiam regere*, is a noted *Maxim*, in *St. Hieron*; but practically true in the *Communicatoria*, and *Formate*, of the Elder Ages: Which happy course, had it been preserved, *Episcopacy* had been so far from being made a *Stirrup* for Antichrist to mount into his Throne, as the *Smectymmans* fallily charge it; that it had served rather as a *Martingal* to have kept him down from lifting up his head too high above the rest of his Brethren. And that this course was not preserved, came not intentionally, from the Popes, (for that by Antichrist they mean the Popes of *Rome*, is a thing past question) but from the Inundations of the barbarous Nations: though I confess the Popes were apt enough to make the best advantage of those various Accidents, which the distresses of the Church did present unto them. For by the overflowing of the barbarous Nations, *Christianity* was either quite extinguished, or the Authority of the *Primates* trodden under foot; or that intelligence and commerce which had been antiently amongst them, interdicted on good reasons of State, by such *Heathen* or *Mahometan* Princes, under whom they lived. And then, how easie was it for the Pope, in the new planting of the Gospel in these Western parts, (done either by his Ministers, or by his encouragement) to give unto the *Bishops*, of his own appointing, such a limited Power, as might make them more and more obnoxious unto his Commands, and afterwards to lessen their Authority, as he saw occasion, by granting large Exemptions to Monasteries, Convents, and Cathedrals; with Jurisdiction over the *Parochial* Churches which belonged unto them? So that it is most evident in the course of Story, that the Popes never came unto their height, nor could obtrude their Superstitions and Novations on the Church of *CHRIST*, till they had weakened, by degrees, the *Episcopal* Power. Followed, in that design, though

To the Reader.

though on different ends, by *Wicliff*, and some others in the Ages since; who have driven on their private projects under the colour and pretence of a *Reformation*. *Episcopacy*, as it was Coequal with the Church of *CHRIST*, so was it the best and strongest Buttreſs in that Sacred Building. The weakening or ſubverting of which Primitive Order, did either proſtitute the Church to the Luſt and Tyranny of that proud Uſurper, or expoſe the Patrimony thereof unto ſpoil and Rapine; or finally, ſubject it to the *Anarchy* and licentiousneſs of *Heterodoxies*, and confuted Opinions. But I fear I have digreſſed too far in this ſpeculation.

As a *Geographer*, I have been punctual and exact in giving unto every Province its peculiar bounds, in laying out their ſeveral Land-marks, tracing the courſe of moſt of the principal Rivers, and ſetting forth the ſituation and eſtate of the chiefſt Towns, and did once think of beautifying the Work with as many Maps as the ſeveral States and Kingdoms which are here deſcribed. But upon further conſideration, how much it would encreaſe the Book both in bulk and price, and conſequently make it of leſs public uſe than I did intend it; I laid by thoſe thoughts, and reſted ſatisfied with the adding of four Maps for the four parts of the World: by which the reader may diſcern how each Country lies unto the other, though he find not each particular Province, and much leſs all the Towns and Cities which are here expreſſed: and on the other ſide, may meet with many Towns of inferior note, which are here omitted. And herein I have took ſome pains in ſearching out the firſt Inhabitants of each ſeveral Country, as far as I could ſee by the light of Letters, or go by probable Conjectures, in finding out the place of ſuch ancient Cities as are now decayed, not eaſily viſible in their Ruins; and adding to ſuch Cities as are now in being (if of any Antiquity) their Original Names. A thing as neceſſary to the underſtanding of the Hiſtories of thoſe Elder times, as the knowledge of the preſent Names is to the more delightful reading of our Modern Stories. And though I have not pretermitted any Town of note, fit to be ſpecified and inſisted on in a Work of this nature; yet would I not have the Reader look for ſuch a punctual enumeration and deſcription of them, as he may meet withal in thoſe who have written the *Chography* of ſome Country only; or think himſelf unſatisfied in his expectation, if he find not here the ſituation and affairs of each Town of War, or the Quartering-place of every Company or Troop of Soldiers, which are preſented to him in the Weekly News-books. In all Countries there are many places which either by the advantage of their ſituation, or ſome preſent exigency of affairs, are fortified and made Towns of War; or otherwiſe remarkable for ſome ſignal Battel, in theſe late

battles and commotions of the Chriſtian World; of which no notice hath been taken in former times, and conſequently not within the compaſs of this Diſcourſe: and yet perhaps may grow as famous and conſiderable in the times to come, as many of the mightier Cities now decayed and ruined. He that ſhall think the Work imperfect (though I confeſs it, to be nothing but imperfections) for ſome deficiencies in this kind, may be likened to the Country-fellow in *Ariſtophanes*, (if my memory fail not) who picked a great quarrel with the Map, becauſe he could not find where his own Farm ſtood. And ſuch a Country Customer I did meet with once, a Servant of my Elder Brother's, ſent by him with ſome Horſes to *Oxon*; to bring me and a Friend of mine unto his Houſe. Who having loſt his way, as we paſſed through the Forreſt of *Whitchwood*, and not able to recover any beaten Track, did very earnestly intreat me to lead the way, till I had brought him paſt the Woods to the open Fields. Which when I had reſuſed to do, as I had good reaſon; alledging, that I never had been there before, and therefore that I could not tell which way to lead him: *That's ſtrange*, ſaid he, *I have heard my Old Maſter, your Father ſay, That you made a Book of all the Worlds, and cannot you find your way out of the Wood?* Which being ſpoken out of an honeſt ſimplicity, not out of any pretence to wit, or the leaſt thought of putting a blunt jeſt upon me, occaſioned a great deal of Merriment for a long time after; but I hope to meet with no ſuch Readers. The greatneſs of the Bulk, and conſequently of the Price, makes me ſomewhat confident, that none but men of Judgment and Underſtanding will peruſe theſe Papers: and ſuch as they, will look for no more particulars, than the nature of a general Diſcourſe will ſtilly bear. Perfection and Exactneſs is to be expected in each kind of Science, as is obſerved by *Ariſtotele* in his Second Book of his *Ethicks*, *ἡ δὲ θεωρία ἀπὸ τοῦ ἀκριβοῦς ἐκτελεῖται*: as far forth as the condition of the Argument may be capable of it. And ſo much if I have attained unto, it is all which can with reaſon be expected from me. To look for more, were as improper and abſurd, (in the words of *Ariſtotele*) as for an *Arith* to expect Tropes of Rhetorick from a Mathematician, or Demonſtrations from an Orator.

Laſtly, as an Hiſtorian, I have traced the affairs of each ſeveral Country, from the firſt Inhabitants thereof, (ſuch as the *Latins* call *Aborigines*, and the *Greeks* *Ἀνατολῆς*) till theſe latter times. Which that I might be ſure to do on a good Foundation, I have took more than common care, to ſettle all the firſt Adventurers (after the proud attempt at *Babel*) in their right Plantations; and that too in the way of an *Introduction*, that I might the better know where I was to find them, and to go on with their Affairs

with

To the Reader.

with the leſs diſturbance. The reſt of their Occurrences, I have ſummed into ſo ſhort an *Abſtraſt*, as may be uſeful to the Learned, in the way of a *Remembrancer*; to the leſs knowing man in the way of a Tutor: Brevity, in this kind, I have much endeavoured; but ſo as to avoid all obſcurity alſo. Nor have I only kept my ſelf to the Story of Kingdoms, or the greater *Signeuries*, Eſtates or Nations, which are or have been of the greateſt conſideration in the ſway of the World: But looked on the Eſtates of ſuch Dukes, Earls, and inferior Princes, as in their times have had the Government of thoſe parts which gave Title to them; whoſe Actions and Succeſſions are diſtinctly ſpecified, and all ſuch Alterations noted, as have hapned either in the ruine of ſuch Eſtates, or the Tranſlating of them from one Houſe to another. The Catalogues and Succeſſions of which Royal and Illuſtrious Families, I have drawn down unto the year 1648. towards the expiring of which year, I began to ſet my ſelf upon this Employment. And there I fix, as on the top of ſome dreadful *Precipice*, which one can neither venture down without danger, nor look down without horror. Some things there are of ſuch a nature, that either to ſpeak of them, or to hold our peace, is a like unſafe. In ſuch a caſe it is beſt to keep at a diſtance. For though truth be the beſt Miſtreſs which a man can ſerve, (*Magis amica veritas*, ſaid the great Philoſopher) yet it is well obſerved withal, that if a man follow her too cloſe at the heels, ſhe may chance to kick out his Teeth for his labour.

In this regard, as alſo out of that compaſſionate affection which a true *Engliſh-man* ought to bear his Native Country, although in my approaches towards theſe preſent times, I have took notice, in ſome other places, of ſuch Battels, Sieges, and Succeſſes in the Chances of War, as have hapned in theſe later dayes: I have forborn to take the leaſt notice of thoſe Tragedies of Blood and Death which have been lately acted on the Stage of *England*. I cannot but with grief confeſs, that I might find variety of this kind enough, in the late Wars amongst our ſelves: in which there have been more pitched-Fields, more ſtrong places taken, more notable Traverſes of State, and exploits of War, than all the World can parallel in an equal time. But I have too much *Engliſh* Bowels to pleaſe my ſelf in the recital, or too look back on thoſe unfortunate adventures, which I ſhould rather chuſe to cover with the *Aſh of Oblivion*, or bury in the Grave of perpetual ſilence. How gladly I could have Recorded theſe Exploits of War, had they been exerciſed on a Subject more proper for them, my willingneſs to take notice, upon all occaſions, of the Actions and Atchievements of the *Engliſh* Nation, will bear witneſs for me. But the employing of that Valour againſt our ſelves, as if not to be Conquered, but by one

another, ſtrikes ſuch horror in me, that I cannot think thereof, without much affrightment; nor intimate thus much of it, without great reluctance. I fear it may be ſaid too truly of our late embroilments, as the Hiſtorian of the Civil Wars betwixt *Cæſar* and *Pompey*, *Cauſa hujus Belli eadem quæ omnium gentium felicitas*; that they were principally occaſioned by a ſurfeit of too much felicity. But if we were grown weary of our own proſperities; and that Prayer and paſſage in the publick Liturgy (*Give Peace in our time, O Lord*) did not reſiſt with us: How happy had it been if we had found ſome other Field to have tried our Valour in? And made ſome Foreign Country that *Aeldama*, which ſo fatally was made at home? The diſhonour which we ſuffered in the Ille of *Rhee*, when beat thence ingloriouſly by the *French*, the forcible and long detention of the *Palatinate*, by the Power of the *Spaniards*, the barbarous Butchery at *Ambonyas*, and the beating up of the *Spaniſh* Fleet within the protection of our Caſtles, by thoſe of *Holland*; the Inſolencies of the *Scots*; and the Rebellions of the *Iriſh*, might well have ſtirred fome indignation in an *Engliſh* Breaſt. And had we fought upon thoſe ſcores, or on none but them, our Victories had deſerved the honour of a ſolemn *Triumph*, denied by the old *Roman* Laws to a Civil War: But our infelicity (as it ſeems) was like that of *Rome*, in following thoſe unnatural Wars with ſuch animosities; when the unreverged death of *Craſſus*, the blood of ſo many thouſand of their ſlaughtered Citizens, and the ſhameful loſs of ſo many of the *Roman* Enſigns, ſhould rather have invited them to the Conqueſt of the *Parthian* Empire. Of which, thus feelingly the Poet:

*Cumque ſuperba foret Babylon ſpolianda
Trophæis,
Bella geri placuit, millos habitura Trium-
phos,*

(conſtrain'd)

And when proud *Babylon* ſhould have been
To give us back our Enſigns lately gain'd:
We rather choſe ſuch Quarrels to purſue,
For which no *Triumph* could be juſtly due.

But ſuch is the condition and viciffitude of humane affairs, that there is nothing permanent, and much leſs of certainty. The greateſt Monarchies of the World, the *Babylonian*, *Perſian*, *Grecian*, *Roman*, have all had their periods, nothing remaining of them now, but the name and memory. And what is now become of thoſe mighty Cities of the Eaſt, *Ninive*, *Babylon*, *Ecbatana*, *Suſa*, with the reſt mentioned in the Scriptures, and in *Clafſical* Authors? Are not their very Ruines now become inviſible? Where are the puſſant Families of the *Achæmenides* of *Perſia*, the *Seleucide* of *Syria*, the *Pharaohs* and *Ptolemies* of *Egypt*, the *Cæſars* of *Italy*, the *Merovignians* and *Carolo-vignians* of the Realm of *France*, and the *Plantagenets*

To the Reader.

genets of England? Are they not all extinct and gone, not to be found but by the benefit of Story, and some ancient Monuments? And if it be so, as it is, with the greatest Monarchies, the most mighty Cities of the World, we must not think that smaller Kingdoms and Estates can either be so evenly balanced, or so surely founded, as not to be obnoxious also to the same vicissitudes. And being that saying of *Optatus* is most undoubtedly true, *Ecclesia est in Republica*, that the Church is but a part of the Commonwealth, we must not hope to find it in a better posture than the Civil State in which it is, and under the protection whereof it subsists and flourisheth. The Church must needs miscarry in the ruine of the Civil State; and may miscarry, many times, although the Civil State receive no such alterations. Compared, for this reason, to the Moon, by the ancient Fathers who had observed her in her Prime, in her Encraces, and her Full; and finally, had not only seen her in the *Wane* also, but sometimes too under some horrible *Eclipses*. Which various condition of the *Militant Church*, the Scriptures and succeeding Stories have set forth so fully, that there need no better nor no clearer demonstrations of it. The Ark of God taken by the *Philistines*, the Temple destroyed by the *Chaldeans*, and profaned by the *Syrians*, the Apoclyst of Ten Tribes at once from the Law of their God, and the extermination of the other two in a short time after, abundantly declare the frail condition and estate of the *Jewish Church*. And find we not the same for the *Christian* also, in the removing of the *Candlestick* from the *Asian Churches*; and making them, together with those of *Greece* and *Egypt*, and all the flourishing Churches in the East and South, to languish and decay remedilessly under the merciless encroachments of the *Turks* and *Saracens*? He must be more than blind that sees not, more savage than those merciless men, that grieves not at their sad condition: but a dead Member, at the most, of *Christ's* Mystical Body, who feels not in himself the suffering of those wretched *Christians*.

If now we look into the causes of that desolation which hath hapned in the Civil State of those mighty Empires; to what can we impute it, but their crying sins? the pride of the *Babylonians*, the Effeminacy of the *Persians*, the Luxury of the *Greeks*; and such an aggregation of Vices amongst the *Romans* (or Western *Christians*) before the breaking in of the barbarous Nations, that they were grown a scandal unto *Christianity*. In nobis patitur Christus opprobrium, in nobis patitur lex Christiana maledictum, as the devout *Savian* then complained. Thus also in reference to the Church, did not the Idolaters of the Ten Tribes hasten in the *Affrians*? The shedding of the Blood of so many Prophets by the other two, as much accelerate the coming in of the *Chaldeans* first, and the *Romans* afterwards? Do

we not find the *Arianism* of the Eastern Churches to usher in the inundation of the *Saracens*; the *Donatism* of the South, to have set open a wide Door to let in the *Vandals*? Did not the *Saxons* follow on the heels of *Pelagianism*, as soon almost as entertained amongst the *Britains*? If so, as most undoubtedly it was in the dayes of old, why should we think but that the Superstitions and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, the Sacrilege and Faction of the Churches of the Reformation shall at the last receive the like Retribution? Or that the Divine Justice is so fast a sleep, that our sins must cry as loud as the Priests of *Baal* did under their god, before it be awakened by us? Assuredly, we are no less sinners than any of those on whom the Tower of the Divine vengeance hath so heavily fallen; whose blood the *Pilates* of all Ages have mingled with their solemn and Religious Sacrifices; and therefore have no cause to hope, but that unless we do repent, we shall likewise perish.

The serious consideration of all these particulars, hath made those alterations both in Church and State, which have hapned here amongst our selves, the less strange unto me. For is there any of these things, whereof it may be said, *Ecce hoc est novum, Behold this is new?* *Ecc. i. 10.* Have they not been already in the times before us? Do we not find it positively affirmed by the wisest man that ever was, *That which hath been, is now; and that which is to be, hath already been; Nihil enim novum est sub sole*, for there is no new thing under the Sun, *Ecc. i. 15 and i. 11.* And though I cannot tell what effect the reading of this following Book may produce in others, yet I can warrantably say thus much of myself. That the observation of the fall of so many great and puissant Empires, the extirpation of so many mighty and Renowned Families, the desolation of so many flourishing *Christian Churches*, as the compassing of this Book did present me with, (though formerly no Strangers to me in the course of my Studies) did more conduce to the full humbling of my Soul under the mighty hand of God, than either the sense of my own Misfortunes, or any other moral consideration which had come before me. And I could wish, the Reader may receive so much benefit by it, (besides the profit and delight which Books of this nature carry with them) that the Mighty man may learn hereby, not to glory in his greatness, Strength, nor the Wise to glory in his Wisdom, or in the cunning carrying on of his great Designs. Let the great Leaders of these times in the Art of War, consider the sad ends of *Joab*, the General of *David's* Forces; and of *Belialinus*, the Commander of *Justinian's* Armies: whereof the one was slain ingloriously at the Horns of the *Altar*, after all his Services; the other forced to beg his bread at the Gates of the Temple. Let the great Masters

To the Reader.

sters of Wit, and State-craft, have before their eyes the unsuccessful ends of *Achitophel*, the Oracle of the times he lived in; and of *Cesar Borgia*, proposed by *Machiavel*, for the Pattern of a Politick Prince: of which, the one laid violent hands upon himself, because his Counsel was not followed; the other, after the defeatment of his Projects, and a long Imprisonment to boot, forced to fly his Country, and slain obscurely in an Ambush. Let all men lay unto their hearts the Ebbs and Floods, those alterations and vicissitudes, to which all Humane Power is subject; the slippery Foundations of that Might and Greatness which is not laid upon the Principles of Justice, and regulated by the *Maxims* of Christian Piety; and, that even those which have Dominion over others, have a God too, above themselves, to whom they are to render an accompt of all their Actions. Nor such a God as that of *Lewis* the Eleventh of *France*; of whom it is reported, that he wore a Leaden Medal in his Bonnet, in the form of a *Crucifix*; which, when he had caused any man to be killed, whom he feared or hated, he would take into his hands and kiss it, desiring it to pardon him that one Murder more, and it should be the last which he would commit. Such mockeries as these may be well put on a *Leadens-god*; but the God of Heaven and Earth, will not be so mocked: who being totus oculus, and totum lumen, as the Father calleth him, can easily discern our intents and purposes, notwithstanding those disguises which are put upon them; and see the nakedness of sin in its ugliest shape, though appraised with the *Fig-leaves* of the best pretences, which the self-deceiving wit of man can patch up together. God is the same God now, as in former times, *Primus ad extremum semitis fuit*, Yesterday, and to day, and the same for ever; and will not

put up those affronts which the Impieties of men do afflict him with: though in regard of his great patience, and long-suffering, they may flatter their poor Souls, and say, *Iush, God doth not see it.*

Lastly, I am to tell the Reader, that I have now no other Patron than himself, to whom to dedicate this Work, and from whom to receive protection and encouragement in it. The time was when I might have said with *Seneca*, *Unus mihi erat pro Populo*, that one man was to me instead of all men: the Powers of all the People, being virtually united in him. But now, as the case stands, I must be fain to invert those words, *Populus mihi est pro uno*; the body of the Nation is to me, in this respect as the Head before. Unto them therefore I present it, and that not improperly: A General survey of all the World, the Government, Affairs, and Successes of it, requiring a more general Patron than particular Tractates. But because all the People in the Body Collective have not Abilities to read, and much less to judge; and that many of those who can do both, may neither have the list nor leisure to peruse these Papers: I look on the Nobility, Clergy, Gentry, as their Representatives in this kind; to whose favourable and ingenuous acceptance I submit the same. Which if I can attain unto, it is all I aim at. And it will be no small comfort to me in the midst of so many sorrows as are round about me, that I have been useful to the publick, or added any thing by my Studies unto the Honour and Content of the *English Nation*: whose peace and happiness is heartily commended to Almighty God, by

The Author of these following Papers,

PETER HEYLIN.

To

To my BROTHER the AUTHOR.

THY first preft-Grapes did yield approved Wine,
Such as did praise it felf; yet to endear
Our Approbation, thou doft here refine
Thofe former Fruits; and, for our better Cheer,
Prefent'ft us with a pure and stronger Vine:
Left, elfe, fome curious tafte might is diftaste,
If fo, What needs my Second Bulb? 'Tis Waste.

Yet well thy choice Minerva merits this,
Thir Ivy Garland, everlafting Green;
Which, like thy Mufes Cup, proportion'd is,
Whereout thou drink'ft, wherein their Liquors been.
Nor wouldest thou fcape the Laffs of Nemefis,
If, with Diogenes, thou shouldst refuse
To let the thirfty drink there-hence. 'Twere News.

Thy Book's an Ark, which all the World contains;
And well may bear a fhort Encomion.
'Tis fender Meed; yet who fuch Pay difdains?
Good Wine may have a Bulb, though it need none.
Nor let thefe Lines of mine feem partial strains.
Thy Work ingenious is, and Vertue's Brood,
Like it, increafeth with due praife. 'Tis Good.

Thus, that the Earth, fo young, thou compaft haft,
Is Rare, True, Much, Good, News, and my Bulb Wafte.

Edw. Heylin. J. C.
è Soc. Int. Temp.

Much Pains it coft, much Coft, and Labour more;
Fames's breath is dear, 'tis hard to purchafe Praise;
The Mufes Seat afcends an Hundred fcore:
And Honour's Journey lies not in plain ways.
Who to Parnaffus high-crown'd top will fore,
Mift with elaborate Quill climb up; and fuch
Thy tender Genius boogies thee. 'Tis Much!

Too much indeed it were, but that in part,
The Guerdon of well-doing, is the doing,
Fame and Reward, but wait upon thine Art;
Which yet deferves that in this Forward going,
Thy Fortune may even balance thy Defect.
But Fortune's buff, and fills the Wages due
To Worth, unto her Favourites. 'Tis True.

The Earth thy Ground-plot is, Geography'd;
Kings, fometimes, are thy Subject, peopled it.
Thy Story, History hath beautify'd,
Pen'd by the vigour of an Home-bred Wit;
Whofe Art hath travell'd all the World befide,
And can of every Country well declare
Th' Occurrents, Nature, Site, and Bounds. 'Tis Rare.



A GENERAL INTRODUCTION To the following WORK.

Containing the Creation of the World by Almighty God, and the Plantation of the fame by the Sons of Men; the necessary use of History and Geography, as well for understanding the Affairs of the Ages past, as for converse and correspondence with the Nations present; together with a brief extract of some General Præcognita which necessarily are required unto the Knowledge of each.



WITH great both Piety and Prudence did the Apostles in their Summary of the Christian Faith, join our Belief in God the Father Almighty, with that clause or Article of making or Creating the Heaven and Earth. For as the name of Father doth imply a making (Is not he thy Father which hath made thee? faith the Prophet *Mica. 3.2.6.*) so Who but an Almighty Father could by his meer Word, without any pre-existent Matter, create that goodly Edifice of Heaven and Earth, which we behold with so much wonder and applause? A work so full of wonder to the ancient Gentiles, that some of them made the World a God. *Vu illum* (i. e. *Deum*) *mundum vocare? non falleris*; as it is in *Seneca*: others more rationally conceiving God to be the Soul of the World, as giving animation or beginning to it. And though they erred, as well in making the World a God, as God to be the Soul of the World, yet might they very well have said as one since hath done, That the World is nothing else but God unfolded and manifested in the Creature. *Nil aliud mundus universus, quam Deus explicatur, as Cyprian* a late Cardinal hath it. For certainly the special motives which did induce God unto this great work, were a desire and purpose to manifest his Power, to exercise his Providence, and declare his Goodness. Not that God needed to have made the World in regard of Himself; for the World we know was made in the beginning of Time, but God is Infinite and Eternal before all Times: but that it seemed good to Him to Create it last, as a thing most conducive to his praise and glory; the Heavens declaring the glory of God, and the Earth showing his handy-work, faith the Royal Psalmist. Some measuring the God of Heaven by their own affections, and finding nothing so agreeable to their own dispositions as to be in company, conceive that God being at last weary of his own Solitude, did create the World, that he might have the company of the Angels in Heaven, and make a start into the Earth (when he saw occasion) to recreate himself with the Sons of Men. *Que beata esse solitudo que n?* What happiness (said *Hor-*

tenfius) can there be in Solitude? To which *Lactantius Lib. 1. Cap. 7.* not being furnished with a better doth return this Answer: That God cannot be said to be alone *habes enim Ministros quos vocamus Nuncios*, as having the society of the Angels. But then *Lactantius* must suppose that the Angels were co-eternal with God himself, which were to make all Gods, and so God at all; or else his Answer is no Answer, as to that Objection. How much more opolitely might he have thus replied unto *Horatius*. That the Supream contentment possible to Almighty God is by reflecting on Himself, and in Himself contemplating in his own infinite glories: which being co-eternal with Himself, even from all Eternity, he needed no more company before the World was made, than he hath done since. *Lactantius* being himself a man of a very great reading (though indeed a better Humanist than Divine) could not but know these sweet delights which a man habited in Learning takes in Contemplation, and the good society he hath of his own dear thoughts, when he is most retired from the sight of men. And if the wife Gentle could esteem so lolly; *Nunquam minus solus quam cum salus esset*, that he was never less alone than when he was by himself, what need can any rational man suppose in Almighty God, of having more company than Himself, to delight himself in? If this suffice not for an Answer to that needless Question, *What God did before he made the World*, let him take that of *Augustine* on the like occasion: who being troubled with the like curious and impertinent Caption, is said to have returned this Answer: *Fabricasse inferos cunctos*, which he made Hell for all such troublesome and idle Questioners. Which resolution of that Father is by *Salmasius*, a late Dutch Poet, moulded into this handsome Epigram.
Dum Christum Libyæ Patre Augustinus in iris
Afferit, & pergit natus in ede sum;
Dum miranda refert populo primordia mundi
Esse docuit verbo cuncta creata Dei;
Impius assurgit, verbisq; procacibus, Affer,
Ergo Opusce verum quid faciebat? ait;
Ait, Quibus intentus fallaces tempora curis,
Mundus adhuc nondum cum fabricatus erat?

*Presul ad hæc Libycus, Fabricavit tartara, dixit,
Eli quos fecerunt italia mente juvat.*

Which may be Enghlish in these words :

When Reverend *Auslin* did in *Africk* Preach,
And in Gods House the ruder People teach,
As he the Worlds Creation prov'd and taught
That God made all things by his Word, of nought :
A fawcy Swain upstarting needs would know,
How God before that did his time bestow :
And what to spend his thoughts upon, he had,
When neither Heaven, nor Earth, nor Seas were made :
To which the Father partly thus ; He then
Made *Hell* for thee, and such audacious men.

But not to spend more time in answering so vain a
caption, suffice it us to know, that it pleased God at last
when it seemed best unto his infinite and eternal wisdom,
to create the World, and all things visible and invisible
in the same contained. A time it had, in which it first
began to be, which before was not. This *Moses* calls
Principium a beginning simply. In the beginning, God cre-
ated the heaven and the Earth, in the first words of the Book
of *Genesis* : which is all one as if he had said, the Heaven
and Earth had a beginning ; or that this unformed *Mafs*
or *Chaos* which he entituled there by the name of *Heaven*
and *Earth*, was the beginning or first draught of those fe-
veral things which after were created in their proper
times ; that is to say, the first in order of time, because
made before them, not in order of causality, as the causes
of them. *Calum & terra, in principio.* (i. e.) *ante omnia
fæsta sunt,* saith *Simon Pottius* in his *Scholies* on St. *John's*
Gospel. So that whether we do expound those words,
that the Heaven and Earth had a beginning ; or that
Moses by these words did mean, that out of that Matter
which he calls *Heaven and Earth*, as out of the beginning,
or first matter, all things were created, it comes all to
one ; because it is thereby acknowledged that the first
Matter was created by Almighty God, and therefore of
necessity to have a beginning. And to this truth we have
not only the Authority and consent of Scripture, but of
the greatest part of the old *Philosophers* ; guided thereto
by this impossibility in nature, that any visible work,
whether it be natural or artificial, should either give it
self a being, or have that being which it hath from no
cause precedent. For from that Principle *Tully* argueth
very rightly in his most excellent Book *De natura Deo-
rum*, that as a man coming into a goodly house, in which
he found nothing but Rats and Mice, could not conceive
that either the House had built it self, or had no other
maker but those Rats and Mice which were nested in its
loft neither can it be imagined, that either this World
should be eternal, or a self-existence ; or was composed
by any natural Agent of what sort soever. And this is
that which is more briefly and expressly said by the Apo-
stle, *viz.* *That every house is built by some man, but he that
built all things is God.* Heb. 3. 4. It is true, that *Aristotle*
being a very great enquirer into the works of Nature,
conceiv'd the World to be eternal ; and yet not always
consistent unto that opinion. But then it is as true withall
that there was something else that inclin'd him to it,
than a mere admiration of the works of Nature. *Democri-
tus* and some others had been of opinion, that the
World was made ; the accidental union or conjunction of
those several parcels, of which the Universe consisted ;
and that man himself was but *voluntaria elementorum con-
cretio*, a voluntary mixture of all the Elements, as *Minnu-
tius* had observed out of their Writings. To which ab-
surd opinion (as it was no better) though it found a gene-

ral imbracement amongst many of the old *Philosophers*,
when *Aristotle* knew not how to submit his most exquisite
judgment ; and yet was destitute of such further light,
as might more fully have instructed him in its true Ori-
ginal : he rather chose to grant, the World to be eternal,
than to be made of such ridiculous, and unsound, though
eternal *Atomis*. *Et maluit hanc pulchram mundi faciem ab
eterno esse, quam aliquando ex æternis deformitate emersisse.*
Valerius in his Book *de Sacra Philosophia* pleads the
case in his behalf ; and I thank him for it : who am (I
must confess) a great Friend of *Aristotle's*, whom some ac-
count for the *Præceptor* of our Saviour *Christi in rebus na-
turalibus*, as *John the Baptist* was in *divinis*.

Nor doth the Scripture and the light of Reason tell us
only this, that the whole World had a beginning ; but,
by the help of Scripture, and the works of some Learn-
ed men, we are able to point out the time when it did
begin ; or to compute how many years it is precisely
from the first beginning, without any notable difference
in the calculation. For though it be most truly said,
Cito in inter Horologios quam Chronologios ; that *Clepsy* may
fitter be agreed than *Chronologers*, yet most *Chronologers*
in this point come so near one another, that the difference
is scarce observable. From the beginning of the World
to the Birth of *Christi*, in the account of *Berosus*, 'are
3928 years, 3945 in the computation of the *Genevians*,
3960 in the esteem of *Luther*, and 3963 in the calcu-
lation of *Melanchthon* : between whom and *Berosus* (be-
ing the least and the greatest) there is but 35 years diffe-
rence, which in so long a course of time can be no great
matter. Now if unto the Calculation made by *Berosus*,
which I conceive to be the truest, we add 1648 since
the Birth of *Christi*, the total of the time since the Worlds
Creation, will be 5576 years, neither more nor less. A
thing which I the rather have insisted on, because that
during this *Epoche* or *Era* of the Worlds Creation, we shall
compute the times of such Kings and Princes, as Reigned
and flourished in the World before the Incarnation of our
Lord and Saviour.

It being then resolved as a thing undoubted, that God
made the World, and that He made it in such time as
Himself pleased ; let us next look upon the matter and
the method which it pleased the Divine Majesty to make
use of, in this wondrous work.

First, for the matter, out of which all things were
created, I take it, as before was said, to be that which
Moses in the first words of *Genesis* calls the *Heaven and the
Earth*, because they were so in *potentia* ; but after telleth
us more explicitly, that that which he calleth *Earth*,
was *inanis & vacua*, without form and void ; and that
which he calleth *Heaven* was but an overcast of darkness,
or *tenebre super faciem Abyssi*, as the vulgar reads it. Of
which *Chaos* or confused *Mafs* we thus read in *Orvid*, who
questionless had herein consulted with the works of *Moses*,
before he wrote his time communicated to the Learned
Gentiles :

*Ante mare & terras & quod tegit omnia Calum,
Quis erat tota nature unius in Orbe,
Quem dicere Chaos, nullis indiligens, males,
Nec quicquam nisi pondus iners, congestaq; mole,
Non bene junctarum discordia finia rerum, &c.*
Which I shall Enghlish from G. S. with some little change.
Before the Earth, the Sea, and Heaven were framed,
One face had Nature which they *Chaos* named ;
An indigested lump, a barren land,
Where jarring seeds of things ill-joyn'd abode.
No Sun as yet with light the World adorns,
Nor new Moon had repair'd her waning Horns :
Nor hung the self-polit'd Earth in thin Air plac'd,
Nor had the Ocean the vast Shores embrac'd.

Earth

Earth, Sea, and Air, all mixt ; the Earth untillable,
The Air was dark, the Sea unnavigable.
No certain form to any one affign'd ;
This, that refists ; for in one body joyn'd
The cold and heat, the dry and humid fight,
The soft and hard, the heavy with the light.

Out of this *Chaos* or first matter, did God raise the
World according to those several parts and lineaments
which we see in it, not as out of any pre-existent mat-
ter which was made before, and had not the form of the
Author or first Maker of it ; but as the first preparatory
matter which himself made before, including in the same
potentially both the form and matter of the whole Crea-
tion, except the Soul of man only, which God breath-
ed into him. And therefore it is truly said, that God
made all things out of *nothing* ; not out of *nothing* as the
matter out of which it was made, for then that *nothing*
must be *something* ; but as the *terminus a quo*, in giving
them a real and corporal being which before they had
not, and did then first begin to have by the mere force
and efficacy of his powerful Word. And though it be
Maxim in the Schools of Philosophy, *Ex nihilo nil fit*,
that *nothing* can be made of *nothing* ; that every thing
which hath a being doth require some matter which
must be pre-existent to it, yet this must either be con-
demned for erroneous Doctrine in the Chair of Divini-
ty, or else be limited and restrained to *Natural Agents*
which cannot go beyond the Sphere of their own ac-
tivity, *Invisible* and *supernatural Agents* are not tyed to
Rules, nor in the production of the works of Na-
ture ; though Nature, constituted and established in a
certain course, work every thing by line and measure
as a certain Rule. And so it was that the World, but
the Worlds Creation ; he did not only make the World, but
he made it out of *nothing*, by his word alone : *Dixit &
facta sunt.* He spake the word and they were made,
saith the royal *Psalmist*, *Psal.* 33. 9. There went no
greater pains nor matter to the whole Creation, but a
Dixit Deus : And this not only said by *Moses*, but by
David too, *Verbo Domini firmati sunt cæli, & spiritus oris
eius omnis virtus eorum*, v. 6. i. e. By the Word of the Lord
were the Heavens made, and all the Hosts thereof by the
breath of his mouth. In which it is to be observed, that
through the Creation of the World be generally ascribed to
God the Father, yet both the Son and the Holy Ghost had
their parts therein ; *Verbo Domini*, by the word of the
Lord were the Heavens made, saith the Prophet *David*. In
the beginning was the Word ; all things were made by him,
and without him was nothing made, saith S. *John* the Apo-
stle. The Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters,
saith *Moses* in the Book of the Law : *Et spiritus oris
eius* by the breath (or Spirit) of his mouth were all the
Hosts of Heaven created, saith *David* in the Book of
Psalms. Made by his Word, and yet not made together in
one instant of time. In the first day he laid the foundati-
on and no more ; in the five next, he raised the building ;
and this he did, to teach us men deliberation, in our words
and actions ; and to set forth withal unto us, both his
Power and Wisdom. His Power he manifested in the
Method of the whole Creation, in that he did produce
what effects he pleased, without the help of natural cau-
ses ; as giving Light unto the World before he had cre-
ated either Sun or Moon ; making the Earth fruitful, and
to bring forth Plants, without the influence or motion
of the Heavenly Bodies. And for his Wisdom he expre-
ssed it in as high a degree, in that he did not create the
very Beasts of the field before he had provided them of
fodder and sufficient herbage ; nor made man after his own
Image, before he had finished all the rest of his works,

fitted his House, and furnished it with all things necessa-
ry both for life and pleasures.

But all things being fitted and prepared for him, at
last comes Man into the World ; and he doth make his
entrance with a greater pomp than any of the rest of the
Creatures which were before him. They came in with
no other Ceremony, than a *Dixit Deus* ; but in the Work-
manship of Man, there was a Consultation held by the
blest Trinity. It is there, *Faciamus Hominem*. Let us
make man ; each Person contributing forthwith (as it
were) to his composition. For God the Father as the
chief Workman, or principal Agent, gave him form and
figure ; in which he did imprint his own heavenly
Image. The Son, who is the living and eternal Word,
gave him voice of speech, that he might be able to fit
forth Gods praises. The Holy Ghost, the Lord and giver
of Life, (as the Nicene Fathers truly call him) breathing
into him the breath of life, whereby he became a li-
ving spirit. In this one Creation, was assaid whatever
thing was excellent in the whole Creation ; the quanti-
ty or substance of Inanimate Creatures, the life of Plants,
the sense of Beasts, and the understanding of Angels. In
this one Creation did God shew the excellency of his
power and wisdom, in printing on him his own Image,
and giving him dominion over all the works of his hands,
which Image of God they look for it in a very wrong place
who hope to find it in mans Body, though of a gallant
conposition, and erected structure. The Heathen Orator
was able in this point to inform some erroneous *Christi-
ans*. *Ad Divinum imaginem proprius accedit humani viri
quæ figura*, Man doth approach more near to the Image
of God, in the endowments of his Mind, than in the
figure of his Body, as divinely *Cicero*. And as for that do-
minion which God gave him over the works of his hands,
the Patent is at large laid down in the first of *Genesis*. For
God no sooner said, *Faciamus Hominem*. Let us make man
after our own Image, but presently he adds this Charter
of Supreme Authority, *And let him have dominion over
the Fish of the Sea, and over the Fowls of the Air, and over
the Cattel, and over all the Earth*. A more particular ex-
plication of those several points, wherein that Image and
this Power do consist especially, I shall not take upon me
or endeavour now ; as being not of this place and pur-
pose : Which only is to shew, that as man in the very act
of his Creation participated more of the Divine Images,
than all other Creatures : so he by Gods special
grant encoined with a larger power, than any of the rest
could pretend unto. Man, though made lower than the
Angels, is in this above them ; that all the Creatures of
the World were made to be his servants, and to attend
upon his pleasure. And yet this great and mighty
Prince, this general Lord of all the World, and the Crea-
tures in it (setting aside the dignity of his first Creation)
doth come into the world in a worse condition, than a-
ny of the Creatures which were made to serve him, na-
ked, and impotent, and speechless, without use of rea-
son ; neither of power to help himself, or ask help of
others. Whereas *Lactantius*, in my mind, gives a very
good reason, who telleth us, that God sends man into
the world, *nudum & inermem*, naked and weak, and un-
defenced against all violences and dangers ; whereas all
Creatures else, *munita indumentis naturalibus & armata
sunt*, are naturally both armed and clothed, and able to
relieve themselves. And this he doth unto this end,
that man being naturally destitute of faculties of judg-
ment, wit and understanding, in furnishing himself with
that which he wants by nature. For hereto the first
that which he wants by nature. For hereto the first
that which he wants by nature. For hereto the first

referred, as is most plain and evident from the Book of God, in which we see, that presently upon the procreation of Mankind, *Abel* betook himself to keeping Sheep, and *Cain* to Husbandry: *Jubal* to handle the Harp, Organ, and such Musical Instruments; and *Tubal* *Cain* to work upon Brass and Iron, two Metals very necessary to all sort of Trades. The like may be supposed in all other Mysteries and Arts of Living, though there be no express mention of them in those early days: except it be the Art of Building, or the Carpenters Trade, which no question is as old as any, as by the building of *Cain's* City, and *Noah's* Ark is most clearly evidenced. God made the World, and fitted it with all things necessary for the life of man, leaving man to provide himself of such additions as rather serve for comforts and conveniences in the way of his living, than the necessities of his life.

Hence then we have the works of God, and the works of men to be confidered, in pursuit of our present Argument. The works of God in shadowing the Earth with Trees and Forests, interlacing it with Chrysal streams, and capacious Rivers; enriching it with fruitful and delicious Vales, adorning it with lofty Mountains, and stocking both the Hills and Vales with all sorts of Cattle. But nothing more sets forth the Power and Wisdom of Almighty God, as it relates to these particulars, than that most admirable intermixture of Want with Plenty, whereby he hath united all the parts of the World in a continual Traffick and Commerce with one another: some Countries being destitute of those Commodities with which others abound; and being plentiful in those which the others want. Infomuch that as in the body of Man, that *Microcosm*, or little World, the Head cannot say, that it hath no need of the Foot, nor the Foot of the Hand, nor other members of the rest: so neither in the Body of the World, can Europe say to Asia, or Spain to England, I have no need of your Commodities, or am not wanting in those things whereof thou boastest an abundance. Something there is in every Country which may be spared to supply the defect of others; and are accordingly vented in the way of Merchandise: Of which, thus *Dr. Barthe* in his Colonies,

Hence come our Sugars from Canary Isles;
From Candie Currants, Muscadels, and Oyls.
From the Molucces Spices, Balsamum
From Egypt: Odours from Arabia come.
From India Gums, rich Drugs, and Ivory;
From Syria Mummys black, red Ebony
From burning Chus: from Peru, Pearls and Gold;
From Russia Furrs to keep the rich from cold.
From Florence Silks; from Spain Fruits, Saffron, Sack;
From Denmark Amber, Cordage, Firrs, and Flax.
From France and Flanders, Linnen Wood, and Wine;
From Holland Horses; Horse from the banks of Rhine,
From England Wool. All lands, as God distributeth,
To the Worlds treasure pay their sundry tributes.

This, as *Dr. Barthe* speaks of the present times, so questionless the same, or the like Commerce held good in the first Ages of the Worlds Creation: God furnishing all Countries from the first beginning with some Staple Commodities, for the benefit of themselves and others; for the maintaining of that intercourse between Nation and Nation, which makes them link the closer in the bonds of Amity. And to this end also serve those several Manufactures, wherewith some Countries do abound in respect of others; but looked on, in the present Book, as the works of men. And of this kind also are

the several Politics and forms of Government. For though all Magistracy in it self be from God originally, and that the Monarchical form comes nearest to the Government used by God himself: yet being that some Politicks are merely but humane inventions, all Government or Magistracy is called an Ordinance of man in holy Scripture, 1 Pet. 2. 13. But those particular works of men, which are the most considerable part of our present subject, are Castles, Towns, and Cities of most eminent note, which thrive and prosper in the World, according as they do partake of those Conveniences which conduce most to their Magnificence and Greatness. Of these *Botru* gives us many (relation being had to the time he lived in) but of those many we shall touch upon the principal only; passing by those of lesser note, as pleasantness of Site, fruitfulness of Soil, salubrity of Air, and such like obvious Observations. First then there is required to the Magnificence and Splendor of Cities a Navigable River, or some such easy passage by Sea, which will bring thither a continual concourse and trade of Merchants: as at Venice, London, Amsterdam. Secondly some Staple Manufactures or Commodities which will draw the like resort of Merchants, though the convenience of Sea or Rivers invite them not; as in *Nuremberg* in Germany, a dry Town, but mightily traded. Thirdly, the Palace of the Prince; for, *ubi Imperator, ibi Roma*, where the Court is, there will be a continual confluence of Nobles, Gentry, Merchants, and all sorts of Trades: And by this means *Madrid*, not long since a poor beggarly Village, is grown the most populous City in all Spain. Fourthly, the Residence of the Nobility, beautifieth a City with stately and magnificent Buildings; which makes the Cities of Italy so much excel ours in England, their Nobles dwelling in the Cities, and ours for the most part in their Country-houses. Fifthly, the Seats or Tribunals of Justice, on which both Advocates and Clients are to give attendance; as in the Parliamentary Cities in France, and Spires in Germany. Sixthly, Universities and Schools of Learning, to which the Youth from all parts are to make resort; which hath been long the chief cause of the flourishing of Oxford, Cambridge, Bononia in Italy, and other Cities of good note beyond the Seas. Seventhly, Immunity from Tolls and Taxes; most men being most desirous to inhabit there, where their Income will be greatest, their Privileges largest, and their Disbursements least: So Naples, Florence, Venice, having been decimated by Plagues, were again suddenly re-peopled, by granting large Immunities to all comers-in. And last of all, the opinion of Sanctity, either for the Reliques of Saints, or some noted Shrines, or the residence of some famous man, or the Seat of Religion, is not the least Advantage, which draws people to it, to the great enriching of some Cities. And of this Rome it self can give us two most pregnant evidences: The one in reference to the Popes, and these latter times; that famous Town not otherwise subsisting now, then by the constant residence of the Popes and Cardinals; whose absence while the Papal See was kept at Avignon, had made it over-grown with Briars and Brambles, and buried it almost in its own sad ruins. The other, in the person of *Titus Livius* the Historian; to see which man there came so many from the Coasts of France and Spain, that *St. Hierome* elegantly saith, *Quos ad sui contemplationem Roma non traxerant, unius hominis fama perduxit; qui jam urbem tantam ingressi, aliud extra Urbem quaerunt*.

Such are the causes of the Greatness and Magnificence of Cities, when they are once built; none of all which might possibly be looked at by the first builders of Cities,

I mean by *Cain* before the Flood, and by *Mimrod* after; who aimed more at the love of Empire, and self-preservation, than at the general good of Mankind, or the particular wealth of those amongst whom they lived. Of *Cain* it is affirmed expressly in the Book of God, That being possessed with this fear, that every one that found him would lay hands upon him and slay him, in revenge of the blood of *Abel*, He builded a City and called it by the name of his Son *Enoch*, Gen. 4. 17. Builded a City? For what reason? To fortifie and secure himself against all revenge as the Text doth intimate; or thereby to oppress his Neighbours as *Josephus* witnesseth. Neither was this the only City of the first Ages, though none but this is mentioned in the Book of God. That which the Scripture faith of *Jubal*, that he was the Father of such as dwell in Tents, and of such as have Cattle; that is to say, he was the first of those that lived upon Pasturage, and followed their Cattle up and down with their moveable Tents, not having any certain home or habitations, as the wild Arabes now, and the ancient Nomades is proof sufficient, that the residue of all Mankind lived a more civil kind of life in their Towns and Villages. And if *Pomponius Mela* be of any credit (as in these things, I think he is) he will inform us, that the City of *Joppa* was built before the Flood; that the King thereof was named *Cepha*; and that his name, and the name of his Brother *Phineas*, together with the Grounds and Principles of their Religion, were found graven upon certain Altars of stone. But whether this be so, or not, certain it is, that as well *Canaan* in the West, wherupon *Joppa* stood, as the Land of *Nad* on the East side of *Paradise*, where *Cain* built his City, were peopled long before the Flood; and so were most of the other parts of the World besides: And if we well peopled in all, or most parts thereof, no doubt but they had Villages and Towns, yea and Cities too, as well for necessary habitations for strength and safety. Now that the World was thoroughly peopled before the Flood, seems clear to me by that great and universal Deluge, which God was pleased to bring upon the Face of all the Earth: For what need all the Earth be buried in that Sea of waters, if all the Earth had not been peopled, and all the people of it guilty of oppression in the light of God? Besides, it is expressly said in the holy Scripture, that in the time of *Abraham*, who lived about 350 years after the Flood in the largest account, and not 300 in the shorter; there were Kings of Egypt, and of the Philistines, Kings of the Canaanites, of Shinar, Elufar, Elan, and of the Nations who questionless had their Lands well peopled: that both *Chalde*, and *Mesopotamia* in the time of *Abraham* had their several Cities; as *Ur* in the one, and *Haran*, or *Charran*, in the other; and that *Damafcar* the chief City of Syria was then founded also: Not to say any thing of the building of *Babel*, *Erech*, *Acad*, and *Chalneh* in the Land of *Shinar* (or *Babylonia*) nor of the building of *Ninive*, *Resus*, *Teboboth*, and *Chalab* in the Land of *Assyria*, mention whereof is made in the 10. of *Genesis*. And it is found in good and credible Authors, that *Ninus* the third *Assyrian* Monarch (who lived before the birth of *Abraham*) having subdued the Kings of Media and Armenia, invaded *Babylonia* with an Army of 1700000 Foot, and 200000 Horse, and 10000 armed Chariots and was encountered by *Zamosar* the King thereof with an Army of four hundred thousand. The credibility whereof, if it were disputed, might be affirmed by the like numerous Army brought by *Xerxes* against the *Greeks*, though in times long after following. And if we will give credit unto *Diodorus Siculus*, who voucheth *Ctesius* to be his Author, *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*, invaded *India* with an Army of three Millions of

men and upwards; and yet was over-matched, and slain by an Indian King. If then within the space of four hundred years, we find the Eastern parts to be so well planted, in many Kings possessed of their regal Thrones, and many of them able to impress such infinite Armies; why may we not conclude, that in the course of 1656 years (for so long it was from the Creation to the Flood) the whole World was inhabited and planted in all parts thereof; especially considering the long lives of men, amounting to eight hundred, or nine hundred years; and consequently the long time they had to apply themselves to the act of Generation. And though I have no certain ground for it in the Book of God, yet I am apt enough to be of *Morcan's* opinion; who placing the 16 Dynasties of the Kings of Egypt (where *Enschius* begins to calculate the Egyptian times; at the first planting of that Country by the Sons of *Noah*; reckoneth the former fifteen to have been before the Flood, and to reach very near the times of the first Creation. That, *Misraim* the Son of *Noah* was possessed of Egypt within two hundred years after the Flood, is a truth undoubted. Nor see I any cause to doubt, but that in the like space of time from the first Creation, it might be planted also by the Sons of *Adam*: considering, as we ought to do, that in the Infancy of the World, when the bodies of men were most perfect and of greatest vigour, they observed no degree of Kindred or Consanguinity; nor tied themselves to strictly to one woman, as they should have done. And for the names of all the Kings of those several Dynasties, either they might be left engraven upon Pillars, such as that of *Seth*; or upon Altars of stone, as in those of *Joppa*; or *Misraim* might have them by Tradition from the hands of *Noah*; and so deliver them by tale unto his posterity: the Egyptians being generally very good Historians, and standing very much on their own Antiquity. And if this may be said of Egypt (as for my part I see no reason but it may) then may the like be said of all Countries else, that they had their several Kings and Rulers, and set-Forms of Government: the Fathers of Families in those times, having the Command and Sovereignty over all that descended of them. Nor make I any question of it, but they had several Languages and forms of Speech, at least to the Dialect and pronunciation; although the Radicals of the Language might remain the same. But being there are no Remainers of this first Plantation, unless we will give credit to some Jewish Fablers, who tell us of some Giants who saved themselves upon Mount *Sin*; or that of *Nicholas Damascenus*, who speaks of some that saved themselves on an high Hill called *Baris*, in some part of *Armenia*; I shall the less insist upon it. Nor had I stood so long upon these first Ages; which *Mela* passeth over with so short a Narrative; but that is affirmed by *Pomponius*, a right learned Jewish, that neither Egypt nor *Assyria*, nor the rest of the World was planted and inhabited before the Flood; and that upon no stronger reason, for ought I can find, but that it is affirmed in the last words of the tenth of *Genesis*, That by these (that is to say, by the posterity of the Sons of *Noah*) were the Nations divided in the Earth after the Flood. Out of which words he thus concludeth, *Quo significatur, tam diversum non fuisse ante Diluvium*: By which it doth appear (saith he) that in the times before the Flood was no such division.

'Tis true, that this division of the World by the Sons of *Noah*, hath the best evidence in Scripture, because there is express Text for it, which is not for the first Plantations. But looking on the great carcass of mankind before the Flood, that saying of *Berosus* will prove tantamount to a Text of Scripture, *Ad comparandas*
novas

Novus fides necessitatem compellit, that they were driven by necessity to seek new dwellings, the necessity of providing victuals for themselves and their Families, being as strong a motive unto such diffusions, as the *Confusion of Tongues* was afterwards. The difference is, that that which such necessity would have done in long tract of time, the *confusion of Tongues* did in an instant: not only making those proud Builders to give over the finishing of the Tower which they had begun; but to unite themselves with such, whose language came most near to that which themselves were Masters of. It was high time, no question, to desist from this proud Attempt, when the Labourer understood not what the Workman called for, but brought him things quite contrary to his expectation. But because some Plantations had no reference to the *Confusion of Tongues*, but were made before it, or on the finding out of such Colonies as were nearest to the place where the Ark did rest, I think it not amiss to resolve that question touching the settling of the Ark, on which the Plantations of the East have so great dependence. All that the Scripture telleth us of it, is, that the Ark rested on the Mountains of Ararat; but where those Mountains are, that it telleth us not. I know *Josphus* and some other of more eminent note, (but such as ground themselves upon his Authority) affirm, those Mountains of Ararat to be the hills of Armenia. Which they do chiefly on these Reasons: First, because Armenia is called Ararat in the Book of *Qd.* as it is confessedly; and secondly, because of an old Tradition, countenanced by *Berosus*, and some others of the ancient Writers cited by *Josphus*, affirming, that on the *Gordian* Mountains in Armenia major, some of the reliques of the Ark were remaining in their times and used as a preservative against Incantments. Which notwithstanding, I incline rather to the opinion of *Georgius Bescanus* (who amongst many strange whimsies broached some notable truths) by whom the Ark is said to rest on the top of Mount *Caucasis* in the Confiners of *Tartary*, *Persia*, and *India*. His Arguments are many, but I look on two as of greatest consequence: the first whereof is grounded upon evident reason; the second on plain Text of Scripture. That which is grounded upon reason, is, the exceeding populosity of those Eastern Countries, into which none of those by whom the World was planted after the *Confusion of Languages*, are yet reported to have travelled with their several Colonies, by any who have took most pains in this discovery. Those infinite numbers which *Strabo* relates, one (and but one of many) of the Kings of the *Indians* brought into the field against *Semiramis*; and the vast army of *Zoroaster* the King of *Bactria*, conducted out of that one Province against *Ninus*; are proof enough, that those Countries were of an elder Plantation, than to be a second or third *Casting* of some other *Swarm* settled in *Persia*, or *Assyria* after the *Confusion*. For *Ninus*, who was the Husband of *Semiramis*, was but the Grandchild of *Nimrod*; and I must needs look upon it, as a thing impossible, that those vast Armies which *Semiramis* was able to raise out of all her Dominions, should be encountered by one King with an equal force, and that of his own Subjects only; if that one King, and those his Subjects had been some late Colony of those new Plantations, and not possessed of a Country peopled and inhabited before that *Confusion*. Nor was it but upon some good ground, that the *Sybilant* (who inhabited on the North of Mount *Caucasis*) were generally esteemed the most ancient Nation in the World; and carried it away from the *Aegyptians*, *Phrygians*, and all other Competitors with this publick Ver-

dicit, *Sybarum gens semper antiquissima*: which ground could be no other, but the neighbourhood of the Ark unto them (though perhaps that ground long since forgotten, was not flood upon) and the dwelling of *Noah* and his Children near the place of the Ark, till numbers, and necessity compelled them to enlarge their Border. And in the enlarging of their Borders, I shall make no question, but that such parts as lay nearest, were peopled and possessed before those which lay furthest off; according to the method of Plantations in all Ages since. This, though it be to me a convincing Argument, yet it falls short of that which comes from the Text it self, both in authority and weight; where it is said of the heads of those several Families which afterwards joined together in the Building of *Babel* that, *As they went from the East, they found a Plain in the Land of Shinar, and there they abode*. Gen. 11. 2. If then they came from the East to the Land of *Shinar*, as the Text faith plainly that they did; it might well be, that they came from those parts of *Asia*, on the South of *Caucasis*, which lie East of *Shinar*, though somewhat bending to the North; impossible they should come from the *Gordian* Mountains in the greater Armenia (supposed to be the Hills which the Ark did rest on) which lie not only full North of *Shinar*, but many degrees unto the West. For *Babylonia*, or *Shinar*, is situate in the Latitude of 35, and the Longitude of 79 and 80. The Latitude of the *Gordian* Mountains, in 41, and their Longitude in 75. By which account those Mountains are 6 Degrees more Northwards, and 5 Degrees more Westwards than the Land of *Shinar*; by no means to be reckoned on the East of that Valley, except we make *Mesir* (whose hand God guided in his Books) to speak God knows what, or, in plain terms, to speak plain nonsense. And though the Scripture be so clear, that it needs no commentary, yet the perplexities I find amongst those of the other opinion, in fitting out of the authority of so plain a Text, do add in my conceit some moment and weight unto it. For some will have the Mountains of Ararat to be indeed on the North of the Land of *Shinar*, but with some bending towards the East; which were true, as nothing is more truly false, *Mesir* had never told us that they came from the East; but from some Countries of the North, which lay towards the East. Others will have a double progress of the heads of those several Families: First, from the Mountains of Ararat, or the Plains of Armenia, to the Fields of *Assyria*, and *Susiana*; And secondly, from thence to the Land of *Shinar*. But of this first journey, there is no *quidam*, not so much as any syllable in all the Scripture; besides the needlessness of making them go so far abroad, and to cross over the great Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris*; whereas they had a shorter, and an easier passage. *Capellus*, singular by himself quarrelless with the Translation (received without dispute by all other Critics) and will not have not *Hebreu Kadem*, to be rendered East, but to signify that Region, whatsoever it was, which was inhabited by *Kadem* the son of *Ismael*, of whom we find mention, Gen. 25. 15. But then, besides his quarrel with all other Translations, he supposed a former progress from the Mountains of Ararat to that Land of *Kadem*; and consequently falleth into a part of the Error before refuted. *Bochartus* finding (if not fancying) that the *Assyrians* called all those parts of their Empire beyond *Tygris*, the Eastern, and those on this side of it, the Western; would thence conclude, that these Heads may be said by *Mesir* to have come from the East, because they came from one of the Eastern Provinces of the *Assyrian* Empire.

Every

Every way faulty in this point: For, besides that the greatest part of Armenia lieth on the North of *Tygris*, and the least part of it on the West, and therefore not within the compass of the Eastern Provinces; and that *Bochartus* hath not proved (nor indeed can prove) that this division was in use in the time of *Mesir*; we may as rationally conclude, and with less absurdity, that the first Inhabitants of Britain, might have been said by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, or any Writer of that time, to come out of the *West* (though he well knew they came from *Gaul*, which is plainly East of it) because *Gaul* in his time was a Province of the *West* parts of the Empire.

Having thus fortified our opinion both with Scripture and Reason, the Arguments produced against us will be easily answered. For though Armenia be granted to be the Country of Ararat; yet the Mountains of Ararat may extend beyond the Country. That mighty Ridge of Mountains which beginning in *Asia* the *hills* run as far as *India* (by the Ancients commonly called the Mount *Taurus*) might very well be called by *Mesir* the Mountains of Ararat, because that was the first Country of the greater *Asia* by which they passed; and where they were of greater note than they had been formerly. Just as the *Adriatick* Sea took that name from *Adria*, then the chief Port of it, though it washed many Shores besides: Or as some Hills which we are called *Malvern Hills*, because they are highest near that Village, though they extend themselves into other Lordships. And as for the Authority of Tradition, and the Testimony of humane writers, which (as before was said) are brought in for an help, touching some Reliques of the Ark to be seen on the *Gordian* Mountains; I of the Ark to be seen on the *Gordian* Mountains; I for look upon it as an Argument of no weight at all. For *Isidore* (followed herein by all the rest) reports it as only on the ground of uncertain hearsay; which is a weak staff for so heavy a cause to rely upon. Secondly, to balance the Authority of *Berosus* (fit of any credit in this case) we have the testimony and authority of *Porphyrus* (as ancient almost as he, affirming positively, In *Sybia* *Saga renatus esse mortale genus*, that Mankind was repaired in that part of *Sybia*, which after was possessed by the *Sacians*; and they, we know, dwelt in those parts of *Sybia* which lay next to *Bactria*, a Province of the *Persian* Empire, and not far from the branches of Mount *Caucasis*. And Thirdly, unto one Tradition to oppose another; those of Mount *Caucasis* do aver, that a large Vineyard in *Margiana*, near the foot of that Mountain, was of *Noah's* Plantation: Of which we shall speak more when we come to *Tartary*.

It is now time to give directions to the Builders of *Babel*, and their wide diffusions; for whom it was high time to consider themselves with such as they could understand: the necessity of discourse and conference on that fatal Accident, making them lay aside their old acquaintances, and join themselves to others of their own new Language. I know that many Learned men according to the number of names laid down in the tenth of *Gen.* being 70, have made to many Languages to have been spoken upon that *Confusion*: And that of those, 26 being the Posterity of *Sem*, dispersed themselves about *Asia* the greater, 30 others of the loins of *Cham*, peopled *Africa*, *Arabia*, and *Syria*; and that the 14 which remain, being the issue of *Japhet*, withdrew themselves towards *Europe*, and the lesser *Asia*. But this as to the number of Languages, I take to be but a vain conceit; though many, more improbable, have passed for current. It being plain, that *Canaan* and his Sons, eleven in all, had but one Language amongst them, which was the *Hebrew*, or the Language of the Land of *Canaan*.

And as for *Jedán* and his Sons, being 13 in number, considering that he was the younger Brother of *Phaleg*, in whose time this *Confusion* happened; it is most probable, and avowed for a certain truth, that either none of them were born, or, if they were, yet they were all of them too young to have an hand in the design of the building of the Tower of *Babel*; and consequently could not be within the cause of confounded Languages. So, here is near a third part of the Seventy to be taken off, as possibly might all the Sons of *Misaim* be, if it were worth the while to insist upon it. This then I take but for a fancy. And as for that, of the dispersion into the said three parts of the (then) known World, I take it to be true enough in long tract of time; but false enough, if understood of any present separation of the Sons of *Noah* into parts so far remote and distant from one another. For what needed any such remote Plantations be, as long as they had room enough to live one near another, and to enjoy that civil intercourse, and mutual Society which the nature of Mankind doth most delight in? And therefore I conceive it to be far more probable, that they who met together for the building of *Babel*, joining themselves to men of the same Language with them, did first let down upon the places near the Valley of *Shinar*; and from thence propagated and dispersed themselves into further Countries, as either the necessity of providing of Victuals; or seeking better and more fruitful habitations for themselves and theirs; or the desire of being out of the reach of some potent Neighbours, whose Yoke they found too heavy for their necks to bear, did enforce them to it. And being so settled to their minds, the addition of a few more years brought the like necessity of sending Colonies further off, as they grew more or less populous in their Generations: It being in Plantations of Men, as in that of Bees, amongst whom one *Swarm* tends out another, that begets a *Casting*, till the whole ground or Garden grow too small to hold them. For thus (to seek no further for an instance of it) the *Gauls* first Planted Britain, the *Britains* Ireland, and *Iris* Scotland, and the *Irish*. Thus the *Helvetians* finding their old dwellings both too barren to sustain, and too narrow to contain their Multitudes, *angustus se fines habere arbitrantur*, as in *Cæsar's* Commentaries, intended to plant themselves in *Gaul*. And thus the *Syrians* and *Phoenicians* flying the dreadful Sword of *Jehonab* the Son of *Nun*, sought them out dwellings further off from the present danger, whereof we shall speak more in its proper place. On the like motives and inducements did the first people after the Flood, distribute and disperse themselves into several parts, as their posterities have done since, and will do to the end of the World, in all probability: Giving their own names, or some names of their own implying, upon the Countries Planted or discovered by them. And though the length, and consuming nature of time, hath either changed or worn out the names imposed by the first Adventurers, I mean the first Planters after the Flood: yet all the Foot-Steps of Antiquity are not so defaced, but that some Nations and Cities have preserved the memory of their first Founders and true Parents. In the discovery whereof *Isidore* *Josphus* in his Book of *Jewish Antiquities* did first lead the way, and gave good light to those who have travelled in it, so a more notable proficiency hath been made therein by *Junius* in his Notes on the Tenth of *Genesis*, Sir *Walter Raleigh* in his excellent History, and lately by *Bochartus*, a French Writer in his Book called *Geographia Sacra*. Out of those Learned labours, and some Animadversions of mine own, I shall here say somewhat concerning the Plantation of the World by the Sons of *Noah*; leaving the more exact and punctual description

description of it under the History of those several Lands and Countries which were planted by them.

First therefore to begin with the posterity of *Sem*, as those who fixed themselves in *Asia*, without wandering further, we find *Sem* to have had five Sons, that is to say, *Elam*, *Assur*, *Arphaxad*, *Lud* and *Aram*; of whom there is no Issue on Record in Holy Scripture, but only of *Arphaxad* and *Aram*; and of these two there are four Sons given to *Aram*, viz. *Uz*, *Hul*, *Gether* and *Mefech*, and but one to *Arphaxad*, which was *Selah*. To *Selah* was born *Heber*; to *Heber*, *Phaleg*, the Ancestor of *Abraham*, and *Joktan*, the Father of those thirteen Sons, whose names we shall rehearse hereafter, if occasion be. From *Elam* who is first named, did descend the *Elamites*, a people bordering on the *Medes*, and therefore oft-times joyn'd together in the Scriptures, as *Genp*, *O* *Elam*, *Beleger*, *O* *Media*, *Esa*. 2. 2. And all the Kings of *Elam*, all the Kings of the *Medes*, *Jer*. 25. And in the Second of the *Adi*, *Parthians*, and *Medes*, and *Elamites*, march in rank and file, as being Nations bordering upon one another. The principal City of this people was called *Elymais*, mention whereof is made in the second of *Maccab*. 6. 2. sufficiently famous for the rich and magnificent Temple which was there consecrated to *Diana*. A City seated on the Banks of the River *Eulphr*, and neighbouring close to *Susana*, which therefore is sometimes included in the name of *Elam*, as *Dan*. 8. 2. *I was* (saith he) in the Palace of *Susa*, in the Province of *Elam*: where *Elam* is not taken for the Province of the *Elamites* only, but as it gave denomination unto all those Nations whom they after mastered. The Second Son of *Sem* is *Assur*, of whom there is no question made amongst the Learned, but that he was the Father of the *Assyrians*, called *Assyres* in some old Greek Writers: Not of the whole people of that great and unwieldy Empire, who sometimes generally pass by the name of *Assyrians*; but of the People of *Assyria* strictly and properly so called, as it denotes the Country about *Ninive* (the Royal City of that Empire) which after was called *Adiabene*. *Juxta hunc circumvallum Adiabene*, *Assyria priscis temporibus vocata*, as *Ammianus Marcellinus*, *Lib. 33*. *Arphaxad* comes next after *Assur*, and him *Josephus* makes to be the Father of the *Chaldeans*, called anciently *Arphaxadei*, if he tells us true. But others tell us, and that more probable perhaps, that he planted in that part the *Assyria* which was first called *Arphaxitis*, afterwards *Arrapachitis*; by which name it is occurth in the Tables of *Ptolomy*. *Lud* the fourth son is generally said to be the Father of the *Lydians*, a people of *Asia* the less; the names of *Lud*, and *Lydi* (or *Auasi* as the *Grecians* call them) being much alike. And it is possible enough that some of the posterity of this *Lud* might afterwards settle in those parts, and call the Country by the name of *Lud*, their common Ancestor; as the posterity of *Abraham* took unto themselves the name of *Hebreus* from *Heber*, one of the Progenitors of their Father *Abraham*. But that *Lud* should in person go far from the rest of the Sons of *Sem*, I cannot easily imagine, for *Aram* the fifth and last (as they stand in order of the Text) sets himself down close by his Brethren in the Land of *Syria*, which in the Hebrew is called *Aram*, and from thence the name of *Aramites* was given to the Inhabitants of it. Of which, and of the several Provinces which were hence denominated, we shall hereafter speak more fully, when we come to *Syria*. Only take now this testimony and acknowledgment from the pen of *Strabo*. *Quoniam non Syros vocantur, isti Syri Aramensis et Arameos vocant*. Those (saith he) which we now call *Syrians*, do call themselves *Arameans*, or *Aramenians*. In, and about the same parts did the four sons of *Aram* set themselves and their Families; *Uz* in that part of

Syria which is called *Syria Damascena*, or *Aram Damascenica*: the building of the great City of *Damascus* being generally ascribed unto him; and the Land of *Uz*, bordering South upon *Damascus*, taking denomination from him. The like did *Hul*, or *Chul*, the next son of *Aram*, whom both *Josephus* and *S. Hieron* settle in *Armenia*, or *Armenia*, as in *Strabo*; and that not improbably, considering that there is a Region in *Armenia*, which *Stephanus* calls *Cholobetene*, and divers Cities in that tract, which still preserve the Radicals of *Hul*, or *Chul*, as *Cholobata*, *Cholimam*, *Calsa*, and *Colana*, whereof mention is made in the Tables of *Ptolomy*. For *Gether*, the third son of *Aram*; it is not yet agreed on where to find his dwelling. *Josephus*, contrary to all reason, placeth him in *Bactria*; and *Mercer*, with as little, in *Caria*, a Province of the lesser *Asia*, and *Acanania* of *Greece*. *Justin* sets him down in the Province of *Cassiotia*, and *Silencus*, near his Father *Aram*, where *Ptolomy* placeth *Gindarus*, and the Nations called by *Pliny*, *Gindarini*: *Bochartus* on the banks of the River *Centrius*, which divides *Armenia* from the *Carduchi*, as it is in *Xenophon*. Which River, if it were called originally *Getri*, as he conjectureth it might be, the controversy were at an end. But being that we find in *Ptolomy*, a City of *Armenia* (which bordereth on *Armenia*) called *Getara*, and a River of the same Country called *Getras*; I see no cause why we should seek further for the seat of *Gether* than the *Greek* Copies (more subject to corruption in the times of ignorance, than the *Latin* were) instead of *Getara* read *Gagara*. But if this be too far to set him, we shall find *Mar* or *Mefech*, the last Son, planted nearer hand, even in the Northern Parts of *Syria*, towards *Mesopotamia*, near the Hill called *Mafius*: at the foot whereof there is a people, which *Stephanus* called *Mafieni*; and thereabout a River, which in *Xenophon* is named *Mafica*. Both which do evidently declare from what root they come.

Come we next to the second branch of the house of *Sem*, derived from *Arphaxad*, whom we left settled in the Region of *Arrapachitis*, or in near *Assyria*. Not far from which, in *Susana*, a Province of the *Persian* Empire, there is a City of chief note called *Sela*; mention of which is made both in *Ptolomy's* Tables; and the 23. Book of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. And unto this the authority of *Eusebius Antiochenus*, who briefly thus, *Sela de Senuar*. The People of *Susana* came from *Sela*. But this as I conceive, must be understood only of that Part of this people, which lived in and about the City of *Sela*, and not of the whole Nation of the *Susians*, or *Susiani*, which borrowed their denomination from another root. To *Sela* was born *Heber*, from whom the people of the *Hebræi*, or *Hebreus*, do derive their name. And to him *Phaleg* his first born, who in all probability gave name to the Town called *Phalga*, situate on the River *Euphrates*, not far from *Selencia*: Mention whereof is made by *Stephanus* in his Book de *Urbinis*, and by *Ptolomy* in his *Geography*; where it is placed right on the banks of *Euphrates*, where the River *Chaboras* mingles waters with it; but there corruptly called *Phalga*, instead of *Phalga*.

But the great increase of *Sem's* Posterity came by *Joktan*, the second Son of *Eber*, the father of no fewer than thirteen Sons, whose names are on record in the tenth of *Genesis*, where it is said, that their dwelling was from *Melcha*, as thou goest to *Sephar*, a Mount in the East, And here I must crave leave to differ from *Bochartus*, who hath wronged *Joktan* and his Sons into a little corner of *Arabia Felix*, where I can find no room for them, and less reason to place them. For being that *Chus* the Son of *Cham*, and the Chiefs of his Posterity, eight in number, were planted in *Arabia*, as himself confesseth,

it

it must needs be, that they had spread themselves over all the Country, before any of the sons of *Joktan* were of age sufficient to be the Fathers of Families, and lead Colonies thither. *Joktan* is credibly supposed not to have been born when such of *Nashy* posterity as are mentioned *Gen*. 10. dispersed themselves into new Plantations; but it is evident from the Text, that none of his children were then born, if their Father were. And this *Bochartus* doth acknowledge in two several places. First, granting that neither *Phaleg*, nor *Joktan* were present at the building of *Babel*, multa minus *Joktanis filii post aliquot annos genti*; much less the sons of *Joktan* begot many years after; *Lih*. 1. c. 16. And secondly affirming, that *Jokan* and his children came not within the curle of *Confused Languages*, quia nondum erant genti, because then unborn, c. 15. Hereupon I conclude it to be very improbable that *Jokan* and his children should find room in the best parts of *Arabia Felix*, which *Chus* and his posterity had inhabited long before. And as it is improbable that the sons of *Chus* would plant themselves in the worst part of the Country for so many Ages, and leave the best and richest of it for some new adventurers: So it is impossible that the sons of *Joktan* should either be removed so far from the rest of the house of *Arphaxad*, who were all planted on the East of the River *Tygris*, as was before shewed: or that they should be able, had they been so minded, to break through the whole Countries of the *Assyrians*, *Chusites*, and other Nations, to come unto the utmost corners of *Arabia Felix*. He that believes they did, or could, must have a stronger Faith than mine; but it shall never conduce any thing to his justification. Nor am I moved at all that which seems to me to be his weightiest Argument, namely, that the *Arabians*, particularly *Joseph Ben Abdallah*, and *Mahomet Ben Jacob*, two of their chief Writers affirm, that *Joktan* was the Founder of their Tongue and Nation; no more than I am moved to think that the *Saracens* are derived from *Sara* the Wife, and not from *Harag* the Concubine and servant of *Abraham*; because that people so report it for their greater glory.

And for the several Nations of *Arabia Felix*, whose original he ascribes to the sons of *Jokan*, I see no many transpositions of Syllables, alterations even of Radical Letters, such and so many wretched Originations, as by the like liberty of making quilibet ex quolibet, it were no difficult matter to find place for them in any Country whatsoever. For how extorted and unnatural are the derivations of the *Alنامه* from *Almadad*, of the *Manita* from *Abimail*, of the *Joharita* from *Jubab*? How impossible is it that *Jarech* should give name to the Isle which *Ptolomy* calleth *Nio* or *Tapexan*, *Insula Jercama* or *Acipitrum*, as the *Latine* hath it, that is to say, the Isle of *Hawks*, from the abundance of *Hawks* which were there bred: There being another Island of the same name near unto *Sardinia* (so called for the self same reason) and a Town called *Jarax* in *Hammoniacia* a Region of *Egypt*, to which *Jarech* might as well lay claim (if that would carry it) as to this *Jercama*, or *Acipitrum*, in the Gulf of *Arabia*. How improbable that *Opbir* should give name to *Urbire*, a poor Isle of the Red Sea, *Obal* to *Sinu Avalliter* in *Libiopia*, on the other side of that Gulf? Or that *Diela* must be fixed in *Arabia*, for no other reason, but because the word signifieth a Palm-tree, of which that Country yields good plenty, as if some other Countries did not yield as much? These and some other reasons hereafter following have made me bold to differ from that learned man in this particular, whose industry and abilities I do otherwise honour; and rather to look for *Joktan*, and his sons in the East part of the world, where the Scriptures place them; than in the South (with refer-

rence to the wilderness, or Land of *Madian*, in one of which the Book of *Genesis* was written) where *Bochartus* placeth them. Yet so far I must yield to that learned man, that some of the Descendants of *Jokan* in long tract of time, moved with the rarities of the place, might come from *India*, and plant themselves upon the Sea-Coasts of *Arabia Felix*; as the *Arabians* at this day, moved with the Wealth and Trade of *India*, have possessed themselves of some of the Ports and pieces on the Shores thereof.

Now the Text telleth us of the Sons of *Joktan*, that their dwelling was from *Melcha*, as thou goest to *Sephar*, a Mount of the East; so that by these two boundaries, *Melcha* and *Sephar*, their habitation must be found. I know, *Bochartus* would have *Melcha* to be *Mufa*, a noted Port-Town on the South-west of *Arabia Felix*, and *Sephar* to be the City of *Sephar* in the South-east of that Country; that City giving name to some Mount adjoining. But being they both lie directly South of the place in which *Mofes* wrote, I cannot see how this position can agree with the word of Scripture; and therefore we must look for both in some other place. And first to find out *Melcha*, we need go no further than *Bochartus* himself, who nameth *Melch* the last of the Sons of *Aram*, the Son of *Sem* (according to the general opinion of most writers else) to be planted in the Mountainous tracts of *Mesopotamia*, from him called *Mus Melcha*, more of which before. And then for *Sephar*, which the Text calleth a Mount of the East; if it be the Southern part of Mount *Imani*, by *Ptolomy* named *Bitigi*, by the Moderns *Gata* extending from Mount *Caucasus* to the Cape *Comari* in the higher *Indias* *Pagellus* a right learned man doth conceive it to be; We have without more difficulty found out the dwellings of the sons of *Jokan* according to the bounds laid down in holy Scripture: But for fear this may not satisfy, for want of some Seconds to *Pagellus* (if Truth needs a Second) we have *Siphare* a City of *Arria*, directly East from *Mus Melcha*, or the dwellings of *Melch*; both in the East parts of the World, with reference unto the place in which *Mofes* writ: *Mus Melcha* being placed by *Ptolomy* in the 74 degree of Longitude, and the 37 of Latitude; and *Siphare* 36 degrees more towards the East, but with no more than two degrees of Latitude super-added to it. And this agreeth to the position assigned to the Sons of *Jokan* by *Josephus*, *Eusebius*, and *S. Hieron*; the entendation of *Bochartus* coming in to help. It is affirmed by *Josephus* that the *Joquaites* possessed all that *Traci*, *απὸ Κασίου ὁρμήης ὀρέων, ἕως τῆς περὶ αὐτῶν Σελῆς ἁλῆς*, which lieth about *Kapheus* a River of *India*, together with such parts of *Syria* as did border near it. These words being borrowed from *Josephus* both by *Eusebius* and *S. Hieron*; the first instead of *Syria* reads *Seria*, and the other *Seria*, but neither rightly: there being no such place in the world as *Seria*; and *Syria & Seria* (or the Country of the *Seres*) lying too far off to border on *Cephenia* a River of *India*; *Bochartus* therefore helps them out, conceiving (I think right enough) that for *Syria* we should there read *Arria* and withal granting, as he may, that *Arria* in the largest latitude and extent thereof, comprehending *Parapomus* & *Arachosia*, extendeth as far East-ward as the River *Cephenis*. So, that we have found out a dwelling for the sons of *Jokan* whetwixt *Mus Melcha* & *Siphare*, a Town of *Arria*: which probably might give name to some Mount adjoining, as *Sephar* by *Bochartus* is supposed to do to some of the *Arabian* hills bordering near unto it. And as these situations do agree exactly with the meaning of those ancient Writers, so is it also very suitable to the other Plantations of the sons of *Arphaxad*. For this I look on as a matter out of all dispute, that *Phaleg* and *Jokan* being both too young to go upon any new Adventures, when to many of

©

the

Egypt, of the name of *Coptorim*. Or if it did not, as it doth, why the name of *Coptis*, which at this day is given to the Christians of Egypt, may not be thought to have its first rise from *Coptorim*, rather than that they are so called *quasi Aegyptii*, corruptly for *Aegyptii*, I must needs say I am not satisfied. Besides, it being clear in Scripture, that the *Callubim* and *Coptorim* dwelt near together, and that the *Philistins* are said to descend from *Callubim*, if *Callubim* should go for *Colobis*, and *Coptorim* for *Cappadocia*, we must first carry them I know not how far off from the rest of their Brethren, against the method of all Plantations; and then bring the *Philistins* back again from *Colobis*, to find a dwelling on the Borders of the Land of Egypt, from whence their Ancestors and Allies were so far remote. Whereas by settling these two Nations amongst the rest of their Brethren, the Journey of the *Philistins* unto *Canaan*, and settling themselves in the possessions of the *Avim* (a *Canaanitish* people) whom they had subdued, *Deut. 2. 25.* is both easy and natural. But before we follow these *Philistins* further in their new Plantation amongst the *Canaanites*, we will first see what became of *Phut*, the Third Son of *Cham*. And if we guide our selves in this *Labyrinth* by the clew of Antiquity, we shall find him settled West by his Brother *Misraim*, and so the *Atlantic* Ocean, the Lake of *Tritonis* parting their Dominions. Some Relicks of the name there were in the time of *Josephus*, who tell us of a River of *Mauritania*, which in his time retained the name of *Phut*: *Pliny* makes mention of it, also *Proclus* takes notice of a River in those parts called *Phutis*, which comes very near it. And so doth *Isidore Origin. l. 2.* But *St. Hieron* in my mind puts it out of doubt, whose words I shall put down, and so leave Africa; *Phut Lybia, a quo & Mauritanie fluvius usque ad presens Phut dicitur, uniusque circa eam Regio Phytensis cuius rei multi Scriptores tam Graecum Latine testes sunt.* Where we have not only a River, but a Province of the name of *Phut*, and many ancient Writers both Greek and Latin called to witness to it.

And now we should proceed to *Canaan* and his Sons (eleven in all) being the fourth and last branch of the House of *Cham*. But being they all kept together in or near the Land of *Canaan*, we shall find them there; or meet with them in such Plantations and Colonies as they sent abroad, under the Title of *Phoenicians*. And therefore go we next to *Japhet*, whose *Tours* God promised to enlarge, as indeed he did; spreading his branches over *Europe*, the lesser Asia, and a great part of the greater Asia. To him were born seven Sons in all, that is to say, *Gomer* and *Magog*, *Madai* and *Javan*, *Isabel*, *Mefech*, and *Thyras*. Of which the issue of two only are upon Record, viz. *Ashkenaz*, *Riphat*, and *Togarmas*, the Sons of *Gomer*; *Elifha*, *Tarsish*, *Kittim*, and *Dodanim*, the Sons of *Javan*. And first for *Gomer* and his Sons, the first possessed themselves of convenient dwellings in the greater and the lesser Asia: *Gomer* himself first planting in the Mountainous places of *Albania*, where the Mountains called *Cimmerii* long retained his name; and after changing that unpleasant and unfruitful dwelling for the Plains of *Phrygia*, in which the City *Cimmeria*, in the days of *Pliny*, did preserve his memory. For that the posterity and people of *Gomer*, called at first *Cimmerians*, came to take the name of *Cimmerians*, as of *Cimmerii* afterwards, is generally agreed upon amongst the Learned. Now then, as *Gomer* fixt himself in the greater Asia, so his Eldest Son *Ashkenaz* in *Phrygia Minor*, and the Country of *Troas*, spreading himself along upon the *Hellefpon*, and those *Greekish* Seas, as far as *Sybinia*. In which places there were left some memory of this Plantation. For in *Bythinia* there is a

Bay called *Sinus Ascanius*, together with a River and a Lake of the same name also. And in the lesser *Phrygia*, and the Country of *Troas*, there were both a City and a Province adjoining, anciently known by the name of *Ascania*, and the *Ascania Insula* also on the Coast thereof. Nor is it any thing unlikely, but that in Honour of this *Ashkenaz*, the Kings and great men of those parts, took the name of *Ascanius*. Of which name, besides *Ashkenaz* the Son of *Aeneas*, we find a King mentioned in the Second of *Homer's Iliads*, which came unto the aid of *Priamus* at the Siege of *Troy*. In the same Quarters of the World we find *Riphat* also, the Founder of the *Riphei*, a People dwelling in the East parts of *Bythinia*, and spreading also over *Paphlagonia*: In both which Provinces there are some Remnants of his Name to be found amongst the Antients. For, besides that *Josephus* saith expressly, that the *Paphlagonians* antiently were called *Riphei*, there is mentioned in *Apollonius's Argonauticks* of the River *Rhebeus*, which rising in *Bythinia*, emptieth it self into the *Pontus Euxinus*, near to *Paphlagonia*; of which River *Pliny* also doth inform us: and *Stephanus* doth not only acquit us with the River it self, but tells us also of a Region of the same name, and of a people thereabouts, which are called *Rhebei*. Nor need we look much further to find out the seat of *Togarmas* the Third Son of *Gomer*, whom the Prophet *Ezekiel* not only joyneth with his Father as two neighbouring Nations, but makes both of them to lye Northwards of *Judea*: *Gomer* and all his bands, the hosts of *Togarmas* in the North Quarters, and all his bands, cap. 38. 6. So that they do not guess amiss, who place *Togarmas* and his Progeny in *Cappadocia*: a Country not only bordering near to the Plantations of *Gomer*, and lying on the North of the Land of *Canaan*, but very well stocked with an excellent breed of Mules and Horses, as *Strabo* testifieth in the Eleventh Book of his Geography; with which commodities they traded as the Fairs of *Tyre*, as the fame Prophet tells us of them, *Chap. 27. 14.* But for a more evident proof of this, that *Togarmas* dwelling must be found in *Cappadocia*; we must first know that the Greek Translators call him generally by the name of *Togarmas*; and then, that antiently there was a people in *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, whom *Strabo* calleth *Trogmii*, and *Julius Trogmii* by *Stephanus* they are named *Trocmii*, and *Trocmades* in the Council of *Chalcedon*, in which *Cyrilian* Bishop of the *Trocmades* (*Κοκκαὶς Βίσιον & Τρογμάδων*) is often mentioned.

Having thus done with *Gomer*, and the Sons of *Gomer*, we will next pursue the rest of the Sons of *Japhet*, except *Javan* only, whom with his Four Sons we will keep together. And the next Son of *Japhet* is *Magog*, concerning whom there hath been much dispute and difference amongst our Antiquaries, some making him the Father of the *Scythians*, and some of the *Guths*, and others finally of the *Tartars*; all of them thinking that such terrible names as *Gog* and *Magog*, could not belong to any but such terrible Nations. And possible enough it is, that some of his posterity in succeeding times, finding their own seats too narrow for them, might remove further Northwards; and be the Founders of some *Scythian* and *Tartarian* Nation; but that *Magog*, himself in his first Plantation, should wander so far out of the way from the rest of his Brethren, when he had Elbow-room enough amongst them, I cannot easily imagine. Where therefore I find a Region in *Stephanus* called *Gogarus*, betwixt *Iberia* and *Colchis*; and read in *Pliny*, that the City of *Calo-Syria*, which the *Grecians* call *Hierapolis*, was by the *Syrians* themselves called *Magog*; I shall not trouble my self to look for *Magog* any where else, than in those Countries where they have left such evident Land-

Land-marks to discern themselves by. But this we shall the better see by looking out the dwellings of his two Brethren, *Mefech* and *Tubal*, who being joyned together with *Gog* and *Magog*, *Ezek. 38. 2.* and *39. 1.* are very unlike to have their dwellings far asunder: or that they could concur in any publick Action against the *Jews*, according to the scope and purpose of the Holy Prophet. Now it is probable (if not more) that *Mefech*, whom the Antients named *Mosch*, seated himself on the North and North-East of *Syria*, in the confines of *Colchis* and *Armenia*, and so unto the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. For all along that Tract runs a ridge of Hills, which *Pliny*, *Ptolemy*, and *Pomponius Mela* call *Montes Moschici*, determining *Colchis* from *Armenia*, and both from *Iberia*; and most like to be the dwelling of *Mefech* or *Mosch*, and to take denomination from him. And this I am the rather induced to think, because *Tubal*, whom the Scriptures generally joyn together with *Mefech*, is by most Writers said to have settled himself in *Iberia*, the next Province to it. *Josephus* also telling us, that antiently the *Iberi* were called *Thebeli*, though called *Iberians* afterwards on some new occasion. And hereto the constant tradition of the *Spaniards* gives some good authority, who boast of their descent from *Tubal*; which can no otherwise be granted, than as they were a Colony of these *Iberians*, from whence the Continent of *Spain* was once called *Iberia*; and where one of the principal Rivers is still called *Iberus*. For *Madai*, the third Son of *Japhet*, it is most plain by the Authority of Scripture (where there no proof else) that he was the Father of the *Medes*; who in the Book of *Daniel*, and that of *Hester*, are represented to us by no other name than that of *Madai*.

Thus having took a view of those who fixt themselves in either, or in both the Asia's; let us look on *Thyras*, *Javan*, and the Sons of *Javan*, whom not contented with their dwellings in the lesser Asia, filled all *Europe* by degrees with their numerous Progenies. And first beginning with *Javan* as the Elder Brother, most Authors make him the Original of those Greek Nations which pass under the general names of *Ionians*; and there is very good ground for the assertion, considering that the Greek Translators of the Bible instead of *Javan*, read *Ionan*, and that all those who elsewhere ordinarily are called *Ionians*, are by *Homer*, one of the Antientest of the Greeks, named *Ionians*. Now *Javan* and *Ionan* found so like each other, that they were the same. A name not only proper to the *Albanians*, and their *Coloniads*, (though probably enough first belonging to them of *Attica*) but comprehending the *Ionians* and *Achaean* also; yea, and extending also into *Macedonia*, as appears *Dan. 8. 21.* where *Alexander the Great*, in the Hebrew is called King of *Javan*, which we English *Greece*. Nor do we much dissent *Javan* from the rest of that stock, by carrying him cross the Seas into another part of the World; for he might go along with *Gomer* in his second Plantation; and leaving him well settled in the greater *Phrygia*, and his Son *Ashkenaz* in the lesser; might then with very little trouble (and no improbability at all) pass over the *Hellefpon*, and plant himself in *Attica*, called at first *Ionis*, faith *Plutarch* in the life of *Theseus*. Or if any one notwithstanding conceive this for too great a leap, and will rather think with *Hecataeus*, that the *Ionians* came out of Asia into *Greece* (as *Strabo* cites him to that purpose) shall not much contend against that opinion; to be also granted on the other side, that *Javan*, not having room enough on the Shores of Asia, passed over into *Greece*, as a Land unoccupied. With *Javan* went *Elifha* his Eldest Son, the Father of the *Aeolians*, or *Aeoli-*

ans, on the Asian side, as *Josephus* hath it; and the Founder of *Elis* in *Peloponnesus*, and Planter of the *Grecian* Isles, which by the Prophet *Ezekiel* 27. 7. are called the Isles of *Elifha*. And it agrees exceeding well with the Isles of *Greece*, what by the Prophet is affirmed of the Isles of *Elifha*; namely, that the Inhabitants thereof did trade to *Tyre* with *Bliss* and *Purple* in which some of the *Grecian* Isles were such excellent Artificers, that *Carpathus* had the name of *Purpuris*, and *Cithera* was called *Περπυρρα*, only from the abundance of *Purple*, which they had amongst them. Nor to say any thing of *Coar*, *Nisyros*, and *Gyarus*, and some other of the *Cyclades*, renowned in good Authors, for that Commodity.

A shorter Journey, but withal a far shorter Territory, fell to the lot of *Tarsish* the Second Son; whom *Javan*, when he travelled further upon new discoveries, left settled in *Cilicia*, a Province of the lesser Asia; where either he, or some of his Posterity, in honour of him built the City of *Tarsus*, the Principal City of that Province. For that *Tarsish* in those early days should go unto *Spain*, and there build *Tartessus*, I take to be a strange (if not idle) Romance; that Town being built by the *Phoenicians*, many Ages after, without Relation unto *Tarsish*, or his memory either. What Voyages or Plantations those of *Cilicia* or *Tarsus* made in times succeeding, as I no where find, so it is not material to my present purpose; which principally is to settle the Sons of *Noah* in their first Habitations. On therefore unto *Cittim*, the third Son of *Javan*, whom *Josephus* setteth first in the life of *Cyprus*, where he finds a City called *Cittium*, the birth place of *Zeno the Stoick*, thence *Sicronem* *Κιτιον*. *Josephus* is herein followed by *St. Hieron* in his Notes on *Genes*, in whose time (as *Pintus* telleth in his Comment on *Ezekiel*) the Town of *Cittium* was still standing; so do *Enchiridion* in his *Hexameron*, and divers others. The Author of the Book of *Maccabees* sets him further off, giving the name of *Cittim* unto *Macedonia*. After that (saith the Author) *Alexander the Son of Philip*, went forth of the Land of *Chethim*, and slew *Darius King of the Persians* and *Medes*, *Cap. 1. 11.* And after in the 8. Chapter of the same Book, *Verse 5.* *Perseus King of Macedonia* is called King of the *Cittians*. But this doth no way contradict that of his first planting in *Cyprus*, where it is very probable that he made his dwelling for a time, by reason of the neighbourhood of his Brother *Tarsish* (*Cilicia* and the City of *Tarsus* lying near unto it). But finding in time that Island to be either too barren, or too small for his people; and that the other parts both of *Greece* and *Asia* were taken up already by the first Adventurers, he might finally fix himself, or some of his posterity, in *Macedonia*, as a spare place which no body could lay claim unto. That either he or any of his Sons did plant first in *Italy*, which I see *Bochartus* would fain have, were against the method of Plantations; and he must give them wings to fly that conveyeth them thither, when as yet Mankind was not taught the use of Shipping, or not accustomed at least to make long Voyages. But that in course of time, as the World grew fuller, and that *Greece* was not able to contain its multitudes, some of the Race of *Cittim* might pass over into *Italy*, the passage thither from some of the Ports of *Greece* being short and easy, I am apt enough to believe, and in its proper place shall declare my self for it. Nor can I otherwise agree with him, as concerning *Dodanim*, whom against all right and reason he hath placed in *Gaul*; making the River *Rhodanus*, one of the principal of that Country, to be named of him; whom the *Greeks*, mistaking the letter *Daleth* for that of *Reph* (as indeed the letters are so like, that one

to the French, the Scots to the English; the Portuguese have the like inveterate hatred against the Spaniards. The Princes of Italy enjoy great possessions without any good title; but are continually opposed by the more potent Cities of Venice, Florence, Genoa, and Lucca. The Argentin Kings of Naples, have found perpetual Enemies of the House of Anjou; as have the Dukes of Milizia, of the Dukes of Orleans. The Princes of Italy, and the Florentines, have a litch at Venice; as the States of Genoa, and Sienna, have against the Florentines. In Germany the animosities have been great and of long continuance, between the Houses of Austria, and Bavaria; the hatred grown beyond all hopes of reconciliation which is between the Swabians, and the Austrian Family. The Dukes of Cleve, and Guick, are always upon ill terms with their Neighbours of Gelderland; and in the North, the Cities on the Baltic Seas have their continual quarrels with the Kings of Denmark. Nor are the enmities any thing less, if they be not greater, which are discernable amongst the people of Asia and Africa, than those that are above remembred. So far and to this purpose faith that noble and judicious Writer.

The consideration of which points, if there were no other, were of it self sufficient to shew the necessary use of History and Geography, as well for the understanding the affairs of the Ages past, as for commerce and correspondence with the Nations present. For had no Histories been written in the former times, in what dull ignorance had we lived of all those occurrences which do so much concern the whole state of Mankind, and are our principal directors in Life and Action? for in which respect the Orator must truly calleth it, *Magistrum vite*. For upon the credit of this History, the examples of our Ancestors, the grounds of civil prudence, and the fames of men do most especially depend. And certainly to draw back the mind to the contemplation of Matters long ago passed; to search out with diligence, and to deliver with faith, freedom, and the life of expression, such things as are found out on a diligent search; to represent unto our eyes the changes of Times, the Characters of Persons, the uncertainties of Councils, and the Conveyances of Actions, the subtleties of Pretensions, and the Secrets of State; must of necessity be a work of as publick use, as it is of great both pains and judgment. Besides, it gives a kind of eternity to all such men, who by their Councils or Achievements have deserved nobly of those Kingdoms, and Common-wealths, wherein they lived. And thereupon the Orator doth not only call it, *Magistrum vite*, but *Lumen veritatis*, *Telum temporis*, *Nuntium vetustatis*, & *Vite memoriam*. According to which Character I find these Verses set before a Chronicle of some Kings of England (more worth than all the Book besides)

For though in these days Miracles be fled,
Yet this ball of good Histories be said,
They call back time that's past, and give life to the dead.

Nor want the other motives to endure unto the use of History, besides the light it gives unto all the remarkable Actions of preceding times; and the eternity (if I may say so) which it conferreth on the *Actors* themselves, by the preservation of their names from the ruins of time, and the pit of Oblivion. For first, it stirreth men to Virtue, and deterrs them from Vice, by shewing forth the glorious memories of virtuous men and the ill favour which is left behind men of ungody life; and

especially keeps persons of most eminent place from letting loose the reins unto all licentiousness, by representing this to their consideration. That all their Actions shall be laid open one day to the view of the Vulgar. Secondly, it hath been a principal Conserver of most Arts and Sciences, by keeping on Record the Dictates and Opinions of so many of the old Philosophers; out of which, a perfect body of Philosophy, and others of the Liberal Arts hath been collected and digested. Thirdly, it is the best School-master in the Art of War, and teacher of Stratagems; and in that can practically afford more puseful directions, than can be otherwise obtained; and is withal the best Assistant to the Statesman or Politician, who from hence draw their Observations and Conclusions; and become thereby serviceable to their Prince and Country, though never travelled more than amongst their Books. So Archimedes in his study, and Demoghenes in his Orators Gown, endangered more the enemies of their several Countries, than the Athenians, or Syracusans, did by dint of Sword. And last of all, besides these civil benefits and considerations, and the great help which it affords in the way of discourse; there is no particular branch of knowledge more useful for the true and perfect understanding of holy Scripture, than that of Ecclesiastical and Prophane History; or which gives clearer light to many dark passages thereof, especially in the Propheticall Writings of either Testament.

This, as it shews the necessary use and benefit which redounds from History, so doth it serve to usher in that commendation which belongs to the study of Geography also; without some knowledge wherein, the study of History is neither so pleasant, nor so profitable, as a judicious Reader would desire to have it. 'Tis true Geography without History hath life and motion, but very unstable, and at random; but History without Geography, like a dead carcass, hath neither life, nor motion at all, or moves at least but slowly on the understanding. For what delight or satisfaction can any man receive from the reading of Story, without he know somewhat of the places, and the conditions of the people, which are therein mentioned? In which regard *Amianus Marcellinus* the Historian, hath deserved very well of all his Readers, premising to the Actions of every Country some brief Description of the place and chief Towns therein. For though the greatness of the Action doth ennoble and adorn the place; yet it is the knowledge of the place, which adds delight and satisfaction unto the reading of the Story, which conveys it to us. History therefore and Geography, like the two Fires or Meteors, which Philosophers call *Cosmos* and *Polaris*, if joined together, crown our reading with delight and profit; if parted, threatened both with a certain shipwreck; and are like two Sisters dearly loving, not without pity (I had almost said impiety) to be kept asunder. So as that which Sir Philip Sidney said of *Argalus* and *Parthenia*,

Her being was in him alone,
And he not being, he was none;

may be as justly said of History and Geography, as of those two Lovers. And yet this is not all the benefit which redounds from the study of Geography, which is exceeding useful to the reading of the holy Scriptures, as in discovering the situation of *Paradise*, the bounds and borders of those Countries which are therein mentioned; especially with relation to the travels of the *Patriarchs*, *Prophets*, *Evangelists*, and *Apostles*, yea of Christ himself; not otherwise to be comprehended and understood, but

by the help of Geographical Tables and descriptions. Besides this, it is useful to most sorts of men, as to *Astronomers*, who are hereby informed of the different appearances of Stars in several Countries; their several influences and aspects, their rising and setting, according to different *Horizons*. Secondly, to *Physicians*, who are hereby acquainted with the different temper of mens bodies, according to the *Climates* they live in; the nature and growth of many *Simplex*, and Medicinal Drugs, whereof every Country under Heaven hath some more natural and proper to it self, than to any others. Thirdly, to *Statesmen*, who from hence draw their knowledge of the nature and disposition of those people with whom they are to negotiate; the bounds and borders both of their own Kingdoms, and the neighbouring Countries, with the extent of their respective Dominions by Sea and Land; without the exact knowledge of which, there would be a perpetual Seminary of Wars and discord. Fourthly, to *Merchants*, *Mariners*, and *Souldiers*; the several Professors of which kinds of life, find nothing more necessary for them in their several callings, than a competent knowledge in Geography; which presents to them many notable advantages, both for their profit and contentment. Finally, by the study of Geography, a man that hath not opportunity nor means of travelling, may with as much benefit, but far less danger and expence, acquaint himself with the particular descriptions of Kingdoms, Provinces, Cities, Towns and Castles, with all things considerable in the same, together with the customs, manners, and dispositions of all foreign Nations; and that too in as full a manner, as if he had survey'd the one, and observed the other, by a personal visit of the places represented to him.

Such is the necessary use which men of ingenious studies and professions, do, and may make of History, and Geography, in the course of their callings and employments. And there are some things also necessary to the knowledge of each, that we may study them with the greater benefit and contentment. To History, it is only requisite that it be defined, distinguished from such writings as do seem to challenge the name of Histories; and that somewhat be premised of those several *Epoques* from which all people do begin their computations. But to Geography it is needful not only that we do define it, but that we explicate those Terms, or second *Notions*, which are not obvious to the understanding of every Reader. First then for History, if we consult the name or *Quid nominis* of it, it is derived *ἱστορίαν* i. e. *videre*; and therefore properly doth signifie a relation of such remarkable actions at which the Author was an Eye-witnes, if not an Agent, *Apud veteres enim* (saith *Isidore*) *nemo scribens Historiam, nisi is qui interfuit, & ea que scribenda essent vidisset*. But now the customary use of the word hath taught it a more ample signification. History being defined to be *A Perfect Relation of all Occurrences observable, hapning in the State whereof it is written, described by the Motives, Pretexis, Consultations, Speeches and Events; a special care being had both of Time and Place*.

As for the writings which do challenge the name of History, but indeed are really distinguished from it, they are *Commentaries*, *Annals*, *Diaries*, or *Journals*, and *Chronologies*. First *Commentaries* set down only a naked continuance of Events and Actions, without the Motives and designs, the Councils, Speeches, Occasions and Pretexis of businesse. So that *Cæsar* with more modesty than true propriety of speech, applied the name of *Commentaries* to the best History in the World, *A History* commended by King James to his Son Prince Henry, above all other prophane Authors, both for the sweet flowing of the stile,

and the worthiness of the matter it self. For I have ever (saith he) been of this opinion, that, of all Ethnick Emperors or great Captains, he hath farthest exceeded both in his practise and in his precept, for Marial affairs. Which makes me the more wonder at the strange and unjust censure of *Julius Lipsius* who calls them *Nudum & simpliciter narrativum*, for being intitled *Commentaries*, they do (saith he) *nil polliceri præter nomen*; with pride and arrogance enough. 2. For *Annals* next; they are a bare recital only of the Actions happening every year, without regard yet to the causes and pretexis, or any of the chief Ingredients required in History. So that *Tacitus* had no other reason to give the name of *Annals* to his excellent Work, than that it is distinguished by the years of the Consuls. Otherwise there is no great difference as unto the matter betwixt an History and an *Annal*, the subject of them both, being matter of State; and not such trivial things as Triumphs, Pageants, and such like, which stand not with the gravity and authority of Historical *Annals*; betwixt which and a *Diary*, the same *Tacitus* (speaking of some magnificent structures which were built that year) doth make this difference, *Res illustres Annalibus, talia diurnis Urbis actis mandari*, that matters of the greater moment were committed to *Annals*, and unto *Diaries* the Acts and Accidents of a meaner nature. 3. But *Diaries*, besides this difference in point of matter are distinguished from *Annals* also in point of time, a *Diary* or *Journal*, as the name imports, containing the Actions of each day; of which kind was the Chronicle called for by *Abasurns*, in which the Actions of his Court were referred to *Journals*, and in the which he found the relation of the treason intended against him by his Eunuchs. And of this kind was that of King *Edward* the sixth, mentioned in the History of his life, by Sir John Hayward. 4. Last of all for *Chronologies*; they are only bare supputations of times, with some brief touch upon the Actions therein happening, such as those of *Eusebius*, *Festus*, *Cassiodorus*, and *Heliensis*; of which last I dare give that testimony which *Paterculus* affords to *Ovid*, viz. that he is *perstitissimus in forma operis sui*; though he and all the rest are debtors to *Eusebius* for the incredible pains taken by him in his excellent *Chronicon*. Out of these four, as out of the four Elements, the Quintessence of History is extracted: borrowing from *Annals* time, from *Diaries* and *Commentaries* matter, from *Chronologies* content of time and co-entrancy of Princes; and discrete adding of her own all such other Ornaments in which these four are found defective.

That which remains is to premise somewhat of those several *Epoques*, from whence particular States, Nations and People, make their computations. There have been very different in former times, according to the several occasions took in several Countries. The Jews had several *Epoche* peculiar to themselves alone, and one in common with their Neighbours. Those which they had amongst themselves were first from the Creation of the World, or the beginning of time; Secondly from the universal Deluge, which hapned, *A. M.* 1656. Thirdly, from the Confusion of Tongues, *A. M.* 1786. Fourthly, from *Abrahams* journey out of *Chaldea* unto *Ganaan*, *A. M.* 2021. Fifthly, from their deliverance out of Egypt, *A. M.* 2453. Sixthly, from the first year of *Jubilee*, *A. M.* 2499. Seventhly, from the building of *Solomons* Temple, *An.* 2932. And lastly, from the Captivity of *Babylon*, *An.* 3368. That which they had common with other Nations, was the *Æra* or *Epoche* of the victory of the Greeks, which took beginning on the first Victory which *Seleucus* had against *Antigonum*, which was in *A. M.* 3637. An Accompt much used by the Jews, *Chaldeans*, *Syrians*, and other Nations of the East.

But the *Chaldeans* also had their own *Epoche* or Account apart, reckoning their time from the first year of *Nabonassar* (*Salmonasser* he is called in Scripture) which being 438 years before this of *Selenicus*, must fall in A.M. 3201. Next for the *Grecians*, they reckon'd a long while by *Olympiads*, the first of which is placed in the year of the World, 3174. (of which more hereafter.) But this Account perishing under the *Constantinopolitans*, they reckon'd after by *Inditions* (an account devised by *Justinian*;) every *Indition* containing 15 years, the first beginning A.Chr. 513, which amongst *Chronologists* is still used. The *Romans* reckon'd first from the foundation of their City, which was A.M. 3213, and afterwards from the sixteenth year of *Augustus* his Empire, (being that which is properly call'd the *Roman Era*) A.M. 3936. An account used by the *Spaniards* (where it first began) till the Reign of *Pedro* the fourth of *Aragon*, who abrogated it in his Dominions, A.Chr. 1350, followed there in by *John* the first of *Castile*, A.D. 1383, and then at last by the King of *Portugal* also, 1415. The *Christians* generally do reckon from the Birth of *CHRIST*, but this they did not use till the year 600, following in the mean time the Account of the Empire. And finally the *Mahometans* begin their *Hegira* (for so they call the time of their Computation) from the flight of their Prophet *Mahomet* from *Meca*, when he was driven thence by the *Phylarches*, which hapned A.Chr. 617. Of these we shall make use generally but of two alone, those namely of the Worlds Creation, and our Saviours Birth; and of the building of *Rome*, and the flight of *Mahomet*, in things that do relate to those several States.

Next for *Geography* we will first define it, and after explicate such terms or second notions, as are not obvious to the understanding of every Reader. First for the definition of it, it is said by *Prology* to be a description of the whole Earth, or the whole Earth imitated by writing and delineation, with all other things generally annexed unto it. Η Γεωγραφία ὁμοιωσις ἐστὶ διὰ γραφῆς (and not διαγραφῆς, as it is commonly but corruptly read) τῆς κατασκευῆς αὐτῆς τῆς γῆς μὲντοι καὶ μὲντοι τῶν ἐν ταύτῃ περιλαμβανόμενων, as his own words are. In which we look not on the Earth simply as it is an Element, for so it belongeth to *Philosophy*; but as it is a *Spherical* body proportionably composed of Earth and Water, and so it is the subject of *Geography*.

First for the *Earth* which is the first part of this body, it is affirmed by the best Writers to be 21600 miles in compass; which is demonstrable enough. For being there are in every of the greater Circles 360 degrees, every degree being reckon'd at 60 miles: let 360 be multiplied by 60, and the *Product* will be 21600 as before is said. So that if it were possible to make a path round about the Earth, an able Footman going constantly 24 miles a day, would compass it in 900 days.

The Earth is divided, in respect of men, into the right hand and the left: In respect of it self, into parts Real and Imaginary.

To *Poets* which turn their faces towards the *Fortunate Islands* (so memorized and chanted by them) which are situated in the West: the North is the right hand, and the South the left.

To the *Angels* of old, and in our days to *Priests* and men in holy Orders, who usually in their Sacrifices and divine Oblations, convert themselves unto the East, the South is the right hand, and the North the left.

To *Astronomers*, who turn their faces towards the South, because that way the motions of the *Planets* may be best observed, the West is the right hand, and the East the left.

Finally, to *Geographers*, who, by reason they have fo

much to do with the *Elevation of the Pole*, do turn their face towards the North: the East is the right hand, and the West the left.

The Real parts of the Earth are divided commonly into *Continents*, *Islands*.

A *Continent* is a great quantity of Land not separated by any Sea from the rest of the World, as the whole Continent of *Europe*, *Asia*, *Africa*; or the Continents of *France*, *Spain*, *Germany*.

An *Island* is a part of Earth invironed round about with some Sea or other: as the Isle of *Britain*, with the Ocean; the Isle of *Sicily*, with the Mediterranean: and therefore in *Latine* it is call'd *Insula*, because it is situate in *fale*, as some derive it.

Touching the *Continent* I have nothing in general to enlarge, till we come to the particular *Chorography* and description of them. But for *Islands* (leaving the disquisition of their being, or not being before the Flood) there are four cafes to which they may be thought to owe their Original. 1. An *Earthquake*, which works two ways towards their production: First, when by it one part of a Country is forcibly torn away from the other; and so *Euboea* was divided from the rest of *Attica*: and secondly when some vehement wind or vapour being thrust up in such parts of the Earth as be under the Sea, raiseth the Earth above the Water; whereunto the Original of most of those Islands, which are far remote from any part of the Continent, is probably to be referred.

2. Great Rivers at their entry into the Sea carry with them abundance of gravel, dirt, and weeds; which if the Sea be not the more working, will in time settle to an Island. So the Corn which *Tarquinius* sowed in the *Campus Martius*, being cut down by the people and cast into the River, settled together, and made the *Holy Island*. So *Tiber*, *Abelonus* caused the *Ebhidæ*, as we shall more at large declare; and so the Island of *Loanda* in the Kingdom of *Congo*, is said to have been made out of the Sands of the Ocean, and the Mine of the great River *Laanza*, cast into an heap, and at last formed into an Island. 3. The Sea violently beating on some small *lithmus*, weareth it through, turneth the *Peninsula* into a complete *Iste*. Thus was *Sicily* divided from *Italy*, *Cyprus* from *Syria*, *England* from *France*, and *Wight* from the rest of *England*. And 4. sometimes as it catcheth and worketh on some places, so it voluntarily leaveth and abandoneth others, which in some time grow to be Islands, and firm land under foot. So it is thought the *Isle of Zealand* have been once part of the main Sea: and *Vesputian* proveth it, because that the Husbandmen in tilling and manuring the ground, find sometimes Anchors here and there fixt, but very often the bones of huge and great fishes, which could by no accident come thither. To these kind of Islands, *Pythagoras* in *Ovid* alluding, saith,

Vidi scilicet ex æquore terras,
Et procul a pelago conchæ jacuere marine,
Et vetus inventa est in montibus anchora firmis.

Of these I have seen that earth, which once I knew Part of the Sea; so that a man might view Huge shells of Fishes in the upland ground; And on the mountain-tops old Anchors found.

As concerning the situation of *Islands*, whether commodious or not, this is my judgment. I find in *Machiavel*, that for a City whose people covet no Empire but their own Towns, a barren place is better than a fruitful; because in such seats they are compelled to work

work and labour, by which they are freed from idleness, and by consequence from riotousness: but for a City whose Inhabitants desire to enlarge their Confines, fertile place was rather to be chosen than a sterile, as being more able to nourish multitudes of people. The like I say of Islands. If a Prince desire rather to keep than augment his Dominions, no place fitter for his abode than an Island; as being by it self and nature sufficiently defensible. But if a King be minded to add continually to his Empire, an Island is no fit fear him; because partly by the uncertainty of Winds and Seas, partly by the longness of the ways, he is not so well able to supply and keep such forces as he hath on the Continent. An example hereto is *England*, which hath even to admiration repelled the most puissant Monarch of *Europe*; but for the causes above mentioned, cannot then any of her winnings on the firm land, though the hath attempted and achiev'd as many glorious exploits, as any Country in the World.

The Continent and Island are sub-divided into *Peninsula*, *lithmus*, *Promontorium*.

Peninsula quasi pene Insula, is a tract of land, which being almost encompassed round by water, is joynted to the firm land by some little *lithmus*; as *Peloponnesus*, *Tanrica*, and *Pernana*.

lithmus is that narrow neck of land, which joyneth the *Peninsula* to the Continent; as the Straights of *Dariene* in *America*, and of *Corinth* in *Greece*.

Promontorium, is a high Mountain which shooteth it self into the Sea, the utmost end of which is called a *Fore-land*, or *Cape*, as the *Cape of good Hope* in *Africa*; *Cape Comari* in *India*, &c.

The Imaginary parts of the Earth are such which not being at all in the Earth, must yet be supposed to be so, for the better teaching and learning this Science; and are certain Circles going about the Earth, answerable to them in Heaven, in name.

These Circles are either the Greater, or Lesser: in both which there are 360 Degrees, which in the greater Circles are greater then those in the lesser; and every Degree in the greater is 60 miles.

The greater Circles are either Immutable, as the *Æquator*. Mutable, as the *Horizon*, *Meridian*.

The *Æquator* is a great Circle going round about the Terrestrial Globe from East to West. It passeth through *Habossa*, *Sumatra*, *Guiana*, &c. The use of it is to shew the Latitude of any Town, *Promontory*, &c. Now the Latitude is the distance of a place South or North from the *Æquator*, or middle of the World; and must be measured on the Globe by the Degrees in the *Meridian*.

The *Meridian* is a great Circle rounding the Earth from Pole to Pole. There are many *Meridians*, according to the divers places in which a man liveth; but the chief and first *Meridian* passeth through the Island *St. Michael* one of the *Azores*. The use of it is to shew the Longitude of any place. Now the Longitude of a City, *Cape*, &c. is the distance off East and West from the first *Meridian*, and is usually measured on the Globe by the Degrees of the *Æquator*.

The *Horizon* is a great Circle, designing so great a space of the earth, as a quick sight can ken in an open field. The use of it is to discern the divers risings and settings of the Stars.

The lesser Circles either are noted with some name, as *Tropical* of *Cancer*, *Capricorn*; *Polar*, either *Arctic*, *Antarctic*; Noted with no distinct name, and are the *Parallels*.

The *Tropic of Cancer* (so called of the Cælestial Sign *Cancer*) is distant from the *Æquinoctial* 23 Degrees Northward, and passeth through *Barbary*, *India*, *China*, and *Nova Hispania*.

The *Tropic of Capricorn*, equally distant from the *Æquator* Southward, passeth through *Libiopia inferior*, and the midst of *Pernana*. And this is to be observed in these *Tropicks*, that when the Sun is in the *Tropic of Cancer*, our days are at the longest; and when he is gone back to the *Tropic of Capricorn*, the days are at the shortest. The first they call the Summer, the last they call the Winter *Solstice*; the first happening on, or about *St. Barnabas* day in June; the last on, or about *St. Lucie* day in December.

The *Arctic Circle* (so called for that it is correspondent to the Constellation in Heaven called the *Bear*, in *Greek*, *Arctos*) is distant from the *Tropic of Cancer* 45 Degrees, and passeth through *Normay*, *Muscovy*, *Tartary*, &c.

The *Antarctic* (so called because opposite to the other) is as much distant from the *Tropic of Capricorn*, and passeth through *Terra Australis Incognita*. The use of these four Circles is to describe the Zones.

The Zones are spaces of Earth included betwixt two of the lesser nominated Circles. They are in number five, one over-hot, two over-cold, and two temperate.

The over-hot, or *Torrid Zone*, is betwixt the two *Tropicks*, continually scorched with the presence of the Sun.

The two over-cold, or *Frigid Zones*, are situate between the two *Polar Circles*, and the very *Poles*; continually wanting the neighbourhood of the Sun.

The two *Temperate Zones*, are betwixt the *Tropic of Cancer*, and the *Arctic*; and twixt the *Tropic of Capricorn*, and the *Antarctic* Circles, enjoying an indifferency between heat and cold; so that the parts next the *Torrid Zone* are the hotter, and the parts next the *Frigid Zone* are the colder.

These five Zones are disposed according to the order of the Zones in Heaven; of which thus *Ovid Metamor.* 1.

Vique dux dextra calum, totidemq; sinistra
Parte fœant Zones, quinta est ardior illis;
Sic omnes inclusim plures distinctis eodem
Cura Dei totidemq; namque tellure premuntur.
Quarum quæ media est, non est habitabilis æstus;
Nix tegit alta duas: totidem inter utramq; locavit,
Temperiemq; dedit, mixta cum frigore flamma.

And as two Zones do cut the Heavens right-side, And likewise other two the left divide, The midst in heat excelling all the rest; Even so it seem'd to the Creator best; That this our World should so divided be, That with the Heavens in Zones it might agree. The midst in heat; the outward most excel In Snow and Ice, scarce fit for men to dwell. Betwixt these two Extrems, two more are fixt, Where heat with cold indifferently is mixt.

Parallels, call'd also *Æquidistantes*, circle the Earth from East to West, and are commonly ten Degrees asunder: Such are the *Parallels* which are set down in our Maps and Globes. But there are another sort of *Parallels*, two of which go to a *Clime*. These are call'd *Artificial* *Parallels*, because they shew the difference of the *Artificial* days; and are of an unequal breadth, as we shall see in the Table following. The use of these lesser *Parallels* is to shew the *Climates*.

Now a *Clime*, or *Climata*, is a space of the Earth contained betwixt two *Parallels*, the middlemost whereof divideth it into two equal parts: serving for setting out the length and shortness of the days in every Country. For under the *Æquator* the days are of the just length of

12 hours; but afterwards they encrease the length of half an hour for every *Clime*, till they come to the length of 24 hours, without night at all; which length attained, they encrease no more by hours, but by weeks and months, till they come to the length of half a year. So that we are to reckon 24 *Climes* Northward, and as many Southward: Those Northward known by the proper name of the place or City over which the middle Parallel of the *Climes* doth pass, as *Dia Meroc*, *Dia Siene*, &c. Those on the South by the same names, with the condition of *Anti-Dia-Siene*, *Anti-Dia-Meroc*, &c. 'Tis true, the ancient *Cosmographers* made but seven *Climes* in all; at the most but nine. Nor needed they to add more, as the cause stood with them; the extent of the habitable World towards each of the Poles, not being so fully known to them, as it is to us.

And here, because those *Climes* are not of equal breadth or extent of Latitude, but grow narrower and narrower towards each Pole; in which regard, it is impossible to describe them under any Rule: I have thought fit to add this ensuing Table, partly framed out of the Commentaries of *Clavius* on the works of *John de Sacro Bosco*, and partly out of *Hues* his Book, *Of the use of the Globe*. The whole divided into 7 Columns. In the first whereof is shewed what *Climes* are inhabited by the *Amphiscii*, *Periscii*, and *Heteroscii*, which terms we shall anon expound; in the second, is set down the number of the *Climes*; themselves; In the third the number of the *Parallels*; In the fourth, the length of the days in Summer; In the fifth, the distance of every *Clime* and *Parallels* from the *Æquator*; In the seventh, the name of the Town or place, through which the middlemost of the three *Parallels* doth pass in this manner following.

Here followeth the Table of the Climes.

A second use of these *Parallels* and other Circles, is for distinction of men in their several dwellings, who are (according as they are treated of in *Geography*) divided in respect of their shadows into *Amphiscii*, *Periscii*, *Heteroscii*; and in respect of their site and position, into *Anteci*, *Periceci*, and *Antipodes*. 1. *Amphiscii* are such as dwell between the two *Tropicks*; so called, because their shadows are both ways; sometimes (when the Sun is North) to the South; sometimes (when the Sun is South) to the north.

2. *Periscii* are such as dwell beyond the Polar Circles so called, because their shadows are on all sides of them.

3. *Heteroscii* are such as dwell in either of the two temperate Zones; so called, because their shadows reach but one way *viz.* in our Zone, to the North only; as in the other, to the South only.

4. *Anteci* are such as dwell under the same Meridian, and the same Latitude or Parallel equally distant from the *Æquator*; the one Northward, the other Southward: the days in both places being of a length; but the Summer of the one, being the others Winter.

5. *Periceci* are such as dwell in the same Parallel, on the same side of the *Æquator*, how distant soever they be East and West; the season of the year, and the length of days being to both alike; but the ones midnight, being the others noon.

6. *Antipodes* are such as dwell feet to feet, so as a right line drawn from the one unto the other, passeth from North to South, through the Center of the World. These are distant 180 degrees, which is half the compass of the Earth. They differ in all things as seasons of the year, length of days, rising and setting of the Sun, with the like. A matter reckoned so ridiculous, and impossi-

ble (if not somewhat worse) in the former times; that *Boniface* Archbishop of *Metz* hapning to see a Trade written by *Virgilius* Bishop of *Salzburg*, touching the *Antipodes*; and not knowing what damnable Doctrine might be couched under that strange name, made complaint first to the Duke of *Bohemia*, and after to Pope *Zachary*, *An.* 745. By whom the poor Bishop (unfortunate only in being learned in such a time of ignorance) was condemned of Heretic. But *Boniface* might the rather be excused, in regard that many of his betters fell also on the self-same error. For venerable *Bede*, a man whose Books Arch. B. *Boniface* was not worthy to carry, esteemeth the opinion touching the *Antipodes*, to be no better than a Fable; *neq. enim Antipodarum ullatenus est fabulis accommodandus assensus*, in his Book de *Ratione temporum*, cap. 32. And yet the marvel is the less, considering that he lived in the darker times of the Church, when the state of Learning was in its declination; when *S. Augustine* and *Laetantius*, and some others of the Ancient Writers, who lived when learning was at the very height, condemn this point of the *Antipodes*, for an incredible ridiculous Fable: whose words I could put down at large, did I think it necessary. So that we of these Ages have very good cause (to use the words of the late *L. Verrulam*) to congratulate the present times, in that the World in these our days, have through-light made in it, after a wonderful manner; whereby we clearly see those things, which either were unknown, or but blindly guessed at by the Ancients.

But to proceed, the second part of the *Territorial Globe* is the *Water*, which making but one *Globe* with the *Earth*, is yet higher than it. This appears, first, because it is a body not so heavy; Secondly, it is observed by Saylor that their Ships move faster to the shore than from it; whereof no reason can be given but the height of the water above the land. Thirdly, to such as stand on the shore, the Sea seems to swell into the form of a round hill, till it puts a bound upon our sight. Now that the Sea hovering thus over and above the Earth, doth not overwhelm it, must be ascribed only to his Power and Providence, who, hath made the waters to stand on a heap; who hath set them a bound that they should not pass, nor turn again to cover the Earth. The other affections and Properties of the Sea, as motion, saltness, and the like, I willingly omit, as belonging rather to Philosophers, than this present Argument.

The Sea or Water is divided into 1. *Oceanus*, 2. *Mare*, 3. *Fretum*, 4. *Sinus*, 5. *Lacus*, 6. *Flumina*.

Of which and other Waters thus said *Ovid* in his *Metamorphosis*.

*Tum freta diffusit, rapidisq. timescere venit
Jussit, & ambire circumdare littora terre.
Addidit & Fontes, & Stagna immensa, Lacusq.
Fluminaq. obliquis cinxit declivis ripis* &c.

Which may be Englisht to this purpose.

He spread the Seas, which then he did command
To swell with winds, and compass round the Land:
To those he adds Springs, Ponds, and Lakes immense,
And Rivers, which their winding Borders fence.
Of those not few Earths thirstily jaws devour,
The rest their streams into the Ocean pour;
When in that liquid Plain with freer Wave,
The foamy Cliffs instead of Banks they lave.

And

A Table of the Climates belonging to the three Sorts of Inhabitants, Page 20.

Inhabitants be- longing to seve- ral Climates.	Climes.	Paral- lels.	The length summer day.	Latit. Eleva- tion of the Pole	The breadth of the climates	The places by which the Climes pass.	
		H.	Scr.	Dig.	St.	Dig.	St.
<i>Amphiscii.</i>	0	0	12	0	0	18	The beginning from the <i>Æquator</i> .
	1	1	12	15	4	18	Sinus Arabicus, or the Red Sea.
	2	2	12	30	8	18	Meroc an Island of Nilus in Egypt.
	3	3	12	45	12	18	Siene a City in Africa.
<i>Heteroscii.</i>	4	8	14	0	30	49	Alexandria in Egypt.
	5	10	14	15	30	49	Rhodes and Babylon.
	6	12	15	0	45	30	Rome and Hellepont.
	7	14	15	15	45	30	Venice and Millain.
	8	16	16	0	45	30	Podolla and the lesser Tartary.
	9	18	16	15	51	30	Batavia and Wittenburgh.
	10	20	17	0	54	29	Rostoch.
	11	22	17	15	53	34	Ireland in Muscovy.
	12	24	18	0	58	26	Bolnse a Castle in Norway.
	13	26	18	15	50	14	Gothland.
	14	28	19	0	61	18	Bergen in Norway.
	15	30	19	15	60	25	Wiburg in Finland.
	16	32	20	0	63	28	Arotia in Sweden.
	17	34	20	15	64	6	The mouth of Daireally a River in Sweden.
	18	36	21	0	64	45	Divers places of Norway.
	19	38	21	15	65	21	Suecia, Alba Russia.
20	40	22	0	65	47	With many Islands	
21	42	22	15	65	50	Therunto adjoining,	
22	44	23	0	66	20	Wanting special names,	
23	46	23	15	66	30	And Land-marke.	
24	48	24	0	66	31	Islands under the Arctic Circle.	
<i>Periscii.</i>					Minutes.		
					1	67	15
					2	69	30
					3	73	20
					4	78	20
					5	84	0
					0	90	0
							And

And for *Oceanus* the *Ocean*, is that general Collection of all waters, which encompasseth the Earth on every side. A point which *Ovid* hath determined right enough, but laught at by *Horodotus* in the former times; who counted it a gross absurdity for any man to relate or write, that the Earth was round, or compassed about with the main *Ocean*. But Modern Navigations have found that to be true, which he held ridiculous; and which the most learned in those times knew rather by conjecture than by demonstration. Nor were those Ages so acquainted with those ebbs and flowings of the *Ocean*, and all those other Seas and Rivers which have intercourse with it, as the meanest Sailor at the present. The natural causes of the which seeming so full of difficulty to the best of the Ancients, Experience hath taught us to ascribe wholly to the *Moon*; at whose *Full* and *Prime* the *Tides* are ever highest, and the Sea most furious. For as soon as the *Moon* cometh forth from under our *Horizon*, the Sea beginneth to swell, and floweth towards the East, (as it were to wait upon her, or bear her company) till she come unto the height of our *Meridian*: after which till her setting or Western fall, the Sea abateth or decreaseth, which we call the *Ebb*. And when she passeth out of our *Horizon* towards the *Antipodes*, the *Ocean* begins to swell till the height of Midnight, and coming towards our *Hemisphere* doth again abate. In brief, from the *New Moon* till the first quarter the Sea decreaseth; from the first quarter to the *full* it is said to *spring*: from the *full* to the last quarter it is said to *nepe*; and from the last quarter to the *prime* it springs again. As for the uncertainty of the *Tides*, varying every day, it is not so perplexed and intricate, but that they which live on the Banks or Shores thereof know well when to look for it; the next days *Tide* coming for the most part, one hour ten minutes after the time it hapned on the day fore-going.

2. *Mare*, the *Sea*, is a part of the main *Ocean*, to which we cannot come but through some *Fretum* or *Straight*; as *Mare Mediterraneum*. And it takes name, First, either from the adjacent Shore, as *Mare Adriaticum*, from the City of *Adria*; *Mare Tyrrhenum*, from the Coast of *Tifany*: Or, Secondly, from the first Discoverer, as *Mare Magellanicum*, from *Magellanus*, who first found it; Or, Thirdly, from some remarkable Accident, as *Mare Icarium*, from the drowning of *Icarus*, the Son of *Dædalus*.

3. *Fretum*, a *Straight* is a part of the *Ocean*, penned within narrow bounds, and opening a way into some Sea, or out of some Sea into the *Ocean*, as the *Straight of Hellespont*, *Gibraltar*, *Fretum Davis*, &c.

4. *Sinus*, a *Creek* or *Bay*, is a Sea contained within a crooked or circling Shore, wherewith it is almost environed; as *Sinus Persicus*, *Corinthiacus*, &c. and this is sometimes called a *Gulf*, as the *Gulf of Lepanto*.

5. *Lacus*, a *Lake*, is a great body or collection of waters, which hath no visible intercourse with the Sea, or influx into it; as the *Lake of Thrasymene* in *Italy*; the *Lacus Asphaltites*, or the *Dead Sea*, in the Land of *Canaan*, and of this kind properly is the *Mare Caspium*, though by reason of the greatness of it, it is called a *Sea*.

6. *Flumina*, or *Fluvius*, is a Watercourse continually running, whereby it differeth from *Stagnum*, or a standing Pool, issuing from some Spring or Lake, and emptying it self into some part of the Sea or some other great River; the mouth or out-let of which is called *Ostium*: *Siberinaque longe Ostia*, as the Poet hath it. These are conceived in the Earth, and derive both their birth and continual sustentation from the Air; which piercing the open chinks or *Chasmes* of the Earth, and congealed by the extreme cold of that Element, dissolves into water (as we see the Air in winter-nights to be melted into a

pearly dew, sticking on our glass windows;) and being grown to some quantity, will (like *Humbal* in the *Alps*) either find a way, or make a way to vent its superfluity. Which beginning is seconded by the *Ocean*, which running through the hidden passages of the Earth, joyneth it self with this aerial vapour, and continueth the begun current. This Sea-water (though in it self of a salt and brackish favour, yet) passing through divers windings and turnings of the Earth, is deprived of all unpleasantness, and by how much the Spring-heads of Rivers are remote from the Sea, by so much actually are their waters affected with a delightful relish. Rivers having thus entered themselves into a good course, are never without the assistance of neighbouring Springs and waters; by whose addition they augment their streams, till they dischannel themselves into the Sea. Now there is of Rivers a treble use: First, that out of them Drink may be afforded to man and beast; Secondly, that running through the Earth, as blood through the body, by interlacing it, and sometimes overwhelming it, it might make the Earth able to produce those fruits which are necessary for the life of man. The last use of Rivers is, canals and speediness of conduct; and hereto are required four conditions: First, the depth, because deep waters sustain the bigger burdens, and on their navigation is more safe. Secondly, pleasantness, whereby the passage is ease both with the stream and against it: whereas in Rivers of a violent current or such as fall down by great *Locks* or *Cataracts*, the falling or rowing up the waters is as dangerous as laborious. Thirdly, the thinness of the water; for by how much the more slimy and gross a water is, by so much can it carry the heavier burdens. So *Tiber*, a River of more fame than depth, or breadth, is better for navigation, by reason of its fatness, than the pure and thin waters of the large and excellent River *Nilus*. Fourthly, the broadness of the Channel, that Ships and other Vessels may conveniently wind and turn, and give way to each other. Some of the old *Philosophers* reputed this conduct so dangerous that one of them being asked whether he thought the living or the dead were the greater number, would not declare himself, because he knew not in which rank to place such as were at Sea. And *Cato Major* thought that men never committed greater folly in their lives than in venturing to go by water, when they might have gone by land. I am none of that Sect, yet I cannot but hold with him that said, *Dulcissima est ambulatio prope aquas, navigatio juxta terram*.

The chief Rivers of Europe, are *Danubius*, and the *Rhone*; of Africa, *Nilus* and *Niger*; of Asia, *Ganger* and *Euphrates*; of America, *Orenago* and *Maragana*. Of which and others, more in its proper place.

Thus have we gone over these particulars both of Earth and Water, which are considerable in Geography, and come within the compass of those *Anaxarctus* of each which *Ptolomy* calleth *τὰ κοινὰ*: And having so done, may discover where the difference lieth between Geography and Chorography; which to some men, not rightly looking into the nature of both, seem to be the same. For howsoever a Chorographer doth describe a Country by the bounds, Rivers, Hills, and most notable Cities; yet it is still but the description of some place or Country, and not of the whole Earth universally, which is the proper work of a Geographer. So that Chorography differeth from Geography as a part from the whole: that being as *Ptolomy* doth very handsomely express it, like the painting of an eye or an ear, or some other member; this, as the picturing of the head, or whole body of Man. But Geography in its full latitude comprehendeth not Chorography only, but Topography and Hydrography also.

Of these the last is the delineation of the Sea by its several Names, Ports, Promontories, Creeks, and other affections; as also of great Lakes and Rivers: which is most necessary for the use of *Mariners*, and is best done by *Petrus de Medius*, *Peter Novius* in his *Regula Artis Nauticæ*, and *Johannes Avicarius* in his *Speculum Nauticum*, the chief writers in the Art of *Pilots*.

2. *Topography* is the description of some particular place or City; of which kind was the Book of *Stephanus*, *des villes*, or *de Urbibus*, among the Antients; and the *Theatrum Urbium* written by *Brutus* in these latter times; *Stow's* Book of the Survey of *London*, the *French Antiquities de Paris*, and such as these. And of this kind is the description of the Vale of *Tempe*, in the greater *Ortelius*; and of those the *Elysian* fields, the Gardens of *Alcinous*, and the *Hesperides* in the ancient Poets.

3. *Chorography* (as before was said) is the exact description of some Kingdom, Country, or particular Province of the same; unless this last may fall more properly under the motion of *Topography*. Of this kind the description of the several Estates of *Greece* written by *Pausanias*, is of most use and reputation of all the Antients: as that of *Camden Clavennæ*, for the Isle of *Britain*; of *Levis Guicciardine*, for the Low-Countries; *Leander* for *Italy*, &c. are amongst the Modern.

4. *Geography*, finally is an aggregate of all these together, borrowing from *Hydrography* the description of Seas and Waters; From *Topography*, that of Towns, Cities; and particular places; and from *Corography*, the delineations of Regions, Provinces and Kingdoms, which brought into body, make up that Portraiture or Picture of the whole Earth, and every considerable part thereof in writing; which, according to *Ptolemy's* definition before mentioned, is properly and truly called *Geography*. In the advancement of which studies, those which have took most pains, with the greatest benefit to Posterity, are the said *Ptolemy*, *Pliny*, and *Strabo* for the elder times;

Mercator, *Maginus*, and *Ortelius*, for the later Ages. Of which the two first lived in the times of *Antonius Pius*, the Roman Emperor, *An. Chr. 141*, or thereabouts; the other in the reign of *Tiberius Cæsar*, the unworthy Successor of *Augustus*: the three last flourishing in the days of our Fathers, about some 80 years ago.

Thus have I briefly summed up those general *Præconita*, which I conceive are necessary to the knowledge and understanding as well of *History* as of *Geography*. Out of which two compounded and intermixt, ariseth that universal Comprehension of *Natural* and *Civil* Story, which by a proper and distinct name may be termed *Cosmography*. And this may well be reckoned amongst mixed Stories; for it hath from *Natural History* or *Geography*, the Regions themselves, together with their Sites, and several Commodities; from *Civil History*, Habitations, Governments, and Manners; and from the *Mathematick*, the *Climates* and Configurations of the Heavens, under which the Coasts and Quarters of the World do lie. Of the Utility and Excellency of which study I need say no more, than what hath been already spoken of the several parts, whereof this is only the Result, desiring pardon of the Reader, that I have Christened these imperfect and unworthy Papers by so noble a name: which I desire they may deserve, though I fear they will not. However I will give the venture, and make as speedy and as profitable a discovery, as the times enable me, of the whole World, and the most observable things therein; according to the best light which the reading of *Histories* and *Geographical* discourses hath supplied me with; beseeching him who made the World, and ordereth all the Governments and Affairs thereof as to him seems best, to blefs me in the undertaking; and furnish me with fit Abilities both of strength and judgment to go through with it. *Ipse enim est qui operatur in nobis & velle & perficere*; as the Scripture hath it: And so on in God's name.

COSMO.

COSMOGRAPHY.

The First Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY

AND

HISTORY

O F

ITALY, the ALPINE Provinces, FRANCE, SPAIN,
and BRITAIN, with the ISLES thereof.

By PETER HETLIN.

Florus in Proem. l. 1.

Populus Romanus a Rege Romulo ad Cæsarem Augustum ita late per orbem terrarum arma circumtulit, ut qui res ejus legunt, non unius Populi, sed generis humani factò discant.

Velleius Patercul. Hist.

Quemadmodum Urbem Imperiorumque, ita & Gentium nunc floret fortuna, nunc senescit, nunc interit.



L O N D O N,

Printed by T. H. for T. Passinger, B. Took, and T. Sawbridge, MDCLXXXII.



COSMOGRAPHY.

The First Book,

Containing the CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY of *ITALY*,
the *ALPINE* Provinces, *FRANCE*, *SPAIN*,
and *BRITAIN*, with the *ISLES* thereof.

OF THE WORLD: And First of EUROPE.



Of the Creation of the World by Almighty God, and the Plantation of the same by the Sons of Men, sufficient hath been spoken already. We are to look upon it now, as perfected and peopled in all parts thereof, but all those parts united into one *Compositum*; called therefore by the *Græcians*, τὸ πᾶν and τὸ ὅλον, because the *Summa Totalis*, and general comprehension of all things existent. In which respect 'tis called by the *Latins*, *Universum*, a name of multitude, but of a multitude united (*Universi qui in uno loco versī*, say the old *Grammarians*.) The great body of the World, like the body of Man, though it have many parts and members, is but one body only. A body of so perfect and exact a form, of so compleat a *Symmetry* in respect of the particular parts, and all those parts so beautified and adorned by the God of Nature, that from the elegance and beauties of it, it was called *Κόσμος* by the *Græcians*, and *Mundus* by the *Latins*, both names declaring the Composure of it to be full of Ornament; and all those Ornaments conducting Mankind to the knowledge of God. For (as the *Christian Advocate* reasoneth very strongly,) as he which comes into an house, and seeth all things in it ordered in a beautiful and comely order; *utrisque præse crederet Dominum*, &c. must needs conceive, both that the house had some wise Lord and Master who had so contrived it, and that such Lord and Master of it was of more worth and excellency then the house and furniture: So (saith he) whosoever doth observe the most eminent beauties of the Heaven and Earth, must needs conceive there is some great and more glorious power who did first create it; disposing of all things therein in such excellent manner.

This Contemplation, together with the notions of a Deity, which naturally are ingrafted in the soul of Man; hath trained up all men in the practise of some Religion though few (comparatively) so happy as to be practised in the true. For though the knowledge and worship of the true God, by reason of some accitions in *America*, and the *Indies*, be more generally diffused than in former times; yet is the least part of the World possessed by

them who make profession of that Worship. For dividing the whole World into thirty parts, it hath been found by such as have laboured in this search, that nineteen of them are inhabited by *Idolaters*, who either know no God at all, or worship stocks and stones for gods, even the work of mens hands. Of the 11 parts which are remainings, six are possessed by *Jews*, *Turks*, and *Saracens*; who though they have the knowledge of the God that made them, yet abnegating, or not worshipping the Lord that brought them, they have no part or portion in the true Religion. Then for the five which are behind, two are conceived to be of the *Greek* Communion, the other three being divided betwixt those of the Church of *Rome*, and such as otherwise differing in some opinions, pass generally by the name of *protestant* or Reformed Churches. Which as it sheweth how small a portion of the World is possessed by *Christians*, who only (though not all of them) have reason to pretend to the true Religion: So doth it shew (I note this only by the way) how falsely those of *Rome* make multitude of professors to be a sign of the True Church; and then conceive themselves to be such a multitude, as corresponds unto that sign. Faulty, alike both in the position and the Application: For if the multitude of Professors be a sign of the Church, the true Church should be found rather amongst the *Heathens* or *Mahumetans*, than amongst the *Christians*: or if they do restrain their meaning (as I hope they do) to those who make profession of the *Christian* faith: those of the *Greek* Communion, possetting two whole parts of five, will be found more numerous than the members of the Church of *Rome*, though possibly of less esteem in the eye of the World. So infinitely vain was that brag of *Bellarmino* (though otherwise more modest than the rest of the *Jesuits*) affirming positively and expressly, *Romanam Ecclesiam universum plene orbem possidere*, &c. That the Church of *Rome* is fully of as large a latitude as the World it self. This I have noted by the way, intending to take a more special notice of the state of Religion in the several Provinces of the World; to which now I halloo; premising first this scheme of those several parts, into which it doth now stand divided.

The World is divided into two parts; unknown or not fully discovered; and is divided commonly into *Europe* and *Africa*: the last taking up the *Southern* Continent; the other lying on the *North* of *Europe* and *America*; whereof we shall say somewhat at the end of this Work.

Europe.
Anciently, as
Known, either
Africa.
Late, as America.

Europe is joyned to *Asia*, by that space of Earth which is between the heads of *Tanais* and *Duina*; *Asia* is joyned to *Africa*, by the Egyptian *Isthmus*; *America* is divided (as most conjecture) from all of them. *Europe* is separated from *Asia*, by a line drawn from the Bay of *St. Nicolas*, to the head of *Tanais*, from thence by that River it self all the length of his course, then by *Palus Meotis*, the *Euxine* Sea, the *Thracian Bosphorus*, the *Propontis*, the *Hellspont*, and the *Aegean*. *Asia* is parted from *Africa* by the *Red-Sea* or Gulf of *Arabia*; and *Africa* from *Europe* by the *Mediterranean*. *Africa* is greater then *Europe*, *Asia* than *Africa*, *America* than *Asia*.

They which have entertained a fancy of resembling every Country to things more obvious to the sight and understanding, have likened *Europe* to a *Dragon*; the head of which they make to be *Spain*; the two wings *Italy* and *Denmark*. In like manner they have been curiously impertinent, in resembling *France* to a *Lozenge* or *Rhomboides*; *Belgium* to a *Lion*; *Britain* to an *Ax*; *Ireland* to an *Egg*; *Poloponnese* to a *Plantane* leaf; *Spain* to an *Ox-hide* (spread on the ground; *Italy* (which indeed holdeth bell proportion) to a mans *Leg*; with divers the like *Phantasies* of a capricious brain; these Countries no more resembling them, then pictures made when painting was in her infancy, under which they were fain to write, *This is a Lion*, and *this is a Whale*, for fear the spectators might have taken one for a *Cock*, and the other for a *Cat*.

EUROPE, though the least (as being in length but 2800, in breadth but 1200 miles) is yet of most renown amongst us. First, because of the temperature of the Air, and fertility of the Soil; Secondly, from the study of Arts, both ingenious and mechanical; Thirdly, because of the *Roman* and *Greek* Monarchies; Fourthly, from the purity and sincerity of the *Christian* Faith; Fifthly, because we dwell in it, and so first place it.

EUROPE is generally said to be called from *Europa*, the daughter of *Agnor*, King of the *Phœnicians*, brought thence by *Jupiter* (as the Poets feign) in the shape of a *Bull*; or as some Histories say by a *Cretan* Captain named *Taurus*; as others in a ship whose beak had the portraiture of a *Bull* upon it. But why the bringing of that Lady into the Isle of *Crete*, should give denomination to the whole Continent of *Europe*, whereof that Island is so inconsiderable, and so small a part, I must confess I see no reason. *Georgius Becanus*, who holds the High *Dutch* to be the primitive language, which was spoke in *Paradise*, and loves to fetch all names from thence; not thinking it convenient, that *Europe* being first inhabited by *Gomerians* or *Cimbrians*, should be beholding to the *Grecians* for its name; will have it called *Europe*, quasi *Ver-bop*, by the transposition of the two last letters; *Ver*, signifying excellent, and *bop* a multitude (whence we use to say, as thick as *Hops*) because *Europe* contains a multitude of excellent people. And on the other side, *Becharius*, a *French* Writer, loving as much to bring all names

from the *Phœnician* to *Punic* tongue, will have it called *Europe* from *Ur-uppa*, which significth in that language, a beautiful Countenance, because the *Europeans* much excelled the *Africans* in whiteness of skin, and clearness of complexion. But in my mind *Herodotus* hath best determined of the controversy, who telleth us plainly, 'Οὐδὲν τὸ ὀνόμα. ἔστιν αὐτὸ τὸ ἑλπίδος, &c. That it is utterly unknown, both whence it had the name of *Europe*, and who first called it so. And yet considering there is a Province in *Thrace* called *Europe*, (where of more heretofore) why might not the *Asiatics* give the name of *Europe* to this part of the world, according to the name of that Province which lay nearest to them; as the *Romans* did the name of *Africa* to the other part of the World, after the name of that particular Province or part thereof, which they first brought under their obedience? Or as the *Europeans* gave the name of *Asia*, to the greatest of the three known parts of the World; which properly and originally belonged unto *Asia Minor* (as it since was called) or rather to those parts thereof which lay next to *Greece*; as shall be shewn hereafter in convenient place.

The first inhabitants of *Europe*, as hath been shewn in part already, and shall be shewn more fully in its proper place, were the Sons of *Japhet*; amongst whom, as the Scripture telleth us, *The Isles of the Gentiles were divided*, Gen. 10. 5. which includes all the Continent of *Europe*, and the Isles adjoining. For besides that it is compassed about with the *Cyclades* and other Isles in the Seas of *Greece*, together with the Isles of *Candy*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corsica*, the Isles of *Britain* and *Zealand*, with their young ones adjacent; *Europe* it self was formerly taken for an Island; as being invironed round with water, saving where it is joyned on the North-East to *Asia* the great, which very few of the Antients were acquainted with. And what are the great Countries of *Anatolia*, *Greece*, *Spain*, add *Italy*, all which did fall to the Posterity of *Japhet*, but so many *Peninsulæ*, or *Demi-Islands*, invironed almost round with one Sea or other? Nor was the name and memory of *Japhet* so much forgotten by the Children which descended of him; but that the *Greeks*, who were the first of their *European* Plantations, retained it a long time in their *Japhetic*, whom they make to be the Son of *Caelum* and *Terra*, and the Father of the wife *Prometheus*, whom *Ovid* therefore calleth *Satus Japete*, in the first Book of his *Metamorphoses*. So that we see how punctually the first part of Gods blessing was fulfilled upon him; which was, that he would enlarge the borders of *Japhet*, Gen. 9. 27. The second part thereof, that he should dwell in the *Tents* of *Sem*, though it was long before it came to the accomplishment; yet it came at last; and that both in the literal and mystical sense. First, in the literal, when the Posterity of *Japhet*, both *Greek* and *Romans*, made themselves Masters of *Judea*, or the Land of *Canaan*, and the Eastern parts, promised to, and possessed by, the seed of *Sem*: Next in the mystical, when God was pleased to break down the partition wall, and to incorporate the *Gentiles* of the House of *Japhet*, into the body of the Church: which for a long time was restrained to the Line of *Sem*.

Europe may be considered as it stands divided into the Continent, and the Islands: the Continent lying altogether; the Islands as they are dispersed in the *Greek*, *Aegean*, *Cretan* and *Ionian* Seas, the *Adriatick* and the *Mediterranean*, and in the *British* and *Northern* Ocean. But in this work we shall discover them, and discourse of them in this following order, dividing *Europe* into 1. *Italy*, 2. the *Alps*, 3. *France*, 4. *Spain*, 5. *Britain*, 6. *Belgium*, 7. *Germany*, 8. *Denmark*, 9. *Swetbland*, 10. *Russia*, 11. *Poland*, 12. *Hun-*
gry,

gry, 13. *Scalonia*, 14. *Dacia*, and 15. *Greece*; and speak of the several Islands; as they relate to some or other of these greater Countries.

In all which Countries and Islands, belonging to them, besides the *Latine* Tongue which is now rather *Scholastic*, than *Natural*; and besides the *Italian*, *French*, and *Spanish*, being but as so many corruptions of the *Latine*; and besides the *English* which is a Compound of *Dutch*, *Latine*, and *French*; there are in all fourteen Mother-Tongues, which owe nothing at all to the *Roman*; that is to say, 1. *Irish*, spoken in *Ireland*, and the West of *Scotland*; 2. *British*, or *Welsh*, in *Wales*, and some parts of *Cornwal*; 3. *Cantabrian*, or *Basquish*, in *Biscay*, about the *Pyrenean* Hills, and near to the *Cantabrian* Ocean; 4. *Arabick* in the Mountains of *Granada*, called *Alpuzaras*; 5. *Finnick*, in *Finland* and *Lapland*, Provinces of the Crown of *Sweden*; 6. *Dutch*, (though with different Dialects) in *Germany*, *Belgium*, *Denmark*, *Norway*, *Swetbland*; 7. *Caucasian*, which the *East-Frieslanders* (or *Canchi*) speak amongst themselves, though to strangers they speak the Common *Dutch*; 8. *Scalovian*, in *Scalonia*,

Poland, *Hungary*, and almost all the parts of the *Turkish* Empire; 9. *Illyrian*, on the East side of *Istria*, and the Isle of *Veggia*; 10. *Greek*, in most Provinces and Isles of *Greece*, by the *Greeks* themselves; 11. *Hungarian*, and 12. *Epirotique* in the mountainous Places of those Countries; 13. *Jazygian*, on the North-side of *Hungary*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiscus*, and 14. *Tartarian*, in the *Taurica Cbersonesus* and other *European* parts of that barbarous people. And this shall serve for *Europe* in the general notion. Descend me now to the particular Kingdoms, Regions, and Islands of it; beginning first of all with *Italy*, contrary to the usage of most Geographers; who commonly begin with *Spain* or *Ireland*, as being the furthest Countries Westward, and consequently nearest to the first Meridian, from whence the Longitude was reckoned. Which we shall do by reason of that great influence which the *Romans* had in most parts of *Europe*, and many parts of the World besides, in matters as well Civil and Ecclesiastical, which much depended on the power of that Empire, formerly, and on the Usurpations of that Church in the later days.



O F

I T A L Y.

ITALY once the Empress of the greatest part of the (then known) World, is compassed with the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Tyrrhenian* Seas, except it be towards *France* and *Germany*, from which it is parted by the *Alps*; so that it is in a manner a *Peninsula* or *Demi-Island*. But more particularly it hath on the East, the lower part of the *Adriatick*; on the *Ionian* Sea, by which it is divided from *Greece*; on the West the River *Varus*, and some part of the *Alps*, by which it is parted from *France*; on the North in some part the *Alps*, which divide it from *Germany*; and on the other parts the *Adriatick*, which divides it from *Dalmatia*; and on the South the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuscan* Seas, by which it is separated from the main land of *Africa*.

It containeth in length from *Augusta Praetoria* (now called *Aost*) at the foot of the *Alps*, unto *Otranto* in the most Eastern point of the Kingdom of *Naples*, 1020 miles; in breadth from the River *Varo*, which parts it from *Provence*, to the mouth of the River *Arso* in *Friuli*, where it is broadest, 410 miles; about *Otranto* where it is narrowest, not above 25 miles; and in the middle parts from the mouth of *Pescara* in the *Adriatick* or upper Sea, to the mouth of *Tiber* in the *Tuscan* or Lower Sea, 126 miles. The whole compass by Sea, reckoning in the windings and turnings of the shore, comes to 3038 miles, which added to the 410 miles which it hath by Land, make up in all 3448 miles. But if the Coast on each side be reckoned by a straight Line, then it falls very short of this proportion, amounting in the total, as *Cassaldo* computes it, to no more than 2550 miles. The whole Country lieth under the fifth and sixth *Climates* of the Northern temperate Zone, which it wholly taketh up: so that the longest day in the most Northern parts is fifteen hours, and three fifth parts of an hour; the longest in the Southern parts, falling short a full hour and no more of that length.

But these dimensions must be understood of *Italy* in the present latitude, and extent thereof, and not as it was called and counted in the times of the *Romans*, neither in the growth nor flourishing fortunes of that State; the bounds of *Italy* on the West, and North-western parts being then the River *Rubicon*, which runneth into the *Adriatick*, not far from *Ravenna*, and the River *Arno*, which runneth into the *Tyrrhenian* Seas by the Port of *Ligorn*. All that lay West-wards towards the *Alps*, as it was possessed by the *Gauls*, so it had also the name of *Gallia*; and for distinctions sake, of *Gallia Cis-Alpina*,

and *Togata*, whereof we shall speak more when we come to *Lombardy*. And it continued, (though a Province of the *Roman* Empire) distinct from *Italy*, until the Empire of *Augustus*; who dividing *Italy* for the better Government thereof into eleven Provinces or Regions, divided *Gallia Cis-Alpina* into several parts, (whereof more anon) and reckoned them as Provinces or Members of the body of *Italy*.

The names hereof so bounded as before, are said to have been very many, according to their several Nations which were anciently of most power and authority in its or to the several fancies of the Name-giver: whereof some being the names only of particular Provinces, were by a *Metonymy*, taken for, and applied to the whole. Of this last sort, to omit others of less note, were *Latium*, and *Ausonia*; the *Ausones* being a people dwelling about *Cales* a Town of *Campania*; and *Latium*, that particular Province which lieth on the East of *Tiber*, so called, as most Writers are of opinion, *a latendo*, from hiding; because *Saurn* being driven from *Crete* by *Jupiter*, his late-bat abiding, did here live concealed:

Latiumque vocari

Matius his quoniam latuisset natus in oris, as the Poet hath it.

Nor was this *Virgil's* fancy only, but a Tradition generally followed and allowed of by the greatest Writers, as by *Eutropius* and *Herodian* and by *Münster* *Felix* also, though *Varo* pretending to more than ordinary knowledge in Antiquity, would have it called *Latium*, quod lateat inter precipitia Alpium & Apennini, as *Servius* in his notes on *Virgil*, because it lieth hidden (as it were) under the Precipices of the *Alps* and *Apennine* hills; which cannot possibly be said of *Italy* properly and anciently so called, no part whereof came near the *Alps*. The more general names of the whole Country, were, 1. *Hesperia*, from *Hesperus* the son of *Atlas*, as the Poets say, or rather, as *Macrobius* is of opinion, from *Hesperus* the Evening Star, as being seated Westward in regard of *Greece*. 2. *Oenotria*, either from the abundance and excellency of the Wines, Wine being called *oeno* by the *Greeks*; or, as most think, from *Oenotrus* an *Arcadian* King, one of the first Planters of the Country: And 3. *Italia*, the name at first of that part of this Continent which was afterward called *Calabria*; thut up sit between *Golfo de Chiliari* (called anciently *Sinus Scylliticus*) on the South; and *Sinus Lamecius*, part of the Bay of

Gulf

Golf of *Tarentum*, on the fourth side of it, For so faith *Aristotle* in the seventh Book of his *Politics*, Cap. 10. *Τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦ τῆς Ἑσπείας Ἰταλίας τὸ πρῶτον λαβόν, &c.* That is to say, That part of Europe which lieth between the Bay *Sylliticus* and the Bay *Lamecius*, took the name of *Italy*, the Gulf being distant from each other about half a days journey. And this Tradition he received (as he there affirmeth) from the best Antiquaries of that Country. The like occurs in *Dionysius Halicarnassensis*, out of *Antiochus Syracusanus*, a more ancient Author; the like in *Strabo*, lib. 6. So named from *Italus*, a chief Commander of some Nations; who first settled here, and by degrees communicated to the rest of this Continent. Of these three last, thus the Poet *Virgil*.

*Est locus, Hesperiam Graei cognomine dicunt,
Terra antiqua, potens armis, atq. ubere gleba,
Oenotrii cultore viri; nunc Fama, minores
Italiam disijcit, ducis de nomine, Gentem.*

Which may be Englished in these words:

That which the *Greeks* *Hesperia* call'd, a place
Great both in Arms and Wealth, first planted was
By the *Oenotrian*; since, if Fame not lie,
Was from their Chieftain's name call'd *Italy*.

Who and from whence this *Italus* was, we shall see ere long. Mean time we will take notice of the consent or harmony, which is betwixt *Aristotle* and this Poet: it being said by *Aristotle* in the seventh of his *Politics*, cap. 10. that *Italus* having taught the *Oenotrian* the Arts of Husbandry, who before were wandering Shepherds only, he caused them by his own name to be called *Italians*. Let us next take a view of those honorary Attributes which have been given unto this Country, so denominated from him; by *Zethus*, called *Regina Mundi*, the Queen or Empress of the world; by *Mamertinus* one of the old *Panegyrist*, *Gentium Domina*, the Mistress of the Nations; by others, *Paradisus Mundi*, the terrestrial Paradise. But what need more be said then is spoken by *Pliny*, who hath adorned *Italy* with this following *Panegyrick*: *Italia terrarum omnium alumna, eadem & parent, nuncine Deus electa que Caelum ipsum clarius faceret, sparsa congrueq. vet imperia, ritus mollires, tot populorum discordes linguas firmosque commercia ad colloquia dilaberet, & humanitati hominem daret.* *Italy* (saith he) the Parent, and withal the Foster-child of all other Nations was elected by the Providence of the Gods, to make (if possible) the very Heavens themselves more famous: to gather the scattered Empires of the world into one body, to temper the barbarous Rites of uncivilized people, to unite the disagreeing languages of so many men by the benefit of one common tongue; and in a word to reform man to his humanity. A very high *Encomion* doubtless; and yet not much more than the place deserves, with reference to the times when the Author lived.

The People anciently, (and to this day they still partake somewhat of those qualities) were wary of behaviour, sparing of expence, and most greedy of glory, according unto that of *Tully*, *Semper appetentes gloriae praefer citius nationes fuit Romani*; by which he doth not mean those only who lived within the walls of the City of *Rome*, but also their *Italian* neighbours and associates, *Romans* by privilege and freedom, though not by birth. They have twice given the Law to the fairest, and most puissant parts of the world; once by their *Valour*, when the greatest part of the (then known) world was brought under the obedience of the State of *Rome*, the standing body of whole Armies was principally compounded of

Italian bands; And secondly by their *Wit*, by which they have subdued a great part of *Christendom*, to the obedience of the Pope and Court of *Rome*, the standing body of whose Council (though he have Ministers of all tempers and Nations) do specially consist of *Italian* Heads. In former times here lived the renowned *Capitaneus*, *Camillus* the Sword, and *Fabius Maximus* the Buckler of *Rome*; the two *Scipios*, one of which subdued *Africa*; and the other *Asia*; *Pompey* the great, who extended the *Roman* Empire eastwards to the banks of *Euphrates*; *Cesar*, the greater of the two enlarging it Westward to the *British*, and the *Belgick* Ocean; besides infinite others of less note in respect of these, though most deserving in themselves. Here flourished also the famous Orators, *Cicero*, *Hortensius*, and *Antonius*; the renowned Historians, *Livy*, *Tacitus*, and *Salustius*; the memorable Poets *Virgil*, *Ovid*, *Catullus*, *Tibullus*, and *Propertius*; *Plautus*, and *Terence* the Comedians; the *Satyrists*, *Horace*, *Juvenal*, and *Persius*. So equally were they favoured both by *Mary* and the *Muses*, that it is not easte to determine whether they were more eminent in Arts or Arms. What men of pedal eminence it hath since produced, we shall see hereafter, when we are come to take a view of *Italy* as it stands at present; and to that place we shall defer our Observations of the Air, and disposition of the Soil, with such other particulars as have received little or no alteration in the change of times.

Italy was anciently divided, as most Countries else, into *Triber* and *Nations*, as the *Latines*, *Sabines*, *Tuscanes*, *Samnites*, *Campani*, *Picentini*, *Fient*, *Ligures*, *Tarentini*, *Lucani*, and others of inferior note; whom we shall meet with in the description of those several States into which it doth now (stand divided). But all those Nations being severally vanquished by the *Roman* puissance, and made up into one body, whereof *Rome* was the head; it pleased *Augustus* to divide it into eleven Regions, as before was said, that is to say, *Liguria*, *Haemania*, *Latium*, *Campania*, *Umbria*, *Samnium*, the *Picenum*, *Gallia*, *Italia*, *Transpadana*, *Venetia*, and *Hispania*. In the time of the Emperor *Antoninus*, the Provinces of *Italy* were encreased to sixteen, the bounds of the former Regions being somewhat altered; and the three Isles of *Sicily*, *Corfica*, and *Sardinia*, with the two *Rhetia's* first and second, added to the number. But this distribution also received some change in the time of *Constantine* the Great who altering both the names and bounds of the former Province, and adding one more to them, made seventeen in all, that is to say, 1. *Tuscia* and *Umbria*, 2. *Picennus Suburbicarianus*, 3. *Campania*, 4. *Apulia* and *Calabria*, 5. *Valeria*, 6. *Samnium*, 7. *Lucania* and the *Bruis*, 8. *Sicily*, 9. *Corfica*, and 10. *Sardinia*, which made up the Prefecture of the City of *Rome*; 11. *Flaminia* and *Picennum Annurnianum*, 12. *Venetia*, 13. *Aemilia*, 14. *Liguria*, 15. *Alpes Cottiae*, 16. *Rhetia prima*, and 17. *Rhetia secunda*, which made up the Dioceses of *Italy*, Properly and especially so called, whereof *Milain* was first the Metropolitan City, *Aquileia* afterwards.

The Language heretofore was divers; according to the several Provinces and People of it. In *Apulia*, they used the *Messapian* tongue; in that which is now called *Calabria* they spake the *Greek*; in *Haemania*, they used the *Tuscan*; and the *Latin* in *Latium*: which last so altered in short time by reason of the commerce they had with the conquered Nations; that the Articles of the Peace made between the *Romans* and *Carthaginians*, at the expulsion of the *Tarquins*, could not be understood (as *Polybius* saith) by the best Antiquaries of his time. And yet the time between the making of those Articles, and the time of *Phibylus*, who was contemporary

32

porary with *Scipio Africanus*, passed not above 300 years. That the *Latin* tongue was afterwards at any time spoken generally in all parts of the *Roman* Empire, or of *Italy* it self, as I see some hold, I can by no means be persuaded. It is true, that the *Latin* tongue was at first the *Civild* speech being by special favour granted to the *Romans*, dwelling but an hundred miles from the walls of *Rome*, that they should use the *Roman* Language: which had been a meer mockery, and no mark of favour at all, if the *Italian* people dwelling out of *Latium* had used it formerly. And yet this hapned not above 140 years before the times of the Emperors, at what time the *Romans* were Lords of *Italy*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Cosica*, and a great part of *Spain*. It's true, the *Latin* tongue in succeeding times came to be understood in most parts of *Italy*, by reason of the *Roman* Colonies which were planted among them (being in all no fewer than 150) and their continual resort to *Rome* on their several buisnesses: it being a great point of the *Roman* State, not only to have their Laws written, and judgment pronounced by the *Pretors* for the several Provinces, in the *Latin* only; but to give audience in the open Senate to none who came thither from the subject Nations, save only in the *Latin* tongue, their own proper language. Yet for all this, it never grew to such extent as to be the Language of the whole Empire, no more of *Italy* it self, no more than the *English* tongue is natural or national to the *Welsh*, or *Irish*, though it be generally understood (for the very same reasons) by all of the better sort both in *Wales* and *Ireland*. In which regard I am not of their opinion, who think that the *Italian* (as the *French* and *Spanish*) are nothing but corruptions of the *Latin* tongues, occasioned by the inundations of the barbarous Nations: But rather that the *Latin* words which occur therein, proceeded from that weak impression which the *Latin* tongue had made among them, whilst they were under the obedience of that puissant Empire; and that the *Italian* tongue, as it is now spoken, could not receive so great a change from the Barbarous Nations, none of which tarried long amongst them, but the *Goths*, and *Lombards*: nor they so long (the *Lombards* not at all in the Eastern parts) as to be either the occasions or authors of the alteration. So that the present Language of *Italy* is a decompound, made up especially of *Latin* and the old *Italian*'s some notions of the *Lombard* being mixt with it in the North, and *Wells*, some of the *Goths*, in the middle, about *Rome* it self, and not a little of the *Greek*, in the East of *Naples*.

And as the Language to the Religion of the Country, hath received some change. The *Christian* Faith was first preached in *Rome* it self, and in *Rome* first preached by Saint *Peter*, who came thither in or about the beginning of the Empire of *Claudius*. The two *Apostles Peter and Paul*, are generally said by the antient Writers, to be the first who preached the Gospel in that City. *A duxerunt Apostoli Petrus & Paulus Romam fundata & constituta Ecclēsia*, faith the old Father *Irenæus* Lib. 4. Cap. 2. To one of these, the first preaching of the Gospel there is to be referred? both being Bishops of that City: That is to say, *St. Peter* of the Churches of the *Circumcision* / *St. Paul* of those which consisted specially of the *Gentiles*. Now that the Gospel was preached there before *Pauls* coming, is evident by his Epistle written to the *Romans*, at *Cenchrea* the Port-Town of *Corinth*, six years at least before his being brought over all the *World*: he testified that their Faith was famous over all the *World*: and therefore could not count him who had never been there, for the planter of it: And as *St. Peter* was the first Preacher of the Gospel at *Rome*, so fount he his Disciples to promulgate it in most parts of Italy. The *Roman Martyrologies* reckon up eight Bishops of *St. Peter's* ma-

king for so many of the principal Cities of this Country: that is to say, *Epaphroditus* (not he whom St. Paul speaks of in his Epistle to the *Philippians*) for *Terracina*; of old called *Ancor*, *Hermagoras* for *Aquila*, *Paulinus* for *Luca*, *Appollinaris* for *Ravenna*, *Marcus* for *Atina*, *Proculus* for *Padua*, *Marcianus* for *Syracusa*, and *Pencatius* for *Taurinum* in the life of *Sicily*. But whether St. Peter planted it, or St. Paul watered it, certain I am that GOD only gave it the increase. It could not else have prospered under such a Tyranny, as many, if not most of the *Roman* Emperors did earnestly endeavor to suppress it with. But *Sanguis Martyrum* (saith *Ecclesiæ*) the watering of it with the blood of so many *Martyrs*, made it grow the faster. And this small grain of Mustard-seed waxed to great a Tree, as over-shadowed all the Provinces of that mighty Empire; and did not only stand it out against all Tempests, but in conclusion did suppress that Superstition and Idolatry, for whose sake all those Princes, till the time of *Constantine*, did more or less, labour to destroy it. How much it had receded since those times from its primitive purity, and how it did degenerate into Worldly pomp, and Secular policy, by the design and arts of those who boasted themselves to be Successors to that great Apostle, shall be a little touched at, in the story of the *Roman* Papacy. Suffice it in this place to say, that all the people of this Country, partly in reference to the Pope, partly for fear of the *Inquisition*, and partly by being kept in ignorance of the *Protestant* Doctrine (of which they are taught to believe many monstrous things) are all of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*.

But though the Fountains of the waters of Eternal life, have either been stopp'd or else corrupted by the Popes of Rome; the Rivers which do water this most flourishing Garden, still preserve their beds, and run unmixed and uncorrupted in the same Channels, as before they did. And of these Italy hath as many as any one Country, but none of any long course, by reason that all parts of it are so near some Sea, that most of which rising from the *Alper*, or the *Apennine* Hills, by melting of the Snows in Winter and casualty of Land-floods at other times of the year, do often overflow the Country, and for the most part leave an ill Air behind them. Those of chief note are, 1. The River *Po* or *Padus*, (the *Greeke* call it *Eridanus*) into which *Phaeton* is said to have been drenched when he fell from Heaven. It ariseth in the *Alper*, runneth through *Lombardy*, which it divideth into *Cisfidanum* and *Transfidanum*; and having taken in thirty lesser streams, falls with seven mouths into the *Adriatick* Sea not far from *Venice*. 2. *Rubicon*, now called *Picciotto*, anciently the North-bound of Italy; *Hic fluvius quondam Iulii fuit*, as it is in *Pliny*. It runneth into the *Adriatick* Sea not far from *Rimini*, or *Ariminum* now the Port-town to *Ravenna*, the Haven of *Ravenna* being long since choked; but of this River more in another place. 3. *Arno*, which rising in the *Apennine* falleth in to the *Tyfasen* Sea, and anciently divided Italy from that side from the *Cisalpine Gallis*: on the banks hereof standeth the fair City of *Florence*. 4. *Ticinus*, which gave name to the City of *Pavia* called of old *Ticinum*; it riseth in the *Alps*, and emptieth it self into the Lake called *Lacus Verbanus*. 5. *Liris* now called *Gariglià*, taketh with the blood of *French* and *Spaniards*, in three quarrels for the Realm of *Naples*, and no less unfortunately memorable for the drowning of *Peter de Medicis*. 6. *Cyathus* still rerum *Tromfilla Potentia*, *Tiberis*.

*And Tiber, unto which was given
The Power of all things under Heaven.*

Lib. I.

It rifteth from the *Apennine Hills*, not far from *Arethim* (now *Arezzo*) Ja Town of *Tusfany* (which it parted from the *Roman Latium*, and the Land of the *Sabines*) and gliding gently near *Cita de Castello*, *Perugia*, and the old *Oerietum*, paffeth by *Rome*, and falleth into the *Tifcen* or lower *Sea*, at *Offia*. Here is also, 7. The lake of *Thrafymene*, near which *Annibal* defeated *Plaminus*, the Conful and his whole Army, opening thereby his paffage to the gates of *Rome*; and 8. The famous *Rue of the Braurins*, where the *Romans* overcame *Adrahbal* the Brother of *Annibal*, and thereby made a way to the ruin of *Carthage*. Others of lefs note fhall be mentioned in their proper places.

As for the Mountains of this Country, those of most note are the *Alps*, and the *Apeninne*, of which the residue in a manner are but spurs and branches. Of these the *Alps* being all appertaining to *France* and *Germany*, or rather containing many large and entire Provinces which belong to neither, deserve a Tractate by it self. The *Apeninne*, being proper only to this County, but so that it relates to many and particular Provinces of it, shall be spoken of here. A ledge of Hills which take beginning near *Savona*, a Town of the Commonwealth and Country of *Genoa*, situate on the *Mediterranean*, and fetching a little compass Northwards, extend to the furthest part of *Italy*, dividing it almost in the very midst : that part thereof which lieth towards the *Tyrrhenian*, or *Tuscan* Sea, being called *Cispennina*; *Transpennina*, that which lieth towards the *Adriatick*. Palling in one entire body as far as *Acoli*, a Town of *Marca Anconitana* (a Province belonging to the Pope) where they are at the highest; it is there parted into two horns or branches, whereof one runs out to the mount of *Gargano*, and so unto the Land of *Otranto*; the other spreadeth it self as far as *Calabria*, those being the most Eastern Provinces of this noble Continent. Called the *Apeninne* as some say, a *Penna*, by which word the *Latins* used to signify the top or summit of an Hill, by reason of the height and sharp points thereof; as otherwise, *quasi Alpes Pœninae*, because first overcome by *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, who the *Roman* Writers did by the name of *Pœni*. The Inhabitants hereof by *Virgil* named *Apeninicolæ*. But otherwise reducible to some of the neighbouring Provinces. Of this large Mountain molt of the Hills of *Italy* from *Savona* Eastwards, are but the excursions; which being of less note, shall be spoken of as they lie before us in the way.

fore us in the way.

To proceed now to so much of the History of *Italy*, as concerns the generals we are to know that the first Inhabitants of it (not to say any thing of the fictions of *Friar Amnus* under the name of *Berosus*, who will needs have *Noah* himself come thither shortly after the Flood) were doublets of the race of *Cittim* or *Kittim* the fourth son of *Javan*, one of the sons of *Japhet*. Who being planted by their Father in that part of *Greece*, which was since called *Macedon*; and after spreading themselves further as their numbers increased, peopled *Ætolia* and the Countries adjoining to it: From whence, desirous of a warmer and more fertile soil, they came in tract of time to the Coasts of *Dalmatia*, and thence to this Country since called *Italy*. That they did spring originally from the seed of *Cittim* (or *Kittim*, as the Greek Pronounce it) wants not very good Authors. For thus *Eusebius*, *Klimes* &c. *Διογενες* &c. *Ποταμιος*; that is to say, from the *Kittians*, or children of *Kittim*, descended the *Latins* and the *Romans*. The same occurs also in the *Chronicon of Alexandria*. So also faith *Cædrenus* in his *Annals*, but with more punctuality. *Τελειπος* (saith he) the son of *Hercules*, reckoned in *Italy*, and after him his son *Latinius*, &c. *καὶ τῆς Κιτινῆς ἀπογονοὶ Λατίνος*, from whom the *Kettians*

were named *Latins*. The same in other words faith *Suidas*. Nor want there some remainders of this name in approved Writers, besides these authorities; there being a Town in *Latium* called *Ketea*, mentioned in *Dionysius Halicarnassensis*; and a River named *Ketus* not far from *Came*, whereof *Artyfote* speaketh in his book de *Mirabilibus*. And that they came immediately from the *Ætolians*, besides the other Arguments which *Keimnecerus* useth in this point, the nearness, or identity rather of the names doth seem to intimate. For *Ætolia* being written in the *Greek Ætolia*, and the letter O being changed into A according to the *Ætolick* Dialect, which was that used by the *Ætolians*; the alteration of the name from *Atolia* and *Atiolians*, to *Ital* and *Italians*, will be thought very eafie, not to be natural; the rather in regard there is an Island near *Italy*, in the *Tyfas* Sea, peopled originally by these very *Ætolians*, which in ancient times was called *Æthalia*. And if by such an eafie alteration of one Letter only, *Italy* may derive its first plantation from the *Ætolians*, as no doubt it may; then may that *Italus*, the Chieftain of whom *Virgil* speaks, be no other than *Atolus*, some man of principal mark and eminency, amongst that People, who had the Conduct of this Colony, when they came for *Italy*. And this I should believe much rather, than that this *Italus* was the name of a King of *Sicily*: It being more probable that *Sicily* should borrow its first planters out of *Italy*, than *Italy* should borrow either Name or People from so small a Kingdom: especially considering that the name of *Atolus* was famous in thole parts of *Greece*, ever since *Atolus* the son of a King of *Elir*, was Founder of the *Ætolian* Kingdom. The way thusfluen, and the passages into *Italy* laid open, it was not long before the *Pelagii*, another *Greek* Nation, found the way into it: after whom *Saturn* out of *Crete*; and *Evander* out of *Arcadia*, with their several followes, came and settled there. Not to say any thing of thole several Colonies, which coming out of *Peloponnesus*, and the parts of *Achaia*, planted themselves so thick in the East of *Italy*, now called *Calabria*, that of long time it had the name of *Magna Græcia*. So that the *Græcians* made the main grofs or body of the *Italy* people: to which the coming of some *Tusfians* under the conduct of *Tyrrhenus*, a Prince of *Lydia*, in *Asia minor*, served but as an Accessory, and altered nothing of the Principal. The last which I shall here, were some of the Relicks of *Troy*, under the conduct of *Æneas*; who flying from their Native Country, and enraged Enemies, were first cast upon the Coasts of *Italy*, frick; where having staid a while to refresh his Companies (we shall hereafter take an occasion to consider of the Fable of his loves with *Dido*) he set sail for *Italy*, being the place assigned him by the Gods for his Seat and Empire, whither he came with fifteen Ships, which might contain, according to the rate which *Thucydides* alloweth to the vessels then used, to the number of 1200 men. And there he landed, as it proved in an happy hour: For he was no sooner arrived, but he was lovingly chearished and entertained by *Latinius* King of the *Latins*, or of *Latiun*; whose chiefey City or Seat-Royal was then called *Laventum*; who much esteeming of this Stranger, as a man whose fate had been his Harbinger, though he could neither manifest his low sufficiency, nor bind him fast enough unto him, but by betrothing him unto *Lavinia*, his only daughter. Hence grew the Wars betwixt *Æneas*, and *Turnus* King of the *Rutulii*, a former Suter, which being ended in the death of the *Rutulian* Rival, confirmed *Æneas* and his *Trojans* in a sure possession. For now growing with the *Latins*, or *Laventines*, into a more constant bond of friendship, by many inter-marriages and mutual kindnesse, they built the

against him in revenge of the Rape committed by the *Romans* on the *Sabine* Women, seeing his People give ground, called for help to *Jupiter*, and vowed if he overcame King *Aron*, to offer up his Armour to him. *Aron* being vanquished, the Conqueror cutteth down a fair young Oak and hangeth on it all the Armour of the vanquished King: then girding his Gown clove unto him, and putting on his head a Garland of Laurel, he laid the Oak upon his shoulders and marched towards the City, his Army following, and ringing an *Epinicion*, or song of Victory. To this we must refer the original and beginning of *Triumphs*. But, *Nihil est inventum & perfectum eodem tempore*, as the saying is. *Tarquinius Priscus* long after *Romulus*, added hereunto the purple Robe, and the triumphal Chariot drawn with four Horses. The other pomp came afterwards, as they grew both in power and pride. Now of these *Triumphs* there were two sorts; the greater, which was properly called a *Triumph*; and the lesser, vulgarly called the *Ovation*, which differed from one another in many circumstances. For, 1. The *Triumph* made his entrance in a Royal Chariot, and was met only by the Senators in their Robes; but the *Ovation* made his entrance on foot, and was met only by the Knights and Gentlemen of *Rome*. 2. The *Triumph* had a Laurel Crown, and the *Ovation* had only a Garland of Firr, with Flutes and Hautboys playing before him. 3. The *Triumph* was attired in a Garment of State, which they called *Vestis Trabeata*, but the *Ovation* in a plain Purple Gown only. 4. In a *Triumph*, the Soldiers cried out, *To Triumph*; but in an *Ovation* they ingeminated only *O, O, O*, from the often doubling of which word, it had (as some think) the name of an *Ovation*. 5. And lastly the *Triumph* used to Sacrifice a certain number of Oxen; but the *Ovation* a Sheep only, from whence the name is properly to be derived.

Now there was three cases in which the Conqueror was to be content with this lesser *Triumph*. 1. If the number of Enemies whom they slew in Battle exceeded not 5000 men; or that he had not so much overcome them by force, as by perswasion or subtilty. 2. If the War had been slight, curious, or not lawfully managed. And 3. If it were against an Ignoble Enemy. And of this last we have a fair instance in *P. Rupilius*, who having got the victory in the *Servile* War, (a victory of great importance to the State of *Rome*) was yet content with an *Ovation*, *ne Triumphi dignitatem Servili inscriptione violaret*, as it is in *Florus*. As for the greater *Triumph*, they were indeed very full of magnificence; the pomp whereof, who list to see, may find it in the *Triumph* of *Paulus Emilius* described by *Plutarch*; though by that which hath before been said, we may conjecture somewhat at the glories of it.

And yet this Honour was not always vouchsafed to those who had best deserved it, there being many ways whereby it might be forfeited or denied in a factious State, and jealous of the over-greatness of the men of War. For, 1. Sometimes it was denied a victorious General, by the strength of a contrary Faction; and so *Pompey* denied *Mitellus* the honour of a *Triumph* for the Conquest of *Crete*: 2. Sometimes the Conqueror himself is willing to decline it, for fear of envy: And so *Marcellus* in *Plutarch*, after his Conquest of *Sicily*, having *Triumphed* twice before, refused that honor: his reason was, *quod si non cum viro tunc & deique*, for fear his Third *Triumph* might become a matter of envy. 3. Sometimes the Soldiers, having been ill paid, or otherwise not well treated by their Commanders, opposed them in their suit for it: and this was the case of *Paulus Emilius*, who questionless had missed this honour for not dividing amongst them the spoils of *Greece*, as he once had promised

if *Servilius* and others of the Senate, making it their own case, had not sticked hard for him with the Soldiers. 4. It was sometimes denied, because the General had born no publick Office in the Commonwealth: for so, in *Livy*, when *Lucullus* coming *Pro-consul* out of *Spain* required a *Triumph*, the Fathers answered, that he had indeed done things worthy of that honour, but that they had no precedent for it; *ut qui neque Consul, neque Dictator, neque Pretor Res gessisset*, *Triumpharet*. 5. Sometimes the Generals themselves omitted it for the furtherance of some of their other purposes: And so *Cæsar* coming towards *Rome* a Victor, at the same time the *Consuls* were to be chosen, laid aside his demand of the *Triumph* to sue for the *Consulship*; it being the custom that such as demanded the *Triumph* should abide without the City, and such as sued for the *Consulship* must of necessity be within. 6. Sometimes it was denied, when the War had been undertaken without the Command of the Senate: in which respect the *Triumph* was denied unto *Manlius* on the conquest of *Galatia* by him, to the great enlargement of the Empire, *quia causam Belli Senatus non approbavit*, because he had no Commission from the Senate for it. 7. There was no *Triumph* granted if the War had been Civil, because in all such Wars whosoever was Conqueror, the Commonwealth was a loser by it. And therefore *Pompey* and *Metellus* having vanquished *Sertorius* and his Party in *Spain*, would have it called a Foreign, not a Civil War, because they would not lose their *Triumph*. *Externum magis id bellum quam Civile videri voluerunt, ut triumpharent*. 8. If the Victory had not been obtained without great loss on the Romans side; in which regard *Valerius* after his conquest of the *Galls* was denied this honour, *quia magis dolor civium amissionis quam gaudium fuisse hostium prevaluit*, faith *Alexander ab Alexandro*. 9. And lastly, the *Triumph* was denied a General, if the service had not been performed in his own Province: And so we find that when *Lucius* and *Nero*, being *Consuls*, had vanquished *Allobroges*, *Lucius* only had the *Triumph*, though *Nero* was the man that had won the day, because the Field was fought in the Province of *Lucius*, to whom *Nero* came but as an *Accessory*, or assistant to him.

And these are all, or at the least the principal causes of hindering or omitting this great Honour, indeed the greatest that the *Free-State* could be capable of. But after when the Commonwealth was changed into a *Monarchy*, it began to be laid aside for altogether, as too great for subjects; and was first purposely neglected by *Vespasian* *Agrippa*, the Establisher of *Angustus* in the Roman Empire, who when he had a *Triumph* decreed unto him, for quenching certain Rebellions in *Asia*, and his quiet settling of that Country; to give Posterity an example, refused to accept it. And this example being (as it were) a rule to others, occasioned that this custom was in short time quite laid aside; and that no man under the degree of an Emperor triumphed solemnly; all others from thenceforth, being content with the *Triumphal* Ornaments, *ut ait Suetonius*, *in his words of Dion*. And though *Belisarius* having subdued the Kingdom of the *Vandals* in *Africa*, is said (600 years after the death of *Agrippa*) to have had the honour of a *Triumph* yet in propriety of speech, it was nothing but an honourable presenting of himself and his Prisoners before the Emperor, and was so far from the magnificence of a Roman *Triumph*, that it wanted many of the solemnities used in an *Ovation*. Nor did the Emperors themselves much affect this honour, either because too popular, or too agreeable, or that they thought it was beneath the Imperial Majesty; the last (as I remember) that made use thereof to set forth his glories, being *Valerius Probus*, after his victories

in or about the year 284 of our Saviour's Birth.

In the next place look we on the encouragements and rewards of the Common Soldiers: For, besides the setting out of Lands and dwellings for the poorer sort, in which they might rest themselves when they are pait in service; and besides the large donatives which the General in his *Triumph* did bestow upon them; they had their mural Crown for him that first scaled the Walls, a naval Crown for him that first boarded the Enemies Ships, a Camp Crown, or *Corona Castrifera*, for him that had forced a way into the Tents or Camp of the Enemy's City Crown, or *Corona Civica*, for him that had preserved the life of a Roman Citizen. Not to say any thing of those Chains and Bracelets which Soldiers of inferior merit were adorned withal. By which encouragements, and the good conduct of their Councils in the Senate, the Roman affairs succeeded so prosperously, and their Dominions were enlarged so immensely, that never any Commonwealth had so large a growth.

And yet the greatness of this State is neither totally, nor only to be attributed to the *Consular* Government. For though the Walls of this great building were raised by the *Consuls*, yet the Foundation of the same was laid by the Kings, and the roof thereof laid on by the Emperors, who were the honour of *Monarchical* Government, whenever any great and imminent danger did seem to threaten them, they were fain to lay aside their confidence in the rule of their *Consuls*, and betake themselves to the Command of one Sovereign Officer, whom they called *Dictator*. Of which, and other the changes happening in the State of *Rome*, take this short abstract from *Corn. Tacitus*. "Urban Romam à principio Reges habuerunt, &c." "The City of *Rome*, was in the beginning Governed by Kings. Liberty and the *Consulship* *L. Brutus* brought in. The *Dictators* were chose but for a time: The *Decemviri* lasted not two years, neither had the *Consular* authority of the Triumvirs of the Soldiers any long continuance, or *Chinas* or *Sylla's* dominion. *Pompey* and *Craffus* quickly yielded to *Cæsar's* Forces; *Lepidus* and *Antony* to *Augustus*. So *Tacitus* in brief of these publick changes: Of which, as to the *Decemviri*, which were instituted only on a particular occasion for the reforming of the Laws by those of *Athens*; and the *Military Tribunes* of *Consular* Authority ordained to divert common people from seeking after the *Consulship*; I shall here say nothing. But as for the *Dictators*, being Officers of a Supreme power, and such as made way for the Emperors in the clove of all; I shall enlarge a little further. They were called *Dictators à diando*, because they prescribed what they pleased unto the people; which they were bound to execute and not dispute. Hence that memorable jest of *Julius Cæsar*, who being told that *Sylla* had resigned his *Dictatorship*, though by the decree of *Senate* made perpetual to him; returned this Answer, that *Sylla* made perpetual to him; returned this Answer, that *Sylla* knew not how to *dictate*, or to play the *Dictator*. They were also called *Populi Magistri*, or the peoples Masters, because from them lay no appeal unto the people (as did from all the rest of the Roman Magistrates) during the whole time of their Command, which ordinarily continued for six months; yet so, that if they did in the mean time settle the affairs of the Commonwealth; they resigned it sooner; if the necessities of the State required a longer continuance in it, they were chosen again. The names of as many of them as I have met withal, I have here subjoynt together with the services they did the Publick, in the time of their Office.

The Dictators of Rome.

- | | | |
|-----|----------|--|
| | A. U. C. | |
| 253 | 1. | <i>Titus Lartius</i> , chosen upon occasion of a general War made by the <i>Latins</i> upon <i>Rome</i> ; the first that ever had this Office. |
| 257 | 2. | <i>Anulus Posthumus</i> , chosen to pursue that War, which he ended with the slaughter of 30000 of the <i>Latins</i> . |
| 295 | 3. | <i>L. Quintinus Cincinnatus</i> , chosen to this Office from the Plough, overcame the <i>Volsi</i> ; chosen again A. U. C. 314, to suppress the sedition raised by <i>Sp. Maelius</i> . |
| 318 | 4. | <i>Emilius Mamercus</i> , overcame the <i>Vientes</i> and the <i>Fidenates</i> , and was thrice in Eleven years called unto this Office. |
| 338 | 5. | <i>Pub. Servilius</i> , who finally vanquished the <i>Fidenates</i> and the <i>Lavinians</i> . |
| 354 | 6. | <i>Furius Camillus</i> , who finally destroyed the City of the <i>Volsi</i> , and being chosen a second time A. U. C. 362, preserved his Country from the <i>Galls</i> : thrice chosen after this upon new occasions. |
| 375 | 7. | <i>Tir. Quintinus Cincinnatus</i> , chosen in the War against the <i>Latins</i> . |
| 385 | 8. | <i>L. Manlius</i> , elected in the time of a grievous Pettilence, to find a way for the appealing of the gods. |
| 396 | 9. | <i>C. Sulpicius</i> . |
| 418 | 10. | <i>Martius Rutilius</i> , the fifth <i>Dictator</i> chosen out of the Commons. |
| | 11. | <i>L. Papirius</i> , subdued the <i>Samniters</i> . |
| 438 | 12. | <i>Cassius</i> ; by whom the <i>Samniters</i> were again vanquished. |
| | 13. | <i>Emilius</i> , who also overcame the <i>Samniters</i> . |
| | 14. | <i>Leulius</i> , who triumphed also over the <i>Samniters</i> . |
| 451 | 15. | <i>L. Ebulicellus</i> , who finally subdued the <i>Æqui</i> and the <i>Volsi</i> . |
| | 16. | <i>Corn. Rufinus</i> . |
| 467 | 17. | <i>Q. Hortensius</i> , chosen for appeasing a difference between the Senate and the Commons, who had fortified himself in <i>Janiculum</i> , one of the Hills whereon <i>Rome</i> stood. |
| 518 | 18. | <i>Cl. Glicius</i> , forced to resign his Office to |
| 505 | 19. | <i>Atilius Colatinus</i> , the first that exercised his Office out of <i>Italy</i> : he was chosen in the first <i>Penic</i> War. |
| 536 | 20. | <i>Fabius Maximus</i> , chosen in the War against <i>Annibal</i> . |
| 537 | 21. | <i>M. Junius</i> , chosen upon the great defeat which the Roman Forces had at the Battle of <i>Cannæ</i> . |
| 545 | 22. | <i>L. Manlius Torquatus</i> , chosen upon the death of <i>Marcellus</i> Consul slain by <i>Annibal</i> . |
| 672 | 23. | <i>L. Sylla</i> , (descended from that <i>Corn. Rufinus</i> , who had been formerly in this Office) having by force of Arms suppressed the Faction of <i>Marius</i> and <i>Cinna</i> , made himself Master of the City, and caused himself to be chosen Perpetual <i>Dictator</i> , after the Office had been intermitted; for the space of 127 years: which Office having exercised with a great deal of cruelty, he resigned with as great a confidence. |
| 707 | 24. | <i>C. Julius Cæsar</i> descended from <i>Julius</i> the son of <i>Afcenius</i> , who was the second King of the <i>Trojan</i> |

These two gave way each to other; and both to death. Next these, as well in factions and designs, as blood and alliance, succeeded *Cæsar* and *Pompey*: Two men never truly parallel'd since their own times. *Cæsar* had a wit to invent or pregnant, a heart to execute so stout, and to both a Fortune so favourable, that he durst undertake what no man dared; and his performances commonly were answerable to his undertakings: *Pompey*, a man greater than his own or his friends wishes, had triumphed over all the parts of the known World; but could he but have brook'd an *Equal*, he had never met *Superior*. Had these two lived in divers Ages, or exercised their valour on the common Enemy, the World had been too little to yield them employment.

But turning their forces one against the other, Pompey overthrown in the *Field*, was basely murdered in *Egypt*; and *Cæsar*, victoriously conqueror in *Thessaly*, was barbarously massacred in the *Capitol*. And though none of these four Worthies could settle the Monarchy in himself, yet this shall be to their eternal memory recorded, that they first opened a passage to others, and first moved the stone, which rolling along, tumbled the People out of the Government.

6. After the overthrow of Pompey, and death of *Cæsar*, the Common-wealth might have recovered Liberty, if either *Cæsar* had left no heir, and Pompey no children: or rather, if *Antonius*, a man of an unquiet and turbulent spirit, had not begun new troubles. For he knowing the affection of the common people unto young *Octavius*, *Cæsar*'s heir; and hearing the continual report of his approach to Rome for his inheritance, did by Decree of the Senate restore *Sextus* the son of Pompey to his blood and honours; hoping that they two, inheriting their Fathers hatreds, would like Pellets in a Boys *Pot-gun* drive out, each other; and so he might remain Lord of the whole. But young *Octavius* was too old to be so fetcht over, and had moreover more desire to revenge his Fathers death on *Brutus* and *Caïus*, than turn himself upon an Enemy that neither had done, nor could do him any hurt. At his first entrance into Rome he declared himself *Cæsar*'s heir, though some regarding more his welfare than honour, dissuaded him from it. His retinue at his entrance was but small, his behaviour gentle and courteous, so that all had cause to love him, none to fear him. His first business was to *Antonius*, then possessed of all *Cæsar*'s Estate. His words as modest as his Petition just. *Antonius* answer somewhat churlish, forbidding him to meddle in matters of State, adding that he was too young to take upon him the name of *Cæsar*, and so dismissed him unsatisfied, and with discontentments. *AVGUSTUS* (for by that name we mean to call him, though he was not yet so called) perceiving that *Antonius* answer, though in few but a delay, was in effect a denial, insinuated into the acquaintance of *Cicero*, then potent among the Senators, and a capital Enemy of *Antonius*; by whose means the Lords of the Senate began to cast great affection towards him. Next in a solemn Oration to the People, he let them know, how he intended to have distributed his Fathers wealth among them; and how *Antonius* did unjustly detain it from them both. Certainly, there is not any thing prevaileth sooner with the ignoble Man than hope of gain. No sooner had he finished his speech, and given away that to them, which he thought impossible to get for himself, but all was in a tumult. None was so sparing of his words, but he had some curse in store for *Antonius*; every one vowing the destruction of that man, whom they supposed to deprive them of *AVGUSTUS* donative.

7. In this hurly burly *Antonius* quits the Town, and is by the general voice of the Houses declared an Enemy to the State. An Army is given to *Hircius* and *Pansæ*, then *Consuls*: *AVGUSTUS*, aged but 18 years, being proclaimed *Imperator*, and made head of the League against the common Foe. *AVGUSTUS*, as he loved not to absent from a necessary War, so he always used to reserve himself from the dangers of it; and therefore he committed the whole enterprise unto the *Consuls*: well knowing that though the Officers and Soldiers took most pains to get the victory, yet would the honour of it be referred to him, as *Imperator*; Whereas if any thing fell out to the Army not well, his being a *Non-agent* in the business, would bring his honour off without stain. The *Consuls* therefore pro-

ceeded in the War against *Antonius*: who seeing little possibility of prevailing, resolved to sell the loss of his own liberty and his Soldiers lives, at a dear rate. And indeed the fortune of the day was so equally shared, that as the *Consuls* might boast of the vanquishment of *Antonius*, so *Antonius* might triumph in the death of the *Consuls*.

AVGUSTUS had now as much as he could desire, more than he expected; a victorious Army at his service. He therefore applies himself to them, that giving that among them which he had in present, and promising them greater favours, according as his fortune and their valour should advance him; he bound them unto him in an eternal bond of allegiance, and made them the first step by which he ascended the *Royalty*. The Lords of the Senate hearing of the young mans fortune, thought it best to hearing these hopes even in their Cradles, and to that end, decree the honour of overcoming *Antonius*, not to belong to *AVGUSTUS*, but to *Decius Brutus*; for whose defence (being besieged by *Antonius* in *Mutina*) their Army had been levied. Nor did they think this frost of unexpected unkindness, sufficient to nip the blossom of his hopes; but they deigned him the *Consulship*. These harsh proceedings compelled *AVGUSTUS* (his honour now lying at stake) to enter Rome as Conqueror, and force the Fathers to grant him his desires. Having thus gotten what for the time he aimed at, he generally shewed himself grateful to all, and particularly to some of the Soldiers, paying them what was behind by promise, and openly protesting that without their aid he durst not have adventured into the *Capitol*. So by keeping his day with the Military men, and shewing his noble and generous nature in a thankful commemoration of their service; he added stronger bonds to such as were already his own, and won many daily to his side, which before were either neutral, or adverse-ries.

8. *Antonius* in the mean time was not idle, but knowing that *Lepidus* was beyond the Mountains with a puissant Army, he posted thither, and so far prevailed with the Soldiers, that he was admitted into the Camp; where the General entertained him with all expressions of love and welcome. *Antonius* perceiving the facile nature of *Lepidus*, soon persuaded him to lead his forces into Italy; promising him no less than the Lordship of the World, if he durst but shew his face to the Romans. *AVGUSTUS* having continual news of this combination, and fearing much the prowess of *Antonius*, now strengthened; conceived no course so fitting and convenient to his ends, as to join friendship, and to enter into confederacy with them. And this he did, not for any good will to either, but because being destitute of means to resist them, and also to revenge the death of his father *Julius*, which he much laboured; he might with their forces oppress *Caïus* and *M. Brutus*, and, as occasion fell out, deal with them being severed. This League was solemnly confirmed by a bloody *Proscription* immediately following. Wherein, to be revenged on their Enemies they betrayed their Friends. A lamentable and ruthless time; good and bad, rich and poor, being alike subject to the slaughter. Now was the time of *Julius Cæsar*'s Government thought to be the Golden Age; and every one began to curse *Brutus* and *Caïus* as the Authors of these present miseries; whom they but lately honoured as the Restorers of the Common liberty. Nay the very Kings were deemed tolerable, and such as lived in their days, happy. The poor Romans had not changed the

Tyranny,

Tyranny, but the Tyrants: Yea, they had three for one into the bargain. Such is the condition of us men, that we know not our own happiness in the fruition, but the want. Two of these *Triumviri* glutted themselves with blood, taking pride in hearing the lamentable cries and groans of the People. *Antonius* on the contrary, shewed himself much grieved at this barbarous cruelty; so that his consent seemed rather forced than voluntary. But this *Proscription*, though in it self cruel and tyrannical, produced some good and profitable effects in the Republick. For when by this *Proscription* and the ensuing Civil War, the stoutest of the Nobles and Commons were made away, few being left which durst censure the old Liberty; *Antonius* did the more easily establish his Monarchy, and restore peace to the City. Moreover the people against *Antonius* and *Lepidus*, that incensed the people against *Antonius*, found them always his fast friends, if not for love to him, yet in spite to them.

9. But to proceed; *Antonius* and *Antonius* leaving the guard of the City to *Lepidus*, with joint-forces march against *Brutus* and *Caïus*, both overthrown by *Antonius*; whom *AVGUSTUS* did therefore put upon that service, as well to diminish *Antonius* forces, as to keep his own entire. As for himself, either he in policy suffered himself to be driven out of the field by *Brutus*, to make *Antonius* more work; or else indeed durst not abide the Battle. Such end had *Brutus* and *Caïus*, two men whom fortune seemed to be in love with on the sudden, and did as suddenly forsake them. *Brutus* the more accomplished man; *Caïus* the more expert Soldier. I pass over *AVGUSTUS*'s Wars in Italy, *Antonius* in Asia, the discontents between them, and their reconciliation by the means of *Octavia*, sister to the one, and wife to the other Emperor. As also how joining forces together to oppress *Sebastus*, then Lording it over the Sea, and proud with the conquest of *Sicilia*; they received him into the Confederacy, and joyed the Island of *Sardinia* to his other conquests. To recompence which kindness, *Sebastus* invited the two Generals aboard his *Admiral-Galley*; and after a bountiful entertainment, returned them safe to their Camps. I scarce have ever heard of so great an over-sight among so many able Politicians. And much I marvel with my self, upon what confidence *AVGUSTUS* and *Antonius* durst so far trust their persons to a reconciled Enemy; or on what reason *Sebastus* having both of them in his power, would let slip so lightly that advantage, greater than which was never offered to a discontented and ambitious person. This I am sure of, that he afterwards repented it, and could have wished that he had harkened to the voice of *Menas* his old servant, who had persuaded him to make his belt of that opportunity. The Kings of France and Aragon, of old Enemies made new Friends, had the like interview at *Savona*: which that notable Historiographer and States-man *Guicciardine* describeth with much wonder and commendation. Yet, in the like case, have many, and, as I think, worthily condemned Lewis the 11. of France, and Charles of Burgundy, the Arch-politicians of those days, in that Lewis at *Peronne* put himself into the hands of Charles his Enemy, who also after a short restraint, dismissed him.

10. These solemn expressions of amity between the three Generals being thus ended, and *Antonius* gone for Egypt, *AVGUSTUS* then began to contrive his establishment in the State; though with the ruin of his Colleagues. He beginneth first with *Sebastus*, having by gifts and promises drawn *Menas* unto his side, who by reason of his inwardness with his Master, knew most

of his designs. By the direction of this *Menas* and the assistance of *Lepidus*, he quickly overthrew *Sebastus*; who flying death in Europe by the hand of *AVGUSTUS*, found it in Asia, by the commandment of *Antonius*. After this victory, *AVGUSTUS*, either having, or pretending a quarrel against *Lepidus*, entereth into his Camp, seizeth his person, and depriving him of all honours, coninceth him to Rome. A man that half against his will, stumbling upon the Government, had beyond any desert of his, enjoyed ten years continuance of Empire and prosperity. An action of a very high nature, and such as *AVGUSTUS* durst not have ventured on, if *Antonius* had been in Italy. He therefore advicely removed him out of his way, before he would attempt the same. It hath been ever a chief Maxim in Court-Flattery, to remove that man out of the way, under pretence of some honourable charge, whom we intend either to call from his present honours, or else to make less potent with Prince and People. For which cause also *AVGUSTUS* perfwaded *Antonius*'s absence from the City, to bring him at the last into discredit and contempt. For well he knew that his dotage on *Cleopatra*, could not but draw him into many inconveniences: neither could his neglecting the State, to riot with his Lemman, be other then distastful to the Lords and People. Next, he commanded his sister *Octavia* to leave her husband *Antonius*'s house, yet privately he perfwaded her to live there still, and bring up his children; that so the Romans seeing her noble demeanor and love to her husband, might the more heartily detest him, who so ignobly and unkindly had rejected her. To add more fuel to this flame of hatred, he readeth *Antonius*'s Will unto the people, in which many of the Roman Provinces were bequeathed to *Cleopatra*'s children, and other things ordained to the common prejudice. *Antonius* likewise preferred many Bills against *AVGUSTUS*, as that he had deposed *Lepidus* from the *Triumvirate*; that he had divided Italy among his own Soldiers only, that he had not restored the Ships borrowed to make War against *Sebastus*. These discontents scconded with an ambitious hope of prevailing, made them both resolute to refer all to the decision of a Battle. *Antonius* had a Fleet consisting of 500 Ships, high built, and trimmed up rather for a Triumph than a Fight. His Land Forces consisted of 100000 Foot, and 12000 Horse, *Antonius* had the like number of Horsemen, 80000 Foot, and 250 good Men of War, snug and close, built more for use than ostentation. The Rendezvous is *Actium*, a place seeming to be marked out for notable defeats: here being fought almost in our Fathers days, that famous battle, wherein the *Venicians* gave the world to understand, that the Turkish Forces by Sea were not invincible. *Antonius* was on the Offensive-side, and therefore much doubted whether it were better to give the Onset by Sea or by Land. *Cleopatra*, whose words were Oracles, perfwaded him to the Sea-fight; not that she thought it more safe, but that if *Antonius* lost the day, the might with more facility escape. To this resolution, when most of the Captains had gained fair agreed; one of the old Soldiers thus bluntly gained said it. "What a miserable security art thou possessed with, most noble Emperor? Where is that ancient force, fight wherewith thou hast formerly prevented all disasters, & turned the Enemies devices on their own heads?" Confider with thy self, most noble General, what uncertain friends the Wind and Sea are? To how fickle an Element thou dost trust the fortunes? Let the Egyptians and Phenicians, old Mermaids, born and nurt up in the Sea, follow this kind of warfar. But let us try true Roman spirits try our valour on the firm Land, and there fight for thy Empire, and our own Lives. Perhaps

G

"happ'st thou dost mistrust our faith: Look here, *Antony*, (with that he opened his bosom) and thou shalt see many an honourable scar got in thy service. We are now too old to learn new Treasons: Alter therefore thy resolution, and, to please a woman, canst not away to many of thy faithful Followers. Certainly the irresistible powers of Heaven when they decree a mans destruction, overthrow those Counsels by which he should escape it. *Antony* turns his deaf ear to this Soldier's wholesome advice, and borrowing from *Cleopatra* two or three kisses (as if from the fountain of her lips he had derived all his courage) without any more ceremony prepareth unto the battle.

12. *AUGUSTUS* on the other side, seeing a necessity of a Sea-fight, was yet in this comforted, that his Vessels were more useful and better manned, though fewer than his Enemies: that his men to him were faithful, and by reason of their many Victories, in good heart: From *Antony* were daily revolted some Kings and Captains of note, to the great encouragement of the one side, and disheartening of the other. The whole charge of the War he committed to *M. Vespasianus Agrippa*, who failing in no duty of a good Captain, took from his Gallies whatsoever might be impediments to the valiant, or shelter for the cowardly: all that was cumbersome to his own men, or advantageous to the Enemy. Things thus ordered, and the battles ready to join, *Antony* *Cesar* standing where he might see and be seen of all, is said to make this or the like Oration. "Fellows and Companions in Arms, I suppose it needless to hear you, which never were acquainted with fear: or bid you overcome, which never yet knew what it was, not to vanquish. Conquest hath always fast upon the edge of your swords, and victory been written in your foreheads. Be not now backward to add this one to your other Triumphs. When after the death of my Father *Julius* of famous memory, I first dealt in matters of War, I rather found than made you good Soldiers. And during this twelve years service under me, neither have you been wanting in the duty of faithful followers, nor I (I hope) of a vigilant and grateful Leader. Sure I am, I expressed my self as far as I could, and more I would, had I been able. Let not the number, nor the greatness of the adverse Gallies any ways afflict you. The hugeness of their Bulks make them unfit for employment; and the multitude, one clogging and hindring the others, may as much further our Victory as theirs. They exceed us in multitudes of Men, we them in number of Soldiers. The meaning of the word *Pilot* is unknown among them. And for their *Mariners*, the best of them are but *Carters*, *Reapers*, and *Harrow-men*, raked out of the field; the rest, the excrement of common Prisons, where with the Vessels are loaded, not manned. The *General* is indeed a *Captain* for such a selected Company. It is the same *Antony*, whom you once drove out of the field, before *Mutina*. I verily persuade my self, that neither he dares think of recovering, or you of losing your former glories. It is the same *Antony*, who being shamefully chased out of *Parthia*; only in that he was not vanquished, proclaimed himself *Victor*. It is the same *Antony*, who intended to make *Rome* subject to the *Egyptians*; and to distribute the *Provinces* purchased with the blood and virtue of our Ancestors, amongst *Iran* and her fellow Chamber-maids. Nay indeed it is not *Antony* at all, but the shadow only of that substance, which now is hid in *Cleopatra's* Cabin. Courage then brave men of Arms; be, as you have still been, *Conquerors*. To speak more, were to detain you from victory. Only this, Call to mind your ancient valour. Remember that I am *Cesar*, you *Romans*.

13. This speech animated the new Soldiers, and confirmed the old; so that with a general acclamation they gave the assault. Death, wounds, and blows, diffied in divers fashions, and served in by several men, were the best delicacies prepared for these unwelcome visitants. *Cleopatra* beholding the Battle, and doubting the success, through the thickest of *Antony's* Fleet, made away with the 60 Gallies appointed for her Guard. This disorder made the breach, at which the Victory entered. *Antony* seeing her flight, left his Squadron also, and being taken into her Gally, hoysed sail for *Egypt*: Herein playing the part of a cowardly Soldier; whilst each of his Soldiers executed the office of a courageous *General*. For they so absolutely perished in the fight, that *AUGUSTUS* was fain to offer them mercy sooner than they would accept it. At last they all swear allegiance unto him. The Victory being thus gotten, *AUGUSTUS* (no loser of advantages) speedeth into *Egypt*, which he reduceth into the form of a *Province*; making the people pay, for fine, twenty millions of Gold. By receiving this money, he so weakened them that they had no ability to raise an after-war; and by distributing part of it among his Soldiers, he confirmed them in obedience. As for *Antony*, he seeing his fortunes desperate, redeemed the honour lost in his life, by a noble heroic death. And *Cleopatra* ended her life not long after also. A woman more well-favoured, than fair; well-spoken, rather than either. *Antony's* Courtiers had seen many Ladies more lovely, none more prevailing; men being chained to her by the ears, rather than by the eyes.

14. I willingly omit *AUGUSTUS* entry into *Rome*, as also the state and magnificence of his *Triumph*. His Victory he used so justly, that none felt the fury of the War, but such as were slain in the Battle. To assure himself of *Antony's* adherents, was his first care: to which end he burnt in the *Common Forum*, the Coffers of *Antony*, unopened; wherein all his Letters from his friends in *Rome* had been inclosed: well knowing that as long as any thought themselves suspected Adversaries; they would never leave themselves true Friends. To the *Senators* and *Magistrates* he made sumptuous feasts; to the *Common People* he exhibited magnificent and pleasing Stage-Plays; and, with all variety of pleasure, banished from both, as well sorrow for the old *Proscription*, as fear of a new. But this was only as a preparation to his main design. There were two men most dear unto him, and privy to his Council, *Mecenas* and *Agrippa*; which in the object of their love, differed only in this: *Mecenas* was a lover of *AUGUSTUS*, *Agrippa* of the *Emperor*. *Mecenas* was of the rank of *Knights*, a man of good and bad parts equally compounded; when his business required care, vigilant and circumspect; at leisure time, excessively riotous. *Agrippa* was the first of his house; a man alike fit for Camp and Council; one neither careless of a good name, nor covetous of a great. For although he only was the man which vanquished *Sexsus*, and *Antony*; yet well skilled in the humors of Princes, he gave *AUGUSTUS* the honor of all his Conquests; making the virtue not the reward, but the end of his Actions. So by doing nobly, and speaking modestly of it, he was without envy, but not without glory. With these two, *AUGUSTUS* withdrew into a private Closet, and then spake unto them in this sort. He made first unto them a long discourse of the Civil Wars; then added, "That having by his fortune, and the valour of his Soldiers, put an end to the troubles; he was unresolved what to do; Whether to resign the Empire to the People, or retain it still in his own hands: That in a business of such

such importance, he durst not rely altogether on his own wisdom: That he had made them his Judges, as men that could speak soundly, and durst speak freely: That he knew them to have more care of his honour, than profit; but of the *Common-wealth*, more than both: That his Counsels, which course soever he took, would not be by them eliminated. He therefore intreated them to consider what was to be done, and to give up their opinions in it.

15. *Agrippa* after a short silence thus began. "I know, thou canst not but marvel, *O Cesar*, that I who under thine Empire, am sure to be beyond precedent exalted, should persuade thee to live private. But I esteem more thy honour, than my profit; the publick good, than my particular preferment. And yet perhaps my Council shall be as profitable, if not as plausible as the contrary. I know thee to be no way delighted with lies and flattery, and will therefore deal with thee freely and plainly. Thou hast indeed put a period to the Civil Wars, but to what end, unless thou dost restore unto the *Common-wealth* that *Liberty* for which the Wars were raised? What benefit can the people reap from thy *Victory*, if thou dost use it only as an instrument for their greater bondage? Dost thou think that the *Romans* having for many hundred years maintained their *Liberty*, will now be willing to forgo it? No, *Cesar*, no, Flatter not thy self with these hopes. *Marius* the younger, and *Sertorius*, were quickly cut off, when their ends were once known; and *Julius* thy Father of happy memory, did not long live, after his actions seemed to bring the *Common Liberty* in hazard. And shall we think that there is no true *Roman* spirit surviving? No *Brutus*, living to attempt the like against thee? Believe me, *Cesar*, believe me, it is far better not to meddle with the Empire at all, than to be forced to abandon it. But say, Divine Providence will so protect thee, that thou mayest out-live such practices; that thou also not out-live thy glories? This present age perchance will not censure thine actions, because it dares not; but Posterity, free from all respects of love or hatred, cannot but call them into question, and brand thy enterprise with Ambition, and perhaps Tyranny. If thy designs prosper they will judge thee to have risen unjustly; if otherwise, to have fallen deservedly. How much better then were it, now when thine honour is without blemish, and thy reputation untainted, to resign thy authority? Indeed when *Scaxo* lorded it over the Sea, and *Antony* over *Egypt*, it might have been thought want of spirit to have depozed thy self from the Government. But now to do it, when thou art without *Rival* in the Empire; to when thou art Commander of the Worlds Forces, now when the People and Senate lie prostrate at the feet of thy mercy; were to strike dumb detraction, and to make future Ages admire thy Temper. Thou art at this present thy ease and comfort of the World; there is wanting to thee neither Wealth nor Fame. Here then fix thy foot. For go but one step beyond this *Non ultra*, and thou wilt run into a boundless Ocean of perils, which have no end, but the end of thy life and reputation.

16. Not so, excellent *Agrippa*, replied *Mecenas*. I never heard good *Pilot* find fault with *Sea-room*, or of more vessels cast away into the Ocean, than in the *Strait*, and narrow passages. Our *Republick*, is a Ship fraught with diverse Nations. She hath been long tossed on the waves of Civil dissension, long driven up and down with the Wind of ambition; and there is now no place to fit for her safety, as the unlimited Ocean of one mans power. This Empire at first rising, seemed not

to require a *Monarch*; but it is now grown too unwieldy, to be without one. Take then upon thee, *O Cesar*, this Empire; or to say better, do not forsake it. I should never thus advise thee, did I conceive any possible inconveniences. The Senate doth allow thee a competent guard of valiant and faithful Soldiers; whom thou shouldst thou fear? Nay, I may I prosper, if I see any cause of fear, were thy Guard cashiered. Enemies thou shalt none: For such as were, are either already slain by thy valour, or made thy friends, by thy bounty and clemency. To omit *Marius* and *Sertorius*, I will a little touch at thy Father *Julius*. He, too good a Soldier to be a *Slave*, was too heady and violent in establishing his government. Nor could he cunningly temper, and suffer the people infinitely, and by degrees, to drop into bondage; but oppress them all at once. Again, he committed a great *Solacium* in *State*, when discharging his Guard, he sought to retain that Empire by fair means, which he had gotten by violence. I know thee, *O Cesar*, to be of a more wary and cunning behaviour. I am able to work out thy own safety, by *Pompey's* misfortune. He after the finishing of the *Parthian War*, at *Brundisium*, disbanded his Army; and thereby merited to be accounted an honest and moderate man. Certainly, he showed himself in the course of this action, rather virtuous than fortunate or politic. For presently he began to be contented, and by his improvident weakening of himself, made an open passage to his own ruin. I commend him modestly, more than his brain; neither did he himself, on better considerations, approve his own doings; and therefore he resolved, had he been *Victor* in *Pharsalia*, never to have committed the like oversight. So it is, and so it will fall out with thee, *O Cesar*, if in this action thou propose him to be thy pattern. It is not safe, *Agrippa* faith, to take the Empire; less safe it is, to refuse it. A ferled and innature vice it is in man, Never to endure that any not above our own rank should over-top us. *Rome's* second founder *Camillus*; *Scipio*, that scourge of *Carthage*, were disgraced; and *M. Coriolanus* banished by our Ancestors, only because their worth had lifted them above the ordinary pitch of Subjects. Do not thou hope to fare better than thy Predecessors. Heretofore, perchance, thou mightest have fought the Empire, to satiate thy ambition: The Empire must now be thy refuge and *Asylum*. Credit me, The Lords of the Senate, after to many years of *Obsequies*, know not how to Govern; neither canst thou, having to long been a *Governor*, learn *Obedience*. True it is, that in matters of domestic business, a man may stop and delist where he will: But in the getting of an Empire, there is no mean between the death of an *Emperor* and the life of a *Prince*. Thou hast already gone too far to retire. Now thou must resolve to be *Cesar* or Nothing. To say more were superfluous. Thine own discretion will suggest unto thee better Arguments. Only this I know, that thou hast in thee too much *Julius*, not to be an *Emperor*.

17. *AUGUSTUS* seemed to incline to this latter opinion, whether moved with *Mecenas* Oration, especially his instance in *Pompey*, or that he was before resolved to follow that course is uncertain. Howsoever, seeming with great attention to observe their speeches, and gathering their several reasons and motives together; he made this reply. "A most hard thing it is, for a divided mind to make a well-joy'd Answer. Divided I am, and troubled between two opinions; I both follow either, thence in so doing I must offend one. Yet silence there is a necessity of Resolution. I intend, though I like well of thy advice, *Agrippa*, to follow

follow thine, *Mecenas*. In doing which, I am but an instrument of the *Deities*, to put their wills in execution. Often have I heard my Father *Octavius* report, how *Nigidius*, famous for his skill in *Judiciary Astrology*, told him once in open *Senate*, That he had begotten an *Emperor* for the *Romans*. As also, how *M. Cicero*, so renowned for Wit and Eloquence, dreamed, that he saw *Jupiter* place me on the top of the *Capitol*, with a Whip in mine hand. Certainly, if the Powers of Heaven promise me so great an *Empire*, I will not be wanting to myself; but will add by my industry, to their influence. To further my designs, I do desire you, may I conjure you both, that as you have been ever ready in your Counsels, so you would not now be backward in any necessary Assistance. This said, they presently enter into a new conference, how to manage a business of this weight; what *Senators* to acquaint with their intent; how to dispose of the *Army*, not yet calldied: with what Plummets it were best to found the minds of the common people, and to oblige all forts unto him. This Consultation ended, *AUGUSTUS* continued his assiduity to the People, and respect to the *Nobles*. An opportunity he had to express himself to both. There was at that time a Famine, which shrewdly raged among the *Commons*. To the poorer sort, he distributed Corn, gratis; to others, at a mean price. Riches and honours he communicated to both sorts; the better to wipe out of their memories, the ancient freedom. Such parts of the City as were destroyed by casualty of fire, ruined by length of time, or defaced during the *Civil-Wars*, he re-edified. Houses of *Common-assembly* he repaired, Temples, consecrated to the gods, he spared no cost to adorn and beautify. And finally, so freely diffused his bounty, that there was no part or member of the City which had not some taste of it. Next, he dismissed his Soldiers, assigning them Lands and habitations in divers parts of *Italy*: That so the People might conceive his *Resignation* to be real; and yet, if need were, his forces might be quickly re-assembled. Nor were *Agrippa* and *Mecenas* wanting for their parts, to promote the cause, but carefully acquainted some of the *Senate* with it, who stood well affected to them; and cunningly prepared others, who had stood indifferent.

18. The foundation thus laid, and the *Senate* fate *AUGUSTUS* rose from his seat, and spake to this, or the like effect. "When I consider with myself the infinite extent of the *Roman Empire*; I protest I stand at a maze: marvelling how such, as heretofore have raised combustions in the State, durst undertake the sole administration of it. What Nation in the World hath not either begged their Peace at our Gates, or felt the fury of our Wars at their own? What Countries have we not harried with Fire and Sword? making the rising and setting of the Sun the bounds of our Dominions? It must questionless proceed from an over-weening conceit in them, of their own abilities; who thought themselves so fit to undergo that burden, which none but the immortal gods can carry. Of my self I will not say much: Only, I hope I may say with modesty, that I am not inferior to *Cinna*, nor to *Sylla*: Yea have I found in myself, by late experience, how unable I was to manage the affairs of State, even then when I had two *Co-adjutors*. There is no *Astis* of strength sufficient to bear up this *Heaven*, no *Star* of influence sufficient to animate this *Sphere*: Nor one form of virtue sufficient to actuate this matter. Neither indeed is it fit, that the *Republick* which ought to be immortal, should depend only on the life and welfare of one man. There never

was, since the beginning of time, a City replenished with greater store of worthy and able men, either to consult or execute. Never was seen so grave and discreet a *Consul*; Never so many of both sorts, so fit to govern. I have by your directions, and the Valour of your Soldiers, put an end to all home-bred quarrels. I have been your instrument to reduce peace internal and external, to your City; and desire now no other Guerdon or recompence, for any former services, than a quiet and a private life; free from all such dangers and inconveniences, as are inseparably annexed to the Sovereignty. Now therefore, (and may my action be auspicious and fortunate to my Country) do I resign my authority; committing my self, and the *Common-wealth* into the hands of the *Senate* and People of *Rome*.

19. This Oration ended, there followed a soft and silent buzzing in the house. Some supposed this speech not to have much truth, as art and cunning; yet smothered their conceits for fear of after-claps. Others were creatures of his own making, and they hoping to rise in the fall of their Country, would not hear of a *Resignation*. Some few of the wiser sort thought it not expedient, to put the Reins again into the hands of the Multitude. The rest out of a sluggish and Phlegmatic Constitution, chose rather the present estate with security, than to strive to recover the old with danger. All therefore with a joint-consent proclaim him sole *Emperor*; and solemnly entreat him to save the *Common-wealth*, otherwise running to inevitable ruine. He for a while, as vainly denied to accept the Government, as they vainly persisted to desire him. At last, wearied with the clamorous of all in general, and importunity of some in particular; he by little and little yielded to their requests, taking upon him the *Empire* for ten years: with this proviso, That if before that time expired, he could fully settle and order the present State, he would give up his charge. This he gave out, not with a purpose of performance, (for at the end of every *Decennium* he renewed his Lease of the Government;) But that the people seeing so nigh a possibility of regaining their *Liberties*, might not practise against him. Whereas, had he for term of life received the supreme Authority, he had no doubt halsted his own overthrow. For well he knew, that not the Title of *Dictator*, but the Epithete *Perpetual*, was the destruction of *CÆSAR*: And yet a great respect was had also in the choice of the Title. The name of *King* he refused, as being odious unto the *Citizens*. Neither would he be called *Romulus*, though he much desired it; lest they should suppose that he did affect the *Tyranny*. When the people called him *Dictator*, he rent his Garments; desiring them to discharge him of a name so hated: and being once called *Lord*, (*Dominus*) he forbade all that Title by publick Edict. *Princeps Senatus* was the only Title he admitted: well knowing, that the like glorious attributes were heaped on his Father *Julius* by them which least loved him, only to this end, that growing more and more into hatred, he might the sooner be dispatched. Nor was he ignorant, that the *Common-people*, led more by appearances than truth, discerned names more plainly than execution: and that the only course to make greatness stand firm, was to receive extraordinary power under a Title not offensive. The name also of *AUGUSTUS* conferred upon him by the *Senate*, (as if there had been something in him more than mortal) he refused not; as a Title expressing more dignity and reverence than authority. And having pleased himself in the choice of his Title, he next proceeded to the establishment of his power, which he thus pursued.

20. When

20. When first at the hands of the *Lords* of the *Senate*, he had for ten years received the Government; there was appointed unto him two *Cohorts* of *Prætorian* Soldiers for the guard of his person; to whom the *Senate* allowed the double wages of a *Legionary* Soldier, to make them more vigilant and heedful in their charge. Over these he appointed two *Prefects* or *Governors*, (*Captains of the Guard* we may best term them.) To commit the charge to one only, might breed danger, to more, confusion. *Agrippa*, to settle *Nero* in the *Empire*, prevailed with *Claudius*, to make *Burrus*, whom he had at her devotion, the sole *Captain*: and *Nymphidius*, fallen from his hopes of setting *Galba* besides the *cession*; desired the command of the *Guard*, as the next step to Sovereignty. In choice of these *Captains*, he observed two Rules: First, he ever chose them, *ex ordine Equitum*, not *Senatorio*; lest that, so high a dignity joyned to so high a birth, might trouble their resolutions to some designs against his might. Secondly, he made choice of two such, as were of contrary humours, and so newhat at odds; that so the ill intents of the one (if they should harbour any) might be thwarted and revealed by the other; and both, in a noble emulation, should contend to be most forward in his service. The next course which he took for his own security, was a law he made to curb the wills and attempts of the great ones. For whereas it hath been formerly unlawful to question a *Bondman*, in matters concerning the life and death of his Lord; *AUGUSTUS* passed an Act, that all such *Bondmen* should be first sold to him, or the *Commonwealth*. By means whereof he kept the *Lords*, before precluding on the secret of their slaves, from all close and private Conspiracicks against him. Having thus strengthened his person, he assumed to himself the *Imperial*, *Consular*, and *Tribunitian* authority, together with the *Sacerdotal* dignity. As *Emperor* and *General* of the Men of War, he could press Soldiers, raise Taxes, proclaim Wars, make Peace; yea, and put to death the very best and stoutest of the *Senators*. As *Consul*, it was in his power to reform corrupt manners, enquire after mens carriages, to take in and put out of the *Senate* whom he listed; to place and displace the people from a more honourable Tribe, to a less honourable. Yet would he not be called *Consul* as a name too inferior; but accepted the *Prerogatives* of it, after the surrendry of *Mammius*, and his Associate, two men so unfit for that Magistracy, that they could object no crime to old or young, of which themselves were not guilty. The *Tribunitian* authority enabled him to hinder any thing attempted against his liking. It preserved his person from all contumely and injury; giving him power to punish, as an execrable person, (yea, and without any formality of the Law) whoever had offended him either in word or deed. As for the *Pontifical* dignity, it made him a little more revered, not more potent. Only it added to his title the title of *Pontifex Maximus*, or *Chief Bishop*; and made him of authority amongst the *Priests*, and in sacred matters, things that concerned *Religion*. The light of Reason taught him, that it was convenient for him, being a *Prince*, to have command on all his People: He had been else but half a *Monarch*, such as some *Princes* are with us; who quit their *Clergie* to be governed by a *Foreign Head*.

21. These several *Prerogatives* annexed together, seem not yet sufficient; and therefore he so cunningly dealt with the *Senators*, that they gave him a general Exemption from the *Coactive power* of the Law. Which once obtained, he seriously bends his thoughts to settle the *Common-wealth*; and so to settle it, that by uniting all parties, and giving satisfaction to all Interests, it

might not be obnoxious to such frequent and tumultuous alterations, as it had been formerly. But herein when he had consulted the ancient Platforms, he found no small difficulty. The form described by *Plato*, shewed rather how a City ought to be governed, than how it may be. *Aristotle*, though bred in the *Free-States* of *Greece*, was a friend to *Monarchy*; but his discourses dark, and speculative, and not easily reduced to practice. *Solon* afforded the People too much Authority, the *Nobles* too little, the *King* none. The old *Carthaginian* Legislators attributed too much to *Riches*, too little to *Vertue*. The *Persian* Law-makers indulged to the *King* too much, to the Subject nothing. And on the other side, *Lycurgus* in his modelling of the State of *Sparta*, ascribed too little to the *King*, and too much to the *Senate*. *Zaleucus* was rather the Author of some particular Laws, than the Framers of a *Commonwealth*. *Phalaris*, and *Hippodamus*, as unimitable altogether as *Plato*. Seeing therefore that none of the old *Patterns* did come home to his purpose; and withal considering with himself, that the unmixt Forms of Rule were not equally ballanced, and by consequence subject unto change: he resolved to frame his *Common-wealth* out of the perfections of the three good Forms, their imperfection being rejected; referring to himself the Supreme Majesty, to the *Senate* eminent Authority, to the People convenient Liberty, all in a mixt and fit proportion. And to say truth, he did so just the Sovereignty of one, with the Liberty of all; that both the *Lords* and People, without fear of bondage or sedition, enjoyed their accustomed Freedoms. The *Consuls* and *Nobles* of the City assembled as formerly they used; matters of State they handled by themselves; Ambassadors of foreign Nations they heard, and dispatched. The *Commons* did assemble in the *Comitia*, to enact Laws and elect Magistrates, as in the free *Common-wealth*; Yet so that nothing was done without the consent and privacy of the *Prince*, who for the most part nominated the successive Magistrate, leaving the confirmation of him to the people. So that the change as he contrived it, was not violent and at once, but by degrees, and by the silent approbation of both Estates, as seeming to consist more in the alteration of the Magistrate, than of the Laws.

22. But (to proceed more particularly) the first care he took, was to confirm *Religion* in the same state in which he found it. I mean *Religion*, as the *Romans* used the word, for those particular, though idolatrous Forms of Worship, which to their several gods had been used among them. This, though he might have changed, as the *Pontifex Maximus*, or *Chief Bishop* of the City; yet very wisely he forbore it. It is not safe for *Princes* that are fettered in a long descent of Government, to be too active in such changes: But it is dangerous to attempt it in a green State, and in an *Empire* not well quieted, and inured to bondage. Men are more sensible of the smallest alterations in the Church, than greater changes in the State, and raise more frequent broils about it. The *Romans* specially were exceeding tender in this point. The ancient *Ædiles* formerly received it into their charge, that they permitted no external either *Gads* or *Ceremonies*, to be introduced into the City. And by *Æmilius* law was enacted for a Law, That none should offer Sacrifice in any publick place, after a new and Foreign fashion. Excellent therefore was the counsel which *Mecenas* gave him when he first undertook the *Empire*, viz. "That he should follow constantly the *Ædiles*, which he found established, and compel others also to do the like. For, Foreign and strange Rites (saith he) will offend the people, work many inconvenient alterations."

"alterations in the Civil State; yea and most likely will occasion many both seditions and conspiracies. Words which he spake not to the air, but to a Prince exceeding apprehensive of the best advice. Nor did AUGUSTUS ever shew himself more careful in any one Act of Empire, than he did in this. That which *Mecenas* noted, we find true in these latter Ages; in times more skillful of obedience, than the most quiet hour of AUGUSTUS Government. No one thing more hath caused so frequent and so general Rebellions in the States of *Christendom*, than alterations of this nature. I cannot therefore but commend it as a pious resolution in a late mighty Monarch: *Better some few corruptions should be suffered in a Church than still a Change.*

23. Religion thus established, in the next place the welfare of the whole Empire consisted chiefly in reforming of the City; from which, as from the heart, life was conveyed to all the Provinces abroad. And in the City the corruption was most apparent in the *Senate* it self. With them therefore he began, well knowing that crimes in men of eminent place end not in themselves; but by degrees become diffused among their Clients and Followers. Now in the *Senate* were many and desertful men, who had been taken into it during the Civil Wars; as they could court the People, and humour such as were most potent. Of these he expelled none by his own power; but making a speech to them in the *Senate*, of the ancient order and present confusion of the house, he exhorted them to look back on their former lives, and to judge of their own abilities and merits, for so honourable a room. Then he desired some of them to pick out such among them, as were in disposition factious, and in life faulty, but both to convince to ill of their own actions; which they did accordingly. Yet as it often happeneth, that the great *Thief* leads the *less to the Gallies*; and as *Commines* observed, that after the Battle of *Montlberry*, Officers were taken from many for lying away, and conferred on such as ran ten miles beyond them: So remained many in the *Senate*, neither less vicious, nor less violent; only more potent to maintain their doings, than some others whom they had removed. AUGUSTUS therefore joining to him *Agrippa*, proceeded to a new review: And certainly it much concerned him in the settling of his affairs, that none should have a voice in that famous Council, but such as were of able judgments, honest repute, and well affected to his Service and the Commonwealth. An enterprise which he esteemed dangerous, that he permitted entrance to no Senator till he were searched: himself wearing a *Brigandine* under his Gown; and being invironed with ten of the most courageous and best beloved of the whole company. Such as he found in either kind inexcusable, he discharged from their attendance: electing such in their places, who were either ennobled for their wisdom, or noted-moderation, or otherwise strong in their dependants. Yet for that greatness of Revenue was esteemed neither a fit Patronage for any, if they were offensive; nor a just cause to challenge interest in the house. Such of them as were rich rather in the gifts of the mind, than those of fortune, he relieved with honourable Pensions; and finally he bestowed himself so resolutely, that all conspired that they had need of such a wife Physician, to cure that old Consumption, wherewith the Commonwealth was fallen.

24. In other things he seldom did proceed against them, as of himself; but when that any of them had conspired his ruin, he referred them to the judgment of their fellows. And this he did partly to reserve unto the Court the ancient Prerogative; partly not to be

Judge and Party in his own cause: but principally following the example of his Father *Julius*, who counterfeiting a wretches contempt of his adversaries, used, when he was least suspected, under hand, and by public Officers, to work their destruction. Many also of them whom the *Senate* had condemned he would freely pardon: Conceiving truly, that the questioning of men of high calling, would produce as much terror, though it argued not so much rigor as the punishment. Yet if extremity of law was used towards some few, it was to settle quietness in the whole; and as it were a particular blood-letting for the general health. Those who had followed the Factions of *Brutus* and *Antony*, he forgave freely. And not to only, but by manifesting his works by his deeds, and adding trusts and honours to his pardons; he made his Chair of State more settled, and immovable. So *Cesar*, by erecting the false and broken Images of *Pompey*, made his own statues stand more firmly. But the chief Act by which he bridled the Nobles, was an Edict by him promulgated, forbidding any of them, his leave not granted, to travel out of *Italy*. For well he knew, that an Empire unfettered, and Provinces not quietted; the presence and authority of men of that rank, might raise greater troubles, than could be easily suppressed. Examples he wanted not, that especially of *Cato*; who after the overthrow of *Pompey*, stirred such a War against *Cesar* in *Africa*, that he never bought Victory at a dearer rate. Yet not altogether to imprison them, he licensed them at their pleasure, to visit *Sicilia*, and *Gaul Narbonne*; Provinces close to the Continent of *Italy*, altogether unfurnished for Wars; and indeed such, as by reason of the variety of pleasures in them used, were more likely to weaken their minds, than to arm their bodies.

25. Now to give the *Senate* some sweet meat to their former fancies; he as much honoured and revered that *Order*, as ever it was in the *Free-state*: submitting himself to their judgments and appearing of his own accord, at most of their days of Session. Out of those he chose fifteen alterable every half year, to be of his *Privy-Council*; but then changing them for others: that so all of them might participate of that honour; and yet none of them be acquainted with too many of his Secrets. At his entrance into the *Senate*, he used courteously to salute the *Lords*; and so likewise at his departure. He knew full well that it was noted for great pride in his Father *Julius*, so much to slight the *Lords* of that *House*, as he always did: never making to them any obsequence; no not then, when they came to tell him what honours were decreed unto him. This Reformation of the great Ones, soon made the lower sort more careful; both to observe good order, and to learn obedience. Yet did not AUGUSTUS refer all to *Presidents*, but somewhat to *Precept*. The *Roman Knights* he enforced to yield an account of their lives; a course full of health and wisdom: Idleness being the root of all private vices, and public disorders. To the *Commons* in their *Comitia* and other meetings, he prescribed Laws and Orders as himself listed. The old authority of the *Tribunes*, dashed in the *Disturbance* of *Sylla*, he would not restore. He suffered them to intercede for the People, but not to prefer or hinder any Bill, to the advancement or the prejudice of their *Estates*. Without this *Curia*, the *Common sort* would never have suffered him to sit in the *Saddle*. For had the people had their *Tribunes* and had the *Tribunes* had their ancient dignity and power, which they had usurped; there had been little or no hope of altering the form of Government. So different are the ends of the *Common-People*, especially if nursed in a factious Liberty, from the designs of Sovereign Princes.

26. The

26. The City thus reformed in the principal errors, and defects of its; he again exhibiteth unto them divers pleasures; as shews of Fencers, Stage-plays, Combats of wild beasts, public dancing, with variety of other delightful Spectacles. And this as well to breed in them a good conceit of the change; as (earing left their cogitations, for want of other objects, would fix themselves upon his actions, and the old freedom. And therefore when some of his more severe and rigid Counsellors advised him to interdict all such public pastimes, alleging, that the meetings of the people at those sports, and in so great numbers might at last end in some great tumult and sedition to the endangering of his person, and destruction of his whole Estate; it was thus over-ruled by *Mecenas* (his most truly Favourite) *Expedi tibi, O Cesar, plebem sic occupatam esse*, That it best agreed with his affairs, to have the minds of the people taken up with these sports and pastimes; by which being sweetened and appeased, they were the less sensible of the yoke he had put upon them. But as for Horle-races, Tilts, and Turnaments, as he gladly cherished them, so he permitted them only to the Inhabitants of *Rome*: That so that City, being the Seat-Town of his Empire, might be stored with good Horses, and expert Riders. Such of the *Commons* as were behind hand, he relieved: and when that many of them had made him Heir to their goods, he well knowing that no good Father did appoint to his Heir any Prince but a *Tyrant*, presently restoring to the Children of the deceased the whole Patrimony. An action truly worthy of AUGUSTUS; as true a *Guardian of Orphans*, as a Father of his Country. Such Princes as gave covetously after other mens possessions, seldom enjoy the benefit of their own. The Treasures of Kings are then greatest, not when their own Coffers are full only, but their Subjects rich. Yet one thing more he seemed to leave unto the people, which they thought most pleasing. *Liberty of Speech*: Wherein sometimes they were so licentious, that they spared not *Agrippa* himself, so potent with the Emperor. But he, good man never using the Prince's favour to the prejudice of any, seemed not to mark their taunts and slanders: whether with greater moderation or wisdom, I cannot tell. Neither did AUGUSTUS scape their foolish *Pasquils* and infamous *Libels*. All which he winked at, knowing that countenances of that nature slighted and contemned, soon vanish of themselves; but if repined and stormed at, seem to beacknowledged. A temper which he learnt of his Father *Julius*, who was perfect at it. And certainly it was a notable point of Wisdom in both of them. It is the misery of the best Princes, even when they do well to be ill spoken of. And therefore many times such follies are with more policy dissembled than observed, by the greatest Kings.

27. As for this laxity of the tongue, it is a humour that springeth for the most part, rather from a delight in prattling, than any malice of the heart: and they which use it are more troublesome than dangerous. *Julius* feared not the fat men, but the lean and spare. And so AUGUSTUS thought, that not men liberal of speech, but silent, close, and sparing of their words, were most likely to raise tumults. Moreover, as long as the *Common People* retained this Liberty of Speech, they were the less sensible of the loss of Liberty in State. Whereas in the days of *Dominian*, when not only they were prohibited, to commune together, but even their secret sighs and tears were registered, then began they to look back with a serious eye on the old and common Liberty. Neglect is the best remedy for this Talking vein. When the humour is spent, the People will cease on their

own accords: till then, no forces can compel them. *Tacitus* taxeth *Virgilium* of great folly, for hoping by force to hinder the continual reports of *Vespasian* revolt; that being the only way to increase, not diminish the rumor. And as much he extolled (I will not say how fitly) the Reign of Prince *Nerva*; wherein it was lawful for the Subject to think what he would, and speak what he thought.

28. These courses though he took to rectifie the *Senate*, and content the people, yet he slayed not here. There were too many of both sorts, dangerous and unquiet spirits, who stomached his proceedings; and under pretence of the ancient Liberty, were apt to any bold attempt, and sudden alteration. These as he winked at for the present, so he employed them (as occasion served) in his foreign Wars. Wherein he followed the example of his Father *Julius*, who when his Souldiers had displeased him, in their *Mutinies* and *Tumults*, would lead them presently unto some desperate and dangerous service: So weakening both his Foes which lay next unto him, and punishing those Souldiers which had disobeyed him. For, though AUGUSTUS had thrice shut the Temple of *Janus*, and cherished Peace, no Emperor more, of so large a Territory; yet when he saw his times, and that mens minds were active, and their thoughts disquieted; he could find presently occasion for some new employment. In this a Body Politick may be compared most fitly to the Body Natural. When we are full of blood, and our spirits boiling, there is not any *Physick* better than *Phlebotomy*. But if a vein be broken in us, and we bleed inwardly, our estate commonly is dangerous, and almost incurable. So Princes, when their people are tumultuous and apt to mischief; or that their thoughts are working, and hearkening after action: do commonly employ them in some service far from home; that there they may both vent their Anger, and employ their Courage. For let them stay at home to confirm their practices, and grow at last into a faction, the State will suffer in it, if it be not ruined. We cannot have a fairer instance of this truth, than the proceeding of our fifth *Henry*, and the times next following: Whose foreign Wars kept us all quiet here at home, waited those humours, and consumed those fiery spirits, which afterwards, the Wars being ended, inflamed the Kingdom.

29. But his main work was to content the Souldiers, and to make them sure. Some of which he dispersed as before I said, all about *Italy*, in thirty two Colonies; as well for the defence of the Country, as for their more speedy re-assembly, if need should require. Abroad amongst the Provinces were maintained upon the common charge twenty three Legions with their aids: besides 10000 of his Guard, and those which were appointed for the bridling and safety of the City. As to all of them he shewed an excellent thankfulness for their faithful services: so in particular to *Agrippa*, and to one other, whose name the Histories of that Age have not remembered. This latter had valiantly behaved himself at the battle of *Athium*: and being summoned to appear before the *Lords of the Senate*, in a matter which concerned his life, cried to AUGUSTUS for succour, who aligned him an Advocate. The poor fellow not contented with this favour, baring his breast, and shewing him the marks of many wounds; These (quoth he) have I received, AUGUSTUS, in thy service never supplying my place by a Deputy. Which said, the Emperor descending to the Bar, pleaded the Souldiers cause, and won it. Never did Sovereign Prince, or any that command in Chief, lose any thing by being bountiful of favours to their men of War. For this act quickly spreading

Princes more willing and desirous not to employ men likely to offend, than by the offence to punish and chastise them for it.

36. Besides his Forces by Land, he also maintained at Sea two invincible Armadae. The one lay at Anchor near Ravenna, in the upper Sea, to awe and defend *Dalmatia, Crete, Greece, Cyprus, Asia, &c.* The other at *Misenum* in the lower Sea, to protect and keep under *Gaul, Spain, Africa, Egypt, Syria &c.* Neither was this the only use of two such puissant Fleets, but in all probability they were to cleanse the Sea of Pirates: to have a care to the conducting of the *Tributes and Customs* into the *Exchequer*; and served also for transporting *Corn*, and other necessary provisions, for the subsistence and relief of the City. In the ensuing Civil Wars, these two Navies proved to be of great importance: The revolt of them giving as great a blow to the one side, as a comfort to the other. The principal assurance of *Octo* in his Wars, was the immovable fidelity of the *Misenum Fleet*; and the siding of the other with *Vespasian* broke the hearts of *Vitellius*'s best followers.

37. Now as he thus strengthened the Provinces in general, so he did cast an especial eye on three particulars viz. *Italy, Gaul, and Egypt.* *Italy* founded *Rome* the Metropolis of the Empire; and therefore he ought to be well assured of its good faith and allegiance to him. Nor was he ignorant, that the *Bellum sociale* raised by the people of that Country, in the *Free State*, more shook and endangered the Empire, than the *Invasions of Pyrrhus or Annibal*. Therefore as formerly he planted in it two and thirty Colonies, of old and truly Soldiers, to keep it sure unto himself, so now he did divide it into eleven Regions, each having peculiar *Magistrates and Under-Officers*. This not so much to ease the *City-Prætor*, although he had employment enough at *Rome*; but because it was thick-set and as it were overlaid with People, whose rising might endanger the *Common-wealth*. So by his *Colony* he kept a Garrison upon them, as it were, that they could not revolt; and by his *Officers and Justifiers* (as I may call them) he set for strait a Watch about them, that they durst not practise.

38. *Gaul*, now called *France*, was both a large and fertile Country, stored with a people valiant in all attempts, and in many desperate. A people with which the old *Romans* fought rather to maintain their own liberty, than to increase their Dominions; a Tribe or Colony of which had sacked the *City of Rome*, and endangered the *Capital*. A people finally, with whom the *Romans* durst not make War, till they had almost all the residue of the World in subjection. The remembrance of their ancient Reputation, and store of money, might occasion many desperate practices against the quiet of the Empire. The readiest way to keep them in obedience, was to keep them poor: for without wealth high *stomachs* may well feed on the hope of *Liberty*, but digest it never. *Licininus*, his Freed-man, was the fittest fellow for such an Office, who is presently made the *Task-master* of the Province. The *Gauls* used to pay a Monthly Tribute, which he much ennobled (besides private and petty means of proling) by making fourteen Months in a year. The *Soldiers* of that people at *Rome* make complaint to *AUGUSTUS*. He sometimes yielded unto them, sometimes excused his Freed-man's some things he would not know, many he would not believe, others he dismissed. *Licininus*, to make up his peace, sent to the Emperor all his *Treasure*, and that huge Mass of Gold and Silver by those unlawful means heaped up together: which he not only willingly received, but his turn being served, and the *Gauls* not a little impoverished; he recalled *Licininus*, and sent *Tiberius* to settle the Province. So

old and common a thing it is with great Princes, to suffer their Vice-Roy, and Under-Officers to suck like *Sponges*, the Wealth of the Subject, till they are quite full; and then to squeeze them into their own Coffers.

39. But the Province whose tuition and defence he principally regarded, was *Egypt* not so much for the valour and courage of the Inhabitants, as the natural strength and situation of the place. *Alexander of Macedon* having annexed it to his Empire, never committed the entire Government and Jurisdiction thereof, to one man; fearing lest he presuming on the wealth of the People, and life of the Country, would settle the possession in himself. And so *AUGUSTUS* calling to mind as well the multitude, as the levity and inconstancy of the Natives; that it was very rich in coin, and the *Roman Granary* (as serving the City four Months yearly with *Corn*) not only trusted not the rule thereof into the hands of any of the *Senators*, but expressly forbade any of that Order (without his special permission) to sojourn there. It is a principle in State, never to license men of great houses, and credit among the People, to have free access into that Country, whose revolt may endanger the whole Empire. Wherefore it was a weakless doubtless in the Council of King *Henry* the sixth, to suffer *Richard Duke of York*, to pass at leisure into *Ireland*, where he had harbour and relief, and whence he brought supply both of Men and Money. But to return to *Egypt* *Germanicus* entering once into *Alexandria*, only to see the Antiquities of it, and return; stirred such suspicions, and distractions in the jealous head of *Tiberius*, that he spared not sharply to rebuke him for it. *Vespasian* also being by the *Syrian Legions* chosen Emperor, first assured himself of *Egypt*, as the Key of the Sea and Land; with a small power, against a strong host easily defended. This place he resolved to make his *Sanctuary*, if his designs succeeded not luckily. And to this place he hastened, after the defeat of the *Vitellian Army*, that do detain the ordinary provision of victuals, he might by *Famine* compel the *City of Rome* to stand at his devotion. The Government of this Province was by *AUGUSTUS* always committed to some one of the *Roman Centurys*, as less able, by reason of his low condition, to work against the *Princes* safety. Neither would he allow his *Deputy* the glorious attributes of *Lieutenant, Legatus, Proconsul, or Prætor*; *Captain or President* of *Egypt* was their highest Title: there being even in *Titles* no small motives to *Ambition*.

40. *AUGUSTUS* having by these means reduced both the *City and Provinces* under his absolute command, and being now declining in strength, by reason of a sudden and violent sickness; began to call his wits to Council, how to dispose of the Estate after his decease. *Male-child* he never had any. His Daughter *Julia*, a woman of immodest carriage, never made further use of her fathers greatness, than that the satisfied her Lusts with the greater insolence. *Marcellus*, his Sisters son, and *Julia's* husband, was a young man of an ingenious disposition, and seemingly capable of the fortunes which attended for him. Him, being yet young, *AUGUSTUS* preferred to the *Pontifical* dignity, and *Adelship*: Yet once upon his sickness, he privately determined to choose another Successor in the *Common-wealth*, rather than his own Family, and not to leave the Empire to *Marcellus*, who he held unable to undergo it, but to his companion in Arms, *Agrippa*, a man daunted neither with adverse, nor altered with prosperous fortunes. This *Marcellus* afterwards so stomached, that he began to grutch at *Agrippa's* greatness, and to bear a vigilant eye on his plots and actions. Contrarily, *Agrippa* unwilling to offend him; under whose future Government

he

he was in all likelihood to end the rest of his days, with much ado obtained leave to retire unto *Lesbos*: that so his absence either might allay, or remove the displeasure, conceived against him by the young Prince. An action full of wisdom, and magnanimity. For though *AUGUSTUS*'s chief end was, to discountenance the popular dependencies of his Son, by the favours heaped on his servant; yet did *Agrippa* know, that a Favoured ought to have to him in him of the *Perjan Religion*, as to worship the Rising Sun also; and that he should resemble old *Janus* with two faces, with the one looking on the King regnant, with the other on the Prince successor.

41. *Marcellus* being dead, *Agrippa* returning, married his Widow, and on her begat two Sons, *Caius* and *Lucius*; whose actions afterward afforded such variety for censure that there was wanting neither much reason to commend, nor little to condemn them. On the two, or at least one of them, *AUGUSTUS* now grown aged, resolves to settle the Estate; and, if they failed, upon such others, as by the liberty of the Laws, he might adopt: In the estimation of the *Roman Laws* being adopted another Nature. Posterity, whether it be natural, or only legal, is the best support of the Arms Imperial: such as both fortifies the Prince, and assures the Subject. Yet this he did, not without much reluctance, and a great conflict in his mind. 'Sometimes' his thoughts suggested to him, that the designed Successors draw to them all the attendance and respect, 'from the Prince in possession; that they have always a lingering desire to be actually settled in the Throne; that they suppose the life of the present Prince too tedious, not caring by what means it were shortened; that sometimes it is pernicious, yea even to the appointed Successor himself also. On the other side his better thoughts prompted him to consider, in what a miserable distraction he should leave the Empire, if sudden death should take from him an ability to nominate his heir; The fear conceived in the whole City at his last sickness; That *Pyrrhus* of *Epirus*, was of all hands condemned, for leaving his Kingdom to the sharpest sword; That the *Common-wealth* slain into dissensions, could not be settled again without a lamentable War, and a bloody victory; That the people seeing him childless would not only condemn him, but perhaps endeavour to recover the old liberty, though with the ruin of the State; That it was the custom of Tyrants, to desire the eternizing of their deaths, by the downfall of their Countries. His mind thus distracted and perplexed, at last he brake in this manner. 'Thou hast, *Octavianus*, a Wolf by the ears, which to hold still, or let go, is alike dangerous. Many inconveniences may ensue, if thou dost not declare thy Successor; more if thou dost. The good of the Republick consisteth in knowing the future Prince, Thine own welfare dependeth on the concealment. The *Common good* is to be preferred before any private; Yet ought *Charity to begin at home*, No, *Octavian* no; As thou hast received so few thyself worthy of the title of *Pater patriæ*. Yea, and perhaps will it profit the people to thine own Estate. For when they shall see a Successor conspire against thee; for what they shall see a Successor at hand, either of thine own body, or thine own appointment, ready to take thy place, and revenge thy wrongs?

42. Thus resolved, he adotheth *Caius* and *Lucius*; as desiring, though he made them to the contrary, they should be *Consule electi*, and called *Princes of the Youth*. Yet wisely foreseeing the dangers incident to himself, if they should make their abode in *Rome*; he sendeth them with honourable Charge into the Provinces abroad;

as well to exercise them in feats of War, as to take away all cause of faction in the Court, and sedition in the City: which mystery of State as it was anciently practised by most Princes, so at this day by the *Grand Seigneur*: who always sendeth his eldest Son unto *Amasia*, as Governor thereof; from whence till the death of his Father, he never returneth. In these journeys, dyed the two young Princes; a misfortune which *AUGUSTUS* bare nobly; neither banishing grief, with a *Stoical Apathy*; nor, spending the time in womanish lamentations. Having performed due rites to the dead, he adopted his Wites Son, *Tiberius*. A man for the convenience and ripeness of his age, not unfit; in feats of Arms, not unskilful; in human learning, not ignorant; but withal suspected to be cruelly given; and possessed with the hereditary pride of the *Claudian Family*. A strange medley of virtuous and vicious qualities! *Tiberius*, such was the will of his Father, to establish the Succession with more stays than one, adopted *Germanicus*, his Brother *Drujus*'s Son; and then commanding over eight Legions in *Germany*; which done, he speedeth to his charge in *Illyricum*. This man *AUGUSTUS* appointed to be his Successor, as it was afterwards (and not improbably) conjectured, neither in care to the State, nor in love to the party; but to win honour to himself; and to make the *Roman* people again with for him, when they should feel that infinite disproportion in all Royal and Kingly qualities, between the old and new Emperors. A fetch, after imitated by *Tiberius*, in the adoption of *Caius Caligula*.

43. The last (though not the least) help of the Emperors establishment, was the long life and reign of our *AUGUSTUS*: as having ruled the State 16 years before, and 34 years after his confirmation in the Sovereignty, by the Senate and people. All the young men in the City were born after the first Decennium of the Monarchy. Most of the old men, during the Civil Wars: Few had seen what was the ancient form of Government in the *Common-wealth*: many did not desire it: for at the present, enjoying peace both at home and abroad; and hearing what sad and tragical reports their Fathers made of the former troubles and profcriptions, they contented themselves with the new Government; as more esteeming a secure and happy subjection, than a dangerous and factious liberty. By which long time of Empire, and the policies already recited; besides many others, which I can neither learn by relation, nor gather by presumptions; did *AUGUSTUS* so firmly settle the *Roman Monarchy*, that it continued close hundred of years without alteration: though all his immediate Successors were in a manner Monsters, incarnate Devils, and indeed any thing rather than Men. *Tiberius*, *Caius*, *Claudius*, *Nero*, *Galba*, *Otho*, and *Vitellius*, both by their own Tyranny, and their Bondsmen Extortions, would have ruined any Monarchy not founded by *AUGUSTUS*.

44. To speak concerning the Domestic affairs of this Emperor, is beyond my *Urne*. As either how far he suffered himself to be ordered by his Wife *Livia*; or whether he used variety of women, not so much to satisfy an inordinate appetite, as by so many women to filch out the secret designs of many men. He was too exact a Statesman to be perfect in *Soldiery*; and in all his Wars was prosperous by Fortune rather than by Valour, or his Captains Valour than by his own. The *Common-wealth* which he found weak and in *Rubbish*, he left *Adamantine*, and invincible. In behaviour he was affable and gracious; in his discourse, contentious to the good, of a most sweet disposition; to the lewd and dishonest, harsh and unpleasant. Friendship he contracted with few, and that slowly; but to them whom he once loved

H 2

unite both peoples in a mixture of Language, Marriages, and Customs; and partly that he might more easily in War command them, and in Peace correct them. *Italy*, which before was made a thoroughfare to the barbarous Nations, and quite disordered by the frequent inundations of Luit and Rapine; he reduced to such a peaceable and settled Government, that before his death they had quite lost the memory of their former miseries: instead whereof a general felicity had diffused it self over all the Country. Such Cities as had been formerly defaced, he repaired, strengthened, and beautified. In his Wars he was victorious, temperate in his times of Peace, and in his private carriage discreet and affable. Finally (as *Velleius* faith of *Marcobudus*) he was *Natione magis quam ratione Barbarus*: And went the most judicious way to establish his dominion in *Italy*, of any of the Barbarous Princes that ever had invaded the *Roman* Provinces, which he left thus confirmed and settled unto his Successors.

A. Ch. The Kings of the Goths in Italy

- 495 1 *Theoderick* of whom before; who to his conquest of *Italy* added that of *Ilyricum*, as also the appendant Islands to both those Countries; and wrested *Provence* in *France*, from the *Goths* of *Spain*.
- 527 2 *Athalaricus*, Nephew to *Theoderick* by his daughter *Amalasynthia*, who in the minority of her son managed the affairs of the *Goths* in *Italy*. Fearing some danger out of *Greece*, he restored *Provence* to the *French*, and by their aid drove the *Burgundians* out of *Liguria*. A Lady skilful in the Languages of all those Nations which had any commerce with the *Roman* Empire, inasmuch that *pro miraculo fuerit ipsum audire loquentem*, faith *Procopius* of her.
- 534 3 *Theodatus*, the son of *Hummelfride*, the sister of *Theoderick*, succeeded on the untimely death of *Athalaricus*: Who being in War with the *Romans*, (or rather with the *Greek* Emperors, endeavouring to recover *Italy* from the hands of the *Goths*) and desiring before hand to know his success; was willed by a Jew to shut up a certain number of Swine, and to give some of them the names of *Goths*, and unto others the names of *Romans*. Which done, and going to the Styes not long after, they found the Hogs of the *Gothish* faction all slain, and those of the *Roman* half unbrutled: and thereupon the Jew foretold, That the *Goths* should be discomfited, and the *Romans* lose a great part of their strength; and it proved accordingly. Which kind of Divination is called *Oroscopia*, and hath been prohibited by a General Council. The loss of this Battle (won by *Belisarius* Commander of the Armies of the Emperour *Justinian*) drew on the loss of *Rome*, and the East parts of *Italy*, (with the Realm of *Naples*) and occasioned the death of *Theodatus*, slain shortly after these great losses by the *Goths* themselves.
- 537 4 *Vitiger*, chosen by the *Goths*, besieged and taken in *Ravenna* by the said *Belisarius*.
- 540 5 *Isidobaud*, Governour of *Verona* on the calling home of *Belisarius*, chosen by the *Goths*, and by them not long after slain.
- 541 6 *Ardariens*, of whom nothing memorable.
- 542 7 *Totilas*, a right valiant Prince, recovered all which had been got from his Predecessors, and

sacked *Rome* in the fight of *Belisarius*, then returned into *Italy*, as nor able to hinder him vanquished and killed in fight by *Narses*, in the 11. of his Reign.

- 553 8 *Teyas*, the last King of the *Goths* in *Italy*, who being vanquished by *Narses* in the fourteenth year of his Reign, submitted himself to the Eastern Emperours: but after breaking out again, he was finally discomfited, and slain by *Narses*, not far from the City of *Nocera*. *An. 567*. After which time, the *Goths* and the *Italians* mingled in Blood and Language, became one Nation.

But the miseries of *Italy*, and those Western parts were not so to end. No sooner had God freed them from the rod of his Visitations, which he had laid upon them in the times of *Persecution*, formerly remembered; and giving them peace within their dwellings; but they became divided into *Schisms* and *Factions*: and after wallowed in those sins; which a continual surfeit of prosperity hath commonly attending on it. Inasmuch that devout *Salvian*, who lived much about these times, complains of that high hand of wickedness, wherewith they did provoke the patience of Almighty God; the lives of *Christians* being grown so deplorably wicked, that they became a scandal to the Faith and Gospel. *In nobis patitur Christus opprobrium, in nobis patitur læ Christiana maledictum*, faith that godly Bishop. So that their fins being ripe for vengeance, God sent the barbarous Nations, as his Executioners, to execute his Divine Justice on the impenitent men, and made them sensible though *Heathens*, that it was Gods work they did, and not their own, in laying such afflictions on these *Western* parts. *Ipsi faciebantur non sumus esse quod facerent, agnimus se & perirenti divino iussu*, as the said godly Bishop doth inform us of them. On this impulsion the *Vandals* did acknowledge that they first wasted *Spain*, and then hurried *Africa*: And at the same time, did *Avila* the Hun, sent into his Royal Titles the title of *Mallens Orbis*, and *Flagellum Dei*'s acknowledging thereby his own apprehension of some special and extraordinary calling to this publick service. Nay, as *Jornandes* doth report, some of these barbarous people did not stick to say, that they were put on this employment by some Heavenly Visions, which did direct them to the work which they were to do. In Prosecution of the which, in less time than the compass of 80 years, this very *Italy* (though anciently the strength and fear of that Empire) was seven times brought almost unto desolation, by the Fire and Sword of the *Barbarians*, viz. First by *Alarick* King of the *Goths*, who sacked *Rome*, *Naples*, &c. 2. By *Avila* King of the *Huns* who razed *Florence*, wasted *Lombardy*, and not without much difficulty was diverted from the spoil of *Rome*, by the intercession of Pope Leo. 3. By *Gensericus* King of the *Vandals*, who also had the sackage of *Rome* it self. 4. By *Biorgis* King of the *Alani*, in the time of the Emperour *Maiorianus*. 5. By *Odoacer* King of the *Herni*, who drove *Augustulus* the last Western Emperour out of his estate; and twice in thirteen years laid the Country desolate. 6. By *Theoderick* King of the *Goths*, called in by *Zeno* Emperour of *Constantinople* to expel *Odoacer* and the *Herni*. And 7. by *Gundabald* King of the *Burgundians*, who having ranfacked *Lombardy*, returned home again, leaving possession to the *Goths*. As for these *Goths*, being the first and last of those barbarous Nations who had any thing to do under the spoil of *Italy*, after they had reigned here twenty eight of their Kings, for the space of 72 years, they were at last subdued by *Belisarius* and *Narses*, two of the bravest

bravest Souldiers that had ever served the Eastern Emperours; and *Italy* united once more to the Empire, in the time of *Justinian*. But *Narses* having governed *Italy* about 17 years, and being after such good service most despitfully used by *Sophia*, (never the wiser for her name) the Wife of the Emperour *Justinian*, abandoned the Country to the *Lombards*. For the Emperour envying his glories, not only did procure to have him recalled from his Governments; but sent him word, *That he would make the Eunuch* (for such he was) *come home and spin among her maids*. To which the discontented man returned this answer, *That he would spin her such a web, as neither she nor any of her minions should ever be able to unweave*. And thereupon he opened the passages of the Country to *Alboinus* King of the *Lombards*, then possessed of *Pannonia*; who coming into *Italy* with their Wives and Children, possessed themselves of all that Country which anciently was inhabited by the *Cisalpine Gauls*, calling it by their own names *Lombardia*, now corruptly *Lombardy*. Nor said he there, but made himself Master of the Countries lying on the *Adriatick*, as far as to the borders of *Apulia*; and for the better Government of his new Dominions, erected the four famous Dukedoms, 1. Of *Friuli* at the entrance of *Italy*, for the admission of more aids if occasion were, or the keeping out of new Invaders; 2. Of *Turin*, at the foot of the *Alpes* against the *French*; 3. *Benevent*, in *Abruzzo*, a Province of the Realm of *Naples*, against the incursions of the *Greeks*, then possessed of *Apulia*, and the other Eastern parts of that Kingdom; And 4. of *Spoleto*, in the midst of *Italy*, to suppress the Natives; leaving the whole, and hopes of more unto his Successors.

A. Ch. The Lombardian Kings of Italy

- 561 1. *Alboinus*. 6.
- 578 2. *Clephes*. 1.
- Interregnum annorum. 11.
- 586 3. *Athabris*. 7.
- 593 4. *Adalsif*. 25.
- 618 5. *Adalsind*. 10.
- 628 6. *Arivaldus*. 11.
- 639 7. *Richaris*, or *Raharis*.
- 655 8. *Radulphus*. 9.
- 660 9. *Aribertus*. 9.
- 669 10. *Gundabertus*. 1.
- 670 11. *Grimaldus*. 9.
- 679 12. *Garibaldus*, mens. 3.
- 679 13. *Partaribius*. 18.
- 698 14. *Cunibertus*. 12.
- 710 15. *Luitbertus*. 1.
- 711 16. *Rainbertus*. 1.
- 712 17. *Aribertus* II. 12.
- 723 18. *Alprandus*, mens. 3.
- 723 19. *Luitprandus*. 21.
- 744 20. *Hildebrandus*, mens. 6.
- 744 21. *Rachisius*. 6.
- 750 22. *Astulfus*. 6.
- 756 23. *Desiderius*, the last of the *Lombards*, of whom more anon. In the mean time, we will look into the story of some of the former Kings, in which we find some things deserving our consideration. And first beginning with *Alboinus*, the first of this Catalogue: before his coming into *Italy* he had waged war with *Cunimundus*, a King of the *Gepids*: whom he overthrew, and made a drinking Cup of his Skull. *Rosamund* daughter of this King he took to Wife; and being one day merry at *Verona*, forced her to drink out of that detested Cup; which he so stomached, that she promised one *Helmi-child*, if he would aid her in killing the King, to give him both her self and the Kingdom of *Lombardy*. This when

he had consented to, and performed accordingly, they were both so extremely hated for it, that they were faine to flee to *Ravenna*, and put themselves into the protection of *Longinus* the *Exarch*. Who partly out of a desire to enjoy the Lady; partly to be possessed of that mass of Treasure which he was faine to bring with her; but principally hoping by her power and party there, to raise a beneficial War against the *Lombards*, perswaded her to dispatch *Helmi-child* out of the way, and take him for her husband; to which she willingly agreed. *Helmi-child* coming out of a Bath called for drink, and she gives him a strong poyson; half of which when he had drunk, and found by the strange operation of it how the matter went, he compelled her to drink the rest: so both died together. 2. *Clephes* the Second King extended the Kingdom of the *Lombards* to the Gates of *Rome*; but was so tyrannical withal, that after his death, they resolved to admit of no more Kings, distributing the Government among thirty Dukes. Which division, though it held not above twelve years, was the chief cause that the *Lombards* failed of being the absolute Lords of all *Italy*. For the people having once cast off the yoke of obedience, and tasted somewhat of the sweetness of licentious Freedom; were never after so reduced to their former duty, as to be aiding to their Kings in such Achievements as tended more unto the greatness of the King, than the gain of the subject. 3. *Cunibert* the 14. King was a great lover of the Clergy, and by them as lovingly requited. For being to encounter with *Alachis* the Duke of *Trent*, who rebelled against him: one of the Clergy knowing that the Kings life was chiefly aimed at by the Rebels, put on the Royal Robe, and thrust himself into the head of the Enemy, where he lost his own life, but saved the Kings. 4. *Aribert* the 17. King, gave the *Coltan* *Alper* containing *Piedmont*, and some part of the Dutchy of *Mailain* to the Church of *Rome*: which is observed to be the first Temporal Estate, that ever was conferred upon the Popes, and the foundation of that greatness which they after came to. 5. The 19. King was *Luitprandus*, who added to the Church the Cities of *Ancona*, *Narnia*, and *Humana*, belonging to the *Exarchates* having first won *Ravenna*, and the whole *Exarchy* thereof *An. 741*. The last *Exarch* being called *Eutychius*. But the *Lombards* long enjoyed not his Conquests; for *Peppin* King of *France*, being by Pope *Stephen* III. solicited to come into *Italy*, overthrew *Astulfus*, and gave *Ravenna* to the Church. The last King was *Desiderius*, who falling at odds with *Adrian* the First, and besieging him in *Rome*, was by *Charles* the Great, Successor to *Peppin*, besieged in *Patz*, and himself with all his Children taken Prisoners, *An. 774*. And so ended the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, having endured in *Italy* 206 years. *Lombardy* was then a Province of the *French*, and after of the *German* Empire: many of whose Emperours used to be crowned Kings of *Lombardy*, by the Bishops of *Mailain*, with an Iron Crown: which was kept at *Modocum*, now called *Munza*, a small Village. This *Charles* confirmed his Fathers former donations to the Church; and added of his own accord, *Marea Anconitana*, and the Dukedom of *Spoleto*. For these and other kindneffes, *Charles* was by Pope *Leo* IV. on *Christmas* day crowned Emperour of the West, *Anno 801*. whose Successors shall be reckoned when we come to the story of *Germany*. At this division of the Empire, *Irene* was Emperess of the East; to whom and her Successors was no more allotted that the Provinces of *Apulia*, and *Calabria*, (the East parts of the Realm of *Naples*) being then in possession of the *Greeks*. To the Popes were confirmed or given by this Emperour and his Father, almost all the Lands which they possess at this day; though afterwards extorted from them by the following

following Emperours, or under colour of their Title : by many several ways and means brought again unto them, as shall be shewn hereafter in convenient place. The *Venitians*, in that little they then had, remained *sui juris*. The rest of *Italy*, containing all the other Provinces of the Kingdom of *Naples*, together with *Tuscany*, *Friuli*, *Trevisia*, and whatsoever is at this day in the possession of the Dukes of *Milan*, *Manua*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Monteferrat*, and the Duke of *Savoy* as Prince of *Piedmont*, together with *Liguria*, or the States of *Genova*, was reserved by *Charles* unto himself, and in his life-time given by him to *Pepin* his Second Son, with the stile or title of King of *Italy*. But long it did not rest in the House of *France*; the Princes of the *Lombards* wresting it from the Line of *Charles*, and after weakening and dividing it by their several Factions, till in the end, instead of an united Kingdom, there rose up many scattered Principalities, as shall hereafter be declared. But first we must proceed to the Kings of *Italy*, of which we shall endeavour as exact a Catalogue, as the confusions of that State can be capable of.

The Kings of *Italy*, of the French, Italian and German Lines.

1. *Pepin*, Son of *Carolus Magnus*, died before his Father.
2. *Barnard*, Son of *Pepin*.
3. *Ludovicus Pius*, Emperour, and King of *France*.
- 841 4. *Lotharius*, Emperour, eldest son of *Ludovicus*. 15.
- 856 5. *Ludovicus II.*, Emperour, eldest son to *Lotharius*. 20
- 876 6. *Carolus Calvus*, Emperour, the youngest son of *Ludovicus Pius*. 11.
7. *Caroloman*, Nephew to *Ludovicus Pius*, by *Ludovicus* his second son, furnished the *Antient*.
8. *Carolus Grassius*, or the Fat Emperour, brother of *Caroloman*, the last King of *Italy* of the house of *Charles*, he died Anno 888.
- 888 9. *Guy*, Duke of *Spoleto*, contends with *Berengarius* Duke of *Friuli* both of the *Longobardian* Race, of the Kingdom of *Italy*, and in fine carrieth it against him.
- 894 10. *Lambert*, the son of *Guy*, crowned by Pope *Formosus*.
11. *Ludovicus*, son of *Boson* Earl of *Ardenne*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, by some Writers called only Earl of *Provence*; upon the death of *Lambert* invadeth *Italy*; and is made King.
- 917 12. *Berengarius*, Duke of *Friuli*, vanquisheth *Ludovicus*, is made King of *Italy*; and at last overcome by the *Hungarians* who having wasted the Country returned back again.
13. *Kodolph*, Duke of *Burgundy Transjane*, called into *Italy* against *Berengarius*, resigned it in exchange for the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy* to his Cousin.
- 926 14. *Hugh D' Arles*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, who held the Kingdom of *Italy* upon this resignation; but after many troubles, was at last outed of it by *Berengarius*, and returned into *France*.
- 946 15. *Berengarius II.*, son of the former *Berengarius*, on the retreat of *Hugh*, received by the *Italians* as Protector to *Lotharius* the son of *Hugh*; besieging *Adelbair* the next Heir of *Italy* (on the death of *Lotharius*) was taken prisoner by the Emperour *Otho*.
16. *Otho*, called into *Italy* by *Adelbair*, daughter to *Kodolph* King of *Burgundy* and *Italy*; married the Lady, and in her right is King of *Italy*.

- 974 17. *Otho II.* son of the former *Otho*, married *Theophania* Niece to *Nicéphorus Phocas*, Emperour of *Constantinople*, and hath *Calabria* for her Dowry. 20.
- 984 18. *Otho III.* Emperour, and King of *Italy*, in whose minority the Kingdom was usurped by 19. *Harduinus*, a man of great power in *Italy*, who kept it all the time of *Otho*; till being broken with long Wars by *Henry* the succeeding Emperour, he was forced to quit it.
20. *Henry*, the second Emperour of that name, having thrice vanquished *Harduinus*, got the Kingdom of *Italy*, and left the same unto the Emperors his Successors: the Title of *Italy* after this time being drowned in that of the Empire; and the Country governed as a part and Member of the Empire, by such Commanders and other Officers as the Emperors from time to time sent thither. But long it laid not in that state. For the Popes of *Rome* knowing how much it did concern them in point of Policy, to weaken the Imperial Power in *Italy*, without which their own Grandeur could not be maintained; stirred up continual Factions and Wars against them; and by that means, and by the Centures of the Church which they denounced according as they saw occasion, did so astonish and distract them, that in the end the Emperors were left to lay aside the affairs of *Italy*, by which they reaped more trouble than the profit came to. Inasmuch that *Kodolphus Habsburgensis*, a valiant and a politic Prince, finding the ill success which *Henry* the 4. and 5. and *Frederick* the 1. and 2. Emperors of more puissance than himself, had found in their *Italian* actions and pretensions, resolved to rid his hands of that troublesome and fruitless Province; and to that end made as much money as he could of that Commodity, which he saw he was not like to keep. And yet he sold good penny-worths too, to them that bought them; the *Florentines* paying for their Liberties but six thousand Crowns, the Citizens of *Lucca*, ten thousand; others as they could make their Markets. And being once required the reason, why he went not into *Italy* to look to the affairs thereof, as his Predecessors had done before him: he is said to have returned for answer that conceit of the *Fox*, for his not going to attend (as other beasts did) at the Lion's Den:

*Quia me vestigia terrent,
Omnia se adversum spectantia, nulla retrosum.*

That is to say:

I dare not go, because I track I see
Of any Beast returning towards me.

Which faulty and improvident resolution being followed by too many of his Successors, not only gave the Popes the opportunity they looked for, of making themselves the great disposers of the affairs of *Italy*; but many petit Princes thereby took occasion of getting all they could lay hold on for themselves, and others. For by this means, the *Sealigers* made themselves Masters of *Verona*, the *Pessarien* of *Manua*, the *Carrarians* of *Padua*, the *Baillons* of *Bononia*, and by the same the *Florentines* got *Pistoia*, and *Ferrara* was possessed by the *Venitians*. And although *Henry VII.* provoked by these indignities, made a journey thither, reduced many of the revolted Cities

Cities to their former obedience, and was crowned King at *Millain* with the Iron-Crowns as were all *Ludovicus Bavarius*, and *Charles IV.* two of his Successors: yet found they in conclusion such small benefit by the enterprise, as did not quit charge and trouble which it put them to. So in the end *Italy* was left wholly in a manner to what they could not manage; or otherwise confirmed those men in their usurpations, whom they found already possessed of the Emperors Countries, and bound them by that means the faster to the See of *Rome*, of which they were to hold their Estates in Fee; the Emperours having nothing left them but the empty Title, nor exercising the Imperial Power there any other way, than by changing Earldoms into Marquises, and Marquises to Dukedoms, which they often did for ready money or reward of Service; or to preserve some shadow of their ancient Interest.

And now we are to look on *Italy* as under a new face of things; not only in regard of several Principalities and forms of Government; but as replenished with new Colonies or Sets of people, differing from the old in manners as well as language. And though the Soil be now as it was before; yet hath that also found some change in the different production of the natural Fruits, as well as in the Manufactures and works of Art. For now besides their Corn and Wine, which anciently were the staple Commodities of this Country; they supply the rest of Christendom with Rice, Silks, Velvets, Taffeties, Sattins, Grograins, Ruffs, Fustians, Goldwire, Allom, Armour, Glasses, and such like Commodities, which make their Merchants very wealthy; who being for the most part Gentlemen of Noble houses, not only lose not the esteem of their Nobility by following the Trade of Merchandize (as in other places;) but by reason that they are possessed of Estates in Land, which they manage by their Bailiffs and other Servants, they are become the wealthiest Merchants in all Christendom.

Nor do the Country come behind them in all manner of affluence, which can be possibly enjoyed in so rich a Soil. Their Lands they set not at a rent, but at thirds and halves, according as the Soil is more or less fruitful; seldom abiding in the Country, but only for a month or two in the Summer times; but then they entertain themselves with their Music and Mistresses under the fragrant Hedges and shady Bowers, in as much solace and delight as may be desired. The residue of the year they spend in Cities, and places of the most resort, for change of company. But, on the other side, the Country Farmer lives a drudging and laborious life, liable to all the Taxes and Impositions which are laid on the Land; the Landlords part coming in clearly without any disbursements or deductions; inasmuch that it is proverbially, but most truly said, *That the rich men in Italy are the richest, and the poor men the poorest, in all the world.*

The people generally are grave, respective and ingenious. Excellent men (said once an *Hispaniolized Italian*) but for these three things; that is to say, in their lusts they are unnatural, in their malice unappealable, in their actions deceitful. To which might be added, that they will blaspheme rather than swear, and murder a man sooner than slander him. But this perhaps may be the fault but of some particulars: it being observed by moderate and impartial men, that they are obedient to their Superiours, to Inferiours courteous, and most desirous full of all Civilities, to Strangers affable, and most desirous by all fair and friendly offices to win their loves. In

apparel they are said to be very modest, in the furniture of their houses sumptuous, at their Tables neat, sober of speech, enemies of all ill reports of others; and of their own reputation for exceeding tender, that whosoever slandereth any one of them, if it come unto the parties ear, he is sure to die for it. Of money and expense he is very thrifty, and loves to be at no more cost than he is sure to save by, or receive great thanks for; but otherwise for civil carriage and behaviour, surpassing all the Gentry of the World besides. Only in strictness to their Wives, they exceed all others, of whom they are so extremely jealous; that they shut them up all day from the common view, and permit them liberty of discourse with few or none. The Lock used by a Gentleman of *Venice* to be assured of his Wives chastity in the time of his absence, is so known a story that it needs no report. But touching the predominancy of this jealous humour in most Southern Nations, we shall speak more hereafter when we come to *Spain*. And yet if that be true, which is proverbially spoken of the women of *Italy*, the husbands have more reason for this strict restraint, than other Nations are aware of. For though they be for the most part witty in speech, and modest in the outward appearance, as much as any; yet it is said of them in the way of Proverb, *That they are as Magpies at the door, Saints in the Church, Goats in the Garden, Devils in the house, Angels in the Streets, and Syrens in the Windows*, not wanting on this ground to set out themselves with all advantages of art, there being few amongst them who use not painting, and other the sophistical helps to fallacious Beauty; and thereupon they have a saying, that *if God make them tall and fat*, (for the title of a goodly woman is much prized amongst them) *they will use it themselves fair*.

The Language of both Sexes is very Courteously and fluent, all of them speaking the *Courtezan*, or Court-language; notwithstanding the diversity of Dialects which is amongst them. For though there be a remarkable difference between the *Florentine* and *Venician*, the *Milanese* and the *Roman*, the *Neapolitan* and the *Genese*; yet it is hard to be discerned by the tone or pronunciation which language any Gentleman is of. But generally it is best spoken in the great Duke's Country, in the Cities of *Florence* and *Siena*; but in *Florence* especially; in which City, *Guicciardini the Historian*, *Boccaccio the Author of the Decamerone*, and other great Masters of the *Italian* Language, did live and flourish in their times.

For other men of note both for Arts and Arms, *Italy* hath afforded many since the fall of the Empire, viz. *Emseu Silvius*, afterwards Pope, by the name of *Pius* the Second; 2. *Marcellus Catavinius*, a stout defender of the Imperial Rights; 3. *Petrarch*, the Roman born; 4. *Angelus Politianus*, the Restorer of polite Literature in *Italy*; 5. *Kodolphus Volateranus*; 6. *Picus Mirandula*, two great Humanitians; 7. *Guido Bonatus*, a famous Astrologer; 8. *Aristotle*, and 9. *Tasso*, the most renowned Poets of their times, and the latter never followed since; 10. *Sixtus Senensis* one of the best Antiquaries of the Nation and a great Divine; 11. *Bellarmino*, and 12. *Baronius*, the Buttrifles and Pillars of the Church of *Rome*. And then for Arms; 1. *Ludovicus Conius*, the first Restorer of the honour of the *Italian* Soldierly; 2. *Forti Braccio*, and 3. *Nicolas Piccinino*, two of his training up in the feats of Chivalry; 4. 5. *Sforza*, the Father, and the Son; of which the Son attained by his valour, to the Dukedom of *Millain*; 6. *Christopher Columbus*, a Genese, 7. *Americus Vesputius*, a *Florentine*, and 8. *Sebastian Cabot*, a *Venician*, the fortunate Discoverers of *America*; 9. *Andrea D' Oria*, Admiral of the Navies to *Charles*

Office of trust, it being the nature of most men, that where they are not trusted, they are never true; and that as long as they lie under suspect and jealousy, they will be apt to entertain some thoughts of their lost condition. And of this kind of dealing with a person *Delinquent* we have a pregnant instance in the Emperor *Otho*, who not only pardoned *Marius Celsus*, one of *Gabba's* Faction, and a chief one too, but put him in place nearest to him, and made him one of his principal Leaders, in the following War against *Vitellius*. His reason was *Ne hostis metum reconciliationis adhiberet*, lest lying aloof as a pardoned Enemy, he might conceive the breach were but bad made up. And on the other side, *Marius Celsus* proved so sensible of the obligation, that he continued faithful to him to the very last; and lost his life in the pursuit of his quarrel: shewing thereby, that persons of a generous and noble disposition, are more obliged by favours, than restrained by terror. But it is now time I should free my self of these *Fœces Candine*, and sport my self a while in the Plains of *Apulia*.

But I must note, before I take my leave hereof, that these two Provinces of *Campania* and *Abruzzo*, make up the greatest, richest, and best peopled part of the Realm of *Naples*. And therefore when the Kingdom was divided between the *French* and the *Spaniards*, it was allotted to the *French*, as having the priority, both of claim and power. The Provinces remaining, although more in number, yet are not comparable to those two for wealth and greatness, and were assigned over to the *Spaniards*, as lying most conveniently for the Realm of *Sicily*.

III. *PUGLIA* is bounded on the West, with *Abruzzo*; on the East, with *Terra d'Otranto*; on the North, with the *Adriatick* Sea; on the South, with *Calabria*. It contains the whole Country called of old *Apulia*; from whence the *Puglia* of the *Italians* and the *Pouille* of the *French* are to be derived.

The whole Country containeth in it, besides villages and Towns unfortified, 126 Castles and walled places, with 13 Cities of good note. The most considerable of which we shall meet withal in our *Geography* of the several parts, divided anciently by *Ptolemy*, and since him, by *Leander*, into *Apulia Daunia*, and *Apulia Peucezia*: the former subdivided into the *Capitanate*, and *Pouille the Plain*; the later into *Bari*, and the Land of *Otranto*. For that the land of *Otranto*, (though now a Province of it self) did sometimes pass in the account of *Apulia*, seems to me most probable, in that all the East parts of this Kingdom were held by the *Constantinopolitan* Emperours (after the coming in of the *Lombards*: and by no other names than those of *Apulia* and *Calabria*: and by no other names than those were assigned over unto *Otho II. of Germany*, on his marriage with *Theophania*, Nece to one of those Emperours. And I conceive that it was then laid unto *Apulia*, rather than to *Calabria*, first, in regard that the old Inhabitants were the same in both; the *Lapyges*, *Messapians*, and *Salentini*, possessing promiscuously all this Tract from Mount *Garganus* in *Daunia*, to the Promontory called *Lapygium* in the most Eastern Angle of the Land of *Otranto*. And secondly, in regard that the people of both have a disease peculiar only to themselves, occasioned by the biting of a little Serpent, called a *Tarentula*, not curable but by Mulek only. This said, we will proceed in our Survey of the parts. And first,

APULIA DAUNIA, is that part hereof which lieth next to *Abruzzo*, from which parted by the River *Phiturnus* (now called *Forsaro*) and so extending Eastwards to the River *Aufidus* (whom the *Italians* call it) where

it meets with *Peucezia*. The reason of the name is not yet agreed on. But I find no more probable conjecture of it, than that it should be called thus of *Damnus*, the Son of *Danae* by *Pilumnus*, once the King of this Country; it being reported in the Legends of those elder times, that *Danae* being delivered of *Perseus* whom the had by *Jupiter* was by her Father the King *Acrifus*, exposed to the mercy of the Seas; by which she was swallowed with her young son to the Coasts of this Province, here taken up by a poor Fisherman, and by him carried to the Court, where the King became so enamoured on her, that he took her to Wife, and by her was Father to this *Damnus*. But *Damnus* had not long enjoyed it, on the death of his Father, when either by force or composition, he was fain to leave it to *Diomedes* King of *Ætolia*: who at the end of the *Trojan* War, wherein he was principal Actor, hearing of the libidinous courses of his Wife *Egiale*, abhorred the thought of living with her's and so came with his people to this Country; where he fixt his dwelling, and built the City of *Argyrissa*, wherof more anon. But as for *Damnus*, though he was not able to keep the possession of this Country, yet he bequeathed his name unto it: and afterwards withdrawing into *Latium* with such of his Subjects as were willing to follow his Adventures, he became there the chief head of the *Romuli*, and built among them the Town of *Ardea*, his chief seat at the coming of *Aeneas* into *Italy*; betwixt whom and *Turnus* the son of this *Damnus*, grew that deadly feud, so celebrated in the Works of *Virgil*.

In this part hereof is the Lake of *Lefina*, so called from a City of that name adjoining to it, made of the waters of *Phiturnus*, and some other Rivers, which there lose themselves; in compass forty miles, and well stored with Fish: the Eels hereof the largest that have been seen. Another Lake called *Arduarius*, more memorable, though not so great, it being laid hereof by *Pliny*, that the waters of it are neither diminished by draining, nor increased by land-floods. Here is also the Mount *Garganus*, known by that name in *Virgil*, but now called *S. Angelo*, high, steep, and full of craggy Rocks: twenty miles in compass, but that extent diversified into Hills and most pleasant valleys, well wooded, and well stored with waters: here being one Lake (besides many others) called *Lacus Varanus*, said to be thirty miles in circuit. A place defensible by nature, and so strong by art, that it is commonly the last piece in the Realm of *Naples*, which is given up to the Invader: as appears plainly by the keeping of it by the *Greeks* and *Sarazens* for many years, after the *Normans* had possessed themselves of the rest of the Kingdom.

The whole divided by *Alphonsus* (in his new modelling of this Kingdom) into two parts, the greatest and most flourishing called *Pouille the Plain*, from the condition of the soil which is plain and level, not so much swelled with Hills as the rest of *Apulia*: for which cause called *Puglia Piana* by the modern *Italians*. Intersected betwixt which and *Abruzzo*, lieth a small Territory, by the said King *Alphonsus* called the *CAPITANATE*, destitute both of Woods and Rivers, and consequently not so populous as the rest of this Province: well furnished notwithstanding with all sorts of Grain, and stored with large and spacious Pastures, which breed such infinite herds of Cattel, that the Tribute there arising was valued at 80000 Crowns per an. in the time of *Guiccardine*, and by him reckoned one of the best Revenues of the Realm of *Naples*. Of which tribute when the *French* could receive no part, by reason that on the division which they made with *Ferdinand* and the *Catholic* (spoken of before) this Territory as a part of *Apulia*, did belong to

the *Spaniards*, they brake out into open War, pretending that the Country appertained to them, (as indeed it lay very near their part) and thereby gave a full occasion to the *Spaniards*, a more diligent nation, and more intent upon their work, to worm them by degrees out of all the kingdom.

Chief places of the whole *Daunia*, 1. *Luceria*, the *Nuceria* of *Ptolemy*, and the *Rudra* of *Suetonius*; as which is ancient, and honoured with an Episcopal See. 2. *Afcoti*, of old called *Afcular*, and sometimes *Afcular Savirani*, to difference it from another of that name in *Anconiana*; the title and honour of a Duke; 3. *Trivisa*, Dukes title also, built by the Eastern Emperours in a place of strength and great advantage to restrain the intolencies of the *Sarazens*, then infesting this Country. These three in that part of it which is called the *Capitanate*. Then in the other part called *Pouille the Plain*. 4. *Siponto*, once a Roman Colony and an Archbishops See, which honour it enjoyed till destroyed by the *Sarazens*. 5. *Murfredonia*, founded near the place of the former, by *Murfred* the *Barbador*, King of *Naples*, the better to assure these parts of his Kingdom. A stately and magnificent City the Seat of the Archbishop of *Siponto*; beautified with a capacious Harbour for receipt of Ships, and an impregnable Castle for defence thereof. 6. *Salpe* of great antiquity, but not else observable. 7. *Servitine* of a newer date, but more rich and populous. 8. As ancient and as famous as the best amongst them, the poor Village of *Cannae*, situate near the mouth or influx of the River *Aufidus*; *ignobilis Apulie vicus*, as it is in *Florus*; but such as afterwards grew more notable for the great defeat which *Annibal* there gave to *Paulus Æmilian* and *Terrantius Varro* the Roman Consuls, of whose Army he slew 42700 on the very place. Which victory had he husbanded as he might have done, he had utterly subverted the State of *Rome*: so that it was most justly (as most truly) said by *Malerbal* General of his Hosts, *Vincere scilicet Annibal victoria uti nefas*; that he knew better how to get, than to use his victory. 9. But of most note in this part of *Apulia* was the town *Argyria* or *Argyrissa* as some call it, founded by *Diomedes* in the skirts of Mount *S. Angelo* towards the Sea, and in that part of this Country, which then (or afterwards) was held by the *Lapyges*, of which thus *Virgil* in the 11 of the *Æneid*.

*Ille urbem Argypam Patriæ de nomine Genis
Vidit Gargani condita Lapygis arvis,*

And being *Victor* he a City builds
Near *Garganus* in the *Lapygian* fields,
And called it *Argyrippa*, by the name
Of some known place 'th Land from which he came.

By which we also may conclude, that it took this name with reference to some Town of *Ætolia*, which was the native Country of *Diomedes*. For although I know that many of the ancient Writers suppose it to have been first called *Argos Hippium*, with relation to a famous Cicerone of that name in *Peloponnesus*; and after by contraction or corruption to be named *Argyrippa*; yet those words of *Patriæ de nomine Genis*, do persuade me otherwise; *Diomedes* having nothing to do in the Country of *Argolis*, where that City stood; nor in the whole Demi-Island of *Peloponnesus*, wherof *Argolis* was a part or Province. It was called also *Diomedea*, and *urbis Diomedis*, because of this foundation, and his Royal Seat, after his fixing in his Country; but at the last it came to be called *Argy*, and by that name was known in the time of the *Romans* greatness; Now no where to be found but in the ruins of time, and the Records of Antiquity,

unless it be in a poor Village called *Sarpy* where *Niger* findeth it.

APULIA PEUCEZIA, extendeth from the Banks of the River *Aufidus* on the West, to the land of *Otranto* on the East. So called as some conceive from *Peucezia* the Brother of *Oenotrus*; which may be probable enough, this being the first Country at which *Oenotrus* touched, when he came unto *Italy* with his people. *Bochartus* a great Enemy of all Traditions, will have it called *Peucezia*, and *rov mædion*, for that great quantity of Pitch which these Countries yield, as the word signifieth in the *Greek*. But whatsoever was the reason of the ancient name, that of the present is well known and agreed upon from *Bari* the chief City hereof, being now called *Barri*.

Places of most importance in it: 1. *Barri*, seated near the Sea, but without a Haven, yet seated in so rich a soil, and so well inhabited, that it is a fair and wealthy City, and the chief of this part of *Apulia*, taking name from hence. 2. *Barietto*, by the modern *Latins* called *Banylum*, situate in or near the place of the old *Cusumum*, an Haven Town, and of so great importance reckoned for one of the four strong holds of *Italy*, in the middle Ages; the other three being *Croton* in *Lombardia*, *Prato* in *Tuscany*, and *Fabrianum* now called *Fabiano* in *Anconitana*. 3. *Annapolis*, a Port town also not very large, but of a neat elegant building; new built, and the title of a *Marques*. 4. *Tramunt*, an ancient City, and an Archbishops See, but at this time better built, than peopled by reason of some defects in the Harbour upon which it standeth. These three laid together with *Murfredonia* in the other *Apulia*, pawned by the Kings of *Naples* (when first invaded by the *French*) to the state of *Venice*; but recovered from them not long after by *Fredinand* the *Catholic*, when possessed of that Kingdom. 5. *Bionta*, an Archbishops See also, one of which was a notable stickler in the Council of *Trent*. 6. *Pulignano*, on a rocky hill, the Honourary title of a *Marques*, and a Sec Episcopate. 7. *Molfette*, which gives title to a Prince, but not else considerable. 8. *Vigilia*, now called *Bisigli* a Bilpos See, situate near the *Adriatick* amongst craggy Rocks. 9. *Venusia*, a strong Place and of great importance; one of the last Towns which held good for the *French*, in the recovery of this Kingdom from *Charles VIII*. The *Venustum* of the ancient *Romans*, and the Birth-place of *Horace*, hence called *Venusinus*. Nothing considerable of these people in point of story, but that confederating with *Tarentum* against the *Romans*, as the *Calabrians*, *Bruttii*, and *Lucani* did; they were all forced to submit to the power of *Rome* at the end of the War, A. V. C. 481. *Papyrius Cursor* and *Sp. Carvilius* being the second time Consuls.

IV. *TERRA d'OTRANTO*, as it is now called, was once the Eastern part of *Apulia Daunia* unto which it joyneth, from which parted only by a line drawn from *Brundisium* to *Tarentum*, of which more anon. Thus called from *Otranto* the chief Town hereof, the seat and habitation in the elder times of the *Salentini*, the *Lapyges*, and the *Messapians*, and is accordingly intitled in ancient Authors by the several names of *Lapygia*, *Messapia*, and *Salentina*. They were the last people of *Italy* which held out against *Rome*, and sunk immediately after the *Tarentini*, upon whose Fate they did depend, A. V. C. 487. *Junius Perra* for it. Of these three Nations the *Lapyges* were of greatest Fame or of greatest infamy. *Cretans* originally sent in quest of *Glauceus* the Son of *Miner*, whom when they could not find, and durst not return without him, they fixed here their dwelling; *Lapyx* the Son of *Deдалios*, being their Captain and conductor, and from him denominated.

K Growing

On the West side of this Calabria, and properly a part thereof, but reaching to the North as far as *Apulia*, standeth that Mountainous Country, which in the subdivision of these Provinces by King *Alfonso*, was called the *BASILICATE*; and anciently the seat of the *Lucani*, and therefore called *Lucania* by the elder *Latinists*. Divided from the *Principate*, or West parts of *Campania*, by the River *Silarus*. A Country heretofore very unfavourable to Travellers, by reason of the difficult ways, and assured company of Thieves, but now reduced to better order. It containeth in it 93 walled places, and nine Towns or Cities, the chief whereof are, 1. *Pagindonia*, or *Poli*, a City situate in a pleasant and benign a soil, that Rovers grow there thrice a year. 2. *Polycastro* on the Sea-shore, and the former is, honoured with the title of a Dukedom. And *Diano* or *Diammi*, a more inland City, near which there is a Valley twenty miles in length, and four miles in breadth; which for all manner of delights, and fruitfulness, yields to none in *Naples*.

VII. THE ISLES of *NAPLES* are either in the *Adriatick*, and *Tuscan* Seas, or in the Bay of *Puteoli*. In the *Adriatick* Sea, are the Islands of *Diomedes*, right against *Apulia*, where it encountereth with *Abruzzo*: so called from *Diomedes* King of *Æthiopia*, who after the end of the *Trojan* War, (in which he was so great a stickler) settled himself in some part of *Apulia*: the principal whereof are, *St. Maris*, *St. Dominico*, and *Tremisana*. 2. The Island of *Acate*, over against the Town of *Gallipoli*. 3. *St. Andrew* in the Bay of *Tarentum*. 4. And finally, the two Islands of *Diolcora* and *Calypso*, over against the Cape of *Lecina*, now called *Calonci*, in the upper *Calabria*. Of all which there is little famous. In the *Tuscan* or *Iyberian* Seas, are the Islands of *Pantia* and *Pandataria* (now called *Palmaria*) as little famous as the other: I save that the last is memorable in the *Roman* Stories, for the confinement of *Agrippina* the Wife of *Germanicus*, and Mother of *Caligula*, by the appointment of the Emperor *Tiberius Nero*.

Those in the Gulf or Bay of *Puteoli* are of better note. The principal whereof are, 1. *Ischia*, heretofore called *Oenotris*, from its plenty of Wine, wherewith it aboundeth to this day; as also with Allom, Sulphur and most excellent Fruits. It is in compass 18 miles, and so begirt with Rocks and dangerous Cliffs, that it is accessible at one entrance only, and that too fortified with a strong and impregnable Cittadel: and therefore chosen by King *Ferdinand* for his place of Refuge, when he was ousted of his Kingdom by *Charles VIII.* Here is also good plenty of Hares and Conies. 2. *Procithia*, now called *Procitha*, about six miles in circuit, wherein are very wholesome Baths, good store of Conies, Hares and Pheasants; the Shore replenished with Fish, and the Land with Fountains. *John de Procithis* who plotted the *Sicilian* Vessers, was once Lord of this place; but afterwards for a reward of that service, made *Vice-Roy* of *Valencia*, a Kingdom of *Spain*. 3. *Caprea*, a small rocky Island, having no Haven, nor convenient station for Ships, but of a mild and temperate Air, much beautified by *Augustus Cæsar*, in regard that an old maple Tree upon his casual landing here, did bud forth afresh. After that, it was much honoured by his retirement from affairs of State; and as much dishonoured by *Tiberius* his next Successor, who withdrawing hither many times from his Court at *Rome*, made it the Theater of his Cruelties, and most filthy Lusts. It hath a little City of the same name, having a Fortrefes, and a Bishops See; and another Town called *Anacopia*, inhabited by Fishermen, and Shipwrights belonging to the Navy of *Naples*. Into this Island they used to confine Offenders in former times, and sometimes also at this day. 4. *Stenaria*,

a small Island given by *Augustus* to the *Neapolitani* in exchange for *Caprea*, whose before it was.

There are few Nations under the Sun, who have suffered under more changes and alterations of State, than the Inhabitants of this Kingdom. For being at the first a mixture of several Nations, some of them preyed upon the others, till they were all subdued (as hath been shewed before) by the Power of *Rome*. In the declining of her fortunes, they followed for the most part the *Carthaginians*, and took part with *Annibal*; and he being called home, they returned again to their old obedience. When *Italy* was subdued by the *Goths*, it became subject to that people, as *Stiell*, and the rest of those Islands did; and when the *Lombards* Lorded it in the *Roman* Provinces, all *Naples* fell into their hands, except *Apulia* and *Calabria*; which the *Greek* Emperor having conquered from the *Goths* with the rest of *Italy*, kept (but with much difficulty) to themselves. In the division of the Empire betwixt *Carols Magnus* and *Irene*, these two last Provinces only were assigned to the *Constantinopolitans*; the rest to *Charles*, and his Successors: both outed of their several parts by the prevailing *Sarazens*, under the conduct of *Sabbas*, and other successful Generals. These partly dispossessed by the Emperor *Otho I.* and his *Almain* Forces; challenging a right herein, as King of *Italy*, that right confirmed and enlarged by the Marriage of *Otho II.* with *Theophania*, Nece to *Nicephorus Phocas* the Eastern Emperor, who brought *Apulia* and *Calabria* for her Dowry and Portion. But long the *Germans* had not held it, when they were again expelled by the *Greek* and *Sarazens*, joining together against them as a common Enemy, who afterwards held bitter Wars against one another, for the sole command. During these Wars it hapned that one *Drangos*, a Gentleman of *Normandy*, having in the presence of Duke *Robert* (the Father of *William* the Conquerour) slain one *Reposel*, a Gentleman of like quality; to avoid the Justice of the Prince, and the practices of *Reposel's* Kindred, fled into this Country; attended by such of his Followers, as either did depend upon his Fortunes, or had been medlers in the Fray. Where being come, the Duke *Benevent*, Vicegerent to the Eastern Emperor, took them into pay. Their entertainment being bruited in *Normandy*, and a report raised withal, That the *Greek* hearkened after men of valour and action; caused many private Gentlemen to pass over the *Alper*, and there to help themselves out a more prosperous fortune than formerly they had enjoyed. The fortunate success of which last Adventures, drew thither also *Tancred*, the Lord of *Hainville*; who with his twelve Sons came into *Apulia*, An. 1008, and in short time not only drove the *Sarazens* thence, but the *Grecians* also, as men that had broke Covenant with them in the division of the Booty. For *William* the Son of *Tancred*, combining with *Meloreo*, Governour of *Apulia* for the *Greek* Emperor, and with the Princes of *Capua* and *Salerno*, men of power and honour, for the conquest of *Stiell* (which the *Sarazens* then wholly held) agreed amongst themselves to divide the places conquered by them into four equal parts; one for each Adventurer. But when the *Sarazens* were driven out, *Meloreo* having new Supplies sent him out of *Greece*, seized on the possession of the whole Island in the Emperor's name. Which injury *William* commonly dissembled, till *Meloreo's* Forces were dispersed, and then he suddenly fell upon him; first took the City of *Melfi*, and after by degrees, most of the other Towns and places which the *Greek* held in *Italy*: of which both he and his Successors kept possession by the Title of Dukes of *Calabria* only. Of these (though all of eminent virtue) there were two besides this *William*,

of special fame. 1. *Robert Guiscard*, the third Son of *Tancred*, the most vallant Captain of his time, and chief establisher of the *Normans* power in *Italy*, to which he added in conclusion the Isle of *Stiell*, together with the City of *Naples* itself, and all the Lands which lye betwixt it and *Rome*. 1. *Bohemund*, the eldest Son of this *Robert*, who going with *Godfrey of Bouillon*, and others of the Western *Christians* to the Holy Land, was for his signal merit invested with the Kingdom of *Antioch*; inherited by his Children after his decease.

But to proceed: This *Guiscard* at his death, (but not without some wrong to the Children of his Brother *William*, whom he had dispossessed of all by the Pope's Authority) gave *Stiell*, with the Title of Earl, to his Son *Roger*; and his Estates in *Italy* to his other Son *William*: who going to *Constantinople* to marry with the Emperor's Daughter, was ousted of his part by his Brother *Roger*, made not long after, by the Pope the first King of this Family.

The Kings of Naples of the Norman Line.

- 1125 1. *Roger*, Earl of *Stiell*, created by Pope *Anacletus II.* King of both the *Sicilies*, at the Town of *Benevent*; which City in requital of so great a favour, he restored again unto a right Church, from which it had been taken (after the first Donation of it) by the *German* Emperours. 24.
- 1140 2. *William*, the Son of *Roger*, who to assure himself of his Kingdoms, was content to take them as a gift from the hands of Pope *Adrian IV.* to be held for ever in Fee of the Church of *Rome*. 21.
- 1170 3. *William II.* Son of the former *William*, who left a Daughter called *Constance*, who became a Nun. 26.
- 1196 4. *Tancred*, the base Son of *William II.* excluded his Sister from the Crown, but was eventually deposed by Pope *Celsine III.* who had an aim to get the Kingdom for himself. But when he saw that *Tancred* was too strong for him, out of meer spite to be defeated of his purpose, he called in the *Germans*, the ancient enemies of his See; and gave the Lady *Constance*, then almost fifty years of age, in Marriage unto Henry VI. 2.

The German Line.

- 1198 5. *Henry*, the sixth of that name, Emperor and Duke of *Schomaben*, succeeded on his Marriage with the Lady *Constance*. 4.
- 1202 6. *Frederick*, Son of the Emperor *Henry* and Queen *Constance*, crowned at the age of three years, afterwards Emperor by the name of *Frederick II.* He had to wife the Daughter of *John de Bren*, the titular King of *Hiersusalem*, of which the Kings of *Naples* have ever since had the title of Kings; and in the rights of this Kingdom, the Kings of *Spain*.
- 1250 7. *Conrade*, the Son of *Frederick*, King of *Naples* and *Stiell*, as also Emperor and Duke of *Saravie*, or *Schomaben*; poisoned (as it was conceived) by his base Brother *Manfred*. 4.
- 1254 8. *Manfred*, the base Son of *Frederick*, Duke of *Benevent*, first governed the Kingdom as Protector unto *Conradine*, the Son of *Conrade*; but after took it to himself against the will of Pope *Urban IV.* who being wea-

ry of the *Germans*, called in *Charles Duke of Anjou*, and the Earl of *Provence*, Brother to *Lewis X.* of *France*: It being usual with the Popes (as *Machiavel* very well observeth) to call new men into *Italy*, and stir up new Wars for their own ambition; not suffering any to possess that long which themselves (through their weakness) could not hold; and practising the overthrow of those very men, whom themselves had raised to power and greatness.

The French Line.

- 1261 9. *Charles*, Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, overcame King *Manfred*, and was after Crowned by Pope *Urban IV.* who conditioned with him, that neither he nor his Successors should assume the Empire; and that they should pay fifty thousand Crowns per annum as a Rent to the Church. This *Charles* did also vanquish *Conradine* the Son of *Conrade*, the last of the Royal House of *Saravie*, whom he caused to be beheaded at *Naples*. After which bloody Act, neither he nor any of his posterity, did either quietly or long enjoy these Kingdoms. For in his own time Peter King of *Aragon*, claimed the Kingdom of *Naples*, in right of *Constance* his Wife, Daughter of *Manfred*: betwixt whom and *Charles*, a single combat was appointed to be fought in *Bordeaux*, before King *Edward I.* of *England*, to decide the Controversie. But whilst *Charles* there expected him, he seized on *Stiell*, Anno 1281. This *Charles* reigned three and twenty years.
- 1284 10. *Charles II.* Son of *Charles I.* formerly Prisoner in *Stiell* to Peter of *Aragon*, was ransomed by the procurement of *K. Edward* above named for 30000 Marks. By Mary, Daughter of *Stephen*, King of *Hungary*, he had fourteen Children: the most pertinent of which (to our purpose) were *Charles* furnished Martell, King of *Hungary* in right of his Mother; *Robert* King of *Naples*; *John* of *Durazzo*, and a Daughter (whose name I find not) married to *Charles*, Earl of *Valois*, who in her right obtained the Earldom of *Aijun*. 26.
- 1310 11. *Robert*, the second Son of *Charles II.* 22.
- 1342 12. *Jane*, the Nece of *Robert* by his Son *Charles*, first married *Andrew*, the second Son of *Charles* King of *Hungary*, whom he hanged at her window for insufficiency; and for her second husband had *Lewis*, Prince of *Tarentum*, who over-training himself to satisfy her carnal appetite, died. Her third husband was *James*, Prince of *Majorca*, a gallant young Gentleman, whom she beheaded for lying with another woman. Her fourth, *Otho* of *Brunswick*, a tough Soldier, who had the good fortune to out-live her. She was twice driven out of her Kingdom by *Lewis* King of *Hungary*, brother of *Andrew* her first Husband: restored the first time by the power of Pope *Clement* the sixth; but at the second time taken and hanged at the same window where she had hanged her first Husband. But first, out of an hatred to her next Heirs of the House of *Hungary*, she adopted *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, descended

cended from Charles Earl of Valois (spoken of before) for her Heir and Successor.

The Hungarian Line.

- 1371 13. Charles III. Son to Lewis, and Nephew of Prince John of Durazzo before mentioned, by the power of Lewis, King of Hungary, and the favour of Pope Urban V. was made King of Naples. He overthrew and killed in Battle Duke Lewis of Anjou, his Competitor, and after the death of King Lewis of Hungary, succeeded in that Kingdom also; but long he had not reigned therein, when poisoned (as it was supposed) by the old Queen Mother, to advance her Daughter to that Throne, 15.
- 1386 14. Ladislaus, Son of Charles III. having a quarrel with the Pope, made a voyage Royal unto Rome, where he forced his entry, and was there triumphantly received: on which displeasure the Pope called in Lewis II. Duke of Anjou, who gave Ladislaus a great overthrow. Informing, as Ladislaus used to say, that if Lewis had followed his Victory the first day, he had been master of his Kingdom and Person too; if the second, of his Kingdom, but not of his Person: but not pursuing it till the third day, he failed of both. So in the end he was compelled to flee to Rome, and give over the enterprise, 29.
- 1415 15. Joane II. Sister of Ladislaus, of as much levity, but not altogether of so ill a fame as the former Joane: observing the unprosperous successes of the House of Anjou the adopted for her Heir, Alfonso V. of Aragon; who had some claim unto the Kingdom as the direct Heir of Pedro, or Peter III. and Constance the Daughter of King Manfred, spoken of before. But finding him to stand too much on his own right, and to be too forward in taking a possession of it, before her death she revoked that Adoption, and made a new grant of that Estate to Lewis IV. Duke of Anjou, and after his decease to his brother Rene, or Renato: both vanquished by the Aragonians.

The Aragonian Line.

- 1434 16. Alfonso King of Aragon, partly by Conquest, and partly by Adoption, having got the Kingdom, left it well settled unto Ferdinand, his natural Son, 24.
- 1458 17. Ferdinand, the late Son of Alfonso (the lawful Sons inheriting the Realm of Aragon, Sicily, &c.) succeeded in the Realm of Naples, 36.
- 1494 18. Alfonso II. Son of Ferdinand, in whose time the French began to aim at the Realm of Naples. This King and his two Predecessors were of the order of the Garter.
- 1494 19. Ferdinand II. Son of Alfonso II. outed of his Estate and Kingdom by Charles VIII. Son of King Lewis XI. of France, whom Rene the last Duke of Anjou had made the sole Heir of all his Titles and Possessions. And though Charles upon his Conquest was solemnly Crowned, yet posting back again into France before he had settled his affairs in this Kingdom, and having much discontented

ted the chief men of the Ajouin Faction; he lost it suddenly to the same Ferdinand; from whom he had so suddenly won it.

- 1497 20. Frederick II. Brother of Alfonso II. and Uncle of this last Ferdinand, succeeded him in Estate, and was the sixth King that had reigned in Naples. within the compass of three years: that is to say, Ferdinand I. Alfonso II. Ferdinand II. Charles of France, the second Ferdinand again, and then this Frederick. Finding himself betrayed by the Spaniards, he submitted himself to Lewis XII. King of France, and yielded up his Kingdom to him. And indeed what else could that poor Prince do, when he saw his own blood, and such as had taken his Realm into their protection, conspiring against him?

For when Charles made his passage towards Naples, Ferdinand the Catholic, sent Gonzalo, (who was afterward for his valour surnamed the Great Captain) with some Forces to resist the French Invaders. But when the French were expelled, Gonzalo would not leave the Country, because his Master had not as yet sent for him. In the mean time it was agreed between Lewis of France, and this Ferdinand, that they should jointly set upon the Kingdom of Naples: That having won it, the French should possess Abruzzo, and Lavoro; the Spaniards, Puglia, and both Calabria: That the first should be entitled King of Naples; the other, Duke of Apulia. This Confederacy was kept secret till the French Forces were come to Rome; and Gonzalo possessed (under pretence of defending it) of all Calabria: So that it was no marvel that they made themselves Masters of the Country. An action in which the French dealt very unadvisedly, in bringing into Italy where he was before the sole Moderator, another King as great as himself, to whom as to his Rival, his Enemies might have recourse on all occasions; and the Spaniards as unnaturally, in betraying for the moiety of a Kingdom, a Prince of his own blood, under pretence and promise of succours. But the two Kings did not continue long in good terms of Partnership. For the Spaniards being more intent upon their advantages, soon picked a quarrel with the French, within two or three years drove them out of all, and to this day keep it; though both this Lewis, and his Successors Francis I. and Henry II. have divers times, and with great effusion of blood, attempted the recovery of it.

The Spanish, or Castilian Line.

- 1503 21. Ferdinand III. surnamed the Catholic, King of Castile, Aragon, &c. and Naples, 1.
- 1516 22. Charles V. Emperor, King of Spain, and the IV. of that name in Naples, 43.
- 1558 23. Philip II. of Spain, and the first of Naples, 40.
- 1598 24. Philip II. of Naples, 3. of Spain, 22.
- 1621 25. Philip III. of Naples, 4. of Spain.
- The Arms of this Kingdom are Azure, Some of Flowers de Luce, Or, a File of three Labels, Gules.
- The Revenues of it are two Millions and a half of Crowns; whereof 20000 are due to the Pope for Chief-Rent; and the rest so exhausted in maintaining Garrisons upon the Natives, and a strong Navy against the Turks, that the King of Spain receiveth not a fourth part *de claro*.

Here are in this Kingdom
Arch-bishops 20. Bishops 127.

The

The Kingdom of SICILIA.

BEFORE we can come into the Isle of Sicily, we must first cross that branch of the MEDITERRANEAN Sea, which is called the Fare, or Strait of Messina; where the passage is so strait and narrow, that it exceedeth not in breadth a mile and a half. In other parts, as the Sea grows wider, it is distant from the main land of Italy near 300 miles; that is to say, from the Town of Drepanum in Sicily, to the City of Naples. As for the Mediterranean Sea, it is so called because it interlaceth the midst of the earth; extending from the Straits of Gibraltar on the West, to the coast of Palestine on the East; and so dividing Africk both from Europe and Asia minor. In the Scriptures, Job. 1. 4. it is called by the name of Mare magnum, or the great Sea: great in comparison of the dead Sea, and the Sea of Galilee, lying on the other side of the land of Palestine; but small enough if compared to the Ocean, with which in probability the Writer of that Book might have no acquaintance. Besides which general name of the Mediterranean, it hath also many particular names, as the Adriatick, Egean, Ionian, and Carpathian Sea, where it bordereth upon Greece, and Anatolia; Mare Lilybeum, where it runneth by the shores of Africk; with reference to Italy called in some parts Mare Tyrrhenum, in others Mare Ligustum; in some parts Mare Siculum, and in others Mare Sardinum, &c. And as the Camelion is said to apply it self to the colour of the nearest adjacent body: so this Sea taketh its particular denominations from the nearest shores. These Seas are also called by the some modern Writers, in imitation of the French, by the name of the Levant, or the Seas of the Levant: because in respect of France, Spain, Britain, Germany, &c. they in towards the East; the word Levant signifying in the French, a rising up, and more especially the Sun-rising. The principal Island of this Sea which relate to Italy (for of others we shall speak in their proper places) are those of Sicily, Sardinia, Corsica and some Isles adjoining unto these.

SICILY, environed round with the lower or Tyrrhenian Sea, contains seven hundred miles in compass; and is supposed to have been joined to Italy in former times, being then a Peninsula, or Demi-Island, such as Peloponnesus; and joined to the Continent by as narrow a Isthmus. The reason of that name we shall see anon.

The separating of it from the main Land of Italy, is by the Poets ascribed to Neptune, who with his three forked Mace, or Trident, broke it off from the land, in favour of Jove the son of Saturn; that so he might inhabit there with the greater safety, being environed with waters. Which though it be a Fable or Poetical fiction, yet with some help from the Mythologists, may be made a story. For if by Jove and Neptune, we understand the Winds and Seas, it intimates that it was divided from the rest of Italy, either by the fury of the Waves, or by the violence of some Earthquakes, to which this Island is still subject, which might in time consume and wear away the Earth. Nor wants there very good reason for this supposition; as, 1. The narrowness of the Strait, exceeding not a mile and a half; inasmuch as at the taking of Messina by the Carthaginians many of the people saved themselves by swimming over this Strait, into the opposite parts of Italy. 2. The shallowness of it, being found upon a diligent sounding, not to be above eight fathom deep. Thence 'tis observed, that the land on both sides is very brittle, full of Caves

and chinks made in it by the working of the Sea; on this separation; and that on the Italian coast where the Strait is narrowest, there stands a City old called Rhegium, which signifieth a breach or cutting off, from the Greek word *ῥήγνυμι*, which signifies to break off, or violently to pull asunder; and is supposed to be so called upon this occasion. And indeed the violence of the Sea is so great and dangerous in this narrow Channel, so subject unto blustering winds issuing out of the hollow caverns of the earth; that the breaking off of this Island from the rest of Italy, is a thing most credible. Which dangerous nature of the passage, being also full of Rocks, and unsafe by reason of the Whirl-pools occasioned it to be called by Florus the Historian, *Periculosus infame monstris fretum*; chiefly so called with reference to Scylla and Charybdis, of which many fabulous things are reported by the ancient Poets. Of these Charybdis is a Gulf or Whirl-pool on Sicily side, which violently attracting all Vessels that come too nigh it, devoureth them, and casteth up their wracks at the shore of Tauranum, not far from Catania. Opposite to this in Italy, standeth the dangerous Rock Scylla, at the foot of which many little Rocks shoot out, on which the water strongly beating, making that noise, which the Poets feign to be the barking of Dogs. The passage between these two being to unskilful Mariners exceeding perilous, gave beginning to the Proverb;

Incidit in Scyllam cupiens vitare Charybdim.

Who offends Charybdis for to shun,
Doth sometimes on Scylla run.

But there are other things which made Sicily famous in old times, besides these two, as *viz.* the punishment of the Giant Enceladus, for his attempt against the gods: the frequent burning of Aëna (under which he is tumbled to be shut up) being supposed to proceed from his sulphurous breath. Secondly, the birth of Ceres in this Isle; and thirdly, the Rape of Proserpine. To these two last the Isle was consecrated in those days: to Ceres in regard the first taught the people to sow Corn; whence the word Ceres is often used in the Poets to signify Bread, and other necessary provisions for life, as *Sine Cere & Baccho friget Venus*, to Proserpine, because bestowed upon her by Pluto, to please her after the Ravishment committed on her.

It is situated under the fourth Climate, the longest day being 13 hours and a half. And was once called Trinacria, because it shoots forth into the Sea with three Capes or Promontories: *viz.* 1. Pelorus, now Capo de Foro, to the North; 2. Pachynus, now Capo Passaro, to the West; and 3. Lilybeum, now Capo Boi, or Capo Caro, to the South. This last looketh towards Carthage, and the shores of Africk, from which distant 180 miles. And of this Strabo doth affirm, that a man of quick and strong sight getting up into a Watch-tower that stood in this Cape, descryed a Fleet setting sail out of the Haven of Carthage; and told the Lilybeans their signals and number. That this is true, I dare not say; for besides the unlikelihood of kenning at so great a distance; we are taught by Philosophy, that the Sea being of an orbicular form, swelleth it self into the fashion of a round Turret or Hill, till it put bound to the eye-sight. From these three corners, this Country was (as we have said) called Trinacria, or Trinacria, according to that of Ovid.

*Terra tribus scopulis costum procurrit in aquas
Trinacria; postquam, nomen adeptus, loci.*

An Island with three corners braves the Main,
And thence the name of *Trinacris* doth gain.

The first Inhabitants that we find to have dwelt in this Country, are the huge Giants so often mentioned in the *Odyssey* of the divine Poet *Homer*, called *Lagrigians* and *Cyclopes*; of which last rank was the so much famous *Polyphemus*, who with so much humanity entertained *Ulysses*, and his companions. These were afterwards rooted out by the *Sicani*, a people of *Spain*, who called it *Sicania*. As for the name of *Sicilia*, some derive it from *Siculus*, a supposed King of *Spain*, who is fabled to have conquered this Country. But the truth is, it came from the *Siculi*, who being by *Evander* and his *Arcadians* driven out of *Latium*, came into this Island: to which having mastered the *Sicani*, and driven them from the West and the Northern part, to the East and South they left their name. At their first landing they built the City of *Zancle*, called afterwards *Messana*, together with *Nice*, *Hybla*, *Catana*, and *Leontium*. After them came another Italian people named the *Morgertes* being driven thence by the *Oenonians* and late down in that part of the Island where stood the City of *Morgentium*, built by them at their first arrival. The first of all the *Greeks* who set foot in it (not to say any thing of the coming of *Moses* hither in the pursuit of *Dadalus*, having more in it of the Fiction than Historical truth) where the *Chalcidians*, a people of the Isle *Euboea*, now called *Negropont*; who built the City of *Naxos*; and after them *Archias* of *Corinth*, with his fellow adventurers, by whom *Syracuse* was either first built, or very much beautified and repaired. Next them the *Rhodiens* and *Cretans* sent some Colonies hither, the first Founders of *Gela*; and after of the renowned City of *Agriguntum*: And not long after a new Plantation sent from *Sparta* built *Heraclea*. The Citizens of *Megaris*, another state of *Greece*, sent a Colony also, who built *Selinus*. And did those of *Messene* also, who taking the Town of *Zancle* from the *Siculi*, new built or beautified it, and gave unto it to repair the name of *Messana*. Nor is it to be thought, that the *Tyrrians* and *Phoenicians*, being so great undertakers of publick business, and very powerful in shipping, would sit still, when so fair a booty did invite their industry: who seizing on the *Promontories* of *Pachynus* and *Lilybaeum*, and some of the adjoining Islands; did fortify them for the better securing of the Trade which they had in *Sicily*. But all these several Adventurers having several interferences, joined not together in the work of an absolute Conquest; but planting themselves only on the Sea shores, altered not the state by which they found it called at their coming *Sicilia*.

The people are ingenious, eloquent and pleasant, but without very unconstant, and so full of talk, that from thence came the Proverb, *Gerre Siculae*. They are also said to be of a very envious, suspicious, and distrustful nature, incapable of injuries, and vehement in pursuit of revenge, as appears by that great slaughter which they made of the *French*; yet without courteous enough to strangers and *Parasitical* enough to their superiors. They have been famous heretofore for many notable inventions, *Archimedes* ascribing to them the Art of *Oratory*, and first making of *Palatal Elegances*, *Pliny* of Clocks (or rather of Hour-glasses; for Clocks were but a late invention, and that of the *Flemmings*); and *Plutarch* of Military Engines; which last were brought by *Archimedes* under great perfection.

The Christian Faith was first preached here, by some of the Disciples of *St Peter*, whom he sent hither at his

first coming to *Rome*; of which *Pancratius* (whom we call commonly *St. Pancrace*) is said to have been the first Bishop of *Tauranum*, and *Marianus* of *Syracuse*. They are now generally of the Religion authorized by the Popes of *Rome*; that of the *Greek Church* being rather connived at than allowed of; in the Communion whereof here are thought to be ten thousand souls, but looked on by the rest as *schismatical* people. For the most part they use the *Italian Language*, but very much altered, by the *Greek*, *Arabian*, *Norman*, *French* and *Spanish* tongues; to which Nations they have been severally subject, since the time of the *Romans*. The total number of the people is thought to be about a Million and a half.

The soil is incredibly fruitful in Wine, Oyl, Honey, Minerals of Gold, Silver, and Allom, together with plenty of Salt and Sugar; which last commodity the Natives sell in Canes unto the *Venetians*, and buy it again of them when it is refined; and thereby letting strangers go away with the best part of their gains; as generally they do in all other Merchandize; which they permit to be exported, rather than put themselves to the trouble of Trafficking abroad in Foreign Nations. There are also Gems of *Agates*, and *Emeralds*. It yieldeth also great store of the richest Silks, which grow plentifully about *Messana*; variety of most excellent and delicious fruits, both for taste and colour: with such abundance of all sorts of Grain, that it was called in old times *Horreum Romani populi*, or the Granary of the *Roman Empire*; and doth now furnish some parts of *Italy*, *Spain*, and *Barbary*, besides *Malibus* and the adjacent Isles, with that which he can spare of her superfluities. Nay, *Tully* doth not only call it the Granary and Store-house of the City of *Rome*, in regard of Corn, but adds that it was accounted a well furnished Treasury; as being able of it self without charge of the State, to cloath, maintain and furnish the greatest Army, with Leather, Corn and apparel. And if *Diodorus Siculus* may be credited into, he telleth us, that about *Leontium* and some other places, Wheat did grow of it self, without any labour of the Husbandman. At this day in some parts of the Isle, the soil is so exceeding fruitful, that it yields unto the Husbandman an hundred measures of Corn for one. And certainly the Corn of this Country must needs yield a wonderful increase, the King of *Spain* receiving an hundred thousand Crowns yearly for the Custom of Wheat. In this Country is the Hill *Hybla*, so famous for Bees and Honey; near which there was a City of the same name also, which afterwards was called *Megara*. And here is also the Hill *Ætna*, now called *Monteiboli*, which continually sendeth forth flames of Fire, to the astonishment of all beholders. The most famous Conflagrations in the former times were presently before the breaking out of the War in *Sicily*, which the *Roman Writers* call *Bellum Ierile*, not pacified but by the slaughter of 70000 of the Slaves which had taken Arms against *Rome*; and shortly after the death of *Julius Cæsar*, portending those profligations and Bloody Wars, which did after follow. And to this day such extraordinary eruptions of it are accounted ominous. The Hill it self is of that height, that it is ten miles from the top to the bottom, and may be easily discerned by Sailors at an hundred miles distance; the lower parts thereof being very fruitful, the middle shaded with Woods, and the top covered with Snow, a great part of the year, notwithstanding the frequent vomiting of flames and cinders. But these eruptions of fire are not now so ordinary as they have been formerly; the matter which gave fuel to it being wasted by continual burnings; so that the flames which issue hence are hardly visible but by night,

night, though the smook shew it self the most part of the day. And when it doth break out, which is commonly once in three or four years; it falleth in great flakes on the Wales adjoining; to the destruction of the Vintage, and great loss of the Country. But that, they say, is recompensed by the plenty of the following years; the ashes thereof so bathing and enriching the soil, that both the Vines and Corn-fields are much bettered by it. And this report I am the apter to believe, in regard we find by late experience here amongst our selves, that the *Turks* taken from the ground and burnt to ashes, and very spread on land and ploughed into it, doth yield a very great improvement, even to barren soils. Which kind of Husbandry is called the *Despoiling* of land, because there first used; but in *Hungary* it was called, as I remember (having been unfortunately too long a stranger there) by the name of *burning and beeking*. But to return again to *Ætna*, into this fiery Furnace the Philosopher *Empedocles* cast himself that he might be reputed a God.

— Deus immortalis haberi

Dum caput Empedocles, ardentem fervidus Ætnam
Influit.

As *Horace*, in his Book of *Arte Poetica*.

Empedocles to be a God desires,
And casts himself into th' Ænean fires.

The reason of these fires is the abundance of Sulphur and Brimstone, contained in the bosom of the Hill; which is blown by the wind, driving in at the chaps of the Earth as by a pair of bellows. Through these chinks also there is continually more fuel added to the fire, the very water adding to the force of it as we see that water cast on coals in the Smiths Forge, doth make them burn more ardently. The reason of this flame is thus set down by *Ovid*.

Illa bituminea rapiunt incendia vires
Lutaque exiguis ardeant sulphura flammis.
Atq; ubi terra cibor alimentaq; debita flammæ
Non dabit, assumpta per longum viribus ævum,
Naturæq; suum nutrimentum decit edaci.
Non foret Ætna famem, desertaq; desertæ ignis.

A frozen mould these fiery flames begin,
And clayie brimstone aids that fire within:
Yet when the slimy soil consumed, shall
Yield no more food to feed the fire withal,
And Nature shall restrain her nourishment,
The flame shall cease, having all famishment.

Under this Hill some Poets feign the Giant *Enceladus* to have been buried, as before is said, whose hot breath fired the Mountain lying on his face. Others suppose it to be the Shop of *Vulcan*, and the *Cyclops*; and the great *Papists* take it for the place of *Purgatory*; all alike unfeasible.

The principal Rivers herof, 1. *Taretia*, anciently called *Torus*. 2. *Himera*, neigbouring by Mount *Hybla*, much famed for Honey. 3. *Jicantus*. 4. *Hybla*. 5. *Asius*, of great note for its precious Stones. None of them much observable for length or breadth, but that defect supplied by the commodiousness of Bays and Creeks, which are very frequent in this Island, and by the benefit of Fountains and fresh-water Lakes. Most memorable amongst these, 1. The Lake called *Palæstra*, (now *Napthia*) which for three months doth cast forth water very hot, but of very ill smell; of which, there is mention made in *Pliny*, by the name of *Epiphitis*. 2. A Fountain near the foot of *Ætna*, the water whereof is sharp like *Vinegar*, and sometimes boylth; into which a piece

of cloth cast, being before steeped in water mixed with Gall, becomes suddenly black. 3. Another Fountain near *Drepanum*, the water of which, as soon as drunk, provoketh loins. All which effects proceed from that sulphureous and bituminous matter, of which the whole Island is exceeding full. 4. *Arctus*, of greater fame among the Ancients than all the rest; especially in that the River *Alpheus* (a River of *Greece*) having swallowed up one hundred and forty lesser streams, and losing it self under the ground, is thought to empty it self into it. The thing affirmed by *Seneca* and *Strabo* both; and seems to be sufficiently proved, by the several instances of a wooden dish or cup lost in the River *Alpheus*, and found rising up in this River; and by the leaves of certain trees growing on the banks of that *Greek River*, and swimming on this in great abundance; there being none of these trees in all *Sicily*. *Deiuri* *Alpheus* (saith *Mela*) *se non consociare pelago; sed subter maria, versasq; depressas, bene agere alveum, atq; hic se rursus excolere*.

This Island is famous for the worthy Scholars (once produced, viz. *Æschylus*, the first Tragedian of fame; who being bald through age, once walked in the fields, where by chance an Eagle taking his bald pate for a white Rock, let a Shellfish fall on it, of that bigness that it beat out his Brains. 2. *Diodorus Siculus*, that famous Historian. 3. *Empedocles*, the first inventor of *Rhetoric*; and his fellow *Gorgias*. 4. *Euclid*, the textuary Geometrician, who taught in *Megaris*. 5. *Archimedes*, a most worthy Mathematician, the first Author of the Sphere; of which Instrument he made one of that art and bigness; that one standing within, might easily perceive the several motions of every Celestial Orb. He made also divers Military Engines, which in the reign of *Syracusa* forely vexed the *Romans*, and was at last slain in his study by a common Soldier in the sack of the Town, to the great grief of the General *Marellus*. 6. *Epicharmus*, the first Inventor of Comedies; and 7. *Theocritus*, the first Author of Pastoral Elegies. In the latter times, *Nicolaus*, Abbot of *Palermo*, a learned Canonist, and Cardinal of the Church of *Rome*, commonly called *Panormitanus*, was of greatest fame.

In *Plinius* time there were reckoned in this Island seventy two Cities, of which only twelve are now remaining. The whole divided at this time into three small Provinces, that is to say, 1. *Val de Noto*, 2. *Mazara*, and 3. *Mona*; to which the Isles adjoining may add a fourth. 1. *VALLIS DE NOTO* taketh up the Eastern parts of the Island. The chief Cities of which are 1. *Syracusa*, once the Metropolis of the whole Island, and a most flourishing Common-wealth; it was (as *Tully* reports) the greatest and goodliest City of all that were possessed by the *Greeks*; for situation very strong; and of an excellent prospect, from every entrance both by Sea and Land. The Port thereof which had the Sea on both sides of it, was for the most part environed with beautiful buildings; and that part of it which was without the City, was on both sides banked up, and furnished with very fair Walls of Marble. Nor was it only the goodliest City of the *Greeks*, as *Tully* tells us, but one of the greatest also in the World, as is said by *Strabo*; by whom it is affirmed, that without the outmost Wall thereof, (for it was environed with three Walls) it contained one hundred and eighty Furlongs in compass, which of our measure cometh to eighteen miles. It was compounded of four Towns made up into one, that is to say, *Isula* (or the Isle) *Acradina*, *Neapolis*, and *Tyche*, besides the Fort called *Neapolis*, which commanded the rest; the greatness of all which, the ruins and foundations of it do still demonstrate. It standeth North of the Promontory called

called *Pachynus*, and was built by *Archibis* of *Carthage* about the time of *Jehoram* King of *Judah* who being for an unnatural Rape, committed on a young Gentleman, banished his Country, together with his friend and companion *Misellus* conspired with the Oracle at *Delphos*, how and in what place they should dispose of themselves. The Oracle demanding whether they most affected wealth, or health: *Misellus* answered health, and *Archibis* wealth; and thereupon the former was directed to settle himself at *Crotone* in *Italy*, and the other here. Nor did the Oracle deceive him in his expectation; this Town by reason of its beautiful and commodious Port, proving of greatest trade and wealth next to *Carthage* it self, in those times of the World. It was the custom of this Town, when any of the Citizens grew too puffed up, to write his name in an Olive-leaf; which being put into his hand, did without more ado condemn him to banishment for five years, and was called *Petalifera*, from the Greek word *πέταλον*, signifying a Leaf. Yet could not this device so well secure them in the possession of their so much desired freedom, but that this City fell often into the power of Tyrants, than any one City in the World. That which is now remaining of it is the work of *Augustus*, who after a second destruction of it in the time of *Pompey*, sent a Colony hither, and built upon the Isle and the parts near unto it. But now the whole Isle (*Orygia* the Ancients called it) is taken up with a very strong Castle, and the whole City also being very well fortified, and held by a Garrison of *Spaniards*. 2. *Notus*, which gives name to this whole Division. A City which heretofore contended with *Syracuse* in point of Greatness: situate on a very high Rock, inaccessible on all sides but by one narrow passage; and having under the Cape of *Puffuria* a very fair and capacious Harbour, the Key of *Sicily* on that side. 3. *Augusta*, situate on the shore also, and of so large a Haven that it could never be fortified. 4. *Castro Giovannini*, a Town of about four thousand Families, situate in a wholesome air, and a fruitful soil, which they hold to be the very Navel and exact middle of the Island. It is also much prized for Mines of most excellent Salt. 5. *Leontini*, famous for its Lake, whose fishing is farmed for eighteen thousand Crowns yearly: It was anciently called *Leontium*, and stood somewhat North of *Syracuse*; with which continually in War, either to preserve their own Liberties, or get the Sovereignty of the other. 6. *Enna*, a midland Town, whence *Pluto* is said to have ravished *Proserpine*: In after-times the dwelling of that *Syrus Ennus*, who stirred up the *Roman* slaves against their Lords and having broke open the common Prisons, and received all such as came unto him packed up an army of forty thousand. This War the *Roman* Writers call *Bellum Servile*, ended at last but with no small difficulty, by the valour and good fortune of *P. Rutilius*.

2. *MAZARACA* containeth all the West parts of the Island. The chief Cities thereof, 1. *Aggrigentum*, now called *Gergenti*, famous for *Phalaris* the Tyrant, and his torturing *Perillus* in a Brazen Bull, which he had made for the destruction and torture of others. Of which aptly *Ovid*,

Nec enim lex injuria nulla est,
Quam uicis Artifices arte perire sua.

Most just it is, a man should be tormented
With that, which first his cruel Wit invented.

It was said anciently of the people of this City, that they built it as if they should never die, and eat as if they were sure to live no longer. 2. *Palermo*, anciently called *Panormus*, and then a Colony of the *Phoenicians*; now the

chief City of *Sicily*, and the Seat of the Spanish Vice-roy. Situate on the West Cape of the Island looking towards *Sardinia*, beautified with large Streets, delicate Buildings, strong Walls, and magnificent Temples. It hath no natural Port appertaining to it (*Drepanum* serving anciently as the Port thereof) but of late there is an Haven forced out by a mighty *Pierre*, a work of vast expence, and worthy of the greatness of *Rome*. It is also an Archbishops See, and an University. 3. *Monreal*, commonly called *Marreal*, famous for the Church, the Archbishops See. It is called in *Latine*, *Mons Regalis*. 4. *Drepanum*, now called *Trepani*, situate on a Promontory thrusting into the Sea, not far from that of *Lilybæum*, a Town well fortified in regard of the ill Neighbourhood of the *Moors*, who do often pillage the Coast; and having the command of a very fair Port. The Inhabitants of this place are said to be the best Seamen of *Sicily*. 5. *Mazara*, which gives name unto this Vale, situate South of *Lilybæum*, and not far from *Scyllium*. 6. *Eryx*, situate on a Mountain over-looking the Sea, said by the Ancients to have took this name from *Eryx* the Son of *Venus*, slain here by *Hercules*: memorable in those elder times for being the Seat of King *Aeetes*, who so kindly entertained *Aeneas*, and his wandering *Trojan*; and a magnificent Temple, in which *Venus* was worshipped, and from thence was called *Erycina*, as, *Stetit major Erycina ridens*, in the Poet *Horace*. This was the last Town which the *Carthaginians* held in *Sicily*. On the surrendry whereof by *Amilcar* the Father of *Annibal*; at the end of the first *Punic* War, it was conditioned by the *Romans*, amongst other things, that the *Carthaginians* should relinquish all the Claim or Title which they had to any part of this Island; which therefore fell unto the *Romans* (the State of *Syracuse* excepted only) who, whatsoever colour they were pleased to put upon that action, were principally tempted to it by ambition and covetousness. And therefore in my mind *Florus* takes it rightly, who saith, that it was undertaken *specie quidem juvenadi Socios, res autem sollicitante Præda*; i. e. under pretence of aiding the *Mamertines*, who had put themselves into their protection, but in plain terms to get possession of the Island which lay fit for *Italy*. Now, and long since a ruin only, the place on which it stood being called *Mons St. Julian*. 7. *Segesta*, on the Sea-side, not far from *Eryx*, near unto which the *Trojan* Ladies weary of their many long and dangerous voyages, and fearing to go again to Sea, burnt the Fleet of *Aeneas* on which occasion it was built. Peopled at first by the more old and feeble *Trojans*, (*Longæque senes, & fessas æquore matres*, as the Poet hath it) who chose rather to fix their dwelling here, than to follow the fortunes of *Aeneas*, in his quest of *Italy*. Called then *Aeolian* in honour of King *Aeetes*, spoken of before, part of whose Kingdom it was made; afterwards *Egeia* from *Aegistis* one of *Trojan* Race, born here, by whom it was repaired and beautified; and at last *Segesta*.

3. *MONA* lieth on the North-East of the Island, opposite unto *Vallis de Notis*. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Nicozia*, in the mid-land. 2. *Milase*, on the Northern Promontory. 3. *Messana*, a City of great strength and beauty just opposite to *Rhevo* in *Italy*. It was the first Town which the *Romans* had in this Island, being put into their hands by the *Mamertines*, a Troop of Soldiers brought thither out of *Campania* for the defence of the City; who finding themselves too strong for the *Citizens*, made themselves Masters of the place; but being with all too weak to hold it, chose rather to surrender it to the *Romans*, than to its true and proper Owners. Hence the beginning of the first War betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. A City it is at this time, of the most beautiful

beautiful building of any in *Sicily*; and peopled by the wealthiest sort both of Merchants and Gentlemen, who live here in great pleasure (if not voluptuousness) as having plenty of all necessary provisions, Fruits of all kinds, delicious Wines, and Snow to moderate and equalize the heats thereof, at cheaper rates than any elsewhere in the Country. On the West side there stands where in the Citadel, highly mounted, and well Garrisoned, which commands the Town; and not far off a very high Lantern where Lights are kept burning all night long, for the direction of such Mariners as are to pass those dangerous Straits; which from this Phare or Watch-Tower, is called commonly the Phare of *Messana*. The Haven of this Town is the fairest of *Sicily*, whole entrances are so strongly fortified and bulwarked, that the people are so strongly incensed in the defence of the *Turky* stand alone let their Gates (in derision of the *Turky*) stand always open. It is also an Arch-Bishops See. 4. *Catania*, so often vexed by *Diomyss* the Tyrant of *Syracuse*; more ancient than beautiful: feared on the North side of a great (but hollow) Bay, not easily approached by Ships, and therefore neither held by any Garrison, nor much traded by Merchants; the riches of the place consisting principally in the fruitfulness of the soil, the habitation of many of the Country; and by being a small University. It was once a Colony of the *Naxians*. And so was also *Taurromenium*, the fifth Town of note in this part of the Island, called sometimes from its Founders *Naxos*, but now *Thermino*; a ruin only of what was in the former days: a place by nature of great strength, but over-topped by *Syracuse* of a more formidable nature. It was in this part of the Country that the *Cyclopes* dwelt, there being three little Rocky Islands (now not inhabited) not far from this Town, which for a long time were called *Cyclopes* *Scopuli*.

4. On the West part of *Sicily* lie the *ÆOLIAN* or *Vulcanian* Islands, heretofore only seven, and all almost of equal bigness: now eleven in number. The first name derived from *Æolus*, once Lord of them, who being well skilled in divining from what coasts the Winds would blow, (which he conjectured by the smoke ascending from them) occasioned the Poets to make him the God of the Winds. The other is derived from *Vulcan* the God of fire; by reason of the continual flames of fire from thence evaporating in those elder days. But now the matter of those flames being waited in long tract of time, there is only one of them which burneth, now called *STOMBOLO*; by some Writers *Strongyle*, from the roundness of it. An Island of about ten miles compass, but such as seems to be no other than a large round Mountain. Out of the top whereof issue continually a flame like a burning Beacon, easily discernable far off, but at nights especially: a place so full of horror to the neighbouring Islanders, that they and many others of the *Romish Catholics* conceive it to be Hell it self. And yet in those parts where the rage of the fire offends not, it is of a very fruitful soil, and apt for tillage.

2. But the fairest and best peopled of those Islands, is that of *LIPARA*, some ten miles in circuit, (from whence the rest are called the *Liparan* Isles) so named from *Lipara* the chief Town, said to be built in the time of *Jehoshaphat* King of *Judah*: the See of a Bishop, under the Arch-Bishop of *Messana*. The Island generally fruitful, well furnished with *Allum*, *Sulphur*, and *Bitumen*, and with some hot medicinal Baths, which are much frequented, and from whence called *Thermusa*, by the ancient Writers. It was formerly of so great wealth, that falling into the displeasure of *Agathocles* (then the Tyrant of *Syracuse*) they were able to buy their peace of him, at the sum of one hundred Talents of Gold; which sum they had no sooner paid, but the Tyrant for a fare-

well, robbed their very Temples. Unprosperous in his Actions always after that adventure. Nor sped it better with the *Turky*, who in the year 1544, laid the Country desolate; in which condition it remained, till *Charles* the fifth replenished it again with *Spaniards*, and fortified it very strongly against all invasions.

3. Not far off lieth another of these Islands, now called *FAROGRANA*, or *Fanciana*, but anciently *Egeia*, conceived to be the same which *Livy* and *Plorus* call *Egæto*; in which there is a fair and capacious Bay, able to receive the greatest Navies; and near to which *Leontium* the Consul gave the *Carthaginians* their last blow at Sea, which drew along with it the surrender of *Eryx*, and the loss of *Sicily*. *Dionysius*, *Eriose*, *Eunymus*, and *Phoenice*, four other of these Islands, but of lesser note, I pass over willingly; and make halt to.

4. *HIERO*, the seventh and last of these Islands of any consideration, and the eighth in tale, called also *Vulcania*, in which *Vulcan* was worshipped as if he had first appeared above the water at such time as *Scipio Africanus* died. A barren, stony, and uninhabited place, by reason of the fires which formerly have flamed so hideously. (Especially in the year 1444,) that it made not only the rest of these Islands, but all *Sicily* tremble. Near unto this Isle was fought the first Naval fight betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. Before which time the *Romans* had never used the Seas, as being totally employed in the conquest of *Italy*, inasmuch that when they had built their Gallies, they were fain to exercise their men in rowing, by placing them on two Seats near the water, with Oars in their hands. Which notwithstanding, having devised an Engine like a grappling hook, they so fastened the adverse Fleet unto them, that the whole light seemed a Land-battle fought upon the Sea. The victory fell unto the *Romans*, *C. Duilius* the Consul then commanding in chief, and honoured with the first Naval Triumphant that was ever solemnized at *Rome*.

After this Island was once known to the *Greeks*, they sent from all their chief Cities several Colonies, who planted in the Sea-coasts of the Country as before noted. But so as they never united themselves in a body together, but had their several estates and particular ends; whereby they came to be divided into many factions, and at last made themselves a prey to as many Tyrants. *Phalaris* Lording it at *Aggrigentum*, *Panæius* at *Leontium*, *Gelon* at *Syracuse*, *Cleander* at *Gela*, and when one Faction grew too weak to resist the other, they called in several Foreign Nations to abet their quarrel. For on this ground the *Carthaginians* were first called into *Sicily* by the *Messanians*, against the *Aggrigentines*. And on the same was managed here a great part of the *Peloponnesian* Wars; the *Athenians* siding with the *Leontines*, and the *Spartans* with the *Syracusan*; in which the whole power of *Athen* was broken by Sea and Land; and their two Generals *Nicias* and *Demosthenes*, murdered in prison. But because *Syracuse* was a City of the greatest Authority, and of greatest influence over the rest of *Sicily*, we shall more punctually insist on the State-affairs thereof. As it was in Government of which at first was popular; as it was in most of the *Greek* Colonies, according to the platform which they brought from home; and was but newly altered to the *Aristocratical*, when *Gelon* made himself King of it, about 26 years after the expulsion of the *Tarquinians* at *Rome*; whom with as many as succeeded in the Royal dignity; take along as followeth.

The Tyrants, or Kings of *Syracuse*.

A. M.

3465

1. *Gelon* the Prince or Lord of *Gela* taking advantage of the quarrels in *Syracuse*, betwixt the Magistrates

Tigellius a Sardinian born, faith of him, that he was more peltent than the Country which bred him.

The Soil is very fertile in respect of *Corn*, but barren if compared with *Sicily*, which yet may rather be imputed to the want of good manuring in the Husbandman, than any natural defect in the Soil it self. Well stored with all sorts of Cattel, as appears plainly by that plenty of Cheese and Hides which are sent hence yearly into *Italy* and other places. The Horses hereof, hot, head-strong, and hard to be broken, but will last long. The Bullocks naturally amble, so that the Country-man rideth them as familiarly as they do in *Spain* on Mules and Asses. Here is also the best called *Muftrons*, or *Muftrions*, found in *Cornica* also, but in no other part of *Europe*; somewhat resembling a Stag, but of so strong an hide, that it is used by the *Italians* instead of Armour: Of the skin of which carried to *Cordova* in *Spain*, and there dressed, is made the right *Cordovan* Leather. Finally there is an Herb, of which if one eat, it is said he will die with laughter: whence came the Proverb, *Risus Sardonius*. The truth of which report I shall not dispute, though it be by others more probably conjectured, that the Herb being of a poysonous nature, causeth men to die with such a Convulsion or attraction of Sinews, that they seem to grin or laugh at the time of their death.

The people are small of stature, of complexion inclining unto swarthy, and that either by reason of the heat of the Sun, or more probably from their African extraction: their behaviour much participating of that people also. So slothful in the times of the *Romans*, that they were grown into a Proverb, and a Law made to compel them to work; but now esteemed a very painful and laborious Nation. Much given to hunting, and so prone to Rebellion that the *Spaniards* permiteth no Cutler to live among them; yet peaceable among themselves, and in some measure courteous unto Strangers also. Their Language a corrupt *Catalanian*; their diet on meats common and gross; their apparel in the Towns (especially that of the women) gorgeous, in the Villages fordid.

In matters of Religion they are little curious. That which they make most shew of, is according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*; which both their Neighbourhood to the Pope, and their subjection to the *Spaniards*, have imposed upon them. But in their practice of it they are loose enough, going to Mass on Sundays and Saints days; which done they fall a dancing in the midst of the Church, singing in the mean time songs too immodest for an Ale-house. Nay, it is thought that their Clergy it self is the most rude, ignorant, and illiterate of any people in Christendom; saying their Mass rather by rote, than reason, and utterly unable to give any account of their Religion.

It is divided commonly into two parts, viz. *Cape Linguaduri*, toward *Cornica*; and *Cape Cagliari*, toward *Africa*: the first the least, and withal mountainous and barren; the last the larger level, and by much more fruitful. Chief Cities of the whole, 1. *Calari*, first built by the *Carthaginians*, and situate in that point of the Island which lieth nearest to *Africa*; which from hence took the name of *Cape Cagliari*, by which it is at this day called. A City of such fame, when it was first taken by *Gracchus*, for the use of the *Romans*, that it is called by *Florus*, *Urbs urbinis*; and was destroyed by the said *Gracchus*, the better to disable the Natives from rebelling against the Conquerors. Being new built again in more fortified times, it was a second time destroyed by the *Sarazens*; and finally re-built and beautified by the *Pisans*, at such time as they were Masters of this part of the Island. Very well fortified by Nature, as seated on

the top of an Hill; and hath under it a spacious and goodly Haven, much frequented by Merchants. The Town it self adorned with a beautiful Temple, being the See of an Arch-Bishop, many fair Towers, and the constant residence of the Vice-Roy: from whose authority it is exempt by especial privilege, as to the legal Government of it; and ordered by a Common-Council of its own Citizens. 2. *Bassa*, on the West side of the Island, another Arch-Episcopal See. 3. *S. Reparata*, on the North, looking towards *Cornica*. 4. *Aquileira*, on the Western shores. 5. *Saffary*, a Town of consequence, where they have an *Aqueduct* twelve miles long reaching from thence unto *S. Gavini*. 6. *Algher*, a good Town situate in a wholesome air, and a fertile Soil, and having a fair Haven of six miles in length, in which the Ships of *Genoa* and *Catalonia* do most commonly ride: 7. *Oreffague*, a large Town, but very ill peopled, by reason of a bad air which proceeds from the Fens; the Country about which gives title to the Marquis of *Oreffague*. 8. *Turris*, once a *Roman* Colony, now little better than a ruin; yet giving title to the third Arch-Bishop of this Island, who is called in Latine, *Turritanus*. Here are also in divers parts of this Island the remainders of sundry Towers and Forts which the people call *Noracy* from *Nora*, one of the Sons of *Geryon*, who (as they think) came into this Country, and built the first dwelling or mansion in it. And this Tradition of the Vulgar hath so much in it of Historical and undoubted truth, that certain Colonies from *Spain* came and planted here, under the conduct of one *Nora* somewhat before the expedition of the *Atticks* under *Isalus*, as *Plutarchus* testifieth.

This Island taken by the *Romans* from the *Carthaginians*, as before is said, was first under the immediate Jurisdiction of the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*; but after by *Julianus* was made a Province of his new *Dioecesis* of *Africa*; and as a part thereof or rather an Appendix to it, was challenged, invaded, and finally conquered by the *Sarazens*, Anno 807. From them recovered by the joint-forces of the *Pisans* and *Genoese*, who divided it betwixt them: the Southern part, called *Cape Cagliari*, being allotted to the *Pisans*, and the Northern towards *Cornica*, to that of *Genoa*. But the *Genoese* not content with the partition, (their portion of the Island being less in quantity, and worse in quality) began to quarrel with the *Pisans*, and at the last to break into open Wars. To that the Fray, Pope Boniface VIII. bestowed it on James King of *Aragon*, who driving thence the *Genoese*, Anno 1324. became Master of it. The *Aragonian* before that did pretend some Title to it, in right of the Kingdom of *Sicily*, then in his possessions to come preceding Kings whereof it had once been subject: and having backed that Claim by the Pope's Donation, who challenged it as a part of St. Peter's Patrimony; incorporated it for ever to the Crown of *Aragon*. Once indeed it was offered unto *Anthony* of *Bourbon*, in exchange for his Title to *Navarre*, but without any purpose of performance, that being only a device to fetch him off from the party of the *Reformed* in *France*, to which he formerly adhered: and was as suddenly laid by, as if it had done the feat intended in the Proposition.

The Government hereof is by a Vice-roy, who resides at *Calari*; and must of necessity be a *Spaniard*, under whom are two Deputy Governors, *Spaniards* also; the one for *Cape Cagliari*, the other for *Cape Linguaduri*. Inferior Officers of Command may be of the Natives. What profits arise hence to the Crown of *Spain*, I have no where found. The Arms hereof are said to be *Or*, a Cross *Gules*, betwixt four *Sarazens* heads *Sable*, curled *Argent*.

Argent. Which Arms were given upon the taking of it from the power of the *Moors*: but first taken (as some say) for the Arms of *Aragon*, on occasion of the heads of four chief Princes of the *Moors* which were found severed from their bodies in the Battle of *Alcoraz*, Anno 1094. won by Don Pedro, King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*.

There are divers small Islands about *Sardinia*, as 1. *Isla Ruffa*, heretofore called *Phintanis*. 2. the Ille of *Hercules*, now called *Alfinaria*. 3. *St. Peters*, anciently *Hieracum*, or *Acipitrum*, with others of as little note: all which as the Appendants of *Sardinia*, do belong to the *Spaniard*.

There are in this Island,
Archbishops 3. Bishops 15.

The Land of the CHURCH.

WEST of the Realm of *Naples*, lieth the LAND OF THE CHURCH, extended North and South from the *Adriatick* to the *Tuscan* Seas. Bounded on the North-east with the River *Turan*, on the South-east with the *Asopenus*, by which two parted from that Kingdom: as on the Northwest by the River *Po*, and *Fiore*, by which separated from the River *Pisus*, by which it is divided from the Modern *Tuscany*, or the State of the *Florentine*.

By this Account the Pope's Dominion taketh up the whole middle of *Italy*; having in breadth from the one Sea unto the other above two hundred miles, and in the length along the *Adriatick* to the furthest parts of *Romandiola*, above three hundred. By which advantages it lieth most fitly for the command of all the rest, it being very easy for the Popes to convey their Forces by Sea or Land, unto what part thereof they please. And were it not that the Popes commonly are of several Factions; and that the Successor pursueth not the designs of his Predecessors, but hath his own ends to himself, which for the most part are driven on without consideration of increasing the publick Patrimony; it is not possible, but that the Pope long before this time, had been Lord of all. And this may be conceived the rather, considering the extraordinary fertility of the Soil, able to spare provisions for the greatest Armies; the multitudes of people which it may afford, in regard they are so seldom consumed by Wars; and that the men of this Dominion (who chiefly those of *Rome*, and the parts adjoining are conceived to be the best Soldiers of *Italy*, as retaining some sparks of their Ancestors valour, together with their gravity, magnificence, and a certain greatness of courage, which seems to be particular to this Nation. And they preserve also to this day so much of the ancient Roman, as to prefer any kind of life, before Trades or Merchandize. For though their Lands be very well tilled, and their Vines well dressed, and all things done exactly in the way of Husbandry: yet for their Manufactures they are brought from other places, as *Venice*, *Naples*, *Florence*, *Genoa*. And though they have the Sea on both sides, and the advantage of many fair and commodious Rivers and Havens, which with little cost might be made very useful; yet do they no way improve their fortunes, or the publick Patrimony in the way of Traffick; which is the main defect of the *Papal* Policy, and fillth a rich Country full of poor and indigent persons. But to proceed to the description of the Pope's Estate: it containeth the Provinces of 1. *Romandiola*, 2. the Territory

of *Ferrara*. 3. The Estate of *Urbino*. 4. *Marca Anconitana*. 5. *Ducato Spoleitano* with *Sabinia*. 6. *St. Peter's* Patrimony, and 7. *Compagna* di *Roma*.

1. *ROMANDIOLA* extendeth from the River *Isurius* (now called *Foglia*) by which parted from the Dukedom of *Urbino* on the East, to the Dukedom of *Parma*, on the West, from which parted by the River *Parana*, called of old *Sentenna*; and from the *Apennine* on the South to *Fadus*, and the *Adriatick*, on the North. It was called anciently *Flaminia*, from *Flaminius* the Roman Consul, who having won it from the *Gauls* planted Colonies in it, and had the honour (though he pursued this War against the will of the Senate) to have it called by his own name: and for the better passage betwixt *Rome* and this, made a very large Causeway, which for a long time was called *Via Flaminia*. Chief Rivers hereof, besides those spoken of already, which are only borderers; 1. *Ariminum*, now called *Marechia*; and 2. *Rubicon*, now called *Pissatello*, betwixt *Ariminum* and *Ravenna*, of which more anon.

The chief Cities of it are, 1. *Bononia* (or *Boulogne*) seated in a spacious Plain near the *Apennine* Hills, a very populous City, of a round form, and a great circuit: the building Antique, seeming for the most part to be the work of the *Lombards*, the foundation of the houses of Free-stone, the rest of Bricks; built with arched Cloysters towards the street, under which one may walk dry in the greatest rain. A City honoured with many Palaces of the neighbouring Nobles, the chief University of *Italy*, and the retiring place of the Popes. The Civil Law is much studied here, inasmuch that from hence proceeded the famous Civilians *Johannes Andreæ*, *Alex. Bartolus*, and *Sociinus*. I believe they have built Castles in the air, which ascribe the founding of this University to *Theodisius* II. The Charter of whose foundation dated, Anno 423. is an idle and foolish thing. For there it is said that at the institution there were present *Gualter* Earl of *Posseis*, *Embsador* for the King of *England*; and *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, for the King of *France*: when at that time, neither those Earldoms, or those Kingdoms were in *verum natura*. It is situate on the River *Apofa*, and was by former Writers called *Felsina*. Near unto this Town in a Demy-Island called *Forelli*, was that meeting between *Augustus*, *Anthony*, and *Lepidus*; wherein they agreed on the *Triumvirate*, dividing the Empire and City of *Rome* among themselves: which combination was confirmed by the ensuing Proscription; wherein, that they might be revenged on *Cicero*, *Lepidus* proscribed his Brother; *Antony*, his Uncle. 2. *Rimini*, anciently called *Ariminum*, seated on the mouth of the River *Ariminum*, of no great note, but for giving name unto this City, and now called *Marechia*. The City large, and seated in a plentiful and pleasant Soil, abundantly productive of wines, Figs and Olives; wealthy withal, the trade which formerly enriched *Ravenna*, being for the most part managed here. Divided by the River into the City and the Suburbs, but joynt together by a fair and stately Bridge built over it by *Augustus Cæsar*, who also erected in the City a *Triumphal Arch*. It is situate somewhat East of the River *Rubicon*, which in those times divided *Italy* from *Gaul*: upon the Bank whereof, looking towards this Town, there was an old Marble Pillar, having on it a Latine Inscription to this purpose, viz. *Leave here thy Colours, and lay down thine Arms, and pass not with thy Forces beyond Rubicon: whosoever goeth against this command, let him be held an enemy to the people of Rome.* Which Rule when *Cæsar* had transgressed, and surprized this City, he so frightened *Pompey* and his Faction, that they abandoned *Italy* and *Rome* it self, and withdrew themselves

themselves into *Epirus*. It is said that *Cæsar* dreamed the night before, that he carnally knew his own Mother: whereby the Soothsayers gathered that he should be Lord of *Rome*, which was the common Mother of them all. Which dream, and several prodigies hapning at the same time with it, did to encourage him in his enterprise, that he is said, at the passing over *Rubicon*, to have said these words, *Eamus quid nos Deorum glæna, &c.* Let us go whither the fims of our Enemies, and the Prodiges of the Gods do call us. In memory of which venturous, but fortunate action, he caused a monument to be erected in this City, with his name and titles. It was anciently a *Roman Colony*, and in the battles hapning betwixt the Pope and the Emperour, was seized on by the *Malatstii*, as *Bononia* was by the *Bentivoli*, two potent Families of these parts; who held them in defiance of the Popes of *Rome*, till they were reduced again unto the Church, by Pope *Julio* the Second. 3. *Cervia*, on the *Adriatick Sea*, where there is made so much Salt, that they furnish therewith all their neighbours of *Marca Anconitana*, and a great part of *Lombardy*: the Pope receiving for his Customs of this one Commodity, no less than 60000 Crowns per annum. 4. *Furlii*, (called of old *Forum Livii*) one of the Towns belonging properly to the Exarchate of *Ravenna*, seated in a very pleasant air, and a fruitful soyl, betwixt two fresh streams; of which the one is called *Ronche*, and the other *Montonus*. 5. *Faventia*, now called *Faenza*, on the banks of *Anenus*, a calm gentle River; an ancient City, but well peopled: much benefited by the Flax which growth in the adjoining fields, and the Earthen vessels which they vend to most parts of *Italy*. It was first given unto the Popes by *Desiderius* the last King of the *Lombards*, whom they but forcibly required for so great a courtesie. 6. *Sarfina*, an old City, seated at the foot of the *Apennine*, the birth place of *Plautus* the Comedian; 7. *Imola*, anciently called *Forum Corneliæ*, and 8. *Cesena*, Cities both of them of no small Antiquity; but this last the fairer built, the better peopled, and the more strongly fortified: there being a strong Castle on the top of an Hill, the work of *Frederick II.* Emperour and King of *Germany*. This Town, with that of *Sarfina*, spoken of before, seem to be seated on the banks of the River *Rubicon*, now called *Pissatello*. 9. *Ravenna*, situate in the embracements of two Rivers, called *Montanus* and *Ronchus*: by the confluence whereof at their fall or influx into the *Adriatick*, it was once beautified with one of the fairest Havens in the World, and for that cause made the Road of one of the two Navies, which *Augustus* always kept manned to command in *Campania*. This of *Rome*: the other riding at *Misenus* in *Campania*. This of *Ravenna*, being in the upper *Sea*, *awed* and defended *Dalmatia*, *Greece*, *Crete*, *Cyprus*, *Asia*, &c. the other at *Misenus*, in the lower *Sea*, protected and kept under *France*, *Spain*, *Africk*, *Egypt*, *Syria*, &c. The Walls of this City are said to have been built or repaired by *Theodoricus Cæsar*; the whole City to have been much beautified by *Theodoricus* King of the *Goths*, who built here a most stately and magnificent Palace; the ruins whereof are still easily discernable. The private buildings are but mean, the publick ones are of a grave, but stately structure. Of which the principal heretofore was the Church of St. *Mary the Round*, whose roof was of one entire stone, and honoured with the rich Sepulcher of the said King *Theodoric*: which the Soldiers (in the sack of this City by the *French*, Anno 1512) pulled down together with the Church it self, only to get the Jewels and Medals of it. The principal at the present is the Church of St. *Vitalis* the Pavement hereof is all of Marble; and the Walls all covered with precious stones

of many sorts, but unpolished as they were taken out of Mines; which sheweth as well the Magnificence as Ahtiquity of it. The Patriarchs of this City, in regard it was so long the Regal and Imperial Seat, have heretofore contended for precedency with the Popes themselves: not brought to yield the place to those proud pretenders, till *Damus II.* In the short time of his Papacy about the year 975. did in fine prevail. And this they did upon good reasons, this City having been anciently the Metropolis of the Province called *Flaminia*, afterwards honoured with the Seat of the Emperour *Honorius*, and his Successors; next of the *Goths* Kings, then of the *Exarchs*, and last, of its Patriarchs. And it was chosen for this purpose, because of the plentiful Territory, since covered with water; and the conveniency of the Haven, at this day choked: though lately by expence of a great deal of treasure, the Fens about the City have been very much drained; and the Bogs in some places turned to fruitful fields, to the great benefit heretofore both for health and pleasure.

As for the fortunes of this Country, it was anciently together with the Territories of *Ferrara*, and some part of *Trevigiana*, the habitation of the *Baii*, who with the *Senones*, the *Insubres*, and the *Comani*, made up the whole body of the *Cisalpine Galls*, of whom more hereafter. Finding the *Romans* grown too near them, by whom the *Senones* their next neighbours had been rooted out, they thought it was high time to besite themselves, especially after the defeat given them by the Consul *Minutius*, who carried the War home unto them; which never any of the *Romans* had done before. For after this, under *Caracallus* their King, they let upon *Marcellus* the Consul, killing 3000 of his men, but vanquished and subdued by him in a following Battel. Vanquished again not far from *Mutina* by *Cornelius Merula*, with the loss of 14000 of their men, they called both the *Insubrian* and *Transalpine Galls* to come in to aid them. But being then vanquished also at the Battel of *Telamon* of which more in *Lombardy A. V. C.* 528. they were followed home, and utterly subdued by the Consul *Flaminius*, as before was said: after which times this Country following the same fortunes with the rest of *Italy*, became subject to the *Goths*, as a part of their *Italian* Conquests: whose Kingdom here was no sooner destroyed by *Narses*, but the *Lombards* entered. To give a stop to whose successes, and preserve so much unto the Empire as was not already conquered by them; it was thought good by *Justin II.* to send thither an Imperial Officer of principal command and note, whom he honoured with the title of *Exarch*. His residence settled at *Ravenna*, as standing most commodiously to hinder the incursions of the barbarous Nations; and withal to receive such aids from the Eastern parts as his occasions did require. These *Exarchs* having divided *Italy* into many Governments, appointed over each some Supreme Commander, dignified with the name of Dukes. And even the City of *Rome* it self (so far then was it from being subject to the Pope in *Temporal* matters) had a chief Officer of this kind (accountable to the *Exarch*, and subordinate to him) whose Government was called the *Roman Dukedom*: That which they kept unto themselves as their own peculiar, contained the Cities of *Ravenna*, *Rugimin*, *Mutina*, *Bononia*, *Claffi*, *Forli*, *Forlimpopoli*, *Sarfina*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*: which ten Cities with the Territories belonging to them, made up that *District* which properly was called the *Exarchate of Ravenna*; much mentioned in the Histories of the middle times, by reason of the continual Wars which they had with the *Lombards*, but newly entered when this *Misgritacy* had its first beginning. The names of these *Exarchs* are as followeth.

The

The Exarchs of Ravenna.

- A. C.
 570 1 Longinus 21.
 591 2 Smaragdus 4.
 593 3 Romanus Patricius.
 596 4 Gallinicus 13.
 609 5 Smaragdus 3.
 612 6 Joh. Lomigius 4.
 616 7 Euthebius 5.
 621 8 Isaacus Patricius 24.
 645 9 Theodorus Calliopis, 10.
 655 10 Olympius 2.
 657 11 Theodorus Calliopis, II. 30.
 687 12 Joh. Plotina 15.
 702 13 Theophylactus 25.
 727 14 Paulus.
 728 15 Eutichius 12. In the days of this *Exarch*,

Ravenna was taken from the Empire, by *Luiprandus* King of the *Lombards*, An. 740. But regained by *Charles the Great*, and by him given to the Bishops of *Rome*, together with *Anconitana* and *Spoleto*, as a requital for the Kingdom of *France*, confirmed unto King *Pepin* his Father, by the content and authority of the Popes. The donation of this *Exarchate* to the Popes, partly to blot out the memory of the *Exarchs*, and partly to make the people obedient to those Prelates, changed the name of the Country from *Flaminia* (by which name it was formerly known) to *Romandolia*, and now to *Romagna*. Notwithstanding which Donation, or Original Grant, the Popes enjoyed not long the possession of it: The Emperors of *Germany*, and their Vice-gerents in *Italy*, wresting it by strong hand out of the possession of the Church; and giving it to such as deserved well of them, and were most likely, or most able to uphold their Faction. And so it stood, till the late Popes conspiring with the *French* King, *Lewis* the 12, and *Francis* the first, brought them into *Italy*, Anno 1509. by their aids, and by the censure of the Church, so prevailed in fine, that they extorted *Ravenna*, and some other places out of the hands of the *Venetians*, ejected many pious Princes out of other Cities, which they pretended to belong to St. Peter's Patrimony; and thereby got possession of all those Territories, which lie betwixt the State of *Venice*, and the *Marches of Ancona*.

The Territory of *FERRARA* lieth in the very skirts of *Romandolia* towards the *Venetian*, extending one hundred and sixty miles in length, and about fifty in breadth: the soil thereof exceeding rich, but subject to the overflowsings of the River *Po*; which makes the air in many places to be somewhat unwholsome. And though as well the former Dukes as the Popes, who are now Lords hereof, have been at great charge in raising high Banks and Ramparts to keep in the Waters; yet could not this resist the violence of the River, falling from so high a Springs, and seconded with so great Land-floods (as sometimes it is) but that it makes many breaches in them, do what they can. The places of most note herein, are 1. *Grassano* in the borders of *Tuscan*, near the *Apennine*. 2. *Carpi*, a place of great importance, seated in the midst of this Dukedom; belonging heretofore to the house of the *Pici*. But partly by exchange made with *Marcus Picus*, partly for one hundred thousand Crowns in ready money, given unto *Lionel Pico*, once the Lord hereof; it was by *Charles* the 5. incorporated into this Estate. 3. *Comacchia*, seated in the Marshes of the *Adriatick*, from which the Princes of this Family of *Este*, were at first called only Lords of *Comacchia*; a place which yielded great profit to the former Dukes, by the fishing of Eels. 4. *Saxole*, given

by Duke *Alphonso* in exchange for *Carpi*. Here is also the Territory and Lordship of the *Polefin*, the cause of so many quarrels and contentions between the ancient Dukes of *Ferrara* and the States of *Venice*. But the chief honour of this Dukedom is in the Capital City that which denominates the whole. *Ferrara* a City of five miles in compass, so called from the Iron Mines which are about it; commodiously seated on the River *Po*, which by reason of its breadth, depth and violent swiftnes of the current, is a sufficient rampart to it on that side; the other sides being fortified with a strong wall, and a spacious mote. In the middle of the City is a fair and spacious Market-place, into which do open on all sides about twenty Streets, all of them half a mile in length; and all so straight and evenly built, that the furthest end of each of them may be easily seen. Near to this Market-place is a little Island, in which the former Dukes had a stately Palace, called *Belduere*, from the fair Prospect which it had or gave to the whole City; and on the North-side of the City a large Park for pleasure. The other houses are for the most part built of fair Free-stone, not joining unto one another as in other Cities, but at pretty distance with neat Gardens between. *Ariosto*, the Author of that ingenious Poem called *Orlando Furioso*, and *Hierome Savonarola* the Propheticall Father, were both of them natives of this place: of which the first lieth here entombed, the last for preaching against the Pope, was burnt at *Florence*.

In the declining of the Power and Empire of the *Lombards*, this City together with *Faenza* was given by *Desiderius* their last King, to the Church of *Rome*, the better to oblige the Popes by so great a benefit. But being taken from them by the Emperors of the house of *Schweben*, it was again recovered by the prowess of the Counts *Matthildis* An. 1107 who took it, with many other Towns in *Italy*, from the Emperour *Henry* the fourth, and at her death conferred the same upon the Church. The Popes once more possessed hereof, and not able to hold it, gave it in Fee for ever unto *Azo* of the house of *Este*, a man of great sway in the affairs of *Italy*, who valiantly had defended it against *Ezelinus*, Vicegerent of *Frederick* the second. This was the first of this Family who had *Ferrara* in propriety: His Ancestors being called before, the Marquesses of *Este*, and sometimes Marquesses of *Ferrara*, (but in title only) as Governors hereof in behalf of the Pope of *Rome*. *Obizzo* the Grandchild of this first *Azo*, obtained of *Rodolphus* the first, (who was willing to make what money he could of his Lands in *Italy*) the Cities of *Rugimin* and *Modena*; that Grant confirmed by *Guido* Legate of Pope *Benedict* the ninth, with the Popes consent. Anno 1304. Other improvements there were made by the following Princes, according to the chance of War, but none of them continued constant in their possession but these three Cities and the Territories adjoining to them. As for this Family *de Este* (*Familia Austina*, it is called in *Latin*) it took this name from *Este*, or *Astis*, a small Town in the Sieignery of *Venice*, conferred upon the Ancestors of this *Azo*, by *Charles* the Great. And for the Chiefs, or Princes of it, they have been of great authority and power in their several times, commanding sometimes the *Venetian* Armies, and sometimes the Popes: great favourers of Learned men, and advancers of Learning; inasmuch that the *Reinaldo's* and *Rogero's* of *Este*, make up a great part of the Poems of *Ariosto* and *Tasso*, two of the greatest Wits of *Italy*; and finally allied to many of the best Houses of *Christendome*. The Catalogue of whom, since they were made the Hereditary Lords and Princes of this noble City, I have here (subjoyned).

M

The

The Dukes and Marquesses of Ferrara.

- 1236 ¹ *Alfius*, or *Azo* de *Este*, the ninth of that name, but first Hereditary Marquis of Ferrara, by the Grant of the Pope.
- 1264 ² *Obizo*, the sixth of that name, Grandson to *Azo* by his Son *Reinaldo*, second Marquis of Ferrara.
- 1293 ³ *Azo* the tenth of *Este*, and II. of Ferrara, Son to *Obizo*.
- 1308 ⁴ *Francisco*, Brother to *Azo* the 2. after whose death, Anno 1312. Ferrara for a time was under the command of the Popes.
- 1312 ⁵ *Alabrandinus*, Brother of *Francisco*, who had the Title to, but not the possession of Ferrara.
- 1315 ⁶ *Reinaldo* the 3. of *Este*, and the first of Ferrara, recovered Ferrara from the Pope, and cast out his Garrisons. 1317.
- 1335 ⁷ *Obizo* II. Brother of *Reinaldo*.
- 1352 ⁸ *Alabrandino* II. Son of *Obizo*.
- 1361 ⁹ *Nicolas* the 2. of *Este*, and first of Ferrara, Brother of *Alabrandino*, whose children being young he disposed of the Estate.
- 1388 ¹⁰ *Albertus*, Brother of *Nicolas*, the Founder of the University of Ferrara, Anno 1392.
- 1382 ¹¹ *Nicolas* II. base son of *Albertus*.
- 1441 ¹² *Leonius*, the base son of *Nicolas*, in the minority of his Brother *Hercules*, begot in lawful Wedlock, invaded the Estate, and held it.
- 1450 ¹³ *Borcius*, another of the base sons of *Nicolas* 2. succeeded *Leon* in the Estate; who being made Duke of *Modena* by *Frederick* the 3. was by Pope *Paul* created Duke of Ferrara also, Anno 1470.
- 1471 ¹⁴ *Hercules*, the lawful son of *Nicolas* the 2. made Knight of the Garter, by King *Edward* 4.
- 1505 ¹⁵ *Alphonso*, the Son of *Hercules*.
- 1534 ¹⁶ *Hercules* II. Son of *Alphonso*.
- 1559 ¹⁷ *Alphonso* II. who dying without lawful issue, Anno 1595. Pope *Clement* 8. challenged this Estate in the right of the Church; and partly by force, partly by composition (whereof we shall say more when we come to *Modena*) united it for ever to the See of *Rome*.

The yearly Revenues of this Dukedom were heretofore two hundred and fifty thousand Crowns; now not so much worth unto the Pope, by reason of the Alienation of *Modena* and *Reggio*; of which more hereafter.

The Arms of these Dukes (which for the honour of this noble and illustrious Family, and for the strangeness of the Coat, I shall here put down) were Pale-wife of three pieces, 1. *Partie* per *Fesse*, in a chief *Or*, an Eagle displayed *Sable*, membered, langued, and crowned *Gules*; and in base *Azure*, three Flowers de *Lys* *Or*, within a border indented *Or* and *Gules*. 2. *Gules*, two Keys in *Saltire*, the one *Or*, the other *Argent*, supporting an Eagle of the third, membered and crowned of the second. Over all in chief a Papal Crown *Or*, garnished with sundry Gems *Azure* and *Purple*. The 3. as the first Counterplaced. Which Coat upon the falling of the House of Ferrara, doth now belong to that of *Modena* and *Reggio*, as descended of it.

3. From the Territory of Ferrara proceed we to the Estate of *Urbine*; both Dukedoms and distinct Estates till these later times: this last the younger of the two, and consequently (as in the ordinary course of Nature)

the survivor also; but swallowed at last into the Pope-dom as the other was. Bounded on the West with the River *Isaurus* (now called *Foggia*) by which parted from *Romandiola*, on the East from *Marca Anconitana*, on the North with the *Adriatick*, and on the South with the *Apennine* Hills, by which parted from *Tuscany*. So called from *Urbine* the chief City of it, and the Ducal Seat. It is in length about 60 miles, 35 in breadth: Some places and Estates belonging anciently to the Church, lying intermingled with the Lands and Seigneuries which belonged to the Dukes.

The soil is very fruitful of Corn, Wine, and Oyl, plentiful of Figs and other fruits of most pleasant taste; and in a word, affording all things necessary for the life of man. But the air is generally unwholesome, especially about *Pesaro* and *Fossombrone*, by reason of the low flats and overflows of the water. The principal Commodities which they vend abroad, are the Wines of *Pesaro*, fold in great abundance to the *Venetians*; and dried Figs, which they vend unto *Bologna*, and other places.

The most famous River is *Metaurus*, (now called *Me-tre*) and a famous one it is indeed, by reason of that great Battle fought on the banks thereof, betwixt *Adriano* the Brother of *Annibal*, and his *Carthaginians*; and the two Consuls *Livius* and *Cl. Nero*: in which, after a long and hot dispute, the victory fell unto the *Romans*; there being 56000 of the *Carthaginians* slain, (as *Livy* writeth) and 5400 taken prisoners. *Polybius* speaks of a less number both slain and taken; and like enough it is that *Livy*, to advance the honour of that Family, might enlarge a little. But whatsoever was the truth in this particular, certain it is, that this victory turned the tide of the Roman Fortune, which from this time began to flow amain upon them: the Citizens of *Rome* beginning at this time to trade and traffick, to follow their affairs, and make contracts, and bargains with one another, which they had long forborn to do; and that with as secure a confidence, as if *Annibal* were already beaten out of *Italy*. This famous River riseth in the *Apennine* Hills, and passing by *Fossombrone*, a Town of this Dukedom, falls into the *Adriatick*.

There are reckoned into this Dukedom seven Towns or Cities, (four of which are Episcopall Sees) and three hundred Castles. The principal of which are, 1. *Urbine*, one of the most ancient Cities of *Italy*, which both *Tacitus* and *Pliny* mention; a fair Town, well built, and the Duke's ordinary seat in Summer. It is seated at the foot of the *Apennine* Hills, in a very rich and pleasant soil, built in the falshion of a Miter, and therefore called *Urbinas*, quod urbes binas continere videbatur. *Francisco* *Ubaldo* the first Duke, built here a very sumptuous Palace, and therein founded a most excellent Library, replenished with a great number of rare Books, covered and garnished with Gold, Silk, and Silver; all scattered and dispersed in the time that *Cesar* *Borgia* seized on the Estate. *Polydore Virgil*, the Author of the History of *England*, which passeth under his name, was a Native here; an History of worth enough as the times then were, except only in such passages as concern the Pope (the Collector of whose *Peter-pence* he was then in *England*) whose credit and Authority he preferreth sometimes, before truth it self. 2. *Pisaurum*, now called *Pesaro*, the strongest Town of all the Dukedom, two miles in compass, and fortified according to the modern Art of War: the fortifications of it being first begun by *Francisco* *Maria*, and perfected by *Guido* *Ubaldo*, his Son and Successor; the ordinary seat of the Duke in Winter, well Garrisoned, and therefore trusted with the publick Armory. It is seated near the shore of the *Adriatick*, at the mouth or influx

influx of the River *Isaurus*, which parts it from *Romagna*: populous, of handfom buildings, and a very strong wall, the soil exceeding rich, but the air so bad, that partly in regard of that, and partly by their eating too much fruits, nothing is more frequent here than Funerals, especially in the month of *August*; few of the Inhabitants living to be fifty years old. 3. *Senigallia*, called anciently *Sena Gallica*, (*Gallica* being added to it to difference it from another of that name in *Tuscany*) a strong and well fenced City near the River *Metaurus*, over which there is a Bridge consisting of eighty Arches, made of that length, not so much in regard of the breadth of the Chancel, as the frequent overflows of that turbulent Water. 4. *Fossombrone*, called in old Authors *Fo-brum Sempronius*, for air and soil of the same nature with *Pisaurum*; bought by *D. Frederick* of *Galacazzo* *Malatesta* for thirteen hundred Florins of Gold. 5. *Cabo* or *Cagli* on the Sea. 6. *S. Leon*, a good Town and the chief of the Countries of *Montefeltre*, which is a limb of this Dukedom. 7. *Fano*, not far from the Sea, an Episcopall City, and anciently belonging to the Church of *Rome*: of old times called *Fanum fortune*, for a Temple there erected to *Goddess Fortune* (*Te facimus Fortuna deam*, as the Poet hath it.) 8. *Eugubium* (now called *Angunia*) a Town belonging to these Princes, but properly within the bounds of the *Spoletan* Dukedom; and there we shall hear further of it. Of the Castles the principal are *Mariola*, and the Rock of *S. Leon*, which are the last that held good for Duke *Guido* *Ubaldo* against *Cesar* *Borgia*, Duke of *Valentinus*, Son to Pope *Alexander* the sixth; and the first which did return again under his obedience. For which cause when he fled the second time from the said *Borgia*, he dismantled all his other Castles, as being more likely to admit than resist the Invader; and these two last being very well fortified, he left to keep possession of the Country for him.

Here is also within the limits of this Estate, the Dukedom of *CAMERINO*, an ancient and well peopled Town, of a strong natural situation amongst the Hills: an Estate holden of the Church by the noble Family of *Ferrea* till the time of Pope *Paul* the third; when *Julia* di *Verana* the heir thereof, conveyed it by marriage unto *Guido* *Ubaldo* Duke of *Urbine*. But the Pope pre-tending an Escheat for want of heirs males, made him self Master of it by force of Arms: and gave it to his Son *Piero* *Farnesi*, whom afterwards with the consent of the Colledge of Cardinals he made Duke of *Parma*; and settled *Camerino* on the Church, as it still continues.

As for the fortunes of this Country, it was anciently the habitation of the *Senones*; a Nation of the *Cisalpine* *Galls*, who only had the honour of sacking *Rome*, to which City it continued subject, till the declining of the Empire in the time of *Honorius*. They being rooted out at last (of which more in *Lombardy*) and the Country peopled with *Roman* or *Latine* Colonies, it followed the same fortunes with the rest of *Italy*, till the time of *Conradine*, the last Duke of the Imperial House of *Swabia*, when *Urbine* was first subdued by the Earls *Montefeltre*, whose Successors increasing in power, added the Town and Territory of *Eugubio* to it. And in the bullets betwixt *Lewis* of *Bavaria* the Emperor, and Pope *Clement* the sixth, Anno 1345. *Gelasio* de *Montefeltre* held it by no other Title, but as the Emperor's *Viceroy*. This Family enjoyed it till the year 1444. by the Title only of Earls of *Montefeltre*, and Lords of *Urbine* when *Frederick* *Ubaldo*, for his singular and surpassing valour, was by Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, created the first Duke heretofore to hold as Feudatories of the Church, and paying 22400 Crowns for an Annual quit-rent. A man of such repute

for all gallant qualities, that he was by King *Henry* the sixth, made Knight of the Garter; in recompence of which honour, the *English* to this day enjoy many privileges in these Dominions. *Guido* *Ubaldo* this Duke's Son lost his Estate to *Cesar* *Borgia*; after whose death he did recover it again by the power and favour of Pope *Julio* the second, to whom succeeded *Francisco* *Maria* di *Rovero*, his Sisters Son, in whose Family it continued till now of late, as will appear by this ensuing Catalogue of

The Dukes of Urbine.

- 1444 ¹ *Frederick* *Ubaldo*, of the ancient Family de *Montefeltre* the first Duke of *Urbine*, and one of the Knights of the honourable Order of the Garter.
- ² *Guido* *Ubaldo*, Son of *Frederick*, for a while out of this Dukedom by *Cesar* *Borgia*. He was Knight also of the Garter.
- ³ *Francisco* *Maria* di *Rovero*, Sisters Son and next heir to *Guido* *Ubaldo*, was in his own right Lord of *Senigallia*, and had *Pisaurum* from the Pope in reward of his many services done unto the Church; diffided to a while by Pope *Leo* the tenth.
- ⁴ *Lawrence* de *Medices*, Father of *Catherine* de *Medices* the French Queen, and of *Alexander* the 1. Duke of *Florence*; was for a while made Duke of *Urbine* by Pope *Leo* the 10th. (being of that Family) but lost it shortly after to Duke *Francisco*, who after the death of Pope *Leo*, recovered his Estate again; and died possided of the Dukedom.
- 1538 ⁵ *Guido* *Ubaldo* II. Son of Duke *Francisco*.
- ⁶ *Francisco* *Maria* II. Son of *Guido* the 24. whose line expired, it escheated not long since (for want of heirs males) to the Church of *Rome*.

The Revenues of this Dukedom were reckoned to have been 100000 Crowns per annum; but might have been raised to a greater fund, had not the Dukes preferred the love and ease of their Subjects, before the filling of their own Coffers. He was able to raise 1200 good Souldiers out of this Estate: and more the people would supply, if they had occasion. The Arms heretofore of *Azure* a Tower *Argent*, environed with Flower de *Lycies* *Or*.

4. *MARCA ANCONITANA* is bound on the West with the State of *Urbine*; on the East with the River of *Tronto*, or *Drunent*, by which it is parted from *Abruzzo*; on the South with the *Apennine* Hills, by which parted from the *Spoletan* Dukedom; on the North with the *Adriatick*. The reason of the name we shall have anon.

It was formerly the dwelling of the *Piemter*, who possessed all these parts on the Coasts of the *Adriatick*, from the River *Rubicon* on the East, to that of *Asidum* on the West. For aiding the *Tarentines* their Allies, in their War against *Rome*, they were invaded and subdued by the *Romans* A.V.C. 485. which was about five years before the first *Punic* War, under the conduct of *Sempronius*; at which time they were so great and multitudinous a Nation, that they were numbered to amount to 360000 which were then brought under the Command and Vassalage of the Roman Empire. When *Italy* was divided into no more than eight Regions, these *Piemter* only made up one; so did they also when divided into eleven. Afterwards, in the time of the *Antonins*, they made up one of the sixteen Provinces, into which *Italy* was divided by those Emperors; and the same repute it held in the time of *Constantine*, *Piemter* making always one. *Al-culum caput gentis*, as *Florus* calls it, which was the head of their nation, being the *Metropolis* of the Province,

Called in those times *Picenum Anconarium*, partly by reason of the abundance of grain which it did produce; and partly to distinguish from the dwelling of the *Picentini*, which from its nearness unto *Rome*, had the name of *Picenum Suburbicarium*; that part of *Campania* at this time, which is called the *Principate*. In the declining of the Empire, it was first called *Marca Farniana*, from *Firmo*: once a *Roman* Colony, and at that time of most importance in the Country; but by transferring the chief seat from *Firmo* to *Ancona*, in the time of the *Lombards*, it came to have the name of *Anconitana*. The chief Rivers, besides those named already, which are only borders, are, 1. *Chienti*, 2. *Sentinu*, and 3. *Potentia*, all rising in the *Apennine*, and passing with a sweet course to the *Adriatick* Sea.

The chief Towns, 1. *Ancona*, seated on the Hill *Cimmerius*, shooting into the Sea, glorying in giving name to the Province, and her Haven built by *Trajan* the Emperor; one of the fairest of the World, not so much for capacity, as the pleasantness and beauty of it: the descents down unto the Water being made of Marble, and very delectable walking on all sides of it. The City it self is begirt with Hills, on one of which *Pope Clement* the seventh built a very strong Castle. Anno 1532, under pretence of defending the Town against the *Turks*, but indeed to keep the people in more full subjection, who till that time, did yearly choose their own Magistrates, and lived according to their own Laws, like a Commonwealth. 2. *Recanati* (heretofore *Alia Regina*), seated upon the banks of the River *Musio*, renowned for the great concourse of Merchants from all parts of *Europe*, at her Annual Marts; and a Vein of the most excellent Wines. 3. *Firmo*, furnished the *Strong*: in former times of most esteem in all the Province which was hence called *Marca Farniana*; and to this day, a place of great strength and consequence; and an Archbishop Sec. 4. *Macerata*, now of most credit, by reason that the *Popes* *Leontius* keeps his residence there, and with him the Chancellor at his Marquise. 5. *Loreto*, called in *Latin* *Laurerana*, a little City betwixt *Recanati* and the Sea; well fortified against the *Turks*, and other Pirates who once spoiled the same, and might be easily tempted thither on the like occasions: The Church here being admirable rich, and frequented by Pilgrims from all parts, to pay their devotions unto our Lady of *Loreto*, and behold her Miracles. Concerning the removal of whose Chamber hither, on our description of *Palestine*, you shall meet with a very proper Legend. 6. *Acoli*, furnished the Fair, seated at the influx of the River *Druentis*, and on the furthest side of it towards *Abruzzo*, to which by some it is ascribed. Anciently the chief City of the *Piemont*, as before is said, and then called *Asculum*, conquered by the *Romans*, under the conduct of *Sempronius*, A.U.C. 485. Nigh unto this City, was fought the second Battle between *C. Fabricius* and the *Romans* on the one side, and *Pyrrhus* with the *Epirians* on the other; wherein the Victory (as *Plutarch* telleth us) fell to the King, having slain 6000 of his Enemies; but yet with such loss on his side, that he affirmed to some of his Friends and followers, *That such another Victory would quite undo him*; and with such apparance of valour and virtue in the *Romans*, that he could not but break forth into this acclamation: *O quam facile esset orbem vincere, aut mihi, Romanis militibus, aut me rege, Romanis!* This Town also was the seat of the War called *Bellum sociale*, raised by the people of *Italy* against the *Romans*; *Pope Sixtus* being both Author of the Rebellion, and Captain. They for a while freely shaked the state of *Rome*; but at last were vanquished, and this Town by *Strabo* *Compeium* forced and spoiled. 7. *Adria*, now not otherwise

famous, than that it gave denomination to the adjoining Sea, and the Emperor *Adrian*. 8. *Humana*, which together with *Ancona*, was given to *Pope Zachary*, by *Luitprand* King of the *Lombards*, about the year 741. The succeeding *Popes* after the giving of this Inch, took the whole Ell.

5. Having surveyed the Provinces of the Church along the *Adriatick*, we must next cross the *Apennine*, which parts the Marches of *Ancona* from the Dukedom of *SPOLETO* (*DUCATO SPOLETANO* the *Italians*, call it) which takes up the Western part of that Province, which the old *Romans* called *Umbria*: and therefore before we come to the description of this, we must a little look on the state of that. A Country bounded on the East with the River *Aniene*, dividing it from the East parts of *Latium*; on the West with *Tuscia* or *Hetruria*; on the North, with the *Apennine*; on the South, with the reaches or windings of the *Tiber*, the main body of *Latium*, and with that part of *Tuscia* which is now called *St. Peter's Patrimony*. So called, because being situate under the shade of the *Apennine* Hills, it was *Regio Umbrosa*. Some give another reason of it, and think that the Inhabitants were called *Umbri*, quasi *Umbra*, as men that had escaped the Deluge; because so ancient a people, that no body could tell the Original of them.

But whatsoever was the reason of the name, they were a stout and valiant people, and gave the first check to *Annibal's* career, after his great Victory at *Thrasymene*, repelling him with loss and shame from the Walls of *Spoleto*: yet not of power sufficient, for all their valour, to preserve their Country from the *Tuscan*, who are said to have destroyed in it 300 good Towns. Made by that means, if not plainly subject, yet so obnoxious to the will and pleasure of the *Victors*, that at their instance or command they sided with them in a War against the *Romans* (whom formerly they had found very quiet neighbours): and by the *Romans* were subdued together with the rest of the Confederates then in Arms against them, A.U.C. 458. *Decius* and *Quintus Fabius* then the fifth time Consuls, which was about 77 years before *Annibal* fell into their Country. After which time in such esteem, that it was one of the eleven Regions into which *Italy* was divided by *Augustus Caesar*; and finally, together with *Tuscia*, made up a Province of the Empire.

As for the Dukedom of *Spoleto*, it taketh up the Western parts of the Province of *Umbria*, as before was said, included betwixt the *Apennine*, the *Tiber*, and the River *Nar*, by which last (now called *Neas*) it is divided from *Sabinia*, or the Land of the *Sabiners*. The Country of a mixt nature, equally composed of very rough Hills, and yet most delectable Valleys; exceeding plentiful of all necessities, and much commended heretofore for the extraordinary fecundity of the Women. The Wine hereof is much commended by *Martial*, as the best of *Italy*.

De Spoletanis que sunt cariosa lagenis
Maluerit, quam si Musia Falerna bibas.

That is to say,

If with *Spoleto* bottles once you meet,
Say that *Falerno* Must is not so sweet.

Places of great note herein, 1. *Spoleto*, built partly on the Hill, and partly on the lower ground; the residence heretofore of one of the four Dukes of the *Longobardians*, who governed as Vice-roys, or Lord Presidents, of the remoter parts of that Kingdom: from whence

whence the Country round about it, was called *Ducato Spoletanum*. It is still a Town of good esteem, populous, and of handsome building; and hath a strong Fortrefs for defence thereof, built upon the ruins of an old Amphitheatre: to which men pass over a great Bridge of stone, upheld by 24 great Pillars, which joins two Mountains together: having between them a deep Valley, but narrow and without any Water. *Theodorick the Goth* built a fair Palace in this City, rebuilt by *Narses* but since ruined. 2. *Engubium* (now called *Anguino*) seated on the foot of the *Apennine*; in or near that place where anciently stood that City which *Pliny* calls *Fugium*; *Enclonius Istrum*; utterly subverted by the *Goths*. A Town well seated in a fruitful and wealthy soil, and blessed with an industrious people; acknowledging the Dukes of *Urbine* for Lords thereof, till that estate was swallowed up into the *Popeedom*. 3. *Nucerina*, (now *Nocera*) in *Pliny's* time called *Alfatina*, at the foot also of the *Apennine*; the people of which in former times much traded in their wooden vessel. 4. *Assisum*, or *Assisi*, destroyed almost to nothing in the Civil Wars of *Italy*, and only famous at this time, for a See Episcopal, and being the birth-place of *St. Francis*; the founder of the *Franciscans*, or *Cordeliers*, as the French call them, but we in *England* the *Gray-Friars*. 5. *Citta de Castello*, anciently *Thiberidum*, on the banks of *Tiber*. 6. *Tuderum*, now called *Todi*, seated near the *Tiber*, on the declivity of a rich and fruitful Hill.

The rest of *Umbria* towards the East, not being within the compass of the *Spoletan* Dukedom, but under the command of the *Popes* of *Rome*, is by late Writers called *SABINIA*, because the dwelling in times past, of the ancient *Sabini*: who being taken into *Rome*, and made Free Denizens of that City in the time of *Romulus*, upon the League concluded betwixt him and *Tatius*, then the King of this people, for a long time lived under the protection of that mighty City. But after joining with the *Latins* in a War against it, they were subdued by *Curius Dentatus* the *Roman* Consul, and made a subject Province of that common-wealth, A.U.C. 465. But though the *Sabini*, at this time bear away the name, yet were they not sole Masters of it in these elder times; the greater part thereof being possessed by some Nations of the *Umbri*, whom by a general name they called *Vilumbri* (the *Sabines* interjected betwixt them and *Rome*) and as a member of that body, subdued together with the rest of *Umbri* by the conquering *Romans*. Afterwards in the division of *Italy* made by *Antoninus*, it was called *Nursia*; and in that made by *Constantine*, it was contained within the new Province of *Valeria*; *Reate* being the Metropolis, or head City of both. A Territory of no great circuit, but abundantly fruitful in Oyl or Olives, Vines and Figtrees: watered with the River *Farfarum*, which cutteth through the very midst of it; and with the Lake called anciently *Lacus Velinus* (now *Lago di Pedulano*) esteemed to be the Centre or Navel of *Italy* by some ancient Writers: the waters of which are of such a nature, that in short time they will cloath a piece of wood with a coat of stone, and yet yieldeth excellent Trouts, and most good Fish. The Towns and Cities of most note, are, 1. *Reate* (now called *Reice*) an ancient City, and the Metropolis heretofore of all this *Tract*; as well when it was called *Nursia*, as when it was under the name of *Valeria*. 2. *Nursia*, a City no less ancient, seated among the Hills, which for the most part are covered with snow; from which Town, being heretofore of more reputation, the Province of *Nursia*, spoken of in the *Itinerary* of *Antoninus*, took denomination. 3. *Magliano*, a pleasant and well-peopled Town, at this time the principal of this Territory.

4. *Oriculum*, built amongst many fruitful Hills, a mile from *Tiber*. 5. *Narnia*, the Country and Birth-place of the Emperor *Nerva*, the first of all the Emperours not born in *Rome*, as after him there were few born in it. The soil about it is of so different and strange a nature, that it is said to be made dirty by the Sun and Winds, and dusty by Rain: the City well-peopled, and a Bishops See, seated upon a very steep and craggy Hill, not far from the River *Nar* (now *Negro*) from which perhaps it took the name. A City given unto the Church of *Rome* by *Luitprandus*, King of the *Lombards*; of which the *Popes* of *Rome* having got possession, never left praetising till they had got into their power all the rest of the Country. Little else famous in the whole Region of *Umbria*, but that in the Western part thereof, is the Lake called *Lacus Vademonius*, near to *America*, now called *Amelia*, a Town of the Dukedom, where *Dalabella* overthrew such of the *Senones*, a valiant Nation of the *Gallii*, as had escaped the Sword of *Camillus*, *Quintilius*, *Curius*; and other fortunate Commanders in the Wars against them: *Ne quis extaret in ea gente* (saith the Historian) *qui incensam à se Romanam gloriaretur*: a former slaughter being made of them by *Camillus*, on the banks of *Aniene*, the Eastern limit of these *Umbri*.

5. *S. PETERS PATRIMONY*, properly and specially so called, is that part of *Tuscia* which appertains unto the Church; bounded upon the East with *Latium*, which divides it from *Latium*, or *Campagna di Roma*: on the West, with the River *Pisio*, which falleth into the Sea near the Mountain of *Argentario* and parteth it from the estate of the great Duke of *Tuscia*; on the North, with the *Apennine* and the *Spoletan* Dukedom, on the South with the *Tuscan* or *Tiberian* Sea. It took this new name presently on the donation of the Countess *Mathildis*, who gave it for ever unto the Church, An. 110. (*Paschal* the second sitting in the Chair of *Rome*) to be the *Patrimony* of *S. Peter*, and his successors in that See. A Country not inferior unto any in *Italy*, for the fertility of the soil: but for the most part of an unhealthy Air, by reason of the frequent overflowings of *Tiber*, and the thick woods which hinder that the winds cannot purge and cleanse it.

The principal Cities, and places of most observation, are 1. *Perugia*, formerly called *Perusia*; a famous Town; in which *Augustus* besieged *L. Antonius* the brother, and *Fulvia* the wife of *M. Antony* the *Triumvir*, who when they had in vain attempted to seduce *Rome* from his party, repaired to this City; which also at the last, yielded to the more fortunate Emperor. *Augustus* afterwards, having much adorned and beautified it, caused it to be called *Augusta*; but it returned not long after, to its ancient name. It is seated very pleasantly on the banks of *Tiber*, not far from the *Apennine*, in a very rich and fruitful soil; well built both for the publick and private structures; a Bishops See and made an University, An. 1090. In the distractions of *Italy* betwixt the Emperours and the *Popes*, this City was seized on by the *Baillons*, who held it as Vicars of the Church. The *Ordines*, an opposite faction to them, having got together a strong party of Male-contents, so suddenly entered one night into the City, that the *Baillons* began to fly: nor was there any thing to hinder them from being Masters of the Palace, but the Chain which was drawn cross the Gate. One of the Soldiers going about to cut this Chain, and wanting room to wield his arm, cried aloud *Give back*; which words being heard, but not well understood by those furthest off, put them to their heels; and the foremost, which thought they fled not for nothing, ran away too. So the City was saved. 2. *Orvieto*, seated on so high a Rock, that it is no small Ter-

If we should add their Wives, Children, and Servants, we cannot probably conjecture them to have been fewer than three or four Millions: and so *Lipfius* is of opinion, in his *Tract de Magnitudine Romana*. The most memorable buildings of it, were first the Capitol, founded by *Tarquinius Superbus*, and beautified with the spoils of their conquered Neighbours; saved from the fury of the *Galls* by the cackling of Geese. *Tacitus* calleth this house *Sedem Jovis optimi maximi, aufpicato a majoribus pignus imperii conditum*. It was twice burnt, once in the Wars of *Vefpafian* and *Vitellius*. In the third building of it, *Vefpafian* carried the first basket of Earth; after him the Nobility did the like, to make the people more forward in the service: and perhaps the custom of laying the first stone in a building, or driving the first nail in a timber-work, by him whose edifice it is; hath, from hence, if not beginning, yet growth. 2. Here was the Temple of *Janus* open in the time of Wars, and shut in the time of peace; which, during all their Monarchy, happened but thrice: namely during the reign of *Augustus*, after the first *Punic* War, and in the time of *Numa*. 3. Here was the Bridge called *Pons Sublicius*, on which *Horatius Cocles* resisted the whole Army of King *Porfena*, *Tarquinius*, and the *Tyfcans*; till the Citizens behind had broken down the bridge, received him swimming to the bank with joyful acclamations and saved their City from present ruin. Here lived the famous Writers, so much renowned in the stories of elder times; here flourished the exact Martial discipline, fo memorized by ancient Historiographers: and finally, here were laid up the spoils and Trophies of all Europe.

ROMES, as now it standeth lower on the bank of *Tiber* upon *Campus Martius*, (where it was built after the inundation of the *Goths* and *Vandals*) is in compass about eleven miles. within which compass is not a little waste ground. The Inhabitants of all sorts reckoned to amount to 200000, two parts whereof are Clergymen and Courtiers; that is to say, such as have their dependance on the Court of Rome, either by holding Offices and places of employment under the Popes, or by attending on his person, or waiting on the Cardinals and eminent Prelates who are there abiding; or otherwise being of the retinue of such foreign Ambassadors as are always commorant in the City, to follow the Negotiations of their several Matters; all which must needs amount to a very great number. It was first built on the East-side of the River in the Territory of *Latium*, but now there is little left of the old City but the goodly ruins & here and there some Churches and scattered houses (except it be a little on the North-East of the River, from the Gate called *Del populo*, to the Island of *Tiber*;) the rest, especially towards South, being taken up with pastures and fields of Corn. The main body of the City, as now it stands is on the West-side of the water, and the *Holy Island*, consisting of three distinct parts or members. Of these the least is that which they call *La Isola*, but anciently the *Holy Island*; first made an Island by the Corn, Straw, and other goods of the *Tarquinius*, which the Senate not vouchsafing to convert to any publick or private use, commanded to be flung into the River; where it sunk and settled to an Island, called afterwards the *Holy Island*, from a Temple herein built unto *Esculapius*, brought hither from *Epidaurum*, in the shape of a Serpent. This Island is not above a quarter of a mile in length, and hardly half so much in breadth: but full of stately Churches and beautiful houses. Next to this is that which they call *Trastevere*, or *Trans-Tiberina*; but of old *Janiculo*, from the Mountain of that name included in it: Called also *Civitas Raven-*

natum, or the City of the men of *Ravenna*, of the Soldiers which *Augustus* kept at *Ravenna* against *Antonia*; and after placed in this out-part of the City, which by reason of the unwholesomeness of the air, is inhabited only by Artizans and poor people; yet compassed about with walls, except on that side next the water, and adorned with many goodly Churches and some handfom buildings. But the chief glory of the City consisteth in that part of it which is called *Il Borgo*, lying on the North-side of the other, but dis-joyined from it compassed about with walls by Pope Leo the 4. and from thence called *Civitas Leonina*. For in this part there are, 1. The Church of *S. Peter*, which was it once finished, would be one of the rarest buildings in all the World. 2. The Castle of *S. Angelo*, impregnable unless by Famine. 3. The Popes Palace, called *Belvedere*, which with the Gardens thereof was compassed about with a very high wall, by Pope *Nicolas* the fifth. And had his name from the fair prospect which it hath: in the same fence, as *Belvoir* Castle here in *England*, the Barony and Manfion of the Earls of *Rutland*. A Palace of magnificence and receipt enough. 4. The Library of the Hill *Vatician*, properly called the *Palatine*, but more commonly the *Vatican Library*: a Library first founded by *Sextus* the fourth, who not only stored it with the choicest Books he could-pick out of Europe: but also allowed also a large revenue for the perpetual augmentation of it. *Bibliothecam Palatinam in vaticano, ius terrarum urbe celeberr, aduictis ex omni Europa libris confectis; presentisq; cetis, &c.* So *Onuphrius*. When the Duke of *Barbon* sacked *Rome*, *Anno* 1527. it was much defaced and ransacked; but by the succeeding Popes it hath been again recovered to its former fame, and beauty. *Rome* is now an University, which was founded by *Urban* the fourth, at whose request *Thomas Aquinas* professed here. Pope *Nicolas* the fifth was a special benefactor to the same; and after him, *Leo* the tenth, who revived the Greek Learning and Language, which were in these parts almost forgotten. And finally, to this place are brought all the treasures of those parts of Christendom subject to the Popes authority: partly for the expence of strangers, which do there remain on their several pleasures or occasions; and partly for the expeditions which are there obtained, for the Investitures of Bishoppicks, and Bulls of Benefices, Indulgences and other matters of Court-holy-water; and partly in the Penfions, which are paid there to the Cardinals and other Ministers of those Kings and Princes, which know best how to make their ends of the Popes ambitions. So that it may be truly said, there came not more Tributes into old-Rome from the conquered Provinces, than hath been brought into the New from the subject Churches, which have submitted to the power of the Roman Prelates: and that they have as great command now under the pretence of Religion, as ever they had formerly by force of Arms. So truly was it said by *Proper* of *Aquinane*, (if memory fail not)

Roma caput mundi, quicquid non possidet Armis,
Religione tenet.

That is to say,

What Rome subdu'd not with the Sword.
She holds by colour of the Word.

But yet there wants the Genius of the ancient City, the power and natural courage of the old Inhabitants, which held the same against the bravery and assaults of all foreign Enemies: this City during the time of the ancient Romans, being never took but by the *Galls*; but

since Pontifical, it hath been made a prey to all Barbarous Nations and never was besieged by any that did not take it. In a Word, the City of *Rome* as now it standeth, is but the carcass of the old, of which it retains nothing but the ruins and the cause of them, her fins.

The Popes do much brag of the foundation of their Church, and the authority of *St. Peter*; whose being there is indeed constantly attested by most ancient Writers; inasmuch that *Calvin*, though no friend to the Popes of *Rome*, yet proper *Scripturam confutum*, in regard of the unanimous consent of the primitive times, did not think fit to controvert it. The silence of the Scriptures is a Negative Argument, and concludes nothing to the contrary; against fo great a Cloud of unquestioned Witnesses, as soberly and positively have affirmed the same. And yet I would not have it thought by the captious *Romanists*, that I conceive that it makes any thing at all for the Pope's Supremacy, because he sits in *Peter's* seat: no more than it did make for *Vibius Rufus* (as *Dion* doth relate the story) to attain *Tully's* eloquence, or *Cæsar's* power, because he married *Tully's* Widow, and bought *Cæsar's* Chair: though the poor Gentleman did beset himself with this opinion, that he should be Master of them both. Of which see *Lib. LVII*. And yet the Popes rely so much upon this fancy, of being the direct heirs of *St. Peter*, and all his preeminencies, that all things which they say or do, must be intitled to *St. Peter*. Their Throne must be *St. Peter's* Chair, their Church *St. Peter's* Ship, their Lands *St. Peter's* *Parimony*, their Tributes and Exactions must be called *St. Peter's*; and all their Bulls and faculties sealed *Anulo Piscatoris*, with *St. Peter's* Signet. Nay, they went so far at the last, that Pope *Stephen* not being contented to be *Peter's* Successor, did take upon him in plain terms to be *Peter* himself. For being distressed by *Alfuphus* King of the *Lombards*, he sends for aid unto King *Pepin* in this following stile. *Petrus Apostolus JESU CHRISTI, &c. i. e. Peter the Apostle of JESU CHRISTI, to you the most illustrious King Pepin, and to all Bishops, Abbots, &c. I the Apostle Peter, whose adapted sons you are, admonish that you presently come and defend this City, &c. And doubt you not, but trust assuredly, that I my self, as if I stood before you, do thus exhort you, &c. And that I Peter the Apostle of God, will at the last day yield you mutual kindness, and prepare you Tabernacles in the Heavens.* *Baronius* who records this Letter, *Anno* 755. numb. 17. was it seems, pretty well perwaded of it, that the Pope and *Peter* were all one. For in his Exhortation to the State of *Verone*, being then upon some differences with Pope *Paul* the fifth, he stileth him in plain terms thus, *Paulus Idemque Petrus Christi agens in terra, i. e. Paul, who is also Peter, and Christis Vicegerent, &c.* But leaving these imaginary claims and challenges of *St. Peter's* privileges, though they did really advance the reputation of that See in the darker Ages, two things there were which did exceedingly conduce to the improvement of their power, in the more knowing and discerning times of Christianity. Of which the principal, was, the Orthodoxy of the Bishops or Popes of *Rome*, their eminent and sincere profession of the Faith of *Christ*: when almost all the other Churches were either torn in pieces by the fury of *Schism*, or waited and subverted by the fraud of *Heresie*. In which regard, Appeals were frequently made to the Church of *Rome*, as a more competent Judge of the truth of Doctrine; the communion of it much desired by all true Christians; and a repair thither for relief and shelter in the times of trouble, made by the Orthodox Professors under persecution. And of these times, and this con-

dition of that Church, we are to understand such passages of the Ancient Writers, as magnifie the Faith of the Church of *Rome*, and set it above all the batteries and assaults of *Heresie*. Such is that passage of *St. Cyprian*, *Romanos esse ad quos presidia non potest habere accessum*, *lib. 1. ep. 3.* and that of *Hierome*, *Romanam fidem (i. e. Romanorum fidem) Apostolica voce laudatam, ejusmodi prestigis non recipere, in Apol. com. Ruffin* and many others of that kind. Which passages it were as foolish and ridiculous to apply to all following times the condition of that church being different from what then it was; as to accommodate all those *Elogies* and commendations to the present City of *Rome*; which the Orators and Panegyricists of the elder times have hyperbolically ascribed to old *Rome* in her greatest glories. The next was the fixation of the Popes in the *Metropolis*, or Imperial City; which drawing to it such a multitude of suiters and attendants from all parts of the world, could not but add much to the power and reputation of those Prelates, who had the happiness and honour to be resident there: and thereby opportunity to gain more *Disciple*, to solve more doubts of conscience, and decide more controversies than any other could expect. And so we are to understand that passage in *St. Irenæus*, in which he saith, *Ad hanc Ecclesiam propter potentiorum Principatum, necesse est omnem convenire Ecclesiam, i. e. eos qui sunt undique Ecclesie*. And so they did as long as *Rome* enjoyed the honour of a more potent Principality than other Cities. But when that more potent Principality failed to beat *Rome*, by the removal of the Imperial See, first to *Constantinople*, and afterwards unto *Ravenna*, then did the Bishops of *Constantinople* and *Ravenna*, dispute with those of *Rome* for Superiority: the chief feat of Religion most commonly following the seat of the Empire. And in this claim the Patriarch or Bishop of *Constantinople* prevailed so far, that with the permission *Mauritius* the Emperor, he took upon him the title of *Universal Patriarch*. *Gregory* the Great (of whom it is said that he was the worst Bishop of all that went before him, and the best of all that came after him) was at that time Bishop of *Rome*: who sharply inveighed as well against the Emperor, as the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, for this Title, and plainly maintained, that whosoever called himself *Universal Bishop*, was the forerunner of *Antichrist*. As for himself it is probable that he took the title of *Servus Servorum Dei*, more in opposition to him of *Constantinople*, than with an intent to be so truly. To which though those of *Rome* reply that *Gregory* did not absolutely condemn this Title, but only blamed *John* the *Constantinopolitan* Patriarch for assuming to himself that attribute, which properly belonged to the See of *Rome*; yet this cannot be: For then either in the old Bulls of the former Popes, we should find mention of this Title; or else Pope *Gregory* would have assumed it to himself, that the world might take notice to whom of right it did belong. But *Boniface*, who next but one succeeded *Gregory*, having further aims applied himself to *Phocas* that bloody Tyrant; who having murdered the Emperor *Mauritius*, his Wife and Children, and thereby got the general hatred of all the good Subjects of the Empire, the better to assure himself of *Italy*, whose revolt he feared, declared this *Boniface*, to be the *Oecumenical Bishop*, and Head of the Church: To such a good beginning, such a gracious Patron do the Popes stand indebted for that power and Empire, which now they challenge to themselves over all the Church.

Now as the Bishop of *Constantinople*, and *Ravenna*, did challenge a priority or precedency of the Popes of *Rome*; by reason that they were respectively honoured with the Seat Imperial; so were there divers other Bishops, as *Antioch*, *Alexandria*, *Carthage*, *Milain*, which claimed

claimed an equality with them; and would by no means yield them any superiority. For trial of whose claim, we must look back on somewhat which hath been said before; where it is shewn that the Roman Empire was divided into fourteen *Dioeceses*; each *Dioecesis* being subdivided into several Provinces; each Province comprehending many several Cities: then, that in every of those Cities, where the Romans had their *Defensores*, the *Christians* also had a Bishop: in the *Metropolis* of each Province, which commonly was the seat of the Roman *Præfatus*, the *Christians* had their *Metropolitan*; and that in each principal City of each several *Dioecesis*, wherein the *Vicar* of that *Dioecesis* had fixed his dwelling, there did the *Christians* place a *Primate*. And this was done according to that famous Maxim of *Optatus* *Republica non est in Ecclesia, sed Ecclesia est in Republica*, that the Church is in the Common-wealth; and not the Common-wealth in the Church. Upon which foundation the Fathers in the Council of *Chalcedon*, raised this superstructure, *Ἐκκλεσιᾶς τὴν πόλιν ἔχει*, &c. that the Honours of the Church should be accommodated unto those in State. So that according to this Platform, the *Primates* of the Church were of equal power, each of them limited and restrained to his proper Sphere; out of the which if he presume once to act, he moved irregularly, and in his Ecclesiastical, And for those *Primates*, I shall give you once for all, this general Muster, that is to say the Patriarch or Pope of Rome, for the *Dioecesis* or Prefecture of that City; the *Primate* or Archbishop of *Milain*, for the *Dioecesis* of *Italy*; of *Syracusa*, for that of *Syria*; of *Lyons*, for that of *France*; of *Tor*, for *Britain*; *Toledo*, for *Spain*, and of *Carthage*, for *Africa*. Then for the East parts of the Empire, there was the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, for the *Dioecesis* of *Egypt*; of *Antioch*, for that of the *Orient*; the *Primate* or Archbishop of *Ephefus*, for the *Dioecesis* of *Asia*; of *Nicomedia* for that of *Pontus*; of *Bizantium*, for *Constantinople* for that of *Thrace*; of *Istanbul*, for the *Dioecesis* of *Greece*; and of *Justiniana prima*, for that of *Dacia*. Amongst all which there was a mutual correspondence and Co-ordination, for the general Government of the Church; maintained by Letters of intercourse, which they called *Litteras formatas*, and *Communicatorias*; but no subordination, and much less subjection, unto one another, as doth appear most evidently by the Canons of the Council of *Nice*, assigning to the three great Patriarchs their peculiar bounds, according to the custom of the former times. As for the *Dioecesis* or Patriarchate of the Popes of Rome, it contained in it those ten Provinces, which were immediately subject to the Prefect or Provoost of that City (an Office first instituted by *Augustus Caesar*) that is to say, the Provinces of *Tuscia* and *Umbria*, *Picenum*, *Suburbicarium*, *Campania*, *Apolia* and *Calabria*, *Valeria*, *Sammium*, *Lucania* and the *Bruttii*, in the main Land of *Italy*; and the three Islands of *Sicily*, *Corfica*, and *Sardinia*. In which regard, (I mean as to the immediate Government of those Provinces by the Prefect of the City of Rome) as they are called *Regiones Suburbicarie*, by *Ruffinus* an Italian Writer, so anciently the Pope himself was called *Urbanus*, or the City Bishop, as appears plainly by *Optatus*, who calleth Pope *Zephyrinus*, *Zephyrinus Urbanus*. But the Popes were not long content with that allotment, growing up daily by a steady and constant watchfulness upon all occasions, to increase the Grandeur of that See; and taking to themselves the honour to be *Vindictæ Canonum*, the strict and punctual preservers of the ancient Discipline, which took extremely well with all sorts of people. Till in the end from being *Vindictæ Canonum*, they came to be Interpreters, and at last the Rulers, or rather the Over-rulers of the Canons; and from the chief Labourers in the Vineyard,

they became the Landlords: which was the honour aimed at, and at last obtained by the forefaid *Baniface*, whom that cruel and butcherly Tyrant *Phocas* made the Head of the Church, the sixty sixth Bishop and first Pope of Rome: the Latin word *Papa* coming from the old Greek *πάππας*, signifying a Father. A title at the first common unto other Bishops, as is evident to any one, who hath read the *Fathers*; but after this appropriated unto those of Rome. Of these Popes, their Succession, and times of Government, our *Chronologers* are very uncertain: not one of them that ever I had the luck to see, agreeing exactly with another. The reasons whereof, I conceive, are, 1. The frequent *Vacancies*; and 2. the many *Schisms* which have happened in it; and 3. the *Anti-Popes* in them created: The Writers of those times accounted him only among the Popes, to whose faction they were most devoted. This Catalogue ensuing I have collected principally out of the Tables of *Helveticus*, *Freigius*, *Belarmine*, and *Omniprius*, whose differences I have reconciled as well as possibly I could: premonishing the Reader, that where the number of years which every Pope is found to fit in the *Papal Chair*, makes not up the full number from his first admission, to the coming in of his Successor; it must be understood by some *Schism* or *Vacancy*, happening in the Interval, by which the tale is to be made up. And for the difficulties which occur amongst the Ancients, in the first succession, some placing of them thus, *Linus, Cletus, Clement*; some *Linus, Clement, Cletus*; and finally some putting *Clement* the first, I know no better way to compose the same then to affirm (as many of the Fathers do) that St. Peter and St. Paul were Co-founders of the Church in Rome; St. Peter of the Church of the *Circumcision*, and St. Paul of the *Gentiles*; each of them being Bishop of the Church of his own foundation: and then to draw down the Succession in this manner following.

The Bishops of Rome.

- A. Ch.
44 1 St. Peter, Bishop of the Churches of the *Circumcision*.
70 2 Cletus, or Anacletus, Successor to St. Peter in the Churches of the *Circumcision*. 23.
59 1 St. Paul, Bishop of the Churches of the *Gentiles*.
70 2 Linus, Successor to St. Paul in the Church of the *Gentiles*. 11.
81 3 Clements having succeeded Linus first in the Church of the *Gentiles*, did after Anno 93. succeed Cletus also in the Church of the *Jews*, reckoned by some the next Successor to St. Peter, because the next who after him had the charge of the whole; the Church of the *Gentiles* not being founded, or not distinguished from the others, till some years after Peter's coming.
103 4 Anacletus 9.
112 5 Evaristus 9.
121 6 Alexander 6 m. 5 d.
131 7 Sixtus 10.
142 8 Telesphorus 12.
154 9 Hyginus 4.
158 10 Pius 9.
167 11 Anicetus 8 m. 9.
175 12 Soter 4.
179 13 Eleutherius 15.
194 14 Victor 9.
203 15 Zephyrinus 18.
221 16 Callistus 5.
226 17 Urbanus 6 m. 7 d.
238 18 Pontianus 5.
239 19 Anterus 1.
239 20 Fabianus 14.
253 21 Cornelius 2.
255 22 Lucius 1 m. 8.
256 23 Stephanus 3 m. 3.
260 24 Sixtus or Sixtus II. 2.
262 25 Dionysius 10.
272 26 Felix

- 272 26 Felix 2 m. 5 d.
275 27 Eusebius 8.
283 28 Caius 13.
296 29 Marcellinus 8.
304 30 Marcellus 5.
309 31 Eusebius 2.
311 32 Miltiades 3.
314 33 Sylvester 22.
336 34 Marcus m. 8.
337 35 Julius 15 m. 5.
352 36 Liberius 15 m. 4 v. 10.
367 37 Damasus 18.
385 38 Siricius 13.
388 39 Anastasius 4.
402 40 Innocentius 15.
417 41 Zosimus 1 m. 4.
419 42 Bonifacius 5.
424 43 Callistus 8 m. 5.
428 44 Sixtus III. 8.
440 45 Leo mag. 21.
461 46 Hilarius 6 m. 10.
468 47 Simplicius 15 m. 5.
483 48 Felix III. 9.
491 49 Gelasius 4.
497 50 Anastasius II. 2.
509 51 Symmachus 15.
514 52 Hormisdas 9.
523 53 Joannes 12 m. 9 d.
524 54 Felix IV. 4.
530 55 Bonifacius II. 1.
532 56 Joannes II. 3.
535 57 Agapetus 1.
536 58 Sylvester I.
537 59 Vigilius 18.
545 60 Pelagius 5.
563 61 Joannes III. 10.
573 62 Benedictus 4.
578 63 Pelagius II. 12.
590 64 Gregorius Mag. 14.
605 65 Sabinianus 1. the last of the Roman Bishops, not having that arrogant Title of Universal Bishop, or Head of the Church.

The Popes of Rome challenging a Supremacy over all the Church.

- 606 1 Bonifacius III. 3.
607 2 Bonifacius IV. 8.
615 3 Deus-dedit 3.
618 4 Bonifacius V. 5 m. 10.
624 5 Honorius 13.
634 6 Severinus 2.
639 7 Joannes IV. 2.
642 8 Theodorus 7 m. 8.
649 9 Martinus 6.
654 10 Eugenius 2 m. 9.
657 11 Vitalianus 14.
671 12 A. Dec-Datus.
677 13 Donatus m. 5 d.
679 14 Agatho 4.
683 15 Leo II. m. 10.
684 16 Benedictus II. 1.
685 17 Joannes V. 1.
686 18 Conon m. 11.
688 19 Sergius 13.
701 20 Joannes VI. 3.
704 21 Joannes VII. 3.
707 22 Sixtus II. 20.
707 23 Constantine 7.
714 24 Gregorius II. 17.
731 25 Greg. III. 10 m. 9.
742 26 Zacharias 10.
752 27 Stephanus II. d. 4.
752 28 Stephanus III. 5.
757 29 Paulus I. 10.
767 30 Constant III. 1.
768 31 Stephanus IV. 4.
772 32 Adrianus I. 23.
796 33 Leo III. 20.
816 34 Stephanus V. m. 7.
817 35 Paschalis 7.
824 36 Eugenius II. 3.
827 37 Valentinus d. 4.
827 38 Gregorius IV. 16.
839 39 Sergius II. 3.
846 40 Leo IV. 8.
854 41 Joannes VIII. vulgo Pope JOAN. 2.
856 42 Benedictus III. 2.
858 43 Nicolaus 10.
868 44 Adrianus II. 5.
873 45 Joannes IX. 10.
883 46 Martinus II. 1.
884 47 Adrianus III. 1.
885 48 Stephanus VI. 6.
891 49 Formosus 4.
895 50 Bonifacius VI. d. 15.
896 51 Stephanus VII. 1.
897 52 Romanus m. 4.
897 53 Theodardus II. d. 2.
897 54 Joannes X. 2.
899 55 Benedictus IV. 2.
903 56 Leo V. d. 40.
903 57 Christophorus m. 7.
903 58 Sergius III. m. 7.
910 59 Anastasius III. 2.
910 60 Lando m. 6.
912 61 Joannes XI. 15.
928 62 Leo VI. m. 6.
929 63 Stephanus VIII. 2.

To these one hundred seventy nine Popes add the sixty five Bishops which preceded that arrogant title of Universal, and they make up the full number of two hundred forty four. How many are to come, he must be a cunning man that can determine. And yet such cunning men there have been, who have determined positively, but withal, Prophetically, of the number of Popes; by name St. Malacty one of the first

- 931 64 Joannes XII. 5.
936 65 Leo VII. 4.
940 66 Stephanus IX. 3.
946 67 Martinus III. 5.
946 68 Agapetus II. 9.
953 69 Joannes XIII. 8.
964 70 Leo VIII. 1.
965 71 Benedictus V. 1.
966 72 Joannes XIV. 7.
973 73 Benedictus VI. m. 6.
974 74 Donatus II. 1 m. 3.
975 75 Bonifacius VII. 1.
976 76 Benedictus VIII. 8.
984 77 Joannes XV. 1.
985 78 Joannes XVI. 10.
995 79 Joannes XVII. 4.
999 80 Gregorius V. 3 m. 13.
999 81 Sylvester II. dictus 1342 139 Clement VI. 10.
Necromantius 4. 1352 140 Innocent IV. 10.
1003 82 Joannes XVIII. m. 1362 141 Urban 5. 8.
1003 83 Joannes XIX. 6. 1371 142 Gregorius XI. 7.
1009 84 Sergius IV. 3. 1378 143 Urban VI. 11.
1012 85 Benedictus VIII. 12. 1389 144 Boniface IX. 14.
1024 86 Joannes XX. 8 m. 1406 145 Innocent VII. 2.
1033 87 Benedictus IX. 12. 1406 146 Gregorius XII. 2.
1045 88 Sylvester III. m. 1. 1409 147 Alex. V. m. 10.
1045 89 Benedictus X. m. 1. 1410 148 Joannes XXIII. 5.
1045 90 Gregorius VI. m. 1. 1410 149 Martin V. 13.
1047 91 Clement II. m. 9. 1431 150 Eugenius IV. 16.
1047 92 Damasus II. d. 23. 1447 151 Nicolaus V. 8.
1049 93 Leo IX. 5. 1455 152 Callistus III. 5.
1055 94 Victor II. 2. 1458 153 Pius II. m. 2 d. 11.
1057 95 Stephanus X. m. 6. 1465 154 Eugenius 6.
1059 96 Nicolaus II. m. 2 m. 1464 155 Paulus II. 7.
1062 97 Alexander II. 11. 1471 156 Sixtus IV. 12.
1073 98 Gregorius VII. dictus 1484 157 Innocent VIII. 7.
Hildebrandus 12. 1492 158 Alexander VII. 11.
1086 99 Victor III. 1. 1503 159 Pius III. d. 26.
1087 100 Urbanus II. 12. 1509 160 Julius II. 1.
1099 101 Paschalis II. 18. 1512 161 Leo X. 9.
1118 102 Callistus II. 1. 1521 162 Adrian VI. 2.
1119 103 Callistus II. 6. 1524 163 Clement VII. 10.
1125 104 Honorius II. 5. 1534 164 Paulus III. 15.
1130 105 Innocent III. 15. 1550 165 Julius III. 5.
1143 106 Callistus II. m. 5. 1555 166 Martinus II. d. 22.
1144 107 Lucius II. m. 11. 1555 167 Paulus IV. 5.
1145 108 Eugenius III. 8. 1560 168 Pius IV. 6.
1153 109 Anastasius IV. 1. 1567 169 Gregorius XIII. 13.
1154 110 Adrian V. 4. 1572 170 Sixtus V. 5.
1159 111 Alexander III. 22. 1585 171 Sixtus V. 5.
1181 112 Lucius III. 4. 1590 172 Urban VIII. 12.
1185 113 Urban III. 2. 1590 173 Greg. XIV. m. 9.
1187 114 Gregorius VIII. 12. 1591 174 Innocent IX. m. 1.
1188 115 Clement III. 3. 1592 175 Clement VIII. 13.
1191 116 Callistus III. 6. 1605 176 Leo XI. d. 26.
1198 117 Innocent III. 17. 1605 177 Paulus V. 16.
1216 118 Honorius III. 10. 1621 178 Greg. XV. 2.
1227 119 Gregorius IX. 14. 1623 179 Urban VIII. 21.
1241 120 Callistus IV. d. 17. 1644 179 Innocent X.
1243 121 Innocent IV. 11.

Apostles of the Irish Nation, very much honoured by that people to this very day. Of whom there is remaining in *Messingham* collection of the Irish Saints, a certain number of *Motors*, in the Latin tongue; agreeable to the nature or chief accidents of as many Popes successively to one another, according to the order of those several *Motors*: and there unto this Prophetic annexed, that when so many Popes had late in St. Peter's Chair,

either the World should end, or the Popedom fail. The Book was shewed to me by the Author, when I was at Paris, and the Pope's names in order joined to every *Motto*, as far as the time of *Urban*, who last deceased; which I compared as well as memory would serve me, and found the *Mottos* and the Popes to be very answerable. The *Motto* for Pope *Urban*, which I took most notice of, was, *Litum et Rosa*: a *Motto* very suitable to the principal Action which was like to happen in his time, being the conjunction of the *English Rose*, and the *Fremb Lilly* in the marriage of *Charles* King of England, and *Madam Henrietta Maria* the Princess of France; which that Pope earnestly promoted, in his speedy and cheerful granting of the Dispensation. And to take from me all suspicion of imposture, this *Maffingham* shewed me an old Book written by one *Wion* a *Fleming*, and printed near 200 years before his Collection; in which the *Mottos* stood as in his they did, and comparing the *Mottos* with a printed Catalogue of the Popes, I found the name of *Urban*, and that *Motto* to jump even together. From *Urban* downwards there remained (as I now remember) 36 *Mottos* more to come; by consequence, if this *Malachi* was as true a Prophet as one *Malachi* was, just to many Popes, and then the Popedom to be ruined, or the World to end. But I hope God for his *Elders* sake will abridge those days, and not permit the superstitious and the corruptions of that Church to endure so long; nor so many Assertors and Defenders of those *Roman Heterodoxies*, to be added to the former number. Out of the stories of all which (premitting many things of less consideration) I will only select some few passages, for the better understanding of their fate and story.

1. *Pelagius* the first, ordained that *Heretick* and *Schismatick* should be punished with temporal death; which severity continueth still: and that none should be preferred to Ecclesiastical dignities by Gifts, and Bribes; which pious order is long since antiquated.

2. *Vitalianus*, first brought Organs into the Divine service of the Church of *Rome*; to be used with the singing or vocal Musick formerly in use; which afterwards was brought unto more perfection by the Popes succeeding.

3. *Constantine* was so generally beloved of all men, that going to *Constantinople*, *Justinian* the second kist his feet in sign of honour, which some of the ambitious Popes in times succeeding, drew into example, and at last brought into a custom, as it still continueth.

4. *Paschal* the first, caused the Priests of certain Parishes in *Rome*, by reason of their nearness to his person, their presence at his Election, and to honour them with a more venerable Title, to be called *Cardinals*. Now mates for Kings, and numbered about 70, but more or fewer at the sole pleasure of the Popes.

5. *Eugenius* the second, took to himself within the Territories of the Church, the Authority of creating Dukes, Earls and Knights; as the *Exarch* of *Ravenna* had used to do.

6. *Sergius* the second, was the first that changed his name. For thinking his own name, *Bocca di Porco*, or *Swine-mouth*, not consonant to his dignity, he caused himself to be called *Sergius*; which precedent his Successors following, do also vary their names. So that if one be a Coward he is called *Leo*; if a Tyrant, *Clement*; if an Atheist, *Pius*, or *Innocent*; if a Rustick, *Urbanus*; and so for the rest.

6. *John* the eighth, is by most men confessed to be a Woman, and is usually called *Pope Joane*. To avoid the like disgrace, the *Porphyry Chair* was ordained; *ubi ab ultimo diacono*, &c. so that both in a literal and mystical

sense, this Woman may not unfitly be called, *The Where of Babylon*. The name of this Female Pope, the *Romish Chronologists* have not inserted into the Catalogue; the reason, as *Marianus Scotus* giveth it, *propter turpitudinem rei, & solum muliebrem*. And from hence it is that in the common Catalogues, these Popes that have called themselves *John*, are so ill ordered; some making that *John* which succeeded *Adrian* the second, *An. 872*, to be the 8th and others the 9th, *Platina* only of all the *Pontificatus* reckoneth *Pope Joane* as the 8th of the *Johns*, and so forward: in which particular I have followed his authority. And it is probable enough that God might suffer that proud Sec to fall into such an infamy, the better to humble the ensuing Popes, in the times of their greatest ruff and flourish; or to prevent the brag of that continued Succession, they so much pretend to. More of this Argument, (as to the truth of the story in matter of Fact) he that lists to see, may satisfy himself in Mr. *Cock* Book of *Pope Joane*; who most indolently hath answered all objections, which hath been made against it by those of *Rome*.

8. *Nicholas* the first, the better to fasten the Clergy to the See of *Rome*, and make them the less obnoxious to their natural Princes, was the first who did by law restrain them from Marriage; saying, that it was more honest to have to do with many Women privately, than openly to keep a Wife: and some of his Successors followed it so close, that a Priest of *Placentia* being accused to have Wife and Children, was deprived of his *Benefice*; but upon proof made, that she was the Wife of another man, and his *Strumpet* only, he was again restored to it.

9. *Adrian* the third, ordained, that the Emperor, from thenceforth should have no more to do with the Election, or confirmation of the Pope, but that it should be left wholly to the *Roman Clergy*.

10. *Formosus* was so ill beloved, and of such a general distaste, that Pope *Stephen* the seventh caused his body to be unburied, all his Acts reversed, two of his fingers to be cut off, and then the mangled carcase to be again interred among the *Laitie*. And though these Acts of *Stephen* were adjudged illegal, both by *John* the tenth, and *Pope Romanus*, two of his Successors; and the doings of *Formosus* justified: yet *Sergius* the third caused his corrupt and putrid body to be taken once more out of the grave; and his head to be cut off, as if still alive. So little did the infidelity of *S. Peter's* Chair preserve these Popes from falling into grots and irreconcilable contradictions.

11. *John* the twelfth, was the next after *Sergius* the second that changed his name; a very wicked, cruel and libidinous man: who coming to that place by his Fathers greatness, cut off the nose of one Cardinal, and the hand of another, for that they had signified to the Emperor *Otho* the first, what a scandal all the Church did suffer by his detestable life; and finally, being taken in Adultery, was slain by the husband of the woman.

12. *Gregory* the fifth, finding power of the Emperor, as long as it continued in a way of succession, not likely to be over-born by that of the Church; and being withal incensed against the *Romans*, who, till that time retained some shadow of an Empire; projected the election of the future Emperors, by the Princes of *Germany*; by which the *Germans* were distracted into Factions, and the *Romans* weakened; and so a door left open to the Popes of *Rome*, to make their ends upon them both.

13. *Stephen* the tenth, brought the Church of *Milan* to be under the obedience of the Popes of *Rome*, which till that time had challenged an equality with them; as before

before Pope *Domnus* had done the Church of *Ravenna*, which for some time had challenged the predecency of them.

14. *Gregory* the seventh, commonly called *Hildebrand*, a turbulent and unquiet man, who first adventured to draw the *Premist* laid down by some of his Predecessors into a conclusion: Excommunicating the Emperor *Henry IV*, for meddling with the Investitures of Bishops, and causing *Rodolph* Duke of *Swevia* to rebel against him. A man, much favoured against the Princes of her own house by the Countess *Matilda*; who is said to be so much his friend, that for his sake he left the company of her Husband, and disherited her right Heirs, settling her whole Estates in Italy on the See of *Rome*. And though the Emperor had the better of this Pope, and made him flee out of *Rome*, and die in exile; yet he was fain at last to submit himself to Pope *Paschal* the second, (who had Armed his own Son against him) to attend bare-foot at his own door, and cry *peccavi*.

15. *Sergius* the third, ordained the bearing of Candles in the Feast of the Purification of the Virgin *Mary*, thence called *Candlemas* day.

16. *Sergius* the fourth, was the first that on *Christmas* night, with divers Ceremonies did consecrate Swords, Roses, or the like; to be sent as tokens of love and honour to such Princes as deserved best of them, or whom they desired to oblige. Thus *Leo* the tenth sent a consecrated Rose to *Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*, requesting him to banish *Luther*; and *Paul* the third an hallowed Sword to *James* the fifth of *Scotland*, to engage him in a War against *Henry* the Eighth, who had then withdrawn himself and his Kingdom, from the Pope's commands.

17. *Nicholas* the second took from the *Roman Clergy* the election of Popes, and gave it to the College of *Cardinals*.

18. *Celestine* the second, was the inventor of that mad manner of cursing, or Anathematizing, by Bell, Book, and Candle.

19. *Alexander* the third, pursuing the desperate course of *Gregory* the seventh, excommunicated the Emperor *Frederick I*, and by railing War against him in every place; brought him to that exigent, that he was fain to prostitute himself at his feet: when the Pope treading on his neck, said aloud, *Super Aspidem & Basiliscum*, &c. profanely applying those words to the present occasion. And when the Emperor, to put the better colour on his disgrace, meekly replied, *Non tibi sed Petro*; the Pope not willing to lose his part of so great a glory, subjoined as angrily, *Et mihi sed Petro*.

20. *Innocent* the third held a Council in *Rome*, in which it was decreed that the Pope should have the correction of all *Christian* Princes; and that no Emperor should be acknowledged, till he had sworn obedience to him. Which bringeth into my mind that jolly humour of the great *Cham* of *Tartary*; who when he had kind commands his Trumpeters to found, and make proclamation, that now all other Kings and Princes may sit down to dinner. He brought in the Doctrine of *Transubstantiation*, and ordained that there should be a *Pie* made to cover the consecrated (but now *Transubstantiated*) Bread, and a Bell to be rung before it. He is also said to have first imposed *Auricular Confession* upon the people.

21. *Nicholas* the third, was the first Pope who practised to enrich his kindred, intending to make one of them King of *Lombardy*, another King of *Tuscan*; and to raise the rest to great Advancements out of the Lands of the Church. Before which time (as *Machiavel* very well observeth) as there was no mention of the advancement of any of the Pope's kinsfolks or posterity, so afterwards

they studied no one thing more than to prefer their own blood; inasmuch that they have not only laboured (as he faith) to make them Princes, but if it were possible would procure the Popedom to be made hereditary. So he, with probability enough. For so dearly do they love their *Nephews* (by which name they use to call their Bastards) that it was very justly Gaid by Pope *Alexander* the third, *The Law forbids us to get Children, and the Devil hath given us Nephews in their stead*.

22. *Boniface* the eighth, of whom it is said, *That he entered like a Fox, reigned like a Lion, and died like a Dog*; by his general Bull exempted the Clergy from being chargeable with Taxes and Payments unto Temporal Princes. Which being complied with by the Clergy of England, King *Edward I*, put them out of his protection; and so the Popes Bull left roaring here. He caused the Book of the *Canon Law*, called the *Decretals* to be first let out; and instituted the Feast of *Jubilee*, to be held in *Rome* every hundredth year; but by *Clement* the sixth it was brought unto the fiftieth year, and since reduced to the five and twentieth. This is that *Boniface*, who in that great concourse of people which repaired to *Rome*, to observe his new Feast of *Jubilee*, (to which every one that did repair was to have a plenary remission of all his sins) shewed himself one day in the habit of a Pope, and the next day in that of an Emperor; and caused two Swords to be born before him every day, in sign that all Power Ecclesiastical and Temporal did belong unto him.

23. *Clement* the fifth, was the first that made *Indulgences* and *Pardons* saleable. For seeing (said he) that our Lord of our Saviour's blood had been enough to have saved all Mankind, and yet that all his blood was shed, the over-plus was left to the Church as a standing Treasure, to be disposed of by St. *Peter* and his Successors. And hereunto, to make his Treasure the more inexhaustible, he added the Merits of the Virgin *Mary*, and all other Saints. Being wearied with the infidelities of the people of *Rome*, he removed the Papal See to *Avignon* in France, where it continued for the space of Seventy years.

24. *Clement* the sixth had an ill time of it. For in his Papacy the Emperor gave freely all Lands belonging to the Church, to such as formerly had usurped them; to be holden by them of the Empire. Upon which title the *Mastros* became Lords of *Rimini*, the *Ordelschi* of *Forli*, the *Varenti* of *Caracine*, the *Bentivogli* of *Bononia*, the *Manfredi* of *Faenza*, &c. Which Estates were never recovered to the Church, till the time of Pope *Julius* the second, though conquered from the present owners in the time of *Alexander* the sixth, by *Cesar Borgias* his Son; who had an aim of setting them, and perhaps the Papacy it self, on the *Borgian* Family.

25. *Gregory* the eleventh, returned the Papal Chair again to the City of *Rome*, whither he conveyed himself by Sea in private, for fear of being withheld by the *French*; and being come thither, found the chief parts of the City to over-grown with briars and bushes, and the principal buildings of it so decayed and ruinous, that a little longer absence would have made it desolate.

26. *Paul* the second, endeavoured to encrease the Majesty of the Popedom by Arms and Avarice, and exceeded all his Predecessors in pomp and shew: causing his *Miter* to be enriched with Diamonds, Sapphires, Emeralds and other Stones of great price; and augmenting the splendor of the Cardinals with a Scarlet Gown, whom *Innocent* the fourth had graced with *Red Hats* before. He brought the *Jubilee* from fifty years to twenty-five.

27. Sixtus the fourth ordained a constant Guard to attend his person. He very much beautified and repaired the City of Rome, and was the first founder of the Vatican Library. But on the other side he is said by some, to have set all Offices and Preferments to sale, and to have builded in Rome Stews of both sexes, to bring in Beads, and to authorize our Ladies Psalter.

28. Alexander the sixth, setting aside all modesty, was the first that openly acknowledged his Nephews (as they call their Bastards) to be his Sons. By one of which, the *Cesar Borgia* before named, he recovered *Forli*, *Imola*, the *Cesar* Estates from the present owners, on a and many other Estates in his own Family, as before is design, of selling them in his own Family, as before is said, and to that end called in the *French*, who after made such foul work in Italy.

29. *Julio* the second had more in him of the Soldier, than the *Priest*; recovering many Towns unto the Church, which had been formerly usurped, being taken from the Occupants by *Cesar Borgia*; and keeping Italy in his time in continual Wars. This is the Pope who, passing over the Bridge of *Tiber*, brandished his Sword, and threw his Keys into the River; saying that if *Peter's* Keys would not serve his turn, then *Paul's* Sword should do it.

30. *Leo* the tenth was indeed a great Favourite of Learning, but of great prodigality, and vast expence. For maintenance whereof, he sent his saleable Indulgence into France and Germany: which business being indirectly handled by his Ministers, occasioned *Luther* in Germany, and *Zuinglius* among the *Swissers*, first to write against them; and afterwards to question many points of Popish Doctrine. In pursuance of which quarrel, the Pope of Rome burnt *Luther's* Books, whom he declared for an Heretic; and *Luther* did the like at *Wittenberg* with the Pope's Canon Law, whom he declared to be a Persecutor, a Tyrant, and the very Antichrist. Which flame increased so fast and enlarged so far, that it burnt down a great part of the Papal Monarchy.

31. *Pius* the fourth, continued the Council formerly called at *Trent* by Pope *Paul* the third, but interrupted and laid aside from one Pope to another, and having brought it to an end, and thereby settled and confirmed the Interest of the Church of Rome, caused it to be received as *Oecumenical*: though the Italian Bishops being most of them the Pope's Creatures, did more than double the number of all the rest: and yet some of the rest also were but merely *Titulars*. He added also a new Creed consisting of twelve Articles to be added to that of the *Apostles*, by all who lived in the Communion of the Church of Rome. But of the words and actions of these Ghottly Fathers we have said enough, if not too much. I will therefore end with that of the Painter, who being blamed by a Cardinal, for giving to *St. Peter's* Picture too much of the Red, replied, That he had made him *Jo*, as blushing at the Lies of those who were called his Successors.

As for the Temporal power and greatness of the Popes of Rome, there is a pretended Donation of the Emperor *Constantine*, by which the City of Rome it self, most part of Italy, and Africa, and all the Islands of those Seas are conferred upon them: the forgery whereof is very learnedly shewn by our learned *Græcanbury*, in his Discourse upon that subject. But that Donation might most justly be suspected of Fraud and Forgery, though no body had took the pains to detect the same; considering how fearful the Popes are grown to have the truth thereof disputed: inasmuch that many leaves are razed out of *Guicciardin* by the *Inquisition*, where it had been questioned, For in that place the Historian not only denieth

the said feigned Donation, but affirms that divers learned men reported, That *Constantine* and *Sylvester* (to whom it is said to have been made) lived in divers Ages. This sheweth, how base and obscure the Authority of the Pope was in Rome it self, during the time that the barbarous Nations made havock of Italy.

2. That in the institution of the Exarchate, the Popes had nothing to do with the Temporal Sword, but lived as subject to the Emperors. 3. That they were not very much obeyed in matters Spiritual, by reason of the corruption of their manners. 4. That after the overthrow of the Exarchate, the Emperors now neglecting Italy, the Romans began to be governed by the advice and power of the Popes.

5. That *Pepin* of France, and his Son *Charles* having overthrown the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, gave unto the Popes the Exarchate, *Urbine*, *Ancona*, *Spolito*, and many other Towns and Territories about Rome. 6. That the Popes in all their Bulls and Charters, expressed the date of them in these following words; *Such a one our Lord the Emperor reigning*. 7. That long after the translation of the Empire from France to Germany, the Popes began to make open pretestation, that the Pontifical dignity was rather to give Laws to the Emperors than receive any from them. 8. That being thus raised to an earthly power, they forgot the salvation of souls, sanctity of life, and the Commandments of God, propagation of Religion, and Charity towards men: And that to raise Arms, to make War against *Christians*, to invent new devices for getting of money, to prophane sacred things for their own ends, and to enrich their kindred and children, was their only study. And this is the substance of *Guicciardin* in that place: an Author above all exception. He was a man whom the Popes employed in many businesses of principal importance; so that no hate to them, but love to the truth, made him write thus much. As for the City of Rome, so unlikely it is to have been given by *Constantine*, that neither *Pepin* nor *Charles* his Son, (though most beholding to the Popes than that Emperor) could be induced to part with it.

Lewis surnamed *Pius*, is said to have been the first Donor of it, and a Copy of his Donation is found in the third Book of *Valarterran*, subscribed by the Emperor, his three Sons, ten Bishops, eight Abbots, fifteen Earls, and the Pope's Library-keeper: yet notwithstanding it is thought, by many very learned and judicious men, that really there was no such matter; but that all this was forged by *Anastasi* the Pope's Bibliothecary, or Library-keeper, who is cited as a witness to the Donation. And yet to put the matter further out of question, let us next hear what that great Politician and Statesman, the Recorder of Florence, *Nic. Machiavel*, hath observed in this case. *Rome* (saith he) was always subject to the Lords of Italy, till *Theodorick*, King of the *Goths* removed his Seat to *Ravenna*; for thereby the Romans were enforced to submit themselves to the Bishops, *An. 430*, or thereabouts. And talking of the estate of the Popedom, *An. 931*, he states it thus. *In Rome* were elected yearly out of the Nobility two *Consuls*, who according to the ancient Custom ruled that City. Under them was appointed a Judge to minister justice to the people. There was also a Council of twelve men, which gave Governments unto the Towns subject to Rome. And for the Pope, he had in Rome more or less Authority, according to the favour which he found with the Emperors, or others then most mighty; but the leaving of Italy by the German Emperors, led the Pope in a more absolute Sovereignty over the City. And yet it seems they were not of such absolute power, but that the Romans tugged hard with them for their Liberties. Concerning which he tells

us in another place, That the ambition of the people of Rome did at that time (*viz. An. 1010.*) make much War with the Popes; and that having helped the Pope to drive out the Emperors, and altered the Government of the City as to them seemed good, suddenly they became Enemies to him; and the Popes received more injuries at their hands, than at any other *Christian* Princes; and that even in those days when the Censures of the Popes made all the Welt of the World to tremble, yet even then did the people of Rome rebel, and both the Popes and the people studied for nothing so much, as how one of them might overthrow the Authority and Estimation of the other.

But for the Method and degrees by which the Popes ascended to their temporal greatness, take here an extract of the Story taken out of the best Authors, by the most Reverend Father in God the late Lord Archbishop of *Canterbury*, in his learned and laborious work against *Fisher* the Jesuit. 'The Pope (saith he) being chosen anciently by the Clergy and people of Rome, chosen always to receive from the Emperors hands a ratification of that choice: inasmuch that about the year 579, when all Italy was on fire with the *Lombards*, and *Pelagius* the second constrained through the necessity of the times, to enter upon the Popedom without the Emperor's leave; *St. Gregory* then a Deacon, was shortly after sent in an Embassy to excuse it. But when the *Lombards* grew so great in Italy, and the Empire was so infected with the *Saracens*, and such changes hapned in all parts of the World, as that neither for the present the Homage of the Pope was useful to the Emperor; nor the Protection of the Pope was the Bishop of Rome left to play his own game by himself. A thing which as it pleased him well enough, so both he and his Successors made great advantage by it. For being grown to that eminence by the favour of the Emperors, and the greatness of that City and place of his abode, he then found himself the more free, the greater the Tempest was that beat upon the hearts of the first he set himself to alienate the hearts of the Italians from the Emperor, in which he did prevail so far, that *Theophylact* the Exarch coming into Italy, was opposed by the Soldiers, who wished better to the Pope, than to the Emperor; and the Emperor's own Governour was fain to be defended from his own Soldiers by the power of the Pope, who had gotten an interest in them against their own Master. Next he opposed himself against him; and about the year 710, Pope *Constantine* the first did openly affront *Philippicus* the Emperor, in defence of *Inagers*, as *Onuphrius* telleth us. After him, *Gregory* the second and third, took up his example, and did the like by *Leo Harvius*. By this time the *Lombards* began to pinch very close, and to vex on all sides not only Italy, but Rome too. This drives the Pope to seek a new Patron, and very fitly he meets with *Charles Martel* in France that famous Warrior against the *Saracens*. Him he employeth in the defence of the Church against the *Lombards*; and the Address seems very advantageously taken, it proved so fortunate to them both. For in short time it dissolved the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, having then stood Two hundred and four years, which was the Pope's security: and it brought the Crown of France into the house of *Charles*, and shortly after the Western Empire. And now began the Popes to be great indeed. For by the bounty of *Pepin*, the Son of *Charles*, that which was taken by him from the *Lombards*, was given to the Pope; that is to say, the Exarchate, and

all that lay betwixt the *Apennine* and the River of *Po*. So that now he became a Temporal Prince. But when *Charles* the Great had set up the Western Empire, then he resumed the Ancient and Original Power, to govern the Church, to call Councils, and to order Papal Elections. And this power continued for a time in his posterity; for *Gregory* the seventh was confirmed in the Popedom by the same *Henry* the fourth, whom he afterwards deposed. And it might have continued longer, if the succeeding Emperors had had Abilities enough to secure, or vindicate their own Rights. But the Pope keeping a strong Council about him, and meeting with some weak Princes, and those oft-times distracted with great and dangerous Wars, grew stronger till he had got the better: yet was it carried in succeeding times with great changes of Fortune, and different success; the Emperor sometimes plucking from the Pope, and the Pope from the Emperor; winning and losing ground, as their spirits, abilities, aids and opportunities were; till at last the Pope settled himself on the grounds laid by *Gregory* the seventh, in that great power which he now useth in and over these parts of the *Christian* World. A power first exercised (saith he in another place) by this Pope *Gregory* the seventh, and made too good upon the Emperor *Henry* the fourth, as by Pope *Adrian* the fourth, *Alexander* the third, with some others, upon *Fredrick Barbarossa*. And others of the Emperors were alike served when they did not submit. And for this, I hope his Holiness was not to be blamed. For if the Emperor kept the Pope under for divers years together, against all reason; the Pope, as *Bellarmine* affirms, being never subject to the Emperor, and wanting force to stand on his own *Prerogative*: I hope the Pope having now got power enough, may keep the Emperors under foot, and not suffer them any more to start before him.

Having thus a little glanced at the means, by which the great power of the Church of Rome was first obtained; let us next consider of those policies; by which this Papal Monarchy hath been so long upheld in esteem and credit. We may divide them into three heads. 1. Those by which they have insinuated and crept themselves into the affections and affairs of the greatest Princes. 2. Those by which already they have, and by which they will hereafter be able to secure their estate: And 3. those by which they keep the people in obedience and ignorance.

1. Concerning the first. First, the Donation of several Kingdoms to them which have no right nor title, but by these Grants of the Pope, cannot but bind them fast to uphold that power, without which they could lay no claim to that which they are possessed of. Of which sort was the confirmation of the Kingdom of France to the house of *Pepin*; of *Naples* to the house of *Swabians*, and *Anjou*; of *Navarre* to the *Spaniards*. 2. The readiness of their Ministers to kill such as resist them, cannot but necessitate Princes to seek their friendship, and hold fair with them: especially since by a Write of Excommunication, they can arm the Subjects against their Sovereigns; and without the charge of leaving one Soldier, either destroy him utterly, or bring him to conformity. The frequent Wars raised by them against the Emperors of Germany, and that against King *John* in England, by these Papal fulminations; only the poisoning of the said King *John* by a Monk of *Swinehead*, and killing of King *Henry* the third of France, by *Jacques Clement* are full proofs of this. 3. Then followeth their allowance of Marriages prohibited both by God and Nature; the issue of which cannot but uphold

the Popes Authority, without which their birth would be illegitimate, and consequently themselves incapable of the Estates they are born unto: And by this means they do more strengthen themselves by the unlawful Marriages of others, than ever Prince could do by the lawful Marriages of his own. Nothing more fained *Queen Mary of England* to the See of *Rome*, than the question that was raised about the Marriage of her Mother to King *Henry* the eighth: the lawfulness of which depended chiefly on the dispensation of Pope *Julius* the second. 4. Then cometh in their dispensing with the Oaths of Princes, when they conceive themselves induced upon reason of State, to fly off from those Leagues and break off those Treaties, which have been solemnly made and sworn betwixt them and their Neighbours. By means whereof, such Princes think themselves not perjured, because dispensed with by the Pope; and commonly get something in advantage, or point of profit, for which they cannot be unthankful unto the Papacy. Examples of this kind are obvious in all times and stories. 5. Next comes the choosing of the younger Sons of great Princes into the rank of Cardinals; which obligeth the whole Stock or Family to the Papal Throne: that being a means whereby young Princes are preferred without charge to their Fathers, or any diminution of the Regal Patrimony. 6. And as by these courses he holds in with all *Christian Princes* generally, which are of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; so hath he fastened more particularly on the King of *Spain*; whereof we shall speak further when we come to that Country.

2. Concerning the second: 1. So it is that their Estate hath the himself foundation of any, as being built on the Consciences of men possessed with an opinion of their *Infallibility*, and that undoubted power they pretend unto, not only in Heaven and upon Earth, but also over Hell and Purgatory. 2. Then comes the innumerable Preferences at their disposing, for men of all humours and affections; as having in their power the disposing of almost all the Benefices and Bishopricks in *Italy*, half of those in *Spain*, divers in *Germany* and *France*: which keepeth the Clergy, and all such as are that way studied, in a perpetual dependance upon that See; especially injoying by it many notable Privileges, which those of the *Temporality* are not capable of. 3. Consider next the multitude of *Munk* and *Friers*, whose very being depends wholly upon his Authority; every *Monastery* and *Convent* being a Garrison (as it were) to defend the Papacy, and train up a *Militia of Spiritual Janizaries*; men most affectionately devoted to his See and Service. Of these it is conceived that there are no fewer than a Million, one half whereof at least may be fit for action; and all maintained at other men's cost, themselves not disturbing one penny towards it. 4. Their *Pardons* and *Indulgence* are a great increase to their Revenue: some of them as unlimited as that of Pope *Boniface* the eighth, which was for 82000 years to all that could say such a Prayer of *St. Augustine*; and that for every day, *Totes quater*. 5. Their practising on *Penitents*, whom they persuade in the very agony of their Souls, that there is no salvation for them, but by giving part of their Estates unto the Church. 6. Nor have they found any small advantage to their Power and Patrimony by the invention of *Spiritual Fraternities*, which are appurtenances (as it were) to the orders of *Friers*, and may in number perhaps equal them. Into these the *Lay-people* of all sorts, men and women, married and single, desire to be enrolled; as hereby injoying the spiritual prerogatives of *Indulgences*, and a more speedy dispatch out of *Purgatory*.

3. Concerning the third. 1. They deter the people from reading the Scripture, alledging unto them the perils they may incur by mis-interpretation. 2. They breed an Antipathy between the *Papists* and the *Protestants*; inasmuch that a *Papist* may not say *Amen*, unto a *Protestant's Deo Gratias*. They debar them from all sound of the Religion, in prohibiting the Books of the Reformed Writers; and hiding their own Treasures, in which the Tenet of the *Protestants* is recited only to be confuted; inasmuch that in all *Italy* one shall seldom meet with *Bellarmines* works, or any of the like nature to be sold. 4. They have under pain of Excommunication prohibited the *Italians* from *Travel* and *Traffic* with *Heresical* Countries, or such places, where those contagious sounds and fights (as they term them) might make them return infected. 5. The *Severity*, or *Tyranny* rather of the *Inquisition*, (of which we shall speak more at large when we come to *Spain*) cruellest not only the beginnings, but the smallest suspicions of being this way addicted. And 6. the people thus restrained from *Travel*, are taught to believe that the *Protestants* are Blasphemers of God and all his Saints; that in *England* Churches are turned to Stables, the people grown barbarous and eat young Children; that *Geneva* is a professed Sanctuary of Roguery, and the like. We have yet two latter Examples of their dealing in this kind. First, the gross slander of the *Apostasy* (or, as they call it the Reconciliation) unto their Church, of the Right Reverend Father in God *Dur* King, not long since the Lord Bishop of *London*, a Prelate of too known a faith and zeal, to give occasion for such a calumny. The second, a Book by them published, and commonly sold in *Italy* and *France*, containing a relation of God's judgments, shewn on a sort of *Protestant Heretics*, by the fall of an house in *St. Andrews* Parish in *London*, in which they were affirmed to be a *General Lecture*, *Octo. 26 A.D. 1623*. By which dealing the simple people are made to believe that to be a judgment on us of the *Protestant* party, which the Authors of that Pamphlet well know to be a calumny in regard of us and a sad chance (I will not say a judgment) which befel their own, by the fall of a Chamber in *Black-Fryers*, where they were met to hear the Sermon of one *Duray* a *Papist* Priest, and that too on the fifth of *November* in their own account, being the 26 of *October* before mentioned.

The Popedom being thus cunningly and strongly founded, it cannot be if the Popes had been chosen young, or of the same Family, (so that the Successor had not often crossed the designs of his Predecessor) but that this new Monarchy had been greater and better established, than ever the old *Roman* Empire was in her greatest glory. And to say truth, I have wondered with my self, that some of the more active Popes especially such as were chosen young, and had the happiness to descend of Noble Families, did never seek the settling of this Estate in their own Posterity: especially considering the good *Precedents* which they had before them, both in sacred and in civil histories. The *High Priesthood* in the Church of *Jewry* went from Father to Son; and why should any man think it inconvenient to follow the example of Almighty God, in making the *high Priesthood* in the Church of *Christ* to be also hereditary, not elective? The *Saracens* who were as great Masters for Wit and Policy, as any those Ages did produce, pursued that Precedent; governed by *Hereditary Caliphs* many years together, until the *Sultans* their *Visgerents* (ambitiously affecting the Supreme Command) rooted out their races. And if the same obligation lie on the *Masters of Religion* or mixt Orders, for preserving the Rules and Statutes of their foundation; as is upon the Pope by the fundamental

mental Ordinances of the *Conclave*, as it seems to do so why might not the Popes as well dispense with those *Constitutions*, and turn the Popedom into an Hereditary Estate; as *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, and *Goardus* of *Denmark*, *Masters of the Dutch Knights* in *Prussia* and *Livonia*, in their times have done? Nor can I see, but that such an alteration as I speak of, might be altogether as contenting to the Princes of *Christendom*, as the like change from an unfetled popular Government to an Hereditary Monarchy, was formerly unto the Provinces and People of the State of *Rome*. Of which it is affirmed by that noble Historian and Statesman *Tacitus*, *Neque Provinciae solum verum statum amabant, suspecto Senatus populiq; imperio ab certamina Potentium, & avaritiam Magistratum; invalido Legum auxilio, quæ vi, ambitu, potestatem pecuniâ turbabantur*. The Provinces (saith he) disliked not the alteration, to whom the Government of the Senate and People had been long distastful, by reason of the factions of the great Ones, and covetousness of their Officers: the Laws affording no security at all as being way'd up down by force, ambition and corruption. The Popedom settled in one house, would prove more constant in the preservation of all Leagues and Treaties, more useful to preserve the Interest of their Estate, more useful to the Confederates and Allies thereof upon all occasions, than it is at present; where the Popes so often change their sides, and shift their factions; the Successor many times esteeming it his greatest glory to rescind all the Acts of his Predecessor. And possible enough it is that *Cesar Borgia* the Son of *Alexander VI.* might have some such ends, when it was covenanted betwixt him and *Lewis XII.* of *France*, that being declared General of the Churches Forces, and giving his helping hand to that King in the Conquest of *Milain*; he should be aided by him in recovering all the Lands of the Church, which the Dukes of *Urbine* and *Camerine*, the Families of the *Malatufi*, *Bailiols*, and *Bentivogli*, with divers others of less note, did possess in *Italy*. Which having got into his hands, had not his Fathers sudden death, and his own dangerous sickness happening at the same time, cut off his design; it had been a matter of no great difficulty (if of any at all) to have made himself absolute Master of *Rome*, and of all the Lands of the Church, and to have left the same established in the *Borgian* Family. It is true that such an alteration would be very distastful to the ambition of the Cardinals, who by the deaths (natural or violent, it matters not) of the present Pope, aspire by all means both of love and money to that high dignity. But for my part, I cannot see how all the wit in the *Conclave* had been able to hinder it, if *Alexander*, on a purpose to supply some of that number whom he had invited to a supper, by a mere mistake of his Cup-bearer, had not poisoned himself, (evening the very heat of the business than almost effected) and so made frustrate the device.

But passing by this imagination of an Hereditary Popedom, let us behold it as *Elective*, and look upon the form and order observed in it. Now the Election of the Pope is made most commonly in this place, and manner. In the Popes Palace on the Hill *Patican*, are among other Buildings five Halls, two Chappels, and a Gallery seventy foot long. The Gallery is appointed for Conference, one Chappel for the Mals, and for the Election; the other with the Halls are for the Cardinals Lodgings. Every Hall hath two rows of Chambers, which are purposely for the time, made of green or Violet cloth. To each Cardinal is allowed four servants, to lie in his Chamber. They that are once within, are compelled, unless they be sick, still to continue there; and such as are once out, are no more permitted to go in, left by that means, the

Cardinals should maintain intelligence with any foreign Princes. To this *Conclave* (for by this name the place of the Election is called) is but one door, to which be longed four Locks, and as many Keys. One Key is in the keeping of the Cardinals; one, of the City-Bishops; one, of the *Roman Nobility*, and one, of the *Master of the Ceremonies*. There is in this door a Wicket or Hatch, which is opened only at Dinners and Suppers, whereof the *Master of the Ceremonies* keepeth a key. At this hole the Cardinals servants receive their meat; every dish being first diligently searched, lest any Letters should be conveyed in them. As for the Lodgings they have neither holes nor windows to give light; so that there they make day of Wax-Candles. And lest the Pope should be made by force, both the City and *Conclave* are strongly guarded. When the Cardinals are going to Election, the Privileges of the Cardinals are recited, which every one sweareth to observe, in case he be chosen Pope. Then the *Master of the Ceremonies* ringing a Bell calleth them to Mals: which ended, there is brought to every Cardinal a Chair, and therein a Scroll of all the Cardinals names. Before the Altar is set a Table covered with a Purple Cloth, whereupon is set a Chalice, and a Silver Bell, and about it six Stools, on which sit two Cardinal Bishops, two Cardinal-Priests, and two Cardinal-Deacons. Every Cardinal writeth his voice in a piece of paper, goeth to the Altar, prayeth God to guide him in the Election, putteth his voice into the Chalice, and departeth to his Seat. The first Bishop taketh out all the Papers, and delivereth them to the first Deacon: who unfoldeth each of them, readeth (without mentioning the name of the Election) the name of the Elector: and every Cardinal in his particular Scroll, noteth how many voices every one hath. The account being made, the *first Priest* having the like Scroll, pronounceth which hath most voices: which done, the *Priest* ringeth a Silver Bell; at which call the *Masters of the Ceremonies* bringeth in a Pan of Coals, and burneth all the little Papers, wherein the names of the *Electors* were written. He that hath the most voices (so that his votes exceed the proportion of two parts of three) is acknowledged Pope, and adored by the rest of the Cardinals: but if they exceed not this number, they must begin all anew. If in the space of thirty days the Election be not fully ended, then must the Cardinals be kept from fire, light, and victuals, till they are fully agreed. The Wicket which we before mentioned, is called the *Golden Gate*, at which stand an infinite number of poor people; on whom the new Pope, having opened that Gate, bestoweth his Fatherly Benediction, and remitteth to them all their sins. Then striketh he continually on the same door with a *Golden Mallet*, which whilst he is doing, workmen without break it open. The Chips, Stones, Duff, and Dirt which falleth from the Gate, while it is opening, are gathered and preserved as choicest *Reliques*; and the *Golden Mallet* is usually given to that Cardinal, who is in most grace with the new Pope.

This is the ordinary way of the Popes Election, but subject to much faction and division among the Cardinals, and that in times of less deceit than the present are: Inasmuch as after the death of Pope *Clement IV.* the differences among them held for two years and more. Which gave occasion to one of them to say fit scorn, that they might *never the roof of the house to make way for the Holy Ghost to come upon them*. And there is now much more corruption and abuse in it, than ever formerly, as buying of Voices, setting up some for states and tearing Scrutinies, every Cardinal desiring to have a Pope of his own, or his Prince's Faction. So that

we find it written of an old *Stellian* Cardinal, who after long absence came to the Election of a Pope, where he expected that incessant Prayers, as in times of old, should have procured some fit man to be pointed out to them for the *Vicar of Christ*: that, finding nothing but canvassing, promising rewards, and threatening for Voices in the choice; *Ad huc modum* (faith he) *fuit Pontifices Romani* & so returned unto his Country, and saw Rome no more.

The ordinary Temporal Revenue of the Papacy arising out of Land-rents, Imposts upon Commodities, and sale of Offices, *Boterum* maketh to be better than two Millions of Crowns; but the extraordinary, and *Spiritual*, to be far beyond. For it is said of *Pius Quintus*, who late Pope fix years only, that he got from the *Spanish* Clergy 14 Millions. And though he was a very great Builder, which spent him a great deal of money, yet he so managed it, that he laid up four Millions of Crowns in the Castle of *St. Angelo*. *Sixtus V.* took from the *Jesuits* at one clap 20000 Crowns of yearly rent, (because they were too rich for men professing poverty:) and having far but five years, had coffered up five Millions of Gold; four of which his Successor *Gregory XIV.* spent in less than a year. Out of France they received no less than a Million of Crowns yearly. Out of England, when it was the Pope's *Patus inextinguibile*, they and their Followers exacted no less than 60000 Marks per annum, which amounteth to 120000 pounds of our present Money; and was more than the Kings standing Revenue did attain unto: Yet was this in the time of King *Henry III.* before their avarice and rapine was at the height. And of late days no longer than since the Reign of King *Henry VIII.* besides their *Peter-pence*, which was an Annual Rent upon every Chimney in the Realm, first granted to the Pope by *Offa* King of the *Mercians*, Anno 730. or thereabouts, and afterwards confirmed by *Edselwolf* the second Monarch of England; besides their first Fruits, Tithes, and all other exactions: it was made evident that in some few years then last past, the Popes had received out of England no less than 160000 l. sterling, for the confirmation of Episcopal Elections only. By which we may conjecture what vast sums they drew hence on all other occasions. Let other Countries subject to the Pope's Authority be accordingly rated, and the total will amount to a sum incredible. Next add to this the sums of money they receive from particular persons, for Pardons, for Dispensations with unlawful Marriages, the profits arising from Pilgrimages, from the death and Funerals of great Persons, from the Indulgences granted to Abbies and Convents; in all which the Popes have a share; and it would puzzle a good *Arithmetician* to state his *Integro*. So truly was it said by Pope *Sixtus IV.* that a Pope could never want money, as long as he was able to hold a Pen in his hand. Yet notwithstanding, their Treasury for the most part is but low and empty. For 1. the State they kept, because of that great honour which they have above other Princes, which is to be maintained at a great expence for the more worship the more, as the saying is) is very chargeable unto them; their ordinary Guards standing them in no less than 30000 Crowns per annum. 2. The large allowances which they are fain to give unto their Legates, Nuncios, and other Ministers, keep their Coffers low: the entertainment of their ordinary Nuncios in the Courts of Christian Princes, amounting to no less than 1200 Crowns a month to each. And 3. their greedy desire to enrich their Sons or Kinsmen with the treasures of the Church (with which humour Pope *Sixtus V.* being of poor and obscure birth, was never touched) keeps them always bare. Add unto these the excessive gorgeousness of the Papal Veit-

ments (in which vanity every one seeketh to excel the other) especially that of their *Triple-Crown*; which must needs put them to great charge and continual issues of their treasure. And for an evidence of this last, we find that *Clement V.* who first transferred his See to *Avignon*, to shew his gallantry to the French (probably unacquainted with the like fine sight) had his Crown thick set with Carbuncles and precious stones; one of which being lost by a fall from his Horse, was valued at 6000 Ducats.

As for the Forces of the Church, the Pope is able to impress as great a number of Land-fouldiers out of his Estate, as any Prince or Common-wealth within the limits of Italy. Paul III. sent to the aid of *Charles V.* in the Wars of Germany, 12000 Foot, and 500 Horse; and yet raised his own Family to the Dukedom of *Parma*, *Pius V.* sent to the aid of *Charles IX.* against the *Hugonots*, 4000 Foot, and 1000 Horse, which Forces they maintained at their own charges. And when *Clement* undertook the War of *Ferrara*, he raised out of his Estate 20000 Foot, and 2000 Horse in less than a month; which was more than most Princes in Europe could possibly have done. And for the valour of his Souldiers, and ability of his Commanders, they retain so much (as before was said) of their Ancestors virtues, that there are thought to be many Families in the Estate of the Church, able to furnish all the Common-wealths and Princes of *Christendom*, with sufficient Captains. What and how little he is able to do by Sea, may be best seen out of the aid which he sent to the *Venetians*, at the famous Battle of *Lepanto*, wherein he furnished them with no more than twelve Gallies; and those too hired of the Duke of *Florence*: The *Venetians* in the *Adriatick*, and the *Florentines* in the *Tylian* Seas, having all the Trade, and consequently all the power in the Seas of Italy. It is true, the Pope was bound by the capitulation, to bear the fifth part of the charge of the War, and with the help of the rest of the Princes of Italy (who were to march under his colours) to set forth 50000 Foot, and 4500 Horse: which is as great an Argument of his riches and power by Land, as the other is of his weakness at Sea.

Having a purpose in the prosecution of this Work, to mention such particular Orders of Knighthood, as most Countries have given beginning to; I will here set down the Orders of such Popish *Spiritual Knights* or *Friars*, which his holy Benediction hath erected, and shall allowance doth maintain. And for our better proceeding, we will begin with the original of a *Monastical life*; and then we will make special mention of some of the *Romish* Votaries of both Sexes. Know then, that under the seventh Persecution raised against the Church by *Decius*, one *Paulus*, born at *Thebes* in *Egypt*, retired to a private Cave under the foot of a Rock, Anno 260. Here he is said to have lived one hundred years, and to have been seen often man but one *Anthony* who was at his death. This *Anthony* was the first that followed the example of *Paulus*: a man of a noble House, and one that sold all his Estate, that he might the more privately enjoy himself. He lived an hundred and fifty years, and is called the Father of the Monks. To these beginnings doth *Polidore Virgil* refer the original of the Monks, and religious Orders; the name Monk coming from the Greek *Μοναχ*, because of their lonely and solitary lives. Those of the Religious Orders are called *Fraters*, and in English *Friars*, from the French word *Frere*, which signifieth a Brother; and that either because of their brotherly co-habitation; or else because they are *Fraters in malo*, Brethren in mischief and design.

The foundation of *Monastical* life thus laid by *Paulus*, and *Anthony*; the world increased so fast in Monks and

and *Eremites*, that it seemed necessary to prescribe them Orders. Hereupon *St. Basil* gathered them together, living formerly dispersed; and is said to be the first that built them Monasteries. He is also said to have ordained the three Vows, of Poverty, Chastity, and Obedience; to have instructed them in good Arts, true Religion, and in the service of God, with Hymns, Prayers, and Watching. Of this Order there are not many in the Latin Church, but good plenty of them in the Greek. They are bound to abstain from all kind of Flesh, and are called *Monks* of *St. Basil*, by the name of that Father; amongst the Writings of which Father, the Rules for these *Monasticks* are set down at large.

II. The next who prescribed Orders was *S. Augustine*, born in the year 350, who being thirty years of age, is said to have obtained a Garden without the walls of *Hippo*, for private Contemplations. Twelve only he assumed into his Society, living with them in all integrity, and wearing a leathern Girdle to distinguish them from *Monks*. Branched afterwards into two several and distinct Orders, the one called by the name of *Canon Regular*, whose chief House here in England was *St. John's* near *Colchester*; the other called commonly *Augustin Friars*, or the *Eremites* of *St. Augustin*, as others call them: Of such esteem formerly in the University of *Oxford*, that all who took the Degree of a Master of Arts, were to submit themselves to their Oppositions in the publick Schools, and receive approbation from them; from whence the form, in *Augustinianibus responderis vel opposeris*, still retained among them. Their house in London stood in Broad-street, of which part of the Church still standeth, converted to a Church for the use of the *Dutch*; the rest demolished, and in the place thereof a stately Manſion erected by Sir *William Pawlet* the first Marquels of *Winchester*, and Lord Treasurer of England. These make the first Order of the *Friers Mendicants*. The first Monastery of them was erected at *Paris* by *William Duke of Guien*, Anno 1155; and Anno 1200. they began to flourish in Italy, by the favour of *John Lord of Manua*. The other branches of this Tree, are 1. the *Monks* of *St. Hierom*, 2. the *Carmelites*, 3. the *Crouchet Friars*, and 4. the *Dominicans*.

1. The *Monks* of *St. Hierom* challenge their original from the worthy Father of the Church, so called. They flourish especially in Spain, where there are thirty two Monasteries of them; their chief House being *St. Bartholomews* of *Lupena*; and have taken unto themselves the Rule of Saint *Anthony*. Their Robe is a white Calkoff, under a tawny Cloak.

2. The *Carmelites*, so called from Mount *Carmel* in Syria, pretend their original from *Elias*, and *John the Baptist*. They only allowed at first the Rule of *S. Basil*; and were confirmed in Europe by *Honorius* the Third. They are by some called *Jacobines*, from a Church dedicated to *St. James*, where they had their first Convent; and by us, the *White Friars*, from the colour of their Habit. Their House in London stood in *Fleetstreet*, converted since into a dwelling of the Earls of *Kent*, besides other Tenements. Their Rule was afterwards corrected according to the Rule of *St. Augustin*, by *Dona Erbesa* (or *Teresa*) a Spanish Woman; who made them also certain Constitutions, confirmed by *Pius IV.* Anno 1505.

3. The *Friers of St. Crois*, Croised, or Crouched *Friers*, were first ordained by *Cyriacus* Bishop of *Jerusalem*, who shewed to *Helena* the place where the *Crois* was hidden; hence this Order, which being almost decayed, was restored first by *Urban II.* and afterwards by *Innocent III.* under the Rule of *St. Augustin*. Their Robe is Watcher, and in their hands they carry the Figure of the *Crois*. Their House in London near the Tower, still retains its name.

4. The *Dominicans*, or *Friers Preachers*, were instituted by *S. Dominick* a *Spaniard*. He put himself in this Order with sixteen of his Disciples, under the Rule of *St. Augustin*, Anno 1206. and had his device confirmed by *Honorius* the Third. Their duty is to preach the Gospel in all places unto the farthest parts of the world; which both they did, and their Successors since have done, not at home only, but in *India* and *America*, with great zeal and diligence. They are called by us *Black-Friers*, from the Colour of their Habits, and are the third Order of *Friers Mendicants*. Their House in London stood near *Longgate*, and took up the whole Precinct which is still called *Black-Friers*; though the meaning being remaining of it but the very name.

III. The third that prescribed Orders was *St. Benedict*, born at *Nursia*, in the Duchy of *Spoleto*, Anno 472. He gathered the *Monks* of Italy together, gave them a Rule in Writing, caused them to be called *Benedictines*, or Monks of *St. Benedict*; and lived till he had seen twelve Monasteries filled with them. After his death this Order grew so populous, that there have been of it 29 Popes, 200 Cardinals, 1603 Archbishops, 4000 Bishops, besides some thousands of Canonized Saints, which they use to brag of. Their Habit is a loose Gown of black, reaching down to the ground with a Hood of the same; an under-garment of white woollen, and Boots on their legs. The other principal streams of this Fountain are, 1. the *Monks* of *Clugnie*, 2. of *Carthusia*, 3. of *Cîteaux*, 4. the *Celestines*.

1. The *Monks* of *Clugnie*, are so called from the Abbey of *Clugnie* in the County of *Burgundy*, the Abbot whereof, by name *Odo*, was the first that reformed the *Benedictines*, then fallen from their former integrity, Anno 913. He obtained of the Popes and Emperors, that all such Abbies as would come under the compass of his Reformatiſms (which were in all about two hundred) should be called the *Congregation of Clugnie*, and that they might call their Chapters, and dispatch their common business, when and as often as they pleased.

2. The *Carthusians* were first instituted by one *Bruno*, a German Doctor of Divinity, at the Town of *Carthusia* in *Danphin*, Anno 1080. His followers which were at the first but six, have at this day 93 Monasteries. They eat no flesh, live by couples, labour with their hands, watch, pray, and never meet together but on Sundays. Their House in London by corruption and long tract of time, got the name of the *Charter-House*, (the *Monks* themselves being corruptly called the *Charter-house Monks*) now better known by the name of *Sutton's Hospital*; from the Hospital of the Foundation of *Richard Sutton*, a wealthy Citizen of London.

3. The *Monks* of *Cîteaux* were first instituted by one *Robert*, Abbot of *Malsme*, Anno 1090, or thereabouts; who together with 21 of the most religious of his Convent, retired to *Cîteaux* in *Burgundy* Dutchy; hence the name. About five years after, one *Bernard*, a great Lord, became of their Order, who built and repaired for them 160 Abbies. Their Robe is a white Calkoff, girt with a girdle of wool, the rest black. They were by us called *White Monks*, and the common *Benedictines*, *Black Monks*; both from the colour of their Habits.

4. The *Celestines* owe their original to *Peter de Moron* a *Samnite*, born Anno 1250, who being afterwards for his sanctity chose Pope, was called *Celestine V.* He reformed the *Benedictines*, then much degenerated; and had his Order confirmed by *Gregory XI.* There are at this present 124 Monasteries of them.

IV. The fourth and last that prescribed new Orders to the *Monasticks*, was *St. Francis* of *Assisi* in the Duchy,

of *Spoleta*. He fell from Merchandize, which was his first Profession, into the study of Religion, going barefoot, and behaving himself very penitently: whereupon, great flocks of Disciples following him, he gave them a rule in writing; by which they are bound to profess absolute beggary, and are not permitted to carry any money about them, or more victuals than will for this present serve themselves and their Brethren. This they observe punctually in their own persons, but give themselves leave to have a Boy with them, to do both without scruple. St. Francis desired they should be called *Minors*, to shew their humility; but they are generally called *Franciscans*, by the name of their Founder. By the French, called *Cordeliers*, because of the knotty Cord which they wear about their necks instead of a Girdle; by which they wear about their upper Garment, the *Gray-Friers*, from the colour of their upper Garment. Their House in London stood near *Newgate*, of which the Church, the Cloysters, and some other the publick Offices, do still stand entire: the whole converted to an Hospital for poor Children by King *Edward VI.* in the latter end of his Reign, now best known by the name of *Christ-Church*. Their Rule and Order was confirmed by *Innocent III.* Anno 1212, and is the fourth and last of the *Friers Mendicants*, or begging *Friers*. The other principal Children of this Father, are 1. the *Minims*; and 2. the *Capuchins*.

1. The *Friers Minims*, were first founded by *Franciscus de Pola*, a *Neapolitan*, Anno 1450, according to a correct copy of the Rule of St. Francis of Assisi. His followers keep always a true Lenten Fast, unless in case of sickness. Their Robe is a dark tawny, an Hood of the same hanging to their Girdles.

2. The *Capuchins*, (so called from their Cow or Capuchin) were ordained by one *Matthew Basi* of *Ancona* Frier *Lewis* his Companion obtained for them of the Pope, the Habit and Rule of St. Francis, Anno 1526. In the space of 42 years they increased to 2240 Affiliates, had 222 Monasteries, and were divided into 15 Provinces. They are bound by their Rule to spend their time in prayer, and are generally thought to be the devoutest of all the Orders *Monastical*.

I shall now speak of the *Jesuites*, but that I cannot bring them under any Rule, as being a people neither simply *Lay* nor *Friars*, nor merely *secular* nor *regular*, but all together. They were founded by *Ignatius Loyola*, born in *Navarre*, was lamed in one of his Legs: after which the main basking himself to the study of Religion, he framed this Order, consisting at the first of Ten only. *Paul III.* did confirm it, Anno 1540, confining the number within sixty, which he after enlarged ad infinitum. They are now the greatest Politicians, foundation Scholars, and chiefest upholders of the *Romish* See: so that the only way to establish the *Romish* Religion in any Land, is to plant a College of *Jesuites* in it. To the three Vows of *Poverty*, *Obedience*, and *Chastity*, common to all the other Orders, *Ignatius* at the Institution of this, added the Vow of *Mission*: whereby his Followers are bound to obey their *General*, or the Pope, without demanding any reason, in all dangerous and hazardous attempts whatsoever, for the propagation of the *Romish* Religion, or the massacring of any Prince whose life is a hindrance to their proceedings. It is reported, that a *Jesuit* being in the midst of his Mass, which they call the Sacrifice of the Altar, was sent for by *Ignatius*: to whom, leaving off his Mass, he went immediately, *Ignatius* having no business wherein to employ him, told him, he only sent for him to try his obedience; and withal profanely added, that *Obedience is better than Sacrifice*: and

this is called the blind obedience of the *Jesuites*. To leave them then as they are, the greatest disturbers of the quiet of *Europe*; I have heard a worthy Gentleman, now with God, say many times, that till the *Jesuites* were taken from the Church of *Rome*, and the pious *Puritan* (or *Presbyterian*) Preachers out of the Churches of *Great Britain*, he thought there would never be any peace in *Christendom*; with what a true prefiguring spirit, the event hath followed.

Contrivals with the *Jesuites* in power and learning, and almost coetaneous in point of time, are the *Oratorians*, founded by *Philip Neri* a *Florentine*, Anno 1564. Who marking the great way which the *Jesuites* began to have, and the danger which the Church might run, if that Order were not equally balanced by some other of as much ability, first established this, consisting altogether of Priests; that by their diligence in preaching of the lives of the Saints, and other heads of practical and moral duties, they might divert the torrent of the peoples affection from the brood of *Ignatius*. The renowned Cardinal *Cesar Baronius*, *Francis Bordini*, afterwards Bishop of *Avignon* in *France*, and one *Alexander Fidelis*, were the three first whom he admitted to his Order: initiated in St. *Hierom's* Church at *Rome* by Pope *Pius IV.* with great zeal and cheerfulness; to whom, as to some of his Predecessors, the power and practices of the *Jesuites* were become suspicious. They increased speedily (being countenanced on so good grounds) to great numbers, and a proportionable Revenue, as much esteemed of for their knowledge in Ecclesiastical History, and Practical Divinity, as the others for Philology, Tongues, and the study of Controversies; and more accepted of in most places, because not usually intermeddling in affairs of State. So evenly looked on by the Popes, that the *Jesuites* could not obtain the Canonization of their *Ignatius*, till the *Oratorians* were grown rich enough to celebrate that of their *Nerius* also: which happened in the short Popedom of *Gregory XV.* Anno 1622.

To conclude this discourse of *Monks* and *Friers*, I will say somewhat of the severest kind of *Reclus*, which is the *Anacoret*, or *Anchoret*, so called from *anachore*, because they use to live retired from company. They are kept in a close place, where they must dig their Graves with their nails; badly clad, and worse dieted; not to be pitied for all that, because their restraint of liberty is voluntary; yet to be sorrowed for in this, that after such an earthly Purgatory, they shall find instead of an *Engel*, *bono servo*, a *Quis quesivit hoc de manibus vestris?*

But concerning these Orders of *Monks* and *Friers*, certain it is, that at their first institution they were a People much revered for their holy life: as men that for Christs sake had abandoned all their Poms and Vanities of the World. And questionless they were then a people altogether mortified, and who by their very aspects would gain upon the affection of the hardest heart; inasmuch that not only men, but great personages also did desire to be buried in a *Frier's* weeds; as *Francis* the Second Marquis of *Montmaur*, *Alexander Pius* another Prince of *Italy*, *Isabel* the renowned Queen of *Castile* and *Aragon*, Wife of *Ferdinand* the Catholic; and in late times the great Scholar *Christopher Longinus*. But as *Florus* faith of the Civil Wars between *Cesar* and *Pompey*, *Causa bujus Belli, eadem que omnium, nimia felicitas*, we may say also of these *Friers*: The greatness of their wealth, which many on a superstitious devotion had bequeathed unto them, brought them first to a neglect of their former devout and religious carriage; next to a wretchedness of their credits, and consequently

into

into contempt: so that there was not a people under Heaven that was more infamous in themselves, or more scornfully abused by others. Hence the vulgar sayings of the People, that *Friers wear Crozier on their breasts; because they have none in their hearts*; and that, when a *Frier receives the Razor*, the Devil entereth into him; and the like. Nay, Sir *Thomas Moor*, who lost his head in the Pope's quarrel, sticks not in his *Utopia*, to call them *Errone Maximo*; and would have them comprehended within the Statutes of Vagabonds and lousy Beggars. Now to shew both the humours of Respect and Contempt, used frequently to these *Monks* and *Friers*, as men stood affected; there goeth a Tale, how the Lady *Moor*, Sir *Thomas's* wife, hating by chance a *Frier's* Girdle, shewed it to her Husband with great joy, saying, *Behold Sir Thomas, a step towards Heaven*: whereunto with a scornful laugh he returned this answer, that he feared that step would not bring her a step higher. And as for their reticence and solitary course of life, so it is that many Kings, especially of the *Saxons* in the time of their *Hepherites*, have abandoned their Scepters to enjoy it: And *Berkeley* in his *Argenis*, under the person of *Anacoretus*, hath defended it in such Princes, as have cloistered themselves to enjoy the solitude of a Convent. Which notwithstanding, Philosophers have defined a man to be *felix et liber*, a Creature principally made for civil conversation; the Poets say, *Nascitur indignus per quem non nascitur alter*, that he dieth indebted to the World, who leaveth no posterity behind him: and the *Jews*, which live in poverty numbers even in *Rome* it self, abhor this unlovely kind of living, and prefer a civil sociableness much before it: as to Nature more agreeable, to Man more profitable and consequently to God more acceptable. And having spoken thus much of the *Monks* and *Friers*, defend we now unto this *Nun*.

And indeed I should much wrong the *Friers*, if I should deprive them of the company of their dearer *Poulters*, and therefore take somewhat of them also. Called anciently *Moniales* from the Greek word *Μονή*, from their living alone; whence we also had the names of *Monks* and *Monasteries*: in the middle times called *Nuns*, from *Nona* an Egyptian word, (for *Egypt* in old times was not meanly furnished with such *Eremites*) which also signifieth a solitary and lonely life. A word in some of the barbarous *Latines* very much in use. *Scho-lastica* the Sister of St. *Benedict*, was the first who collected them into Companies, and prescribed them Rules. They are shaved as *Monks* are, and vow as they do perpetual Poverty and Virginity. Which last how well they keep, let *Chonargie* tell us: who telleth us, that *Puellam velare idem est, hanc publicam ad cortandum exponere*: to veil a *Nun*, and prostitute her for a common Harlot, were terms equivalent. And one *Robinson*, who lived for a time in the *English* Nunnery at *Lisbon*, hath told us, that he found a hole in the Garden-wall covered over with Morter, in which were hidden the bones of many newborn children, which their unnatural Mothers had murdered and thrown in there. But of these I will instance only in two Orders, viz. that of St. *Clare*, as being the strictest; and that of St. *Briget* which enjoyeth most liberty.

1. St. *Clare* was a Knights Daughter of *Assisi*, where St. *Francis* was born, with whom she was contemporary, and with whose austere life she was so affected, that she forsok her Fathers house, and followed him. Having learned her *Little* of that *Frier-monger*, she devised an Order of Religious Women, and had it confirmed by Pope *Honorius III.* Anno 1255. Her followers vow Poverty and Virginity, as before was said, go barefoot, feed meanly, and are more strained in their course of

life, than those of any other Order. By their Foundress, out of a desire to conform the better to the Rule and Order of St. *Francis*, they were called *Minors*, or *Minor*, and gave name to the place near the *Tower-hill* in *London*, where they had their House, called from them the *Minors*.

2. St. *Briget* was a Queen of *Swedenland*, and coming to *Rome* on devotion, obtained of Pope *Urban III.* Anno 1170, or thereabouts, that *Friers* and *Nuns* might in some places live together. For being a Woman, and a Widow, she knew best (as it seemeth) what was good for both Sexes; and devised such a Rule, as contented both. But little need we this co-habitation or living together under the shelter of the same Roof. For they had formerly been joyed in carnal affections, though parted by walls; neither were the *Visitation* of the *Friers* so fruitless; but that the *Nuns* did fructify in the same. These *Friers* and *Nuns*, though they live under the same Roof, are prohibited from coming to one another but on special occasions: the *Foundress* so ordering it, that the *Nuns* should lie in the upper Rooms, and the *Friers* in the lower. The *Confessor* also is denied access into their Chambers, but sheweth them through an *Iron-Grate*, by which his Lodging is parted from the Lady *Abbesse's*. And herein lieth the *Mystery of Iniquity*. For *Robinson*, whom before I named, tells us, that at the time of his service in the *English* Nunnery at *Lisbon*, he was shewed a way by which this uncharitable Grate, which seemed to keep the *Friers*, from the company of their *female* Friends, might be, and was on such occasions usually removed, and the access made free and open to each others Beds. Which if it be truly said of these, may be suspected also in all the rest of this Order, and in most also of the others.

And now I return unto my *Friers*, which besides the maintenance which by their Founders is allotted for their present subsistence, are kept in a continual hope and possibility of attaining to the highest honours which that Church can give, if they continue constant in their due obedience. For there is not one of them which hopeth not to be the *Prior* of his Convent; 2. *Provincial* of his Order, in that Country where he liveth; 3. and then the *General* of this Order. Next none more likely than the *Generals* to be chosen *Cardinals*, and out of the *Cardinals* one of necessity must be chosen (and why not he, as well as any of the Pack?) to be Pope of *Rome*. So firm and sweet a Companion of man is *Hope*, that being the last thing that leaves him, it makes all toys sup-portable, all difficulties conquerable.

The Popedom containeth
Archbishops 44. Bishops 57.

The Signeury of VENICE.

North of the Lands of the Church from *Romandiola* to the *Alps*, lie the *Italian* Provinces of the State of *VENICE*, bounded upon the South with the Territory of *Ferrara*, and the rest of *Romandiola*; on the West, with the Dukedom of *Milain*; on the North, with the main body of the *Alps*; and on the East, with the *Adriatic* and the River *Asia*, by which last parted from *Liburnia*, a *Sclavonian* Province. Besides which, it commands a great part of *Dalmatia*, together with the Islands of *Candy*, *Corfu*, *Cephalonia*, *Ibica*, *Zant*, *Ciberra*, and certain others of less note. The length of their Dominions by Sea and Land extending above a thousand Miles but the breadth not answerable.

The

4. The fourth member of this *Elate* with respect to *Italy*, are some *ISLANDS* in the *Adriatick*, which being principally under the command of this Commonwealth, is commonly called the *Gulff Venice*: a Gulf extending in length 700 miles in breadth 140 miles, in some places less: is called of *Adria* once a famous Haven Town (as before was said) at the mouth of *Erebus*; or *Po*: Concerning which we are to know, that though this *Gulff* or Bay of the *Adriatick* extended no farther than the Eastern parts of *Dalmatia*, yet the Sea begetteth to take the name of the *Ionian*; yet *Mare Adriaticum*, or the *Adriatick* Sea was of greater length. Exceeded by the *Ancients* over the *Ionian*, and thence South-westward till it meeteth with the *Tyrrhen* Seas; and Southward till it come to the coast of *Africk*, inasmuch as *Mare Libyicum*, or the Sea of *Africk*, is by *Ortelius* made a part of the *Adriatick*. For speaking of the Province of *Tripolis* (a Province of *Africk*) properly and especially is called, he boundeth it on the North with the *Adriatick*, as he doth the Ille of *Cret*, on the South, with the *Libyan Sea*, and *Adriaticum* *totum*, which they also call the *Adriatick*, as his own words are; The like might also be made evident out of other Authors, both *Greek* and *Latin*; which I note here because *Peau*'s being scoffed up and down in the Sea of *Adria* is said, *Ar. 27. 27.* and being after cast on shore in the Ille of *Malthe*; occasioned some to think this *Melte* or called *Malta* to be that Ille of *Dalmatia*, which is now called *Milid*; being seated in the Bay or *Gulff* of *Adria*, whereas the Text speaks plainly of that Ille of *Malta*, which lieth in the furthest parts of the *Adriatick* Sea, on the Coasts of *Africk*. But to return to this Gulf, it was accounted heretofore to be very tempestuous and unsafe; as appears by *improbo incursum Adria* in *Horace*, the *Minas* *Adria*, in *Catullus*; and in the *Ventus* *tumens Adria*, in *Seneca*'s *Thyestes*. But when the Emperess *Helena* had found the Cross on which *CHRIST* suffered, the caulked one of the three Nails with which his body was fastned to it, to be thrown of purpose into the Sea; since which time, as *Platina* hath told us in the life of *Pope Sylvester* (a very saint and his Author) it hath been into a Bridle for her Son *Constantine*'s Horse, and a Crest for his Helmet of the third. But not to trouble too much to the truth of this miracle, certain it is that the *Venians* are Lords of it, by reason of their Naval Power; and that it is every year espoused to the Duke of *Venice*, by the solemn calling of a wedding Ring; and every year baptized on *Epiphany* day, by the Bishop of *Zanti*. When this last Ceremony took beginning, I am yet to seek. But for the firch, which is performed with a great deal of state, every *Holy Thursday*, the Duke, and all the *Magnificos*, being rowed in the *Bucentaur* (which is a rich and stately Gallie made for such solemnities, and capable of 200 persons, whence it had the name it took beginning from *Pope Alexander* the third. Who being hardly put to it by the Emperor *Frederick Barbaross*, had unto *Venice* in the habit of a Cook; *Sebastian Cyani* being then Duke: in prosecution of whole quarrell, the *Venians* encountered *Otho* the Emperors Son, vanquished

him, and restored the Pope. The Duke returning back in Triumph with his Royal Prisoners, was thus saluted by the Pope. *Cygni, take here this Ring of Gold, and by giving it unto the Sea oblige it unto thee: a Ceremony which on this day (the Ascension day) shall be yearly observed both by thee and thy Successors; that so posterity may know that you have purchased the dominion thereof by your valour, and made it subject to you, as a Wife to her husband.*

The principal Islands of this Sea, lie on the other side thereof, on the coast of *Dalmatia*. Some few there are upon this side, but those (as well as these under the command of this *Sigency*) neither great nor famous. Of these the chief are, 1. *MALAMOCO*, in Latin *Mallum*, situate at the South-west end of the Bank or Causey, called *Il Lido*; now only considerable for the Haven, which is large and deep, made by the influx of *Meduæ* before mentioned; in which the greater ships do ride, till they hire Pilots from *Rovigno* to cross the Bars. It was ennobled heretofore with the Duke's Palace, and an Episcopal See: the See of *Padua* being translated hither, at the fact of that City by the *Lombards*. But the Duke's Palace being removed to *Rialto*, and the Episcopal See to the Island of *Chioggia*; it is now inhabited for the most part by none but Scavengers. 2. *TORCELLAN*, in which there is a little City of the same name, honoured with a Bishops See, (the Bishop of *Altina* with much people with him, for fear of the said *Lombards* retiring hither) but by reason of the ill air not very well peopled. 3. *MURIANUM*, or *MURIANO*, three miles compass, and but one from *Venice*, of a found air, and very well inhabited, the people whereof make the best *Venice* Glasses, so much used in all parts. 4. *CHIOGGIA*, called in Latin *Fossa Claudia*, a little West of *Malamocco*, at the very entrance into the Marishes from the *Adriatic*; distant from *Venice* 25 miles; to which it served instead of a Bulwark. There is a Town in of the same name, to which the Bishops See was removed from *Malamocco*, Anno 1103, and near to which are many Salt-pits, which yield great gain unto the people, and as much unto the Common-wealth. Near to this Island the *Genoese* fo discomfited the *Venetians* in a Fight at Sea, that thereupon, (the taking of the Island following shortly after) they were offered a blank Charter to write what they would. But the *Genoese* being grown too insolent on their good success, made the City desperate; as who putting all to hazard, fell again upon them, beat them, pursued them home, and there utterly crushed them; as we shall tell you more at large when we come to *Genoa*. 5. *POVEGLIA*, five miles from the City, first peopled by some who had raised a commotion in the City, on the death of *Pietro Trademio* the thirteenth Duke. After which much increased both in wealth and buildings, till destroyed by the *Genoese*. It is called *Papias* by the Latins. 6. *JUDECHA*, (in Latin called *Judea*) so named from the *Jews* who did there inhabit: not above half a mile from the City, and not very large; but liberally furnished with most pleasant Gardens. These and the rest reckoned as members of *Trevigiana* or dependants on it.

Between these Islands and the main land of *Friuli*, lieth a shoal of little Isles, in and amongst which lieth the renowned City of *Venice*, the head City of this Common-wealth, and the glory of *Italy*. These Isles 72 in number, but joined together by many Bridges, of which here are said to be 4000 at least, besides 10000 Boats for passage from one life to the other. The compass of the whole aggregate body said to be eight miles, the buildings fair, and generally adorned with Glass Windows; an Ornament not common in *Italy*; where the windows for the most part are made with Paper to

let in the light: and that Paper oiled all over to keep out the wet. The number of the Inhabitants climaxed at 300000. By the situation one would think, that it was denominated from *Venicia*, which in the old *Latina* signifieth the fethering or fethering of the Sea. *JENNIA* mariæ exaltationis q. que ad littus venet, faith the old *Clasary* upon *Isolare* out of *Marcus Varro*. But the truth is, that it was so called from the *Fenice*, the old Inhabitants of the neighbouring Province of *Friuli* who to avoid the fury of the barbarous *Huns* then threatening *Italy*, abandoned the main Land and built this City in the bays and Marishes of the Sea adjoining. And that it might afford them the greater safety, they not only built it in the most inward part of the *Adriatic* Sea, commonly called the Gulf of *Venice*; but in the midst of many Lakes of Salt-water, extending ninety miles in compass, and having on the East the said *Adriatic* Sea for the length of 550 miles; betwixt which and the said Lakes, there is a Bank or Causey which they call *Il Lido*, made as it were by nature to defend the Islands which lie in this Lake, from the violent fury of the Sea. A Causey of 35 miles in length, bending like a Bow, and opening in seven places only, which serve as well to keep the Lakes always full of water for the passages of Vessels to and from the City. Known by the names of the Ports of 1. *Brondolo*, 2. *Chioggia*, 3. *Malamocco*, 4. The three Castles, or the Castles of *San S. Eustachio*, 6. *Lido Maggiore*, or the great there is and 7. The *Troports*: of which that of *Brondolo* lieth most to the South west, and that of *Troports* to the Northwest of the said great Causey. And through every one of these there is a safe passage for Ships and Barrels of smaller burden: the bigger being compelled to lie at Anchor, on the South side of the City, near to the Ports of *Malamocco*, and the Castles of *Lido*, which are well fortified, and there men remain till they are brought in by skillful Pilots, who know the passages, which by reason of the shifting of the Sands, change very often. On the West and North sides, it is compassed with very deep Marishes, about five miles distant from the Land; and on the South with many Islands in which are several Churches and Monasteries, like to many Forts, which lie between it and those parts of *Italy*, which are not under the obedience of the Common-wealth. So that it is impossible to be taken, but by an Army which can stretch 150 miles in compass. It is built, as before is said, on 72 Islands, 60 of which lie close together round about the *Rialto*, the other at a greater distance. Of these the principal, 1. *Haraclea* near the firm land of *Trevigiana*, peopled at first by such as followed *Magnus* Bishop of *Utrecht*, who to avoid the fury of the *Lombards* came and planted here; calling the Island and the Town which they founded in it by the name of *Haraclea*, in honour of *Haraclea* the Eastern Emperor in whose time it happened. Made by this means a Bishops See, and being grown populous withal, it was honoured with the first Seat of the Dukes of *Venice*; removed by *Theodatus* the seventh Duke to *Malamocco*, and from thence finally to *Rialto*. Destroyed by *Pepi* King of *Italy*, Son of *Charler* the Great, it was re-edified in the time of *Angelo Partituro* the tenth Duke, and called *Cita Nova*; more memorable at this time for the antiquity of the Bishops See, than the number of Citizens. 2. *Jesulan*, neighbouring to *Haraclea*, first planted by some Country people, who flying the fury of the *Lombards*, brought with them a great drove of Mares and of Horses, whence it had the name of *Equilene*, or *Equilina*. Made afterwards a Bishops See also, by the name of *Jesulanus* or *Equilensis*. 3. *Grada*, on the same part of the City also, but more towards the North, inhabited as first by such of the City of *Aquileia* as betook themselves thither

thither to avoid the tyranny of the *Hunnes*: but made more eminent than before, by *Paul* the Patriarch of that City, who flying the fury of the *Lombards*, transported to this Island the Reliques and Treasures of his Church; and settled where the Church of *S. Euphemia* had been built before. And though *Helle* who succeeded *Paul*, obtained of Pope *Pelagius* the 11. An. 580, that the Bishops of *Grada* should from thenceforth have the title of Patriarchs, and be esteemed the Metropolitans of the City and Country of *Venice*: yet the *Aquileian* would not be robbed of his ancient privileges, and therefore stirred up many suits and disputes about it. The business compromised at last to this effect, that the Patriarch of *Aquileia* should enjoy his ancient jurisdiction over all the Churches in the Continent which belonged unto him; and that he of *Grada*, with the title and stile of Patriarch, should have like jurisdiction over the Churches in the Islands; that is to say, the Bishopsricks of *Haraclea* (or *Cita Nova*) *Equilina*, *Torcellan*, *Chioggia*, *Caprinæ*, and *Castellina Olinda*. His habitation near the Church of *S. Sylvester*, in the third Region of the City, called *de Canaregio*. 4. *Caprinæ*, towards the openings of the *Adriatic*, a Bishops See before the time of *Charler* the Great, but not observable: none of these four, nor of the residue of the twelve, which be remote from the *Rialto*, being much inhabited at the present. *Castello Olindo*, or *Orivaller* as some call it; situate at the East end of the City, not far from the Causey called *Il Lido*, of old a City of it self (as the former were) now joined by a Bridge to the rest of *Venice*, of most note for the Cathedral Church of *S. Peter*, and the Palace of the *Venetian* Patriarch: this City having been made a Bishops See by Pope *Adrian* the first Anno 774, with jurisdiction over the Isles of *Olivella*, *Rialto*, *Lagaria*, and *Dorsedura*. His title first *Castellonenfis*, but afterwards, the Bishop of *Venice*, because the best part of the City did belong unto him, invested by the Duke, and confirmed by the Patriarch of *Grada*, whose suffragans they were till the year 1450. At what time Pope *Engenius* the 4. (a Native of the City of *Venice*) advanced the Bishops hereof to the dignity and name of Patriarch; aligning the Churches of *Dalmatia* (of which they were intitled Primates) for their jurisdiction. By means whereof, and by persuading him of *Aquileia* to fix his dwelling here also, as before is said, there are no fewer than three Patriarchs which have their constant habitation in the City of *Venice*. 6. *Rialto*, which is of most esteem and reputation, so called *quasi Rivo alto*, because the Marishes are there deeper than in other places; or *quasi Ripa alta*, because it lay higher above the waters than the other Islands. For which reason that Island getting reputation above the rest, most of the Gentlemen settled their dwellings in the same; and drew thither in the end, the Dukes Palace also, inasmuch that in some ancient Writings, the whole City hath been called *Rialto*; many old Records being dated in such and such a year of the *Rialto*. But as they did increase in numbers, so were they fain to spread themselves from one life to another; till in the end they built on all the Islands which lay near together, and might conveniently be joined by Boats or Bridges. By this *Rialto* runs the passage called the *Grand Canale*, being in length about 1300 paces and some forty in breadth; adorned on both sides with stately and magnificent Palaces; and covered with incredible numbers of Boats called *Gondols*, very neatly built, and veiled over with Cloths; so that the passengers may go unseen and unknown, without the molestation of Sun, Wind or Rain. For public Buildings it hath in it 70 Parish Churches, to each of which belongeth a Market-place and a Well; 31 Cloysters of Monks, 28 of Nuns, besides Chappels and Almshouses.

The principal Church of this City is that of *S. Mark*, the Patron of their Common-wealth, whose body they report to have been brought hither from *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, and intombed herein: affirmed by some to be the richest and goodliest Church in all the World. The building of *Mosai* work, of which they boast themselves to have been the Authors. A kind of work by the *Grecians* called *Mosaicum*, and by the *Latine* Writers *Mosaica*, *Mosica*, and *Mosaicia*, wrought out of Stones or Metals of divers colours, into the shape of Flowers, Knots, Birds, Beasts, and other Fancies of the Workman; yet done with such exactness of skill and judgment, that it seemeth to be all one stone, the work rather of Nature than Art. A Church of admirable work both within and without, compacted of most rare pieces of Marble, Porphyrie, and a rich stone which the *Lapidaries* called *Opbitis*, because it is speckled like a Snake: adorned on the outside with 148 Pillars of Marble, and eight of Porphyrie near the door; besides 600 Marble Pillars of a lesser size, which carry up an open Gallery round about the Church; from whence the Magistrates and others of the principal Citizens, behold such shows as are presented in the Market-place, adjoining to it. The Church in length not above 200 foot of *Venice* measure, nor above 50 in breadth: the roof whereof being of an Orbicular form, lieth open at the very top, where the light comes in, there being no Windows in all the Church; as commonly the Churches in *Italy* are exceeding dark, either to strike in the spectators a religious reverence, or to make their Candles shew the better. And for the inside of the Church, the riches of it are so great, Images so glorious, the furniture of the Altars so above comparison, that all the treasures of the State may seem to be amassed in the decking of it. And yet as goodly and as glorious as the Fabrick is, it is still unfinished; and, as some think, is kept unfinished on purpose partly to draw on other Benefactors to advance the work, the benefit of whose liberality may be employed unto the use of the publick Treasury; and partly, left Revenues which are given already should be rendered by the Heirs of the deceased, if the work were ended. So infinitely doth the furniture of the Church exceed the sumptuousness and beauty of the Church it self.

Of other of the publick buildings, the Council-house the Ducal Palace, Monasteries, Churches, and the like, though stately and magnificent Structures, I forbear to speak. Nor shall I here say any thing of their private houses, so large and beautified, that here are said to be no fewer than 200 (most of them on the *Grand Canale*) able to entertain and lodge the best King in Christendom. All I shall add, and so leave this City, will be a word or two of their *Arsenal*, and publick Magazine. In the first of which they have in readiness 200 Gallies, with rooms for Cables, Masts, Sails, Victuals, and Ammunition of all sorts; able thereby to fit out a Navy to Sea, on the shortest warning. And in the other it is said, that they have Arms sufficient for 100000 Soldiers of all sorts; amongst which are affirmed to be a thousand Coats of Plate, garnished with Gold and covered with Velvet; fit for the use and wearing of the greatest Princes. But of their power and forcing both by Sea and Land, we shall speak more shortly. In the mean time I take my leave of this gallant City in this following Epigram of *Samaritanus*, one of our late Italian Poets, viz.

Viderat Adriacis Venetam Neptunus in undis
Stare urbem, et totopondere iura mari:

*Nunc mihi Terpeias quantum vis Joviter, arces
Obijce, & illa tui mania Martis, ait.
Si Pelago Tibirin præfere, Urbem apicis utramque
Illam homines dicere, hanc possidisse deos.*

In English thus :

*Neptune saw Venice in the Adrian Land,
And all the Sea brought under her command ;
Now Jove, said he, thy Roman Towers object,
And those proud Walls which Mars did once protect,
Before the Sea if Tiber thou prefer,
Behold both Cities, and thou wilt aver,
That men build Rome ; the Gods plac'd Venice there.*

Proceed we now unto their story : and if we look upon them in their first Original, we shall find them to have been a people of *Paphlagonia* (a Province of *Asia* the lesser) called the *Hæneti*, who aiding *Priamus* King of *Troy* in his ten years Wars against the *Greeks*, where they lost their King, named *Philemenes* (or *Philemon* as some call him) chose rather to seek out new dwellings, than return with shame unto their old. Upon this resolution they join themselves to *Antenor*, who with some remnant of the *Trojans* had the same design ; and failing as the Wind and Sea conducted them, arrived at last in those parts of *Italy*, now called *Friuli*. So witnesseth the Poet, saying,

*Antenor potuit, mediis clapsus Achivis,
Illyricos penetrare Sinus, aque intima tutus
Regna Liburnorum, & fontes superare Timavi.*

Antenor through the *Greeks* could force his way,
And safely piercing the *Illyrian* Bay,
Cross the *Liburnian* Realms, and conquer all,
From fierce *Timavus* Fountain, to his fall.

Here landing they subdued the *Enganei* (who before inhabited this Tract) and possessed their Dwellings : the name of *Hæneti* being changed into that of *Veneti*. But this perhaps not done till subdued by the *Galls*, and made part of *Gallia Cisalpina* : agreeably to the name of the *Veneti*, an old *Gallick* Nation, opposite to the Isle of *Britain*. When those *Galls* were vanquished by the *Romans*, the name and Nation of these *Veneti*, was so considerable, that their Territory had the name of *Venetia* ; and together with *Hilvania*, made one Province of the *Roman* Empire. And here they lived in peace and safety under the protection of the Empire, till the terrible Noise of the great Preparation of the *Huns* ; for the Conquest of *Italy* occasioned many of the principal Men, with their several Retinues, to betake themselves to the Islands, and inaccessible Marishes of the *Adriatick* ; where in the place now called *Rialto*, they laid the foundation of this City, *March 25, Anno 421*. Exceedingly increased by the destruction of *Aquileia*, and the neighbouring Cities by *Attila*, and the said *Barbarians*, *Anno 456*. at what time it began to be called *Venetia*, by the name of their Nation. Not much encreased in Power and Greatness, at the fall of the *Lombardian* Kingdom : though for considerable at that time, that in the Division of *Italy* made by *Charley* the Great, betwixt himself, the

Popes and the Eastern Emperors ; the *Venetians* were left at liberty, as a Free-Estate : and they deserved to be left in a free condition, considering how notably they had freed themselves from *Pepin*, the Son of *Charley*, who invaded them with a puissant Army, and was well beaten for his labour, though at first successful. After which making use of their situation, they grew not only rich in trade, but strong in shipping ; and thereby did good service to the Western Princes, in their Wars against the *Turks* in the *Holy Land*. And they served themselves well by it too : getting in one Expedition only (that namely, in which the Empire of *Constantinople* was made a Prey unto the *Latines*, *Anno 1200*.) all the Islands which they have at the present, in the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas ; many in those Seas which they have lost ; and not a few good Towns in *Peloponnesus*, since conquered from them by the *Turks*. Contending with the *Genoese* for the Sovereignty of the *Mediterranean*, they received to great a Blow at the Naval Battle near *Chinggin* (spoken of before) that they had utterly lost all, if the Enemy could have used his Fortune with Moderation. But being recovered of the Blow, after many various successes and Events of War, *Anno 1381*, they got the better of them, and made them quiet : by means whereof being Lords Paramount at Sea, they next cast their Eyes on the main Land of *Italy*, which now they were at more leisure to look after, than they had been formerly. The *Hilfrians* had before infected them with Piracy, and were punished for it, in the time of Duke *Pietro Candiano*, by the loss of many of their Towns : but in the year 1390, the whole Country is brought under the command of this Common-wealth. *Padua* with a great part of *Trevigiana* then appendant on it, they extorted from the noble Family of the *Carrari* *Anno 1400*. The City of *Vicentia* they possessed themselves of in the same year also ; and not long after fully perfected their Conquest of *Hilvania*, with the Revolts whereof they had before been often troubled.

But that whereby they most improved their Estate, was by a constant watching of their Opportunities, taking advantage of the Factions and Frictions amongst their neighbours, and working their own greatness out of others Ruines. By means whereof they came possessed of many places, of right belonging to the Empire, and the Church of *Rome* ; as also of some Towns, pertaining to the Dutchy of *Millain* ; and four of the best Havens in the *Adriatick*, which properly belonged to the Realm of *Naples* : not giving aid to any of their distressed Neighbours, without the Mortgage or direct Sale of some Place or other. Which lordly kind of Merchandizing, drew all the Princes of those parts, (Confederated together in a League at *Cambray Anno 1508*.) to make War upon them ; every one to recover by strong hand, what the *Venetian* had extorted from them in their necessity. And the Confederates thrived so well, that *Maximilian* the Emperor recovered to the Empire, the Towns and Territories of *Padua*, *Vicentia*, *Vercina*, *Triest*, *Friuli*, and whatsoever else he laid claim unto ; the Pops in Right of the Church, regained *Ravenna*, *Cervia*, *Rimini* (or *Avimimum*) and *Faventia* ; Lewis the 12. of France in Right of the Dutchy of *Millain*, *Bergamum*, *Crema*, *Cremona*, *Brescia* : the King of Spain in right of the Realm of *Naples*, *Manfredonia*, *Trona*, *Barletta*, and *Monopoli*, all upon the *Adriatick* ; the Duke of *Ferrara* gained *Ravenna*, and the Duke of *Mantua* the Town of *Assisio*. So that the *Venetians* being (like the Jay) stripped of all their Feathers, were fain to quit the firm land, and betake themselves unto the Isles and Marishes of their City ; having not one Foot, of all their whole Dominion left them in *Italy*, but

but their Seas and Islands. And yet in very little time partly by working on the Pope to whom they quitted all their interests in the Towns aforesaid ; and partly by dividing the rest of the Confederates from one another ; they recovered all that they had lost in a little time, except the Towns of *Naples* only, for which they were not willing to contend with the Crown of Spain.

The Government is *Aristocratical*, managed only by the principal men of all the City, both for birth and breeding ; the common people having no Authority in affairs of State. The chief Officers at the first were many, whom they called *Tribunes* : but experience being had of that confusion, which a multitude of Governours carrieth for the most part with it, in the year 709, they made choice of one chief Officer, whom they called their Duke. Under these Dukes they have gotten that great Dominion which they now enjoy : The authority of which Dukes was at first more absolute, but by degrees restrained and limited within narrower bounds. He that beholdeth him in his Robes, his gravity and outward Port, and the respect given him by the people, would think no Prince could be more absolute and supreme. But look upon him in the exercise and power of Government and he is nothing in the world but an empty Title. For notwithstanding that he enjoyeth to great a dignity, yet hath he full power in nothing, not being able to determine in any point, without the presence of his *Councillors* (being fix in number) who always sit with him, and dispatch affairs both publick and private ; as namely, giving audience to Ambassadors from Foreign States, receiving Letters from their own Ministers, granting of Privileges and the like in which the Duke can do just nothing if four (at least) of these *Councillors* be not present with him.

And yet these *Councillors* without him may conclude of any thing. Nay he is so restrained in all things to the power of the Senate, and to three Officers called the *Capi*, that he may not go out of the Town without their consent ; and by them is prescribed an order in his own Apparel. So that he is but little better than a Prisoner, when within the City ; and a Traytor, if he stir abroad : at the belt, but an honourable Servant. And his Revenue is as little as his Authority ; as being allowed out of the common Treasury, no more than 40000 *Ducats* a year, towards his expence and entertainment. As for the Sovereignty of the State, that resides wholly in the Senate ; but representatively in the Duke, the fix *Councillors*, and the three Heads or Presidents of the Forty, which are those Officers (as I take it) whom they call the *Capi*. The Senate or Great Council, consists of all the Gentlemen of Venice, above five and twenty years of age, which may amount to the number of two thousand five hundred, though seldom half that number do assemble at once, by reason of their several employments in affairs of the Common-wealth, in other places : who usually do meet together every Sunday morning, and on the morning of their Festivals, where they choose Magistrates, and distribute Governments, and other matters of the State. But because such great Bodies move but slowly, and are not very capable of trust and secrecy, they parcel this great Council into lesser Members ; whereof the principal are the *Progradi*, and the Council of Ten. That of the *Progradi* consisteth of 120 in which they treat of and determine matters of the greatest importance ; and therein conclude commonly of such principal points, as formerly have been proposed and treated of in the great Assembly : And in this Council, besides the 120 before mentioned, the Duke, the six *Councillors*, and the Council of Ten, and all such as have born any publick Office, have their voice or suffrage. This is that Council which

properly and more especially is called the Senate ; in which nothing is to be concluded or passed into Acts, except four of the six *Councillors* be present at them, and that sixty at the least of the whole number give their suffrage to it. Then for the Council of Ten, their power is universal, over all affairs, such as the other Councils may not meddle with, as to conclusion of War, or Peace, to put in execution what they think most necessary for the benefit of the Common-wealth, and other things of like weight and moment : which if they were first treated of in the General Council or Assembly, and after in that of the *Progradi*, as they ought to be in common course ; could not be possibly managed with such speed and secrecy, as the exigencies of the State require. And in this Council, with the Prince and his six Assistants, the supreme Majesty of the State doth reside especially. Some other Officers there are, and those of great authority and reputation, as the *Procurators* of St. Mark, which have the charge of the publick Treasures, and the *Avogadori* or *Tribunes* (as one might call them) of the people, being three in all ; one of which must be always present in all consultations, lest any thing should pass to the prejudice, and infringement of the Privileges of the common people.

For the whole body of the City consisteth either of the Gentlemen, or of Artificers and Commons. These last are the descendants and progeny of such as came to settle here when the State was fixed ; invited to dwell here, and to follow their occupations, by several Privileges and Immunities which were offered to them, and these they neither admit into any of their Councils, nor into any of the Offices of Trust and Power, except it be two, that namely of the Chancellor, and the principal Secretaries, which pertain only to the people. The other are the issue or descendants of those, who first laid the foundation of their City and Common-wealth ; and these they have in full respect, and to high esteem, that to make any stranger (how great and eminent soever) a Gentleman of the City, is the greatest honour which can beflow ; and not bestowed but upon the best deserver. Henry 3. of France taking this City in his way out of Poland, thought himself graced with this attribute, which they are very dainty and sparing of, it being the highest honour which they vouchsafe to impart to such Commanders of their own, and Ambassadors of other Princes as have well deserved it. And that this honour may be kept up to the very height, and their Nobility grow not too cheap by being too numerous, neither the younger Sons of these Gentlemen within the City, or of the Noblemen in the Country are permitted to marry. But otherwise they suffer them to satisfy their lusts, with too much impunity ; and for their fakes alone of *Stenys*, as an evil not to be avoided on the former grounds.

Now as *Ordo in Tacito* said to the *Prætorian* Souldiers, *Principi & Senatori oritur, Senatus & nobis* : so out of these Gentlemen are chosen the Senators, out of them the Duke. His election by *Contrarius* is described in this manner. In the vacancy of the place, all the Gentry above thirty years of age are assembled. So many as meet, cast their names into a pot ; and in another are just as many balls, of which thirty only are gilt. Then a child draweth for each, till the thirty gilt ones be all drawn, for which thirty the child draweth again the second time out of another pot, that hath only nine gilt balls. The nine so drawn, nominate forty, out of which forty are twelve again selected by the same kind of lot. These twelve nominate five and twenty, out of which five and twenty are nine again by lot set apart. These nine nominate 45, who are by lot again reduced unto eleven. These eleven choose forty one, of the best

and chiefest of the *Senators*; who after an Oath taken severally, to choose whom they judge worthiest, write in a Scrole every one whom he best liketh. The Scroles are mingled together, and then drawn, the fittest of the Persons then drawn is discusse, and he that hath most voices above five and twenty, is the man whom they pronounce to be elected, and adjudged with due solemnities to be created their *Duke*. By the like kind of Lottery do they choose Gentlemen in the Senate, and make public Officers, insumch that *Contarenius*, who hath committed unto writing these publick Forms, conceiveth (I will not say how rightly) that the *Venetian* Common-wealth was modelled by *Plato's* Platform.

But whether this be so or no, certain it is, that this Common-wealth thus constituted, and modelled, as before is said, hath lasted longer under one form of Government, than any *Republick* in the world, either *Greek* or *Roman*. Nor hath it only preserved it self in the same condition, but may most justly be accounted one of the strongest Bulwarks of *Christendom* against the incroachments of the *Turks*: the Wars whereof hath procured peace, and the peace thereof hath procured plenty to the rest of *Europe*. Insumch, that it may well be said, that as *Europe* is the Head of the World, and *Italy* the face of *Europe*, so *Venice* is the eye of *Italy*; the fairest, strongest, and most active part in that powerful Body. As if the *Genius* of old *Rome* by some *Psychogical* transmigration had passed into the body of this powerful State, and animated it with all the virtues of that City, but knit with a more permanent and constant temper. From so base and abject a beginning is this City grown to be one of the best *Supporters* of the *Arms* of *Europe*.

As for the Religion of this State, they tolerate that of the *Greek* Church, but they themselves profess no other than that of the Church of *Rome*: yet with such caution and respect to their own authority, that they suffer not the Clergy to enjoy those privileges, which they possess in other Countries, to the publick prejudice. Hence grew the quarrel betwixt them, and *Pope Paul* the fifth, in which the *Signeury* stood stiffly to their ancient Rights, and caused Mass to be duly said, notwithstanding all their Churches were under the interdict; banished the *Jesuites* for ever out of their Dominions, for sticking too busily in behalf of the *Pope*: and in the end prevailed too far by their constant courage, that the *Pope* was fain to far by their constant courage, and reconcile them to the Church, give over the Cause, and reconcile them to the Church, without any submission. A notable example to all *Christian* Princes, how to behave themselves towards those of *Rome*; who are not to be gained upon but by such resistances. So easie a thing it is for men of constancy and courage to shake off that yoke, which *Papal* Tyranny and Superstition hath imposed upon them.

In managing their Wars they anciently observed two Rules, which most conduced to the enlargement and security of their Common-wealth. The first was the exempting of their own Citizens from the Wars (not out of jealousy, but care of their preservation) unless compelled to the contrary by extream necessity; the body of their Armies being compounded out of the Provincial Subjects, intermixt with *Mercenaries*. By means whereof they did not only keep their City in the same condition, able at any time, and at all times, to give Law to the rest of their Dominions: but waited the hot and boiling spirits of their Subjects, in the Wars abroad; which otherwise might have made too much work at home. The other was the entertaining of some neighbouring Prince to be the General of their Forces; whom in the conclusion of the service they dismissed with honour and reward. And by this course they avoided faction, and prevented servitude: Either or both of which might have

happened by employing any of their own great ones in the chief commands, who (after the example of *Julius Caesar* in the State of *Rome*) having a strong party within the City, and an Army without, might perhaps have made himself their Prince. But this was only in the conduct of their Wars in *Italy*, and in such times when the State was not so well balanced as it hath been since.

As for the Forces of the State, we may behold them in relation to Sea or Land. Their Land-Forces which they have in continual pay, for defence of their Dominion, consist of 28000 Foot, with Captains, and all other Officers inrolled and paid; and besides those, they have a choice Band of 4000 Musketeers, for exercising of which, they keep yearly *Musters*, as well to improve them in experience, as to proportion them some gratuities, according to their well-deservings. And as for *Hofes*, they maintain constantly 6000 men at Arms, well appointed and paid; the like whereof is not to be found in all *Italy*. And yet besides this constant and ordinary establishment, they are able to bring great Forces into the Field: as appeareth by their Army against *Lewis XII.* in which without diminishing any of their Forts and Garrisons, the had 2000 men of Arms, 3000 light Horse, 30000 Foot, most of their own natural Subjects; saving that they were interlined with some Bands of *Swissers*: to which people they give yearly Pensions to be assured of their aid upon all occasions. They for the Sea-Force, besides that they keep fifty Gallies in continual action, for defence of the *Adriatick* and that they have no less than 200 more laid up in the *Arsenal*, with all manner of tackling and ammunition appertaining to them: they have 10000 men enrolled to serve at the *Oar*, and may raise as many as they please for those kind of services, out of those parts of *Sclavonia*, which are subject to them. But the great evidence of the power they can make at Sea, was the great Fleet set out against the *Grand Signieur* for the War of *Cyprus*, *An. 1570.* in which they manned out one great Gallion, eleven great Gallies, five and twenty tall Ships, and one hundred and fifty Gallies of lesser burden; being in all one hundred and eighty seven Sail, fit for present service. To give the total Sum in brief: they held a War by Sea and Land for seven years together, against all the Princes of *Christendom* (excepting *England*) confederated against them by the League at *Cambray*: in all which time they neither wanted men nor money; and in the end, were the least losers by the bargain.

By this we may conjecture also at the greatness of the publick Treasury, and of the yearly income which supplies the same. For though it be conceived that their ordinary standing Revenue be but four Millions of *Ducats* yearly (which yet is more than any *Christian* Prince can boast of, except *France* and *Spain*) yet they have many other ways to advance their Treasury, by laying new Imposts on commodities as they fee occasions, which needs must rise to vast and most considerable sums, in a City of the greatest Traffick of any in *Europe*, and perhaps in all the World besides. And yet besides such Customs and Imposts as they lay on Merchandise, there is nothing which the people do eat or drink, for which they pay not something to the publick Treasury: over and above which, the poorest Labourer in the whole *Signeury* payeth his *Poll-money* also. Insumch that it is credibly affirmed, that the *Christians* generally do live in a better condition under the *Turk*, than under the *Venetians*. Without such helps, (though heavy and burdensome to the Subject) they could not possibly have spent twelve millions in the War against *Sclimus II.* and as many a little before that, in the enterprise of *Ferrara*, and the War raised against them by the League at *Cambray*, which was that formerly remembered. As

As for the Dukes of *Venice*, though no *Sovereign* Prince, nor such as do succeed each other in the right of inheritance: yet being they are always men of most eminent note, and that in their names all the business of State is acted, and all writings dated, I will buyon a Catalogue of them to this present; to the end that meeting with their names in the course of History, we may the better know in what times they lived.

The Dukes of Venice.

697	1	Paulus Anafistus	20	1298	51	Marino Giorgio.
728	2	Marcel Tegalio	10.	1299	52	John Saurance.
727	3	Hippatus Ufus	11.	1315	53	Franciscus Dondolo
		<i>An Interregnum of six years.</i>				Barthol Gradonico.
742	4	Theodorus Hippatus	1330	55	Andrea Dondolo.	
755	5	Galla of Malanocco	1342	56	Marinus Valerius.	
756	6	Dominico Monerata.		57	John Gradonico.	
760	7	Maurice Galbata.	1343	58	John Damphin.	
783	8	John Galbata	1348	59	Lorenzo Celis.	
799	9	Obelevius.	1352	60	Marco Cornaro.	
804	10	Angelus Paritarius	1355	61	Andrea Contareni.	
822	11	Justinian Paritarius	1371	62	Michael Morosini.	
824	12	John Paritarius.		63	Antonio Venier.	
833	13	Petro Tradonico.	1389	64	Michael Steno.	
859	14	Ufus Paritarius.	1402	65	Thomaz Micconio.	
865	15	John Paritarius.	1412	66	Franciscus Foscari.	
881	16	Petro Candiano.	1457	67	Yschol Malipiere.	
		17	Dominico Tribuno.	1452	68	Christophoro Moro.
		18	Petro Tribuno.	1461	69	Nicolas Troni.
905	19	Ufus Badoareus.	1463	70	Nicolas Marcelli.	
925	20	Petro Candiano II.	1464	71	Petro Mocenico.	
932	21	Petro Badoario.	1465	72	Andrea Andramine.	
935	22	Petro Candiano III.	1467	73	John Mocenico.	
950	23	Petro Candiano IV.	1574	74	Marco Barbado.	
970	24	Petro Urfola		75	Augustino Barbado.	
972	25	Vital Candiano.	1489	76	Leonardo Loredani.	
973	26	Tribuno Momo.	1509	77	Antonio Grimani.	
985	27	Petro Urfola II.	1511	78	Andrea Gritti.	
1003	28	Oiba Urfola.	1527	79	Petro Lande.	
1020	29	Petro Barbolani.	1533	80	Francisco Donati.	
1021	30	Dominico Flabenco.	1540	81	Antonio Trevisani.	
1031	31	Dominico Contareni.	1541	82	Francisco Vivieri.	
1059	32	Dominico Silvie.	1543	83	Lorenzo Prioli.	
1072	33	Vitalis Valerius.	1547	84	Hierome Prioli.	
1084	34	Vitalis Micheli.	1555	85	Petro Loredani.	
1090	35	Ordelafus Valerius.	1560	86	Lewis Mocenico.	
1105	36	Dominico Micheli.	1567	87	Sebasten Venier.	
1118	37	Petrus Polanus.	1578	88	Nicola di pont.	
1136	38	Dominico Morosini.	1586	89	Yschol Giorgio.	
1143	39	Vitalis Micheli II.	1596	90	Marino Grimani.	
1160	40	Sebastian Ziani.	1606	91	Leonardo Donati.	
1165	41	Aura Maripiere.	1612	92	Antonio Memmo.	
1179	42	Henrico Dondolo.	1615	93	Giovanni Bembo.	
1193	43	Petro Ziani.	1618	94	Nicholas Donati.	
1216	44	Jacobo Tepuli.	1618	95	Antonio Priuli.	
1236	45	Marino Morosini	1623	96	Francisco Corredo	
1240	46	Renieri Zeno.			97 Giovanni Corredo	
1256	47	Lorenzo Tepuli.			98 Francisco Erizzo	
1263	48	Jacobo Contareni.			now living, An. 1648.	
1267	49	Giovanni Dondolo				
1276	50	Petro Gradonico				

The principal Orders of *Knighthood* in this *Republick* are 1. of *S. Mark*, who is the Patron of this City; instituted in the year 1330, and renewed again (being grown somewhat out of use) *An. 1562*: The honour is commonly bestowed on the person present, sometimes by Letters Patents on a party absent; as lately upon *Daniel Heinsius*, one of great eminence for Learning in the

Netherlands. The person chosen is to be of noble blood, at the least a Gentleman, the Word or Motto of the Order, is, *Pax tibi Marce*.

2. Of the glorious *Virgin*, first instituted by *Bartholomew of Vincenti*, *An. 1222*. Their charge is to defend Widows and Orphans, and to procure (as much as in them is) the peace of *Italy*. It was allowed of by *Pope Urban* the Fourth, *An. 1262*. The Arms of this Order are a purple Crofs, between certain Stars. The habit a white Surcoat over a Russet Cloak; and seems to be as well a Religious as a Military Institution, like to the *Spanish* Orders, and that of *Malta*.

There are in the Provinces of this Common-wealth, before described, Patriarchs 2. Bishops 16.

The Great Dukedom of TUSCANY.

HAVING thus run along the Coast of the *Adriatick*, or upper Seas from the Lands of the Church unto the *Alper*, which divide *Italy* from *Germany*; let us next keep along the tract of the *Tuscan* or Lower Sea from the said Lands of the Church, to that part of the *Alper* which divide *Italy* from *France*. And in the first place we meet with the Dukedom of *Florence*, or the Estate of the great Duke of *Tuscany*; divided on the East from *S. Peters Territory*, by the River *Pifos*; on the West from the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, by the River *Masra*, and the strong Fort of *Sarazena* on the North from *Ramandiola*, and *Marca Anconitana*; by the *Apennine* hills, and on the South side it is bounded, with the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas.

It taketh up the greatest and goodliest part of all that which anciently was called *Tuscany* from the *Greek* word *σκω*, which signifieth to Sacrifice; of which act of Religious Worshipping, or rather of some superstitious Ceremonies appertaining to it, they are conceived to be the Authors. And to say truth, they were much given to *Sooth-sayings* and Divinations, and such like vanities of *Conjilium*: *Tager*, that *Merlin* of the old world, first appearing here, from whom they learned the greatest part of their Superstitions. So that this name was adventitious and accidential. For properly and originally it was called *Tyrrhenia*, from *Tyrrhenus* the Son of *Alys* King of *Lydia*, who came and planted in these parts about the time that *Edom* judged the Tribes of *Israel*. But these names signified the same both Country and people, though in divers Languages; and with respect to different Originations the name of *Tyrrheni*, and *Tyrrhenia* being most used by the *Greeks*; as that of *Tyfl*, and *Tylia*, by their neighbours of *Rome*, who also called the people *Hurufiti*, and the Country *Hetruria*, from a particular Province of it which was so entitled Anciently it extended as far Eastward as the Banks of *Tiber*, and the other bounds being then as they are at the presents; in that tract gave dwelling to a potent Nation, who not content to be restrained within the *Apennine* and the *Tiber*, wasted three hundred Towns of the *Umbri*, the next bordering Nation; and built twelve Cities on the other side of the mountains, that is to say, *Adria*, *Venona*, *Vincenia*, *Trent*, *Bergamo*, *Manua*, *Coma*, *Fercelle*, *Novara*, *Parma*, *Bononia*, and *Regium*, all of them and reputation to this very day. They were the first Nation that carried an *Offensive* War to the Gates of *Rome*, which they gave aid to the *Tarquins* under King *Porfena*; and held

without much labour and great Charges, reduced to their former obedience. As for the City it self, it is almost as big as *Florence*; this being five miles in compals, and that but six; but very thort of it in the number of people, *Florence* being said to contain 90000 souls, *Pisa* not a third part of that proportion: yet hath it very good advantages to make it populous, that is to say, the publick *Arsenal* for shipping, an University for Students, and the See of an Archbishop: the Cathedral Church of which is a very beautiful piece of work, the Gates thereof are Brass, and the Steeple of it of such artificial and exquisite building, that it sheweth as if it were always falling. But the unwholsomness of the air over-burtheneth all these fair advantages.

The next place of importance within the Territory of this City is the Town and Haven of *Ligorn*, (*Livornum* it is called in *Latine*) seated upon the influx of the River *Arno*; well fortified against the *Genese*, by whom the Works were once slighted, Anno 1297. Upon a reconciliation made between those States, it returned again to its old Masters. And when the *Pisans* were sold over to the *Florentines*, by the Duke of *Millain*; *Thomas Frugosa* Duke of *Genoa*, seized upon this place, and sold it also to the same *Chapman*, for 120000 Ducats. By the care of Duke *Cosmo* and his two Sons it was much improved in strength and beauty; and so well fortified, that it is thought to be one of the strongest Cities in *Christendom*: Cities I say, and not Castles, the Castles of *Stockholm* in *Sweden*, and that of *Millain*, being held to be the strongest Forts in the World. After this comes in 3. *Petra Sancta*, on the West side of the *Arno*, (a place of great consequence and strength) one of the best pieces of the *Pisans* when a Free-Estate, against their old enemies the *Genese*, towards whom it standeth. 4. *Terracola*, Eastward of *Ligorn*, neighboured with a capacious Bay on the *Mediterranean*. 5. *Castellona*, an Episcopall See. 6. *Porto Baratto*, bordering on the Signeury of *Sienna*, now nothing but a station for Ships (nor much used for that) but heretofore beautified with one of the best Cities of the *Tuscan*, called *Populonia*.

3. The third member of this Dukedom is the City and Territory of *SIE NNA* A. lying betwixt the Estate of *Pisa*, and the Land of the Church. The City said to be built by *Brennus*, and called it *Sena*: the birth-place of *Aeneas Sylvius*, called afterward Pope *Pius II.* of *Francis Piccolomini*, after Pope *Pius III.* and of *Sixtus* (hence surnamed) *Senefier*, the greatest Scholar of the three, if not of all the Age he lived in. By *Antoine* in his *Itinerarium* called *Sene Julite*, to difference it perhaps from another of that name near the *Adriatick*, called *Sena Gallica*. Built near the Spring, or Fountain of the River *Arbia*, now better known by the name of *Trevisa*; but built (which makes the situation of it exceeding pleasant) upon an high Hill, on which there is a Castle that commands the Town; the Streets thereof are even and very plain, centring in a large and spacious Market-place; near to which is a very fair Palace used for a Senate-house in the Free-Common-wealth, and on the South-side near the Walls the Cathedral Church, reputed to be one of the fairest in *Italy*, having only one door into it, to which there is an ascent by fair Marble Stairs, of which the Pavement is made also. Having long held the *Gibelline* or Imperial Faction, it bought its liberty at an easie rate, of the Emperor *Rodolph I.* After, it fell into the hands of the *Spaniards*, then of the *French*; and finally was made over to *Cosmo de Medices* Duke of *Florence*, by the King of *Spain*, Anno 1558, in consideration of the great charge he had been at to beat out the *French* and other services ex-

pected for the time to come. *Cosmo* being thus invested in it, deprived the people of their Arms, altered the Government, and was the first Prince who had the absolute command of it, after the constitution of the Common-wealth, neither the *French* nor *Spaniards* ruling here as Lords, but only as called in by their several Factions; and suffered to have Garrison in it of their own people, by the agreement of their Party. And, to say truth, it stood with good reason of State, that the *Florentine* should use all his wit to get this City and having got it, use all means to assure it to him. For, besides that great accession which it made unto his Estate; by adding thereto the yearly income of 150000 Ducats, above all expences: it was also to be carefully looked on as a Rival, which had long time stood in competition with it, for the sovereign command of *Tuscan*. Besides there had been mighty animosities between the Cities; the *Florentine* being always of the *Guesfier*, and the *Siennois* of the *Gibelline* Faction. A Faction at last so generally distilld in all *Italy*, and so abominable to the Popes, that on an *Alphonsus* day, when the Pope being to cast Ashes on the Heads of the Cardinals, was to have said, *Memento, O homo, quid cinis es, & in cinerem converteris*, according to the usage of the Church of *Rome*: seeing a *Gibelline* amongst them, he forgot himself, and said thus unto him. *Memento, O homo, quid Gibellinus es, & cum Gibellinis morieris*. Of chief note next unto *Sienna*, are 1. *Montelino* (*Monte Alcinus* in *Latine*) a place of great strength both by industry and situation. 2. *Castro Cardale* seated upon a lofty Hill, most memorable for the Birth and Sepulchre of *John Boccace*, one of the best wits of his time, as his *Decameron* declarerth; buried here with a sorry and unworthy Epitaph, not worth the labour of transcribing. 3. *Saena*, an Episcopall City as also are 4. *Pienza*, 5. *Crostito*, and 6. *Chiusi*, this last, the *Chusum* of the ancient *Tuscans* spoken of heretofore. Besides these are 26 walled Towns within this Signeury, but of no great observation in the course of business.

These belonged also unto this Common-wealth, when a State distinct, some Ports and Pices on the Sea, which State it distinct, some Ports and Pices on the Sea, which State it was consigned over to the Duke of *Florence*, were retained by the *Spaniard*: partly thereby to keep those Princes at his devotion, but principally that by holding so many places of importance in his own hands, he might carry at his Girdle the Keys of *Italy*, and become Lord Paramount of those Seas. Of those the principal, if not all, 1. *Piombino*, in *Latine* called *Plumbinum*, from some Mines of Lead adorned with a strong Castle, and a plentiful Territory: the Castle in the hands of the *Spaniard*, but the Town and Territory in possession of a Lord of its own, who receives the whole Rents of the Estate. 2. *Porto Talamon*, Eastward of *Piombino*, so called of old from *Talamon*, an adjoining Promontory, and known by this name in *Plutarch*, in the life of *Marium*. Accounted the chief City of *Tuscan* in those elder times, but remarkable for the great Battle fought near unto it betwixt the *Romans* and the *Gauls*, A.D.C. 529. the Army of the *Gauls* consisting of 70000 Horse and Foot; that of the *Romans* little (if at all) inferior to it. A fight in which *Antoine*, one of the Consuls being slain, the Victory was gotten by *Emilius* his Collegue, with the slaughter of 40000 of the Enemies, and the taking of 10000 Prisoners: *Annovaltus* and *Congulamus* two Kings of the *Transjurs* alpine *Gauls* being slain or taken. A Victory which drew after it the total subjugation of the *Cassibile* *Gauls*, which followed within three years after. 3. *Orbivello*, drawing more towards the East, the *Cossa* of the ancient *Writers*. 4. *Monte Argentorati*, a Promontory or *Peninsula*, thrusting it self into the Sea, over against *Orbivello*, by the

Latines

Latines called *Mons Argentarius*: and thought by some who have observed the situation, strength, and extent thereof to be the fittest place for a Royal City to be built in, to command those Seas. 5. *Porto Hercule*, which still retains its ancient name, imparted to it from some Temple of *Hercules*, which was founded in its situate near the Eastern *Ithmus* of the said *Peninsula*. 6. *Porto Longone*, a piece of special conference for command of the *Mediterranean*; and for that cause of late times gotten by the *French* (then aiming at the Conquest of *Naples*, but again recovered by the *Spaniard*, who doth now possess it).

The fourth and last member of this Estate, are the Islands in the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas. The principal whereof is, 1. *Illa*, not above ten miles from *Piombino*, called anciently *Eubolia*, by the vulgar *Elba*. *Pliny* affirmeth it to contain in compals a hundred miles, but it proves upon a just measurement, to be but fifty. Not very well furnished with Corn, and less with fruits; but plentiful in Mines of Iron; as formerly for Steel and Copper: for which, especially for Steel of great esteem in the time of *Virgil*, as appeareth by that passage in the tenth of his *Aeneid*, where it is called

Tusula inebantibus Cetylum generosa metalli

A noble Isle, and known full well,
For unexhausted Mines of Steel.

But for all that, the Steel now failing, the want thereof is supplied by Iron, which Iron is of so strange a nature, that every 25 year it reneweth again upon the Mines, and will by no means melt whilst it is in the Island, but must be carried somewhere else. It affordeth also Sulphur, Allom, Tin, Lead, Marble good plenty; and in some parts the Loadstone also. Formerly it belonged to the Lords of *Piombino*, who not being able to defend it against the *Turks*, if they should at any time invade it, resigned it, by the Council of *Charles V.* unto *Cosmo de Medices* the Duke of *Florence*: referring to themselves the Revenues of it, and the Government of all the Towns and Villages therein, except those that were thought fit for Fortification. It hath a very fair Haven called *Porto Ferrario*, capable to receive any great Fleet that should come thither, and therefore if the *Turks* and *Moor* had been Masters of it, they might easily have commanded all the Coasts adjoining, as well in *Provence* as *Italy*. For the defence thereof, there are two strong Castles, situate on two little Mountains, on each side one; so fortified by Art and Nature, that they are held to be impregnable, having also good store of Cannon, and all sorts of Warlike Ammunition. And not far off stands a strong Town built by the same Duke *Cosmo*, and by him called *Campofortis* well fortified, and made the seat of his New Order of St. *Stephen*, of which more hereafter.

The second Island of note is *Giglio*, called *Igilium* anciently, just opposite to *Monte Argentorato*, and having some 25 miles in compals; near unto which the *Genese* so discomfited the *Pisans* in a fight at Sea, that they were never able to recover their former puissance. 3. *Capraria*, not far from *Ligorn*, so called from its abundance of Goats; and for the same reason *Agilora*, by the Greek Geographers: as 4. *Gallinaria*, not far off, took name from abundance of Hens. Of the rest nothing memorable; but that some of them do occur in the ancient Writers; of which sort are 1. *Meloria*, heretofore *Lanulum*, not far from *Capraria*. 2. *Lanusi*, formerly *Artemisia*, in which there is a very good Haven. 3. *Gorgona*, 4. *Troja*, and 5. the small Islands which are called *Formice*. 6. To these we may add also the Isle of *Planagia*, more memorable than the rest, for the banishment and death of

Agrippa Posthumus, the Nephew of *Augustus Caesar* by his daughter *Julia*; here murdered by the command of *Tiberius*, to prevent all future competition to the State imperial, situate somewhat nearer unto *Cosica*, than the rest of these Islands.

As for the *MEDICES*, whose Posterity are now Dukes thereof, they were in the Free-State (as *Machirel* informs us in his *Florentine History*) accounted in the chief rank of the popular Nobility: those being such of the ancient Nobles, as to be capable of the Magistracy, and publick Offices (then wholly shared among the commons) had as it were degraded themselves, and became part of the Commonalty. About the year 1416, *Johannes de Medices*, (the first great raiser of his House) stoutly maintaining the Liberties of the People against the great ones; was by them to be honoured and enriched, that he not only got a great Party but almost a Sovereignty in the City. To him succeeded his Son *Cosmo*, one of the greatest Statemen of those times; who did not only much reform the Civil Government, but enlarged the Territory of the State by the addition of *Casentino*, *Burgos*, *St. Sepulchro*, and some other pieces. Dying in the year 1464, he left the managery of the State to *Peter de Medices* his Son, whose whole time was consumed in suppressing such factions, as had at home been raised against him; and at his death left all his power, and the great wealth which he had gotten (but with a greater measure of his Fathers virtues) to *Lawrence* and *Julian* his two Sons. The People after his decease, either desirous of Novelities, as most people are; or fearing to be made hereditary to this powerful Family, seemed to encline one of the *Soderini*, a man of plausible deportment, and well beloved. But he judiciously considering, that new Houses as they are easily honoured, so are they as soon abandoned by the fickle multitude; conferred all the dependencies which were cast upon him, on these two young men of the *Medices*: as being descended from a Family which had long governed the City, against these two the *Pazzi*, a potent House in *Florence*, confpired and at last they flew *Julian*, but *Lorenzo* escaped; the blows which were struck at him, being received by one of his Servants, whom two days before he had delivered out of prison. For this fact the *Pazzi* were hanged at the Palace window, together with the Archbishop of *Pisa*, who had been of the Conspiracy. To revenge the death of this Bishop, Pope *Paul II.* excommunicated the *Florentines*; and *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* warred upon them. *Lorenzo*, to divert this mischief, went in person to *Naples*; where he grew so much into the good liking of the King, that there was a perpetual league made between them. After his death 1492, his Son *Peter*, having very impudently delivered *Pisa* and *Ligorn*, with other pieces, to the *French* King; was, together with his whole Family, banished. *Johannes de Medices*, the Son of *Lawrence*, the brother of *Peter*, being made Pope, by the name of *Leo X.* restored again his Family; who not long after his death were again exiled. This disgrace *Julius de Medices*, Son to the above named *Julian*, and Pope of *Rome*, by the name of *Clement VII.* not enduring, procured *Charles V.* to besiege it; which request was granted, and the City after two years resistance, yielded; The Emperor then gave it to *Alexander Medice* (Grandchild to *Peter*, by his Son *Lawrence*) Anno 1531. And he to restrain the insolencies of the people, built a strong Citadel in the Town. This *Alexander* was a Prince of good parts enough, had he not been too much addicted to Lust and Wantonness; which being observed by *Lawrence de Medices* his own Cousin, he trained him to a secret place, under colour of bringing him to the Bed of a beautiful Lady, and there basely murdered him. Which done, instead of calling the people

to take Arms for recovery of their lost liberty, as he first intended & he fearfully left the City, and fled towards Venice. So that before the people had notice of the accident, the heads of the Medicei consulted together, and sent for *Cosmo di Medicei* dwelling in the Country with his Mother (and then about eighteen years of age) to be their Prince: as being next Heir-male which was left of the Family, according to the *Entail* (as our Lawyers call it) made by *Charles* the Emperour. This *Cosmo* proving an excellent Statesman, and a fortunate Commander, so swayed the affairs of Italy, that *Philip II.* of Spain to be assured of his friendship, gave him the Signiory of *Sienna*, out of which he had lately driven the French; and *Pius IV.* had an intent to have crowned him King of *Tuscany*. But *Philip of Spain* (though otherwise his special friend) thwarted that intent, as loth to have in Italy any more Kings than himself. After in the year 1570. *Pius V.* crowned the same *Cosmo* in the Court of Rome, with the Title of *Great Duke of Tuscany*, for him and his Heirs for ever. In the new Duke's Coronet he caused to be engraven these words, *Pius Quintus Pont. Max. ob eximiam dilectionem & religionis Catholicæ zelum, præcipuamque iustitiæ studium, donavit.* Thus forward were these Popes to honour this Family; but their Successors have been otherwise affected to it. For when one of Duke *Cosmo's* Successors did since intreat a succeeding Pope, that he might be created King of *Tuscany*; the Pope not liking to Lordly a Title, made answer, that he was content, He should be a King in *Tuscany*, but not King of *Tuscany*. A Scholar-like distinction, but not so satisfactory to the point proposed.

The Princes of the House of Medicei, in the Free-State.

- A. D.
1410 1. *John di Medicei*, the first advancer of the Family to publick greatness.
1433 2. *Cosmo di Medicei*, the Son of *John*, called the Father of the Common-wealth.
1464 3. *Peter* the Son of *Cosmo*.
1472 4. *Lawrence di Medicei*, Son of *Peter*, the great advancer of Learning in Italy.
1492 5. *Peter di Medicei II.* exiled upon the coming in of *Charles VIII.*
6. *Lawrence di Medicei II.* Son of *Peter*, exiled together with his Father's made Duke of *Urbino* by Pope *Leo X.* He was the Father of *Catherine di Medicei*, French Queen.

The Dukes of Florence, and Great Dukes of Tuscany.

- A. D.
1531 1. *Alexander di Medicei*, the Son of *Lawrence*, the first Duke of Florence.
1537 2. *Cosmo II.* the next Heir of *Alexander*, descended from *Lawrence*, a brother of the first *Cosmo*; the wisest Statesman of his time.
1574 3. *Francis di Medicei*, Son of *Cosmo II.* Father of *Mary* the French Queen.
1587 4. *Ferdinand di Medicei*, the Brother of *Francis*
1609 5. *Cosmo III.* Son of *Ferdinand*.
1621 6. *Ferdinand II.* Son of *Cosmo di Medicei*, the twelfth of this Family, the sixth Duke of Florence, and the fifth of *Tuscany*.

The length of this Estate is 200 miles, the breadth in some places not much inferior, but growing narrower where it bordereth upon that of *Genoa*. In all which Tract, the Great Duke hath but one considerable Port on the main Land, which is that of *Ligorn*; so that his

strength in shipping is not very great: and yet might be greater than it is, if the Subjects did delight in Traffic, and not suffer their Commodities to be bought by Strangers (as generally they do in all this Country) and carried thence in foreign Vessels. For otherwise being an industrious people, and well trained in Manufactures, their power at Sea must needs be greater than it is: the Great Duke Fleet consisting ordinarily of no more than twelve Gallies, two Gallions, and five Galliflaes. And for his Power by Land, he hath in readinesse (sixteen thousand Foot of his own Subjects, well trained and mulstered under experienced Commanders, to serve him upon all occasions; and an hundred men at Arms, and 400 Light-horsemen, well paid, as well in times of Peace as in time of War. And besides these, he keeps so many Ports and Towns in continual Garrison, that his Estate is said to be made of Iron.

What the Revenue of it were in the Free-Estate, I am not able to determine. That they were very great is manifest, in that having in those five years, wherein they waged War against the Duke of *Millain*, spent three millions and an half of *Florens*; their Treasury was so far from being exhausted, that the next year they besieged and endangered the City of *Lucca*. Since the altring of the Common-wealth into a Dukedom, and the addition of a Territory and City of *Sienna*: the Revenues of the Duke are conceived to be a million and an half of Ducats yearly. Of which 600000 Crowns are raised yearly out of the Dominion of the City of *Florence*, 150000 more out of that of *Sienna*: the Customs arising out of the Port of *Ligorn*, amount yearly to 130000 Ducats, the toll of Mill-fines only unto 160000 that of Salt, Mines, and Iron falls not short of that: in all a million and 200000 Ducats. Then hath the Duke his Stock going amongst the Bankers, and trades as much as any in the way of Merchandizing; whereas in other Countries he loseth the privileges of a Nobleman, that betakes himself to Trade and Merchandize. He useth also to buy up almost all the Corn which is brought into the Country out of other parts, and sell it again at his own price; forbidding any to be sold till all his be vendid. The rest is made up by Exciise upon all Commodities, even unto very Herbs, and Sallds, which lies very heavy on the Subject; the poor especially; inasmuch that it was tartly said, and perhaps not untruly, *Qui sub Mediceis vivit, misere vivit*; applying to an old rule in a new sense.

The only Order of Knighthood in this Estate, is that of *St. Stephen*, instituted by *Cosmo di Medicei*, An. 1561, and dedicated to *St. Stephen*, because upon the Festival of *Stephen*, Pope and Martyr, being the sixth of *August* he won the famous battel of *Marciano*. Pope *Pius IV.* confirmed it the same year, and granted them all the privileges which they of *Malta* enjoy, conditioned that those of this Order should make a vow of Charity, of Conjugal Chastity, and Obedience; they are to be nobly born, and in lawful Wedlock; of the *Romish* Church, and without note of infamy. The Robe is of white Chamlet, with a Red Crofs on their left side, as well upon their military Garment, as their wearing Cloaks: intended principally against the *Turk* & *Moor*, for which cause settled first at *Pisa*, being near the Sea; but after at *Cosmopolis* in the Isle of *Iva*. The number of them is uncertain; the Great Duke the supreme Master of it. Other Orders are commonly simple, but this mixt; being partly religious, partly honorary.

The Arms are Or, five Torteaux Gules, two, two, and one, and one in chief Azure, charged with three Flowers de Luce of the rest.

Here are in this Estate
Archbishops 3. Bishops 26.

The

The State of LUCA.

IN the West part of *Tuscany*, betwixt the Estate of the Great Duke, and the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, lieth the City of *Luca*, so called from *Lucumo*, a King of the *Tuscan*, who is said to have built it; situate on the River *Serebin*, not far from the mountains of *Lima*, whence the Country is at this day called *Lunigiana*. It is about three miles in compals, and contains about 24000 Inhabitants, who generally are a courteous and modest people, men of good judgment, and discreet, and by their widows have preserved themselves a free Common-wealth, notwithstanding the attempts of more powerful Neighbours: and they are very industrious also, and well seen in Manufactures, especially in weaving Silks and cloath of Gold, which they taught the *Florentines*. The City teated in a Plain, compassed with Mountains on all sides except towards *Pistoia*: so strongly fortified by the help of Art and Nature, that this City, *Zara* in *Dalmatia*, *Canea* in the Isle of *Candia*, and the Town of *Ligorn*, were thought in former times (when the Art of Fortification was less known) to be the four strongest Towns in the *Christian* World. The streets thereof are narrow, but paved with broad Free-stone, and most easie to walk on: the buildings very fair, built of Free-stone also, and beautified with pleasant Gardens. On the North-west stands a very strong Castle, near which lieth the Cathedral, stately paved with Marble, but very dark, as most of the *Papish* Churches, to give the better colour to the burning of Tapers in the day.

In this Town was the meeting of the great Captains *Cesar*, *Pompey*, and *Crassus*, so pernicious to the Roman Republick. For *Pompey* desirous to maintain his authority, *Cesar* to get honour, and *Crassus* to increase his wealth, here united their Councils: *Pompey's* authority to be upheld by *Cesar's* Arms, and *Crassus* his Riches; *Cesar's* continuance in his Province to be maintained by *Pompey's* Power, and *Crassus* his Money; and *Crassus* his Estate to be secured by *Pompey's* Greatness, and *Cesar's* Military Reputation. This done, they made a partition of the Roman Provinces among themselves, assigning *Gaul* to *Cesar*, *Spain* to *Pompey*, and to *Crassus*, *Syria*; which strong Confederacy was the cause of that alteration which after followed in that State. For *Crassus* being slain not long after, *Pompey* and *Cesar* wanting a third man to poize the balance, fell first to discontents, then to Civil Wars, which at last made *Cesar* Lord of Rome. Upon which meeting, and the breach which succeeded afterwards, was grounded that so memorated speech of *Cicero*, that it is to say, *Vitium Pompeius cum Cæsare societatem aut nunquam inisset aut nunquam dimisset.*

But to return again to the affairs of *Luca*, in the declining of the Empire; it became possessed by the *Goths*, from them recovered by *Narses* with the rest of Italy. After this it again followed the fortune of the Empire, till taken by Count *Boniface* the Father of that notable *Pirato*, the Countess of *Mathildis*: who being deceale without issue, and the Emperours pretending to it as to an Elcheat, the Citizens made a common prey, and bought their Liberty of their Emperour *Rodolphus* for 10000 Crowns. Some say the money was disbursed for by a Cardinal. But notwithstanding this purchase, and their title by it, the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria* seized upon it again, under pretence of freeing it from the faction of *Capriceo*, who had made himself absolute Master of it; by a German Garrison there left it was sold to the *Genoese*; and having passed through many hands, the Emperour *Charles IV.* got it once again:

of whom they once more purchased their desired Liberties, for 25000 *Florens* of gold; and to secure themselves thereof, demolished the Castle built by *Capriceo*. But being not able to maintain it by their proper strength they have put themselves under the protection of their Potent Neighbours; changing their Patrons, as conducted from their preservation: and finding no security from *Genoa*, and as little from *Florence*, both which they severally tried; they put themselves at last into the Protection of the Dukes of *Millain*, and in that right are patronized by the Kings of *Spain*.

The Territories of this City extend in compals eighty miles, the chief Town next to *Luca* is self, being that of *Luna*, 2 Bishops See; all the rest ordinary Farms and Villages, but of a good air, and very well peopled: which yield a Revenue to the publick Treasury of 80000 Crowns per annum, and out of which the State is able to raise (if there be occasion) about 15000 Foot, and 3000 Horse. A great strength for so small a Signory, if he did seriously attempt to force it, and would venture on the displeasure of the Catholic King; besides that it is thought that he receives more profit thence in gifts and presents, by letting it stand as it is, than it would yield (considering the charge of keeping it) if it were his own. As for the Government thereof, the principal Magistrat is called the *Gonfalonere*, changeable every second month; assisted by a certain and determinate number of Citizens, whom they change every sixth month also; during which time they live together in the Palace, or common Hall. Other inferior Officers I insist not on. And for the Government of the Church, they have two Bishops only, which acknowledge the Archbishop of *Florence* for their Metropolitan.

The Commonwealth of GENOA.

DIRECTLY West of *Tuscany*, from which it is divided by the River *Macra*, lieth the Country anciently called *Liguria*, now *Riviera di Genoa*, the Coast of *Genoa*, because it lieth along the Sea of *Genoa*; and by some, *II. Genovesiote*, from *Genoa* the Metropolis of this Country and Common-wealth. A Common-wealth once of a larger reputation and authority than it is at the present; commanding heretofore the Islands of *Corfica*, *Sardinia*, and the *Baleares*, in the Mediterranean; *Lebus*, and *Chio*, with some others in the Greekish Seas; the Towns of *Capra*, or *Thoudia*, in the *Taurian* *Chersonese*; *Pera*, on the other side of *Constantinople*; and a good part of *Tuscany*.

It was also then so strong both in Men and Shipping, that they sent seven feven Armies to the Wars of the Holy Land: and in the space of three days only armed once upon occasion of present service, eight and fifty Gallies, and eight *Amphiboli* (being Vessels of one hundred and forty, or one hundred and sixty Oars apiece), and at an other time, one hundred and sixty six Gallies, at a sudden pinch. By the advantage of this strength, they beat the *Pisans* out of *Sardinia*, *Corfica*, and the *Baleares*; compelling them to pay 135000 Crowns for their Peace; they got a good share in the division of the Empire of *Constantinople*, when that City was taken by the *Latins*, and held a very strong hand over the *Venetians*. These last they had once in to great an exigence, having vanquished their Fleet at Sea, and taken the Island of *Chio*, not far from *Venezia*; that the Senate sent them a blank Charter bidding them write down what conditions they pleased, which should be readily condescended to. But *Peter Doria* Admiral of the *Genoan* Fleet, unseasonably proud of his advantages, would have the City of *Venice* wholly at his own

own

own disposal. Whereupon the *Venetians*, now made desperate, assault the *Genoise*, and took an hundred of their Boats and Gallies. After which they always had the worst, losing their Islands in the *Mediterranean* to the Kings of *Aragon*; *Capua* and *Pera* with their Islands in the *Greek Seas*, to the Great *Turks*; most of their Holds in *Tusfany*, to the *Florentines*; their power at the last being broke by the *Venetians*; that in the end they were not able to fet out a Navy fit for an enterprize. But these Misfortunes were occasioned principally by their own Divisions; the City being miserably torn in pieces by continual Factions: first betwixt the *Dorii* and *Spinoli* on the one side, the *Filijci* and *Grimaldi* on the other, Anno 1174. Secondly, of the *Negri* and *Mollani*, against the *Salvatici* and *Embraci*, An. 1289. Thirdly, betwixt the *Spinoli* and *Dorii* themselves, An. 1336. And fourthly between the Nobility and the Commons, 1339. Which Factions did so weaken them both at home and abroad, that having lost the greatest part of their Estate they were fain to put themselves on the protection of their Neighbours to defend the rest; having now nothing left them but *Liguria* and the Isle of *Corsica*.

1. *LIGURIA*, hath on the West the River *Varrus*, rising about the edge of *Provence* in *France*; on the East, the River *Magra*, by which parted from *Tusfany*; on the North the *Apennine Hills*; and on the South the *Ligurian* or *Tyrrhenian Seas*. It is in length an hundred and forty miles; that is to say, from the Port of *Luna* in the East, to that of *Monaco* in the West, which lieth near to *Provence*; but the breadth not answerable to the length; and is divided generally into two Parts or Provinces, the East and the West, both centring upon *Genoa* the principal City.

The old *Ligurians* were a stout and warlike Nation, light and swift of Body, well practised in laying Ambushes, and not discouraged by an Overthrow, but forthwith ready to fight again: to which the nature of their Country served them very well, being rough, mountainous and woody, and full of straight and dangerous Passages; and in this Tract few open Towns, but many well-fortified Castles, so that without much labour they could neither be taken nor besieged. And if at any time they were vanquished in the open field, they had recourse unto these Castles, and other Fastnesses, hemmed round about with Woods and Mountains, in which they plaid their after-game, and tired out their Enemies and Invaders. The principal of their Tribes were the *Decenii*, *Oxillii*, *Eubariades*, and *Ingenii*; all at last vanquished by the *Romans* after the second *Punic* War: but not without much labour and pains, by reason of the Woods and Marishes and Mountains, within and behind which they retired and saved themselves, inasmuch that it was held a matter of more difficulty to find than to conquer them; *Aliquanto major erat labor invenire quam vincere*, are the words of my Author. That did divers times after this much molest the *Romans*, till at last *Publius* by disarmed them, that he scarce left them Instruments to plough the earth. So in the end they grew obedient to their Masters. In the division of whole large Territories by *Augustus Cæsar*, *Liguria* was made one of the eleven Regions of *Italy*; as it was also one of the seventeen Provinces into which *Italy* was divided by the Emperor *Constantine*: *Millain* at that time the *Metropolis* or Head-City of it. What kind of men they were in the breaking of the Western Empire, may be known by their actions both by Sea and Land, spoken of before: now more addicted to Merchandise than War, but most of all to *Ufury*. A Vice which the Christians learned of the *Jews*, and are now thought to equal, if not exceed their Teachers. It was the saying of a merry fellow, that

in Christendom there were neither Scholars enough, Gentlemen enough, nor *Jews* enough. And when answer was made, that of all these there was rather too great a plenty than any scarcity, he replied, that if there were *Scholars* enough, so many would not be double or treble benefited; if *Gentlemen* enough, so many *Peasants* would not be ranked among the Gentry; and if *Jews* enough, so many *Christians* would not protect *Ufury*. The women are very fair and comely, wearing for the most part their hair in tresses, which they cast over their backs; they wear no upper Garments but of Cloth, as being only allowed by the Laws but their under Garments of the purest stuff. The women here are privileged above all in *Italy*, having free leave to talk with whom they will, and be courted by any that will, both privately and publicly. Which liberty it is likely they gained at such time as the *French* were Masters of this Estate; who do allow their Wives such excess of liberty, as no *Italian* would allow of in a common *Civilized*. And though it cannot be affirmed, that the women of the Country, or the City it self, do abuse this liberty; yet the *Italians* being generally of a different humour, reckon them to be past all decency as they esteem the *German Merchants* (who make little reckoning of their promises, if not bound by writing) to be men without faith. Of which and other things concerning this Estate, they have made this Proverb, *Montagne senza legni &c.* that is to say, *Mountains without Wood, Sea without Fish, Men without Faith, and Women without Shame*.

The Country, as before said, is very mountainous in the In-lands, and full of craggy Rocks towards the Sea: so that by Sea and Land it is very ill travelling. But amidst those Hills are Valleys of as rich a vein, as most others in *Italy*, abounding in Citrons, Lemons, Olives, Oranges, and the like fruits; with such variety of Flowers at all times of the year, that the Markets are seldom unfurnished of them in the month of *December*. It yieldeth also great plenty of most pleasant Vines, which the Inhabitants call *La Vermazza*; and another which they call *Le lagime di Christo*, or *lacrime Christo*: this last so pleasing to the taste, that it is said, a *Dutchman* tasting of it as he travelled in these parts, fetched a great sigh, and brake out into this exclamation: How happy had it been with us, if *Christus lacrymatus* esset in nostris regionibus, if *Christ* had shed some of his tears in the Country of *Germany*! Their greatest want is that of Corn, and therefore they do supply themselves out of other places.

The principal Towns and Cities of it in the Eastern part, are, 1. *Sarenaza*, a strong Fortrefs against the *Florentines*, and one of the best pieces of this Republick. 2. *Porto-Remuli* (Pour Remuli, as the *Latins* call it) of as great consequence as that, but possessed by the *Spaniard*. 3. *Levigi*, a Haven in the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian Sea*. 4. *Sestri*, a reasonable good place, remarkable for as white Bread, and as pleasant Wine as any in *Italy*. 5. *Floja*, a Haven or Port Town, not far from *Genoa*, anciently called *Portus Delphinus*. Few of the Towns in this part are of any greatness: but they are set so thick, and intermingled with so many goodly houses, both on the Hills and the Valleys, that for the space of twenty miles, the whole Country seems to be one continual building.

In the West part the Towns of most importance are 1. *Monaco*, of old called *Monacos*, and *Portus Herculis*, beautified with a commodious Haven; belonging not long since to the *Spaniard*, who bought it for 10000 Crowns of the *Grimaldi*, then its proper Owners; but of late gotten by the *French* under colour of a late contract. 2. *Venimiglia*, a good Town and sweetly seated. 3. *Savona*, taken by the *Genoise*, An. 1250, before which time it had a Prince of its own. Remarkable for the interview betwixt *Ferdinand* the *Catholic* and *Lewis* XII. of *France*, An. 1507.

who

who having been deadly enemies, upon the taking of the Realm of *Naples* from the *French* by the *Spaniard*, met at this Town, and here most strangely relied upon one another: *Lewis* first boarding *Ferdinand's* Gally; and *Ferdinand* for divers days feasting with *Lewis* in this Town then in his possession, as Protector of the Estate of *Genoa*. Which kind of interviews (I note this only by the way) as they chance but seldom; so when they do, they prove for the most part dangerous unto one of the parties: great enemies not being easily forgot by persons of a publick Integrity: Nay, that notable Statesman *Philip de Comines* utterly disliked all such meetings of Princes, though in amity and good correspondence with one another; as many times producing effects quite contrary to their expectations. And this he proveth by the example of *Lewis XI. of France*, and *Henry of Castile*, who meeting purposely, Anno 1463, to change some friendly words together, took such dislike at each others persons and behaviour, that they never loved one another after it. The like example he bringeth of an Interview betwixt *Edward IV. of England*, and the same King *Lewis*: and betwixt *Frederick*, the Emperor, and *Charles Duke of Burgundy*; with divers others. His reasons I purposely omit, as not pertinent to my present undertaking, and make haste again unto the Town: which is about a mile and an half in circuit, and hath many stately buildings in it. It was called anciently *Sabate* or *Sabatia*, and hath been under the command of divers Lords: being taken from the *Genoise* by the *Viccomi*, and the *Sforzas*, Dukes of *Millain*, from them by the *French*, and at last recovered again by those of *Genoa*. I further note, that this one Town hath yielded to the Church of *Rome* three Popes, viz. *Gregory VII. Julius II. and Sixtus IV.* which is as much as *Genoa* it self can brag of. 4. *Nola*, upon the Sea-side, a commodious Haven. 5. *Finali*, a goodly Port-Town also, and very well fortified: honoured a long time with the Title of a *Marquissate*, one of the seven founded by the Emperor *Orlo*, (of which more hereafter) but taken from the last *Marquess* by the Count of *Fuenter*, then Governor of *Millain* for the King of *Spain*, and Garrisoned immediately with 200 *Spaniards*, the poor *Marquess* being put off with an Annual Pension, Anno 1602. 6. *Milejims*, a small Town adjoining, possessed upon the same right by the *Spaniard* also; who by these pieces hath a strong command on the Trade of *Genoa*. 7. But the great Ornament of those parts of *Italy*, is the City of *Genoa*, first built, say some, by *Janus* the Son of *Sarnus*, as others say, by *Janus Genius Priscus*, an *Italian* or *Tuscan* King. But by whomsoever it was built, certain it is, that it was miserably destroyed by *Mago* the Brother of *Annibal*, repaired by *Lucretius Scirus*, at the command of the Senate of *Rome*, for whose cause and quarrel it was ruined: once again spoiled and wasted by *Rotharis* a great Prince of the *Lombards*, Anno 660; or thereabouts: but built more beautiful than before by *Charles the Great*. On his foundation it now stands, situated on the shore of the *Ligustick* or *Ligurian Seas*, to which, being partly built on the declivity of an Hill, full of stately Palaces, it giveth a most pleasant and magnificent prospect. It is in compals six miles, of an Orbicular form, fortified towards the Sea by Art; towards the Land by Art and Nature; there being but one way to come to it by Land, and that over steep and craggy Rocks. The Streets are narrow, paved with Flint, and most of them on the sides of the Hill; which is the reason that they use Horse-litters here instead of Coaches, and most of the better sort are carried on mens' shoulders in *Sedans* or Chairs; which from hence came hither into *England*. But that which they call *La Strada*

Nueva, or the *New-street*, reaching from the West to North-east, is of a very fair breadth; each house whereof is built with such Kingly magnificence, that it is thought to be the fairest Street in the world. In all the rest the Buildings for the height of two Stories are made of Marble, curiously wrought; but the Laws forbid Marble to be used any higher. The Haven of it is very fair and capacious, safe from the violence of Tempests, and well fortified: so that the *Spaniards* use to say, that were the *Catholic* King absolute Lord of *Marceller* in *Provence*, and *Genoa* in *Italy*, he might command the whole World. After the re-edifying of it by *Charles* the Great, the People here continued subject to his Successors, till the *Berengarii*, as Kings of *Italy*, made them free, Anno 899. in which condition they remained till the year 1318. when being shrewdly weakened in their Estate, they were fain to give themselves to Pope *John XXII.* after to *Robert King of Naples*. But being soon weary of a foreign Government, the people in a popular tumult made choice of one *Simon Bona Negra* to be their Duke, Anno 1339. which Government continued till the *French* were called in by the *Genoian* Faction, in the Reign of *Charles VII.* under whom they continued thirteen years; and then expelling thence the *French* for their many infidelities, they put themselves under the protection of the Dukes of *Millain*, Anno 1403. Long time they lived under the protection of those Princes, in great tranquillity, who never carried towards them any rigorous hand; save that once Duke *Lodowick Sforza* exacted of them a great mass of money. But as the tale goeth, his Agent being invited to the house of a *Genoise*, and walking in a Garden with him, was shewed an herb growing there, called *Basil*, which stroaking gently he smelt thence a most pleasing favour, but as unfavourably a smell when he trained it hard. The *Genoise* hereupon inferred, Sir, if our Lord Duke *Lodowick* will gently stroak the hand of his pusillance over this City, it will prove pliant to him by obedience; but may chance to prove rebellious if he do opprest it. But *Lodowick* being taken Prisoner by King *Lewis XII.* they first came under the command of the *French*, and then of the *Spaniard*, according as those Nations had possession of the State of *Millain*; and after many changes and alterations, obtained again their freedom of King *Francis I.* Which being not able to preserve by their proper strength, they finally put themselves under the shelter of the *Spaniard*, who is now their Protector; and that not for nought, he being indebted to them, Anno 1600, a Million and an half of Gold; that being the remainder of 18 Millions, cut off by the Popes Authority; that so the King might be indebted to that Sea; for most of his Lands were formerly engaged to the Money-Masters of this City. The same cause of non-payment the King took with the rest of his Creditors in *Florence*, *Ausburg*, and the rest, inasmuch that it was commonly said in *Italy*, that the King of *Spain* had made more ill faces upon the Exchange in one day, than *Michael Angelo* the famous Painter had ever made good in all his life. And thus you see this great City which commanded the Ocean, the Lady of so many Islands, and a great Moderator of the affairs of *Italy*, fain to put her self into the protection of a foreign Prince, and that too at the charge of a great deal of Treasure; which he continually raiseth from them in the way of Loan, of which he often proves but a sorry Pay-master. And if the Wars he had with *England* did but drain their purses (for it was that War, and the War which he had in the *Netherlands*, that made him so indebted to the Banks of *Genoa*) no question but the revolt of *Catalogne*, and the lasting Wars made against him by the *French* in so many places;

places have plunged him in as deep as ever. Which notwithstanding this people do so thrive under his protection, and drew so great commodity from their Trade with Spain, that it is thought their private men were never richer, the publick Treasury never fuller than it is at the present.

CORSICA is an Island in the *Ligustick* or *Ligurian* Sea, opposite to the City of *Genoa*, from whence it is distant about sixty miles; and lying just North of the Isle of *Sardinia*, from which it is distant seven miles. It comprehends in length an hundred and twenty miles, seven in breadth, and three hundred twenty five in circuit; and lyeth under the fifth Climate, the longest day being almost fifteen hours.

The people are stubborn, poor, unlearned; supposed to be more cruel than other Nations, and so affirmed to be by *Cæsar* in his Book of *Commentaries*; the Progeny, as some say, of the 52 Daughters of *Thespius*, who being all got with child in one night by *Hercules*, were by their Father put to the mercy of the Sea; by which they were brought unto this Island, after peopled by them. From one of these Sons named *Cyrnus*, the Island had the name of *Cyrnos*, by which it oftentimes occurth in such old Greek Writers. This is the conceit of *Fabius Pictor*, one of *Annius* his Authors. And that of *Euphathus*, a far more credible Writer, is not much unlike, who will have it called *Corfica* from a woman so named, dwelling in the coast of *Liguria*; who following her Bull hither, was the first that discovered it. But these Originals I look on, the first especially, as the worst kind of *Romances*: the name of *Cyrnos* being more like to be derived from the *Phœnic* *Keranth*, which signifies a horn or corner, by reason of the many Promontories with which it fronts into the Sea. *Corfica insula multis promontoriis angulosa est*, as it is in *Isidore*, Lib. 15, cap. 6. And for the name of *Corfica*, I should derive it rather from the *Cass* (by which name the Inhabitants thereof are called in most *Latine* Writers) one of the two Nations of most note in the Neighbouring Island of *Sardinia*. *Celeberrimi ea populorum Bæti, & Cassi*, as we find in *Pliny*. Which *Cass*, or some of them, being overborn by some new invaders (which the Island of *Sardinia* was freed from) they were fain to shift their seat, and came over hither.

This Country yieldeth excellent Dogs for game, good Horses, fierce Malliffs; and a beast called *Musfili*, not found in *Europe*, excepting in this Island, and *Sardinia* only, but there came *Miffrone*, or *Muerione*, (for I conceive they are the same under divers names) said to be horned like Rams, and Skinned like Stags; whose skin is of such incredible hardness, that the beast being cast headlong against a Rock, receives no hurt, but nimbly flies from his Enemy to his Den.

The soil by reason of the Mountains (which every where are too thick and barren in it) is not very fruitful; producing corn in less plenty, but the best Vines, and such as the old *Romans* well relished, in good measure. It produceth also Oyl, Figs, Raisins, and Honey: the first three in a mediocrity of goodness, the last somewhat bitter, and by many deemed unwholesome. It aboundeth also with Allom, Box-trees, Iron Mines, and the Tree called *Taxus*, whose poysonous Berries, though in taste pleasing, are much fed on by Bees, and therefore thought to be the cause of the bitterness of the Honey. In some few places where the Rivers have their currents, especially towards *Liguria*, it recompenseth by its fertility, in bearing all manner of grain, the barrenness of the mountains. Which mountains cutting through the midst of it, divide the whole Island into *Cismontanum*, being that towards *Genoa*; and

Transmontanum, lying towards *Sardinia*; yet so, that the People on each side call themselves the *Cismontanes*, and the other the *Transmontanes*. Both of them speak a corrupt *Italian*, in which there is not a little mixture of *French* and *Spanish*.

For Rivers, there are none of note; the principal of those which the Island yields being called *Gola*, and *Travignano*. And as for Cities, some of the Ancients reckoned 33, which *Strabo* doth conceive to be Castles on lythere being but four Towns or Cities in it in his time: of which four, two were *Roman* Colonies; the one planted by *Marius*, called *Mariana*; the other by *L. Sylla*, in the Town called *Alleria*; a place of some Antiquity before that time, and at this day a Bishops See. But now the place of most importance is the Town of *Bastia*, seated in the North-east part of the Island, opposite almost unto *Alleria*, with a commodious Haven to it, and a strong Garrison to defend it: as being the ordinary seat of the Governour sent hither from *Genoa*; and of the Bishop of *Alleria*, who makes there his residence. *A. Aiazze*, a reasonable strong Town, and a Bishops See; and so is also 3. *Nebbio*, called *Chafinnum* by *Plutony*. Then there is 4. *Porto Urechio*, built not long since in the place of an old decayed Haven, and peopled by a Colony sent from *Genoa*. 5. *St. Florence* a Port-town in the Northern part in the midst betwixt *Nebbio* and *Mariana*; and 6. *St. Bonifacio*, called by *Plutony*, *Portus Syraonannus*, just opposite unto it in the South corner of the Isle; both of them places of good safety, and capable of the greatest Vessels that frequent those Seas.

Who were the first Inhabitants is not easily known. That the *Phœnicians* or *Tyrians* had some footing there, is manifest by that of *Callimachus* an old Greek Poet, who calleth it *Βουρκια*, *Κόρυς*, the *Phœnician* *Cyrnus*; and by that of *Diodorus Siculus*, affirming that the *Carthaginians* and *Tyrrheni* (which questionless he mistook for *Tyri*) call the *Phœnices* out of this Island. But whether these *Phœnices* first inhabit, or only had a Colony in some part thereof, is not demonstrable from those Authors. The *Carthaginians* after this made a Conquest of it, and held it till the time of the first *Punic War*; when they were driven thence by the valour of *Cornelius Scipio*. Yet was it not totally subdued, nor brought into the form of a *Roman* Province, till some time after; when it was fully conquered by *G. Pompeius*, *A.U.C. 541*. This Island and *Sardinia* at the first being joined together, governed by one *Praetor* only; but afterwards made two distinct Provinces, immediately subject to the *Praefect* of the City of *Rome*; and consequently members of the *Roman* Patriarchate. In the falling of the *Roman* Empire, it became a prey unto the *Vandals*, who used to send their condemned persons out of *Africk* hither, to fell Timber for shipping; the Country even till then being very much overgrown with Woods. Afterwards with the rest of the Islands of the *Mediterraneæ*, it was under the power of the *Saracens*, against whom *Ademar* the Count or Governour of *Genoa* armed a Fleet of Gallies, and vanquished them in a fight at Sea, but lost his life in the action: which notwithstanding the *Genoese* following their good Fortune, seized on the Island, and carried thence thirteen of the Enemies Ships. The *Pisians* after this got possession of it, but being vanquished by the *Genoese* in the fight near *Giglio* (before mentioned) they were fain to leave it to the Conquerors. Since that it hath always followed the fortune of *Genoa*, save that it remained somewhat longer than that City did in the hands of the *French*, who in the year 1554. seized on it by the aid of the *Turks*, whom (to the great dishonour of Christianity) they entertained in their Wars against *Charles V.* but in the end, restored it to the Common-

Common-wealth, upon the peace made betwixt *France* and *Spain*, Anno. 1559. And for securing of this Island to the state of *Genoa*, they fell upon this handfom project: employing none but natural *Genoese* to serve in the Garrisons of the Islands, the better to keep under this untractable People; and filling all their Garrisons upon the Continent with natural *Genoese*, whereby the Island is unfurnished of its ablest men, who also serve for *Holy-ager* of the *Publick Faith*.

Having thus took a brief view of the several parts and members of this Common-wealth, let us next look upon the whole, as to the Government, Forces, and Revenue of it. First for the Government, the principal of their Magistrats hath the name of *Duke*; as titular as the Duke of *Venice*, but of less esteem: that Duke continuing in his Office for term of life, but this being alterable and removed at the two years end. So that he may be called most properly the *Mayor of Genoa*. For this two years he dwells in the publick Palace, and hath 500 *German* for the Guard of his Persons: in nothing like a Prince but that: and for that time, he alone hath the power of propounding any thing to the Senate, which carrieth some resemblance of a *Negative Voice*. His time expired, he returns unto his house as a private Person, but so, that during life he hath the Office of *Procurator* in the Common-wealth. To him there are assistant eight principal Officers, who sit upon the same Form with him, and continue in their Office for two years also; which eight, together with the Duke, are called the *Sigentry*: but he and they, in matters of most weight and moment, subordinate to the *General Council*, consisting of 400 Persons, all of them Gentlemen of the City: who with the nine before remembered do constitute the body of the Common-wealth. Under this form they have continued ever since, by the power and Goodness of *Andrea Doria* (who might have made himself their Prince) they were discharged of their Subjection to the *French*, Anno 1528. never in danger of relapsing to their former servitude, but in the treasonable practice of the *Fischi*, a remarkable Family of the City; who hoping to possess themselves of the *Principality* under the Protection of the *French*, had fo laid their plot, that *Augustine* de *Fischi*, who was designed to be their Duke, had in the night time seized on the Navy, and slain *John Doria* who had the command thereof. But leaping from one *Galley* to another, to make sure of all, stumbled and fell into the Sea, where he and his ambitious treasons were both drowned together.

As for their Forces, there are within the *Signeury* 10000 men ready to arm at any time, as they see occasion; 25 Gallies always ready in the *Publick Arsenal*, and four continually at Sea for the defence of their Trading. Sufficient strength to save them from a petit force, though not to guard them from the power of a strong Invader. But the chief strength which they rely on, is the King of *Spain*; whose protection, though it costs them dear, is worth their money; and they have prospered so well by it, that notwithstanding all the Losses which they have sustained, it is supposed that the Revenue of the Common-wealth, (besides the Treasury of *St. George*, which is very rich, and managed as a distinct body from the Publick, by its own Officers) amounteth to no less than 430000 Crowns per annum.

As for the Treasury of *St. George*, though it contain no part of the publick Patrimony, but be governed by its own Officers as a State distinct; yet is it of such ready use, so able at all times to furnish the Republick with vast sums of money; that the security and preservation of this Common-wealth depends much upon it. The Institution and Administration whereof, together with

the benefit which from hence reboundeth unto this Estate, I cannot better present to the Readers View, than in the words of *Machiavel*, the greatest Politick of his times; who in his History of *Florence* hath expressed it thus: 'Post diuturnum illud bellum quod Genoveses multis abhinc annis cum Venetis gesserunt, &c. After that tedious War between the *Genoese* and *Venetians*, was ended in the year 1281. and that the *Genoese* found themselves unable to repay those moneys, which they had taken up of their private Citizens in pursuit thereof, they thought it best to assign their ordinary Taxes over to them, that so in tract of time the whole debt might be satisfied; and for that end allotted them a Common Hall, there to deliberate and determine of their Affairs. These men, thus made the Masters of the publick Taxes, elect among themselves a Common-Council of an hundred and over them eight Officers of special power, to order and direct the rest and to dispose of the *Entrado*: which Corporation fo established, they intitle 1. *St. George Bank*. It hapned afterward, that the *Republick* wanting more moneys, was glad to have recourse unto *St. George*; who growing wealthy by the orderly managing of his stock, was best able to relieve them in their necessities: and as before they assigned their Taxes over to him, fo now *Attinentiam suam assignabant*, they mortgaged all their Demains. So that *St. George* continually waxing richer, and the States poorer, this Corporation became possessed at last, of almost all the Towns and Territories of the Common-wealth: all which they governed by their own Magistrats, chosen by common suffrage from among themselves. It followed hereupon, that the common People bearing less respect unto the Publick, applied themselves unto *St. George*; this being always orderly and prudently governed; that many times inclining to Tyranny; this never changing Officers, or form of Government, that subject to the proud ambitious lusts of each Ultrap, whether Domestick or Foreign. Insum that when the two potent Families of the *Fregosi* and *Adorni*, contended for the Sovereignty in this Estate, most of the People looked upon it as a quarrel which concerned them not: *St. George* not meddling more in it, than to take an Oath of the prevailing Faction, to preserve his Liberties. *Rarissimo sunt exempla*, &c. A most excellent and rare thing (saith he) never found out by any of the old Philosophers in their imaginary forms of a Common-wealth that in the same State, and the same People, one may see at the same time both Tyranny and Liberty, Justice and Oppression, Civility and Misgovernment: This only Corporation preserving in the Common-wealth its ancient Lustre. So that in case *St. George* should in the end become possessed of the remainder of the Patrimony and Estate thereof, as it is possible it may, the State of *Genoa* might not alone be equalled with that of *Venice*, but preferred before it. So far, and to this purpose that great Master of State-craft; a man of less impiety, and more regular life, than some of those who have traduced him for an Atheist.

Here are within this Common wealth,
Archbishops 1. Bishops 14.

The Estates of LOMBARDY.

LOMBARDY is bounded on the East with *Romanandiola*, and the Estate or Territory of *Ferrara*; on the West, with that part of the *Alpes*, which divides *Italy* from *France*; on the North, (reckoning *Marca Travigiana* within the bounds hereof) with that

part of the *Alps* which lieth towards *Germany*; and on the South, with the *Apennine*, which parteth it from *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*.

It was called anciently *Gallia Cisalpina*, whereof we shall speak more anon and took this new name from the *Lombards* or *Longobards*, a people of *Germany* (of whom we have already spoken, but shall speak more at large when we come to *Hungary*), who coming out of *Pannonia* possessed themselves of a great part of *Italy*; but left their name to this Tract only. A Tract of ground of which it may be truly said, that, as *Italy* is the Garden of the world, so *Lombardy* is the Garden of *Italy*, or the fairest Flower in all that Garden. A Country of so rich a mixture, that such another piece of ground for beautiful Cities, goodly Rivers, for Fields and Pastures shaded with such excellent fruits, for plenty of Fowl, Fish, Corn, and Vine, cannot be found again in our Western World. So that it is no wonder, that the two great Kings of *France* and *Spain*, have strived so eagerly, and with such an effusion of Christian blood for the Duchy of *Millain*, a part only (though the richest part) of this goodly Country; and but a spot of Earth compared to their own Dominions.

Anciently it was of more extent than now it is, containing besides the Principalities hereafter mentioned, the Provinces of *Romandiola*, and *Trevigiana*; even all, which in the infancy and growth of the *Roman* Empire, had the name of *Gallia Cisalpina*: called *Gallia* from the *Gauls*, who being drawn over the *Alps* by the taste of the sweet *Italian* Wines, in the time of *Tarquinius Priscus* King of *Rome*, under the conduct and command of *Belovis* Son of *Ambriger* King of the *Celts*, subdued the Natives, and possessed themselves of all the Country, from the West parts of the *Tyrian* Sea and *Apennine* Hills to the *Adriatic*; and from the *Alps* to the River *Rubicon* on the Northeast, and the River *Arno* on the South-East. *Cisalpina* it was called because it lay on that side of the *Alps* which was near to *Rome*, to difference it from *Gallia* on the other side of the Mountains, which had the name of *Transalpina*. It was also called *Gallia Togata* because the people of it being civilized, conformed themselves to the *Roman* habit: that on the other side of the *Alps* being called *Braccata* because they kept themselves to their former Mantles (resembling those now worn by the vulgar *Irish*) which by the *Latines* were called *Bracæ*. For though the word *Bracæ* in some of our common Dictionaries be rendered Gally-flops or Breaches (which possibly the word *Breeches* may be thence derived) which made me conceive that the habit heretofore of those *Gauls* was a kind of *Trowsers*, such as those usually worn by the *Irish* Foot-men; yet when I find in approved Authors, that it was *Tunica Sca* impolita, a Garment which they wore over their Coats and Cassocks, I conceive I had good reason to translate it otherwise.

They were generally divided into four great Nations, that is to say, 1. the *Insubres*, inhabiting from the *Alps* to the River *Arno*, and consequently spreading over the Dukedoms of *Millain*, *Parma*, *Modena*, *Mantua*, *Piemont*, and some part of the Dukedom of *Florence*. 2. The *Commani* who lay next the *Insubres*, possessing the greatest part of *Trevigiana*. 3. The *Boii*, taking up the rest of *Trevigiana*, with the Dukedom of *Ferrara*, and so much of *Romandiola* as lieth on the North-west side of the River *Rubicon*. 4. The *Senones*, who passing over the *Rubicon* inhabiting the rest of *Romandiola* and the Dukedom of *Urbino*. Of these the *Senones* (or *Semnonæ* as *Ptolemy* calls them) were of greatest fame. These were the men that under the conduct of *Brennus*, having defeated the *Roman* Armies at the Battle of *Allia*, followed their victory into *Rome*, which they sacked and burned: no-

thing made good in all the City but the *Capitol* only, which also had been taken by them, *ni auferre dis dumebus vigilassent*, as *St. Austin* scoffs it, if the *Geese* had not been more watchful than their Gods or Guards. Failing herein they compounded for 1000 pound weight of Gold to forsake the City: but before the money was received, they were assailed by *Camillus*, driven out of the Town, and vanquished in a late Battle, about eight miles off; who is therefore called *Rome's second Founder*. This happened Anno *U. C.* 364. Vanquished again at the River *Aniene*, by *T. Quinctius* the Dictator; and after that Anno *U. C.* 394, by the said *Camillus*, being then 80 years of age in the *Pontine* fields: they got the *Boii* to assist them, and after joynted with the *Sannites*, *Tuscan*, and other Nations in a common War. But being for the most part beaten, and the War carried to their own doors a little before the coming of *Pyrhus* into *Italy*, by *M. Curius*, the Consul: they were by him driven out of their own Country; and finally so slaughtered by *Dolabella* at the Lake of *Padimon*, Anno *U. C.* 470, that there was scarce any left of all that Nation, to brag that any of their Ancestors had set fire on *Rome*.

The *Senones* being thus destroyed, the *Romans* suffered the rest of the *Gallick* Nations to remain in quiet till the end of the first *Punic* War, when being grown of more strength, and at very good leisure, they took up Arms against the *Boii*, who leaving the like fortune as the *Senones* had found before, called to their Aid both the *Insubres* and *Transalpines*; making in all an Army of 50000 Foot, and 20000 Horse. Anno *U. C.* 528. Discomfited by *Æmilius* the *Roman* Consul, near *Talannus* a City of *Tuscany*, with the slaughter of 40000 of their men; they were left upon in their own Country shortly after by the Consul *Flaminius*, vanquished and mulcted with the loss of one half thereof, most of them after this disaster passing into *Germany*, where we are like to hear more of them. And for the *Insubres* and *Commani*, being thus left unto themselves (the remainders of the *Transalpines* excepted only) they were invaded the next year after, (Anno *U. C.* 431.) under the Consuls *M. Claudius Marcellus*, and *Cornelius Scipio*: to whom upon the loss of their Armies, and some of their best Towns, they did yield themselves: the *Romans* so becoming Masters of all this Country. And yet it was accomplished as a Province distinct from *Italy*, until the settling of the Empire in *Augustus Caesar*, who dividing *Italy* into eleven Regions, made three of them out of this *Cisalpina*; that is to say, *Gallia*, *Venetia*, and *Italia Transpadana*: as afterwards it made up four of the seven Provinces of the *Dioecesis* of *Italy*, according to the distribution of it which was made by *Constantine*. How it came with the rest of *Italy* into the power of the *Lombards*, and how from them taken by the *French*, with the rest of that Kingdom, had been shewn already. Won by the *French* and from the *French* transferred with the Empire to the Kings of *Germany*; it did so for preserve the reputation of a Kingdom, that the Emperors were sometimes Crowned at *Millain* with an Iron Crown for the Kingdom of *Lombardy*: as at *Aiken* (a Town of *Cleveland*) with a Silver Crown for the Realm of *Germany*; and with a Golden Crown at *Rome*, for the sacred Empire. But the Emperor being weakened by the Artifices of the Popes of *Rome*, this goodly Country was torn from it; and parcelled in conclusion, amongst many Princes, as it still continueth.

The *Lombards* being Masters of it, and having given it their own name, divided it by the River *Po* into *Longobardia Cispadana*, lying betwixt the *Po* and the *Apennine* Mountains; and *Transpadana*, lying betwixt the *Po* and the *Alps*: the first of which the old *Romans* called *Æmilia*, from *Æmilius Lepidus*, the Founder

Founder of the City of *Reggio* (then called *Regium Lepidi*) once Proconsul of it. In the division of *Italy* by *Augustus Caesar* it had the name of *Gallia*. The other was by him honoured with the name of *Italia Transpadana*, by which name it was known in the times of *Tacitus*; and by him called, *Florentissimum Italie latæ*, the most flourishing part of all *Italy*. But this division being long since worn out of use, and the whole Country being cantoned into many Estates, as before was said, we will consider it at the present as it stands divided into the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Mantua*, which with *Transpadana*, described already, make up *Transpadana*; and those of *Modena*, *Parma*, and *Montferrat*, which with the Principate of *Piemont*, make up *Cispadana*.

The Dukedom of MILLAIN.

THE Dukedom of *MILLAIN* hath on the East, the Estates of *Mantua* and *Parma*; on the West, *Piemont*, and some part of *Switzerland*, one of the Provinces of the *Alps*; on the North *Marca Trevisiana*; and on the South, the *Apennine* which parteth it from *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*. In elder times the habitation of the *Insubres*, originally a Tribe of the *Helvi* inhabiting in those parts of the *Gallia* beyond the *Alps*, which now make up the Dukedom of *Burgundy*; but crossing the Mountains with the rest of the *Gallick* Nation, spoken of before they settled here, built the City of *Millain*, and finally became one of the greatest Tribes of the *Cisalpina* *Gauls*: from thence this Country hath the name of *Insubrium Ducatus* in some of the nearer Modern Writers; but commonly is called *Ducatus Mediolanensis*, from *Mediolanum*, or *Millain*, the chief City of it.

Principal Rivers of it, 1. *Padus*, 2. *Adda*, 3. *Ollina*, and 4. *Ticino*; of which somewhat hath been said already; and besides those it hath also in it the Lake called anciently *Laus Laris*, but now *Lago di Como* (from the City of *Como* which it neighboureth) 60 miles in length.

The chief Cities and places of note are, 1. *Modocem*, not far from *Millain*, of more fame than greatness; the fame thereof arising from the Iron Crown kept in a Monastery here, wherefrom some of the Emperors have been crowned by the Archbishops of *Millain*. A custom taken up from the Kings of *Offogabur*, who are said to have first used the same, in testimony that they had won their Estates by Iron. 2. *Pavia* or *Papia*, seated on the Flood *Ticino*, united to *Millain* by *John Galeazzi*, the first Duke thereof; made an University by *Charles IV.* Anno 1361. And famous for the Battle in which *Francis I.* of *France*, was taken Prisoner by *Charles V.* Anno 1525. It is seated, as before was said, on the Flood *Ticino*, about four miles from the *Po*, or *Padus*: the River carrying at this City so great a breadth, that the Bridge over it is no less than 200 walking paces long, built of Free-stone, and covered over-head with a roof supported all along with Pillars. From this River the City it self was anciently called *Ticinum*; and took the name of *Papia* from its great affection to the Popes; or, as some say, *quasi Parla Piorum* (the two first syllables of those words being joyned together) by reason of the many godly men it did produce. It lieth in length from East to West, a very fair Street dividing it in the very midst: on the West side whereof are two handom Market-places, and a strong Castle built by *Galeazzi*, the first Duke of *Millain*; whose Tomb, together with that of *Luiprandus* King of the *Lombards*, are here still remaining; the Kings of *Lombardy* being so pleased with

the situation of the place, that they made it the Seat-Royal of that Kingdom. The Cathedral here is one of the best endowed in *Italy*, if not in *Europe* is the Revenues of it amounting to 300000 *Crown*s per annum, 3. *Como*, the birth-place of both the *Plinius*; a rich and handom Town situate on the South-side of the *Lacus Laris*, which from this Town hath now the name of *Lago di Como*: into which Lake and through it runs the *Adda*, and yet the waters do not mingle: that of the River passing over those of the Lake. About this Lake are many fair Hopies and handom Villages, which do much beautifie the place; and in the midst thereof an Island called *Comacina*, in which there was a strong Forts in former times, wherein the *Longobardian* Kings did preserve their Treasure. 4. *Lodi*, or *Lauda* in the *Latine*, seated in a prosperous soil, and blessed with a painful and industrious people. 5. *Nosara*, situate upon an high Hill, in which live many ancient and noble Families: of right belonging to the *Splintardi*, as Dukes of *Millain*; but at the time when *Magnum* wrote, consigned over upon some conditions to the Dukes of *Parma*. But this Town, though it appertained to the Dukes of *Millain*, is situate within the Dukedom of *Montferrat*; and is, 6. *Alexandria* also, once a poor small Village, known by the name of *Koboretum*, from a Grove of Oaks adjoining to it: afterwards being raised to its present greatness, by the joyned Purges of the Citizens of *Cronoma*, *Millain*, and *Placentia*; in honour of the Emperor it was called *Cæsaræ*. But in short time these people siding with the Popes, drew on themselves the anger of the Emperor *Frederick Barbaross*; who having in a manner devastated the City of *Millain*, the people thereof, at the destruction of the City, retired to this Town; calling it in honour of Pope *Alexander III.* whose part they then took against the Emperor, by the name of *Alexandria*, which it still retaineth. It is now the strongest outwork of the whole Duchy, well fortified against all assaults and batteries, which may come from *France*. 7. *Margnan*, situate South from *Millain*, remarkable for the great defeat here given the *Switzers*, by King *Francis I.* and now the title of a Marquess. 8. *Cronoma*, situate on the Banks of the River *Po*, in a very rich and healthful soil; an ancient Colony of the *Romans*, but a beautiful City to this day; and of such fidelity to its Prince, that it hath got the name of *Cronoma* the faithful. It was built in the first year of the second *Punic* War, and burnt to the ground by *Vipsianus*'s Soldiers, after the defeat of *Titellius* his Forces: which defeat was given under the Walls of this Town. For when *Antonius Vipsianus* General, first after his Victory entered into it, he went into a Bath to wash away the sweat and blood from his body: where finding the water somewhat too cold, he laid by chance, that it should anon be made hotter. Which words the Soldiers applying to their greedy desires, set fire on the Town, and spent four days in the pillage of it. By the encouragement of *Vipsianus* it was again re-edified, and is now grown famous for the high Tower, from which the by-word, *Una turris in Cronoma*, unus *Petrus* in *Roma*, unus *portus* in *Ancona*, 9. *Millain*, a fair Town, once the Metropolis of the Province of *Liguria*, and afterwards of the whole Diocese of *Italy*; called therefore *Metropolis* *hæc* *Italica*, the Metropolis or Mother City of *Italy*, as *Dionysius* one of the Bishops heretofore called the Metropolitan of *Italy* by *S. Athanasius*. At this time the fairest and the biggest of all *Lombardy*, having a Castle so strongly fortified, with natural and artificial Ramparts, that it is deemed impregnable. A City very populous, containing 200000 persons; and of great Trade, here being private Shops equalling the publick Store-houses of other places; the

people consequently so rich, that the Wife of every Mechanick will flant it in her Silks and Taffeties. This City is said to have been built by the *Gauls*, 359 years before Christ. It is seven miles in circuit, and honoured with an University, wherein flourished *Hermolus Barbarus, Calvus Rhodoginus, and Cardanus*. Seated it is, in as commodious a Soil as any in Italy, environed with Water by two great Channels; the one drawn from the River of *Addua*, the other from the *Tesio* or *Adige*: which run hard by it, and convey all things to the City in great abundance, that things there are of very cheap rates; and add much also to the industry of the Inhabitants in the vending and dispersing of their Manufactures, which are of great esteem in most parts of the World. The buildings of the City generally are fair and stately, but three especially commended for their magnificence; that is to say, The Castle, the Hospital, and the Cathedral. For matter of Religion it doth use to glory, that *Barnabas* the Apostle was its first Bishop, and *St. Ambrose* one of his Successors; that formerly their Bishop stood on even terms with the Popes of *Rome*, and their Church as much privileged as that; and that since those times they have given unto the World four Popes, that is to say, *Alexander II. Urban III. Celestine V. and of late Gregory XIV.*

As for the fortunes of it, it continued in the power of the *French*, and the King of *Italy* of that Nation, from the destruction of the *Lombards*, till the Kingdom of *Italy* fell from the house of *Charles* the Great, and came at last into the hands of the *German* Emperours. Under them it continued till the time of *Frederick Barbarossa*, from whose obedience it revolted Anno 1161, in behalf of Pope *Alexander III.* the Emperour divers times defacing the City, and the people till ministering fresh occasions of dislike and quarrel. *Beatrice* the Wife of *Frederick* coming to see the City, without any intentions to it; was by the irreverent people first imprisoned, and then most barbarously used. For setting her upon a Mule, they turned her face towards the tail, which they made her hold instead of a Bridle; and having thus shewed her up and down the City, they brought her unshewn to one of the Gates, and there kicked her out. To revenge this horrible affront, the Emperour besieged and forced the Town; adjudging all the people to die without mercy, but such as would undergo this ransom. Between the buttocks of a skittish and kicking Mule, there was fattened a bunch of Figs; one or more of which, such as desired to live must snatch out with their teeth, their hands bound behind them, as the Mule was pacing through the streets. A condition which most of them accepted; and thereupon gave occasion to the custom used among the *Italians*: who when they intend to scoff or disgrace a man, are wont to put their thumb betwixt two of their fingers, saying, *Ecco la Fico*: a disgrace answerable to that of making Horns (in *England*) to him that is suspected to be a Cuckold. The City after this rebelling, and again taken by the Emperour, he levelled it unto the ground, pulled down the Walls; and caused the whole ground on which it stood, to be plowed up and sowed with Salts, seeming to threaten by that Emblem, that it should never be re-edified. Which notwithstanding, the City was not only new built again, but the Pope, with the help of the *Milanese* and *Venetians*, had at last the better of the Emperour; whom he enjoyed, after a vile submission, to undertake a journey to the *Holy Land*. Freed from the Emperour, they began to live after the form of a Republick; in which condition they continued about 56 years: when *Orso*, summoned *Visconti* (quasi his Comes, because he was Lord of *Millan* and *Angerona*) assumed the title to him-

self, and fetled it upon that Family after his decease; but so that for the most part they were under the command of the *German* Emperours, and to them accountable. *Galeazzo I.* so called (as some write) because the Cocks crowed more than ordinarily at the time of his birth, added to the Estate hereof the Cities of *Crema*, and *Cremona*. In the person of *John Galeazzo* it was advanced unto a Dukedom by the Emperour *Venceslaus*, but 100000 Crowns in ready money; which *John* increased to mightily in wealth and power, that he had 29 Cities under his Command; and died as he was going to *Florence* to be crowned King of *Tuscany*. To him succeeded *John Maria*, and after him his brother *Philip*: who in his life had married his only daughter (but illegitimate) to *Francisco Sforza*, the best Commander of his times; and at his death appointed *Alfonso of Aragon*, King of *Naples*, for his Heir and Successor. Before *Alfonso* could take any benefit of this designation, *Sforza* was quietly possessed both of the City and the loves of the people. This *Francis Sforza* (I must needs crave leave to tell this story) was the Son of *James Attendola*, a plain Country-man, who going to his labour with his Ax in his hand, whilst a great Army was patting by him, compared the misery and unpleasingness of his present condition, with those fair probabilities which a Martial life did present unto him. And being in a great dispute within himself what were best to do, he presently fell upon a resolution of putting the question to the determination of the Heavenly Providence; by calling his Ax unto the top of a Tree next to him: conditioning with himself, that if the Ax came down again, he would contentedly apply himself to his wonted labour; but if it hung upon the boughs, he would betake himself unto higher hopes, and follow the Army then in passage. He did so, the Ax hung upon the boughs, he went after the Army, and thrived to well in that employment, that he became one of the best Captains of his time, named *de Cotignola* from the place of his dwelling, and *Sforza* from the greatness of his noble courage. By *Antonia* the Daughter of *Francis di C. Salis*, the Lord of *Carona*, he was the Father of this *Francis Sforza* whom now we speak of, who was so fortunate a Commander in the Wars of *Italy*, that to oblige him to his Party, *Philip* the Duke of *Millain* bestowed his daughter upon him, and thereby a fair title to this great Estate, which he successively obtained against all Pretenders. In his Line it continued till the coming of *Lewis XII.* of *France*, the Son of *Charles*, and Nephew of *Lewis*, Dukes of *Orleans*, by *Valentina*, the sole Daughter of *John Galeazzo* the first Duke: who getting Duke *Lodowick Sforza* (betrayed by the *Swissers*) into his hands, carried him prisoner into *France*, and possessed himself of the Estate. Outed not long after by the Confederate Princes of *Italy*, who were jealous of so great a neighbour, he left the cause and quarrel unto *Francis* his next Successor in that Kingdom, in pursuance whereof, it is said by *Bellay* a French Writer, that the use of Muskets was first known. But *Francis* being in conclusion taken at the Battle of *Pavie*, and carried prisoner into *Spain*; for his release, was forced to release all claim unto this Estate. A release long before endeavoured by some French Politicians, because the pretensions hereunto had brought such damage unto that Crown; and no less eagerly opposed by Chancellor *Prat* (on the same reason, that *Scipio Nasica* did oppose the destruction of *Carthage*, that is to say, because it did not only keep the French Nation in continual discipline of War; but served for a purgation of idle and superfluous people. Yet notwithstanding this release, *Francis* renewed the War again, and laid siege to *Millain*, then under the command of *Antonio di Leva*, and a Spanish Garrison: during

which War, the wretched *Millainese*, endured the worst of miseries. For first the Governour, under colour of providing pay for his Souldiers, got all the victuals of the Town into the Castle, to be sold again at his own price: which many of the poorer sort not able to pay, perished of Famine in the streets. And on the other side, his Souldiers which were quartered in most parts of the City, used when they wanted money, to chain up their Hosts, and then to put them to a ransom. Such as upon this barbarous usage fled out of the City, had their Goods confiscated: on which there followed such a disconsolate desolation, that the chief streets were over-grown with Nettles and Brambles. In this miserable estate it continued, till *Charles* the Emperour having totally driven out the French, restored it to *Francis Sforza*, brother to the last Duke *Maximilian*, and Son of that *Lodowick*, who had vainly endeavoured to restore it to himself, but had most imprudently taught the French the way into *Italy*. But this *Francis* dying without issue, and the house of *Sforza* failing in him, the Emperour entered on the Dukedom as right Lord thereof, and left the same to his Successors in the Realm of *Spain*. This said, we will sum up the whole story of this Estate, in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Lords and Dukes of *Millain*.

- 1277 1. *Orso Visconti* Archbishop of *Millain*.
- 1295 2. *Matthew*, Brothers Son to *Orso*, confirmed in his command of *Millain* by *Albertus* the Emperour.
- 1322 3. *Galeazzo Visconti* Son of *Matthew*, disfeited of his command by *Lewis* of *Bavaria* Emperour.
- 1329 4. *Atto Visconti*, Son of *Galeazzo*, confirmed in his Fathers power by the same *Lewis* the Emperour.
- 1339 5. *Lucchino Visconti*, Brother to *Galeazzo*.
- 1349 6. *John Visconti*, the Brother of *Lucchino*.
- 1354 7. *Galeazzo II.* Son of *Stephen*, the Brother of *John*.
- 1378 8. *John Galeazzo*, Son of the first *Galeazzo*, created by the Emperour *Venceslaus*, the first Duke of *Millain*, An. 1395.
- 1402 9. *John Maria*, Son of *John Galeazzo*, slain by the people for his horrible tyrannies.
- 1412 10. *Philip Maria*, the last of the *Visconti*, which commanded in *Millain*; a Prince of great power in swaying the affairs in *Italy*. He died Anno 1446; the *Millainese* for some years refusing their former liberty.
- 1446 11. *Francis Sforza*, in right of his Wife *Blanch* the base daughter of *Philip* seconded by the power of the Sword, admitted Duke by the general consent of the people of *Millain*, one of the Knights of the noble Order of the Garter.
- 1461 12. *Galeazzo Sforza*, a valiant but libidinous Prince, cruelly murdered by his own Subjects.
- 1477 13. *John Galeazzo Sforza*, privately made away (as it was supposed) by his Uncle *Lodowick*.
- 1494 14. *Lodowick Sforza*, the Son of *Francis*, and Brother of *Galeazzo*, who to secure himself of his ill-got Dukedom, drew the French into *Italy*.
- 1501 15. *Lewis XII.* of *France*, Son unto *Charles* and Nephew to *Lewis Duke of Orleans*, by *Valentina* Daughter to *John* the first Duke of *Millain*; vanquished *Lodowick*, carried him prisoner into *France*, and took the Dukedom to himself.
- 1513 16. *Maximilian Sforza*, the Son of *Lodowick*, restored to the Dukedom by the power of the *Swissers*, and *Venetians*; but again outed of it by *Francis I.* Son-in-law and Successor to

King *Lewis XII.* in the Kingdom of *France* 1529. 17. *Francis Sforza*, Brother of *Maximilian*, restored to the Estate, and the French expelled by the puissance of *Charles V.* who after the death of this Duke *Francis* (the last of the *Sforzas*) An. 1535, united it for ever to the Crown of *Spain*.

This Dukedom is not now of such great extent, and power, as in former times; there being but nine Cities remaining of those 29, which were once under the command of the Dukes hereof: the rest being gotten in by the State of *Venice*, the *Florentines*; the Dukes of *Mantua*, and *Parma*. And yet is this accounted the prime Dukedom of *Christendom* (as *Flanders* was accounted the prime Earldom of it) affording the Annual Revenue of 800000 Ducats to the King of *Spain*. A good Revenue, might it come clear unto his Possessors. But what with the discharge of his Garrison-souldiers, the detraying of his Viceroy, the Salaries of Judges and inferior Ministers; it is conceived that he spends more on it than he getteth.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, a Scepter *Azure*, Crowned *Or*; in his Gorge, an Infant *Gulcr*, which was the Coat-Armour of a *Saracen*, vanquished by *Orso* the first of the *Visconti* in the *Holy Land*.

Here are in this Dukedom, Archbishop 1. Bishops 6.

The Dukedom of *MANTUA*.

THE Dukedom of *MANTUA*, is bounded on the West, with *Millain*; on the East, with *Komandula*; on the North, with *Marcia Trevigiana*; and on the South, with the Dukedom of *Parma*.

The Country about *Mantua* is reasonably good, and yieldeth all sorts of Fruits being well manured: plentiful in Corn and Pastures, the very high-ways by the fields being planted with Elms, to train up the Vines which grow there intermingled in every place, as generally it is in all parts of *Lombardy*. But the Inhabitants are conceived not to be so civil and well-bred, as the rest of *Italy*'s childh in their apparel, without mainly gravity, poor in the entertainment of their friends, and exacting all they can from strangers.

The places in it of most note are, 1. *Mercaris*, bordering next to *Millain*. 2. *Basilica*, a small, but pleasant habitation, belonging to some Princes of the Ducal Family; built with fair Chyltreyers towards the Street, in which Passengers may walk dry in the greatest rain. 3. *Pontida*, a small Village, but as famous as any in regard it was the place where *Virgil* was born; but generally said to be born in *Mantua*. *Mantua Virgilio gaudet*, as the old Verse is; because the Village is so near the City of *Mantua*: being but two miles distant, that his birth might very well be ascribed unto it. 4. *Mantua*, seated on the River *Nincius*, now called *Sarce*; which coming out of *Lago di garda* falleth not far off into the *Po*, from whence there is a passage unto *Venice*. By Nature strong, covered on three sides with a running water, half a mile in breadth; and on the fourth side with a Wall. The Dukes to take their pleasure on the Lakes and Rivers, have a Barge called the *Bucentaur*, five stories high, and capable of two hundred persons (wherein it had the name) furnished very richly both for state and pleasure. *Onus* the Son of *Manto* the Prophetess, the Daughter of *Tirifus*, is said to have been the Founder of it, and to have given unto it his Mother's names; but I more than doubt it, though *Virgil* a Native of those parts do report

port it to; this City being one of those which the *Tufcani* built beyond the *Appennine*; as the founders Antiquaries do affirm. Made memorable (by whosever built at first) in the declining times of Christian purity, for a Council holden in it, *An. 1061.* wherein it was decreed that the choosing of the Pope should from thenceforth belong unto the *Cardinals*. A Prerogative which of old belonging to the Emperors, was first by *Constantine III.* furnished *Paganinus*, given to the Clergy and People of *Rome*, in the time of Pope *Benedict II. Anno 684.* resumed by *Charles the Great*, when he came to the Empire; and now appropriated only to the College of *Cardinals*. But to return unto the Town: on the East-side of a Bridge of about 500 paces long, covered over head, and born up with Arches, stands the Duke's Palace for the City; and not far thence the *Domo*, or Cathedral Church of *St. Peter*. The Palace very fair and stately, but far short for the pleasures and delights thereof, of his Palace at *Merrislo*, five miles from the City: which though it be of a low roof (after the manner of ancient buildings) yet it is very richly furnished, and adorned with very beautiful Gardens: able to lodge, and give content to the best Prince in Christendom. Here are also many other Towns, as *5. Caprens* and *6. Lucera*, of which nothing memorable.

As for the fortunes of this Dukedom, it is to be observed that *Mantua* followed for long time the fortunes of the *Western Empire*; till given by *Otto II.* Son to *Theobald Earl of Canstff*, for the many good services he had done him. *Bonifacio* who succeeded him, had to Wife *Beatrice* the Sister of *Henry II.* and by her was the Father of *Matthildis*, that famous Warriours, who carried so great a stroke in the state of *Italy*. Being dispossessed of her Estate by *Henry III.* she joined in Faction with the Popes, recovered all her own again, and dismembered from the Empire many goodly Territories, which at her death (having had three Husbands, but no issue) she gave in Fee for ever to the See of *Rome Anno 1115.* After her death, *Mantua* continued under the protection of the Empire. But that protection failing them, by little and little it was brought under the Family of the *Bonacelli*: who Lording it over a Free-people with too great severity, contracted such a general hatred, that *Passavino*, the last of them, was slain in the Market-place by the people, under the command and conduct of *Lewis de Gonzaga*, a noble Gentleman; who presently with great applause took to himself the Government of the Estate, *Anno 1328.* which hath continued in his house to this very day, with a great deal of lustre. Whose Successors take here as followeth, under the several titles of

The Lords, Marquesses, and Dukes of *Mantua*.

A. Chr.

- 1328 1. *Lewis Gonzaga*, the first of this Line, Lord of *Mantua*.
- 1366 2. *Guido* Son of *Lewis*.
- 1369 3. *Lodovick* or *Lewis II.* Son of *Guido*.
- 1382 4. *Francis Gonzaga*, Son of *Lewis II.* highly extolled by *Pagio* the *Florentine* for his Wisdom and Learning; who valiantly repulged the attempts made against his Estate, by *John Galeaze*, the first Duke of *Millain*.
- 1407 5. *John Francisco Gonzaga*, created the first Marquess of *Mantua*, by the Emperor *Sigismund*.
- 1444 6. *Lodovick*, or *Lewis III.* Son of *John Francisco*, who entertained the Emperor *Frederick*, and the King of *Denmark*, with great magnificence.

- 1478 7. *Frederick* Son of *Lewis III.*
- 1484 8. *Francis II.* Son of *Frederick*.
- 1519 9. *Frederick II.* Commander of the Armies of the Pope, and *Florentines*, entertained *Charles V.* with great solemnity; by whom he was made Duke of *Mantua*, 1530, and declared Marquess of *Monferrat*, in right of his Wife.
- 1540 10. *Francis III.* Son of *Frederick* the second Duke of *Mantua*, and Marquess of *Monferrat*.
- 1550 11. *William*, the Brother of *Francis III.* created the first Duke of *Monferrat*.
- 1587 12. *Vincent*, Son of *William*, Duke of *Mantua* and *Monferrat*.
13. *Francis IV.* Son of *Vincent*, had to Wife *Margaret* the Daughter of *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, and by her a Daughter named *Mary*; in whose behalf the Duke of *Savoy* undertook the War against her Uncle, for *Monferrat*.
- 1613 14. *Ferdinand* the Brother of *Francis IV.* succeeded him in both Estates, notwithstanding the opposition of the Duke of *Savoy*.
15. *Vincent II.* the Brother of *Ferdinand*, and of *Francis IV.*
- 1628 16. *Charles Gonzaga*, Duke of *Nevers*, in *France*, by his Mothers Line; and of *Mantua*, and *Monferrat*, by his Father *Lewis Gonzaga*, the third Son of *Frederick I.* Duke of *Mantua*; succeeded on the death of *Vincent II.* but not without great opposition of the Spanish Faction, who lacked *Mantua*, distressed *Casal*, and much impoverished both Estates. But the Business was at last composed by the Power of the *French*, and the Invetiture conferred upon him, by the hands of the Emperor.

The Territories of this Duke (reckoning in that of *Monferrat* also) are in circuit nigh unto those of *Florence*; but his Revenues fall much short, which amount to about 500000 Ducats only; but might be greater, if either the Duke would be burthened to his Subjects, as *Florence* is; or if he were not on all sides Land-locked from Navigation and Traffic.

The chief Order of Knighthood in these Dukedoms, is, of the Blood of our Lord *JESUS CHRIST*, instituted *Anno 1608.* The Author of it was Duke *Vincent Gonzaga*, when the Marriage was solemnized between his Son *Francis* and Lady *Margaret*, Daughter to the Duke of *Savoy*. It consisteth of twenty Knights, whereof the *Mantuan* Dukes are Sovereigns; and was allowed by Pope *Paul V.* The Collar hath Threads of Gold laid on fire, and interwoven with these words; *Domine Probasti*. To the Collar are pendent two Angels, supporting three drops of Blood, and circumscribed with *Nihil illi triste recepto*. It took this name, because in *St. Andrews* Church in *Mantua*, are laid to be kept as a most precious Relique, certain drops of our Saviours Blood (thou canst not, O Reader, but believe it) with a piece of the *Sponge*.

The Arms of *Mantua* are *Argent*, a Cross *Pure Gules*, between four Eagles *Sable*; membered of the second, under an esccheon in *Fesse*, charged quarterly with *Gules*, a Lion *Or*, and *Or* three Bars *Sable*.

There are in this Dukedom
Archbishops 1. Bishops 4.

The Dukedom of MODENA.

THE Dukedom of *MODENA* containeth the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, with the Territories adjoining to them: both of them situate in that part of *Lombardy* which is called *Cispadana*; and consequently partake of the pleasures and commodities of it.

The people of this Dukedom are said to be better natured than most of *Italy*: those of *Modena* being quick in their reformation; calm to be pacified when wronged, and friendly in their entertainment of Strangers; the *Reggians* being affable, of present wits, and fit for any thing they can be employed in: the women in both Towns of a middle disposition, neither too courtly, nor too froward, as in other places.

The first principal City is that of *Modena*, anciently better known by the name of *Mutina*, and famous in those times for the first battle betwixt *Antony* and *Augustus Caesar*; this latter being then not above eighteen years of age, and yet made head of a new League against *Antony*, whom the Senate and people looked upon as a common Enemy. The managing of the War was left to *Herfius* and *Panfa* then Consuls; the fortune of the day foecal, that *Antony* left the field, and the Consuls their lives leaving *Augustus* the absolute command of a powerful Army, in whose favors he so cunningly did work himself, that he made them the foundation of his future greatness. It was at that time a *Roman* Colony, but being ruined by the fury of the *Goths* and *Lombards*; was afterwards new built at the charge of the Citizens, situate near the *Appennine* in a very good soil, and of indifferent fair buildings. In the distractions of *Italy* betwixt the Emperors and the Popes, *Guido* the Pope's Legate, and then Bishop thereof, configned it over to *Azo* of the house of *Este*, Lord of *Ferrara*, *Anno 1304.* the Pope himself consenting to it upon the payment of a yearly tribute of 100000 Crowns: since which time it hath been for the most part in the power of that house: *Borjus* the Marquess of *Ferrara*, being by *Frederick III.* made Duke of *Mantua*, 2. *Reggio*, the second Town of note, hath tasted much of the same fortune; at first a *Roman* Colony called *Legium Lepidi*, afterwards ruined by the *Goths* when they came first into *Italy*, repaired and compassed with a Wall by its own Inhabitants, and for a time under the command of the Earls of *Canstff*. But being weary of that yoke, they recovered their liberty; which being unable to maintain in those boiling times, they gave themselves unto *Obizo* the Father of *Azo*, *Anno 1292.* and after that in the year 1326, to the See of *Rome*, passing through many other hands, it was at last sold for 60000 Ducats to the *Visconti*, Lords of *Millain*, *Anno 1370* and in the end recovered by the house of *Este*, *Anno 1409* and gave the title of a Duke to the aforesaid *Borjus*, whom *Frederick III.* made Duke of *Modena*, and *Reggio*, 1452.

The Successors of this *Borjus* are before laid down in the succession of *Ferrara*; who held the whole Estate together till the death of *Alphonso* the last Duke. He dying without lawful Issue, *Anno 1595.* left his Estate to *Cesar de Este*, his Nephew by a base Son called *Alphonso* also; betwixt whom and Pope *Clement VIII.* a War was threatened for the whole: but at last compromised upon these conditions, That the Church of *Rome* should have *Ferrara*, with all the Lands and Territories appertaining to it, as the Estate anciently holden of that See; and that *Modena* and *Reggio*, being Imperial Fiefs, should remain to *Cesar*; but to be held in fee of the Papal Throne. Duke *Cesar* to have leave to carry away all

his moveable goods, to sell such of his Lands as were not of the ancient domain of the Dukedom; and to have one half of the Ordinance and Artillery. By which agreement the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, became a new erected State, distinct, and independent of any other: each City being well fortified, and garrisoned, and furnished with Ordnance for defence thereof. But what they yield unto the Prince in the way of Revenue, and what Forces he is able to raise out of his Estates, I cannot positively determine: but by the Tribute formerly paid unto the Popes for the City of *Mutina*, and the rich Territory of both Towns, and the great Revenues of the Dukes of *Ferrara*; I conceive they cannot yield less than 100000 Crowns of yearly Income. The Arms of this Duke the same with those of *Ferrara*, before blazoned.

The Dukedom of PARMA.

THE Dukedom of *PARMA* hath on the North the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Mantua*, from which it is parted by the *Po*, on the South the *Appennine*, which divideth it from *Liguria*; on the East the Country of *Modena* and *Romandiola*, from which last parted by the River *Sciltema*, now called *Panaro*; on the West *Monferrat*: situate, as *Modena* is, in *Lombardia Cispadana*; and much of the same nature both for soil, and air, and other the commodities of those parts of *Italy*.

The principal Cities of it are, 1. *Parma*, an ancient City, and made a Colony of the *Romans* at the end of the second *Punic* War; as *Mutina* and *Aquilia* at the same time were. It is seated on a small River of the same name, which runneth almost through the midst of it; beautified with very handfom buildings, and peopled by a race of ingenious men, whether they do betake themselves to Arts or Arms. The grounds about this City are of excellent Pasturage, and yield great plenty of the Cheese which is called *Parmesin*. 2. *Placencia*, seated on the *Po*, one of the first Colonies which the *Romans* planted amongst the *Cisalpine Gauls*; and famous for the resistance which it made both to *Annibal*, and *Asdrubal*, who severally in vain besieged it: made afterwards the Metropolis of the Province of *Emilia*, yet nothing the less beautiful for so great an age. The fields adjoining have the same commendation with those of *Parma*, for most excellent Cheese; but go beyond for Salt-pits and Mines of Iron, which the other wanteth. 3. *Mirandula*, a proper Town built in the time of *Constantine* the Son of *Constantine* the Great: the Patrimony of the noble Family of the *Pieri* (of which was *Pierre de Mirandula* that renowned Scholar) but held by them as Feudatories to the Dukes of *Parma*. 4. *Briscella*, called anciently *Briscellum*, not far from the chief City of *Parma*; of no great note at the present time, but memorable in the *Roman* story for the death of the Emperor *Obizo*, who here killed himself. For hearing here that his Forces were overthrown by *Valens*, and *Cecina*, Commanders of the Forces of *Vitellius*, then his Competitor for the Empire; he rather chose to fall by his own Sword, than that the *Romans* should be forced, for his sake, to renew the War. And this he did with so much honour to himself, that many of his Soldiers slew themselves at his *Funeral Pile*; not out of conspicuousness of crime, or for fear of punishment, but to testify their affections to him, and to follow such a brave example as was laid before them. So as we may truly say of him, as he is said by *Tacitus* to have said of himself, *vixi. Alii divitum imperium tenuerunt, nemo tam fortiter reliquit*. 5. *Monticella*, in the middle way almost between *Parma* and *Placencia*, and

and opposite unto *Cremona*, a chief Town of the Dutchy of *Millain*, from which parted by the River *Po*.

These Towns (as others in these parts) have been partakers of the diversities of fortune, as being (after the declining of the Western Empire) sometimes under the *Frentians*, most times under the *Millanys*; and at last conquered by Pope *Julius II.* in the confusions and distractions of the Dukedom of *Millain*, under the two last Princes of the House of *Sforza*. By *Paul III.* being of the House of the *Farnesjs*, the Cities of *Parma* and *Placentia* with their Appendices, were given unto his Son *Petro Alsigni* (or *Petrus Aloysius*, as the Latine call him) with the title of Duke, Anno 1549. The Signeury of *Camerino*, which he had lately taken from the Dukes of *Urbis*, being given in recompence to the Church. This *Petro* being a man of most vicious life, had amongst other villanies committed an unspeakable violence on the person of *Cosmus Chirius* the Bishop of *Favenns*; and soon after poisoned him. For which most detestable Fact, he received no other chastisement of his Father than this, *Eae vitia me non commotione didicit*, that he was sure he had not learnt those vices by his example. But going on in these wicked courses, he was slain at last by Count *John Aguczzola*, and *Placentia*, after a short siege, yielded to *Ferdinand Gonzaga* (Viceroy in *Millain* for the Emperor *Charles V.*) conceived to be privy to the murder. *Ottavian*, the Son of *Petro Luigi*, hearing what had hapned, fortified himself in *Parma* as well as he could; but being hated by the new Pope, and distrustful, not without good cause of the Emperor's purposes, he had quite lost all, if *Henry II.* of France, had not taken him into his protection. For the Emperor *Charles* fully determined (notwithstanding that *Ottavian* had married his base Daughter) to have made himself Lord of the Town; and the French King was loth to see to great a strength added to the Emperor's possession in Italy. When the War had now lasted four years, *Philip II.* (who afterward succeeded *Charles*) considering how necessary it was for his affairs in Italy, to have this *Ottavian* his friend, restored unto him the City of *Plaiance* or *Placentia*, and so withdrew him from the French Faction, Anno 1557. Yet because he would be sure to keep his house in a perpetual dependence on Spain, he restored it not absolutely at the present, but held the Citadel thereof with a Spanish Garrison, till the year 1583, when in regard of the good services, which *Alexander* Prince of *Parma* had done him in his Wars against the *Hollanders*, and others of the revolted Provinces; he caused it to be surrendered into the hands of his Father *Ottavian*. By which, and by his settling upon this House the Town and Territory of *Novara*, in the Dukedom of *Millain*, and other personal favours which they have conferred on the Princes of it; the Kings of Spain seem to have given some satisfaction to this House for stepping betwixt them and the Kingdom of *Portugal*; to which they might have made such a probable title, as would have troubled his Estate, had they stood upon it.

The Dukes of Parma.

- A. Chr.
1549 1. *Petro Luigi Farnesjs*, Son to *Paul III.* made by the Pope, his Father, the first Duke of *Parma*.
1550 2. *Ottavian Farnesjs*, Son to *Petro Luigi*, married *Margaret* base daughter of *Charles V.* afterwards Governours of the *Netherlands*.
3. *Alexander*, Son of *Ottavian* and *Margaret* of *Austria*, one of the most renowned Soldiers of his time, Governour of the *Netherlands* for King *Philip II.*

- 1592 4. *Raimutio Farnesjs*, Son of *Alexander* and *Mary of Portugal*, eldest Daughter of *Edward* Son to King *Emmanuel*; one of the Competitors for that Crown.
5. *Odoardo Farnesjs*, Son of *Raimutio*.

The Dukedom of MONT-FERRAT.

THE Dukedom of MONT-FERRAT, is situate betwixt *Lombardy* and *Piemont*, on the Rivers of *Tenarus* and *Po*, on the East, and West; extended North and South, in a line or branch, from the *Alpes* to the borders of *Liguria*; of which last it was sometimes counted part, and called *Liguria Cisapennina* for distinction sake.

It took this name either *a monte ferrato*, from some Mountain of it stord with Iron; or else *a monte feraci*, as some rather think, from the fertility of the Mountains. And to say truth, though the whole Country seem to be nothing else than a continual heap of Mountains; yet are they Mountains of such wonderful fruitfulness, that they will hardly give place to any Valley in Europe.

The principal River of it is the *Tenarus*, above mentioned, which springing out of the hills about *Sarecin*, a Town of the Marquise of *Saluzzez*, falleth into the *Po* not far from *Pavie*. The principal Cities of it are 1. *Alba*, called by *Pliny Alba Pompeia*, situate on the banks of the said River, in a rich and fertile soil, but a very bad air: near to which, in a poor Village called *Zobia* the Emperor *Perennis* was born. Who being of mean and obscure Parents, after the death of *Commodus*, was called by the Conspirators to the Roman Empire. But being over-zealous to reform the corruptions of the Soldiers, he was by the *Pretorian* Guards (hating their Princes for their virtues, as much as formerly for their vices) most cruelly murdered; and the Imperial dignity fold to *Julianus*, for 25 *Sesteriums* a man. 2. *Casal*, vulgarly called *St. Vas*, from the Church there dedicated to *St. Evasius* (or *St. Vas*, as they speak it commonly) the strongest Town in all this Country; well built and peopled with many ancient and noble Families, of which the Family of *St. George* is one of the principal; and made a Bishops See by Pope *Sixtus IV.* Anno 1474. It was in former times the chief seat of the House of *Montferrat*, and for that cause compassed with a strong Wall, and a fair Castle: but of late fortified after the modern manner of Fortifications, and strengthened with an impregnable Citadel by Duke *Vincenz Gonzagas* as the surest Key of his Estate, in which new Citadel the Governour of the Province holds his usual residence. 3. *Aigue*, in Latine *Aquensis*, famous for its Baths or Fountains of hot and Medicinal waters. 4. *St. Savoyens*, where there is a very strong Fortrefs, as there is also in 5. *Posellure*, or *Pont di Sura*, so called of the River *Sura* 6. *Ogniano*, anciently *Occimianum*, the old seat of the first Marquesses of this *Montferrat*. 7. *Belzale*. 8. *Liburn*, and many others of less note.

Here are also within the limits of this Dukedom, the Towns of *Ast*, *Cherian*, and *Chivasso*, belonging to the Dukes of *Savoy*, in the description of whose Country we may speak more of them, together with *Novara* and *Alexandria*, appertaining to the Dukedom of *Millain*, which we have spoken of already. And hereunto also I refer the strong (and in those times) impregnable Fortrefs, by the Latine Historians called *Fraxinetum*, from some Grove of *Athes* near unto it: situate in the advantages of the Mountains, and not far from the Sea, by consequence

consequence better able to defend it self and admit relief; and therefore made the receptacle or retreat of the *Saracens*, at such time as they had footing in these parts of Italy. First took and fortified by them in the year 891. recovered afterwards by the prowess and good Fortune of *Orbo* the Emperor, deservedly furnished the Great, about sixty years after. Of great note in the stories of those middle times. By *Luiprandus* placed near the borders of *Provence*; by *Blondus*, and *Leander*, near the River *Po*, and the Town of *Valenza*, once called *Forum Fulvis* and finally, by *Sigimius* in the *Coelian Alps*; and so most fit unto be referred to this Country, though now so desolated that there is no remainders of the ruins of it.

This Country was made a Marquise by *Orbo II.* 985. one of the seven by him created and given to the seven Sons of *Waleran* of *Saxony*, who had married his Daughter *Adelbeide*. A Military Family, conspicuously eminent in the Wars of Greece, and the *Holy-Land*; where they did many acts of singular Merit: inasmuch as *Baldwin* and *Conrade*, issuing from a second branch hereof, were made Kings of *Jerusalem*; and *Boniface* one of the Marquesses, got the Kingdom of *Thessaly*, and many fair Estates in Greece. But the Male-issue failing in Marquess *John*, the Estate fell to *Theodorus Paleologus*, of the Imperial Family of *Constantinople*, who had married the *Heir-General* of the House; continuing in his name till the year 1534. when it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Mantua*. In the person of Duke *William* *Montferrat* raised to the honour of a Dukedom, as it still continueth the best and richest part of the Duke's Estate, and the fairest flower in all his Garden. The residue of the story may be best collected out of the following Catalogue of

The Marquesses of Montferrat.

- A. Chr.
185 1. *William*, one of the Sons of *Waleran* and *Adelbeide*, made the first Marquess of *Montferrat*.
2. *Boniface* the Son of *William*.
3. *William II.* who accompanied the Emperor *Conrade III.* and *St. Lewis* of France to the *Holy-Land*.
1183 4. *Boniface II.* Son of *William II.* his younger Brother, *William* being designed King of *Jerusalem*, and *Reynor* another of them made Prince of *Thessaly*, succeeded his Father in *Montferrat*. Aiding his Nephew *Baldwin*, the Son of *William*, in recovering the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*; he was took prisoner by *Guy of Lusignan*, Competitor with him for that title.
5. *William III.* Son of *Boniface*, poisoned in the *Holy-Land*, where he endeavoured the restoring of his Brother *Conrade*, to that languishing Kingdom.
6. *Boniface III.* Son of *William III.* for his valour in taking of *Constantinople*, made King of *Thessaly*.
1254 7. *Boniface VI.* Son of *Boniface III.* added *Veroli* and *Ephoredium* unto his Estate.
8. *John*, surnamed the *Just*, the last of this house.
9. *Theodorus Paleologus* Son of the Emperor *Andronicus Paleologus* the elder, and *Toland* his Wife, Daughter of *Boniface IV.*
10. *John Paleologus*, Son of *Theodorus*.
11. *Theodorus II.* Son of *John*, a great builder and endower of Religious houses.

12. *Jacobus Johanner*, Son of *Theodorus II.*
13. *John III.* eldest Son of *Jacobus Johanner*.
1464 14. *William IV.* Brother of *John III.* Founder of the City and Monastery of *Casal*.
1487 15. *Boniface V.* Brother of *John* and *William*, the two last Marquesses, invested by the Emperor *Frederick IV.* *Blanca Maria*, the Daughter of *William*, surrendering her Estate unto him.
16. *William V.* Son of *Boniface V.*
1518 17. *Boniface VI.* Son of *William V.*
1530 18. *John George*, Brother of *William V.* succeeded his Nephew in the Estate which he held but four years. After whose death, Anno 1534. this Marquise was adjudged to *Frederick* the first Duke of *Mantua*, who had married *Margaret*, Daughter of *William V.* and next Heir to *George*.

Whose Successors may be seen in the former Catalogue of the Dukes of *Mantua*.

The Arms hereof are *Gules*, a Chief *Argent*.

Here are in this Estate, Archbishops 0. Bishops 4.

And now according to my method I should proceed to the description and story of the *Principality* of *Piemont*, the last and most Western part of Italy. But being it lieth partly in, and partly at the foot of the *Alpes*, was anciently a part of the Province called *Alpes Coele*, and is now part of the Estate of the Duke of *Savoy*: we will defer till we come to those *Alpine Provinces*, which are next to follow. And so much shall suffice for Italy, in which there are, besides those of *Piemont*,

Popes 1. Patriarchs 3.
Archbishops 35. Bishops 292.
Universities 17.

V I Z.

In the Land of the Church.
Rome.
Bononia.
Ferrara.
Perusia.
In Sicill.
Palermo.
Catania.
In the Signeury of *Venice*.
Venice.
Padua.
Verona.
In the Dukedom of *Tuscany*.
Florence.
Pisa.
Sienna.
In *Naples*.
Naples.
Salern.
In *Lombardy*.
Millain.
Pavia.
Mantua.

And so much for Italy.



OF THE ALPES.

BEfore we can come out of Italy into France, we must cross the *Alpes*; a ridge of Hills where-with (as with a strong and defensible Rampart) Italy is assured against France and Germany. They are said to be five days journey high, covered continually with Snow, from the whitemests whereof they took this name; that in the *Sabine* Dialect being called *Alpum*, which in the *Latine* was called *Album*.

They begin about the *Mediterranean* or *Ligustick* Seas, and crossing all along the Borders of France and Germany, extend as far as to the Gulf of *Comero*, in the Province of *Istria*; and are in several parts called by several names, which we will mutter up as they lie in order from the *Mediterranean* to the *Adriatick*. And first those which lie nearest to the *Mediterranean*, are for that cause called *Maritime*, from the nearness to *Liguria*, called by some *Ligustica*. 2. Then follow those called *Cottia*, from *Cottius*, a King of the *Allobroges*; And 3. Those named *Graia*, from the passage of *Hercules* and his *Graecian* Followers of which, both amongst the Poets and Historians, there is very good evidence. 4. After we come to the *Penine*, so named from the march of *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, whom the *Latine* Writers call by the name of *Penni*; or from the Mountain-God *Pannus*, worshipped by the *Veragi*, the Inhabitants of it. 5. Next come we to the *Lepontia*, so named from *Lepontii*, who did there inhabit: As 6. the *Rhetica*, which lie next to them, from the *Rhetii*, once a powerful people of that mountainous tract. 7. Then follow those called *Julia*, from the passage of *Julius Caesar* over them, in his march towards *Gaul*; and so at last we come unto those called *Carnica*, extending to the shores of the *Adriatick*, denominated from the *Carni* who did there inhabit, and who gave name also to *Carniola*, an adjoining Province.

The ancient Inhabitants of these mountainous Countries, besides the *Allobroges*, *Veragi*, *Lepontii*, *Rheti*, and *Carni*, spoken of before; where the *Sedani*, *Salii*, *Valaisers*, *Yaemiti*, and divers others of less note and estimation: all vanquished by the indefatigable industry of the *Romans*. After whose subjugation, and the settlement of the *Roman* Empire, these mountains, and some part of the Vales adjoining; made five several provinces; viz. the Province of the *Cottian Alps*, containing *Wallisland*, and *Piemont*. Secondly of *Rhetia Prima*, comprehending the *Grison*, and part of the Dukedom of *Millain*, now in possession of the *Swissers* both which were members of the Dioceses of *Italy*. Thirdly, of the *Alpes Maritimae*, now part of *Dauphine* and *Provence*. Fourthly, of the *Graia* and *Penine Alps*, and the greatest part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, including some part of *Savoie*, and most part of *Switzerland*; both which were members of

the Diocese of *Gaul*. And fifthly, of *Noricum Mediterraneum*, comprehending *Carniola*, *Carinthia*, and the parts near hand, which were members of the Diocese of *Illyricum Occidentale*. The people anciently, as now, by reason of their drinking Snow-water, dissolving from the tops of the Hills, and sometimes falling thence with as great a violence as the *Cataracts* of *Nile* are said to do; were generally troubled with a swelling in the throat, which the *Latines* call *Struma*: being the same with that which we call the *Kings-Evil*; because by special privilege curable by the Kings of France and England. *Quis tumidum guttur miratur in Alpibus?* as the Poet hath it.

Of these vast Hills, the lowest are the *Carnice* and *Maritime*, lying nearest to the several Seas before remembered: The *Cottia* and the *Graia* are so high, but that the passages lie open for the most part of the year. Thereof, by reason of their deep and dreadful precipices, their tedious and steep ascents, narrow ways, dangerous craggy Rocks, fierce whirlwinds, and huge balls of Snow, tumbling with an incredible violence from the tops of the Mountains; are hardly passable by horse, nor at all by Waggons. And yet amongst these dreadful Hills, there are observed to be some Valleys of great fertility, not giving ground for fruitfulness to the best in Europe; and for the sweetness of the temperature going much beyond them. With such an equal hand, doth the heavenly Providence dispense the benefits of Nature to his whole Creation; that plenty bordereth upon want, and pain on pleasure.

And yet for all the Difficulty and danger of these Alpine Passages, Conventuofness, or Curiosity, or Desire of Conquest, have found away to make them passible in many places; and that not only for private and particular Passengers, but for vast Multitudes and numerous Armies, such as those led by *Annibal* and *Julius Caesar*. But especially the barbarous people found out five ways to break into Italy, which hath been since much travelled by divers Nations, of which three be out of France, and two out of Germany. The first from France is through *Provence*, and do close to the *Ligustick Seas*; easiest for private Passengers, but too strait and narrow for great Armies: there being many passages in the Country of *Nizza*, so narrow, that ten men may make head against ten thousand; as in that called the *Pass of the Virgin*, for one. The second is over the Hills called *Genèvre*, into the Marquisate of *Saluzzesi*, and to the other parts of *Lombardy*; and was the way that *Charles VIII.* marched towards *Naples*, and by the *Italians*, is commonly called *Strada Romana*, because the ordinary Passage betwixt France and Rome. The third way is over the greater *Centis*, (which some call the lesser *St. Bernard*) to *Aost*, or *Turin*; which (if we may believe antiquity)

WAS

was first opened by *Hercules*, and after followed by *Annibal*: who found the Passages so closed up, that he was forced to break his way (as *Plutarch* telleth us) with Fire and Vinegar, whence that to memorable a saying, *Viam Annibal, aut invenit, aut facit*. From the passage of those Worthies, this Tract, and that adjoining were called *Alpes Graia*, and *Penina*. Or if (as others think) *Annibal* took the former way, and came directly upon *Turin*, which Town it is most certain that he took in his march: then these *Penine* must take name from the Passage of *Adrubal*, or of some part of *Annibal's* Army, which probably was too great to go all one way: or else from the Mountain God *Panninus*, as before was said.

The first way out of Germany into Italy, is through the Country of *Grison*, by the *Valtolin*, which the *Spaniards* seized into his hand. So that by the keeping of the *Velthyn*, or *Valtolin*, and manning of the Fort *Fuenter*, which he also erected; he was in a manner the Lord of this passage: not only to the discontent of the Natives, but to the distaste of his neighbours the *Savoyards* and *Venicians*. The other way out of Germany into Italy, is through the Country of *Tirol* by the Towns of *Innsbruck*, and *Trent*. This passage is commanded by the Castle and Fort of *Eberberg*, seated on the Confines of this Country towards *Suecia*, and from *Innsbruck*, is two days journey distant. Which Fort, in the War which the *Protestant* Princes made against *Charles V.* was surprized by Captain *Schertelin*, so to hinder the coming of the Pope's Forces into Germany: for which the Emperor so hated him, that when all the rest of that Faction were pardoned, he only continued a *Proscript*, his head being valued at 4000 Crowns. The taking also of this Fort, and the Castle adjoining, by D. *Maurice* of *Savoie* made the said *Charles* then being in *Innsbruck*, to fly out of Germany; and shortly after to resign his Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*.

Out of these Mountains rise the Springs of many of the most renowned Rivers in these vast parts of the World; as 1. The *Rhine*, which springeth from two several Fountains, the one which they call the *Nearer Rhine*, out of the *Lepontia*; and the other which they term the *Vorder*, or further *Rhine*, out of the *Rhetica*, which meet together about a Dutch mile from *Chur* the chief Town of the *Grison*; and so go on by *Constance* to Germany. 2. *Rhofne*, which riseth in that part of the *Lepontia*, which is called *Die Furche*, about two Dutch miles from the head of the *Nearer* or *Hinder Rhine*, and so through *Wallisland* in France. 3. *Padus*, or *Po*, which hath his head in a branch of the *Cottian* or *Cedrian Alps*, heretofore called *Mons Pessulus*, and so through *Piemont* into Italy; out of them also spring the Rivers of *Russe*, *Durance*, and *Aberist*, the first a *Dutch*, the second a *French*, and the third an *Italian* River also; not to say any thing of others of inferior note. The great Lakes which are found in this Mountainous Tract, we shall hereafter meet with in their proper places.

Let us next look upon the Countries and Estates here situate, which bordering upon Italy, France, and Germany, and partaking somewhat of them all, do belong to neither; but reckon themselves to be free and absolute Estates supreme, and independent upon any others, as indeed they are. Such other of these Alpine Countries, which are under the command of the German Princes, as some parts of *Schwarzen* and *Bavaria*; together with *Tirol*, *Carniola*, and the rest which belongs to *Austria*, shall be considered in the History of those States and Princes, to which of right they do belong. But for the rest, which as they lie entire together without intermixture, so they are absolute in themselves, and owe nor suit nor service

unto any other, we will consider them in this place, under the name of the *Alpes*, or the *Alpine* Provinces.

The *ALPES* then, or the *Alpine* Provinces, call them which you will, are bounded on the East with *Tirol* in Germany, and the Dukedom of *Millain* and *Monferrat* in Italy, on the West, with *Provence*, *Dauphine*, and *La Bresse*, parts of the Continent of France, on the North, with the County of *Burgundy* in France, and *Suecia* or *Schwarzen* in *Highb Germany*; and on the South, with *Lombardy*, and a branch of the *Mediterranean* Sea. Called in the middle times by the name of *Burgundia Transjurana*, because it contained that part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, which lay beyond the Mountain *Tour*. A Mountain which beginning near the City of *Basle*, and not far from the *Rhine*, passeth South-ward by the Lakes of *Bieler-Zee*, *Neuchamber-Zee*, and that called *Lemane*, till it come almost unto the *Rhofne*: dividing by that means the Provinces of *Switzerland*, and *Savoie*, from the Country of *Burgundy*.

It lieth under the sixth Climate, and some part of the seventh, so that the longest day in Summer is fifteen hours and three quarters. Of different nature in regard both of Soil and People; which will best shew it self in the survey of the several Provinces, into which divided that is to say, 1. the Dukedom of *Savoie*, 2. the Signeury of *Geneva*; 3. the Reforms of *Wallisland*; 4. the *Conton* of the *Swissers*; and 5. the Leagues of the *Grison*. Which several States, though they be reckoned to belong to the German Empire, and that the Bishops of *Chur*, *Sion*, and *Basle*, are generally accounted for Princes of it: yet they neither come unto the *Diet*, nor are subject to the publick Taxes, nor comprehended within any of those ten Circles into which the Empire is divided.

The Language herein spoken partakes somewhat of all three, as before was said: the French being wholly spoken in *Savoie*, the lower *Wallisland*, and generally by the *Swissers*, bordering on the Lake *Leman*; and the *Dutch* being common to the greatest part of the *Swissers*, the *Grison* about *Chur*, and the upper *Wallisland*; and finally the *Italian* used by the generality of the *Grison*, the Prefectures appertaining unto them, and the *Swissers* both in *Piemont*, and those parts of *Savoie* which lie next unto it.

The principal Souldiers of these mountainous Provinces, 1. *Rodolph*, Earl of *Habsburg*, the Founder of the present *Austrian* Family. 2. *Thomas*, and 3. *Peter*, Earls of *Savoie*, this last furnished *Charlemain II.* 4. *Emanuel Philibert*, one of the later Dukes heretofore, Commander of the Armies of the King of Spain. 5. *John Tserelli*, commonly called Count *Tilly*, General of the Imperial Armies in the War of Germany. For Scholars of more special note, for which we are beholden to these Countries, we have 1. *Philip Theophrastus Bombasius a Boscimam*, commonly called *Paracelsus*, the Author, or Instigator of *Chymical* Physick; born in the Mountains of *Helvetia*, as he faith himself: a man of most prodigious parts, and of no mean vices. 2. *Zuinglius*, one of the chief Agents in the Reformation. 3. *Musculus*, and 4. *Oecolampadius*, two Divines, his Seconds. 5. *Henry Bullinger*, one of the same profession also. 6. *Sebastian Castelle*, of as much learning as the best of them, though of different judgment. 7. *Dan. Tassanus* the *Hebrician*. To which we may add 8. *Calvin* also, who though he had his birth in France, had his being here; and never grew to any eminency in Fame or Learning, till he was settled in Geneva.

For matter of Religion, it is of a very mixt condition also in all these Countries: that of the *Romish* only having publick countenance in the Dukedom of *Savoie*, and *Piemont*; but so that the Reformed is tolerated in some parts thereof; especially in the next parts of *Dun-*

phine, to which the neighbourhood of Geneva gives a great increase. In Switzerland there are four Cantons which are wholly for the Reformation, viz. Zurich, Bern, Basle, and Schaffhausen: Seven that stand wholly for the Doctrine of the Church of Rome, i. e. Uren, Schwyz, Unterwalden, Lucern, Zug, Friburg, and Solothurn: In Appenzel, and Glaris, they allow of both. The Grisons are confutedly divided betwixt both Religions; but the Italian Prefectures admit no other but the Romish. The cause of which division came upon the preaching of Zuinglius, a Canon of the Church of Zurich: who being animated with Luther's good success in Germany, began about the year 1519, to preach against the Mass and Images, and other the corruptions of the Church of Rome. In which his Party so increased, that on a public Disputation, which was held at Zurich, the Mass was abrogated in that Canton by the authority of the Senate, Anno 1526. and Images destroyed at Bern, 1528. After which prosperous beginnings, the Reformation began to spread it self amongst the Confederates; and had prevailed farther both in France and Germany, but for a difference which arose betwixt him and Luther about the Sacrament of the Supper: in which Luther did not only maintain a real Presence, but a Consubstantiation also in the sacred Elements; which Zuinglius maintained to be only a bare sign and representation of Christ's blessed Body. For reconciling this difference, wherein the enemies of both did extremely triumph; a Conference was held between them at Marburg, a Town of Hesse, by the procurement of that Landgrave, but without success: Luther professing that he durst not agree in that point with Zuinglius, *Ne principes suas interpretationes tantopere Pontificis exosa, magis inviol redderet*; for fear of drawing too great hatred on the Princes of his own profession. From this time forwards all brake out into open flames, the names of *Ubiquitarians*, and *Sacramentarians*, being reciprocally cast upon one another: to the great hindrance of the cause which they had in hand: yet to that the Lutheran opinions got ground in Germany, the Zuinglians amongst these Mountains, and in France it self; and finally prevailed by the means of Calvin in many parts in Germany also. But heretofore more hereafter in convenient place.

As for the story of those Countries, before they were divided into so many hands, we are to know that the old Inhabitants hereof (mentioned before) were conquered severally by the Romans: as shall be shewn in the description of the several Provinces. Won from the Romans by the Burgundians, in the time of Honorius the Western Emperor, they became a member of their Kingdom; except the Country of the Grisons, and some parts of Switzerland, which fell under the Alans: united afterwards in the new Kingdom of Burgundy, of the French erection, when subdued by that Nation. But Charles the Bald, the last of the French Kings of Burgundy having united it to the Kingdom of France, divided that Kingdom into three Estates; that is to say, the Dukedom of Burgundy on this side of the Saône, the Dukedom of Burgundy beyond the Saône, and the Dukedom of Burgundy beyond the Jura. This last, containing the greatest part of all these Alpine Provinces (except Piemont only) was by the said Charles given to Conrad a Saxon Prince; the Son of Witkind III. and younger Brother of Robert, the first Earl of Anjou; by the name of Earl of Burgundy Transjurane or Burgundy beyond the Jura. Rodolph his Son and Successor, by Ender the King of France, his Cousin German, was honoured with the title of King: to make him equal at the least, with Bofon Earl of Burgundy beyond the Saône, whom Charles the Great, about the same time had made King of Arles.

But Rodolph finding it offensive to the German Emperor, abandoned it on the death of Ender, and took to himself the title of Duke. The residue of the story we shall have in the following Catalogue of

The Earls, Dukes and Kings of Burgundy Transjurane.

1. Conrad the first Earl of Burgundy Transjurane.
- 890 2. Rodolph, Earl, King, and Duke of Burgundy Transjurane.
- 912 3. Rodolph II. elected King of Italy against Berengar; which title he exchanged with Hugh de Arles, who was chosen by another Faction, for the possession of the Kingdom of Arles and Burgundy; on the assuming of which Crown, he resigned this Dukedom to his Brother Bofon.
4. Bofon the Brother of Rodolph II. succeeded his Brother in the Dukedom of Burgundy, beyond the Jura; as afterwards he succeeded Rodolph, his Brothers Son, in the Kingdom of Arles and Burgundy.
- 965 5. Conrad II. Son of Bofon, King of Arles and Burgundy and Duke of Burgundy Transjurane.
- 990 6. Rodolph III. Son of Conrad, who dying without Issue, left his Estates to Henry furnished the Black, the Son of his Sister Gisela, by Conrad II. Emperor and King of Germany: united to unto the Empire, till by the bounty and improvidence of some following Emperors, it was Cantoned into many parts, of which more anon.

It is now time to lay aside this discourse as to the general condition and affairs of these Alpine Provinces; and to look over the particulars: beginning first with the Estate of the Duke of Savoy, situate wholly in the Mountains, and lying next to Italy, where before we left.

The Dukedom of SAVOY.

THE Dukedom of SAVOY is bounded on the East with Milan and Montferrat in Italy; on the West, with Dauphine in France; on the North, with Switzerland, and the Lake of Geneva; and on the South, with Provence, and the Mediterranean. The Country of so different nature, that it cannot be reduced under any one Character; and therefore we must look upon it in the several parts into which divided; that is to say, 1. the Principality of Piemont; 2. Savoy, especially so called.

1. PIEMONTE, in Latine called Regio Pedemontana, because situate at the foot of the Mountains (as the name in both Languages imports) is bounded on the East, with Milan, and Montferrat; on the West, with Savoy, on the North, with the Swissers; and on the South, it runneth in a narrow Valley to the Mediterranean, having Montferrat on the one side, Provence and a part of the Alpes upon the other. The Country wonderfully fertile compared with Switzerland and Savoy; which lie next unto it; but thought to be inferior to the rest of Italy. It containeth, besides Baronies, and Lordships, 15 Marquises, 52 Earldoms, 160 Castles or Walled places; and is so populous withal, that once a Piemontese being demanded the extent of his Country, made answer, that it was a City of three hundred miles in compass.

The principal Cities of it are, 1. Turin, called of old *Augusta Taurinorum*, because the head City of the *Taurini*, once the Inhabitants of this Tract: from which *Taurini*, it deriveth the name of Turin, and not as some conceive from the River *Doria*, on whose banks it standeth. In this City is the Court and Palace of the Duke of Savoy (who is the Lord of this Country) the See of an Archbishop, and an University, in which the renowned Scholar *Erasmus* took his degrees in Divinity. It is situate on the River *Po*, in a place very important for the guard of Italy; for which cause the Romans sent a Colony thither, and the Lombards made it one of their four Dukedoms. Adjoining to it is a Park of the Dukes of Savoy, watered with the *Doria*, *Stura*, and *Po*, six miles in circuit, full of Woods, Lakes, and pleasant Fountains; which make it one of the sweetest situations in Europe. 2. Mondovi, seated on the swelling of a little hill, with very fair Suburbs round about it; in one of which the Dukes of Savoy built a Church and Chappel to the blessed Virgin; intended for the burial place of the Ducal Family. It is the best peopled Town, for the bigness of it, of any in Italy. 3. *Augusta Pretoria*, now called *Asti*, situate in the furthest corner of Italy to the North and West. 4. *Verelli*, a strong Town bordering upon *Milain*, to which it formerly belonged; and was given first in Dower with *Blanch* the Daughter of *Philip Maria* Duke of *Milain*, to *Amade* III. Duke of Savoy; and anciently the chief Town of the *Liby*, who together with the *Salaffi* and *Taurini*, were the old Inhabitants of this Country. 5. *Inuria*, called by *Ptolomy Eporedia*, situate at the very jaws of the *Alpes*, an Episcopal City, 6. *Nicea*, or *Nizze*, an Haven on the *Mediterranean*, at the influx of the River *Varus*, which divides it from Provence; beautified with a Cathedral Church, the Bishops Palace, a Monastery of Nuns, and an impregnable Citadel. A place so naturally strong, that when yet the Fortifications were imperfect, it resisted the whole Forces of *Barbarossa* the Turkish Admiral. An. 1543. lying before it with a Navy of two hundred sail and battering it continually with incredible fury. First fortified by Duke *Charles*, upon occasion of some words of the Duke of *Barbon*, who passing this way with his Army, *Behold*, faith he, a situation of which they know not the importance: the Citadel being after added by *Emanuel Philibert*, and Garrisoned for the most part with 400 Souldiers. 7. *Suse*, seated in the ordinary thorough-fair betwixt France and Italy, called of old *Segovia*; and honoured in those times with a stately Sepulchre of King *Coltine*, a King of the *Allobroges*: one of the seven Marquises in the middle times erected by the Emperor *Otho*. 8. *Pignarelle*, fortified with a Castle of great importance, which commandeth all the adjoining Valleys, fold by Duke *Charles Emanuel* to *Lewis* XIII. of France, together with the Port and Valley of *Perousa*, (and in them both to the number of ten or twelve Towns and Villages) for the sum of 494000 Crowns, to be for ever in the propriety and Sovereignty of the Kings of France; and thereby giving to the French a commodious pass from *Dauphine* into Italy upon all occasions, and no small influence and command on his own Estates. 9. *Quier*, adorned with many goodly Churches, fair Convents, and noble Families. 10. *Ville Franca*, a place of great strength, more towards the Sea. 11. *Savilian*, seated in so pleasant a Country, that Duke *Emanuel Philibert* had once a purpose to settle his abode in it, and make it the chief of his Estate. 12. *Bujsque*, a Marquise, another of the seven erected for the Sons of *Walaran*. 13. Hereunto we may add the City of *Asti* (though properly within the limits of *Montferrat*) anciently a Colony of the *Romans*; and now to be compared, for the greatness and beauty of

her Palaces, to the most stately Cities of Lombardy; situate betwixt the two Rivers of *Po* and *Tenarus*, very rich and populous.

Here is also in this Country the Marquise of *Saluzzo*, (of the same erection as the former, but a greater Estate) the cause of so many differences betwixt France and Savoy. The principal Town whereof called also *Saluzzo* (from the *Salaffi* questionless who dwelt hereabouts) seated about the Spring of the River *Po*; reasonably big and fortified with a very large Castle, fitted with rooms for all uses, and for every season. 2. *Carmagnola*, which gave name to that famous Captain who carried so great a sway in the Wars of Italy. A Town so fortified and stored with all sorts of Ammunition, that it is thought impregnable. 3. *Revelle*, a well fortified place. 4. *Doglian*, the thorough-fair for the greatest part of the Trade which is driven betwixt *Piemont*, and the River of *Genoa*. The Arms heretofore Argent, a Chief Gules.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were the *Salaffi*, *Liby*, and *Taurini*, as before is said, all vanquished by the *Romans*, and their Country made a Province of that Empire, by the name of the Province of *Alpes Cottiae* in the time of *Nero*; of which *Genoa* was the *Metropolis* or principal City. The present are descended, for the most part of the *Herulii*, who under the conduct of *Odoacer* conquered Italy; whereof he was proclaimed King by the *Romans* their selves, but *Odoacer* being vanquished near *Vercina*, by *Theoderick* King of the *Goths*, the *Heruli* had this Country allotted to them by the Conqueror for their Habitation. They had not held it long when subdued by the *Lombards*, of whose Kingdom it remained a part, till given by *Asipert* the seventeenth King of the *Lombards*, to the Church of Rome; affirmed by some to be the first temporal Estate that ever the Popes of Rome had possession of. But lying far off, and the Donation not confirmed by the Kings succeeding, the Popes got little by the gift: so that in the subverting of the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, it was at the devotion of the Kings of Italy; of the house of *Charles* the Great; and afterwards of his Successors in the Empire, by whom distracted into several Estates and Principalities. *Thomas* and *Peter*, Earls of Savoy, made themselves Masters of the greatest part of it, by force of Arms: the former in the year 1210. the latter in the year 1256. Since that time the first Son of Savoy is titled Prince of *Piemont*. The Marquise of *Saluzzo*, containing almost all the rest, was added by the Marriage of a daughter of this Marquise, with *Charles* Duke of Savoy, An. 1481. Of which Marriage though there was no issue, yet the Savoyards always held it as their own, till the French upon as good a title possessed themselves of it: Recovered by the Savoyards, Anno 1588, the Civil Wars then hot in France. But finding that he was not able to hold it against *Henry* IV. (who looked upon it as a door to let his Forces into Italy) he compounded with him, Anno 1600. the Country of *Bresse* being given in exchange for this Marquise: of which, together with the residue of *Piemont*, and some pieces of importance in the Dukedom of *Montferrat*, that noble Family of Savoy doth now stand possessed.

The Arms of this Principality are Gules, a Cross Argent, charged with a Label of three points Azure.

2. SAVOY, strictly and especially so called, is bounded on the East, with *Wallisland*, and part of *Piemont*; on the West, with *Dauphine*, and *La Bresse*; on the South, with some parts of *Dauphine* only; and on the North with *Switzerland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*.

The Country is for the most part hilly and Mountainous,

tainous, overspread with the branches of the *Alper*, healthy enough, as commonly all Hill Countries are, but not very fruitful, except some Valleys which lie nearest to the Western Sun, and the plain tract about the *Lemanian Lake*, lying towards *Geneva*. By reason of the difficult and narrow ways, and those full of Thieves, it was once called *Maly*; but the passages being opened by the coast and industry of the people, and purged of Thieves by good Laws and exemplary Justice, it gained the name of *Savoy* or *Savoy*, *quasi salvia via*: as *Male-ventum*, a Town of the Realm of *Naples*, on the like considerations got the name of *Beneventum*. By the *Latines* of these later times it is called *Sabaudia*, a name not known to any of the ancient Writers; who knew it by no other name than that of the *Allobroges*, or *Allobrogum Regio*.

The common People are naturally very dull and simple, so gross of understanding for all their continual converse with other Nations, who take this Country in their way to *Italy*; that they believe the Duke of *Savoy* to be the greatest Prince in the World: and so unworlike, that a few men of another Nation, well trained and disciplined, will make a great number of them flee. But on the other side, the Gentry are of a very pleasing conversation, civil, ingenious, and affecting all good exercise: so that there may be daily seen in *Chambery*, as much good company, and as well appointed and behaved, as in many of the best Towns of *France* or *Italy*. The number of both sorts (taking in *Piemont* who are not interested in the first place of this character) are thought to be 80000.

The chief Cities are, 1. *Chambery*, situate on the banks of the River *L'Arche*, in a very pleasant Valley, compassed round with Mountains; the principal of the Dukedom on that side of the *Alper*: honoured with the Dukes Court when he resided in this Country, the ordinary seat of Justice, and many neat houses which belong to the Gentry, fortified of late with a strong Castle and sufficient Outworks; but not recovered of the damage it received, Anno 1600, when it was forced by King *Henry IV.* of *France*, in his Wars with *Savoy*. 2. *Tarentaise*, an Archbishop's See, situate in the midst of the Mountains, heretofore the Metropolis of the Province of the *Alpes Graie*, and *Panine*, and called by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Centronum*, from the *Centrons* who inhabited about this tract. 3. *Lunebourg* in the Country of the old *Medulli*; betwixt which and *Suse*, a Town of *Piemont*, lieth the most ordinary rode betwixt *France* and *Italy*. 4. *Aque belle*, situate at the foot of a craggy Rock. 5. *Rapaille*, a sweet and fruitful situation, on the South-side of the Lake *Lemanus*, the chief Town of the Signiory of *Fossigny*; where *Amadeus I.* Duke of *Savoy*, having given over his Estate, lived a Monastick life, and was thence chosen Pope by the Fathers at *Basil*, Anno 1440. 6. *Nun* or *Nevidum* (by some of the old *Latines* called *Novidunum*) an ancient City, laid desolate in or before the time of *Julius Cæsar*, repaired again in the Empire of *Vespasian*; the seat of late times of the Bishops of *Geneva*, since their expulsion out of that City. 7. *Bele*, on the *Rhodanus*, or *Rhone*. 8. *Albon*, founded about the year 456. 9. *Conflans*, fortified by the late Dukes of *Savoy*, but otherwise of small importance. 10. *Annunziata*, not much observable, but for being the seat or place of Solemnities, for an order of Knights called by that name. 11. *Maurienne*, or *St. John de Maurienne*, an Archbishop's See, situate in the Valley of the *Alper* so called; the chief City of the old *Medulli*, who dwelt herabouts; from whence the Princes of this house were first entitled Earls of *Maurienne* only. 12. *Charbonnier*, a well fortified place. Here is also the

strong Town and Fort of *Montmélian*, which held out four Months against *Henry IV.* and many thousand shot of French Cannon, Anno 1600, and the impregnable Forts of *St. Cartharines*, which yet submitted to that King, the Government whereof being denied to the Duke *Byron*, plunged him in discontent and Treason, to the loss of his head.

The many Tribes in and about this Mountainous Country, of which we have mentioned some before, pass generally in some ancient Writers, by the name of *Allobroges*; because the most powerful of them all. Of whom the first mention which we find in story, is the Atone-ment made by *Hannibal* in his passage this way, between *Brutus* and his Brother, about the succession of the Kingdom. Afterwards siding with the *Salii* a Gallick Nation, in a War against *Marcellus*, then a Confederate of the *Romans*, they drew that people on their banks; by whom they were in fine subdued, with the loss of no less than 120000 Gauls under the several conducts of *Cn. Domitius Enobarbus*, and *Qu. Fabius Maximus*; by which last, *Binnius* or *Bittulius* King of the *Avemni*, one of the Confederates, was led in triumph unto *Rome*. The Country and people at that time were much alike, *Cællum atrox pervicaci ingenio*, a sharp air, and a stubborn people; as it is in *Florus*: not without commendation in the following Ages, for discovering *Cataline's* Conspiracy, by which the whole *Roman* State was in danger of ruin. After which we find *Cælius*, one of the Kings of these *Allobroges*, to have been in special favour with *Augustus Cæsar*: affirmed to be the Founder of twelve Cities in this mountainous Tract; whence it had the name of *Alpes Cællie*; and by that name reduced into the form of a Province, by the Emperor *Nero*, in the declining of that Empire, this Province became a part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; and passed, with other rights of that falling Kingdom, to the Emperours of *Germany*, by the gift of *Rodolph* the last King. To whom it did continue subject till the year 999, in which *Berard* of *Saxony*, Son of *Hugh* of *Saxony* (which *Hugh* was Son of *Orto*, and Brother to *Orto III.*) for killing *Mary* the lascivious Wife of his Uncle, fled from *Germany*; and settled himself here, near *France*. His Son *Humbert*, (surnamed *Blanchemanis*, that is *Whitehand*) was by the special favour of the Emperor *Conradus Salicus*, made Earl of *Maurienne*; which is a Town of this Country, Anno 1027. And by his Marriage with *Adela*, the Daughter and Heir of the Marquess of *Suse*, added that noble Marquisate (one of the seven erected by *Orto II.* and given amongst the Sons of *Waleran*) unto his Estate. *Humbert II.* gained by Conquest the Town and Territory of *Tarentaise*; as *Amé*, or *Amadeus III.* did the Countries of *Vaulx*, and *Chablais*, Anno 1240, or thereabouts. *Amé*, or *Amadeus IV.* by the Marriage of *Sibylle*, Daughter and sole Heir of *Ulrick* Earl of *Bresse*, added that Earldom to his House: as *Amé* or *Amadeus IX.* did the Town and Territory of *Vercelli*, upon the Contract betwixt *Philibert* his Son and Successor, with *Blanch* the base Daughter of *Philip Maria* Duke of *Millain*, who afterwards was married unto *Francis Sforza*. *Amé*, or *Amadeus II.* Earl of *Maurienne* was by the Emperor *Henry V.* invested with the Title of *Savoy*; and *Amadeus VIII.* created the first Duke, by the Emperor *Sigismund*, Anno 1397. But the main improvement or the power and patrimony of his House came by the valour and good success of the two Earls, *Thomas*, who in the year 1210, and *Peter* one of his Sons and Successors (for his manifold Conquests, surnamed *Charlemain* the *Junior*). An. 1256, by conquest got a great part of *Piedmont*; to which the Marquisate of *Salmaz*, containing almost all the rest, was united by a marriage of the daughter of the Marquisate, to *Charles* Duke

Duke of *Savoy*: and though he died without Issue by her, Anno 1489, yet his Successors still kept the possession of it, till *Francis I.* pretending some title to it in the right of his Mother (a Daughter of the House of *Savoy*) laid it unto the Crown of *France*; from which it was again recovered by the *Savoyard*, during the French Civil Wars, Anno 1588, and now is peaceably possessed. The Country of *Bresse* being given to the French, for their pretention to this Marquisate, Anno 1600. These Dukes of *Savoy* have a long time been devoted to the Faction of *Spain*, especially since the French Kings took in the lesser States bordering on them, as *Burgundy*, *Breigne*, &c. *Charles III.* sided so constantly with the Emperor *Charles V.* that denying *Francis I.* a passage for his Army through the Country into *Italy*, he was by the said King deposed of his Estates, Anno 1536. The Emperor to recover it left nothing undone, but in vain; for the French encountering his force in the open field, vanquished them, with the slaughter of fifteen thousand of his men. In the year 1558, peace being made between *Henry* and *Philip*, Successors to those great Princes: *Emanuel Philibert*, Son to Duke *Charles*, was restored to all his Rights. His Son and Successor having married *Katherine* the Daughter of King *Philip II.* depended wholly upon *Spain*, notwithstanding many quarrels which did grow betwixt them; his Sons receiving thence many great Pensions and preferments. For at the same time Prince *Amadeus Vittorio* the second Son, during the life of *Philip* his elder Brother, was chief Commander of that King's Gallies; and had in Pension a hundred thousand Crowns per annum; *Philibert* the third Son, was Vice-roy of *Sicily*; *Maurice* a Cardinal, had a moiety of the Revenues of the Archbishopric of *Toledo*; and *Dou Thomas*, though then young, had his Pensions also. But *Amadeus Vittorio*, who succeeded him, marrying *Madam Christiane*, a Daughter of King *Henry IV.* of *France*, changed his dependences, and held more close to *France* than any of his Predecessors: but whether to the hurt or benefit of his Estates, future times will shew. For leaving his Heir a Minor, in the hands of his Mother, the French upon pretence of preserving the Country for him, against the incroachments of the *Spaniards*, have made themselves Masters of the greatest parts of it: which when they will restore to the proper Owner, is beyond my cunning to determine. But now behold the Catalogue of the

Earls and Dukes of Savoy.

- 999 1. *Berard* of *Saxony*.
- 1027 2. *Humbert*, the first Earl of *Maurienne*.
- 1048 3. *Amé*, or *Amadeus I.*
- 1076 4. *Humbert II.*
- 1109 5. *Amé*, or *Amadeus II.* the first Earl of *Savoy*.
- 1154 6. *Humbert III.*
- 1201 7. *Thomas*, Son of *Humbert*.
- 1234 8. *Amé*, or *Amadeus III.*
- 1246 9. *Boniface*, Son of *Amé III.*
- 1256 10. *Peter*, a young Son of Earl *Thomas*, called *Charlemain* the 1st.
- 1268 11. *Philip*, Brother of *Peter*.
- 1285 12. *Amé*, or *Amadeus IV.* Nephew of *Thomas VII.* Earl, by a Son named *Thomas*.
- 1323 13. *Edward*, Son of *Amé IV.*
- 1329 14. *Amé*, or *Amadeus V.* the Brother of *Edward*.
- 1342 15. *Amé*, or *Amadeus VI.*
- 1385 16. *Amé*, or *Amadeus VII.*
- 1387 17. *Amé*, or *Amadeus VIII.* the first Duke of *Savoy*.
- 1434 18. *Lewis*, Son of *Amé VIII.*

- 1491 19. *Amé*, or *Amadeus IX.*
- 1475 20. *Philibert* Son of *Amé IX.*
- 1481 21. *Charles*, Brother of *Philibert*.
- 1489 22. *Charles II.*
- 1495 23. *Philibert II.* Son of *Lewis* the second Duke.
- 1496 24. *Philibert II.*
- 1504 25. *Charles III.* the Brother of *Philibert*, outed of his Estate by King *Francis I.*
- 1559 26. *Emanuel Philibert*, restored upon his Marriage with *Margaret* the Daughter of King *Francis I.* made Knight of the Garter by Queen *Mary*.
- 1580 27. *Charles Emanuel*.
28. *Amé X.* called also *Amadeus Vittorio*, Son of *Charles Emanuel*, married *Christiane* the Daughter of King *Henry IV.*
- 1637 29. *Charles Emanuel II.* Son of *Amadeus Vittorio*, or *Amé X.* at the age of three years succeeded his Father.

The Forces of this Duke consist especially in his Forts and Garrisons; whereof he hath good store in *Savoy* and *Piemont*, well fortified and plentifully furnished with all manner of Ammunition. And it concerneth him so to have, considering what dangerous neighbours he hath near him, and that his Country is a continual thoroughfare, for the Armies both of *France* and *Spain*, upon all occasions. Nor doth it less conduce to his preservation, that he hath so many retreats of natural strength, as are not easily accessible by a conquering Army; of which I left first, amongst many others, the Valley of *Aost* (which some reckon for a part of *Savoy*, and some of *Piemont*) so strong by reason of the narrow entries, the uneasy passages, and the great multitudes of the people which inhabit in it; that those who have made themselves Masters of the rest of the Country, durst never attempt it. And of the first, besides those formerly described, is the Town of *Nizze*, so fortified and flanked upon all accesses, that it seems rather to be an assembly of Forts, than a single Fortress. Out of which Garrisons, the Duke is able to draw great Forces for present service; besides the aid of the *Piemontese* upon all occasions, which are for the most part given to Arms.

The ordinary Revenue of this Dukedom (taking *Piemont*) are said to be above a Million of Crowns per annum. But his extraordinary is so great, that Duke *Charles Emanuel*, during the Wars with *Henry IV.* in a very few years drew out of *Piemont* only 11 Millions of Crowns; besides the charge which they were put to in quartering of Soldiers. By which it may appear, that the Dukes are not like to want Money to serve their turns, when they shall desire it of their Subjects; and yet not charge them more than they are able to bear.

The only Order of Knighthood in this Dukes estate is that of the *Annunziata* ordained by *Amadeus* the fifth Duke; at what time he defended *Rhodes* from the *Turks*, An. 1409. Their Collar is of fifteen Links, to shew the fifteen mysteries of the Virgin: at the end is the portrait of our Lady, with the history of the *Annunciation*. Instead of a Motto, these letters, *F. E. R. T. id est, Fortitudo Ejus Rhodum Tenuit*, are engraven in every plate or link of the Collar; each link being interwoven one with the other, in form of a True-lovers knot. The number of the Knights are fourteen, besides the Duke, who is the Sovereign of the Order: the solemnity was held antiently on our Lady-day, in the Castle of *St. Peter* in *Turin*; but of late time in the Town of *Annunziata*, from hence so denominated. So from this victory (for every repulse of the besieger, is a victory to the be- sieged

fieged) there arose a double effect; first, the institution of this Order; secondly, the assumption of the present Army of this Dutchy, where are *G.* a Cross *A.* This being the Cross of St. *John of Jerusalem*, whose Knights at that time were Owners of the *Rhoder*. Whereas before, the Arms were *Or*, an Eagle displayed with two heads, *Sable*, Armed *Gules* supporting in *Fesse*, an Escutcheon of *Saxony*, that is Barwile six pieces *Sable* and *Or*, a Bend flowered *Vermilion* a Coat belonging to the Emperors of the house of *Saxony*, from whom the first Earls of *Savoy* did derive themselves.

3. The Signeury of GENEVA.

GENEVA is a City in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, formerly subject to its Bishops, acknowledging the Dukes of *Savoy* for the Lord in chief: now reckoned as a *Free-Place*, bordering close upon the *Swissers*, and with them Confederate; and so more properly within the course and compass of the *Alpine Provinces*. It is situate on the South-side of the Lake *Lemane*, opposite to the City of *Lazane* in the *Canton of Berne*, from which it is distant six Dutch-miles: the River *Rhofie* (having passed through the Lake with fo clear a colour, that it seemeth not at all to mingle with the waters of it) runneth through the lower part thereof, over which there is a passage by two fair Bridges. This lower part is seated on a flat or level, the rest on the ascent of an Hill: the buildings fair and of free stone, well fortified on both sides both by Art and Nature; in regard of the pretensions of the Duke of *Savoy* (whom they suffer not to arm any Gallies upon the Lake) and other jealousies of State. The compass of the whole City is about two miles, in which there are supposed to be about sixteen or seventeen thousand souls. One of their Bridges is more ancient, and better fortified than the other, belonging anciently to the *Swissers* (or *Helvetians*, the old Inhabitants of that tract) but broken down by *Julius Cesar*, to hinder them from passing that way into *Gallia*.

The people of the Town are generally of good wits in the managery of publick business, but not very courteous towards Strangers, of whom they exact as much as may be; modest and thrifty in Apparel, and speak for the most part the *Savoyard*, or worst kind of *French*: So that the great resort of young Gentlemen thither, is not so much to learn that Language (which is no where worse taught) as out of an opinion which their Parents have, that the *Reformed Religion* is no where so purely practised and professed as there. By means whereof, the fry or seminary of our Gentry being seasoned in their youth with *Genevan* Principles have many times proved diffatisfied to the forms of Government (as well Monarchical as Episcopall) which they found established here at home: to the great embroilment of the State, in matters of most near concernment. The Women are said to be more chaste (or at least more reserved) than in any other place in the World: which possibly may be ascribed to that severity, with which they punish all Offenders in that kind. Dancing by no means tolerated in publick or private; Adultery expiated by no less than death: Fornication, for the first offence with nine days fasting upon bread and water in prison; for the second, with whipping; for the third, with banishment. But notwithstanding this severity, they make love in secret and are as amorous in their dalliances, as in other places.

The Territories of it are very small, extending not above two Leagues and an half from any part of the Town: but the soil, if well manured, bringeth Grain

of all sorts, and great store of Wine. There is likewise plenty of Pasture and feeding grounds, which furnish the City with flesh-meats, Butter, and Cheese, at very reasonable rates: the nearness of the Lake affording them both Fish and Wild-Fowl in good measure, and amongst others (as some say) the best *Carps* in *Europe*.

But the main improvement of this State is by the industry of the people, and the convenient situation of the City itself: the City being situate very well for the Trade of Merchandize, in regard it is the ordinary passage for Transporting Commodities out of *Germany*, to the *Marts at Lion*; and from thence back again to *Germany*, *Switzerland*, and some parts of *Italy*. And for the industry of the people, it is discernable in that great store of Armour, and Apparel, and other Necessaries, brought from hence yearly by those of *Bern*; and their Manufactures in *Satin*, *Velvet*, *Taffate*, and some quantities of Cloth, (fine but not durable) transported hence yearly into other places.

The Sovereignty of this City was anciently in the Earls heretofore, at first Imperial Officers only, but at last the hereditary Princes of it. Betwixt these and the Bishops (Suffragans to the Metropolitan of *Vienna*, in *Dauphine*) grew many quarrels for the absolute command thereof. In fine, the Bishops did obtain of the Emperor *Frederick I.* that they and their Successors should be sole Princes of *Geneva*; free from all Taxes, and not accountable to any but the Emperor. Which notwithstanding, the Earls continuing still to molest the Bishops, they were fain to call unto their aid the Earl of *Savoy*; who took upon him first as Protector only, but after by degrees as the Lord in Chief. For when the rights of the Earls of *Geneva*, by the Marriage of *Thomas Earl of Savoy*, with *Beatrice* a Daughter of this Earl's, fell into that house, then *Ame* or *Amade* VI. of that name, obtained of the Emperor *Charles IV.* to be *Viceroy-general* of the Emperor in his own Country, and in that right superior to the Bishop in all Temporal matters: and *Ame* or *Amade* the first Duke got from *Pope Martin* (to the great prejudice of the Bishops) a grant of all the Temporal jurisdiction of it. After which time the Bishops were constrained to do homage to the Dukes of *Savoy*, and acknowledge them for their Sovereign Lords: the Authority of the Dukes being grown so great (notwithstanding that the people were immediately subject to their Bishop only) that the Money in *Geneva* was stamped with the Duke's Name and Figure: Capital Officers were pardoned by him; no Sentence of Law executed till his Officers were first made acquainted; nor League contracted by the People of any validity, without his privacy and allowance: and finally the Keys of the Town presented to him as often as he pleased to lodge there; as once (for instance) to Duke *Charles III.* coming thither with *Beatrice* his Wife, a Daughter of *Portugal*. And in this state it stood till the year 1528, the Bishop being all this while their immediate Lord, and having *jus gladii & alius civilis jurisdictionis partes*, as *Calvin* himself confesseth in an Epistle to Cardinal *Sadolet*. But in that year, *Religion* being then altered in the *Canton of Bern*, near adjoining to them, *Viret* and *Farrellus* did endeavour it in *Geneva* also. But finding that the Bishop and his Clergy did not like their doings, they secured themselves unto the people, and by their aid in a popular tumult compelled the Bishop and his Clergy to abandon the Town. And though the Bishop made them many fair overtures, out of an hope to be restored to his Estate; yet would they never harken to him, nor admit of him any more being once thrust out. Nor did they only in that tumult alter the Doctrine and Orders of

of the Church before established; but changed the Government of the State also; disclaiming all Allegiance both to Duke and Bishop, and standing on their own Liberty, as a *Free-Commonwealth*. And though all this was done by *Viret* and *Farrellus*, before *Calvin's* coming to that City, which was not till the year 1536, yet being come, *Justifigatio meo comprobavit*, as he faith himself, no man was forwarder than he to approve the Action.

But *Calvin* being come amongst them, made their Divinity Reader, and one of the ordinary Preachers, he first negotiated with them to abjure the *Papacy*, and never more admit their Bishop; to which he found a cheerful and unanimous consent in all the people. Then finding that no Ecclesiastical Discipline was in use among them, he dealt with them to admit of one of his own composing: which at last he obtained also, but with very great difficulty; and got it ratified by the Senate, July 20. 1537. The next year after, the people weary of this yoke, and he and his Colleagues (*Farrellus* and *Carandus*) as resolute to hold them to it; they were all three banished the Town in popular humour; and with like levity sued to, to return again: to which he would by no means yield, except they would oblige themselves by a solemn Oath, to admit of such a Form of Discipline, as he with the advice of their other Ministers should prescribe unto them. This being conceded to by that fickle multitude, he returns in triumph to *Geneva*, September the thirteenth, 1541. and got his new Discipline established on the twentieth of November following. The sum of the Device was this: All Ministers to be equal among themselves; two Lay-men to be super-added unto every Minister; the Minister to continue for term of life; the Lay-Elders to be annually chosen; these being met together to be called the *Presbytery*; and to have power of Ordination, Censure, Absolution, and whatsoever else was used by the Bishop formerly. Hitherto is related to *Geneva* only, which being but one City and a small one too, was not capable of more than one *Presbytery*. The names and notions of *Cloistical*, *Provincial*, and *National* Assemblies, came not in till afterwards, as it got ground in Kingdoms, and larger Provinces. This Platform though of purpose framed to content the people yet since the Lay Officers were to be but annual, and after subject to the laity, like other *Morals*; it gave but sorry satisfaction unto wiser men. And being built withal on a false foundation, was for a long time hardly able to stand alone, and fain at twelve years end to borrow a support from *Zurich*, and others of the *Protestant Cantons*: whom *Calvin* earnestly solicited to allow his project, against which one *Perinus*, and some principal Citizens, had begun to spurn. And so we have the true beginning of the *Genevan* Discipline, begotten in Rebellion, born in sedition, and nursed up by Faction.

Being born in the World by the means aforesaid, some other helps it had to make it acceptable, and approved of in other Churches. As first the great content it gave to the Common People, to see themselves entrusted with the weightiest matters of Religion; and thereby an equality with, if not (by reason of their number, being two for one) a superiority above their Ministers: Next the great reputation, which *Calvin* for his diligence in Writing and Preaching, had attained unto; made all his *Disciples* as authentick amongst some Divines, as ever the *Popes* *Ips* *dixit* in the Church of *Rome*. Whereby it came to pass, in a little time, that only those Churches which embraced the Doctrines and Discipline authorized by *Calvin*, were called the *Reformed Churches*: those in *High Germany*, and elsewhere, which adhered to *Luther*,

being generally called by no other names than the *Lutherans*, or the *Lutheran Churches*; as not reformed enough from the dregs of *Rome*. Then comes in his endeavour to promote that Platform, in all other Churches which he had calculated from the Meridian of *Geneva* only: commanding it to *Gasper Olevianus*, Minister of the Church of *Triver*, as appears by his Letters dated April the twelfth 1560, congratulating the reception of it in the Churches of *Poland*, as appeareth by others of his Letters. And for the last help, comes in *Beza*, who not content to recommend it as convenient, for the use of that Church (beyond which *Calvin* did not go) imposed it as a matter necessary upon all the Churches: so necessary, *ut ab ea recedere non magis liceat, quam ab ipsius Religionis placitis*, that it was utterly as unlawful to recede from this, as for the most natural points of the *Christian Faith*. So he, Epist. 83. By means where their followers in most of the *Reformed Churches* drove on so furiously, that rather than their Discipline should not be admitted, and the Episcopall Government destroyed in all the Churches of *CHRIST*, they were resolved to depose Kings, ruin Kingdoms, and to subvert the fundamental Constitutions of all Civil States. And henceunto their own Ambition gave them spur enough, affecting the supremacy in their several *Provinces*; that they themselves might Lord it over God's Inheritance, under pretence of setting *CHRIST* upon his Throne. Upon which love to the preeminence they did not only prate against the Bishops, with malicious words, (as *Discepolus* for the same reason did against the Apostles) but not therewith content, neither would they themselves receive them, nor permit them that would, casting them out of the Church with reproach and infamy. Which proud ambition in the ordinary *Parochial* Minister, was cunningly fomented by some great persons, and many Lay-perform in all places, who under-hand aimed at a further end: the one to raise themselves great fortunes out of Bishops Lands; the other to keep those Tythes themselves, to which by the Law they only were to nominate some deserving person. Such were the helps by which this new device of *Calvin* was diffused and propagated.

But to return unto *Geneva*, though *Calvin* for his time did hold the Chair as a perpetual Moderator, and *Beza* too, until *Danem* set him beside the Cushion: yet after that, the power of the *Presbytery* was shrewdly lessened in *Geneva*, and the good members so restrained in the exercise of it; that they have no power to convene any man before them, but by the authority of a *Synod*, or *Civil Magistrate*. And as for maintenance, they hold their Ministers so strictly to a forry pittance, as would be sure to keep them from presuming too much on their power in the *Confessory-Tythes* of all forts were to be taken up for the use of the State, and laid up in the publick Treasury; and stipends issued out to maintain the Ministry: but thofe to mean, that *Beza's* stipend whilst he lived, hardly amounted to eighty pounds per annum, the residue of the City Ministers not to sixty pounds, those of the Villages adjoining, having hardly forty pounds; enough to keep them always poor, and miserably obnoxious to the wealthier Citizens. And that they may not feel the Goads, and stick up a Feather, the State doth use to make some poor allowance to the Wives and Daughters of their deceased Ministers, if they die poor, or leave their Children unprovided, or otherwise have deserved well in the time of their lives. In respect hereof, though the Ministers are very strict in forbidding Dancing, and have writ many Tracts against it; yet to give some content to the common people (who have not leisure to attend it at other times) they allow all Man-like exercises on the *Lords-day*, as shooting in Pieces,

Long-bows, Crofs-bows, and the like, and that too in the morning, both before and after the *Sermon*, so it be no impediment to them, from coming to the Church at the times appointed.

As for the Government of the State, it is directed principally by the *Civil or Imperial Laws*; the Judge whereof is called the *Lieutenant-Criminal*; before whom all causes are tried, and from whom there lieth no Appeal; unless it be unto the Council, of two hundred, whom they call the *Great Council*, in which the supreme power of the State resideth. Out of this *Council*, of two hundred, there is chosen another *lesser Council* of five and twenty, and out of them four principal Officers whom they call the *Syndicks*, who have the sole managing of the Common-wealth; except it be in some great matter, as making Peace or War, *offensive or defensive* Leagues, hearing Appeals, and such like general concerns; which the great Council of two hundred must determine of. They have a custom superadded to the *Civil Law*, that if any Malefactor from another place flee to them for refuge, they punish him after the custom of the place in which the crime was committed. Otherwise their Town being on the borders of divers Princes, would never be free from *Vagabonds*. Examples herof I will assign two: the first of certain *Monks*, who robbing their *Convents* of certain Plate and hoping for their wicked pranks at home to be the welcome thither, were at their first acquaintance advanced to the Gallows. The second is of a *Spanish* Gentleman, who having fled his Country for clipping and counterfeiting the King's Gold, came to this Town, and had the like reward. And when for defence he alleged, that he understood their City being free, gave admission to all Offenders; *True* (said they) *but with an intent to punish them that offended*: a distinction which the *Spaniard* never till then learned, but then it was too late.

As for their ordinary *Revenue*, it is proportionable to their Territory, if not above it, conceived to amount to 60000 pounds *per annum*; which they raise upon the *domain* of the Bishop, and the *Tithes* of the Church, and on such *Impositions* as laid upon the flesh and Merchandise. But they are able to raise greater sums if there be occasion, as appears plainly by the fending of 45000 Crowns to King *Henry III.* before they had been long settled in their own Estates.

And as for *Military Forces*, they are able to impress two thousand men, and have Arms of all sorts for so many in the publick *Magazines*: as also twelve or fourteen Pieces of Ordnance, with all manner of Ammunition appertaining to them, and on the Lake some Gallies in continual readines, against the dangers threatened them by the Dukes of *Savoy*. And for the greater safety of their Estate, and the preservation of their Religion, they joyned themselves in a constant and perpetual League with the *Canton of Bern*, Anno 1582. communicating to each other the freedom of their several Cities; and by that means, are reckoned for a Member of the Common-wealth of the *Switzers*, which is no small security to their affairs. But their chief strength, as I conceive, is, that neighbouring Princes are not willing to have it fall into the hands of that Duke; or any other Portentate of more strength than he. Inasmuch that when that Duke besieged it, Anno 1589, they were aided from *Venice* with four and twenty thousand, and from *England*, with thirteen thousand Crowns, from *France* with Intelligence of the Enemies purposes. Another time, when the Pope, the *French King*, the *Spaniard*, and *Savoyard* had designs upon it, the Emperor offered them assistance both of Men and Money: yea, and sometimes the Dukes of *Savoy* have assisted them against the others; as being more

desirous that the Town should remain as it doth, than fall into any other hands than his own. So ordinary a thing it is for such petit States, to be more safe by the interest of their jealous neighbours, than any forces of their own.

The Arms of *Geneva*, when under the command of the Earls thereof were *Or a Crofs Azure*. But for the title of *Geneva* after it had been born a while by the Earls of *Savoy*, it was given to *Philip* youngest Son of *Ame* or *Amadeus* the first Duke, to *Jean* the third Son of *Lewis* the second Duke; and finally, to *Philip* Duke of *Nemours*, the fourth Son of *Philip* the seventh Duke of *Savoy*, in whose Posterity (Dukes of *Nemours*) it doth still continue.

4. WALLISLAND.

Eastward from *Savoy*, in a long and deep bottom of the *Alpes Penine*, lyeth the Country of *WALLISLAND*: so called either *quasi Wallenland*, or the Land of the *Valenses*, once the Inhabitants of the Country about *Martinach*, a chief Town herof; or *quasi Valleyland*, or the Land of *Valley*, of which it totally consists. It reacheth from the Mountain de *Furken*, to the Town of *St. Maurice*, where again the hills do close, and thut up the Valley; which is so narrow in that place, that a Bridge laid from one hill to another (under which the River *Rhofne* doth pass) is capable of no more than one Arch only, and that defended with a Castle and two strong Gates. On other parts it is environed with a continual Wall of steep and horrid Mountains, covered all the year long with a crust of Ice; not passable at all by Armies, and not without much difficulty by single Passengers: so that having but that one entrance to it, which before we spoke of, no Citadel can be made so strong by Art, as this whole Country is by Nature. But in the bottom of those craggy and impassable Rocks lies a pleasant Valley, fruitful in Saffron, Corn, Wine, and most delicate fruits; and happily enriched with Meadows, and most excellent Pastures, which yield a notable increase of Cheese and Butter: and in the Country about *Sion* they digcovered in Anno 1544. a Fountain of Salt; and have also many hot Baths, and Medicinal waters very wholesome. Of Springs and River-waters, they are very delittute; having scarce any but what they fetch from the *Rhofne*, with a great deal both of charge and trouble (the common people using Snow-water for the most part for domestick uses;) which made one pleasantly observe, that they pay dearer for their Waters, than they do for their Wine. Cattel they have sufficient to serve their turn, and amongst others, a wild *Beck*, equal to a *Stag* in bigness, footed like a *Goat*, and horned like a *Fallow-deer*, leaping with wonderful agility from one Precipice to another, and so not easily caught but in Summer time, for then the heat of that season makes him blind.

It is divided into the *Upper* and the *Lower Wallisland*: the *Upper* lying towards the Mountain di *Furken*, in the very bottom of the Valley; and the *Lower* stretching out to the Town of *St. Maurice*, which is at the opening of the same: the length of both said to be five ordinary days journey, but the breadth not unfavourable. The *Upper Wallisland* containeth the seven *Refforts* of 1. *Sion*, or *Sedune*, 2. *Lenek*, 3. *Brig*, 4. *Nier*, 5. *Kawren*, 6. *Sider*, 7. *Ganber*, in which are reckoned thirty Parishes, the *Lower* comprehending the six *Refforts* of 1. *Gurdiz*, 2. *Ardoz*, 3. *Sallien*, 4. *Martinach*, 5. *Jurament*, and 6. *St. Maurice*: in which are 24 Parishes. The people in both parts said to be courteous towards strangers, but very tough and churlish towards one another.

It

The several *Refforts* before mentioned, are named according to the names of their principal Towns: which according to their reckoning are thirteen in number. The chief of which are 1. *Sedunum*, *Sittim*, or *Sion*, a Bishops See, suffragan to the Metropolitan of *Tarentenise*; the chief of all this little Country: of no great beauty in it self, but neat and gallant in respect of the Towns about it. Situate in a Plain on the River of *Rhofne*, under a Mountain of two tops; on the one of which being the lower, is seated the Cathedral Church, and the Canon's houses; and on the other, looking downwards with a dreadful precipice, a very strong Castle, the dwelling place of the Bishop in the heat of Summer: which being built upon an Hill of so great an height, and so hazardous an ascent, is impossible almost to be took by force; the sharpness of the Rocks keeping it from the danger of assaults, and the highness of the Hill from the reach of the Gun-shot. 2. *Marchinacht*, by *Cesar* called *Otdurum*, and *Civitas Valesium* by *Antonine*, remarkable for its antiquity only. 3. *St. Maurice*, or *St. Moritz*, anciently *Auganum*, the Key of the whole Country; but in Winter especially, when all the other passages are frozen up, that there is no other entrance but by the Bridge at this Town, which for that cause is very well manned and fortified to avoid surprisall; and therefore also chosen for the seat of the Governour of the *Lower Wallisland*.

This Country now called *Wallisland*, is in most *Latine* Writers called by the name of *Valesia*, but corruptly, as I think, for *Valesia*, as the *Dutch* or *English* name for *Wallenland*: which name I should conceive it took from the *Valenses*, the old Inhabitants of this Valley, of whom *Otdurum* (now called *Marchinacht*) is by *Antonine* made to be the *Metropolis*, or principal City. It was made subject to the *Romans* by *Julius Cesar*, at such time as the *Helvetians* were conquered by him: and falling with the Western parts of the *Roman Empire* unto *Charles the Great*, was by him given to *Theodulus* Bishop of *Sion*, Anno 805. Under his Successors they continued to this very day; but so, that the Deputies of the seven *Refforts* have not only voices with the *Cannons* in his Election, but being chosen and invested unto the place, they joyn with him also in the *Diet*s for choosing Magistrates, redressing grievances, and determining matters of the State. The *Lower Wallisland* obeyeth the *Upper*, made subject by long War, and the chance of Victory, and hath no way in the publick Government, but takes for Law that which their Governours agree of. The same Religion is in both, being that of *Rome*. For maintenance whereof they combined themselves with the seven *Popish Cantons* of *Switzerland*, Anno 1572. or thereabouts: as also for their mutual defence and preservation against foreign Enemies, and keeping amity and concord amongst one another.

5. SWITZERLAND.

NEXT unto *Wallisland* lieth the Country of the *SWITZERS*, having on the East, the *Grifons*, and some part of the *Tirol*, in *Germany*; on the West, the Mountain *Jura*, and the Lake of *Geneva*, which parts it from *Savoy*, and *Burgundy*; on the North, *Swedia*, or *Schmaben*, another Province also of the upper *Germany*; and on the South, *Wallisland* and the *Alpes*, which border on the Dukedom of *Milain*.

The whole Country heretofore divided into three parts only; that is to say, 1. *Argow*, so called from the

River *Aax*, whose chief Town was *Lucern*: 2. *Wistflung*, so called from *Wistflung* an old Town thereof, the chief City whereof is *Bern*: And 3. *Zurichem*, so named from *Zurich*, both formerly and at this present the Town of most note in all this Tract; but since the falling of these Countries from the house of *Austria*, divided into many *Cantons* and other members; of which more anon.

It is wholly in a manner over-grown with craggy Mountains, but such as for the most part have grassy tops, and in their bottoms afford rich Meadows, and nourishing Pastures, which breed them a great stock of Cattel, their greatest wealth. And in some places yields plenty of very good Wines, and a fair increase of Corn also, if care and industry be not wanting on the Husbandmen part, but neither in so great abundance, as to serve all necessary uses, which want they supply from their neighbouring Countries. And though it stand upon as high ground as any in *Christendome*, yet is no place more stored with Rivers, and capacious Lakes; which do not only yield them great abundance of Fish, but serve the people very well in the way of Traffick, to disperse their several Commodities from one *Canton* to another. Of which the principal are, *Badenfer*, and the Lake of *Cell*, made by the *Rhone*; *Geviersee*, or the Lake of *Geneva*, by the *Rhofne*; *Walldetsee*, and the Lake of *Lucern*, made by the *Rasse*; *Mamminger* and *Bietsee*, by the *Orbe*; and *Zurichsee*, by the River of *Limat*, or *Limachus*.

It is in length two hundred and forty miles, an hundred and eighty in breadth; conceived to be the highest Country in *Europe* (as before is said) the Rivers which do issue from it running through all quarters of the same; as *Rhene*, through *France* and *Belgium*, North; *Ro*, through *Italy* to the South; *Rhodanus*, through part of *France*, to the Western Ocean; and the *Isar*, which falling into the *Danubius* passeth through *Germany*, and *Hungary*, into *Pontus Euxinus*.

And as the Country is, such are the Inhabitants of rude and rugged dispositions, more fit for Arms than any civil occupations, capable of toyl and labour, which the necessities of their Country do inure them to, not able otherwise to afford them an hungry livelihood: the poverty whereof makes them seek for service, which they shift and change according as they like the conditions of their entertainment; and having no way to vent their superfluous numbers by Navigation, are able to spare greater multitudes to a foreign War, than a man would easily imagine. In a word, the people are naturally honest, frugal, and industrious, impartial in the administration of Justice, and great lovers of liberty.

In matters of War, they were once of such a reputation, on the defeats given them to *Charles of Burgundy*, that no Prince thought himself able to take the Field, or stand his own ground in defence of his Dominions, if he had not *Switzers* in his Army: And to advance their reputation, the Wars which followed in *Italy* about the Dutchy of *Milain*, served exceeding fitly. For being borderers on that Country, they could be hired better cheap by the *French*, or *Spaniards*, than any Army could be brought out of *France*, or *Spain*. And having had some good successes to increase their fame, they grew so terrible at last, that the *Spaniards* in the War of *Gruen* were more afraid of one band of *Swiss*, than of all the rest of the *French Army*. But being found withal to be false and treacherous, and easily bought off by the better purse (which they most evidently discovered in betraying Duke *Ladewick Sforza*, who had put himself and his estate into their hands) and those *Italian Wars* growing unto an end, they did decay to fall in their reputation, that

that first the neighbouring Princes could do well without them; and at last used them not at all, or at least very sparingly. And now it is their honour that they are chosen of the Guard to the French King, and the Popes of Rome, and the Dukes of Genoa; and that the greatest Princes of Europe give them yearly Pensions. Which Pensions were given heretofore to be assured of their aid upon all occasions, but now to keep them from engaging on the other side.

For matter of Religion it is proportionably mixt; some of the Cantons being wholly Popish, some wholly Protestant; in others, both Religions used promiscuously. At first the differences were so eagerly pursued on both sides, that notwithstanding the mediation of some potent Neighbours, it broke out into a Civil War; the Cantons of *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underswald*, *Lucern*, and *Zug*, (which the Latine Writers of this story call the *Quinque pagie*) arming against *Zurich*, *Bern*, and others which adhered to *Zuinglius*. In the beginning of which War the Protestant Party was difcomfited, *Zuinglius* himself slain in the head of the Battell, and his body burnt: his heart remaining in the midst of the fire whole and untouched; as Archbishop *Cramer*'s also did, when all the rest of his body was consumed to ashes. But those of the Reformed Party would not go to give over. Another field they fought for it, and therein had the better of the adverse Party. Wearied at last with reciprocal defeats, they agreed the business, indulging each to the other free exercise of their own Religions. So it continueth at this day, diversity of opinions not drawing them from a due care of the publick interest, nor giving any interruption to that bond of peace which was so firmly knit amongst them in their first Confederacy.

Now for the body of their State, it consists of three distinct parts or members, which are to be considered in this discourse, viz. the *Swiss* themselves, the *Præfidents* which are subject to them, and the States that are Confederates with them. The *Swiss* are subdivided into thirteen Cantons, that is to say, *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underswald*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Bern*, *Zurich*, *Basel*, *Friburg*, *Solothurn*, *Apenzel*, *Glaris*, and *Schaffhausen*. These properly make the body of that Common-wealth, enjoying many Rights, Privileges and Preeminences which the others do not; as power to determine of War and Peace, to dispose of the *Præfidents*, and divide amongst themselves the spoil of the Enemy. The first Confederacy was made between the Cantons of *Switz*, and *Underswald*, Anno 1315. Of which the *Switz*, being the most potent, the most exasperated, and that which did most hotly prosecute the combination, gave to the rest the name of *Switzers*, first made for ten years only in defence of themselves against the violences of *Albert* I. Emperor and Duke of *Austria*; intending to alienate them from the Empire, and add them by strong hand to his own Estates, Anno 1309, but made perpetual after their great victory obtained against *Duke Leopold*, Son of *Albert*, in the fields of *Mortgarten*, of which more anon. *Lucern* was added to the three, Anno 1332. *Zug*, *Zurich*, and *Glaris*, came not into the Confederacy till the year 1352. nor *Bern* until the year next after. *Friburg* and *Solothurn* came in Anno 1481. *Basel* and *Schaffhausen* united with them in the year 1501. And *Apenzel*, which was the last which was admitted into their Confederacy, Anno 1513. So that there passed within little of two hundred years, from the first beginning of these Leagues, to the finishing of them.

The second Member of this body, are the Towns and States Confederates with them, for the preservation of their common Liberties, viz. the Town and Abbot of *St. Gall*, the Towns of *Rorschach*, *Mulhausen*, *Muenberg*,

and *Biel*, situated on the Lake thence named: (of which the first belonged heretofore to the Earls of *Longeville* in France, the latter to the Bishops of *Basel*) with the City and Signiory of *Geneva*: And of these, *Rorschach* and *Mulhausen* are confederate with all the Cantons; the rest, with some particulars only. The Abbot of *St. Gall* first entered into League with *Zurich*, *Lucern*, *Switz*, and *Glaris*, for the preservation of his Lands and Towns then revolving from him; and the Town following his example, confederated with *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Switz*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Glaris*, the better to preserve themselves from the power of their Abbot, who was before their natural and immediate Lord. This was in Anno 1452. *Rorschach* and *Mulhausen*, two Imperial Towns in the Province of *Schabern*, confederated in a perpetual League with all the Cantons, the first, Anno 1515, the other, 1519; *Neuenburg*, *Biel*, and *Geneva*, with *Bern*, only.

As for the *Præfidents* of the *Switzers*, they are such lesser parcels and additions, as have accrewed to their Estate, and are subject unto their authority; either by gift, purchase, or the chance of War: some lying in *Switzerland* itself, some amongst other parts of the *Alpes*, and some in *Italy*. These are the Towns and Countries of *Baden*, *Bregarten*, *Millingen*, *Rappenswyll*, *Wagwil*, interposed here and there amongst the *Switzers*: the Town and Country of *Sargans*, lying amongst the *Rhetian Alpes*, not far from the *Grisons* and *Rhineck*, lying in Valley of the *Alpes*, on the left shore of the *Rhone*, near the Lake of *Constans*; and finally, the Valleys of *Locarno*, *Magis*, and *Lugano Mendrisio*, and *Belinzano*, situate in and amongst the *Alpes*, near the Dukedom of *Milain*, to which they formerly belonged. Of which the *Præfidents* of *Baden*, and *Millingen* appertain to the eight first Cantons: *Wagwil*, the *Sargans*, and *Rhineck* to the seven first Cantons: *Rappenswyll* to *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underswald*, and *Glaris*, and *Thurgow* unto the ten first Cantons: *Belinzano* to the three first only; and all the rest of the Italian *Præfidents* to the Cantons generally, excepting *Apenzel*, which was not entered into the confederacy when these *Præfidents* were given unto the *Switzers*; by *Maximilian* *Sforza* Duke of *Milain*, which was in Anno 1513, some months before the taking in of *Apenzel* to the rest of the Cantons.

Such is the number of the Cantons, *Præfidents*, and States confederate, amongst all which there are few Towns or Cities of any note: there being no City nor well built Towns in the Cantons of *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underswald*, *Glaris*, *Apenzel*, nor in any of the States confederate situate amongst the *Switzers*, but *St. Gall* only, nor in any of the *Præfidents* but that of *Baden*. So that the places worthy of consideration are not like to be many. Of those that are, the principal are, 1. *Zurich*, a large City, and a renowned University, situate on both sides of the River *Limn*, where it issueth out of the Lake called *Zurich-See*. It had anciently two Monasteries in it, in one of which *Huldreich Zuinglius* was a Canon, slain near this Town in the Battell spoken of before, Anno 1531. now giving name to the most honourable of the Cantons, to which belongeth the authority of summoning the general Diet; as of those also of the *Protestants*; the Legates thereof presiding in both Assemblies. 2. *Friburg*, situate on the River *Sana*, on the declivity of an uneven and rocky hill, founded by *Berold* the fourth Duke of *Zeringen*. 3. *Solothurn*, (the *Solothurnum* of *Antoninus*) on the River *Aar*, famous for the Martyrdom of *St. Ursula*, and his 66 *Theban* Soldiers in the time of the Emperor *Dioclesian*. A Town of great Antiquity, but not so old by far as the people make it: who would have it to be built in the time of *Abraham*. 4. *Basel*, so called either of a *Basilisk* slain at the building of the City; or of the

German

German word *Pascl*, signifying a path; or of *Basilus*, signifying Kingly. It was built Anno 382, and is famous for an University founded by *Pius* the II. Anno 1459. It was made a Canton, Anno 1501, and is honoured with the Sepulchers of *Oecolampadius*, *Erasmus*, *Pontanus*, *Clarius*, and *Hottomann* the famous Civilian. In this City, Anno 1431, was held that notable Council wherein though the *Papal* authority was then at the height, it was declared that a general Council was above the *Pope*. What was then enacted, was immediately put in practice; the Council deposing *Pope Eugenius* IV. and placing in his room *Adrian* Duke of *Savoy*, afterward called *Felix* the IV. who having held the See nine years in a time of *Schism*, did willingly in order to the peace of *Christendom*, resign the Popedom to *Nicholas* V. who had before been chosen by the opposite Faction. The City is great, rich, and populous, sometimes a Town Imperial, still a Bishop's See; the Bishop being subject to the Archbishop of *Besanson*, in the County of *Burgundy*; seated upon the River *Rhone* (where it receiveth *Weir* and *Byssa*, two lesser Rivers) by which it is divided into the greater *Basel* lying towards France, and the lesser lying towards Germany. 5. *Lucern*, situate on both sides of the *Ruffs*, where it issueth out of the Lake of *Lucern*; so called from *Lucern*, i.e. the Lantern, which was placed here on an high Tower, to give light to Water-men in the night. A City well traded and frequented by strangers, because the ordinary road from Germany into Italy, passing from hence through the Country of the *Grisons*; and in regard that the Diet for the *Popish* Cantons, which heretofore were held at *Uren*, are removed hither. Not far from this Town is the Mountain called *Pilates Hill*, of *Pontius Pilate*, whose ghost (as the common people are made to believe) doth walk once a year on the banks of this Lake in his Judges Robes. And to be sure the fiction shall not be confuted they add, that whosoever seeth him shall die that year. 6. *Bern*, compassed almost round with the River *Aar*, and taking up the whole extent of a little Mountain; the houses of Free-hold, neatly and uniformly built: A Town which gives name to the largest and most potent of all the Cantons; one of the first which did embrace the Reformation, and the first of all which purged it self of Images, those excellent Instruments of Superstition and Idolatry; defaced herein a popular tumult, Anno 1548. 7. *Lausanna* in the Canton of *Bern*, a Bishop's See, situate to the Archbishop of *Besanson*; seated on the banks of the Lake of *Lemane*; and compassed with mountains always covered with snow, which open themselves on the East side only, which is towards Italy. 8. *Schaffhausen*, the only Town of all the Cantons, which lieth on the other side of the *Rhone*; of right belonging unto *Suevia*, or *Schabern*, a Province of Germany, and reckoned as a part thereof, before it was incorporated into this Confederacy.

Next for the *Præfidents*, and Confederated States; they have not many Towns of note (excepting *Rorschach*, and *Mulhausen*, two Imperial Cities, which properly belong to another place.) Of those which be, the principal amongst the Confederates, lying within the bounds of this Country, is the Town of *St. Gall*, (*Sengal* as they corruptly call it) an Imperial City, situate amongst the Mountains near the *Boden-See*; a rich, populous, and well-governed Town, taking name from the Monastery of *St. Gall* a famous Scot, and the Apostle of those parts, Anno 630, or thereabouts; the Abbot of which having great possessions in this Tract (before *Apenzel*, and this Town revolted from him) was a Prince of the Empire. The *Anabaptists* were once very prevalent here, in so much that one of them cut off his Brothers head in the

presence of his Father and Mother, and said (according to the humour of that Sect, who boast much of dreams, visions, and *Enthusiasms*) that God commanded him so to do. The principal amongst the *Præfidents* is the Town of *Baden*, or (to difference it from *Baden* a Marquise in Germany) the *Upper-Baden*; seated on a little Mountain near the River *Limn*, almost in the middle of the Country; and for that cause the place of meeting for the Council of Estate of all the Confederates. It taketh name from the Baths here being, two of which only are publick, the rest in private houses: confest, as it is thought, to much lasciviousness. For whereas it is said of *Adrian*, that *Lavacro pro facibus sparavit*; here men and women promiscuously bathe together; and which is worst in private: whereas *Münster* telleth us, *Cernunt viri uxoribus tractari, cernunt cum alienis loqui, & quidem solam cum solo*; and yet are not any of them disturbed with jealousy. The Baths are much frequented, yet not so much for health as pleasure. Their Chief vertues the quickning power they have upon barren women. But as the *Friars* use to send men whose Wives are fruitless, in pilgrimage to *St. Jeger*, the Patrons of fruitfulness; and in the mean time to lie with their Wives: so it may be with good reason thought, that in a place of such liberty as this is, the lusty young Gallants that haunt this place, produce greater operation of barren women, than the waters of the Bath it self. No other Town of eminent note amongst the *Præfidents* of the *Swiss*, except *Rhineck* it self, the seat of the Governor for the *Switzers*, situate near the Lake of *Comlance*; and none of any note at all amongst the Italian *Præfidents*, except *Belinzano*, and *Locarno*, neither of them containing four hundred Houses, and those none of the handfomest.

Within the limits of this Country, and in that part thereof which was called *Argov*, containing the now Cantons of *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underswald*, *Glaris*, and *Lucern*; with some of the adjoining parts of Germany, and some part of the Dukedom of *Savoy* did sometimes stand the famous and renowned Castle of *HABSPURG*: from the Lords whereof the House of *Austria*, and most of the Kings and Princes of the Christian World do derive themselves. First founded, as some say, by *Ottobert* the third Prince of this Line, at or before the year 700, as others say, by *Rapato* the Son of *Betzeline*, about the year 1020; situate on the River *Aar* (by the Latines called *Arula*) near a Town called *Bruck*; now decayed, that there is no tracing of the ruins. Preserved in memory by the Lords and Princes of it, defended in a direct line from *Segebert* the eldest Son of *Theobert* King of *Metz*, or *Austrasia*; first settled in these parts by *Clotivus* the second, King of the French, with the titles, as some say, of Duke of *Upper Almain* (the Lower *Almain* being that which is now called *Suevia* or *Schabern*, an adjoining Province of Germany.) Being soon weary of that empty, but invidious title, they were sometimes called Earls of *Habsburg*, by the name of this Castle; sometimes Earls of *Altenburg*, another Castle not far off, of their own foundation. And after, closing in with the Kings of *Burgundy* *Transjurane*, and the German Emperors, they received of them a great part of the Country of *Argov*; from which some of them were called Earls of *Argov*. Not known distinctly by the title of Earls of *Habsburg*; till the time of *Rapato* above-mentioned; when those of *Altenburg* and *Argov* became discontinued. Howsoever we will here lay down the whole Succession of this famous Family, either Earls, or the Progenitors of

The

The Earls of *Habsburg*.

A. Chr.

635

1. *Sigibert*, Son of *Theobert* King of *Metz*, by *Clotilde* the second of that name. French King, dispossessed of the Kingdom of his Father, and afterwards by him indowed with a great part of those Countries, which are now called *Switzerland*, with the title of Duke of *Upper Almain*.
2. *Sigibert II.* Son of *Sigibert I.* Duke of *Upper Almain*.
3. *Ottobert*, or *Oibert*, the Son of *Sigibert II.* the founder, as some say, of the *Castle of Altemburg*, and *Habsburg*, of which promiscuously called Earl.
4. *Bebo*, the Son of *Ottobert*, the last Duke of *Upper Almain*; which title he exchanged for that of Earl of *Altemburg*, and *Habsburg*.
5. *Robert*, or *Robor*, as some call him, the Son of *Bebo*, Earl of *Altemburg*.
- 766 6. *Hertbert*, the Son of *Robert*, who added unto his Estate that part of *Schwaben*, or *Suevia*, which is called *Brigow*.
7. *Rampert*, the Son of *Hertbert*, who flourished Anno 814. at what time he procured the Canonization of *S. Trupertus*.
8. *Gunttram*, the Son of *Rampert*, Earl of *Altemburg*.
9. *Luitward*, the Son of *Gunttram*.
- 500 10. *Luitfride*, the Son of *Luitward*.
- 929 11. *Hunfride*, the Son of *Luitfride*, who added unto his Estates the Territory now called *Sungow*, bordering on *Alsacia*, a Province of *Germany*; recovered after his decease by the Dukes of *Schwaben*.
- 550 12. *Gunttram II.* Son of *Hunfride*, the first who took unto himself the title of Earl of *Argow*: from whose second Son named *Berthold*, descended the Dukes or Earls of *Zeringen*, possessed of almost all *Brigow*, and a good part of *Switzerland*, which they inherited from *Berthold*, the Son of *Gebira*, the third Son of *Gunttram*; who having founded the *Castle of Zeringen*, and acquired great possessions in adjoining parts of *Schwaben*, left them at his decease (being childless) to *Berthold* the Son of *Berthold*, and his Cousin *German*.
13. *Betza*, or *Berzeline*, the eldest Son of *Gunttram II.* Earl of *Argow*.
14. *Rapata*, Son of *Betzeline*, the founder or repaire of the *Castle of Habsburg*, from whence both he and his Successors were constantly called Earls of *Habsburg*. Great Grand-father by *Theodoric* his youngest Son, of *Rodolph* Earl of *Rhineland*, and Duke of *Schwaben*, elected Emperor (as the inscription of the Pope) against *Henry IV.*
15. *Warner*, by some called *Berenger*, or *Berengarius*, the Son of *Rapata*.
- 1096 16. *Orbo*, the Son of *Warner* or *Berenger*.
- 1108 17. *Warner II.* Son of *Orbo*, enriched by the Emperor *Henry IV.* with some fair Estates belonging to the Dukes of *Schwaben*.
18. *Albert*, the Son of *Warner II.* surnamed the *Rich*.
19. *Albert II.* surnamed the *Wise*, Son of *Albert I.* added to his Estates a great part of the *Upper Alsacia*; which he had by the Right of

Helduigis his Wife, one of the Daughters and heir of *Simon* the last Earl thereof.

- 1238 20. *Rodolph*, the fortunate Son of *Albert II.* added to his Estate the rest of the *Upper Elzate*, elected Emperor of the *Romans*, Anno 1273. Of which he made so good advantage, that he added unto his Estates the great Dukedom of *Austria*, with all the incorporate Provinces thereunto belonging, and laid the first foundation of the *Austrian* greatness, of which more in *Germany*. Here only note, that besides the following Princes of the House of *Austria*, those of the line Collateral still retained the titles of Earls of *Habsburg* (according to the ill custom of *Germany*) increased with the addition of the Earldom of *Kyburg*, of which more hereafter: and so continued till the expiring of that Line in the person of *Rodolph IV.* the last that bare the title of Earl of *Habsburg*, Anno 1356. by whose death many fair Estates were added to the *Austrian* Family.

Having on the occasion of these Earls of *Habsburg*, be-held so much of the affairs of this Country, as related unto that puissant and illustrious family, let us go forward to the rest: first taking in our way the ancient Estate hereof, in the time of the *Romans*. At what time this whole mountainous tract, containing many several Nations (some of them spoken of before) was comprehended under the general name and notion of the *Helvetii*: the greatest and most populous of all the rest: so called, as *Vesfegan* will have it, *Quasi Hil-vites*, or the *Piles* of the Mountains, to difference them from the *Piles* of the lower parts, inhabiting in that part of *Gimbrich*, *Chefingse*, which is now called *Friesland*; and from those dwelling in the middle, betwixt both extremes in the little Province still called *Vuitland*. Grown by long peace, and want of opportunity by traffick into foreign parts, to so great a multitude, that the Country bareen of it self, was no longer able to maintain them, they set fire on their Towns and Houses, and with a general resolution went to seek new dwellings. The total number of men, women, and children, which went upon this desperate action, are said to have amounted to the number of 368000, whereof 90000 were fighting men. They had not long before overthrown *L. Cassius* a *Roman* Consul, slain the Consul himself, and sold his Soldiers for Bond-slaves: upon the apprehension of which good success, they thought no body able to withstand them. But they found *Cesar* of a stronger metal than *L. Cassius*. Who having stopped their passage by hewing down the Bridge of *Geneva*, till he was grown strong enough to bid them battle; so waited them in several skirmishes and defeats, that they were forced to crave leave of him to go home again, and to rebuild those Towns and Villages which they had destroyed before this enterprize: which he upon delivery of Hostages, did vouchsafe to grant. It is conceived, that at the least two Millions of them perished in this journey, and not so much by the Sword (though that spared them not) as for want of necessities. After this they continued Members of the *Roman* Empire, till conquered in the times of *Honorius* and *Valentinian III.* by the *Burgundians* and *Alamans*, betwixt whom divided; the River *Rust* parting their Dominions. From them being taken by the *French*, it was made a part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; some parts first taken out: and given to the Progenitors of the Earls of *Habsburg*, as before was noted. Given with the rest of that Kingdom to the Emperor *Conrade* the

the second, by *Rodolph* the last King thereof: parcelled out by the *German* Emperors (as their custom was) into divers States; most of the which were drawn in by the Dukes of *Schwaben*, the Earls of *Habsburg*, *Kyburg*, *Werdenburg*, &c. and the Dukes of *Zeringen*; as afterwards in the fall of the one, and as heirs to many of the other, by the Dukes of *Austria*. By means of which united titles, the *Austrian* Family was possessed of so much of this Country, as now makes up five *Cantons*, and as many of the principal *Presfectures*: that is to say, the *Canton of Zug*, *Glaron*, *Lucern*, *Friburg*, and *Schaffhausen*; the *Presfectures* of *Baden*, *Bruggarten*, *Mellingen*, *Wegenthal*, *Rapperswil*; together with a great part of the Country of *Targow*, wherein stands the City of *St. Gall*, now a Confederate with the *Switzers*; some of the rest, as *Uren*, *Smitz*, *Uderwalden*, being brought under by the power of the Emperor *Albert*, the Son of *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*, who had a purpose to unite them to the house of *Austria*; because obnoxious also to the power of those Princes. But the people being at last over-burthened by the tyranny of those Governors, whom the Dukes of *Austria* and their other Lords had sent among them: seeing withal the Empire by the Pope's Fulminations distracted into many Factions, and the *Austrian* Family weakened by a sub-division of that great Estate into many parcels: they contracted an *Offensive* and *Defensive* League amongst themselves, for defence of their Liberty, into which first entered those of *Switz*, *Uren*, and *Uderwalden*, Anno 1385. Not all united into one Confederation till the year 1513, as was before noted. At their first beginning to take Arms, *Frederick* one of the many Dukes of *Austria* (to whose share they fell) sent his Brother *Leopold* against them with a puissant Army which they encountered near *Morgarten*, a Village of the now *Canton of Uderwalden*, and there overthrew him: but more by the convenience of those narrow passages, through which his Army was to march, than by any valour. In which it was no small help to them, that the ways were all so filled with ice, that he was able to do no service with his Horse, and his Soldiers so amazed at the present difficulties, that the Confederates only casting stones on them from the tops of the Mountains, made them leap into the Lakes adjoining. This hapned in the year 1315. Grown confident by this success, they brought the new *Canton of Lucern* into their Confederacy by the force of Arms, Anno 1332. and that of *Zurich* by their reputation and like hope of Liberty, Anno 1351. in which year those of *Zug*, and *Glaris* invaded by the former live, and willing to discharge themselves of their Lordly Matters, were united to them, as was the new *Canton of Bern* in the year next following. In the year 1381, the Towns of *Solothurn* and *Friburg*, descended from the House of *Zeringen*, (at the expiration of that Line) upon those of *Habsburg*, revolted from their natural Lords and admitted *Cantons*, occasioned *Leopold* Son of *Albert* the short, and Brother of *Albert IV.* Duke of *Austria*, to make War upon them: in which War being vanquished and slain near *Sempach* a Village of the *Canton of Lucern*, with the Flower of his Nobility and Gentry, Anno 1386. and the succeeding Dukes not venturing any more against them, the residue of the *Cantons* and Confederates were in time made up.

Having thus cleared themselves of the House of *Austria*, they continued free and unmolested, but never came to any reputation for their valour, till the War made upon them by *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, whom they discomfited in three great Battels, and slew him also in the third. A War commenced by him at the first on small occasions, and left hopes: the Country being so

barren, and the people so poor, that their Embassadour to the Duke (as *Comines* reporteth) protested, that if all their Country-men were taken, they would not be able to pay a Ranom, to the value of the Spurs and Bridle-bits in his Camp. Certainly at that time they were so poor, that they knew not what riches was. For having won the first Battle at *Gronin* (the other two were those of *Marat* and *Nancy*) one of the goodliest *Pavilions* in the World, was by them torn in pieces, and turned into Breches and Side-coats: divers silver Plates and Dishes, they fold for a French *Sour* (each *Sour* a little more than an English Penny) suppling them to be but Pewter; and a great Diamond of the Dukes, which was the goodliest Jewel in *Christendom*, was sold to a Priest for a *Guilders*; and by him again to some of the Lords of the Country for three *Frank*. After their valour shewed in these Battels, *Lewis XI.* took them into Pension, giving them yearly forty thousand Crowns, viz. twenty thousand to the *Cantons*, and twenty thousand to particular persons: and bowed so much beneath the Majesty of the most *Christian* King, as to term himself one of the *Burgesses* of their Corporation; and to contend with the Duke of *Savoy*, which of them should be held for their first *Allie*. By these Arts, and the nearness of their Forces for those occasions, he wrested *Burgundy* out of the hands of *Mary* the Daughter of *Charles*; and *Lewis XII.* won *Millain* from *Ludowick Sforze*, whom they perditionally betrayed, as was said before. Upon the merit of these services, they required an augmentation of their Pensions: which when this *Lewis XII.* denied, they withdrew themselves from the Amity of the French, and entered into the service of Pope *Julius II.* who therefore stiled them the *Defenders of the Church*, Anno 1510. The fruits of which entertainment was the defeat of the whole Forces of King *Lewis*, and the loss of *Millain*; into which *Maximilian Sforze* the Son of *Ludowick*, was solemnly re-initiated by the Confederates: who to oblige the *Switzers* more firmly to him, gave them those Towns and Valleys in the *Alpes* of *Italy* (formerly members of that Dukedom) which now belong unto the *Switzers*, reckoned amongst the *Presfectures* of their Common-wealth. *Francis I.* in pursuance of his claim to *Millain*, gave them a great and memorable overthrow at the Battle of *Marignan*. Yet afterwards considering what damage his Realm had sustained by the revolt of the Auxiliaries to his Enemies, he renewed the Confederation with them; on condition that he should restore the ancient Pension of forty thousand Crowns; secondly, that he should pay unto them at certain terms, six hundred thousand Crowns; thirdly, that he should entertain four thousand of them in his pay continually; fourthly, that for the restoring of such places as they had taken from the Dutchy of *Millain*, he should give unto them thirty thousand Crowns: fifthly, that he should give them three months pay beforehand: sixthly and lastly, that *Maximilian Sforze*, whom they had estated in *Millain*, and were now going to dispossess, might by the King be created Duke of *Nemours*, endowed with twelve thousand *Frank* of yearly revenue, and married to a daughter of the blood royal. On these conditions, as honourable to them as burthenous to the King, was the League renewed, Anno 1522. since which time, they have obtained, that six hundred of their Country are to be of the French King's Guard; five hundred of which wait without at the gates of the Courts, the other hundred in the great Hall. And yet the French Kings did not so ingross the Market, though they raised the price of the commodity, but that all other Princes might have them also for their Money: the Kings of *Spain* and others bidding fair for them, but never

never going so high as the French had done. At last, upon the differences which grew amongst themselves in point of Religion they grew to be divided also in point of Person: the *Populi Cantons* taking Penfions of the Pope, and the King of Spain; the *Protestants* of the French, the mixt, of both; and all of the *Venetians*. By which means being bribed and corrupted by all, they came in very little time to be ruled of none. Which sudden sinking of that fame and reputation which they had attained to, together with the reasons of it; that notable Statesman and Historian *Guicciardini* doth describe as followeth: "The name (saith he) of this wild and uncivil Nation, hath got great honour by their Concord, and glory by Arms. For being fierce by nature, insured to War, and exact keepers of Military discipline, they have not only defended their own Country, but have won much praise in Foreign parts: which doubtless had been greater, if they had sought to enlarge their own Empire, and not for Wages to enlarge the Empire of others; and if nobly they had proceeded upon themselves any other ends than the gain of money; by the love whereof being made abject, they have lost the opportunity of becoming fearful to Italy. For since they never came out of their Confinnes, but as mercenary men, they have had no publick fruit of their Victories: but by their covetousness have become intolerable in their actions, where they overcame, and in their demands with other men; yea, at home froward and obdurate in their conclusions, as well as following their commands, under whose pay they serve in War. Their chief men have Penfions of several Princes to favour them in their publick meetings: and so private profit being preferred before the good of the publick, they are apt to be corrupted, and fall at discord amongst themselves, with great lessening of their reputation which they had gotten amongst strangers. So he, relating the occurrences of the year 1511, which the following issue of affairs hath fully verified.

As for the Government of this State, it is meere popular, and that not only in the particular Cantons, but the aggregate body of their Council: the *Gentry* and *Nobility* being either rooted up in those long wars which were betwixt them and their *Vassals*, justly provoked by those intolerable pressures and exactions which they laid upon them; or else worn out of memory and observation, for want of way and suffrage in the Councils of the Common-wealth. Only in *Schaffhausen*, *Basel*, and *Zurich*, are some *Gentry* left, not capable of any place or suffrage in the Senate of the said Cantons (from which they are excluded by the common people, because they joynted not with them in their first revolt) unless they waive their *Gentry*, and be enrolled amongst the number of *Plebeians*. The rest they have (it seemeth in poore esteem, that *Porters* and *Mechanicks* of the meanest Trades, in all occasions of War, are numbered with and amongst these *Gentlemen*; making up one Society only, and joyning with them in electing the *Master* of their Company, who is one of the Senate. But because that every *Canton* hath his proper Magistrates, but more or fewer, according as it is in greatness, or in the number of its several *Resorts*, or sub-divisions; it will not be amiss to shew what number of *Resorts* are in every *Canton*: that is to say, in *Underralden* only two, in *Switz* six, in *Oren* ten, in *Zug* five, in *Glaris* or *Glarona* fifteen, in *Apenzel* six, in *Lucern* seven, in *Solothurn* no more than one, in *Friburg* nineteen, in *Basel* and *Schaffhausen* but one apiece (the Cantons there and in *Solothurn*, reaching but little further than the Towns themselves) in that of *Zurich* thirty one, and thirty in that of *Bern*; in all one

hundred forty and eight. Of these consisteth the body of this Common-wealth. In ordering whereof, every particular *Canton* hath its proper Magistrate, chosen by the Commonalty of that *Canton* (whom they call the *Wismen*) together with a standing Council assistant to him, chosen out of the people, for the directing and disposing of their own affairs; which meet and sit in the chief Town and Village of that *Distrikt*. But if the cause concern the *Publick*, then every *Canton* sendeth one or more Commissioners to the general *Diet*; where they determine of the business which they meet about, according to the major part of the *Voter*: the Commissioners of every *Canton* have one Vote only, though many may be sent from each, to add the greater weight to their Consultations. The place of meeting is most commonly at the Town of *Baden*, in respect of the Commodity of the Inns and Houses, the pleasant situation and famous *Medicinal Baths*; and because it is seated in the very centre of *Switzerland*, and subject to the eight first *Cantons*. And here they do determine of War, Peace, and Leagues; of making Laws, of sending, receiving, and answering Embassadors; of Governments, and distributing the publick offices; and finally, of difficult Causes and Appeals, referred unto the judgment of the Great Council, in which the City *Zurich*, chief of the *Cantons*, hath the first place, not by antiquity, but dignity, and of old custom hath the greatest authority of calling together this Great Council, signifying by Letters to each *Canton*, the cause, time, and place of meeting: yet so, that if any *Canton* think it for the publick good, to have an extraordinary meeting of their Commissioners, they write to the greater of *Zurich* to appoint the same. That which the greater number do resolve upon is without delay put in execution.

The Forces of these *Swiss* consist altogether of Foot, Horse being found unconvincible in this Mountainous Country. And of these Foot, *Botery* reckoneth that they are able to raise sixscore thousand. Which possibly may be true enough, if it be understood of all that be able to bear Arms. For otherwise *de facto*, the greatest Army that ever they brought into the field, consisted but of one and thirty thousand men, which was that where-with they aided the Confederate States of Italy against the French, and restored *Maximilian Sforza* to the Dukedom of *Millain*. Their ordinary standing Forces are conceived to be sixteen or seventeen thousand, which they may bring into the field, leaving their Towns and Forts well furnished. And for their Revenue, it is not like to be very great, considering the poverty of their Country, and their want of Traffic with other Nations. That which is ordinary and in common, ariseth out of the Annual Penfions which they receive from Foreign States; the profits arising out of their *Dutch* and *Italian* Prefectures, the Impost laid on Wines sold in Taverns, and Corn used by Bakers; and the Rents of a dissolved Monastery called *Kings-field* (or *Conings-field*) because many Kings and Queens have been cloistered there, amounting to forty thousand Guldans yearly. Which Monastery was built in the year 1380, in memory and honour of the Emperor *Albertus*, slain by his Nephew *Spaniback*, not far from *Basel*. Their extraordinary doth consist of spoils that be gotten in the War: which if it be managed in common, are divided in common; but if by two or three of the *Cantons* only, the rest can claim no share in the booty gotten.

But this is only in relation to the *Switzers* themselves. For otherwise taking in the Confederate States as well without as within the bounds of that Country, they are able to raise fifty or three score thousand men: that is to say, the *Switzers* themselves seventeen thousand men,

the *Grisons* ten thousand, those of *Wallisland* six thousand; the *Abbot* and Town of *St. Gall* four thousand; the City of *Geneva* two thousand; besides what *Rome* and *Mulhausen*, two Imperial Cities, are able to contribute towards it; the *Dukes of Savoy* being bound by their ancient Leagues to aid them with six hundred Horses, at his own charges; besides two thousand six hundred Crowns in Annual Penfions. But the Revenue of those States is ordered by it self apart, and never comes with in the computation of the publick; unless it be on the repelling of a common Enemy, in which they are equally concerned. In which case, and others of a general interest, they communicate both heads and pulses: the Delegates and Commissioners of all the States of this Confederacy, meeting together to consult of the Common Cause, which meeting they entitle the *Greatest Council*. But this is very seldom held, publick affairs being generally ordered by the Commissioners of the *Switzers* only though they themselves disclaim the name of *Switzers*, as too mean and narrow, and call themselves *Eidgenossen*, that is to say, *Partakers of the sworn Leagues*. More of this Common-wealth he that lists to see, may satisfy himself in *Simler*, who purposely and punctually hath described the same.

The Leagues of the GRISONS.

THE Country of the *GRISONS* comprehendeth all that part of the *Alpes*, which lieth between the Springs of the Rivers *Rhene*, *Inn*, *Adice* or *Alpehris*, and *Adna*: being bounded on the East, with the Country of *Tirol*; on the West with *Switzerland*; on the North with *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, and a part of the *Switzers*; on the South, with *Lombardy*. A Country far more mountainous than any of this *Alpine* tract, and having less natural commodities to boast it self of, more than the Mountains of those Rivers before mentioned.

The People of it by most *Latine* Writers of these times, are called by the name of *Rheti*, the Country *Rhetia*; and so far properly enough, as that the ancient *Rheti* did inhabit all the Lands possessed by the *Grisons*: though the *Grisons* do not inhabit a fourth part of those Lands, which were possessed heretofore by the ancient *Rheti*: For anciently the *Rheti* did extend their dwellings as far as from the *Alpes* of Italy, to the River of *Daon*; comprehending besides this of the *Grison*, a great part of *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, *Tirol*, *Bavaria*, and so much also of the *Switzers*, as was not in possession of the old *Helvetii*. Within which Tract there were not only many rich Valleys and fruitful fields; but a most pleasant race of Wines called *Vina Rhetica*, much drunk of by *Augustus Caesar*, and by him preferred before all others; which no man can conceive to grow in this barren Country. More properly *Ammianus Marcellinus* calleth this Tract by the name of *Campi Canini*, Mountainous fields, which the continual Snow made to look of an hoary hue: and by allusion thereunto, the *Dutchmen* call this Nation at the present by the name of *Graupunnier*, that is to say, the hoary or gray Confederates.

As for the *Rheti*, take them in the former latitude, they were subdued by *Drusus* and *Tiberius*, the Sons-in-law and adopted children of *Augustus Caesar*, A.U.C. 739. And in the time of *Antoninus* made up two Provinces of the Empire, viz. *Rhetia prima*, and *Rhetia secunda*, both of them appertaining by *Constantine* new Model, to the *Dioecesis* of Italy. A Nation in the first Original of *Italian* race, and so more properly to be assigned to that

Dioecesis; but had inhabited this Tract from the time that *Bellerophon* the Gall fell on part of *Tisany*, expelling thence the ancient inhabitants thereof: who under the conduct of *Rhetus*, a great man amongst them, possessed themselves of these Mountains, and afterwards of the Vales adjoining, which they called *Rhetia*, by the name of their Captain General. This happened in the time of *Tarquinius Priscus*, in the first cradle, as it were, of the *Roman* Empire: in the declining age whereof, during the reign of *Valentinian* III, and *Augustulus*, those parts which lay nearest unto *Germany*, and were worth the conquering, were subdued by the *Almain*; and *Bolarians* by them incorporated with the rest of their several States. The residue of this Mountainous Tract, as not worth the looking after, continued a member of the Empire, till given by *Charles the Great* to the Bishop of *Chur*: whose Successors, being several ways molested by their potent neighbours, confederated with the *Switzers* for their mutual aid and preservation, Anno 1497. By whose aid they so valiantly made good their ground against the *Austrians*, that at the last, after the loss of twenty thousand men on both sides, the points in difference were accorded, and a peace concluded.

This is the substance of this story, as to former times, to which there cannot much be added in the way of *History*; little or no alteration happening in their affairs, but a more perfect settling of them in a form of Government. Concerning which we must observe that this whole Tract is cleft into three *Districts*: that is to say, the *Upper League* or *Liga Grise*, 2. *Liga Cadi Din*, or the League of the House of God, 3. The *Lower League* called also *Liga Diuturn*, or the League of the ten Mountainous. The eight *Italian Prefectures* will make a fourth. Their buildings generally in the three first being cold and mountainous, are of free-stone, but low, and for three parts of the year covered with Snow: the Windows thereof glazed and large, of which for the said three parts of the year they only open a little quarry of the Glaze, and presently shut it close again; the outside of the Windows having leaves of wood, to keep the heat of their Stows from going out, or any cold from coming in. And as for travelling, the ways are for the most part unsafe and dangerous, by reason of the straight passages, dreadful precipices, and these almost continual Bridges which hang over the terrible falls and Cataracts of the River *Rhene*, descending with great violence from the highest Mountains: huge hills of Snow tumbling into the Valleys, with a noise as hideous as if it were a clap of thunder.

For the particulars, the *Upper League* lieth in the highest and most mountainous parts of the *Alpes* of Italy, having therein those vast Mountains of *Lockannier*, and *Der Vogel*; out of which the two streams of the *Rhene* have their first Original. By the French it is called *Liga Grise* or the Gray League, (the word *Grise* or *Grise*, in that Language, being Gray in ours) in the same sense as the *Dutch* call it *Graupunnier*, that is, *Confederates* *Grise*-pates, which we may render properly the *Confederate Grise*-pates: either because the Mountains are continually covered with a periview of hoary *flakes*, or from the heads of the people, Gray before their time. It consisteth of nineteen *Resorts* or Commonalties, according to their number of their Vales and Villages, of which four only speak the *Dutch*, all the rest a corrupt *Italian*: and was the first which did confederate with the *Switzers*, from whence the name of *Grison* came unto the rest, who after joynted with them in the same Confederacy. It hath no City nor Town of note. The principal of those that be, are 1. *Ilanier*, the place

sometimes of the *General Diets* for these *Leagues*. 2. *Diferant*, where is a very rich Monastery. 3. *St. Bernardin*, situate at the foot of the Mountain *Vogel*. 4. *Mafox*, sometimes an Earldom, giving name to the Valley *Mafocer-tal*. 5. *Galancker*, whence the Vale so named, inhabited by none but Basket-makers. 6. *Ruffia*, situate on the River *Mufa*, near *Belluzano*, on the skirts of Italy.

2. The second *League*, is *Liga Cadi Dio*, or the *League of the House of God*, so called because it was the proper Patrimony of the Bishop and Church of *Chur*: and may be called the *Middle League*, as being situate between the *Upper League* on the West, and the *Lower League* upon the East. It is the greatest of the three, containing twenty one *Reforts* or *Commonalties*: of which nine lie on this side the tops of the Mountains towards *Germany*, the rest towards *Italy*: and yet two only speak the *Dutch*, the others a corrupt *Italian*. The places of most note are 1. *Tintzen*, the *Tinnerio* of *Antoninus*, seated amongst high and inaccessible Mountains, betwixt *Chur* and the Valley of *Bergel*. 2. *Mur*, (called *Murny* by the same *Antoninus*) in the Valley of *Bergel*: a Valley extending from the head of the River *Maira*, towards *Chiavenna*, one of the *Italian Prefectures*. 3. *Stalla*, called *Bevia* by the *Italians*, because the way doth in that place divide it self. 4. *Jasomo* (in the Valley of *Compalschein*) called *Transide* by *Antoninus*. 5. *Simada*, in the Valley of *Engadin*. And 6. *Chur*, by some *Coina*, but more truly *Curia*, so called from the long stay that *Constantine* the Great made here with his Court and Army, in a War intended against the *Germans*; built afterwards by some part of his Forces which continued here, Anno 357. about half a *Dutch* mile from the meeting of the two streams of the *Rhone*, in form triangular, the buildings indifferent in themselves, but not uniform with one another. High on a Hill; in one corner of which standeth the *Clofe*, and therein the Cathedral Church, a stately Edifice, but more in account of the Natives who have seen no fairer, than it is with strangers: and near the Church the Bishop's Palace, and the houses of the *Canons*, all well built, and handsomely adorned. The Bishop of this City, and of all the Country of these *Leagues* (for they received their Bishop and the Faith together, Anno 489.) acknowledgeth the Archbishop of *Mentz* for their *Metropolitan*; is reckoned for a *Prince of the Empire*, and the rightful Lord both of this City and the whole *League*: but on the introduction of the *Reformed Religion*, which they had from the *Switzers* and *Genevians*, the Citizens withdrew themselves from their obedience to the Bishop, and govern the City in the manner of a *Free State*. So far conformable to him, for their own preservation, that as the Bishop and his *Canons*, with the rest of this *League*, upon occasion of the wrangs done them by the House of *Austria*; Lords of the neighbouring *Tirol*; joined in confederacy with the seven first *Canons* of the *Switzers* (which was in the year 1498.) So did the Citizens of *Chur*, after they had withdrawn themselves from the command of their Bishops, concur with them at last in that mutual *League*.

3. The third *League* of these *Grifons*, is the *Lower League*, called also *Liga Dittura*, or the *League of the ten Jurisdictions*; situate close upon *Tirol*, in the Northeast part of the whole Country. Of all the ten, two only, which are those of *Malans* and *Maienfeld*, obey the joyn't commands of the three *Leagues* of the *Grifons*; the other eight being subject to the Arch-Duke of *Austria* under whom they are suffered to enjoy their ancient privileges, for fear of uniting with the *Switzers*; which hitherto they have not done. Only they did unite together in one common *League*, Anno 1436, con-

firming their mutual defence against all Enemies, preservation of their peace, and maintenance of their privileges; reserving notwithstanding their obedience to their natural Lords. In which respect, and by reason of the interest and society which they have with the rest of the *Grifons* they are in friendship with the *Swiss*, but in no Confederacy. City or walled Town they have none. The chief of those they have, are 1. *Caltis*, the seat of the Government for the Arch Duke of *Austria*; 2. *Malans*, and 3. *Maienfeld*, both bordering upon the *Rhone*. 4. *Tanau*, giving name to the first and greatest of the ten Jurisdictions, the chief Town of this *League*, in which are held the *General Diets* for the same; and where are kept Monuments and Records which concern their Privileges. In this *League* is the Mountain called *Rhatico mons*, by *Pomponius Mela*, but now *Pretigomerberg*, because it is at the end of the Valley which the *Dutch* call *Pretigom*.

4. As for the *Italian Prefectures* they are eight in number, and were given unto the *Grifons* by *Maximilian Sforze*, Duke of *Millain*, Anno 1513. at such time as he gave the like present to the *Canons* of *Switzerland*. Of these the first is called *Plurs*, so called from the chief Town of the same name, in Latine *Plura*, once seated in a Plain at the foot of the *Alpes*, near the River *Maira*, the chief of sundry Villages lying in the same bottom; now nothing but a deep and bottomless Gulf. For on the 26 of August 1617, an huge Rock falling from the top of the Mountains, overwhelmed the Town, killed in the twinkling of an eye 1500 people, and left no sign or ruine of a Town there standing; but in the place thereof a great Lake of some two miles length. 2. *Chiarama*, situate in a pleasant Valley so called, near the River *Maira*, and ten Italian miles from the Lake of *Como*. *Antoninus* calleth it *Clavenna*, and the *Dutch* *Cleuver-tal*, or the Valley of *Chruu*, more near unto the ancient name. 3. The *Valtolina*, *Vallis Tolina* in the Latine, a pleasant Valley, extending threecore miles in length, from the head of the River *Adia*, unto the fall thereof in the Lake of *Como*: the Wines thereof are much commended, and frequently transported on this side the *Alpes*. It is divided into six Prefectures, according to the names of the principal Towns. The chief whereof, are 1. *Bormio*, seated near the head of the River *Adia*. 2. *Teio*, the chief Fortrefs of the whole Valley. 3. *Sondrio*, the chief Town, and the Seat of the Governour, or Lieutenant General of the whole Country. This Valley lying opportunely for the passage of the King of Spain's Forces out of *Millain* into *Germany*, by the practices and treasons of *Kodolpus Planta*, one of the Natives of it, and of the *Romish* Religion; was delivered to the Duke of *Feria*, being then Governour of *Millain*, Anno 1622. the whole Country brought under the obedience of that King, *Chur* it self forced and taken by them, and the Religion of *Rome* settled in all parts thereof. But two years after, by the joyn't Forces of the *French*, *Venetians* and *Savoyards*, the whole Valley was recovered from the *Spaniards*, and after a long treaty between *France* and *Spain*, the *Grifons* re-estated in their just possessions, Anno 1630. save that the *Spaniard* still holds the Fort of *Fuenter*, for the safer passage of his Forces, if occasion be.

Such is the state of three *Leagues* considered severally and apart from one another. In reference to the whole, they make up one Government, or Commonwealth; for ordering whereof they hold a *General Diet*, once in every year, consisting of threecore and three Commissioners; that is to say, 28 from the *Upper League*, 23 from the *League of the House of God*, and 14 from the *League of the ten Jurisdictions*. These

these have authority to determine of *Appeals* from the common Prefectures, to conclude of Peace and War, Confederacies, Embassies, and Laws, which concern the publick; yet so, that in a point of *Judicature*, it is lawful to appeal unto the *Commonalties* of every *League*, who have authority if need be, to reverse the Sentence; the causes being severally proposed, and passed by the major part of the voices. The Government of each *League*, popular, as amongst the *Switzers*.

There are in these *Alpine* Provinces,

Archbishops 2. Bishops 13.

Universities 4.

i. e.

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1. Turin. | 3. Basil. |
| 2. Geneva. | 4. Zurich. |

U 2

OF



OF

FRANCE.

HAVING thus crossed the *Alpes*, we may indifferently dispose our selves for *France* or *Germany*. But, we will follow the Course and Fortunes of the *Roman* Empire, which first passed into *France*, before it meddled with the *German*; and had brought *Spain* and *Britain* under the Form of *Roman* Provinces, when *Germany* was looked on at a greater distance.

FRANCE then according to the present dimensions of it, is bounded on the East, with a branch of the *Alpes*, which divide *Dauphine* from *Piemont*; as also, with the Countries of *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, and some parts of *Germany*, and the *Netherlands* on the North, with the *Aquitain* Ocean, and the *Pyrenean* Mountains, which divide it from *Spain*; on the North, with the *English* Ocean, and some parts of *Belgium*; and on the South, with the rest of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, and the *Mediterranean*.

The Figure of it, is almost Square, each side of the *Quadrature* being reckoned 600 miles in length. But, they that go more exactly to work upon it, make the length hereof to be 660 *Italian* miles; the breadth 570 only; the whole Circumference to amount to 2040. Seated in the Northern Temperate Zone, between the middle Parallel of the Fifth Climate, where the longest day is 15 hours; and the middle Parallel of the Eighth Climate, where the longest day is 16 hours and an half.

It hath this present Name of *France*, from the *Franks*, or *Franks*, a people of *Germany*, who seized upon those parts of it which lay nearest to the *Rhene*. In the time of *Valentinian III.* and, having afterwards subdued *Paris*, and made it the Seat-Royal of their growing Empire, they caused the Country thereabouts to be called *France*. Which Name, as they enlarged their borders, they imposed on, or communicated rather, to the rest of this Country, and to those parts of *Germany* also, which were conquered by them. At which time, for distinction sake, they called the East parts of their whole Empire by the name of *Ostero-reich*, or *Austrasia*, lying now wholly out of *France*; in *Germany*; and that part of *Belgium*, which is subject to the King of *Spain*; and for the West parts thereof, they have the name of *Westen-reich*, or *Westrasia*, (in the barbarous Latine of that Age) *West France*, or *Francia Occidentalis*; to which the name of *France* was at last appropriated, according to the limits before laid down.

Anciently, it was called *Gallia*, and the people, *Galli*; and by that name occurs, most commonly, in the Writers of the *Roman* story; and *Gallia Transalpinga*, because situate on the further side of the *Alpes*, from *Italy*, to difference it from the Country of those *Gauls*, which

being planted in those parts which we now call *Lombardy*, was called *Cisalpinga*. Sometimes it was called *Gallia*; and by that name known amongst the *Greeks*; by *Plutarch* called *Celto-Gallia*; or the *Gallia* of the *Celts*, a potent Nation of old *Gaul*; to distinguish it from *Gallia* one of the Provinces of *Asia* minor, denominated from the *Gallatians*, or *Gauls*, of this Country. Whence it became so named, is not yet determined. Some think it was called *Gallia* from the *Greek* word *Γαλα* (*Gala*) signifying Milk, *quia Lactior*, i. e. *albos homines producit*, for the milky and white complexion of the people, compared to the *Greeks* and *Romans*, who first imported it. Others, and amongst them, *Dionysius Siculus*, derive the name from *Galata*, a Son of *Hercules*; to which that of *Gallia* comes as near as may be. That *Hercules* was sometimes in this Country, is affirmed also by *Ammianus Marcellinus*; who further adds, That after he had suppressed those Tyrants which oppressed the people, he begat many Children on the principal Women; *Et ex partu quibus imperitabant, nominibus suis appellavit*, *Lib. XL.* Who gave their own names to those parts over which they ruled. But, in another place, acknowledging, That the *Grecians* call this people, *Gallatae*, (*ita enim Gallos sermo Graecus appellat*) he telleth us from *Timon* an ancient Author, one very diligent in the search of the *Gallick* Antiquities, that the *Aborigines*, or first Inhabitants hereof, called themselves *Celtae*, by the name of one of their Kings, whom they highly honoured; *Et matris ejus vocabulo Galatam*, and *Galata* from the name of his Mother *Galata*; who, and properly enough, might be a Daughter of *Hercules*; *mutuoque* by *Dionysius*, for one of his Sons.

Of the Original of this people, more anon. In the mean time, we may take too much notice of the ancient *Gaul* as to affirm him 'Out of *Cesar*, and other Authors' to be quick-witted, of a sudden and humble apprehension; but withal, very rati and hair-brain'd (*ut sunt Julia Gallorum ingenia*, is a note set upon them by the Pen of *Cesar*;) so full of Law-suits and Contentions, that their Lawyers never wanted work. *Gallia* *Castior*, &c. as that Poet hath it, of vehement affections, and precipitate in all their actions, as well Military as Civil: falling on like a Clap of Thunder, and presently going off in Smoke. *Primus impetus major quam virum, secundus minor quam semineum*, was a part also of their Character in the time of *Florus* the Historian. And though the present *French* be generally of another Original; yet, there is so much of the old *Gaul* still left amongst them, either by the impression of the Heavenly Bodies, or by Inter-marriages with the *Gauls*, as they overcame them; that all the qualities are still predominant

minant in the *French*; not differing from the ancient *Gaul*, but in Name and Habit. For further evidence whereof, take with you a Comparison, homely I must confess, but to the life expresting the nature of the *French*, compared with the *Dutch* and *Spanish*, in matters of War. The *French* is said to be like a *Flea*, quickly skipping into a Country, and soon leaping out of it; as was the Expedition of *Charles VIII.* into *Italy*. The *Dutch* is said to be like a *Louse*, slowly mattering a place, and as slowly (yet at last) driven out of their hold; as was their taking and losing of *Ostend* and *Gulick*. The *Spaniard* is said to be like a *Crab*, or *Pedicular* *inguinalis*, which being once crept into a place, is so rooted there, that nothing but the extremity of Violence, can fetch him out again. In which, I think I need not instance; it being generally observed, that the *Spaniards* will endure all possible hardship, before they will part with any thing that they are possessed of. It is used also for a By-word, That the Italian is wise before-hand, the Dutch in the time of action, and the French after it is done; a Witdom much like that of the ancient *Gauls*. Nor are they less Litigious than the old *Gauls* were; inasmuch as it is thought, that there are more Law-suits tried among them in seven years, than have been in England from the Conquest, till the time of King *James*. They are great Scoffers, yea even in matters of Religion, as appeareth by the story of a Gentleman lying sick on his death-bed, who, when the Priest had perswaded him, that the Sacrament of the Altar was the very Body and Blood of *CHRIST*, refused to eat thereof, because it was Friday. Nor can I forget another in the same extremity; who seeing the Host (for so they call the Consecrated Elements) brought unto him by a Lubberly Priest, said, That *CHRIST* came to him, as he entered into Jerusalem, riding upon an Ass. As for the Women, they are said to be witty, but apish, wanton, and incontinent; where a man at his first entrance, may find acquaintance; and at his first acquaintance, may find an entrance. So *Dallington*, in his *View of France*, describeth them. But I have since heard this *Censure* condemned of some Uncharitableness, and the *French* Gentlemen highly magnified for all those Graces which may beautify and adorn that Sex. And it is possible enough, that it may be so in some particulars, though it be more than any man would guess at, that cometh amongst them. For, generally, at the first sight you shall have them as familiar with you, as if they had known you from your Cradle; and are so full of Chat and Tattle, even with those they know not, as if they were resolved sooner to want Bread, than Words; and never to be silent, but in the Grave.

As to the persons of this People, they are commonly of a middle stature, and for the most part, of a slight jnaking; their Complexion being generally hot and moist, which makes them very subject to the heats of Lust, and easily inclinable unto those Diseases which are concomitants thereof. Their Constitution somewhat tender, if not delicate; which rendreth them impatient of Toil and Labour; and is, in part, the cause of those ill success which have happened to them in the Wars; in which they have lost as much for want of constancy and perseverance in their Enterprises, as they have gained by their courage in the undertakings. And for the Women, they are for the most part, very proportionable of stature, slender waisted, and a fit symmetry of proportion in all the rest; their hands white, long, and slender; and easily discernable to be so; for either they wear no Gloves at all, or else so short, as if they were cut off at the hand-wrist. To those, the Complexion of their Faces, and the Colour of their

Hair, too much inclining to the black, holds no true Decorum. 'Tis true, the Poets commend *Leda* for her black hair, and not unworthily; *Leda fuit nigris conspicienda comis*, as it is in *Ovid*. But this was specially, because it set off, with the greater liltre, the amiable Sweetness of her Complexion; for in that case, the Hair doth set forth the Face, as shadows commonly do a Picture; and the face so becometh the Hair, as a Field *Argent* doth a *Sable* bearing; which kind of Coat, our *Critical Herald* call the most fair. But when a Black Hair meets with a brown or swarthy complexion, it falls short of that attractiveness of Beauty which *Ovid*, seeing to great a *Crafter-Master* in the *Art of Love*, did commend in *Leda*.

The chief Exercises they use, are, 1. *Tennis*; every Village having a *Tennis-Court*, *Orleans* 60. *Paris* many hundreds. 2. *Dancing*; a sport to which they are so generally affected, that were it not so much inveighed against by their straight-laced Ministers, it is thought that many more of the *French Catholics* had been of the *Reformed Religion*. For, so extremely are they bent upon this disport, that neither Age, nor Sickness, nor Poverty itself, can make them keep their heels still when they hear the Music. Such as can hardly walk abroad without their Crutches, or go as if they were troubled all day with a *Sciatica*, and perchance have their rags hang loo loose about them that one would think a swift *Galliard* might shake them out of their nakedness, will to the *Dancing-green* howsoever, and be there as eager at the sport as if they had left their several infirmities and wants behind them. What makes their *Minstrels* (and indeed, all that follow the *Genevian Discipline*) inveigh so bitterly against *Dancing*, and punish it with such severity when they find it used, I am not able to determine, nor doth it any way belong unto this Discourse. But being it is a Recreation which this People are so given unto, and such a one as cannot be followed, but in a great deal of company, and before many witnesses and spectators of their carriage in it; I must needs think the Ministers of the *French Church* more nice than wise, if they chuse rather to deter men from their Congregation by so strict a *Stoicism*, than indulge any thing unto the jollity and natural gaiety of this People, in matters not offensive but by accident only.

The Language of this People is very voluble and pleasant; but rather *Elegant*, than *Copious*; and therefore much troubled for want of proper words to find out *Periphrases*; besides that very much of it is exprest in the action; the head and shoulders move as significantly toward it, as the lips and tongue; and he that hopeth to speak it with any good grace, must have somewhat in him of the *Mimick*. A Language enriched with great plenty of *Proverbs*, and consequently, a great help to the *French* humour of Scoffing; and so naturally disposed for Courtship, as makes all the people complements; the poorest *Cobler* in the parish, hath his *Courti* cringer, and his *Beaubien* de *Cour*, his *Courti* *holymater*, (as they call it) as perfectly as the best *Gentleman-Husher* in *Paris*. Compared with that of other Nations, the Language of the *Spaniards* is said to be Manly; the *Italian*, Courtly; and the *French*, Amorous. A sweet Language it is, without question, the people leaving out in their pronunciation, many of their Consonants; and thereby giving occasion to this By-word. That the *French* man pronounceth not as he writeth, singeth not as he pricketh, nor speaketh as he thinketh. In the Original thereof, it is a compound of the old *Gallick*, *German*, and *Latine* Tongues; the old *Gallick* being questionless the same with the *Welsh* or *British*, as appeareth clearly by these Reasons. 1. The *Latine* words are known to have

have been received from the Romans; and the German words, at the coming in of the Franks and Burgundians; but the *Welsh* words which they have, we can give no reason, but that they are the remainder of their ancient Language; of which *Welsh* words, which still continue in that Language, Camden in his *Britannia*, reckoneth not a few. 2. It is said by Tacitus, that the Britains were the Descendants of the Gauls; and this he proveth, as by other Arguments, so from the identity or near resemblance of the Language which both Nations speak. *Utriusque sermo haud multum diversus*, as his own words are. And 3. it is said by Caesar, That the Gauls used to pass into Britain, to be instructed in the Rights and Learning of the Druids; which sheweth that both People speak but one common Tongue; there being, in those times, no one Learned Language which other Nations studied, besides their own.

The Soil is extraordinary fruitful, and hath three Load-measures to draw riches out of other Countries, Corn, Wine, and Salt; in exchange for which, there is yearly brought into France 1200000 *l*. sterling, the Custom of Salt only to the King, being estimated at 1700000 Crowns *per annum*. And indeed the benefit arising on this one Commodity, is almost incredible; it being constituted by the King's Edict, (which is all in all) that no man shall have any Salt for Domestic uses, (except by special Privilege, and that dearly paid for) but what he must buy of the King's Officers, and that upon such prices too, as they please to sell it. Nor can it but be very well stored with Fish: For, besides the benefit of the Seas, their Lakes and Ponds belonging to the Clergy only, are said to be 150000. Their other Merchandizes are, Bees, Hogs, Nuts, Woods, Skins, vast quantities of all sorts of Linnen. And, to say truth, there are not many Countries in the Christian World, to which Nature hath been so prodigal of her choicest blessings as the hath to this; the fields thereof being large and open, and those so intermingled with Corn and Vines, and every hedge-row so beset with choice of Fruits, that never any covetous or curious eye had a fairer object. And yet so miserable is the condition of the common Peasant; partly by reason of the intolerable Taxes laid upon him by the King; and partly, by those great, but uncertain Reuts, which are set upon him by his Landlords, (for the poor husbandman is Tenant only at the will of his Lord) that there is many one amongst them, who farmeth yearly thirty or forty Acres of Wheat and Vines, that never drinks Wine, nor eats good Bread, from one end of the year unto the other.

The Christian Faith was planted first amongst the Gauls, by some of St. Peter's Disciples, sent hither by him at his first coming to Rome: *Xylus, Frontus, and Julianus*, the first Bishops of *Rhemes, Perigueux, and Mantes*, (*Concomensium*, in the *Latine*) being said to be of his ordaining in the *Martyrol* gene. The like may be affirmed (but on sure grounds) of *Trophimus*, the first Bishop of *Arles*. For, on a Controversie betwixt the Archbishops of *Vienna* and *Arles*, for the dignity of the Metropolitan, in the time of Pope Leo I. it was thus pleaded in behalf of the Bishop of *Arles*, *Quod prima inter Gallias*, &c. That *Arles* of all the Cities of Gaul, did first obtain the happiness of having *Trophimus* ordained Bishop thereof, by the hands of St. Peter. Nor is St. Paul to be denied the honour of sending some of his Disciples thither also to preach the Gospel; *Crescentus* sent by him, as he telleth us, 2 *Tim.* 4. into *Galatia*, being the first Bishop of *Vienna*, spoken of before, as, not the *Martyrologist* only, but *Ado Vinnensis*, an ancient Writer of that Church, doth expressly say. And that it was into this Country it was sent that *Crescentus* at that time, and

not unto *Galatia* in *Asia minor*, the testimonies of *Epiphanius* and *Theodoret*, which affirm the same, and that which hath been said before of this name of *Galatia*, may confirm sufficiently. But Christianity being destroyed by the French at their first coming hither, was again planted by the industry of St. Remigius, the first Bishop of *Rhemes*; *Clovis*, or *Clodoveus* V. King of the French, giving way unto it for his Wives sake, who was zealous in it; and after taking unto himself that holy Calling, on a great victory which he won against the *Almains*; by whom, being over-laid in the day of Battle, he made his prayers to CHRIST, whom his Wife *Clotilda* worshipped; vowing to be of that Religion, if he got the Victory: which Vow he had no sooner made, (as the Story telleth us) but *Alamanni* invaded him; a sudden fear fell upon the *Almains*, and the French were Conquerors.

At this time they are divided in Religion, as in other places, some following the Doctrine of the Church of Rome; and others, that of those Reformed Churches which adhere to Calvin. But this Division is more ancient than Calvin's days; the same opinions (as they relate unto the Errors in the Romish Church) being maintained formerly by the *Albigenses*, the *Waldenses*, or *Pauvres de Lugduno*, (the *Vandoyes*, as the French Writers call them) of whom we shall speak more, when we come to *Lyons*. Suffice it in this place to note, That the Doctrine of the Reformed Churches was not new in France, when *Zuinglius* first preached against the superstitions of the Mass, and the worship of Images; and Calvin travelled in advancing the Reformation, though much suppressed as to the outward profession of it. But, being revived by their endeavours, it sprung out again, and spread it self so speedily in this Kingdom, that there were reckoned in the year 1550. above 1240 Churches of them; which cannot, in such a long time, but be wonderfully augmented, though scarce any of them having escaped some Massacre or other. Of these *Massacres*, two are most memorable, viz. that of *Merindol* and *Chabriers*, as being the first; and the Massacre of *Paris*, as being the greatest. That of *Merindol* hapned in the year 1545; the Instrument of it, being *Minier*, the President of the Council of *Aix*: for, having condemned this poor people of *Heresie*, he mustered a small Army, and set fire on the Villages. They of *Merindol*, seeing the flame, with their Wives and Children fled into the Wood, but where there butchered, or sent to the Gallies. One Boy they took, placed him against a Tree, and shot him with Calivers; 25 which had hid themselves in a Cave, were in part stifled, in part burned. In *Chabriers*, they so inhumanely dealt with the young Wives and Maids, that most of them died immediately after. The Men and Women were put to the Sword; the Children were re-baptized, 800 Men were murdered in a Cave, and 40 Women were put together in an old Barn, and burned. Yea, such was the Cruelty of these Souldiers to these poor Women, that when some of them had clambered to the top of the House, with an intent to leap down, the Souldiers beat them back again with their Pikes. The Massacre of *Paris* was more cunningly plotted. A Peace was made with the Protestants for the assurance whereof, a Marriage was solemnized between *Henry* of Navarre, chief of the Protestant Party, and the Lady *Marguerite* the King's Sister. At this Wedding, there assembled the Prince of *Conde*, the Admiral *Coligni*, and divers others of chief note; but there was not so much Wine drunk, as Blood shed at it. At midnight the Watch-Bell rung, the King of Navarre and the Prince of *Conde* are taken prisoners, the Admiral murdered in his bed, and 30000 at the least, of the

the greatest and most potent men of the Religion, sent by the way of the Red Sea, to find the nearest passage to the Land of Canaan, Anno 1572. yet notwithstanding these Massacres, and the long and frequent Wars which were made against them by their Kings, they grew so numerous, and got unto so great a Power, that partly by Capitulations with the French Kings, at the end of every Civil War; but principally, by the connivance of King Henry IV. who was sometimes the Head of their Party, they had gotten above three hundred Walled Towns and Garrisons, and were absolute Masters in effect, of all those Provinces which lie along the *Aquitaine* shore, and the Pyrennes from the Mediterranean Sea, to the River of *Loyre*. But, being grown too insolent by reason of so great a Strength, and standing upon terms with the King, as a Free Estate, (the Commonwealth of *Roche*, as King Henry IV. was used to call it) they drew upon themselves the Jealousie and Fury of King Lewis XIII. Who seeing that he could not otherwise dissolve the Knot of their Combination, than by the Sword, drew it out at last; and was so fortunate in the success of his Undertakings, that in two years, (viz. Anno 1621, 1622.) he stripped them of all their Walled Towns, except *Montauban* and *Roche* only; and those two he reduced not long after, by the power of his Arms, leaving them nothing to rely on for their future security, but the Grace and Clemency of their King, procured by their Obedience and Integrity. And it hath sped so well with them since that time, that they never had the exercise of their Religion with so much freedom, as they have hitherto enjoyed since the reducing of their Forts and Garrisons to the Kings obedience.

The other Party in Religion, having the countenance of the State, and the prescription and possession of so many years to confirm the same, is in as prosperous a condition both for Power and Patrimony, as any that acknowledgeth the Authority of the Popes of Rome. In point of Patrimony, the Author of the Cabinet computes the Tythes and Temporal Revenues of the Clergy, besides Provisions of all sorts, to 80 Millions of Crowns; but this account is disallowed by all knowing men. *Bodin* reporteth from the mouth of Monsieur *Almain*, one of the Presidents of *Accounts* in *Paris*, that they amount to 12 Millions, and 300000 of their *Livres*, which is 1200000 *l*. of our English money; and he himself conceiveth, that they possess seven parts of twelve, of the whole revenues of that Kingdom. The Book, entitled *Comment d'Etat*, gives a lower estimate; and reckoning that there are in France 200 millions of *Arpens* (which is a measure somewhat bigger than our *Acre*) assigneth 47 Millions, which is near a fourth part of the whole, to the Gallican Clergy. And then it is resolved by all that the *Balsmann*, (as they call it) which consists of Offerings, Churchings, Burials, Diriges, and such like Casualties, amounteth to as much *per annum*, as their standing Rents. Upon which ground Sir *Edwin Sandys* computeth their Revenue at six millions yearly. And to say truth, there needs a very great Revenue to maintain their numbers; there being reckoned in this Kingdom, 13 Archbishops, 104 Bishops, 1450 Abbots, 540 Arch-Priors, 12320 Priors, 567 Nunneries, 700 Convents of Nuns, 259 Commanderies of Malta: besides the Colleges of the *Jesuites*, which being of a late foundation, are not here accounted. And for the Parish-Priests, they are reckoned at 130000 of all sorts, taking in *Ordres*, *Sub-deacons*, and all those of Inferiour Degrees, which have some Ministry in their Churches, the number of which was reckoned, in the time of King Lewis XI. to be little less than 100000. But then 'tis

like, that *Chanteries* and *Free Chappels* went in that account; or else the *Hugonots* in the Wars have destroyed more Churches than they are like to build again in haste; there being found in France on a just Account, no more than 27400 Parish-Churches, besides *Oratories* and *Chappels* of Ease appertaining to them: In which there are supposed to live 15 millions of People; whereof the Clergy, and the Ministers depending on them, do make up 3 Millions, which is a fifth part of the whole. And lost their Power, the Gallican Clergy stands more stoutly to their natural Rights against the Usurpations and Encroachments of the See of Rome, than any other that lives under the Pope's Authority; which they acknowledge so far only as conflict with their own Privileges, and the Rights of their Sovereign. For Helldid they in long time submit to the Decrees of the Council of *Trent*, nor have they yet admitted of the *Inquisition*, nor yield such store of Gift to the Pope's Mill, as probably might redound to him from so rich a Clergy; And for his Temporal Power over Kings and Princes, it is a Doctrine so averse from the Politicians and Principals of the Gallican Church, that in the year 1610, the Divines of *Paris* published a Declaration, in which it was affirmed, that the Doctrine of the Popes Supremacy was an *inconclusive* Doctrine, and the ground of that Hellish Position, of Deposing and Killing Kings. And this, indeed, hath constantly been the Doctrine of the Gallican Church, since the time of *Geofroy*, maintaining the Authority of a Council above that of the Pope.

But to proceed; The men most eminent for Learning of either side, have been, (besides those mentioned in the *Alpine* Provinces) *Peter du Moulin*, highly commended for his Eloquence, by the Pen of *Balfae*: *Fr. Junius*, a moderate and grave Divine; *Chamier* the Controverser, and *Philip de Morney*, Lord of *Plaffry*. Of the other Party, *Claudius Espenacius*, a Sorbon Doctor, the famous Cardinal of *Peron* the Gambard the Historian, *Petrinus* a learned *Jesuit*, &c. In the middle times, *St. Bernard*, Abbot of *Clarevalle*; *Pet. Lombard*, Bishop of *Paris*; *John Geofroy*, Chancellor of that University. More anciently, *Proper of Aquitain*, *Cassianus* the Hermit, *Isaacus* the renowned Bishop of *Lyons*, (though not here a Native,) and as to men of other Studies, *Antoine* the Poet, *Huetan* and *Gaufredus*, the Civilians; *Duarenus* the Canonist, *Bern. Briffonius* the great Antiquary, *Jacques Casaubon*, that renowned Philologist, *Budens* that great Master of the Greek Language, *Thomas* the Historian, *Laurentius* the Anatomist, &c. And as for Military men, it hath been famous for the valour of *Clouis* the first Christian King of the French, *Charles Martel*, that illustrious Champion of the Church against the *Saracens*; and *Charles* the Great, the Father of the Western Empire. In the middle times for *Godfrey of Bullion*, one of the Nine Worthies, (as they call them) the Son of *Eustace*, Earl of *Beaufort* in *Picardy*; and in these latter days, for King Henry IV. *Kingsley* and *Henry*, Dukes of *Guise*; *Charles* Duke of *Bayonne*, *Charles* Duke of *Biron*, &c.

The Laws of this Kingdom are either Temporary, and alterable at pleasure; or Fundamental, which neither King or Parliament (as they say) can alter. Of this last sort, the principal are, the *Salique* Law, and the Law of *Apenage*. By that of the *Apenage*, the younger Sons of the King are not to have partage in the Kingdom with their Elder Brother. Which Law was made by *Charles* the Great, before whose time we find the Children of the Kings estated in their several Thrones, and the Realm parcelled out among them into many Kingdoms. But by this Law, they are to be entituled to some Dutchy or County, (though they are content sometimes with Annual Penfions) with all the Rights

Rights and Profits thereunto belonging: all matters of Regality (as Levying Taxes, Coyuage and the like) excepted only; which upon the failing of the Maleline, do return again unto the Crown. The name therefore derived from *Albano*, a German word, signifying a Portion.

But the main Law they stand on, is the *Salique Law*, by which the Crown of France may not descend unto the Females or fall from the *Lance* to the *Dishuff*, as their saying is. Which Law, one undertaking to make good out of Holy Writ, urged that Text of St. Matthew, where it is said, *Mark the Lillies*, (which are the Arms of France) and see how they neither Labour nor spin. This Law they pretend to have been made by *Pharamond*, the first King of the French; and that the words *Si aliquis*, so often used in it, gave the name of the *Salique Law*. But *Heillan*, one of their best Writers affirms, That it was never heard of in France, till the time of *Philip the Long*, Anno 1315; and that it could not possibly be made by *Pharamond*, who though he was the first King of the French, had not one foot of ground in France: *Cleodan* the Son of *Pharamond*, being the first of the French Kings which passed over the *Rhone*; their third King *Mervoe*, the first that ever fixed his seat in the Modern France. Others say, it was made by *Charles the Great*, after the Conquest of Germany, where the incontinent lives of the Women, living about the River *Sala*, (in the Modern *Misnia*) gave both the occasion and the name. *De terra vero Salica, nulla portio hereditatis mulieri veniat, sed ad virilem Sexum tota terra hereditas perveniat*, are the words thereof. This *Terra Salica*, the Learned *Selden* in his *Titles of Honour, Englishness, Knights-Fee*, or Land that is holden by *Knights Service*, as our Lawyers call it; and proveth this Interpretation by a Record of the Parliament of *Bourdeaux*, cited by *Bodinus*; where an old Will or Testament being once produced, in which the Testator had bequeathed unto his Son all his *Salique Land*; it was rescinded by the Court, That thereby was meant, his Land holden in *Knights Service*. And then the fence thereof must be, That in Lands holden of the King by *Knights Service*, or the like Military tenures, the Male-children should inherit only, because the Females could not perform those Services for which those Lands were given and by which they were holden. And for this there may be good reason, though in England we deal not so unfriendly with the Female Sex, but permit them after the age of 15 years, to enjoy such Lands, because they may then take such Husbands as are able to do the King those Services which the Law requirith. But this Interpretation (how good and genuine indeed soever it be) cannot stand with the French Glofs. For then the Crown, being held of none but God, and so not properly to be called a Fee or Fief, could not be brought within the compass of the *Salique Law*, because not to be counted for *Salique Land*. Give them therefore their own Glofs, their own Etymology and Original; and let us see by what right their Kings Daughters are excluded from their succession to the Diadem. For first, supposing that to be the *Salique Land* which lyeth about the River *Sala*, in the Modern *Misnia*; I would fain know how it could reach unto the King's Daughter in France, so far distant from it; or with what honesty they can lay on them the like brand of Incontinency, as was supposed to have been found in those Women of Germany? And next, supposing that the Law had been made by *Pharamond*, I would fain learn how it can be applied to the Crown of France, to which *Pharamond* had then no title, nor so much as one foot of Land on that side of the *Rhone*. And finally, supposing that the Law was made in such general terms, as to ex-

tend to all the Countries, which the French in time to come should conquer, and consequently unto France when once conquered by them: I would then ask, Whether it did extend to the Crown alone, or to all subordinate Estates which were holden of it; if unto all Estates holden of that Crown, I would fain know with what pretence they could give sentence in behalf of *Charles of Blois*, against *John de Montfort*, in the Succession to the Dukedom of Bretagne: *Charles of Blois* claiming by his Mother, the Niece of *Arthur II.* by his second Son Guy: whereas *John de Montfort* was the third Son (and the next Heir-male) of the said Duke *Arthur*. If only to the Crown of France, it would be known by what right they detain that Dukedom from the true Heirs of *Anne* the Dutchess, whose Daughter and Heir, the Lady *Claude*, being married unto *Francis I.* had issue *Henry II.* and other Children. Which *Henry*, besides *Francis II.* *Charles IX.* *Henry III.* and *Francis Duke of Anjou*, all dying without Issue, had a Daughter named *Isabel*, or *Elizabeth*, married to *Philip II.* King of Spain, by whom the was made the Mother of *Isabella*, the late Arch-Dutchess, and of *Katharine*, the Wife of *Charles Emmanuel*, the late Duke of *Savoy*. Not to say any thing of the pretensions of the House of *Lorraine*, descending from the Lady *Claude*, the second Daughter of King *Henry II.* and Sister of *Isabel* or *Elizabeth*, Queen of Spain. Nor do we find, that the French so stand upon this Law, as not to think, that a Succession by and from the Females, is, in some cases, their best Title. For thus we read, That *Pepin* having thrust his Mother *Childeric* into a Monastery, to make good his Title to the Crown, (or some colour for it) derived his Pedigree from *Phylidola*, one of the Daughters of *Clovis I.* married to *Ansebert* the Grandfather of that *Ambulph*, who was the first Mayre of the Palace of *Pepin's* Family. As also, how *Hugh Capet*, putting aside *Charles of Lorraine*, the right Heir of this *Pepin*, to make his lawless Action the more seemingly lawful, drew his descent from some of the Heirs General of *Charles the Great*; his Mother *Adelaide*, being the Daughter of the Emperor *Henry I.* furnished the *Fowler*; who was the Son of *Ordo Duke of Saxony*, by *Luigardis*, the Daughter of the Emperor *Arnulph*, the last Emperor of the Romans (or Germans) of the House of *Charles*. And it is said of *Lewis IX.* so renowned for sanctity amongst them, That he never enjoyed the Crown with a quiet Conscience, till it was proved unto him, That by his Grandmother, the Lady *Isabel* of *Hainault*, he was descended from *Hermingrade*, the Daughter of *Charles of Lorraine*. Add here, that this supposed *Salique Law*, not only crosseth the received Laws of all Nations else, which admit of women to the succession in their Kingdoms, where the Crown descends in a succession; and have a great respect both unto their Persons and Posterities in such Kingdoms also where the Kings are said to be Elective, as in Poland, Hungary, and Bohemia; but that even France it self hath submitted to the Imperious Command of two Women of the *Medicee*; and at the present to the Government of a Spanish Princess. So that it is evident, that this Law, by whomsoever made, and how far forever it extended, is of no such force, but that the Labels of it may be easily cut in pieces by an English Sword well whetted, if there were no other bar to the Title of England than the Authority and Antiquity of the *Salique Law*.

But, for my part (if it be lawful for me to dispute this point) I am not satisfied in the right of the English Title; (supposing the *Salique Law* to be of no such force as the French pretended, and measuring the Succession in the Crown

Crown of France, to be according to successions in the Realm of England, on which King *Edward III.* seemed to ground his claim. For if there were no *Salique Law* to exclude succession by the females, as the English did pretend there was not: yet could not *Edward* coming from a Sister of the three last Kings, which reigned successively before *Philip of Valois*, against whom he claimed, be served in court, before the Daughters of those Kings (or the males at least descending of them) had their turns in the succession of that Kingdom. Of the three Brethren two left issue, viz. *Lewis* and *Philip*, *Lewis* surnamed *Hutten*, son of *Philip the Fair* and *Joan Queen of Navarre*, had a Daughter named *Joan*, married to *Philip Earl of Flanders*, who was King of *Navarre* in right of his Wife; from which marriage issued all the succeeding Kings of that Realm; the rights whereof are now in the House of *Burbon*, *Philip* the second Brother, surnamed the Long, by *Joan* the Daughter of *Obelin Earl of Burgundy*, had a daughter named *Marguerite*, married to *Lewis E. of Flanders*: from whom descended those great Princes of the race of *Burgundy*, the rights whereof are now in the House of Spain. If then there were no *Salique Law* to exclude the Women and their Sons, *Charles K. of Navarre* the son of *Q. Joan* and of *Philip de Evreux*, descended from *Lewis Hutten* the elder Brother, and *Lewis de Malarie* Earl of *Flanders* and *Burgundy*, the son of *Lewis E. of Flanders*, and of *Marguerite* the daughter of *Philip the Long*, the second Brother, must have precedence of title before King *Edward III.* of England, descending from a Sister of the said two Kings, their issue severally and respectively, before any claiming or defending from the said King *Edward*. So that *K. Edward III.* had some other claim than what is commonly alleged for him in our English Histories; or else he had no claim to that Crown at all: and I conceive, so wife a King would not have ventured on a business of so great consequence, without some colourable title; though what this title was is not declared, for I believe ought I know, by what writers of our Nation. I believe therefore, that he went upon some other grounds, than that of ordinary succession by the Law of England, and claimed that Crown, as the eldest heir-male and nearest Kinsman to the last King. For being Sisters Son to the King who deceased, he was a degree nearer to him than either the K. of *Navarre* or the E. of *Flanders*, who were the Grandchildren of his Brethren: and having priority of either in respect of age, had a fair title before either to the Crown of that Kingdom. And on these grounds *K. Edward* might the rather go, because he found it a ruled case, in the dispute about the succession in the Kingdom of Scotland. For though *K. Edward I.* measuring the order of succession by the Laws of England, and perhaps wilful of succession by the Laws of England, and perhaps wilful of adjudge the Crown to one who should hold it of King; gave sentence in behalf of *John Balliol*, the Grandchild of the eldest daughter of the E. of *Huntington*: yet was this sentence disavowed and protested against by the other Competitors. *Robert Bruce* son of the second daughter of the said Earl of *Huntington*, as a degree nearer to the last King, though descended from the younger Sister, who not only thought himself wronged in it, but had the whole Scottish Nation for him to assert his right: by whose unanimous consent his Son was called to the Government of the Realm of Scotland, during the life of *Balliol*, and his Patron both. Proximity in blood to the King deceased, was measured by nearness of degrees, not descent of birth, and on this Plea, though different from the Laws of England, as *Bruce* had formerly possessed himself of the Crown of Scotland; so on the same, though different from the Laws of *Castile*, did *Philip II.* ground his claim to the Crown of Portugal. For being eldest son of *Mary*, the Sister of *Henry* the last King (and this was just King

Edward's call: to the Crown of France) he thought himself to be preferred before the Prince of *Parma*, and the Duke of *Bragance*, descended from the daughters of *Edward* the said Kings Brother; because the eldest male of the Royal Blood, and nearer to the said *K. Henry* by one degree. In the pursuance of which title, as *Philip* openly avowed, that the Laws of Portugal were more favourable to him than the Laws of *Castile*: so in like case, the laws of France might be more favourable to *K. Edward*, than the Laws of England: In claims to Crowns, the Rules of Royal Succession differ in many Countries; and in few Countries are the same with that of the Succession into mean Estates; as may be proved by many particulars in the Realm of England, in which the Law of the Crown differeth very much from the Law of the Land; as in the case of *Parcours*, the whole blood, (as our Lawyers call it) the Tenure of courtfees and some others; were this a time and place fit for it. But to return again to France; Whether the *Salique Law* were in force or not, it made not much to the prejudice of *K. Edward III.* though it served *Philip the Long* to exclude the daughter of King *Lewis Hutten*, and *Charles the Fair* to do the like with the daughter of *Philip's*; as it did *Philip of Valois* to dispossess the whole Lineage of *K. Philip le Bel*.

Machiavel accounteth this *Salique Law* to be a great happiness to the French Nation, not so much in relation to the unfitness of Women to govern (for therein some of them have gone beyond most men) but because thereby by the Crown of France is not endangered to fall into the hands of Strangers. Such men consider not how great Dominions may by this means be incorporated to the Crown. They remember not how *Maud* the Empress being married to *Geoffrey Earl of Anjou*, *Toussain* and *Main*, conveyed those Countries to the Diadem of England, nor what rich and fertile Provinces were added to Spain, by the Match of the Lady *Joan* to Arch-Duke *Philip*: neither do they see those great advantages of power and strength which England now enjoyeth by the conjunction of Scotland, proceeding from a like marriage. Yet there is a saying in Spain, that as a man shall desire to live in Italy, because of the civility and ingenious natures of the People; and to die in Spain, because there the Catholic Religion is so sincerely professed: so he should wish to be born in France, because of the nobleness of that Nation, which never had any King but of their own Country.

The chief enemies to the French have been the English and Spaniards. The former had here great possessions, divers times plagued them, and took from them their Kingdom; but being called home by civil dissensions, lost all. At their departure, the French coolly asked an English Captain, When they would return? Who tellingly answered, When your sins be greater than ours. The Spaniards began, but of late with them, yet have they taken from them *Navarre*, *Naples* and *Milain*: they displaced them in *Florida*: poisoned the Dauphine of *Viennois*, (as it was generally conceived) murdered their Soldiers in cold blood, being taken prisoners in the life of *Tercera*; and by their Faction raised even in France it self, drove *Henry III.* out of Paris, and most of his other Cities; and at last caused him to be murdered by *Jaques Clement*, a Dominican Friar. The like they intended to his Successor *K. Henry IV.* whose coming to the Crown they opposed for their utmost power, and held a tedious War against him. Concerning which last War, when they rebelled with the Duke of *Mayenne*, and the rest of those Fiefs which called themselves the Holy League (of which the D. of *Guisse* was the Author) against the two Kings *Henry III.* and *IV.*, a French Gentleman made this excellent *Althosio*. For being asked the cause of these civil broils, he

he replied, they were *Spania* and *Mania*; seeming by this answer to signify *Spain*, penny, and *Maria*, fury; which are indeed the causes of all intestine tumults: but covertly therein implying the King of *Spain*, and the Duke of *Mayenne*: since which time the *French*, upon the turn of Fortune, (notwithstanding the cross Marriages between the Kings of both Kingdoms, and their several Sisters) have had as great a hand upon the *Spaniards*; outing them by their plots and practices of the whole Kingdom of *Portugal*, and the Country of *Catalogne* in the main Land of *Spain* it self, and of many of the best parts of *Artois*, *Hainault*, and other of the *Belgick* Provinces, by the force of Arms. So little conciliary there is, either in the favours of Fortune, or the affection of great Princes, that no wife man can trust the one, or depend safely on the other. For in the former times, as we read in *Cicero*, there were no Princes more friendly than these two, the Kings of *Castile* and *France*, being the nearest confederate Princes in *Christendom*. For their League was between King and King, Realm and Realm, Subject and Subject; which they were all bound under great curses to keep inviolable. But of late times, especially since the beginning of the Wars betwixt *Charles V.* and *Francis I.* for the Dukedom of *Millain*; there have not been greater animosities, nor more implacable enmities betwixt any Nations, than betwixt *France* and *Spain*. Which seconded by the mutual jealousies they have of each other, and the diversity of Contestations under which they live, hath produced such diffimilitude betwixt them in all their ways, that there is not greater contrariety of temper, carriage, and affections, betwixt any two Nations in the World, than is between these Neighbours, parted no otherwise from one another, than by passable Hills. First, in the *Actions of the Soul*, the one *Astive* and *Mercurial*, the other *Speculative* and *Saturnine*; the one fociable and discursive, the other reserved and full of thought; the one *open*, that you cannot hire him to keep a secret; the other *close*, that all the *Rhetorick* in the World cannot get it out of him. Next in their *Fashion* and *Apparel*, the *French* wears his hair long, the *Spaniard* short: the *French* goes thin and open to the very throat, as if there were continual Summer, the *Spaniard* to wrapt up and close, as if all were Winter; the *French* begins to button downward, and the *Spaniard* upward; the last always constant in his Fashion, the first intent to much on nothing as on new fancies of Apparel. Then for their *Gate*, the *French* walks fast, as if pursued on an *Arrest*, the *Spaniard* slowly, as if newly come out of a *Quarantain*; the *French* goes up and down in clusters, the *Spaniards* but by two and two at the most; the *French* *Laqueys* march in the *Rere*, and the *Spanish* always in the *Van*; the *French* sings and danceth as he walks the streets, the *Spaniard* in a grave and solemn posture, as if he were going a *Procession*. The like might be observed of their *Tune*, their *Speech*, and almost every passage in the life of man: for which I rather chuse to refer the Reader to the ingenious *James Howell's* Book of *Instructions for Travel*, than insist longer on it here. Only I add, that of the two so different humours, that of the *Spaniards* seems to be the more approvable. Inasmuch as the *Neapolitans*, *Millenois*, and *Sicilians*, who have had trial of both Nations, chuse rather to submit themselves to the proud and severe yoke of the *Spaniards*, than the lulls and infolencies of the *French*, not sufferable by men of even and well balanced spirits. And possible enough it is, that such of the *Netherlands*, as have of late been won to the Crown of *France*, will find little comfort in the change of their Matters; as may confirm the residue to the Crown of *Spain*, to which they naturally belong.

The chief Mountains of this Country, next to the Pyrenees which part *France* from *Spain*, the *Jura* or *Jura*, which separates it from *Savoy* and *Switzerland*; and the *Vange* or *Vogues*, which divides it from *Lorain*; are those which *Cæsar* calleth *Gabennâ*, *Pyromy* *Cimminy*, being the fame which separate *Auvergne* from *Languedoc*, called therefore the Mountains of *Auvergne*; the only ones of note which are peculiar to this Continent of *France*, which for the most part is plain and champain; the others before mentioned, being common unto this, with the bordering Provinces.

This Country is wonderfully stored with Rivers, the chief whereof, 1. *Saône* or *Seine*, which arising in *Burgundy*, watering the Cities of *Paris* and *Rouen*, and receiving into it nine navigable streams, disburdeneth it self into the *British* Ocean. 2. *Sonne*, in *Latine* called *Samona*, which rising near the Town of St. *Quentin*, first cutteth between *Picardy* and *Artois*, afterwards passeth through the fair City of *Amiens*, and the goodly Town of *Abbeville*, and finally having received eight lesser streams, loseth it self in the fame Sea also. 3. *Ligeris* or *Loyre*, on which are seated *Nantes*, and *Orleans*. It riseth about the Mountains of *Auvergne*, (being the greatest in *France*) and having run 600 miles, and augmented his Channel with the entertainment of 72 lesser Rivulets, mingling his sweet waters with the brackish *Aquitane* Ocean. 4. *Rhodanus*, or the *Rhône*, which springeth from the *Alpes*, three Dutch miles from the head of the *Rhône*, passeth by *Lions* and *Avignon*; and having taken in thirteen lesser Brooks, falleth into the *Mediterranean* Sea, not far from *Arles*. 5. The *Souane*, by the old *Latines* called *Araris*, which rising out of the Mountain of *Vogues* or *Vange*, in the borders of *Lorain* and *Alsatia*, divideth the two *Burgundies* from each other; and falleth into the *Rhône*, at the City of *Lions*. 6. *Garonna* or the *Garonne*, which issuing out of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, passing by *Toulouse* and *Bordeaux*, and having swallowed up sixteen lesser Rivers (of which the *Dordogne* is the chief) disburdeneth it self into the *Aquitane* Ocean, near the Town of *Blay*: that part hereof which is betwixt the main Ocean, and the influx of the River *Dordogne*, being called the *Garonne*. Of these it is said *Proverbially*, that the *Seine* is the richest, the *Rhône* the swiftest, the *Garonne* the greatest, and the *Loyre* the sweetest. And by these and many other Rivers this Kingdom is enriched with 34 excellent Havens, having all the properties of a good Harbour; that is to say, 1. Room, 2. Safety, 3. Easiness of defence, 4. Resort of Merchants.

As for so much of the Story hereof as concerneth the whole, it was first peopled, if we may give credit to *Annius*, (as I think we may not in this point) by *Samolus* the sixth Son of *Japhet* (assured by them, and such as adhere unto them, to be that Son of his, who in the Scripture is called *Meshech*) in the year of the world 1806. But those which are better conversant in the course of History have utterly laid aside this device of *Annius*. Even *Vindictus*, though a great *Berserker*, doth confess ingenuously, *Quia sic Samolus fuerit, incertum est*; that it is unresolved who this *Samolus* was. And *Vigener* a French Antiquary doth confess with *Fantinus*, *Mais un ne sçay point il étoit*, that nobody can tell us who he was. They who have better studied this point than *Annius*, derive the *Gauls* from *Gomer*, *Japhet's* eldest Son, whose offspring were first called *Gomerians*, afterwards *Cimmerians*, at last *Cimbri*: first planted (as before was said) in the Mountainous places of *Albania*, where the Mountains called *Cimmerii* long preserved his memory, and after changing that unfruitful and unpleasant dwelling for the Plains of *Phrygia*, wherein the City *Cimmeris* did retain somewhat of his name, in the times of *Pliny*. Afterwards his posterity

proceeded further in the lesser *Asia*, and in long tract of time filled *Germany*, *Gaul*, and *Britain*, with his numerous offshoots: the *Gauls* and *Cimbri* being clearly of the same Original, though known amongst the *Romans* by two different names. From whence they had the names of *Gauls*, and *Celtæ*, and *Galatæ*, hath been shewn before. It shall suffice us now to add, that being originally of the *Cimbri*, and having somewhat in them of the blood of *Hercules*; they proved a very valiant and warlike Nation, without whose love, no King could secure himself from eminent dangers. They were very sparing in their diet, and used to fine any one that outgrew his Girdle. With these men the *Romans* fought at first for their own preservation, rather than out of any hope by the conquest of them to improve either their Fame or their Dominions. Inasmuch that when they had invaded *Italy* with a numerous Army, in favour of the *Chalpine* *Gauls*, under the conduct of *Anerostrus* and *Comelanus*, two of their Kings, and pierced as far as *Tellamon* a City of *Tuscany*, the *Romans* thought they had done enough in discomfiting their Forces, and clearing their own Provinces of them; not holding it for a point of wisdom to pursue them, or invade their Country; though by the conquest of *Liguria*, but few years before, they had enlarged their Dominions to the borders of it. But to enumerate more particularly their great achievements in the Wars, these were they who under the conduct of *Belovius*, passing over the *Alpes*, conquered the nearest parts of *Italy*, called afterwards *Gallia Cisalpina*; and under that of *Segevius*, over-run all *Germany*, and following their successes as far as *Seybia*, founded the potent Nation of the *Celto-Seythe*. These were the men, whose issue under the command of *Brennus*, discomfited the *Romans*, at the River *Alia*; sacked the City, and besieged the Capitol, *An. M. 3577. U.C. 365*. In which action they so terrified the *Romans*, that after their expulsion from *Rome* by *Camillus*, there was a Law made, that the Priests, though at all other times exempted from Military employments, should be compelled to the War, if ever the *Gauls* came again. And finally, these were the men, who under the command of *Belgicus*, and another *Brennus*, sacked *Illyricum*, *Pannonia*, *Thrace*, and *Greece*, in which they spoiled and plundered the Temple of *Delphe*; for which Sacrilege they were visited with the Pestilence. Such as survived this Plague, went into *Asia*, and there gave name to that Country now called *Gallatia*, of whom thus *Dubartus*:

The ancient *Gaul* in roving every way,
As far as *Pæbus* darts his Golden Ray;
Seiz'd *Italy*; the World's proud Mitres fact,
Then spoils *Pysidia*, *Myfia* doth enthrall.
And midst of *Asia* plants another *Gaul*.

Yet at last the *Romans* undertook the War, but not till they had conquered almost all the residue of the (then known) World. Attempting first by *Fulvius Flaccus*, a Roman Consul, called in by the *Massiliens* to assist them against the *Salli* their unquiet Neighbours, *A.U.C. 628*, that part hereof which afterwards was called *Narbonensis*, being brought into the form of a Roman Province at the conclusion of the War against the *Allobroges* and *Arverni*, (undertaken on the like complaint of the *Hedui*) about five years after. Not totally subdued until the time of *Julius Cæsar*, and not easily then. For though the War was managed then by the ablest Captain that ever the State of *Rome* gave life to; yet was it not more easily vanquished by the valour and fortune of the *Romans*, than by want of good intelligence and correspondence amongst themselves. Nor did they fell their liberty to

good cheap, as those other Nations, with whom the *Romans* had to deal: *Cæsar* himself affirming, That he had slain 1192000 of them before they would submit to the Roman yoke. But at the last they were brought under the power of *Rome*, by whom the whole Country was divided into these four parts, viz. 1. *Narbonensis*, called so from the City of *Narbon*, which a Roman Colony, containing *Languedoc*, *Provence*, *Dauphine* and some part of *Savoy*, called also *Braccata* at the first conquest by the *Romans*, from the usual habit of the people (resembling the Mantles used by the Wild Tribes) called in *Latine*, *Bræce*; attempted first by *Fulvius Flaccus*, in his War against the *Salli*, as before is said; and finally subdued, *A.U.C. 633*; by *Pubius Maximus* and *Cn. Domitius Ahenobarbus*, in their War against the *Allobroges*, and their Confederates, before mentioned, about 70 years before the coming in of *Julius Cæsar*. 2. *Aquitania*, so called from the City of *Aque Augustæ*, now *D'Acq*, in *Guienne*; lying upon the Pyrenees, and the wide Ocean, which comprehended the Provinces of *Gascogne*, *Guicene*, *Xaintonge*, *Limousin*, *Quercy*, *Perigord*, *Berry*, *Bourbonnois*, and *Auvergne*; extending from the Pyrenees to the River *Loyre*, and consequently stretching over all the middle of *Gaul*. 3. *Celtica*, so named from the valiant Nation of the *Celtæ*; called also *Lyngdunensis*, from the City of *Lions*; and *Comata* from the long hair worn amongst this people, extending from the *Loyre* to the *British* Ocean, and comprehending the Provinces of *Bretagne*, *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Touren*, *Main*, *Le Beouffe*, the Isle of *France*, part of *Champagne*, the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and the County of *Lyonnois*. 4. *Belgica*, from the *Belgæ*, a potent Nation of that Tract, taking up all the East parts of *Gaul*, viz. *Picardy*, the rest of *Champagne*, the County of *Burgundy*, together with so much of *Germany* and the *Netherlands*, as lieth on this side of the *Rhône*, belonging now unto the Empire and the Kings of *Spain*. In the new modelling of the Empire by *Constantine* the Great, *Gaul* was appointed for the seat of one of the four *Præfidi* *Pretorio*, designed the four Quarters of it. His Title *Præfidi* *Pretorio* *Galliarum*; his Government extending over the Dioceses of *Gaul*, *Spain* and *Britain*: this Diocese of *Gaul* being cut into seventeen Provinces; that is to say, 1. *Lyngdunensis* *Prima*, 2. *Secunda*, 3. *Tertia*, 4. *Quarta*, 5. *Belgica* *Prima*, 6. *Secunda*, 7. *Germania* *Prima*, 8. *Secunda*, 9. *Narbonensis* *Prima*, 10. *Secunda*, 11. *Aquitania* *Prima*, 12. *Secunda*, 13. *Novempopulana*, 14. *Vienne* *Prima*, 15. *Maxima Sequanorum*, 16. *Alpes Graia* & *Pennine*, 17. *Alpes Maritime*. Of these seventeen *Germania* *Prima* & *Secunda*, all *Belgica* *Prima*, and a great part of *Secunda*, all that of the *Alpes Graia* & *Pennine*, and so much of *Maxima Sequanorum*, as lieth in *Switzerland*; are now dismembered from the name and account of *France*. What principal Nations of the *Gauls*, and what Provinces of the present *France*, the rest contained, shall be declared in our Survey of the particulars.

But long it flood not in this fate: for within sixty years after the death of *Constantine*, during the Reigns of *Honorius* and *Theodosius*, the *Burgundians*, a great and populous Nation, were called in by *Silico*, Lieutenant to *Honorius* the Western Emperor, to keep the borders of the Empire against the *French*: then ready with some other of the Barbarous Nations to invade the same. The *Goths* not long after by agreement with the same *Honorius*, leaving their hold in *Italy*, were vested in *Gaul* *Narbonensis*, by the gift of that Emperor; with a good part of *Tarracensis*, one of the Provinces of *Spain*: *Aquitain* being after added, in regard of the service they had done the Empire, in driving the *Alani* out of *Spain*, then likely to have made a great impression on that Country. And in the reign of *Valentinian* the third, the *French* who had long

hovered on the banks of the *Rhene*, taking advantage of the distractions of the Empire, ventured over the River; first made themselves Masters of *Gaul-Belgick*; and after, spread themselves over all the rest of the Provinces which had not been subdued by the *Goths* and *Burgundians*; excepting a small corner of *Armorica*, then possessed by the *Britains*. So that the Romans being out of all the Country, it was divided between the Nations above mentioned, and that with more equality than could be imagined: The *Goths* possessing all *Aquitain*, and *Narbonensis*, containing now the Provinces of *Provence*, *Languedoc*, *Gasconie*, *Guienne*, *Xaintonge*, *Poitou*, *Berry*, *Limousin*, *Perigord*, *Quercy* and *Auvergne*; the *Burgundians* having for their share, the *Alpine* Provinces, together with *Nivernois*, *Bourbon*, *Beau-Jolois*, *Forrest*, the Countries of *Lyons*, *La Bresse*, *Dauphine*, and both the *Burgundies*, from them so denominated. The rest (except that part thereof which we now call *Bretagne*) was possessed by the *French*, who in short time repulsed the *Vijigoths*, or *Waltens-Goths*, (then busy in the Conquest of *Spain*) out of all the Provinces of the *Roman Aquitain*, by the Valour of *Clouis* the Great, their first Christian King, before they could challenge a Prefcription of 60 years. Nor was it long, before *Provence* also was resigned to *Theodorick* the *French* King of *Metz* by *Amalasinda*, Queen of the *Ofstro-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*; nothing being left unto that Nation, of all their *Gallick* Conquests, but *Languedoc* only. In which respect, the *Gothish* Provinces of *Gaul*, (except *Provence* only) together with so much of the *Burgundia*'s which was after laid to *West-France*, shall pass in the account of the *French* part of this Country; the rest of the *Burgundian* Conquests which lie within the bounds of the Modern *France*, (having *Provence* added to them) shall be considered by themselves in the description and affairs of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, a distinct Realm from that of *France*, and not reduced but by peace-meal, and by several Titles, (and yet not wholly so neither) to the Crown thereof. Finally, of the *French* themselves, and the succession of their Kings, we will speak at last, when we have brought all the chief parts and Provinces of this flourishing Country into their possession. The principal Provinces are, 1. *France*, specially so called, 2. *Champagna*, 3. *Picardy*, 4. *Normandy*, 5. *Bretagne*, 6. The Estates of *Anjou*, with its members, 7. *La Beaulle*, 8. *Nivernois*, 9. The Dukedom of *Bourbon*, with the Provinces dependent on it; being all (excepting *Bretagne*) the firsts acquets of the *French*. Then following the chief Provinces of the *Gothish* Kingdom, that is to say, 10. *Berry*, 11. *Poitou*, 12. *Limousin*, 13. *Perigord*, and 14. *Quercy*, 15. *Aquitain*, with the members of it; and 16. *Languedoc*: and last of all, the *Burgundian* Kingdom, of which there now remain in *France*, the Countries of 17. *Provence*, 18. *Dauphine*, 19. *La Bresse*, 20. *Lionni*, 21. The *Duchy*, 22. the County of *Burgundy*, 23. The Islands of the *Aquitain*, and *Gallick* Ocean, in the clofe of all. Of some of which, *La Nore*, a *French* Author, hath passed this sentence: The men of *Berry*, are Leachers: they of *Touren*, Thieves; they of *Languedoc*, Traytors; they of *Provence*, Atheists; they of *Rouen*, (or *Champagne*) superstitious; they of *Normandy*, insolent; they of *Picardy*, proud; & sic de ceteris. But here we are to understand that all these Provinces (though passing by the name and account of *France*) are not under the Command of the *French* King; the Isles of *Jersey* and *Guernsey*, being possessed by the *English* the Counties of *Burgundy* and *Charolois*, by the King of *Spain*; the *Duchy* of *Bar*, belonging to the Dukes of *Lorain*; the Principality of *Orange*, to the House of *Nassau*; and *Avignon*, to the Popes of

Rome. And on the other side, the *French* Kings are possessed of some Towns and Cities, not lying within the bounds of *France*, as the Imperial Cities of *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*; lying within the Dukedom of *Lorain*, the Fort and Pass of *Figuerolle*, in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, and the Port of *Mouche*, in *Liguria*; *Basse Navarre*, in *Spain*; not to say any thing of their late acquets in *Spain* and *Flanders*, which I look not on as parts of the *French* Dominions.

FRANCE, especially so called.

THE first place which the *Franks* or *French* had for their first Habitation was by that People honoured with the name of *FRANCE*; the first green Turf of *Gallick* ground, by which they took *livery* and seisin of all the rest. A Province now bounded on the East, with *Champagna*; on the North, with *Normandy*; on the West and South, with *La Beaulle*. To difference it from the main Continent of *France*, it is called the *Isle of France*, as being circled almost round with several Rivers; that is to say, the *Oise* on the North, the *Eure* on the West, the *Velle* on the East, and a Vein-reveret of the *Seine*, towards the South. A Country not so large as many of the *French* Provinces; but such as hath given name unto all the rest; it being the Fate of many small, but puissant Provinces, to give their names to others which are greater than they, if conquered and brought under by them. For, thus we see the little Province of *Poland*, to have mastered and given name to the *Mazovii*, *Pruteni*, and other Nations of *Sarmatia Europea*, as that of *Mosco*, to the Province of *Asiatica*. And thus have those of *Sweden* conquered and denominated almost the great *Penninsula* of *Scandia*, whereof it is one of the smallest Provinces. And thus this Island being the Seat-Royal of the *French* in *Gallia*, gave name to all the residue of it, as they made it theirs. A Country generally so fruitful and delectable, (except in *Gastinois*) that the very Hills thereof are equal to the Valleys in most places of *Europe*: but the Vale of *Montmorency* (wherein *Paris* standeth) scarce is to be followed in the World. An argument whereof may be, that when the Dukes of *Berry*, *Burgundy*, and their Confederates, besieged that City with an Army of 100000 men, neither the Assaults without, nor the Citizens within, found any facility of Victuals; and yet the Citizens, besides Souldiers, were reckoned at 500000.

It was formerly part of the Province of *Belgica Secunda*, & *Lugdunensis quarta*; the chief Inhabitants thereof being the *Parisii*, the *Bellocaci*, and the *Silvanctii*: and is now divided into four parts, that is to say, the Dukedom of *Valois*, 2. *Gastinois*, 3. *Heurepoix*, and that which is properly called the *Isle of France*; by some, the *Provinc*, or County of *Paris*.

1. Dukedom or County of *VALOIS*, lieth under *Picardy*: the principal Cities of it, 1. *Senlis*, (in *Latine*, *Silvanctium*) a Bishops See. 2. *Compeigne*, (Compendium) seated on the River *Oise*, a retiring place of the *French* Kings for hunting, and other Country pleasures. 3. *Beauvais* the chief City of the *Bellocaci*, by *Ptolomy* called *Cesaromagus*; a fair, large, well-traded Town, from which the Country round about hath the name of *Beauvaisin*. The Patrimony, in former times, of *Roger*, the third Son of *Theobald*, the second Earl of *Blair*, and younger Brother of *Oden*, the first Earl of *Champagne*, who enjoyed it with the Title of Earl of *Beauvais*:

vois and at his death, gave it for ever to the Bishops hereof: for anciently, this City was a See Episcopall; the Bishop whereof is one of the Twelve Peers of *France*. *Philip*, one of the Bishops here in times succeeding, a Military man, and one that had much damaged the *English* Borders, was fortunately taken by King *Richard I.* The Pope being made acquainted with his Imprisonment, but not the cause of it, wrote in his behalf unto the King, as for an Ecclesiastical person, and one of his beloved Sons. The King returned unto the Pope the Armour in which the Bishop was taken in, and these words engraven on the same, *Vide an hec sit tunica filii tui, vel non*; being the words which *Jacobs* Children speak to him, when they presented him with the Coat of their Brother *Joseph*, which the Pope viewing, swore, that it was rather the Coat of a Son of *Mars*, than a Son of the Church: and so left him wholly to the Kings pleasure. 4. *Clermont*, a Town of good note in the County of *Beauvoisin*, memorable for giving the Title of Earl of *Clermont*, to Robert the fifth Son of the King, *St. Lewis*, before his marriage with the Daughter and Heir of *Bourbon*: afterwards, to the eldest Sons of that Princely Family: and finally, to *Catharine de Medicis*, created Countess of *Clermont* and *Boulogne*, at her marriage with *Henry Duke of Orleans*, Successor to King *Francis I.* in the Realm of *France*. 5. *Luzarch*, a Town belonging to the Count of *Soissons*. 6. *Brennaville*, 7. *St. Leger*, on the confines of *Picardy*, so called from a Monastery dedicated to *St. Leger*, Bishop of *Troy* in *Champagne*, sent into *Britain* with *St. Germanus*, to suppress the *Pelagian* Heresies, which were there beginning. But of this part of *France*, nothing more observable, than that it gave denomination to the Royal Family of the *French* Kings, (thirteen in number) from hence entitled of *Valois*: beginning in *Philip de Valois*. Anno 1328, and ending in *Henry III.* Anno 1589. As for the Earls hereof, (from whom that adjunct or denomination had its first Original) the first who had the Title of Earl of *Valois*, was *Charles*, the second Son of *Philip III.* in right of his Wife: Earl of *Anjou* also: after whose death, it descended upon *Philip de Valois*, his eldest Son, who carried the Crown of *France* from *Edward III.* On his assuming of the Crown, it fell to *Lewis* his second Brother; and he deceasing without Issue, Anno 1391. to *Lewis Duke of Orleans*, Son of *Charles V.* amongst the Titles of which House, it lay dormant, till the expiring of that Line in King *Lewis XII.* and lately given unto the *Monsieur*, or Duke of *Orleans*, Brother to *Lewis XIII.* and Uncle to King *Lewis XIV.* now reigning, upon the first reconciliation made between him and his Brother: adding thereby to his Estate, no less than 10000 pounds sterling of yearly Rents, which make up 100000 *Frank* or *Livres*, in the *French* account. I only add, that *Charles*, the first Earl of this Family, as he was the Son of *Philip III.* Brother of *Philip IV.* surnamed the *Fair*; and Father of *Philip de Valois*: so was he Uncle to *Lewis Hutin*; *Philip the Long* and *Charles the Fair*, all in their order Kings of *France*. In which regard it was said of him, That he was the Son, Brother, Father, and Uncle of Kings: yet no King himself.

2. The second part of this Province, is called *HEUREPOIX*; beginning at the little Bridge of *Paris*, on the River of *Seine*, and going up along the River, as far as the River of *Verme*; which divides it from *Gastinois*. The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Charenton*, three Miles from *Paris*, where the *French* Protestants of that City, have their Church for religious exercises, it being not permitted them to hold their Assemblies in any Walled

Cities, or Garrison Towns, for fear of any sudden surprize, which to great a multitude might easily make: Which Church (or Temple, as they call it) being burnt down by the hot-headed *Parlians*, on the news of the Duke of *Mayenne* death; slain at the Siege of *Montauban*, Anno 1622. was presently re-edified by the command of the Duke of *Montbassin*, then Governour of the *Isle of France*, at the charge of the State: to let those of the Reformed Party understand that it was their *Disobedience*, and not the Religion, which caused the King to Arm against them. 2. *Corbeil*, seated on the confluence of *Seine* and *Effrons*. 3. *Mort*, which gives the title of an Earl to one of the natural Sons of *Henry IV.* begotten on the Daughter and Heir of the former Earl. 4. *Meln*, by *Cesar* called *Molodunum*, the principal of this *Heurepoix*, and the seat of the *Ballif* for this Tract. Here is also in this part the Royal Palace of *Fontainbleau*, so called from the many fair Springs and Fountains amongst which it standeth; but otherwise seated in a solitary and woody Country, fit for Hunting only; and for that cause much visited by the *French* Kings in their times of leisure; and beautified with so much cost by King *Henry IV.* that it is absolutely the fairest and most magnificent Pile of Building in all *France*.

3. *GASTINOIS*, the most dry and barren part of this Province, but rich enough, if compared with other places; lieth between *Paris*, and the Country of *Orleans*. The chief places of it are, 1. *Etampes*, in the middle way betwixt *Paris* and *Orleans*, on the very edge of it, towards *La Beaulle*, a fair large Town, having in it five Churches, and one of them a Colledge of *Chanoins*, with the ruins of an ancient Castle; which together with the Walls and demolished Fortifications of it, shew it to have been of great importance in the former times. Given, with the Title of an Earl, by *Charles Duke of Orleans*, then Lord hereof, to *Richard*, the third Son of *John of Montford*, Duke of *Bretagne*, in marriage with his Sister the Lady *Marguerette*; from which Marriage issued *Francis* Earl of *Etampes*, the last Duke of *Bretagne*. 2. *Montleberry*, famous for the battle betwixt King *Lewis XI.* and *Charles* Earl of *Charolois*, (after Duke of *Burgundy*) in which both sides ran out of the field, and each proclaimed it self the Victor. It standeth in the road betwixt *Paris* and *Etampes*. And so doth, 3. *Catres*, of the biggness of an ordinary Market-Town; not to be mentioned in this place, but for a Chamber or Branch of the Court of *Parliament*, here seated by King *Henry IV.* for the use and benefit of his Subjects of the Reformed Religion; in *Latine* called *Camera Castellensis*. 4. *Nemours*, upon the River of *Loyre*, the chief of *Gastinois* in name, but not in beauty, (wherein inferior to *Etampes*) a Town which hath given the Title of Duke to many eminent persons of *France*. Here is also in this part, the County of *Rochoy*, and the Towns of 1. *Milly*, 2. *Montargis*, &c. More their occurrence not worth the noting, in this part of the Country, but that being part of the possessions of *Hugh* the Great Constable of *France*, and Earl of *Paris*. It was given by him, together with the Earldom of *Anjou*, to *Geo. Grey*, surnamed *Griffynelle*, a right noble Warrior, and a great stickler in behalf of the House of *Anjou*, then aiming at the Crown it self, which at last they carried. Continued in his Line till the time of *Fulk II.* (the fifth Earl of *Anjou* of this Family) who gave it back again to King *Philip I.* that by his help he might possess himself of the Earldom of *Normandy*, from his part where-in he was excluded by his elder Brother. Never since that, dissembred from the Crown of *France*, in fact or Title.

4. But the great glory of this Province, is that which is more properly called the ISLE OF FRANCE, and sometimes *l'île de France*, the Isle, caused by the Circles and embracements of the Rivers of *Sein*, and *Marn*; the abstract of the whole Beauties and Glories of France, which in this rich and pleasant Valley are summed up together.

Chief places in it, 1. *S. German*, seated on the ascent of an Hill seven miles from *Paris*, down the water; a pretty neat and handfom Town, honoured with one of the fairest Palaces of the French Kings; which being built (like *Windfor*) on the top of a fine Mountaine, on the Rivers side; affordeth an excellent Prospect over all the Country. The excellent Water-works herein, have been described on occasion of those of *Tivoli*, a Town of the Popes in *Campagna di Roma*, so much extolled by the *Italians*. It was first built by *Charles V.* furnished the *Wife*; beautified by the *English* when they were possessed of this Country; but finally, re-edified and enlarged by King *Henry IV.* who brought it into that Magnificence in which now we see it. It took name from *St. German*, Bishop of *Auxerre*, Companion with *St. Lupus* before mentioned, in the *British* Journey against *Pelagius*. 2. *Poissy*, upon the same River, or rather on the confluence of it, and the *Marn* which falleth into the *Sein*; situate not far from *St. Germain*; a Bailiwick belonging to the *Provost* of *Paris*, and one of his seven Daughters, as they use to call them. 3. *Chantilly*, the chief seat of the *Dukes of Montmorency*, the ancientest and most noble Family of all *Christendom*, whose Ancestors were the first fruits of the *Gospel* in this part of *Gaul*, and used to stile themselves, *Les premiers Chrétiens, & plus vieilles Barons de France*, i.e. The first *Christians*, and most ancient Barons of France. A Family that hath yielded unto *France* more *Admirals*, *Constables*, *Marshals* and other like Officers of Power, than any three in all the Kingdoms; now most unhappily extinct in the person of the late Cardinal of *Richenien*, for King with the *Manfieur* (now Duke of *Orleans*) against King *Lewis XIII.* his Brother. The Arms of which illustrious and most noble Family, (for I cannot let it pass without this honour) were *Or*, a Cross *Gules*, cantoned with sixteen *Allerions Azure*, four in every *Cantra*. What these *Allerions* are, we shall see in *Lorraine*: take we notice now, that from the great possessions which this Noble Family had in all this Tract, it was and is still called the *Vale of Montmorency*. 4. *S. Denis*, some three miles from *Paris*, so called of a Monastery built here by *Dagobert*, King of *France*, about the year 640, in memory of *St. Denis*, or *Dionys*, the first Bishop of *Paris*, martyred (on *Mont-martyr*, an Hill adjoining) in the time of *Domitian*. Some of the French Kings, because it lay so near to *Paris*, bestowed a Wall upon the Town, now not defensible; no otherwise of any consideration, but for a very fair Abby of *Benedictines* and therein the Sepulchres of many of the French Kings and Princes: neither for Workmanship nor Cost, able to hold comparison with those at *Westminster*. But being the Sepulture of their Kings, the French men use to say facetiously, that to this place none of their Kings do ever go with a good will. In this Town also is the Church of *St. Maclon*, where the Kings, with a Fast of nine Days, and other Penances, use to receive the famous Gift of healing the King's Evil, with nothing but a Touch: a Privilege enjoyed only by those Kings, and the Kings of *England*. 5. *St. Cloud*, (or the Town of *St. Claudus*) unfortunately memorable for the Murder of King *Henry III.* who lying here at a Siege of *Paris*, from whence he was

compelled to flee by the *Guisan* Faction, was wretchedly assassinated by *Jacques Clement*, a Monk employed in that service by the Heads of the *Holy League*. 6. *P. A. R. I. S.*, the chief City, not of this Isle alone; but of all the Kingdom. By *Cæsar*, and *Ammianus Marcellinus* called *Civitas Parisiorum*, from the *Parisian*; a Nation of *Gaul* called *Celick*, whose chief City it was; by *Strabo* called *Luettia*, *Luettisia*, by *Ptolemy*, *quædam Luettis*, as some conjecture from the distinct of the soil in which it standeth. A soil so dirty, (as commonly all rich Countries are) that though the Streets hereof are paved, (which they affirm to be the work of King *Philip Augustus*) yet every little dash of rain, makes them very slippery; and worse than oil, yields an ill favour to the Nolz. The Proverb is, *Il déshait comme la fange de Paris*. It stinketh like the dirt of *Paris*; but the Author of the Proverb might have changed the word, and turned it to *Il pout*, &c., It stinketh like the dirt of *Paris*: no link being more offensive than those streets in Summer. It is in compass about eight miles, of an Orbicular form, pleasantly seated on the divisions of the *Sein*: a fair, large, and capacious City, but far short of the brags which the French make of it. It was thought in the time of King *Lewis XI.* to contain 500000 people of all sorts and ages; which must be the least: the same King at the entertainment of the *Spanish* Embassadors, shewing 140000 of this City in Arms, all in a Liver of red Calicoes, with white Crosses. A gallant sight, though possibly the one half of them were not fit for service: the *Parisians* being for the most part an effeminate people, wanton enough, and apt to mutiny upon all occasions; but little addicted to the Wars, as appears plainly by their suffering King *Henry IV.* to hold *St. Denis* so long against them, with no considerable Garrison, and by that means to thrust them up from all relief on that side of their City. And yet their multitudes, which since the time of that King, must needs be very much increased, are the chief strength of the Town; the Fortifications being weak, and of ill assurance: inasmuch that when once a *Parisian* bragged, that their Town was never taken by force; an *English* man returned this Answer, That it was, because on the least distress it did use to capitulate. It is seated (as before was said) on the River *Sein*, which serveth it with Boats and Barges, (as the *Thames* Westward doth *London*) the River cobling and flowing no higher than *Pont de l'Arche*, 75 miles distant from the City.

We may divide it into four parts; The Town; the City, the University, and the Suburbs. *La Ville*, or that part of it which is called *The Town*, is situate on the North side of the River; the biggest, but poorest part of the Four; inhabited by Artizans and Tradesmen of the meaner sort. In this part are the *Hôtel de Ville*, or the *Guilde-Hall*, for the use of the Citizens; the *Arsenal*, or Armory, for the use of the King; and that Magnificent Building called the *Place-Royal*, new built and beautified at the charges of King *Henry IV.* for Tilts and Tournaments, and such Solemnities of State. And in this also, near the banks of the River stands the Kings Palace of the *Louvre*; a place of more Fame than Beauty; and nothing answerable to the report which goes commonly of it. A Building of no elegance or uniformity; nor otherwise remarkable, but for the vast Gallery begun by King *Henry IV.* and the fine Gardens of the *Tuileries* adjoining to it. The City is that part of it which takes up the Circumference of a little Island, made by the embracements of the *Sein*; joynted to the other parts on both sides, by several Bridges. The *Paris* or *Luettia* of the old *Gauls*,

was no more than this, the Town on the one side, and the University on the other, being added since. This is the richest part, and best built of the whole *Comptium*. And herein stand the Palace, or Courts of Parliament; the Chapel of the *Holy Ghost*; and the Church of *Notre-Dame*, being the Cathedral; of ancient times a Bishops See, but of late raised unto the dignity of a Metropolis. On the South-side of the River lieth that part which is called the University, from an University here founded by *Charles the Great*, *An. 792*, at the perswasion of *Alcuin* an *English* man; the Scholar of *Venerable Bede*, and the first Professor of Divinity here. It consisteth of 52 Colleges or places for study, whereof 40 are of little use; and in the rest, the Students live at their own charges, as in the Halls at *Oxon*, or Inns of Court, or Chancery at *London*; there being no Endowment laid unto any of them, except the *Sorbonne*, and the College of *Navarre*. Which possibly may be the reason why the Scholars here are generally so debauched and insolent: a ruder rabble than the which are hardly to be found in the *Christian* world. Sensible of this mischief, and the cause thereof, *Francis I.* whom the French call the Father of the *Muses*, at the perswasion of *Reuchlin* and *Budeus*, those great reformers of the *Greek*, and *Hebrew* Languages, intended to have built a College for 600 Students, and therein to have placed Professors for all Arts and Sciences, endowing it with 50000 Crowns of yearly Revenue, for their constant maintenance. But it went no further than the purpose; prevented by the inevitable stroke of death, from pursuance of it. In bigness this is little inferior to the Town of *Vile*, and not superior to it for wealth and beauty; few men of any wealth and credit, affecting to inhabit in a place of little Government. The fourth and last part is the Suburbs, or the *Faux-bourgs*, as the French call them; the principal whereof is that of *St. Germain*, (so called from an ancient Abbot of that name) the best part of the whole Body of *Paris*, for large Streets, sweet Air, choice of the best company, magnificent Houses, pleasant Gardens, and finally, for all those Contentments which are wanting commonly in the throngs of most populous Cities.

Here are also in this Isle, the royal House of *Madrid*, a retiring-place of the Kings, built by King *Francis I.* at his return from his imprisonment in *Spain*. 2. *Rueil*, a sweet Country-house of the late Queen-Mother. And, 3. *Bois de Vincennes*, remarkable for the untimely death of our *Henry V.* I add this only, and so end; That this Isle hath always followed the Fortune of the *Crown*; *France* never dismembred from the Sovereignty of the same, though sometimes out of the possession of the French Kings; as when the *English* kept it against *Charles VII.* and the *League* against *Henry IV.* A thing which hardly can be said of any other of the Provinces of this flourishing Country; the French Kings of the Race of *Mercurie*, and *Charles the Great*, alienating from the *Crown*, many goodly Territories, contented only with a bare and titular Honour from them. By means whereof, more than three parts of the whole Kingdom was shared first amongst the great Princes of the French; which afterwards, by inter-marriages, and other titles, fell into the hands of strangers; most of them enemies of this *Crown*, and jealous of the Grandeur and Power thereof. Which kept the French Kings generally very low and poor, till by Arms, Confiscations, Marriages, and such other means, they reduced all these *Rivalets* to their first and original Channel; as shall be shewn in the pursuance of this Work.

2. CHAMPAGNE.

CHAMPAGNE is bounded on the North, with *Picardy*; on the South, with the Dukedom of *Burgundy*; on the East, with *Lorraine*; on the West, with *France* specially so called.

The Country, for the most part, very plain, and pleasant, (whence it had the name) adorned with thady Woods, and delectable Meadows, fruitful in Corn, and not deficient in Wines. The Seat, in elder times, of the *Tricassers*, *Catalauni*, *Remi*, the *Ligones*, and *Senones*, (of which last Tribe or Nation, were those *Cisalpine Gauls* who sacked *Rome* under the Conduct of *Brennus*) part of them *Celts*, and part *Belgians*; and so accordingly disposed of the *Belgians*, unto the Province of *Belgica Secunda*, the Metropolis whereof was *Rhemus*: the *Celts* unto *Lugdunensis quarta*, of which the Metropolis was *Senis*; both Cities seated in this Country. The chief Rivers of it, 1. *Blaise*, 2. *Marn*, 3. *Yonne*. 4. *Sault*.

Chief places of that part herof which belonged to *Belgica Secunda*, or the Province of *Rhemus*, are 1. *Chalon*, on the River *Marn*, an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Arch-bishop of *Rhemus*; called anciently, *Civitas Catalaunorum*. 2. *Jainville*, situate on the same River, belonging to the House of *Guise*; the eldest Son of which Family, is called Prince of *Jainville*: in the Castle whereof, seated upon an high and inaccessible Hill, is to be seen the Tomb of *Claude*, the first Duke of *Guise*; the richest Monument of that kind, in all *France*. The Barony of *William Lord Jainville*, third Son of *Eustace*, Earl of *Boulogne*, and of *Ida* his Wife, who brought the Dukedom of *Bouillon* for her Dowry or Portion; and Brother of *Godfrey* and *Baldwin*, Dukes of *Lorraine*, and Kings of *Jerryusalem*. But whether it came to him by the gift of his Mother, as part of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, or that he had it by his Wife, a daughter of *Theobald Earl of Champagne*, I am not able to determine. Left by him after his decease, to *Godfrey* his youngest Son (*Thierry* his eldest Son, succeeding his Uncle *Baldwin* in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*) upon the failure of whose Line it fell unto the Duke of *Lorraine*, as next Heirs thereof, and so unto the Dukes of *Guise*, as descended from them. 3. *St. Urban*, a Town of the Territory of *Jainville*, from which it is about two Leagues distance. 4. *Pierre-Fort*, defended with a Castle of so great strength, that in the Civil Wars of *France*, *An. 1614*, it endured a 110 foot long of Cannon, and yet was not taken. 5. *Vassy*, upon the River *Blaise*; a Town of as sweet a situation, as most in *France*. The last situate in that part of *Champagne* which is called *Vallee*: so named, as I conceive, from the Rivers *Vasse*, 6. *Vitry*, upon the confluence of the *Sault* and *Marn*, the chief Town and Ballage of that part which is named *Parthois* (*Agger Pertensis* in the *Latine* is) also called of *Perte*, another Town thereof, but now not so eminent. 8. *Chaumont*, upon the *Marn*; the chief Town of *Bassigni*, and strengthened with a Castle mounted on a craggy Rock, or *Deuion*, or *St. Desier*, (*Fannum Sancti Desiderii*) royally fortified after he had been ruined, *An. 1544*. 10. *Rhemus*, (*Durocornum Rhebennum*) an Archbishops See, who is one of the Twelve Peers of *France*, situate on the River of *Vasse*. At this City, the Kings of *France* are most commonly crowned, that so they may enjoy the Union of a sacred Oyl, kept in the Cathedral Church hereof; which, as they say, came down from Heaven and never decreaseth. How true this is, may be easily seen in that *Gregory of Tours*, who is so prodigal of his Miracles, makes no mention of it, but specially

(for *Argumentum ab auctoritate negative parum valet*) since the Legend informeth us, that this Holy Oyl was sent from Heaven at the anointing of *Clouis*, the first Christian King of the French. Whereas *Du Haillan*, one of their most judicious Writers, affirmeth *Pepin*, the Father of *Charles* the Great, to have been their first anointed King; and that there was none of *la premiere lignee ointe*, *ny sacre* à *Rhemes*, *ny ailleurs*, none of the first or *Mérovigian* line of Kings had been anointed at *Rhemes* or elsewhere. But sure it is, let it be true or false, no matter that the French do wonderfully reverence this (their sacred) Oyl; and fetch it with great solemnity from the Church in which it is kept. For it is brought by the *Prior*, sitting on a white ambling Palfrey, and attended by his whole Convent: the Archbishop hereof, (who by his place is to perform the Ceremonies of the Coronation) and such Bishops as are present, going to the Church-doors to meet it, and leaving for it with the *Prior*, some competent Pawn; and on the other side, the King, when it is brought unto the Altar, bowing himself before it with great humility. But to return to the Town; it took this name from the *Rheni*, once a potent Nation of these parts, whose chief City it was, and now an University of no small esteem: in which among other Colleges, there is one appointed for the education of young English Fugitives. The first Seminary for which purpose, (I note this only by the way) was erected at *Dumay*, An. 1568. A second at *Rome* by Pope Gregory XIII. A third at *Valladolid* in Spain by *K. Philip II.* A fourth in *Louvain* a Town of *Brabant*: And a fifth here (so much do they affect the gaining of the English to the *Romish* Church) by the Dukes of *Guise*. 11. *Ligni*, upon the River *Saule*.

In that part of it which belonged to *Lugdunensis quarta*, or the Province of *Sens*, the places of chief note are, 1. *Sens*, *Crivis Senonum* in *Antoninus*, anciently the Metropolis of that Province, by consequence the See of an Archbishop also. The Country hereabouts called *Le Pays Senois*, was part of the habitation of the ancient *Senones*, some of which passing over the *Alpes*, with other Nations of the *Gauls*, planted those parts which afterwards were for long time called *Gallia Cisalpinga*. Of which the *Senones* were the most valiant, though far less in numbers; as those which had not only the honour of facking *Rome*, but of managing an offensive War against that State, for the space of 100 years and upwards. What afterwards became of them hath been hewed already when we were in *Lombardy*. 2. *Langes* or *Civitas Lingunum*, (by *Polony* called *Adumaturum*) situate in the confines of *Burgundy*, not far from the fountain or spring-head of the *Seine*: the See of a Bishop, who is one of the Twelve Peers of France. 3. *Troy*, *Civitas Tricassum*, seated on the *Seine* a fair, strong and well-traded City, honoured with the title of the Daughter of *Paris*; See Episcopal, and counted the chief of *Champagne* next *Rhemes*. A City of great note in our French and English Histories, for the meeting of *Charles VI.* and *Henry V.* Kings of France and England, in which it was agreed, that the said King *Henry*, espousing *Katherine* daughter of that King, should be proclaimed Heir apparent of the Kingdom of France; into which he should succeed on the said Kings death, and be the Regent of the Realm for the time of his life, with divers other Articles best suited with the will and honour of the Conqueror. 4. *Provence*, (by *Cesar* called *Agendicum*) seated upon the *Seine*, in a pleasant Country, abounding in all fragrant flowers, but especially with the sweetest Roses, which being transplanted into other Countries, are called *Provence-Roses*. 5. *Meaux*, seated on the River *Marne*, anciently the chief City of the *Meldi*, whom *Pliny* and others of the old Writers mention in this tract;

now honoured with a Bishops See, and neighbored by 6. *Mauconax* beautified with a magnificent Palace, built by *Katharine de Medicis*, Queen-Mother of the three last Kings of the House of *Valois*. 7. *Montreux*, a strong town on the confluence of the *Seine* and the *Tonne*. 8. *Chastell-Thierry*, (*Castellum Theodoric*), as the *Latines* call it) situate on the River *Marne*. These five last, situate in that part of *Champagne* which lieth next to France specially to be called; known of long time by the name of *Brie*: which being the first or chief possession of the Earls of *Champagne*, occasioned them to be sometimes called Earls of *Brie*, and sometimes Earls of *Brie* and *Champagne*. Add here, 9. *Auxerre*, in former time a City of the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, but now part of *Champagne*; of which more hereafter. And 10. *Fontenay*, a small Town in *Auxerrois*, in the very borders of this Province; memorable for the great battle fought near it, An. 841. between the Sons and Nephews of *Landovicus Pius*, For their Fathers Kingdoms: in which fo many thousands were slain on both sides, that the Forces of the French Empire were extremely weakened; and had been utterly destroyed in pursuit of this unnatural War; if the Princes of the Empire had not mediated a Peace between them; alloting unto each some part of that vast Estate, dismembered by that means into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *France*, *Germany*, *Lorein*, *Burgundy*; never since brought into one hand, as they were before.

Adjoining unto *Champagne* also, where it looks towards *Lorein*, lies the Country and Duchy of *B. A. R.* belonging to the Dukes of *Lorein*, but held by them in chief of the Kings of France. The Country commonly called *B. A. R. O. I. S.*, environed for the most part with the two streams of the River *Marne*; of which the one rising in the edge of *Burgundy*, and the other in the borders of *Lorein*, do meet together at *Châlons* a City of *Champagne*. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Bar le Duc*, so called to distinguish it from *Bar* on the River *Seine*; and *Bar* upon the River *Albe*; a well fortified Town. 2. *La Motte*, 3. *Ligni*. 4. *Arque*, of which nothing memorable, but that they are the chief of this little Dukedom. Of what antiquity this Dukedom is, and by whom first founded and made an absolute Estate, I am yet to seek; though probable it is, that it might take its first rise (as many other petit Signeuries did) out of the ruin and dismembering of the Kingdom of *Lorein*, or otherwise might be erected by the Earls Palatines of *Champagne*, out of some part of that Estate. But whether it were fo or not, certain it is, that it came first to the present house of *Lorein*, by the gift of *Rene Duke of Anjou*, and titular King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, &c. who succeeded in it in the right of *Toland* or *Violant* his Mother, Daughter of Don *John I.* King of *Aragon*, and of *Toland* or *Violant*, the Heir of *Bar*; and dying gave the same, together with the towns of *Lambehque* and *Orgon*, to *Rene Duke of Lorein*, his Nephew by the Lady *Violant* his Daughter. From this *Rene*, it was taken by *Lewis XI.* who having put a Garrison into *Bar*, repaired the Wall and caused the Arms of France to be set on the Gates thereof. Restored again by *Charles VIII.* at his going to the Conquest of *Naples*: to buy him out by that means (if I guess aright) of his pretensions to that Kingdom, which were fair and specious, since which time quietly enjoyed by the Dukes of *Lorein*, till the year 1633, when seized on by *Lewis XIII.* upon a Judgment and Arrest of the Court of Parliament in *Paris*, in regard the present Duke had not done his Homage to the King as he ought to have done.

The Arms hereof are *Azure*, two Barbs back to back, Or; 3. Seme of Crofs Crocett, *Pithe*, of the second. But to return again to *Champagne*; it pleased *Henry Capet* at his coming to the Crown of France, to give the same to *Eudes* or *Odou*, Earl of *Blais*, whose Daughter he

he had married in his private Fortunes, before he had attained the Kingdom, with all the Rights and Privileges of a County Palatine. Which *Eudes*, or *Odou*, was the Son of *Theobald* Earl of *Blais*, and Nephew of that *Gerlon*, a noble Dane, to whom *Charles the Simple* gave the Town and Earldom of *Blais*, about the year 920, and not long after the time, that he conferred the Country of *Nestria* upon *Rollo* the *Norman*, whose Kinsman and Assistant this *Gerlon* was in haralling and warring the coasts of France. In the person of *Theobald* the third, the Earls hereof became Kings of *Navarre*, descended on him in right of the Lady *Blanch* his Mother, Sister and Heir of King *Sanebo* the eighth, Anno 1234. By the Marriage of *Joan* Queen of *Navarre*, and Countess of *Champagne*, to *Philip* the fourth of France, furnished the *Fair*, both these Estates were added to the Crown of France: enjoyed by him and his three Sons one after another, though not without some prejudice to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter and Heir of *Lewis Hutin*. But the three Brethren being dead, and *Philip* of *Valois* succeeding in the Crown of France, he reformed the Kingdom of *Navarre* to the said Lady *Joan*: and for the County of *Champagne* (which lay too near the City of *Paris* to be trusted in a foreign hand) he gave unto her and her Posterity, as in the way of exchange, some certain Towns and Lands in other places; though not of equal value to so rich a Patrimony.

Count Palatines of Champagne.

- An. Chr. 999 1 *Odo*, Earl of *Champagne*, *Brie*, *Blais* and *Tourenne*, Son of *Theobald* the elder, Earl of *Blais*.
1032 2 *Stephen*, Earl of *Champagne*, and *Blais*, Father of *Stephen* Earl of *Blais*, and King of *England*.
1101 3 *Theobald*, eldest Son of *Stephen*.
1151 4 *Henry*, Son of *Theobald*, a great adventurer in the Wars of the Holy Land.
1181 5 *Henry I.* An Associate of the Kings of France and England in the Holy Wars; King of *Hierusalem*, in right of *Isabel* his Wife.
1196 6 *Theobald II.* Brother of *Henry*, added unto his house the hopes of the Kingdom of *Navarre*, by his Marriage with the Lady *Blanche*, Sister and Heir of *Sanebo* 8.
1201 7 *Theobald III.* Earl of *Champagne*, Son of *Theobald* the second, and the Lady *Blanche*, succeeded in the Realm of *Navarre*, An. 1234.
1269 8 *Theobald IV.* Son of *Theobald* the 3. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*, &c.
1271 9 *Henry IV.* Son of *Theobald* the 4. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*, &c.
1284 10 *Philip IV.* King of France, in right of *Joan* his Wife, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.
1313 11 *Lewis Hutin*, Son of *Philip* King of France and *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.
1315 12 *Philip* the Long, Brother of *Lewis Hutin*, King of France and *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.
1320 13 *Charles the Fair*, Brother of *Philip* King of France and *Navarre*, and the last Earl of *Champagne*; united after his decease by *Philip de Valois* to the Crown of France: the Earldom of *March*, near *Angoulême*, being given for it, in exchange to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter of King *Lewis Hutin*, and Queen of *Navarre* married to *Philip* Earl of *Encreux*, in her right, honoured with that Crown, from whom descended the Kings of France and *Navarre*, of the House of *Bourbon*.

The Arms of these Palatines of *Champagne*, were *Argent*, two Bends cotized, potentee and counterpotentee of three pieces, Or.

3. PICARDIE.

PICARDIE hath on the East, the Dukedom of *Luxemburg*, and *Lorein*; on the West, some part of *Normandy*, and the English Ocean; on the North, the Counties of *Artois* and *Hainault*; and on the South, *Champagne*, and *France* strictly and specially so called. A Country to well stored with Corn, that it is accounted the Granary or Store-house of *Paris*; but the few Wines which it produceth are but harsh, and of no good relish, especially in the Northern and colder parts of it.

The ancient Inhabitants of it were the *Suessiones*, *Ambiani* and *Vermomandi*, considerable Nations of the *Belge*; and therefore reckoned into the Province of *Belgica Secunda*: but why they had the name of *Picardi*, I am yet to seek. Omitting therefore the conjectures of other men, some of the which are groundless, and the rest ridiculous; I only say, as *Robert Boffet* of *Amiens*, hath affirmed before me, *Quot itaq; avis nigra Picardos appellat, vere Belge dicendi sunt, qui postmodum in Picardorum transfugerunt*.

The whole Country as it lieth from *Calais* to the Borders of *Lorein*, is divided into the higher and the lower: the lower subdivided into *Sainterre*, *Conthens*, *Boulengois*, and *Guise*; the higher into the *Vidamare* of *Amiens*, *Vermomandi*, *Rebellois*, and *Tierche*; in every of which there are some places of importance and consideration.

In Lower PICARDIE and the County of *GUISNES* the chief Towns, 1. *Calais* by *Cesar* called *Pontus Ictinus* (as the adjoining Promontory, *Promontorium Ictium*, by *Polony*) a strong Town close upon *Artois*, at the entrance of the English Channel: taken by *Edward* the third after the siege of eleven months, Anno 1347. and lost again by Queen *Mary* in less than a fortnight, Anno 1557. So that had *Monsieur de Cordes* then lived, he had had his wish; who used to say, That, if he would be content to live seven years in Hell, on condition that *Calais* were taken from the English. The loss of which Town was a great blow to our estate, for till that time we had the Keys of France at our Girdles: and as great a grief unto Queen *Mary*, who sickning presently upon it, said to those which attended her, That, if she were opened, they should find *Calais* next her heart. 2. *Hamme*, a strong piece, one of the best Out-works of *Calais*. 3. *Piomer*, on the borders towards *Artois*, which with the Country joining to it, made an ancient Barony; the Patrimony in times past of the Earls of *S. Paul*, by whom given to *Theobald* the younger Brother of *Lewis* Earl of *S. Paul* and Countable of France, (of whom more hereafter) and from that Family conveyed to the house of *Egmond*, by the marriage of *Francis* heir hereof to *John* Earl of *Egmond*, who died in the year 1528, and was the Father of that Earl, who after was beheaded by the Duke of *Alva*, Anno 1568. 4. *Andres*, more towards the borders of *Artois*, memorable for the interview of *Henry* the Eighth, and *Francis* the first; and many meetings of the English and French Commissioners. 5. *Guise*, which gives name to this Division, called the County of *Guise* (of which the Land of *Oye* wherein *Calais* stood (by the French called commonly *Pais de Calais*) was esteemed a part.) The Earldom anciently of the illustrious house of *Grave*, of which more anon.

2. In *BOULOGNOIS*, neighbouring on the Country of *Guineux*, the places of most note, 1. *Blackwell*, a strong Fort on the Sea-side, betwixt *Calice* and *Boulogne*. 2. *Caillon*, opposite to *Boulogne*, on the other side of the water. 3. *Boultonberg*, more within the Land, an Out-work to *Boulogne*. 4. *Boulogne*, by *Pliny* called *Portus Gessoriacus*, part of the Country of the *Morini*, spoken of by *Cæsar*; divided into the *Bisf* or *Low Town* lying on the shore side, well built, and much frequented by Passengers, going to, or coming out of *England*; and the *High Town* standing on the rise of an Hill, well garisoned for defence of the Port beneath it, and honoured with a Bishops See, translated hither from *Tournay* when that City was taken by the *English*. The Town and Country taken by King *Henry* the eighth, with infinite expence of treasure, Anno 1544, but yielded not long after by King *Edward* the sixth: the *French* redeeming it at less than a fourth part of the money, which the gaining of it had cost the Crown of *England*. As for the fortunes of this Country, it was once an Earldom of its self, during which time it gave one King unto *Hierusalem*, and another to *England*. The first Earl of it which we meet with, was that *Eustace*, who by his marriage with *Ida*, the Daughter of *Geoffrey* or *Godfrey* the second, Duke of *Lorrein*, added the Dutchy of *Bouillon* in *Gaul-Belgick* to his Earldom of *Boulogne*. To him succeeded in both these Titles and Estates, *Godfrey*, surnamed of *Bouillon* his eldest Son: who after the death of *Geoffrey* the third his Cousin-german attained unto the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, and finally was the first and most renowned King of the Western Christians reigning in *Hierusalem*. *Godfrey* being dead, *Eustace* the youngest of his Brethren became Earl of *Boulogne*: whose daughter *Maud* brought this Estate and Title of *Stephen of Blais*, who afterwards was King of *England*. *Eustace* the only Son of *Stephen* dying without issue, the rights hereof remained in his Sister *Mary*, the Abbess of *Ramfey*, married to *Matthew* Brother of *Philip* of *Eljats* Earl of *Flanders*. And though *Matthew* was commanded by the Pope to restore her again unto the Abbey out of which he had taken her; yet he kept this Country for her Children. Conveyed by *Ida* the eldest Daughter of this Bed to *Reginald* of *Chastis* her third husband; by *Maud* his daughter to *Philip*, second Son of *Philip Augustus* King of *France* by another *Maud* (he dying without issue) to *Alfonso* of *Portugal*, who succeeding after in that Kingdom, sent her back to *Boulogne*; and finally by *Juan* daughter and heir of *William*, this *Alfonso* Grandchild to *Philip* Earl of *Artois*, the Son of *Eudes* Duke and Earl of *Burgundy* to whom the brought *Philip* their only Son, Successor to his Grand-father in the said Estates, and to his Mother in this Earldom. But he deceasing without issue, Anno 1361, and *Juan* not leaving any children by King *John* of *France*, whom he married after the death of her first husband, it fell by some other of the Heirs General to the *De la Tour d'Auvergne* (the Ancestors of the now Dukes of *Bouillon*) continuing in that Family till the year 1477, when bought by *Lewis* the eleventh of *France* of *Bertrand* de la Tour, the better to assure his Kingdom on that side against the *English* then possessed of the Country of *Guineux*. The purchase being made, *Lewis* the now Proprietor, did Homage for it to the Virgin *Mary*, in the chief Church then called *Notre Dame*; bare-headed, on his knees, without Spurs or Girdle: and offered to her Image a massie Heart of gold of 2000 ounces; capitalizing that from thenceforth he and his Successors would hold that Earldom of her only, in perpetual Homage; and at the change of every Vassal present her with a golden heart of the same weight. Since which time never aliened from the Crown of *France*; nor giving title unto any but to *Katherine* de

Medicis Wife of *Henry* the Second, created Countess of *Boulogne* and *Clermont*, when first married to him, he being then Duke of *Orleans* only.

The Arms hereof under the ancient Earls of *Boulogne*, were Or, a Banner Gules, tufted Purple; those of *De la Tour*, being a Tower embattled Sable; but the colour of the Field I do now find ind. 3. *PONTHIEU*, so called from the Bridges, built for convenience of passage over the moorish Flats thereof, belonged formerly to the *English*; to whom it came by the Marriage of *Eleanor*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, by *Juan* the Daughter and Heir of *Simon* the last Earl hereof, to King *Edward* the first. Towns of most note in it, 1. *Abbeville*, seated on the *Some*, well fortified and as strongly garisoned, as a Frontier Town upon *Artois*: on one side unassailable by reason of a deep and moorish Fens, which comes up close to it; beauried with a fair Abbey, whence it had the name (Abbacy *Villa* in the *Latine*) and the See of a Bishop. 2. *Montreuil*, a well fortified Town, in the way betwixt *Abbeville* and *Boulogne*, and a strong out-work unto *Paris*. 3. *Crespy*, where King *Edward* the third defeated the great Army of *Philip* de *Valois*, in the first onsets for that Kingdom, Anno 1343. And 4. *Trepport*, a small Haven on the East of *S. Valerius*. Some place the Earldom of *S. Paul* in this Country of *Ponthieu*, others more rightly in *Artois*, where we mean to meet with it. The Arms hereof were Or, three Bends Azure.

4. And as for the Country of *S. AINTERRÉ*, which is the fourth part of the *Lower Picardy*, the chief Towns of it are, 1. *Peronne*, upon the River *Some*, where *Lewis* the eleventh, the greatest Master of State-craft for the times he lived in, put himself most improvidently into the hands of *Charles* of *Burgundy*, who as improvidently dismissed him. 2. *Roy*, and 3. *Mont Didier*, (*Mont Didier* in *Latin*) both of them strong Towns upon the Frontier; but otherwise of little fame in former Stories.

In the *Higher Picardy* being that part of this Country which lieth furthest from the Sea, the first division which occurreth, is the *Vidamats* of *AMIENS*, so called of the fair City of *Amiens*, and the *Vidame*, or chief Governor of it. Which honour as it is peculiar to the *French* only (so *Mills* in his Edition of *Gloveti Catalogue* of Honour, will have but four at all in *France*, viz. this of *Amiens*, *Chalours*, *Garbary*, and that of *Chartrai*. But certainly in *France* there are many more of them; as at *Rhemus*, *Mans*, &c. and formerly as many as it had Bishops; the *Vice-dominus*, or *Vice-dame*, being to the Bishop in his *Temporalts*, as the Chancellor in his *Spirituals*; or as the *Vice-comites* (*Vicomites*) were anciently to the Provincial Earls in their Courts of Judicature; or to give you an example nearer home and of more resemblance, these *French Vidames* were unto their several and respective Bishops, as the *Temporal* Chancellors (in this Realm) of the Billopprick of *Durham*, or the High Steward of the Billopprick of *Ely*, to those several Bishops.

Places of most note herein, 1. *Corbie*, a Town of great importance, and strongly garisoned, situate on the Frontier towards the *Netherlands*. 2. *Chaune*, on the same Frontier also, but of less consideration, the Honorary seat and title of the present *Vidame*. 3. *Piquigni*, situate on a pretty ascent of ground overlooking the *Some*, on the left hand of the River betwixt *Amiens* and *Abbeville*, the ordinary seat of the former *Vidames* more famous for the interview of *Edward* the IV. of *England*, and *Lewis* the XII. than for giving the name of *Picardy* to all the Provinces which *Mercator* only of all writers doth ascribe unto it. 4. *Crony* an obscure Village now, but formerly of

special

special note for a goodly Castle, commanding over the adjoining Territory, and giving name to the illustrious Family, hence surnamed of *Crony*, descended from the Kings of *Hungary*, and the Progenitors of the Dukes of *Archeon*, and Princes of *Chimay* in the *Netherlands*; before their translating to which Countries by the Dukes of *Burgundy*, they were entitled Earls of *Guineux*. 5. *Amiens* itself, seated upon the *Some* above *Piquigni*, the River being there divided into many streams for the use and service of the Town; well built, with very strong walls and deep ditches: the loss whereof, when taken by *Archduke Albert*, much hazarded the affairs and reputation of King *Henry* the fourth, and therefore when he had regained it, he added to the former works an impregnable Citadel. But the chief glory of this City is in the Cathedral, the fairest and most lovely structure in the West of *Europe*: so beautified within and adorned without, that all the excellencies of Cost and Architecture seem to be met together in the composition. The Fronts of our Cathedrals of *Wells* and *Peterburgh*, the rich Glafs in the Quire at *Canterbury*, the costly Imagery, and arched Buttresses in the Chappel at *Wolmister* (before the late defacements of those Cathedrals) might serve as helps to set forth the full beauty of it. The Towns and Territories anciently under the command of the Bishops of it, whose Officers for the Temporal government hereof called *Vice-dominus* or *Vidames*, were at first eligible by the Bishops, and accountable to them, but by degrees engrossing all power unto themselves, they became Hereditary, and gave the name of the *Vidamats* of *Amiens* to this part of *Picardy*. The present *Vidame* of it is the Duke of *Chaune*, who being one of the younger Brothers of *Maistre de Luyne* (chief favourite to *K. Lewis* 13.) obtained in marriage the daughter and heir of the former *Vidame*, with whom he had the Town and Castle of *Piquigni*, the chief command of these parts, and a rent of 9000 l. per annum, honoured thereupon by the power and favours of his Brother with the title of the Duke of *Chaune* and Peer of *France*, Anno 1620, or thereabouts.

II. But not to dwell on this place too long, pass we yet next to *VEROMANDOIS*, the ancient habitation of the *Vermandois*, the fairest and largest part of both *Picardies*; and not a whit inferior to the best of *France* in the number of neat and populous Cities.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1. *Soissons*, called anciently *Augusta Suessunum*, the chief City of the *Suessones* or *Suessiones*; and the last Hold which the Romans had in all *Gaul* lost by *Stagirus*, Governor for the Western Emperor, to *Clodius* the fifth King of the *French*. In the division of his Kingdom, made the first Royal of *Clodius*, the Son of this *Clodius* was of *Aripri*, and *Chilperic*, the Sons of *Clodius*, from hence entitled Kings of *Soissons*; their Kingdom containing the whole Province of *Belgica secunda*, or the Provinces of *Artois*, *Picardy*, and *Champagne*, as we call them now. But *Soissons* having long since lost the honour of a Regal Seat, hath of long time been made the honorary Title of the Counts of *Soissons*, a branch of the Royal stock of *Bourbon*; a Bishops See, and situate on the River of *Aisne*. 2. *Laon*, a Bishops See also, the Bishop whereof is one of the Twelve Peers of *France*, an Earl of *Laon*; the Town in *Latine*, *Laodunum*. 3. *Noyon*, in *Latine*, *Noviodunum*, an Episcopal See also. 4. *Chapelle*, a strong piece, one of the best out-works of *Paris* against the *Netherlands*. 5. *D'Orlans*. 6. *La Fere* and *Hon*, places of great strength also, but more near the Frontiers. And 7. *Soissons*, anciently the chief City of the *Vermandois*, then called *Augusta Veromandunum*: called afterwards *S. Quintin*, from that Saint here worshipped, as the *Patron Deus tutelaris* of it. A place of great importance for the Realm of *France*; and so esteemed in the opinion

of the Earl of *Charlois*, (after Duke of *Burgundy*) and King *Lewis* the 11. the first of which never digested the restoring of it to that King, being pawned unto his Father (together with *Corbie*, *Amiens*, and *Abbeville*) for no less than 400000 Crowns; the latter never would forgive the Earl of *St. Paul* for detaining it from him, though under colour of his service. A Town of greater note in succeeding times, for the famous battle of *S. Quintin*, Anno 1557, wherein King *Philip* the second of *Spain*, with the help of the *English* under command of the Earl of *Pembroke*; overthrew the whole Forces of the *French*, made themselves Masters of the Town, and thereby grew so formidable to the *French* King, that the Duke of *Guise* was in post haste sent for out of *Italy* (where his affairs began to prosper) to look unto the safety of *France* itself. As for the Fortunes of this part it was once an Earldom of its self, and an Earldom of as great Antiquity as the most in *France*, it being one *Heribert* or *Robert* Earl of *Vermandois*, who in pittance of the quarrel of the House of *Anjou* surprised *Charles* the Simple, and carried him Prisoner to *Peronne*, where he after died; for which deservedly hanged by *Lewis* surnamed *Tranfmarine* the Son of *Charles*, when he became possessed of his Fathers Kingdoms; by the Daughter and Heir of another *Herbert*, conveyed in marriage unto *Hugh* surnamed the Great, one of the younger Sons of King *Henry* the first of *France*, succeeding in her right into the title and estate of Earl of *Vermandois*, and by that name renowned in the first wars for the Holy Land. By *Elizabeth* the Nece of this *Hugh*, the Daughter of *Rodolphus* his eldest Son married to *Philip* of *Eljats* Earl of *Flanders*, it was added unto that estate; but shortly after given by the same *Philip* (having no children of his own) in Dowry with *Isabel* his Nece, daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainault* unto *Philip Augustus* King of *France*, and since united to that Crown, not giving since that time the title of Earl or Duke to any, for ought I can find.

III. More towards *Hainault* and *Lorrein* lieth the Country of *RETHELOIS*, so called of *Rebel* the chief Town, well fortified as the rest of the Frontier places, but of most note among the *French*, in that the Eldest Sons of the Dukes of *Nevers*, have usually been entituled Earls and Dukes of *Rebel*; united to that Family by the marriage of *Lewis* of *Flanders*, Earl of *Nevers*, with the daughter and heir of *Jamer* Earl of *Rebel*, Anno 1312, or thereabouts. 2. *S. Monbaud*, a Town of consequence and strength. 3. *Sygni*, a strong piece belonging to the Marquess of *Vien* ville. 4. *Chasteau-Portim*, of more beauty, but of like importance. The Arms of the Earls and Dukes of *Rebel* were Gules, three Rakes-beds indented Or.

IV. Finally in the Dutchy of *TIER ASCHIE*, the last part of the higher *Picardy*, we have the Town of *Guise*, of some note for the Castle, but of more for the Lords thereof, of the Ducal Family of *Lorrein* (on the borders whereof it standeth) from hence entituled Dukes of *Guise*. A Family which within a little compass of time produced two Cardinals, the one entituled of *Guise*, the other of *Lorrein*; six Dukes, that is to say, the D. of *Guise*, *Mayenne*, *Amal*, *Elbeuf*, *Agillon*, and *Cherevins*; the Earl of *Samarine*; and besides many daughters married into the best houses in *France*, one married to *Jamer* the 5th. King of the *Scots*. The first, and he that gave the rise unto all the rest of this potent Family, was *Clodius* Son to *Rene*, the second Duke of *Lorrein*, who passing into *France* to take possession of the Patrimony allotted to him, followed King *Henry* the first in the war of *Italy*, where he behaved himself so valiantly at the Battle of *Marignano*, in which he had the chief command of the *German* Auxiliaries, that the King always after held him in a great esteem, and married him to *Anno Reute* of *Burbon*, daughter

ter of *Francis*, Earl of *Vendome*, in respect of which alliance, and his other merits, he was honoured with the title of Duke of *Guise*; the Father (amongst other children) of *Mary Q. of Scots*, Wife of *James* the fifth, and Grandmother of *James* the sixth, the first Monarch of *Britain*. The second was *Francis*, who endangered the Realm of *Naples*, resisted the siege of the Emperor *Charles* at *Metz*, drove him out of *Provence*, took *Calice* from *Q. Mary*, and was at last treacherously slain at the siege of *Orleans*, by one of the *Hugonots* named *Poltrot*, (on the infiltration of some of the chiefs of that faction) *An. 1463*. The third was *Henry* that great enemy of the Protestants, who contrived the great Massacre at *Paris*, and almost disposed of *Henry* the third of all *France*: He began the holy league, and was finally slain at *Blair*, by the command of King *Henry* the third. But we must know that this Town did anciently belong to the Dukes of *Lorraine*: and had given the title of Earl of *Guise* to *Frederick* the second Son of *John*, and *Charles*, the third Son of *Rene*, both the first of those names; before *Claud* of *Lorraine* was advanced to the title of Duke; as being part of the Estate and Patrimony of the Barons of *Joinville*, of whom we spake before when we were in *Champagne*. Of most note next to *Guise* is *elfels* 2. *Ripemont* on the South of *Guise*. 3. *Chastels* upon the borders towards *Luxembourg*, a strong Town, and none of the best out-works of *France*. 4. *Mazieres*, upon the *Mais* or *Mosé*, a place of great strength and like importance; belonging properly to the Dukes of *Mevers* (as chief Lords thereof) in right of their descent from the house of *Reibel*: fortified with a strong Citadel for defence of the place, and that Citadel well garrisoned by the French King, for defence of this border; laid to the Government of *Champagne*, though a Town of *Picardy*, and therefore made to come to belong to that Province also.

As for the state of this whole Province, I do not find that it was ever passed over by the French Kings unto any one hand: as almost all the rest of *France* had been at some time or other, but distracted unto divers Seigneuries and several Lordships (all of them absolute in themselves, and scarce affording to the French King the flight tribute of Homage) the particulars whereof we have seen before: some of which fell to the Crown of *France* by confiscations, some by lawful marriages, and others by conquest; some held of *England*, some of the Earls of *Artois* and others of *Flanders*, and lastly of the Dukes of *Burgundy*, as Lords of those Provinces: those which depended upon *England*, being seized on by *Charles* the 7. on the loss of *Normandy* by the English; as those which held of *Burgundy*, were by *Lewis* his Son, immediately on the death of Duke *Charles*, at the Battle of *Nancy*, *An. 1476*.

4. NORMANDY.

NORMANDY is bounded on the East with the River *Seine*, and part of *Picardy*, on the West with *Bretagne*, and some part of the Ocean; on the North with the English Channel, by which divided from *England*; and on the South, with *France* especially so called, and the County of *Main*. It made up the whole Province of *Langue-d'outre-mer*, in the time of the Romans; the Metropolis whereof was *Rouen*: and in the greatness of the French Empire had the name of *Nestria*, corruptly so called for *Wistria*; the name of *Wistria* or *Wisternia*, being given by some to the name of the Realm of *Wist-France*, as that of *Astria* or *Osternia* to a part of *East*.

France. Afterwards being bestowed upon the Normans by *Charles* the Simple, it was called *Normandy*.

This flourishing and rich Dukedom of *Normandy*, for largeness of Extent, multitudes of People, number and fertility of Cities, fertility of Soil, and the commodiousness of the Seas, may worthily be accounted the chief of *France*. Well watered with the River *Seine* which runneth quite through it; as do also 2. the *Orne*, and 3. the *Aven*: not to say any thing of 4. *Robes*, 5. *Ante*, and 6. *Reimelle*, and many others of less note. In length it reacheth about 170 miles, and about 60 in breadth, where it is narrowest: containing in that round the largest and fairest Corn-fields that arc to be seen in all *France*. Of all other natural commodities it is extremely plentiful, excepting Wines; which the Northern coldness of the Climate admits not of, or sparingly at the best, and of no perfection. The people of it formerly renowned for feats of Arms, the Conquerors of *England*, *Naples*, *Sicily*, and the Kingdom of *Antioch* in the East; at this time thought to be of a more sharp and subtil wit, than the rest of the French; *Secutus* *an* *possibile* *ed* *procer* *et* *placideris* (saith *Orielius* of them) especially in the quilllets of Law.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*: the *Lower* containing the Sea-coasts, and the *Higher*, the more inland parts. Principal Cities of the whole, 1. *Constance*, a Bishop's See, the Spire or Steeple of whose Cathedral, is easily discernable afar off, both by Sea and Land; and serveth Sailors for a Land-mark. From hence the Country hereabouts hath the name of *Constantine*. 2. *Auranches* situate on a Rock with a fair prospect over the English Channel, but more near to *Bretagne*, than the other, the chief City of the *Abrincantes*, called *Ingena* by *Ptolemy*; now a Bishop's See. 3. *Caen* (*Cadomum* in *Latine*) an Episcopal See, as the other; strong, populous, and well built, seated upon the River *Orne*, second in reputation of the whole Province, but more especially famous for the Sepulchre of *William* the Conqueror, the University founded here by King *Henry* the fifth of *England*, and for the long resistance which it made against him, in his Conquest of *Normandy*. 4. *Baieux* (the *Civitas Baiocensis* of *Antoninus*) from whence the Country round about hath the name of *Bessin*. Memorable of a long time for a See Episcopal. One of the Bishops whereof, called *Odo*, Brother unto *William* the Conqueror, by the Mothers side, was by him created Earl of *Kent*; and afterwards on some just displeasure committed Prisoner. For which, when quarrelled by the Pope, (the Clergy being then exempted from the Secular Powers) he returned this answer, That he had committed the Earl of *Kent*, not the Bishop of *Baieux*: by which distinction he avoided the Popes displeasure. 5. *Rouen*, of old *Rothomagus*, pleasantly seated on the *Seine*, and watered with the two little Rivers of *Robe*, and *Reimelle*, which keep it very sweet and clean. The City for the most part well built, of large circuit, and great trading; the second for bigness, wealth, and beauty, in all *France*: anciently the Metropolis of this Province, and an Archbishop's See; and honoured of late times with a Court of Parliament, erected here by *Lewis* the twelfth, *Anno* 1501. In the Cathedral Church hereof (a reverend, but no beautiful Fabric) is to be seen the Sepulchre of *John* Duke of *Bedford*, and Regent of *France* for King *Henry* the sixth: which when an envious Countess periwaded *Charles* the 8. to deface; *God forbid* (saith he) that I should wrong him, being dead, whom living all the power of *France* was not able to withstand, adding withal, that he deserved a better Monument than the English had bestowed upon him. And to say truth, the Tomb is but mean and poor, short of the merits of the man, and carrying no proportion to so great a virtue.

6. *Falaife*,

6. *Falaife*, upon the River *Ante*, once of strength and note; the dwelling-place of *Arelate*, a Skinner's daughter, and the Mother of *William* the Conqueror; whom Duke *Robert*, passing through the Town, took such notice of, as he beheld her in a Dance amongst other Damozels, that he sent for her to accompany him that night in bed, and begot on her *William* the Bastard, Duke of *Normandy*, and King of *England*. Her immortality that night said to be so great, that either in regard thereof, or in spite to her Son, the English called all Strumpets by the name of *Harlots*, the word continuing to this day. 7. *Vernville*, (*Vernulium* in *Latine*) in former times accounted one of the Bulwarks of *Normandy*, against the French. Of which it is reported, that when news was brought to *Richard* the first, that *Philip* surnamed *Augustus*, the French King, had laid siege unto it, he should say these words: *I will never turn my back, till I have conquered those cowardly Frenchmen*. For performance of which Princely word, he caused a passage to be broken through the Palace of *Westminster*, and came to unexpectedly upon his Enemies, that they raised their siege, and hastened homewards. 8. *Alanson*, of most note for giving the title of Earl and Duke, to many Princes of the Royal Family of *Valois*, beginning in *Charles* de *Valois*, the Father of *Philip* de *Valois*, French King; and continuing for eight successions, till the death of *Charles* the Fourth, Duke of this line: conferred occasionally after that, on many of the younger Princes of the Royal Family. 9. *Lyseux*, on the North-east of *Alanson*, a Bishop's See, the chief Town of the *Lexovii*; as 10. *Caen*, of the *Caletes*, both placed by *Cesar* in these parts. 11. *Eureux*, an Episcopal See also, by *Ptolemy* called *Mediolanum*, the chief City anciently of the *Eburones*, and still a rich and flourishing Town; the third in estimation of all this Province, and made an Earldom in the person of *Lewis* a younger Son of *Philip* the third whose Son, called *Philip*, by his marriage with *Jean* Daughter of *Lewis* *Hutin*, attained unto the Crown of *Navarre*. But this Town, with many fair Estates in this Country which depend on it, being seized on by the French in the time of *Charles* the Son of this *Philip*, for some practices against that Kingdom; there was after given by *Charles* the third and last King of this House, in compensation for the same, *Anno* 1406, the title of Duke of *Normandie*, with a good sum of ready money, and a pension of 1200 l. sterling yearly, issuing out of the Revenues of *Brie* and *Champagne*. 12. *Guise* for a strong Frontier Town towards *France*, whilst *Normandy* was in the hands of the English, for under its own Duke and Princes: notable for the many rebellions given unto the French. *An* 13. *Pontyef*, another Frontier upon *France*: so called of the Bridge on the River of *Oyfe*, (which divides *France* from *Normandy*) on which the Town is situate, and by which well fortified on that side; but taken at the second coming of *Charles* the seventh, after an ignominious flight hence, upon the noise only of the coming of the Duke of *Turk*, Commander at that time of the Province, and the English Forces. 1. *Alenmar*, contractedly *Aumer*, most memorable for giving the title of Earl to the Noble Family *De Fortibus*, Lords of *Holderness* in *England*; and of Duke to *Edward* Earl of *Rutland*, after Duke of *Turk*. More towards the Sea, 15. *S. Valerius*, seated on a small, but secure Bay, betwixt *Dieppe* and *New-baven*, 16. *Dieppe*, at the mouth of a little River so named; opening in a large and capacious Bay: a Town of Trade, especially for the *New-found-Land*: remarkable for its idleness to *Henry* the IV. in the midst of his troubles; when the Confederates of the *Guisean* Faction, called the *Holy League*, had ousted him of almost all the rest of his Cities, compelled him to betake himself hi-

ther, (from whence he might more easily have sailed for *England*) and called him in derision, *The King of Dieppe*. 17. *New-Haven*, the Port-Town to *Rouen* and *Paris*, situate at the mouth of the River *Seine*, from hence by great Ships navigable as far as *Rouen*; by itself, unto *Pont de l'Arch*, 70 miles from *Paris*: the Bridge of *Rouen* formerly broken down by the English, to secure the Town, lying unprepared to this day, by means of the *Parisians*, for the better trading of their City. By the French it is called *Havre de grace*, and *Franceopolis* by the *Latines*; repaired and fortified (the better to confront the English) by King *Francis* the first, and from thence (named). Delivered by the Prince of *Cande*, and his faction, into the hands of Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, as a Town of caution, for the landing of such Forces as she was to send to their relief, in the first Civil War of *France* about Religion; and by the help of the same Faction, taken from her again, as soon as their differences were compounded. By means whereof, the *Hugonots* were not only weakened for the present, but made incapable of any succours out of *England* for the time to come: and the next year were again warred on by their King, with more heat than formerly. 18. *Harflow*, and 19. *Honflew*, both situate on the banks of the *Seine*, but of little notice at the present, because not capable of any great shipping; nor useful in the way of Trade, by reason of the interposition of *New-baven*, betwixt them and the Sea: the former, famous notwithstanding in our English Stories; as the fifth Town which that Victorious Prince King *Henry* the fifth, attempted and took in, in *France*. 20. *Chourburg*, (the *Latins* call it *Cesaris Burgum*) on the Sea-side also, the last Town which the English held in the Dukedom of *Normandy*: belonging properly and naturally to the Earls of *Eureux*, advanced unto the Crown of *Navarre*; still alienated by *Charles* the third of *Navarre*, on the composition before mentioned; but being garrisoned by the English for King *Henry* the sixth, it held out a siege of seven months, against the Forces of *France*.

Here are also in this Kingdom, the Towns of 21. *Tankerville*, and 22. *Ewe*, which have given the title of Earls, to the noble Family of the *Greys*, and *Burcheirs*, in *England*: as also those of 23. *Harcourt*, 24. *Longueville*, and 25. *Amul*, which have given the title of Duke and Earl, to some of the best houses in *France*.

In this Country also is the little Signeury of *VIDOT*, heretofore said to be a free and absolute Kingdom; advanced to that high dignity by *Clotaire*, the seventh King of the French; who having abused the Wife of one *Gautier* de *VIDOT*, (so called because of his dwelling here) and afterward (to prevent revenge) killed the man himself, to make some satisfaction to his Family for so great an injury, erected the Lordship of *VIDOT*, to the estate of a Kingdom; and gave unto the Heirs of this *Gautier* (or *Walter*) all the Prerogatives of a free and absolute Monarch, as, to make Laws, coin Money, and the like. From hence the French call a man that hath but small domains to maintain a great title, a *Roy d'VIDOT*. At last, but at what time I know not, it fell again to a Lordship, and belongeth now to the house of *Bellay* in *Bretagne*.

There belonged also to this Dukedom, but rather as subject to the Dukes of *Normandy*, than part of *Normandy* it self; the County of *P.E.R.C.H.* situate betwixt it and the Province of *La Beaulle*, of which now reckoned for a part: and was divided into the higher and the lower. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Nogent le Rotrou*, of which little memorable, but that it is the principal of *Perch* *Greys*, or the lower *Perch*, and that it took that adjunct from *Rutland*, the second Earl of this County,

the Founder or Repairer of it, to difference it from another of that name, called *Negut le Roy*, a Town of *Champagne*. 2. *Morlaigue*, or *Moriton*: of most note in the higher *Perch*, especially for giving the title of an Earl to *John*, the youngest Son of King *Henry* the second, after King of England was in the times succeeding to the Lord *Edmund Beauford*, after Duke of *Somerset*. The whole, first made a distinct Estate, in the person of *Arnulp of Heslin* the first Earl hereof. Whose Son and Successor, named *Robert*, (of great note in the Wars of Spain against the *Moor*, in behalf of *Alfonso* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*, An. 1110.) by Mand the natural daughter of *Henry* the first of England, unfortunately drowned with her Brother *William*, as they crossed the Seas; had one only daughter, named *Magdalen*, (or as some say, *Margaret*) the Wife of *Garcia*, the seventh King of *Navarre*, and Mother of *K. Sancho*, furnished the Wife, from whom all the Kings of *Navarre* have since descended. But this Family being extinct in a short time after, the Estate fell into the *English*, as Dukes of *Normandy*; and so continued till the seizure of *Normandy* by the *French*, in the time of *K. John*. After which time, the title of Earl of *Perch* was given to *Charles* Earl of *Valois* and *Alanson*, Father of *Philip de Valois*, French King, of *Lewis* Earl of *Anjou*, and of *Charles de Valois*, Earl of *Alanson*; in which house of *Alanson* it continued, and was commonly the title of the eldest Sons of the Dukes thereof.

But to return again to the Country of *Normandy*, the ancient Inhabitants thereof were the *Calotes*, *Eborones*, *Lexovii*, *Abrimantes*, spoken of before: the *Bellovaci*, or *Vendocci*, about *Rouen*: the *Salares* and *Batocenses*, about *Sens* and *Baieux*: all conquered first by the powerful *Romans*; the *Romans* after by the *French*, and the *French* by the *Normans*. These last, a people of the North, inhabiting those Countries which now make up the Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, united in the name of *Normans*, in regard of their Northern situation; as in our History and Description of those Kingdoms, we shall here more fully. Out of those parts they made their first irruption about the year 700, when they so ranfacked and plagued the *Maritime Towns* of *France* and *Belgium*, that it was inferred in the *Litany*, *From Plague, Pestilence, and the fury of the Normans, good Lord*, &c. To quiet these people, and to secure himself, *Charles the Simple* gave them a part of *Neustria*, (from thence since called *Normannia*) or *Normandy*, together with the Sovereignty of *Bretagne*: enjoyed by them and their posterity for many Ages. Their first Duke was *Rollo*, An. 912, from whom in a direct Line, the sixth was *William* the *Battard*, Conqueror, and King of *England*, An. 1067. After this *Normandy* continued *English* till the days of King *John*; when *Philip Augustus* seized on all Estates in *France*, as forfeitures, An. 1202. The *English* then possessing the Dukedoms of *Normandy* and *Aquitain*; the Earldoms of *Anjou*, *Touren*, *Mains*, *Poitou*, and *Limousin*; being in all a far greater and better portion of the Country, than the Kings of *France* themselves possessed. The *English* after this recovered this Dukedom, by the Valour of King *Henry* the fifth; and having held it thirty years, lost it again in the unfortunate Reign of King *Henry* the sixth: the *English* then distracted with domestic factions. After which double Conquest of it from the Crown of *England*, the *French* distrusting the affections of the *Normans*, and finding them wical a stubborn and untractable people have miserably oppressed them with Tolls and Taxes, keeping them always poor and in a low condition; insomuch as it may be said of them, that they are the most

beggarly people that ever had the luck to live in so rich a Country. But it is time to look on

The Dukes of Normandy.

- An. Chr.
- 912 1 *Rollo* of *Norway*, made first Duke of *Normandy*, by *Charles the Simple*; by whose permission baptized, and called *Robert*.
 - 917 2 *William*, surnamed *Longfesse*, from the length of his Sword.
 - 942 3 *Richard*, the Son of *Longfesse*.
 - 980 4 *Richard* the II. Son of the former.
 - 1026 5 *Richard* the III. Son of *Richard* the Second.
 - 1028 6 *Robert* the Brother of *Richard* the Third.
 - 1035 7 *William* the base Son of *Robert*, subdued the Realm of *England*; from thence called the Conqueror.
 - 1093 8 *Robert* the II. eldest Son of *William* the Conqueror, put by the Kingdom of *England* by his two Brothers, *William* and *Henry*, in hope whereof he had refused the Crown of *Hierusalem*, then newly conquered by the Forces of the Christian Princes of the West. Outcast at last, imprisoned, and deprived of sight by his Brother *Henry*; he lived a miserable life in the Castle of *Cardiff*, and last buried in the Cathedral Church of *Glocester*.
 - 1102 9 *Henry* the first, King of *England*.
 - 1134 10 *Stephen*, King of *England*, and D. of *Normandy*.
 - 11 Henry *Plantagenet*, D. of *Normandy*, and after King of *England*; of that name the second.
 - 1161 12 *Henry* the III. surnamed *Cour-mantle*, Son of *Henry* the second, made D. of *Normandy* by his Father.
 - 1189 13 *Richard I.* surnamed *Cœur de Lion*, King of *England*, and D. of *Normandy*, Son of *Henry* the second.
 - 1199 14 *John* the Brother of *Richard*, King of *England*, and D. of *Normandy*, ousted of his Estates in *France*, by King *Philip Augustus*, An. 1202, before whom he was accused of the Murder of his Nephew *Arthur*, found dead in the Ditches of the Castle of *Rouen*, where he was imprisoned; but sentenced *causa inaudita*, for his not appearing. After this, *Normandy* still remained united to the Crown of *France*, (the title only being born by *John de Valois*, afterwards King, and *Charles* the fifth, during the life-time of his Father) till the Conquest of it by the Valour of King *Henry* the fifth, Anno 1420, which was 218 years after it had been seized on by King *Philip Augustus*, and having been held by the *English* but 30 years, was lost again, An. 1450, in the unfortunate reign of King *Henry* the sixth. Never since that dismembered from the Crown of *France*; saving that *Lewis* the eleventh, the better to content the Confederate Princes, conferred it, in Apperage, on his Brother *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, An. 1465, but within two Months after, took it from him again, and gave him in exchange for it, the Dukedom of *Guienne*, which lay further off from his Associates.

What

What the Revenues of this Dukedom were in former times I can hardly say. That they were very fair and great, appears by that which is affirmed by *Philip de Comines*; who saith that he had seen raised in *Normandy*, 95000 l. sterling money; which was a vast sum of money in those times. As also by this testimony of the D. of *Burgundy*, who held King *Lewis* the eleventh to be weaned a whole third part in his Estate, by giving *Normandy* in portion to the D. of *Berry*. Now they amount unto as much as the Kings *Treasurers* and *Toll-masters* are pleased to draw out of it.

The Arms of *Normandy* were *Gules*, two *Leopards Or*, which with the single *Leopard*, or *Lyon*, being added for the *Duchy of Aquitain*, make the Arms of *England*.

5. BRETAGNE.

BRETAGNE is bounded on the East with *Normandy*, and the County of *Maine*; on the South with *Anjou*, and *Poitou*; on all other parts with the *English* or *Gallick* Ocean. Watered upon the South-side with the *Loir*, which divides it from *Anjou*; but so as part of this Dukedom, called the County of *Raiz*, lieth on the South-side of that River, betwixt it and *Poitou*.

It was first called *Armorica*, from its situation on the Sea, as the word importeth in the old Language of that People. But how it came by this new name, is not well agreed on. The general opinion is, That it took this name from the neighbouring *Britains*, brought over hither by the Tyrant *Maximus*, rebelling against the Emperor *Gratian*, Anno 389, by whom this Province was subdued; and from them named *Britania Minor*, Little *Britain*. An Argument whereof may be, that the Language of these people hath till now small affinity with the *Welsh* or *British*; there being a Tradition also, that the *Britains* who first came over hither and married the Women of this Country, cut out their Tongues, for fear they should corrupt the Language of their Posterity. And to this Conquest by the *Britains*, these old Verses give this further countenance.

Vicit Azmericas animosa Britannia Gentes,
Et dedit impostis nomina prisca, jugo.

That is to say,

Gaul-Armorick, the *Britains* overcame,
And to the conquered Province gave their name.

Notwithstanding the most probable opinion seemeth to be, That it took this name from the *Britains*, an old *Gallick* people, mentioned by *Pliny* in *Gaul-Belgick*; retiring hither on the Invasions and Incursions of the Barbarous Nations; though possibly those *Britanni* of *Gallia-Belgica*, might be as well those Colony of the *Island-Britains*, as the *Belgæ*, a great Nation in the Isle of *Britain*, are said to have been a people of *Gallia-Belgica*. The reason is, because there was no Author before *Geffrey of Monmouth*, who takes notice of this transporting of the *Isular Britons*, by the Tyrant *Maximus*; no Ancient Author, Greek or Latin, making mention of it. And for the *Welsh* or *British* words, which are still remaining in the Language, they are conceived to be of no other than a remainder of the old *Gallick* Tongue, which was originally the same with the ancient *British*, as is elsewhere proved.

The Province is in compas 200-French Leagues, pleat

fant and fruitful; beautified with many shady Woods; and spacious Downs; sufficiently well stored with all manner of Grain; but destitute of Wine and the choicest Fruits, by reason of the Northernly situation of it. Divided commonly into *Haut* or *Highbretagne*, and *Basse* or *Lowbretagne*: the first containing the more Eastern, and the last the Western parts hereof. Neither of the two much furnished with navigable or notable Rivers; the defect of which, the Neighborhood of the Sea supplieth, affording more capacious Havens, and convenient Ports, than any one Province in this Kingdom.

To begin therefore with the Havens: those of most note in the *Highbretagne*, are 1. *S. Mals*, built on a Rock within the Sea, wherewith at every high-water it is encompassed. A Bishops See, and a Port very much frequented by the *French* and *Spanish*, who use here to barter their Commodities; oftentimes spoiled by the *English*, in the Wars with *France*, especially since the time of *K. Henry* the seventh. 2. *Blanc*, a false, but little Haven, on the mouth of a little River of the same name also. Impregnablely fortified by the *Spaniards*, An. 1590, when taking opportunity of the broil in *France*, and pretending a good title to this Dukedom, on the expiring of the Male-Issue of King *Henry* the second, he thought by this door to have entered on the whole Estate; but quitted it again on the general Peace made between the Crowns. 3. *S. Brieux*, (by the *Latins* called *Fannus Sancti Bricii*) a Bishops See, and a well traded-Port, seated upon the *English* Channel. 4. *Vannes*, a Bishops See also, situate on a capacious Bay, at the mouth of the *Valais*; the chief Town of the *Vents*, whom *Cæsar* placed in this Tract, and makes them to be the mightiest people of all the *Americans*; strongest in shipping, and best seen in Affairs at Sea. 5. *Croisic*, a little Haven at the mouth of the *Loir*, and the only Haven of this part on the *Gallick* Ocean. Then in *Lowbretagne*, or the more Western parts thereof, there is, 6. *Brest*, seated upon a spacious Bay of the Western Ocean! the Key and Bulwark of this Country, and the goodliest Harbour of all *France*. 7. *Morlaix*, a convenient Port, and well frequented. 8. *Pol de Leon*, and 9. *Triguier*, both Bishops Sees, both situate on the Sea-shore, and both the chief Towns of the *Offizins*, whom *Prohm* and *Srabo* place upon this Coast: the first of them neighbored by the *Præmontary*, which they call *Le Four*, the *Goveum* of *Prohm*. 10. *Kemper Correnin*, a Bishops See also, the chief Town of that part hereof which is called *Correnville*, (and called so for the same reason as *Corwall* in *England*) situate not far from the *Foreland*, which they call *Pennarch*, opposite to *Le Four*, spoken of before. A Sea-Town this, but much talked of for the Haven, for ought I can find. 11. *Conquet*, a well-frequented Road, not far from *Brest*.

Chief places in the Midlands, 1. *Nantes*, the principal City of the *Nanneter*, (by *Prohm* called *Condræcinum*) a large, fair, strong and populous City, seated upon the *Loir*; a Bishops See, and the Metropolis of *Bretagne*. 2. *Rennes* anciently the chief Town of the *Redones*, (called *Condate* by *Prohm*) now a Bishops See, and the Parliament-City for this Country, established here, An. 1553, which maketh it very populous, and of great resort, though not fully two miles in compas. 3. *Del*, an Episcopall City also, but unwholly seated among Marishes. 4. *Dinan*, a rich and pleasant Town on the River *Nance*. 5. *L'Amblee*, the chief Town of the *Ambiliars*, spoken of by *Cæsar*. 6. *Roban*, the title and inheritance of the Dukes of *Roan*, descended from a branch of the Ducal Family of *Bretagne*, by *Mary* the second Daughter of Duke *Francis* the first, and Wife of *John*, then Viscount of *Roan*. 7. *Anjeux*, the chief Seat of the now Duke of *Vendosme*, and

and the head of his Estates in *Bretagne*. Of which possessed in the right of his Wife, the Daughter of the Duke of *Menconbury* by the Heir of *Brittany*, another of this Ducal Family. *S. Chastan-Brian*, a strong piece on the borders of *Normandy*. *9. Clifton*, the chief Town of the Duchy of *Rais*, being that part of *Bretagne* which lieth on the South-side of the *Loire*, a strong Town, and fortified with a very good Castle.

The *Britains*, whosoever they were in their first Original, were unquestionably one of the first Nations that possessed any part of *Gaul*, after the Conquest of the *Roman*. Governed at first by their own Kings, the most considerable of which, was that *Aldrems* or *Auldran*, the Son of *Solomon*; who at the fall of the *Isular Britains*, then distressed by the *Scots* and *Picts*, (as *Geoffrey of Monmouth* telleth the story) sent over *Constantine* his Brother with a complete Army to their Aid; who having valiantly repulsed the Enemy, was made King of *Britain*, *An. 433*. Of whose posterity more there. Those of *Armorica* being broken by the puissance of *Charles the Great*, abandoned the name of *Kings*, and satisfied themselves with the title of *Earls*; assumed first by *Alain le Rebre*, *An. 874*, but as some say, *An. 859*, which was somewhat sooner. By *Peter of Dreux*, the sixteenth Earl; challenging his Estate in right of *Alice* his Wife, the half Sister of *Arthur*, and Daughter of *Constance*, by *Guy of Thouars*, her third Husband, the better to secure his title, this Earldom was made subject to the Vassalage of the Crown of *France*, in the time of *Lewis* the ninth; by whom *John* called the *Red*, the Son of this *Peter*, was created the first Duke of *Bretagne*, as being of the Blood-Royal of *France*, descended finally from *Robert* the first Earl of *Dreux*, one of the younger Sons of King *Lewis the Great*. Yet notwithstanding this Subjection to the Kings of *France*, the Dukes loved to ascribe to themselves the Sovereign Power, as to rule themselves, By the Grace of God, the privilege of *Feudal Gold*, and flood to high upon their terms, that *Charles* the last Duke, denied to do his homage to *Charles* the seventh, either upon his Knees, or without his Sword, according to the former custom. For which, being quarrelled by *Lewis* the IX. the Son of *Charles*, who was at better leisure to pursue the business, than his Father was, he joyined himself with *Charles Duke of Berry*, and *Charles Duke of Burgundy*, in a War against him; and thereby drew upon himself that ruin, which he endeavoured to avoid. For, in conclusion, *Charles of Berry*, and it was thought, was poisoned; *Charles of Burgundy* left his life at the Battle of *Nancy*, 1476, and a great part of his Estate was conquered by the French King. And *Francis*, this Duke, having embarked himself in the fame turbulent Ocean, must needs suffer shipwreck with his Copartners. The French K. invadeth *Bretagne*: the Duke over-charged with melancholy, dies, 1488, leaving *Anne* his Daughter and Heir, in the Power of *Charles* the 8. the Son and Successor of this *Lewis*; who contracts a marriage with the Orphan, and uniteth *Bretagne* to *France*. There were many impediments which might have hindered this Marriage, but *Charles* breaketh through them all. First, *Charles* himself had been formerly contracted to the Arch-Duke *Maximilian's* Daughter; but this he held void, because the young Lady was not of age at the time of the Contract. 2. *Anne* the Dutchess was also contracted to *Maximilian*; and this he held invalid also, because that being his Homage, he could not bestow her self without his consent. 3. *Maximilian* had by proxy married her, which marriage he consummated by a Ceremony in those days unusual. For his Ambassador attended with a great Train of Lords and Ladies, bared his Leg unto the Knee, and put the same within the Sheets of the Dutchess, taking possession thereby of her Bed and

Body. But *Charles* consulting with his Divines, was told, That this pretended Consummation, was rather an invention of Courts, than any way firm by the Laws of the Church; and therefore of no power to hinder his pursuit of this Marriage, so advantageous to his Crown. What else remains touching the union of this Dukedom to the Realm of *France*, we shall see anon; having first looked over the Succession of those Princes, who under several Titles have governed the Estate thereof, according to the best light we can get from Story.

Kings of the Britains of Gaul-Armorick.

- 385 1 *Conan*, placed here by *Maximus*.
- 2 *Grallon*, Son of *Conan*.
- 3 *Solomon*, Son of *Grallon*.
- 4 *Auldran*, or *Aldrems*, the Son of *Solomon*.
- 5 *Badis*, Son of *Auldran*.
- 6 *Hoel*, Son of *Badis*.
- 7 *Hoel II.* Son of *Hoel* the first.
- 8 *Alain*, Son of *Hoel* the second.
- 9 *Hoel III.* Son of *Alain*.
- 10 *Solomon II.* Son of *Hoel* the third.
- 11 *Alain II.* Grandchild to *Solomon* the second, the last King of *Bretagne*, of the Race of *Conan*; who dying without issue, left his Kingdom unto many Competitors, by whom distracted into many petty Tyrannies, and at last subdued by *Charles* the Great. And though they did again recover their Liberty and Kingdom, in the time of *Ludovicus Pius*, who next succeeded; yet they did not hold it long in quiet. Inomuch, as after the murder of two or three Usurpers of the Royal Title, *Alain*, surnamed *Le Rebre*, laid aside that jivious name of *Kings*, would be called only Earl of *Bretagne*. His Successors follow.

Earls and Dukes of Bretagne.

- 874 1 *Alain le Rebre*.
- 2 *Indicael* and *Colodock*, Sons of *Alain*.
- 3 *Matbrudon*, Son in Law of *Alain le Rebre*.
- 4 *Alain II.* Son of *Matbrudon*.
- 5 *Conan*, descended from K. *Solomon* the third.
- 6 *Geoffry*, Son of *Conan*.
- 7 *Alain III.* Son of *Geoffry*.
- 8 *Conan II.* Son of *Alain*.
- 9 *Hoel*, Sitters on of *Conan* the second.
- 10 *Alain IV.* called *Fergent*, Son of *Hoel*.
- 11 *Conan III.* Son of *Alain*.
- 12 *Eudon*, Husband of *Bertha*, Daughter of *Conan*.
- 13 *Conan IV.* Son of *Eudon*.
- 14 *Geoffry II.* Son of *Henry* the 3. King of *England*, Husband of *Constance*, Daughter and Heir of *Conan* the Fourth.
- 1186 15 *Arthur*, Son of *Geoffry*.
- 1202 16 *Peter of Breton*, in right of *Alice* his Wife, the half Sister of *Arthur*.
- 1250 17 *John*, the first Duke of *Bretagne*.
- 1287 18 *John II.* Son of *John* the first.
- 1305 19 *Arthur II.* Son of *John* the second.
- 1312 20 *John III.* Son of *Arthur* the second.
- 1341 21 *John Earl of Montfort*, Brothers Son of *Arthur*.
- 1399 22 *John V.* Son of *John of Montfort*.
- 1442 23 *Francis*, the Son of *John* the fifth.
- 1450 24 *Peter*, the Brother of Duke *Francis*.
- 1457 25 *Arthur III.* 2d. Son of *John Earl of Montfort*.
- 1457 26 *Francis II.* Son of *Richard Earl of Elhamper*, the Brother of Duke *Arthur* 3. the last Duke of *Bretagne*, of whom sufficiently before.
- 1484 27 *Charles* the 8. French King, succeeded in the Duke-

Dukedom of *Bretagne*, in right of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Francis II.*
1498 28. *Lewis XII.* French King, succeeded on the Death of *Charles*, in the right of the said *Anne*, whom he took to Wife: and to make a way unto her Bed, divorced himself from the Lady *Joan* his former Wife, Daughter of *Lewis XI.*

1515 29. *Francis III.* of *Bretagne*, and first of *France* succeeded in the Dukedom in right of *Claude* his Wife, the eldest Daughter of *Lewis XII.* and of *Anne of Bretagne*; by whom being made the Father of so many Children, that he had little cause to fear that the Crown would be separated from his House; in the year 1532, being the seventeenth of his Reign and Government, caused an Act to pass, with the consent of the States of *Bretagne*, for the inseparable uniting of that Dukedom to the Kingdom of *France*, and by that means divested his Posterity of it. For this Male-issue failing in *Henry III.* the rights hereof descended on the Heirs general, that is to say, on *Isabel*, Daughter of *Philip II.* of *Spain*, and of the Lady *Isabel* or *Elizabeth* his Wife, the eldest Daughter of *Henry II.* and Nece to the said *Francis I.* and after her decease (dying without Issue) on the Lady *Katharine* her Sister, married to *Charles Emmanuel* Duke of *Savoy*. For whom when *Philip of Spain* claimed this Estate, the French pretended a Law against it of their own devising, viz. That no Estate being incorporated into that Crown, could be aliened from it. In proper Law, and Cousin-German to the *Salique*; but such as served their turn by the help of the *English*, who desired not to have the *Spaniards* so near Neighbours to them.

Most of our former Earls of *Richmond* were Earls and Dukes of this House. Their Arms were *Ermin*.

6. The Dukedom and Estates of ANJOU.

THE Dukedom and Estates of *ANJOU*, taking them in the full Latitude and extent thereof, are bounded on the East, with *La Beaulle*; on the West, with *Bretagne*; and part of *Poitou*; on the North, with *Normandy*; and on the South, with part of *Berry*, and *Poitou*. In which circumference are comprehended the three small Provinces of *Anjou*, *Tourain*, and *Main*: most commonly accounted of as parts and members of *La Beaulle*, the ancient inhabitants whereof, in the times of the *Romans*, were the *Andei*, as *Cæsar* (or the *Andegavi* as *Pliny*) calls them, the *Turneri*, and the *Comantani*, accounted afterwards a part of the Province of *Languedocensis tertius*.

The Country for the most part is very fruitful and pleasant, especially in *Tourain*; as is the whole tract upon the *Loire*. *Anjou* is somewhat the more hilly, but otherwise little inferior to *Tourain*, affording plenty of White Wines, the best in *France*; and yielding from those Hills above 40 Rivers, falling into the *Loire* from thence: the chief whereof are *Mayeune*, 2. *Vienne*, 3. *Dive*, and 4. *Sartre*.

1. *ANJOU*, called *Andegavia* by the *Latines*, is situate in the midst betwixt *Main* and *Tourain*, so called from the *Andegavi*, the old Inhabitants of these parts. Principal Cities are, 1. *Angiers*, (by *Ptolemy* called *Julianogery*) of a large circuit, and well built, the See of a Bishop, reckoning in it 15 Parishes besides the Cathedral. It is seated on the River *Sartre* in a very good air, and therefore chosen for the Seat of an University, founded here by

Lewis II. Duke of *Anjou*, the Son of King *John*, *Anno* 1388. 2. *Beaufort*, a Town belonging formerly to the Dukes of *Lancaster*, in which *John* of *Gaunt* so much delighted, that he caufed all the Children that he had by *Katharine Swinford*, his third Wife, to be called *Beauforts*: which *Beauforts* were afterwards Dukes of *Somerset* and *Exeter*, and Earls of *Dorset*. This Town came to the House of *Lancaster*, by the marriage of *Blanche of Artois*, unto *Edmond* surnamed *Crouch-back*, second Son to our *Henry III.* created by his Father, the first Earl of *Lancaster*. Memorable in these latter times for giving the Title of a Dutchess to Madam *Katharine*, the beloved Mistress of King *Henry IV.* by whom she was Mother of *Cæsar* now Duke of *Yendome*, and of *Alexander* not long since the Grand Prior of *France*. With reference to which, the second Son of the Duke of *Yendome* is: as the eldest with relation to his Mother was made Duke of *Meveaux*. 3. *Baugie*, near which was fought that memorable Battle betwixt the *English* and the *French*, wherein the *English* lost the day; and *Thomas Duke of Clarence*, Brother to *Henry V.* was there unfortunately slain, *Anno* 1422. 4. *Saumur*, pleasantly situate on the *Loire*, and for long time one of the Cautionary Towns in the hands of those of the *Reformed Religion*: of whom it is the only entire University in this Kingdom, especially famous for the Learned *Philip du Mury*, Lord of *Pléffris*, sometimes the Governour hereof. 5. *Loches*, seated on the River *Indre*, the Castle whereof being mounted on a steep high Rock, is thought to be one of the strongest pieces of all *France*. 6. *La Fleche*, of special name at the present for a College of *Jesuits*, one of the fairest in this Kingdom. The word in the French tongue signifieth an Arrow (whence those who make Bows and Arrows have the name of *Flechers*). At *Nola* in the Realm of *Naples*, there is another College of them, called *D'Arque*, the Bow: on which one wittily composed this ensuing Distich.

Arcum Nola dedit, dedit ille alma Sagittam
Callia: quis Funem, quem mensus, dabit?

That is to say,

Nola the Bow, and *France* the Shaft did bring:
But who shall help them to the Hempen-string?

2. On the South-east of *Anjou*, lieth the Country of *TOURENNE*, the ancient Seat of the *Turneri*: which, for the wholesomeness of the Air, the pleasantness of the Country, and admirable plenty of all Commodities, is by some called the Garden of *France*. Principal Cities in it, 1. *Amboise*, pleasantly seated on the *Loire*, and beautified with one of the fairest Castles in *France*, both for the gallantry of the Building, and beautifullness of the Prospect. 2. *Tours*, by *Ptolemy* called *Cesardammus*, and the *Turonum Civitas* of *Antoninus*, the Metropolis of *Languedocensis tertius*, and an Archbishop's See: a fair, rich, and well-traded Town, situate on the banks of the *Loire*, in a most sweet & pleasant Country. Famous in that those of the *Reformed Religion*, from the Gate of *S. Hugo*, at which they use to issue out to their Assemblies in the fields, had the name of *Hugonots*. Given to them, as some others think, as the Disciples of the night-walking Spirit (or *Robin Goodfellow*) which they call *S. Hugo*, in regard they had their first meetings for the most part, in the nights; as had the Primitive Christians in the times of their Persecutions. Some, more improbably, (and indeed ridiculously) derive the name from the first words of an Apology which they are fabled to have made to the King; which were, *Huc nos venimus*: tancying

fancying, that as the *Profranks* did derive that Appellation from the words *Profranks* and *Proframur* to often used by them in their *Apology* to *Charles V.* so from those words, *Huc nos*, came the name of *Hugonots*, or *Huc-nots*. But more assuredly famous for the great Battle fought near it by *Charles Martel*, *Mayr* of the Palace, and Father of *Peppin King of France*, against an Army of 40000 *Moor*s, led by *Alderman*, Lieutenant General in *Spain*; for *Eudold* or *Iffan* the great *Caliph*: of which 370000 lost their lives in the place, *An. 734*. 3. *Laudun*, 4. *Riebelien*, pleasantly seated in a rich and flourishing Soil, as the name importeth. Of no great note till the time of the late great Cardinal of *Riebelien*, who took name from hence, by whom it was made one of the neatest Towns (for the bigness of it) in all this Kingdom, and honoured with the Titles of a Dukedom and *Pairie* of *France*.

As for the Fortunes of this Province (for of *Anjou* we shall speak more at large anon) it had a while its own Proprietary Earls of the House of *Blais*; conferred by *Hugh Capet* upon *Odor* Earl of *Blais* and *Champagne*: and by him given, together with the Earldom of *Blais*, to *Theobald*, 4. or *Thibault* his eldest Son, (his second Son named *Stephen* succeeding in *Champagne*) who in the year 1043, was vanquished and slain by *Charles Martel* Earl of *Anjou*, and this Province seized on by the Victor, who afterwards made *Tours*, his ordinary Seat and Residence. Part of which Earldom it continued, till the seizure of *Anjou*, and all the rest of the *English* Provinces in *France*, on the sentence passed upon King *John*. After which time dismembered from it, it was conferred on *John*, the fourth Son of King *Charles VI.* with the title and title of Duke of *Touren*; and he deceasing without Issue, it was bestowed with the same title, on *Charles* the eldest Son of *Lewis Duke of Orleans* (in the life of his Father;) the same who afterwards succeeding in the Dukedom of *Orleans*, was taken Prisoner by the *English* at the Battle of *Agincourt*, kept Prisoner 25 years in *England*, and finally was the Father of King *Lewis XII.*

3. On the North side of *Anjou*, betwixt it and *Normandy*, lieth the Province of *MAINE*; *Comitatus Cenomanensis* in our *Latine* Writers. So called of the *Cenomani*, the old Inhabitants of this Tract in the time of *Cæsar*; some of which, with the *Brii*, *Senones*, and other Nations of the *Gauls* had in the former time passed over the *Alpes*, and there possessed themselves of those Countries, which now pass under the name and account of *Lombardy*. The chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Mans*, *Cenomanensis Civitas* in *Antoninus*, by *Pliny* called *Vindinium*; seated on the meeting of *Huine* and *Sartre*; the principal of the Province, and a Bishop's See: most memorable in the elder times for giving the title of an Earl to that famous *Rowland*, the Sisters Son of *Charlemagne*, one of the *Twelve Peers* of *France*; (the subject of many notable Poems, under the name of *Orlando* *Uimorato*, *Orlando* *Furioso*, besides many of the old *Romances*) who was Earl of *Mans*. 2. *Mayenne*, on the Banks of a River of the same name, (*Meduna* in *Latine*) the title of the second branch of the House of *Guis*: famous for *Charles Duke of Mayenne*, who held out for the *League* against *Henry IV.* A Prince not to be equalled in the Art of War, only unfortunate in employing it in so ill a cause. 3. *Vitrain*, upon the edge of *Bretagne*, of which little memorable. 4. *La Val*, not far from the head of the River *Mayenne*; of note for giving both name and title to the Earls of *Laval*, an ancient Family, allied unto the Houses of *Vendôme*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, and other the best of *France*. Few else of any note in this little Country; which once subsisting of it self under its own

natural Lords and Princes, was at last united to the Earldom of *Anjou*, by the marriage of the Lady *Guiburge*, Daughter and Heir of *Heli*, the last Earl hereof, to *Foulk* Earl of *Anjou*, *An. 1083*, or thereabouts. The Fortunes of which great Estate it hath always followed, since that time.

But as for *Anjou* it self, the principal part of this goodly Patrimony, it was by *Charles the Bald* conferred on *Robert a Saxon* Prince, for his Valour then against the *Normans*, *An. 870*, which *Robert* was Father of *Eudes* King of *France*, of *Richard Duke of Burgundy*, and of *Robert* who succeeded in the Earldom of *Anjou*; Competitor with *Charles the Simple* for the Crown it self, as the next Heir to his Brother *Eudes*, who died King thereof. Slain in the pursuit of this great quarrel, he left this Earldom, with the Title of Earl of *Paris*, and his pretensions to the Crown, unto *Hugh* his Son, furnished the Great: who to make good his claim to the Crown, against *Lewis IV.* Son of *Charles the Simple*, conferred the Earldom of *Anjou*, and the County of *Gastinois*, on *Geoffrey* furnished *Gryffgonelle*, a renowned Warrior, and a great stickler in his cause, in whose Race it continued near 300 years. How the two Counties of *Main* and *Touren* were joynted to it, hath been shewn before. *Geoffrey* the Son of *Foulk III.* married *Maud*, Daughter to *Henry I.* of *England*, and Widow of *Henry* the Fourth Emperor: from whom proceeded *Henry II.* King of *England*, and Earl of *Anjou*. But *John* his Son, forfeiting his Estates in *France* (as the French pretend) *Anjou* returned unto the Crown: and afterwards was conferred by King *Lewis IX.* on his Brother *Charles*; who in right of *Beatrice* his Wife was Earl of *Provence*, and by *Pepe Urban IV.* was made King of *Naples* and *Sicily*. Afterwards it was made a Dukedom by King *Charles V.* (*Taurin* being first dismembered from it) in the person of *Lewis* of *France* his second Brother to whom this fair Estate was given, as second Son of King *John* of *France*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, and consequently, the next heir to *Charles de Valois*, the last Earl hereof (the King his Brother yielding up all his right unto him.) Finally it returned again unto the Crown in the time of *Lewis XI.* The Earls and Dukes hereof having been veiled with the Diadems of several Countries, following in this order.

The Earls of Anjou of the Line of Saxony

- 870 1. Robert of Saxony, the first Earl of Anjou.
- 875 2. Robert II. Competitor for the Crown of France with Charles the Simple, as Brother of Eudes the last King.
- 922 3. Hugh the Great, Lord of Gastinois, Earl of Paris, Countable of France, and Father of Hugh Capet.
- 926 4. Geoffrey Gryffgonelle, by the Donation of Hugh the Great, whose Party he had followed in the War of France, with great fidelity and courage.
- 938 5. Foulk, Earl of Anjou, the Son of Geoffrey.
- 987 6. Geoffrey II. furnished Martel, for his great valour.
- 1047 7. Geoffrey II. Nephew of Geoffrey II. by one of his Sisters.
- 1075 8. Foulk II. Brother of Geoffrey III. gave Gastinois (which was his proper inheritance) to King Philip I. that by his help he might recover the Earldom of Anjou from his part, wherein he was excluded by his Brother Geoffrey.

G. Geoffrey

- 1080 9. Geoffrey IV. Son of Foulk II.
- 1083 10. Foulk III. Brother of Geoffrey; King of Jerusalem in the right of Milfred his Wife.
- 1143 11. Geoffrey V. furnished Plantagenet.
- 1150 12. Henry II. King of England, Son of Earl Geoffrey and Maud his Wife, Daughter of King Henry I.
- 1162 13. Geoffrey VI. third Son of King Henry II. made Earl of Anjou on his marriage with Constance, the Heir of Bretagne.
- 1186 14. Arthur, Son of Geoffrey and Constance.
- 1202 15. John, King of England, succeeded on the death of Arthur dispossessed of his Estates in France by Philip Augustus, immediately on the death of Arthur, *An. 1202*.

Earls and Dukes of Anjou, of the Line of France.

- 1262 1. Charles, Brother of King Lewis IX. Earl of Anjou, and Provence, King of Naples, and Sicilia, &c.
- 1315 2. Charles of Valois, Son of Philip III. Earl of Anjou, in right of his Wife, Niece of the former Charles, by his Son and Heir of the same name; the Father of Philip de Valois, French King.
- 1318 3. Lewis of Valois, the second Son of Charles died without issue, *An. 1325*.
- 1376 4. Lewis of France, the second Son of King John, the Son of Philip de Valois, created the first Duke of Anjou by King Charles his Brother; and adopted by Queen Joan of Naples, King of Naples, Sicily, and Jerusalem, and Earl of Provence.
- 1385 5. Lewis III. Duke of Anjou, and Earl of Provence, and Main; titular King of Sicily, Naples, and Jerusalem.
- 1416 6. Lewis IV. Successor to his Father in Estate and Titles.
- 1430 7. Rene, the Brother of Lewis, by the adoption of Queen Joan II. was for a while possessed of Naples; but presently ousted by Alfonso of Aragon, and died the titular King of Naples, Sicily, and Jerusalem; the Father of Queen Marguerite, Wife of Henry VI. and Duke of Bar, in right of Violant his Mother.
- 1480 8. Charles Earl of Main, Nephew to Rene by his third Brother Charles, at his decease left Anjou, and all the rest of his Estates to King Lewis XI. *An. 1481*. Since which never otherwise alienated, than as an honorary Title of the third Son of France.

It is to be observed here (according to our method in other places) that Rene King of Sicily, &c. and Duke of Anjou, instituted an Order of Knighthood, called of the *Croissant*: the Knights whereof carried a *Crescent*, or Half-moon, on their right Arms, with this Motto, *L'Oie en Croissant*; encouraging them thereby to seek the increase of valour and reputation.

The Arms of this Dukedom, were France, a Border Gales.

7. LA BEAUSSE.

LA BEAUSSE, (not reckoning in the Provinces left before described) is bounded on the East, with France specially and primarily so called; on the West, with Anjou, Maine, Tourain, and some part of

Berry (on the North, with Normandy; and on the South, with Nivernais, and the rest of Berry. It is called *Belfia* in *Latine* Writers; both names derived from the pleasantness and beauties of it; this Country being not only looked on as the Garden of France, but the Nurce of the great City of Paris, which from the breasts thereof receiveth the best part of its sustenance.

The principal Nations of the whole in the time of the Romans, were the *Carnutes*, which inhabited the greatest part, and the *Samniti* near the Loire, part of *Gallia Celtica*, and callt into the Province of *Lugdunensis quarta*, by the Emperor *Constantine*. Divided by the French into the *Higher*, the *Lower*, and the *Intermediaire*.

1. The HIGHER BEAUSSE is that part which lieth next to Normandy, of which the principal Towns are, 1. *Dreux*, seated upon the River *Eureux*, supposed to be the seat of the ancient *Druides*, who held here their *Parliaments* or *Sessions* for administration of Justice. The title and inheritance of Robert, one of the younger Sons of King *Lewis* the Great, and Grand-father of that *Peter of Dreux*, who succeeded *Arthur*, the Son of *Geoffrey Plantagenet*, in the Earldom of *Bretagne*. 2. *Montfort*, an Earldom, the Title and Estate of *John Earl of Montfort*, furnished the *Valiant*, who succeeded in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, by the aid of the *English*, *An. 1341*. 3. *Chartres*, called anciently *Carnutum Civitas*, (but by *Pliny*, *Atricum*) from whence the Country hereabouts was called *Le Paris Chartrain*; seated in an uneven place, varied with fertile rising Hills, so that the Earth lieth stands upon the top of an Hill, and the Well spreads it self in the bottom of a Plain, through the middle whereof runs the River *Eure*, which as soon as it comes to the Walls of the City, on the South side, divides it self into three branches, two whereof encompass the City round about, and the third running through the middle thereof, serveth the Town with many Mills for the use of the people: doth afterwards unite it self with the rest into one main Channel. A very fair and goodly City, a Bishop's See, and one of the *Vidameries* of France; anciently giving the title of an Earldom also to the House of *Blais*, from the time that *Theobald* the second Earl of *Blais* extorted it by strong hand from the Bishops hereof, about the year 950, continuing in the possession of that Family till the year 1200, or thereabouts, when sold by *Mabent* or *Maud*, the Heir Proprietor hereof, Wife of *Hugh de Chabillon*, in her right, called Earl of *Blais*, to King *Philip the Fair*, for an Annual Pension of 4000 *Livres*. 4. *Ameau*, a Town of the Territory of *Chartres*, memorable for the great slaughter made here by *Henry Duke of Guise*, of the German Auxiliaries, invading France with a right formidable Army in behalf of the *Hugonots*, *An. 1587*.

2. The LOWER BEAUSSE is that which lieth towards *Nivernais* and *Berry*; and is subdivided into *Sologne*, and *Orleanois*. In *SOLOGNE*, which lieth close to *Berry*, the chief places of note, are, 1. *Romoranais*, seated on the *Souldre*, the chief Town of this Tract. 2. *Meunay*. 3. *La Fertor La Feris St. Bernard*, of which nothing memorable. In *ORLEANOIS*, which lieth more Northwards upon the River of *Loyre*, are, 1. *Targeau*, a Town once of very great strength, and one of the out-works of *Orleans*. 2. *Clerf*, called also *Clerf* of *Nigre-dame*, from the Church there built unto our Lady, 3. *Tury*, and 4. *Angerville*, both in the ordinary Road between *Paris* and *Orleans*; the principal City of all *Beauce*, called *Gennabum* in the time of *Cæsar*; repaired, or rather new built by the Emperor *Aurelius*, *An. 276*. From these named *Aurelia*, the Country round about it *Aurellanensis*, now *Orleanois* and *Orleanois*. The Country generally very fruitful and yielding a most excellent and delicious Wine; which for the strength and intoxicating power thereof, is banished

the French Kings Cellar by especial Edict. The City very pleasant, seated on the River *Loyre*, well built, situate in a sweet Air, and planted with a Civil and ingenious People; who are said to speak the best Language of any in France. For a time it was the chief Seat of a distinct Kingdom, (according to the unprovident humour of the *Merovingians*) the Lot of *Clodomir* Son of *Clouis the Great*, and of *Gunttram* Son of *Cloataire*, both Kings of Orleans; as also was *Theodorick*, the second Son of *Childbert* King of *Metz*, on the death of *Gunttram*. But *Sigibert* his Son, being vanquished by *Cloataire II.* this Kingdom extending to the shores of the *Aquitain* Ocean, was added unto that of France. Orleans since that time, content with the lower Title, hath of late oftentimes with great prudence, been made the honourary Title of the second Sons of France, called Dukes hereof, the first who had the Title, being *Philip II.* Son of *Philip de Valois*, from a base Son of whose, the Earls of *Dunois*, and Dukes of *Longueville* do derive themselves, and *Lewis* the second Son of *Charles I.* Grand-father of *Lewis XI.* French King. It is a See Episcopal, a Balivick, or *Siege Presidial*, and an University. The See Episcopal founded in the Church of *St. Croix*, miserably ruined by the *Huguenots* in the Civil Wars out of mere hatred to the name. The *Siege Presidial* seated here by King *Henry II.* 1551. for the sake of his Subjects of these parts, in suits not worth the troubling of the Courts of *Paris*. The University erected by King *Philip le bel*, An. 1312. thought to speak properly, it be an Hall only for the reading of the Civil Laws, the only Learning there professed, and for that considerable. A Town now not of so great strength as in former times, when for some months it held out against the whole Power of the *English* rescued from them at last by the valour of *Joan the Virgin*, whose Statue (like a man of Arms) is still preserved on the Bridge-gate of this City; near which great *Montaigne* Earl of *Salisbury* had his Fatal blow.

The MIDDLE or intermediate *BEAUSSE* lieth betwixt the former; in which the places of chief note are, 1. *Blais*, seated also on the *Loir*, on a found Air, and fruitful Country; the Nursery for the most part of the Kings Children, for that cause much resorted to by the Nobility, and honoured sometimes with the residence of the Kings themselves: it being in the Council Chamber of the Kings House here, that *Henry of Lorrein*, Duke of *Guise*, the chief contriver of the terrible *Massacre* at *Paris*, and Author of the *Holy League*, was slain by the command of King *Henry III.* An. 1589. 2. *Châteauneuf*, the chief Town of the Earldom of *Dunois*, (the honour and Estate of *John Earl of Dunois*, commonly called the *Bastard of Orleans*, one of the best Soldiers of his time, and so approved by his exploits against the *English*) mounted upon the top of an high Hill, at the confluence of the *Loire*, and *Aigre*. 3. *Laverdin*, most remarkable for giving name and honour to a noble Family, which depending upon the House of *Vendôme* (to the *Signeury* whereof it doth belong) brought forth that valiant Commander, *Monsieur de Tardieu*, a faithful and courageous Follower of King *Henry IV.* in his long War against the *League*. 4. *Vendôme*, (*Vindocinnum* in *Latine*) the chief Town of the Dukedom of *Vendôme*; not otherwise of note than for the Earls and Dukes which have born this Title; of which as being the Progenitors of the Kings now regnant, I have thought fit to add the ensuing Catalogue; premising first, that this Earldom came to the House of France by the marriage of *Katharine* daughter and heir of *John*, the last Earl of the former Race, to *John I.* the Earl of the other Family.

Earls and Dukes of Vendôme.

- 1386 1. *John of Bourbon*, Grandchild of *Lewis I.* Duke of *Bourbon*, the first Earl of *Vendôme* of this Family.
- 1432 2. *Lewis of Bourbon*, a confederate with *Joan the Virgin* in her actions against the *English*.
- 1446 3. *John of Bourbon II.* from whom descended the Princes of *Roch-Surgen*, and the Dukes of *Montpensier*.
- 1472 4. *Francis of Bourbon*.
- 1495 5. *Charles of Bourbon*, the first Duke of *Vendôme*, from whose youngest Son, called *Lodovick*, or *Lewis*, descend the now Princes of *Conde*, and Earls of *Souffray*.
- 1532 6. *Antony of Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendôme*, and King of *Naparra*.
- 1562 7. *Henry of Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendôme*, and King of *Naparra*, afterwards King of France also, by the name of *Henry IV.*
8. *Cesar de Vendôme*, of the Sons of *Henry IV.* by the Dutchels of *Beaufort*, created by his Father Duke of *Vendôme*, and once designed his Successor in the Crown of France. Afterwards by the procurement of the King his Father, married to the Daughter and Heir of *Philibert Emanuel*, Duke of *Mercuray*, (a younger branch of the House of *Lorrein*) possessed of a fair and goodly Estate in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, in the right of his Wife, a Daughter and Heir of the House of *Martignac* (a branch of the Family of those Dukes.) By means whereof the Duke of *Vendôme* hath not only a large inheritance, but great authority in that Country.

The Arms of the Earls and Dukes of *Vendôme*, were and are, *Azure*, six Flower de Lices, Or, 3, 2, 1. Those of the former Family affirmed by *Bara* to have been France, on a Bend *Gules*, three Lions or, Or.

But the great Lords of this Country were the Earls of *Blais*, possessed not only of the Earldom of *Chabry*, (a fair and goodly Signeury) in the highest *Beausse*, but also of the whole Country of *Tourain*, a better Patrimony and Estate than that; which how they were alienated from this House, we have seen before. And as for the Earldom of *Blais* it self, it contained a large and gallant Patrimony in the middle *Beausse*, thereto belonging; which being after sold to the Dukes of *Orleans*, gave the first greatness to that House. As for the Earls of *Blais* themselves, they fetch their Pedigree from one *Gerlon* a noble Dane (Companion in Arms unto *Rollo* the first Duke of *Normandy*) in his acquiring of that Dukedom, by *Charles the Simple*, created the first Earl hereof, An. 920; or thereabouts, branching it self into the Houses of *Blais* and *Champagne*; sometimes united into one person, but for the most part, and at last divided into two great Families; *Stephen* King of *England*, commonly called *Stephen of Blais*, derived both his name and Parentage from the Earls of this House, as being Son of *Theobald*, the fifth Earl of *Blais*, by *Maud* one of the Daughters of *William* Duke of *Normandy*, and King of *England*, famed the Conqueror. From this *Theobald* the Earls of *Blais* continued in the Masculine Line, till the year 1219, under nine Princes in the total: of the House of *Gerlon*: And then it fell by the Heirs general, to the noble Family of *Chastillon*, continuing theirs till the year 1391, when sold by *Guy de Chastillon*, the last Earl of that House, to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, he being then Childless, and wholly governed by his wife (a Daughter of the House of *Namur*) who could not otherwise maintain her great prodigality, but by ready money, United finally to the Crown by *Lewis*

Lewis the Grandson of this *Lewis*, on his succession to the Kingdom after *Charles VIII.*

The Arms of these great Earls were *Gules*, three *Falls*, *Vaire*, a Chief Or.

8. NIVERNOIS.

NIVERNOIS is bounded on the North, with *La Beausse*; on the South, with *Bourbonis*; on the East, with *Champagne*; and on the West, with *Berry*; so called from *Nivernum*, or *Nevers* the chief Town thereof.

This is the smallest Province in all this Continent, but to be handled here apart, because not easily reduced unto any other, as all the rest of the lesser Provinces may be. The Soil not very fruitful of Corn or Wine, but plentifully stored with rich Pastures, and well shaded with Woods, in which are found some Mines of Iron, interspersed with Silver, and many Quarries of good Stone, of much use for building. The Territory being but small, we cannot look for many Towns of note and consequence. Of those that be the principal are, 1. *Pontigny*, remarkable for an ancient Abbey, the burial-place of some of the old Earls of *Nevers*. 2. *Nevers* it self, upon the *Loire*, beautified with a Bridge of twenty Arches, but otherwise not great or fair, though the chief of this small Country, and the seat of the Dukes. The reputation which it hath, proceeding specially from the Antiquity thereof, and the Earls and Dukes from thence denominated.

Once part of the *Burgundian* Conquests, and from them won by the *French*; it came to have Princes of its own, almost as early as any other Country in the Realm of France. Who was the first that had the Title of Earl of *Nevers*, and therewithal the Lordship of this Estate, I can no where find; but sure I am, that in the year 1001, both the Estate and Title were enjoyed by *Laudin* a Nobleman of the *Burgundian* Race, who on the death of *Henry IV.* Duke of *Burgundy*, was like to have seized on that Estate, in despite of *Robert* King of France, who pretended to it, Passing through many Families, it came at last to the House of *Burgogne*, in the person of *Odo*, the Son of *Hugh* the fourth of that name, Duke of *Burgundy*, by the Heir-General of *Nevers*; and from that to the House of *Flanders*, by the marriage of *Yoland*, or *Burgogne*, to *Robert of Bethune*, Earl of *Flanders*, 1512, whose Son, named *Lewis*, married the Heir of *Rebel*, uniting by that marriage, these Estates under his command. Together with the rest of the Rights of *Flanders*, it came again by marriage, to *Philip the Hardy*, Duke of *Burgundy*; who with the liking and consent of his elder Sons, (otherwise well provided for) conferred both it and *Katbol*, on his third Son *Philip*, whose Niece *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir of *John* of *Burgogne*, brought it in marriage to *Adolph* of *Cleve*, her Husband, An. 1484. In the Person of *Francis*, the fourth Earl of this House, it was made a Dukedom; and by his Daughter *Henrietta*, Sister and Heir of *Francis* the last Prince of this Family, was brought in Dowry to *Lewis de Gonzaga*, second Son of *Frederick* Duke of *Munna*, An. 1563, whose Son *Charles* succeeded his Father and Mother in the Dukedom of *Nevers*, and *Vincen* of *Gonzaga*, his Cousin German, in the Dukedom of *Munna*. And here it is to be observed, that though this Estate hath passed through so many Families; yet the Rights and Regalities thereof, have been till continued; not being hitherto reduced (for ought that I can find) under any of the Parliaments of France, as all the rest of that Kingdom

is, but such parts thereof as are either under other Princes, or else enjoy the Privileges of a free Estate.

The Arms hereof are, *Azure*, within a Border *Compans*, *Gules*, and *Argent*, three *Flower de Lys*, Or.

9. The Dukedom of BOURBON.

THE Dukedom of *BOURBON*, in the full power and extent thereof, comprehended *Bourbonnais*, *Paroiss*, *Beau-jolais*, and *Auvergne*; all now reverted to the Crown.

1. *BOURBONNOIS* hath on the East, the Dukedom of *Burgundy*; on the West, *Berry*; on the North, *Nivernois*, and a Corner of *Galkinois*; on the South, *Auvergne*; so called from *Bourbon*, (for distinction sake, called *Bourbon Archenbauld*) the chief Town thereof. The Country very well Wooded, and of excellent Pasturage; which makes the people more intent to grazing and feeding Cattel, than they are to Tillage; and is watered with the Rivers of *Loire*, *Tonne*, and *Allier*, which are counted navigable; besides *Aron*, *Aovins*, *Lisenter*, *Lambols*, and some lesser streams.

It is divided into the *Higher* and *Lower*; in the *Higher* which is more mountainous and hilly, there is no other Town of note than that of *Montaigne*, situate in the Country of *Combraille*; the *Signeury*, as I take it, of *Michel de Montaigne*, the Author of the Book of *Essays*. But in the *Lower Bourbonnais*, are, 1. *Molins*, esteemed the Center of all France; situate on the *Allier*, a *Ballage*, and the chief Town of this Country; the River yielding great plenty of Fish, but of *Salmons* specially; the Town adorned with a fair Castle, and that beautified with one of the finest Gardens in France; in which are many trees of Lemmons and Oranges. 2. *Bourbon Archenbauld*, and 3. *Bourbon Ancien*; the former of the two, seated upon the *Loire*, and giving name to the whole Province; of great resort by reason of its Medicinal waters. 4. *St. Paurcin*, and 5. *Varennes* Ganat, upon the Frontiers of *Auvergne*. 6. *Chancelle*, 7. *Charroux*, 8. *Palisse*, 9. *Souvigni*, 10. *Amand*.

The ancient Inhabitants were part of the *Hedui*, who being waisted in their wars against the *Romans*, a great part of their Country was, by *Julius Caesar* conferred on the *Boii*, a German Nation, who coming with the *Helvetians* into *Gaul*, and unwilling upon their defeat to go home again, were by him planted in this Tract, at the request of the *Hedui*, who desired it of him; and possibly the *Hedui* might be willing to have these *Baii* dwell amongst them, not only to fill up their numbers, and manure the waste Grounds of their Country; but in regard of some nearer tie that was between them: it being conceived by some Learned men, that these *Baii*, which together with these *Cenmanni*, *Senones*, and other *Gallick* Nations, crossed over the *Alpes*, had been originally of these parts; and being driven out of *Italy* by the conquering *Romans*, fell into *Germany*, and from thence sent those Auxiliaries to attend the *Helvetians* in their journey, spoken of before. Made subject to the *Romans*, with the rest of *Gallia*; and by them reckoned as a part of *Aquitanica*; it continued under their command, till the coming of the *Burgundians*, by whom it was subdued, and made a part of their Kingdom; in the subvertig of which Kingdom, it was (together with *Beau-jolais*) subdued by the more powerful *French*; and how disposed of afterwards, we shall see anon, having first taken a view of the other Provinces.

2. **FORRETT**, is bounded on the East, with *Beau-jolois* on the West, with *Auvergne* on the North, with *Bourbonnois*, and on the South with a part of *Languedoc*. The Country populous and large, but not very fruitful; hilly and mountainous, much of the nature of the Wood-lands. The Air a little of the coldest to afford good Wines; but that sufficiently recompensed by abundance of Pit-coal; by which they have very good fires at a cheap rate. The people are conceived to be none of the wifely, but withal, very greedy and covetous of gain.

The chief Towns in it are, 1. *Mont-brison*, seated on the *Loire*. 2. *Feurs*, seated on the same River, called anciently, *Forum Segisfanorum*, the chief Town of the *Segisfani*, or *Seesfani*, whom *Cesar* and others mention in this part of *Gaul*. 3. *St. Stephen*, (or *Etienne*) in *Ferrand*, near the head of that River. 4. *St. Germain*. 5. *St. Rimborg*. 6. *St. Bonnet le Chasteau*. 7. *St. Guernier*, &c. of which little memorable.

This Country of *Forrest* was anciently a part of the Earldom of *Lyons*; difmembered from it at or about the same time with *Beau-jolois*; and was held by a long succession of Earls Proprietors of it, as a State distinct, till *Rognaud*, Lord of *Forrest*, the Son of Earl *Guy*, by the marriage of *Isabel*, Daughter and Heir of *Humbert* Earl of *Beau-jen*, joined them both together; which was about the year 1265; parted again after his decease, *An*. 1280. *Guy* being his eldest Son, succeeding in *Forrest*, and *Lewis* his second Son, in *Beau-jen*. How they became united in the House of *Bourbon*, we shall see anon.

3. **BEAU JOLOIS**, so called from *Beau-jen*, the chief Town thereof, taketh up the tract of ground betwixt the *Loire* and the *Saône*; and betwixt *Lionnois* and *Forrest*. A Country of no great extent, but very remarkable for the Lords and Princes of it: who have been men of great eminence in their several times. The chief Town of it, is *Beau-jen* beautified with a goodly Castle, pleasantly seated on the brow of a rising Mountain, from whence perhaps it took the name; as the great *Keep* in *Farnham* Castle, was in the same sense, and for the same pleasant situation, called *Joyous Guard*, in the time of *Lancelot du lake*, whose that Castle was. Which appears further by a Tower built by *Constantinople*, by *Guisehard* the third of that name, Lord thereof, (being then Embassador to the Emperor, from King *Philip Augustus*) with this Inscription, *Turris Belli-jocundis*; which there continued to be seen a long time after. 4. *Belle-ville*, where is an Abby founded by *Humbert* II. *Anno* 1158. 5. *Ville-Franche*, environed with Walls by *Humbert* IV. whose Son *Guisehard* III. above mentioned, founded here a Convent of *Franciscans*, called to this day, *Minorette*. 6. *Noirmode*. 5. *St. Maurice*. 6. *Ustre*. 7. *Obeser*, concerning which, there have been long and many Wars betwixt the Earls of *Forrest*, and these Lords of *Beau-jen*.

This Country, as that other of *Forrest*, was once part of the Earldom of *Lyons* in the partage of which Estate, it fell to *Omphroy*, one of the Brothers of Earl *Artand*. *Anno* 989, whose Successors had no other Title than Lords of *Beau-jen*. They were most of them men of great Piety, Founders of many Collegiate and Conventual Churches; some of them men of action also: *Humbert* the second, and the fifth, Adventurers in the Wars of the Holy Land; *Richard* II. in those against the *English*; *Guisehard* IV. made Constable of France, by King *Lewis* IX. But the House failing in this *Guisehard*, it was united unto that of the Earls of *Forrest*, as before is said, in the person of *Rognand*, Earl thereof, whose Son and Successor, called

Lewis was also Constable of France; as *Edward*, the Grandchild of this *Lewis*, a Marshall of it. But at the last it fell into the hands of a lewd and wicked Prince, *Edward* II. who being imprisoned at *Paris* for his great Offences, and overlaid with Wars by the Dukes of *Savoy*; made a donation, or Free-gift, of all his Signatures, to *Lewis* Duke of *Bourbon*, furnished the God; the direct Heir of *Guy* Earl of *Forrest*, the eldest Son of *Rognand* Earl of *Forrest*, the Lord of *Beau-jen* above mentioned, and consequently of next kin to him *An*. 1400.

4. **AUVERGNE** hath on the East, *Forrest*, and *Lyonois*; on the West, *Limousin*, *Perigow*, and *Quercy*; on the South, part of *Languedoc*; and on the North, *Berry*, and *Bourbonnois*. It is divided into the *Higher* and *Lower*. The *Lower* being called *Limaigne*, is fruitful in a very eminent degree. The *Higher*, mountainous and barren. In this last, the Towns of chief note are, 1. *St. Flour*, a Bishops See of an impregnable situation. 2. *Arilla*, on the River *Jourdain*, defended with a strong Castle on the top of a Rock. 3. *Beauregard*, on the River *Gardon*. 4. *Carlat*. 5. *Murat*. 6. *Billon*, of which little to be said in ancient stories. In the *Lower*, called *Lemaigne*, 'torn a River of that name which falls into the *Allier*: there is, 1. *Clermont*, a Bishops See, fair and pleasing for the situation, and Fountains descending from the Hills of the higher *Auvergne*, the chief City of the whole Province. Most memorable in these latter Ages, for the Council here called by Pope *Urban* II. *Anno* 1067, in which, by the Artifice of the Pope, the Christian Princes of the West engaged themselves in the Wars of the Holy Land; giving thereby the better opportunity to the Popes, to enlarge both their Territories and their Power. It was first raised out of the ruins of *Gergovia*, the head City of the *Auverni*, in the time of *Cesar*; and the Seat-royal of *Vercingetorix*, King of that Nation, who so long put him to his trumps with the Army of 128000 men: now a small Village called *Gergau*. 2. *Rion*, in which resides the Seneschal, or chief Governor of the *Lower Auvergne*. 3. *Montpensier*, of great note for the Princes of the House of *Bourbon*, once Dukes herof; beginning in *Lewis* the first Earl, Son of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, *An*. 1415, and ending in *Henry* the last Duke of *Orleans* Brother of *Lewis* XIII. 4. *Montferant* 5. *Tissire*. 6. *Brioude*. 7. *Aiguepreste*. 8. *Taranne*, the ancient Seat and Patrimony of the *Delatours*, heretofore Earls of *Boulogne*, now Sovereigns of *Sedan*, and Dukes of *Bouillon*; to whom it hath for some ages since, given the Title of *Vicomte*. A Family descended from the Heirs general of *Eustace*, Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*, Father to *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorraine*, and King of *Jerusalem*.

The Country first inhabited in the times of the *Roman*, by the potent Nation of the *Auverni*; whose King *Bittunus* was taken Prisoner, and led in triumph unto *Rome*, in the War against the *Salii*, the *Allobroges*, and other of their Confederates. Not fully conquered, till *Cesar* had subdued their King *Vercingetorix*. They were afterwards part of the Province of *Aquitania prima*; retaining, in the oft-changes of the Empire, its old name of *Auvergne*. Heretofore part of the great Duchy of *Aquitain*; remaining subject to those Dukes, till *William* the eighth Duke, and fourth of that name, gave it in portion with one of his Daughters, whose name I find not, nor the name of her Husband neither; of whom there is nothing on record, but that he took up Arms against *Lewis* VI. who began his Reign, *An*. 1110. by the Heir-general of this House, it was conveyed in marriage to *John* the second Son of

Guigne

Guigne IV. and *Beatrice*, Dauphin of *Viennois*; in whose Line it continued under the title of the Dauphins of *Auvergne*, till *Berault*, the last Earl or Dauphin of it. Who having married the Heir of *Guy* Earl of *Forrest*, the Son of *Rognand* above mentioned, had by her a daughter named *Anne*, Heir of both Estates, married to *Lewis* the God, the third Duke of *Bourbon*; to whom *Edward* the last Lord of *Beau-jen*, made a Donation or surrendry of that Signetury also, uniting in his person the distinct Estates of *Bourbon*, *Beau-jen*, *Forrest*, and *Auvergne*.

And as for *Bourbonnois* it self, in the diffractions of the French Empire by the posterity of *Charles* the Great, most impropriately Cantoned it into many great Estates, and petit Signeuries, it fell unto the share of the potent Family of the *Dampierre*, descended from the ancient House of *Burgogne*; who held it till the year 1308. At what time *Lewis* IX. for the advancement of *Robert* Earl of *Clermont* (in *Beauvoisin*) his fifth Son, married him to *Beatrice*, Daughter and Heir of *Archebald* *Dampierre*, the last of that House. *Lewis* the Son of this *Robert*, was the first Duke of this Line; whose Successors and their Achievements, follow in this Catalogue of

The Lords and Dukes of Bourbon.

- 1308 1. *Robert*, Son of King *Lewis* IX. Earl of *Clermont*; the first Lord of *Bourbon* of the House of France.
- 1317 2. *Lewis*, the first Duke of *Bourbon*, Peer, and Chamberlain of France: from whose second Son *Jaques*, comes the House of *Vendosme*.
- 1341 3. *Peter*, Peer, and Chamberlain; slain in the Battle of *Poitiers*, *An*. 1356.
- 1356 4. *Lewis* II. called the Good; in whose person all these Estates were first united: Peer, and Chamberlain of France, and Governour of *Charles* VI.
- 1410 5. *John*, Peer, and Chamberlain; taken Prisoner at the Battle of *Agincourt*, and died in England: the Root of the Family of *Montpensier*.
- 1434 6. *Charles*, Peer, and Chamberlain; General of the Army against the *English*, in the Isle of France.
- 1456 7. *John* II. Peer, Chamberlain, and Constable of France.
- 1487 8. *Peter* II. Brother of *John*; Peer, Chamberlain, and Regent of France, in the absence of *Charles* VIII.
- 1503 9. *Charles* Earl of *Montpensier*, Duke of *Bourbon*, in the right of *Susan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Peter* the second, Duke of *Bourbon*. After whose death, being slain at the sack of *Rome*, *An*. 1527, without Issue, his Estate fell unto the Crown; and so continued till by the Sentence of *Arrêt* of the Court of Parliament in *Paris*, *Auvergne*, *Forrest*, and *Beau-jen*, were adjudged to *Madam Louise*, Mother of *Lewis* the first Duke of *Montpensier*, and Daughter and Heir of *Gilbert* de *Boulbon*, Earl of *Montpensier*, the Nephew of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, (the first of that name) of which House she was the only surviving Heir; from whence descended *Henry*, the last Duke of *Auvergne*, it was used customarily, by the eldest Sons of the Earls and Dukes of *Montpensier*; till given to *Charles*, natural Son of King *Charles* IX. called from hence, the Count or Earl of *Auvergne*; who being a Confederate of *Charles* Duke of *St. Rhon*, was in the year 1604, made Prisoner by King

Henry IV. released by King *Lewis* XIII. *An*. 1616, and within two years after made Duke of *Angoulême*: in whose Posterity it remaineth.

The Arms of these Dukes were, 1. France, a Baston, *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Bourbon*. 2. Or, a Dauphin *Palmé*, *Azure*, for the County of *Auvergne*. 3. Or, a Lion *Sable*, armed *Gules*, under a Label of five pieces of the same, for the Signetury of *Beau-jen*. The Arms of the Earldom of *Forrest*, I am yet to seek. But anciently, the Arms of *Bourbon*, when under the *Dampierres*, were Or, a Lion Rampant *Gules*, environed with Cockle shells of *Azure*.

10. BERRIE.

HAVING thus taken a view of those several Provinces which (except *Bretagne*) were the first purchases of the French in the modern France; and so much of the *Burgundian* Conquests, as were either laid to the Kingdom of West-France, or else were necessarily to be passed over in the course of our Journey: let us next look on those which were possessed by the *Goths*. And first we will begin with *BERRIE* (as next in situation with those before described) bounded on the East, with *Bourbonnois* and *Nivernois*; on the West, with *Poitou*; and part of *Touren*, on the North with *La Beaulle*; and on the South with *Limousin*; in *Laine* called *Binnurum regio*, from the *Binnuriger*, the old Inhabitants of this Tract; by *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and some others, called the *Binnuriger Cubi*, to difference them from the *Binnuriger Ubijci*, dwelling about *Bourdeaux*.

The Country watered in the East with the River *Laure*; in the South, with the *Fage*; in the North, with the *Chur*; and in the Inland parts, with *Indre*, *Annon*, *Thon*, *Eure*, and others which we shall meet withal anon: of no great note, but such as much conduce to the fruitfulness of it: affording it the benefit of fat Pastures and flourishing Meadows; which breed great multitudes of Cattle, and such flocks of Sheep, that when they tax a man for lying in excess of numbers, they use to say, *Eye, Sir, there are not so many sheep in Berrie*.

It containeth in it 33 Walled Towns; the chief whereof are, 1. *Bourges*, a Town of great strength by Nature, and as well fortified by Art, situate in a low Flat, amongst deep impassable Bogs and Marshes, caused by the overflowing of the *Annon*, *Tour*, *Malon*, and *Aunette*; small Riverets, but of great waters when they meet together: by means whereof it may be easily drowned at the approach of an Enemy: for that cause made the *Falnelns* and *Retreat* of *Charles* VII. in his long Wars against the *English*, possessed at that time of *Paris*, and the greatest part of the Kingdom. The poor Prince in the mean time fain to feast it here with a Rump of Mutton, and a Chick, and that but upon high days neither. From his constant abode here, and that which he had been Duke of his Country, in the life of his three elder Brethren, by the *English* in derision called King of *Berie*. A large, fair, and rich Town it is, the Seat of an Arch-bishop: a Siege-prefidial, and one of the best Universities in France, especially for the study of the Civil-Laws, first founded by King *Lewis* IX. and afterwards restored and perfected by *Charles* Duke of *Berie*, the Brother of King *Lewis* XI. Some Fabulous Founders, and Ridiculous Originations, have been thought of for it, as, that it was built by *Ogyges*, a Grandchild of *Noah*; by whom called *Binnuriger*, which in the corruption of the follow-

ing times, came (forth) unto *Bituriges*; which Etymology, were it as dear bought, as it is far fetch'd might be good for Ladies; and then it would be good for some what. Others, no less absurdly, will have it called *Biturix*, quasi *Biturix*, from two fair Towers which formerly (as they pretend) were erected here: one of the two, in part, still standing: and unto this, they say, alludeth in old *Grammarians*, thus:

Turribus à binis, inde vocor Biturix.

From two Towers which were builded here,
The name of *Biturix* I bear.

But the truth is, it was thus called from the *Bituriges*, (the *Biturigeni Civitas* of *Antoninus*) and by that name in the division of old *Gaul* by the Emperor *Constantine*, made the Metropolis of the Province of *Aquitania prima*: of which this Country was a part. 2. *Warron*, or *Varzon*, pleasantly seated amongst Woods, Vines, and Rivers; the *Rivers Arnon, Theo, Cher and Tenre*, meeting hereabouts, built in or near the place of the old *Avaricum*, a Town of great note and strength in the time of *Cæsar*: the revolt whereof gave such a check to his proceedings, that he was fain to stretch his wits and valour on the very tenter-hooks, before it was again recovered. 3. *Concerfant*, on the River *Souldre*, beautified with a strong and magnificent Castle. 4. *Chasteau-Roux*, on the River *Indre*: of which little memorable. 5. *Issaudun*, on the River *Theo*, the Baligne for that part of the Country: 6. *Montfaucon*, an ancient Barony. 7. *Argenton*, on the River *Creuse*, the Title and Estate of *Philip de Comines*, hence called *Signeur de Argenton*, who writ the History of *France* under *Lewis XI.* in which he dived so far into, and writ so largely of, the greatest affairs of State, that Queen *Katherine de Medici* used to say, That he had made as many *Hereticks* in *State Policy*, as *Author* had done in *Religion*. 8. *Sancerre*, seated on a high Hill near the River *Loire*; by some *Latine* Writers called *Nantodunum*; but most generally said to be so called, quasi *secernit Curvis*, from the Goddess *Ceres*, herein worshipped in the times of *Gentilism*. A Town of great consequence and strength; and as such, assigned over to the *Hugonots*, *An. 1569.* as a Town of Caution for their security, and the better keeping of the Articles of Peace then agreed upon. Famous not long after, for enduring a most desperate and tedious siege under *Charles IX.* by whom those Articles were almost no sooner made than broken. Before which time it was not under the command of the *French* Kings, but under the direct Dominion of its own Princes, called the Earls of *Sancerre*, who had the Sovereignty thereof: but being taken by the Kings Forces upon this occasion, *An. 1573.* and the Walls thrown down, a Garrison was put into the Castle, to keep it for the time to come at the Kings devotion, the Rents and Profits of it still remaining to the true *Proprietaries*.

Here is also in this Province, the Town and Seigneurie of *Aubigny*, adorned with many Privileges, an ample Territory, and a beautiful Castle. Betwixt by *Charles VI.* on *Robert*, the second Son of *Alan Stewart*, Earl of *Lennox* in *Scotland*, for his many signal services against the *English*; and is still the honourary Title and Possession of the second branch of that Noble and illustrious Family, hence called by the name of Lords of *Aubigny*.

As for *Berry* it self; and the Fortunes of it, we may please to know, that the old Inhabitants of it, were the *Biturigeri Cabi*, (or the *Biteriges Liberi*, as some Writers call them) subdued but not without great diffi-

culty, by the matchless *Cæsar*: in the first division of *Gallia*, made part of *Aquitania*; and in the new-modelling of that Province, by the Emperor *Constantine*, a part of *Aquitania prima*, won from the *Romans* by the *Goths*, and from them by the *French*, it was for long time under the command of Provincial-Governours, one of which, called by the name of *Godfrey*, obtained that dignity from *Hugh Capet*; and his Posterity enjoyed that Office under the Kings of *France*, till the days of King *Henry I.* of whom the Inheritance and Estate was bought by *Harpin*, one of the defendants of that *Godfrey*. But long he had not held it as *Proprietary*, in his own right; when desirous to make one in the Holy Wars, he sold it back again to King *Philip I.* (the better to furnish himself for that Expedition) *An. 1096.* to be united to the Crown after his decease. Since which time, the Sovereignty of it hath been always in the Crown of *France*; but the Possession and Revenue sometimes given, with the Title of Duke, for a portion to some of the Kings younger Sons, to be holden of them in *Apanage*, under the Sovereignty and Command of the *Ducors*, and his Successors. The first of those that held this title, was *John*, a younger Son of *John King of France*, and Uncle unto *Charles VI.* during whose Reign, betwixt this Duke and those of *Burgundy* and *Orleans*, the Realm of *France* was miserably distracted into Broils and Factions. The second was another *John*, Son of *Charles VI.* who dying in his minority, was succeeded in this Title by his Brother *Charles*, Successor to his Father in the Crown it self. The fourth and last, (for it had no more than four Dukes in all) was *Charles*, the youngest Son of King *Charles VII.* who siding with the Earl of *Charolais*, did so much trouble the Affairs of *France* under *Lewis XI.* by whom he was made Duke of *Normandy*, and of *Guineu* afterwards; but held neither long. After whose death, it was united to the Crown; never since separated from it: but though it never had Duke since, it hath had three Duchesses; first giving the Title of Dutchess to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter of *Lewis XI.* and Wife to *Lewis XII.* then Duke of *Orleans*, cited herein by her said Husband; when coming to the Crown he divorced her from him, to make room for the Lady *Anne*, Dutchess of *Bretagne*, the Widow of *Charles VIII.* his Predecessor. Conferred after her decease, but on more honourable grounds, by King *Francis I.* on the Lady *Margaret* his Sister, first married to *Charles Duke of Anjou*; and after his decease, to *Henry of Albert*, King of *Navarre*, the last that had this Title, being another *Margaret*, Daughter of the said King *Francis*, married to *Philibert Emmanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*.

II. POICTOU.

POICTOU is bounded on the East, with *Touren*, *Berry*, and *Limouin*; on the North with *Bretagne*, and *Anjou*; on the South with *Xaintonge*, a member of the Dukedom of *Aquitania*; and on the West, with the *Aquitain* Seas.

It is called in *Latine*, *Pictavia*, from the *Pictores*, as *Præloxy*, *Cæsars*, and some others; or the *Pictavi*, as *Antoninus* calleth them, the old Inhabitants hereof; and is a Country so great and plentiful, that there are numbered in it 1200 Parishes, and three Bishopsricks. A strong argument of the populousness and largeness of it. Besides the goodness of the Soil, it hath many other great helps to enrich it; that is to say, a larg

large Sea coast, some capacious Harbours, not a few Navigable Rivers emptying themselves into the Sea: besides the benefit which redounds to it from the *Clin* or *Clavin*, the *Croisil*, and *Vienne*, their Rivers falling into the *Loire*; which also glides along on the North hereof.

The principal Towns and Cities of it are, 1. *Poitiers*, in *Latine* *Pictavi*, seated upon the *Clin*, or *Clavin*; by *Præloxy* called *Augusturum*: the largest City for compass of ground within the Walls, next to *Paris* it self, but containing in that circuit, Meadows, Cornfields, and other waste grounds. It is an University, especially for the study of the *Civil-Law*; and a See Episcopal: one of the Bishops hereof being *St. Hilary*, surnamed *Pictavensis*, that renowned Father of the Church, and a stout Champion of the *Catholic* Faith against the *Arians*, though contemned in their Heretic by the Emperor *Constantine*. 2. *Saintes*, on the River *Charente*, near the edge of *Xaintonge*. 3. *Talmon*, upon the shores of the Ocean. 4. *Beaumont*, a Sea-Town also, and a reasonable good Port, near the confines of the *Bretagne*. 5. *Rochefort*, so called from its situation on the *Ton*, or *Jon*; which gave the title of Prince to one of the Branches of the Royal race of *Bourbon*. 6. *Lusignan*, on the River *Isa*; also denominated the noble Family of *Lusignan*, sometimes Kings of *Hierusalem*, and afterwards of *Cyprus*; which last they had in exchange for the first, by the donation of King *Richard* the first of *England*. 7. *Luçon*, or *Lusson*, seated upon a navigable arm of the Sea: sufficiently famous in being the Episcopal See of the renowned Cardinal of *Ribellien*, who so long managed the affairs of *France* for King *Lewis* the thirteenth. 8. *Malesmés*, a Bishops See also. 9. *Thouars*, which gives the title of Duke to the ancient Family of *Tremouille*, from which the Dukes of *Bretagne* did derive themselves: from the time that *Constance* the Daughter and Heir of *Conan*, after the death of *Geoffry Plantagenet* her first Husband, had Guy of *Thouars* for her second. 10. *Chastel Heraldu*, (or *Castrum Herald*) on the River *Vienne*; of which *James Hamilton*, Earl of *Arran*, in *Scotland*, by the gift of King *Henry* the second of *France*, the better to assure him to the *French* Faction there, against the *English*, had the title of Duke.

In the *Vine-fields* of this Country, within two leagues of *Poitiers*, was fought that memorable Battle between *John* of *France*, and *Edward* the son of King *Edward* the third, surnamed the *Black Prince*. Who being distressed by number of the *French*, would willingly have departed on honourable terms: which the *French* not accepting, instead of Conquest, found a fatal overthrow. The greatness and particulars whereof, we shall hereafter see in the like of King *John*. For they presuming on their own strength, to their disadvantage, bereft the Enemy of all opportunity of retiring; whereas ordinary Policy would instruct the leader of an Army, to make his Enemy, if he would fly, a Bridge of Gold, as Count *Foulton* used to say. Hercupon *Themistocles* would not permit the *Grecians* to break the Bridge made over the *Hellespont*, by *Xerxes*, lest the *Persians* should be compelled to fight, and to happen to recover their former losses: and *Charles* the sixth, lost his Army, by intercepting of our *Henry* the fifth, in his march to *Calice*. For, where all way of flight or retreat is stop, the safest Soldier will rather dye with glory in the front of his Battle, than fly and be killed with ignominy. So true a Mistress of hardy resolutions, is Despair, and no less true this Proverb of ours, *Make a Coward fight, and he will kill the Devil*. On the contrary, it hath been the use of divers Politick Captains, to make their own Soldiers fight more resolutely, by taking from them all hope

of safety, but by battle. So did *William* the Conqueror, who at his arrival into *England*, burnt the ships which transported his Army: thereby giving the Soldiers to understand, that their lives lay in the strength of their Arms, and courage of their Hearts; not in the number of their beads. *Turris*, the Leader of the *Moor* into *Spain*, burnt likewise all his Navy, one only *Pinnace* excepted; which he reserved to carry tidings of his success. So when *Charles Martel* encountered that infinite Host of the *Saracens*, (of which you have already heard) he commanded the people of *Tours* to open the Gates only to the *Victors*. Then he led his Army over the *Loire*, placing on the Banks thereof, certain Troops of Horse-men, to kill all such as fled out of the Field. Hereby informing his men, that there was to them no more *France*, than what they fought on, unless they were Conquerors. In like manner, the same *Themistocles* cunningly working the *Persians* to enclose the *Greek* Navy on every side, enflamed the *Grecians* with such courage, by a necessity of light, that they gave their enemies the most memorable defeat that ever happened on those Seas.

But to proceed, the people of this Province have more in them of the old *Gauls*, than any in *France*; as lying to betwixt the borders of the *Goths* and *French*, that it was never thoroughly planted or possessed by either. An argument whereof may be, that they are naturally more rude, subtil, crafty, and contentious, than the rest of their Country-men; and have a *Dislike* by themselves, much differing from the common *French*, having many words mixt with it, questionable some remainders of the ancient *Gallick*, which the natural *Frenchmen* understand not. In the division of *Gant* by the Emperor *Constantine*, they were reckoned for a part of *Aquitania Secunda*; and, as a part thereof, won from the *Romans*, with *Limousin*, *Perigord*, and *Quercy*, by *Varicus* King of the *Goths* in *Spain*. Of whose Kingdom it continued part, till those *Goths* were dispossessed of their hold in *France*, by *Clodius* the fifth King of the *French*, surnamed the *Great*. After which it belonged to the Kings of that people; by the posterity of *Charles* the *Great*, assigned to some Provincial Governours, with the title of *Earls*. One of which being named *Edler*, (of the old *Gothish* race, if I guess right) by the last Will and Testament of *William* the *Debonair*, Duke of *Aquitania*, and Earl of *Auvergne*, succeeded in that fair Estate. *Poitou*, by this means, made a part of the Dukedom of *Aquitania*, came with it at the last to the Kings of *England*, as shall there be shewn; and being theirs, was given with the title of Earl, by King *Henry* the second, to *Richard*, surnamed *Cœur de Lyon*, who was after King. Seized upon by the *French*, in that unfortunate Reign of King *John*, with the rest of the *English* Provinces, *Anno* 1202. *Alphonso*, Brother to *Lewis* the ninth, is made Earl of *Fulston*: and being again recovered by King *Henry* the third, it was by him conferred on his Brother *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*. But *Henry* being entangled in the *Barons* Wars, and *Richard* wholly taken up with the affairs of *Germany*, of which by some of the *Electors* he was chosen Emperor; it was fully conquered by the *French*; and never since dismembered from that Crown, for ought I can find. For, though in the more active times of King *Edward* the third, some of the best Towns and pieces of it were possessed by the *English*; yet were they lost again soon after, according to the various successes and events of War.

22. LIMOSIN, 13. PERIGORT, 14. QUERCY.

These Provinces I have joyned together, because for the most part they have followed the same fortune; being sometimes French, and sometimes English, according to the successes of either Nation.

1. *LIMOSIN*, the largest of the three, hath on the East, *Bourbonnois*; on the West, *Perigot*; on the North and North-west, *Poitou*, and *Berry*; on the South, *Auvergne*. It is divided into the *Higber*, properly called *Limosin* and the *Lower* commonly called *La Marche*: both parts, but specially *La Marche*, which lieth towards *Auvergne*, being mountainous, and not very fruitful; but of a free and open Air: inhabited by a people of a more frigid and sober nature than the rest of the French, frugal in expence, and moderate in diet; only for great devourers of Bread, that they are grown into a By-word.

The chief Towns in *La Marche*, or the *Lower Limosin*, are, 1. *Lutet*, seated in a rough and hilly Country, a Bishops-See. 2. *Uzerche*, seated amongst the Mountains, on the River *Vézère*, a very fierce and violent current; with which so fortified on all sides, that it is thought to be a very strong and secure dwelling. 3. *Trenac*, 4. *Doussenc*, 5. *Belmont*, 6. *Méjac*, 7. *Brive le Gaillard*, &c. In the *Higber Limosin*, the chief Towns are, 1. *Limoges*, a Bishops See, the principal of the *Lemoisiers*, from whom denominated by *Ptolemy* called *Ratiastum*. A neat, but no large City; rich, populous, and inhabited by a people of so great an industry, that they compel every one to work; and is therefore by the French called the *Prison of Beggars*: seated on the *Vienne*. At the taking of it when revolted, *Edward the Black Prince* could by no means be allured to pity the distressed Citizens, till pursuing Enemies he saw three French Gentlemen make head against his Army; the consideration of whole magnanimity, drew him to pity, where before he avowed revenge. 2. *Chalus*, at the besieging of which, our *Richard the First* was slain by a shot from an *Arballist*; the use of which War-like Engine, he first shewed to the French. Whereupon a French Poet made these Verses on the person of *Atropos*.

*Hec volo, non alia Richardum morte perire,
Ut, qui Francigenis Baliste primitus usum
Tradidit, ipse sui rem primitus expiaret:
Quamvis aliis docuit, in se vim sentiat artis.*

It is decreed, thus must great *Richard* die,
As he that first did teach the French to dart.
An *Arballist*: 'tis just he first should trye
The strength, and taste the fruits of his own Art.

The man that shot him, was called *Bertram de Gurdon*; who being brought before the King, (for the King neglecting his wounds, never gave over the Assault, till he gained the place) boldly justified his actions, as done in the service of his Country; and for revenge of the death of his Father and Brother, whom the King had caused to be set at liberty, but gave him an hundred shillings sterling, in reward of his Gallantry. 3. *Soubsterein*, on the confines of *Berry*. 4. *Confolant*, *Dorat*, on the River *Vienne*. 5. *Baillon*, 7. *Bivat*, of which nothing memorable. 2. *PERIGORT*, hath on the East, *Auvergne* and

Quercy, on the West, *Xaintoigne*, on the North, *Lingus*, and on the South, some part of *Gascogne*. The Country and people, are much of the same condition with that of *Lingus*; saving that *Perigot* is the more woody; and those Woods plentiful of *Chastnut*. The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Perigean*, the principal City of the *Petrugarii*, by *Ptolemy* called *Viduna*, now a Bishops See: some foot-steps of which name remain in a part of *Perigean*, (for the Town, it is divided into two parts) which to this day is called *Vidune* in which standeth the Cathedral Church, and the Bishop's Palace. The whole City seated in a very pleasant Valley invironed with *Damns*, adorning a most excellent Wine, and having in it, as a mark of the Roman greatness, the ruins of a large and spacious Amphitheatre. 2. *Bergerac* seated on the great River *Dordogne*. 3. *Sarlat*, a Bishops See. 4. *Nortron*, defended with a very strong Castle. 5. *Miramon*, 6. *La Roche*, 7. *Mortet*, where is a Well which ebbs and flows according to the pulse of the River of *Bourdeaux*. 8. *Angoulême*, in the North-west, towards *Xaintoigne*, the seat of the *Engolismen*, in the time of the *Romans*; now a Bishops See: seated upon the River of *Charente*, with which it is almost encompassed: the other side being defended by a steep and rocky Mountain. A Town of great importance when possessed by the English; being one of their best out-works for defence of *Bourdeaux*; one of the Gates thereof being to this day called *Chande*, seems to have been the work of Sir *John Chandour*, Banneret, one of the first Founders of the most Noble Order of the *Garter*; then recovered from the English by *Charles the Fifth*; it was bestowed on *John*, the third Son of *Lewis Duke of Orleans*, Grand-Father of King *Francis* the first, with the title of an Earldom only, *An*. 408. Afterwards made a Dukedom in the Person of the said King *Francis*, before his coming to the Crown. And for the greater honour of it as much of the adjoining Country was laid into it, as maketh up a Territory of about 24 French Leagues in length; and 15 in breadth: within which circuit are the Towns of *Chastean-neuf*, and *Cognat*, on the River of *Charente*. 3. *Roche Fauton*, 4. *Chabamer*, 5. *Merville*, 6. *Villebois*, &c. Since that united to the Crown, it hath of late times given the title of Duke to *Charles Earl of Auvergne*, *An*. 1618. the base Son of *Charles* the ninth, consequently extracted from the House of *Angoulême*.

3. *QUERCY* is encompassed about with *Limosin*, *Perigot*, *Languedoc*, and *Auvergne*. A populous Country, for the biggness, (being one of the least in all France) and very fruitful withal, though somewhat mountainous. The principal places in it, 1. *Cabors*, the chief City of the *Cadurci*, in the times of the *Romans*; still a great, strong, and well-traded Town, and the See of a Bishop, who is also the *Temporal* Lord of it: seated upon the River *Loch*. From hence defended and took name the noble Family of *Canorots* of *Caducris*, in *Latine*: out of which, by a Daughter of *Patrick de Caducris*, Lord of *Ogmore* and *Kidwelly*, in the *Marches of Wales*, married to *Henry* the third Earl of *Leicester*, come the *Kings* of *England*, and most of the Royal houses in *Europe*. 2. *Montalban*, a Bishops See also; built on the top of an high Mountain, and so well fortified by all advantages of art, that it is thought to be the most defensible of any in France: of which it gave sufficient proof in that notable resistance which it made to King *Lewis* the thirteenth, in his Wars against those of the *Religion*, *An*. 1622. 3. *Soulac*, upon the River *Dordogne*. 4. *Nigrepellisse*, another of the Towns possessed by the Protestant Party, reduced to the obedience of King *Lewis* the thirteenth, *An*. 1621, but in *November* following, they murdered the King's Garrison, and the next year denied admission to the King.

King. Taken at last, *An*. 2022. by the King in Person: the Punishment did exceed the Crime. For, the men were not only killed and hanged, as they had deserved: but many of the women also: some of them having their secret part rammed with Gun-powder, and so torn in pieces, by the unpardon'd Barbarism of the merciless and revengeful Soldiers. 5. *Chateau-Sarasin*, a strong Town on the *Garond*. 6. *Nazaret*, 7. *Burete*, &c.

The ancient Inhabitants of these three Provinces, were the *Lemoisiers*, the *Petrocorii*, and the *Cadurci*, before mentioned: of which the *Lemoisiers*, and *Cadurci*, were cast into the Province of *Aquitania Prima*; the *Petrocorii*, and *Engolismen*, into *Aquitania Secunda*. In the declining of that Empire, seized on by the *Goths*; but from them speedily extorted by the conquering French. Afterwards, when King *Henry* the third of *England*, released his right in the Provinces of *Normandy*, *Poitou*, *Angoumois*, *Touraine*, and *Main*; *Lewis* the 9th, to whom his Release was made, gave him in satisfaction of all former Interests, 300000 l. of *Anjouan* money, the Dukedom of *Guienne*, the County of *Xaintoigne*, as far as to the River of *Charente*, with the Province of *Limosin*. And on the Capitulation made betwixt *Edward* the third of *England*, and *John* of *France*, then Prisoner to him; *Perigot* and *Quercy*, (among other conditions) were assigned over to the English, discharged of all *Rent* and *Homage* to the Crown of *France*. After which times respectively, they remained all three in the possession of the English, until their final expulsion by King *Charles* the 7th. never since that dismembered from the Crown of *France*.

15. AQUITAIN.

THE Dukedom of *AQUITAIN*, the greatest and goodliest of all France, contained the Provinces of 1. *Xaintoigne*, 2. *Guienne*, 3. *Gascogne*; with the Isles of *Oleron* and *Ree*, and other Islands in the *Aquitainick* or *Western Ocean*.

XAINTOIGNE is bounded on the East with *Limosin* and *Perigot*; on the West with the *Aquitainick Ocean*; on the North with *Poitou*; and on the South with *Guienne*. So called from *Saintes*, one of the principal Cities of it; as that from the *Santonnes*, a Nation here inhabiting in the time of the *Romans*, whose Chief City it was. The River of *Charente* running through the middle; and so on the North border of it, emptieth it self into the Ocean, just opposite to the Isle of *Oleron*; having first taken in the *Seugne*, and the *Boutonne*, two lesser Rivers.

The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Saintes*; by *Ptolemy* called *Mediolanum*; by *Antoninus Civitas Santonum*, seated upon the *Charente*; a Bishops See, and the *Senschalitie* for the County. 2. *S. John de Angélie*, situate on the *Boutonne*, a Town once impregnablely fortified: whereof it hath given sufficient testimony in the *Civil Wars* of *France* about *Religion*, until the fatal time was come, in which the great power of that party was to be dissolved; at what time (*viz.* *An*. 1621.) after a siege of forty days, it was taken by King *Lewis* the thirteenth, the Fortifications demolished, the Town left open, and commanded from that time forwards, to be called by the name of *Lewis Bourg*. *Bourg sur la Mer*, upon the *Dordogne*; which for the wideness of it, is here called a Sea. 4. *Reverette*, seated near the confluence of the two great Rivers, the *Garond*, and the *Dordogne*. 5. *Blaye*, the most Southern Town of all this Country, defended with a

strong Castle, and a goodly Garrison for securing the passage unto *Bourdeaux*; this Town being seated on the very mouth of the River which goeth up to it. 6. *Rochele*, *Rupella* in the present *Latine*; but anciently called *Santonum Portus*, as the chief Haven of the *Santonnes*; a well-noted Port in the most Northern part of *Xaintoigne*: from whence the Country hereabouts is called *ROCHELOIS*. The Town seated in the inner part of a fair and capacious Bay; the entrance of which is well-secured by two very strong Forts, betwixt which there is no more space, than for the passage of a good Ship: every night closed up with a maffy chain, and the whole Town either environed with deep Marishes, or fortified with such Bulwarks, Trenches, and other Works of Modern Fortification, that it was held to be, as indeed it was, the safest retreat for those of the *Reformed Religion*, in the time of their troubles; as may be seen by the story of it, which in brief is thus. At the end of the second *Civil War*, *An*. 1568, many Towns considering how light the former Peace had been observed, refused to take in any of the King's Garrison, or permit any of the *Papists* to bear Arms amongst them; of which *Rochele* was one; which also, contrary to the King's command, maintained a Navy for their safety by Sea, and continued their Fortifications for their defence by Land. So that neither the Queen of *Navarre*, and her Son, retired, as to a place of safety, *An*. 1572. *Rochele* alone, of all the French Towns, held good for the *Protestants*, and is by *Monsieur Joyeuse* on all sides blocked up: but the siege soon raised, and *Rochele* *Montalban*, *Saintes*, with others, made cautionary for the Peace ensuing, *An*. 1575, besieged by *Biron* the elder, with an Army of 50000 men, and 60 pieces of Artillery: *Charles* the ninth, *Henry Duke of Angou*, the Duke of *Amal*, &c. being also present at the service: it held out from the beginning of March till the 7th. of *June*, and was then freed, the City having in one month endured 13000 shot, and the King lost 20000 men amongst them, the Duke of *Amal* for one, *A*. 75 and 78, it was attempted by *Landerneau*, the Isle of *Ree* taken, but soon recovered: the King of *Navarre*, and Prince of *Conde*, after the defeat, being received in triumph. *An*. 1577, besieged to Sea-ward by *Laufos*; who being also beaten back, a Peace was made, and eight cautionary Towns more added to their former strength. In the troubles of 85, and 88, the Princes above named made it their retreat; and from thence issued to divert the purposes of the Duke of *Mayenne*. The next year, *Henry* the third being slain, and the King of *Navarre* seated in the Throne, the *Protestants* increased exceedingly in power, and number; and taking advantage of the minority of *Lewis* the thirteenth, governed themselves a part as a Free Estate, *Rochele* being made the Head of their Commonwealth; fortified to that end with 12 Royal Battions of Free-stone, with double Ditches, deep and broad, in the bottom, abundantly furnished with Powder and Ammunition, 150 pieces of Cannon, besides Culverins and smaller Pieces, with Victuals, and all other necessities, to endure a siege; and grown up to great wealth, that there were thought to be an hundred or six-score Merchants, worth 100000 Crowns apiece. This drew upon them the great Wars in the year 1621, and 1622. Which ended in the loss of their Garrisons, except *Rochele* and *Montalban*; those to remain in pledge with the *Protestant Party*, but for three years, on which time expired, the *Rochele* were again besieged both by Sea and Land, the Isle of *Ree* took from them, their Fleet broke at Sea, and the mouth of their Haven so barred up with ships chained together, and sunk into it, and other Works of stupendous greatness, in the very Ocean, that no Foreign succours out of *England*, (whosoever really

intended, and bravely followed) had been able to come to their relief. In the end, having endured all the extremities of a tedious siege, they yielded themselves to the King's mercy. *An. 1628. Montauban, Nismes, and other places newly fortified, submitted at the same time also.* 7. *Marans*, a great Town, and of great importance, seated by the Ocean-Sea, in a low fenny place, as it were in a *Peninsule*, and so encompassed on every side with Marshy watry grounds, that there is no access to the Works thereof, but by very few, and those narrow passages. 8. *Châtillon*, and 9. *Saintes*, places of good strength also, but of great note: the first for giving a firmness to a Noble Family, out of which issued formerly the Earls of *Blais*, and of late times, *Gaſſer de Coligny*, and *Monsieur D'Andalot*, his Brother: the latter giving the title of a Duke to a younger Son of the House of *Roban*; as great a stickler in that Cause, as those Brethren were.

II. *GUËNNÉ*, the second Province of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, is bounded on the North with *Xaintoigne*, from which parted by the River of *Dordogne*; on the South with *Gaſſaigne*, on the East with *Perigord*, and on the West with the *Aquitainick* Ocean, from the *Pyrenean* Hills, to the River of *Bordeaux*. The reason of the name I could never learn. Some think it a corruption of the old name *Aquitain*; but very probably. The Country generally plentiful of Corn and Wine; the one being vented into *Spain*, and the other into *England*. The people, as those of *Xaintoigne* also, tall of stature, of able bodies, haters of servitude and baseness, and well practised in arms; (being qualities of the mind, and constitution of body, which therein is different from the rest of France) it is possible enough they might have from the *English*, who for 300 years were possessed of the Country, and have left many tracks of their Language in it.

The principal Rivers of this Province, are the *Garond* and the *Dordogne*, meeting together at *Retraite*, a Town of *Xaintoigne*; and thence in one Channel falling into the Ocean; the Country betwixt these two Rivers, being called *Le Pais entre les deux mers*; or, The Country betwixt the two Seas: the Rivers hereabouts resembling a small Sea in wideness. Of lesser note are, 1. *Jearne*, 2. *Baise*, 3. *Lot*, and 4. *Lisse*, falling into the *Garond* in their several places.

Chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Bordeaux*, seated on the South bank of the *Garond*, not far from the Sea, amongst the *Marishes*. The chief City of the *Bituriges*, who possessed this tract; and for distinction's sake, were called *Bituriges Ubisi*; those of *Bourges*, being called *Bituriges Cubi*. It was after called *Burdigala*, and *Civitas Burdigalensis*, the Metropolis at that time of *Aquitain*, *Secunda*, consequently, an Archbishop's See, as it still continueth. After a rich, and populous City, beautified with many good buildings, an University founded here by King *Lewis* the 11th, and a large Cathedral. It was made *Parliamentary* for *Aquitain*, and the parts adjoining by King *Charles* the 7th, *An. 1453*, not long after the expulsion of the *English* thence; and is one of the most noted *Empories* in all the Kingdom; frequented very much by the *Dutch* and *English*, for *Gaſſaigne* Wines; over which last the *French* are so jealous, that they permit them not to come up the River, till they have unladed all their *Ordnance* at the Port of *Blaye*. The Country hereabouts is, from this Town, called *Bordelejois*. 2. *Fronsac*, lying in the Country betwixt the two Seas, (as they call it) which gives the title of a Duke to the Noble Family of the Earls of *St. Paul*, now Dukes of *Fronsac*, and to the Country round about, the name of *Fronsadoise*. 3. *Libourn*, at the confluence of the two great

Rivers, opposite to *Retraite* in *Xaintoigne*. 4. *Soulac*, at the influx of the *Garond*, in the *Peninsule*, or demi-Island, called the Country of *Medoc*. 5. *Baïonne*, a Sea-Town, and Episcopal See fronting on the Coast of *Spain*. 6. *St. John de Luz*, at the foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains; all about which, the People speak the *Basquish*, or old *Gaſſaigne* Language, being the same with that of *Biscay*. 7. *D'Ager*, an Episcopal See, by *Ptolomy* called *Aque Agisla*, (*Civitas Aquensium*, by *Antonius*) from whence this part of *Gaul*, had the name of *Aquitain*. These three last, being all of them Frontier Towns, are strongly fortified. 8. *Bazas*, (called *Cosium* by *Ptolomy*) the chief City of the *Vasates*, whom *Antonius* placeth in this tract: now a Bishop's-See, situate on the borders of *Gaſſaigne*: in the Country from hence called *Bazados*. Towns of less note, 1. *Esparre*, 2. *St. Basil*, 3. *Reule*, 4. *Chasteau-Moron*, 5. *Mouſſeguer*, 6. *Saintierre*, &c. Here is also in this Province, the Country of *Buche*, lying along the Sea-Coast, from *Baïonne* to *Medoc's* a barren, poor, and wretched Country, the worst piece of France; only remarkable for the Lords or Owners of it, formerly of the House of *Foix*: of which the most remarkable were *Gaſſon de Foix*, for his many signal services against the *French*, created Earl of *Kendal*, and Knight of the *Garery*, by the said King *Henry*; but better known in *English* stories, by the name of *Capitoul*, or *Capain de Buche*; the Lords hereof having no higher title than that of *Captain*.

III. *GASCOIGNE*, the third and largest part of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, hath on the East, *Languedoc*; from which parted by the River *Garond*, on the West, the *Pyrenean* Mountains, which divide it from *Spain*: on the North, *Perigord*, *Quercy*, and some part of *Guienne*; and on the South, a main tract of the *Pyreneer*, running on to *Languedoc*. The Country generally fruitful, but of Wines especially; brought hence to *Bordeaux*, as the staple for that Commodity, and thence transported into *England* in great abundance.

The ancient inhabitants hereof, were the *Ausci*, *Lelloraces*, *Convenares*, *Conseranti*, &c. making up a great part of the Province of *Novempopulania*, united in this name of *Gaſſaigne*, on the conquest of it by the *Vascones*, a *Spanish* Nation, who fell in here during the reign of *Dagobert* the 11th King of the *French*. And though subdued by *Clodius* the second, son of *Dagobert*; yet they left their name unto the Country, divided afterwards according to the chief *Seigneuries* and *Estates* thereof, into 1. the Principality of *Bearn*, 3. the Earldom of *Foix*, 3. *Comminges*, 4. *Begorre*, 5. *Armaignac*, 6. *Albert*, and 7. the Country of *Agnoin*.

1. The Principality of *BEARN*, is situate at the foot of the *Pyreneer*, where they join to *Languedoc*; so called from *Benarum*, principal City of this tract, mentioned by *Antoninus*, and others of the ancient Writers. The Country of good pasture, though amongst the Mountains; affording plenty of Cattel, Butter, and in some places Wines also, little inferior in taste and colour, to the best of France; and many Medicinal Springs issuing from the Hills adjoining.

The Religion here, as generally in all *Gaſſaigne*, is that of the *Reformed Churches*, introduced about the year 1560, or rather, then confirmed by public Authority of the King and Queen of *Navarre*, at what time the *Mafj*; *Tyber*, *Church-lands*, and the *Prelates* Votes in *Parliament*; (according to the *Genevan way of Reformation*) were condemned together. And so it stood till the year 1620, when by the Power and Authority of *Lewis* the 13, King of France and *Navarre*, the *Prelates* were restored to their *Votes* and *Land*; the Clergy to their *Tyber*, and *Mafj*; caused also to be said in some of their Churches: yet

yet so, that these of the *Reformed* were left unto the free exercise of their own Religion, as in former times.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1. *Oribes*, the same which anciently was called *Benarum*. 2. *Lefcar*, a Bishop's See, the ancient seat and habitation of the Princes of *Bearn*. 3. *Oloron*, a Bishop's See also, mounted upon a high hill, in the more mountainous parts of the Country. 4. *Saint-Jerme*, well garrisoned since the reduction of this Country to the King's obedience. 5. *Pau*, the Principal of all the Province, honoured with a *Parliament* or Court of *Judicature* for all the Country; and a fair Palace of the Prince, built by *Henry* of *Alber*, King of *Navarre*, and Lord of *Bearn*; the Seat of him and his Successors, till the coming of *Henry* the fourth to the Crown of France. 6. *Grenade*, upon the Frontier towards *Begorre*.

This Country for a long time followed the fortune of *Aquitain*; and in the general dismembering of the *French* Empire, had its own *Proprietaries*, who were the absolute Lords of it, acknowledging no superior for ought I can find. The principal of which was that *Gaſſon* (a name very frequent in this Family) who in the year 1118 accompanied with many noble persons of France, assisted *Alphonso* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon* at the siege of *Saragossa*; in the course of which action he did so good service, that he was not only much honoured, but liberally rewarded for it; both he and his Posterity enjoying many privileges in the conquered City. By the Heir general of this *Gaſſon*, married to *William* de *Moncada* Seneschal of *Catalogne*, and of great possessions in that Country, the Lordship and Sovereignty of *Bearn* fell unto that Family about the year 1220, but long it did not tarry in it. For *William* being slain in the conquest of the Isle of *Majorca*, *An. 1228*, left his Estates to *Gaſſon* de *Moncada* his eldest son: who much increased them by the addition of the Earldom of *Begorre*, and many other goodly pieces, accruing to him in the right of his wife *Martha*, his hereof, whereof more anon. Grown by this means to such authority and esteem in the Court of *Aragon*, that (being without issue male) *Constance* his eldest daughter was thought a match of great advantage to *Alphonso* eldest son of King *James* the first. But dying without issue by her, *Anno 1260*, the sovereignty of *Bearn* with all the Appendixes thereof both in France and *Spain*, became united to the Earldom of *Foix*, (an Estate equal to it both in power & patrimony) by the marriage of *Roger Bernard* the ninth Earl of *Foix*, who succeeded in that Earldom, *An. 1262*, with *Margaret* de *Moncada* another daughter of this *Gaſſon*, and Heir of *Bearn*. Afterwards being much increased both in power and honour (by the addition of the Earldom of *Comminges*, the Viceroyalty of *Narbon*, and the Signeury of *Buche* in *Guienne*, to this house of *Foix*) it was added to the Crown of *Navarre*, by the marriage of *Gaſſon* Earl of *Foix*, and Sovereign of *Bearn*, with *Eleanor* the Heir of that Kingdom, *An. 1481*. defending with that Crown upon *Henry* of *Bourbon*, King of *Navarre*, and afterwards of France, by the name of *Henry* the fourth; but governed by him always as a *State distinct*, without relation or resort to the Crown of France. But *Lewis* the thirteenth his son, finding some inconvenience in that distinction, incorporated it for ever to the rest of his Dominions, *Anno 1620*, though not without some opposition from the Subjects of *Bearn*, which he was fain to overbear by his personal presence, and the advantage of such Forces as he carried with him. Since reckoned as a part of that Kingdom, owed, as the rest of France, by *For*s and *Carltons*, and governed in Civil matters by the Parliament established at *Pau*: the Judges and Councillors thereof at the King's appointing.

2. The Earldom of *FOIX*, situate on the West of *Languedoc*, *Comminges* interposing betwixt it and *Bearn*, Chief Towns hereof, are, 1. *Majors*, on the *Garond*, a Bishop's See. 2. *Parniers*, a Bishop's See also, seated on the River *Lagiere*. 3. *Foix*, on the same River, called in *Latin* *Fenium*, and the Earls hereof *Comites Fenensis*; the chief seat of the *Fluſſater*, in the times of the *Romans*; now giving name to all the Country, 4. *Mirande*, in the County of *Eſſores*, and the chief thereof; but otherwise of no great account. 5. *Savardam*, and 6. *Monbanti* two strong pieces. 7. *Mirepoix*, (*oppidum Mirepoſe*) a Bishop's See also, but of no note otherwise. The old Inhabitants of this tract, besides the *Fluſſater* above-mentioned, were called *Vascon*, perhaps of the abundance of Kine bred in the pastures hereof: upon which ground, the Earls of *Foix* have for their Arms, 4 Cows passant *Gules*; horned and hooded *Azure*, in a Field Or.

The first of these Earls was *Bernard* de *Carocassone*, advanced to this honor by *Raimond* Earl of *Thoulous*, who had then the Sovereignty hereof, *Anno 1062*. The Patrimony hereof much increased by marriage (no one Family more) many fair Lands in the *Marishes* of *Provence* being added to it by *Eſtmette*, Wife of *Roger* the second; not a few *Seigneuries* in *Catalonia*, by *Cecit* Daughter of Earl *Raimond*, Wife of *Roger* the third; the Earldom of *Catellon*, by *Brunicen* Wife of *Roger Bernard* the first; the Earldom of *Comminges* by *Eleanor* the Wife of *Gaſſon* the second. Besides all which, in or about the year 1262, *Roger Bernard*, the ninth Earl, united *Bearn* to his Estate as before is said; whose Grandchild *Isabel* (the male issue failing) conveyed the whole Estate to *Archibald*, Lord or Captain of *Buche*, in the Province of *Guienne*. *John*, the Nephew of this *Archibald* by his eldest son *John*, was for his many good services to *Charles* the seventh, made a Peer of France: and did not only purchase this Viceroyalty of *Narbon*, from the Lords whereof he was defended by *Mairgand*, Wife of *Roger Bernard* the second; but by his marriage with *Eleanor* or *Beauna* Daughter and Heir of *John* King of *Navarre*, united that Kingdom to his house, though he enjoyed it not in his own person. By means of which Alliances, and other improvements of Estate, his Family grew to so great power and reputation, that there were four Queens at one time descended from it: *viz. Katharine* Queen of *Navarre*, *German* Queen of *Aragon*, *Anne* Queen of France, *Anne* Queen of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. Before which time (I mean the *Adding* of *Navarre* to their other Estates) the Earls of *Foix* were in so high esteem in the Court of France, that in all public Ceremonies they took place of the Earls of *Vendome*, though extracted from the Royal Blood, and lived in a condition equal to most Kings in *Chriftendom*. In which regard, as also that the later Kings of *Navarre* and present Kings of France, are descended of them, it will not be amiss to subjoin here the Catalogue of

The Earls of Foix.

- | | | |
|-------|------|---|
| A. C. | 1062 | 1 Bernard the younger son of Roger Earl of Carocasson, the first Earl of Foix. |
| | 1096 | 2 Roger, the son of Bernard, an adventurer in the first War for the Holy Land. |
| | 1111 | 3 Roger II. son of Roger the first. |
| | 1144 | 4 Roger III. son of Roger the second. |
| | 1188 | 5 Raimond, Roger son of Roger the third, a great stickler for the Earls of Thoulous, in favour of the Albigenſes, and their opinions. |
| | 1223 | 6 Roger Bernard, the inheritor of his Fathers opinions, as well as of his Estates and Fortunes. |

- 1241 7 Roger IV. surnamed *Rosfer*, a companion of the King *S. Lewis* in the *Holy Land*.
- 1255 8 Roger-Bernard II. Son of *Rosfer*.
- 1262 9 Roger-Bernard III. who added *Bearn* and its Appendices unto his Estates.
- 1306 10 *Gaston* the son of Roger-Bernard the third, and of *Margaret de Moncade* the Heir of *Bearn*.
- 1315 11 *Gaston* II. son of *Gaston* the first, a great enemy to the *English* in behalf of *Philip de Valois*; and as great a friend to the King of *Aragon* against the *Moor*, in which Wars he was slain.
- 1344 12 *Gaston* III. for his beauty surnamed *Phœbus*, inferior for Revenue and the Port he lived in, to few Kings in Christendom.
- 1350 13 *Matthew* Earl of *Castellon*, Son of Roger-Bernard Earl of *Castellon*, the second Son of *Gaston* the first: designed Successor to *John* King of *Aragon*, whose eldest Daughter he had married but dispossessed thereof by the Duke of *Montlanc*.
- 1399 14 *Archembald* Captain of *Buche*, and *Isabel* Sister and Heir of *Matthew* Earls of *Foix*.
- 1413 15 *John* Son of *Archembald*, a great Enemy to the *English* in behalf of *Charles* the seventh of *France*: his younger Brother *Gaston*, as great a friend unto the *English*, succeeding in the Estate of *Buche*. From *Peter* the second Son of this *John*, descended *Odet de Foix*, Lord of *Laurere*, so renowned in the Wars of *Italy*.
- 1436 16 *Gaston* IV. son of *John*, a principal Agent in the Conquest of *Geneve* from the *English*; by his marriage with *Eleanor* Daughter and Heir of *John* King of *Navarre*, advanced his house unto that Kingdom; Grandfather by *John* Viscount of *Narbonne* his second son to *Gaston* de *Foix* Duke of *Nemours*, slain at the taking of *Rovenma*, Anno 1512.
- 1472 17 *Francis Phœbus* Nephew of *Gaston* the fourth, and of *Eleanor* of *Navarre* by their Son *Gaston* Prince of *Plaine*, succeeded his said Grandfather in the Earldom of *Foix*, and his Grandmother in the Realm of *Navarre* about seven years after.
- 1483 18 *Katharine* the Sister and Heir of *Francis*, by her married with *John* Earl of *Albert*, added that Earldom also to the House of *Foix*.
- 1517 19 *Henry* of *Albert* Son of *John* and *Katharine*, King of *Navarre*, Sovereign of *Bearn* and Earl of *Foix*, by his marriage with the Lady *Margaret*, Sister to King *Francis* the first, added the greatest part of the Lands of *Armaignac* unto his Estate.
- 1556 20 *Antony* of *Bourbon* Duke of *Vendosme*, and *Joan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Henry* of *Albert*, Kings of *Navarre*, Sovereigns of *Bearn*, and Earls of *Foix*.
- 1572 21 *Henry* II. Son of *Joan* and *Antony*, King of *Navarre*, Sovereign Lord of *Bearn*, and Earl of *Foix*; on the murder of *Henry* the third of *France*, succeeded also in that Kingdom by the name of *Henry* the fourth, Anno 1589. The Father of *Lewis* the thirteenth, and Grandfather of King *Lewis* the fourteenth, now reigning, An. 1648. And so having brought the Earls of *Foix* to the Crown of *France*, it is time to leave them. The Ann of these great Earls we have seen before.

3. The Earldom of *BEGORRE* is situate North of *Bearn*, at the foot of the *Pyrænean* Mountains: so called from the *Biggerone*, the old Inhabitants herof in the

time of *Cæsar*. Scattered in which, and the adjoining Principality of *Bearn*, live a leprous and infectious people of noisem breaths, deformed bodies, and ghastly villages, in which regard, not suffered to have any commerce with other people, nor to inherit any Lands; but only to apply themselves to drudgery, and the basest of mechanic trades. From their great misshape heads called *Capes* or *Gabets*.

Chief Towns herof are, 1. *Figueres*, famous for Medicinal Baths. 2. *Lourdes*, of which nothing memorable. 3. *Tarbes*, (*Antonine* called *Turfanica*) seated upon the River *Adour*, honoured with a strong Castle, an Episcopal See, and the Senechalacie for all the Country of *Begorre*. Which Country having for long time its own Proprietary Earls, under the Sovereignty and Homage of the Crown of *Navarre*, from the Kings whereof they were extracted, or those Kings from them; was at the last, by the marriage of *Petronilla*, Daughter and Heir of *Eziquib* the last Earl, to *Baïon* Viscount of *Marfan* and *Gabardon*, added to that house. Whose Daughter *Matthe*, marrying to *Gaston* Prince of *Bearn*, increased that Principality with those goodly pieces of *Marfan*, *Gabardon*, and *Begorre* all brought into the house of *Foix*, by *Margaret*, Daughter of this *Gaston*, married to Roger-Bernard, as before is said.

The Arms herof were *Azure*, a Cross *Argent*; By *Inigo Ardiha* the son of *Simon*, Earl of this Country called to the Crown of *Navarre*, made the Arms of that Kingdom; whereas before that time, the Arms thereof had been *Argent*, on a Tree *Vert*, a Cross in chief, *Gules*. Which Arms are said to be took by *Gratia Ximinez* the first King of *Navarre*, from such a Sign appearing to him in the Sky, before his first battle with the *Moor*.

4. The Earldom of *COMMINGES* lieth betwixt *Bearn* and *Foix*, running betwixt both as far Northward, as to border Eastward on *Begorre*. Divided into the *High* and more mountainous part, situate at the foot of the *Pyrænes*, and the *Lower*, which hath somewhat more of the valley in it. The old Inhabitants of both, the *Comvènes* and *Comfrans*. The principal places at present in the *Lower* *Comminges* are, 1. *Lombes*, a Bishops See but of late creation. 2. *Muret*, upon the River *Garonne*. 3. *Samatan*. 5. *Lisfe en Dordon*. And in the *High* there is, 1. *Comfrans*, once the chief Town of the *Comfrans*, now a Bishops See, situate at the foot of the *Pyrænean* hills. 2. *S. Bernard*, of old called *Civitas Convenarum*, a Bishops See also, and the chief City of this Earldom. 3. *S. Ecal*. 4. *S. Bregoa*, 5. *Muregan*, or *Mons Regine*. 6. *Silvère*, &c.

Of the Estate of this Earldom I have little to say, but that it was united to the House of *Foix*, by the Marriage of *Eleanor*, the Daughter of an Earl herof, to *Gaston* the second of that name, and the seventh Earl of this House. Given afterwards notwithstanding to a Spanish called *Rodrigo de Villandrado*, by *Charles* the seventh. But in the end restored again to the house of *Foix*, by the prowess and great services of *Gaston* the fourth, who caused his Uncle *Matthew*, the youngest son of *Archembald* and *Isabel* Earls of *Foix* to be killed in it, according to the will and purpose of his Father *Archembald*, who had given it to him. But falling to the Crown again, was conferred on *John* de *Lézan*, a Baron of the Earl of *Armaignac*, who was Earl of *Comminges*, and one of the *Marshalls* of *France* in the time of King *Lewis* the eleventh. The Ann of these Earls were *Gules*, four Orelles in Saltier, *Argent*.

5. The Earldom of *ARMAIGNAC*, the greatest of all these Estates considered severally and apart, lieth on the North of *Comminges*, and so extendeth it self to the banks of the River *Garona*. Principal Towns are, 1. *Aus*, upon the River *Grèz*, anciently called *Angusta Ausiorum*; the

the Metropolis or Head City of the Province of *Novempopulania*; by consequence an Arch-Bishops See: The Revenues whereof are said to be the greatest of any Prelates in *France*, computed at no less than 40000 *l. per annum*. 2. *Lectoure*, a Bishops See called of old *Ligortium*, in our modern *Latine* *Lectodurum*. A Town so well fortified, when in the power of the Earls of *Armaignac*, that it held out a siege of three months against the Forces of *France*; but since it came into the hands of the French Kings, so strengthened and embattled according to the modern Art of Fortifications, that it is held the strongest Bulwark of the Kingdom on this side, and their surest Fortresses against *Spain*. 3. *Liste de Jourdain*, which hath the title of an Earldom, bought at the price of 38000 Crowns, of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, by *John* the fourth Earl of *Armaignac*, An. 1421. 4. *Avallier*, 5. *Anzan*, 6. *Chabell-neau*, 7. *Mailbourquer*. 8. *Negter*, of which little memorable.

The Earls of *Armaignac* fetch their Original from the Kings of *Navarre*. *Sancho* the great, having subdued some Lands in *Gascogne*, which he conferred on *Gratias* a younger son of his, with the title of Earl of *Armaignac*, Anno 1014. On which foundation it increased so fast, both in power and honour, that *Bernard* the fourth Earl herof, came to be Countable of *France*. And so did *John* the fourth of that name, by the favour of King *Charles* the seventh: who also writ himself, by the grace of God Earl of *Armaignac*; according to the title of Sovereign Princes. A man of so considerable power in these parts of *France*; that the marriage of a Daughter of his to our *Henry* the sixth, was thought the best means for establishing his Estate in *Guienne*. And I remember it was charged on the Duke of *Suffolk*, that by breaking of this alliance for that of *Anjou*, he had been the cause of the loss of the King's pieces in *France*. This greatness made him subject to the jealousy of King *Lewis* the eleventh, who worried him out of his Estate and his life together. *Charles*, (Brother of this *John*) succeeded by the favour of King *Charles* the eighth. After whose death the fair Estate was seized on to the use of the Crown; till given again by *Francis* the first to *Charles* Duke of *Alençon*, (whose Grand-father had married with a Sister of the said Earl *John*) and to the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, the said Kings Sister, who, after the decease of the Duke of *Alençon*, brought it to *Henry* of *Albert*, and King of *Navarre*; her second Husband; returning to to the Original from whence first it came.

The Arms of these great Princes, were quarterly 1. *Argent*, a Lyon *Azure*, 2. *Gules*, a Leopard Lyon Or, the 3. &c.

6. The Earldom of *ALBERT* is situate on the North-west of *Armaignac*, bordering upon *Guienne*. The chief Town whereof is 1. *Nerac*, seated on the River of *Raizès* the only place of strength and moment in all this Estate. 2. *Chabell-Jalone*, well seated to disturb the Trade betwixt *Bordeaux* and *Gascogne*, but not able to endure a siege. 3. *Mont de Marfan* and 4. *Tartas*, both seated on the River *Ladour*, and all four formerly Towns of Caution for those of the Reformed Religion; of which this Country is so full, that the *Papists* Religion had hardly any footing in all this Territory. Which, though the smallest of the six, and of least Antiquity, had yet the fortune to incorporate all the rest into it. For *John*, the son of *Alan* Earl of *Albert*, by his marriage with *Katharine*, Daughter and sole Heir of *Gaston*, son of *Gaston* of *Foix*, and of *Leonor* Princes of *Navarre*, added to his Estate the Signatures of *Bearn*, *Foix*, and *Begorre*. And *Henry* of *Albert* his son, by marrying the Lady *Margaret*, Sister of King *Francis* the first, united to it those of *Armaignac* and *Comminges*. By *Joan* the Daughter of this *Henry*, the

whole Estate was brought Antony of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendosme*, and Father to King *Henry* the fourth becoming so united to the Crown of *France*, from which it was at first dismembered.

The Arms of these Earls. Were Quarterly 1. *France*; 2. *Gules*, a Border ingrailed *Arg*. The third &c. 7. As for the Country of *AGENOS*; the left part of *Gascogne*, it never had other hearts (after it left off to be French) than the Dukes of *Aquitain*. The principal Cities of it, 1. *Agen*, a rich populous and well-traded Town, seated on the *Garonne*, in a fruitful Country; a Bishops See, a Senechalacie, and held to be the fairest in *Gascogne*. 2. *Condome* a Bishops See also, from which the parts adjoining are called *Condomois*. 3. *Villemaurie*. 4. *Clairac*. 5. *Marmar*. 6. *Fey*, &c.

Thus having took a brief view of those several members which make up the great body of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*; let us next look into the Estate of the whole thus brought together: which in the declination of the Roman Empire, was given unto the *Goths*, before possessed of all *Gallia Narbonensis*, by *Valentinian* the third, as a reward for their service in driving the *Alani* out of *Spain*. Long the *Goths* had not held it, when they were outed of it by *Clevis* the fifth King of the French, continuing under his Successors, till *Ludovicus* Pius made it a Kingdom and gave it unto *Pepin* his youngest Son. But *Charles* and *Pepin*, the Son of this *Pepin*, being dispossessed by *Charles* the Bald, it was by him conferred on *Ranulph*, of the House of *Burgundy*, for his many good services against the *Normans*, Anno 844. Whose Successors take here in this order following.

The Dukes of Aquitain.

- 844 1 *Ranulph* of *Burgundy*, first Duke of *Aquitain*.
- 775 2 *William*, Earl of *Auvergne*, Nephew of *Ranulph*.
- 902 3 *Ebles*, Earl of *Poitou*, succeeded in *Aquitain*, and *Auvergne*, by the Will and Testament of Duke *William*.
- 911 4 *Ebles* II. Son of *Ebles* the first.
- 935 5 *William* II. the Son of *Ebles* the second.
- 970 6 *William* III. Son of *William* the second.
- 1019 7 *Guy*, the Son of *William* the third.
- 1021 8 *William* IV. Son of *Guy*.
- 1086 9 *William* V. Son of *William* the fourth.
- 1156 10 *Lewis* the seventh of *France*, in right of *Eliane* his Wife, sole Heir of *William* the fifth.
- 1152 11 *Henry* Duke of *Normandy* and Earl of *Anjou*, &c. in right of *Eliane* his Wife, divorced from *Lewis* on pretence of some consanguinity, alter King of *England*.
- 1169 12 *Richard*, King of *England*, the Son of *Henry*.
- 1199 13 *John*, King of *England*, the Brother of *Richard*, who forfeiting his Estates in *France*, on a judicial sentence pronounced against him for the (supposed) murder of his Nephew *Arthur* Duke of *Bretagne*; *Aquitain* and the rest of the *English* Provinces were seized on by the French, Anno 1202. But notwithstanding this Arrest, the *English* still continued their pretensions to it, till at the last it was agreed betwixt King *Lewis* the ninth of *France*, and *Henry* the third of *England*, An. 1259, that the *English* should rest satisfied with *Guienne*, the bounds whereof were to be the *Pyrænes* on the South, and the River of *Charente* on the North, comprehending therein also the Country of *Limousin*; and that on his investiture into this Estate, he should relinquish all his rights in *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Tourain*, *Main*, &c. In consideration whereof, he should have 50000 Crowns in ready money. On this accord, the Kings of *England* became Homagers to

to the Crown of France, which sometimes they omitted, sometimes did it by Proxy, but never in person, till Philip de Valois required it of King Edward the third: and because such duties are not often personally done by Sovereign Princes, Du Serry shall describe the formality of it. The place designed for this exploit was the Church of Amiens, to which Edmund came (saith he) with such a Train, as was intended rather to the honour of himself than the French King. Royally attired he was, with a long Robe of Crimson Velvet, powdered with Leopards of Gold; his Crown upon his head, his Sword by his side, and golden Spurs upon his heels. Philip attended by the chief Officers of the Realm, sat upon his Throne, apparelled in a long Robe of Purple Velvet, powdered with Flowers de Luce of Gold; his Crown upon his head, and the Scepter in his hand. Viscount Melun, the great Chamberlain of France, commanded Edward to take off his Crown, Sword and Spurs, and to kneel down: which he did accordingly. Then taking both his hands, and joyning them together, he said unto him; *You become a Liege-man to the King my Master, who is here present, as Duke of Guienne, and Peer of France, and promise to be faithful and loyal to him; say Yea: and Edward said yea, and rofe.* But the Historian notes withal, that Philip paid yearly for this Payment, the young King never forgetting the indignity which was put upon him, till he had made France a field of blood. And here it is to be observed, that though the Kings of England by this new investiture, were entitled Dukes of Guienne only, yet they had all the power and privileges of Dukes of Aquitain, excepting the homage of the great Lords and Earls of Gascoigne, which formerly belonged unto them. Inasmuch as Richard the second, though Duke of Guienne only in title and title, invented his Uncle John of Gaunt in that brave estate, under the style and title of Duke of Aquitain; summoned to Parliament by that name by the said King Richard. From this Accord betwixt the Kings, the English had possession of the Dukedom of Guienne, according to the order of their Succession, from the fortieth of King Henry the third, *An. 1259*, to the twentieth of King Henry the sixth, *An. 1452*. (the intercalation of John of Gaunt excepted only:) when outed of all their old rights in France, rather by the good fortune, than by the valour of Charles the seventh; the English then, divided in Domestic Factions, and not at leisure to look after the affairs of France. Nor do I find, that Guienne being thus recovered, was ever dismembered from that Crown; but when King Lewis the eleventh assigned it over to his Brother the Duke of Berry, to take him off from joyning with the Dukes of Bretagne and Burgundy in a new confederacy; who held it but two years, and died the last Duke of Guienne, *An. 1427*.

The Arms of this Dukedom were Gules, a Leopard or Lyon Or, which joyned to the two Lyons of Normandy, make the Arms of England.

16. LANGUEDOC.

LANGUEDOC is bounded with the Pyrenean hills, the Land of Roussillon, and the Mediterranean, on the South; on the North, with Forret, Quercy, and Auvergne; on the East, with Provence and Dauphine; on the West, with Gascoigne. Whereas the other Frenchmen in an affirmation say Ors, these of this Country say Ocs; and therefore Oracini conjectures it was call'd *Langue D'oc*. But others think that it took denomination from the

Goths, who reigning long in this Country, left behind them a smack of their Language; and therefore it was called *Languegotia*, and now *Euphonia gratia*, termed *Langedotia*, or *Langedoc*; that is to say, the Country which retaineth the Gothic Language. In reference to one or both of which Etymologies this Province is by Paulus Æmilius, promiscuously called *Gobianca* and *Ostilana*; and in relation to the rest, the people here in one of Calvin's Epistles, are given unto us by the name of *Populus Lingue Ostilane*.

The Country on those parts which lie next to Auvergne, is like the higher parts thereof, mountainous and not very fruitful, in all the rest, as rich and pleasant as the best provinces in France; and having the advantages of Olives, Raisins, Figs, Oranges, and other fruits not ordinary but here, and in the neighbouring Province; In that participating the Commodities both of France and Spain. The people have somewhat in them of the ancient Goths, and draw nearer to the temper of the Spaniards, than any other of the French; as being accounted very devout, great vaunters of themselves, affecting bravery above their condition and estates; not caring how they pinch it on the working days, or at home in private; so they may flaunt it in the street, and be fine on holy-days; The humour also of the Women, and in them more pardonable.

Principal Rivers of this Province, are 1. *Aurance*, 2. *Liezan*, and 3. *Orbe*, emptying themselves into the Rhodanus; and *Alby*, which disburdeneth it self into the Ocean. Chief Towns herof are, 1. *Nismes* (in Latin *Lemausus*) anciently a Colony of the Romans, now a Bishop's See; where there remain some marks of the Roman greatness, especially the ruins of a spacious Palace built by the Emperor Adrian. 2. *Mont-pelier* (in Latin *Mons Pessulanus*) situate on a high Mountain, as the name imports, some twelve miles distant from the Sea, an University for the study of Physick, and for that very happily seated, the Country round about affording great variety of medicinal Herbs. An Earldom of it self in the former times, conveyed by Mary Daughter of William the last Lord herof, to King Peter of Aragon her Husband; next, made a member of the Kingdom of Majorca; and finally by James, the last King of Majorca, sold to King Philip of Valois. Of late one of the strongest holds which those of the Reformed Religion had in this Country; and memorable for the notable resistance which it made against the whole forces of Lewis the 13. in the last Civil Wars about Religion. 3. *Alais*, and 4. *Carrelesonne*, both Bishop's Sees, both seated on the River Aude; the people of both speaking a corrupt French, with an intermixture of some Spanish. Which intermixture of Spanish with that broken French they either have originally from the Goths of Spain, of whose Kingdom this was once a part: or from their long subjection to the Earls of Barcelona, to whom they were conveyed, with other fair estates in this part of France, by the marriage of Raymond Borenger the seventh Earl thereof, with Almodia the Daughter of some of the great Lords who then ruled in Languedoc, about the year 1040. And to these Towns as also unto those of Nismes and Alby, the Earls of Barcelona, and the Kings of Aragon (in their right) did pretend a Sovereignty (though they had lost the possession of them) as those of France did to the Earldom of Barcelona: till mutual releases made on both sides of each others claims, by James the first of Aragon, and the King S. Lewis, *An. 1260*, or thereabouts. 5. *Alby*, commodiously seated on the River for called, the *Civitas Albigensis* of Antonine, the chief of this part of Languedoc, called from hence *La Paix Albigens*; remarkable in Church-history for those great oppositions to the corrupti-

ons and errors of the Church of Rome, called the *Albigenses*, 6. *Beziers*, upon the River Orbe, the *Beire* of Polomy, and *Civitas Biterastrum* of Antonine; a Roman Colony of old, now a Bishop's See. 7. *Agde*, called *Agatha* by ancient Writers, remarkable for a Council held there in the year 450. and for a well frequented Port, at the mouth of the River Egladon. 8. *Narbon*, seated on the mouth of the River Aude, the seat of the Phœcenians, and the first Roman Colony (next after Carthage) out of Italy. In Italy it self (to observe so much by the way) were no less than 150 Colonies; 57 in Africa, 29 in Spain, 26 in France, 4 in England only, in Syria 20, and in other Countries some, but very few in respect of the largeness of the Territories. These Colonies were instituted partly to repress Rebellions in the Conquered Countries; partly to resist a Foreign Enemy, partly to reward the ancient Souldiers, partly to relieve the poorer sort, and partly to purge and empty the City of the superfluity and redundancy of her people. Now if the question be asked, whether a Colony or Fortress be more behoveful, I answered with *Sotenus* in his *Raggio delato*, that a Fortress is more fit for sudden use, and a Colony for continuance; the former are quickly erected, and perhaps as soon lost; the other require some time of settling, and are after of a good sufficiency to defend themselves. As we see in our times, the Spanish Colonies of *Centa* and *Tangier* in Africa; and our own of *Calais*, which was the last Town we lost on the firm Land. This *Narbon* was in the Infancy of the Roman Empire, the most populous and greatest Town of all France; inasmuch as from it all this part of France was called *Gallia Narbonensis*. A Province of which Pliny delivered us this sentence; *Narbonensis Gallia agrorum cultus, morum virorumque dignatione, opum amplitudine, nulli Provinciarum poltponenda; distinet; Italia potius quam Provincia;* that is to say, that for fruitfulness of the soil, and the civility of the people, it was inferior to no Province in the Roman Empire. But to return unto the Town, being anciently the Metropolis of this Province, it had withal the honour of being an Arch-Bishop's See, which it still continueth: well fortified at the present as a Town of War, fronting Catalonia and the Land of Roussillon. 9. *La Puy*, the See of a Bishop, who in Latine is called *Podiensis*; the chief of that part of Languedoc, which is named *Pelay*, the ancient Seat of the Vellanni. 10. *Viviers*, on the River Rhodanus, (by Pliny named *Alba Helvionum*) from whence the Country adjoining hath the name of *Vivariensis*. 11. *Rodez*, or *Rutena*, the principal City of the *Ruteni*, now a Bishop's See; from whence the Country round about hath the name of *Rouergis*; though some account this *Rouergis*, a distinct Province, and no part of Languedoc. 12. *Tholose*, seated on the *Garonne*, anciently the principal City of the *Telchages* and the *Telofates*, placed by old Writers in this tract; now the chief of Languedoc, and one of the greatest in all France. The Seat of an Arch-bishop, and an University; so ancient, that some report it to be built when *Deborah* judged *Israel*. Here was a Parliamentary Court erected, for the administration of Justice in these parts, 1302. As for the story of *Tholose*, it was observed that certain Souldiers having stole sacrilegiously some Gold out of the Temples of *Tholose*, (when it was sacked by *Cæsar* a Roman Consul) came all to miserable and unfortunate ends: hence grew that Adage, *Aurum habet Tholosanum*; applied unto unhappy men.

But that which deserves most note in the History of it are large and spacious fields about it, called by the Writers of these times by the name of *Campi Catalaunici*, extending in length 100, in breadth 70 French Leagues.

In which fields, *An. 1435*, was fought that terrible Battle between Attila King of the Huns, and Ætius the Roman Lieutenant in France; Ætius was strengthened by the Goths, Franks, Burgundians, and Germans. Attila's Army consisted of Huns, Eruli, Sybels, Sarmatians, Suevians, to the number of 50000, of which 180000 that day lost their lives: Attila himself being driven to that desperate plunge, that making a Funeral pile of *Horst Saddle*, he would have burned himself. But his Enemies waded of well-doing, or Ætius politically tearing, that it Attila were quite destroyed, the Goths, Franks, and others of the Barbarians then confederate with him, would become too insolent; gave him leave to retire home through Italy; which he harassed with Fire and Sword, murdering the People, and ruining the Towns, so that he was then, and long after, called *Flagellum Dei*. Ætius, notwithstanding this good service, was by Valentinian the Emperor of the West, rewarded with the loss of his head: By which act, the Emperor (as one truly told him) *had cut off his right hand with his left*. And indeed, so it hapned. For not long after he himself was by *Maximus* murdered, and the Empire of Rome irrecoverably destroyed. Now that these Fields lay hereabouts, and not about Châlons in the Province of Champagne (as some learned and industrious men have been of opinion) I am assured by these three reasons. First, the improbability that Ætius having got the Victory, should suffer such a wait and numerous Army to pass through the whole length of France from one end to the other, and having waited all the Country, to break into Italy. And secondly, the testimony of *Jornandes* an ancient Writer, who telleth us, first, that before this fight, Attila had besieged and distressed the City of Orleans; and therefore was not vanquished in the fields of Châlons; and then; that immediately upon the Victory, *Torismund* the King of the Goths, (his Father *Theodorick* being slain) in *Campis Catalaunicis, ubi et pugnatum, Regis Majestate subvinctus Tholosanum ingreditur*; being proclaimed King in those very fields, entered with great estate and triumph into *Tholose*, the regal City at that time of the Gothic Kingdom. Which plainly proves the places of Battle to be near this City; though possibly by the name *Campi Catalaunici* (the great length and breadth thereof considered) we are to understand the whole Country of Languedoc.

The old Inhabitants of this Country besides the *Helvis*, the *Vellanni*, the *Telchages*, and *Albigenses*, formerly remembered, were the *Agateses*, *Beterenses*, *Gabales*, *Volce*, and the *Areemici* all which, together with some others of lesser note, made the Province of *Narbonensis Prima*, whereof the Metropolis was *Narbon*. In the falling of the Roman Empire aligned with the rest of *Narbonensis*, and some part of Spain, to *Attilus* King of the Goths, whom *Honorius* by this gift, and by bestowing on him his Sister *Placidia*, bought out of Italy. The Goths having got to good footing in Gaul, enlarged their bounds by taking in the most part of Aquitain, Quercy, and Auvergne; but forced to quit them to the French, who conquered that from them which they got from the Romans; and thrust them up within the limits of their former Donation. After this they declined as fast in France, as they thrived in Spain; losing Provence to *Theodorick*, King of the *Osro-Goths*, or Goths of Italy; whose Successor *Amalasunta*, fearing a War from Greece, resigned her interest in Provence to *Theodorick* the French King of Metz. Nothing now left unto the Goths of their Gallick purchases, but this Languedoc only; and this they

they held as long as they had any thing to do in Europe, but lost it finally to the Moors, with all Spain it self. Recovered from the Moors by Charles Martel, and added to the rest of the French Empire; it was by Charles the Great given to one Thurfyn, of the race of the ancient Kings, with the title of the Earl of Thoulouze, on condition that he should be Christianized. But long it continued not in his Race, nor in any other; not being settled in a way of Lineal Descent, till the time of Raymond the eighth Earl, Brother to another Raymond Earl of St. Giler (a Town of Gauienne) whose Grand-child Hugh, being an adventurer in the Wars of the Holy Land, and wanting Money to provide himself for that Expedition, sold his Estate herein to his Uncle Raymond, the Earl of St. Giler before mentioned. From this time forward we find these Earls to be as often called the Earls of St. Giler, as the Earls of Thoulouze; and by that name frequently remembered in the *Eastern Stories*; as for his great valour in the course of the *Holy Wars*, especially at the taking of the City of Tripoli, given to him (after it became Christian) with the title of Earl. This Raymond worthily named the Great, Earl of Thoulouze, St. Giler, and Tripoli, had three Sons, all of them succeeding; of which the eldest was Bertrand, had a Base Son called Ponce, who succeeded him in the Earldom of Tripoli, the Father of Raymond, and Grandfather of another Raymond, both Earls of Tripoli, and both suspected to be false to the Christian Princes in the continuance of those Wars. Alphonso the third Son was also the Father of a Raymond, the Father of another Raymond, who proved a great Maintainer of the *Albigenses*; and in pursuance of that cause murdered a Legate of the Pope, sent to Excommunicate him, and strangled his own Brother Baldwin, because he found him not inclinable to his opinions. For this cause warred upon, and Vanquished by Simon de Montfort, Father of Simon de Montfort, the great Earl of Leicester; and after many troubles and continual Wars, left his Estate and Quarrel to his Son named also Raymond, the last Earl of this House; who proving also a strong Patron of these *Albigenses*, was condemned for a Heretic, cursed by the Pope, and persecuted by the French Kings, Philip the Second, Lewis the Eighth, and St. Lewis. This last willing to make a peaceable composition, married his Brother Alphonso, to Jane Daughter and Heir to Count Raymond, with this condition, That if it should happen these two to die without issue, then *Languedoc* should be incorporated to the Crown. Raymond agreed, the Marriage was solemnized. An. 1249. They both dyed without issue, 1270. and *Languedoc* returned to the Crown in the days of Philip the Third.

The Names and Succession of these Earls, in regard they were Peers of France, great Princes, and for the most part men of action, take in order thus.

The Earls of Thoulouze.

- An. Cbr.
 779 1 Thurfyn the first Earl of Thoulouze.
 803 2 William made Earl by Charlemagne, Peer of France at the first foundation of that Order.
 828 3 Hureit Thurfyn, Son of Thurfyn the first Earl.
 841 4 Bertrand, Son of Hureit Thurfyn.
 894 5 William II. of some other House.
 919 6 Ponce, a great Justiciar, but of unknown Race.
 963 7 Almaric, of as obscure Parentage as Ponce.
 1003 8 Raymond, the Brother of Raymond Earl of St. Giler, advanced by Robert King of France.

- 1052 9 William III. Duke of Aquitain, succeeded in right of his Wife, the Daughter of Raymond.
 1086 10 Hugh Aymon, Son of William the Third, fold his Estate and Earldom to his Uncle Raymond.
 1096 11 Raymond II. Earl of St. Giler, Thoulouze, and Tripoli; of great note in the War of the Holy Land.
 12 Bertrand, Son of Raymond the Great.
 13 William IV. Brother of Bertrand.
 1101 14 Alphonso, Brother of William the Fourth.
 1146 15 Raymond III. Son of Alphonso.
 1185 16 Raymond IV. Son of Raymond the Third, the great Patron of the *Albigenses*.
 1222 17 Raymond V. Son of Raymond the Fourth, vanquished and compounded with, by King Lewis the Saint.
 1249 18 Alphonso II. Brother of St. Lewis, and Husband of Joan, Daughter and Heir of the last Raymond; after whose death, and the decease of Joan the Countess, An. 1270. this Earldom was united to the Crown of France according to the Capitulations before mentioned.

The Arms of this Earldom were Gules, a Cross Pommele, of 12 points, Or.

17. PROVENCE.

PROVENCE is environed with *Languedoc* on the West; *Dauphine* on the North; the *Mediterranean* on the South; and on the East with the *Alps*, and the River *Varus*, which divideth from *Piemont*, the nearest of the *Alpine* Provinces.

It took this name from the Romans, who being called in by the *Maffians*, to revenge a private wrong done them by the *Salii*, the next neighbouring People, wholly possessed themselves of this Country, calling it *arv' i'p'p'ar*, the Province. The Country being now divided between several Princes, we must necessarily premise so much of the story of it, as serves to show the time and grounds of that division. In order whereunto we are first to know, that it long continued part of the Roman Empire, making up the whole Province of *Narbonensis Secunda*, and part of *Alpes Maritimae*. How it was given unto the *Vifigeths*, or *Goths* of Spain, and from them taken by the *Othogaths*, or *Goths* of Italy; hath been shewn in *Languedoc*. Being resigned unto the French, it became a part of the new Kingdom of Arles and Burgundy. Made a distinct Estate in the person of Hugh de Arles, (who afterwards succeeded in the Kingdom also) by Bofon the first. And by this Hugh de Arles upon his resignation of that Kingdom to Rodolph Duke of Burgundy beyond the *Jour*; given unto William his Son, with the title and title of Earl of Provence: confirmed therein by the Emperor Conrad the Second, on whom the Rights of that Kingdom had been transferred; to be held of him, and his Successors in the Empire. In his posterity it continued, till conveyed to the Earls of Barcelona, by the Marriage of the Lady Douce with Earl Raymond Arnold, Anno 1082. Carried, together with that Earldom, to the Crown of Aragon; and finally by Beatrice one of the Daughters of Raymond the third, the last Earl of this Family, conveyed in Marriage to Charles Earl of Anjou, Brother of Lewis the Ninth of France, An. 1262. whom Urban the Fourth, not long after Crowned King of Naples. By Joan the

the first; the fourth from Charles, driven out of Naples by Lewis of Hungaria, and restored again by the power of Pope Clement the fifth; the City and Territory of Anjou (where the Pope resided at that time) is dismembered from the Earldom of Provence, and given in Fee for ever to the Church of Rome: partly to recompence that favour, and partly for discharge of some old Arrears of Rent or Tribute, pretended to be due to the See of Rome, for the Realm of Naples. A City which had formerly been under the Protection, and by that title in the actual possession of many of the Popes of Rome, ever since the conviction of Ramond Earl of Thoulouze, to whom it formerly belonged, but held by them in Fee of the Earls of Provence. Not long after this Donation, the said Joan adopted for her Heir and Successor, Lewis Duke of Anjou, Brother to Charles the Fifth of France, descended lineally from Charles Earl of Anjou, and King of Naples: possessed by this Adoption of the Earldom of Provence, and a title to the Realm of Naples, Rene, the Grandchild of this Lewis, having no issue-male surviving, made Lewis of Chalons, the Prince of Orange (another Signeury in this Country): and gave him therewithal full power to make Laws, coin Money, and pardon all Crimes; to write himself Prince of Orange by the Grace of God, with all the other Prerogatives of an absolute Prince. This was in the year 1415. So that now the Country stands divided betwixt the French King, the Pope, and the Prince of Orange; each of them absolute and independent in his own Estate: as long at least as the French King is pleased to give way unto it.

The whole is much of the same nature with *Languedoc*, before described, but in one part thereof, that namely between *Marsilles* and *Arles*, different from all the rest of France. By the French commonly called *La Craie*: by the elder Writers *Campi lapidei*, because all in a manner overspread with scattered stones; Supposed by *Mela* to be the place in which *Hercules* encountered *Albion* and *Bergeson* the Sons of *Neptune*: whom when he could not otherwise vanquish, he was by *Jupiter* his Father aided with a shower of stones; of which these were feigned to be the Remainders. A Country which takes up a good space of ground, and hath a few poor Towns in it but not much inhabited.

In that part of it which belongs to the King, the Towns of special note are, 1. Aix, seated on the *Rhofne*, the Metropolis of *Narbonensis secunda*, and at that time called *Aque Sextie*, from Sextius the Founder of it (by whom the *Salii* were subdued in the second year of that War) and the hot Baths here. Now, and of long time, an Arch-bishopps See, and the chief City of this Province: and for that reason made the Seat of a Court of Parliament for this Country, An. 1501. Most memorable in old story for the great discomfiture of the *Cimbry* by C. Marius, who not willing to venture on the Enemy united (for they were no fewer than 300000 fighting men) and lately fleshed in the overthrow of *Maulius* and *Sepio*, (two Roman Consuls;) permitted them quietly to pass by his Camp: The Barbarians who impudently to fear or cowardice, scornfully asking his Soldiers, What service they would command them to Rome. But when, for their easier passage over the *Alpes*, they had divided themselves into three Companies; Marius severally setting on them all, put them all to the sword. *Ea victoria visus mireretur, ne ejus nati Rempublic pauciores*. By this Victory, and this only, giving cause to the Romans (as *Velleius* hath it) not to be sorry for his birth. 2. Arles, in Latin, *Arelatum*, by *Aufonius* called the Rome of France, and in those times so highly prized, that *Constantinus Flavius* being chosen Emperor by the British Legions, in

the declining times of the Western Empire, intended to have made it the Imperial Seat. And not less memorable in Church story for a Council here held in the time of *Constantine* the Great, Anno 313. in which was present *Reftitutus* the Bishop of London, and certain other Bishops of the British Church. It was anciently a Roman Colony, and now the See of an Arch-bishop; situate on the River *Rhofne*, in a low and marshy situation: which natural strength, seconded by the new works of King Henry the Fourth, have made it one of the best Bulwarks of France, on that side of the Kingdom. Selected for the Seat-Royal of the French Kings of Burgundy, who from whence were called Kings of Arles; as the Kings of *Austrasia* (or East-France) were called Kings of Arles, because they had made choice of that City for the Regal Seat. Between this City and the Sea, but on the other side of the River, runneth a deep Channel, cut with infinite charge and industry, by C. Marius, for conveyance of Victuals into his Camp, in his War against the *Cimbri* before named; by *Protony* called *Poffe Mariane*, by the French, *Camargue*, a corrupt word made of *Catus Maris*: the Country about which, called also by the same name for the space of 24 miles, is of excellent Pasturage, and breedeth great abundance of Horses; the chief Town of which is called, 3. St. Gills, 4. *Marselles*, a known Port on the Mediterranean, first built by the *Phoenices*, a Greek Nation of Asia Minor, who being banished their Country, came and planted here, about the Reign of *Tarquinius Superbus*, the last King of Rome. It was first only a Confederate City of the Romans, for whose sake, being molested by the *Salii*, and others of the neighbouring Nations, the Roman Legions first entered Gaul: afterwards, siding with Pompey in the Civil Wars, or at least desirous to stand neutral, it was forced by Cæsar, and made a Colony. In the property heretofore it drove a great Trade on the Mediterranean, and was the Mother of many fair and flourishing Colonies, *Emporia*, *Forum Julium*, *Nicea*, *Olbia*, displaced in the adjoining shores of France, Spain and Italy. 5. *Glandeven*, anciently called *Glanum*, a Bishopps See, seated upon the Maritime *Alpes*. 6. *Toulon*, by *Protony* called *Traoentum*, and by some *Tholon*, beautified with a fair and capacious Haven, well stored with Oyl, great quantity of Salt brought hither from the Isle of *Ezer*, about three Leagues off; and a kind of Almshouses called *Province Almshouses*; made by this means one of the most frequented Ports of the Mediterranean. 7. *Antibi*, (in Latin *Antipolis*) a Sea coast Town near the River *Varus*, one of the farthest of this Country towards Italy. 8. *Fevins* (the *Forum Julium* of the Ancients) on the Mediterranean, founded by the *Maffians*, as before was said, after a Colony of the Romans. 9. *La Grèce*, a Bishopps See, more within the Continent. 10. *Ciffertou*, on the Borders of *Dauphine*. 11. *Brignols*, 12. *Mervin*, and *Chabriers*, two little Towns amongst the Mountains, towards *Dauphine*; not otherwise of note but for the horrid Massacre of the *Protestants*, before described.

II. The Principality of Orange lyeth on the North-West of this Province, watered with the Rivers of 1. *Durance*, 2. *Seize*, 3. *Meine*, and 4. *Eques*; all helping to augment the *Rhofne*. The chief places of it are, 1. *Orange*, seated on the *Meine*, an Episcopal See; famous for many rare and wonderful Antiquities, demonstrating the Roman Greatness, of whom once a Colony; but of most note in the Church-History for a Council held there against the *Semi-Plagians*, in the year 444. called *Arausiacum*; the Latin name of this City became anciently *Arausia*, in some Writers *Avianica*; and of late *Auranga*.

vangia, 2. *Estrang*, 3. *Bois de St. Pol*, more properly, *St. Paul de Vence*, being the *Civitas Vastensium* of Antoninus, but not otherwise memorable.

As for the Princes hereof, they were anciently of the Noble Family of the *Bausis*, but Homagers and Tributaries to the Earls of *Provence*. By *Mary* Daughter and Heir of *Reynold* the last of this Family, it was conveyed in marriage to *John de Chalons*, one of the most Noble Houses of *Burgundy*, from the Earls whereof they were extracted. *Lewis* the Son of this *John*, obtained of *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, and Earl of *Provence*, the Sovereignty hereof, as before was said. By *Claude* the Heir-general of this House, bestowed in marriage by King *Francis* the first, on Count *Henry of Nassau*, Ambassador from *Maximilian* the Emperor of *Germany*. Anno 1514. It was translated to that Family where it still remaineth.

The Princes of Orange.

- 1475 1 *Lewis* of *Chalons*, first absolute Prince of *Orange*.
- 2 *William* de *Chalons*, who submitted his Estate to the Parliament of *Dauphine*, to satiate King *Lewis* the 11, by whom restored again to his former Sovereignty.
- 3 *John* de *Chalons*, a bitter Enemy to King *Lewis*, in defence of the Rights of *Mary* Dutches of *Burgundy*.
- 1500 4 *Philibert* de *Chalons*, slain at the siege of *Florence*, where he commanded the Forces of *Charles* the 5th. *Claude* his only Sister, and next Heir of that House, being married to *Henry* Earl of *Nassau*. Anno 1515.
- 1536 5 *Rene* of *Nassau*, Son of *Henry* and *Claude*, adopted by *Philibert* his Uncle, whom he succeeded in this Estate: slain at the Siege of *Landrecie* in the Netherlands.
- 1544 6 *William* of *Nassau*, Cousin-german of *Rene*, by whose last Testament left Heir unto his Estates: the great Patron and Affector of the *Belgick* Liberties, against the *Spaniard*: slain by a Partisan of *Spain*, called *Beltazar*, at *Delft* in *Holland*. Anno 1584.
- 1584 7 *Philip* of *Nassau*, kept as an Hostage all his life by the King of *Spain*.
- 8 *Maurice* of *Nassau*, Brother of *Philip*, Commander of the Forces of the United Provinces.
- 1625 9 *Henry* of *Nassau*, II. Successor to his Brother *Maurice*, in his Offices, Estates, and Honours.
- 1648 10 *William* of *Nassau* II. the Son and Successor of *Henry* married to Princess *Mary*, eldest Daughter of *Charles* King of Great Britain, &c. on May-day 1641.

The Revenues of this Principality are about 30000 Crowns. The Arms are Quarterly *Gules*, a Bend *Or*, 2. *Or*, a Hunters Horn *Azure*, stringed *Gules*; the third as, &c. Over all, an Escutcheon of Pretence Chequie, *Or* and *Azure*. More briefly thus; Quarterly *Chalons* and *Orange*, under an Escutcheon of *Geneva*.

Southward of *Orange*, lieth the Country of *PENAS-CINE*, as the *French* call it; *Comitatatus Venetinus*, in the *Latin*: so called from *Avenio* (now *Avignon*) the chief City of it. Anciently it had Lords of its own, called Earls of *Venice*, (*Venissa Comitatus* in the *Latin*) united to the House of *Savoie*, by the marriage of *Laurentia*, a Daughter hereof, with Earl *Humbert* the Second, Anno 1080, or thereabouts. But this Family of the first Lords coming to an end, it fell (but by what Right, I find

not) to the Earls of *Tholouse*, but held by them as *Homagers*, (for this Estate) for the Earls of *Provence*: on the conviction of Earl *Raymond*, condemned for Heretic, brought under the protection and patronage of the Popes of *Rome*; the more absolute Sovereignty hereof, and of the City *Avignon*, being settled on them by *Queen Joan*, as before is said. The principal Cities of this tract, are, 1. *Avignon*, the *Avenio* of *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and *Mela*; a very fair and flourishing City, pleasantly seated on both sides of the River of *Rhone*: famous for being the residence of the Popes for seventy years; which times the *Romans* remember till this day, by the name of the *Babylonian Captivity*: admitting, ever since, an Oath unto the Pope at his Coronation, not to remove his Seat to *Avignon*. The first Pope that removed thither, was *Clement* the 5. Anno 1300. when as yet the Popes had no more right in it, than that of Patronage and Protection; and returned again to *Rome*, by *Gregory* the 11. Anno 1377. In this City are said to be 7 Palaces, 7 Parishes, Churches, 7 Monasteries, 7 Nunneries, 7 Inns, and 7 Gates. So that if there be any Mystry in the number of seven, or any credit to be given to such *Pythagorean* divinity; the Arch-bishop of this City may as well be entituled Antichrist, as the Pope of *Rome*, if there be nothing but the mystery of this number to affix to him. It was made an University, at the time of the Popes first settling here; and so still continueth: *Alciat* the great *Emblematisit*: being here Professor. 2. *Carpentras*, by *Pytolmy* called *Carpentoradica*, a Bishop Sec: as is also, 3. *Cavillon*, (of old *Caballio*) once a Roman Colony on the River *Durance*: and 4. *Tarascion*, on the *Rhone*, opposite to *Banconaire* in *Languedock*; for the Popes dwelling here so long, could not be otherwise attended than by mitred Prelates. 5. *Vaison*, *Civitas Vassonensis*, of *Antoninus*.

The Revenues of the Popes here, are not very great, and those expended all in keeping of Ports and Garrisons, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of the *Protestants* of *Orange*. So that it is supposed, that it is rather a charge, than a profit to him; which maketh the people like very well to live under his Government, as bringing more money to them, than he gathereth from them.

The Arms hereof, when under the old Earls of *Provence*, were *Gules*, two Keys in Saltire *Or*, stringed *Azure*. Which seems to have in it some preface, (the Popes pretending to the Keys, as we know they do) that it should one day become subject to the Sec of *Rome*.

The old Inhabitants of the whole Country were, as appeareth, the *Salii*, *Maffitenses*, *Vasomenses*, and *Voscones*, before mentioned: besides the *Deciates* about *Antibe*, the *Seniiti*, and *Sigeforiti*, about *Cistern*; all conquered by the Romans in their first war in *Gaul*, called in to aid those of *Marfille* against the *Salii*. The Fortune of it since, hath been hewn before. Nothing remains now but the Catalogue of

The Earls of Provence.

- 1 *Hugh* de *Arles*, supposed to be the Son of *Latharicus*, King of *Austrasia*, and *Wladrada* his Concubine; made the first Earl of *Provence*, by *Bozon* the first, King of *Burgundy*. He was later King of *Burgundy* and *Italy* also.
- 2 *William* de *Arles*, the Son of *Hugh*.
- 3 *William* II. surnamed the younger, Son of *William*.
- 4 *Gilbert* Earl of *Provence*, the Father of the Lady *Dunce*.

- 1082 5 *Raymond* *Arnold*, Earl of *Barcelona*, the Husband of the Lady *Dunce*, of *Provence*.
- 1131 6 *Berengar* *Raymond* the second Son of *Raymond* *Arnold*, and the Lady *Dunce*'s his eldest Brother *Raymond* succeeding in *Barcelona*.
- 7 *Raymond* II. Son of *Berengar* *Raymond*.
- 1173 8 *Alfonso* King of *Aragon*, and Earl of *Barcelona*, the Son and Heir of *Raymond* Earl of *Barcelona* eldest Son unto *Raymond* *Arnold*, and the Lady *Dunce*.
- 1196 9 *Alfonso* II. second Son of *Alfonso* the first, succeeded in the Earldom of *Provence*, his eldest Brother *Pedro* inheriting the Realm of *Aragon*, and the Earldom of *Barcelona*.
- 10 *Raymond* III. Son of *Alfonso*, the last Earl of *Provence* of this Line.
- 1261 11 *Charles* of *Valois*, Earl of *Anjou*, and in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, one of the Daughters of *Raymond* the third, Earl of *Provence*. He was also King of *Naples*, *Sicily*, &c.
- 1282 12 *Charles* II. King of *Naples*, and Earl of *Provence*.
- 1310 13 *Robert* King of *Naples*, and Earl of *Provence*.
- 1342 14 *Joan*, Queen of *Naples*, and Countess of *Provence*.
- 1371 15 *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, the adopted Son of Queen *Joan*, Earl of *Provence*, and titularly King of *Naples*, &c. (of whose descent from *Charles* de *Valois*, Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, we have spoken elsewhere.)
- 1485 16 *Lewis* II. Duke of *Anjou*, Earl of *Provence*, &c.
- 1416 17 *Lewis* III. Duke of *Anjou*, Earl of *Provence*, &c.
- 1430 18 *Rene*, Brother of *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, &c.
- 1480 19 *Charles* Earl of *Main*, Son of *Charles* Earl of *Main*, the Brother of *Rene*, succeeded in all the Estates and Titles of his Uncle; and at his death gave *Provence* to King *Lewis* the 11th, his Cousin-german, as being the Son of *Charles* the 7th, and *Mary* Daughter of *Lewis* the second, Duke of *Anjou*, Sister of *Lewis* the third, and *Rene*, the preceding Dukes, and of *Charles* Father of this *Charles*, the last Earl of *Provence*. Immediately on whose death, Decemb. 19. Anno 1481, the King sent a Commission to *Palamede* de *Forban*, Lord of *Sollier*, Chamberlain of Earl *Charles*, to take possession of the Country in his name, and command therein as Lieutenant-General. Since which time, *Provence* never was dismembered from the Crown of *France*, so much as in the way of *Appenage*, or any Honorary Title amongst the Kings of *Cherlen*.

What the Revenues of it were to the former Earls, I am not able to say, having no good Authority to proceed upon. Only I find, that besides the Lands belonging to the Earls hereof, and other customary and casual Taxes, there was a Tax called, *The Royal Impost*, being fifteen *Florens* levied upon every fire: which reckoning 3500 fires (for such the estimate of them was) amounted yearly unto 56000 *Florens*. Now it is subject to the rigor and uncertainty of the Kings Taxations, as well as all the rest of *France*. And so much of those Provinces which properly made up the Kingdoms of the *French* and *Goths*, let us next look on those which at the same time were subdued by the *Burgundians*: whose History, Kingdom, and Estate are to be considered, before we come to the description of their several Provinces.

The Kingdom of BURGUINDY.

THE Kingdom of the *BURGUNDIANS*, at their first settlement in *Gaul*, contained all those Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, then called the *Alpes Graie*, and *Pennine*, *Maxima Sequanorum*, *Langumensis Prima*, and *Vienne*; now passing under the names of the *Dukedom* and *County* of *Burgundy*, *Switzerland*, the *Grisons*, *Wallisland*, *Savoie*, *La Brisse*, *Dauphine*, *Lionois*, *Nivernois*, and some part of the *Dukedom* of *Bourbon*. A fair and large quantity of ground, able at once to tempt and satiate an ambitious Nation. But the *Burgundians* came not into *Gaul* of their own accord, though of their own accord they drew somewhat near it. In their Original, they were a people bordering near the *Vandals*, if not a Tribe or Sept of them; and dwelling in those parts in which are now the *Dukedom* of *Moldenburg*, and *Pomerania*. At the time that *Drusus* and *Tiberius* warred in *Germany*, they were utterly barbarous, living in Teuts only here and there clapped up. Which being in their own Language called *Burgi*, gave them the name of *Burgundians* amongst the *Romans*; in the same sense as the wild *Arabs* had the name of *Scinites*, amongst the *Greeks*, from the like kind of living. In the year 418, at the instigation of the *Vandals*, they left their own seats, and planted themselves in the Towns and Villages belonging now to the *Marquesses* of *Baden*, and Electors of *Rhene*. About which time they received the Christian Faith, being then miserably oppressed by the *Hunnes*, breaking upon them out of *Pannonia*. Not finding any other way to free themselves of that Enemy, they betook themselves to the God of the Christians, and were universally baptized. After which, falling on the *Hunnes*, they flew no less than 30000 of them in one battle, from that time forwards, never troubled with that barbarous Nation. Christians then they were, and Orthodox in their profession, before their coming into *Gaul*: and for that reason called in by *Stilico* to oppose the *French*, then threatening an invasion of the *Roman* Provinces. Upon this invitation they passed over the River with an Army of 80000 fighting men, possetting themselves of all which lay from the farthest shore of the *Loyre*, to the *Alpes* of *Italy*: and from the Mountain *Vange*, to the *Mediterranean*; *Provence* only excepted, about that same time planted by the *Goths*. Their Government was under Kings: Many according to their Tribes, when they lived in *Germany*: *Monarchical*, when settled in the Realm of *France*, where they had their live.

Kings of the Burgundians.

A. Ch.

- 408 1 *Tabia*, who first brought the *Burgundians* into *Gaul*.
- 2 *Gundioch*.
- 3 *Gondebani*, who harassed *Italy*, then in possession of the *Goths*, with Fire and Sword; the Uncle of *Clodiva*, Wife to *Claudio* the fifth King of the *French*, by her perfwasion made inclinable to the Christian Faith.
- 4 *Sigismund*.
- 5 *Gundamar*, the Son of *Sigismund*, first set upon by *Clodimir*, the Son of *Claudio* King of *Orleans*, whom he slew in Battle near *Auxon*; but afterward outed of his Kingdom by *Childebert* and *Claudio* Kings of *Paris* and *Saussure*, in revenge of the death of their Brother

Clo-

Clodmire, and so the Kingdom of the *Burgundians* fell unto the *French*, after it had continued about 120 years: *Gunttram* the Son of *Clotaire*, and *Clotus*, one of the Sons of *Dagobert* the first; being in their times, honoured with the Title of Kings of *Burgundy*.

But the first time that the Kingdom of *Burgundy* settled amongst the *French*, in the way of Succession, was in the partage of that vast Empire of *Charlemagne*, amongst the children and posterity of *Ludovicus Pius*: in constituting of which Kingdom, *Provence* was added to the reckoning, to make this answerable to the other parts of that broken Monarchy. The first of these *French* Kings, was *Charles*, the youngest Son of *Lotharius* Emperor, and King of *Italy*, eldest Son of the said *Lewis* the Godly. The Succession in this order following.

The French Kings of Burgundy.

- A. Ch.
855 1 *Charles*, youngest Son of the Emperor *Lotharius*, died without issue.
858 2 *Lotharius*, the second King of *Metz*, and *Lewis* the second Emperor, Brethren of *Charles*, succeeded in *Burgundy*, the Mountain *Four* dividing and bounding their Estates.
876 3 *Charles* the Bald, King of *France*, and Emperor, Uncle to the three former Kings, all dying without issue, succeeded in the whole Estate; which he again divided into three Governments or Members: that is to say, *Burgundy* on this side of the *Saône*, containing the now Dukedom of *Burgundy*, with the Earldoms of *Lions* and *Macon*. 2. *Burgundy*, beyond the *Jour*, comprehending the Provinces of *Savoie*, *Switzerland*, *Wallisland*, and the Estates of the *Grisons*: and 3dly, *Burgundy*, on the other side of the *Saône*, lying betwixt the other two, containing the now Counties of *Burgundy*, *Provence*, *La Breffe*, and *Dauphine*. This last conferred with the Title of Earl, on *Boson* Earl of *Ardenne*, by *Charles* the Bald, who had married his Sister *Judith*; and not long after, in the person of the said Earl *Boson*, raised unto a Kingdom by *Charles* the *Gros*, by the name of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. The Kings these that follow.
4 *Boson*, Earl of *Ardenne*, Husband of *Hermingrade*, the Daughter of *Lewis* the second, Emperor and King of *Burgundy*, was first by *Charles* the Bald, made Earl of *Burgundy*, beyond the *Saône*; and afterwards by *Charles* the *Gros*, created the first King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, to be held by him and his Successors of the German Emperors.
5 *Lewis* II. Son of *Boson* and *Hermingrade*, chosen King of *Italy*, but ousted by the Faction of *Berengarius*.
917 6 *Hugh* de *Arles*, supposed to be the Son of *Lotharius* the second, by *Waldrada* his Concubine; succeeded by the gift of *Lewis*, and was chosen by his Faction there, King of *Italy* also. For the quiet enjoying of which Kingdom, he resigned this to *Rodolph*, Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, elected by another Faction, to that broken Title.
926 7 *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, succeeded on the resignation of *Hugh* de *Arles*; his Brother *Boson* being settled beyond the *Jour*.

- 937 8 *Rodolph* II. Son of *Rodolph*, a Prince of so short a reign, or of so little note, that he is by some left out of the Catalogue of these Kings.
9 *Bjfon* II. the Brother of *Rodolph* the first; by whom the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, was united to the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*.
965 10 *Conrade* Son to *Boson* the second.
990 11 *Rodolph* III. Son to *Conrade*; who having no issue of his body, gave his Estate to *Conrade* the second, Emperor of *Germany*, and his Son *Henry*, surnamed the Black; whom he had by *Gilse*, the Sister of this *Rodolph*: by whom it was united to the German Empire, An. 1032. In the distractions whereof, following not long after his decease, the Provincial Earls or Governors for the German Emperors, made themselves Masters and Proprietaries of their several Provinces, (the Dukedom of *Burgundy* excepted, settled long before) out of which rose the great Estates of the Duke of *Savoie*, the Earls of *Burgundy* and *Provence*, the *Dauphins* of *Viennais*, and Lords of *Bresse*, together with the Common-wealths of the *Spitzers* and *Grisons*: every poor Birdatching also some Feather or other of this dying Eagle. Yet notwithstanding the dissenting and cantoning of this fair Estate, the succeeding Emperors of *Germany* claimed not only a pre-eminence over, but a disposal of all the Countries that ever were under the command of the King of *Burgundy*: inasmuch that the Emperors, *Henry* the sixth, receiving no small part of the money which our *Richard* the first paid to the Duke of *Anglia*, for his ransom, gave unto the said *Richard* the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, the Sovereignty of *Provence*, *Viennais*, *Marceller*, *Narbon*, *Arles*, and *Lions*, together with the Homages of the King of *Aragon*, and of the Earl of *Digen* and *St. Giles*. A Royal gift, if either the Emperor had any dominion over those Countries, or if they would have received any Prince or Officer of his appointing.

The Arms of this Kingdom under the old *Burgundian* Kings, are said to have been *Azure*, a Cat *Arg*, armed *Gules*. Which being said, we will proceed to the description of those Provinces of this broken Kingdom, which lie within the bounds of *France*; the rest, which lie beyond the *Jour*, having been spoken of already in the *Alpine* Countries, which made up the whole Continent of the *Transjuran* *Burgundy*.

18. DAUPHINE.

North of the Country of *Provence*, where we left before, lyeth that of *DAUPHINE*; having on the East, *Savoie*, and the *Maritime Alps*; on the West, *Lionnois*, and some part of *Langue-doe*, from which divided by the *Rhône*; and on the North, *La Breffe*; and those parts of *Savoie* which lie towards *Piemont*, so called, as some report, from *Dauphine*, Wife of *Guigne* the second; in like manner as *Flanders* is affirmed most probably to have took that name from *Flandrina*, Wife of *Liderick* the second, then one of the last of those Princes who governed in that Country by the name of *Forgerers*.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*; the one mountainous, stony, and unfruitful, of the same nature with the *Alpes*, with whose branches it is over-run: the other tolerably fruitful, but not to be compared with the rest of *France*. The people of the *Higher*, and more mountainous parts, are generally gross and rude; not capable of Learnings, but well enough inclined to Arms and Traffic; and have a custom, that on the coming on of Winter,

Winter, they send abroad all those which are fit for travel, whom they call *Bies*, or *Bisnards*; who seldom return back till Easter: none staying at home but old men, children, and impotent persons, which cannot go abroad to get their livings. Those in the *Lower* are more civil, but not more given to labour, than the *Mountainers*, nor very covetous of gain, so they may live in ease, without want or penury. In both parts generally good Soldiers, and well affected to their Prince.

The *Lower Dauphine*, together with that part of *Provence*, which lies next to the *Rhône* and the adjoining parts of *Savoie*, made up the Province called *Viennais*, from *Vienna* the Metropolis of it, situate on the *Rhône*, honoured with the Seat of the *Præfatus Prætorius Galliarum*; till the chief City of this Country, and Archbishop See, and a siege *Præfidal*. From hence the tract about it is called *Viennois*, and was the Title of the first Proprietaries of this Country, entituled, *Dauphins* of *Viennais*. To this Town, *Archelaus*, the Son of *Herod*, was banished by *Augustus Cæsar*. 2. *Valence*, the chief City heretofore of the *Valentinis*, then a Roman Colony; now a Bishops See, and an University for the Civil Laws: a rich, strong, and well traded Town, seated on the *Rhône*. The Country heretofore from hence called *Valentinis*; and hath given Honorary Title to two persons of more Fame than Honour: the first of which was *Cæsar Borgia*, the Son of Pope *Alexander* the sixth, who calling off his Cardinals Cap, was made Duke of *Valentinis*, by *Charles* the eighth: the other, *Madam Diana*, the great Minion and Paramour of *Henry* the second, under whom the much swayed the affairs of *France*, and honoured with the Title of Dutchess of it, 3. *Grenoble*, (in *Latine Gratianopolis*) the chief Seat heretofore of the *Anciens*; the most populous and best built of all this Province; and much resorted to by the Lords and Nobles, by reason of the Court of Parliament here erected. Anno. 1453. About this, lieth the Country called 3. *Grisinandun*, 4. *Ternay*, 5. *Rosillon*, 6. *La Roche*, 7. *Mautelmar*, all along the *Rhône*. 8. *Romont*, upon the confluence of the *Rhône*, and the *Iffere*. 9. *Cremien*, 10. *St. Marcelin*, 11. *St. Andre*. 12. *Beaurepaire*, more within the Country.

The *Higher Dauphins*, together with those parts of *Provence* which lie next to *Italy*, made up the Province of the *Alpes Maritimæ*; the Metropolis whereof was, *T. Ebrodunum*, now called *Ambrun*, an Arch-bishops See, and Siege *Præfidal*, seated on a high Rock, in the midst of a pleasant Valley, surrounded with Mountains, under which runs the River *Durance*. The Hilly Country heretofore is the highest of *France*. 2. *Briançon*, near the head of the River *Durance*, called *Brigantia* by *Antoninus*. 3. *Gappe*, now a Bishops See, formerly the chief City of the *Apençensis*; the track of whom is still found in the name of the adjoining Territory; called *La Fais Gapensis*: memorable for a Synod or Assembly of the *French Protestants* here holden, An. 1603. in which it was determined, and as for an Article of Faith, That the Pope was *Antichrist*, and where the Ministers then assembled, gave audience to the Ambassadors of Foreign States, as to a Common-wealth distinct from the Realm of *France*: audaciously importuning their King by their several Agents, for liberty of going (whensoever they listed) or sending whenever they pleased, unto the Councils and Assemblies of all Foreign Nations, which professed the same Religion with them: the Preamble to those Encroachments on the Royal Authority, which after proved the ruin of their Power and Party. 4. *Tricastin*, so called of the *Tricastins*, the old Inhabitants of these parts. 5. *Die*, the *Dia Vocontiorum* of *Antoninus*, a Bishops See, situate on the River *Drofe*:

from whence comes those final, but good *Stomach-Wines*, which we call *Vin Die*. Others affirm, (and perhaps more knowingly) that this Wine is of the growth of *Champagne*, most plentifully growing in the Fields of a Town called *Hey* 3 from whence it hath the name of *Vin de Hey*; and so contractedly, *Vin Die*. 6. *Chorges*, 7. *Mombrian*, 8. *Esflers*; of which little memorable.

The chief Inhabitants heretofore, in the time of the *Romans*, besides the *Tricastins*, *Apençensis*, *Vocontis*, and *Acquisani*, before mentioned; and the *Allobroges*, spoken of in the *Alpine* Provinces, were the *Segulianis*, about *Valence*; the *Decenses* about *Die*, and the *Cavari* about *Grenoble*. First conquered by the *Romans*, then by the *Burgundians*, and at last by the *French*: under whom made a part of the new Kingdom of *Burgundy*, till the surrender of the same to the German Emperors. Under them it continued till the year 1100, when *Guigne*, surnamed the Fat, Earl of *Grisinandun*, seeing the Emperor *Henry* the Fourth, over-borne by the Popes, and not able to assert his own rights, seized upon this Province under the title of Earl of *Viennais*, to which *Guigne* the second, his Son and Successor, gave the name of *Dauphine*, either from his Wife so called, as some; or from the *Dolphin* which he took for his Arms, as others say. In this Family it continued till the year 1349, under the Power and Government of these following Princes, entituled,

The Dauphins of Viennais.

- A. Ch.
1100 1 *Guigne*, surnamed the Fat, Earl of *Alban* and *Grisinandun* at the time of the dissolution of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*.
1135 2 *Guigne* II. the first and absolute Proprietary, Prince heretofore, by the name of the *Dauphin* of *Viennais*.
1146 3 *Guigne* III. Son of *Guigne* the second.
1152 4 *Beatrice*, Daughter of *Guigne* the Third, first married to *Raymond* the third, Earl of *Toulouse*; next to *Hugh* the third, Duke of *Burgundy*; and finally, to *Guigne* of *Alban*, of the house of the former Earls; all in her right entituled, *Dauphins* of *Viennais*.
1280 5 *Andrew*, the Son of *Beatrice* and of *Guigne* the Fourth.
1242 6 *Guigne* V. Son of *Andrew*.
1283 7 *Humbert* the fifth, in the sight of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Guigne* the fifth.
1335 8 *John* the Son of *Humbert*, exercised in continual Wars, as his Father was, with the Earls of *Savoie*.
1322 9 *Guigne* VI. Son of *John*, taken Prisoner by *Edward* Earl of *Savoie*, An. 1329, and at last slain An. 1342.
1342 10 *Humbert* II. the younger Son of *John*, and the Brother of *Guigne* the sixth, the last *Dauphin* of *Viennais*, who being surcharged with Wars by *Anne* (or *Amede*) Earl of *Savoie*, entered into the Order of *Dominican* Friars, at *Lions*; selling his Country at a small rate, to *Philip de Valois* French King, upon condition, that the eldest Son of *France* should be entituled always, *Dauphin* of *Viennais*, and quarter the Arms of *Dauphins*, with those of *France*. The conditions willingly accepted; and *Charles* the Son of King *John*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, admitted by his Grandfather both to the Title and Estate, in the very year of the surrender. Since this time, the eldest Son of *France* is called generally the *Dauphin* of *France*; sometimes the *Dauphin* only, by way of eminency; and many times, the

the *Prince-Dauphin*, to discontinue him from the *Dauphin* (or *Comte-Dauphin*) of *Auvergne*, and perhaps some others. A Title to annexed unto them, that it is not usually laid by on the accession of a greater or superior Dignity: inasmuch as *France* the eldest son of *Henry* the second, (whom he succeeded in the Crown) being King of *Scots* in the right of *Mary* his Wife, was by the French commonly called *La Roy Dauphin*, or the King of *Dauphin*. Nor have they the bare Title of this Country only, but the commands, profits, and possession of it, sending their own Governors thence; who by an ancient Indulgence, have the greatest Privileges (confering all Offices within the Province) of any Governors of *France*.

19. LA BRESSE.

LA BRESSE is bounded on the East with *Savoie*; on the West with *Lionois*; on the North with *Chablais* in the Duchy of *Burgundy*, and some part of the *Archevêché* County, and on the South, with *Dauphine*. The reason of the name I find not. The Country is very fruitful and pleasant, embraced between the Rivers of *Saône* and *Rhône*, with which very well watered. Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Bellay*, a Bishops See. 2. *Bourg*, (for distinction sake called *Bourgen Bresse*) a Town so well fenced, and fortified with so strong a Citadel for command of the Country, that it was thought little inferior to the two impregnable Fortresses of *St. Katherine*, and *Montmelian* in *Savoie*. The Government of which Town and Citadel, was earnestly laboured for by the Duke of *Brian*, then Governor of *Burgundy*, after a repulse on the like suit, for that of *St. Katherine*; but being suspected to hold intelligence with the Duke of *Savoie*, at that time in ill terms with King *Henry* the 4th, it was also denied him: which drew him into discontent, and thereby to his fatal ruin. Afterwards, during the minority of *Lenis* the 13th, demolished by special Order of the Council of *France*, for fear of being surprised by the Duke of *Savoie*, during those confusions. It was of old time called the *Forum Secusianorum*, from the *Secusiani*, the ancient Inhabitants of this Tract. 3. *Castillon*, 4. *Mont-Réal*, 5. *Bugy*, 6. *Vienne*, of which nothing observable.

This little Province being anciently a part of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, had its own Earls, Proprietary Lords hereof; who held it till the year 1285, at what time *Sybill*, the Daughter and Heir of *Ulric* Earl of *Bresse* and *Bugey*, (or *Balge*, as some Writers call it) conveyed the Estate in marriage to *Ame*, or *Amadee*, the 4th, of that name Earl of *Savoie*. In which House it continued till the year 1600, and then surrendered by Duke *Charles Emmanuel*, to King *Henry* the 4th, to silence the pretences which that King made unto the Marquisate of *Saluzzars*, and put an end to the War then begun about it: the poltick Duke choosing rather to part with an Estate on this side of the Mountains than to give that active King occasion to look into Italy; to which *Savoie* must have been a thorough-fair, *Piemont* an ordinary Pass; and where no end could be expected, but the loss of all. Surrendered then it was on good reason of State, and upon that Surrender united and incorporated with the Crown of *France*, and put under the Government of the Parliament of *Digou*, as it still continueth.

Arms hereof, are *Azure*, a Lyon *Ermine*, armed and langued, *Or*.

20. LIONOIS.

THE Country of *LIONOIS* is bounded on the East with *Bresse*, on the West with *Beau-jolais*, *Forrest*, and *Auvergne*; on the North, with *Burgundy* Duchy; and on the South, with *Dauphine*, and a part of *Languedoc*. So called from *Lions* the chief City; and under that Title made an Earldom by *Charles the Great*, in the cantoning and dismembring of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*. The Earldom containing at that time not only *Lionois* it self, but also *Forrest* and *Beau-jolais*, before described. The Earls hereof were at first only *Provincia* Governors; but under the distractions of the *German* Empire, they shifted for themselves and became hereditary: but long it held not in one hand. For first, the Earldom of *Forrest*, and the Lordship or Signeury of *Beau-jolais* being taken out of it about the year 950, the rest of the Estate fell in some tract of time to the Bishops and Church of *Lions*; but under the Sovereignty of the French Kings, as Lords Paramount of it.

The places in it of most note are, 1. *Maison*, (*Maillecomen*) a Bishops See, situate on the *Saône*, anciently a distinct Earldom from that of *Lions*, one of the five (as that of *Lions* was another) which made up the Dukedom of *Burgundy* on this side of the *Saône*: one of the Earls hereof, called *William*, flourishing in the year 1000, or thereabouts; whose Son and Successor, named *Otho*, married *Elizabeth* daughter of *Humber*, the first Earl of *Maunienne*, (a Title afterwards exchanged for that of *Savoie*). Continuing for some Ages after in this Posterity, it was purchased of *William* the last Earl hereof, and of *Elizabeth* his Wife, by King *Henry* the 6th, and afterwards subjected to the Jurisdiction and Court of *Lionois*, as it still continueth. 2. *Ephebus*, on the *Rhône*, on the South of *Lions*, opposite to *Vienne*, the chief City of the Lower *Dauphine*. 3. *Dandilly*, 4. *Franchville*, 5. *Chamunot*, and 6. *Lebrille*, all somewhat Westward of that River, but not much observable. 7. *Lions* it self, pleasantly seated on the confluence of the *Saône* and the *Rhône*, anciently a *Roman* Colony, (testified by many old Inscriptions) and honoured with a magnificent Temple, dedicated by the *Citizens* of *France*, to *Augustus Caesar*: now the most famous Mart of *France*, and an University; by our *Latin* Writers called *Lugdunum*. These Marts in former times were holden at *Geneva*, from thence removed hither by King *Lewis* the 11th, for the enriching of his own Kingdom. When *Julius* the second had excommunicated *Lenis* the 12th, he commanded by his Apostolical Authority, that they should be returned to *Geneva* again; but from his pleasure was never obeyed; the Marts continuing still at *LIONS*, as a place more convenient and capacious for that great resort of *French*, *Dutch*, and *Italian* Merchants, which frequent the same. As for the University, questions it is very ancient, being a seat of Learning in the time of *Caius Caligula*. For in those times, before an Altar consecrated to *Augustus Caesar* in the Temple (spoken of before); this *Caligula* did institute some exercises of the Greek and *Roman* Eloquence; the *Victor* to be honoured according to his merit: the *Vanquished* either to be *persecuted*, or with their own tongues to blot and expunge their Writings, or to be drowned in the River adjoining. Hence that of *Juvenal*, *Ut Lugdunensis Rhetor diditur ad aram*, applied to dangerous Undertakings. In the time of the *Romans* first coming into *Gaul*, it was

the

the chief City of the *Hedui*, and *Secusiani*, afterwards the *Metropolis* of *Lugdunensis Prima*. The Archbishop hereof, is the *Metropolitan* of all *France*; and was so in the time of *S. Irenaeus*, one of the renowned Fathers in the Primitive Church, who was Bishop here.

In this Town lived *Peter Waldo*, a wealthy Citizen, about the time of *Frederick Barbarossa*, Emperor of *Germany*; who being a devout and conscientious man, sensible of the many errors and corruptions in the Church of *Rome*, distributed the greatest part of his Riches amongst the poor, and betook himself to Meditation, and studying of the holy Scriptures. In the carnal eating of *CHRIST*'s Body, the subtraction of the Cup in the blessed Sacrament, in matter of Purgatory, the Supremacy, adoration of Images, invocation of the Saints departed, and many other points of moment, he held opinions contrary to those of *Rome*, and little different from those of the present *Reformed Churches*. And yet it may not be denied, but that amongst some good Wheat, there were many Tares; which gave the latter colour to their Adversaries to exclaim against them. Being much followed in regard of his Piety and Charity, he got unto himself and them the name of *Pauperes de Lugduno*, or the Poor men of *Lions*, given in derision and contempt. Afterwards they were called *Waldenses*, by the name of *Waldo*, the beginner of this Reformation; and by that name opposed and writ against by Fryer *Thomas* of *Walden*. The French, according to their manner of pronunciation, drowning the *L*, and changing the *W* into *V*, call them commonly *Vandois*, by which name they occur in the stories of that State and Language. But *Lions* proving no safe place for them, they retired into the more desert parts of *Languedoc*; and spreading on the banks of the River *Alby*, obtained the name of *Albigenses*, as before was said. Supported by the two last Earls of *Tholouse*, they became very masterful and insolent; inasmuch, that they murdered *Trincamp* their Viscount in *Beziers*, and dashed out the Teeth of their Bishop, having taken Sanctuary in *S. Magdalens* Church, one of the Churches of that City. Forty years after which high out-rage, the Divine Providence gave them over to the hand of the *Croisades*, under the conduct of the French Kings, and many other noble Adventurers, who sacrificed them in the self same Church, wherein they had spilled the blood of others. About the year 1250, after a long and bloody VVar, they were almost rooted out of that Country also. The remnants of them, being bettered by this affliction, betook themselves unto the Mountains lying betwixt *Dauphine*, *Provence*, *Piedmont*, and *Savoie*, where they lived a godly and laborious Life; painfully tilling the ground, rebuilding Villages, which formerly had been destroyed by VVar; tracing the very Rocks to yield good Pasture to their Cattel: inasmuch as places which before their coming thither, scarce yielded four Crows yearly, were made worth 350 Crows a year, by their care and industry. *Lacrimosus* in speech they used not: *Blasphemy* they abhorred; nor was the name of *Devil* (in the way of execration) ever heard amongst them; as their very Enemies could not but confess, when they were afterward in troubles. The Crimes alleged against them, were, that when they came into any of the neighbouring Churches, they made no address unto the Saints, nor bowed before such Crosses as were erected in the High-ways, and Streets of Towns. Great Crimes assuredly, when greater could not be produced! And to they lived, neither embracing the *Pope*'s *Doctrines*, nor submitting unto his Supremacy, for the space of 300 years, untouched, unquestioned; even till the latter end of the reign of King *Francis* the first. But then

the Persecution raging against the *Lutherans*, they were accused, condemned, and barbarously murdered, in the *Massacres* of *Merindol*, and *Cabriers*, before mentioned. After which time, joyning themselves with the rest of the *Protestant* Party, they lost the name of *Vandois*, by which called before; and pass in the account of the *Reformed Churches* of *France*; enjoying the same privileges and freedom of Conscience, as others of the *Reformed* do. And though I look not on these men, and their Congregations as Founders of the *Protestant* Church, or of the same Church with them, as I see some do: yet I behold them as *Assessors* of some *Dodical* Truths, and professed Enemies of the Errors and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, and therein as the Predecessors of the present *Protestants*.

The old Inhabitants of this Tract, were a part of the *Hedui*, that Nation overspreading not this Country only, but *Bourbonnois*, with the whole Dukedom of *Burgundy*. And of these *Hedui*, the *Insubres* are thought by some learned men to have been a Tribe, who passing over the *Alps*, together with the *Senones*, and others of the *Gallick* Nations, possessed themselves of those parts of *Italy* which now make up the Dukedom of *Millain*, *Parma*, *Mantua*, with the parts adjoining. The residue of the story which concerns this Country we have had before.

21. The Dukedom of Burgundy.

THE Dukedom of *BURGUNDY* hath on the East, the French County, and some part of *Savoie*, on the West, *Bourbonnois*; on the North, *Champagne*; on the South, *La Bresse*, *Lionois*, and some part of *Beau-jolais*. A Province so well watered with pleasant and profitable Rivers, that as Queen *Katharine de Medices* used to say of *France*, That it had more fair Rivers than all *Europe*: so we may say of this Country. That it hath more fine Rivers than all *France*: here being the Rivers of 1. *Armançon*, 2. *Serein*, 3. *Our*, 4. *Torcy*, 5. *Valence*, 6. *Dove*, 7. *Brine*, 8. *Sein*, 9. *Lauche*, and 10. *Saône*, (the *Araris* of the Ancient Writers) this last dividing the two *Burgundies* from one another. Yet notwithstanding this great plenty of Waters, the Country generally less fruitful than the rest of *France*: hardly yielding sufficient for its own Inhabitants, except *VVines* only.

Chief Cities in it are, 1. *Dijon*, the birth-place of *S. Bernard*; seated upon the *Saône* and *Loche*, in a Champaign Country: The Town large, populous, and of much resort, as being the Seat of the Gouverneur, and *Parliamentary* for the Province, a Parliament being here erected, An. 1476. *VVell* fortified on all parts, but especially defended by a strong Castle, called *Talence*, situate on a hill adjoining. It is called *Diovis* in the *Latine*; the Bishop hereof *Diovisensis*. 2. *Chalon*, (in *Latine*, *Calabullinus*) called for distinctions sake, *Chalon upon Saône*, to difference it from *Chalon upon Marne*, in *Champagne*: a Bishops See also, as the other is: and gives name to that Noble Family of *Chalons*, (out of which the Princes of *Orange* are extracted) being one of the four ancient Families of *Burgundy*, the other three, *Vienne*, *Neuchâtel*, and *Virgie*. 3. *Autun*, by *Prology* called *Augustodunum*, the chief City of the *Hedui*, now a Bishops See, heretofore the chief of all the Country, some marks of the old splendour being still to be seen: now very ordinary and mean, beautified only with some fair Churches, which the ruins of Time have not yet demolished. 4. *Beaune*, seated on the *Burghleze*, in the best and richest soil of all *Burgundy*; and yielding the best *VVines* in all *France*:
C c
remar.

remarkable for an Hospital of so fair a building, that it is thought equal to any Princes Palace in Europe; and an impregnable Castle built by King Lewis XII. 5. *Alize*, now a small Village, but of great name and power in the time of *Cesar*, then called *Alexia*, the chief Forts of *Vercingetorix*, besieged herein by the said *Cesar*; but so besieged, that he had 70000 men in the Town for defence of the place, and an Army of 300000 Gauls at the back of *Cesar*, to relieve their Fellows. So that he was fain to fortify his Camp with two Walls, the one against them within the City, and the other against them without: which done, he kept such diligent watch and ward on both sides, that the besieged heard sooner of the discomfiture of their friends, than they did of their coming. Which fatal news being brought unto them, the Town was yielded. And *Vercingetorix* bravely mounted, rode round about *Cesar*; then sitting in his Chair of State, disarmed himself, took off his Horfes caparisons; and laying all upon the ground, fate down at *Cesar's* feet, and became his Prisoner. 6. *Tournaï*, encompassed with the *Saône*. 7. *Sennu*, consisting of three parts, each of them very well walled, and strongly fortified. 8. *Verdun*. 9. *Nay*. 10. *St. Ligier*, famous for Medicinal Baths. 11. *Noyers*, on the borders towards *Champagne*. 12. *Auxerre*, by *Antoine* called *Antisiodorum*, of most note for the Council held here, Anno 627, the Country about which, is called *Auxerrois*; and was an Earldom of it self. The Title and Possession of that *Peter Earl of Auxerre*, who was the third Emperor of the *Latines* reigning in *Constantinople* is to whom it came in Marriage with his first Wife *Agnes*, the Daughter of the last Earl of the former Race. On the failure of which house, it fell unto that of *Chalons*, by the Marriage of *Isabel*, Niece of the said *Peter*, by his Brother *Robert*, to *John* of *Chalons*, Earl of *Burgundy*: to whom succeeded *John* de *Chalons*, his eldest Son by that *Venter*, (his second Wife) and finally, was sold by *John* de *Chalons*, great Grandchild of the said *John* Earl of *Burgundy*, to *Charles* the Fifth of *France*, An. 1370. by whom united to the Crown; subjected to the Parliament of *Paris*, and made part of *Champagne*. Here is also within this Country, the great and famous Monastery of *Cîteaux*; the Mother of so many Religious Houses dispersed up and down in Europe; from hence denominated, and subject to the Discipline and Rules hereof.

Within the limits of this Dukedom, (on the South parts of it) stands the Earldom of *CHAROLLOIS*, heretofore the Title of the eldest Son of the Dukes of *Burgundy*: so called from *Charolles*, the chief Town hereof, situate in the borders of it, towards *La Bresse*: seized upon with the rest of this Dukedom, by *Lewis* XI. immediately on the death of Duke *Charles* the Warlike: reffered again to *Philip* the Second, King of *Spain*. by *Henry* the Second, of *France*, on the Peace made at *Cambray*, and subjected to the Parliament of *Dole* in the County of *Burgundy*, as a part or member of that Estate. So that neither the *Gouverneur* of the Dukedom for the French King, nor the *Parliament* of *Dijon*, have any thing to do in it. The Arms here are *Gules*, a Lion passant regardant Or, armed Azure.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole Dukedom, according to the limits before laid down, were the *Hedui*, one of the most potent Nations of all *Gaul*: who calling in the *Romans* to aid them in their quarrels against the *Sequani* and *Auverni*, made them all subject unto *Rome*. In the prosperity whereof, they made up the Province of *Lugdunensis Prima*, of which *Lions* was the Metropolis or principal City. Afterwards, in the division of the French Kingdom of *Burgundy*, by *Charles* the Bald; this part thereof, being called the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, on

this side of the *Saône*, was cantoned into the five Earldoms of *Dijon*, *Chalons*, *Aunon*, *Lions*, and *Maison*: whereof the three first laid together by *Odo* or *Eudes* King of *France*, during the Minority of *Charles* the Simple, were given unto his Brother *Richard* (both Sons of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*) under the stile and title of Duke of *Burgundy*. The Issue of this *Robert* failing, it fell unto another *Robert*, Son of *Hugh* Capet, King of *France*: and the Male-issue failing of that Line also, it was devolved (partly by escheat for want of Heir male; and partly in the Right and Title of the Heir-general) to King *John* of *France*, the Son of *Philip* de *Valois*, and of *Joan* his Wife, one of the Daughters of *Robert* the Third; who with the consent of *Charles* his eldest Son, firnamed the *Wise*, gave it unto his second Son *Philip*, (more worthily firnamed the *Hardy*) together with the Marriage of the Heir of *Flanders*, *Artois*, and the County of *Burgundy*. An argument of no great Widow, as was judiciously observed by King *Lewis* the Eleventh. For by this means, those great Estates being united in one person, and afterwards these Estates improved by as prosperous Marriages; this House of *Burgundy* grew formidable to the Kings themselves, who never left practising against it, till they had brought it to ruin; and once again united this Dukedom to their own Estates, from which at first it was dismembered.

The Dukes of Burgundy.

- 890 1 *Richard* of *Saxony*, the second Son of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*, Brother of *Eudes*, and Father of *Rodolph*, Kings of *France*.
- 938 2 *Gilbert*, the second Son of *Richard*.
- 964 3 *Orto*, Son of *Hugh* Earl of *Paris*, firnamed the Great, and Brother of *Hugh* Capet, King of *France*; was Duke of *Burgundy*, in right of his Wife the Daughter of *Gilbert*.
- 976 4 *Henry*, the Brother of *Orto*.
- 1001 5 *Robert*, King of *France*, Son of *Hugh* Capet, succeeded in the Dukedom, on the death of his Uncle *Henry*.
- 1004 6 *Robert* II. Son of this *Robert*, and Brother of *Henry* King of *France*.
- 1075 7 *Hugh*, the Nephew of *Robert*, by his Son *Henry*, became afterwards a Monk of *Clugny*.
- 1097 8 *Odo*, or *Orto* II. Brother of *Hugh*.
- 1102 9 *Hugh* II. Son of *Orto* the Second.
- 1124 10 *Odes*, or *Orto* III. Son of *Hugh* the Second.
- 1165 11 *Hugh* III. the Companion, but great Enemy of our *Richard* the First, in the VVars of the Holy Land.
- 1193 12 *Odes*, or *Orto* IV. Son of *Hugh* the Third.
- 1218 13 *Hugh* IV. an Adventurer with King *Lewis* the Ninth in the Holy Land.
- 1273 14 *Robert* III. Son of *Hugh* IV. which *Robert* was the Father of *Margaret*, the VVife of *Lewis* Huin, King of *France* and *Navarre*, and of *Joan*, the VVife of *Philip* de *Valois*, French King, and Grandmother of *Philip* the *Hardy*, after Duke of *Burgundy*.
- 1308 15 *Hugh* V. Son of *Robert* the Third.
- 1315 16 *Eudes*, the Brother of *Hugh*, was Earl of *Burgundy* also, in right of his VVife.
- 1349 17 *Philip*, the Grandchild of *Eudes* by his only Son *Philip*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, by descent, (who if he had lived, had been also Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*, in right of *Margaret* his VVife.) But dying young without

- without Issue, he was succeeded in all his Titles and Estates, by
- 1363 18 *Philip* II. firnamed the *Hardy*, Son of *John* King of *France*, Son of *Philip* de *Valois*, and of *Joan* Daughter of *Robert* the third, by King *John* his Father, with the consent of *Charles* the 9th, his Brother; (in whom the right of this Dukedom was then pretended to remain) made Duke of *Burgundy*, and married *Margaret* Daughter of *Lewis* de *Malain* (and consequently Heir of *Flanders*, and the County of *Burgundy*) the Widow of his Predecessor.
- 1404 19 *John* firnamed the *Proud*, Son of *Philip* the second, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, and Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*.
- 1419 20 *Philip* III. firnamed the *Good*, who added most of the *Neiberlands* to his Estate.
- 1467 21 *Charles* the *Warlike*, Earl of *Charolais*, Son by *Philip* the *Good*. After whose death, slain by the *Switzers* at the battel of *Nancy*, *Lewis* the eleventh seized upon this Dukedom, An. 1476. pretending an Escheat thereof, for want of Heir males; and so uniting it for ever to the Crown of *France*: as by like colour of Escheat, King *John* had formerly entred on it, and given it unto *Philip* his younger Son, to the prejudice of the Earls of *Euwen*, descended from the daughter and heir of *Lewis* Huin, and of *Margaret* his Wife, the elder Sister of the Mother of the said King *John*.

Of the great VVealth and Potency of these last Dukes of *Burgundy*, we shall speak further when we come to the description of *Belgium*: the accession whereof to their Estates, made them equal to most Kings in *Christendom*. But for their Arms, which properly belonged to them as Dukes of *Burgundy*, they were *Benaisins* of *Or* and *Azure* a Border *Gules*. Which Coat is usually marshalled in the Scutcheons of the Kings of *Spain*; that of the Earldom being omitted, though in their possession. The reasons of which are probably (for I go but by guess) partly because this being the older and Paternal Coat, comprehends the other; and partly to keep on foot the memory of this Title to the Dukedom itself, in right of which he holdeth such a great Estate.

22. The County of Burgundy.

THE County of *BURGUNDY* hath on the East, the Mountain *Jour*, which parts it from *Switzerland*; on the West, the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, from which divided by the *Saône*; on the North, a branch of the Mountain *Vange*, which runneth betwixt it and *Lorraine*; on the South, *La Bresse*. It is reckoned to be 90 miles in length, about 60 in breadth: and with the Provinces of *Dauphine*, *La Bresse*, and *Provence*, made up the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Saône*; on the Eastern side of which it is wholly situate. This part thereof, now generally called the *French Comptee*, or the *Free County*, be cause not under the command of the French Kings; but living in a more free Estate than any Subjects of that Kingdom.

The County in some parts very Mountainous, but those Mountains yielding excellent Vineyards, and having, in recompence of a little barrenness, an intermixture of most pleasing and fruitful Valleys, swelling with

plenty of all natural commodities useful unto the life of man; and for the variety of fresh Streams; and delightful Riverets, inferior only to the *Duchy*.

The principal Towns and Cities of it are, 1. *Besanzon*, called by *Cesar*, *Vesontio*, then the chief City of the *Sequani*, as afterwards the Metropolis of the Province constituted, *Maxima Sequanorum*; by consequence an Archbishops See. Seated betwixt two Mountains on the banks of the River *Doux*, by which it is almost encompassed; such artificial Fortifications being added to it, as make it very strong both by Art and Nature. But this is an Imperial City, not subject to the Government and Command of the Earls of *Burgundy*; honoured with a small University, founded here An. 1540. by Pope *Julius* the second, and *Charles* the fifth. 2. *Dole*, seated on the same River *Doux*; for riches, strength, and beauty, to be preferred before any in all the County; of which it is the Parliament-City, and consequently of most resort for dispatch of business. Anciently it was an University for the study of the Civil Laws; but now the University is devoured by a College of *Jesuits*: who fearing left the Doctrine of the *Reformed Churches* might creep in amongst the people, not only have debarr'd them the use of the *Protestants* Books; but have expressly forbid them to talk of *GOD*, either in a good fort or in a bad. 3. *Salines*, so called from its salt Fountains, out of which came the greatest part of the Earls Revenue: in which respect, or that it was the title of *Orto* the Son of *Frederick* *Barbarts*, before he did attain the Earldom; the Earls of *Burgundy* since that time, and the Emperors of *Germany*, in their right, retain the name of Lords of *Salines*, in their usual Title. A City honoured for a while with the Seat of the Parliament, removed thither from *Dole* by King *Lewis* the eleventh, at such time as he held this Country, be holding to him (being a wife and politic Prince) for many wholom Ordinances, still observed amongst the 4. *Poligny*, the Baillie of the *Bovay*; as 5. *Vesvial* is of the *Higher Burgundy*. 6. *Arbois*, noted for the best Wines, and 7. *Luxodol*, for medicinal Baths. 8. *Nazareth*, on the borders of *Switzerland*, fortified with a very strong Castle; the ordinary feat and retreat from business, of the first Prince of *Orange*, of the House of *Chalons*, who had great possessions in this Country. 9. *Gray*, 10. *Chastel-Chaillon*, 11. *Quingey*, 12. *Orgelet*. Here is also the great and famous Abbey of *Clugny*, near the Town of *Beaune*; out of which of many Monasteries in the VVestern Church, had their first Original.

The old Inhabitants of this County, were the *Sequani*, a potent Nation, contending with the *Hedui* and *Auverni*, for the Sovereignty of *Gaul*, till the Frife was ended by the *Romans*, under whom it made, together with *Switzerland*, the Province of *Maxima Sequanorum*. In the declining of which Empire, it fell to the *Burgundians*; and by *Rodolph* the last King of the French, the Kingdom of *Burgundy* was given to *Comade* the second Emperor of *Germany*. After that, reckoned as a part of the *German Empire*, and governed by such Earls or Provincial Officers, as those Emperors sent thither. *Orto* of *Flanders*, Son to a Sister of the Emperor *Comade*, was the first that held it as Proprietary, the other three whom *Paradise* sets before him in his Catalogue of the Earls of *Burgundy*, being merely official. It was first united to the *Duchy*, by the marriage of *D. Eudes*, with *Joan* the Countess. But no Issue coming out of this bed, it fell into the House of *Flanders*; and with the Heir of *Flanders*, unto *Philip* the *Hardy*, the first Duke hereof, of the Royal Race of *Valois*, An. 1369. *Philip* the Grandchild of this *Philip*, united most of the *Belgick* Provinces unto his Estate: after whose death, and the death of *Charles* his Son, at the Battel of *Nancy*, the *Duchy* was surprized by King *Lewis* the eleventh,

as holden of the Crown of France, escheated to him for want of Heirs-males. But the County, holden of the Empire, though subdued also by this Lewis, was restored again to Mary the Daughter and Heiress Charles, continuing hitherto in her Issue; as appears evidently by this Catalogue of.

The Earls of Burgundy.

- 1101 1 Orto Guillaume, the first Earl of Burgundy by the power and aid of Robert King of France.
- 1118 2 Reinald, Cousin and Heir of Orto.
- 1157 3 Frederick Barbarossa, Emperor, in right of Beatrix his Wife, Daughter of Earl Reinald, was Earl of Burgundy.
- 1183 4 Orto, the youngest Son of Frederick.
- 1200 5 Orto II. Duke of Meranie, part of the Province of Tirol in Germany, was Earl of Burgundy in right of Beatrix his Wife, the Daughter of Orto the first.
- 1208 6 Stephen, Earl of Chalon, next Heir of Gerard of Vienne, and Joan his Wife, the second Daughter of Orto the first, and Sister of Beatrix; acknowledged by his Faction there, for Earl of Burgundy, in the life of Orto the second, whom he dispossessed, and left the same unto his Son, to the prejudice of Alice the Daughter of Orto.
- 1234 7 John, Son of Stephen de Chalons.
- 1269 8 Hugh the Son of John, married to Alice Daughter of Orto of Meranie; so getting in that pretension also.
- 1279 9 Othelin, the Son of Hugh, Earl of Artois in right of Maud his Wife, Daughter of Robert Earl of Artois.
- 1315 10 Philip the Long, King of France; Earl of Burgundy and Artois, in right of Joan his Wife, Daughter and Heir of Othelin.
- 1331 11 Eudes, Duke of Burgundy, Husband of Joan of France, the eldest Daughter of King Philip the Long, and of Joan the Countess.
- 1349 12 Philip, Duke and Earl of Burgundy, Grandchild of Eudes, and of Joan his wife, by their Son Philip.
- 1361 13 Margaret, the Widow of Lewis Earl of Flanders, and second Daughter of Philip the Long, and of Joan the Countess, was Countess of Burgundy and Artois, after the death of her Cousin Philip.
- 14 Lewis de Malain, Earl of Flanders by his Father, and of Burgundy and Artois, by his Mother.
- 1383 15 Philip II. called the Hardy, Duke of Burgundy, by the gift of King John his Father, with the consent and approbation of his Brother Charles the fifth, was Earl of Burgundy, Flanders, and Artois; as also, Duke of Nevers and Reibel, in right of Margarine his Wife, sole Daughter of Lewis de Malain.
- 1404 16 Amoy the Proud, Duke and Earl of Burgundy, his younger Brother Philip, succeeding in the Earldoms of Nevers and Reibel,
- 1419 17 Philip III. called the Good, Duke and Earl of Burgundy.
- 1467 18 Charles the Warlike, Duke and Earl of Burgundy.

- 1476 19 Mary, the Daughter of Charles, married to Maximilian of Austria, Son of Frederick the third, Emperor of Germany; in which honour he succeeded his Father.
- 1482 20 Philip IV. Son of Mary and Maximilian, King of Castile, in right of his Wife Joan, daughter to Ferdinand and Isabel, King of Castile, &c.
- 1506 21 Charles, the Son of Philip, King of Spain, and Emperor of Germany, by the name of Charles the fifth.
- 1558 22 Philip V. of Burgundy, and the second of Spain.
- 23 Philip VI. of Burgundy, and the third of Spain.
- 24 Philip VII. of Burgundy, and the fourth of Spain; in whom resteth the possession of the County of Burgundy, and the Earldom of Charollois; herein not troubled by the French, upon the death of Charles the Warlike; partly, because it was accounted as a Feif of the Empire; but principally, for fear of giving offence to the Cantons of Switzerland, upon whom it bordereth: jealous enough already of the greatness and power of France; and so not willing to admit such a potent Neighbour.

The Arms of this Earldom are Azure, a Lion rampant Or, Semé of Billets Argent.

23. The Islands in the Aquitain and Gallick Ocean.

HAVING thus took a view of the several Provinces within the Continent of France, let us next look upon the ISLANDS which belong unto it, dispersed in the Mediterranean Sea, and the Western Ocean. Those in the Mediterranean Sea, are of little note; as 1. the Isles of Eres, and 2. Ponague, lying against Provence: 3. Maguelone, lying against Languedoc: and 4. L'Anguade, betwixt both, at the mouth of the Rhosne: of which there is nothing to be said, but that those of Eres are thought to be the Stoechades of Ptolomy; and his Blasphemy, to be Anguade. And if the Isles of Eres be the same with the Stoechades, then one of them must be the Lerina which we find in Pliny: of most note afterwards for a Monastery founded in it, which gave name to Vincentius Lerinensis, or rather Lirinensis, as most VVriters call him: the Island now called Insula Sancti Honorati, or Saint Honoratus, as Massons telleth us. And of as little note in the Western Ocean, are Belle Isle, against Vannes in Bretagne; the Isle de Dieu, having in it two or three good Villages: and Marmonville, plentiful in Salt, and beautified with a Monastery called the White Abby. Of which three last, that of Belle Isle hath been of late so fortified by Art, as of old by Nature, that it is thought to be impregnable: the Abbey of the last endowed with so plentiful a Revenue, that it was thought a competent preferment for Antonine of Bonbon, base Brother to King Henry the Fourth, to be made Lord Abbot of the same. Those of most note are, 1. Oleron, and 2. Re, on the Coast of Aquitain; and those of 3. Jersey, 4. Gernsey, 5. Sarky, and 6. Alderney, on the shores of Normandy: Of which, the four last are under the Kings of England; the rest possessed by the French.

I. O. I. E.

1. OLERON is an Island situate over against the Province of Xaintoigne, and South unto the Ile of Ree, from which little distant. It is the biggest of the two, and makes yearly a very great quantity of Salt, where-with most of the Provinces of the Western Ocean use to be furnished. But it is easie of access, and not very defensible; which makes it of less note both in ancient and modern stories. The principal Town of it is called Oleron, by the name of the Island. One thing therein for which indeed this Island is of special fame, and that is, that the Maritime Laws, which for near 500 years have generally been received by all the States of the Christian World which frequent the Ocean, (the Rhodian Laws being antiquated and worn out of use) for regulating of Sea-affairs, and deciding of Maritime Controversies, were declared and established here, and from thence called the Laws of Oleron. And here they were declared and established by King Richard the First of England, as Lord Paramount of the Seas, immediately on his return from the Holy Land: this Island being then in his possession, as a Member of his Dukedom of Aquitain: *Quidam Leges & Statuta per Dominum Richardum quondam Regem Angliæ in reditu a Terra Sancta, correctæ fuerunt, interpretatæ, declaratæ, & in Insula de Oleron publicatæ & nominatæ in Gallica Lingua La Loy d'Oleron, &c.* faith an old Record which I find cited in a MS. Discourse of my late learned Friend Sir John Burroughs, (once Keeper of the Records in the Tower of London, but afterwards Principal King of Arms, by the name of Garter) entitled, *The Sovereignty of the British Seas*. So powerful were the Kings of England in the former times, as to give Laws to all that traded on the Ocean.

2. The Isle of REE is situate over against Rochel: to which it served for an Out-work on that side thereof. It is in length ten English miles, and about half as much in breadth, well fortified with deep Marishes at the entries of it; to which the many Salt-pits every where intermingled, add a very great strength. Chief places in it are, 1. La Butte de Mont, 2. St. John de Mont, 3. St. Hillary, 4. St. Martins, the largest and strongest of them all; from whence the whole Island hath sometimes been called St. Martins. After the taking of this Town by Lewis XIII. An. 1622. (the Duke of Soubize then commanding in it for those of Rochel) it was very well fortified; and since made unfortunately famous for the defeat of the English Forces under the Command of George Duke of Buckingham. First thither to recover the Town and Island, on the instigation of Soubize, who before had lost it, An. 1628.

3. JARSET, by Antonine called Casarea; situate about ten miles from the Coast of Normandy, within the view and prospect of the Church of Constance, part of which Diocese it was: in length containing 11 miles, 6 in breadth, and in circuit about 33. It is generally very fruitful of Corn, whereof they have not only enough for themselves, but some over-plus to barter at St. Malo, with the Spanish Merchants: and of an Air not very much disposed to Discaise, unless it be an Ague in the end of Harvest, which they call *Les Settembriets*. The Country stands much upon Inclosures, the hedges of the ground well stored with Apples, and those Apples making store of Sider, which is their ordinary drink: watered with many pleasant Rivulets, and good store of Fish-ponds, yielding a Carp for tast and largeness inferior unto none in Europe, excepting those of Gernsey, which generally are somewhat bigger, but not better relished. The people, for the most part, more inclinable to Husbandry, than to Trades or Merchandize; and therein differing very little from

those of Gernsey, who are more for Merchandize than Tillage. It containeth in it 12 Parishes or Villages, having Churches in them, besides the Mansions of the Seignours, and the chief men of the Country. The principal is St. Hillary, where is the *Caba, or Court of Justice* for all the Island. It is about the bigness of an ordinary Market-Town in England: situate on the edge of a little Bay, fortified on the one side with a small Block-house called *Mont St. Aubin*; but on that side which is next the Town, with a very strong Castle, called *Fort Elizabeth*, situate upon craggy Rocks, and compassed with two arms of the Sea: so named from Queen Elizabeth, who built it to assure the Island against the French, and furnished it with thirty pieces of Ordnance, and all other necessaries. There is also on the East-side, opposite to the City of Constance, high mounted on steep and craggy Rocks, the strong Castle of *Mont Orgueille*; of great antiquity, repaired by King Henry the Fifth; now furnished with forty pieces of Cannon, and made the ordinary residence of the Governours for the Kings of England.

4. ON the North-West of Jersey, lyeth the Island of GERNSEY, called *Sarnia* by Antoninus; in form Triangular, each side of nine miles in length. The Country is of as rich a soil as the other of Jersey, but not so well cultivated and manured; the poorer people here, being more given to *Mammothers*, (especially to the knitting of Stockings and VVatcoats) and the rich to Merchandize, many of which, are Masters of good stout Barques, with which they traffick into England, and other places. The whole Island containeth ten Villages with Churches; the principal of which, Saint Peter's Port, a very neat and well built Town, with a safe Peer for the benefit of Merchants, and the securing of the Haven, capable of handsome Barques: a Market-Town, beautified with a very fair Church, and honoured with the *Pladerie, or Court of Justice*. Opposite whereto, in a little Ile, standeth the Castle of *Cornet*, taking up the whole circuit and dimensions of it; environed on all sides with the Sea, having one entrance only, and that very narrow: well fortified with works of Art, and furnished with no less than 80 pieces of Ordnance for the defence of the Island, but chiefly, to command the adjoining Harbour, capable of 500 as good Ships as any fail on the Ocean. A piece of great importance to the Realm of England, and might prove utterly destructive of the Trade hereof, if in the hands of any Nation that were strong in shipping. For that cause made the Ordinary Seat of the English Governours, though of late times not so much honoured with the presence of those Governours, as a place of that consequence ought to be. Pertaining unto Gernsey, are two little Isles, the one called *Jet-bow*, the Governours Park, wherein are some few fallow-Deer, and good plenty of Conies: the other named *Arme*, some three miles in compass: a dwelling heretofore of Franciscan Friars; now not inhabited, but by *Pheasants*; of which, amongst the shrubs and bushes, there is very good store.

5. ALDERNET, by Antonine called *Arice*, by the French, *Avignin, and Auney*; is situate over against the Cape of the *Lexandri*, in the Dukedom of Normandy, which the Mariners at this day call the *Hagge*: distant from which, but six miles only. Besides many dwelling-houses scattered up and down, there is one pretty Town or Village of the same name with the Island, consisting of about an hundred Families; and having, not far off, an Harbour made in the fashion of a *Semi-circule*, which they call *La Crabbe*. The whole about 8 miles in compass; of very difficult access, by reason of the high Rocks and Precipices which encompass it on every side, and with

with a small force easily defensible, if thought worth attempting.

6. And so is also *SARK*, the adjoining Island, being in compass six miles; not known by any special name unto the Ancients, and to say truth, not peopled till the fifth year of *Q. Elizabeth*: who then granted it in Fee-farm to *Helier de Carteret*, the *Seigneur* of *St. Oen*, in the Isle of *Jarley*, who from thence planted it, and made Estates out of it to several *Occupants*, so that it may contain now about 50 Households. Before which time it served only for a Common, or Beasts Pasture, to those of *Gernsey*: save that there was an Hermitage, and a little Chappel, for the use of fish as the solitariness of the place invited to those retirements.

These two last Islands are subject to the Governour of *Gernsey*; all four, to the Crown of *England*: holden in right of the Dukedom of *Normandy*, to which they anciently belonged; and of which now the sole remainder is in the power of the *English*. Attempted often by the *French*, (the two first I mean) since they seized on *Normandy*, but always with repulse and loss: the people being very affectionate to the *English* Government, under which they enjoy very ample Privileges, which from the *French* they could not hope for. Their Language is the *Norman French*, (though the better sort of them speak the *English* also) their Law, the *Grand Coutumier* of *Normandy*, attempted and applied to the use of this people in their lists and bulwarks, by the *Baylis* and *Justiciars* of the two chief Islands. Their Religion, for the main, is that of the *Reformed Churches*: the Government in *Jarley*, by the Dean thereof, Suffragan heretofore to the Bishop of *Constance*, now to the Bishop of *Winchester*; in *Gernsey*, by a mixt Consistory of Clergy and Lay Elders, according to the *New-Model* of *Geneva*: a Government first introduced in both Islands, *An. 1565*, being the eighth year of Queen *Elizabeth*, and abolished again in *Jarley*, *An. 1619*, being the seventeenth of King *James*.

But to return again to the story of *France*, thorow which we have now made our progress both by Sea and Land: It took this name from the *Franks* or *French*, a German people, who in the wane of the *Roman* Empire possessed themselves of it: not mentioned by that name by *Cæsar*, *Strabo*, *Ptolemy*, or any of the more ancient Writers. Nor was it taken up by them, for ought appeareth, till an hundred years after the death of *Ptolemy*: the first express mention of them, occurring in the Reign of *Gallicus*, then ransacking the Coasts of *Gaul*, and joyning with *Posthumus* the Rebel, against that Emperor. Afterwards often spoken of in the course of the *Roman* stories, under the Empire of *Claudius*, *Probus*, *Dioclesian*, and the Sons of *Constantine*: though only in the way of pillage and depredation. Their habitation in those times, was from the meeting of the *Rhene* with the River *Moenus*, not far from *Frankford*, where they confined upon the *Almans*, to the *German* Ocean: containing the particular Nations of the *Bructeri*, *Sicambri*, *Salii*, *Chernisii*, *Frisii*, and *Tencteri*, besides some others of less note: and taking up the Countries of *Westphalen*, *Bergen*, *Mark*, and to much of *Cleve* as lieth on the Dutch side of the *Rhene*, the *Langravedom* of *Hessia*, the *Dutchy* of *Guelder*, the *Provinces* of *Zuuperen*, *Overicht*, *over-ysse*, both *Friesland*, and to much of *Holland* as lieth on the same side of the *Rhene*. United in the name of *Franks*, to shew that liberty or freedom from the yoke of servitude which the *Romans* had endeavored to impose upon them; and wherewith all the Nations on the other side of the River were supposed to suffer: Governed by *Dukes*, till the year 420, when *Pharamond* first took upon himself the name of

King. *Mervoveus* their third King, having dispossessed the Sons of *Clodion*, the Son and Successor of *Pharamond*, was the first that fixed his seat in *Gaul*: when seeing the *Romans* on the one side put to the worst by *Theoderick* and the *Goths*; and on the other side by the *Burgundians*, they passed over the *Rhene*, and possessed themselves of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, containing all the *Belgick* Provinces on the French side of that River, together with the *District* of *Coleu*, *Gulick*, and the rest of *Cleve*, then passing in the account of *Gaul*, his *Victories* and *Fortunes* were inherited by *Chilperic*, his Son and Successor, who added *Picardy*, *Champaine*, and the Isle of *France*, to the former Conquest; took *Paris*, and made it the seat of his Kingdom. Afterwards, when they had fully seated themselves here, and thereby opened a free passage to the rest of the Country, they quickly made themselves Masters of all that which formerly had been possessed by the *Romans*; whom they outed of their last hold in *Soissons*, under *Clouis* their fifth King, who also took *Aquitain*, and the parts adjoining, from the *Vist-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Spain*: for these and many signal *Victories* against the *Almans*, deservedly surnamed the Great: but greater in submitting to the Faith of *CHRIST*, and receiving *Baptism*, than by all his *Victories*. *Childebert* and *Cloataire*, the Sons of this *Clouis*, vanquished the *Burgundians* adding that Kingdom to their own: as *Theoderic* his Grandchild, King of *Metz*, or *Austrasia*, did the Country of *Provence*, resigned unto him by *Amalsunda*, Queen of the *Ostro-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*, by whom it had been wrested from the *Goths* of *Spain*. In the person of *Cloataire* the second, the Realm of *France* impropriately dismembered into many Kingdoms, amongst the Children of *Clouis* the first; that is to say, the Kingdoms of *France*, *Soissons*, *Orleans*, and *Austrasia*, (of which, *Orleans* and *Austrasia* were of long continuance) were again united: whose Successor, *Dagobert* the first, was the last considerable Prince of the *Merovingians*. After this time, the reputation of the *French* Kings of this Line, began to diminish, scarce doing any thing that might enable and commend them to succeeding Ages; or leaving any Monument behind them, but their empty Names: which I shall represent in the following Catalogue, according to their several times: first taking notice, that though the Kings of this first Race did many times divide the Kingdom, as before was said; yet none of them were called Kings of *France*, but those that had their Royal Seat in the City of *Paris*, the rest being called only Kings of *Soissons*, *Metz*, or *Orleans*, according to the name of their principal Cities. And therefore, leaving those to their proper places, we will here only take a survey of those who passed in the common climate for the Kings of *France*.

The Kings of France, of the French or Merovingian Line.

A. Ch.

- 449 1 *Mervoveus*, Master of the Horse to *Clodion* the Son of *Pharamond*; from whom this Line of Kings were called *Merovingians*. 10.
- 459 2 *Chilperic*, the Son of *Mervoveus*. 26.
- 485 3 *Clouis*, the first Christian King of the French, 30.
- 515 4 *Childebert*, eldest Son of *Clouis*, his other Brethren reigning in their several places. 45.
- 560 5 *Cloataire*, Brother of *Childebert*, first King of the *Soissons*, afterwards sole King of the French.

- 565 6 *Cherebert*, Son of *Cloataire*.
- 574 7 *Chilperic* II. King of *Soissons*, and Brother of *Cherebert*, whom he succeeded in the Kingdom, 14.
- 588 8 *Cloataire* II. Son of *Chilperic* the second. 44.
- 632 9 *Dagobert*, Son of *Cloataire* the second. 14.
- 645 10 *Clouis* II. Son of *Dagobert*. 17.
- 663 11 *Cloataire* III. Son of *Cloataire* the second. 4.
- 667 12 *Chilperic* III. Brother of *Cloataire* the third, and Son of *Clouis* the second.
- 680 13 *Theoderick*, Brother of *Chilperic*. 14.
- 694 14 *Clouis* III. Son to *Theoderick*. 5.
- 698 15 *Childebert* II. Brother to *Clouis* the third. 15.
- 716 16 *Dagobert* II. Son of *Childebert* the second. 5.
- 722 17 *Chilperic* IV. Son of *Childebert* the second, and Brother of *Dagobert* the second, opposed by *Charles Martel* in behalf of *Cloataire* the fourth Son of *Theoderick*, and Brother of *Childebert*, the second. 5.
- 727 18 *Theoderick* II. Son of *Dagobert* the second. 15.
- 742 19 *Chilperic* V. Son of *Theoderick* the second, the last of the *Merovingian* Family; deposed by *Pepin*, Son to *Charles Martel*; the Pope giving approbation to his proceedings.

This *Pepin* and his Father *Martel*, were *Mayres* of the Palace to the former Kings; which *Mayres* were originally Controllers of the Kings House, and had nothing to do with the affairs of State. But *Cloataire* the third, to ease himself and his Successors of a burden so weighty, made the *Mayres* Vicars-general of his Empire. From henceforward the Kings followed their pleasures shewing themselves only on *May-day*; and then seated in a Chariot, adorned with Flowers, and drawn by four Oxen. As for the *Mayres*, he opened Paquets, heareth and dispatcheth Foreign Ambassadors, giveth remedy to the Complaints of the Subjects, maketh Laws, and repealeth them. An Authority somewhat like that of the *Præfetti Prætorii*, in the declining times of the *Roman* Empire; or that of the *Sultans* under the *Mahometan* Caliphs, and the Vice-Roys of the old *Egyptian* *Pharaohs*. An Office which had been long born by the Ancestors of this *Martel*, ever since the reign of *Cloataire* the second: in whose time the *Palatine* or *Mayre* was one *Arnulphus*, descended lineally from *Utile*, the second Son of *Theodon* the first Duke, and Nephew of *Adalgerius* the last king of the *Boiarians*, or *Bavarians*. Which *Utile* being a Military Prince, and having done good service to *Theoderick* the first King of *Austrasia*, or *Metz*, against the *Danes*, then grievously infecting the Coasts of the *Lower Germany*; was by him made Warden of those *Marches*, honoured with the Marriage of his Daughter *Plithilda*, and liberally endowed with fair possessions in that Tract. The fourth from *Utile* was this *Arnulphus*, the first *Mayre* of this House; which Office having long enjoyed, he resigned it to *Ausgerius* his eldest Son, (the first who drew unto himself the managery of the whole Estate) and bidding farewell to the affairs of the world, became a Priest, and died Bishop of *Metz*, *Anno* 641. Afterwards Canonized a Saint. *Ausgerius* dying in the year 679, left his Authority and Office to his Nephew *Martin*, Son of *Ferdolphus* his younger Brother. But he being slain by *Ebroinus*, one of the Competitors, who he while enjoyed it: *Pepin* surnamed the Fat, Son of *Ausgerius*, revenging his Cousins death upon *Ebroinus*, and against him, obtained that honour for himself. And having much advanced the affairs of *France*, by the conquest of the *Sueves* and *Frisions*, died in the year 714. Succeeded to in this great Office, after his decease, (for

Grimold his only lawful Son, and *Theobaldus* the son of *Grimold*, whom he had successively substituted in the same, died not long before him) by *Charles* his natural son, begotten on *Albeida* his Concubine: from his *Martial* Prowess called *Martel*. VVho in his time did to the Kings of *France* great service, especially in routing that vast Army of the *Moors* and *Saracens*, in the Battle of *Tours* before mentioned: thereby not only freeing *France* from the present danger, but adding *Languedoc* to the Crown, formerly in possession of the *Goths* and *Moors*: for which he was created Duke or Prince of the *French*: yet would he not usurp the Kingdom, or the Title of King, though both at his disposal wholly; it being his ordinary saying, that he had rather rule a King, than be one.

To him succeeded *Caroleman* his eldest son, *An. 741*, who held the Office but a year, and then left it to his Brother *Pepin*. VVho being of less moderation than his Father was, made such use of his Power, that partly by that means, and partly under colour of an election, confirmed by Pope *Zachary* the first, he took the Kingdom to himself; and the unfortunate King *Chilperic* had his Poll shaven, and was thrust into a Monastery. For this investiture, both *Pepin* and *Charles* his Son, did many good services for the Pope, destroying, on their quarrel, the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, and giving them most of the Lands which formerly belonged unto the *Exarchs* of *Ravenna*. And on the other side, the Popes to requite these courtesies, confirmed the former in this Kingdom, by their Papal Power (which then began to bear some sway in the Christian World) and gave the last (besides the opportunity of attaining the VVestern Empire) the Title of *Most Christian King*, continued ever since unto his Successors. And, to say truth, he well deserved those honours, had they been far greater, by many *Victories* obtained against the Enemies of the Gospel; the several Heathens by his means converted to the Faith of *CHRIST*; the great abilities he had of Estate and Judgment, enabling him to support the Majesty of the *Roman* Empire. For he not only was sole Monarch of the Kingdom of *France*, not parcelled out as formerly, and in times succeeding, into several petit Kingdoms and Principalities, but had added thereto, by his own proper virtue, the greatest part of *Italy*, the best part of *Germany*, all *Belgium*, the two *Tamonia's*, and a great part of *Spain*.

But this vast Empire falling into weak hands, which were not able enough to manage it, decayed in as little time as it was in raising: partly by the unnatural ambition of the Sons of King *Lewis* the Godly, the next Successor of this *Charles*; who to make themselves all Kings, first deposed their Father, and then divided his Estate amongst them, into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Burgundy*, *France*, *Lorraine*, and *Germany*: four of which falling at last into the hands of strangers, ceased to be *French*, and passed into such Families as proved the greatest Enemies of the Crown of *France*: partly by alienating the best and goodliest Provinces of *France* itself, never again united till these latter days; which made the *French* Kings less considerable both at home and abroad; which we have touched upon before: and partly by the weakness and unworthiness of the Kings of his Race, there being no question to be made, but *Lewis* the Stammering, *Charles* the Bald, the *Greeks*, and the *Simple*, would have found better *Attributes*, if they had deserved them. For by this means, the issue of this brave Prince grew so despicable in the eyes of their subjects, that first *Endes*, the Son of *Robert* Duke of *Angou*, and after, *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy*, the Uncle of *Endes* (both of the Race of *Witmundus*, the last Prince

of the Saxons, and consequently, both aliens to the House of *Charles*, possessed themselves severally of the Kingdom. And though they did not hold it long, being deprefsed and over-born by their opposite Factions: yet did they lay a fair ground for *Hugh Capet* to build his hopes on: Who being Son of *Hugh the Great* Countable of *France*, and Earl of *Paris*, the Son of *Robert Duke of Anjou*, younger Brother of *Eudes*, and near Kinsman of *Rodolph*; never left practising his party in the Realm of *France*, till he had got possession of the Regal Diadem, wherewith two Princes of this House had been invested formerly by the like Elections. But for the Kings of this second Race, founded by two brave Princes, but on the unjust grounds of an Usurpation they are these that follow.

The second Race of the Kings of *France*, of the Carolinian or Boiarian Line.

A. Ch.

- 751 1 *Pepin*, the Son of *Charles Martel*, succeeded in the Office of *Mayor*, An. 742, and having got the Regal Crown, vanquished the *Lombards*, made the *Boiarians* Tributary, and crushed the *Saxons*. 18.
- 769 2 *Charles*, surnamed the *Great*, the Son of *Pepin*, subdued the Kingdom of the *Lombards* and *Saxons*; conquered the *Boiarians* and *Avars*, and vanquished the *Saracens* of *Spain*: Crowned Emperor of the West, upon *Christmas-day*, by Pope *Leo* the 3. An. 800. 46.
- 815 3 *Lewis the Godly*, Son of *Charles King of France*, and Emperor, the last sole Monarch of the *French*, depofed by his ambitious and unnatural Sons: the Empire of the *French*, after his decease, being divided into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Burgundy*, *Germany*, *France*, and *Lorraine*; and *France* it self distracted into many Sovereign Estates and Principalities. 26.
- 841 4 *Charles II.* surnamed *Calvus*, or the *Bald*, youngest Son of *Lewis*, King of *France*, and Emperor; vanquished by *Charles the Gros*, in the War of *Italy*. 38.
- 879 5 *Lewis II.* surnamed *Balbus*, or the *Stammering*, Son of *Charles the Bald*, King of *France*, and Emperor. 38.
- 881 6 *Lewis III.* with *Caroloman* his Brother, the base Sons of *Lewis the Stammering*, Usurpers of the Throne, in the infancy of *Charles the Simple*.
- 886 7 *Charles III.* surnamed *Craffus*, or the *Gros*, King of *Germany*, and; Emperor called into *France*, and elected King, during the minority of *Charles the Simple*. 5.
- 891 8 *Odo*, or *Eudes*, Son of *Robert Earl of Anjou*, of the Race of *Witigundus*, the last King of the *Saxons*; elected by an opposite Faction, ousted *Charles the Gros*. 9.
- 900 9 *Charles IV.* surnamed *Simplex*, or the *Simple*, the *Posthumus* Son of *Lewis the Stammerer*, restored unto the Throne of his Fathers; which after many troubles raised against him by *Robert the second*, Earl of *Anjou*, (whom he slew in Battle) he was forced to resign. 27.
- 927 10 *Rodolph of Burgundy*, Son of *Richard Duke of Burgundy*, the Brother of *Eudes*, succeeded on the resignation of *Charles the Simple*. 2.

- 929 11. *Lewis IV.* Son of *Charles the Simple*, surnamed *Trasnarine*, in regard that during his Fathers troubles he had lived in *England*, restored unto the Regal Throne on the death of *Rodolph*; opposed therein by *Hugh Earl of Paris* and *Anjou*, the Nephew of *King Eudes* by his Brother *Robert* before mentioned.
- 958 12 *Lotharius*, Son of *Lewis the 4.* disturbed in his possession by *Hugh Capet*, the eldest Son of the said *Hugh*, on the pretension of that House, by which at last he got the Kingdom.
- 977 13 *Lewis V.* Son of *Lotharius*, the last King of the House of *Charles the Great*. After whose death, (being King only for a year) the Crown was seized on by *Hugh Capet*; *Charles Duke of Lorraine*, Brother of *Lotharius*, and Uncle unto *Lewis* the fifth, being pretermitted.

And now we are come to the present Race of the Kings of *France*, founded in *Hugh Capet*; so called from the greatness of his head; Son of *Hugh the Great*, Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, and Grandchild of *Robert the second*, Earl of *Anjou*: which *Robert* was the Brother of *Eudes*, and Cousin-german of *Rodolph*, Kings of *France*. Who partly by his own wits, but chiefly by the weakness of the Mungrel-Issue of *Charles the Great*, having got the Diadem, transmitted it unto his posterity; the Crown descending in a direct Line from Father to Son, till the death of *Lewis* the tenth, surnamed *Hutin*. But here we are to understand, that the Realm of *France* was at that time shut up within narrower bounds than it is at present: the large and rich Countries of *Champagne*, *Normandy*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, *Poitou*, *Languedoc*, and the great Dukedom of *Aquitain*; besides those Provinces which constituted and made up the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, being aliened and dismembered from it. How they became reduced to the Crown again, will be discerned in the ensuing History, and Succession of.

The third Race of the Kings of *France*, of the Capetine or Saxon Line.

A. Ch.

- 988 1 *Hugh Capet*, of whom sufficiently before. 9.
- 997 2 *Robert*, the Son of *Hugh Capet*, Duke of *Burgundy* also. 34.
- 1031 3 *Henry*, the eldest Son of *Robert*, his younger Brother *Robert* being settled in the Dukedom of *Burgundy*. 39.
- 1061 4 *Philip*, the Son of *Henry*, who added *Berry* to the Crown. 49.
- 1110 5 *Lewis VI.* Son of *Philip*, surnamed the *Croft*. 28.
- 1138 6 *Lewis VII.* Son of *Lewis* the Sixth, an Adventurer in the War of the *Holy Land*; as also was his Son and Successor.
- 1181 7 *Philip II.* surnamed *Augustus*, by whom *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, and *Anjou*, with their several Appendices, were taken from King *John of England*. 43.
- 1224 8 *Lewis VIII.* Son of *Philip Augustus*. 3.
- 1227 9 *Lewis IX.* surnamed the *Saint*, renowned for his Wars in *Egypt*, and the *Holy Land*. He restored *Guienne* to the *English*, and added the Earldoms of *Tholouse* and *Alascun*, to the Crown of *France*. 44.
- 1271 10 *Philip III.* Son of *Lewis* the ninth. 15.

1286

- 1286 11 *Philip IV.* surnamed the *Fair*, King also of *Navarre*, in the right of the Lady *Joan* his Wife. 28.
- 1314 12 *Lewis X.* surnamed *Hutin*, King of *Navarre* in right of his Mother, whom he succeeded in that Kingdom, An. 1305, after whose death the Kingdom of *France* was to have descended to *Joan* his Daughter. 2.
- 1315 13 *Philip V.* called the *Long*, Brother of *Lewis Hutin*, partly by threats, promises, and other practices, caused a Law to pass to which he gave the name of the *Salique Law*, for dissembling Women from the succession to the Crown; and thereby quite excluded his Brother's Daughter: served in the same kind himself, by his Brother *Charles*; who following his example, excluded, on the same pretence, his Nieces, *Joan*, and *Margaret* the Daughters of *Philip*. 5.
- 1320 14 *Charles IV.* but in true account the fifth of that name, most commonly called *Charles the Fair*, Brother of *Philip* and *Lewis*, the two last Kings. After whose death began the Wars of the *English* for the Crown of *France*; challenged by *King Edward* the third, as Son and Heir of *Isabel*, the Daughter of King *Philip the Fair*, and Sister to the three last Kings. 7.
- 1328 15 *Philip VI.* surnamed *de Valois*, Son of *Charles Earl of Valois*, the second Son of King *Philip* the third, and Uncle to the three last Kings, succeeded under colour of the *Salique Law*: of which *Charles* it is said, that he was Son to a King, Brother to a King, Uncle to a King, and Father to a King; yet himself was no King. In this Kings days was fought the famous Battle of *Cressell*, An. 1343. in which the *French Army* consisted of about 70000 Soldiers; the *English* of 11800 only: yet the victory fell unto the *English*; by whose valor fell that day *John K. of Bohemia*, 11 Princes, 80 Barons, 120 Knights, and 30000 of the common Soldiers. He added unto his Estate, the County *Palatine* of *Champagne*, the County of *Dauphine*, and the City and Earldom of *Montpelier*. 22.
- 1350 16 *John*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*; in whose reign was fought the Battle of *Poitiers*, wherein *Edward the Black Prince*, (so called for his black acts upon the *French*) with an handful of wearied Soldiers, (but 8000 in all) overcame the *French Army*, consisting of 40000; of which they slew, besides the Nobles, 10000 of the common Soldiers, and took Prisoners King *John* himself, and *Philip* his Son, 70 Earls, 50 Barons, and 12000 Gentlemen. 14.
- 1364 17 *Charles V.* the Son of *John*; recovered all those places (except only *Calice*) which the *English* had before gotten from his Father and Grandfather. He is called commonly *Charles the Wise*; but *Lewis* the 11, would by no means allow him that attribute: affirming, that it was but a foolish part to give his younger Brother *Philip* the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and withal, the Heir of *Flanders* to *VVife*. And so it proved in the event.
- 18 *Charles VI.* a weak and distracted Prince; in whose Reign, *Henry* the fifth of *England*, called in by the Faction of *Burgundy*, against that of *Orleans*, married the Lady *Katherine*, daughter of this King; and was thereupon made Regent of *France* during the Kings life, and Her apparent of the Kingdom. But he had first won the great Battle of *Agincourt*, Anno 1415, in which the *English* having an Army but of 15000

- vanquished an Army of the *French* consisting of 52000 men; of which were slain, 5 Dukes, 8 Earls, 25 Lords, 8000 Knights and Gentlemen of note, and 25000 of the Commons; the *English* losing but one Duke, one Earl, and 600 Soldiers. This unfortunate Prince lost what his Predecessor, *Philip* the second, had taken from King *John of England*, and had not been restored by King *Lewis* the ninth.
- 1423 19 *Charles VII.* Son of *Charles* the sixth, after a long and bloody War, recovered from the *English* (then divided by domestic diffention) all their Lands and Seigniories in *France*, except *Calice* only.
- 1461 20 *Lewis XI.* Son of *Charles* the seventh, added unto his Crown the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, the Earldom of *Provence*, (and therewithal a Title unto *Naples* and *Sicily*) and a great part of *Picardy*. A Prince of so great wants, or such fordid parsimony, that there is found a reckoning in the Chamber of Accounts in *Paris*, of two millions for new fleeces to his old Doublet; and three half pence for liquor to grease his Boots.
- 1484 21 *Charles VIII.* Son of *Lewis* the Elcventh, who quickly won, and as soon lost the Kingdom of *Naples*; which he laid claim to in the right of the House of *Anjou*. By the marriage of *Anne* the Heir of *Bretagne*, he added that Dukedom to his Crown.
- 1498 22 *Lewis XII.* Son of *Charles*, and Grand-son of *Lewis Duke of Orleans*, (which *Lewis* was a younger Son of the fifth) succeeded as the next Heir-male of the House of *Valois*. He dispossessed *Ladovick Sforze*, the Dutchy of *Milvain*, and divided the Realm of *Naples* with *Ferdinand the Catholic*; but held neither long. By his marriage with *Anne of Bretagne*, the VVidow of his Predecessor, he confirmed that Dukedom to his House; united after to the Realm by an Act of State. After his death, the *English* to prevent the growing greatness of *Spain*, began to clofe in with the *French*, and grew into great correspondencies with them; insomuch that all the following Kings, until *Lewis* the 13th. (except *Francis* the second, a King of one year, and no more) were all Knights of the *Garter*.
- 1515 23 *Francis*, Duke of *Angouleme*, Grand-son of *John of Angouleme*, one of the younger Sons of the said *Lewis Duke of Orleans*, succeeded on the death of *Lewis* the 12th. without issue male. Took Prisoner at the Battle of *Pavie*, by *Charles* the fifth, with whom he held perpetual VVars; he being as unwilling to endure a Superior, as the Emperor was to admit an Equal. 32.
- 1547 24 *Henry II.* Son of *Francis*, recovered *Calice* from the *English*, and drove *Charles* out of *Germany*, and took from him *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*, three Imperial Cities, ever since members of this Kingdom.
- 1559 25 *Francis II.* Son of *Henry* the second, King of the *Scots* also, in the right of *Mary* his VVife.
- 1560 26 *Charles IX.* Brother of *Francis* the second, the Author of the Massacre at *Paris*. 14.
- 1574 27 *Henry III.* elected King of *Poland*, in the life of his Brother, whom he succeeded at his death. The last King of the House of *Valois*, stripped of his life and Kingdom by the *Guisan* Faction, called the *Holy League*. 15.
- 1589 28 *Henry IV.* King of *Navarre*, and Duke of *Pendefone*, succeeded as the next Heir-male

D d

to

to Henry the 3d. in the right of the House of Bourbon, defended from Robert Earl of Clermont, a younger Son of Lewis the ninth. He ruined the Holy League, cleared France of the Spaniards, into which they had been called by that potent and rebellious Faction; and laid La Bresse into the Crown, together with the Estates of Bearne, and Basque Navarre: and after a ten years time of Peace, was villainously murdered by Ravillac, in the Streets of Paris. 21.

1610 29 Lewis XIII. Son of Henry the Fourth; the most absolute King of France, since the death of Charles the Great. For to the reduction of the scattered and dismembered Provinces, (the work of his many Predecessors) he added the reduction of all the Forts and Garrisons held by the Hugonots in that Kingdom, (three hundred at the least in number) seized on the Dukedom of Bar, and surprized that of Lorraine; both which he held until his death. 32.

1642 30 Lewis XIV. Son of Lewis the 13th. and of the Lady Anne, eldest Daughter of Philip the third of Spain; succeeded at the age of four years, under the Government of his Mother: the 30th. King of the Line of Capet, the 43d. from Charles the Great, and the 64th King of France (or rather of the French) now living.

As for the Government of these Kings, it is merely Regal; or to give it the true name, Despotical; such as that of a Master over his Servants: the Kings Will going for a Law: and his Edicts as valid as a Sentence of the Court of Parliament. *Quid principi placuerit Legis habet vigorem*, was a Prerogative belonging to the Roman Emperors, as Justinian tells us in his Institutes: and the French Kings descending from Charles the Great, claim it as their own. The Kings Edicts always ending with these binding words, *Car tel est nostre plaisir*. For such is Our pleasure. And though he sometimes sends his Edicts to be verified, or approved, in the Parliament of Paris; and his Grants and Patents to be ratified in the Chamber of Accounts, there holden; yet this is nothing but a meer formality, and point of circumstance: those Courts not daring to refuse what the King propoeth. It is *Car tel est nostre plaisir*, which there goeth for Law. And by this intimation of his Royal pleasure, doth he require such Taxes, as the necessity of his affairs, the greediness of his Officers, or the importunity of Suitors, do suggest unto him: the Parity of the Crown being so exhausted by the riot and improvidence of former Princes, that the King hath no other way to maintain his State, decay his Garrisons, reward such as deserve well of him, and support those that depend upon him, but only by laying what he pleaseth on the backs of his Subjects; against which there is no dispute by the Common People, though many times the Great Princes have demurred upon it. And therefore to make them also instrumental to the publick Slavery, the Kings are willing to admit them to some part of their spoils, to give them some Exemption from those common burdens; and to connive at the oppressing of their Tenants, against all good Conscience: that being so privileged themselves, they may not interrupt the King in his Regal Courses.

As for the French Parliaments, or Assembly of the three Estates, which heretofore were of great credit and renown, and looked on as the principal Bulwark of the Publick Liberty, being first discontinued by reason of the sharp and continual Wars which the English made in this Kingdom

for the space of 100 years and upwards, they afterward became much weakened by the Policy of K. Lewis the 11. and the Kings succeeding; and finally, by K. Lewis the 13. were laid by for ever. For, finding them to retain something full of their ancient stomach, and apt enough to clash with that absolute Sovereignty which his Predecessors had attained to, he resolved to make no more use of them for the times to come; instead whereof, he ordained another kind of meeting, which he called *La Assemblée des Nobles*; that is to say, the Assembly of some principal men, composed of some selected persons out of every Order or Estate, (of his own nomination) wherunto should be added some Counsellor out of every one of the eight Courts of Parliament; which, being fewer in number, would not breed such a confusion as the others did, and be withal more pliant and conformable to the Kings desires. Now the eight Courts of Parliament before mentioned, being but as so many Courts of Judicature, (like to ours in Westminster) are these that follow; that is to say, The Parliament 1. Of Paris, comprehending the Countries of France special, Champagne, Picardy, the Provinces and Estates of Anjou, La Beaulle, Berry, Poitou, the Provinces which make up the Dukedom of Bourbon, with the County of Limousin. 2. Of Rouen, for the Dukedom of Normandy. 3. Of Reims, for the Dukedom of Bretagne. 4. Of Bourdeaux, for the whole Dukedom of Aquitaine, (except only Bearne) with the Countries of Limousin, and Perigord. 5. Of Toulouse, for the Earldom of Languedoc and Quercu. 6. Of Aix, for the Earldom of Provence. 7. Of Grenoble, for the Country of Dauphine. And 8. Of Dijon, for the Dukedom of Burgundy, and the small Country of La Bresse; to which is added at late times by King Lewis the 13th. the little Parliament of Paris, for the Country of Bearne. Besides which Parliaments, there are certain other Courts in some principal Cities, called *Cours Presidial*, resembling those with us at York, and the Marches of Wales, whilst they continued in that Power and Jurisdiction which at first they had. And for the better ordering of the whole Estate, (with reference specially to matters military) it is divided into 12 federal and distinct Governments; that is to say, 1. Of the Ile of France, 2. Burgundy, 3. Normandy, 4. Guienne, 5. Bretagne, Champagne, 7. Picardy, 8. Languedoc, 9. Provence, 10. Dauphine, 11. Limousin, and 12. Orleans, for in this order they were ranked by the late King: over every one of which is placed a Governour, with such authority as the Lords Lieutenants had in England in their several Counties; all of them carrying matters with a very high hand on the common people, and sometimes standing on terms also with the Kings themselves; but instrumental notwithstanding to the common servitude, which hath been laid upon this Nation generally, as before is said.

The Power of the French King over his Subjects, being for ardent, it cannot be, but that his Forces must be very great, and would be greater than they are, but that they dare not trust the common people with the use of Arms, for fear they should refuse to pay the accustomed Taxes, or forsake their Trades, or turn their Farms back upon their Landlords. But for an Essay of what a French King is able to do in this kind, it is said, that Charles the 9th. in Garrisons and several Armies in the field, had 15000 Horse, and 100000 Foot, of his own Nation; besides 50000 Horse and Foot of Swisses, Germans, and others. Nor was this more than what was done by Lewis the 13. within few years past, who had at once five Royal Armies in the field, in Italy, Spain, Germany, and the Belgick Provinces; and kept no fewer than 120000 fighting-men in pay and action, for some years together. Nor did this late King keep up the Military Power of France for Laud-service only, at so high a pitch,

but he also brought the Naval Power thereof into estimation. For whereas the French Kings before his time, were very weak and inconsiderable on the Seas, and had scarce any men of War: but what they either hired or borrowed from more Seafaring Nations: this King became so strong in shipping in a little space, (I doubt some neighbouring Princes in the mean time looked not well about them) that he was able to rigge and arm 1000 a full of good Ships, and upwards, fit for any service. But to return again to the power at Land, in which the force of these Kings doth consist especially; it is conceived by some, and affirmed by others, that he is able to bring into the field for a sudden service, no less than 60 Companies of Men of Arms, 20 Cornets of Light Horse, and 5 Companies of Harquebussiers on Horseback, which amount to 10000 in the total; together with 20 Ensigns of French foot, and 40 of Swisses, and yet leave his Garrisons well manned, and his Forts and Frontiers well and sufficiently defended.

What the Revenues are in a State so subject to the will and pleasure of the King, is hard to say; being also more or less, as the times and their occasions vary: according unto which, the Revenues of this Crown have much altered. Lewis the 11. gathered one million and a half of Crowns; Francis the first brought them to 3 millions; his successor, Henry the second, to six; Charles the ninth, to seven; Henry the third, to ten; afterwards they were increased to fifteen. And in the time of Henry the fourth, the Treasurer of the Duke of Mayenne did not shame to say, That his Master had more improved the Revenue of France, than any King had done before him, advancing it from two to five millions sterling. A fair Intrado, but far short of those infinite sums which are exorted from the people; whereof a tenth part comes not clearly to the Kings Exchequer. What need more be said, than that of Lewis the 11. who used to say, that France was a Meadow which he mowed every year, and as often as he lifted: and indeed their Impolitions cannot but be great, since there are no less than 30000 Under Officers employed to gather them. Hence I believe sprung that wish of Maximilian the Emperor, which was, that he (if it were possible) might be a God; and that having two Sons, the eldest might be a God after him; and the second, King of France. And this was also the cause, that in the VVars between Charles the fifth, and Francis the first, when the Emperors Herald had bid defiance to the King, from Charles Emperor of Germany King of Castile, Leon, Aragon, and Naples, Arch-Duke of Austria, &c. with the rest of his Titles; the King commanded the Herald to return the Challenge from Francis King of France; commanding him to repeat France as many times as the other had petty Earldoms in his title. And on the other side of no less bravery and fanie was the saying of the Duke of Alva, who being disswayed by one of his Commanders, from the VVar with the Netherlands, in regard of the great support they were like to have from the Queen of England, the King of Denmark, the Dukes of Saxony and Brunswick, the Earls of Nassau, &c. Tush man! (said he) there will be more Kings and Princes on our side, than theirs; that is to say, the Emperor of Mexico and Peru; the Kings of Naples, Sicily, and Sardinia, the Dukes of Burgundy and Milan, the Earls of Hapsburg, Charolais, &c. But letting pass these flashes and conceits of wit; certain it is, (to say the truth) considering the compactedness thereof within it self, the admirable fertility of the soil, the incredible multitudes of people, and the conveniency of situation betwixt Spain, Italy, and Germany; the name of France might balance all the others Titles.

The chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom, were first of the Garter, founded by Charles Martel, Mayne of the French Palace; and so called either from Jane his Wife, as Haillan would have it, or from the Garter of Spain, over whom he triumphed at the Battel of Tours, as Bellay writeth. It ended in the days of S. Lewis. The Knights of the Order wore a Ring; wherein was engraven the form of a Garter.

2. Of the Pairrie, or twelve Peers, so called, *quasi pares inter pares*; said to be instituted by Charles the Great, in his VVars against the Saracens. Six of these were of the Clergie. 1. The Arch-bishop and Duke of Rheims, 2. the Bishop and Duke of Laon, 3. the Bishop and Duke of Langres, 4. the Bishop and Earl of Beauvais, 5. the Bishop and Earl of Noyon, and 6. the Bishop and Earl of Chalon. And six others of the Temporality: 1. the Duke of Burgundy, 2. Duke of Normandy, 3. Duke of Guienne, 4. Earl of Toulouse, 5. Earl of Champagne, 6. Earl of Flanders. These are they so much memorized in the Legends of the old French VVriters, but fallily, and on no ground: it being impossible that those should be of the foundation of Charles the Great, in whose time there were none of those Dukes and Earls, except the Earl of Toulouse only. Therefore with better reason it may thus be concluded on, that the Twelve Peers were instituted by Charles the Great, though that honour not by him appropriated unto any particular Estates and Titles; but left at large to be disposed of according to the personal merit of the best defenders: it being most sure, that neither Rowland, nor Oliver, nor Duke Naimes, nor Ogier the Dane, had any of the Titles above-mentioned. But for the fixing of this Dignity in the Dukedoms and Earldoms before named, it is said, by some, to have been done by Hugh Capet; others refer it to Lewis the 7th. in whose times all those Dukes and Earls were in *Retenu Natura*. But by whomsoever first ordained, the Temporal Pairries are extinct; and others of no definite number, created by the Kings, as they see occasion; to gratify a well deserver. Only at Coronations, and such publick Triumphs, the custom is, to chuse some principal persons out of the Nobility, to represent those Temporal Peers; as at the Coronation of Lewis the 13th, the places of the Temporal Peers were supplied by the Princes of Camde and Cony, the Earl of Soissons, the Duke of Nevers, Elbeuf, and Epemon: the Ecclesiastical Peers remaining as at first they were. So that though Charles the Great might devise this Order, and institute the first Twelve Peers, as is commonly said; yet was not that high honour fixed in any of those Temporal Princes, till the times succeeding; but given to men of several Houses, according to the Kings pleasure, and their well deserving.

3. Of the Star; begun by John King of France, Anno 1352. They were about their necks a Collar of Gold, at the which hung a Star: the word, *Monfranc Regibus astra vivam*. This Order was disgraced by his Son Charles, in communicating it to his Guards; and so it ended.

4. Of St. Michael, instituted by King Lewis the eleventh. Anno 1409. It consisted first of 30 Knights; which afterwards were augmented to 300. The Habit of the Order was a long Cloak of white Damask, down to the ground, with a border interwoven with Cockle-shells of Gold, interlaced and furred with Ermine; with an Hood of crimson Velvet, and a long tippet. About their necks they wore a Collar woven with Cockle-shells: the word, *Inmensi tremor Oceani*. It took the name from the Picture of St. Michael conquering the Devil, which was annexed to the Collar. Some think, that the invocation of St. Michael, was in allusion to the tenth of Daniel. Others say, he took St. Michael, in regard of an

apparition of that Saint, to his Father *Charles* the seventh on *Orleans* Bridge, in his Wars against the *English*. The Seat thereof was first at *St. Michael's Mount*, in *Normandy*, a place which had held longest for the *French* Kings, against the *English*: but it was afterwards removed to *Bois de Vincennes*, not far from *Paris*. *St. Michael's* day, the time of the Solemnity: and *Mount St. Michael*, the name of the *Herald* which did attend upon the Order, which in most things are preceded that of the *Garter*.

5. Of the *Holy Ghost*; ordained by *Henry* the third, *An.* 1579. to redress the abuses which had crept into that of *St. Michael*, having been of late times given to unworthy persons: to reduce which to its first esteem, he ordered that the Collar of *St. Michael* should be given to none who had not first been dignified with this of the *Holy Ghost*; into which none to be admitted, but such as can prove their Nobility by three descents. Their Oath is, to maintain the *Romish* *Catholic* Religion, and persecute all Opponents to it. Their Robe, a Black Velvet Mantle, powdered with Lillies and Flames of Gold; with a Crofs and a Dove appendant to it. And hereunto he gave the name of the *Holy Ghost*, because he was on *Whitsunday*, chosen King of *Poland*.

I omit the other petit Orders, as those of the *Cock*, and *Dog*, by them of *Montmorency*; of the *Porcupine*,

by them of *Orleans*, and of the *Thistle*, by them of *Bourbon*.

The Armes of the *French* Kings in the days of *Pharamond*, and his three first Successors, were *Gules*, three Crowns, *Or*. *Clovis* the Great altered them to *Azure*, Some of Flower de *Luces*, *Or*; and *Charles* the sixth to *Azure*, three Flower de *Luces*, *Or*. In which last changes, they were followed by the Kings of *England*; varying the Coat of *France*, which they enquartered with their own, as the *French* Kings did; and by the *Princes* of the blood, who bare the Arms of *France*, with some difference only, for the distinction of their Houses.

There are in *FRANCE*,
Arch-Bishops 17. Bishops 107.
And Universities 15.

viz.

1. <i>Paris</i> .	6. <i>Caen</i> .	11. <i>Montpelier</i> .
2. <i>Orleans</i> .	7. <i>Rhemes</i> .	12. <i>Avignon</i> .
3. <i>Bourges</i> .	8. <i>Bordeaux</i> .	13. <i>Lions</i> .
4. <i>Poitiers</i> .	9. <i>Tholouse</i> .	14. <i>Besancon</i> .
5. <i>Angiers</i> .	10. <i>Nismes</i> .	15. <i>Dole</i> .

And so much for *FRANCE*.

THE

The Pyrenean Hills.

Berwixt *France* and *Spain*, are the Mountains called *Pyrenai*, the reason of which name is very differently reported. Some fetch the original thereof from *Pyrene*, a Nymph, the Daughter of one *Bebrix*; said by old Fablers to have been here ravished by *Hercules*: others conceive they were so called, because much stricken with Lightnings, those *Celestial* Flames. But being the name doth most undoubtedly proceed from a *Greek* word which significeth *Fire*. The more probable opinion is, that they took this name from being fired once by Shepherds, (these Hills being then extremely overgrown with Woods:) the Flame whereof raged so extremely, that the Mines of Gold and Silver being melted by the heat thereof, ran streaming down the Mountains many days together, the fame of which invited many Foreign Nations to invade the Country. VWhich accident they place 880 years before the birth of our Saviour. Hereunto *Diodorus Siculus*, an old *Greek* Writer, adds no small Authority; who speaking of this Conflagration, (as *Aristotle* and *Strabo* also do) addeth withal, *τὸ μὲν ἔην διὰ τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς πυρρῆς τοῦ πυρρῆς ἀπὸ τῆς πυρρῆς*: that is to say, these Mountains had the name of *Pyrenes*, from the fire, which many days together so extremely raged. And this Tradition backed by so good Authority, I should rather credit, than fetch the derivation (as *Bochartus* doth from *Purani*, a *Phenician* word, signifying dark or shady: though true it is, that these Mountains anciently were very much over-grown with woods, as before was noted.

But whatsoever was the reason why they had this name, certain it is, that they have been of long time the natural bound betwixt the great and puissant Monarchs of *France* and *Spain*; terminating (as it were) their desires and purposes against each other, as well as their Dominions: if any thing could put a bound to the designs of ambitious Princes. Yet not more separated by these Mountains, than by those jealousies and fears which they have long since harboured of one another; each of them manifestly affecting the Supreme Command. So that we may affirm of them, as the Historian doth

of others on the like occasion, *Aut monibus, aut munitis, mens separantur*. The Mountains also make the *Isthmus*, or neck of Land, which conjoyns *Spain* to the rest of *Europe*: the *Canabrian* Ocean fiercely beating on the North-west, the *Mediterranean* Sea more gently washing the South-east thereof. Their beginning at the Promontory now called *Oiarcho*, (the *Oasis* of *Protony*) not far from the City of *Batium* in *France*, bordering on the Sea *Canabrick*, from thence continued South eastwards, betwixt both Kingdoms, to *Cabo de Creux*, (by the Ancients called *Templum Veneris*) on the *Mediterranean*, not far from the City of *Rhoda*, now *Rasus*, one of the Port-Towns of *Catalonia*.

The whole length, not reckoning in the windings and turnings, affirmed to be 80 *Spanish* Leagues, at a miles to a League. The highest part thereof, by the *Spaniards* called *Camis*, and by the *Latins* named *Camus*: from which, (as it is said by some) there is a prospect in a clear day, into both the Seas. But whether this be true or not, (for I dare not build any belief upon it) it is no doubt the highest part of all these Mountains; and took this name from the whiteness and hoariness thereof, as having on its top or summit, a Cap of Snow for most part of the year. In which respect, as the *Alpes* took their name, *ab Albo*; that, in the *Sabine* Dialect, being termed *Alpum*, which by the *Latins* was called *Album*, which before we noted: so did *Mount Lebanon*, in *Syria*, take its name from *Leban*, which in the *Phenician* Language significeth *White*; and *Lebanon*, Whiteness. Such people as Inhabit in this Mountainous tract, have been and shall be mentioned in their proper places. I only add, and go forwards towards *Spain*, that the Barbarous people of these Mountains compelled *Sertorius*, in his hasty passage into *Spain*, when he fled from the power of *Sylla's* Faction, to pay them *Tribute* for his pass: to which when some of his Soldiers murmured, as thinking it dishonourable to a *Proconsul* of *Rome*, to pay tribute to the barbarous Nations: the prudent General replied; that he bought only *Time*; a Commodity which they that deal in haughty Enterprizes, must needs take up at any rate.

O F

S P A I N.

HAVING thus crossed the *Pyrenees*, we are come to *Spain*, the most Western part of all the Continent of *Europe*; environed on all sides with the Sea, except towards *France*; from which separated by the said Mountains: but more particularly bounded upon the North with the *Cantabrian*, on the West with the *Atlantick Ocean*, on the South, with the Straits of *Gibraltar*, on the East with the *Mediterranean*, and on the North-east with those of *Pyrenees*. The figure of it compared, by *Strabo*, to an Ox's Hide spread upon the ground; the neck whereof being that *Ibthmus* which unites it to *France*.

This Country hath in divers Ages been as diversly named. 1. *Hesperia*, either from *Hesperus*, a supposed King hereof, or from *Hesperus* the Evening Star, under which it was supposed to be situate, as being the farthest Country Westward: to difference it from *Italy*, which many of the Greek Authors termed *Hesperia*, also named *Hesperia minor*. 2. It was called *Iberia*, either from the famous River *Iberus*; or from the *Iberi*, inhabiting that Country of *Asia* which we now call *Georgia*: as *Celtiberia*, from the mixture of those *Asian Iberi*, and the *Celts of Gaul*; by which name it occurth often in *Appian of Alexandria*, and sometimes *Strabo*. 3. *Hispania*, as the foundest Judgments agree, from *Pannus the Iberian Captain*. For the *Grecians* call it *Ἰσπανία*, *Spania*, as may be proved in many places, that especially of the 15 to the *Romans*, verſ. 28. *Αἰσώσκειν Ἰβήναις εἰς τὴν Ἰσπανίαν, ἢ ἔλθωμι ἐν σοὶ Ἰσπανίαν*. No doubt but from the *Grecians*, the old *Romans* borrowed the name of *Spania*, which they often used: to which the *Spaniards*, according to their custom, adding *E*, (as in *Escola*, *Escuela*, &c.) made it *Espania*, and now *Hispania*. In like manner as the famous City of *Sevil*, called at first, *Spalis*, (according hereto, the Bishop hereof, in the Council of *Eliberis*, subscribed himself by the name of *Sabinus Spalenſis*) in tract of time was called *Hispalis*. And yet I must not pretermitt the Fancy of *Bochartus*, who fetching the names of most places from the *Punic* Language, will have it to be called *Spania*, or *Sphania*, by the *Carthaginians*, or *Phoenicians*, at their first discovery, from *Saphan*, which in the *Punic* Tongue signifies a *Coast*, with which that Country much abounded in the former times, the *Romans* being hence furnished with them. Let the Reader it like as he list.

The greatest length hereof, is reckoned at 800 miles; the breadth, where it is broadest at 500: the whole circumference, 2480 *Italian miles*. But *Marina* measuring the compass of it by the bendings of the *Pyrenees*, and

the creeks and windings of the Sea, makes the full circuit of it to be 2816 miles of *Italian* measure. And though according to the smallest computation, it be about 460 miles in compass, more than *France*; yet it is far short thereof in numbers of people: *France* being thought to contain in it 15 millions of living souls; whereas *Spain* is reckoned to contain but 8 millions only, which is little more than half the number of the *French*. The reasons of which disproportions, are, 1. The continual Wars which they had for 900 years together against the *Moors* in their own Country; by which they were consumed in the very growth. 2. The Expulsion of so many thousand Families of *Jews* and *Moors*, 124000 Families of the one, in the time of *Ferdinand the Catholic*; and 10000 of the other by King *Philip* the third: which was as the lopping off of a main Limb from the Body *Politick*, though without any loss to the Ecclesiastical. 3. The unnecessary Wars maintained against all the rest of Christendom, ever since the time of *Charles the fifth*, out of mere ambition, before they were well cured of their former Wounds. 4. The infinite Plantations made by them in the *East* and *Western Indies*, and all along the Sea-coasts of *Africa*; and those great Garrisons maintained in *Milain*, *Naples*, *Sicily*, the *Low-Countries*, and their Towns in *Africa*; consisting, for the most part, of natural *Spaniards*. 5. The barrenness of the Country in many places, unable to sustain great multitudes, but made more barren than it would be, for want of men to labour, and manure the Land. And 6. and last of all; the Impotency of both Sexes for Generation; the men being generally more hot upon their Lusts, than able for Generation; and the Women, for the most part, beginning to be Mothers so extremely young, that Nature is decayed and spent in them, before they have run half their course. And 'tis a most true and undoubted Maxime, That the greatness of Cities, and populousness of Kingdoms and Commonwealths, do much depend on the generative virtue of the men, and the nutritive virtue of the Soil in which they live.

It is situate in the more Southerly part of the Northern temperate Zone, and almost in the midst of the fourth and sixth Climates: the longest day being fifteen hours and a quarter in length, in the most Northern parts hereof; but in the extreme South, near to *Gibraltar*, not above fourteen. Which situation of this Country; rendreth the Air here very clear and calm, seldom obscured with Mists and Vapours; and not so much subject to distempers, as more Northern Regions.

They

They are a mixt People, descending from the *Goths*, *Moors*, *Jews*, and the ancient *Spaniards*. From the *Jews* they borrow Superstition; from the *Moors*, Melancholy; Pride from the *Goths*; and from the old *Spaniards*, the desire of Liberty. The *Jews* first planted here by the Emperour *Adrian*; who having totally banished them their native Country, sent them hither to dwell: the total number of which plantation is said to amount to 50000 men, women, and children; and yet their numbers much increased in the time of *Uldor*, *Uler*, the great Caliph of the *Sarazens*; who having made a Conquest of *Spain*, sent hither 50000 Families of *Moors* and *Jews*, the better to assure it to him. And so we have the coming in of the *Moors* and *Jews*; the Conquest of it by the *Goths*, and their settling here, shall be shewn hereafter: which several Nations, by long time, and intermarriages together, were at last incorporated into one. For their condition, it is said that they are highly conceited of themselves, great Braggards, and extremely proud, even in the lowestest of Fortune. Which last appeareth by the tale of a poor Cocker on his death-bed, who (as *Barklaie* in his *Icon Animarum*, reporteth the story) commanded his eldest Son, coming to him for his last blessing, to endeavour to retain the Majesty worthy so great a Family; *Memineris* (said he) *in majestatem assergere familia tua dignum*. The same Author relateth another story to the like purpose. A woman of this Country, attended on by 3 of her Brats, went a begging from door to door. Some *French* Merchants travelling that way, and pitying her case, offered her to take into their service the bigger of her Boys: but the proud, though poor, scorned as the said, that any of her lineage should endure a Prentiship, returned this answer; *Qua auctu, ante ego, sciamus, in qua fata sis genus? For ought he or any other, her Son* (imply as he stood there) *might live to be King of Spain*. Not much unlike to these, is that tale of a *Spanish Cavaliero*; who being for some faults by him committed, whipped through the principal streets of *Paris*, and keeping a sober pace, was advised by a Friend, to make more haste, that he might the sooner be out of his pain. But he, half in choler, replied, *That he would not lose the least step of his pace, for all the whipping in Paris*. For indeed, their gate is Genet-wife, very stately and majestic.

Of temperature they are hot and dry, which makes them very much given to women, and yet not very able for Generation. And this strong inclination unto women which they find in themselves, makes them so jealous of their Wives, that they permit them not to walk abroad, but when they go to Church; and then too veiled and so hooded, one can hardly see them; and not that neither only, but attended with their Damocles, and some trusty friend, that is to give an account of them at their coming back. *Mendoza*, an Ambassador from *Spain* in Queen *Elizabeth's* time, used to find fault with the promiscuous sitting of men and women in the Church used here in *England*, accounting it to be a very great incentive unto *Lechery*. To whom Doctor *Dale*, one of the *Masters of the Requests*, is said to have replied, That indeed in *Spain*, where the people even in the time of *Divine Service*, could not abstain from impure thoughts, and unclean gestures, that mingled kind of sitting was not so allowable: but the *English* were of another temper, and did not find any inconvenience in it. And it is possible, this humour of jealousy might be derived on them from the *Moors*, who in the strict guarding of their women, were the *Spaniards* Tutors; it being dead in *Barbary*, to this very day, for any man to see one of the *Xeriffes* Concubines; and for them too, if when they see a man, though but through

a Casement, they do not presently cry out. A frenzie which much rageth in most *Southern* people, but not predominant in the *Northern*; who do not only suffer their Wives to sit with other men in the Church, but even in the open and common Baths also; two things which a true *Spaniard* would rather dye an hundred deaths, than give consent to. But though the Women are not permitted to stir abroad, the men take liberty enough, and are as good smell-Festivals as in any Country: it being observed of them by a very good Writer, that howsoever in their own houses they are temperate and content with little, yet when they go unto a Feast, they are as gluttonous, dainty, and desirous to eat good cheer, as any people whatsoever.

But not to conceal their Virtues, and make our selves merry at their Follies, (wherein all other Nations have a share with them) they are unquestionably a people very grave in their carriages, in offices of piety very devout, and to their King very obedient. whose Greatness they affect more cordially, than any Subjects in the World: exact in doing Justice upon all Offenders, which commonly they administer without partiality: indulgent unto one another, and of their duties to their betters not unmindful. But that which deferreth the greatest commendation in them, is an unwearied patience in suffering adversities, accompanied with a resolution to overcome them. A noble quality, of the which in their *Indian Discoveries* they shewed excellent proofs, and received as glorious rewards: withal, of very daring spirits, great undertakers for the most part; and to say truth, the greatest enlargers of their Dominions, (according to the advantage of their situation) of any Nation under Heaven. For having first either exterminated or subdued the *Moors*, which for many hundreds of years were possessed of this Continent, the *Aragomians* lying on the *Mediterranean*, added their Estate the Islands of *Majorca*, and *Minorca*; the Kingdoms of *Sicily*, and *Sardinia*, and the Realm of *Naples*: the *Cathilians* lying on both sides of the Straights, first took in some of the opposite Towns on the Coast of *Africa*, next, conquered the *Canaries*, or *Fortunate Islands*; and finally, discovered and subdued the most part of *America*: the *Portugals* lying with a long Sea-coast on the Western Ocean, possessed themselves of the *Azores*, most of the Sea-Towns of *Morocco*, and the Land of *Guinea*; and doubling the Cape of good Hope, made themselves Masters of many Parts of *India* and Islands of great consequence in the *East-Indies*; adding thereto, in fine, the large Country of *Brazil*, in that part of *America* which lay fittest for them: and the *Navarros* (to conclude, though looked up by their greater neighbours from all Trade at Sea, and consequently enlarging their Dominions that way) adding to their Estates the most part of *Gascogne*, the Palatinate of *Champagne*, the Earldom of *Eureux*, with many fair and large possessions in the Realm of *France* thereupon depending.

In reference to the *French*, it is said, that the *French* are wiser than they seem; and the *Spaniards* seem wiser than they are: wherein they agree with many particular men of other Nations, who according to the Philosopher, *Sapientes potius cupiunt videri & non esse, quam esse & non videri*.

In matters of War, the *Spaniards* are observed to be generally too heavy, slow, and dull; the *French* too heady and precipitate; the one losing as many fair occasions by delays, as the other overthroweth by too much haste: but between them both they make one good Souilder; who according to the present opportunities, is to make use of the spur of Courage, or the bit of Respite. But of the strange and many differences

in temper, humour, and affections, between the *Spaniards* and the *French*, we have spoke more at large already when we were in *France*.

The *VWomen* are sober, loving their Husbands or Friends; wonderful delicate, curious in painting or perfuming; and though they have *VVine* in abundance, yet are they not permitted to drink it; verifying therein the old *English* Proverb, that *none are worse than the Shoemakers Wife*. Herein in worse condition than the *VWomen of France*; who though they are restrained from *VVine* before their marriage; yet, after that, they take what liberty they list, and are no more restrained from it, than the other Sex. But this is the least liberty which the *French women* have above the *Spanish*: these being watched and over-looked, that it is hardly possible for them to hold speech with any man, in business of most importance, and much less in matters of *Gossips* only; those having liberty to be courted at all times and places, even in the presence of their Husbands without any distrust or interruption. Heretofore they were wondrous strong; and, beyond belief, patient of the throws of Child-bed: *Strabo* relating how one of these women being hired for Harveest-work, and finding her travail come upon her; because she would not lose her days wages, withdrew her self into a Bush; where, being eased of her burden, she returned from one Labour to another. And many of them at this day use not to keep their Chambers above three days after their delivery, and then apply themselves to their Household-business, without either danger or delay.

The language is not the same in all places, though all called the *Spanish*. In *Portugal*, *Catalagne*, and some parts of *Valencia*, it hath a great mixture of the *French*; who in these parts have had much trade and negotiation. In *Granada*, and some parts of *Andalusia*, it partakes much of the *Moor*; and in the Mountains of *Alpuccarras*, the *Arabick* or *Moorish* language still remains in use. The Countries bordering on the *Pyrenees*, and *Cantabrian* Ocean, (but *Biscay* especially) have much in them of the language of the ancient *Spaniards*, before made subject to the *Romans*. That which is common to them all, is the vulgar *Spanish* or *Castilian*, and hath much affinity with the *Latin*; *Breewood* in his *Enquiries* reporting, that he hath seen a Letter, every word whereof was both good *Latin* and good *Spanish*. *Merala* shews a Copy of the like, pag. 300. By reason of which consonancy with the *Latin*, the *Spaniards* call their language, *Romance*. The other ingredients of this Tongue, are generally the *Gablick*, *Arabick*, and old *Spanish*; and in some places the *French* also, as before is said; those people having made great conquests, and having had great negotiations in this Country. It is said to be a very lofty swelling speech, as if it were fashioned to command.

And as their Language, so their Laws do owe a great part of themselves to the Laws of *Rome*: the Civil or Imperial Laws being generally used amongst them, but intermixt with many customs of the *Goths*, and the *Edicts* or Constitutions of their several Kings. Those of the *Goths* being first committed unto writing, and reduced to order by *Enricus* the first King of the *Goths* in Spain: those of *Cassile* digested by the command of *Ferdinand*: the third, Anno 1296. into seven Books, called the *Partidas*: not finished till the time of his Son *Alphonso*. *Leges Hispaniarum quæ pariter vocantur, in volumen rediguntur, as Tarapha* hath told us of him in his *Spanish* History. The like done by King *James* the first, for the Realm of *Aragon*, An. 1243. respectively confirmed and ratified by the Kings succeeding. Authorized to be read dispersed in the publick Schools, as well as the *Decretals*,

the *Code*, the *Pandect*, or any other part of the Civil or Canon Laws.

The Soil herof, where it is fertile and productive of the Fruits of Nature, yields not to any part of *Europe*, for delight, pleasures, and Commodities; which here appear in greater ripeness and perfection, than in other places. But, for the most part, it is either overgrown with Woods, cumbered with wild and rocky Mountains, or of so hot a nature, and so sandy withal, that it is not very fit for Tillage; and so deficient in Water, as not good for Pasturage. So that we may affirm thereof, as of the Figs in the Prophet *Jeremy*, where it is good, no Country better; where bad and barren, few so inconvenient, and not any worse. But this defect of outward Beauty and Commodities, is recompensed by those within; affording great plenty of Mines, both of Steel and Iron, and some Mines of Silver; of which last so abundant in preceding times, that it was never free from the Rovers of all Nations; and it is said of *Anibal*, that out of one Mine only in the Country of the *Turdetani*, (now part of *Andalusia*) he received 3000 pound weight daily, for a long time together. The principal Commodities which they vend into other Countries, are Wines, Oyl, Sugars, Metals, Rice, Silk, Licorass, a fine sort of Wool, Cork, Rollin, Limmons, Rafins, Oranges, and Fruits of the like nature. In Corn, which is the staff of life, they are so defective, that they receive the greatest part of what they spend, from *Italy*, *Sicily*, and *France*. Their Cattel neither fair, nor many; the Country being not able to breed them; so that their Diet is on Salads, and Fruits of the Earth; every Gentleman being limited what flesh he shall buy for himself and his family, which if he send for the Butcher, or Poulterer, by the smallest Child, able to do the Errand for him, he is sure not to be defrauded in price, or quality. And yet they talk as highly of their gallant fare, as if they furnished with the plenty of all provisions: handsomely checked in that fond humour, by that worthy Soldier, Sir *Roger Williams*; of whom it is said, that hearing once of a *Spaniard* thus foolishly bragging of his Country Salads, he gave him this answer, *You have indeed good fawce in Spain; but we have dainty Beefs, Veals, and Muttons, to eat with that fawce; and as God made beasts to live upon the grafs of the earth; so he made men to live upon them*. And it is observed, that if a *Spaniard* have a *Capon*, or the like good Dish to his Supper, you shall find all the Feathers scattered before his door, by the next morning.

And as it is in private Houses, so for travelling also, the Inns and *Vents* of this Country are very ill provided: insomuch, that most men that would not go supperless to sleep, carry their provision at their Saddle-bows, and men of worth their bedding also. So poor and mean is the entertainment in these places.

Here lived in ancient times, the Giants *Geryon*, and *Cacus*, which were quelled by *Hercules*: and in the flourishing of the *Roman* Empire, 1. *Seneca* the *Tragedian*, and 2. the *Philosopher* of the same name; a man of that happy memory, that he could repeat 2000 names in the same order that they were rehearsed: as also 3. *Quintilian* the Orator, 4. *Lucan*, and 5. *Martial*, excellent in their kinds: 6. *Pomponius Mela* the Geographer, 7. *Titus Pomponius*, with his Epitomator: 8. *Tullius*, and 9. *Pandus Orosius* the Historian, this last a *Christian*. In the middle times, 10. *Isidore* Bishop of *Sevil*, 11. *Tolison*, and 12. *Hildephonius*, Bishop of *Toledo*; and after them, *Eulogius* the Saint and Martyr; yem learned for the times they lived in. Then for the later Ages, 1. The renowned Cardinal *Francis Ximenes*, and 2. *Alvas Monimus*, famous for the

Editions

ditions of the holy Bible. 3. *Mafius*, a learned Commentator. 4. *Ojorin*, well seen in the *Latin* Elegancies; and before all as well in industry, as time. 5. *Tostatus* Bishop of *Avila*; a man so copious and industrious in his writings, that it is thought he writ more sheets than he lived days. But of late times we find but few of their works which have passed the Mountains; the *Latin* which they write, being very coarse, and favouring too much of the *School-mans*, (wherein their excellency consists) and therefore they let out their Works most commonly in their own Tongue only. The chief for *Souldiers* amongst them were formerly *Virginius*, who held out so long against the *Romans*. *Trajan* and *Theodosius*, both *Roman* Emperors. *Theodorick* the second, King of the *Goths*, the victorious Conqueror of the *Svevians*. *Bernardo del Carpio*, and *Old Ruiz Diaz*, famous for their achievements against the *Romans*. In late times, *Gonsalvo the Great Captain* who subdued *Naples*; *Ferdinand Duke of Alva*, who conquered *Portugal*, &c.

The *Christian* Faith, if we may believe the old *Spanish* Tradition, was first here planted by St. *James* the Apostle, within four years after the death of our Redeemer. To which Tradition, though they held very constant a long time together; yet of late days, *Baronius*, and other learned men of the Church of *Rome*, do most deservedly reject it. That St. *Paul* had a purpose of coming hither, is evident in his 15 Chapter to the *Romans*: and that he did come hither accordingly, is positively affirmed by St. *Chrysostom*, *Theodoret*, and divers others of the Fathers; which was in Anno 61. as *Baronius* thinketh. Nor did St. *Peter* want his part in this great service, but joynted with St. *Paul*; though not in the journey, yet in the sending of Bishops, and other *Presbyters*, to second the beginnings made by that Apostle. For it is said expressly in the *Martyrologies*, that *Crispin*, *Enphrasius*, *Secundus*, *Cecilius*, *Tudela*, *Hadrianus*, *Hefesius*, and *Torgasius*, being at *Rome*, ordained Bishops by the two Apostles, ad prædicandum verbum Dei in Hispanias directi, were dispatched into Spain to preach the Gospel. Bishops, most likely, of those Cities where they suffered death; the names of which occur in the *Martyrology*. Under the Empire of the *Goths*, the Faith of *CHRIST*, which at their coming hither they found right and Orthodox, was defiled with *Arianism*: nor ejected till the year 588. when that whole Nation did submit to more *Catholic* tendencies. But Spain being conquered by the *Moor* under the conduct of *Mulsa*, Lieutenant-General to *Uladir* *Uli*, the *Arabian* Caliph; and *Mahometanism* over-spreading the whole face of the Country; such *Christians* as remained under their obedience, but few name of *Musarabe*. Encrailing in estate and numbers, by the fortunate successes of the King of *Leon* and *Napace*, and other *Christian* Principalities growing up a *accient* service, distinct from that observed in the Church of *Rome*; this being called the *Musarabique*, the other the *Gregorian* Missal: the one pretending *S. Isidore* Archbishop of *Sevil*, the other *S. Gregory* Pope of *Rome*, for the Author of it. And it continued in this state, till the taking of the City and Kingdom of *Toledo*, by *Alfonso* King of *Cassile* and *Leon*, Anno 1085. At what time *Bernard* a *Frenchman* being made Arch-bishop of that City, and Primate of Spain, endeavoured the introduction of the *Roman* or *Gregorian* Service; but therein was opposed by the other Prelates, and generally by all the people, sufficiently tenacious of their ancient Forms. At last it was concluded (as the story telleth us) to commit the decision of the Controversie to a fiery trial: both Books being cast into the fire, the *Gregorian* leaping

presently out, and the *Musarabique* remaining unhurt in the midst of the flames. Convinced by this experiment, that both Forms were pleasing to Almighty God; they yielded so far to the desires of the King, who was zealous in it) that the *Musarabique* being retained in fix of the Churches of *Toledo*, (where it is sung to this day in a Chappel of the great Church, called *Corpus Domini*) the *Gregorian* or *Roman* Service, should be entertained in the rest of Spain. According unto which Decree, the *Musarabique* (but not until some tract of time) came to be diffused; and the *Gregorian* Service first admitted in the Cathedral of *Toledo*, May 29. An. 1091. And after by degrees, in the rest of the Country.

Since that, they have been content to the Rites of the *Roman* Church, and of the Faith and Doctrine therein professed, notwithstanding the great intermixture of *Jews* and *Moor*s; especially since the setting up of the *Inquisition*: devised at first about the year 1478. by *Pedro Gonsales de Mendoza*, Arch-bishop of *Toledo* against such converted *Jews* and *Moor*s, as did return again to their superstition. But he, and those that had the first execution of it, being found so cruel, that, in the compass of nine years, no fewer than 3000 Families had been destroyed in that Diocese only. In the year 1481. it was thought fit to moderate the rigour of it, and to commit the managing thereof to some *Jacobins* or *Dominican* Friars, who in the first place were to have an eye unto such Apostates, and to Heretics, Magicians, *Sadomites*, Blasphemers of the name of God, &c. confirmed in this Authority, by Pope *Sixtus* the 4th. This Institution in it self was not only necessary, (as the condition of Affairs then was) but exceeding laudable, had it been kept within the bounds at first intended. But of late, instead of being used on the *Jews* and *Moor*s, it hath been turned upon the *Protestants*, and that with such violence, and extremity of torture, that it is counted the greatest tyranny, and severest kind of persecution, under Heaven: inasmuch that many *Papists*, who would willingly dye for their Religion, abhor the very name and mention of it, and to the death withstand the bringing in of this slavery among them. This is it that made the people of *Aragon* and *Naples* rebel, Countries where the people are all of the *Papal* side: and this was it which caused the irremediable revolt of the *Low Countries*; the greatest part of that Nation, at the time of their taking Arms, being *Romish* *Catholicks*: yet it is planted and established in Spain and all Italy, (*Naples* and *Venice* excepted) the managing thereof committed to the most zealous and rigorous Friars in the whole Pack: the least suspicion of Heresy, affinity, or commerce with Heretics, reproving the lives of the Clergy, keeping any Books, or Editions of Books, prohibited, or discoursing in matters of Religion, are offences sufficient. Nay, they will charge mens Consciences under the pain of damnation, to detect their nearest and dearest Friends, if they do but suspect them to be herein culpable. Their proceedings are with great secrecy and severity: for first, the parties accused shall never know their accuser, but shall be constrained to reveal their own thoughts and affections. 2. If they be but convicted of any error in any of their opinions, or be gain-sayed by two witnesses, they are immediately condemned. 3. If nothing can be proved against them, yet shall they with infinite tortures and miseries, be kept in the house divers years, for a terror unto others. And, 4. If they escape the first brunt with many torments, and much anguish; yet the second question or suspicion, brings death remediless. And as for torments, and kinds of death, *Phalaris* and his fellow-Tyrants, come far short of these Blood-hounds.

E e

The

The administration of this Office, for the more orderly reglement and dispatch thereof, distributed into twelve Courts, or supreme Tribunals, for the several Provinces of Spain; no one depending on another, but in some sort subordinate to the general Inquisition, remaining in the Court near the Kings Person, which hath a kind of superintendency over those Tribunals: in all of which those of the Secular Clergy sit as Judges, the *Friers* being only used as *Promoters* to inform the Court, and bring more Grift unto the Mill. Of these Inquisitors, every one hath the title of Lord, and are a great terror to the neighbouring Peasants. There goeth a Tale, how one of their Lordships desirous to eat of the Peas which grew in a poor mans Orchard not far off, sent for the man to come unto him. which put the poor fool into such a fright, that he fell sick upon it, and kept his bed: being afterwards informed, that all his Lordships business with him, was to request a dish of Peas; he pulled up the Tree by the Roots, and carried it unto him with the Fruit upon it. And when he was demanded the reason of that rash and improvident action, he returned this answer, That he would never keep that thing in his house, which should give any of their Lordships cause to fend further after him. Certain it is, that by this means the people of this Kingdom are kept under, that they dare not hearken after any other Religion, than what their Priests and Friers shall be pleased to teach them; or entertain the truth if it come amongst them; or call in question any of those palpable gross impostures, which every day are put upon them.

For by this means, the people of this Kingdom have been, and still are punctual followers of the Church of Rome; and that too in the very errors and corruptions of it, taking up their Religion on the Popes Authority; and therein so tenacious or pertinacious, that the King doth suffer none to live in his Dominions, which profess not the Roman Catholic Religion. Of which they have been, since the times of Luther, such avowed *Adversaries*, that one of the late Popes being sick, and hearing divers men to moan his approaching end, uttered some words to this effect: *My life (said he) can nothing benefit the Church, but pray for the prosperity of the King of Spain, as its chief Supporter.* And though he spoke these words of King Philip the 2d. yet they hold good in his Successors ever since, being esteemed the greatest Patrons and Protectors of the Catholic Cause; which is indeed the proper interest of this King. For seeing that they have framed to themselves an hope of the Western Monarchy; and finding no fitter means of enlarging their own Temporal, than by concurring with the Pope in upholding his Spiritual Empire, they have linked themselves most fast to that See. To which end, they have taken upon them to be the Executioners of the Popes Excommunications; by which Office, Ferdinand the Catholic surprized Navarre, not without hope of working the like effect in some course of time, on the rest of the interdicted Estates of Europe; as may be seen by the eager following of the French War against Henry the 4th. till he had reconciled himself to the Church of Rome; and the like War managed for many years together against Queen Elizabeth of England. And the pursuit of this Spanish Monarchy is so hotly followed by the Jesuits, who in all their persuasions speak not more of one God, or of one Pope, than they do of one King; that they hold it forth for the only means to unite the differences of the Church, and subdue that great enemy of Religion, the Turk. Nor is this only a Conjecture, or a project of the Jesuits only, but a design avowed and declared in Print, that all the world may take notice of it:

and that too in a Book not only licensed by the Provincial of the Dominicans, and the Supreme Council of the Inquisition; but by order from the Lords of the Council, with the Kings Privilege and commendation prefixed before it. The Book entituled, *La Convencion de los dos Monarquias Catholicas, &c.* The agreement of the two Catholic Monarchies of Rome and Spain, set out in the year 1612. by one John de Puente. In the Frontispiece whereof are set two Scutcheons, the one bearing the Cross-Key of Rome, the other the Arms of Castile and Leon; In vinculo pacis, for the Motto. On the one side of this, there is a Portraiture representing Rome, with the Sun shining over it, and darting his Beams upon the Keys, with this Inscription, *Luminare majus in prese Orbis & Orbis*, the greater Light to govern the City and the World. On the other side, another Image designing Spain, with the Moon shining over that, and darting her Rays on the Spanish Scutcheon, with this Impression, *Luminare minus in subdatur Orbis & dominetur Orbis*, i.e. The lesser Light made to be subject to the City, (understand of Rome) but to govern all the VWorld besides. Over all in the top of the Front or Title page, in Capital Letters, *Fecit Deus duo Luminaria magna*, God made two great Lights. The whole Book being an indifferent large Folio, is but a Comment on this Text, which for substance is contained wholly in the Frontispiece, but more at large discoursed of in the Volume it self; and plainly shews what is intended, and by whom. And yet perhappes the Pope and the Jesuits both, may fail in that which is the main of their expectation; and if the project take effect, the Spaniard will then write himself *Luminare majus*, and make the Pope content with *Luminare minus*, for his part of the spoil; and glad to borrow all his light from the Sun of Spain. For, though the Kingdom of Spain, and Popedom of Rome, be thus strangely combined, yet herein the Popes have over-thrown themselves; in that leaning so much to the Spaniard, and so immoderately encreasing his Dominion, they do in a manner stand at his devotion, and may peradventure, in the end, be forced to cast themselves into his arms, as their good Lord and Master. For certain it is, that the Spanish Agents have openly braved the Cardinals, and told them, That they hoped to see the day, wherein the King should offer the Pope half a dozen to be made Cardinals, and he not dare to refuse any; and that they themselves should chuse no Pope, but one of their Masters naming. So great an inconvenience it is, more than possible it may be to the Pope, in making this Prince the one and only string to their bow; and saluting the dependencies of his Roman Catholicity upon him alone, excluding France and all the other Kings in Christendom, of the Romish Party, from the honour of it. And yet so firm they are to their Spanish principles, that no favours either granted to their Persons, or Religion, are of value with them, or thought worthy of their acceptations, if it come from any other Fountain of Grace, than the Court of Spain. Inasmuch as I have heard from a great Minister of State, that when some favours were obtained for the English Papists, on the Treaty of the Match with Spain, they were ready with great greediness to embrace the same. But when the same favours were obtained for them on the Treaty with France, not a man of them would accept them, For which some of their Chiefs being asked the reason, returned this answer; That by applying themselves to the French, they might lose the Spaniard; and it were great inconvenience in them, to change an old and constant Friend, who had never failed them, for one of whose affections they had no assurance, and such some at whose intolerant Heretics in his own Dominions, shewed that he was no fit Patron for the Catholics to rely upon.

The

The chief Rivers are, 1. *Tagus*, celebrated for his Golden Sands, of which the Scepter of the old Kings of Portugal is affirmed (by some Writers) to be made: but I have not Faith enough to believe the fame. The head of it is in the Mountain *Seira Molina*, near to *Cuenca*; from the which it runneth by the City *Toledo*; and then smoothly gliding by the Walls of *Lisbon*, doth pay his tribute to the Western Ocean. 2. *Anas*, (now *Gadiana*) which arising about the same place, runneth afterwards under the ground the space of 15 miles: and hence the Spaniards use to brag, that they have a Bridge whereon 10000 Cattel daily feed. An accident common to many others Rivers; as to *Mole* a small River in *Surrey*; *Erfrausius* in Greece; and *Lyceus* in *Anatolia*, of which laist, thus *Ovid*.

*Sic ubi terreno Lycus est epotus biatus,
Exiit procul hinc, alioque renascitur ora.*

So *Lyceus*, swallowed by the gaping ground,
At a new mouth, far off, is rising found.

But having gotten up again, it loseth it self without recovery in the Western Ocean, on the South of *Portugal*, which is separated from *Estremadura*. 3. *Batis*, now called *Guadalquivir*, (which in the Arabic Language signifieth a great River) ariseth out of the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*, and passing by *Corduba* and *Sevil*, disburdeneth it self into the Southern Ocean, at the Haven of *S. Lucar de Barameda*, 4. *Iberus*, which having its head amongst the Mountains of *Biscay*, passeth on Eastwards by *Saragossa* and *Torjola*, into the Mediterranean; the whole course thereof being 460 miles, of which it is navigable 200. A River of such note in the time of the Romans that it divided this whole Country, into *Citerior*, and *Uterior*; of which more anon. 5. *Duero*, which rising in the same Mountain, passeth through *Portugal*, and so unto the Western or Atlantic Ocean. 6. *Minaus*, of which more in *Portugal*.

Chief Mountains next unto the Pyreneus spoken of before. 1. The Cantabrian Mountains, called by *Pliny*, *Juga Aslurns*; which rising out of a spur or branch of the Pyrenees, overprint the Provinces of *Biscay*, *Asturia*, and *Gallicia*, (coasting along the shores of the Cantabrian Ocean) where at last they end. 2. *Idubeda*, *Jubalda*, or *Aurantiis Salsus*, so called by *Pliny*, and others of the ancient Writers: which beginning not far from the head of the River *Iberus* followeth the course of that River, by the City of *Burgos*, and endeth not far from the influx of it into the Mediterranean. 3. *Sierra Morena*, by *Cesar* called *Salsus Castellonenfis*, and *Mons Marianus* by *Ptolemy*; which beginning about the Town *Aleazar*, coasting along the right-hand shores of the River *Batis*, to the Southern Seas. 4. *Sierra Nevada*, by *Pliny* called *Mons Illipius*, and *Oropeda* by *Strabo*; but by the Moors, the Mountains of *Alpuxaras*. A chain of hills which thwart the Kingdom of *Granada*, from East to West, and amongst which the people to this day speak the Arabic Tongue.

The Country is said to have been inhabited by *Tubal*, the Son of *Japhet*. Of whom it is affirmed in the *Berosus* of *Frier Amnius*, and by such Chronologers as he hath imposed on by the name of that Author; that in the twelfth year of *Nimrod*, which was 140 years after the Flood, he seated himself in the *Asturia*, a part of Spain, and there built the Town of *S. Oual*. A device so foolish and absurd, that it is not to be honoured with a confutation: for either *Tubal* must come hither by Sea or by Land: if by Land, then must he in the compass of a year or two, travel not less than

4000 miles (so far it is, at least, from *Biscay*, to the valley of *Shinar*) with women and children, through most unpassable Woods and Mountains, which no understanding man can give belief to. If by Sea, besides the short time he had to provide shipping for so great a company, and so long a voyage, nothing is more improbable to a sober man than that he should leave *Italy* and *Africk* upon either hand; or pretermitt the opportunity of possessing *Valencia*, *Andalusia*, *Portugal*, being fruit Countries; to fix himself in the most mountainous, woody, and barren Province of all this Continent. Yet most of our *Berosians* are so confident in it, that they make him the first King of Spain; from whom to *Gargarus Melicela*, they numbered 25 Kings more, who lasted 983 years: the chief of which are said to be, 1. *Hisperus*, who subdued also *Italy*, named both Countries *Hisperia*; but so that *Italy* was called *Hisperia* the greater; and Spain *Hisperia* the less. 2. *Hispanus*, whence they conceit the name of *Hispania* to be derived. 3. *Tagus*, 4. *Batis*, and 5. *Anus*, whence the three Rivers in Spain, so called must by all means derive their names. 6. *Idubeda*, Godfather, no doubt, to the great Mountain so named. 7. *Scitilus*, from whom the title of *Sicily*, is said to take denomination. 8. *Hispalus* who is reported to have built the City *Sevil*, or *Hispalis*. 9. *Brigus*, the Founder of *Flavio brigas*, and other Towns ending in *Briga*. 10. *Luslus*, who gave name to *Lusitania*, now *Portugal*. The Catalogue of which kings, I desire no man to believe farther, than that of our own State from *Brunus* to *Cassibelm*. A Catalogue so ill contrived, that whereas *Jyslus* speaks of *Habis*, and *Herodotus* of *Agurthionis*, *Macrobis* of *Heron*, and *Plutarch* of *Indibilis*, all Kings of Spain; none of these are mentioned in it. So that the coming of *Tubal* (in person) hither, is a silly vanity; though we deny not but the Spaniards, or some Nations of them, may derive their Pedigree from *Tubal*; as being the descendants of the *Iberi*, whom *Jeseph* saith to have been anciently called *Thobelos*: a name in which are all the Radical Letters of *Tubal*, and which differeth not much from it in sound. For somewhat before the supposed time of *Gargarus Melicela*, the Iberians are said to come in under *Pannu*: divided after his decease, amongst many petty Kings and Princes, for the space of 900 and odd years, even till the first attempt which the Carthaginians made upon it; who found here no such Universal or Supreme Monarch, as the *Berosian* Fablers dream of. During which time, we find nothing more observable and certain in the story of it, than the planting of Colonies on the Sea-coasts, by divers Nations, according to the Custom of those elder times. Of which four were the Towns of *Emporea* and *Dianium*, founded by the *Masilians*, *Saguntum*, by the *Zacynthi*, or people of *Zam Rhodes*, by the *Rhodians*, as some think; the City and Isle of *Gades*, planted by the *Tyrians*, who after spread themselves over all the Coasts of *Andalusia*. The first that came in bodies hither, in way of Conquest, were the *Celts*, a great and potent Nation of *Gaul*, who mixing themselves with the *Iberi*, caused the whole Country to be called *Celtiberia*: but the time when they came into it is very uncertain. Of the invasion of it by the Carthaginians, there is a greater certainty. Who being beaten out off *Sicily* by the conquering Romans, *An. V.C. 512*: and not daring to look any more that way, bended their Forces to the West, and passing through the Straights of *Gibraltar*, by the Isles of *Gades*, (their own long before) landed in Spain under the conduct of *Amilcar*, the Father of *Annibal*, four years after the loss of *Sicily*. In less than twenty years following, *Amilcar*, (*Ashdrubal* his Son in law)

E c 2

and

and Annibal the Son of Amilcar, had made almost all Spain subject to the Carthaginians, even from the Western Ocean to the Pyrenees; destroyed Saguntum, built new Carthage, and struck to great a terror into the Country, that had not Annibal's design carri'd him to Italy, the State of Carthage had been absolute Masters of it, without further opposition or resistance. But Annibal having taken all his Souldiers with him; and those that came from Carthage to command in chief, not being men of parts sufficient to go through with it; they lost it piece-meal to the Romans, but in less time than they had been getting it from the Spaniards; the valour and good fortune of Corn. Scipio, over-ruling the declining power of that mighty State. The last that here commanded for the State of Carthage was Asdrubal the Son of Gisco; who being beaten by Scipio into the Island of Gades, left that also to the keeping of Magnus, one of his Commanders; by whom being pillaged and deserted, it forthwith yielded to the Romans, the Carthaginians, after this never possessing foot of ground in all this Continent.

The Romans thus becoming Masters of a great part of it, divided it into *Ulioreum*, lying from the River Iberus, Westward, because furthest off from them; and *Citeriorem*, between the said River, and the Pyrenees. But having totally subdued it, they divided it into three main parts; 1. *Tarracensem*, so called of Tarragon, the chief City of it, containing Aragon, Navarre, Biscay, Galicia, &c. 2. *Baeticam*, so named of the River, Baetis, which runneth through it; comprehendeth the now Countries of Granada, Andalusia, and part of Extremadura. 3. *Lusitanicam*, denominated from the Lusitani, the most potent people of that part, differing in extent from the present Portugal, (though this called *Lusitaniam* by our modern *Latinitas*.) For the old Lusitania comprehended part of Extremadura, and some part of the two Castiles; and no more of the present Portugal, than what lieth betwixt the two Rivers, Ana and Duero; that on the South of Ana, being laid to Baetica; and that on the North of Duero, unto Tarracensem. Of these three parts, Baetica was in most esteem under the Romans; inasmuch that it contained 8 Roman Colonies, 8 Municipal Cities, and 29 other Towns, endued with the rights and privileges of the *Latini*. The reason thereof was, that the people of this Country having been formerly broken by the Carthaginians, with more quiet endured the yoke of the Romans; whereas the rest, for a long time resisted the entry and Empire of that prevailing City. But to proceed to the affairs of Rome in Spain, Scipio Africanus laid the first foundation of the Roman Government in this Country: which building, though undertaken by many excellent workmen, was not thoroughly finished till the days of Augustus, being almost 200 years since the first attempt. He rooted it, strengthened it, made it a principal building in his Monarchical City. For the old *Incola* were exceeding valiant and resolute, sometimes disgracing, sometimes endangering the Roman reputation; inasmuch that there were more Commanders lost in those Wars, than any other. At first the Romans fought not with the Spaniards; but with the Carthaginians in Spain: then perished both the Scipio's, viz. the Father and the Uncle of Africanus. Viriatus held War for 20 years, Numania held out almost 15, the Astures remained unconquered till the time of Augustus; and also resolutely maintained their particular liberties, *Ut dijudicari non poterit* (saith Paterculus) Hispania an Romanis plus esset in armis roboris, & nec populus alteri parvisset fore. Such manner of men were the ancient Spaniards under Rome and Carthage; the first people of the Continent of Eu-

rope, (excepting Italy) on which the Romans did begin to enlarge their Empire, and the last that wholly were subdued and conquered by them. But being conquered at the last, and brought under the form of a Province by Augustus Caesar; it was governed by their *Proconsuls*, *Prætors*, and other Magistrates, according to the division before-mentioned. But Constantine the Great in his new modelling of the Empire, laying some part of Africa to it, made it a *Dioecesis* of the Empire; and subject to the *Præfatus Prætorius* for Gaul, by whose Vicarius it was governed: the whole being then divided into these seven Provinces, viz. 1. *Baetica*, 2. *Lusitania*, bounded as before; 3. *Gallicia*, containing the modern Galicia, Leon, and Oviedo, the greatest part of the Old Castile, and so much of Portugal as lieth betwixt the two Rivers of Minio and Duero, 4. *Carthaginensis*, so called from the City of New Carthage, comprehending New Castile, Murcia, and Valencia with the part of the Old Castile, Aragon, and Andalusia. 5. *Tarracensis*, embracing all Biscay, Navarre, and Catalogne, with the greatest part of the Kingdom of Aragon. 6. *Tingitana*, so called from Tingis, (now Tangier) a Town of Africa, on the opposite Coast, in which are now the great Kingdoms of Fesse and Morocco. And 7. the Province of the Islands, containing Majorca, Minorca, Elba, and Frumentaria. Of which seven Provinces, the three first were *Consulares*, governed by *Proconsuls*; the other four, from their being under *Præsidents*, were called *Præfidiarie*. Being thus settled, it continued a Roman Dioecesis till about the year 400, when it was subdued by Gundericus, king of the Vandals; of which people, their beginnings, achievements, and final period, we will speak more when we come to Africa, where they fixed themselves: invited thereunto, partly to eschew the ill neighbourhood of the Goths, who began to grow too potent for them, and partly to satisfy the desire of *Benifacæ*, Governour of that Province for the Emperor Valentinian the third, against whom he had then rebelled, and wanted such support to make good his action. Those being gone, the Suevoi and Alani, who entered with the Goths, and afterwards dispossest of their Kingdoms also, (though suffered to remain in the Country still) as shall be shewn hereafter in its proper place. As for the Goths, (of whom we shall speak more in Sweden, and have already made some mention when we were in Gaul) having sacked Rome, and wasted Italy, under the conduct of Alaric; they were brought out of that Country by the gift of Narbonensis in Gaul, and so much of Tarracensis in Spain, as now makes up the Province of Catalogne: the composition being ratified by the marriage of Asinulfus, the Successor of Alaric with Placidia, Sister to Honorius the Western Emperor, Valia, or Wallia, the next of name and note, (for Sigis who interposed, reigned but one year only, and did nothing in it) Successor of Asinulfus, having beaten the Alani out of Lusitania and Carthaginensis, added those Provinces also unto his Estates, and confining the Vandals within Baetica, was the first of the Goths which entitled himself king of the Goths in Spain. By their agreement with the Romans, they were to keep those Provinces for the use of the Empire, which they did conquer and recover from the barbarous Nations; but contrary to all Faith, and the Articles of their Agreement having once beaten the Alani out of Lusitania by the Prowels of Valia, the Suevoi out of Baetica, under the conduct of Theodorick, the Brother of Tarismund, they fell upon the Romans themselves; whom Euricus, and his Successors, by little and little, dispossest of all Spain on this side of the Streights. Tingitana held out longest, as farthest off, unfortunately attempted

tempted by Theodes the ninth King of the Goths, whose Souldiers being set upon by the Romans on the Lord's day or Sunday, refused to fight in their own defence, and were so miserably defeated, that there was never a man of them left to carry news of the overthrow. So early did the Superstition of a Lord's day Sabbath prevail upon this melancholic and devout people. But what this Theodes could not do, was performed by Suintilla; who in the short time of this reign. An. 642, made the Conquest absolute.

Let us next look upon the Goths as Lords of Spain, and we shall find them to have been Christians in Religion; and somewhat civilized by their long neighbourhood and conversations with the Gracians, before they turned their Forces into the West. Their company more desired in this respect, than that of the Vandals; who were not only Pagans, but far more barbarous. But these Goths, being for long time of the Arian Faction, did grievously afflict and persecute the Orthodox Prelates: continuing in this error till the death of Leinigild (or Leinigildus as some call him) the last Patron and Affector of it. Their Government Monarchical, but the Kings Elective, (though for the most part they kept themselves to the Regal Family): an Excommunication being laid on such, by the fifth Council of Toledo, as went about to alter that established course. Their Rule or Government was Custom, and that not left in writing, but committed to Memory and Tradition: written, Laws being first made by Euricus; which the ensuing Princes confirmed and perfected. What else concerneth them, we shall find in the close of this Catalogue of.

The Kings of the Goths in Spain

A. C.	1	Valia 20.
420	2	Theodorick 13.
440	3	Theodisund 31.
473	4	Theodorick II. 14.
487	5	Henry, or Euricus 18.
505	6	Alaricus 21.
513	7	Consularius 3.
516	8	Amalaric 11.
526	9	Theodes 18.
543	10	Thelegildus 3.
546	11	Agila 5.
551	12	Ashinulfus 14.
565	13	Luba 3.
568	14	Leinigild 18.
586	15	Richard 15.
601	16	Luba II. 2.
603	17	Vitoricus 7.
610	18	Gundebaris 20.
630	19	Sisebutus 9.
639	20	Richard II. 2.
641	21	Suintilla 3.
644	22	Sifenanda 7.
651	23	Suintilla II. 4.
653	24	Tulga 2.
657	25	Vidafundus 10.
667	26	Recehild 13.
680	27	Bamba 9.
689	28	Ering 7.
696	29	Egypta 7.
703	30	Vitiza 13.
716	31	Roderick, the last King of the Goths in Spain, elected to the prejudice of the Sons of Vitiza, which after proved the ruin and overthrow of the Kingdom. For though the Kingdom

went, for the most part, by Election, and that they had respect to the next of blood, (as at this time in Poland and Bohemia) very few interlopers being here admitted: yet some there were, who either by their merit, or some opportunity, got the possession of the Kingdom, though not at all relating to the Royal Family. Of which kind were Theodes an *Offro-Goth*, sometimes the Governour hereof for Theodorick King of the Goths in Italy, Protector of this Kingdom in the minority of Amalaric; and Theudehelm, or Theudegildus, Nephew to Torias, one of the Successors to Theodorick. The rest of principal note were, 1. Theodorick the first, slain in the battle near Tholouse, against Attila the Hun; in defence of his own Country, and the Roman Empire. 2. Theodorick the second, who beat the Nation of the Suevoi out of Baetica; and 3. Leinigild, or Leinigildus, who deprived them of Galicia also. 4. Reccardus the first, who first embraced the Catholic Doctrine of the Church, and rejected Arianism; and for that cause first honoured with the Title of the Catholic King; afterwards refused by Alfonso the first King of Leon, Arragon, &c. Grandfather unto Charles the fifth: 5. Exvil Policy, as Reccardus for Piety; as being the *Lycinius* or *Legislator* of this people; not governed till his time by a written Law, but either by uncertain customs, or at the pleasure of such Officers as the King let over them. 6. Suintilla Son of Reccardus the second, who having in the short time of his reign expelled the Roman Forces out of Tingitana An. 642, was the first Monarch of all Spain, whereof Tingitana, (though on the other side of the Sea) had been made a Province by the Emperor Constantine, as before was said. And of this Province was Julianus Governour in the time of Roderick, who being of the Faction of the sons of Vitiza, romanced his advancement to the Kingdom; and thereby got the greater portion of the King's displeasure; who sending him upon an Embassage to the Moors of Africa, in the mean time deflowered his daughter, named Cava: which the Father took in such indignation, that he procured the Moors (amongst whom he had gotten much credit) to come over into Spain. This request they performed under the conduct of Musa and Tariff, and having made a full Conquest, subjected it to the great Caliphs, or Mahometan Emperors. It is recorded in a MS. History of the Saracens, that at the first coming of Tariff into Spain, a poor woman of the Country being willingly taken Prisoner, fell down at his feet, kissed them, and told him, that he had heard her Father (who was Letter'd) say, that Spain should be conquered by a people whose General should have a Mole on his right shoulder, and in whom one of his hands should be longer than the other. He, to animate his Souldiers against the next encounter, unclothed himself, and shewed the mark, which so encouraged them, that they now doubted not the Victory. Roderick had in his Army 130000 Foot, and 35000 Horse. Tariff had 30000 Horse and 180000 Foot. The Battle continued seven days together, from morning to night; at last the Moors were victorious. What became of King Roderick, was never known, His Souldiers took one arrayed in their King's Apparel, whom upon examination they found to be a Shepherd; with whom the King, after the disfigurement, had changed clothes. It is written also in Roderick's Testament, that before the coming of those Saracens, King Roderick, upon hope of some treasure, did open a part of the Palace, of long time forbidden to be touched; but found nothing but Pictures which resembled the Moors, with a Prophecy, that

whensoever the Palace was then opened, the people there resembled, should overcome Spain; and so it happened, *An. 724.*

The *Moors*, now Lords of Spain by the treason of *Julian*, (who having seen the miserable death of his wife and children, was starved in Prison by the *Africans*) permitted the free use of Religion to the old Inhabitants; left them seeking new dwellings for the Liberty of Conscience, should leave their native Soil desolate. The *Moors* finished their Conquest in five years say some, others, in two; and some again in eight Months. To keep the new-conquered Country in subjection, no way was so convenient, as to plant Colonies: but the *Morisco* women would not abandon their old seats. Hereupon *Mulla* and *Tariff*, by gifts, pardons, and persuasions, drew many *Christian* women to forsake their Religion, whom they married to the Soldiers. Not long after *Uladir Olti*, the great Caliph, sent over about 50000 Families of *Moors* and *Jews*, assigning them a convenient portion of Lands; to be held with great Immunities, and upon small Rents. These politic courses notwithstanding, the *Moors* long enjoyed not the sole Sovereignty herein: for the *Christians* having now recovered breath, chose themselves Kings, and the Authority of the Caliphs declining, gave the *Moors* liberty to erect divers petty Royalties, many of which, by little and little, were brought under the command of greater and more powerful Princes. So that at last, Spain fell into a fifteenfold division. viz. into the Kingdoms and proprietary Estates of 1. *Navarre*, 2. *Biscay*, and 3. *Guipuzcoa*, 4. *Leon* and *Oviedo*, 5. *Gallicia*, 6. *Corduba*, 7. *Granada*, 8. *Murcia*, 9. *Toledo*, 10. *Castile*, 11. *Portugal*, and the members of it, 12. *Valencia*, 13. *Catalonia*, 14. the Kingdoms of *Majorca*, and 15 that of *Aragon*: not to say any thing of the petty Kingdoms of *Jaca*, *Algezira*, and *Sevil*, besides others of like nature to them, erected by the fatigued and divided *Moors*, but of short continuance all of them, and of little note. All now reduced at this day, under the three Governments of *Castile*, *Portugal*, and *Aragon*; the Kingdoms and Estates of *Leon*, *Navarre*, *Corduba*, *Granada*, *Gallicia*, *Biscay*, *Murcia*, and *Toledo*, being under *Castile*; *Portugal* with *Algarve*, and the Isles of *Azores*, an entire Government of it self; *Valencia*, *Catalonia*, and *Majorca*, under that of *Aragon*.

I. NAVARRE

NAVARRE, the second Kingdom for antiquity in Spain, is bounded on the East with the Principality of *Bearn*, in the Kingdom of *France*; on the West, first with the River *Ebro*, or *Iberus*; and after, with a little River falling into it, near *Calahorra*, by which divided from *Castile*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Mountains, by which parted from *Guipuzcoa*, and on the South, with the River *Aragon*, by which divided from that Kingdom. Of larger extent anciently, than it is at the present; the little Province of *Alava*, lying toward *Guipuzcoa*, and the whole Country of *Rioja*, (on the West-side of the River *Ebro*) being taken from it, and reckoned members of *Castile*, by *Alfonso* the 4th. However, we shall look upon it in its ancient bounds, and shall accordingly take notice of the chief Cities and Towns thereof.

It was called at first, the Kingdom of *Sobrarbe*, from a Town of that name, situate in the most inaccessible part of the Pyrenees; and therefore chose by *Garcia Xi-*

mines, the first King hereof, for the seat of his Kingdom, as most defensible against the fury of the *Moors*. Afterwards it took the name of *Navarre*, either from *Navais*, signifying a plain and Champaign Country, (first used by *Inigo Arista*, the sixth King, who having taken *Pampelona*, abandoned the Hill-Countries, and betook himself unto the Plains) or from *Navarriete*, the chief of the three parts into which that City was divided, not only at the taking thereof, but a long time after.

The Country, though environed on all sides with mighty Mountains, yet of itself is said to be reasonably fruitful, well watered, and for the most part plain and level, as before is said. It taketh up also some parts of both sides of the Pyrenees: the Spanish side being fertile, and adorned with Trees; the French side generally very bare and naked. That on the Spanish side, and on the summits of the Mountains, now possessed by the *Spaniards*, is called *High Navarre*: that on the French side, now called *Basse* or *Low Navarre*, estimated at a sixth part of the whole Kingdom, is enjoyed by the French; incorporated by King *Lewis* the 13, to the Realm of *France*, *An. 1620.*

Places of most importance in *Basse Navarre*, 1. *S. Pelay*, formerly the Place of Judicature for this part of the Kingdom; but in the year 1620, removed to *Pau* in the Principality of *Bearn*: both *Bearn* and *Basse Navarre*, which hath before been governed as distinct Estates from the Realm of *France*, being then incorporate to that Crown. 2. *Navareux*, a Town of great importance, seven Leagues from *Pau*, well fortified, and as well mounted, King *Lewis* the 13, finding it at his coming thither, *An. 1620*, no fewer than 45 Cannons all mounted, besides 40 Culverins and smaller Pieces; with Powder, Bullet, and Victuals, answerable thereunto. 3. *Pied de Port*, or *St. John de Pied de Port*, bordering on the edge of *France* against which formerly a piece of especial strength. 4. *Roncevalis*, or *Roncevaux* situate in the most pleasant Country of all *Navarre*, in the entrance of a small but delightful Valley: famous for the great Battle fought near unto it; in the Straights or entrances of the Mountains leading to this valley; betwixt the French under *Charlemagne*, and a great Army of *Moors* and natural *Spaniards*, confederate together in defence of their common Liberty. In which Battle, by the treachery of *Ganelon*, 40000 of the French were slain; and amongst them, *Rowland* Earl of *Mans*, the Nephew of *Charles*, and others of the Peers of *France*; of whom so many Fables are reported in the old Romances; the first Author of which Fables, passeth under the name of Arch-Bishop *Turpin*, said to be one of those *Charles* the Great, hath interlaced his Story with a number of ridiculous vanities: by means whereof, the noble acts of that puissant Emperor, and his gallant Followers, are much obscured and blemished by those very Pens, which in the times succeeding did employ themselves to advance the fame.

Of special note in *High Navarre*, 1. *Victoria* first built, or rather re-edified by *Sancho* the 4. King of *Navarre*, *An. 1181*, by whom thus named in memory of some victory obtained thereabouts against the *Castilians*; whereas before his time it was called *Gasteiz*: as in like case there had been many Towns built by *Greeks* and *Romans*, by the name of *Nicopolis*, or the City of *Victory*, which we shall meet withal hereafter. Situate in the place of the ancient *Vellisca*, but graced with the privileges and name of a City, by *John* the second of *Castile*, after it came under the Command of that Crown, *An. 1432*. A Town belonging properly to the little

Pro-

Province of *Alava*, and the chief thereof. Which Province being wholly in and amongst the *Cantabrian* Mountains, was of old a member of *Navarre*: but being extorted from it, *An. 1200*, by *Alphonso* the 4th of *Castile*, it was in the year 1332, incorporated into that Crown, as a part thereof; as were some other Towns and Members of this Kingdom also, won by the *Castilians*. 2. *Viane*, on the East of the River *Ebro*, well fortified, after the taking of *Logronno* on the other side of the water, (from which distant not above a League) as the Frontier Town against *Castile*. Of greatest note for being the title of the eldest Son of *Navarre*, who was called Prince of *Viane*; advanced unto this honour by King *Charles* the third, *An. 1421*. in imitation of the like custom in *Castile*, where the eldest Son was called Prince of the *Asturias*: but not less memorable for the death of *Cesar Borgia*, slain near unto it in an ambush, after all his wanderings, and interchangeableness of fortunes. For being Son of Pope *Alexander* the sixth, by birth a *Spaniard*, he was by his Father made a Cardinal; but relinquishing that Title, by *Charles* the eighth of *France*, created Duke of *Valentinis*, in the Province of *Dauphine*: during his Fathers life, he had reduced under his obedience, divers of the Estates which anciently had belonged to the Church of *Rome*; but after his decease, imprisoned by Pope *Julio* the second, who was jealous (not without good cause) of his plots and practices. From *Rome* he stole unto *Genoa*, then Vice-Roy of *Naples* for *Ferdinando* the Catholic; who notwithstanding his safe conduct, sent him Prisoner to Spain: but breaking Prison (desperately sliding down a Window) he came at last into this Kingdom, and was here slain in an Ambuscade, as before was said. So many times was *Maubieu*, a great Politician over-reached by Book-men and Soldiers! 3. *Sobrarbe*, in the most inaccessible parts of the Pyrenees; for that cause made the first Seat of the Kings of *Navarre*, entitled from thence the Kingdom from *Navarre*, by *Sancho* the Great, who gave it to *Gonsales* his youngest Son: after whose death (not having issue) it was seized on by *Don Raymir*, the first King of *Aragon*, and made a member of that Crown. 4. *Sanguessa*, a Town of a large Territory and Jurisdiction, privileged with a Suffrage in the Convention of Estates, and a strong Fortrefs on the borders towards *Aragon*: for which cause formerly aimed at by the Kings thereof, who have had it sometimes in their hands. 5. *Pampelona*, in the Champaign Country, on the banks of the River *Arga*, the Metropolis of this Kingdom; and the Seat-Royal of its Kings, since the Conquest of it from the *Moors* by *Inigo Arista*, the sixth King of *Navarre*. Of old divided into three parts; that is to say, *Bourg*, *Pempelun*, and *Navarriete*; each having several Officers and Jurisdications, (the cause of many quarrels and much blood amongst them) till all united into one body, and reduced under the command of one chief Magistrate, by King *Charles* the third. An ancient Town, first built by *Pompey* at the end of his Wars against *Sertorius*; in memory of whom called *Pempelun* by our modern *Latinists*; but *Antoninus*, more near unto the present name, by *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus*: now an Episcopal See, the seat of the Vice-Roy, and one of the best fortified Towns of all Spain. 6. *Moia*, not far from the borders of *France*, where it joyneth on *Guipuzcoa*; a place of principal importance: the Castle whereof was one of the last pieces on this side of the Mountains, which held out for King *John* of *Albert*, against *Ferdinand* the Catholic, in his surprisal of this Kingdom. 7. *Monreal*, 8. *Oite*, and 9. *Tallava*; all yielded with the rest of this Kingdom, to *Frederick* of

Toledo, Duke of *Alava*: who had the happiness to subdue this Realm to the Crown of *Castile*, as his Son *Ferdinand* had to conquer the Realm of *Portugal*. 10. *Tudela*, on the Eastern bank of the River *Ebro*, took from the man) coming with many other noble persons to the aid of *Alfonso*, King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*, at the siege of *Saragossa*, *An. 1110*. Given by that King unto him, for the reward of his service; and afterwards united to the Crown of *Navarre*, by the marriage of *Magdalen* daughter of Earl *Rouen*, with *Garcia* the seventh King of *Navarre*, Successor in that Kingdom to the said *Alfonso*. Of late times honoured with a little University there founded by *Ferdinand* the Catholic, on his surprisal of that Kingdom. 11. *Calahorra*, situate on the Western banks of the *Iberus*, or *Ebro*, by *Ptolomy* called *Calagurris*; by *Strabo*, *Calaguris*; now a Bishops See: taken from *Sancho* the eighth of *Navarre*, by *Alfonso* the fourth of *Castile*, and made a Member of that Kingdom. As also was 12. *Logronno*, in the Country of *Rioja*, on the same banks of the River also. 13. *Eskala*, bordering on *Castile*, to which adjudged (though on the Eastern side of the River) by *Lewis* the 11th. of *France*, made Umpire for the atonement of some differences betwixt *Henry* King of *Castile*, and *John* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*; to satisfy that King for his charges in the former Quarrel.

The old Inhabitants thereof, were the *Vascones*, possessed not only of this tract, but of *Biscay* and *Guipuzcoa* also, from them denominated: who passing over the Pyrenees, made themselves Masters of that Province which is now called *Cascoigne* by the French, and *Vasconia* in Latin. Won from the *Romans* by the *Celts*, and from them by the *Moors*; it began to be a Kingdom under *Garcia Ximenes*, a noble man of the *Gothish* blood, who with 600 men only began to make head against the *Saracens*, *An. 716*. first under the title of the Kingdom of *Sobrarbe*; and after that, of *Navarre*, for the reasons formerly delivered. The sixth from *Garcia Ximenes*, was *Inigo*, surnamed *Arista*, (so named from his vehemency and heat in War) the Son of *Simon* Earl of *Bizorre* in *Cascoigne*; elected to this Kingdom on the death of *Ximenes* the fifth King, *An. 840*. or thereabouts, as the next Heir (but in the collateral Line) of *Don Garcia Ximenes*, the first King of *Sobrarbe*. To him the taking of his History is ascribed most generally, though *Turpin* in his History refers the same to *Garcia* the second King. But certainly the Town was in the hands of the *Moors*, till forced from them by the prowess of *Charlemagne*; by them again recovered after the defeat of *Ronceval*, and held till the time of this King, who possessed himself of it: To this King also is ascribed the first beginning of the ceremony of Crowning and Anointing, after the manner used by the Kings of *France*. But the old *Roman Provincial*, cited in the *Titles of Honour*, acknowledgeth only, in that time, to the Emperors of the East and West, the Kings of *Hierusalem*, *England*, *France*, and *Sicily*. And therefore probable it is, that the custom came into *Navarre* with the House of *Champagne*. Other Kings of most note in the course of Story, were 3. *Forus*, the second Nephew of *Inigo Arista*, by his Son *Garcia* the third; who added unto his Estate, the Earldom of *Aragon*, descended to him by his Mother, the Daughter and Heir of *Afharis*, or *Aznaris*, who was 4. *Sancho* the fourth, surnamed the Great, who first assumed unto himself the title of King of Spain: his Predecessors using no other title than Kings of *Sobrarbe* and *Navarre*; his Co-temporaries calling themselves Kings of *Leon*, *Toledo*, *Sevil*, *Corduba*; according to the names

of

of their several Kingdoms; the *Goths*, Kings of the *Goths* in Spain; and so the *Vandals*, and the *Suevi*. Only the Earls of *Barcelona*, at their first erection by the *French*, entituled themselves the Dukes and Marquesses of Spain, as if all were theirs, with brag and vanity enough. But this Prince had some good ground for it, as being by inheritance possessed of *Navarre* and *Aragon* of *Castile*, in the right of his Wife *Dona Agnes*, or *Elvira*, Sister and Heir of *Sancho* the last Earl thereof; and by conquest of a great part of the Realm of *Leon*: so that almost all Spain, not possessed by the *Moor*s, was become his own. Had these Estates remained entire to his Successors, the *Moor*s, no doubt, had sooner lost their hold in Spain; and the whole Continent been brought under the obedience of one sole Monarch. But this King either loving all his Sons alike, or else offended with the eldest, who most unaturally had accused his own innocent Mother of the crime of Adultery, divided his Estates amongst them; giving to *Garcia* his eldest Son, the Realm of *Navarre*; with that part of *Leon* which he held by Conquest; to *Ferdinand* his second Son, *Castile*; and *Aragon*, to his base Son *Raymir*; both which he erected into Kingdoms: and finally, to *Conseles* his third Son, the Realm of *Sobrarbe*, then first dismembered from *Navarre*. By means of which impolitic course, his Sons being all of equal Title and Estates, instead of opposing the common Foe, quarrelled with each other, and left the Quarrel as a Legacy to their several Successors: which mischief might have been avoided, if he had not dignified them all with the title of Kings, or left the rest as Homagers unto one Supreme. 5. *Sancho* the fifth, Nephew of *Sancho* the Great, by his Son *Garcia de Nagera*; unaturally and trayterously slain by his Brother *Raymir*. After whose death, and the short interposition of his Murderer, this Kingdom was seized on by the Kings of *Aragon*; three of which, *viz.* *Sancho Ramirez*, *Pedro*, and *Alfonso*, did severally and successively enjoy the same. 6. *Alfonso*, the last of the three Kings of *Aragon* reigning in *Navarre*, firnamed the Warrior; who for a time was King of *Castile* also, in right of *Urraca* his Wife; in which respect he took unto himself the title of *Emperour* of Spain, though not acknowledged to by others. But finally, dying without Issue, and his Brother *Raymir*, or *Raymond*, called the Monk, succeeding in *Aragon*, the Kingdom of *Navarre* reverted to *Garcia Raymir*, Lord of *Monjon*, the direct Heir of *Garcia de Nagera*, by *Raymir* Lord of *Calaborra*, his younger Son. 7. *Sancho* the eighth, the Nephew of this *Garcia Raymir*, by his Son *Sancho* the seventh, firnamed the Wise, the last King of the Masculine and direct Line of the Kings of *Navarre*; the Kingdom, after his decease, passing by the Females, or Heirs-general, to the Earls of *Champagne*, and so unto the Kings of *France*, the Houses of *Eureux*, *Foix*, *Albert*, and *Vendosme*; but never holding above three decents in any one Family. By means whereof, these Kings being barred from gaining any thing on the *Moor*s, by the interposition of the Kings of *Castile* and *Aragon*; and having no way to enlarge their Revenue or Dominions, by any undertakings or adventures at Sea, as the *Portugals* did: incorporated to their Crown as fair and large possessions in the Realm of *France*, as any of the others did in the Spanish Continent. The Principality of *Bearn*, the Earldoms of *Foix* and *Begorre*, united in the person of *Gaston* of *Foix*; as those of *Armaignac* and *Albert*, in the person of *John* Earl of *Albert*; all lying together on the other side of the *Pyrenes*; all added to this Crown by marriage with the Heirs hereof: made up a fairer and wealthier Estate than *Navarre* it self, inferior to few Provinces in the Realms of Spain. Not to say any thing

of the accession of the Country-Palatine of *Champagne*, exchanged afterwards for some Lands in the Country of *La March* in *Limousin*; or of the Earldoms of *Eureux*, and the Duchy of *Vendosme*, as lying further off, and of less importance: Nor of the great Kingdom of *France*, now herewith incorporate, as to the Person of the King, though not in the possession of this Kingdom also. With so much judgement and success did the ensuing Kings (not otherwise able to enlarge their Territories) bestow their Daughters, that the *Diffault* proved as happy to this little Kingdom, as the Sword to others. 8. *Charles*, the second of that name, and the 30 King of *Navarre*; whom I mention not for any glorious Actions achieved in his life, (for that was full enough of ignominy) but for the strangeness and hideousness of his death. He was a Prince much given to voluptuousness, and sensual pleasures, which he wasted his spirits, that in his old age he fell into a kind of *Lethargy*. To comfort his benumbed joys, he was bound and sewed up naked in a sheet, steeped in boiling *Aqua-vita*. The *Chyrurgeon* having made an end of sewing the sheet, and wanting a knife to cut off the thread, took a Wax-Candle that stood lighted by him; but the flame running down by the thread, caught hold on the sheet; which (according to the nature of *Aqua-vita*) burned with that vehemency, that the miserable King ended his days in the fire. 9. *John* of *Aragon*, the second Son of *Ferdinand* the first, in the life of his Brother *Alfonso*, was made King of *Navarre*, in right of *Blanche* his Wife, Daughter of *Charles* the third; and on the death of his Brother, King of *Aragon* also. And though his Queen died long before him, in whose right he reigned; yet he kept possession of the Kingdom till his death, (reigning fifty four years in all) notwithstanding the opposition made against him by *Charles* Prince of *Viana*, his only Son by that marriage; and their apparent of that Crown; whom he vanquished, imprisoned, and at last payoned: 10. *John*, Earl of *Albert* in *Gascogne*, King of *Navarre* in right of *Katharine* his Wife: in whose reign the Kingdom of *Navarre* was seized on by *Ferdinand* the Catholic, Son of the said *John* King of *Aragon* and *Navarre*, by a second Wife. The manner of it we shall relate with more particulars, when we have summed the whole Succession of.

The Kings of Navarre.

- | | | |
|-------|----|---|
| A. C. | 1 | <i>Garcia Ximenes</i> . 42. |
| 716 | 2 | <i>Garcia II.</i> Son of <i>Garcia Ximenes</i> . |
| 758 | 3 | <i>Fortunio</i> . 13. |
| 802 | 4 | <i>Sancho Garcia</i> , the last of the direct Line of <i>Garcia Ximenes</i> . |
| 815 | | An Inter-regnum of 4 years. |
| 844 | 6 | <i>Inigo</i> , firnamed <i>Arifla</i> , Earl of <i>Begorre</i> , the next Heir-male of the House of <i>Garcia Ximenes</i> . 23. |
| 867 | 7 | <i>Garcia III.</i> firnamed <i>Inigo</i> . 18. |
| 885 | 8 | <i>Fortunio II.</i> King of <i>Navarre</i> , and Earl of <i>Aragon</i> . 16. |
| 901 | 9 | <i>Sancho II.</i> called <i>Arbarcha</i> , Brother of <i>Fortunio</i> the second. 19. |
| 920 | 10 | <i>Garcia IV.</i> 49. |
| 950 | 11 | <i>Sancho III.</i> 24. |
| 993 | 12 | <i>Garcia V.</i> firnamed the Trembler. |
| 1000 | 13 | <i>Sancho IV.</i> firnamed the Great; of whom sufficiently before. |

- | | | |
|------|-----|---|
| 1034 | 14. | <i>Garcia IV.</i> called de <i>Nagera</i> , eldest Son of <i>Sancho</i> 20. |
| 1054 | 15. | <i>Sancho V.</i> slain by. |
| 1074 | 16. | <i>Raymir</i> , the Brother of <i>Sancho</i> the fifth; dispossessed by. |
| 1076 | 17. | <i>Sancho VI.</i> firnamed <i>Ramirez</i> , King of <i>Aragon</i> . 18. |
| 1094 | 18. | <i>Pedro</i> , King of <i>Aragon</i> . |
| 1104 | 19. | <i>Alfonso</i> , called de <i>Warrior</i> ; the last of the Kings of <i>Aragon</i> , reigning in <i>Navarre</i> . |
| 1134 | 20. | <i>Garcia VII.</i> Nephew of <i>Garcia de Nagera</i> . 16. |
| 1150 | 18. | <i>Sancho VII.</i> firnamed the Wise. |
| 1194 | 22. | <i>Sancho VIII.</i> the last of the Male-Issue of <i>Garcia Ximenes</i> . 40. |
| 1234 | 23. | <i>Theobald</i> , Earl of <i>Champagne</i> , Son of the Lady <i>Blanche</i> , Sister and Heir of <i>Sancho</i> the 8th. 19. |
| 1253 | 24. | <i>Theobald II.</i> Earl of <i>Champagne</i> . 18. |
| 1271 | 25. | <i>Henry</i> , Son of <i>Theobald</i> the second. 3. |
| 1274 | 26. | <i>Joan</i> , the Daughter of <i>Henry</i> , married to <i>Philip</i> the Fair, of <i>France</i> . 31. |
| 1305 | 27. | <i>Lewis</i> Hutin King of <i>France</i> . 10. |
| 1315 | 28. | <i>Philip</i> the Long, King of <i>France</i> . 5. |
| 1320 | 29. | <i>Charles</i> the Fair, King of <i>France</i> . 8. |
| 1328 | 28. | <i>Joan</i> II. Queen of <i>Navarre</i> , the Daughter of <i>Lewis</i> Hutin. |
| 1349 | 31. | <i>Philip II.</i> Earl of <i>Eureux</i> . |
| 1386 | 31. | <i>Charles III.</i> Son of <i>Joan</i> and <i>Philip</i> of <i>Eureux</i> . 37. |
| 1415 | 32. | <i>Charles III.</i> Earl of <i>Eureux</i> . 39. |
| 1479 | 33. | <i>John</i> , Prince of <i>Aragon</i> , after the death of his elder Brother, King of <i>Aragon</i> also; the Husband of <i>Blanche</i> , the Daughter of <i>Charles</i> the third 54. |
| 1479 | 34. | <i>Leonora</i> , Daughter of <i>John</i> and <i>Blanche</i> , the Widow of <i>Gaston</i> Earl of <i>Foix</i> ; a Queen of 15 days only. |
| 1479 | 35. | <i>Francis</i> Phibin, Grandchild of <i>Leonora</i> and <i>Gaston</i> of <i>Foix</i> ; by their Son <i>Gaston</i> , Prince of <i>Viane</i> . |
| 1483 | 36. | <i>Catharine</i> , Sister of <i>Francis</i> . |
| 1517 | 37. | <i>John</i> , Earl of <i>Albret</i> . |
| | 37. | <i>Henry II.</i> Earl of <i>Albret</i> , Son of <i>John</i> and <i>Catharine</i> . |
| 1556 | 38. | <i>Joan</i> III. Daughter of <i>Henry</i> of <i>Albret</i> . |
| | 38. | <i>Antony</i> of <i>Bombon</i> , Duke of <i>Vendosme</i> in <i>France</i> . |
| 1572 | 39. | <i>Henry III.</i> the Son of <i>Antony</i> and <i>Joan</i> , after the death of <i>Henry</i> the third of <i>France</i> , succeeded also in that Realm, by the name of <i>Henry</i> the fourth. |
| 1610 | 40. | <i>Lewis II.</i> of <i>Navarre</i> , and XIII. of <i>France</i> . |
| | 51. | <i>Lewis III.</i> of <i>Navarre</i> , and XIV. of <i>France</i> , now living; with whom remain the rights, but not the possession of this Kingdom. For in the reign of <i>Katharine</i> and <i>John</i> of <i>Albret</i> , <i>Ferdinand</i> gathered an Army under the pretence of rooting out the <i>Moor</i> s, and surprised this Kingdom, altogether unprovided, and destitute of means to make the smallest resistance, Anno 1512. The pretended reason of this surprisal, was an Excommunication laid on these Princes by the Pope, of which this King took upon him to be Executor; but the true cause was an ancient desire which this King had to possess this frontier Kingdom, it being a strong Bulwark against <i>France</i> . It happened then, that <i>Lewis</i> the 12th, having incurred the pleasure of Pope <i>Julius</i> the second, was (together with all his adherents) excommunicated, and his and their Estates given to such as could or would subdue them. The King and Queen of |

Navarre were, at this time, both *French* Subjects: he, in respect of *Albret*, his Paternal Inheritance; and she, of her Estates of *Foix* and *Bearn*: and therefore sided with the *French* King. *Ferdinand* having (as we said) levied an Army under colour of extirpating the *Moor*s, turneth upon the *French* King, and demanded of these Princes not only a free passage through their Country, but also to have certain places of strength put into his hand, for his better assurance. These unjust demands the *Navarrois* denied. Whereupon *Ferdinand* with all expedition invadeth the Kingdom, the greatest part of which he took without a blow given; the *French* King being as backward in affording due assistance, as the other was unprovided of means for defence. The *French* settled with this loss, divers times attempted the recovery of it, but in vain: for the *Spaniard* still kepteth those parts of it which lye on that side of the *Pyrenes*, leaving the rest, which lyeth on the *French* side of those Mountains (being about a sixth part of the whole) to the Descendants of those Princes whom he had dispossessed.

The chief Order of Knighthood was of the *Lily*, begun by *Garcia* the sixth; their Blazon, a Pot of *Lilies*, with the Portraiture of our Lady engraven upon it, their duty, to defend the Faith, and daily to repeat certain *Ave-Maries*.

The Arms of *Navarre*, are *Gules*, a Carbuncle nowed Or. Which Carbuncle having a resemblance unto chains of Gold, is said to have been first taken by *Sancho* the 8th, in memory that he and his Forces had first broken the Fortification made with Chains, about the Pavilion of *Mahomet* Ensign, the *Merammolin* of *Morocco*, at the great fight in *Sierra Morena*; before which time the Arms of this Kingdom had been *Azure*, a Cross *Argent*.

3. BISCAY and GUIPUSCOA.

OF these two we shall speak together, because of the similitude and resemblances which are between them, both in the Country and the People: the names being also forged from the same Original: Bounded on the West, with the Kingdom of *Leon*, on the East with the *Pyrenes*, and *Guyenne* in the Realm of *France*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Ocean; and on the South, with *Navarre* and old *Castile*. Thus named from the *Falcons*, inhabiting the neighbouring Kingdom of *Navarre*, in the time of the *Romans*: part of which people, in the year 640, or thereabouts, passed over unto the further side of the *Pyrenes*, where they took up those parts of *France*, since from them called *Casquegne*. The rest continuing in their old Seat, or spreading more into the West, towards the *Cantabrians*, gave to those parts the name of *Guipuscoa*, and *Viscaya*, (for so the *Spaniards* write and speak it) now by us called *Biscay*: their language also (which is much different from the rest of Spain) being called the *Basqueish*, more near in sound to that of the *Falcons*, the original name.

The whole Country is very Mountainous and Woody, yielding but little store of Corn, and less of Wine: the defect of the first being supplied from other Countries; of the last, by *Sider*; for which end they plant Apples here in great abundance. But from those *VVoods* they draw continually great store of Timber for the building of Ships; and from those Hills there do not only issue pleasant Rivers, (some say 150 in number) of which *Iberu* and *Duero* are said to be two; but such infinite store of Iron and Steel, that no Country yieldeth better, or in greater plenty. Called and accounted for this cause, the *Armory of Spain*; and giving occasion unto

Plainly to report, that there was in this Country a whole Mountain of Iron. *Murimã Cantabrie parte; Mons præparit alius (incredibile dictu) totu ex ea materia est.* lib. 33. cap. 45. Nor do they only furnish all Spain with Iron, which they make into Instruments of War, and others for domestic uses : but with Timber also for their shipping, with which so stored, that whole Fleets may be built and armed from this Country only.

It is divided commonly into two parts; the Eastern bordering on the *Pyrænes*, and the Realm of *France*, which is called *GUIPUSCOA*; and the VVestern, bordering on the Kingdom of *Leon*, which properly is called *BISCAT* : the Town of *Monrice* standing in the Confines of both. Both of them heretofore of the same Original, though by several means united to the Crown of *Castile* : both speak the same *Cantabrian* language, now called the *Basquish*; the people of both, being more rude and simple, than the rest of Spain; but standing much upon their Gentry, according to the custom of most mountainous and unconquered Nations. The difference is, that those of *Guipuscoa*, by reason of their traffick and commerce with other Countries, favour a little more of Christianity than the others do : in which the common *Biscains* are so far to seek, that though they have some general notions of God and CHRIST, yet very few of them are able to render an account of their Faith, in any tolerable measure. And thus a view being taken of those general notions in which both Countries are concerned; let us next look upon them in their several and distinct capacities, with reference to their chief Towns and Stories.

And first for *GUIPUSCOA*. The places of chiefest note in it are, 1. *S. Sebastian*, (*Don Bastia*, as the vulgar call it) a noted and well traded Port, at the mouth of the River *Gurumio*; beautified with a fair and capacious Haven, defended at the entrances with two strong Castles founded upon the opposite Rocks, and honoured with an Episcopal Sec. 2. *Tolosa*, (commonly called *Tolofete*) at the confluence of the Rivers *Oria* and *Duaxo*. 3. *Placencia*, on the River *Denia*, inhabited by noise but *Blacksmiths*, who do attend their Hammers with such endless diligence, that *Vulcan's* Forge may seem to be translated hither out of the Island of *Lennox*. 4. *Guetaria*, beautified with a safe and convenient Haven; defended from all *VVinds* by a little Island lying before it: the birth-place of *Sebastian del Cabo*, that famous Pilot, the first that sailed about the *VVorld*: *Magehamm* who went chief in that expedition, perishing in the Action. 5. *Fon-tarabia*, at the mouth of the River *Videla*, which divides this Country from *Guyenne* in *France*: for that cause very well fortified, and as strongly garrisoned. 6. *Remeris*, situate near a Brook abounding with most excellent Salmon. 7. *Monrice*, at the mouth of the River *Denia*; the farthest Town hereof on the edge of *Biscay*. Most of which stand upon or near the Sea, there being but few Towns of note within the Land, (though there enough of scattered Villages, as in *Biscay* also) because of the roughness of the Mountains.

As for the Fortunes and affairs of this part of the Country, after the subversion of the Kingdom of the *Goths* in Spain (for till that time they followed the same Fortunes with the rest of this Continent) it was at first a member of the Crown of *Navarre*; afterwards wrested from K. *Sancho* the sixth, by *Alfonso* the first of *Castile*, An. 1079; by whom committed to the Government of *Lopes Diaz de Haro*, Lord of *Biscay*. Restored again to the Kings of *Navarre*, upon some following Captulations: It is continued till the year 1200; when having experience of the Government of both Kingdoms, and liking better that of *Castile*, they offered

themselves to the subjection of *Alfonso* the 4th; who though so much as one blow struck, became Master of all the Country, and left it settled and confirmed unto his Successors, as it hath ever since remained.

2. For *BISCAT* next; the principal Towns thereof are, 1. *Larrabeechia*, the chief Town of this Province in elder times; in the chief Church whereof, the Kings of Spain, as Lords of *Biscay*; use to be solemnly inaugurated, here making Oath to maintain the Liberties of the Country, and receiving the Homage and Allegiance of the people of it. 2. *Berno*, an old Town also, and amply privileged; the Franchises whereof, the Kings are solemnly sworn to keep, in the Church dedicated to the honour of *S. Euphemie*. 3. *Guericia*, the third Town for antiquity in this part of these Countries. Then of a later date, we have 4. *Bilbo*, or *Bilboa*, situate some two Leagues from the Sea, but on a fair and deep Creek thereof; on the other side surrounded with Mountains: built out of the ruins of the old *Flaviobriga*, by *Diego de Haro*, Lord of *Biscay*, An. 1200; and situate the half of any Town in this Country, for plenty of *VViduels*, especially for flesh, and most excellent bread. Exceedingly enriched by making of Armour, and all sorts of *VVapours*, (their chiefest Manufacture) the *Bilbo*-blades in such request being brought from hence. Besides which trade of Arms and Iron, they deal also in *VVool*; by the vent of which Commodities they are grown so wealthy, that here are many private Merchants which build yearly three or four good Ships for their own trade only. 5. *Laredo*, a Sea Town also, with a capable Port. The landing place of *Charles* the fifth, when he had relinquished the Empire, and all his other Estates, with resolution to spend the rest of his life in Spain, in a private manner: it being observable, that he was no sooner landed, but the Admiral ship in which he came, and the greatest part of the Navy which came with him, perished in the Haven; to thew him (as it were) that there was no receding from this resolution. 6. *Portogaltre*, commodiously seated on an Arm of the Sea, which floweth up to their very houses, and serveth them exceedingly fitly for the lading and unlading of their Commodities.

The old Inhabitants of this Tract, before the coming in of the *Vascones*, were the *Cantabri*; these subdivided into the several Nations of the *Marbogi*, the *Caristi*, the *Amrigones*, the *Farduli*, and the *Cantabri* properly so called. From these descend the modern *Biscains*. An argument whereof may be their Language, different from the rest of Spain; and said by some to have continued in this Country ever since the confusion at *Babel*. And though they overthrow themselves, that go as far as *Babel* for the Pedigree and Antiquity of it: yet that it was the ancient Language of Spain, is more than probable; because this people have ever continued without any mixture of Foreign Nations, as being never thoroughly subdued either by *Romans*, *Carthaginians*, *Goths* or *Moor*s; and so they remained, as in their Liberties not mastered, so in their Language not altered. In like manner the *Arabick* continueth uncorrupt, in the hilly parts of *Granada*, the Tongue of the old *Britains*, in our *Wales*; and the ancient *Epirotick*, in the high, woody, and more mountainous parts of that Country. And though those of *Guipuscoa* speak the same Language also, yet is it with a greater mixture of other words, (by reason of their neighbourhood with *France*, and commerce with Strangers) than it is in *Biscay*; where the old natural Language, whatsoever it was, is in far more purity.

Nor do the *Biscains* differ from the rest of Spain in Language only, but in Customs also; four of which I will here

here set down as a light to the rest. First, they account themselves free from Taxes and Contributions to the Kings of Spain; yielding them obedience with their *Bodiet*, but not with their *Purses*. And when any of the *Spanish* Kings, in their *Progresses*, come to the Frontiers of this Country, he bareth one of his Legs, and in that manner entrench into it. There he is met by the Lords and Gentlemen there dwelling, who proffer him some few small Brass pieces (*Maravedies* they call them, whereof 600 go to a Crown) in a Leathern Bag, hanged at the end of a Lance: but withall they tell him, that he must not take them. Which Ceremony performed, they all attend the King in his journey. Secondly, They admit no Bishops to come amongst them; and when *Ferdinand* the *Catholic* came in *Progress* hither, accompanied, amongst others, by the Bishop of *Pampelune*, the people arose in Arms, drove back the Bishop; and gathering all the dust on which they thought he had trodden, cast it into the Sea. VVhich averrifes unto Bishops, as they first took up, in all probability, on some hard usage which they found at the hands of their Prelates; and still retain it out of a stubbornness of nature, most peculiar to them: so possible enough it is, that the want of Bishops, and of Episcopall Visitations amongst the *Biscains* is not the least cause of that ignorance and rudeness (spoken of before) which is found amongst them. Thirdly, they allow not any Priests to live in their Villages, except he bring his *Concubine* with him: conceiving it impossible for them to keep their *VVives* unto themselves, if the Curate hath not a *VVoman* of his own. Fourthly, the *VVomen*, at all meetings, do first taste of the Cup, and so dispose of it to the men: which custom they have had amongst them ever since *Ogus*, the Countess of *Castile*, attempted to have poisoned her Son *Sancho*, in a Cup of *VVine*.

But to return again to the old Inhabitants, they were a people of that courage, that they defended the liberty of their Country against the *Romans*, when the residue of Spain was subdued: and were at last, not without great effusion of blood, and manifest tokens of manly resolution, and heroic spirits on their parts, vanquished by the Darling of Fortune, *Augustus*. Such hilly and mountainous people, are always the last that are conquered, and the first that stand on their own guard: as besides those *Biscains*, the *Navarrois* and *Asturians* here in Spain, in respect of the *Moor*s; and our *Britains*, in relation to the *Saxons*. Whether it be, that living in a sharp air, and being inured to labour, they prove on occasion good and able men; or that the Forts of Nature's own building are not so easily won, as defended; or that the unpleasantness of the Country, and unfruitfulness of the Soil, yield no occasion to Strangers to desire an Adventure for it; I take not on me to determine. But being overcome at last, they were first cast into the Province of *Tarracoenste*; and so continued after the new modelling of Spain, by the Emperor *Constantine*. Under the *Romans* they continued, till that Empire fell; and then not conquered by the *Goths*, but resigned over to them by the *Romans*, with the rest of that Province. Nor lost they any thing of their ancient and natural courage, by the intermixture of the *Vascons*; continuing till good Souldiers both for Sea and Land; a stubborn, fierce, and courageous people; impatient of servitude, and not easy to be forced to any thing which they like not of. The last of all the *Spaniards* that submitted to the fury of the *Moor*s, (excepting those of the *Asturia*s, never conquered by them) and one of the first Provinces which shook off that yoke: animated and conducted in that undertaking, by *Soria*, defended of the Blood-Royal of *Scot-*

land, Anno 870. made upon that good service, the first Lord of *Biscay*. After this, they continued a free and distinct Estate, under their own Proprietary Lords and Princes of the Noble Family of *Haro*; till that *Nero* of Spain, *Don Pedro* the Cruel, violently took it from *Donna Jeanne*, the right Heir of it, Anno 1358. From which *Donna Jeanne*, the eldest Daughter, married to *Ferdinand* the younger Son of *Ferdinand de la Cerde*, the right heir of *Castile*, issued the Lady *Jeanne Manuel*, the Wife of *Henry* the second, and Mother of *John* the first, both King of *Castile*: by which last, this Country was united to that Crown for ever, Anno 1379. The names of the Proprietary Lords of this Estate, we have in this following Catalogue of

The Lords of *Biscay*.

A. Chr.

- 870 1. *Soria*, the Son of *Lopes* of *Biscay*, but Nephew by the Mother's side to a King of *Scotland*, the first Lord of *Biscay*.
2. *Manfo Lopez*, the Son of *Soria*.
3. *Inigo* the Deaf, Son of *Manfo Lopez*.
4. *Lopes Diaz*, the Son of *Inigo*.
5. *Sancho Lopez*, the Son of *Lopes Diaz*.
6. *Inigo* II. the base Son of *Lopes Diaz*; the two Sons of *Sancho Lopez*, by reason of their tender years, being left aside.
7. *Lopes Diaz* II. Son of *Inigo* the second.
8. *Diego Lopez*, surnamed the *White*, Son of *Lopes Diaz* the second.
9. *Lopes Diaz* III. Son of *Diego Lopez*; the first who took unto himself the surname of *Haro*, from a Town of that name, of his foundation.
10. *Diego Lopez Diaz de Haro*, Son of *Lopes Diaz* the third.
11. *Lopes Diaz* IV. Son of *Diego Lopez Diaz de Haro*.
- 1257 12. *Diego Lopez Diaz* II. assisted *Sancho* the second Son of King *Alfonso* the fifth of *Castile*, in excluding the Children of *Don Ferdinand de la Cerde*, his elder Brother; by which *Sancho* he was after slain. A reward not unfavourable to his bold attempt.
- 1289 13. *Diego Lopez de Haro*, the Son of *Diego*.
- 1290 14. *Diego Lopez* III. the Brother of *Diego Lopez Diaz* the second, the Founder of the Town of *Bilboa*.
- 1309 15. *John* of *Castile*, Brother to King *Sancho*, and Husband of *Mary Diaz de Haro*, Daughter of *Diego Lopez* the second.
- 1319 16. *John* the Blind; so called, because he had lost an Eye; Son of *John* of *Castile*, and *Mary Diaz de Haro*; slain by King *Alfonso*.
- 1329 17. *John Nunges* of *Lara*, in right of his *VVife*, Daughter and Heir of *John* the Blind, (whose name I find not) succeeded after the decease of *Donna Maria Diaz*.
- 1350 18. *Nugno de Lara*, an Infant of two years old, succeeded *John Nunges* of *Lara*, his Father.
- 1351 15. *Jeon* and *Isabel*, the Sisters and Heirs of *Nugno de Lara*, seized upon by *Don Pedro*; and the whole Signery of *Biscay* subjected by strong hand to the Crown of *Castile*, with many other fair Estates which depended on it.

The Arms of these Lords of *Biscay*, were *Argent*, two *VVolves Sable*, each of them in his mouth a Lamb of the second.

4. LEON and OVIEDO

THE Kingdom of LEON and OVIEDO, hath on the East, the Country of Biscay: on the North, the main Cantabrian Ocean: on the South, Castile: on the West, Galicia. So called from *León* and *Oviedo*, the chief Cities of it, and first Seat of their Kings; the ancientest Kingdom in all Spain. By a more ancient name it was called *Asturia*, from the *Astures*; who possessed it in the time of the Romans: divided into the two general names of *Augustani*, and *Transmontani*; but comprehending the particular Tribes or Nations of the *Pesici*, *Gigari*, *Zoela*, and *Lancienfes*.

The Country mountainous and woody, but formerly of some esteem for those small, though swift Horses, which the Romans (from hence) called *Asturcones*; we may read it, *Hobbies*; which afterwards became a common name for all Nags or Geldings: *Asturo Macedonius*, being used for a Macedonian Nag, by *Petronius Arbitr*.

It is divided commonly into two parts; that is to say, 1. *Asturia de Oviedo*, bordering on Galicia, towards the West: and 2. *Asturia Santillana*, confining on Biscay, towards the East. From which division of the Country, the eldest Son of Castile is called Prince of the *Asturias* in the plural number; which title some suppose to be given unto them, because it was the first Country which held up against the Moors. But indeed, the true Original hereof, is referred by the best Spanish Writers, to the time of the marriage of *Catharine*, Daughter of *John of Ganne*, and in right of her Mother *Constance*, the right Heir of Castile, unto *Henry Son of John the first*, then in possession of that Kingdom. For to this new married Couple it was granted, saith *Mariana*, that after the manner of England, where the Heir apparent is called Prince of Wales, they should be called Princes of the *Asturias*. Intimes succeeding, the Towns of *Jaca*, *Ubeda*, *Biata*, or *Bacca*, and *Andajar*, all situate near together in *Andalusia*, and each of them invested with a goodly Territory, were added to the Patrimony and Estate hereof; and so continue to this day.

Places of most importance in, 1. *Sublance*, now a small Village, but once a Town of so great strength, that it was destroyed by the command of the Emperor *Nervus*, lest it might animate these Mountainers unto a revolt, 2. *LEON*, situate at the foot of the Mountain, not far from the place of the old *Sublance*, (as it was then called.) The Town but mean, were it not beautified by a fair and large Cathedral; the Bishop whereof acknowledged not *Metropolitan* but the Pope alone. Recovered from the Moors, An. 722. Afterwards made the Regal Seat of the Kings of Leon: by some called *Legio*, because the seventh Legion was here lodged: by *Prothomy* called *Legio Germanica*; and by others, *Gemina*. 3. *S. Andrea*, so named from a Church there built to the honour of *S. Andrew*; by *Prothomy* called *Flavianovie*; now a welltraded Port on the Cantabrian Ocean. 4. *Santillana*, which gives name to the Eastern part of *Asturia*. 5. *Llanes*, where the two *Asturias* meet together, 6. *Ciudad Real*, in the Western part of *Asturia*, called *Asturia de Oviedo*, 7. *Villa Viciosa*, the only noted Port in this part of the Country. 8. *Avila*, on the borders of Galicia, near the Sea, and not far from the Promontory called of old *Promontorium Sybeticum*, but now *Cabo de Pium*. 9. *OVIEDO*, called for a time, the City of Bi-

shops, because many of the Bishops of Spain, dispossessed of their Churches by the Moors, had retired thither; and there preserved the line of Episcopal Succession, till their Sees were filled again with Bishops in more happy times. Anciently it was called *Lucus Asturum*, and was of old a Bishops See; re-edified by King *Froila* the first, in the year 757. Famous enough in giving the Title of a Kingdom to the first Christian Princes, after the Conquest by the Moors; called from hence, Kings of *Oviedo*. Afterwards, An. 896, in the time of *K. Ordoño* the first, they began to be stiled Kings of *Oviedo* and *Leon*; and at last, Kings of *Leon* only; *Oviedo* being quite left out of the Regal stile, by *Raymír* the second, Anno 940. More towards the Islands of this kingdom, (now reckoned part of old Castile) are 10. *Palencia*, the *Palencia* of *Prothomy* and *Amonimus*, seated on the River *Carion*, once a small University, till the translation of it unto *Salamanca*, by King *Ferdinand* the third. This Town first felt the fury of the *Suevians*, when they mastered these parts of Spain. 11. *Astorga*, anciently called *Augusta Asturica*, when the *Astures* of this Tract were called *Augustani*; a Bishops See, fronting on Galicia: happy in this, that it felt not the fury of the lustful king *Vitiza*; who to secure himself in his unlawful pleasures, and to weaken his subjects if they should attempt any thing against him, dismantled all the Towns in his Dominions, except *Leon*, *Toledo*, and this *Astorga*. 12. *Benevent*, on the South-east of *Astorga*, which gave the title of Duke to *Frederick* the base Son of king *Henry* the 2d, of Castile, the stem of the potent Family of Spain, for the times they lived in. 13. *Toro*, the most Southern Town of all this kingdom: and for that cause well fortified against the encroachments of the *Castilians*, till the uniting of the kingdoms: made afterwards, (as lying nearest to Castile, and the Court of the king) the ordinary place of conference with the States of Leon.

Who were the old Inhabitants of this Country, hath been shewn already. When conquered by *Augustus Caesar*, they were made part of the province of *Larracensis*; part, afterwards, of the Province of Galicia, by the Emperor *Constantine*. Won from the Romans by the Goths; and from them, by the Moors; though long they did not lie under their command. For as the lust of *Roderick*, the king of the Goths in Spain, occasioned the coming in of the Moors; so the lust of *Magnus*, a Moorish Vice-Roy occasioned (though in long course of time) their expulsion thence. For *Magnus* having employed *Pelagius*, a young Prince of the *Asturias*, on an Embassy to *Alfons* the Lieutenant General of the Moors, then residing at *Corduba*, in his absence ravished his Sister, and at his return died by the edge of his Sword. Despairing of pardon for his act, he was fain to stand upon his guard, and fortify himself in the Mountainous places of this Country; to which many of the old Inhabitants resorted, put themselves under his command, and elected him to be their King: first by the name of king of the *Asturias*; and after by the title of king of *Leon*, when he had got that City into his hands; as being the City of most note, and the strongest Hold that he was possessed of. The kingdom at the first beginning, contained only the more mountainous parts of the two *Asturias*; enlarged a little further South, on the taking of *Leon* by this first *Pelagius*. Afterwards, by the valour of *Ordoño* the second, it extended over both *Asturias*'s, Galicia, and the Old Castile: divided from the Moors by the Mountains of *Avila*, and *Segovia*; but more defended by the valour of the people, and Gallantry of their Princes, than it was by those Mountains. Kings of most note; besides the two before remembred, were 1. *Mairegate*, the base Son

of *Alfonso* the first; who having by the help of *Abderamen*, King of the Moors, obtained the Kingdom, came to a base agreement with them; in which he bound himself to pay them, as an yearly Tribute, 50 Virgins of Noble Families, and as many of inferior birth: for which he died hated and detested of all men. 2. *Raymír* the first, who so discomfited the Moors at the Battle of *Clavijo*, near *Calahorra*, in *Navarre*, An. 836, that from that time the Power and reputation of the Kings of *Corduba* began to languish. 3. *Alfonso* the third, who refused to pay unto the Moors the said tribute of Virgins; and for his many Victories against the Moors, was named, The Great: who being outed of the Kingdom by his Son *Garcia*, not only patiently digested to great a wrong, but willingly became his Son's Lieutenant against the Moors. 4. *Veramund* the second, chosen King in the minority of *Raymír* the third; in whose time the Moors took *Leon*, and spoiled the Church of *S. James* in *Galitia*; but were after beaten to their homes with the loss of many of their own places. 5. *Veramund* the third, who making War against *Ferdinand* the first, King of Castile, was by him slain in Battle; the Conqueror seizing on his kingdom in right of *Sancho* his Wife, the Sister of *Veramund*; the three Kings next succeeding, being Kings of both. 6. *Ferdinand* the third, Son of *Alfonso* the 9th. and of *Berengaria*, the younger Sister of *Henry* King of Castile; by the Power and Policy of his Mother, seized on the Castiles, of right belonging to *Blanch* the elder Sister, Wife of *Lewis*, Son to *Philip* the second, King of France; and after the death of his Father, succeeded in *Leon*. Of whom we shall hear more when we come to Castile. After this time, these kingdoms never were divided, but incorporate into one Estate, called for a long time the Kingdom of Castile and Leon: though afterwards *Leon* was left out of the Regal style, and only that of Castile mentioned; except in Legal Instruments, Letters Patents, and Instruments of Negotiation with Foreign Princes. The whole succession of these Kings, the Histories of Spain thus present unto us.

The Kings of Oviedo and Leon.

A. CH.

- 716 1. *Pelagius*, of whom sufficiently before. 20.
- 736 2. *Fajila*, the Son of *Pelagius*. 2.
- 738 3. *Alfonso*, for his Piety named the Catholic, the Son in law of *Pelagius*, by his Daughter *Ormiñde*.
- 756 4. *Phrulla*, the Son of *Alfonso* the Catholic, the Founder, or Repairer rather, of *Oviedo*.
- 768 5. *Aurelius*, the Brother of *Phrulla*. 6.
- 774 6. *Sillo*, the Son in law of *Alfonso* the Catholic, by his Daughter *Odeñide*. 9.
- 783 7. *Mauzeate*, an Utriper, the bastard Son of *Alfonso*. 6.
- 789 8. *Veramund*, Son to *Froilla*. 6.
- 795 9. *Alfonso* II. named the Chaste, the Brother of *Veramund*. 29.
- 824 10. *Raymír* the Son of *Veramund*. 6.
- 830 11. *Ordoño*, Son to *Raymír*. 10.
- 840 12. *Alfonso* III. named the Great, the Son of *Ordoño*. 46.
- 886 13. *Garcia*, Son to *Alfonso* the third. 3.
- 889 14. *Ordoño* II. King of Galicia, the Brother of *Garcia*.
- 897 15. *Phrulla* II. Brother of *Ordoño*. 1.
- 898 16. *Alfonso* IV. Son of *Ordoño*. 6.
- 904 17. *Raymír* II. Brother of *Alfonso*. 19.

- 923 18. *Ordoño* III. Son of *Raymír*. 5.
- 928 19. *Sancho*, surnamed the Great, Brother of *Ordoño* the third. 12.
- 940 20. *Raymír* III. Son of *Sancho*. 17.
- 957 21. *Veramund* II. Brother of *Sancho*. 24.
- 981 22. *Alfonso* V. Son of *Veramund*. 46.
- 1027 23. *Veramund* III. Son of *Alfonso*. 9.
- 1036 24. {*Sancho*, Sister of *Veramund*. } 30.
 Ferdinand, king of Castile.
- 1066 25. *Alfonso* VI. the youngest Son of *Ferdinand* and *Sancho*: first King of *Leon* only; but after the death of *Sancho* elder Brother, he succeeded also in Castile. 41.
- 1107 26. {*Urraca*, the Daughter of *Alfonso*. }
 Alfonso VII. king of *Arragon* and *Navarre*. 13.
- 1120 27. *Alfonso* VIII. the Son of *Urraca*, by *Raymond* of *Burgundy*, succeeded in *Leon* and Castile. 35.
- 1155 28. *Ferdinand* II. younger Son of *Alfonso*, King of *Leon* only. 31.
- 1186 29. *Alfonso* IX. Son of *Ferdinand*. 42.
- 1228 30. *Ferdinand* III. Son of *Alfonso*, by *Berengaria*, or *Berenguela*, Sister of *Henry* of Castile, by the power and practices of his Mother, succeeded in the Realm of Castile, whilst his Father lived, An. 1217. to the prejudice of *Blanch* her elder Sister, married to *Lewis* the eighth of France; by whom she had *Lewis* the ninth, and other children. Which *Lewis* the ninth, on the marriage of *Blanch* his eldest Daughter, with *Ferdinand* eldest Son of *Alfonso* the fifth, surrendered all rights in the Crown of Castile, and so confirmed the same more absolutely to the house of *Leon*, Anno 1257; though neither this *Ferdinand*, nor *Blanch*, nor any of their Heirs, did attain that Kingdom, disfeized thereof by *Sancho* a younger son. The kingdoms never since that time disjoined, as they had been twice before since the first uniting.

The Arms of these kingdoms are *Argent*, a Lyon *Pasant*, crowned *Or*. Which Arms when it was joined to the kingdom of Castile, were quartered with the Coat thereof: that being the first time (as Camden notes) that ever Arms were born Quartered. Followed herein by *Edward* the third of England, who not only took unto himself the title of King of France, but (to shew his right unto that Crown) quartered the Flower de Lyces with his English Lions.

5. GALLICIA.

GALLICIA, or GALLESIA, is bounded on the East with the *Asturias*, from which parted by the River *Meuro*; on the South with *Portugal*, from which divided by the River *Mio*; on the North with the *Cantabrian*; and on the West with the *Atlantic* Oceans. The ancient Inhabitants of it, were the *Gallaeci*, (whence it had the name (distinguished into the several Tribes of the *Bedij*, *Sueri*, *Cilmi*, *Capori*, and *Lemavi*, spoken of by *Prothomy*).

The Country, like that of the *Asturias*, mountainous, and almost inaccessible, overpeered with the *Cantabrian* Hills; and so the fitter to hold out against Foreign Invasions, in defence of Liberty and Religion: in that regard chosen for a retiring place by the distressed and vanquished *Christians*, in their first Wars against the Moors: Not well inhabited to this day; not so much for

for the hilliness of the Country, as for want of Water; which defect makes the people generally draw more towards the Sea, where they improve their Fortunes by trade and fishing: The barrenness of the Country recompensed heretofore by the rich Mines of gold and silver, which in this Country, and the *Asturians*, and some part of *Lusitania*, afforded yearly 20000 pound weight of gold unto the *Romans*, amounting in our money to two millions of Crowns: but now no such Mines found in it of any value. Instead of which, it yieldeth the best Mines for Iron, of any Province of *Spain*; for which their Waters are so proper, that they are faind to fortifie and improve the metal.

Places of principal importance, are 1. *Compostella*, an University and Arch-Bishops See, vulgarly called *St. Jago*, in honour of *St. James*, the Son of *Zacharias*, whom they pretend to be buried here, and of whom there is denominated an Order of Knights: his Reliques faind to be kept in the chief Church of it, worshipped by the *Romans* with great devotion: and drawing to this place a wonderful concourse of people, coming thither on pilgrimage. 2. *Baiona*, not far from the mouth of the River *Mina*. 3. *Covunna*, by *Pliny* called *Flaviun Brigantium*; by us English the *Groy*: often mentioned in the story of our Wars with the *Spaniards*, in Queen *Elizabeth's* time: then taken by the English: but since, very well fortified to avoid the like surprisall. Divided then, as now, into the *High Town*, and the *Low*, situate on the *Canabrian* Sea, betwixt the Promontory *Trilennum*, now *Cabo Ortoal*, lying towards the East; and that of old called *Nerium*, now *Cabo Finis Terræ*, as being the most Western end of the then known World. 4. *Orense*, upon the *Mina*, a Bishops-See, by *Pliny* called *Auga Calida*, from the *Bathes* here being, now much commended for the best Wines. 5. *Xis*, on the River, fronting upon *Portugal*: a Bishops See, in ancient Writers called *Tude*. 6. *Pontevedre*, 7. *Ribadeo*: both upon the Sea, both fitted with convenient Harbours.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, as before is said, were the *Gallaici*, one of the last Nations which submitted to the Power of the *Romans*: by whom first made a part of *Tarraconensis*; after a Province of it self, by the name of *Gallicia*; the *Asturias*, and some part of the old *Castile* and *Portugal*, being added to it. In the declining of that Empire, the *Suevi*, a potent Nation of *Germany*, accompanying the *Vandals* and *Alani* in their transigrations, invaded *Spain*, and first possessed themselves of this Country. But not content with their Estate, they warred on the *Silinges*, (a *Vandal*-Tribe) then possessing *Baetica*, whom they vanquished, and took that Province from them, under the conduct of *Rechila* their second King. They added, shortly after, *Lusitania*, to their former Conquests: stopped in their career, by *Theoderick* the second, King of the *Goths*: by whom vanquished, and confined again within *Gallicia*, which they enjoyed till the final ruine of their Kingdom by *Leutigild* the *Goth*, Anno 858: reduced then to a Province of the *Gothish* Kingdom. Their habitation before their coming into *Spain*, was in the Eastern part of *Germany*, beyond the *Elb*. Their Religion at the first, under *Recciarus* their third King, was very *Orthodox*, and found. But vanquished by the *Goths*, and obliged unto them for the restoring of their Kingdom, they fell off to *Arianism*: persisting in that *Heresie* for the space of an hundred years, and then again returning to the *Catholic* Faith, under *Theodoric* their King: therein continuing constant till their final overthrow. The Kings hereof (as many as are upon Record) are these that follow.

The Kings of the *Suevi* in *Gallicia*.

1. *Hermenericus*; who first brought the *Suevi* into *Spain*, and possessed *Gallicia*, *Arcadius* and *Homarius*, then Emperors of the East and West.
2. *Rhechila*, who conquered the *Silinges*, and subdued *Baetica*.
3. *Recciarus*, the first Christian King who won *Lusitania*; afterwards vanquished and slain by *Theoderick*, King of the *Goths*; the *Suevi* for a time becoming subject to that King.
4. *Masdras*, restored unto the Kingdom by *Theoderick*.
5. *Frumarus*, the Son of *Masdras*.
6. *Remismundus*, brother of *Frumarius*, recovered some part of *Lusitania*, and fell off to *Arianism*.
7. *Theodemirus*, the Restorer of the *Catholic* Faith amongst the *Suevi*.
8. *Ariamirus*, Son to *Theodemirus*.
9. *Eboricus*, the Son of *Ariamirus*, deposed and slain *Atanag* by *Andeca*.
10. *Andeca*, the last King of the *Suevi* in *Gallicia*, or rather the usurper of the Regal Title, served in the same kind by *Leutigild*, King of the *Goths*, as he had served *Eboricus* his Lord and Master. After which time, *Gallicia* was made a Province of the *Gothish* Monarchy, and the name of *Suevi* no more heard of in *Spain*. In times ensuing, it became a part of the Kingdom of *Leon*, by the Kings whereof it was won piece-meal from the *Moors*, as their fortunes favoured them. Erected to a Kingdom by *Alfonso* the third, firnamed the Great, Anno 886; and given unto *Ordago* his second Son: by whose succession to the Crown on the death of his elder brother *Garcia*, it was again united to the Kingdom of *Leon*; but so as to continue a Realm distinct. In the year 955, the *Gallaici* not brooking the ill qualities of *Raymir* the third, elected *Vernand* for their King, the son of *Ordago* the third, and right Heir of the Kingdom: who, coming to the Crown of *Leon* on the death of *Raymir*, did once again unite it unto that Estate. Disincumbered from it once more by *Ferdinand* the first King of *Castile* and *Leon*, who gave it unto *Garcia* his youngest Son, Anno 1067; but conquered shortly after by *Sancho* the eldest Son of *Ferdinand*; by whom *Garcia* was discomfited and imprisoned, Anno 1081. Never since separated from the Crown of *Castile* and *Leon*: but when *Leon* was severed from *Castile*; going along with *Leon* in those separations till the union of those Kingdoms in the person of *Ferdinand* the second, Anno 1230; the *Castilians* being then grown better Statesmen, than to canon Kingdoms.

The Arms hereof were *Azure*, semee of Croissants *Pasche* a Chalice crowned Or.

6. The Kingdom of Corduba,

HAVING thus surveyed those Provinces under the Government of *Castile*, which lye at the foot of the *Pyrenees*, and on the shores of the Northern or *Canabrian* Ocean; we will next look on those which lye more towards the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and the *Mediterranean*, and so come round at last to *Castile* it self. And first, we will begin with the Kingdom of *COR-*

DUBA, which at first erection of it, contained all those parts of *Spain* conquered by the *Moors*, and not again recovered by the King of *Leon* and *Navarre*: contracted within narrower bounds, when subdued by the King of *Castile*; at that time comprehending only the Provinces of *Andalusia*, *Extremadura*, *Granada*, and the Ille of *Gader*. We will consider it, notwithstanding, in both capacities: in the first and largest notion, as unto the story and affairs thereof, till distracted by the *Moors*, into many Kingdoms: in the last and strictest, as to the *Geography*, and description of it.

The Kingdom of *Corduba*, as it stood when subdued by the *Spaniards*, was bounded on the East with *Murcia*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the West with *Portugal*, and the Ocean; on the North with the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*, and *Castile*; and on the South with the Ocean, the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and the Midland Seas: so called from *Corduba*, the chief City of it, and the Seat-Royal of their Kings.

It contained, as before was said, the Provinces of 1. *Andalusia*, 2. *Gades*, 3. *Extremadura*, and 4. *Granada*. But because *Granada* had the fortune to continue a Kingdom, when the rest were conquered, we will consider it by it self; and here proceed to the description of the other three.

1. *Andalusia* is bounded on the East with *Granada*; on the West with the *Atlantic* Ocean, and *Algarve* in *Portugal*: on the North, with *Sierra Morena*, and *Extremadura*: on the South, with the Ocean, the Straights, and the *Mediterranean*. By *Pliny* it is called *Conventus Cordubensis*, from *Corduba*, at that time the chief City of it: and after, *Andalusia*, quasi *Vandalusia*, from the *Vandals*; who having won it from the *Romans*, had for some time (and till their expulsion into *Africa*) possessed themselves of it.

This is the most rich and fertile Country of all *Spain*; extremely fruitful of Wine, Oyl, Oranges, (which last being shipped at *Sevil*, and so brought for *England*, are by us called by the name of *Sevil* Oranges) and better furnished with Corn than most part of this Continent; watered with the Rivers, 1. *Andu*, 2. *Odier*, 3. *Baia*, and 4. *Tenot*: which makes it flourish with a continual greenness of Olives, Vines, and other Fruits; of which the Hills, though watered only with the dew of Heaven, do partake also in reasonable measure. The Air hereof, by reason of its Southerly situation, is exceeding hot, inasmuch that their Corn there is ripe in *April*: but those excessive heats much moderated by those constant refreshings which the cool winds, breathing from the North, do bestow upon it. In which respect King *Ferdinand* the *Catholic*, did use to say, that it was best living in the Summer at *Sevil*, (one of the chief Cities of this Province) by reason of these cool refreshings and in the winter-time at *Burgos* in old *Castile*, which though situate more Northerly, in a very sharp Air, had yet many notable defences against the cold.

The principal Cities and Towns hereof, are 1. *Corduba*, seated at the foot of *Sierra Morena*, on the left shore of *Guadalquivir*, overlooking towards the South, a spacious and fruitful plain. First founded by *Murellus* a *Roman* Consul, An. V. C. 601; employed at that time in the Wars of *Spain*: the first Colony planted in this Province by the *Romans*, and the Chief City of *Baetica*. For a long time the Seat of the *Moorish* Vice-Roy, Lieutenant to the great Caliph of the *Saracens*; after, of its own Kings of that Nation, who built here for their Palace, a magnificent Castle. Reduced by *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, it was restored unto the honour of an Episcopal See; which anciently it had, and doth now enjoy. A City of great circuit, but of very few Houses, by rea-

son of the multitude of Gardens in it. Famous in former times for the birth of *Lucan*, and both the *Seneca's*.

*Duosque Senecas, unicumque Lucanum,
Fecunda lequitur Corduba*: such *Marialis*.

Corduba glorying in her fruitful field,
One *Lucan* and two *Seneca's* did yield.

Nor was it less fruitful of good wits in the times succeeding. For not to say any thing of *Hesius* that renowned Confessor, who was Bishop here in the times of *Constantine*, and before: it was a flourishing University in the time of the *Moors*: *Avicen*, *Averroes*, *Rhazes*, *Almasfor*, *Messalabas*, those famous Philosophers and Physicians, being Students or Professors in it. It is now vulgarly called *Cordova*; and hence cometh our true *Cordovan* Leather, made of the Skin of a *Sardinian* Beast. Near unto this City, is a Wood of 30 miles in length, having nothing but Olive-trees. 2. *Jacen*, a Bishops See, remarkable for nothing more, than that the Kings of *Spain*, ever since the first recovery of it, have filled themselves Kings of *Jacen*, and use it to this day amongst the rest of their Titles: it having been, before that time, the seat and title of some petty Kings amongst the *Moors* Not far from hence stood the famous Town of *Illurguis*, (by *Pliny*, *Ilurgis*) mentioned so often in the War betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. 3. *Osuna*, of most note for the Dukes hereof, and a small University founded here, Anno 1549. 4. *Ecija*, on the River *Cieci*, of more esteem formerly, than at the present: by *Pliny* and *Antoninus* called *Astigi*; by *Pliny*, *Augusta Firma*; a *Roman* Colony, and one of the four *Jurisdical* Reports of *Baetica*. 5. *Marchena*, situate on a Hill, where is said to be the best breed of *Gemets*, (a swift race of Horses) not of this Province alone, but of all *Spain*; the River *Baia* (as it was thought) conveying some secret virtue unto them. Of this Race was the Horse which *Cæsar* so loved, that he erected his Statue (when dead) in the Temple of *Venus*: and the ancient *Lusitani* thought they were begotten by the Wind. 6. *Xerez*, situate more within the Mid-lands, towards the borders of *Granada*, and therefore called *Xerez de la Frontera*, (the *Asia* of *Pliny* and *Strabo*) famous for the plenty of that Wine which we call *Xerez-Sack*: but more for that great and fatal Battle fought near unto it, betwixt King *Roderick* and the *Moors*; the loss of which, drew along with it the loss of *Spain*. 7. *Medina Sidonia*, so called to distinguish it from a Town of *Castile*, called *Medina Celi*: the Duke whereof was General of all the Forces both by Sea and Land, intended for the Conquest of *England*, Anno 1588. The Town called anciently *Astinda*, and *Astido Caesariana*; the Duke whereof is of the Family of the *Guzmans*, and the greatest Prince, for Revenue in all *Spain*; his Intrado being estimated at 130000 Crowns per annum. 8. *Algeizre*, on the *Seaside*; a Town of such strength and consequence, that it held out a siege 19 months, for the *Moors* of *Africa*, against *Alfonso* the fifth of *Castile*; to whom surrendered at the last upon Composition, Anno 1343. Since which, the Kings of *Castile* have filled themselves Kings of *Algeizre*; not yet discomfited. 9. *Cadix*, a Town on the Seacoasts, beyond the Ille of *Gader*, part of the Patrimony of the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*. 10. *Gibraltar*, a strong Town, seated at the mouth of the Straights from hence denominated, lying at the foot of the Mountain of *Calpe*, supposed to be one of *Hercules* Pillars; the furthest point Southwards of all Europe. 11. *St. Lucar de Barrameda*, (the *Luciferi* forum of the Ancients) the Port.

Port-Town to *Seville*, situate at the mouth of the River *Baís*, or *Guadalquivir*: where the Ships of that rich City ride, either for a fair wind to put to Sea, or for a tide to carry them up the River, as they come from *América*, 12. *Tariffa*, situated at the end of the Promontory which looks towards *Africk*; and so called, because *Tariff*, Leader of the *Moor* into Spain, here landed: recovered from the *Moor* by *Sancho* the third of *Castile*, Anno 1292, or thereabouts: the first Governor thereof being *Alonso Páez de Guzmán*, the first Founder of the now potent Family of *Medina Sidonia*. Supported by some to be the *Carteia* of the Ancients. And if so, then a Colony of the *Liberitines* (begotten on some unmarried Spanish Women, by the Roman Souldiers) placed here, and indulged the Privileges of the *Latins*, by Decree of the Senate, An. P. C. 600. Not far from these last Towns, in a little Island made by two branches of the *Baís*, where it falleth into the Sea, stood the famous 13. *Tariffus*, celebrated in most ancient *VVriters*, for the abundance of Silver which the Mines of it did produce. Which was so great, that as we read in *Aristotle* 1. book de *Mirabilibus* when the *Tyrians* or *Phoenicians* first came thither, *ἡς πικρὴ ἔργον ὡσαύτως, ἡντιν ἐπιβλάσθαι οὐ δύναται*, that their Ships were neither able to contain or transport it thence: inasmuch that they were fain to make their Anchors, and other Utensils, of Silver. The like commodity the *Grecians* found in their Voyages hither, of which *Herodotus* maketh mention, Lib. IV. Hereupon some have been perfwaded, that the ships which *Solomon* built to go for *Tariffus*, (whereof we read 1 Kings 10.22.) were bound no further than this place. As for the situation of it, that it was neither *Tariff*, as some, or *Carteia*, as others do conjecture, (though where *Carteia* was, beallike uncertain, if it were not the fame with *Tariff*) but in a small Island, at the mouth of the River *Baís*, as before is said, doth appear by *Strabo*; who telleth us, that *Baís* falls into the Sea with two mouths or channels, *ἡντιν ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ ὡσαύτως, ἡντιν ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ ὡσαύτως, ἡντιν ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ ὡσαύτως*, &c. and that in the midst thereof there is a City called *Tariffus*, of the fame name with the River, (for *Baís* antiently was so named) from whence the whole Country thereabouts is called *Tariffus*. The like *Pausanias* saith expressly in his *Eliaica*. VVhich situation of this Town in an Island, at the mouth of *Baís*, occasioned *Pliny*, and some others of the antient *VVriters*, to give the name of *Tariffus* to the Isle of *Gades*; whereof more anon.

In the mean time go we on to 14. *Sevil*, (in *Latin*, *Hispalis*) the fairest City, not only of *Andalusia*, but of all Spain. It is in compass 75 miles, divided into two parts by the *Baís*; but joined together by a strong and beautiful Bridge; the whole environed with beautiful *VValls*, and adorned with many magnificent and stately Buildings, as Palaces, Churches, and Monasteries; amongst which is that of the *Gerrifins*, or *Carthaginians*, is endowed with 25000 Crowns of yearly Revenue. It is also the See of an Arch-bishop, under whose Jurisdiction are said to be 20000 Villages; and a most flourishing University, wherein studied Avicenna the *Moor*, that excellent and learned Scholar: Pope *Sylvester* the second, and *Leander*, who was Arch-bishop hereof, about the year 580; a stout defender of the Catholick tendries of the Church against the *Arians*. The University adorned with one of the greatest and goodliest Libraries in the Christian World; furnished by *Diego*, the Son of *Christopher Columbus*, the first Founder of it, with no fewer than 12000 Volumes, in several Languages, gathered together with extraordinary charge and care, and endowed with a very fair Revenue for the maintenance and enlargement of it. Famous in former times, for two

Provincial Councils holden here; the first, Anno 584; the last, Anno 636; and at the present, for that here are continually maintained 30000 *Gennets* for the service of the King; but most of all, for the great traffick of the place. For from this Town the *Carthagini* sent forthwards towards *América*; and here they do discharge the Fleets of Gold and Silver, which they bring thence. To this Town come the Pearls of *Cubagua*, and the Emeralds of *S. Martha*, the Cochineils of *Mexico*, the Corals of *Hispánola*, and in a word, the whole treasure of the *New-found-World*. Here is the publick Emporie of all Spain, for her *VVines*, Oranges, and Oyls; sent from hence in so great abundance into all parts of *Europe*, that the people use to say in a word by a *By-word*, That if there enter not into *Sevil* 4000 Pipes of Wine every day in the year, the Farmer of the *Cistons* is sure to break; inasmuch as the Revenues coming out of this City only, are worth a very good Realm to the *Carthick* King: *Maginus* reckoning it at no less than a Million of Crowns yearly. Lastly here resteth the body of *Christopher Columbus*, the fortunate discoverer of the *New World*, with a *Latin* Epitaph upon his Tomb; but short (God knoweth) of the great merit of the Man: of which more hereafter.

As for the Fortunes of this City, as they relate to Ecclesiastical or Spiritual matters, it hath been next the See of an Arch-bishop, (as before is said) next in revenue and degree unto him of *Toledo*; his revenue estimated at 100000 Crowns per annum; his Jurisdiction reaching over all *Andalusia*, and the *Fortunate Islands*; in which are said to be contained 20000 Villages; the very Dioceses of which, being said to comprehend 2000 Benefices, besides *Frieries*, *Nunneries*, and *Hospitals*; which may make the former computation of the Villages, subject to his Power, as a *Metropolitan*, of more esteeme. Yet not so much considerable for its Wealth and Revenue, as for being once the See of *Isidore*, so much renowned (considering the time he lived in) for the universality of his learning; who was a Bishop here, called usually *Isidore Hispaniensis*, to distinguish him from another of that name in *Egypt*, called *Pelusiata*. As for the civil Fortunes of it, in the declining of the *Moor*, when their Estate was broken into many Realms and Principalities, it became a Kingdom of it self under a noble *Moor* named *Alcorax*, An. 966. One of the Kings whereof called *Almunnu*, was of so great power, that he had the Regal City of *Corduba*, and the greatest part of *Andalusia*, under his command, made subject with the rest of the *Moor* in Spain, to the *Miramulins* of *Morocco*, An. 1091, till the retreat of *Mahomet Enafar* into *Africk*, ann. 1214. After which, once more made a Kingdom in the person of *Aben Lalle*, a great Prince of the *Moor*; but no longer continuing in that Royal Dignity and Estate, than till the year 1248, when taken and subdued by *Ferdinand* and the second of *Castile*, and made a part of his Estate: but so, that it remaineth a Realm distinct in the Regal title; in which the Kings of Spain are said the Kings of *Sevil*.

2. South of *Andalusia*, at the mouth of *Guadalquivir*, stands the Isle of *Gades*, distant from the main land 700 paces, and joined unto it with a Bridge called *Puerto de Suaco*. It is length 13 miles, of a very fruitful Soil; besides the riches which it gets by *Fishing*, and making of Salt. First peopled by the *Tyrians* 562 years before the Birth of *CHRIST*; subdued by the *Carthaginians*, An. V. C. 236, being invited by the *Tyrians* to aid them in a defensive *VV*ar against the *Spaniards*: and was the last hold which the *Carthaginians* had in Spain; out of which beaten by the valour and good fortune of *Scipio Africanus*. Here stood in ancient times a Temple consecrated

erated to the honour of *Hercules*; in which all Sea faring-men (at their being here) used to pay their vows, and offer sacrifice, as being arrived at the furthest parts of all the World.

Places of most importance in it, are 1. *Porto Real*, a fair and capacious Haven, between the Town of *Cádiz*, and the main Land of *Andalusia*. 2. *Santa Maria*, another Port more towards the North; 3. *Cádiz*, or *Gades*, the chief Town of the Island, and giving name unto the whole. Situate on the Western part of the whole Isle, on a large Baye serving as a Road for the *Indian Fleet*; by the resort and trade whereof, it is much enriched. First founded by the *Tyrians*, afterwards made a *Municipal* City by the *Romans*; and one of the *Juridical* Resorts for the Province of *Basica*: in whole times it was held to be the noblest and richest in all Spain, not yielding to any of the Empire, for greatness, magnificence, or number of Inhabitants of account and quality. In so much, that here lived, at one time 500 Roman Knights; which number was not equalled in any one place, except *Padua* only: besides the great concourse of Merchants from all parts of the World. Which great resort, occasioned *Cornelius Balbus*, a Native of it, to add a new Town to the old, the whole circumference of both being 20 Furlongs. By the *Moor* at their conquest of Spain, it was utterly ruined; but since repaired, well fortified, and made the *Magazin* for the Ammunition of the Spanish Navies. Taken, notwithstanding, in one day by the *English*, under the command of *Charles Lord Effingham*, *Robert Earl of Essex*, and *Sir Walter Raleigh*; in which they burned the *Indian Fleet*, consisting in 40 Ships, whose Lading was worth 8 Millions of Crowns; overcame the Spanish Navy, consisting of 57 Men of War; took the *St. Michael*, and the *St. Andrew*, two great Gallies; and their Luggage, spoiled and carried away more Martial Furniture, than could be supplied in many years; and forced the Town, in which they flew, and took Prisoners, 4000 Foot, and 600 Horfe, and brought thence a very great booty in the baggage of it, Anno 1596. The fortunacy of which enterprise, gave occasion to one of the *Wits* then living, to frame their excellent *Anagram* on the name of the Earl of *Essex*, (who was looked on as the greatest Adventurer in it) viz. *Devereux*; *Vere dux*; Which he afterwards callt into this *Diffich*.

Vere dux De'vereux, & verior Hercules; *GADES* Nam semel hic vidit, vicit at ille simul.

Alcides vidit De'vereux; he did see

Thy beauties (Gades) but *De'vereux* conquer'd thee.

Near to this Isle, is that so celebrated Straight, called by some, *Fretum Gaditanum*, for the nearness of it to this Island; by others, *Fretum Herculeum*, not because *Hercules* did there break out a passage, to let the Ocean into the *Mediterranean*, as the Poets fable; but because of the two Pillars which he caused to be erected on each side of it, with the inscription of *Nil Ultra*, this being supposed to be the furthest Country *VV*estward. But when that supposition was proved untrue by the discovery of *América*, *Charles* the fifth being in those parts, caused two new Pillars to be placed where the old ones stood, or rather, where he thought they stood, and *Plus Ultra* to be written on them. As for those Pillars so much memorized in the ancient *VVriters*, some place them in the Temple of *Hercules*, within this Island; others, on the Promontory of *Calpe* in Spain, and that of *Abila* in *Africk*; and some again in two little Islands near those Promontories. This therefore being a matter doubtful, and not worth the looking after, let us return unto the *Straight*, called

now the *Straight of Gibraltar*, from the Town and Castle of *Gibraltar*, situate on the brink hereof; the *Straight* being in length fifteen miles; and in breadth, where it is narrowest, seven.

EXTREMADURA hath on the East and North, *Castile*; on the West, *Portugal*; and on the South *Andalusia*. It was first called *Baetia* from the River *Baís*, which runneth through it; and for distinction's sake, *Baetia Celtica*, from the *Celtici*; then the Inhabitants of this taking those parts of *Granada*, and *Andalusia*, which lay nearest unto *Tarracensis*. And when first it had the name of *Extremadura*, it was of larger extent than now it is, reaching unto the Banks of the River *Duero*, the bounds at that time, of the Kingdom of the *Morisco's*, so called by the *Christians*, as lying on the extremities or furthest side of that River.

Principal places in it, are 1. *Alcantara*, on the banks of the River *Tagus*, situate near the ruins of *Norba Caesaria*, destroyed by *Perennis* and *Africanus*, two of *Pompey's* Captains, for adhering faithfully to *Cæsar*: now of most note for an Order of Knights here seated, and from hence denominated; whereof more hereafter. 2. *Guadalupe*, famous for its Mines of Silver and Gold. 3. *Medina*, situate also on the *Tagus*; first called *Augusta Emerita*, founded and made a Colony by *Augustus Cæsar*, who placed herein his old Soldiers, whom the *Romans* called *Emeriti*; hence it had the name. The chief City after that of *Lusitania*; and, by *Antoninus*, preferred before any in Spain: now ruinous, meanly built, and but ill inhabited: Famous for nothing, but the Bridge upon the River *Tagus*, a Monument of the *Roman* greatness. Nigh to this Town was fought that memorable battle between *Wallia*, the first King of the *Goths* in Spain; and *Attila*, King of *Alani*, and *Silinges*, (this last a people of the *Vandals*) the victory whereof falling to the *Goths*, caused the whole Nation of the *Vandals* to draw forth out of Spain. 4. *Medellin*, near which the River *Guadiana* hideth it self under the ground, for the space of ten leagues; but more famous for the birth of *Ferdinand Cortez*, the fortunate Discoverer and Conqueror of the Realm of *Mexico*. 5. *Badajoz*, a Bishop's See on the borders of *Portugal*. 6. *Guadalupe* on a River of the same name; renowned amongst those of the Church of *Rome*, for the Miracles and Image of our Lady of *Guadalupe*; as much resorted to in Spain, as our Lady of *Loretto* in Italy. 7. *Placcenza*, a Bishops See, near the Hills of *Castile*; amongst which Hills, (by reason of their strength and safety) *Serranus* made his last retreat, when persecuted by the *Romans* of the contrary Faction; and where he was most wickedly slain by *Perennis*, and some other of his own Associates. Not far from hence, if it be not in the self-same place, in a retired and solitary Valley, standeth the Monastery of *Saint Justus*, remarkable for a greater Miracle than any the Lady of *Guadalupe* is able to boast of: which is, that *Charles* the fifth, that most puissant Monarch, having resigned his Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*, and all the rest of his Dominions to his Son *Philip* the second, did here bid farewell unto the World; spending the residue of his time in prayers and devout Meditations. The greatest Monument and Example of *Self-denial*, which these latter Ages have afforded. Far beyond any abnegation of the World by our *Cloyster'd Monks*, or any quitting of their Crowns by some Kings and Emperors in the darker Ages of the Church; who living in the time of Ignorance and superstition, saw not so clearly what they did, (or did it out of weakness, and want of spirit) as this *Maculine* and Heroick Emperor.

The old inhabitants of these Countries, were the *Turduli*, the *Befligii*, and the *Turdiani*, of *Andalusia*, and *Granada*; the *Celtici*, and some part of the *Lufitani* in *Extremadura*; all vanquished by the *Romans*, during the second *Punic War*, under the fortunate command of *Scipio Africanus*. From them extorted by the *Vandals*, who passing over into *Africa*, left it to the *Suevians*; lost by them to *Theodoric* the fourth King of the *Goths*, who hereby added all *Basica* to his other Dominions. Under the *Goths* it remained subject till their fatal overthrow by the *Moors*, who having made almost an entire Conquest of all the Continent of *Spain*, were at first subject to the *Great Caliphs*, Lords of the *Saracemical Empire*; governing here by their Lieutenants, from *Ulidor Uli*, under whom they first made this Conquest, Anno 714, to *Abdalla*, of the House of *Alaveci*, Anno 757. At what time *Abderamen*, of the line of *Mahomet* the Impostor, and first Emperor of the *Saracens*, flying the fury of *Abdalla*, by whom the old Line of the *Caliphs*, of the Race of *Humia*, (of which Race this *Abderamen* was) had been dispossessed of that Empire; came into *Spain*, and was with great joy entertained by the *Spanish Moors*, cordially affected to his House: whose Government he took upon him, discharged of all subjection and subordination to the *Caliphs*, or *Mahometan Emperors*, and making it an absolute Kingdom of itself. In his Race it continued without any fraction or subdivision, till the time of *Hixen* the second, the tenth King of these *Spanish Moors*; after whose death, distracted amongst many petty Tyrants, till they were all brought under by the *Moors of Africa*; of which more anon. In the mean time, take here the Catalogue of the Kings of these *Moors of Spain*, called commonly, from *Corduba*, their Royal Seat,

The Kings of Corduba.

- A. C.
 757 1. *Abderamen*, the first Sovereign-Prince of the *Moors in Spain*. 31.
 787 2. *Hixen*, the second son of *Abderamen*, by whom *Zuleima*, his elder Brother, was put by his Throne. 7.
 794 3. *Hali Hatan*, the Son of *Hixen*. 24.
 819 4. *Abderamen II.* Son of *Hali Hatan*, discomfited by the *Christians* in the memorable battle of *Clavigno*, Anno 836.
 839 5. *Mahomet*, Son of *Abderamen* the second, who reduced *Toledo*, then revolted, under his Command. 35.
 874 6. *Almundie*, the Son of *Mahomet*. 2.
 876 7. *Abdalla*, Brother to *Almundie*, and as little memorable. 13.
 889 8. *Abderamen III.* surnamed *Almansor*, too fortunate in his Wars against the *Christians*. 50.
 939 9. *Hali Hatan II.* Son of *Abderamen* the second.
 959 10. *Hixen II.* Son of *Hali Hatan*; in the 33 year of his reign, deposed for his sloath and negligence, by
 989 11. *Zuleima*, an African Moor, of the Family of *Alaveci*; and he expelled by
 993 12. *Mahomet II.* surnamed *Almohadi*, of the old House of *Humia*; ousted again by *Zuleima*, and made King of *Toledo*. Betwixt these three, and their several Factions, the Kingdom wretchedly torn in pieces, never restored again to its ancient lustre; and finally, made a prey to
 1001 13. *Hali*, another African Moor. 2.

- 1003 14. *Cacin*, the Brother of *Hali*. 4.
 1007 15. *Fliaia*, the Son of *Mahomet*. Menf. 4.
 1007 16. *Abderamen IV.* a King of 4 week only.
 1008 17. *Mahomet III.* poysoned by his own Servants. 1.
 1010 18. *Hixen III.* deposed by the *Moors*; grown weary of the House of *Humia*, of which House he was.
 1011 19. *Isar of Algeixire*. 3.
 1014 20. *Mahomet IV.* the Son of *Isar*, the last King of the *Moors in Corduba*, before the second Conquest of these parts of *Spain* by the *Moors of Africa*. Concerning which, we are to know, that after the great Victory obtained at *Clavigno*, against *Abderamen* the second, by *Laymir* King of *Leon*, Anno 836, in which the Moor lost 60000 of his men; the power and reputation of the *Spanish Moors* began to decline, brought utterly to nothing, by the sloth and negligence of *Hixen* the second; after a long and unprofitable reign, deposed by *Zuleima*, who succeeded. But the *Moors* not easily brooking the command of a new *Usurper*, fell into many Factions and Divisions amongst themselves: every great man seizing on some part of the Kingdom, which he retained unto himself with the name of King; from whence we have a King of *Sevil*, another of *Toledo*, a third of *Valencia*, a fourth of *Cordova*, &c. the names of which last only, do occur in the former Catalogues; as they which did pretend a Sovereignty over all the rest. And 'twas a sign the Kingdom was in the expiring, when so many Kings succeeded in so few years, after one another: there passing from the deposing of *Hixen* the second, to the beginning of *Mahomet* the fourth, not above 34 years in all; during which time, we find no fewer than ten Kings. The often change of Princes, and short lives of Kings, are the apparent signs of a ruinous State, approaching very near to its expiration; as may be seen by the short lives and reigns of the last *Western Emperors*, none of them hardly reigning 20 years: as also, of the Kings of the *Goths in Italy*, of which the last held the Throne no longer than the nine *Western Emperors* had done before them. But to proceed: *Mahomet* the last King of this first Rank, having left the stage in the 13th year of his reign, Anno, 1027, we find no good constancy of his Successors in the Kingdom of *Corduba*; made inconsiderable by the withdrawing to many Provinces from the body of it: the pride and insolvency of which *Royletels* and petty Tyrants, forced them at last to call unto their aid the Kings or Miramomins of *Morocco*, by whom themselves, and all the rest of their Corrivals, were in fine subdued. Under 7 Princes of *Morocco*, the *Spanish Moors* continued subject about 120 years; that is to say, from the first coming in of *Joseph Tephin*, the Miramomine, Anno 1091; unto the going out of *Mahomet*, surnamed the *Green*, Anno 1214. During which time, the affairs of the *Moors in Spain* were so well conducted, that they lost nothing to the *Christians*, but *Extremadura*, taken from them by *Alonso* the second, in the conquest of *Castile*; the seventh, in conquest of *Leon*, Anno 1147: and the City of *Lisbon* taken from them in the same year also, by *Alonso* the first King of *Portugal*. But *Mahomet* the *Green* being vanquished in the great Fight at *Sierra Morena*, by the joint Forces of the confederated *Christians*, Anno 1214, left off all further care of the *Moors in Spain*; after his going thence, distracted once again into many Kingdoms, almost as many as great Towns, all of them swallowed up, in a little time, by the Kings of *Castile*, *Aragon*, and *Portugal*. And amongst them, the Kingdom of *Corduba*, not able to stand long on this new Foundation, was ruined and brought under the command of the *Christians*, by their

their King *Ferdinand* the second, Anno 1236. Since that time there is no more mention of the Kingdom of *Corduba*.

The Arms whereof were Or, a Lion Gules, armed and crowned of the first, a Border Azure charged with 8 Towers Argent.

7. GRANADA.

GRANADA is bounded on the West, with *Andalusia*, on the East, with *Murcia*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *New-Castile*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean* only. So called from *Granada*, the chief-City, and Seat-Royal of it.

It is in length 200 miles, 100 miles in breadth, and about 704 miles in compass: a Kingdom of no great extent; but such as contained in it more fair Towns, strong Fortresses, and defensive places, than the like quantity of Ground in the World besides. The North part of the Country plain; the South parts overpread with the *Alpuxerras*, and other spurs and branches of the *Oropeda*. In the time of the *Moors*, wonderfully well inhabited, and full of all sorts of Commodities, the Hills planted with Vines and Fruits, the Plains and Valleys swelling with Corn and Gardens: since their expulsion neither much peopled, nor very fruitful, for want of men to dress and manure the Land.

The principle Cities of it, are 1. *Granada*, situate on two Hills, divided by a Valley, through which runneth the River *Darien*; consisting of four several parts, called *Albora*, *Sierra de Sol*, *Granada*, and *Antequera*: the two first standing on the Hills, the two last in the valley, the whole circuit being about 7 miles, and containing in the time of the *Moorish Kingdom*, about 200000 of Souls. Fenced with strong Walls, fortified with 150 Turrets, and replenished with abundance of wholesome and pleasant Springs. The Merchants and Gentry of the best sort, do dwell in that part which is called *Granada*: the houses of which, are for the most part built of Free-stone, with delicate and artificial Masonry, shewing great magnificence; Herein standeth the Cathedral Church, a work of admirable structure: of Figure round, as having sometimes been a *Mahometan Mosque*. Here is also the place which they call *Alcazar*, representing a little Town, to which are ten Gates. In the *Albora* is the Palace of the *Moorish Kings*, covered with Gold, indented with *Mosaic* work; and which, by reason of the structure, and multitude of Fountains which are about it, may be put amongst the *Wonders* of the world, having withal a goodly prospect over all the Town, lying under it upon the East; a spacious Champaign towards the North, and the snowy tops of *Sierra Nevada*, towards the South. This City is the ordinary Parliament, and Court of Justice, for all the Southern parts of *Spain*, as *Valladolid* is for the Northern: *Madrid*, which is the highest Court, having Jurisdiction over, and receiving Appeals from both. A Town first raised out of the ruins of *Ileberis*, situate not far off the Hill *Elvire*, much mentioned in the stories of *Rome* and *Carthage*. In the two other parts of the Town, there is nothing remarkable, inhabited only by *Mechanicks* of the poorer sort. 2. *Albama*, seated amongst steep and craggy Rocks, out of which issue *Medicinal Waters*, occasioning a great resort of the *Spanish Gentry*: the first Town taken by the *Spaniards* in their last long War against the *Moors*, for the recovery of this Kingdom, Anno 1483; and looked on, by the *Moors*, as a sad preface of a ruina-

ted and expiring Empire. 3. *Guadix* an Episcopal See; about nine leagues from *Granada*. 4. *Velez Malaga*, by *Prology* called *Cez*; by *Amsinon*, *Sexicarrum*; situate at the foot of the Mountains called *Alpuxerras*; a large branch of the *Oropeda* overspreading a great part of this Country: heretofore platted with incredible numbers of *Moors*, who chose to dwell there for the strength and safety of the situation: since their expulsion, desolate, and unfrequented; nothing remaining of them now, but the *Arabic Language*, which is still spoke by these few people which inhabit in it. The Mountains in this Tract so high, that from the tops hereof a man may easily discern the whole course of the *Streights of Gibraltar*, together with the Towns of *Centa*, and *Tangier* in *Africa*. 5. *Ronda*, at the foot of another branch of the *Oropeda*, called from this Town, *Sierra de Ronda*: not far from which, by *Munda*, now a very small Village, was fought that memorable battle betwixt *Cesar* and the Sons of *Pompey*, the honour of which fell to *Cesar*, who then made an end of the *Civil War*, which that very day, four years before, were begun by *Pompey* the Father. In this fight was *Cn. Pompeius* slain, and his Forces broken; *Cesar* himself being so put to it, that seeing his Soldiers give back, he was fain to maintain the fight by his own great courage, bidding them *Remember*, that at *Munda* they fought their General. The shame of which reproach, and his noble example, encouraged them to a new onset, which was honoured with a signal and remarkable Victory: this being the last fight that *Cesar* was in; murdered not long after in the Senate-house. And of this fight he used to say, *That in all other places he fought for his Honour, in this for his life*. 6. *Antequera*, heretofore a well-fortified Town, bordering close upon *Castile*. 7. *Muxaca*, on the shore of the *Mediterranean*, supposed to be the *Murgis* of *Prology*. 8. *Vera* on the same shore; the furthest Town of *Basica*, and of this Country, towards *Murcia*: supposed to be the *Virgo* of *Pliny* from whence the neighbouring Creek or Bay was called *Virgatum*. 9. *Loxa*, on the River *Darien*, enjoying a situation both strong and pleasant. 10. *Malaga*, or *Maiana*, situate at the mouth of *Guadalquivir*, once sacked by *Cassius* the rich *Roman*, who flying out of *Spain*, to avoid the Fury of *Marius* and *Cinna*, who had slain his Father and Uncle, hid himself and his Companions, in a Cave hereabouts, for eight Months together: but after hearing of their deaths, issued out, and ranfacked, amongst many other Cities, this *Malaga*. A Town of great Traffick, and much Resort, especially for *Railins*, *Almonds*, *Malaga Sack*: well fortified, and of great importance, as a Town of War; and to the great prejudice of the *Moors*, taken by *Ferdinand* the Catholic, Anno 1487: the Conquest of the whole Kingdom of *Granada*, following not long after. It was since made a *Bishops-See*, or reformed rather to that dignity which it had of old. 11. *Almeria*, a noted Haven on the *Mediterranean*, the *Adena* of *Mela*; a Colony of the *Carthaginians*, and anciently a *Bishops-See*. 12. *Carthema*, 13. *Caim*, and 14. *Baza*, more within the Land: this last, the strongest Bulwark of the City of *Granada*, on the North-cast whereof it standeth. A place of great strength both by Art and Nature; and by the *Moors* defended with so great a gallantry, that it held out a siege of 7 Months against an Army of 13000 Horse, and 24000 Foot, King *Ferdinand* the Catholic, being there in person: and yielded at the last, Decemb. 4. 1489, upon better conditions than any Town had done before it.

As for the Fortunes of this Country, after the Conquest of it by the *Moors* and *Saracens*, it was a part or member of the Kingdom of *Corduba*, and so continued till that Kingdom was subdued by the *Spaniards*.

But the *Moors* were too stout to yield at once. Having yet ground enough both to secure themselves in, and endow their King: they are resolved, though they had lost one Kingdom, to erect another. And therefore *Coraduba* being taken, and that Kingdom ruined, the *Moors*, with *Mahomet Aben Alhamar*, their unfortunate, but valiant King, removed themselves unto *Granada*, and there renewed their strength and Kingdom, which lasted 256 years, under 20 Kings; whose names here follow in this Catalogue of

The Kings of Granada.

- A. C.
 1236 1. *Mahomet Alhamar*, the last King of *Corduba*, and the first King of *Granada*. 36.
 1242 2. *Mahomet Mir Amir*. 30.
 1302 3. *Mahomet Aben Ezar*. 7.
 1309 4. *Mahomet Aben Evar*. 10.
 1319 5. *Ismael*. 3.
 1322 6. *Mahomet*. 12.
 1334 7. *Joseph Aben Agut*. 20.
 1354 8. *Mahomet Lagus*. 23.
 1377 9. *Mahomet Vermeil*. 2.
 1379 10. *Mahomet Guadix*. 13.
 1392 11. *Joseph II.* 4.
 1396 12. *Mahomet Aben Balua*. 11.
 1407 13. *Joseph III.* 16.
 1423 14. *Mahomet Aben Azar*. 4.
 1427 15. *Mahomet the little*. 5.
 1432 16. *Joseph Abud Almud*. 13.
 1445 17. *Mahomet Ojmen*. 8.
 1453 18. *Ismael II.* 9.
 1462 19. *Muley Alboacen*. 20.
 1482 20. *Mahomet Boabdellin*, the last King of the *Moors* in *Spain*. Of all which, there is little left upon

Record: their whole time being spent in defending their borders against the encroachments of *Castile*; or else in *Civil-Wars* and discords amongst themselves: in which they were so frequent and sometimes so violent, as if they had no Enemy near them. *Mahomet Aben Evar*, the fourth King, deposed by *Mahomet Aben Levin*; and he again thrust out by *Hismael*, the Son of *Ferrachen*, before he could enjoy the fruits of his treason. *Mahomet*, Son of *Ismael*, murdered by his Subjects. *Joseph* the Son of *Mahomet*, slain by *Mahomet Lagus*; and he again deposed by *Mahomet Vermeil*; who in the end was miserably slain by *Pedro*, the *Cruel*, of *Castile*, to whom he had fled for help and succour. After this time, they reigned and deposed one another, to the end of their Kingdom; but violently making way for himself to enter on the Government: even *Mahomet Boabdellin*, the last King hereof, not having patience to expect the death of his Father; but setting him besides the Throne, as he himself was for a time, by *Muley Maadellin* his Uncle; and thereby opening a fair Gate for *Ferdinand*, King of *Castile* and *Aragon*, to bring in his Forces to the subduing of them all. Such was the fortune of this Kingdom, that as it began under a *Mahomet*, a *Ferdinand* being King of *Castile*; it did end under a *Mahomet*, a *Ferdinand* being King of *Castile* also. In the first year, then, of this man's Reign, did the War begin, or rather in the last year of his Father, who by taking *Zabara* from the Christians, gave the first occasion: and in the tenth year of the War, (for so long it lasted) 1492, the Empire of the *Moors* ended in *Spain*, by the valour of *Ferdinand* the Catholic, and *Isabel* his Wife, after their first entrance into it, more than 760 years.

Such of them as; after the decay of their Kingdom, had a desire to stay in *Spain*, which had for so long time been their native Country, were suffered to do by the prudent *Villors*, (fearing a desolation of the Country, if they should abandon it) conditioned, that they would be *Christened*. And that they might be known to be as they professed, the *Inquisition* was established in the City of *Granada*, consisting of a certain number of *Secular Priests*, and *Dominican Friars*; who finding any counterfeit or *Apostate Christian*, were first gently to reprove and exhort them; and after, if no amendment followed, to inflict such punishment on them, as was accustomed in like cases. By the terror of which *Inquisition*, many professed, in shew, the *Christian Faith*. But being *Christians* only in the outward shew, and practising on all occasions against the State, the Kings of *Spain* resolved long ago on their *Extirmination*; but never had opportunity to effect it, till the year 1609. At what time *Philip* the third having made a Peace with *England*, and a Truce with *Holland*; and finding the *Moors* of *Africk* too imbrued in Wars, that they were not able to disturb him; put that extremity in execution, which had before been thought of in their consultations; 1100000 of them being forced to quit this Country, and provide new dwellings; under colour that they went about to free themselves from the *Inquisition*, and to recover their old Liberty lost so long before.

The Forces which the Kings of *Granada*, in the times of their greatest power, were able to raise, were far beyond the amasurement and extent of their Kingdom: not above 700 miles in compass, as before is said: but so exceeding populous, and well accommodated with all manner of necessities, that within two days space, the King hereof was said to have been able to draw together 50000 Horse, and 200000 Foot, for defence of this Kingdom. *Turquet* reports it so, in his *Spanish History*. But this proved more than they were able to do in their greatest need; when this Kingdom was finally invaded, and at last subdued by *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, Kings of *Spain*: though possibly by reason of their divisions at that time, (some following the Party of *Mahomet Boabdellin*; and others, that of his Uncle *Muley*, chosen King against him) they might not join together in a common interest, for the defence of their Estate.

The Arms whereof were *Or*, a Pomgranate (or Apple of *Granada*) slipped, *Vers*.

8. MURCIA.

MURCIA is bounded on the West, with *Granada*; on the East and North, with *Valencia*, and a part of *Granada*; and on the South, with the *Mediterranean Sea*. So called from *Murcia* the chief City. In former times esteemed a rich and wealthy Country, stored with all sorts of fruits; and so abounding in *Silver Mines*, that when the *Romans* were Lords of it, they kept continually four hundred men at work, and received 2500 *Drachmas* of daily profit: now for the most part barren, and but ill inhabited.

Cities of note there are not many in so small a Country. The Principle. 1. *Murcia*, by *Prology* called *Merulio*, seated upon the River *Segura*, a *Bishop's See*, situate in a pleasant and delightful Plain, planted with Pomgranates, and other excellent Fruits: from this the Country had the name of the Kingdom of *Murcia*. 2. *Carthagena*, or *Nova Carthago*, first built by *Ardubal* of *Carthage*, the brother of *Annibal*, for the better receiving of

9. TOLEDO.

THE Kingdom of *TOLEDO* so called from *Toledo* the chief City of it, contained once the greatest part of that Country which is now called *New-Castile*; of which it is now reckoned only for a part or member: The Country lying next unto it, was anciently the Seat of *Carpenanti*, the nature of the Soil we shall find elsewhere.

Principal Cities of this Kingdom, 1. *Toledo*, of great antiquity, as being taken by *Fulvius a Roman Praetor*, in the time of *Scipio Africanus*; and then a City of good note. Pleasantly seated on the *Tagus*, beautified with many pieces of rare and excellent Architecture; and fortified with thirty Towers standing on the Walls. By reason of the situation of it in the very mid, almost, of *Spain*, it is passing well inhabited; as well by the Nobility, who reside there for pleasure, and by Scholars, who abide in it for their Studies; as by Merchants, who resort thither for their trade: besides such Soldiers and their Officers, who are continually garrisoned in it for defence thereof. The private buildings generally are but mean and ordinary; though, by far, more handsome in the inside, than the outside promisseth: most of them being furnished with water from the River *Tagus*, conveyed into them by the admirable invention of one *Tamari*, a native of *Cremena* in the Dukedom of *Milain*. The Streets narrow, cleft, hilly, and uneven, exceeding troublesome to walk or go upon, especially in slippery or dirty weather, by reason of its steep and uneven situation on the side of a Rocky Hill: by which, and by the River which almost surrounds it, it is naturally very strong, and well helped by Art. For that cause made the Seat of the *Gothish Kings*: by one of which, called *Bombas*, so repaired and beautified, (besides the addition of a strong Wall for defence of the place) that he is by some accounted for the Founder of it. For so we find it in these old Verbes:

Erexit (sauror Deo) Rex inclitus Urbem
Bambas, Juc celeberr protendens Gentis honorem.

That is to say,

King *Bamba* (God assisting) rais'd this Town,
 Extending to the ancient *Goths* renown.

When the *Goths* fell, it was in chief estimation amongst the *Moors*, and by them advanced unto the honour of a Kingdom; whereof more anon: but under both, (as it continueth to this day) the Sea of an Arch-Bishop, who is the Metropolitan of *Spain*, and President, for the most part, of the *Inquisition*. His Revenue answerable to his Place, the greatest of any Clergy man in the *Christian World*, next to the Popes of *Rome*; as being estimated at 300000 Crowns per annum. Finally, this City hath been honoured with no fewer than 18 National Councils, here holden in the time of the *Goths*; and is now a famous University for the study of the *Civil* and *Canon Laws*, and hath to this day the Temporal Jurisdiction over 17 Walled Towns, besides Villages. 2. *Calatrava*, the next Town of note, is situate on the River *Ana*; of most fame in these latter times, for an Order of Knight, called the *Knights of Calatrava*; of which more when we come to *Castile*. Neighbouring by the ruins of the strong and famous City *Castulo*, which being under the command of the *Romans*, was by the *Gyreseni*, a people that

This Country, being part of the Province of *Carthaginensis*, was by the *Alani* taken from the *Romans*, at their first entrance into *Spain*: from them recovered by *Wallia*, the first King of the *Goths* in this part of *Europe*. Together with the rest of *Spain*, it was subdued by the *Moors* of *Africk* in the distractions of whose Empire; after the going hence of the *Moors* of *Africk*, it was made a distinct Kingdom by *Aben Hui*, of the Race of the Kings of *Saragossa*, who had seized upon it, Anno 1228; and for a time was the most puissant King of the *Moors* in *Spain*, commanding over this Country, *Granada*, and a part of *Andalusia*. Invited to a Feast, made Drunk, and then basely murdered by *Aben Arabin*, a false servant of his. Anno 1236. One *Aben Hudiel* seized on the Realm of *Murcia*, disturbed in his possession by *Alboaquis*, the last King hereof. But he not able to defend himself against his Competitor, surrendered it to *Ferdinand* the second of *Castile*, whom he put into possession of the Fort of *Murcia*, and many other places of great importance; conditioned that *Alboaquis* should enjoy the Title of King of *Murcia*, as long as he lived, under the Sovereignty of *Castile*: and that *Ferdinand* should enjoy one half of the profits of it. This was in the year 1241, after it had continued in the state of a Kingdom but 12 years only, united to *Castile* without blood or trouble, and so remains ever since.

that dwelt on the other side of the River, suddenly entered and taken. But *Serrorin* following after them by the same Gate, put them all to the sword; and causing his men to apparel themselves in the clothes of the Enemy, led them to the chief City of the *Gythesians*; who supposing them to be their own Party, opened their Gates, and were all either slain, or sold for slaves. More of this Townanon, when we come to *Castile*, to which now belonging. 3. *Tabora*, commonly called *Talavera de la Reyna*, or the Queen's *Talavera*; and called for on occasion of an execrable Murder committed there by the command of Queen *Mary*, the Widow of *Alfonso* the sixth, on the Lady *Leonor de Guzman*, her Husband's Paramour. A proper and neat Town it is, pleasantly seated on the *Tagus*; supposed to be the *Libora* of *Pliny*, and now belonging to the Arch-bishop of *Toledo*, as chief Lord thereof. *Medina Zelina*, commonly called *Medina Celi*; of great importance when possessed or neighboured by the *Moors*. Now of most note for giving the title of Dukes to the illustrious Family of *la Cerda*, descended from *Ferdinand*, the eldest Son of *Alfonso* the fifth, claiming, by that descent, a title to the Crown of *Castile*. What other Towns belonged unto it, we shall see anon.

As for *Toledo* it self, in the time of the *Romans* it was the Metropolis of the Province of *Tarracensis*; after that, the Seat-Royal of the *Gothish* Kings; removed hither from *Tholofis* in *Languedoc*: forced by the *Moors*, at their first entrance into *Spain*, An. 716; more prudently aiming at the Head, than the *Goths* possibly expected from such Barbarians. In the Confusions of that Kingdom, betwixt the beginning of the reign of *Mahomet* the fourth, and the second coming in of the *Moors* of *Africa*, made a distinct Kingdom of it self; continuing in that estate, till taken from *Haia Alchaduchir*, the last King hereof, by *Alfonso* the first, King of *Castile*, An. 1083. This *Alfonso* being the youngest Son of *Ferdinand*, the first King of *Castile* and *Leon*, had the Kingdom of *Leon* for his part. Ejected out of that, by his Brother *Sancho* King of *Castile*, he lived in exile with the *Moors*; kindly received and entertained by *Almenon* the Father of this *Haia*, King of *Toledo*, till the death of his Brother. After which coming to the Crowns of *Castile* and *Leon*, Anno 1073, he picked a quarrel with his Host, and besieged *Toledo*; his long abode there making him acquainted with all advantages that might facilitate his designs; which notwithstanding held him a siege of five years, before he could make himself master of it, by him incorporated presently on the taking of it, with the rest of that Kingdom, and made the head of *New-Castile*. But for the Kings hereof, as well those who held it but for life, as those who left the same unto their Posterity, they are these that follow:

The Moorish Kings reigning in Toledo.

A. C.

1. *Galefroy*, King of *Toledo*, in the time of *Charlemagne*, under the Vassalage of the great *Cathlips* of *Danefcens*; subdued by *Abderamen* the first, King or Miromomolin of the *Moors* in *Coriduba* or the House of *Humeia*.
- 787 2. *Zuleima*, the eldest Son of *Abderamen* King of *Coriduba*, being dispossessed of the Realm of *Coriduba*, and the rest of his Estates in *Spain*, by *Hizzen* his younger Brother, reigned a while in *Toledo*; of which outed not long after: *Toledo* from that time continuing a Member of the Kingdom of *Coriduba*, till the

latter end of the reign of *Abderamen* the second. At what time.

- 833 3. *Aben Lope*, (the Son of *Mufa Aben Casia*, a *Goth* by Nation and descent; but a *Moor* by profession, who had caused the *Toledans*, and others of the *Moors* of *Spain*, to rebel against *Abderamen*) assumed unto himself the title of King of *Toledo*: a strict confederate of *Ordengo* the 11th, King of *Leon*; by whom supported in his Wars against those of *Coriduba*; but at last vanquished and dispossessed by *Mahomet*, the Son of *Abderamen*, Anno 848.
- 990 4. *Abdalla* a great man among the *Moors*, during the contentions betwixt *Zuleima* and *Hizzen* the second, for the realm of *Coriduba*, seized on the City of *Toledo*; which he held as King; and kindly entertained *Mahomet Almohadi*, made King of *Coriduba* during those contentions; by whom succeeded in this Kingdom.
- 995 5. *Mahomet*, surnamed *Almohadi*, of the Regal Family of *Humeia*, King of *Coriduba*; and dispossessed thereof by the Faction of *Zuleima*, retired to *Toledo*; and was kindly entertained by King *Abdalla*, whom he succeeded in this Kingdom.
- 999 6. *Obeidalla*, the Son of *Mahomet*, slain in his Wars with *Hizzen*, the King of *Coriduba*, in the first or second year of his reign.
- 1000 7. *Hairam*, of the same house of *Aben Humeia*, and, probably, the next Kinsman of *Obeidalla*; succeeded him in this Estate, and left the same unto his Posterity, till subdued by the *Spaniards*.
- 1010 8. *Hizzen*, the Son of *Hairam*, of whom nothing memorable.
- 1045 9. *Ali Maymon*, or *Almenon*, as the *Spaniards* call him, the Son of *Hizzen*, who entertained *Alfonso* the sixth of *Leon*, when dispossessed of his Estate by his Brother *Sancho*.
- 1076 10. *Hizzen* II. Son of *Ali Maymon*.
- 1078 11. *Haya*, surnamed *Alcadaribile*, the Son of *Ali Maymon*, and Brother of *Hizzen*; a cruel Prince, and ill beloved of his Subjects; gave occasion unto *Alfonso* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, spoken of before, to invade this Kingdom; by whom at last it was subdued, and *Toledo*, with its Territories, added unto *Castile*, as before is said, Anno 1083. By which means there accrued to the Realm of *Castile*, besides *Toledo* it self, and the Towns spoken of already, those of *Illesca*, *Ejcalona*, *Maqueda*, *Canales*, *Coria*, *Conjuerga*, *Berlanga*, *Guadalajara*, *Arienca*, and divers others, now passing in the estimate of *New-Castile*.

But to conclude, *Toledo* thus reduced under the command of the *Christians*, was forthwith made the Metropolitan City of *Spain*, (in regard of Ecclesiastical or Spiritual matters) as it had been before in the time of the *Goths*; and shortly after honoured by *Alfonso* with the title of the imperial City; that King, upon the conquest hereof, having assumed unto himself the title of Emperor of *Spain*, but somewhat too affectedly, as the case then stood, there being other Kings in *Spain* as well as he. In which respects he gave unto this City the Arms hereof, in a Field Azure, a Crown Mitrail Imperial Or, garnished with sundry precious Gems Proper; changed afterwards by *Alfonso* the third of *Castile*, and eighth of *Leon*, affecting the same title of Emperor, to an Emperor sitting on his Throne in a Robe of Gold, with a Globe in his left hand, and a Sword in his right.

But

Lib. I.

S P A I N.

But the Blazon of these Arms I find not, nor much worth the searching: the old Coat being worn again after his decease.

10. CASTILE.

CASTILE is bounded on the East, with *Navarre*, *Aragon*, and part of *Valencia*; on the West, with *Portugal*; on the North, with *Biscay*, *Cantabria*, and the *Asurias*; on the South, with *Extremadura*, *Andalusia*, and *Granada*. The reason of the name we shall have anon.

This was the most prevailing Kingdom of all this Continent; to which the rest are all united either by Marriages or Conquest. Divided commonly into the *New* and *old*; parted from one another by the Hills of *Segovia*: the one being called the *Old Castile*, because it was the Ancient Patrimony of the Earls hereof; and the other named the *New*, from that addition which was made to the first Inheritance, by the Conquest of the Realm of *Toledo*, and other pieces, from the *Moors*. The *Old Castile* is the less fruitful of the two; more fit for Pasturage, than Corn, but better stored with that and all sorts of fruits than the neighbouring Countries, which lye betwixt it and the Northern or *Cantabrian* Ocean: the *New* more plain and Champian, better stored with Fruits, and furnished with sufficient plenty of Corn, and other provisions necessary for the life of man. The *Old Castile* watered with the Rivers of 1. *Relanva*, rising not far from *Burgos*. 2. *Tormes*, passing by *Salamanca*. 3. *Duro*, the Receiptable of the others. The *New* with 4. *Guadarama*, honoured with the neighbourhood of *Madrid*, 5. *Tevina*, and 6. *Tagus*, the most famous River of all *Spain*.

The *OLD CASTILE* is situate on the North of the *New*; and hath for the chief Cities of it. 1. *Soria*, of great note in the ancient Story, by the name of *Numanitia*; which for the space of 14 years, withstood the whole Forces of *Rome*: during which time they valiantly repulsed their Enemies, and forced them to dishonourable Compositions. But finding, at last, no hope of holding longer out, they gathered together all their Armour, Money, and Goods, laid them in a heap, then set fire on them, and, finally burnt themselves in the midst of the flame; leaving *Scipio* (who had brought them to that extremity) nothing but the bare name of *Numanitia*, to adorn his triumph. 2. *Avila*, situate under the great Mountains, which are called from hence, the Mountains of *Avila*. Known anciently by the name of *Abule*; and by that name giving the title of *Abulensis* to the renowned *Tybalus*, who was Bishop of it. A Man, who in his time was President of the Council to *John* King of *Aragon*; yet could find leisure enough not only to attend his Episcopal Charge, but to compose those learned and painful Commentaries on a great part of the Bible. Of which, and his other Abilities, (besides that which hath before been noted of him) we may take that *Elogie* which *Cassaubon* hath given him, in his book against *Berovius*, saying *Laudo actum viri, si in meliora incidisset Tempora, longe maximi*. 3. *Saladilla* a fine neat Town; and one of the ancientest Universities of *Spain*: discontinued for a time, by Students, and then restored again by King *Philip* the second, whose birth-place it was; and who erected here a College (amongst others) for the education only of young *English* Fugitives. Seated upon the River *Pisuerga*, and one of the Chanceries of the Kingdoms of *Castile* and *Leon*. By means whereof, and of the King's Court here residing in the Summer-times, it became, in little space, a fair, large, populous City, and of great resort, not yielding unto any in *Spain*, except *Lisbon*, and

Sevil. It is called in *Latin*, *Fiditi Olerum*, and *Fiditi Olerum*, from the abundance of Olives growing near it: but by *Pliny*, *Pimia*. 4. *Segovia*, a Bishops-See, of great trade in clothing; situate under a branch of the Mountains *Lubeda*, called from hence, the Hills of *Segovia*. 5. *Burgos*, near the head of the River *Relamor* or *Relanzon*, at the foot of the great Mountain *d' Oca*, part of the *Lubeda*: built out of a certain Village lying hereabouts, by *Nugno Bellides*, a *German* Son in Law unto one of the first Earls of *Castile*. For a long time the seat of those Kings, since of the Archbishops hereof; the Cathedral being one of the fairest in *Spain*; built with such art, that Mass may be sung aloud in five several Chapels, without disturbing one another. This City doth contend for Primacy and Precedency, (in Civil matters) with that of *Toledo*, of which it hath the first place or vote in all Parliaments or Assemblies of the States of *Castile*. But yet to satisfy *Toledo*, the Controversy is still undecided, and was once finely taken up by one of the *Ferdinands*, saying, that he would first speak for *Toledo*, and then *Burgos* should do for it self. Without the Walls of this City, is a famous Nunnery, called *Delas Huertat*, consisting of 150 Religious Women, all of Noble Houses. 6. *Ciudad Rodrigo*, a Bishops-See, on the River *Goda*. 7. *Zamora*, a strong and well-built City, and a Bishops-See, the *Seneca* of *Pliny*: situate on the River *Duro*, and now famous for the best Bag-pipes. 8. *Tordesillas*, the *Segifuna* of the Ancients. 9. *Lerne*, not far from *Burgos*, the chief Seat of the Dukes so called; a Prince of great possessions, and the chief of the Family of *Rois*, and *Sandovar*. 10. *Salamanca*, the most famous University of *Spain*, especially for the study of the *Civil* and *Canon* Laws: first instituted by *Ferdinand* the second of *Castile*, Anno 1240; and by an Order of the Pope's, together with *Paris*, *Oxford*, and *Bononia* in *Italy*, created a *Generale Studium*; wherein there were to be Professors of the *Greek*, *Hebrew*, *Chaldean*, and *Arabic* Tongues. Besides those of the Arts. It was of old called *Salamanca*; is now a Bishops-See, situate on the River *Tormes*, as before was said.

Not far from this City, about the times of our Grand-Fathers was discovered in a Valley situate amongst high and impassable Mountains, a kind of *Paraceti*, or *Savage* people, never heard of in *Spain* before. The occasion, this: An Hawk of the Duke of *Alva*'s, which he very much valued, flew over those Mountains; and his men not being able to find her at first, they were sent back by the Duke to seek her. Climbing from one Hill to another, they hapned at last upon a large and pleasant Valley, where they spied a company of naked *Savage* people, hemmed in amongst many craggy Rocks, *The Salvages*, gazing a while upon them, ran into their Caves, made in the hollows of the Rocks, the best Houses they had: which being observed by the *Falconers*, they return again unto their Lord, telling him, that instead of a *Falcon*, they had brought him news of a *New world* in the midst of *Spain*, and of a race of People which came in with *Tubal*. Strongly affirming what they said they obtained belief. And the Duke shortly after went with a Company of Musketeers, and subdued them easily; they having no offensive Weapons, but only Slings. They worshipped the Sun and Moon, fed upon nothing that had life, but had good store of excellent Fruits, Roots, and Springs of Water, wherewith Nature was well contented. And though their Language was not altogether understood by any; yet many of their words were found to be purely *Rafquish*. Reduced, on this discovery, to *Christianity*; but easily discernable from all other *Spaniards*; by their tawny complexions, occasioned by the reverberation of the Sun-beams, from those Rocky Mountains wherewith on all sides they are encompassed.

compassed. The truth hereof, besides the credit of *James Howell*, in his *Influations for Foreign Travel*; I have upon enquiry found to be attested by men of gravity and great place in this Realm of *England*; employed there in affairs of publick interest. Satisfied therefore in the truth of the Relation, I am partly satisfied in the men; whom I conceive to be some remnant of the Ancient *Spaniards*, who hid themselves amongst these Mountains for fear of the *Romans*. Their Language and Idolatry speak them to be such. For had they either fled from the *Goths* or *Moors*, there had been found some *Crofs*, or other Monument of *Christianity*, as in other places; or some such mixture in their Speech, as would have favoured somewhat of the *Goths* or *Romans*. But it is time I should proceed.

NEWCASTLE is situate on the South of the *Old*. The chief Cities there, 1. *Signenca*, a City heretofore of the *Celubieri*, now a Bishops See, beautified with a fair Cathedral, supposed to be the *Candabara* of *Polomy*. 2. *Madrid*, upon the *Guadamarra*, the *Mannua* of the ancient Writers, now the Seat of the Kings; whose residence there, though the Country be neither rich nor pleasant, hath made it, of a Village, the most populous City in all *Spain*. It is a custom in this Town, that all the upper Rooms in their Houses do belong to the King, except some composition be made with him for them. And of this Town the *Spaniards* do use to brag to strangers, that they have a City walled with fire; and then make good the boast, by saying, That it is situate in the midst of Quarries of *Flint*. 3. *Alcala de Henares*, (of old called *Complutum*) renowned for an University of Divines, founded here in the time of *Ferdinand the Catholic*, by *Francisco de Ximenes*, Cardinal and Arch-Bishop of *Toledo*; and by him furnished with the ablest men both for Divinity and the Tongues, that all *Spain* afforded. By whose joyful diligence and study in turning over so many Copies of the Bibles, gathered together at his charge from all parts of the World, he published the *Complutensian* Edition of the holy Scriptures in the Original *Greek*, *Hebrew*, and *Vulgar Latin*, with the Translation of the *Septuagint* into *Latin* also. A work of very great charge and pains, (taking up 15 years in doing) but of greater profit; there being at the end thereof, an *Hebrew Dictionary*, for the understanding of that Language. 4. *Alevaraz*, amongst the Mountainous tracts of *Oropesda*, called *Sierra de Alevaraz*; memorable for a great difcomfiture given unto the *Moors*, Anno 1034. 5. *Molina* in the same Mountainous Tract, hence called *Monte de Molina*, remarkable for giving the Title of Lord, to the Kings of *Castile*, who in the Regal file are called Lords of *Molina*: the Signeury hereof accruing to that Crown, by the marriage of *Sancho* the third, with *Mary* the Daughter of *Alfonso*, the last *Leon Proprietary*. The Territory large, and the Town of strength; well fortified in the times foregoing, both by Art and Nature. 6. *Cuenca*, seated at the Spring-head of the River *Xucar*, and not far from that of *Tagu* also, amongst the Mountains of *Oropesda*; built by the *Moors* on the top of those craggy Hills, whom it served for an impregnable Fortres against the *Christians*, till taken by *Sancho* the second of *Castile*, Anno 1177.

Here also is the *Ejciurnal*, or *Monastery* of *S. Lawrence*, built by King *Philip* the second, a place (saith *Quade*, who spendeth 13 pages in its description) of that magnificence, that no building; in times past, or this present is comparable to it. The front, toward the West, is adorned with three stately Gates, the middlemost where, of leadeth into a most magnificent Temple, a Monastery in which are 150 Monks of the Order of *S. Jerome*, and a College: that on the right hand, openeth into divers Offices, belonging to the *Monastery*: that on the left,

unto *Schools* and out-houses belonging unto the College. At the four corners, there are four Towers of excellent Workmanship; and for height majestic. Towards the North, is the King's Palace; on the South parts divers beautiful and sumptuous Galleries; and on the East-side sundry Gardens and VValks, very pleasing and delectable. It containeth in all 11 several Quadrangles, every one encloftered; and is indeed so brave a structure, that a Voyage unto *Spain* were well employed, were it only to see it, and return. Here is also in this Tract the old Town of *Castulo*, (the *Castlam* of *Strabo*) then the chief City of the *Carpentani*, and the birth-place of *Himilce*, the VVife of *Amibal*, from whence this whole Tract had the name of *Salus Castulanensis*, and so called by *Cesar*; now a poor Village, known by the name of *Castana la Veia*; in which is somewhat to be found of the ancient ruins. But of this more already, when we were in the Kingdom of *Toledo*; to which it more properly belonged.

The old Inhabitants of these *Castiles*, were the *Vaccii*, *Ventones*, *Arvacca*, *Oretani*, *Carpentani*, *Dittani*, &c. From none of which, the name of *Castile* can be deduced: for that we must fetch it either from the *Castellani*, once a people of *Catalogne*; or from some strong fortified Castles erected in the Frontiers, against the *Moors*. This last conjecture may seem probable, because the Arms of this Kingdom are *Gules*, a *Castle* triple-towered, &c. Neither is it any way strange, for Provinces, especially smaller ones, such as at first this was, (though now much extended both in bounds and power) to take their names from a Castle. For (to go no further) even with us, *Richmondshire* was so called from the Castle of *Richmond*, there built by *Alain*, Earl of *Bretagne*; and *Flintshire* took denomination from the Castle built of *Flint*-stones, by *Henry* the second. VVe may see hereby, how much *Celam Secundum Cuvio* was deceived, who writeth, that *Alfonso* the third having overthrown *Mahomet Enafer*, King of *Morocco*, and put 60000 of his men to the Sword; assumed these Arms, that thus named this Kingdom, which was before called the Kingdom of the *Bastitanes*; because that Victory, like a strong Castle, had confirmed his Estates unto him. Whereas, in case there were no other error in his supposition, the *Bastitanes* were no Inhabitants of *Castile*, but of *Valencia* and *Murcia*, Provinces far enough off from the *Old Castile*, at the first taking of that name. And for the former Etymology, it appeareth most evidently, in that the people are by the *Latins* called *Castellani*: the Country, *Castella*: the same name with those elder *Castellani* which inhabited *Catalogne*. But not to stand upon the name, certain it is, that the Inhabitants hereof, having been conquered by the *Romans*, and made a part of their Empire, fell by degrees to the *Alani*, and from them to the *Goths*, as hath been shewed already on some other occasion. From them extorted by the *Moors*, with the help of *Spain*: recovered, foot after foot, by the Kings of *Leon*; governed under them, at first, by *Presidential* Earls, Commanders of so many Castles in the Country of the *Vaccii*, fortified and defended against the *Moors*. *Ordengo* the second, harbouring some suspitions against these Earls, caused them all to be cruelly murdered. The people upon this, revolted from the Crown of *Leon*; governed first by Judges, then by Earls again, as an absolute and free Estate. *Ferdinand Gonfles*, the first that re-assumed the Title of Earl of *Castile*, coming to the Court of *Leon* with a brave Retinue, sold to King *Sancho* an Hawk, and an Horle, of excellent kinds, for a sum of money; conditioned, that if the Money were not paid at the time agreed on, it should be doubled, and redoubled, till the Debt were

paid

fatisted. This money, by the negligence of the King's Officers, who looked upon the Contract as a matter of jest, became to great a sum, that the King, to satisfy *Gonfles*, made him the first Proprietary-Earl of *Castile*, Anno 939; releasing that Estate from all acknowledgment to the Kings of *Leon*. *Nuñez*, or *Evoira*, as some call her, Sister and Heir of *Garcia* the fourth Earl hereof, brought this Estate by Marriage to *Sancho*, firnamed the Great, King of *Navarre*, Anno 1028; by whom it was erected into a Kingdom, and given to him by *Ferdinand*, his second Son, Anno 1034. Kings of most note and observation in the course of their story, are 1. *Ferdinand*, their first King; who added *Leon* to his Kingdom, in right of *Sancho*, his Wife, Sister and Heir of *Ferdinand* the last King thereof, of the race of *Pelayus*. 2. *Alfonso* the first, who subdued the Kingdom of *Toledo*, adding it, by the name of *New Castile*, unto his Estate. 3. *Alfonso* the Fourth, who only conquered from the Crown of *Navarre*, whatsoever lay on the *Castilian* side on the River *Bieru*, but also the whole Countries of *Alava*, and *Guisqucoa*, all which he united to *Castile*: but grew so great, that he caused himself to be solemnly crowned Emperor of *Spain*, in the Cathedral Church of *Leon*, by the Arch-bishop of *Toledo*; and gave his Son *Sancho* the title of King of *Castile*, in his own life-time. The chief of the Confederates against *Mahomet Enafer*, the *Amir-momine* of *Morocco*, whom he vanquished in the famous battel of *Muradali*, or *Sierra Moracca*, Anno 1213. 4. *Ferdinand* the third, who incorporated *Leon* and *Castile* into one Estate, and added the Kingdoms of *Murcia*, *Corduba*, and *Sevil*, taken from the *Moors*, unto his Dominions. 5. *Alfonso* the fifth of *Castile*, and the ninth of *Leon*, elected Emperor of the *Germanies*, but more famous for his eminence in *Astronomy*; the Author of the *Alfonsine Tables*: compiled by many Learned Men assembled together, by his means, in the City of *Toledo*, where, in the compiling of it, it is affirmed by a *Spanish* Writer, that he spent more than the Revenues of the Pope in ten years did amount unto. 6. *Sancho* the 3d. Son of this *Alfonso*, the Author of the great breach in the line of *Castile*: for having the hap to survive *Ferdinand*, firnamed *de la Cerde*, his elder Brother; he made himself so strong a Party in his Father's life time, that he succeeded in the Kingdom, depriving his Brother's Children of their Right therein, though many attempts were made, in their favour, afterwards. *Don Alfonso*, eldest Son of which *Ferdinand* married into *France*, was Father of *Lewis* Earl of *Clermont*; who by *Leonora* de *Cipines*, a Daughter of the new house of *Medina Sidonia*, was Father of *Lewis*, *Tobu* and *Isabella* de *la Cerde*, (in which last, the Male Issue being quite extinct) the whole Rights of that line remained: brought by her to her Husband *Bernard*, a base Son of the house of *Foix*, created by King *Henry* the second, the first Earl of *Medina Cell*; whose Son, called *Garcia*, left the name of *Foix*, and took unto himself that of *de la Cerde*; continued ever since in his Posterity advanced unto the honour of Dukes of *Medina Cell*, in the person of *Lewis* the first Earl, the better to preserve in memory their descent from, and lawful title to that Crown. And for the better keeping and preserving of their claim unto it, it is affirmed to be the custom of this House, once, at the least, in the life time of every Duke, to put up a Petition to the King then reigning, for restitution to the Throne; which the King receiving assensually, doth of course subscribe this answer to it, viz. *Ne ego licet*; that is to say, there is no room for him. 8. *Isabel* the Good, driven out of this Kingdom by *Henry* of *Transilunare*, his Brother, restored again, for a time, by the valour of *Edward* the Black-Prince, Son of *Edward* the third. 9. *John*, Son of *Henry* of *Transilunare*,

who married his Son *Henry*, to *Katharine* Daughter of *John* of *Gann*, by *Castile*, one of the Daughters of *Don Pedro* the Earl; to uniting both Titles into one. The times in which the Princes, and the rest, did reign, appeare in these Catalogues of the Earls and Kings of *Castile*, which are as follow.

The Earls of Castile.

- | | | |
|---------|---|--|
| A. Chr. | | |
| 910 | 1. <i>Ferdinand Gonfles</i> the first Proprietary Earl. | |
| 932 | 2. <i>Garcias</i> Son of <i>Ferdinand</i> . | |
| 933 | 3. <i>Sancho</i> , or <i>Saudin</i> , Son of <i>Garcias</i> . | |
| 1018 | 4. <i>Garcias</i> II. Son of <i>Sancho</i> , slain by Treason; without issue. | |
| 1028 | 5. <i>Nuñez</i> , or <i>Evoira</i> , the Sister of <i>Garcias</i> the second, married to <i>Sancho</i> King of <i>Navarre</i> , Father of <i>Ferdinand</i> , made by him the first King of <i>Castile</i> . | |

The Kings of Castile.

- | | | |
|---------|---|-----|
| A. Chr. | | |
| 1036 | 1. <i>Ferdinand</i> , King of <i>Castile</i> by the gift of his Father, and of <i>Leon</i> in the right of his Wife. | 33. |
| 1067 | 2. <i>Sancho</i> , Son of <i>Ferdinand</i> , King of <i>Castile</i> only; his younger Brother <i>Alfonso</i> succeeding in <i>Leon</i> . | 6. |
| 1073 | 3. <i>Alfonso</i> , the Brother of <i>Sancho</i> , King of <i>Leon</i> , and afterwards of <i>Castile</i> also. | |
| 1108 | 4. <i>Isabella</i> , Queen of <i>Castile</i> and <i>Leon</i> } 15. | |
| | <i>Aragon</i> . | |
| 1122 | 5. <i>Alfonso</i> III. King of <i>Castile</i> and <i>Leon</i> , the Son of <i>Isabella</i> , by <i>Raymond</i> of <i>Burgundy</i> , her former Husband. | |
| 1157 | 6. <i>Sancho</i> II. the elder Son of <i>Alfonso</i> the third; his younger Brother <i>Ferdinand</i> succeeding in <i>Leon</i> . | 2. |
| 1159 | 7. <i>Alfonso</i> IV. firnamed the Noble, Son of <i>Sancho</i> the 2d. 55. | |
| 1214 | 8. <i>Henry</i> , Son of <i>Alfonso</i> the fourth. 3. | |
| 1217 | 9. <i>Ferdinand</i> II. Son of <i>Alfonso</i> the ninth of <i>Leon</i> , and of <i>Berenguela</i> the Sister of <i>Henry</i> , succeeded his Father in <i>Leon</i> also, Anno 1230; the Kingdoms never since disjoynted, though the title of <i>Leon</i> in short time became discontinued. | |
| 1252 | 10. <i>Alfonso</i> V. firnamed the Wise, Son of <i>Ferdinand</i> the second, King of <i>Castile</i> and <i>Leon</i> , and Emperor Elect. 32. | |
| 1283 | 11. <i>Sancho</i> III. the second Son of <i>Alfonso</i> the fifth; the children of <i>Ferdinand</i> de <i>la Cerde</i> , his elder Brother, being left beside 12. | |
| 1295 | 12. <i>Ferdinand</i> III. of <i>Castile</i> , and IV. of <i>Leon</i> , Son of <i>Sancho</i> the third. 18. | |
| 1312 | 13. <i>Alfonso</i> VI. Son of <i>Ferdinand</i> . 38. | |
| 1350 | 14. <i>Pedro</i> , the Son of <i>Alfonso</i> , for his infinite Tyrannies, firnamed the Cruel. 18. | |
| 1368 | 15. <i>Henry</i> II. the Daftard Son of <i>Alfonso</i> the sixth, Earl of <i>Transilunare</i> . 31. | |
| 1379 | 16. <i>John</i> , the Son of <i>Henry</i> the second. 11. | |
| 1390 | 17. <i>Henry</i> III. Son of <i>John</i> , and Husband of <i>Katharine</i> , the Daughter of <i>John</i> of <i>Gann</i> , and the Lady <i>Castile</i> , one of the Daughters of King <i>Pedro</i> . 17. | |
| 1406 | 18. <i>John</i> II. Son of <i>Henry</i> and <i>Katharine</i> . 48. | |
| 1454 | 19. <i>Hen</i> IV. Son of <i>John</i> the second. 21. | |
| 1473 | 20. <i>Isabel</i> , Sister of <i>Henry</i> the fourth, married to <i>Ferdinand</i> V. Son of <i>Isabella</i> the first, and <i>John</i> of <i>Castile</i> , one of the Daughters of King <i>Pedro</i> . 17. | |

Of whose Acts, and life, we will make more ample

mention when we shall come to speak of the *Monarchy of Spain*, which began in them, and hath been since continued in their posterity.

The chief Orders of Knighthood within these Kingdoms of *Castile* and *Leon*, long since united into one, were Three in all; partly Religious, partly Military; and one Order of Religious persons, not known in any Country but *Spain* alone.

This of the last sort, is called the Order of *Mercy*, or *de la Merced*; first instituted by King *James of Aragon*, in the chief Church of *Barcelona*, Anno, 1218. Admitted afterwards into the Kingdoms of *Castile*, where of most esteem; but so, that in remembrance of their first foundation, they still retain their ancient Arms, which are those of *Aragon*, viz. a Cross Argent, and Four Bends Gules, in a field Or. Their habit white; the Rule of their Order, that of *S. Augustine*'s, the practice and profession of it, to gather Alms amongst the People wherewith to redeem such Christian Captives, as either by *Piracy*, the chance of War, or by some other means are enthrall'd to the *Turks* and *Moors*: sending their Agents yearly to *Algiers* and *Fesse*, to inform them of the state, age, and quality, of each several Captive, and after, on instruction from the Brethren of this Society, to deal in the redemption of them. A business which they manage with great care and Faithfulness, and are accordingly trusted with great sums of money, given and collected to that end: few men here dying, who give not some Legacy or other to this pious use. Nor are the Kings behind hand in so good a work, promoting it with a liberal purse, and giving as much ordinarily out of his Estate, as the Brethren have collected in all *Spain* besides. And to say truth, it doth concern him more than others, because they are his Subjects chiefly, for whose redemption the whole sum is given and gathered: Religious persons are ransom'd first; and then the *Lazies*; the young and servicable men, before old and impotent: if after the Redemption on the *Spanish* Captives, they have any stock left, they keep it not till another year, but therewith ransom Captives of some other Nations. So that this seemeth to succeed in the place of the now antiquated and useless Orders of Knighthood, which were heretofore of great authority and power: that is to say;

1. Of *Calatrava*, a Town of the Kingdom of *Toledo*, abandoned by the *Templers*, (to whom the defence thereof belonged) on the approach of the *Moors*, made good by *Raymond*, the Abbot of *Pispiria*, and the Monks of *Cisteaux*, Anno 1157. For the future preservation and defence whereof, they ordained this Order; which in process of time grew to such estate, that besides eight fair *Priories*, they enjoyed in *Spain* no less than 61 Towns and Castles. The Knights hereof do wear for their habit, a White Robe, with a Red Cross upon their breasts; confirmed by Pope Alexander the third, Anno 1164, under the Discipline of *Cisteaux*. Their residence is at the Castle *Covo*; bound, by their Order, to serve in the Wars against the Infidels: upon which services, they have been sometimes in the field with three hundred great Horse.

2. Of *S. Jago*, instituted by the Canons of *Eloy*, and certain Gentlemen of *Castile*, in imitation of the Order of *Calatrava*; for the security and entertainment of Christian Pilgrims, travelling to the Shrine of *S. Jago*, confirmed by the said Pope Alexander the third, Anno 1175, under the Rule of the *Augustine*. Their Habit is a White Robe, with a Red Cross like a Sword: the companions of it, according to the first Founders, being part Ecclesiastical and part Secular: whereof these last are only tied unto the vow of conjugal Chastity. They grew in little time

unto such esteem, that besides two Colleges or *Seminaries* in *Salamanca*, and a College in *Sevil*; they had four *Hermities* in the Mountains, and five *Hospitals* well endowed for the entertainment of Strangers; together with 90 Towns and Castles in several parts of the Kingdom. The whole number of Gentlemen, besides *Friers* serving in their Cures, and other Ministers, are above 600. Their first residence at the Hospital of *S. Mark*, in the Suburbs of *Leon*, on a diflike with *Ferdinand* the second King of *Leon*, removed to *Ucles* in *Castile*, bestowed upon them by *Alfonso* the 4th. Upon this occasion being divided, they have since two Masters, or *Comendadores*, the one called the *Comendador of Leon*, who resides at *St. Mark*; the other the *Comendador of Castile* who resides at *Ucles*.

3. Of *Alcantara*, a Town of *Extremadura*, defended by *Ferdinand* of *Leon*, against the *Moors*; where he framed this Order; confirmed by Pope *Lucius*, Anno 1183. Others ascribe it to *Alfonso*, the Successor of that *Ferdinand*, Anno 1217; by whom endowed with all the Lands of the *Calatravians* in the Realm of *Leon*: but acknowledging the superiority thereof, and under the same Rule of *Cisteaux*. Their device at first was a Pear-tree Vert, in a field Or, to which hanged a pair of Shackles, as a sign of their subjection to them of *Calatrava*, changed, Anno 1411, to a White Robe, and a Green Cross on their breasts.

I omit here the order of the *Dove* and *Reason*, instituted by King *John* of *Castile*, because of small esteem, and but short continuance: nor shall I now speak any thing of the Arms of the Kingdom, which we have seen before on other occasion. And so much for *Castile*, the first of those Three greater Kingdoms of *Spain*, under which all the rest are now reduced; containing in this Continent all the Provinces and Estates before described; amounting to two third parts of the whole; and many large estates elsewhere, as shall be shewed hereafter in its proper place. Pass we on, next, to *Portugal*; the second, in repute, of the said three Kingdoms; not so much for the largeness of the Territories which it had on the Continent, as for its great Appendices in all other parts of the World.

II. The Kingdom of Portugal.

THE Kingdom of *PORTUGAL* containeth, 1. *Portugal* it self: 2. *Algarve*, or *Regnum Algarbium*, and 3. the *Tercera's*, or *Isles of Azores*: these last not reckoned parts of *Spain*, by any of our Writers, either old or new; but made by use part hereof, because situate over against *Portugal*, one of the first additions which was made unto it on the Ocean: and finally, because I know not under what head to reduce them better.

And first *PORTUGAL* it self, it is bounded on the North, with the Rivers *Minio* and *Avia*, which part it from *Gallicia*; on the South, with *Algarve*; on the West, with the *Atlantic* Ocean: and on the East, with the two *Castiles*, and *Extremadura*, from which divided by a Line drawn from *Rivadania*, standing on the *Avia*, to *Badaioz*, on the *Anar*, or *Guadiana*. Extended on the Sea-coast from North to South, 400 miles: the breadth of it, in the broadest place (not taken in the Islands into the account) 100 miles; in the narrowest, 80: the whole circumference, 879 miles: and in that compass, 1460 Parishes.

It was first called *Lusitania*, from the *Lusitani*, the chief Inhabitants thereof; and took the name of *Portugal* either

either from the Haven or Port of *Cale*, now called *Cala*, sometimes a very rich and flourishing Empery; or rather from the Haven-Town of *Portus*, at the mouth of *Duero*; where the *Gauls* (or the *French* rather) used to land their Merchandise: which was therefore called *Portus Gallorum*; and which Town was given in Dower with *Terefa*, the Daughter of *Alfonso* the sixth, to *Henry of Lorraine*, with the title of Earl of *Portugal*. Whole Successors coming to be Kings, extended this name to all those Countries which they got from the *Moors*, as it continueth at this day.

The Air is very healthy, the Country for the most part hilly, and bare of Corn, supplied from *France*, and other parts of the North; that which they have, being as good as any in *Europe*, if not better. The soil, and people, in all places, not rich alike. For where the soil is richest, (as in the parts lying on the North of *Duero*) there the people are poorest; in regard of the great distance thereof from *Lisbon*; and so not benefitted by the trading of that wealthy City. And where the soil is poorest, there the people be richest, helping themselves by trade and manufacture; especially by making Silks and Salt, sufficient for themselves, and for other Countries. But where there is a defect of Corn, that defect is otherwise sufficiently recompensed with abundance of Honey, Wine, Oyl, Alloms, Fruits, Fish, Salt, white Marble, and some Mines of Silver, &c.

The people of a more plain and simple behaviour, than the rest of *Spain*; and (if we believe the old Proverb) none of the wisest. For whereas the *Spaniards* are said to seem wise, and yet to be Fools, the *French* to seem Fools, and yet to be wise: the *Portugals* are affirmed to be neither wise indeed, nor so much as to seem so. But little different from which, is the *Spanish* By-word, which telleth us of the *Portugals*, that they are *Pocos y Locos*; few, and foolish: which others vary with the addition of another part of their Character; saying, they are *Pocos, Sotos y Devotos*. Few and Foolish; but withal Devout. They have great animosities (if it be not grown to an Antipathy) against the *Castilians*, for bereaving them of their Kingdom and Liberty, though both of late, recovered by them: but, when most Fools, were counted for good Seafaring-men, and happy in the discovery of Foreign Nations.

Rivers it hath of all sorts, both great and small, almost 200. Those of most note, 1. *Minio*, full of Red-Led (from hence called *Minio* by the *Latins*), navigable with small Vessels 100 miles. 2. *Lethes*, now *Lavada*. 3. *Mitadana*, now *Mondego*. 4. *Tagus*. 5. *Duero*, and 6. *Anar*, these three last common also to the rest of *Spain*; *Anar*, or *Guadiana*, passing by *Portugal* but for 7 Leagues only; *Tagus* for 18, and *Duero* for 80. None of them navigable for any long space, by Ships of burden; the Rivers of all *Spain* being generally swift of course, restrained within narrow Channels, banked on both sides with very steep Rocks, which make them inconvenient for Navigation: inasmuch that it is reckoned for a great Privilege of *Tagus*, and the Realm of *Portugal*, that this River is there navigable with great Ships, fifteen or twenty miles within the Continent. But here that want is somewhat tolerably supplied with three excellent Havens: 1. That of *Lisbon* upon *Tagus*; and 2. *Porto*, on *Duero*, to the North of *Lisbon*; of which more anon: 3. of *Setaval*, South of *Lisbon*, situate on a Gulf of 20 miles in length, and 3 in breadth: a place of principal importance to those parts of the Realm. Rivers, however, of great fame; according to whose course the whole Country was divided; by the *Roman*, into *Ulterior*, lying beyond *Duero*, Northwards; 2. *Citerior*, on the South of *Tagus*; and 3. *Interrimem*, betwixt both.

Principal Cities of this part, 1. *Lisbon*, seated upon *Tagus*, a famous City for Traffic; the *Portugals* in all their Navigations setting sail from hence. By the *Latins* called *Ulyssipus*, and *Ulyssippo*; because, as some say *Ulysses* built it, coming hither in the course of his ten years travel: a thing merely fabulous, it being no where found that *Ulysses* did ever see this Ocean, but like enough it is, that this Town being seated conveniently for Navigation, and inhabited by Seafaring-men, might at the first be consecrated to the memory of so great a Traveller: as *Athens*, being a place of Learning, was dedicated to *Minerva*, whom the *Greeks* call *Athena*. It is in compass 7 miles, and containeth upwards of 30 Parishes, and in them 2000 houses: all of neat and elegant building. Turrets and Towers it numbeth upon the Wall, about 76; Gates toward the Sea-shore, 22. And towards the Continent, situate upon five small Hills, betwixt which is a Valley which runs down to the River: but by reason of the situation, serving not only for a Prison of men of quality: the entry of the River being defended by the Castle of *Cascais*; and nearer to the City, by the Fort of *S. Julian*, and the Rock of *Belem*; munitioned with 20 pieces of Ordnance. This City heretofore was honoured with the Seat of the Kings, since of the Vice-Royes, an Archbishopric-See, the Staple of Commodities for all the Kingdom, and thought to be more worth than the whole Realm beside, said, by some *French* Writers, to be the best peopled City in *Christendom*, next unto *Paris*; and by *Betero* an *Italian*, made to be the fourth Mart-Town of *Europe*, the other three being *Constantinople*, *Paris*, and *Moscow*. In which they do great wrong to *London*, as populous, and well-traded, as the best of them all. 2. *Santarem*, on the *Tagus*, so called from *S. Irene*, a Nun of *Tomas*, (a Monastery, in which the old Kings of *Portugal* did use to be crowned), here martyred by the *Moors*; by *Ptolomy* called *Scaballus*; then a *Roman* Colony, 3. *Sintra*, upon the main *Atlantic*, at the end of huge Mountains, called *Monte Luna*: whither by reason of the cool refreshings from the Sea, and pleasure of the Woods adjoining, the Kings of *Portugal* used to retire in the heats of the Summer. 4. *Coimbre*, on both sides the River *Almondego*, pleasantly seated amongst Vineyards, and Woods of Olives, a Bishopric-See, and an University; the Masters whereof made the Commentary on most part of *Aristotle*, called from hence, *Schola Canimbricensis*. Then on the North of the River *Duero*, betwixt that and *Minio*; are 5. *Bragas*, by *Ptolomy* called *Bracoria Augusta*, reckoned by *Antonine* for one of the four chief Cities in *Spain*, the Royal Seat, when time was, of the *Suevian* Kings, and now the See of an Archbishop, contending for the Primacy with him of *Toledo*. 6. *Porto*, the Haven of the *Gauls*, on the Mouth of *Duero*. 7. *Miranda*, a Bishopric-See on the same River. 8. *Bragas*, the Duke whereof is so great a Prince, that it is thought a third part of the People of *Portugal* are his Vassals, and live on his Lands: originally descended from *Alfonso*, natural Son to *John* the first; created by his Father, Earl of *Borellia*, after Duke of *Braganca*; the latter Dukes, since the time of King *Emmanuel*, being withal of the right Royal Blood; two steps of main advantage to the Regal Throne, lately attended and obtained by *John* Duke of *Braganca*, now called *John* the 4th. And finally, on the South of *Tagus*, betwixt that and the Kingdom of *Algarve*, there is 9. *Ebora*, in the midst of a large and spacious Plain, an Archbishopric See, and an University; this last of the Foundation of King *Henry* the Cardinal, i.e. *Portelgre*, a Bishop-See. 11. *Olyvencia* on the *Guadiana*. 12. *Beia*, by *Pliny* called *Pax Julia*, now *Meas*, and not very well inhabited; but antiently a Roman Colony, and one of the three Juridical Regions of *Lusitania*.

2. The Kingdom of *ALGARVE* lyeth on the South of *Portugal*, from which divided by a line drawn from *Afóris*, on the Western Sea, to *Odebre*, a Castle on the *Guadiana*: on the East, bounded by *Andalusia*; on the West and South, by the main *Atlantic*. This is the most wild and desert part of this Kingdom, barren and dry: peopled with few Towns, nor those very populous; hilly and mountainous withal; but yielding, by the benefit of the Sea, a great Trade of Fishing, of *Tunny* especially; whereof more caught upon this Coast, than in all the Kingdom.

The name is took from the Western situation of it, for so the word *Algarve* signifieth in the *Arabic* Tongue. The utmost end of it, called anciently *Promontorium Sacrum*; now the Cape of *S. Vincent*; because the bones of *S. Vincent*, religiously preserved by the Christians, were here burnt and scattered about for the *Moors*. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Niebla*, the Seat of *Aben Mefad*, once a King of this Country. 2. *Silvis*, an Episcopal See, seated in the lowland part. 3. *Villa nova*, situate beyond the Cape. 4. *Tavilla*, the *Balsa*, and *S. Faro*, the *Ofensio* of *Platony*, both noted Ports on the *Atlantic*. 6. *Lagos*, another Haven-Town also.

This Country, conquered by the *Moors*, with the rest of *Spain*, in the distractions of their Power, was for a time under the Sovereignty and Command of the Kings of *Sevil*. Recovered from the *Moors* of *Sevil*, by the Kings of *Morocco*, it became subject unto them till they left this Country; and, after their retreat, was parcelled among many Princes. One of which, called *Aben Mefad*, reigning in *Niebla*, and the parts adjoining, being dispossessed of his Estate by *Alfonso the Wise*, most of the other Towns and Princes submitted to him, and became his Vassals, Anno 1277. More absolutely subdued and made subject to the Crown of *Portugal*, by *Alfonso* the third, Anno 1260; to whom the said *Alfonso*, the tenth of that name in *Leon*, and the fifth in *Castile*, had given the same in Dowry with *Beatrice* his Daughter. From which Marriage issued *Dionysius*, or *Dennis*, King of *Portugal*, the first that ever used the title of *Rex Algarbiorum*, Anno 1279.

3. The *AZORES* are certain Islands lying in the *Atlantic* Ocean, opposite to the City of *Lisbon*, from which distant but 250 Leagues, Situate betwixt the 38 and 40 degrees of Northern Latitude; and one of them in the first Longitude; which is commonly reckoned from these Islands, as being the most Western part of the *World*, before the discovery of *America*.

They were thus called from the multitude of *Goshawks* which were found there in the beginning; (the word *Azor*, in the *Spanish* Tongue, signifying a *Goshawk*) though at this time there be none of them to be found. Called also the *Flemish* Islands, because first discovered by the *Flemings*; and the great numbers of them in the Isle of *Faial*, (one of the chief of all the pack) where there are yet some Families which resemble the *Flemings* both in their complexion and habit, and not far from the place of their abode, a Torrent, which the *Spaniards* call *Ribera de los Flamencos*, or the River of *Flemings*. They are also called the *Tercera's*, from *Tercera* the Isle among them.

The Air of those Islands are generally good, and subject unto few Diseases, except that which the *Portugals* call the *Blood*; being an impohtumation of the blood, breaking out at the eyes, or other parts of the body. Some other inconveniences they are subject to, proceeding from the humidity of the place; the great winds and storms, of such a violent and strange kind of working, that Bars of Iron as big as a man's arm, have in six years been worn as little as a Straw. All of them well

stored with *Fleish*, *Fish* and other things necessary excepting *Salt* and *Oyl*, with which they are furnished out of *Portugal*. Wines they have also for their own use, but not to be transported far, because of their weakness: for which cause also, the richer men provide themselves of *Canary* Wines, or those of the Island of *Madera*. Of like nature is their *Wheat*, and other *Fruits*, which hold good above a year. All of them subject unto Earth-quakes, and fume to breathings out of fire, which continually sendeth forth fuming vapours. The chief Commodities which they transport into other Countries, are *Canary-Birds* for *Ladies*, *Woad* for the *Diers*, *Joyners*, *work*, which they fell to the *Spaniards*, and *Bees* for the victualling of such Ships as come there to be victualled.

The Inhabitants are generally laborious, excellent *Husbands* on their grounds; inasmuch as they make *Vines* to grow out of *Rocks*; much given to *Journey*; by which they make many pretty fancies, much esteemed by the *Spaniards*, but not so expert at it, as those of *Nuremberg*. They take great pains to teach the Cattel understanding; the *Oxen* being taught to know when their Master calleth them. In other things they conform to the *Portugals*, both in their Customs and Apparel, but with some snatching of the *Fleming*, which Nation they affect above any other.

The Islands nine in number; and distinguished by the several names of, 1. *Tercera*, 2. *S. Michael*, 3. *Faial*, 4. *Gratiola*, 5. *S. George*, 6. *Pico*, 7. *Corvo*, 8. *Flores*, and 9. *S. Marie's*; of which, *S. Michael*, and *S. Marie's*, lyeth next to *Spain*; *Tercera*, on the North-west of those, (by consequence) the third in Order, whence it had the name *S. George's*, *Gratiola*, *Pico*, *Faial*, on the West of that, and finally, those of *Corvo*, and *Flores*, nearest to *America*.

1. *TERCERA*, the chief of all the rest, 18 miles in compass; well stored with *Peaches*, *Apples*, *Lemons*, *Oranges*; and for the Kitchen, with *Tunneys*, *Cabages*, plenty of *Pot-herbs*, and as good *Potatoes*, (which are the best food the people have) as any in the world; but more esteemed in *Portugal*, than they be in this Island, by reason of their great abundance. Here is also great quantity of the best kind of *Woad* (which from hence is called *Island Woad*) and a *Plant* about the height of a man, which bears no fruit; but hath a Root as profitable as those that do, out of which the people draw a thin and tender filin, wherewith they fill their Matresses, instead of *Feathers*. Fowl enough for the use of man, and yet none of prey. No part of any safety in it, but that of *Angra*; and that made safe by Art, and not by Nature: the whole begirt with *Rocks*, which stick out like a pointed *Diamond*, able to pierce the feet of any who should venture over them. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Praye*, on the Sea-side well walled, but not very well peopled. 2. *S. Barbara*, 3. *S. Sebastian's*, 4. *Gualne*, and 5. *Villa Nova*, Burroughs of good note. 6. *Angra*, the chief, not of this Island only, but of all the nine. The residence of the Governor, and an Archbishop's See, who hath in his Cathedral Church: seated on a convenient Bay, made in the form of a *Crescent*, with two *Promontories* on each side, (like the two Horns of a half-Moon) bearing into the Sea; each Fortified with a strong Cattle for the defence of the Haven: the Town it self also well walled about, and environed with sharp *Rocks* on all sides. Both Town and Cattle well garrisoned, and no less diligently guarded. This, in regard of its great strength, and commodious Haven, is esteemed the principal of these Islands, and communicates it's name unto all the rest; though neither nearest unto *Spain*, nor the greatest in compass.

2. S.

2. *S. MARIES*, so called from the Saint (as *S. George* and *S. Michael* are) unto which it is dedicated; is the most Southern of these Isles, inhabited by *Spaniards* only; twelve miles in circuit, the making of Earthen Vessels, and those much given unto the making of Earthen Vessels. So naturally fenced with *Rocks*, that it is, and may be easily kept by the Inhabitants, without the charge of a Garrison. The chief Town of it hath the name of *S. Maries* also, which it cither giveth unto the Island, or borroweth from it.

3. *S. MICHAEL'S*, directly North of *S. Maries*, from which, little distant; the biggest in the whole pack, as being 20 miles in length, though the breadth not answerable; much subject unto Earth-quakes and fiery vapours. Of most note amongst our modern Geographers, who have removed hither the first Meridian (by which they divide the World into East and West) from the *Cape*, or *Fortunate Islands*; where it was fixed in the time of *Platony*, and others of the Ancient Writers.

And this remove seems countenanced even by Nature it self; it being observed that the Compsas when it cometh under the Meridian, drawn through this Isle, hath little or no variation at all, but pointeth almost directly towards the North: whereas in all other places, or less Meridians, East and West, it pointeth not so directly North, but more or less to the North-east, or the North-west; which the Mariners call the *Variation*, or the North-easting and the North-westing of the Compsas. And yet it's observed of late, that there is some more sensible variation of it in this Isle of *S. Michael*, than in that of *Corvo*; which therefore is conceived more fit for the first Meridian.

The chief Town hereof, besides many Burroughs and lesser Hamlets, *Punta del Gada*, seated upon a dangerous Sea, and without any Port; yet more frequented by Strangers, than the Port of *Angra*, because here they may go in, and out as they please; but not so in the other.

4. *FAYAL*, 17 or 18 miles in length; plentifully provided with all things necessary for the life of man, and well furnished with *Woad*, for which Commodity, much frequented by the Merchants of *England*. The chief Town of it, *Dorta*; defended with a Castle, and that guarded by *Spaniards*; both Town and island taken by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1597. This action was called the *Island-Voyage*; undertaken as well to divert the War, which the *Spaniards* threatened to bring to our own doors; as, by seizing some of those islands, to intercept the *Spanish* Fleet in their return, and to hinder them in their setting out: by which means, wanting their *Indian* Gold, they might be brought to better terms with their Neighbour-Nations. And though the *English* were not able to hold it long, yet it was said, that the Booty got in this Expedition, amounted to 40000 Crowns; besides the honour of beating the *Spaniards* upon his own ground. It took his name from its abundance of *Bees*.

5. *GRATIOLA*, not above five or six Leagues in compass; but so well furnished with *Fruits*, that they feed much yearly to *Tercera*; inhabited by *Portugals* only, but so poor, that they are not able to bear the charge of a Garrison. The chief Town of it called *La Plaisa*.

6. *S. GEORGE'S*, twelve miles long, about three in breadth; mountainous, and full of Forests; but those Forests so well stored with *Cedars*, that they use them many times for Shipping, and sometimes for *Fewel*. The chief Town of it, called *S. George*, as the Island is.

7. *PICO*, lyeth on the South of the Isle of *S. George*, and took this name from an high Hill, in the form of a Pyramid, which the *Portugals* generally call a *Pike*,

or *Pico*. Replenished with *Fruits*, some *Cedars*, and a tree called *Teixo*, of great bulk, and as much beauty; the wood thereof exceeding hard, red within, and waved; so admirably beautiful, that it is allowed only to the King's Officers, the other Subjects being interdicted the use of it, (but on special licence) by a publick Edit. In bigness, it is second only unto that of *S. Michael*, if not equal to it; hardly so much in length, but of greater breadth. The chief Towns of it, 1. *S. Sebastian*, 2. *Caldeia de Nespim*, both upon the Sea, and in the East parts of the Island.

8. *FLORES*, directly East from *Faial*, so called from its abundance of Flowers, (as *Cravilla* from the like flourishing Verdure of it) is in compass not above 8 miles; but plentifully furnished with Cattel, and good grounds to feed them. The chief Town of it, *Santa Cruz*. The Isle (though small, yet) twice as big as the Isle of

9. *CORVO*, so called from its abundance of *Crows*, situate on the North coast, and but little distant: both very unsafe, and both most miserable poor, by reason of the many Pirates which ly betwixt them, to intercept such ships as trade to *America*. But this, though much smaller than the others, may in time be of more esteem than any of them, in regard it is conceived to be the most natural place for the first Meridian, as before was noted: the Needle here pointing directly to the North, without Variation. Which whether it proceed from some secret inclination of the Loadstone to that part of the World, more in this place than any other; or that being situate between the two great Continents of *Europe* and *America*, it is drawn equally towards both, by the magnetic virtue of the Earth it self, I leave to be disputed by more able Judgments.

These Islands were first discovered and subdued by the *Portugals*, under the conduct, or by the direction of Prince *Hemy*, Son of *John* the first; who first made the *Portugals* in love with the Seas. And they were also the last Members of the Crown of *Portugal*, which held out for *Don Antonio* the Bastard, against *Philip* the second of *Castile*; against whom the island of *Tercera* was for a while gallantly defended by *Emanuel de Silva*, with the help of the *French*; but taken at the last by the Marquess of *Santa Cruz*, and the *French*, after promise of life, cruelly murdered in cold blood. After which, garrisoned at the first by none but *Portugals*. But upon some commotion happening in that Kingdom, it was thought fit, on some Reason of State, to make sure of those islands, by *Spanish* Garrisons; which accordingly were put into the Castle of *Angra* in *Tercera*; the Towns of *Punta del Gada*, in *S. Michael*; and *Dorta* in *Faial*. And to say truth, the *Spaniards* had good reason to be careful of them: these Islands being of such importance, as without them the Navigation of the *Indies*, *Philippins*, *Brazil*, and *New Spain*, could not be continued: because the *Fleets* which come from those Countries to *Lisbon* or *Sevil*, must, in a manner, of necessity touch upon some of them; as well in following their Course, if they come from the West, as in recovering such Winds as are useful to them, if they came from the East.

But to return again to the main Land of *Portugal*, know, that the ancient Inhabitants of it, were the *Lusitan*, dwelling betwixt *Tagus* and *Duero*, the old *Lusitania* being bounded within those Rivers, the *Celtici* and *Turdiani*, who took up also some part of *Baetica*, dwelling on the South of *Tagus*; and the *Galaici* *Bracari*, (so called to difference them from the *Galaici* *Lukenesi*, who possessed *Gallitia*) on the North of *Duero*. Subdued first unto the *Romans*; by whom accounted one of the three parts of *Spain*. In the declining

of their Empire conquered by the *Alani*; and from them taken by the *Suevians*; who, for a time, made the City of *Braga* the Royal Seat of their Kings. The *Suevians* lost it to the *Goths*; and the *Goths* to the *Moor*s, as hath been shewn already in their several Stories. Recovered, in part, by the King of *Leon*, to whom that part continued subject, till given by *Alfonso* the sixth of *Leon*, in Dowry with his late Daughter *Teresa*, to *Henry* of *Leira*, (whose virtue and good service, merited no less reward) *anno*, 1099. Who having fortunately governed it by the title of an Earl for the space of 12 years, left his Son *Alfonso*, Her both to his Fortunes and Vertues; honoured with the title of King of *Portugal*, by the Sovereigns of *Leon*, for his most gallant, demeanor shewn in the Battel of *Ovique*, *anno*, 1139. He had, before the *Assumption* of the Regal Stile, ruled 27 years with a great deal of honour; and reigned here with no less, 45 years after that *Assumption*; revered by his friends, and feared by his enemies. So that the whole time of his sitting in the Chair of State, was 72 years: a longer enjoying of Sovereignty, than any Prince since the first beginning of the *Roman* Monarchy. His Successors we shall have in order of the following Catalogue. But we must first tell you, as in other places of this Work, that the Princes of most note in the whole Succession, are, 1. *Henry* of *Lorraine*, (whom some make a *Burgundian* of the City of *Besconen*) who coming into *Spain* to the *Holy Wars*, and deserving nobly in the same, was honoured by *Alfonso* the sixth, with his Daughter *Teresa*, and the Town of *Porto* for her Dowry: given to him with the title of the Earl of *Portugal*. He extended his Estate as far as *Combriva*, on the South of the River *Duro*; so that River being before that time, the utmost bound of it that way. 2. *Alfonso* the first King, who took *Lisbon* from the *Moor*s, *anno*, 1247, and made it the Seat of his Kingdom; which he extended Southward as far as *Algarve*. 3. *Alfonso* the 3d, who partly by Conquest, and partly by Marriage, added *Algarve* to his Estate, getting it by the Sword, and confirming it to him by the Bed. He also did prevail so far with *Alfonso* the Wife, (never the wifer for so doing) as to get his Realm discharged of the Homage which formerly had been done to the Kings of *Leon*, *an*, 1270. 4. *Alfonso* the 4th, confederate with the fifth of the same name in *Castile*, against *Albacon* the *Miramon* of *Africk*, at the sight near the River *Salado* not far from *Tariff*; where they discomfited the vast Army of *Moor*s, consisting of 70000 Horse and Foot. 5. *John* the first, the base Son of *Pedro* the first; setting aside the Lady *Beatrix*, Queen of *Castile*, the Daughter of *Ferdinand* the first, and the Lawful Children of his Father, being many in number; by force and colour of Election, obtained the Kingdom. Fortified it by his Marriage with the Lady *Philipp*, Daughter of *John* of *Gauze*, Duke of *Lancaster*, a strong Competitor, at that time, for the Crown of *Castile*: on which relation, this King, the four Kings next succeeding, and two of this Kings younger Sons, were made Knights of the *Garter*. 6. *Edward* the son and successor of *John* the first; of whom there goes a story, that on the day of his Coronation, he was advised by a *Jew*, (one of his Physicians) learned in *Astrology*, to defer the Ceremony until noon, in regard he found by his Art, that if they did proceed until it in that conjuncture, his reign would be very short, and full of trouble. But the King, either out of magnanimity, or contempt of that Art, going on with the Ceremony, the *Jew*'s Prediction was found true; for he reigned not fully five years, and with ill success in his attempts against the *Moor*s. 7. *Henry* Duke of *Viseo*, (*Vifcontinus* the *Latins* call it) the second Son of *John* the first, created Knight of the *Garter* by King *Henry* the sixth, *an*,

1444. By whose encouragement and example, the *Portuguese* began to be affected to Foreign Voyages: discovering in his time, (and, for the most part, under his conduct also) the Islands of *Azora*, *Madera*, *Holy-Port*, those of *Cabo Verde*, and a great part of the Coast of *Africk*, as far as *Guinea*. He dyed *anno* 1465. 8. *Alfonso* the fifth, who warring on the *Moor*s in *Africk*, took from them the strong Towns of *Tangier*, *Alcazar*, and *Arzila*. 2. *John* the second, under whose reign the *Portugals* fully settled themselves in *Guinea*, and the Realms of *Congo*; discovering all the Coasts and Isles of *Africk*, (not before discovered as far as to the Cape of good hope, *anno* 1487: planting and fortifying as they passed: the whole discovery of *Africk*, the *East-Indies*, and *Brazil*, being perfected in the Reign of King 10 *Emanuel* under whom also they discomfited great Armies of the *Turks* and *Sultans*, of *Egypt*; bringing by Sea the riches of the *East*, into the *West*. 11. *Sebastian*, the Grandchild of King *John*, son of *Emanuel*, embarking himself unadvisedly in the Wars of *Africk*, lost his life (as it is generally supposed at the battel of *Alcazar*, in which three Kings fell in one day. But many of the *Portugals* are of opinion, that he was not killed, but that for shame and sorrow he returned not home; wandering from one place to another, and at last was found and avowed at *Venice*: thence carried to *Naples*, where he was kept three days in a dark Dungeon, without any furniture but a Knife and a Halter: brought into *Spain* by the King's Command, where at last he dyed. A man in whom so many circumstances met, to make up a truth, that the very *Spaniards* used to say, that either he was the true *Sebastian*, or else the Devil in his likeness. But whether true or not, it is not now material; Death having put an end to that dispute; though the controversy which ensued upon his death, for the Crown of *Portugal*, be not yet decided. For, though King *Philip* the second of *Spain*, succeeded in it next after *Henry* the Cardinal King (who only came upon the stage, that the Competitors might have time to declare their titles); and claimed the Crown as eldest Heir-male, and nearest Kinsman to King *Henry*; yet all the World was not well satisfied in the Justice and Equity of his Demands. In the carrying on of which Affairs, he seemed to deal very candidly to the eyes of men, not biased by their proper Interest: offering to submit his Title to a Disputation; professing, that the Laws of *Portugal* were more favourable to him, than the Law of *Castile*; and openly acknowledging that if he should chance to dye before the said *Henry*, his eldest Son, as being a degree further off, would come behind some others of the Pretendants to it, of whom himself had the precedence. But finding nothing done by *Henry* and meaning to make sure work after his decease, (*Antonio* the Bastard having got possession of *Lisbon*, and taking on himself as King, by a popular and tumultuous Election) he raised an Army under the command of *Ferdinand* de *Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*, and subdued all that stood against him; *Katherine* the Dutchess of *Braganca*, Daughter of Prince *Edward*, surrendering also all her interest and pretensions to him; so entering by a mixt title of Descent and Arms, *anno* 1580. Therefore years it was peaceably enjoyed by the King of *Spain*, when suddenly dispossessed by a potent Faction, appearing for *John* Duke of *Braganca*, defended from the youngest Son of King *Emanuel*, which wrought so cunningly and successfully in his behalf, (by the great wit and under-hand practices of Cardinal *Richelieu*, and others, Ministers of the *French*) that the King of *Spain* was sooner disfizd of *Portugal*, than he heard of any plot or practice set on foot against him, *anno* 1636. In which it is to be observed, that

as

as King *Philip* the second, for the better obtaining of this Crown had embroiled the *French*, engaging, that King in a bloody War against the Protestants of that Kingdom; to make him sure enough from troubling him in his present Enterprize: so the *French* Ministers had caused a revolt in *Catalogne*; to the end, that when the King of *Spain* was busied in reducing that Province, the *Portugals* might have opportunity to redeem themselves from the power of the *Spaniards*; whom the Antipathy betwixt the Nations made less pleasant to them. Nor was it a partial defection only, or the loss of *Portugal*, and no more: but a general falling off of the whole Estate in *Africk*, *Asia*, *America*, in the Isles and Continents: the *Acceffories* (excepting only the Town of *Ceuta* in *Barbary*, and some of the *Tercera*'s) going the same way as the *Principal* did. And here methinks that grave and deliberate Nation of the *Spaniards* may be justly taxed for committing a greater *Solacism* in point of State, than ever people did before them; in that, having got the full and peaceable possession of the Crown of *Portugal* and all the out-parts and Members of it; they continued all the Garrisons and strong Holds of the whole Estate, in the hands of the Natives. By means whereof, when *Portugal* itself fell off from the King of *Spain*, the Provinces and Plantations did the like, without any hesitancy, which, had some of the chief Pieces in every Province, Factory, and Plantation, been brought by little and little (if not all at once) into the power of the *Castilians*; might have been easily prevented. Nor hath the *Spaniards* hitherto attempted any thing material, for the recovery of that Kingdom: having been ever since too over-laid by the *French* in *Catalogne*, *Nauarre*, *Biscay*, *Flanders*, *Arroy*, and *Italy*; that he hath not had much leisure to attend that business. But leaving him and them to their own affairs, it is time to present you with a Catalogue of

The Kings of Portugal.

A. Ch.

- 1139 1. *Alfonso*, the second Earl, and first King of *Portugal*. 45.
1184 2. *Sancho*, the Son of *Alfonso*. 28.
1212 3. *Alfonso* II. Son of *Sancho*. 11.
1223 4. *Sancho* II. Son of *Alfonso* the 2d. 34.
1257 5. *Alfonso* III. Brother of *Sancho* the 2d. 22.
1279 6. *Dennis* the Son of *Alfonso* the 3d. 48.
1327 7. *Alfonso* IV. the Son of *Dennis*. 32.
1359 8. *Pedro*, the Son of *Alfonso* the 4th. 10.
1369 9. *Ferdinand*, the Son of *Pedro*, the last King of the lawful Issue of *Henry* of *Lorraine*. 18.
1387 10. *John* the base Son of *Pedro*, of whom sufficiently before. 48.
1435 11. *Edward* the Son of *John*, and of the Lady *Philipp* of *Lancaster*. 5.
1440 12. *Alfonso* V. the Son of *Edward*. 43.
1483 13. *John* II. the Son of *Alfonso* the 5th. 14.
1497 14. *Emanuel*, the Nephew of *Edward*, by his Son *Ferdinand*, Duke of *Viseo*. 26.
1523 15. *John* III. Son of *Emanuel*. 38.
1561 16. *Sebastian*, the Nephew of *John* the 3d. by his Son *Dou John*; unfortunately slain in the Fields of *Alcazar*. 21.
1582 17. *Henry* the Cardinal, Son of King *Emanuel*, the last of the Male-Issue of *Henry* of *Lorraine*. 2.
1584 18. *Philip* the second of *Spain*, Son of *Charles* King of *Castile*, and Emperor, and of the Lady *Mary* his Wife, Daughter of *Emanuel*. 18.

- 1598 19. *Philip* II. of *Portugal*, and III. of *Spain*.
1621 20. *Philip* III. of *Portugal*, and IV. of *Spain*.
During his Reign, the *Portuguese* weary of the *Spanish* Government, chose for their King.
1636 21. *John* D. of *Braganca*, the IV. of that Name: a Prince of great possessions, and of Royal Race, who hitherto hath peaceably enjoyed it.

Now that ye may the better see by what title both the Kings of *Spain*, and the Dukes of *Braganca*, claim the Crown of *Portugal*; and what other pretenders there weretoit, on the death of *Sebastian*; and what right as well *Antonio* the Bastard, (but alleging a sentence of Legitimation) as the Princes of the house of *Savoy*, did pretend unto it; we will lay down their Genealogies from King *Emanuel*, in this following Scheme.

Emanuel had these Children; { *John*, King of *Portugal*. } { *John*, Prince of *Portugal*. } { *Sebastian* King of *Portugal*. }
2. *Lewis*. } { *Don Antonio*. } { *Christopher*, and others. }
3. *Henry* the Cardinal, King of *Portugal*.
4. *Edward*. } { *Mary*, wedded to *Almeida*. } { *Raimundo* }
5. *Mary*, married to *Charles*. } { *Kath* married to *John* D. of *Braganca*. } { *Earnest* }
6. *Beatrice*, married to *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*.

By this it may appear how the Claims are grounded: but whether Title will prevail, cannot now be told. Suffice it, that as the Royal Line of *Portugal* did begin in an *Henry*, so it ended in an *Henry* also; the Male-Line failing in the person of the Cardinal King, and the Crown falling (on whomsoever it shall fall) on the Heirs of the Females.

The Principal Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom, are 1. Of *Aviz*, so called from a Town of that name in *Portugal*, the Seat thereof: Founded by *Sancho* or *Sancho* the first, in imitation of the Order of *Alcantara*, whose Green Cross they wear: but equal to it neither in Power nor Riches.

2. Of *CHRIST*; instituted by *Dennis* King of *Portugal*, who conferred on them all the Lands and Possessions of the excommunicated *Templers*, confirmed by Pope *John* the twenty second, *anno*, 1231. Their Robe is a Black *Cassock*, under a White Surcoat; over which, a Red Cross, broaked in the midst with a white Line: their Duty, to expel the *Moor* out of *Baiea*, the next Neighbour to *Portugal*. To which Crown, they have added many gallant Countries in *Asia*, *Africk*, and *Brazil*; and so improved their own Estates, that all the Isles in the *Atlantic* do belong to them: besides, the Rents of the Mine of St. *George*, in *Guinea*, amounting to 100000 Ducats of yearly income.

The Arms are Argent, on five Escutcheons *Azure*, as many Bezants in Saltire of the first, pointed *Sable*, within a Border of *Or*, charged with seven Towers. *Or*. Which five Escutcheons were born in memory of five Kings, whom *Alfonso*, the first King, slew at the battel of *Ovique*, *anno* 1139; the Border, with the Towers or Castles, being added by *Alfonso* the third, on his Inveiture into the Kingdom of *Algarve*, by *Alfonso* the fifth of *Castile*, *anno* 1257, whose Daughter *Beatrix* he then married.

and so conceived himself to have some relation to the Arms of that Kingdom. And to proceed we on to those Provinces which are under the Government of Arragon: the third great Body of this State.

12. VALENTIA.

VALENTIA hath on the East the Mediterranean; on the West, part of Castile, and Arragon; on the North Catalogne; and Murcia upon the South. It is watered with the Rivers, 1. *Xucar*, called old *Sucrum*, and *Suvru*. 2. *Guadalquivir*, signifying a River of pure water: and 3. *Millar*.

This Country standeth in the most temperate, and pleasing Air of all Spain, full of Gardens and places of wonderful delight, where growth abundance of Rice, Sugar, Corn, and Fruit: garnished all the year long with sweet smelling Flowers, and miraculously fruitful of Pomgranates, Limons, and other delicacies. It hath also Mines of Silver, at *Burios*; of Gold, at *Laudor*; of Iron, at *Finihrat*; of Alabaster, at *Piacem*, and of Allom, Lime, and Plaster in many places. From thence also come the best Silks in the World, Cotton of *Murcia*, Crimson, Scarlet, and other precious Colours, and rich Perfumes. Finally, all the Senses of man may be delighted and refreshed with that which comes from this happy Region; in quality, and sweetness, much like that of *Naples*. The delicacy and great pleasures whereof, have made the Inhabitants of it to be thought less Warlike Than the other Spaniards. The Sheep of this Country also bear the finest Fleeces of any in Spain: first stocked with *Cornwall* Sheep from *England*, at the request of *John* King of *Arragon*, Anno 1465, by the imprudent courtier of King *Edward* the Fourth.

Places of most note in it are, 1. *Alicante*, a noted Port on the Mediterranean, whence come our true *Alicant*-Wines, made of their Juice of Mulberries; by *Ptolomy* called *Illicita*; By *Mela*, *Rice*: from whence the Bay adjoining is called *Sinu Illicitanus*, on the River *Segura*, came. 2. *Oribuela*, a Bishops-See on the River *Segura*, which divides the Province from *Murcia*. 3. *Segorve*, a Bishops-See, by *Ptolomy* named *Segobriga*, the chief City, in old times, of the *Celbiberi*. 4. *Xelus*, supposed to be the *Inchibis* of *Livy*, where *Scipio* defeated *Hanno* and his *Carthaginians*. 5. *Valencia*, a fair, pleasant, and well-traded City, the See of an Arch-bishop, and given name to the whole Province: in its first glory, one of the chief Roman Colonies in these parts of Spain: mislaid, the Royal Seat of the *Moorish* Kings of this Country. Situate three miles from the Mediterranean, not far from the mouth of the River *Durius*, now called *Guadalquivir*: and is by some said to have been heretofore named *Rema*, which signifyeth strength. But when the Romans mastered it, to distinguish it from their *Rome*, it was called *Valentia*, which in the *Latin* Tongue, is of the same signification with the Greek *Βαλάντιον*. Here is an University in which *Saint Pominick*, the Father of the *Dominicans*, studied. 6. *Laurigi*, now a small Village: once a Town of great strength, called *Lauron*: which *Scetarius* besieged, took, and burned, even then when *Pompey*, whole Confederates the *Lauronites* were, stood with his whole Army high enough unto the Flame, to warn his hands; and yet durst not succour it. It was formerly named *Sueron*, after the name of the River: and is famous in *Plutarch*, for the victory which *Scetarius* here got of *Pompey*; *Pompey's* Army being not

only overthrown, but himself, with life, hardly escaping. 8. *Moscedes*, situate in or near the place of the old *Saguntum*: the People whereof, when besieged by *Annibal*, continued so obdurate in the expectation of aid from *Rome*, that they chose rather to burn themselves, than yield up the Town: the occasion of the second War between *Rome* and *Carthage*. First founded by the *Zacynthians*, and after this destruction of it, repaired, or re-edified, by the Romans, (they could not possibly do less) by whom made a Colony. 9. *Gandia*, which gives the Title of a Duke to the House of *Borgia*, and was the style of *Francisco Borgia*, the eldest Son of Pope *Alexander* the sixth, (of this noble Family) called commonly in *Guicciardine*, by the name of the Duke of *Gandy*. 10. *Denia*, seated on the brink of the Mediterranean, over which it hath a goodly prospect; the Marquisate of the Duke of *Lerna*: first founded by the *Majestians*, by whom called *Dianium*. Not far from which, is the Promontory of *Ferraria*, of old called *Promontorium Dianium*; the Refuge of *Scetarius* in his Wars against *Pompey*, and *Metellus*, both of great renown: the one aged, and of much experience; the other young, and of high resolutions. And yet *Scetarius* found himself more troubled with the old man's Gravity, than the young man's Gallantry: inasmuch as he was used to say, That bad it not been for the old Woman *Metellus*, he would have whipped the Boy *Pompey* home with *Rods*. For he had twice overcome this Great *Pompey*, before *Metellus* was joyined in the Action with him: the first time dangerously wounding, and the second time driving him out of the Field. But fighting against both, he was overmatched; and yet seemed rather to retire, than fly before them; the Spaniards behaving themselves very valiantly, in the time of these Wars, under him: to which *Florus* alludeth, saying, *Nec unquam magis apparuit Hispani militis Vigor, quam Romano duci*. At the last, when he had a long time upheld the *Marian* Faction, he was traitorously murdered by *Peppeus*, one of his Associates: for which, *Metellus* and *Pompey* had a *Vindicta* at *Rome*. So high an climax did they set upon the cald death of this *Proscript*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, were the *Bastetani*, the *Edetani*, the *Comestani*, and some part of the *Celbiberi*; originally of the Province of *Tarracensis*; afterwards (in the sub-dividing of that Province by *Caesarian*) of *Carthaginensis*. In the declining of the Empire, first subdued by the *Moor*, who were scarce war in their new dwelling, when displaced by the *Goths*. From the *Goths* taken by the *Moor*, of whose Kingdom reckoned as a Province, till the fatal overthrow given to *Mahomet Enser*, at the battle of *Sierra Morena*; and the departure of the *Moor* of *Morocco*, to their own Country; which followed presently upon it. By *Zet Ahen-Zet*, the Brother of this *Mahomet*, made a distinct Kingdom of it self, Anno 1214: but taken from him by our *Zaen*, a Prince of the *Moor* of Spain, under colour that he had a purpose of turning Christian, and making his Kingdom subject to the Crown of *Arragon*, (as indeed he did) Anno 1228, Conquered from *Zaen* the new King, before he could enjoy the sweets of a new raised Kingdom, by *James King* of *Arragon*, Anno 1238. Since reckoned a Member of that Kingdom, never dismembered from the body of it, since the first uniting. But still so overgrown with *Moor*, (not to be blamed for loving such an excellent seat) that at the final expulsion of that people by King *Philip* the third, there were reckoned no fewer than 20000 Families of them in this little Country.

The Arms hereof were *Gules*, a Tower embattled Argent purled (or pennon'd) Sable.

13. CATAL

13. CATALONIA.

CATALONIA is bounded on the North-east, with the Land of *Rouffillon*, and the *Pyrenies*; on the East, with the Mediterranean, on the South, with *Valencia*; on the North, and North-west with *Arragon*. The Country somewhat mountainous, and full of Woods, and not very well cultivated: begotten more, in that respect, for Corn, Fruits, and other necessary Provisions, unto the courtie of the Sea, which serves them out of other Countries, than to the Goodness of the Land. And it is as well watered, as most parts of Spain; having in it, besides the *Ebro*, or *Iberus*, common to many other Provinces; and *Cova*, which runneth betwixt it and *Valencia*; the Rivers of, 1. *Tardera*, 2. *Lobregat*, 3. *Segre*, 4. *Franelon*, 5. *Besone*, and 6. *Onbar*.

The name of *Catalonia*, some derive from the *Castellani*, who formerly inhabited some part hereof: others will have it called *Catalonia*, corruptly, for *Guthalania*, from the mixture of the *Goths* and *Alani*, successively the Masters of it: and some, more improbably, from one *Carthala*, a Noble-man of this Country, who lived here they know not when. More like it is, that it took this name from the *Catalani*, an old French People of *Languedoc*, the adjoining Province, from whom the fields called *Campi Catalaunici*, near unto *Tholose*, took denomination. But from what root soever they came, certain it is, that they are generally a stout courageous people, as may be seen by their exploits in most parts of Greece, which they miserably spoiled and pillaged many years together, in the time of *Andronicus* the second; to whose aid called in. But then withal, they are a very perverse and obdurate people little observant of the pleasure or profit of their natural Princes: but on the other side, so zealous in defence of their own Privileges, that they have created more trouble to their Kings, under that pretence, than all the rest of the Subjects of Spain. Of which we need no other instance, than their late revolt unto the French, anno 1638. which drew after it the loss of the Realm of *Portugal*, and many Towns of great importance in *Flanders*, and the rest of the *Netherlands*.

Principal places in it are, 1. *Barcelone*, situate on the Mediterranean, near the River *Lobregat*; accommodated with a large and commodious Port, where commonly the Spanish Soldiers do embark, which are bound for *Italy*. The Town adorned with large streets, handom buildings, strong walls, and a very pleasant situation. Called *Barcino* by the ancient Writers, in whose time it was a Roman Colony, now honoured with a Bishops-See, and the Seat of the Vice-Roy. 2. *Tarragon*, seated also on the Mediterranean, East of the River *Franelon*: built, fortified, and peopled by the two *Scipios*, the Father and Uncle of *Africanus*, for a Counter-Port to *Carthage* (or *New Carthage*) not long before founded by the *Carthaginians*. Afterwards made the Metropolis of *Tarracensis*, hence denominated: but stripe of that honour by *Toledo*, and is now but two miles in compass, and containing not above seven hundred Families. Yet still it holdeth the reputation of an Arch-bishops-See, contending with *Toledo*, for the Primacy of all Spain (as *Braga* also doth in the Kingdom of *Portugal*;) the controversy being undecided to this very day. 3. *Ampurias*, on the same Sea also: once of great esteem, founded by the *Massilians*, a Roman Colony, and a well-traded Town, as the Name doth signify:

this being the *Emporia*, spoken of by *Strabo* and *Ptolemy*; now not observable for any thing, but a safe Road for Ships. 4. *Blanes*, 5. *Palma*, and 6. *Rosus*, all Ports on the same Sea, but subject unto divers Winds, and not very spacious, this last by *Ptolomy* called *Rhoda*, first founded by the *Rhodiens*, or people of the Isle of *Rhodes*, and by them so named. More in the Land, are 7. *Girona*, a small, but handomly built, and a well-traded Town; a Bishops-See, and the Title of the eldest Son of *Arragon*, called Prince of *Girona*. Which Title was first given to *John*, the eldest Son of King *Pedro* the fourth, immediately upon his Birth, anno 1351; and hath since continued. 8. *Tortosa*, on the River *Ebro*, in the most rich and pleasant part of all the Country: recovered from the *Moor*, by *Raymond* the fifth, Earl of *Bavellone*, and Prince of *Arragon*, about the year 1146. The principal Agent in that work, *William Raymond* of *Moncada*, Seneschal of *Catalogne*; rewarded for his good service in it, with a third part of the City. A goodly Town, and of good importance; garrisoned by the French, since the late revolt of *Catalonia* from the King of Spain; and like to draw a great part of this Province after it, will it continue in their power, or in the possession of their party. 9. *Urgel*, an Earl's Honour, and a Bishops-See, situate at the foot of the *Pyrenies*. 10. *Montblanc*, which heretofore gave the Title of Duke to the second Sons of the Kings of *Arragon*. 11. *Moncada*, once a Town of strength; but of more note for giving denomination to the Noble Family of *Moncada*, Hereditary Seneschals of *Catalogne*, and Lords of *Bearn*. Here is also on the East part, where it joyneth with the Land of *Rouffillon*, the Promontory called of old, *Templum Veneris*, now *Cabo de Greus*. And not far from *Barcelone*, the Mountain called *Montserrat*, on the sides full of *Hermitages* and *Anchorets* Cells; and having towards the summit of it, a Chappel dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*: much famed and resorted to by Pilgrims from all parts of the World, for her miraculous Image, which is there enshrined.

The old Inhabitants of this Province, were the *Castellani*, *Ancusani*, *Indigites*, *Castiani*, with part of the *Ilerones*, and *Iaculani*; all of them part of *Tarracensis*. In the declining of the Empire, seized on by the *Alani*; and they soon after vanquished, if not disposed, by the power of the *Goths*. Lost to the *Moor*, in the general ruine of the whole: from them recovered by the puissance of *Charles* the Great; who having taken the City of *Barcelone*, anno 801. gave it to one *Bernard* a French-man, with the Title of Earl, who governed the Country for that Emperor; as *Wilfredus*, or *Godfredus*, his Successor, did for *Lewis* the Godly. *Godfredus*, Son to this *Godfred*, by the gift of *Charles* the Great, was the first Proprietary; united unto *Arragon* by the Marriage of *Alfred* Raymond, with the Heir of that Kingdom. First held in Vassalage of the French, but that acknowledgment related to King *James* the first, anno 1260. by the King *St. Lewis*; the King of *Arragon* releasing, at the same time, his pretensions and rights of Sovereignty to *Carcassons*, *Béziers*, *Albi*, *Nîmes*, and some other pieces in *France*, of old belonging to that Crown. But before that, the *Catalani* had not given the acknowledgment of their subjection to that Crown; it being ordered by *Alphonso* the second King of *Arragon*, about the year 1180, That the year of the reigns of the Kings of *France*, should no more be used in any Instrument or Writings which concerned that People; but the year only of the Incarnation of our Lord and Saviour: which, in effect, was to disclaim the Sovereignty of the Crown of *France*.

The

The Earls of Barcelona.

- A. Chr.
884 1 Godfredus, surnamed the Hairy, Son of Wilfrido, the Provincial Governour for the Emperor Ludovicus Pius.
914 2 Miron, Son of Godfredus.
933 3 Godfredus 2. Son of Miron, by some called Sinsiofrid.
971 4 Borellus, Brother of Miron, and Uncle of Godfredus the second.
993 5 Raymond, Son of Borellus.
1017 6 Berengarius, surnamed Borellus; Son of Raymond.
1035 7 Raymond 2. Son of Berengarius Borellus.
1076 8 Raymond 3. Son of Raymond the second.
1082 9 Raymond 4. Son of Raymond the third, Earl of Provence also in right of Douce his Wife.
1131 10 Raymond 5. Son of Raymond the fourth, and Douce Countess of Provence, married Petronilla. Daughter of Raynir, or Raymond, the second King of Arragon; whom he succeeded in that Kingdom, anno 1134. Uniting these Estates together, never since disjoined: the chief Procurer of this Match, being William Raymond of Moncada, spoken of before.

The Arms hereof, were four Pallets Gules, in a field Or, now the Arms of Arragon. Which Arms were given to Geoffry, surnamed the Hairy, the first Earl hereof, by Lewis the Stammering, Emperor and King of France, to whose aid he came against the Normans with a Troop of Horfe; and being bloody in the fight, desired of the Emperor to give him some Coat of Arms, which he and his Posterity might from thenceforth use. Who drew dipping his four fingers in the blood of the Earl, drew them thwart his Shield, (which was only of Plain Gold, without any Device) saying, *This shall be your Arms hereafter.*

14. The Kingdom of Majorca.

THE Kingdom of MAJORCA, contained the Islands of Majorca, Minorca, Eubusia, and Frumentaria, in the Mediterranean; the Land of Roussillon, Sardaigne, or Cerdaigne in the Continent of Spain; and the Earldom of Montpellier in France.

The Land of ROUSSILLON, which is the first Member of this Kingdom, is situate betwixt two Branches of the Pyrenees; bounded on the south, with the Mediterranean; on the West, with Catalogue; on the North, with the said Pyrenees; on the East, with Languedoc in France. Places of most importance in it, are 1. Helna, a Bishops-See on the River Tech. 2. Colibrie, now a poor and ignoble Village, of note only for a safe and commodious Harbour; but formerly the great and famous City of Illiberis, so often mentioned in the Wars betwixt Rome and Carthage. 3. Perpignan, (in Latin, Perpinianum) built in the year 1008, by Guinau, Earl of Roussillon, in a pleasant Plain on the River Thelut, now a rich Town, well traded, and as strongly fortified against the French; to whose fury in the time of War, it is still exposed. Besieged by Henry, Son to King Francis the first, with a pu-

issant Army, an. 1542. partly to be revenged upon Charles the fifth, who had before attempted *Assaults* in Provence; and partly to get into his hands the chief door of Spain, by which he might at all times enter into that kingdom. But he found here such strong resistance, that he was fain to raise his Siege, with as little honour as Charles had gotten by his Expedition which he made into Provence. 4. Salsus, (the *Salsula* of Strabo) a strong place on the Frontier of Languedoc; fortified according to the Rules of modern Fortification, and one of the chief Bulwarks against the French. 5. Roussillon, a Castle of more honour and antiquity, than strength or beauty; by Pliny, and other Ancients, called *Ruscino*, the Country Comitatus Ruscianensis, now Roussillon and the Land of Roussillon; accounted heretofore a part of Gallia Narbonensis; and added unto Spain in the time of the Goths. On the death of Gerrard, the last Proprietary Earl, it was added to the Crown of Arragon, by Alphonsus the second; by James the first, laid to the Kingdom of Majorca; united to the Crown again by King Pedro the fourth. After that, sold (or rather pawned) by King John the second, to Lewis the 11. of France, for the Sum of 300000 Crowns, anno 1462, and freely returned back again to Ferdinand the second, (after called the Catholic) by King Charles the 8. anno 1493; conditioned that he should not hinder him in the Conquest of Naples. Joining hereto, as a part of the Kingdom of Majorca, was the Country of Sardaigne, or Cerdaigne, the habitation of the *Ceretani* in former times, and afterwards accounted of as a part of Arragon. The chief Town of those *Ceretani* called *Julia Lybica*, the principal now being hath the name of *Cerdano* (or *Sardano*, as the Spaniards commonly pronounce) retaining some resemblance to the name of the Nation. The Country lying in the Vallies of the Pyrenees, and consequently in a corner somewhat out of the way, was thought fit to be added to the Land of Roussillon, (for the better endowment of this Kingdom;) the Fortunes of which, it hath since followed, as appendant on it: pawned when that was unto the French, and with that restored.

2. The Earldom of MONTPELIER, is situate in the Province of Languedoc, adjoining to the Land of Roussillon: so called from Montpellier, the chief City: for the description whereof we must send the Reader back to France, having spoken of it there already. All I shall here repeat, is this, That Mary, the Daughter of William the last Earl thereof, brought it by Marriage, to her Husbands Peter the second King of Arragon: and that it was sold to Philip de Valois, the French King, by James King of Majorca, of that name the third. Nothing else memorable in the story and affairs of this little Earldom, but the Fortunes of the two last Countesses of it. Of which the first being Daughter of Emanuel Commenus, Emperor of Constantinople, and affianced to Alphonsus the 2. King of Arragon, was brought as far as Montpellier, in her way towards Spain, and there lodged with her whole retinue, in the house of William, then Earl thereof, anno 1174. But hearing that Alphonsus, contrary to his word and promise, was in treaty of another Marriage with the Princess Sancha of Castile (which he celebrated very shortly after) and ashamed to return to the Court of her Father, after such an injury; she hearkened to the counsel of other Lords and followers, who persuaded her to marry with Earl William, then a lusty Bachelor: which was done accordingly. To him she brought a Daughter, named Mary, (their only child) afterwards married to Don Pedro the 2. Son of Alphonsus, and successor to him in that Kingdom: so that although the Mother could not have the happiness to be Queen of Arragon; yet the Daughter had. But being of no great beauty, the King her Husband

grew

grew weary of her, would have been divorced, had the Pope consented: whose consent not being to be had, he forsook her Bed, and betook himself to other Women. Which the Queen not being otherwise able to remedy, prevailed with one of the Grooms of his Chamber, called *Pedro Flaviano*, to bring her one night unto his Bed, (when some other Mistris was expected) and by him did conceive that night, as it after proved: the King perceiving the deceit on the morrow morning, was neither well pleased, nor much offended at the honest fraud they had put upon him. Of this conjunction was born a Son at Montpellier, whom they named James, Successor to his Father in the Kingdom of Arragon; and to his Mother (the last Countess of it) in the Earldom of Montpellier; united, in his person, into one Estate; and by him finally joined in it, in the erection of the new Kingdom of Majorca, as before was said.

3. The Island of MAJORCA is situate in the Mediterranean, just over against Valencia; from which distant about 60 miles; about 300 miles in circuit, the length above an hundred, the breadth somewhat under; the number of Inhabitants reckoned at 30000. The Land, on all sides, towards the Sea, is somewhat mountainous, and barren withal: the Inlands more Champian and fruitfully yielding sufficient quantity of Oyl, Corn, Wines, and Fruits, for the use of its people. The whole Island is divided into 30 parts (as so many *Wapentakes*) in every one of which are reckoned from 300 to 600 Families. No hurtful Creatures are here bred, except Conies only; and those not hurtful, but by accident: of which more anon.

Places of chief note, in the former times, were 1. Palma, and 2. Pollentia, which had the rights of Roman Citizens. 3. Ciutiva, and 4. Canic, which enjoyed the rights of the Latins: and 5. Cohri, (or *Bachorum*) which was in the condition of a Town confederate; besides divers others not so privileged. Of these none left, at this day, but Palma only, vulgarly called Majorca, by the name of the Island: a Bishops See, the Seat of the Viceroy for these Isles, and an University; the birth-place of Raymondus Lullius, a man of great Wit, and profound Judgment: the Author of some Books in the Art of Chymistry whose Works are read and studied in that University, as Aristotle's are in others. This is the greater of the two Islands called *Baleares*, whence it hath the name. Adjoining herunto, two others of inferior note, called *Dragonera* and *Cabrera*; of which nothing memorable.

4. MINORCA, so called, because it is the lesser of the *Baleares*; is situate Eastward of Majorca, from which distant near 100 miles, of about 60 miles in length, and 150 in circuit. More fruitful than the other, though less in quantity, of rich soil, which breedeth them great Herds of Cattel, and Mules of the largest size of any in Spain; accommodated also with two convenient Havens, the one called *Maon*, the other *Fernessus*. Other considerable places, are, 1. Minorca, now so called by the name of the Island; but anciently known by the name of *Mago*: situate in the East part thereof, first founded by the Carthaginians, as the name imports. And so was also 2. Janno, seated in the West, (*Duo parva Oppida, quibus à Pœnis indita nomina, fuisse Sævus Bishop of these Isles, anno 1200, or thereabouts.*) It is now called *Cadadella*, or the little City. Here was also in the mid-land, a third Town, called *Sanfseraby* Pliny; of which I find no track remaining.

5. EBUSA, now called TIFICA, lyeth between the main Land, and the *Baleares*, opposite to the Promontory of Ferraria, in the Realm of Valencia; from which distant about 50 miles, and near an hundred miles

in compass, The Country plentiful of Corn, and all manner of Fruits, breeding no hurtful Creature, except Conies only which many times destroy their Harvest. The chief Town here, *Tiçica* of (old called *Ebusus*, the Inhabitants of which make yearly great store of Salt; wherewith they do not only furnish Spain, but some parts of Italy.

6. FRUMENTARIA, so called from the plenty of Corn, is distant ten miles from Tifca, and about 60 miles from the main Land of Spain: in circuit about 70 miles. Not well inhabited, by reason of the multitude of Serpents; from which called by the *Græcians* *Ophiasis*, and *Calabraria*, by the Latins. Both Islands anciently known by the name of *Tiçise*, and *Pitipodes*, from the abundance of Pines there growing.

About these Islands are six others of little worth, called 1. *Veles*, 2. *Canivello*, and 3. *Dragonago*. 4. another called *Manolibre*, betwixt Majorca, and the Influx of the River *Iberus*. 5. *Afaguer*, lying in the very Mouth of that River: and 6. *Scombraria*, (anciently called the Island of *Hercules*) over against *Cartagena*; so named from a kind of Tunny, in Latin named *Scombris*, of which great shoals use to ly about it. All these, together with the *Baleares*, make up the Province of the Islands, the seventh Province of Spain.

But the chief glory of these Islands, were the *BALÆARES*, so called (as the general conceit is) from the Greek word *Balæon*, which signifyeth to throw; because the people were so expert in throwing their Slings or Darts: but, as *Bachartus* will needs have it, (to the same effect,) from *Baal-ivra*, a Phœnician word signifying a Master in the Art of slinging. An Art so natural and innative to them, that Parents used to give no meat unto their Children, after some set age, but what they could hit down with their Slings from the top of a Beam. Of their dexterity in this weapon, there is much mention made in the ancient Writers, as well Historians, as Poets. And from this Exercise they had the name also of *Infula Gymnasia*; or else, because the people of it used to go naked to the VVars, (and possibly enough, in those first Ages of the world, as at other times also from the Greek word *Tyaris*, the fame with the *Nidus* to the Latin. Nor were they good at slinging only, but at swimming too; an exercise not ordinarily performed, but by naked people: at which the very women are at this day expert; *Biddulph* reporting, in the relation of his travels, that being becalmed about these Islands, there came a woman swimming from one of them with a Basket of Fruit to sell. But that which made them most talked of in former times, was their harm done them by their Conies; which here, and the neighbouring Continent, encreased so wonderfully, that *Varro* telleth us of a Town in Spain, undermined by them: and *Strabo*, that they did not only destroy their Plants, but rooted up many of their Trees. In so much that the Inhabitants did request the Romans to give them some new seats to inhabit in; *ἐκδιδάλαξεν δὲ τὸν πόλιν (ἀνὰ τὸν ὄρειον)*, being ejected by those Creatures out of their Possessions, whose multitudes they were not able to resist. And when that could not be obtained, they moved *Augustus Cæsar* (as *Pliny* telleth us) for some aid against them; who, instead of *Soldiers*, sent them *Ferrets*, by which their numbers were diminished in a little time.

These Islands were first planted by the *Tyrians*, or *Phœnicians*, the founders of many of their Cities: one of which, in the Isle of *Ebusus*, had the name of *Phœnissia*: From them also they derived the Art of Slinging. Made subject to the Carthaginians, under the conduct of *Hanno* and *Hamiles*, anno M. 3000, or thereabouts, at what time the *Decemviri* governed Rome. Under

that State they remained subject, till the end of the second *Punic War*: when *Carthage* was no longer able to protect them, made a State of themselves, till conquered by *Metellus*, the Brother of him who subdued *Crete*. The people were much given to Piracy: and seeing The *Roman Navy* sailing by their Coasts, supped them to be Merchant-men: assaulted them, and at first prevailed. But the *Romans* getting betwixt them and the Shore, discovered from whence they came, and forced them to an unwilling submission: for which *Metellus* them to an unwilling honour of a *Triumph*. Being rewarded with a Province of *Spain*, they always, after that, followed the Fortunes thereof. In the distraction of the Empire of the *Moors* in *Spain*, they were united into one Kingdom, by the name of the Kingdom of *Majoreca*: won from the *Moors* by *Raymund Earl of Barcelona*, with the help of the *Genoese*, anno 1102. By the *Genoese* delivered to the *Moors* again; and from them reconquered by *James King of Arragon*, descended from that *Raymund*, anno 1228.

Of these Estates consisted the Kingdom of *Majoreca*, erected by *James* the first, immediately (almost) on his recovery of these Islands, from the hands of the *Moors*; and by him given unto *James* his second Son, who, fearing the displeasure of his Brother, King *Peter* the third, submitted his new Kingdom to the *Vassalage* of the Crown of *Arragon*. Yet could not this satisfy the ambition or jealousies of those mightier Kings, as to preserve his Successors in possession of it. By *Pedro* the 4. extorted from King *James*, the fourth and last King thereof, under colour of denying his accustomed *Homage*. So ended

The Kings of *Majoreca*, of the House of *Arragon*.

An. Chr.

- 1276 1. *James* the first, Son to *James* the first, King of *Arragon*.
 1412 2. *Sancho*, Son of *James* the first.
 3. *James* the II. Son of *Ferdinand*, the Brother of *James* the Second.
 4. *James* III. Son of *Ferdinand*, overcome and slain in Battle by *Pedro* 4. King of *Arragon*. *Majoreca*, and other members of this little Kingdom, remaining ever since united unto that Crown; except *Montpelier*, sold by this *James* unto the *French*, in hope that by their aid, he might be enabled to recover his Kingdom. But being aided by them, and attempting the recovery of it, he was defeated and slain in the Isle of *Majoreca*, an. 1341, as before is said.

The Forces of this little Kingdom may be best estimated by the Army which the *Moors* brought into the field against *James* the first, for defence of the Island of *Majoreca*, consisting of 50000 Horse: but better, by the Army of *James* the last King hereof, in defence of his Estates against *Pedro* the 4. (for the *Moors* might possibly be aided by the rest of their Nation) consisting of 3000 Horse, and 15000 Foot, of his natural Subjects.

15. A R R A G O N.

ARRAGON, hath on the East, the Land of *Rouffillon*, and the *Pyrenees*; on the West, the two *Castiles*; on the North, *Navarre*; on the South and South-east; *Catalonia*, and some part of *Valencia*.

So called from the River *Arragon*, by which it is divided from the Realm of *Navarre*; where the first Princes of this House having won certain Towns from the hands of the Infidels, commanded as Lords *Marchers*, under the Kings of that Realm: and called themselves, for that reason, the Earls of *Arragon*: spreading the name, as they enlarged their bounds, by ensuing Conquests: as, in like manner, the great Earldom of *Mojelle*, founded by the diffident Sons of *Cloidon*, second King of the *French*, was named from that River; upon the course whereof, and the parts adjoining, it was first erected.

The Country lyeth on both sides of the River *Iberus*, and hath also several Riverlets, as *Gallega*, *Senga*, *Xalon*, and *Cagedo*, running like so many Veins through the body of it; yet it is generally so destitute of Waters, and so ill inhabited, especially towards the Mountains of the *Pyrenees*; that one may travel many days, and find neither Town, nor House, nor People. But where the Rivers have their course, the case is different, the Valleys yielding plenty both of Corn and Fruits, especially about *Calatayud*, where the Air is good, and the Soil fruitful.

The ancient Inhabitants were the *Celiberi*, who took up a great part of *Tarracensis*: divided into lesser Tribes not here considerable. These sprung originally from the *Celtes*, (as before is said) the greatest and most potent Nation of all *Gallia*: who being too populous for their Country, or willing to employ themselves upon new Adventures, passed the *Pyrenees*, and mingled themselves with the *Iberi*. From thence the name of the *Celiberi*, and *Celiberi*, according to this of *Lucan*:

—*Profligant a gente vetusta
Gallorum, Celtes miscentes nomen Iberi.*

Who being chas'd from *Qaul*, thence home did flame;
Of *Celte* and *Iberi* mixt, one name.

Others of less consideration, were the *Jacetani*, and *Lucetani*, with part of the *Edetani*, and *Ilergetes*.

Places of most importance in it, are, 1. *Jacca*, the chief City heretofore of the *Jacetani*, seated amongst the *Pyrenees*; and for that cause chosen for the chief seat and residence of the first Kings of *Arragon*: continued there till the taking of *Saragossa*, by *Alfonso* the first. 2. *Calatayud*, seated on *Xalon*, in the best Country of *Arragon*: so called from *Aud* a *Moors* Prince, the first founder of it. Not far from which, upon an Hill, stood the old Town *Bibilis* a Municipium of the *Romans*, and the birth-place of *Marial*. 3. *Venafque* amongst the *Pyrenees*. 4. *Balbastro*, on the *Senga*, formerly called *Burtina*, now a Bishops-See. 5. *Lerida*, on the River *Segre*, as some say; but others place it on the *Senga*: which rising in the *Pyrenees*, divideth *Catalonia* from *Arragon*, and so passeth into *Iberus*: now an University; called formerly *Ilerda*, and famous for the Encounter, happening night unto it, betwixt *Herculeius*, Treasurer or *Quaestor* to *Sertorius*; and *Manilius* Proconsul of *Gallia*: wherein *Manilius* was so disappointed, and his Army, consisting of three Legions of Foot; and 1500 Horse, so routed, that he almost alone, was scarce able to recover this City, few of his Soldiers surviving the overthrow. 6. *Moson*, famous for entertaining the King of *Spain* every third year: at which time the people of *Arragon*, *Valencia*, and *Catalogne*, present the King with 600000 Crowns, viz. 300000 for *Catalogne* 200000 for *Arragon* and 100000 for *Valencia*. And well may they thus do, for at other times they fit Rent-Free: as it were, only, they acknowledge the King of *Spain* to be the Head of their Commonwealth. This Revenue is proportionably,

200000

200000 Crowns a year; all which, if not more, the King again expends, in maintaining his *Vice-Roy* in their several Provinces. 7. *Huesca*, (called of old, *Hefca*) somewhat South of *Jacca*, an University; a place long since dedicated to Learning. For hither *Sertorius* cauled all the Noble-mens Sons of *Spain* to be brought, and provided them of School-Masters for the *Greek* and *Latin Tongues*; bearing their Parents in hand, that he did it not only to make them fit to undergo Charge in the Commonwealth, but indeed to have them as Hostages for their Fathers Faith and Loyalty towards him. 8. *Saragossa*, called at first, *Salduba*, by reason of the Salt-pits there: but being afterwards redified by *Cesar Augustus*, it had the name of *Cesarea Augusta*, (whence that of *Saragossa* had its origination) by whom first made a Colony of the *Romans*, and afterwards a Municipium, or Free-Borough, suffered to live according to the Laws of the Country. Under the *Romans*, it was one of the seven *Judicial Reforts* of *Tarracensis*: under the *Moors*, a peculiar Kingdom of its self: and now a Bishops-See, and an University. Amongst the Kings of it, when it was a Kingdom, two are chiefly famous, viz. 1. *Marfilus*, who joined with the Confederate *Moors* and *Christians*, against *Charles the Great*, in the Battle of *Rouvenoux*. 2. *Agilard*, of whom there goeth a tale in *Archbishop Impine*; that being by the said *Charles* persuaded to become a *Christian*, he came unto the Emperor's Court very well accompanied, according to the time appointed. Where finding many *Lazars*, and poor people before the Gates, attending for their usual Alms from the Emperor's Table: he asked what and who they were; and was answered, that they were the poor Servants of God. Upon which words he speedily returned again, protesting, that he would never serve that God, who could keep his Servants no better. Took from the *Moors*, by *Alphonso* King of *Arragon* and *Navarre*, an. 1118. it was made the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Arragon*; removed thence from *Jacca*: and of late times hath been the Seat of the *Vice-Roy* for the Kings of *Spain*. Which together with being an Archbishop's See, and an University, hath so enriched it, that it is one of the fairest Cities in all *Spain*, for handiwork of Streets, and sumptuousness of Palaces, and public Buildings, containing fifteen Parish-Churches, and fourteen Monasteries; besides divers Chappels erected in most parts of it to the Virgin *Mary*.

Who were the old Inhabitants of this Tract, hath been shewn heretofore, tolled from the *Carthaginians* unto the *Romans*; from them to the *Goths*; and finally, unto the *Moors*. Recovered from the *Moors*, about the first beginning of the Kingdoms of *Leon* and *Sobrarbe*. At which time, one *Aznar*, a man of great puissance and action, possessed himself of some Lands on the banks of the River *Arragon*, to be holden by him and his Successors, of the Kings of *Sobrarbe* or *Navarre*, An. 775. The Title of Earl being given unto him, and them, for their better honour. The sixth of which, from *Aznar*, was *Fortunio Ximenes*, whose Daughter *Urraca* being married to *Don Garcia Inigo*, King of *Navarre*, anno 867, conveyed this Earldom to that Crown: of which it continued a Member, till *Sancho* the Great, King of *Navarre*, end Earl of *Arragon*, erected it into a Kingdom, and gave it unto *Raymir* his natural Son, anno 1034. The whole Succession I shall borrow from the *Spanish Histories*; first taking (as in other places) some short notes of the Princes which have been most observable in the course of the Story. Of which the principal were, 1. *Aznarius*, the first Earl, his Estate then containing some few Towns on the River of *Arragon*: not much enlarged, when made a Kingdom by *Sancho*, King of

Navarre, furnished the Great, descended from *Fortunio* the second of *Navarre*, and *Urraca* the Sister and Heir of *Fortunio Ximenes*, the last Earl of *Arragon*. 2. *Raymir* the first King, bafe Son to *Sancho* the Great, advanced to this honour to the prejudice of *Garcia*, eldest Son of *Sancho*, for handing so generally in defence of *Donna Elvira*, the Wife of his Father, wrongfully and unaturally accused of Adultery, by the said *Garcia* her own Son; against whom he undertook to maintain her Honour in a single Combat. 3. *Raymond*, Earl of *Barcelona*, who by marriage with *Petronilla*, the Heir of *Arragon*, united *Catalonia* unto that Kingdom. 4. *Peter* the second, who on a superstitious zeal, first made his Kingdom tributary to the See of *Rome*, anno 1214. But presently repenting of it, he sided against the Pope, with the *Albigenses*: slain in their cause, by *Simon de Montfort*, and the rest of his Associates, in that war. 5. *James* the first, who conquered the Kingdoms of *Valencia* and *Majorca*; and was the first that enlarged his Dominions upon the Seas: being shut up from making any further imprest on the *Moors*, by the interjection of *Castile* betwixt him and them. 6. *Peter* the third, succeeding a Title unto *Sicilia*, in right of *Constance* his Wife, the Daughter of *Manfred*, King thereof; and by the last Will of *Corradine*, rightful King both of that and *Naples*; extorted that Island from the *French*, massacred by him at the fatal *Sicilian Vespers*. 7. *James* the second, by whom the Isle of *Sardinia* was added to the Crown of *Arragon*. 8. *Martin*, the last of the *Masculine Race* of the House of *Barcelona*: to whom succeeded, 9. *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, Son of *John* King of *Castile*, and *Lemora*, the Daughter of *Peter* the fourth of *Arragon*, an. 10. *Alphonso*, Son of *Ferdinand*, adopted by Queen *Joan* the second, got the Kingdom of *Naples*. Of *Ferdinand* the second, furnished the *Catholic*, we shall speak more anon, in the close of all.

The Earls of *Arragon*.

A. Chr.

1. *Aznarius*, the first Earl, contemporary with *Garcia*, the second King of *Navarre*; under whom he held.
 775 2. *Aznarius* II. Son of *Aznario* the first.
 3. *Galindo*, Son of *Aznario* the second.
 4. *Ximenes Aznarius*, Son to *Galindo*, slain in the Battle of *Rouvenax*, against *Charles the Great*.
 803 5. *Ximenes Garcia*, Brother to *Galindo*.
 6. *Fortunio Ximenes*, Son of *Ximenes Garcia*, the last of the *Male-Issue* of *Aznarius*.
 7. *Fortunio* II. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Arragon*, in right from his Mother *Urraca*, The Sister and Heir of *Fortunio Ximenes*, the last Earl of the House of *Aznarius*.
 901 8. *Sancho*, surnamed *Abarca*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Arragon*.
 920 9. *Garcia*, Son of *Sancho*, King of *Navarre*, &c.
 909 10. *Sancho* II. of *Arragon*, and III. of *Navarre*.
 993 11. *Garcias*, surnamed the Trembler, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Arragon*, Son to *Sancho* the third.
 1006 12. *Sancho* the Great, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Arragon* in his own right; and of *Castile* in the right of *Elvira* his Wife; Monarch of all *Spain*, then in the hands of the *Christians*, except the Kingdom of *Leon* only: erected the Earldom of *Arragon* into a Kingdom, and gave it, for the reason before specified, to his Son *Raymir*. The

The Kings of Arragon.

- A. Chr.
- 1034 1 Raymir 42.
 - 1076 2 Sancho, Son of Raymir. 18.
 - 1094 3 Pedro. 14.
 - 1108 4 Alphonso, Brother of Pedro. 26.
 - 1134 5 Raymir II. the Brother of Alphonso.
 - 1137 6 Ferranilla, Daughter of Raymir the second.
 - 1137 6 Raymond, Earl of Barcelona.
 - 1171 7 Alphonso II. Son of Alphonso.
 - 1196 8 Pedro II. Son of Alphonso.
 - 1213 9 James Son of Pedro the second. 43.
 - 1265 10 Pedro III Son of James 9.
 - 1265 11 Alphonso 3. Son of Pedro the third. 6.
 - 1271 12 James 2. Brother of Alphonso the third. 36.
 - 1308 13 Alphonso 4. Son of James the second. 8.
 - 1316 14 Pedro 4. Son of Alphonso the fourth. 51.
 - 1367 15 John, Son of Pedro the fourth. 8.
 - 1375 16 Martin, the Brother of John. 17.
 - 1392 17 Ferdinand of Castile, the Nephew of Pedro the fourth. 4.

- 1396 18 Alphonso 5. 42.
- 1438 19 John 2. Son of Ferdinand, and Brother of Alphonso : King of Navarre also, in right of Blanch his Wife. 20.
- 1458 20 Ferdinand 2. of that name, of Arragon, Son of John the second, King of Arragon and Navarre, by a second Wife : and the fifth of that name, of Castile and Leon : which Kingdoms he obtained by the marriage of Isabel, Elizabeth, Sister and Heir of Henry the Fourth : uniting thereby the great Estates of Castile and Arragon, and all appendices of either. In which regard, he may well challenge the first place in the Catalogue of the Monarchs of Spain, to be presented in due season.

In the mean time, to draw to a conclusion of the Affairs and Estate of Arragon, we are to understand, that of all the Kingdoms which belong to the Spaniards, it is the most privileged, and free from the absolute Command of the Kings of Spain : having in it such a temper or mixture of Government, as makes the Kings hereto to be well nigh *Tiulars*, or of little more authority than a Duke of *Venice*. For at the first erecting of this Estate, the better to encourage the People to defend themselves against the *Moor*, they had many *Privileges*, indulged them ; and, amongst others, the creating of a *Judicial*, or *Popular Magistrate* ; which, like the *Episopi* of *Sparta*, had, in some cases, superiority over their Kings, reversing their Judgments, cancelling their Grants, and sometimes censuring their Proceedings. And though King Philip the second, in the business of Antonio de Perez, had made a Conquest of that Kingdom, and annulled all their *Privileges*, yet after, of his own meer goodness, he restored them (in part) again, as they continue at this day.

Chief Orders of *Knight-hood* (besides that of *Mercede*, spoken of before) in this Kingdom, are 1. Of *S. Savion*, instituted by Alphonso the first, anno 1118. to animate the members of it against the *Moor*. Of the habit and customs of this Order, I have met with nothing.

2. Of *Montesa*, instituted by James the first, King of Arragon, anno 1270, or thereabouts endowed with all the Lands of the *Templers* (before dissolved) lying in *Valencia* ; together with the Town and Castle of

Montesa, made the Seat of their Order, whence it took the name. Subject at first unto the Master of the Order of *Catalava*, out of which extracted ; and under the same Rule of *Cîteaux*. But after, by the leave of Pope *Benedict* the 13th. they quitted themselves of that subjection ; and, in sign thereof, changed the Habit of *Catalava*, which before they used, to a *Red Crois* upon their Breasts ; now the Badge of their Order.

The Arms of Arragon, since possessed by the Earls of *Barcelona*, are *Or*, four Pallets *Gules* : before which, they were *Azure*, a *Crois Argent*.

The Monarchy of SPAIN.

Thus having spoke of Spain, and the Estate thereof, when broken and divided into many Kingdoms ; let us next look upon it as united into one main body ; effected, for the most part, by Ferdinand the last King of Arragon before-mentioned. Before which time, Spain, being parcelled into many Kingdoms, was little famous, and less feared : the Kings thereof, as the Author of the *Politick Discourse*, &c. hath well observed, being only *Kings of Figs and Oranges*. Their whole Puissance was then turned one against another, and small achievements had they out of that Continent, except those of the House of Arragon ; upon *Sicily*, *Naples*, *Sardinia*, and the *Baleares*. *Toussaint*, a diligent Writer of the History of his own Times, (in some things he favour not more of the *Party*, than the *Historian*) telleth us, that before this King's Reign, the name and glory of the Spaniards, was, like their Country, hemmed in by the Seas on some sides, and the Hills on the other : *Potiusque paucis exteri invadentibus, quam quicquam memorabile extra suos fines gessisset*. 'Tis true, that *Sancho* the Great, King of Navarre, assumed unto himself the title of King of Spain, and that Alphonso the fourth of Castile, and the ninth of Leon, caused himself to be crowned Emperor of Spain, in the Cathedral Church of Leon : Titles ambitiously affected upon no good ground, and such as ended with their Persons. But this Prince, worthily named, *The Great*, seized on the Kingdom of Navarre, conquered Granada from the *Moor*, subdued the Kingdom of Naples, united Arragon to Castile, banished 124000 Families of the *Jews*, began, by the conduct of Columbus, the discovery of the *Western Indies* ; and finally by marrying his Daughter Joan, to Philip, Son of the Emperor Maximilian, Duke of Burgundy, and Lord of the greatest part of the *Netherlands*, laid the Foundation of the present *Austrian* Greatness. Continued since by so many inter-marriages betwixt the Spanish and Imperial Branches of that potent Family, that Philip the second might have called the Arch-Duke Albertus, Brother, Cousin, Nephew, and Son. A strange Medley of Relations. Thus by the puissance of this Prince, the Spaniards became first considerable in the eye of the World, and grew to be a terror to the Neighbouring Nations. *Nomen Hispanicum obscurum antea & vicinis penè incognitum*, (saith the same *Toussaint*) *tum primum crevit, & aliusq; temporis in tantam magnitudinem excrevit, ut formidolosum ex eo & terribile totum terrarum Orbem effe cepit*. And he saith true, with reference to the French and Italian Nations ; to whom the Spaniards have administered no small matter of fear and terror : though unto others, they appear no such dreadful *Big beasts*. But sure it is, and we may warrantably speak it without any such impressions of fear and terror, that this Kingdom, since that time,

is wonderfully both enlarged and strengthened : strongly compacted in it self, with all the Ligaments both of Power and State, and infinitely extended over all parts of the World ; his Dominions beholding (as it were) both the rising and the setting of the Sun : which, before the Spaniards, no Monarch could ever say. A greater change than any man can as possibly imagine to have been effected in so short a time, as was between the first year of Ferdinand the Catholic, and the last year of Charles the fifth.

Concerning the title of the most Catholic King, re attributed to this Ferdinand, I find, that Alphonso the first of Oviedo, was so named for his sanctity : with whom it dyed, and was revived in Alphonso the Great, the twelfth King of Leon and Oviedo, by the grant of Pope John the 8th. After, it lay dead till the days of this Prince, who re-obtained this title from Pope Alexander the sixth : either because he compelled the *Moor* to be baptized, banished the *Jews*, and in part converted the *Americans* unto Christianity ; or because, having united Castile to his Dominions, surprized the Kingdom of Navarre, and subdued that of Granada ; he was, in a manner, the Catholic or general King of all Spain. The last reason seemeth to sway most in the reattribution of this attribute, in that when it was granted and confirmed on Ferdinand, by Pope Alexander the sixth, the King of Portugal exceedingly stomached at it : *Quando Ferdinandus imperio universum Hispaniam, (sith Adriana) non obtinere, ejus tum ex magna parte penes Reges alios*. It seems Emanuel could not think himself a King of Portugal, if the title of Catholic King did belong to Ferdinand. Wherein he was of the same mind, as was Gregory the Great, who when John of Constantinople had assumed to himself the title of the Occidental or Catholic Bishop, advised all Bishops of the World to oppose that arrogancy ; and that upon the self-same reason, *Nam si ille est, Catholicus, non esset Episcopus* : for, if John were the Catholic Bishop, they were none at all. But upon what consideration soever it was first re-granted, it hath been ever since assumed by his Posterity : to whole Crown ; as hereditary, and in common use, as the most Christian King to France, the Defender of the Faith to England.

And yet there was some further reason, why the Spaniards might affect the title of Catholic King, his Empire being Catholic in regard of extent, (though not of Orthodoxy of Doctrine) as reaching not over all Spain only, but over a very great part of the world besides. For in right of the Crown of Castile, he possessed the Towns of *Melilla* and *Oran*, the Haven of *Majalquivir*, the Rock of *Velex*, and the Canary Islands in *Africa* ; the Continent and Islands of all *America*, except *Brasil*, and some Plantations in the North, and in the *Cambial* Islands, of the *English*, *Hollanders*, and a few poor *French*. In the right of the Kingdom of Arragon, he enjoyed the Realms of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Sardinia*, with many Islands interspersed in the *Mediterranean*, and in the right of the House of Burgundy, the Counties of Burgundy, and *Charolais*, the greatest part of *Belgium*, with a title unto all the rest : besides the great Dukedom of *Milain*, the Havens of *Telamon*, and *Plumbino*, and many other pieces of importance in *Italy*, held by Inheritance from the Empire. To which if those Estates be added, which accrewed to Philip the second by the Crown of Portugal, we have the Towns of *Cova*, *Tangier*, and *Maragon* in *Barbary*, the Fortresses of *Aguin*, and *S. George*, in *Guinea* ; the Isles of *Azores*, *Madeira*, *Cape Verd*, *S. Thomas*, *Del Principe*, on this side of the Cape, and of *Mozambique* on the other : in *Asia*, all the Sea-coast almost from the Gulf of *Persia* unto *China*, and many strong Holds in the *Molucces*, *Baniam*, *Zelium*, and other Islands ; and finally in *America*, the large Coun-

try of *Brasil*, extending in length 1500 miles. An Empire of extent enough, to appropriate to these Monarchs the stile of Catholic.

The Monarchs of Spain.

- A. Chr.
- 1478 1. Ferdinand, King of Arragon, Sicily, Sardinia, Majorca, Valencia, Earl of Catalogne ; surprized Navarre, and conquered the Realm of Naples.
 - Isabel, Queen of Castile, Leon, Galicia, Toledo, Murcia, Lady of Bisney, conquered Granada, and discovered America.
 - Joan, Princess of Castile, Granada, Leon, &c. and of Arragon, Navarre, Sicily, &c. Philip, Arch-Duke of Austria, L. of Belgium.
 - 1516 2. Charles King of Castile, Arragon, Naples, &c. Archduke of Austria, Duke of Milan, Burgundy, Brabant, &c. Earl of Catalogne, Flanders, Holland, &c. Lord of Biscay, Frisland, Utrecht, &c. and Emperor of the Germans. He added the Realms of Mexico and Peru, the Dukedom of Gelderland and Milan, the Earldom of Zuphen, and the Seigniories of Overch, Over-Issel and Greyning, unto his Estates. A Prince of that magnanimity and puissance, that had not Francis the first in time opposed him, he had even swallowed all Europe. He was also, for a time, of great strength and reputation, in Tunis, and other parts of Africa, disposing Kingdoms at his pleasure ; but the Turk broke his power there ; and being hunted also out of Germany, he resigned all his Kingdoms, and died private. 42.
 - 1558 4. Philip II. of more ambition, but less prosperity than his Father ; fortunate only in his attempt on the Kingdom of Portugal ; but that is sufficiently balanced by his ill success in the Netherlands, and against the English, For the Hollanders, and their Confederates, drove him out of right of his Belgiek Provinces : the English overthrew his invincible Armada, intercepted his Plate-Flotts ; and by awing the Ocean, had almost impoverished him : and though he held for a time a hard hand upon France, in hope to have gotten that Crown by the help of the *League*, yet upon casting up his Accounts, he found that himself was the greater loser by that undertaking. So zealous in the cause of the *Romish Church*, that it was thought that his eldest Son Charles was put to death, with his consent, in the *Inquisition-house*, for seeming favorably inclined to the *Low-Country Heretics*, as the Spaniards called them. These four great Kings were all of the Order of the Garter ; but neither of the two that followed.
 - 1598 5. Philip III. finding his Estate almost destroyed by his Father's long and chargeable Wars, first made Peace with England, and then concluded a Truce for a 12 years with the States of the Netherlands : which done, he totally banished all the *Moor* out of Spain, and was a great stickler in the Wars of Germany.
 - 1621 6. Philip IV. Son of Philip the third, got into his power all the Lower Palatinate ; but lost the whole Realm of Portugal, and the Province of Catalonia, with many of his best Towns in *Flanders*, *Artois*, and Brabant, and some Ports in *Italy* : not yet recovered to that Crown from the power of the French. This Empire consisting of so many several Kingdoms united into one Body, may seem to be invincible. Yet had Queen Elizabeth followed the counsel of her men of VVar, he might have broken it in pieces. With 4000 men he might have taken away his Indies from him ; without

whose Gold the *Low-Country-Army*, (which is the very best) could not be paid; and by consequence multitudes have been dissuolved. Nay, Sir *Walter Raleigh* in the Epilogue of his most excellent *History of the World*, plainly affirmeth that with the charge of 200000 l. continued but for two years, or three at the most, the *Spaniards* might not only have been persuaded to live at peace; but all their swelling and overflowing streams, might be brought back to their natural Channels, and old Banks. Their own Proverb faith, *The Lion is not so fierce as he is painted*; yet the *Americans* tremble at his name: it's true; and it is well observed by that great Politician *Machiavel*, that things which seem to be and are not, are more feared far off, than near at hand. Nor is this judgment built upon weak conjectures, but such as shew the Power of Spain not to be so formidable, as it's commonly supposed: which I find marshalled to my hand in this manner following: 1. The dissymmetry of his Realms, and other Estates, which makes one part unable to relieve or defend the other. 2. The slowness of his Preparations in offensive or defensive Wars; his Forces, of necessity, being long a gathering in places so remote from the Royal Seat, and being gathered, no less subject to the dangers both of Sea and Land, before united into a body, and made fit for action. 3. The danger and uncertainty which the most part of his *Forinlike Revenues* are subject to; many times intercepted by Pirates and open Enemies; sometimes too long delayed by cross Winds and Seas, that they come too late to serve the turn. 4. The different tempers and affections of a great part of his Subjects, not easily concurring in the same ends, or travelling the same way unto them, &c. The dissymmetry of the *Aragonians*, *Portuguese*, and *Italian* Provinces, not well affected, for their *rugeture*, and particular reasons, unto the *Castilians*; apt to be wrought on by the Ministers of neighbouring Princes, whom *jealousies of State* keep watchful upon all advantages, for the depressing of his Power. 6. And last of all, the want of People of his own natural Subjects, whom he may best rely on for the increase and grandeur of his Estates, exhausted and diminished by those ways and means which have been touched upon; without any politic or provident cause, to remedy that defect for the time to come. And this I look on as the greatest and most sensible Error in the *Spanish* Government. Therein directly contrary to the ancient *Romans*; who finding that nothing was more necessary for great and important enterprises, than multitudes of Men, employed all their inducements to increase their numbers, by Marriages, Colonies, and such helps; making their conquered Enemies free *Denizens* of their Common-wealth: by which means the number of the *Roman* Citizens became so great (all being equally interested in the preservation of it) that *Rome* could not be ruined (in *Annibal's* judgment) by any Force but her own. But, on the other side, the *Spaniards*, employ none in their Plantations, but their own native Subjects; and so many of them also in all their enterprises both by Sea and Land, that so many thousands go forth every year, in the flower of their age, not one of them returning home; and those few which return, either lame or old: the Country is not only deprived of the Men themselves, but also of the Children which might be born. A evidence whereof may be, that John the first of *Portugal*, who reigned before the several Voyages and Plantations of that people, was able to raise 4000 Men for the War of *Africa*: whereas *Emanuel*, who lived after those Undertakings, had much ado to raise 2000 Foot, and 3000 Horse, on the same occasion: and *Sebastian*, after that, found as great a difficulty to raise an Army of 12000.

As for the Forces which the King of Spain is able to make out of all his Estates, they may be best seen by his preparations for the Conquest of *England*, *France*, and *Flanders*. In his design for *England*, an. 1538, he had a Fleet consisting of 150 Sail of Ships, whereof 66 were great Gallies, 4 Gallies of *Naples*, 4 Gallies, the rest smaller Vessels: fraught with 20000 Soldiers for land-service, 9000 Saylers, 800 Gunners, 4000 Pioneers, 2650 pieces of Ordnance: not reckoning into this account the Commanders, and Volunteers; of which last there were very great numbers who went upon that service for *Spain*, *Merit*, or *Honour*. In the design of *Charles* the Fifth, for the Conquest of *Provence*, he had no less than 50000 in the field, and in that of *Philip* the second, for the reducing of *Flanders*, the Duke of *Alva* had an Army, at his first setting forward out of *Italy*, consisting of 8800 *Spanish* Foot, and 1200 Horse, all of them old experienced Souldiers, drawn out of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and the Dutchy of *Milain*; 3600 *German* Foot, 300 Lances, and 100 Harquebussiers on Horse back, of the County of *Burgundy*; all old Souldiers also: besides many Volunteers of great rank and quality, very well attended, and his old standing Army in the *Belgick* Provinces: a Strength sufficient to have conquered a far greater Country.

Of standing Forces in this Country, he maintaineth in three Realms of *Spain*, but three thousand Horse; and in his Forts and Garrisons, no more than 8000 Foot: his Garrisons being very few, and those upon the Frontiers only, and in Maritime Towns: his Gallies served with Slaves out of *Turkey* and *Barbary*. And yet he is able, on occasion, to raise very great Forces; partly, because the ordinary Subjects are so well affected to their Prince, whom they never mention without reverence: and partly in regard there is so great a number of *Fendatories* and Noble-men, who are by *Tenure*, to serve personally at their own charges, for defence of the Realm. And certainly, it must be a considerable Force which the Noble-men of *Spain* are able to raise, considering the greatness of their Revenue, and the number of Vassals which live under them: it being supposed, that the Dukes of *Spain* (of which there were 23 when my Author lived) were able, one with another, to dispend yearly from 50000 Ducats, to 100000; some going very much above that proportion; and that of 36 Marquesses, and 50 Earls, the poorest had 10000 Ducats of yearly Rent, and so ascending unto 50 and 60000. The Arch-Bishops, Bishops, and others of the greater Clergy, being all endowed with fairer *Temporal* Estates, than in most places in *Europe*, are also bound to serve (though not personally) on the like occasions. And to these services the Noble-men are for two reasons more forward than the other *Fendatories*: 1. Because their Honours descend not to the Son by the Father to the Son, unless confirmed to the Son by the Kings acknowledgment and compellation, which makes them more observant of him, than in *France* or *England*, where it is challenged as a Birth-right. 2. Because out of the gross body of these Noble-men, the King doth use to honour some with the title of *Grandee*, privileged to stand covered before the King, and to treat with him as their Brother: which being the highest Honour which that State can yield, keeps those great persons in readiness to obey his pleasure, in hope to come to an Honour of so high esteem.

For the Revenues of this King, which ordinarily arise out of his Estates, (taking *Portugal* into the Account) they are computed at Eleven Millions of Crowns yearly; that is to say, four from his Dominions in *Italy*, two from *Portugal* and the *Appertinents* thereof, three from the *West-Indies*, and the other two remaining, from his Kingdom

Kingdoms in *Spain*. Besides this, he receiveth yearly the Revenues of the Masterships of all the great Orders in his Kingdom, incorporated to the Crown by *Ferdinand* the Catholic, not without good Policy and reason of State: the Masters (or *Comendadores*, as they call them) of those several Orders drawing after them such Troops of the Nobility, Gentry, and other dependants; that their power began to be suspected by the Kings themselves. By which addition there accrueh to the Crown (besides the opportunity of preferring Servants of the greatest merit) above 150000 l. of yearly Rents. As for his Casuities and extraordinary ways of raising money, they are very great: reckoned by the Author of the *General History of Spain* to amount (according to divers Opinions) to 14, 18, and 23 millions of Crowns. For making up of which sum, he puts in the First Fruits, and some part of the Temples of Rectories; and other Church Preferments, amounting to three millions yearly. And the Author of the *Politique Dispute*, &c. affirmeth the Pardons sent to the *Indies* given him by the Pope, to be worth half a million of pounds yearly. Add hereunto the fall and disposal of all Offices, which make up a good round sum; and the free Gifts and Contributions of his Subjects, which amount unto a good Revenue. For the Kingdom of *Naples* presents him every third year with a million and 20000 Crowns; and *Castile* only at one time granted a Contribution of four millions, to be paid in four years: his Subjects generally being so well affected unto the Crown, that he can demand nothing in reason of them which they are

not ready to grant; the King of *Spain* being called in that regard by the Emperour *Maximilian*, the King of *Men*. And yet this great King is not counted to be rich in Treasure, his expences being very great. First, in keeping Forts and Garrisons in many parts of his Estates against the Revolt of the Natives. Secondly, maintaining so many Frontier places against Foreign Invasions: Thirdly, in the continual pay of an *Armada* for conducting his *Plate-Flots* from *America*. And last of all, the many and unprofitable Wars of King *Philip* the second, so plunged the Crown in the Gulfs of Bankers and Money-Changers, that much of the Revenues of it stand engaged for payment to this very day.

There are in *Spain*.
Arch-Bishops 11. Bishops 52.
Universities 18.

1. <i>Sevill</i> .	10. <i>Ebora</i> .
2. <i>Granada</i> .	11. <i>Lisbon</i> .
3. <i>S. Jago</i> .	12. <i>Comibre</i> .
4. <i>Toledo</i> .	13. <i>Valencia</i> .
5. <i>Valadolid</i> .	14. <i>Lerida</i> .
6. <i>Majorca</i> .	15. <i>Huesca</i> .
7. <i>Salamanca</i> .	16. <i>Saragossa</i> .
8. <i>Alcala de Henares</i> .	17. <i>Tudela</i> .
9. <i>Signena</i> .	18. <i>Ofuna</i> .

And so much for S P A I N.

Of the OCEAN and ISLES

OF

BRITAIN.

Before we can arrive in *Britain*, the last Western Diocese, we must cross the OCEAN, that immense, and infinitum Pelagus, as *Mela* calls it: in comparison of which, the Seas before mentioned are but as Ponds or Gullies: a Sea in former times known more by fame than tryal, and rather wondrous at on the shore side, than any more remote place of it. The *Roman* ventured not on it with their Vessels, unless in the passage from *France* to *Britain*: and much famed is *Alexander* for his hazardous Voyage on this unruly Sea, he having failed in all 400 Furlongs from the shore. The Name and Pedegree take here both from the *Poets* and *Etymologists*. The *Poets* make *Oceanus* to be the Son of *Caelum* and *Vesta*, or of Heaven and Earth. They termed him the Father of all things, as, *Oceanumque Patrem verum*, in *Virgil*, because moisture was necessarily required to the continuation of all bodies: and usually painted him with a Bulls head on his shoulders, (whence *Euripides* called him *Βουκεφαλόντα*, *Oceanus Tauvrius*) from the howling and fury of the Winds; by reason from it came to the shore, and to which it is subject. As for the Children attributed unto him, they are doubtless nothing but the clouds and vapours hence arising. The

name of *Ouante*, *Oceanus*, some derive from *ουαν*, *cel*, because of its swiftness; some from *ουαν*, *findo*, *divido*, because it cleaveth and interlatheth the Earth, and others make it *ουαντι*, *quasi ouantia mare non ouant*, a celeriter fluens, which agreeth in meaning with the first. Particular names it hath divers, according to the name of the shore, by which it passeth, as *Cambriacus*, *Gallicus*, *Britannicus*, &c. The chief Isles of it appertaining to *Europe*, besides those called the *Azores* or *Isles of Terceira*, which we have spoken of when we were in *Portugal*; those of the *Aquitan* Ocean, described in our History of *France*; those of the *Netherland*, and the *Northern* Seas, which are to be described hereafter in their proper places, are the *British* Islands: by many of the most ancient and approved Writers called simply *BRITAIN*, because united all in that common notion; though afterwards distinguished into the particular appellations of *Great Britain*, *Ireland*, and the rest. Of which, as lying in my way betwixt *Spain* and *Germany*; or rather as the next Diocese of the Empire to *France* and *Spain*, under the *Prætorian Prefectus of Gaul*, I am next to speak.

OF BRITAIN.

BRITAIN, according to the largest latitude of that name and notion, comprehendeth all those Islands both great and less, which lie in compass about *Albion*, or *Britain* properly so called : by *Ptolomy* called *Britannia*, in the plural number, For speaking of *France* he thus putteth joyneth, *Ex adverso hujus Britannia Insula, Albionem fuit, quoniam fuit, cum Britannia omnes vocarentur*, i. e. Opposite hereto lieth the Island of *Britain* which formerly by a more proper name was called *Albion*, the name of *Britain* comprehending all the Isles adjoining. And in this latitude and extent we now take the word ; the whole dominion of these Islands, distinguished into several names, being united in the person and under the command of the King of *Great Britain* : that name including all the rest, as appendants of it ; with reference to this called the *Isles of Britain*, or the *British Islands*. Thus *Aristotle* in his Book *De Mundo* (if the Book be his) *Quin namque duo Insule Britannicae fuisse sunt, quarum maxima Albion & Ierna ; i. e.* In which Sea there are situate two *British* Islands of great note and compass, *Albion* (or *Britain* properly so called) and *Ireland*. *Ptolomy* goeth to work more punctually, and he states it thus ; *Completitur prima base Europæ tabulis duas Britannicas insulas, quas Diogenius Britannides vocat, Hiberniam nempe & Albionem, cum minimis aliquot adiacentibus insulis, in sunt Orcades, Eludæ, Thylye, Mona, & reliquæ suis nominibus expressæ* : that is to say, This first Table of *Europe*, comprehendeth the two Islands of *Br-*

tain, which *Dionysius* calls the *Pretanides*, namely *Ireland* and *Albion*, with some lesser Islands joining to it, as the *Orcades*, the *Hebrides*, *Thule*, *Angleyes*, (or *Man*) and others called by distinct names. By which we see first, that the general name of *Britain* or *British* Islands comprehended all those which are situate in the *British* Ocean : and secondly, that the greatest and most famous of them, more specially called *Britain* by the following Writers, was anciently called *Albion* by its proper name. And it was called *Albion*, as many Authors tell me, either from *Albion* the Brother of *Bergion*, the Son of *Neptune*, mentioned by *Aeschylus*, *Dionysius*, *Strabo*, *Mela*, *Salmus*, *Pliny*, and others; it being not improvable, that the greatest Island of the *Ocean*, should be denominated from a Son of the greatest Sea-god : or from the old word *Aapor*, signifying *White* amongst the *Greeks*; (from whence the *Latins* had their *Albium*;) by reason of the white chalky Cliffs, seen by the Mariners afar off as they failed those Seas.

those Seas. But to return again to Britain in the general notion, and to the several Islands which that name includeth, we may thus distinguish them into the Greater and the Lesser; the Greater subdivided into 1. Great Britain, or Britain properly so called, and 2. Ireland; the Lesser, 1. the Orkneys; 2. the Hebrides; 3. Man, 4. Anglessey, 5. the Islands of the Severn Sea, 6. the Sorlings, or Isles of Scilly, 7. Wight, 8. Thetou, 9. Sunderland, and 10. Holy Island.

GREAT BRITAIN.

TO speak much of *GREAT BRITAIN* or *BRITAIN* specially and properly so called, I hold somewhat superfluous; it being our home, and we therefore no strangers to it. Yet as *Mela* once said of *Italy*, *De Italia, magis quam ordo exigit, quam quædam monstri feræ panes dædunt, ceterum sum omnia*; so say I of *Britain*. It is fo-shy to the eye of every Reader, that he needs not the precedals of Letters. Yet something must be said, though for methods sake, rather than necessity. In this we will begin by laying out the bounds, thereof (as in other places) which are, on the East, the *German Ocean*, dividing it from *Belgium, Germany*, which divides it from *Ireland*; and to the North of that, with the main *Peruvian* or *Western Ocean*, of which the Ancients knew no shore; on the North, with the *Hyberborean* or *Decadentian Ocean*, as *Proclus* calls it, extending out to *Island*, *Free-eland*, and the ends of the then known World; and on the South, the *English Channel*, which divides it from *France*.

France. The length hereof from North to South, is reckoned at 620 Italian miles; the greatest breadth from East to West, measured in a right line, no more than 250 of the same miles, but by the crooks and bendings of the Sea-Coast, come to 320 miles : whole circumference accounted 1836 miles. The greatest Island in the World, except *Java, Borneo, Sumatra, and Madagascar* ; and therefore by *Solinus* and some other Ancients (to whom those late times were not known) called the *Other World*; by other of later time, the *Lady and Mistress of the Seas*. Situate under the 8th. 9th. 10th. 11th. and 12th. *Climes* : so that the longest day at the *Lizard* point in *Cornwall*, (being the

most Southern part hereof) containeth 16 hours and a quarter; at *Barwick* which is the border of *England* and *Scotland*, 17 hours 3 quarters, and one hour more at *Strailby head*, in the North of *Scotland*; where some observe that there is scarce any night at all in the Summer *Solstice*, but a fading Twilight. To which alludes the Poet, saying, *E minimam comentes nelle Britannias*: and the *Panegyrist* in the time of *Constantine*, amongst other commendations which he gives to *Britain*, saith, that therein is neither extreme cold in Winter, nor any forcing heats in Summer, and that which is most comfortable, *Long days, and very light some nights*. Nor doth the *Panegyrist* tell us only of the temperateness of the Air or the length of the days; but of the fruitfulness of the Soil: affirming *Britain* to be blessed with all the commodities of Heaven and Earth; such an abundant plenty of Corn, as might suffice both for Bread and Wine; the Woods thereof without wild Beasts, the Fields without noisom Serpents, infinite number of milch Beasts, and Sheep weighed down with their own Fleeces. Whereto add that of *Affred* of *Beverly*, a Poet of the middle times, favouring thus of *Britain*.

*Insula prædives, quæ toto vix eget orbe;
Et cujus totus indiget orbis ope.
Insula prædives, cujus miretur & optet.
Delicias SOLOMON, Octavianus opes.*

A wealthy island, which no help desires,
Yet all the world supply from her requires;

Able

Able to glut King *SOLOMON* with pleasures,
And surfeit great *Augustus* with her treasures.

Proceed we next to the name of *Britain*, of which I find many *Etiologies*; some forced, some fabulous and foolish, and but few of weight. That which hath passed for current in former times, (when almost all Nations did pretend to be of *Trojan* race) was that it took this name from *Brutus*, affirmed to be the Son of *Silvius*, who was the Grandchild of *Æneas*, and the third King of the *Latines* of the *Trojan* blood. Which *Brutus* having unfortunately killed his Father, and thereupon abandoning *Italy* with his Friends and Followers; after a long Voyage and many wanderings, is said to have fallen upon this Island, to have conquered here a race of Giants; and having given unto it the name of *Britain*, to leave the Sovereignty thereof unto his posterity, who quietly enjoyed the fame, till subdued by the *Romans*. This is the sum of the Tradition concerning *Brute*: which though received in the darker times of ignorance, and too much credulity; in these more learned days hath been layd aside, as false and fabulous. And it is proved that there was no such man as *Brutus*, I. From the newness of his Birth, *Geoffrey of Monmouth*, who lived in the reign of King *Henry* the second, being the first Author which makes mention of him: for which immediately questioned by *Newberghius*, another Writer of that Age. 2. By the silence of all the *Roman* Historians, in whom it hath had been unpardonable negligence to have omitted an Accident so remarkable, as the killing of a Father by his own Son (especially when they wanted matter to fill up the times) and the erecting of a new *Trojan* Empire in so great an Island. 3. By the Arguments which *Cæsar*

uith to prove the *Britain* to be derived from the *Galls*; as Speech, Laws, Customs, Dispositions, Making, and the like. 4. And left it might be said, that though the *Britains* in *Cæsar*'s time were of *Gallick* race, yet there had been a more ancient people, who had their Original from the *Trojans*, *Tartarus* putteth off that dispute with an *I pernamus*: *Qui mortales initio coluerint, parum conperimus esse*, faith that knowing Writer. And 5. by the Testimony of all *Roman* Historicks, who tell us that *Cæsar* found the *Britains* under many Kings, and never under the command of one sole Prince, but in times of danger. *Summa Belli administrandi communis consensu commissa esse* Calvellaunus, as it is in *Cæsar*: *Dum singulis pugnant, universi vincuntur*, as we read in *Tacitus*. To omit therefore that of *Britain*, and other *Erymnus* is unlikely, but of less authority: the name of *Britain* is most probably derived from *Brit*, which in the Ancient *British* signifieth *Painted*; and the word *Tain*, signifieth a Nation: agreeable unto the custom of the ancient *Britains*, who used to discolour and paint their bodies, that they might seem more terrible in the eyes of their enemies. *Britain* is then a Nation of painted men; such as the *Romans* called *Pitti* in the times ensuing. Which I prefer before the *Etymology* of *Bocharus*, a right Learned man, but one that wretched all originations to the *Punick*, or *Phœnician* language; by whom this Island is called *Britain* or *Britannica*, from *Bara*, an, signifying in that Language a Land of *Tyme*, wherewith the VVestern parts of it do indeed abound. Other particulars concerning the *Isle* of *Britain* shall be observed in the description of those parts into which it now doth stand divided, that is to say, 1. *England*, 2. *Wales*, and 3. *Scotland*.

ENGLAND.

ENGLAND is bounded on the East with the *German*; on the West with the *Iris*; on the South with the *British* Oceans; and on the North, with the Rivers of *Tweed* and *Solway*; by which parted from *Scotland*: Environed with turbulent Seas, guarded by inaccessible Rocks: and where those want, preserved against all foreign Invasions by strong Forts and a puissant Navy.

Former times the Northern limits did extend as far as *Edenburgh* *Fryth* on the East, and the *Fryth* *Dunbriton* on the West, (for so far not only the Roman Empire, but the Kingdom of *Northumberland* did once extend, the intervening space being shut up with a Wall of Turfs by *Lellius Obichus*, in the time of *Ammianus* *Pius*. But afterwards, the *Romans* being beaten back by the *Barbarous* people, the Province was contracted within narrow bounds; and fortified with a Wall by the Emperour *Severus*, extending from *Carlisle* to the River *Tyne*, the track whereof may easily be discerned to this very day. A wall I make that at every miles end there is said to have been a Cattle, between every Cattle many Watch-Towers; and betwixt every Watch-Tower a Pipe of Brass, conveying the least noise unto one another without interruption: so that news of any approaching enemy was quickly over all the Border, and resistance accordingly provided. In following times the strong Towns of *Bewick*, and *Carlisle*, have been the chief Bars, by which we kept the back door shut: and as for other Forts, we had scarce any on the Frontiers, or Sea-Coasts of the Kingdom; though in the midland parts too many. VVVIII

being in the hands of potent and factious Subjects, occasioned many to rebel; and did create great trouble to the *Norman Kings*, till in the latter end of the Reign of King *Stephen*, 1100 of them were levell'd to the very ground, and those few which remained dismantled, and made them servicable. The Maritime parts were thought sufficiently assured by those Rocks and Cliffs, which compass the Island in most parts; and hardly any Cattle all along the shore, except that of *Dover*; which was therefore counted by the *French*, as the Key of *England*. But in the year 1538. King *Henry* the Eighth, considering how he had offended the Emperour *Charles* the Fifth, by his Divorce from Queen *Katherine*; and incurred the displeasure of the Pope, by his falling off from that See; as also that the *French King* had not only married his Son to a Daughter of the Pope, but a Daughter of the King of *Scots*: thought fit to send for his own safety, by building in many places where the Houses were of plain and open, Castles, Platforms, and Block-Houses; many of which in the long time of Peace ensuing were much neglected and in part ruined.

His Daughter Queen *Elizabeth* of happy memory, provided yet better for the Kingdom. For the not only fortified *Portsmouth*, and placed it in a strong Garrison; but walled the Kingdom round with a most lately, royal, and invincible Navy: with which she always commanded the Seas, and vanquished the mightiest Monarch of *Europe*: whereas her Predecessors in their Sea service, for the most part, hired their Men of War, from the *Hansemans*, and *Genoese*. Yet did neither of these great *Princes*, *Charles* the

K k 2

the inward part of the Realm: herein imitating Nature, who fortifieth the head and the feet only, not the middle of Beasts; or some Captain of a Fort, who plants all his Ordnance on the Walls, Bulwarks, and Out-works; leaving the rest by these sufficiently guarded.

The whole Island was first called *Albion*, as before is said, either from the Giant *Albion*, or *ab albis rupibus*, the white Rocks towards *France*. Afterwards it was called *Britain*, which name being first found in *Athenaeus*, amongst the *Graecians*, and in *Lucretius* and *Cæsar*, amongst the *Latines*; followed herein by *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and all other ancient Writers, except *Ptolemy* only, by whom called *Albion* as at first; continued till the time of *Egbert* the first *Saxon Monarch*, who called the Southern parts of the Island by the name of *England*, from the *Angles*, who with the *Jutes* and *Saxons* conquered it.

It is in length 320 miles, enjoying a soil equally participating of ground fit for tillage and pasture: yet to pasture more than to tillage are our people addicted, as a course of life not requiring for many helpers, which must be all fed and paid; and yet yielding more certain profits. Hence in former times Husbandry began to be neglected, Villages depopulated, and Hinds for want of entertainment to turn way-beaters: whereof Sir *Thomas Moor* in his *Utopia* complaineth; saying, that our Flocks of Sheep had devoured not only men, but whole houses and Towns. *Oves* (saith he) *que tam mites esse, tamq. exigui solent alii; nunc tam edaces, & indomita esse, ceperunt, ut homines devorant ipsos, agros, domos, oppida vastent, ac depopulentur.* To prevent this mischief, there was a Statute made in the Fourth year of *Henry the Seventh*, against the converting of Arable Land into Pasture ground; by which course Husbandry was again revived, and the soil made to abound in Corn, that a dear year is seldom heard of. Our Vines are nipped with the cold, and seldom come to maturity, and are more used for the pleasantness of the shade, than for the hopes of Wine. Molt of her other plenty and ornaments, are expressed in this old Verse following;

*Anglia, 1. Mons, 2. Pons, 3. Fons,
4. Ecclesijs, 5. Famina, 6. Lani.*

That is to say,

For 1. Mountains, 2. Bridges, 3. Rivers, 4 Churches fair,
5. Women, and 6. Wooll, *England* is past compare.

1. For the Mountains lifting up here and there their lofty heads, and giving a gallant prospect to the lower Ground; the principal are those of *Mendip* in *Somerset*, *Malvern Hills* in *Worcestershire*, the *Chilterns* of *Buckinghamshire*, *Cusford* in *Gloucestershire*, the *Peak* of *Derbyshire*, *York Wolds*, &c. All of them either bowelled with Mines, or clothed with Sheep, or adorned with Woods. The exact description of which, would require more time than I can spend upon that subject. Proceed we therefore to

2. The *Bridges*, which are in number 87 5. The chief of which are, the Bridge of *Rochester* over *Medway*, the Bridge of *Bristol* over *Avon*, and the Bridge of *London* over *Thames*. This last standing upon 19 Arches of wonderful strength and largeness supporteth continual ranges of Buildings, seeming rather a Street than a Bridge; and is not to be paralleled with any Bridge of *Europe*; though of late by some defect made by fire, anno 1632 the Buildings are not so contiguous, as they were before.

3. The *Rivers* of this Country are in number 325. The chief is *Thamesis*, compounded of the two Rivers, *Thame* and *Isis*; whereof the former rising somewhat beyond *Thame* in *Buckinghamshire*, and the later beyond *Gloucester* in *Gloucestershire*, meet together about *Dorchester* in *Oxfordshire*: the issue of which happy conjunction is the *Thamis* or *Thames*. Hence it flyeth betwixt *Berke Buckinghamshire*, *Middlesex*, *Surrey*, *Kent*, and *Essex*; and so weddeth himself to the *Kenilth Medway*, in the very jaws of the Ocean. This glorious River in fewest the violence of the Sea more than any River in *Europe*: clogging and flowing twice a day, more than 60 miles: about whose Banks are so many fair Towns, and Princely Palaces, that a *German Poet* thus truly spake,

*Tot campos, sylvas, tot regatæ, tot hortos,
Artifici excolitis, tot vidimus arces;
Or nunc Antonio Thamisi cum Tibride ceterq.*

We saw for many Woods and Princely Bowers,
Sweet Fields, brave Palaces and stately Towers:
So many Gardens drest up with curious care,
That *Thames* with *Royal Tiber* may compare.

The second River of note, is *Sabrin* or *Severn*. It hath it's beginning in *Plinlimmon Hill* in *Montgomeryshire*, and his end about seven miles from *Bristol*: walking in the mean space, the Walls of *Shrewsbury*, *Worcester*, and *Gloucester*. 3. *Trent*, so called, for that 30 kind of Fishes are found in it, or that it receiveth 30 lesser Rivers; who having his Fountain in *Staffordshire*, and gliding through the Counties of *Nottingham*, *Lincoln*, *Leicester*, and *York*, augmenteth the turbulent current of *Humber*, the most violent stream of all the Ille. Yet *Humber* is not, to say truth, a distinct River, having a spring-head of his own; but rather the mouth or *Æstuarium* of divers Rivers here confluent and meeting together, namely, *Touze*, *Danwent*, and especially *Ouse* and *Trent*. And as the *Danwent*, having received into its Chanal the Rivers *Dravus*, *Saunus*, *Tibiscus*, and divers others, changeth his name into *Isse*: so also the *Trent*, receiving and meeting the waters above named, changeth his name into this of *Humber*; *Abus*, the old Geographers call it. 4. *Medway*, a *Kenilth* River, famous for harbouring the *Royal Navy*, 5. *Tweed*, the North-East-bound of *England*, on whose Northern bank is seated the strong & impregnable Town of *Barwick*. 6. *Tyne*, famous for *New-Castle*, and her inexhaustible Coal-pits. These and the rest of Principal note are thus comprehended in one of Mr. *Drayton* Sonnets:

Our *Flood Queen Thames* for Ships and Swans is
crown'd,
And lately *Severn* for her shore is prais'd,
The *Chrysal Trent* for Fords and Fish renown'd,
The *Avon* fame to *Albions* Cliffs is rais'd.
Carleion Chester vaunts her holy *Dee*,
York many Wonders of her *Ouse* can tell,
The *Peak* her *Dove*, whose fanks so fertile be,
And *Ken* will say her *Medway* doth excel.
Canswol commends her *Isis* to the *Thame*,
Our Northern Borders boast of *Tweeds* fair flood;
Our Western parts extol their *Willie* Fame,
And the old *Lea* brags of *Danish* blood.

4. The Churches, before the general suppression of Abbies, and spoiling the Church Ornaments, were most exquisite; the chief remaining, are 1. the Church of *St. Paul*, founded by *Erhelbert* King of *Kent*, in the place where once was a Temple consecrated to *Diana*: A Fa-
brick

brick of the largest dimensions of that kind, of any in the Christian World. For whereas the much celebrated Temple of *S. Sophia* in *Constantinople* hath but 260 foot in length, and 75 in breadth: this of *S. Paul* is 690 foot long, and 130 foot broad, the main body being 102 foot high, over which the Steeple of the Church was mounted 482 foot more. Which Steeple being made with Timber, and covered with Lead, was by the carelessness of the Sexton, in the fifth year of the Reign of *Q. Elizabeth*, consumed with fire, which happening in a thundering and tempestuous day, was by him confidently affirmed to be done by Lightning, and was so generally believed till the hour of his death: but not many years since to disabuse the world, he confest the truth of it; on which discovery, the burning of *St. Paul's Steeple* by Lightning, was left out of our Common Almanacks: where formerly it stood amongst the ordinary *Epoche*, or accounts of time. A Church of such a gallant Prospect, and so large dimensions, that had not the late reparation of it been discontinued, it would have been the stateliest and most majestic Fabrick in the Christian World. 2. The Collegiate Church of *S. Peter* in *Westminster*, (wherein I have the honour to be a Prebendary) famous for the Inauguration and the Sepulture of the Kings of *England*, the Tombs whereof are the most sumptuous, and the Chappel the most accurate piece of Building in *Europe*. 3. The Cathedral Church at *Lincoln*. 4. For a private Church, that of *Radcliff* in *Bristol*. 5. For a private Chappel, that of *Kings College* in *Cambridge*. 6. For curious Workmanship of the Glafs, that of *Christ-Church* in *Canterbury*. 7. For the exquisite beauty of the Fronts, those of *Wells* and *Peterborough*. 8. For a pleasant light House Church, the Abbey Church at *Bath*. 9. For an ancient and reverend Fabrick, the Minster of *York*. And 10. to comprehend the rest in one top Lady-Church in *Salisbury*, of which take these Verses.

*Mira cavam, solum quot continet annus, in ima
Tam numerosa, ferunt, ade fenestra micat.
Marmorisq. tenet fufus tot ab arte columnas,
Compensat horas quot vagus annus habet.
Totq. patent portæ, quot mensibus annus abundat:
Res miras, at veras celebrata fide.*

How many days in one whole year there be,
So many Windows in one Church we see
So many marble Pillars there appear,
As there are hours throughout the fleeting year.
So many Gates, as Moons one year do view;
Strange tale to tell, yet not so strange as true.

5. The Women generally are more handsome than in other places, sufficiently endowed with natural beauties, without the addition of adulterate Sophistications. In an absolute Woman, say the *Italians*, are required the parts of a *Dutch-Woman*, from the girle downwards; of a *French-Woman*, from the girle to the shoulders; over which must be placed an *English* face. As their beauties, so also are their Privileges the greatest of any Nation; neither so furiously subservient as the *French*, nor so jealously guarded as the *Italian*: but keeping so true a decorum, that as *England* is termed the Purgatory of Servants, and the Hell of Horfes; so it is acknowledged the Paradise of Women. And it is a common by-word among the *Italians*, that if there were a Bridge built over the *Narrow Seas*, all the Women of *Europe* would run into *England*. For here they have the upper hands in the freets, the upper place at the Table; the thirds of their Husbands estates, and their equal share in all Lauds, yea even such as are holden in *Knights-service*: Privileges wherewith

other Women are not acquainted. Of high esteem in former times amongst foreign Nations, for the modesty and gravity of their conversation, but of late times so much addicted to the light garb of the *French*, that they have lost much of their ancient honour and reputation amongst the knowing and more sober men of foreign Countries, who before admired them.

6. The Wool of *England*, is of exceeding fineness especially that of *Cusford* in *Gloucestershire*; that of *Leam* in *Hertfordshire*; and of the Ille of *Wight*. Of this Wool are made excellent Broad-cloths, dispersed all over the World, especially *Hig-Germans*, *Muscovy*, *Turkey*, and *Perfia*, to the great benefit of the Realm: as well in return of so much money which is made of them, as in setting to work so many poor people, who from it receive sustenance. Before the time of King *Edward* the third, *English* men had not the art, or neglected the use of making Cloth: till whose time our Wool was transported unwrought. And as his Successors have laid impositions on every Cloth sold out of the Realm, so his Predecessors had, as their occasion required, some certain Customs granted on every flock of Wool. In the beginning of this *Edward's* Wars with *France*, the Cities and Towns of *Flanders* being then even to admiration rich, combined with him, and aided him in his Wars against that King. And he for his part by the composition then made, was to give them 140000 *l.* ready money to aid them by Sea and Land, infeed required, and to make *Bruges*, then one of the great Mart-Towns of *Christendom*, the Staple for his Wools. Here the Staple continued 15 years, at which time the *Flemmings* having broke off from the King, and he having by experience seen what the benefit of those Staples were, removed them from *Bruges* into *England*. And for the ease as well of his Subjects in bringing their Wools unto the Ports, as of such Foreign Merchants that came to buy, he placed his Staples at *Excester*, *Bristol*, *Winchester*, *Westminster*, *Chichester*, *Canterbury*, *Norwich*, *Lincoln*, *York*, and *Newcastle*, for *England*; at *Caermarthen* for *Wales*; and at *Dublin*, *Waterford*, *Cork*, and *Tredeg*, for *Ireland*. He further enacted, that no *English*, *Irish*, or *Welsh* men should transport this Stapled commodity, no by Licence (if any such should be granted) on pain of Confiscation, and imprisonment during the Kings pleasure. Lastly, he allured over his divers *Flemmings*, which taught our men the making of Clothes (who are now grown the best Cloth-workers in the *VWorld*; and to encourage them in that Art, it was by a Statute of the 27th of *Edward* the third, Enacted to be Felony, to carry any Wools unwrought. VVhen *England* had some short time enjoyed the benefit of these Staples, the King removed them to *Calice*, which he had conquered, and desired to make wealthy. From hence they were at several times and occasions translated, now to one, now to another Town in *Belgium*: and happy was that Town, in what Country soever, where the *English* kept a house for this Traffick; the confluence of all people thither to buy, infinitely enriching it. Answer in *Brabant* long enjoyed the *English* Merchants, till upon some differences between King *Henry* the Seventh, and *Maximilian* Arch-Duke and Lord of *Belgium*, they removed: but at their return again, were received by the *Antwerpians*, with solemn Processions, Princely Triumph, sumptuous Feasts, rare Banquetings, and other expressions of much Love, but more Joy. And giving of some *Cusford* Sheep by *Edward* the Fourth, to *Henry* of *Castile*, and *John* of *Arragon*, An. 1465, is counted one of the greatest prejudices, that ever happened to this Kingdom.

The *Wool* transported bringeth into the Kingdom no less than 1500000 *l.* and the Lead half the sum, so that
Lectis

Lewis Guicciardine reporteth: That before the Wars of the Low-Countries, the *Flemmings* and the *English* bartered Wares, yearly to the value of 12 Millions of Crowns.

The next commodity to the *Wool*, though not mentioned in the *re* foregoing, are the rich and inexhaustible *Mines of Cole, Lead, and Tin*: to say nothing of the *Mines of Iron*, as bringing more damage to the publick by the spoil of Woods, than profit to particular persons in the increase of their estates. The *Mines of Cole* chiefly enrich *Newcastle* in *Northumberland*, and by that the great City of *London*, and many other good Towns besides: which could not possibly subsist in this general decay of Woods, and neglect of planting, but by this Commodity. The *Mines of Lead* are most considerable in the *Peak of Derbyshire*; those of *Tin* in *Cornwall*, where they dig *Tin* not much inferior to *Silver* in fineness. A Commodity which brought great wealth to *England* in former times, the art of making it not being elsewhere known in *Europe*; till one of the *Tin-workers*, flying out of *England* for a Murder, passed into *Germany*, *an*. 1243 and there discovered some *Tin-Mines* in *Mihnia*, not known before, and set on foot that Trade amongst them, to the great prejudice (saith my Author) of the *Earls of Cornwall*, who had before the sole Monopoly of that useful metal.

To these particulars being matter of profit and necessity, if I would add such things as are for delight and pleasure; I might subjoin the *Bells and Parks*; for which this Kingdom is as eminent among Foreign Nations as for any of those mentioned in the said old Verse. The *Bells* so many, tunable, and of such excellent Melody to a Musical ear (brought more to the command of the skillful ringer than in former times) that is thought there are more good Rings of *Bells* in this part of the Island than in half Christendom besides. *Parks* more in *England* than in all *Europe*. The first of which kind for the enclosing of Venison, being that of *Woodstock*, made by King *Henry* the first: whose example being followed by his Successors, and the Lords and great men of the Realm; the number so increased in a little time, that at the last, besides 55 *Forrests*, and 300 *Chafes*, there were reckoned 745 *Parks* in *England*; all well replenished either with Red or Fal-low Deer.

And that the Deer might graze with pleasure, and the Sheep with safety, great care was taken by our Progenitors for the destruction of *Wolves*. I know it hath been a tradition of old *VVriters*, that *England* never had any *Wolves* at all, and that they would not live here brought from other places; but it is not so: here being store of them, till *Edward* King of *England* commuted the 20 l. of Gold, 300 l. of Silver, and 300 head of Cattel imposed as a yearly tribute by King *Abellane* upon *Idwallo* Prince of *Wales*, for the like yearly tribute of 300 *Wolves*: by which means they were quite rooted out in time, the *Welsh* protesting at the last they could find no more.

The Air of this Country is very temperate, neither so hot as *France* and *Spain* in the Summer, because of its Northernly situation; nor so cold in the Winter; because the air of this Kingdom being gross, cannot so soon penetrate as the thin air of those Countries. For to say truth, the air in the Winter time is thick and foggy, cloudy, and much disposed to mists; especially near the Sea, and the greater Rivers: in which many times, the Sun is not seen to shine out clearly for some weeks together. And thereupon there goeth a tale, that the great Constable of this Castle being Ambassadour to King *James* in the first Winter of his reign, and tarrying here about a month, is said not to have seen the Sun all the time of his stay: which occasioned him at his going on ship-board, to desire such

Lords and Gentlemen as attended him thither, to *prefist his humble service to the King their Majesty*, and to the blessed Sun of Heaven when they chance to see him. And something also touching the temperature of the Air, may be ascribed unto the Winds, which participating of the Seas, over which they pass unto us, do carry with them a temperate warmth.

But if warmth were all the benefit we received from the Seas, it might indeed be said, that we were come from Gods blessing into the warm Sun: but it is not so. For there are no Seas in *Europe* that yield more plenty of Fish than ours. Our Oylers were famous in the times of the old *Romans*, and our Herrings are now very beneficial unto the *Netherlands*, to whom, the *English-men*, referring to themselves a kind of Royalty, (for the Dutch by Custom demand liberty to fish, of *Scarborough-Castle* in *Tenckshire*) have yielded up the commodity; by which those States are exceedingly enriched, and our Nation much impoverished and condemned for laziness and sloth. Besides the loss of employment for many men, who using this trade might be a seminary of good and able Mariners, as well for the Wars, as for further Navigations and discoveries, cannot but be very prejudicial to the strength and flourishing of the Common-wealth, and Empire of *England*.

But to make this appear more fully in all particulars, I shall extract some passages out of a M.S. discourse of the late Learned Knight Sir John Burroughs, principal Clerk of Arms by the name of *Garter*, entitled, *The Sovereignty of the British Seas*. By which it doth appear, that there is fishing in those Seas for Herrings, Pilchards, Cod, Ling, or other Fish, at all times of the year: and that too in so plentiful a manner, that not long since near *Mimral* on the Coasts of *Devonshire*, 900 Ton of Fish were taken in one day, and 3000 pounds-worth in another, near *S. Joes* in *Cornwall*, the *Hollanders* taking at one draught 20 Laft of Herrings.

Secondly, That almost all Nations hereabouts, as *French*, *Spaniards*, *Netherlands*, and those of the *Hanse*, do mightily improve themselves both in power & wealth, by the benefit of the *English* Fishing; inasmuch as 10000 Sail of Foreign Vessels (of which 1400 from the Town of *Emden* in *East Friseland* only) are thought to be maintained by This Trade alone.

Thirdly, That the *Hollanders* in particular employ yearly 8000 Vessels of all sorts for this Trade of Fishing on our Coasts, whereby they have a Seminary of 15000 Sailors and Mariners, ready for any publick Service: all which maintain treble that number of Men, Women, and Children, of several Trades upon the Land.

Fourthly, That for the holding up of this Trade, the said *Hollanders*, inhabiting a Tract of Land not so big as many of our Shires, do build 1000 Sail of Ships yearly; and thereby furnishing all the parts of the world (even as far as *Brasil*) with our Commodities; returning home those of other Countries in exchange thereof, which they sell to us many times at their own prices.

Fifthly, That the said *Hollanders* (as appeared upon computation) made in one year of the *Herrings* only, caught upon these Coasts, the sum of 5 Millions of our pounds, (the Customs and tenth Fish advancing to the publick Treasury no less than 800000 l. Sterling;) it being thought, that the *Herrings* caught by those of the *Hanse* Towns, and other Nations, amount to as great a sum as that.

Sixthly, and finally, That by erecting only 250 *Brecks*, (Vessels of great Bulk and Stowage, but not swift of sail) for the *Herring Fishing*, (which is not a sixth part of those which are employed yearly by the *Hollanders* neither at the publick charge of the State of *England*, or private

Adv.

Adventurers thereto authorized and regulated, there would be found employment yearly for 1000 ships, and at least 20000 Mariners and Fishers at Sea, and consequently for as many Tradesmen and Labourers at Land; by means whereof, besides the vindication of our credit now at such a loss, there would arise in Customs, Tonnage, Poundage, and other Impots, no less than 300000 l. per Annum to the publick Treasury. The prosecution of which Project (if not in greater proportion than that before) as it was once designed by Mr. Attorney *Noy* my much honoured Friend, to do I heartily commend it to the Care of the State, and to his Successors in that Office, as the fittest remembrancers to advance it: there being no readier way than this to make the people wealthy, and the Nation formidable.

For notwithstanding these advantages of Fish, the Diet of *England* is, for the most part Fleish; in *London* only there are no fewer than 67500 Beefs, and 675000 Sheep slain, and uttered in a year, besides Calves, Lambs, Hogs-flesh, and Poulterers ware. To prove this, suppose there be in *London* 60 Butchers Free of the City, whereof every one, and one with another, killeth an Ox a day, as at least they do. Then reckon (as the *London* Butchers do affirm) that the Foreigners in the Suburbs and Villages sell four for their one. Lastly, count for every Ox ten Sheep, (for this is also certainly known) to be killed and sold, and you have both the numbers above-mentioned. The Earl of *Goudomar*, once the *Spanish* *Liege* here, having in some former City days seen the several Shambles of this great Market, said to them who made the discovery with him, That there was more Fleish eaten in a Month at that Town, than in all *Spain* in a year. Now had I his skill who by the length of *Hercules* Foot, found out the proportion of his whole body, I might by this provision of fleish consumed in the head, guess at the quantity of that which is spent in the body of the Realm: But this I leave to be determined by an after hand. The usual and natural drink of the Country is *Beer*, so called from the *French* word *Boire*, (for Wines they have none of their own growing, as before is said) which, without contrivance, is a most wholesome and nourishing Beverage: and being transported into *France*, *Belgium*, and *Germany*, by the working of the Sea is so purged, that it is among them in highest estimation; celebrated by the name of *la bonne Biere d'Angleterre*. And as for the old drink of *England*, *Ale*, which cometh from the *Danish* word *Oela*, it is questionless in itself, (and without that commixture which some are accused to use with it) a very wholesome drink; however it pleased a Poet in the time of *Henry* the Third, thus to dificant on it:

*Nescio quid monstrum Stygiae conforne paludi,
Cervicium plerique vocant; nil piscium illa
Dum bibitur, nil clarius est dum mingitur; ergo
Constat quod multas Ecce in ventre relinquit.*

In *English* thus;

Of this strange drink so like the *Stygian* Lake,
Men call it *Ale*, I know not what to make.
Folk drink it thick, and pils it very thin;
Therefore much *Dregs* must needs remain within.

Now to conclude this general discourse concerning *England*, there goes a tale, that *Henry* the seventh (whose breeding had been low and private) being once pressed by some of his Council, to peruse his title unto *France*, returned this Answer: That *France* indeed was a flourishing and gallant Kingdom; but *England* in his mind was a fine Seat for a Country Gentleman, as any could be found in *Europe*.

Having said thus long in taking a Survey of the Country it self, together with the chief commodities and pleasures of it; and amongst them of the *Women* also (as the method of the old Verse led me on: it is now time that we should look upon the men. And they are commonly of a comely feature, gracious countenance, for the most part gray-eyed, pleasant, beautiful, courteous, and much resembling the *Italians* in habit and pronunciation. In matters of War, (as we are ready to prove) they are both able to endure, and resolute to undertake the hardest enterprises: in peace quiet, and not quarrelsome; in advice or counsel, sound and speedy. Finally, they are active, hearty, and cheerful. And yet I have met with some Gentlemen, who upon the strength of a little travel in *France*, have grown to *un-Englished* (and so affected or besotted rather on the *French* Nation) that they affirm the *English* in respect of the *French*, to be an heavy, dull, and *Phlegmatick* people; of no dispatch, no mettle, no conceit, no audacity, and I know not what not. A vanity, meriting rather my pity, than my anger. Perhaps in vilifying their Nation, they had consulted with *Tullius Scalliger*, who in the 16. Cap. of his 3d Book *De re pectiva*, giveth of the two most noble Nations, *English* and *Scottish*, this base and unmanly Character, *Gothi bellae, Scoti non minus Angli perfidi, infasti, ferri, contemptores, solidi, amantes, inopes, inhospitaliter, immanes*. His bolt (you see) is soon shot, and so you may happily guess at the quality of the Archer. A man indeed of an able learning, but of his own worth so highly conceited, that if his too much learning made him not mad, yet it made him to be too preeminent and arrogant. To revenge a *National* disgrace on a *Personal* is an ignoble victory. Besides *Socrates* resolution in the like kind in my opinion was very judicious, *et si meo indolent, idcirco an ducit videri puer*; If an Afs kick us, we must not put him in the Court. To confute his sentence in every point, would be to him too great an honour, and for me too great a trouble; it being a task, which of it self would require a volume. The best is, many should make the burden light; and other Nations are as deeply engaged in this quarrel against that proud Man, as ours: for so maliciously hath he there taxed all other people, that that Chapter might more properly have been placed among his *Hypercriticks*.

How the *English* and *Germans*, which of all Nations are thought most given to their bellies; do agree and differ in this point; the same *Scalliger* hath thus shewed in one of his Epigrams.

*Tres sunt Comedae, Germanus, Flander & Anglus;
Dic quis edat melius; quis melius bibat.
Non comedit Germanus, bibit; tu non bibis Angle,
Sed comedis; comedis Flander, bibisq; bene.*

Dutch, *Flemmings*, *English*, are your only guests;
Say which of all doth eat, or drink it best.
Th' *English* love most to eat, the *Dutch* to swill;
Only the *Flemmings* eat and drinks his fill.

Thus was it in his time with the *English* Nation; though since, I fear, we have borrowed too much of the *Dutch*, and learnt a great deal more than needs of the *Flemmings* also.

This Nobility of this Country is not so much unlimited Power, as they are (to the prejudice of the State) in other Countries; the name of *Dukes, Earls, and Marquesses*, being merely titular: whereas in other places they have some absolute, some mixt Government, so that upon any little distast, they will stand on their own guards, and fight the power of their Sovereign. And on the other side, the Commonalty enjoy a multitude of Privileges

above the other Nations; being most free from Taxes, and burdensome Impositions, but what they take upon themselves by their own consent. They were twice in a year (a laudable custom no where else to be seen) Justice administered even at their own doors, by the Itinerary Judges of the Kingdom: an Order first instituted by King Henry the second. They dwell together with the Gentlemen, in Villages, and Towns, which makes them favour of civility and good manners: and live in far greater reputation, than the *Yemen in Italy, Spain, France, or Germany*; being able to entertain a stranger honestly, diet him plentifully, and lodge him neatly.

The Clergy was once of very great riches, as appeareth by that Bill preferred to King Henry the fifth, against the temporal Revenues of the Church; in which it was suggested, that they were able to maintain 15 Earls, 1500 Knights, 6000 men of Arms, more than 1000 Almshouses, and yet the King might clearly put up 20000 l. per Annum into his Exchequer. How true this was, I cannot say. But after this, King Henry the eighth took his Opportunities, to pare away the excrecences of it; demolishing the Monasteries, and Religious Houses, and paring off the superfluities of Bishopsricks and Cathedral Churches: in which he found not a few followers among the Ministers and great Officers of State, and Court, in the time of King Edward the sixth, and Queen Elizabeth. Yet if they not the Clergy to poor and naked, or destitute of the encouragements and rewards of learning, but that they have been till the objects of a covetous envy, (that which the former *Harries* left them, being thought too much) thought for abilities of Learning (I dare boldly say it) not to be paralleld in the World. For besides 5439 Parochial Benefices, being no Improprations; and besides the Vicarages, most of which exceed the competency beyond the Seas; there was left in England at the time of the Reformation under Queen Elizabeth. 26 Bishopsricks, (taking those of Wales into the reckoning) 26 Deaneries, 60 Archdeaconries, and 444 Dignities and Prebends; most of which, places of fair Revenue. And as for the maintenance of Priests, Monks, and Friars, before the Reformation there were reckoned 90 Colleges, besides those in the Universities, 100 Hospitals, 3374 Chantries and Free Chapells, and 645 Abbies and Monasteries: more than half of which had above the yearly income of 200 l. in old Rents, many above 2000, and some 4000 almost. So studious were our Ancestors both in those times of blindness, and these of a clearer light, to encourage men to learning, and then reward it.

The Souldiery of England is either for the Land or for the Sea. Our Victories by Land are most apparent over the *Irisls, Scots, Cyprits, Turks*, and especially *French*, whose Kingdom hath been fore shaken by the English many times, especially twice by King Edward the Third, and Henry the Fifth: this latter making for absolute a conquest, that Charles the seventh, like a poor *Roy d'Judee*, confined himself to *Bourges*, where (having cashier'd his retinue) he was found in a little Chamber at Supper, with a Napkin only laid before him, a rump of Mutton, and two Chickens. And so redoubted even after our expulsion from France, (our civil dissensions rather causing that expulsion than the Frenchmens valour) was the English name in that Country: that in the Wars between King Charles the Eighth, and the Duke of Bretagne, the Duke, to strike a terror into his enemies appalled 1500 of his own Subjects, in the Arms and Cross of England. But as the *Afs*, when he had on the Lions Skins, was for all that but an *Afs* and no Lion: so these Britons, by the weak resistance they made against their Enemies, shew'd that they were indeed Britons, and no Englishmen. Spain also tasted the valour of our Land-Souldiers,

when John of Gaunt purfuing his Title to Spain, was sent home with 8 Waggonss laden with Gold, and an Annual Pension of 10000 marks; as also when the *Black Prince* re-established King Peter in his Throne. And then also did they acknowledge, though they felt not the puissance of the English, when Ferdinand the Catholic surprized the Kingdom of Navarre. For there were then in *Fontarabia*, a Town of *Guipuzcoa*, 6000 English Foot, who lay there to joyn with this Ferdinand in an Expedition against France. Concerning which, Guiccardius gives this Item, That the Kingdom of Navarre was yielded rather for the fear and reputation of the English Forces than by hands, than by any puissance of the King of Arragon. Since those times the Spaniards much esteemed us, as appeareth by this Speech of theirs to our Souldiers at the Siege of Amiens, *Tou are tall Souldiers, and therefore when you come down into the Trenches, we double our guards, and look for blows; but as for those safe and cowardly French, when they come, we make account we have nothing to do, but play, or sleep on our Rampart.* The like the Netherlands can testify; only this is the grief of it; The English are like *Pyrrhus*, King of *Epirus*, fortunate to conquer Kingdoms, but unfortunate to keep them. Not to say any thing of the late, but great experience, which the English Souldiery hath gotten by the Civil Broils among themselves; at which my heart is ake, and my hand to tremble, that I shall only add in the words of Lucan,

*Hec! quantum potius caeli pelagique paravis,
Hoc quem Civiles fuderunt sanguine dextra!*

That is to say,

How much both Sea and Land might have been gain'd
By their dear blood, which Civil wars have drain'd!

As for their power and valour at Sea, it may evidently be perceived in the Battel of *Selso*, wherein King Edward the 3d; with 200 Ships, overcame the French Fleet consisting of 500 Sail; of which he sunk 200 and flew 30000 Souldiers. Secondly, at the Battel in 88, wherein a few of the Queens Ships vanquished the invincible Armada of the King of Spain consisting of 134 great Gallies, and Ships of extraordinary biguels. Sir Francis Drake with 4 Ships took from the Spaniard one million and 182000 Ducats in one Voyage, An. 1587. And again with 25 Ships he awed the Ocean, sacked *S. Jago*, *S. Dominio*, and *Carthagena*; carrying away him, besides Treasure, 240 Pieces of Ordnance. I omit the Circumnavigation of the whole World by this *Drake* and *Candlish*, and the voyage to *Cales*: as also how one of the Queens Ships named the *Revenge*, in which Sir Richard Greenville was Captain, with 180 Souldiers (whereof 90 were sick on the balaft) maintained a sea fight for 24 hours against above 50 of the Spanish Gallies. And though at last after her Powder was spent to the last barrel, she yielded upon honourable terms; yet she was never brought into Spain: having killed in that fight more than 10000 of their Souldiers, and sunk four of their greatest Vessels. I omit also the discovery of the Northern passages, by *Hugh Willoughby*, *Davis*, and *Forsbergh*; concluding with that of *Keckermans*, *Hoc certum est, omnibus hodie gentibus navigandi indivisa & perita superioris est Anglor: & post Anglos, Hollandos*. Though now I know not by what neglect, and discontinuance of those honourable employments the *Hollanders* begin to brave us of our ancient Glories, and would fain account themselves Lords of the Seas, and probably had been so indeed, had not his Majesty by the timely re-inforcing of his Na-

val

val Power, An. 1636. recovered again the Dominion of it.

The English language is a De-compound of *Dutch, French*, and *Latine*; which I conceive rather to add to its perfection, than to detract any thing from the worth thereof; since out of every Language we have culled the most significant words, and equally participate of that which is excellent in them; their imperfections being rejected. For it is neither so boylerous as the *Dutch*, nor so feminine as the *French*; yet as significant as the *Latine*, and in the happy conjunction of two words into one little inferior to the *Greek*.

The Christian Faith was first here planted as some say, by *S. Peter* and *Paul*: more probably (as others say) by *Joseph of Arimathea*, whose body they find to have been interred in the Isle of *Avallonia* where the Abbey of *Glastonbury* after stood. But that of his plantation being almost rooted out by long Persecutions, and no supply of Preachers sent from other places; *Lucius* a King of Britain (and the first Christian King of Europe) An. 180. or thereabouts, sent his Ambassadors to *Eusebius* the then Pope of Rome to be furnished with a new supply of Pastors, if not to plant, yet at the least to water, and confirm the Gospel planted here before; but almost rooted out again by prevailing *Gentilism*. At which time *Lucius* did not only receive the Faith himself, but by the piety of his example, and the diligence of the first Preachers sent from Rome (being both of them natural Britons) it spread by little and little over all his Dominions; and in some tract of time over all the Island. Which being thus recovered to the Faith of Christ, was forthwith furnished with Bishops and Metropolitans, according to the number of the Provinces and principal Cities (twenty eight in all) continuing here as long as Christianity it self. For not to trust herein to the authority of the British History, we find three Bishops of this Isle subscribing to the Council of *Arles*, An. 314. viz. *Eborac* Bishop of *York*, *Restitus* Bishop of *London*, and *Adelfus* Bishop of *Colechester*, there called *Colonia Londinensium*; and some of them also present in the Council of *Sardica*, An. 358. concurring with the rest in voting to the condemnation of the *Arian* Heretics: and the same or others the next year in the Synod of *Arimin*. And when the Britains were expelled their native Country, or shut up in the mountainous parts of the *Oradoires*, and *Silures*, which we now call *Wales*; they carried Christianity and Bishops along with them: *Augustine* the Monk finding no fewer than seven Bishops in the British Church, when he was sent by Gregory the Great to convert the English. And yet it is no fabulous vanity, (as some men suppose) to say that *Augustine* the Monk first Preached the Gospel in England; because it must be understood, not with Relation to the Britains, but the English Saxons: from whom these parts of the Isle had the name of England; and from whom both the Britains, and the Faith it self were driven into the Mountains of *Wales* and *Cornwall*, and Heatenism introduced again over all the Kingdom. Long after which it pleased God, that Gregory the Great, (but at that time a Deacon only in the Church of Rome) seeing some handson youths to be fold in open Market, demanded what and whence they were: to whom it was answered they were Angli: and well may they be so called (said he) for they deem as Angels. Asking again of what Province they were amongst the Angli; and answer being made of the Province of *Deira* (part of the Kingdom of the *Northern Britons*) I therefore (said he) *De ira Dei tunc liberandi*. And lastly understanding that the King of their Nation was named *Ale*; how fitly (said he) may he sing *Alleluia* to the most High God: After which time he seriously endeavoured the Conversion of the English Nation; which, being Pope, he happily effected, by the tra-

vel and diligence of *Augustine* the Monk, the first Archbishop of *Canterbury*. And so well did the work prosper after this beginning, that not only all the Saxons did receive the Gospel, but communicated the Light of it to other Nations: the *Hassians*, *Francia*, and *Thuringians*, being converted by *Winfred*; the *Frisons* or *Hollanders* by *Witkind* the first Bishop of *Utrecht*; the Saxons of *Westphalen*, by *Weldrode*, the first Bishop of *Crene*; all of them being English Saxons, as we find in *Beda* and some others.

Now as these parts of Britain were the first which generally entertained the Gospel, so were they the first also in these latter times, which universally submitted to the Reformation of such corruptions, as had been brought upon them by the power and tyranny of the Church of Rome. Endeavoured first in France, by the *Abissens*, and *Waldenses*, as was said before. Who being suppressed and ruined by the Sword of the King of France, sheltered themselves in the mountainous parts of *Galsigne* and *Guienne*, then in possession of the English; who by that means became acquainted with their *Zeal*; who by them here publicly by *Wiclef*, and spreading under-hand amongst the people of this Kingdom, till the times of *Luther* and the Reformation by him aimed at. Which being in most other Countries received tumultuously, by the power of the people; was here admitted upon mature deliberation, by the authority and consent of the Prince and Prelates; in this great work, without respect unto the Dictates of *Luher* or *Calvin*, looking only on Gods Words and the Primitive Patterns, abolishing such things as were repugnant unto either, but still retaining such Ceremonies in Gods publick worship, as were agreeable to both, and had been countenanced by the practice of the Primitive times. A point wherein they did observe a greater measure of Christian prudence and moderation, than their neighbour Churches; which in a meer detestation of the See of Rome, allowed of nothing which had formerly been in use amongst them, because defiled with *Papish* Errors and abuses: and thereby utterly averting those of the *Papal* party from joining with them in the work, or coming over to them when the work was done. Whereas had they continued an allowable correspondence in these extrinsecals of Religion, with the Church of Rome; their party in the world had been far greater, and not so much stomached as it is. And so it was conceived by the *Marquess de Rhodis*, after Duke of *Sully*, and Lord High-Treasurer of France, and one of the chief men of that party there: when being sent Ambassador to King James, from King Henry the fourth, he had observed the Majesty and Decency of Gods publick Service, in some Cathedral of this Kingdom; Religion would be soon defeated and trod under foot if not preserved and fenced about with the hedge of Ceremonies.

As for the Government of the Church since the last Conversion, as by the piety and example of *Lucius*, there were founded three Archbishopsricks, and 25 Bishopsricks, according to the number of the Arch-Bishopricks, and *Flamines* (whose great Revenues were converted to more sacred uses in the times of Idolatry:) So by the like pious care of Pope Gregory the Great, by whose means this last Conversion happened; Archbishopsricks, and Bishopsricks were designed to convenient places. The number 26 in all, to each Province twelve, besides the two Archbishopsricks and Metropolitans: wherein he had the happiness to have his desires fulfilled, though the number was not made complete till these later days, nor with such equal distribution, as he did intend. For in the Province of *Tork*, laid waste and desolate by the *Danes*, and not so soon converted as the other was; the number of the Suffragan

l. I. Bishops

The third and last Division, though the second in course of time, is that of Shires made by King *Alfride*, both for the easier Administration of justice; and to prevent such Outrages and Robberies, as (after the example of the *Danes*) the natural Inhabitants of the Realm began in all places to commit. For over every one of these Shires or Counties, there was appointed a certain Chief Magistrate, called a *Sheriff*; who had under him divers Officers,

Counties, he appointed an *High Sheriff* and divers *Under Sheriffs*, to see into the behaviour of private men, and to punish such as were *delinquent* : and in times of war either already begun, or intended, he instituted a *Posse Comitatus* : to whom he gave authority to see their officers, their provision of arms, and if occasion served, to punish such as rebelled or mutined. This wife King ordained also, that his Subjects should be divided into tens or *tithings*, every of which severally should give bond for the good appearing of each other; and he who was of that diffolute behaviour, that he could not be admitted to these *tithings*, was forthwith conveyed to the house of correction. By this course every man was not only careful of his own actions, but had an eye to all the nine for whom he stood bound, as the nine had over him : inasmuch that a poor girl might travel safely with a bag of Gold in her hand, and none durst meddle with her. The ancientest of these 10 men were called *xxv* *tything-men*, the *Tithing-men*, 10 of the nighest and neighbouring *tithings*, made the lesser Division which we call hundreds : which name cannot be derived from the like name of Villages, for none of our *hundreds* are so large : and of them there is in *Berkshire*, which containeth five *hundreds* only. We have then a division of the Realm into 40 Shires ; of the Shires into divers *hundreds*, and of the *hundreds* into ten *tithings*. And this division made by *Affrids* still remains in force : as also doth the *High Sheriff*, and the rest of the subordinate Officers of the *High Sheriff* confining especially at this time, in executing Arrests, afflicting the *Itinerary Judges*, gathering the *Kings Fines* and *Amerciaments*, and railing the *Tolls-Comitatus* if occasion be. But for the *Civil* part of government in the several Counties it is most in the hands of such as we call *Justices of the Peace*, authorized by Commission under the great Seal of England : appointed first by that prudent Prince King Edward the first, by the name of *Justices Pacis*, Guardians of the Peace, and first, called *Justices of the Peace* in the 36. of King Edward the 3d. Cap. 11. A form of Government so much conducing to the propriety of the Country, and the security of the People ; that King James the first Monarch of Great Britain, established it by law in the Kingdom of Scotland. Then for the Courts which are still kept in every shire, they are either the *County Court* holden every month, wherein the *Sheriff* or his sufficient deputy commonly presideth ; or the *Affices* and court of *Goal-delivery* held twice a year by the *Justices Itinerant* affixed by the *Justices of the Peace* and other in Commission with them. There are also two *Offices* in every *hundred* chosen out of the *Townsmen*, whom we call the *Constable* of the *hundred* : who receiving the *Precepts* or *Warrants* of the *Sheriff*, or *Justices*, dispatcheth them to the *Tithing-man* or *Pent* Constable of each *Town*, and *Village*, in their several Divisions. And in each *hundred*, a Court kept once in three weeks, by the Steward of the *hundred*, or his Deputy, capable of Pleas or *Actions* under the value of 40s. though in some few of these Courts also (as in that of *Slough* in *hundred* in *Gloucestershire*) the value of the *Action*, by some special Charter, be left unlimited. The like Court also holden in some ancient Burroughs. And besides these, in every Village are two lesser Courts, and these two holden twice a year if occasion be, held by the Steward of the Manor is Enquiry made into which called the *Court Leet*, there is Enquiry made into Treasons, Felonies, Murders, and other Cafes, falling between the King and the Subject ; and in the other,

which we call by the name of *Court-Baron*, such only as concern the Lord and Tenants, and these last for the most part founded at the will of the Lord: So that *Comines* had (we see) good reason for this Affirmation, that of all the *Signories* in the World that ever be knew, the Realm of England was the Country in which the Common-wealth was best governed.

To return again into the Shires, some of them take their names from the old Inhabitants, as *Cumberland* and from the *Cymbris* or ancient *Britains*, *Essex*, and *Suffex*, from the *Eaft* and *South Saxons*: some from the fiteuation of them, as *Northumberland*, *Northfolc*, *Southfolc*, *Devonshire* this laft is fo called from *Devina*, a *Welch* or *Britifh* word fignifying Low Vallies, of which it very much confifteth: Some from the form or figure of them, as *Cornwall*, from the refemblance which it hath to an horn; and *Kent*, (in *Latine*, *Cantium*) becaufe it lyeth in a *Ganton* or Corner of the Iland. Some from fome Accidents therein, as *Berkshire*, or *Berackshire*, from the abundance of *Bee*, which the *Saxons* call by the name of *Bee*: the moft part from the principal Town of all the County, as *Gloucefter*, *Oxford*, and the like. Of thefe Shires the biggeft beyond all compare, is the County of *York*, out of which 70000 men may be raied for prefent fervice, if need fo require. And in them all are comprehended 8709 Parifhes befides thofe of *Waler* not reckoning in fuch *Chappels* as we call *Chappels of Eafe*, in greatnels not inferior to many Parifhes; 22 Cities, 585 Market Towns which have no Cities; and in the Towns and Villages to the number of 144 Castles, or ruines of Castles; few of them places of importance, and fuch as are belonging generally to the Kings, who fuffer not any of their Subjects to neet themfelves in Strong Holds and Castles.

Cities of most observation in it, i. *London*, seated on the *Thames*, by which divided into two parts, conjoined together by a stately and magnificent Bridge, spoken of before. The River capable in this place of the greatest Ships, by means whereof it hath been reckoned a long time for one of the most Famous Mart-Towns in Christendom: and not long since, had so much got pre-eminence of all the rest, that the greatest part of the wealth of *Europe* were driven up that River. A City of great Note in the time of the *Roman* Conquest; to whom it was first known by the name of *Londonium*: a Town at that time of great Trade and Riches; and by them honoured with the Title of *Augusta*. Increased of late very much in Buildings: contiguous to some Towns and Villages, from which in former times disjoyined by some distant intervals. So that the circuit may contain 8 miles at least: in which space are 132 Parish Churches; the Palace of the King, the Houses of the Nobility, Colledges for the Study of the Laws, I mean not the *Civil Law*, which is *Jus Gentium*, but (as we call it) the *Common Law*, appropriate only to this Kingdom. It is wondrous populous, containing well nigh 60000 people; which number is much augmented in the Term time. Some compare *London* with *Paris* thus: *London* is the richer, the more populous; and more ancient; *Paris* the greater, more uniform, and better fortified. But for my part, as I do not think that *London* is the more populous, so neither can I grant that *Paris* is the greater City, except we measure them by the Walls. For taking in the Suburbs of both, and all that passeth in Account by the name of *London*: I cannot but conceive, that if *London* were cast into the same orbicular figure, the circumference of it would be larger than that of *Paris*. For uniformity of Building, *Paris* indeed doth go beyond it; but may in that be equalled also in some tract of time; if the Defign begun in *King James* his Reign, tending to the advancement of such *Uniformity*, be not interrupted.

For

For other things, certain it is that *London* is the antienter City, as being an Archbishops's See in the time of the *Brittain*, when the name of *Paris* was scarce heard of ; a Bishops See at the first conversion of the *Saxons* : increased so much in wealth and honour from one Age to another, that it is grown at last too big for the Kingdom ; which whither it may be profitable for the State, or not, may be made a question. Great Towns in the body of a State, are like the *Spleen* or *Milt* in the body natural, the monstrous growth of which impoverisheth all the rest of the Members, by drawing to it all the *animal* and *vital* spirits, which should give nourishment unto them : And in the end cracked or furcharged by its own fulcile, not only feeds unwholful fumes and vapours unto the head, and heavy *pains* unto the heart, but draws a *consumption* on it self. And certainly the overgrowth of great Cities is of dangerous consequence, not only in regard of Famine, such multitudes of Mouths not being easily to be fed : but in respect of the irreparable danger of *Injurations*, if once those multitudes, sensible of their own strength, oppressed with want, or otherwise distempered with faction or discontent, should gather to an head, and break out into action. Yet thus much may be said to the honour of *London*, though grown by much too big now for the Kingdom, that it is generally so well governed, and in so good peace, that those Murders, Robberies, and Outrages so frequent in great and populous Cities beyond the Seas : are here seldom heard of. 2. *York* in the West Riding of that Country, the second City of *England*, as the old Verse hath it :

Londinum caput est & Regni urbs prima Britanni,
Eboracum à prima jure secunda venit.

That is to say,

In *England*, *London* is the chiefeſt Town;
The ſecond place *Tork* claimeth as its own.

And fo it may, being indeed the fecond City of the Kingdom, both for fame and greatness. A pleafant, large and hatefully City, well fortified and beautifully adorned, as well with private as publick Edifices ; and rich, and populous withal. Situated upon the River *Oufe*, or *Eure*, which divides it in twain ; both parts being joyned together with a fair ftone Bridge, confifting of high and mighty Arches. A City of great elevation in the time of the *Romans*, the *Metropolis* of the whole Province or *Diocefs* of *Britain* ; remarkable for the death and burial of the Emperour *Severus*, and the birth of *Conftantine the Great* ; by confequence the Seat of the Primate of the *Britifh* Church, as long as *Chriftianity* did remain amongst them, Nor ftrooped it lower when the *Saxons* had received the *Faith* : and notwithstanding thofe mutations which befel this Kingdom, under the *Saxons*, *Danes*, and *Normans*, it fell preferved its ancient luftre, and increafed it too. Adorned with a ftately and magnificent *Cathedral*, inferior to few in *Europe* ; and with a Palace of the Kings, (called the *Manor-houfe*) the dwelling in thefe later days, of the Lord *Preſident* of the Court or Council here eſtabliſhed by *K. Henry* the 8th, for the benefit of the Northern Subjects, after the manner of a *French Parliament*, or *Preſidial Sieges*. 3. *Briſtol*, the third in rank of the Cities of *Eng-land*, ſituate on the meeting of the *Frowe* and *Avon*, not far from the influx of the *Severn* into the *Ocean* : in that regard commodiouſly feated for Trade and Traffick ; the Ships with full fail coming into the City, and the Citizens with as full purſes trading into moſt parts of the World, with good Faith and Fortune. A Town exceeding populous, and exceeding cleanly, there being *Sevens* made under ground,

for the conveyance of all filth and natimets, into the Rivers. Churches it hath to the number of 18 or 20, reckoning in the Cathedral, and that of *Raciliff*. The *Cathedral* first built by *Rob. Fitz-Harding*, Son to a King of *Denmark*, once a *Burger* here, and by him foreord with *Canons Regular*, *Ann. 1248*, but made a *Bishop*-See by King *Henry the 8th*, *Ann. 1548*. The principal building next the Church, is an ancient *Cathedral*, a piece of which strength, that *Maud* the Emperess having took King *Stephen* Prisoner, thought it the safest place to secure him in. 4. *Nerwich*, the fourth City of the first rank, of which more hereafter. 5. *Oxford*, the first of the second rank of *English* Cities feated upon the *Ouse*, or *Ifa*: but whether so called as *Fadell*, *Idios*, *Uel*, or *dor*, or the *Ford* of *Ouse*; or *Fa-la-boun* (as the *Greeke* had their *Belphe*re in former times) I determine not. Ancient *Town*, and anciently made a seat of Learning, co-eval unto that of *Paris*, if not before it; the University herof being restored rather than first founded by *K. Alured*, *an. 806* after it had been overborn a while by the *Danish* Furies; but herof as an University, more anon. This only now, that for the stateliness of the Schools and publick Library, the bravery and beauty of particular Colleges, all built of fair and polished stones, the liberal endowment of those houses, and notable encouragements of Industry and Learning in the salary of the Professors in most Arts and Sciences; it is not to be parallell'd in the *Christian* World. The City of it self well built, and as pleasantly seated, formed in the Figure of a Cross, two long streets thwarting one another, each of them near a mile in length; containing in that compais, 19 Parish Churches, and a See Episcopal founded here by King *Henry the 8th*, *Ann. 1541*. The honourable Title of twenty of the noble Family of the *Ferres*, now Earl of *Oxon*. 6. *Salisbury*, first feated on the Hill, where now stands old *Salisbury*, the *Sorbidudunum* of the Ancients. But the Cathedral being removed down into the Vale, the Town quickly followed, and grew up very suddenly into great Renown; pleasantly feated on the *Avon*. (a name common to many *English* Rivers) which watereth every street thereof; and for the populousness of the place, plenty of Provisions, numbers of Churches, a spacious Market-place, and a fair Town-hall, esteemed the second City of all the *Wef*. 7. *Glocester*, by *Amenie* called *Gloem*, by the *Britains* *Cair Glow*, whence the present name; the *Saxons* adding *Ceffer*, as in other places. A fine neat City, pleasantly feated on the *Severn*, with a large Key or Wharf on the banks thereof, very commodious to the Merchandize and trade of the place: well built, consisting of fair large Streets, beautified with a fair Cathedral; for the magnificence of the Quire, elegance of the Cloisters, and gratiouness of the Bell tower there scarce to be followed in the Kingdom: and situate in such a Vale, that there is nothing wanting to the use of man except only Wine, which life or luxury may require. 8. *Chester*, upon the *River Dee*, built in the manner of a quadrate, inclosed with a Wall, which takes up more than two miles in compais; containing in that compais 12 Parish Churches, and an old Cathedral dedicated anciently to *S. Werburg*. Daughter of *Welfre*, K. of the *Mercians*, and the *Vitricels* of all the Monasteries of *England*. But made a Bishop's See by King *Henry the 8th*. The buildings generally fair, the Streets wide and open, with Galleries before every door under which a man may walk dry from one to the other. The rest of chief note shall be specified on another occasion, with this advertisement, that the ordinary Cities of *England* are not to be compared with those of *France* and *Italy*: First becaufe the Nobles and Gentry of those Countries live for the most part in the Cities, ours in the Country-Villages; and secondly, becaufe the *Londoners* to ingrois all trading, that they draw thither all

ថ្ងៃ

the Wealth and treasure of the Kingdom. By means whereof that every day increaseth in wealth and beauty; the rest (except *Brigflon*) do decay as sensibly: that City being like the *Spleen* in the body natural, the moi- tuous growth whereof staueth all the rest of the Mem- bers. *Liene excrefcence, reliquum corpus comabescit*, as the Doctors have it.

There are in *England* but two *Univerfities*, which may equal six, nay ten of all other Countries (so that *Paris* be not in the number) most of them being no better than our Colleges of *Westminster*, *Eton*, or *Wincheſter*; and none ſo liberally endowed, as ſome one of thoſe in the *Univer- ſities*. Of which there are 16 in *Cambridge*, ſome of them called only by the name of *Halls*, but theſe endowed with Lands and Fellowſhips as the others are. In *Oxford* there are 18 Colleges endowed with Lands, beſides ſix *Halls*, where Students live at their own charges in both of them Profeſſors of the Arts and Sciences, as alſo of Divinity; Law, Phyſick, and the Learned Languages, with liberal Salaries, and each to the number of 3000 Students; ſo regular in their lives and converſation, as are not to be found in the World beſides. The fairer and more an- cient, *Oxford*, which of long time, together with *Paris* in *France*, *Bononia* in *Italy*, and *Salamanca* in *Spain*, hath been honoured with the Title of *Generale Studium*. For that the *Univerſity of Cambridge*, (though giving upper hand to her Siſter of *Oxford*, the may take place of all the *Univerſities* in the World beſides) is not ſo long ſtanding as that of *Oxford*, is evident by the teſtimony of *Roberts de Remington*, cited by Maſter *Camden*, viz. *Reg- name Edwardo primo*, (it ſhould rather be read *ſecundo*: de ſtudij Granbridge ſatis eſt Academia, ſeu Oxonium: where the word *ſeu* doth not import an identity of the time; but a relation to *Oxford*, as to the pattern. We ſee this truth yet clearer in the Bull of Pope *John* the 21, the contemporary of our *Edward* the Second, as I find in the work of that great ſearcher of *Academic* Antiquities Mr. *Brian Twiſſ* *Apollis Auctoritate ſtatuimus* (ſaith the Bull) *quod Collegium Maſſiliorum & Scholarium ejus- dem ſtudij* (ſpeaking of *Cambridge*) *Univerſitas ſit conſe- cranda*, &c. But what need more than the Reſolution of the *Commons* of the firſt Parliament holden under *K. James*? For when the Clerk of that Houſe had put the name of *Cambridge* before *Oxford*; they taking diſdainfully that *Hyſteron Proteron*, commanded the Antiquities of both *Univerſities* to be ſearched, and after ſearch made, gave the place to *Oxford*. But to proceed the *Univerſity of Cambridge* as it was much of later Foundation, ſo was it long before it grew into eſteem: inſomuch, that when *William of Waiſſefle* Biſhop of *Wincheſter*, and Founder of *Magdalen* College in *Oxon*, (whereof I was once an unworthy Member) perſuaded King *Henry* the Sixth to erect a College in *Oxford*, as ſome of the Kings his Predeceſſors had done before him: *imò potius Cantabrigia* (replied the King) *ut duas fieri poſſit in Anglia Aca- demias habere*. Now, ſaith the King in *Cambridge* rather, that ſo, if poſſible, I may have two *Univerſities* in my Realm of *England*.

As for the Story of this Country, that it was firſt peo- pled out of *Gaul*, is affirmed by *Cæſar*, and proved by ma- ny ſtrong and concludng Arguments; as their Religion, Manners, Languages, Customs, and the nearneſs of the one to the other. To omit therefore the Fable of *Brute*, and the Catalogue of 68 Kings, which are ſaid to have reigned here ſucceſſively before the coming of the *Romans*: Certain it is, that *Cæſar* found the Country cantoned in- to many Kingdoms (four in *Ken* alone) and the people to be very rude and illiterate. Such Learning as they had was locked up in the breaſts of the *Druides*; who commit- ted nothing unto Writing, and by that means kept the

People in continual ignorance: communicating what they knew to none but thoſe of their own Order, and therein being taught to by the *Druides* or *Priests* of *Gaul*: who came over into this Iſland to them, and did from them re- ceive the knowledge of their ſacred Myſteries. Being con- quered or diſcovered rather by *Julius Cæſar*, it was not ſo much as looked after by the two next Emperors: *Auguſtus* and *Tiberius* counting it an high point of Wiſdom, not to extend the Empire beyond the Ocean *Caligula* had once a mind to the Adventure, but he durſt not follow it: But *Claudius*, his Succeſſor, undertook the Enterprize, ſolli- cited thereunto by *Bericus* a noble Briton, who for ſedition and ſome practices againſt the publick, was expelled the Country. Hereupon *Aulus Plautius* was ſent over with ſome Roman Forces, by whom and P. *Oſtorius Scapula*, his Succeſſor, *Conſtantinus* and *Caracalla* two Kings of the Britains, were ſeverally overcome in battle, a Roman Co- lony planted at *Camolodunum*, (now *Maldon* in *Esſex*) and the Southern parts thereof reduced to the form of a Province. After this time by little and little the whole was conquered, as far as to the *Fyries* of *Dunbarton* and *Edenburgh*. *Agricola* in the time of *Domitian*, having the happineſs and good fortune to go beyond the furtheſt of his Predeceſſors; and to much moderation not to venture further, where there was nothing to begot but blows, cold, and hunger.

At the firſt entrance of the *Romans*, the Iſland was di- vided into ſeveral Nations, each governed by its own Kings and particular Princes, different in their ends and counſels, and ſo more eaſily ſubdued by united Forces. The principal of which (for it is needleſs to make mention of inferior Clans) where P. the *Danuvii*, containing *Deuon- ſhire*, and *Cornwall*, whoſe chief Cities were *Iſles*, now *Exeter* and *Velca* near the Town of *Palenut* in *Corn- wall*. 2. The *Dunwights*, inhabiting only in the County of *Dorſet*; whoſe chief City was *Durnovum* or *Dunnoturum*, which we now call *Dorcheſter*. 3. The *Belge*, planted in the County of *Somereſet*, *Southern*, and *Wilt*, whoſe chief Cities were *Aqua Calida*, now *Bath*; *Venta Belgarum*, now *Wincheſter*; and *Sorbidunum*, the feat of old *Salisbury*. 4. The *Atrebatii*, confined within *Buck- ſhire* only, the chief City of whom was *Gualleda*, where now is *Wallingford*. 5. The *Regni*, poſſeſſed of *Wilt* and *Surrey*, whoſe chief Cities were *Vindeliſ*, now *Vincheſter*; and *Nemagus*, ſituate ſome ten miles from *London*. 6. The *Kantiani*, or the *Kemithi*, having *Dovernum*, now *Canterbury*; *Dubris*, now *Dover*; and *Ramp- pie*, now called *Richborough*, for their principal Cities. 7. The *Trinobantes* of *Middleſex*, and *Esſex*, where *Lon- don* called afterwards *Auguſta Trinobantum*; and *Camolodunum* the firſt Roman Colony, now called *Maldon*, the Seat-Royal of *Canobelinus*, King of the *Trinobantes* in the time of the *Romans*. 8. The *Cariaceni*, dwelling in the Counties of *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, and *Harford*, whoſe Towns of moſt importance were *Magiſtinum*, now called *Dunſtable*; and *Verulamium*, (near *S. Albans*) the ſtrong- eſt Hold the Britains had in their Wars with *Cæſar*. 9. The *Icenii*, living in the Counties of *Suffolk*, *Norfolk*, *Hunting- don*, and *Cambridge*; their principal Cities being *Villa Faſſingii*, now *S. Edmundsbury*; *Sito-Agæus*, now *Ther- ſford*; *Durois*, now *Godmancheſter*; and *Canbarion*, or *Cambridge*. 10. *Coritani*, who took up the whole Coun- ties of *Lincoln*, *Leiceſter*, *Rutland*, *Nottingham*, *North- hampton*, and *Darby*; principal Towns of which were *Lindum*, now *Liſcoln*; *Rhaſe*, where now is *Leiceſter*; *Gualleda* not far from *Stamford*, now called *Brigs-Ca- ſtella*; *Ageſcolis*, now *Littleborough*, a ſmall Village near *ſterton*; *Ageſcolis*, now *Littleborough*, a ſmall Village near *Newark* upon *Trent*; *Triptonum*, now *Toreſter*, not far from *Northampton*. 11. The *Brigantes*, the greateſt Na- tion of the Iſland, filling all *Yorkſhire*, the Biſhoprick of

Dun-
ham,

Durham, *Cumberland*, *Wefmerland*, and the County Pa- latine of *Lancaster*, in a word all the North of *England*, (except *Northumberland*, the dwelling of the (12) *Atta- tani*, whoſe chief Town was *Bremennium*, thought now to be *Ribcheſter* in *Riddelſdale*.) Principal places of which large and potent Nation were *Iſaurium*, now *Aldborow* in the North Riding; *Eboracum* or *York*, in the Weſt Rid- ing; and *Petruaria* thought to be *Beverley* in the Eaſt Rid- ing of *Yorkſhire*; *Floviolum*, where now is *Bincheſter*, in the Biſhoprick; *Epiacum*, now *Fap Caſtle* in *Cumberland*; *Calatun*, now *Wharfedale Caſtle* in *Wefmerland*; and *Rhi- godunum*, now *Rible-Caſtle* in the County Palatine of *Lancaster*. 13. The *Cornavii*, ſituated in the Counties of *Cheſter*, *Salop*, *Worceſter*, *Stafford*, and *Warwick*, whoſe Principal Towns were *Deuonavia*, or *Legio vicina Vi- trix*, now *Weſt-Cheſter*; *Uronium*, now *Wrexeter*, an ignoble Village; *Pennocinium*, now *Penkridge*, not far from *Stafford*; *Brannegium*, now *Percheſter*; *Mandu- eſſedum*, now *Mancheſter*, on the River *Amber*. 14. And laſt of all, the *Dolui* of *Oxford*, and *Glouceſterſhire*: Principal Places of the which were *Dorcinia*, now *Dorcheſter*, ſeven miles from *Oxford*, and *Corinium*, or *Cy- rencheſter*, near the head of the *Thames*. Such names as are comprehended under the name of *Wales*, and *Scot- land*, ſhall be remembered when we come to ſpeak of thoſe Countries.

Theſe, and the reſt of *Wales* and *Scotland* (as far as the *Romans* did proceed) being once ſubdued, *Britain* became a Member of the Roman Empire; yet ſo that many of the *Tribe* had their own Kings, and were ſuffered to govern by their own Law: it being a known Cuſtom amongſt the *Romans*, as we find in *Tacitus*, *habere ſervitutis in- ſtrumenta & Reges*, to permit Kings ſometimes in the conquered Countries, making them instrumental to the peoples bondage. And it ſaid of *Lucius Verus* the Roman Emperor, that having put an end to the *Partian* War, *Regna Regibus, Provincias Comitibus ſuis reſtituit deſiderio* he gave thoſe Kingdoms he had conquered to be ruled by Kings; the Provinces to be governed by Provincial Earls. Kings of which kind were *Codrigus* and *Pratiſagus*, ſpoken of by *Tacitus*: *Lucius* before men- tioned, the firſt Chriſtian King, and *Coilus* the Father of *Helena*, Mother of *Conſtantine* the great. But as after- ward in the *Heptarchie* of the Saxons, that King who over- ruled the reſt, and was of moſt power and eſtimation, was called the Monarch of the *Engliſh*: ſo probable enough it is, that amongſt the Britiſh Kings, who was in moſt credit with the *Romans*, or of moſt power amongſt his neigh- bours, might be permitted to aſſume the Title of King of *Britain*. The Catalogue of whom from *Caiſſiblane* to *Conſtantine*, I have here ſubjoined, according to the tenor of the Britiſh Hiſtory,

The Kings of Britain after the coming in of the Romans.

A. Ch.

1. *Caiſſiblane*, King of the *Trinobantes*, Commander of the Britains in the War againſt *Julius Cæſar*.
2. *Theomantius*.
3. *Gymbeline*.
4. *Gaidierus*.
45. *Arviragus*, by *Helſer Boſtius*, called *Pratiſa- gus*, in whole time *Britain* was ſubdued by *Aulus Plautius*, ſent hither from the Emperor *Claudius*.
73. 6. *Maris*.
125. 7. *Coilus*, the ſuppoſed Founder of *Colcheſter*.

180. 8. *LUCIUS* the firſt Chriſtian King of *Britain*, and of all the World: who dying without Iſſue, left the Roman Emperor his Heir.
207. 9. *Severus* Emperor of *Rome*, and King of *Brit- ain*.
211. 10. *Maximus Caracalla*, Son of *Severus*, Emperor of *Rome* after his Father, who loſt the King- dom of *Britain* to.
218. 11. *Caracalla*, a Native of the Iſland; who rebel- ling againſt *Caracalla*, obtained the King- dom for himſelf.
225. 12. *Allectus*.
232. 13. *Aſclepiodorus*.
260. 14. *Coilus*, II. the Father of *Helena*.
289. 15. *Conſtantius* Emperor of *Rome*, in right of *Helena* his Wife, ſucceeded on the death of *Coilus* the 2d.
16. *Conſtantine* the Great, the Son of *Helena* and *Conſtantius*, who added his Elites in *Brit- ain* to the Roman Monarchy.

But to proceed, *Britain* being thus made a Member of the Roman Empire, it was at firſt divided into three Pro- vinces only, that is to ſay *Britannia prima*, (ſo called becauſe firſt ſubdued) containing all the Countries on the South ſide of the *Thames*, and thoſe inhabited by the *Trinobantes*, *Icenii*, and *Catioclenii*, whoſe Metropolis or chief City was *London*. 2. *Britannia ſecunda*, com- priſing all the Nations on the Further ſide of the *Severn*, whoſe chief City was *Caer Leon* upon *Uk*, in the County of *Monmouth*; and 3. *Maxima Caſarienſis*, including all the reſt of the Northern border, whereof the Metropolis was *York*: each Province having ſeveral Cities, 28 in all. Accordingly, the Church conforming to the Platform of the Civil State, there were appointed for the Govern- ment hereof eight and twenty Biſhops, reſiding in thoſe ſeveral Cities: three of the which reſiding in the principal Cities, were honoured with the Title of *Metropolitans*; and a ſuperiority over all the Biſhops of their ſeveral and reſpective Provinces, and in this ſtate it ſtood till the time of *Conſtantine*, who in his new moulding of the Empire, altered the bounds, and enlarged the number of the Provinces; adding two more unto and out of the former, viz. *Valentia*, containing all the Country from the *Fryth* of *Salway*, and the *Pitt-wall* on the South, to the *Fyries* of *Edenburgh* and *Dunbarton* North; and *Flavia Caſarienſis*, comprehending all between *Thames* and *Humber*, the reſt betwixt the *Humber* and the bounds of *Valentia*, continuing under the old name of *Maxima Caſarienſis*, though now made leſs than any of the other four. The number of the Provinces being thus enlarged, he made the whole a full and complete Diviſion of the Roman Empire (whereas *Spain* had *Septimus* added to it, as be- fore was *heaven*) ſubordinate, as *Spain* was alſo the *Pre- feſtus Prætorio Galliarum*, and governed by his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant General. Of which diviſion, or rather ſub- diviſion of the Roman Provinces, there was no other al- teration made in the *Eccleſiaſtical* government, but that the *Britiſh* Church became more abſolute and independent than it was before; and had a *Primate* of its own (as each *Diocels* had) reſiding in the ſame City with the *Vicar* or Lieutenant General (which was then at *York*) of as great power and juuriſdiction in the Iſle of *Britain*, as any Patriarch of *Alexandria*, *Rome*, or *Antioch*, in their ſeveral *Patriarchates*. The *Metropolitans* were no more than before they were: It being ordered by a Ca- non of the Council of *Chalcedon*, that their number ſhould not be augmented by any alteration made of the Roman Provinces. As for the Forces which the *Romans* kept here in continual pay, as well to keep their Coaſts and

From

Frontiers against the Enemies, as for retaining of the Natives in their due obedience; they came in all (if *Panciv* be not mistaken in his reckoning) to 2300 Foot & 2000 Horse: three Legions keeping here there constant and continual Residence, that is to say, the sixth Legion, first named *Vidrix*, at *Tork*; the 20th Legion, first named *Vidrix*, at *West-Chester*; and the second Legion sometimes at *Uca* *Strunum*, which is now *Caer Leon* upon *Uk*. Which Legions with their *Aids* and *Coberts*, may well make up the number spoken of before. Of so high estimation was this Island in the State of Rome.

Yet could not all these Forces to preserve the Country from foreign Enemies, but that in the declining of the Roman Empire, the Saxons made great spoils on the coasts thereof; as did the Scots and *Picts* on the Northern borders: against all which the Romans held out well enough, and made good their ground; till the recalling of the Legions out of Britain for defence of Italy it self, then waited and destroyed by the barbarous Nations. Which happened in or about the year of Christ 407, and some 470 years from the first invasion; *Honorius* being at that time the Roman Emperor, and *Vitorinus* the last Governor for the Empire, in the Isle of Britain. For though the noble *Atius*, on the Petition and complaint of the slaughtered people, unmercifully butchered by the Scots and *Picts*, sent some small Forces to assist them against those Enemies; yet were they presently called back for the defence of Gaul, against the *Hunnes* breaking in upon it. And then the wretched Britains hopeles of all help from Rome, and being unable, by their own strength to repel the Enemy, by reason of their long ease and dilute of Arms, applied themselves to *Aldroenus* King of *Armorica* in France, (called Little Britain) a Prince extracted from the same stock, for relief and succour. Whose Brother *Constance* (according to the British story) passing over with a competent Army, and having valiantly repelled the barbarous people, was crowned King of Britain, the first of a new race of Kings, which swayed the Scepter, with much trouble and continual conflicts, either against the Scots or Saxons, till they were finally subdued and shut up in Wales. Those of most observation in the course of the story, were, 1. *Constance* the first King, and the restorer of the Country to Peace and quiet, traitorously murdered by a *Pict*. 2. *Vortiger*, E. of the *Guyfers*, (now *Cornwall*) Protector of *Constance* the Son of *Constance*, taken out of a Monastery; after whose Death, (wherein he was conceived to have had an hand) he got the Kingdom to himself, but being unable to defend it against the Enemy, and make his title also good against the other children of *Constance*, first called in the Saxons. 3. *Vortimer*, eldest Son of *Vortiger*, who overthrew the Saxons in many battles; but in the midst of his Successes was poisoned by the *Remena* Saxon Lady, second Wife of *Vortiger*. 4. *Arthur*, one of the Worlds nine Worthies, of whom the *Monkish* Writers, and other *Legendaries*, report so many idle and impossible actions. Doubtless he was a Prince of most perfect virtue, a great preserver of his Country from approaching ruins, and worthy the Pen of an able *Panegyrist*; by whom his brave achievements might have come entire into us, without the intermixture of those fables of *Chivalry* ascribed to him and his Knights of the Round Table. For by the overtraining of some *Monkish* Writers, *Custory* of *Monmouth*, and the rest, they have given too just occasion to posterity to suspect that virtue, which they intended to advance; and filled us with as much ignorance of the story, as admiration of the persons. But this hath not been the ill hap of King *Arthur*, and his Nobles only; of *Charlemaign*, and the Twelve Peers of France, men of great virtue and renown, suffering as deeply in the same

kind, by the folly of the French Romances. It is affirmed of this *Arthur*, (but how true I know not) that he began the custom of celebrating the Nativity of our Lord and Saviour for the twelve days following, with such pastimes and sports as are (or have been used of late) by the Lords of *Misrule* in some Gentlemens houses: an Institution which the *Scottish* Writers of those times much blame. Perhaps not unjustly; it being a time more fit for our devotions than such rude disorders. But to proceed, King *Arthur* dying left the Crown to the 5. *Constance*, the Son of *Cador* Duke of *Cornwall*, his nearest Kinsman, slain by *Aurelius* *Conanus*, his own Nephew, who succeeded after him: which faction did so weaken the distressed Britains, that they were forced to withdraw themselves beyond the *Severn*: as 6. *Careticus*, or *Caradoc*, by the joyned Forces of the Saxons, to change the plain Countries beyond the *Severn* for the safer, but more fruitless Mountains. Of the rest, till *Cadwalader*, there is little left of any certainty, but their names only; which are thus ranked in the second race of

The Kings of Britain after the withdrawing of the Romans.

- A. C.
- 433 1. *Constance*. 10.
 - 443 2. *Constantius*. 3.
 - 446 3. *Vortiger*. 18.
 - 464 4. *Vortimer* his Son. 7.
 - 471 5. *Vortiger* (again). 10.
 - 481 6. *Aurelius Ambrosius*. 19.
 - 500 7. *Uter Pendragon*. 6.
 - 506 8. *Arthur*. 36.
 - 542 9. *Constance II.* 4.
 - 546 10. *Aurel. Conanus*. 30.
 - 576 11. *Vortiger*. 4.
 - 580 12. *Malgo*. 6.
 - 586 13. *Careticus*, or *Caradoc*. 27.
 - 613 14. *Cadwan*. 22.
 - 635 15. *Cadwalader*. 43.
 - 627 16. *Cadwalader*, the last King of the Britains, who on a superstitious zeal travelled in a pilgrimage to Rome, there to receive the habit of a Religious Order from the hands of Pope *Sergius*, where he dyed not long after, Anno 689. After whose death, his Successors were no longer called Kings of Britain, but Kings or Princes of Wales. And there we shall cease to find them.

And so the Britain leave the Stage, and the Saxons enter; a great and potent Nation amongst the Germans, but greatly by the aggregation of many people, under their name and service, than in themselves: the *Jutes* and *Angles* joyning with them, and passing in Accompt as the same one Nation, their Countries different as their names until this Conjunction; but neighbouring near enough to unite together: the *Angles* dwelling at the first in that part of the *Cimbrian* *Chersoneuse*, which we now call *Sleswick*, where fill the Town called *Angelen*, doth preserve their memory: the *Jutes* upon the North of them, where there is still a Province called by the name of *Juteland*; the Saxons South of both in the Dukedom of *Holftein*, situate in the very neck of that *Chersoneuse* where it joyneth with Germany; Joining their powers, they spread themselves with good success to the South and West; of which more hereafter. And growing Master of the Seas, infested with continual Piracies the Coasts of Britain; occasioning herein an Officer of great trust and power, appointed to defend and scour those Seas, in the *Navitia*, called *Comes Littoris Saxonici*. Known by this means amongst the Britains, they were called in by *Vortiger*, to aid him against the Scots and *Picts*; whom they overcame in a pitched

pitched field near *Stain'ora*, in the County of *Lincoln*: for so far had the barbarous people marched without any resistance. Rewarded for this Victory with the life of *Thanes*, and after with the whole County of *Kent*, they began to quarrel with their Hosts, whom by degrees they dispossest of all the Country on this side of *Severn*; parceling it into seven Kingdoms, called the Saxons *Heparchie*, that is to say, 1. Of *Kent*, 2. Of the *South-Saxons*, 3. Of the *West-Saxons*, 4. Of the *East-Saxons*, 5. Of the *East-Angles*, 6. Of the *North-Humbors*, and 7. of the *Mercians*. The beginning, period, and Kings of which several Kingdoms, and the uniting of them into one Monarchy, we are next to shew.

1. The Kingdom of *KENT*, confined within that County only, was begun by *Hengist*, who with his Brother *Horfus* had the leading of the Saxons Forces, at their first entry into Britain, An. 455. being the sixth year after their first coming in: who restoring Paganism to this Country, when the rest of the Isle was Christian, occasioned the distitution of *Kent* and *Christendom*. The *Kentish* afterwards the first of the Saxons who received the Gospel, by the preaching of *Augustine* the Monk, the Apostle of the English Saxons. Principal Cities of this Kingdom, where 1. *Canterbury*, once the Regal seat of the Kings of *Kent*, till given by *Eihelbert*, on his conversion to *Augustine* the first Archbishop thereof and his Successors; afterwards the See of those Archbishops, who had here their Palace and Cathedral, the Kings removing to *Reidwiler*. Seated in the East part of the Country, about seven or eight miles from the Sea, a little Brook serving it thence with some commodities. A City of more Antiquity and fame, than beauty; is now ruinous and decayed, and having nothing in it worth observation, but the Cathedral Church, first founded by *Eihelbert* before mentioned; but afterwards new built upon his foundations, in the form it now stands, by Archbishop *Lauf Frank*, *Will. Carboile*, and some other, of their Successors in the said See. The Arch-episcopal Palace is a goodly building, and the ruins of *S. Augustines* Monastery shew what once it was. 2. *Dover*, anciently called *Dubris*, seated on the Sea-shore, where the passage is shortest into France; for that cause Fortified with a strong and (in those days accounted an) impregnable Castle; esteemed one of the keys of England and the chief of the Cinque Ports; now giving the Title of an Earl to the house of *Hunford*, chief of the Family of the *Caries*, nearly allied to Queen *Elizabeth* of Famous memory. 3. *Rechefer*, seated on the *Medway*; not far from *Charham* (the station of the Royal Navy) and ancient City, but of no greatness; in former times called *Dubrovris*, after that *Koffa*, whence the name of *Reff-Chester*; a Bishops See, the second for Antiquity in all the Island. 4. *Maidstone*, upon the *Medway* also near the head thereof, the largest and most beautiful in all this Country, and most commodiously seated for publick buisness.

The Earls of Kent.

- A. Ch.
- 455 1. *Hengist*, the first King.
 - 488 2. *Eik*, or *Olca*.
 - 512 3. *Otha*.
 - 532 4. *Immerick*.
 - 561 5. *Eihelbert*, the first Christian King of this Country.
 - 617 6. *Edwald*.
 - 641 7. *Ercenbert*.
 - 665 8. *Egbert*.
 - 673 9. *Lotharius*.
 - 686 10. *Edrick*.
 - 693 11. *Wighred*.
 - 720 12. *Egbert II*.

- 749 13. *Eihelbert II*.
- 754 14. *Abrius*.
- 793 15. *Ethe bert III*.
- 797 16. *Guthred*.
- 815 17. *Barlaved*, the last King of *Kent*, who lost both life and Kingdom to *Egbert*, King of *West-Sex*, or the *West-Saxons*, Anno. 824. The Progeny of *Hengist* having been before extinguished in the Person of *Abrius*, overthrown and slain by *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*.

II. The Kingdom of *SOUTH-SEX*, or of the *SOUTH-SAXONS*, was begun by *Elia*, a noble Captain of that People, an. 488. It contained only the two Counties of *Suffex* and *Surrey*, which were thence denominated, the first so called *quasi South-Sex*, the Country of the *South-Saxons*; the second *quasi South-Rey*, as lying on the South-side of the River *Thames*, in the same sense as *S. Maries* Church on the other side of that River (in respect of London) is called *S. Mary Over Rey*. The Christian Faith suppressed here, as in other places, was restored again in the time of King *Edilwalch*, by the preaching of *S. Wilfride*, Archbishop of *York*, living here in Exile. Places of most importance in it, were 1. *Chichester*, built by *Cissa* the 2d King hereof, and called *Cissaucifer*, encompassed almost round with the River *Lavant*, falling not far off into the Sea: the chief Town of *Suffex*, and a Bishops See, removed hither from *Sealfy*, a Deiny Island, in the time of the *Norman* Conqueror, where it was first planted by Archbishop *Wilfride*, 2. *Hastings*, one of the Cinque Ports, in *Suffex* also; the landing place of the *Normans*, and famous for the overthrow of King *Harold* in the fields adjoining. 3. *Guleford*, upon the River *Wey*, the chief Town of *Surrey*, well built, and having in it two Parish-Churches. 4. *Arundel*, in a Dale or Valley on the River *Arum*, and from thence so named: belonging to the Crown in the time of the Saxons, when given by the Testament of King *Alfred*, unto *Amhelm*, his Brothers Son. Of great note for a beautiful and capacious Castle; but more for giving the title of Earl to the noble Families of the *Albany*, the *Fitz-Alans*, and the *Howards*: this last of such a large and diffused Nobility, than in the year 1641, there were no fewer than 8. *Howards*, in the house of *Peers*. 5. *Kington* upon the *Thames*, so called to distinguish it from *Kington* upon *Hull* in *Yorkshire*; heretofore Famous for the Coronation of the Monarchs of the English Saxons, whence it had the name of *Kington*, or the Kings Town. This Kingdom had only three Kings, crushed in the infancy thereof by more potent Neighbours.

The Kings of the South-Saxons.

- A. Ch.
- 488 1. *Elia*, the first King.
 - 514 2. *Cissa*, the Son of *Elia*, who lost his life and Kingdom to *Cerdic* King of the *West-Saxons*.
 - 530 3. *Cheulm*, King of *West-Sex*, called himself King of the *South-Saxons*.
 - 4. *Edelwalch*, or *Eihelwulf*, the first Christian King, overcame and slain in battle by *Cadwal*, King of the *West-Saxons*, anno 687. After whose death *Berthan* and *Ambun*, two Brethren, took on themselves the Government, with the title of *Dukes* or Captains; and held it for a little while. But not being able to withstand the puissance of the *West-Saxons*, this Kingdom was subdued by *Iua*, the Successor of *Cadwal*; by whom united to that Crown.

III. The Kingdom of *WEST-SEX*, or the *WEST-SAXONS*, the third in order, and that which died in fine M m prevaill

Prevail over all the rest; contained the Counties of *Cornwall, Devon, Somerset, Dorset, Wilt, Salisbury, and Dorset*; begun by *Cardic*, a noble Commander of the *Saxons*, arriving with new Forces out of *Germany*, Anno 495. who having overcome the *Britains* of this Western Tract, conducted by *Natanland* their Chieftain, entitled himself King of the *West Saxons*, Anno 522. The *Christian* Faith supplanted here, as elsewhere, was restored again in the time of *King*, their first Christian King; by the preaching of *S. Birinus* Bishop of *Dorchester* near *Oxford*; then a great City, of no fewer than ten Parishes, now reduced to one.

Chief Cities of this Kingdom, were 1. *Exeter*, a fair and goodly City, and a Bishops See, removed hither from *Cridington* or *Kinton*, by *Leofricus*, An. 1049. Seated upon the Bank of the River *Ex*, whence the name of *Excester*; environed with deep ditches, and very strong Walls, in compass about a mile and half besides the Suburbs, in which are contained in all 15 Parish Churches, besides the Minster, a beautiful and stately Fabric. 2. *Bath*, so called from the *Baths* there being, the chief City of *Somerset*, by the *Latins* called *Aqua Solis*; by the *Greeks* *Thermae* for the self same reason. Situate in a low Valley, environed about with Hills very steep and high, from whence come many Rivulets and fresh Springs, to the great Commodity of the people. A fine neat Town, and beautified with as neat a Church, heretofore a Monastery, partner with *Wells*, the Bishop's See, in the title of Episcopate; and gives the Title of an Earl to the Noble Family of the *Bourchiers*. 3. *Falmouth* in *Cornwall*, seated upon a large and capacious Bay, so full of Creeks and Roads, capable of the best Ships, that it is said, an hundred Sail of Ships may be lodged therein with such convenience, that from the top of the one, the Mast of another is not to be seen; the mouth or entrance of it defended for the greater safety with two very strong Castles built by *Henry* the 8th. that of *S. Maudis* on the East, and that of *Pendennis* (commonly called *Pendennis*) upon the West. 4. *Dorchester*, the chief Town of *Dorsetshire*, which is thence denominated, by *Antoninus* called *Durnovaria*, the principal at that time of the *Durotriges*: an Inland Town, and consequently of no great trading: not so much famous for ought else as giving the Title of a Marquess to *Henry* Earl of *Kingston*, of the noble Family of the *Pierreponts*. 5. *Wilton*, the head Town, in those times of *Wiltshire*, and a Bishops See, honoured with the residence of several Bishops. But by translating of the See to *Salurn* (or *Salisbury*) as the fitter place, and carrying thither therewithal the thowfare, which before was here; it fell by little and little into decay; and is now hardly worth the reputation of a Market Town. 6. *Winchester* called *Venta* in the times of the *Romans*, by the *Saxons*, *Vent-ceaster*, situate on the banks of a pleasant River, the seat Royal of the *West Saxons* Kings, who had here their Palace called *Wolsey*: so named from the Kings of the *WVallian* Family, and the situation of it in the circlings of the forsed River, which the old *Saxons* called an *Eye*: not from the *wool-Staple* here kept, as some; much less from Cardinal *Wolsey*, as others most absurdly think. The house given after to the Bishops, and made their Palace. The Town in compass two Miles, besides the Suburbs; commodiously seated in a low place, between very steep Hills, by which it is defended both from cold and wind. Afflicted very much since those times being by War and Fire, half of the ground within the Town both by Fields and Gardens; but still adorned with a Magnificent Cathedral, and a gallant (but no great) Castle, bravely mounted upon an Hill for defence and prospect; besides a *College*, and an *Hospital* added since those days. 7. *Southampton*, conveniently seated on

an Arm of the Sea, capable of Ships of burden to the very Key; which maketh it one of the richest Towns in those parts of *England*. Well built, of fair large streets, beautified with five Parish Churches, and fortified with high Walls, a double Ditch, and a right strong Castle; but the Castle now decayed and ruined. 8. *Reading*, on the banks of the River *Reunis*, where it falleth into the *Thames*, by which means it hath the convenience of both Rivers: A Town of great Trade for clothing, well built, and of three Parish Churches; heretofore beautified with a strong Castle, and a goodly Monastery, but both decayed. 9. *Windsor*, called *Windlestone* in the old *Saxon*, situate near the banks of the *Thames* on a rising ground, which gives it a fair prospect over all the Country; adorned in succeeding times with a Palace Royal of the Kings of *England*, and the Seat of the Order of the *Garter*. 10. *Wallingford*, the *Gualena* of the *Ancients*, and then the chief Town of the *Aureliani*, was after-wards (in the time of the *Saxons*) of the County of *Berk*: a mile in compass at that time within the Walls, fortified with an impregnable Castle, and adorned with twelve Parishes. So desolated by a Plague, an. 1348, that there is now but one Church left, hardly Inhabitants enough to keep that in repair; and nothing of the Walls left (as not much of the Castle) but the track and ruins.

The Kings of the *West-Saxons*.

- A. Ch.
522 1. *Cerdic*, the first King. 17.
539 2. *Kenric*, 29.
568 3. *Celings*, or *Chenine*, 27.
595 4. *Celric*, 5.
600 5. *Cethwulf*, 14.
616 6. *Kingil*, the first Christian King.
646 7. *Kenewalchinn*, 31.
677 8. *Sigebert*, 1.
678 9. *Ejefwin*, 2.
680 10. *Cenwal*.
687 11. *Cenwal*.
690 12. *Ina*, who first gave the *Peter-pence* to the Church of *Rome*.
725 13. *Ethelard*, 14.
739 14. *Cuthbert*, 16.
755 15. *Sigebert* II. 1.
756 16. *Kinulph*, 31.
787 17. *Bilbirc*, 13.
800 18. *Egbert*, the most Puissant King of the *West-Saxons*, who united all the *Heptarchie* into one Estate, of whom see more among the *Angles* of the *Saxons*, and the Kings of *England*.

IV. The Kingdom of *EAST-SEX*, or the *EAST-SAXONS*, was begun about the year 527, by *Erchwin*, descended from *Woden*, the common Proprietor of the *Saxons*, from whom we have the name of *Wedeslaff*, or *Vodenlaff*, as they called it formerly. It contained only the Counties of *Middlesex*, *Essex*, and so much of *Hartfordshire*, as is in the *Dioecesis* of *London*. The *Christian* Faith expelled here as in other places, was restored again in the time of *Sebert*, the Founder of the *Abby* Church of *S. Peter* in *Vestminster*, by the Preaching of *Mellius* the first Bishop of *London* after the entrance of the *Saxons*, suppressed again by *Seward*, and *Sigebert*, the Sons of *Sebert*; but settled stronger than before by *Ceddus* the next Bishop. Principal Cities of this Kingdom, besides *London*, spoken of already, were; 1. *Vestminster*, situate in those times a mile from *London*, now adjoining to it. The See of the Archbishop of *London* in the time of the *Britains*: afterwards by the *Saxons* called *Thorn-ey* or the *Thorny* Island; till the new *Minster* built by *Sebert* as before is said, and the *Vestern* situation of it in regard of *St. Paul's*, built at the same time by *Ethelbert* the King

of *Kent*; gained in this new name. A City honoured with the Seat of the Kings of *East-SEX*, and since those times with that of the Kings of *England*; the name of the Old Palace of the one, and the *New-Palace* of the other, still remaining there; beautified upon that occasion with more stately and magnificent houses, belonging to the Kings, Bishops, and Nobility, than all the other in the Kingdom, having of late a new Town added to it in the *Crown Garden* (a place belonging formerly to the *Monks* of *Westminster*) for uniformity of building, and handsome streets, inferior to no City of *France* or *Italy*. 2. *Canterbury*, the chief Town of *East-SEX*, situate near the Sea, on the River *Chin*; a Colony of the *Londoners* in former times, thence called *Colonia Londinensium*, and *Colonia* only, then a Bishops See: from which, or from the River, with the Addition of *Caesars*, after the manner of the *Saxons*, came the name of *Canterbury*. A fair and well built Town, and of good resort, fortified with an old *Roman* Wall, and having in it to the number of 14 Churches. 3. *Ichenes* or *Deneg* Hundred, where *S. Ceddus* the second Bishop of *London*, baptised the related *East-Saxon*. 4. *Hartford*, the chief Town of the County so called; by *Beda* named *Herulford*, and of great note in his time for a Synod there held in the dawning of the day of Christianity amongst the *Saxons*; in which *S. Augustin* the Monk, the first Apostle of that people, had a conference or consultation with the British Bishops: More memorable in the following times, for giving the title of an Earl to the illustrious Family, surnamed *De Clare*; the addition of an Honour, and a goodly Patrimony to *Tobin* of *Gannet*, Duke of *Lancaster*; and at this time, title of Earl, and Marquess to the noble Family of the *Seymours*.

The Kings of the *East-Saxons*.

- A. Ch.
527 1. *Ercenwin* the first King.
587 2. *Sleda*.
596 3. *S. Sebert*, the first Christian King.
4. *Seward*, and *Sigebert*.
623 5. *Sigebert* II. or the Little.
6. *Sigebert* III.
661 7. *Suthelme*.
664 8. *Sigbert*.
664 9. *S. Sebbu*.
694 10. *Sigebert*.
11. *Seyfride*.
701 12. *Offa*.
709 13. *Salred*.
774 14. *Suthred*, the last King of the *East-Saxons* subdued by *Egbert* the great and potent King of *West-Sax*, Anno 828. and his Kingdom made a Member of that rising Monarchy.

V. The Kingdom of the *EAST-ANGLES*, so called from the *Angle* of *English*, which possessed these parts, and that *Eastern* situation of it; begun by *Offa*, a great Commander of the *Saxons*, anno 575. contained the Counties of *Norfolk*, *Suffolk*, *Cambridgeshire*, and the life of *Elm*. The *Christian* Faith first planted here in the Reign of *Redwall* the third King, by the Ministry of *Felix* a *Burgundian*, the first Bishop of the *East-Angles*, the See whereof was afterwards removed to *Norwich*, Places of most importance in it, were 1. *Dunwich* on the Sea shore, the first Bishops See of the *East-Angles*, for the County of *Suffolk*; then a Town capable of that dignity, how ruinous, decayed, and for the greatest part worn into the Sea. 2. *Ipswich* in the same County of *Suffolk* and the chief of the County, a rich, populous, and well traded Empory, consisting of no fewer than twelve Parish Churches.

ches. 3. *Norwich*, the head City of *Norfolk*, situate on the River *Tare*, which runs thence to *Yarmouth*, lying out in length a mile and an half, half as much in breadth, & in that Circuit comprehending about 20. Parishes well walled in with many a Tower, & 12 Gates for entrance; but hath within it much waste Ground, the City suffering great loss both in wealth and buildings, by *Kets* Rebellion, in the time of King *Edward* the sixth. Recovered of the first blow by the *Dutch Manufacturers*, of the last still languishing: yet still it glorieth in the beauties of a fair Cathedral, the three Palaces of the Bishops, the Dukes of *Norfolk*, and the Earls of *Surry*, and the ruins of an ancient Castle of the *Saxons* building. 4. *North Elmham*, the Bishops See of the *East-Angles*, for those parts which we now call *Norfolk*; both this and that at *Dunwich* ruined in the *Danish* Wars, but this reviving at the end of 100 years and here continuing, both Sees united into one, till removed to 5. *Thetford*, another Town of this County, situate on the confluence of the *Thet*, and the lesser *Ouse*; a larger Town than either of the other two, from whence at last removed to *Norwich*. 6. *Cambridge*, the chief Town of that County, by *Antonine* called *Cambrivium* whence the Modern name: unless we rather fetch it from a Bridge over the River *Cam* or *Gram* (for some call it *Grambridge*) as perhaps we may. A Town well built by reason of the University, said to be founded by *Sigebert*, King of the *East-Angles*, of whom it is affirmed by *Beda*, that he founded a School for the education of Children in the ways of good Learning; but he speaketh neither of University, nor nameth *Cambridge* for the place. 7. *Ely*, situate in the Isle so named, occasioned by the divided streams of *Nen* and *Ouse*, with the over-flores of other Rivers; turning a great part of this tract into Fens and Marshes, the Inhabitants whereof were called *Girvii*. A place of no great beauty or reputation, as situate in a foggy and unhealthy air; but only for a fair Monastery built by *S. Ethelred*, Wife of *Egfride*, King of the *Northerners*, by her made a Nunnery; afterwards rebuilt and replenished with Monks by *Ethelwald* Bishop of *Winchester*, anno 970. or thereabouts; finally made a Bishops See in the time of King *Henry* the first, anno 1109.

The Kings of the *East-Angles*.

- A. Ch.
575 1. *Offa*, the first Christian King.
582 2. *Tinlin*.
593 3. *Redwall*, the first King.
624 4. *Eppenwald*.
636 5. *S. Sigebert*.
638 6. *Egric*.
642 7. *Anna*.
648 8. *Ethelbert*.
656 9. *Edelwald*.
664 10. *Alduff*.
683 11. *Elfwilph*.
714 12. *Bearn*.
714 13. *Ethelred*.
749 14. *Ethelbert* II. treacherously murdered by *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*, to whose Court he came an invited Guest, anno 793. after whose death this Kingdom became subject to the *Mercians*, and then to *Egbert* the *West-Saxon*, governed by Tributary Kings of their own Nation: of whom we have no *constat* till the time of
870 15. *S. Edmund*, descended from *Anna*, the seventh King hereof, Martyred by the *Danes* for his stout and constant preference in the Faith of *CHRIST*; from whence the fair Town of

M m 2

S. Edmund.

St. Edmundsbury, in the County of Suffolk, took denomination. After whose death the Kingdom was possessed by the Danes, till vanquished by King Edward the Elder, by whom it was united unto the rest of England.

VI. The Kingdom of NORTHUMBRIA, AND, so called from the situation on the North of *Humber*, contained the Counties of *York, Lancashire, Durham, Westmerland, Cumberland*, and *Northumberland*, properly so called; and all the Southern parts of *Scotland*, as far as to the *Frythes of Edinburgh* and *Dumblinton*, formerly reckoned as Members of the Roman Empire. Extorted from the Britains by *Oswa* the Son, and *Elna* the brother of *Hengist*, Conductors of new Forces hither, (all of the Nation of the *Angli*) by the leave of *Vortiger*, upon pretence of guarding these Countries from the inroads of the *Scots* and *Picts*. By them divided into two Provinces, the one called *Deira*, extending from the *Humber*, to the River of *Tees*; the other called *Bernicia*, reaching from *Tees*, to the two *Frythes* before-mentioned: both governed a long while by Dukes, under the Sovereignty and homage of the Kings of *Kent*. In the year 547. Duke *Ida* takes unto himself the title of King of *Bernicia*, and *An. 559.* Duke *Ida*, doth the like in *Deira*. The Towns of most notice in this last (for the former is now reckoned as a part of *Scotland*) besides *York* (spoken of before, were 1. *Lancaster*, the chief Town of that County, situate on the River *Len*, which with addition of *Caster* most used by the Saxons, made the name thereof; called for the same reason *Lengoustric* by the Emperor *Antonine*. The Town not very well peopled nor much frequented, but of sufficient fame in our *English Annals* for those Noble persons which have successively borne the titles of Earls and Dukes of it; the greatest Princes for Revenue, of any Subjects in *Christendom*, 2. *Kendal*, or *Candale*, situate in a dale on the River *Carn*, whence it had the name; the chief Town of *Westmerland*: built in the manner of a Cross, two long and broad streets thwarting one another. A rich, populous and well traded Town, especially for the making of fine woollen cloth, but of more fame for giving the title of an Earl to *John Duke of Bedford*, Regent of *France*; and to *John de Foix*, created Earl thereof by *Henry* the sixth. 3. *Carlisle*, upon the River *Eden*, a frontier Town betwixt the Romans and *Scots*, as now between the *Scots* and *English*: returned to ashes in the time of the Danish furies; afterwards rebuilt by *William Rufus*, made an Episcopal See in the Reign of *K. Henry* the first, and beautified with a Cathedral founded at the persuasion of *Abelwulfus*, the first Bishop thereof. 4. *Mosely-chester*, on the Northern banks of the River *Tine*, which maketh there a safe and capacious Haven. Of no great note till the Norman Conquest, when from a Castle built by *Robert* Son of *William* the Conqueror, it was called *New-Castle*: growing from that time forwards to such wealth and trading, by the neighbourhood of the *Cole-mines* there, that it is now the goodliest Town in all the North; fortified with strong Walls, beautified with five fair Churches, and giving to the *L. Will. Cavendish*, Viscount *Mansfield*, the honorary titles of Earl and Marquess. 5. *Hagulfade*, or *Hextald*, by the Romans called *Aselodunum*, by the Normans. *Hexham*: a Bishops See in the first time of Christianity amongst these *Northumbrians*, specially so called, converted to the Faith in the time of *Oswald* their tenth King, by the Ministry of *Aidan* the first Bishop of *Lindisfarne*: *Eata* the fifth Bishop, erecting here an Episcopal See, for the better propagation of the Gospel among this people; after a succession of ten Bishops ruined and suppressed by the Danish furies. 6. *Dunholm*, now *Durham*, situate on a Hill, as the name importeth, a Bishops See, translated hither with the body of St. *Cuthbert*, *anno* 990.

or thereabouts, from *Lindisfarne*, a small Island on the Coast of *Northumberland*, where it was first erected by *S. Aidannus*, the first bishop thereof: planted in *Lindisfarne*, because of the solitude of the place; translated hither to avoid the fury of the Danes, who then raged extremely in these Quarters. And being settled here, was fortified with such ample privileges and possessions, by the *Saxon Kings*: that the bishops were reputed for *Count Palatins*; at and before the *Norman Conquest*. 7. *Halifax*, in the west Riding of *Yorkshire*, of great wealth by making of Cloth. 8. *Rippon*, in the same, adorned with a fair Cathedral or Collegiate Church, subordinate to that of *York*. 9. *Gedmanham*, (by Beda called *Garmadin Gahan*) famous in those days for a Temple of the *Saxon-Idols*, burnt down and utterly destroyed by *Canis*, the chief Priest thereof, converted to *Christianity* by *Paulinus* the first Archbishop of *York*, and the Apostle of the *Northumbrians* in these parts. The Catalogue of the Kings of this mighty Nation, by reason of the division of it into two Kingdoms, as before is said, is very intricate and confused, the Kingdoms being sometimes united, and sometimes disjoined. But in regard the most prevalent King of either, was called King of *Northumberland*, the other of *Bernicia* or *Deira* only, I shall accordingly subjoin them in this order following.

The Kings of Northumberland.

- | | | |
|--------|----|--|
| A. Ch. | | |
| 549 | 1 | <i>Ida</i> the first King. |
| 560 | 2 | <i>Ella</i> , King of <i>Deira</i> . |
| 589 | 3 | <i>Ethelric</i> , Son of <i>Ida</i> King of <i>Bernicia</i> . |
| 593 | 4 | <i>Ethelfred</i> . |
| 617 | 5 | <i>Edwin</i> , Son of <i>Ella</i> , the first Christian King. |
| 633 | 6 | <i>Osric</i> . |
| 634 | 7 | <i>St. Oswald</i> . |
| 643 | 8 | <i>Osui</i> , who having subdued and slain <i>Osui</i> King of <i>Deira</i> , was the first absolute King of all <i>Northumberland</i> ; as no more divided after that. |
| 671 | 9 | <i>Egfride</i> . |
| 686 | 10 | <i>S. Alfride</i> . |
| 703 | 11 | <i>Offred</i> . |
| 716 | 12 | <i>Kewred</i> . |
| 718 | 13 | <i>Osric</i> II. |
| 729 | 14 | <i>Ceolmulp</i> . |
| 738 | 15 | <i>Ogbert</i> . |
| 758 | 16 | <i>Eswulph</i> . |
| 759 | 17 | <i>Edilwald</i> . |
| 765 | 18 | <i>Alfred</i> . |
| 774 | 19 | <i>Ethelred</i> . |
| 778 | 20 | <i>Alfwald</i> . |
| 789 | 21 | <i>Offred</i> II. |
| 794 | 22 | <i>Ethelred</i> II. After whose death, slain by his treacherous and rebellious Subjects (as many of his Predecessors had been before) the Kingdom became distracted into parts and Factions, invaded by the Danes on the one side, the <i>Scots</i> and <i>Picts</i> on the other, who during these distractions had possessed themselves of all the Countries on the other side of the <i>Tweed</i> . At the last <i>Anno</i> 827. they yielded themselves to <i>Egbert</i> , the most Potent King of the <i>West-Saxons</i> , ruled by his Deputies for a while, then subdued by the Danes, and finally recovered, to the Crown of <i>England</i> , by <i>Albistan</i> and <i>Edred</i> , <i>anno</i> 950. or thereabouts. Content since that to give the Title of an Earl to some eminent persons both of <i>English</i> and <i>Norman</i> Races: as it hath done since the first year of King <i>Richard</i> the second; to the Noble Family of the <i>Perceys</i> , defended by <i>Joseline</i> of <i>Brabant</i> , Brother of <i>Adelice</i> the second Wife of King <i>Henry</i> the first, from <i>Charles</i> the |

the Great, Emperor and King of *France*, and that too in a clearer Light than the Dukes of *Lorraine*, who so much brag of it.

VII. The Kingdom of *MERCIA*, was begun by *Crida*, or *Criada*, a great Commander of the *Angli*, or *English* Nation, who settling in the heart of *Britain*, where the people were least used to arms made themselves Masters of the Counties of *Gloucester, Worcester, Hereford, Salop, Chester, Stafford, Derby, Nottingham, Leicester, Rutland, Lincoln, Huntingdon, Northampton, Warwick, Oxen, Buckingham, Bedford*, and the rest of *Hartfordshire*, which bounded in a manner by all the rest of the *Saxon* Kingdoms, had the name of *Mercia*, from the word *Mearc*, which signifies a bound or limit. The Christian Faith suppressed here, as in other Kingdoms of the Saxons, was restored again in the Reigns of *Penda*, *Peda*, and *Wulfere*, by the preaching of *St. Chad* the first Bishop of *Lichfield*.

Places of most observation it, 1. *Hereford*, seated on the Banks of the River *Wye*, in the middle of most flourishing Meadows, and no less plentiful Corn fields; raised out of the Ruines of *Ariconium* here placed by *Antonine*, the tract of which name it doth still retain. A Bishops See in the time of the Britains, restored to that dignity by the Saxons, *An. 680.* the honourable title of the *Bishops*, once Earls heretofore; and afterwards of *Henry of Bullingbrook*, Duke of *Hereford*. 2. *Worcester*, pleasantly seated on the *Severn*, over which it hath a very fair Bridge with a Tower upon it. A Bishops See, *Anno* 672, beautified with a fair Cathedral, and every way considerable for situation, number of Churches, neat Buildings, the industry of the Inhabitants, and giving the Title of an Earl to the Noble Family of the *Somerfords*, extracted by the *Beaumonts* from *John of Gannet*. 3. *Lichfield*, the first Bishops See amongst the *Mercians*, founded there *Anno* 646, by *Osui* King of the *Northumbrians*, but fixed and settled by *St. Chad* in the Reign of *Offred* King of the *Mercians*; endowed in the very Infancy with such fair possessions, that in the year 793 *Adulfus* the Bishop heretofore, was made Archbishop of the *Mercians*. But it proved only a personal honour, and died with him. 4. *Cowenry*, so called from an old *Coven* or Religious house, which gave name unto it; Situate in *Warwickshire*, and now the principal of that County, though esteemed a County of it self: beautified with a goodly Wall, two fair Parish Churches, large Streets, and very handfom Houses. A City of great Trade & Riches, though destitute of all advantages which a Navigable River might afford it; heretofore of great Fame for a stately Monastery, to which the See Episcopal was for a while removed from *Lichfield*, now a ruin only. 5. *Leicester*, once a Bishops See, the *Dioecesis* taken out of *Lichfield*, *An. 733*, removed to *Dorchester* near *Oxon*, and thence to *Lincoln*. Beautified in those days with a fair Collegiate Church, a magnificent Abbey, and a strong Castle; and decayed and ruined by the iniquity and injury of these latter times: the Town remaining in as good plight both for Trade and Buildings, as most Towns do which want a Navigable River. Of most fame for the Earls thereof, *Algar* and *Edwin*, noble Saxons, *Simon de Montfort* the *Castile* and great Incendiary of this Kingdom, the Princes of the House of *Lancaster*, who bore this Title; with some others since. 6. *Derby*, upon the River *Derwent*, a well-traded Town, and of good reformation; adorned with five Churches, a goodly Stone Bridge, and a large Market-place; the honorary title of the Noble Family of the *Stanleys*, created Earls heretofore by King *Henry* the Seventh. 7. *Nottingham* seated on the *Trent*, but very high upon an hill, which overlooks it. For Buildings, fair, streets, and a spacious Market-place, not giving way to many Cities; but of most fame for a Roy-

al and magnificent Castle, which for strength, stateliness, and prospect, may justly challenge the precedence of most in *England*. 8. *Lincoln*, a Town in those days of great strength and note, one of the best peopled Cities in all the *Heptarchy*; and of great Merchandise and Traffick both by Sea and Land: infomuch that *Remigius*, then Bishop of *Dorchester* thought fit to translate hither the Episcopal See. Now much decayed, and thence the Proverb, that *Lincoln* was, *London* is. &c. The chief fame which now it hath, is for the Minster, one of the stateliest Piles in *England*, and perhaps in *Christendom*; high seated on a Hill, and from thence dispersed over all the Country. 9. *Huntingdon*, or the *Hunters* Town, from the great sport the *Hunters* found in the neighbouring *Forest*, commodiously seated on the Northern bank of the River *Ouse*, rising out the North with a soft ascent, consisting of four Parish Churches, and shews the ruins of a Castle built by *Edward* the Elder, *An. 917*. 10. *Peterborough*, seated in a Nook or Angle of *Northamptonshire*, where formerly had been a Gulf or Whirlpool of exceeding depth; but made firm ground by *Wulfere* King of the *Mercians*, when he laid the Foundations of the Monastery, *Anno* 633, dedicated to *St. Peter*, whence it had this name; before then called *Medanbeld*. A Town, but for the Church, of no great esteem; standing out of the way for Trade, and in no plausible place for health or pleasure; yet shewing two handfom streets, a large Market-place, and a fair Parish Church (besides the Abbey) made an Episcopal See by King *Henry* the 8th. 11. *Northampton*, built on the Northern Bank of the River *Antona*, (now *Nen*) whence it had the name. A Town which for the beauty and circuit of it need not give way to many Cities; fortified heretofore with a very strong Castle, and seated in so good an Air, that once the Students of *Cambridge* had a purpose to remove their University hither. The Noble Family of the *Comptons* are now Earls heretofore. 12. *Bedford*, so called from *Beds* and Lodgings on the *Ford*, built on both sides thereof for the use of Travellers, growing in time to so great bigness as to contain in it five Parish Churches: famous in former times for the great Battle fought in the adjoining fields, *Anno* 572, in which *Cuthwulf* the *Saxon* vanquished the *Britains*, and became Master of the Country: But more famous for giving the title of Duke to *John of Lancaster*, Regent of *France* for King *Henry* the sixth, and *Tasper* of *Halsfield*, Uncle to King *Henry* the 7th. 13. *St. Albans*, so called from a famous Monastery, here founded by *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*, in honour of *St. Albans*, the *Protomartyr* of *Britain*, a Citizen of *Verulamium*, near adjoining to it: out of the ruins whereof: decayed by age, and destroyed by War, arose the present greatness of *St. Albans*, the fairest and best traded Town in the County of *Hartford*. 14. *Buckingham*, the chief Town of the County so called, situate on the River *Ouse*: fortified by King *Edward* the Elder against the Danes, *Anno* 915, otherwise not much observable, but for those many noble personages which have had the title of Dukes heretofore.

The Kings of Mercia.

- | | | |
|--------|---|---|
| A. Ch. | | |
| 582 | 1 | <i>Criada</i> , the first King. |
| 593 | 2 | <i>Webba</i> . |
| 614 | 3 | <i>Cheol</i> . |
| 626 | 4 | <i>Penda</i> . |
| 636 | 5 | <i>Peda</i> , the first Christian King. |
| 659 | 6 | <i>Wulfere</i> . |
| 675 | 7 | <i>Ethelred</i> . |
| 704 | 8 | <i>Kewred</i> . |
| 709 | 9 | <i>Cheled</i> . |

716 10 *Ethelbald*, overcome by *Cuthbert* King of the *West-Saxons*, at a Fight near *Burford* in the County of *Oxons*, the place first called *Battellage Hill*.

758 11 *Offa* the Great.

796 12 *Egfride*.

797 13 *Kenwof*.

819 14 *Kendin*.

820 15 *Cheslowif*.

821 16 *Bernulf*.

824 17 *Luditan*.

826 18 *Witlaf*, overcome in fight (as were his two Predecessors) by *Egbert* King of *West-Sex*, became his tributary.

839 19 *Berthulf*.

852 20 *Burdred*, a substituted King of the *West-Saxons*, and the last King of the *Mercians* (the short Reign of his six Predecessors, portending that fatal period to be near at hand.) After whose Death, Anno 886, this Kingdom for some few years tyrannized over by the *Danes*, was united by King *Alfred* to the *English* Monarchy.

Such was the Order and Succession of the *Saxon* Kings, during the *Heptarchie*, or division of it into seven Kingdoms; continuing separate and distinct till the prevailing Fortune of *West-Saxons* brought them all together into one, by the name of *England*. But so, that they were subject for the most part unto one alone, who was intitled *Rex Genis Anglorum*: those which were stronger than the rest, giving the Law unto them in their several turns; and are these that follow: *

The Monarch of the English Saxons in the time of the Heptarchie.

- A. C.
- 455 1 *Hengist*, King of *Kent*, who first brought the *Saxons* into *Britain*.
- 481 2 *Ella*, the first King of the *South-Saxons*.
- 495 3 *Cerdic*, the first King of the *West-Saxons*.
- 534 4 *Kenric*, King of the *West-Saxons*.
- 561 5 *Chenline*, or *Celingus*, King of the *West-Saxons*.
- 562 6 *Ethelbert*, King of *Kent*, the first *Christian* King of the *Saxons*.
- 616 7 *Redwald*, King of the *East-Angles*.
- 617 8 *Edwin*, King of *Northumberland*.
- 634 9 *Offa*, King of *Northumberland*.
- 643 10 *Offa*, King of *Northumberland*.
- 649 11 *Wulfhere*, King of *Mercia*.
- 675 12 *Ethelred*, King of *Mercia*.
- 704 13 *Kenred*, King of *Mercia*.
- 704 14 *Cheleda*, King of *Mercia*.
- 716 15 *Ethelbald*, King of *Mercia*.
- 758 16 *Offa* the Great, King of the *Mercians*.
- 794 17 *Egfride*, King of *Mercia*.
- 796 18 *Kenwof*, King of *Mercia*.
- 799 19 *Egbert*, the Son of *Almond*, King of the *West-Saxons*, who having vanquished all the rest of the *Saxon* Kings, and added most of their

Estates unto his own, caused the whole united body to be called *Engle-land*, or *England*, in a Parliament or Council held at *Wincester*, Anno 819, being the 19th. year of his Reign over the *West-Saxons*; and by that name he was then crowned in the presence of his Nobles, and the rest of his Subjects, leaving it unto the rest of his Successors.

But before we come to the recital of their names, we are to take notice of the *Danes*, the next considerable Affairs on the Stage of *England*, who in the time of this

Egbert, first invaded the Country, and after exercised the patience of his posterity, till in fine they got the Kingdom to themselves. Of the Original and first Successors of this people, we shall speak more at large when we come to *Denmark*. Suffice it here to know, that having taken up the void Rooms of the *Jutes* and *English* in the *Cimbriack Cherisuse*, they thought it not amiss to follow them into *Britain* also; making a discovery of some part of the Coast thereof with three Ships only, Anno 787, being the first year of *Brithic* (the Father of *Egbert*) King of the *West-Saxons*. Which having done, and prepared themselves for the undertaking, in the time of *Egbert* they invaded *Northumberland*, the Isle of *Shepey* in *Kent*, and the Coasts of *Wales*; not without much difficulty driven out by him. In the Reign of the three Kings succeeding, having vanquished the *Northumbrians*, *East-Angles*, and a part of the *Mercians*; they erected many petty Tyrannies: by *Alfred* first stopped in their Career, by *Edward* the Elder outed of the *East-Angles*, and by *Aethelstan* of *Northumberland* also, the *Danes* for some time after being subject to the *English* Government, mixing in marriages and alliance, and incorporated with them. By the valour and good Fortune of *Swain* their King, they recovered their power again in *England*; and in the person of *Cannus* obtained the Kingdom: who having impolitically sent back his *Danes* into their Country (as if a Kingdom got by force, could be held by favour) opened a way to their exclusion from the Crown; which happened within seven years after his decease. Which laid, we come to the Successions of

The Kings of England of the Saxon Race:

- 819 1 *Egbert*, the last King of the *West-Saxons*, and the first of *England*. 18.
- 837 2 *Ethelwulf*, the eldest Son of *Egbert*. 20.
- 857 3 *Ethelbald*, the eldest Son of *Ethelwulf*. 1.
- 858 4 *Ethelbert*, the brother of *Ethelbald*. 4.
- 863 5 *Ethelfred*, the brother of the two former Kings, the third Son of *Ethelwulf*, and as much molested by the *Danes*, as his brethren were. 10.
- 873 6 *Alfride*, the fourth Son of *Ethelwulf*, who totally united the *Saxon* Heptarchy into one Estate, vanquished the *Danes*, whom he made subject to his commands, though he could not expel them. He divided *England* into Shires, and reformed the University of *Oxon*.
- 900 7 *Edward*, surnamed the Elder, the Son of *Alfride*, who recovered the *East-Angles* from the power of the *Danes*, whom he shut up in *Northumberland*. 24.
- 924 8 *Aethelstan*, the Son of *Edward*, who subdued the *Britains* of *Cumberland* and *Cornwall*, and compelled the *Danes* to submit themselves to the *English* Government. In his time lived Sir *Guy* of *Warwick*, famous for overcoming *Colbrand* the *Danish* Champion (the great Goliath of that people) near the Walls of *Winchester*. 10.
- 940 9 *Edmund* the Brother of *Aethelstan*, by whom the *Danes* of *Northumberland* were brought under obedience, and the Kingdom of the *Britains* in *Cumberland* utterly subverted.
- 946 10 *Edred*, the Brother of *Edmund* and *Aethelstan*, so fortunate against the *Danes*, that he compelled them to be Christianized. 9.
- 955 11 *Edwy*, the Son of *Edmund*.

955 12 *Edgar*, the Brother of *Edwy*, surnamed the *Peaceable*, the most absolute Monarch of *England*, since the time of the *Saxons*; by whom the tribute of money; imposed by *Aethelstan* on the *Welsh*, was exchanged into a tribute of *Wolues*. 16.

971 13 *Edward* II. Son of *Edgar*, treacherously murdered by his *Stepdame*, to make way for *Ethelred* her son; hence surnamed the *Martyr*. 3.

978 14 *Ethelred*, the younger Son of *Edgar*, and half Brother of *Edward*, enjoyed the Crown unjustly which he got unjustly. Oppressed and broken by the *Danes*, he was fain to buy his peace of them at the yearly tribute of 10000 pounds; enhanced to 48000 pounds within short time after; which monies were raised upon the Subjects, by the name of *Danegeld*. Weary of the exactions, he plotted warily with his Subjects to kill all the *Danes*, as they slept in their beds; which accordingly was put in execution on St. *Brices* night, November 12. Anno 1012. To revenge this outrage and dishonour, *Swaine* King of *Denmark*, with a Fleet of 350 Ships came into *England*; the fear whereof compelled *Ethelred*, a weak and impuissant Prince to fly into *Normandy*; leaving his poor Subjects to the mercy of the *Danish* Tyrant, who miserably plagued them till his death. To whom succeeded his Son *Cannus* (*Cannus*) a more temperate Prince; who mauve *Ethelred* now returned, or his Son *Edmund Ironside*, a most valiant King, did in the end possess himself of the whole Kingdom.

1016 15 *Edmund* II. surnamed *Ironside*, having in vain attempted to recover his Kingdom, at last divided it with *Cannus*: not long after which he was treacherously and basely murdered, by *Edward*, surnamed the *Out-Law*, his eldest Son; he was Grandfather of *Edgar Aetheling*, and of *Margaret*, Wife of *Malcolm* the third, King of the *Scots*.

The Danish Kings.

- 1017 1 *Cannus* King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, after the death of *Edmund* the second sole King of *England*. He married *Emma* the widow of *Ethelred*, and Daughter of *Richard* Duke of *Normandy*. 20.
- 1037 2 *Harald* the bafe Son of *Cannus*, surnamed *Harfager*. 4.
- 1041 3 *Cannus* II. commonly called *Hardy Cannus*, the lawful Son of *Gormus* by *Emma*, the Widow of *Ethelred* the second, and Mother of *Edward* surnamed the *Confessor*, the last King of the *Danes* in *England*. After whose death that people living tyrannized in *England* for the space of 255 years, (of which they had reigned only 26) were utterly expelled the Country, or passed in the Account of *English*; *Edward* the *Confessor*, the youngest Son of *Ethelred*, being advanced unto the Throne, by the power and practices of his Mother *Emma*, and the absence of the Children of *Edmund Ironside* his elder Brother, Anno 1042.

Now concerning the *Danes* abiding here, and going hence as they did, I observe three customs yet in use amongst us. First, each *English* house maintained one

Dane, who living idly like the *Drones* among the *Bees*, had the benefit of all their labour, and was by them called *Lord Dane*; and even now when we see an idle fellow, we call him a *Lord Dane*. 2. The *Danes* used when the *English* drank, to stab them, or cut their throats: to avoid which villany, the party then drinking, requested some of the next unto him to be his *furety* or *pledge*, whilst he paid nature her due: and hence we have our usual custom of *pledging* one another. 3. The old *Romans* at the expulsion of their Kings, annually solemnized the *Engalia*: according to which pattern the joyful *English* having cleared the Country of the *Danes*, instituted the annual Sports of *Hock-tide*; the word in their old tongue, the *Saxon*, importing the time of *scorning*, or triumphing. This solemnity consisted in the merry meetings of the Neighbours in those days, during which the *Festival* lasted, and was celebrated by the younger sort of both Sexes, with all manner of exercises, and pastimes in the Streets, even as *Shrove-tide* yet is. But now time hath so corrupted it, that the name excepted, there remaineth no sign of the first Institution.

The Saxons re-enthroned.

A. Ch.

1042 16 *Edward* III surnamed the *Confessor*, half Brother both to *Edmund Ironside*, and *Hardy Cannus* the *Dane*, called out of *Normandy*, where he lived with the Dukes his Cousins, succeeded in the Realm of *England*. This King collected out of the *Danish*, *Saxon*, and *Mercian* Laws, one universal and general Law, whence our *Common Law* is thought to have had its original: which may be true of the written Laws, not of the customary and unwritten Laws; these being certainly more ancient. He was in his life of that holiness that he received power from above to cure many diseases, amongst others, the swelling of the Throat, called by us the *Kings-Evil*: a Prerogative that continueth Hereditary to his Successors of *England*. Finally after his death, he was Canonized for a Saint; and died, having reigned 24 years.

1066 17 *Harald* II. Son to Earl *Godwyn*, was chosen King in the non-age of *Edgar Aetheling*, Grandchild to *Edmund Ironside*, the true Heir of the Kingdom: to which *Harald* might pretend some title as being born unto Earl *Godwyn* by *Thyra* the bafe Daughter of *Cannus* the first, Sister by the whole blood to *Harald Harfager*, and of the half blood to *Cannus* the second, the last King of the *Danes* in *England*. But *William* Duke of *Normandy*, (of which people we have spoke already when we were in *France* and shall speak more at large when we come to *Denmark*, as the last Affairs on the Theatre or Stage of *England*.) This *William* (I say) pretending a Donation from his Cousin, King *Edward* the *Confessor*,

invaded *England*, slew *Harald*, and with him 66654 of his *English* Souldiers, and possessed himself of the Kingdom; using such Policy in his new Conquest, that he utterly disheartened the *English* from hopes of better fortune. From him beginneth the new account of the Kings of *England*, those of the former Line being no longer reckoned in the computation of the first, second, or third, &c.

The

The Norman Kings.

- A. C.
1067 1 William, surnamed the Conqueror, after the vanquishment and death of Harold, acknowledged and Crowned King, altered the ancient Laws of England, and established those of Normandy in the place thereof: governing the people absolutely by the power of the Sword, and giving a great part of their Lands to his former Followers, and such as were engaged in the Action with him; from whom most of our ancient Families do derive themselves; those Lands to be holden in *Knights-Service*, which drew along with it the *Wardship* of the Heir in *Minority*, as a charge laid upon the Land.
- 1089 2 William II. surnamed Rufus, second Son to the Conqueror, succeeded by the appointment of his Father, and was Crowned King; slain afterwards in the *New Forest*, by an Arrow levelled at a Deer.
- 1102 3 Henry, for his Learning surnamed *Beau-Clerk*, the third Son of the Conqueror, in the absence of his Brother Robert (in the *Holy-Land Wars*) entred on the Kingdom, and afterwards took from him also the Dukedom of Normandy, and put out his eyes. Deprived of all his male-issue, he left one only Daughter whose name was *Maud*; first married to the Emperor Henry the fifth, and after to *Geoffrey Plantagenet* Earl of *Anjou*, *Touraine*, and *Maine*. 34.
- 1136 4 Stephen, second Son of *Stephen* Earl of *Champaigne* and *Blais*, and of *Alice* Daughter to the Conqueror, succeeded the Tribute called *Danegelt*: he spent most of his Reign in War against *Maud* the Empress. 19.

The Saxon Blood restored.

- 1155 5 Henry II. Son to *Maud* the Empress, Daughter to Henry the first, and to *Maud* Daughter to *Malcolm* King of *Scotland*, and *Margaret* Sister to *Edgar* *Abeling*, restored the Saxon blood to the Crown of England. His Father was *Geoffrey* Earl of *Anjou*, *Touraine*, and *Maine*; which Provinces he added to the *English* Empire, as also the Duchy of *Aquitain*, and the Earldom of *Positon*, by Eleanor his Wife; and a great part of *Ireland* by Conquest. Happy in all things, the unnatural rebellions of his Sons excepted. 34.
- 1189 6 Richard, the Son of Henry, surnamed *Cœur de Lion*, warred in the *Holy Land*, overcame the *Turks*, whom he had almost driven out of *Syria*, took the life of *Cyprus*; and after many worthy achievements returning homewards to defend Normandy, and Aquitain against the French, was by *Tempest* cast upon *Dalmatia*; and travelling through the Dominions of the Duke of *Austria*, was taken Prisoner, put to a grievous ransom, and after his return slain at the siege of *Chalus*, in the Province of *Limousin*. 12.

- 1201 7 John, Brother of Richard, an unhappy Prince, and one that could expect no better, as being an unnatural Son to his Father, and an undutiful Subject to his Brother. Distressed for a great part of his Reign by Wars with his Barons, outed of all Normandy, *Aquitain*, and *Anjou*, by the power of the French; to whom also he was likely to have lost the Realm of England. Finally, after a base submission of himself and his Kingdom to the Popes Legate, he is said to have been poisoned at *Swinslade* Abbey. 17.
- 1218 8 Henry III. Son of John, expelled the invading French out of England, and by a composition with *Lewis* the 9th, was restored unto the Dukedom of *Guyenne*, held by his Successors till the Reign of King Henry the 6th. Exhausted by the Pope, and oppressed a long time by his factious and unruly Barons, but at last victorious. 56.
- 1274 9 Edward, the Son of Henry, awed France, subdued Wales, brought Scotland into subjection, of whose King and Nobility he received homage. 34.
- 1308 10 Edward II. Son of Edward the first, a dissolute Prince, hated of the Nobles, and contemned by the Vulgar, for his immeasurable love to *Pierce Gausson*, and his *Spencers*, was twice shamefully beaten by the Scots; and being deposed by a strong faction raised against him by his Queen, and *Roger* Lord *Mortimer*, was barbarously murdered in *Berkley* Castle. 19.
- 1327 11 Edward III. Son of Edward the second, a most Vertuous and Valorous Prince, brought the Scots to obedience, overthrew the French in two great Battels, took the Town of *Calice*, and many fair possessions in that Kingdom. 50.
- 1377 12 Richard II. another of our unfortunate Kings, lost many of his Peers in France, and at last being over-awed by his two great Uncles of Lancaster, and Gloucester, and taken Prisoner by his Cousin the Duke of Hereford, he was forced to resign his Crown, and afterwards was murdered at *Ponfret* Castle.

The Lancastrian Line.

- 1399 13 Henry IV. Son to John of Gaunt Duke of Lancaster, the fourth Son of Edward the 3, was by the power of the Sword, but with the consent of the People, seated in the Throne; and spent his whole Reign in suppressing homebred Rebellions. 15.
- 1414 14 Henry V. the Mirrour of Magnificence, and Pattern of true Vertue, pursued the Title of France, and won it, being ordained Heir apparent to the French Crown, but lived not to possess the Kingdom. 9.
- 1423 15 Henry VI. a Pious, but unfortunate Prince, was crowned King of France in Paris, which he held during the life of his Uncle John of Bedford, and Humphrey of Gloucester; after whose deaths, he not only lost France to the French, but England and his life to the *Turkish* Faction. 38.

The

The Turkish Line.

- 1461 16 Edward IV. Son of Richard Duke of York, the Son of Richard Earl of Cambridge, and Grandson of Edmund of Langley Duke of York, the fifth Son of King Edward the third, challenged the Crown right of the Lady Anne his Grandmother, Daughter of Roger Mortimer Earl of March, the Son of Edmund Mortimer Earl of March, and of Philippa, his Wife, sole Daughter of Lionel Duke of Clarence, the third Son of the said King Edward, and elder Brother of John of Gaunt. The claim first set on foot by his Father the Duke of York, who lost his life in pursuance of it in the Battel of Wakefield; with better fortune and success, pursued by King Edward himself, who finally after nine bloody Battels fought between the Houses (especially that of *Towton*, in which were slain 36000 English) was quietly seated in the possession of England and Ireland. 23.
- 1484 17 Edward V. his Son, was before his Coronation murdered by his Uncle Richard, in the Tower of London.
- 1484 18 Richard III. Brother of Edward the 4. a most wicked and tyrannical Prince, to make way unto the Diadem, murdered King Henry the sixth, and 2. Prince Edward his Son. 3. George Duke of Clarence, his Brother. 4. Hastings: a faithful Servant to King Edward. 5. Rivers, Vaughan and Gray, the Queens Kindred. 6. Edward the fifth, his Sovereign, with his Brother Richard. 7. Henry Duke of Buckingham his dear Friend, and greatest Coadjutor in these his ungodly practices; and his own Wife Anne, so to make way to an incestuous marriage with his Nece Elizabeth, the eldest Daughter of Edward the 4th; but before the solemnity, he was slain at *Bosworth*. 3.

The Union of the Families.

- 1487 19 Henry VII. Earl of Richmond, Heir to the House of Lancaster, (as Son of Margaret Daughter of John Duke of Somerset, Son of John Earl of Somerset, Son of John of Gaunt Duke of Lancaster) after the overthrow of Richard, married Elizabeth, Daughter and Heir to Edward the 4. uniting by that marriage the divided Families. He was also extracted from the British and French Royal Blood, as being Son to Edmund Tudor Earl of Richmond, Son to Owen Tudor (descended from Cadwallader, the last King of the Britains) and Katharine of France, Widow of Henry the 5. His whole Wars was against home-bred Rebels, the chief being *Lambart*, and the Followers and Favourites of *Perkin Warbeck*. 23.
- 1509 20 Henry VIII. Heir to both Families, between which were fought for the Diadem 17 pitched Fields; in which perished 8 Kings and Princes, 40 Dukes, Marquesses, and Earls, 200000 of the common people, besides Barons and Gentlemen. This King banished the usurped Supremacy of the Pope, and began the Reformation of Religion; though

formerly he had writ a Book against *Luther*, for which the Pope gave him the honourable Title of *The Defender of the Faith*; afterwards made Hereditary by Act of Parliament to his Heirs and Successors. A Prince of great vices, but of greater virtues. 38.

- 1547 21 Edward VI. the Son of Henry the 8th, by Jane Seymour his third Wife; out of whose Womb he is said to be cut, to come into the World, as *Cesar* was; but he had neither *Cesar's* Fortune nor length of life; dying very young, and his Affairs conducted by divided Councils; though otherwise of great hopes, and of a pregnancy of judgment above his years. 6.
- 1553 23 Mary, the Daughter of King Henry the 8th, by Katharine of Spain, the Widow of his Brother Arthur, restored the Popes Supremacy banished by her Father, with the whole mass of Popery abolished in her Brother's Reign. To which Religion so addicted, that in the short time of her Reign there was more blood shed, than in the whole 44 years of her Sister Elizabeth. In the last year of her Reign she lost Calice to the French, which proved the loss of her life, as it was supposed. 5.
- 1558 23 Elizabeth, the Daughter of King Henry the 8th, by the Lady Anne Bullen his second Wife, a most gracious Heroick Princess, was by the Divine Providence of God preserved from the Practices of her Enemies in her Sisters Reign, to sway the Scepter of the Kingdom. She pursued the Reformation of Religion, began in the times of her Father and Brother; refined the corrupt Coin brought in by her Father, furnished the Royal Navy with all kind of VVarelike Ammunitions; increased the Revenue of the Universities, by the Statute of *Prenupt*; secured the Scots against the French; the French Protestants against the Papists, and both against the Spaniards: defended the *Netherland*, against the attempts of Spain; commanded the whole Ocean; entred League with the *Muscovites*; and was famous for her Prudence and Government amongst the *Turks*, *Persians*, and *Tartars*, yea her very Enemies. Finally she died in the 45. year of her Reign, and the 70. of her life, on the 24. of March, Anno 1602. according to the computation of the Church of England, which beginneth the New Year with the Feast of the Annunciation. To whom succeeded JAMES the Sixth, King of the Scots, with the joy of all men, as the next undoubted Heir of the Crown. Of whom we shall say more when we come to speak of the Monarchs of Britain: of which he was the first since the fall of the Roman Empire, and such more properly than the greatest of all those Emperours had been before: None of them having all the North parts of Britain itself, or any part of Ireland at all, nor many of the Isles adjoining, under their Dominion.
- In the mean time to look on England as a State distinct, we will consider it and the Kings thereof, with reference to reputation abroad, and power at home; with the *Revenues*, *Arms*, and *Military Orders* of it, as in other places. And first for Reputation, when all Christendom in the Council of *Constance*, was divided into Nations, *Anglicana* was one of the Principal, and not *Subalterna*; and had its voice of equal balance with the Nations of France or Italy, in all affairs concerning the Doctrine, discipline and peace of the Church, which were there debated. And for the place due to the Kings hereof in those

N General

General Councils, and the rank they held among other Christian Princes; I find that the Emperor of Germany was accounted *Major filius Ecclesie*; the King of France, *Minor Filius*; and the King of England, *Filius tertius & adpivus*. The King of France in General Councils, had place next the Emperor, on his right hand; the King of England on his left hand, and the King of Spain being before *Castile*. Now indeed the King of Spain being so much improved, is the *dearly beloved Son of the Church*; and arrogeth to himself the place above all other Princes: but in time of Pope *Julius*, the controversy arising between the Emperor and the two Princes for precedence: the Pope adjudged it to belong of right to England. And Pope *Pius* the Fourth, upon the like Controversy arising between the Ambassadors of France and Spain, adjudged the Precedency to the French.

Touching the *Souldiers of Engl.* and their most notable achievements, both by Sea and Land, sufficient hath been said already. What Forces the Kings herof have been able to raise, and may command for present service, will best be seen by the action of King *Henry* the 8th. at *Bulloign*, the Armies of Queen *Elizabeth* in 88. and the numbers of the Trained Bands of the several Counties. First, for the Action of King *Henry* the 8th. he had in his *Avant guard* 12000 Foot, and 500 Light Horse in *blow* *Tackets* with red Guards; in the *Rere-ward* a like number both of Horse and Foot, and in the main *Battel* 20000 Foot; and 2000 Horse, all in *Red Jackets* and yellow Guards: the whole number 44000 Foot and 3000 Horse. They drew after them 100 great Pieces, besides small ones, and for conveyance of their Ordnance, Baggage, and other necessities, no fewer than 25000 Draught-horses, besides other carriages. In the next place for 88. the Queen dispersed in several places on the Southern Coasts of the Kingdom, to hinder the landing of the Enemy, 25000 Souldiers of both sorts; at *Tilbury*, for the defence of the City of *London*, under the Command of the Earl of *Leicester*, 22000 Foot, and 1000 Horse: and for the Guard of her own person, under the Lord *Hunsdon*, 34000 Foot, and 2000 Horse: in all the number of 84000 men: besides those goodly Troops which the Nobility and Gentry did present her with, at their own proper charges. And as for the Trained Bands, the number of both sorts disciplined and mulstered to be number of both sorts in the eighth year of King *James*, (for I have since seen no Muster-Roll of them) amounted to 29630 able men, 14315 armed men, 931 Demilances, 6777 Light-Horse, 19345 Pioneers, besides what was required of *Peers* and *Bishops*, supposed to amount to 20000 armed men, and 4000 Light-Horse. And for their strength at Sea, besides the *Navy Royal*, consisting of about 30 gallant Ships, (besides the lesser Vessels;) the best and bravest that any Prince of Christendom can boast of, as his own property; there are such store of *Civil* and *Merchant* Ships; fit for any service, that in the year 88 aforesaid, the Queen had 100 Sail of good Ships to oppose the *Spaniards*; and 20 more to wait upon the motions of the Duke of *Parma*. And in the year 1597, the fit out for the *Iland Voyages*, no fewer than 120 Sail of all sorts, of which 60 were men of War.

As for the *Revenues* of this Kingdom, *Boswell* reckoned them in the time of King *Henry* the 7th, to be no more than 400000 *Crown* per annum; but grants, that afterward they were improved to a million more, by King *Henry* the 8th; the dissolution of Monasteries, and the benefit redounding from the Court of *Wards*, making that improvement. And to say truth, the Universal dissolution of Religious Houses of all sorts, did for the time no

tily increase his annual income; that he was fain to erect two new Courts (the Court of *Augmentations*, and the Court of *Surveys*) for the better managing of the same. But these Additions being waisted by his own exorbitant expenses, and the several Alienations made by King *Edward* the sixth; those Courts of new erection were dissolved again; and the Revenue fell so short of its former height, that in the 12. year of Queen *Elizabeth*, the profits of the Crown (besides the Court of *Wards*, and the *Dutche of Lancaster*) came to no more than to 183197 l. 4 s. Of which 110612 l. 1 s. 2 d. went that year out upon the Navy, the charge of Household, and other necessary assignments. Since which time the great increase of trading, both at home and abroad, and the great glut of money in all parts of the World, hath added very much to the *Revenue*. The certainty whereof as I do not know, so neither will I aim at it by uncertain Hearsay.

The Principal Orders of *Knighthood* are and were, 1. of the *Round Table*, instituted by *Arthur* King of the *Britains*, and one of the *Worlds Nine Worthies*. It consisted of 150 Knights whose names are recorded in the History of King *Arthur*; there were Sir *Ure*, a wounded Knight came to be cured of his hurts: it being his fate that only the best Knight of the Order should be his *Chirurgion*: The Arms of most of these, with their several *Blazons* (I know not on how good authority) we find in *Bava*, the French Herald. The principal of them were Sir *Lancelot*, Sir *Tristan*, Sir *Lamorauc*, Sir *Gavin*, &c. all placed at one *Round Table*, to avoid quarrels about priority and place. The *Round Table* hanging in the great Hall at *Winchester*, is falsely called *Arthur*'s *Round Table*, it being not of sufficient Antiquity and containing but 24 Seats. Of these Knights there are reported many fabulous Stories. They ended with their *Founder*, and are feigned by that *Lucian of France*, *Rablais*, to be the Ferry-men of *Hell*; and that their pay is a piece of mouldy bread, and a phyllox on the Nose.

2. Of *St. George*, called commonly the *Garter*, instituted by King *Edward* the third, to increase vertue and valour in the hearts of his Nobility; or as some will, in honour of the Countess of *Salisbury*'s Garter, of which Lady the King formerly had been enamoured. But this I take to be a vain and idle *Romance*, derogatory both to the to be a vain and idle *Romance*, derogatory both to the *Founder*, and the Order; first published by *Polydore Virgil*, a stranger to the affairs of England, and by him taken upon no better ground than *fama vulgi*; the tradition of the common people; too trifling a Foundation for to great a building; Common bruit, being so infamous a Historian, that wife men neither report after it, nor give credit to any thing they receive from it. But for this fame or common bruit, the vanity and improbabilities thereof have been elsewhere canvassed. Suffice it to observe in this time and place, that the *Garter* was given unto this Order, in testimony of that bond of Love and Affection, wherewith the *Knights* or *Fellows* of it were to be bound severally unto one another, and all of them jointly to the King as the *Sovereign* of it. So hath the *Register* of the Order, (in which occurreth not one word of the *Ladies Garter*) affirming that King *Edward* did so fit the habit unto that design, *Ut omnia ad amicitiam & concordiam tendere nemo non intelligat*. But to return unto the Order, there are of it 26 Knights, of which the Kings of England are *Sovereigns*; and is so much desired for its excellency, that 8 Emperours, 21 Foreign Kings, 22 Foreign Dukes and Princes, besides divers Noble men of other Countries have been *Fellows* of it. The English is a blew *Garter* buckled on the left leg, on which these words are embroidered, *via. Henry sui qui mil y pene*. About their necks they wear a *Red Ribband*, at the end of which hangeth this Image of *St. George*, upon whose day the

1434

Installations of the new Knights are commonly celebrated.

3. Of the *Bath*, brought first into England, 1399. by *Henry* the Fourth. They are created at the *Convention* of Kings and Queens, and the *Installation* of the Princes of Wales: their duty to defend true Religion, Widows, Maids, Orphans, and to maintain the Kings Rights. The Knights thereof distinguished by a *Red Ribband*, which they wear ordinarily about their necks, to difference them from *Knights Bachelor*, of whom they have in all places the precedence; unless they be also the Sons of Noblemen, to whom their birth gives it before all Orders.

4. Of *Barnets*, an Order instituted by King *James* in the 9th. year of his Reign, for the furtherance of the Plantation of *Ulster*. They have Precedency of the *Knights of the Bath*, but not of those of the *Garter*, nor of the younger Sons of the Nobility. But this being *Here-*

itary, not personal, and rather *Civil* than *Military*; is not so properly to be ranked amongst *Orders* of *Knighthood*.

The Arms of the Realm of England, are *Mars*, 3 Lyons passant *Gardant*, *Sal*. The reason why these Arms quartered with the French, took the second place, are, 1. Because that France at the time of the first quartering of them, was the larger and more famous Kingdom. 2. That the French seeing the honour done to their Arms, might more easily be induced to have acknowledged the English Title. 3. Because the English Arms were compounded of the Lion of *Aquitain*, and the two Lions of *Normandy*, being both French Dutches.

There were in England, at and since the time of the Reformation.

Archbishops 2.

Bishops 20.

W A L E S.

W A L E S is bounded on all sides with the Sea, except towards England on the East; from which separated by the River *Dee*, and a line drawn to the River *Wie*. Anciently it extended Eastwards to the River *Severn*, till by the puissance of Offa the great King of the *Mercians*, the *Welsh* or *Britains* were driven out of the plain Countries beyond that River, and forced to betake themselves to the Mountains; where he caused them to be shut up and divided from England by an huge Ditch, called in *Welsh*, *Claudi Offa*, i. e. Offa's Dike: Which Dike beginning at the influx of the *Wie* into the *Severn*, not far from *Chepstow*, extendeth 84 miles in length, even as far as *Chester*, where the *Dee* is mingled with the Sea. Concerning which Ditch, there was a Law made by *Harold*. That if any *Welsh*-man was found with a Weapon on this side of it, he should have his right hand cut off by the Kings Officers.

The name of *Wales* some derive from *Idwallo*, the Son of *Cadwalader*, who with the small remainder of his *British* Subjects, made good the fastnesses of this Country, and was the first who had the Title of King of *Wales*. Others conceive that the name of *Welsh* and *Wales*, was given them by the *Saxons*: who having possessed themselves of all the rest of the Country, called the *Britains*, who lived here by the name of *Wyllys*, which in their Language signifieth as much as *Asians*; because they differed from them both in their Laws and Language: which is the general opinion. Most probable it is, that as the *Britains* derive their Pedigree from the *Gauls* (as before was proved) so they might still retain the name; and were called *Wyllys* by the *Saxons*, instead of *Gauls*: the *Saxons* used in most words *W* for *G*, as *Warr* for *Guerre*, *Warden* for *Guardian*, and the like. And this to be believed the rather, because the *Frenchmen* to this day call the Country *Galles*, and the eldest Son of England, *Le Prince de Galles*: as also that the *Dutch* or *German* (of whom the *Saxons* are a part) do call such Nations as inhabit on the Skirts of France, by the name of *Wallens*.

The ancient Inhabitants herof in the time of the *Romans*, before it had the name of *Wales*, were the *Silures* possessing the Counties of *Hereford*, *Brecknock*, *Radnor*, *Monmouth*, and *Glamorgan*, all Gloucestershire beyond the *Severn*, and the South parts of *Vorcestershire* on the same

side also: their chief Towns, *Ariconium*, now *Hereford*, (not reckoned since the time of Offa, as a part of *VVales*;) *Bulcum*, now *Buelthyn Brecknock*, *Cobannium*, now *Abergavenny*, in *Monmouth*; *Magni*, now *New Radnor*, in the County so named; and *Bovium* now *Bewerton*, in *Glamorgan*. 2. The *Dinets*, possessing *Cardigan*, *Carmarthen*, and *Pembrookshires*, whose chief Towns were *Lovenium*, now *New Castle*, in *Carmarthen*; *Maridunum*, or *Caermarthen* it self; and *Ostodite*, where now stands *S. Davids*, by the *VVelch* called *Menev*, whence that Bishop hath the name of *Menevius* in *Latine*. 3. The *Ordovices*, inhabiting the Counties of *Merioneth*, *Carnarvon*, *Anglesey*, *Denbigh*, *Flint*, and *Montgomery*; with the North part of *VVorcestershire* beyond the River *Severn*, and all *Shropshire*, on the same side of the River. Their chief Towns were *Segontium*, now *Caer Seint*, in *Carmarvonshire*; *Conovium*, now *Convey* in the same County; *Bonium*, where after flood the famous Monastery of *Banchor*, in *Flintshire*; and *Mediolanum*, now *Llanvillin*, in the County of *Montgomery*. By these three Nations was all that Tract possessed, which lieth on the other side of the *Severn*. A very stout and hardy people, and so impatient of the yoke, that two of the three *Legions* which the *Romans* kept constantly in *Britain*, as before is said, were planted in and near this People, the better to contain them in due obedience: that is to say, the second Legion at *Caer Llew* upon *Uk*, of which more anon; and the twentieth at *Deuonana*, where now stands *VVest-Chester*. So difficult a thing it was to make this Nation subject to the power of *Rome*; and no less difficult to bring them under the Command of the *Saxons*: whom they withstood, when all the rest of *Britain* had been conquered by them; and lived to fee their *Villies* overcome by the *Normans*, before themselves had yielded to a Foreign yoke.

The Christian Faith planted amongst the *Britains*, in the time of *Lucius*, they still retained, when all the residue of the *Illud* had been relapsed to *Paganism*; and they retained it not in secret, as afraid to own it, but in a well constituted Church. Insomuch that *Augustine* the *Atok*, when he first Preached the Gospel to the *English Saxons*, found here no fewer than seven Bishops; that is to say, *Herfordensis*, *Tewkesburyensis*, *Banchoresensis*, *Elvynensis*, *VViceciensis*, and *Mowganensis*, (or rather *Menevynensis*;) all which, excepting only *Paterensis*, do still

N 2

remain

The Kings and Princes of Wales, according to the Welch History.

- A. Ch.
 688 1 Ivor, a potent Interloper, upon Cadwallader's departure usurped the Kingdom.
 690 2 Idwallo, or Edwal, Son of Cadwallader, restored into his Fathers Throne.
 720 3 Roderick Malwinioe, the Son of Idwallo.
 755 4 Conan Tiedadethwy, the Son of Roderick.
 820 5 Mervin Orich, in right of Eysylls his Wife, the Daughter of Conan.
 843 6 Roderick Mawre, (who divided Wales into three Estates) the Son of Mervin.
 877 7 Amarawb, Prince of Guynedth, the Son of Roderick Mawre.
 913 8 Edwal Voel Prince of Guynedth, Son of Amarawb; made tributary to Athelstan King of England.
 940 9 Howel Dha, (or the Good) Prince of Debenbarth, and Powys.
 948 10 Teuaf, and Jago, Sons of Edwal Voel, to whom King Edgar did release the Tribute ordained by King Athelstan, to be paid in money, for a tribute of Wolves; of which we spake before when we were in England.
 982 11 Howel, the Son of Teuaf, succeeded in the Kingdom of Wales, his Father being still alive, and of right Prince of Guynedth.
 984 12 Cadwallan, the Brother of Howel.
 986 13 Meredith ap Owen, Prince of Debenbarth.
 992 14 Edwalili, Son of Merick, the Eldest Son of Edwal Voel; which Merick had been pre-terminated, as unfit for Government.
 1003 15 Aeden ap Blethored, an Usurper.
 1015 16 Llewellen ap Sisyllth, descended from Amarawb, the first Prince of Guynedth, or North-Wales.
 1021 17 Jago ap Edwal, Prince of Guynedth, Son of Edwal the third.
 1037 18 Gryffith ap Llewellen, the Son of Llewellen ap Sisyllth, and the Lady Angbarth.
 1061 19 Blethyn, and Rhywallon, Sons of Angbarth, the Daughter of Meredith ap Owen Prince of Debenbarth, by a second Husband.
 1073 20 Trahaern ap Caradoc, Cousin to Blethyn.
 1078 21 Gryffith Prince of Guynedth, Son of Conan, the Son of Jago ap Edwal, one of the Princes of the fame, did Homage to William the Conqueror, and was the last that had the title of King of Wales.
 1137 22 Owen Guinedth Prince of Guinedth, and Sovereign Prince of Wales, Eldest Son of Gryffith.
 1169 23 David ap Owen Prince of Guinedth, the younger Son of Owen Guinedth.
 1194 24 Llewellen, Son of Torwerth, eldest son of Owen Guine's, excluded by David his younger Brother.
 1242 25 David ap Llewellen Prince of Guinedth, Son of Llewellen ap Torwerth.
 1246 26 Llewellen Son of Gryffith, the Brother of David, the last Sovereign Prince of Wales, of the race of Cadwallader; overcome and slain in Battle by King Edward the first, in 1282. as before is said: by means whereof the Principality of Wales was added to the Crown of England.

When King Edward had thus fortunately effected this great business, he gave unto his English Barons and other

Gentlemen of note, many fair Signiories and Estates; as well to reward them for their service in the Conquest, as to engage to many able men, both in purse and power, for the perpetual defence and subjection of it. For the Lordship of Flint, and the Towns and Estates lying on the Sea-coasts: he held them in his own hands, both to keep himself strong, and to curb the welch: and (wherein he dealt like the politick Emperor Augustus) pretending the ease of such as he had there placed; but indeed to have all the Arms, and men of employment under himself only.

This done, he divided Wales into seven Shires, viz. 1. Glamorgan, 2. Caernarvon, 3. Pembroke, 4. Cardigan, 5. Merioneth, 6. Caernarvon, and 7. Anglesey, after the manner of England. Over each of these, as he placed a particular English Lieutenant, so he was very desirous to have one general English Vicegerent, over the whole Body of the welch. But this when they mainly withstood he sent for his VVife, then great with Child, to Caernarvon, where he was delivered of a Son. Upon the news whereof the King assembled the British Lords, and offered to name them a Governour born in Wales, which no man could task. Such one when they had all sworn to obey, he named his young Son Edward; since which time our Kings Eldest Sons are called Princes of Wales. There Invefition is performed by the imposition of a Cap of Estate, and a Coronet on his head that is invested, as a Rite, being the emblem of Government; by putting a Ring of Gold on his finger, to shew him that now he is a Husband to the Country, and a Father to her Children; and by giving him a Patent, to hold the said Principality to him and his Heirs Kings of England. By which words the separation of it from the Crown is prohibited; and the Kings keep in themselves so excellent an occasion, of obliging unto them their eldest Son, when they please. In imitation of this Custom, more ex Anglia translato (saith Mariana) John the first of Castile and Leon, made his Son Henry Prince of the Asturias; which is a Country for craggy and mountainous, that it may not improperly be called the Wales of Spain. And all the Spanish Princes even to these times, are honoured with this Title of Prince of the Asturias.

Notwithstanding this provident care of Edward the first, in establishing his Empire here; and the extrem rigour of Law here used by Henry the 4th, in reducing them to obedience, after the rebellion of Owen Glendower: yet till the time of Henry the 8th, and his Father, (both being extraits from the Welch blood) they seldom or never contained themselves within the bounds of true Allegiance. For whereas before they were reputed as Aliens, this Henry made them (by act of Parliament) one Nation with the English, subject to the same Laws, capable of the same preferments, and privileged with the same immunities. He added also 6 Shires to the former number, out of those Countries which were before reputed as the Borders and Marches of Wales; and inbaid them to send Knights and Burgesses into the English Parliaments: so that the name and language only excepted, there is now no difference between the English and Welch; an happy Union.

The same King Henry established for the ease of his Welch subjects, a Court at Ludlow like unto the ordinary Parliaments in France: wherein the Laws are ministered according to the Fashion of the Kings Courts of Westminster. The Court consisteth of one President who is, for the most part, of the Nobility; and is generally called, the Lord President of Wales; of as many Counsellors as one shall please the King to appoint; one Attorney, one Solicitor;

licitor, one Secretary, and the four Justices of the Counties of Wales. The Town it self (for this must not be omitted) adorned with a very fair Castle, which hath been the Palace of such Princes of Wales, of the English blood; as have come into this Country, to solace themselves among their People. Here was young Edward the 5th, at the death of his Father; and here died Prince Arthur, Eldest son of Henry the 7th: both being sent hither by their Fathers to the same end, viz. by their preference to satise and keep in order the unquiet Welch-men. And certainly, as the presence of the Prince was then a terror to the rebellious, so would it now be as great a comfort to this peaceable people.

What the Revenues of this Principality are, I cannot say; yet we may boldly affirm that they are not very small, by their reasons following, viz. 1. By the Composition which Llewellen, the last Prince of Wales, made with Edward the first: who being Prince of North-wales only, and dispossessed of most of that, was fain to redeem the rest, of the said King Edward, at the price of 50000 Marks (which comes to 10000 pounds of our present money) to be paid down in ready coin; and for the residue to pay 1000 l. per annum. And 2dly, by those two circumstances, in the marriage of the Lady Katherine of Spain, to the above-named Prince Arthur. For first, her Father Ferdinand being one of the warriest Princes that ever were in Europe, giving with her in Dowry 200000 Ducats; required for Joynture, the third part only of this Principality, and of the Earldom of Chester. And secondly, after the death of Prince Arthur, the Nobles of the Realm perswaded Prince Henry to take her to Wife;

that so great a Treasure as the yearly Revenue of her Joynture, might not be carried out of the Kingdom.

The Arms of the Princes of Wales differ from those of England, only by the addition of a Label of three points. But the proper and peculiar device, and which we commonly, though corruptly, call the Princes Armes; is a Coronet beautified with three Orlich Feathers, and inscribed round with ICH DIEN, that is, I serve; alluding to that of the Apostle, The Heir while he is a Child differeth not from a Servant. This Coronet was won by that valiant Prince, Edward the Black Prince, at the Battle of Crecie, from John King of Bohemia; who did there wear it, and whom he there slew. Since which time it hath been the Cognizance of all our Princes.

I will now shut up my discourse of Wales, with that testimony of the people, which Henry the second used in a Letter to Emanuel Emperour of Constantinople; The Welch Nation is so adventurous, that they dare encounter naked with armed men; ready to spend their blood for their Country, and pawn their life for praise: and adding only this, That since their incorporating with the English, they have shewed themselves most loyal, hearty, and affectionate Subjects of the State: cordially devoted to their King, and zealous in defence of their Laws, Liberties and Religion, as well as any of the best of their fellow-Subjects; whereof they have given good proof in these latter times.

There are in Wales,
 Archbishops o. Bishops 4.

The BORDERS.

Before we come into Scotland, we must necessarily pass through that Batable ground, lying betwixt both Kingdoms; called THE BORDERS; the Inhabitants whereof are a kind of military men, subtle, nimble, and by reason of their often skirmishes, well experienced, and adventurous. Once the English Border extended as far as unto the Fryth, or Strait of Edenburgh on the East, and that of Dunbriton on the West (the first Fryth, by the Latines called Badoria and the latter Glota:) betwixt which, where now standeth the Town of Sterling, was an ancient Bridge, built over the River which falleth into the Fryth of Edenburgh; on a Crofs standing whereupon, was writ this Passpori;

I am Free-march as passengers may kei,
 To Scots, to Britains, and to English-men.

But when England groaned under the burden of the Danish oppression, the Scots well husbanded that advantage; and not only enlarged their Borders to the Tweeds, but also took into their hands Cumberland, Northumberland, and Westmerland. The Norman Kings again recovered these Provinces, making the Borders of both Kingdoms to be Tweed, East; the Solway, West; and the Chevin hills in the midst. Of any great wars made on these Borders, or any particular Officers appointed for the defence of them, I find no mention till the time of Edward the first; who taking advantage of the Scots disagreements about the succession of Alexander the third, hoped to bring the Country under the obedience of England. This Quarrel betwixt the two Nations he began, but could not end: the Wars following the Author; so that what Velleins saith of the Romans and Carthaginians, I may as

well say of the Scots and English: for almost 300 years together, *aut bellum inter eos populus, aut belli preparatio, aut insida pax fuit.* In most of these conflicts the Scots had the worst. So that Daniel in his History seemeth to marvel how this Corner of the Ille could breed so many, had it bred nothing but men, as were slain in these wars. Yet in the Reign of Edward the second, the Scots (having twice defeated that unhappy Prince) became so terrible to the English Borders; that an hundred of them would fly from three Scots. It is a custom among the Turks, not to believe a Christian or a Jew complaining against a Turk, except their accusation be confirmed by the Testimony of some Turk also; which seldom happens, is not the least cause why so little Justice is there done to the Christians. In like manner, it is the Law of these Borderers, never to believe any Scots complaining against any English-man, unless some other English-man will witness for him; and so on the other side. *Ex jure quantum inter limitantes rati* (saith Camden in his Elizabeth.) *nullus nisi Scutu in Scutum, nullus nisi Anglus in Anglum, testis admittitur.* This custom making void in this fashion all the infidelities of both sides committed. Besides, there were divers here living, which acknowledged neither King; but sometime were Scots, sometime English, as their present crimes and necessities required protection, or pardon. To keep in this people, and secure their Borders, there were in each Kingdom three Officers appointed, called the Lords Wardens of the Marches: one being placed over the East, the other over the West, the third over the middle Borders. In England, the Wardens of the East Marches had his Seat at Berwick, (a Town of great strength, and which for the convenience of its situation

tion, was the first thing which the *English* took care to defend, and the *Scots* to surmount of which he was also Governor. The *Warden* of the West Marches had his Seat in *Carlisle*: which *Henry* the 8. for that cause well fortified. The *Warden* of the middle Marches had no set place of residence, but was sometimes in one place, sometimes in another, according as occasion required; the

Office being executed for the most part, by the Wardens of the Eastern or Western Marches. But *Imperii medium est, terminus ante fuit*, by the blessed Marriage of the Kingdoms, that being now the middle of one, which was then the bounds of two Empires; these Officers, and the cause of them, the Wars, are quite extinguished.

SCOTLAND.

SCOTLAND is the Northern part of *Britain*, separated from *England* by the River *Tweed* and *Solway*, and the Cheviot Hills, extending from the one to the other. It is in length (according to *Polydore Virgil*) 480 miles, but of no great breadth; there being no place distant from the Sea above 60 miles, and the Country ending like the sharp point of a Wedge. And for the length assigned unto it by *Polydore*, it must be made up by measuring the Crooks and Windings of the shores, every where thrusting out with very large Promontories, and cutting deep Indentures into the Land. For measuring in a straight Line from North to South, the length thereof from *Solway Firth* to the *Straithy-head*, amounteth but unto three hundred and ten Italian miles; and from *Berwick* unto *Straithy-head*, is a great deal shorter. So that there is no such over-light in the Maps of *Britain*, nor such necessity to correct them, as was sometimes thought.

It was once called *Caledonia*, from the *Caledonii* a chief People of it: sometimes *Albania*, from *Albanie* or *Braid Albin*, a principal Province in the North. But the most usual name is *Scotia* or *Scotland*; though the reason of the name be not agreed on. Some fabulous Writers of their own fetch it from *Scota*, the Daughter of an *Egyptian Pharaoh*; of whom more when we come to *Ireland*. Others with better reason (though that none of the belt) from the *Scoti*, *Scitti*, or *Scythia German*, or *Sarmatian* people, of noted fame; whom they will have to fize first on some parts of *Spain*, from thence transplant themselves into *Ireland*; and out of *Ireland* into the *Hebrides* or Western Islands, now parts and members of this Kingdom. The more probable opinion is, that they were no other than mere *Irish*, (whose language, habit, and the most barbarous of their customs, the *Highlanders*, or natural *Scots* do still retain) united in the name of *Scot*, about the declination of the *Roman Empire*: the word *Scot* signifying in their language, a body aggregated into one out of many particulars; as the word *Alman* in the *Dutch*, *Scot illud dicitur*, (saith *Camden* out of *Matthæi de Westmister*) *quod ex diversis rebus in unum acervum aggregatur*. First mentioned by this name in some fragments of *Perphyric* (who lived about the time of the Emperor *Aurelian*, as they are cited by *S. Hieron*); after the death of *Constantine* much spoken of in approved Authors, as the confederates of the *Picts*, in harassing the *Roman Province*.

The whole divided commonly into the *Highlands*, and the *Lowlands*. The *Highlanders* or *Irish Scots* inhabiting the *Hebrides*, and the West parts of the Continent adjoining to them, more barbarous than the *Wild Irish* at this day: not to be civiliz'd (as King *James* observed in his

most excellent *Basilicon Doron*) but by planting Colonies of the more Inland, orderly Scots among them. The *Lowlanders* or *English Scots* (as I well may call them) inhabiting on this side the two *Fyrths* of *Dumblithen* and *Edinburgh*, and the plainer Countries along the *German Ocean*; are the more civil of the two, as being of the same *Saxons* race with the *English*. This is evident, first by their Language, being only a broad Northern *English*, a *Dialect* only of that tongue: 2. By the Testimony of the *Highlanders* themselves, who are the true *Scots*, and speak the old *Irish* language, by whom the *Lowlanders* and the *English* are called by the same name of *Saxons*: 3. By the general consent of all *Historians*, affirming that the Kingdom of the *Northern* or *English Saxons*, beyond *Humber*, extended as far Northwards as the two *Fyrths* before mentioned; and there continued for the space of 300 years: and 4. By the confession of some ingenious Gentlemen of that Nation, who grant it for a probable Tenet. That the *Saxons* and the *Scots* invading *Britain* much about the same time, the *Saxons* might extort the Eastern shore lying next their Country, from the old Inhabitants; as well as the *Scots* did all the Western parts which lay next to *Ireland*, and the *Hebrides* or Western Islands, from whence they first passed into *Britain*.

The Country for the most part, especially beyond the limits of the *Roman Province*, is very barren and unfruitful, not able to afford sustenance for the Natives of it; were they not a people patient of want and hunger; temperate in diet, and not accustomed unto that riot and excess, used commonly in richer and more plentiful Countries. Fruit they have very little, and not many Trees either for Building or for Fuel: the people holding, as in *France*, at the Will of the Lord, and therefore not industrious to build, or plant. Their chief Commodities are coarse Cloth; Fish in great abundance, Hides, Lead, and Coal; of which two last their Mountains do afford some rich undecaying Mines.

The People have been noted by their best Writers, for some barbarous Customs entertained amongst them. One of which was, if any two were displeased, they expected no law, but bang'd it out bravely, one and his kindred, against the other and his: and thought the King much in their common, if they granted him at a certain day to keep the Peace. This fighting they call their *Feids*, a word so barbarous, that were it to be expressed in *Latine* or French, it must be by *Circumlocution*. These deadly Feids, King *James* in his most excellent *Basilicon Doron* adviseth his Son to redress with all care possible; but it pleased God to give him so long a life as to see it in his own days remedied: wherein he got a greater Victory over that stubborn

born People, than ever did any foreign Prince, or any of his Predecessors could do before him; and Admired truly Royal, and worthy himself. Another Custom they had of that nature, that the like was hardly ever heard of amongst the Heathen, and much less in *Christendom*, which took beginning, as the *Scottish Historians* affirm, in the Reign of *Ewen* the third, who is the Fifteenth King in their Catalogue, after the first *Fergus*. This *Ewen* being a Prince much addicted, or wholly rather given over unto lasciviousness, made a Law, That himself and his Successors should have the *Maidenhead*, or first Nights lodging with every Woman, whose Husband held Land immediately from the Crown: and the Lords and Gentlemen of all those whose husbands were their Tenants or Homagers. This was, it seems, the *Knights-service* which men held their Estates by; and continued till the days of *Malcolm Canmor*: who at the request of his Wife *Margaret*, (the was the Sister of *Edgar Abeling*) abolished this Law, and ordained, That the Tenants by way of commutation, should pay unto their Lords a mark in money; which Tribute the *Historians* say is still in force. It was called *Marcheta militaris*: but whether from a *Mark*, a horse in the old *Gallique* (implying the obscene signification of *Equivare*) as Mr. *Selden* thinks; or from *Alasca*, the sum of money by which it was afterwards redeemed, I cannot determine. Certain I am that this last Custom was of such a barbarous and brutish nature, that the Custom of the *Indians* in giving to the *Bramine* the first nights lodging with their Brides; and that of many Savage unconverted Nations in prostituting their wives and Daughters to the lusts and pleasure of their Guests; have not more unchristianity in them, than this of those *Scottish* Christians, if I may call it such.

These Customs shew the ancient *Scots* to be rude and barbarous, partaking little of the civility of the neighbouring Nation: nor are they so broken of the former, but that they are observed by a modern Writer, to be full greedy of revenge where they find means to take it; as also to be a subtle and politic People, inclined to Factions and Seditions amongst themselves; which he that reads their Stories cannot choose but see. A people, as King *James* observeth in his *Basilicon Doron*, ever weary of the present State and desirous of Novelties, accustomed to judge and speak rashly of their Kings and Princes; towards whom they have always carried themselves with such untractableness, that more Kings have been betrayed, murdered and depoyed by the *Scots*, than by all the Nations in the World. But take them in themselves without these relations, and they are said to be an industrious people, capable of all Sciences which they give their minds to, and generally well versed in Grammatical Learning, of which most of their *Gentry* have a smattering. And of most note in point of Learning, have been 1. *Marianus* (surnamed *Scotus*), and 2. *Fedor Batius*, the *Historians*. 3. *John Major*, a well-known Schoolman, for the times before the Reformation. And for the times that followed, 4. *George Buchanan*, an ingenious Poet, but an unkind Statesman; whose History, and Dialogue *De jure Regni*, have wrought more mischief in the World, than all *Marci* works. Not to have been remembered here, but because he was a Pedagogue to 5. King *James*, of most famous memory; whose Printed works declare his large abilities in all kinds of Learning. 6. *Nispius*, the Laird of *Alarichiston*. 7. *S. Barclay*, the Father and the Son. 9. *John Sleat*, the best Antiquary of this Nation. 10. Doctor *John Maxwell*, the late learned Bishop of *Ross*, and my very good friend; besides some others of less note.

The *Christian Religion* was here planted by divers men according to their several Nations, who did here inhabit amongst the *Low Landers*, or *Saxon Scots*, by *Aidan* the

first Bishop of *Lindisfarne*, or *Holy Island*; amongst the *Picts*, inhabiting the South-Eastern parts, by *Ninias*; Bishop of *Candida Cafa*, or *Whit-borne*, in *Galloway*; amongst the *Northern Picts*, An. 555. and finally amongst the *Scots*, by *Palladius* a Deacon of *Rome*, sent to them hither for that purpose by Pope *Celestine*. An. 435. or thereabouts. And for the Reformation of Religion, overgrown with the rust and rubbish of the *Romish Church*, (degenerated from it self in the latter days) it was here made by a strong hand, according to the judgment of *Rites* and others: not taking counsel with the Prelates nor staying the leisure of the Prince as they did in *England*; but turning Prince and Prelate, out of all authority; made by that means, more naturally subject unto alterations than it had been otherwise; or only to be made good by the same violence which first introduced it. 'Tis true, that for a while being in danger of the French; and of necessity to support themselves by the power and favour of the *English*; they bound themselves by a solemn Subscription, to adhere only to the *Rites* and Ceremonies of the Church of *England*, and to observe that form of Worship which was there established. *Religionis cultus, & Ritibus cum Anglis communibus subscripserunt*; as is affirmed by *Buchanan*, their own State-Historian. But no sooner was that danger over, but they found opportunity ever since by practices, and correspondence with that party here, and finally by force of Arms, to thrust their own Constitutions and Form of Worship on the Church of *England*.

As for the Government of the Church, it was originally by Bishops, (as in all parts else) but so as they exercise their Functions and Jurisdictions in all places equally, wherefore ever they come: The Kingdom not being divided into *Dioceses*, till the time of *Malcolm* the third An. 1070. or thereabout. Nor had they any Archbishops till the year 1478. The Archbishop of *Tork* being created and obeyed before that time, as the *Metropolitan of Scotland*. But being once seized in an orderly and constant Hierarchy, they held the same unto the Reformation began by *Knox*; and whence he and his associates approving the *Genevan* Plat-form, took the advantage of the minority of King *James* the Sixth to introduce the *Presbyterial* Discipline, and suppress the Bishops; forbidding them by their own sole authority, to intermeddle any more in matters which concerned the Church; and Contending the Kingdom into *Presbyteries* of their own affigging. And that the King might not be able to oppose their doings, they kept him under by strong hand, imprisoned him at *Sterling*, made him fly from *Edenburgh*, removed from him all his faithful Servants, and seized upon his principal Fortresses: and in a word, so baffled and affronted him upon all occasions, that he was minded many times to have left the Kingdom, and retire to *Perice*, which doubtless he had done, (as I have heard perceived by some of great place and power) had not the hopes of coming at the last to the Crown of *England*, made him stay it out: So that his *Maxim* of No Bishop, no King, was not made at random, but founded on the sad experience of his own condition. And though upon the face of those inconveniences, which that alteration brought upon him, he did afterwards with great both Policy and Prudence, restore again the *Episcopal* Order, and settled it both by *Synodical Acts*, and by Acts of Parliament: yet the same restless spirit breaking out again in the Reign of his Son, An. 1618. did violently eject the Bishops, and suppress the calling and setting up their *Presbyteries* throughout the Kingdom, as in former times.

The famous or miraculous things rather of this Country are, 1. The Lake of *Nieras*, part of whose waters do con-

gral in Winter, and part of them not. 2. That in the Lake of *Lemnos*, being 24 miles in compass, The Fish are generally without Fins, and yet there is great abundance of them. 3. That when there is no wind stirring, the Mar-waters of the said Lake are so tempestuous, that no Mar-caller dares venture on it. 4. That there is a Stone called the *Deaf-stone*, 12 foot high, and 33 Cubits thick; of this rare quality, that a Musket shot off on the one side, cannot be heard by a man standing on the other. If it be otherwise (as he must have a strong Faith who believes these wonders) let *Hector Boetius* bear the blame, out of whom I had it.

Chief Mountains of this Kingdom are the *Cheviot Hills* upon the *Borders*; and Mount *Grampius*, spoken of by *Tacitus*; the safest shelter of the *Picts*, or Northern *Britains* against the *Romans*, and of the *Scots* against the *English*; now called the Hills of *Albany*, or the mountainous Regions of *Braid-Albin*. Out of these springeth the 1. *Tay*, or *Tawa*, the fairest River of *Scotland*, falling into the Sea about *Dundee*, in the East side; and 2. the *Clwyd*, emptying it self into *Dumbrilton Frith*, on the West side of the Kingdom. Other Rivers of note now are, the 3. *Bane*, emptying it self into the *Frith* of *Edenburgh*, on the Banks whereof was fought that fatal Battle of *Bannock-burn*, of which more anon. 4. *Spey*, 5. *Dee*, the *Ocean* of *Polony*: none of them of any long course, by reason that the Country Northward is but very narrow.

In reference to Ecclesiastical Affairs, this Kingdom hath been long divided into 13 Dioceses, to which the Dioceses of *Edenburgh* (taken out of that of *S. Andrews*) have been lately added: and in relation to the *Civil*, into divers *Seneschallies* and *Sheriffdoms*, which being for the most part hereditary, are no small hindrance to the due execution of Justice. So that the readiest way to redress the mischief (as King *James* advised) is to dispose of them as they fall or Elcheat to the Crown, according to the laudable custom (in that case) in *England*.

The greatest Friends of the *Scots*, were the *French*, to whom the *Scots* shewed themselves so faithful, that the *French* King committed the defence of his Person to a selected number of *Scottish* Gentlemen: and so valiant, that they have much hindered the *English* Victories in *France*. And certainly the *French* feeling the smart of the *English* Puissance alone, have continually heartened the *Scots* in their attempts against *England*, and hindered all means of making union betwixt them: as appeared, when they brake the match agreed on, between our *Edward* the sixth, and *Mary*, the young Queen of *Scots*. Their greatest Enemy was the *English*, who overcame them in many battles, seized once upon the Kingdom, and had longer kept it, if the mountainous and inaccessible woods had not been more advantageous to the *Scots*, than their Power: for so much King *James* seemeth to intimate in his speech at *White-hall*, 1607. And though, faith he, the *Scots* had the honour and good fortune never to be conquered, yet were they never but on the defendible side; and may in part thank their hills and inaccessible passages, that saved them from an utter overthrow, at the hands of all them that ever pretended to conquer them. But

Jan cuncti gens una sumus, sic finis in eum:

One only Nation now we are,
And let us so for ever be.

The chief Cities are *Edenburgh* (of old called *Castrum Alatum* in *Latine*, where is the Kings Palace, and the Courts of Justice. It consisteth chiefly of one street extending in length one mile, into which run many pretty

lanes, so that the whole compass may be nigh three miles, extending from East to West on a rising ground, at the Summit or West-end whereof standeth a strong and magnificent Castle, mounted upon a steep and precipitous Rock, which commandeth the Town; supposed to be the *Castrum Alatum*, spoken of by *Polomy*. Under the command or rather the Protection of which Castle, and through the neighbourhood of *Leith*, standing on the *Fryth*, and serving as a Port unto it; and finally by the advantage of the Courts of Justice, and the Court Royal, called *Holy-Rood-House*, it soon became rich, populous, well-traded, and the chief of the Kingdom: but withal factious and seditious, contesting with their Kings, or siding against them upon all occasions. No way to humble them, and keep them in obedience to their Sovereign Lords, but by incorporating *Leith*, indulging it with the Privileges of a City, and removing thither the Seat Royal and the Courts of Judicature, which they more fear than all the Plagues that can befall them. It belonged in former times to the *English Saxons*, (as all the rest of the Country from the *Fryth* to *Berwick*, in whom oppressed by the tyranny of the *Danes*, it was taken by the *Scots* and *Picts*, Anno 800, or thereabouts. 2. *Sterling*, situate on the South-side of the *Forth* or *Fryth*, in the Sheriffdom so called; a strong Town, and beautified withal with a very fair Castle, the birth-place of King *James* the sixth, the first Monarch of Great Britain. Near to which Town, on the banks of the River *Bannock*, happened the most memorable discomfiture that the *Scots* ever gave the *English*: who besides many Lords and 700 Knights and men of note, lost in this Fight (as the *Scottish* Writers do report) 50000 of the common Soldiers (our *English* Historians confess 10000, and too many of that) the King himself (*Edward* the 2.) being compelled to flee for his life and safety. Some of the *Scottish* Writers tell us, that the purer sort of Silver, which we call *Sterling* money did take name from hence; they might as well have told us, that all our Silver *Bullion* comes from *Bullion* in *Luxemburg*, or from the Port of *Bullion* in *France*, the truth being that it took that name from the *English* or Merchants of *East-Germany*, drawn into *England* by King *John* to refine our Coin. 3. *Glasgow*, in *Chindale*, honoured with an Archbishop Sec, and a publick School (to which some give the name of an University) founded here by Archbishop *Turnbull*, Anno 1554. 4. *S. Andrews*, the chief Town of *Fife*, an Archbishop Sec, and an University; by the *Latine* called *Fannus Regulus*; which, and the *English* name, it took from the bones of *S. Andrew* the Apostle, translated first from *Petrus* in *Peloponnesus* where he suffered death, unto *Constantinople*; and thence brought hither by a Monk called *Albanus Regulus*, in the year 378 (if they be not mistaken in the time, who have made the Story). Over which Relicks he is said to have built a Monastery, which grew to be a City: called from the founder *Fannus Regulus*; in honour of the Saint *S. Andrew*. The Bishop hereof is the Metropolitan of all *Scotland*; the City seated on the Ocean, near the fall of the *Eden*, overlooked with a strong and goodly Castle, the Archbishops seat. 5. *Parkland*, in the same Province or *Fife*, beautified with a retiring house of the Kings, resorting thither, often on recess from business, or for the commodity and pleasure of hunting, which for the place affords. 6. *Dundee*, in *Latine*, *Tadunum*, a rich and noted Port at the mouth of the *Tay*, the chief Town of *Angus*. 7. *Aberdon*, at the mouth of the River *Dons*, whence it had the name, (the word *Aber* in the *British* signifying the mouth or influx of a River) an University, and Bishops Sec. 8. *Peebles* or *St. Johns Town*, seated on the *Tay*, but in the middle of the Kingdom; walled and replenished with an industrious people: the chief Town of the Sheriffdom of *Peebles*. 9. *Scots*, on the farther

farther side of the *Tay*, adorned heretofore with a famous Monastery; the usual place for the inauguration of the *Scottish* Kings; the fatal stone, on which they did receive the Crown, (the *Palladium* of the *Scottish* Kingdom) here kept, till the removal of it unto *Westminster*, by King *Edward* the first. Upon which stone there were of old engraven these Verses.

*Non fallat finium, Scotti quocunque locatum
Invenient lapidem, regum timentur ibidem.*

Translated in old Meeter thus:

The *Scots* shall brook that Realm as native ground,
If *Weirds* fail not, where ere this Stone is found.

Most happily accomplished in the Succession of King *James* the sixth, to the Crown of *England*. 10. *Dumbrilton* (*Britannodunum* in the *Latine*), seated in a grassie Plain, at the fall or influx of the River *Levin* into the *Clwyd*, upon two steep and precipitous Rocks, flanked on the West with the said two Rivers, and on the East with a miry Flat, drowned at every full Sea: the strongest hold of all the Kingdom, and thought to be impregnable but by Fire now or Treason, and the chief Town of the West side of *Scotland*; the name hereof communicated to the *Fryth* adjoining.

The Ancient Inhabitants of this Country dwelling within the limits of the *Roman* Province, were the *Gadens*, possessing *Tevisdale*, *Tweeddale*, *March* and *Lathien*, whose chief City was *Castra Alata*, now *Edenburgh*. 1. The *Damii*, dwelling in *Clwydsdale*, *Lemnos*, *Sterling*, and *Menteith*, whose chief City was *Vandunara*, now *Roefraw*; *Lindum*, now *Lindisfarne*. 2. The *Selegos* inhabited in *Liddisdale*, *Tevisdale*, *Eskdale*, *Amundale*, and *Niddisdale*, whose chief place was *Carbanatorigum*, now *Caer-Laverock*; and 4. The *Noemets*, containing *Galloway*, *Carriek*, *Kyle* and *Cunningham*. Principal places of which were; *Lucebopis*, now *Withern*, and *Berigenium*, now *Bargenie*. Without the Province, amongst the *Picts* or barbarous *Britains*, divided generally into *Caledonii* and *Moetae*, the Nations of most Note were, 5. The *Caledonii* properly so called, taking up all *Strathern*, *Argile*, *Cantire*, *Albanie*, *Lorn*, *Peebles*, *Angus*, and *Fife*. 6. The *Vermenes* of *Mernis* and *Mar*. 7. The *Talzalii* of *Bugban*. 8. The *Pacomagi* of *Loquhabre* and *Murray*. 9. The *Canta* of *Ros* and *Sutherland*. 10. The *Contini* of *Cathness*; and 11. The *Cornubii* of *Strathbarn*, the furthest Country Northward of all the Island. Chief Towns of which were, *Tamias*, *Banatia*, *Orea*, *Deonias*, and *Tuesis*, which we know not where to find upon any certainty.

The fortunes of this people, as they related to the *Romans*, hath been shewed before. On the withdrawing of whole Forces, so much hereof as formerly had belonged to that Empire, was possessed by the *Saxons*, the residue thereof, as formerly, by the *Scots* and *Picts*; save that the *Saxons* not content with that which the *Romans* held, made themselves Masters also of the Plain Countries, lying on the *German* Ocean, to which the passage out of *Germany* was both short and easy. By which account, besides those places in the East, they were possessed of the Counties or Sheriffdoms of *Tevisdale*, *Tweeddale*, *March*, *Lathien*, *Liddisdale*, *Enfisdale*, *Eskdale*, *Amundale*, *Niddisdale*, *Clwydsdale*, *Galloway*, *Carriek*, *Kyle*, *Cunningham*, *Lemnos*, and *Sterling*, being the richest and most flourishing part of the modern *Scotland*. The *Scots* for their part had the Counties of *Cantire*, *Argile*, *Braid-Albin*, (or *Albanie*) *Lorne*, *Loquhabre*, and *Strathbarn*, lying on the West and North: the other Northern moorly (except

ing some parts near the Coast of the *German* Ocean possessed by the *Saxons*) containing the now Counties of *Cathness*, *Sutherland*, *Ros*, *Murray*, *Bugban*, *Marer*, *Mern*, *Angus*, *Abal*, *Peebles*, *Fife*, *Strathern* and *Menteith*, being only left unto the *Picts*. From whence the *Saxons* and *Scots* came into these parts: hath been shewn already. And for the *Picts*, (to omit here the refutation of those who will have them to descend from the *Agathyrsi*, a people of *Scythia*) they were no other than such of the natural *Britains*, as never were brought under the *Roman* Empire, but still preserved their Country in its former Liberty; called therefore by *Terrillius*, in accessu *Romanis* loca, as indeed they were: and using still their ancient custom of painting their bodies, after the rest of their Country men had conformed themselves to more civil courses, were by the *Romans* called *Picti*: and by that name first mentioned in the *Fameyger* of *Emmami*, in the time of *Constantine* the Great. They long possessed these parts without an Inmate, even till the year 422, when the *Irish-Scots* wanting room at home, and having formerly possessed themselves of the Western Isles, first set foot in *Britain*: which whom they had continual War, till in the end the *Scots* prevailing, compelled the *Picts* to abandon to them the Western parts, and withdraw themselves into the Eastern. Afterwards growing into better terms with the other, and willing to enlarge their Borders towards the more flourishing *South*, they contracted an *Offensive* and *Defensive* League against the *Britains*; who on all sides, they most miserably tortured, till vanquished and beaten back by the conquering *Saxons*, against whom they contracted a new Confederacy. Taking the advantage of the death of *Ethelbert* King of the *Northumbrians*, and the invasion of the *Danes* on the rest of *England*, they got into their hands all *Berneckia*, or so much of the Kingdom of the *Northumbrians*, as lay on the North of *Tweed*, and *Salway*; reckoned from that time forwards as a part of their Dominions. But this good neighbourhood held not long betwixt these two Nations. It hapned at the last, that *Achaim* King of the *Scots*, married *Fergusia*, Sister unto *Hungus*, King of the *Picts*, and had by her a Son called *Alpine*, who after the death of *Hungus* dying without Issue, and having none of a nearer kindred was in the Judgment of the *Scots*, to succeed in that Kingdom. But the *Picts*, alledging a Law of not admitting *Aliens* to the Crown, chose one *Fergus* of their own Nation, to be their King: with whom *Alpine* contended in a long War, victorious, for the most part, in conclusion slain. The quarrel notwithstanding did remain betwixt the two unfriendly Nations, till at the last, after many bloody battels and mutual overthrows (the *Scots* being for the most part on the losing side) *Konmeth*, the second of that name, vanquished *Dunken*, the last King of the *Picts*, with so great a slaughter of his people, that he extinguished not their Kingdom only, but their very name; passing from that time forwards under that of *Scots*. No mention after this of the *Pictish* Nation; unless perhaps we will believe that some of them passed into *France*; and there, forsooth, subdued that Country which we now call *Picardy*.

As for the Catalogue of the Kings of the *Scots* in *Britain*, I shall begin the same with *Fergus*, the second of that name in the Account of their Historians: leaving out that rabble of 39 Kings (half of them at the least before *Christ* Nativity) mentioned by *Hector Boetius*, *Buchanan*, and others of their *Classick* Authors. Neither shall I offend herein, as I conjecture, the more Judicious and understanding men of the *Scottish* Nation, (and for others I take little care) since I deal no more unkindly with their first *Fergus* and his Successors, than I have done already with our own *Brutus*, and his: The first *Scottish* King that settled

gift, and as many of the *Scots* to advise about it, with the consent of all adjudged it to *John Baliol* Lord of *Galloway*, Son of *John Baliol* and *Doroqueilla* his Wife, Daughter of *Alan Lord of Galloway*, and of the Lady *Margaret*, the eldest Daughter of the said *David*; who having done his homage to the said King *Edward*, was admitted King.

1300 24 *John Baliol*, an English-man, but forgetful both of English birth, and English Favours, invaded the Realm of *England* in Hostile manner, and was taken prisoner by King *Edward*. Who following his blow, made himself Master of all *Scotland*, which he held during the rest of his life, and had here his *Chancery*, and other Courts. 6.

1306 25 *Robert Bruce*, Son of *Robert Bruce*, Lord of *Annandale* (Competitor with *Baliol* for the Crown of *Scotland* in Right of *Isabel* his Mother, the second Daughter of *David Earl of Huntingdon*, and consequently a degree nearer to the King deceased than *Baliol* was, though descended from the elder Sister) was crowned King in the life-time of King *Edward* the first; but not fully possessed thereof until after his death; confirmed therein by the great defeat given to *Edward* the second, at the fight of *Bannock-burn*, not far from *Sterling*, spoken of before. But he being dead, *Ann* 1322. *Edward* the third confirmed the Kingdom on

1332 26 *Edward Baliol*, Son of *John Baliol*, rejected by the *Scots* for adhering to firmly to the English; who thereupon harried *Scotland* with fire and Sword. 10.

27 *David Bruce* the Son of *Robert*, restored unto his Fathers Throne by the power of the *Scots*, and a great enemy to the English. Invading *England* when King *Edward* was at the siege of *Calice*, he was taken Prisoner by *Q. Philip*, the Wife of that King, and brought to *Windsor*, where he was Prisoner for a while with King *John of France*. Released at last on such conditions as best pleased the Conqueror. 29.

1371 28 *Robert II.* surnamed *Stewarts*, King of the *Scots* by descent from the eldest Sister of *David Bruce*, was extracted also from ancient Princes of *Wales* (as was said before): restoring thereby the British blood to the Throne of *Scotland*.

1390 29 *Robert III.* Son of *Robert* the second, called *John* before he came to the Crown; in which much over-awed by his own Brother the Duke of *Albany*, who had an aim at it for himself. 16.

1406 30 *James*, Son of *Robert* the third, taken Prisoner by King *Henry* the fourth of *England*, as he was crossing the Seas for *France*, to avoid the practices of his Uncle. Restored unto his Country in the beginning of the Reign of King *Henry* the sixth, after 18 years absence, he was at last most miserably murdered by the Earl of *Arbol*, claiming a right unto that Crown. 42.

1448 31 *James II.* slain by the English at the siege of *Roxburgh* Castle. 24.

1462 32 *James III.* slain by his own rebellious Subjects. 29.

1491 33 *James IV.* married *Margaret* the eldest Daughter of King *Henry* the seventh, but at

the soliciting of the French, (against the Peace between the Nations) he invaded *England* (in the absence of King *Henry* the eighth) with 100000 men: but was met by the Earl of *Surry* (having 26000 men in his Army) nigh unto *Floeden*, where he was slain, together with two Bishops, twelve Earls, fourteen Lords, and his whole Army routed. 23.

1514 34 *James V.* Son of *James* the fourth, and the Lady *Margaret*, kept for a time such good correspondence with the English, that in the year 1536, he was created Knight of the Order of the Garter. But afterwards inheriting his Fathers hatred against them, he invaded their Borders in the year 1542: and was met by the Lord *Wharthen*, then *Warden of the West Marches*. The Battels being ready to joyn, one Sir *Oliver Sinclair* the Kings Favourite, though otherwise of no great Paragance, was by the Kings directions proclaimed General: which the Scottish Nobility took in such indignation, that they threw down their Weapons, and suffered themselves to be taken prisoners; there being not one man slain on either side. The principal Prisoners were the Earls of *Glorcarn*, and *Cassiles*; the Barons *Maxwell*, *Oliphant*, *Somervell*, *Flemming*, with divers others: besides many of the principal Gentry. 28.

1542 35 *Mary*, the Daughter and only lawfully-begotten Child of *James* the fifth, succeeded in her Cradle unto the Throne; promised in Marriage to King *Edward* the sixth of *England*; but by the power of the *Hamilton* carried into *France*, where married to *Francis*, then *Dauphin*, afterwards King of the French, of that name the second. After whose death, she married *Henry Lord Darnley*, eldest Son of *Matthew Earl of Lennox*, Outcast of her Dominions by a potent Faction, whereafter a tedious imprisonment she was put to death in *Fotheringhay* Castle in *Northamptonshire*, and interred at *Peterburgh*, *Ann* 1506.

1567 36 *James VI.* the Son of *Mary Queen of Scots*, and of *Henry Lord Darnley*, was crowned King in his Cradle also. He married *Ann*, the Daughter of *Christian* the third, King of *Denmark*; was chose of the Order of the Garter, *Ann* 1590. and succeeded Queen *Elizabeth* in the Realm of *England*, *March* 24. *Ann* 1602. And here I cannot omit the prudent fore-sight of *Henry* the seventh, who having two Daughters, bestowed the Eldest (contrary to the mind of his Council) on the King of *Scots*, and the younger on the King of the French: that so, if his own Issue male should fail, and that a Prince of another Nation must inherit *England*; then *Scotland* as the lesser Kingdom would depend upon *England*, and not *England* wait on *France*, as upon the greater. In which succession of the *Scots* to the Crown of *England*, the Prophecy of the fatal Stone, (spoken of before, did receive accomplishment. And so perhaps might that ascribed in the *Polychronicon* to an holy Anchor living in King *Edward* the time, which is this, *Englithmen, for that they women them to drunkennels, to treason, and to retchlessnes of Gods house, first by Danes, and then by Normans, and the*

third time by *Scots*, whom they holden least worth of all, they shall be overcome. Then the world shall be unstable, and so divers & variable, that the instability of thoughts shall be betokened by many manner diversity of Clothing. For on this Union of the Kingdoms, this Prediction seems to have been accomplished; the circumstances mentioned in the same so patly agreeing, and the *Scots* never subduing *England*, but by this blessed Victory. Unless perhaps the Accomplishment thereof be still to come; or that it was indeed more literally fulfilled in the great Defeat at *Bannock-burn*, in which was slain 50000 English, as the Scottish Writers do report, and the name of *Scot* growing so terrible for a time, that an hundred of the English would flee from three *Scots*, as before was noted.

The Revenues of this Crown *Boterus* estimeth at 100000 Crowns, or 300000 sterling, and it is not like that they were much more, if they came to that: here being not commodity in this Kingdom to allure strangers to Traffick: the Domain or Patrimony of the Crown, but mean; the Country in most places barren, and many of the Subjects, those especially of the Out-Isles, and the Western parts, so extremely barbarous, that they add very small improvement to the publick Treasury.

And answerable to the shortness of their standing Revenue, were their Forces also. For though the Country be very populous, and the men generally patient both of cold and hunger, and inured to hardship; yet in regard the Kings hereof were not able to maintain an Army under pay, their Forces seldom held together above 40 days; and then, not a great deal sooner, did disband themselves. For the Nobility and Gentry being bound by the Tenure of their Lands, to serve the King in his Wars, and to bring with them such and so many of their *Passals*, as the present service did require; used to provide for themselves and their followers, tents, money, victuals, provision of all with nothing. Which being spent, they usually disbanded, and went home again, without attending long on the Expedition. Which I conceive to be the reason, why the *Scots* in the time of hostility betwixt the Nations, made only sudden & tumultuary incursions into *England*, without any thing of special moment: and that they have not acted any thing elsewhere in the way of Conquest, but only as Mercenaries to the French and other Nations that have hired them. And though it be affirmed that the Army of King *James* the 4th. when he invaded *England* in the time of King *Henry* the Eighth. (being then in *France*) consisted of 100000 fighting men; yet this I look on only as an argument of their populosity: few of those men being armed or trained up to service, and therefore easily diffracted by a far less Army. It's true that in the year 1645, the Scottish Covenanters raised an Army consisting of 18000 Foot, and 2000 Horse, and 1000 Dragoons; with Arms, Artillery, and Ammunition correspondent to it: which was the gallantest Army, and the best appointed, that ever that Nation did set out in the times foregoing. But then it is as true withal, that this Army was maintained and payed by two Houses of the Parliament of *England*, at the rate of 30000 l. per man, and an advance of 100000 l. before-hand, the better to invite them to embrace the action, and prepare necessities for it, without any charge unto themselves. And though the Army which they sent into *England* above five years after, under *James Duke Hamilton* of *Arran*, was little inferior unto this number, but far superior to it both in Horse & Arms, and other necessary appointments: yet it is well known, that the *Scots* brought nothing but their own bodies to compound that Army; the

Horse and Arms being such as they had gotten out of *England* in the former War.

In point of reputation amongst Foreign Princes, the Kings of the *Scots*, and their Ambassadors and Agents, had place in all General Councils, and Ecclesiastical Assemblies, before those of *Castile*: and by the Statutes of late times, have been reckoned (with the Kings of *England*, *France*, and *Spain*) for absolute Monarchs. But I conceive that this was only since the first years of King *Edward* the third, when they had quitted their subjection and vassalage to the Crown of *England*. For that anciently the *Scots* were Homagers to the Kings of *England*, may be apparently demonstrated by these following Arguments: 1. By the Homages, and other services, and duties, done by the Kings of the *Scots* unto those of *England*: *Malcolm* the third doing Homage unto *William* the Conqueror; as *William*, one of his Successors, did to *K. Henry* the second: and that not only for the three Northern Counties, or the Earldom of *Huntingdon* (as by former pretended) but for the very Crown it self: *Kenneth* the third, being also one of those eight Tributary or Vassal Kings, which rowed King *Edgar* over the *Dee*, as before was noted. 2ly, By the interposing of King *Edward* the first, and the submission of the *Scots* to that interposing, in determining the controversy of succession betwixt *Bruce* and *Baliol*: as in like case, *Philip* the 4th. adjudged the Title of *Artois*, which was holden of the Crown of *France*, and then in question betwixt the Lady *Maud*, and her Nephew *Robert*; or as King *Edward* the third, in the right of the said Crown of *France*, determined of the controversy betwixt *John Earl of Montford*, and *Charles of Blois*, for the Dukedom of *Bretagne*. 3ly, By the confession and acknowledgement of the Prelates, Peers, and other the Estates of *Scotland*, subscribed by all their hands and Seals in the Roll of *Ragman*; wherein they did acknowledge the superiority of the Kings of *England*, not only in regard of such advantages as the Sword had given him, but as of his original and undoubted right. Which Roll was treacherously delivered into the hands of the *Scots*, by *Roger Mortimer Earl of March*, in the beginning of the Reign of King *Edward* the third. 4ly, By the tacit concession of the Kings themselves, who in their Coins, Commissions, and publick Instruments, assume not to themselves the Title of Kings of *Scotland*, but of *Reges Scottorum*, or the Kings of the *Scots*: and thereby intimating that though they are the Kings of the Nation, yet therein some superior Lord (King Paramount as we may call him) who hath the Royalty of the Land. 5ly, By the Judgments and Arrests of the Courts of *England*, not only in the times of King *Edward* the first, but in some times since. For when *William Wallis* a Scottishman by birth, and the best Soldier of that Country, was taken Prisoner and brought to *London*, he was adjudged to suffer death as a Traitor: which had been an illegal and unrighteous judgment, had he been a Prisoner of War, and not looked on by the Judges as a Subject to the Crown of *England*. The like done in the case of *Simon Frezill*, another of that Kingdom in the same Kings Reign. In like manner, in the time of *K. Edward* the third, it was resolved by the Court, in the Lord *Beaumonts* case, when it was objected that one of the Witnesses was a *Scot*, and therefore as an Alien not to give his evidence; that his testimony was to be allowed off, because the *Scots* in the Law of *England* did not go for Aliens. And when one indicted for a Rape in the 13th. of Queen *Elizabeth* the first, desired a *Medietatem Lingue*, because he was a *Scotchman*, &c. to an Alien; it was denied him by the Court, because the *Scots* were not reputed here as Aliens; but as Subjects rather. So also, when *Robert Umfraville*, Lord of *Kyme* was summoned to the Parliament of *England*, in

the Reign of King Edward the third, by the name of Robert Earl of Angus, (which is a dignity in Scotland,) and after in a Writ against him was called only by his own name of *Umfraville*, without any addition of that honour; the Writ was judged to abate: which I conceive the learned Judges had not done, if Scotland had not been reputed to be under the Vassalage of the Kings of England, 6. and lastly, by a Charter of Lands and Arms, (which I have in my custody) granted by King Edward the first, in the last year of his Reign, to Peter Dodge of Stoworth in the County of Chester, one of the Ancestors of my Mother: in which it is expressed, that the said Lands and Arms were conferred upon him by that King, for his eminent services, *encontre son grand Enemy & Rebel, Balioi, Roy d'Escoffe & vassal de Angleterre*; that is to say, against his great Enemy and Rebel Balioi King of Scotland, and Vassal of England. A thing so clear, that if King James had not been extremely tender of the honour of his Native Country, he needed not to have put his Lawyers to the trouble of a New Invention, in hammering the Case of the *Post-nati* for him; to make the *Scots* inheritant unto Lands in England. The acknowledgment and *Recover* of their old Subjection would have served his turn. But of this argument enough, and perhaps too much. I only add, that upon conference which I once had with an honourable person of that Kingdom of Scotland employed unto the Court in a business of no mean consequence to the peace and quiet of his Country: I found him so sensible of the inconveniences of their present Government, by reason of the Kings absence, and the frequent divisions and partialities of his Council there; that he confessed that Nation could be never rich or happy, till they were made a Province of the English Empire; and governed by a *Vice-Roy*, as Ireland was.

IRELAND.

IRELAND is environed on all sides with the Ocean; parted from Britain by a violent and unruly Sea, called S. Georges Chancel. Situate to the West of Britain, next unto which it is the biggest Island of Europe, containing in length 300, and in breadth 120 miles: and is seated under the 8th. and 10th. *Climates*, the longest day being 18 hours and an half in the Southern, and 17 hours 3 quarters in the Northern parts. It was once called *Scotia*, from the *Scots* who did there inhabit; and *Scotia Minor*, to difference it from Scotland, in the Isle of Britain. But the general name hereof is Ireland; by the Latins called *Hibernia*, by the Greeks, *Iernia*. And though some frame a wretched *Erynnia* from *Iernus*, a Spanish Captain; and some from *Inaulph*, bites a supposed Duke hereof; as others, ab *Hyberno aere*, the Winter-like and inclement air: yet probably the name proceeded from *Erinland*, which signifies in their own language a Western land. And yet I must not pretermitt the *Erynn* given us by *Bochart*, (more near the name than most of his other Fancies) who will have it called *Hibernia*, from *Ibernia*, a Phœnician word, signifying the furthest Habitation: there being no Country known amongst the Ancients, which lay West of Ireland.

Their own *Chronicles*, or *Fables* rather, tell us, how *Cesarea*, *Nidus* Nece, inhabited here before the Flood;

The Principal Order of Knighthood in this Kingdom was that of S. Andrew, instituted by *Uingus*, King of the *Picts*, to encourage his Subjects in the War against King *Arthellane* of England. The Knights did wear about their necks a Collar, interlaced with Thistles, with the picture of St. Andrew appendant to it: the Motto *Nemo me impune lacessit*. It took this name because after the Battle, *Hungary* and his Souldiers went all barefoot to S. Andrews, and there vowed that they and their Posterity would henceforth use his Cross as their Ensign (which is a Saltire *Argent* in a Field *Azure*) whensoever they take in hand any warlike enterprise.

2. But this Order being expired many Ages since, there is now no Order of Knight-hood in it, (except *Knights Bachelor*) but that of *Nova Sentia*; ordained by King James, An. 1622. for the planting of that Country by *Scottish* Colonies; in imitation of the Orders of Barons in England, for the plantation of *Ulster*. Hereditary, as that also is; but the Knights hereof distinguished by a Ribband of *Orange-Tawney*.

The Arms are *Sol*, a Lion Rampant *Mars*, within a double Tressure counter-flowered: which Tressure counter-flowered was added to the Lion by *Albain* King of the *Scots*, at what time he contracted the League with *France*; signifying (saith *Helio Boetius* one of their Historians) *Francorum opibus Leonem exinde munierunt*; that the *Scotch* Lion should be guarded by the riches of *France*.

Reckoned in Scotland, with
the Isles of, &c.
Archbishops 2. Bishops 12.

Universities two,
S. Andrews. Aberdeen.

and savage Customs, it being a constant course amongst them, when they were delivered of a man-child, to put some meat into the mouth of it, on the point of a Sword, withering therewith it might not dye but in the midst of Arms, and the heat of Battle. Both sexes used to trim themselves with the Teeth of *Fishes*, white as the driven Snow, or the polished Ivory; and therein placed the greatest part of their pride and bravery.

Nor are the modern *Irish* much abhorrent from such barbarous customs, as plainly shew from what Original they descend; altered but little by converse with more civil Nations. Of natural constitution generally strong and nimble of body; haughty of heart, careless of their lives, patient in cold and hunger, implacable in enmity, constant in love, light of belief, greedy of glory; and in a word, if they be bad, you shall no where find worse; if they be good, you shall hardly meet with better. The Diet, especially of the meer *Irish*, is for the most part, on herbs, roots, better mingled with Oat-flower, milk, and beef-broth: eating flesh many times without bread, which they digest with *Osgueagh*; and give their bread-corn to their horses instead of *Provender*. More particularly, those of the richer sort in all parts, and of all sorts those which inhabit within the *Pale* (as they themselves call it) and in such places where the English Discipline hath been entertained; conformable to civility, both in behaviour and apparel: The *Kernes* (for by that name they call the wild *Irish* of the poorer and inferior sort) most extremely barbarous; not behaving themselves like *Christians*, scarcely like men. All of them so tenacious of their ancient customs, that neither Power, nor Reason, nor the sense of the inconveniences which they suffer by it, can wean them to desert or change them. A pregnant evidence whereof, is their use of *Ploughing*, not with such gears or harness, as in other places; but by tying the hindmost hortes head to the tail of the former; which makes the poor Jades draw in a great deal of pain; makes them unserviceable by the soon losing of their Tails, and withal is a course of so slow a dispatch, that they cannot break up as much ground in a week as a good Team well harnessed would perform in a day; yet no persuasion hath been able to prevail upon them for the changing of this hurtful and ridiculous custom. And when the Earl of *Straford*, the late Lord *Deputy* had damned it by act of Parliament, and laid a penalty on such as should after use it: the people thought it such a grievance, and so injurious to the Nation, that amongst other things demanded towards a Pacification of the present troubles, their *Agents* and *Commissioners* insisted eagerly on the abrogation of this Law. An humour like to this in the point of *Husbandry*, we shall hereafter meet with in another place. Near of kin to which, is a lazie custom that they have of burning their straw (rather than put themselves to the pains to thresh it) by that means to part it from the Corn. From which no Reason can dissuade them, nor Persuasions win them. They have among them other customs as absurd though less inconvenient: as placing a green bush, on *May-day*, before their doors; to make their kine yield the more milk; kneeling down to the *New-Moon* as soon as they see it, desiring her to leave them in as good health as she found them; and many others of like nature.

They use a language of their own, but spoken also in the West of Scotland, and the *Hebrides* or Western Islands which though originally *British*, or a Dialect of it, by reason of their intermixture with *Norwegians*, *Danes*, *Essterlings*, or *Ogts-men*, and English *Saxons*; hath no affinity with the *Welsh*, for ought I can learn.

The Christian Faith was first preached among them by S. Patrick, affirmed to be the Nephew of S. Martin of Tours, Anno 435. Reformed in the more civil parts,

and the English Colonies, according to the platform of the Church of England: but the *Kernes*, or natural wild *Irish*, (and many of the better sort of the Nation also) either adhere unto the Pope, or to their own superstitious fancies, as in former times. And to say truth, it is no wonder that they should: there being no care taken to instruct them in the Protestant Religion: either by translating the Bible, or the English Liturgy, into their own Language, as was done in *Wales*, but forcing them to come to Church to the English Service, which the people understand no more than they do the Mass. By means whereof the *Irish* are not only kept in continual ignorance, as to the doctrine and devotions of the Church of England, and others of the *Protestant* Churches: but those of *Rome* are furnished with an excellent argument, for having the Service of the Church in a Language which the common Hearers do not understand. And therefore I do heartily commend it to the care of the State (when these dissenters are composed) to provide, that they may have the Bible, and all other publick means of *Christian* instruction and devotion in their natural tongue.

The Soil of it self is abundantly fruitful, but naturally fitter for grafs and pasturage, than it is for Tillage: as may be seen in such places where the industry of man is aiding to the natural goodness of the Soil. But where that wanteth, the Country is either over-grown with Wood, or encumbered with vast Bogs, and unwelshom Marshes; yielding neither profit nor pleasure unto the Inhabitants. In some places, as in the County of *Armagh*, so rank and fertile, that the laying of any soil or compost on it, doth abate its fruitfulness, and proves the worst Husbandry that can be.

It hath been anciently very famous for the Piety and Religious lives of the Monks. Amongst whom I cannot but remember *Columbus*, and of him this memorable *Apologum*: when offered many preferments to leave his Country, he returned this Answer, *It becomes not them to embrace other mens goods, who for Christs sake had forsaken their own*. Of no less piety, but more eminent in point of Learning, was *Richard Fitz-Raffe*, Archbishop of *Armagh*, commonly called *Armacanus*, who flourished about the year 1350. A declared enemy of the Errors and corruptions of the Church of *Rome*.

It is affirmed of this Island, that (amongst other Privileges which it hath above other Islands) it fostereth no venomous Serpent, and that no such will live here, brought from other places. Hence of her self we find her speaking in the Poet.

*Illo qui sunt Graiis Glacialis Hibernia dicta;
Cui Deus, & melior verum nascuntur Origo;
Ius commune dedit cum Creta aliisque Tonantis,
Angues ne nostris disjunctum Phisla in oris.*

I am that Island which in times of old
The Greeks did call *Hibernia*, icy-cold
Secured by God and Nature from this fear,
Which gift was given to *Crete*, *Joves* Mother deary,
That poisonous Snake should never here be bred,
Or dare to hiss, or hurtful venom spread.

The other miracles of this Island are, 1. That there is a Lake in the County of *Armagh*, into which if one thrust a piece of wood, he shall find that part of it which remaineth in the Mud to be turned Iron; and that which is in the Water, to be turned into a Whet-stone: richly deserved by him, if the tale be false, who did first report it. 2. That the Kine will yield no milk, if their Calves be not by them; or at least their Calves-skins stuffed with straw or hay. It is said also, that all the breed of this Country

are of less size than they be in England, except Women and Grey-hounds, and those much bigger than with us.

As for the *Clergy* of this Country, they have been little beholding to their *Lay-Patrons* in former times: some of their Bishops being so poor, that they had no other Revenues than the Pasture of two milch-Beasts. And so far had the Monasteries and Religious Houses been invaded by Appropriations, the Churches Rights; that of late times in the whole Province of Connaught, the whole stipend of the Incumbent was not above 40 shillings, in some places not above 16. So that the poor Irish must needs be better fed than taught: for *ad revivendum Beneficiorum necessarium sequitur ignorantia Sacerdotum*. Poor Benefices will be fitted with ignorant Priests, said *Panormitan* rightly. But this remedied in part by his Sacred Majesty King CHARLES, the second Monarch of Great Britain, who liberally (at the suit of the late Lord Archbishop of Canterbury) restored unto this Church all the Improvements and Portions of *Tithes*, which had been velted in the Crown. An action of most singular Piety, and Princely Bounty.

Principal Rivers of this Country, are. 1. The *Shannon* (the *Senar* of *Ptolemy*) which arising in the Mountains of *Leitrim* in the County of *Connaught*, and making many fair Lakes as it passeth forwards; loseth it self after a course of 200 miles (of which 60 Navigable) in the Western Ocean. 2. The *Liff*, by *Ptolemy* called *Liburnus*, neighboured by the City of *Dublin*. 3. *Avonbeg*, supposed *Black Water*, as the English call it. 4. *Slane*, supposed to be the *Medona* of the ancient Writers. 5. The *Shawne*. 6. The *Boyne*, &c. Of which, and others of like note, take this following Catalogue out of the Canto of the Marriage of the *Thames* and *Medway* in the Faery Queen.

There was the *Liff* rowling down the lea,
The sandy *Shannon*, the Bony *Avonbeg*,
The spacious *Shannon*, spreading like a Sea,
The pleasant *Boyne*, the fishy-fruitful *Bann*,
Swift *Avonbeg*, which of the Englishman
Is called *Black Water*; and the *Liff* deep,
Sad *Trent* that once his people over-ran,
Strong *Auld* tumbling from *Slaweg* steep,
And *Maullo* mine, whose waves I whilom taught to
weep.

There also was the wide-embayed *Mayne*.
The pleasant *Bandon* crown'd with many Wood;
The spreading *Lee*, that like an Island fair
Inclodeth *Cork*, with his divided flood;
And bateful *Oure*, late stain'd with English blood,
With many more;

So the renowned Spencer in his Canto of the marriage of
Thames and *Medway*.

But besides these Rivers, this Island is in most places well stored with Lakes, yielding great plenty of Fish to the parts adjoining. The principal of which, 1. *Lough-erne*, containing 15 miles in breadth, and 30 miles in length; shaded with Woods, and so replenished with Fish, that the Fishermen complain of too much abundance, and the often breaking of their Nets. It hath also in it many Islands, one most remarkable for the strange and horrid noises which are therein heard, called therefore by the Vulgar, *St. Patrick's Purgatory*. As much as big as this is. 2. The Lake of *Carles*, which loseth it self in the Sea not far from *Galway*. A lake of 26 miles in length, and four in breadth: said to have in it 30 Islets,

abounding with Pine-Trees. 3. *Lough-Foyle*, supposed to be the *Legia* of *Ptolemy*. 4. *Lough-Engab*, out of which the River *Ronne*, abundantly well stored with Salmon, hath its first Original. And besides these and many others of less note, there are said to be three Lakes in the Province of *Meath*, not far asunder, and having an intercourse of waters: but of so different a temper, that the Fish which are proper to the one, (for each of them hath its proper and peculiar sorts) will not live in the other: but either die, or by some secret conveyances, find a way to their own Lake out of which they were brought.

It was divided anciently into five Provinces, each one a Kingdom of it self, that is to say; 1. *Leinster*, 2. *Meath*, 3. *Ulster*, 4. *Connaught*, and 5. *Munster*: but of late time the Province of *Meath* is reckoned for a Member or part of *Leinster*.

1. *LEINSTER*, by the Latines called *Legenia*, hath on the East, the *Irish* Channel, (commonly called *S. Georges* Channel) by which parted from the Isle of Great Britain; on the West, the River *Newrie*, (*Newas*, as the Latine call it) which divides it from *Munster*; on the North, the Province of *Meath*; and the main Ocean on the South. The Soil more fruitful generally than the rest of Ireland, because better cultivated and manured, as having been longest in the possession of the English: from whom a great part of the Inhabitants derive themselves, and for that reason more conformable to the civilities and habit of the English Nation. Well watered, besides a large Sea coast, with many fair and pleasant Rivers, the principal whereof, 1. The *Barrow*, called in Latine *Bergus*; 2. The *Newrie*, 3. The *Shannon*, 4. The *Liff*, (the *Liburnus* of *Ptolemy*) neighbouring *Dublin* the chief City.

It containeth the Counties of 1. *Dublin*, 2. *Kilkenny*, 3. *Caterlough*, 4. *Kildare*, 5. *Leafe*, or *Queens-County*; 6. *Ophalie*, or *Kings County*, and 7. *Wexford*: in which are comprehended 34 Towns of note, and 88 Castles well fortified, and able to make good resistance against an Enemy, the English being forced to fortifie themselves in their Plantations with strong holds and fortresses against the incursions of the Natives.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Dublin*, supposed to be the *Phlana* of *Ptolemy*: by the Irish called *Bale-digh*, because, being seated in a fenny and moorish soil, it was built on piles, as the word doth signify in that language. Situate at or near the mouth of the River *Liff*, which affordeth it a commodious Haven, but that the entrances thereof are very times encumbered with heaps of sand. The City very rich and populous, as being the Metropolis of all the island, the Seat of the Lord Deputy, an Archbishop See, and a University; besides the benefits redounding from the Courts of Justice. In those respects well fortified against all emergencies: and adorned with many goodly buildings, both private and publick. The Principal of which, are the Castle, wherein the Lord Deputy resideth, built by *Henry Landow* once Archbishop here: a College founded by *Queen Elizabeth* to the honour, and by the name of the blessed *Bartholomew*; the Cathedral Church dedicated to *St. Patrick*, the Apostle of the Irish Nation; a fair Collegiate Church called *Christ Church*, besides thirteen others dedicated to Parochial services. Being destroyed almost to nothing in the Danish Wars, it was re-edified by *Harold*, surnamed *Harsinger*, King of the *New-Norwegians*, then Masters of most parts of the Island; and after the flight of it to the Crown of England, was peopled with a Colony of *Brifol* men. 2. *Wexford*, or *Verford*, the Metropolis of *Ptolemy*, situate on the mouth of the River *Slane*, sup-

posed to be the *Medona* of the same Author, the first of all the Towns in Ireland which received a Colony of English; 3. *Kilkenny*, on the River *Newrie*, the chief Seat of the Bishop of *Offory*, and the fairest Town of all the Islands: so called *quasi Cella Canice*, the Cell or Monastery of *Canice*, a man of great renown for piety in these parts of the Country. 4. *Killare* an in-land Town also, and a Bishop See; but of more note for giving the Title of an Earl to the ancient Family of the *Fitz-Geralds*, of long time honoured with this Title. One of which being much complained of to King *Henry* the 8th, as a man of too unquiet and turbulent a nature, that his Adversaries closed their charge against him with this expression, *Finally, all Ireland cannot rule this Earl*; the King replied, that then this Earl should rule all Ireland; and so for his selfs sake made him Lord Deputy of the Kingdom. 5. *Rosse*, once populous, well traded, and of large circumference, now a ruin only; nothing remaining but the Walls, which were built by *Isabel*, the Daughter of *Richard Strongbow*, Earl of *Pembroke*, the fortunate Conqueror of this Island for King *Henry* the second. 6. *Philips Town*, the principal of the County of *Upshire*, or *Kings County*; so called in honour of King *Philip*; as 7. *Mariburg*, the chief of *Leafe*, or the *Queens County*, was in honour of Queen *Mary*. 8. *Leighlin*, a place of great importance, well walled and fortified against the incursions of the Irish, by the Lord Deputy *Bellingham*. 9. *Caterlough*, commonly but corruptly *Carlow*, a Town of great strength, and the chief of that County. 10. *Kesh*, not otherwise of note, but that it is conceived to be the *Rheba* of *Ptolemy*.

2. *METH*, by the Latines called *Media*, by *Ciraldus*, *Midia*; because situate in the midst of the Island, hath on the South *Leinster*; on the West *Connaught*; on the North, *Ulster*, on the East, the *Irish* Sea, or *S. Georges* Channel. A small, but rich and pleasant Province: well stocked with people and stored with all things necessary for their sustentation; and for a sweet and wholesome air not inferior to any. Divided into three Counties only, that is to say, 1. *East-Meth*, 2. *West-Meth*, and 3. *Longford*; containing 13 Towns of note, and 14 Castles of good esteem. By reason of which strength, it is called by some Writers, the Chamber of Ireland.

Towns of most consequence herein, are 1. *Trim*, the chief Towns of the County of *East-Meth*, the ancient Barony of the *Laciers*; possessed in former times of a fair Revenue in this County, and the Lords of the greatest part of *Ulster*. 2. *Tredah*, more properly *Drogheda*, situate on the River *Bee* on the edge of *Ulster*, to which Province belongs so much of the Town as lieth on the North-side of that River: a very fair and populous City, as well by art as Nature very strongly fortified, and furnished with a large and commodious Haven. It took the name of *Drogheda*, from the Bridge there built upon the River for the conveyency of passage (as the word signifies in that language) and therefore called *Pontana* by some Latine Writers. 3. *Molings*, the chief Town of *West-Meth*. 4. *Delvin*, in the same County also, the Barony of the *Nugents*, an ancient Family in this Part. 5. *Longford*; of most note in the County so named, but not else observable.

As for the Fortunes of this Province (for *Leinster* since the first Conquest of it, hath been inseparably annexed to the Crown of England) it was first granted in Fee-Farm by King *Henry* the second, to *Hugh Lacy*, a man of great merit and employment in the Conquest of Ireland; who left it unto *Walter* his younger Son. By *Margaret* and *Matilda*, the Nieces of this *Walter* by his Son *Gilbert*, one moiety hereof came to the *Mortimers* Earls of *March*,

and in their right unto the Crown in King *Edward* the Fourth; and the other moiety to the *Pevelins*, by whom dispersed and scattered into divers Families. Accompted for one County only till the time of King *Henry* the 8th, in whose Reign it was divided into *East-Meth*, and *West-Meth*; to which the County of *Longford* was after added, as it continueth to this day.

3. *ULSTER*, by the Latines called *Ultheria*; is the largest Province of all Ireland, bounded on the South with *Meath* and *Connaught*; on the West, with the vast *Irish Ocean*; on the North, with that part of the Northern Ocean; to which *Ptolemy* gives the name of the *Northern Sea*; and on the East, with *St. Georges* Channel. A Country fruitful of it self, but in most places formerly overgrown with Woods, and drowned in Marishes and great Bogs, by the natural slothfulness of the people: a matter responsible to the Husbandman both for Corn and Pasturage; since the late Plantation of the *Brish*, than in times foregoing.

It is divided into the Counties of, 1. *Louth*, 2. *Cavan*; 3. *Fermanagh*, 4. *Down*, 5. *Monaghan*, 6. *Armagh*, 7. *Coleraine*, 8. *Tirconnel*, 9. *Tir-Owen*, and 10. *Antrim*. In which are comprehended 14 Towns of note for Commerce and Traffick, and 30 Castles for the defence of the Country, and keeping under the wild Irish; wilder and more untractable in these Northern parts, than the rest of Ireland. The whole well watered with a large and spacious Sea, on three sides thereof; many great lakes in the body of it, besides the Rivers of 1. *Bene* called in Latine *Boandey*, which divides it from *Meath*; 2. the *Bann*, 3. *Meandry*, and 4. the *Eym*, belonging to this Province wholly.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Armagh*, on or near the River of *Kalin*, the chief Town of the County so called; and the See of an Archbishop, who is the Primate of all Ireland. An ancient City, but so miserably destroyed by fire in *Tir-Owen* Rebellion, that it can scarce preserve the reputation of a Market-Town. 2. *Coleraine*, 3. and 3. *Dundalk*, both situate on the Sea side, and both within the County of *Louth*. 4. *Knew-Fergus*, the chief of *Antrim*; more properly *Reck-Fergus*, (and in that sense called *Carick-Fergus* by the Irish) so called from *Fergus* one of the Kings of the *Irish* Seas, to whom they suffered Shipwreck. Seated upon a large and spacious Bay (the *Findevius* of *Ptolemy*) which giveth it both a safe and commodious Port; as well by natural situation; as the works of Art, very strongly fortified; by reason of the Neighbourhood of the *Scots* in *Canine*, from which little distant. 5. *London-Derry*, a Colony of the *Londoners*, best built of any Town in the North of Ireland. 6. *Dungannon*, the principal Seat and residence in former times, of the great *O-neals*. 7. *Dungall*, the principal of *Tirconnel*. 8. *Raboghs*, a small Village at present, but anciently a Bishop See: fit to be mentioned in this place, in regard it still preserveth some foot-steps of the old *Roboghs*, an Irish Tribe, and placed by *Ptolemy* in this tract, where they gave name unto the *Presannony* by him called *Roboghs*, now the *Fair Farel*; as is probably conceived by the learned *Cambden*.

This, as it is the largest Province of all this Kingdom, so was it with most difficulty subjected to the Crown of England, and reduced to good order and civility. First conquered by *John Curcy*, a valiant Englishman, in the Reign of King *Henry* the second, by whom created Earl of *Ulster*. But being malignant for his eminent Virtues, and after profecuted by King *John*, this Title and Estate were both conferred upon *Hugh Lewis*, the Lord and Conqueror of *Meath*, whom before we speak of. By an Heir General of the *Laciers*, it came unto the *Burghs* then Lords of *Connaught*; and by the marriage of *Elizabeth* Daughter and Heir of *Richard de Burgh*, the last Earl of that Family,

mily, it came to *Lionel Duke of Clarence*, the second Son (then living) of King *Edward the third* ; as by his Daughter *Philipp*, to the Earls of *March*, from them by the like marriage to the House of *Tork*, and in the person of King *Edward the 4th*, to the Crown again. But being neglected by the *English* in the whole course of their Government, especially in the Wars betwixt *Tork* and *Lancaster*, it was cantoned in many *Eftates* and *Principalitys*, by the great Lords of the natural *Irish* ; (who had Born too great Iway here in the former times :) and so estranged from the civillities of *England*, and their Allegiance to that Crown as if that it had never been in subjection to it. In which estate it did continue (the Kings of *England* having here no more power or profit, than the great ones of the Country were pleased to give them) : till the Rebellion first, and afterwards the vanquishment of *Hugh O'neal*, the then Earl of *Tir-Ow* brought it in full subjection to the *English* Government, of which more hereafter.

4. *CON NAUGHT*, in Latin called *Connacia*, by the *Irish Connaght*, is bounded on the North with *Ulster*; on the West with the main Ocean; on the South with *Munster*; from which parted by the River *Shannon*; and on the East, with *Meath* and some part of *Leinster*. So called from the *Nagmata*, an old *Irish* Nation; or from *Nagmata* a Port-Town, both placed by *Ptolemy* in this *Tract*. The foil of the same temper with these later times, is as woody and as full of bogs till these later times, in which indifferently well cleared of both inconveniences.

It hath been also called by our *English* Writers the County of *Clare*, from *Thomas de Clare*, one of the younger Sons of *Gilbert de Clare* Earl of *Gloucester*, on whom it was conferred by King *Edward the first*: and is divided at the present into five Shires, that is to say; 1. *Letrim*, 2. *Roscommon*, 3. *Maio*, 4. *Slege*, and 5. *Galloway* and *Twmond*. In which are comprehended but 8 Towns of any consequence, for Commerce and Traffick; (an argument of the imperfect Plantation of it by the *English* Conquerors); and about 24 Castles for defence of the Country, of old erection, besides such Fortresses as have been raised occasionally in these latter troubles.

Places of most note and observation, 1. *Town*, an Arch-
bishops See. 2. *Athenry* an ancient Town, but decayed
and ruinous; of most renown for being the Barony of *John
de Bermingham*, a noble Eng^lishman, who had great po-
session in this tract. 3. *Letrin*, the chief Town of the Coun-
ty so named, neighboured by the *Curlew*-Mountains, un-
fortunately memorable for the great defeat there given
the Eng^lish in *Tir-Owen* rebellion; and by the Spring or
Fountain of the River *Shenn* or *Shanon*, whose course we
have before described. 4. *Slego*, and 5. *Kaleemmon*, the
chief Town of their several Counties. 6. *Athlone*, a place
of great strength, and the great Key of *Connaught*. 7.
Twomond, not otherwise much observable, put for giving
the title of an Earl to the Family of *O Brian*, (descended
from the Kings of *Connaught*) advanced unto that honour
by King *Henry* the 8th. 8. *Galloway* the principal of this
Province, a Bishops See, and the third City of the King-
dom for beauty and bigness. Situate near the fall of the
great Lake or River of *Corbet*, in the Western Ocean, de-
fended on that side from the fury of the Sea, and fear of
Invasions, by the interposition of some Islands (called the
Isles of *Arran*) very strongly fortified. A noted Emporia,
and lately of so great fame with foreign Merchants, that
an out-landish Merchant meeting with an *Irish-man*, de-
manded in what part of *Galloway*, *Ireland* fold; as if
Galloway had been the name of the Island, and *Ireland* the
only name of some Town.

This once a Kingdom of it self, as the rest of thole Pro-

vinces the last King whereof was *Roderick*, firrmed the *Great*, who having a great hand over the rest of the *Key-telest*, entituled himself sole Marcher or King of *Ireland*. But being forced to submit himself to *K. Henry* the second his Country at the last was brought into subjection to the Crown of *England*: by the valour and good fortune of *William de Burgh*, *Gilbert de Clare* Earl of *Gloucester*, *William de Bermingham*, and other Noble Adventurers of the *English* Nation. And though all of them did partake of the fruit of their labours; yet the greatest part fell to the spoil-together with the title of Lords of *Connaght*, due to the Family of the *Burghs* from them to *Lionel Duke* of *Clarence*; and by degrees unto the Crown, as before was shewn. Canted on again amongst the *Irish* and degenerate *English*, as *Uffer* was, by the supine neglect of the *Kings of England*: till the Rebellion of *Tyr-Oer*, involving all the chief of the *Irish* Nation in the same cause with him, involved them also consequently in the same destruction.

3. *MONSTER*, by the *Latines* called *Momonia*, is bounded on the North with *Commaugh*; on the East with *Leinfster*; on the West with the *Atlantic* or Western Ocean; and on the South with the *Verginia*. By the natural *Irish* it is called *Mown*, whence the *English* had the name of *Monster*. A Province, which for rich Towns, commodious Havens, fair Rivers, and the fertile of the Soil, yields not to any in the Kingdom.

It is divided into fix Countiees, *viz.* Limerick, 2. *Waterford*, 3. *Cork*, 4. *Desmond*, 5. *Kerry*, and 6. *Tipperary*, which two last anciently enjoyed all the rights of a County Palatine : And in these Shires are comprehended (besides many safe Stations and Roads for Shipping) 24 Towns of Note and Trading, and 66 Cattles of old

cretion. Places of most observation, 1. *Cusset*, in the County
 of *Limerick*, an Archbishop's See, advanced unto that honour
 by Pope Eugenius the third, about the year 1150.
 2. *Limerick*, the principal of that County, and the fourth
 in estimation of all the Kingdom : Situate in an Island
 compassed round about with the River, *Shannon*, by which
 means well fortified ; a well frequented Empery, and a
 Bishops See ; distant from the main Ocean about 60 miles,
 but so accommodated by the River, that Ships of Burden
 may use up close to the very walls. The Castles and the
 Bridge-pieces of both great strength and beauty, were of
 the foundation of King *John*, exceedingly delighted with
 the situation. 3. *Cloanel*, in the County of *Tipperry*, of
 great strength and consequence. 4. *Willy Croft*, in the
 same County also, once flourishing by reason of the great
 resort of Pilgrims, to see and worship there a piece of the
 holy Croft as it was supposed : which supposition as it
 drew much wealth unto the Town, so it obtained the
 rights of a County Palatine for the County also. 5. *Thurles*
 in the same County, which gives the Title of a Viscount
 to the Earls of *Ormand*, but not else observable. 6. *Water-
 fordo*, on the River *Shannon*, a well traded Port, a Bish-
 op's See, and the second City of the Kingdom. Of great
 fidelity to the *English* since the Conquest of *Ireland*, and
 for that cause endowed with many ample privileges. First
 built by some *Norwegian* Pirates, who thought they fixed
 it in one of the most barren parts of such a desolate
 the Country, yet they made choice of such a fine and
 commodious site for the use of Shipping, that of a Nest
 Pirates it was effused made a Receipt for Merchants, and
 suddenly grew up to great Wealth and Power. 7. *Carraig-
 a* (by the Latines called *Corcegia*) the principal of that
 County, and a Bishops-See : well wall'd and fitted
 with a very commodious Haven ; consisting chiefly of a
 street reaching out in length inhabited by a civil, wealthy
 and industrious people. 8. *Dunk-Eran* an old Episcopate

Sec

See, supported by some to be the *Juvenis of Plymouth*, but not else observable. 8. *Kinsale*, upon the mouth of the River *Barry*, commodious Port, opposite to the Coasts of *Spain*, and fortified in *Tyr Oent* Rebellion by a Spanish Garrison, under the command of *Don John de Aquila*; but soon recovered (after the defeat of that Grand Rebel near the Walls herof) by the valour and indefatigable industry of *Charles Lord Mountjoy*, the then Lord Deputy of this Kingdom. 9. *Baltimore*, 10. *Toughall*, and 11. *Zere-haven*, all upon the Sea, and all provided of forts, harbours or convenient Havens". 12. *Lefmore*, of old a Bishops See, now annexed to *Waterford*, in which Shire it standeth. Nothing in point of story singular which concerns this Province, but that it was to be carefully looked to by the Kings of England, that there was appointed over it a peculiar Officer (in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, in power and place next to the Deputy himself) called the *Lord President of Munster*: by whose vigilancy there have hapned fewer Rebellions here, than in any Province of this Island.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Island, being originally *Britains* (as before is said) were in the time of *Ptolemy* diffused into the Nations of *Rubogudii, Darnii, Volanii, Etnicii, and Eradii*, possessing the Northern parts, now *Ulster*; the *Auleri, Gangani, and Naganni*, inhabiting *Conanagh*; the *Felibrii, Oernii, Vodii, and Criodii*, in the South, now *Munster*; and the *Menapii, Caueti, Blamii, Brigantes*, taking up the Provinces of *Meath* and *Leinster*. Principal Cities of the which were *Eblannu*, now *Dublin*; *Menapiu*, now *Waterford*; *Nagennu*, which *Ptolemy* honoured with the Title of *Urbisregium*; *Rhigiia, Rheba, Macclunio, Luberu, Iuernii, &c.* not easily discernable by what names we may call them now: this Country never being so happy as to come under the power of the *Romans*, the great Masters of *Civility* and good Letters in the West of *Europe*: and by that means, the actions and affairs thereof buried in ignorance and silence. Towards the falling of which Empire we find the Nation of the *Scots* to be feated here, and from hence first to take possession of the *Hebrides*, or *Western Isles*, next of the Western part of *Britain* on the North of *Dunbritton Friar*. Afterwards some of the *Saxon* Monarchs cast their eyes upon it, and made themselves Masters of *Dublin*, and some other places; but being incumbered with the *Danes*, could not hold them long: being hardly able to defend their own against the people. The next that undertook the Conquests, were the Northern Nations, *Danes, Swedes, and Norwegians* who christened of that time under the name of *Norwegians*: the who first scoured along the Coast in the way of Piracy. But after finding the weakness of the Island, divided amongst many petty and inconsiderable Princes, they made an absolute conquest of it under the conduct of *Turgesius*, whom they elected for their King: soon rooted out by the policy of the King of *Meath*, the only *Irish* Prince who was in favour with the Tyrant. This petty King by name *Oma-Laghilben*, had a Daughter of renowned beauty, whom *Turgesius* demanded of her Father to serve his lusts: and he seeming willing to condescend to the motion, as if honoured by it, made answer, That besides his Daughter, he had at his disposing many others of more exquisite beauties, which should all be ready at command *Turgesius* following this bait, desired him with all speed to effect the meeting. But the King of *Meib*, attiring in the habits of a Woman, a company of young Gentlemen, who durst for the common liberty adventure their several lives: conduced them to the Tyrants Bed-chamber, and they according to the directions given them, (when for that little modesty sake he had in him, he had commended all his attendants to avoid the room) assaulted him, now ready for

and expecting more kind embraces, and left him dead in the place. The *Mahian* King had by this time acquired a divorce of the better sort with his plot; all which upon a sign given, rush into the Palace, and put to death all the *Angians*, and other attendants of the Tyrant. After this, the *Angians* enjoyed their former Dominions, till the year 1172, in which *Henry*, *Max Morengh* King of *Leuler*, having forced the Wife of *Mawrice O Rork* King of *Meib*, and being by him driven out of his Kingdom; came to the Court of *England* for succour. To this Petition, *Henry* the second then King, consented: sending him aid under the leading of *Richard de Clare*, surnamed *Strongbow*, Earl of *Penbroge*, who retook King *Dermot*, and brought a great part of the Island under the *English* subjection. *John*, King of *England*, was the first who was entitled *Lord of Ireland*; which title was granted him by Pope Urban the third, who for the ornament of his Royalty, sent him a plume of Peacock Feathers: and when *Ty-Om* filled him *Defender of the Irish Liberties* was by *Clement* the 8. honoured with the like plume. But here we are to understand, that though the Kings of *England* used no other title than *Lords of Ireland*; yet were they Kings hereof in effect and power, *Lords Paramount*, as we use to say. And though themselves retained out the name of *Lords*, yet one of them gave to one of his *English* Subjects, the honourable but invidious title of *Duke of Ireland*. And they retained this title of *Lords*, till the year 1542; in which *Henry* the 8th, in an *Irish Parliament*, was declared King of *Ireland*, as a name more sacred, and repleat with Majesty, than that of *Lord*: at which time also he was declared to be *Supream Head*, under God, of the Church of *Ireland*; and the pretended jurisdiction of all foreign Powers, especially the usurped authority of the Pope of *Rome* renounced by Law, though still acknowledged by too many of his superstitious and untractable People.

The Government of this Country, since the first Conquest by the *English*, hath been most commonly by our Supreme Officer, who is sometimes called the *Lord Lieutenant*, most generally the *Lord Deputy of Ireland*; that whom our *Vice-Roy* in all *Europe* hath greater power, and comes nearer the Majesty of a King in his Train and State. For his assistance he hath a Privy Council attending on him, though resident for the most part at *Dublin*: and in emergencies, or cases of more difficult nature proceedeth many times in an arbitrary way, without formalities of Law. And for their Laws, which are the standing Rule of all civil Government, they owe their being and original to the *English* Parliaments. For in the Reign of King *Henry the 7th*, Sir *Edward Poyning*, then *Lord Deputy*, caused an Act to pass in the *Irisht* Parliament, whereby all Laws and Statutes, which were made in *England* before that time, wereto be entertained and stand in Force as the Laws of *Ireland*. On which Foundation they have raised many *Superfluities* both of Law and Government, enacted in their own Parliaments, summoned by the *Lord Deputy* at the Kings appointment: in which, by another State made in the time of the said *Poyning*, the People are enabled to make Laws for their own good Governance, conditioned they were first transmitted to the Court of *England* to be considered of by the King, before they were *Voted* to in either of the Houses of the *Irisht* Parliaments: Which Laws commonly called *Poyning's Laws*, have hitherto continued in force amongst them; though the last much stomached and repined at, not only as a badge of their subjection to the Crown of *England*, but as a Curb of Marriages to hold them in.

Yet notwithstanding these good Laws; and the ample power of their Commission, the Lord Deputies could never absolutely subdue the Island, or bring the people to

SCHETLAND, an island belonging to the Crown of Scotland; and is by many learned men, upon very good reasons; supposed to be the *Thule* of the Ancients. For first, it lieth in the 63 degree of Latitude, in which *Ptolemy* placed *Thule*. Secondly, it lieth opposite to *Bergen* in *Norway*; against which *Pomponius Mela* hath related it. And thirdly, *Cæsar* *Penninus* hath observed that this *Scheland* is by Mariners called *Thylet*; a name in which of *Thule* is apparently couched. That name in which was not *Thule* (as most say) we shall shew you when we come to *Norway*; and the Northern Islands Here we add only, That the Ancients did report many strange things of it, and some of them beyond all belief. *Pliny* affirming that they had no day here for all the *Winter* (*nihil enim per brumam dies* his own words are) with whom *agere Solinus* and many others, as to that particular *Isidore* adds (*Origen lib. 14. c. 6.*) *nihilum ultra eam diem esse*, as if here had been the end of the World and Nature. But *Pytheas* in *Polybius* goes beyond them all, reporting that in this Isle there was no distinction of Earth, Air, and Water: *et ad Cæsarum* *in eadem*, but a confused mixture of all together, like the Primitive *Chaos* of the Poets. Thereason of which strange report was the audaciousness of those who had seen the Island, and thought that whatsoever they said of it would not be disproved, because of the remoteness of it from more civil Countries. So truly and judiciously spoken was that of *Symonius*, a right learned Prelate, "Hic oculus hominis non potest videre ultra." *Thule* (saith he) gave those who had failed unto it, the opportunity of lying without controul. An opportunity which many of our Mariners and vulgar Travellers had made too much use of in these last times also.

III. The *HEBRIDES*, *HEBUDAE*, or *Western Islands*, situate on the West of *Scotland*: are in number about 44. The chief whereof, 1. *Ila*, 24 miles long, and 6 in breadth; plentiful in Wheat, Cattle, and herds of Deer. 2. *Faero*, famous for the Sepulchres of the old *Scythian* Kings; whose chief Town is *Sadore*, once a Bishops See, called hence *Sadorensis*; his jurisdiction comprehended these Islands with the Isle of *Man*; his See erected by Pope *Gregory* the 4th; anno 840. or thereabouts. His dwelling for the most part of it in the Isle of *Man*; as the wealthier and more pleasant part of his *Diocese*; till the Conquest of it by the *English*; at what time those of the *Western Islands*, withdrew themselves from his obedience, and had a Bishop of their own: both of them for a long time called *Sadorensis*, but at last this took the name of *Isleland*. Bishop of the Isles, which he still retains. 4. *Mela*, by *Ptolemy* called *Maleor*, (that of *Ila* before mentioned being the *Epida*) mountainous and hilly, but affording good Mines of Lead and Copper, 25 miles more in compass than that of *Ila*. 4. *Lewis*, or *Levis*, the largest of all the *Hebrides*, said to be 60 miles in length and 30 in breadth, the more Western of the two *Hebrides* spoken of by *Ptolemy*: the other being now called *Skye*, famous for the multitude of Sea-Calves in the Creeks thereof. 6. *Racine*, the *Recine* of *Ptolemy*, the smallest of the *Hebrides*; and most near to *Ireland*. The rest of the Isles, note, not known, or not inhabited in the time of the *Romans*; and not very well peopled at the present, I forbear to name: for of them rather Rocks than Islands, others scarce having grass enough to hide their barrens. The people of them all, as well in language as behaviour, resemble the *Wild-Irish*; and are called *Red-Shanks*: a people, as King *Tames* affirmeth in his *Basilicon Doron*, utterly rude, and without all shew of Civility; such as endure not to be governed by Laws, or kept under by Discipline. *Legum severitate, & judiciorum metu se aligari non pa-*

timur, saith judicious *Cambden*. Such as they are, they came unto the Crown of *Scotland* by a Contract betwixt *Magnus* King of *Norway*, and King *Alexander* the third: the *Orcades* being bargained for at the same time also.

South of the *Hebrides*, in the Bay of *Dunbritton* Frith; lieth the Isle of *Rothay*, (now called *Bule*) which gives the Title of a Duke to the Prince of *Scotland*: and the Isle of *Arran*, which gives the title of an Earl to the chief of the *Hamiltons*.

IV. *MAN* is situate just over against the Southern part of *Cumberland*, from which it is distant 25 miles, and was judged to belong to *Britain* rather than to *Ireland*; because it fostered venomous Serpents, brought hither out of *Britain*. By *Ptolemy* it is called *Monada*, or the further *Monna*, to difference it from that which we call *Anglesey*; by *Pliny*, *Monabia*; *Menavia*, by *Orcinus* and *Beda*; *Eubonia*, by *Gildas* an old *British* Writer. The *Welsh* at this day call it *Menaw*, the Inhabitants *Maning*, and the *English* *Man*. It is in length 30 miles, in breadth 15, and 8 in some places. The people hate Theft and Begging, and use a Language mixt of the *Norwegian* and *Irish* tongues. The Soil is abundant in Flax, Hemp, Oats, Barley, and Wheat; with which they use to supply the defects of *Scotland*, if not the *Continent* it self, yet questionable the *Western Isles* which are a member of it. For thus writeth the Reverend Father in God *John Mericke* late Bishop of this Island, in a Letter to Mr. *Cambden*, at such time as he was composing his most excellent *Britannia*. Our Island (saith he) for Cattle, for Fish, and for Corn, hath no other sufficient for its self, but sendeth also good store into other Countries. Now what Countries should need such supply (*England* and *Ireland* being beforehand with such provision) except *Scotland*, or some members thereof, I see not.

Venerable *Bede* numbered it in 300 Families, and now it is furnished with 17 Parish Churches: the chief Towns are, 1. *Balauceri*, and 2. *Ruffin*, or *Casle-Town*, the Seat of a Bishop, who though he be under the Archbishop of *York*, yet never had any voice in the *English* Parliament. In this Island is the Hill of *Seafull*, where on a clear day one may see *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*: here also are bred the *Soland* Geese, of rotten Wood falling into the *VVater*. This Island was taken from the *Britains* by the *Scots*, and from them regained by *Edwin* King of *Northumberland*. Afterwards the *Norwegians* seized on it, and made it a Kingdom; the Kings thereof ruling over the *Hebrides*, and some part of *Ireland*. From them taken by *Alexander* the 3. of *Scotland*, by a mixt title of Arms and purchase. After which time it was sometime *English* sometimes *Scythian*, as their fortunes varied; till in the end, and about the year 1340 *William Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury*, descended from the *Norwegian* Kings of *Man*, won it from the *Scots*, and sold it to the Lord *Scepe*, who being condemned of Treason, *Henry* the Fourth gave it *Henry Piercy* Earl of *Northumberland*; but he also proving false to his Sovereign, it was given to the *Stanleys*, now Earls of *Derby*.

The Kings of *Man* of the *Danish* or *Norwegian* Race.

- 1065 1 Godred, the Son of *Syrric*.
- 1066 2 Fingal, Son of *Godred*.
- 1066 3 Godred II. Son of *Harald*.
- 1082 4 Lagnan, Eldest Son of *Godred* the second.
- 1089 5 Donald, Son of *Tad*.
- 1098 6 Magnus, King of *Norway*.
- 1102 7 Olave the third, Son of *Godred*.
- 1144 8 Godred III. Son of *Olave*.
- 1187 9 Reginald, base Son of *Godred* the third.
- 1226 10 Olave, the lawful Son of *Godred* the third.
- 1237 11 Harold, Son of *Olave*.

- 1243 12 Reginald II. Brother of *Harold*.
- 1252 13 Magnus II. Brother of *Reginald*.
- 1266 14 Magnus III. King of *Norway*, the last King of the *Danish* or *Norwegian* Race.

The Kings and Lords of *Man* of the *English* Blood.

- 1340 1 William Montacute, Earl of *Salisbury*, King of *Man*.
- 1395 2 William Lord *Scepe*, King of *Man*.
- 1399 3 Henry Earl of *Northumberland*, King of *Man*.
- 1403 4 William Lord *Stanley*, Lord of the Isle of *Man*.
- 5 John Lord *Stanley*.
- 6 Thomas Lord *Stanley*.
- 7 Thomas Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
- 1503 8 Thomas Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
- 1521 9 Edward Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
- 1572 10 Henry Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
- 1593 11 Ferdinand Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
- 12 William Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
- 13 James Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*, Lord of the Isle of *Man*, now living, An. 1648. King in effect, though but Lord in title, as having here all kind of Civil power and jurisdiction over the Inhabitants under the Fifth and Seventh of the Crown of *England*, together with the nomination of the Bishop, whom he presents unto the King for his Royal assent, then to the Archbishop of *York* for his consecration. And this I take to be the reason why the Bishop of *Man* was no Lord of *Parliament*, none being admitted to that honour, but such as held immediately of the King himself, nor was it reason that they should.

V. *ANGLESEY*, is an Island situate in the *Irish* Sea; over against *Cæternarvonshire* in *North-Wales*, from which it is divided by a narrow Strait, which they call the *Menai*: By the *Britains* themselves, as by the *Welsh* at this day, it was called the *Man*, from whence the *Romans* had their *Manai*; but being conquered by the *English*, it obtained the name of *Anglesey*, as one would say, the Island of the *English*-Men (as in the *Saxon* language signifying an Island.) A place of such a fair revenue to the Princes of it, that *Llewellyn*, the last Prince of *Wales* being stripped of almost all the rest of his Estates by King *Edward* the first, paid to that King a tribute of 1000 per Annum for this Island only.

And to say truth, the Island is exceeding fruitful both in Corn and Cattel: from whence the *Welsh* are liberally supplied with both: and therefore it is said proverbially, *Man* *Man* *Cymru*, that *Anglesey* is the Mother of *Wales*. In length from East to West, about 20 miles, and 17 in breadth. Containing in that compass 74 Parishes, divided into six hundreds, and hath in it only two market-Towns: that is to say, 1. *Beaumaris* seated on a flat or marsh ground, near the *Menai*, built by King *Edward* the first to secure his Conquest: by whom well walled and fortified as the times then were. 2. *Neynburgh*, a Town of no great antiquity, as the name doth intimate, by the *Welsh* called *Ressur*: in former times it had an Haven of some good receipt, but now choaked with sand. The other places of most note are, 3. *Aberffraw*, a small Village now, but here before the seat Royal of the Kings of *Wales*: and 4. *Holyhead*, seated on a head-land or Promontory thrusting into the Seas made holy (or thought to be at least) by the religious retirement of Saint *Kibb*, or *Kibin*, one of the Disciples of St. *Hilary* of *Poitiers*; from whence by the *Welshmen* called *Cæu Culy*: of most note for the ordinary passage betwixt *Wales* and *Ireland*. Antiently this Island was the seat of the *Druides*, and brought with no small difficulty under the power of the *Romans*, by *Suetonius Paulinus*: the people fighting in other parts of *Britain*

for their liberty only; but here *pro Aris & Focis* too, for their Religion, Liberty, and their Goods to boot: Being defeated by the *Romans* with the rest of *Britain*, it remained in the possession of its own natural Princes, till the final period of that State when added to the Crown of *England* by the puilliance of King *Edward* the first, by whom made one of the *Thirces of Wales*, as it still continues.

Not far from *Anglesey*, somewhat inclining to the South, is the Isle of *Bardsey*, by *Ptolemy* called *Edri*, by *Pliny* *Adros*, by the *Welsh* *Eanly*, extended towards the East with a rocky Promontory; but rich and fruitful towards the West: the retiring place of many godly and devout Hermits in former times. Southwards from hence and over against St. *David's*, are two other Islands, the one called *Selame*, plentiful of wild honey; the other named by the *Welsh* *Lymen*, by the *English* *Ramsey*; thought to be the *Limm* of *Ptolemy*, the *Silimann* of *Pliny*; but not else remarkable.

VI. THE ISLANDS OF THE SEVERN SEA are four in number; of no great note, but I must take them in my passage to the Isles of *Scilly*. Of those the first is *Flat-Holm*; for the flat and level. The 2. *Stebolin*, from the steep and craggy disposition of it: both by the *Welsh* called *Echm*, and both situate over against the County of *Somerset*. More towards the opening of the *Channel*, lieth the Isle of 3. *Chaldy* called by the *Welshmen* *Inis* *Fyr*, of as small note as the other: and at the very mouth thereof the Isle of 4. *Lundey*, over against *Devonshire*, the principal Island of this Sea: extending two miles every way; of excellent pasturage, well stored with *Corn*, and great plenty of *Pigeons*. Situate a good distance from any part of the land, in the midst of the salt and brackish Ocean, and yet yieldeth many Springs of *Fresh-water* for the use of the people; inhabiting for the most part in a Town of the same name with the Island. A place of very great strength and safety; begirt about with dangerous unapproachable Rocks: and having but one way of access into it, and that so narrow, that two men cannot go a breast.

VII. The Isles of *SCILLY*, in number 145, are situate over against the *Western Promontory of Cornwall*, from which distant 24 miles; and lye round together in the manner of a ring or Circle. Discovered first by the *Silures*, a *Phœnician* Colony in *Spain*, opposite against which they lye; thence called *Silures* by *Solinus*; much traded and referred to by the said *Phœnicians* from the line of *Gades*; invited thereunto by the unexhaustible Mines of *Tin*, which they found amongst them. A Trade so great and gainful to them, that they held it a secret from all the world, as we find in *Strabo*: who adds the story of a *Carthaginian* or *Phœnician* Merchant, encountered in his voyage hither, by some *Roman* Vessels; and splitting his ship on the next shore (where he knew the *Romans* would not follow him) rather than let them know to what place he was bound; was rewarded for his honest care, and recompensed for the loss of his Ship and goods, out of the publick Treasury. From this abundance of *Tin*, the *Græcians* when they came to know them, called them *Cassiterides* (*Cassiteros* in that language signifying *Tin*) accordingly *Herodotus*, *ἐν τῇ Cassiterides ἰστέον* *ἐν τῇ Cassiterides ἰστέον* affirming that he knew not those Islands called *Cassiterides*, from whence *Tin* was brought. The richness of this commodity, the pleasures of the place, and the Western situation of them makes many of the *Græcians* call them *Hebrides*: mistaking them for the *Fertimate Islands*. By *Solinus* they are called *Silures*; as before is said; *Sigdes* in the corrupt Copies of *Antonius*; in false *Silina*, by *Sextus* *Sulpitius*; from whence we have the name of the Isles of *Scilly*. The



A T A B L E
Of the
L O N G I T U D E and L A T I T U D E
O F T H E
CHIEF CITIES mentioned in this FIRST BOOK.

	Lon.	Lat.		Lon.	Lat.
A					
B					
C					
D					
E					
F					
G					
H					
I					
M					

	Lon.	Lat.		Lon.	Lat.
S. <i>Malo</i>	19	49	<i>Rochel</i>	18 15	45 50
<i>Medina Cells</i>	23 30	41 10	<i>Rome</i>	42 30	42
<i>Millaine</i>	38 30	46 10	<i>Roven</i>	23 40	48 50
<i>Modena</i>	41 50	35 40	<i>Rheze</i>	24 0	38 20
<i>Montpelier</i>	25 30	44 10			
<i>Montalban</i>	23	45	<i>Salisbury</i>	18 3	51 10
<i>Messana</i>	45 50	37 50	<i>Saluenca</i>	8 5	40 15
<i>Minorca</i>	40 30	40	<i>Saragossa</i>	24 15	41 45
			<i>Sevil</i>	7 15	37
<i>Naples</i>	46	39 30	<i>Sion, or Sittia</i>	29 45	45
<i>Nantes</i>	24 10	47 10	<i>Stirling</i>	20 10	56 20
<i>Narbon</i>	30 20	43 20	<i>Stena</i>	42 20	36 16
<i>Nevers</i>	24	47 10	<i>Sigenca</i>	18 2	
<i>Newcastle</i>	22 30	54 57	<i>Syracuse</i>	40 30	37 30
<i>Nisfnes</i>	26	44 2			
<i>Norwich</i>	24 55	52 40	<i>Taranafte</i>	29	45
			<i>Tarragon</i>	28 30	38 20
<i>Oleron</i>	24 30	45 30	<i>Tholonje</i>	28 40	43 10
<i>Orleans</i>	28 30	48 0	<i>Tolado</i>	16 20	39 40
<i>Orange</i>	26 20	43 20	<i>Trieste</i>	44 10	46 10
<i>Oxford</i>	22	51 20	<i>Tredah</i>	16 34	54 10
<i>Otranto</i>	49 30	40 20	<i>Turin</i>	31 30	43 45
			<i>Tarentum</i>	48 0	40 30
<i>Pampelun</i>	24 30	43 33			
<i>Paris</i>	23 30	48 40	<i>Valadolid</i>	16 10	42 5
<i>Pavie</i>	44 1	35 5	<i>Valencia</i>	19 20	39 4
<i>Padua</i>	44 45	36 29	<i>Venice</i>	41 40	45 50
<i>Parma</i>	39 20	45 10	<i>Verona</i>	40 40	45 50
<i>Pefcara</i>	43 0	35 10	<i>Viterbo</i>	41 50	41 4
<i>Pelermo</i>					
<i>Perugia</i>	42 20	43 10	<i>Weymouth</i>	23 50	51
<i>Peter-port in Tersey</i>	23 0	49 20	<i>Winchester</i>	22	52
<i>Pifa</i>	40 30	43 40	<i>Wexford</i>	16 42	53
<i>Placencia</i>	20 40	40 0			
<i>Poitiers</i>	26 30	47	<i>Yarmouth</i>	27 30	53 0
			<i>York</i>	22 25	54 18
<i>Ravenna</i>	44 20	44 20			
<i>Rheves</i>	25 25	48 30	<i>Zurick</i>	30 20	47
<i>Remes</i>	19	48			

The End of the First Book.

COSMOGRAPHY,
The Second Book,
CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY
AND
HISTORY
OF

*Belgium, Germany, Denmark, Swethland, Russia, Poland, Hungary,
Sclavonia, Dacia, and Greece, with the Isles thereof.*

By PETER HEYLIN.

TACIT. HIST. LIB. 4.

Humanarum rerum possessionem Trans-alpinis gentibus portendi, Druidæ caneant.

SENEC. de Consolat. ad ALBINUM.

*Quotidie aliquid in hoc magno Orbe mutatur; Nova Urbium fundamenta jaciuntur, nova Gentium
nomina, extinctis nominibus prioribus, oriuntur.*

L O N D O N,.

Printed by John Richardson, in the Year MDCLXXXII.



COSMOGRAPHY,
The Second Book,
CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY
AND
HISTORY

OF

*Belgium, Germany, Denmark, Swethland, Russia, Poland, Hungary,
Sclavonia, Dacia, and Greece, with the Isles thereof.*

OF

BELGIUM.

HAVING pursued the Fortunes of the *Roman* Empire, through the four Western Diocesses or Divisions of it, wholly subdued to the Command of that Conquering State: let us next look on those Countries which lay farther North, and either never felt the force of the *Roman* Armies, or were but Conquered in part, or else were reckoned as the members of some greater Province. Of this last sort was all that Tract which is now called *Belgium*, or the *Netherlands*, bounded Eastward with *Westphalen, Culick, Cleve*, and the land of *Triers*, Provinces of the higher *Germany*; on the

West with the main Ocean, which divides it from *Britain*, on the North with the River *Emse*, which parts it from *East-Friesland*, on the South with *Picardie* and *Champagne*, two French Provinces; upon the South-east with the Dukedom of *Lorraine*.

By the *Latines* (especially of these last times) it is called *Belgium*, from the *Belgæ*, the most potent people of all these parts; and sometimes also *Germania inferior* or the *Lower Germany*, (in the same sense as by the *English* it is called the *Low-Countries* and the *Netherlands*) from their low situation, and the conformity which they have with the *German* in Laws, Languages, Customs and Man-

ners. By some it hath been called by the aggregate name of the *Seventeen Provinces*, from the like number of several and distinct Estates united under the Command of the King of Spain. The more peculiar name is *Flanders*, which, though but one of the Seventeen Provinces, hath yet given denomination to all the *Netherlands*; the people of which were once generally called by the name of *Flemmings*: and that either for the power of that Province, in regard of the others; or by reason of the great Trade and Traffick formerly driven at the Fairs or *Marts* of *Bruges* (a Town thereof by the Merchants of all parts of *Europe*; or in respect that lying nearer than the rest to *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and *England*, that name was better known and took notice of. But this was when the whole Country was under the command of many Princes; of which the *Earls of Flanders* were esteemed most potent. And though this name continued also after the incorporating of most of these Provinces in the House of *Burgundy*, at which time they were called the *Estates of Flanders*: yet since the falling off of *Holland* and the rest of the *United Provinces* from the Kings of *Spain*, it hath lost this Honour, the name of *Flanders* being now restrained within narrower bounds.

But for the name of *Belgium*, though I find that name most current amongst the *Latines* of this Age, yet I see little reason for it. For first, old *Belgium* contained in it many fair and large Estates which are not now within the compass of these *Belgick Provinces*; that is to say, the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, *Berg*, *Juliers*, and a great part of *Cleve*, the Bishopsricks of *Triers*, *Metz*, and *Colen*, and so much of the Kingdom of *France* as takes up all *Picardy*, with parts of *Champagne* and of *France* specially so called. Secondly *Gallia Belgica* extended somewhat farther yet, comprehending a great part of the Lower *Palatinate*, all *Alsace*, the whole County of *Burgundy*, and so much of *Switzerland* as lieth on the French side of the *Rhene*. And thirdly, the whole Provinces of *West-Friesland*, *Groningen*, *Over-Yssel*, *Zuphen*, together with all *North-Holland*, and so much of *Gelderland*, and *Utrecht* as lieth on the father side of the middle Channel of the *Rhene*, were never counted of as parts of either *Belgium* or of *Gallia Belgica*, (though now within the compass of the *Belgick Provinces*) but as parts of *Germany*; clearly without the limits of the ancient *Gaul*, of which nobody *Belgium* was a limb or member in the *Roman* estimate.

As for the *Belga*, from whence we have the names of *Belgium* and *Gallia Belgica*, they were originally *Germans*, who driving out the *Gauls*, planted themselves within the *Rhene*; esteemed by *Cæsar* to be the valiantest of the *Gallick Nations* for these three Reasons. 1. They were the farthest from *Provence*, where the *Roman* Civilities and more affable course of life was embraced. 2. They dwelt on a Sea not then frequented by Merchants; and so wanted those allurements to Effeminacy which are in Countries of traffick. 3. They bordered on the *Germans*, a warlike Nation, with whom they were continually in Arms. This people seeing the prosperous success of *Cæsar's* Victories in *Gaul*, joined together in a League, and mustered an Army of 260000 Fighting men against him. But seeing they could not draw him out of his Fortresses, they retired again, and that in such disorder, that three Legions (for no more was *Cæsar's* Army) put them to an infinite slaughter. After this, *Cæsar*, fighting against them feverally, overcame them all; and made their Country, and the Country of the bordering *Germans*, whom he also vanquished, subject unto the *Roman* Empire. By *Constantine* the Great it was made part of the Dioceses of *Gallia*, and by him cast into five Provinces: that is to say, 1. *Belgica Prima*, containing the Dukedom of *Lorraine* and the Land of *Triers*, the Metropolis whereof was *Tri-*

ers; 2. *Belgica Secunda*, comprehending *Artois*, *Picardy*, and the Country of *Cambray*, with parts of *Champagne* and *France* special, of which the Metropolis was *Rouen*; 3. *Germania Prima*, comprehending *Alsacia*, part of the *Palatinate* and the Bishoprick of *Metz*, the Metropolis of that Province; 4. *Germania Secunda*, containing *Cyria*, *Cleland*, *Brabant*, *Gelderland*, *Namur*, *Luxemburg*, *Limbourg*, and the land of *Colen*, which hath been honoured with the title of Metropolis; 5. *Maxima Sequanorum*, so called of the *Sequani*, the old Inhabitants thereof, containing the whole County of *Burgundy*, and so much of *Switzerland* as lieth on the French side of the *Rhene*, of which *Besancion* was the Mother City. But at this time none of the Provinces above specified are comprehended under the account and name of *Belgium*, but such as were possessed in these latter Ages by the House of *Burgundy*; some petty Seigniouries and Estates which properly do belong to *Germany* being added to it: that is to say, the Lordship of *West-Friesland*, given to the *Earls of Holland* by *Charles the Bald*; the Earldom of *Zuphen* united unto that of *Gelders* by *Earl Otto of Nassau*; and finally the Estate of *Groningen*, *Over-Yssel*, and some part of *Utrecht* by *Charles the fifth*. Under which name and notion we do now consider it.

And taking it according to this name and notion, it is in compass 1000 *Italian*, or 250 *German* miles; and is situated in the Northern temperate Zone, under the 7, 8, and 9. Climates: the longest day in the mid t of the 7th Climate, where it doth begin, being 16 hours; in the beginning of the 8th (Climate increased to 16 hours three quarters, or near 17 hours. The Air in these later days is grown more whole-some than formerly; partly by the wonderful increase of the people, who, by draining the incredible industry of the people, who, by draining the Marishes, and converting the standing waters into running Streams have purged the Air of many gross and unhealthy Vapours, which did thence usually arise in times foregoing.

The Country is very populous, containing well-nigh three millions of souls; the men being for the most part well-proportioned, great lovers of our English Beer, mindful of both good turns and injuries, of good wit for inventing, and of a most indefatigable industry for perfecting the rarest Manufactures. For unto them we are indebted for the making of Cloth, which we learnt of the *Flemmings*; as also for *Arras*-hangings, *Dormix* Clocks, Watches, and the perfection of the Mariner's Compass. They restored Mulick, and found out divers Musical Instruments, being naturally good Musicians, and generally so given unto it, and so perfect in it, that therefore (till the Art of Mulick grew more common) there were not many Great mens houses which had not Musicians to teach their Children. To them belongeth also the invention of Chariots, the laying on of Colours with Oyl, the working of Pictures in Glass, and the making of Worsted, Seyes, and Tapestries; the making of which and other Seyes, being driven out of their Country by the Duke of *Asses*, they first taught the *English*. The Women generally are of good complexion, well-proportioned, especially in the Legs and Feet, honourers of Vertue, active and familiar. Both within doors, and without they govern all: which considering the natural desire of Women to bear rule, maketh them too imperious and burthenfome.

They use for the most part the *German* and *Dutch* Language, with a little difference in the Dialect. But in the Provinces adjoining to *France*, that is to say, *Luxemburg*, *Namur*, *Artois*, *Hainault*, and some parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant*, they use the *French*; but the same very corruptly and imperfectly, by reason of that mixture which it

hath

hath of the *Dutch* or *German*, yet so that one may easily discern those people to be *French* originally, or some remainder of the old *Gauls*, interbred by the *French*, but not rooted out: from their Language or first Original called to this day by the name of *Wallons*, the *German* usually changing *O* into *V*, as *VVarre* for *Guerre*, *VVarden* for *Guadian*, and in the like cases *VVale* for *Galle*, I know there is another Etymology of the name of *Wallons*, some making them to be of the *Burgundian* race, who, at their first pushing over the *Rhene*, enquired their way of the Country-people in these words, *On allons, i.e. Whither go we?* which being oft repeated by them: occasioned them to be called *Wallons*. A trim invention doubtless, but of no solidity, nor to be farther honoured with a confutation.

The Country in those parts which lie towards *Germany*, especially on the South-east bordering upon *Cleland* and *Lorraine*, is somewhat fvelled with Hills and over-shaded with Woods, the relics of the great Forest of *Ardenne*, which once took up a great part thereof: But towards the West and North, where it joins to the Sea, it is plain and level, full of Flats and Marthes, affording very little Corn, but abounding in Pasturage, which yields a great increase of Butter and Cheese, good store of Beeves and Horses of more than ordinary bigness. By reason of which low and level situation, and the ill neighbourhood of a troublefome and unruly Sea, it hath been formerly much subject to Inundations; inasmuch as in the time of King *Henry the 2. Flanders* was so overflowed, that many thousands of people, whose dwellings the Sea had devoured, came into *England* to beg new seats; and were by that King first placed in *Torkshire*, and then removed to *Pembrokeshire*. Since that, it hath in *Zeland* (swallowed eight of the Islands, and in them 300 Towns and Villages; many of whose Churches and strong buildings are now a dead low water to be seen. And as once *Ovid* said of *Helice* and *Barris*, Cities of *Achaia*, so may we of these;

*Invenies sub aquis, & adnuc ostendere nautæ
Inclinata solum cum manibus oppida versis.*

That is to say,

The waters hide them, and the Sailors show
The ruin'd Walls and Steeples as they row.

The chief Commodities which they vent into their Countries are Linen, Scarlets, Worsted, Seyes, Silks, Velvets, and the like rich Stuffs; together with great quantities of Armour, Ropes, Cables, Butter, Cheese, &c. Of which excepting Cheese and Butter, there is nothing of the natural growth of the Country: the rest being Manufactures which they make out of such materials as they fetch out of Foreign Regions. But the Commodity which yieldeth them most benefit is that of fish, not caught up on their own Coast neither, but either in the Northern Seas or the coast of *England*, the very Herring which they catch on the shoars of *England* (to the no small dishonour of the *English Nation*) bringing them a Revenue (besides what is purled up by the Adventurers) of 440000 pounds per annum; and that of Cod-fish, which they catch on the Coasts of *Friesland*, amounting to 150000 *l*. sterling yearly.

Captains of note and eminence it hath bred but few, the People living till of late in perpetual peace. The chief of those whose names have been transmitted to us are, 1. *Guis*, a Prince of the *Batavians*, for subtilty of Wit compared to *Hamul* and *Servilius*: of which in the long War against the *Romans*, in the time of *Vespasian*, he

gave very good Proof. In the middle times, 2. *William Earl of Holland*, elected Emperour of *Germany*. 3. *Baldwin Earl of Flanders*, Emperour of *Constantinople*. 4. *Philip the Good*, and 5. *Charles the Warlike*, Dukes of *Burgundy*. 6. *Charles*, the Fifth Emperour and King of *Spain*: And of late times the Princes of the House of *Nassau* and *Orange*, transplanted hither in the Regency of *Maximilian* out of higher *Germany*. And to say the truth their Genius doth not lie so much for Land-service as it doth for the Seas; in which they have been very Famous, and not less fortunate. For of this Nation was *Oliver Vander Noordt*, the fourth that compassed the world, *Jacob le Maire*, the first discoverer of the Strait of *Freem*, which now beareth his name, besides divers others. And generally the people are so expert in Navigation, (especially those bordering on or near the Coasts) that they seem born for and to the Seas: many of which, being born on Ship-board and bred up at Sea, know no other Country, and brook the Land as ill as a Fifth doth the dry Ground. VVhich natural inclination to, and the necessity they have of employing themselves that way, (the Country not being otherwise able to provide sustenance for those multitudes of men which it doth abundance with) hath so exceedingly increased their Shipping, that it is thought that they are masters of more Vessels of all sorts, taking one with another, than almost all the rest of *Europe*.

Scholars of note it hath bred many. 1. *Erasmus*, the great restorer of Learning in these parts of the *VWorld*. 2. *Justus Lipsius*, as eminent a reviver of the *Latine* Elegancies. 3. *Joseph Scaliger*, the Son of *Julius*, *imprimis* *variorum* *scriptor*, a man not to be followed in all parts of Learning; but of equal Arrogance. 4. *Rudolphus Agricola*. 5. *Levinus Lemnius*. 6. 7. *Janus Dousta*, the Father and the Son. 8. *Abraham Ortelius*, and 9. *Gerard Mercator*, the Geographers. 10. *Geo. Cassander*, 11. *Dr James Hermin*. 12. *Gerard Vassius*, eminent Divines. And 13. *Hugo Grotius*, of as great parts (but teamed with more moderation and moderation) as the famous *Scaliger*. 14. *Jansenius*, and 15. *Pamelius*, two right learned Men, but of the *Pontifician* party.

As much unfortunate it hath been in some wretched Hereticks, in none more than in *David George*, born at *Delf* in *Holland* who called himself *Christ* and King immortal. Flying from *Delf* to *Basil* with his *VVife* and children, An. 1545. he there taught his Doctrine, viz. 1. That the Law and Gospel were unprofitable for the attaining of Heaven; but his Doctrine able to save such as received it. 2. That he was the true *Christ* and *Messias*. 3. That he was not to refigure the House of *Israel* by Death or Tribulation, but by Love and Grace of the Spirit. 4. That he had been till that present kept in a place unknown to all the Saints. And that this last Point might obtain the easier credit amongst the people, he bound his Disciples, first to conceal his name; secondly, not to reveal of what Condition he had been, thirdly, not to discover the Articles of his Doctrine to any man in *Basil* without his permission. But for all this great care of his with in three days after his death (which happened in the year 1566) his Doctrines, being made known, were condemned by the Senate & Church of *Basil*, his goods confiscated, and his Bones most deviously taken up and burnt. Of somewhat less impiety, but of no less phrensy, was 2. *John of Leyden*, (another Town of the same Province) who from a Tailor was made King of the Anabaptists, when they had ragged in *Munster*, and there we shall hear farther of him. 3. *Cappinus*, and 4. *Quintinus*, both *Flemmings*, the joint Authors and Co-founders of the Sect of the Libertines.

The Christian Religion was planted in several Provinces by several men: in *Holland, Zealand, and Friesland*, by *Willibrord* an English man, the first Bishop of *Utrecht*, whence by degrees it gained on the rest of the Country; these being the first people of the *Franks*; or *Germans*; converted totally to the Gospel. In tract of time it fell from the Primitive Purity, participating of the Errors and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; from which when they desired to reclaim themselves, they were there in opposed by the King of *Spain* and his Ministers. Hence the beginning of the Troubles; enlarged afterwards on pretence of Civil rights invaded and infringed by the *Spaniards* affecting a more absolute Dominion over them than their Laws admitted. At this time, as the Country doth stand divided betwixt the *States* and the *Spaniards*, so stands it with Religion also: the *Spaniards* permitting only the Religion of the Church of *Rome* within the Provinces and Estates under his Command; and the *States General* indulging the free use of all Religions (even the very *Jews*) but countenancing only that of the Reformed Churches, according to the Platform laid down by *Calvin*.

Chief Forests of this Country are, 1. That of *Ardenne*, which in the time of *Cesar* extended from the banks of *Rhene* as far as *Tournay* one way, and *Champagne* another way, and was in compass 500 miles in the least accompt. In which circuit there was comprehended the Southern parts of *Brabant* and *Flanders*, all *Limbourg, Luxemburg, Luyckland, Namur*, and *Hainault*, together with the land of *Gulick* in the higher *Germany*, as some Writers say. At this time, though the greatest of all *Gaul Belgic* it reacheth but from *Liege* to *Theuville*, so leagues in length, and yet not all that Woodland neither, though within the Verge of the Forest: there being much Tillage and many Villages in that tract of ground, the principal of which is the Town of *S. Hubert*, situate almost in the midst of it. 2. *Niepe*, and 3. *Nonnen*, in the Earldom of *Flanders*; the first extending to the banks of the River *Lis*, the other coming up close to *Tper*. 4. *Pondsberg*, in the Confines of *Hainault* and *Flanders*, near unto *Mont-Gervard*. All these were parts of this great forest of *Ardenne*, which once overhadowed all this Country. 5. *No maids*, in *Hainault*, in which is much Charcoal made; supposed for that reason to be a part of that Forest which the old *French* called *La Charbonniere*. 6. *Echterwald*, in *Gelderland*, near *Arnhem*, &c.

The chief Rivers are, 1. *Rhene*, which ariseth out of two Springs in the *Lepontian Alps* amongst the *Griçons*, went into one stream near *Chur*: thence passing by the Cities of *Constance*, *Basil*, *Spire*, *Vormes*, *Metz*, and *Colen*, it is again divided about the confines of *Gelderland* into four Branches or Chancels. Of which the first is called the *Vaal*, which running through *Gelderland* by *Nimwegen* and *Bommel*, loseth it self in the *Maes*. The second, which keeps the name of the *Rhene*, passeth by *Arnhem*, from thence in a contracted channel to *Utrecht*, and so through *Holland* unto *Leyden*. The third, called the *Leek*, taketh his course through the Provinces of *Utrecht* and *Holland*, and so into the Sea betwixt *Dort* and *Rotterdam*. And the fourth called the *Tissel*, which passing by the Towns of *Zutphen* and *Deventer* betwixt *Gelderland* and *Over-Tissel*, emptieth it self into the Ocean near *Amsterdam*. Ayl of these Branches I have given the exacter reckonings, partly because the course of that famous River is otherwise not easie to be observed; and partly because the knowledge of a great part of these Provinces dependeth on the knowledge of the course of this River, it being the middle branch of the *Rhene* (that which goeth by *Leyden*) which anciently divided *Germany* from *Gallia Belgica*. A River

of such reputation in the ancient times, that into it the old *Belgae* used to cast the children which they suspected to be illegitimate: For were they born of lawful bed, they floated on the waters, if of unlawful they sank immediately. Whereunto *Claudian*, alluding, saith, *Nascentes explorat gurgite Rhenu*. But the great teacher of Antiquities, *Pliny*, is of opinion, that thereby they only insured their Children to hardness, and made trial of their strength; Adultery being rarely found among them, and so to these kinds of Experiments needless. 2. *Maes*, the *Maes*, as the *Dutch* or the *Mens*, as the *French* men call it, which springing from the Mountains of *Pange* in the confines of *Lorraine*, and not far from the Fountains of the *Seine* and *Mayne*, runneth through *Lorraine, Luxemburg, Luyckland* and *Namur*; from thence by *Ruremond* and *Venlo*, two known Towns of *Gelderland*, where turning towards the West it taketh in a part of the *Rhene*, and from thence passing by *Maastricht*, divides *Brabant* from *Holland*, watering the Town of *Grave* in the one, and of *Dort* in the other; and falleth into the Sea not far from *Briel* with so great a violence, that the waters of it for a long space continue fresh. 3. *Emis* in *Latine* called *Amisus*, dividing the two *Frislands*; of which more in *Germany*. 4. *Scaldt*, which arising in *Picardy*, and running through *Artois*, and between *Hainault* and *Brabant*, meeteth with the Sea a little above *Antwerp*. And 5. *Lis* or *Ley*, which runneth quite through *Flanders*. Besides which Rivers, and others of inferior note, (which we shall meet withal in their proper places) here are great flocks of Lakes, Pools and Marshes, which do both fortifie the Country, and provide it of Fish: besides many navigable Chancels, made by the hand of man from one River to another, for the convenience of passage, and the more easie transport of their Commodities.

The Shoar of this Country hath been much worn out by the Sea, especially that of the Islands of *Zeland*, and such as lie scattered about *Holland*; where they are defended with Banks and Ramparts, painfully made, and chargeably maintained. These Banks are about a league in height, and twenty five in breadth at the bottom: they are made of the hardest clay that may be gotten, in the inside stuffed with wood and stone, on the outside covered with mats strong and thick made.

The former Inhabitants were divers, and were as differently disposed of in their several Countries. That is to say, the *Archevats* in the greatest part of *Artois*; the *Morini* in the part of the *Imperial* and *Dutch Flanders*; the *Nervi* in *Hainault*; *Namur*, and *Flanders Gallicani*, the *Batavi* in *South-Holland*, and so much of *Gelderland* and *Utrecht* as lies on the South-side of the *Rhene*, with the *Mætiani* intermixt in the Dukedom of *Gelder*; the *Mætiani* in the Illes of *Zeland*; the *Aduatici* and part of the *Tongri* in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, with part of the *Trovis* in *Luxemburg*, and of the *Eburones* in *Luyckland* and the Dukedom of *Limburg*: all which were *Belgic* Nations, and therefore anciently accompted of as parts of *Gallia*. Then on the Northern side of the middle Channel of the *Rhene* there dwelt the *Frisi* in *North Holland*, and so much of the District of *Utrecht* as lies on the farther side of that channel; the *Frisi* in *West-Friesland* and the State of *Groning*; some parts of the *Sicambri* in the Earldom of *Zutphen* and the rest of *Gelderland*, with part of the *Bructeri* in *Over-Tissel* all *German* Nations, and properly not within the reckoning of *Gallia Belgica*. Those which passed under the accompt and name of *Belgae* being subdued, together with other Tribes of that numerous Nation, by the valor and good fortune of *Julius Caesar*, continued subject to the

Romans

Romans, without any notable disturbance unto their affairs but the Rebellion raised against them by *Crovis* Prince of the *Batavians* in the time of *Vespasian*. In the declining of the Empire they were possessed by the *French*, under whom they made a part of the Kingdom of *Metz* or *Oslemreich*, united by *Childerich* the third to the rest of *France*, and made a member of that Kingdom; as they continued till the time of *Lewis* the Godly, Son of *Charles* the Great. In the division of whose Empire amongst his Children, the Countries of *Flanders* and *Artois* being laid to *France*, the residue of these Countries on this side of the *Rhene* made up a special part of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*. Those, on the farther side of the middle Channel of that River, being *German* Nations, gained to the vast Empire of the *French* by *Charles* the Great, in the division of the spoil spoken of before fell to the share of *Lewis* surnamed the Ancient, the first King of *Germany*, and after his decease to his Successors in that Estate, whether King or Emperours. And so we have the whole divided betwixt the three great Kings of *France*, *Lorraine* and *Germany*, by that means subdivided into lesser parcels, (no fewer than nineteen in all) we shall see anon.

In the mean time we are to know, that in the beginning of the *French* Conquests in the rest of *Gallia*, there started up in *Belgica* two great Estates, founded by *Abernon*, *Regnault* and *Ranchaire*, Sons of *Clodion*, the second King of the *French*; who being disaffected of their Fathers Kingdom by *Merove* Master of his Horse, to whose Tutelage and Guardianship they had been committed, betook themselves to the most defensible places of the great Forest of *Ardenne*, and the Countries to the banks of the River *Moselle*; where they founded the two great Earldoms from thence denominated. That of *Ardenne* (for of the Earldom of *Moselle* we shall speak elsewhere) contained part of the modern *Flanders*, and some part of *Brabant*, together with all *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Limbourg, Luxemburg* and the Dukedom of *Bouillon*. Grown to this greatness by the withdrawing of the *French* forces into richer Conquests, and dismembering of that Empire into many Kingdoms, and trusting too much to that greatness, they drew upon themselves the jealousy of those mightier Princes: occasioning *Clotaire* the second to give their Country unto *Dagobert* his eldest Son, then King of *Metz*, whom he furnished with convenient Forces for the Conquest of it. *Brunniph*, the then Prince hereof, being by him discomfited and slain in Battle. By *Sigebert*, who succeeded his Father *Dagobert* in the Kingdom of *Metz*, the Earldom of *Hainault* is taken out of it, and given to *Albert*, one of the youngest Sons of *Brunniph*. By *Dagobert* himself, succeeding in the Realm of *France*; (and whilst he lived sole King of the *French*) the parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant*, formerly belonging to these Princes, were dismembered from it, and laid unto two new Estates of his own creating. And probable it is, that either to weaken this great House, or to comply with the ill Customs of thosetimes; the Earldom of *Namur* might be taken out of it at the same time also, for the portion of some other of the younger Brethren. The rest of the Estate, with the title of Earl of *Ardenne*, remained unto the eldest Son: whose Posterity, notwithstanding this great diminution grew to such effect; that *Judith*, the Widow of *Buin*, and Sister of *Basun*, Earls of *Ardenne*, was thought a fit Wife for *Charles* the Bald, King of *France* and Emperour, by whom (the more to honour his Family) the said *Basun* was created King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. During the Empire of *Osbo* the first, the Earldom of *Luxemburg* was divided from it, and given to *Sigefride*, one of the younger Sons of *Ricinus* the preceeding Prince, and so perhaps was *Limbourg* also for another of them. The rest remained to *Godfrey* the eldest Son, who by

Matilda, a Daughter to *Osbo* the second, was father of another *Godfrey*, who succeeded after *Charles* and *Osbo*, the third Duke of *Lorraine*: that Dukedom being ever since enjoyed by the House of *Ardenne*, and there we shall hear further of it. This said, and so much of the Story opened as concerns the general, we will proceed to a particular Survey of the modern *Belgium*, divided at the present into seventeen Provinces, besides the two great Bishopricks of *Liège* and *Cambray*, which being always under the protection of the *Belgic* Princes, partakers of their fortunes, either good or ill, and lying intermixt among their Estates, shall have their turn in the description of these Countries, divided generally

- | | | | | |
|------|---|--|-------------------|-------------------|
| into | { | 2 Bishopricks, | { | 1 Liège or Luyck, |
| | | 2 Cambray. | { | 2 Limbourg, |
| | | 4 Dukedoms, | { | 1 Limbourg, |
| | | 3 Luxemburg, | { | 3 Gelderland, |
| | | 1 Marquisate, viz. of the Holy Empire. | { | 1 Flanders, |
| | | { | 2 Artois, | |
| | | { | 3 Hainault, | |
| | | { | 4 Namur, | |
| | | { | 5 Zutphen, | |
| | | { | 6 Holland, | |
| | | { | 7 Zeland. | |
| | | { | 1 West-Friesland, | |
| | | { | 2 Utrecht, | |
| | | { | 3 Over-Tissel, | |
| | | { | 4 Maelin, | |
| | | { | 5 Groning. | |

Of these nineteen, two only did acknowledge the Sovereignty of the Kings of *France*, viz. *Flanders* and *Artois*; the Earls whereof were Homagers unto that Crown, but seldom did defend so low as do their Homage; quitted at last to *Philip* the second King of *Spain*, and his Successors, by King *Henry* the second of *France* in the Treaty at *Cambray*, anno 1558. The rest were held originally of the *German* Empire, and by *Maximilian* Emperour of *Germany*, and Regent of those Countries for his Son *Philip*, (who had a purpose to subject them to the Empire again) where made the tenth Circle of the Empire, called the Circle of *Burgundy*. But neither since, nor before that time; would the Princes of the House of *Burgundy*, acknowledge any such subjection, but governed these Estates as absolute Princes, without relation to the Empire, or Subordination to the Emperour or Imperial Officers; never appearing at the Diets, nor contributing to any Taxes there imposed, not holding themselves bound by any Constitutions which were made therein. So that these several Relations being out of use, we must behold it at this time as it stands divided betwixt the *Spaniards* and the *States*: beginning first with those Provinces which belong to the *Spaniards*, the true Proprietors of the whole; and therein first with *Flanders*, as of most esteem.

1. FLANDERS, and 2. ARTOIS.

These two I have thought fit to join together, because at first but one Estate; and though divided for a time, yet after five or six Descents again united, and have so continued ever since.

1. *FLANDERS* is bounded on the East with *Hainault* and *Brabant*, on the West with the *English* or *German* Ocean; on the North with the Seas of *Zeland* and a branch of the *Scheldt*, and on the South with part of *Picardy* in *France*, interposing betwixt *Calice* and *Graveling*. So called, as some say, a *Flandis*, because it lieth open to the winds; as others say, from *Flanders*, the Son of *Blesindus*, Daughter of *Clodion*, the second King of the *French*. Some fetch it from a Town of this name, situate in that part of the Country where now *Ardenburg* stands; so long since ruined, that very few except themselves could ever hear of it; and others (which I think

more

moft probable) from *Flandrina* the Wife of *Lideric* the fecond, the firft who governed in thefe parts by the name of *Forefter*.

The Soil is indifferently fruitful in Corn and Pafture; the Air healthful, temperate and pleafant. The whole Country not in length above 90 miles, and in breadth but 60, and yet containing in that compafs above thirty Cities, (for they reckon all Cities which be walled) and 154 Villages, which ftand fo thick, (as needs they muft in fo narrow a compafs) that the *Spaniards*, at their firft coming in with King *Philip* the fecond, took the whole Province for one Town. Divided commonly into 1. *Imperial*, 2. *Galicam*, and 3. *Tenonicam*; or 1. *Flanders Imperial*, 2. *Flanders Gallicam*, and 3. *Flanders Flammengant*.

1. **FLANDERS FLAMMENGANT**, which is the greateft of the three, is bounded on the Eaft with *Imperial Flanders* and the River *Scheld*, on the Weft with the *English Ocean*, on the North with the Seas of *Zeland*, and on the South with *Artois* and *Flanders Gallicam*. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Gaunt*, in *Latine* called *Gandavum*, feven miles in compafs, but taking in the Suburbs, which are great and large, the whole circuit is ten miles at leaft. One of the greateft Cities in *Europe* for extent of ground but not fo populous as many of a lefs capacity; there being much waite ground even within the Walls. Coming thence feated on the banks of the *Scheld* and the *Ley*, modiously together with 98 Bridges: and had not her many Seditions ruined her Beauties, (he might have been the Queen of *Europe*). In this Town were born *John Duke of Lancafter*, commonly called *John of Gaunt*, and *Charles* the fifth Emperour, and King of *Spain*: which laft, to refrain the people from their old Seditions, which had been very troublefome to his Predeceffors, (the *Gauntis* taking on them many times to rule in the place where flood the Princes) built a strong Citadel in the place where flood the Abby of *Saint Bavon*. For Churches, Monafteries, and other places of Devotion, there were, numbered in 55, all of them unfavourable to the grandeur and renown of the City; the private Buildings being alfo very ftately, if not Majestical. But now it is much fallen from its former glories, the often Seditions of this People drawing upon themfelves the vengeance of their angry Prince; and their Wealth much impaired by the long Wars, and the diversion of their Trading by the *Hollanders*, who command the Seas. 2. *Bruges*, or *Brugges*, more within the land. A Town that hath neither Port nor River, yet formerly of fuch Wealth, and the People in thofe times willing to thew it, that Queen *Joan*, the Wife of *Philip* the Fair, having been there, and marked the Pomp of the Women, complained that *She was not Queen alone*. The Town of four miles circuit within the Walls, wonderfully well peopled; the Buildings fair and fumptuous, (amongft which 60 Churches and Religious houfes) the Streets large and ftraight, and a fpaacious Market-place, from which the 6 principal Streets of the City do pafs direftly on to as many gates, which is very pleafant to behold. And though the Town hath neither Port, nor River as before was faid, yet was it anciently of fo great Trading, that it was accounted one of the four *Mart*-Towns of *Chriftendom*; flourishing chiefly by the benefit of the *English* Cloth, and fenfibly decaying when the *English* Traffick was removed hence to *Antwerp*. It was walled by Earl *Baldwin*, *an* 890, is diftant three leagues from the Sea, and feated on a fair and deep Channel made by Art, and filled with the waters of all the adjoining Fountains and Rivulets; which artificial Channels are in thefe Countries very frequent, to the great enriching of the whole State. 3. *Tyres*, a Town feated very ftrongly, and almoft im-

pregnable, on a fmall River fo named: a reasonable rich Town, and well built, though moft of the Houfes be of Timber, very well ferv'd with Water, conveyed into every houfe almoft in leaden Pipes, of which there is fo great a number, that the Foundations of it feem to be laid in Lead. 4. *Bourbourg*, a fine strong Town, but little pertaining to the French King in the right of the houfe of *Bourbon*. 5. *Comines*, on the River *Lys*, or *Ley*, beautified with a strong Caftle, and an excellent Library; but more in being the Birth-place of *Philip de Comines*, that notable States-man and Hiftorian. 6. *Courtray*, on the fame River of *Ley*, one of the ancientest Towns in *Flanders*, yet ftill continueth well built of very great ftrength both by Art and Nature, famous for a great Overthrow given the French, *Anno* 1301, for which the Town was called of long time the *Sepulchre of the Frenchmen*. 7. *Ardenburg*, (called in times paft *Radenburg*) a pretty Town enriched every year with a great Horfe-fair every Year, and beautified with one of the goodliest Churches in all this Province: the principal Town of that part herof, which properly is called *Flanders*; that name being firft given to the parts hereto adjoining, as fome conceive, and after by degrees communicated to the reft of the Country. 8. *Bierfort*, both a Town and Ifland, and furnifhed with a good and commodious Haven; yet not to be mentioned in this place, but that the falting of Herrings was here firft invented by one *William Bekekeles*, who died *anno* 1397. 9. *Winockeberg*, fo called of a goodly Abby built upon an Hill in the honour of St. *Winock* an *English* man of an holy life, facked by the French, *anno* 1538, but fince re-edified, and made more beautiful than it was before. 10. *Graveling*, on the Sea-fide, which, fince the taking of *Calice* by the French, hath been made the ftrongest Town in the Low-Countries. 11. *Oudenard* feated on the *Scheld*, a fair strong Town and of very great Traffick, efpecially for Tapeftry and the fineft Linens, which are here made: the Birth-place of *Margaret*, Dutcheffe of *Parma*, and Mother to *Alexander* Prince of *Parma*, that renowned Souldier.

The principal Ports of *Flanders*, being four in number are all of them feated in this part. 1. *Dunkirk*, a fmall but fafe Port, belonging to the French King (as doth *Graveling* alfo) in the right of the Houfe of *Vendofme*; but ftrongly Garrifoned by the *Spaniards*, even in times of Peace, becaufe of the importance of their fiteuation both by Sea and Land. Moft memorable in thefe days for that the People of it in the times of War fo infected the Seas. 2. *Sluys*, feated at the mouth of the Channel of *Bruges*, beautified with a very fair Haven able to contain 500 good Ships; and is now fubjeft to the State, with whofe fafety it could not well ftand to let the *Spaniards* enjoy any fafe and large Harbors for near unto them. Over againft it lieth the Ifle of *Cassand*, famous for the birth of *George* *Cassander*, a moderate and learned Papift) formerly as big again as it is at the prefent, having then a fair Town in it and many rich Villages, of which there is but one remaining, (of the fame name with the Ifland) the reft all fwallowed by the Sea. 3. *Nieuport*, a pretty Town, with a very strong Caftle, built on a well frequented Haven, but not very fafe, and therefore not much ufed by the men of War, nor made rich by Piracies, as *Dunquerque*; Near to this Town, *anno* 1603, was fought the Field-battle betwixt the Archduke *Albert* and the States; the Victory, next under God being gotten for the States by the valour of the *English*, and the excellent Conduct of the *Vere*. 4. *Opfend*, not walled till the Low-country Wars, and then but with a mud-wall only, and that not finifhed till the Arch-duke faid down before it: in fomuch as the Arch-duchefs *Isabel* is faid to have fworn, that she would not shift her fhock till the Town

were

were taken: who, had she kept that raft Oath, had been very lowlie; the Town (then garrifoned with *English*) holding out againft the faid Arch duke a Siege of three years and as many months.

2. **IMPERIAL FLANDERS**, fo called, becaufe it was long under the obedience of Emperours, is fevered from *Brabant* by the River *Dender*, and from the *Gallick Flanders* by the River *Scheld*, about *Oudenard*. It was fometimes called *Bracani*, of a Caftle of that name, destroyed by *Baldwin le Debonaire*, Earl of *Flanders*; and is now called the County of *Afls*, from the chief Town thereof fo named; the Jurifdiftion whereof, containing 170 Villages, extendeth as far as to the Walls of *Gaunt* and the Gates of *Oudenard*. The Town is strong, and indifferently fair, ftuate on the River *Dender*, moft famous in thefe times for a Fair of Hops which is kept there yearly. 2. *Hulft*, a walled Town, and the chief of the four Towns in the County of *Waes*; the other three being, 3. *Axle*. 4. *Mouchant*. 5. *Affende*; of which little memorable, but that they were all taken from the Empire by the faid *Baldwin le Debonaire* in the time of the Emperour *Henry* the Fourth. 6. *Dendermond*, ftuate at the mouth of the *Dender* where it eneth into the *Scheld*; a strong Town both by Art and Nature, and much enriched by making Fullians, and a weekly Market of Flax. A diftinct Seigniorie of it felf, with many rich Villages belonging to it; incorporated into the Earldom of *Flanders* by the Marriage of Earl *Lewis de Malaine* with the Lady *Margaret of Brabant*, to which houfe it formerly appertained. 7. *Rupelmond*, on the mouth of the River *Rupel*, where it falleth into the *Scheld*: Famous in former time for an ancient Caftle, in which were kept the Monuments and Records of the Earls of *Flanders*; more in late times for being the Birth-place of *Mercator*, that renowned Cosmographer. 8. *Mont-Gerhard*, called by the French *Gronnoy*, a fine and pleafant Town feated on the *Dender*. Which three laft Towns, together with *Bornhem*, a fair large Village, having fome Jurifdiftion on the parts adjoining, made up that Eftate which was called the *Proper* or *Domaine* of *Flanders*, becaufe not holden of the Empire or the Kings of *France*, but in the Sovereignty alone of the Earls herof.

3. **FLANDERS GALLICANT**, fo called from the French language there fpoken, lieth on the South of *Flanders Flammengant*; having *Hainault* on the Eaft, *Artois* on the Weft, and the Country of *Cambray* on the South. The chief Towns of it are, 1. *L'ifle*, in *Latine*, *Insula*, fo called from its Ifland-like fiteuation, among Ponds, Pools, Marfhes, dried up and made firm land by Earl *Baldwin de Barby*, who built the Town, *anno* 1007, which afterwards was called by *Baldwin de Lifle*, his Son (born in his Town, and hence fo named) *anno* 1066. The Town made rich by Manufactures and reort of Merchants, accounted the beft Town of Traffick, next *Amftterdam* and *Antwerp*, in all the *Netherlands*. Not far from which are to be feen the Ruins of an ancient Caftle called *Brug*, the Seat or Manor-houfe of the ancient *Forfevers*, who had the Government of this Country for the Kings of *France*. 2. *Dunoy*, (*Duacum* in *Latine*) a fair and strong Town feated on the *Schep*, having many Fountains, good Buildings, and a great number of Churches; made an University by King *Philip* the fecond of *Spain*, who built therein a Seminary or College for *English* fugitives. 3. *Orchies*, a pleafant Town, and well traded for the making of Serges; which, with the other two, make up the three Eftates of this part of *Flanders*. 4. *Armentiers*, an unwalled Town, but of very great Trading; there being yearly 250000 pieces of Cloth fent hence to *Italy*, and thence to *Constantinople*. 5. *Tournay*, (or *Dernick* as the Dutch call it) a great, rich, mighty and strong Town, feated on the *Scheld*, well built, and full of

ftately and magnificent Churches and Religious Houfes, and anciently honoured with a See Epifcopal. A Town of great importance, and much contended for betwixt the *Flammings* and the French; but finally fell unto the French by the eighth of *England*, *an* 1513, to whom the Citizens paid 100000 Ducats for their prefent Ranfom; refcued by him unto the French, *an* 1518, for the fum of 600000 Crowns; and finally from them recovered by *Charles* the fifth, who reforted it to the body of *Flanders*, from which it had been long difmembered; but fo that it is governed as a State apart, and to the Walls of *Tournes*, having a goodly Jurifdiftion over the Country round about it. 6. *St. Amant*, in the Country of *Tournes*, pleafantly feated on the *Schep*; in which is one of the richeft Abbies in all *Flanders*; the Abbot thereof having the temporal and fpiritual Jurifdiftion over it and the parts about it. And fo much for the Chorography of the Earldom of *Flanders*, inhabited by the *Nervii* and *Morini* in the time of *Cefar*.

2. **ARTOIS** is bounded on the Eaft with *Flanders Gallicam* and the Country of *Cambray*, on the South and Weft with *Picardy*, on the North with *Flanders Flammengant*, and the River *Lys*. The name is derived from the *Arrebat*, the old Inhabitants herof: the Air exceeding temperate, and the Soil fo fruitful, that it ferveeth as a Granary to a great part both of *Flanders* and *Brabant*.

On the Weft part herof towards *France* lieth the Earldom of *S. Paul*, fo called from the chief Town thereof; a goodly Seigniorie, and of great Jurifdiftion and Revenue, containing, befides many Villages, the good Town of *Pere*, a walled Town, and of great importance. The Earls herof were lineally derived from *Walleran*, brother of *Henry* the 7. Emperour of *Germany* and Earl of *Luxemburg*; the laft of which was *Lewis* of *Luxemburg*, made Countable of *France* by King *Lewis* the eleventh, with whom, as alfo with *Edward* the 4. of *England*, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, he paid fo many crofticks, that having long deluded them all, and kept them in a continual jealousie of one another, he was at laft by Duke *Charles* taken and beheaded. After whose death this goodly Seigniorie fell to the Houfe of *Vendofme* in *France*, by the Marriage of *Francis* Earl of *Vendofme* with *Mary* the Daughter of this *Lewis*; to whom it was adjudged by the power and favour of the French King's; the Heirs-males being made incapable of Succellion in it by the Attainder and Confifcation of the faid laft Earl by means whereof the Houfe of *Vendofme* was intituled to many fair Eftates in *Artois*, *Flanders*, *Hainault*, and much good Lands in *France*, which they were poffeffed of; *Francis* the 2. Son of that *Francis*, and *Francis* the only Son of this, being intituled, whilst they lived, Earl of *S. Paul*, and Dukes of *Tuicville*.

The Arms of thefe Earls were *Argent*, a Lion *Gule* armed and crowned Or, his tail forked of the fecond.

As for the residue of *Artois*, the Towns of moft importance in it are, 1. *Arras*, in *Latine* *Arrebatum civitas*, the chief City of the *Arrebat* the old Inhabitants herof in the time of *Cefar*, and till the chief City of this Province; a large, populous and well-fortified City, anciently honoured with a See Epifcopal, and stocked with an induftrious people, the firft makers of the Cloth of *Aras*, which took name from hence: divided into two diftinct Towns, both of them walled, and called by two feveral names; the leffer called *La Cite*, fubjeft to the Bifhop, beautified with a Fair and ftately Cathedral Church, and a Library containing many excellent Manufcripts; the leffer called *La Ville*, fubjeft to the Prince, having large Streets, and a rich Manfory of the yearly Revenue of 20000 crowns. By *Problemy* it is called *Regiacum*, feated within a bow-shot of the

S f

River

River *Scarp*, and heretofore the Metropolitan Town of *Flanders*, till *Arois* was dismembered from it; since which time the chief City of this Province, as before is said. 2. *S.Omar*, a fair Town, and well peopled, seated upon the River *Aa*, some eight Dutch miles from the Ocean; so called from *S.Omar*; or *Adamant*, Bishop of the *Morins*, who built a Monastery in this place, from which grew the Town, the second of esteem and rank in all the Country. Near to it is a goodly Lake of fresh water, in which are many little Islands affording good pasturage for Cattel: of which *Lewis Guicciardine* reporteth, that by fastning a Cord unto the Bufhes which grow in them, a man may draw them which way he will; and that under them there are found great numbers of Fifishes, who bed themselves there for shelter against the Weather. 3. *Bathune*, a strong Town; and feated amongst excellent Pastures, of which the people make great plenty of the best Cheefe: which, with the Territory hereof, fell to *Guy de Damperre*, Earl of *Flanders*, in right of *Maud his Wife*, Daughter and Heir of *Daniel* the Lord of this Town, honoured in that regard with the birth of their eldest Son, who from this place had the name of *Robert de Bathune*. 4. *Ayre*, on the *Liz*, a strong Town, with a Castle of great Antiquity. 5. *Barpaunne*, a little, but well Fortified Town; and yet more strong, because it cannot be beleegued for want of fresh water, which is not to be had within three Leagues of it. 6. *Renty*, an unwalled Town, but Fenced with a very strong Castle, beleegged by the French, Anno 1594, they being overcome in a fet Field by *Charles* the fifth, they were fain to raise the Siege and go home again. 7. *Hafdisfont*, on the confluence of two little Riversets, *Blangis* and *Cauche*; a Frontier-town on the edge of *France*; one of the strongest and most defensible places of all the *Netherlands*, built by *Charles* the fifth out of the ruins of old *Hafdisin*, which having taken from the French, he commanded it to be raied as no longer serviceable, and raised this Town in stead thereof, somewhat nearer *France*. 8. *Tervin*, or *Tervane*, the *Tervamae* of *Ptolomy*, and *Givius Marinus* of *Antoninus*a Frontier-Town, held for a long time by the French, by whom thought impregnable, till taken by King Henry the eighth, Anno 1513. they changed their opinion. A Siege not only memorable for the issue of it, but for two other matters of great moment The one, that the Emperour *Maximilian* came and served in person under the colours of *S. George*, with the English Cross upon his breast : the other, that the French intending to victual the Town, had so great an overthrow, that had the English followed their Fortune, they had opened a fair way to have made themselves masters of all France; the French King being so aflonished at all *France*; that he prepared to fly into *Bretaign*. But news hereof, that he prepared to fly into *Bretaign*. But the English more minded the Spoils and riches of *Tervin*, than the sequel of an absolute Victory; *Ei frui maluerunt victoria, quamuti*, as the Historian saith of *Hannibal*. It is now after many changes of Fortunes in the hands of the French, and by some reckoned and accounted of as Towns of Picardy. There are, besides these, three walled Towns more, that is to say, *Lillers*, *Lens*, and *La Bassée*, of which little memorabile, and to the number of 854 Villages.

Villages. These Countries of *Flanders* and *Artois* were anciently, if not a part, (as the parts hereof about *Tournay* most undoubtedly were) yet much of the same nature with the great forest of *Ardenne*, nothing but a continual waste of Woods and Defarts till the Conquest of it by the *French*; the Sea-coasts being then uncoppled for fear of the *Danes*, who by their frequent Piracies did much vex those Shores and the inland Countries meanly planted, for want of Corn and other necessities for the life of man : subject in

part to the greatt Princes of *Ardeme*, till the disfigurement of Earl *Brunniph* by *Dagobert* fole King of the *French*, by whom about the year 621 this wild Countrey, extending then as far as the River *Sonne*, and comprehending, besides *Artois* and *Flanders*, a good part of *Picardy*, was given unto one *Liderick* de *Buque* with the title of *Forsler*, to be holden under the Sovereign of that Crown. In whose posterity it continued with the title of *Forslers* till the time of *Baldwin* the first, the son of *Odoacer*, the seventh of the *Forslers*, whose names occur upon record; there being a long intermixture of their names and memories during the Ravagements and Depredations of the *Danes* and *Normans*. This *Baldwin* having first ravished, and afterwards married, *Judith*, Sister to *Charlet* the Bald, King of *France* and Emperour, was by him created Earl of *Flanders*, the Sovereignty thereof reserved as before it was: in whose Issue it remained intire, till *Philip* the first Earl of that name gave unto *Philip Augustus*, King of *France*, the Countrey of *Artois* with the Earldom or Countrey of *Fermandout*, part of *Picardy*, in Marriage with *Ishabel* his Niece, Daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainaut*. By *Lewis* the eighth, Son and Successor of *Philip Augustus*, *Artois* was given in Portion to his youngest Son *Robert*, made the first Earl of *Artois* by King *Lewis* the 9. An. 1234. And by the Marriage of *Lewis* the first of *Flanders* with *Margaret* the Heir of *Artois* and of the Earldom of *Burgundy*, both these Estates werecedd unto this of *Flanders*; now made far mightier than before. And yet before this great accession of Estate it was accounted the prime Earldom, as *Millane* was the prime Dukedom of *Europe*: these Earls being privileged to write themselves *Dei gratia*, all others *Dei clementia* only; and *Flanders* being now grown abroad to so great extent, that it was generally used for all the *Netherlands*. Finally, by the Marriage of *Margaret*, Daughter of *Lewis* de *Hainaut*, with the Earl of *Flanders*, to *Philip* the Hardy, Duke of *Burgundy*, this great Estate became united to that Houte, and afterwards was conveyed to that of *Austria*, as shall be shew'd hereafter in due time and place. In the mean season let us take a brief survey of

The Earls of *FLANDERS* and *ARTOIS*.

- 864 1. Baldwin, the first Earl of *Flanders*.
879 2. Baldwin II.
918 3. Arnulph, Son of Baldwin the 2.
964 4. Baldwin III. Son of Arnulph.
960 5. Arnulph II. Son of Baldwin the 3.
988 6. Baldwin IV. Son of Arnulph.
1029 7. Baldwin V.
1067 8. Baldwin VI. Earl of *Hainault*.
1070 9. Arnulph III. Earl of *Hainault*.
1071 10. Robert, Son of Baldwin the 5. and Brother of
Baldwin the 6.
1093 11. Robert II. Son of Robert the 1.
1111 12. Baldwin VII.
1118 13. Charles, Son of *Canutus*, King of *Denmark*,
and *Aedelize* the Daughter of *Robert the 1.*
1127 14. William, Son of Robert, the Son of William
the Bastard, Duke of *Normandy*, and of
Maudhis Wife, Daughter of Baldwin the 5.
1132 15. Theodorick of *Aflace*, Nephew of Robert the
1. by his Daughter *Heltrude*.
1169 16. Philip of *Aflace*, Son of Theodorick.
1191 17. Baldwin VIII. Earl of *Hainault*, succeeded in
right of *Margaree* his Wife, Daughter of
Theodorick, and Sister of Philip.
1199 18. Baldwin IX. Earl of *Flanders* and *Hainault*,
and Emperor of *Constantinople*.

3. HAINÁVULT

HAINEAULT is bounded on the East with *Namur*, on the West with *Flanders*, on the North with *Brabant*, on the South with *Picardy* and *Champagne* in *France*. It was anciently called *Salutis Carbonaria*, from the abundance of *Charcoal* made in the Woods and Forests of it; by some Writers of the middle times, the *Lower Picardy*; by the *Latine* Writers of these times called *Hannonia*. It seemeth to have taken this new name from the River *Hain* or *Hania*, which passeth through it, and the word *Hain*, signifying a Wood, as being overspread in a manner with the Forests of *Normandy*; *St. Amand de Faignd*, and that of *Poodberg*, and then *Hainaut* will be quasi *Hain*holz. i. e. a Country of VVoods and Forests on the River *Haine*. Thus called originally by the *French*, (as the word is improper); but by the *Dutch* best known by the name of *Haingow*, i. e. the Country bordering on *Haine*, as the name signifieth in that language.

The length thereof is 60 miles, 48 the breadth; comprehending in that compass 950 Villages, and 24 Towns; in and amongst which there is reckoned one Principate, 10 Earldoms, 12 Peerdoms or *Pairries*, 22 Baronies, 26 Abbeyes, one Lord Marshal, (besides other Officers of the Prince) descending by inheritance to the Lords of this Province.

The Air hereof is very good, and the Soil Fruitful, by reason the Country is watered with so many Rivers, as the *Scheid*, the *Sambre*, the *Dender*, and several lesser Streams, befides divers Lakes, Marfhes, Ponds and Pools, which do much enrich it, the Country abounding in most places with fresh Meadows and sweet Pastures, good Fruits, and profitable Trees, but especially with great plenty of Corn. Here are also some parts of it notable Mines of Iron and Lead, and excellent Quarries of the best Stone, fit for all kind of Buildings.

The principal of these Towns are, 1 *Mons*, situate at the confluence of *Haine* and a little River called *Trulle*, which gives a good natural strength unto it; fortified besides with a very strong Vall, three large deep Ditches, and an ancient Castle. The Town is great, beautiful and rich, adorned with sumptuous buildings, both private and publick, and replenished with wealthy Merchants and men of Trade; the principal of all the Provinces, erected into an Earldom by *Charles* the Great, and sometimes used for the style of *Earls of Hainnault*: In this Town is the noble Nunnery of *S. Valdrade*, once a *Duchess of Lorraine*, the Nunnes whereof are to be Ladies and Gentlewomen of Noble Families, in the morning apparelled in white, like Nuns, in the afternoons according to their Birth and Qualities; who when they please may leave the Cloister and be married. The Abbess hath Jurisdiction both in the Town and Country about it, and anciently did put the *Earls of Hainnault* into possession of the State. Another Nunnery like this (but not of such large Revenues) theris at 2 *Maubeuge* on the *Sambre* a good Town of Merchandise. 3 *Valenchiennes*, situate on the *Scheld*, and a little River called *Ronelle*, which make not only in it many pleasant fies, but pass almost under every man's house, to the great benefit and delight of the place and people. The life here is so strong by Nature (besides the Fortifications of Art) that on the one side it may be easily made unapproachable by water; and on the other side is so defended by Hills, that it can hardly be besieged but by three Armies at once. A goodly, large and beautiful Town, especially for publick Building: the Chief whereof are the Church of our Lady, built after the ancient

- 1205 19. *Joan*, eldest Daughter of *Baldwin* the Emperor, first married to *Ferdinand*, Son of *Sanche* King of *Portugal*, and after to *Thomas* the 3d Son of *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*; both in her right called Earls of *Flanders*.
- 1244 20. *Margaret*, Sister of *Joan*, and 2d Daughter of the Emperor *Baldwin*, Widow of *William* of *Dampierre*, governed the Eftate of *Flanders* as long as she lived, admitting *William* her eldest Son to the Title of Earl, which he continued till his death (being many years before his Mother's) Anno 1255.
- 1278 21. *Cy*, of *Dampierre*; the second Son of *Margaret*, admitted to the Title of Earl on the death of his Brother, and to the Eftate it self on the death of his Mother.
- 1304 22. *Robert* III. firnamed of *Bethune*; who married *Toland*, Heir of *Odo* of *Bourgoigne*, Earl of *Nevers*, by whom he had a Son called *Lewis*, who married *Mary* Daughter and Heir of *James* Earl of *Reibel*.
- 1323 23. *Lewis*, Son of *Lewis*, and Grand-son of *Robert* the 3. in right of his Mother Earl of *Reibel*, in right of his Grandmother, Earl of *Nevers*, and of *Flanders* in right of his Father and Grand-father.
- 1347 24. *Lewis* de *Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*; *Nevers* and *Reibel*, in right of his Father, and of *Artois* and of *Burgundy*, in right of his Mother, whom he fucceeded at her death, but the time I find not.
- 1369 25. *Philip* II. firnamed the Hardy, Duke of *Burgundy*, fucceeded in the Earldoms of *Flanders*, *Artois*, &c. in right of *Margaret* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Lewis* de *Malain*, whom he married folemnly at *Gant*, in the 1369. Of which *Philip* and his Suceffors in *these* Eftates we fhall hereafter fpeak in a place more proper.

The Earls of *ARTOIS*.

- 1234 1. *Robert of France*, Grand-son of *Philip Augustus*,
and *Johal* the Daughter of *Baldwin* the 8th,
made the first Earl by *Lewis* the 9th.
- 1245 2. *Robert II.* Son of *Robert*.
- 1302 3. *Otheline*, Earl of *Burgundy*, succeeded in right
of *Maud* his Wife, the Daughter of *Robert* the 2.
- 1315 4. *Philip* the Long, King of *France*, Earl of *Bur-*
gundy and *Artois*, in right of *Joan* his Wife,
the Daughter and Heir of *Maud* and *Otho*,
or *Otheline*.
- 1331 5. *Eudes*, Duke of *Burgundy*, Earl of *Burgundy*
and *Artois* in right of *Joan* his Wife, the eldest
Daughter of *Philip*.
6. *Philip*, the only Son of *Eudes*, in right of his
Mother, Earl of *Artois*, and so called in his Fa-
ther's life-time.
- 1349 7. *Philip III.* Son of *Philip* the II. and Nephew of
Eudes, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, and Earl
of *Artois*, who died young and without issue,
anno 1361.
- 1361 8. *Margaret*, Daughter of *Philip* of *France*, and
of *Joan* Countess of *Artois* and *Burgundy*, mar-
ried to *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, &c. succeeded
Philip 3. (being then a Widow) in the Earl-
doms of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, anno 1361.

The Arms of Flanders are Or, a Lion Sable, langued and armed Gules. Those of Artois being Semé of Flower-de-Luces Or, in a field Azure, a File of three Labels, Gules charged with as many Castles of the first.

manner of Architecture, with sumptuous Arches and goody Pillars of Marble and Porphyry; the Earl's Palace, and the Town-hall, Buildings of great magnificence and excellent workmanship. The Birth-place of Henry the 7th. Emperor of Germany, of Mary Daughter of Charles the Warlike, and of *Froilart*, the great French Historian. Finally a Town which, for the eminence thereof, is governed as a State apart by itself, having under the Jurisdiction of it 3 Towns, 132 Villages, which on occasion of Appeal resort not to the Provincial Council at *Monts*, but the great Council at *Meclun*. 4. *Chimay*, upon the River *Blanche*, near a pleasant Forest, which gives the title of a Prince to the eldest Son of the Duke of *Arschot*, one of the principal Lords of *Brabant*, who hath here a very goody Palace. 5. *Halle*, seated on the *Simme*, which runs through it, a place of great credit amongst the *Parus*, by reason of an Image of the blessed Virgin famed for many Miracles. Of which see *Lipsius* on that subject. 6. *Beauvais* or *Bavay*, an old Town, at a Pillar whereof begin all the ways leading into *France*, made of Pavestones by *Bruneault* the Wife of *Sigebert* King of *Meiz*, and *Austrasia*, who with *Prisegonde* the Wife of *Chilperic*, and *Katharine Medici*, the Wife of Henry the 2d, are said to be the three Furies of *France*. 7. *Landreux*, on the River *Sambre*, famous for the notable resistance which it made to Charles the 5th. 1543. 8. *Marientburg*, built by the Mary Queen of *Hungary*, Governess here for the said Charles, An. 1524, to serve as a Bulwark against *France*, on which it frontiereth. 9. *Philip-Ville*, built and well fortified for the same reason by K. Philip the 2d. 19 *Bouchain*, upon the *Scheld*, in the County of *Ofrinand*, which County is the Title of the first Son of *Hainault*: and by that name William the eldest Son of Albert Earl of *Hainault* and *Holland*, was admitted Knight of the Garter by King Richard the 2d. 11 *Conde*, a good little Town seated on the *Scheld*, the moiety whereof belonged heretofore to the House of *Montpensier* in *France*, as 12 *Eughen*, a Town of great Trade for Tapestry, to the House of *Fendefne*: from whence the Princes of *Conde*, and Dukes of *Enghein* do derive their Titles. 13 *Beaumont*, upon the knap of a goody Hill, whence it hath the name; belonging at the present to the Dukes of *Aerschot*, but anciently the Partage of the second Son of the Earls of *Hainault*. 14 *Binsor Binsche*, on a branch of the River *Hain*, one of the Jointure-Towns of the Countesses of *Hainault*, much beautified and made a place of pleasures by Mary Queen of *Hungary*, to whom it was given by Charles the fifth, (commonly called the *Queens Paradise*) but burnt and utterly destroyed by the French, An. 1554. 15 *Aerh*, seated on both sides of the *Dender*; a little, but a pleasant and wealthy Town; here being held the Staple of Linen for all this Country, and the Cloth here sold amounting to 200000 Crowns per annum. As for the History of *Hainault*, the ancient Inhabitants thereof were the *Nervii*, the most valiant and most potent people of all the *Gauls*, possessed not only of this Province, but of the whole Earldom of *Namur*, and some part of *Flanders*, able to bring, and *de facto* did bring into the Field, when the *Belge* murthered under their united forces against *Julius Caesar*, no fewer than 50000 fighting men. Won from the *Romans* by the French, they became a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, continuing so till the death of *Brunnibp*, discomfited and slain in battle by *Dagobert* sole King of the French, whom his Father in his life time had made Duke of *Ardenne*, and designed under the conquest of it. But the fury of the War being over, the parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant* which belonged unto it effaced upon other Houses, and the rest allotted out amongst his Children, *Alberic*, firnamed the *Orpelin*, one of his younger Sons, was by *Sigebert* King of *Meiz*, or

Austrasia, enfeoffed of this Country, by the name and Title of Earl of *Hainault*. Twice this Estate was added or united to that of *Flanders*. 1. In the person of Baldwin 9. Earl of *Flanders*, succeeding hereunto in right of *Richild* his Wife, Daughter of *Regnier* the 3d. 2. By the Marriage of Baldwin the 6th of *Hainault* with *Margaret* Countess of *Flanders*, Sister and Heir of *Philip of Alsace*, Earl of *Flanders*. But being divided the first time by the usurpation of *Flanders*, wrested from *Arnulph* the 3d. by his Uncle *Robert* and the second time by the intrusion of *John de Avesnes*, natural Son of *Margaret* the second Daughter of the Emperor *Baldwin*, into the Estate and Earldom of *Hainault*; it was finally annexed to *Holland* by the Marriage of *John de Avesnes* to *Adelize* or *Aleide*, Daughter and (at the last) Heir of *Florence* the 4th. Earl of *Holland*, *Zealand*, &c. From which it never was divided, till they were both incorporated into that of *Burgundy*.

The Earls of HAINAULT.

1. *Alberic*, one of the younger Sons of *Brunnibp* Earl of *Ardenne*.
2. *Wautier*, Son of *Alberic*.
3. *Wautier* II. Son of *Wautier* the first.
4. *Wautier* III. Son of *Wautier* the second.
5. *Albon*, in right of his Wife, eldest Daughter of *Wautier* the third.
6. *Albon* II. Son of the said *Albon* by that Wife.
7. *Manassier*, Son of *Albon* the second.
8. *Regnier*, Son of *Manassier*.
9. *Regnier* II. Son of *Regnier* the first.
10. *Regnier* III. Son of *Regnier* the second.
11. *Baldwin* V. of *Flanders*, and the first of that name in *Hainault*, succeeded in right of *Richild* his Wife, the sole Daughter to *Regnier* the third.
12. *Arnulph*, Son of *Baldwin* and *Richild*, dispossessed of his Estate and life by his Uncle *Robert*, who seized on the Earldom of *Flanders*.
- 1071 13. *Baldwin* II. Brother of *Arnulph*, succeeded in *Hainault*.
14. *Baldwin* III. Son of *Baldwin* the second.
15. *Baldwin* IV. Son of *Baldwin* the third.
16. *Baldwin* V. Son of *Baldwin* the fourth.
17. *Baldwin* VI. of *Hainault*, Son of *Baldwin* the fifth, and the eighth of that name in *Flanders*, into which also he succeeded in right of *Margaret* his Wife, Sister and Heir of *Philip of Alsace*, Earl of *Flanders*.
- 1199 18. *Baldwin* VIII. of *Hainault*, and 9. of *Flanders*, Emperor of *Constantinople*.
- 1205 19. *Joan* Countess of *Hainault* and *Flanders*, first married to *Ferdinand* of *Portugal*, and then to *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*.
- 1244 20. *Margaret* the younger Sister, of *Joan*, married to *William* of *Bouillon* Lord of *Damphier*, by whom she had *William* and *Guy* both Earls of *Flanders*.
21. *John de Avesnes*, base Son of *Margaret*, begot before her marriage by *Buchart* her Guardian the Prior of *St. Peters* in *L'Isle*, by force and fraud extorted *Hainault* from his Brethren born in lawful wedlock, and married *Alide* Daughter and Heir of *Florence* the 4th. Earl of *Holland*; whose Successors in both Estates we shall meet with there, and amongst them with *William* the 3. Father of Queen *Philippa*, Wife of *Edward* the 3d. one of the most considerable of all the number.

The Arms hereof are quarterly *Flanders* and *Holland*.

4. The

4. The Bishoppick of CAMBRAY.

Southward from *Hainault* lieth the Bishoppick of *CAMBRAY*, containing a goody Town and Territory, reckoned of anciently as a part of *Hainault*, now a State distinct, rather confederate with the Princes of the *Netherlands*, than subject to them.

The principal City hereof is *Cambray*, (called in *Latine Cameracensis*) situated on both sides of the River *Scheld*, a fair, goody and mighty City, full of people, many of which are rich Merchants, but all of them industrious, especially in making that fine linen Cloth from hence called *Cameras*, or *Cambrick*. The private Buildings are very fair, but the publick much fairer, especially the Monasteries and other Churches, of which the most remarkable is that of our Lady, an ancient and sumptuous Fabric, and the See Episcopal. From whence the Country and Territory hereunto adjoining is called *Cambrésie*, in which are divers Villages and places of importance. The chief of which are, 1. *Costeau Cambresis*, six leagues from the City, remarkable for the Treaty held there betwixt *France* and *Spain*, Anno 1559 in which a Peace was happily settled amongst all the chief Princes of Christendom, after a long and tedious War between those Kings and the Confederates of each: and before that, for the Confederacy there made by the said Kings of *France* and *Spain*, the Emperor, the Pope, and many of the Princes of *Italy*, against the Seignoury of *Venice*, Anno. 1568 called the *League of Cambray*. 2. *Avesnes le Sec*, (so called to distinguish it from *Avesnes* in *Hainault*) near which are digged excellent white Stones for building, little inferior unto Marble.

This Bishoppick was Founded in the person of *S. Diogenes*, a *Greecian* born, An. 390, or thereabouts: whose Successors in trade of time became so potent, that at the last the Bishop hereof became both the Lord spiritual and temporal of the Town and Territory, honoured with the title of a Duke, and Prince of the Empire, and was in the end made an Archbishop by Pope *Paul* the Fourth, An. 1562. And as for the City of *Cambray*, it was made Imperial by the German Emperours, afterwards by *Henry* the fifth, given in protection to *Robert of Jerusalem*, Earl of *Flanders*, and finally settled and confirmed on all his Successors by the Emperor *Frederick*, An. 1164. Which not withstanding, the French finding it convenient for them, divers times possessed it: but governing with too great insolence, they were driven out by the people in the time of *Louis* the 11th, and the Town yielded voluntarily unto *Maximilian*, Governour of these Countries for his Son *Philip*, Charles the fifth, in the year 1543, built a strong Citadel in it, pretending that he did it for defence of the Town against the French, but indeed to keep it for himself. After this it was taken by the Duke of *Alençon*, (Brother of *Henry* the 3. of *France*) then Governour of the *Netherlands*, An. 1582, but regained not long after by the *Spaniards*, the Inhabitants giving up the Town for want of vituals. Since that continually possessed by the *Spaniards*, and by them strongly garrisoned; but so, that the people still enjoy their ancient Privileges, and are governed by their own Laws and Bishops, as in former times.

5. NAMUR.

THE Earldom of *NAMUR* hath on the East *Hainault*, on the West the Bishoppick of *Liege*, on the North *Brabant*, and on the South *Luxembourg*; so called from *Namur* the chief Town of it; *Namurcum* and *Namnetensis Comitatus* in our *Latin* Writers. The Country is very small, containing only 182 Villages,

and four walled Towns, but plentiful of all commodities and replenished with a loyal and industrious people. Particularly the Air hereof is very wholsom; the Country watered with many Rivers and pleasant Brooks (amongst which the *Sambre* and the *Maes*) which, besides the benefit of Portage, yield great plenty of Fish. The Hills, whereof it hath not many, are clothed with Woods, abounding with all kind of Fowl and Venison; the Vallies eminently fruitful of all sorts of Grain, rich Mines of Lead, Quarries of Marble of all colours, as also of Porphyrie or Jasper, and great plenty of Coal. In Mines of Iron so abounding, and that continually hammered by a painful people, that *Vulcanus Forge* may seem to be restored to the world again and seated here; which as it makes the people wealthy, so it keeps them from idleness. And as for the Nobility they are generally valiant, given to all military exercises fit for their degree, and very affectionate to their Princes, the greatest virtue of a Subject.

Walled Towns it hath but four, as before was said; that is to say, 1. *Namur*, the chief of all the Province, where resideth the Council for the Country, from which lieth no Appeals but to *Archelin* only. Seated it is between two Hills on both sides of the *Sambre*, which doth there fall into the *Meuse*. The City is rich, inhabited for the most part by the Nobility, defended with a strong Castle, and beautified with a fair Cathedral. Founded here in the Church of *S. Albin*, Anno 1559. Not far off in the Villages of *Ardenne* and *Monsieur* are two Nunneries of Ladies, like those of *Monts* and *Mabouge*, spoken of in *Hainault*. 2. *Boisvies*, upon the *Meuse*, sacked by the French, Anno 1554, since repaired and fortified. 3. *Charlemont*, a small Town, but of most exact Fortifications, built by Charles the fifth, An. 1555, to oppose the French, who had then possessed themselves of *Marientburg* a Town of *Hainault*. 4. *Valencour*, a little Town, but standing in a goody and fruitful Country. Of the Villages the chief is *Douc*, seated on the *Meuse* or *Maes*, fortified with a strong Castle, and honoured with the title of a Viscountie. 2. *Floren*, 3. *Vesvie* and 4. *Sanfon*, of much beauty and greatness.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were a part of the *Nervii*. It was first made an Earldom by some of the Descendents of the Sons of *Clodion*, the second King of the French, who being dispossessed of their Father's Kingdom by *Meroveus*, the Master of his Horse, (to whom he had committed the Guardianship or Tuition of them) were forced to betake themselves to the most defensible places of the great Forest of *Ardenne* and the parts adjoining, where they founded the great Earldoms, of *Ardenne* and *Moselle*, as before is said, divided in succeeding times into many parcels, of which this is one. By what and how many Earls this Earldom was possessed, I am yet to learn, the Estate being small, and consequently the Princes of it not much considerable. They were allied to the Royal House of *France*, by the Marriage of *Albert* Earl hereof with *Irmingarde* Daughter of *Charles* of *France*, the first Duke of *Lorraine*; and after unto the House of *Flanders*, by the Marriage of *N.* the Daughter and Heir of *Peter*, the last Earl of that race, to *Henry* the Second, Son of *Baldwin* the eighth of *Flanders*, and Brother of *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, and the first Emperor of the *Latines* in *Constantinople*, whom he succeeded in that Empire. After whose death it came by *Toland* his Daughter to *Peter* Earl of *Auvergne*, who succeeded also in the Empire, and after his decease to *Philip* his younger Son. But he deceasing without Issue, and *Robert* his elder Brother reigning in *Constantinople*, it was seized on by *Philip* the Brother of *Henry*, who, to assure themselves thereof, took to Wife *Mary* Daughter of *Philip Augustus* King of *France*, by a Niece

or

or Cousin of this Philip it was conveyed in Marriage to Henry Earl of Luxemburg; (the Father by a former Wife of Henry the seventh, Emperor and Earl of Luxemburg) and finally brought back again to the House of Flanders, by the Marriage of Guy of Dampierre Earl of Flanders, by Isabel Daughter of that Henry by the Heir of Namur, and in his Issue it continued (for ought I can find) till it was swallowed up with the rest of the Belgick Provinces, by the House of Burgundy. So that the highest we can go in search of the Earls of Namur, is to the time of Hugh Capet and Charles of Lorraine, which was 540 years after the coming in of the Sons of Clovis. From which time downwards the Succession is confused and broken, and towards the latter end discontinued for 140 years. Such as are left upon Record I have drawn together (not without much trouble) in as good order as I could, and here present them in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Earls of NAMUR.

1. Albert, Co-temporary of Hugh Capet, spoken of before.
2. Godfrey the Son of Albert, and Father of Alice Wife of Baldwin the fifth of Hainault, and Mother of Baldwin the sixth of Hainault, and the eighth of Flanders.
3. Peter the Son or Brother of Godfrey.
4. Henry the second, Son of Baldwin the eighth of Flanders, in right of N. his Wife, the Heir of Peter, Emp. of Constantinople, also on the death of Baldwin the 9th, his elder Brother.
- 1216 5. Peter II. Son in Law of Henry Emperor of Constantinople, and Earl of Namur.
- 6, 7. Philip, the younger Son of Peter and John the elder Brother of Henry, both taking to themselves the title of Earl of Namur, the one at Constantinople, the other in the Netherlands, and both deceasing without Issue.
8. Philip II. Brother of John and Henry without Issue also.
9. John II. surnamed of Dampierre, the third Son of William of Dampierre by Margaret Countess of Flanders, Daughter and Heir of the Emperor Baldwin, succeeding by the gift of his Mother, challenging the disposing of it as next Heir of Philip the second, or in the right paramount of the Earldom of Flanders, enjoyed upon a better Title by
10. Guy of Dampierre, Earl of Flanders; and elder Brother of John the second, in right of Isabel his Wife, Daughter of Henry Earl of Luxemburg by the Heir of Namur; but I neither find her Name nor Parents.
11. John III. Son of Guy and Isabel.
12. John IV. Son of Guy, by a former Wife, the Brother of John the third by the whole blood being absent or unfriended, and so put beside.
13. Guy II. the Brother of John the Fourth by the same Venter.
14. John V. Son of Guy the second, who in the year 1307. married a Niece of Lewis the ninth of France, by Robert Earl of Clermont, a younger Son.
15. John VI. who in the year 1420. sold his Estate to Duke Philip the Good, to be enjoyed by him on the death of Theodore, the next Heir here of, inform, and (as it seems) without hope of Children.
16. Theodore, or Theodorick, the last Earl of Namur, after whose Death Duke Philip entered on this

Earldom by the former Contract, and as the next Heir of the House of Flanders it continuing ever since into his Posterity.

The Arms hereof are Or, a Lion Sable, bruiſed with a Bend Gules.

6. LUXEMBURG.

LUXEMBURG is bounded on the East with the Moselle and the Land of Trier, on the West with the Meuse or Maas and a branch of the Forest of Ardenne, on the North with Luyckland, Namur, and a part of Hainault, and on the South with the Dutchie of Lorraine; so called from the Castle near the Town of Luxemburg, selected by Sigefride the first Earl hereof for his Seat and Residence.

The whole is divided into parts: the Eastern part being called *Favanne*, fruitful of Corn, and yielding withal some Wines, some Mines, and many excellent Quarries of goodly Stone, the Western called *Ardenne*, a remainder of that spacious Forest, which sometimes overshadowed all this Country, barren of Corn, but very plentiful of Venison, and of Fowl good store.

The people of this Country are not all of one Language: those nearer Germany, as in Luxemburg, Arlon, Rodemack, Theorville and the rest on that side speaking the Dutch; as those of Montmedy, Marville, Dampvillers, with the rest bordering on France, do corrupt or broken French, in which regard the Pleadings held before the Council residing in Luxemburg are made in both Languages, that so they may be understood by all that have business there. But the Nobility and Gentry (of which there is more in this Province than in any other of the Seventeen) speak both Tongues perfectly. A breed of men full of Vertue, Courtesie, and Hospitality towards one another, and of great Truth and Faith to their Prince: but reckoned for the worst Landlords in all these Countries; governing their Subjects and Tenants like the Peasants of France, contrary to the use and Liberties of the rest of the Netherlands. Both sorts, as well the Nobility as the Commons, hate both Law and Lawyers, and for the most part end their Controversies amongst themselves without any Process.

The whole Country containeth in compass about 70 leagues, or 200 Italian miles, in which are comprehended 23 walled Towns, and 1168 Burroughs and Villages: The principal of which are, 1. Luxemburg or Luxemburg, built in the place where anciently stood the *Augusta Vermaniorum* of Ptolomy; and took this new name *quasi Lucis burgum*, from the Image of the Sun there worshipped; seated on the *Alsummus* or *Alze*, which runneth through it; large and of a strong situation, but not very well built, nor yet recovered of the spoils which the long Wars betwixt the French and the Spaniard brought upon it before the Treaty of Cambray. However it is the chief Town of the Province, honoured with the Residence of the Council hereof, and the Sepulchre of John King of Bohemia, slain in the Battel of Cressy against the English, An. 1348. 2. Arlon, on the top of an Hill, so called *quasi Ara Luna*, from an Altar consecrated to the Moon in the time of Paganism. 3. Theorville, on the Moselle, over which it hath a goodly Bridge; a Frontier town near Metz, and the Border of Lorraine, and for that cause made marvellous strong; but taken by the French, An. 1558. and restored the next year by the Peace of Cambray. 4. Boffelack, a fair Town, and very well traded, commonly called the *Paris* of Ardenne, in which part it standeth. 5. Montmedy, on an high Hill, at the foot of which runneth the River Chiers. 6. Dampvillers, once a very strong place also, both taken and ranſacked by the French, An. 1552. 7. Marville

7. Marville, upon the Chiers, the one half whereof be-longeth to the Duke of Lorraine, the other to the King of Spain as Duke of Luxemburg, for which cause it is called *la Ville Commune*, 8. Rock di March, fortified with a strong Castle. 9. Tois, a place once of great importance, sacked by the French, An. 1552. and restored by the Treaty of Cambray, on condition it should never more be walled. 10. La Frette on the Chiers, a Town of the same condition.

In the skirts of this Country towards France standeth the Principality of Sedan, extended all along the banks of the River Maas, from the borders of Lorraine on the South, to the great Forrest of Ardenne and the Dukedom of Bouillon on the North. A small, but very fair Estate, of fruitful Soil, and beautified with many rich Villages, and some Towns of note: the principal whereof are, 1. Jamais upon the borders of Lorraine, by the Duke whereof it was taken after a long season, from the Lady Charlotte, the last Heir-general of the House of Mark, An. 1585. and laid unto that Dukedom as a part thereof. A place of great importance, and therefore much contended for by each Pretender. 2. Dunchery, a strong Town of War, bordering on Tiraphe in Picardy, to which by some it is ascribed. 3. Sedan, in Latin called *Sedunum* ad Mosam, because situate on the banks of the Maas or Mosel; the usual Residence of the Prince: a fine neat Town, well fortified, and planted with 80 brass pieces of Ordnance; is honoured with a seat of Learning, which being of a middle nature betwixt a Grammar-School and an University, is in the Criticism of the times called a *Schola illustis*, to which men may send their children to learn good Letters, though they can take in them no Degrees, that being a privilege reserved only to the Universities. So that these Schools may be somewhat like our Collegiate Churches of *Westminster*, *Winchester* and *Eaton*, but that the younger Students in these last named are more restrained to Rhetorick and Grammar, than in the other, though these more liberally endowed for the encouragement and reward of Learning than all the *Schola illustis* of either Germany. 4. Moson, a Town of great strength and consequence on the River Maas, upon some jealousies of State, garrisoned by the French, as also in Sedan it self, and most of the other good Towns belonging unto this Principality; but so that the Revenues of it, execution of Justice, and all other rights of Sovereignty, are still enjoyed, as formerly, by the Lords thereof.

This estate anciently was a part of the Dukedom of Bouillon, from which it was diffembred for the Portion of the young Prince, at such time as Godfrey Earl of Ardenne and Bouillon succeeded in the Dukedom of Lorraine, after Charles and Otto the first Dukes; or else excepted and reserved by Godfrey, surnamed of Bouillon, Duke of Lorraine, and King of Hierusalem, when he sold the Dukedom of Bouillon to the Bishop of Liege. By many mean Conveyances and alterations of the Owners it came at last to the House of Ardenberg, a Family of great wealth and power in Westphalen, (a Province of Germany not far off) by the Heir-general of which House it was brought in Marriage to Engelbert Earl of Mark, about the year 1330, from whom descended Robert Earl of Mark, and Sovereign of Sedan with the Towns annexed, who succeeding his Mother in the Estates of Sausy and Florenge, first holden of the Dukedom of Bouillon, and eagerly offering to unite the Estates together, (as they had been anciently) purchased the Town and Title of Duke of Bouillon of Eberhard Earl of Mark, his Brother, Bishop and Cardinal of Liege, and consequently Duke of Bouillon also. Proud of his honour, and being somewhat too stiff in maintaining the Rights of his new Dukedom against a Sentence passed in the Imperial Chamber, in a Suit there

depending betwixt two of his Vassals, he took up Arms against the Empire, with far more courage than discretion. For being in the court of that War worsted by Charles 5. (for whom he was too weak an Enemy) the Town of Bouillon, being taken by the conquering Emperor, was afterwards restored to the Bishops; and nothing but the Title of Dukes of Bouillon left to the Princes of Sedan. And that he might be able to hold Sedan, this Robert was fain to return again to the protection of the French, (as his Ancestors from the time of Charles 8. had done before) and died Anno 1535, leaving his Titles and Estate unto Robert his Son, one of the Marshals of France, whose Grandson, called also Robert, being a dear friend and companion of Henry of Bourbon King of Navarre, and afterwards of France also, dying without Issue at Geneva, Anno 1588, committed to him the disposal of his Estates, and of the Lady Charlotte his only Sister. And he so well discharged his trust, that (having settled his own affairs) he gave the Lady in Marriage to Henry de la Tour, Vicount of Turenne, in France, (one who had done him very good service in the course of his long War, against the Leaguers) and with her the possession of Sedan, and the Title of Bouillon; whose posterity do still enjoy it. The whole Succession of these Princes we shall find in Bouillon, of which more anon.

But to return again unto the Dutchie of Luxemburg, It was at first a part of the great Earldom of Ardenne, dismembered from it in the time of the Emperor Otto the first by Sigefride the Son of Ricinus Prince thereof, who, in the division of that Estate amongst his Brethren, had this for his Portion, with the Title of Earl. Of his Successors there is little to be found upon good record in a constant order of Succession, until the time of Henry 1. Father of Henry 2. Emperor of Germany, and they of a most considerable, though all of them of eminent quality in their several times, viz. 1. Henry, elected and crowned Emperor by the name of Henry 7. laid to be poisoned by a Friar in the holy Chalice, to prevent some designs he had against the Pope, in asserting the Imperial power in Italy. 2. John, the Son of this Henry, chosen K. of Bohemia, in regard of his Marriage with Elizabeth the Daughter of Wenceslaus King thereof, the possession of which Realm he left unto his posterity, advanced unto a Dukedom by Charles 4. the eldest Son of this John, in the person of Wenceslaus his younger Brother. What else concerns it we shall find in this following Catalogue of

The Earls and Dukes of LUXEMBURG.

1. Sigefride, the Son of Ricinus, Prince of Ardenne, the first Earl of Luxemburg.
2. Gilbert, the Father of Ogine, Wife of Baldwin the fourth of Flanders; but whose Son I find not.
3. Godfrey, Earl of Namur, was also Earl of Luxemburg by the right of Marriage, Father of Agnes the Wife of Simon the second Duke of Lorraine.
4. Conrad, perhaps the Son of Godfrey by the Daughter of Luxemburg, Father of Catharine, Wife of Matthew the second, Duke of Lorraine.
5. Henry Earl of Luxemburg, slain in the quarrel of Raimond Earl of Geldres, contending with John Duke of Brabant for the Dutchie of Limbourg.
6. Henry II. Son of Henry the first, by means of his Brother Baldwin, Elector of Trier, was chosen Emperor of the Germans, the seventh of that name, Anno 1308, first crowned at Aken,

- Aken*, and afterwards at *Rome*; one of the last Emperors that meddled in the affairs of Italy.
- 1313 7. *John*, Son of *Henry II.* Earl of *Luxemburg*, married *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Winceslaus* the elder, K. of *Bohemia*; which was upon that Marriage elected and crowned King, *Anno* 1311, in the life of his Father; slain by the English in the Battle of *Cressy*, *Anno* 1346.
- 1346 8 *Winceslaus*, the younger Son of *John*, created Duke of *Luxemburg* by his elder Brother *Charles* the 4th, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*.
- 1583 9 *Winceslaus II.* eldest Son of the said *Charles 4.* Emperor and King of *Bohemia* also, succeeded his Uncle in the Dukedom.
- 1419 10 *Sigismund*, Brother of *Winceslaus*, succeeded *Winceslaus* in all his Estates; to which he added the Crown of *Hungary*, by the Marriage of *Mary*, Daughter of King *Lewis* the first.
- 11 *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *John Duke of Gorizia*, (a Town of *Lusatia*) the Brother of *Sigismund*, by the gift of *Sigismund* her Uncle, becoming then alive, the better to fit her for the Bed of *Anthony* of *Bourgoyn* Duke of *Brabant*, after whose decease he married *John* the 3. Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c. But having no Issue by either of them, she fold her interest in this Dukedom to Duke *Philip* the Good.
12. *Philip* the Good (succeeded on the Sale aforesaid made by the said *Elizabeth*, in pursuance of the Contract and agreement made at her first Marriage, for settling this Estate in the House of *Burgundy*. Of whom, and his Successors in these *Belgick* Provinces, we shall speak hereafter.

The Arms are *B.* fix Barrulets *A.* supporting a Lion *G.* crowned and armed *Or*.

7. LIMBOURG.

THE greatest of the Estates of *Belgium* for extent of Territory, at the time of their incorporating in the House of *Burgundy*, was that of *Brabant*, comprehending 5 of the 19 Provinces; that is to say, the Dukedom of *Limbourg* and *Brabant*, the Marquisate of the Holy Empire, and the Seigniory of *Mechlin*, with the Sovereignty of *Liege* or *Luxemburg*.

LIMBOURG hath on the East the Dukedom of *Guilick* in High *Germany*, on the West the Bishoprick of *Liege*, on the North *Brabant*, and on the South the Dukedom of *Luxemburg*. The Soil is fruitful of all necessary Commodities, excepting *Wines*, the want whereof is recompensed with most excellent Wheat, great store of *Fewell*, and plenty of the best Iron Mines in all these Countries: all which Commodities it hath of so great excellency in their several kinds, that it is said of them proverbially, that their Bread is better than Bread, their Fire hotter than Fire, and their Iron harder than Iron. It is also well stored with medicinal Simples, and enriched with a Mine of *Copperas*, (by *Pliny* called *Lapis arseus*, lib. 34. c. 10.) which being incorporated with *Brafs* makes *Latrin*, and increaseth the *Brafs* by one third part. *Lapis arseus multum aris habet, & ex eo fusifus aris*, as that Author hath it.

It is one of the least of the *Belgick* Provinces, containing in it but 125 Villages, and no more than five walled Towns or Cities; viz. 1. *Limbourg*, which gives name to the whole Estate, pleasantly seated on a Hill amongst shady Woods, under which runneth the River *Wejdes*; which,

having watered the whole Country; emptieth it self into the *Maes*; well built, and fortified with a very strong Castle, mounted upon a steep Precipice, of no facile access. 2. *Valkenburg*, called by the French *Fauquemont*, a reasonable fair Town, with a large Territory, two Dutch miles from *Maestrich*; conquered from *Reynold*, Lord hereof, by *John* the third Duke of *Brabant*. 3. *Dalem*, a little Town with a Castle, the Territory thereof extending beyond the *Maes*; conquered by *Henry Duke of Brabant*, of that name the second. 4. *Rhode le Duc*, a little old Town with as old a Castle, half a league from *Valkenburg*. 5. *Capeen*, situate between *Guilick* and *Collen*, beautified with a Collegiate Church and a strong Castle, in which thereto a Governor with a good Garrison for defence of the place. Each of these Towns hath Jurisdiction on the parts adjoining, but with Appeal unto the Chancery at *Brabant*.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Tract, and the Bishoprick of *Liege* adjoining, were the *Eburones*. When it was first made an Earldom, I am yet to seek. Most probable it is, that lying within the Verge of the great Forest of *Ardenne*, it was at first a member of that Earldom also, dismembered from it for the Portion of some younger Son, as *Luxemburg* and *Namur* were, or seized on by some strong Pretender (as *Guilick* was) when *Godfrey* and *Baldwin* Dukes of *Lorraine* and the direct Heirs of the House of *Ardenne*, were absent in the *VVars* of the Holy Land. But whensoever & by whomsoever it was made an Earldom, certain it is, that of an Earldom it was made a Dukedom by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, An. 1172. *Henry*, one of the Dukes hereof, married his Daughter *Margaret* to *Godfrey* the third, Duke of *Brabant*, which gave that House some colour to pretend unto it; backed with a better Title on the Death of another *Henry*, the last Duke of *Limbourg*, whose next Heir, *Adolph*, fold it to *John*, Duke of *Brabant*, pretending to it in the right of the former Marriage. An. 1293. But *Reynold* Earl of *Geldris*, thinking himself to have a better Title than *Adolph* in right of *Ermengrady* his Wife, the Daughter of *Herman*, a late Duke hereof, but in his place, and challenged by force of Arms; but being vanquished and taken prisoner by the said Duke *John* in the Battle of *Warancan*, was slain, for his Release, to release all his Claim and Title to the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, after that quietly enjoyed by the Dukes of *Brabant*, till they fell both together to the House of *Burgundy*.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, a Lion Barrie of ten pieces, *Or* and *Gules*.

8. LUTCK-LAND, or, the Bishoprick of LIEGE.

WESTWARD of *Limbourg*, but a far mightier Estate than it, lieth *LUTCK-LAND*, as the *Dutch*, or the Bishoprick of *LIEGE*, *Leodiensis*, as the *Latin* and French Writers call it; anciently under the protection of the Dukes of *Brabant*, and afterwards of the Princes of the House of *Burgundy*, as Lords of that Country. By some it is accounted of and described as a part of *Germany*; but for the reasons before mentioned I shall place it here. It is environed on all sides with the *Belgick* Provinces, that is to say, with the Dukedom of *Limbourg* and the Earldom of *Namur* on the East, with *Brabant* on the North and West, on the South with *Luxemburg*.

The Air hereof is very wholesome, and the Earth as fruitful, abounding with all kind of Grain and Fruits with some store of *VVine*; and as for *Fleish*, *Fish*, and *Fowl* and *Venison*, it hath very great plenty, and that too of excellent taste: less fertile it is in such parts hereof as lie towards *Luxemburg* in which it is most swelled with Hills, and over-spread with shady Woods, remainders of the great

great Forest of *Ardenne*, within which it stood. But the chief Riches of this Country is under ground, consisting in mines of Lead and Iron, and some few of Gold; Quarries of *Alabaster*, mingled with all sorts of Marble; rich veins of *Brimstone*, and unexhaustible pits of Coals: which last it hath in such abundance, that there is digged within the compass of one league of the City of *Liege*, not only sufficient for that great City, but to much over-plus, as being sold at mean prices of the Country, amounts unto 100000 Ducats of yearly value. The Coal much sweeter than elsewhere, and of nature contrary to all other Coal, in that it is kindled with water, and quenched with oil, and the strong fervour of it taken off by casting Salt on it.

The whole Country containeth 24 walled Towns, and 1800 Villages. The principal of which are 1. *Liege* or *Luyck*, (in *Latin* *Legidium*) situate in a pleasant Valley environed with Hills, the *Meuse* entering it in two branches, accompanied with four lesser Rivers, which make in it many delightful Islands. The compass of it is about four miles; the ordinary Buildings very fair, all built of Stone; the Bishops Palace a magnificent and sumptuous place; the Churches in number forty, of which eight are Collegiate, 32 Parochial, all of them for their riches and beauty exceeding all in any City of *France* or *Germany*. Besides these, there are so many Convents, Monasteries and Religious Houses about the Town, that taking all together they amount to an hundred; all of them of such fair Revenues, so well endowed, and the Religious Persons there of so great authority, that it is called the Paradise of Priests, and that deservedly. It is also an University of good antiquity, wherein were Students at one time 9 Kings Sons, 24 Dukes Sons, 29 Earls Sons, besides Barons and Gentlemen; the greatest part of which were Canons of the Church of *S. Lambert*, which is the Cathedral of the City. Yet notwithstanding it hath tasted of the malice of Fortune as well as others, being first destroyed by the *Danes*, then by the *Normans*, twice taken, and once destroyed by *Charles* of *Burgundy*, *Anno* 1468. Subject it is unto the Bishop as Lord temporal of it; from whom (being long since made an Imperial City) there lieth an appeal to the Chamber of *Spire*. 2. *Dinant*, upon the *Meuse*, near *Namur*, of very great Traffick, till destroyed by *Charles* of *Burgundy* in the same year with *Liege*: hardly recovered of which wounds, it was again sacked by King *Henry* the second of *France*, *Anno* 1548. 3. *Museyk*, upon the *Meuse* or *Maes* also, a league from whence is the fair Nunnery of *Thuren*, of the same nature with that of *Mons* and others spoken of before: the like to which there is near 4. *Bissen*, another Town of this Bishoprick; the Abbesses of each having the privilege of Coining both Gold and Silver. 5. *Lontz*, by the *Dutch* called *Borchwin*, in the County of *Disfigne*; made a County in the time of *Charles* the Great, the Title and possession of *Ogier* the *Dane*, so famous in the History of *Gallen* of *France* and others of the old Romances. 6. *Franchimont*, which gives the Title of a Marquis to the Bishop of *Liege*. 7. *Centron*, or *St. Truden*, a fair Town, so called of the Abbey dedicated to that Saint. 8. *Hay or Hoey*, so called of a violent River which there runs into the *Meuse*. 9. *Tingres*, the City of the *Tongris*, which together with the *Eburones* were once the inhabitants of this Tract; in which, are still the ruins of a Temple consecrated to *Hercules*. Anciently it was an Episcopal See, translated hence to *Maestrich*, and at last to *Liege*; and in those times so great and of such renown that *Attila* the *Hun* destroyed in it 100 Churches; now but a very small Town, and not worth the mentioning but for these Antiquities. Eight leagues from hence amongst the shady Thickets of the Forest of *Ardenne*, is 10. that

so celebrated Village, and those famous hot Baths frequented from all the places in *Europe*, called the *Spa*; not so pleasant as wholesome, not so wholesome as famous. Yet are they good for sundry distempers, as the Tertian Ague, the Dropick, the Stone, the Exulceration of the Lungs, the Sciatica, &c. They are of most virtue in *July*, because they are then hottest; and to such as taft them they relish much of Iron, from some Iron Mines, it seemeth, through which the waters run, which feed them. These Baths were of great fame in the time of *Pliny*, who doth thus describe them: *Tongri Civitas fontem habet insignem, plurimis bullis stillantem ferruginei saporis, quod ipsum non nisi in fine potius intelligitur. Furgat hic corpora, febre tertiana discurit calculorumque sitia*. So be, lib. 31. c. 2. agreeably to the nature of them at this present time.

This Country (not taking the Dukedom of *Boillon*, though now reckoned as a part thereof, into this account) followed the same Fortunes with the rest of *Belgica*, till the Conquest of it by the French, by whom it was made a part of the Kingdom of *Lorraine* in the division of which fell unto the share of the Kings of *France*, and *Germany* it most wholly on the West or French side of the River *Maes*, which parted their possessions in that broken Kingdom. Won from *Latharicus* the French King (the last but one of the *Caroline* Race) by *Orho* the 2. it was by him made part of the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, then by him created, and continued as a part thereof, till, then by *Godfrey* of *Boillon*, Duke of *Lorraine*, sold to the Bishops of *Liege*, (of which more anon) since which time it hath been the Patrimony of those wealthy Prelates. As for the Bishoprick of *Liege*, it was founded at *Tingres*, as before was said; after the sackage of which City by *Attila*, it was removed *Anno* 498. by *S. Servatius* unto *Maestrich*. But the people of *Maestrich* having martyred *S. Lambert* their Bishop, *Anno* 710, by *Hubert*, his designed Successor, with the leave of *Pope Constantine*, it was translated to this place, and a Cathedral Church here founded by the name of *S. Lambert*. His Successors did so well husband their advantages that they did not only buy the Dukedom of *Boillon*, but the City and Territory of *Liege*, fold unto *Spemius* and *Obernus* successively Bishops of it by *Godfrey* of *Boillon* Duke of *Lorraine*; at his departure hence to the Holy Land: not much increased since that in Lands, though they be in Titles, the Bishop being filled a Prince of the Empire, Duke of *Boillon*, Marquis of *Franchimont*, Earl of *Loetz* and *Hainbin*. Yet are not his ordinary Revenues above 30000 Ducats yearly; 1. his Subjects living very well under him, at ease Rents, and growing for the most parts unto good estates. An argument of may be, that when the *Liegeois* had rebelled against *Philip* the Good, Duke of *Burgundy* (under whose Clientele they were as Dukes of *Brabant*) they bought their Peace of him at the Price of 600000 *Florens* of the *Rhene*, *Charles* the Warlike, (as they have been observed to be the most rebellious City in *Europe*, excepting *Gamm*) they were able to wage 30000 men; but not being able to withstand the Forces of their Lord Protector, they fell into that miserable destruction spoken of before. Since that time they have lived with more moderation under the protection of the Princes of the House of *Austria*: but were counted Neutral in Quarrels betwixt the King of *Spain* and the States *Confederate*, as formerly between the *Spaniards* and the French; though many times they suffer in the contentions.

Southward hereof betwixt it and *Luxemburg*, lieth the Dukedom of *Boillon*, subject unto the Bishops of *Liege*, but a State distinct, and holden by a different Title. It taketh up a great part of that Country which

more particularly and specially is called the Forest of *Ardenne*, with the Woods thereof many places over-shadowed; but not unprovided of fair Towns and wealthy Villages. The principal of which are, 1. *Loni*, and 2. *Muljon-Courty*, destroyed by *Charles* the fifth, in his War against *Robert Earl of Mark* and Duke of *Bouillon*, but, on the Peace ensuing, repaired again. 3. *Sausi*, and 4. *Floringe*, Fiefs, as before is said, of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, but possessed by the Sovereigns of *Sedan*, since the time that *Robert Earl of Mark* and Sovereign of *Sedan* had them in Marriage with *Joan* his Wife, the right Heir thereof, from whom came *Robert Earl of Mark*, the first Duke of *Bouillon* of that Family. The last a pretty Town, till destroyed by the *French*, in the Wars betwixt *Henry* and *Philip* the seconds, Kings of *France* and *Spain*, since passing in account as a principal Village. 5. *Hierk*, of the Forest of *Ardenne*, the cause of the great War betwixt *Charles* the fifth and *Robert Duke of Bouillon*, spoken of before; the Emperor having passed sentence in behalf of the *Embrises*, who laid claim unto it, and *Robert* favouring the pretensions of the House of *China*. 6. *Bouillon*, built on the side of a Hill near the River *Semo*, a fair large City, and beautified with a goodly Castle on the top of the said Hill, and commanding over a large and goodly Territory, so strong, as well by Art as Nature, that before the use of great Ordnance it was held impregnable; much spoiled in the War betwixt *Charles* the fifth and *Robert of Mark*, and tossed from one Master to another in a little time, for being taken from *Earl Robert* by the power of *Charles*, it was from him gotten by the *French*, *an. 1552*, and finally restored to the Bishop of *Liege* by the Treaty of *Cambray*, *an. 1559*, but without prejudice to the Claim and Title of the Prince of *Sedan*. So that there are no fewer than three distinct Families which at this time enjoy the Title of Dukes of *Bouillon*, that is to say, the Bishop of *Liege*, who hath precedence of Title, and the possession of the City, the House of *de la Tour*, who hold *Floringe*, *Sausi*, and some other pieces; and the Heirs-males of the collateral Line of the House of *Mark*, who hold *Lunaigne*, *Roefhorst*, and some other places, but of less importance.

This Dukedom, once a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, in the division of that Estate betwixt the Children of *Ricquene*, Prince or Earl thereof, fell to the share of *Godfrey* his eldest Son, (*Sedan* with its appurtenances then belonging to it) with the Title of Earl of *Ardenne* and *Bouillon*. By *Godfrey* his Son it was united to the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, who succeeded into that Estate after *Charles* and *Orbo*, and by another *Godfrey* the first Duke of *Lorraine* dismembered from it, and given in Dower with his Sister *Ida*, at her Marriage with *Eustace Earl of Boulogne* in *Picardy*. Of these was born the famous *Godfrey*, commonly called *Godfrey of Bouillon*, since he became he was here educated, or in regard he was Duke hereof before he did attain to the Dukedom of *Lorraine*; who, to provide himself of necessities for the Wars of the Holy Land, (so fortunately conveyed as afterwards by him) sold first this Dukedom unto *Orbo*, as Bishops of the whole Country of *Luxembourg* to *Speunim*, Bishops of *Liege* successively, and their Successors for ever; which though accounted by most Writers for a part of *Luxembourg*, or of the Bishoprick of *Liege*, call it which you will, was notwithstanding held by those great Prelates as a State distinct, and governed under them by the Estates of the Country, from whose Sentence there lay no Appeal. The maintenance of which Privileges, on an Appeal made by the *Embrises* unto *Charles* the fifth, cost *Robert Earl of Mark* to dear, who had not long before purchased this Estate of his Brother *Eberhard*, Bishop and Cardinal of *Liege*, as was said before. The rest of the Story we have had already in our description of *Sedan*: we will now look upon the Princes which have born these Titles.

The Dukes of Bouillon of the House of Ardenne.

1. *Godfrey*, the eldest Son of *Ricquene*, Prince or Earl of *Ardenne*, the first Earl of *Bouillon*, and Husband of *Matilda*, a Daughter of the Emperor *Orbo* the 2.
2. *Godfrey II.* Son of *Godfrey* the 1. who in the year 1004, by adoption of Duke *Orbo* his Cousin, and the power of *Henry* the 2. Emperor, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*.
- 1019 3. *Gozelo*, Brother of *Godfrey* the 2. Duke of *Lorraine* and *Bouillon*.
- 1044 4. *Godfrey III.* Son of *Gozelo*.
5. *Eustace*, Earl of *Boulogne*, and *Ida* his Wife, Daughter of *Godfrey* the 3. by him endowed at her Marriage with the Dukedom of *Bouillon*.
6. *Godfrey IV.* surnamed of *Bouillon*, Son of *Eustace* and *Ida*, on the death of his Uncle *Godfrey*, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, *Anno 1078*, and died King of *Jerusalem*. Going unto the Wars of the Holy Land, he held this Dukedom to *Orbo* Bishop of *Liege* and his Successors, *anno 1096*, who did accordingly enjoy it till the year 1509 or thereabouts; when it was sold by *Eberhard* of *Mark* to his Brother *Robert*, of whose descent and Successors you may take this view in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Sovereigns of Sedan, and Dukes of Bouillon of the House of Mark.

1. *Engelbert*, the ninth Earl of *Mark* in *Germany*, by marrying with the Daughter and Heir of *Aremberg*, added *Sedan*, *Tamais*, &c. to the House of *Mark*.
2. *Everhard*, second Son of *Engelbert* by the Heir of *Aremberg*, Lord of *Aremberg*, *Sedan*, &c.
3. *John*, Son of *Everhard*, Earl of *Mark*, Lord of *Aremberg*, *Sedan*, &c.
4. *Everhard II.* Brother of *John* Earl of *Mark*, &c.
5. *John II.* Earl of *Mark*, Son of *Everhard* the 2.
6. *Robert* of *Mark*, the 2. Son of *John* the 2. Lord of *Sedan*, his elder Brother *Everhard* succeeding in the Estates of *Aremberg*. He added *Floringe* and *Sausi*, Towns of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, to his other pieces.
7. *Robert II.* Son of *Robert* the 1. Sovereign of *Sedan*, and Duke of *Bouillon*, which Dukedom he purchased of *Everhard* his Brother, Bishop and Cardinal of *Liege*.
- 1534 8. *Robert III.* Son of *Robert* the 2. one of the Marshals of *France*, Sovereign of *Sedan*, and Titular Duke of *Bouillon*.
- 1556 9. *Henry*, Son of *Robert* the 2.
10. *Robert-William*, Son of *Henry*, zealous in the Reformed Religion, and a great follower of *Henry of Vendigie* King of *Navarre*, to whom, dying at *Geneva*, *anno 1588*, he bequeathed the care of his Estates.
11. *Charlotte*, the Sister of *Robert-William*, married by *Henry of Navarre* (then King of the *French*) to *Henry de la Tour*, Viscount of *Turenne* in *France*.
12. *Henry de la Tour*, Viscount of *Turenne* in *France*, descended from the Heirs-general of *Eustace Earl of Boulogne* and Duke of *Bouillon*, by Marriage of the Lady *Charlotte*, and the gift of *Henry* the 4. of *France*, succeeded in the Sovereignty of *Sedan* and Title of *Bouillon*; a Protestant, and the Founder of the *Schola Illustris* in *Sedan*.

13. D.

13. *De la Tour*, Son of *Henry* by one of the Daughters of *William* Prince of *Orange*, succeeded his Father in his Estates, but not in his Religion also, which, to ingratiate himself with the *French* King, he exchanged for Papistry, made thereupon one of the Marshals of *France*, and now living *Anno 1648*.

9. BRABANT, 10. THE MARQUISATE, and 11. MECHLIN.

These I have joined together, though distinct Estates, because they have a long time followed the same fortune, and that the two last do no otherwise differ from the first than the parts from the whole; the *Marquisate* and *Mechlin* being now reckoned as parts of *Brabant*, and included in it.

1. *BRABANT* is bounded on the East with *Luxembourg* and the Bishoprick of *Liege*, on the West with the River *Scheld* and a part of *Flanders*, on the North with the *Maes*, which severeth it from *Holland* and *Gelderland*, and on the South with *Hainault*, *Namur* and a part of *Luxembourg*: as called *guasi Brackland*, that is to say, a barren Land, as at first it was; or from the old *Brabantium*, which *Cesar* placeth in this Trade; but from whether of the two is not yet determined.

The Air hereof is generally very wholesome and good, and the Soil naturally fruitful, excepting *Kempenland*, (being the parts thereof lying towards the North) which being barren of it self, is made indifferently fertile by keeping Cattle, Soiling the ground, and other arts of good Husbandry. The people live in most freedom, and are the best privileged of any in *Belgium*. A thing for which they are more beholden to the Prince's goodness, than their own great vices: being noted to be none of the wisest, especially as they grow in age, when most men learn wisdom. *Brabant*, *quo magis fenscent, eo magis stultescunt*, as *Erasmus*.

The length hereof, from *S. Gertruydenburg* to *Gembours*, North and South, is 22 Dutch or German miles; from *Helm* to *Bergen of Zoome*, East and West, 20 of the same miles; the whole compass 80. Within which circuit are contained 26 walled Towns, and Villages with Parish Churches 718; of which the odd 18, called *France* or Market-Towns, enjoy the Privileges of walled Towns or Cities, though unwall'd themselves.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Hertogen Bosch*, or the *Bosch*, as the Dutch *Bos le Duc*; or *Baldue*, as the *French*; and *Sylvia Ducis*, or *Bosnum Ducis*, as the *Latins* call it: each name derived according to their several Languages, from a pleasant Wood, belonging to the Dukes of *Brabant*, where the Town now stands, situate on the little River called *Diesse*, some two Leagues from the *Maes*, near the borders of *Gelderland*. A large and well-built Town, very strongly fortified, and of great trade for Clothing, here being made yearly in the time of *Lewis Guicciardine* 20000 Clothes, worth 200000 Crowns to the Clothier or Draper: Made an Episcopate Sec., *an. 1559*, the Cathedral, which is fixed in the Church of *S. John*, being fair and large, and beautified with one of the goodliest Dials in the Christian world. This is the principal Town of *Brabant* (properly and distinctly so called) comprehending under it the four Countries of *Kempenland*, *Masland*, *Peelland*, and *Overwick*, and was taken by the Confederate States from the King of *Spain*, after a long and chargeable Siege, *anno 1628*. 2. *Tilmon*, on the little River *Geet*, once chief of *Brabant*, but long since decayed. 3. *Aerschot*, on the little River *Demere*, which gives the title of Duke to them of the noble House of *Croy*, descended from the Kings of *Hungary* (of which we spake before at large when we were in *Picardy*) the

Dukes hereof (advanced unto that honour by *Charles* the fifth) being men of greatest Revenue and Authority of any in *Belgium*. 4. *Bergen of Zoome*, so called from the River *Zoome* upon which it is situate, about half a league from the influx of it into the *Scheld*, and not far from the Sea; which gives it a reasonable good Haven. A Town of great strength by nature, but more strongly fortified; famous for being made a Marquisate by *Charles* the fifth, *an. 1553*; more for the notable Resistance which it made to the *Marquis Spinola*, *an. 1622*. 5. *Byede*, upon the River *Merck*, a Town pleasantly seated, well fortified, and of great Revenue, having under it the Town and Territory of *Steenberg*, the Franchise of *Rosendale*, and the Seigniority of *Offenhou*; the Residence, Barony, and chief Town of the Princes of *Orange*, from whom being taken by the *Spaniard* in the beginning of those wars, it was again recovered by some venturesome Gentlemen, who hiding themselves in a Boat covered over with Turf, were conveyed into the Castle, which they easily mastered, and made the Prince Lord of it again; after retaken by the *Spaniard*, *an. 1623*, but now in the possession of its natural Owners, to whom it came by the right of the House of *Nassau* by the Marriage of *Engelbert* the 7. Earl of that House, with *Mary* Daughter and Heir of *Philip* the first Duke hereof, about the year 1400. 6. *Diesse*, on the River *Demere*, a good Town and invested with a goodly Territory, belonging to the Prince of *Orange*, whose Ancestors of the House of *Nassau* had it in exchange for some other Lands of the Duke of *Cleve*; and in right hereof he is Burgave of the City of *Amstrep*. 7. *Grimbergen*, an ancient Barony, with a large Jurisdiction, defendible on the youngest Son only, after the manner of *Burg Englis*, as our Lawyers call it. 8. *Gertruydenburg*, standing on the *Douge*, not far from the influx of it into the *Maes*, the farthest town in the North of *Brabant*, where it joins to *Holland*; which makes it a matter of dispute betwixt those Provinces, to which of them it doth belong. A Town of great trade for Fishing, plenty of Salmons and Sturgeons being taken here, but of Sheds especially, whereof 18000 are sometimes caught in a day, fatted, and sent abroad into Foreign parts. It acknowledgeth the Prince of *Orange* for the Lord thereof, as doth also 9. *Grave*, a good Town upon the *Maes*, bought by these Princes of the King of *Spain* without consent of the States, without whose approbation no part of the Domain is to be dismembered. 10. *Masfriebe*, (in *Latine* *Traxellum ad Mosam*) so called of a Ferry over the *Maes* in former times; supplied now with a goodly Stone-Bridge in the place thereof. A fair and goodly Town, beautified with two Collegiate Churches, in one of which the Dukes of *Brabant* were always Canons; subject in part to the Bishop of *Liege*, and partly to the Duke of *Brabant*. The Children are subject to that Prince to whom the Mother was subject at the time of the Birth, without relation to the Father according to that Maxim of the Civil Law: *Partus sequitur ventrem*. And if a Stranger come to live there, he must declare to which of the two he will be subject. Yet is the Duke of *Brabant* the chief Sovereign of it, he only having the power of Coining, and of granting Pardon to Offenders: and as a Town of this Dukedom it was bequeathed and taken by the Confederate States, *anno 1632*.

Here is also within the limits of this Dukedom the Town and Seigniority of *Rosvleissin*, situate on the banks of the *Maes*, held by the Dukes of *Cleve* of the Duke of *Brabant*, but no otherwise subject: and on the same River the Town and Country of *Horn*, a Fief Imperial, beautified with a strong Castle and a goodly Territory; in which is *Wiert*, the Residence of the Earls of *Horn*; descended of the ancient House of *Montmorency* in *France*.

2. The **MARQUISATE OF THE EMPIRE**, so called because the farthest Bounds and Marches of the German Empire fronting on *Flanders*, which appertained unto the Sovereignty of the Crown of France, comprehended four of the best Towns in *Brabant*, with very large and spacious Territories adjoining to them: viz. 1. *Lovain*, on the River *Dille*, about four English miles in compass; but in that compass much of the ground is taken up with Vineyards, Gardens, Meadows and pleasant Fields, which make the situation far more delightful than if all built and peopled. It was the Mother-Town of *Brabant*, and sometimes gave the Title of an Earl to the Dukes thereof: afterwards was made an University by Duke *John* the 4. *an.* 1426. wherein are contained about 20 Colleges, such as they be, much privileged, and enriched with Penions for publick Readers, by King *Philip* the 2. 2ly, *Brussels*, (*Bruxella*) the Seat of the ancient Dukes of *Brabant*, and of the Dukes of *Burgundy* also, after they came to be Lords of those Countries; seated upon the *time*, and other sweet Springs and Rivers, which make it one of the sweetest situations in all *Europe*, having withal a goodly Chanel made by Art from *Brussels* to the River *Dille*, and from thence to the *Scheld*, the charge whereof amounted unto 500000 Crowns. It is of the same compass with *Lovain*, the Building sumptuous, and the Town very rich, not only in regard that it is the ordinary Seat of the Prince or his Regent, and the Chancery for all *Brabant* and the Duchy of *Limbourg*; but in regard of the rich Manufactures of Armour and Cloth of *Arras*, of Silks, Gold and Silver, which are there industriously pursued. 3. *Nivelles*, on the borders of *Hainault*, in a very rich and fruitful Soil, remarkable for the abundance of fine Linen which is therein made, but most of all for a very rich Nunery (or rather a Nursery) of noble Ladies of the same nature with those of *Mons* and others before described. 4. *Antwerp*, situate on a goodly Plain on the River *Scheld*, above 17 leagues from the Sea, but furnished with eight Channels, cut out of the River for the Transport of Commodities, one of the which is capable of 100 great Ships. The private Buildings are very handsome, but the publick sumptuous; the chief whereof were reckoned the Church of *Nolre-Dame*, the Burse, the Town-house, and the House of the Easterlings or Eastern Merchants. Well peopled it is, and of so great Trade in former times, that it was held to be the richest Empory of the Christian World; the Commodities here bought and sold amounting to more in one month than those of *Venice* in two years. The causes of which sudden growth and increase of Trading are said to be these. 1. The two *Marts* holden here every year, either of them during fix weeks, in which time no mans person could be arrested, or his goods distrained. 2. The King of *Portugal* having in the year 1503 diverted the course of Merchandise from *Alexandria* and *Venice* to the City of *Lisbon*, kept here his *Factories*, and sent hither his Spices and other *Indian* Commodities: for which cause the Merchants in the year 1516 forsook *Bruges* in *Flanders*, and settled here. And 3. many of the Nobility and Gentry, during the long and bloody Wars betwixt France and Spain, forsook their Country-houses and repaired hither: by means whereof *Antwerp*, in a very little time grew bigger by 3000 houses than it had been formerly. But as the growth hereof was sudden, so the fall sensible; occasioned through the yoking it with a *Cittad* by the Duke of *Alva*, which made Merchants afraid to resort any longer thither, as a place of little freedom and less security; but chiefly by blocking up the Haven and intercepting the Trade at Sea, by the more powerful *Hollanders*, which hath removed this great Traffic to *Amsterdam* and other Towns of their Country. So that now the chief support of it is the reputation which it hath of being an Imperial City,

the place of receipt for the Kings Revenues, and a Bishops See founded here in the year 1559, which draweth hither some resort of Lawyers and Churchmen.

3. The Seigniorie of **MECHLIN** consisteth only of that City and a small Territory of 9 Villages adjoining to it. The City is seated on both sides of the River *Dille*, which ebbeeth and floweth to the Town and a league above it, and runneth through the very midst, maketh in it a number of small Islands, to the great ornament and commodity of it. A goodly Town containing seven Parishes-Churches, besides the Cathedral, being the See of an Archbishop, founded here in the year 1559. Strong, in regard it may be easily drowned on all sides; and of great wealth, by reason of the many Manufactures of Lincen, great Artillery of Brasse and Iron, Bells, Painted works, and others of like use and ornament. And being situate in a manner in the Centre of *Brabant*, distant 4 Leagues from *Antwerp*, *Lovain*, and *Brussels*, it was made by *Charles* the Warlike (who loved the place) the ordinary Seat of the great Council of State, to which Appeals are made from the other Provinces. But yet it was more beautiful in former times than it is at the present; the City being much decayed by firing 200 Barrels of Powder, *an.* 1546, and by the Sackage of the *Spaniards*, by whom it was taken by force, *anno* 1572. Most memorable at this time for a famous Nunery, like to that of *Nivelles*, wherein are sometimes 1600 Nuns, who when they please may leave their Cloister and be married. A Town though in *Brabant*, yet not of it, but a State distinct: for which cause many Women at the time of their Child-birth use to lay down their Bellies in some Village of *Brabant*, that their Children may be capable of the Privileges and Immunities of that Country. The principal of the Villages is named *Leest of Heyff*, pleasantly seated on an Hill, the residue of the Burroughs lying at the foot thereof. Both Town and Villages were the Patrimony heretofore of the noble Family of the *Bertholds*; which failing in the person of *Gautier*, slain in the Battell of *Warancan* by *John* Duke of *Brabant*, it fell the one half to the Bishop of *Leige*, who fold his moiety to *John* the 2 Duke of *Brabant*; the other to the Earl of *Gelders*, who in the year 1333 fold his part unto *Lewis* of *Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*. But he fold nothing but the Title; *John* the third Duke of *Brabant* having seized upon, and added it to his Estate: the occasion of some quarrel between those Princes, compounded by the Marriage of *Lewis* with the Heir of *Brabant*.

But to return again unto *Brabant* it self, the ancient Inhabitants heretofore were the *Aduaticci* and some part of the *Tongri*: it was accompanied by the *Romans* a part of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, and by the French a Province of the Kingdom of *Frace*, or *Austrasia*; the Southern parts thereof towards *Hainault* unto the Governance and Command of the Earls of *Ardenne*; the Northern parts lying towards the Sea, and terribly infected by the Depredation of the *Danes* and *Normans*, committed to the care of some principal Officers, whom they called *Lords Wardens of the Marches*. *Theobert* Son of *Theodorick* the first King of *Austrasia*, accompanied with *Orilo* a *Boatman* Prince, having repulsed these common Robbers, obtained for *Orilo*, of his Father, the command of those Countries, and possession of a great part of them also, by the Title of Lord Marquess of *Antwerp*, the fourth from whom, called *Arnulph*, was the first Maior of the Palace (of this House) to the Kings of France, made as it were hereditary unto his Successors. By *Dagobert* the first, sole King of the French, that part of this Country which was under the Earls of *Ardenne* being taken from them, the whole Estate was conferred on *Ansegisus*, the Son of *Arnulph*, with the Title of Duke of *Brabant*. The actions and achievements of so many of them as were

Maiors

Maiors of the Palace we have already seen when we were in France. The whole Succession follows here in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Marquesses of Antwerp and Dukes of BRABANT of the German or Boiarian Race.

1. *Orilo*, Son of *Theobert*, the first Duke and Nephew of *Aldigerius*, the last King of the *Boiarians*.
2. *Hugbert*, Son of *Orilo*.
3. *Aspert*, the Son of *Hugbert*, and Husband of *Plybilda*, Daughter of *Cloaire* the first of *Brussels*.
4. *Arnoldus*, the Son of *Aspert*.
5. *Arnulph*, Son of *Arnoldus*, the first Maior of the Palace of this Family.
6. *Ansegisus* Son of *Arnulphus*, Marquess of *Antwerp*, and Maior of the Palace by *Dagobert* the first made Duke of *Brabant*.
7. *Pepin*, surnamed the Fat, Son of *Ansegisus*, Successor to his Father in his Honours, Offices and Estates, and was herein succeeded by
8. *Charles* the base Son of *Pepin*, for his valiant acts surnamed *Martel*, there being no lawful Issue of his Father living.
9. *Pepin* II. surnamed the Short, Son of *Charles Martel*, having managed the Affairs of France from the death of his Father for the space of ten years, usurped the Kingdom, and was solemnly crowned King at *Souffry* by *Boniface* Archbishop of *Mentz*, on *May-day*, A. 751. The Duke of *Brabant* returning by this means to the Crown of France, continued a Province of that Kingdom, till the division of the French Empire among the Sons and Nephews of *Lewis* the Godly; when it was made a Member of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*. Not long before the fatal period of that Kingdom, having been many years before divided by the River *Moselle* betwixt the Emperours of Germany and the Kings of France, (each taking to themselves the Title of Kings of *Lorraine*) it was by *Lotharius* the 3 of France, in whose share it lay, conferred on *Charles* his youngest Brother, together with the Title of the Dukes of *Brabant*. But indeed this Donation proved of little worth, the greatest part thereof, together with the rest of that part of the Kingdom of *Lorraine* which of right belonged unto the French, being conquered by the Emperor *Otho* the 2. and by him added to the Empire. And yet this also fell out in fine to the profit of *Charles*, who being Cousin-german to this *Otho* the 2. by the Lady *Gerburg*, (Sister of *Otho* the 1. and Wife of *Lewis* surnamed *Transmarine*, Kol *France*, the Father of *Charles*) was by him invested into the great Dukedom of *Lorraine*, that Dukedom in the full latitude and extent thereof containing the modern Dukedom of *Lorraine*, *Gulick*, and *Brabant*, with the Lands of *Luxemb*, with parts of the Lands of *Triers* and *Loain*. *Brabant* at that time had the name of *Basie* (or *Low*) *Lorraine*, and as in memory thereof, there is a Court for criminal & civil Causes held at *Gernep* (one of the Franks or Market-Towns of *Brabant*) called *La Cour de Lorraine* to this day; an Estate first created, as before is said, by the Emperor *Otho* II. who giving it to the said *Charles* of France, referred out of it, as a Dowry for his said Aunt *Gerburg*, the Towns and Territories of *Lovain*, *Brussels*, *Nivelles* and *Heir* of *Otho* the Son of *Charles*: above mentioned being put besides her hopes of that fair Inheritance by her Brother *Otho*, (who gave it to *Geoffrey* of *Ardenne*) succeeded her Grandmother, the first *Gerburg*, in the Towns and

Territories of *Lovain*, *Nivelles*, and *Brussels*; which the conveyed in Marriage to *Lambert*, one of the Sons of *Reynor* of *Hainault*, with the title of Earl of *Lovain*. *Henry* his Son having made himself Master of *Antwerp* also, was by that means possessed of the whole Marquisate, but still retained the title of Earl of *Lovain*. *Godfrey* the 6. Earl, having enlarged the bounds of his Dominions by the Conquest of the rest of the Country, *Godfrey* & *Baldwin*, Dukes of *Lorraine*, being then absent in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, was by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth (whose Sister he married) created the first Duke of *Brabant*. *John*, the first Duke of that name, added heretofore the Duchie of *Limbourg*, and *John* the third, the Seigniorie of *Malin*: or *Mechlin*. How it became united to the House of *Burgundy* is to be seen in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Earls of Lovain and Dukes of BRABANT of the Race of Charlemagne.

1. *Lambert*, one of the Sons of *Regnier* Earl of *Hainault*, made the first Earl of *Lovain*, in right of *Gerborg*.
2. *Henry* the Son of *Lambert*, who took *Antwerp*, making it the head City of the Marquisate of the holy Empire.
3. *Lambert* II. Son of *Henry*.
4. *Henry* II. Son of *Lambert* the second.
5. *Henry* III. Son of *Henry* the second.
6. *Henry* IV. Son of *Henry* the third.
7. *Godfrey*, surnamed *Barbatus*, Brother of *Henry* the fourth, in right of his descent from *Charles* Duke of *Lorraine* challenged the Country, and recovered it from the House of *Ardenne*; and finally by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth was created the first Duke of *Brabant*, *an.* 1108. Father of *Adolphe*, the second Wife of our *Henry* the first, and of *Josceline* de *Lovain*, the Progenitor of the late Earl of *Northumbreland*.
8. *Godfrey* or *Geoffrey* II. Son of *Godfrey*.
9. *Godfrey* or *Geoffrey* III. Son of *Godfrey* the 2.
10. *Henry* V. Son of *Godfrey* the third.
11. *Henry* VI. surnamed the Good, Son of *Henry* the fifth.
12. *Henry* VII. surnamed the Magnanimous, by whose Marriage with *Sophia*, Daughter of *Lewis* the sixth, Landgrave of *Thuringia*, the Landgravedom of *Hildesheim* came into this House; invested in it the person of *Henry* his Son by the said *Sophia*.
13. *John*, Son of *Henry* the seventh, took in the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, and destroyed the potent Family of the *Bertholds*: his younger Brother *Henry*, by another *Vener*, succeeding in *Hessia*.
14. *John* II. Son of *John* the first, bought of the Bishop of *Leige* the moiety or one half of *Mechlin*.
15. *John* III. Son of *John* the second, added the whole Estate of *Mechlin* to the Dukedom of *Brabant*.
16. *Joan*, the eldest Daughter of *John* the third, married to *Winceslaus* the first Duke of *Luxemburg*, but died without Issue.
17. *Anthony* of *Burgundy* Son of *Philip* the Hardy and the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, daughter of *Devis* de *Malain* Earl of *Flanders*; and of *Margaret* the Sister and Heir of *Joan*, after the death of the said *Winceslaus* and *Joan* his Wife, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, his elder

- elder Brother *John* giving way into it, at the request of their great Aunt *Jean*, the Proprietress of it.
- 1415 18. *John IV.* Son of *Anthony*, by his first Wife *Jean*, Daughter of *Wateran*, Earl of Saint *Paul*.
- 1426 19. *Philip*, the second Son of *Anthony* and Brother of *John* the 4.
- 1430 20. *Philip II.* called the Good, Duke of *Burgundy*, Son and Heir of *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, elder Brother of *Anthony*, on the death of his two Cousins german, *John* and *Philip* succeeded in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, as the direct Heir of the Lady *Margaret*, Wife to *Lewis de Malain*, and Daughter of *John* the third, the last Duke of *Brabant*, of the House of *Lovain*. Of whose Successors more in another place.

The Arms hercof are *Sable*, a Lion *Or*.

12. HOLLAND. 13. ZELAND.
14. WEST-FRIZELAND.

HAVING thus spoken of those Provinces, which still continue in subjection to the K. of *Spain*, (except some few Towns in *Flanders*, and *Brabant*, before mentioned,) let us next look on those which have withdrawn their Obedience from him; beginning first with *Holland* and its Appendices, as of more power and consideration than all the rest. Which though distinct Provinces, and adjoin their several capacities at the present time, yet having been always under the Command of the same Princes they must be joined together in the Story of them, but shall be severally handled as to the Chorography.

HOLLAND hath on the East the *Zuider-See*, *Drecht* and some part of *Gelderland*, on the West and North the *German Ocean*, on the South the Islands of *Zeland* and some part of *Brabant*. So called, as some think, but with little reason, *quasi Hols land*, that is to say a woody Country; as others *quasi Hellow-Land*, from the Bogs and Marshes and unfound footing on the same; and some will have it called *quasi Hays land*, from the great quantity of Hay. But the learned *Juntius*, not relishing any of the three, conceives that both his Country and the Isles of *Zeland*, being planted by some Colonies of *Danes* and *Normans* (at the time of the Irruption of those Northern Nations) were called thus with reference to *Sealand* and *Oeland*, two Islands of the *Baltick Sea*, out of which they came. The Reader hath good choice, and may please himself.

The Country for the most part lieth very low, inasmuch that they are fain to fence it with Banks and Ramparts to keep out the Sea, and to restrain the Rivers within their bounds; so that in many places one may see the Sea far above the Land, and yet repulsed with those Banks: and it is wishal to fenny and full of Marshes, that they are forced to trench it with innumerable Dikes and Channels, to make it firm Land, and fit for dwelling; yet not so firm to bear either Trees or much Grain. But such is the Industry of the people and Trade they drive, that having little or no Corn of their own growth, they do provide themselves elsewhere; not only sufficient for their own spending; that wherewith to supply their neighbours: having no Timber of their own, they Water-courses that in building Ships and fencing their Water-courses that in any Country in the World: having no Wine, they drink more than the people of the Country where it grows naturally, and finally, having neither Flax nor Wool, they make more Cloth of both sorts than all the Countries in the world, except *France* and *England*.

The present Inhabitants are generally given to Sea-

faring lives, so that it is thought, that in *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *West Frizeland*, there are 2500 Ships of war and burthen. The Women are for the most part laborious in making Stuffs. Nay you will hardly see a Child of four years of age that is not kept to work and made to earn its own living: to the great commendation of their Government. The greatest of their natural Commodities is Butter and Cheese; of which, besides that infinite plenty which they spend in their own Houses, and amongst their Caravans and Ships, they sell as much unto other Countries as comes to 100000 Crowns per annum. By which means, and by the greatness of their Fish-trade, spoken of before, they are grown so wealthy on the Land, and so powerful at Sea, that as *Flanders* heretofore was taken for all the *Netherlands*, so now *Holland* is taken generally for all the Provinces confederated in a League against the *Spaniards*.

The whole Compaſs of it is no more than 180 miles, so part thereof being distant from the Sea above three hours journey: and yet, within that narrow Circuit, there are contained no fewer than 23 walled Towns and 400 Villages; some situate in *North*, and others in *South-Holland*, as it stands divided. In *South-Holland* (being that part heretofore that lieth next to *Zeland*, and the middle Chancel of the *Rhene*, passing from *Utrecht* unto *Leyden*) the principal Towns are, 1. *Dort*, in *Latine Dordrechtum* formerly the Staple for *Rhenish* Wines; a large, rich, and well-peopled Town; anciently joined to the firm Land, but in the year 1421 rent from it by the violence of the Sea, and made an Island; of great command upon the Traffick of the *Mees* and the *Wael*, upon whose Confluence it stands, but of most note in these latter times for an Assembly of Divines out of divers Countries following *Calvins* Doctrine, for condemnation of the *Lutheran* or *Arminian* Tenets, concerning Universal Grace and Predestination, Anno 1618. 2. *Gorcum*, situate on the *Wael*, where it meeteth with the *Linge*: a Town of great Trade and Riches, by reason of a daily Market of Cheese and Butter brought hither in very great quantity, beautiful and anciently with a strong Castle and a fair Church, from the Steeples whereof one may behold 22 walled Towns, besides an infinite number of Villages. The Country is round about it called by that people *Van Arckel*, or the Land of *Heracles*, from an opinion, that *Heracles* the *German* did there appoint his Camp, or rather from some Temple dedicated to him, in the place whereof the Lords of this Trade, who from hence took the name of *Arckels*, (*Arckels* they are called in our *Latine* Writers) founded a Church unto the honour of the Virgin *Mary*, in the time of *Thiers* the 2 Earl of *Holland*, by whom they were first settled in this Country. And here they flourished as Lords of *Gorcum*, *Leerdam*, and the parts adjoining till the year 1416; when falling to *John L.* of *Egmond*, by *Mary* his Wife, Daughter of *John* of *Arckel*, and the last Lord hereof, and Mother of *Arnold* of *Egmond D.* of *Geldres*, it was by him sold to *William* the 6, Earl of *Holland*, and so again united to that Estate. 3. *Rotterdam*, seated on a Dike or Chancel called the *Roter*; not far from which at a place named *Rempen* the *Leek*, one of the three main branches of the *Rhene*; falleth into the *Mees*: a strong fair and well-traded Port: the birth-place of the learned *Erafmus*. 4. *Schoonhoven*, situate on the *Leek*, a fair Town, having a commodious Haven. 5. *Gouda*, one of the five principal Towns of *Holland*, rich and well fortified, seated on the River called *Tijff*, which rising about *Tijffstein*, spoken of anon, falleth into the *Leek* at a place called *Tijffland*, and therefore different from the branch of the *Rhene* so called, which growth name to *Over-Tijff*. On the same River called *Tijff*, 6. *Oudwater*; and 7. *Tijffstein*, the last belonging properly to the Prince of *Orange*; the first

of great Trade for making Cables and Cords for shipping, 8. *Leyden*, or *Langdamm Batavonum* University, founded Anno 1564. The Town consisteth of 41 Islands, to which they pass partly by Boats, partly by Bridges, whereof there are 144; and of them 104 builded with Stone. Here is in this Town a Castle, said to have been built by *Henry* the *Saxon* at his return out of *England*. And not far off stood the famous Nunnery of *Rainsburg*, of the same nature with those of *Mont* and *Nivelles* before described; so liberally endowed, that 2000 persons did there daily receive relief. 9. *Vianen*, on the *Leek*, a Seignoury distinct from *Holland*, pertaining anciently to the Lords of *Braderode*: and so was also 10. *Huelsen*, a good old Town, once beautified with a fair Castle, and a goodly Territory, but belonging to the Earls of *Cleve*, of which House it had Lords of its own, acknowledging no subjection to the Earls of *Holland*, from the year 850, or thereabouts, to the year 1290, at which time *Theodorick* the 9. of *Cleve* at a merry meeting transferred the Sovereignty thereof to *Florence* Earl of *Holland*, of that name the fifth. Finally, having continued in the possession of 20 Lords of that Family, on the expiration of that Line in the person of *John* the 9 dying without Issue, Anno 1354. it was made a member of this Earldom (after some sharp disputes with the Dukes of *Brabant*, claiming it by a Renunciation of the last Lord *John*) by *William* of *Bavaria* Earl of *Holland*, and *Hainault*, Anno 1361, or thereabouts. 11. *Leerdam*, upon the River *Linge*, which together with *Tijffstein* before mentioned, fell unto *Philip* Prince of *Orange* in right of his descent from the Earls of *Bueren*, 12. *Delfs* Town of great Trade for Cloathing, but more by reason of the Cloth of *England* brought thither in great quantities by the *English* Merchants, than for any great store of their making; by reason of the concourse which that Trade brings with it, rich, large and well built, beautified with Spacious Streets and goodly Churches; the birth place of that monstrous Heretic *David George*, who called himself *King*, and *Christ immortal*, as is before said.

In that part thereof which is called *North Holland*, lying betwixt the middle Chancel of the *Rhene* and the *Zuider-See*, the Towns or Cities of most importance are, 1. *Alkmaar*, encompassed with deep Fens and Marshes; a rich Town, in regard of the great plenty of Butter and Cheese which is made about it, more than in any place of *Holland*, and famous for the defeat which the Duke of *Alva* received before it. For he in the beginning of the Low-Country Troubles, having with the loss of 20000 of his own men forced *Harlem*, laid his Siege round about this Town. Had he left any way for the Soldiers to have fled thence, the Town had been abandoned: but having environed them round, he put them to such a resolution, or desperation, (chuse you whicher) that manfully they resisted three of his Assaults, and in the end made him depart with great loss, as well of his Soldiers, as his reputation. 2. *Amsterdam*, a very fair Haven-Town, where divers times at one tide 1000 Ships of all sorts have been sent to go out and in. So truly said a modern Poet.

Quid Tagus atque Hermus ubique, et Paeolus, in unum
Vere hunc congestum dixisset effe locum.

What *Tagus*, *Heronus*, and *Paeolus* bear,
One would conjecture to be heaped up here.

The people thereby are so rich, that if a Fleet of 300 Sail should come into the Port fraught with all kind of Commodities, in five or six days they would be ready to buy all the Lading. Situate it is on the Gulf called the *Tie*, and the Dike or Chancel called *Anssel*, whence it hath the name of *Amsterdam*, in *Latine* *Amstelredammum*; built upon Piles like *Venice*, and resembling it in many points, that it may justly be called the *Northern Venice*. It was first

fortified with Towers and Ramparts by *Gijssels* of *Amstel*, about 300 years ago. But being burnt, through the envy of its neighbours, it began to be walled, Anno 1482. Grown to this wealth since the diverting of the Trade from *Amwerp* hither, and for that cause inhabited by men of all Nations and of all Religions, and those not only tolerated and conived at in private, but openly and freely exercised without any dislike. A greater Confusion (in my mind) than that of *Babel*: this being of Religions, that of Languages only. 3. *Harlem* on the Lake called *Harlemmeer*, the greatest Town of all *Holland*, and the second for dignity; well built, and very pleasantly situated amongst many goodly Meadows, near a delightful Forest, and round about environed with wealthy Villages; famous for the invention of Printing, invented here; but perfected at *Memz* in Higher *Germany*; the first Book which was ever printed being *Tully's Offices*. 4. *Naerden*, on the *Zuider-See*, fortified with a strong Castle, held of the Earls of *Holland* by the Dukes of *Brunswick*, to whom it anciently belonged. 5. *Enchusen*, on the very point of the Gulf of *Zuider-See*, opposite to *Friesland*, from which not distant two leagues. A Town of great consequence to the Prince of *Orange* in the first revolt of these Countries from the King of *Spain*. For siding with him in that war, and standing conveniently to obstruct the passages by Sea unto *Amsterdam*, it compelled that City in short time, by stopping all supply's of Victuals and other necessities, to yield it self unto the Prince. 6. *Horn*, on the same Gulf, a rich Town, with a very good Haven, and of so great strength by reason of the multitude of Dikes and Channels which are round about it, that it seems impregnable. 7. *Edam*, upon the same Gulf (of *Zuider-See*) remarkable for the great number of Ships which are built yearly in it; and an incredible number of the best *Holland* and *Cheese* made in the Country round about it. 8. *Medemblick*, on the Ocean, seated in the best Country of *Holland* for the feeding of Cattel; unvalued, but enjoying all the Privileges which a walled Town hath, and fortified with a right strong Castle.

The chief of the *Holland* Villages is the *Hague*, or *Graven Hague*, in *Latine* *Haga Comitris*, because formerly the Court and residence of the Earls of *Holland*, who had here a very large and beautiful Palace, founded by *Earl William*, King of the *Romans*, and therein a choice and excellent Library gathered together by *John Haive*, a Canon Regular of this place, and by him given to *Charles* the fifth. In former times the Residence of the Council for the Province of *Holland*; as it is now of the Commissioners or Delegates of the Confederate provinces called by the name of the *States General*. It is now much increased in Buildings of what it was, and yet to great in the time of *Lewis Guicciardine*, that it then contained 2000 households. The Inhabitants will not wall it, as desiring to have it rather accounted the chief Village in *Edam*, than the second City. The other Villages of note, 2. *Egmond*, 3. *Braderode*, 4. *Wassenaar*, which anciently gave names to three noble Families; of which none so illustrious and renowned as that of *Egmond*, descended lineally from *Rashold*, Son of *Adalgis* the King of the *Frisons*, the first Lord of *Egmond*, who died Anno 791. Advanced by Marriages to the Dukedom of *Gelderland*, the Seignouries of *Tijffstein* and *Bueren*. And finally they were made Earls of *Egmond* by *Maximilian* the Emperor, Anno 1592. But both his House and that of *Wassenaar* being now extinct, there is none left but that of *Braderode* for ought I can learn. Near to the last stood the famous Fortrefs called *Arx Britannica*, built by *Caligula* in memory of his great Battail upon this Shore. For making few of a Voyage into *Britain*, to subdue that Island, he boarded his Gallies, embattail his Soldiers, called the

Trumpets

Trumpets to found, gave them the Signal, and then Commanded them to gather Cockles: Which Tower or Fortifications was at the fall of the Roman Empire overwhelmed by the Sea; the Ruines whereof at a dead low water are still to be seen.

Besides these places on the firm Land or Continent, there are some Islands which pertain to the State of Holland, called by the general name of *Voorn*, because situate directly against Holland: *Voorn*, signifying as much as before, or in old English *bevoorn*; but known by their distinct and more proper names of *Somerfildie*, 2. *Gauwede*, 3. *Pierfchille*, 4. called of their principal Towns, and 4. *Voorn* specially so named, the chief of them all, being of a fat and fruitful Soil, and plentiful of most sorts of Grain. The principal Towns whereof are, 1. *Briel*, (which we call the *Brill*) a strong Town, and the first that revolted against the *Spaniards*, Anno 1572. Cautionary to the English with the Town of *Flushing* chosen by them in regard of the great command it hath upon the passage to *Gerryuadenburg* and the rest of *Brabant*, as also to *Delf*, *Dort*, and *Rotterdam*, the greatest Towns of Trade in the South of Holland. 2. *Geweliet* a small Town but having a Jurisdiction over many Villages. There are also on the North side of Holland the Isles of *Wierogen* and *Texel*; of which little memorable, but that the last is furnished with a safe and capacious Bay for receipt of Shipping.

One special accident concerning Holland I cannot omit in silence, namely, how *Margaret* Countess of *Hennenberg*, and Sister to *William* King of the *Romans*, being of the age of 42 years, was delivered at one birth of 365 children, the one half Males, the other Females, the odd one an Hermaphrodite; all christened at the Church of *Loofduynen*, not far from the *Hague*, by the names of *John* and *Elizabeth*, in two Basins fill to be seen in the said Church, by *Guido* the Suffragan of *Utrecht*; all which immediately after died; and with them the Mother.

The Arms of Holland of it self, as a State distinct, are Or, a Lion *Gules*.

ZELAND consisteth of seven Islands, the remainder of 18, the rest whereof the Sea hath swallowed, and in them 100 inhabited Towns. It is severed from *Flanders* by the left branch or Arm of the *Scheld*, which they call *Hane* and on the East from *Brabant* with the right branch of the said River, which still keeps his name; on the North from Holland with the Gulf called the *Plack*, and on the West with the main Ocean from the Kingdom of England. So called as some say, *quasi* Sea and Land; but as *Junius* rather thinks, from *Seland*, an Island of Denmark, as before was noted.

The Country is generally more fruitful than the neighbouring *Brabant*, producing great quantity of excellent Corn, plenty of Coriander, and abundance of Madder used in Dying; the Soil also is very rich in Pasture, but low and marly: which makes the Air to be very unhealthy: and the whole defitute both of Fresh water and Wood; the want of which last is supplied with Coal out of England and Scotland, or by Turf digged among themselves but very sparingly, for fear of weakening the Sea-banks.

The whole containeth 8 Towns, and 100 Villages. The Islands which remain are commonly divided into the Western, and Eastern, according as they lie with reference to the River *Scheld*. The Western Islands are four in number: That is to say,

1. *WALCHEREN*, (*Valschria* in Latin) lying to the North of *Scheld* in *Flanders*, the richest and most populous of all this Province, in compass 10 Dutch, or 40 Italian miles. The principal Towns of which are 1. *Mid-*

deburg, seated on a Creek of the Sea, well walled and fortified, the Streets spacious, the Houses and Churches well built, inhabited by wealthy Merchants, and industrious Tradersmen, and of late time, (since the removing of the English Trade from *Antwerp*) a most flourishing Empery: So called because built in the midst of the Island; or because built (as faith *Ortelius*) by Prince *Zelandus*, of whom this Province was thus named, in honour of his Grandfather *Matellus*, and by him called *Matelli Burgum*. 2. *Flushing*, of great note for its good Port and invincible strength. One of the first Towns which the Low-Country men took from the *Spaniards* by the diligence of *Voors* a Seaman and Monsieur *de Berland*, then the Bay-liff thereof, and not long after put into the hands of the English as a Town of Caution; the first Governour of it being the renowned Sir *Philip Sidney*. A poor Town then it was, God wot, now the Key of the Netherlands, without whose licence no Ship can pass either to or from the City of *Antwerp*; inasmuch that if the Duke of *Ava* in the beginning of his Government had bestowed that pains in the fortifying this and others of the Maritime Towns, as he did in the strengthening *Antwerp* and some Midland Cities, he had in all probability hindered the remediless Revolt of these flourishing Countries. Not far off standeth the Fort called the *Rammekins*, once Cautionary to the English also, together with the *Briel*, the chief Town in the Isle of *Voorn*, (an Isle of Holland) all three being taken from the *Spaniards*, Anno 1585, and finally surrendered by King *James* as the States United, Anno 1616. *Robert Lord Lilie* (afterwards created Earl of *Leicester*) the Brother of Sir *Philip Sidney*, then Governour of *Flushing*. 3. *Ramme*, or *Armynden*, an unwalled Town, but beautified with one of the goodliest and most frequented Havens in all the World; out of which one may sometimes see 500 Sail of Ships of great burthen set forwards on their Voyages to several parts. 4. *Vere* or *Camfere*, seated in the North part of the Island, which once gave Title to a Marquess, and from which the Noble Family of the *Veres* (now and of long time Earls of *Oxford*) took denomination. So as it is no marvel that to many of that Family have vented their Estates and lives in the Wars of this Country, being their Grandmother in a manner, or their Primitive Parent, from whence they were transplanted into England.

2. **SOUTH-BEVERLAND**, situate betwixt *Walcheren* and *Brabant*, the greatest of the Isles of *Zeland*; heretofore 20 Dutch miles in compass, but now much diminished by the rage and fury of the Sea, by which the Town and Seigneurie of *Bouffle*, with all the Countries round about it, was swallowed up Anno 1532. That which remains hath in it many goodly Woods and pleasant Thickets, full of Fowl and wild Beasts for Hawking and Hunting. Chief Towns here are, 1. *Rome* *frivale*, seated on the East toward *Bergen op Zoom*, severed at the same time from the rest of the Island, and made an Island of it self, defended with continual charge from following the sad fate of the Town of *Bouffle*, 2. *Geer*, or *Tegten*, on the Northern Coast, a strong Town, well privileged, and the only walled Town in all the Island.

3. **NORTH-BEVERLAND**, lying betwixt *South-Beverland* and the Isle of *Schoven*, in former times esteemed the Paradise of *Zeland*, and having it in proper Town called *Chori* *Choren*, but to destroyed by the Sea-breach, spoken of before, that there is nothing now remaining but a few poor Villages.

4. **WOLFERSDIKE**, lying betwixt the two *Beverlands*, the smallest of the Western Islands, as having in it no more than two Villages but replenished with good store of Pasture.

And

And these are all which fall in the division of the Western Islands, so called because they lay Westward of the River *Scheld*; as those which they call the Eastern Islands, on the East thereof. Of which last there are three in number.

1. **SCHOWEN**, lying on the South-West of Holland; so near unto *North-Beverland* in former times, that the Inhabitants could talk together from one shore to the other; but now the Sea hath set them at a greater distance. It containeth in compass six Dutch miles. Chief Towns wherein are, 1. *Zierikzee*, the ancientest Town of all *Zeland*, once beautified with a fair and commodious Haven, now choaked up with Beach, yet still reputed for the second Town of all the Province: the whole Trade thereof consisting in Salt and Madder; of which it yields good plenty. Most famous for the birth of *Levinus Lemnius*, that renowned Philosopher and Physician. 2. *Brouwers-Haven*, inhabited only by Fishermen, not else remarkable.

2. **DOVELAND**, so named from the multitude of Doves or Pigeons, situate between *Schoven* and *Tolen*, in compass about 4 Dutch miles. It hath no good Town in it, but only Country Villages and Gentlemen's Farms. Surrounded by the Sea, Anno 1530, but by the industry and diligence of *Adolph* of Burgundy, and the Lord of *Beversen* in *Flanders* recovered again, and at the excessive charge of the people hitherto preserved.

3. **TOLEN**, so called from the chief Town of the Island, where the Earls Toll was wont to be paid, whence it had the name, is situate over against the North-west of *Brabant*, from thence disjoined by a narrow Creek or Arm of the Sea: the second Town of note being called *S. Martin Dike*; walled, but not otherwise considerable.

Agreeable to the quality of this Country of *Zeland* are the Arms thereof, being Or, a Lion *Gules* rising out of a Sea wave *Argent* and *Azure*.

WEST-FRIESLAND, hath on the East *Greening-Land* and a part of *Westphalen* in High Germany, on the South *Over-Yssel* and the *Zuider-See*, on the North and West the main Ocean. The Country is generally moorish and full of Fens, unsuit for Corn, but yielding great store of Pasturage: which Moorishness of the ground makes the Air very foggy and unhealthy; nor have they any Fewel wherewith to rectifie it, (except in that part of it which they call *Seven-Wolden*) but Turf and Cow-dung, which adds but little to the sweetness of an unfound Air. Nor are they better stored with Rivers, here being none proper to this Country, but that of *Leenward*, the want of which is supplied by great Canals in most places, which do not only drain the Marishes, but supply them with water: Which notwithstanding, their Pastures do afford them a good breed of Horses fit for service; plenty of Bees both great and sweet, the best in Europe, next those of England; and those in such a large increase, that their Kine commonly bring two Calves, and their Ewes three Lambs at a time.

The Country is divided into three parts. In the first part, called **WESTERGOE**, lying towards Holland, the principal Towns are, 1. *Harlingen* an Haven Town upon the Ocean, defended with a very strong Castle. 2. *Hindeloep*, on the same Coast also. 3. *Stavoren*, an Hanse Town, opposite to *Encheim* in Holland, the Town decayed, but fortified with a strong Castle, which secures the Haven. 4. *Franeke*, a new University, or a *Schola Illustis*, as they call it. 5. *Sneek*, in a low and inconvenient situation; but both for largeness and beauty the best in this part of the Province, and the second in esteem of all the Country. In **OSTERGOE**,

of the East part, lying towards *Greening-Land*, the Towns of most note are, 6. *Leenwarden*, situate on the hinder *Leenward* the prime Town of *West-Friesland*, and honoured with the Supreme Court and Chancery hereof, from which there lieth no Appeal: a rich Town, well built, and strongly fortified. 7. *Doornum*, bordering upon *Greening*, the birth place of *Gemma Frisius*, in *SEVEN-WOLDEN*, or the Country of Seven Forests, so called from 10 many small Forests joyning near together, is no Town of note, being long time a Wood-land Country, and not well inhabited till of late. The number of the walled Towns are 11 in all; of the Villages or Burroughs, 345.

To this Province belongeth the Isle of *Schellink*, the shores, whereof are plentifully stor'd with dog-fish, took by the Inhabitants in this manner. The men of the Island attire themselves with Beasts Skins, and then fall to dancing; with which sport the fish being much delighted, make out of the waters towards them; Nets being pitched presently betwixt them and the water. Which done, the men put off their disguises, and the frightened Fish, halting toward the Sea, are caught in the Toils.

Touching the *Frisons*, heretofore possessed of this Country, we shall speak more at large when we come to *East-Friesland*, possessed also by them, and still continuing in the quality of a Free Estate, governed by its own Laws and Princes: here only taking notice that the Arms of this *Friesland* are *Azure*, seven of Billets *Argent*, two Lions Or.

The ancient Inhabitants of these three Provinces were the *Batavi* and *Caninifates*, inhabiting the Island of the *Rhene*, situate betwixt the middle branch thereof and the *VVael*, which now containeth *South-Holland*, *Utrecht*, and some part of *Gelder*; the *Frisii*, dwelling in *VVest-Friesland* and the North of Holland; and the *Mattiaci*, inhabiting in the Isles of *Zeland*. By *Charles* the Bald these Countries, being almost unpeopled by the *Norman* Pirates, were given to *Thierrie*, Son of *Sigebert*, a Prince of *Aquitain*, with the Title of Earl; his Successors acknowledging the Sovereignty of the Crown of France, till the time of *Arnulp* the 4. Earl, who turned Homager to the Empire. In *John* the 2. they became united to the House of *Hainault*, and in *VVilliam* the 3. to that of *Bavaria*; added to the Estates of the Dukes of *Burgundy* in the person of Duke *Philip* the good; as appeareth by his Succession of

The Earls of HOLLAND, ZELAND, and Lords of WEST-FRIESLAND.

- | | |
|------|--|
| 863 | 1. <i>Thierrie</i> or <i>Theodore</i> of <i>Aquitain</i> , the first Earl, &c. |
| 903 | 2. <i>Thierrie</i> II. Son of <i>Thierrick</i> the 1. |
| | 3. <i>Thierrie</i> III. the Son of <i>Theodorick</i> the 2. |
| 988 | 4. <i>Arnulp</i> , who made first this Estate to be held of the Empire; slain in a War against the <i>Frisons</i> . From <i>Sigefride</i> the second Son of this <i>Arnulp</i> came the Lords of <i>Broderode</i> , advanced by Marriages to the Seigneuries of <i>Genep</i> and <i>Vianen</i> , and many other fair Estates both in <i>Brabant</i> and <i>Holland</i> . |
| 993 | 5. <i>Thierrie</i> IV. Son of <i>Arnulp</i> . |
| 1039 | 6. <i>Thierrie</i> V. Son of <i>Theodorick</i> the 4. |
| 1048 | 7. <i>Florence</i> , Brother of <i>Thierrie</i> the 5. |
| 1062 | 8. <i>Thierrie</i> VI. Son of <i>Florence</i> , in whose Minority the Estate of <i>Holland</i> was usurped by <i>Godfrey</i> le <i>Blaun</i> Duke of <i>Lorraine</i> , by some accounted of as an Earl heretof. |
| 1092 | 9. <i>Florence</i> II. named the Fat, Son of <i>Thierrie</i> the 6. |

- 1123 10. *Thierrie VII.* who tamed the stomachs of the *Frifons*.
- 1163 11. *Florence III.* a companion of *Frederick Barbarossa* in the Wars of the Holy Land.
- 1190 12. *Thierrie VIII.* Son to *Florence* the 3.
- 1203 13. *William* the Brother of *Thierrie*, and Earl of *East-Friesland*, which Country he had before subdued, supplanted his Niece *Ida*, his Brother's Daughter, but after her decease, dying without Issue, succeeded in his own right unto the Estate.
- 1223 14. *Florence IV.* Son of *William*.
- 1235 15. *William II.* Son of *Florence* the 4. elected and crowned King of the *Romans*, slain in a War against the *Frifons*.
- 1255 16. *Florence V.* the first as some write, who called himself Earl of *Zeland*: the Title to those Islands, formerly questioned by the *Flemings*, being relinquished to him on his Marriage with *Beatrice*, the Daughter of *Guy of Damphiere*, Earl of *Flanders*.
- 1296 17. *John*, the Son of *Florence* the 5. subdued the rebellious *Frifons*: the last of the male issue of *Thierrie* of *Aquitain*.

Earls of HAINAULT, HOLLAND, &c.

- 1300 18. *John* of *Avesnes*, Earl of *Hainault*, Son of *John* of *Avesnes*, Earl of *Hainault*, and of the Lady *Aleide*, Sister of *William* the 2. and Daughter of *Florence* the 4. succeeded as next Heir in the Earldom of *Holland*, &c.
- 1305 19. *William III.* firnamed the Good, Father of the Lady *Philippa*, Wife of our *Edward* the 3.
- 1337 20. *William IV.* of *Holland*, and 2. of *Hainault*, slain in a War against the *Frifons*.
- 1346 21. *Margaret*, Sister and Heir of *William* the 4. and eldest daughter of *William* the 3. married to *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, Emperor of the *Germanys*, forced to relinquish *Holland* unto *William* her Second Son, and to content her self with *Hainault*.
- 1351 22. *William V.* Second Son of *Lewis* and *Margaret* (his elder Brother *Stephen* succeeding in *Bavaria*) in right of *Maud* his wife, daughter and Coheir of *Henry Duke of Lancaster*, succeeded in the Earldom of *Leicester*.
- 1377 23. *Albert*, the younger brother of *William* the fifth, fortunate in his wars against the *Frifons*, Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c.
- 1404 24. *William VI.* Earl of *Overland*, and by that name admitted Knight of the Garter by king *Richard* the 2. eldest Son of *Albert*.
- 1417 25. *Jaqueline*, only daughter of Earl *William* the sixth, first married to *John* the 4. Duke of *Brabant*, the Son of *Anthony* of *Bourgoigne*, from whom divorced under colour of Consanguinity, she was married after to *Humphrey Duke of Gloucester*, and then to *Frank* of *Borffelle*, a private Gentleman: being unworthily handled by Duke *John* of *Burgundy*, she surrendered her Estates to Duke *Phillip* the Good.
26. *Phillip* the Good, Duke of *Burgundy*, Son of *John Duke of Burgundy*, and of the Lady *Margaret* Sister of Earl *William* the sixth, and daughter of *Albert*, Earls of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c. succeeded on the Renunciation of the Lady *Jaqueline*, his Cousin-german transporting these Estates to the House of *Burgundy*. His Successors we shall meet with shortly in another place.

15. UTRECHT. 16. OVER-TSSELL.

THE Bishoprick of *Utrecht*, I mean the temporal Jurisdiction and Estate thereof, contained once all that Tract of ground which now makes up the Provinces of *Utrecht*, *Over-Tsffel*, and *Greening*. But *Greening* was long since dismembr'd. *Utrecht* and *Over-Tsffel* remaining parts thereof till the year 1528, then added to the rest of the *Belgick* Provinces by *Charles* the 5.

UTRECHT hath on the East *Gelderland*, on the West, North and South, environed with *Holland*. The Country is very fruitful, much drier than *Holland*, and so fitter for all sorts of Grain. It containeth 70 Villages, and 5 walled Towns: that is to say, 1. *Wyck* at *Duerfede*, situate on the middle Channel of the *Rhene*, where it diverteth into the *Leck*, well built, and fortified anciently with a good Castle, supposed to be the *Bataworum* spoken of by *Tacitus*, the Mansion at that time of the second Legion. 2. *Rhenen*, upon the same branch or Channel, whence it hath the name: about which is digged abundance of Turf for fuel. 3. *Amersfort*, on the River *Em*, (called in *Latine* *Amisus*) a fair Town, and well peopled. 4. *Monfort*, upon the *Tsffel*, pleasantly seated, and of great strength, as being anciently a Frontier-Town against the *Hollanders*. 5. *Utrecht*, situate on the middle Channel of the *Rhene*: first called *Antonina*, from one of the *Antonines* of *Rome*: but *Dagobert King of France* gave it the name of *Trajectum* (or *Utrajectum*), we now call it *Utrecht* because there was at that time the common Ferry over the River. The Town is large, beautiful, and very sumptuously built, having in it many good Churches of which 5 were anciently Collegiate; besides two famous Monasteries of noble Women, such as those spoken of elsewhere: the private houses well contrived, most of them having goodly Cellars, vaulted with wonderful art and skill, to which the people may resort in all times of danger. Sometime the Seat-Royal of *Radbald*, King of the *Frifons*, then of the Bishops; honoured of old with a Jurisdiction reformed for the parts adjoining, and now the principal of this Province. A City so miraculously seated amongst walled Towns, that a man may go from hence in one day to any one of 10 walled Towns or Cities, thence equally distant; or to any one of 26 Towns to Dinner; and come home to bed.

OVER-TSSELL, in *Latine* *Transsalana*, so named from its situation beyond the *Tsffel*, is bounded on the East with *Westphalen*, on the West with the *Zuider-See*, on the North with *West-Friesland*, on the South with *Gelderland*. The Country is very plain and without Hills, but wet and moorish affording excellent good Pasturage, and not defective in Corn. It is divided into three parts, that is to say, *Twent*, confining upon *Westphalen*, *Tsffel*, and on the River *Tsffel*; and *Drem*, beyond the River *Vecht*: in all which are contained 11 Towns, and 100 Villages. The principal of which are, 1. *Drem*, upon the River *Tsffel*, strong and well fortified, withal beautiful and well peopled; an Hanck-Town, and the chief of all this Province; first taken of those States by the Earl of *Leicester*, then Governor of those Countries for Queen *Elizabeth*, Anno 1586, treacherously re-yielded to the *Spaniards* by Sir *William Stanley*, but in the year 1590 again recovered by the States. 2. *Swoll*, standing on a little River which runs into the *Vidre*, anciently fortified with a double Ditch, and very strong Ramparts, an Hanck-Town; as is also 3. *Campen*, situate on the left Shore and fall of the *Tsffel* into the *Zuider-See*, a fair and large Town, and of very great strength by reason of those inaequable

Marshes

Marshes among which it is situate. These three are in that part thereof which is called *Tsffel-Land*, and by some *Salada*, by whom (cronecouilly) it is supposed to be the Country of the ancient *Sallii*. In that part hereof which is called *Twent* we have the Towns of 1. *Olden-eel*, 5. *Engbede*, 6. *Delden*, 7. *Almeloo*; of which little memorable. And in that of *Drem*, the Town and Cattle of *Valtenburg*, standing upon the *Zuider-See*, well served with all sorts of Victuals, and for that cause made the ordinary Residence of the Governour, and supreme Council for the whole Province.

The ancient Inhabitants of these two Provinces were some parts of the *Batavi* and *Frifii* minores, for that of *Utrecht*; the *Bructeri* and (as some say) the *Sallii* in *Over-Tsffel*. Both Provinces belonging anciently to the Episcopal See of *Utrecht*, founded by *Dagobert King of France*, who endowed it with great Lands and Territories; the first Bishop being *Willibald*, an *Engliff*-man; who converted these parts to Christianity. His Successors were to so great power, that they were able to bring 40000 men into the Field, and with great courage did maintain their Estate and Patrimony against the encroaching Fairs of *Holland*: but at the last having continued for the space of 900 years, *Henry of Bavaria* Bishop hereof, being extremely distressed with War by the Duke of *Gelder*, and driven out of the City of *Utrecht* by his own Subjects, (perhaps upon some humour of Reformation) alienated all the Temporalities of his Bishoprick to *Charles* the 5th, An. 1527, and the next year the Imperialists by one of the Factions were let into *Utrecht*; at what time both the Estates of the Country, and Pope *Clement* the 7. confirmed the Alienation made by the Bishop. After which solemn Acts of theirs the Emperor caused himself to be invested in this Estate by the States of the Empire, (for *Utrecht* was of old an Imperial Fief), and, for the better Government and Administration of it, divided it into two Provinces as it still continueth. But what this Bishop lost in Power his Successors not long after gained in Title; the Bishop of *Utrecht* being made an Archbishop or Metropolitan, Anno 1561. But by reason of the change of Religion which was then working, and the falling off of these Countries, which soon after followed, he had but little joy in his new Preferment.

17. GELDERLAND. 18. ZUTPHEN, and 19. GROENING.

THE Dukedom of *Gelderland*, at such time as it was first taken in by *Charles* the fifth, contained under it the Duchie of *Gelders*, properly and specially so called, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, and the Town and Seignoury of *Greening*; held by distinct Titles, and governed ever since their union with the *Belgick* Provinces as distinct Estates.

GELDERLAND is bounded on the East with *Cleveland* and the Earldom of *Zutphen*, on the West with *Holland* and *Utrecht*, on the North with *Over-Tsffel* and the *Zuider-See*; and on the South with *Brabant* and the Land of *Guick*. The Country is flat, having few hills in it, but many pleasant and commodious Woods, especially that called *Echternwald*, of Corn and Cattel very fruitful.

The whole Country is generally divided into two parts, 1. The *Veluwe*, contained within the *Zuider-See*, the middle Channel of the *Rhene*, and the *Tsffel*, the baremer of the two, and the worse inhabited; the people herof preferring Health before Wealth, as in other places; but affording a more pure Air, and a pleasanter dwelling than the other; the Woods and Forests well replenished with most kind of Game. The *Barneve* (so called of the *Batavi*, who possessed these parts) intercepted betwixt the said middle Channel of the *Rhene* and the *Waal*, exceeding

ly fruitful in Corn, and of so excellent a Pasturage for the feeding of Cattel, that in the year 1570 there was a *Gelderland* Bull fold in *Anwerp* which weighed 3200 pounds.

In both divisions (not reckoning in the County of *Zutphen*) are contained 300 Villages, and 16 walled Towns: besides some fortified of late since the Wars began. The chief whereof are, 1. *Nimwegen*, (in *Latine* *Novesium*) an Imperial City, ordained by *Charles* the Great to be one of the three Sieges of the Empire for these outer parts: the other two being *Thronowe* in *Luxemburg*, and *Aix* or *Agen* in the land of *Guick*. And, as a Town Imperial, it had anciently the Privilege of Coining money: for which the people did no other service to the Emperours than once a year to send a man to *Aix* or *Aquigrane* with a Glove full of Pepper. But the Town being sold to the *Gelders* by *William* Earl of *Holland* and King of the *Romans* for 21000 Marks of Silver, Anno 1248, the power of Coining fell to those Princes; and yet the Town was brought to do better Service than formerly it had done at *Agen*. The Town is high mounted on the top of an Hill, the *Waal*, which is there large and deep running at the foot of it; rich, great, and populous, having besides the modern Fortifications an ancient Castle, with so goodly a Prospect, that from thence one may behold the best part of the Country; built, as some say, by *Julius Caesar* to command those parts. Under the Jurisdiction of it are, 2. *Tiel*, and 3. *Bomel*, two walled Towns, both situated on the *Waal*, both strong, and having many rich Villages under their command; and 4. *Ghent*, on the *Vaal* also, an unwalled Town, but having all the Privileges which the walled Towns have. Not far off, at the first meeting of the *Vaal* and the *Maas*, stands the strong Fort of *S. Andrews*, raised by the Archduke *Albert* to command the passage of those Rivers; and in the year 1600 taken in by *Maurice* Count of *Nassau* (after Prince of *Orange*) and ever since garrisoned by the States to secure that passage. 5. *Ruermund*, seated on the mouth of the *Ruer*, where it falleth into the *Maas*; a beautiful and well-peopled City, strong by Art and Nature, and seated in a fruitful Country, heretofore of the Dioceses of *Liege*, (as *Nimwegen* anciently of *Calen*) but made a See Episcopal by King *Philip* the Second, Anno 1559. This is the second capital City of *Gelderland*, and hath under the Jurisdiction of it 6. *Veulo*, a strong Town on the *Maas*, in which the Duke of *Cleue* yielded himself to *Charles* the fifth, An. 1543. 7. *Gelders*, heretofore of such reputation, that it gave name to all the Country; and well it doth deserve to do so still, being the only Town in all this Dukedom which neither first nor last hath been won by the *Hollanders*, but still preserved themselves in their Obedience to their natural Princes 8. *Straal*, or *Straelen*, a well fortified place; but which, according to the chances of War, hath often changed its Masters: 9. *Arnhem*, the *Arenacum* of *Tacitus*, and in those times the Mansion of the tenth Legion, situate on the *Rhene*, not above a mile from the great Channel, which *Drusus*, to keep his Souldiers from idleness, caused them to dig, to let the waters of the *Rhene* into those of the *Tsffel*; called therefore by the Ancients *Fossa Drusiana*, by the Modern *Tsffel Durt*. The Town is large and well built; the ordinary Residence heretofore of the Dukes of *Gelderland*, who had here their Chancery, and other supreme Courts of Justice. This is the third Capital City of *Gelderland*, anciently of the Dioceses of *Utrecht* and hath under the Jurisdiction of it, besides divers Villages, 10. *Flissingen* on the *Rhene*, the same which *Tacitus* calls *Pala*. 11. *Harderwick* on the *Zuider-See*, burnt to the ground Anno 1503; but since re-edified, and now more strong

U 2

and beautiful than ever formerly. 12. *Haem*, upon the *Tyffel*, a good Town of War, but not else observable.

Within the Limits of this Dukedom stands the Town and County of *Culenburg*, erected into a County by King *Philip* the 2. by reason of the fair Territory which belonged unto it; formerly held in Fee of the Dukes of *Gelderland*, but otherwise not reckoned as a Member of it. 2. The Town and Earldom of *Bueren*, situate on the River *Linge*, having a strong Castle anciently, and a goodly Territory, holden immediately of the Empire, as a Fief Imperial. It was first made an Earldom in the person of *Frederick*, Lord of *Emmond*, Brother's Son to *Arnold* of *Emmond*, the sixth Duke, in 1492, which *Earl* of *Bueren* by *Maximilian*, the first, in 1492, which *Frederick* was grandfather of the valiant *Maximilian* of *Emmond* *Earl* of *Bueren*, who died Anno 1539. after whose death it fell at last to *Philip* of *Nassau*, eldest Son of *William* Prince of *Orange*, and of *Ann* the Daughter and Heir of the said *Maximilian* upon the death of the said *Ann*, Anno 1551.

ZUTPHEN, accounted formerly for the fourth capital City of *Gelderland*, now a distinct Province of it self, is bounded on the East with *Westphalen*, on the West with that part of *Gelderland* which is called *Velmme*, on the North with *Over-Tyffel*, on the South with *Cleveland*. It containeth 8 walled Towns; besides many Villages; that is to say, 1. *Dortmum*, standing on the old *Tyffel*, rising out of *Westphalen*. 2. *Doeburg*, where the old *Tyffel* falleth into the new *Tyffel*, or the French called *Felle Druffum*, communicating thereunto its name. 3. *Bruerborch*, a County of it self, which anciently had its particular Government. 4. *Lochem*, upon the River *Berckel*. 5. *Tijerberg*, a Town and County. 6. *Gron*, taken by the Prince of *Orange*, for the States Confederate Anno 1627. 7. *Brordervoer*, a Town of War, and subject to the change of Masters, as such places are. 8. *Zunphen*, or *Zuidphen*, so called of the Southern situation of it amongst the Fens, on the right shore of the *Tyffel*, where it receiveth into it the River *kerckel*, which runs through the Town. A Town indifferently well built, as well for private as publick edifices; a distinct State in Civil matters, but in Spiritual subject to (in former times) to the Bishop of *Mouster*. A thing observable and not to be parallel'd elsewhere; that the four chief Towns and Quarters of one Province only should appertain (as here in *Gelderland*) to four several Dioceses. Of which there may some reason be assigned for *Zunphen*, in regard it is a State more ancient than that of *Gelderland* it self, and not depending anciently on the fortunes of it; united to it by the Marriage of *Orbo* of *Nassau*, the first Earl of *Gelderland*, with *Sophia*, Daughter and Heir of *Wickman* the last Earl of *Zunphen*. So as this Earldom ended, when that first began. After this it continued Subject to the Earls and Dukes of *Gelders*, till the revolt of *Holland* and the other Provinces from the King of Spain; at what time it was bequeathed for the State by the Earl of *Leicester*: at the Siege whereof fell that gallant Gentleman Sir *Philip Sidney*, of whom our British Epigrammatist thus verifieth.

Dignategi scribis, facis & dignissima scribi;

Scripta probant dolum te una, fassa probum.

Thou writ'st things worthy reading, and didst do things worthy writing too:

Thy Acts thy Valour show,

And by thy Works we do thy Learning know.

And though upon the loss of that gallant man; *Nephew* and *Heir* unto that Earl the Siege was raised at the present; yet was it re-inforced again. Anno 1590, and the Town then taken, continuing ever since in the Confederacy of the States United.

GROENING-LAND hath on the East *East-Friesland*, on the West *West-Friesland*, on the North the main Ocean, on the South *Over-Tyffel*; so wedged inas it were betwixt both *Frislands*, that some hold it to be but a part of the West. It containeth under the Country called the *Ommelanden*, (corruptly for the *Emmelanden*, as conjecture, because lying along the River *Em*) and therein 145 Burroughs and Villages. The chief thereof are, 1. *Dam*, near the *Em*, bordering on *East-Friesland*. 2. *Keykijk*. 3. *Old-Haven* standing on the Sea. 4. As for the Town of *Groening* it self, it is rich, great, and very well built, situate amongst divers small Streams which run through it, and having also divers Channels for conveyance of waters, which adds much to the safety and strength thereof. A Town of great Jurisdiction both within and without, judging absolutely without Appeal in causes both Civil and Criminal; in Spirituals, subject heretofore to the Bishop of *Mouster*, till made one of the new Bishopricks by King *Philip* the second, Anno 1559. And though the Prince in Civil Causes had his Officer or Lieutenant there; yet in Criminal the Town was Sovereign, and granted Pardons as Sovereign of the whole Estate, paying to the Prince for all Duties yearly but 6000 Crowns. Both Town and Country anciently belonging to the Bishops of *Utrecht*, for whose negligence in defending them they submitted their Estate to the Duke of *Gelderland*. But the Dukes of *Saxony* laying some claim to it, disturbed this agreement for a time; during which *Edward* the Earl of *East-Friesland* possessed himself of it; but not able to make good his unjust possession sold his Estate therein to the Duke of *Gelders*, Anno 1544, to whom of right it did belong. Afterwards in the year 1546, they put themselves under the command of *Charles* the fifth, but with the reservation of all their Privileges and ancient Liberties, for preservation of the which, in danger to be over-born by the power of the Spaniards, they confederated with the rest of the United States, Anno 1594, and so still continue.

The ancient Inhabitants of these Countries were the *Menapii* and *Siemambi*, very valiant people, possessing *Gelderland* and the *mayores Frisii*, which were planted in *Groening* and the rest of *Friesland*. Of these the *Siemambi* were accounted the most valiant People, uniting with other Nations in the name of *Frisia*, and by that name possessing with the rest of those Nations the mighty Empire of the West. In the division whereof by the policy of *Charles* the Great, these Countries were first part of the Kingdom of *Austrasia* or *East-France*, afterwards of the *German Empire*; governed at the first by *Gauarins* or Protectors created by the people in the reign of *Charle Bald*, the two first being *Wickard*, and *Leopold* (or *Leopold*) two Brethren, who fixing their chief Seat in the Castle of *Gelders*, occasioned the whole Country to be called *Gelderland*. But they and their Successors, by what name or Title soever called, were in effect but provincial Officers, accountable to the Emperors for their Administration; the first free Prince hereof being *Orbo* of *Nassau*, who having to his first Wife the Lady *Anna*, Daughter of *Wickard* the last Guardian, was by the Emperor *Henry* the third made first Earl of *Gelderland*, adding thereto the State of *Zunphen* by a second Marriage, as is said before. In *Reinold* the ninth Estate was made a Dukedom by the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, Anno 1339. Sold by Duke *Arnold* (justly inserted in his ungracious Son *Adolph*) to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* for 92000 Florens of ready money, and an annual Pension, Anno 1473. But notwithstanding this Agreement, *Adolph* (upon the death of *Charles*) possessed himself of it, and left it unto *Charles* his Son, who finally transferred it unto *Charles* the fifth, Anno 1547.

Earls and Dukes of GELDER-LAND.

- 1079 1. *Orbo* of *Nassau* the first Earl.
2. *Gerard* the Son of *Orbo* by his first Wife *Alteide*.
- 1131 3. *Henry* the Son of *Gerard*.
- 1162 4. *Gerard* II. Son of *Henry*.
- 1180 5. *Orbo* II. Brother of *Gerard*.
- 1202 6. *Gerard* III. Son of *Orbo* 2.
- 1229 7. *Orbo* III. Son of *Gerard*, who walled the Towns of *Ruermund*, *Arnhem*, *Bomel*, *Goch*, *Wageningen*, and *Hardevick*.
- 1271 8. *Rainold*, Son of *Orbo* 3. taken and imprisoned till his death by
- 1326 9. *Rainold* II. his own Son, created the first Duke of *Gelders* by the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* at *Frankfort*, Anno 1339, liberal to the Poor, and a great Patron of the *Alms*.
- 1343 10. *Rainold* III. Son of *Rainold* II. molested with continual Wars with his Brother *Edward*, by whom he was taken and imprisoned till his dying day.
- 1371 11. *Edward* the Son of *Rainold* the 2. by *Eleanor* the Daughter of *Edward* the 3d. of *England*, his second Wife, died the same year with his Brother; the last of the male issue of *Orbo* of *Nassau*.
- 1371 12. *Mary* by some called *Joan* Sister of *Edward*, by the same name, and Wife of *William* Earl of *Guilich*.
- 1371 13. *William*, Son of *William* Duke of *Guilich* and *Mary* of *Gelders*, admitted Knight of the Garter by King *Richard* the 2.
- 1473 14. *Arnold* IV. the Brother of *William*.
15. *Arnold* of *Emmond*, Son of *John* Lord of *Emmond* and *Mary* his Wife, Daughter of *Joan*, the Sister of *Rainold* and *William*, the two last Dukes, succeeded in the Estate of *Gelders*; the Dukedom of *Guilich* being seized on by *Adolph*, Son of *William* the first Duke of *Berg*, as the next Heir-male to the two last Dukes. Being afterwards taken, imprisoned, and most barbarously handled by his own Son *Adolph*, and delivered by *Charles* the Warlike, Duke of *Burgundy*, he sold to him his Estates of *Gelders* and *Zunphen*, to be enjoyed by him after his decease, Anno 1472.
- 1473 16. *Adolph*, the wicked Son of *Arnold*, dispossessed of his Estate by the said Agreement, which *D. Charles* enjoyed for his life, after the death of the said *Charles* was restored to liberty by the *Gambuis*, Anno 1467, and made the General of their Forces against *Lewis* the 11.
- 1477 17. *Charles*, Son of *Arnold*, after long Wars with the Princes of the Houses of *Burgundy* and *Austria*, pretending the Sale and Legacy of Duke *Arnold* to *Charles* the Warlike, surrendered his Estates unto *Charles* the 5. to be enjoyed by him after his decease, if he left no Issue. According to which Contract the Emperor *Charles* succeeded him in *Gelders* and *Zunphen*, Anno 1538, being the year of his decease; after which time they were accomplished in the number of the *Belgick* Provinces.

The Arms hereof were Quarterly, 1. Az. a Lion Or, crowned *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Gelderland*; 2. Az. a Lion *Gules*, for the Earldom of *Zunphen*.

Thus have we seen a Country which at the first erected

ing of these States was nothing in a manner but *Hogs* and *Marshes*, and at the best but a continual *VVilderness* of *VVoods* and *Forests*, by the great providence of the Princes, and extreme industry of the people, made the most populous, best planted, and the wealthiest Estate (for the bigness of it) in the whole habitable world. And we have seen those several Estates and Principalities, by Marriages and other Contracts, reduced into the hands of the House of *Burgundy*; under the Princes of which great and illustrious Family, inferior to no Kings of Christendom for Power and Riches (especially under Duke *Philip* the Good) the Subjects hereof did abound in wealth and plenty, that *Philip de Comines*, who then lived, affirmed, that this Country seemed like the *Land of Promise*. Some thought there was a purpose in this Duke *Philip* of erecting these States into a Kingdom, from which he was diverted by the difference and variety of Laws and Privileges which those people severally lived under, not to be brought without great difficulty and dilatare to one form of Government: yet might he have done it, if he would, as himself openly affirmed to the Embassadors of King *Lewis* 11. But *Charles* his Son, being more bent on the Design, negotiated to that end with the Emperor *Frederick*, whom he met at *Triers*, Anno 1473; and doubtless had obtained his purpose, upon the Marriage of his Daughter with *Maximilian* *Frederick's* Son, (which was then proposed) had not his rash Engagement against the *Swissers*, and his untimely death therein, broke the course of these Projects: which Projects had they took effect, as in all probability they had, but for that Engagement, he had extended his Dominions all along the *Rhene*, and on both sides of it, from the *Alps* to the German Ocean, and been the most considerable Prince at that time in Christendom; all *Alsace* in High *Germany* being lost or mortgaged to him by the Duke of *Austria*, the Dukedom of *Lorraine* at his mercy; besides the hopes he had of the Earldom of *Provence*, intended to him by King *Reney*, which would have opened him a way into the *Mediterranean*. He being dead, the Government continued as before it was; each Province having its distinct Laws, and living according to their ancient Privileges, till the attempt of *Philip* the second, King of *Spain*, most resolutely (but unfortunately) bent to bring them under the command of that Crown, to cancel all their Privileges, and new-mould the Estate according to his own will and pleasure; occasioning thereby the Revolt of a great part of the Country, and the setting up of a new Estate opposite unto him, and destructive of his Interest in it. But before we come unto this Change, we will first look upon the Prince's Power, Revenue, and other things considerable touching this Estate, whilst it stood entire under the Princes of the House of *Burgundy* and

Lords of BELGIUM.

- 1369 1. *Philip* the Hardy, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*, the first great raiser of this House.
- 1404 2. *John* the Proud, Duke of *Burgundy*, &c.
- 1419 3. *Philip* the Good added to his Estates the Dukedom of *Brabant* and *Limburg*, the *Alsop*, *fate* and *Meelun* by the death of his Cousin *Philip*, the Earldoms of *Mainten*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, and the Lordship of *West-Friesland*, by the Resignation and death of the Countess *Tripelun*, whose next Heir he was; the Dukedom of *Luxembourg*, and the Earldom of *Namur*, which he bought for money.
- 1467 4. *Charles* the VVarlike, who bought the Estates

Arms. *Lycorgus* gave a Law to the *Lacedæmonians*, that they should never fight often with one enemy: the breaking whereof made the *Thebans* a small Commonwealth, to be their equals in power: whereupon it was tartly said by *Anticidas* to *Agellam* King of *Sparta*, that by his freedom warring on them and fighting with them he had made the *Thebans* good Soldiers against their wills. The *Turks* won the vast Empire they now possess by making many and speedy Wars. But now that Policy being worn out of fashion, we see that (to omit *Persia*) the little and distracted Kingdom of *Hungary* hath for 200 years resisted their Forces. So was it betwixt the *Dukes of Austria* and the *Switzers*, and so it is between the *Spaniards* and *Low-country-men*; who formerly being accounted a people of peace, altogether unfit for the Wars, by their continual combating with the *Spaniards*, are become ingenious, full of Action, and great managers of causes appertaining to Fights, either by Sea or Land. We may here-by also perceive what advantage a small State gaineth by fortifying places and passages: there being nothing which sooner breaketh a great Army, and undoeth a great Prince than to beleague a well-fortified Town; for that here-in he consumeth his time, and commonly loseth his men, credit and money; as the *Romans* before *Nimantia*, the great *Turk* in *Malta*, and *Charles of Burgundy* before *Nancy*. For where War is drawn out of Field into the Walls, the Mactock and Spade being more necessary than the Sword and Spear, there the Valour of the Assailant is little available, because it wanteth its proper object.

Thus as before we brought these several Estates and Provinces into one hand, so now we have broke them into two; the one part continuing in Obedience to the Crown of *Spain*, the other governing themselves as a State apart. Under the King remain the Dukedoms of *Luxemburg*, *Limbourg* and *Brabant*; some few Towns excepted; the Marquisate of the Empire, the Earldoms of *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Artois*, and *Flanders*, (except only *Schuyt*) and the Lordship or Seignoury of *Mechlin*, with many places of importance in the Duchy of *Geldres*, to many places of importance in the Duchy of *Flan-* counteravail the Towns that are held from them in *Flan-* ders and *Brabant*. This is by far the greater part of the Country, and more fruitful in regard of the Commodities there naturally growing, but as much inferior to the other in power and riches, by reason of their strength in Shipping, by which they have the command at Sea, and thereby draw the whole Trade of Christendom, driven before at *Amwerp*, to *Amsterdam*, and other Towns of their Confederacy.

For the general Government of these Provinces there is a Regent sent from the Court of *Spain*, whose Authority is generally as great as that of the King; save that all matters of moment pass under the Kings name, and that all Officers of any great trust and concernment are appointed by him, and that all Laws, Decrees, Sentences and Negotiations are dispatched in his name also. For the assistance of the Regent there is a Privy Council, a Council of State, and a Council of Finances, by whom all things are ordered which concern the Publick, the Regent's Authority co-operating and concurring with them, without which, though they may consult, they can execute nothing. And for the Governance and well ordering of their several Provinces there is in every one of them a Lieutenant or Provincial Government, subordinate to the Regent, and accountable to him; and in each Province a particular Council held in the King's name, consisting of more or less Counsellors, (as the bigness of the Province is) for the most part Doctors or Licentiates of the Civil Laws, with a President at the Head thereof, which in some places they call the *Parliament*.

after the manner of the *French*, and in some the *Chancery*. To these Courts all the Subjects do resort for Justice, in Causes both Criminal and Civil: to these are brought Appeals from inferior Judicatures, such as the Courts of great Towns and particular Franchises: and from these lieth an appeal to the great Council at *Mechlin*, supreme and superintendent unto all the rest.

When any thing is to be done which concerns the profit of the Prince, or otherwise is of publick moment, the Regent sendeth out Letters in the King's name, to command the Estates, that is to say, the Clergy, the Nobility, and the Principal Towns of every Province, (except those of *Luxemburg*, *Geldres*, *West-Friesland* and *Over-Yssel*, who by special Privilege cannot be called out of their own Countries) to come before him. The place of their Assembly is for the most part at *Brussels*, the Court and Residence of the Regent; because the *Brabanters* are also Privileged not to be summoned out of the Precincts of their own Province. Where being come, the States Assemble not altogether, but those of one Province at a time, so one after another: to whom the President, or some one of the Council of State propoeth in the Prince's name that which he demandeth. To which if any Town oppose, then all which the rest have done is of no effect, nothing being granted by the Deputies or States of any Province, but with this condition, that all the rest of the Estates do agree unto it. Without this punctual consent of all parties interested, the Prince can impose nothing, by their Laws upon the Subject, nor alter any thing at all in the publick Government.

And as the People are thus Privileged in regard of the Prince, so are the Princes and Prelates privileged in regard of the Pope, it being agreed upon between them.

1. That the Prince is to give Clergy-Benefices, and the Pope to conform them.
2. That neither Prelate nor Lay-person may be cited to *Rome*, but the Pope to send his Delegates or Commissioners into the Country.
3. The Pope not to give a Benefice, nor grant a Pardon, nor send a Bull into the Country, without the leave of the Prince.
4. That no Clergy-man can buy Lands or other immovables, without the Prince's consent. And
5. That the Prince hath power to visit the Clergy, to see if they be well governed or not; and if they be not, to reform the Abuses.

Great Privileges, if considered rightly; greater than which few Protestant Princes do pretend to in their own Dominions.

As for the Revenue raised by the *Spaniard* out of his part of this Estate, it is not easy to be guessed at; and of that which is, there comes but little to his *Coffers*. The expences of his Court there is as great as ever under any of the former Regents; and his charge of entertaining Soldiers for his Towns and Garrisons greater than before. Nor doth it now stand with reason of State to lay any arbitrary Taxes upon the People, least he exasperate them to a second Rebellion, or flatter them to some new Confederacy against his Quiet.

Under the Government of the Confederate Estates are the Dukedom of *Gelderland*, excepting some few Towns in the hands of the *Spaniard*, the entire Earldoms of *Holland*, *Zeland* and *Zuypen*, the Seignouries of *West-Friesland*, *Over-Yssel*, *Groning*, the Town of *Schuyt*, *Utrecht*, *Over-Yssel*, *Groning*, and many pieces of importance in the Dutchy of *Brabant*. This is the lesser part by far, and far inferior to the other in regard of the Soil, but the more populous of the two, and by the in-

dultry

dultry and great Trading of the people the more rich and powerful. They are governed after their own old Laws, by the particular Estates of every Province, not yet united into one entire Body of a Commonwealth; saving that for the better preservation of their Confederacy, the Commissioners of the several Provinces do consult together, whom they have honoured with the name of the *States General*.

The Estates of the particular Provinces elected out of the principal Towns and Places of most importance, do order the Affairs thereof according to their ancient Privileges, Rights, and Customs, as well by themselves as by their Collegues and Officers whom they do appoint; and that as well for matters of State as in point of Justice. For Administration of the which, the Governors, President and Counsellors of the Provincial Courts, have the cognizance of all Cases, both civil and criminal, and in all Causes of Appeal from inferior Courts; in each of which they proceed without Appeal, making their Acts and Commissions in the name of the said Governors, Presidents, and Council; but pronouncing Sentence and executing Judgment in right of the Sovereignty of the said Province. And these provincial States are chosen Generally out of the Plebeians or common People; and the Burgers (at the best) of the greater Townships; the Nobility and Gentry being to worn out, that in all *Holland* and *Zeland* there are not left above three Families of Gentlemen, and those compelled to live after the Plebeian fashion for fear of Envy, and to avoid the Infoleny of the fauzy Clowns, who, out of rudeness and the desire of Equality, hate nothing more among them than the name of a Gentleman.

Out of these Provincial States, which hold not for any certain and determinate time, but only during the pleasure of the Community for which they serve, are chosen one or more for each several Province, according to the condition and capacity of those which are chosen, to reside at the *Hague*, there to consult of the Affairs which concern the publick: but so, that be they more or less out of every Province they make amongst them but one Suffrage, when any thing is put unto the Vote. And these they call the *States General*, first because a collected Body out of all the Provinces; and, secondly, because they are not properly to deal in any matters of particular concernment, which are determinable absolutely by the States Provincial, but only in such things as concern the general good of the whole Estate, as treating with Ambassadors, making War and Peace, &c. For their Assistance in the which, there is a Council of State, made up of the Governors and some eminent men of every Province, (in which the Ambassadors of *England* as long as we held *Fishing*, and the other Cautionary Towns, had his voice or suffrage) by whose advice they

dispose of all things which concern the publick: but so that if any difficulty do appear in the business, they conclude nothing till they have the approbation and consent of the particular Cities and Provinces for which they are chosen; to whom they are accountable for their Administration, and by whom revocable whensoever they please.

The Revenue of this Estate doubtless is exceeding great, the Army which they keep in continual entertainment consisting of no less than 30000 men; which they can draw into the field, leaving the Forts and Towns very well provided; yet so well paid that we never read of any Mutiny amongst them for want thereof. The whole Charge with the entertainment of Captains and superiour Officers, is said to amount to 500000 l. per annum; raised on the people by Excise laid upon all Commodities, and many Taxes of like nature, so insupportable in themselves, and amongst men which would be thought to live in a Free State, that should the *Spaniard* or any Prince in Christendom lay but half so much on their Subjects, it would occasion a Revolt. So that whereas one of the first causes of their falling off from the King of *Spain* was to free themselves from Taxes and Impositions illegally (as they said) enforced upon them; they have drawn on themselves more arbitrary and illegal Payments than any Nation in the World. So little have they got by the change of Government. Touching their Power at Sea, we have spoke of already. All I shall now add to it is by way of Instance, which is, That in the year 1587 the King of *Denmark*, on pretence of some displeasure, arrested 608 Ships of theirs of all sorts at one time in the *Sound*; and that the next year after they set out, upon very short warning, an hundred good men of War, to join with *England* against the invincible *Armada*, which then threatened both. To conclude, there is nothing wanting to these Countries wherewith the God of all blessings doth enrich a Nation, but a gracious Prince, unity of Religion, and a quiet Government: which if it pleased the Almighty to confer upon them, they would surpass all neighbouring States in Treasure, Potency, Content, and all worldly Happiness.

There are in these Countries,

Archbishops 3

Bishops 15.

Universities 7. { *Lovain*, *Liege*.
 Doway, *Lieën*.
 Harderwick, *Groning*.
 Frankgr.

And so much for BELGIUM.

X x

OF

O F

GERMANY.

GERMANY is bounded on the East with *Prussia, Poland, and Hungary*; on the West with *France, Switzerland and Belgium*, on the North with the *Baltick Ocean*, and some part of *Denmark*, on the South with the *Alpi*, which part it from *Italy*. By which accompt the modern *Germany* much differeth from that described by *Tacitus* and others of the *Roman Writers*: that comprehending the three Kingdoms of *Denmark, Norway*,, and *Sweden*, with so much of the Kingdom of *Poland* as lieth on this side of the River *Vistula*; but bounded on the East with the *Rhene*, and on the South with the *Danow*: the modern *Germany* containing on the farther banks of those Rivers five whole *Roman Provinces*, that is to say, *Noricum Riperis*, and *Mœdioterraneum*, *Rætia secunda*, *Belgica* and *Germania prima*, with some parts of *Rætia prima* and *Germania secunda*: but terminated with the *Danew* and the *Baltick Sea*.

It was first called thus by the *Romans*, (as some conceive) who seeing the People both in Customs, Speech and course of life to like those of *Gallia*, called them *Germans* to the *Gauls*; the word *Germans* in the *Latino* signifying a Brother of the whole blood, as our Lawyers phrase it) that is to say, a Brother both by Father and Mother; those which have the same Mother, but divers Fathers, being called *Fratres uterini*. And of this mind is *Strabo*, who speaking of the great resemblance which was betwixt these Nations in Manner, Speech, Customs and way of life, concludes it thus, that the *Romans* did with very good reason call them *Germans*, *cum fratres, eos, Gallorum hoc nomine vellent ostendere* intending to signify by that name, that they were the brethren of the *Gauls*. But this is to be understood of those people only which dwelt next to *Gaul*, and not of all the Nations which inhabited in this vast Continent according to the ancient extent thereof; it being very well observed by *Tacitus*, that *Germany* was at first *Nationis, non Gentis, nomen*, the name of some of the Nations only, not of all the Country; the name in process of time spreading over all that large Tract of ground and thence scattered Nations which were either conquered by them or incorporate with them. Others will have the name to be merely *Dutch*, deriving it from *Ger*, which signifies *All*, and the word *Man*, signifying in that Language as in ours; whence also they derive the name of *Almans* by which they would imply that the *Almans* or *Germans* are a very warlike Nation, a people that have in them *nihil nisi virile*, nothing not worthy of a *man*. *Bacharus*, (somewhat near to this, telling us that *Ger* in the ancient *Gallies*, did signify as much as *Guerr* in the modern *French*, would have them at their first coming over the *Rhene* to be called *Germans* by the *Gauls*, that is to say, men of War; (or *Gens de Armes* in the present *French*) by reason of the great and many Victories obtained by them.

The like diversity I find for the name of *Almans*. For though some gave them the name of *Almans* from the same originals from whence they fetch the name of *Germans*, as was said before, yet others as probably conjecture that they had that name because they consisted of

many several Nations coming out of the North and North-east hither, that they seemed to be a Hottch-pot of all sorts of men, kneaded into one name and Nation; which is the conceit of *Almainus Quadrupes*. But for my part, I do conceive (supposing the name of *Almain* to be Dutch originally) that the whole Country was not called *Almain* till such time as the Princes of the Dukedoms of *Almain* (since called *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*) did possess the Empire, which continuing in that potent Family near 100 years, might very well occasion them to be called the Emperours of *Almain*, or the *Almain* Race, and so impart that name to the Empire also. And for the *Almans* naturally and properly so called (of whom we shall speak more when we come to *Suevia*, I fee no Etymology more agreeable to true Antiquity, than to derive the name from *Mannus* the Son of *Tiufco*, one of their Gods, and a principal Founder of this Nation, (*Tiufconem* Deum & *flum Mannus*; *originem gentis emendore*), as it is said by *Tacitus*; the people being called *Alemanni* (with a double n) in all ancient Writers, as men that did derive themselves from this *Mannus*, the Son of *Tiufco*. In like sorts as (I think) the *Marcomanni*, inhabiting the Countries of *Moravia*, were so called, as being the *Manni* of the *Marches* or outborders of *Germany*, and not the *Markmanns*, as if they were men of mark, the only men of fame and honour of all those Nations; which might as well be preffed from the Dutch originals that of *All-man*, in the meaning by them pretended. And unto this opinion I am Iwayed the rather, because I find the Dutch Nation generally so much inclined to derive their Original from *Tiufco*, (from whom the *Tenenti*, inhabiting about *Brandenburg*, may well fetch their Pedegree;) the name of *Dutchland* or *Dutchmen* coming near in sound to *Tiufc-land* and *Tiufc-men*. In which I shall subscribe to *Verfeegan*'s opinion, though for the most part I look upon him but as the second part of *Gorgius Becanus*.

But being the Etymologies of the names of most ancient Nations are very uncertain, and for the most part founded on Conjectures only; let us leave the name a while, and survey the Country: the length whereof (according to the truest and exactest measurement) from East to West, that is to say from the *Vistula* or *Weslto* the *Rhene*, is estimated at 840 Italian miles; the breadth from North to South, that is to say, from the Ocean to the Town of *Brixen* in *Tyrol*, 740 of the same miles. So that the Figure of it being near a Square, it may take up 3160, miles in compass, or thereabouts. Situate in the Northern temperate Zone, betwixt the middle Parallels of the sixth and tenth Climates, the longest day in the most Southern parts, being 15 hours and an half, and in the most Northern 17 hours and a quarter.

In this compals and extent of Ground are suppoed to live 10 millions of people. The men of the poorer sort are laborious, painful, and of a sincere and honest carriage; the Nobles for the most part either Scholars or Soldiers, and true lovers of Honour; though *Tacitus* hath otherwise relolved it, affirming that the *Gauls* fight for Liberty, the *Belgians* for Honour, and the *Germans* for Gain. Which yet is true enough of the common Souldiers, who, if they

fail of Pay, fail in Courage presently. Of both sorts they are generally tall and big, of great Bones, much Fleth, and large Sinews, but commonly of such a phlegmatick constitution, that they have not spirit enough to manage such a mass of Fleth as they bear about them. Which want of natural heat to concoct that humour makes them for the mostpart to be men of abright or light brown Hair, and fair Complexions. They are little addicted to Venus, and very much to Bacchus; whence the Proverb, *Pyrræ Germanorum est bibere*, and the old Verbes, *Germani possunt cunctis tolerare labores*.

O munitum pellem tantum bene ferat lictum.
The Dutch themselves to labour will incur.
O would they Thirst could half so well endure.
This love upon their Liqueur, together with their natural
Temper, maketh them fat and corpulent. Whereupon
Pope Julius the second, styling the *Spaniards Birds of the Air*, because of their Ambition, the *Venetians and Genoese Fishes of the Sea*, because so much accustomed to
Navigation; called the *German* by the name of the *Beast of the Field*. And when *Augustus* was resolved to take
unto himself the supreme Government of Rome, he was
advised by *Agrippa* to chuse a Guard of *German* to attend
upon him. The reason was, (as *Dion* giveth it) Because
in those great Bodies there was little Malice hidden, and
less Subtlety; and that they were a People that took more
pleasure to be commanded than to command. In matters
of War this people have been formerly in a measure fa-
vourable; yet not so much by the valour or conduct of their
Captains; (for they have had but few such) as by their
own hardiness. They withstood the *Romans* 20 years,
afflicting and troubling them more in that space than
either the *Carthaginians*, *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, or *Partians*;
and even at the last (saith *Tacitus*) *Triumphatis magis
fuit quam victis*. In our times the *Rutters* and *Lans-
knights* of *Germany*, (for so they call their Horse and
Foot) have been much employed: but more by reason of
their numbers, easily rais'd out of so large a Country, than
any opinion of their Valour; being flow of motion, dull of
apprehension, fearful of putting any thing to the chance
of War. By reason of which fearfulness, as they are very
cruel upon all advantages, not sparing either age or sex
when they get the Victory; so are they apt to run upon
any Alarm, not to be rallied, if once routed, upon any
persecutions. Infomuch as *Charles* Count of *Manfield*,
General of an Army of 50000 fighting men, but most of
this Nation, was forced to suffer a small Army of
10000 *Turks* to pass by his Trenches, being then strongly
encamped before *Strigium*, (now *Graz*) a Town of
Hungary, and to Victual the Town before his face; not
daring to lift upon them or disturb their purpose, for fear
lest, being lustily charged, his *Germans* would give back
and endanger all. And yet besides these weaknesses, they
have some great faults. One of which is a custom, if their
wages be not duly paid, (though it be in the very midst
of a Battle) to cry *Guelts*, *Guelts*, throwing down their
weapons, and suffer themselves to be cut in pieces by the
Enemy. And so they served *Frederick* the Eleckour *Pa-
latine* at the Battle of *Prague*. On the other is an extreme
humour of Spoil and Plunder: so which they are so bent
wherever they come, that such as entertain them have
just cause to say, that they receive more damage by them
than they do by their Enemies. Two undeceivable notes
of mercenary Valour.

The women are of a good Complexion, but by reason of their intemperance in eating and drinking, much given to Compulency; women of a good carriage, (as the saying is) good Bearers, and as fruitful Breeders; fervently obsequious to their Husbands, whom many of good rank serve at the Table with Trenchers and other necessaries,

The Diet of Germany, *France and Italy*, is by a Traveller thus censured: *The Germans have much meat; but Italianly dress it; the French little, but neatly cooked; the Austrians neither the one nor the other. And to say truly, the Germans have meat enough; the People being generally good eaters, and drinking by nature or ill custom excessive both in eating and drinking, seldom rising from the Table till they have devoured all which was set before them. Inomuch that in some places it is provided by Law, that in their feasts they shall not sit above five hours at the Table. During which time, if by Intemperance either in eating or drinking a man disgorge his foul stomach in his fellow's Lap, or pifs under the Table, it is no disgrace to him, nor at any time taken notice of to his reproach. Which humour of gormandizing and excessive drinking is not only cherished among the vulgar, but even amongst their greatest Princes; who, besides what they do in this kind themselves, have their drinking Champions, as well to answer all Challenges, as to challenge all comers, contending with each other, as a point of State, whose Cellular shall afford the greatest and most capable Vessels.*

The Title of the Father defends to all the Children; every Son of a Duke being a Duke, and every Daughter a Dutchess: a thing which the *Italians* hold for ridiculous that they put it in the fore-front of this facetious Satyre, *The Dukes and Earls of Germany, the Dons of Spain, the Nonseurs of France, the Bishops of Italy, the Nobility of Hungary, the Lords of Scotland, the Knights of Naples, and the Younger Brethren of England*, make a poor Company. For by this common assuming of the Father's Honour, and the parting his Lands among all the Brethren, the Nobility is beyond reason multiplied; and no less impoverished; their being not long since seventeen Princes of *Anhalt*, and twenty seven Counts of *Mansfeld*; to most of which their Arms have been the best part of their Riches, *et nihil nisi arma & manus*; and *in his omnia*, as *Tacitus* once said of the ancient *Britains*. And yet there is not one of this poor Nobility that will vouchsafe to marry with the Daughter of the wealthiest Merchant, or suffer any of their Estates

married to any under the degree of a Noblemen; nor any juster cause of a Differing their Children than ignoble Marriages; they never permitting the Issue of such a Bed to succeed in any of their Fees, Estates or Titles; by means whereof, though they debar themselves of such accessions of wealth as Matches of that kind might bring them; yet, to the great honour of their generosity in this particular, they preserve the pure Stream of their Blood from running into muddy Channels, and keep the Spirits of brave men though they want the Fortunes.

The Languages here spoken are, the *French* in *Lorraine*, and in some Towns of the Bishop of *Triers*; the *Italian* in the highest part of *Tyrol*, which lie next to the Commonwealth of *Venice*; the *Sclavonian* spoken in *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, and some parts of *Lusatia*; and the high *Dutch*, the general Language of the Country. A Language very ancient doublets; (though I am not so much a *Gothic* as to think it spoke in Paradise, or before the Flood) and such as, by reason of the little or no impression which the *Roman* Armies made upon this Country, hath less the commixture with the *Latine* than any which is used in these Western parts, (the *Wells* excepted) and is very harsh by reason of its many Consonants.

This Country was esteemed by *Tacitus* to be rude and barren, containing nothing but unpeopled Forests, unprofitable Heaths; and unhealthy Pools. *Germaniam inferam terris, asperam colis, trifidem cultu asperitque*, as he farther added. And such no doubt it was in those times wherein *Tacitus* lived; the people not being civilized, nor the Country cultivated, nor any means found out to rectify the sharpness of that Northern Air. But he who doth observe it now, cannot but confess that there is no Country in the World either better planted, or replenished with more goodly and gallant Cities; being also in most parts both pleasant, healthy and profitable; abounding with Mines of Silver and inferior Metals, plentiful in Corn and Vines, with which they supply the defect of other Nations, as also with Fleish, Fith, Linnen, Quicksilver, Alum, Saffron, Armour and other Iron-works. The Arable Lands are so spacious in the Eastern parts, that the Husbandman going forward with his Plough in the morning, turneth not back again till noon; so making but two Furrows for his whole daies work. For this *Versheim* is my Author; and if it be not credible; let him bear the blame.

Souldiers of most eminency in the elder times were 1. *Arminius* the Prince of the *Cherusci*, who overthrew *Quintilius Varus* and the *Roman* Legions. 2. *Wittikind*, the last King of the *Saxons*. For the middle Ages, 3. *Otho* the first, 4. *Frederick Barbarossa*, 5. *Redolph of Habsburg*, Emperours and Kings of *Germany*; 6. *Henry*, surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*. And in the last Century of years, 7. *Frederick* the second, Elector *Palatine*, who made good *Vienma* against the *Turks*; 8. *Albert* Earl of *Mansfeld*, 10. *John George of Jagerndorf*, 11. *Albert Wallenstein* Duke of *Friedland*, and divers others of late daies.

Scholars of note the elder times afforded none, nor the middle many; Learning being here so rare in the middle of the eighth Century, that *Vigilius* Bishop of *Salzburg* was condemned of Heresie, for holding that there were *Antipodes*. In the next Age there flourished *Rabanus Maurus*, *Haimo of Halberstadt*, *Walafridus Strabus*, men learned for the times they lived in. And in the following times, *Oekonom*, a stout defender of the Rights of the Empire against the Encroachments of the Pope, *Orho Frisingensis* the Historian, *Albertus Magnus* the Philosopher; of which last it is said, that he made the *Statua*, of a Man, which with the help of Artificial En-

gines could speak articulately, and was the work of 50 years. Then in the days of our Grandfathers we have 1. *Martin Luber*, that great instrument of the Reformation. 2. *Philip Melancthon*, his Coadjutor in that work, but of more excellent parts, and far better temper; thence called the *Phoenix* of that age. 3. *Jacquin Camerarius*, a great friend of *Philip*. 4. *Martin Chemnitz*, a solid and laborious Writer. 5. *Flacius Illyricus*, the chief Author of the *Magdeburgian* Centuries, and Father of the *Rigid Luberians*. 6. *Sebastian Munster*, and industrious Cosmographer, and a learned Linguist. 7. *Silburgius*, and 8. *Buxtorfius*, as great Linguists as he. Not to descend to further instances in those who have so filled the *Matts of France* in these latter times.

But the greatest excellency of this people lieth in the Mechanical part of Learning, as being eminent for many Mathematical Experiments, strange Water-works, Medicinal Extractions, Chymistry, the Art of Printing, and inventions of like noble nature, to the no less benefit than admiration of the World. Amongst which I cannot chuse but instance in that work of *Regiomontanus*, an excellent Mathematician, and a cunning Artizan, spoken of by *Keckermann*; who at the coming of the Emperor *Maximilian* to the City of *Nuremberg*, made a wooden eagle, which flew a quarter of a mile out of the Town to meet him; and being come to the place where he was, returned back of its own accord, and so accompanied him to his Lodging. A thing if true (as the Relator was a man of too much gravity to abuse the World with an untruth) exceedingly beyond that Miracle of a flying Dove, for which *Archytas* is so famed amongst the ancients. Exceeded only by himself in a like invention, which was that of an Iron Fly, (the greater Miracle of Art, because less quantity) which at a Feast, to which he had invited some of his special Friends, flew from his hand about the Room and returned again, as is affirmed by *Peter Ramus*; expressed thus by Divine *Du Bartas*.

Once as this Artiste, more with mirth than meat,
Feasted some Friends, whom he esteemed great,
From his learn'd hand an Iron Fly flew out,
And, having flown a perfect Round-about,
With wearied wings return'd unto her Master,
And as judicious on his arm he plac'd her.
O divine Wit, that in the narrow Womb
Of a small Fly could find sufficient Room
For all those Springs, Wheels, Counterpoise and Chains,
Which stood instead of Life, and spur, and reins!

And amongst these I reckon *Bernhardus Swart*, a *Franciscan* Friar, the Inventor (though by accident) of that fatal Instrument, the Gun. Studios in Chymistry, he mingled dried Earth, Sulphur, and some other with a stone; which he had put into a Mortar covered with a stone; and striking Fire to light a Candle, as the night came on, a spark by chance fell into the Mortar, and catching hold of the Sulphur and others Minerals, with great violence blew up the stone where it was covered. Amazed at which, he made trial severally of these Ingredients, to find out which of them it was that produced that effect: which having discover'd, he caus'd an Iron Pipe to be made, crammed it with Sulphur, Saltpetre and Stones; and putting fire to it, saw with what violent noise and fury it discharged it self. This Invention he is said to have first communicated to the *Venetians*, Anno 1350, of therabouts, who having been often vanquished by the *Genoveses*, and driven almost to a necessity of yielding to them, by the help of their Guns (Bombards they were then called) gave unto their enemies a notable discomfiture. And this was the first Battle that ever took place like Pieces had a part in; which not long after put to

lence all the Engines and Devices wherewith the Ancients were wont to make their Batteries. The next that made use of this instrument were the Inhabitants of the *Baltick Sea*: and not long after them the *English* at the Siege of *Calice*, Anno 1347; about which time they began also to be used in *France*: The *French*, it seemeth, learned the use of them from the *English*, and the first benefit received by them, was the death of that famous Leader, *Thomas Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, who at the Siege of *Orleans* was slain with a great shot, An. 1425. Twenty years after this, An. 1446, they were first used in *Spain*, at the Siege of *Sesevillea*, a Town of the Kingdom of *Granada*, by the *Castilians*; and after by degrees made common to the rest of that Continent. And being grown common in this Continent, as well unto the *Jews* and *Moor*s as unto the *Christians*, it was not long before they taught it to the *Turks*. For the *Jews* being forced to abandon *Spain*, Anno 1492, betook themselves to *Greece* and other parts of the *Turky* Dominions, to whom they shewed the Art of making Ordnance, Gunpowder, Harquebusses, sufficiently since used by that people to the hurt of *Christendom*. But somewhat before this the *Turks* had been in part beholden for them to the Wars they had with the *Venetians*; beholden, I say, for notwithstanding the harm received by them at first, yet afterwards growing expert in managing of them, they gave unto *Ulfan Calasene* and *Hismael* two of the most mighty Emperours of *Perfia*, two memorable Overthrows by the help of their great Ordnance only. The *Portugals* were in this Art the Tutors to the *Persians*: for as *Solyman* the *Turkish* Emperour objected against them, they not only aided *Tamas* the *Sophi* with certain Harquebusses, but also sent him workmen to shew him the use and making of Artillery. These great Pieces at the first invention were rude unskillfully, and charged with Stone-bullets only, but by degrees they came to that perfection, both for the wall and the hand, which they now have. Whether now Archery or Gunning be to be preferred, I stand not here to determine; only this I am sure of, that Victories have been of late purchased with less expence of blood and life than ever formerly. But of this Theam more perhaps hereafter, when we shall come to take the *Partisan* Archery into consideration.

The Religion of this Country it is not easie to name, considering many are here allowed; *Jews* being intermixt with *Christians*, and these divided into *Papists* and *Protestants*; the latter also divided into *Lutherans*, *Calvinists*, &c. The *Christian* Faith was first planted here, by *Dorotheus* Bishop of *Tyre* be of any credit, by St. *Thomas* surnamed *Didymus*, one of the Twelve. But being there is little trust into his Relations, the best were to say that the *Germans* had not all the same Apostles; that the Gospel was first preached amongst the *Rhatians* and *Vandals*; by S. *Lucius* of *Cyrene*, amongst those of *Noricum* by S. *Marick*, by S. *Crescent* at *Metz*, S. *Clement* at *Metz*, *Lorraine*, all of them Apostolical men, and of the number of the 70. after that by S. *Maternus* at *Colen*, and by S. *Eucherius* at *Triers*. That the Faith was planted very early in these Countries *Irenaeus*, the renowned Bishop of *Lions*, An. 170, is sufficient evidence, who takes notice of it; and that it prospered very well and took very good root, appeareth by the Bishops of *Metz*, *Triers*, *Vorms*, *Spire*, *Basil*, and *Straesburg*, subscribing to the Council of *Colen* in the Reign of *Constantine* the Son of *Constantine* the Great, An. 347. But the light hereof being extinguished for a time by those barbarous Nations who fell upon these out-parts of the *Roman* Empire, began to shine again on the Conversion of the *French* in all parts of this Country; the Conquests and example of

this pious Nation giving great encouragement thereunto. In which as those of other Countries do not want their honour, so the greatest part thereof belongs to the *English Saxons*; *Willibrod* the first Bishop of *Utrecht*, *Willwald* of *Aichstet*, *Swibori* of *Verdon*, *Willwald* of *Breme*, and especially *Boniface* the Archbishop of *Ament*, being most gloriously fortunate in that sacred service. The *Moravians*, *Bohemians*, and other farther off, came not in till afterwards. Not fully converted to the Faith, they began to suck in the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; discerned and opposed by J. *Hulse* and *Hierom* of *Rome*; *Bohemian* Divines, who by reason of the Marriage of King *Richard* the second of *England* with the Daughter of *Wenceslaus* Emperour and King of *Bohemia*, had opportunity to be acquainted with the Preachings of *Wicliffe*, the Point of whose Doctrine they approved and propagated. But these two being burnt at *Constance* by the decree of that Council, their followers in *Bohemia* would not so give over, but after many sufferings and much bloodshed, obtained at last a Toleration of the Emperour *Sigismund* their King, more able to make good his word in his own the fire at *Constance*, to whom he had granted his safe Conduct for their coming and going. In this condition they remained under the name of those of the *Sub uranique* or *Calistini*, because of their administering the Sacrament in both kinds, till the rising of *Luther*, who justly offended at the impious and unwarrantable Assertions of *Frier Tegel*, and others of the Pope's Pardon-mongers; first opposed their doings, and after questioned their Authority by which they added, falling from one point to another, till he had shaken the Foundations of the *Roman* Fabrick. Of the success of his undertaking we shall speak but little, as in a thing well known to all men of knowledge. Suffice it in this place to say that his Doctrine was not only received in *Germany*, but generally embraced in the great Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Sweeland*, with the Provinces and Islands appertaining to them, in great part of *Poland*, *Hungary*, and *Transylvania*, as far almost as to the banks of the *Euxine* Seas; but for the progress of it here (which we are more especially at this time to enquire into) it was so well approved of, that the Dukes of *Saxony*, *Brunswick*, *Lunenbourg*, *Wirtemberg*, *Mecklenberg*, and *Pomerania*, the Marquels of *Brandenburg*, the Landgraves of *Hesse*, and most of the free Imperial Cities did adhere unto it, who from their Protection made at *Spire* (the Imperial Chamber) to that effect, An. 1529, had the name of *Protestants*. The next year following they delivered in the Confession of their Faith at *Ausburg*, a City of *Suevia*, thence called *Confessio Augusana*; authorized, or tolerated at least, after a long War, with variable success on both sides, by the Emperour *Charles* the fifth, at the Pacification made at *Pessaw*, An. 1552, and afterwards more fully at *Ausburg*, (where their Confession had first been tendered, Anno 1555).

But not to pass over this matter in these generals only, we may know once for all, that in the year 1530, the Protestant Princes having tendered their Confession at *Ausburg*, (as before is said) and finding it not so well received as they did expect, entered into a Confederation at the Town of *Smaleald* (belonging to the Duke of *Saxony*) for defence thereof, and for the Defence of one another in pursuance of it. Into this Confederacy first entered *John Frederick* the Duke of *Saxony* and his Son, *Ernest*, and *Francis* Dukes of *Lunenbourg*, *Philip* the Landgrave of *Hesse*, *George* Marquels of *Brandenburg*, the Cities of *Straesburg*, *Neurenberg*, *Heilbrun*, *Ruteling*, *Ulm*, *Lindaw*, *Constance*, *Memming*, and *Campeadene*. Afterwards, Anno 1535, there entered into it *Barnimus* and *Philip* Princes of *Pomerania*, *Ulrich* Duke of *Wirtemberg*, &c.

bert Duke of Zweibrücken, (or Bismarck, as some Writers call him; William Earl of Nassau, George, and Joachim Earls of Anhalt, the Cities of Frankfurt, Hamborough, Aulburg, Hanover, and not long after the Palgrave and King of Denmark, But this Confederacy was like to have dashed the business. For Charles the fifth looking upon it as a matter of a dangerous consequence to the power and safety of the Empire, and withal infligated thereunto by the Popes of Rome, whose interest was no less concerned in it, considering that he could not otherwise unite this Gordian knot, resolved to cut it with the sword. At first the War succeeded luckily with the Protestant Princes, who armed themselves upon the noise of his Preparations: But there being an equality of Command between the Duke John-Frederick and Philip the Landgrave, the one sometimes not approving, otherwhiles thwarting the other projects, the end proved not answerable. Besides the politic Emperor knowing full well that the Forces of confederate States are often broken by Deceives than Battle, avoided all occasions of fighting, and thereby wearied out this great Army; which, without performing any notable exploit, disbanded it self, every man hawking home to defend his own. But none had more reason so to do than the Duke Elektor: For in his absence his Cousin Maurice (forgetting the Education he had under him, and how formerly the Duke had conquered for him, and eated him in those parts of Misnia (maugre all opposition of Duke George his Uncle) formerly had belonged to Duke George his Uncle) combined himself with the Emperor, and invaded the Elektor's Country; who notwithstanding recovered not only all his own, but a great part also of those Lands and Territories in which he had before eated his ungrateful Kinsman. But while he was in this Career, the Emperor suddenly falls upon him not far from Mühlberg, (where the Duke was then hearing a Sermon) and by the suddenness of his coming routed his timorous unprovided Army; the Duke himself with some few resolute Gentlemen making head against him, till the most of them were slain, and the Duke taken Prisoner. The next morning he was condemned to loose his head, but pardoned at the last upon some conditions: amongst which it was none of the least, that he should surrender his Estates, and resign the Electoral dignity to be disposed of by the Victor, as also that he should without ransom release Marquess Albert of Brandenburg, (a busy and unquiet man) who was then his Prisoner. This done, the Emperor fraudulently intrappeth the Landgrave, as we shall shew more at large hereafter in other places, and carrying on the Wars from one free City to another, compelled them to receive the Mass, and to submit to such Composition as he pleased to grant them; in so much as it was thought that the Emperor gained in this journey a Million and 600000 Crowns, and 500 pieces of great Ordnance. But these Successes were too great and too unjustly grounded to continue long. For Maurice, the new Duke Elektor, who had married the Landgrave's Daughter, and engaged himself unto his Children both by Word and Bond (and that too at the Emperor's instance) for the safe returning, conceived himself unworshipfully dealt with to be made the instrument of his Father's thralldom, and therefore that he was obliged both in love and honour to leave no way untried which might gain his liberty. And withal, finding cause to fear that the course of the Emperor's great successes might end at last in the subversion of the common Liberty, he secretly by an under-hand practice called in the French, and raising Forces under colour of the Emperor's service, gained Marquess Albert before mentioned (who had then a running Army in the field) to associate with him, and fell

so suddenly on the Emperor lying then at Inpruck, that he compell'd him to run away in post-hatch to torght-arch, and the Prelates to break off the Council of Trent, where at that time they were assembled. Upon which turning of the balance a Peace soon ensued, which brought forth the Edicts of Passaw and Aulburg, spoken of before, the best and surest Pledges of the Peace of Germany.

In the mean time, while the Lutherans thus played their game, there started up another party, begun at first by Zuinglius amongst the Swissers, of whose both Doctrine and Success we have spoken there. These, not communicating Councils, went two several ways, especially in the Points of Consubstantiation and the Real Presence; not reconciled in their times, nor like to be agreed upon amongst their followers. For Calvin, rising into the esteem and place of Zuinglius, added some Tenets of his own to the former Doctrines touching Predestination, Free-will, Universal Grace, Final Perseverance (Points fitter for the Schools than a popular Auditory) by which the differences were widened, and the breach made irreparable: the Cause being followed on both sides with great impatience, as if they did not strive so much for great Victory. And of the two, those of the Lutheran party seemed more violent, (though the other was altogether as irreconcilable) who could not chuse but flatter themselves to see themselves undermined and blown up by mach it, to see themselves not tolerated in the Empire, but a new form of Doctrine to the Confession of Aulburg, under colour of Conformity to the Confession of Aulburg, For Zuinglianism being entertained amongst the French, a busy and active people, fixed it self faster in few years than it was propagated by the Swissers (men of the same temper with the Dutch) in all times before. Infamously as it did not only prevail in France, but by their reputation of Calvin, and the diligence of his Followers, was wholly entertained in the Kingdom of Poland, Netherlands, in many parts of the Kingdom of Prussia, and even in Germany it self, in which it got footing in all the Territories of the Counts Palatines in the Rhine, in some of the Landgraves of Hesse, in the Imperial City of Straesburg, many of the Hanse-Towns, and amongst other Princes and free Cities of inferior note. The rest of Germany, containing the Patrimonial Estates of the House of Austria, the Dukedoms of Bavaria and Lorraine, and of the Territories of the three Spiritual Electors, and of all the other Bishopsricks in the hands of the Clergy, some of the Marquesses of Baden, part of the subjects of Cren, and three of the Imperial Cities, (and those small ones too) that is to say, Gemund, Überlingen, and Disenegg-Speyl, (unless some more be added by the great late Successes of the House of Austria) remain in their Obedience to the See of Rome; all which together will hardly make up one fifth part of this spacious Country, the other four being in the power and possession of the Protestant party: yet so that there be many Protestants in Bohemia, Austria, &c. in other the Estates of the Popish Princes, as there be Papists in the Free Cities of Frankfurt, Nuremberg, Ulm, Aken, and some other places, besides the late increase of them in both the Palatinates. Of such a speedy growth was the Reformation, that within the space of 40 years it was not only received in all those Countries which do now profess it, but had also got some footing both in Spain and Italy.

And here perhaps it will not be improper to look upon the means which were chiefly used for the Promoting of this Work; by which it came to spread so far in so little time, and next upon the Steps and Hindrances where were given unto it, by which it was restrained from spreading farther. 1. For the means used in the Advancement of his Work, (next under the Almighty power of the most wise God) they were these especially. 1. The

translating of the Scripture into Vulgar Languages, which easily discovered the Corruptions of the Church of Rome both in Doctrines and Forms of Worship. 2. The diligent Preaching of their Ministry, both in Towns and Villages, for the expounding of the Scriptures, and fitting them to the Capacities of the meanest Auditors; which gained exceedingly both on the judgment and affections of the common people; the course of preaching having been formerly neglected by the Parish Curates, and turned off wholly in a manner to the Begging-Friars. 3. The publishing of Books of Practical Piety and Devotions, which mightily inflamed the hearts of all sorts of men; accustomed before to no other Duties than to tell over their *Grado's* and *Pater-Nosters*, and to keep a just account of their *Ave-Maries*, and that most commonly in a tongue which they understood not. 4. The Education of youth, especially in Catechisms containing the whole body of Christian Religion; which once well planted in their minds, could not so easily be pulled up and removed thence by any contrary persuasion. 5. Their continual offers of disputation with the adverse party in a publick audience; which being denied (as generally at the first it was) gave great assurance of the truth and soundness of the one side, as of the falshood and weakness of the other. 6. Their compiling of Martyrologies and Histories of the Church, which could not but produce an admirable Zeal and Constancy both in the Readers and the Hearers animated thereunto by those brave Examples which therein was presented to them. One point of Prudence hath been wanting, which is the calling of a General Council of all the Protestant and Reformed Churches, for the compoling of the Differences which have grown between them. And this I look on as the first and greatest stop to the Reformation from proceeding farther; many men (not improbably) thinking there must be some want of truth in the Foundation of that building, which had such wide and open breaches in the Superstructures. The Tyranny and Terror of the Inquisition, by which it is kept out of Spain, and kept down in Italy, and all other parts of the Pope's Obedience, together with those other Policies both to discountenance and suppress it, (which we have spoken of in our description of the Papacy) may come next to this. Then add to these the cares and diligence of the Jesuits and Seminary Priests, in applying themselves to all those means which they found so effectual on the other side, thereby not only countermine their endeavours, but fighting them upon even ground with the self-same weapons. And last of all, the Plots and Practices of the Papal Ministers in working on the humours of the opposite parties, thereby engaging them not only into Tongue-combats and ventuations of the Pen, but even to try it out by blows in an open War, once I am sure. By these means they have not only stopped the Progress of the Reformation but would gain give themselves some hopes to destroy it utterly, and thereby to restore the Pope to that power and splendour which formerly he had attained unto in these parts of Europe. But of these and such like self-flatteries I shall say with Seneca, or rather in his words applied to my own intention.

— *He manius Trojam erigunt?*
Parcos habet spes Troja, si tales habet.

That is to say,

Shall these small jars restore the ruin'd Pope;
Small hopes he hath, if this be all his hope.

As for the Government of their Churches, those that continue in obedience to the See of Rome are under the old form of Archbishops and Bishops, coeval in all Germany (as in most places else) with the Faith it self. The Calvinists (by which name the Zuinglians now also pas-

seth, if not eaten out) submit themselves for Doctrine, Discipline and forms of Worship, to Calvin's Model; whereof we have spoke more at large when we were in Geneva. And for the Lutherans, they have divided the Episcopal Function from the Revenues; giving their laity to some of their younger Princes, with the Title of *Administrators* of such a Bishoprick; the Function or Jurisdiction to some of the more eminent Clergy, with the title of a *Superintendent*, assigning to them a priority both of place and power before other Ministers, which they enjoy for term of life, together with some liberal maintenance in proportion to it. In other things, as Order, Habit, and Title of dignity, they differ not at all from the other Ministers. And over them, in the place of Archbishops, they have their *general Superintendents*; all of them of each sort accountable to the supreme Ecclesiastical Consistory, (as formerly to the Provincial or National Synod) made up of Counsellors of State and the Heads of the Clergy. So that the form seems to be much the same as in elder times, but is indeed more different than it seems to be; a great part of the alteration being in the names, and that no other in a manner than by changing the old Greek word *Episcopus* into the new Latine word *Superintendens*, both signifying an *Overseer*, though in different Languages. And so *Ex Græcis bonis Latinis facere non bonas*, in the Poet's word. Which brings into my mind the Story of a People of Africa, who having received much hurt by Tigers, made a Decree that no man from thenceforth should call them *Tigres*, but give them a more harmless or else hated name, and then all was well. And as they do conform thus far to the elder times in form of Government, so do they also come up to them in their forms of Worship; retaining still a settled and prescribed Liturgie for all their Churches, most of the Holy-days observed in the former Ages, the Cross in Baptism, kneeling at the Communion, and many other innocent and significant Ceremonies, commended to the Church by most pure Antiquity. In point of maintenance they are as defective as the Calvinists are; few of their Ministers having Tithes, most of them Pensions or Stipends, and those small ones also, seldom exceeding two or 300 Guildens, besides Wood for fuel, Corn, and some other necessities.

Now because mention hath been made of the *Hanse-Towns* and Imperial Cities, we are to understand that the Cities of this Country are of three sorts. 1. Such as are holden in possession by some of the Princes in way of inheritance, part of their Patrimony and Estates; as *Heidelberg, Vienna, München, Wittenberg*, &c. 2. Such as are held originally of the Empire it self: which are called *Free Cities*, for their great Prerogatives of their Coynning money and governing themselves by their local Ordinances; *Imperial*, in regard they know no Lord or protector but the Emperor only, to whom they pay two third parts of such Contributions as are assessed in the Assemblies or general Diets, and 1000 Florens yearly for themselves and their Territories. They are in number about 60, many of which are of a fair and large Estate; such as are *Nuremberg, Aulburg, Ingolstadt, Spire, Worms*, &c. Of which thus *Guicciardine*: Those, faith he, are called *Free Cities*, which acknowledging by a certain determinate Tribute the Authority of the Empire, do notwithstanding in all other things govern themselves after their own Laws; not seeking to amplify their Territories, but defend their Liberties. 3. The third sort is of those which are called *Hanse-Towns*, or *Hanseatic*; that is, (say some) *An zee haven*, Towns upon the Sea; such as those were who first entered into this Confederacy: but at this time the name extends to many inland Cities, and of no great Trading, joynd with them in a League for their

- by a Faction of the French Nobility was chosen King of France : the whole Estate of Charles the Great becoming once again united in the person of one Sovereign Prince.
- 891 5. *Arnulph*, the natural Son of *Carloman*, the Brother of *Charles*, King of Germany and Emperor.
- 903 6. *Lewis* or *Ludevicus* IV. (Lewis the Brother of *Charles* and *Carloman* being reckoned for one) King of Germany, and Emperor, the lawfully begotten Son of *Arnulph*.
- 913 7. *Conrade*, the Son of *Conrade*, the Brother of *Lewis* the 4. the last Prince of the masculine issue of *Charles* the Great. After whose death the *Franconians* and *Saxons*, seeing *Charles* the Simple, King of France, overlaid by the *Normans*, or embroiled by the Princes of the House of *Anjou*: took that advantage to transfer the Empire to themselves: and they made choice of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* to be their Emperor. A worthy Prince, by whom some Nations of the *Slaves*, the *Hungarians* and part of *Lorraine* were subdued or added to the Empire.
- 929 8. *Henricus*, surnamed *Auceps*, or the Fowler, Duke of *Saxony*, elected by the German Princes, but designed by *Conrade*, as being eldest Son of *Orto* Duke of *Saxony* by *Liutgardis* Daughter to the Emperor *Arnulph*, and consequently a branch of the *Caroline* Stock.
- 938 9. *Orto*, surnamed the Great, the Son of *Henry*, Emperor and King of Italy. 36 years.
- 974 10. *Orto* II. Son of *Orto* the first, Emperor and King of Italy. 10.
- 984 11. *Orto* III. Son of *Orto* II. Duke of *Saxony*, and the last of that House which had the title of Emperor and King of Italy. After whose death, all right of Succession being disclaimed, the Emperours became elective; but for the most part the Election was ingrossed or monopolized (since the Failure of the House of *Saxony*) by the Dukes of *Franconia*, *Suevia*, *Bavaria*, and *Austria*, notwithstanding the liberty or freedom of Election pretended to by the Electors. The business was first projected in the Court of *Rome*, to make the Emperours less powerful, and distrust the Germans, whom they feared, into Sides and Factions: confirmed by a Decree of Pope *Gregory* the fifth, being a Native of that Country.
- 1002 12. *Henry* II. surnamed the Saint, Duke of *Bavaria*, the first Emperor elected according to the Constitution of *Gregory* the fifth, but so elected, that he challenged it in a manner by the right of Blood, as being the Grand-child of *Henry* surnamed *Rixofus*, the first Duke of *Bavaria* of the *Saxon* race) the second Son of *Henry* the first, and consequently the next Heir male of that House after *Orto* the 3. compelling some of the Electors, who opposed his Title, by the force of Arms to yield unto it. So that the first Emperor who came in by a clear Election, but not without pretension of a Title also, was
- 1025 13. *Conrade* II. Duke of *Franconia*, surnamed *Salicus*, Husband to *Liutgardis*, one of the Daughters of *Orto* the first, and consequently not a Stranger to the former Family.

- 1040 14. *Henry* III. surnamed *Niger*, the Son of *Conrade*.
- 1056 15. *Henry* IV. Son of *Henry* the third, in whose days the Popes began to usurp Authority over the Emperours; insomuch as *Leo* the ninth, having received the Popedom at the Emperours hands, repented himself of it, put off his Papal Vestments, went to *Rome* as a private person, and was there new chosen by the Clergy. This was done by the persuasion of a Monk called *Hildebrand*, who being afterwards made Pope by the name of *Gregory* the 7. excommunicated this *Henry*, the first Prince that was ever excommunicated by a Pope of *Rome*. From which time till the year 1254. there were continual Wars and Thunders betwixt them and the nine following Emperours, some of them being excommunicated, some forced to put their Necks under the Feet of the Pope, others to quit the care of the Commonwealth, and betake themselves unto the Wars of the Holy Land, leaving the Pope to do what he list in Germany.
- 1106 16. *Henry* V. Son of *Henry* the 4. armed by the Pope against his Father; whom he had no sooner succeeded in the Empire, but the Pope excommunicated him, for being too stiff in the business of Investitures, and raised up the *Saxons* against him; by whom being vanquished, and otherwise afflicted by the Pope's practices, he was forced to submit unto his commands, and was the last Emperor of the House of *Franconia*.
- 1125 17. *Leobardus* Duke of *Bavaria*, seizing on the Empire without any Election, was reconciled unto the German Princes by the means of *St. Bernard*. He settled the Affairs of Italy in two Journeys thither. 13.
- 1139 18. *Conrade* III. Son of *Frederick*, the first hereditary Duke of *Sueve* or *Schwaben*, and Sister's Son unto *Henry* the fifth, vanquished *Henry* surnamed the Proud, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*; and going to the Holy Wars with *Lewis* King of France, discomfited the *Turks* near the Banks of *Meander*. 15.
- 1153 19. *Frederick*, surnamed *Barbarossa*, Duke of *Sueve* crowned at *Rome* by *Adrian* the 4. and not long after excommunicated by Pope *Alexander* the 3. to whom he was fain at last to submit himself, the Pope insolently trampling on his Neck. He went after to the Holy Land, where he died, having discomfited the *Turks* in three great Battels. 37.
- 1190 20. *Henry* VI. Son of *Frederick*, and King of *Sicily*, in right of *Constance* his Wife, crowned by Pope *Clestinus*, who employed him in the Wars of the Holy Land; in his Journey towards which he died at *Messina*. 8.
- 1198 21. *Philip*, Duke of *Sueve*, Brother of *Henry* the 6. excommunicated by the Pope, (who loved not this Family) by whose means *Orto*, the Son of *Henry* the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*, was set up against him. The occasion of great Wars among the Germans, reconciled by Marriage of *Orto* with a Daughter of *Philip*. 9.
- 1207 22. *Orto* IV. Son of *Henry* surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, crowned at *Rome* by Pope *Innocent* the 3. by whom not long

- long after he was excommunicated, for taking into his hands some Towns of Italy which belonged to the Empire: vanquished in *Brabant* by the Faction raised up against him, he relinquished the Empire to his Competitor.
- 1212 23. *Frederick* II. King of *Sicily* and *Naples*, Son of *Henry* the 6. having settled Germany, disposed himself for the Wars of the Holy Land, where he recovered the possession of the Realm of *Terrusalem*. He was excommunicated by the Pope at his return into Italy, and not long after poisoned.
- 1250 24. *Conrade* IV. Son of *Frederick*, the last Emperor of the House of *Schwaben*. After whose death the Empire being distracted by the Pope's practices into many Factions, each Faction chose an Emperor or King of the Romans: so that at one time there were elected *Henry* Earl of *Thuringia*, *William* Earl of *Holland*, *Alphonso* King of *Castile*, the renowned Author of the *Alfonso* Tables, and
- 1254 25. *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal*, Brother of *Henry* the third of England, the best monied man of all his time, supposed therewith to buy the Suffrages of the Archbishop of *Colen* and Elector *Palatine*, by whom he was elected and crowned King of the Romans, An. 1254. and after he had dealt in the affairs of the Empire 6 years, he returned into England, where he died. After whose death, or an Interregnum of 12 years from his Exit rather, the Title was at last accepted by
- 1263 26. *Rodolph* Earl of *Habsburg*, a petty Prince, (others of greater Estates and Fortunes not daring to take up the honour) the Raifer of the present *Austrian* Family.
- 1292 27. *Adolph*, Earl of *Nassau*, who served in person under King *Edward* the 1. of England against the French; for which being distressed by the Germans, he was encountered and slain near the City of *Spire*.
- 1298 28. *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, Son of *Rodolphus* the Emperor, to whom Pope *Boniface* the 8. gave the Realm of France, of which he had deprived King *Philip* the Fair. But *Albert* would not meddle out of Germany, and did nothing in it.
- 1308 29. *Henry*, Earl of *Luxemburg*, who made a Journey into Italy to recover the Rights of the Empire, (where an Emperor had not been seen in 60 years:) supposed to be poisoned in the Chalice by a Friar at *Benevento* a Town of the Pope's. 6.
- 1314 30. *Lewis*, Duke of *Bavaria*, crowned at *Aix* in the wonted manner, opposed by *Frederick*, Duke of *Austria*, chose by another Faction, and crowned at *Bammas*, a Town of the Archbishop of *Colen*: but he being defeated, *Lewis* remained sole Emperor, and was excommunicated by Pope *John* 22. 33.
- 1346 31. *Charles* V. Son of *John* King of *Bohemia*, and Grand-son of *Henry* the 7. crowned with the Iron Crown at *Millain* 1354; the framer of the *Golden Bull*. 32.
- 1371 32. *Wenceslaus*, King of *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxemburg*, deformed and vicious; deposed by the German Princes 22.
- 1400 33. *Rupertus*, Elector *Palatine*; passed into Italy
- for the recovery of the Dukedom of *Millain*, sold by *Wenceslaus*; but was well beat by *John Galeazzo*, and so returned. 10.
- 1410 34. *Jedocus Barbatus*, Marquis of *Moravia*; Uncle to *Wenceslaus*.
- 1411 35. *Sigismund* Brother of *Wenceslaus*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxemburg*, crowned at *Rome* on *Whitsunday* 1432. He travelled exceedingly for establishing the Peace of *Christendom*, distracted at that time with three Popes at once; and was a great promoter of the Council at *Constance*.
- 1439 36. *Albert* II. Duke of *Austria*, Son-in-law of *Sigismund*, whom he succeeded in all his Estates and Titles, excepting *Luxemburg*. 1.
- 1440 37. *Frederick* III. Duke of *Austria*, the Son of *Ernest* of *Austria*, and next Heir of *Albert* the 2. He procured the calling of the Council of *Basil* for the Peace of *Christendom*, travelling for that cause to *Rome*, where he was declared Emperor, Anno 1442. 54.
- 1494 38. *Maximilian*, Son of *Frederick*, Duke of *Austria*, who first united the Estates of *Burgundy* to the House of *Austria*. A Prince that undertook many great Actions, but went through with none. 25.
- 1519 39. *Charles* V. King of *Spain*, Son of *Philip* King of *Spain*, and Archduke of *Austria*, Son of *Maximilian* by the Lady Mary of *Burgundy*. A puissant Prince, who had Prisoners at the same time the French King and the Pope of *Rome*. He ruined the League made by the Protestants at *Smalcald*, took Prisoners the Electour of *Saxony*, and the Landgrave of *Hessia*, drove the great *Turk* from *Vienna*, won the Kingdom of *Tunis*, and in the end resigned all his Estates, and died in a Monastery. 39.
- 1558 40. *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Austria*, the Brother of *Charles*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, elected King of the Romans by the procurement of *Charles*, Anno 1531. Upon whose Resignation he was chosen Emperor, Anno 1558. 7.
- 1565 41. *Maximilian*, the Son of *Ferdinand*, elected King of the Romans in the life of his Father, Anno 1562, succeeding the Empire after his decease.
- 1577 42. *Rodolphus*, the eldest Son of *Maximilian*, had great Wars against the *Turks*, with whom in the year 1600 he concluded a Peace; but being undermined by his Brother *Matthias*, was forced to surrender to him the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and to content himself with *Austria* and the Empire only. These eight last Emperours were all of the Order of the *Garter*.
- 1612 43. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*, King of *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and Archduke of *Austria*; in whose time were sown the seeds of that terrible War which had almost destroyed the Empire. Having no children of his own, he procured *Ferdinand* of *Gretz* to be declared Successor into his Estates. 7.
- 1619 44. *Ferdinand* of *Gretz*, Archduke of *Austria*, Son of *Charles* of *Gretz*, the younger Son of *Ferdinand*, the first; succeeded *Matthias* in all his Estates and Titles. A Prince more zealously affected to the See of *Rome* than any of his Predecessors, and a great enemy

in his Wars against William Duke of Cleve and Gulick for the Dukedom of Geldres. 3. *Münster Eyfel*, (in *Latine Monsfrun Eyfelis*) so called to distinguish it from *Münster of Westphalen*, pleasantly seated in a Valley between Mountains, not far from the Spring or Fountain of the River *Exp. 4. Caffer*, so called of a stately and magnificent Castle built for defence of this part of the Country. 5. *Berken*, on the River *Exp. 6. Aleroden*, beautified with a strong Castle, which gives name to an honourable and ancient Family. 7. *Kirck*, 8. *Berlin*, &c.

There is also within the limits of this Dukedom the famous Town of *Aix*, as the *French*, or *Agen*, as the *Germans* call it; famous of old time for the hot Baths both within and without the Town, whence it had the name of *Aix*, or *Aquæ*, (in *Latine Aquægratum*) situate on the edge of *Limbourg*, in a fruitful Soil, but the Building nothing answerable to the fame of the place; inhabited for the most part by Smiths and Braisers, who drive the greatest Trade herein, working continually on Iron and other metals, with which they are supplied abundantly out of *Liege* and *Limbourg*. The Town is impetrial, but under the Protection of the Dukes of *Cleve*; at the expiration of which Family, under colour of some quarrels about Religion, it was seized on and garrisoned by Marquess *Spinola* for the King of Spain. It was of great fame formerly for the death and sepulture of *Charles the Great*, by him made one of the three seats of the Western Empire, and designed by him to be the place in which the King of the *Romans* should receive his Crown for the Kingdom of *Germany* at the hands of the Archbishops of *Colen*. The Town is supposed to be formerly the wintering Camp of the *Romans*, called in *Tacitus Vetera*, which was taken by *Cicilius* in the beginning of his Rebellion against *Vespasian*; during which Wars it is often mentioned by the Writers of those times. They were built and strengthened by *Augustus*, the better to keep under the *Germans*; *quippe illis hybernis obsideri premique Germanias Augustus crediderat*, as *Tacitus*. At this day, this Town and *Triers* are reputed famous for holy Reliques; here being said to be amongst others the bearing-cloth whereon our Saviour was wrapt when he was in his Swaddling clouts, which the Emperor solemnly worshippeth at his Inauguration. Concerning the ambition which the Papists have to be thought possessors of these Reliques: see, I beseech you, how pitifully they have mangled the Head of *S. John Baptist*. They of *Amiens* brag that they have his Face, and so do they of *S. John d' Angeliæ*. The rest of his Head is at *Malta*; yet d' *Angeliæ* part of his Skull at *Namur*, and his Brain at *Nouyon Roffvins*: another part of it is at *Maurienne*, another piece at *Paris*; his Jaw at *Wesfel*, his Ear at *S. Flowers*, his Forehead and Hair at *S. Salvatore's* in *Venice*; another part of his Head is at *Noyon*, and another at *Loua*: Yet is his whole Head entire and unmaimed in *S. Sylvester's* Church at *Rome*. And so no doubt is this bearing-cloth at more places than one.

But to return again to *Gulick*. It was once part of the possessions of the Dukes of *Lorraine*; whether laid to it at the first erection of that Dukedom, as some Writers say, or added to it by the Princes of the House of *Ardennes*, when they succeeded in the same, I dare not possibly determine; although the lying of this Country within the ancient Verge or Perambulation of the great Forest of *Ardennes* makes the last in my opinion not to be improvable. It was first made an Earldom of itself in the person of *Ensfance*, Brother of *Godfrey of Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorraine*, who seized upon it as his part of the Estate on the death of *Godfrey*, his elder brother *Baldwin* being absent in the Holy Land. In the person of *William* the

fourth of that name it was made a Marquifate, advanced unto that honour by the Emperor *Lewis of Bavaria*, Anno 1329, created not long after Duke of *Gulick* by *Charles* the fourth, Anno 1356. His Estate was much augmented about that time, or but shortly after, by his Marriage with *Mary*, Sister and Heir of *Rainold* and *Edward* Dukes of *Geldres*, adding thereby that Dukedom unto this of *Gulick*. His two Sons, *William* and *Rainold*, both Dukes successively, dying without Issue, the Estate fell to *Adolphus* Duke of *Berg* or *Monts*, as the next Heir-male, Anno 1425; and finally, together with that of *Cleve*, and with it conjoined till the expiration of that noble Family; whereof more anon.

As for the Estates of *Berg* and *Mark* they had one original, begun by two Brothers, the Sons of *Theodorick* Lord of *Tegernbarn*, of the House of *Cleve*: out of which House as they defended, so into that they finally were again resolved, as their first materials. Of these two Brothers, *Adolphus* being the elder, was by the Emperor *Henry* surnamed the Fowler, made Earl of *Altena* Anno 930, or thereabouts; and *Eberard* the younger, by the said Emperor made Earl of *Berg*. But *Eberard* entering a Monastery of his own Foundation, left his Estate and Earldom of *Berg* to the Elder Brother. United thus into one Estate, they became again divided betwixt the Sons of *Adolph*, the 3. of that name, and fourth Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*; *Engelbert* the younger Son enjoying the Estate of *Berg*, and *Eberard* the elder succeeding his Father in that of *Altena*. How they became united to the House of *Cleve*, we shall see hereafter, having first looked over the Chorography or description of them.

3. The Dukedom of *BERG* is bounded on the East with *Westphalen* and the Country of *Mark*, on the West with the *Rhene* from *Wesfel* up as high as *Colen*, by which 'tis parted from the Dukedom of *Cleve*, on the North with the River *Lippe*, which separates it from the rest of *Cleve*, and on the South with the Land of *Colen*. So called from the Hilliness of the Country, *Berg* in Dutch signifying an Hill; (as *Burg* doth a Town or Burrough;) from whence the Earls and Dukes hereof are called *Monts* in *Latine*, and *les Comtes* and *Ducs de Mont* in *French*. The Country for the most part, in the Vales especially, yields a great store of the best Wheat, and consequently of the purest Bread; and in the Hill-Countries rich Mines of Coal, wherewith they do supply their neighbours.

Chief places in it are, 1. *Düsseldorf*, so called of the River *Duffel*, upon which it is situate, the River not far off falling into the *Rhene*. 2. *Adenburgh*, built by *Eberard* the first Earl of *Berg*, the Seat of him and his Successors, till removed to *Düsseldorf*. 3. *Keiserwerd*, situate on the *Rhene*, belonging anciently to the Empire, but bought for a great sum of money of *Charles* the 4. by *John* Earl of *Cleve*. 4. *Mühlheim*, on the *Rhene* also, just against *Colen* on the other side of the water; fortified in the year 1614, and made the Receiptacle of the Protestants of that Bishoprick, prohibited the free exercise of Religion in their own dwellings; but razed not long after by Marquess *Spinola*, on complaint made by those of *Colen* to the Emperor *Matthias*. 5. *Sieft*, or *Stetium*, on the *Raer*, among the Coal-mines. 6. *Angermund*, on the mouth of the River *Aggra*, as the name imports. 7. *Esfew*, or *Esfendia*, on the borders of the County of *Mark*, once an Imperial, but under the Protection of the Exils of *Berg*, of most note for a Monastery here built by *Alfride* the 4. Bishop of *Hildesheim*, for 52 Nuns and 20 Canons, liberally endowed, and having great command on the Dorps adjoining.

How

How *Berg* at first was made an Earldom, how joyned unto *Altena*, and disjoyned again, hath been shewed before. No sooner made a State distinct; but it was added to the Patrimony of the Earls of *Gulick*, by the Marriage of *Earl William* with the Daughter and Heir of *Berg*. Parted again betwixt *William* and *Adolphus*, Sons of *Gervard* the 2. An. 1247, the first succeeding in the Earldom of *Gulick*, and the last in *Berg*. During this Partage it was made a Dukedom in the person of *William* the first of that name by *Wenceslaus*, the Emperor, Anno 1389, whose Son *Adolphus*, as next Heir, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Gulick*, An. 1423. How both were added unto *Cleve* hath been said already.

The Dukes and Earls of

BERG		GULICK	
A.Ch.		A.Ch.	
1. Engelbert, the first Earl of Berg, distinct from Mark.	1129	1. Ensfance, the first Earl of Gulick distinct from Lorraine.	
2. Adolphus, Son of Engelbert.		2. On, Son of Ensfance.	
3. N. The Sister of Adolphus.		3. William Earl of Gulick.	
4. Gervard, Earl of Gulick and Berg.			
5. William II. Son of Gervard.			
6. Gervard, II. Son of William the 2.			
1247 7. Adolphus II. younger Son of Gervard the 2. took prisoner the Archbishop of Colen, (whom not long before he had held in custody) shut up in an Iron Vessel daubed with Honey, and most miserably stung to death by Bees.	1247	7. William III. eldest Son of Gervard the second.	
1296 8. William III. Son of Adolphus.		8. Gervard III. Son of William.	
1337 9. Gervard III. Son of William the 3.		9. Gervard IV. Son of Gervard the 2.	
10. William IV. created the first Duke of Berg, Anno 1389, out of the greatest part of his Estate by his Son Adolphus.	1404	10. William IV. created first Marquess, after Duke of Gulick.	
		11. William V. Duke of Gulick and Geldres, this last accruing to him in the right of his Mother Mary, Heir of that Estate.	
		12. Rainold, Duke of Gulick and Geldres who died in the year 1423.	
		11. Adolphus III. the Son of William the fourth Duke of Berg, succeeded also unto Rainold the last Duke of Gulick, dying without Issue, as the next Heir-male, the Dukedom of Geldres falling by the Heirs general to the House of Egmond.	
		12. Gervard IV. of Berg, and V. of Gulick, Son of William, and Brother of Adolphus.	
		1473 13. William V. of Berg, and VI. of Gulick, Son of Gervard.	
		1511 14. Mary, Daughter and Heir of William, Dutches of Gulick, and Berg,	

conveyed the whole Estate in Marriage to *John* the 3. Duke of *Cleve* and Earl of *Mark*, continuing in that Family till the expiration of it in the person of *John William*, the last Prince hereof, Anno 1610.

4. The Earldom of *MARCH*, or *MARK*, hath on the East and North *Westphalia*, on the West the Dukedom of *Cleve*, on the South that of *Berg* or *Monts*. So called, as being seated in the *Marches* of *Westphalen*, out of which it was taken. The Country for the most part, like the rest of *Westphalen* is more fit for Pasturage than Corn, woody, and yielding store of Pannage to those herds of Swine with which it plentifully abounds.

Chief places in it are, 1. *VVerden*, upon the River *Ruer*, on the edge of *Westphalia*, the people whereof get great wealth by grazing of Cattel. 2. *Soest*, (in *Latine Sifstium*) for wealth and greatness not inferior to any in *Westphalen*, (except *Münster* only) consisting of ten Parishes, and lording it over many rich and pleasant Villages. Anciently it belonged to the Bishops of *Colen*; but in the year 1454, did voluntarily yield it self to the Duke of *Cleve* (being then Earl of *March* also) and was by Duke *John* the 4. courageously defended against those Pretensions. 3. *Arnsberg*, a fine and pleasant sit, used for a retiring-place by the Electors of *Colen*, unto whom it belongs. 4. *Dortmund* (in *Latine Tremonia*) a County anciently of it self, and held immediately of the Empire, possessed by the *Tremonians*, a Tribe of the *Saxons*, from whence first called *Tremonia*, and at last *Tremonia*. 5. *Blancstein*, built commodiously by *Adolphus* the fifth of that name, and first Earl of *March*, was also 6. *Ham*, or *Hammene*. 7. *Umma*, of which nothing memorable. 8. *Altena*, the first Title of the Earls of this House, before they assumed that of the Earls of *March*, assumed first by *Adolphus* the 4. on the Conquest of some Lands in the *Marches* of *Westphalen*, continuing in that Family till united with *Cleve*.

As for the Earldom or Dukedom of *CLEVE*, out of which it was taken, and to which the rest of those Estates did in time accrue; it was one of the most ancient Estates or Principalities in these parts of the world, continuing in a direct line for the space of 900 years, held by them of the Kings of *France*, and afterwards of the Kings of *Lorraine*, till the incorporating of that Kingdom with the German Empire. Begun first by *Elm Grallius*, Companion to *Charles Martel* in his Wars against the *Frisons*, *Saxons* and *Bavarians*, whose Son *Theodorick* added hereto by Marriage the County of *Tegernbarn*, containing the Towns and Signiorities of *Altena* in *Westphalen*, as also of *Bornel*, *Hemfoun*, *Bueron*, *Culemburg*, in the *Belgick* Provinces. By *Baldwin* the sixth Earl in *Westphalen*, was added the Territory of *Twentzen*, (in *Latine Regio Tuentana*), given him by *Ludovicus Pius*; by *Theodorick* the fifth, the Town and Signiory of *Disnack*, settled upon him on his Marriage with *Maltida* the Heir thereof; by *Theodorick* the 9. the County of *Hullegrade*, near *Niey* in the Land of *Colen*, together with the Towns of *Duyning* and *Culemburg*, bought of *Rodolphus Habspurgensis*; by *John* his Son, the Town and Territory of *Keiserwerd*, bought of *Charles* the 4. by *Adolph* the 29 Earl, the Earldom of *March*, formerly taken out of it, was again united. By *Adolph* his Successor, (made the first Duke hereof by the Emperor *Sigismund*, Anno 1417.) were added the Lordships of *Gompe*, *Duffele*, and *Rixewald* bought of the said Emperor; together with the County of *Ravenstein*, the Towns of *Leobing*, *Limers*, and *Hatteren*, for the ransom of *William* Duke of *Berg*, and other noble persons taken Prisoners by him, An. 1397; by *John*, the first Duke of that name, the

the Town and Territory of *Soeff*; and finally by *John* the 3. the Dukedoms of *Berg* and *Gulick*, as Heir thereof by his Mother *Mary*, sole Daughter and Heir of *William* the fifth and sixth, the last Duke thereof. To which great height this ancient and noble Family had not long attained, and thereby made themselves and their Soins and Daughters fit Matches for the greatest Princes, but it pleased God to bring it to its fatal end, and by that means to dissipate this brave Estate in the hands of Strangers, as shall be shewed in the conclusion of this Catalogue of

The Earls and Dukes of CLEVE.

- A. Ch.
717 1. *Elias Grallius*, Companion in the Wars of *Charles Martel*.
732 2. *Theodorick Earl of Cleve*, and Lord of *Teisferbant*.
755 3. *Rainald Son of Theodorick Earl of Cleve*, and *Teisferbant*.
767 4. *Conon*, of great fame in Arms under *Charles the Great*.
778 5. *John Son of Conon*, married the Daughter of *Michael Cypriolates Emp. of Constantinople*.
790 6. *Robert*, the eldest Son of *John*.
798 7. *Baldwin*, the Brother of *Earl Robert*. After whose death, Anno 830. the Earldom of *Teisferbant* was taken out of it, and made the portion of *Robert* a younger Son; from whom descended the two Houses of *March* and *Berg*.
830 8. *Ludowick*, Son of *Baldwin*.
834 9. *Eberhard Brother of Ludowick*; who gave *Teisferbant* to his Brother *Robert*.
843 10. *Lubhard Earl of Cleve*.
878 11. *Baldwin II*.
928 12. *Arnold*.
968 13. *Wigman Son of Arnold*.
1004 14. *Conrade*, made an Earl of the Empire in the life of his Father.
1045 15. *Theodorick II*.
1088 16. *Theodorick III*. Companion of *Godfrey of Bouillon* in the Holy-Land.
1114 17. *Arnold II*. Brother of *Theodorick* the third.
1161 18. *Theodorick IV*.
1190 19. *Arnold III*.
1205 20. *Arnold IV*.
1218 21. *Theodorick V*.
1229 22. *Theodorick VI*.
1247 23. *Theodorick VII*.
1255 24. *Theodorick VIII*.
1271 25. *Theodorick IX*.
1290 26. *Orbo*, Son of *Theodorick*.
1309 27. *Theodorick X*. Brother of *Orbo*.
1325 28. *John Brother of Theodorick*, and Canon of *Coleu*; the last of the *Elias Grallius*.

29. *Adolphus* the VII. of *March*, Son of *Adolph* the 6. of *March* and *Mary* of *Cleve*, first Archbishop of *Colen*, (as fix this House of *March* had been almost) successively before him succeeded on the death of his Uncle *John* to the Earldom of *Cleve*, inaugurated thereunto by *Charles* the Fourth.

- 1389 30. *Adolph II*. of *Cleve*, and VIII of *March*, created the first Duke of *Cleve* by the Emperor *Sigismund* at the Council of *Constance*, Anno 1417.
1443 31. *John III*. Son of *Adolph*, Duke of *Cleve*; Earl of *March*, and Lord of *Ravensheim*.
1481 32. *John II*. of the rank of Dukes, and the IV. of the Earls.
1521 33. *John III*. Duke of *Cleve*, and Earl of *March*, &c. by descent from his Father; and Duke of *Gulick*, and *Berg* in right of his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *William* the last Duke thereof.
1539 34. *William Son of John* the 3. and *Mary* his Wife; Daughter and sole Heir of *William* the last Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg*, Father of the Lady *Anne* of *Cleve*, one of the Wives of *Henry* the 8. of *England*. He contended very strongly against *Charles* the fifth for the Dukedom of *Geldres*; but, being too weak for so great an Adversary, made his Submission to him at *Ulen*, and so saved his Estates.
1584 35. *John-William*, Son of the former *William*, during the life of *Charles Frederick*, his elder Brother, was Bishop of *Amster*; on whose death Anno 1575. he resigned that dignity, and in the end succeeded his Father in his whole Estates, which he managed with great piety and prudence till the year 1610. and then died issueless; the last of that ancient and noble Family of the Dukes of *Cleve*. After whose death much quarrel and contention grew about the Succession betwixt the several Competitors and Pretenders to it: of which the principal were, 1. *Leopold*, Archduke of *Austria*, pretending an Inheritance from the Emperor *Redolphus* in the Dukedom of *Tuliers*, to whom for want of Heirs-males the estate was said to be descended. 2. *John-George*, Duke of *Saxony*, descended from *Sibyll*, Daughter of Duke *John* the third; at whose Marriage with *John-Frederick*, the Elector of *Saxony*, Anno 1535, it was said to have been solemnly agreed upon, that on the falling of the Heirs-males of *Cleve*, the life of that Marriage should succeed therein. 3. *George-William*, Duke of *Prussia*, Son of *John Sigismund* the Elector of *Brandenburg*, by the Lady *Anne* his Wife, eldest Daughter of *Albert of Brandenburg*, Duke of *Prussia*, and of *Maria Eleonora*, the eldest Sister and next Heir of the Duke deceased. 4. *Wolf-gangus-Guilielmus*, Palatine of *Newburg*, Son of *Margaret*, the younger Sister of that *Mary*, who claimed the Estate as nearest Kinsman by one degree to the said last Duke. And though the right seemed most apparently on the side of *George-William*, the Estate in tail, pretended by the Duke of *Saxony*, being formerly cut off by Imperial authority, and that pretended to be by the Duke of *Newburg* not of force in *Germany*.

Daughter and Heir of *Arenberg*; descended that branch of the House of *March*, which till of late were Sovereigns of *Salem* and Dukes of *Banilan*.

13. *Adolph VI*. Husband of *Mary* (or *Margaret*) Daughter and Heir of *Theodorick* the 9. Earl of *Cleve*.

yet being that *Leopold* was in Arms, and had already forced a possession of *Tuliers* and of most parts of that Country, the two Princes of *Brandenburg* and *Newburg* soon agreed the controversy, and by the help of the Protestant Princes their Confederates recovered the greatest part of it from the hands of *Leopold*. But the Palatine of *Newburg*, not content with his Partage, first married with a Daughter of the Duke of *Bavaria*, then reconciled himself to the Church of *Rome*, and called in the Spanish Arms, under the command of Marquis *Spinola*, to abett his Quarrel: which made *George William*, Son of the Elector of *Brandenburg* and the Lady *Anne*, to call in the Forces of the States, under the command of *Maurice* Earl of *Nassau*, after Prince of *Orange*. The issue of which War was this, that *Spinola* possessed himself of *Wesel*, *Agent*, *Mulheim*, *Dusseldorp*, and most other places of importance in *Berg* and *Gulick*; and the States got into their power some Towns of *Gulick*, with *Reer* and *Emerick*, in the Dukedom of *Cleve*, and almost the whole County of *March*. And though most parts of these Estates have been delivered since to the rightful Owners, yet other places of importance are detained from them. Which notwithstanding that they both pretend to keep for the use of those Princes in whose cause they stood: yet when such strong parties keep the Stakes, it is most easy to determine who will win the Game: such Alterations as have happened in the chance of War, by the reciprocal winning and losing of some Towns on both sides, not much conducing to the benefit of the rightful Owners.

The Arms of these Princes were, 1. *Cules* over an Escutcheon in Fesse Argent, a Carbuncle pierced, pommelled and floured Or, for the Dukedom of *Cleve*. 2. Or, a Lion Azure, armed Gules, for the Dukedom of *Gulick*. The Arms of *Berg* and *March* I have no where found.

2. The Estates of the Three ELECTOR-BISHOPS.

Adjoining to the Estates of *Cleve* are those of the Spiritual Electors of the Empire of *Germany*, *Colen*, *Mentz*, and *Trier*; not so contiguous and continuous as those of *Cleveland*, and therefore to be laid out severally by their Metes and Boundaries. And first for *COLEN-Land*, or the Estate of the Archbishop and Elector of *Colen*. It is bounded on the East with the Dukedom of *Berg*, divided from it by the *Rhene*, on the West with *Gulick*, on the North with *Cleve* it self and the County of *Muerz*, and on the South extending to the Land of *Trier*. The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Obii*, in former times possessed of the Countries of *Berg* and *March*; but being warred on by the *Germani* bordering next upon them, they were by the clemency of *Agrippa*, then Lieutenant of *Gaul*, received into protection, and by him placed along the French side of the *Rhene*, as well for defence of the Borders of the Roman Empire, as for their own security against that Enemy. Won from the *Romans* by the French in the Reign and under the conduct of *Childerick*, anno 412. or thereabout; and from the French by the Emperor *Orto* the first, anno 940. By *Orto* the 2. made a part of the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, or at the least given by him unto *Charles of France*, the first Duke thereof. After whose death, decaying without Issue-male, the Town of *Colen* and many other pieces upon the *Rhene* were seized on by *Orto* the 3. and by him restored to the Empire. Since that time the City of *Colen* hath remained Imperial, and but the Territory near unto it, and a great part of *Wesphalia*, subject immediately to the Bishop. The Bishop's See was first founded here by *S. Amandus*, one of the Disciples of *S. Peter*, as hath been constantly affirmed by

old Tradition: but howsoever it was an Episcopal See, without all question, in the time of *Constantine*, *Maurinus*, Bishop hereof, subscribing amongst others to the Council of *Arelat*, anno 326. And being *Colen* was in those times the Metropolis of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, the Bishop had the power of a Metropolitan; according to the rule and observation so often mentioned. Afterwards when the Empire was made Elective, these Bishops, with their brethren of *Mentz* and *Trier*, were made three of the seven which were to nominate and elect the succeeding Emperour: after which time it is no wonder that they grew both in Power and Patrimony.

Places of most importance within this Electorate are, 1. *Bonn*, situate on the banks of the *Rhene*, in the most pleasant and fruitful place of all the Country; the ordinary Residence of the Archbishop, whose House or Palace here is said to be one of the fairest in all *Germany*. By *Tacitus* it is called *Bonna*, and sometimes *Castra Bonensia*, the Wintering camp in his time of the Sixth Legion. 2. *Nijm*, by the same Writer called *Novesium*, (*Nescia* by *Antoninus*) seated on the *Erp*, not far from its falling to the *Rhene*; the breach-neck of the glories of *Charles Duke of Burgundy*, who being resolved to get this Town into his hands, as a convenient pass into *Germany*, lay so long before it, that he lost the opportunity of joining with King *Edward* the 4. of *England*, whom he had purposely invited to the War of *France*, and yet was slain to go without it. By means whereof he grew so low in reputation, that he was undermined by the French, defeated by the *Lorrainers*, forsook by the *English*, baffled by the *Switzers*, and at last overthrown and slain by that beggarly Nation. 3. *Emmich*, or *Audemach*, by *Macrobellius* called *Autemacum*, one of the ten Garrisons erected by the *Romans* on the banks of the *Rhene*, to secure their Province from the *Germani*; the other nine being *Confluentz*, *Boppard*, *Worms*, *Bing*, *Zabern*, *Altrip*, *Seltz*, *Straasburg* and *Wassensburg*. 4. *Lintz*, seated on the same River also. 5. *Santius*, a Town of good repute. 6. *Zulp*, now a Village of no esteem but for the Antiquities of it, by *Tacitus* and *Antoninus* called *Tollicinium*, most memorable for the great Victory which *Clevis* the first Christian King of the French (upon a Vow made in the heat of the Fight to embrace the Gospel) obtained against the whole power of the *Almans*, never presuming after that to invade his Territories. 7. *Rhinberg*, commonly called *Berck*, the most Northern Town of all the Bishoprick, situate on the *Rhene* (as the name imports) there where the Lands of this Bishop as also of the Dukes of *Cleve* and the Earls of *Muerz* meet upon a point. A Town which for these 600 years hath been of little use or profit to the right Owner, possessed sometimes by the *Spaniards*, sometimes by the Confederate States; for each commodiously seated, as opening a passage up the River, and receiving great Customs on all kind of Merchandise passing to and fro. But having finally been possessed by the *Spaniards* from the year 1606 till 1633, it was then regained for the State by *Henry of Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, with the loss of no more than 60 men: there being found in the Town 30 batts pieces of Ordnance, 70 barrels of Powder, with Victuals and Ammunition of all sorts thereunto proportionable. 8. *Colen*, situate on the *Rhene*, first built by the *Obii* before mentioned, and by them called *Oppidum Obiorum*; afterwards, in honour of *Agrippina* (Daughter of *Germanicus*, and Wife of *Claudius*) who was here born, made a Roman Colony, and called *Colonia Agrippina*, and sometimes by way of eminency *Colonia* only; thence the name of *Colen*. A rich, large, populous and magnificent City, containing about five miles in compass, in which are numbered

Growing on the banks of the *Rhene*, have the name of *Rheinish*; adorned with many goodly Towns; both for strength, populousness, and beauty; and finally, watered with the famous River of the *Rhene*, and the *Neccar*.

The Religion of this Country, and that of the *Upper Palatinate*, which depends upon it, hath much varied since the first Reformation established by *Frederick*, the second according to the Form and Doctrine of the Confession of *Augsburg*; the Doctrine and Discipline of *Calvin* being introduced by *Frederick* the third; the *Lutheran* Form restored again by *Levis* or *Ludowick* the fifth, after his death exchanged by *Frederick* the fourth for that of *Calvin*, as more conducing to the ends of some needy Statists, who could not otherwise raise their Fortunes than by invading the Tithes and Glebe, and other poor remainders of the Church's Patrimony; of which the Clergy being universally deprived throughout this Country, and reduced to miserable short Stipends, by the name of a *Competency*, became so contemptible and neglected by all sorts of men, that at the last the Church of the *Palatinate* was in the same condition with the Church of *Israel* under the Reign of *Jeroboam*, when *Priests* were made out of the meanest of the People. And for the Government of the Churches, though moulded to the *Geneva* Plat-form as near as it might be, yet were those Princes loth to leave too much power in the hands of the Elderships, and therefore did appoint some superior Officers to have an eye on them, whom they called *Inspectors* & *Prospitors*, their Power being much the same with that of the particular Superintendent amongst the *Lutherans*; and over them a standing Consistory consisting of three Ministers and as many Counsellors of State, of the Prince's nominating, who in his name were to take care of all things which concerned the Church. A Temperament for which they were beholden to *Erasmus* a Doctor of Physick in the University of *Heidelberg*, who made this Pill to purge Presbytery of some Popish humours which secretly lay hid in the body of it. But this whole Model and Religion of the Country is much changed of late; and the Religion of the Church of *Rome* restored in most parts thereof since the Conquest of them by the *Spaniards* and *Bavarians*, which before we speak of.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Molsbach*, a pretty neat Town on the banks of the *Neccar*, and a Prefecture, not far from the borders of *VVirttemberg*. 2. *Ladenberg*, near the influx of the same River into the *Rhene*; the moiety whereof was bought by *Rupertus*, the Emperor and *Palatine* of the Earls of *Hohenzollern*, An. 1571, the other moiety belonging to the Bishop of *VVormes*. 3. *VVieheim*, a small Town not far from *Ladenberg*, belonging once to the Archbishop of *Metz*, but on some controversy arising about the Title, adjudged unto the said *Rupertus* and his Heirs for ever. 4. *Scriefsen*, in the same Traß, well seated but not very large, fold with the Castle of *Stralburg* to the said *Rupertus* by *Siðrife* (or *Sigefride*) of *Stralburg*, on the right Heir hereof, Anno 1347. 5. *Heidelberg*, on the right shore of the *Neccar*, (going down the water) compassed on three sides with Mountains and lying open only towards the West, which makes the Air hereof to be very unhealthy. The chief Beauty of it lieth in one long Street, extended in length from East to West: on the South-east side whereof is a fair and pleasant Market-place, and not far off a very high Mountain called *Koningstall*, (that is to say, the *King's Seat*) upon the middle ascent whereof is the Castle, where the Princes Eleccours use to keep their Courts; and on the blown up with Gunpowder, the ruins of an old Tower blown up with Gunpowder. A Town of no great bigness nor very populous, there being but one Church in it, which was used in the

time of my Author for Prayer and Preaching: the rest being either ruined, or employed unto other uses, if not repaired again; since the *Spaniards* became masters of it, for more frequent Masses. Howsoever, it hath the reputation of being the chief Cite of this *Palatinate* long since furnished with a great and gallant Library, which for choice and number of Books (especially Manuscripts) was thought not to be followed in all *Europe*, till matched if not over-matched, by the famous *Bodleian* Library of *Oxford*. Most of them to the great prejudice of the Protestant Cause were carried to *Rome*, and other places of that party, when the Town was taken by the *Spaniards*, Anno 1620. Finally for the Town it self, it was once part of the possessions of the Bishop of *VVormes*, from whom it was taken by the *Palatines*; and it is now famous for being the Seat of the *Pfalzgraves*, the Sepulchre of *Rodolphus Agricola*, and for a University founded by the Emperor and *Palatine Rupertus*, An. 1346. 6. *Bacharach*, on the Banks of the *Rhene*, so called quasi *Bach* *ara*, for the excellent Wines. 7. *Coblenz*, on the other side of the water; near unto which is the old and fair Castle called *Pfalz*, from whence the name *Pfalz-grave*, or *Pfalzgrave* seemeth to come to have been derived. 8. *Oppenheim*, a strong Town; which together with *Keiserslautern* and *Ingelheim* were given to the *Palatines* by *VVeisslaus*, and after settled on them by *Rupertus* then Emperor and *Palatine* for 100000 Florens, Anno 1402. 9. *Creutznach*, called anciently *Staromisch*. 10. *Frankendale*, lately a Monastery only, but being well peopled by such of the *Netherlanders* who to avoid the fury of the Duke of *Alva* fled thither, is now a Town of principal strength. 11. *Gernersheim*; and 12. *Mainheim*, a well-fortified Town, seated on the Confluence of *Rhene* and *Neccar*.

On the Eastern part of the Country standeth 13. *Laden*; situate on the little River *Tauber*, the farthest bound of the *Palatinate* towards the North-east, the adjoining to the rest of *Frankland*. And on West-side the Towns of 14. *Newstalt*, 15. *Keiserslautern*, in Latin called *Cæsarea Lutra*, once a Town Imperial, from which, and from its situation on the River *Lauter*, it received this name. 16. *Zweibrücken*, invested with a large and ample Territory round about, called the Country of *Zweibrücken*, the Patrimony and Title of a younger House of the *Pfalzgraves*, whom the *Latine* Writers call *Principes Birmannii*, the French the Princes of *Dunspont*. 17. *Birmann*, on the North-west point of it, where it meets with the distinct of *Trier*; the Title of another Branch of the *Palatine* Family, called the Duke of *Simmern*, situate in that part of the Country which is called *Weisbach*, of which *Zweibrücken* is also part. In all three are contained within the *Palatinate* 24. walled Towns, and 12 fair Palaces of the Prince, most of which they have added to their Estates within little more than 400 years. Such excellent managers have they been of their own Estates, so potent in ordering the affairs of the Empire both in War and peace, and so ingrafted themselves into the most notable Families of *Germany*, that I may well say with *Irænicus*, *Non est alia Germaniæ Familia cui plus decet Nobilitas*.

Within the Limits of this Country, and intermingled with the Lands of the Princes *Palatine*, are the Bishops of *Spire* and *Wormes*; both anciently of great Revenue, but Feudataries for a great part of their Estates to these Eleccours. Of these more towards the head of the *Rhene*, and on the *Gallick* side thereof, stands the City of *Spire*, by *Ptolomy* called *Neomagus*, from the newness of the building when that name was given; by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Nemeturum*, from the *Nemetes*, who possessed this Traß; and sometimes *Spira*, by which name it doth still

con-

continue. A Town Imperial, and anciently a Bishop's See; *Tellis* the Bishop hereof subscribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen*, Anno 347. A neat Town, and very delectably seated; of great reort, by reason of the Imperial Chamber, the Sovereign Court of Judicature of all the Empire, capable of Appeals from the Tribunals of all Princes and free States thereof. A Court which first followed the Emperor in all his Removes, (as anciently the *King's Bench* in *England*) but by *Maximilian* the Emperor first made sedentary, and fixed at *Frankfurt*; removed after to *Wormes*, and finally to this City by *Charles* the fifth. Sufficiently famous in that the name of *Præfatus* was here taken up, given to the Princes and free Cities following the Reformed Religion, upon their legal *Præfation* here exhibited. More down the water and on the same shore thereof, stands the City of *Wormes*, one of those built upon the *Rhene* for defence of *Gaul* against the *Germani*; by *Ptolomy* called *Barbaromagus* by *Antoninus* *Civitas Wormesii*, whence the modern name; but generally *Civitas Vangionum*, from the *Vangiones*, the old Inhabitants of those parts, whose chief City it was. A Town Imperial as the former, and a See Episcopal as that is, and as ancient too; *Prætor* the Bishop hereof subscribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen* before mentioned. A Town to be observed for the first appearance which *Luther* made before *Charles* the 5. (the Imperial Chamber then being holden in this City) who, being dissuaded from that journey by some of his Friends, returned this resolute Answer, *That* *he would, though there were as many Devils in the Town as there were Tiles on the Houses*. Chief Towns belonging to this Bishop are, 1. *Udenheim*, a Town belonging to the Bishop of *Spire*, whose Residence it sometimes is; conveniently seated for the command of the Country, and therefore upon some design which was then in hand fortified strongly by the Bishop. But this new Fortification, being begun in a time of Peace, gave great occasion of distrust to the neighbouring Princes, who interposed with *Frederick* the fifth, then Prince *Elect*, of whom it was held in chief, to cause the Bishop to desist from the finishing of it. Which when he had refused to do, pleading a Placet from the Emperor *Mathias* to compleat the work, the Prince *Elect* with the rest of the Confederates beat it down by force. For this contempt they were cited to *Spire*, the Imperial Chamber, in which it was also resolved to proceed suddenly and severely to their condemnation. One of the chief motives which occasioned that unfortunate Prince to entertain the offer of the Crown of *Bohemia*, and consequently a chief cause of the *German* Wars, in managing whereof this Town was thought so commodious, that *Marquess Spisla* caused the works to be raised again, made it the strongest Hold in all those Countries, and caused it to be called by the name of *Philippsburg*. 2. *Rutenberg*, originally belonging to the Bishops of *Spire*, but of late times possessed by the Princes *Palatine*. Others of lesser note I forbear to mention.

The first Inhabitants of this Country on the French side of the *Rhene* were the *Nemetes* and *Vangiones* spoken of before the other side the *Matagie*. That on the West side of the River was first conquered by the *Romans*, and from them by the French, of whose Empire it remained a part, but so that it was subject more immediately to the Earls of *Alsace*, first under the Sovereignty and Vassalage of the Kings of *Atens*, and after of the Kings of *Lorran*. In the dividing of which Kingdom between the Emperors of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, it became subject to the Empire, but still possessed by those of *Messelle* as it was before. Belonging to the Empire on the expiration of that Family, partly by force of Arms, partly by paying down ready Money, and partly too by selling of their

Voices, as they saw occasion, it was gained by the *Electors Palatine*: and so also that part of it which lies on the *Dutch* side of the *Rhene*, which being anciently and properly a part of *Frankland*, followed the fortunes of that Country, till the failure of the House of *Schmalen*, and then devolved unto the Empire, as the other did. By little and little it got into the hands of the Princes *Palatine*, who being originally Officers of the Emperor's Household; (such as the Majors of the Palace to the French Kings at the first institution) had first the honour of Counts *Palatine* bestowed upon them, and afterwards the place of an *Elect* in the choice of the Emperor. But where their Estates then lay, where they fixed their dwelling, and what Provinces or people they had subject to them, I *nullo irrevi scriptum*, I could never find any good Record to build on, faith the learned *Amstel*; their habitation and possession in and of these parts (acquired for the most part by Arms and Money) not being above 460 years standing at the utmost. Likely it is, they had their Residence for the most part in the Emperor's Palace, living upon their Rents, (as other great Officers of Court in these latter times) the Dignity and Authority of so great a place seeming sufficient to content them: but were called *Com Palatines* of the *Rhene*, because their Jurisdiction and Authority lay most especially in those parts of the Empire which were towards that River. Afterwards, on the Marriage of *Orbo*, the second of that name, Duke of *Bavaria*, with *Gerrade*, the Daughter of *Henry* the *Elect* *Palatine*, this Office with the Electoral Dignity fell into that House, possessed at that time of those parts of *Francia* and the Earldom of *Messelle*, who not long after, on the dividing of that Estate between *Rodolphus* and *Ludovicus*, the Sons of *Ludovic* the 2. *Elect* *Palatine* and Duke of *Bavaria*, made up this *Palatinate*. A State which suddenly received a great augmentation, partly by the care and good husbandry of *Rupertus*, Emperor and *Elect* *Palatine*, partly by the weakness and ambition of *Wenceslaus*, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, and partly by the valour of *Frederick* the Prince *Elect*. Of these the first bought in the Towns of *Wormes*, *Ladenberg*, *Scriefsen*, and the Castle of *Stralburg*, with their Lands and Territories. The second gave unto the *Palatines*, for their Voices in his Election, three strong Towns of the Empire, viz. *Keiserslautern*, *Ingelheim*, and *Oppenheim*. And the last took in *Battel*, An. 1452, the Earls of *Wirttemberg*, the Marquess of *Baden*, the Bishop of *Spire*, and the Archbishop of *Metz*, and ranfomed them on what condition he pleased. More particularly the Earl of *Wirttemberg* (for it was not yet erected into a Dukedom) paid for his ransom 100000 Florens: the Bishop of *Metz* redeemed himself for 45000 Florens. The Bishop of *Spire* gave for his liberty the Towns of *Rutenberg* and *Wesfay*. And the Marquess of *Baden* yielded up in lieu of his freedom the Country of *Spanheim*, of which *Creutznach* is a part, the Towns of *Befsen* and *Bimbem*, the right which he pretended to *Eppingen*, a Town over against *Gernersheim* and his Royalties between this *Gernersheim* and *Seltz*, a Town of *Alsace*, in Fishing and Hunting. So having brought these Princes unto their Estates, let us next take a view of those who have successively enjoyed both the State and Title, as far as we can go by the light of Story.

Electors Palatine of the R H E N E.

A. C.

1. *Henry*, Count *Palatine* in the time of *Orbo* the third, by him ordained to be one of the six *Electors*.
2. *Sigefride*; the Son of *Adelheid*, Wife of this *Henry* the *Elect*; by a former Husband.
3. *Erlint*.

3. *Ezeline* and *Conrade*, Sons of *Sigefride*.
 4. *Lindolphus*, Son to *Ezeline*.
 5. *Conrade*, Elector *Palatine* in the time of *Henry* the fifth.
 6. *Frederick*, Son to *Frederick*, Duke of *Schwaben*, Nephew to the Emperor *Conrade* the third.
 7. *Henry* II. surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*.
 1195 8. *Henry* III. Son of *Henry* the Lion, and Husband of *Clementia*, Daughter of *Conrade*, D. of *Schwaben* and *Palatine*.
 9. *Henry* IV. Son of *Henry* the third, in the life of his Father, the last Elector *Palatine* of the nomination and appointment of the Emperor, the Dignity from hence forwards becoming hereditary.
 10. *Otho*, Duke of *Bavaria*, of that name the second, Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene* in right of *Gertrude* his Wife, Sister and next Heir of *Henry* the fourth, whom he succeeded in the Electoral Dignity, confirmed therein by the Emperor *Frederick* the second.
 1269 11. *Ludovicus*, Elector *Palatine* and Duke of *Bavaria*, the Son of *Otho*.
 1294 12. *Rodolphus*, the eldest Son of *Lewis* or *Ludovicus*, succeeded his Father in the *Palatinate* and Electoral Dignity; *Northgois*, or the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, being added to his part, to make even the scale, his younger Brother *Ludovicus* succeeding in *Bavaria*.
 1315 13. *Adolphus*, surnamed the Simple, reigned the Electoral Dignity to his Brother *Rodolphus*, as the fitter man to undertake it.
 1327 14. *Rodolphus* II. on the Resignation of *Adolphus*.
 1337 15. *Rupertus*, the Brother of *Rodolphus* the second, Founder of the University of *Heidelberg*, Anno 1346.
 1386 16. *Rupertus* II. Son of *Adolphus* the Simple.
 1398 17. *Rupertus* III. elected Emperor in the place of *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, Anno 1406, made Knight of the Garter by King *Henry* the fourth.
 1410 18. *Ludovicus* II. surnamed *Cæcus* and *Barbatus*, the eldest Son of *Rupertus* the Emperor, married *Blanche*, Daughter to *K. Henry*, the fourth of *England*.
 1439 19. *Ludovicus* III. Son of *Lewis* the second.
 1451 20. *Frederick*, Brother of *Ludovicus*, during the Minority of *Philip* his half Brothers Son, succeeded in the Electoral Dignity, and added much to that Estate by his personal Virtue.
 1478 21. *Philip*, the Son of *Lewis* the third; pretended to the Dukedom of *Bavaria* in right of *Margaret* his Wife; but, after a long and bloody War, was forced to go without it.
 1508 22. *Ludovicus* IV. Son of *Philip*.
 1544 23. *Frederick* II. Brother of *Lewis* the fourth, who first introduced the Reformed Religion into the *Palatinate*.
 1556 24. *Otho*-*Henry*, Son of *Rupertus*, the Brother of *Frederick* and *Lewis*, the last of the direct Line of this House of *Bavaria*.
 1559 25. *Frederick* III. Duke of *Simmern*, descended from *Stephen* *Palatine* of *Zweibruck*, or *Bijon*, younger Son of the Emperor *Rupert*, succeeded on the decease of *Otho*-*Henry* without issue.
 1576 26. *Ludovicus* V. Son of *Frederick* the third, a

munificent Benefactor to the University of *Heidelberg*.

- 1583 27. *Frederick* IV. Son of *Lewis* the fifth, married *Ludovicus*, or *Louisa*, Daughter of *William*, and Sister of *Maurice*, Princes of *Orange*.
 1610 28. *Frederick* V. Son of *Frederick* the 4th, married the Princess *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *James* King of *Great Britain*. In danger of being proscribed for demolishing the Works of *Odenheim*, he accepted the Crown of *Bohemia*. But worked at the Battle of *Prague*, and warred upon by the *Bavarian* and the *Spaniard*, he lost both that and his own native Estates and Dignities; of which he was deprived by *Ferdinand* the prevailing Emperor: the *Lower Palatinate* being assigned over to and conquered by the King of *Spain*; the *Upper Palatinate*, with the Electoral Dignity, bestowed on the Duke of *Bavaria*. Restored to the possession of the most part of his Country by the power of the *Swedes*, he died at *Mentz*, November 29. 1632. the whole Country falling again not long after under the power and Government of the former Conquerors.
 1631 29. *Charles* *Ludowick*; the Heir both of his Father's Estates and Misfortunes too; not yet admitted to his Honours, (contrary to the Fundamental Constitutions of the Empire, by which the Sons of the Electors and other Princes are not involved in the guilt of their Fathers offences) but in fair hopes to be restored thereto in part, by the Pacification made at *Munster* this present year 1648: which I pray God to prosper, for the peace of afflicted Christendom.

Now to proceed to the Civil State, and the Concernment of these Princes. The *Palgrave* hath many Privileges above the Electors of either Fort. He taketh place of the Duke of *Saxony* and Marquess of *Brandenburg*, because *Henry* the *Palatine* was descended of *Charles* the Great: for which cause he is also, in the Vacancy of the Empire, Governour of the Western parts of *Germany*. In which Office he had power to alienate or give Offices, to take Fealty and Homage of the Subjects, and which is most, to sit in the Imperial Courts, and give Judgment of the Emperor himself. And look, whatsoever shall in the Vacancy of the Empire be by the *Palatine* enacted, that the new Emperors are by Oath to confirm and ratify.

The Revenues of these Princes were conceived to be about 100000 *l. per annum*; nor could they be supplied at less: the Silver Mines about *Amberg* only in the *Upper Palatinate* yielding 60000 *Crowns* a year, and the passage of one Bridge over the *Rhene* about 20000 *Crowns* more; besides the Demesne Lands, and the Lands of the Church, incorporated (since the Reformation) into their Estate.

The Arms hereof are *Diamonds*, a *Lion* *Topaz*, *Armed* and *Crowned Ruby*.

4. ALSATIA.

ALSATIA (or **ELSAZ**, as the Dutch call it) is bounded on the East with the *Rhene*, which parteth it from the Marquissate of *Baden*, and some parts of *Schwaben*; on the West with the Mountain *Vange* or *Voisgum*, which separateth it from *Lorraine*; on the North with the *Palatinate*; on the South (where it groweth

very narrow) with a point of *Switzerland*. A Country for the Pleasantness and fertility of it inferior to none in *Germany*: called therefore *Elfsaz*, (as some think) *quasi* *Edelfaz*, that is to say, a noble Seat; derived more probably by others from the River *Ill*, the only River of note in all this Tract, and called so, *quasi* *Ill* *faz*, the Seat or situation on the River *Ill*.

It is divided generally into the *Lower*, and *Higher*, to which the Country called *Sungow* may come in for a third. The *LOWER ALSATIA* is that which bordereth on the *Palatinate*, so called because farther off from the Mountains, and down the water in respect of the course of the *Rhene*. A Country so abundantly fruitful in Wine and Corn (with which it furnisheth some parts of *Germany*, and not a few of the neighbour-Countries) that it is generally called *Germania* *Nurix*, or the Nurfe of *Germany*; by *Winphelgium*, the Epitome, or Abstract of it. Chief Towns therein are, 1. *Straesburg*, so called from the multitude of Streets, (the Dutch call them *Serats*) anciently *Argentoratum*, and then *Argentina*, from the Roman Exchequer or Receipt, here kept in the time of their Greatness; or from some Mines of Silver which were found about it. A flatly, rich, and populous City, well stored with publick Garners and Cellars of Wine against times of Dearth; situate on the two Rivers *Ill* and *Bruch*, where they both fall into the *Rhene*, by which, and by the helps of Art, it is very strongly fortified: designed from the first foundation for a Town of War, this being another of the Towns which the *Romans* built to defend the *Rhene* against the *Germans*; now an Imperial City, and a See Episcopall, the Bishop whereof is Lord of the *Lower Alsatia*. The Church Cathedral is one of the fairest in all *Germany*, much famed for a Clock of most admirable workmanship, and a Scepter of as curious a frame as that, mounted 574 foot in height, the highest of any in Christendom, higher (if the measure of it be not mistaken) by 40 foot than the Steeple of St. *Paul* in *London* before the firing of it. Of this suit the Poet in *Adriamus*,

Vix prælara stirps, rictu continere Rheni,
Maxima cum celsæ metuitur momenta turris.
Straesburg on *Rhene's* inam'd Banks doth lie,
 Whole Tower even bids defiance to the Skie.

2. *Zabern*, or *Elfsaz* *Zavern*, the *Taberna* of *Antonine* and *Marcellinus*, another of the old Roman Garrisons, destroyed by the *Almans*, and repaired again by *Julian* the *Apostate*, then Emperor; now the chief place of Residence for the Bishops of *Straesburg*, and well frequented in regard of the Courts of Justice kept by his Officers in this City for the *Lower Alsatia*. 3. *Altrip*, so called from *Altra ripa*, from the high banks of the River on which it is seated; another of the Towns or Forts which the *Romans*, like politic Conquerours, built on the West side of the *Rhene*, to prohibit the Incurious of the barbarous Nations. And so was 4. *Seltz*, seated on the *Rhene*, betwixt *Straesburg* and *Zabern*. And 5. *Weissemburg*, more towards the *Palatinate*, now a Town Imperial, but seated on the River *Lura*, not far from its fall into the *Rhene*; encompassed with little Hills and delightful Groves, the River gently washing the Walks thereof, and adding much to it both of strength and beauty. 6. *Hagenau*, betwixt *Seltz* and *Straesburg*, but not so near unto the *Rhene* as either of them; first walled by *Frederick* *Barbassus*, Anno 1164, and since that time of great importance for command of the Country; but seated in a sandy and unfruitful Soil; frequented chiefly heretofore by the old Lantgraves of *Elfsaz* for the commodities of hunting. More from the *Rhene*, 7. *Stachfels*, corruptly so called for *Steffenfels*, from the Monastery of St. *Stephen* there founded. 8. *Hils*, or the *Bruch*, &c.

Places of the most importance in the *HIGHER ALSATIA* are, 1. *Ruffach*, on the River *Ombach*, belonging to the Bishops of *Straesburg*; of old called *Rubeanum*, from the red colour of the earth, well built, in-vincible with a double Suburb; in ancient times of great repute by the *Roman* Nobility much taken with the fruitfulness and pleasures of it, and well inhabited at this day, as is all the Country round about it, by reason of their vigorous proceedings against Thieves; from whence the *Germans* have a Proverb, that the old *Gallows* at *Ruffach* is made of Oak 2. *Eufheim*, or *Euffheim*, on the River *Ill*, anciently the Station of the Tenth Legion, and then called *Amnis*; now of most note for the Supreme Court of Justice there held for *Brigow*, *Sungow*, and this part of *Alsatia*, by the Archdukes of *Austria*, the chief Lords thereof. 3. *Colmar*, an Imperial City, raised out of the Ruines of old *Argentaria* destroyed by *Atilla* and the *Huns*; well built, and situate almost in the very Navel of *Alsatia*, not above an hour's journey from the foot of the Mountains, but in a fruitful and rich Soil both for Corn and Pasturage, the Country hereabouts being very well watered with the *Lauch*, *Duro*, *Fech*, and *Ill*. 4. *Schleffad*, in the modern *Latine*, *Selsstadium*, but by the ancients called *Elebeus*, the Station at that time of the 19 Legion; afterwards of great fame for a Church here built by *Hildegardis* Dutches of *Schwaben*, Anno 1044, according to the pattern of the Temple of *Jerusalem*, which in tract of time became the richest Monastery in all these parts. It is situate in a very fertile and delightful Soil, having the *Rhene* on the one side, and some furs, of the Mountain *Vange*, shadowed with Groves of *Chestnuts*, upon the other; walled in the time of *Frederick* the second, about the year 1216, and on the East defended with impassible Fens. 5. *Gebweiler*, and 6. *Wawel*, both seated near the aforesaid Mountains, and both subject to the Abbot of *Murbach*. 7. *Keiserberg*. 8. *Torchheim*, two Imperial Towns, but not otherwise memorable; as neither are many of the rest, but for name and number: there being reckoned within this small Province of *Elfsaz* (not including *Sungow*) 46 Cities and Towns beset with Walls, besides Castles, Forts and Villages, almost innumerable; and amongst them more Free and Imperial Cities than in any one Province of the Empire, except *Schwaben* only.

The Southern part of *Elfsaz*, bordering on the Canton of *Basil*, is commonly called by the name of *SUNGOW*, in *Latine*, *Sungovia* and *Sungoi*, but in former times the Dukedom of *Pfirt*, from *Pfirt* the chief Town of it, and the Duke's Seat. The Country is very plentiful in Corn and Wine, (as the rest of *Elfsaz*) affording good store of each to the neighbouring *Switzers*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Mulhausen*, on the River *Ill*, heretofore under the command of the Bishops of *Straesburg* as were also *Keiserberg* and *Colmar*; but being taken in by *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*, after his advancement to the Empire, it was made Imperial, and is now confederate with the *Switzers*. 2. *Befort*, remarkable for a Collegiate Church there founded by the Earls of *Pfirt*, in which lie buried 13 Earls and as many Countesses. 3. *Mals*, *Munster*, so called from a Monastery of Nuns there founded by *Malo*, a Prince of the old *Almans*. 4. *Thann*, a neat Town, beautified with the fair Castle of *Engelburg*, mounted upon the top of a lofty Hill. 5. *Morf*, *Munster*, so named of an ancient Monastery there founded by the Earls of *Pfirt*, most of them great Builders of Religious Houses. 6. *Altkirk*, not far from the head of the River *Ill* 7. *Pfirt*, it self, seated on the *Ill*, not far from *Altkirk*, in a Country heretofore overgrown with Woods and Forests, whence it had the name, called by the *French*, *le Pais de Ferret*, (corruptly for *le Pais de Forrest*) by the Dutch moulded into *Pfirt*: by

which name (of the County of *Ferrate*) it is called by *Philip de Comines* and other French Writers; and by that name pawned by *Sigismund* the Archduke to *Charles Duke of Burgundy*, made by that means too near a neighbour to the *Switzers*, as it proved in fine.

Westward hereof, betwixt it and the County of *Burgundy*, lyeth the Town and Earldom of *MONT-BELGARD*, (*Montis Belgardium* in the *Latine*) united by the Marriage of *Henrica*, Daughter and Heir of *Henry* the first Earl hereof, anno 1366, to the House of *Wirtemberg*. Chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Clewang*, 2. *Paffewang*. 3. *Grans*, all anciently beautified with Castles; and 4. *Montbelgard*, a Town of great strength, proud of a Castle-Royal on the top of a fair and lofty Mountain, whence it took that name: once the Seat of its proper Earls, as after of the Princes of the House of *Wirtemberg*; but now both Town and Castle in the power of the *French*, who after their good luck in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, caused a good Garrison of their own to be put in to them, anno 1633; under pretence of keeping them for the children of a Brother of the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, to whom the Inheritance belonged.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Tract were the *Tribolchi*, with parts of the *Nemetes* and *Rauraci*; first conquered by the *Romans*, then subdued by the *Almans*, after by the *French*, and by them made a part of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*; in the fall of which Kingdom it was reckoned for a Province of the *German Empire*. Governed for the Emperors by Provincial Earls, in the Dutch language called *Lantgraves*: at first officary only, and accountable to the Emperours under whom they served; in the end made hereditary, and successional unto their posterities. The first hereditary *Lantgrave* is said to be *Theoderick* in the Reign of *Otho* the third: after whose death the Empire being made elective, gave the Provincial Governours some opportunities to provide for themselves. In his Male-Issue it continued till the Reign of *Frederick* the 2. who began his Empire, anno 1212, and died anno 1250; during which interval this Estate was conveyed by Daughters to *Albert* the 2. Earl of *Habsburg*, *Albert* Earl of *Hohenburg*, and *Lewis* Earl of *Oettingen*. *Radolph* of *Habsburg*, Son of this *Albert*, afterwards Emperour of the *German*, marrying with *Anne* the Daughter of the Earl of *Hohenloe*, became possessed also of his part of the Country; which added to his own, made up the whole upper *Elfsa*, continued since that time in possession of the House of *Austria*, descended from him. The third part, comprehending all the Lower *Alsacia*, was not long after sold by the Earl of *Oettingen* to the Bishop of *Straasburg*, whose Successors hold to this day, assuming to themselves the Title of the *Lantgraves* of *Elfsa*. But as for *Singow*, or the County of *Epf*, that belonged anciently to the Princes of the House of *Schwaben*: in the expiring of which potent and illustrious Family, by the death of *Conradine* the last Duke, anno 1268, that great Estate being scattered into many hands, it was made a distinct Earldom of it self. And so it continued till the year 1324, when *Ottobek* the last Earl dying without Issue-Male, left his Estate betwixt two Daughters: whereof the one, named *Anne*, conveyed her part in Marriage to *Adolf* Duke of *Austria*, named the short, Grandchild of *Radolphus* the Emperour before mentioned; the other, named *Ursula*, sold her moiety to the said *Albert* for 8000 Crowns. Since that it hath been always in the possession of the Dukes of *Austria*, (save only for the time in which it was pawned or mortgaged, together with *Alsacia*, to the Duke of *Burgundy*) governed in Civil matters and points of Judicature by the Parliament or Court of *Ensheim* in the Upper *Elfsa*.

5. LORRAIN.

THE Dukedom of *LORRAIN* is bounded on the East with *Elfsa*, and that part of the lower *Palatinate* which passeth by the name of *Weserich*; on the West with the River *Meuse*, or *Maes*, with part of the Country of *Barrois* in *France*, (belonging to the Duke hereof) and part of *Champagne*; on the North with *Luxemburg* and the Land of *Trier*; and on the South with the County of *Burgundy*, from which, and from the Province of *Elfsa*, it is parted by the *Vogesus* or *Vange*, wherewith it is encompassed on those sides. Assigned unto *Lotharius*, second son of *Lotharius* the Emperour, (who was eldest Son of *Lewis* the Godly) with the style of a Kingdom; from thence called *Lothreich* by the *Dutch*, *Loth-reigne* by the *French*; from which the modern name of *Lorraine*, and the *Latine* *Lotharingia* are to fetch their Pedegree.

The Country is in length about four dayes journey, almost three in breadth, much overgrown with Forests, and swelled with Mountains, the spurs and branches of *Vogesus*, and the once vast Wildernes of *Ardenne*; yet so sufficiently stored with all manner of necessaries, that it needeth not supply out of other places. Some Lakes it hath which yield great quantity of Fish; one more especially 14 miles in compass, the Fish whereof yields to the Duke's Coffers 20000 l. yearly. It affordeth also divers Metals, as Silver, Copper, Tin, Iron, Lead, in some places Pearls: Chaldeonians also of such bigness, that whole Drinking-cups are made of them, and a matter of which they make the purest Glasses, not to be paralleld in *Europe*. They have also a goodly breed of Horses, equal to those of *Barbary*, or the Courser of *Naples*.

The people, by reason of their neighbourhood to and commerce with *France*, strive much to imitate the *French* in garb and fashion; but one may easily see that it is not natural: they have much in them also of the Dutch humour of Drinking, but far more moderately than the *Dutch* themselves. Generally they are a politic and an hardy Nation; not otherwise able to have held their Estate so long against the *French* Kings, and the Princes of the House of *Burgundy*. They lived very happily in former times under their own Dukes, not being at all oppressed with Taxes; which made them very affectionate towards the Prince, and useful unto one another. Their Language is for the most part *French*, as in *Artois*, *Luxemburg*, *Trier*, and other of the bordering Provinces, members of the *French* Monarchy in former times, not so refined and elegant as is spoke in *France*, not so corrupt and coarse as that of *Montbelgard* and the County of *Burgundy*.

I know that many, in respect of the *French* language, spoken here among them, account this Country among the Provinces of *France*, and usually describe it in their Charts and writings: but I have placed it with more reason (as I conceive) amongst those of *Germany*; first, in regard that a Duke hereof is a Prince of the Empire; but especially because that, in the division of the Kingdom of *Lorraine* betwixt the Emperors of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, whatsoever lay on the East-side of the River *Meuse* (as this Dukedom of *Lorraine* for the most part doth) was reckoned in the share or portion of the *German* Emperours.

The Rivers of chief note are, 1. *Murta*, or the *Meurte*, which receiving into it many Rivers, and passing with a swift stream by the walls of *Nancie*, glides along fairly for a good space within sight of the *Moselle*, into which at last it falls near *Conde*. 2. *Mosel*, the *Mosel*, or

or *Maes*, whose spring and course hath been already described in *Belgium*. 3. *Moselle*, famous for the design which *Lucius Verus*, Governour for the Emperour *Nero*, had once upon it. For whereas it ariseth in the Mountain *Vange*, not far from the head of the River *Saône*, and disburtheneth it self into the *Rhene* at *Confluent*; he intended to have cut a deep Channel from the head of this unto the other, so to have made a passage from the Ocean to the Mediterranean, the *Saône* emptying it self into the *Rhine*, a chief River of *France*, as the *Moselle* doth into the *Rhene*. 4. *Selle*, which minglith waters with the *Moselle* not far from *Metz*. 5. *Sar*, 6. *Martane*, 7. *Voley*, with others of less note: all of them plentiful of Salmon, Perches, Tenches, and the best sorts of fish, as in their Lakes are great store of Carps, some of them three foot long, and of excellent taste.

Principal Cities in it are, 1. *Metz*, by *Protony* called *Divodurum*, *Metis* and *Civitas Mediomatricum* by *Antoninus*, the chief City of the *Mediomatrici*, who possessed this Tract: it is seated in a pleasant Plain at the confluence of the *Selle* and *Moselle*; the Royal Seat, in former times of the *French* Kings of *Austrasia*, hence called Kings of *Metz*; long before that a Bishop's See, as it still continueth. 2. *Toul*, the *Tullum* of *Protony*, the *Civitas Leucorum* of *Antoninus*, so called from the *Leuci*, the Inhabitants of it and the Tract about it; pleasantly seated on the *Moselle*, and anciently honoured with a See Episcopal. 3. *Verdun*, an ancient Episcopal See also, the *Civitas Verodunensium* of *Antoninus*, seated on the *Meuse* or *Maes*. The Town or Territory adjoining in preceeding times belonged to the great Princes of the House of *Ardenne*, at and before the time that they attained the Dukedom of *Lorraine*: but whither they had it in right of their Patrimonial Estate, as lying in the North part of this Country towards *Luxemburg*, as it well might be, or that it came to them in the right of Marriage with some Daughter of the house of *Moselle*, or other Heirs thereof, I have no where found. But howsoever it came to them, it gave unto this House the Title of Earls of *Verdun*, used in their Style, till swallowed with the rest in that of *Lorraine*. The Bishop whereof, as also those of *Metz* and *Toul*, (being the only ones of this Country of *Lorraine*) acknowledge the Archbishop of *Trier* for their Metropolitan. All of them were in the number (heretofore) of Imperial Cities, possessed of large and goodly Territories and of great Revenue; but taken by the *French* King *Henry* the 2. Anno 1552, during the Wars between *Charles* the fifth, and the Protestant Princes of *Germany*, under colour of aiding them against the Emperour. And though *Charles* tried all ways to recover them to the Empire again, and to that end maintained a long and desperate Siege against the City of *Metz*: yet was the Town so gallantly defended by the Duke of *Guis*, that he was faine to raise his Siege, and go off with dishonour. Since that, they have been always under the subjection of *France*; a Parliament, being erected at *Metz* for the ease of the people, as in other Provinces of that Kingdom.

Of such Towns as immediately belong to the Duke of *Lorraine*, the principal are *Nancie*, not great, but of a pleasant and commodious site, well watered by the River *Meurte* or *Marta*, and fortified better than before, in the year 1587, on occasion of a great Army of the *German* passing into *France* to aid the Protestants: most commonly the Duke's Seat, and famous for the Discomfiture which *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* here suffered, with the loss of his life. 2. *Nicolas*, a Town so populous, well seated, and neatly built, that were it walled, it would hardly yield precedence unto *Nancie* it self; so called from a Church here built to the honour of *S. Nicolas*, Bishop of

Myra in the lesser *Asia*, whose body they pretend to be buried here; or at least some of Relick of it to be here inhrined, occasioning a great resort of Pilgrims and other people. 3. *Pont a Mosion*, about 4 leagues from *Nancie*, so called from a Bridge on the River *Mosion* upon which it standeth, of special note for a small University lately founded in it, and for giving the Title of a Marquis to the eldest Son of the Dukes of *Lorraine*, called commonly and contractedly Marquis du *Pont*, *Marchio Mosio-Pontanus* by our modern Latinists. 4. *Vaucouleur*, the Birth-place of *Joan* the Virgin, to whose Miracles and Valour the *French* attribute the delivery of their Country from the power of the *English*. But being at last taken Prisoner, she was by the Duke of *Bedford*, then Regent of *France*, condemned and burnt for a Witch. Of which crime, I for my part do conceive her free. Nor can I otherwise conceive of her and her brave exploits, than as of a luty Lais of *Lorraine*, tutored and trained up by the practice of the Earl of *Dumais*, commonly called the *Barfard* of *Orleans*, and so presented to *Charles* the seventh, *French* King, as if sent immediately from Heaven. A project carried on of purpose, (as the most intelligent of the *French* Writers say) pour faire venir la courage aux *Francois*, to revive the drooping spirits of the beaten *French*, not to be raised again but by help of a Miracle. Upon the fight of her Statue on the Bridge of *Orleans*, a freind of mine did adventure on a Copy of Verses in her commendation, too long to be inserted here, but they ended thus,

She dy'd a Virgin: 'Twas because the earth
Bred not a man whose valour and whose birth
Might merit such a Blessing. But above
The Gods provided her an equal Love,
And gave her to Saint *Denis*. She with him
Protects the *Lilies* and their Diadem.
You then about whose Armes the doth watch,
Give her the honour due unto her Match:
And when in favour your Standards you advance,
Cry loud, Saint *Denis* and Saint *Joan* for *France*.

Next these we have, 5. *Vaudemont*, which gave the Title of an Earl to a younger Branch of the House of *Ardenne*, succeeding at the last in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, in person of Duke *René* 2. and since a Title of the younger Son of the Dukes hereof. 6. *Nesle-Chateau*, on the edge of the Country towards *Barrois*. 7. *Amance*, seven leagues on the South of *Metz*, sometimes the Chancery of *Lorraine*. 8. *Riche Court*, near the Lake called *Garde-lée*, out of which floweth a River which runs into the *Meurte*. 9. *La Mothe*, seated on a River which falls presently into the *Moselle*. 10. *Charmes*, seated on the *Moselle*, the place of Treaty between the Duke of *Lorraine* and the Cardinal *Richeleu*; the result whereof was the surrender of the Town of *Nancie*, and by consequence of all the Dukedom, into the hands of the *French*, September 1633. 11. *Stenay*, in the extrem North of all this Country, a well fortified Town, and of great consequence and importance to the Dukes hereof; but whether properly belonging to the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, or wretched from the Sovereignty of *Sedan*, upon which it bordereth, (as *Tamari* near unto it was) I have no where found. Of less note there are, 1. *Saint Die*, 2. *Saint Hippolite*, 3. *Bouguenon*, and 4. *Saverden*; the first Towns of this Dukedom taken by the *Swedes*, Anno 1633, in the War against *Lorraine*. 5. *Saint Miel*, 6. *Oden Chateau*, 7. *Muecourt*; all taken the same year by the *French*, in the prosecution of that War, before the Treaty at *Charmes*. 8. *Romberville*, 9. *Espinal*, 10. *Gerbaville*, &c.

3. *Larks Argent.* But herein I find *Bars*, an old French Herald, to differ from *Paradise*, the most Exact Genealogist of the French Nation. For *Bars* charged the Band not with 3 *Alouettes*, Larks as *Paradise* doth, but with 3 *Alceons*, which are in Blazon small Birds wanting beaks, feet, and legs. Of this last opinion is the most worthy Antiquary *Cambden*; *Clavensius*; who withal telleth us, that antiquary *Gudfrey Bonilay* was at the Siege of *Hierusalem*, when *Gudfrey Bonilay* was at the Siege of *Hierusalem*, shooting at *S. David's* Tower there, he broached three feeble birds called *Alceons* upon his Arrow, and thereupon assumed this Arms.

6. SUEVIA, or SCHWABEN.

THE Dukedom of *SUEVIA* or *SCHWABEN*, according to the ancient limits and extent thereof, was bounded on the North with *Frankenland* and the *Lower Palatinate*, on the South with *Switzerland* and the *Alps* of *Tyrol*, on the East with the *River Leck*, parting it from *Bavaria*, and on the West with the *Rhene* dividing it from *Sungow* and both *Alsatia's*. But now the Dukedom of *Wirsungow*, the Marquitate of *Baden*, and other lesser Estates being taken out of it, it is contracted and restrained within narrower bounds, having on the East *Bavaria*, on the West the Dukedom of *Wirttemberg*, and so much of the *Rhene* as serveth to divide it from *Sungo* and the *Upper Elzass*, on the North *Francia* or *Frankenland*, and on the South a little of the *Rhene*, with some part of the *Switzers*.

The Country for the most part is mountainous and hilly, overpread with some spurs of the *Alps*, and the woods of *Nigra Sylva* or *Swartzwald*, recompensed notwithstanding with great plenty of Springs and Rivers (and amongst them the *Neccar* and the renowned *Danubius*) which do issue from them: which makes the Vales hereof to be very fruitful, sufficiently stored with all necessary provisions. Nor are the Woods and Mountains so unprofitable, but that besides the great plenty of Fowl and the pleasures of Hunting, they do afford some Mines of Iron and other Metals.

The people in regard of their mountainous situation are more fierce and warlike than the rest of the *Germans*, and so accompanied by *Pluarch* in former times; industrious in several Trades and Manufactures, especially in the weaving of Linnen-cloth, which is made here in great abundance: and by reason they have so much in them of the South, they are *supra modum in Venerem prout*, as *Ambani* tells me, at least more given to *Venus* than the other of the *Germans*; are the women also being said to be very forward in this kind, as tractable and easie as the men could wish with them.

The whole is generally divided into the *Hegow* lying next to the Lake of *Constance*; the *Algow* extending to *Bavaria*; *Brigow*, upon the West of the *River Rheine*; and North *Schwaben*, on the Northern side of *Danubius*. Principal Cities in the *HEGOW* are, 1. *Lindow*, situate alike an Island in the Lake of *Constance*, encompassed alike with the waters thereof, but joined to it with a Causeway of 290 paces long: one of the Free or Imperial Cities, made so, for money, by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, anno 1166. 2. *Buchorn*, and 3. *Scaffhausen*, seated on both sides of the *Rhene*, not far from the efflux thereof out of the Lake *Cell*, (so called from a Town of that name belonging to the Arch-dukes of *Austria*, but anciently known by the name of *Laus Vennia*) and near those dreadful falls or Cataracts of that River no less than 50. Cubits downwards, with great noise and violence. For which cause all Vessels that go down the *Rhene* are fain to unlade themselves, and by Carts to carry their goods to this Town, where they in-

bark them again. Which as it yieldeth great benefit unto the Town by Tolls and Imposts, so doth it always keep it stored with abundance of Barks and other Vessels: whence it hath the name of *Scaffhausen*, that is to say, the house of Skiffs; or the Town of Ship-barks. The Town is conveniently seated amongst rich Pastures and sweet Groves on both sides of the River; not without some pleasant Hills, and those well planted with Vines, near adjoining to it: Imperial once, but now a Canton of the *Switzers*, as hath there been thew.

5. *Arben*, upon the Lake it self, (the *Arbor Felix* of *Strabo*) belonging to the Bishop of *Constance*. 6. *Merzburg*, the ordinary Seat and Residence of the Bishop of *Constance*; Lord of the most part of this Trade, on the same Lake also. 7. *Constance* it self, situate on both sides of the *Rhene*, where it issueth out of the Lake, called from hence the Lake of *Constance*, but by the *Dutch*, *Boden-see*, from the Cattle of *Bodmen*; by *Pliny* and other Antients *Lacus Aemonicus*, and *Brigantinus*; made by the Confluence of the *Rhene*, and some other Rivers falling out of *Switzerland*. The Town is Imperial, an Episcopate See, and a flourishing Emptorie: famous for the Council here holden, anno 1414. of great renown as well for the multitude and quality of the people which were there assembled, as for the importance of the matters which were therein handled. The people of most note there assembled were, *Sigismund* the Emperor; 4. Patriarchs, 29 Cardinals, 340 Archbishops and Bishops, 564 Abbots and Doctors, 10000 secular Princes and Noblemen, 4500 common Harlots, 1600 Barbers, and 320 Minstrels and Jefters. The business there handled was, first the pacifying of a Schism in the Church, there being at that time 3 Popes, (or rather Anti-Popes) viz. *Gregory* the 12. resident at *Rome*, *John* the 23. at *Bononia*, and *Beneke* the 13. in *Spain*; all three deposed by the Council, and *Martin* the 5. made sole Pope by the unanimous consent of the Council, declaring both by matter of fact, and by a publick Confutation here made and ratified, that *Council* is above the Pope. The other main business was the proceeding against *John Hierome of Prague* (spoken of before) both which notwithstanding the Emperor's safe conduct, were here condemned of Heresie, degraded and burnt. Now the manner of degrading a Priest is this: I hope to be excused for this Digression. The Party to be degraded is satired in his Priestly Vestments, holding in the one hand a Chalice full of wine & water, and in the other a gilt plate (or *Patten*, as they call it) with a wafer. Then kneeling down, the Bishop's Deputy, 1. taking from him all those things commands him to say no more Masses for the quick and dead. 2. Scrapping his Fingers ends with a piece of Glais, he commandeth him from that time forwards not to hallow any thing. And 3. stripping him of his priestly Habit, he is clothed in a Lay attire, and so delivered over to the secular Magistrate. But to return again to the City of *Constance*: being proscribed by *Charles* the 5. for refusing the *Interim*, and not able to withstand such Forces as were raised against them, they put themselves under the protection of *Ferdinand*, then King of the *Romans* and Brother of *Charles*. But herein they fell out of the *Frying-pan* into the Fire, as the saying is: For *Ferdinand* being possessed of the Town, seized on the common Treasury, and upon all Records and Writings which belonged unto them; set out an Edict, that all the Ministers within eight daies should depart the City; and that no Citizen from thenceforth should wear any Weapon. And instead of a Protector he became their Master.

Chief Cities in the part hereof lying towards *Bavaria* which is called the *ALGOW*, are, 1. *Buchorn*, on the Lake called *Feder-see*, a Town Imperial. 2. *Kewersburg* a Free City, seated amongst Mountains, whereof one hangeth

eth over it, the *River Ach* running by it in a bed so narrow that not able to receive the waters which fall down from the Hills, it much enadameth all the Country by frequent Land-floods. 3. *Wangen*, (the *Nemavia* of *Antoninus*) Imperial also. 4. *Kempten*, the *Campiduvium* of *Strabo*, and 5. *Munningen*, the *Dryomagus* of *Platiny*; both Imperial Cities; the last about 3 miles in circuit, populous, rich, and very well traded. 6. *Pfullendorf*, 7. *Zwick*, 8. *Bibrach* all three Imperial; the last supposed to be the *Bragedurum* of the Antients. 9. *Augsburg*, on the *River Leck*, looking into *Bavaria*, first made a Roman Colony by *Augustus Caesar*, and by him called *Augusta Vindeborum*, the principal City in those times of the *Vindelici*, a potent People of this Trade. A City of great wealth and state, containing about 9 miles in circuit, and very strongly fortified; by Nature on the East and North, where the ground lies low and under water, and on the West and South by Art. The Buildings for three parts of it are of Clay and Timber; but on the West part, seated on an Hill, built of Free-stone, six or seven Stories high; in which are many fair Houses: of the principal Citizens, and many stately Palaces, which belong to the *Fuggers*, a Family of very great (almost Princely) Revenues, possessed of many goodly dwellings both in the City and the Suburbs, and adjoining Territories; who though they have of late obtained the honour of Barons, in regard of their Wealth, still keep themselves (contrary to the custom of *Germany*, where Traffick is counted a disgrace to a Noble-man) to the trade of Merchandise. The publick Edifices of it are very decent, especially the Cathedral Church, a majestic Building; the other Churches, being ten in number, and the Religious Houses, correspondent to it. Of old time *Graz* was here worshipped, from whence (or from the fruitfulness of the soil) the City gives a Sheaf of Corn for the Arms thereof. Since their Conversion into Christianity it was made a Bishop's See. Destroyed by *Attila* and his *Huns*, it was after built more beautifully than it had been formerly; at last made Imperial, and the Mitres of as large a Territory as most Cities of *Germany*. Famous for the Confession of Faith exhibited in this place to *Charles* the 5. by the Protestant Princes, hence called *Confessio Augustana*, anno 1530. 2. For the *Interim*, or mixt form of Doctrine, containing some Points of Protestantism, but most of Popery, here tendered to both parties by the said Emperor; but received by neither; to be subscribed to and observed till the Differences could be settled by a General Council. And 3. for the publick allowance here given by Decree of all the States of the Empire to the Protestant Party, to profess openly their Religion without any impeachment, anno 1555. A Limitation only laid on the Ecclesiasticks, that if they changed their Religion, they should lose their preferments; which were to be bestowed on others more addicted to the See of *Rome*.

In the third part hereof, called *BRISGOW*, lying on the East of the *River Rhene*, and the West of *Wirttemberg*, and on the South closed in with the Canton of *Basil*. Places of most importance are, 1. *Friburg*, upon the *Triebe* and other Streams descending from the Mountains of *Swartzenwald*, under which it lieth: founded by *Berchbold* the third, Earl of *Duke of Zeringen*, (the Cattle of *Zeringen*, founded by *Berchbold* the first, Son of *Gelzo*, the youngest Son of *Gunnar*, the second Earl of *Habsburg*, once the chief Seat of those Princes, being then near adjoining to it) in the reign of *Henry* the Fifth Emperor, anno 1112, or thereabouts. Famous in those days for Silver mines, now for an University here established, anno 1459, and being in present estimation the chief of the Country; of which more anon. 2. *Offenbach*, 3. *Gengenbach*, both upon the *Rhinich* and both Towns Imperial: the first so named

from *Offa* an English Saxon, the Apostle of these parts of *Germany*. 4. *Hochberg*, which gives the Title of a Marquess to the Marquesses of *Baden*, who are Lords thereof. 5. *Zell*, once Imperial, but of late times belonging, as doth also 6. *Badenmiller*, to the Marquesses of *Baden*; this last accruing to them by the Marriage of *Radolph* the sixth of that name, Marquess of *Hochberg*, with a Sister of *John Earl of Friburg*, the then Lord thereof. 7. *Waldfurth*, upon the *Rhene*, in a barren, cold and mountainous Country, but well stored with Woods. 8. *Brisee*, by *Antoine* called *Mons Brissac*, a Garrison in his time against the encroaching *Almans*, and situate of the *River* being since turned on the other side, where now it runneth. It is built Cattle-wise on the top of a round Hill, in which there is also a strong Tower or Fort, raised by *Berchbold* the third for defence of the place; otherwise strong enough by its own natural situation, and might be made impregnable, but for want of water, which is all drawn from one deep Well in the heart of the Town, or brought with great charge and trouble from the *Rhene* which runs underneath it. The Town is fair, populous, and well built, once of most note in all the Country, from hence called *Brisee-zow*, or *Brisee-zw*; but after the building of *Friburg* by *Berchbold* the 4. it grew by little and little to be less frequented, the other being seated more conveniently for Trade and business: Here also, not far off from the Cattle of *Zeringen*, stood that of *Kiburg*, somewhat the ancestor of the two; of such authority and repute in those elder times, that the Emperors do still retain the Title of Earls of *Kiburg* in the Style Imperial: descended on the House of *Habsburg* by the Marriage of *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir of *Hartman* the last Earl hereof, to *Eberhard of Habsburg*, Count-german to the Emperor *Rodolph*, on the expiring of which Line, anno 1356, it fell, together with many fair Estates among the *Switzers*, to *Albert Duke of Austria* the fourth.

Finally, in the fourth and last part hereof, called *NORTH-SCHWABEN*, because on the North-side of the *Danow*: the places most observable are, 1. *Gmund*, on the *Reems*. 2. *Dinkel-Spyel*, on the *Warmitz*, two Imperial Towns; which with *Ueberling* or *Werlingen*, (all three but mean in building, Territory, or estimation (if spoken of before, are the only three Imperial Cities in all *Germany* which totally adhere unto the Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*. 3. *Bopfingen*, on the *Egra*, an Imperial City. 4. *Norlingen*, on the same River, but in a low and moorish ground, yet of great repute, populous, and well traded; most memorable for the Defeat here given the *Swedes* by *Ferdinand* the third, now Emperor, at his first entrance on the Government; in which *Bannier*, one of the principal Commanders of that Nation, was slain on the place, *Gudavus Horn*, another of as great eminence, taken Prisoner, their whole Forces routed, and thereupon so strange an Alteration of the Affairs of *Germany*, which they had almost wholly conquered, (though not for themselves;) that the *Palatinate*, not long before restored to its proper Owner, was again possessed by the *Spaniards*, *Frankenland* by the *Imperialists*, and the remainder of the *Swedes* forced to withdraw into their Holds on the *Baltick* Seas, anno 1637. 5. *Ravensweil*, not far from the head of the *Neccar*, an Imperial City, and a Confederade of the *Switzers*. 6. *Dornspert*, seated on the Confluence of the *Danow* and the *Werd*, whence it had the name, most commonly called only *Werd*; an Imperial Town, the habitation of *John de Werd*, once a Brewer herein, but afterwards a chief Commander of the Forces of the Duke of *Bavaria* in the late *German* Wars. 7. *Villingen*, on the *Bregenz*, a small River falling into

the Danow; a Town belonging to the Princes of the House of Austria. Not far from which stands 8. *Furtenburgian* ancient Cattle. The Earls heretofore are Princes of the Empire and Lords of a great part of the Country, defended lineally from *Egino*, or *Eggon*, the youngest Son of the Lady *Judith*, Sister and Heir of *Berthold* the fifth, the last Duke of *Zerigen*, and consequently a Branch of the illustrious House of *Habsburg*; exceedingly increased both in power and Patrimony, by the Marriage of *Frederick* Earl heretofore (in the time of *Charles* the fifth, under whom he served in his Wars against the Protestants) with *Anna* the Daughter and Heir of *Christopher* the last Earl of *Werdenberg*, possessed of many fair Estates amongst the *Switzers* and the adjoining parts of *Schwaben*. In a Village of this Earl, called *Den Eschingen*, is the head of *Danubius*. 9. *Ulm*, an Imperial City, situate on the meeting of the *Blau*, the *Iler*, and the *Danow*, the principal City of *North Schwaben*; about six miles in compass, rich, populous, well fortified, and stored with an Army for Ordnance and all manner of Ammunition, not inferior to any in *Germany*. The Town is but new, taking its first rise from a Monastery, here founded by *Charles* the Great, which after grew to be a great City; and took the name of *Ulm* from the Elms about it. At first it belonged unto the Monks; of whom having bought their Freedom in the time of *Frederick* the third, it became Imperial. The *Danow* hereabouts begins to be navigable, having so violent a Stream, that the Boats, which go down the water use to be sold at the place where they land, it being both difficult and chargeable to bring them back again. Not far hence on the banks of the *Danow* lie the *Suevian Alps*, and amongst them the old Cattle of *Hohenberg*; the Lord whereof, on the Ruine of the House of *Schwaben*, became possessed of a great Estate here and in *Upper Alsace*, fold afterwards to *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*, the Founder of the now *Austrian* Family.

The ancient Inhabitants heretofore were the *Brigantes*, *Sannetes*, *Rugifites*, and *Calconetes*, who, together with the *Vindelici* (of whom more hereafter) and other Tribes of the *Rhaetis*, (of whom somewhat hath been said before in the *Alpine* Provinces) possessed themselves of that Country which lieth betwixt the River *Jun* and the head of the *Rhene*, East and West, *Danubius* and the *Alps* of *Italy*, North and South. Within which compass are the greatest part of the *Griffons*, the Dukedoms of *Schwaben* and *Bavaria* on this side the *Danow*, and part of the County of *Tyrol*, and not a few of the Cantons of *Switzerland*. Subdued by *Drusus* and *Tiberius Nero*, Sons in law of *Augustus*, they were made a Province of the *Romans*; divided into *Rhaetia prima*, taking in all the Countries from the *Rhene* to the *Leck*, or *Lyens*; and *Rhaetia secunda*, lying betwixt the *Leck* and the River *Imn*, which by another name was called *Vindelicia*. By which account all *Schwaben* on the South side of the *Danow* was part of the Province of *Rhaetia prima*, continuing to till vanquished and subdued by the *Almans* in the time of *Valentinian* the third, Emperor of the Western parts. As for the *Almans* who succeeded in possession heretofore, they were originally some Tribes and Families of the *Suevi*, the most warlike Nation of the *Germans*, inhabiting upon the Banks of the River *Albis*; who jealous of *Casars* great Successes, brought against him 430000 fighting men, of which 80000 were slain, and many drowned. They used to stay at home and go to the War by turnsthey which stayed at home till the Land, to whom the rest returning brought the Spoil of the Enemies. But after this blow we hear little of them till the time of *Caracalla* the Son of *Severus*; during whose Reign, descending towards the Banks of the *Rhene* and the *Danow*, and mingling with other Nations as they passed along, they assumed first the

name of *Almans*; either from that promiscuous mixture of all sorts of men, or (as I rather think) from *Mannus* the Son of *Tuiscus*, one of the great and national Gods of the *Germans*. And though they were well beaten by him at their first coming down, near the River *Alanus*, and afterwards more broken by *Dioclesian*, who slew at least 60000 of them at one time in *Gaul*; yet never left they to infect the Provinces of the Empire which lay nearest to them, till in the end following the tract of the *Hinnis* who had gone before them, and beaten down many of the Forts and Garrisons which were in their way, they made themselves Masters of *Rhaetia prima*, *Germania prima*, and part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, containing, besides the Countries spoken of before, *Alsatia*, and so much of the *Lower Palatinate* as lies on the French side of the *Rhene*. But quarrelling with the *French*, their next neighbours, (of whose growth and greatness they began to be very sensible) they were first vanquished by *Clovis* the first Christian King of the *French* in that great and memorable Fight at *Zulp* near *Coleu*, and afterwards made wholly subject to the Conqueror, who oppressed them with an heavy and lasting Servitude. About this time they returned again to their old name of *Suevians*, their Estate being erected into a Dukedom, called many times the Dukedom of *Alman*; and, when so called, divided into the Upper *Alman*, comprehending the Country of the *Griffons*, with some parts of *Switzerland* and *Tyrol*, and the Lower or the proper *Alman*, which contained the rest of the Estates of the ancient *Almans*, called for the most part by the name of the Dukedom of *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, and finally transmuting that name to this Province only, the best part thereof. These Dukes were at first officary only, removable at the will of the Emperor, and accountable to him; not seldom many at one time, especially whilst under the command of the *French*, some of them being Dukes of the Upper, and others of the lower *Alman*. So that there is no great certainty of their Succession, nor much care to be taken in searching after it; though otherwife men of great Authority and command in their several Times. The most remarkable amongst them was *Rodolph*, Earl of *Reinfelden* and Duke of *Schwaben*, (descended from the Earls of *Habsburg*) in the Reign of *Henry* the fourth, against whom he was chosen Emperor by the practice and procurement of Pope *Hildebrand*, but overcome and wounded at the Battel of *Eysler*, he died not long after of his wounds, with great repentance for rebelling against his Sovereign. After his death, some Provinces being dismembered from it, and other lesser Estates first erected out of it, it was made hereditary in the person of *Frederick* Baron of *Hohenstauffen*, firnamed the Ancient, by the munificence and bounty of the said *Henry* the Fourth, whose Daughter *Agnes* he had married. His Successors follow in this order.

The Dukes of SCHWABEN.

1. *Frederick* the Ancient, the first hereditary Duke of *Schwaben*.
2. *Frederick* with one eye, Son of *Frederick* the Ancient.
3. *Frederick* III. firnamed *Barbarossa*, Son of *Frederick* with one eye, Duke of *Schwaben*, and Emperor; he succeeded the Emperor *Henry* the fifth in the Dukedom of *Francia*, and left the same unto his Successors.
1190. 4. *Frederick* IV. second Son of *Barbarossa*; his elder Brother *Henry* succeeding in the Empire by the name of *Henry* the sixth.

5. *Conrade*

5. *Conrade*, Brother of *Frederick* the fourth.
6. *Philip*, Brother of *Conrade*, after the death of *Henry* the 6. elected Emperor.

1207 7. *Frederick* V. Son of *Henry* the sixth, elected Emperor by the name of *Frederick* the second, King of *Naples* and *Sicily* also in the right of his Mother.

1250 8. *Conrade* II. Son of *Frederick* the fifth, King of both *Sicilies*, and Emperor of *Germany* after the death of his Father; poisoned, as was supposed, by his base Brother *Manfred*, who succeeded in his Kingdom of *Sicily*.

1254 9. *Conradine*, the Son of *Conrade*, pursuing his Right unto the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*, was overcome and taken prisoner by *Charles* of *Anjou*, Successor unto *Manfred* in those Estates, and by his command beheaded at *Naples*, anno 1268. After whose death (being the last of that powerful and Imperial Family) this vast Estate was brought unto a second dismembering, and divided amongst the Bishops, Princes and Free Cities heretofore, of which last there are more within the old Precincts of this Dukedom than in all *Germany* besides. So that beholding it in the first and second Dilapidation, we find many goodly Patrimonies and fair Estates (besides what belongeth to the Cities and Episcopal Sees) to have been raised out of the Ruines of this great Dukedom: that is to say, the Dukedoms of *Zerigen* and *Wurtemberg*, with the Marquisate of *Baden*, dismembered from it when conferred on *Frederick* of *Hohenstauffen*; the Earldoms of *Fris*, *Hohenberg* and *Friburg*, (besides a great improvement of the Earldom of *Habsburg*) advanced out of the second Ruine. How *Wurtemberg* and *Baden* shall be shewn hereafter. Here it is only to be noted, that the Family of *Zerigen*, possessed of almost all *Brigow* and a great part of *Switzerland*, owe their Original to *Berthold*, the Son of *Gebriz*, a younger Son of *Conradine* the 2. Earl of *Habsburg*. Which being extinguished after a Succession of seven Princes only in the person of *Berthold* the fifth, (who died the same day in which the Emperor *Rodolph* of *Habsburg* was born) anno 1218, the Rights heretofore defended on the Earls of *Friburg*, the principal City of that Country: *Conrad*, the first that bare the Title of Earl of *Friburg*, being the eldest Son of *Judith*, Sister and Heir of *Berthold* the last Duke of *Zerigen*. *Eggon*, the last Earl of which House, being overlaied by his undutiful and rebellious Subjects, fold his Estate therein for 12000 Ducats to *Albert* and *Leopold* Dukes of *Austria*, Sons of *Albert* the Short, whose Successors enjoy all *Brigow* to this very day.

The Arms of *Schwaben* were Argent, 3 Leopards Sable, as is said by *Bara*: But *Paradise* will have them to be three Leopards Sable, crowned Gules, in a Field Or.

7. BAVARIA.

BAVARIA is bounded on the East with *Austria*, on the West with the River *Leck* or *Lyens*, which parts it from *Schwaben*, on the North with *Northgoia*, or the upper *Palatinate*, and on the South with the Earldom of *Tyrol* and *Carinthia*. It containeth the whole Province of *Rhaetia secunda*, and so much of *Noricum mediterraneum* as now maketh up the Bishoprick of *Saltzburg*, and by a distinct name was called *Vindelicia*, as being the ancient habitation of the *Vindelici*; so named from the two Rivers of *Vindis* and *Lyens*, (now the *Werd* and the *Leck*) upon which they lived. According whereunto it is thus verified by a *German* Poet.

*Refpiciit & Læt fluvios Vindimique Licuque
Affluentes Undas, & nomina Litoris, inde
Antiquum Genem, populumque, Urbemque vocavit
Vindelicam.*

In English thus:
Vindis and Lyens, Floods of noted Fanie,
He next beholds, mingling their Streams and Name;
To which the old *Vindelici* do down
The name of both their Nation and their Town.

Meaning by their Town, as I conceive, *Augusta Vindelicorum*, their Metropolis or Capital City. But after such time as the *Baii* or *Boiarians* had driven out the *Romans*, and got possession of this Country, the name of *Vindelicia* and *Rhaetia secunda* grew into disuse, that of *Boiaria* succeeding in the place thereof, mollified or corrupted into *Bavaria*, the present name of the Country amongst the *Latines*; but by the Dutch called *Bayern*, by the *French* *Bavoy*.

The whole is divided into three parts: the *Higher*, lying towards the *Alps* of *Tyrol*, the *Lower*, extending all along the banks of the *Danow*; and the *District* of *Saltzburg*, situate betwixt the *Imn* and the Dukedom of *Austria*: all three much over-spread with Woods and Forests, remainders of the *Hermycan* Forest described before. But more particularly the *Higher*, lying towards the *Alps*, is cold and barren, affording no Vines, and but little Corn: the Lower being more fruitful, and better planted, for some parts (especially about *Reyepfurg* and *Landshut*) inferior unto none in *Germany* for Richness and pleasantness of the situation. Of the *District* of *Saltzburg* we shall speak by it self, because by some not reckoned as a part heretofore. In all there is great quantity of Fewel for the fire, and of Timber for Building; no less of Swine fatted in the Woods, and sent away by numerous Herds into other Countries.

The Christian Faith was first preached here amongst the *Boiarians* by *Rupertus* Bishop of *Wormes*, driven from his See by *Childbert* King of the *French*, anno 549, or thereabouts, and here made the first Bishop of *Saltzburg*; corrupted at this time with the Leaven of the Church of *Rome*, to which this Country (setting aside the Imperial Cities) is more entirely devoted than any other in all *Germany*.

Principal Cities in the *HIGHER* are 1. *Munichen*, (in *Latine Monachium*) the Duke's Seat, seated on the *Isar*, or *Isara*, in a very sweet and delightful Soil, among Ponds and Groves, daintily interlaced with pretty Riverlets, and enriched with many excellent Gardens; that of the Duke being hardly to be paralleled in all this Continent: first founded by *Henry* Duke heretofore in the time of *Orto* the first, anno 972, now grown a large and populous City: the publick Buildings, as Churches, Towers, Libraries, the Senate-House, or *Consulthall*, and common Market-place, of such excellent Structure, that they serve not only for Life and Ornament, but for Admiration. Amongst them none is more eminent than the Library in the Ducal Palace, wherein are conceived to be 1. 000 Volumes, the most part of them Manuscripts. A Town made choice of by *Maximilian*, the now Duke of *Bavaria*, to be the receptacle of the Spoils got by him in the Wars of *Germany*: here being found (at such time as the Town was taken by the King of *Sweden*) 140 Brass Pieces (besides other great Guns) hidden under the ground, one of the which was charged, instead of Powder and Shot, with 30000 Crowns in Gold. 2. *Landshut*, upon the *Leck* or *Lyens*, near the *Alps* of *Tyrol*: once of great strength, because a Frontier towards *Schwaben*, but proving a dangerous neighbor to the *Swedish* Garrison planted in these parts, during that War against the Duke of *Bavaria*, was

by them taken and dismantled, and is now an open Village only. 3. *Martenswald*, now a place of no note or beauty, heretofore the *hinterland* of *Prohm*, seated near the *Apf*. 4. *Freidberg*, well fortified by Duke *Ludowick* or *Lewis* the second, for a Bulwark against those of *Angsborg*. 5. Here stood also the old Castle of *Scheyr*, built by *Arnolph* 2. Son of *Arnolph* the first, Duke of *Bavaria*, the Seat and honorary Title of his Posterity, (*Dynasty* *Scheyrensis* in the *Latine*) till *Orbo* of *Wittelsbach*, by the favour of *Frederick Barbarossa* and his own good fortune did attain that Dukedom.

In the *LOWER Bavaria* there first offers it self to consideration the Town of *Rain*, seated on the *Leck*, not far from the fall thereof into the *Danow*; memorable for the Skirmish near to it betwixt the *Swedish* Forces over that River, in the first passing of the *Swedish* Forces over that River, in which *John* Earl of *Tilly*, so famous for his long and fortunate Conduct of the Imperial Armies, received his death's wound, of which he died at *Ingolstadt* within few weeks after. 2. *Newburg* upon the *Danow*, not far from *Rain*; the first Town of *Bavaria* taken in by the *Swedes* after the first defeat of *Tilly*. 3. *Ingolstadt*, said to be built by a Tribe or Nation of the *Sueves* called *Angeli*, and thence called *Angelstadtium* or *Angelsstade*; first made a City by *Ludowick* of *Bavaria* Duke and Emperour, and in the year 1410 made a University, much privileged by Duke *Lewis* or *Ludowick* the fifth, and Pope *Pius* the second. A Town so strongly fortified both by Art and Nature, that it seems impregnable, and indeed proved so to *Gustavus* the late King of *Sweden*, who here found the first check to his prosperous Fortunes, being forced to raise his Siege without endangering it, and find work elsewhere. 4. *Regensburg*, (in *Latine*, *Ratisbona*) on the *Danow* also, where it receives the River *Regen*, whence it hath its name: built in the place of *Tiberina*, or *Augusta Tiberii*, so called a Colony brought hither by *Tiberius* *Cæsar* about the time of our Saviours Passion, afterwards called *Rhatopolis*, or the City of the *Rhatians*, the chief of *Rhetia secunda*. At this time it is a fair, rich, and populous City, beautified with an infinite number of Churches and Religious Houses: anciently an Episcopal See, and of late made the ordinary place for the fepical Diet of the Empire. In former times it was the general Diet of the Empire. In former times it was the Seat of the Kings and first Dukes of *Bavaria*, then made Imperial, at the least in name, it was seized on unexpectedly by the now Duke of *Bavaria*, when the *Swedes* first got footing within his Dominions; held by him with a very strong Garrison, after the loss of *Munich* his chief place of Residence, till at last won from him by the *Swedes*, anno 1633. 5. *Paffaw*, by the modern *Latins* *Pavia*; but by some thought to be the *Baidurum* of *Prohm*, then a Roman Garrison, seated on the *Danow*, where it meeteth with the *Im* and the *Ilz*; by which it is divided into three Towns, *Paffaw*, *Insbad*, and *Ilfsbad*, the whole *Complum* being a fair, rich, and well traded City: a See Episcopal, and subject immediately to the Bishop as chief Lord thereof, who hath his dwelling in the Castle of *Oberhausen*, adjoining to that part thereof which is called *Ilfsbad*. A place remarkable for many Meetings and Consultations of the German Princes, especially for that of the year 1552, in which, all former Quarrels being laid aside, the Protestants were first permitted the free Exercise of their Religion, by the consent and Edit of *Charles* the fifth, who had most laboured to suppress it. More in the land is 6. *Frisling*, on the swelling of a fine round Hill near the River *Ambr*, which runs beneath it, called anciently *Fraxinum*; conceived to be built by some of the Presidents or Lieutenants for the Roman Emperours; honoured with an Episcopal See about the year 710. One

of the Bishops whereof, commonly called *Orbo Frisingensis*, was the best Historian of his time. 7. *Landshut*, upon the River of *Iser*, in the richest and most pleasant Country of all *Bavaria*; a beautiful and well built City, the work of *Lewis* Duke thereof, in the year 1208, adorned with a Church of most curious building for the service of God, and a magnificent Palace for the use of the Duke. 8. *Freistadt*, the only Imperial Town, (except *Regensburg*) in all this Dukedom. The whole number of Cities and great Towns in that *Bavaria*'s is supposed to be 80; that is to say, 34 Cities, and 46 great Towns of which these are the principal.

The Bishoprick or *Diocesis* of *SALTZBURG*, being the third part of *Bayeren* or *Bavaria*, (according to our former division of it) extendeth from the *Im* or *Oenus* towards the Confines of *Austria*. The Soil hereof is rocky, dry, and barren, excepting some few Valleys only, as seated in the middle of the *Tulian Alps*, the habitation heretofore of the *Norici mediterranei*, of whom more hereafter. The principal Town hereof is *Saltzburg*, seated upon the River *Saltzach*, whence it had the name; raised out of the Ruins of *Juvavia*, placed hereabouts by *Antoninus*, the Station of a Cohort of Roman Soldiers belonging to the First Legion. An Alpine City, strongly situate among the Mountains; but no less beautiful than many of the lower grounds. The Royal Seat of some of the *Bavarian* Kings, after of the Archbishops hereof, the most powerful Prelates for Revenue or Jurisdiction any in *Germany*. The See was first fixed here by *Kupernus* or *Ruberius*, the first Apostle of these parts, spoken of before; whose Image or Impres is stamped to this day on the Coins of this Bishoprick. At the time when *Luther* first endeavoured a Reformation, Cardinal *Matthæus Langius* was Bishop here, who did ingenuously confess, that the Mals did not want his faults; that the Court of *Rome* was much corrupted, and the lives of Priests and Friers fit to be reformed: *sed quod misissimum* *Monachus omnia reformet, id non esse tolerabile*; but that such a sorry fellow as *Luther* should attempt the work, was by no means to be endured. 2. *Newkirch*, on the same River, near the head thereof. 3. *Rotenburg*, on the East-side of the *Im*, bordering on *Bavaria*. 4. *Traunstein*, upon the *Traun*, rising out of the Lakes. 5. *Wildshut*, one of the farthest Northwards, and 6. *Bischofsstett*, one of the most Southern in all this Tract.

The first Inhabitants of *Bavaria* (excluding the *Diocesis* of *Saltzburg*) were the *Vindelici*, as aforesaid: a people so resolutely bent to maintain their Freedom against the incroachment of the *Romans*, that when *Drausus*, the Son in Law of *Augustus*, and Father of *Germanicus Cæsar*, made War upon them, the very Women thereof took the Alarm; & *desiderium telis*, *Infantes in ora militum adversa miserunt*, and when their Darts were spent threw the young Infants (saith the Historian) at the heads of the *Romans*. After them, in the declining of the Empire, succeeded the *Boiarians*, some of the many Tribes of the *Bois*, the most diffused and multitudinous Nation of *Gaul* and *Germany*. Originally they were of *Gaul*, inhabiting the Dukedom of *Narbon*, from whence some of them passed with the *Senones* and other of the *Gauls* to the farther side of the *Alps* (in respect of them) where they took up the Country between the *Appennine* and the *Po*. Wearied with many Bickerings, at last with sharp and bitter Wars against the *Romans*, and by them deprived of half their Country, some of them passed into *Germany*, and mingled themselves with the *Taurisci*, then dwelling in those parts which we now call *Saxony*: or others advancing further, thrust themselves into the *Norici* (of whom more anon,) and some retired themselves into the flietters and last places of the *Hercynian* Forest

Forest. Driven from this last by the *Marcomanni*, they fell into the Countries of the *Hernanduri* and *Norici*, (now the Upper *Palatinate*) who, mingled into one Nation with them, took the name of *Boiarians*, and were by that name first known in the time of *Clevis* the 5. King of the *French*; by whose persuasion, in the 17 year of *Augustus* Emperour of the East, they passed over the *Danow*, and possessed themselves of *Vindelicia*, or the second *Rhetia*, with some part of *Noricum*, to which they gave the name of *Boiaria*, as before was signified. They were governed first by Kings, (as all Nations were) of whom we meet with none but *Adigerius*, (and he the last of that Race) slain fighting on the side of the *Almans* against the *French*, at the great Battle of *Zulp* near *Oden*. After which they were made subject to the Conquerors, as their neighbours and Confederates the *Almans* were, but suffered to live under the command and Government of their own Princes, by the name of Dukes. Of these, from *Theodo* the Son of *Adigerius* to *Tassilo* the last Duke, outed of his Estate and Honours by *Charles* the Great, for conspiring with the *Lombards* against him, are reckoned 15 Dukes in all; whose names (for there remaineth little of them but the empty names) we shall subjoin in the ensuing Catalogue of the

Dukes of the BOIARIANS.

- 493 1. *Theodo*, Son of *Adigerius* the last King; from whose younger Brother *Uilo* descended *Pepin* the Father of *Charles* the Great.
- 511 2. *Theodo II.* surnamed the Great.
- 537 3. *Theodebert*.
4. *Theodo III.* the first Christian Prince of the *Boiarians*.
- 565 5. *Tassilo*, Son of *Theodebert*.
- 598 6. *Garibaldus*.
- 612 7. *Theodo IV.*
- 630 8. *Theodo II.*
- 650 9. *Theodo V.*
10. *Theodebert II.*
11. *Theodo VI.* Son of *Grimoldus*, the Brother of *Theodebert* the second.
- 708 12. *Grimold*.
13. *Hugobert*, Brother of *Grimold*.
- 735 14. *Uilo*.
- 765 15. *Tassilo III.* the last Duke of the *Boiarians*, of whom more anon.

Amongst these, few were of any note but 1. *Theodo* the first, Son of *Adigerius*, who abandoning the name of King, became less pleasing to the *French*, who had newly conquered them, assumed that of Duke, and passing over the *Danow*, extorted the whole Province of *Rhetia secunda*, with part of *Noricum* from the *Romans*, anno 508, or thereabouts. 2. *Theodo* the second, named the great, for his great and many Victories against the *Romans*, whom he outed of all *Noricum* and *Vindelicia*, and whatsoever they held on the *Dutch* side of the *Alps*. 3. *Theodo* the third of that name, and the fourth in number of the Dukes, converted with his people to the Christian Faith by the preaching of *Rupertus* before mentioned, anno 580. 4. *Tassilo* the third of that name, and the last of their Dukes of the Race of *Adigerius*, or of the old *Boiarian* blood; who being deposed by *Charles* the Great, the whole Country became immediately subject to the *French*, governed at first by their Lieutenants. Disinherited from the *French* Empire by *Lewis* the Godly, it was made a Kingdom, (*Pannonia* being added and united to it) by whom it was conferred on *Lotharius* his eldest Son, who was afterwards Emperour of the *Romans*: after his death possessed by the Kings of *Germany*, but as a distinct King-

dom both in name and Title, till the decease of *Levis* the Son of *Arnolph*, the last of the direct Line of *Charles* the Great. He being dead, and the *Boiarians* loth to be made a subject Province to the Kingdom of *Germany*, one *Arnolph* of the *Ilse* of the said *Charles*, with the general liking of the *Boiarians*, took upon himself the Title of King; but being opposed therein by *Conrad* the Brother of *Lewis*, Emperour and King of *Germany*, and also by *Henry* the first who succeeded, he changed the Title of King into that of Duke: the Founder of the present House of

The Dukes of BAVARIA.

1. *Arnolph*, of the House of *Charles* the Great, first Duke of *Bavaria*.
2. *Eberhard*, Son of *Arnolph*, deposed by *Orbo* the first.
3. *Berchbold*, the Brother of *Arnolph*, confirmed in the Estate by the said Emperour *Orbo*. After whose death it was conferred on *Henry* the Brother of *Orbo* the 1. who had married *Judith*, Daughter of *Arnolph* the first Duke, and Sister to *Eberhard*.
4. *Henry*, Brother of *Orbo* the first, surnamed *Rixofus*, or the Quarrelsome.
5. *Henry II.* Son of the former *Henry*, surnamed *Hezelo*.
6. *Henry III.* surnamed the Saint, Son of *Henry* the 2. the first Emperour who came in by Election, according to the Order made by Pope *Gregory* the 5. After whose coming to the Empire this Dukedom was transferred for 14 Successions from one great Family to another, according to the power and pleasure of the present Emperour, in manner following.
7. *Henry IV.* surnamed *Hezzel*, Brother to *Cimigund*, the renowned Wife of *Henry* the Saint; by whom he was preferred to this Dukedom, and by him deposed.
8. *Henry Guelfo*, Son of *Robert* Earl of *Altors* in *Schweben*, (of the strange Original of which Family we shall speak in *Brinwick*) made Duke by the Emperour *Conrad* the 2.
9. *Guelfo*, Son of *Henry Guelfo*, or *Henry* the 5.
10. *Ernulf*, created Duke hereof by the same *Conrad* the 2. and by him deposed again for conspiring against him.
11. *Henry VI.*
12. *Cmo*, accused of Conspiracy, and displaced by *Henry* the 3. to make room for
13. *Henry VII.* Son of the said Emperour *Henry* the 3. whom he succeeded in the Empire by the name of *Henry* the 4.
14. *Agnes*, the Mother of the said *Henry* the 4. by the gift of her Son.
15. *Orbo*, by the gift of the Emperors *Agnes*, deposed not long after by *Henry* the 4.
16. *Welfo III.* Son of *Coniza*, the Daughter of *Guelfo* the 2. by *Azon* an *Italian* Marquis made Duke hereof by the said Emperour *Henry* the 4.
17. *Welfo IV.* Son to *Leopold* 3.
18. *Henry VIII.* surnamed the Proud, Brother of *Guelfo* the 4. by the Marriage of *Gertrude* Daughter of *Lotharius* the second, Duke of *Saxony* also. Deprived of both by the Emperour *Conrad* the 3.
19. *Leopold*, Son to *Leopold* the 4. Marquis of *Austria*, B b b

- Austria*, made Duke by the said *Conrad* the 3.
20. *Henry IX.* Brother of *Leopold*, after Marquess, at last Duke of *Austria*.
21. *Henry X.* surnamed the Lion, Son of *Henry* the Proud, restored by the Arbitrement of *Frederick Barbarossa*, (the Duke of *Austria* being otherwise satisfied) by whom he was not long after proscribed, and deprived of both his Dukedoms. After which this Estate became fixed and settled in the person and posterity of
- 1180 22. *Otto* of *Wittelsbach*, so called from the place of his birth or dwelling, descended lineally from *Arnulph* the Lord of *Scheyre* in the Upper *Bavaria*, and 2. Son of *Arnulph* the first Duke hereof; advanced unto his honour by *Frederick Barbarossa*, sensible of the too great power of the former Dukes: the whole extent of this Estate being reduced by this time to the limits of the modern *Bavaria*, and the Palatinate of *Northeim*.
- 1181 23. *Ludowick*, or *Lewis* Son of *Otto*.
- 1231 24. *Otto II.* Son of *Lewis*, who, by marrying *Gertrude*, the sole Daughter of *Henry* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, brought the Electoral Dignity into the House of *Bavaria*.
- 1290 25. *Henry*, Duke of *Bavaria* and Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, the Son of *Otto* 2.
- 1294 26. *Ludowick*, or *Lewis II.* Brother of *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria*, and Elektor *Palatine* of the *Rhene*.
- 1312 27. *Ludowick*, or *Lewis III.* second Son of *Lewis* the 2. succeeded in the Dukedom of *Bavaria*; *Redolph*, the eldest Son, succeeding in both *Palatinates* and the Electoral Dignity. He was afterwards elected and crowned Emperor, known commonly by the name of *Ludowick Bavaria*.
- 1347 28. *Stephen*, the eldest Son of *Ludowick* the Emperor; *William* and *Albert*, his two Brethren, successively enjoyed the Earldoms of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c. in right of their Mother.
- 1375 29. *Stephen II.* Son of *Stephen* the first; his Brothers, *Frederick* and *John*, sharing with him parts of the Estate.
- 1413 30. *Ludowick II.* surnamed *Barbatus*, deposed and imprisoned by his own Son *Ludowick*, who yet died before him without issue.
- 1447 31. *Henry II.* Son of *Frederick*, the second Brother of *Stephen* the 2. succeeded on the death of *Ludowick* *Barbatus*.
- 1450 32. *Ludowick V.* surnamed the Rich, the Son of *Henry* the 2. banished the Jews out of his Estates and seized their goods.
- 1479 33. *George*, surnamed the Rich also, the Founder of the University of *Innsbruck*; whose sole Daughter and Heir was married to *Rupertus* Prince Elektor *Palatine*, with the Dukedom of *Bavaria* for her Dowry. But *Maximilian* the Emperor, not liking so much greatness in the German Princes, confirmed the same on
- 1503 34. *Albert III.* Son of a former *Albert*, Nephew of *John* *Munich* by his Son *Ernestus*: which *John* was youngest Brother to *Stephen* the 2. who by the power and favour of *Maximilian* the Emperor succeeded unto *George* the Rich: the cause of a long and unhappy War betwixt the Electors of the *Rhene* and Dukes of *Bavaria*; the worst whereof, besides the loss of this Estate, fell upon the *Palatinates*, proscribed and outed of their Country upon this quarrel; but, upon their Submission, restored again.
- 1508 35. *William*, the Son of *Albert* the 3.
- 1577 36. *Albert IV.* a great Champion of the Doctrines and Traditions of the Church of *Rome*; and so extremely affected unto the *Jesuits*, that he built Colleges for them at *Landsberg*, *Innsbruck* and *Munich*, his three principal Towns.
- 1579 37. *William II.* Son of *Albert* the 4. as zealous as his Father in the cause of the Church of *Rome*; therein exceeded very much by
38. *Maximilian*, eldest Son of *William* the 2. who chiefly out of the same zeal sided with *Ferdinand* the 2. in the Wars of Germany, anno 1620, and took upon him the conduct of the Armies of the said Emperor against *Frederick* Count and Elektor *Palatine*, chieftain King of *Bohemia*: in which having done great service to the Imperial and *Romish* Interest, he was by the said *Ferdinand* invested in the Upper *Palatinate*, called anciently (but not more properly than now) the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, together with the Electoral Dignity. This last was conferred at first upon him but for term of life in the Diet at *Regensburg*, 1623. the Electors of *Mentz*, *Savoy* and *Brandenburg* then protesting against it; but afterwards, in the Diet at *Prague*, anno 1628. conferred upon him and his Heirs for ever, to the great prejudice of the Princes of the *Palatine* Family, who by reason of their simultaneous Investiture with the first of their House, are not to be deprived of their Estates and Dignities for the offence of their Fathers; the punishment not being to extend beyond the person of the offender. But notwithstanding their Pretensions and Allegations, the Duke is still possessed of the Title and Dignity, and confirmed therein by the Conclusions of the Treaty of *Munster*, and a new Electorate being to be erected for the *Palatine* Princes.
- The Arms of this Duke are *Lozenges* of 21 pieces in Bend, *Argent* and *Azure*.

8. The Archdukedom of AUSTRIA.

THE Archdukedom of *AUSTRIA*, reckoning in the incorporate Provinces and the Members of it, is bounded on the East with *Hungary* and part of *Sclavonia* on the West with *Bavaria*, and some parts of the *Switzers* and the *Grifons*, on the North with *Bohemia* and *Moravia*, and on the South with *Illyria* and some part of *Friuli* in *Italy*. Within which circuit are contained the several Provinces of *Austria* properly so called, *Siria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, and *Tyrol*. The quality of the whole will be best discerned by the Survey of particulars.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole were the *Norici* of the *Romans*, parted into the lesser Tribes of the *Severci*, *Alamii*, *Ambisanti*, *Ambilici*, and *Ambidani*; subdued by *Drusus*, Son-in-law to *Augustus Caesar*, and made a Province of the Empire. After by *Constantine* the Great divided into *Noricum Mediterraneum*, comprehending the Countries of *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Stiria*, and some parts of *Tyrol*, with the Bithoprick or District of *Salzburg*; of which *Salva* was the Metropolis or Capital City; and *Noricum Ripense*, containing only *Austria*, and those parts of *Bavaria* which lie Eastward of the River *Inn*; extended all along on the Banks of the *Danow*. It was known by no other names while possessed by the *Romans*; from whom being conquered by the *Avars* and other Nations, it gained those several names and appellations specified before.

1. *AUSTRIA* properly so called hath on the East the Kingdom of *Hungary*, on the West *Bavaria*, on the North the *Bohemian* Mountains towards the West, and on the other side the *Tyrie*, which separates it from *Moravia*, on the South *Stiria*, or *Siermark*. It is called by the

the *Dutch* *Ostreich*, and contractedly *Ofrich*, that is to say, the *Eastern Kingdom*, (a part assuming to it self the name of the whole) this being the extreme Province of *East-France*, or the Eastern Kingdom of the *French*, in the barbarous *Latine* of those times called by the name of *Austrasia*, whence the modern *Austria*.

The Air is generally very healthy, and the Earth as fruitful, yielding a plentiful increase without help of Compost or other Soiling, and of so ease a Tillage to the Husbandman, that on the North side of the *Danow* it is ploughed and managed by one Horse only. Exceeding plentiful it is of Grain, and abundant in Wine, with which last it supplieth the defects of *Bavaria*; it hath great store of Saffron, some provision of Salt; and at the foot of the Mountains, not far from *Hainburg*, some Ginger also. Nor wants it Mines of Silver in a large proportion. It is divided by the River *Danow* into the *Lower*, and the *Higher*: that lying on the North side of the River, towards *Bohemia* and *Moravia*; this on the South side, towards *Siermark*.

Places of most importance in the *HIGHER AUSTRIA* are, 1. *Gmund* seated on a Lake called *Gmunder-See*, bordering on *Bavaria*, at the Efflux of the River *Drain*, which ariseth out of it. 2. *Linz*, seated on the Confluence of the said *Drain* with the famous *Danow*; the *Arcade* of *Ptolomy* a Town before the late Wars almost wholly Protestant; but then being put into the hands of the Duke of *Bavaria*, began to warp a little to the other side. 3. *Walgensein*, on the *Ens* or *Anisus*, near the borders of *Siermark*. 4. *Enz*, on the fall of that River into the *Danow*, raised out of the Ruines of *Laureacum* sometimes the Metropolis of *Noricum Ripense*, the Station at that time of the 2. Legion; afterwards an Arch-bishop's See, made such in the first planting of Christianity amongst this people by *S. Severine*. An. 464. On the Reviver whereof (suppressed by the *Huns*, *Bovarians*, and others of the barbarous Nations) by the diligence and preaching of *S. Rupertus*, the Metropolitain dignity was fixt at *Salzburg*. 5. *Weidobrunn*, near the head of the River *Isar*. 6. *Ips*, seated at the Influx of that River, and from thence denominated; the *Gespantium* of *Ptolomy* and other Ancients. 7. *Newfalle*, on a great Lake so named. 8. *Wels*, on the main stream of the *Danubius*. 9. *Hainburg*, on the Confluence thereof, and the River *Markh*. Near to which, at the foot of the Mountains now called *Hainburgberg*, (from the Town adjoining) but antiently named *Mons Cognatus*, is some store of Ginger: a wonderful great rarity for these colder Countries. 10. *Newstat*, first called so from the newness of it, being built of late. 11. *Vienna*, by the *Dutch*, *Wien*, the principal of all these parts, by *Ptolomy* called *Julubona*, *Vindobona*, by *Antoine*; the Station in their times of the tenth Roman Legion; of whose being settled here there are many Monuments both within the City and without. Seated it is on the banks of *Danubius*, well built, both in regard of private and publick Edifices; each private house having such store of Cellarage for all occasions, that as much of the City seems to be under the ground as is above it. The Streets for the most part are spacious, and all paved with Stone, which makes them very clean and sweet in the midst of Winter. It is fenced with a mighty Wall, deep and precipitous Ditches on all parts of it, and many Bulwarks, Towers and Ramparts in all needful places. The Walls hereof were first raised with some part of the money paid into *Leopold* Duke of *Austria*, for the ransom of *K. Richard* the first of *England*, taken Prisoner by him as he passed homewards through this Country from the *Holy Land*: Erected to this day the strongest hold of Christendom against the *Turks*; and proved experimentally so to be in that most notable and famous Repulse here given them

anno 1520. at what time 200000 of them, under the conduct of *Solymann* the Magnificent, besieged this City; but by the valour of *Frederick* the second, Elektor *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, and other German Princes, were gallantly re-lifted and compelled to retire, with the loss of 80000 Soldiers. Nor doth the strength hereof so diminish the Beauties of it, but that it is one of the goodliest Towns in all the Empire; the Residence for these last Ages of the Emperours: made an University by the Emperor *Frederick* the second; revived and much advanced by *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, anno 1356. adorned with an Episcopal See, many magnificent Temples and stately Monasteries: but above all, with a most sumptuous and Princely Palace, wherein the Arch-dukes and Emperours use to keep their Courts; Built by *Ottocar*, King of *Bohemia* during the little time he was Duke of *Austria*. In the middle Ages, as appears by *Otto Frisingensis*, it was called *Fabiana*: but being ruined by the *Huns*, and again re-edified, was first called *Biana*, (the first syllable omitted by mistake or negligence) from whence the *Dutch* *Wien*, and the *Latine* *Vienna*.

We should now take a view of the Towns and Cities in the *LOWER AUSTRIA*; if there were any in it which were worth the looking after. The Country having never been in the hands of the *Romans*, hath no Town of any great Antiquity; nor many new ones built or beautified by the *Austrian* Princes, (since it came into their possession) the only one of note being *Cremis*, or *Cromis*, on the left-hand shore of *Danubius*, going down the waters. 2. *Rezz*, on the River *Tyze*, bordering on *Moravia*; and 3. *Friesburg*, at the foot of the Mountains on the skirts of *Bohemia*.

2. *STIRIA*, or *STIERMARK*, is bounded on the North with *Austria*, on the South with *Carniola* on the East with *Hungary*, and on the West with *Carinthia*; extendeth in length 110 miles, but in breadth not above 60, or thereabout. For the most part mountainous and barren, as being overpread with the Spurs and branches of the *Alps*, and rich only in Minerals. The reason of the name we shall have anon.

Towns of most consequence are, 1. *Gratz*, seated upon the River *Mur*, and the chief of the Province, from which the third Branch of the House of *Austria* (since the time of *Ferdinand* the first) was called of *Gratz*, and had the Government of the Country for their part of that Patrimony. A Town once full of Protestants, and those so strong, that they could neither be forced out, nor hindered from the free exercise of their Religion, till the year 1598. in which *Margaret* the late Queen of *Spain*, Sister to the Archduke *Ferdinand* of *Gratz*, was by the Citizens solemnly entertained; with whom entered so many Sculdiers, that the City was taken, and 14 Ministers of the Reformed Religion presently banished. 2. *Rachelpurg*, and 3. *Pruck* both situate also on the *Mur*. 4. *Stechan*, an Episcopal See, seated on the *Dra* or *Dravus*, a well known River, not far from the fall of the *Mur* into it. 5. *Petaw*, the *Pavonia* of *Antoninus*, seated somewhat higher upon the *Dravus*. 6. *Lambach*, the *Ovilavie* of *Antoninus*, on the *Creys* also. 7. *Pottspurg*, upon the River *Kainach*. 8. *Celau*, the *Celvia* of *Pliny*, of great antiquity, as appears by many *Roman* Inscriptions and other evident signs of Age which are upon it; for this cause thought by some to be that *Celvia*, or built at least out of the Ruines of it, which *Ptolomy* placeth in this Tract. It is situate on the River *Savus*, and hath a large jurisdiction over the adjoining Countries. 9. *Cunifus*, seated in a Marsh on the edge of this Country: a place of great strength both by art and nature; once one of the strongest Bulwarks against the *Turks* in all these parts, and a great eye-sore to them for many years; but taken by them at last anno 1600, and never since regained by the Princes of the House of

Austria, though many times in vain attempted.

The whole Country being mountainous and hilly, generally over-spread with the spurs and branches of the neighbouring *Alps*, and rich only in Minerals, as before was said, was anciently the Inhabitation of the *Taurisci*, (part of the *Norici*) from whom it took the name of *Stiermark*, the *German* calling that a *Stier* which the *Latins* call *Taurus*, or a little Bullock. By which account *Stiermark* is nothing but the Borders or Marches of the *Taurisci*, the utmost Bounds of their possessions; as indeed it was. Laid to *Pannonia* in the distribution of the *Roman* Provinces, it was called *Valeria*, in honour of *Valeria* the Daughter of *Dioclesian*. But once dismembered from the Empire, it fell into the name of *Stiermark*, with reference to the *Taurisci* spoken of before. First made an Earldom in the person of one *Ottacarus*, advanced upon that Honour by the Emperor *Conrad* the 2. *Leopold* the 4. from this *Ottacarus* (two other *Ottacari* intervening) was made Marquess of *Stiermark*; and his Son, *Ottacarus* the 4. was made Duke hereof by the Emperor *Friedrich Barbarossa*. But being without hope of issue, and infected with the incurable distemper of the Leprosy, he sold his Country to *Leopold* the fifth of *Austria*; who bought it with some part of that vast sum of money which he extorted for the Ransom of King *Richard* the first. It hath continued ever since in the possession of this potent Family, but so, that it hath many times been assigned over for the Portion of the younger Brethren: as, namely, to *Leopold* the ninth of that name, one of the younger Sons of *Albert* the Short; *Ernst* the youngest Son of that *Leopold*; and lastly, to *Charles* the youngest Son of *Ferdinand* the first, called *Charles of Graz*, Father of *Ferdinand* the Second, Successor to *Matthias* in *Austria* it fell and all the rest of the Estates incorporate with it: not like hereafter to be so impolitically dismembered from the chief of the House, as in former times.

3. *CARINTHIA*, by the *Dutch* called *Karnten*, is bounded on the East with *Stiermark* and the River *Lavand*, on the West with the District of *Salzburg* and the River *Saltzach*, on the North with *Austria* it self, and on the South with *Carniola*, and the River *Dravum*, which having its original in the skirts hereof, passeth through these *Austrian* Provinces into *Hungary*, and falls at last into the *Danub*. The Country, being situate in the north part of the *Alps*, is generally poor and barren, except only in Minerals; extending all along the *Dravum* for the length of 100 English miles, and 47 in breadth, betwixt that River and the *Mur*, by which it is bounded.

Places of principal note in it are, 1. *S. Veit*, or *Santi Viti*, the chief Town of the Country, situate at the meeting of the *Glan* and the *Winnies*, two small Rivers adorned with a spacious Market-place and a beautiful Conduit. 2. *Villach*, seated on the *Dravum*, in a pleasant Valley encompassed about with Rocks, the Houses thereof adorned on the out-side with painted Stories, very delightful to behold. 3. *Gurck*, a small Town, but an Episcopal See. 4. *Clagenfurt*, on the Lake called *Wera-See*, a well-fenced place, called antiently by the name of *Claudia*. 5. *Wolfsberg*, upon the *Lavand*, so near to *Stiermark*, that it is by some reckoned for a Town thereof. 6. *Luvamund*, on the same River an Episcopal See, situate at the influx of that River into the *Dravum*. 7. *Freisach*, a Town of much antiquity, seated on the *Gleza*. 8. *Spital*, &c. The Story and Succession of the Dukes hereof, before the uniting of it to the House of *Austria* (this Province and *Carniola* making but one Estate between them) we shall see anon.

4. *CARNIOLA*, by the *Dutch* called *Krain*, is environed with *Sclavonia* East, *Friuli* West, *Carinthia* and part of *Stiermark* North, and *Isria* South. It is

in length from East to West, (extended along the River *Savus*) 120 Italian miles, and about 76 in breadth. The *Alps* here being lower and less cold and rocky than more towards the West, maketh it to be the more rich both in Corn and Wine, and other the productions of nature, than it would be otherwise.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Newmarkt*, 2. *Efing*, 3. *Marburg*, 4. *Pogonetz*, and 5. *Saxofcell*, all upon the *Savus*, which, arising in this Country, runneth through the very middle of it, and after falling into the *Danub*. 6. *Laiabach*, seated on a small River of the same name; by *Pliny* called *Pannortus*, but by *Pliny* *Nannortus*, famous in old Mythology for the transport of the Ship called *Argo*, wherein *Jafon* and his Comrades brought the Golden Fleece: who coming out of *Pontus*, or the *Enxine* Sea, took their course up the *Danub*, so into the *Savus* then into this Town; hence carried their Ship over land into the *Adriatick*, and from thence sailed into *Greece*, where they first began the undertaking. 7. *Goritz*, called antiently *Norica*, or seated in the place where *Norica* stood, is situate on the River *Lijfzeta*, an Italian water, which not far off falleth into the *Adriatick*. A Town of so much note, that antiently it was an Earldom, and in the division of the Estate of *Mainard* Earl of *Tyrol*, (to whom it formerly belonged) was given to *Albert* his second Son, with the Stile and Title of Earl of *Goritz*; continuing in his House till the year 1500, when on the death of *Leonard* the last Earl hereof, it descended upon *Maximilian* the first, as next heir unto it; whose Successors, not only in the Estates of *Austria*, but the Empire also, do still retain the Title of Earls of *Goritz* in their usual Stile.

The first Inhabitants of both these Province of *Krain* and *Karnten*, were the *Carni* of *Pliny* and other Antients, who made them part of *Ventia*, the Tenth Legion of *Italy*; but afterwards, in the distribution of the *Roman* Provinces, they were cast into *Noricum* and made a Member of the Diocese of the *Victern* *Ilyricum*, but subject or subordinate rather, to the *Presbiter* *Prætor* of *Italy*. From them not only the *Alps* adjoining had the name of *Carnice*, but these two Countries had the names by which now they go. They were united a long time in the persons of the Dukes of *Karnten*, of whom the first mentioned upon good Record was *Henry*, Son to *Berchbold*, a Nobleman of *Karavaria*, in the time of the Emperor *Orto* the third, by him advanced upon this Honour and Estate; disposed of in succeeding times at the Will of the Emperours, and given from one Family unto another, as their families served them; not fixed in any House till it came to *Henry* the Son of *Engelbert*, President or *Prætor* of *Isria*: in which Family it continued under this *Henry*, and his Brother *Engelbert*, *Ulric* the first, *Henry* the second, *Herman*, and *Ulric* the second, the last Prince hereof, who by his Marriage with *Agnes*, Sister and Heir of *Orto* the second, Duke of *Moravia*, added that Estate to his former Patrimony. But being old, and without Children, he sold his whole Estate to *Ottacarus*, King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Austria*; by whom these Countries were surrendered unto *Rodolphus* of *Halsburg*, on the conclusion of the Peace which was made between them. And although *Rodolphus* gave *Carinthia* to *Mainard* Earl of *Tyrol* (in right of whose Daughter, *Elizabeth* *Albert* the Son of *Rodolph* was possessed of *Austria*;) yet on the death of *Henry* the Son of *Mainard* without issue-male, it fell (according to the Contract) unto *Albert* the Short, younger Son of *Albert*, and Grandchild of *Rodolphus*, continuing ever since in that Family, though not always in the chief House of the Dukes of *Austria*.

The strange and observable Ceremonies with which the Archdukes of *Austria* are acknowledged Dukes of *Carin-*

Carinthia take here out of *Munster*. In the Meadows adjoining to the Town of *S. Veit* a certain Country-man, to whom that Office by inheritance belonged, sitteth on a Marble-stone there being, holding in his right hand a Cow with a black Calf, and in his left hand a Mare as lean as a Rake. Then cometh the new Duke attired in a plain rustic Habit, his Courtiers attending him in their richest Apparel: at whose approach the Country-man above mentioned demandeth, *What is he that so unjustly cometh hitherward?* And the people answer, that it is the future Duke. He again asketh, *whether he be a just Judge, and one that will maintain the liberty of the Country, and sincerity of the Religion.* The people answer, *He will.* Then he asketh, *by what right he will displace him of his Marble-Seat.* To whom the Steward of the new Duke's House replieth, *He shall give thee 60 pence in Silver, the Cattel now standing by thee, the Clothes which he hath at this time on, and thy House shall ever be free from Tax and Tribute.* The fellow upon this taking the Duke by the hand, and bidding him to be a good Prince, giveth him a gentle cuff on the ear, setteth him on the Marble-stone, and taking away the Cattel departeth. This done the new Duke goeth to *S. Veit's* Church and having done his Devotions, putteth of his rustic weeds, and dresseth himself in Clothes befitting a Prince: for such after their Ceremonies he is acknowledged.

The Arms of these Dukes were *Argent*; 3 Lions Leopards *Sable*.

4. *TYROL* is bounded on the East with *Friuli* and *Marca Trivigiana*, by the interposing of which or some parts thereof, disjoined from *Carniola*: on the West with the *Grifons* and some part of *Switzerland*, and on the North with *Bavaria*, and on the South with *Lombardy*. It is extended over the greatest parts of the *Alps Rhætica*, and some part of the *Julia*; yet intermixt with many rich and fruitful Vallies, those especially which lie on the banks of the Inn and the River of *Adige*. Nor are the Hills so void of store unto the Inhabitants, but that they afford good profit of Metals digged out of them, especially of Brass and Silver; which hath have yielded to the Arch-duke 25000 Crowns yearly.

Towns of most note are, 1. *Oenipont*, or *Innsbruck*, so called from a Bridge on the Inn or *Oenus*, which gave denomination to the second branch of *Austria*, descended from *Ferdinand* the second Son of the Emperor *Ferdinand*; the House of *Graz*, issuing from *Charles* the III. Son of that Emperor. Most memorable for the happy Flight of *Charlotte* the V. upon the news that *D. Maurice*, whom he had lately made Elector of *Saxony*, was coming against him with his Forces, which so terrified him that he fled away by Torch-light with some of his followers; the residue of his Court, (most of which were persons of great eminency) trudging in the dark on foot, with the black Guard and the Scullery. The Town hath been many times the Residence of the Dukes of *Austria*; who have here a very Royal and Magnificent Palace. And to say Truth; the Town doth seem to be so honoured amongst pleasant Meadows, spacious Corn-fields, and shady Mountains sweetly scented, the Houses fairly built of Stone, enriched by the Courts of Judicature here settled for all the Country, and provided of a gallant Armory. 2. *Trent*, (*Tridentum* it is called in *Latine*) situate in the Confines of *Germany* and *Italy*; for which cause the Inhabitants speak both Languages: built on the banks of the River *Adige* or *Adis*; is honoured with an Episcopal See; but made more famous by the Council which was there begun by Pope *Paul* the third, *An* 1546, against the *Lutherans*; it was for 22 years together before their meeting dashed by one Pope, and animated by another; as advanced by *Charles* the V. upon worldly Policies, and for

as worldly Policies retarded by the Court of *Rome*: for 18 years after this first Convention of it, at sundry times assembled, suspended, and dissolved: and finally, when fixed here seriously by Pope *Innocent* the fourth, *Anno* 1562, managed with so much art and cunning by the Pappal Party, that nothing was determined among the Prelates and Bishops who were present at it, that the Holy Ghost was sent unto them in a Cloud, bag from *Rome*. The effects of which Council so artificially carried on by the strength of wit, I cannot better describe than in the words of the History of it, which are as followeth. "This Council, desired and procured by godly men, to re-unite the Church which began to be divided, hath so established the Schisma and made the parties so obstinate, that the Discords are irreconcilable, being managed by Princes for Reformation of Ecclesiastical Discipline, hath caused the greatest deformation that ever was since Christianity did begin; and hoped for by the Bishops themselves to regain the Episcopal Authority, for the most part usurped by the Pope, hath made them lose it altogether, bringing them into greater servitude: on the contrary, feared and avoided by the See of *Rome*, as potent means to moderate the exorbitant power thereof, mounted from small beginnings, by divers degrees, to an unlimited excess; it hath so established and confirmed the same over that part which remained subject unto it, that it was never so great nor soundly rooted. So far the words of the History. The next note is, 3. *Falkenstein*, remarkable for Mines of Brass; as 4. *Hall* upon the Inn for Salt-wiches, and 5. *Schwaz*, for the richer Mines of Silver, 6. *Mauls*, near the head of the River *Adige*. 7. *Palten*, upon the borders of *Italy*, by the people thereof called *Bolgano*, and *Bolsano*. 8. *Tyrol*, an ancient Castle, the first Seat of the Earls or Governors hereof, and giving name for that reason to the Country adjoining. 9. *Meran*, neighbouring the old Castle of *Tyrol*, which gave the Title of Dukes to a branch of the *Caroline* Race, descended from *Rathboldus*, a base Son of the Emperor *Arnulph*, possessed of many large Estates in these Alpine Countries, now appertaining to the Princes of the House of *Austria*. From one of the which Dukes called *Orto* of *Moran*, married to *Beatrice*, Heir of the County of *Burgundy*, the Earls of *Burgundy* (since that time) do derive themselves.

The Earls hereof were at the first no other than Provincial Officers: when made Proprietaries, I am yet to seek. The first of whom we have any certainty was *Mainard*, Earl of *Tyrol* and *Goritz*, who died in the year 1258 leaving his Earldoms to that *Mainard* who by *Rodolphus* *Halsburgensis* was infeoffed with the Dukedom of *Karnten*. But *Henry* the second Son of this last *Mainard* dying without issue-male, his Daughter *Margaret* by the consent of all her people, settled her Estate therein on the Sons of *Albert* called the Short; which continues ever since in the House of *Austria*, though sometimes made the Portion and Inheritance of the younger Princes. By *Ferdinand* the first it was given in Appenage to his second Son *Ferdinand*, surnamed of *Innsbruck*, for that reason, who by marrying with *Philippina*, a Burger's Daughter of *Augsburg*, so displaced his Brethren, that, to buy his peace of them, and enjoy his own content with her, it was finally agreed upon amongst them all, that *Tyrol* should not descend upon his Children of that *Vener*. In pursuance whereof, after his decease, *Tyrol* fell to the House of *Graz*; his eldest Son *Charles* being made Marquess of *Burgundy*, and *Andrew* his youngest Cardinal of *Brixia*. Who were the old Inhabitants of the *Roman Austria* we have seen

Orange and of the House Wisbad and Idseim; out of which descended Adolphus Earl of Nassau, chosen Emperor in the year 1292. by the Marriage of Engelbert, the seventh Earl of this House of Dillenburg, with Mary Daughter of Philip, Lord of Breda in Brabant, they came first to be Possessed of Estates in the Netherlands: and by the Marriage of Henry, great Grand-child of this Engelbert, with Claude of Chalon, they got the Principality of Orange in France. A Family as much honoured for the personal Merit of its as any other in Europe, of some of which although we have already given a Catalogue, (in the description and Story of Provence) as Princes of Orange, yet take here the whole Succession of them as

The Counts of NASSAU.

1. Otto, the Son of Henry, and Nephew of Waleran, the first Earl of Nassau of this Line.
- 1150 2. Henry, the Son of Otto, who added Dillenburg, Wisbad, and Idseim, unto his Estate; Grandfather, by Walradus his 2. Son, to Adolphus the Emperor.
3. Otto II. Son of Henry.
4. Henry II. Son of Otto the 2.
5. Otto III. Son of Henry the 2.
6. John, Son of Otto the 3.
- 1362 7. Engelbert, the Son of John by Mary his wife, Daughter and Heir of Philip, Lord of Breda in Brabant, added that Town, with many other fair Estates in the Netherlands, to his former Patrimony.
8. John II. Son of Engelbert, Earl of Nassau, and Lord of Breda, &c.
- 1475 9. John III. Son of John the 2.
- 1516 10. Henry III. Son of John the 3. Knight of the Golden Fleece, married Claude of Chalon, Sister of Philippe Prince of Orange.
- 1536 11. Rene, Son of Henry the 3. and of Claude of Chalon, Successor to his Uncle Philippe in the Principality of Orange, Anno 1530, and to his Father in the Earldom of Nassau, Anno 1536.
- 1544 12. William, the Son of John the 3. by Elizabeth his Wife, Daughter of Henry Landgrave of Hesse, and of Anne Daughter and Heir of Philip Earl of Katzenbogen, reformed the Religion in this Country according to the Lutheran Doctrines.
- 1559 13. William II. Son of William the first succeeded Prince of Orange by the will of Rene his Cousin-german, An. 1544, and Earl of Nassau by the death of his Father, Anno 1559. What else concerns this Prince, we have had before. I only add, that William the first besides this William had three other Sons: that is to say, Count John, the Father of William of Nassau, Governour of West Friesland; Count Ludowick, of great renown in the first Wars of the Netherlands, in the course whereof he lost his life, Anno 1574; and Count Adolphus, slain in the same Wars also, Anno 1568.
- 1584 14. Philip, eldest Son of William the second and of Ann his Wife, Daughter and Heir of Maximilian of Egmond, Earl of Buren, succeeded Earl of Buren on the death of his Mother, Anno 1551, Prince of Orange and Count of Nassau by the death of his Father.
15. Maurice, Son of William the 2. and of Anne his Wife, Daughter of Maurice Duke Ele-

ctor of Saxony. Prince of Orange and Count of Nassau: at the age of 10 years made General of all the Forces of the United Netherlands, which place he managed for the space of 37 years both with great courage and success.

- 1625 16. Henry IV. Brother of Maurice (but by another venter, the Daughter of Gasper Coligny, Admiral of France) Count of Nassau, Prince of Orange, and General of the forces of the States United.
- 1648 17. William III. Son of Henry the 4. Successor to his Father in all his Honours and Commands. A Prince of great hopes and expectations.

The Arms of the Earls of Nassau are quarterly, 1. Azure, a Lion Or, Armed Gules; 2. Or, a Lion-Leopard Gules, Armed and Crowned Azure; 3. Gules, a Fess Argent; and 4. Gules two Leopards Or, Armed and Member of the first.

Bordered on Franconia or Frankenland lieth the County of HANAW, so called from the chief Town of it: in which the places of most note are, 1. Hanau it self, in Latine called *Hannovia*, honoured with a *Schola illustis* also, and much enriched by the trade of Printing, with which they use to furnish annually the Marts of *Frankford*, distant from hence about ten Dutch miles. 2. *Phaffenhofen*, of no note formerly, but like to be remembered in the stories of succeeding times for the great Defeat there given to the Duke of Lorraine, July 31. 1693. who lost his whole Forces, all his Ordnance, Ammunition and Baggage, and which was worst of all, his Country; taken in part from him by the conquering *Suedes*, who followed him close unto his home; & wholly by the French King upon that advantage. 3. *Liechberg*, which gives Title to a second Branch of the House of Hanaw, called the Lord of *Liechberg*. A Family of good esteem, since the time that *Otho* of Hanaw was ennobled with the Title of Earl thereof which was about the year 1392. Before that time of the Empire; and after that advanced unto great Fortunes, by the addition of the Barony of *Mintzeberg* in the person of Philip the first Earl; of the County of *Rhoenick*, in the person of another Philip, the third of that name, great Grandchild of the former Philip; and finally, of the Lordships and Estates of *Liechberg*, accruing to this House by the Marriage of a third Philip, the youngest Son of Reinard the third Earl hereof, with Anne the Daughter and Heir of Ludowick Lord of *Liechberg*; the Title and possession of the second branch of the House of Hanaw, called Lords of *Liechberg* and *Hofensteyn*, and Earls of *Bischofs*; this last being an Estate in Lorraine accruing to them by the Marriage of a fourth Philip, (the fifth in name and order of the House of *Liechberg*) with Margaret sole Daughter and Heir of Ludowick the last Earl thereof.

Between the Countys of Nassau and Hanaw on both sides of the River Low lies the Earldom of *SOLMS*; the first Earl whereof (of whom there is not any good *Cassell*) was Henry honoured with this Title, Anno 1220. But being I find them in the Catalogue of the Counts Imperial made before that time, I must conclude them to be ancients than the date aforesaid; though that be sufficient to ennoble a far greater Family. By the Marriage of Conrad the ninth from Henry, first with *Elisabeth*, one of the Daughters of William of Nassau, Prince of Orange, and after with the Widow of the Earl of Egmond, they came to be of such authority amongst the Netherlands, as to be privileged with a place and suffrage in the Council of the States General: there settled at the present in their greatest honour, especially since the Marriage

age of Henry of Nassau, Prince of Orange, with a Daughter of Earl Conrad by his second Wife, the Mother of William of Nassau, now Prince of Orange, and Husband to the Princess Mary, the eldest Daughter of Great Britain. But besides their Estate there, they are possessed in this Tract of 1. *Bransfeldt*, which gives Title to the first Branch of the House of *Solms*; 2. *Cranberg*, the possession of the second Branch of this Family; and 3. *Solms* on the North-side of the *Low*, the Root of both.

Of the Imperial Cities in this Confederation. the first is *Friburg* called for distinction sake *Friburg in Waterau*, to difference it from another Town of that name in *Brissgov*, situate in the middle of delicious and most fruitful fields, and memorable for the stout resistance which it made to Adolphus of Nassau, at that time Emperor; who, when he could not get it by Force or Famine, obtained it by Fraud, and put to death no less than 40 of the chief Nobility, whom he found in the Castle. So hated he was for that bloody fact, that he was shortly after deprived of the Empire, and slain in fight by *Albert* of Austria, his Competitor. The second of the two is *Wetzlar*, seated on the *Low*, where it meets with the *Dille*, which rising near *Dillenburg*, a Town of the Earl of Nassau's doth here lose its name into the greater. A Town Imperial, confederate with *Friburg* and the Princes before mentioned, for maintaining their common Liberties, and the Religion publicly professed amongst them, being that of the Reformed Churches of *Calvin's* Platform.

10. FRANCONIA.

FRANCONIA, or FRANKENLAND, is bounded on the East with the Upper Palatine, and part of *Volland*, on the West with the Confederates of *Waterau* and part of the *Rhene*, on the North side with *Hessia* and *Thuringia*, on the South with the Palatineate of the *Rhene* and some part of *Schwaben*: So called from the French, *Franci*, or *Francones*, in whose possession it was when they were first known unto the *Romans*; the Residence of their Dukes or Princes in this noble Province appropriating the name unto it. Called also *Francia Orientalis*, to difference it from the Realm of France which lay more towards the West. At that time of a larger extent than it is at the present, comprehending so much of the Lower Palatine as lieth on the same side of the *Rhene*; since subdued from it and made a Province of it self in these later Ages.

The Country, on the out-parts overgrown wholly in a manner with Woods and Forests, and environed almost with Mountains; Parts of the old Hercynian Woods, is within pleasant, plain and fruitful, sufficiently plentiful both of Corn and Wines, but abundantly well stored with Rape and Licoras, and yielding good pasture for Cattel. So that we compare it to a fine piece of Cloth, wrought about with a coarse Lint; or an excellent fine piece of Lawn, with a Canvas Selvage.

Chief Rivers of it are, 1. The *Maine* or *Mœnus*, which running through the middle of it, is received into the *Rhene* below *Frankfurt*. 2. The *Sala*, whence the adjoining French had the name of *Salici*, and *Comrade*, Emperor of the Germans, the surname of *Salicus*. 3. *Radunia*. 4. *Simsa*. 5. *Thero*. 6. *Astus*, &c.

The people of it are ingenious, patient of labour, strong of body, and very industrious, not suffering any to be idle that can earn his living, of what sort soever. The offspring of the ancient French, who, having over-mastered Gaul and the parts adjoining, left here the seminary of their strength, and a stock of their ancient Princes; *Ala-*

comir, Brother of *Pharamond* the first King of the French, governing in these parts as Duke, and leaving the Estate and Title unto his Posterity. The Catalogue of which Princes take in order thus.

The Princes of the FRANKS, and Dukes of FRANCONIA, of the old French Race.

A.Ch.

- 326 1. *Gembaldus*; the Son of *Dagobert*, descended from the old Regal stock of the *Sicambri*, united with other Dutch Nations about 60 or 70 years before, in the name of *Franks*, having subdued those parts which lay towards the River *Mœnus*, became the first Prince of the Eastern *Franks*, or Lord of *Francia Orientalis*.
- 356 2. *Dagobert*, the Son of *Gembaldus*, who added the District of *Triers* unto his Estates.
- 377 3. *Glodowius*, or *Ludowicus*, the Son of *Dagobert*.
- 398 4. *Marcomir*, the Son of *Glodowius*, who extended his Dominion Eastwards towards *Bavaria* and *Bohemia*.
- 402 5. *Pharamond*, or *Waramond*, the Son of *Marcomir*, the first of this Line which took upon himself the Title of King of the French: on the assuming whereof (aiming at matters of more importance) he left *Franconia*, or *East-France*, with the Title of Duke, to his Brother *Marcomir*.
- 419 6. *Marcomir* the Brother of *Pharamond*.
- 423 7. *Prummeffer*, by some called *Prianus* the Son of *Marcomir*.
- 435 8. *Gembaldus* II. the Son of *Prummeffer*.
- 459 9. *Sumus*, the Son of *Gembald* the second.
- 478 10. *Clodomirus*, or *Luitmarus*, the Son of *Sumus*.
- 515 11. *Hugobaldus*, the Son of *Clodomir*, who became a Christian and added *Normes* and *Mœnus* unto his Estates.
- 541 12. *Helenus*, by some called *Hermericus*, a Christian also, who passing over the *Rhene*, subdued that Tract bordering betwixt *Triers* and *Lorraine*, which the Dutch call *West-reich*.
- 571 13. *Gatfridus*, the Son of *Helenus*, a Christian also, but not able to persuade his people to the same belief.
- 595 14. *Gembaldus* III. the Son of *Gatfride*.
- 615 15. *Clodomir* II. the Son of *Gembald* the third.
- 638 16. *Heribert*, the Nephew of *Clodomir* the second.
- 668 17. *Clodowius*, or *Clavis* II. the Cousin-german of *Heribert*.
- 680 18. *Gobertus* the Son of *Clavis* the second.
- 706 19. *Gobertus* II. Son of *Gobert* the first.
- 720 20. *Hetanus*, the Son of *Gobert* the second, the last Duke of *Franconia* of this Line. He dying without issue-male, Anno 740. bequeathed it at his death to *Pepin*, who afterwards was King of France, Father of *Charles* the Great according to a former Contract made between those Princes. And *Charles* no sooner had it in his possession, but he bestowed the greatest part of it on *Ruecland*, the first Bishop of *Wortzburg*, Anno 752. made Bishop of that City by *Boniface*, Arch Bishop of *Magde*, (the first Apostle of this People) but a year before. The Bishops of *Wortzburg* by this Grant were possessed hereof as long as any of the House of *Charles* the Great did possess the Empire. But his po-

Herity failing in the person of *Conrade*, Anno 910. *Otho* the first (who next but one succeeded *Conrade*) invested *Conrade*, Husband to *Luithgardis* his daughter, with this Country, giving him withal the Title of Duke of *Francia*. Four Princes of this House possessed it; that is to say, this *Conrade*, surnamed *Salicus*; and after him three *Henries*, Father, Son, and Nephew, successively enjoying the Imperial dignity, by the names of *Henry* the third, fourth, and fifth. This *Henry*, the last Prince of the male Line of *Conrade*, dying without issue, *Francia* fell to *Frederick Barbarossa*, Duke of *Schwaben*, as next Heir to *Henry* by the Lady *Agnes* his Sister, married to *Frederick* the Antient, Duke of *Schwaben*, the Grandfather of *Barbarossa*. But that House being also extinct in the person of *Conradine*, Anno 1268. and no one Heir pretending to the Rights thereof, the Bishop of *Wurtzburg* challenged it on the former Grant; content to let some great ones have a part of the spoil, that he and his Successors might enjoy the rest. By means whereof it came to be divided betwixt the Bishops of *Wurtzburg*, *Bamberg*, *Meitz*, the Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, (for antiently so much of the *Palatinate* and the Bishoprick of *Meitz* as lay on the Dutch side of the *Rhene* were but parts of *Swartzenburg*, *Henneberg*, and *Hohenlos*, and as many of the Free or Imperial Cities as are seated in it. Thus every one did gather sticks when the great Oak fell: the Title of the Duke of *Francia* remaining notwithstanding to the Bishops of *Wurtzburg*.

1. **WURTZBURG**, the Metropolis of *Francia*, the Seat and Residence of the Bishop, who is Titular Duke thereof, is situate on the *Maine* or *Menus*, in a pleasant Plain environed with Meadows, Gardens, and fruitful Mountains; and very well fenced with Walls, Trenches, Bulwarks, and other Arts of modern Fortification; well peopled, and for the most part handsomely and neatly built. Passing over the Bridge of Free-stone on many large and spacious Arches, you come unto a fair and pompous (though ancient) Castle, the ordinary dwelling of the Bishop; and yet so strong, that the many vain attempts of the Boors and Citizens, apt to pick quarrels with their Prince, made it thought impregnable, to which the situation of it on the top of an Hill added some advantage: but it proved otherwise when besieged by the King of *Sweden*, Anno 1631. who after a short, but stout resistance took it by assault. Other Towns of most note which belong to the Bishops of *Wurtzburg* are, 2. *Forcheim*, where it is said that *Pontius Pilate* was born, 3. *Gemund*, at the meeting of the *Maine* and the *Salza*, or *Sala*, 4. *Bretta* upon the *Salza* or *Sala*; not far from *Gemund*; remarkable enough for nothing else, for being the Birth-place of *Melancthon* that renowned Scholar, the Phoenix of *Germany*, as some call him, and that not unjustly. 5. *Chromach*. 6. *Staffelsheim*. 7. *Hockstadt*; of which little memorable.

But to return unto the Bishop or chief Lord of all. He is called in the refined *Latine* of those times *Herbipolitanus*, but commonly *Wurtzburgensis*; differing in sound, but not in sense: for *Wurtzburg* is no other than a Town of *Wurtz*, situate among plants and Gardens, as before is said; and *Herbipolitanus*, made up out of several languages, doth signify no more than a City of Herbs. By whom the Episcopal See was here first erected, and how the Bishops hereof came to be entituled unto their Estates hath been shewn already. The manner how the new Bishop is ascertained, and the old interred, may be worth our knowledge. On the decease of the former Bishop, the Lord Elect, attended with a great train of horse, is to make his entrance. As soon as he comes within the Gates, he a-

lights of his horse, and putteth off his Robes, and being attired in a poor and deplorable Habit, begitt about with a Rope, bare-headed also and bare-footed, he is conducted by the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Castell*, *Werthaim*, and *Rheineck*, to *S. Saviour's* Church, being his Cathedral. The Dean and Canons there meeting him, ask him what he would have: to which he modestly replieth, that, though unworthy, he is come to discharge the Office unto which he is called. Then the Dean thus, admit thee in the name of this Chapter, committing to thy care this Church of *Saint Saviour's*, and the Dukedom thereunto belonging, in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost. Which done, he putteth on his Episcopal Habit, sayeth Mass, and from thence passeth to the Castle, where he gives entertainment to all the Company. The living Bishop thus invested, proceed we next to the Burial of the dead: whose Body imbowed, is kept in the Chapel of his Castle, his Heart preserved in a vessel of Glass. The next day he is carried to the Monastery of *Saint James*, holding a Crozier-Staff in his right hand, and a Sword in his left; buried with them the next day after in the Church of *S. Saviour*. As for the Revenue of the Bishop, they must needs be great; The Bishop hereof in the time of *Charles* the fifth compounding for his peace with *Albert*, Marquess of *Brandenburg*, at the price of 220000 Crowns in ready money, and entering into a Bond to pay all his Debts, which amounted 350000 Crowns more. By which we may partly guess at the richness of his Exchequer, and partly at the greatness of his Intrado.

2. The second great Lord of *Francia* is the Bishop of *BAMBERG*, a City seated on the *Maine*, not far from *Wurtzburg*, the little River *Kednitz* falling there into it: supported by *Mercator* to be the *Brainorium* of *Ptolomy*, and to have took this new name from the Hill *Baba* (so called from *Baba* Daughter of *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*, and Wife of *Albert* once Earl hereof) upon which it is situate, the right name being *Rabenberg* remember that *Berg* in Dutch signifieth a Hill) and contracted *Bamberg*. A City delightably seated amongst Mountains and pleasant Gardens, and in a soil exceeding fruitful of all necessaries, and yielding *Lycoras* in great plenty: the Birth place of *Joachim Camerarius*, one of the great Lights of *Germany*; and a See Episcopalian, the Bishop of which is exempt from the power of the Metropolitan, subject immediately to the Pope, and Lord of many fair Towns and Territories in this Country; But much diminished since the time of *Charles* the fifth: the Bishoprick thereof then being given to Marquess *Albert*, above mentioned, for a Cession from Arms, Anno 1530. no less than 60 of his Lordships, (most of which fall unto the share of the Marquess of *Onaldisbach*) besides the Tutelage or Guardianship of his Wars and Clients. Of those which are remaining the hands of the Bishops the principal are, 1. *Bravingiac*, 3. *Schleisslar*.

3. The third great Lord to be considered is the Marquess of *ONALDSBACH*, or *Onsbach*, who is Master of no small part of this Country; but his Estate (as those of the other German Princes) confused and intermixed with his Neighbours. His chief Towns: 1. *Onaldisbach*, or *Onsbach*, the usual Residence of these Marquesses, and the Birth place of most of their Children. *Halbrum*, on the edge of *Wirttemberg*, walled in about the year 1085. and honoured with some publick Schools there founded by Marquess *George-Frederick*, Anno 1482. 3. *Plenstet*, not far from *Nuremberg*. Such places as they held in *Votland*, we shall meet with there.

4. These Marquesses are of the puissant Family of *Brandenburg*, by whom this fair Estate was wrestled from the female Heirs of *Wolframus*, the last Lord hereof. The first

first who did enjoy this Estate and Title was Marquess *George-Frederick*, the Son of *Albert* Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*, called the *Achilles* of *Germany*, the Father of *Albert* the first Duke of *Prussia*, and of *George* the first Marquess of *Jagendorff*, and the Grandfather of that Marquess *Albert* who in the days of *Charles* the fifth so harassed this Country. But his Male-issue by *Cosmin* his eldest Son failing in that *Albert*, Anno 1537 it returned to the Electoral House; and by *Sigismund*, a late Elector was given to *Joseph Ernestus*, one of his younger Brethren, who by the Princes of the Union for defence of the *Palatine* was made chief Commander of their Forces, Anno 1620. A charge in which it was supposed that he carried himself neither so faithfully nor so valiantly as he should have done, being much condemned for suffering *Spinola* with his Army to pass by unopposed, when he had all advantages that could be wished for to impede his march: the greatest part of the *Palatinate* being lost immediately upon that Neglect, and by degrees the rest of the United Princes either taken off from their engagement, or ruined for adhering to it with too great a constancy. To him succeeded his Son *Christian*, now possessed hereof.

As for the other secular Princes which have any considerable Estates in this Country, they are the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Hohenlos*, *Rheineck*, *Castell*, *Werthaim*, *Harpach*, and *Swartzenburg*, together with the Lords of *Limburg* and *Rheineck*; all of them named so from the chief Town of their Estates, and all these Towns enriched with some suitable Territory. Of these the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Rheineck*, *Castell*, and *Werthaim*, are Homagers to the Bishop of *Wurtzburg*, and are to do him service at his Intronization; the Earldom of *Rheineck* being now united to that of *Hannau*, as was shewn before, and that of *Henneberg* most famous, in that one of the Earls hereof was Father of that incredible increase of Children (as many as there be days in the year) produced at one Birth by the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, Sister of *William* Earl of *Holland*, and King of the *Romans*. A Family of as great Antiquity as most in *Germany* fetching their Pedigree as high as to *Charles* the Great, without help of the *Heralds*. But they of greatest power and Parentage amongst them are the Earls of *Swartzenburg*, deriving themselves from one *Wittikindus* of the House of *Saxony*; who fighting for his Country against the *French*, Anno 779, was taken prisoner, carried into *France*, and there baptized, at the perswasion of *Lewis* the Godly, Son of *Charles* the Great. *Wittikindus*, his Son and Successor, being baptized at the same time also by the name of *Charles*, was the first Earl of *Swartzenburg*, a Castle of his own building on the edge of *Thuringia*, Anno 796, whose posterity do still hold the same, but much improved in their Estates by Marriages and other accretments. A race of Princes which have yielded many of great influence in the affairs of *Germany*: amongst them *Guntber* Earl of *Swartzenburg*, elected Emperor of the *Romans* against *Charles* the fourth, by *Rodolph* Elector *Palatine*, *Ericus* Duke of *Saxony*, *Ludowick* Marquess of *Brandenburg*, and *Henry* Archbishop of *Meitz*. By which last he was solemnly inaugurated at *Aren* (or *Aquis-grave*) Anno 1349. But he died unworthily poisoned by his Competitor, though he had not of it: yet he was made so weak and unfit for action, that he was forced to surrender his pretensions to his mortal enemy, receiving in compensation for his charges 20000 marks in Silver, and some Towns in *Thuringia*.

Of the Imperial Cities, which share amongst them the remainders of *Frankland*, the principal are, 1. *Frankford* on the *Maine*, so called from its situation on the River *Maine*, to difference it from *Frankford* in the

Country of *Brandenburg*. It is divided by the River into two parts, joined together by a Bridge of Stone: the left part, situate on the right-hand shore of the River, being called *Saxon-Weimar*; the greater part, properly called *Frankford*; seated on the other. Both are under one Magistrate, and both together make up a fair, rich, populous, and well traded Town; both of great riches and repute by reason of the famous *Marts* here held in the midst of *Lent* and *September* yearly, and the Election of the Emperor or King of the *Romans*, as occasion is. The City is of a round form, compassed with a double Wall, brautified with some Walks without the Town on the banks of the River, amongst Vineyards, Meadows, and sweet Groves: called thus as some say, from *Francus* the Son of *Marcus*, supposed to be the Founder of it; or a *Francorum vado*, as the *Foard* of the *Franks*, before the building of the Bridge. 2. *Schweinfurt*, on the *Maine* also, in a fruitful Soil. 3. *Rosenburg*, on the River *Tauber*. 4. *Winfheim*. Here is also the Town of 5. *Coburg*, which belongeth to the House of *Saxony*, and gives Title to some of the younger Princes of it, called from hence Dukes of *Saxon-Coburg*. And hereto may be added 6. the fair City of *Nuremberg*, conceived by most to be within the Upper *Palatinate*; but by the Emperor *Maximilian* made a member of the Circle of *Francia*, in regard most of the Estates and Possessions of it lie within this Country. Of which indeed they have so plentiful a share, that when *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony* and his Confederates had driven *Charles* the fifth out of *Germany*, Marquess *Albert*, before mentioned, (whose Sword was his best Revenue) picking a quarrel with this City, burnt no less than an hundred Villages belonging to it, seventy Mannors and Farm-houses appertaining to the wealthier Citizens, 3500 Acres of their Wood; and after all this havoc made of their Estate, compelled them to compound with him for 200000 Crowns in Money, and six pieces of Ordnance. But being the City it felt themselves rather to belong to the other *Palatinate*, we shall there meet with it.

Amongst these Prelates, Princes, and Imperial Cities is the great Dukedom of *Francia* at this time divided; the Title still remaining in the Bishop of *Wurtzburg*, and some part of the Country: but both the Country and the Title of Duke of *Francia* not long since otherwise disposed of. For the *Swedes* having taken *Wurtzburg* Anno 1631, as before is said, together with the City of *Bamberg*, and all the Towns and Territories appertaining to them, conferred them upon *Bernard* Duke of *Saxon-Weimar*, with the style and Title of Duke of *Francia*. He was inaugurated therein in the Cathedral Church of *Wurtzburg*, July 19, 1633. the Nobility and Gentry of the Country doing Homage to him, and all the Magistrates and Officers of the several Cities taking the Oaths of Allegiance; the new Duke also making Oath, that he would carefully maintain them in their Rights and Privileges. In the solemnities of which day, the first great Gun discharged in the way of Triumph broke in the going off, without any hurt done, but the wounding of one Soldier only. An Omen that all this Solemn Act would prove but a Pageant, and break in pieces at the first giving fire unto it. And so accordingly it did: the Victory at *Norlingen*, which followed not long after this, putting the *Nobles* once more into their possessions, and leaving nothing to the new Duke but an hungry Title. And therefore leaving both the old and new titular Dukes, we will here add the Catalogue of those who were Dukes indeed, and had, together with the Title, the full Possession of the Country.

Dukes of FRANCONIA of the Dutch or German Race.

- 974 1. *Conradus*, surnamed *Salicus*, created Duke of *Franconia* by *Otto* the first, whose Daughter *Luigardis* he had married: after the death of *Henry* the second elected Emperor, by the name of *Conrad* the second, anno 1025.
- 1040 2. *Henry*, the Son of *Conrad*, Duke of *Franconia* and Emperor, by the name of *Henry* the third.
- 1056 3. *Henry II.* of *Franconia* and *IV.* of the Empire.
- 1106 4. *Henry III.* of *Franconia*, and *V.* of the Empire.
- 1125 5. *Frederick II.* (surnamed *Barbarossa*) Duke of *Schwaben*, Nephew of *Frederick* the Ancient, Duke of *Suevia*, and of *Agnes* his Wife, the Sister and next Heir of *Henry*, succeeded in the Empire after the death of *Conrad* the 3. his Uncle, anno 1153.
- 1130 6. *Frederick II.* the second Son of *Barbarossa*, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*.
7. *Conrad II.* Brother of *Frederick* the second succeeded in both Estates.
8. *Philip*, the younger Brother of *Conrad*, succeeded in both Dukedoms after his decease, and on the death of *Henry* the sixth his eldest Brother was elected Emperor, anno 1198.
- 1207 9. *Frederick III.* of *Franconia*, and the *V.* of *Suevia*, Son of the Emperor *Henry* the sixth, whom he succeeded in the Kingdom of *Naples* and *Sicily*, anno 1202, and on the death of *Otto* the fourth, anno 1212, was elected Emperor, of that name the second.
- 1250 10. *Conrad III.* of *Franconia*, the *II.* of *Schwaben*, and the *IV.* of the Empire, the Son of *Frederick* the third, whom he succeeded in all his Titles and Estates.
- 1254 11. *Conradine*, Son of *Conrad* the third, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*, dispossessed of his Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily* by *Manfred* the base Brother of his Father, and finally beheaded by *Charles* of *Anjou*, who succeeded *Manfred* in those Kingdoms, anno 1268. After whose death this Royal House being quite extinguished, the Bishop of *Wurtzburg* did again resume the Title of Duke of *Franconia*; content to let some of the greater Lords and Prelates, which lived near unto him, to share in the possession of it, as before was noted.

The Arms of the ancient Dukes of *Franconia*, before they were incorporated with the House *Schwaben*, were *Azure*, a Lion Barry of eight pieces *Argent* and *Gules*, crowned *Or*: by which, why it is now born by the Lant-graves of *Hassia*, we shall tell you there.

11. WIRTEMBERG; and 12. BADEN.

These I have joined together, though distinct Estates, because both of them were taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*, erected both about one time, and lie very close, in a round together: bounded upon the East and South with *Schwaben* properly so called, on the North with the Lower *Palatinate*, on the West with the *Rhene*, and that part of *Schwaben* which is called *Brigow*, parted asunder by the mountainous ridge of Hills

called *Swartzenwald*; *Wirttemberg* lying on the East-side thereof, and *Baden* betwixt it and the *Rhene*.

And first for *WIRTEMBERG*. The Air thereof is very healthy, neither too hot in Summer, nor too cold in Winter: the Soil near *Swartzenwald* lying on the West, and the *Alps* of *Suevia* on the South, of it fell barren and unprofitable; but in some places, by the industry of the Plough-man, made to yield good Corn. But in the middle parts thereof, which lie towards the *Neccar*, little inferior for fruitfulness both of Corn and Wine unto any in *Germany*, besides some Silver-mines near *Wiltberg*, and about *Puehlach*, a small Town, such abundance of Brast, that the Foundations of the Houses seem to be laid upon it. It took this name from the Cattle of *Wirttemberg*, the first Seat of the Princes of it; as that did from the *Innegeri*, inhabiting the Dutch side of the *Rhene*; or from the *Viriburgi*, as *Beatus Rhenanus* thinketh, mentioned by *Tybellius Gallicus* in the life of *Aurelianus*; to which the word *Berg*, being added for a termination, made it first *Tuergerberg*, or *Virtiburg*, and after *Wirttemberg*.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Smegard*, the Duke's Seat, a fair, rich and populous Town, and the chief of the Dukedom; seated in a pleasant and fruitful Plain, not far from the *Neccar*, yielding a quantity of Wine almost incredible. 2. *Tubingen*, on both sides of the *Neccar*, united into one with a fair Stone-bridge. A Town well built, situate in a very rich Soil, and finally adorned with an University here founded by *Eberhard* the first Duke of *Wirttemberg*, anno 1477, in which *Lennardus Fuchsius* that great Herbalist and Restaurator of Physick, was once a Professor of that Faculty. 3. *Cannst*, upon the *Neccar* also, not far from which, on the Top of an Hill, stands the old Castle of *Wirttemberg* before mentioned. 4. *Wiltberg*, of great esteem for its Mines of Silver. 5. *Archingen*, inhabited chiefly by Jews. 6. *Schwandorf*, upon the *Rheims*, much resorted to by reason of the hot Baths there; as is also 7. *Nemburg*, on the *Entz*. 8. *Haidensheim*, 9. *Greiningen*, 10. *Marbach*; of which little memorable. There are also within the limits of this Dukedom many Towns Imperial. As 1. *Wimpfen*, and 2. *Hailbrun*, on the *Neccar* also. 3. *Gopping*, upon the River *Fils*. 4. *Weil*. 5. *Reutlingen*, on the *Neccar* also, made Imperial, by *Frederick* the 2. anno 1240, otherwise of no great note but for the Paper-mills. 6. *Essling*.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the *Charim* of *Pubny*, and part of the *Innegeri* spoken of before. It was made subject with the rest of these parts to the *Almans*, after to the *French*, and finally a member of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*. From which dismembered in the time of *Henry 4.* after the dangerous War raised against him by Duke *Rodolphus*, advanced by the practice of Pope *Hildebrand* to the Throne Imperial, it came to have Princes of its own: the first Earl being *Conrad*, in the year 1100, by the grace and favour of the said Emperor *Henry*. Increased by the addition of the Earldom of *Mombelgard* and many other Accruments, it was made a Dukedom in the person of *Eberhard* the 6. by *Maximilian* the 1. anno 1495. The Earls and Dukes follow thus in order.

The Earls and Dukes of WIRTEMBERG.

- 1100 1. *Conrad*, the first Earl.
2. *Ulric*, Son of *Conrad*.
3. *John* Son of *Ulric*.
4. *Lewis*, Son of *John*.
5. *Henry*, Son of *Lewis*.
6. *Eberhard*, Son of *Henry*.
7. *Ulric II.* Son of *Eberhard*.
8. *Eberhard II.* Son of *Ulric*.
1225 9. *Ulric III.* Son of *Eberhard*.

1344. 10

- 1344 10. *Eberhard III.* Son of *Ulric*.
1394 11. *Ulric IV* Son of *Eberhard*.
12. *Eberhard IV.* Son of *Ulric*.
1417 13. *Eberhard V.* Son of *Eberhard* the 4. by his Marriage with *Henrica*, or *Henrietta*, Daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Mombelgard*, added that Earldom to his House.
1419 14. *Lewis* or *Lodovick II.* Son of *Eberhard* the 5.
1456 15. *Eberhard VI.* Son of *Lewis*, Founder of the University of *Tubingen*, created by *Maximilian* the first, the first Duke of *Wirttemberg*, Anno 1495. He deceased without Issue, Anno 1496.
1496 16. *Eberhard VII.* Son of *Ulric* the younger Brother of *Lewis* the 2. succeeded on the death of *Eberhard* his Cousin-german.
1504 17. *Henry II.* the Brother of *Eberhard* the 7.
1519 11. *Ulric V.* Son of *Henry 2.* expelled out of his Dukedom by *Charles* the 5. for the lack of *Reutling* an Imperial City, and his Estate conferred on *Ferdinand* of *Austria*, the Brother of *Charles*; but after 15 years Exile, restored to his Dukedom by *Philip* Landgrave of *Hessia*, he Reformed Religion, and liberally endowed the University of *Tubingen*. 31.
1540 19. *Christopher*, the Son of *Ulric* the 5. a follower of his Father's steps in Reformation of the Church, and advancement of Learning.
1568 20. *Ludovick* or *Lewis III.* Son of *Christopher*.
21. *Frederick*, Son of *George* Earl of *Mombelgard*, the Brother of *Ulric* the 5. made Knight of the Garter by Queen *Elizabeth*, Anno 1597.
22. *John-Frederick*, Son of *Frederick* the first.
23. *John Eberhard*, eldest Son of the former Duke, now living, Anno 1648.

The Revenues of this Duke are supposed to be equal unto those of the Electors *Palatine*, spoken of before; and were it not for the Silver-mines in *Saxony*, little inferior to those of that Duke. But for provisions of War, (excepting Powder only) he is meanly furnished. A main defect, considering the ill terms he stands in with the Imperial Cities, betwixt whom and the House of *Wirttemberg* there have been always open Wars, or secret Jealousies.

His Arms are *Or*, 3. Attiers of a Stag born *Pallic-barrie*, *Sable*.

As for the Marquitate of *BADEN* lying on the West-side of *Swartzenwald*; betwixt it and the *Rhene*, it is for the most part, except towards those Woods, a very pleasant and fruitful Country, and much of the same nature with the rest of *Wirttemberg*; so called from *Baden*, a neat Town, where the Marquess keeps his Seat in Winter; and that so named from the hot Baths there, as is also *Baden* (called for distinction sake, the *Upper Baden* (amongst the *Switzers*; in which respect the City of *Bath* in *Switzerland* had anciently the name of *Caer-Baden* also. Of these Baths it is supposed that there are in this City at least 300, profitable for many Diseases and exulcerate Sores, drawing a great resort of people from the neighbouring Countries. This is the chief Town of this Marquitate, from whence the Princes have the Title of Marquesses of *Baden*. The next to this is, 2. *Durlach*, or *Turlach*, which gives Title to a second Branch of this House; called also sometimes Marquesses of *Durlach* only, but commonly the Marquesses of *Baden Durlach*. 3. *Liebenzell*, amongst the Hills of *Swartzenwald*, famous for hot medicinal Springs. 4. *Liechtenau*, re-

markable for a Monastery, the Burial-place of the first Marquesses. 5. *Gersbach*, in the very heart of that Mountainous tract. 6. *Flortzheim*, adjoining to the Wood *Hagenfels*, a branch of *Swartzenwald*. 7. *Reuten*. 8. *Badenweiler*, and 9. *Siefenberg*, all seated in the Upper *Baden*, being that part hereof which lies next to *Brigow*. 10. *Milberg*, beautified with a fair Cattle, the usual Retiring-place of these Princes in the heats of Summer.

This Marquitate, being also taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*, was founded in the person of *Herman* of *Verona* in *Italy*, who deserving well of the Emperor *Henry V.* was by him settled in some Lands about these parts, Anno 1120. and after marrying with the Daughter of an Earl of *Baden*, was by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* created the first Marquess of *Baden*, Anno 1155. The Estate was after much encreased by the addition of the Earldom of *Hochberg* and the Appendices thereof in *Schwaben*; into which *Christopher* the 13 Marquess hereof, succeeded on the death of his Cousin *Philip*, the last Earl of *Hochberg*; both Princes descending originally from two Brothers; of which the eldest, in right of the Lady *Judith* his Wife, was Earl of *Hochberg*; the second by the favour of the said *Frederick Barbarossa*, was made Marquess of *Baden*. They were Masters also of many fair Estates in the Lower *Palatinate*; which the *Palatines* of the *Rhene* (as was there said) are since possessed of. Other particulars shall be shewn (if occasion be) in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Marquesses of BADEN.

- 1153 1. *Herman*, the first Marquess.
2. *Herman II.*
3. *Herman III.*
4. *Herman IV.*
1281 5. *Rodolph*, Son of *Herman* the 4.
1295 6. *Herman V.* Son of *Rodolph*.
7. *Rodolph II.* Son of *Herman* the 5.
1356 8. *Frederick*, Son of *Rodolph* the 2.
9. *Rodolph III.* Son of *Frederick*.
1372 10. *Bernard*, Son of *Rodolph* the 3.
1431 11. *James*, Son of *Bernard*.
1453 12. *Charles* Son of *James*; the first of these Marquesses which was possessed of the County of *Spanheim* in the Lower *Palatinate*, descending on this House by *Maud* Wife of *Rodolph* the 2.
1475 13. *Christopher*, Son of *Charles*, who after the death of *Philip*, the last Marquess of *Hochberg*, succeeded also in that Estate.
1519 14. *Bernard* Son of *Christopher*; his Brother *Ernest* succeeding in that of *Hochberg*.
15. *Christopher II.* Son of *Bernard*; his elder Brother *Philibert* and *Philip* Son of *Philibert*, dying in the life of *Bernard*.
16. *Edward* Son of *Christopher* intending the sale of his Estate to pay his Debts, was forcibly deprived of all by
17. *Ernest*, Marquess of *Hochberg*, Nephew of *Ernest* above mentioned; who by that means not only preserved the Marquitate of *Baden*, but united that of *Hochberg* again unto it, and removed his ordinary seat to *Durlach*.
18. *George*, Brother of *Ernest*, Marquess of *Baden* and *Hochberg*.
19. *Frederick*, the Son of *George*, born in the year 1594. succeeded his Father in both Estates; and (if living) hath a Son called also *Frederick*, to enjoy them after his decease.

13. NORTH

13. NORTHGOIA, or the UPPER PALATINATE.

THE County of NORTHGOIA, so called from the Northern situation of it in regard of *Bavaria*, is sometimes also called the *Palatinate of Bavaria*, because anciently belonging to that Estate; but generally *Ober Pfaltz*, or the upper *Palatinate*, to distinguish it from the *Lower*. It is bounded on the East with *Bohemia*, on the West with *Franconia* and part of *Schwaben*, on the North with *Voiland*, and on the South with *Bavaria*. The Country is for the most part somewhat rough and mountainous, rich principally in Mines of Iron, which it yieldeth in most places, and some of Silver about *Amberg*; extended from *Lainburg*, to the edge of *Bohemia*, 80 miles; and from the Hill *Fichtelberg* in the edge of *Voiland*, to *Weissenburg* near the banks of the *Danow*, 68 miles.

Conspicuous things touching this Province are chiefly two. First, that out of the Mountain *Fichtelberg*, quarters mentioned arise 4 Rivers running to the four Corners of the world; that is to say, the *Egra* towards the East, the *Albia* or *Adana* towards the West, the *Sala* or *Salza* to the North, and the *Nab* or *Nabum* to the South; so that it may be probably thought to be the highest Hill in all Germany. 2. That in the South-west corner of it are two little Rivers; the one called *Altmul*, which falleth into the *Danow*, and the other *Rednitz*, which runs into the *Albia*; and finally into the *Rhene*; between the Heads whereof, being not much distant, *Charles* the Great once began to dig a Channel, for making a passage out of the *Rhene* into the *Danow*. In which work he employed many thousand men. But partly by excess of Rain, and partly by some strange Affrightments, (all which he did in the day being undone in the night) he was fain to desert. Some parts of the intended Water-course are to be seen near *Weissenburg*, spoken of before, which standeth in the middle-way between both Rivers.

Chief places of this Country which belong to the Electoral Family are, 1. *Amberg*, on the River *Vils*, enriched chiefly by the commodity of Iron, digged out of the neighbouring Hills, here fashioned into all sorts of Utensils and hence conveyed in great abundance to the parts adjoining; but prouder of its Mines of Silver than those veins of Iron, according to the Prince's Coeffers 60000 Crowns yearly. 2. *Nanheim*, in the midst of a fruitful Valley, near a Wood of Juniper. 3. *Newburg*, upon the River *Swartzbach* which gives Title to the second branch of the *Palatine* House, called the Counts *Palatines of Newburg*, Competitors with the Marquesses of *Brandenburg* for the whole Dukedom of *Cleveland*, and finally possessed of *Gulick* and the Members of it. 4. *Kelheim*, at the meeting of the *Danow* with the River *Altmul*. 5. *Cham*, on the edge of *Bohemia*, near the River *Regen*; which passing thence falleth into the *Danow* near the City of *Regensburg*. 6. *Casfel*, where the Electors for the most part hold their Residence, when they are in this Country. 7. *Auerbach*, 8. *Salzbach*, 9. *Weiden*, 10. *Newmarkt*.

There are in this Country some Towns belonging to the Langraves of *Luchenberg*, one of the four old Langraves of the Empire; the other three being *Duringen*, *Halsla* and *Alsfia*: so called from *Luchenberg*, an old Castle, situate on a lofty Hill not far from *Pfeim*, the chief Town and ordinary Seat of these Langraves, seated on the River *Nab*, 2. *Gransfelden*, 3. *Schembessen*, an ordinary palls and baiting place in the way from *Prague* to *Nuremberg*.

But the chief City of this Country, and perhaps of

Germany, is *Nuremberg* it self, *Norimberga* in the modern, but *Norica* in the ancient *Latine*. So called from an ancient Castle called *Castrum Noricum* the Ruines of which are still remaining, encompassed with a deep, but dry Ditch, now of no use nor ornament to the City at all, but revered for its antiquity, as the Mother of *Nuremberg*. The Castle is said by some to be built in the time of *Claudius Caesar*. More probably by some of the *Narici*, who terrified with the Invasion of *Attila*, in the Decline and wane of the *Roman* Empire, relinquished *Bavaria*, where before they dwelt and passed over the *Danow*, there to provide themselves of a safer dwelling. Conquered by the *Besuarians*, it became, together with their Conquerors, subject to the *French*. In the time of *Lewis* the 3. It became Imperial, and was walled and fortified during the reign of *Charles* the 4. From that time it increased to fast both in Wealth and Beauty, that it is counted the greatest and wealthiest City in all this Continent, there being reckoned in it 11 Stone-bridges for Passage over the *Pegnitz*, which runneth through it, 12 Conduits of fresh water, 13 common Baths, 16 publick Wells, and 128 Streets. Of figure it is square, environed with a tripple Wall of 8 miles in circuit, and plentifully stored with all sorts of Ammunition. The Marquesses of *Brandenburg* in former times were the Burgraves of itsan Office of great power and jurisdiction, but fold for a good summe of money by *Frederick* the 3. Anno 13.14. *Albert* his Son, attempting to recover the old Office again, besieged the Town, having no less than 17 Princes on his side, and yet could not force it: that for an Argument of its strength. A profound evidence of the Wealth of it we have seen before, in that great Ranfom made of their Towns and Villages, and the great Ranfom they were put to by another *Albert* spoken of in *Franconia*. And it adds much unto the commendation of the people that this great Wealth is gotten by their indefatigable Industry; the Town being situate on a barren and sandy Soil, and destitute of those Helps which commonly navigable Rivers brings unto a City; these great Possessions which belongs unto the State herof being gotten out of the fire, as the saying is, by their continual working of Iron and other Manufactures, occasioning a resort hither of Merchants from all parts of Germany.

Other Towns of chief note within this *Palatinate* are, 1. *Altziff*, where the *Nurembergs* founded an University for the study of all Arts and Sciences, anno 1575. 2. *Herfpruck*, a great Town and well seated, belonging to the State of *Nuremberg* also. 3. *Eysfel*, (*Aischfeldum* in the *Latine*) an Episcopal See, situate on the River *Altmul*. 4. *Weissenburg*, an Imperial City on the Borders of *Schwaben*. Here was also in this Province (if not still remaining) the Town *Winsberg*, memorable for the Piety and gallantry of the Women of it. For the Town being besieged and distressed by the Emperor *Comrade* the 3. for siding against him with the *Guelphs* then Dukes of *Bavaria*, no other conditions could be gotten at the surrender of it, but that the Women might have leave to depart in safety, and carry all their Jewels with them. Which being obtained, they took their Husbands on their backs and so left the Town: and by that noble act moved the affections and compassions of the angry Prince, that he spared the Town, and gave them all a general Pardon. It is said by some, that the odious names of *Guelphs* and *Gibelines* (with which the peace of Christendom was so long distracted) took their beginning at this Siege, the first fo called from *Guelpho*, Brother of *Henry* the Proud, Duke of *Bavaria*, in whose cause they fought; the other from *Veiling* (the French and *Italians* speak it *Gueiling*) a Town of *Franckenia*, in which that Emperor was born. Another original here-

of we had in our description of the State of *Florence*: but I take this to be the more probable of the two; though neither certain.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Narici* of *Tacitus*. Afterwards some of the *Norici* fearful or grown impatient of the *Roman* yoke, came over the *Danubius* to them, and built that famous Castle called *Castrum Noricum*, where now stands *Nuremberg*. Overpowered by the *Boii* and uniting with them in the name of *Boiarians*, they followed the fortunes of *Bavaria*, till the year 1339, when *Ludovick* the Emperor and Duke of *Bavaria*, on the partition of the Estate betwixt him and *Rodolphus* his elder Brother, relinquished it for ever to the House of the *Palatines*. Returned for the present to the Dukes of *Bavaria*, on whom it was conferred, together with the Electoral dignity, by the Emperor *Ferdinand* the 2. in recompence of the great service done him by *Maximilian* the now Duke thereof in the war of *Bohemia*, and the great charge he had been at in the reduction of that Kingdom to the House of *Austria*. How long it will continue thus is known only to God, the disposer of all things. Yet neither the *Bavarians* formerly, nor the *Palatines* since, have been so fully Masters of it, but that the Langrave of *Luchenberg* and the City of *Nuremberg* have put in for a share.

The Arms of which great and puissant City are *Azure*, an Harpy displayed, crowned, crined and armed, Or.

14. The Kingdom of BOHEMIA.

THE Kingdom of *BOHEMIA*, containing *Bohemiam* it self with the incorporate Provinces, is bounded on the East with *Poland* and *Hungary*, on the West with the *Upper Palatinate*, *Voiland* and *Misia*, on the North with the Marquissate of *Brandenburg* and some part of *Misia*, and on the South with *Austria* and *Bavaria*. It comprehends in it, besides *Bohemia* it self, the Marquissate of *Moravia*, with the Dukedoms of *Silefia* and *Lusatia*.

1. *BOHEMIA*, encompassed about with woody Mountains, part of the *Hercynian*, is bounded on the East with *Moravia*, on the West with the *Upper Palatinate* and *Voiland*, the North with *Misia*, *Lusatia* and some part of *Silefia*, on the South with parts of *Bavaria* and *Austria*.

It took this name from the *Bemi*, or *Boiemi*, the old Inhabitants hereof; by *Pomponius Mela* called *Bemi*, with the addition of *Gris magna*, by *Tacitus*, *Boiemi*, who make them the descendants of the *Boii*, a *Gallick* Nation, who to avoid the Servitude which they feared from *Rome*, put themselves into these *Hercynian* deserts, which from them was named *Boiohemum*, by which name it occurred in *Velleius Paterculus*. And though the *Marcomanni* first, and the *Scelaves* and *Croatiens* afterwards, became Masters of it, these last continuing their possession to this very day: yet it retaineth still the name of *Bohemia* amongst the *Latines*, as that *Bohemerland* amongst the *Dutch*.

It contains in compas about 550 *English* miles. The Soil is indifferently fruitful, and enriched with Mines of all sorts, except of Gold. Tin they have here in good plenty, the Mines whereof were first found out by a *Cornish* man, banished out of *England*, anno 1240. which discovery of Tin in these parts was, as faith my Author, in *magnam iustitiam* Richardi Comitis Cornubiæ, the meaneth that *Richard* which was afterwards King of the *Romans*: and no marvel, for in those times there was no Tin in all Europe but in *England*: Wood they have here

good store; and in some of their Forests a Beast called *Lemie*, which hath hanging under its neck a Bladder full of scalding water with which, when life is hunted, the Dog to torture the Dogs, that the easily escape them. Of Corn they have sufficient for their own use, and sometimes also an increase above their spending, wherewith they do supply their neighbours of the *Upper Palatinate*: but they want Wine, the Air being too sharp and piercing to produce a good Vintage. And it yields also store of Saffron, no where to be bettered; with plenty of medicinal Drugs.

The principal Rivers hereof are, 1. the *Elbe*, or *Albis*, having here its spring, of whose course we have spoken elsewhere. 2. *Egra*, 3. the *Muldaw* or *Multavia*, and 4. the *Wartiz*, all three exonerating themselves into the *Elbe*, which runneth through the mid of the Country.

The Kingdom is not (as others) divided into Counties and Provinces, but into the Territories and possessions of several Lords, who have great authority and command over their Vassals. The figure of the whole is in a manner Circular, the Diameter whereof reacheth every way some 200 miles, containing in that compas 700 Cities, walled Towns and Castles, (as some say) 30000 Villages. It is inhabited by a people given to Drink and Gluttony, and yet valiant and with sense of Honour: this last belonging to the Nobility and Gentry, the former to the common people; but more moderately than most others of the *German* Nations. All of them, Princes or Plebeians, rich, poor, noble and base, use the *Seleonian* Language, as their Mother-tongue.

The chief *Bohemian* Captain that ever I read of was *Zizka*, who, in eleven Battels fought in the defence of the *Hussites*, against the Pope and his Confederates, prevailed and went away victorious; in suchom that at his death he willed the *Bohemians* to flea him, and make a Drum of his Skin; perfwading himself, if they so did, they could never be overcome. A fancy like to that of *Scipio Africanus* and *Porticus K. of Britain*, spoken of before. Scholars of most note, *John Hus* and *Hierom of Prague*, two eminent Divines, of whom more anon.

The *Christian Faith* was first here preached by *S. Methodius* the first Bishop and Apostle of the *Moravians*; an. 900 or thereabouts. *Borziwoius*, (whom some call *Borfinus*) the 8. Duke from *Croacia*, being the first *Christian* Prince and next to him *Wenceslaus* the 2. This last was most cruelly murdered by *Bolleslaus* his Brother at the instigation of *Drabomirus*, an obdurate Heathen, Mother to them both: who having caused the Ministers of the Lord to be butchered, and their bodies to lie unburied for two years together, was swallowed Coach and all, in that very place where their Bodies lay. Confirmed by this Prodigy, they continued constant in the Faith to this very day; though not without the intermixture of some notable Vanity. For one *Picardus*, coming out of the *Low-countries*, drew a great force of men and women unto him, pretending to bring them to the same fate of Perfection that *Adam* was in before his Fall; from whence they were called *Picardi* and *Adammites*. They had no respect unto Marriage; yet could they not accompany any Woman, until the Man coming to *Adam*, laid unto him, *Faiber Adam, I am inflamed towards this Woman*; and *Adam* made answer, *Increase and multiply*. They lived in an island which they called *Paradisfe*, and went stark naked: but they continued not long; for *Zizka* hearing of them, entered their Fools *Paradisfe*, and put them all to the sword, Anno 1416. But to make amends for this Folly, they were exceedingly zealous of the Reformation. For much about the same time the Works of *Wiceliff* were brought

into Bohemia by a certain Scholar who had been Student in the University of Oxyria, which hapning into the hands of John Hfisse and Hierome of Prague, (two men whereof this Country doth much boast) wrought in their hearts a desire to reform the Church. A bulwark which they prosecuted so earnestly, that being summoned to the Council of Constance they were there condemned for Heretics and burnt, Anno 1414; yet had their Doctrine such deep root in the hearts of the people, that it could never be destroyed by the Tyrannies of War or Persecution (though both were used) to this very day; multitudes of the Professors of it living in this Kingdom under the names of *Calistini* and *Sub uraque*, (as before is said) but much both strenghtened and increased by the Writings of *Luther*, *Meilandon*, *Calvin*, and such other of the Protestant Doctors as travelled in the Work of Reformation. But this increase of strength and number proved their greatest weakness. For growing insolent upon the sense of their strength and power, they formed themselves into a party, got many of the *Romish* Catholics to adhere unto them, under colour of asserting their Civil Rights, and in the heat of some disputes, caused certain of the Emperor's Council to be thrown out of the Windows of the Council-chamber; and finally about the latter end of the Reign and Empire of *Mathias*, they broke out into open Arms. In the course whereof the *Calvinists* being of most power, and having got a King of their own Opinions, did disoblige the *Lutherans* and more moderate Papists, who had concurred with them at the first, that being invaded on the one side with a *Lutheran* Army under the command of the Duke of *Saxony*, and a Popish Army on the other by the Duke of *Bavaria*, they were in fine utterly supprest and made inconquerable: the conquering and successful Emperor (*Ferdinand* the 2.) taking this occasion to extirpate this Protestant Religion out of his Dominions.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Budweis*, (conceived to be the *Marobudum* of *Ptolemy*) a Town towards *Austria*. 2. *Ausp*, near the head of the *Elb*. 3. *Tabor*, a strong Town built by *Zizka*, to be a Retreat for the *Hussites*. 4. *Jaromir*, and 5. *Melnick*, both upon the *Moravia*. 6. *Litomysl*, an Episcopall See, bordering on *Moravia*. 7. *Pilsen*, the last Town of this Kingdom which yielded to the prevailing Imperialists in the late long War about that Crown: and then also was betrayed to Count *Tilly* for a sum of money, by some of the Souldiers of Count *Mansfeld*, who was then absent, and Souldiers of Count *Mansfeld*, the Enemy. 8. *Lihobad*, had long defended it against the Enemy. 9. *Egra*, so called of the fame River, on which (near to the borders of the Upper *Palatinat*) it is strongly situate: a large, fair City, containing three miles in compass. Imperial once, but sold by the Emperor *Ludovicus* *Bavarum* to John King of *Bohemia*, for 40000 marks of Silver in compass 1613, for Sweetness of the place, Elegancy of the buildings, Pleasants of site, and Richness of soils, superiour far to *Prague* it self. 10. *Prague*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom, situate in the midst thereof, on the River *Moldau*; consisting of four several Towns each of which hath its several Customs, Laws, and Magistrates. The principal is called the *Old Town*, adorned with many goodly Buildings, a spacious Market-place, and a stately Council-hofe. The second, called the *New Town*, is separated from the Old by a Ditch of great depth and wideness. The third, called the *Little Town* is divided from the Old by the River *Moldau*, joyned to it by a beautiful Bridge, consisting of 24 Arches. And in this part thereof is the Hill *Rachina*, on the sides of which are many fair and stately Houses belonging to the Nobility, over-looked by the

strong Castle of *Wenceslaus*, (situate on the top thereof) a magnificent Palace, wherein the *Bohemian* Kings and the later Emperours have kept their Residence. The 4th. Town is that of the *Jews*, who have here five Synagogues, and live according to their own Law. The whole City is rather large than fair, the Streets being in Winter very dirty, of ill smell in the Summer; the Buildings for the most part of Clay and Timber clapt up together without Art, and of little beauty. And though encompassed with Walls and Ditches, it is conceived to be but an open Town, (so poor and weak are the Defences;) inasmuch that whoever is master of the Field, will be master of the City also. And yet besides the honour of being the Royal Seat, it hath also of long time been an Archbishop's See, and was by *Charles* the fourth, Emperour and King of *Bohemia*, made an University. Near unto this Town was fought that memorable Battel between the Duke of *Bavaria* and Count *Bucquoy*, Lieutenant for the Emperor *Ferdinand* the second, with 50000 men, on the one side; and *Frederick*, newly elected King of *Bohemia*, with the Prince of *Anhalt*, the Count of *Thurn*, and 30000 men, on the other side. It was fought on the eighth of *November* *style novo*, wherein (such was the unfeared Will of God) the Victory fell into the Imperialists: the young Prince of *Anhalt*, *Thurn*, and *Saxen* with divers others, being taken Prisoners; the *Bohemian* Ordinance all surprised, *Prague* forced to yield unto the Victor and King *Frederick* with the Queen compelled to fly into *Silesia*. A most lamentable and unfortunate Loss, not to this people only, but to the whole cause of the reformed Religion. Yet it is not unworthy of our observation, that this great Battel was fought upon a Sunday, the 8. of *November*, about the time of Morning-prayer; in the Gospel appointed for which day (being then the 23. after *Trinity-Sunday*) is that famous passage, *Reddite CÆSARI, quæ sunt CÆSARIS*, i. e. Render unto *Cæsar* the things which are *Cæsars*; which seemed to judge the Quarrel on the Emperor's side.

But whether of the two Pretendents had the juster Cause, may best be seen by canvassing the Records of that State and Nation, (for the success of War is no standing Rule for measuring the Equity and Justice of the Causes of it:) by which it will be clearly seen, that since the creating of that Kingdom by the *Scelaves* or *Cracians*, it hath been evermore disposed at the Will of the Emperour, or by Election of the States and People. But I intend not at present to dispute that Point, but only lay down the Story of the Kings and People, as in other places, since the first coming of the *Selavi*. A Nation not known by that name till the time of *Justinian*, at what time they inhabited on the Banks of the *Ister*, but on the farther side thereof, opposite to *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, Imperial Provinces. Grown famous by their good Successes against that Empire, their name was taken up by the rest of the *Sarmatians* of *Europe*, who either wanting room, or not liking their colder Countries, passed on more Westward, and by degrees possessed themselves of those parts of *Germany* which formerly had been inhabited by the *Almans*, *Quadrundans* and *Boiarians*; but were then either quite forsaken, or but ill inhabited, by the drawing down of those people to the *Roman* Provinces, which they far better liked. They were divided at, or after their coming thus far West, into four main Bodies: that is to say, the *Vimbri*, possessed of the (now) Margravates of *Brandenburg*, *Misnia*, and *Lusitania*, as also of the Dukedoms of *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania*; the *Moravians*, inhabiting in *Moravia*, the Lower *Austria*, and the Upper *Hungary*; the *Poles*, possessed of *Poland*, and the Dukedom of *Silesia*; and finally the *Bohemians*, who were confined within the limits of that Kingdom only.

what form of Government they lived at their first coming hither, is not certainly known. But being settled in these Countries of *Poland* and *Bohemia*, it was not long before they were created into several Kingdoms; occasioned by the coming of a new body of *Scelaves*, *Cracians*, and others of those scattered Nations, under the conduct of *Zechinus*, a great Prince amongst them, who about the year 640, together with his Brother *Leches* was banished *Cracina*, for a Murder. He being very acceptable to the *Scelaves* of *Bohemia*, who looked upon him as a Prince of their own original Extraction, one of the same Language, Laws or Customs that themselves were of, they admitted him to be their Chief or supreme Governour, by whatsoever name he was called at first: in honour and memory of whom, the *Bohemians* in their own Language do call themselves *Zechians*. After his death, the State relapsed again into a confused Anarchy, till the year 670; at what time, not respecting the Progeny of *Zechinus*, the Founder of their Commonwealth and first Estate, they fastned upon *Cracus*, a man of good esteem amongst them, and Elected him to be their Duke. *Cracus* *in Julius*, & magna apud Bohemos opinio, Princeps electus est, as *Bertholdus* telleth us. *Cracus* being dead, the *Bohemians* elected *Libussa*, his youngest Daughter; and of her Government soon wearied, they made choice of *Primiislav* for their Prince, and made him Husband to *Libussa*. A man taken from the Plough (as the Stories tell us) to espouse the Princess: it being ordered and agreed on by her many Suitors, that he (whoever he was) before whom *Libussa* purposely let loose, did first make a stand, should be the Husband of the Lady, and have the Government of the State. The Horse first makes a stand before *Primiislav*, being then at Plough (having perhaps some Mare in his Team) and he accordingly is received and admitted their Prince. There, with the other Dukes from the time of *Cracus*, the first Legislator of the *Bohemians*, take in order thus,

The Dukes of BOHEMIA.

1. *Crucus*, the Law-giver or *Lycurgus* of *Bohemia*.
2. *Libussa*, youngest Daughter to *Crucus*, with *Primiislav* her Husband, (a second *Quintus*) Founder of *Prague*.
3. *Neramiislav*, Son of *Primiislav* and *Libussa*.
4. *Anahath*, one of the Sons of *Neramiislav*, contemporary with *Charles* the Great.
5. *Voricus*, Son of *Anathath*.
6. *Wenceslaus*.
7. *Bela*.
8. *N. fricicus*, Son of *Bela*.
9. *Borizovius*, The first Christian Prince of the *Bohemians*, co-temporary with the Emperour *Anuph*.
10. *Shitigudus*, Son to *Borizovius*.
11. *Pladislav*, Brother to *Shitigudus*.
12. *Wenceslaus* II. surnamed the Saint, slain by his Brother *Boleslav*.
13. *Boleslav*, a wicked and ungodly Prince.
14. *Boleslav* II. Son of the former, a great advocate of Christianity amongst his people.
15. *Boleslav* III. one of the Sons of *Boleslav* the second.
16. *Jaromir*, Son to *Boleslav* the third.
17. *Udalricus*, Brother of *Boleslav* the third, and Uncle of *Jaromir*.
18. *Fredislav*, Son to *Udalricus*.
19. *Shitigudus* II. Son to *Fredislav*.

1061

A.C.

1086

1100

1109

1199

1199

1248

1278

1284

20. *Vratislav*, Brother of *Shitigudus*, whom, for his manifold defects, the Emperor *Henry* the 4. created the first King of *Bohemia*, Anno 1086. Whose Successors take thus out of *Bertholdus* and *Dubravius*.

The Kings and Dukes of BOHEMIA.

1. *Vratislav*, the Brother of *Shitigudus*, Duke of *Bohemia*, was by *Henry* the 4. at *Mentz* created King.
2. *Conrade*, Brother to *Vratislav*, notwithstanding that his Brother had three Sons, was elected Duke of *Bohemia*.
3. *Breislav*, Son to *Vratislav*, the two Sons of *Conrade* being rejected, is by the *Bohemians* chosen Duke.
4. *Borizovius*, the 4. Son of *Breislav*, is chosen by the *Bohemians* his eldest brothers then all living.
5. *Suoplenus*, Cousin-german to *Borizovius*, by the consent and favour of the people, deposed *Borizovius*, and caused himself to be elected in his place.
6. *Pladislav* II. Brother to *Borizovius*, preferred by the people to the Throne before *Orho* the brother; and *Henry* the Son of *Suoplenus*, the last Prince.
7. *Sobeslav* brother to *Pladislav*, promoted to the State before the Son of *Pladislav*.
8. *Pladislav* III. Son to *Pladislav* the 2. (the four Sons of *Sobeslav* omitted) is chosen and crowned the second King of *Bohemia* by *Frederick* the Emperor; but deposed by the States, because he was not by them formerly elected, according to their Privileges and Customs.
9. *Oldericus*, the third Son of *Sobeslav*, his elder Brethren yet living, was by the people elected in the room of *Pladislav* and his Son *Frederick*, whom the Emperor *Frederick* had by force established in the Throne.
10. *Sobeslav* II. second Son of *Sobeslav*; was by *Frederick* above-named expelled; and he also by the *Bohemians*.
11. *Conrade*, Grandchild to *Orho*, the Brother of *Suoplenus*, elected by the *Bohemians* in place of *Frederick*; between which two Princes there was continual War.
12. *Wenceslaus*, Uncle unto *Conrade*, and Son of *Orho* before said, was preferred before many nearer the Succession. Him *Primiislav* expelled, but fearing his return, quitted *Prague*.
13. *Henry*, Bishop of *Prague*, a stranger to the Blood, was by a general consent elected Duke.
14. *Pladislav* IV. brother to *Primiislav*, the Son of *Wenceslaus* being put by, succeeded *Henry*, and soon after reigned.
15. *Primiislav*, elected by the *Bohemians*, and by the Emperor *Philip* crowned the 3. King of *Bohemia* at *Mentz*, was brother to *Pladislav* the 4.
16. *Ottocarus*, notwithstanding that *Wenceslaus* his elder brother had been crowned in his Father's life-time, was acknowledged King. He was slain in Battel by *Rodolphus* the Emperor near the *Morb*, a River of *Moravia*, Anno 1278.
17. *Wenceslaus* II. Son of *Ottocarus*.
18. *Wenceslaus* III. Son to *Wenceslaus* the II.

D d d

656

- the last of the *Bohemian* Princes of the masculine race.
- 1304 19. *Rodolphus*, Son to the Emperor *Alberus*, is by the Potency of his Father, and the election of the States, seated on the Throne, being otherwise a stranger to the Blood-royal of *Bohemia*.
- 1305 20. *Henry*, Duke of *Carinthia*, the Son of *Meinard*, Earl of *Tyrol*, and Husband to *Anne*, the second Daughter of *Wenceslaus* the 2. is chosen by the *Bohemians*: but being weary of his Government, they elect *John Earl of Luxemburg*. Finally *Henry* was murdered by one of his Nephews.
- 1311 21. *John*, Earl of *Luxemburg*, Son to *Henry* the seventh Emperor, and Husband to *Elizabeth*, youngest Daughter to *Wenceslaus* the 2. is elected, the Lady *Anne* yet living.
- 1346 22. *Charles*, Son to *John*, and Emperor, of that name the fourth, the Author of the Golden Bull.
- 1362 23. *Wenceslaus* IV. Emperor also, in whose time the Troubles of the *Hussites* and the Valour of *Zizka* was famous.
- 1418 24. *Sigismund*, Brother to *Wenceslaus*, maketh himself King by force; and at his death commended *Alberus*, Duke of *Austria*, the Husband of his Daughter *Elizabeth*, unto the States of the Kingdom.
- 1437 25. *Albertus*, Duke of *Austria*, elected upon the commendation of *Sigismund* by the *Bohemian* Lords.
- 1440 26. *Ladislavus*, Son to *Albert*, who being the Brother of two Sisters, commended yet one *George Pogibrachius* unto the States, as fittest to succeed him.
- 1458 27. *George Pogibrachius*, neither by Affinity or Consanguinity of the Blood, succeeded. And he, though he had three Sons, yet, for the benefit of his Country, advised the Nobles, after his death to elect their King from *Poland*.
- 1471 28. *Ladislavus* II. Son to *Casmir* King of *Poland*, and to *Elizabeth* the younger Daughter of *Albertus* Duke of *Austria*, the issue of *Anne* the Elder Sister still living, elected King of *Bohemia*.
- 1516 29. *Ladovicus*, Son to *Ladislavus*, elected and Crowned by the means of his Father, then living King of *Hungary* also.
- 1526 30. *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Austria*, Brother to *Charles* the 5. and Husband to *Anne*, Sister to *Ladovicus*, by his Letters reverent acknowledged that he was chosen King of *Bohemia* not of any right, but of meer force will according to the Liberties of that Kingdom.
- 1565 31. *Maximilian*, eldest Son of *Ferdinand*, was in his Father's lifetime, and at his fuit, elected King, *Anno* 1540, into which he actually succeeded on his Father's death.
- 1575 32. *Rodolphus*, Emperor of *Germany*, and the eldest Son to *Maximilian*, elected King.
- 1610 33. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*, was at the joint fuit of them both nominated and appointed King of *Bohemia*, by the general consent of the States, during his Brother's lifetime, viz. *An*. 1610. which nomination they both protest in their Letters reverent should not be to the prejudice of the Liberties and ancient Customs of that Kingdom.
- 1618 34. *Ferdinand* II. Archduke of *Austria* and of

- the House of *Gretz*, was by *Matthias* adopted for his Son, and declared Successor to the Crown of *Bohemia*, but never formally and legally elected: for which cause, amongst others, he was by the States rejected, in like case as *Ladislavus* the 3. had formerly been.
- 1619 35. *Frederick*, Elector *Palatine*, the strongest *German* Prince of the *Catholists*, and most potent by his great Alliances, was elected King of *Bohemia*, and Crowned at *Prague*, together with his Wife, on the fifth day of *November*. This Prince derived his descent from the Lady *Sophia*, Sister to *Ladislavus* the 2. King of *Poland* and *Bohemia*; and married *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *James* King of Great Britain and *Anne* of Denmark, which *Anne* descended from the Lady *Anne*, Daughter of *Albertus* of *Austria*, and elder Sister to *Elizabeth*, Mother to *Ladislavus* the 2. above-named, from whom the Claim of *Austria* is derived.
- 1621 36. *Ferdinand* III. Son of *Ferdinand* the II. elected King of *Bohemia* during the life both of his Father and of *Frederick* the Prince Elector also; after whose death he succeeded in this Kingdom both in right and fact; King of *Hungary* also Archduke of *Austria*, and Emperor of *Germany*, now living, *Anno* 1648; more moderate in his Councils than his Father *Ferdinand*, and more inclinable to Peace, (though honoured with a more signal Victory against the *Sweeds*, in the Battle of *Norlingen*, than his Father was in all his life) which the Conclusions made at *Munster* are sufficient proof of.

Of the Revenues, Arms, and other things which concern this Kingdom, we shall speak hereafter, when we have took a view of the rest of the Provinces which are incorporated into it.

2. *MORAVIA* is bounded on the East with *Hungary*, on the West with *Bohemia*, on the North with *Silesia*, and on the South with the Lower *Austria* and the River *Teya* fenced on the west by the Woods and Mountains of *Bohemia*; part of the *Herzian* Forrest; on the North, by some Spurs or Branches of it, called *Archberg* by *Prohm*; on the two other sides open like an Half-moon or Semicircle. It is the most fruitful place of Corn in all *Germany*, and hath no small store of Frankincense; which contrary to the nature of it, groweth not on a Tree, but out of the Earth; and that too (which adds much to the Miracle, if *Dubravius* do report it rightly) in the shape and figure of those parts which men and women do most endeavour to conceal.

The former Inhabitants of this Province were the *Marcomanni* and part of the *Quadi*, against whom when *M. Antoninus* the Emperor made War, he had unware run himself into such a Streight, that his Army was environed with Mountains one way, and Enemies the other. To this (as Calamities seldom go alone) was added the extraordinary heat and drought then being. The Emperor thus put to his plunges, came the Captain of his Guard, telling him, that he had in his Army a Legion of *Christians* (*Milites* he calleth them) which by Prayer to their own God could obtain any thing. The Emperor fendeth for them, desiring them to make supplication for the Army: which they did, and God Almighty that never turneth a deaf ear to the prayer of his Servants, when

when they are either for his Glory, the Churches or their own good, scattered and vanquished the *Quadi* with Thunder-shot and Artillery from Heaven, and refreshed the faint and dying *Romans* with many a gentle and pleasant Shower. This Miracle purchased to that Legion the surname of *severus*, i. e. the Thunderer, and induced the Emperor to honour men of that holy profession, and to make an end of the Fourth Persecution, *An* Ch. 174. Thus *Xiphilinus* hath it in his *Dion*: which coming from the Pen of an Heathen, as this Author was, is of more credit in a matter of such concernment unto Christianity, than if it had proceeded from *Socrates*, *Sozomen*, or any other Ecclesiastical Writer.

Places of most note herein are, 1. *Olmutz*, on the River *Mach* (or *Morava*) the chief Town of the Country, and a small University; near which, out of the Hill *Odenburg* bordering on *Silesia*, springeth the great River of *Oder*, whose course we have before described. 2. *Brix*, on the River *Swarta*, the Seat of the ancient Marquesses. 3. *Raditzsch*, and 4. *Cremser*, both upon the *Marb* or *Morava*. 5. *Znaim*, on the *Teya*. 6. *Niclasburg*, (*Mons Nicolai* in the *Latine*) bordering on the Lower *Austria*, 7. *Iglau*. 8. *Newburg*. 9. *Weiskirchen*. 10. *Beserleitz*, which little memorable. 11. *Craditz*, near to which (and in this place only) the Frankincense is found to grow in the shape and form before mentioned.

The old Inhabitants hereof (as before is said) were the *Marcomanni* and the *Quadi*: after them that Tribe or Nation of the *Slaves*, who, from their habitation on the River *Morava*, called themselves *Moravians*, and the Country which they dwelt in by the name of *Moravia*, (the *Dutch* call it *Merbeten*.) They were extended at that time over all the Lower *Austria*, to the banks of the *Danub* on the South, and as far as to the River *Tibiscus*, over-spreading a great part of the Upper *Hungary* towards the East. Governed at the first by their own Kings, the first whose name occurs being *Rafai*, in the time of the Emperor *Levis* the Godly; by him taken Prisoner, and his Realm made tributary to the Empire. After him succeeded *Harmadurus*, and then *Suctonepus*; in whose time the *Moravians* and other Nation of the *Slaves* received the Gospel by the preaching of *Cyril* and *Methodius*, two *Græcian* Doctors; officiating all Divine Services in the *Slavonian* or vulgar Language. For which when they made suit to the Pope then being, to whose Authority (as Patriarch of the Western Empire) they were made obnoxious, and that the Pope and Cardinals delay'd the business; a voice was heard, as if it had come from Heaven, saying these words, *Omnia Spiritus laudet Dominum, et omnis Lingua confiteatur ei*. Upon which Miracle their Suit was granted at the last, and a Letter Decretal sent unto that effect from Pope *John* the 8. to *Simeon* (or *Sfentopelcher*, as some call him) above mentioned. A Privilege by them enjoyed till 200 years, and then reversed by *Gregory* 7. commonly called Pope *Hildebrand*, in his Letters to *Vratislavus* the first King of *Bohemia*, *An*. 1086.

But to return unto the Story *Suabobegius*, Son to *Suabopetrus*, succeeded next, deposed, or rather beaten out of his Country, by the Emperor *Arnolph*, for denying the accustomed Tribute. A Prince of great spirit, and of as great command; having at one time under him not *Moravia* only, according to the largest limits, but *Silesia*, *Bohemia*, and *Polonia* also. *Arnolph* not able otherwise to effect his purpose, called in the *Hungarians* (though at that time Pagans) by whose help the *Moravian* was subdued, and his Kingdom flattered into pieces; seized on by the *Hungarians*, *Poles*, and other Nations, and finally reduced to the present Limits. Afterwards it was made a Marquitate, (but by whom we find not;) one of the Mar-

quesses hereof being *Jadocus Barbatus*, elected Emperor *An*. 1410. After whose death, *Sigismund*, his next Heir, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, gave it to his Son-in-law *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, *Anno* 1417, who in the end succeeded him in all his Estates; since which time it hath always gone along with the Crown of *Bohemia*.

The Arms of the old Dukes or Princes of it were *Azure*, an Eagle charged *Or* and *Guies*, member and langued of the same.

3. *SILESIA*, (or *SCHLESIE*, as the *Dutch* call it) is bounded on the East with *Poland*, on the West with *Lusatia*, on the North with *Brandenburg*, and on the South with *Moravia*. Wholly encompassed with Mountains, except towards the North, which lets in a sharp Air upon them: the mid-land part being full of Woods, but without Minerals.

Chief Cities are, 1. *Jagendorff*, or *Jegerendorff*, of late the Patrimony of *John Georgius* of the Family of *Brandenburg*, commonly called the Marquess of *Jagendorff*. The Lands and Estates in his possession were first given by *Ladislavus* King of *Bohemia* to *George* firnamed *Pius* one of the sons of *Frederick* of *Brandenburg*, the first Marquess of *Opasch* of this House, for the many good services he had done him. But his posterity being extinct, they fell to the said *John Georgius*, Brother to *Sigismund* the Elector; proscribed by *Ferdinand* the second, for adhering to the party of *Frederick* Prince Elector *Palatine*: A Prince of great note and activeness in the beginning of the late *German* and *Bohemian* Wars. 2. *Munfberg*, which gives the title of Duke to the posterity of *George Pogibrachius*, once King of *Bohemia*, advanced by him unto this Honour and a fair Estate. 3. *Glatz*, or *Glatz*, the last Town of *Bohemia* which held out for *Frederick* the Elector against that Emperor. 4. *Glogau*, a strong Town on the River *Oder*. 5. *Neisse*, on a River so named, an Episcopal See. 6. *Breslaw*, in *Latine*, *Cracovia*, so called from *Vratislavus* the Founder of it, once one of the Dukes of this Province, by whose procurement it was made an Episcopal See, *An*. 970. or thereabouts. It is situate on the River *Oder*, all the water wherein could not save it from being burnt down to the ground, *Anno* 1341, but it was presently re-edified with altar-free-stone, and is now one of the prettiest Cities (for the bigness of it) in all *Germany*, fair, populous, and well contrived with open and even Streets, the chief of the Country. 7. *Oppelen*, on the *Oder* also, well fortified both by Art and Nature, barricaded by the River on the West, and on the East with good Out-works, strong Walls, and a fair Castle. 8. *Straßen*. 9. *Reichenbach*, both made Towns of War since the beginning of the *Bohemian* Troubles.

There are also within this Province the two Seigniories of *Prignitz* and *Croffen*, so called from the chief Towns thereof, belonging to the Elector of *Brandenburg*; the two Dukedoms of *Opfritz* and *Zator*, appertaining to the Crown of *Poland*; as also the Dukedom of *Lignitz*, and *Sweinitz*, all of them bearing the names of their principal Towns: of which two last, *Sweinitz* is in the immediate possession of the Kings of *Bohemia*; and *Lignitz* hath a Duke of its own, but an Homager and Tributary of that King.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the *Marsigni*, *Barii*, *Gabini*, and some part of the *Quadi*. In the partition of the Eastern parts of *Germany* amongst the *Slaves*, it was laid unto the Dukedom or Kingdom of *Poland*, continuing a part thereof till the time of *Ladislavus* the 2. who, being driven out of his Kingdom by his Brethren, was by the mediation of *Frederick Barbouroff* elected in this Country, to be held under the Sovereignty of the King of *Poland*. Divided betwixt his 3 Sons, & afterwards

subdivided amongst their posterities, according to the ill Custom of Germany, it became broke at last into 14 Dukedoms, of 1. *Breslaw*, 2. *Oppeln*, 3. *Ratibor*, 4. *Cassis*, 5. *Beuthen*, 6. *Glogaw*, 7. *Sagan*, 8. *Olema*, 9. *Stein*, 10. *Falkenberg*, 11. *Sweinitz*, 12. *Lignitz*, 13. *Opitz*, and 14. *Zator*. Of all which, only the two last do remain to Poland; the 5 first being made subject to the Kings of Bohemia by Wenceslaus the II, the five next by King John of Luxemburg; *Lignitz* remaining in the possession of a Proprietary Duke: (as before was said) and *Sweinitz*, given to Charles the IV. Emperor and King of Bohemia, by the Will and Testament of *Bolenslaus* the last Duke all: *Silesia* by this means (except the Dukedoms of *Opitz*, and *Zator*) being added to the Crown of Bohemia, of which it is rather an incorporate than subject Province.

4. *LUSATIA*, by the Dutch called *Lusnitz*, is bounded on the East with *Silesia*, on the West with *Misnia*, on the North with *Brandenburg*, and on the South with *Bohemia*. The Country is rough and full of Woods, yet plentiful enough of Corn, and of such Fruits as naturally arise out of the Earth: so populous and thick set with People, that though it be but a little Province, it is able to arm 20000 Foot as good as any in Germany. Most commonly it is divided into the *Higher*, and the *Lower*: the first confining on *Bohemia*, the last on *Brandenburg*.

Places of most note in the *Higher Lusnitz*, are 1. *Bautzen*, (*Badislinum* the Latins call it) the first Town attempted and taken in by the Duke of Saxony; when he took upon him the execution of the Emperor's Ban against *Frederick* Elector *Palatine*, then newly chosen King of *Bohemia*. The poor Prince in the mean time was in an ill condition, the Saxons being the head of the *Lutherans*, and the *Bavarian* chief of the *Papists* party, arming both against him. So jealous are both sides of the active and restless *Calvinian* Spirit, as to leave no means untried for the suppressing of it. Seated it is upon the *Spre*, and for the most part is the Seat of the Governour for the King of *Bohemia*. 2. *Coritz*, upon the River *Neisse*, which gave the Title of Duke to *John*, Brother of *Sigismund*, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, and Father of *Elizabeth*, the last Dutches of *Luxemburg*, before it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Burgundy*. A fine neat Town, well frequented, and strongly fortified; founded about the year 1231, and not long after so consumed by a mercileless Fire, *An. 1391*. at *ne unica domus remanserit*, as my Author hath it; that there was not one House left of the old foundation. But it was presently re-built in a more beautiful form, and of more strong materials; than before it was, both publick and private Buildings very neat and elegant. 3. *Zittau*, on the same River, bordering on *Bohemia*. 4. *Lawben*, 5. *Lubben*, 6. *Camitz*, of which little memorable, but that together with the former they may make up those six Towns which are confederate together in a stricter League for the mutual Defence and preservation, but under the Protection, and with the approbation, of the Kings of *Bohemia*. Then in the *Lower Lusatia* there is 7. *Spremburg*, so named from its situation on the River *Spre*, which runneth through the whole Country, and in ancient times was called *Suevus*; supposed by some (and not improbably) either to give name to the *Suevians*, or to take it from them; that potent Nation inhabiting originally betwixt this and the *Elbe*. 8. *Tribel*, upon the *Neisse*. 9. *Cathuse*, upon the *Spre*, or *Suevus*, which, together with some parts of the *Lower Lusatia*, belongs unto the Marquesses of *Brandenburg*.

The first Inhabitants hereof are by some supposed (and but supposed) to be the *Benemes* of *Tacitus*; in the partition of these parts of Germany amongst the *Slaves*, made subject to the *Winibis*, or *Vends*, the greatest and

most spreading Nation of all these People. When and by whom first made a Marquessate, I am not able to say for certain; but sure I am, it hath been very much given to the choice of Masters. It had first a Marquess of its own; *Conrade* the Marquess hereof, who died in the year 1156, being by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth made Marquess of *Misnia*, added it unto that Estate; and it remained for some time united to it. After, being seized on by the *Poles*, it was sold to *Frederick* the 2. Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*; who, keeping *Cathuse* and some other Towns bordering next upon him in his own possession, surrendered the rest on Composition to *George* King of *Bohemia*, claiming it from a Grant made by *Henry* the 4. to *Freislaus* the first *Bohemian* King, *An. 1087*. A Grant on which no Possession followed, unless it were the Homage and acknowledgment of the Princes of it, holding it afterwards of that Crown as the Lord in chief.

Thus have we brought these four Provinces into the power and possession of the Kings of *Bohemia*, remaining still distinct in their Laws and Governments, (as several limbs of the great Body of the *Slaves* made up into one Estate) though joined together in the person of one supreme Governour, who is severally admitted and acknowledged by each Province distinctly for itself, and not by any one of them in the name of the rest. Out of all which so laid together there may be raised the sum of three millions of Crowns yearly for the King's Revenues, towards the defrayment of all Charges.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Mars*, a Lion with a forked Tail *Luna*, crowned *Sol*. Which Arms was first given by *Frederick* *Barbarossa* to *Wladislaus* the third, made by him King of *Bohemia*; in regard of the good Service he had done him at the Siege of *Milain*. And though *Wladislaus* was depolyed by the States of that Kingdom; because never formally and legally elected by them; yet his Successors keep those Arms to this very day.

15. BRANDENBURG.

THE Marquessate of *BRANDENBURG* is bounded on the East with the Kingdom of *Poland*, on the West with the Dukedom of *Saxony*, on the North with *Pomerania* and part of *Mecklenburg*, and on the South with *Misnia*, *Lusatia* and *Silesia*. So called from *Brandeburg*, the chief Town of it; and because once the *Marches* of the Empire against the *Slaves*: divided afterwards into the *Old*, the *New*, and the *Middle Marches*, according as they were extended farther towards *Poland* by little and little, as the Emperours were able to get ground of those potent people.

The Country containeth in length from East to West 60 Dutch or 240 Italian miles, and is of correspondent breadth: the whole compass making up 540 miles of the last account. Within which Trade are comprehended 55 Cities and walled Towns, 80 Towns of trade, (*Markt* *Steten*, or Market-Towns, as they commonly call them) 38 Castles or Manion-houses of Noblemen, 17 Monasteries, and 10 Parks well stored with Beasts of game: the Country otherwife (considering the Extent thereof) being but thinly inhabited, nor well provided of necessaries, excepting Corn, of which these North-East Countries afford very great plenty.

The Religion of this Country is for the most part according to the form and Doctrine of *Luther*; first introduced and authorized by Marquess *Joachim* the first. In this estate it continued till the Breach betwixt *George* *William*, the Father of the present Elector, and the *Palatine* of *Nemburg*. At which time the *Palatine*, having married

married a Daughter of *Bavaria*, the most potent Prince of the *Papish* Party, reconciled himself to the Church of *Rome*, the better to assure himself of the Aid of Spain: and this Elector, having married a Sister of *Frederick* the fifth, Prince Elector *Palatine*, the most Potent Prince of the *Calvinians*, declared himself to be of that Party and Opinion, the better to assure himself to the Aid of *Holland*, *An. 1614*. But when on the pervasion of his Wife he set out an Edict for suppressing the *Lutheran* Forms, and authorizing the *Calvinian* only throughout his Dominions, (which was year 1615.) the people of this Marquessate rose in Arms against him: the difference being thus composed, that the *Lutheran* Forms only should be used in all the Churches of the Marquessate of *Brandenburg*, for the contentation of the people; and that the Marquessate should have the exercise of his new Religion for himself, his Lady, and those of their Opinion, in his private Chapells.

1. *ALTE-MARCK*, or the *OLD-MARCK*, so called because the ancient *Marches* of the Empire against the *Slaves*, lieth betwixt *Luxemburg* and the *Elb*, with which it is bounded on the East. The chief Town thereof are, 1. *Tangermund*, on the *Elb*, where it receives the River *Tanagra* or *Angra*; honoured sometimes with the Residence of Charles the fourth. 2. *Steindal*, the chief of these *Old Marches*. 3. *Solwedel* divided into the Towns, the old and the new. 4. *Gardelenburg*, fortified with the strong Castle of *Eislimp*. 5. *Opferburg*, 6. *Senhelfen*, said by some, but fallily, to be called from the *Senners*, whom they would make the old inhabitants of this Country, (by all good Writers made to be originally a *Gallick* Nation.) 7. *Werbe*, of which little memorable.

In the *MIDDLE-MARCHES* or *UPPER-MARCK*, lying betwixt the *Elb* and the River *Oder*, the Towns of most note are, 1. *Butzaw*, a Commendatory of the Temples in former times. 2. *Spandaw* upon the *Spre*, a well-fortified place. 3. *Oderburg*, called so from that River, on which it is situate; remarkable for a strong Castle built by Marquess *Albert* the second, at which all Passengers by water are to pay their Toll. 4. *Brandenburg*, on the River *Havel*, a Bishop's See, the Seat of the Lords *Marchers* in former times, taking name from hence: by some said to be built by *Brennus*, Captain of the *Gauls*; more truly by one *Brandus* a Prince of the *Francians*, *Anno* Ch. 140. 5. *Francford* (for distinction sake) named *Ad Odam*, on which River it is situate; the Soil about it being so plentifully stored with Corn and Wines that it is not easy to affirm whether *Bacchus* or *Ceres* be most enamoured of it. It was made an University by Marquess *Joachim*, *An. 1506*. and it is also a flourishing and famous Empory, though not comparable to that of the other *Francford*, seated on the *Maine*. 6. *Berlin* the ordinary Residence of the Marquess, situate on the River *Spre*, (or *Suevus*) which rising in *Lusatia*, falleth into the *Albis*. 7. *Havelburg*, on the River *Havel*, a Bishop's See, who acknowledged the Arch-Bishop of *Magdeburg* for his Metropolitain.

3. In the *NEW-MARCK*, extended from the *Oder* to the Borders of *Poland*, and called so because last conquered, and added to the account of the *German* Empire. There is *Culmburg*, a very strong and defensible Town, seated on the two Rivers *Warta* and *Odera*, fortified with great charge by *John*, Son of Marquess *Joachim*, and by him intended for his Seat. 2. *Stettinburg*, and 3. *Landspitz*, both upon the *Warta*, 4. *Soldin* in former times the chief of this *Marck*. 5. *Berlinch*, or *New Berlin*: and 6. *Falkenburg*, a strong Town, and fortified with as strong a Castle, towards *Pomerania*.

The first Inhabitants of this Country were the *Varnis*

and *Nathones*, part of the great Nations of the *Suevians*, and after them the *Helvidi*, *Witini*, *Beirani*, and other Tribes of the *Winibis*, the greatest Nation of the *Slaves*, who possessed themselves of it. But *Brandenburg* being won from them by the Emperor *Henry* the first, *An. 620*. (at what time the Gospel was first preached amongst them) the Country hereabouts was given by him to *Sigefride* Earl of *Rengelsheim*, (eldest Son of *Theodorick*, the second Earl of *Oldenburg*), a valiant Gentleman with the Title of Marquess or Lord *Marcher*, *An. 927*, upon condition that he should defend those *Marches* (the *Old Marches*, as they now call it) against the *Slaves*. These Marquesses were at the first Officiaries, at the appointment of the Emperor, and to him accountable. *Sigard*, the fourth from *Sigefride*, governing here for *Otho* the third, was the first Elector of these Marquesses, and *Odo* the second of that name, and third from *Sigard*, the last that held this Honour at the Emperor's pleasure; that Dignity after his decease being made hereditary in the person of *Albert* of *Anhalt*, surnamed *Orfus*, by the Emperor *Frederick* *Barbarossa*. Which *Albert* having very much enlarged his Border by the Conquest and extermination of the *Slaves*, caused the unpopulated Country to be planted with the new Dutch Colonies out of *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Flanders*, and those parts of the *Netherlands*. The House of this *Albert* being extinct in *John* the fourth, it was given by the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* to *Lewis* his Son; by *Otho* the Brother of that *Lewis*, sold for 200000 Ducats unto *Charles* the fourth; by *Sigismund*, the Son of *Charles*, to *Jodocus* Marquess of *Moravia*: but afterwards being redeemed again, it was by the said *Sigismund* conferred on *Frederick* Burgrave of *Nuremberg*, in recompence of his faithful Service in the Wars of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. In his posterity it remaineth, but much increased in Power and Patrimony by the additions of the Dukedoms of *Prussia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick* and *Berg*, the Marquissates of *Onspack* and *Jagerndoff*, the Earl-dom of *Mark* in *Westphalen*, now a part of *Cleveland*, the Lordships of *Prignitz* and *Croffen* in *Silesia*, the Towns of *Hess* and *Culmbach* in *Vaithland*, with the County of *Raphin*, and the Town and Territory of *Cathuse* in the *Lower Lusatia*. Inomuch that this is now the most powerful Family in all Germany. The Marquesses hereof from *Sigefride* to *Albert*, the Son of *Orfus*, &c. follow in this order.

The Marquesses of BRANDENBURG.

A. C.
627

1. *Sigefride*, Earl of *Rengelsheim*, made the first Marquess of this Border by the Emperor *Henry* the first.
2. *Gero*, by the appointment of *Otho* the first.
3. *Bruno*, Earl of *Witini*, created Marquess hereof by the same Emperor.
4. *Hugh* the Son of *Bruno*, by the favour of *Otho* the third.
5. *Sigard*, the Brother of *Hugh*, made by the same Emperor the first Marquess-Elector.
6. *Theodorick*, the Son of *Sigard*, outed of his Command by *Misivoius* one of the Princes, of the *Slaves* named *Oboviti*.
7. *Odo*, Earl of *Solwedel*, (the *Slaves* being beaten and expelled) created Marquess and Elector by *Conrade* the 2.
8. *Odo* II. Son of *Odo* the first, proscribed by *Henry* the 4. for joining with *Rodolph* Duke of *Schwaben* in the War against him.
9. *Primsflaus*, King of the *Oboviti*, (the Ancestor of the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*) was advanced unto these Honors by the said *Henry* the 4. and held them unto his death. After which it was made

- made hereditary by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, in the Person of *Albert of Anhalt*, the Son of *Orto*.
- 1152 10. *Albert of Anhalt*, the first hereditary Marquess, Father of *Bernard*, who was created Elector and Duke of *Saxony*, in the place of *Henry* fringed the Lion, by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*.
11. *Orto* Son of *Albert*.
12. *Orto* II. Son of *Orto* the 1.
13. *Albert* II. Brother of *Orto* the 2.
14. *John*, Son of *Albert* the 2.
15. *John* II. Son of *John* the 1.
16. *Conrad*, Brother of *John* the 2.
17. *John* III. Son of *Conrad*.
18. *Waldemar*, Brother of *John* the 3.
19. *Waldemar* II. Nephew of *Waldemar* the 1. by his Brother *Henry*.
20. *John* IV. brother of *Waldemar* the second, the last Marquess of the House of *Anhalt*; the Marquissate inheriting to the Empire for want of Heirs.
21. *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, created Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg* by his Father, the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, on the said Election.
22. *Lewis* II. surnamed the *Roman*, on the Requisition of his brother, succeeded in the Marquissate and Electoral Dignity.
23. *Orto*, brother to *Lewis* the first and second, who fold the Marquissate and Electoral Dignity to *Charles* the fourth.
24. *Wenceslaus*, Son of *Charles* the fourth, afterwards King of *Bohemia*, and Emperor of the *Romans*.
25. *Sigismund*, brother of *Wenceslaus*, Emperor of the *Romans*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Earl of *Luxemburg*; who fold this Marquissate to *Jodocus* Marquess of *Moravia*, and having afterwards redeemed it, conferred the same on
- 1416 26. *Frederick*, Burgrave of *Nuremberg*, solemnly invested herein at the Council of *Constance* An. 1414, for which Investiture he paid into the Emperor the sum of 400000 Crowns.
- 1440 27. *Frederick* II. Son of *Frederick* the first, to whom the Emperor *Frederick* the 3. gave the Dukedom of *Pomerania*.
- 1470 28. *Albert*, brother of *Frederick* the 2. called the *Achilles* of *Germany*, relinquished to *Bugislaus* the 10. the possession of *Pomerania*; but his Successors ever since have retained the Title and kept on foot their Pretensions to it. From *Frederick* his second Son descended *Albert* the first Duke of *Prussia*, *Frederick* the first Marquess of *Onspach*, *George* the first Marquess of *Jägerndorf*, and *Albert* called the *Albionides* of *Germany*, who ho harassed *Francia* in the days of *Charles* the fifth.
- 1486 29. *John*, Son of *Albert*.
- 1499 30. *Joachim*, Son of *John*, who founded the University of *Reformation*, Anno 1506, and authorized the Reformation of Religion in his time begun.
- 1535 31. *Joachim* II. Son of *Joachim* the first.
- 1571 32. *John* *George*, Son of *Joachim* the second.
33. *Joachim-Frederick*, Son of *John-George*.
34. *John-Sigismund*, Son of *Joachim-Frederick*, who had to Wife the Lady *Anna*, Daughter of *Albert-Frederick* the second Duke of *Prussia* and of *Mary Eleonor* his Wife, eldest Daugh-

ter of *William* the first, Duke of *Cleve*.

- 1620 35. *George-William*, Son of *John Sigismund* and the Lady *Anna*, claiming in her right the Dukedoms of *Cleve*, *Guick* and *Berg*, the Earldoms of *Mark* and *Ravensburg*, and the Seigniority of *Ravensstein*; which he possessed a while, divided with his Cousin *Wolfgangus* Palatine of *Newburg*, Son of *Magdalen* the younger Sister of *Mary-Eleonor*. But falling out about their Partage, the Palatine of *Newburg* called in the *Spaniards*, and the Father of this Marquess, in behalf of his Son, called in the Confederate States of the *Netherlands*, to assert their Titles. After the death of *Bugislaus* the last Duke of *Pomerania*, he was to have succeeded also in that Estate, then possessed by the *Swedes*. Of the Agreement made between them, and the great Accrument thereby following to the House of *Brandenburg*, we shall speak more there.
36. *Frederick-William*, Son of *George-William*, now Elector of *Brandenburg*.

The Territories of this Family are the greatest, as before is said, of any in *Germany*, but a great part thereof is very barren, and his Subjects in those parts as poor as the Country; much of his new accessions yielding little but the Titles only. So that neither in Revenue or Power he is able to keep rank with the Duke of *Saxony*; his ordinary Revenue hardly amounting at the utmost to 200000 *l. per annum*, which is but half of the Receipts of the Duke of *Saxony*.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Gules*, membré and beaked *Or*.

16. POMERANIA.

POMERANIA is bounded on the East with *Prussia*, from which it is parted by the River *Weyssell* or *Vistula*; on the West with *Mecklenburg*, divided from it by the River *Rantz*; on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, extended on the Coast hereof for the space of 200 English miles; and on the South with the Marquissate of *Brandenburg*. So named from the *Pomorz*, or *Pomerania* Nation of the *Slavians* to whose share it fell, or from the situation of it on the Sea-shore, as the word in the *Slavonian* doth seem to import.

The Country is for the most part plain, abundantly fruitful in Corn, carried hence to *Danzick*, and transported thence to all parts of Christendom in their times of Scarcity: yielding also good store of Pasturage, and great Herds of Cattel; with plenty of Butter, Cheese, Honey, and some reasonable quantities of Flax. Populous it is, and those people of a very strong Constitution as living under a sharp and piercing Air. The whole is divided into the Continent, and the Islands: the Continent into 1. the *Upper Pomerania*, bordering upon *Mecklenburg*, extended from the *Rantz* to the River *Oder*; 2. the *Lower*, reaching from the *Oder* to that part hereof which is now called 3. *Pomerellia*, betwixt it and *Prussia* subject of long time to the Crown of *Poland*, and there we shall hear farther of it.

Chief places in the *UPPER* arc, 1. *Bard*, at the mouth of the River *Rantz*, taking name from thence; a well-traded Town, and many times the Seat of the Dukes of this hitherto most *Pomerania*. 2. *Wolgast*, upon the *Baltick* Sea, over against the Isle of *Usedom*, the chief of this part of *Pomerania*, from whence the Dukes hereof are called the Dukes of *Pomerania* *Wolgast*; the first Town taken in

by *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, in his famous War for relief of *Germany*, Anno 1630. 3. *Straelsund*, a Town of great Trading and much resort, seated upon the same Sea also, opposite to the Isle of *Rügen*; a Town of great name in the course of the *German Wars*. 4. *Gripwald*, on the same Sea, betwixt *Wolgast* and *Straelsund*, made an University, Anno 1456. 5. *Anclam*, upon the River *Pone*. 6. *Triebstet*, situate on a Lake out of which the said River hath its course.

Then in the *LOWER Pomerania* there is 7. *Camin*, an Episcopal See, situate on the *Baltick* Shore, over against the Isle of *Wollin*. 8. *Calberg*, a strong Town on the same shore also, at the fall of the *Perisus* into the Sea. 9. *Caplin*, the last Sea-Town of this Tract lying towards *Prussia*. 10. *Stargard*, on the *Isa*, more within the Land; is also 11. *Griffenberg* upon the *Rega*, and 12. *Stein* on the *Oder*; once a poor Fish-Town, now the Metropolis of this part of the Country; rising to this greatness after the embracing of Christianity by the fall of *Piscus*, formerly the chief Mart-Town of all these parts; the ordinary Seat of the Dukes of the *Lower Pomerania*, the Dukes of *Pomerania-Stein*, as for distinction sake they are called to them.

The Islands hereunto pertaining are those of *Rügen*, *Wollin*, *Usedom*, touched upon before, but now more punctually to be handled. That of most note is *ROGÉN*, over against *Straelsund*, from which it is divided only by a narrow Strait, in length seven Dutch miles, and as much in breadth; so that the Compa of it, if it were exactly round, would amount to 20 German, or 100 Italian miles; and yet it was once bigger than it is. But in the year 1309, by the force of an outrageous Tempest, a great part of it, lying towards the South-east, as far as to the Isle of *Ruden*, (then conjunct hereto) was torn away, and sunk to deep into the bottom of the Sea, that now the greatest Ships that be fail over it. The Island is plentiful of Corn, the Granary of *Straelsund*, as they call it commonly; and reasonably well stored with Cattel; full of Bays, Creeks, and winding Shores, with many and vast Promontories thrusting into the Sea, which gives them great increase of Fishing. Anciently it belonged to the Crown of *Denmark*, till given by *Waldemar* the third to *Bugislaus* and *Barnim* Dukes of *Pomerania*: continuing ever since part of that Estate. The chief Town of it is called *Bergen*, situate in the midst of the Island, but not containing above 400 Families. Others of less note and estimation being, 2. *Sogard*, 3. *Wick*. 4. *Bingh*, &c. small Towns compared with Villages upon the Continent, but the best they have. And yet so populous is the Island, that they are able to arm 7000 good fighting men if there be occasion.

The second of the three, in repute and bigness, is that of *WOLLIN*, situate over against *Camin*: so called from *Wollin* the chief Town, (*Jüllenn* it is called in *Latine*) made an Episcopal See by *Warislaus*, the first Christian Prince of this Nation, which on the Sackage of this City was removed to *Camin*. A Town which once so flourished in Traffick, that it gave place to none but *Constance*: the *Russians*, *Danes*, *Saxons*, *Vandals*, &c. having here their particular Streets. But being miserably sacked by *Waldemar* King of *Denmark*, Anno 1170, most of the Trade hereof was removed to *Lubeck*, since which time it never could come near its former glories.

The last in reputation is that of *USEDOM*, situated betwixt both, not far from *Wolgast*; so called from *Usedom* the chief Town in it, of which little observable. All three were the Habitation of the ancient *Rugii*, who under *Odoacer* K. of the *Hervuli* subverted the Western Empire, conquered *Italy*, and made themselves Masters of it, till subdued by the *Goths*. Those which remained in these

Islands became after subject to the *Slavians*, and had once Kings of their own: the first whose name occurs in Story being *Cyris*, the Son of *Ratze*, a pusilliant Prince, extending his Dominions into *Holfstein*, *Dinmarsh*, and the City of *Lubeck*, which he built about the year 1100, afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Adolph* the 2. Earl of *Holfstein*, by some esteemed the Founder of it. But his Issue male failing in the year 1226, it fell by Compact made between them to the Dukes of *Pomerania*, to whom these Islands ever since have continued subject.

And as for *Pomerania* itself, the old Inhabitants thereof were part of the *Rugii* before mentioned the *Reudigni*, *Langi-Nani*, and *Longi-Didoni*, with part of the *Perisli* and *Burgundians*; into whose void rooms the *Pomorz* and other Tribes of the *Winitibi* (the most potent Nation of the *Slavians*) did in fine succeed, extending their Dominions to the Banks of the *Vistula*, the parts adjoining unto which, to difference them from *Pomerania*, were called *Pomerellia*. But that part of it being given by *Meislaus*, the last Prince thereof, dying without Issue, Anno 1295, to *Primslaus* Duke of *Poland*, the name and power of the Princes or Dukes of *Pomerania* became confined within narrower Bounds than at first they had. The first Prince of it whom we meet with on good record was one *Barnimus*, of the noble *Gryphonian* Family, Anno 933, whose Grandson *Suanthiborus* commanded over all this Tract. Put his Dominions being parted betwixt his Sons, *Bugislaus*, who had *Pomerellia*, retained the Language and old Customs of the *Slavonians*; *Warislaus*, who possessed the residue, conformed himself to the Laws and Language of the *Saxons*: the Country being by that means accounted for a part of *Germany*, and added unto the Empire an account thereof in the time of *Frederick Barbarossa*, by whom *Bugislaus* and *Casimir*, Sons of *Warislaus* were made Princes of the Empire and Dukes of *Pomerania*. The Estate being afterwards divided betwixt *Bugislaus* and *Orto*, Sons of *Barnimus* the first, and the House of *Orto* failing in the person of *Orto* the third, that part hereof was given by the Emperor *Frederick* the third to *Frederick* the 2. Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*, the cause of much Contention amongst these Marquesses and the other House of the Dukes of *Pomerania*, which was thus agreed at last, That both Princes should continue the Arms and Title, the Possession of it to be yielded to the Duke of *Pomerania*, on the failing of whose Issue male it should descend upon the Heirs of the House of *Brandenburg*. The Succession of these Princes follow in this order.

The Dukes of POMERANIA.

1. *Warislaus*, the first Christian Prince of the *Pomeranians*, Baptized by *Orto* Bishop of *Bamberg*, Anno 1124.
- 1128 2. *Bugislaus*, Son of *Warislaus*, created by *Frederick Barbarossa* the first Duke of *Pomerania*.
- 1183 3. *Bugislaus* II. Son of *Bugislaus*, planted the void parts of *Pomerania* with *Saxon* Colonies.
- 1222 4. *Barnimus*, Son of *Bugislaus* the second: after whose death *Pomerania* was divided into two Principalities.

Dukes of WOLGAST.

Dukes of STETIN.

- 1277 5. *Bugislaus* II. Son of *Barnimus*.
- 1319 6. *Warislaus*, Son to *Bugislaus*.
- 1326 7. *Barnimus* II.
- 1365 8. *Warislaus* II.
- 1277 1. *Orto*, Duke of *Pomerania-Stein*.
- 1345 2. *Casimir*, Son of *Orto*.
- 1363 3. *Casimir* II. Son of *Casimir*.

on the West side of the *Elbe*, in form orbicular, and falling every way from the sides of a Mountain; beautified with a flatly and pleasant Cattle belonging to the Elector of Saxony, who is Lord thereof, built by *John Frederick* the Elector. Anno 1535. Near to the City is a Lake of a mile in compass, for which the Citizens pay yearly to the Duke 500 Guildens. 2. *Worlitz*, upon the *Elbe*, once a Commandery of the Templars. 3. *Weissenburg*, lying towards *Brumswick*. 4. *Kemberg*, on the *Elbe*. 5. *Buttersfeld*, between the *Elbe* and the *Mulda*. And 6. *Wittenberg*, on the *Elbe*, in an open Plain, but strongly fenced with Walls, Ramparts, and deep Ditches. The chief beauty of it lieth in one fair Street, extending the chief length of the City: in the midst thereof is the Cathedral-Church, a large Market-place, and the Common-hall. In former times it was the Seat of the Dukes Electors, till the Electoral Dignity was conferred on the House of *Meissen*, who, liking better their own Country, kept their Courts at *Dresden*, but so, that *Wittenberg* is still acknowledged for the Head City of the Electorate; and was made an University for Divines by Duke *Frederick*, Anno 1508. It was called *Wittenberg*, as some conjecture, from *Witkinthus*, once Lord of Saxony, when the extent thereof was greatest: famous for the Sepulchres of *Luther* and *Melancthon*, but chiefly for that here were the Walls of Popery first broken down, and the Reformation of Religion begun by *Luther*, of the wonderful success whereof we have spoke already.

Of the Affairs of this little Country we can say but little, more than the means by which it came into the hands of the Dukes of Saxony, and consequently to the name which it still retains. Concerning which we are to know, that on the Deprivation of Duke *Henry*, firnamed the Lion, whose Greatness was grown formidable even to the Emperours themselves, the Dukedom of Saxony was dismembered into many parcels; *Brumswick* and *Lunenburgh* being given unto the Children of the Duke deprived, the lower Parts of *Westphalen* seized on by *Philip* Archbishop of *Cölen*, the parts thereof about the *Wefer* by the Bishop of *Paderborn*, *Herman* the Lantgrave of *Thuringia* laying hold of that part of this Estate which was nearest to him, *Lubeck* and many other of the principal Cities made Imperial, or governing themselves as Free Estates, the Ancestors of the Princes of *Anhalt* and the Earls of *Mansfeld* endowed with large Possessions also out of this great Patrimony; the Emperour not only conving at it, but willingly consenting to that Dissipation, the better to reward and content those Princes who had assisted him in his Wars against the Duke. By which means there was nothing left of the ancient Saxony to be catted upon *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, whom *Frederick* *Barbarossa* had created Duke Elector in the room of *Henry* deprived. And though Duke *Bernard* for his many good Services to the Empire had been before gratified with the City of *Wittenberg* by *Conrad* the 3. and had conquered from Duke *Henry* the whole Country of *Lauenburg*; yet all being found too little to maintain the Port of a Duke Elector, it pleased the Emperour *Frederick* to bestow upon him all those Lands and Territories which lay between the *Sala* and the *Elbe*, on the North of *Misnia*, to make *Wittenberg* the Electoral City, and give unto the County thus united to it the name of *Ober-Sax* or *Upper-Saxony*, which it continueth to this day.

2. *MISNIA*, or *Meissen*, is bounded on the East with *Lusatia*, on the West with *Duringen*, on the North with Saxony specially so called and some part of *Brandenburg*, on the South with *Poitland* and some part of *Bohemia*. The Country was once overpread with Woods, and full of Bogs, rendering the Air unwholesome, and the Soil un-

profitable; both rectified by the care and industry of the people; now yielding four Mines of Silver, and great plenty both of Corn and Pasturage; well watered with the Rivers *Sala*, *Plessa*, *Elster*, and *Altuda*.

Places of note observation in it are, 1. *Dresden*, seated on the *Altis*, having continually on her Walls and Bulwarks 150 Pieces of Ordnance; in it a Stable of the Duke's, in which are 128 Horses of service, and a Magazine out of which 30000 Horses and Foot may be armed at a day's warning. The Town it self is situate on both sides of the River, by which it is divided into the Old Town and the New, joynted into one by a Bridge of 800 paces in length. The Country round about it is very rich and pleasant, able to sustain great multitudes. For that cause it was made the ordinary Seat of the Dukes of Saxony, who have here a strong and stately Castle. 2. *Naumburg*, 3. *Mersburg*, both seated on the River *Sala*, two Episcopal Sees. 4. *Leipzig*, as famous an University for Philosophers as *Jene* in *Lorain* is for Physicians. It seemeth the Scholars and Citizens will not suffer their Beer to perish, of which here is so much drunk and exported, that the very Custom of it due unto the Duke amounteth to 20000 pounds yearly; yet is this Town of no more than two Churches; but wealthy, populous, and built for the most part of fair Free-sons, and honoured with the Courts of Justice for all the Country. Though seated on the meeting of *Plessa*, *Parda*, and *Elster*, 3 Rivers which lie almost on all sides of it; yet it is not strong, having been thrice taken by the Imperialists in less than 2 year during the late *German* Wars. Sufficiently famous (if for nothing else) for the great battle fought near it between the late King of *Sweden* and the Count of *Tilly*: the honour whereof falling to the *Swedes* and *Saxons*, (with the death of 15000 on both sides, and the loss of all the Baggage, Arms and Ammunition of the Imperialists) freed all these parts of Germany from that civil and spiritual Bondage which was intended by the Emperour to be put upon them. 5. *Milberg*, on the *Elbe*, where *John-Frederick* the Elector was discomfited and taken prisoner by *Charles* the fifth, and by him deprived not long after of his Estate and Dignity. 6. *Meissen*, on the West-side of the same River, in a hilly and uneven ground, built by the Emperour *Henry* the first for defence of the Empire against the *Slaves*: a Bishop's See, and the first Seat of the Marquesses of this Country, both which, together with the Burggrave of the Town, had their Palaces or Mansion-houses hanging close together on the top of a Hill overlooking both the Town and Country. From this Town the whole Province had the name of *Meissen*. 7. *Freiberg*, near the Mountains of *Bohemia*, rich in Mines of Silver. 8. *Roslit*, not far from which are rich Mines of Tin, discovered first in these parts by a *Cornish*-man spoken of before.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the *Hermunduri* and *Suardones*, subdued or outed by the *Sorabi*, a great Tribe of the *Slaves* firnamed *Winithi*: first conquered by the Emperour *Henry* the first, who built the strong Town of *Meissen* to keep them under, and to impede the neighbouring *Slaves* from any incroachments on the Empire. Being thus added to the Empire and account of Germany it was a while governed by such Officers as the Emperour was appointed to guard these Marches: the first proprietors Marquess being one *Eckhard*, Son of the Earl of *Ostland*, (descended from a younger Son of *Wickard*, the last King of the *Saxons*) by the munificence of *Ordo* the third: not made hereditary till the time of *Henry* the fifth, who gave it in Fee to *Conrad* Marquess of *Lotharing* and *Lusatia*, whose Nephew *Theodorick* by his Son *Ordo*, firnamed the Rich, married *Judith*, Daughter of *Herman* Lantgrave of *Duringen*; by which match *Pa-*

gen accrued to the House of *Meissen*, *Henry* their Son succeeding in both Estates. To this *Henry* succeeded *Albert* his Son, and after him successively four *Fredericks*; the last whereof, on the failure of the House of *Anhalt*, was by the Emperour *Sigismund* created Elector and Duke of Saxony, either because defended from the House of *Witkinthus*, or as most able to pay for the Investiture, or else left able to sustain the Estate and Dignity of a Duke Elector, which had but weakly been supported by the former Family. In his posterity these Honours and Estates do as yet continue; but neither all nor always in the possession of the Dukes-Electors. For in the Partage made between *Ernestus* and *Albert*, the Sons of *Frederick*, (according to the ill custom of Germany) this Country, or the greatest part of it, was assigned to *Albert*, succeeded in the same by *George* and *Henry* his two Sons: which *Henry* was Father of that *Maurice*, who, being settled and confirmed herein by the Duke *John-Frederick*, did after most unworthily take up Arms against him, supplanted him, and finally possessed himself of this whole Electorate; of which more anon.

3. *VOITLAND* is bound on the East with *Bohemia*, on the West with *Frankenland*, on the North with *Misnia* or *Meissen*, on the South with the Upper *Palatinat*. So called, as some say, from the *Juives* or *Vites*, (some of that People, who, together with the *Saxons* and *Angles*, conquered Britain) of whom it had the name of *Viteland*, that is to say, the Land or Country of the *Vites*. But being I find not that the *Saxons* did spread so far Eastward, I rather think that this name was given it by the *Slaves*, who finding it deserted, or but thinly peopled, at their coming thither, might call it by the name of *Voidland*; from which the alteration unto *Voitland* is both plain and obvious. It is the smallest Province of all Germany, and never of such repute as to have any particular Prince, as most others had; but always reckoned as an accretory to some greater Estate. Nor hath it any Town or Cities of great estimation: the chief of those which are, being 1. *Olpinz*, 2. *Words*, 3. *Cornab*, 4. *Schnenberg*, near the Mountains called *Sudeti* by *Ptolomy*, famed for Silver-Mines. 5. *Gatzberg*, 6. *Culmbach*, and 7. *Hoff*, not much remarkable, but only for the Princes of it of the House of *Brandenburg*; called formerly *Curia Pogniana*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were parts of the *Nervantes* and *Dandani*, succeeded to by the *French* and *Slaves*, as they severally defended Southwards into warmer Countries. Possessed and planted by the *Slaves* it obtained this name. But being a small Nation and a small Estate, it never had the honour of a particular Prince; but did most probably belong to the Lords of *Meissen*, upon which it bordered, and now, in their right, to the Duke of Saxony. But so that the Duke of Saxony is not the sole Lord hereof: the Marquesses of *Onspach* of the House of *Brandenburg* possessing the Towns of *Hoff* and *Culmbach*, and some other parts of it: the Patrimony at present of *Christian*, Son of *Joachim* *Ernest*, the late Marquess of *Onspach*, who now enjoyeth them, with the Title of Marquess of *Culmbach*.

4. *THURINGIA* is bounded on the East with *Misnia* and the River *Sala*, on the West with *Hassia*, on the North with the Wood *Hartz*, and the proper Saxony, on the South with the mountainous Forest of *Duringen-wald*, by it parted from *Frankenland*: the Forest and the Country both so called from the *Thuringians*, the ancient Inhabitants hereof, communicating their name to the place they dwelt in.

The Country is environed round about with woody

Mountains, but within those Mountains plain and pleasant, fruitful in Corn, and very plentiful of Woods, which yield great profit to the people; but without some Mines of Gold and Silver, and rich pits of Salt; able to furnish out a Feast, but for wine only, which is the greatest want hereof. The whole length of it is not above 120 miles, and the breadth no more; yet is it so populous and well planted, that there are said to be in it 12 Earldoms, and as many Abbies, 144 Cities, and as many Market-Towns, 150 Castles, and 2000 Villages.

The principal of these are 1. *Jene*, on the River *Sala*, bordering upon *Misnia*, an University chiefly of Physicians, founded in the year 1555, by the Sons of *John-Frederick* the Elector, taken Prisoner and deprived by *Charles* the fifth. 2. *Erfurt*, on the River *Gera*, out of which are due to many Chancels, that every street almost hath the benefit of it. A rich populous, and well-built City, accounted amongst the best of Germany, and made an University in the time of the Emperour *Wenceslaus*, Anno 1382. Many times burnt, but still reviving, as the Phoenix out of the Ashes, into greater glory. It was at first immediately subject to the Archbishops and Electors of *Mentz*, the first Founders of it, as being built by *William*, Son of the Emperour *Ordo* the first, and then Archbishop of that City, of whom more anon; but having freed themselves from him, they have since governed themselves as a Free Estate, and are one of the *Hanse*-Towns, not subject to the Duke of Saxony as their Lord, but their Patron and good Neighbour only. 3. *Mulhausen*, and 4. *Northusen*, two Imperial Cities, but else not observable. 5. *Smalcald*, famous for the League here made Anno 1530. between all the Princes and Cities which maintained the Doctrine of *Luther*, for defence thereof, and of one another in the pursuance of that work: by which famous Confederacy *Luther* not only kept his head on his shoulders, but the Religion by him reformed grew to that strength, that no force or policy could ever root it up. 6. *Kala*, or *Hale*, on the River *Faiza*, of great repute for the exceeding quantity of Salt there made, and vended in other places, at which Town *Philip* the Lantgrave was treacherously taken Prisoner, as you shall hear anon. 7. *Weymar*, a Town which, together with the Castle of *Gotha*, were assigned for the Estate and maintenance of that religious, though unfortunate, Prince *John-Frederick* Duke of Saxony, after his Discomfiture and Imprisonment by *Charles* the 5. the ordinary seat of the Dukes of *Saxon-Weymar*, who live here in a flatly and magnificent Castle made of polished stone, most artificially contrived, and beautified with Orchards, Gardens, and other pleasures, but made more pleasant by the watering of the River *Ilms*, upon which it standeth. 8. *Gotha*, upon the River *Lan*, laid by *Rathsmern* to be built by the *Goths*, and by them thus named. A place not long since of great importance, and fortified with a very strong Castle, called *Grunnstein*, that being made the Retiring-place of one *Grunbachius* and other seditious persons under the Protection of *John-Frederick*, one of the Sons of the deprived Elector. It was taken after a long Siege by *Augustus* the Elector of Saxony, (to whom the strength of this place being in the hands of the injured Family was a great Eye-sore) and by the command of the Estates of the Empire at the Diet at *Regen-spurg*, Anno 1567, demolished, and levelled with the ground.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Chasuaris* of *Tacitus*, and after them the *Thuringi*, who, with the *Hermi*, under the Conduct of *Odacres*, conquered Italy; called by some *Thuringii*, by others supposed to be the *Tiranga* of *Ptolomy*. Not heard of in this County till the Reign of *Childeric* the fourth King of the *French*; that

taking up the whole Provinces of *Holfia* and *Thuringia* under one *Bifinius* their King. Their Arms were at that time, and long after, *Azure*, a Lion Barrie *Argent* and *Gules*, armed and crowned *Or*. Being overcome at the great Battle of *Zulph* near *Colein*, where they joined with the *Alman*, they were afterwards totally subdued by *Theodoric* the French King of *Metz*, their King *Hermanfridus* taken, and most perfidiously slain; part of their Country taken from them, and given to the *Saxons* (who assisted in that War against them) becoming subject for the rest to the Kings of *France*; but so, that for some time after they had Kings of their own, *Baderick* and *Hermanfrid*, two brothers, Kings hereof successively, being Uncles to *Radeagund*, a Princess of great Piety, the Wife of *Cloaire* King of *France*, Anno 559. In following times it was united to the Empire by *Henry* the first; conferred not long after by *Orlo* the first (the Son of *Henry*) on *William*, one of his younger Sons, then Archbishop of *Mentz*, which he left to his Successors in that See; governed by their *Vidames* and Provincial Officers, till the time of *Comradus Salicus*, when *Ludovicus Barbarus*, one of these *Vidames* (or *Vicedominis*) made himself the Proprietary of it, and left the same unto his Children after his decease. But in the time of *Comrade* the 2. the issue of this *Ludovicus* either failing or dispossessed, it was by the Emperor conferred on *Lewis of Orleans*, Son to a Sister of his Emperors, the Title of *Langrave* being given to them of this Family for their greater Honour. Under eight Princes of this Line, whereof five successively had the name of *Lewis*, this Estate continued: next falling to *Herman*, a brother of the fifth *Lewis*, who, by contributing to the Ruine of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, financed the Lion, in favour of *Frederick Barbarossa*, had for his share (in the dividing of the spoil) those parts of his Estates which lay nearest to him, called then the *Palatinat* of *Saxony*, recovered for the most part afterward by the Dukes of *Brunswick*, the right Heirs of *Henry*. He being dead, this Country fell to a sixth *Lewis*, and last of all to *Henry* the brother of that *Lewis*, in whom the Male-issue failed, having continued for the space of 252 years. To please all parties interested in the Succession, the Estate, before entire, was divided into two Parts or Provinces: of which this now called *Duringen*, or *Thuringia*, was allotted to *Henry* Marquess of *Mifnia*, Son of *Judith*, the Daughter of *Herman*; and the Western part thereof, with the Title of the *Langravedom* of *Meissen*, adjudged to *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, in right of *Sophia* his Wife, Daughter of *Lewis* the sixth: in the description of which Countries we shall hear more of them. United this to the House of *Meissen* in the person of *Henry* the then Marquess, Anno 1263, it flourished in long Peace and Happiness under the Princes of that House. Finally, it much increased both in Power and Dignity by the addition of *Ober-Sav* and the Electorship of *Saxony*, conferred on *Frederick* the Fourth, Marquess and *Langrave* of these Countries, Anno 1423; in which Estate it still continueth, the fourth and last of all these Provinces which now make up the Dukedom of *Saxony*, (as for the reasons above mentioned it hath long been called) though, none of them, nor any part or parcel of them, within the Bounds and Limits of the ancient *Saxony*, as before was said.

2. *SAXONY* properly so called, or the proper *SAXONY*, is bounded on the South with *Duringen* and the great Wood *Hartz*, part of the old *Heremian* Forest, and from thence so named; on the East with part of *Mifnia*, *Ober-Sav*, and the Marches of *Brandenburg*; upon the North with the Dukedom of *Mecklenburg*; and on the West with those of *Brunswick*, *Lunenbourg*; and part of

Holfcin. So called from the *Saxons*, once the Lords hereof, (of whom more anon) and the sole part of all their great and many Conquests which retains their name.

The Air hercof is somewhat sharp, but healthy; the Soil in the South-west parts hilly and uneven, chiefly rich in Minerals, elsewhere sufficiently fruitful. It is divided into 4 Estates; that is to say, 1. the Principality of *Anhalt*, 2. the Earldom of *Manfeld*, 3. the Bishoppick of *Meysburg*, 4. the Dukedom of *Lauenburg*.

1. The Principate of *ANHALT* is bounded on the South with *Duringen* and the Wood called *Hartz*, on the West and North with the County of *Manfeld*, on the East with *Mifnia*; much shaded, if not too much over-grown with Woods, part of the *Hartz*, or old *Heremian* Forest, whence it had the name; *Holt* in the Dutch signifying a Wood or Forest; and the Princes of this House being created to this Dignity by the Style of *Vincipes Heremian* in *Anhalt*. Chief Towns of it are, 1. *Bernburg*, the Dynastic and usual Title of this house before they were created Princes of *Anhalt*. 2. *Ballefeld*, part of the ancient Patrimony of the first Princes hercof. 3. *Dessau*, the birth-place of some, and the burial-place of others, of this Family; beautified with a strong Castle, built by Prince *Albert* the 2. Anno 1341. 4. *Storoff*, the usual place of the Prince's Residence. 5. *Coten*, a well fortified place, in vain besieged by the joint-Forces of the Archbishop of *Meysburg*, and the Earl of *Swartzemund*. 6. *Candt*. Here sometimes also stood the old Castle of *Alfand*, the first seat of these Princes, but long since destroyed, now only to be visited in Records and *Lit* files.

We shall be sent no higher than the first belicging of the *Roman* Capitol by the ancient *Gauls*, to find out the Pedigree and Descent of the Earls of *Lippi*; but we must go as high as the Ark for the Princes of *Anhalt*; some fetching them from *Azkenaz*, the Son of *Gomer*, and Nephew of *Japhet*, from whom, and no other, this *Ascanian* Family (for by that name it is called) are to fetch their Pedigree. But to content our selves with more sober thoughts, we are to know, that when *Theodoric* King of *Metz*, undertook the Conquest of the *Thuringians*, he was therein aided by the *Saxons* with 9000 men; under the conduct of one *Bernwald*, or *Bernibobald*, a man of great power and rank amongst them. The *Saxons* were recompensed for that service with such parts of the conquered Country as lay nearest to them, and *Bernibobald* himself rewarded with the Towns of *Alfand*, *Ballefeld*, and the Lands adjoining, Anno 524, to be holden by them under the Sovereignty of the French. From which Town and the Castle of *Alfand*, afterwards razed to the ground by *Pepin* King of the French, (for denying the accustomed Tributes) Anno 747, most probable it is, that the name of the *Ascanian* Family was assumed by them. So that we may behold it as a Family of as great antiquity as the most in *Europe*, little inferior to any of the greatest Monarchs. His Successors were for the most part busied in Wars against their neighbours of *Mifnia*; but rather upon hopes of Spoil and plunder, than in way of Conquest; till the time of *Albert* surnamed *Orifius*, defended by a long succession of Princes from *Bernwald* or *Bernibobald*, before remembered. This *Albert* having done many legal services unto *Comrade* the 3. and his Son *Frederick Barbarossa*, (especially in taking the Cities of *Breme* and *Lirnesburg*) was by the last created Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*, Anno 1153; the Father of that *Bernard* who by the munificence and bounty of the same Emperor, was created Duke-Elector of *Saxony* in the room of *Duke Henry* surnamed the Lion, Anno 1180, becoming so the

Stem

Stem of the two greatest Princes of all the Empire, *Henry* the 2. Son of this *Bernard*, was by the same Emperor not long after enriched with much of the Lands and Territories lying nearest to him, which had before belonged to *Duke Henry* the Lion, and created the first Prince of *Anhalt*, the first of all this ancient and illustrious Family which had been honoured with that Title, both Lands and Title continuing in his Race to this very day; the two Electorates of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg* being in the mean while translated unto other Families. The most considerable of which Princes, though all men of Eminence, were 1. *Rodolph*, General of the Forces of the Emperor *Maximilian* the first against the *Venetians*, whom he twice overcame in Battle. 2. *George* the Divine, a great Reformer of the Church by his diligent Preaching; whose Sermons and other Tractates (learned for the Times he lived in) are still extant. 3. *Christians*, born in the year 1688, Commander of the Forces of *Frederick*, Prince Elector Palatine, in the Wars of *Bohemia*.

2. The Earldom of *MANSELD* is bounded on the East with the River, *Sala*, parting it from *Ober-Sav*; on the West with the River *Wieper*, which divides it from *Brunswick*; on the North with the Bishoppick of *Meysburg*; and on the South with *Anhalt* and part of *Duringen*. So called from *Manfeld*, once the chief Town of it, situate on the River *Wieper*, but now much decayed: the other Towns of note hercin being 2. *Isleben*, more in the middle of the Country; for that cause more convenient for the seats of Justice, first settled here by Earl *Volradus*, Anno 1448, and by that means made the Metropolis of this Earldom: By some affirmed to have took this name from the Goddess *Ise*, who, after the death of her Husbands, (as is said by *Tacitus*) visited these parts. Famous more certainly for the Birth of *Luther*, transplanted hence for the study of good Arts to *Meysburg*, and chosen thence to be Divinity-Reader in *Wittenburg*, where he hammered out that great Work of the Reformation, as before was said; born here in the year 1483, and here deceasing in the house of the Earl of *Manfeld*, Anno 1546. 3. *Wieper*, (or *Wipra*) so called of the River on which it standeth. 4. *Querfurt*, the honourary Title of the Ancestors of the Earls of *Manfeld*. 5. *Rotenburg*, 6. *Alsted*, 7. *Heldering*, bought of the Earls of *Holfcin*.

Some, who delineate the Pedigree of these Earls of *Manfeld*, fetch it out as high as from *Heger*, one of King *Arthur*'s Knights of the Round-Table, born at *Manfeld* in *Nottinghamshire*, who, settling himself in *Germany*, gave that name to his House: a military original, and very suitable to such an active and warlike Family. But those that do not soar so high derive them from the Earls of *Querfurt*, men of authority in these parts; made more considerable by *Lobharium* Emperor and Duke of *Saxony*, but most of all by *Frederick Barbarossa*, who conferred many goodly Lordships lying hereabout (once part of the Estate of *Duke Henry* the Lion) on *Burchard* the fifth Earl thereof, a constant Follower of his, not only in his Wars against *Duke Henry* before named, but in those also which he managed in the *Holy Land*, in the course whereof he died at *Antioch*, Anno 1189. His Nephew *Burchard*, by a Son of the same name, was the first of this Family that had the Title of Earl of *Manfeld*, about the year 1250; continued ever since unto his posterity, (but under some Acknowledgment to the Electors of *Saxony*.) Of these the most eminent were 1. *Valeradius*, one of the Council of Estate to the Emperor *Sigismund*, Anno 1411, a great improver of the Patrimony of the Earls hercof. 2. *John George*, Lord

Deputy or Lieutenant of *Saxony* under Duke *Augustus*, 3. *Peter-Ernest*, Governour of *Luxemburg* under *Charles* the 5. and *Philip* the 2. by them much exercised and employed in their Wars with *France* and their *Belgick* Rebels. 4. *Albert*, a constant Friend of *Luther*, and a faithful Follower of *John Frederick*, the deprived Elector; in whose Quarrel being out of his Estate, he retired to *Meysburg*, which he most gallantly defended against the Emperor. And 5. *Ernestus*, Nephew of that *Albert* by his Son *John*, so famous for the War which he maintained in most parts of *Germany* against *Ferdinand* the 2. in behalf of *Frederick* Prince Elector Palatine and the States of *Bohemia*, with so great constancy and courage.

3. On the North of *Manfeld* and *Ober-Sav* lieth the Bishoppick of *MEYDEBURG*, having on the West parts of *Brunswick* and *Lunenbourg*, and on the North and the East, the Marches of *Brandenburg*. So called from the Episcopical See founded in *Magdeburg* the chief City, by some called *Meysburg* and *Maydenburg*, whence by a Greek name *Parthenopolis*, and *Virginopolis* by a mangled word made of Greek and *Latine*. A City seated on the *Elbe*, divided into three parts, but all strongly fortified, begirt with high Walls, deep Ditches, and almost unconquerable Bulwarks; yet very beautiful withal, (before the last Defolation of it) of elegant Buildings, fair Streets, and magnificent Temples. It was built in the form of a Crescent by the Emperor *Orlo* the first, the Founder of it, who having translated hither the Archbishopric See, for the greater honour of the place built the Cathedral of *S. Maurice*, where his Wife lies buried, Anno 948, testified by the Inscription to be the Daughter of *Edmund* King of *England*. A Town which hath long flourished in a great deal of Glory, and tasted of as much Affliction as any other in *Germany*. For refusing to receive the *Interim*, it was out-lawed by the Emperor *Charles* the fifth, and given to him that could first take it. It was first hereupon attempted by the Duke of *Atteckenburg*, but he was in a Camifado taken Prisoner, his Army routed, his Nobles made captive, and 260 Horfe brought into the City. Next, it was besieged by *Duke Maurice* of *Saxony*, who on honourable terms was by a long Siege received into it, Anno 1550, when it had stood on its own Guard the space of three years. Which long Opposition of one Town taught the *German* Princes what Constancy could do; it held up the coals of Rebellion in *Germany*; and indeed proved to be the Fire which burned the Emperor's Trophies. For here *Duke Maurice* coming acquainted with Baron *Hedeck*, hatched that Confederacy by which not long after this great Emperor was driven out of *Germany*. At last it yielded to *Duke Maurice*, under the protection of whose Successors it hath since enjoyed a long course of Felicity, till the year 1631, in which it was most miserably burnt and sacked by the Earl of *Tilly*; of whom it is observed, that after that Fate he never prospered, being shortly after totally routed at the Battle of *Leipzick*, and wounded to the death not long after that near the River *Leck*. Other places of note in this Bishoppick are, 2. *Wormfeld*, beautified with a fair Castle, not far from *Magdeburg*, the ordinary Seat or Retiring-place of the Bishop. 3. *Grahn*, upon the River *Strauna*. 4. *Mackayn*, on the same River. 5. *Barleben*, beneath *Meysburg*, on the *Elbe*. 6. *Landby*, betwixt the *Elbe* and the *Strauna*, not much observable.

The Archbishopric See being translated hither from *Querfurt* and *Vrese* (places too obscure for so great a dignity) by *Orlo* the first, and by him endowed with great Revenues and a goodly Territory round about it, the

Archbishop hereof was also by his procurement made the Primate of Germany, acknowledged so by all but the Bishop of Salisburg and the three spiritual Electors. For the Administration of Justice in matters Criminal and Civil, the said Ordo did ordain an Officer, whom they called the *Burgewe*, conferring that Office first on *Gero* Marquis of *Lusatia*. Through many hands it came at last to *Bernhard* Lord of *Querfurt*, and the Earls of *Manfeld*, many of which enjoyed this Honour, settled at last by the Emperor *Rodolph* of *Habsburg* on the Dukes of *Saxony*, who by this means came to have great command and influence on the whole Estate. The Archbishops notwithstanding continued Lords of it, and the whole Territory or District adjoining to it, till the Reformation of Religion; when the Revenues, separated from the Jurisdiction, were given to Lay-Princes, (for the most part of the House of *Brandenburg*) with the Title of Administrator. Finally, by the Pacification made at *Munster*, this fair Estate is to be settled for ever on the Electors of that House, to be possessed by them, and their Heirs and Successors by the Title of the Dukes of *Magdeburg*, the better to content them for the Concession which they made to the Crown of Sweden of a great part of their right and Title to the Dukedom of *Pomerania*.

4. On the North-west of *Magdeburg*, and on both sides also of the *Elbe*, lieth the Dukedom of *LAWENBURG*, bounded on the North with *Mecklenburg*, on the West with part of *Holstein*, and on the South with the River *Elbe* and part of *Lauenburg*; so called of *Lauenburg*, the chief Town thereof, and the seat of the Dukes. The Town was first built-as some conceive, by *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, surnamed the Lion, the better to assure his Conquests on that side of the River, by whom it was called *Leopoldus* or *Leoburgum*, and *Lauenburg* for the same reasons by the Dutch or German: on the Proscription of which Prince, the Country being wasted and the Towns destroyed, *Bernhard* of *Anhalt*, designed his Successor in the Dukedom of *Saxony*, liking the situation of it, caused it to be re-edified in stronger manner than before, a great part of the materials of the Town of *Erdenburg* being carried cross the Water to enlarge this place. Afterwards being razed by the said Duke *Henry* in the course of that War it was re-built again by *D. Bernard*, the new Elector, who is therefore by some Writers made the Founder of it. Other places of note herein are, 2. *Erdenburg*, a well-fortified piece, opposite to *Lauenburg*, on the higher-side of the *Elbe*; not so large now as heretofore, the Town of *Lauenburg* being made greater by the lessening of this. 3. *Ratzeburg*, an Episcopal See, founded here by Duke *Henry* surnamed the Lion, upon his gaining of the *Slaves* to the Christian Faith, and of late times the Sepulchre of this Ducal Family. 4. *Moltze*, on the farther side of the *Elbe*, not far from *Lauenburg*, the cause of much Contention betwixt the Dukes hereof, and the Town of *Hamburg*, who pretend a Title thereunto.

This Country, being for the most part under the Command of the *Slaves*, was from them conquered (together with the whole Country of *Mecklenburg*) by Duke *Henry* the Lion, and by his care converted to the Christian Faith; but he being proscribed, and this Seigneurie extorted from him by Duke *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, his Successor in the Electoral Dignity, it was by *Albert*, Son of this *Bernard*, conferred on John his second Son, from whom the Dukes of *Saxony*, commonly called Dukes of *Saxon Lawenburg*, do derive themselves; who being pretermitted by the Emperor *Sigismund* at the death of *Albert* the 3. the last of the direct Line of *Bernard*, or else not caring for a Title which carried with it too great Sail for so small a Vessel as the Estate of the Elector at the present was, have

since contented themselves with their ancient Patrimony.

It is now time we should proceed to the Story of *Saxony*, the ancient inhabitants of which Tract were the *Cherusci* or *Limbardi* of *Magdeburg*, and part of the *Cherusci* about *Manfeld* and *Wittenberg*. Overcome by the prevailing *Saxons*, they became part of their name and Country, which in the full extent thereof was once far greater than now it is, containing all the Countries betwixt the *Rhene* and the River *Eyder* in the *Chernische* and from the River *Sala* to the German and *Baltick* Oceans. There are said by some to be a People of *Asia*, and there called the *Saca*, who, finding that small Territory (now a part of *Tartaria*) too narrow for them, took their Country, and at last fixed themselves in the *Chernische* or *Sac-fens*; where they first took the names of *Sac-fens* (or *Sac-fens*) that is to say, the Sons of the *Saca*. The improbability of this we have there disputed. Omitting therefore that and the like Originations of them, I conceive them (for my part) to be natural *German*, some Tribe of that most populous and potent People of the *Suevi*: but for the reason of the name, let every man enjoy the pleasure of his own opinion. Certain I am that in *Ptolemy*'s time they were possessed of those parts beyond the *Elb*; and thence extended to the *Eyder*, part of which Tract is now known by the name of *Holstein*; and were accounted in that time to be no New-comers. Afterwards, as they grew in number, they enlarged their quarters, and passing over the *Elb*, in the time of the latter *Roman* Emperours, possessed themselves of the void places which were left by the *French*, then busied in the Conquest of more fruitful Countries; communicating their name to all the Nations which they overcame, as the *French* had formerly done before them. So that in time they stretch themselves from the River *Sala* on the East, to the German Ocean on the West, and took up the now Dukedom of *Holstein*, *Lauenburg*, and *Brumwick*, the Bishopsricks of *Bremen*, *Verden*, *Hildesheim*, *Halberstadt*, and *Magdeburg*, the Marches of *Brandenburg*, the Earl-dom of *Manfeld*, *Wesphalen*, both *Frislands*, *Over-Issel*, with as much of *Gelderland* and *Holland* as lay on that side of the *Rhene*. By which account the present Electoral Family hath not one foot of the old *Saxony* in their possession; the Seat and Patrimony of the Electors being removed into other Countries, upon the Alterations and Changes which have happened in that Estate; the name and Title of *Saxony* being given to the Country about *Wittenberg* for no other reason but because it was the chief Seat of the Duke-Electors. But to proceed, a stout and valiant Nation questionless they were, the Conquerors of the Isle of *Britain*; and they were the first People of the *German* which yielded up their Country unto *Charles* the Great, by his means gained unto the Gospel anno 785. Their last King was called *Wittikindus*, from whom descend the Kings of *France*, since the time of *Hugh Capet*, the present Kings of *Denmark*, of the house of *Oldenburg*, the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Savoy*, the Marquises of *Montferrat*, besides many other noble and illustrious Families though of lesser note. The right or direct Line of the Male-issue of *Wittikind* (whom *Charles* the Great created, of a King, the first Duke of *Saxony*) determining in the person of *Orbo* the third, Emperor of *Germany*, it was by him conferred on *Bernard* Lord of *Lauenburg*, (but the precise time I find not:) *Henry*, I surnamed the Saint, who succeeded this *Orbo* in the Empire, the next in the collateral Line, being pretermitted, either because at that time settled in the great Dukedom of *Bavaria*, or because there was no hope of Posterity by him, or for some other private grudge, which I read not of. And it continued in this Line till, on the forfeiture incurred by his posterity, in the person of Duke

Henry the Lion, it was bestowed by *Frederick Barbarossa* upon *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, Anno 1180; whose issue in the right Line failing, it was finally elevated by the Emperor *Sigismund* on *Frederick* Langrave of *Thuringia* and Marquises of *Meissnia*, Anno 1423. In his Family it hath since continued, but not without a manifest breach in the course of the Succession: which happened when *John-Frederick*, being deprived of the Electoral, Dignity and Estate, his Cousin Duke *Maurice* was invested in them by *Charles* the fifth. For that religious, but unfortunate, Prince (if he may justly have the Title of *unfortunate* who suffered in so good a Cause, for so good a Conscience) being distressed and taken Prisoner at the Battle of *Mulberg* before mentioned, was the next day condemned to die, but pardoned at the last, upon the intercession of some powerful Friends, upon condition that he should resign the Electoral Dignity, and all the rest of his Estates, into the power of the Emperor: Which done, the Emperor gave him back again of his own accord the Castle of *Gutha* and the Town of *Weymar*, with all the Lands and Territories thereunto adjoining; from which last place his Posterity are now called Dukes of *Saxon-Weymar*. It was also much insisted on, that he should relinquish his Religion, and reconcile himself to the Church of *Rome*; that in the end it was omitted. These matters being thus transacted, the Emperor (with the general consent of the Electors) invested *Maurice*, Cousin-german to the Duke deprived, in the Electoral dignity, and all the Lands, Honours and Estates (the Seigneuries of *Gutha* and *Weymar* excepted only) which formerly had belonged to him: which though it were a great wrong, both to the Person and Posterity of the Duke *John-Frederick*, yet it is observed by some grave Writers to have fallen out not un-happily for the advancement of the Reformation then contended for. In regard of *John-Frederick*, whose Christian Patience and Magnanimity during the whole time of his Imprisonment added great reputation to the Cause for which he suffered. 2. In respect of Duke *Maurice*, who was a man of far greater parts to advance the work and every way as zealous in pursuing of it as the other was. And 3. in relation to the Children of the deprived Duke, men not to be relied on in a matter of such weight and moment; inasmuch as it was said of him after his decease, *Quid Filius reliquerit sui dissimulatio*. It is now time we should proceed to the Investiture of the new Elector. And, because these Transactions of State be not ordinary, I will briefly relate the Ceremonies thereat used as I have collected them out of *Steidan*. There were at *Wittenberg* Scaffolds erected, on which fate the Emperor and the Princes Electors in their Robes. On the back-side of the Stage were placed the Trumpeters; right against it standeth Duke *Maurice* with two bands of Horsemen: The first in a full career run their Horses up to the Pavillion: out of the second issued *Henry* Duke of *Brumswick*, *Wolfgang* Prince of *Bipont*, and *Albert* Duke of *Bavaria*. These when they had in like manner coursed their Horses about, alighted, ascended to the Throne, and humbly requested the Emperor, that for the common good he would advance Duke *Maurice* to the Electorship. He consulted with the Electors, made answer by the Bishop of *Meitz*, that he was content, so Duke *Maurice* would in person come and desire it. Then came forth Duke *Maurice* with the whole Troop: before him were born ten Ensigns bearing the Arms of as many Regions wherein he desired to be Invested. When he came before the Throne, he knelt down on his knees, and humbly desired the Emperor to bestow on him the Electorship of *Saxony*, and all the Lands of *John-Frederick*, late Elector. His Petition was granted.

Then the Bishop of *Meitz*, read unto him the Oath by which the Electors are bound unto the Empire: which Oath when Duke *Maurice* had taken, the Emperor delivered unto him a Sword, which was a sign of his perfect Investiture. Duke *Maurice*, now the Elector of *Saxony*, arose, gave the Emperor thanks, promised his Fidelity, made Obedience, and took his place amongst the Electors. This Solemnity was on the 24. day of *Febr.* Anno 1548. Which said, we now proceed unto the Catalogue of

The Dukes of SAXONY.

- 785 1. *Vittikind*, the last King of the *Saxons*, vanquished, and created the first Duke by *Charles* the Great.
- 825 2. *Brno* the Brother of *Vittikind*.
- 843 3. *Luitpoldus*, Son of *Brno*.
- 855 4. *Brno* II. Son of *Luitpoldus*.
- 876 5. *Orbo*, Brother of *Brno* the second.
- 916 6. *Henry* surnamed the Fowler, Son of *Orbo*, Emperor of the *Romans*, and King of *Germany*.
- 938 7. *Orbo* II. Duke of *Saxony*, and Emperor, called *Orbo* I.
- 974 8. *Orbo* III. Duke of *Saxony* and Emperor, called *Orbo* II.
- 984 9. *Orbo* IV. Duke of *Saxony*, and Emperor, called *Orbo* III.
- 1021 10. *Bernard*, Lord of *Lunenburg*, created Duke of *Saxony*, and the first Elector, by *Orbo* the third, who was the last Duke of the Race of *Vittikind*.
- 1021 11. *Bernard* II. Son of *Bernard* the first.
- 1032 12. *Osdolphus*, Son of *Bernard* the 2.
- 1073 13. *Magnus*, Son of *Osdolphus*, who taking part with *Rudolphus* of *Schleswig* against *Henry* the fourth, was taken Prisoner, and deprived.
- 1073 14. *Lutharius*, Earl of *Querfurt*, created Duke of *Saxony* by *Henry* the fourth; he was also Emperor of the *Romans*.
- 1123 15. *Henry* surnamed the Proud, Duke of *Bavaria*, the Husband of *Gerrade*, Daughter of *Lutharius*, by whom he was created Duke-Elector.
- 1139 16. *Henry* II. surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, Son of *Henry* the Proud by his first Wife *Vittikind*, the Daughter of *Magnus*, added to this Estate the Countries of *Mecklenburg* and *Lauenburg*, which he had conquered from the *Slaves*, becoming by that means so great, that neglecting his Duty to the Emperor *Frederick*, surnamed *Barbarossa*, and siding with the Pope against him, he was by him publicly proscribed, his neighbour Princes armed against him, and by their joint Forces outed of all his Estates, every one laying hold on that which lay nearest to him, by means whereof this great Estate being parcelled and divided into many parts, the Title of the Duke Elector of *Saxony* was given by the said Emperor to
- 1180 17. *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, Son of *Albert* Marquises of *Brandenburg*, and Grandchild of *Ellice*, another Daughter of Duke *Magnus*: to whom for his Seat and Habitation, the Emperor gave the City of *Vittenberg*, the Head since that time of this Electorate.
- 1212 18. *Albert*, Son of *Bernard*, from whom the Dukes of *Lauenburg* do derive their Pedigree.

- 1273 19. *Albert II.* Son of *Albert* the first.
 1337 20. *Rodolph*, Son of *Albert* the 2.
 1356 21. *Rodolph II.* Son of *Rodolph* the first.
 1373 22. *VVenceslaus*, Son of *Rodolph* the 2.
 1389 23. *Rodolph III.* Son of *VVenceslaus*.
 1419 24. *Albert III.* Son of *Rodolph* the third, the last Elector of *Saxony* of the House of *Albert*.
 1423 25. *Frederick*, Langrave of *Duringen*, and Marquis of *Misnia*, (on the falling of the House of *Anhalt*, Anno 1423) created Duke of *Saxony* by the Emperor *Sigismund*, the House of *Lauenberg* pretermitted for want of putting in their Claim: by the advancement of which Prince, the Title of the Duke of *Saxony*, returned again to the House of *VVittin-kind*, (the first King and last Duke hereof) after it had been alienated into other Families for the space of 200 years.
 1428 26. *Frederick II.* Son of *Frederick* the first.
 1464 27. *Ernest*, Son of *Frederick* the second.
 1486 28. *Frederick III.* Son of *Ernest*.
 1525 29. *John*, Brother to *Frederick* the third.
 1532 30. *John Frederick*, Son of *John* the first; a great advancer of the Reformation of Religion, imprisoned and deprived of his Electorship by *Charles* the fifth.
 1547 31. *Maurice*, Cousin german to the Duke *John Frederick*, (as being the Grandson or Nephew of *Albert*, the younger Brother of *Ernestus* the Duke Elector) created Duke Elector by *Charles* the fifth, whom afterwards he drove out of *Germany*; and was slain in the Battle of *Silfridshaus*, against Marquis *Albert* of *Brandenburg*.
 1553 32. *Augustus*, Brother of *Maurice*.
 1586 33. *Christian*, Son of *Augustus*.
 34. *Christian II.* Son of *Christian* the first.
 35. *John George*, Brother of *Christian* the second, who first sided with the Emperor *Ferdinand* and the second against the Elector *Palatine*, and after with the King of *Sweden* against the Emperor.

The Revenues of this Duke are thought to be the greatest of any one Prince of *Germany*, (the Imperial Family excepted) amounting in the least to 400000 *l. p. annuam* though in multitude of Vassals and great cities of Territory he come short of some of them. And to make up this (some or perhaps a greater) it is conceived that no profit which ariseth to him out of Silver-mines is no less than 130000 *l.* yearly; the Impost laid on Beer in *Leipsick*, only, a City but of two Parish-Churches, which conjecture at the rest) being farmed at 20000 *l. p. annuam*. Then hath he the Tenth of all sort of Increase, as of Corn, Wine, &c. The Salt-houses at *Hall* and some other places, very fair Lands belonging unto his Domains; and besides this, a standing and perpetual Tax laid upon the Subject towards the maintenance of the *VVar* against the *Turks*; granted at first in times of Danger and hostility, but gathered ever since in the times of Peace (as to that Enemy) under colour of being ready and prepared against him. According to the quantity of his Intrado he keeps his State, well served, and better attended than any other of the Electors; there being at one time in the Court of *Christian*, the Father of the present Duke three Dukes, three Earls, and five Barons of other Nations, (besides the Nobility of his own) all Pensioners and Servants to him; one of the Princes of *Anhalt* and one of the Earls of *Mansfield*, both Homagers unto the *Saxons* being two of the number.

The Arms of *Saxony*, are Barre-wife of six pieces *Sable* and *Or*, a Bend floured *Vermilion*. Which bend was added to the Coat by the Emperor *Frederick Barbaross*, when he confirmed *Bernard of Anhalt* in this Dukedom, for *Bernard* desiring of the Emperor to have some difference added to the Ducal Coat, (being before only Barry *Sable* and *Or*) to distinguish him and his Successors from those of the former House; the Emperor took a Chapelet of Rue, which he had then upon his head, and threw it cross his Buckler or Escutcheon of Arms, which was presently painted on the same.

19. BRUNSWICK, and 20. LUNENBURG.

THE Dukedom of *BRUNSWICK* and *LUNENBURG*, being both originally taken out of this great Dukedom of *Saxony* extracted both from the same Root, and many times united in the person of the same one Prince, shall be joyned together in the Story, though severed in the Chorography or description of them; bounded on the East with *Magdeburg* and *Mansfeld* in the upper *Saxony*, on the West with *Westphalia*, on the North with *Denmark*, on the South with *Hassia*. The Air in all parts herof is very cold and comfortable, but sound and healthful: the Soil towards the old *Marches of Brandenburg* but meanly fertile, towards *Duringen* and *Hassia* mountainous and woody, in other parts very plentiful of Corn, and well provided also of such other Commodities as usually do grow in those colder Climates.

But to take the Chorography of them severally, *BRUNSWICK* is bounded on the East with the Earldom of *Mansfeld*, on the West with *Westphalia*, on the North with *Lunenbourg*, on the South with *Hassia*. So called from *Brunswick*, the chief City, and the Head of this Dukedom,

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Goslar*, upon the River *Gospe*, whence it had the name, of a poor Village made a City by *Henry* the first, much beautified and enlarged by *Henry* the third, who found here two Churches and a stately Palace; now one of the Imperial Cities. 2. *Helmstedt*, in the middle way betwixt *Brunswick* and *Magdeburg*; first fortified by *Charles* Son of *Charles* the Great, for a Bridge to the neighbouring *Slavens* and being after given to the Abbots of *VVerden*, was by them sold to *William* the Duke of *Brunswick* 3. *Quedlinburg*, built also by *Henry* the first, much increased since by the neighbourhood of a very rich Nuntery, the Abbess whereof had formerly the Privileges of a Prince of the Empire. 4. *Hildesheim*, an ancient City, honoured with an Episcopal See by *Charles* the great at the first conversion of the *Saxons*. 5. *Grubenhagen*, which gave Title to a younger branch of the House of *Brunswick* a Principality, and a Member of the Empire. 6. *Hannover* on the River *Lein*, well built, very strongly fortified, and not meanly traded. 7. *Brunswick*, upon the River *Onawra*, which passeth through it, palked over by many handom Bridges; the Metropolis of the ancient *Saxony*, and at this time the chief of this Dukedom, though of it self Imperial, and one of the *Hanse*. The City is of a quadrangular form: walled in the midst of a Plain very fruitful of Corn, in compass about two Dutch, or eight English miles, somewhat larger than *Nuremberg*, and less than *Erffort*; containing in that compass not above twelve Churches, whereof two have Steeples covered with Lead, a third with Bricks, all the rest with Tile. It is rich, populous and strongly fortified, on some sides with a double, on others with a treble Wall, within which walls are five Cities, distinguished by Privileges, but united by Laws. The whole first built by *Bruno*, Son to *Ludolph* the

Duke

Duke of *Saxony*, and Uncle to the Emperour *Henry* the first, about the year 861; from whence it had the name of *Brunswick*, or *Brunonis Vicus*, by the more elegant *Latinists*, *Brunopolis*. 8. *Hamelun*, on the East-side of the *Wefer* or *VVaglar*, encompassed with a deep Moat, (occasioned by a stream cut out of the River) round about which are divers Fortifications, and planted with Ordnance. Nigh unto this Town is the Mountain called also *Hamelun*, unto which the Py'd Piper (as they call him) led the Children of *Hamelun*, where they all sunk, and were never more seen. But of this Story more hereafter, when we come to *Transylvania*. 9. *Wolfshuitten*, or *Wolfenbuttel*, where the Duke doth keep his Court. For though *Brunswick* giveth him his Title, yet will it not yield him any Obedience, but repeth it self amongst the *Hanse*-Towns, for which cause there have been great Wars between the Dukes and the Citizens. 10. *Halberstadt*, a Bishopric, the late Bishop (or Administrator of the Bishoprick) being *Christijan* Duke of *Brunswick*, that noble young Soldier, who had vowed his life and fortune to the service of *Elizabeth* Queen of *Bohemia*, his Cousin-german; created by King *James* one of the Knights of the Garter. A Bishoprick of great Revenue and a very large Territory; since the alteration of Religion, given with the Title of Administrator to the Sons of *Brunswick*; but now, by the Conclusions at *Munster*, assigned over to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, with the Title of Prince of *Halberstadt*, the Family of *Brunswick* being to be recompensed with an alternate Succession in the Bishoprick of *Uphuldrunge*, and some other additions. 11. *Hesfeld*, the Seat sometimes of the old *Palatines* of *Saxony*, but not else observable. 12. *Amelungsblame*, another Town of the said *Palatine*, by one of which, called *Sigfridus*, it was beautified with a very fair Abby: the principal Towns (in those days) of this *Palatinate*, which, bordering on that part of the *Thuringians* which is now called *Hassia*, was taken in by *Herman*, one of the Langraves of that Country, on the Prohibition of Duke *Henry* surnamed the Lion; but on the failure of his Line, recovered for the most part by the Dukes of *Brunswick*, the right Heirs of *Henry*.

The Dukedom of *LUNENBURG* hath on the East the Diocess of *Magdeburg*, on the West the Diocess of *Bremen*, and part of *Westphalia*, on the North the *Elb*, and on the South the Dukedom of *Brunswick*. So called from *Lunenburg* the chief City, once the Seat of the Dukes.

Places of most observation in it are, 1. *Lunenburg* it self, situate on the River *Elmenaw*, an Imperial City, and one of the principal of the *Hanse*; so called from the Moon here worshipped in the times of Idolatry. Of a round form it is, and seated in a pleasant Plain, but with Mountains near it: on one of which, called *Calberg*, is a very strong Castle, of right belonging to the Duke, but in the power of the Citizens, who without this Fort could not be masters of their Liberties. The walls about it are of Earth, high and broad, and the Ditches deep: the Buildings generally fair, (for the most part of Brick) the chief whereof is the Common-Council-House; the Streets broad and long, with two spacious Market-places, but of no very pleasing smell: the whole about a mile and an half in length, half a mile in breadth, containing fix Parish-Churches. But the thing most considerable in it is the Fountain of Salt, (the greatest riches of this City) and the House in which the Salt is boiled, containing 55 Rooms and in each Room 3 Leadens Pans in which are boiled daily 8 Tuns of Salt, every Tun being fold for 8 *Flennish* shillings, bought by the *Hamburghers*, *Lubeckers*, and other Merchants; some part of the profits of it belonging to the Duke, some to the City, the rest to the Adventurers who employ their Stocks on it. 2. *Cell*, the Seat of the Duke of *Lunenbourg*. 3. *Gosern*, of no great

signific or estimation, but for a strong Cattle of the Dukes. 4. *Olendendorp*, situate betwixt the *Venaw* and the River *Elsa*, memorable for the great Battle fought near unto it, Anno 1033, betwixt the Imperialists and the *Swedes*, the honour and benefit whereof fell unto the *Swedes*, who killed upon the place 5000 of the Enemy, besides such as were found dead in the fields and high-ways, all covered over with dead bodies, took 1500 of them prisoners, and got into their hands 15 pieces of Ordnance, good store of Ammunition, and three Mules laden with Silver for the pay of the Army: the reputation of this Victory drawing in *Hamelun* and other places of importance which stood out before. 5. *Verden*, an Episcopal See, but made a Lay-see, as most other Bishopricks amongst the *Lutherans*; the Profits thereof being received commonly by a Son of *Denmark* with the Title of Administrator, and lastly, by the Treaty of *Munster* appropriated for ever to the Crown of *Sweden*, the Kings whereof to be entitled Dukes of *Verden*. 6. *Rodenburg*, the chief Seat of the Bishops of *Verden*.

The ancient Inhabitants of these Dukedoms were the *Dagubini* of *Tecutin*, with some parts of the *Chauci* and *Cherifci*: these last of most fame for the Blow they gave to *Quintilius Varus*, Lieutenant in *Germany* after *Drusus* for *Augustus Cæsar*, who, behaving himself with great Insolency towards the Natives, was set upon by these *Cherifci* and their Confederates, under the Conduct of *Arminius*, a great Prince amongst them, himself slain, and his whole Army, consisting of three Legions, miserably cut off and despatchedly with: which loss, and the shame thereof, so distressed the Emperor, (not formerly accustomed to the like Misfortunes) that he was many times observed to tear his Beard, knock his Head against the Posts and cry out in the bitterness of his Passion, *Reddidi mihi Legionem, Quintilius Varus*. Having long time after this maintained their Liberty, for the Romans kept themselves from that time forwards on the French side of the *Rhene* they were at last subdued by the *Saxons*, continuing part of that great Dukedom till the time of the 3rd *Utho*, Emperours of the Romans and Dukes of *Saxony*; who, looking on the Empire as a State of Inheritance, diminished both the Grandeur and Revenue of their ancient Patrimony, partly by the Donation or Endowment of many Bishopricks, and partly by the creation of many petty Seigniories to be holden under them as chief Lords of all. Amongst which that of *Lunenbourg* was none of the least, continuing as a State distinct, till such time as *Bernard* Lord of *Lunenbourg* was by the Emperor *Otho* the third made Duke of *Saxony*, and created the first Duke-Elector, whereby again it was united to the rest of that Dukedom, the greatest part whereof he held in his actual possession, together with a Superiourity or Jurisdiction over all the residue, (the great Bishopricks excepted only) which had been parcelled out, as before is said: and it continued thus united till the Prohibition of *Henry*, surnamed the Lion, spoken of before, whose Reconciliation being made by means of *Henry* the second of *England*, whose Daughter *Matild* he had formerly married, the Emperor *Barbaross* allowed to him again the Cities of *Brunswick* and *Lunenbourg*, with their several Territories, of which his two Sons *Henry* and *William* were first created Earls, then Dukes, the one of *Brunswick*, and the other of *Lunenbourg*, by the Emperor *Frederick* the second. Which Honours and Estates do still remain unto their Posterities. Before I come to the Successions of these Princes, I shall crave leave to speak of the Original of the *Guelphian* Family, Dukes at the same time of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*; of which they are at this time the sole remainder. A Family derived from one *Guephur*, (whence it had the name) the

F f f

Son

Son of *Heinrich*, Earl of *Altorf* in *Schwaben*; whose Wife, called *Terminrudis*, having accused a poor woman of Adultery, and caused her to be grievously punished for having 12 Children at a Birth, was afterwards delivered of the like number, and all of them Sons. Her Husband being absent at the time of her Delivery, she commanded the Nurse to kill 11 of them; fearing, it seems, the like shame and punishment as by her illigation was inflicted on the other Woman. The Nurse going to perform this on the other Woman, was met by the old Earl then returning home; who asked her what she had in her Apron. She made answer, Whelps. He desired to see them: she denied him. Angry at this refusal, he opened her Apron, and there found eleven of his own Sons, pretty sweet Babies, and of most promising Countenances. Examining the matter, he found out the truth, and injoyning the old Trot to be secret in it, he put the Children out to Nurse. Six years expired, the Earl invited to a Feast most of his own and his Ladies Kindred, and attiring the young Boys all alike, presented them unto their Mother; who suspecting, by the number of them, what the matter was, confessed her offence, is pardoned by the good old Earl, and carefully educates her children: whom the Father commanded to be called by the name of *Guelphs*, alluding to the Whelps or Puppies which the Nurse told him she had in her Apron. From the eldest of these *Guelphs* or *Guelphs* succeeded that *Henry-Guelph*, Son of *Robert Earl of Altorf*, whom *Conrad* the second made Duke of *Bavaria*; many of whose posterity enjoyed that Dukedom: increased at last by the addition of the Dukedom of *Saxony*, in the person of Duke *Henry* firnamed the Proud, Father of *Henry* called the Lion, and Grandfather of *Henry* and *William* the first Dukes of *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg*, whose Succession followeth in this Order.

The Dukes of BRUNSWICK and LUNENBURG.

1. *Henry*, firnamed the Lion, the last Duke of *Saxony*, and the first of this Title.
- 1195 *Brunswick*. *Lunenburg*.
2. *Henry* first Earl, after Duke of *Brunswick*.
2. *William*, first Earl after Duke of *Lunenburg*.
- 1213 3. *Orto*, Son of *William*, Duke of *Lunenburg*; after the death of *Henry*, Duke of *Brunswick* also.
- 1254 4. *John*, Son of *Orto*.
1279 5. *Albert* II. Son of *Albert*.
1318 6. *Orto* II. Son of *Albert* the 2.
- 1334 7. *Magnus*, Son of *Albert* II. on the failing of the other house, enjoyed both Estates.
- 1368 8. *Magnus* II. Son of *Magnus* the first.
- 1373 9. *Henry*, Son of *Magnus* the second.
- 1416 10. *William*, Son of *Henry*.
1482 11. *William* II. Son of *William*.
1503 12. *Henry* II. Son of *William* the second.
10. *Bernard*, Brother of *Magnus* the second.
- 1434 11. *Frederick* II. Son of *Bernard*.
1478 12. *Orto* III. Son of *Frederick* the 2.

- 1514 13. *Henry* III. Son of *Henry* the 2.
- 1568 14. *Julius*, Son of *Henry* the 3.
- 1589 15. *Henry* IV. Son of *Julius*, who married the Lady *Elizabeth*, Sister to *Anne* Queen of *England*.
16. *Frederick-Ulric*, Son of *Elizabeth* of *Denmark* and of *Henry-Julius*.
- 1634 17. *Augustus*, Son of *Henry* Duke of *Lunenburg*, succeeded, on the death of *Frederick-Ulric*, and the failure of the House of *Brumwick* in him, in this Dukedom.
- 1514 13. *Henry* III. Son of *Orto* the 3.
- 1532 14. *Orto* IV. Son of *Henry* the 3.
15. *Ernst*, the Brother of *Orto*, succeeded in his Brother's lifetime, furnishing his Estate for an Annual Pension.
- 1536 16. *Henry* IV. Son of *Ernst*.
- 1590 17. *Ernst* II. Son of *Henry* the 4.
18. *Wolfgangus*, the Brother of *Henry* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernst* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, Anno 1648.

The Arms of these Dukedom were first the same, that is to say, *Gules*, two Lions Or, Armed *Azure*; which Arms they took by reason of their extraction from the Kings of *England*, then Dukes of *Normandy*; retained to this day by the Dukes of *Brunswick*, without any addition. But those of *Lunenburg* have added three Coats more unto it: the whole bearing being quarterly, 1. *Gules*, two Lions Or, Armed *Azure*; 2. *Azure*, Seme of Hearts *Gules*, a Lion of the first, Armed and Crowned Or; 3. *Azure*, a Lion Argent, Crowned *Gules*; and 4. *Gules*, within a Border Compartment Or and *Azure*, a Lion of the second, Armed of the third.

20. HASSIA.

HASSIA is bounded on the North with *Brunswick*, on the South with *Vetavia* or the state of *Wetavia*, on the East with *Thuringia*, and on the West with *Westphalia*. So called from the *Hessi*, who, having vanquished the *Chatti*, the old Inhabitants of this Country, possessed themselves of it.

The Christian Faith was first preached here by *Boniface*, or *Winefride*, an *English-Saxon*, (afterwards Archbishop of *Meinz*.) Anno 730, or thereabouts. Of whom I find this memorable Apophthegm, *That in old times they were golden Prelates and wooden Chaires, but in his time were wooden Prelates and golden Chaires*. Not much unlike to which I have read another, but of later date, viz. *That once the Christians had blind Churches, and lightless hearts; but now they have lightless Churches, and blind hearts*.

The Country is very fruitful of Corn, and affords good Pasture for the feeding of Cattel, of which they have great Drovers and Herds in many places; with great abundance of Stags and other Deer for the pleasures of Hunting, harboured in the Woods hereof, with which also many parts of it, it is very much shaded. It breedeth also in the Downs good flocks of sheep, enriched with the finest Fleece of any in *Germany*; the Staple-Commodity of this Country; and in the mountainous parts hereof there want not rich Mines of Brasse, Lead, and other Metals, which yield great profit to the people.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Alendoff*, on the *Weser* (or *Visurgis*) of much esteem for the Springs or Fountains of Salt which are thereabouts. 2. *Fritzlar*, upon

upon the *Eder*, well walled, and situate in a fruitful and pleasant Soil, belonging to the Archbishop and Elector of *Meinz*, but, in regard of the convenient situation of it, much aimed at, many times attempted, and sometimes forcibly possessed, both by the Lantgraves of *Hassia* and Dukes of *Saxony*. 3. *Fulda*, on a River of that name, remarkable for the Monastery there founded by *Boniface*, Archbishop of *Meinz*, by the name of *Saint Saviour*, the Abbot of which is a Prince of the Empire, Chancellor of the Empress, and Lord of a goodly Territory in this Country, called from hence *Suff. Fuld*. 4. *Frankenberg*, on the *Eder* also, so called from the French, who encamped there in their Wars against the Saxons; first founded by *Theodorick*, the French King, Anno 520, but much enlarged by *Charles* the Great about the year 804. 5. *Elfweghe*, on the brow of an Hill, near the River *Werr*, of great trading for Wood, of which the Fields adjoining yield a rich increase. Being destroyed by the Hungarians it was re-edified and enlarged by the Emperor *Henry* the 2. and having suffered much misery in the long War between *Adolph* Archbishop of *Meinz* and the Lantgraves of *Hassia*, it fell at last into the possession of the Lantgrave, Anno 1387. 6. *Melfingen*, on the River *Fuld*. 7. *Darmstadt*, lately, if not at the present, the Seat and Inheritance of Count *Ludowick*, of the younger House of the Lantgraves, taken prisoner by Count *Mansfeld*, Anno 1622, and his whole Country exposed unto spoil and rapine, because (besides many other ill offices) he was the chief perfwader of the Princes of the *Union* to disband their Forces, provided for defence of themselves and the *Palatinates*, and to reconcile themselves to the Emperor. 8. *Marpurg*, the seat of the second House of the Lantgraves, descending from that *Philip* who was Lantgrave in the time of *Charles* the fifth, whom he so valiantly withstood; pleasantly seated on the *Len*, amongst *Viny* Downs and shady Mountains; honoured with an University founded here by *Lewis* Bishop of *Munster*, Anno 1426, and beautified with a magnificent Castle (the ordinary dwelling of those Princes) situate on an high Hill somewhat out of the Town, which gives it a very gallant Prospect over the Town and Country. 9. *Geissen*, a Town belonging to the Lantgraves of *Cassels*, and a small University also. 10. *Dietz*, upon the River *Len*, belonging also to the House of *Cassels*. 11. *Cassels*, the chief Town and ordinary Residence of the Lantgraves of the elder House, who are hence sometimes called the Lantgraves of *Cassels*: commodiously seated in a pleasant and fruitful Soil, and well fortified with strong earthen Walls and deep Ditches; but the Houses in it of no great beauty, being composed for the most part of Wood, Thatch and Clay.

Within the Limits of this Province is the County of *WALDECK*, not subject to the Lantgraves of *Hassia*, though included within the Bounds of it before laid down, taking up the Western parts thereof, where it meets with *Westphalia* figure very near a square, each side of which is the length of six ordinary *Dutch*, or twenty four *English* miles. The Soil is much of the same nature with the rest of *Hassia*, save that it hath fume veins of Quick-silver and inexhaustible Mines of Coal, which the other wanteth; these last in great plenty about *Wildung* and the strong Castle of *Eisenberg*, two of the best Towns and places of it. Others of chief note are, 3. *Waldeck* itself, on the River *Eder*, the first Seat of the Earls hereof, who have here an ancient Castle, from whence the whole Country takes its name. 4. *Mangerick-luse*, in a fair Castle whereof live the present Earls, 5. *Wittenberg*, in a pleasant and fruitful Soil, betwixt

the Rivers *Twifche* and *Alwa*. 6. *Corbach*, famous in the times of *Alberus Magnus* for its Gold Mines, yielding great profit to these Earls. The Pedigree of which Earls is fetched from one *Wittkind* Earl of *Salenberg*, whom *Charles*, the Great made advocate or Patron of the Church of *Paderborn* in *Westphalia*, being an Office in those times of great Jurisdiction. By *Wittkind* the second, one of his Successors; this Office was surrendered into the Hands of the Chapter, for the sum of 300 marks in Silver; and to cut off all farther Claims, *Henry*, the Nephew of this *Wittkind* by his Son *Orto*, was by the Chapter gratified with the Town of *Waldeck*, of which he was the first Earl, whose Nephew *Henry*, firnamed *Ferren*, subdued *Corbach*, Anno 1366, and added it to his Estate. By a third *Henry* Grandchild of this *Ferren*, or Man of Iron; this Earldom, formerly held in Fee of the Church of *Paderborn*, was first under the Patronage and Protection of the Lantgraves of *Hassia*, Anno 1428, as it continueth to this day. The Earls hereof content with their own Estates, and more added to the Book than unto the Sword, have added little in the Wars to improve their Fortunes.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole, both *Waldeck* and the rest of *Hassia*, and also of the Country of *Nassau* in *Vetavia* near adjoining, were the *Gatti* or *Chatti*, mentioned by the Ancients. It was first conquered (after the withdrawing of the Roman Forces) by the *Hessi*, and both subdued not long after by the *Thuringians*: subject unto the Lantgraves of *Duringen*, till the death of *Henry* the last of the Male-issue of *Lewis* of *Orleans*. In the division of whole Estate, the Western moiety of *Duringen* fell to the share of *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, one of the Competitors who leaving the Title of Lantgrave of *Duringen* to the Marquess of *Misia*, took to himself the Title of the Lantgrave of *Hessen*, in memory of the *Hessi* spoken of before. Of his Successors the most puissant was that *Philip* who in the time of *Charles* the fifth much fwayed the Affairs of *Germany*, Anno 1520, he discomfited King *Ferdinand*, and restored *Ulric* to the Dukedom of *Wittenberg*, Anno 1530, he united all the Protestant Princes and Cities of *Germany* in common League at *Smalcald*, for the defence of the Protestant Religion, Anno 1545, he undertook the Cause of *Gelsaria* against the Duke of *Brunswick*, whom in a set Battle he took prisoner, together with his Son, and possessed his Country. Anno 1548, he united all the Princes and Cities of *Germany* in an offensive and defensive League against *Charles* the fifth. But that War succeeded not prosperously. For the Duke of *Saxony*, his perpetual Confederate, being taken prisoner, he submitted himself to the Emperor at *Kala*, or *Hale* in *Duringen*; his sons-in-law, Duke *Maurice*, the Marquess of *Brandenburg*, and Wolfgang Prince of *Demens*, having given their Bonds for his return. The Condition of his Pardon were first, that he should discontinue all his Towns, except *Cassels*. 2. That he should yield up unto the Emperor all his Munition. 3. That he should pay unto the Emperor 150000 Crowns the same night he was by the Duke of *Alva* invited to Supper, his Sons-in-law of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg* accompanying him. After Supper he was contrary to the laws of Hospitality and the Emperor's exact Promise, detained Prisoner. The fallacy stood thus: In the Emperor's Command with the three Princes the words were, that the Lantgrave should be kept, *Nicht in einig gefenghene*, that is, not in any Prison; which the Emperor's Secretary, by a small dash of his Pen, turned into *Nicht in ewig gefenghene*, that is, Not in everlasting prison. Well in prison he staid five years, which being expired, he was again set at large by Duke *Almire* the Over-

thrower and Restorer of the German Liberty. The residue of these Lantgraves in their several times occur in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Lantgraves of HASSIA.

- 1263 1. *Henry of Brabant*, Son of *Henry Duke of Brabant*, and of *Sophia his Wife*, Daughter of *Lewis* the sixth, Lantgrave of *Thuringia*, after a nine years War betwixt him and the Marquess of *Misfat*, divided the Estate, and took unto himself the Title of Lantgrave of *Hessen*.
- 1308 2. *Orto* and *John*, Sons of *Henry*.
- 1323 3. *Henry II.* and *Lewis*, Sons of *Orto*.
- 1376 4. *Herman*, the Son of *Lewis*.
- 1414 5. *Lewis II.* Son of *Herman*, firnamed the Mild.
- 1458 6. *Lewis III.* Son of *Lewis* the Mild.
7. *William*, the eldest Son of *Lewis* the third, dispossessed of his Estate by
8. *William II.* his youngest Brother.
- 1509 9. *Philip*, the famous Lantgrave spoken of before Son of *William* the second.
- 1567 10. *William III.* eldest Son of *Philip*, succeeded in one moiety of the Estate, and resided at *Cassels*, the other moiety being divided betwixt his Brethren, *Ludowick of Marburg*, and *George of Darmstadt*, Father of *Ludowick of Darmstadt* before mentioned.
- 1590 11. *Maurice*, eldest Son of *William* the third.
12. *William IV.* Son of *Maurice*, now living, 1648.

The Arms of these Lantgraves are *Azure*, a Lion Barry of Eight pieces, *Argent* and *Gules* crowned *Or*, bearing properly and originally the Arms of the ancient Dukes of *Francia*, were given by *Conradus Salicus*, Duke of *Francia*, and Emperor, to *Lewis of Orleans*, at such time as he invellied him in the Lantgravedom of *Thuringia*: on the expiration of whose line they were challenged and born by the Lantgraves of *Hassia*, as the direct Heirs of *Lewis* the 6. and his Brother *Henry*, the last male Princes of that House.

21. WESTPHALIA.

WESTPHALIA is bounded on the East with *Hassia*, *Brumswick*, and part of *Lunenburgh*; on the West with the Bishoppick of *Calen*, *Cleve*, *Over-Jfels*, *West* and *East-Friesland*, and the German Ocean; on the North with the *Elb*, and the Dukedom of *Holftein*; and on the South with *Wateravia*, and some part of *Hassia*.

It was thus called of the *Wesphali*, a Tribe or Division of the *Saxons*, distinguished heretofore into the *Transalbinos*, inhabiting beyond the *Elb* or *Albia*, in the County of *Holftein*, now a part of *Denmark*, the *Ossphali*, betwixt the *Elb*, the Ocean, with the River of *Sala* and the *Wefer*, taking up the Bishoppicks of *Breme*, *Virden*, *Hildesheim*, *Halberstadt* and *Meydeburg*, with the Dukedom of *Lunenburgh* and *Brumswick*; the *Angriwarians*, taking up the North-West part of the modern *Westphalen*, betwixt the Bishoppick of *Breme* and the Earldom of *Oldenburg*; and finally, the *Wesphali* or Western *Saxons*, inhabiting the rest of the modern *Westphalen* with the Earldoms of *Mark*, *Berg*, *Zurphen*, the Seignioury of *Over-Jfels*, and some parts of *Golderland* and *Holland*. But the *Saxons* being subjugated by the power of the *French*, and several new Estates erected out of that old Stock; the remnant of the *Wesphali* and *Angriwarians* (the Bishoppick of *Breme* being added unto the account) were comprehended and united in the name of *WESTPHALIA*.

The Soil according to the several parts of it, is of different

natures: the parts adjoining to the *Wefer* being defart and barren, those towards the Earldoms of *Marck*, and *Bergen* mountainous and full of Woods; the Bishoppick of *Bremen*, except towards the *Elb*, full of dry Sands Heaths and unfruitful Thickets, like the wilde parts of *Windsor* Forrest betwixt *Stanes* and *Fernham*. In other parts it is exceeding plentiful of Corn, and of excellent Pasturage; stored with great plenty of wild Fruits, and (by reason of the many Woods) abundance of Acorns; with infinite Herds of Swine (which they breed up with those natural helps) of so good a relish, that a Carca of *Wesphalie* Bacon is reckoned for a principal Dish at a great man's Table.

The old Inhabitants hercof were the *Chauci majores* about *Bremen*; the *Chamavi*, *Angriwarii* and *Bructeri*, inhabiting about *Munster*, *Osnabrig*, and so towards the Land of *Calen*; and part of the *Cherusci* (before spoken of) taking up those parts which lie nearest unto *Brumswick* and *Lunenburgh*. All of them were vanquished by *Drusus* the Son-in-Law of *Augustus*, but soon restored to their former liberty by the great Overthrow given by the *Cherusci* and their Associates to *Quintilius Varus*. Afterwards uniting into one name with the *French*, they expelled the *Romans* out of *Gaul*, leaving their forsaken and ill inhabited Seats to be taken by the *Saxons*, with whom their mainders of them did incorporate themselves both in Name and Nation. Of that great Body it continued a considerable Member, (both when a Kingdom and a Dukedom) till the Proscription and Deprivation of Duke *Henry* the Lion: at what time the parts beyond the *Wefer* were usurped by *Bernard* Bishop of *Paderborn*; those betwixt the *Wefer* and the *Rhene*, by *Philip* Archbishop of *Calen*, whose Successors still hold the Title of Dukes of *Westphalen*: the Bishoppicks of *Breme*, *Munster*, *Paderborn* and *Minden*, having been formerly endowed with goodly Territories, had some accurements also out of this Estate, every one catching hold of that which lay nearest to him. But not to make too many Subdivisions of it, we will divide it only into these two parts, viz. 1. *Westphalen* specially so called, and 2. the Bishoppick of *Breme*.

1. In *WESTPHALIA* specially so called, which is that part hercof which lieth next to *Cleve*, the places of most observation are, 1. *Gefcke* a Town of good repute; 2. *Brula* a Village of great beauty; 3. *Aruberg* and 4. *Fredeborch*, honoured with the Title of Prefectures.
5. *Wadenborch*: 6. *Homburg*, Lording it over fair and spacious Territories. All which with two Lordships and eight Prefectures, more dispersed in the Dukedom of *Engern* and County of *Surland*, belonging unto the Bishop of *Calen*, the titular Duke of *Westphalen*, and really of *Angriwaria*, (*Engern*) as he styles himself: the Title and possession of Duke of *Engern* being acquired unto this first Emperor and King of *Germany*, firnamed the Fowler, with the consent of *Otto* the first, his elder Brother.
7. *Mountabour*, (perhaps *Mont-Tabor*) seated in that part hercof which is called *Wesfervald*, a Town of consequence, belonging to the Elector of *Triers*.
8. *Rhenum*, 9. *Schamlat*, and 10. *Becken*, reasonable good Towns; all of the Bishoppick of *Munster*.
11. *Munster* it self famous for the Treaty, and Conclusions made upon that Treaty for the peace of *Germany*: seated upon the River *Em*, and so called from a Monastery here founded by *Charles* the great which gave beginning to the Town; supposed to be that *Mediolanum* which *Polony* placeth in this Tract. A beautiful and well fortified City, and the See of a Bishop, who is also the Temporal Lord of it famous for the woful Tragedies here acted by a lawless

cruc of Anabaptists, who chose themselves a King (that famous Tailor *John of Leyden*) whom they called King of *Sionas*; they named the City *New Jerusalem*, proclaimed a Community both of Goods and Women, cut off the heads of all that opposed their doings; and, after many fanatick and desperate actions, were by the care and industry of the Bishop and his Confederates brought to condign punishment. The Story is to be seen at large in *Sheldons*, Mr. *Hooker's* Preface, and some modern Pamphlets, wherein, as in a Mirrour, we may plainly fee the face of the present Times. 12. *Osnabrig*, first built as some say, by *Julius Cæsar*, as others, by the Earls of *Engern*; but neither so ancient as the one, nor of so late a standing as the others make it. Here is an Episcopal See founded by *Charles* the Great, who gave it all the Privileges of an University; liberally endowed at the first erection of the same, and since so well improved both in Power and Patrimony, that an alternate Succession in it by the Dukes of *Brumswick* hath been concluded on in the Treaty of *Munster*, as a fit Compensation for the Bishoppick of *Halberstadt*, (otherwise disposed of by that Treaty) of late enjoyed wholly by that Family. 13. *Quakenburg* on the River *Hase*. 14. *Warendorp*, and 15. *Wildhusen*; Towns of that Bishoppick. 16. *Paderborn* an Episcopal See also, founded by *Charles* the Great at the first Conversion of the *Saxons*; more ancient than *Trong*, yet more strong than beautiful. 17. *Ringelstein*, and 18. *Osnabrig*; Belonging to the Bishop of *Paderborn*.
- 19. *Minden*, upon the *Wefer*, another of the Episcopal Sees founded by *Charles* the Great; and by him liberally endowed with a goodly Patrimony: converted to Lay-uses since the Reformation, under colour of Administration of the goods of the Bishoppick and now, by the Conclusions at *Munster*, fetted for ever on the Electors of *Brandenburg*, with the Title of Prince of *Minden*. 20. *Rintelen*, a strong Town, conveniently seated on the *Wefer*, not far from *Minden*, to the Bishop whereof it doth belong.

Hitherto one would think that *Westphalen* had formerly been a part of *S. Peters Patrimony*, belonging wholly to the Clergy; but there are some Free Cities and Secular Princes which have shares therein. As 1. *Warburg*, an ant Town, but seated on an uneven piece of ground, near the River *Dümmla*: a Town which tradeth much in good Ale, brewed here, and sold in all parts of the Country: heretofore a County of it self under the Earls hercof, now governed in the nature of a Free Estate, and reckoned an Imperial City. 2. *Brake*, accounted of as Imperial also. 3. *Herforden*, a Town of good strength and note, governed by its own Laws and magistrats, under the Protection of *Calen*. 4. *Lengow*, belonging heretofore to the Earls of *Liippe*; but by them so well privileged and enfranchised, that now it governeth it self as a free Estate. Here is also 5. the Town and County of *Ravenpurg*, belonging anciently to the Dukes of *Cleve*, and now in the Right of that House to the Elector of *Brandenburg*; as also 6. the Town and County of *Liippe*, lying on the West side of the *Wesfer*; the Pedigree of the Earls whereof some fetch from that *Sp. Manlius* who defended the *Roman* Capitol against the *Gauls*, (they might as well derive it from the Geck which preferred that Capitol;) others with greater modesty look no higher for it than to the time of *Charles* the Great; one of the noble Families of the ancient *Saxons*. 7. Here also stands the Town and Cattle of *Arenberg*, commanding over a large and goodly Patrimony thereto adjoining; which being much encreased by the accession of *Sedan* in the neighbouring *Belgium*, was by the Heir-general of this House conveyed in Marriage to *Engelbert* the 9. Earl of *Marck*, whose second Son, cal-

led *Eberhard*, (but the only one he had by this *Venter*) succeeded in his Mother's Estates and Honours; which were kept undivided, till *Eberhard*, the 6. Lord thereof of the House of *Marck*, contenting himself with the Titles and Estates of *Arenberg*, left *Sedan* and the pieces which belonged unto it to his younger brother *Robert*. The great Grandchild of this *Eberhard*, called also *Robert*, created the first Earl of *Arenberg*, left his Estates and Titles to his Sister *Margaret*, married to *John* Lord of *Brabant*, a person of great note and power in the *Helgic* Provinces, and faithful to the last in the Cause and Quarrel of *King Philip* the 2. in which finally he lost his life, Anno 1568, leaving both his Estates and Title unto *Charles* his Son, frequently mentioned by the name of *Charles Earl of Arenberg* in the Stories of the *Belgic* Wars, in which he was no less considerable for his eminent valour, than his singular Fidelity to his Lord and Master. Some other Lords and Earls here are, but they most considerable: all of them Homagers of the Empire, but their Acknowledgments hercof little more than titular; though since in danger of performing more real Services; the Emperour *Ferdinand* the 2. after the Surprise of *Holftein* and some part of *Denmark*, Anno 1626, gaining fo far upon this Country, that had not the King of *Sweden* come in so seasonably, he had made himself absolute Master of it, and, by the opportunity of the situation of it on the back of the *Netherlands*, forced the United States to some great Extremities. As for the Title of Duke of *Westphalen* and *Engern*, it hath been long used (as before was said) by the Bishops of *Calen*; as also (but with better Right as to that of *Westphalen*) by the House of *Lauenburg*, descended from the ancient Electoral Family, writing themselves in that regard Dukes of *Saxony*, *Westphalen*, and *Angriwaria* or *Engern*.

2. The Bishoppick of *BREME* lieth on the other side of the *Wefer*, extending as far as to the *Elb* and the German Ocean. So called of 1. *Breme*, the principal City, seated on the *Wefer*, there broad and navigable; the City by that means well traded, populous and rich, beautified with fair and even Streets, and very strongly fortified against all invasions both by Art and Nature, the Town being so seated amongst fens, occasioned by the Over-flowings of the Rivers, that it may be easily drowned on all sides, to keep off an Enemy; adorned also with a spacious market-place, a fair Council-house, and a large Cathedral, the See of the Archbishop, who is the Temporal Lord of the Town and Territory. Other Towns of special note are 2. *Osnabrig*, not far from *Breme*, from whence great quantity of Linnen is brought yearly to *England* and other places. 3. *Wurflen*, on the *Wefer* also. 4. *Ottendorp*, on the River *Bolba*, not far from the fall thereof into the Ocean. 5. *Buxtehude*, on the *Elb*, not far from *Hamburg*, but on the higher tide of the water. 6. *Stade*, *Stade*, or *Stradum*, seated on the River *Zwinge*, near the fall thereof into the *Elb*; accounted the ancientest Town of all *Saxony*, and one of the first which was enrolled amongst the *Hanse*, and by special Privilege had the pre-emption of all the *Rhenish* Wine that passed by them, and the Right also of Coining money. But being over-topped by the Power and Trade of *Hamburg*, (5 Dutch miles from it) it grew at length so poor and in such decay, that their yearly Revenues came but to go 1. per annum, so that they were fain to sell their Privileges to the Town of *Hamburg*, and put themselves under the Protection of the Bishops of *Breme*. It revived again upon the coming thither of the *Englisch* Merchants, who finding some hard measure from the *Hamburgers*, fixed their staple here: by means whereof the Citizens in short time grew exceeding wealthy, the Buildings fair and

and beautiful, the Town strongly fortified. It is situate in a place so easily overwhelmed with water, that the people, in ostentation of their Strength and security, used to have Ordinance of Stone planted over their Gates. But the late German Wars have made them sensible of their folly; when, notwithstanding their new Works, and an English Garrison under Sir Charles Morgan, they were compelled to submit themselves to the Earl of Tilly An. 1627, recovered after by the Swedes, in the course of their Victories.

As for the Bishoprick of *Bremen*, it was first founded by *Charley the Great*, in the person of *Willibrod* an English *Saxon*, one of the first Preachers of the Gospel in these parts of this Country. The Town, before that time a poor Village only, being made an Archbishop See, and the Metropolitan of all the Churches of the North, quickly grew up into esteem, as the Bishop did in Power, and Patronage, till they became Lords of this Tract. It was governed since the Reformation of Religion by Lay-Bishops or Administrators of the Rents of the Bishopricks, which under that Title they inverted to their proper use. And now of late, by the Conclusions made at *Munster*, is seized as an Inheritance on the Crown of *Sweden*, to be enjoyed, together with the Bishoprick of *Verden*, by the Kings thereof, with the Title of Dukes of *Bremen* and *Verden*: the ancient Liberties of those Cities, formerly granted by their Bishops, being still preserved.

22. EAST-FRIESLAND.

EAST-FRIESLAND is bounded on the East with the River *Wefer*, by it parted from *Westphalen*; on the West with the River *Ems*, which parteth it from *Goettingen* and the rest of *West-Friesland*; on the North with the German Ocean; and on the South with the Earldom of *Mark* and part of *Cleveland*. So called from the *Frifis*, who, casting out the old Inhabitants, possessed themselves of it, and called it by their own name, *Friesland*: divided by the *Ems* or *Amisus*, into the Western, spoken of amongst the *Netherlands*, and the Eastern or *East-Friesland*, in which now we are.

The nature of the Soil we shall see anon, when we come to the Subdivisions of it. The chief Rivers (besides those of 1. *Ems*, and 2. *Wefer*, spoken of elsewhere) are 3. *Jade*, which falleth into a great Bay or Arm of the Ocean, called from hence *De Jade*. 4. *Dollart*, on which standeth the City of *Emden*. 5. *Delms*, and 6. *Honta*, Neighbourd by *Delmenhorst* and *Oldenburg*, Towns of this Country. The whole is divided into 1. The Country of *Emden* or *East-Friesland*, properly so called; and 2. The Earldom of *Oldenburg*.

1. **EAST-FRIESLAND** specially so called hath on the West the River *Ems*, on the North the Ocean, on the East and South the Earldom of *Oldenburg*: called also the County of *EMDEN*, from the fair Town of *Emden*, the chief City of it. The Soil hereof is very fruitful both in Corn and Pasturage, sending great flocks of Oxen, Horses, Wool, Swine, Butter, Cheese, and all sorts of Grain, into other Countries; all of them excellent in their kind, not easily to be bettered (if equalled) in any place whatsoever. Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Emden*, so called from the *Ems*, on which it is situate; *Dollart* a small River falling here into it, a noted and well-traded Town, beautified with a Haven so deep and large, that the greatest Ships with full Sail are admitted into it. The people are rich, affirmed to have 60 ships of 100 tons apiece, and 600 lesser Barks, of their own; besides 7000 Buffes and Fisher-boats, maintained for the most part by their Herring-fishing on the Coasts of *England*. The

Buildings are generally fair, both private and publick, especially the Church, the Town-Hall, and Earl's Palace. This last is a strong and stately Castle, situate at the mouth of the Haven, and on all sides encompassed by the Sea, and yet not strong enough to preserve the Townsmen in their due Obedience: who in the year 1595, taking advantage of the Absence of the Earl, kept him out of their Town, because he seemed not to approve the *Calvinian* humour; and have since governed in the nature of a Common wealth, confederate with the *States* of the United Provinces, for their better Establishment and support. So easily is Religion made a mask to disguise Rebellion. 2. *Aurick*, by some called *Ansling*, seated in the Islands, rich and well walled, of great resort by reason of the pleasure of Hunting, afforded very liberally in the Forests and Woods adjoining, drawing thither the Nobility and Gentry in great abundance. 3. *Efen*, on the Sea-shore, which gives the Title of an Earl to the Lord thereof; as doth also, 4. *Jever*, situate on the West of the River *Jade*; but both Earls subject to the Earl of *East-Friesland*. 5. *Uredburg*, (that is to say, the *Free Village*) so called from some Immunities granted by the Earls; possessed a while by those of *Brunswick*, who fenced and garrisoned it for themselves, but in the end recovered by *Leard* the 2. Earl. 6. *Brock*, the Seat and proper Government of the Ancestors of these Earls; from whence the parts adjoining are called *Brockmerland*. 7. *Norden*, another Prefecture or Captainship of the said Ancestors. 8. *Dimort*, a strong Castle and Retiring-place of the Earls. 9. *Lingen*, upon the *Ems*, a strong Town well fortified, and as well garrisoned; belonging to the King of *Spain*, as Vicar to the Empire over all *Friesland*, even to *Dimarsh* and the Confines of *Denmark*. A Dignity procured by *Maximilian*, Grandfather to *Charles* the 5. of the Emperor *Frederick* the 3. in right whereof the King of *Spain*, as Heir of the House of *Burgundy*, hath some pre-eminence over *Emden*, of little use to him since the falling off of the *Belgick* Provinces. More Towns of note I find not in it, but of Castles, stately dwelling-houses, and well-built Villages, an incredible number; standing so thick, that in many places they join together: some of them being withal so large, so well peopled, and of Streets so spacious, that they may compare with many Cities in *Germany*. Of all which the most City-like is named *Leera*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Chanci minnes*, described by *Pliny*, to be so barbarous a people, and so destitute of all necessary Provision for the life of man, that they had no drink but Rain water, preserved in great Troughs before the doors of their Cottages. Thence were ousted or subdued by the *Frifons*, a neighbouring people possessing *North-Holland* the District of *Utrecht*, with the Countries of *Goettingen* and *West-Friesland*, who having once passed over the *Ems*, extending their Dominions as far as *Denmark*; governed by Kings, but intermingled with and overpowered by the *Saxons*, till the time of *Charley the Great*, by whom the last King *Rebald* overcome in fight was persuaded to receive the Sacrament of Holy Baptism: but being told that his Friends and Kinsfolks were in Hell, because no Christians, *Neither will I (saith he) be of that Profession, for I love to be amongst my Kindred*. After this, *Friesland* was a member of the *French* Kingdom, till the erecting of the Earldom of *Holland* by *Charles* the Bald, An 893. at which time all *Friesland* on the West side of the *Ems* was conferred upon him; possessed, but not without much War and Bloodshed by his Successors; the *Frifons* ever and anon rebelling against them, and killing divers of them in the open field. Those parts of it on the other side of the *Ems* remained under the German Empire: governed by Deputies,

puties, Lieutenants, and Provincial Earls, accountable to the Emperours for the Administration till the year 1453, in which *Ulrich*, Governor hereof for the Emperor *Frederick*, having got the Town of *Emden* out of the hands of the *Hamburgers*, was made Earl of *East-Friesland*, transmitting the Estate and Title unto his Posterity.

Earls of EAST-FRIESLAND.

- 1453 1. *Ulrich*, Son of *Emno*, the Son of *Ezardus*, Captains or Governors for the Empire in *Brock* and *Norden*, made the first Earl of *East-Friesland* by the Emperor *Frederick*, from the Citizens of *Brunswick*.
- 1466 2. *Ezard*, the Son of *Ulrich*, who got *Frederick* from the Citizens of *Brunswick*.
- 1528 3. *Emno* the Son of *Ezard*, who regained *Greexyl*, formerly usurped by the Dukes of *Gelder*.
- 1540 4. *Ezard* II. Son of *Emno* who married *Katherine*, Daughter to *Othavian* the first of *Sweden*.
5. *Emno* II. Son of *Ezard* the 2. and the Lady *Katherine*.
- 1586 6. *Rodolphus Christianus*, Son of *Emno* the 2. who, being well affected to the *Lutheran* Forms, (first introduced in the time of *Emno* the first) was by a *Calvinian* party grown up in *Emden*, dispossessed of that City, Anno 1595.
- 1608 7. *Emno-Ludovicus*, Son of *Rodolphus Christianus*, succeeded in this Earldom on the death of his Father, and is still living, for ought I can hear unto the contrary.

The Arms of the Earls of *East-Friesland* are *Argent*, four Bendlets *Azure*, charged with ten Hearts Or, 43 3, 2, 1.

2. The Earldom of *OLDENBURG* containeth that part of this Country which lieth on the West-side of the *Wefer*, betwixt the Bishoprick of *Munster* and *East-Friesland* specially so called, and to extending Northwards to the German Ocean. So called from *Oldenburg*, the chief City of it, and the head of this Earldom.

The Soil hereof is exceeding rich, but in Pastures specially, which breed them infinite Herds of Cattel, and furnish not this Country only, but some of their German Neighbours, and many of the more Northern Nations, with Horses, Beeves, Sheep, Swine, Butter, Cheese. Here is also good store of Pulse, Barley and Oats; plenty of Fruits, and Trees of all sorts; large Woods, and those well stored with Venison, which yield unto the Gentry the delights of Hunting. But the Air is cold and foggy in some extremity; especially in Winter, and nigh the Sea.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Oldenburg*, on the River *Honta*, repaired, if not built, by *Orbo* the Great, who founded the Church of *S. John Baptist*. A Town of no great fate or beauty; the Houses being generally of Clay, but the Castle (the Dwelling-place of the Earls) of well-hewn Stones, of an orbicular form, with deep Ditches of water, The Town and Castle both being strongly fortified. 2. *Delmenhorst*, on the River *Delms*, a strong place and of great importance, built in the year 1247 by *Orbo*, Brother of Earl *Christian* the 2. and having been 65 years in possession of the Bishops of *Munster*, was suddenly surprised on Palm-Sunday morning by *Anthony* Earl of *Oldenburg*, Anno 1547, continuing ever since part of this Estate. 3. *Beckenhusen*, on a River which falleth not far off into the great Bay or Arm of the Sea which is called *De Jade*. 4. *Benardens*. 5. *Ovelgard*; both seated on a long Languet or Demy-Island betwixt the said *De Jade* and the River *Wefer*, called *Butiada*: both taken and the last well fortified by *John* Earl of *Oldenburg*, Anno 1520, belonging formerly to the Prefecture of *East-Friesland*,

but never brought under the command of the Earls thereof. 6. *Weferberg*, the chief Town, of a spacious Territory. 7. *Friede*, a strong piece on the River *Jade*, built by Earl *Christian*, one of the younger Branches of the House of *Oldenburg*, about the year 1400. 8. *Mellum*; 9. *Jadelle*, places of principal importance; the one on the River *Jade*, the other near the Ocean. Here is also within this Earldom the Province of *Amerlander*, supported by some to have been the Seat of the *Ambrogers*, who accompanied the *Cimbri* and *Tentones* in their Expedition towards the *Roman* Provinces, and were slain by *Marius*.

As for the Earls of *Oldenburg*, they derive themselves from *Walpert*, one of the Nephews of *Wittikindus*, the last King and first Duke of the *Saxons*; who having about the year 850, built a strong Castle on the borders of *Bremen*, in the honour of his Wife *Alseburg*, (whom he dearly loved) called it *Aseburgum*, so called by the *Latinists* to this day, by the Germans *Oldenborch*. But his Male issue failing in *Frederick* the 7. Earl, it came to one *Elinorus*, the Son of *Haisa*, a Nobleman of the *Frifian* blood, who had married *Richsa*, the Daughter of *John*, the fifth Earl of this Family. From him in a direct Line descended *Christian* or *Christiern*, eldest Son of *Theodorick*; who, being fortunately advanced to the Crown of *Denmark*, An. 1448, left his Estate in this Earldom (but referring the Title, according to the fashion of *Germany*) to his Brother *Gerrard*, the better to take him off from his Pretensions to the Dukedom of *Sleswick*, and the Earldom of *Holstein*, in which he did pretend a share. The Patrimony of it was much improved by the additions of the Countries of *Ruhringen*, *Olfingen*, and *Wangerland*, all lying on the German Sea; bequeathed by the last Will and Testament of the Lady *Mary*, Countess of *Jever* in *East-Friesland*, to *John* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the third from *Gerrard*. The Succession of these Earls, in regard the Royal Line of *Denmark*, and by consequence of Great *Britain*, is descended from them, I have here subjoined in this ensuing Catalogue of

The Earls of OLDENBURG:

- 850 1. *Walpert*, of the Race of *Wittikind*, the first Earl of *Oldenburg*.
- 856 2. *Theodorick*, the Son of *Walpert*.
3. *Theodorick* II. the Son of *Theodorick* the 1.
4. *Orbo*, Son of *Theodorick* the 2.
5. *John*, the Son of *Orbo*, accompanied the Emperor *Henry* the 2. in his Wars against the *Greeks* and *Saracens*, Anno 1007.
6. *Himo*, surnamed the Glorious, Son of *John*.
7. *Frederick*, Son of *Himo*, fortunate in his Wars against the *Frifians*; the last of the Male-line of this House.
8. *Elinorus*, the Son of *Haisa*, a Nobleman of the *Frifian* blood and of *Richsa* his Wife, the Daughter of *John* the fifth Earl.
9. *Elinorus* II. Son to *Elinorus* the first.
10. *Christiernus*, Son of *Elinorus* the 2. surnamed the Courageous, or the Warlike; a professed Enemy of *Henry* the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*, from whom he took the City of *Breme*.
11. *Maurice*, the Son of *Christiern*, an Associate of *Arnolph* Earl of *Holstein* in his Wars with *Denmark*.
12. *Christian* II. Son of *Maurice*.
13. *John* II. Son of *Christian* the 2.
14. *John* III. Son of *John* the 2.
15. *Canade*, the Son of *John* the third.
16. *Christiern* III. Son of *Canade*; a Student in *Ge-*

len, where he was initiated into holy Orders, which he relinquished, much against the will of his brother Maurice, on the death of his Father.

17. Theodorick, Son of Christian the 3. the first Earl of Delmenhorst of this Line; which fell to him at the death of Nicolas Archbishop of Bremen, descended from a younger Son of John the second.
- 1440 18. Christian IV. Son of Theodorick and Hedwig, Sister and Heir of Gerrard and Adolphus, Dukes of Sleswick, and Earls of Holstein; elected on the commendation of his Uncle Adolphus to the Crown of Denmark, Anno 1448.
- 1448 19. Gerward, the Brother of Christian the 4. a Prince of an unquiet spirit, always in Wars, and always worried. He lost the Town of Delmenhorst to the Bishop of Munster.
- 1500 20. John IV. Son of Gerrard, repaired the Ruines of his Estate, and settled the Distractions of it in the time of his Father, being then in Exile; and after very much enlarged it by the reduction of Butia.
- 1526 21. Anthony, the Son of John the 4. by a sudden Surprise recovered Delmenhorst from the Bishop of Munster, Anno 1547, which he strong ly fortified.
- 1573 22. John V. Son of Anthony, enlarged this Earl-dom with the Provinces of Ruffingen, Olfingen, and Wangerland, bequeathed to him by the last Will of the Countess of Jever, in East-Friesland.
23. Anthony II. Brother of John the 5. in whose life time he was Earl of Delmenhorst, and after his death of Oldenburg also: Still living, Anno 1648, for ought I can learn unto the contrary.

And thus we see the present Estate of Germany, distracted and divided amongst many Princes, Prelates, and Incorporated Towns, the chief of which are herein mentioned and described. But besides these there are many others of less note and smaller Territories, which yet are absolute and free: inasmuch that in one days riding a Traveller may twice or thrice meet with divers Laws and divers Coins; every Free Prince and Free City (whose Laws the Emperours are sworn to keep inviolable) having power to make what Laws and coin what Money they will. And hence, in the Censure of Kingdoms, the King of Spain is said to be *Rex hominum*, because of his Subjects reasonable Obedience; the King of France, *Rex Animarum*, because of their infinite Taxes and Impositions; the King of England, *Rex Diabolorum*, because of his Subjects often Infurrection against and Deposition of their Princes: But the Emperour of Germany is called *Rex Regum*, because there is such a number of *Reguli* or free Princes which live under his Command; or rather at their own Command, (for they do even what they list) as the Emperour Maximilian the first well noted.

And, to say truth, the publick Government thereof is nothing less than Monarchical; the Emperour being accompted amongst the Princes but as the chief Officer of the Empire; not reckoned of, by *Bodin*, and others of our great Statists and Civilians, as an absolute Monarch, such as the King of England, France and Spain, are confided to be. For the Privileges of the Free Cities being made perpetual, the great Estates Hereditary, and the Empire Eligible; the Emperours were brought at last to such low Condition, as to be made accountable to the States of the Empire; who if they be perfwaded in their Consciences, or but think they be so, that he is likely by

his Male-administration to destroy the Empire, or that he will not hearken unto good Advice, *ab Electorum Collegio Casarea majestate privare possit*, (as my Author hath it) he may be deprived by the Electors; and a more fit and able man chosen into the place, and that too, as the Emperour *Jodocus Barbatius* hath declared in one of his Constitutions, *An. 1410, sine Infidelitatis vel Rebellionis crimine*, without incurring the crimes of Treason or Dilloyalty. So that the supreme Power and Majesty of the Empire seems to reside especially and contrarily in the Electoral Colledge; diffidually, in the Imperial Diet; by way of Execution, in the chamber of *Spires*; and other the supreme Courts of the several Circles. But that which makes that Body which they call the Empire is the Assembly of the Prelates, Princes, and Commissioners of the Free Cities in their Diets or Parliaments, the Emperour presiding in them: whom he that saw adorned in his Royal Robes, with the Imperial Crowns and Scepter, with the Titles of *Cesar* and *Augustus* given at every word, would think that the whole Action did take life from him; whereas, indeed, he hath not so much Privilege as a Negative voice, but is to put in execution such Decrees and Sanctions as these Estates assembled have thought fit to make; not able to do any act by his own Authority, which may speak him Emperour, but, on the other side, the Princes take power unto themselves of making Laws for, and imposing Taxes on, their Subjects, of raising War upon one another, or against a third; and doing many other acts of supreme Authority, which in the Emperour would be counted matter of Male-administration. Such Points as these, together with the appointing of Judges and the like chief Magistrates, (as they relate unto the Empire) are not to be concluded of but in general Diets; which may be summoned by or without the Emperour, as occasion serveth. And to this weakening of the Majesty and Power Imperial the neighbouring Princes have afforded their best assistance; jealous of their own Interests and decrease of Power, if that vast Body to which limbed should be strongly joyned, and all the several Members of it united under the command of one supreme Head. Clear proof whereof we have in those solemn Leagues and Confederations made in their several times against Charles the fifth and the late Emperour Ferdinand the 2. as soon as they began to be in some possibility of settling the Imperial Majesty in its proper splendour, and bringing down the Princes of it to a lower pitch.

As for the means by which the Empire is attained, it is, and hath of long time been, by the way of Election, as before was noted. The business was first projected in the Court of Rome by Gregory the Imperial, thought it the most expedient course to continue the Imperial Title amongst those of this Nation. But whatsoever was pretended, the Design of it chiefly was to make the Emperours less powerful, and distrust the Germans (whom they feared) the better opportunity to grow great in Italy. And that the Emperour might be such as the Pope should like of, the matter was so ordered, that the one half of the Electors should be also of the Ecclesiasticks, who, being obnoxious to the ways of the Popes, and for the most part driving on their Interests, Popes, and for the most part driving on their Interests, were very like to serve him on all occasions. The Electors only fix in number: that is to say, 1. The Archbishop of *Mentz*, Chancellor of the Empire, 2. The Archbishop of *Colem*, Chancellor of Italy, 3. The Archbishop of *Triers*, Chancellor of France, 4. The Count-Palatine of *Rhene*, Arch-Sewer, 5. The Duke of *Saxony*, Lord Marshal, and 6. the Marquess of *Brandenburg*, Lord Chamberlain. Upon equality of Voices the Duke of *Bohemia* (now King) was to come in for a seventh; who by Of-

fice is to be chief Cup-bearer in all great Solemnities. For upon days of great Solemnities, as Elections, Inaugurations, the first days of the Imperial Diets, and the like to these, these Offices are performed only; and then performed in this manner following, either in person or by Proxy. Before the Palace-Gate stands an heap of Oats, so high that it reacheth to the breast of the Horse on which the Duke of *Saxony* rideth, having in his hand a silver Wand and a silver Measure, both which together are to weigh 200 Marks. The Duke, still sitting on his Horse, filcheth up the Measure with Oats, then sticks his Wand in the remainder of the heap, delivereth the measure of Oats unto some of his Servants who stand nearest unto him, and so attends the Emperour into the Court. The Emperour being entered and sat down at the Table, the three Spiritual Electors, standing orderly together, say the Grace before him. Then cometh the Marquess of *Brandenburg* on Horse-back also, with a Basin of Water in his hand, (the Basin being of the weight of 12 Marks of Silver) and a fine clean Towel on his Arm; which, alighting from his Horse, he holds to the Emperour till he wath. Next comes the Palatine of the *Rhene* mounted on his Horse, with four Silver Platters full of Meat, every one of the weight of three Marks of Silver; which, descending from his Horse after due reverence made, he carrieth and placeth on the Table. And finally the Duke (or King) of *Bohemia*, entering the great Hall on Horse-back as the others did, with a Napkin on his Arm, and a covered Cup in his Hand of the weight of 12 Marks in Silver, alighting from his Horse, and presenting the Cup unto the Emperour. But we must know, that of late times these Offices are seldom or never performed by the Electors in their own persons. It is enough if they send their Ambassadors, or substitute some one or other of the Emperours Court to do for them.

The Election is usually celebrated at *Frankford* on the *Maine*, to which place the Electors or their Deputies are to make repair on the day appointed by the Archbishop of *Mentz*, whose Office it is (as being Chancellor of the Empire) to issue out the Summons for this Assembly. In their passage unto *Frankford* they are to be sufficiently guarded by every Prince through whose Territories or Dominions they are to travel; their Attendants not to exceed the number of 200 Horse, of which 50 only to be armed. When they are met, they go into *S. Bartholomew's* Church, the most Capacious of that City) where, after the High-Mass is said, the three Spiritual Electors laying their Hands upon their Breasts, and the Temporal Princes on the Book, make Oath to chuse a fit Temporal Head for the People of Christendom. Upon equality of Voices, as it sometimes happeneth, the *Bohemian* hath the casting Voice, and concludes the business. If in the space of 30 days they have not agreed upon a man, then must they have no other allowance but of Bread and Water, nor be suffered to go out of the City, till that necessity compelleth them unto some Agreement. Which being at the last resolved on, and declared accordingly, the Prince so elected is presently saluted by the Title of *King of the Romans*; the Title of Emperour being not properly to be given unto him, until he have received the Imperial Crown at the hands of the Pope: though since the time of Charles the fifth, without any such trouble to themselves or the Popes of Rome, the Title of both Emperour and Imperial Majesty is usually conferred upon them from their first Election. The Election being finished, and signified to the party chosen, the Inauguration was held anciently at three several places: viz. 1. at *Aquileira*, or *Agen*, in the Land of *Gallicia*, where he received the Silver Crown for the Kingdom of Germany; 2. at *Milain*, by the Archbishop whereof he was crowned with the Iron

Crown, for *Lombardy*, or the Realm of Italy; 3. at *Rome*, where, at the hands of the Pope himself, he was crowned with a Golden Crown, for the Roman Empire. But since those Journies unto Rome and *Attilin* have been long laid by; the Emperours holding their Elections to be strong enough to make good their Title to that Dignity, being merely titular, and their Inauguration at *Agen* to be as effectual as if they had also visited the two other Cities. The form of which Elections, the Privileges of the Electors, and other fundamental Constitutions of the German Empire, we find summed up together in the Golden Bull of Charles the 4. by him first promulgated, *an. 1359*. But we must know, that since the publishing of that Bull, the business of Election hath received some change as to the number and the persons of the Parties interested. For, it pleased the Emperour Ferdinand the 2. on the Prohibition of Frederick the first Elector Palatine, to transfer the Electoral Dignity, with the Office of *Arch-bishop*, or Arch-Sewer, from that House to the Duke of *Bavaria*, the Title of Elector of *Bavaria*, with all the Powers and Privileges which belonged unto it, to be inrolled upon him and his Heirs for ever. Which action of the Emperour being protested against by some of the Electors, in favour of the Palatine Family, and in due care unto themselves, in not admitting such a dangerous precedent for the time to come, it was at last concluded and agreed on by the Pacification made at *Munster*, Anno 1648. That the Duke of *Bavaria* and his Heir enjoying the said Electoral Dignity with the *Upper Palatinate*, according to the Translation of it from the Palatine Family spoken of before; an Eighth Electorate should be added to the former number, to be enjoyed together with the *Lower Palatinate* by Charles Ludowick, the now Prince Elector Palatine, and his Heirs, who also, on the failure of the Line of *Bavaria*, are to be repossessed of their ancient Rights, the Title of Arch-Treasurer being given unto them at the present instead of that of *Arch-bishop*, or Arch-Sewer, which they had before.

Now as a step unto the Empire, and for the better assurance of the Imperial Dignity to the Austrian Family, it was cunningly projected by Charles the fifth, (having received the Imperial Crown from Pope Clement the 7.) that his Brother Ferdinand should be chosen King of the Romans whilst himself was living, and by that means be the more certain of the Empire after his decease. Which Policy being followed by all his Successors, the Title of *Rex Romanorum*, or King of the Romans, is grown to be the Title of the Heir apparent, or designed Successor, in the present Empire of the Germans; as that of *Cesar* was from the time of *Adrian*, in the Empire of the ancient Romans. Inasmuch as *Rex Romanorum* is now defined to be one who is already so far advanced in the Empire, that on the Death, Deprivation, or Resignation of the present Emperour, he is immediately to succeed. And so accordingly it hath happened since this Act of Charles, who though he laboured under-hand to leave the Empire unto Philip his Son and Heir, whom he found capable enough of so high an Honour; yet he could not do it: it being thought by many understanding men, that on notice of this like mind to transmit the Empire to his own Posterity, did secretly lend Duke Maurice his helping hand to drive him out of Germany, as in brief he did. As for the reasons, or, to say better, the pretences, upon which Charles did institute this *Rex Romanorum*, (for questionless the true reason of it was to perpetuate the Empire in the Austrian Family) they were these that follow. 1. Because that, having the command of many Nations, he could not always personally attend the Affairs of Germany. 2. The troubled Estate of Christendom, of the Empire especially,

maria and *Jaistland*, save that it hath an Outlet into the *Baltick*, on the North West of *Wageland*. Chief Places in it are, 1. *Kiel* (*Chilumium* in *Latine*) seated upon a navigable Arm of the *Baltick* Sea, parting *Wageland* from the Duke-edom of *Sleswick*: a Town well traded, and having a capacious Haven, seldom without good store of Shipping from *Germany*, *Lithland*, *Sweden*, and the rest of *Denmark*. 2. *Rembow*, the best fortified Piece in all this Province. 3. *Niemußer*, on the North west of the *Stear*, not far from the head of it. 4. *Wilster*, on a small River so called. 5. *Brantfede*, 6. *Borkholm*, not much observable, but for a Monastery in which *Henry* one of the Earls hercof (of a younger House) turned Monk, and died, *Anno* 1241.

The ancient Inhabitants of this and the other three were the *Saxons*, *Sigolons*, and *Sihalingis*, placed here by *Fotemy*; whom I conceive to be no other than some Tribes of the *Cimbri* of whom this *Cherfnefs* took name; the two last of which passing into the name of the first, and in the Declination of the *Roman* Empire marching over the *Elb*, and spreading all along the Coasts of the *German* Ocean, molested with their Piracies and Depredations, the Shores of *Britain*, known by that name unto the *Britains*, they were incited to assault them against the *Scots* and *Picts*. Which action, with the Aid of the *Jutes* and *Angli* (Inhabitants together with them of the *Cimbri* *Cherfnefs*) they performed so honestly as to make themselves Masters of the best part of the Island. Such as remained behind, not being able to defend their own against the *Scoties*, were fain to quit the parts lying next to *Macclenburg*; which, being peopled by the *Agri*, took the name of *Wageland*. But the *Saxons* being vanquished by *Charles* the Great, there on the North-side of the *Elb* became a part of the great Dukedom of *Saxony*; and so continued till dismembered by *Letharius*, both Duke and Emperor, who gave the proper *Holf* (or *Holfen* in speciall) so called) with the Province of *Schleswig* to *Adolph* Earl of *Schaumburg*, who had deserved well of him in his Wars, with the Title of Earl of *Holfen*. *An* 1114. By *Adolph* the second, his Successor, it was settled in this House; who having made a full Conquest of it, caused him to be planted with Colonies of *Dutch* or *German* from *Holland*, *Westphalen*, and *Friesland*; by which means the name of *Sleswice* was at last worn out. By *Gerrard* the fifth the Dukedom of *Sleswick* was also added; conferred upon him by the bounty of *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark*, in whose Wars he served.

Adolph the last Earl of this House dying without Issue, the whole Estate fell on *Christiern*, Son of *Theodorick* Earl of *Oldenburg*, and of *Hedstern*, his Wife, Sister and Heir to *Adolph* before mentioned; who, being called to the Crown of *Denmark* commanded with his Brother *Gerrard* also of the Emperor *Frederick* the third, prevailed so far as to have the whole Estate erected into a Dukedom, *Anno* 1414, to be held by him and his Successors of the Sacred Empire. Which said, we will next add the Catalogue of

The Earls and Dukes of HOLSTEIN.

- 1114 1. *Adolph* of *Schaumburg*, by *Letharius*, Emperor and Duke of *Saxony*, made the first Earl of *Holfen*.
- 1137 2. *Adolph* II. Son of *Adolph* the first.
- 1164 3. *Adolph* III. Son of *Adolph* the 2. vanquished by *Canutus* King of the *Danes*, lost himself and his Country.
- 1232 4. *Adolphus* IV. in his Fathers life-time recovered his Estate from *Waldemar* the Successor of *Canutus*, overcame by him in a well fought Battle, *Anno* 1226, his Father then Prisoner to the *Danes*.

- 1261 5. *Gerrard*, the 2. Son of *Adolph* the fourth, his elder Brother *John* making choice of *Wageland* succeeded in *Holfen*.
- 1281 6. *Henry* the Son of *Gerrard*, the first that set up a Custom-house at *Hamburg*, for receipt of his Tolls and Taxes.
- 1310 7. *Gerrard* II. Son of *Henry*, slain treacherously by the *Danes*.
- 1339 8. *Henry* II. Son of *Gerrard* the second.
- 1381 9. *Gerrard* III. Son of *Henry* the second, created the first Duke of *Sleswick* by Queen *Margaret* of *Denmark*.
- 1404 10. *Henry* III. Son of *Gerrard* the third.
- 1427 11. *Adolphus* V. commonly called the XII. (those of the younger Houses being reckoned in) the last Earl of this House.
- 1459 12. *Christiern* of *Oldenburg*, King of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, Son of *Theodorick* Earl of *Oldenburg*, and of his Wife *Hedwigis*, Sister of *Henry* and *Adolphus* the two last Earls, succeeded in the Earldom of *Holfen*, enlarged with the addition of *Dithmarsch*, and erected into a Dukedom by the Emperor *Frederick* the third, *Anno* 1474.

But seeing that *Orho* Earl of *Schaumburg* pretended a Right unto the whole, as the next Heir-male, according to the Constitutions of the Empire, of which it was holden; and *Gerrard* the Brother of *Christiern* put in for his Share, according to the ill Custom of *Germany*, of which it was then counted part: he was fain to buy his peace of both; giving to *Orho* 40000 *Florens* in ready money, with the Towns of *Pioneburg*, *Haltzburg*, and *Brantfede*, the ancient possessions of the Earls of *Schaumburg*, and 50000 Marks to his Brother *Gerrard*, besides his whole Interest in the Earldom of *Oldenburg*, as before was said. By this means *Holfen*, was united to the Crown of *Denmark*; the Kings thereof, as Dukes of *Holfen*, being counted Princes of the Empire; but neither send unto the Diet, nor contribute any thing at all to the publick Taxes, nor acknowledge any kind of subjection to it more than merely titularly. Only it was ordained at the request of the Subjects when first they were incorporated into that Kingdom, that in case of any grievance or unjust sentence in the ordinary Courts of Justice, wherein they found no remedy in the supreme Council of the Province, it might be lawful for them to appeal to the Imperial Chamber, as they had done formerly. Which as it was granted to content them at the present time, on sufficient Caution; so hath it seldom or never been put in practise; the very Grant or Privilege (if such it were) being in a manner worn out of memory. But since this uniting of these two Estates, the Title of Duke of *Holfen* and a good part of the Country was given unto *Adolphus* Brother of *Christiern* the 3. (created by Queen *Elizabeth*, one of the Knights of the Garter, *Anno* 1560) who governed it interchangeably with the King in their several turns, after whose death, and the death of all his Children dying without Issue-male, the Title of it was conferred on *Ulrich*, Son of *Frederick* the second, and Brother of *Christiern* the fourth, created King of the Garter by King *James*, *Anno* 1605; in whose posterity it remains till this present time.

2. The Kingdom of DENMARK.

IN which I. *JUTLAND* containeth all the rest of the *Cimbri* *Cherfnefs*, divided from the Dukedom of *Holfen* by the River *Eyder*, the ancient Boundary between the *Saxons* and the *Danes*; but principally by a long Trench and Wall from one Sea to the other of such breadth, that a Chariot or two Horse-men a-break might ride upon it. First built in imitation

of the *Pils* Wall in *England*, by *Godfrey* King of *Denmark*, in the time of *Charles* the Great; either to hinder the daily Incurions of the *Saxons*, or as some, or to stop the current of the Victories of the said *Charles*, as others think. The Tract thereof, still very easy to be seen, is called *Dennewerk* (or the *Danes Work*) to this very day.

It was so called from the *Jutes*, who, together with the *Angli* and neighbouring *Saxons*, made a Conquest of the best part of *Britain*. The Country so abounded in Cattel, that it fended yearly into *Germany* 50000 Oxen, besides great store of Butter, Cheese, Tallow, Hides, and Horfes, divided commonly into *North Jutland*, and *South Jutland*, or *Jutland* specially so called, and the Dukedom of *Sleswick*.

SOUTH-JUTLAND, or the Dukedom of *SLESWICK*, is that part of the *Cimbri* *Cherfnefs*, which lies next to *Holfen*; called *South-Jutland*, from the Southern situation of it; and *Sleswick*, from the chief Town of it, and the head of this Dukedom. The Country, for the most part, is plain, little swelled with Mountains; the Fields whereof do interchangeably yield both Fish and Corn. For during one three years they feed it constantly, and reap the Fruits of it, and for the next three eat the Pools overflow the Land, to the end the Fish may eat up the Grasse, (whom they catch as often as they please) and the Mud which is left behind enrich the Soil. But besides their Pools, they have also on the *Baltick* Shores many goodly Bays; not only commodious for Merchants, but well stored with Fish, and with Salmons especially.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Flensteborg*, seated among very high Mountains on the Shore of the *Baltick* Sea, where there is a Port so deep, so safe, and so commodious, that all the Inhabitants thereof in a manner may lade and unlade their Ships close to their houses. 2. *Hufsen*, or *Hufsum*, upon the *German* Ocean, not far from the mouth of the River *Eyder*. 3. *Haderslev*, a Bishop's See, if not rather some Town or Manor of the Bishop's of *Sleswick*, situate on a navigable In-let of the *Baltick* Sea, wherewith it is almost encompassed; beautified with the fair Cattle of *Hansburg*, begun by *John* the eldest Son of King *Christiern* the first, then Duke of *Holfen*, but finished by *Frederick* the second, King of *Denmark*. 4. *Lundenberg*, in the *Peninsule* called *Eyderstedde*, over against *De Strand*, an Island of the *German* Ocean. 5. *Sternberg*, the ordinary Residence of the Governour for the King of *Denmark*. 6. *Gutter*, a strong Fort or Cattle of the Duke of *Sleswick*, at the end of a large Bay or In-let of the *Baltick* also; remarkable for the Toll-booth or Custom-house there erected, at which there is Toll paid one year with another for 50000 Oxen sent out of the *North-Jutland* into *Germany*. 7. *Sleswick*, originally by the *Danes* called *Hyabum*, built, as they say, by *Hebe* a Queen of the Nation; but by the *Saxons* called *Sleswick*, as the Town upon the River *Sley*, there running into the *Baltick*, and giving to the Town a fair and commodious Haven. This of long time hath been accounted the chief Town of this Province, honoured with an Episcopal See, and made the Head of the Dukedom, so giving name unto the whole. A Dukedom first erected by King *Henry* of *Denmark*, who gave it to *Waldemar*, great Grandchild of *Abel*, a former King, *Anno* 1280, to be held by him under the Right and Sovereignty of the Kings thereof. But the Male-issue failing, it returned to the Crown, and was by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* conferred on *Gerrard* Earl of *Holfen*, as before was said, *Anno* 1386. Repenting afterwards of that Act, he extorted it out of the hands of the Widow of *Gerrard*; but it was again recovered by the valour and good fortune of his Son *Adolphus*. After whose death it

fell together with *Holfen*, upon *Christiern* of *Oldenburg* King of *Denmark*, as before related, by whom it was incorporated with that Crown, never since aliened, but assigned sometimes in Portion for the younger Princes; the Patrimony at this time of the Sons of *Alexander*, furnished of *Sunderborg*, (the place of his Nativity) Son of *John*, one of the younger Sons of King *Christiern* the third.

NORTH-JUTLAND, the most Northern part of all the *Cherfnefs*, hath on the South the Dukedom of *Sleswick*, but on all other parts the Sea. Divided commonly, according to the number of the Bishopsricks, into four Dioceses or Districts; that is to say,

1. The Diocese of *RIP* or *RIPEN*, bordering next to *Sleswick*, containing 30 Prefectures or Herets, (as they use to call them) seven Cities or walled Towns, and ten Castles. The chief of which are, 1. *Ripen*, the Episcopal See, situate near the *German* Ocean. 2. *Kolding*, on a Creek of the *Baltick* Sea; where *Dorothy* the Dowager of *Christiern* the third built a publick School, (one of my Authors calls it an University).

2. The Diocese of *ARHUSEN*, lying on the North of *Ripen*, but more towards the *Baltick*, containeth 31 Herets or Prefectures, seven Cities or walled Towns, and five Castles. The Chief whereof are, 1. *Arhusen*, the Episcopal See, seated on the *Baltick*, enjoying a commodious Port and well frequented; the first Bishop hereof being that *Poppo* who converted this Nation; Christianity and Episcopacy going for the most part hand in hand together. 2. *Schanderborg*, on the South of *Arhusen*. 3. *Kalbe*, a strong Cattle of the Kings, seated in the inmost part of a large Bay, occasioned by the Promontory or Cape of *Hilleen*, extending hence two Dutch miles to the high Hill of *Ellemberg*. Opposite whereto, and pertaining to this Jurisdiction, lie the Islands of 1. *Sunfse*, 2. *Hirholm*, 3. *Tuen*, 4. *Hiansee*, (perhaps *Germa*) 5. *Hilgenes*, and others.

3. The Diocese of *WIBORCH*, on the North of *Arhusen*, containeth fifteen Herets, the Islands of 1. *Jegen*, 2. *Hanholm*, 3. *Ofstolen*, 4. *Cifland*, 5. *Egholm*, and 6. *Bodum*; three Cities or walled Towns, and as many Castles. The Principal of which is *Wiborch*, the Episcopal See, an Island City, but situate on a water which runneth into the Bay of *Linsfor*. The ordinary Seat of Judicature for both the *Jutlands*, for all Causes, as well Criminal as Civil: the Court continually sitting from one day to another, unless perhaps the Judges do sometimes adjourn it for their own refreshments.

4. The Diocese of *BURGAVE*, or *Vandalia*, lying farther North, is commonly subdivided into four Parts or Members: that is to say, 1. *Thylund*, lying South of the Bay of *Linsfor*, on the *Baltick* side, whose chief Town is *Aborch*, the ordinary Seat and Residence of the Bishop of *Vandalia*, from hence many times called *Aburgave*, situate on a Bay aforesaid, which, opening in to the *Baltick* Sea, extended through the main Land Westward almost as far as the *German* Ocean. 2. *Morset*, lying on the Ocean, and containing three Prefectures or Herets; the Town of *Nicoping* the Cattle of *Lundsted*, and the life of *Ageroe*. 3. *Hamborg*, on the North-West of the Bay of *Linsfor*, containing 4 Herets, the Town of *Thylund*, where *Christiern* the third founded a publick School, or such another University as that of *Kolding*, the Cattle of *Orum*, and the Islands of *Oland* and *Osholm*. There is in this part also, the high Rock called *Skarvingen*, noted Sea-mark, fity serving to give notice to the Sailour of the Quick sands which lie underneath it and about this Coast. 4. *Wenjsfel*, *Venhusen*, or *Wenstet*, that is (as *Mercator* doth expound it) *Pandulund* feldes, the Seat of the *Vandals*, taketh up all the rest of the North

of *Fuinland*, containing six Prefectures, the Islands of 1. *Greiffholm*, 2. *Heitzholm*, and 3. *Tidholm*, three Towns, and one Castle: the most remarkable of which is *Schagen*, within the most Northern point of all this *Cherfoneuse*. In this part is a very high Mountain called *Mount Alberg*, in which are found some marks and remainders of the ancient Giants, as the Inhabitants believe, and report accordingly.

The Inhabitants of both *Fuinlands* in the time of *Protony* and before, were the *Cobandi*, *Chali*, *Phundusi*, *Charvades*, and in the most Northern Tracts the *Gmbri*, of whom the four first were but Tribes or Nations. These moving toward the South in that great Expedition against *Spain*, made by the neighbouring *Vandals* on the *Roman* Empire, occasioned the *Fuites*, or *Angli* to enlarge or shift their Dwellings, each taking up the parts which lay nearest to them. The *Fuites*, or *Gute*, being a people of *Scandia*, and there placed by *Protony*, took up the Northern parts thereof, from them named *Fuinland*: the other being a people of the *Suevi*, dwelling on the South of the *Elb*, possessed themselves of those parts which lay next the *Saxons*, their old Friends and Confederates, (their chief Town being *Sleswick*) where *Angelen*, now an obscure Village, once of greater note, doth preserve their memory. But these uniting with the *Saxons* in the Conquest of *Britain*, and leaving none behind which were fit for action, or not enough to keep possession of the Country against the new Invaders, gave opportunity to the *Danes* to come in upon them; by whom the Country being conquered as far as to the River *Eyder*, were planted by Colonies of *Danes*, and made a part of that Kingdom: of whom we shall say more in the close of all, first taking a survey of the *Baltick* Islands, and such Provinces on the main Land of *Scandia* as properly make up the Kingdom of *Denmark*.

2. **THE BALTICK ISLANDS** are in number 35, and are so called, because they lie dispersed in the *Baltick* Ocean. At this day it is called by the *German* de *Ost Zee*, anciently by some *Mare Suevicum*, by *Pomponius Mela* *Sinus Codanus*, by *Strabo* *Sinus Fennicus*, but generally *Mare Balticum*, because the great Peninsula of *Scandia*, within which it is, was by some Writers of the middle and darker time called *Baltia*. It beginneth at the narrow passage called the *Sound*; and in interlacing the Countries of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Germany*, and *Poland*, extendeth even to *Livonia* and *Lithuania*. The reasons why this Sea, being so large, doth not ebb and flow, are, 1. The Narrowness of the Strait by which the Ocean is let into it; and 2. The Northern situation of it, whereby the Celestial Influences have lesser power upon it. The principal of this great shoal of Islands are, 1. *Seland*, 2. *Fuen*, or *Fionia*, 3. *Langland*, 4. *Lawland*, 5. *Falstere*, 6. *Avis*, 7. *Alfen*, 8. *Tufing*, 9. *Ween*, 10. *Femer*, and 11. *Bornholm*. Some others of less note we shall only name, and so pass them over.

1. **SELAND**, the greatest Island of the *Baltick* Seas, is situate near the main Land of *Scandia*, parted from it by a narrow Strait or Fretum, not above a *Dutch* mile in breadth, commonly called by the name of the *Sundt* or *Sund*. A Strait through which all Ships which have any trading to or from the *Baltick*, must of necessity take their course; all other Passages being barred up with impassible Rocks, or otherwise prohibited by the Kings of *Denmark*, upon forfeiture of all their Goods. So that being the only safe Passage which these Seas afford, one may sometimes see two or three hundred Ships in a day pass through it: all which pay a Toll or Impostion to the King, according to their Bills of lading. And to secure this Passage, and command all Pas-

sengers, there are two strong Castles, the one in *Scandia*, called *Helsingburg*, whereof more anon; and the other in this Island which is called *Cronenburg*.

But before we come to this Castle, we must view the other parts of the Island, being in length two days journey, and almost as much in breadth: the Soil so fertile, that, without any manuring or charge at all, it yieldeth plenty of all Necessaries for the life of man. It was anciently called *Cadomania*, and containeth in fifteen Cities or walled Towns, and twelve Royal Castles. The principal whereof are, 1. *Haffen*, or *Hafnia*, the Metropolis of the Islands, by the *Dutch* called *Copenhagen*, or the *Haven* of *Merchants*; situate near the Sea, with an handsome Port; the Isle of *Amager*, which lieth on the East-side of the Town, making a very safe Road for all kinds of Shipping. The Town is of an orbicular form, and reasonably well fortified; but the Buildings mean, for the most part of Clay and Timber, only to be commended for a spacious Marketplace: Yet herein, as the chief Town of all the Kingdom, and Situate in the heart of those Dominions, is the Palace-Royal, built of Free-Stone in form of a Quadrangle, but of no great Beauty or Magnificence. Most memorable for the University here founded by *Hem*, or *Ericus* the ninth; but perfected by King *Christiern* the first, by him and the succeeding Princes liberally endowed. 2. *Fredericksburg*, amongst Woods of Beech, built for a place of Pleasure by *Frederick* the second, where the King hath a fine Houle, and a little Park, in which (amongst other foreign Beasts) are some Fallow-Deer transported hither out of *England* in the 24. year of Queen *Elizabeth*. 3. *Roskilde*, not walled but counted for a City, as a See Episcopall; the Bishops whereof have anciently had the honour of Crowning and Inaugurating the Kings of *Denmark*. In the Cathedral Church heretofore to be seen the Tombs of many of the *Danish* Kings; some of them very fair and sumptuous, the most mean and ordinary. 4. *Sora*, of old times beautified with a goodly Monastery, the Revenues whereof, at the alteration of Religion, were converted to the maintenance of a Free-School built here by *Frederick* the first. But in the year 1623, *Christiern* the fourth, adding hereto the Revenues of two other dissolved Monasteries, the one in the Isle of *Lawland* and the other in *Fuinland*, founded here a new University, for the better supply of learned Ministers for the Churches of *Denmark* and *Norway*, (which before could not be provided for out of *Copenhagen*) and furnished it with men of eminence in all Arts and Sciences for its first Professors. 5. *Ellenore*, or *Helsingore*, a Village only, but much frequented by Seafaring men as their Ships pass by the sound, upon which it is. Near unto which is 6. the strong and magnificent Castle of *Cronenburg*, built with incredible charge and pains by King *Frederick* the second; the foundation of it being laid on huge Stones sunk into the Sea, and so fastened together, that no Storm or Tempest, how violent soever, is able to shake it; well fortified as well as founded, and mixt of a Palace and a Fort, being since the first building of it the most constant Residence of the Kings of *Denmark*, who from hence may easily discern each Ship which sails through the *Sundt*, each of which addeth more or less unto his Revenues. A profitable and pleasing prospect. By the Commodity of this and the opposite Castle, the King doth not only secure his Customs, but very much strengthen his Estate: the Castles being so near, and the Strait so narrow, that, by the addition of some few Ships, he may keep the greatest Navy that is from passing by him.

Unto the Government and Jurisdiction of this Island belong many others; the principal whereof are, 1. *Amager*,

magria, *Amager*, or *Amach*, which helps to make up the Port or Road of *Copenhagen*, spoken of before; planted with *Hollanders* brought hither by the procurement of *Christiern* the second. 2. *Mind*, or *Moen-land*, the chief Town whereof is called *Stegke*. 3. (2) *HUENE*, or *VEEN*, a little South of *Cronenburg* Castle; a *Dutch* mile in length, but not quite so broad; remarkable only for the Studies of that famous Astronomer *Tycho Brahe*, to whom *Frederick* the second gave this Island, that living in a private and solitary place, removed from all company but his own Family only, he might with more convenience attend his Books. At this day most observable for the cattle of *Oranopolis*, or *Orenborg*, where the greatest part of his Mathematical Instruments are preserved in safety.

3. **FIONIA**, or **FUNEN**, the second Island of account in all the *Baltick*, is situate betwixt *Seland* and *Fuinland*, from which last it is parted by a Strait called *Middelfart Sundt*, so narrow, and of so small a Sea, that the Island and the *Cherfoneuse* join yoked together. A Country of a pleasant and delightful Situation, and as fruitful withal; containing 12 *Dutch* miles in length and four in breadth; and therein 24 Herets or Prefectures, 16 Towns, and 6 Royal Castles, besides many goodly Villages, and Gentlemens Houses. The chief whereof are, 1. *Odensee*, or *Orbenfche* (called in *Latine*, *Orthonia*) an Episcopall See, founded here, at the first conversion of this People, by *Oltho* the Great, whence it had the name. The Town is not large, but beautified with two fair Churches, the one dedicated to Saint *Cannus*, the other to St. *Francis*: situate in the midst of the Island, from which the residue of the Towns are almost equally distant; and so commodiously seated for Trade and Merchandize, as they do not any traffic in the *Baltick* Sea, but in *Sweden*, *Norway*, *Russia*, *Flanders*, and *Germany*. 2. *Nyborch*, 3. *Foorby*, 4. *Swynborch*, 5. *Middelfart*, whence the Strait is so named, 6. *Bovent*, and 7. *Kartemunde*; all seated on some Haven, or convenient Creek. The principal of the Castles are, 1. *Newborg*, 2. *Hagenfchow*, 3. *Efchow*, 4. *Hingegels*, 5. the Court of *Kugard*. In this Island, not far from the Castle of *Hagenfchow*, is the Mount of *Offenberg*, where *John Ranzewius*, An. 1430. discomfited the great Army of *Christopher*, the Brother of *Anthon*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, coming in those unsettled times to invade the Kingdom, under colour of restoring *Christiern* the second formerly deposed: in which Fight the Earls of *Floye* and *Tockelborg* were both slain in the place, and the Kingdom after that in quiet from the like Pretenders.

South of *Fionia*, and under the Government hereof, are about 90 lesser Islands, most of them inhabited: the chief of which are.

4. **LANGLAND**, seven *Dutch* miles in length, in which, besides many Villages and Gentlemens Houses, we have the Town of *Rudskoping*, and the Castle of *Frænker*.

5. **LAWLAND**, disjoynted from *Seland* by a little narrow Strait called *Gronne-fundt*; so plentiful of Corn and Cheefstuffs, that Ships full freighted with them are sent yearly hence. An Island which, besides many Castles, Villages and Manfion-houses of the Gentry, hath five good Towns, viz. 1. *Nyffand*, 2. *Nyffou*, 3. *Tegor*, 4. *Rielm*, and 5. *Maribane*; in which last anciently was a very rich Monastery, the Revenues whereof are now employed for the endowment of the new University of *Sora*, founded by *Christiern* the fourth, as before was noted.

6. **FALSTRE**, four *German* miles in length, affording plenty of Corn yearly to some neighbouring Islands. Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Nicopen*, which for the Elegancy of the place and Plantations of the Situation is called the *Naples* of *Denmark*. 2. *Stubeop*,

from whence there is the ordinary passage into *Germany*, seven *Dutch* miles hence.

7. **TEUSING**, not far from *Swynborch*, or *Swineburgh*, a Town of *Fionia*; a *Dutch* mile in length, situate in a dangerous and troublesome Sen, from whence is no safe passage either to *Seland*, *Fuen*, or *Fuinland*, though much distant from neither. Chief places in it are, 1. *Affens*, towards *Fuinland*; 2. *Niburg*, towards *Seland*; and 3. the Court of *Keitap*, belonging to the noble Family of *Kofenrant*.

8. **FEMER**, or **FEMEREN**, a fruitful and well-peopled Island, lying in it the Towns of 1. *Derborch*, 2. *Stabul*, and 3. *Piterfjarp*. A place of great importance to the Crown of *Denmark*, not so much in danger of being made subject to the *Imperialists* by the taking of *Helsing* and both *Fuinlands*, as by planting too a strong Garrison in this small Island: and therefore with all diligence recovered by the King again, and better fortified than before, against all Invasions, Anno 1628. Of the remaining Islands which pertain unto *Fionia*, we find the names of 1. *Aroe*, 2. *Ronfo*, 3. *Endelo*, 4. *Ebleo*, 5. *Bake*, 6. *Brando*, 7. *Zore*, 8. *Agerm*, 9. *Hellens*, 10. *Terdo*, 11. *Birkholm*, of which nothing memorable.

Amongst these Islands, but not subordinate to *Fionia*, are, 9. **ARIA**, belonging to the Dukedom of *Sleswick*, consisting of 3 Parishes, some Gentlemens Houses, and the Town and Castle of *Koping*: supposed to be the habitation of the *Arii*, spoken of by *Tacitus*; but a Colony rather of them, as I suppose. And not far off,

10. **ALSEN**, another little Island, but of more repute called in *Latine*, *Elyfa*, opposite to the Gulf or Bay of *Flensburg* in the Dukedom of *Sleswick*, to which it also appertaineth. Well stored it is with Beasts for profit, and Game for pleasure; so populous, that some thousands of men may be easily and suddenly raised in it; consisting of 13 Parishes and 4 Towns: that is to say, 1. *Gammelgard*, 2. *Offerbolm*, 3. *Arderbolm*, and 4. the good Town and Castle of *Sunderbolm*, one of the ordinary Residences of the Dukes of *Sleswick*, and honoured with the Birth of many of their Princes of the Royal Family. Some think it was the Habitation anciently of the *Elyfii*, spoken of by *Tacitus*, and by him placed next unto the *Angli*: But being the *Angli* in those times dwelt about the *Elb*, I rather think, that when some Colonies of the *Angli* seated themselves in the *Cimbrik Cherfoneuse*, as before was said, some of the *Arii* and *Elyfii* might go along for company, and plant themselves near them and these Islands.

11. **BORNHOLM**, the last of all the *Baltick* which belong to *Denmark*, is situate more Eastward, opposite to that part of *Scandia* which is called *Bleking*, betwixt it and *Pomerania*. An Isle of excellent Pasturage, breeding plenty of Cattel, wherewith, as also with Butter, Cheese, Wool, Hides, and some Force of Fruits, they supply the wants of some of their neighbours, besides good quantities of powdered Beef and Mutton, which they barrel up and sell to *Marrinicks*. It containeth many good Towns and wealthy Villages; the chief whereof is *Bornholm*, which gives name to the Island. Both Town and Island were pawned by some former Kings unto those of *Lubeck*, from them redeemed by King *Frederick* the second for a great sum of money, after it had been in their possession about 50 years.

These Islands in the time of *Pomponius Mela* were by one general name called the *Hemodes*, in number reckoned to be seven; the residue either not inhabited, or not taken notice of, are no-where mentioned in the Ancients. Of these seven 1. the greatest and best peopled was called *Cadomania*, (supposed to be *Seland*), in which the said Author placeth the *Tenenti*. By *Protony* it is called

H h Scandia

Scandia Minor, with reference to the great *Peninsula* of *Scandia*, supposed by him to be an Island. From this, or from the Sea adjoining, called *Sinu Codanus*, the people of these Islands and the next Eastern Continent took the name of *Danes*; spreading the name afterwards, as they call their Conquests: of which more anon. In the mean time we must cross over the *Sounds*, and take notice of those other parts of this Kingdom as lie on the other side thereof, in the vast Continent or Demy-Island (which you will find in *Scandia*: of which somewhat must be first pre-mised,) of regard that not only some parts of *Denmark*, but the whole Country of *Norway* (the Northern Islands excepted) are contained in it,

3. **SCANDIA**, by *Pliny* and *Solinus* called *Scandinavia*, by *Jornandes* *Scanzia*, hath on the East that Bay or Branch of the *Baltick* which is called the *Finnish* or *Bodner* Seas, on the North and West the main Ocean, on the South, where it points towards *Germany*, the *Baltick* or *Ost See*, as the *Dutch* call it, joined to the main Continent of *Sarmatia* by an *Isthmus*, or Neck of Land, at the bottom of the *Bodner* See, not parts thereof, it was generally by the Ancients thought to be an Island, but *Strabo* and *Pliny* magnitudinis, of an unknown greatness, as both *Pytheas* and *Xenophon* *Lampiscenus* do affirm in *Pliny*: by one of which it is called *Baltica*, by the other *Baltia*; from whence the name of *Baltick* by the Sea adjoining. But later Navigations and Experience have confuted that opinion, by which it is found to be no Island, but a part of the Continent and a great one too; containing the whole Kingdom of *Norway*, the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Sweden*, and some part of *Denmark*. That part hereof which belongs to *Denmark* is situate on the South of this great *Peninsula*, and divided into the three Provinces of *Hallandia*, *Scania*, and *Bleking*: and in them are 23 Herets or Prefectures, and 15 Cities.

1. **HALLANDIA**, or *HALLAND*, hath on the East the wild Woods which part it from *Gothland*, on the West the intervening Sea betwixt it and *Juland*, on the North *Sweden* properly and specially so called, on the South *Scandia* or *Schonen*. A Country which for the healthfulness of the Air, plainness of the Soil, commodiousness of Havens, plenty of Fish, pleasure of Hunting, for inexhaustible Mines of Brass and Lead, (with some veins of Silver) frequency of well-peopled Towns and Villages, and Civility of the Inhabitants, is not inferior to any. Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Laholm*, 2. *Halmstad*, 3. *Falkenberg*: all of them on the Sea, at the mouth of navigable Streams, whose names find not a very far upon the Sea-side also, but fortified with a very strong Castle on the top of an Hill; taken and garisoned by the *Swedes*, Anno 1569, and not without great difficulty recovered by the *Danes* again, Anno 1569.

2. **SCANIA**, or *SCHÖNEN*, hath on the East *Flejsida* or *Bleking*, on the West the *Sounds*, running along the shore hereof for the space of twenty German miles, on the North *Halland*, on the South the *Baltick* or *Ost See*. The Country is of the same nature with *Halland*, as before described the Character of that pertaining to all the three; this having over and above as peculiar to it, that the Sea-shores are stored with rich Sholes of Herrings, that some times them, are scarce able with wind and oar to break through them, and row off the Harbour, It is in length 72 miles, 48 in breadth. Chief Towns in which are, 1. *Lunden*, an Archbishop's See, the Metropolitane of *Denmark* and *Norway*; advanced upon that honour by the means and mediation of *Ericus* the first, who purposely made a journey to *Rome* to effect that business; the Church

of *Denmark* being before that time subject to the Archbishops of *Breme*. This was about the year 1100. It is situate somewhat within the Land, but the Cathedral easily discernable by Mariners as they fail along. The City is but mean, and were it not for the Cathedral, of no beauty at all. But that indeed is affirmed to be a work of much Magnificence and Art; especially for the Clock, the Dial, and some outward adjuncts. For in the Dial curiously set out with divers Colours are to be seen distinctly the Year, Month, Week, Day, and Hour of every day throughout the year; with the Fasts, both moveable and fixed; together with the Motion of the Sun and Moon, and their passage through each Degree of the Zodiac. Then for the Clock, it is so framed by artificial Engines, that whensoever it is to strike, two horsemen encounter one another, giving as many blows a piece as the Bell sounds hours: and on the opening of a door there appears a Theatre, the Virgin *Mary* on a Throne with *Christ* in her Arms, and the three Kings of *Magi* (with their several Trains) marching in order, doing humble reverence, and presenting severally their Gifts; two Trumpeters sounding all the while, to add the Pomp of that Procession. 2. *Malmoe*, or *Elbogen*, (called by both names) at the very Southern point hereof, just opposite to *Copenhagen* in *Seland*, a well traded Port; the Birth-place of *Gaspar Bartholinus*, otherwise called *Malmogius Damm*, that great Mathematician, supposed to be the Author of the Clock and Dial before described. 3. *Trelleborg*, on the North of *Elbogen*, a Land-fortress, on the Sea-side, of great strength and consequence. 4. *Helsingborg*, a mean Town, but fortified with an impregnable Castle, just opposite to *Helsingore* and *Cronenberg* in *Seland*; the other of the two Keys which openeth into the *Sound*. 6. *Rottenby*, a Frontier-town bordering on *Ferendia*, a Province of *Swetland*. 7. *Christiansburg*, or *Christiansborg*, a strong piece built by *Christiern* the fourth, Anno 1604, compassed by the Sea, and fortified by Fens and Marshes, thought to be impregnable.

3. **BLESIDA**, or *BLEKING*, is bounded on the East and South with the *Baltick* Sea, on the North with *Ferendia*, a Province of *Swetland*, on the West with *Scania* or *Schonen*; more Mountainous and barren than either, but yet partaking somewhat of the former Character which we had of *Halland*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Ulfeda*, on the Mouth of a River falling into the *Baltick*. 2. *Christiernsburg*, in *Latine* *Christianspolis*, on the borders of *Swetland*; raised out of the Ground by *Christiern* the fourth, to defend his Kingdom on that side, Anno 1604, but not long after by a warlike stratagem fortified by the *Swedes* in the late War betwixt those Kingdoms in the year 1611; destroyed and dispeopled by that Nation, who looked upon it as a dangerous and unpleasant Object, but since repaired and replenished. 3. *Almoy*, upon the River which divides the Kingdom not far from *Christiernsburg*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Guts* and *Danciones*, taking up the South-parts of this great *Peninsula*, *Meridionalia tenent Guts & Danciones*, as we find in *Prohemio*, *Geogr.* l. 2. c. 11. which in all probability must be meant of these Provinces. Of these the *Gutes*, passing over into the *Cimbriick Chersonese*, possessed themselves of the North parts of it, since from them called *Juland*. The rest, uniting with the people of those many Islands, stood like together in the Bay or Gulf called *Sinu Codanus*, (now the *Baltick* Sea) took the name of *Danes*; and years before the Birth of our Saviour. First taken notice of by that name in *Jornandes de rebus Geticis*, who lived about the time of *Justinian* the first; about which time, or not long after, it is conceived that they made

themselves Masters of so much of the *Cimbriick Chersonese* as had been formerly possessed by the *Tules* and *Angles*, whose forsaken or ill-peopled Seats they possessed themselves of. After this we hear little of them till the time of *Charles* the Great, living in a confused estate, sometimes made subject to the *Norwegians*, sometimes to the *Swedes*, but always without Law and Order; till by the King *Godfrey* or *Gottfrid* they were regulated by Laws, and reduced to an orderly kind of life, Anno 797. About this time they first began to infect the Coasts of *England*, invaded *Friesland* with a Fleet of 200 Sail, and had much weakened and endangered the great Empire of *France*, if the unseasonable death of *Godfrey*, and the Quarrels which arose about the Succession after his decease, had not kept them off. Their Affairs at home being again well settled, they employed their whole Forces against *England*, as the weaker Enemy: over which they tyrannized 250 years, and reigned 26 under three Kings of that Nation. Out of that, and the terror of their name being over, they have been most buffeted with their Neighbours of *Sweden* and *Germany*; improving their Estate, but rather by Marriages and civil Contracts, than by force of Arms, with the addition of the Kingdom of *Norway* and the Dukedom of *Holstein*: their pretensions to, and for a time the possession of the Crown of *Sweden* getting them nothing in conclusion but Blows and Losses. So that we have no more to do than to sum up a Catalogue of the Kings hereof, till the uniting of the two Crowns of *Denmark* and *Norway*, leaving the rest that follow to another place.

The Kings of DENMARK.

A.Ch.

797

1. *Gottfrid*, the first Legislator of the *Danes*, and the Establisher of their Kingdom; a prudent and valiant Prince.

2. *Olaf* Son of *Gottfrid*, or *Godfrey*.

3. *Heningus*, Son of *Olaf*.

873

4. *Siwara*, Son to a Daughter of *Godfrey*, by the King of *Norway*.

5. *Regner*, Son of *Siwara*.

6. *Siwara* II.

7. *Ericus*, or *Henricus*, baptized at *Munich* at the same time with his Brother *Harald*, recovered the Kingdom to his House, (of which they had been ousted by the Race of *Godfrey*.)

8. *Canutus*, the Son of *Ericus*, the Heathenish Son of a Christian and pious Father.

9. *Froto*, the Son of *Canutus*, a professed Christian.

10. *Gormo*, (our English Writers call him *Gormund*) Son of *Froto*.

11. *Harald*, the Son of *Gormo*, or *Gormund*.

12. *Gormo* II. Son of *Harald*, an enemy of the Christian Faith.

13. *Harald* II. Son of *Gormo* the second, a good Christian.

14. *Sueno*, or *Swain*, Son of *Harald* at first a great Enemy of the Gospel, an Usurper of the Throne in his Father's life-time, and a great Scourge unto the English. Out of his Estate by *Ericus* of *Swetland*, he received the Gospel, regained his Kingdom, and established Christianity in this Country; his War on *England* still continuing.

15. *Olaf*, the eldest Son of *Swain*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*.

16. *Canutus* II. Brother of *Olaf*, the first King of *England* of the *Danes*, succeeded his Brother in the Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Norway*; to which he added also the Crown of *Sweden*.

17. *Canutus* III. Son of *Canutus* the second, the last King of *England* of the Race of the *Danes*.

18. *Magnus*, Son of *Olaf* King of *Norway*.

19. *Sueno* II. Sifter's Son of *Canutus* the second, by *Ul'* an English Duke.

20. *Harald* III. base Son of *Sueno* the second.

21. *Canutus* IV. another of the base Sons of *Sueno*, murdered at the Altar in the Church of *Odenfe* in the life of *Froto*; afterwards canonized a Saint.

22. *Olaf* II. another of the base Sons of *Swain*.

23. *Ericus* II. another of the base Sons of *Swain*, the Founder of the Archbishopric See of *Lunden*.

24. *Harald* IV. base Son of *Henry* or *Ericus* the second.

25. *Nicolas*, another of the base Sons of *Swain*.

26. *Ericus* III. another of the base Sons of *Ericus* the second.

27. *Ericus* IV. commonly called the fifth, (some one of the younger House being reckoned in) Nephew of *Ericus* the second.

28. *Sueno* III. Son of *Ericus* the third, and *Canutus* the fifth, Grandchild of *Nicolas*, both Kings; the first reigning in *Scania*, the other in *Juland*; both died without issue; *Canutus* being slain by *Sueno*, and he by *Waldemar*.

29. *Waldemar*, Son of *Canutus*, the lawful Son of *Ericus* the second, after the interposition of so many Bastards, succeeded at the last in the Throne of his Fathers. By his means the *Ragains* and *Vandals* embraced the Gospel.

30. *Canutus* V. Son of *Waldemar*.

31. *Waldemar* II. Brother of *Canutus*, and Duke of *Sleswick* before his coming to the Crown.

32. *Ericus* V. called the VII. Son of *Waldemar* the second, slain by the practices and Treason of his Brother *Abel*.

33. *Abel*, Brother of *Ericus*, slain by the Peasants of *Friesland*.

34. *Christopher*, Brother of *Abel* and *Ericus*.

35. *Ericus* VI. (VIII.) Son of *Christopher*.

36. *Ericus* VII. (IX.) younger Son of *Ericus*, supplanted his eldest Brother *Christopher*.

37. *Christopher* II. eldest Son of *Ericus*, at first dispossessed of his Birth-right by his Brother *Ericus*, after whose death he succeeded in the Crown, by the help of his Half-brother the Earl of *Holstein*.

38. *Waldemar* III. Son of *Christopher* the second against whom and his Encroachments the Sea-towns, commonly called the *Hanse*, did first confederate, and vanquished him in many Battels.

39. *Margaret*, Daughter and Heir of *Waldemar* the third, married with *Aquin* King of *Norway*, so uniting the Kingdoms: of whom and their Successors we shall speak hereafter, when we have took a view also of the Kingdom of *Norway*, and the Appendices thereof.

3. NORWAY.

NORWAY is bounded on the East with *Swetland*, from which it is parted by a perpetual Ridge of rough and wild Mountains, called the *Doftine* Hills; on all other parts by the Sea: that is to say, by the Frozen Sea upon the North; the *German* or *Norwegian* Ocean upon the West; and on the South with the *Danish* Sea,

At the first planting of this Island, the people did not trouble themselves with building Towns, but every one feared himself where he thought convenient, dwelling in Cells and Caverns digged in the bottom of the Rock. By means whereof the Inland parts have not many Houses: but the Sea-coasts, since the coming of so many Strangers to them, begin to be built in many places, the Buildings for the most part being of Timber, roofed with Flages with an Hole on the sides of the roof to let in their Light. So that we are not to expect many fine Towns or Cities: the principle of them which are, being, 1. *Havens*, in the North.

North, and 2. *Schalbolt*, in the Southern part; both Bishops Sees, having petty Schools, consisting of 24 Scholars apiece, to whom the *Latine* Tongue is taught at the charge of the Bishops. 3. *Hafford*, an Haven Town, where under Tents the *Dutch* Merchants barter their Commodities. And 4. *Besfede*, a Castle, the ordinary Residence of the Governour for the Kings of Denmark.

It hath been generally conceived that this Island is that *Thule* which the Poets so often speak of: as *Tibullus* *Thule*, in *Virgil*, *Nec sit terris ultima Thule*, in *Seneca* the *Tragedian*. Nor did there want some reason to perswade them to this opinion; this being indeed the farthest part of the old known World. But greater reasons are against it. For when *Salinus* saith, *Mulsa sunt circa Britanniam Insule, in quibus Thule ultima*; I hope *Thule* must be one of the *British* Isles. And when *Tacitus* saith of *Agricola*, *Insulas quas Orcadas vocant domitis, despecta est Thule*; I am sure that *Island* is so far from being known by any one of the *Orcades*, that it is at least being eight Degrees distant. So that *Thule* must be shewed al- in another place, and where that is, hath been known unready. As for *Island*, it was so far from being known to the Ancients, that it was hardly known unto those of Norway till the year 874, when some of the *Norwegians* were driven out of their Country by *Harald* the first, who first suppressing the many *Petit Kings* of the *Norwegians*, made many of them seek new Dwellings; of which some few arrived here, where finding room enough to plant in, and no great loss (if any) by change of their Dwelling, and they invited many of their Friends and Countrymen to come unto them. An. 1070, they were converted to the Gospel by some Preachers sent hither from *Adelbert* the Archbishop of *Breme*. By whose perswasion and procurement they founded two Episcopal Sees; adding thereto in tract of time eight Religious Houses: that is to say, the Monasteries of *Pingore*, *Remfede*, *Madur*, and *Monkenere*, under the Government and Jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Halar*; and those of *Videy*, *Pernebar*, *Kirc-kebar*, and *Skagde*, under the Bishop of *Schalbolt*. In the year 1260, it was first brought under the Crown of Norway, following since the Fortunes of it in all Changes both of Church and State; made subject with it to the Kings of Denmark, together with it reformed in matters of Religion according to the Confession at *Augsburg*, retaining still their Bishops, with a limited power, and turning the Revenues of their Monasteries unto other uses, as there they did, according to the will and pleasure of their Lords of Denmark.

2. South-west of *Island* lies another, and as cold an Isle, commonly called by the name of *FREESLAND*, from the continual Frosts unto which it is subject. By the *Latines* it is called *Frislandia*, to distinguish it from *Frisia* or *Friesland* in *Germany*. It is situate under the North Frigid Zone; but not so much within the *Arctic* as *Island* is; the longest Day here in the height of Summer not exceeding 20 hours; and yet the Soil is so cold and barren, that it beareth neither Corn nor Fruit, the Inhabitants living most on Fish; which as it is their only Food, so it is also their chief Commodity wherewith to entertain or invite the Merchant. And hereof there is such abundance caught upon their Coasts, that they are never without the company of *Hanse-men*, *Scots*, *Hollanders*, *Danes*, and *English*, by which last it hath been so frequented in their later times, that it hath been called by some the *Western England*. For quantity it is somewhat bigger than *Island*; but by reason of the bitter Air, and the Defects above-mentioned, very thinly inhabited. The chief Town of it is called *Freezland*, by the name of the Island; situate on the Eastern Shore of it. Besides which, there are some others set down in the Maps; as 2. *Sa-*

meset. 3. *Andesfort*. 4. *Sorand*; but not much observable. Westward whereof, as *Zieglerus* (and out of him *Maginus*) telleth us, is a little Island called *Icaria*, giving the name of *Mare Icarium* to the Sea adjoining: so called (by his mistake or translation of the Fable) from *Icarus* the Son of *Dadalus*, a King of *Scotland*, who did once (but no body knows when) Lord it over these Islands.

III. *GROENLAND*, so called, as some say, from the Greenness of it in the Summer; as others say, by *Antiphrasis*, because never green, by reason of the sharpness of Winter. But the former Etymology is more agreeable to the state of the Country. For though it be continually covered with Snow, except in *June*, *July*, and *August*, (inasmuch that though the people be always clad with Furs and Skins, yet they feel no heat) yet in those months it is exceeding fresh and green, and affords good Pasturage. It is situate for the greatest part within the *Arctic*, between the 65. and 77. Degrees of Northern Latitude: so that the longest Day in the Southern part is 21 hours and a half; and in the most Northern they have no Night for three months and two weeks. The known length of it is affirmed to be 600 miles, and may be much longer than so for ought that any body knows: there being no perfect discovery made of it hitherto, though much frequented by the *English* and *Hollanders*, (two great Seafaring Nations) for the benefit of the Whale-fishing, much there in use. Their chief Commodities are Fish, white Bears, wild Deer, and some store of Cattel there bred upon their Pastures, but housed for the most part all the Winter. The greatest part of the people dwell in the Caves, and delight in Necromancy, to which they are more wilfully addicted than those in *Island*, because less acquainted with the Gospel.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Saint Thomas*, (in which there is a Monastery of *Dominican* Friars) seated in the North-East part of the Island; concerning which *Mercator* speaks of one thing which is very observable, relating that it is not far from a flaming or burning Mountain, seated upon hot scalding springs, conveyed by Pipes of stone into the Monastery, and serving both as a Stove to warm them, and for a Fire to boil their Victuals. The Walls of the Monastery are built of Pumice-stones cast out of that Mountain; which, being tempered with the water of those burning Springs, doth make a glutinous substance, serving instead of Lime, and as long durable. The Gardens of the Convent, in regard of the heat, flourish all the year with Herbs, and sweet smelling Flowers; and the adjoining Sea, for the same reason being never frozen, affords good plenty of Fish and Fowl to the whole year about, not only for the Monks, but the neighbouring Islanders. So far and to this purpose he. The second Town of note is *Iloa*, not far from this Monastery: and 3. *Mundeppe*, on the South-East-point. Others, as in a Country not well discovered, we have little notice of: though it be near 300 years since *Nicolaus Zenis*, a *Venetian*, cast by Tempest on the Coast of *Freezland*, and by the King thereof employed upon new Discoveries, An. 1380, first made it known to us of *Europe*; it being immediately on that discovery possessed by the *Norwegians*, and made a Member and portion of that Crown.

As for the *Norwegians* themselves, now their fellow-Subjects, they were first known in the time of *Pulomby* by the name of *Chedini*, possessing then the Western parts of *Scandia*. Uniting with their Neighbours, both *Danes* and *Swishlanders*, they became better known in the flourishing times of the *French* Empire by the name of *Normans*; first called so by *Eginhardus* in his History of the Life of *Charles the Great*, infesting then the Sea-coasts of *France* and *Belgium*. Under this name they fell heavily

heavily on the *French*, especially in the times of *Charles* the Simple; that they extorted from him that goodly Country, first Duke thereof, *Amo* 912, whose Successors much encreased their glory by the Conquest of *England*; as some private Adventurers of them did by the Conquest of the Kingdoms of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Antioch*. Afterwards settling on their own bottom, every one of these Northern Nations ading by it self, they were called *Norwegians*, sometimes, as formerly, commanding over all three Kingdoms, subjects successively to each; but most an end governed by their own Kings, till their final Subjugation by the *Danes*. And as a Nation acting solely and by it self, they subdued *Ireland* under the conduct of *Turgissin*, who tyrannized there for a time; as also all the *Orcades* and the Isle of *Man*, sold or surrendered by them upon good conditions to the *English* and *Scots*, who by those Titles still possess them. The Catalogue of their Kings, leaving out all those of the darker times (parallel to our *Berne* and the first *Scottish Fergus*) as merely fabulous, we will begin with King *Suibdagamus*, who was King of all the three Kingdoms, and at his death divided them again amongst his three Sons; whose Successors *Amstus* there reckoneth.

The Kings of NORWAT.

1. *Subidagerus*.
2. *Haddingus*.
3. *Hetharinus*.
4. *Ollerus*.
5. *Fragerus*.
6. *Gaurus*.
7. *Rabertus*.
8. *Helga*.
9. *Halmunus*.
10. *Reginaldus*.
11. *Gunnaravus*.
12. *Ofmundus*.
13. *Olavus*.
14. *Ofmundus* II. not long after whose time, An. scil. 800, the *Normans* began their Irruptions.
15. *Aquinus*.
16. *Heraldus*.
17. *Olavus*.
18. *Sueno*, King of Denmark by Birth and of Norway by Conquest.
19. *Olavus* III. Son of *Suin* or *Sueno*, succeeded in the Realm of Denmark and Norway, *Cannus* his younger Brother being King of England. In this King's time the *Norwegians* first received the Gospel.
20. *Cannus*, King of England, succeeded his Brother *Olavus* in the Kingdoms of Denmark and Norway to which he also added the Crown of Sweden.
21. *Sueno* II. by whom the Kingdom was restored to the *Norwegians*.
22. *Cannus* II.
23. *Magmus*.
24. *Harald* II.
25. *Magmus* II. King of Sweden and Norway.

1326 26. *Magmus* III. King of Sweden and Norway, in attending the Crown of Sweden for *Ericus* his eldest Son, conferred that of Norway on *Haquin*, or *Aquinus*, his second Son.

1339 27. *Aquinus*, King of Norway, younger Son of *Magmus* the third, married with *Margaret*, eldest Daughter of *Waldemar* the third, King

of Denmark; so uniting the Kingdom. And though *Olavus*, the only Son of his Bed, died young without any Issue; yet the *Danes*, having once got footing in Norway; so assured themselves of it, that they have ever since possessed it as a subject Kingdom, keeping the Natives so poor and low, that they are not able to assert their former Liberties, and not permitting them to use any Shipping; so much as for transporting their own Commodities, for fear they should grow wealthy and strong at Sea. Besides the strong Garrison maintained in most parts of the Country kept it in such an absolute Awe, that they dare not stir against the *Danes* if their stomachs served them. So that now Norway being made subject to the Crown of Denmark, or both made fellow-Subjects to the same King, we must next look upon these Kings as Kings of each distinct and separate from the other but as they are in Fact and Title.

The Kings of DENMARK and NORWAT.

- 1376 1. *Haquin*, or *Aquinus*, King of Denmark and Norway; of this last by Descent, of the other by Marriage.
- 1380 2. *Olavus*, Son of *Aquinus* and *Margaret*.
- 1383 3. *Margaret*, Wife of *Aquinus*, Mother of *Olavus*, and Daughter of *Waldemar* the third, after the death of her Son, (in whose time she governed as his Guardian) took upon her the Kingdom in her own Right; not only keeping Norway in the State she found it, but adding unto Denmark the Crown of Sweden, won by the Vanquishment of *Albert* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, then King thereof. A gallant and magnanimous Lady, the *Semiramis* of Germany.
- 1411 4. *Ericus*, Duke of *Pomeran*, and Knight of the Garter, Son of the Lady *Mary*, Dutches of *Pomeran*, Daughter of *Ingelburgis*, the Sister of *Margaret*, by whom he was adopted for her Heir, succeeded after her decease in all the three Kingdoms: out of all before his death by a strong Faction made against him, and his Estates conferred on
- 1439 5. *Christopher*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, (but in Title only) the Son of *Margaret*, Sister of *Ericus*; chosen by the joynt consent of all the States of these Kingdoms. After whose death (without Issue) the *Danes* considering the great advantage they had gotten by the addition of Norway, pitched upon *Adolphus*, Duke of *Sleswick* and Earl of *Holftein*, for the next Successor, that they might get in those Estates to their Kingdom also. Who, excusing himself by reason of his Age and want of Children, commended them to *Christiern* Earl of *Oldenburg*, his Kinsman and next Heir, who was chosen accordingly.
- 1443 6. *Christiern*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, upon the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus*, chosen King of Denmark and Norway succeeded; his said Uncle in the Estates of *Holftein* and *Sleswick*, continuing since united unto that Crown, and added also thereto by Conquest the Kingdom of Sweden.

- 1482 7. *John*, Son of *Christiern*, succeeded in all three Kingdoms; Knight of the Order of the Garter.
- 1514 8. *Christiern II.* Son of *John*, King of *Denmark*, *Norway* and *Sweden*, which last he held under with great cruelty; hated, by reason of his Tyranny toward all sorts of People, and ousted of his Kingdoms by his Uncle *Frederick*, Anno 1522. by whom at last he was taken and kept in prison till he died, Anno 1559.
- 1523 9. *Christiern*, Brother of *John*, and Uncle of *Christiern* the second, chosen King of *Denmark* and *Norway* on the Abdication of his Nephew, Reformed Religion in both Kingdoms according to the confession of *Augsburg*.
- 1535 10. *Christiern III.* suppressed with great trouble the Party formed against him in behalf of *Christiern* the second, perfected the Reformation begun in the time of his Father, and was a great Benefactor to the University of *Copenhagen*.
- 1559 11. *Frederick II.* Son of *Christiern* the third, subdued *Dümarsh*, before unconquered by the *Danes* or *Earls of Holstein*, and added it unto that Dukedom, (both being united to that Crown though held of the Empire) Knight of the Garter.
- 1588 12. *Christiern IV.* Son of *Frederick* the second, Brother of *Anne* Queen of great *Britain*, and Knight of the Garter; who engaging in a War against the Emperor *Ferdinand* the second for the Liberty of *Germany*, was suddenly beat out of all the *Cimbriick Chersonese* by the prevailing Imperialists, but compounded the business upon very good Terms, and was restored to all his own.
- 1648 13. *Frederick III.* the youngest Son of *Christiern* the fourth, his eldest Brethren being all dead without Issue, succeeded in the Crowns of *Denmark* and *Norway*.

Having thus mustered up the Kings of these several Kingdoms, taken distinctly and conjunct; we must next look upon the way of their coming to their Regal Throne, their form of Government together with their Power, benefits and Revenues incident unto it. As for the manner of their coming to the Regal Throne, the *Danes* pretend their Kingdom to be Elective, and not Hereditary; yet so as they have always for the eldest Son on the Throne of his Father, unless some extraordinary occasion have disposed it otherwise. But they that look upon their Stories in the former times can see no such matter, the Kingdom going generally in the way of Succession, unless by Faction or Usurpation some popular and powerful Pretender hath interposed; as oftentimes hath happened in such other Estates as are Hereditary merely, without claim or colour of Election. 'Tis true, that the Male-claim failing in *Olau* the Son of *Margaret*, and the Princess which pretended by the Females after her decease not being of sufficient power to assert their Titles; the King-
dom was transferred to the house of *Oldenburg*, who held it on no other ground than by that of Election. Which, being an extraordinary case, is to make no President, being seconded by the ousting of King *Christiern* the first, though the advancement of *Frederick* unto that Estate: and, and the advancement of *Frederick* unto that Estate: these being acts of Violence and Force, and justified only by the false Topic of Success. But whosoever by the hand, the *Danes* got well by it; King *Frederick* taking up the Crown upon such Conditions as have

made him and his Successors little more than Titular. For he was fain to swear at his Coronation, that he would put none of the Nobility to death or Banishment but by the judgment of the Senate, that the Great men should have power of Life and Death over their Tenants or Vassals; that no Appeal should lie from them to the King's Tribunal; nor the King be partaker of the Con-
fiscations, nor, finally, advance any to Commands and Honours but by consent of his great Council. Which Oath being also taken by his Successors, made *Bodinus* say, *Non tam re ipsa quam appellatione Reges esse*; that they were only Kings in Title, but not Kings in deed. Yet in regard that the Nobility (so they call their Gentry) have but small Estates, none of them above the degree of Knights, (except only the Princes of the Blood) and that Decree conferred by the King alone; it is not often found that they have dared to cross or oppose their King, but when some of the Royal Family (out of private ends) have conferred with them in it: as in the case of *Christiern* the 2. deposed by the People, but those people headed and set on by his Uncle *Frederick*, who had an eye upon the Crown.

As for the Senate or great Council, spoken of before, it consists wholly of men chosen out of the Nobility, (who are to prove their Gentry by a long Descent) seldom exceeding the number of 28 to each of which there is allowed a convenient Salary, with some fair Castle in that Country for his Retirements, during his being of that Body: his whole Estate being freed also for that time from all publick Payments. Without their Counsel and advice the King is neither to determine of Peace or War, or to enter into any new League or Confederacies, nor impose any Tax upon the Subject; and unto them and the King jointly is the last Appeal: such being the Constitution of this Estate, that all Causes and Controversies are first decided in the Prefecture or Heret (184 in number) where they first arise; from whence it is lawful to appeal to the Judge of the Province, from him to the Chancellor of the Kingdom, and finally to the King and Council. By the Laws of *Waldemar* the first, who first reduced the Laws into set form and writing, the Bishops were to sit with his Council in all Causes of moment: but were discharged from that Employment by King *Christiern* the third, by whom it was also ordained, that the Clergy should not sell any of the Church-lands without leave of the King.

The Forces which this King or Kingdom are able to raise may best be seen by some of their particular Undertakings: those specially of *Christiern* the second, who, at the request of *Henry* the second of *France*, sent a Navy of an hundred Sail into *Scotland* against the *English*, and therein no fewer than 10000 Souldiers; and of *Frederick* then Duke of *Holstein*, who in his War against this *Christiern*, (whose removal from the Crown he had then projected) brought 80000 men into the field to make good his Quarrel. And questionless considering the many Ports and Islands that this King is Master of, both within the *Baltick* and without, it cannot be but he may suddenly raise a strong power at Sea. And then considering that each of the Nobility, which are here numerous enough, is bound to find a certain number of Horse upon all occasions; as are those also who hold Lands of the King, which the *Danes* call *Verlingings*: it will accordingly be concluded, that they are able to make good Levies for a sudden Service, especially in defence of their own Dominions.

The Revenue of this King consisteth principally in the great Impost laid upon all Ships which pass through the Sound: the greatness whereof may easily be conjectured at by the multitude of Ships which of necessity must

pass by it in the Trade of the *Baltick*; though of late somewhat lessened of what it was, since the *English* found out and frequented the Northern passage into *Muscovia*. There are also some Crown-lands and a great yearly Toll made of the Cattel which pass into *Germany*; as also of the Fish transported into other Countries. And yet it is conceived that the Treasures of this King are not very great: partly because there is no other important Commodity but Fish to draw Merchants thither; and partly that there is not any one Town of any great Traffick in all his Realms for the entertaining of Commerce.

The chief order of Knighthood in it is that of the *Elephant*; instituted by *Frederick* the second. Their Badge, a Collar powdered with Elephants towred, supporting the Kings Arms, and having at the end the picture of the Virgin *Mary*.

The Arms hereof are Quarterly, 1. Or, three Lions

passant Vert, crowned of the first, for the Kingdom of *Denmark*; and secondly, *Gules*, a Lion Rampant Or, crowned and armed of the first, in his Paws a *Dank Hatchet Argent*, for the Kingdom of *Norway*. What Arms belong to him as Duke of *Holstein* and *Sleswick* I am yet to seek.

There are in *Denmark*.

Archbishops 2.

Bishops 12.

Universities 2. Viz.

Copenhagen.

Sora.

And so much for the Kingdom of *DENMARK*.

OF

SWETHLAND.

SWETHLAND is bounded on the East with *Muscovia*, on the West with the *Dofrine* Hills, which divide it from *Norway*; on the North with the great Frozen Ocean, spoken of before; on the South with *Denmark*, *Liesland*, and the *Baltick* Sea, so called from the *Sueci*, *Suethans*, or *Suehidi*, and the word *Land*, added for a termination; of which more hereafter.

It is in length, from *Stockholm* unto the borders of *Lapland*, above 1000 *Italian* miles; and in breadth from *Stockholm*, lying on the *Bodner* Sea, to the Borders of *Denmark*, about twenty good days journey on horseback: inasmuch as they which have travelled the length and breadth of it, on this side of *Lapland* and the Gulf or Bay of *Bodner*, account it little less than all *Italy* and *France* together; but taking in *Lapland*, and the Provinces on the other side of the Gulf, bigger than both by the quantity of 900 miles.

The situation of it in regard of the Heavenly bodies is the same with *Norway*, under the same Parallels and Degrees; but of so different a temper, both for Soil and Air, as if disposed of under several and long-distant Climes. For the Air here is very pure, but not so sharp and insupportable as it is in *Norway*: though in some places, where the Moors and Waters settle, for want of care to open and cleanse the Water-courses, they have great Fogs and Mists, which do somewhat putrefie it. And for the Soil, it is more fertile than any of the other Northern Provinces: so that besides those Necessaries which they keep for themselves, they usually transport into other Countries store of Malt and Barley; together with great quantities of Brass, Lead, Steel, Copper, Iron, the Hides of Goats, Bucks, Oxen, and colly Furs. They have also some Mines of Silver, not mixt with any other Metal; plenty of Fish in their Lakes and Rivers; abundance of Pine-trees, Firre, Oaks, both for Ships and Houses; yielding besides, among the

Woods, good store of Tar and Honey, and some other Necessaries. But hereof we shall speak more punctually in the several Provinces.

The principal Mountains of this Country are the *Dofrine* Hills, a vast and continual Ridge of Mountains which divide it from *Norway*. And though they want not Rivers fit for common uses, yet partly by reason of their great Frosts and flakes of Ice, partly by reason of the falling of Trees which lye cross their Channels, they have not many navigable, or any of great fame. The principal of such as be, are 1. *Meler*, at the mouth whereof stands the City of *Stockholm*, 2. *Lusien*, 3. *Dalacarlus*, giving name to the Province so called, or denominated from it. And of the Lakes, whereof there are exceeding many, that of most note is the Lake of *Weret*, which, receiving into it 24 Rivers, disburtheneth it self at one mouth into the *Baltick*, with such noise and fury, that they call it commonly the *Devil's head*.

The people are naturally strong and active, provident, patient and industrious; hospitable towards Strangers, whom they entertain with great Humanity; so healthy, that, if they do not shorten their days by Excess and Riot, they live commonly to 140 years of age; and so laborious, that a Beggar is not seen amongst them. Of no great note for Arts or Arms in the times foregoing: not much addicted to the one; and so kept under by the *Danes*, that they could not grow eminent in the other: but much improved in both respects in these later days: *Eriens*, the first King of the present Race, who cleared his Country of the *Danes*, and *Gustavus Adolphus*, the last King, who freed the *Germans* from the Yoke of the House of *Austria*, not being easily to be matched in the Arts of War. And since they began to give themselves to the sweets of Learning, this Country hath produced (amongst some other learned men) *Olauus Magnus*, Archbishop of *Upsal*, of great note for his History of the

Goths and Vandals, the First-fruits of this Nation in the liberal Sciences. And it is probable by reason of their late Commerce with the *German Nations*, they will give better testimony to the World hereafter of their proficiency in this kind, as being generally exceeding apt to learn the Art Mechanical, every man in a manner being his own Artificer, without employing Smith, Mason, Carpenter, or any other manual Trades. Very Valiant they are both on foot and horseback, which their long Wars have against the *Danes*, and their late Wars in *Germany*, have given good proof of. Their Women are discreet and modest, free from that Intemperance which these Northern parts are subject to. Both sexes use a corrupt *Dutch*, common to all three Northern Kingdoms; except in *Finland*, and the Provinces on the other side of the *Bodner Sea*, where they partake somewhat of the *Muscovite* or *Russian* Language.

The Christian Religion was first planted amongst them by the care and diligence of *Aufgarius* Archbishop of *Breme*, the Apostle-general of the North. Corrupt with Popish Superstitions, it was reformed, according to the *Augustine* Confession, in the time of *Gustavus Ericus*, the first of that present Royal Family, solicited thereunto by that great prelate *Lutheran* Divine, and *Lawrence*, the first *Peter Nevicus* a *Lutheran* Divine, and *Lawrence*, the Archdeacon of *Strengens*; but chiefly moved (as others say) by a desire to appropriate to himself the Goods of the Church. And this appears to have had some strong influence upon him in it, in that he presently seized upon what he pleased; and King thought fit yet having pretended to no more than the Revenues, he was content they were lessened their Revenues both in power and number; should remain as formerly his Successors the Nomination of the persons; but so as the Approbation of the Clergy (in a kind of Election) doth usually go along with the King's appointment.

The Bishops are in number seven: that is to say, 1. Of *Lincopen*, containing in his Diocese 226 Parishes. 2. Of *Vexime*, under whom are 210. 3. Of *Scara*, ruling over the same number of Churches. 4. Of *Strengens*, under whom are a hundred only. 5. Of *Abu*, the greatest for extent of all, as comprehending under it 500 Parishes. 6. Of *Wiborg*, and 7. of *Halsby*; whose Dioceses for the most part lie out of the bounds of Sweden, in *Aufconie*, *Livonia*, and some other of the out-parts of the Realm of *Poland*: All of them are under the Archbishop of *Upsal*, as their Metropolitan, whose Diocese, extending into *Lapland* and *Finnmark*, containeth 171 Parish-Churches. By which account there are in all the Kingdom of *Swethland* but 1417 Parishes; but many of them a thousand or eight hundred Families: the people being dispersed in Forests and other places, where they have force of Timber to build them Houses, and store of Pasturage for their Cattle; which is the reason why they have not so many great Towns, nor so well inhabited, as is usual in far many great Countries, as for the Authority of these Bishops, they still retain their Voice in Parliament, and with them so many of the inferior Clergy as are from every *Socken* (a certain number of Parishes, like our *Rural Deanries*) the deputed to appear there in the name of the Church: the Affairs whereof the Bishops do direct and order, as well in as out of publick Meetings, according to the Ecclesiastical Constitutions formerly established; and if any great occasion be, they may either advise with their Consistorials, or call a Diocesan Synod, (as they think most fit) and therein make such Laws and Canons as they conceive to be most proper for their own Edification.

The whole Kingdom is divided into two parts, the one lying on the East, the other on the West-side of the Bay or Gulf of *Bodner*, called *Sinus Bodnicus* in *Latine*,

being a large and spacious Branch of the *Baltick* Sea, extending from the most Southern Point of *Gothland*, as far as to *Lapland* on the North. According to which division, we have the Provinces of 1. *Gothland*, and 2. *Sweden*, lying on the West-side of the Gulf; 3. *Lapland*, (shutting it upon the North; 4. *Bodia* or *Bodden*, and 5. *Finland* on the East-side thereof; and 6. the *Swedish* Islands, where it minglith with the rest of the *Baltick*.

1. GOTH LAND.

GOTH LAND is bounded on the East with the *Bodner Sea*, on the West with the Mountains which divide it from *Norway*, and so much of *Denmark* as lies in the same Continent with it, on the North with *Sweden*, on the South with the Sea *Baltick*. So called either from the *Goths*, whose original Country it is commonly affirmed to be; or quasi *good Land*, from the goodness and fertility of the Soil, (*Gothlandia, que Germanice Terra bona sunt*, as *Maginus* out of *Muslior* hath it) the Soil being very fruitful Corn and a Cattle, affording plenty of Mines, with great store of Fish, and generally a better conditioned Country than any of the rest of these Northern Regions.

It is divided commonly into *Ostro-goths*, or *East-goths*; and *West-goths*, divided from the former by the great Lake of *Werres*, spoken of before; and *South-Gothland*, subdivided into *Smalandia*, *Tuiscia*, and *Ferendia*. Chief Towns in *Ostrogoths* are, 1. *Lincopen*, a Bishops See. 2. *Ladefst*, adorned with a very fair Haven. In *West-goths*, 3. *Scara*, on the Lake *Werres*, a Bishops See also. *Elfsborg*, on the Western Sea, betwixt *Denmark* and *Norway*, a place of consequence, and flanked with two very strong Castles in the parts adjoining, the one called *Gambrie* and the other *Goldberg*; 5. *Traguelund*, remarkable for Iron works, occasioned by the Mines adjoining. And finally, in *South-Gothland* there is 6. *Fexime* or *Fexis* another of the Episcopall Secs. 7. *Walburg*, a reasonable fair Town, with a strong Castle. 8. *Elcholin*, in that part hereof which is called *Vercandia*, near the Confines of *Denmark*; 9. *Calmar*, a noted and well traded port on the *Baltick* Sea, beautified with a Castle not inferior to that of *Millium*, and so well fortified throughout, that at the taking of it by *Christiern* the fourth of *Denmark*, Anno 1611, there were found mounted on the works 108 brass pieces of Ordnance, six men of war to guard the Haven, withal manner of Ammunition in proportion to them. 10. *Gottenburg*, (or *Gothorun Burgus*) the chief Town of the *Goths* or *Gothland*, as the name importeth enjoying a commodious Haven, on the *Baltick* also, and very much frequented for the Trade of *Germany*, to which it serves exceeding fidly; the principal Town of all this Province; and for that cause the ordinary Seat or Residence of the Governour for the King of *Sweden*.

The first Inhabitants of the South parts of *Scandiae* commonly affirmed to have been the *GOTHS*, whom *Tornades* in his Book de *Rebus Geticis* makes to have issued out of this Country, and to plant themselves on the North Banks of the *Iffer* near the *Euxine* Sea, some time before the *Trojan* War: ascribing to them whatsoever is reported in old Writers of the ancient *Scythians*, by their Encounter with *Vexaris* or *Seslvis* the King of *Aegypt*, the Acts and Achievements of the *Amazons*, their Congress with *Alexander* the Great in his *Perseus* War, and the like to these. In which *Tornades*, being himself a *Goth* is no more to be credited than *Cicero* of *Mammoth* a *Welsh* man, in the Story of *Brute* and his Successors, to whom he doth attribute the taking and sacking of *Rome* under the conduct of *Brennus*, whom he makes to

be the Brother of *Belinus* a King of *Britain*. Most probable it is, that they were originally a *Dutch* or *German* people, part of the great Nation of the *Suevi*, called by *Tacitus* the *Gothones*, inhabiting in his time (as it is conceived) in the Land of *Prussia*; who, finding their own Country too narrow for them, might pass over the *Baltick* into the next adjoining Regions; and not well liking that cold Climate, might afterwards in some good numbers go to seek new Dwellings, and at last seat themselves on the Banks of the *Iffer*, where *Tornades* found them. That they were *Dutch* originally, besides the general name of the *Gothones* or *Goths*, and those of *Ostro-goths* and *Wist-goths*, into which they were afterwards divided; the particular names of *Alaric*, *Theodoric*, *Ricaredus*, (the names of their Kings and Captains) seem to me to evidence. That they were once seated in this Country doth appear as plainly, 1. by the name of *Gothland* here still remaining; 2. by the Title of *Res Gothorun*, which the Kings of *Swethland* keep in the Royal Style; 3. by some Inscriptions in ancient unknown Characters engraven on the Rocks near *Scara* in the Continent, and in *Wibsy* in the Isle of *Gothland*, supposed by learned men to be some monument of that People. And finally, that their first Dwelling, when first known by this name amongst the *Romans*, was on the North-side of the *Iffer*, is evident by the testimony of all ancient Writers, from the time of *Antoninus Caracalla*, with whom they had some tumultuary Skirmishes in his way towards *Perfas*, till their violent Irruption into *Italy* and the Western Provinces: most famous in this Interval for a great Fight with *Decius* the Roman Emperor, whom they overcame and slew in a Battle, Anno 253. In the time of *Valens* and *Valentinian*, the Roman Emperours, a Quarrel being grown amongst them, managed by *Phrigiternes* and *Athanaricus*, the Leaders of the opposite Factions; *Phrigiternes*, overthrown in fight, had recourse to *Valens*, from whom he received such Succours, that giving his Adversary another day for it, he obtained the Victory. Whereupon *Phrigiternes* and his Party received the Gospel, but intermixt and corrupt with the Leven of *Arianism*, by the practice of *Valens*, who sent them none but *Arian* Teachers, to whom and their Factions in the Church he was wholly addicted. Afterwards the whole Nation being driven over the *Iffer* by the barbarous *Huns*, they obtained of *Valens* the out-parts of *Thrace* for an Habitation, on condition they should serve under the pay of the Emperour and become Christians: the cause that *Arianism* over-spread the whole Nation generally, which had before infected but one part only. *Ulpilas*, a devout and learned man, was their first Bishop; who, for their better Edification in the way of Godliness, invented a new *Gothick* Character, and translated the Scriptures into that Language: in the Study whereof they so well profited, that many of them in the time of their first Conversion suffered death for it at the hands of *Athanaricus*, and were counted Martyrs. Burthened by *Valens*, and denied their accustomed Pay, they hara and depopulate the rest of *Thrace*, marching towards *Constantinople*; encountered in the way by *Valens*, whom they overcame and killed, after all his Favours. Vanquished by *Theodofius* the succeeding Emperour in many Battles, they became good neighbours, enlarging their Bounds with his leave and licence as far as *Pannonia*, and grown into such estimation with him, that *Ricimer* and *Fravitas*, two of that Nation, did obtain the Consulship: not to say any thing of that exorbitant power and favour which *Gaisas* had attained unto in the Court itself. Made insolent by so great Honours, and apt to pick Quarrels with their Patrons, they invaded *Italy* in two great Bodies, consisting of no fewer than 200000 fighting men. The first whereof, under the Conduct of *Ricimer*

dagnifus, was discomfited and cut in pieces by *Stilico*, Lieutenant to *Honorius* the Western Emperour, at *Fesule* in the Straights of the *Appennine*. The other, by his Treachery permitted to pass, sacked *Rome*, and subdued the most part of *Italy* under the leading of *Alaricus*. He dying immediately after this great Victory, let the fruits of it to his Son *Athaulfus*; who marrying with *Galla Placidia*, the Emperour's Sister, relinquished *Italy*, and had all *Gallia Narbonensis*, and a great part of *Hispania Tarraconensis*, assigned unto him, where he erected the Kingdom of the *Wist-Goths* or *Western-Goths*, possessed of *Spain* and *Tingitana* for the space of 300 years and upward, when they lost that Kingdom to the *Moor*, as hath there been said. In the mean time the *Goths* which were left in their own Countries, distinguished from these by the name of *Ostro-Goths*, by reason of their more Eastern situation, kept themselves in quiet: being first subdued by the *Huns*, and when by *Witmar* freed from that subjection, not intermeddling or attempting any thing against the Empire, till called by *Zeno* Emperour of *Constantinople* into *Italy* against *Odoacer* and the *Hermis*, who had then subdued it. Which action they managed with so much prudence and good fortune by their King *Theodoric*, that they vanquished *Odoacer*, possessed *Italy*, and held it above 60 years; when, broken in many fit Battles by *Belisarius* and *Narses*, Lieutenants for the Emperour *Justinian*, their Kingdom and Name there came unto an end.

As for the Kings of the *Goths*, we have a succession of them in *Tornades* from *Berig*, who first conducted them out of *Scandia* towards the East, till the going of *Theodoric* into *Italy*; but made up with so little probability, that I dare give no more credit to it than the Stories of *Brute*, *Dan*, *Fergus*, or the Lady *Scota*; *Pharao's* Daughter. Such of whom there is any certain knowledge and succession are these few that follow

The Kings of the GOTHS.

- 344 1. *Athanaricus*, King of the *Goths* in the time of *Constantine* and *Constantin*, the Sons of *Constantine* the Great.
- 357 2. *Alaricus*, the first of that name; in the time of *Constantine*.
3. *Phrigiternes*, King of the *Goths* in the time of *Valens*, the first Christian Prince among that People.
- 360 4. *Athanaricus* II. in the time of the Emperours *Valens*, *Gratian*, and *Valentinian* the second; under whom the *Goths* were first settled on this side of the *Iffer*.
- 379 5. *Rhadagisus*, who in the time of *Honorius* first led the *Goths* into *Italy*; slain at the Battle of *Fesula*.
- 410 6. *Alaricus* II. who, pursuing the War of *Italy*, sacked *Rome*, subdued *Naples*, and the most of *Italy*.
- 412 7. *Athaulfus*, the Son of *Alaric* the second, who first erected the Kingdom of the *Wist-goths* in *Gaul* and *Spain*, continuing there for the space of 300 years and upward; the present Kings of *Spain* coming from this Stock.
- 417 8. *Athalaricus*, King of the *Goths* remaining in the East at the departure of *Rhadagisus* and *Alaricus*, distinguished from their Plantations by the name of *Ostro-Goths*: vanquished by *Attila*, they became Subjects to the *Huns* in the time of *Theodofius* the second and *Valentinian* the third, Emperours of the East and West.

9. *Wilamir*, one of the Bloud-Royal of the *Goths*, Vassal to *Atilia*, at the first, whom he assisted, served rather, in the great Battle near *Tholouf* against the *Romans*: but, taking advantage of some Quarrels amongst the Sons of *Atilia*, shook off that Yoke, and recovered the Kingdom of the *Goths*, in the time of the Emperour *Marcianus*.
10. *Theodimir*, Son of *Wanibar*, and Brother of *Wilamir*, in the time of *Leo* Emperour of *Constantinople*.
11. *Theodorick*, Son of *Theodimir*, kept at *Constantinople* in his youth as a Pledge or Hostage for his Father, where he was instructed in all the Greek and Roman Learning, and made the

adopted Son (as is said by *Scaliger*) of the Emperour *Zeno*, by whom he was sent into Italy against *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*, and erected there the Kingdom of *Tyflin*, when it was destroyed by *Belisarius* and *Narses*, before is said: the name of *Goths* in Italy being thus extinct, but their Blood intermixt with the best Italian. The sum of their whole Story, for varieties sake, take thus out of *Dn Baras*.

The warlike *Goths*, which whilom issued forth From the cold frozen Illands of the North, Incamp'd by *Vistula*: but the Air almost B'ing there as cold as in the *Baltick Coast*, He with victorious Arms *Scalonia* gains, The *Transylvanian* and *Palachian* Plains; Then flies to *Thracia*, and then leaving *Greeks*, Greedy of Spoil, four times he bravely seeks To pluck from *Rome* (then *Mars* his Minion) The Plumes, which the from all the World had won, Guided by *Rhadagisile* and *Alarick*, (Legions Bold *Vindimar* and *Theodorick*, Thence flies to *France*; from whence expulst, his Rest ever since upon the Spanish Regions.

The Arms of these Kings are said to have been Or, three Ravens with displayed wings *Purple*, membered *Gules*. And let this suffice for the Original, Successes, and final Period of the *Goths*; referred by me unto this place, because most commonly conceived to be their original Country, at least the place out of which they issued, when they first moved towards the East to seek new Dwellings.

2. SWEDEN.

SWEDEN is bounded on the East with the *Bodner* Sea, on the West with the *Defrine* Hills, which part it from *Norway*, on the North with *Lapland*, on the South with *Gothland*. So called from the *Suehans*, or *Suebids*, the old Inhabitants herof; of whom more anon. A Country sufficiently fruitful, but for the goodness of the Soil inferior to *Gothland*; and not so well planned or inhabited as that is, by reason of the vast Woods which they will not suffer to be destroyed, and the greatnefs of some Marshes hitherto undrained: But might be made as rich and fertile, if the people would; as appeareth by that plenty of Corn growing amongst the Woods, though much hindered by their shade and thickness both from Sun and Rain. But for the Character of this Country, we had it formerly, when we spake of *Swethland*, in the general; relating specially to this as the principal part.

And, as the largest and principal part of this great Body, it contains in it many Provinces and Subdivisions:

as namely, 1. *Upland*, 2. *Sudermannia*, 3. *Nericia*, 4. *Westmannia*, 5. *Delecarlie*, 6. *Vernland*, 7. *Coperalde*, 8. *Gertricia*, 9. *Helsingia*, 10. *Midelfara*, 11. *Angermannia*, bordering on *Lapland*, the farthest of these Provinces towards the North. Many of these have no Towns or Cities of any greatnefs or beauty, the people living thin and scattered, where they have Wood for Building, Pasturage for their Beasts, and elbow-room enough for themselves and their Cattle. Of these the principal are, 1. *Upsal*, an Archbishop's See, and an University, situate not far from the Bay of *Bodner*, beautified with a large Cathedral, wherein many of the ancient Kings of *Swethland* are interred. From this City the Country hereabouts is stiled *Archiepiscopatus Upsalensis*. 2. *Halm*, by the Inhabitants called *Stockholm*, by the *Russians* *Stecolme*; the Royal Seat of the Kings, a noted and well traded Port, and the chief of the Kingdom; exceeding strong both by Art and Nature, as being situate in the Marshes, like *Venice*, at the mouth of the Lake or River of *Meler*, the passage to it out of the Bay being very narrow, and by consequence easily defended, and yet so deep withal, that the greatest Ships of Burthen may fail up to the City: the Port within the Streight being so safe and capacious, that it is able to receive at one time 300 Sail, which usually ride there without any Anchor. The Cattle of this City is conceived to be one of the strongest holds in the world; fortified for the more assurance of it with 400 brass Pieces, many of which are double Canon. 3. *Nicepen*, a Seetown on the same Bay also. These three are in that part hereof which is called *Upland*. Then there is 4. *Strangene*, an Episcopal See, and 5. *Telge*, on the Lake of *Meler*, in the Province of *Sudermannia*; the Title and Estate of *Charles*, Father of *Gustaphus Adolphus* late King of *Sweden*, before his getting of the Crown called Duke of *Sudermania*. Next, in the Province of *Westmannia*, there are 6. *Arvika*, on the West-side of the said Lake of *Meler*; and 7. *Arvika*, rich in Silver-mines, out of which are made the best Dross of *Sweden*: the Mines here being so rich and profitable, that out of every fifteen pound weight of Silver, the workmen draw a pound weight of Gold. 8. *Helsing*, upon the Bay of *Bodner*, in the Province of *Helsingia*, taking name from hence. 9. *Orebro* or *Ourobo*, a strong piece in *Nericia*; and 10. *Lefjenger*, on the Bay of *Bodner*, one of the farthest North of *Sweden* distantly and specially so called.

3. LAPLAND.

LAPLAND, the most Northern part of all *Scandia*, hath on the East *Russia*, on the West the Province or Prefecture of *Warabys* in the Kingdom of *Norway*, on the North the main Frozen Ocean, and on the South *Bodia*, or *Bodden*, on both sides of the Bay so called.

It is named thus originally from the *Lappi* or *Lappones*, the Inhabitants of it, as they are from their blackish behaviour; the word *Lappon* signifying the same with *infernus* or *infernus* in *Latine*; for such they are, rude, barbarous, and without the knowledge of Arts or Letters, as without Corn and Houses, or any certain Habitations; except only in *Finnmark*; feeding for the most part on Fish and the flesh of wild Beasts, with the Skins whereof sowed together they hide their nakednefs. Generally they are meer Idolaters, giving Divine honour all the day following to that living Creature, whatsoever it be, which they see at their first setting out in the morning; great Sorcerers, and abhorring the sight of Strangers, whom till of late they used to flee from at their first approach, but within few years past beginning to be more sociable and familiar. In a word, they are the true descendants of the ancient *Finnii*, (possessed in old times of all that Tract which lieth between the Bay of *Finland* and the

Frozen

frozen Ocean) whose natural rudeness and barbarity, unmixt with the conditions of more civil people, they do still retain.

It is divided into the Eastern and Western *Lapland*. The former appertaining to the *Knez*, or great Duke of *Moscovy*, by which people the Inhabitants are called *Dikiloppo*, or the wild *Laplanders*, is subdivided into *Biermania* and *Corelia*; of which, if there be any thing in them worth talking notice of, we shall there speak more. The latter doth belong to the Crown of *Sweden*, subdivided into two parts also, that is to say, 1. *Finnmark*, and 2. *Scricfinnia*.

1. **FINMARK**, being that part hereof which lieth next unto *Norway*, is the more populous of the two. The people are for the most part Idolatrous, but by the neighbourhood of the *Norwegians*, and resort of Strangers unto *Warabys* and the parts adjoining, somewhat civilized, and in the Borders of both Kingdoms favouring of Religion, possessed of Sheds or forry Houses, and those Houses reduced to Parishes under the Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Upsal*; the chief of which (if there be any chief amongst them) are named, 1. *Samman*, and 2. *Hieljo*. Called *Finnmarks* as the ancient Bounds and Marches of the *Finni* (of whom more anon) and therefore erroneously by *Magnus* made a part of the Kingdom of *Norway*.

2. **SCRICFINNIA** lieth between *Finnmark* and *Russia*. The name is derived from the *Finni*; a great People of *Scandia*, and *Scrikigen*, a Dutch word signifying leaping, sliding, or bounding, for such is their gait. An Etymology not much improbable, in that the Wooden-shoes with sharp bottoms, which they used for their more speedy sliding over the ice, of which this Country is full, are by the *Germans* (who also use them) called *Scrikshoes*, or Sliding-shoes. The ancient Writers call this people *Scricfinnia*.

These are indeed the natural and proper *Laplanners*, and unto these the former Character doth of right belong. Of stature very low, little more than Pygmies, but strong and active; well skill'd in Archery, and patient of Cold and Labour; much given to hunting of wild Beasts, whom they kill with their Bows, devour the Flesh, and cloath themselves with their Skins, which they tie at the top of their Heads, and leave no place open but for the sight; giving thereby occasion unto some to write that they are hairy all over, like Kine or Horses. Such Deer (whereof they have great plenty) as they take unkill'd, they make to draw in little Carts, as they shift their Quarters. But having served them for a while, they are killed at last, though perhaps for nothing but their Skins: a certain number of which they pay yearly to the King of *Sweden* in the way of Tribute. Three Companies of these *Laplanners*, so clad and Armed, as aforesaid, came into *Lapland* in the year 1630, to serve *Gustavus Adolphus* in those Wars: looked on with admiration by all Spectators.

Towns we must look for none here, where no Houses be: and yet there are some Sheds and Cabins on the Sea shore, which Mariners having made for their refreshment when they came on Land, have bestowed some names on, and possibly in time may become good Towns, now not worth the naming.

4. BODIA.

BODIA, BODDEN, or BODNER, is situate on the South of *Scricfinnia*, betwixt it and the Bay or Gulf named; extending Southwards on the West side of it, till it joins to *Sweden*, and on the East-side, till it meets with the Province of *Finland*

Hence is the division of this country into the *Eastern*, *Northern* and *Western* *Bodden*, with reference to the Situation of it on the Bay aforesaid. The Country is not very plentiful of Grain or Fruits, but full of great variety of wild Beasts, whose rich Skins yield great profit unto the Inhabitants, and by reason of the commodious situation on all sides of the Bay, is well stored with Fish. Anciently it was part of the possessions of the *Finni*, but how or whence it had the name of *Bodia*, *Bodden* or *Bodner*, I am yet to learn. But whencesoever it had the name, certain I am, that from hence the Gulf adjoining is called *Sinus Bodicus*, the *Bodner Zee* by the *Dutch* or *Germans*.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Birkura*, in *West-Bodden*; betwixt the Bay and a great navigable Lake. 2. *Toronia*, a well-traded Empory at the very bottom of the Bay, in *North-Bodden*. 2. *Helsingiac*, more North than that, towards the Borders of *Lapland*. And 4. *Kerlabi* in *East-Bodden*, on the Bank of the Gulf, conveniently seated for a Town of Trade.

5. FINLAND.

FINLAND hath on the North *Bodia*, on the South the *Baltick* Sea or *Mare Suevicum*, on the East *Sinus Fennicus*, on the West *Sinus Bodicus*. It is by *Ammoser* thought to be called *Finland*, *quasi* fine land; *quid* *pulebrior* & *amantior* *fit* *Suecia*, because it is a more fine and pleasing Country than *Sweden* itself. But indeed it is so called from the *Finni* or *Fenni*, a potent Nation who have here dwelt; whose Character is thus framed by *Tacitus*: *Finnis mira Feritas, feda Paupertas, non Arma, non Equi, non Penates, Vtibus Herbes, Villis Pelles, Cabulis Humus, sola in Sagittis spes*. The *Finni*, such they are, wonderfully barbarous, miserably poor, without Arms, Horses, or Household goods; Herbs their Food, the Ground their Bed, and the Skins of Beasts their best Apparel, armed only with their Arrows, and in them their hopes. A Character which agreeth every way with our present *Finlanders*, especially those of *Scricfinnia* and some parts of *Finnmarkia*; who are not so well reclaimed to Civility as the other are: but very different from that which *Jornander* gives them, who, living within 400 years after *Tacitus*, before they had much (if any) intercourse with foreign Nations, tell us of them, that they were *Scanzæ Cultoribus omnibus mitiorer*, more tractable and civil than any of the Inhabitants of *Scandia*, not excepting the *Suebids* themselves. If so, they did deserve to live in so good a Country, more plentiful and plain than *Sweden*, and neither so hilly nor so moorish.

The principal places to be as, 1. *Abo*, an Archbishop's See, situate on the most Southern Point of it, shooting into the *Baltick*. 2. *Wyborg*, a Bishop's See also, whose Jurisdiction for the most part is without this Province, on some part of *Russia*, all *Finland* being in the Diocese of the Bishop of *Abo*. A Town conveniently seated at the bottom of the Bay or Gulf of *Finland*, (called *Sinus Fennicus* in *Latine*) which divides this Country from *Livonia*; well fortified as the chief Bulwark of this Kingdom against the *Moscovites*; and so well garrisoned withal, that the keeping of this Town, and *Rivalia* or *Revel* in the Borders of *Liefland*, do cost the King of *Sweden* 100000 Dollars yearly. 3. *Udden*, on a Point or Promontory of the same Gulf, opposite to *Narva*, another Garrison of this King in *Liefland*. 4. *Vorma*, upon the *Bodner Zee*. 5. *Cronaburg*, more within the Land, at the efflux of a River out of the Lake called *Piente*. 6. *Deckla*, on the Banks of the great Lake called *Holea*. 7. *Farta*, more Northwards towards *Lapland*. Of which last four I find not any thing observable in the way of Story.

6. The

6. The SWEDISH Islands.

AND now at last I come to the *Swedish Islands*, here and there interperfed in the *Baltick Seas*, betwixt the Ifle of *Bornholm*, which belongs to *Denmark*, and *Liefland* or *Livonia*, appertaining to the King of *Poland*. the principal of which are, 1. *Gothia*, or the Ifle of *Gothland*; and 2. *Ingula Ulanda*, or the Ifles of *Oeland*.

1. *GOTHIA*, or the Ifle of *GOTHELAND*, is fituate over againft *C.imar*, a ftrong Town in the Continent of *Gotland*, in length 18 *Dutch miles*, and five in breadth, of a rich Soil, but more fit for Paftrage than Tillage, yielding great Herds of Cattle, ftore of Game for Hunting, plenty of Fifh, excellent Marble, and abundance of Pitch, which it fends forth to other Countries. There are in it 18 large and wealthy Villages, befides the Haven Town of *Wifby*, heretofore rich and of very great Trading, as much frequented by the Merchant as moft in *Europe*; but now much decayed and neither fo well peopled nor fo rich as formerly. The Trade removed hither from *Wollin* in *Pomerania* (deftrayed by *Waldemar* the firft of *Denmark*, Anno 1170) made it flourifh mightily, the greateft Traffick of the *Baltick* being managed here; but after that by reafon of the long and continued Wars betwixt *Denmark* and *Swethland* for the poffeffion of this Ifle it became unfafe, the factory was transferred unto other places. For being conveniently feated to annoy the *Swedes*, the *Danes* have much contended for it, and fometimes poffeffed it; but at the prefent it is in the hand of the *Swethlander*. By fome conceived to be the *Eningia* fpoken of by *Pliny*.

2. *OELAND*, or the Ifles of *Uland*, fo called in the plural Number, becaufe there are many of them, of which this the principal is fituate over againft *Abo*, the chief City of *Finland*. Of no great note, but that it is commodiouly feated to invade or annoy this Kingdom; and therefore very well fortified and aftrongly garrifoned: here being the good Towns of *Uborg*, 2. *Umea*; and 3. the ftrong Caffe of *Cafrolm*.

Befides which Countries here defcribed, the King of *Sweden* is poffeffed of the ftrong Towns of *Narva*, and *Rivallia* or *Revel*, and *Pernau* in *Liefland* of *Kexholm*, or *Hexholm*, in *Curlia*, a Province of *Ruffia*; with very fair and ample Territories appertaining to them: fubdued and added to this Crown by *John* the fecond, Anno 1581 except *Rivallia* which voluntary fubmitted to *Ericus* the fecond King of this prefent Race, Anno 1561. But being thefe Towns and Territories are not within the Bounds of *Swethland*; we fhall defer all farther difcours thereof to a place more proper.

The firft Inhabitants of this Kingdom, befides the *Goths* and *Finni* fpoken of already, were the *Stones* and *Stiones*, mentioned in *Tacitus*; together with the *Phavones*, the *Pbiraffi*, and the *Levoni*, whom we find in *Petronius*, placed by him in the Eaft and middle of this great *Peninfula*. Which, being the general names of fome mighty Nations are by *Jornandes* branched into leffer Tribes of the *Suehans*, *Thyftad*, *Vagoth*, *Bergio*, *Hallin*, *Liatibids*, *Abelichin*, *Gawigib*, *Rauwarica*, *Rauwagici*, *Gramin*, *Azagria*, *Unixia*, *Archiattami*, *Enagere*, *Orbingi*, and divers others by them named, but from what root the name of *Sweden*, *Swedes* or *Swethland*, by which the chief Province of it, the people generally and the whole Kingdom is now called, is not yet agreed on; nor fpoke of at all by *Musfyer* or *Crantzius*, which two (but fpecially the laft) have written purpofely of this people. *Gafper Peninfar* deriveth them from the *Suevi*, who anciently inhabited in the North parts of *Germany*, beyond the *Albis*; from whom the *Baltick Sea*, was called *Mare Suevicum*:

which people he conceiveth to have been driven by the *Guthi* and *Daci* into this Country, and by the change of one letter only to be called *Sueci*. But this hath no good ground to ftand on, though I meet with many others which are more improbable. For when they left thofe colder Countries they fell into thofe parts which are ftill called *Suevia* (the *Schwaben* of the modern *Dutch*) where we find them in the time of *Cæfar*. And after, in *fula illa Gentium commigratione*, when almoft all the Northern Nations did fhift their Seats, we find fuch of them as had ftaid behind to have accompanied the *Vandals* in their On-falls into *Gaul* and *Spain*. Of any expedition of theirs thro' the *Baltick Seas*, we grieve quidem; nothing to be found in more ancient Authors. We muft therefore refer the original of this people either to the *Suiones*, or the *Suehidi*, or perhaps to both; both being anciently feated in thefe Northern Regions. Of the *Suiones* we read in the Book of *Tacitus* infcribed *De moribus Germanorum*; by whom they are reported to be ftrong in Men, Armour and Shipping. And that they were Inhabitants of *Scandia*, appears by two Circumftances in that Author 1. That the people were not permitted to wear weapons quia *Subitus Hostium Inceffus prohibet Oceanus*, becaufe the Ocean was to them a fufficient Rampart; which could not be affirmed of the ancient *Suevians*, but agree very well with the fituation of this prefent Country, defended by the *Baltick* and vaft Northern Ocean from the fudden Affaults of any enemy. 2. Becaufe the Sea which hemmed in that people was conceived to be the utmoft bounds of the World; *Trans Suiones Mare aliud, quicquid claudique Terrarum orbis finis*, as his words there are: which we know to hold good of this Country.

3. Add unto thefe this paffage of the old Annals of the Emperour *Lewis* the fecond; where it is told us of the *Danes*, *relictis patria apud Suiones exulabant*, that they were banifhed into the Country of the *Suiones*, which cannot fo well be understood of any place as of this *Sweden*, being next neighbour unto *Dynmark*. And 4. that this People both by *Musfyer* and *Crantzius*, as are well called *Suiones*, as *Sueci* or *Suedi*; which fheweth what they conceived of their true Original. Then for the *Suehans* or the *Suehidi*, whom *Jornandes* fpeaks of in his Book *De rebus Geticis*, they are by him Placed in the Ifle of *Scandia*, (for fuch this great *Peninfula* was esteemed to be by moft ancient Writers.) Now that thefe *Suehidi* are no other than the prefent *Swethlanders* appeareth 1. by the propinquity of the Names. 2. In that he maketh the *Finni* and *Finnibadi* the next neighbours to them. And 3. in that they are affirmed by the fame Author to have furnifhed the *Romans* with rich Furs, and the Skins of wild Beasts with which Commodities this Country is abundantly well ftored. Now to which of thefe two Nations, either the *Suiones* or the *Suehidi* thofe of *Sweden* are moft indebted for their Original, will (I conceive) be no great controverfie: the *Suehans* and *Suehidi* of *Jornandes* being no other than a Tribe of the *Suiones*, though the greateft and moft powerful of all thofe Tribes; placed therefore in the Front to command the reft, and fo moft like to give the name unto the whole.

Their Government was anciently under Kings, affirmed fo to be by *Tacitus*, who telleth us alfo that they were abfolute and free, *nullis exceptionibus, non precario jure regendi*; not bound in Covenant with their people, nor holding their Estates at the will of the Subject. But their Hiftorians have gone for Antiquity hereof beyond the ftory of *Brime* or the *Trojan War*, (beyond which very few of that ftain have dared to pretend) as high as unto *Mage* the Son of *Japhet*, reigning here within 30 years after the Flood. But letting paff thefe Dreams and Doga-

ges of the Monkifh times, certain it is that fometimes they were under the *Danes*, fometimes under the *Norwegians*, fometimes had diftinct Kings of their own; and finally fometimes were comprehended with the *Danes* and *Norwegians* under the general name of *Normans*, conducted by one King or Captain upon Forrain Actions. Omitting therefore the Succeffion of their former Kings, of Whole very being there is caufe to make great queftion; we will begin our Catalogue of them with *Ternaticus*, who entertained *Herald King of Denmark* and his Brother *Regenfride* driven out of that Kingdom by *Gutricus* or *Godfrey*, the Contemporary of *Charlemain*; of whole Succeffors *Musfyer* giveth us more certainty.

The Kings of SWEDEN.

1. *Ternaticus*.
2. *Frabo*.
3. *Heranus*.
4. *Sorius*.
5. *Biarms*.
6. *Wichferius*.
7. *Ericus*.
8. *Offenus*.
9. *Sturionius*.
10. *Ericus* II.
11. *Olaus*.
12. *Edmundus*.
13. *Stinkalis*.
14. *Hallfennus*.
15. *Aninader*.
16. *Aquinius*.
17. *Magnus*.

- 1150 18. *Sheres*. 10.
- 1160 19. *Carolus*. 8.
- 1168 20. *Caninus*. 54.
- 1222 21. *Ericus* III. 27.
- 1249 22. *Bygerius*. 2.
- 1251 23. *Waldemarus*. 26.
- 1277 24. *Magnus* II. 13.
- 1290 25. *Bygerius* II. 23.
- 1313 26. *Magnus* III. Son to *Ericus* the Brother of *Bygerius*, was alfo chofen King of *Norway*.

- 1326 27. *Magnus* IV. King of *Sweden* and *Norway*, which laft he gave in his life-time to *Haquin* or *Aquinius*, his fecond Son; and af er the death of *Ericus* his eldeft Son (his defigned Succelfors in this Crown) was outed of this Kingdom by the praftice of
- 1363 28. *Albert*, Duke of *Mecklenburg*, Son of *Euphemia*, the Sifter of *Magnus* the fourth; to the prejudice of *Aquinius* King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, made King of *Sweden*, on that Quarrel Vanquifhed by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* and *Norway* Widow of *Aquinius*, Anno 1387. to whom, defirous of liberty, herefgned his Kingdom, and died in his own Country, Anno 1407.

- 1387 29. *Margaret*, Queen of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, the *Semiramis* of *Germany*, having united the three Kingdoms under her Command, caufed an Act of State to be paffed in *Calmar*, a chief Town in *Swethland*, for the perpetuation of this Union unto her Succelfors; the Law and Privileges of each Kingdom continuing as before they were.

- 1411 30. *Ericus* IV. Duke of *Pomerania*, adopted by *Margaret*, of whole Sifter *Jagelburg* he was defcended, was in his life-time chofen King of the three Kingdoms, into which he fucceeded

actually after her deceafe: but outed of them all by a ftrong Faction raifed againft him; Anno 1439, he died in a private Estate in *Pomerania*, Anno 1459.

- 1439 31. *Chriftopher*, Count *Palatine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, (in Title only) Son of the Lady *Margaret*, Sifter of *Ericus*, fucceeded in all three Kingdoms. After whole death the *Swethlander*, being weary of the *Danifh* Government, broke the Agreement made at *Calmar*, for the uniting of the three Kingdoms under one Prince, and chofe one *Carolus Caninus* to be their King, Anno 1448.

- 1448 22. *Carolus Caninus*, one of the meaneft of the Nobility, and not long pleading to the great ones: whole Difpleafure when he had incurred, and feared the confequents thereof, he gathered together all the Treafure he could, fled unto *Danzick*, and there ended his days.

- 1455 33. *Chriftiern*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, called in by a party of the *Swedes*, and crowned King of *Swethland*; but out again under colour that he had not kept Conditions with them: the Kingdom being governed after that for a time by *Marfals*.

- 1458 34. *John*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, the Son of *Chriftiern*, received King by the *Svedes*, then over-powered by the *Mufcovite*: but their turn being ferved, they expelled him, again, returning to their former Government under *Marfals*. Of which *Marfals* (defcended from *Steno Stur*, the Uncle of *Carolus Caninus* by his Mother's fide) there were three in number; viz. 1. *Steno*, 2. *Suanto*, and 3. *Steno Star* the fecond of which the two firft died natural deaths, and the laft being by *Chriftiern* the fecond flain in Battel, this Kingdom was again poffeffed by the *Danes*.

- 1519 35. *Chriftiern II.* King of all three Kingdoms, ufed his Victory fo cruelly here, and his Subjects fo infolently at home, that here he was outed by *Gulftavus Ericus* and driven out of *Denmark* by his Uncle *Frederick*.

- 1523 36. *Gulftavus Ericus*, defcended from the ancient Race of the Kings of *Sweden*, having vanquifhed and expelled the *Danes*, was on the merit of that adtion chofen King of *Swethland*; which fill continueth in his Houfe.

- 1561 37. *Ericus* V. Son to *Gulftavus* 8.
- 1569 38. *John II.* Brother of *Ericus*; married *Catherine* the Sifter of *Sigifmund* the fecond; King of *Poland*.

- 1593 39. *Sigifmund*, the Son of *John* the fecond, in the life-time of his Father chofen King of *Poland*, Anno 1586, but was difpoffeffed of the Crown of *Sweden* (after a long War) by his Uncle *Charles*.

- 1607 40. *Charles II.* Duke of *Suderman*, the youngelt Son of *Gulftavus Ericus*, and Brother of *John* and *Erik* the two former Kings, firft governed here as Viceroy for his Nephew *Sigifmund*. But having an aim upon the Crown (to which he found the *Lutherans* not very favourable) he raifed up a *Calvinian* party within that Realm; according to whole Principles he began firft to withdraw his Obedience from his natural Prince, and afterwards to affume the Government to himfelf: fpeeding fo well in his Defign, that after a long War he forced his Nephew to defist from all farther

1611 41. Enterprizes, and made himself King, *An. 1607.* *Gustavus Adolphus*, Son of *Charles*, having settled his Affairs in Sweden, and whom Peace with the King of Denmark, with whom his Father was in War at the time of his death, fell first on his Cousin *Sigismund*, the King of Poland, from whom he took many places of importance in Prussia and Livonia; and in pursuance of that War was made Knight of the Garter. Afterwards, having settled a Truce with him, he passed into Germany, then in great danger of being absolutely intrahled to the House of Austria. In which he prospered so beyond all expectation, that in one year he passed over the Elbe, the Rhene, and the Danow, (which no Conquerour ever did before;) and having twice vanquished the Imperialists led by Tilly, and restored many of the German Princes unto their Estates, was in the current of his Victories slain in the Battel of *Lutzen*, *Novemb. 1632*; his body royally conveyed to Swedenland, and there interred.

1632 42. *Christina*, sole Daughter of *Gustavus*, of the age of seven years, acknowledged Queen of Sweden; the Estate being governed by the Counsels of the Nobility. After a long War, with variable success in Germany, they came at last to this accord in the Treaty of *Munster*, that she and her Successors, Kings and Queens of Swedenland, should peaceably enjoy all the higher Pomerany, with the Isles of *Rügen*, *Wollin*, and the Town of *Stetin*, in Lower Pomerany; the Town and Port of *Wismar* in the Dukedom of *Mecklenburgh*; and the whole Bishoprick of *Bremen* and *Verden*, and the Prefecture of the Town of *Wülshufen*; with the Title of Dukes of *Bremen*, *Pomerany*, and *Verden*, Princes of *Rugia*, and Lords of *Wismar*; and by those Titles to have place, as Princes of the Empire, in all Diets and Assemblies which concern the Publick. By which agreement (if it hold) the Swedes have not only got a good footing in Germany, a strong Influence upon all the Councils of the Empire, a Door open for more Forces, (if occasion be) and a free passage into the Western Ocean, which before they wanted; but may in time prove absolute Masters of the *Baltick* Sea, and make the *Hamburgers*, those of *Lubeck*, and possibly the Kings of Denmark and the Empire it self, be at their Devotion.

But leaving these things to the Doubtful issue of Contingency, let us next look upon the Forces and Revenues of the Crown of Sweden before the time of *Gustavus Adolphus*, or as he found them at his Succession to that Crown. For though the Swedes pretend their Kingdom to be Elective, especially since the falling of the Royal Line in *Magnum* the fourth, and *Albert* of *Mecklenburgh*: yet still the eldest Son or next Heir succeedeth; unless put by Faction and strong hand, as in the case of *Sigismund* and his Uncle *Charles*. Which *Charles* so ordered his Affairs, that having engaged the Kingdom in a War against his Nephew, he was solicited at the last to accept of the Crown: to which he would by no means yield, till a law was made for the entailing the same for ever unto his Posterity, whether male or female, as an Hereditary Crown. But whether Hereditary or Elective, the King once settled in the Throne is an absolute Monarch; having not only a power to levy Taxes on his Subjects, as he seeth occasion, as five, six, seven, eight Dollars, or more yearly upon every Householder, according to the proportion of his Estate, but also to grant a

certain number of Peasants unto such as he means to favour, to be as Subjects and Vassals to him, according to his well-deserving. And whereas in the Constitution of this Government every Parish hath a Landman or Consul to decide the Controversies of the same, as every Territory hath its Vicount, and each Province his Lamen; there lieth an Appeal from the Landman unto the Vicount, and from the Vicount to the Lamen; who, if they be supposed not to judge uprightly, then the Appeal lies unto the Council, and from the Council of Estate to the King himself, (in whom is fixed the Sovereignty and *Dominie Resort*), and not unto the King and Council, as before in Denmark.

The Forces of this King are either by Sea or Land. By Sea he is Commander wholly of the Bay of *Bodney*, and hath a great Power in all the rest of the *Baltick*; being able to fit out 70 good men of War, as *John* the second did in the year 1578; seven of which were good Gallies, and all the rest did carry above 50 cast Pieces of all sorts, besides many other good Vessels fit for service. And if a Navy of this size will not serve the turn, he is not only furnished with Timber, Cordage, and all other necessaries for the building of Ships, and with good store of Ordnance and Ammunition for present use, but is able to raise upon a sudden 6000 Mariners, and upon little warning as many more; all which he entertaineth at no other charges in a manner than to find Victuals: inasmuch as *John* the second, before mentioned, did use to say, that that which cost the King of Spain a Million of Crowns, cost him 100000 Dollars.

For his Land-Forces they may best be estimated by the Trained Bands (as we call them) in every Province; there being in all 32 *Vexilles* (or Ensigns) of Foot constantly trained and mustered in the several Provinces; each *Vexille* comprehending 600 or 700 men, amounting in the Total to 20000 Foot; all in a manner Musketers; ready to march whenever the Kings occasion shall so require. And then for Horse, there are eleven Cornets in continual readiness for Sweden and *Gothland*, and two for *Finland*, maintained at the Charges of those Countries: to which the King may add at his own charges as many more as he pleaseth. And for an instance of what this King is able to do, without putting his Estates in hazard by draining them too dry of men to make good his Kingdom, we find that *John* the second, in his Navy of 50 Ships spoken of before, had above 18000 Land-Soldiers, besides Mariners. And in the Army which *Gustavus Adolphus*, the late King, brought into Germany, there were mustered no fewer at one time than 12000 Horse, and 34000 Foot, all *Finnis* and *Swedish*. For the accommodating of which Armies with Artillery and the like Engines of War, it is thought that the Kings hereof are Masters of 8000 great Pieces, for the most part Brass, with Mortar-pieces and Granaado's in proportion to them.

But that which makes his Land Forces most considerable is their Hardiness in enduring the extremities of Wind and Weather (inasmuch that it is usual with them to stand Centinel a whole Winters night of 18 hours long without being relieved) their exact Discipline, and Obedience to their Commanders, and finally their indefatigable Industry in making their own Shoes, Apparel, Stocks for Muskets, and all other necessaries. Which doth not only make them fit to endure any labour which is put upon them in the Wars, but keeps them from Idleness and the pride of Mutinies; the ordinary effect, in great Armies, of sloth and ease. Nor do they want encouragement on the Kings part neither; who, 1. gives to every Soldier Victuals, which he accounts not in their pay, and 2. If a Soldier

dier be taken Prisoner, him the King doth usually redeem at his own charges. And 3. if a Soldier's Horse be slain under him, the King supplieth him with another. Which make the Soldiers (very sensible of such Obligations) exceedingly conformable unto his Commands, how dangerous soever they seem to be.

Finally, as for his Revenues, they must needs be great, there being four ways allowed him to amass his Treasures. First the Revenues of the Church, confining before the Reformation of seven Bishopricks and sixty Monasteries, which enjoyed very great Possessions; all seized on by *Gustavus Ericus*, and by him incorporated to the Crown excepting only what is given back to maintain the Bishops. Secondly, Mines, which are here of all Metals in very great plenty, except of Gold and Silver, which they have more sparingly; the Tenth whereof in all places belongs to the King, and yields him such a fair *Livrade*, that in the year 1578 the King's part out of two or three Mines of Copper only amounted to 30000 Dollars. Thirdly, Tenth out of all increase, as Rye, Wheat, Barley, Fish, Oxen, Skins, and the like Commodities; the sum whereof though not certainly known, (because the increase is so uncertain) yet it was once computed, that the Tenth of the Oxen only came in one year to 18000 Dollars, besides Provision for his Household. Fourthly and lastly, Customs imposed on Merchandise, and paid in all his Haven-Towns for all Commodities imported or exported, of what sort soever. Besides all which, he hath his Contributions in all times of War, power of imposing Taxes, (though moderately used) as his Necessities require; and on the Marriage of a Daughter, the Kingdom is to pro-

vide her Portion, which of late times hath been fixed at the certain sum of 100000 Dollars, besides Plate and Moveables. Out of which several Items to sum up the Total: It was observed, that in the year 1578 *John* the second (all Charges, ordinary and extraordinary, being first deducted) did lay up into his Treasury no less than 700000 Dollars; which was a vast sum for those times, considering especially the great Charge which the King had been at that year, in furnishing a Navy of 70 Sail, and raising 18000 Land-Soldiers, (besides Horse) for defence of his Realm against the *Danes*. And yet it is conceived by some knowing men, that his Revenues would be much greater than they are, if he did employ Strangers to work the Mines, which the Native do not husband to the best advantage; and yet are fearful to discover them to other Nations upon some Jealousies, which they are naturally addicted to: or if he would turn Merchant, and in his own Ships send out Corn and Cordage, with Masts and Timber fit for Building, and in them bring back Salt and other Necessaries which his Kingdom wants, letting them at a far less price than now they go at, and yet gaining very greatly by it too.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Azure*, three Crowns Or.

There are in Swedenland.

Archbishops 2. Bishops 8.

Universities but one, viz. *Upsal*.

And thus much for S W E T H L A N D.

O F R U S S I A.

R U S S I A is bounded on the East by *Tartary*, on the West with *Livonia* and *Finland*, from which it is divided by great Mountains and the River *Pola*; on the North by the Frozen Ocean, and some part of *Lapland*; and on the South by *Lithuania*, a Province of the Kingdom of Poland, and the *Crim-Tartari*, inhabiting on the Banks of *Palm Maoris* and the *Euxine* Sea. It stretcheth partly in Europe, and partly in Asia, the River *Tanaïs* or *Don* running through it, the common Boundary of those great and noted parts of the World.

It was thus called from the *Rossi* or *Russi*, a People of Mount *Taurus*, or *Tavrica Cherfoneus*, (if not both) who in the declining times of the Greek Empire possessed themselves of some parts of it, and, being the prevailing People, imposed their Name on all the rest. Called also *Russja Alba*, to distinguish it from *Russja Nigra*, a Province of Poland; quod *Incola omnium Gentium ipsius imperii subiectarum* (as one observes, discoursing of the Affairs hereof) *Vestibus albis & Pileis plerumque utuntur*, because the Inhabitants use to wear white Caps and Vestments. And why not thus? since the People of *Margiana* and *Sogdiana* in Asia have the name of *Tselibus* only because they wear green Turbans, as the word importeth. Finally, it is called *Moscovite*, from *Moscovia* the chief Province of it; as that is denominated from the *Moschi*, of whom more anon.

In reference to the Heavenly bodies, it is said by some

to be situate betwixt the 8. and 20. Climates; the longest Day in the Southern parts being but 16 hours and an half, and almost 22 hours and a half in the Northern part. But this is to be understood only of the Province of *Moscovia* properly and specially so called, and not of the whole Empire of the *Moscovite* according to the Bounds before laid down. For taking in the Northern Provinces belonging to it, as *East-Lapland*, *Candora* & *Peterson*, lying within the *Arctic* Circle, the longest Day in Summer will be full 6 months, (for so long do those Countries see no Night at all;) which is a mighty disproportion from the length of the longest Day in the most Southern parts, being but 16 hours and a half, as before is said. And by this Rule we are to take the Dimensions also. For though some make the length hereof from North to South, that is to say, from *Cala* in the North to *Afracan* near the *Caspian* Sea, to be no more than 2260 Versts, or 3590 Italian miles; yet they confess that, reckoning forwards from *Tronfchina*, the farthest point of *Peterson*, the full length there of will be nigh so much more. And for the breadth, reckoning from *Narva* on the Bay of *Finland*, (now in possession of the Swedes) to the Province of *Siberia* in the East, it amounteth to 4400 Versts, or 6300 Italian miles, each Verst being estimated at three quarters of an English mile. Which mighty Territory, if it were peopled answerable to some other parts of the World, would either make it too great for one Prince to hold, or make that Prince too great and puissant for all his neighbours.

The people, as is commonly reported of them, are very perfidious, crafty and deceitful in all their Bargains, False-dealers with all they have to do with, making no reckoning of their Promises, and study nothing more than ways to evade their Contrasts. Vices so generally known and noted in them, that when they are to deal with Strangers, they defile their Country, and pretend to be of other Nations, for fear lest no body should trust them. Destitute they are of humane Affections, and so unnatural, that the Father insults on his Son, and he again over his Father and mother. So malicious one towards another, that you shall have a man hide some of his own Goods in the house of some man whom he hateth, and then accuse him for the stealth of them. They are exceedingly given to drink, infomuch that all heavy and intoxicating Drinks are by Law prohibited, and two or three days only in a year allowed them to be drunk in. For the most part they are strong of Body, swift of Foot, of square Portion, broad, short and thick: gray-eyed, broad-bearded, and generally furnished with prominent Paunches. The commons live in miserable subjection to the Nobles, and they again in as great Slavery to the Duke or Emperour; to whom no man of all the vulgar dares immediately exhibit a Petition, or make known his Grievances, nay, the mean Lords and officers are afraid in this kind, and, but on great submission, will not commend unto the Duke a poor man's Cause. They are altogether unlearned, even the Priests meanly indoctrinated it being cautioned by the great Duke, that there be no Schools, lest there should be any Scholars but himself: so that the people use to work commonly on the Lord's day, holding it fit to be kept by none but Gentlemen; and to say in a difficult question, *God and our Great Duke know all this*; and in other talk, *All we and our Great Duke know, is all from our Great Duke*; according to whose pleasure every man is preferred what Habit he shall wear, both for matter and fashion, suitable unto their Condition. In the time of my Author their Habit was a long Garment without Plaits, which hung down to their heels, commonly of white or blew, with very straight Sleeves; on their Legs wearing Buskins up as high as the calf, for the most part red, high at the heels, and beset with nails of Iron. The stuff and trimming of the Dress is the only difference betwixt the Noble and the Peasant.

The Women are attired also much after this manner; but if great and noble, suffered to set forth themselves with frowns of Pearls and Precious Stones which hang so thick about their ears, that they do almost pull their ears from their heads. A second Marriage is conceived no blemish in point of Chastity, but the third condemns them of Incontinence. They are naturally subject enough to the Lusts of the flesh, but private, and fearful to offend; if once lascivious, then most intolerably wanton. It is the fashion of these Women to love that Husband best which beareth them most; and to think themselves neither loved nor regarded, unless they be two or three times a day well favourably fawled. The Author of the *Treasury of times* telleth a Story of a German Shoemaker, who travelling into this Country, and here marrying a Widow, used her with all kindness that a woman could (as he thought) desire; yet did not the fenn contented. At last learning where the fault was, and that his not beating her was the cause of her Penitence, he took such a vein in cudgelling her sides, that in the end the Hangman was fain to break his Neck for his labour.

They use the *Slavonian* Languages, but so corrupt and mixt with other Languages, that they and the *Slavonians* understand not one another's meaning but by circumstance only: yet in *Turgia* (out of which the *Hungar-*

rians are thought to have issued) they speak a corrupt *Hungarian*; and in *Petozora* and the Country of the *Czeremissians* they have a Language to themselves, distinct from others.

They first received the Christian faith in the year 987, or, as some say, *Anno* 942, by the preaching and ministry of the *Greeks* sent hither by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*; of which Church they are constant followers, both for Rites and Doctrine: but not without some Superstitions of their own superadded to them; viz. not coming near a Cross, Church or Monastery, but they kneel down, and make the sign of the Cross, saying *Mily Hspodi, i. e. Lord have mercy upon us*; nor entering into any Church untill washed and bathed. They bear a deadly hatred to the *Jews*, whom they suffer not to live amongst them; and so great friendship unto a *Calif*, that they hold it a great offence to kill one, or to eat his flesh. Their Church is governed by 18 Bishops, and 2 Metropolitans, all of them subordinate to their Archbishop or Patriarch; as he in former times to the *Constantinopolitan*, by whom he used to be confirmed. But about an hundred years ago they withdrew themselves from that subjection; the Patriarch being nominated by the Great Duke, and consecrated by two or three of his own Suffragans. Without the counsel and advice of this Patriarch, the Emperour or Great Duke doth nothing of any moment. The Bishops are all chosen out of the Monastick or Regular Clergy; which makes the Monks (being all of the order of *S. Basil*) to live very religiously, in hope to be advanced to the Episcopal Dignity. And for the Secular Clergy, or Parochial Priests, there is not much required of them, but to say their Masses, (which being in their own Language they may easily do) and to read now and then one of *Chrysolostom's* Homilies, translated heretofore for the use of those Churches. After the death of their first Wives they are not permitted to marry; in other things little they differ from the rest of the people. Once in the year it is lawful and usual with them to hold a Synod, at which the Patriarch hath his Crozier or Pastoral-staff carried before him, as the Pope's Legate hath the Cross; where they make Constitutions for the publick Government, and the regulating of Divine matters; which are punctually and carefully observed by the Prince himself.

As followers of the *Greek* Church, (but so as to be counted a Church distinct) they differ much both from the *Romish* and Reformed. 1. Denying the Holy Ghost to proceed from the Father and the Son. 2. Denying Purgatory, but praying for the Dead. 3. Believing that Refuges enjoy not the presence of God before the using Legion. 4. Communicating in both kinds but with the Wine vened bread, and mingling warm Water with the Wine, which both together they distribute with a Spoon. 5. Receiving Children of 7 years old to the Sacrament of theceiving Eucharist, because then they begin to sin. 6. Forbidding extreme Unction, Confirmation, and fourth Marriages. 7. Admitting none to Orders but such as are married, and yet prohibiting Marriage to them that are actually in Orders. 8. Rejecting Carved Images, but admitting the Painted. 9. Observing 4 *Lents* in the year. 10. Repeating it unlawful to fast on Saturday; or to eat Blood, or any thing that hath been strangled, according to the first Council holden at *Hierusalem*. 11. And finally, dissolving Marriage by Divorcement upon every flight occasion, or conceived displeasure. Which diversity betwixt the *Romans* and this people in point of Religion hath bred much a difference betwixt them in point of Affection, and made them so ill-concited of one another, that if a *Misfortune* be known, or but suspected to have conversed with any of the Church of *Rome*, he is accounted to be a polluted person, and must be solemnly purged and purified before

before he be admitted to partake of the blessed Sacrament.

In matters of War the people are indifferently able, as being almost in continual Broils with their Neighbours; and have a Custom, that when they go to the Wars, every Soldier give to the Emperour or great Duke a peice of money, which at the end of the War he receiveth again; and by that means the number of the slain is exactly known. At their Funerals they use to put a Penny into the Mouth of the party deceased, a pair of Shoes on his Feet and a Letter in his Hand, directed (such is their Superstition) to *S. Nicolas*, whom they deem to be the Porter of Heaven: an opinion doubtless very prejudicial to the Pope's and *S. Peter's* Prerogatives.

This Country is not so populous as spacious. The Eastern parts are vexed with the *Tartars*, who, like *Lepp's* Dog, will neither dwell there themselves, nor suffer the *Muscovites* to plant Colonies in them: the Western parts almost as much molested by the *Swedish* and *Polonian* Kings; the Southern by the *Turk* and *Precepens*; and the Northern by the coldness of the Air, which is of such vehemency, that Water thrown up into the Air will turn to Ice before it fall to the ground. The better to resist the extremity of this Cold, are not only the Cloathes of this people, but their very Houses, are lined with thick Furs. Every Gentleman or man of note hath in his Dwelling-house, a Stove or Hot-house in which they keep as it were to thaw themselves. Such as travel on the way use often to rub their Nose or Ears with Snow or Ice, to settle and recal the motive Spirits into those parts which otherwise they would be in danger to lose; the ignorance of which preventing Chirurgery was not the least cause that, in the year 1598 of 70000 *Turks* which made an Inroad into *Muscovia*, 40000 were frozen to death. By reason of these extremities of Frosts and Cold, it is the Custom of this people to lay the Bodies of their dead all the Winter long on heaps in the Belfreys of their Churches, where they lie without putrifying or any ill favour to the end of *March*; at what time the Air beginning to wax warm, and the earth to be fit for digging each Family looks out their dead bodies, and takes care to bury them. This excess of Cold in the Air gave occasion to *Cathalian* in his *Anticus* wittily, and not incongruously, to feign that if two men being somewhat distant talk together in the Winter, their words will be so frozen that they cannot be heard; but if the parties in the Spring return to the same place, their words will melt into the same order as they were frozen and spoken, and be plainly understood. Such is their Winter: neither is their Summer less miraculous. For the huge Seas of Ice which in a manner cover the whole surface of the Country, are at the first approach of the Sun suddenly dissolved, the Water quickly dried up, and the Earth dressed in her holy-day Apparel: such a mature growth of Fruits, such flourishing of Herbs, such chirping of Birds as if here were a perpetual Spring. The reason of which strange and sudden alteration is conceived to be the long lying of the Snow on the Face of the Earth, keeping it from the rigour of the Winter Frosts; which being dissolved by the Sun in the beginning of the Spring, doth so thoroughly drench and loke the Ground, (being of a light and Sandy mold) and consequently make it the more penetrable by the beams of the Sun shining hotly on it, that it forceth in a manner the Herbs and Plants to shoot forth in great plenty, and that too in a shorter time than can be imagined.

The whole Country generally is very much overspread with Woods, parts of the great *Heronian* Forest, heretofore over-running all the North, and still more visible here than in other places: either by reason of the Aliveness of the people, naturally given to Sloth and Ease;

or for that the Country is not populous enough to overcome them: or that there is already Ground enough for Tillage to supply their necessary uses. For here do grow the goodliest and tallest Trees of the World, through which, by reason of their thickness, the brightness of the Sun-beams can hardly pierce; affording shelter to great multitudes of Cattle, but of wild Beasts especially, whose Skins are better than their Bodies, as Bears, Martens, Zibellines, wolves, black foxes, whose skins are of very great estimation. Of the timber of these Trees are squared all necessities both for Forts and Houses: the Fortifications in this Country being made of huge beams fastned together, (the Chinks filled with Earth) not easily shaken by Battery, though much subject to Fire. And out of them issueth an unspeakable quantity of Pitch and Rosin, which are hence distilled: besides an everlasting Fountain of Wax and Honey; the Bees, without the Midwifery of the Art of Men, building their Hives or Houses in the hollow Trees. Concerning this there goeth a Story (reported and believed for a certain truth) of a Countryman who accidentally had slipped down into a great hollow Tree, where he stood up to the breast in Honey, continuing there two days without other sustenance: at the end whereof a Bear coming to partake of the Booty, he laid hold of his Legs and so terrified him with his Cries that he made him leap out with the man at his heels. The Country yieldeth also great store of Flax and Hemp, which is transported yearly into other Countries, (and would make them very excellent Cordage, if the people had any skill in Manufactures or Mechanical Arts) and in some places rich Pastures, and such store of Corn, that therewith they do furnish *Lapland*, and the North parts of *Sweden*. Fish they have also in good plenty, which they salt and drie, and either vent it to the Merchant, or lay it up in store for their Forts and Families. By which account it will appear that the Principal Commodities which they send abroad are rich Furs, Flax, Hemp, Whales-grate, Honey, Wax, Pitch, Rosin, Nuts, Filibers and the like: which either the *Dutch* and *English* buy of them at the fort of *S. Nicolas*, or the *Armenians* at *Albracan* near the *Caspian* Sea; giving them in return Cloath, Silks, Tapestry, and some other Merchandise, transported to the value of 50000 Rubles yearly. Particularly of Wax 50000 Pood, (every Pood containing 40 *English* Pounds) of Tallow 100000 Pood, 100000 Hides, 100 Ships laden with Flax and Hemp, the rest of their Commodities proportionably in the time of my Author; since whose time the Trade herof hath been much increased.

This Country not improperly may be called (as by some it is) the Mother of Rivers. The chief of which are, 1. The *Dona*, called *Tanais* by the old Geographers, and by them thought to be the only Boundary betwixt *Europe* and *Asia*; the Northern parts of this Country being then unknown. It disburtheneth it self into *Palus Meotis*; and hath its Fountain not out of the *Rhiphaean* Mountains, as was thought of old, but out of a great Lake called *Ivanowefero*, in the Forest of *Obonickiles* or *Tephanickiles*, some 20 *English* miles from the City of *Tulla*, and having run a great way Eastward, turneth back again and then proceedeth Southwards towards the *Maris*, as was said before. 2. *Borysthenes*, now called *Nieper*, whose spring was unknown unto *Herodorus*, but now discovered to be near *Daipereck*, a Village of *Muscovy* specially so called, in the Forest of *Wolkynkie*. Whence passing South, and running by the Town of *Solenzke*, it receiveth many other Rivers, and amongst them that of *Defna* (by the ancient Writers called *Hypanis*) notwithstanding whose muddy waters it still retains its natural Clearness, and so falls into the *Euxine* Sea. 3. *Tumana*, (so called by

the *Sarmatians* and their Slaves. For when the *Asiatick Scythians* went to plant themselves in *Media*, and the parts adjoining, some of the *Sarmatians*, then inhabitants of this Tract, went along for company. Their long stay caused their Wives, despairing of their return, to comfort themselves with their Slaves both at bed and board; to whom they brought a lusty increase of Youths: who being well grown, and hearing that the *Sarmatians* were upon their coming back, joined together against them: the Slaves to retain their Wealth and Freedom which they were possessed of, the Women, for fear of the displeasure of their Husbands, and the Young men, for defence of their Fathers and Mothers. With joynt Forces they go out to meet them before their entry into the Country; neither are the Masters slow in their advance, hoping to take them unprovided. At *Novogrod* they have the first fight of each other. The Masters, scornful to defile their Swords on so ignoble an Enemy, assaults them with Whips, and by the terror thereof got a signal Victory. In memory of which Battle, the people of that City have ever since stamped their money with the figure of an Horseman shaking a Whip in his hands: And it is the Custom of all *Moscovites*, that the Maids in the time of wooing send such a Whip, curiously wrought by her own hands, to that Sutor whom the revolves on for her Husband, in token of her future Subjection to him. But of this more hereafter in another place.

6. CORELIA. 7. BIARMIA.

Sixty Dutch miles from *Novogrod* lieth the Province Scalled *CORELIA*, extending Northwards as far as to a branch of the frozen Sea where the longest Day is 20 hours and a half; the Nights proportionable in the Winter make it cold and barren. It bordereth on the East of *Finland*, from which it is parted by a long and rough ridge of Mountains. By reason of which Situation betwixt two great Princes, the people are enforced to pay Tribute to both, though properly the Subjects of the great Duke of *Moscow*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Keshalm* or *Hexholm* in the hands of the *Swedes*, and 2. *Corelsburg* the chief Towns of the Province, belonging with the rest of the Country unto the *Moscovite*. By some this Province is made a part of the Eastern *Lapland*; but, I think, erroneously: the people having some good Towns, and favouring of some Humanity, neither of which are known or heard of amongst the *Laplanners*. 3. *Nodenburg*, on the mouth of a Lake, which by the River called *Wajuga* emptieth it self into the Bay of *S. Nicolas*.

On the North-side of that Branch or Arm of the Frozen Ocean which bounds *Corelia* lieth the Western part of *Lapland*, which by a proper name is called *BIARMIA*: the Country of the *Dikloppi*, or wild *Lappins*, as the *Moscovite* call them: to whose Duke or Emperor they are subject. We had their Character before when we were in *Swetland*, nor shall we need to repeat it here: as Barbarous and as rude as the worst sort of those mentioned in *Scythia*, and as Idolatrous as they; but more (if more may be) inclined to Lustfulness than the others. In the Winter Solstice, when the Sun entrencheth into *Capricorn*, they have Night for three whole months together, during which time, lurking in their Caves, they have leisure to confute with the Prince of Darkness: being very great Sorcerers, able (as some affirm) to raise *Winds*, Clouds, Tempests, and do many strange things. Towns here are none. Some Sheds and Cabins on the Sea-coasts, patched up by the Sailors for their reception and refreshment as they came on Land, and named according to their fancies, but not here considerable.

8. PETZORA. 9. CONDORA. 10. OB-DORA. 11. TUGRIA.

Opposite to *Biarmia*, or *West-Lapland*, on the other side of the Bay, leading towards the Port of *S. Nicolas*, lieth a large Promontory or Head-land, stretching out far into the North, beyond the *Arctic* comprehending in it 4 Provinces of the *Russian* Empire; that is to say *Petzora*, *Condora*, *Obdora*, and *Tugria*: belonging formerly to the *Tartars*, but won from them of late years by the *Russian* Emperours; extending by that means their Territories to the River *Ob*, but not a whit improving them in Power or Patrimony. Howsoever somewhat must be said of them, because parts of this great Body which we are to dissect.

PETZORA, so called from a River of that name, is fenced on every side by Mountains and unpassable Rocks, extending Northwards to the Sea, and crooked with a vast Chain of Hills, part of the *Hyperborei*, spoken of before; so high, that a certain man, having travelled in the ascent of them 17 days together, is said to have returned back again, despairing to attain the top of them: covered in the Winter-time with perpetual Snows, in the Summer with as scorching Heats, by the continual lying of the Sun in all parts thereof. The people are of a plain and simple nature, and received the *Russian* Faith and Empire at one time together, Anno 1518. The chief Town of it is *Petzora*, or *Pechora*, at the fall of that River into the Sea, a small Town, but having three Churches in it: the people whereof, though otherwise sufficiently simple as before is said, do in the Summer-time catch Patridge, Ducks, Swans, Geese, and other Fowl, which they salt and lay by till the Winter, and then live upon them. So good a Tutor is the Belly, that the Poet did not unfitly give the titles of *Artis Magister* and *Angeni largior Venter*: whereof this may serve for one example.

CONDORA lieth on the North of *Petzora*, more near the Pole; by consequence is a colder Country, and of worse condition; one half of the Year being continual Day, and the other half a long Night. The people are universally Idolaters, worshipping some Images (or Idols) in the shape of a Man, others in that of Bears, Wolves, &c. which they adorn with the Richest Furs they can get, and hide them in their Caves for fear of the *Ruffes*; who if they Chance to light upon them, as they hunt those parts for Sables, Foxes and Bevers, take away their Furs, and bestow a greater heat upon them in Fires. The chief Town hereof is *Pusskora*, over against *Nova Zemla*, on near the great Lake called *Ozera*, whence it hath the name; situate in the 68 Degree of Northern Latitude, 50 minutes over.

OB DORA, so called from the River *Ob*, on both sides of whose Banks it lieth, is the most North-Eastern Province of all those Dominions; won to the Obedience of the *Ruffes* in the Reign of *Theodore* the Son of *Iohn*, Great Duke of *Moscow*. At what time the people had no Cities, lived in Hoods or Companies; ate the Beasts they took, knew no Corn nor Bread. They were then very good Archers, sharpening their Arrows with Fish-bones; with which bones and their Sinews of the Beasts they loured Furs together for their Clothing; which they wear inward in the Winter, outward in the Summer, covering their Houses with Elk-skins, to which he sent condemned persons, and brought it into the form of a petty Kingdom. But his Successor *Boris* built Towns, the chief Town hereof, with divers other Towns on both sides of the *Vater*, not worth naming here. But notwithstanding this Subjection to the *Moscovite*, they continue still

in their old Idolatry, worshipping an ancient Idol in form of an old Woman, holding in Each Arm a Child, and a third at her feet, called by them *Zlatu Babu*, or the *Golden old Wife*; to which they offer precious Furs, sacrifice Harts, and therewith do consult touching things to come. But some account this for a fable or a meer mistake.

TUGRIA, or *TUHAR*, lieth also on the Northern Seas, but more South than either of the others, betwixt *Petzora* or *Pechora*, and the Province of *Dvina*: the longest Day in Summer being not above 21 hours, or not fully that. The people are for the most part Idolaters, and worship the same Images as do those of *Obdora*: affirmed by some to be the Progenitors of the present *Hungarians*, who, Coming out of this Country, overran all *Pannonia*, and there fixed their Dwellings. For proof of which it is affirmed that they spake the old *Hungarian* Language, not used but in this Country and the North parts of *Hungary*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiscus* which more learned men affirm to be the *Targyean*, the Language of the *Targyes*, who anciently possessed that Country in the times of the *Romans*. But leaving this dispute to another place, certain it is they are subject to the *Moscovite*, but so poor and miserable a people, that they have few Towns and not many Houses; and so bare of money, that in stead thereof they pay Furs for Tribute to their Emperour.

12. SEVERIA. 13. PERMIA.

14. REZAN.

SEVERIA, or *SIBIOR*, as the *Moscovites* call it, lieth in a long Tract on the Banks of the River *Ob* or *Oby*, South of *Obdora* and the rest of the four last Provinces. The Country is very fruitful, and abounding with all things necessary, notwithstanding that there be great Defarts, and some Forests also; but those Forests well stored with black Foxes, Ermines, Sables, and the like wild Beasts, which yield more profit by their rich Furs, than any more fertile Country doth by its Corn and Fruits. In somuch that in the year 1589 there were collected out of this Province only in the way of Tribute for the Emperour, 466 Timber of Sables, (every Timber containing 40 Skins) five Timber of Martens, 180 Casks of black Foxes, (every Cask containing 40 Skins) besides other Commodities. The Woods also do offer good plenty of Honey, and the Plains of Herbage, well watered with the River *Sema*, which falleth into the *Defina*, and both together into that of the *Nieper*, or *Borjissenes*. There are in it many Towns and Castles, the principal whereof are, 1. *Sibir*, on the West side of the River *Ob*, which gives name to the Province. 2. *Branki*, not far from the great Forest from hence named. 3. *Siarodus*, 4. *Pawoolu*, and 5. *Cernigie*. [Here by mistake the two Provinces of Siberia and Severia (which differ as the farthest North-East and South-West points of *Moscowia*, between which there is a vast Tract of ground) are confounded, part of the Towns belonging to one, part to the other; as do the two Rivers, the *Ob*, and the *Nieper*.]

The people hereof, by reason of their continual Skirmishes with the neighbouring *Tartars*, are the most Warlike Nations of all the *Ruffes*: heretofore governed by a Duke or Prince of their own, who at the first acknowledged no Superiour; but afterwards was severally and successively tributary to the *Lituanians*, the *Polesanders*, and the *Moscovite*; and finally, the last Duke, being fallaciously of Treason, was ousted of his Estate by *Basilius* the Great Duke, who added it to the rest of his Dominions, as it hath continued ever since.

PERMIA is situate on the South-West of *Sibir*;

or *Severia*, a large Province, distant 250 Dutch miles from *Mosko*; so called from *Perno*, or *Pernia*, the chief Town hereof, situate on the River *Vishlora*, or *Vishlora*. The second Town of note is called *Siewrskysky*. The people (as also those of *Sibir*) are of the *Moscovite* Religion, and live most by hunting wild Beasts, whose Flesh they eat, and make good Merchandise of their Skins, many of which they pay yearly to the Great Duke in way of Tribute, who makes a good Commodity of them, selling them to the Merchant at excessive rates. They have no Corn of their own growth, nor will they buy any elsewhere; but instead of Bread, eat the flesh of Stags dried and prepared in the Sun; speaking a Language of their own; different from the rest of the *Ruffes*; and in stead of Horses and Oxen, make use of great Dogs and Stags, whom they train up to draw their Sleds from one place to another. There is good store of Woods amongst them; but they want Cedars, and they have paid dearly for that want. For *Iohn Vasilievich*, meaning to pick a Quarrel with them, sent to them for certain loads of Cedar-wood whereof he knew there grew none in their Country; and upon word returned that they had no such Wood he fined them at 12500 Rubbles.

REZAN, a great and goodly Province, is situate betwixt the River *Tana* and that of *Occa*, the most fruitful Country of all *Russia*, and (if report be true) of the whole World also: it being credibly affirmed that one grain of Corn doth bring forth six Ears; the Stalks hereof growing so thick, that an Horse can hardly pass through them, or a Quail sic out of them, but with very much difficulty. Here is also great plenty of Fruits, better than are to be found elsewhere in *Russia*; together with good store of Honey, Fish, Fowl, and other Commodities; besides Ermines, Bevers, and the like, common in these Countries. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Tulla*, famous for the Fountain or Spring head of the River *Tana*, which riseth near it. 2. *Colluga*, well garrisoned for fear of the *Crim-Tartars*. 3. *Collura*, a Bishop's See; as is also 4. *Rezan*, the principal of the Province, which it giveth name to, seated upon the Banks of the River *Occa*. A Country populous and well planted, according to the Great Duke 15000 *Boiars*, or Gentlemen which serve on horse-back; and betwixt 30 and 40000 Foot.

15. WIATHKA. 16. CASAN.

17. ASTRAKAN.

South-east of *Rezan*, beyond the banks of the River *Kanma*, and about 150 Dutch miles from *Mosko*, lieth the Province called *WIATHKA*, fenny and barren, but well stored with Fish and Honey, and wild Beasts good plenty. Heretofore subject to the *Tartars*, and then the receptacle or retreat of all fugitive Servants, here very gladly entertained: but the *Tartarians* being expelled, it was made Subject by *Basilius* to the Dukes of *Moscow*. I do not read of any Towns which should be here, which makes me think that they do still retain so much of the *Tartar* with them as to live in Hoods and Companies, without any fixt Dwellings; or at the best in scattered houses, not hitherto unto Towns and Villages, except it be the Town of *Wiabk* it self, built since the subjection of it to the *Moscovite*, and made a Garrison, to defend these out-parts of this Empire against the Incurfions of the *Tartars*.

CASAN, a Kingdom formerly of *Tartaria deserta*, lieth on the South-east of *Wiabk*, the most civil people of the *Tartars*, but owing much of that Civility to their conversation with the *Moscovite*, (though none of the civillest themselves) tilling their Lands and building Houses where they may with safety. For although

the Soil herof to be tolerably fruitful and fit for Habitation, yet the Country for the most part is desolate and ill inhabited; partly by reason of some vast Defarts, lying betwixt the Cities of *Casim* and *Afracan*; but principally in regard of the *Crim-Tartars*, who will not suffer the *Moscovite* to plant it with Colonies of his own people, nor the Natives to live there in quiet, except only in the Western parts, where they are protected by Garrisons. Chief Towns herof are, 1. *Casim*, upon the River *Volga*, which gives name to the Kingdom; since the Subjection of this People to the great Duke, and since their Conversion to the Faith, made a Bishop's See. 2. *Surick*, upon the River *Sura*, in the middle of the vast Defarts betwixt *Casim* and *Afracan*; built by *Basilius* the great Duke, for a Stage or resting-place for Merchants and Travellers, that there they might repose themselves without fear of the *Tartars*. The people herof had once a King of their own, as before was said; the last of which named *Chelebeck*, submitted himself unto *Basilius*, the great Duke, and became tributary; but afterwards revolting, he was vanquished by *John Vasilvich*, An. 1553, and his Kingdom thereupon united to the Empire of *Russia*: the Emperors since that time writing themselves *Cesar Casanicki*, or King of *Casim*. And possibly enough it is that *Basilius*, who first made it tributary, might from hence take the name of *Basilius Casim*, according to the custom of the ancient *Romans*.

Under the Government herof are the *Czeremissis*, a People that live in great Forreits without any Houses, living for the most part of Honey and the flesh of wild Beasts, with the Skins of which they are apparelled. Their Language is different from the rest. They are swift of foot, and very good Archers, carrying their Bows in their hands continually, and practising their Children to timely in it, that they give them nothing to eat (after such an Age) until they can hit a White which is set before them.

ASTRACAN lieth also South East of *Casim*, more near unto the *Caspian* Sea; parted from *Casim* by those Defarts spoken of before, but situate on the same Branch of the River *Volga*, which, having run a course of 2000 *Italian* Miles, dischargeth it self into this Sea with no less than 70 Mouths or Channells. It took this name from *Afracan* the chief Town herof, situate about 20 *Italian* miles from the fall of one of those 70 Mouths or Channells into the *Caspian*: by the commodiousness whereof it is one of the best Towns of Trade in all these Dominions, the *Armenian* Merchants coming hither, and bartering their Silks and Manufactures for the Furs and other natural Commodities of the *Russes* or *Moscovites*. A Kingdom formerly, but a Kingdom of less esteem than that of *Casim*; conquered (together with it) by *Basilius* the great Duke, An. 1494, and by him made Christian. But afterwards revolting, they were more absolutely subdued by *John Vasilvich*, who brought into the field against them no fewer than 120000 Horse and 200000 Foot, (enough to over-run a far greater Country) and yet had hardly got the better, but for the terror of his great Ordinance, which the others wanted. Upon that Victory it was made a Member of the Empire of *Russia*, the Emperour whereof hath since styled himself the King of *Afracan*.

18. *NOFOGOR DIA Inferior*.
19. The *MORDWITS*.

BUT it is now time we return towards *Europe*, out of which we have wandered up and down in the skirts of *Asia* tracing out the several Provinces of this Empire, since our first crossing over the Bay of *Gravovic*, or *Saint Nicolas* into the Country of *Petzora*. But in our way we

must first take a view of the Dukedom of *Novogrod* the *Lower*, so called to difference it from *Novogrod* (distant the *Great*) spoken of before, situate almost in the midst betwixt *Casim* and *Mosco*, distant from the last 100 *Polonian* miles, and 60 miles from the Borders of the other; every *Polonian* mile being reckoned at four *Italian*. The Country is generally very rich both for Tillage and Pasturage, inferior unto none in all this Estate but *Razan* and *Volodimir* only. So called from *Novogrod*, the chief Town situate at the Confluence of the *Occa* and *Volga*; besides which it hath the neighbourhood of a very great Lake, which storeth it plentifully with Fish. A City of great esteem in all this Empire, partly for the great number of Houses, in that not easily equalled by any other; partly for an impregnable Castle cut out of the main Rock with incredible charges in the time of *Basilius* the great Duke; but principally for a stately and magnificent Temple, built above 600 year ago, in imitation (or emulation, as some say) of the famous Church of *S. Sophia* in *Constantinople*. To this Town the Story of the *Scythian* or *Sarmatian* Slaves ought, in my mind, to be ascribed; though commonly reported of the other *Novogrod*, in the West parts of this Empire. My reason is, because it is not likely that the *Sarmatians* dwelling on the Borders of the *Baltick* Sea should cross all this Country, to join with the *Astuck Scythians*, so remote from them in a needless War, which those of this Trade might well do, as near Neighbours to themselves not of the same Nation or Extraction with them; nor is it probable that the Slaves would suffer their Masters to wait all the Country as far as the *Baltick* Sea, and to increase their strength by the Spoil thereof, before they met them in the Field to give them Battel.

Subject to the Estate herof are the *MORDWIT Tartars*, lying on the South, betwixt the *Volga* and the *Dona* at *Tanais*, where it becometh to return Westwards towards the *Euxine*. A people much of the same nature with the *Czeremissis*, but that they have some Villages and scattered Houses, which the other either want or else care not for. They are idolaters for the most part (and the rest *Mahometans*) carrying their Idols in their Carts wherever they go; worshipping that Beast all day which they first feed in the morning, and swearing by it for that day, as their chiefest Deity.

20. *WOROTINE*. 21. *TUVER*.
22. *WOLODOMIR*.

AND now again we are in *Europe*, where the Great Duke hath almost as many Titles as Towns with Territories. Four of them (besides some before) are either situate in the Province of *Moscow*, or else so intermingled with the Towns thereof, that they may easily be taken (or mistaken) for Members of it. The principal are, *WOROTINE*, seated on the West side of the River *Occa*, a distinct Dukedom of it self; so called from *Worotin* the chief City of it, built upon that River, about 3 Dutch miles from *Colliga* in the Province of *Razan* lying on the farther Bank thereof; beautified with a strong Castle, and a pleasant Soil. The 2. *Moscow*, the next Town of note, remarkable for the Head of the River *Occa*, which ariseth in the fields adjoining.

TUVER, or *OTUVER*, as some call it, is a large and goodly Country lying along the Banks of the River *Volga*; so populous, that it is said to contain 40000 *Bouars* or Gentlemen fit to serve on horseback, and double that number of the common or inferior sort. It gives the Title of a Duke to the *Russian* Emperour, and is so called from *Tuver* the chief Town thereof, and a Bishop's See; affirmed to be a fairer and more stately City than *Mosco* it self, from which it is distant 36 Dutch miles.

WOLO-

WOLODOMIR is one of the most fruitful Countries in all *Russia*, not paralleld by many Countries in the World; the Soil here (if all be true which is said of it) yielding such an Increase, that many times the Husbandman hath twenty, and sometimes twenty five, for one. It gives the Title of a Duke to the *Russian* Emperour, and hath precedence before *Moscow* in the Style Imperial. So called from *Wolodimir*, the chief City of it, and a Bishop's See, and that so named from the Founder, who probably was the same *Valadimir* (one of the first Kings of the *Russes*) who married *Helena* the Daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, Emperor of *Constantinople*. The City is situate 36 *Polonian* miles on the East of *Mosco*, anciently the chief Seat and Residence of the Great Duke, and so continued till the time of *John*, the Son of *Daniel*, who first translated it to *Mosco*, that from thence he might more easily confront and oppose the *Tartars*, with whose Irruptions and Invasions both he and his Predecessors had long been troubled. Under the Government herof is the City of *Snjdale*, of great esteem, and very well peopled as long as the Royal Seat remained at *Wolodimir*, betwixt which and *Mosco* it is seated. After it fell into decay, and being once destroyed by the *Tartars*, could never since recover its ancient Lustre; having now little to uphold its reputation but a Bishop's See.

23. *DWINA*.

DWINA, so called from the chief Town, is situate on the Confluence of two Rivers, *Tschud* and *Sachana*, whence it hath the name; *Dwine* in the Language of that Country, signifying two, as *twain* doth with us amongst Country-people. A Country of great extent, but exceeding barren, which makes the Villages herof to stand very thin, the Towns (considering the great compals of it) to be very few, and the Inhabitants for the most part to live upon dried Fish and the flesh of wild Beasts, which they have no want of. The chief Commodity is Salt, with which they use to furnish the neighbouring Provinces, and provide such Necessaries for themselves as they stand in need of. Chief Towns herof are, 1. *Dwine*, spoken of before, situate in the midst of the Province, on the meeting of the said two Rivers, which here united into one Stream take the name of *Dwine*, or *Dwina*, the greater; known by that name until its fall into the Northern Ocean in the Bay of *Gravovic*. 2. *Sagan*, so called of the River (one of the two which makes the *Dwine*) upon which it is seated. 3. *Colmagro*. 4. *Pinnegue*, two strong Castles.

Unto this Province (because I know not else how to dispose of them) I must reduce these four Towns following: that is to say, 1. *Ujing* a Bishop's See, situate on the Western side of the River, over against the Town of *Dwine*, and in a Country to fit furnished with Necessaries, that the people eat dried Fish instead of Bread, but have Salt enough to season it from those of *Dwine*. 2. *Cargopol*, a Bishop's See also, on the same side of the River that *Dwine* is of. 3. *S. Nicolas*, a well-known Port, and a Bishop's See; situate at the influx of *Dwine* into the Gulf of *Gravovic*, or the Bay of *S. Nicolas*, from hence denominated. A Town much traded since the discovery of the North-east passage by the *Englisb*, and the removal of theirs and the Dutch Traffick from *Novogrod* hither; from hence dispersed with more ease and speed into all the parts of this vast Empire. 4. *S. Michael*, on the Sea-side, commonly called *Archangel*, a Town of great Trade, by the *Englisb* especially, who have of late here fixed their Staple, to the great enriching of the place; by reason whereof the *Englisb* Merchants have not only great Privileges and Immunities (as the Authors of so great a be-

nefit unto this Estate) not granted to others, but the whole Nation have found better and more noble entertainment from them than any others have received. The cause of which was primarily the great opinion which their Emperours had of *Q. Elizabeth*, who held very good correspondence with them, continued ever since by mutual Embassies on both sides; and secondly, the conformable Behaviour of the *Englisb* themselves, so acceptable to those Barbarians (both Prince and People) that when *John Vasilvich* mailed the Hat of another foreign Embassador to his Head, for his too much perverseness, he used our Sir *Thomas Smith* with all kindreds imaginable. Another time, when the Jesuite *Possesine* began to persuade with him to approve of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; upon the information of the *Englisb* Embassador, that the Pope was a proud Prelate, and would make Princes kiss his feet, he grew into such a rage, that the Jesuite was afraid he would have beat out his Brains. But to return again to the Port of *S. Nicolas*; it is so called from an Abbey there built unto that Saint, the Tutelary Saint and local Patron of the Nation. Which said, I will see fail from this Port to the *Russian* Islands, and see what may be said of them to our present purpose.

24. The *RUSSIAN* Islands;

THE *RUSSIAN* Islands are but two, both of them in the Northern or Frozen Ocean, on the Coasts of this Country; that is to say, 1. Sir *Hugh Willoughbie's* Island, and *Nova Zemla*; both subject (if to any) to the *Knez*, or great Duke of *Moscow*.

1. *WILLOUGHBIES ISLAND* was so called from Sir *Hugh Willoughbie*, because he first discovered it, Anno 1553, and was heretobes found frozen to death the next year following. For being employed by the Merchants of *London* in the time of King *Edward* the sixth, to find out a new way to *Moscow*, *Cabate* and *China*; he proceeded so far as to this Island; (situate almost opposite to the Bay of *S. Nicolas*) where the Weather proved so extreme, and the Frosts so vehement, that his Ship was set fast in the Ice, and all his people with himself frozen to death, in which condition they were found the next year after, with an exact description of their Voyage and Fortunes. Notwithstanding which disastrous beginning, the Enterprize was pursued by some noble Adventurers, as *Jenkinson*, *Burroughs*, *Pet. Jackman*, and others of the *Englisb* Nation, who opened the way as far as to the River *Oib*, (the East Border of *Russia*), but by reason of the length of the way, the vast floating Islands of Ice, and perpetual Night for many months together in Winter, could advance no farther.

2. *NOVA ZEMLA*, situate on the East of *Willoughbie's* Island, opposite to *Finsloe* in *Candora* before mentioned, was first discovered by such Adventurers as followed *Willoughbie's* Design. Famous for nothing but a race of short-statured men, not above four foot high, a degree above the height of *Pigmies*; not yet so far discovered as to know any thing thereof, but by the relation of the *Russes*, who affirm the Inhabitants to have neither Religion, nor Civility, nor the Precepts of any Law; but that they worshipped the Sun, Moon, and Northern Star, to which they offer an yearly Sacrifice of their Deer; that the Island is woody, desert, and not easy for travel, having in it neither green Bough nor Grass, yet harbouring great force of Bears, and such voracious and dangerous Beasts. Found experimentally true by *William Barrenvelt* and his Associates, employed by the *Hollanders*

L i i

for

for this Diktovery, *Amo* 1994, and 1996, in which last year, after many dreadful Combats with huge flakes of Ice, they were forced to winter in this *Iland*, where they built an *Houfe*, as well to preserve themselves from being buried in *Snow*, as from being devoured by the Bears. (some of them 13 foot in length) which, with the loss of two of their company devoured by those savage creatures, they at last effected; some of them coming home in safety the *October* following. And though they seemed to give some hope that a way might be found *un* to *Cathai* on the North of this *Iland* (themselves having gone as far North as the 81. Degree of Latitude, within 9 of the Pole) yet it is generally conceived that the undertaking is unprofitable, the success impossible.

And so likewise, to return to the Story of *Russia*, called anciently by the name of *Sarmatia Europæa*, but known no farther Northwards than the Head of *Tanis*. And for *Sarmatia Europæa*, it was bounded in the time of *Ptolemy* by the *Baltick* Sea and some *Terra Incognita* on the North, the *Taraxes Metanasis* (now *Transylvania* and the *Upper Hungary*) upon the South, the River *Vistula*, or *Wesell*, which divided it from *Germany*, upon the West, and the *Tanis* upon the East. Beyond that, all along the Banks of the *Euxine* Sea to the *Mare Caspium*, and as far North as any Conqueror had gone, it was called *Sarmatia Asiatica*: the Countries farther Eastward being then called *Syberia*. By which account, as *Russia*, containeth not all *Sarmatia Europæa*, of which *Prussia* and the rest of the incorporate Provinces of *Poland* was for a part; so neither is it totally comprehended in it, extending beyond *Tanis* into *Asiatica*. The ancient Inhabitants, called by a general name *Sarmatae*, by the *Greeks* *Sarmatæ*, were subdivided, for so much of this part of it was then made known, into the *Agathyrsi*, *Rubeni*, *Pagiritæ*, dwelling in the North; the *Osis*, *Alanni*, *Roxolani*, &c. dwelling in the South. Amongst many other barbarous Nations, these were some of the principal. And from these *Roxolani*, as the principal of all the rest, *Matthias à Michon*, a learned *Polander*, doth derive the Original of the *Rosses*. (which we now call the *Russians*) descended herein by the more learned *Bohacrus*, who provehth out of ancient Authors, that the Inhabitants of *Taurica Cherfoneus* (from which the passage into this Country is both short and easie) have been formerly called *Rhos*, *Tauricus* or *Pòs* *gætiobus*, *Taurus vocari gentes Rhos*, as he saith from *Tetxez*. Which *Ros*, or *Rhos*, first mingling with the *Alani*, a *Sarmation* People, might get the name of *Roxolani*; and afterwards possiding the more Northern Countries, or mingling with the *Rossi*, of Mount *Taurus* (from whom those of *Taurica* descended) in their enterprizes on *Constantinople* and the parts adjoining, return to their old name of *Rossi*. The *Rossi*, or *Rossiani*, were then the first Lords of this Country generally, the *Moscovites* possessors of a Province only; so called from the *Moschi*, spoken of by *Lucian* in his *Pharsalia*, and placed by *Pliny* near the head of the River *Phasis*, which rising from the *Armenian* Mountains, falls into the *Euxine*. Derived no doubt from *Mosch*, (or *Moschas* as the Ancients called him) the Son of *Taphet*, placed originally in the North and North-east of *Syria*, on the Confines of *Calchis* and *Armenia*; where *Phry*, as before is said, hath fixed the *Moschi*, and where there is a long Chain of Hills, which most of the old Writers call *Montes Mosci*. But to return unto the *Rossi*, we hear not of them by this name till the time of *Michael* the third, Emperor of *Constantinople*; in whose Reign they infested the *Euxine* Sea, and had the boldness to attempt the Imperial City, *Ama 864*; said by *Cædrenus* and some other of the Eastern Writers to be a People of Mount *Taurus*:

(next neighbours to *Mosch* or the *Moschi*. Failing in their attempt upon *Constantinople*, and not willing to go home again, they spread themselves, with their Confederates and Associates in this Expedition, upon the North-west Banks of the *Euxine* Sea; enlarging their bounds Northwards with less opposition than they were likely to have done on the Southern parts: *Constantinople* being once again in vain attempted in the Reigns of *Constantine* the 7th and *Hermicus Auexep*. Converted to the Christian Faith, or growing into better terms with the Eastern Emperors, *Helen*, Daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, is married to *Valodimir* one of their Kings. From that time forwards they turned their Forces on the *Polanders* and their weaker neighbours; save that, provoked by the death of one of their Country, slain accidentally at *Constantinople* in a private Quarrel, they made another fruitless Journey against that City, in the time of *Michael Calaphates*. Enlarging their Estate to the West and South, they became Masters of a great part of *Sarmatia Europæa*, *Lithuania*, *Podolia*, *Russia Nigra*, and other Provinces, now subject to the Crown of *Poland*, being then parts of their Estate. Anno 1240 the *Tatars*, under the Conduct of *Batib*, or *Batay*, Son of *Occatan Chan*, broke in upon them and subdued them: the Country before this entire, under one sole King, being broken afterwards into divers petty and inferior Governments, according to the will and pleasure of the insolent Victors. The principal of these (descended from the former Kings) were Lords of *Tolodimir*, *Mosco*, and some other Cities; held by them with no other Title than that of Lords of *Moscow*, and for that Tributary to the *Tartars* as were all the rest. Their Seat was originally at *Tolodimir*, till the time that *Johan*, the Son of *Doulet*, the fifth Lord of the *Russies*, defended of the old Regal Line, taking a good liking of the River and Town of *Mosco*, repaired the Town, being before but mean and ordinary, and made it the chief Seat of his Principality. From whence the residue of the *Russies*, united in succeeding times unto this Estate by Marriages, Fraud and Conquest, had the name of *Moscovites*. But notwithstanding this increase of their power and Empire, the *Tatars* held them for their Inaffinity, and tyrannized upon the Country with a barbarous Violence. Under which Thralldom they long groaned, till the *Tartarians*, being divided amongst themselves, and grown less terrible to their Neighbours, were outed of their Power and Command here by the valour of *Johan*, son of *Basilus* the second, who thereupon changed the Title of Lord into that of Duke and after into that of Great Duke as his Fortune thrived. Yet not so great, but that he was contented to be an Homager of the *Tatars*: it being finally agreed on at the end of their Wars, that the *Tatars* should relinquish all their Holds in the Country; and on the other side, that once every year, within the Castle of *Mosco*, the Great Duke, standing on foot, should feed the Horle of the *Crim-Tartar* with Oats out of his own Cap. This Homage was by *Basilus* changed into a Tribute of Furs; which being also denied by his Successors, (as they grew in power) occasioned the long Wars betwixt the Nations; in which always pressing on thereby sudden Inroads, sometimes by Armies of no less than 200000 fighting men. But notwithstanding all their Power, and the Friendship of the *Turk* to boot, the *Moscovite* is not only able to assert his Sovereignty, but hath also wrested from them many good- ly Provinces.

As for the Princes of this Country, I shall not trouble myself (as I fee some do) in tracing a Succession of them as far as from the times of *Augustus Caesar*; when neither the *Raffi* nor the *Moschi* had here any footing. We will therefore go no higher than the time of *George*, whose Daughter *Anne* I find to have been married

married to *Henry* the first of *France*. From whom in a direct Line descended another *George*, with whom we do intend to begin our Catalogue, as being the last King of the *Russ* before the coming of the *Tartars*. He, willingly yielding to the Storm, waded the Title of King continued only with the Title of Lord, as more safe for him, and less invidious to the *Tartars*. The fifth from whom, called *Iohn*, (as before is said) having removed his Seat to *Mosco*, took to himself the Title of Lord of *Mosco*, the chief seat of that Power and Sovereignty, which he transmitted afterwards to his Posterity; affecting for that cause the Title of Duke of *Moscow* (though all the conquered Towns and Territories have their place also in his Style) as much as that of Emperor of *Russia*; which some of them have: as thus all since the time of *Basilius*, who styled himself *Basilius*, by the Grace of God, Emperor and Lord of *Russia*, Great Duke of *Volodimir*, *Moscow*, *Novogrod* the great, *Pleskov*, *Smolensk*, *Tver*, *Jugra*, *Viathka*, *Bulgar*, &c. Lord and Great Prince of the lower *Novogrod*, *Cernigov*, *Rozan*, *Volodga*, *Plov*, *Biele*, *Rosl*, *Jurjandla*, *Poltovsk*, *Bielozersk*, *Adore*, *Obdora*, *Condora*, &c. King of *Caslar* and *Astracan*. But leaving them to their swelling and voluminous Title, (little inferior unto that of the Kings of *Spain*) let us next look on the Succession from the time afore said of

The Lords of *MO SCOVIE* of the old
Royal *R U S S I A N* Line

A.Ch.

1. *George*, the last King, of the *Russes*, and first Lord of the *Russes* of the Royal Line.
2. *Jacques*.
3. *Alexander*.
4. *Daniel*.
5. *John*, who transferred the Seat to *Mosco*.
6. *John II*.
7. *Basilus*.
8. *Demetrius*.
9. *Georgius II*.
10. *Basilus II*.

The Great Dukes of *MOSCOWIE*.

1. *John*, the first Great Duke, who shook off the *Tartarian* Bondage.
2. *Basilius Cæsar*, won the Provinces of *Severia*, *Rosovia*, and *Smolensk*, with the Realms of *African* and *Cafan*.
3. *John Basilus*, conquered *Livonia* and *Lithuania*. Both which his Successor.
- 1548 4. *John Basilides*, or *Wassilius*, lost in his age; though in his youth he had subdued the *Moychacian* *Tatars* to his Empire, and vanquished *Selim* Emperour of the *Turks*, Anno 1569. With this King the *English* first began to confederate.
- 1583 5. *Thorowst Johannisides*, the last of the old Royal Line of *Moscowie*.
- 1591 6. *Kaïs Theodoris*, Brother to the Wife of the last Great Duke, partly by the last Will of his Predecessor, partly by practising with the people, obtained the Empire, but being an unmerciful Tyrant, was dispossessed by the *Polanders* coming in favour of one
- 1605 7. *Demetrius*, pretending himself to be the Son of *John Wassilius*, (and generally believed to be so) preferred in a Monastery from the

Tyranny of *Bohis*, in hatred of whom he was brought in by the *Polander*; by whose aid he overcame the Tyrant, and rooted out his Family, and was with great joy crowned Emperor in the City of *Mosco*. But the *Russian* Lords declining to have a Prince imposed on them from *Poland*, rose in Arms against him, and at last vanquished and slew him in open Field: his Wife, a noble *Polonian* Lady, being sent poorly home, and the *Polander's* beaten out of the Country.

- 1606 8. *Baſti Tuſſanwicz*, firnamed *Snizkius*, the chief of the Conſpirators, was by the reſt of his Faction choſen *Knez*, or Emperour; and held the State with great Trouble till the year 1610, when
- 1610 9. *Demetrius II.* another pretender to the State as the ſon of *Iohn Waſilwicz* alſo, in oppoſition unto *Snizkius*, ſet up by a ſtronger Faction, gave occaſion to the *Poles* to work upon this diſtemper, by whom *Snizkius* was taken Priſoner, *Demetrius* ſlain, *Smolens* and other great Towns ſubdued, and *Vladislaus*, Prince of Poland, recommended to the *Ruſſians* to be choſen Emperour. But the *Ruſſes*, loth to fall under the power of the *Poles*; and weary of their own Conſuſions, made choice at laſt of
- 1613 10. *Michael Fedorowicz*, Son of *Theodore* the Patriarch of *Moſco*, who at laſt ſetled this vaſt Empire, and managed it in a more conſtant way of Peace with the *Turks*, *Tartar* *Poloniſh*, and *Sweediſh*, than any of his Predeceſſors had done before him.
- 1646 11. *Alexius Michaelwicz* (or the Son of *Michael*) ſucceeded his Father in the Empire; troubled at firſt with ſome Diſtempers in that State, (as in all other Countries about that time) but now quietly ſetled, Anno 1643.

The Formalities with which these great Emperors are invested or fettered in the Throne are not many nor stately, such as they be; he that desires you out of the History of the Life of *Yohannes Baptista*, written in *Latine* by *Karlus Oederbomus*. On the 2. of *June*, Anno 1533, *Theodo* *Yohannes* went towards the Temple of *S. Michael*, being the principal Church in *Mofco*; the Streets all covered with Flowers, the Doors of the Citizens crowned with Garlands, the Air echoing with the noise of Flutes and Trumpets, and the people flocking to behold their Prince, that had not the *Gaue* with naked Swords forced a passage through them, it had been impossible for him to have gone on. Being now come to the Church-door, the Lords of the Country (*Kozes* they there call them) went out to meet him; the Archbishop of *Mofco*, clad in his *Pontificalibus*, when he came into the Church, unbared him. The Pavement of the Church was hidden with Tapestry, and the Stalls adorned with costly Hangings. The Great Duke fate down in his Throne, being attired in a garment of Silke, buttoned down with Golden Buttons: on his Head he wore a Purple Cap spangled with rich Jewels, and on his Fingers abundance of Rings. Being thus feared, the Patriarch made a Prayer to God to bless him, his People, and his Government: which was seconded by the joyful Shouts and Acclamations of his Subjects; amongst whom no small force of Silver-money was flung by the Treasurer, and so they returned to the Palace.

The Government of this Country is meerly Tyrannical, the Emperour being absolute Lord of the Lives, Lands

and Goods of all his Subjects : all of them, the noble as well as the base, subscribing themselves in their Petitions to him by the name of *Kelovity*, that is, Slaves. Whereupon *Maibom*, a Turkish *Bashaw*, was used to say, that his Master and the *Muscovites* were the two most absolute Princes in all the World. First for their Goods ; when any Embassador returns home, the Great Duke takes any Embassadors which he hath received, giving from him all the Presents which he hath received, giving him perhaps some small Reward, perhaps none at all : and as for Lands, they pass not from Father to Son, but as he confirms it. But more particularly, (besides the case of *Permia* spoken of before) *Tohn Vasilvich* sent a Command to *Mosco*, to provide a Coal-pack of live Fleas for a Medicine : and when the Citizens returned answer that it was impossible, he fined them at 700 Rubbles for their Disobedience. Another time he laid a Multitude of 300000 Rubbles upon his Nobility, because he had no good Sport in his Hunting : which they again extorted from the common people ; and under colour of want, commanded from some Bishops and Monasteries the sum of 100000 Rubbles, from some 50000, more or less from others, according to their Revenues. And it is usual with the best of them to cause the *Boiars* (or Gentlemen which serve on horse-back) to pretend themselves robbed, that he may send unto the City to find out the Felon, and, on a *Non est invenius*, fine them at discretion, sometimes 8000, sometimes 10000, and sometimes 20000 Rubbles. Then for their Lives, there is a Story, that *Vasilvich* having found that one of his Secretaries had received a Goose stuffed full of Silver for a Bribe, caused him to be brought into the Market-place of *Mosco*, where without any legal Trial, he commanded the Executioner first to cut off his Legs about the Shins, and then his Arms about the Elbows, (fill asking the miserable man how he liked Goose-flesh) and in the end to cut off his Head ; in similitude of a Goose ready for the Spit. And that they may the better preserve this Power, the Great Dukes sell themselves unto the people but in Apparel of ineffable value, joyning the Ornaments of a Bishop unto the Majesty of a King, by wearing a Mitre on their Heads shining with Diamonds and rich Stones : and when they wear it not on their Heads, they place it before the Chair of State, (over which are the Images of *Christ* and the Blessed Virgin) holding in their hands a most rich and all their Fingers full of Rings. And Crozier-Staff, and all their Entertainments the great upon solemn Festivals with Cupboards of Plate of infinite value, and filled with men clothed with Cloth of Gold to the very foot : all of them seeming to be men of the chief Nobility, but many times being no other than the gravest and portliest Citizens of *Mosco*, richly apparelled for the time out of the Emperor's Wardrobe ; which to such as do not understand the Fraud, look like so many Princes, and cause no small wonder at his Magnificence. So that the people seeing him in such Royal state, and knowing no more than what they are taught at home, reverence him as Slaves, not Subjects, and look upon him rather as a God than a King.

Having to absolute a Command on their Lives and Goods, it will be easily supposed that he may raise what Forces and amass what Treasures he hath a mind to. First,

for his Forces, it is said that he is able to raise 300000 Horse, if more than be : and that he may come near that number it is more than probable, in that *Tohn Vasilvich*, in his War against those of *Afracan*, had actually 120000 Horse ; and that a great part of the Country is in the hands of the *Boiars*, bound by their Tenure to serve with Horse whenever he please ; and by him enfeoffed with Lands, sent by the Emperor, and by those of these Lands are to find (during pleasure only) who for these Lands are to find 65000 Horse with all things necessary for the Wars, and those in a continual readiness fit for present Action. Then for such Horse as he himself doth keep in continual pay, there are no fewer than 25000 which attend him as a Guard to his person, all of them well-experienced men and fit for Service : which added to the 65000 spoken of before, make up a standing Body of 90000. Had he Foot enfeoffable unto this proportion of Horse, there were no dealing with him ; but therein his *Militia* is defective : *Vasilvich* to his great Army of 120000 Horse having but 20000 Foot ; the Foot-men which he hath in continual pay amounting to 12000 only, far short of such a standing Body of Horse as before we spoke of. And this defect hath been the reason why the *Polanders* with far less Armies have prevailed against them : the Great Duke not being able with all his power to hinder King *Stephen of Poland* from taking *Vilocolne*, or besieging *Pleskow* (though his Army was not above 60000 in both Horse and Foot) for want of standing Bands of Foot to make good his ground. Generally both Horse and Foot are very obedient to their Captains and Superior Officers : patiently enduring all Discomforts of Cold, Rain, and Hunger ; (in that regard fitter to keep a Fortress than serve in Field) and so regardless of their Lives in the day of Battle, that they will rather lose them than either yield themselves Prisoners or demand Quarter.

For his Revenues, they may be what he will himself, considering (besides his extraordinary power of oppressing his Subjects before mentioned) the many ordinary ways he hath of amassing Treasure : viz. the Forfeiting of home-bred Commodities, and ingrossing the foreign ; selling them at what price he list, and hindering all men else from Trade till his own be sold ; provision of Rent-corn and Victual, raised in some years to 200000 Rubbles, Rent-wood and Hay to 300000, Poll-money to 400000, Customs on Merchandise to 800000. By which and other means of collecting Monies, and the Domain of his Crown, though he raise vast Sums : yet it is thought that, his Household-charges being deducted, there remain not towards all other Expences three millions of Rubbles ; every Rubble being as much as an English Mark.

The Arms are *Sable*, a Portal open of two Leaves and as many Degrees Or.

There are in RUSSIA

Patriarch 1. Archbishops 2.

Bishops 18.

And so much for RUSSIA.

OF POLAND.

POLAND is bounded on the East with *Russia* and the *Crim-Tartar*, from whom it is parted by the River *Borysbene* ; on the West with *Germany*, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea and some part of *Russia*, on the South with the *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Hungary*, *Transylvania* and *Moldavia*.

It is an aggregate Body, consisting of many distinct Provinces united into one Estate, of which *Poland*, being the predominant, hath given name to the rest, called altogether the Realm of *Poland* : and that so named from *Pole*, which in the *Slavonian* Language (the common Language of the Country) signifies plain ; because it is but little swelled with Hills. It is of Figure round, in compass 2600 miles, situate under the eighth and twelfth Climates ; so that the longest Day in the Southern part is but 16 hours, and about 18 hours in the parts most North.

This Country is plain, but full of Woods, which serve to rectify the Air, being naturally so cold that they have neither Wine nor Grapes ; instead whereof they use that kind of Drink called Ale, in former times the usual Beverage of *England* and this Country only. Barley they have, and Pulse in such abundant measure, that no small quantities of each are transported yearly : nor yield they any thing at all to *Denmark* or *Hungary* for their plenty of Cattel. But of this more in our description of the several Provinces.

The People are very industrious, and studious of all Languages, especially of the *Latine* ; to which they are so devoted, that there is scarce a mean man who is not able in some measure to express himself in it. According to their abilities they are rather prodigal than truly liberal ; and good Souldiers generally. The Peasants live in miserable Servitude unto their Lords ; the Lords in such Equality of estate amongst themselves that none of them (excepting the greater Princes) exceedeth 25000 Ducats of yearly Rent. Proud in their Garb, costly in their Apparel, impatient in their Humours, and delicate in Diet. These last Conditions are common to the Women also, who are for the most part indifferently fair, and rather witty than well spoken. But this, being the peculiar Character of the *Polander* properly so called, is not perhaps communicable to the People of the rest of the Provinces, whom we shall speak of severally in their proper places.

The Christian Faith was first planted in this Kingdom at several times and by several persons, according to the different parts of which it consisteth : in *Poland* specially so called in the time of their Prince *Mieslav*, Son of *Nemomysslav*, Anno 963 ; in *Livonia*, by the Preaching of one *Meinardus*, Anno 1200, or thereabouts, in *Lithuania*, not until the year 1386, at the admission of *Yagello* to the Crown of *Poland*, and then done (as some say) by *Thomas of Walden* (or *Waldensis*) an English Friar ; in *Samogitia* and *Vithinia*, at the same time with *Lithuania* ; in the rest at other times and on other occasions : yet so that in many places of it Idolatry was never totally rooted out, the seeds and practice

whereof in many Points still remain amongst them. Corrupted by the Superstitions of the Church of *Rome*, a Reformation was endeavoured at such a time as *Tohn Hus* flourished in *Bohemia*, the next neighbouring Kingdom : but by the rigour of *Vladislaus* the sixth, then King thereof, assisted by his Bishops and Noblemen, it was at that time hindered. Afterwards in the time of *Luther*, some who had studied at *Leipsick*, and *Wittenberg* (Universities of *Saxony*) brought his Opinions home with them into the Province of *Poland* ; as some Dutch Merchants (with the rest of their Commodities) did into *Danzick*, the chief Town of *Pomerellia*, Anno 1525 : from whence it spread it self over most part of that Country. According as it was favoured or disliked by the *Palatines*, *Chastellans* and other great men of the Realm, so was its entertainment either good or bad : the *Gracians* in the mean time taking opportunity to win some parts of it to their side, and confirm others in it, who, being originally Members of the Church of *Greece*, because originally converted by the Bishops thereof, did still continue in Conformity and Obedience to it. In the end, by reason of the over-great Liberty of the Nobility and People, and want of Power in the King to controule their doings, every man took up what Religion he best liked ; some following the *Augustine* Confession, others the *Helvetian*, others adhering as tenaciously to the Church of *Rome* ; and some inclining to new Sects, or rather to old Heresies under new Disguises, have brought in such a Miscellaneity of *Babel* of Religions into this Estate, (*Jesuites*, *Lutherans*, *Calvinists*, *Socinians*, *Arrians*, *Anabaptists*, and indeed what not ? being here all tolerated) that at last it grew into a by-word, that *If any man had lost his Religion, he might find it in Poland, or else believe it to be vanished*. A by-word afterwards applied unto *Amsterdam*, communicable since unto other places, *Libertas Proprietatis*, or the Liberty of Propriety, being now as much allowed of in some parts of Christendom, as *Libertas opinandi* was in *Rome* under *Nero's* Government, *ubi & sentire quae velis, & quae sentias loqui liceat*, when as a man might think as he listed of the publick, and speak what he thought. But whether this be such a *variety temporum Felicis*, such a Felicity of these our Times, as *Tacitus* conceived the time to be of those, future times will shew.

But to return again to *Poland* : notwithstanding this mixture of Religions, yet that most publicly allowed and countenanced is the Religion authorized by the Church of *Rome*, asserted here by the Zeal of the Kings unto that Cause, and the great Power of the Bishop's, who seeing how those of their Order have sped in *Germany* and other places, under colour of Reformation of some things amiss, have hitherto upheld the Ecclesiastical Estate in the same form they found it. The Government of the Church is as formerly by 3 Archbishops and 19 Bishops, who challenge a Jurisdiction over all the Kingdom, but exercise it upon those only who submit unto them : those who embrace the Doctrines of *Luther* or *Calvin* following the Forms of Government by them established ; as others do some new ones of their own devising. And for those Provinces and people which lie towards *Greece*,

or were parts heretofore of the *Russian Empire*, and still hold a Communion with those Churches, they have Archbishops and Bishops of their own Religion; that is to say, the Archbishops of *Vilna* and *Lemberg*, the Bishops of *Polozco*, *Lutsk*, *Pinsk*, *Palodimir*, *Presnisl*, and *Kiovla*. Yet amongst all these different Churches and forms of Government there is this Conformity, that whenever the Gospel is read openly in the Congregation, the Nobility and Gentry use to draw their Swords, (according to an ancient Custom which they had among them) signifying their readiness to defend in against all Opposers. Which reason doubtless gave beginning to the standing up at the Creed and Gospel in the Primitive times, retained still in the Church of *England*, whereby we do declare how prepared and resolute we are to defend the same: though some of late, holding it for a Relique of Popery, with greater nicety than wisdom, have refused to do it.

Principal Commanders of this Country in the Art of War were, 1. *Casimir* the third, the great Establisher of this Kingdom after long Difficulties. 2. *Tagello*, or *Vladislav* the first; who first brought down the Pride of the Dutch Knights in a famous Victory. 3. *Casimir* the 4. the fortunate Conqueror of the *Knights of Prussia*, brought by him under the Command of the Kings of *Poland*. 4. *Sigismund* the first, by whose Valour and good fortune the *Dutch Prussians* were totally suppressed, and the greatest part of *Prussia* for ever added to that Crown. 5. *Sigismund* the second, surnamed *Augustus*, fortunate in his Wars against most of them of *Livonia*, by him united to this Kingdom, Of most special note for learning, *Hesius* a Divine of the *Papal Party*, whose great Abilities advanced him to the fate of a Cardinal. 2. *Crollius*, and 3. *Volkelius*, of the contrary Party in Religion, men of great parts, but Heterodox and unfound Opinions. 4. *Cromerus*, the Historian. 5. *Keckerman*, the Professor at *Danzik* or *Dantzick*; a man of universal Studies, but of greater industry than exactness.

Chief Rivers of this Kingdom are, 1. *Vistula* or the *Weyssel*, the ancient Boundary betwixt *Germany* and *Sarmatia Europaea*; which, rising in the *Carpathian Mountains* passeth by *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Poland*, and dividing *Prussia* from *Pomerellia*, falleth into the *Baltick Sea*, not far from *Dantzick* and is navigable for the space of 400 miles, of old called *Vaudisla*. 2. *Warta*, which runneth through the lesser *Poland*. 3. *Dniester*, the *Iss*, watering *Livonia*; and 4. *Doroshenes*, or the *Nieper*, passing through *Podolia*: both spoken of before, when we were in *Russia*. 5. *Nieper*, by *Ptolemy* called *Tyras*, which falleth into the *Exzine Sea*, having first parted *Podolia* from *Moldavia*. 6. *Jugra*, by some called the lesser *Tanais*, arising in *Lithuania*, and falling into the more noted *Tanais* which is now called *Dan*. Of less note there are, 1. *Reubeh*, or *Reubon*. 2. *Chironus*, now called *Pregel*. 3. *Boz*; said by some to be the *Hypanis* of the Ancients. 4. *Ademel*. 5. *Niemem*, the *Alderander* of the Northern parts. 6. *Windaw*, a *Lithonian* River falling into the *Baltick*. Mountains of note here are not many; the Countries for the most part being plain and champaign, and those which be are rather Boundaries betwixt this and some other Kingdom, than proper unto this alone. the chief of which are those called *Sarmatici* dividing *Germany* from *Sarmatia Europaea*; by *Solius* named *Sewo*, by *Ptolemy* the *Carpathian Mountains*; the Boundary at this time betwixt *Poland* and *Hungary*, of which more anon.

The common Mires and Landmarks being thus laid down, we will next take a view of those several Provinces of which this Kingdom doth consist, being eleven in number; that is to say, 1. *Livonia*, 2. *Samogitia*, 3. *Lithuania*, 4. *Poltinia*, 5. *Podolia*, 6. *Russia nigra*,

7. *Mosovia*, 8. *Podlussia*, 9. *Prussia*, 10. *Pomerellia*; and 11. *Poland* specially so called: all of them (except the proper *Poland*) within *Sarmatia Europaea*.

I. LIVONIA.

LIVONIA, or *LIEFLAND*, is bounded on the East with the Empire of *Russia*, on the West with the *Baltick Sea*, on the North with the Gulf or Bay of *Finland*, on the South with *Samogitia* and *Lithuania*; extended in length along the Shore of the *Baltick* for the space of 125 *Dutch*, or 500 *Italian* miles, and 40 *Dutch*, or 160 *Italian* miles in breadth: and called thus perhaps from the *Levoni*, a people of *Germany*, inhabiting not far from the River *Vistula*.

The Country is for the most part plain, without any Mountains; furnished with Corn and Fruits in so great abundance, that they send part thereof into other Countries: and yet there is much Ground untillied in it, by reason of the Bogs and Marshes, which are very frequent. Here is also store of Wax, Honey and Pitch, but they have neither Oyl nor Vine: the want of which last is supplied by Meech. Of tame Beasts fit for man's service they are well provided; as also such whose Skins are of more value with the Merchants than their Flesh at the Market; as *Ermins*, *Sables*, *Castors*, and others of that kind, besides good store of Game for Hunting, the Country having in it many large *VVoods*, parts of the *Herzoyan*. And as for the Rivers, there are few Countries which have more; it being watered by the *Windaw*, the *Beck*, the *Divine*, the *Reubon*, all of them falling into the *Baltick*; many great Lakes, whereof the chief is that of *Bybays*, 45 miles long, and full of Fish.

The people are much given to Gluttony and Drunkenness, especially in rich mens houses, where it is to be had: for the Peasants live in want, though meer Slaves to their Tyrannical Landlords, who spend in Riot and excess what they get by Drudgery: and when at any time the poor *VVretch* leaves his Landlord to mend his condition with some other, the Lord if he can overtake him, will cut his Foot, to make him sure for the future. They are mixture of many Nations: as the *Esfones*, which are the natural Inhabitants; (derived from the *Esfis*, a *Dutch* people, spoken of by *Ptolemy*) of which Nation are almost all the Peasants; the *Moscovites*, *Swedes*, *Danes*, *Dutch* and *Polanders*, intermingled with them, coming in upon several Conquests, and planting themselves in the best parts of it, in which they still Lord it over the Native, but the *Dutch* especially, for long time Masters of the whole.

The Christian Faith was first here planted by *Meinardus* of *Lubeck*, employed herein in the time of *Frederick* the first; at the persuasion of some *Dutch Merchants* who traded hither, by the Archbishop of *Breme*, by whom he was made the first Bishop of the *Livonians*. The Church hereof at this time is governed by the Archbishop of *Riga*, the Bishops of *Dirpt*, *Alfisa*, *Ofel*, *Carland*, and *Rivallia*, in those parts which remain subject to the *Polander*, the Religion of the Church of *Rome* is only countenanced. Such part of it as encroaches the *Swedes* or *Danes* are for the most part of the *Lutheran* Profession, planted with Colonies of that People. But the *Esfones*, or original Inhabitants, as they have a Language, so they have a Religion by themselves also, mixt of the Christian and the Pagan. Extremely well affected unto their Priests, to whom they present Saff; Candles and Fruits, when they come to them for their Blessings; great lovers of Confession, eatmeers of Holy water, and diligent frequenters of their Churches; but so extremely ignorant in all Points of Religion, that there is hardly one in a Village that can say

his *Pater Noster*. When they bury any of their dead every one drinketh an Health to him, and powreth his part upon him, when his turn comes to drink; putting into the Grave with him an Hatchet, Wine, Meat, and a little Money for his Voyage. And in some places they are wholly idolatrous, (if not converted very lately by the care of the *Jesuites*) some of them worshipping the Sun, others Stocks and Stones, and some Serpents also. The Language of the Country is for the most part the *High Dutch*, being the Language of those Nations who first Lored over them; the *Esfones* having generally a peculiar Language, which none of the others understand.

It was divided formerly into the Provinces of *Carland*, *Efland*, *Semigall*, *Virland*, *Harland*, and *Lettenland*; but these six, since the Conquest of it by the *Polanders*, are reduced to three, *Harland* and *Virland* being united unto *Efland*, and *Semigallia* unto *Carland*.

Chief places in *Efland* are, 1. *Rivallia*, or *Revel*, a Bishop's See, and a well traded Port, situate on the Gulf of *Finland*; a Town belonging to the *Swedes*, the keeping whereof, and of *Wiborg* on the Borders of *Moscovy*, stand him yearly in 100000 Dollars. 2. *Habsley*, or *Habsfel*, (*Alfia* in *Latine*) is a Bishop's See; and 3. *Pernaw*, a well-fortified place, belonging to the *Swedish* side, ever since the Conquest of these parts of the Country by *John* the second. Places of great importance to the Crown of *Sweden*, as also other peices of this nature are, which, standing in an Enemies Country, not only do defend our own, but offend our Adversaries. For they are not only Doors, to open a farther passage into their Territories, whenever we shall see occasion; but whilst the Enemy is besieging thereof, or otherwise bulked in recovering them into his power, our own State is preferred in quiet, and time may yield fit opportunity to relieve them if they be distressed, without waiting of any part of our proper Countries. Of which nature was *Calais* when it was in the hands of the *English*; the Garrisons which the *Spaniards* and *Portuguezes* have in *Africk* and *India*: the Charge of keeping them being sufficiently defrayed (if the charge prove greater than the income, as sometimes it doth) by the advantages they give unto him which hath them. 4. *Velin*, a strong Town, fortified with an impregnable Cattle, betrayed by the *Dutch* Garrison at that time in it, together with *William* of *Eustenburg*, the Great Master into the hands of *John Basilius* the Great Duke of *Moscovy*, who fill holds it. 5. *Derps*, or *Derbern*, (in *Latine* *Tupanum*) a Bishop's See, situate on the *Beck*, or *Embeck*, betwixt two Lakes, in the midst of the Province, and taken at the same time by the *Moscovites*, who, transporting the *Livonians* into other places, planted these parts with Colonies of his own people. 6. *Tervelf*, a Cattle of great strength, taken then also by the *Russies*, but being recovered by the *Polander*, was blown up with Gunpowder, that it might no more come into the hand of the Enemy. Hitherto nothing of this Country which belongs to the *Polanders*; these that follow do: that is to say, 7. *Borchholm*, the Seat and residence of the Bishop of *Rivallia*, since the taking of that Town by the *Swedes*. 8. *Wesenberg*, incommoediously faced betwixt two neighbours, *Narva* and *Rivallia*; but serving very well to prohibit the Incursions of those Garrisons farther into the Country. 9. *Wernbeck*, in that part of *Efland*, which is called *Odapp*; and 10. *Wesselsien*, in that part thereof which is named *Pervia*.

In *LETTE N L A N D*, lying in the midst betwixt *Efland*, and *Carland*, the places of most note are, 1. *Riga*, (the people call it *Rig*) seated on the Mouth of the River *Divina*, falling there into the *Baltick* first built & planted at the charges of the Merchants of *Breme*; after that the Archbishop's See, the ordinary Residence of the Great

Master, and the chief City of the whole Province of *Livonia*. A Town well fortified, according to the modern Rules of fortification, with a strong Wall, large Barlarks, double Ditches, Palisadoes, and well provided, of all manner of Ammunition: a famous Empory, of great resort for foreign Merchants, who carry hence, Pitch, Wax, Hemp, Flax, and such other Commodities. They are governed (notwithstanding their Subjection to the King of *Poland*) by their own Laws, and such stout defenders of their Liberties, that they will by no means admit of any Foreigner to have Command of the City, obedient in all other things to the will of that King. 2. *Dummbud*, an impregnable Fortrefs, two *Dutch* miles from *Riga*, well garrisoned by the *Polanders*, who here take Toll of all foreign Merchants. 3. *Blacks*, a Garrison of the King's betwixt *Riga* and *Dummbud*, where the Merchants are tolled over again. 4. *Wenden*, more within the Land, on the River *Freider*. 5. *Wolmar*, upon the same River. 6. *Kakenhauze*, a strong Town on the Banks of the *Divina*. This Country belongs wholly to the King of *Poland*, and stood firm for him in the *VVar* made by *Charles* Duke of *Sunderman* against his Nephew *Sigismund* King of *Poland* and *Sweden*, when almost all *Efland* had submitted to him.

CORLAND, the third and last member of this Division, containing *Semigall* also, lieth South of *Lettenland*, and North of *Samogitia* and *Lithuania*: an entire Dukedom of it self, but hidden under the Sovereignty and Homage of the Kings of *Poland*. Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Cosdow*, 2. *Goldingen*, 3. *Kias*, (the *Dutch* call it *Windaw*) the Seat of the Great Master of the *Tennick* Order in time past; now most frequented as the place of parliament or general Assembly for Affairs which concern the publick. 4. *Dabins*, 5. *Grubbin*, on the Sea-side but of no Trade at all. 6. *Hafesport*. And then in *Semigall*, 7. *Mitaw*, the Court and Residence of the Dukes of *Carland*. 8. *Selwerg*, 9. *Bejfinborg*, 10. *Doletus*. There is no Town in all this Dukedom in any Trading, though lying for a great space all along the *Baltick*; because none of them are furnished with commodious Havens. A Dukedom first begun in the person of *Guthardus Keler*, of one of the noble Families of *Denmark*; the last Great Master of the *Dutch* Knights in this Country, who in the year 1562 surrendering his Order, and the whole possession of *Livonia* to *Sigismund Augustus* K. of *Poland*, received back again for him, and his Heirs for ever the Dukedom of *Carland* and *Semigall*, to be held by them of that Crown; the Nobility of these Countries doing then presently their Homage and Allegiance to him as their Hereditary Prince. Since which time the Princes of this House have continued Feudataries unto *Poland*, but not reckoned as parts or members of the Body thereof; not coming to the Diets, nor liable to the publick Charges, nor having any thing to do in the King's Election: in a word, rather honourable Neighbours of the King's of *Poland*, than Subjects to them. The present Duke is like to be much increased in Estate and Power, if the now Marquis of *Brandenburg* (whose Sister is his Mother) should depart without Issue. For by that means there will be added to this House the great Dukedom of *Prussia*, those of *Cleve* and *Gulick*, together with such other Countries possessed now by that Marquis as he holds by descent from the Heirs-general of those Dukedoms: which makes him cast an eye already upon those Estates.

There belong also to *Livonia* some few Islands situate in the *Baltick* Sea; that is to say, 1. *Offisa*, 2. *Dachden*, 3. *Mona*, 4. *Wormfe*, 5. *Wangen*, and 6. *Keyn*. Of which the four last do belong to the King of *Poland*, *Dachden* to the King of *Swedish*, and *Offisa*, or *Ofel*, to the *Danet*. This last is the chief of all the fix,

distant from the main Land of *Livonia* 12 *Duch* miles; 14 of the same miles in length, half as much in breadth: the chief Towns herof being 1. *Ostia*, a Bishop's See, which gives name to the Island. 2. *Sonneburg*. The Island was made subject to the *Dane* by *Magnus*, Brother of *Frederick*, the second King of *Denmark*; who, being chosen Admirator of the Bishoprick of *Derpt* in *Estland*, made himself Master of this Island and some other pieces, which, dying without issue, he bequeathed to the King his Brother, *Anno* 1580.

As for *Livonia* it self, it was first under the *Levoni* and *Estii*, two German Nations, from whom the Country had the name of *Livonia*, the People of *Estlanders* or *Estones*. Distracted into his many petit Principalities, it was made acquainted with the Christian Faith by the care of the Merchants of *Bremen*, as before was said. *Meinard* their first Bishop being dead, and *Reinhold* his Successor slain by such of the people as had not yet received the Gospel; the Knights of the Port-Juive, or the Sword, were sent hither, to defend the Preachers and the Doctrine by the force of Arms. Finding themselves too weak to effect the business, they united with the Order of *Dutch* Knights in *Prussias* to whom from that time forwards they became subordinate; the great Master of *Livonia* acknowledging him for *Prussia* for his Superiour. These Knights continued Masters of it without contradiction till the year 1557, (embracing in the mean time the Opinions of *Luther*, *Anno* 1528) then quarrelling with the Archbishop of *Riga*, of the House of *Brandenburg*; because he would not adhere unto their Opinions; who, to secure his own Estate was forced to put *Riga* into the hands of the *Polanders*. Afterward being overlaid by the *Moscovite*, who had taken from them almost all their Country, they were fain to put themselves under the Protection of *Sigismund-Augustus* King of *Poland*, *Anno* 1559. But *William* of *Fursenberg*, the great Master being betrayed by his own Mercenaries into the hands of the *Moscovite*, *Gothardus* his Successor (following the example of *Albert* the great Master of *Prussia*) transacted with the said *Sigismund* for the whole Estate, which he surrendered to his use in the Castle of *Riga*, *March* 5, 1562, together with his Cross, the Seal of the Order, the Charters and Grants of many of the Popes and Emperours which concerned the same, as also the Keys of the City and Castle of *Riga*, the Office of great Master, the Rights of Coinage, and all the Powers and Privileges appertaining to it: receiving back again from *Ratzevili*, the King's Commissioner, the Dukedom of *Curland* to him and his Heirs for ever, as before is said. By this Transaction the Kings of *Pole* became Masters of *Livland*, and were more absolutely settled in it after a long War betwixt *Stephen* King of *Poland* and *John Wasilwick* the great Duke of *Moscovie*, who in the end surrendered all his Claim therein to the said *Stephen* and his Successors, *Anno* 1582, reserving only some few Towns on the Eastern Borders: the *Dane* and *Swehlanders* taking occasion by their Troubles to impatronize themselves of *Narva*, *Rovalia*, *Osel*, and some other pieces.

2. SAMOGITIA.

SAMOGITIA is a small Province wedged in betwixt *Livonia* and *Lithuania*, having *Livonia* on the North, *Lithuania* on the East and South, and the *Baltick* Sea upon the West: in length extending 50 miles from East to West, but not of an answerable breadth. It is so called from the lowliness of the situation, (the word *Samogitis* in the Language of the Inhabitants signifying *terram inferiorem*, or the Low-lands) by the *Moscovite* in

fame sense called *Samozkafelma*. This lowness of situation makes it very watery, and almost continually frozen: but withal it hath many Forests, which yield unto the people abundance of Honey, better, more pleasing to the taste, and less mixt with Wax, than in other places.

The people are supposed to be of the *Saxon* Race, of a good Stature, well set, bold, and apt for War; but withal boisterous, rude and barbarous: Christians in general, but many of them do still retain their old Idolatries; nourishing amongst them a kind of four-footed Serpents, about three handfulls in length, which they worship as their Household-gods, attending them with fear and reverence when they call them out to their repast: and if any Mischance do happen to any of the Family, it is imputed presently to some want of due observance of these ugly Creatures. They are naturally inclined to Divinations, Charms and Sorceries, and frequently abused (as for the most part such people are) by Diabolical Illusions. Nay, they which profess the name of Christ are so ill instructed, that they use to marry many Wives, without consideration of Blood or Parentage: it being ordinary for a man to marry with his Brother's Widow, and not unusual to marry the Relict of their Fathers, (a Fornication not so much as heard of in *S. Paul's* time amongst the Gentiles.) They have some Customs also as unprofitable as these are heathenish; breaking up their Land, as they do in *Moscovie*, with Spades or Sticks. And when one of their Governours, observing the Husbandry of other Nations, had brought them the use of the Plough; it turned that for two or three years, either by the indolence of the Weather, or some other Accident, they had not so much Corn as they used to have. Which Want the people attributing to the use of the Plough, *ne quicquam aliud in causa esse putantes*, and not believing that there was any other cause of it, grew so much incensed, that the Governour, fearing some Sedition like to follow on it, was forced to leave them to the old way which they were wont. An humour like to that of the prelate *Jrishi*, in ploughing with their Horses tails, spoken of before. So pernicious for the most part are ignorant and superstitious people, in standing to their ancient Customs, though absurd and hurtful.

Towns they have few, their Houses for the generality being poor and low, covered with Straw or Dirt, with an Hole open in the Roof to let in the light. The principal of those they have (but rather Villages than Towns) are 1. *Bigla*, near the head of the River *Swiate*; 2. *Lingaw*, of which nothing memorable.

This Province hath always followed the fortunes of *Lithuania*: subject, when that was so, to the Kings of *Russia*, converted when that was to the Christian Faith, and finally united with it to the Crown of *Poland*.

3. LITHUANIA.

LITHUANIA hath on the East the Empire of *Russia*, on the West *Prussia*, *Moscovia* and *Poland*, on the North *Livonia* and *Samogitia*, and on the South *Volhinia* and *Podolia*. So called from *Litus* the Ceremonial Staff, used anciently by the Augurs in their Divinations; to which the Inhabitants herof being very much addicted before their receiving of the Gospel, were called *Lituanii*; but this is but conjectural only. Yet rather thus, than that it should be people by some banished *Indians*, first named *Italici*, then *Litalici*, and after, by a most unlikely Corruption; come to *Lithania*, as *Matthias a Michon* would have it.

The Country for the most part is full of Moors, Forests, some great Lakes like a Sea for bigness, and many navigable Rivers; which frozen over in the Winter make the

the ways more travelling at that time of the year than they are in Summer. The Air in most places is exceeding cold, which makes their Wheat (whereof they have some abundance) to be seldom ripe, and other Fruits of the Earth to come slowly forward. Their Forests yield them Bugles, Ermines, Sables, Deer, wild Horses, plenty of Honey, Wax, and Pitch: but their breed of Cattel is less here, and of smaller stature, than it is in *Germany*. These Forests also are the Store-house out of which the *English* and *Hollanders* furnish themselves with Timber, both for Ships and Building; returning to them in exchange Salt, Wine, and other Necessaries which are wanting here.

The people anciently had Fire and Serpents for their Gods, nourishing the last in their houses, and keeping the other continually burning; the Priests and Ministers of the Temple always adding Fuel, that it might not fail. The *Vestal* Fire was not kept more carefully at *Rome*, nor with greater Ceremony. To this God, whom they called *Disiphan*, or the Lord of the Smoke, they used to sacrifice young Pullets; to the other, their Cocks. The seed of this Idolatry is so implanted in them, that it is said, that in a Village of the King's called *Lovanisk*, not far miles from *Vilna*, their chief City, they do to this day worship Serpents. Converted by their Prince *Jagello* to the Christian Faith, *Anno* 1386, they yet retained such Customs as are inconsistent with Christianity, marrying, when and as often as they please; no Bond being so soon cancelled as that of Matrimony. For a married man to use the body of an Harlot is accounted (as indeed it is) an opprobrious Crime: but for the Wife to have her Stallions and Adulterers is a thing so ordinary and unblamable, that the Husbands call them their Coadjutors, and prize them far above the rest of their Acquaintance. The common people are in a miserable Servitude unto their Lords, pillaged and beaten by them upon any occasion; yet must not come before them with an empty hand. And if any of them have committed a Crime deserving death, he must hang himself as soon as the Sentence is signified to him, or else is beaten and tormented in a cruel manner, that Death at last is looked on as a better Life.

The Country is divided into ten parts or Provinces, subject unto the Jurisdiction of so many *Palatines*; that is to say, the *Palatine* of 1. *Vilna*. 2. *Track*. 3. *Minske*. 4. *Novogrod*. 5. *Brestia*. 6. *Volhinia*. 7. *Kovia*. 8. *Mishan*. 9. *Vitebsko*. 10. *Polozskie*. But *Novogrod* and *Polozskie* being conquered by the great Duke of *Moscovie*, and added unto that Estate, and *Volhinia* reckoned of late times for a distinct Province of it self, not depending of it, the remaining number is but seven, most of them taking names from their principal Towns. The chief of those, and others which deserve place here, are, 1. *Vilna*, a Bishop's See, equal in bigness to *Cracon*, the chief City of *Poland*, so called of the River *Vil*, or *Viln*, upon which it is seated; built there in the year 1205 by one *Godeimir*, great a Prince of these parts; well walled, but the Gates thereof open night and day; large, rich, and well frequented by foreign Merchants, especially by those that drive the Trade of *Moscovie*, who have here their Hall, one of the chief Ornaments of the City. They have in it also some Churches built of Stone, (but the most of Wood) the principal whereof is the Monastery of *S. Bernard*, which is a very comely structure. The Natives call this Town *Vilensk*, the *Dutch* *Die Wilde*. It is situate in the very heart of the Country, the longest Day in Summer being here 16 hours and half a quarter; whereas in the most Southern parts of the Country it is but 16, and in the most Northern not fully 18. 2. *Kovia*, or *Kief*, situate on the *Nieper*, or *Bory-*

sthenes, where the River *Dvina* falls into it: heretofore a beautiful and most stately City, having in it above 300 fair Churches, of which some remain unto this day; the Ruines of the rest to be traced out amongst Shrubs and Buihes, the receptacles of wild Beasts. The Seat at that time of the Metropolitan of the *Russian* Empire, containing also under his Jurisdiction the Countries of *Walachia* in *Dacia*, and *Nigra Russia* in *Poland*. But being destroyed by *Batu* or *Bozda* the *Tartarian*, in the Conquest of these parts by that People, it never could come near its former Lustre: yet still it holds the reputation of a Bishop's See, acknowledging the Patriarch of *Moscow* for his Metropolitan, and consequently is of the Communion of the *Greek* Churches, not of that of *Rome*. 3. *Grodno*, on the River *Chernus*, the chief Town of the *Palatinate* of *Track*, memorable for the death of *Stephen* King of *Poland*. 4. *Grumwald*, more memorable for the great Defeat given near it, by *Jagello* Duke of *Lithuania* and King of *Poland*, to the numerous Army of the *Dutch* Knights invading this Province; so confident of their Success in the undertaking, that they brought with them abundance of Chains and Torches, with the one to lead captive the Nobles of *Poland*, and with the other to fire their Cities. But *Jagello*, then newly made a Christian, putting his confidence in God, with an Army of untrained Soldiers so tamed their Pride, that he slew 40000 of them; so that they never recovered of that Blow whilst their Order stood. 5. *Pinsk*, in the *Palatinate* of *Brest*, 6. *Klom*, reckoned a Country of it self, and 7. *Sirifin*, fortified with a Castle; both under the *Palatine* of *Moscow*. The rest of the chief Towns may be known by the *Palatinates* which they give their names to, but not else observable.

The ancient Inhabitants herof were the *Aorsi*, *Pagari*, *Sevari*, Tribes of the *Sarmata Europaei*. Unto this name of *Lithuanians*, they became subject to the Kings of *Russia*, till the breaking of that Kingdom by the *Tartars*. At what time *Erdozovi*, then their Prince, (but an Homager and Tributary to the *Russians*) withdrew himself from their Command; as did also many other of the conquered Princes. Afterwards *Mindech*, one of the Dukes or Princes of it, being made a Christian, was by Pope *Innocent* the third honoured with the Title of a King, but returning again unto his Vomit, he lost that Title. In the end, *Anno* 1386, *Jagello* Duke of *Lithuania*, marrying with *Hedwigis* Queen of *Poland*, was upon three Conditions chosen King of that Realm. 1. That he should immediately receive the Christian Faith. 2. That he should draw all his Subjects to the same Belief. And 3. That he should unite this Dukedom to the Crown of *Poland*. Of these two first were performed without any delay, though the second not without some difficulty, the people being obstinate in their old Idolatry, especially in the Religious content they had of high Trees, which to cut down was held both unwise and impious. They could not be weaned from this conceit, till by the authority of the King their loftiest Trees were felled, and their Woods grubbed up: which when they saw done without any danger to the Prince, or any of those whom he employed in that Service, *Regis mandato et autoritate edere caperunt*, they then began to hearken unto his Commands, and generally received the Gospel, and were baptized. In the last point there was a longer time of deliberation: For the Princes of the House of *Jagello*, loth to deprive themselves of their Patrimonial Estate, which was hereditary unto their Posterity, and to subject it to the Election of the *Polanders*, in which it was possible the Princes of their Family might be pretermitted, deferred the accomplishment hereof from one day to another, under colour that the *Lithuanians* would

revolt if they went about it. But *Sigismund-Augustus*, in whose person the Male-illue of *Jagello* failed, forcing what Divisions might ensue after his decease, and fearing that the *Moscovites* would renew their old Pretensions, united it into the Crown: ordaining that the Bishops, *Palatinus*, and a certain number of the *Cheftellans* by him established, should have their place and Suffrage in the great Council of Poland, power in the chusing of the King, and all other Privileges which the natural *Polonians* have. Since that it is accounted a chief Member of that Body politic; subject to those Corruptions, Changes and Innovations in matters of Religion, which have been predominant in the others, excepting those parts only which relate to the Church of *Greece*, or *Mosco*, adhering pertinaciously to the Rites thereof.

4. VOLHINIA.

VOLHINIA, by some accounted one of the *Palatinates* of *Lithuania* (as once it was) but by others a distinct Province of itself, is bounded on the North and East with *Lithuania*, on the South with *Podolia*, and on the West with *Russia Nigra* and *Podlaffia*. So called, as *Maginus* is of opinion, from the *Volgar*, who, dwelling on the Banks of the River *Volga*, came afterwards into this Country, calling it *Volgaria*, whence by degrees it came unto *Volhonia*, and at last unto *Volhonia*. But this conjecture is improbable, and of no good grounds.

The Country yields good plenty both of Grain and Fruits, Pools which abound with very good Fish, Forests which do afford them store of Game and Honey, and much good Pasturage for their Cattel. That people are of the same nature with the *Lithuanians*, but more strong and warlike, & better weaned from their old Superstitions and heathenish customs than the others are. They are of the same Language and Religion with those of *Russia*, to which, together with the rest of *Lithuania*, it did once belong. It is divided commonly into three parts or Provinces, all taking name from the three principal Cities of it: that is to say, 1. *Luske*, in *Latine* called *Lucovicia* a Town of above 1000 Families, where 127 only (in the time of my Author) were of the *Romish* Religion, the residue being *Russians*, *Gracians*, and some *Armenians*. The Seat and Residence of two Bishops, of which one, being of the Communion of the Church of *Rome*, is of the Province of the Archbishop of *Lemberg* in *Russia Nigra*; but they which are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece* have also a Bishop of their own, who acknowledgeth the Patriarch of *Mosco* for his Metropolitan. 2. *Polodimir*, a Bishop's See also, of the same condition. 3. *Keromence*, which (as the rest) hath under it many fair Towns and Castles, besides large Villages. The whole was once part of *Lithuania*, as before was said; but of late difmembr'd from it, and united to the Crown of *Poland*, as at a distance; but so, that the greatest part of it is immediately subject to the Duke of *Olitzky* who is said to have 4000 Feudataries in his Country, the greatest Prince of those who hold Communion with the Church of *Greece* in the whole Realm of *Poland*.

5. PODOLIA.

PODOLIA hath on the North *Volhonia*, part of *Lithuania*, and the great Empire of *Russia*, on the South *Moldavia*, from which it is parted by the River *Tyras*, now called *Niefter*, on the West *Russia Nigra*, extending Eastward through vast uninhabited Countries as far as to the *Euxine* Sea. The reason of the name I find no where guess'd at. The people are for the most part of the same nature and original with the *Russians*, to

whose Empire it formerly belonged also, till gain'd (if such a Subjection as they give the King may be call'd a gaining) to the Crown of *Poland*, at such time as the *Russies* were intrall'd to the power of the *Tartars*.

The Country is generally so fertile, that the Husbandman is accustomed to reap an hundred for one, in regard it bears at one Ploughing for three years together, the Countryman being put to no farther trouble, than at the end of the first and second years to flake the Corn a little, as he reaps or loads it; that which so falls serving as Seed for the next year following. The Meadow-grounds is so strangely rich and luxuriant, and the Grass so high, that a man can hardly see the Heads or Horns of his Cattel; of so swift a growth, that in three daies it will cover a Rod which is thrown into it, and in few more to hide a Plough, that it is not an easy work to find it. If chief things seem beyond belief, let *Maginus*, who reported them, bear the blame thereof; though better take it on his word, than go so far to disprove him. And yet, which adds much unto the Miracle, the ground is in most places so hard and stony, that there needs six yoke of Oxen to break it up; to the great toil both of the Cattle and the men. It is also said that in this Country there are great Flocks of Sheep, many Herds of Oxen, abundance of wild Beasts, and great store of Honey. And yet for all this Plenty and abundance of all things necessary, the Country for the most part, especially towards the East, is but meanly inhabited, by reason of the frequent incursions of the *Tartars* bordering next unto it, who have so wast'd it in times past, and thereby so discouraged the people from Building, Planting, and all other works of Peace and Husbandry, that in so large and rich a Country there is nothing to be seen but some scattered Houses, few Villages, and not above five Towns of note, viz. 1. *Orzhov*, at the Influx of the *Borysthene* or *Nieper* into the *Euxine* Sea. 2. *Vafzov*, at the fall of the River *Bog* into that of *Nieper*. 3. *Braclem*, more high upon the *Bog*. 4. *Comenica*, on the Borders of *Russia Nigra*, built by some divine hand, as it were, amongst the Precipices of highland inaccessible Rocks, and so well fortified withal, that it is impregnable, as is apparent by the many and great Repulses which the *Turks*, *Tartarians*, and *Valachians* have received before it, with much shame and loss. 5. *Lemberg*, remarkable for the Sawces or Salt-meats which they send thence into other Countries. The former fortunes of this Province, and how it was brought under the Crown of *Poland*, (with which it was incorporated long since) we shall see anon.

6. RUSSIA NIGRA.

RUSSIA NIGRA hath on the East *Volhonia*, *Podolia*, and *Moldavia*, on the West *Mosovia*, and *Poland* specially so called; on the North *Lithuania* and *Podlaffia*, and on the South the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains. It is called also *Roxolania*, from the *Roxolani*, a chief People of *Sarmatia Europaea*, and by some *Ruthenia*; but generally *Russia*, from the *Rossi* spoken of before in the Empire of *Russia*, who spread themselves over all these parts. Some hold that it was first called *Russien*, which signifieth in the *Slavonian* Language a scattered Nation, or a Nation diftinated and dispersed into many parts; and that this was the name generally of all that speak the *Slavonian* Tongue, and followed the Religion and the Rites of the Church of *Greece*, extended from the Frozen Sea to the *Adriatick*, and from the *Euxine* to the *Baltick*. This and a greater Tract of ground I grant to have been heretofore possessed by divers Nations under the name of *Slavonians*; a very considerable part of *Germany* and *Poland* being conquered by them. But for the name of *Russia*, given at first to all the *Russian* Empire,

Empire, distinguish'd now into *Russia Alba* and *Russia Nigra*, I adhere unto my former Vote, conceiving that it came from the *Rossi*, an *Armenian* People, inhabiting about Mount *Taurus*, who in the year 864, or thereabouts, attempting the taking of *Constantinople*, and after placed themselves on the Northern Banks of the *Euxine*, getting ground of the *Slavonians* to the North and East, till they had made themselves Masters of all *Russia Alba*, *Lithuania*, *Volhonia*, *Podolia*, and this *Russia Nigra*. Distinguish'd from the former by the adjunct of *Nigra*, after the destruction of that great Empire by the coming in of the *Tartars*, either from the colour of their garments or their black and more Southern Complexion. In which regard it is called also *Russia Meridionalis*, or the Southern *Russia*.

The Country is generally fruitful, abounding in Horses, Oxen, Sheep, Sables, and Foxes: such store of Bees, that they breed not only in hives and hollow Trees, but in Rocks and Caves. Well watered both with Pools and Rivers, affording them great plenty of Fish, more naturally spawning here than in other places, inasmuch that if a Pond be digg'd, and spring accordingly, the Fish will breed therein of their own accord, without being brought from other waters. The greatest want heretofore is Wine, either supplied with Medes, or from other places. And it is said that in the Territory of *Chelm* the Branches of the Pine-Trees, left upon the ground for three years together, will be converted into Stone.

The people are generally valiant, and so strong of body that they use Bows of 12 foot long. Being formerly governed by Dukes, they do but ill brook the name of King; which much induc'd the King of *Poland* to send Colonies of natural *Polonians* into most parts of the Country, inasmuch as most of the Knights and Gentry of it are of that Extraction, and follow the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; the Peasants and the Original Inhabitants of it being more generally affected to their Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Greece*.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Chelm*, in the Territory whereof it is affirmed that the Branches of Pine-Trees, left upon the ground for three years together, are converted to Stone. 2. *Premislen*. 3. *Halitz*. 4. *Belzo*. 5. *Grodock*, and 6. *Leopolis*, by the Natives call'd *Lemberg*, built by one *Leo* a *Moscovite*; a Town of great Traffick, and an Archbishop's See, who is of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*. But the *Patriarch* of *Mosco* hath here also an Archbishop of his own ordaining, there being Churches both in the City itself, and all *Russia* generally, (as before was said) which are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*. There are also in this City some *Armenian* Merchants, who have a Church, a Bishop, and some Priests of their own Religion.

Of the Affairs of this Province, and how it was a part once of the *Russian* Empire, hath been said already. Difmembr'd from it by the *Tartars*, it had a while Dukes or Provincial Governors, subject and tributary unto those *Barbarians*; as had also *Podolia*, its next neighbour. Both conquered by the *Polanders*, were for a time kept under by strong hand and the power of Garrisons. But being upon all occasions apt to revolt, by reason of the hard hand which the Kings held over them, (by whom they were treated rather like Slaves than Subjects) they were allowed unto the State, by giving the same Liberties and Immunities, both for the Nobility and the Commons, which the natural *Polonians* had; and by that means made Fellow-members of that Commonwealth. The act of *Ladislav* the 6. the Son of *Jagello*, imitating therein the ancient *Romans*, who most augmented their Forces, and assur'd their Estates, by communicating the Freedom of *Rome* and the Privileges of *Latium* to many of the con-

quered Provinces: and was imitated by *Sigismund* the first, *Sigismund-Augustus* and *Stephen*, his Successors in their incorporating of *Prussia*, *Lithuania*, and *Livonia*, to the Crown of *Poland*.

7. MASSOVIA.

MASSOVIA is bounded on the East with *Lithuania*, on the West with *Poland* specially so called, on the North with *Prussia* and *Podlaffia*, on the South with *Russia Nigra* or *Meridionalis*. So called from *Masse*, one of the Dukes heretofore, who in the year 1045, being vanquished by *Casmire* Duke of *Poland*, fled into *Prussia* and there unfortunately died.

The Country is large, and for the most part full of Woods, where they find store of Bugles and wild Bulls. The people are strong, valiant and courageous in War; differing little from the *Polonians* in Speech, Manners, or Apparel, save that they use a kind of Whittling, which the others do not. The principal Towns of it are, 1. *Wlansaw*, the chief of the Province, and heretofore the Residence of the Duke or Prince, remarkable for the belt Medes or Metheglin. 2. *Czirkov*. 3. *Peltonkie*. 4. *Gadzick*. 5. *Lozara*. 6. *Droic* the Seat of a *Palatine*, but not else observable.

This Province was once subject to Princes of its own, not subject or subordinate unto any Superior. Of which number that *Masse* was one, from whom it was named *Massovia*. In the year 1246 and 1262, being strangely wast'd and distressed by *Mindoy* Duke of *Lithuania*, they were fain to put them- selves under the power of the *Polanders*, by whom they were made the Portion of the second Son of that Kingdom. But *John* and *Stanislaus*, the two last Dukes heretofore, dying without Issue, it returned unto the Kings of *Poland*, and became incorporate to that Crown, and priviledged in the Election of the King, and all matters which concern the publick, as all others of the *Polonians* are, Anno 1526.

8. PODLASSIA.

PODLASSIA is bounded on the East with *Volhonia*, on the West with *Prussia*, on the North with *Lithuania*, and on the South with *Massovia* and *Russia Nigra*. The reason of the name I know not. The Country differs not much from those before: the people being a mixt generation of *Russies*, *Moscovites*, and *Polonians*, partake a little of the Manners and Garb of those several Nations from which they lineally are descended.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Bielsko*. 2. *Bransko*. 3. *Swars*, all of them having fair and ample Territories. 4. *Tyoczekyn*, strongly fortified and well garrisoned, as being the place where the King's Treasures are kept. 5. *Krysin*, beautified with a Royal Palace, and a pleasant Park, wherein are store of wild Beasts for Hunting, and Fish ponds very well replenish'd. 6. *Narew*. 7. *Volosyn*, and 8. *Augustow*, a very strong Town, built and fortified by *Sigismund-Augustus* and by him thus named, Anno 1569, at what time he difmembr'd this Province from *Lithuania*, to which before it appertained, uniting it for ever to the Crown of *Poland*.

9. PRUSSIA.

PRUSSIA is bounded on the East with *Lithuania* and *Podlaffia*, on the West with *Pomerania*, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, and on the South

with *Poland* and *Maffovia*. Called first *Borussia*, from the *Boruffi*, who subdued it, (of whom more anon) which by an alphabetic alteration was changed into *Prussia*, by which name it is still called.

The Country is extended all along the *Baltick* Sea, from the City of *Danzick* in the West, to *Labiau* on the Mouth of the *Memell*, East, for the space of 50 *Polish* miles; and from *Tornau*, bordering on *Maffovia*, to *Memel* in the Confines of *Lithuania*, 55 miles of the same measure. The Air thereof is very mild and temperate, the Soil both profitable and pleasant; full of *Lakes* and *Rivers* stored with Fish, plentiful of Corn and other Necessaries, and well clad with Forests, which yield them Game for Hunting, rich Skins for profit, and abundance of Honey; of which last they make Meds for their own use, (their ordinary Drink where there is no Wind) and sell the rest unto the Merchant. But the Commodity wherein they do excel their neighbours is their plenty of Amber, which is the juice of a Stone which growth like a Coral in a Mountain of these *Baltick* Seas, covered quite with water, and slummed by Mariners three leagues off, for fear of Shipwreck: the Mountain is reasonable large, about 30 yards high of *English* measure. And when any Tempest riseth in these Northern Seas, especially in *September* and *December*, the Liquor by violence thereof is rent from the Rock, and cast into divers Havens, and on divers Coasts of this Country, and sometimes upon those of *Sweden* and *Pomerania*: the people leaping into the Sea when it rageth most, whence they take up first some Store of Woods, after that this Liquor, which being taken out of the water hardeneth like to Coral. Besides the beauty hereof, and the quality it hath of attracting Straws and Iron, as the Adamant doth, burning like Pitch, and others of this nature; it is excellent good for stopping Bloud, all kind of Agues, Falling-fickness, Dropsies, Stone, Cholick, weaknefs of Stomack, Head-ach, and the Yellow-jaundies.

The people especially the Gentry, descend from the *Germans*, and retain much of their nature; having more Art and Industry than the other *Polonians*, and being more tenacious of their ancient Customs. They were Idolaters for long time together, converted first unto the Faith in the time of the Emperor *Frederick* the 2 by whose letting on they were subdued by the Order of the *Dutch* Knights, *An*. 1215, and either won or forced to the Christian Faith. As Christians, governed since the plantation of the Gospel by the Bishops of *Culm*, *Warmia*, *Sambia* and *Pomejan*, Suffragans to the Archbishop of *Gnesna*; under whom those parts do still continue which have not yet forsaken the Church of *Rome*: the *Lutherans*, *Calvinians*, and other separate Congregations distinct from them, having their own Forms both of Doctrine and Discipline.

Few Provinces of the North are better watered than this is, both for *Lakes* and *Rivers*: some of the *Lakes* being seven Dutch miles in compass, and well stored with Fish. The *Rivers* are 12 in number; that is to say, 1. the *Vistula*. 2. *Chrauca*. 3. *Nogat*. 4. *Elbing*. 5. *Vasera*. 6. *Pasaria*. 7. *Alta*. 8. *Pregel*. 9. *Offa*. 10. *Drebowicz*. 11. *Lissa*. and 12. *Lavia*, all plentifully stored with Fish; besides a large Sea-Coast both for Trade and Fishing no small commodity to the Natives.

The Country, formerly divided into twelve Dukedoms, (so they called the parts and fractions of it) was by the industry of the *Dutch* Knights so adorned and beautified, (after they had once brought it under their Obedience) that there were no fewer than 72 Castles and 62 good Towns of their foundation. Which number being much increased in these later times, hath made it the most flourishing part of the whole Kingdom of *Poland*. But the Order of the *Dutch* Knights being suppressed in this Country

by an Agreement betwixt *Sigismund* the first, King of *Poland*, and *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, the last great Master of the Order; both Town and Country are divided between the Successors of the said *Albert*, as Dukes of *Prussia*, and of the said *Sigismund*, as Kings of *Pole*: the Dukedoms or Divisions of *Hogeland*, *Warmia*, *Galindia*, *Atschelou*, *Culmigeria*, with the City of *Marienburgh*, the Sovereignty of *Danzick* and *Melbing*, with the whole Country of *Pomerellia*, lying on the West-side of the *Vistula*, being allotted to the King; the residue, containing the Divisions of *Schalawenia*, *Sambia*, *Natanzia*, *Nadzwila*, *Bartonia*, *Sudavia*, and *Pomesania* (except the City and Territory of *Marienburgh*) to the Dukes of *Prussia*.

Chief Towns belonging to the Duke are, 1. *Alameda* well-frequented Port, the Mart-Town for the Commodities of *Lithuania*, which are brought hither, and here bought by the foreign Merchant: part of this Province interpoling betwixt *Lithuania* and the *Baltick*. 2. *Koenigsberg*, as the *Dutch* Regiment, as the *French*, and *Moss Regiments*, as the *Latins* call it; situate in the Province of *Sambia*, at the bottom of a Gulf or Bay, where the *Pregel* falleth into the *Baltick* Sea: built by the *Dutch* Knights in the year 1260, and made an University by *Albert* the first Duke hereof 1225, the Seat and principal Residence of his Successors; as also of the Bishop of *Sambia*, in *Latine* called *Sambiensis*, by the name of the Province. 3. *Mulneburg*, founded by the *Dutch* Knights, *An* 1279. 4. *Brandenburg*, on the South-side of that Bay, but more near the Sea; built, as I guess, by some of the Great Masters of that Family. 5. *Ragnitz*, the farthest Town of note towards *Lithuania*. 6. *Angerburg*, in *Schalawenia*, as was also *Ragnitz*. 7. *Nordenburg*, in *Bartonia*. 8. *Ortelburg*, in *Galindia*: of which little memorable. 9. *Mariemader*, the farthest of the Duke's Estate towards the *Vistula*, and the ordinary Residence of the Bishop of *Pomesan*. Besides which there are reckoned in this Division 80 good Towns more, and about 54 Castles, though not much observation in the course of Story.

Chief Towns pertaining to the King are, 1. *Braunsberg*, upon a Bay of the *Baltick* Sea which they call *Frifch-Haff*: a Town of good Trade by reason of the commodious Haven, and the ordinary Residence of the Bishop of *Warmia*. 2. *Frauenberg*, on the same Bay, not far from *Braunsberg*. 3. *Refel*, the chief Town of the Diocese and Dukedom of *Warmia*. 4. *Strasburg*, in *Atschelou*, confining on *Dukedom*, specially so called, at the Siege whereof by *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, *Anno* 1628, *Elias Tryp*, one of the Engineers of that King, found out the use of Leather Ordnance, which afterwards did that King great service in the Wars of *Germany*. 5. *Culm*, on the River *Vistula*, a Bishop's See. 6. *Marienburgh*, on the *Nogat*, built by the *Dutch* Knights, *An* 1302, and made the Seat of the great Masters of their order, translated first from *Polemnia* or *Acon* in *Syria* to the City of *Venice*, from thence to *Marpurg*, and at last to this place by *Sigismund* the twelfth great Master of it, whose constant Residence in this Town occasioned the Bishop of *Culm* to remove thither also. A very fair and well-built City, the chief of those which do belong to the King of *Poland*: by him so well garrisoned, and furnished with such store of Victuals, Ammunition and other Necessaries, that it was thought able to hold out for a Six years Siege. But it proved otherwise when besieged by the King of *Sweden*, who took it in less space than 10 many months; being on the falling of a Peace betwixt the Crowns rendered again unto the King of *Poland*. Beneath this Town, down towards the *Baltick*, is a pleasant Island made by the *Nogat* and the *Weyffel*, for the fertility of the Soil, and the great number of Houses, Villages, and People, not equalled (for the muchness of it) in all this Country.

To

To this part also belongeth the fair port of *Elbing*, (or *Melbing*, as *Maginus* calls it) situate on the Bay of the *Baltick* called *Frifch Haff*; spoken of before, not far from a Fishful Lake; well traded, rich, and full of very wealthy Merchants, of great repute from other Nations, and much frequented by the *English* Merchants, who have here their Staple for the *Baltick*; a small, but neat and well-built City, and fortified with a very good Wall, governed after the manner of a free Estate or Commonwealth, under the Patronage and Protection of the Kings of *Poland*, in like sort as *Danzick* also is, of which more anon.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Venedi*, the most potent Nation of this Tract, extended all along the Coasts of the *Baltick* from them by *Ptolemy* called *Sinu Venedicus*: containing under them the *Githones*, *Phini*, *Salanes*, *Phrugudiones*, *Auarini*, and more within the Land the *Sodini* and *Galinda*, whose name the Dukedom or Province of *Galindia* doth still retain. But great and potent though they were, they were subdued by the *Boruffi*, inhabiting at the foot of the *Riphaean* Mountains, who, weary of their own cold and barren Dwellings, removed into the Western parts, and vanquished the *Venedi*, and those other Nations, possessed themselves of this Country, which they called *Borussia*, now by us named *Prussia*. By *Venedus* one of their Princes having twelve Sons in all, it was divided into 12 Provinces or Dukedoms, one for every Son; continuing by that means distracted into divers petty Principalities, till the coming of the *Marian* or *Dutch* Knights, sent hither by *Frederick* the second, *Anno* 1215, by whom the Provinces or Dukedoms of *Sudavia*, *Mischelou*, and the greatest part of *Nadzwavia*, were laid waste and desolate: the rest submitted to their power, and received the Gospel. After this it continued subject to this Order of Knights till the year 1419, when, weary of their Extortion and the continual change of Masters, they revolted to the King of *Poland*, to whom they offered their Obedience: seconded by the yielding up of *Marienburgh*, with many other Towns and Castles, sold to King *Casimir* by the *Garifon* Soldiers, *Anno* 1457, for 476000 *Florens*. But the Knights disdaining to be so dealt withal, and refusing to swear Allegiance to the Kings of *Poland*, they brake out into open War, which was managed with variable Success on both sides; *Ludovicus*, the then Great Master, being so successful at the first, that he once Beat the King, out of the Field, routed his whole Army, slew 30000 of his men upon the place, and took 136 of his chief Nobility: nor was he vanquished at last, but by the Treachery and Rebellion of his own people.

In the end, wearied and worn out on both sides by continual Wars, *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, then Great Master, having for 14 years together courageously maintained the Honour of his Order, and for the four last years importuned in vain the Assistance of the Emperor and Princes of *Germany*, began to think of some Expedient to compound the business. Being inclined to *Luther's* Doctrines, and willing to advance himself unto this Estate, he secretly practised with *Sigismund* the first of *Poland* to end the War to the advantage of both parties. By whom at last it was agreed, That *Albert* should relinquish his Order, and surrender all *Prussia* into the hands of the King: That the King, possessing the Western parts, with the Town of *Marienburgh*, and the Sovereignty of *Dantz* and *Melbing*, should invest *Albert* with the Title of Duke of *Prussia*, settling on him and the Heirs of his body the whole Eastern Moiety, containing the Provinces or Dukedoms before specified: and finally, that *Albert* and his Heirs should hold the said Estate, as Homagers to the Crown of *Poland*, taking place in all Assemblies at the

King's right hand. According to this Agreement, *Anno* 1525, *Albert*, attired in the complete habit of Master of the *Dutch* Order, presents himself humbly on his knees before *Sigismund* at *Cracon*, the King then sitting on his Throne. The King, raising him from the ground, caused him to put off those Robes and attire himself in a Ducal Habit: which done, an Instrument was read and published, whereby the King conferred upon him and the Heirs of his body the Dukedom of *Prussia*, to be held of him and his Successors Kings of *Poland*. An act at which the whole Order were extremely incensed; but they could not help it, and thereupon retired into *Germany*, where there were some good Lands left, to maintain such of them as had no mind to quit that Military honour; leaving their old Estates unto *Prussia* to the King and the Duke, whose Successors have hitherto enjoyed their part of it, with the Title of

Dukes of PRUSSIA

- 1525 1. *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, Son of *Frederick* Marquess of *Onoloweb*, or *Onsach*, created Master of the Order by the Emperor *Maximilian*, *Anno* 1511, and the first Duke of *Prussia* by *Sigismund*, the first of *Poland*, *Anno* 1525, founded the University of *Koenigsburg*, *Anno* 1544.
- 1562 2. *Albert-Frederick* Son of *Albert* the first Duke, married *Mary-Elmior*, Daughter of *William* Duke of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, &c.
3. *Anne*, Eldest Daughter of *Duke Albert-Frederick*, Dutchess of *Prussia*, brought the Estate in Marriage to
4. *John-Sigismund*, Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*, who was confirmed therein by *Sigismund* the 3. of *Poland*, pretending an Elcheat thereof for want of Heirs-males of the body of *Albert* the first Duke.
5. *George-William*, Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*, in right of his Father, Duke of *Prussia* in right of the Lady *Anne* his Mother, and of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, &c. by Descent from *Mary-Eleanor* his Grandmother.
6. *Frederick-William*, Son of *George-William* Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*, Duke of *Prussia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick* and *Berg*; of whose Investiture in the Dukedom of *Pomeran* and other large and goodly Seigniories we have spoken elsewhere.

As for the Government of this Province standing thus divided, that of the Duke is more Monarchical than that of the King, the one being absolute and uncontrollable in his Estates, the other subject to the great Council of *Poland*. If any difference grow between them, Delegates appointed by the King, but taking a new Oath to do equal Justice either at *Marienburgh* or *Elbing*, do compound the business: who, together with some other of the Duke's nomination, receive all Appeals in which the Duke is interested as one of the parties.

The Revenues of this Dukedom are thought to be 120000 Ducats yearly.

The Armes thereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Verr*, membréd and crowned *Or*, langued *Gules*.

10. POMERELLIA.

POMERELLIA is bounded on the East with the River *Vistula*, by it parted from *Prussia*, on the South with *Poland* specially so called, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, and on the West with the Dukedom of *Pomerania*.

merania, of which it was anciently a part, till separated from it, and united to the Crown of Poland under this new name.

The Territory is small, and consequently not capable of many Towns and Cities of consideration. Those of most note are, 1. *Nemenburg*, on the Banks of the *Vistula*, or *Wesell*. 2. *Diricham*, or *Dirfaw*, (in *Latine Dirisavia*) a well fortified Town and of great importance, at the Siege whereof, Anno 1627, *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of Sweden, received the Order of the Garter. 3. *Dantzick* in *Latine*, called *Danifigum*, and sometimes *Gedamum*, situate at the mouth of the same River also, a fair and well-built City, the Houfes for the most part of Brick, and the rest of Stone raised with great beauty and magnificence fix or seven floors high; beautified with a fair Council-house for affairs of State, and many publick Gardens for disport and exercise. It consisteth of three Cities, governed by as many Senates; the one called *Vancrat*, or the fore-City; the second *Altstat*, or the old City; and the third *Reichstat*, or the Emperour's City: but all inclosed with one Wall, and governed by one chief Senate or Common-Council chosen out of all three. A Bilhop's See, and the second Trade, fuch a noted Granary of all sorts of Corn, issued from hence to supply the wants of other Countries, that 1000 Measures of Wheat (besides other commodities in proportion) are here daily sold. Heretofore it was reckoned as Imperial, but now as a Free State, acknowledging the King of Poland for their Protectors, to whom they allow many Customs upon their Merchandize, and permit their Officers to remain there for receiving them. The first Town in the Kingdom of Poland which gave entrance to the Doctrines of Luther, An. 1525, but in so tumultuous a manner, that they that favoured his Opinions depofed the old Common-Council-men, and created new ones of their own, profaned the Churches, robbed them of their Ornaments, and shamefully abused the Priests and Religious persons, abolished the Mass, and altered all things at their pleasure. But by the coming of the King they grew somewhat quieter leaving one Convent of Black Friars and two of Nuns, who still enjoy the exercise of their Religion.

This Country once a part of the Dukedom of *Pomerania*, was given by *Suanibore*, once Duke thereof, Anno 1107, to *Rugillus* his second Son; whose Posterity enjoyed it till the year 1295, when *Msteviv* 2. dying without Issue, gave it to *Primiſlaus* Duke of the *Poloni*, whose Successors have ever since enjoyed it by that Donation. It is called *Pomerellia*, for distinction sake, from the first separating of it from the Dukedom of *Pomerania*.

11. POLAND.

POLAND properly and especially so called is bounded on the East with *Mosovia* and *Podallia*, on the West with *Silesia* and the Marquifate of *Brandenburg*, on the North with *Prussia* and *Pomerellia*, and on the South with the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Hungary*. It is in length 480 *Italian* miles, 300 of the same Miles in breadth; and took this name (as afore is said) from the word *Pole*, signifying as much as plain, the Country being plain and level, little swelled with Hills.

The Air hereof is pure and healthy, but sharp and cold; the Country plain, shaded with thick dark Woods, parts of the *Hereyian*, full of wild Beasts for hunting, and of Bees for Honey, which they have here in great abundance together with such plenty of Grain but of Rice especially, by reason of the continual breaking up of new

Grounds gained out of the Forests, that it may be called the Granary or Store-house of the Western parts of Europe; the Grain is first down the *Wesell* into *Dantzick*, and thence transported by the Merchant into other Countries, according to their several wants.

The Character of the people we have had before; adding now only, that in matters of War they are stout and resolute, so forward in giving the Charge and Pursuit of the Enemy, that *John Wasilwick*, the great Duke of *Mosovia* comparing them with the soldiers of his own Dominions, was wont to say, that the *Polonians* wanted a Spur to drive them forwards, and the *Polander* had need a bridle to hold them back. Their Language is the *Sclavonian* Tongue; most generally spoken also in the rest of the Provinces, but with some difference in the Dialect or Pronunciation.

It is divided commonly into two parts, the Greater and the Lesser Poland. The GREATER, lying wholly on the Western side of the *Wesell*, and so accounted anciently as a part of Germany, contains 9 Divisions, under the Jurisdiction of the 9 *Palatines* of 1. *Pofna*, 2. *Kalifch*, 3. *Siradia*, 4. *Lancicia*, 5. *Vladiflav*, 6. *Brzeſſye*, 7. *Rawa*, 8. *Plozky*, and 9. *Dobrzyn*; each of them so called from some Town of note. The chief whereof, and of the rest contained in them, are 1. *Pofna* a Bilhop's See, and the principal of the Greater Poland, seated among the Hills on the River *Warra*, built of Free-Stone, with very large Suburbs beyond the River, but much subject unto Inundations, which add much strength unto the place; of great repute by reason of the Martyr of Fairs held twice a year. 2. *Kofien* situate amongst Marshes, and fortified with a double Wall. 3. *Ofrezow*, bordering on *Silesia*, begirt with Woods. 4. *Gneſſia*, the ancientest Town of Poland, founded by *Lechus* their first Prince, the Seat of him and his Successors, till removed to *Cracow*, situate in *Kalifch*, and by old prescription the first place for Inauguration of the Kings of *Pole*, in regard that here Prince *Boleslaus*, the first King of this Country, received the Regal Diadem at the hands of *Ordo*, the third. The Town is well walled, and the See of an Archbishop, who is the Primate of the Kingdom, by ancient Privilege the Pope's Legat for all *Sarmatia Europaea*, and in the Absence of the King or *Interregnum*, the Vicar-general of the Kingdom, having power to summon the Diets, to conclude and publish their Decrees. 5. *Pietrekem*, a walled Town in the *Palatinate* or Division of *Siradia*, situate on a moorish soil; the place in former times of the general Diets, since removed to *Warsaw*. 6. *Vladiflav*, on the *Wesell* or *Vistula*, a Bilhop's See. 7. *Belgoſſa*, a walled Town on the *Vara*, a Navigable River, conveying the Merchandize of these parts into the *Vistula*. 8. *Kruffick*, in *Brzeſſye* built of Wood, standing on a great Lake named *Gopia*, in the Castle whereof *Popeſtus* the 2. Duke of Poland, was after a strange manner devoured with Rats swarming out of the Lake. 9. *Plozky*, upon the *Vistula*, a Walled Town, and a Bilhop's See, with a Castle to it. 10. *Warsaw*, upon the Banks of the same River, of no great note in former times, but of late grown the best frequented and most traded Town in all the Province; honoured for the most part with the Court of the King, the holding of all publick Diets, (removed from *Pietrekem* to this place) and the Transaction of all business both of Peace and War, which must needs draw to it great resort of all sorts of people; the fruitfulness of the Soil and commodiousness of the situation rendering it very capable of those publick Meetings. 11. *Alma* bordering on the Dukedom of *Prussia*.

The LESSER Poland, lying on the south of the Greater, and divided by the River *Wesell*, comprehendeth only three Divisions, under the government of the *Palatines* of 1. *Cracow*, 2. *Sandomir*, and 3. *Lublin*. Principal Cities

of the which are, 1. *Cracow*, upon the *Wesell*, (called in *Latine Cracovia*) a Bilhop's See, the chief of all the Kingdom, the Seat of the Prince, and the Sepulchre of the former Kings; by *Ptolemy* called *Caradunum*, fortified with a double Wall (of the old fashion) a deep Ditch, the Castle of *Pand* situate on the top of an high Rock, and beautified with an University, or general Study of good Arts and Sciences. This Buildings are more fair than elsewhere in Poland, of Free-stone, and four Stories high; but for the most part covered with Shingles, or Tiles of wood: in the middle is a large Market-place, in form quadrangular; and in the middle of that the Common-Council-house, about which are many Shops of Merchants. On one side of it standeth the Cathedral Church; and on the East-side of the City the Palace Royal, high seated on an Hill over-looking both the Town and Country, fair and well built, of form somewhat near a Quadrangle, but lying open to the South without any Buildings above the Wall, affording thereby to the Gallery, being on the North-side of the Castle, the more excellent Prospect. 2. *Lelom*, a walled Town with a Castle on the River *Biala*. 3. *Sandomir*, a walled Town with a Castle also, seated on an Hill, under which runs the *Vistula* or *Wesell*. 4. *Wislica*, a walled Town amongst Marshes, encompassed with the River *Nid*. 5. *Lublin* a walled Town, but more strongly fortified by the Marshes and Water with which it is environed, remarkable for three yearly Fairs, drawing hither Merchants from most parts adjoining, as also *Moscovites*, *Armenians*, *Turks* and *Grecians*. The Jews inhabiting the greatest part of the Suburbs, have here their Synagogue, making the Town, especially at the time of those Fairs, a Medley of all Nations and Religions. 6. *Cafimir*, on the *Wesell*, so named from the Founder of it, a King of Poland.

The old inhabitants of this Country were the *Avii*, *Heverones*, *Elyſii*, and the *Nabarvali*, parts of the *Suevi* Legit spoken of by *Tacitus*, all of them lying on the Dutch side of the *Wesell*, by consequence within the Bounds of the ancient Germany: the people of all the rest of the Provinces before described being of the *Sarmatian* Race, next neighbours to the Germans, and not much unlike them in Persons, Customs, or Conditions. But these dispersed and scattered Nations of *Sarmatia Europaea*, being united in the common name of *Sclaves*, part of them settled in that part which we now call Poland, at that time reckoned and accounted of as a part of Germany. The time of their first coming hither, and the manner of their Government when first settled here, is not very well known. But for the first it is most certain, that it was some time, and that not long, after the death of *Mauritius* the Eastern Emperour; and for the next it is as certain, that on the coming of *Lechus*, a *Croatian*, who led his Country for a Murder, with his Brother *Zechus*, they settled into a more constant form of Government than before they did. For *Lechus*, seeing his Brother's good Success in *Bohemia*, where the *Sclaves* received him for their Prince, passed into Poland, the next Province, and was as cheerfully received by the *Sclaves* thereof, who looked upon him as a Prince of their own Extraction, and without quarrel or competition submitted themselves to his Commands, Anno 650, or thereabouts. Of this there is good constant amongst our Authors. But neither the names or number of his Successors do occur in Story till the time of *Cracut*, the Founder of *Cracovia*, the chief City of Poland, and the Legislator of this People. After this, the Succession of their Princes and the success of their Affairs becomes more certain: the Estate hereof being much improved by the conquest of many *Sarmatian* Countries, all which together constitute and make up the Kingdom of Poland, so called from this predomina-

ting and prevailing Province. The sum of their Affairs is this. The Posterity of *Cracut* failing in *Popeſtus* the second, *Priflus* is elected Duke; the Princes from that time forwards becoming Elective, but always with respect to the next of blood. In the time of *Miciflaus*, Son of *Nemomyſlaus*, they received the Gospel, Anno 963. *Boleslaus* the Son of *Miciflaus* was the first who had the Title of a King, conferred upon him by the Emperor *Ordo* the third about the year 1001, relinquished by *Vladiflaus* the first, and not resumed again till the time of *Primiſlaus* Duke of *Pofna*, Anno 1300, after which it became perpetual. In the person of this *Primiſlaus* *Pomerellia* is united to the State of Poland, Anno 1295; in that of *Jagello*, or *Vladiflaus* the fifth, the great Dukedom of *Lithuania*, incorporated into this Body as a Member of it in the time of *Sigismund Auguſtus*. By *Vladiflaus* the sixth, Son of *Jagello*, *Podelſia*, and *Ruffia Nigra* were also added by *Sigismund* the first, *Preſſia* and *Mosovia*; *Podallia* by *Sigismund Auguſtus*, who also took *Vallinia*, out of *Lithuania*; by *Stephen*, the actual possessor of the greatest part of *Livonia*; by *Sigismund* the third, a Title to the Crown of Sweden. The Princes follow in this order.

Dukes and Kings of POLAND.

A.Ch.

- 694 1. *Lechus* of *Cracutia*, the first Duke; whose Posterity failing, twelve *Palatines* were chosen to direct Affairs, and the State became Aristocratical.
2. *Cracut*, the Legislator of Poland.
3. *Lechus* II. Son of *Cracut*.
4. *Venda*, the Daughter of *Cracut*, and Sister of *Lechus* the second.
5. *Leſus* the 1.
6. *Leſus* II.
7. *Leſus* III. Contemporary with *Charles* the Great.
8. *Popeſtus*, Son of *Leſus* the third.
9. *Popeſtus* II. devoured in most horrid manner by Rats and Mice, together with his Wife and Children, the last of the Posterity or House of *Cracut*.
- 800 10. *Piſtus*, the first Duke elected.
11. *Zenovitius*, Son of *Piſtus*.
12. *Leſus* IV. Son of *Zenovitius*.
13. *Nemomyſlaus*, Son of *Leſus* the 4.
14. *Miciflaus*, Son of *Nemomyſlaus*, the first Christian Prince of the *Poloni*, founded the Bilhopricks of *Cracow* and *Gneſſia*.
- 1000 15. *Boleslaus*, Son of *Miciflaus*, the first who had the Title of King conferred on him by *Ordo* 3.
- 1023 16. *Miciflaus* II. Son of *Boleslaus*.
- 1041 17. *Cafimir*, Son of *Miciflaus*.
- 1059 18. *Boleslaus* II. Son of *Cafimir*, deposed and died an Exile in *Hungary*.
- 1082 19. *Vladiflaus*, Brother of *Boleslaus* the second, abandoned the Title of King, and only used that of Prince or Duke.
- 1203 20. *Boleslaus* III. Son of *Vladiflaus* Duke of Poland.
- 1140 21. *Vladiflaus* II. Son of *Boleslaus* the 3. ousted by his Brethren, and at last ejected in *Silesia*, united formerly to Poland from the time of *Lechus*.
- 1146 22. *Boleslaus* IV. Brother of *Vladiflaus* the second.
- 1174 23. *Miciflaus* III. Brother of *Boleslaus* and *Vladiflaus*, deposed by his Brother *Cafimir*.
- 1178 24. *Cafimir* II. Brother of the three last Princes.
- 1195 25. *Leſus* V. Son of *Cafimir* the second, deposed by *Miciflaus* the third.
- 1203 26. *Vladiflaus* III. Son of *Miciflaus* the third, deposed

deposed by *Lefum* the fifth, who again seized on the Estate.

- 1243 27. *Boleflaw* V. furnamed *Pudicim*.
 1280 28. *Lefum*, V. furnamed *Niger*, the adopted Son of *Boleflaw*, and his Cousin-german once removed; after whose death, *An*. 1289, the Estate, being divided into many Factions, was for some time without a Prince, settled at last on 1295 29. *Primiſlaw*, furnamed *Poſtumus*, Duke of *Poſna*, who again assumed the name of King, continued ever by his Successors.
 1296 30. *Uladiſlaw*, furnamed *Loſſium*, Brother of *Lefum*, elected by *Wenceſlaw* King of *Bohemia*, Anno 1300; after whose death, *An*. 1306, he resumed the Estate.
 1333 31. *Cafimir* III. furnamed the Great, Son of *Uladiſlaw* the fourth, the first Establisher of the Kingdom after all those Troubles, died without Issue.
 1371 32. *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, Nephew or Grandson to *Charles* King of *Hungary*, by *Elizabeth* the Sister of *Cafimir*.
 1383 33. *Hedwig*, the youngest Daughter of *Lewis*, her elder Sister Mary succeeding in the Realm of *Hungary*, chosen Queen of *Poland*; married to *Jagello* Duke of *Lithuania*, Christianized, and called *Uladiſlaw* the fifth.
 1386 34. *Uladiſlaw* V. Duke of *Lithuania*, elected King upon his Marriage with Queen *Hedwig*.
 1435 35. *Uladiſlaw* VI. Son of *Jagello*, or *Uladiſlaw* the fifth, by *Sophia*, Daughter of the Duke of *Kiev*, King of *Hungary* also; slain at the Battle of *Varna* by *Amurath* the second, King of the *Turks*, and without Issue.
 1447 36. *Cafimir* 4. Brother of *Uladiſlaw*, first brought the Knights of *Prussia* under his Command; Knight of the Order of the Garter.
 1593 37. *John Albert*, the second Son of *Cafimir*; his elder Brother *Uladiſlaw* being permitted, on his accepting of the Crowns of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*.
 1502 38. *Alexander*, the third Son of *Cafimir*.
 1507 39. *Sigismund*, the fourth Son of *Cafimir* his elder Brother dying without Issue: he suppressed the Order of the *Dutch* Knights in *Prussia*, and added part thereof unto his Estate.
 1548 40. *Sigismund* II. furnamed *Augustus*, the last of the Male-Issue of *Jagello*.
 1574 41. *Henry*, Duke of *Anjou*, Son of *Henry* the second, the French King; chosen on the death of *Sigismund-Augustus*, the only Stranger to the Blood in all this Catalogue. On the death of his Brother *Charles* the ninth, he departed secretly into *France*, where he succeeded by the name of *Henry* the third.
 1579 42. *Stephen Babor*, Vaivod of *Transylvania*, by the recommendation of *Amurath* the third, Emperor of the *Turks*, having first married *Anna*, Sister of *Sigismund* the second, is elected King. He united *Livonia* to the Crown, and had a great hand upon the *Muscovite*.
 1587 43. *Sigismund* III. Son of *John* King of *Swehland*, and of *Katharine* his Wife, another of the Sisters of *Sigismund* the second, King of *Poland* and *Swehden*. He valiantly opposed *Osman* the Great *Turk*, invading his Dominions with an Army of 30000 fighting men.
 1633 44. *Uladiſlaw* VII. eldest Son of *Sigismund* the third. After whose death the Kingdom was extremely embroiled by Factions, especially

by the mutinous and feditious *Cofacks*, not fully settled by the Election of

1648 45. *Cafimir* V. Brother of *Uladiſlaw* the seventh, now King of *Poland*, Anno 1648.

The Government of this Kingdom is nothing less than Monarchical. For though the first Dukes hereof were absolute Princes, and ruled after a Despotical manner, having power not only of the Estates of their Subjects, but of Life and Death, without Formalities of Law; yet when they once became Elective, they lost much of that power: which decayed so by little and little, that at the last the King is counted little better than a Royal Shadow; *Stat magni nominis umbra*, in the Poet's language. A Diminution which began first in the times of *Lewis of Hungary* and *Jagello of Lithuania*; who, to gain the Succession to the Kingdom, contrary to Law, the one for his Daughter, the other for his Son, departed with many of their Royalities and Prerogatives, to buy the Voices of the Nobility. Since which time, the Nobility in all their Elections have so limited and restrained the King's Authority, and enlarged their own, that without their consent in Council he may neither make a War, nor treat of Peace, nor impose Taxes, nor alienate any of his Demesns, nor do any thing of importance which concerns the Publick: inasmuch as *Borowis*, a great Statesman doth expressly say, That the Government of *Poland* doth rather seem an Aristocracy than a Monarchy, a Common wealth rather than a Kingdom. Besides, the King not only takes solemn Oath at his Coronation to confirm all the Rights and Privileges which have been granted to the Subject by his Predecessors, but adds this Clause, *Quod si Sacramentum meum violaveris, incola Regni nullum nobis obedientiam prestare tenebitur*, that if he violate this Oath, his Subjects shall not be obliged to yield him any Obedience. Which as *Badinus* well observeth, doth rather favour of the condition of a Prince of the Senate, than of the Majesty of a King. He is respected accordingly by the Great ones, who look not on him as their King but their elder Brother, (and perhaps not that) and reckon his Decrees but of three daies lasting. Which notwithstanding, the King, once chosen and intronized, hath sole power in many things without consulting with the Senate; as *viz.* in assembling Diets, choosing the Secular Counsellors, disposing absolutely also of his Vassals and the Revenues of the Crown to what use he pleases; being sole Judge of the Nobility in Criminal Causes, which is a strong Bridle to rein them in with. By which, and either uniting himself unto the Clergy, or the well forming of his party amongst the Nobility, he may do many things not allowable in strictness of Law: the power and influence which he hath in the publick Government being proportionable to the strength of his Wit and Brain.

And here it is to be observed, that none but the Clergy and Nobility have any Suffrage in the Election of the King: that is to say, the 26. *Palatines*, and 60. *Chaffellans*, with the four *Marſhals*, and some others of the principal Officers of State; in behalf of the Nobility; and the Archbishops and Bishops in the name of the Clergy; but of the Commons none at all. Which is the reason why there is so much care taken to preserve the Privileges of the two first Orders, without obtaining any Immunities for relief of the third; who are most miserably oppressed on all sides, rather as bondmen than Tenants in respect of their Lords, and not so much Subjects as plain Slaves in regard of the King; whereof somewhat hath before been noted. Nor are the Common people excluded only out of these Elections, but have no place nor Vote in the Council of State, or in any of the general Diets: the first consisting only of the Prelates, *Palatines*, *Chaffell-*

Chaffellans, and principal Officers spoken of before, the nominating of which pertained to the King alone; the other aggregated of all persons of those several Orders, and the Delegates of each Province and principal City, sent thither for the rest of the Nobility, whom they represent. Yet notwithstanding this exclusion of the Commons from this Common-Council, they there conclude of all matters of publick Interest not properly determinable by the great Council or Council of State: in which perhaps (especially in the case of Taxes) the Commons may be more concerned than any other.

The Forces of this Kingdom or Commonwealth relate unto Land-Service only. For though they have a large Sea-coast upon the *Baltick*, yet the *Daners*, *Swedes* and *Hanse* Towns, having got the start of them, keep them from doing much at Sea. And for Land-Forces, they consist of Horſe especially, whereof they are able to raise 80000, (that is to say, 10000 out of *Poland*, and 60 or 70000 out of *Lithuania* and the Eastern Provinces) of which one half at least are thought to be for action. And this seems probable enough, in regard of those great Bodies of Horſe which *Stephen* and *Sigismund* the third had against the *Moscovite*, whereof the one had 40000, and the other 30000, (besides Draught-horſes) very well appointed. But for their Foot, they are not at so good a pass; their Infantry being for the most part *Germans* or *Hungarians*, whom they hire for money; of which two Nations *King Stephen*, in his Enterprise upon *Livonia*, had no less than 16000 to convey his Ordnance. Upon coincidence of this great number of Horſe, and their readiness to serve upon all occasions, the *Polanders* bear themselves so high, that they neither fear the power of a foreign Enemy, nor regard the fortifying of their Towns, or the building of Fortresses on their Frontiers; boasting that they are able to defend their Country without such Helps against any Nation whatsoever, and trusting more to a Castle of Bones (as was courageously said by *Savage* an *English* Gentleman) than to a Castle of Stones. And for the raising of these Horſe, the Gentlemen of the Country are bound by their Tenure, (like the *Turk* *Timariots*) not only to serve in person for defence of the Realm, but to maintain a certain number of Horſe in continual readiness, especially in those parts which lie next the *Tartars*, where their numbers are exceeding great, and with whom many times they join to afflict and harraſs their own Country, though in pay against them. Of these some serve in the manner of our Men at Arms, some like unto our Light-horſe, others like the *Tartars*. And these they call commonly by the name of *Cofacks*, (or Adventurers): a race of men trained up to steal, waste, and depopulate, wherever they come, having little but their Swords to live by; a murderous and wicked people, chiefly in their Drunkenness, and that not only towards Strangers, but their natural Countrymen. The cause of that Sedition which for some years past, hath more depopulated and distracted that flourishing Kingdom than all the Armies of the *Turks*.

As for the Revenues of this King, they are computed at 600000 Crowns per annum, drawn chiefly out of Salt and some Mines of Silver: the Profits arising from the Demesns of the Crown being for the most part given away in Pensions and Gratitudes to the *Palatines*, *Chaffellans*, and other great men of the Realm, to make them the more pliant to his desires. Most of which Sum is put up yearly in his Coſſers, or expended in the purchase of Estates for his younger Sons: his Daughters being married at the publick Expence, and the expence of his Household defrayed by the *Lithuanians* and most part of *Poland*, for the time that he remains amongst them. Nor do the

Wars at any time exhaust his Treasure, in which case, by Decree of the Diets, he is unable to lay Impositions and Taxes upon the people, levied in the way of Excise, or upon their Lands: which do amount to such a Sum that by means hereof *King Stephen* maintained War three years against the *Moscovite*, without expending any thing of his own Revenue.

Chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom are, 1. The *Marian* or *Dutch* Knights, instituted under the Walls of *Acon* or *Ptolemais* in the *Holy Land*, in a Church whereof, dedicated to the blessed Virgin, their Order was first allowed, from whence they are called *Equites Mariani*. The Institution was in the year 1190. The first Great Master was *Henry Walpot*. The Christian being beaten out of *Syria*, they first removed to *Venice*, and from thence to *Marpurg* in *Hessia*, where, and in some other parts of *Germany*, they were endowed with fair Revenues: hence they were named *Equites Teutonic*, or the *Dutch* Knights. Sent into *Prussia* by the Emperor *Frederick* the second Anno 1239, or called in, as some say, by the *Moscovite* against the *Prussians*, they fixed their Seat at *Marinburg*, under *Sigismund* the second Great Master, Anno 1340, or thereabouts. In the time of *Ludovick*, the 18. Great Master, they were forced to submit to *Cafimir* the fourth of *Poland*, Anno 1450; which was the occasion of the long War between them and the *Polanders*, continuing till the time of *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, the 24. and last Great Master in this Country, who surrendered his Order (as before is said) to *Sigismund* the first, by whom he was created the first Duke of *Prussia*. Such of the Knights as disliketh this action retired into *Germany*, where they chose one *Walter Cronenberg* Master of the Order: the Title being afterwards conferred upon *Maximilian*, one of the younger Sons of *Maximilian* the second, but the Order sensibly decaying, and at this time of little estimation in the World.

2. Of the *Port glaive*, or *Sword-bearers*, (*Enſſeri* in *Latine*) confirmed by Pope *Innocent* the third, by whom they were sent into *Livonia*, to defend the Preachers of the Gospel against the Infidels, at the first Conversion of that Country. Being too weak to effect that business, they united themselves with the *Dutch* Knights by the Popes authority, and instead of *Knights of the Sword*, were called *Knights of the Cross*. Separated therefrom in the time of *Onorus* their Great Master, Anno 1541, the *Dutch* Knights being then dispossessed of *Prussia*, and these inclining wholly to the Opinions of *Luther*, they a while subsisted of themselves. What became of them afterwards, and how the Order was extinguished, hath been shown already in *Livonia*.

The Arms of this Kingdom are quarterly, 1. *Gules*, an Eagle Argent, crowned and armed Or, for the Realm of *Poland*; and 2. *Gules*, a Chevalier armed Cap-a-pee, advancing his Sword, Argent, mounted on a barbed Courſer of the second, for the Dukedom of *Lithuania*.

There are in the whole Realm of *Poland*

Of the *Romiſh* Church, Archbishops 3. Bishops 19.
 Of the *Greek* Church, Archbishops 2. Bishops 6.

Universities 4.

Viz.

Cracow.
Vilna.

Dantzick.
Koningsberg.

And so much for *POLAND*.

But this Division and the Subdivisions depending on it being since the coming in of the *Turks* almost out of use, we will now look upon it as it stands divided at the present, betwixt the Emperor, as King of *Hungary*, by a mixt Title of Defect and Election; and the great *Turk*, as Lord of the most part of it by Arms and conquest, two parts of three at least being forced into his possession. But here we are to understand, that by reason of the great Jealousies and Distrusts betwixt these great Princes, every ordinary Town is fortified and garrisoned like a Town of War, and so are almost all the Houses of the Nobility and Gentry throughout this Country: so that it were an infinite labour to specify in this place all those Towns and Fortresses which do occur in reading the *Hungarian* Histories of these later times. Some of the principal for Strength, Antiquity, or other mark of Estimation which is set upon them, we shall here subjoin.

And first in the Emperor's part of the Lower *Hungary*, we have; 1. *Rab*, on the meeting of the *Danub* with the River *Rob*, coming out of the Lower *Hungary*, whence the modern *Dutch* name, by *Antoine* called *Avabo*, by the French *Javarian*, by our present *Latinists* *Javarinum*. Memorable heretofore for being the Boundary of the two *Pannonias*, Inferior and Superior; heretofore divided: of late most principally for a strong Fortress against the *Turks*, by whom it was once taken, *Anno* 1594, but within four years after again recovered by the Industry of Monsieur de *Vaudrecourt*, a French Gentleman, as the French-men say; but as the *German* write, of the Earl of *Swartzenburg*, at that time Governour of *Komara*. 2. *Altburg*, in the Road leading towards *Austria*, a strong Town, and the best out-work of *Vienna*, for which cause most aimed at by the *Turks*, but without success. 3. *Cafre-Novo*, a new-erected Fortress, as the name importeth, but of special strength, erected purposefully, in the time of the Emperor *Rodolph*, to confront the *Turks*. 4. *Sabaria*, anciently the Metropolis of *Pannonia Superior*, the Birth-place of *S. Martin* Bishop of *Tours*; now of less account, by the *Hungarians* called *Kimarrowinbath*. Others conceive it to be that which the *Dutch* call *Leibnitz*. 5. *Sridan*, the *Sidrana* of *Ptolemy* in the Confines of *Hungaria* and *Dalmatia*, by the common people called *Strigman*. A Town of good repute, till destroyed by the *Goths*; but after made of more esteem by the Birth of *St. Hieron*, one of the four chief Fathers of the *Latine* Church, and for all parts of Humane Learning nothing inferior to the best of the *Grecian* Sages. 6. *Sopron*, (*Sopronium* in *Latine*) on the Borders of *Austria*. 7. *Komara* a strong piece, in an Island of the same name created by the Circling of the *Danub*, oft-times attempted by the *Turks*, but in vain at all times. Then in the Upper *Hungary* we have 8. *Presburg*, on the edge of *Austria* also, but on the North-side of the River, the *Carnum* of *Anonimus*, but by the modern *Latines* called *Pozsonium*; seated in a pleasant healthful Country, on the River *Lye*, whose waters the *Danub* there receiveth; in the Suburbs whereof, on the top of an high Mountain, standeth a goodly Castle, the ordinary Residence of the Emperours, as Kings of *Hungary*. For though it be a little City and not very beautiful, yet being safe by the Neighbourhood of *Austria*, it hath been made the Metropolis of this Kingdom since the loss of *Buda*. Before the Walls herofore did Count *Dampierre*, one of the chief Commanders of *Ferdinand* the second, in the Wars of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. 9. *Fildak*, a place of great Strength and consequence taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent in his first Attempts upon this Kingdom, and lost by *Amurat* the third, the *Turk* in vain attempting the recovery of it. 10. *Nitria*, a Bishop's See on the River *Bach*. 11. *Vacia*, a Bishops See also, on the River *Danubius*, once in possession of the

Turks, but restored again unto the Christians at the making of the Peace between the Emperor *Rodolph* and Sultan *Achmet*. 12. *Cafrova*, a strong piece towards *Transylvania*. 13. *Lippe*, in the Borders of that Country also, commanding the Entrances thereof and therefore much affected by the Princes or Vaindotes of that Province; possessed by whom in the latter times of the Emperor *Rodolph*, it was by them incorporated into *Transylvania*; but how long it continued so, I am not able to say. 14. *Tokys*, a place of great strength, and as great Fidelity, the people and Garrison herofore holding out for the Emperor *Rodolph*, *Anno* 1605, against some of his rebellious Subjects, in the time of so extreme a Famine, that the Soldiers did not only eat two Boys, but many times call lots who should eat one another. 15. *Eperies*, a place of no less consequence, and exemplary Loyalty. 16. *Newfal*, or *Newhenfel*, a strong Town, and so strongly fortified, not far from the spring-head of the River *Gran*, which in the year 1621 proved fatal to that great Commander the Count of *Bucagy*, who at the Siege herofore the Town being then in Rebellion against *Ferdinand* the second, Emperor and King of *Hungary* lost his life. For going privately to view some places of advantage for a general Assault, he fell into an Ambush of *Hungarians*, who suddenly set upon him, discomfited his small Party, killed first his Horse under him, and at last himself, having in that Skirmish received 16 wounds. There were slain with him at the same time also *Torquato*, an Italian Prince, Count *Ferdugo*, a Spanish Earl, and one of the Gentlemen of the House of *Austria*.

Places of most importance in the *Turk* possession are, 1. *Buda*, by the *Dutch* called *Offen*, supposed by some to be the *Curia* of *Ptolemy*; by others the *Atrium* of *Anonimus*; and to have took the name of *Buda*, either from *Buda* the Brother of *Attila*, said to be the Re-founder of it, or from the *Budin*, a *Scythian* People, mentioned in *Herodotus*. It is unevenly seated amongst Hills on the Southern Shore of the *Danub*, but in the most fruitful part of all the Country, exceedingly well fortified, especially by a strong Castle, thought to be impregnable, and therefore very carefully guarded by the jealous *Turks*; adorned with many Buildings, both private and publick and furnished with some Medicinal Bathes, which owe much of their pomp and sumptuousness to their new Masters the *Turks*, who took it from the Christians *August* 20. 1591. *Solyman* the Magnificent then being present at the taking of it. Before that time the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Hungary*, and the chief City of the Kingdom; as now the Seat of the chief *Bassa*, or Lord-Lieutenant for the Grand Seigneur. 2. *Alba Regalis*, by the *Dutch* called *Stul-Weissburg*, betwixt the *Danub* and the *Dreus*, strongly, but unwisely seated, in the midst of an inaccessible Marsh, joined to the firm land by three broad Causeys, blockt up at the ends with three great Bulwarks; but for all the Situation of it, taken by the *Turk* *Anno* 1543; before that time the usual place both for the Coronation and Intermitt of the Kings of *Hungary*; recovered from the *Turks*, *Anno* 1601, and lost again unto them in the next year after. 3. *Walpo*, or *Palpo*, on the River *Dravus*, taken by *Solyman* marching towards the *Alba Regalis*, to leave no enemies behind him at the Siege of that City. 4. *Gran*, in *Latine* called *Strigium*, seated upon the *Danub*, but opposite to the Mouth of *Gran*, which arising in the Upper *Hungary* doth there end its course, whence this Town had the name of *Gran*, its founder, of a long time with the See of an Arch-bishop, who is the Primate of the Kingdom, and of great power in all business which concern the State; taken by the *Turks* *Anno* 1534, *Solyman* the magnificent being in person at the Siege, and lost again, *Anno* 1595, at what time *Sit*

Thomas

Thomas Arundel of *Wardor* Castle in *Wiltshire* carried himself so gallantly, that forcing the Water-Tower, and taking thence with his own hands the *Turkish* Banner, the Emperor *Rodolph* created him a Count of the Empire, and King *Tamas* afterwards made him Lord *Arundel* of *Wardor*; but the Christians were not suffered to keep it long; for being many times after besieged by the *Turks*, who were resolved not to end the War without it, it was finally recovered by them, *Anno* 1605. 5. *Funkirchen*, in *Latine* called *Quinque Ecclesie*, from five Churches in it, a Bishop's See, conceived to be the *Tomburium* of *Animmus*, taken by the *Turks* *Anno* 1566, and giving them a great Command on the River *Dravus*, upon which it is seated. 6. *Sirmih*, betwixt the *Danub* and the *Sam*, or *Savus*, now noted for a Vein of the best Wines, but otherwise of no estimation at the present, though heretofore of most account in all this Province; the Metropolis (as I conceive) of *Pannonia Inferior*, the Seat of the *Præfatus* *Prætorio Illyric* before the Division of the Empire, honoured with the personal Residence of many of the Emperours, and made in those respects the Stage of many great and memorable Actions. For here *Vernatus* or *Brutatus*, as other call him, took on himself the Purple Robe, and was declared Emperor by the *Illyrian* Souldiers lying here in Garrison: here, being deserted by his own Souldiers, he submitted himself unto *Constantinus*, the Son of *Constantine* the Great: here *Gratian* the Emperor, Son of *Valentinian* the first was born; and, finally here was held a Council against *Phoebus*, Bishop of this City, who held that *Christ* had no existence of God the Father till he was conceived and born of the *Virgin*, which Tenet, being contrary as well to that of the *Arian* as the Orthodox Prelates, was here condemned by both parties in the time of the said *Constantinus*, (who was there in person) *Anno* 356. 7. *Ziget*, a strong Town, situate in a Marsh-ground on the North-side of the *Dra*, taken by *Solyman* the magnificent, *Anno* 1566, who there ended his Days. 8. *Maria*, upon the Confluence of the *Dra* and the *Danub*, once a Roman Colony, and as remarkable in the Stories of elder times as 9. *Belgrade*, on the Confluence of the *Sam* and the *Danub*, hath been in the later. This last being a Town of divers names: first called *Taurunum* or *Taurunum*; after *Alba Græcia*, by the *Dutch* accordingly *Greichs Weissburg*, by the French and modern *Latinists* *Belgrade* and *Belgradum*, from a beautiful situation of it, hemmed in upon the North with the *Danub*, on the East with the *Sam*, on the other sides defended with strong Walls, deep Ditches, and impregnable Rampiers. It belonged anciently to the *Despots* of *Servia*, by whom it was conveyed over to *Sigismund*, King of *Hungary*, as best able to keep it, the *Despots* being satisfied with Lands and Territories of a better value. It was the Bulwark heretofore of *Christendom* against the *Turks*, who, received before it many great and notable Repulses, (of which the most memorable were those of *Amurat* the second, and *Mahomet* surnamed the Great;) but taken at last to the great loss and shame of the Christian World, not succouring the Defendants in convenient time, by *Solyman* the magnificent, *Anno* 1520. Then on the North-side of the River, in the Upper *Hungary*, there is 10. *Pesth*, over against *Buda*, on the River *Danub*. 11. *Colucca*, an Arch-bishop's See, on the same River also. 12. *Zegedin*, on the West-side of the River *Tibis*. 13. *Ayria*, an old Bishop's See; and strongly fortified, having a great Command over all those parts of the Country in vain besieged by *Italy* the *Bassa* of *Buda* with an Army of 36000 *Turks*, in the time of *Solyman* the Magnificent, *Anno* 1552, but taken by *Mahomet* the third, himself lying at the Siege in person, *Anno* 1578; not far from

which, immediately after the taking of *Ayria*, *Mahomet* gave the Christians so great an Overthrow, that, if he had pursued his Victory, it is thought that he had annihilated the Conquest of *Hungary*; as on the other side, the *Turks* were so worried and disordered at first, (*Mahomet* himself and most of his Commanders flying out of the Field) that, had the Christians followed the chase, and not booked themselves to the Spoil of the Camp, they had in probability for ever freed that Kingdom from the *Turkish* Tyranny. This Battle, from a Village near unto which it was fought, was called the Battle of *Kerflure*, a Battle of so strange a Fortune, that the Conquerors were driven out of the Field, and the vanquished Army ran away with the Victory. 14. *Hatroon*, a very strong Town, and as strongly garrisoned, recovered by the Christians after two long Sieges, and many sharp Assaults, *Anno* 1558, and presently again abandoned, upon the noise of *Mahomet*'s coming into *Hungary*, with a dreadful Army. 15. *Temeswar*, on the East of that River towards *Transylvania*, the ordinary Residence of a *Turkish* *Bassa*. 16. *Gyula*, a strong Town on the Borders of *Transylvania*, betrayed by *Nicholas Keresk*, Governour herofore, in the last year of *Solyman*; on a promise of some great Reward; but *Selimus* the Son of *Solyman* caused him to be put into a Barrel stuck full of Nails, with the points turned inwards, and so to be tumbled up and down till he (most miserably) died: there being on the Barrel this inscription written, viz. *Here receive the reward of thy Avarice and Treason; Gyula thou seldest for Gold: if thou be not faithful to Maximilian thy natural Lord, neither wilt thou be true to me.* 17. *Singidun* on the South of *Gyula*, betwixt which and *Belgrade* are the Fields of *Maren*, memorable for the slaughter of 50000 *Turks*, slain here in Battle under the fortunate Conduct of *John Hunyadi*.

The first Inhabitants of this Country on the North-side of the *Danub*, and the West of the *Tis*, or *Tib* *is*, were the *Jazyges* *Mezani*, and on the East-side or the *Tis* the *Daci*, known, but not conquered, by the *Romans*; on the South of the *Danub* the *Pannoni*, (by some called the *Pames*) subdivided into the *Asdi* *Latavici*, *Wericiami*, *Jassii*, *Qseriati*, and some others inhabiting the West parts thereof, for *Pannonia Superior*, and the *Ercumales*, *Brouci*, *Aravisci*, and *Scordisci*, dwelling in the Eastern parts, or *Pannonia Inferior*. First conquered by the *Romans*, *Anno* U.C. 719. *L. Cornificus* and *Sexsus Pompeius* being Consuls; but many times rebelling, and not fully subdued till forty years after the Infurrection of *Bato*, being then crushed by *Augustus Caesar*, and thereby the whole Province settled in Obedience. Divided first into two parts or Provinces, *Superior* and *Inferior*; out of which *Savaria*, and *Valeria* were after taken, as before is noted. Under the *Romans* it continued, till subdued by the *Huns*, a People not heard of in the time of the *Roman* Greatness, unless we take them, as some do, for the *Chuni* of *Ptolemy*. But being those *Chuni* are placed by him betwixt the *Bastarna* and the *Revalani*, on the South-West of *Borythene*, I see not how to fit that dwelling upon the *Himis*, who were shut up within the Fens of *Palus Marotis*, and by all the Writers of those times accounted a Nation not so much as heard of when they first set footing in *Europe*. Letting that therefore pass as an improbable and ill-grounded Conjecture, certain it is that from the Fen-Countries of *Asia*, on the other side of the *Tanais*, they came first into *Europe*, living in their own Country a poor and miserable life, till God thought fit to make use of them as a Scurge to chastise the Christians of the West, then grown luxurious, and almost incorrigible, by too much Felicity; and to that end miraculously opened them a Passage never found before. For having neither mind

nor meaning to invade the Roman Empire, which possibly they had not heard of, nor knowing how to clear themselves of that uncomfortable Country in which they dwelt; it pleased the great Disposer of all things, by following an Hart or Stag which they had in chase, to throw them a safe passage into Europe through the Fens of *Mæris*, which before they thought to be unpassable. The retreat made by those Hunters at their coming back, of the port made by those Hunters at their coming back, of the rich and pleasant Land which they had for their Clans, with all the several Rascalties depending on them, to flock into Europe: into which they fell so suddenly and unexpectedly, that they forced the *Goths*, then dwelling on the North-side of the *Ister*, to fly over that River, and supplicate to the Emperor *Valens* for new Habitations. This happened in the year 373, *Athanaricus* the second, or *Ermanaricus*, (as *Jornandes* calls him) being then King of the *Goths*, and *Balamir* Captain of the *Huns*. Fleeted with this Victory, *Balamir*, or *Balamber*, (as *Sigebert* calls him) takes the name of King, Anno 386, or thereabout, and following the course of the *Ister* towards *Pannonia*, which he had an aim at, found a great Army raised on the other side of the River, of purpose to encounter with him, commanded by *Detricus* General for the Roman Army, and *Macrinus*, (or *Matrimus*) Commander in chief of the *Pannonians*. Both Generals pre-suming too much on the depth and wideness of the River, and knowing well that the *Huns* had neither Boat nor Ship to pass them over, betook themselves unto their Rest with too much security. But the *Huns*, to the number of 100000, having crossed the River upon Bladders, fell on the Quarters of the *Romans*, whom they flew like Sheep, *Macrinus* after this fought two Battles with them, in the first whereof he was victorious, there being lost on both sides about 30000 men: but in the second being slain, and his Army routed, the *Huns* possessed themselves of both *Pannonia's*, buying this Victory with the loss of 40000 men, in the year 401. *Balamir* being dead, *Blada* and *Attila* his Sons succeeded, Anno 436; and *Odoas*, dying also in the year 450, left *Attila* sole King of the *Huns*, that great Scourge of the Christian World, who having first wasted *Ibrycum* and *Thrace*, compelled the Emperor *Theodosius* the second to buy his Peace of him at the price of 6000 pound weight of Gold, and an yearly Tribute. Invited afterwards by *Geiseric* King of the *Vandals* in *Africa* to War upon the *Goths* of *Spain*, (out of which Country they had driven him) he forced his way through all the Nations between him and *Gaul*, and beating down all the Towns and Fortresses on the River *Rhene*, on that side of the Roman Empire, entered that Province in the Reign of the *Valentinian*, divided at that time betwixt the *Romans*, *French*, *Burgundians*, and the *Goths* of *Spain*. Discomfited by *Aetius* and the Kings of those Nations then in League against him, in that famous Battle near *Cholais*, spoken of before, (with the loss of 18000 of his men) he went back by the way of *Italy*, where he sicked *Aquileia*, *Millain*, *Vincenia*, *Pavia*; and not without much difficulty was diverted from the Spoil of *Rome*, by the intercession of Pope *Leo*: committing in all places such unpeakeable Cruelties, that he was always after called (as he styled himself) *Malleus orbis*, and *Flagellum Dei*. Returning home he picked a Quarrel with *Mariarius* the Eastern Emperor, as if the Tribute promised him by *Theodosius* had not been well paid. But being pacified for the present, and mindful of his former project upon the *Goths*, he resolved once again to try his Fortune with that People; and was again defeated by them under the Conduct of *Theodismund* the third King of the *Frigoths*, or *Goths* of *Spain*, and so re-

turned ingloriously to his Country. Choked after with his own blood, violently breaking out at his Nostrils on his Wedding-night, he left *Pannonia* to his Sons, named *Hernac*, *Aladaricus* and *Chabas*, who, disagreeing amongst themselves about the Kingdom gave an advantage to the *Goths*; then possessed of *Dacia*, to make themselves Masters of this also; who were scarce through-warm in their new Estates, when sent by *Zeno* the Emperor into *Italy* against *Odoacer* where they finally perished. After this time we hear no more of the *Goths* in *Pannonia*, or any-where of the *Huns*, at all, unless acting under the *Avars*, or joining with them in the name of *Hun-Avars*, as some think they did.

The Country, being thus left to the next Invader, was presently possessed by the *Longobards*, said to be originally of *Scandia*, and there called *Wimili*, (and of the *Wimilith* in *Scandia* *Jornandes* speaketh) afterwards, *ob longas barbas*, *Longobardi*. Concerning this last name, take along with you this old Wives Tale, recited, but not approved of, by *Paulus Diaconus*. The *Vandals*, warring upon the *Wimili* went unto *Goddan*, (he should rather have said *Wodin*) to sue for the Victory: which the *Wimili* hearing, wrought by countermine, and sent *Gambitta*, the Mother of their King *Anjon*, on the like bulwicks to *Frea*, *Goddan's* Wife. So it was that *Goddan* had promised the *Vandals*, that they should be victorious whom he saw first in the morning: Whereupon *Frea*, willing to please *Gambitta*, and not loving, as it seemeth, the sight of Men, gave order that all the Women of the *Wimili*, parting their Hair, bringing one her Lover one Cheek, the other over the other, and tying both under their Chin, should appear betimes before the Window the next morning. This they did, and the fleeing them to her Husband, he demanded of her, *Qui sunt isti Longobardi*? Hence the occasion of the name. And like enough they might be called so from the length of their beards, though otherwise the whole Tale be vain and foolish. Compelled by scarcity of Victuals to seek new Habitations, they killed first on the Island *Rugia* and the adjacent Countries; and settled about the time of *Cornelius Tacitus* in those parts of *Germany*, which now make up the Bifindricks of *Meyburg* and *Halberstadt*. Afterwards, finding that Country too narrow for them, they left their Dwellings there, and fell upon some parts of *Poland*; next on this *Pannonia*: and at last, having tarried in *Pannonia* 42 years, or thereabouts, at the solicitation of *Nannus*, (provoked by many Indignities from the Emperor *Seppia*, the Wife of *Justinus* the second) An. 568, under the leading of their King *Alboinus*, they went into *Italy*; and there lost their Kingdom; being at the end of 206 years overthrown by the power of *Charles* the Great, the mightiest Monarch of the West. Of their Kings, before their coming into this Country, I shall only make mention of *Lamifus* their third King, and of him this Story. *Agimond*, the second King of the *Lombards*, one morning went a-hunting: as he was riding by a Fifth-pond, he espied seven Children prajling for life, which one, as said *Paulus Diaconus*, (it may be many Harlots) had been delivered of, and most barbarously thrown into the water. The King amazed at this spectacle, put his Boat-spear or Hunting-pole among them. One of the Children handed the spear, and the King, softly drawing back his hand, wasted the Child to the Shore. This Boy he named *Lamifus*, from *Lama*, which in their language signifieth a Fifth-pond. He was in the King's Court carefully brought up, where there appeared in him such tokens of Vertue and Courage, that after the death of *Agimond*, he was by the *Lombards* chosen to succeed him. This *Lamifus*, together with his Predecessors, and Successors, were thus Recorded.

The

The LONGOBARDIAN Kings.

- An C.
 383 1. *Agim.* 10.
 393 2. *Agimond.* 33.
 426 3. *Lamifus.* 3.
 429 4. *Lobe*, or *Lehe*. 40.
 469 5. *Hildeboc.* 4.
 473 6. *Godoboc.* 12.
 485 7. *Doppon*, or *Claffo*. 5.
 490 8. *Thamus.* 10.
 500 9. *Vacon.* 18.
 518 10. *Valcarius.* 7.
 525 11. *Adwinus*, who first brought the *Longobards* into *Hungary*, Anno 1526.
 543 12. *Alboinus*, who in the year 583, by the solicitation of *Narfes* went into *Italy*, and erected there the *Longobardian* Kingdom; which 206 years after was destroyed by the Puissance of *Charles*, the Great.

The History of this People epitomized by *Du Baras* (but with far more of the Poet than the true Historian) is summed up thus.

The *Lombard* strong, who was in *Scowland* nurs'd,
 On *Rugeland* and *Livonia* sojourn'd first.
 Then having well reveng'd on the *Bulgarian*
 The death of *Agimond*, the bold *Barbarian*
 Surprized *Poland*: thence anon he presses
 In *Danow's* Streams to rinse his Amber Tresses.
 When he freighted after had surrendered
 The doubled-named *Ister's* flow'ry bed
 To scar-fac'd *Hugn's*; he hunteth furiously
 The rest of *Gauls* from wealthy *Insurbie*.
 There reigns 200 years, triumphing fo,
 That Royal *Tefin* might compare with *Pe*.
 Which after all in *French* men hands again,
 Won by the Sword of worthy *Charlemaign*.

The *Longobards* having thus left the Stage, the *Avars* entered. Some say they were the *Avarin* of *Pliny*, a *Sarmatian* People; but most probably (as *Nicetus*) a People of *Scythia*, inhabiting about *Palus Maotis*. They first began to stir in the reign of *Tiberius* the 2. (forced by the *Turks*, their next neighbours, to pass farther Westward) and gave that Emperor's Forces a great Overthrow at the Mouth of *Danubius*. *Tiberius* notwithstanding did somewhat quiet them; but he being dead, they took heart again, and with great Courage warred upon *Mauritius*, his next Successor. Their King at that time was called *Caganus*, we may English it *Cham*, as not being the proper name of any one; but the common Attribute of all their Chiefs. This *Caganus* made his first Wars upon the *Turks*, which People were about that time first made known to the Inhabitants of *Europe*, and with the help of the remainder of the *Huns*, invaded and possessed *Pannonia*, vanquishing both the Emperor's Forces, and the *Goths* and *Gepide*, who had still kept some footing in it, and on the departure of the *Lombards* were of no final power, the name of *Goths* being swallowed up in that of the *Gepide*, though not quite extinct. After this Blow *Mauritius* raised a second War, but more with an intent to revenge himself on his own Soldiers, which had formerly offended him, than with hope of prevailing against the Enemy. *Comenichus*, according to the Emperor's directions, betrayeth his Army; 12000 of them were slain, and the rest taken. *Caganus*, an heroic and merciful Conquerour, offers to ransom them for 81. 6d. a piece (for so much was that the Emperor, as much loving his Gold as hating his Soldiers; had denied that Condition; he offered

them all for one *Nannus*, and after for half a one: but being also here unsatisfied, he put them also to the Sword. For this cause the rest of the Soldiers not long after made *Phocas*, one of the Centurions, Emperor; and he most barbarously stewed the Emperor in his own Blood, putting him, his Wife, Friends, and Children to the Sword. After this we find mention of them in the time of *Phocas* and *Heraclius*, foraging *Thrace* to the very Walls of *Constantinople*, afterwards settled in *Pannonia* and part of *Noricum*, containing now the Upper *Hungary* and some part of *Austria*, divided from the *Bavarians* by the River *Enns*. They continued possessed hereof till the time of *Charles* the Great, by whom after a War of eight years, they were utterly subdued, and driven out of these parts; their Country being peopled with new *Dutch* Colonies: the remainders of them were forced to betake themselves into *Transylvania*, or that part of *Hungaria* which lieth beyond the River *Tibiscus*, there subject for a time to *Suanibogius*, King of the *Moravians*; in whose overthrow by the *Hungarians* they were so broken, that their Name was never heard of.

And so we come to the *Hungarians*, the last and principal Actors on the Stage of this Kingdom, the givers of the present Name: before whose coming into this Country it had no other name than that of *Pannonia*; for ought I can find, in any Authors for those Times. A *Scythian* People; as the *Huns* and *Avars* were, by *Jornandes* calls the *Hungary*; first known in *Europe* by their Aids in the time of the Emperor *Amulphus*, when, wandering in *Sarmatia Europæa* without any certain A-board, they were by him called into this Country against *Suanibogius* King of the *Moravians* before mentioned; from whom they took *Transylvania*, and so much of the modern *Hungary* as lieth on both sides of *Tibiscus*, inhabited at that time by the *Slaves* and some scattered remnants of the *Avars*, whom they killed up, or forced to seek new Habitations, planting themselves in those places which they took from them, and now the Upper *Hungary*. In the right of *Lewis* the 4. Successor to *Amulphus*, they passed over the *Danow*, and subdued *Pannonia*, dismembering it from the Empire and name of *Germany*: after that they ranged with unmerciful Cruelty over all *Germany*, *Italy*, *Greece*, *Scythia*, *Dacia*, till, broken by the Forces of the *Dutch* Emperours, and mollified by the softness of the Christian Religion, they became more quiet. Their Government at the first was under Dukes: *Stephen* the 4. Duke, on his receiving of the Gospel, being honoured with the Title of King, enjoyed by his Successors to this very day. In the time of *Ladislaus*, furnished the *Saints*, *Dalmatia* and *Croatia* were added to the Crown of *Hungary*, bequeathed to him by his Sister *Zelemira*, the Widow of the last King. In that of *Bela* the 4. the *Tartarians*, to the number of 50000 fighting men, brake into this Country, and like a violent Whirlwind carried all before them, Anno 1248, tyrannizing here for 3 years space, committing merciless Massacres, and making horrible Spoils wherever they came. In that of *Stephen* the 4. *Austria* and *Bulgaria* were made tributary. By the Daughters of *Bela* and *Stephen*, both the 4. of those names, the Houses of *Naples* and *Bohemia* came to claim the Kingdom of *Hungary*; as *Lewis* the first, by *Elizabeth* his Mother, Sister of *Constance* the 2. did the Kingdom of *Poland*. The rest of their affairs shall be briefly touched at in the following Catalogue of

The Dukes and Kings of HUNGARY.

A.C.

1. *Cusala*, the first Duke (or Captain) of the *Hungars*, subdued *Transylvania* and the Upper *Hungary*, and passed over the *Danow*; slain

12

- in his Wars against the Dutch then possessed of *Pannonia*.
2. *Tamas*, subdued *Pannonia* or the Lower *Hungary*.
 3. *Geisa*, Son of *Tamas*.
 - 1000 4. *Stephen*, the fourth Duke, and first King of *Hungary*.
 - 1039 5. *Peter*, furnished the *Alman*, Nephew of *Stephen*, depoyed by *Andrew* and *Bela*, Sons of *Ladislaus*, Son of *Geisa* the first, and Brother of *Stephen* the first King.
 - 1047 6. *Andrew*, eldest Son of that *Ladislaus*.
 - 1059 7. *Bela*, the Brother of *Andrew*.
 - 1062 8. *Solomon*, the Son of *Andrew*, expelled his Kingdom by
 - 1075 9. *Geisa* II. Son of *Bela*.
 - 1078 10. *Ladislaus*, furnished the Saint, Brother of *Geisa* the second.
 - 1096 11. *Coloman*, Son of *Geisa* 2.
 - 1114 12. *Stephen* II. Son of *Coloman*.
 - 1132 13. *Bela* II. Nephew of *Geisa* the 2. by his Son *Almus*.
 - 1142 14. *Geisa* III. Son of *Bela* the 2.
 - 1162 15. *Stephen* III. Son of *Geisa* the 3.
 - 1172 16. *Bela* III. Brother of *Stephen* the 3.
 - 1191 17. *Emericus*, Son of *Bela* the 3.
 - 1201 18. *Ladislaus* II. Son of *Emericus*, reigned but 6 months, being slain by Treason very young, and without Illue.
 - 1201 19. *Andrew* II. Son of *Bela* the 3. and Brother of *Emericus*.
 - 1236 20. *Bela* IV. Son of *Andrew* the 2.
 - 1271 21. *Stephen* IV. Son of *Bela* the 4.
 - 1273 22. *Ladislaus* III. Son of *Stephen* the 4.
 - 1290 23. *Andrew* III. Nephew to *Bela* the 4. by his Brother *Stephen*.
 - 1302 24. *Charles*, furnished *Martel* Son of *Charles* King of *Naples*, by *Mary*, Daughter to *Stephen* the 4. Against whom was chosen *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, Son of *Wenceslaus* the second, and of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter of *Bela* the fourth, and after three years *Otho* of *Bavaria*, descended from *Elizabeth*, another of the Daughters of *Bela* the fourth, was chosen also by a Faction against *Wenceslaus*. But *Wenceslaus* surrendering his Claim to *Otho*, and *Otho* not long after being forced to renounce his Title, *Charles Martel* remained King of the whole.
 - 1345 25. *Ludovicus*, Nephew to *Charles Martel* by his Son *Caribert*, succeeded King of *Poland* also, in right of *Elizabeth* his Mother, Sister of *Casmir* the 2.
 - 1383 26. *Charles* II. King of *Naples*, descended from *Charles* of *Naples*, and *Mary*, Daughter of *Stephen* the 4. before mentioned, by their Son *John* of *Durazzo*, one of the younger Brothers of *Charles Martel*, poisoned after a short Reign by the Widow of the former King, to make a way for her Daughter to the Crown.
 - 1387 27. *Sigismund* Emperour, King of *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Luxemburg*, succeeded in right of *Mary* his Wife eldest Daughter of *Lewis* or *Ludovicus*, her younger Sister *Edugis* being Queen of *Poland*.
 - 1438 28. *Albert* of *Austria*, Emperour, and King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, in right of *Elizabeth* his Wife, the Daughter of *Sigismund*.
 - 1410 29. *Ladislaus* or *Vladislaus*, Son of *Jagello* King

of *Poland*, in the minority of *Ladislaus* the Son of *Albert* chosen King of *Hungary*; unfortunately slain at the Battle of *Varnus*, with 30000 of his people; and perhaps his Perjury might deserve it. For having made and sworn a Truce with the *Turk*, the Pope's Legate, upon a seeming advantage, absolved him of his Oath, and drew him into the Field. At the beginning the Christians had the better: but at the last, *Amurath* the 2. against whom they fought, lifting up his eyes to Heaven, and desiring *Christ* to look upon the perfidious dealing wherewith his Followers had dishonoured him, re-encouraged his men, and so got the Victory.

1444 30. *Ladislaus* V. King of *Bohemia*, the Son of *Albert* by *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Sigismund* and *Mary*.

1458 31. *Matthias Corvinus*, Son of the famous *Hunniades*, after the death of *Ladislaus* the 5. King of *Hungary*.

1491 32. *Vladislaus* II. or *Ladislaus* VI. Son of *Casmir* the 4. of *Poland*, and of *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *Albert*, succeeding in the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*; his three younger Brothers successively in that of *Poland*.

1517 33. *Ludovicus* II. King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, both born dead before the ordinary course of nature; being in the 21. year of his Age, and in the tenth of his Reign, unfortunately drawn unto the Field, to encounter *Solyman* the Magnificent, one of the hardest Captains in his time. The Battle was fought at a Village called *Mogacz*, or *Mugacz*, just betwixt *Belgrade* and *Buda*; in which 19000 of the *Hungarians* were slain, and the young King drowned in the Flight. A most lamentable Discomfiture. *Lewis* thus dead, *John Sepusio*, Vaivod or Governour of *Transylvania*, was by the States chosen King of *Hungary*. But *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Austria*, and Brother unto *Charles* the fifth, challenged the Kingdom in right of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter to *Vladislaus*, and Sister to *Lewis* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. On this Pretence he invaded the Kingdom, and drove out *John* his Competitor; who, to recover his Right, called *Solyman* the Magnificent into the Country, who took so fast footing in it, that his Successors could never since be removed.

1527 34. *John Sepusio*, Vaivod of *Transylvania*, chosen King upon the Death of *Ludovicus*, the 2. outed by *Ferdinand* of *Austria*, restored by *Solyman* the Great *Turk* died Anno 1540: after whose death the *Hungarians* caused his Son *Stephen*, an Infant, to be crowned King in his Cradle, of which he was immediately deprived by *Solyman* his pretended Patron, who, under colour of preserving that Kingdom for him, seized *Buda*, and other the chief Towns thereof, which he after kept unto himself.

1540 35. *Ferdinand* of *Austria*, elected King of *Bohemia*, in respect to the Lady *Anne*, his Wife, Sister of *Ludovicus* the 2. Anno 1527, did in the same Right lay Claim to the Crown of *Hungary*, chosen to which by a party prepared for him, he was always in contention with

with *John de Sepusio*; each of them acknowledged King by their several Factions: but he was by both sides received on the death of *John*.

1562 36. *Maximilian*, Emperour, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Archduke of *Austria*, Son of *Ferdinand*.

1572 37. *Rodolphus*, Emperour, &c. Son of *Maximilian*.

1608 38. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*, afterwards Emperour.

1618 39. *Ferdinand* II. of *Graz*, next Heir unto *Matthias* of the House of *Austria*, afterwards Emperour, &c. against whom a Party of *Hungarians* called in *Bethlen Gabor*, Prince of *Transylvania*, whom they elected for their King intending (as they said) to crown him also. But the Affairs of *Bohemia* going on the Emperour's side, *Gabor* relinquished his pretensions, and hearkned to a Peace betwixt them.

1625 40. *Ferdinand* III. Son of *Ferdinand* the second, chosen and crowned King in the life of his Father, and in the year 1627 King of *Bohemia* also, succeeding after him in the Empire, and now living, Anno 1648.

This Kingdom doth pretend it self to be Elective, and to have special Privileges indulged them by their former Princes; and anciently indeed it was so in both respects, the last especially; King *Andrew* giving authority to his Prelates, Peers, and other people, *Ut sine nota alicujus Insultatus*, &c. that without any imputation of Disloyalty they might contradict, oppose, and resist their King, if he did any thing in violation of their Laws and Sanctions. But both their liberty of Elections and pretence of Privileges have been so shaken and restrained by their Kings of the House of *Austria*, that the Elections are become matter of Formality only, and their Privileges depending wholly on their Prince's pleasure, now grown too potent for them to contend withal, unless they should betray their Country into the hands of the *Turks*. To whom some of them have exprest some strong Inclinations, the Oppressions laid upon them by the *Austrian* Family being deemed unaffordable.

The Forces of this Kingdom, when it was entire, may best be seen by those great Armies which they have brought into the Field against the *Turk*. By whom two parts of three being since subdued, that which remains must not be thought able to answer the proportion of former times; though they have done more than could be rea-

sonably expected from it. For at the Battle of *Kecsehar*, Anno 1596, there were 6000 *Hungarian* Horse, and 10000 Foot of this Nation only; besides those of *Germany* and *Transylvania*: and the next year, notwithstanding the Discomfiture of that Army, they raised no less than 20000 Horse and Foot, on the notice of some Preparations among the *Turks*. 'Tis true, their Foot are commonly but meanly armed; the defect wherein is rather to be imputed to the Prince, than unto the people, who can but bring their Bodies (which is all they have) for defence of their Country. And for their Horse, (whom they call *Heyducks*) maintained in continual readiness at the charge of the Nobility and principal Gentry, they are next Cousins to the *Cosacks*, almost as mischievous as they, and hold as strict Intelligence with the *Turks* as those do with the *Tartars*.

The chief Revenues of this Kingdom come from the Silver-Mines, out of which is yearly raised about a million and a half of Guildens. *Maximilian* the second made it up two millions, by seizing on the Lands of Cathedral and Collegiate Churches, and assigning annual Pensions to the Bishops, Canons, and other Religious persons. Most of which Sum comes clearly to the Emperour's Coffers, the Precidary Souldiers being paid with Contribution-money raised upon the Country; and the Lieutenant-general, whose entertainment comes to 30000 Dollars yearly, defrayed upon their Purves also.

The chief Order of Knighthood in this Kingdom was that of the *Dragon*, instituted by *Sigismund* Emperour and King hereof, at such time as by the Council of *Constance* against *John Hus* and *Hierom* of *Prague*, and by the Intercessions of his Sword proved upon their Followers, he had cast down (as he conceived) the Dragon of Heretic and Schism. But the Device proved of no long continuance, expiring almost with the Author.

The Arms of *Attila* the *Hun*, once the King of this Country by the name of *Pannonia*, are said to have been *Guel*, a Falcon displayed Or, murrened and crowned Argent. But the Arms of the Kingdom at this time are Barrewife of eight pieces, *Guel* and *Argent*.

There are in HUNGARY

Archbishops 2.

Bishops 13.

And so much for HUNGARY.

O F

SCLAVONIA.

SCLAVONIA is bounded on the East with *Servia*, *Macedonia*, and *Epirus*, from which it is parted by the River *Drinus*, and a Line drawn from thence unto the *Adriatick*, on the West with *Carniola* in *Germany*, and *Istria* in the Seignory of *Venice*, from which last it is divided by the River *Asia*, on the North with *Hungary*, on the South with the *Adriatick* Sea. So called from the *Slaves*, or *Slavi*, a *Sarmatian* People, of whom more anon.

It contains in length from *Asira* to the River *Drinus*, according to *Pliny's* Computation, 800 *Italian* miles, the greatest breadth being 325 of the same miles. But others reckon the length of it at no more than 480 miles: who may be reconciled with *Pliny* by supposing this, that there last measure in a straight and direct Line from River to River; and that *Pliny* coasted by the Creeks and Reaches of the *Adriatick*. It is situate in the Northern Temperate Zone, betwixt the middle Parallels of the sixth and seventh Climates; so that the longest Day in Summer is about fifteen hours and an half.

The Country is generally fruitful of all those Commodities which are found in *Italy*, to which it is little inferior; yielding not only Wine and Oyl in very good plenty, but good store of Cattle; and of wild Beasts of pleasure is no want at all; some rich Veins also of Gold and Silver. The Northern parts are mountainous, cold for the most part lying under Snows, not capable of Wine, or any the like Productions which require much Heat. But even these mountainous parts afford very good Pasturage, and breed a wealthy race of Sheep, which bring forth young twice a year, and are shorn four times. Nor do the Sea-coasts come behind in advancing the Profit of the People, not only yielding store of Fish, but the benefit of many excellent and convenient Havens.

The People are courageous, proud, stubborn, and untractable, of strong Bodies and able constitutions, fit for works of Drudgery; and so employed by the *Venicians*, when first brought under their Command: who, using them in all servile Offices both at home and abroad, occasioned the neighbouring Nations to call their Villains or Bond-Servants, as they of *Venice* did by the name of *Slaves*; that being originally as to this People the name, not of their Condition, but of their Ancestors and Country.

The Christian Faith was here planted, I mean in reference to this People who do now inhabit it, about the time of *Charles* the Bald, Emperor of the West, Anno 877, *Sueropius* being the first of their Kings who embraced the Gospel. But lying in the mid-way of *Greece*, and *Italy*, the Religion of the Church of *Rome*, and that of the Greek Church are both allowed of; that of the *Greeks* being as prevalent in the East parts hereof, as that of *Rome* is in the Western. But here it is to be observed, that though this People, according to their Division into East and West; follow the Rites and Ceremonies of those several Churches; yet on both sides it is indulged them to celebrate Divine Offices in their natu-

ral Language, contrary to the usage of the Church of *Rome* in all places else. And yet the people are not all of the Christian Faith, the *Turkish* and *Mahometan* prevailing in those Towns and Territories under their Obedience.

But though they be not of one Religion, they are all of one Language, which is the old *Sarmatian* (or *Scythian*) Tongue, generally spoken in the Empire of *Russia*, *Livonia*, *Poland*, *Silesia*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, some part of *Hungary*, *Istria*, *Scythia*, where we now are, *Dacia*, *Epirus*, *Georgia*, *Mongrelia*, (both in *Asia*) and by all the Captains, Officers, and other Souldiers of the *Turkish* Empire: the Language generally spreading over all those Countries which either were *Sarmatian* in their first Original, or made theirs by Conquest under the united name of *Slaves*, or otherwise intermixt with them by the necessity of Commerce and Trade, or dispatch of their common Buusinesses. Inasmuch as, taking in the Subdivisions of the Provinces and Countries before specified, it is affirmed by *Gesner*, a right learned man, that there are no fewer than threefold Nations which have the *Scythian* Tongue for their vulgar Language.

Chief Mountains in this Country are those called *Scardonia*, (from *Scardonia*, one of the best Towns of *Istria*) dividing *Dalmatia* in the middle, and extending along the Coasts thereof; by *Ptolemy* called *Arduum*. Of Rivers those of special note amongst the Ancients were, 1. *Titius*, now *Varischa*; separating *Istria* from *Dalmatia*. 2. *Asira*, now *Asja*, the utmost bound upon the West as 3. *Drimsi* is upon the East: of which the first fell into the Bay of the *Adriatick*, which is called *Gulfus Quernero*, (*Sinus Planaticus* by the Ancients;) the other into the *Sav* or *Savus*, somewhat West of *Budgrade*. 4. *Narvon*, now *Narento*, running not far from *Epidaurum*.

The Boundaries and Land-Marks being thus set out, I should proceed to the Division of the Country as now it standeth. But I must first look on it as it stood in the time of the *Romans*: in whose time that part of the whole Province which lay from the River *Asira* to the *Titius* was named *Liburnia* and *Istria*; that from the *Titius* to the *Drinus* was called *Dalmatia*. But the *Istrians* being the stoutest and more warlike People, and such as created greatest Troubles to the *Romans*, it pleased the Conquerors, when they had fully subdued both Nations, to call the whole Country by the name of *Istria*; and not so only, but to extend this name over all their Provinces (the Diocese of *Thrace* excepted) which lay betwixt the *Alps* and the *Euxine* Sea, the *Adriatick* and the *Danube*, for so far the Jurisdiction of the *Præfatus Prætorius* of *Istria* did in fact extend. *Hic Præfatus* (saith *Zosimus*) Constantinus, *cui Insituatur*, *Macedones attribuit*, *Thessalos*, *Creteneses*, *Greciam*, *et circumjacentes Insulas*, *Epirum*, *Arumque*, *Illyricos*, *Dracos*, *Triballos*, *Pannonias*, *Valerium asque* *Myriam* *insuperiorum*. And that all these did then pass by the name of *Istria* appear as well by that of *Pollis* in the Life of *Claudius*, the second, expressly saying, *Illyricum*, *Thraciam*, *Myriam*, *Daciam*.

Dacos *Dalmatiam* & *Pannoniam* continebat; as by that of *Socrates* the Historian, who lib. 32. cap. 10. calleth *Sirmium* the chief Town of *Pannonia Inferior*, and lib. 5. cap. 6. *The* *Scythia*, the chief City of *Macedon*, *Urbes* *Illyricas*, or *Illyrian* Cities. By which account *Istria*, in the largest extent of that name, contained no less than 18 Provinces of the *Roman* Empire; that is to say, 1. *Noricum* *Andeterranum*, 2. *Noricum* *Ripense*, 3. *Pannonia Superior*, 4. *Pannonia Inferior*, 5. *Valeria*, 6. *Savia*, 7. *Dalmatia*, 8. *Moesia Superior*, 9. *Dardania*, 10. *Dacia Mediterranea*, 11. *Dacia Ripensis*, 12. *Macedonia*, 13. *Thessaly*, 14. *Achaia*, 15. *Crete*, 16. *Epirus Vetus*, 17. *Epirus Nova*, and 18. *Prævalitana*. These 18 Provinces being cast or made up into three Dioceses, viz. the Diocese of *Istria* specially so called, containing the seven first, 2. the Diocese of *Macedon*, containing the seven last, and 3. the Diocese of *Dacia*, comprehending the other four, were governed by the *Præfatus Prætorius* for *Istria*, who had first his chief Seat and Residence at *Sirmium* before mentioned. But in the Division of the Empire betwixt the Sons of *Theodosius* the Great into the Eastern and Western, the Diocese of *Istria* specially so called (after that named *Illyricum Occidentale*) was laid unto the Western Empire, under the Governance of the *Præfatus Prætorius* of *Italy*; and thereupon the Seat of Residence of the *Præfatus Prætorius* for *Istria* removed from *Sirmium* unto *Thessalonica*. So that we are now to look upon *Istria* in a stricter Notion, as a Diocese of the Western Empire, containing the seven Provinces before specified, whereof both *Noricum*, both *Pannonia*, and *Valeria* (if at least *Stiermark* be that *Valeria*, as some say it is) have been described already in their proper places. There now remain only *Savia* and *Dalmatia* to be spoken of: the first containing all those parts of this Country lying on both sides of the *Savus* (whence it had the name;) the last those parts heretofore which lie towards the Sea, known by the ancient name of *Dalmatia*, the Region of *Illyria* properly so called being added to it. But as new Lords give new Laws, so they give new Names: the Country being divided by the *Scavo* into two Kingdoms, viz. of *Croatia*, and *Dalmatia*; of which the first contained the Province of *Savia*, the last took up the whole Province of *Dalmatia*, bounded as before, but keeping the name of *Scythia* to it self alone, being indeed the only Province in which the name and memory of the *Scavi* is retained amongst us. Afterwards as it came to be divided (as at last it was) betwixt the Kings of *Hungary* and the State of *Venice*, we find it subdivided into three 6 parts; that is to say, 1. *Windischland*, 2. *Croatia*, 3. *Bosnia*, 4. *Dalmatia*, 5. *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*, and 6. the *Scythian* Island.

1. WINDISCHLAND.

WINDISCHLAND is bounded on the East with part of the Lower *Hungary*, from which it is separated by a Line drawn from *St. Nicolaus* near the River *Dravus*, to the Town of *Polega*, standing on a little River which falls into the *Savus*; on the West with *Carniola*, or *Krain* a Province of the Archdukedom of *Austria*; on the North with the River *Dravus*, on the South with *Croatia*. It is thus called by the *Dutch*, as the Land or Country of the *Winithi*, or *Wendi*, the greatest Nation of the *Slaves*, whom generally they call by the name *Windisch*; and anciently, for so much of it as lieth on the North of the *Savus*, accounted part of *Pannonia Inferior*; as afterwards of the Province of *Savia*, till conquered by the *Slaves*, and laid unto their Possessions, from them named *Windischland*, as before.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Windischgratz*,

located on the *Dravus*, the *Venundria* and *Vindemana* of the Ancients. 2. *Sagana*, near unto the *Savus*. 3. *Gradiska*, on the South, and 4. *Zagabria*, on the North of the same River: from which last a great part of this Country is called *Comitatus Zagabrinus*. 5. *Novigrad*, on the *Savus* also, but more near to *Germany*. 6. *Petrovina*, situate at the foot of the Mountains which are between the *Savus* and the *Dravus*; and divided *Hungary* from *Scythia*. 7. *Sissek*, or *Sisthen*, (the *Sissa* of *Pliny* and *Antoninus*) situate on the *Sav*, over against *Zagabria*, where it receiveth the River *Kulp*, famous for the notable Recitance which the *Turks* there found, Anno 1593, who, hoping by the Conquest of this Province to open a free passage into *Germany*, entered it with a puissant Army, (having in their way taken the Castle of *Offrowitz*, and the strong Town of *Whititz*, in *Croatia*) and late down very strongly entrenched before this Town. But the Town held it out most gallantly against all their Batteries and Assaults, till relieved by a power of *Germans* who came to succor them; by whom 8000 of the *Turks* were slain in the place, and most of the rest drowned in the River *Savus* as they fled hastily and (through that great haste) blindly from the Sword of the Conqueror.

This Province, for the most part, is under the Princes of the House of *Austria*, as Kings of *Hungary*, to which Crown it formerly belonged: those parts of it which lie next to *Hungary*, on the North and East, groaning under the Tyranny and Bondage of the *Turkish* Garrisons.

2. CROATIA.

CROATIA is bounded on the North with *Windischland*, from which it is parted by the River *Una*, or *Wana*, on the East with *Bosnia*, on the South with *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*, on the West with *Carniola*. The reason of the name I find not among my Authors, but only it was imposed by the *Slaves* at their first coming hither, who comprehended under this name all the Island parts of *Scythia*, from the Mountain *Arduum* to *Pannonia*, including *Bosnia* and *Windischland*, though distinguished afterwards.

The Country is for the most part cold, mountainous and hilly, overlaid by the Branches of the Mountains *Babii*, spoken of by *Ptolemy*; yet reasonably fruitful; stored with all necessary Provisions for the life of man, and would yield more increase and profit both to Lord and Tenant, were it not for the still neighbourhood of the *Turks*, to whose Tyranny and Oppressions it hath been and is still exposed. The People for the general are held to be good Soldiers, mentioned in our modern Stories by the name of *Crabats*.

Chief Towns in it are, 1. *Masch*, or *Mosch*, bordering upon *Germany*, the *Alera* of the Ancients. 2. *Offrowitz*, a strong Fort on the same Frontier. 3. *Whititz*, by the *Dutch* called *Zibigen*, by the Ancients *Fuinim*, the Metropolis or chief place of the Country, encompassed like an Island by the River *Una*, and fortified with strong Works by the help of Art; but taken by the *Turks*, Anno 1592, and all the Soldiers in it cruelly murdered, contrary to the Articles agreed on at the Surrender of *Zeng*, 5. *Wacker*, 6. *Tarnow*, 7. *Modrichitz*, of which little memorable.

This Country, with the rest included anciently under this name, was one of the two Kingdoms of *Scythia*, the Princes whereof were usually entituled Kings of *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*. In the year 1007 the *Venicians* having before possessed themselves of some Towns on the Sea-side, first set footing there. How the whole Country of *Scythia* came to the Crown of *Hungary*

shall be shewn anon. It is held a part of it, in the right thereof, by the House of *Austria*; part of it by the *Turks*, in the way of Conquest: the *Venetians* having now no share in it, for ought I can find.

3. BOSNIA.

BOSNIA is bounded on the East with *Serbia*, a Province of *Dacia*, on the West with *Croatia*, on the North with the River *Savus* and the East parts of the Lower *Hungary*, on the South with *Dalmatia*. So called, as some think, from the River *Bosna*, which runneth through it; as others, from the *Bessi*, a People of *Dacia*, driven out of their Country by the *Bulgari*; and removing thither, by the Change of a Vowel called *Bessi*, whence the Country *Bosnia*.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Jajica*, by the *Latines* called *Jajzga*, situate on the top of an high Hill, at the bottom whereof it is almost encompassed with two Rivers, which there uniting pass from thence unto the *Savus*. The Town, by reason of the rocky Precipices of the Hill, the Unfordableness of the River, and an inaccessible Castle, is held to be impregnable: the Metropolis in former times of this petty Kingdom, and the ordinary Sepulchre for the Kings thereof. 2. *Warbosna*, at this time the chief Town of the Country, but now walled about. 3. *Caracach*, the usual Residence or Retiring-place of the *Bosnian* Kings. 4. *Schmanica*, not much observable. 5. *Darobica*, the first Town taken by *Mahomet* the Great in his Conquest of this Kingdom; as 6. *Clissa* was the last, the unfortunate King *Stephen* being taken in it.

This Country anciently accounted of as a part of *Croatia*, together with it was united to the Crown of *Hungary*, under the Patronage and Homage whereof it was erected into a Kingdom, but the precise time when, I find not. Some say about the year 1420. If so, a Kingdom of late date, and short continuance. For in the year 1464 *Mahomet* the Great, first Emperor of the *Turks*, having taken *Constantinople*, and almost all the rest of *Greece*, call his eye upon it, suddenly surpris'd it, and having taken *Stephen* the last King heretofore, most barbarously commanded him to be slay'd alive. After whose death this Kingdom was converted to a Province of the *Turkish* Empire, and governed by one of the *Bassia's* of it, as it still continueth.

4. DALMATIA.

DALMATIA is bounded on the East with *Albania*, from which it is parted by the River *Drino*; on the West with the *Tiatis*, (now *Variscia*) which divides it from *Liburnia*; on the North with *Bosnia*, on the South with the *Adriatick* Sea. This only of all the Provinces of *Scalavonia* retaineth its ancient Name and Bounds. So called from *Dalmatium*, the chief Town hereof in the time of the *Romans*, from which the People were called *Dalmatae*, and the Country *Dalmatia*.

The Country in the time of the *Romans* was full of Woods, and those Woods of Robbers, who from thence issued out to make Spoil and Booty. *Dalmata sub Sylvis agunt*, inde ad *Latrocinia* promptissimi, saith the Historian. And by the advantage of these Woods they intercepted and discomfited *Gabinus*, one of *Cesar's* Captains, marching through their Country with 1000 Horse and 15 Companies of Foot towards *Macedonia*, to the Aid of his General against *Pompey*. But their Woods being destroyed, they became more peaceable, and, instead of Robberies by Land, began to exercise themselves at Sea in the way of Merchandizing, to which their large Sea-coasts and commodious Havens served exceeding fitly.

Places of most consideration in it are, 1. *Sebenico*, on the Sea-side, not far from the Influx of *Tiatis* or *Variscus*, by *Ptolemy* called *Scium*, in whose time a Colony of *Roman* Soldiers was sent hither by the Emperor *Claudius*. 2. *Salonia*, a *Roman* Colony also, one of the Juridical Resorts for these parts of the Province, and the ordinary Arsenal for their Natives. Renowned in ancient Stories for the Retreat of *Diocletian*, a native of this Country, who, having governed the *Roman* Empire 20 years with much Felicity, but a great deal of Cruelty, depos'd himself, and retired to this City, where he followed the Trade of a Gardner, working with his own hands, and observing with great content the productions of Nature. Inasmuch that when *Maximianus Herculius*, his Associate (who at his perswasion had done the like) invited him to resume the Empire, he returned this answer, *Urnam posuisti olivæ Olea nostris manibus plantata*, &c. That if he would come unto *Salonia*, and see how well the Words which he had planted with his own hands did thrive and prosper, he would never trouble his head with Crowns, nor his hands with Scepters: a rare expression of a settled and contented mind. The name and some of the Ruines do still remain, to preserve the memory of so remarkable a place.

3. *Spalato*, East of *Sebenico*; a Sea-Town, and an Archbishop's See, who writes himself Primate of *Dalmatia*; as anciently and of right he was, till the Bishop of *Venice*, being made a Patriarch by Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, *An. V. C. 1450*, assumed that Title to himself, together with a Superintendency over all the Churches of this Country, as subordinate to him. Of note for many learned Prelates, but for none more than for *Marcus Antonius de Dominis*, who, seeming to loath the *Romish* Superstition, came for Refuge into *England*, *Anno* 1616, and having here both by Preaching and Writing laboured to overthrow the Church of *Rome*, upon I know not what Projects he declared himself to be of another mind, *Anno* 1622, and returned again to *Rome*, where he writ as reproachfully of the Church of *England*. So that we may lay of him, as *Socrates* in his Ecclesiastical History saith of *Eusebius*, who under *Constantinus* was a Christian, under *Julian* a Pagan, and a Christian again under *Justinian*, *Totiusque ipsius nonnullis in doctrinis et pietate in se habens. So wavering and inconsistent a Turn*—*Cato* was *Eusebius* us from his beginning to his end. But *Eusebius* sped better than *Antonius* did, he being received into the Church upon his Repentance: but this infatuated man was imprisoned in the Castle of *St. Angelo*, and his dead Body burnt to ashes. A just reward for so great Levity and so gross Apostasie as he had shewed unto the World in his going hence. 4. *Amisus*, the Pignium of *Ptolemy*, mounted on a high Rock, and defended with an impregnable Castle. 5. *Stagno*, upon the point of a long and spacious Cherfoneuse, not far from which the River *Narva* (or *Narvona*) falls into the *Adriatick*. 6. *Castel Nova*, a strong Fortres within the Gulf of *Cattaro*, now in possession of the *Turks*. 7. *Amisuri*, on the further or Eastern side of the Bay, an Archbishop's See; but that and the Sees of his Suffragan Bishops being few in number, are now in the possession of the *Turks*. 8. *Cattaro*, on the same side of the Bay, by *Ptolemy* called *Asorium*, inhabited in his time by *Roman* Citizens; now a strong hold for the *Venetians* against the *Turks*, and giving name unto the Gulf, which formerly called *Sinus Rhizencium*, from *Rhizena*, (now *Rispa*) situate at the bottom of it; as at this time called from this Town *Gulfo de Cattaro*. 9. *Daligini*, by *Ptolemy* called *Ulcinium*, originally founded by the *Colchians* and therefore called *Colchidum* by some ancient Writers. 10. *Scutari*, now within the Land, (the *Sedra* of *Ptolemy* and *Strabon*) strongly seated on a steep Rock, memorable for the stout Resistance which it made

for a whole year against the whole Puissance of *Mahomet* the second, battered for the most part of that time with 70 pieces of Ordnance of wondrous bigness, especially that called the *Prince's Piece*, which carried a stone or bullet of 1200 pound weight; but taken at the last, *Anno* 1578. Not far from this Town is the great Lake called by *Strabo* *Labentia*, now the Lake of *Scutari*, 130 miles in compass, and environed on all sides with Mountains, except towards the North: out of which, issue the *Drino*, now called *Drino*, or *Drina*, which, parting *Scalavonia* from *Macedon* and *Servia* passeth into the *Savus*. 11. *Alesio*, the *Lissus* of *Ptolemy*, the farthest Town of all *Dalmatia* towards *Greece*; memorable for the Grave of *Scanderbeg*, who was buried here, whereof more hereafter. 12. *Medon*, raised out of the Ruines of *Dioclea*, an ancient and famous City, the Birth-place of the Great Emperor *Diocletian*, spoken of before. 13. *Dalminium*, once the Metropolis of this Province, situate on the River *Drino*; first sacked by *Marcus Figulus*, a *Roman* Consul, *An. V. C. 689*; and after, on a new Revolt, by one *Nasica*, spoken of by *Strabo*: not able after two such Ruines to revive again: nothing being now left of it but the name and memory.

Betwixt the Cherfoneuse of *Stagno* and the Gulf of *Cattaro* stands the Town and Territory of *RAGUSI*, not subject, as all the rest are, either to the *Turk* or to the *Venetians*, but governing themselves by their own Laws and Magistrates, as a free Commonwealth: paying only to the *Turk* 14000 *Scutins* yearly in a way of Tribute, and as much in Presents; discharged in that regard of Customs and Impositions in all his Dominions. It was anciently called *Epidaurus*, (of which name there were two other Cities in *Peloponnesus*). But that Town being raised by the *Goths*, the inhabitants, (after their departure) not knowing where to retire themselves, built this in the place of it, at the Foot of a steep Mountain, enjoying a pleasant situation near the Sea, with a little, but commodious Port, forced out of the water by the art and industry of workmen. The Town is well built, fortified with Walls and a well-furnished Castle; now an Archbishop's See, and a noted Empory rich and strong in Shipping, commanding over a small and barren Territory within the Land, and some peccant Islands in the Sea. So that the Riches of it proceed not from their Rents and Revenues rising out of the Earth, but by the benefit of their Traffick upon the Waters: in which they are secured by the Protection of the *Turk*, without which they had fallen before this time into the hands of the *Venetians*; as on the other side preferred by the State of *Venice* from being a Prey to their Protectors. They were of more Wealth heretofore than they are at present; at what time they traded to most parts of this Western world in those great Vessels which from hence were called *Raguses*, but corruptly *Argosies*; the last of which (their number lessening with their Trade) they lent unto the King of Spain for the War of *England* *Anno* 1588, in which Action it was lost and wrecked on the Coast of *Ireland*.

5. CONTADO DI ZARA.

CONTADO DI ZARA, or the Country of *Zara*, called anciently *Liburnia*, and *Illyria* specially so named, is bounded on the East with *Dalmatia*, on the West with *Istria*, on the North with *Croatia*, and on the South with the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulf of *Venice*.

It took this latter name (the former being long discontinued) from *Zara*, the chief Town thereof, the *Zadera* of *Ptolemy* and the Ancients; a *Roman* Colony at that time, now an Archbishop's See, enjoying a safe and large Port, and situate on a low Cherfoneuse thrusting out

like a Promontory into the *Adriatick*, belonging to the State of *Venice*, by whom it is well fenced and fortified against foreign Invasions. For the position and command of this Town there have been great Wars betwixt the *Hungarians* and the *Venetians*, to whom it seemeth to be of such importance, that being once taken by the *Hungarians*, it was redeemed for 100000 Crowns of *Lodovick* King of *Naples*, pretending against *Sigismund* of *Lussemburg* to the Crown of *Hungary*. In this Town is the Church of *S. John de Malvasia*, which was built by a company of Sailors, who, being in a tempest, made a Vow, that, if they escaped, they would consecrate a Temple to *S. John de Malvasia*, whose Morter should be tempered with Malmsey; and accordingly they paid their Vows. Far less did another Master of a Ship intend to perform his Promise, though he spoke bigger, who, in a like extremity of Danger, promised our Lady to offer at her Altar a Candle as great as the main Mast of his Ship: For when one of his Mates, joggling him, told him he had promised an Impossibility: I will, Fool, (replied the Master) we must speak her fair in time of need; but if ever I come ashore, I will make her be content with a Candle of Eight to the pound. And in a like fit of Devotion was he who on the same occasion plainly told God, that he was no common Beggar, he never troubled him with Prayers before; and if he would hear him that time, he would never trouble him again.

Other Towns herein considerable are, 1. *Albona*, retaining still the old name, (the *Albona* of *Ptolemy*) situate near the River *Arfa*, the Divider of this Province from *Istria*. 2. *Flavona* or *Flanona*, situate against the Gulf of *Querquero*, of old called *Sinus Flavianicus*, as before was noted: of ill report amongst Sailors, for frequent Tempests railed on every Wind. 3. *Zugna*, by *Ptolemy* and *Pliny* called *Senia*, situate on a Flat or Level. 4. *Nona*, of old called *Enona*, compassed with the Sea. 5. *Scerifia*, now a poor Village, in the place were stood the *Argemutum* of *Pliny*. 6. *Scardona*, now a mean Village also, heretofore of great note, and the Juridical Resort for the whole Province; from whence the neighbouring Mountains had the name of *Scardonicæ*, the Bounds of this Country and *Croatia*.

The ancient name of this Country was *Liburnia*, as before is said, but extending more Northwards beyond the Mountains of *Ardium* or *Scardonicæ*; this and *Dalmatia* being then the *Membra dividenda* of the whole *Illyria*. The People heretofore, called by one General name *Liburni*, were much given to Piracies; and for the better speed therein, the Authors and inventors of those swift Vessels which were called *Liburnica* and *Liburna*. Of which thus *Horace*,

*His Liburnis inter alta novium,
Amice, propugnacula.*

That is to say,
In a *Liburnian* flote thou be
Amongst the stoutest Ships at Sea.

In imitation of which Vessels, being swift and light, the *Romans*, in the time of their Wealth and Pride, invented a kind of Chair or Litter, (such as those we call *Sedans*), wherein they were carried on mens Shoulders with such ease and pleasure, that they could not only sleep or read, but write in them also. The Porters or Bearers of them were of this Nation commonly, from whence, or from the fashion of the Vessel which they did resemble, they were called *Liburni*. Of these thus *Juvenci* in his third Satyr,

*Si vocat officium, turbæ cedentis vehetur
Dives, & ingenti currit super ora Liburno;
Aique obiter leget, aut scribet, vel dormiet intus:
Namque facit Somnum clausâ Læticia fenestra.*

Thus Englished by my honoured Friend Sir Robert Stra-
plem, in his excellent Translation of that harsh Satyrift:

When business calls, a Crowd the rich man thins,
And o're men's Heads in's huge Sedan he runs,
Reads, writes, and sleeps within it, as he goes:
For Sleep will come if he the Curtains close.

Besides which office of Chair-carriers, or Sedan-men,
as we call them now, this People being, when once con-
quered, a servile Nation, furnished the Romans with
chief Beedles whom they employed in calling the Citi-
zens from the Fields to their public Buifness: to which
the same Poet alludeth in the next Satyr, saying, *Clamau-
te Liburno, Currite jam sedis, &c.* But to proceed. The
nearness of this Country to the Adriatick occasioned
the Bay of *Guernero*, or *Cornaro*, as some call it, com-
monly called *Sinus Flauiticus*, to be sometimes named *Sinus
Liburnicus*; the parts of Italy on the other side of it to
be called *Regna Liburnorum* in the Poet *Virgil*; and
gave the name of *Liburnades* to a Shore of Islands lying
on the Coast herof, 60 at least in number, as is said by
Strabo. To which and other Islands of *Illyricum* they
are now to haften, leaving the Stories of *Illyricum* to the
close of all.

6. The SCLAVONIAN Islands.

Along the Coasts of *Sclavonia* lie a Cluster of Islands,
to the number of a thousand, as is said by *Pliny*, most
of which (if indeed to many) are but Rocks, not Islands,
or not inhabited at all, nor of any note. The Principal
whereof, and such as deserve place here, are 1. the *Li-
burnades* before mentioned. 2. The *Abyrtides*. 3. The
Isles of *Ragusi*. 4. *Arbe*. 5. *Curzola*. 6. *Zara*. 7. *Lissa*
and *Brazzia*, the rest not being worth the looking after
as to our Design. The whole number of the Inhabitants
is reckoned in the total to no more than 40000 per-
sons.

1. The *LIBURNADES*, said by *Strabo* to be
60 in number, lie all along the Coasts of *Liburnia*, or *Cor-
vada* of *Zara*. The chief whereof are 1. *Iffa*, now called
Pago, containing 100 miles in compass, having a Town
of the same name; but in all that Tract of ground not
above 1500 Inhabitants, in the time of my Author, by rea-
son of the sharp Ayre, and great want of Fuel. The Sal-
t-petre here yield great Commodity not only to the People
themselves, but also to the State of *Venice*, supreme Lords
herof. 2. *Tragurium*, now *Trau* and *Trabu*, so called
from the chief Town herof, built by those of *Iffa*: fo
near the Continent, that it seems to be a part thereof. By
Mela it is named *Tagurium*, with some little difference.
3. *Pharus*, so called from the *Pharii*, or *Paris*, of whom it
was once a Colony, long since come to Ruine. It is now
called *Lesina*, the greatest of all the *Adriatick*, as being 150
miles in compass, and very fruitful for the biggess. It hath
a Town of the same name, which enjoys a safe and specu-
lous Harbour, unwall'd and of no great beauty, but for-
tified with a strong Castle, which commandeth both the
Harbour and the Shipping in it. The Bird's-place of *De-
metrius Pharius*, so often mentioned in the Stories of
Greece and *Rome*.

2. The *ABYRTIDES* are in number many, fo
called from the River *Abyrtus*, which thereabouts falls
into the *Adriatick*; according to that of *Lucan*,
Et cadit Adriacis flumens Abyrtus in undas.
Abyrtus foaming with his hail,
Into the *Adria* falls at last.

But whether that River were so called by the *Celchians*
at their landing there, in memory of *Abyrtus*, the Son of
Ææus King of *Colchis*, whom they went to seek, or for

some other reason, I determine not. Certain I am, it
could not be so named from the scattering of his Limbs
hereabouts by *Medea*, his unnatural Sister, as is said by
Pliny; that cruel fact being done on the Shores of the
Euxine, the place being called *Tonos* afterwards upon
that occasion. But of those Islands, being in number many,
as before was said, two only are of special note; that is to
say, 1. *Vegia*, or *Vegio*, not far from *Segna* on the firm
Land, containing in compass betwixt 80 and 100 miles,
and about 10000 Inhabitants: the most populous of all
these Seas. It hath a Town of the same name, with a very
fair Harbour: the Island by *Pliny* called *Curilla*, the
chief Towns of it in his time being, *Fulfinium* and *Cur-
cum*. 2. *Abforum*, as *Ptolemy*, *Abyrtium* as *Pliny* calls it,
in whose time it was one Island only, but now divided into
two by the *Venicians*, letting in the Sea between them: the
one of them is called *Cherjo* the other *Ofero*, both joined
together by a Bridge made by the *Venicians*, and both
together making up 140 miles in compass, each of them
having one Town only, and that of the same name with the
Island; the Inhabitants in both not exceeding 5000 per-
sons. Stored with sufficiency of Corn, plenty of Wine, and
abundance of Wood, great quantities whereof are sent
yearly to *Venice*. They have also goodly Herds of Cattel,
and great Flocks of Sheeple, affording by their Flesh, Wool,
Cheefe and Butter, a good increase of profit to the Ow-
ners of them.

3. The Islands of *RAGUSI*, (for so I call them which
belong to the Commonwealth) are but three in number.
1. *Gravosa*, a very pleasant place, full of gardens of O-
ranges, Limons, and Pomegranates. 2. *Languste*, environ-
ed about with very high Mountains, in which are the
Ragusan Farms, made rich by great Charge and Indu-
stry of the several Occupants, so as to yield them Wine,
Oyl, and most excellent Fruits; which they receive more
plentifully from a goodly Plain situate in the midst here-
of, and naturally more fruitful than the other parts. Near
to this last Island is good fishing for Sprats: and in both
an Art of making their trees to bring forth Oysters, by
bending down their Boughs, and staying them under the
water with Stones; so as in two years there are so many
Oysters fastned to them as is strange to see, and in the
third year they are very good meat. *Melyda*, lying be-
twixt *Ragusi* and the Isle of *Curzola*, by *Pliny* called *At-
lita*, and on that ground supposed by some to be that
Island on which *St. Paul* did suffer Shipwreck, *Acts* 26.
But the name of *Barbarus* which the Text joins to the
Inhabitants of it, not proper to an Island betwixt *Greece*
and *Italy* in the times of *St. Paul*, and his Landing, when
he parted thence, at *Syracuse*, an Haven of *Sicily* so far
from this so near unto the other *Melita*, which is now
called *Malta*, sufficiently refel this Fancy, though otherwise
not improbably grounded.

4. Of those which are known only by one single name
the chief are, *ARBE*, so called in the time of *Pliny*,
from the best Town off it, but by *Ptolemy* it is named *Scar-
dona*. A pleasant Island, in compass about 50 miles,
and containing some 3000 Inhabitants; the only Haven's life
of all the *Adriatick*; but that defect is abundantly com-
pens'd by the natural Sweetness of the place, which fo en-
tertain'd certain disolute Rovers of *Austria*, that they fell
upon it *Anno* 1618, and had like to have occasioned an
heavy War betwixt *Ferdinand*, Archduke of the House
of *Croatz*, (not long after chosen King of the Romans)
and the State of *Venice*, if Philip the third of Spain had
not made up the Breach.

5. *CURSOLA*, by *Ptolemy* and *Strabo* called
Cereyra, or *Melena*, more rightly *Cereyra Melana*, or
Cereyra Nigra, to difference it from *Cereyra*, now *Cor-
fu*, in the *Ionian* Sea. The chief Town of it, being of the
same

same name with the Island, was founded by the *Gnidians*
of the Isle of *Crete*. It is sufficiently fruitful, but of Wine
especially, forty miles long, in compass ninety, and very
populous for the biggess; notwithstanding that the peo-
ple, being Sea-faring men, do much use the Seas, and
build many Ships. In the year 1571, a little after the tak-
ing of *Cyprus*, and before the Batel of *Lepanto*, it was
invaded by *Ulu*, *Aly*, General of the Turkish Fleet, with a
Navy of 60 Gallies: for fear of whom *Comarcus*, the *Ven-
etian* Governor, together with the *Townsmen* and *Gari-
son* Souldiers, abandoned *Curzola*, the chief Town here-
of. The silly Women thus forsaken, and preferring Death
before Dishonour, defended the Walls, and with Fire,
Stones, and such other Weapons as they had, they beat off
the Enemy; till at the last a violent Tempest forced the
Turkish General to remove his Gallies farther off, to the
place of safety.

6. *ZARA*, *LISSA*, *BRAZZIA*, three
small Isles, not otherwise memorable but for their Mis-
fortunes, spoiled by the *Turks* at their departure from
Curzola who carried thence 1600 Christians into cruel
Bondage. The rest I purposely omit, being rather Rocks
than Islands, barren and stony for the most part, and
not much inhabited.

The ancient Inhabitants of *Illyricum*, in the full extent
of it, comprehending *Liburnia* and *Dalmatia*, were the
Iapades, bordering on *Italy*, the *Scirtreus*, or *Scirtarii*, con-
fining upon *Macedon*, the *Mazae*, in the midst about *Sa-
bina*; the *Peuvitte*, lying towards *Pannonia*; the *Derii*,
Ceraunii, *Dauris*, *Pirææ*, *Scindote*, *Sardiotæ*, and others of
inferiour note, all making up the great & potent Nations
of the *Liburni* and the *Dalmatæ*, and comprehended gene-
rally in the name of *Illyrians*. Of these the *Liburnian*
Illyrii (*Illyrici*, *sen Liburni*, as they are indifferently cal-
led by *Florus*) were the first who felt the Forces of *Rome*:
which growing State they had provoked by their frequent
Piracies, but more by murdering the Embassadors which
were sent unto them to require Satisfaction; *Tenna* their
Queen, a proud and imperious Dame, commanding Exe-
cution to be done upon them. Warred upon by the *Romans*
for many Injuries under the conduct of *Cimindus*, one
of their Confuls, they were overthrown, (as having more
of the Pirate than the Souldier in them) some of their chief
Nobility executed, in revenge of the Wrong done to the
Embassadors, an yearly Tribute imposed on them, and the
Queen deprived of the greatest part of her Kingdom,
conferred by the *Romans* on *Demetrius Pharius*, one of
their Confederates. But he proving unfaithful to them in
their War with *Hamilcar*, and *Genius*, their last King, who
commanded over *Illyricum*, siding against them with *Per-
seus* King of *Macedonia*, *Anitus* the Pretor is sent with a
sufficient Army to make an end of that work, who used
such diligence therein, that *Sodra* the chief Town of the
Kingdom was taken, and the King himself, together with
his Wife and Children, made Prisoners; by consequence
the whole War ended *antequam geri Romæ nasceretur*,
before they knew a *Æque* that it was begun. The *Liburni*
after that became chief Subjects, the whole Country on
the taking of *Genius* being made a Province of the *Romans*
Anno U.C. 586, and they employed at *Rome* in many se-
rvice offices, as before was said: and then the *Dalmatians*
began to cast off the Yoke. But *Dalmatius*, their chief
City, being first sacked by *Marcus Fulgus*, and after by
Nasica before mentioned, they continued quiet and obedi-
ent till the time of *Augustus Cæsar*, when they again re-
belled at the infliction of one *Batte*, a man very potent
with the People, who, having ten yeares together main-
tained the Liberty of his Country, at last, broken and
worn by the Forces of *Germanicus* and *Tiberius*, sub-
mitted himself unto the two Generals; who, asking the

reason of his Revolt, were answered, because the *Romans*
sent not Shepherds to keep, but Wolves do devour, their
Flocks. Thus finally conquered, it continued a *Roman*
Province till the coming of *Odoacer* into *Italy* who
brought it under his Command, as the *Guths* also did, hav-
ing vanquished him, and thereby made themselves Mas-
ters of *Italy* and the rest of his Purchases. But the King-
dom of the *Guths* being brought to an end by the good
fortune of *Justinian*, and the valour of *Belisarius* and *Mar-
cellus*, two of his Commanders, (but very ill requited by him)
Illyricum became a part of the Eastern Empire; continuing
under the power of the *Grecian* Emperours till the time
of *Phocas*, that bloody Tyrant; when it was made a Prey
to the *Sclaves*.

Of these though we have spoken before in several places,
as their Fortunes and Affairs have led us, yet being this
is the only Country which preserves their name, we will
here speak more exactly of them than we have done
hitherto; especially as to their Manners, Name, and first
Original, and finally of their Successes in this Country.
And first for their Original, I take it for a thing past ques-
tion that they were no other than natural *Sarmatians*,
inhabiting on the North of the River *Ister*, joining them-
selves under this Name in their Undertakings and At-
tempts on the Eastern Empire: as the many Nations of
Germany took the name of *Frank* and *Alman* in their
Actions and Achievements against the *Western*. But why
they took this name rather than another, is not yet
agreed on. Some fetch the original of it from *Sclava*, which
in the *Sclavonian* Tongue signifieth a Speech or Word, be-
cause they were all of one common Language; others from
Slava, signifying in that Language *Fame* or *Glory*, in re-
gard of that great Fame and Honour which they had ac-
chieved by their Successes on the Empire. But when I
find a potent Nation of the *Wimithi*, *Wimti* or *Venedæ*, a
Sarmatian People, called *Sclavini* by *Jornandes*, possided
in his time of the farther Shores of the River *Ister*, oppo-
site to *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, and by that Name warring and
forging these Provinces and other parts of that Empire
in the time of *Justinian*, as we read in *Procopius* that they
did; I see no reason why we should look farther for the
name of *Sclaves* than from these *Sclavini*. For having in the
time of *Phocas* subdued this Country, and called it *Sclavi-
nia* or *Sclavonia*, after their own Name; by that and other
fortunate Successes on the Eastern Empire, and the Ho-
nour they had thereby gotten, they might very well induce
the rest of the scattered Tribes of the *Sarmatians* to unite
together with them both in Name and Action, & try their
fortunes in the Conquest of the West of Europe, as these
had done already on the East parts of it. In which Design
they sped so well, that they became Masters of almost all
those Countries which lie betwixt the River *Vistula* and
the *Euxine* Sea, the *Adriatick* and the *Baltick*; communi-
cating their Language unto all the Provinces and Nations
conquered by them; and to most their Manners, Rites and
Customs. Their Government was at first by Kings, but so
that the Succession seldom held in a Race or Family, and
those that had the Throne did not long enjoy it. For
having a Law amongst themselves, that he who killed a
Tyrant should succeed in his place; they had few Kings
whom force or other would not vot to be a Tyrant, and
then dispatch him out of the way, that a greater Tyrant
than himself (as it commonly happeneth in such cases) might
possess the Power. Infomuch that they had a new King
almost every year, none of them for the space of an hun-
dred yeares dying natural deaths, and all that while the
People (as it must be) were most miserably torn
in pieces by intestine Wars. They were not cured of
this Distemper, till the several Tribes and Nations of
them (as *Polers*, *Maravians*, *Bohemians* these here, & those

of other Countries) had their several Princes succeeding one another in a regular way. Their Religion was Gentilism at the first. For being originally Heathens, they worshipped such Gods as other of the Gentiles did; *Jef-fan* for *Jupiter*, *Ladon* for *Pluto*, *Marzin* for *Mars*, *Zie-vine* for *Venus*, and *Nian* for *Diana*. They had also a God-dick called *Agade*, to whom they prayed for fair weather and a temperate Air. To their Children they used to give no Name till they began to grow great, and then they conducted them to the Temple of their Gods; where they cut off their first Hair, and offered it as a Pledge of their future Service: at which Solemnity they called together their Friends and Kinsfolk to make merry, with Banquets, Dancing, Singing and all kind of Sports; offering in sacrifice an Hog, and Wine mixed with Honey, somewhat like Methueglin.

The Gospel was first generally received amongst them by the Preaching of *Cyrril* and *Methodius*, two right godly men, who had before converted the *Georgians* and *Circassians*, two great Asian Nations, employed therein by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, with good Success as to the Work, and with no small Honour and advantage to those Patriarchs also. The Eastern *Slaves*, inhabiting those parts of this Country which lie next to *Greece*, and all the *Dacian* Provinces, except *Transylvania*, being of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, but privileged to officiate all Divine Services in their natural Language. The rest, as more obnoxious to the power of the Kings of *Hungary* and the *Ceyman* Emperors submitted by degrees to the Popes of *Rome*, who by this means did reap where they never sowed.

But to return unto the Story. The *Slaves*, thus settled in this Country, (since called *Scalavonia*) continued absolute Masters of it, under the Title of *Kings of Croatia and Dalmatia*, till the year 970, when growing unravishable by their frequent Piracies, and having ravished or surprized a company of *Venitian* Ladies, they forced that State (as the *Liburnians* did the *Romans*) to make War

upon them: which ended in the Loss of *Lesian* and *Cinzola*, two of their best Iland, and almost all the Sea-Towns on the Coast of the *Adriatick*, possessed for the most part since that time by the State of *Venice*: a Tribute also of a hundred Barrel of Wine, and a Present to the Duke of 3000 Concy-Skins being laid upon them; *Petro Ursula* being then Duke of *Venice*, and *Marcion* King of the *Scalavonians*. Afterwards *Zelamirus*, the last King, dying without Issue, bequeathed the Kingdom to his Wife, and fled freely to her Brother *Pladislaus*, King of *Hungary*, furnished the Saint; the right heretofore accruing by this means to the Kings of *Hungary*, but the Possession of a great part of it remaining to the State of *Venice*: the cause of much War and Bloodshed betwixt those Princes, till the *Turk* came to part the Fray, and got the greatest part for himself by their Disagreements. Betwixt these three *Scalavonia* at this time stood thus divided: the *Venitians* possess the greatest part of the Ilands, and all the Sea-coasts from the River *Arfa* to the Bay of *Cattaro*, (the House of *Austria*, in Right of the Crown of *Hungary*, the Inland parts of *Windischland* and *Croatia*; and the *Turks* (who first for footing herein the Reign of *Mahomet* the second) the whole Kingdom of *Bosnia*, the Patronage of *Ragusa*, some Towns in *Windischland* and *Croatia*, and all the Residue of *Dalmatia*, from the Bay of *Cattaro* to *Albania*.

The Arms of *Scalavonia* were *Argent*, a Cardinal's Hat, the Strings pendant, and platted in a True-love Knot, meeting in the Base, *Gules*.

There are in *Scalavonia*

Archbishops 4 Bishops 26.

And thus much for *SCALAVONIA*.

O F

DACIA.

DACIA is bounded on the East with the *Euxine* Sea and some part of *Thrace*, on the West with *Hungary* and *Scalavonia*, on the North with *Podolia* and some other Members of the Realm of *Poland*, on the South with the rest of *Thrace* and *Macedonia*. So called from the *Daci*, who here first inhabited; in *Strabo* better known by the name of *Davi*: who proving, when first known to the *Romans*, an officious people, willingly putting themselves to Service in hope of Gain, occasioned the *Romans* in their Comedies and common Speech to call a Sycophant or Servant by the name of *Dacus*.

It lieth on both sides of the *Danow*, fronting all along the Upper and the Lower *Hungary*, and some part of *Scalavonia*: extended from the 7. Climate to the 10. so that the longest Summers Day in the most Northern parts thereof is near 17 hours, and in the most Southern 15 hours, 3 quarters.

By this account, with reference to the other Limits before laid down, it differeth much in Situation and Dimensions from the ancient *Dacia* described by *Ptolemy*: that lying wholly on the North-side of the *Danow*, but taking in so much of the Upper *Hungary* as lieth on the East-side of *Tibiscus*, this comprehending all the rest of the ancient *Dacia*, with both the *Myfia* and *Dardania*, and in a word, the whole *Dacian* Diocese in the largest extent thereof, the Province of *Prevalatana* excepted only; which, though a Member of this Diocese, was no part of *Dacia*, but rather of *Macedon* or *Albania*. For the clearer understanding whereof we may please to know, that *Dacia* properly so called was situate on the Northside of *Danubius*, as before was said, extending as far Westward as the River *Tibiscus*, where it fronted on the *Tasceges Metanassa*; inhabited by a military and valiant People, who many times, especially when the *Froft* did favour them, passed over the River, and infected the *Roman* Provinces. And though repressed and made tributary

butary by *Julius Cæsar*, yet they brake out again in the time of *Augustus*, who sending *Leontius* against them with a puissant Army, compelled them to retire. On the other side of the River, planting the Southern Banks thereof with strong Towns and Garrisons, to restrain them from the like incursions for the time to come. By means whereof, *Si Dacia tunc non vixit flammata atque dilata est*, faith the Historian, though *Dacia* was not overcome, yet it was removed somewhat farther off, and the Provinces thereby secured from the attempts of that people. After this, from the time of *Cotilo*, with whom *Augustus* had to deal, we find little of them till the Reign of *Decabalus* their last King, a man both ready in Advice, and quick in Execution, Against him *Domitian* made War by *Julianus* his Lieutenant, who gave *Decabalus* a great Overthrow, and had then utterly vanquished him, if his Wit had not better befriended him than his Sword. For fearing that the *Romans* making use of their Victory, would enter and take possession of his Country, he pitched in the way a great number of Stakes in Battel-array, putting on them the old Crevilles of his Soldiers; which, looking like so many armed Arms, frightened the Enemy from approaching the Country. *Trajan* was the next that made War against him and brought him to that Exigent, that having with much loss endured some few skirmishes, he yielded himself, and acknowledged a Friend to the Senate, and a People of *Rome*. But being one of an high spirit, and born in a free Air, he once again fell off from the *Romans*, but to his own destruction: for seeing by the Valour of *Trajan* his Kingdom conquered, and his Palace taken and destroyed, he fell upon his own Sword, and *Dacia* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire. Lost in the time of *Gallienus*, it was again recovered by *Aurelianus*; who, finding how difficult and chargeable the keeping of it was like to be, transplanted the *Roman* Colonies, and the more civil sort of the Natives, to the other side of the River, placing them betwixt the two *Myfia*, (in some part of each) and calling the Country given to them by the name of *Dacia*, or *New Dacia*, leaving the *Old* unto the *Goths*, and others of the barbarous Nations, whose Thoroughfare it was in all their Enterprises and Designs upon the *Roman* Empire. It was divided by *Aurelianus* into the two Provinces of *Dacia Mediterranea*, and *Dacia Ripensis*, this lying on the Banks of the *Danow*, the other more within the Land: which, with the Provinces of *Moesia Superior*, *Dardania*, *Prevalatana*, and part of *Macedonia Salutaris*, made up the whole Diocese of *Dacia* in the times succeeding. It was subject with that of *Macedon* to the *Præfæctus Prætorio*, for *Illyricum*, and consequently appertaining (after the Division) to the Eastern Empire. And it continued in this State till the time of *Justinian*, who being a Native of this Country, subducted it from the Command of that *Præfect*, and instituted both a *Præfæctus Prætorio* for this Diocese only in Civil matters, and a *Primate* for the affairs of the Church; both settled in the City of *Justinian*, of his own Foundation; enlarging the Jurisdiction of the first by the addition of some part of *Macedonia Secunda*, and *Pannonia Secunda*, and giving to the other all those Preliminaries which had been anciently enjoyed by the greater Patriarchs. But this new Institution was of no continuance. For first the *Slaves*, and afterwards the *Russians*, *Hungars*, and *Bulgarians*, breaking over the *Danow*, dismembered it piece-meal from the Empire and divided it under new names amongst themselves. Of which, together with the nature of the Soil and people, I shall speak anon, having first took a view of the Rivers, Hills and other Landmarks, which are to be my chief Guides in the Chorography or Description of them.

The Rivers then of most note are 1. the *Danow*, which

here at *Axiom*, or *Axiopolis*, a Town of *Bulgaria*, takes the name of *Ister* continuing it from thence to its Affluence, where it falleth into the *Euxine* Sea with 7 Mouths or Channels; that is to say, 1. *Pence*, 2. *Naracastona*, 3. *Califonia*, 4. *Plendistona*, 5. *Spiricoftona*, 6. *Boreofstoma*: the name of the last I find not amongst my Authors, *quia languidissimum nec perpetuum*, as it is in *Ptolemy*. 2. *Marulius*, now called *Marich*, 3. *Ternes*, 4. *Aluta*, keeping its old name. 5. *Hierafus*, All of *Old Dacia*, and all falling into the *Danow* or *Ister*: as do also *Ciabrus*, now *Ibar*, a River of *Cervia*. And 6. *Succania* of *Bulgaria*, or the Lower *Myfia*. Chief Mountains of it are, 1. The *Carpathian*. 2. *Scardus*, 3. *Ozbelus*; whereof the first parteth it from *Sarmatia Europea*, the second from *Dalmatia*, and the third from *Macedon*.

This laid, we will proceed to the description of the several Provinces which have comprehended under this name of *Dacia*; that is to say, 1. *Transylvania*, 2. *Moldavia*, 3. *Wallachia*, 4. *Raficia*, 5. *Servia*, 6. *Bulgaria*: The first four in *Old Dacia*, on the North-side of the *Danow*, The two last in *New Dacia*, on the South thereof.

1. TRANSYLVANIA.

TRANSYLVANIA is bounded on the East with *Moldavia*, on the West with the Upper *Hungary*, on the North with *Russia Nigra*, a Province of the *Saim* or *Poland*, from which it is parted by the *Carpathian* Mountains; on the South with *Raficia* and *Wallachia*.

It took this name from the great Woods lying betwixt it and *Hungary*, the name in *Latine* signifying the Country beyond the Woods. By the *Dacian* it is called *Siebenbergen*, from seven Castles or strong Holds anciently built in it to defend the Frontiers: *Septemcastrens* in some *Latine* Authors upon that occasion. But by the more elegant *Latinists* it hath been named *Pannadacia*, as that part of *Dacia*, which either was inhabited by the *Pannonians*, or made subject to them.

The Soil doth naturally abound with Wine, Corn, and Fruit, of which it was so plentiful in the time of the *Romans*, that the Emperor *Trajan* caused a piece of Money to be coined, having the figure of *Ceres*, holding in the one hand a *Cornu-Copia*, and in the other a plain Tablet with this Inscription. *Abundantia Dacia*. Particularly, besides great plenty of Wheat and most Excellent Wines, it yieldeth great store of Cherries, Damascens, Malacatoons, Musk-melons, not inferior to those of *Italy*, and also Centaury good store, and many other Medicinal plants; some Mines of Gold and Silver: many of Iron, Brass, Copper, and not a few Veins of Salt and Sulphur. Of Cattel such abundance, that many times large Oxen are sold for a Florin, or half a Crown piece; and a most notable breed of Horses: not to say any thing of that variety of Wild Beasts which they have in their Woods and Forests, and all sorts of fowl both for food and pleasure. So populous withal, (for the most fruitful Countries are commonly populous also) that *Cyprius*, Governour hereof in the Minority of *Stephen* the fourth Son of *John de Sepisius*, Anno 1551, advanced an Army of 70000 able men, consisting of the Natives of this Country only, for the Siege of *Lippe*, a strong Town of *Hungary*, but on the Borders of this Country.

The People are much of the same nature with the *Hungarians*, to whom they have been a long time subject, but somewhat more stubborn and untractable; speak the same Language as they do, with some difference: in the Dialect only; converted at the same time to the Christian

Asian Faith, and under the same form of Ecclesiastical Government. In former times they used to read, as the Jews do, from the right hand to the left; but of late hours they conform to the Western Nations, from whom they are generally defended.

For that the people of this Country are the Progeny of the Saxons, is evident 1. by the Saxon Language yet in part retained. 2. We find that Charles the Great, like a politic Conqueror, placed many of that Nation here, weakening for their strength at home, and fortifying the Bounds of his Empire. And 3. by a Story recited by *Vorslegan*, who touched in our Description of *Brumfick*; the whole Narration is this. *Halberstadt* was beyond credit troubled with Rats, which a Musician, whom they called the *Pydpyer*, undertaking for a great mass of money to destroy, they agree: hereupon he tuned his Pipes, and all the Rats in the Town dancing after him are drowned in the next River. This done he asked his pay, but is denied: whereupon he frieth up a new fit of Mirth: all the Children, male and female, of the Town, follow him into the Hill *Hamel*, which presently closed again. The Parents miss their Children, and could never hear news of them. Now of late some have found them in this Country, where I also leave them: only telling you this, that this marvellous accident is said to happen the 22. of July, 1376. Since which time it is said that the people of *Halberstadt* permit not any Drum, Pipe, or other Instrument to be sounded in that Street: and established a Decree, that in all Writings of Contract or Bargain, after the Date of our Saviours Nativity, the Date also of this their Childrens Transmigration should be added in *rei memoriam*. But though the Dutch or Saxons make up the main body of them, yet being conquered by the Hungars, they received many of their Colonies: and in the Northern parts there remain still some of the old *Scythians* planted there by *Attila*. Out of those Members is the Body of this State composed: so strong and populous, that it is conceived to be able to raise an Army of 90000 men; and actually did arm 6000 Horse and 12000 Foot for the Battel of *Kerefure*, Anno 1596, being more by 2000 than the whole Realm of Hungary sent unto that Service.

Chief Towns herein of the foundation of the Dutch or Saxons, are 1. *Hermestad*, in the Latine *Hermanopolis*, (of old called *Cibinium*, from the River *Cibin*, on which it was situate) so named of one *Herman* the Founder of it, little inferior to *Vienna* for strength or greatness, well fortified both by Art and Nature. 2. *Cronstad*, in Latine called *Corona*, by some *Brassovia*, by others *Stephanopolis*; this last name being given by Stephen King of Hungary, who repaired and beautified it; situate on the Borders of *Walachia*, amongst fruitful Mountains; remarkable for a fair Library and a kind of Academy; and the most noted Empory or Mart-Town of all this Country; of great Resort especially in the Time of their publick Fairs, by *Turks*, *Arabians*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Poles*, *Polanders*, *Walachians*, and other Nations. 3. *Bisricia*, (by the Dutch called *Neren*) so called from the River *Bisric*, which runneth through it: so pleasant and so sweet a Town, that there is no dirt or mire to be seen at any time; or if there be, the people presently swell up the River, and so cleanse the Streets 4. *Mediasia* (by the Dutch *Medwisch*) so called *quasi medius confinis*, because situate in the midst of the Country; a Town almost as neat as *Bisric*. 5. *Sagowaria* or *Schenburg*, on the declivity of an Hill. 6. *Zabscus*, or *Latze*, once the chief Town of the Saxons, but now much decayed; situate in a very deep Valley, well fenced with Waters, and those Waters well stored with Fish. 7. *Clanfenburg*, or *Calsfuer*, the *Zugma* of *Ptolemy*, in Latine called *Claudiopolis*, from *Claudius* the II. Emperor,

by whom re-edified: at first a Colony of the Saxons or Dutch only, but of late times the Hungarians, coming in as strangers, were at last privileged as Citizens and inhabited it together with them. The Town is well seated in the middle of a pleasant Plain, encompassed with an handsome Wall, and beautified with elegant Buildings. 8. *Abdus*, now *Weissenburg*, the *Apulum* of *Ptolemy*, situate on a small brook then called *Aphus*, (But now *Oran*) whence it had the name. Built on the side of an Hill near the River *Maris*, (or *Marila*) over-looking a large and fruitful Plain: heretofore a Bishops See, and the ordinary Residence of the Prince or Vaivod of *Transylvania*; but now a Garrison of Hungarian Soldiers, holding it for the Emperor, as King of Hungary.

Chief Towns belonging to the Hungarians, and by them inhabited, are, 1. *Waradin*, much mentioned in the Stories of the latter times, since these invasions of the *Turks*, situate on the Borders of Hungary, 2. *Thorda*, built in or near the place where stood the *Salina* of *Ptolemy*, so called from the abundance of Salt-pits which were then about it. 3. *Engedine*, by the Romans called *Amnium*, from a Causey leading to it, raised by one *Annius*, and from him so named; some Fragments whereof are still remaining 4. *Drova*, remarkable for a Vein of the best Wines, 5. *Fenuschium*, affording very pleasant Wines also, not inferior to those of *Venusium* in Italy. 6. *Zilab*, of which little memorable. 8. *Milenback*, not far from which, betwix which and the Town of *Bresl*, is a very strong Fortrefs, commanding a direct and narrow passage leading into this Country out of Hungary.

In the North part hereof lieth the Province called *ZECKLAR*, inhabited by the *Scythi*, an old brood of *Scythians*, brought hither by *Attila* on his first Conquest of this Country; and here still continuing. A people which have much in them of the ancient *Huns*, and had heretofore a particular Language to themselves, but now they speak the Hungarian generally, differing in the Dialect only. But though by the necessity of Commerce and Cohabitation, they are brought into the same Language, they still retain their ancient Customs, governed by their old Laws, and living after the same manner as the *Switzers* do; each of their Cantons (seven in number) being absolute in and of it self, but all united with the *Transylvanians*, and with one another, for defence of the whole Country against the several Pretensions of the German and Turkish Emperours. And though they acknowledge some Subjection to the Emperour as King of Hungary, yet it is but what they lift themselves: being anciently privileged from all Taxes, more than the paying of a Bull for every Household, in the way of an Heriot at the Coronation of the new King, when and how oftsoever it may chance to happen. Their Cantons (*Sedi* they call them) are, 1. *Sepp*, 2. *Orbay*, 3. *Kyldi*, 4. *Czyk*, 5. *Gyrie* or *Udarheli*, 6. *Marus-Zek*, And 7. *Arman-Zek*; so called from the chief Town in each Division. In former times no Nobleman, nor any one of better Means and greater Eminence than other, was known amongst them; but now of late that Parity (or Confusion rather) is grown out of credit, and some begin to over-top the rest both in Power and Title as in other places.

The first Inhabitants of the old *Dacia*, whereof this Province was a part, were the *Anarti*, *Taurisci*, *Rhaetici*, *Canconesi*, the *Buridenesi*, and *Biethi*, &c. First conquered they were by *Lyfimbach*, the great and mighty K. of *Thrace*, one of the Renowned Captains of *Alexander* the Great; in token whereof, innumerable Medals in the age of our Grandfathers were found in this Country, leaving his Image on the side, and this word *Victoria* on the other. How they were afterwards subdued by the Emperour *Trajan*, and quitted by *Aurelianus*, hath been shewn already

dy. Being forsaken by the Romans, it was won by the *Goths*, their constant Dwelling till forced over the *Danube* by the *Huns*, the next Possessors of this Country; the Road or thorough-fare from that time of those barbarous Nations which out of *Asia* made there Inroads on the Europeans. Having been successively subdued by the *Selaves* and *Rosses* this part hereof was conquered by Stephen, the first King of Hungary, furnished the Saint, by whose persuasion and inducements they received the Gospel. They were governed after this time, as Member of that Kingdom, by a Deputy, whom they called the *Vaivod* of *Transylvania*, (the word *Vaivod* signifying as much as *Præfatus Militia*, or a Lord-Lieutenant) a man, by reason of the greatness of his place and power of most Authority in that Kingdom. The name and Succession of these *Vaivods* till the time of *John Huniades*, comes imperfectly to us; but after that more clear and constant in this order following.

THE VAIVODS AND PRINCES of TRANSYLVANIA.

1. *John*, surnamed *Huniades*, made Vaivod hereof by *Vladislaus* the IV. A man of great Valour and Renown, the great Defender of his Country against the *Turks*, whom he overthrew in many Battels, especially in that of *Maros*, where he slew 50000 of them. He died about the year 1458.
2. *Stephen*, of the noble Family of *Cattory*, Vaivod in the time of *Matthias* King of Hungary, the Son of *Huniades*.
3. *Stephen* II. surnamed *de Sepiso*, from the place of his Honour and Estate; not so much memorable for any thing as for being Father of *Barbara*, the Wife of *Sigismund* King of Poland and of
4. *John* II. called also *de Sepiso*, after the death of *Levis* the II. chosen King of Hungary, of whom before amongst the Kings of that Realm
5. *Americus*, Bishop of *Veradium*, made Vaivod by *John de Sepiso*, on his taking of the Crown of Hungary, treacherously murdered, for not complying with the *Turk* Anno 1534.
6. *Stephen* III. surnamed *Maylat*, a noble Hungarian, but extremely ambitious, having not long after the death of *Americus* usurped the Vaivodship, was in the year 1540 confirmed in that Dignity.
7. *Stephen* IV. Son of *John de Sepiso* the late King of Hungary, by *Solyman* the Magnificent made Vaivod of *Transylvania*, being then an Infant, (by whom he had been deprived of his Kingdom of Hungary, not long before being inroached upon not long after by the said *Solyman*, this Country was put into the hands of *Ferdinand* King of Hungary, other Lands being given to the young Prince in exchange hereof.
8. *Stephen* V. surnamed *Dobus*, for his Valour shewed against the *Turks* in defending *Agria*, made Vaivod of this Country by the said King *Ferdinand*. But *Solyman* not liking that this Country should be at the Devotion of the Kings of Hungary, conferred the same (under the Vallage of his Empire) upon one
9. *John* III. whose Family and surname I have no where found; a professed Champion of the *Turks*, and as professed an Enemy to *Ferdinand* and his Successors in the Kingdom of Hungary.

1575

1599:

1601

1604

1607

1603

1613

1630

10. *Stephen* VI. surnamed *Battery*, (of which House he was) made Vaivod by the *Turks*; and afterwards on the Commendation of *Amurath* the III. chosen King of Poland.
11. *Christopher Battery*, Brother of *Stephen*, on whose Election unto Poland, he succeeded here; and was the first, who leaving the Title of Vaivod, took that of Prince of *Transylvania*.
12. *Sigismund*, Son of *Christopher*, took off the *Turks* Boudage, defeated many of their Armies, and slew some of their *Bassas*, (the *Scanderbeg* of the times he lived in) But not being able to hold out against so potent an Adversary, he resigned his Estate to *Rodolphus* the Emperour, having for it in exchange the Dukedoms of *Oppelen* and *Ratibor* in *Silesia*, and an annual Pension of 50000 *Joachim*, But finding his Pension ill paid, he made a new Renegation of it to.
13. *Andrew Battery*, Cousin of *Sigismund* slain within the year by the Vaivod of *Valachia*. After whose death
14. *Rodolphus*, Emperour and King of Hungary, is admitted Prince of *Transylvania*, on the second Renegation of *Sigismund*. But his Soldiers behaving themselves with too great Insolence, *Sigismund* was called back again, but never well settled: so that at last he was faine to leave the Country in the power of the Emperour and retire to *Prague*, where in the year 1613 he died unlamented. In the mean time
15. *Jusuf* or *Iffran*, surnamed *Bajazy*, a Nobleman of this Country, made Prince hereof by the great *Turk*, and supported by him, cleared the Province of the Germans; and being followed by great Companies of those of the Reformed Religion, he not only obtained of the Emperour *Rodolphus* a Confirmation of this Estate unto himself, but liberty of Conscience, and the free exercise of Religion for both the Nations, presently after which he died, Decemb. 30. 1606.
16. *Sigismund* II. of the noble Family of *Ragotzy*, elected in the February following by the *Transylvanians*: but finding himself not able to make his Election good against the Emperour, and being unwilling to subject himself unto the *Turks*, and after the end of one year he relinquished the Government, and betook himself again to a private life.
17. *Gabriel Battery*, of the Family of the former Princes, succeeded by the favour of *Achmet* the great *Turk*, after whose death, so welcome to his Neighbours and Subjects,
18. *Bathlem Gabor* by the same *Achmet* was made Prince of *Transylvania*; a professed Enemy of the House of *Austria*, but one that with a great deal of noise did them little hurt.
19. *Stephen* VII. surnamed *Ragotzy*, on the death of *Bathlem Gabor*, succeeded Prince, by the power and favour of the *Turks*, under whose Clientele and Protection he doth still enjoy it, (as his Predecessors did before him) against all pretensions of the Empire and Realm of Hungary: as on the other side he is defended by the Emperour and Crown of Poland from being made Thrall unto the *Turks*.

2. MOLDAVIA.

MOLDAVIA is bounded on the East with the *Euxine Sea*, on the West with *Transylvania*, on the North with the River *Niester*, the *Tyras* of *Ptolemy* and the *Ancients*, by which it is parted from *Podolia*, a Province of *Poland*; and on the South with *Valachia*.

It is so called as some say, *quasi Maotavia*, from its nearness to the Fens of *Maotia*; or rather from the *Huns* and other People of those Fens who possessed the same. Others conceive that it was first called *Maur-davia*, i. e. *nigrovum Davorum Regio*, the Country of the black *Davia*, (for by the name of *Davi* were the *Dacians* called, as we find in *Strabo* and some others) the *Dacians* called, from their Completion, or the colour of their Caps made from their Garments; as *Nigra Russia*, a near neighbouring Province of the Realm of *Poland*, on the like occasion. But the more probable opinion (as I take it) is, that it took this name from the River *Moldavia*, which runneth through it, as the *Moravians* had the name from the River *Morava*. The Nature and Religion of the People we shall find in *Valachia*, whereof anciently it was reckoned for a part.

The Country is very fruitful in Corn, Wine, Grapes, and Wood; but more used for pasturage than Tillage, by reason of the great want of People to manure the Land: by means whereof it affordeth great plenty of Beef and Mutton, whereby they supply some parts of *Poland* and the populous City of *Constantinople*. And these they issue out in so great a Number, that the tenth penny, exacted by the Prince or Vaivod in the way of Custom amounteth to 150000 Crowns per annum: and yet the Clergy and the Gentry are discharged of this impost. But the main Trade of this Country is not driven by the Natives: the Port Towns being full of *Armenians*, *Jews*, *Hungarians*, and *Ragusan* Merchants who foretell the Markets, and barter all their Corn and Wine into *Russia* and *Poland*; their Skins, Wax, Honey, powdered Beef, Pulse and Butter into *Constantinople*: it being credibly reported, that from the Ports of this Country no fewer than 500 Ships laden with Corn, Vintages, and other Provisions necessary to the life of man, are yearly sent unto that City.

The Country is in a manner round, the Diameter each way being near upon 300 English miles: but so ill inhabited, by reason of the neighbourhood of the *Turks*, *Tartars* and *Polonian Cossacks*, that certain English Gentlemen having in the year 1609 travelled at least 240 miles in the Country, could meet with in all the way but nine Towns and Villages; and for an hundred miles together the Grapes so high, that it rotted on the ground for want of Cattel to eat it, and of men to order it. So that we are not to expect, in it many eminent Cities or Towns of note; though it afford two Archbishops and two Bishops Sees, Followers (as all the rest of the People are) of the Traditions and Doctrines of the Church of *Greece*.

The principal of those which be, are, 1. *Oczacoma*, *Zucconia*, or *Socava*, the Vaivod's Seat. 2. *Fuciania*. 3. *Faezling*, of which little memorable. 4. *Kotim*, a place of great strength, on the Borders of *Poland*, by some called *Cochina*, the ordinary Magazine of the Country. 5. *Jassy*, commonly called *Tau*, the chief Town for Wealth and Trade in all this Province. 6. *Bender*, a strong Town on the *Euxine Sea*. 7. *Polada*, near the *Danov*. 8. *Bialograd*, situate on or near the River *Tyras*, now called *Niester*, a strong Town against the *Tartars*, and *Polonians*. 9. *Kilia*, anciently called *Abichela* situate on the Shore of the *Euxine Sea*, for the most part com-

passed round with the waters of it, and therefore said by *Ptolemy* to be an Island. 10. *Ac-German*, of old called *Alproctron*, and *Monastyrum*, a very strong Town on the same coast also. Both taken by *Bajazet*, the second Emperor of the *Turks*, Anno 1485. But these three Towns are not so properly in *Moldavia*, at least not in *Moldavia* properly so called, as in a little Province called *Bessarabia*, lying on the *Euxine*, formerly counted part thereof, till conquered by the *Turks*, in the year aforesaid, it became a Member of that Empire. A Tract inhabited by the *Bessi* in the times of *Ptolemy*, who being driven out of their Country by the *Bulgarians*, settled themselves (as some say) in that part of *Sclavonia*, which is now called *Bosnia*.

The whole Country, following the Fortune of *Transylvania* and the rest of *Dacia*, till the coming of the *Seleuces* and *Rosses*, was for a while accounted part of the *Russian* Empire, till the dismembering of that Empire by the *Tartars*. After which it was sometime Homage to the *Polanders*, sometime to the *Hungarians*, according as the Vaivods or Princes of it could best Conditions. By *Mahomet* the Great it was made Tributary to the *Turks*, but the Tribute at the first was very light and easie not above 2000 Crowns per annum: that mighty Emperor, who aimed at more profitable Conquests, being loath to spend his Forces on so poor a Purchase as the addition of this Province would have been unto him. But *Bajazet* his Son finding how fit it lay for the more absolute Command of the *Euxine Sea*, took in that part hereof which is called *Bessarabia*, reducing it into the form of a *Turkish* Province, Anno 1485; as before was said; imposing on the rest an increase of the former Tribute; and so left it unto the disposal of its natural Prince. After which time the Vaivods fearing to be made Vassals to the *Turks*, did many times rise in Arms against them, aided therein sometimes by the *Hungarians*, and sometimes by the *Polanders*, which last pretended to the Sovereignty and Chieftie of it. *Bogdanus*, Vaivod hereof in the time of *Solimani* the second, uniting himself more closely to the *Polonians*, became thereby suspected by the *Turkish* Tyrant; who with a great power chased him out of his Country, and gave the same unto a *John*, a *Moldavian* born, but bred up for the most part in the *Turkish* Court (where he renounced his Faith, and was circumcised) under the yearly Tribute of 6000 Crowns. But *John* the new-made Vaivod was no sooner settled, but he returned again to his first Religion, and for that cause grew less affected by the *Turks*. Which being observed by the then Vaivod of *Valachia*, he persecuted to obtain that Dignity for his Brother *Peter*; offering to double the said Tribute, and to assist in Subjugation of the Country. The *Turk*, accepting of these Offers, compounds an Army of 70000 *Valachians*, 30000 *Turks*, and 3000 *Hungarians*, with which they fell into *Moldavia*, and were so gallantly received by the noble Vaivod, that few of them escaped the Slaughter. But being afterwards betrayed by his old Friend *Czariviche*, and against faith given, barbarously murdered by the *Turkish* *Bassa*, *Moldavia* fell into the hands of the *Turks*, and was united to that Empire, Anno 1574: the Vaivods from that time forwards being nominated by the *Turkish* Emperours, and governing as Substitutes and Lieutenants for and under them. And though *Aron*, one of the succeeding Vaivods, did shake off his Yoke, and confederated himself with *Sigismund* Prince of *Transylvania*, and *Michael*, Vaivod of *Valachia*, for Defence of themselves and their Estates against that Enemy: yet being afterwards supplanted by *Rajpan*, one of his own ambitious Subjects, and that confederacy disjointed, it became subject first unto the *Polonians*, by the power and

practice of *Zomiskie*, Chancellor of *Poland*; and then unto *Rodolphus*, Emperor of *Germany*; and finally unto the *Turks*, as before it was. And though the *Polanders* have since made use of some opportunities in imposing Vaivods on this Country, in despite of the *Turks*: yet was it commonly to their own Loss, little or no Benefit to the *Moldavians*, and in the end drew the whole Power of the *Turks* upon themselves in the Reign of *Osman*; they never since intermeddling in the Affairs of this Province, but leaving them entirely to the *Turks* disposing; who receive hence some yearly Tribute, but have not hitherto obtained the entire Possession of it, so long since aimed at by those Tyrants.

3. VALACHIA.

VALACHIA is bounded on the East with *Moldavia*, and a branch of the *Ister*, or *Danubius*, bending towards the North; on the West with *Russia*, on the North with *Transylvania* and some part of *Moldavia*, and on the South with the *Danubius* wholly, by which it is parted from *Servia* and *Bulgaria*. First called *Flaccia*, from one *Flaccus* a noble *Roman*, who, on the Conquest hereof in the time of *Trajan*, brought thither an Italian Colony; afterwards by corruption *Valachia*, and at last *Valachia*.

But the name of *Flaccia* or *Valachia* was first of more large extent than it is at present, comprehending all *Moldavia* also: divided in those times by a Ridge of Mountains into *Cisalpina*, and *Transalpina*; the name of *Moldavia* being afterwards appropriated to the one, and that of *Valachia* (properly and specially so called) unto the other. The People of both, in token of their first Extraction, speak a corrupt *Latin* or *Italian* Language; but in Matters of Religion follow the Dictates of the *Greek* Church, and obey the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, under whom all Ecclesiastical Affairs are governed by one Archbishop, and two Bishops. In other things they partake generally of the Rudeness and Barbarity of those Nations, which have since subdued them, being a rough-hewn people, hardly civilized, ignorant for the most part of Letters and all Liberal Sciences, not weaned perfectly (in so long time of their profession of Christianity) from the Superstitions of the Gentiles, swearing by *Jupiter* and *Venus*, marrying and unmarried at their pleasures, much given to Magical Charms and Incantations, and burying with their Dead both Cloaths and Vintages, for their Relief in that long Journey to the other World.

It is in length 500, in breadth 120 miles. The Country is for the most part plain and very fertile, affording store of Cattel, a breed of excellent Horses, Iron-mines, Saltpetre, and all Provisions necessary to the life of man. Some Vines they also have, and not few Mines of Gold and Silver, more than for fear of the *Turks*, and other ill Neighbours they dare discover. They are begirt about with woody Mountains, which afford them Fewel; and very well watered with the Rivers of 1. *Pruth*, called anciently *Hierafus*. 2. *Sterius*. 3. *Fulmina*. 4. *Telz*. 5. *Aluta*, all of them falling into 6. the *Danov*, which in this Province, at the Influx of *Fulmina*, takes the name of *Ister*. Yet it is not (at the present) very populous, the Spaciousness and Fertility hereof considered, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of the *Tartars*, *Turks*, and *Polonian Cossacks*: their late long Wars against those Nations and the *Dutch* having much decreased their former numbers, with which they so abounded in the times foregoing, that the Vaivod of this Country, in the year 1473, was able upon little warning to bring 70000 men into the Field for present Service.

Places of most note herein are, 1. *Galatz*, on the Influx of the River *Pruth*, or *Hierafus*, into the *Danubius*; the

water of which River is so unwholesome, that it causeth the Body to swell. 2. *Treicortum*, not far from which they dig a Bituminous earth, so refined and pure, that usually they make Candles of it instead of Wax. 3. *Prailah*, by some called *Brailovia*, the Town of most Trade in all this Country, situate on the *Danov*, and defended with a very strong Cattle, fortified by Art and Nature, and furnished with a strong Garrison of *Turks*, as the Key of this Province, opening the Door unto the rest. The Town was most cruelly destroyed and rased to the ground, with an incredible Slaughter of the Inhabitants of all Sexes and Ages, for the space of four days together, by *John* the Vaivod of *Moldavia*, spoken of before, at his first revolting from the *Turks*: but the Cattle, in regard of the great strength of it, was scarce attempted by him. 4. *Teima*, a Fortrefs of great strength, but in the hands of the *Turks* also. 5. *Zorza*, corruptly for *San-Georgio*, seated on the *Danov*, with an Arm whereof the Cattle of it is uncompallidly garrisoned by the *Turks*, and by them held to be so strong and so safe a place, that at the taking of it by *Sigismund* the Prince of *Transylvania*, Anno 1596, there were found in it 39 great pieces of Ordnance, with such store of Arms and Ammunition as might well have served for a whole Kingdom. 6. *Tercevisia*, or *Terevis*, sometimes the chief City of the Province, and the ordinary Residence of the Vaivod, till the taking of it by the *Turks*: once beautified with a fair and famous Monastery, by the *Turks* converted into a Fortrefs, environed with deep Trenches, strong Bulwarks upon every quarter, and great store of Ordnance, but many times lost and got again, according to the changes and chance of War. 7. *Bucuregia*, about a days journey from *Tercevisia*, seated on the *Danov*, remarkable for two Bridges built near unto it. The one was of Boats, (the laying whereof took up no less than a whole months time) for the transporting of the Army of *Sinan* *Bessa*, against *Sigismund* Prince of *Transylvania* before mentioned, and broken down by the said *Bessa*, in his Flight, having been worsted in all places by the *Transylvanian*. The other was the work of the Emperor *Trajan*, in his War against *Decabalus* King of *Dacia*, built all of Stone, and laid on Piles and Arches of a wonderful greatness; 24 Piles or Pillars whereof are yet remaining, to the great admiration of all beholders. 8. *Cebrium*, of old called *Leystomus*, in vain besieged by the Forces of *Mahomet* the Great, coming in person to subdue this petty Province. 9. *Zarnighehusa*, the Seat-Royal of *Decabalus* King of *Dacia*, taken and destroyed by *Trajan* in his War against him; who, causing it to be repaired and more beautified than formerly, gave it the Privileges of *Rome*, and the name of *Ulpia Trajana*, which it retained as long as *Dacia* was a Province of the *Roman* Empire, now a small Village called *Vetzer*. Some stones have been dug up thereabouts with this Inscription, *COLONIA ULPIA TRAJANA AUG. DACIAE ZARMIS*, which clearly shows as well the Dignity and esteem as the Antiquity of the place, before *Trajan's* times.

This Province, as the rest of *Dacia* on that side of the *Danov*, after the coming in of the *Seleuces* and *Rosses* was under Princes of their own, whom they called (as those of *Transylvania* and *Moldavia* did) by the name of *Vaivods*. Protected by the *Hungarian* Kings they lived long in Peace; till, sensible of the approaching Danger which the Conquest of most part of *Servia* and *Bulgaria* by the *Turks* was like to bring them, the Vaivod of it in the time of *Bajazet* the First passed over the *Danov* with his Forces, and having done great Spoil to the *Turkish* Territories, returned again unto his Country. Rather provoked than weakened with which Invasion, *Bajazet* comes into *Valachia*, overcomes the Vaivod in a pitched Field, compelling him to sue for Peace, and

to pay him Tribute. But *Bajazet* being not long after taken Prisoner by *Tamerlane*, and the Succession controverted amongst his Sons, the imposed Tribute was with-held, till *Mahomet*, the fifth King of the *Turks*, having settled the Affairs of that tottering State, *Ann* 1417 enforced them to a new Composition, and the payment of all former Reckonings. The fortunate Successes of *Chingides* in several Battles, induced them once more to change their Masters, and to put themselves under the Protection of the *Hungarians*, as they had done formerly: but they paid dear for it, their Country being made the Thoroughfare of the *Turkish* Forces in their Attempts upon that Kingdom. But the *Hungarians* being vanquished at the Battle of *Cassova* by *Amirab* the second, the accustomed Tribute was brought in, and the *Turks* satisfied for the present, being then hardly put to it by the famous *Scanderberg*. Not long after, in the year 1462, *Mahomet*, the Great undertook the Conquest of this Country, upon advertisement that *Wladus* the then Vaivod of it, intended to join with the *Hungarians* in some War against him: finding how unprofitable he had spent his Forces in fighting against Woods, Mountains, and a walled Country, he set up *Dracula*, the younger Brother of *Wladus*, to claim the Government, who making a Party amongst the people, and having the *Turk* for his Assistance and support, possessed himself of the Estate, to be holden of him as a Vassal to the *Turkish* Empire. And it continued in this state, the Vaivods being after this at the *Turks* appointment, and paying all Exactions imposed upon them, till the Revolt of *Sigismund* the Prince of *Transylvania*, *Ann* 1595, at what time *Michael*, the then Vaivod hereof, taking that opportunity to shake off this Yoke, confederated with him and the *Moldavian* for their common Safety. And though he held out longer against *Turk* and *German* than either of the other did, discomfited the *Turks* by his own proper Forces at the Battle of *Nicopolis*, vanquished the *Poles*, and added that Province for a while unto the Estate: yet, being at last outed of his Country by the *Poles*, and another put into his place, he was shamefully slain in his own Tent, by the privy and consent of *Buffa*, Lieutenant of *Rodolphus*, Emperor, and King of *Hungary*. After whose death the Country miserably distracted betwixt two Vaivods, the one placed by the Emperor *Rodolph*, and the other by *Mahomet* the Grand Seigneur, endured all the Spoil and Wreck which so calamitous a Competition could bring upon it: till in the end, the fortune of the *Turks* prevailing, the *Valachians* were constrained to submit unto their Disposall, and receive their Vaivods from that Court, as they had done formerly; performing their accustomed Duties, and paying fish yearly Tribute as is laid upon them. Which notwithstanding, partly by their own natural Unquietness, and partly by the ambition of such persons as contend for that Dignity, they have since been many times embroiled in Wars; never so quietly composed, but that a new Hope, or the Artifices of the *Turkish* Ministers, starts them into Action. By means whereof, when they have tired and spent themselves in their own Combustions, they may in fine be fully conquered, and made the next addition to the *Turkish* Monarchy.

Of what Revenue these Provinces severally were to their natural Lords, and of what severally to the *Turks*, I am not able to determine. But look upon them as conjunct, and as they stood at the time of the Revolt so often mentioned, and they yielded one way with another into the Treasury of the Grand Seigneur no less than a million of Ducats yearly. *Knolles* in his *Turkish* History doth report it so. And his Continuator doth affirm that *Moldavia* only, before the said Revolt, did yearly yield unto the *Turk* a whole Tun of Gold, 2000 Horles

for service, 10000 great Measures of Wheat, with as much Barley, and a wonderful proportion of Butter, Honey and other Victuals; adding, withal, that the other two Provinces paid as much, or more, for their yearly Tribute. After which rare, the Estimate made by *Knolles* may hold very good. But since the Reduction of these Countries to their former Obedience, the *Turks* having been more moderate in their Exactions than they were before, for fear of startling them to some new Engagement, whom they have brought to this Obedience and Conformity with such a vast expense both of Blood and Treasure as would have purchased the best Kingdom of Christendom in the open Market. Inasmuch that the ordinary Tribute of *Moldavia* is now but 40000 Chequins, that of *Valachia* but 24000 of the same Coin; besides 1000 Horles yearly sent from both. Such Bribes and Presents as are given by the Vaivods hereof, either to get or hold their places, being Merchandisable Ware, and wholly at the *Turks* disposing, not being part of this Account.

4. RASCIA.

RASCIA is bounded on the East with *Valachia*, on the West with *Hungary*, on the North with *Transylvania*, and on the South with the River *Danube*, encompassed on three sides with that River, and another now called *Temer*, by the *Latins* *Samus*; and on the East divided from *Valachia* by the River *Aluta*. Called *Rascia* from the *Rascians*, a *Slavonian* People, whom *Orduin* placeth in this Tract, and from him *Magnus*. But heret it is to be observed, that besides this Country, the *Rascians* held some Towns and Territories on the other side of the *Danube*, and amongst other the strong Town of *Chrysumum*, whereof more anon.

The Country is poor enough, but the people poorer, oppressed in former times by the *Servians*, and of late by the *Turks*; which makes them valiant and adventurous upon all occasions, as commonly these people are who give themselves the hope of bettering those Fortunes which they cannot make worse. Places of most note here are, 1. *Bedon*, a Town of Trade on the *Danube*, memorable for the Marts or Fairs which are here held annually. 2. *Zarnovia*. 3. *Covin*. 4. *Nouvebarde*. 5. *Severin*, not far from which, betwixt it and *Bucaresta*, a Town of *Valachia*, are the remains of *Trajan's* Bridge before mentioned. 6. *Colambes*, and 7. *Columbella*; of which little memorable.

These *Rascians*, as before is said, were a Tribe of *Slaves*, settled in this Country, at the time of their first spreading in the East, and here continuing ever since in possession of it. Governed at first by their own Princes, whom, by a name borrowed from the *Grecians*, they called their *Despots*; that being once the Title of the Heir apparent or designed Successor of the Eastern Empire, as *Cesar* had been formerly in the Empire of *Rome*, and *Dauphin* in the same sense in the Realm of *France*, to signify the eldest Brother (if Heir apparent to the Crown) of the King in being. But as the following Emperors did affect new Titles, so that of *Despot* fell from one step to another, till given at last unto the Governors of Provinces, as the *Despot* of *Epirus*, *Peloponnesus*, &c. and in the end was assumed by the several Princes of *Rascia*, *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*. How this Estate became united unto *Servia*, I am yet to seek: but sure I am, it was united in the person of *George* *Despot* of *Servia*, and as a part of his Estate surprised by *Amirab* the second, who boasted his Success therein. (In a Speech made unto his Soldiers at the Siege of *Belgrade*) notwithstanding that he had to strive with Hunger, Thirst, Labour, and Desperation. Nor have

have I found at what time or under whose Conduct they passed over *Danubius*, and there possessed themselves of *Chrysumum*, and some other Towns and Territories on that side of the River, which they still retain, either furnished by the *Servians*, or at least intermingled with them; which makes some Writers of opinion that the *Rascians* and the *Servians* are but one and the same People under divers names: to which conjecture their being subject to the same Prince gave some farther ground. But whenever they passed over, most probable it is, that, proving either troublesome Neighbours, or unwelcome Guests, they gave occasion to the *Despots* of *Servia* to make War upon them, and having vanquished them on that side of the River, to carry the War over unto this; till in the end the whole Country was made subject to them. Added to *Servia*, they fell together with it into the power of the *Turks*, as was said before. But being more impatient of the Yoke than the *Servians* were, they did the *Turks* much mischief many times, as they came in their way: never so much nor so effectually, as when *Mahomet* the III was against the *Hungarians*; at what time they frequently distressed his Armies, by cutting off his men, and intercepting the provisions of Arms and Victuals intended for the great Army of *Sinan Bassa*. After which at the time when *Sigismund* Prince of *Transylvania* had won so many noble Victories against the *Turks*, 10000 of these *Rascians*, casting off that Yoke, offered themselves unto his Service. These are the only memorable Actions which are told us of them, though this last was only the attempt of some private Adventures, the whole Nation still continuing in Obedience, as before they did. But following (as they did) the Fortunes of *Servia*, and having a Concernment on that side of the Water, we shall there say something farther of them.

Thus have we seen when and by what means the whole Province of *Old Dacia* became in part subject, and in part tributary to the *Turks*. It is now time to pass over the *Danube*, and look upon the other part of this Province, called *Dacia Nova*, or *New Dacia*, containing after our account four Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, that is to say, both *Mysia*, *Scythia*, and *Dardania*, besides the two *Dacias*, *Mediterranea* and *Ripensis*, interjected betwixt the two *Mysias*, as before is said: all now reduced only unto two of the *Turkish* Provinces, namely the Countries of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*.

5. SERVIA.

SERVIA is bounded on the East with *Bulgaria*, on the West with *Bosnia*, and some part of the Lower *Hungary*, on the North with the *Danubius*, by which it is parted from *Rascia* and some part of *Valachia*, on the South with *Albania* and part of *Macedon*. It containeth all *Mysia Superior* and a great part of *Dardania*; and took this new name from the *Serbi*, or *Sorabi*, a *Slavonian* People, of whom more hereafter.

This Country, with the neighbouring *Rascia* and the modern *Slavonia*, was first converted to the Faith by the preaching of *Cyril* and *Methodius*, formerly remembered, between the years 860 and 890, of both which there is reserved some special Monuments. For *Methodius*, having obtained both of the Patriarch of *Constantinople* and the Pope of *Rome*, that the Nations by them converted might celebrate all Divine Offices in their natural Languages, translated the whole Bible into the *Slavonian* Tongue, which still they have among them in high esteem. And *Cyril* is said to have devised the *Servian* Character, not used in this Country only, (though here originally but also in *Rascia*, *Bulgaria*, *Bosnia*, *Moldavia*, and most parts of *Russia*: which Character, from this

Cyril, (or *Chiruril*, as they pronounce it) is still called *Chirullice*.

The Country was very rich and fruitful before the Conquest of it by the *Turks*, well stored with Mines of Gold and Silver, especially about *Zerbina*, a strong Town hereof. The People are rude and gross, and much given to Wine; false of their Promises, and that upon slight occasions, so that there is but little trust to be laid upon them.

Chief Rivers of this Country, are, 1. *Colubra*, and 2. *Lina*, falling into the *Savus*. 3. *Ikar*, falling into the *Morava*; as that into the *Danube* at *Chrysumum*, or *Chrysovestia*, a strong Town of the *Rascians*. Principal Towns hereof, 1. *Nissa*, the *Nassim*, as I take it of *Prochy*, by whom it is said to be a City of the *Dardanians*; now the Metropolis of this Country, and the Key thereof: besieged and taken by *Amirab*, the third King of the *Turks*. *Ann* 1367. 2. *Vidua* by the *Turks* called *Kiravon*, taken by *Ferisbeg*, in the beginning of *Bajazet* the first, and ever since the Seat of a *Turkish* Sanjak, under the *Beglerbeg* or *Bassa* of *Temeswar*. 3. *Crutova*, and 4. *Zerbine*, rich in Silver Mines; a great temptation to the *Turks* to invade this Country. 5. *Sinadaria*, or *Sunderavia*, by some called *Spendrobo*, by the *Hungarian* *Zendezen*, by the *Turk* *Semender*; situate on the *Danube* not far from *Belgrade*, and taken by *Amirab* the II, *Ann* 1438, since governed by a *Turkish* Sanjak, under the *Beglerbeg* of *Buda*. 6. *Novograd*, in the Border hereof, fortified with an impregnable Castle. 7. *Stoniburg* (in *Latine* *Stoniburgum*) the ordinary Seat of the *Dipots*. 8. *Prizden*, said by *Mercator* to be the Birth-place of the Emperor *Justinian*; most like to be *Trajan's* City of the *Dardanians*, mentioned by *Procopius*, who maketh it the Birth-place of that Emperor, by whom it was repaired and fortified with four great Towers, thence called *Tetrappylon*. But others (more probably) make him to be born at *Lochrida*, a Town of *Bulgaria*; of which more hereafter. 9. *Scupi*, by *Ptolemy* called *Scupi*. And 10. *Ulpianum*, first built by *Trajan*, whose forename was *Ulpian*; afterwards re-edified by the said *Justinian*, and called *Secunda Justiniana*, (*Justiniana Prima*, being in *Bulgaria*;) now a poor Village called *Pyrathi*, as *Lazius*, or *Cezanade*, as *Marius Niger* is of opinion. 11. *Rhetaria*, by *Ptolemy*, for distinction sake, called *Rhetaria Mysorum*, then the chief City of the *Masians*, of which now no Ruines are remaining. 12. *Ravennizen*, the *Pendens* of *Ptolemy*, but not else observable.

Besides these Towns and many other of less note which properly belong to this Province of *Servia*, the *Rascians* also hold some Towns on this side of *Danubius*, the chief whereof is *Chrysumum*, or *Chrysovestia*, an old Town, almost wholly ruined, till repaired and fortified by the *Turks*, *Ann* 1449, who marking the convenient situation of it on the Banks of *Danubius*, near to the Fall or Influx of the River *Morava*, and how commodiously it stood both to command and to annoy the rest of this Country, and for transporting of their Forces to the other side of that great River, made it their first work to possess themselves of it, and have held it ever since with a very strong Garrison. Such other Towns as the *Rascians* have on this side of the River, or of less note, are looked on by our Author but as Towns of *Servia*, (by the *Despots* whereof they were long since conquered) where before we had them.

The old Inhabitants of this Country, such as are most considerable in the story of it, were the *Bastarnae*, the *Dardani*, and the *Masi*: the *Tricornis* and *Picenis*, spoken of by *Ptolemy*, being either Branches of the *Masi*, or else an obscure People not worth the looking after. Of these the *Dardanians* were most ancient inhabitants.

inhabiting near Mount *Hemus*, on the Borders of *Macedon*, a barbarous People, and perpetual Enemies of that Crown, most mischievous in their Attempts and Designs against it in the declining state thereof, making great and frequent inroads into that wealthy Country, with the spoils whereof they enriched themselves. Infomuch that *Philip* the Father of *Persius*, finding no other likely means to be rid of that Trouble, negotiated with the *Balkanians*, a strong and hardy Nation that dwelt beyond the *Danubius*, to abandon their own Dwellings, and come to him with their Wives and Children; promising to assist them in rooting out the *Dardanians*, and give them possession of their Country. But *Philip* dying as the *Balkanians* were in their March through *Thrace*, and no care taken by his Son to pursue the Business, they returned all home again, except 30000, which pierced into *Dardania*, and made their own Fortunes as they could. This practice, as it gave matter of Quarrel to the *Romans* against the *Macedonians*, so it occasioned *Persius*, the Son of *Philip*, to make use of these *Balkanians* against the *Romans*, at whose request 10000 Horse and as many foot passed over the *Danubius*, under the Conduct of *Claudius*, a King amongst them. But finding that *Persius* was too ill-trusted to part with Money for their pay, they returned again, foraging the Country as they passed. But whether they passed over that River, or mingled themselves with the rest of their Nation, who upon *Philip's* invitation had before come over, that I do not find. However, coming by this means acquainted with the sweets of this Country, divers of them came over hither in the following times, incorporating with the *Dardanians*, or bordering near them, infomuch as *Tacitus* for the most part joins them both together, either as the same, or neighbouring Nations, first vanquished and added to the *Roman* Empire by *C. Curius Scribonius*, immediately upon the end of the Civil Wars raised by *Spartacus* and the Fencers, or *Gladiators*, the *Myrians*, or the *Maesi*, being broken at the same time also. *Anno V. C. 681*. As for the *Maesi*, being the last and greatest of these Nations, they were most probably a Colony of the *Myrians* of the lesser *Asia*, anciently called *Myfi*, and the Country *Myfia*, as those *Asians* were, and as those *Europeans* are by the *Greek* Writers generally, and by *Florus* and some others amongst the *Latines*; though after, for distinction sake, *Tacitus*, *Pliny*, *Virgil*, and generally most *Latine* Authors, give them the name of *Maesi*. A fierce and savage People they were held to be, *Barbari barbarorum*, as my Author calleth them; more barbarous than commonly the *Barbarians* were: but, for all that, subdued by *M. Licinius Crassus* in the time of *Augustus Caesar*, who overcame them in two Battels, and after vanquished the *Balkanians*, and their King *Delas*, whom he killed in fight; the Country being reckoned after that as a *Roman* Province. It continued in this estate till the Fall of the Eastern Empire, when it was subjected by the *Sclavi* or *Sarmatians* of *Europe*; and in the division of the Spoil fell unto the *Sorabi*, a *Sclavonian* People, contractedly called *Sorbi*; and at last *Serbi*, *Servii*, and the Country *Servia*. It was reduced again to the Obedience of the Eastern Emperours by *Basilius Porphyrogenetus*, *Anno Ch. 1000*. or thereabouts; but more absolutely conquered by *John* and *Mannuel Comnenus*, two of his Successors: but so as they were suffered to live under their own Princes, whom they called *Despots*, Homagers to the Empire, and depending on it. Enriched with the Conquest and addition of *Raficia*, (the certain time whereof I have no where found) they were first set on by the *Turks* in the time of *Lazarus* the *Despot*, from whom *Amurath* the first took the Town of *Nissa*, being the chief of all this Country; provoked

thereto by the great Forces which the *Servian* and *Balkanian* Despots had raised against him for the Siege of *Adrianople*. And though *Lazarus*, terrified with this Loss, made his Peace with *Amurath*: yet after he brake out again into open War, in which he was overcome and slain in the Plains of *Cassova*, whereof more anon. To *Lazarus* succeeded *Stephen*, who quietly enjoyed his Dominions here; the *Turks* being in the mean time embroiled in War amongst themselves by the Sons of *Bajazet*. But that difference being once composed, and *Mahomet* absolutely settled on his Father's Throne, the *Turks* began again to pursue this Quarrel, which *George* the Son of *Stephen* compounded with *Amurath* the second, Son of *Mahomet*, paying the *Turks* a yearly Tribute, and giving him his Daughter *Mary* for a Wife or Concubine. But this Alliance did not so well unite their Affections, (though *George* did many ill Offices in regard thereof to his Christian Neighbours) nor so well settled his Estate, but that *Amurath* in fine dispossessed him first of *Raficia*, and afterwards of *Servia* also, for letting *Himedes* escape, whom he had in his power. And though *Amurath* was necessitated to restore *Servia* again, upon the Peace made with *Vladislaus* the King of *Hungary*; yet *Mahomet* the Great, on the death of *George*, soon possessed himself of it. For *Lazarus*, the youngest of *George's* Sons, having deprived *Stephen* of *George's* elder Brethren (whose eyes *Amurath* had before put out, to make them incapable of the Government) of the Principality, compelled them to seek to *Mahomet* for Aid. But dying whilest these matters were in agitation, his Widow put her self and her three Sons, *Peter*, *John* and *Martin*, under the Protection of the *Hungarians*; and by that means, but with much trouble and many difficulties (the blind Brethren still soliciting the *Turks* against her) held the State a while, till the people, finding no assurance in that kind of Government, and weary of the daily Harms they received from the *Turks*, yielded themselves absolutely to the power of *Mahomet*, about the year 1460, continuing ever since a Province of the *Turkish* Empire.

6. BULGARIA.

BULGARIA is bounded on the East with the *Euxine* Sea, on the West with *Servia*, on the North with the River *Danubius*, which is here in the East part called *Ister*, on the South with *Thrace*, called formerly by the name of *Myfia Inferior*, as lying lower than the other; the course of that River; as *Servia*, lying up the Water, was called *Myfia Superior*. Afterwards it was reckoned as a part of *Dacia*, and in that notion was the Birth-place of *Galerius*, one of the *Caesars* in the Empire of *Diocletian*, born in this Country near the Borders of *Thrace*, not far from the City *Sardica*, who therefore, in the Martyrologies of the middle Times, was called by the name of *Dacianus*. Finally, it took this name from the *Bulgars*, a *Scythian* People, who in the year 566. possessed themselves of it.

The Country for the most part is full of sharp and rugged Hills, Branches of the great Mountain *Hemus*, which divide it from *Thrace*, and spread themselves over all this Province, infomuch that even the Mid-lands of it are rough and stony; and though the lower parts have some Plains and Valleys, yet are they generally full of Woods and Defarts; the most unpleasant and least peopled part of both the *Dacia's*. The Inhabitants hereof, in some conformity to the Country, are patient of all Toil and Labour, and not easily tired; but nothing is more troublesome from their Conversion: more full of Courage than of Valour; their Courage not proceeding by the

rules

rules of Reason, but issuing only out of Brutishness, or a natural Firebrands.

They first received the Christian Faith towards the latter end of *Justinian* the 2. who died in the year 713, *Trobellius* being then their Prince; afterwards by the persuasion of *Leo* the 4. surnamed *Porphyrogenetus*, about the year 789. But those Conversations being but partial and for private ends, they relapsed shortly after to their former Gentilism; not totally gained unto the Gospel till the Empire of *Michael* and *Theodora*, in the year of Grace 860. Subject since that unto the Jurisdiction of the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, but not without great opposition of the Popes of *Rome*, who laid a Claim unto them.

Places of most note in it are, 1. *Axiom*, or *Axiopolis*, on the Banks of *Danubius*, which from this Town begins to take the name of *Ister*. It is now called *Colomanich*, of no great fame otherwise. 2. *Dinogetia*, by *Antonine* called *Dinagria*, now *Drinagius*, situate also on the *Ister*, opposite to the Influx of *Hierafus*, and the Town of *Galatz*. 3. *Melenbria*, situate on the *Euxine*, and still retaining the old name in *Strabo*, by some error of the Transcribers, called *Menebria*. 4. *Marciannopolis*, on the *Ister* or *Danubius* also, built by *Trajan* in honour of *Marcia* his Sister, whence it had the name: in vain besieged by the *Goths* at their first Irruptions on this Country; and afterwards much mentioned in the Stories of that warlike People, for many Bickerings and some great Battels they had near it with the Emperor *Claudius*, in one of which they were overthrown by him with a mighty Slaughter. 5. *Nicopolis*, (by the *Turks* called *Nigebol*) built by the same *Trajan* on the *Danubius*, at the Fall of the River *Sares*, at his return from the Conquest of *Dacia*, whence was the occasion of the Name; the word *Nicopolis* signifying the City of Victory, sufficiently memorable for the Founder of it, more for the many great Battels fought near unto it; whereof two were principal. The first, that of *Sigismund* the Emperor; and King of *Hungary*, besieging it with an Army of 130000 Christians in the time of *Bajazet* the first, (whose Father *Amurath* had taken it from the King of *Bulgaria*) the issue of which Siege was this, that *Bajazet* coming to raise the Siege obtained the Victory, with the loss of 60000 *Turks*; the Army of the Christians being wholly routed, 20000 slain, all the rest almost taken Prisoners, and the young Emperor forced to fly by Sea to *Thrace*, thence unto *Constantinople*, afterwards to *Rhodes*; and at last, after 18 months absence, to his Realm of *Hungary*. The other (as it were in revenge of this) was fought betwixt *Michael* Vaivod of *Valachia*, and the Forces of *Mahomet* the third, over whom the Vaivod got a remarkable Victory, and, as the Fruits thereof, took the City itself, carrying thence great Spoil and Booty, and infinite multitudes of People; with some whereof he made up his Army, sending the rest to inhabit and manure the void and desert places of his own Dominions. 6. *Sophia*, called *Tibiscum* in the time of *Prolety*, repaired by the Emperor *Justinian*, who gave it this name, from a famous and magnificent Temple founded and dedicated by him unto *S. Sophia*. The ordinary Residence in these late times of a *Turkish* Beglerbeg, who hath the chief Command of *Europe* under the Grand Seignior. Once taken by *Himedes*, and by him at the command of *Vladislaus* King of *Hungary*, burnt to the ground; but afterwards repaired, and more strongly fortified than it had been formerly. 7. *Varna*, anciently called *Dionysopolis*, situate on the *Euxine* Sea, near the Borders of *Thrace*; remarkable for the great Defeat there given the Christians, the first Flight of *Himedes* from the face of the *Turks*, and the death of *Vladislaus* King of *Hungary*, spoken of before. 8. *Sumium*,

9. *Pezecehim*, 10. *Gulacrium*, 11. *Galates*, &c. 12. *Macropolis*, all taken by the *Hungarians* in their way to *Arma*, and lost again upon the issue of that Battel. 13. *Silifria*, at this time the chief City thereof, and the ordinary Abode of a *Turkish* *Beglar*: delivered to *Amurath* the first by *Sajmeus*, Prince or King of *Bulgaria*, out of a vain hope to save thereby the rest of his Country. 14. *Parastibis*, or *Perflabius*, the ancient Seat of the Kings of *Bulgaria*, till the taking of it by *John Zimisjes* Emperor of *Constantinople*, who caused it to be called *Johannopolis*: but it soon lost that new Name, and is now an ordinary Village called *Peristabul*. 15. *Ternova*, the usual Seat or Residence of the later Princes of this Country at the Conquest of it by the *Turks*. 16. *Budina*, once of great importance, and the chief of this Country; but being taken by *Himedes* in the course of his Victories, it was by him burnt down to the ground, as having been the cause of much War to the Christians there: supposed to be built in or near the place where once stood the old City of *Oescus*, the principal Town of the *Triballs*; called therefore *Oescus Triballorum*; though some will have that City to be now called *Elida*. 17. *Pemuzina*, a Town of great Strength, and one of the first places taken by the *Turks*, 18. *Cassova*, fatal to the Christians, who in the Plains hereof had two main Defeats. The first by *Amurath* the first, who here discomfited *Lazarus* the Despot of *Servia*, and the greatest Army that the Christians ever raised against the *Turks*: *Lazarus* himself being slain in the Fight, and *Amurath* himself shortly after the Battel stabbed in the Belly by one *Miles Cobelinus*, a wounded and half-dead Soldier, as he was taking a view of the dead Bodies which lay there in heaps. The last by *Amurath* the second to the famous *Himedes*, whom he here discomfited after a cruel Fight continuing three days together, in which were slain 17000 Christians, and amongst them the greatest part of the *Hungarian* Nobility; *Himedes* put again to flight, and forced to some Extremities to preserve his life: the *Turks* buying this great Victory with the loss of 40000 men, as themselves confessed. The place in which these Fights were fought, called the Plains of *Cassova*, extendeth 20 miles in length and 5 miles in breadth, encompassed round with pleasant Mountains, in the form of an Amphitheatre; as if they were designed by Nature for a Stage of *Agon*, or *Darogorum*, by some of the Ancients called *Rhodogolon*, the Seat in *Prolety's* time of the first Legion called *Italica*; afterwards one of the chief Towns which the *Rosses* or *Russians* had in this Country: from whom it was taken by *John Zimisjes* the Eastern Emperor, decaying after that time by little and little, and now wholly ruinant. 20. *Abdrada*, the Birth place of *Justinian*, by whom it was beautified and enlarged, and called *Justiniana Prima*: who, raising the Diocese of *Dacia* into a Prefecture, placed here a Primate for the Affairs of the Church, which honour it doth still retain, the Bishop hereof being the Primate of all *Dacia*, and a *Presulum Pratorio* for Affairs of State. But he being dead, the Town returned to its old name, now called *P. Ochrada*, contracted by *William* of *Tyre* to *Aere*, by the *Turks* called *Giusfandil*: a distinct Principality of it self in the time of *Amurath* the first, and by him made tributary at his first War with this Country.

And here it is to be observed, that those parts of this Country which lie next to the *Euxine* Sea had anciently the name of *Pontus*, as had also some parts of *Asia minor* which bordered on the same Sea also; and that the City of *Tomi*, as *Prolety*, or *Tomos*, as *Pliny* calleth it, to which *Ovid* was banished by *Augustus Caesar*, was a City of this *European Pontus*, and not of the *Asian*, as hath been commonly conceived. For *Tomi* is by *Prolety* placed amongst the Cities of *Maeis* in

serior

ferior, and by Ovid on the West or left side of the *Euxine*, and not upon the South thereof, as appeareth by these Lines of his.

*Cum Maris Euxini postis ad lava Tomitis
Quarere me last Principis ira iubet.*

That is to say;

*My wronged Prince's Wrath commands me 'bide
At Tomos, on the Euxine's Western side.*

The place is at this day called *Tomiswar*, according to *Celium Calcepinum*; but others would have it to be the same which is now named *Kiovia*, in the same Tract also; not far from which is said to be a Lake called to this day *Ovidow Jezecoor*, the Lake of *Ovid*. For what cause he was hither banished is not yet agreed on. Some say it was for the unlawful Pleasures which he enjoyed with *Julia* the Emperours Daughter, whom he celebrates in his *Amorium* under the borrowed name of *Corinna*. Others imagine that he had seen *Augustus* himself unnaturally using the company of the same *Julia*, his Daughter; for which the offended Prince exiled him: and that he alludeth hereunto in his Book de *Trifibus*, saying, *Cur aliquid vixi? cur noxia lumina feci? &c.* A Crime of which I dare not think that Noble Emperour to be any way guilty. But certain it is, that whatsover was the true reason of it, that which was openly pretended was the writing of those lascivious and inflammatory Books de *Arte amandi*, tending to the Debauchment of Youth and Corruption of Manners, which he in divers places of his Works acknowledgeth for the cause thereof.

But to return unto the business of this Country. The ancient Inhabitants herof were towards the East the *Trogodytae*, dwelling near the Mouth or Fall of the River *Pence* into the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*; the *Pencini*, inhabiting on the very Mouth of it, and in a little Island opposite thereto, called also *Pence*, now *Picina*, the *Cribizi*, *Piarsini* and *Dineysii*, the Western parts being wholly taken up by the *Triballi*, the most potent Nation of them all, who alone had the happiness to vanquish *Phillip* King of the *Macedonians*. For *Phillip* having, or pretending a Quarrel against *Antas* a King of the *Sarmatians*, entred his Country, overthrew him in a set Fight, carried with him great Booties, and among other things 20000 Mares for Breed, which he took in the Battel; it being the Custom of the *Scythians* and *Sarmatians* to use Mares only in their Wars, because their not stopping in the midst of a Race to piss could be no impediment to them in their Flight. In his return homeward these *Triballi* deny him passage through their Country, unless they might partake of the Spoils. This being denied, they fall from words to blows, and next to a pitched Field. In which Fight *Phillip* was wounded with an Arrow, which passing through his thigh, nailed him to his Saddle; his Horse being galled with the Wound, falling down to the ground. Which the frightened *Macedonians* seeing, and supposing him dead, fled out of the Field, leaving all their spoils to the *Triballi*; as if they had been sent out only to be their Receivers. So true an Observation is it, that the very Life-blood of an Army runs chiefly in the veins of the General or Supreme Commander. Over-topped at this by the *Macedons*, or mingled with them they were first broken by the *Romans* under the Conduct of *C. Curio Scribonius*, spoken of before; the absolute Conquest of them and the rest of the *Masians* being reserved for the times of *Augustus Caesar*. By him, or his Successors, the whole Country of the *Masians* being cast into two Provinces, this part of it had the name of *Masia inferior*, that, lying Westward up the Water, being called *Masia superior*, for distinction sake. By the Emperour *Aurelianus*, the *Dacians* being forced from the other side of the *Danubius* by the Barbarous Nations, or by him prudently removed to avoid their

Fury, were planted here betwixt both the *Masia's*, divided afterwards into two Provinces taken out of the other; *Mediterranea*, and *Ripensis*, which, with the help of the higher *Masia*, *Dardania*, *Pravalliana*, and part of *Macedonia Salaria*, made up the whole Diocese of *Dacia*, as before was said. The residue hereof, now falling under the name of *Bulgaria*, was afterwards divided into two Provinces also; another Province being taken out of the East parts of the lower *Masia*, lying betwixt the River *Phenisus* and the most Northern Branch of the *Ister*, which they called *Scythia*, because the *Araxes*, a *Scythian* People, did once possess it; the *Romans* ambitiously affecting to be thought the Conquerors of that unconquerable Nation. Successively by the *Goths* and *Huns* was this Country taken from the *Romans*: recovered again in or before the time of *Justinian*, who had here his Officers which were subordinate to the Vicar or Lieutenant of *Thrace*, to which Diocese they properly and of right belonged.

But long they held not in that State; the *Sclavonians* first and after the *Bulgarians*, being Masters of them. Of the first of these enough hath been said elsewhere. These latter being a *Scythian* People, inhabiting on the Banks of the River *Volga*, were at first called *Volgari*, afterwards *Bulgari*: though some conceive they had the name of *Bulgarians* from *Bulgar*, the chief Town of their Nation: but both uncertain. In the time of the Emperour *Anastasinus* they made their first Sally into the Provinces of the Empire, foraging *Illyrium* and *Thrace*; afterward, in the Reign of *Heraclius*, they were hired by *Cosphores* the *Persian* (with many other Barbarous Nations) to besiege *Constantinople*. In the Reign of *Constantine* surnamed *Pogonatus*, conquering or calling out the *Sclaves*, they planted themselves in these Countries; compelling the Emperour to compound with them for a sum of money, from making any farther Inroad into his Dominions. From this time forward we find their Princes called by the name of Kings of the *Bulgarians*: the first of which after their settling in these parts was *Trebellius*, or *Trebelli*, as some call him, the first Christian Prince of the *Bulgarians*, by whom *Justinian* the Second was first restored unto the Empire, of which he had been ousted by *Asinarius*; and afterwards well beaten by them, and forced to fly unto *Constantinople*, on some Breach between them. Growing into good terms with the Eastern Emperours, they aided them against the *Saracens*, then besieging the Imperial City; of whom they flew 22000 as they were foraging the Country: and in the time of *Leo* the fourth, called *Porphyrogenetus*, they became Homagers to the Empire, by whose perswasion *Ishodius* King of the *Bulgarians* received the Sacrament of Baptism; and thereupon was honoured by him with a Wife of the Imperial Family, and the honourable Title of a *Patrician*. After this time the Kings hereof had many Privileges indulged them by the *Constantinopolitans*, not usually communicated unto other Princes. viz. their Crown of Gold, their Tiar or Cap of Silk, and their red Shoes, for their Regal (which were also the Imperial) Ornaments. To these Kings also, and to these only, did the Greek Emperours allow the Title of *Basileus*, as being merely Imperial. Other Kings they called *Pais*, from the *Latine* word *Rege*. Inasmuch that when *Basilius Macedo* had received Letters from Pope *Adrian* the second, wherein *Lewis* the Second the Western Emperour was called *Basilius*, he raised out that Imperial Attribute, and dispatched an Embassage to *Lewis*, wherein he challenged it at his own peculiar Epiteth. Some Quarrels after falling out, *Crimus* the *Bulgarian* King, in the time of *Nicephorus*, Successor to the Emperour *Irene*, invaded *Thrace*, and, taking the City of *Sardica*, killeth that Emperour in his Tent, and worsteth *Michael* (who

(who succeeded) in the open Field; *Mesembria*, a principal City of this Country, being taken and ransacked by him. But *Begor*, of another temper, not only did receive the Sacrament of Baptism, which many of his Predecessors had intermitted, but brought his Subjects (who rebelled on the Change of Religion, and thereupon were fought with and vanquished by him) to the same Faith also: gratified for that cause by *Theodore* the Emperour with some large Accession unto his Estate. After long Wars betwixt the *Bulgarians* and the following Emperours, the fortune of the *Constantinopolitans* did at last prevail: *Samuel* King of the *Bulgarians* being overthrown, 15000 of his Soldiers taken and deprived of fight, and the Country conquered by *Basilius* the second, surnamed *Porphyrogenetus*, Anno 1015, from that time Tributary to the Empire; to which they did good service in the time of *Constantinus Duca*, using their Help against the *Uzi*, a new Swarm of *Scythians*, passing over the *Ister* with an Army of 60000 fighting men, and wasting *Macedonia* and *Greece*. The like did *John*, another of the Kings thereof, aiding the *Greeks* against the *Latines*, whom they overthrew with a great Slaughter, *Baldwin* the Emperour of the *Latines* in *Constantinople* being taken Prisoner, sent in Bonds to *Ternova*, and there cruelly murdered, Anno 1206. Nor were they wanting to assist them against the *Turks*, when they grew dangerous to that Empire by the taking of *Adrianople*: for the Recovery whereof they raised a great and puissant Army, unfortunately discom-

fitted by the Forces of *Amurath* the first, Anno 1369. Provoked with which Invasion, *Amurath*, having settled his Affairs in *Asia*, with an army of 30000 fallen into *Bulgaria*, takes divers Places of importance, and prevailed so far, that *Sajmus* the last Prince hereof, wrapping his Winding-sheet about him, to shew that he had deserved Death, prostrates himself most abjectly at the Tyrant's feet, offering to put *Silifria* (his strongest City) into his possession. For not performance of which Offer, his Country is again invaded, and most part of it taken from him; he being permitted to enjoy the rest upon hard Conditions, as *Vallad* and Tributary to the *Turks*; But *Bajazet*, *Amurath's* Successor, not content herewith, picked a Quarrel with him, and made an absolute Conquest of *Bulgaria*; converting it into a Province of the *Turkish* Empire, Anno 1396. In which state it hath ever since continued, governed by three *Turkish* Sanzacks under the Beglerbeg of *Greece*: the *Sanzacks* residing at *Nikopolis*, *Silifria*, and *Sophia*, in which last the Beglerbeg himself doth sometimes reside.

There are in D A C I A,

Archbishops.

Bishops.

And so much for D A C I A.

Mount Hæmus.

Before we enter into *Greece*, we must cross *MOUNT HÆMUS*, a Ridge of Hills extending from the *Euxine* Sea to the *Adriatic*, and thereby separating *Greece* both from *Dacia* and *Sclavonia*. They are so high and Subject to the Weather, that *Stratoniceus*, an old *Grecian*, did use to say, that eight months of the Year it was always cold, for the other four, Winter. It was affirmed by some of the ancient Writers, that from one of the highest Heads hereof as well the *Adriatic* as the *Euxine* might have been discerned: the truth of which report, upon very good reason, hath been called in question. But out of doubt, from some one Top or Summit of it there is so full a Prospect into *Thrace* and *Macedon*, that from hence *Pericles* taking a survey of the Site of these Countries, *pulsit per abrupta Castra*, &c. as the Story hath it, was able to make choice of the fittest places for Forts and Castles, whereby to lock upon all the passages against his enemies the *Romans*. In the parts bordering upon *Thrace* it is so rough and craggy, that it is not to be passed but at two places only. Whereof one was made by the Emperour *Trajan*, where is yet to be seen a mighty strong Gate built of great square Stone, by which the Passage that way was either opened or shut at the pleasure of them who had the keeping of the same, with a small Force exceeding easily defended against puissant Armies. The other, being situate near a little River by the *Bulgarians* called *Saltiza*, not altogether so freight and narrow as the other, but rising high, and full of broken Rocks and dangerous Precipices, is alike impassable; defensible at ease, and without any great danger; as

was experimentally found by the famous *Hunides*; when he attempted (but in vain) to have led his Forces this way for the Siege of *Adrianople*. Those parts hereof which border upon *Macedonia*, though somewhat opener, are not much easier of ascent; the Passages through the broken Rocks and Precipices being very difficult, and not easily mastered: inasmuch that when *Pericles*, the last King of *Macedon*, had fortified the Streights hereof against the *Romans*, non reliquisse aditum nisi à *Calo vententibus vallabatur*; it was conceived (faith *Flor*) that there was no passage left for any Forces, unless they fell immediately from the Heavens themselves.

This great and rookie Chain of Hills, as they were vehemently expost to Wind and Weather, so were they destitute of those Commodities which were either comfortable, or indeed merely necessary to the Life of man; which made the Passage over them in a manner impossible unto any Armies, but what were very patient both of Cold and Hunger. Yet were they not left desolate and void of People, especially in these sides hereof which lay next to *Greece*; but most especially in those parts which bordered or confined on *Thrace*: where the Spurs and Branches of the Hills spreading far and wide and taking up a great part of the Country, occasioned the *Romans*, in the Division of the Diocese of *Thrace* into several Provinces, to call that part or Province of it which lay next to *Masia* by the name of *Haminumum*, or *Haminotum*. The principal Towns whereof were *Adrianople*, *Udenna*, and *Archidius*: the principal Gouverneur thereof being a *Roman* President. Where, by the way, we may take notice of an Error in this common Impression

of the Code, Lib. VII. Tit. 62. Leg. 23. where we find *Hami montem*, for *Haminomium*; the first being the name only of the Mountain, and the later (which is there meant) of the *Roman* Province.

But to return unto the Mountain. There is another of this name in *Thessaly*, mentioned (or mistook for this) by *Servius* in his Notes on the first Book of the *Georgicks*; on the Top whereof was said to be the Habitation of *Mars*; at the Bottom the most pleasant Valley of *Tempe*: so called from *Hemus*, the Son of *Boreas* and *Oribyia*, amongst the Poets. And possibly, to distinguish this from that of *Thessaly*, *Proteny* and others call it *Aemus*, without the Aspiration: though it may as well be that there are others of this name, as that this is called in divers places or in divers

Authors by other Names; one part hereof being called *Scombrus* by *Aristotle*, another *Scombrus* by *Thucydides*, and by *Laonicus* the whole called *Prasfobus*. The like may be observed at the present also, *Pistus* calling it by the name of *Catena Mundi*, a great part whereof it links together; *Cuspinianus* *Costegnazza*, *Lazius* *Krivizius*, the *Italians* *Mont Argentario*, the *French* *Mont de Castigno*, the *Slavonians* *Cumonica*, and the *Turks* *Balgan*. Which I have therefore here observed for the Reader's sake, that, meeting any of these names in the Stories either of the ancient or modern Times, he may know what Hills or Mountains are intended by them. Which said, I now pass on to *Greece*, the way being thus prepared and laid open to me.

OF

G R E E C E.

GREECE, in the present Latitude and Extent thereof, is bounded on the East with the *Propontick*, *Hellspont*; and *Aegæan* Seas; on the West with the *Adriatick*; on the North with Mount *Hemus*; which parteth it from *Bulgaria*, *Serovia*, and some part of *Illyricum*; and on the South with the Sea *Ionian*. So that it is in a manner a *Peninsula* or *Demi-Island*, environed on three sides by the Sea, on the fourth only united to the rest of *Europe*.

But this is only in relation to the present Extent hereof, the name being anciently restrained within narrower Bounds. Confined at first to *Attica* and the parts adjoining; *ab Isthmi angustis* *Hellas* incipit, as it is in *Plinius*; and it took the name of *Hellus* from *Hellen*, the Son of *Ducalion*, as that of *Greece*, or *Græcia*, from *Græcus* the Son of *Cærops*, the first King of *Athens*. Communicated afterwards to *Peloponnesus*, then to *Thessalia* also; and finally, when the *Macedonian* Empire had enlarged it self over the petit Commonwealths and Estates hereof, it came to be communicated to that Country also. The People for this cause are known by divers names, by some called *Achivis*, by others *Myrionides*, sometimes *Pelagi*, *Danaï*, *Argivis*, &c. But the name whereby they are best known in Sacred Writers is that of *Ελληνες*, so called from *Hellas*, the more proper and genuine name of *Greece* in the strictest notion and acceptance. A name used frequently and familiarly in the Book of God, both absolutely, to denote this Nation, as where it is said *οἱ Ἕλληνες* *ἔγερται*, as in opposition to the *Jews*, the *Barbarians*, and *Hellenis* or *Græcizing Jews*. First with relation to the *Jews*, and then it signifieth the whole Body of the Gentiles generally, of which the *Græcians* were the most eminent and famous people as *Ἰσραὴλ* *vs* *αἰσώρη* *vs* *Ἰσραὴλ* the *Jew* first, & also to the *Gentiles*, *Rom.* 2. 9. 10. Give none offence, *vs* *Ἰσραὴλ* *vs* *Ἰσραὴλ* neither to the *Jews* nor to the *Gentiles*, *1 Cor.* 10. 32. and elsewhere frequently. In which, and all other places of that kind, where the *Antichrist* lieth between the *Jews* and other Nations, we are to understand the *Gentiles*, the whole Body of them; and though many times our Translators, know not why, render it literally the *Greeks*,

as *Rom.* 1. 16. and 10. 12. &c. 2dly. with reference to all other Nations not so well versed in the Learning and Civilities of that Age as the *Græcians* were, whom by a common name of scorn they called *Barbarians*; according unto that of *Sirabo*, *Barbara sunt omnes Nationes præter Græcos*; the *Romans* themselves, though then the great Lords of the World, being included in the reckoning. And for the word is taken; *Rom.* 1. 14. *I am a Debtor*, saith *S. Paul*, *ἔδωκα* *vs* *Βαρβάρους*, both to the *Greeks* & the *Barbarians*, to the wise and unwise, in which as well the *Romans*, as those of other Nations, have the name of *Barbarians*. Last of all for the *Græcizing Jews* whom the *Vulgar Latine* called *Græcos* and our *English Græcians*; they were such of the *Jews*, who, living dispersed amongst the *Gentiles*, used the Translation of the *Septuagint*, making that the Canon both for Life and Doctrine. Which difference betwixt them and the *Jews* inhabiting in *Judea*, who kept themselves unto the Scriptures in their Mothers-tongue, and used the *Hebrew* only in all Sacred Actions, occasioned many Jars amongst them, which sometimes broke out into open Violence; insumuch as *R. Eliezer* brake into the Synagogue of the *Alexandrines* at *Hiersusalem*, and therein committed many Outrages. Of this Unfriendliness between them mention is made *Act.* 6. 1. where it is said, that there arose a murmuring of the *Græcians* against the *Hebrews*, &c. In which place, though the *English* and *Vulgar Latine* use the name of *Græcians*, yet ought they more properly to be rendered *Hellenis*, or *Græcizing Jews*, as in all other places, viz. *Acts* 9. 29. and 11. 26. &c. where they are called *Ελληνιστάς* and not *Ελληνες*, in the *Greek* Originals.

But to proceed to our Description of the Country; we find it situate on the Northern Temperate Zone, under the fifth and sixth Climates, the longest Day being 15 hours inhabited by a People which were once brave men of War, found Scholars, addicted to the love of Vertue and civil Behaviour; a Nation once so excellent, that their Precepts and Examples do still remain as approved Rules and Tutors, to instruct and direct the man that endeavoureth to be virtuous: famous for Government, affectors of Freedom, every-way noble. For which Vertues in themselves, and want of them in others, all their Neighbours and remote Nations were by them scornfully called *Barbarians*.

barians: a name now most fit for the *Græcians* themselves, being an unconstant People, destitute of all Learning, and the means to obtain it, Universities: uncivil, riotous, and so lazie, that for the most part they endeavour their Profit no further than their Belly compels them and so peridious withal in all their Dealings, especially towards the Western Christians, that it is grown into a Proverb amongst the *Italians*, *Chi fida in Greco, fara intrigo*, i. e. He that trusts to a *Greek* is sure to be couzened. When they meet at Feasts or Banquets, they drink small Draughts at the beginning; which by degrees they increase, till they come to the height of Intemperancy: at which point when they are arrived, they keep no rule or Order, where-as before to drink out of one's turn was accounted a point of Incivility. Hence as I believe, sprung our By-word, *As merry as a Greek*, and the *Latine* word *Gracius*.

The Women for the most part are brown-complexioned, exceedingly well-favoured, and excessively amorous. Painting they use very much, to keep themselves in grace with their Husbands, for when they once grow wrinkled, they are put to all the Drudgeries of the House. Both Sexes generally in their Habit and outward Garb apply themselves to the State under which they live, such as are subject to the *Turk* conforming unto the Drefs and Fashions of the *Turks*, as those who live under the *Venetians* do to that of *Venice*.

The Christian Faith was first here planted by *S. Paul*, invited by the Spirit to come over into *Macedonia*, *Act.* 16. 9. 12. passing from thence to *Thessalonica*, the chief City of *Mydonia*, ch. 17. 1. from thence to *Athens* in *Achidia*, v. 15, 16. then unto *Corinth*, the Metropolis of *Peloponnesus*, ch. 18. 1. watering the greatest part of *Greece* with the Dew of Heaven, and planting Bishops in most Churches where he preached the Gospel, as *Diognisus* (the *Acropagite*) at *Athens*, *Aristarchus* at *Thessalonica*, *Epaphroditus* at *Philippi*, *Silas* at *Corinth*, and *Titus* in the Isle of *Crete*. The like he did in many other Countries also accounted Members of the *Greek Church*, though not of *Greece*, the name of the *Greek Church* extending over all the Provinces of the Eastern Empire, governed by the 4 Patriarchs, 1. of *Alexandria*, who presided over *Agypt* and *Arabia*; 2. of *Hiersusalem*, whose Patriarchate erected only in regard of our Saviour's Passion in that City, and the great opinion which by that means accrued unto it confined within the Bounds of *Palestine*; 3. of *Antioch*, whose Jurisdiction contained all *Syria*, *Armenia*, *Cilicia*, and the Isle of *Cyprus*, and whatsoever else was within the Diocese of the Orient; and 4. of *Constantinople*, to whose charge were committed all the other Provinces of the *Greek Church*, as *Greece*, *Russia*, *Dacia*, *Scythiana*, part of *Poland*, and all the Islands in the *Adriatick*, *Ionian* and *Aegæan* Seas, together with all *Asia minor* and the Islands thereof, (except only the Provinces of *Cilicia* and *Isauria* and the Countries lying on both sides of *Pontus Euxinus* and *Palmus Mositi*. The regions of the large increase of whose Jurisdiction, continued at first within the Diocese of *Thrace*, were, 1. the reputation of being Seated in the Imperial City, which drew after it (by a Decree of the Council of *Chalcedon*) all the Provinces of *Asia minor*, *Cilicia* and *Isauria* excepted only; 2. the voluntary submission of the *Græcians* upon their Separation from the Church of *Rome*, by which all *Greece*, *Macedon*, *Epirus*, the Isle of *Crete*, and all the Islands in the *Aegæan* and *Ionian* Seas, which formerly had no Superior but their own Primate, the Archbishop of *Thessalonica*, became subject unto them; 3. the diligence of the Patriarch hereof in converting by his Suffragan Bishops and other Ministers the *Russians*, *Bulgarians* and *Slavonians*, to the Faith of *Christ*, which

made those people to look upon *Constantinople* as their Mother-Church; and 4. the Piety and Care of the later Patriarchs, in supplying with new Pastors and Ministers those parts and Provinces of the West, which being conquered by the *Turks*, had been forfaken by their old Clergy and left like *Sheep* without a Shepherd.

And yet this Church, though thus extended and enlarged in the outward Members, is very much freighted and impaired at home; the Country being thinly peopled, and many of those people trained up from their infancy in the *Mahometan* Law. So that it is a greater wonder that there should be any remainders of Christianity left amongst them, than that the open Professors of it should be so few; the Tyranny of the *Turks* on the one side, and the Temptations of Pre-ferment upon the other, being rightly pondered. For who could look to find twenty Churches of Christians in *Constantinople* the Seat and ordinary Residence of the *Turkish* Emperors? or that in *Salonica* or *Thessalonica*, there should be 30 Christian Churches, and but three *Turkish* Mosquits? that the Primate of this *Salonica*, should have under him 10 Suffragan Bishops, whereof he of *Philippi* hath no fewer than 150 Churches under his Jurisdiction? or, finally, that under the Metropolitans of *Athens* and *Corinth* there should be as many? So mercifully hath God dealt with his luxurious and peridious People, as not to take away their Candlick, though he hath darkened and obscured the Light thereof.

As for the Fathers of this Church, anciently and at this present lieth in most esteem, they were no other then such as had been Bishops of the greater Seas. That is to say, 1. *S. Chrysostome*, first a Reader of *Antioch*, afterwards Patriarch of *Constantinople*; 2. *Basil*, and the two *Gregories*, 3. *Nysien*, and 4. *Nazianzen*; all in *Asia minor*; this last of *Constantinople* also; 5. 6. the two *Cyrills*; the one Patriarch of *Alexandria*, the other of *Hiersusalem*: 7. *Epiphanius*, Bishop of *Salamis* in the Isle of *Cyprus*; 8. *Theodorus*, Bishop of *Cyprus*, &c. Men of renown and precious memory amongst them to this very day. From whose Writings if they deviate in any material Point of Doctrine, it is in that of the Procession of the Holy Ghost, which they grant to beper *Filius*, but not a *Filio*. And though *Clichovius*, *Lombard*, and other moderate men of the Church of *Rome*, do grant the difference to be rather in modo explicandi, quam in ipsa re; and that the clause *in modo explicandi* was added by the *Romanists* to the ancient Creeds, the *Græcians* not being privy nor consenting to it: yet so uncharitable is that Church towards these poor men, laughing under Tyranny of *Turkish* Thraldom, as to persecute them with *Keoach* and Scorn, brand them for Schismatics and Apostates, and solemnly to anathematize them in *Bulla Cæne* every Maunday-Thursday. And it is a very hard measure to add, and anathematize *roo*; as is right well observed by the late Lord Arch-Bishop of *Canterbury*, in his notable Discourse against the *Jesuits*. Other particular Tenets in which the *Greek Church* differeth from the *Romish* and Reformed (as in some Points it doth from both) have been already specified in our Description of *Russia*: the Churches of the *Greeks* and *Moscovites* differing in no material Points, but, 1. the manner of distributing the Sacrament; 2. the exaching of Marriage by the *Moscovite* in the party admitted unto Orders; 3. the frequent admitting of Divorces upon light occasions; and 4. and finally, in being less strict in observing the Lent before *Easter* than in any of the other three. For whereas the *Græcians* account it a damnable sin to eat Flesh or Fish which hath blood in it, in any of their other Lent or times of Abstinence, (they have in both Churches four in all) viz. that before *Ensur*, which of all reason ought to be kept most

moft punctually, the Laity eat all forts of Filh without any exception, the Blood of fome of which, as the Cattle byname, is held to be a delicate Food, and in great requeit.

The Language they fpake was of their own, of which there were four Dialects, viz. 1. the *Attick*, 2. the *Doric*, 3. the *Æolic*, 4. the *Ionick*; besides the common phrafe of speech moft in ufe among them. A Language of great fame for the Liberal Arts, but more for its great a part of the Holy Scripture first delivered in it: and for the lofty Sound, significant Expreflions, genuine Suavity, and happy compofition of words, fo excelling all others, that even in the flourishing of the *Roman* Empire it fo much overtopped the *Latine*, that the *Hiftories of Rome* it felf (as by *Polybius*, *Appian*, *Dion* and *Cassius*) were written in it. It was once alfo the general Language of *Anatolia*, fome parts of *Italy*, *Provence* in *France*, and almoft all the *Ilands* of the *Mediterranean*. But now, partly by the mutilation of fome words and contraction of others, partly by confufion of the true found of Vowels, Diphthongs and Confonants, and the tranflating of the Accents, and finally, by the admixture of foreign Nations it is not only fallen from its natural Elegancy, but from its largeness of extent. For it is now shut up within the Limits of *Greece*, and the Sea-coaft of the left *Asia* opposite unto it; and there not only much corrupted, but almoft quite devoured by the *Turkish* and *Sclavonian* Tongues, but especially by that which they call *Frango*, a mongrel Language, compofed of *Italian*, *French*, and fome *Spanifh* words, ufed as the ordinary Speech for Commerce & intercourfe betwixt *Chriftians*, *Jews*, *Turks*, and the *Greeks* themfelves, who do not understand, and much lefs fpeak, the true genuine *Greek*. So that although they still retain for ordinary days *Schryftom's* Liturgie, and that of *S. Bafil* for the Feftivals: yet being both written in the ancient and learned *Greek*, they are no more understood by the Vulgar *Grecian*, then the *Latine* Service by the common and illiterate *Papit*.

The Soil questionlefs is very fruitful, and would yield great profit to the Husbandman, if they would take pains in the tilling; but they, knowing nothing certainly to be their own, but all things fubject to the Grand Seigneur and his Soldiers, neglect the Tillage of their Lands, on the fame grounds with thofe who laid in the Poet's Eclogues,

Impius hac tam culta novellia Miles habebit?
Barbarus has fegetes? En quis confosum Arva!

Shall mifchiving *Turks* thefe Acres fpoil,
Which I manur'd with fo much Coft and Toil?
Shall they enjoy my care? See, neighbours, fee
For whom thefe goodly Corn-fields tilled be!

The more natural and certain Commodities which they tranfport into other parts are Wines, in memory of the Water which our Saviour turned into Wine, and on the fifth day of *January*, being that day wherein this Miracle was wrought, they use to baptize: for which caufe the *Jews* will drink none of them. They fend alfo into other parts of the World Oils, Copper, Vitriol, fome Gold and Silver, Velvet, Damasks, Turkey-Grograms, &c.

This Country hath formerly been famous for the brave Commanders, *Miltiades*, *Aristides* and *Themistocles* of *Athens*, *Lysander* and *Agessian* of *Sparta*, *Pelopidas*, and *Epaminondas* of *Thebes*, *Aratus* and *Philopomen* of *Æolia*, *Pyrrhus* of *Epirus*, *Philip* of *Macedonia*, the Subverter of the *Grecian* Liberty, and *Alexander* his Son, (to omit infinite others) the Subverter of the *Perfian* Monar-

chy; for the divine Philofophers, *Plato*, *Socrates*, *Aristotle* and *Theophrastus*, for the moft eminent Law-givers, *Solon* and *Lycargus*; for the moft exquisite Poets, *Hefiodus*, *Homer*, *Sophocles* and *Aristophanes*; for the famous Hiftorographers, *Xenophon* the Confidant of *Plato*, *Thucydides*, *Plutarch* and *Hierodotus*; for the eloquent Orators, *Æschines*, *Demosthenes* and *Ifoocrates*; and, laftly, for the Authors and Establishers of all humane Learning whatsoever, only the Mathematicks excepted.

The chief Rivers are, 1. *Cephifus*, which, arifing in the Frontiers of *Epirus*, difburtheth it felf into the *Ægean* Sea. 2. *Erigon*, and 3. *Aliacon*; which, beginning their courfe in the more Northern parts of *Macedonia*, end it in *Thermacis Sinus*. 4. *Strymon* in *Ægdonia*. 5. *Atthyrus*, and 6. *Nefus*, in *Thrace*. 7. *Stryphalus*, where *Hercules* killed the *Stryphalian* Birds. 8. *Ladon*, in *Acadida*. 9. *Inachus*, whole Daughter *Io*, turned into a Heifer, was worfhipped by the *Ægyptians* under the name of *Ifis*. 10. *Achelous*, in *Epirus*, much celebrated by the ancient Poets, especially by *Ovid* in his *Metamorphofis*. As is alfo 11. *Peneus*, the chief River of *Thessaly*, and there arifing from Mount *Pindus*, and increafed with the waters of many Rivers. *Daphne* the Nymph, whom *Atollo* is faid to have loved, and turned into a Bay-tree, lived near or on the Banks of this River *Peneus*, and is therefore faid to be his Daughter: as *Io* above mentioned was the Daughter of *Inachus*. Of lefs note,

Populifor 11. *Sperchius*, & *irreguius* 12. *Enipeus*, 13. *Apidanus* & *senex*, lenique 14. *Amphrysus*, & 15. *Æas*.

That is to fay,

Cool *Sperchius*, *Enipeus* that troubled ran,
Smooth *Amphrysus*, *Æas*, and old *Apidan*,

The reft of lefs note, and the moft eminent Mountains in each part hereof, fhall be remembered in their places, as we fece occafion.

Thus much of the whole Country in grofs. And as for the Divifion of it with reference to the State of the *Roman* Empire, it contained in a manner two whole Diocefes, viz. *Thrace* and *Macedon*: the firft under the *Præfatus Prætorio Orientis*, the latter (together with that of *Dacia*) under the *Præfatus Prætorio for Illyricum*. Of thefe the Diocefe of *Macedon*, lying wholly within the Bounds of the modern *Greece* contained the Provinces of *Macedonia Prima*, 2. *Macedonia Secunda*, or *Salutaris*, (now, as in former times, called *Albania*) 3. *Epirus Nova*, taking up the Countries of *Phocis*, *Locris*, and fo much of the Old *Epirus* as was on that fide of the River *Acidolus*, 4. Old *Epirus*, comprehending all the reft of that Country, 5. *Thessaly*, 6. *Æolia*, containing all *Æolia*, and *Peloponessus*, the Countries of *Locris* and *Phocis* excepted only, and 7. *Crete* or *Candia*, with the *Iland* adjoining. And for the Diocefe of *Thrace*, it was divided into the Provinces of, 1. *Thrace* fpecially fo called, 2. *Europa*, 3. *Rhodore*, 4. *Hæminuntum*, 5. *Mæfia Inferior*, and 6. *Seythia*: of which the four firft make up the Body of *Thrace*, and fhall there be fpoken of; the two laft, being comprehended in the modern *Dacia*, have been defcribed already in their proper places. But not to bind my felf precifely unto this Divifion, (though I fhall look on this as occafion ferveth) I fhall confider *Greece* in the feveral Provinces of, 1. *Peloponessus*, 2. *Æolia*, 3. *Epirus*, 4. *Albania*, 5. *Macedon*, 6. *Thrace*, 7. the *Ilands* of the *Propontick*, 8. *Ægean*, and 9. the *Ionian* Seas, and 10. finally the *Ile* of *Crete*.

1. PE-

1. PELOPONNESUS.

PELOPONNESUS is bounded on the Eaft with the *Cretean*, on the Weft with the *Adriatic*, or *Ionian* Seas, on the North-eaft with *Sinus Saronicus*, now *Golfo di Engia*, on the North-weft with *Sinus Corinthiacus*, now *Golfo di Patrus* or *Lepanto*, and on the South with the *Mæditerrenean*. So that it is almoft an *Ile*, properly called a *Peninfula*, bounded with the Sea, except where it is tied to the main Land of *Greece* by an *Isthmus* fix miles in breadth, which the *Grecians* and *Venetians* fortified with a great Wall and five Caftles. This Wall was called anciently *Hexamilium*, and was overthrown by *A-murath* the Second, who harraffed & fpoiled all the Country. It was afterwards in the year 1453, upon the rumour of a War, built up again by the *Venetians* (who then had the greateft part of this Country) in 15 days, there being for that time 30000 men employed in the work. This wall extended from one Sea unto the other; which, had it been as gallantly guarded as it was haftily made up, or as it was well fortified had it been as well manned, might eafily have refifted the *Turks*, until more means had been thought on to defend it. Not lefs observable, but more fruitlefs, was the Defign of fome in the elder times, to cut through this *Isthmus*, and make a perfect *Iland* of it. It was attempted by *Demetrius* King of *Macedon*, *Julius Cæfar*, and *Cælius Caligula*; by none more eagerly purfued then by the Emperor *Nero*, who, to hearten his Soldiers, loth to attempt fo fruitlefs an Enterprife, took a Spade in hand, and buily began the work. Yet at laft the Soldiers, being frightened with the Blood which abundantly broke forth, with the Groans and Roarings which they continually heard, and with the Hobgoblins and Furies which were always in their fight, perfwaded the Emperor, now half out of the humour, to leave this, and enjoy them fome more profitable Service. It was alfo given over by the former Princes on the like Difcouragements. But of this *Isthmus* we fhall add no more then thefe words of *Ovid*, and fo pafs forwards to the Defcription of the Country; that is to fay,

Æquora bina fuis oppugnant fluctibus Isthmum.

Et tenuis Tellus adest utrumque Mare.

Which may be thus Englifhed;

Two Seas affault the *Isthmus* with their Waves,

And that thin Neck of Land both Seas out-braves.

As for this Country of *Peloponessus*, it is in compafs 600 miles, and was called at the firft *Ægialia*, from *Ægialis* the firft King of *Sicyon*; next *Apia*, from *Apis* the fourth King; after that *Sycionia*, from *Sicyon* the 19 King thereof; and finally *Peloponessus*, from *Pelops* the Son of *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia*, and *Nio* of *Phylia*, the word fignifying as much as the *Ile* of *Pelops*. But it is now of late called *Morea*; and that a *Mædiorum Incensibilibus*, from the Incursions of the *Moors*, as *Mercurius* thinketh; but by the *Moors* he means the *Saracenis*, as fome others alfo do.

It is conceived to be the moft pleafant Country in all *Greece*, abounding in all things neceffary for the Life of man; and in fuch alfo as do ferve for Delicacy and Contentment only: adorned with many goodly Plains, fweetened with fruitful Hills, well ftoied with Ports and Havens on all fides thereof. And though no Country in the World, for the bignefs of it, hath fuffered in the Ruine of fo many brave and ftately Cities; yet is it fill the moft populous and belt inhabited of all the Continent of *Greece*. Near the middle of it, in *Laconia*, is the Mount *Taygetus*, from the top whereof there was no City of

note in all this *Peninfula* but might eafily be feen. A moft gallant Prospect. The whole was divided commonly into thefe feven Provinces; 1. *Æolia* propria, 2. *Ælia*, 3. *Mæfene*, 4. *Acadida*, 5. *Laconia*, 6. *Argolis*, and 7. *Corinthia*.

1. *ÆCHIA* propria is bounded on the Eaft with *Argolis* and *Corinthia*, on the Weft with the *Ionian* Sea, on the North with *Sinus Corinthiacus* or the Gulf of *Lepanto*, on the South with *Ælia*. So called from the *Æchia*, the Inhabitants of it; the Adjunct *propria* being added to difference it from *Æchia* in the Continent or Main-land of *Greece*.

Places of moft confideration in it are, 1. *Dyme*, fiteuate in the moft Western point of it, in or near the Promontory called *Araxus*. The Town is now called *Chiarenza*, which is another Promontory or Head-land, of old called *Rhimus*, oppofite to another in *Ætolia* that was called *Antirhimus*, divided by a very narrow Stright or *Frænum*, which openeth into the Bay of *Corinth*; fortified on each fide with a Caftle for defence thereof, commonly called *Caftelli* di *Lepanto*: both built and fortified by *Bayezes* the fecond, when he had finifhed the Conquest of *Peloponessus*, to fecure the entrance of this Bay; both taken and demolished by *Andrew Doria*, Lord Admiral to *Charles* the V. to lay the Bay open to the *Chriftians*: and finally, both within few years recovered and repaired by *Solyman* the Magnificent, as they fill continue. 2. *Ægium*, where *Jupiter* is faid to have been nurfed by a Goat, whence it had the name; *Ægæ* in *Greek* fignifying a She-Goat: once a ftrong Town, now ruined and destroyed by the *Turks*; called at this day *Pofitica*, or *Bofitica*. 3. *Ægira*, once the chief City of all this Tract, fiteuate on a fteep and inaccessible Hill; now a fmall Village, called *Xylacastro*. 4. *Olenus*, now named from *Olenus* the Son of *Jupiter* and *Anaxibia*, now called *Cheminia*. 5. *Patrus*, fiteuate at the very Mouth of the Gulf, oppofite to *Lepanto*. Firft called *Æroa*, but being by one *Patrus* enlarged and walled, took the name of *Patrus*, which name it holdeth to this day, being fill called *Patrus* the Town of moft note on the bay of *Corinth*, which is called from hence *Golfo di Patrus*. A Town of good Trade, and much frequented not long fince by the *Englifh* Merchants, who had here their Conful, called the Conful of *Morea*: but formerly more memorable for the death of *S. Andrew* the Apottle, who here fuffered Martyrdom. 6. *Pellene*, diftant from the Sea about 60 Furlongs: the people whereof being conflant to their old Fafhions of Apparel, occafioned the Proverb of *Pelleneicæ vestis*, applied to old Cloths out of Fafhion. Here were once alfo the two Cities of 7. *Ælize*, and 8. *Burje*, funk by the violence of a Tempeft into the bottom of the Sea, about the time of the Battel of *Leultra*. Not to lay any thing of 9. *Trizana*, and 10. *Phæra*, two other Towns hereof, of note in the former times; fo little now remaining of them, as if they had been funk at the fame time alfo.

But the chief Town of all this Province (if not a Province of it felf) is *Sicyon*, fiteuate not far from the *Isthmus*: in the moft Eaftern parts hereof, and giving to the Territory or adjoining Country) as once unto the whole *Peninfula* the name of *Sicyonia*. The Territory is rich, efpecially in Olives, and Works of Iron; the City the moft ancient of all *Greece*, built within little time of the general Flood and reftauration of mankind. Firft called *Æginalia*, after *Sicyon*, by the name of the firft and nineteenth King hereof; by whom and their Succelfors it was much adorned and beautified with Temples, Altars, Statues and Images of their feveral Gods: the ancient Kingdom in the World, the *Assyrian* and *Egyptian* excepted only,

only, and perhaps not those. It took beginning in the person of *Agideus*, within 150 years after the Deluge, and 200 years before the death of *Nabab*; continuing in a Race of Princes who swayed the Affairs of *Peloponnesus*, till overtopped by the growth and good fortune of the Kings of *Argos*. The names of whom, by reason of the undoubted Antiquity of this Kingdom, I shall here subjoin in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Kings of *SICYON*.

A. M.		A. M.	
1860	1. <i>Agideus</i> .	2421	14. <i>Marathon</i> .
1910	2. <i>Enops</i> .	2441	15. <i>Echireus</i> .
1950	3. <i>Telchin</i> .	2496	16. <i>Corax</i> .
1980	4. <i>Apis</i> .	2526	17. <i>Eppesus</i> .
2004	5. <i>Telxion</i> .	2561	18. <i>Laomedon</i> .
2055	6. <i>Agirius</i> .	2601	19. <i>Sicyon</i> .
2089	7. <i>Eurymachus</i> .	2646	20. <i>Polylus</i> .
2134	8. <i>Leucippus</i> .	2686	21. <i>Jansichus</i> .
2187	9. <i>Mesippus</i> .	2728	22. <i>Thestus</i> .
2234	10. <i>Pentus</i> .	2736	23. <i>Adraffus</i> .
2280	11. <i>Plemmaus</i> .	2740	24. <i>Poliphides</i> .
2328	12. <i>Orthoulis</i> .	2771	25. <i>Pelafgus</i> .
2391	13. <i>Marathon</i> .	2791	26. <i>Zeuxippus</i> .

the last King of *Sicyon*. After whose death, *A. M.* 2812, the Estate thereof was governed by the Priests of *Apollo*, seven of them successively one after another: the first five, only years apiece; *Amphytion*, who was the sixth, continuing 9 years in the Regency, and *Charidemus*, the last of them, ruling 18 years. After whose death or departure, I know not which, *A. M.* 2844, the *Heracleids*, who about that time returned into *Peloponnesus*, made themselves Masters of this Country; there being no Kings of *Sicyon* from this time forwards.

Of these Kings the most memorable were *Agideus* and *Apis*, the first and fourth, from whom this *Peninsula* had the names of *Apia* and *Agiala*; *Agirius*, the 6 giving name and being to the City *Agira* spoken of before; *Marathon*, the 13, of whom perhaps the famous Fields of *Marathon* (in the other *Achaia*) took denomination; *Eppesus*, the 17, who founded a Temple to *Minerva* and therein placed his own Monument or Trophies; *Sicyon*, the 19, the Founder of the City *Sicyon*, or at the least their repairer and Enlarger of it; *Pelafgus*, the 25, from whom perhaps the *Gracians* might be called *Pelafgi*, if not known formerly by that name. After this time I find no man of note who bare sway in *Sicyon*, till the time of *Aratus*, the special Ornament of this Town, (of which a Native) and one of the principal Establishers of the *Achaean* Commonwealth against the *Spartans* and *Macedonians*; of which more hereafter in the general History of *Peloponnesus*.

2. The Country of *ELIS* hath on the East *Arcadia*, on the West the *Ionian* Sea, on the North *Achaia propria*, on the South *Messenia*. The chief Cities are, 1. *Elis*, which gives name to the whole Province. So called from *Elisba* the Son of *Javan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*, who fixt himself in these parts of this Country, where he built this City, calling it by his own name, as his posterity in honour of him did the Isles adjoining, mentioned in the Prophet *Ezekiel* by the name of the Isles of *Elisba*, ch. 27. v. 7. Nigh to this City runneth the River *Alpheus*, of which we have spoken in *Sicilia*: and in this City reigned the King *Agaveus*, the cleansing of whose Stable is accounted one of the Wonders or twelve Labours performed by *Hercules*. 2. *Olympia*, famous for the Statue of *Jupiter Olympius*, one of

the seven Wonders, being in height 60 Cubits, composed by that excellent Workman *Phidias*, of Gold and Ivory. In honour of this *Jupiter* were the *Olympick* Games instituted by *Hercules*, and celebrated on the Plains of this City, *A. M.* 2757. The Exercises in them were for the most part bodily, as running in Chariots, Running on Foot, Wrestling, Fighting with the Whorlbat, and the like. But so that there repaired thither also Orators, Poets, and Musicians, and all that thought themselves excellent in any laudable quality, to make trial of their several Abilities: the very Criers, who proclaimed the Victories, contending which should cry loudest, and best play his part. The rewards given to the Victors were only Garlands of Palm, or such slight remembrances; and yet the *Greeks* no less esteemed that small Sign of Conquest and Honour, than the *Romans* did their most magnificent Triumphs: those which were Conquerors herein being met by all the principal men in the City in or under which they lived, and a passage broken in the main Walls thereof for their reception; as if ordinary Gates were not capable of so high an Honour, or able to afford them entrance. Insumuch that when *Diagoras* had seen his three Sons crowned for their several Victories, a Friend of his came to him with this Gratulation, *Morre*, *Diagora*, *numquam enim in Caelum ascensurus es*, that is to say, *Diagora*, for thou shalt never go to Heaven: as if no greater Happiness could befall the man either in this life or that to come, than that which he enjoyed already. The Judges and Presidents of these Games were some of the Citizens of *Elis*, deputated to it; highly commended for their Justice and integrity in pronouncing who best deserved without Partiality. Of these thus *Horace* in his Odes:

*Sunt quot Curriculo pulverem Olympicum
Collegisse juvat; Metaque fervidis
Evitata Rotis, Palmaque nobilis
Terrarum Dominos excolit ad Deos.*

*Quos Eliza dominos reducit
Palma caelestes.*

That is to say,
Some in *Olympick* Dust take pride
Their Chariots and themselves to hide;
Whom the flum'd Mark, and Palm for priz'd,
Like to the Gods hath eterniz'd.

Such as like Heav'nly Wights do come
With an *Elan* Garland home.

But to proceed, after the death of *Hercules* these Games were discontinued for 430 years: at which time one *Iphitus*, warned so to do by the Oracle of *Apollo*, renewed them, causing them to be solemnly exercised every fourth year: from which Custom *Olympus* is sometimes taken for the space of 4 years; as *quingus annorum Olympiades* for 20 years. *Varro* reckoneth the times before the Flood to be Obscure; those before the *Olympiads*, and after the Flood, to be Fabulous; but those that followed these *Olympiads* to be Historical. These *Olympiads* were of long time, even from the reitaurated of *Theodosius*, by *Iphitus* until the Reign of the Emperor *Theodosius*, the *Gracian* Epoch, by which they reckoned their Account: the first of them being placed in the year of the World 3174, before the building of *Rome* 40 years; the last in the 440, year after *Christ's* Nativity. According to which reckoning this Account continued for the space of 1214 years; the memory of which remains, though the name of *Olympia* be not found in *Peloponnesus*; the Town at

at this day being called by the name of *Scorpi*. 3. *Pisa* whose people followed *Nestor* to the Wars of *Troy*; and in their return were by *Tempest* driven to the Coasts of *Italy*, where they built the City *Pisa* in *Tuscany*. 4. *Tornefe*, a new Town, or the new name of some ancient City; from whence the adjoining Promontory, of old called *Chelonice*, is now called *Cabo di Tornefe*.

3. *MESSENI A* hath on the East *Arcadia*, on the North *Elis*, on the South and West the Sea. It takes its name from the Metropolis *Messene*, situate on *Sinus Messenicus*, now called *Golfo di Corone*. 2. *Pylus*, where *Nestor* was King, now called *Navarino*; a desolate and poor Village not worth the noting. Of which thus *Ovid* speaking in the name of *Penelope*.

*Nos Pylon, antiqui Noleia Nestoris arva,
Messimus; incerta est reddita fama Pylon.*

To *Pylon*, aged *Nestor's* Seat, we went,
But could not hear from thence how matters went.

3. *Modon*, or *Methone*, seated in the most Southern part of this *Peninsula*, from whence unto the *Isthmus* which joyneth it to the rest of *Greece* are reckoned 175 Italian miles. The Town is commodiously seated in a Demi-Island, washed on the one side with the Sea, and so well fortified toward the Land, that in the opinion of most men it is thought impregnable; adorned on the South-side with a large and capacious Bay, about 3 miles wide, secure from all winds except the North, and shut up with a little Island called anciently *Oenusa*, but now *Sapienza*, which makes it one of the safest Harbours in all these Seas. It was possessed once by the State of *Venice*, but conquered by the *Turk*, after many sharp and fierce Assaults, Anno 1500, both *Pylus* and *Corone* yielding on the noise thereof. The best Retreat since that time of the *Turkish* Navies, and the ordinary Residence of the *Turk's* *Sanzaks*, who hath the Government of this whole Province of *Mores* under the *Begher* of *Greece*. 4. *Corone* or *Coron*, the chief Town on the Bay of *Messene*, called from hence *Golfo di Corone*, and the last which held out against the *Turks* for the State of *Venice*, once Lords of all the Sea Coasts of *Peloponnesus*. 5. *Cyparissus*, now called *Arcadia*, from whence the Bay adjoining hath the name of *Golfo di Arcadia*. Here is also the Promontory called of old *Coryphasium*, now *Cabo Zanchi*.

The people of this small Province had once a great sway in the whole *Peninsula*. At first they were confederate with the *Spartans* in so strict a League, that they mutually sent young Virgins to one another for their publick Sacrifice: but afterwards Corrivals with them for the supreme power. The *Spartans*, at the last getting the upper hand of them, oppressed them with a miserable Servitude. The occasion this: In the confines of this Country stood a Temple of *Diana*, common alike to the *Messianians*, *Spartans*, and *Dores*. It happened that some *Spartan* Virgins were by the *Messianians* here ravished: which abuse the true reason indeed being their Covetousness of the sole Empire. This War broke out three several times. The first continued twenty years: in which space the *Lacedaemonians*, fearing their Absence would hinder the supply of Children in the City, sent a Company of their ablest young men home to accompany their Wives. Their Offspring were called *Parthenis*, who, coming to full growth, abandoned *Sparta*, sailed into *Italy*, and there built *Tarentum*. The second being of 23 years continuance, was raised and maintained by *Arifonnes*, one of the chief men of the *Messianians*; in which they prospered till *Arifonnes*, side with *Lacedaemon*. Then began they to decline, and *Arifonnes* was thrice taken Prisoner, still miraculously escaping. His last Imprisonment was in a Dungeon, where

by chance eflpying a Fox devouring a dead body, he caught hold of her Tail. The Fox running away, guided *Arifonnes* after; till the streightness of the Hole by which he went out made him leave his hold, and fall to scraping made the Hole passible, and he escaped; and having a while upheld his falling Country, died in *Rhodes*. The third War was like drops after a Tempest; in which the *Messianians* being finally subdued, were forced to abandon their Country, or become Slaves unto the *Spartans*, who put them to all Drudgeries and servile Works; as they did the *Helots*, whom they counted as their Bondmen. And to this life some of them did apply themselves with so much Obsequiousness, that at last it grew into a Proverb, *Messin's servitium*, that such a one was more servile, or more slavishly used, than these poor *Messianians*. But the greatest part of them not brooking that heavy Yoke, passed into *Sicily*, and there built the City of *Messina*. Others were planted in *Naupactium*, by the State of *Athens*; the rest dispersed up and down in all parts of *Greece*: few of them left in their own Country, till *Epaminondas* having vanquished the *Lacedaemonians* at the Battel of *Leuttra* reitored them to their ancient Possessions.

4. *ARCADIA* hath on the East *Laconia*, on the West *Elis* and *Messene*, on the North *Achaia propria*, and on the South the Sea. This Country took its name from *Arcas*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Callisto*; but was formerly called *Pelafgia*: the people whereof thought themselves more ancient than the *Moons*.

*Orta prius Lania, de se foveredit ipsi,
A magno, tellus Arcade nomen habet.*

The Land which of great *Arcas* took its name
Was e're the *Moon*, if we will credit Fame.

The chief Cities are, 1. *Mantineia*, nigh unto which the *Theban* Army, consisting of 30000 Foot and 3000 Horse, routed the Army of the *Spartans* and *Athenians*, consisting of 25000 Foot and 2000 Horse. In this Battel *Epaminondas*, that famous Leader, received his death's wound, and not long after died. At his last Gaspe, one of his Friends bemoaning his untimely death, *Alas*, said he; *thou diest*, *Epaminondas*, and leavest behind thee no Children. *Nay* replied he, two Daughters will I leave behind me, the victory of *Leuttra*, and this other at *Mantineia*. It was afterward called *Antigona*, in honour of *Antigonus*, Tutor or Protector of *Phillip* the Father of *Perseus*, King of *Macedon*; but by command of the Emperor *Adrian* reitored to its old name again, and is now called *Mantegna*. 2. *Megalopolis* the Birth-place of *Polybius*, that excellent Historian. The one half of it had sometimes the name of *Orestia*, from the lodging of *Orestes* in it: the whole is now called *Leontario*, on what cause I know not. 3. *Phidalia*, towards the Sea. 4. *Pisipio*, so called from *Pisipio*, one of the Sons of *Lycan*, once King of this Country, slain by *Jupiter*. 5. *Symphthalis*, situate near a Lake and River of the same name, where *Hercules* slew the *Symphthalis* Birds; so great in number and in Body; that they darkened the Sun-beams, and terribly infested this little Province, till driven thence by *Hercules*. Here was also in this Town a Temple dedicated to *Minerva*, from hence called *Symphthalida*. 6. *Tegae*, famous for the Temple of *Pan*, here worshipped; and from hence called *Tegae*: more for the War made upon the *Tegaeans*, or people hereof, by the *Lacedaemonians*; who, thinking themselves assured of Victory, brought with them store of Chains and Fetters wherewith to lead Captive their conquered Enemies; but, being overcome in Battel, were themselves bound with them, and forced as Slaves to till the Grounds of these *Tegaeans*. Here is also in this Country the famous River *Stryx*,
R x r whole

whose water, for the poisonous taste, was called the water of Hell; by which Poets feign that the Gods use to swear, as may be every where observed; and that what God swore before by *Syr* fallily, he was banished from Heaven, and prohibited Nectar for 1000 years.

This Country, for the fitness of it for Pasturage and Grazing, hath made it the Subject of many worthy and witty Discourses, especially that of Sir *Phillip Sidney*, of whom I cannot but make honorable mention: a Book which besides its excellent Language, rare Contrivances, and delectable Stories, hath in it all the Strains of Poësie, comprehendeth the universal Art of speaking, and to them which can discern and will observe affordeth notable Rules for Demeanor, both private and publick. Which notable Gentleman, as he may worthily be called the *English Heliodore*, so the ingenious Author of the History of *Melinus* and *Ariana* may deservedly be called the *French Sidney*.

5. *LACONIA* is bounded on the West with *Arcadia*, on the East and South with the Sea, on the North with *Argolis*. Called first *Lelegia*, from the *Leleges*, by *Strabo* said to be the first Inhabitants of it; afterwards *Oebalia*, from *Oebalus* a King of *Lacedæmon*; and finally *Laconia*, of the *Lacones* who succeeded the *Leleges* in the possession hereof, on their removal into the Islands of the lesser *Asia*. It is by some Writers also called *Hecatonopolis*, from the number of an hundred Cities which it once had in it.

The Soil hereof is exceeding rich, and the Fields very spacious; yet for the most part not well tilled, in regard of the many Hills and Mountains which overthwart it. Well watered with the River *Eurotas*, and memorable for many fair Bays and Promontories: of which the principal are the Promontories of *Malea*, and *Tenaria*, now called *Cabo Malio* and *Cabo Matapan*; and of the Bays, that called *Golfo di Colobina*, the *Sinus Laconicus* of the Ancients, into which the River *Eurotas* (now better known by the name of *Vassilopano*, or the *Kingly River*) pours his gentle Streams. The nature of the People we shall find in *Sparta*.

Places of most observation in it are, 1. *Lendrea*, situate on the Sea-side, near the Bay of *Messene*: of which name were two others in Greece, the one in *Arcadia*, the other in *Achaia*; but this last most memorable. 2. *Amicyla*, so called from *Amicyla*, the third King of *Sparta*, by whom it was first founded: renowned afterwards for the Birth of *Castor* and *Pollux*, the Sons of *Tyndarus*; and of good note for being the Foundress of the City of *Amicyla* in *Calabria Superior*; at first a Colony of this: distant from *Lacedæmon* about 20 Furlongs. 3. *Thalama*, nigh to which is the Lake of *Lerna*, where *Hercules* slew the Monster *Hydra*, and not far off Mount *Tanarus*, near the Promontory *Tenaria*, in which the Natives threw a Cave, (believed in former times to be a Descent into Hell) out of which the Poets feign that *Cerberus* was dragged by *Hercules*. 4. *Salafissa*, where *Antigonus* vanquished *Cleomenes*, the last King of *Sparta*. 5. *Epidaurus*, (seat on the Bay named *Golfo di Napoli*) now called *Malvasia*: a Town well built, and very well peopled; remarkable for the sweet Wines called *Malvesey* or *Malmsey*, sent from hence into all other parts in great abundance. 6. *Sparta*, so called from *Sparta*, the Son or Brother of *Phoroneus*, the second King of *Argos*, the Founder of it, but afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Lacedæmon*, the

second King of this Country, it took that name also; promiscuously known by both in the best Authors. One of the Eyes of Greece, and a famous Common-wealth; but at first governed by Kings, as most of the Greek Cities in ancient times. *Tyndarus*, the Father of *Castor* and *Pollux*, was once King hereof. After whose death, and the death of the said famous Brethren, *Menelaus* was admitted King of *Sparta*, or *Lacedæmon*, in right of *Helena* his Wife, their Sister. And though *Nicophratus* and *Megapenthes*, Sons of *Menelaus* by another *Vener*, succeeded after his decease; yet the *Spartans* soon rejected them, and received *Orestes* the Son of *Agamemnon* to be their King, marrying him to *Hermione*, the daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, and consequently the Niece of *Tyndarus*. *Tisamenus*, the Son of *Orestes* and *Hermione*, succeeded next; in whose time the *Heracleids*, or posterity of *Hercules*, returned into Greece, under the conduct of *Temenus*, *Cleophon*, and *Arifodemus*, Sons of *Aristonachus*: whereof the first possessed himself by force of Arms of the City *Argos*, the second of *Messene*, and the third conquered the City and State of *Sparta*; which dying very shortly after, he left unto his two Sons, *Eurifides* and *Procles*, the Roots of the two Royal Families which jointly and in common governed the affairs of *Sparta*, first absolutely as Sovereign Princes, without any controul, afterwards at the direction of the Senate, and finally under the Command and Check of those popular Officers whom they called the *Ephori*. But because these *Spartan* Kings in each several period were for the most part men of Action, and often mentioned in the Histories of the elder time, I will first make a Catalogue of them, and then subjoin such Observations and Remembrances as I think most pertinent.

The Kings of SPARTA of the first Family.

A.M.

1. *Eurotas*, the first King of *Sparta*, who gave name to the River *Eurotas*.
2. *Lacedæmon*, Brother of *Eurotas*, from whom the City of *Sparta* was called *Lacedæmon*.
3. *Amicyla*, Son of *Lacedæmon*, the Founder of *Amicyla*, a *Laconian* City.
4. *Argalus*, Son of *Amicyla*.
5. *Cynarta*, Son of *Argalus*.
6. *Oebalus*, Son of *Cynarta*, from whom a part of this Country had the name of *Oebalia*.
7. *Hippocoon*, Son of *Oebalus*.
- 2700 8. *Tyndarus*, Brother of *Hippocoon*, in whose life he was King of *Oebalia* only.
9. *Castor* and *Pollux*, Sons of *Tyndarus*, famous amongst the *Argonauts*.
- 2740 10. *Menelaus*, Son of *Agamemnon* and Brother of *Agamemnon* Kings of *Mycenæ*, together with *Helena* his Wife, the Daughter of *Tyndarus*, whose Rape occasioned the Destruction of *Troy*.
- 2770 11. *Nicophratus* and *Megapenthes*, Sons of *Menelaus* by a former Wife.
12. *Orestes*, Son of *Agamemnon*, and *Hermione* his Wife, Daughter of *Helena* and *Menelaus*.
13. *Tisamenus*, Son of *Orestes* and *Hermione*, who, being ousted of *Sparta* by the *Heracleids*, reigned in *Achaia*, and left his Kingdom there unto his Posterity.

The Kings of SPARTA of the Race of the HERACLIDÆ.

1. *Arifodemus*, The first King of the Race of *Heracles*, left the Kingdom jointly to his two Sons,

- | | |
|--|--|
| 2848 1. <i>Eurifides</i> . | 2848 1. <i>Procles</i> . |
| 2890 2. <i>Agis</i> , from whom this Line were called <i>Agids</i> . | 2. <i>Euripon</i> , from whom this Line were called <i>Euripontids</i> . |
| 2891 3. <i>Echestratus</i> . | 3. <i>Prystatus</i> . |
| 2926 4. <i>Labetus</i> . | 4. <i>Enomus</i> . |
| 2963 5. <i>Dryfus</i> . | 5. <i>Polydectes</i> . |
| 2992 6. <i>Agellus</i> . | 6. <i>Charilaus</i> . |
| 3046 7. <i>Archelaus</i> . | 7. <i>Nicandrus</i> . |
| 3076 8. <i>Teleclus</i> . | 8. <i>Theopompus</i> . |
| 3140 9. <i>Alcmenes</i> . | 9. <i>Archidamus</i> . |
| 3176 10. <i>Polydorus</i> . | 10. <i>Zenocidamus</i> . |
| 11. <i>Euryerates</i> . | 11. <i>Anaxidamus</i> . |
| 12. <i>Anaxandrus</i> . | 12. <i>Archidamus II</i> . |
| 13. <i>Euryerates II</i> . | 13. <i>Agasides</i> . |
| 14. <i>Leonidas</i> . | 14. <i>Ariston</i> . |
| 15. <i>Anaxandrides</i> . | 15. <i>Demaratus</i> . |
| 16. <i>Cleomenes</i> . | 16. <i>Leontichides</i> . |
| 17. <i>Leonidas II</i> . | 3447 17. <i>Archidamus III</i> . |
| 3470 18. <i>Pisarchus</i> . | 3478 18. <i>Agis</i> . |
| 3471 19. <i>Pisfonax</i> . | 3520 19. <i>Agellus</i> . |
| 3539 20. <i>Panfanias</i> . | 3547 20. <i>Archidamus IV</i> . |
| 3593 21. <i>Agispolis</i> . | 3588 21. <i>Agis II</i> . |
| 3672 22. <i>Cleombrotus</i> . | 3611 22. <i>Endamidas</i> . |
| 3776 23. <i>Agispolis II</i> . | 23. <i>Archidamus V</i> . |
| 3777 24. <i>Cleomenes II</i> . | 24. <i>Endamidas II</i> . |
| 3611 25. <i>Arius</i> . | 25. <i>Agis III</i> . |
| 3655 26. <i>Acrotatus</i> . | 3700 26. <i>Eurydamidas</i> , the last King of the Line of the <i>Euripontids</i> , slain by <i>Cleomenes</i> , the last of the other Line also. |

Eurydamidas, the Son of *Agis* the third, substituted his Brother *Epicles* in his place. But being himself shortly after vanquished by *Antigonus* of *Macedonia*, and forced to fly his Country with his Wife and Children, the Government of the *Heracleids* ended, after it had continued here for the space of 900 years, or thereabouts.

Under the Kings the Government at first was by 20 *Morax* as *Plutarch* termeth it, sufficiently *Monarchical*; if it were not more. Under *Eumoni*, the fourth King of the second House, the people, finding the Reins of Government let loose, began to mutiny and grow too headstrong. To bridle whom, and to restrain the Kings withally, (should they prove exorbitant) *Lycurgus*, the Protector of *Charilaus*, the sixth King of that House, did ordain the Senate, committing to them the supreme Power in matters Civil, and leaving to the Kings the ordering all this Senate, who quickly found their own strength, *Theopompus*, the eighth King of that House, with the consent of the Senate, the tenth King of the other, instituted a new they called the *Ephori*; which grew in fine to such an height of Pride and Tyranny, as not only to control the Senators, but to censure, fine, imprison, depose, and mutually to kill their Kings, as the Spirit of Sedition moved them. So that the State of *Lacedæmon* was at first a Monarchy under Kings, then an Aristocracy under the command of the Senate, next a Democracy under the

Ephori, and finally, by those popular Officers made to plain a Tyranny, that *Aristotle* and *Plato*, two great Common-wealths-men, who died before they had embred their hands in the blood of their Kings, call it in plain terms *tyrannical* & *tyrannical* a most absolute Tyranny. What think you these men would have called it, had they lived to see *Leonidas* the third deposed, and *Agis* the third of that name also most barbarously murdered by these popular Villains?

But being the Foundation of this Common-wealth was first laid, and the good Laws and Politick Constitutions by which it did so long flourish in great Power and Splendour established, by the Wit and Power of *Lycurgus*, as before we said; we are to know concerning him, that he was the Son of *Eumoni*, the fourth King of the second House, slain in a popular Tumult by the Common people. Who, finding by this Essay, that the People were become too headstrong for the Kings to govern, unless reduced to extreme Bondage by their Kings, which he would not neither, took the advantage of the Minority of *Charilaus*, though his Nephew, when he came to age, to file for Sanctuary to the Temple of *Juno*. Having ordained what Laws he pleased, and settled such a Form of Government as himself well fancied, the better to decline the Envy of so great a Change, he got leave to travel, binding the People by an Oath to observe all his Laws until his return; and, being gone, commanded at his death, that his Ashes should be cast into the Sea, lest, being carried back to *Sparta*, the people might conceive themselves released from their Oath. By means whereof his Laws continued in force near 700 years, during which time that Common-wealth did flourish in all Prosperity. The particulars of which Institutions he that lists to see may find them specified at large by *Plutarch* in the Life of *Lycurgus*. Suffice it that the Discipline was so sharp and strict, that many went into the Wars for no other reason than on a hope to rid themselves from so hard a life; and that *Diogenes*, returning hence to the City of *Athens*, gave out that he returned from Men to Women, in the *Andromeda* & his *Andromeda* and being asked in what part of Greece he had been with the compleat men, made answer that he could no where meet with *Morax*; but that he had found some Boys amongst the *Spartans*. A Cynical and rugged answer, but such as carried a great deal of Judgment in it; the *Spartans* being more stout and resolute in all their Actions, and less effeminate in their Lives, than the rest of the *Grecians*. But besides the strictness of the Discipline under which they lived, there was another thing which made them with for Wars abroad; namely, the little or no power which either the Kings or People had in Civil matters, or Affairs of State, entirely left to the disposing of the Senate and the Power of the *Ephori*. So that the Kings, having by the Laws the Command of their Armies, were willing to engage in War upon all occasions, and the Common people as desirous to attend them in such Employments as the Kings could with. Upon these grounds War was made a Trade amongst them; beginning with the *Helots*, a neighbouring People, then with the rest of the *Laconians*, afterwards quarrelling the *Messenians*, their old Confederates: all which they severally subdued, and made subject to them. In the War which *Xerxes* made against the City of *Athens*, their King *Leonidas* the first, of the elder House, went forth to aid them; slain at the Straights of *Thermopylae*, courageously fighting for the Liberty of Greece: and when it was thought fit to set upon the *Persian* Fleet, *Eurybiades* the *Spartan* Admiral did command in chief. In pursuit of this War against the *Persians*, *Panfanias*

and *Aegeians* were of most renown: the first in helping the *Athenians* to drive them out of *Greece*; the other in making War upon them in their own Dominions. Freed from the *Perfians*, they grow jealous of the State of *Athens*, whom they looked on as their Rivals in point of Sovereignty and Glory. Hence the long War betwixt these Cities, called *Belium Peloponnesiacum*, managed for the most part in *Peloponnesus*, from thence transferred into *Sicily*, and at last ended in the taking of *Athens*: the Government whereof they changed into an Aristocracy under thirty Magistrates of their own appointment, commonly called the *Thirty Tyrants*. Proud of this fortunate Success their next Quarrel was with the *Bacotians*, the conquered *Athenians* covertly, and the *Perfians* openly, assisting the Enemy. Here their Prosperity began to leave them. For besides many small Defeats, *Epaninondas* the *Theban* so discomfited them at the Overthrows of *Leutira* and *Mantineia*, that *Sparta* it self was in danger of utter Ruine. Not long after happened the *Holy War*, chiefly undertook against the *Phocians*, wherein also they made a party: but this War being ended by King *Phillip*, they scarce breathed more Freedom than he gave air to. But when *Alexander's* Captains fought for the Empire of their Master, all these flourishing Republics were either totally swallowed into, or much defaced by the Kingdom of *Macedon*. The *Lacedaemonians* held the chief strength of a Town to consist in the Valour of the people; and therefore would never suffer *Sparta* to be walled, till the times immediately following the death of *Alexander* the Great: yet could not those Fortifications then defend them from *Antigonus Dofon*, King of *Macedon*, who, having vanquished *Cleomenes* King of *Sparta*, entered the Town, and was the first man that ever was received into it as Conqueror. So much different were the present *Spartans* from the Valour and Courage of their Ancestors. *Cleomenes* being forced to forsake his Country, and the Race of the *Heracleidae* failing in him, they became a Prey to *Machanidas* and *Nabis* two wicked Tyrants; from whom they were no sooner freed, but they were made subject (in a manner) to the Power of *Rome*: and in the end the Town was so weak and inconsiderable, that it was not able to resist the poorest enemy; now a small Burrough called *Misthra*. And so I leave them to the thoughts of their former Glories; having now nothing else to boast of but the same and memory of their Actions in former times.

6. *ARGOLIS*, so called from the chief City *Argos*, is bounded on the South with *Laconia*, on the West with *Corinthia* and *Achaia propria*, on the East and North with the Sea. A Territory remarkable for a most excellent breed of Horses, and from thence called *Hippium*.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Argos*, founded by *Argos*, the fourth King of this Country; the chief of this Kingdom. Memorable as for other things, so 1. for the Death of *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, who having forced his Entry into it, was here ignobly slain, after all his Victories, by the hands of an old Woman, throwing a Tile at him from the top of an House: 2. for the long Race of the Kings hereof, from *Inachus* the contemporary of our Father *Abraham*. Anno 2003, unto *Arifius* their last King: whose Daughter *Danae*, being shut up in a Tower of Brass, was delivered by *Jupiter*; to whom she bare the renowned *Perseus*, so memorialized in ancient Poets. But *Perseus*, having by misfortune slain his Grand-father, the old King *Arifius* quitted the City of *Argos* as unlucky to him, and transferred the Kingdom to *Myceia*, a City of his own Foundation, and so better fancied, which was by means hereof the second City of esteem in this little Province, growing in small time unto so great Riches,

that it got the name of *dires Myceia*, as appeareth by *Horace*, in whom the *Horfes of Argos* and the Wealth of *Myceia* are placed in one Verse together:

Apium dicit equis Argos, ditius Mycenae.

For *Horfes of Argos* is of *dane*,

For Wealth *Myceia* hath the name.

3. *Traczen*, situate on the *Sinnu Saronicum*, (now called *Golfo di Engia*) the Royal Seat of *Pittheus*, the Grand-father of *Theseus* by the Mothers side, who was born herein: from whence the Town in *Ovid* hath sometime the name of *Pittheia Traczen*, and *Theseus*, many times is called *Traczenus Heros*; as *Hercules* had the name of *Tyrinthus Heros* from 4. *Tyrinthus*, another City of this Province, in which he was nursed; 5. *Nemea*, where *Hercules* slew the dreadful Lion which annoyed this Country. In honour of which noble Act were instituted in time following the *Nemean Games*, which continued of great fame in *Greece* for many Ages. The Exercises were, Running with swift Horses; Whorlboats, Running on foot, Quoting, Wrestling, Darting, Shooting. Some have referred the Original of these Games to one *Opheletus*, a *Lacedaemonian*, in whose Honour they conceive them instituted, and others fetch it higher, from the War of *Thebes*. But this I take to be the more allowable Opinion. 6. *Epidaurus*, on the Sea-side, famous for the Temple of *Aesculapius*, and the Cure of all sorts of diseases there; so called from *Epidaurum*, the Son of *Argus*, the Founder of it. Of the same name, but of a different situation from that before mentioned in *Laconia*; that being seated on the Bay called *Golfo di Napoli*, this on that of *Engia*. Once called *Melissa* and *Aemera*, at that time an Island, but by an Earthquake laid unto the Continent; now called *Pigadia*. 7. *Nauplia*, so called of *Nauplius* King of *Esolia*, and Father of *Palamedes*, to whom it anciently belonged. A Station thence as now, for Shipping; in that regard called *Nauplia Navale*, now *Napoli*, or *Neapolis*, the richest and best traded in all this Tract, giving name unto large and capacious Bay, now called *Golfo di Napoli*, of old *Sinnu Argolicum*, into which the famous River *Inachus*, having passed through the City of *Argos*, doth discharge it self; so called from *Inachus* the Father of *Io*, and the Original and Progenitor of

The Kings of ARGOS and MYCENAE.

A. M.

2093

1. *Inachus*, the supposed Father of *Io*, from whom the *Gracians* are sometimes called by the name of *Inachii*.

2143

2. *Phoroneus*, the Son of *Inachus* and *Melissa*, from whom the said *Io* hath the name of *Phoronis* in the Poet.

2223

3. *Apis*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Niobe* the Daughter of *Phoroneus*, who, leaving *Greece*, went into *Egypt*, where he taught the People Tillage, and was there worshipped afterwards in the form of an Ox.

2238

4. *Argus* the Son of *Apis*, and the Founder of *Argos*; in whose time Agriculture was taken up amongst the *Gracians*, from him called *Argivus*.

2308

5. *Crispius*, by some *Piræus*, the Son of *Argus*.

2363

6. *Phorbas*, the Son of *Crispius*; in whose time *Atlas* and *Prometheus* are said to flourish.

2397

7. *Triopas*, the Son of *Phorbas*, and the Brother of another *Phorbas*, who planted himself in the Isle of *Rhodes*.

2442

8. *Crotopus*.

2464

9. *Sthenelus*, outed of the Kingdom by

2475

10. *Danaus*, the Brother of *Argivus*, by whom being driven out of *Egypt*, he was made King

King of *Argos* by consent of the people: to the Father of those many Daughters got with child by *Hercules*. From him the *Gracians* are called often by the name of *Danai*.

2525

11. *Lyneus*, Son of *Argivus*, the Brother of *Danaus*.

2556

12. *Abas*, the Son of *Lyneus* and *Ephyra*, the Daughter of *Danaus*.

2566

13. *Prætus*, the Son of *Abas*.

2606

14. *Arifius*, the Brother of *Prætus*, and the Father of *Danae*; who being foretold by the Oracle that he should be slain by a Son of that Daughter, shut her up in a brazen Tower. But *Jupiter*, having corrupted the Guards with Gold, got the Ladie's consent, by whom he had *Perseus*, so renowned amongst the Poets and Historians of those elder times.

2637

15. *Perseus*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Danae*, exposed by his Grandfather to the Seas, miraculously preserved, and grown into great fame by his brave Exploits. He restored *Arifius* to his Throne from which he had been deposed by his Brother *Prætus*. But after having ignorantly and unfortunately slain the said *Arifius*, he removed his Seat unto *Myceia*; where he reigned together with his Son *Sthenelus*.

2645

16. *Eurystheus*, the Son of *Sthenelus*, much spoken of for the difficult Tasks which, at the instigation of *Junio*, he imposed on *Hercules* his Foster-child, and the supposed Son of *Amphitryon* his Cousin-german.

2688

17. *Aræus* and *Theseus*, Sons of *Pelops*, on the falling of the Line of *Perseus*, succeeded in *Argos* and *Myceia*; infamous for their Murders and Adultery; *Theseus* abusing the Bed of *Aræus*, and *Aræus* feasting him with the Body of his own Son, whence *Ovidius* & *Seneca* in the Proverb.

2733

18. *Agamemnon*, the Son of *Aræus*, Commander of the *Greeks* at the War of *Troy*, in which action there engaged 69 Kings of the *Gracians*, wasted over with a Navy of 1224 Ships; killed at his coming home by *Agisthus*, his Cousin-german.

2768

19. *Ægisthus*, the Son of *Theseus*, having defiled *Clytemnestra* the Wife of *Agamemnon* in the time of his absence, by her procurement murdered him at his coming home, and usurped the Kingdom.

2775

20. *Orestes*, Son of *Agamemnon*, revenged his Father's death on *Ægisthus* and *Clytemnestra* his own Mother. After which falling mad, and restored again unto his Wits, he married *Hermione*, Daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, by whom he had the Kingdom of *Sparta* also.

2803

21. *Penibulus*, the Son of *Orestes*, and the last King of this Line, outed of his Estate by the *Dores* and *Heracleidae*, who made themselves Masters of all *Peloponnesus*, which they possessed until the Conquest of it by the *Macedonians*.

7. *CORINTHIA* is a little Region, lying towards the *Isthmus* or Neck of Land which joineeth *Peloponnesus* to the rest of *Greece*, betwixt *Argolis* and *Achaia propria*. It containeth only the Territory of the City of *Corinth*, not large, nor very fruitful of those Commodities which the rest of this *Peninsula* doth abound with;

as being mountainous and hilly, and, by reason of the nearness of the Sea, full of craggy Rocks. The chief, and the naval Road or Station of Ships for *Corinth*, mentioned *Acts* 18. 18. and *Rom.* 16. 1. in both Texts reckoned a distinct Town from *Corinth*, as indeed it was: situate on that Bay which openeth into the *Cretan* Sea, called anciently *Sinnu Saronicum*, now *Golfo di Engia*; and consequently opposite to 2. *Lechæum*, the other Naval Road for *Corinth*, situate on the Western Bay, called of old *Sinnu Corinthiacus*, now the Gulf of *Lepanto*. 3. *Corinth* it self, commodiously situate for the Command of all *Greece*, (had not the Inhabitants been more given to Merchandise than unto the Wars) as being seated on the bottom of the Neck or *Isthmus*, the *Ionian* Sea upon the West, and the *Aegean* on the East, walling the Walls thereof, and giving it on each side a Capacious Haven; in which regard it is called by *Horace* *bimaris Corinthus*. It is in compass about Eleven miles, for Strength impregnable, for Command as powerful, Maturing both Seas on which it stood, and cutting off all passage from one half of *Greece* to the other: to which last end the Castle called *Acrocorinthus*, looking into both Seas, served exceeding fully; and was therefore called one of the *Fetters of Greece*. The City is rich, very well Traded, and neatly built, most Houses beautified with handfom Pillars, from thence called *Corinthian*: more memorable for the Wealth of the People, and the convenience of the Situation, than for any notable Exploits had on the States of *Greece*. But in regard of the Wealth, Greatness, and Situation, accounted by the *Romans* one of the three Cities which they held capable of the Empire; *Carthage* and *Capua* being the other two. In this City lived the famous (or infamous) Whore *Thais*, who exacted 10000 *Drachma's* for a single night's Lodging; which made *Demoisthenes* cry out, *Non enim tanti parere*, and occasioned the old By-word.

Non cuius homini contingit adire Corinthum.

'Tis not for every man's avail

Unto *Corinth* for to Sail.

Near hereunto stood the *Acrocorinthus* Mountains, at the foot whereof the City, and on the top whereof the Castle called hence *Acrocorinthus*, were seated: out of which flowed the famous Fountain named *Pyrene*, of old consecrated to the Muses; by *Perseus* called *Fons Caballinus*, because feigned by the ancient Poets to have been made by the Horse *Pegasus* dashing his foot against the Rock. And on the other side hereof in the *Isthmus* were celebrated yearly the *Isthmian Games*; ordained by *Theseus* in honour of *Neptune*; in imitation of the *Olympick* devised by *Hercules* in honour of *Jupiter*. The Exercises were much the same, and the reward no other than a Garland of *Oaken Boughs*: yet they drew yearly a great resort of people to them; partly to exercise themselves and behold the Sports; and partly to sacrifice to *Neptune*, who had hard by a famous Temple.

As for the Fortunes of this City, it was at first called *Ephyra*, at that time a small and obscure place; but beautified and repaired by *Corinthus*, the Son of *Pelops*, it took the name of *Corinth*, governed by him and his posterity, till the coming of the *Heracleidae* into *Peloponnesus*: at what time one *Alæus* of the Race of *Hercules* possessed himself hereof, with the name of King, A. M. 2849. Twelve Princes of his Line enjoyed it for the space of 220 years and upwards: when the House failing in the person of *Autonoeus*, they were governed by temporary Officers, like the *Archontes* of *Athen*. Continuing under this Government 124 years, the City was seized on by one *Cypselus*, A. M. 3294, who left it to his Son *Periander*, one of the Seven wise men of *Greece*, counted a Tyrant in those

those times, for no other reason than that he had suppressed the Popular Government. After whose death, *Anno* 3364, the City did recover its former Liberty. In the Bustle between *Athens* and *Lacedæmon*, and other the Estates of *Greece*, for the Superiority, he did little meddle; the aim of this people being Wealth, not Honour; not interested in any Action of renown in all those times, but in the sending of *Timoleon* to the aid of the *Syracusans* against the Tyrant *Dionisius*, who did Lord it over them. It was subdued, together with the rest, by the Kings of *Macedon*, and with the rest restored to Liberty by the Power of *Rome*: under whom growing still more rich, and withal more insolent, they abused certain *Roman* Embassadors. But *triste* *populo Romano nemo sapienter potest*, as is said in *Lucius*, which the *Corinthians* found too true; the City being besieged, sacked, and burnt unto the Ground by *Lucius Mummius*, a *Roman* Consul, *Anno* U. C. 670. In the burning whereof, there were consumed so many goodly Statues of Gold, Silver, Brass, and other Metals, that, being melted into a Lump, they made up of that fatal chance the so much estimated Metal called *Æt Corinthium*, more highly prized in *Rome* than Gold or Silver. Repaired again, it was of great esteem in the time of the Emperours, converted by *St. Paul* to the Christian Faith; and having flourished a long time in Pride and Pleasures, decayed by little and little, till it came to nothing, and is now a small Burrough called *Crato*.

Having thus spoken of the several Estates of *Peloponnesus*, it resteth that we speak somewhat of the Estates of the whole, varied according to the Fortunes of those particular, which had most Influence on the same. The Affairs hereof were a long while swayed by the Kings of *Sicyon*, whence it had the name of *Sicyonia*, restrained afterwards to the Territories of that City only. But when the Kings of *Argos* came in place and power, it depended much upon their pleasures; from *Apis* the third King whereof, (if not rather from *Apis* the fourth King of *Sicyon*) in the opinion of some Writers, it was named *Apis*. But *Pelops* the Son of *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia*, coming into *Greece*, and marrying *Hippodamia*, Daughter of *Oenomaus* King of *Elis*, became the most powerful Prince of all this Peninsula, taking from him the name of *Peloponnesus*. The Kingdom of *Mycene*, growing into Power and Credit, had the next turn in swaying the affairs hereof for a certain season; as after that the *Dores* and *Heracleids*, possessed at once of *Argos*, *Sparta*, *Corinth*, and *Messene*. The *Spartans*, getting the Preeminence over all the rest, were the next who governed the Affairs of it, and they held it long, having first conquered *Laconia*, and subverted the Estate of *Messene*; by means whereof, and by their fortunate Success against the *Perians*, they became almost absolute in their Commands, without any Competitor. But their Power being broken by *Pelopidas* and *Epanimondas* in the *Theban* War, the petty States hereof began to take heart again, and stand upon their own Legs; as they did a while, till the Kings of *Macedon* succeeding *Alexander* the Great brought them once more under, and made them Fellow-servants with their *Spartan* Masters. In the Confusions which ensued in *Macedon* amongst the Competitors for that Kingdom, *Perseus* and *Dyme*, two Cities of *Achaia propria*, first united them in a strong League of Amity, at such time as *Phylarchus* first went into *Italy*: into which Confederacy the Cities of *Tricaria* and *Phere* shortly after came; and not long after that of *Argira*, and the rest of *Achaia propria*. Their Affairs were first governed by two Prætors with Advice of the Senate, as afterwards by one alone with the like Advice, of which *Marcus Ciceronius* was the first, and *Aratus* of *Sicyonia* the second. The ground thus laid, and the reputation of this new Commonwealth increasing

by the Vertue of *Aratus*, the *Epidaurians*, *Træzenians*, *Argives* and *Megarians* became Members of it, maintaining gallantly the Liberties of *Peloponnesus*, till finally mastered by the *Romans*. In the Division of whose Empire it fell, with all the rest of *Greece* to the *Constantinopolitans*, and in the declining of their Fortunes, when the *Latins* got possession of the Imperial City, most of the Sea-Coasts of it were allotted to the State of *Venice*; the Inland parts formerly parcelled out amongst many Princes whom they called *Despots*, continuing as before they were. By *Isabel*, a Daughter of one of those Despots, (and as it seems the chief amongst them) married to *Ferdinand*, Son of *James* the first, and Father of *James* the second King of *Majorca*, the Title of Prince of *Majorca* came into that House; used by them and the rest of these Petit Princes, till all together were made a Prey to the Turkish Tyrants, *Mahomet* the Great, and *Bajazet* the second, by whom they were wholly conquered. For howsoever *Thomas* and *Demetrius*, Brethren of that unfortunate Prince *Constantinus Palæologus*, had fled hither at the taking of *Constantinople*, were received and obeyed by those petty Princes: yet being unable to hold out against the Conquerour, they became his Tributaries. But their falling out amongst themselves, and neglecting then to send in the Tribute agreed upon, gave *Mahomet* the Great occasion to invade the Country, and under colour of aiding one Brother against the other, to destroy them both, as he did accordingly: *Demetrius* being carried Prisoner to *Constantinople*, and *Thomas* forced to abandon *Peloponnesus*, and fly to *Italy*, *An.* 1457. Such Turns hereof as belonged to the State of *Venice* followed the same Fortune also in the time of *Bajazet*, by whom they were all taken at the last, and the whole Country brought under his obedience, *Anno* 1500, or thereabouts. Governed ever since that time by a Turkish *Sancak*, under the *Beglarbey* of *Greece*, who hath his Residence at *Modon*, a Regiment of 1000 Horse to secure the Country, and 700000 Aspers (that is to say, 140000 Crowns) a year for his Entertainment.

2. ACHÆIA.

ACHÆIA is bounded on the East with the *Ægean* Sea, on the West with *Epirus*, on the North with *Thessaly*, on the South with *Peloponnesus* and the Seas thereof. Called anciently *Hellas* from *Hellas* the Son of *Dædonia*, but whence it had the name of *Achaia*, is not yet agreed on: though I am that from hence the inhabitants of it were called *Achæoi*, (a name communicated afterwards to all the *Grecians*) to differentiate them from the *Achæi* of *Achaia propria*.

The Country is famous in the Authors of the elder times, more for the Gallantry of the Men, than any great goodness of the Soil and place: yet that is sufficiently memorable for the Hill *Hymettus*, (swarming with Bees, plentiful of the sweetest Honey, and rich in Mines of excellent Marble; as also for the River *Cephissus*, which runneth almost through the whole length hereof; divided into two main Streams, of which the one is called *Alopus*, the other retaineth its first name. Upon the Banks hereof stood the Temple of *Themis*, to which *Dædonia* did repair to be directed in the Restauration of Mankind, as the Poets Fable.

It was divided anciently into these seven Parts; viz. 1. *Attica*, 2. *Megaris*, 3. *Bœotia*, 4. *Phocis*, 5. *Locris*, 6. *Doris*, and 7. *Ætolia*. A Division now as much diffused as the name of *Achaia*, changed by the *Timki* into that of *Lebodia*, of which more anon.

1. **ATTICA** hath on the West *Megaris* and some part

part of *Bœotia*, on all other parts compassed with the Sea: so called from *Athens*, the chief City. The Soil for the most part is very barren and craggy; yet by the Arms and Industry of the People made both rich and famous; inasmuch as the yearly Revenues of the State of *Athens* were 1200 Talents. The Money current in this Country was commonly stamped with an Ox, whence came the By-word *Bos in lingua*, applied to such Lawyers as were bribed to lay nothing in their Client's Cause. Not much unlike to which was the Proverb rising from the Coin of *Ægina* (an Isle adjoining) stamped with the figure of a Snail, viz. *Virtutum et Spentiam vincunt Tarditas*.

Places of most observation in it were, 1. *Phylæa*, a strong Fortrefs on the Borders of *Bœotia*, surprised by *Thraibulus* and others of the banished *Athenians*, during the Government of the thirty Tyrants: the taking whereof was the first step towards their own and their Country's Liberty, which soon after followed. 2. *Eleusis*, on the Borders of *Megaris*, almost impregnable fortified by the thirty Tyrants when they had the command of *Athens*, by whom it was designed for their Retreat in all times of Danger. But having withdrawn hither on the taking of *Phylæa* and *Piræus* by the *Thraibulians*, they found strong Walls a weak defence for so much Wickedness; being trained out as to a Parley, and so deprived of the Place and their Power together. It was first built by one *Eleusius*, who entertained *Ceres* as he was in Quest of her Daughter *Proserpina*; who, to reward him, taught him the use of Agriculture; and he in honour of her built here a Temple. Hence *Ceres* in the Poets is called *Eleusina*, and her Sacrifices *Sacra Eleusinia*; and sometimes the City also his *Metamorphosis*. 3. *Rhamnus*, upon the River *Alphus*, famous for the Temple of *Amphiarus*, and the Statue of the Goddess *Nemesis*, hence called *Rhamnusia* in the Poets: This *Nemesis*, or *Rhamnusia*, being the Goddess of Indignation, punished those who made themselves unworthy of their present Fortunes. 4. *Tricorinthus*, of more Antiquity than fame. 5. *Marathon*, on the South-side of the River *Alphus*, opposite to *Rhamnus*; of great note for the Discomfiture given by *Miltiades* the *Athenian* to the numerous Army of *Darius*, consisting of 200000 and 100000 Horse: the Emulation of which noble Victory started such brave Resolves in the breast of *Themistocles*. As memorable in the Poets of those elder times for the *Marathonian* Bull there slain by *Theseus*. 6. *Megara*, the ordinary Dwelling-place of *Theseus*, before he rested his Seat at *Athens*, it being at this Town that he restored *Helen* (whom he had before stolen from her own Country) to her two Brethren *Castor* and *Pollux*; of which both Rape and Restitution we find mention in *Ovid*, the one in the Epistle of *Oenone* to *Paris*, the other in that of *Hermione* to *Orestes*; in which last it is said expressly, *Reddita Megarâ Tyndaris urbe Soror*, that is to say, that she was delivered to her two Brethren (who had taken much pains in seeking for her) in the Town of *Megara*. 7. *Piræus*, the Port town to *Athens*, and the ordinary Station for their Shipping, the Haven hereof being capable of 400 Sail; distant from the City about two miles, but joined unto it by two long Walls reaching from the one to the other; for securing the conveyance of their Merchandise to and from the Sea. The Port it self was impregnable fortified by the Advice of *Themistocles*: But as these long Walls were broken down by the command of the *Spartans*, when the City of *Athens* was taken by them, so were the Fortifications of *Piræus* it self demolished by the command of *Sylla*, in his War against *Archimedes* King of *Pontus*, the better to keep under the *Athenians*. 8. *Panormus*, a Sea-town also, and of very

good Trade, but not of such importance as the other was. 9. *Athens*, one of the Eyes of *Greece*, and the chief of *Attica*, situate from the Sea two miles, as before was said; the Haven of *Piræus* serving it with all Commodities which came from other parts by shipping. First built by *Cecrops* the first King of it, by whom it was called *Cecropia*, *A.M.* 2409; repaired afterwards by *Theseus*, and furnished with good Laws by *Solon*; and finally thus named from *Athena*, (whom the *Greeks* called *Athene*) to whom they dedicated, and in whose Honour there were yearly kept some solemn Games, called *Panathenæa*. A City heretofore adorned with all those excellencies of Strength and Beauty which Art or Cost could add unto it. Renowned, as for many things, so for three especially: 1. For the inviolable Faith of the Citizens in all their Leagues, and most firm Affection to their Friends: so that *Fides Attica* grew in the end unto an Adage. 2. For the famous Scholars which here taught and flourished; this being so happy a Nursery of the choicest Wits, and so fitly seated for the Muses, that the very Native Wits, being in other Countries, could sensibly perceive some want of that natural Vigour which at home was resident in their Spirits. *Iâ ut corpora istius Gentis separata sint in alias Regionis, Ingenia vero solis Athenionum muris clausa esse existimes*, as *Valerius* hath it. Yea and, to say the truth, it was a most famous University, from whose great Cistern the Conduits-pipes of Learning were dispersed over all the World. Yet did not Learning so effeminate or soften the hearts of the People, but that 3. This one City yielded more famous Captains than any in the World besides, not excepting *Rome*; *Miltiades*, *Aristides*, *Themistocles*, *Cimon*, *Pericles*, *Alcibiades*, *Phocion*, and divers others of great name. Who though they were the men that both defended and enlarged this Commonwealth, yet were the people so ungrateful to them, or they so unfortunate in the end, that they either died abroad in Banishment, or by some violent death at home. *Themistocles*, the Champion of *Greece*, died an Exile in *Persia*, *Phocion* was slain by the people, *Demosthenes* made himself away by Poison, *Pericles* was many times endangered, *Theseus* their Founder first deposed, and then despitefully imprisoned, *Aristides*, *Alcibiades*, *Nicias*, &c. banished for ten years by the Ostracism; a form of Punishment, so called, because the name of the party banished was written on a Oyster-shell; and only used towards such who either began to grow too popular, or potent among the men of service. Which Device, allowable in a Democratic, where the over-much powerableness of one might hazard the Liberty of all, was exercised in spite often than for desert. A Country-fellow meeting by chance with *Aristides*, desired him to write *Aristides* in his shell: and fired had ever wronged him? he replied, *No, he was only sorry to hear folk call him a good man*. We find the like unfortunate end to most of the *Romans* so redoubted in War. *Corvulus* was exiled, *Camillus* confined to *Ardea*, *Scipio* murdered, with divers others; only because their Virtue had lifted them above the pitch of ordinary men. *Ventidius* was disgraced by *Antony*; *Agrippa* poisoned, with the privacy of *Dominian*; *Corbulo* murdered by the command of *Nero*: all able men, yet living in an Age wherein it was not lawful to be valiant. In latter times it so happened to *Gonfalo* the great Captain, who having conquered the Kingdom of *Naples*, driven the *French* beyond the Mountains, and brought all the Italian Potentates to stand at the *Spaniards* devotion, was by his Master called home, where he lived obscurely; though honoured after his decease with a solemn Funeral. Worse fared the *Gaels* and *Biron* in *France*; worse *Essex*, and *Dudley* of *Northumberland*, with us in *England*. Neither

will I omit William Duke of Suffolk, who having served 34 years in our Wars with France, and for 17 years together never coming home, at his return was quarrelled, and basely murdered. It were almost impious to be silent of Job, the bravest Soldier and most fortunate Leader that ever fought the Lord's Battels, and yet was killed at the horns of the Altar. Whether it be that such men be born under an unhappy Planet, or that Courtiers, and such as have best opportunity to endear men of War unto their Sovereigns, know not the way of commanding their great Delects; or that Envy, the common Foe to Virtue, be a hindrance to it; I am not able to determine. And yet it may be that Princes naturally are distrustful of men of action, and are not willing to make them greater whose name is great enough already. And it may be the fault is in the Soldiers themselves, by an unseasonable over-valuing of their own Performances, as if the Prince or State were not able to reward or prize them: which was the cause of the death of *Silius* in the time of *Tiberius*. Concerning which *Tacitus* giveth us this good note, That over-merit in great Subjects is exceeding dangerous, and begets Hate in stead of Favours. *Beneficia ob usque lata sunt, dum videntur exsolvi posse; ubi multum antecederent, pro gratia Odium redditur*, saith that wise Historian.

But to look back again on *Athen*: it was first built by *Cecrops* the first King thereof; governed by him and his Posterity with no lower Title for 400 years, as is apparent by this following Catalogue of

The Kings of *ATHENS*.

- A.M.*
2394 1. *Cecrops*, who first made *Jupiter* a God, and ordained Sacrifices to be offered to him, as *Pausanias* writeth.
2444 2. *Cranus*, oured of his Kingdom by
2453 3. *Amphizyon*, the Son of *Dendalion* and Uncle to that *Amphizyon* who first instituted the supreme Court of the *Amphizyones*, or Common-Council of all *Greece*.
2463 4. *Erichthonius*, the Son of *Vulcan*.
2513 5. *Pandion*, the Father of *Progne* and *Philomela*, so famous in the old Poets; of whom more hereafter.
2553 6. *Erichthonius*, whose Daughter *Oriechia* was ravished by *Borcas* King of *Thrace*.
2603 7. *Cecrops* II. Brother of *Erichthonius*.
2643 8. *Pandion* II. Son of *Erichthonius*.
2668 9. *Agess*, Son of *Pandion* the second, of whom the *Agess* Sea took name.
2706 10. *Theseus*, the Son of *Agess*, and Companion of *Hercules*, vanquished the *Minotaur* in *Crete*, collected the People of *Attica* into a body, and incorporated them into the City of *Athen*, which he had beautified and enlarged.
2746 11. *Admetheus*, the Son of *Petew*, Grand-child of *Erichthonius*, served with the other *Greek* Princes at the War of *Troy*.
2769 12. *Demophon*, the Son of *Theseus*, restored unto his Father's Throne on the death of *Admetheus*.
2802 13. *Oxyntes*, Son or Brother of *Demophon*.
2814 14. *Aphydas* Son of *Oxyntes*, slain by his Brother.
2815 15. *Thymades* the last of the Line of *Erichthonius*.
2823 16. *Melampus* of *Messene*, driven out of his own Kingdom by the *Heracleids*, obtained that of *Athen*.
2860 17. *Codrus*, the Son of *Melampus*, the last King

of *Athen*, who, in the Wars against the *Peloponnesians*, having Intelligence by an Oracle that his Enemies should have the Victory, if they did not kill the *Athenian* King, attired himself like a common Beggar, entered the *Peloponnesian* Camp, and there played *Jack Pranks*, that at the last they were faine to kill him. When which the Enemy understood, they thought themselves by this means deprived of all hopes of Success, and so broke up their Army, and departed homewards. For this the People of *Athen*, did so honour his memory, that they thought no man worthy to succeed as King, and therefore committed the managing of the Estate to Governors for term of Life, whom they called *Archontes*: the first *Archon* being *Medon*, the Son of *Codrus*. They differed not from the former Kings in point of Power, but only in the manner of their Admission: the former Kings claiming the Government by Succession in right of Blood; and these *Archontes* holding by Election only; whose names here follow in this List of

The perpetual *Archontes* in the State of *ATHENS*.

- A.M.*
2882 1. *Medon*, the Son of *Codrus*.
2902 2. *Acastus*, the Son of *Medon*.
2938 3. *Archippus*, the Son of *Acastus*.
2957 4. *Thersippus*, the Son of *Archippus*.
2993 5. *Phorbas*, the Son of *Thersippus*.
3029 6. *Megacles*, the Son of *Phorbas*.
3059 7. *Diogenetus*, the Son of *Megacles*.
3087 8. *Pherculus*, the Son of *Diogenetus*.
3106 9. *Aritihon*, the Son of *Pherculus*.
3126 10. *Thespius*; in whose time began the Kingdom of *Macedon*.
3153 11. *Agamemnor*.
3173 12. *Achylus*, the Son of *Agamemnor*. After whose death, *Anno Mundi* 3195, the *Athenians*, weary of these Governors for term of Life, as being less obnoxious to the Check and Censure of the People, chose themselves Officers or *Archontes* for ten years only: at the end of which time they were to yield up their places, and make room for others. But being a People greedy of Novelty and desirous of Change, they had only seven of those Decennial *Archontes*; their Officers from that time forwards being chosen annually: which Officers, being nine in number, we may call most properly the Provost, the chief Bishop, the Marshal, and the six chief Justices, all chosen out of the Nobility. And so it held for the space of 170 years, till the time of *Solon*; who was the first which put the Supreme Authority into the hands of the People; and gave the first hint unto that Democracy which afterwards prevailed in *Athen* by the help of *Pericles*, who, being one of the great Council of the *Areopagites*, took from them a great part of their Power in deciding Controversies and Suits in Law, putting them over to the Judgment of the Common people. A Government so dearly loved by the *Athenians*, that in all the Cities which they conquered, or restored to Liberty, or won to their Party from the *Spartans*, they caused it to be admitted: as on the other side the *Spartans* introduced and confirmed an Aristocracy (their own beloved Government) in all the places where they prospered. As for the Court of the *Areopagites*, of much fame in *Athen*, it consisted from the first beginning in the last branch of *Agamemnor*, of such as had born some of the nine chief Offices; who, being once admitted, held for term of Life. First instituted in the time of *Demophon*, the Son of *Theseus*, and called by the name of *Areopagites*, either for that they held their Court in the Street of *Mars*, in *Athen*, mentioned *Act* 17. 22. or because *Mars* being

being accused for a Murder, did first plead before them. A Court which held in estimation under all these Changes, and so continued till the time of the *Roman* Empire.

But to return again to the Story of *Athen*. In or about the latter end of the life of *Solon*, *Pisistratus* altered the Free State and made himself the absolute Master of the City: but he once dead, the People regained their Liberty, driving thence *Hippias* the Son of *Pisistratus*; who hereupon fled for Succour to *Darius* the *Perfian* Monarch, occasioning by that means the first coming of the *Perfians* into *Greece*. What success the *Perfians* had in *Greece* the Histories of those Times abundantly inform us: *Darius* being vanquished by *Miltiades* at *Marathon*, and *Xerxes* by *Themistocles* at *Salamis*. Yet did not *Athen* escape so clear but that it was taken by *Xerxes*, though indeed first abandoned and voluntarily dismantled by the *Athenians*. When the *Perfians* were retired homewards, the People of *Athen* re-edified their Town, and strongly fortified it with high and defensible Walls: which done they put their Fleet to Sea, and spoiled the Coasts of *Perfia* in all quarters, enriching their City with the Spoils, and enlarging their Power and Dominion by the addition of many Islands and Sea-Towns. Hereby they grew unto that Wealth and Potency, that they were suspected by their weaker Neighbours, and envied by their stronger, the *Lacedaemonians* especially; who, fearing to lose their ancient Priority over *Greece*, but pretending the Surprisal of *Potidea*, a City of *Thrace*, from the *Corinthians*, and some hard measure by them shewed upon the *Megarenses*, made War upon them. In the beginning of this War the *Athenians* not only resisted the whole Power of all *Greece* confederate against them, but so exceedingly prospered, that the *Spartans* fled for Peace, and could not get it. But the Scales of Fortune turned. For after they had held out 28 years, they were compelled to pluck down the Walls of their City, and submit themselves to the will and pleasure of the *Spartans*, now by the puillance and good fortune of *Lysander* become their Masters: by whom the Government was changed, and an Aristocracy (or rather Oligarchy) established under 30 Magistrates, known commonly by the name of the 30 *Tyrants*; expelled not long after by the Valour of *Thrasybulus* and his Associates, as hath been touched upon before. Not long after the end of this War, which the Historians call *Bellum Peloponnesiacum*, the *Perfians*, seeing how the *Spartans* not having now the State of *Athen* to oppose them, began to work upon their Empire furnished *Comon*, a noble *Athenian* Gentleman with a Navy so well provided, that he overcame the *Lacedaemonians* in a Fight at Sea, and thereby put his Country-men into good heart, that they made a party in the War called *Bellum Sacrum*; composed at the last by *Philip* of *Macedon*, who brought not only the *Thebans*, whom he came to aid, but the *Athenians*, *Spartans*, and the rest of the adverse party, under his Command. A Servitude from which they were never freed, till as well *Macedon* as the rest became Fellow-Servants unto *Rome*. But though this brave City had then lost her power in point of Arms, yet she still kept her credit as an University in point of Arts, *Origen*, *Chrysostom*, *Basil*, and *Gregory Nyssa*, men of Renown and Eminence in the Primitive times, are said to have studied at *Athen*: the like is affirmed of *Pope Joan*, if the Tale be true, for the middle Ages. And so it held, as I conjecture, though not so eminently as before, till the year 1440, when taken by *Mahomet* the Great, who wondered much (as my Author telleth) at the Extrem Beauty of the Castle, and the strength of the Walls, not having lost in so long time their former Excellencies. Since that it is sensibly de-

cayed, and is now an ordinary Burrough, (by the Turks called *Serius*) but still preserveth the Reputation of an Episcopall See, the Bishop of it holding up the Title of *Atheniensis*.

2. *MEGARIS* is bounded on the East with *Attica*, on the West with the Bay of *Corinth* on the North with *Boeotia*, and on the South with the *Isthmus* and the Gulf of *Engia*: So called from *Megara*, the chief City.

This is the least Province of all *Greece*, and not very fruitful (the Country for the most part being hard and rocky) not beautified with many Cities. The principal Bay of those which were are, 1. *Pegae*, or *Pagae*, situate on the Bay of *Corinth* and spoken of both by *Pliny* and *Strabo*; but not otherwise memorable. 2. *Megara*, (now *Megara*) first built by *Megareus*, the Son of *Apollo*, and from him thus named. Remarkable in former times for a Sect of Philosophers, called from hence *Secta Megarica*, founded by one *Eucleide*, a Disciple of *Socrates*; of whom see *Laertius*. More memorable in the Poets for *Nisus*, once the King of this little Territory on whose Head there is said to have grown a purple Hair, on which the preservation of his Life and Kingdom did depend: Which Jewell his Daughter *Scylla* is said to have delivered unto King *Minos*, her Father's Enemy, of whom, then belising this City, upon the sight of him from an high Tower, he became enamoured; But he rejecting her and her Present both, after the taking of the City returned into *Crete*: which the unhappy Woman seeing, she threw her self after him into the Sea, and was turned into the Bird called *Ciris*. I leave the moralizing of the Fable unto the of that politic practice, to love the Treason, and hate the Traitor. For the glory of this City did not end with *Nisus*. For, shaking off the *Cretan* Yoke, it became *Nisus* once again, and being conveniently seated on the very *Isthmus*, amounted to that height of Prosperity, that they contended with the *Athenians* for the Island of *Salamis*. And in this War they so crushed the power and spirit of *Athen* by one fatal Overthrow, that the *Athenians*, to prevent all the like Disasters, did ordain by Law, that whosoever mentioned the Recovery of *Salamis* was to lose his Life: so that *Solon* was compelled to feign himself frantic, the better, to propound the Enterprize. In which although the State of *Athen* got the life of *Salamis*, yet did the *Megarenses* continue a Free people, till brought under (with the rest) by the *Macedonians*, and with them made Subject unto *Rome*.

3. *BOEOTIA* is bounded on the South with *Agariss* and the Bay of *Corinth*, on the North with the River *Cephissus*, on the East with *Attica* and a Branch of the *Agass* Sea, and on the West with *Phocis*. Thus named from *Boe*, which in *Greek* signifieth an Ox; because when *Cadmus*, weary of seeking his Sister *Europa*, (whom *Jupiter* had stolen out of *Phoenicia*) came to the Oracle of *Delphos*, he was commanded to follow the first Ox he saw, and where the Ox did rest it self there to build a City.

In the Country is nothing singular, but an ancient Custom of burning before the Door of an House in which a new-married Wife was designed to dwell, the Axle-tree of the Coach which brought her thither; giving her by that Ceremony to understand, (as *Plutarch* telleth us in his *Morals*) that she must frame her self to live and abide with him, without hope of departure. In this Country also are the Streights of the Mountain *Oeta*, from the neighbouring Baths called *Thermopylae*, not above 25 foot in breadth; which in the War that *Xerxes* made against

the *Greeks* were valiantly defended by *Leonidas* King of *Sparta* with no more than 300 of his men, who, having valiantly resisted that Army which in his passage out of *Perfus* had drank Rivers dry, and slain at least 30000 of them, died every man upon the place. To hide the greatness of which loss, left it should terrify the rest of his Army which were coming on, *Xerxes* commanded all the slain men to be buried in several Pits, except a thousand; as if no more than they had been lost in that passage.

Places of most observation in it are, 1. *Thespiæ*, on a River of the same name, at the Fall wherof into the Bay it is pleasantly seated, shadowed on the North with a Branch of the Mountain *Helicon*, and consecrated, as that was, unto the *Muses*, hence called *Tespiades* in the Poets. 2. *Platææ*; nigh to which *Mardonius*, General to the *Perfians*, was overcome by the *Greeks*, with the loss of *Mardonius* himself and 160000 men on the *Perfian* side; and on the other no more than 31 *Spartans*, 16 *Arceadians*, 52 *Athenians*, and about 600 of the *Megarenses*. In memory of which brave exploit, and to preserve the names and honour of those Worthies who there laid down their Lives for the Liberty of *Greece*, there was a Festival kept annually by the *Platæans* in the month of *September*, with solemn Sacrifices, and a kind of divine acknowledgment unto the deceased, continued from the time of *Aristides* the *Athenian*, who first ordained them, to the days of *Plutarch*, who records it; but how long after I am not able to say. In this great Fight the commander in chief was a noble *Spartan*, called *Pausanias*, who, afterwards having a Design to make himself Sovereign of all *Greece*, and being discovered in the Practice, fled for Sanctuary to the Temple of *Pallas*. From whence because it was counted Sacrilegious to constrain him by violence, it was unanimously resolved to wall up the Entrance his own Mother laying the first Stone. It is recorded that before the fighting of this Battle, the *Athenians* had been told by the Oracle that they should be Conquerors, if they fought upon their own ground: whereupon the *Platæans*, within whose Territories the *Perfians* had prepared to fight, bestowed that Field on the State of *Athens*. In requital of which noble act, *Alexander* the Great re-edified and enlarged their City, having been first burnt and sacked by the *Perfians*, and after levelled with the ground by the *Lacedæmonians*, because confederate with *Athens* in the War against them. 3. *Leuctra*; remarkable for the great Overthrow which the *Thebans*, under the Conduct of *Epaninondas*, gave unto the *Spartans* and their King *Cleombrotus*, who was there slain: by which Victory they did not only preserve their own Liberty, but brought their Enemies to that fall of Courage and Reputation, that they could never rise again: the divine Vengeance overtaking them in that very place where some of their Nation had deliv'ed the Daughters of *Scædæus*, who had given them courteous Entertainment. For which when no Reparation could be had from the State of *Sparta*, the unfortunate *Damocles* slew themselves, to avoid the infamy of consenting to their own Dishonour, and were buried in those very Fields where this Battle was fought. 4. *Alivæa*, the Birth-place of *Hesiod*, a man (according to *Paterculus*) *elegantis ingenii*, & *carminum dulcedine memorabilis*: though it hath pleased that proud Critick, *Julius Scaliger*, intending to deifie *Virgil*, to prefer the worst Verse in the *Georgicks* of the one before the whole Works of the other. 5. *Labadaia*, near the River *Cephissus*, the Inhabitants whereof were counted the most superstitious of all the *Grecians*: memorable for the *Trochian* Den or Cave, and the Oracle there given by *Jupiter*, hence called *Trochianus*: into which Cave none were permitted to enter and receive the Oracle, but af-

ter many Ointings, Wallings, and the like Superstitious preparations, too long and many to be specified in this place and time. A Town which still preserves so much of its ancient Estimation, that from hence (as I conjecture) the whole Country of *Acchia* hath the name of *Liavidia*, by which the *Turks* call it at this present. 6. *Cheronæ*, or *Cheronia*, the Birth-place of *Plutarch*; near unto which was fought that memorable Battle between *L. Sylla* and the *Romans* against *Archelaus*, one of the Lieutenants of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, leading an Army of 120000 Soldiers, of which 10000 only escaped with Life, the *Romans* losing but 14. 7. *Orchomenus*, no less memorable for another Victory, obtained by the same *L. Sylla* against *Dorilaus*, another of that King's Commanders, having an Army of 80000 men, of which 20000 lost their lives that day. After which Victories, when *Sylla* might easily have destroyed that King, he suddenly patched a Peace up with him, that he might hasten unto *Rome*, where *Marius* and *Cinna* had trodden his Faction under foot; preferring by that act the pursuit of his own private Quarrels before that of his Country, endangered more by *Mithridates* after his return, than it had been formerly. 8. *Aulis*, a Port-Town on the Shores of the *Ægean* Sea, where the *Grecians* took shipping when they went to the War of *Troy*; here making Oath never to give over the Enterprize until they had destroyed that City. Concerning which thus lies in *Virgil*.

Non ego cum Danais Trojanam excindere Gentem
Aulide juravi.

That is to say,

I took no Oath at *Aulis*, to destroy,

As did the *Greeks* the Town and State of *Troy*.

But the chief of this Country, and such as had a special Influence over all the rest, was the City of *Thebes*, situate on the Banks of the River *Cephissus*, where it was built by *Cadmus* the *Phœnician*, after all his wanderings. Famous in old times for the Wars between *Eteocles* and *Polynices*, the Sons of the unfortunate Prince *Oedipus*, and of his Mother and Wife *Jocasta*. The History of which War is the most ancient piece of Story that we find of all *Greece*; the former times and Writings containing nothing but Fables, little favouring of Humanity, and less of Truth; as of men changed into Monsters, the Adventures of the Gods, and the like. In this Town lived *Pelopidas* and *Epaninondas*, who so crushed the *Lacedæmonians* at the Battels of *Leuctria* and *Mantineæ*, that they could never after re-obtain their former Puffiance. This Commonwealth long flourished, and at last, being over-burthened in the *Phœbian* War, was glad to submit it self to the Protection of the *Macedonians*, under the leading of King *Philip*; who by this means first got footing in *Greece*, into which afterwards he thrust his whole body.

Upon the death of *Philip*, *Thebes* revolted from the *Macedonians*, but *Alexander* his Successor quickly recovered it: and to dishearten the *Thebes* in the like Attempts, he raised the City, selling all the Inhabitants of age and strength; only *Tindarus*'s house he commanded to be left standing in honour of that learned Poet. At the Sack of this Town, one of the *Macedonian* Soldiers entered the house of a principal Woman, named *Timochea*, ravished her, and rifled her Coffers, but still demanding more Treasure, he shewed him a deep Well, saying that there all her Money was hidden. The credulous *Villain* then stooping down to behold his Prey, he tumbled him into the Well, and overwhelmed him with Stones. For which noble act the generous Prince not only dismissed her unharmed, but most highly commended her. It was after re-edified by *Cassander*, and followed for the most part, as the rest of the *Boeotians* did, the Fortunes of *Macedon*.

is reduced at this time to the state of an ordinary Burrough, and called *Stibes* by the *Turks*.

4. *PHOCIS* is bounded on the East with *Boeotia*, on the West with *Doris* and *Locris*, on the North with *River Cephissus*, and on the South with the Bay of *Corinth*. A Country somewhat swelled with Mountains, but those of eminent note in the elder times. The chief whereof are 1. *Helicon*, 2. *Citharon* both consecrated height and bigness. 3. *Parnassus*, of so great an height, that in that great Deluge in which most of these parts of *Greece* were overwhelmed with the Waters, *Dædalus* and *Pyrhus* saved themselves and many others on the Top hereof: for which, and for its two Summits reaching to the Clouds, it is of great renown amongst the Poets; as in *Ovid*,

Mons ibi verticibus petis arduus Astra duobus,
Nomine Parnallus, superbaque cacumine Nubes.
Parnassus there with his two Tops extends

To the touch Stars, and all the Clouds transcends. Places of most observation in it are, 1. *Anticyra*, situate near the Sea, and famous for the *Hellesborum* there growing, an Herb very medicinal for the Phrenesies, whence the Proverb, *Naviget Anticyram*, applied to mad-men. 2. *Pytho*, or *Pythia*, laid to be seated not only in the middle of *Greece*, but of all the World: *Strabo* relating how *Pythia*, desirous to know the exact middle of the Earth, let loose two Eagles, one from the East, and the other from the West, which flying with an equal Wing, (so we must conceive) and meeting at this very place, shewed it apparently to be the Navel of the World. By reason of which convenient situation in the Heart of *Greece*, it was made a Sessions-Town for all the *Grecians* and honoured with the Court and general Assembly of the *Amphibolians*; men chosen out of the prime Cities of *Greece*, who had power to decide all Controversies, and to make Laws for the common good. A Court first instituted by *Aerilus*, as *Strabo* telleth us: or, as *Halicarneassus* more probably, by *Amphibolus* the Son of *Hætes*, from whom they seem to have their name. The Commissioners from the several Cities, with reference to the places for which they served, had the name of *Phylagoras*; when assembled, they were called the *Amphibolians*: their Meetings were stances concerning their Authority will not be amiss. In the time of *Cimon*, the *Cirrhæans*, having by Piracy wronged the *Thebians*, were fined by this Council; and after that the *Lacedæmonians*, for surprizing *Acadæa*. And the *Phocians*, for plunging up the Land of *Cirra*, which belonged to the Temple of *Delphos*, were by them amerced: and because they continued obdurate, and paid not their Amercements, their Dominions were adjudged to Decree also, to that Temple. But they, disobeying this being proclaimed against them by the rest of the *Grecians*, who by the Assistance of *Philip* King of *Macedon* brought them to Obedience, the Council was again assembled; in which it was decreed that the *Phocians* should raze the Walls of their Cities, that they should no more keep Horse and Arms, till they had satisfied the Treasury of the Temple, nor any longer have a vote in the loose Conventions. It was also then enacted, King *Philip* and his Successors, Kings of *Macedon*, in whom they also did confer the perpetual Friendship, and made them Princes of that Senate. A Court to which the *Sanhedrin* of the seventy Elders amongst the *Jews*, and, in our times, the *Diets* of the Empire, and the Af-

fembles of the *Switzers*, carry most resemblance. 3. *Cirrhæa*, on the Sea-side, the Port-town to *Delphos*. 4. *Crisis*, or *Æneus*, situate on the edge of the Bay of *Corinth*, called sometimes from hence *Crisseus Sinus*. 5. *Scarpia*, memorable for the Defeat of *Critolaus*, Captain of the *Achaean* Army, by *Metellus* one of the *Roman* Prætors: the Loss of which Battle drew after it the Destruction of *Corinth*. It was observed in the success of this great Fight, that a Band of *Arceadians*, elcaping out of the Battle, came unto 6. *Elateæ*, another City of this Province, and were there kindly entertained on memory of some former Alliances, till news came of the Overthrow of *Critolaus*; when they were ordered by the State of *Phocis* to relinquish the Town, (for Adversity seldom meeteth with returns of Friendship.) They were first set upon and all slain by the *Romans* in the self-same place in which their Ancestors had unworthily forsaken the rest of the *Grecians* in their War against *Philip* King of *Macedon*, for the publick Liberty. 7. *Daulis*, a City appertaining to *Tercus* King of *Thrace*, who, having married *Progne*, the Daughter of *Pandion* King of *Athens*, ravished her sister *Philomela*, and cut out her Tongue, the better to keep his Villany undiscovered. But *Progne* being made acquainted with the double injury, first made him ignorantly kill his own Son *Itys*, whom she had baked in a Pie; and after killed him with the help of her ravished Sister. 8. *Delphos*, renowned in old times for the famous Temple of *Apollo*, in which, with that of *Jupiter Hamon* in *Marmarica*, (now reckoned as a part of *Egypt*) were the most famous Oracles of the ancient Gentiles; dark Riddles of the Devil, couched and contrived with so much Cunning, that the meaning of them was most hidden, when it was thought most ealie to be discerned. An Instance of which is that given to *Cresus*, in the War by him projected against the *Perfians*, which was thus delivered;

Cresus Haly penetrans magnam subvertet opem ius.
When *Cresus* over *Helys* goes.

A mighty Nation he o'erthrowes.

Which he interpreting according to his own hopes, crossed the River, was vanquished by *Cyrus* King of *Perfus* and his Kingdom conquered. The like we find of *Pyrhus* King of *Epirus*, who, before he made War against the *Romans*, consulted with the Oracle, and received this Answer;

Aio re, Æacida, Romanos vincere posse.

Which doubtful Prediction he thus construed, *Te posse vincere Romanos*, That he should overcome the *Romans*; but found it unto his cost that the meaning was, *Romanibus posse vincere re*, That the *Romans* should overcome the same Falacy. By another kind of the same Falacy, the Logicians call *Amphibolia*, did this great Enemy of mankind overthrow another, who, demanding of the Oracle what Success he should have in an Expedition which he was in hand with, received his Answer in these words,

His redibis nunquam per bella peribis.

Which he thus pointing, *his redibis, nunquam per*, &c. engaged himself in the War, and was therein slain. Whereupon his Followers, canvassing the Oracle, found the meaning of it to be this, *His redibis nunquam per*, &c. The like Juggling he also used in those supernatural Dreams which Philosophers call *ſomnoscopia*. For *Cæsar*, dreaming that he carnally knew his own Mother the night before he passed over the *Rubicon*, became Lord of *Rome*, the common Mother of the *Romans*: and *Hippias*, the Son of *Pisistratus* the Tyrant of *Athens*, having upon the same projects the same Dream, was killed and buried in the Bowels of his Mother the Earth. So that had *Cæsar* miscarried in his action, and *Hippias* thrived, yet still

had the Devil been reputed his Crafts-master, and the Father of Truths. But as the Ecclesiastical History telleth us, that *Julian* the *Apostate*, consulting with the Devil, was told that he could receive no Answer: because that the Body of *Babylon* the Martyr was entombed nigh his Altar: so neither could the Devils deceive the World, as formerly they had done, after *Christ*, the Truth it self, was manifested in the Flesh, and tormented these unclean Spirits, though, as they alleged, before their time. *Augustinus*, as *Suidas* telleth us, in whose time our Saviour was born, consulting with the Oracle about his Successor, received this not satisfying Answer:

Πῶς
Ἐρεῖς ὁ κληρὸς μὲν, δεξιὲς μαντεύσων ἀνέσται,
Τὸν δὲ θυμὸν περὶ τῶν, ὅς ἐστιν αὐτοῖς ἰσχυρὸς.
Λογὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐν αὐτῷ θεοῦ ἔσται.
 An Hebrew Child, whom the blest Gods adore;
 Hath bid me leave these Shrines, and pack to Hell;
 So that of Oracles I can no more.
 In silence leave our Altar and farewell.

Whereupon *Augustus*, coming home, in the Capitol erected an Altar, and thereupon in Capital Letters caused this Inscription to be engraven, *HÆC EST ARA PRIMOGENITI DEI*. Now as the Devils had by *Christ*'s Birth lost much of their wonted Virtue, so after his Passion they lost it almost together. Concerning which *Plutarch*, in a Tract of his Morals called *τὸ ἀκατακτάμενον γενέσθαι, Why Oracles cease to give Answers*, telleth us a notable Story, which was this. Some Company, going out of *Greece* into *Italy*, were about the *Echinades* be calmed, when on a sudden there was heard a voice loudly calling on one *Thamus*, an *Egyptian* then in the Ship. At the two first calls he made no answer, but to the third he replied, saying, *Here I am*. And the Voice again spake unto him, bidding him, when he came to the *Palodes*, to make it known that the great God *Pan* was dead. When they came unto the *Palodes*, which are certain Shelves and Rocks in the *Ionian* Sea, *Thamus*, standing on the Poop of the Ship, did as the Voice directed him: whereupon was heard a mighty Noise of many together, who all seemed to groan and lament with terrible and hideous shriekings. News hereof coming to *Tiberius*, he caused the learned men in his Empire to enquire out of their Books who that *Pan* should be: by whom it was answered, that he was the Son of *Mercury* and *Penelope*, with Ignorance enough, and little satis faction to the business propounded to them. Such therefore as more narrowly observed the Circumstances of this accident found it to happen at the time when our Saviour suffered on the Cross; who was indeed the true God *Pan*, the chief Shepherd and Bishop of our Souls, as the Scripture calleth him: and that, upon this divulging of his Death and Passion, the Devils, who used to speak in Oracles, did with great Grief and Lamentation forsake that Office, which had been so gainful to them in seducing Mankind. That all Oracles at that instant ceased, I dare not say; though it be certain that about that time they began to fail: it being said by *Juvenal*, who lived in the Reign of *Domitian*, *Dolphis Oracula cessant*, that the Oracle of *Delphos* was then silent; the rest decaying sensibly in a short time after.

But to proceed. The Temple of *Apollo* being spoiled by the *Phocians*, as before was noted, caused the War betwixt them and the *Thebans*, called the *Holy War*: in which the *Thebans*, being likely to have the worst, sent for *Philip* of *Macedon*, who made an end of the Quarrel by subduing both. The Treasure which the *Phocians* found in the Temple was reckoned at 60 Talents of Gold; but it proved *Aurum Toluatum*, and brought a sudden Ruine on their State and Nation: Sacrilege being so unpardonable a Crime, even amongst the Heathen, that the

fault of some few, countenanced by the rest of a people, hath brought Destruction on them all. It was afterwards with the like ill fortune ransacked by *Brennus* and his *Gauls*, in the wain of the *Macedonian* Empire all of them miserably perishing who had any hand in it.

5. *LOCRI* is bounded on the West with *Phocis* and a Branch of the *Aegean* Sea, on the West with *Ætolia*, on the North with the long Ridge of Hills which part it from *Thessaly*, and on the South with parts of *Acchaia*, *Boeotia*, *Phocis*, the Bay of *Corinth*, the Straights of *Antirrhium*, and a part of the *Ionian* Sea. So that for largeness of Extent, and the commodiousness of the Seas, it yieldeth to no Province in *Acchaia*, though not so fruitful as some others. Divided into the three Nations, of the *Loeri Ozolæ*, lying towards the South, on both sides of the Straights, so called from some ill Smells of the Country or people; 2. the *Epimenidiæ*, inhabiting the middle parts, so named from *Mount Cnemis*, not far from *Paranassus*; and 3. the *Opuntii*, so called from *Opus* their chief City, lying on the North-side of the River *Cephissus*, on the Coasts of the *Aegean* or *Eubæan* Seas.

Chief Cities of the whole, 1. *Opus*, the Head-City of the *Opuntians*, situate on the River *Asopius*, being one of the main Branches of *Cephissus*. 2. *Cynus*, the Port-Town to *Opus*. 3. *Thronium*, the prime Town of the *Epimenidiæ*, mentioned by *Polybius*, *Leontis*, *Ptolemy*, 4. *Cymide*, at the foot of *Mount Cnemis*, whence they had their name. 5. *Amphissa*, the chief City of the *Ozolæ*, situate in the inland parts of it: the People whereof, refusing to yield to the Sentence of the *Amphityeons* against their Confederates the *Phocians*, were the cause that *Philip* of *Macedon* returned into *Greece*. Against whom, grievously insulting the *Boeotians*, and manifestly aspiring to the Command of *Greece*, the *Athenians* desperately opposed, not so much with possibility of prevailing, as being urged on by the sharp and biting Orations of *Demosthenes* made against his Proceedings; which being by him called *Philippicæ*, occasioned *Tully* to call his bitter invectives against *M. Antonius* by the same name also. But the Success hereof was such as commonly attendeth a broken Fortune: The *Athenians* being vanquished at *Chæronea*, and *Philip* declared Captain of *Greece* against the *Persians*, obtained under that Title the Command he fought. 6. *Eumantia*, as *Ptolemy*, *Oeantia*, as *Pliny* and *Paulinus* call it; opposite to *Ægira* in *Acchaia Propria*. 7. *Molyeria*, by *Ptolemy* placed here, and by others reckoned in *Ætolia*: not far from whence is the Promontory of *Amirrhium*, so called because just opposite to that of *Rhium* in *Acchaia propria*, between which runneth a narrow Straight, (not so wide as the *Hellefoss*) which openeth into the Bay of *Corinth*: each Promontory being for that cause fortified by *Bajazet* the second with a very strong Castle; that on this side being gallantly defended by the *Turks*, when besieged by *Doria*, Anno 1532; for being forced with great Slaughter into a strong Tower which commanded the Castle, they rather chose to blow it up, together with the Ammunition, Victuals, and themselves to boot, than that the Fort should come entire into the hands of the Enemy. Some place this Promontory in *Ætolia* also; but, following the authority of *Ptolemy*, I have placed it here. 8. *Nauclitus*, so called from the building of Ships there by the *Heracleidæ*; situate on the *Corinthian* Bay, near the Mouth thereof. Given by the *Citizens* of *Athens* to the poor *Messenians*, when, after the end of the third War, the *Lacedæmonians*, unwilling to have them trouble some Neighbours, (and they scorned to be quiet Slaves) compelled them to seek new Habitations. It hath of late been called *Lepanto*, giving the name of the Gulf of *Lepanto* to the Bay of *Corinth*; by that

that name subject for a while to the *Venetians*, and from them taken by the *Turks*, Anno 1499. Of these *Loerians* those of *Italy* were a branch or Colony, whose Law-giver was *Zaleucus*, spoken of elsewhere.

6. *DORIS* is bounded on the East with *Phocis*, on the West with *Ætolia*, on the North with the Hill *Oeta*, and other Mountains which divide it from *Thessaly*, and on the South with *Ætolia* and part of *Loeris*. The Air here is very healthy, and the Soil sufficiently fruitful, if well manured; but now the greatest part lieth waste for want of Tillage. First peopled by the *Dæres* or *Dorians*, descended from *Dorus* the Son of *Heleus*, and Grandchild of *Demolion*, by whom they were placed in *Thessaly*, afterwards spreading into this Country, which they left their name to, as their proper Dwelling: though many of them, following the *Heracleidæ* into *Peloponnesus*, possessed themselves of the greatest part of *Laconia* also; imprinting on the same their Dialect or form of Speech, from which they called the *Doric*.

Chief Cities hereof are, 1. *Doris*, so called in memory of *Dorus*, the first Progenitor of this People. 2. *Erimus*, seated at the Foot of *Paranassus*, mentioned by *Thucydides*, *Sirabo*, *Mela*, *Ptolemy*, and the rest of the Ancients. 3. *Bium*, as *Ptolemy*; or *Bolion*, as *Sirabo* and *Pliny* call it. 4. *Cyminum*, near *Paranassus* also, in the common Impressions of *Didorus Siculus* the Historian fallily called *Cymbinium*. 5. *Lilæa*, situate not far from the Spring or Fountain of the River *Cephissus*; which, rising hereabouts, passeth through the whole length of *Acchaia*, and falls into the *Aegean* or *Eubæan* Sea.

7. *ÆTOLIA* hath on the East *Loeris*, on the West *Epirus*, on the North *Doris*, on the South the *Ionian* Sea, said to be so called from *Ætolus*, the Son of *Mars*, who, being by *Salmones* cast out of *Elis*, fixed himself in this Country.

Here is the Forest of *Calydon*, where *Melæager* and the Flower of the *Greek* Nobility slew the wild Boar. Here is the River *Euenus*, over which the Centaur *Nessus* having carried *Dejanira*, Wife of *Hercules*, and intending to have ravished her, was slain by an Arrow which *Hercules* on the other side of the River shot at him. Here also is the River of *Æchelous*, of whom the Poets fable many things: as that being Rival with *Hercules* in the love of *Dejanira*, he encountered him in the shape of a Bull; and that when *Hercules* had pluck'd off one of his Horns, the Nymphs made of it their so-much-celebrated *Corneia*.

The people of this Country were the most turbulent and unruly people of all *Greece*, never at Peace with their Neighbours, and seldom with themselves. The *Macedonians* could never tame them, by reason of the Craginess of the Country: yet they brought them to such terms, that they were compelled to let the *Romans* into *Greece*, who quickly made an end of all.

Principal Towns hereof were, 1. *Chalcis*, situate near the Spring-head of *Æchelous* before mentioned. 2. *Ærachthus*, near the River so called; which, arising hereabouts, passeth into *Epirus*, and falleth into the Bay of *Ambracia*, not far from *Nicopolis*. 3. *Olenus*, not far from the Forest of *Calydon*. 4. *Pleurome*, giving name to the adjoining Country, called hence *Pleuromia*, the People whereof had the name of *Curetes* and *Ægeades* from their dancing, it being their custom to shave the fore-parts of their Heads, and let the Hair grow on the hinder-parts only: *sed Hofes eos casare apprehenderent*, because their Enemies should not lay hold on them by the Fore-tops, and so pull them down. 5. *Thermis* the Parliament-City, or place of general Assembly, for all the States of

Ætolia: which Meeting was called *Panætolium*. It was chosen for those Meetings in regard of the situation and strength thereof, as being situate well-near in the midst of the Country, environed with rocky Mountains, of steep and difficult ascent. For that cause it was made also the receptacle of their Wealth and Treasure in all times of danger: but taken at the last by *Philip* of *Macedon*, with all the Spoil in it, in his War against them. 6. *Calydon*, near the Forest so called, giving name unto it: the royal Seat of *Oeneus*, Father of *Melæager*, divided into two parts by the River *Euenus*, which runneth through it, according unto that of *Ovid*,

Et Melæger eam maculatus sanguine Nelli
Euenus Calydonæa secat.

That is to say,
Calydon, *Atlicæ*'s Town, the Floud
Euen divides, *deli*'d with *Nessus* bloud.

Adjoining hereto were the *Abamænes*, whom *Pliny* makes a People of it, who gave name unto a little Province called *Abamania*; but such (as little as it was) as gave it the Title of a Kingdom to *Amintæus*; a Prince whom the *Ætolians* made special use of in their Wars against *Philip* King of *Macedon*, the Father of *Persus*, suggesting to him and his Children, that they were descended of the House of *Alexander* the Great, and so engaging them, in hope of that Kingdom, to hazard the quiet of their own. The places of most note, are 1. *Dium*, 2. *Abænum*; both of them taken by *Philip* in that War.

These, as they were the last Actors on the Stage of *Acchaia*, so had they the most desperate part in all the Tragedy of that Country. The Affairs whereof, governed successively by that State which was most powerful, were for a long time managed by the *Athenians*; whose Councils and Conclusions went for Law amongst them. But that Estate being broken, if not subverted, by the Power of *Sparta*, the *Thebans* and *Boeotians*, who came next in play, had the chief Command; uniting almost all the rest in design with them against the *Spartans*, who now grew terrible to all. Becoming insolent by the course of two much Prosperity, and the many great Victories which they had against the *Spartans*, and thereupon quarrelling with the *Phocians*, they were the cause of *Philip*'s coming into *Greece*; who, as he had learned among them the use of Arms, so made he use thereof at last, and of their Difficulties, to unite all the States of *Greece* under his Command; *Thebes* it self being taken and sacked by *Alexander* the Son of *Philip*, as before is said. The *Macedonians* thus prevailing, partly by Force, but especially by Art and Practice, there was no People in *Acchaia* that durst oppose them; till these *Ætolians*, a restless and impatient People, took the Cause in hand. Who thrived so well under *Antigonus* and *Philip*, two of the last Kings of *Macedon*, that they took from them many Towns, invaded *Thessaly*, attempted *Macedon* it self, and when they could not otherwise obtain their purpose in the Destruction of that Kingdom, opened a passage for the *Romans* to effect it for them. But finding no such favour at the *Romans* hands as they did expect, they began to murmur, and afterwards to excite *Antiochus* and the *Greeks* against them, drawing thereby those Forces against themselves which they had invited into *Greece*, and were the first People of all the *Grecians* that were conquered by them; though, by the Mediation of the *Rhodiens* and some other Friends, their Country was restored unto them, with the loss only of *Cephallenia*, *Zante*, and some other Islands; which the *Romans* were resolved to keep as the fruits of the War. This was about the 564 year of the building of *Rome*, *Fulvius Nobilior* being then Consul, and chief Com-mand

mander in this War. After which time the several Estates hereof enjoyed so much Liberty as the Romans, their new Masters, thought fit to give them: till they were finally made absolutely subject in the time of *Vespasian*, by whom *Achaia* was reduced into the form of a Province, *Peloponnesus* being reckoned as a part thereof. In the Division of the Empire by *Constantine* the Great, the West parts hereof being divided from the rest were called *New Epirus*; but both of them made Provinces of the Diocese of *Macedon*, under the *Præfatus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*; the principal Officer of this part being called the Proconsul of *Achaia*: continuing under him and his Successors, Emperours of *Constantinople*, till the Destruction of that Empire by the power of the *Turks*; but so that it remained not always under the Command of one sole Officer, the Politie of that State being altered, and this Country parcelled out into many Governments, especially after the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latines*, or Western Christians. At that time *Theodoros Angelus*, a noble *Græcian*, and one of the (then) Imperial Family, seized on *Ætolia* and *Epirus*; part of which last, and also the first, he left to *Michael* his Son, who held them, though with some dispute betwixt him and *Michael Palæologus*, the first Emperour of *Constantinople* after the Expulsion of the *Latines*. *Charles*, the last Prince of that Family, dying without Issue about the year 1430, bequeathed *Ætolia* to another *Charles*, the Son of his Brother, and *Acarnania* (being that part of *Epirus* which the Princes of *Ætolia* held) to his base Sons, *Amemon*, *Turmus*, and *Hercules*. But many Quarrels happening upon this Division, *Amemon* the second having then newly conquered *Thesphaly*, composed the Differences by taking all unto himself, Anno 1432. There were at that time other Princes of like Authority, as of *Athens*, *Phocis*, and *Beotia*; but the first the chiefest, as honoured not only with the Title of Dukes of *Athens*, but of Princes of *Achaia* also; such being the Fortune of that City, as to have the first and last great Sway in the affairs of *Achaia*. For at the Translation of the Empire upon the *Latines*, *Godfrey of Troyes*, a French-man, was made Duke of *Athens* and Prince of *Achaia*, of whom *Paulus Amelinus* speaketh, Anno 1220: which Honour afterwards was conferred on *Walter de Bren*, a Kinsman of *John de Bren*, the last King of *Jerusalem*, a Protector of *Baldwin* the second the last Emperour of the *Latines*, mentioned by the said *Amelinus*, Anno 1288. And though on the Defeat and death of this *Walter* by the *Catalanians*, then ravishing those parts of *Greece*, the Title of Duke of *Athens* was assumed by *Frederick Alphonso*, the Son of *Frederick* King of *Sicily*, and by other Princes of that House: yet, upon better ground, by the Heir general of this *Walter* it was conveyed in Marriage to *Isidorus di Accio*, a Nobleman of the Realm of *Naples*; whose Son *Walter* (commonly called the Duke of *Athens*) for a time obtained the Sovereignty of the State of *Florence*, Anno 1342, but lost it suddenly again by his too much Cruelty *Francis de Acciavoli*, the last Prince of this House, having been brought up in the Court of *Mahomet* the Great, as one of his Favourites, surrendered his Estate herein, at the perswasion of that Tyrant, in change for the Country of *Baetia* and the Dukedom of *Thebes*: which he no sooner had received, but he was sent by *Mahomet* to *Zogamus* his Lieutenant in *Morea*, by whom at first he was courteously received, at last cruelly murdered. And so the whole Country of *Achaia* fell into the possession of the *Turks*, Anno 1454, or thereabouts.

3. EPIRUS.

EPIRUS is bounded on the East with *Ætolia*, on the West with the *Adriatick*, on the North with *Thesphaly*, *Macedon*, and some part of *Albania*, and on the South with the *Ionian* Seas. So called from the Solidity and Firmness of it; the word *Epiros* in the *Greek* Tongue signifying as much as *Terra firma*, or the firm Land. But by the *Turks* at this day it is called *Albania*, which name they give to all the Lands and Countries in their possession lying upon the *Adriatick* and *Ionian* Seas.

In this Country was born *Olympias*, Mother of *Alexander* the Great; and *Pyrrhus*, who conquered the Realm of *Macedon*, and was the first Foreigner who made trial (though to his own Loss) of the Power and Puissance of *Rome*; accounted by *Hannibal*, next to *Alexander*, the second great Soldier of the world. Here is also *Mount Pindus*, sacred to *Apollo* and the *Muses*, dividing this Country from *Thesphaly*, and therefore common unto both: as also the *Acrocætanian* Hills, so called, because they are so much subject unto Thunder and Lightning, eminent for their height, and most feared by Mariners; who, when they see a little Cloud rising on the top hereof, are sure of a Tempest. Finally, here are the famous Rivers *Acheron* and *Cocytus*, which, for their black waters and unfavourable taste, are said to be the Rivers of Hell: from which last the Sacrifices and Solemnities made in honour of *Proserpine*, whom *Pluto* ravished and brought hither, had this name of *Cocytia*. Whence, by a Metonymy, these Rivers are taken sometime for Hell it self; as in that of the Poet,

Flūtere si nequeo Superos, Acheronta movebo.

Since those in Heaven I cannot move,

The Powers of Hell I mean to prove.

The Soil hereof is very barren, and in many places full of Forests, and thin of people; but towards the Sea reasonably fruitful: plentiful of Oxen, Dogs, and Sheep of more than ordinary bigness, and yielding the best breed of Horses. The people use a distinct Language from the *Græcians*, though of the *Greek* Tongue not utterly ignorant; and by reason of the Barrenness of their own Country, become great Wanderers, especially in Summer-time, when they Travel into *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Asia-Minor*, hiring themselves to work in Harvest under the *Turks*, as also to thresh, winnow, and make clean their Corn; and in the Winter-time return to their Wives and Children. They are able of body, swift of foot, apt to undergo any Toil and Labour, having withal good Courages and high Projections; which makes flux of them as delight not in works of Drudgery to look for action in the Wars, and otherwise to rob and spoil the neighbouring Mountains of *Albania*. Till their Subjection to the *Turks*, they were much used both by the Kings of *Hungary* and the State of *Venice* in their several Wars, serving on Horse or Foot, as occasion was: as Mercenary as the *Switzers* in the Western parts, but not so faithful to the party entertaining them.

Anciently it was divided into *Chaonia* (which was the proper *Epirus*) lying on the West, and *Acarnania*, bordering on *Ætolia*, from which it is parted by the River *Achelous*: the middle parts hereof being *Amphilochia*, *Thesphaly*, and *Alone*: all very populous in former times, and so continued till *Paulus Amelinus*, on the Conquest of *Macedon*, overthrow seventy of their Cities. Few of which being since re-edified, and the Country for a long time languishing under the *Turks*, here are not any very fair Towns or well-peopled Cities at the present to be spoken of; and therefore we must look on such as flourished in the times fore-going. The principal whereof were, 1. *Dodona*, one of the Cities

of *Chaonia*, memorable for the Temple and Oracle of *Jupiter*, hence called *Dodonæus*, situate in a fair Grove, the Trees whereof are said to be Vocal, and to give the Oracle: though others say, It was delivered first by a pair of Pigeons, whereof the one afterwards fled to *Delphos*, the other to the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon* in *Ægypt*. It was the ancientest Oracle of all *Greece*, and so perhaps was the Town the ancientest Town also. Said to be first built by *Dodon*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Europa*: more probably to be called from *Dodanim*, the Son of *Javan*, and Grand-child of *Japhet*, who first inhabited this Region; the whole Country (*Greece* I mean) being called *Javan* from the Father, (by which name commonly it occurreth in the *Hebrew* Text) this Town *Dodona* from the Son. 2. *Cassope*, a Port-Town, with a fair Promontory of the same name adjoining to it. 3. *Onchesimus*, by *Strabo* called *Onchimus*, and by *Pliny* *Echinus*, a Port-Town also, now called *Santi Quaranta*. 4. *Panormus*, on the Sea-side, now called *Antigonis*, more within the Land, founded or repaired by *Antigonis* a King of *Macedon*, now called *Argio Castro*, as *Niger* thinketh. 6. *Phanice*, once the chief Town hereof; which being sacked by the *Illyrians*, under *Tenta* their Queen, gave the *Romans* an occasion of Quarrel with them, upon Complaint made to them by the *Epirots*. 7. *Pelodis*, a Port-Town, the Principal in that part which was called *Thesphaly*; as 8. *Tarone*, on the River *Thymis*, and 9. *Sybona*, an ancient Haven-Town, (now called *Syrtis*) was in that part whereof which was called *Alone*. 10. *Argos*, the chief City of the *Amphilochians*. This part hereof was first named *Molossia*, from *Molossus* the Son of *Pyrrhus*, and *Andronache*, remarkable for the best breed of Maltives, hence called *Molossia*; and afterwards *Cholida*, by *Helenu* the Son of *Præmum*, whom *Pyrrhus* the Son of *Achilles* settled in this Country; who having unfortunately slain his Brother *Chæon*, caused it in memory of him to be called *Chæonia*; *Chæoniamque omnem* *Illyriam*, *Pluto*, the third Son of *Saturnus*, was sometimes King, called from the flat and hollow situation of this Country, consisting much of deep Valleys, the King of Hell.

Towns of special note in *Acarnania* were. 1. *Ambracium*, on the Bay of *Ambracia*, now called *Fanizza*. 2. *Ambracia*, the Regal Seat or Court of *Pyrrhus*, giving name unto a fair and capacious Bay, now called *Golfo di Larta*, from *Larta* an adjoining Town, situate in or near unto the place where *Ambracia* stood. It was once subject to the *Periander*, King or Tyrant of *Corinth*, who being slain by a Woman named *Leomæ*, whom he kept as his Concubine, occasioned the inhabitants from that time forward, in memory of their Deliverance, to worship a *Pyrrhus*. Afterwards being taken from the Children of the *Ætolians* by the *Macedonians*, and from them won by being seized by *Eubœus*, a *Roman* Consul spoken of before. Who, seeing that he could not force it, was willing, at the mediation of the *Athenians*, *Rhodians*, and other Friends of both parties, to conclude a Peace; but so that he spoiled this City at his going hence of much excellent Imagery, carrying away with him unto *Rome* the Pictures of the nine *Muses*; most admirably well done by the hand of *Zexis*, the chief Painter of his times. 3. *Buthrotum*, a *Roman* Colony, by *Pliny* called *Colonia* simply; now a point of a Promontory of the same name also, anciently memorable for the Temple of *Apollo*. But leaping into the Sea from the top of this Promontory, such as unfortunately loved were cured of that malady: the first trial of that kind being made by *Supho* that famous Poetress.

At that time it was joined unto the Land; but since by the violence of the Sea or the hand of man, it is made into an Island; according unto that of *Ovid*,

Leucada continum veteres habuere Coloni;

Nunc Frea circumstant.

That is to say,

Leucas, in former times joyn'd to the Land,

Environ'd round with Waters now doth stand. It was called *Leucas*, from the *Whiteness* of the Rock or Promontory, having before the Separation or disjunction of it been called *Verisio*; the chief Town of it varying with the name of the Isle and Promontory. Both Town and Island at this time is called *S. Maure*, taken by *Bajazet* the II. from the State of *Venice*, and by him given unto the *Genus*, (who do still inhabit it) at their expulsion out of *Spain*. 5. *Nicopolis*, a Colony of the *Romans*; of great both Wealth and Beauty in the time of *S. Paul*, who from hence dated his Epistle to *Titus*: called in that time was part of the Province of *Macedon*, though afterwards a distinct Province of it self. It was first built by *Augustus* *Cæsar* on a Promontory opposite unto *Actium*, on the other side of the Bay: that being the place where his Land Soldiers were incamped before the Naval Battle betwixt him and *Mark Anthony*; and was thus called either in memory of his Victory, or from a poor man and his *Als* whom he met here the day before. For asking the man his name, he told him that his name was *Eutychus*, i. e. *Fortunate*; and that the name of his *Als* was *Nicor*, i. e. *Conquerour*: which happy *Omen* made his Soldiers courageous and hopeful of Victory: and he in memory thereof erected here two brazen Images, the one of the *Als*, the other of his Master. It is now a small Village called *Preveza*. 6. *Actium*, on the Sea-shore, high unto which *Augustus* and *Anthony* fought for the Empire of the World. The Navy of the latter consisted of 500 Gallies; the former had 250 only, but those crowned with Victory: *Antonius* shamefully deserting his Soldiers to follow after *Cleopatra*, who on the very first Charge fled away for *Ægypt*. The Town being now ruined, the Promontory upon which it stood is called *Caba di Figalo*.

The Country was first peopled by *Dodanim* the Son of *Javan*, or at least by some of his Posterity coming hither from the Isle of *Rhodes*; whose Memory was preferred a long time in the Town of *Dodona*, by him, or from him, so denominated. Afterwards being parted into several Nations, and those Nations united in the common name of *Epirots*, it became a great and powerful Kingdom; governed by a Race of Kings descending from *Pyrrhus* the Son of *Achilles*, and continuing till the time of *Pyrrhus* *Æchides*. A man of such Courage and Magnanimity, that he did not only recover his own Kingdom, of which *Cassander*, had deprived his Father; but got the Kingdom of *Macedon* from *Cassander*'s Children; out of which, he tried his Fortune with the *Romans*. Anno *Mundi* 3683, V. C. 471. After his death this Kingdom was shrewdly shaken by the *Macedonians*, and shortly after subdued by *Paulus Amelinus*, who, as we now said, destroyed 70 Cities hereof in one day. For desirous to satisfy his Soldiers after his Victory in *Macedon*, he sent unto the *Epirots* for ten of the principal men of every City. These he commanded to deliver up all the Gold and Silver which they had; and to that end, as he gave out, he sent certain Companies of Soldiers along with them; unto whom he gave secret Instructions, that on a day by him appointed they should fall to sack every one of the Town whereunto they were sent. A barbarous and bloody Decree, 70 Cities confederate with the *Romans* ruined in one day, and no fewer than 150000 *Epirots* made and

old for Slaves. But the chief motive which induced him to so great a Cruelty was, by dispoiling this Country, lying with a long and fair Sea-coast over against Italy, to give the Romans opportunity to land their Armies without any Resistance for the farther Progress of their Forces into Macedonia, Thrace, Asia, or where else they pleased. Which ungodly Policy was afterwards imitated by William the Conqueror, who laid wait all that part of Hampshire, since called New Forest, and therein 36 Parishes Churches, that he might have a safe Landing-place for his Norman Forces, if the English should at any time endeavour to make head against him. Being made subject to the Romans, it was a while part of the Province of Macedonia; but afterwards, when Macedonia was made a Diocese, it became a distinct Province of its self, called by the name of *Old Epirus*, to difference it from the Province of *New Epirus*, which lay Eastwards of it. At the Division of the Empire it belonged to the Constantinopolitans, and so continued till the taking of Constantinople by the Western Christians: at what time Theodoros Angelus, a Prince of the Imperial Family, seized on Aetolia and Epirus, as before was said, and sped so well in his Designs, that he took the strong City of Durazzo from the State of Venice, (to whom it fell in the division of that Spoil) and cunningly (if not treacherously) intercepted Peter the third Emperour of the Latins, whom, as some say, he caused to be Murdered at a Banquet. After his death, his whole Estate being divided into two parts, Aetolia with that part hereof which is called Chaonia, continued in his House till the time of Charles Prince of Aetolia and Epirus spoken of before, after whose death it was subdued by Amurath the Second, as before was said. The residue hereof, together with that part of Macedonia which is called Albania, fell to the Family of the Castriots: the last of which, named John, (the Father of Scanderbeg) seeing himself unable to resist that Tyrant, who had already swallowed up all his Neighbour-princes, submitted his Estate unto him, and gave unto him all his Sons for Hostages. No sooner was the old Prince dead, but Amurath seized on his Estate, murdered his three Eldest Sons, and caused George, the youngest to be traid up in the Law of Mahomet: who afterwards, escaping out of his Power and recovering all his Father's Countries, assumed also the Style or Title of Prince of Epirus. After whose death, his Children, not being able to make good their Game, lost it to Mahomet the Great; as shall be shewn more fully in the Story and Description of Albania, which is next to follow.

4. ALBANIA.

ALBANIA is bounded on the East with Macedonia on the West with the Adriatick, on the North with Sclavonia, on the South with Epirus. The Country is mountainous and barren; watered with few Rivers, and those of no great note amongst the Ancients; as 1. *Lous*, 2. *Alpis*, 2. *Panyasus*, 4. *Colydum*: all of them falling into the Adriatick.

It took this name from the *Albani*, once the Inhabitants of this Tract, from whom the chief City hereof was called *Albanopolis*. Other Towns of most consideration are, 1. *Sferigrade*, or *Vesfigard*, (called by some the *Holy City*) situate in the Borders of Epirus, on the top of an Hill, where it is fenced about like an Eagle's Nest: one of the last Towns in all this Country which was taken by Scanderbeg at his recovery of his Birthright and Estate herein, but being once taken by him, held good courageously against the Turk, the Soldiers neither fainting in their Oppositions, nor corrupted by Money, till at the last subdued by a Superstition. There was in the Town one

only Well, into which a treacherous Christian cast a dead Dog, at the sight of which, being the next day drawn up, the Soldiers gave up the Town; being so unseasonably superstitious, that no perfusion, nor the example of the Captain or the Burgo-masters, could make them drink those (as they thought) defiled waters. 3. *Durazzo*, a Town of great strength, first called *Epidamnus*, and afterwards *Dyrrhacium*. Under the Walls of which Town was the first bickering between the Soldiers of Caesar and Pompey, not only to the present Loss, but also the utter Discomiture of Caesar, as he himself confessed, if the Eneine Captain had known how to have overcome. I must not omit the Valour of *Scava* at this Siege, who alone so long resisted Pompey's Army, that he had 220 Darts sticking in his Shield, and lost one of his Eyes; and yet gave not over till Caesar came to his Relief.

Parque moum Fortuna videt concurrere, Bellum Aque Virum— desjausque ferens in Pectore Sydonem. Fortune beholds an unaccommod'd Sight, An Army and a man together fight,

Whole breast a Wood of Arrows covered quite, In the Division of the Eastern Empire amongst the Latines it fell into the power of Venice; taken at last after a long and tedious Siege, by Amurath the second, Anno 1474. 4. *Dibra*, in the Hill-Countries, near Epirus; the first Town which submitted to the Valiant Scanderbeg at his revolting from the Turks; supposed to be the *Debris* of Ptolemy. 5. *Croia*, conceived to be the Epicuria of Ptolemy, the chief Town of all this Country feared amongst inaccessible Mountains, and made impregnable by Art: not got by Scanderbeg, but by a Wiley, who, having got into his power, the Secretary of the principal *Bajis*, forced him to write Letters in his Master's name unto the Governour hereof, to deliver it unto him, which was done accordingly. Afterwards it was in vain besieged by Amurath the second, who under the Walls hereof gave up his wretched Soul to the Devil; and thrice besieged by Mahomet his Son and Successor, before he could again possess it, but taken at the last after Scanderbeg's death, as if the genius or Tutelar Deity of the place had departed with him. 6. *Petrela*, a Town of great strength, seated on the Top of an Hill (as almost all the Towns of Albania are) about 25 miles from Croia delivered unto Scanderbeg at his first sitting down before it: as also was 7. *Pera Alba*, three miles from Petrela, near the Borders of Macedonia, and situate like the other on the top of a Mountain, the River *Emathus* running under the bottom of it. 8. *Strelusa*, fifty miles from Croia, built on the top of an high Hill in the middle of a pleasant and fruitful Valley, with great and spacious Plains about it. 9. *Dagna* or *Dama*, a place of great importance in the Hill-Country towards Sclavonia, for the possession whereof rose a War betwixt Scanderbeg and the State of Venice, but the Venetians, being worsted at the Battel of *Drino*, relinquished their Pretensions to it. 10. *Aulon*, a Port-Town, now called *Valona*, situate over gainst Hydruntum or Otranto in Italy, distant from it about 60 miles. The Town is unwalled but fortified with a very strong Castle: Town unfortunately fit for the invasion of Italy, and was accordingly made use by *Achmetes* the chief *Bajis* under Mahomet the Great, who from hence passed his Army over into *Apulia*, took the Town of *Otranto*, and had not the death of Mahomet, and the Combinations, thereon following amongst the Turks, altered the design, might have opened them a very fair way for the adding of Rome unto Constantinople. 11. *Apollonia*, a Town of great note in the time of the Romans; a Sea-Town, furnished with a commodious Haven, which they held as their Entrance into Greece; to that purpose serving them as conveniently as *Calais* did the English in their Wars with France.

This

This Country anciently was a part of Macedonia, inhabited by the *Talauri*, *Alfrai* and *Albania*, from which last (but not till their latter times) it had the name of *Albania* but whether these *Albani* were a Colony of the *Albanians* of Asia, (though it be very probable) I determine not. When it was made a Province of the Empire it contained all *Prevalitana* and some part of Macedonia *Salutaris*; being under the Diocese of Dacia in the time of Justinian, but at first of Macedonia. Dismembered from the main Body of it when the Latines had subdued Constantinople, it fell unto the noble Family of the *Castriots*, who, though they took unto themselves the Title of Kings or Princes of Epirus, (most of which they held) as the Country of more Note and Eminence, yet was Albania the greatest Strength, and Croia the chief City thereof, the Seat of their Residences: they being called in that respect by some of the Writers the Kings of Albania. John Castriot, the Father of Scanderbeg, seeing himself unable to resist the Turks, became their Homager, and delivered four Sons for Hostages; whom Amurath the second in their Father's life time caused to be circumcised, and turn *Mahometans*: and after his decease murdered the three eldest, and seized upon Croia the chief City, with the rest of the Country. But George, the youngest of those Sons, being reserved for better Fortunes, was carefully brought up by Amurath (who somewhat passionately affected him) in the Stratagems of War, though some of his Courtiers then told him that he nourished a Serpent in his Bosom, which would one day sting him. Amurath, to make trial of his Disposition, offered him on a time the Crown of Albania: to which he prudently replied, that he preferred the honour of his Service before all the Kingdoms of the World; and that he held his hand fitter for a Sword, than his Head for a Crown. Satisfied with which Answer, the Tyrant preferred him to the place of a *Sanczak*, or Provincial Governour, and gave him some office of Command in all those Armies which he set out against the Christians, Escaping out of the Battel wherein *Caranben*, the great *Bajis*, was overthrown and taken Prisoner by *Humides*, he got the Town of Croia by a piece of wit, as before was said; and in a very short time after made himself Master of Petrela, Pera, Alba, Strelusa, and all the rest of the Country, by the reputation and terror of his first Success. Having recovered his Inheritance out of the hands of the Turks, he reconciled himself to the Church of Christ, flying himself the Soldier of CHRIST JESUS from that time forwards. Invaded by a vast Army of Turks, he overcame *Aly Basha*, and kills 20000 of his men, with no more than 20 Horse and 50 foot he assaileth *Mustapha* in his Camp; in which 5000 Turks were slain, and 300 taken. With whom encountering not long after in the open Field, he slew 10000 of his men, took many prisoners, and *Mustapha* himself amongst the rest, whom he ransomed for 25000 Ducats. Falling upon the Host of Amurath, then besieging Croia, he killed *Feris Basha* home, who succeeded Amurath, vanquished *Idia* the great Took 20 of his fairest Ensigns, and slew 30000 of his Soldiers. Not to instance in the rest of his noble Actions, it is reported that in the course of his War against the hands; using a Turkish Scimitar in all his Fights, of great weight and bigness. Which when Mahomet on a Peace between them had desired to see, and afterwards returned again with this Censure of it, that he saw nothing in it sweeter, than the Virtue of the Weapon depended on the Strength of his Arm, which he could not send him, for that he did reserve it for the death of his Enemies. Finally, ha-

ving held his Cards against Amurath and Mahomet, two most fortunate Gamblers, for the space of 24 years, he set upon his Rest at last a Winner, dying in Peace at *Lissa*, then was there honourably interred. At the taking of which aged up by them, not in spite, but honour; that man accounting himself happy who could get any of his Bones to pre-him a Relick, supposing that as long as he had it about him he should be invincible. But with him died the Liberty of his Country also, not long after subdued by the Turks, and made a Province of that Empire, as it still continueth: the name of Albania being by them extended over all Epirus, and so much of Dalmatia also as is under their power. The Arms of this Kingdom (or rather of the Kings thereof) were *Gules*, an Eagle *Sable*.

5. MACEDONIA.

MACEDONIA is bounded on the East with the *Agæan* Sea, on the West with Albania, on the North with *Mæsia Superior* and a part of Thracia, and on the South with Epirus and Achaia.

It was first called *Amonia*, from Mount *Hæmus*, which fluteth up that side hereof which is towards *Mæsia*; after *Emathia*, or *Enathia*, from a King of it called *Emathus*; Macedonia, from *Macedo*, the Son of *Dendacion*, and the Father of *Caranus*, the first King of the Line of *Alexander*; and finally *Kittion*, or the Land of *Kehim*, whereof see 1. *Maccab* 1. 1. and 8. 5. from *Kittim* the Son of *Javan*; and Grandchild of *Japhet*; who was planted here. Anciently it was of more large extent than it is at the present, extending from the *Agæan* Sea unto the *Adriatick*, till the taking of Albania out of it, which hath straitened it upon that side, but the rest is as formerly.

The Country taking it together, is very fruitful and pleasant, though on the outward parts thereof begin with rough Mountains and thick forests: in former times much celebrated for its Mines of Gold and Silver, which are long since exhausted. It contained formerly the Provinces of *Emathia*, *Pieria*, *Pelagonia*, *Hyccaria*, *Phibiotia*, *Thestalie*, *Mysdonia*, *Amphaxitia*, *Paraxia*, *Edonia*, and many others of less note, inhabited by 152 several Nations: now principally divided (besides Albania) into, 1. *Thestalie*, 2. *Macedonia* specially so called, and 3. *Mysdonia*, which the Turks call *Jambuli*.

1. *THESSALIE* hath on the East the *Agæan* Sea, on the West Albania, on the North Macedonia, and Mysdonia, on the South Achaia. A sweet and delectable Country it is, the Pleasures and Delights whereof inclined the People to be very effeminate and dissolute in their course of life, made them in love with Luxury and Ease, and much like the *Persians* in Behaviour, whose Entrance into Greece they did therefore favour. Yet notwithstanding this Debauchedness, they were esteemed the best Horfemen of all the *Grecians*: by their excellent managing of which creature, (as if they had been one piece with it, and either lent the Horse their Minds, or borrowed his Body) they gave occasion unto the fiction of the *Centaurs*, half Men, half Beasts.

It is now called *Comelitaris*, and of old was very famous for many things, especially 1. for the Hill *Olympus* of so great height, that it seemeth to transcend the Clouds and is therefore frequently by the Poets used for Heaven itself. 2. For the Hill *Othrys*, inhabited by the *Lapithæ*, *Pelion* and *Ossa*, the Dwelling-places of the *Centaurs*, who, intending to ravish *Hippodamia*, the new Bride of *Pirithous*, on her Wedding-day, were slain by *Hercules* and

and the *Lapithe*. 4. For the delectable Valley of *Tempe* situate betwixt *Offa* and *Olympus*, extending in length six miles, and five in breadth; so beautified with Nature's Gifts, that it was supposed to be the Garden of the *Muses*. 5. and lastly, For the *Dolopes* and *Myrmidones*, (who did here inhabit) over whom *Achilles* had Command at the Siege of *Troy*; the last, by reason that they were a laborious and thrifty People, being eulogized by the Poets to have first been *Emmets*, transformed into men at the Prayer of *Æacum*, when, he wanted Soldiers.

— *Mores quos ante tenebant*

*Nunc quos; habent; parvum genus est, patiensq; laborum
Quæstique tenax, & quod quæsitæ reserret.*

The custom they of *Emmets* still retain,
A sipping Folk, and unto Labour set,
Strangely addicted to all kind of Gain,
And wary Keepers of what e're they get.

Places of most observation in it are, 1. *Tricca*, the Epitaphial See of *Heliodorus*, the Author of that ingenious Piece called the *Æthiopick History*; which he so prized, that he chose rather to loose his Bishoprick than consent to the burning of his Book; which a Provincial Synod had adjudged to the Fire. A Piece indeed of rare Contexture and neat Contrivances, without any touch of loose or lascivious Language; honest and chaste Affection being the Subject of it, not such as old or modern Poets threw us in their Comedies or other Poems. For here we have no Incestuous mixture of Fathers and Daughters, no Pandarism of old Nurses, no unseemly Action specified where heat of Blood and Opportunity do meet; nor indeed any one passage unworthy of the chastest Ear. 2. *Lamia*, where the *Athenians*, after the death of *Alexander*, hoping to recover their Freedoms, besieged *Antipater*; which was the last honorable Enterprize undertaken by that great and renowned City, known in old Histories by the name of *Bellum Laniacum*. 3. *Larissa*, situate on the South of *Demetrius*, but on the same Bay memorable for the Birth of *Achilles*, from hence called frequently in the Poets *Larissæum Achilles*, which Birth of his is ascribed by others to the Town of *Phibia*, (from whence the Region called *Phibiatis* takes the nomination) frequently mentioned in the Poets upon that account: and possibly, being neighbouring Cities, the one might be the place of his Birth, and the other of his Habitation. 4. *Demetrias*, situate on the Bay called *Sinus Pelasgicus*, (now *Golfo dell' Armiro*) of very great strength by Art and Nature. Which being held by the *Macedonians*, together with *Chalcis* in the life of *Eubœa*, and the City of *Corinth*, kept all Greece in aw, and were therefore commonly called the *Fetters of Greece*; the *Græcians* never thinking themselves at liberty till those Towns were dismantled by the *Romans*. 5. *Pharbalum*, nigh to which was fought the great Battle betwixt *Cæsar* and *Pompey* for the Sovereignty of the *Roman Empire*. A Battle more famous than bloody, 6000 only of 30000 which were in the Field on both sides, being therein slain. A Battle before which the *Pompeians* were in such a miserable Security, that some of them contended for the chief Priesthood, which was *Cæsar's* Office: others disposed of the Consulship and Preferrments in the City of *Rome*; *Pompey* himself being so wretched, that he neither considered into what place it were best to fly if he lost the day, or by what means he might provide for his own Safety, and end the Wars as if the War had been made against some ignoble Enemy, and not against that *Cæsar* who had taken 1000 Towns, conquered 300 Nations, took prisoners one million of men, and slain as many. 6. *Philippi*, so named from *Philip the Macedonian*, the first Founder of it, situate in the farther part of the same Plains of *Pharbalia*, and famous for as memorable a Battle as that before, and of no less consequence:

that namely betwixt *Augustus* and *M. Antonius* on the one side, against *Brutus* and *Cassius* on the other; these latter being rather overcome by Chance than Valour. For either of them (thinking the other vanquished) flew himself in the Fields; being the two last that ever openly stood out for the common Liberty, and are therefore called by *Cremutius Cordus Ultimi Romanorum*, or the last of the true *Roman Spirits*. 7. *Gomphi*, a very ancient City bordering on *Epirus*. 8. *Thera*, in which City *Alexander the Tyrant* reigned, against whom that noble Captain *Pelidas* the *Theban* fighting was slain in Battle: the Tyrant being not long after murdered by his Wife's Brother, and by that means all *Theffaly* recovering liberty. 9. *Pegafa*, or *Pagafa*, situate on the Bay called *Sinus Pelasgicus* which from hence is sometimes named *Pelasgicus*; in which the Ship called *Argo* was said to be built, so famous for the renowned Voyage of the *Argonauts*. The Hill *Pelion* spoken of before is not far from hence. 10. *Pythion*, or *Pitheum*, of great note (according to some) for the *Thybian Games* there celebrated in the honour of *Apollo*, who hereabouts killed the Serpent *Python*: the Conquerors in which Games were crowned at the first only with an Oaken Garland, but afterwards with one of Lawrlor. Of which thus the Poet.

*Nive operis famam possit abolere Venerat,
Instituit sacros celebri certamine ludos,*

Pythia de domiti Sæpientis nomine dictus, &c.

Thus made to speak English by G. Sandys;

Then left the well-derived memory

Of such an Act in future time should die,

He instituted the so-famous Games

Of free Contention, which the *Pythias* names,

Who Ran, who Wreathed best, or rak'd the ground

With swift Wheelless, the Oaken Garland crown'd.

These Games, together with the *Olympick*, *Isthmian* and *Nemean*, spoken of before, made the four annual Meetings amongst the *Græcians*, renowned for the universal Concourse of the noblest spirits. 11. *Doliche*, which, together with *Pythium*, and 12. *Azorum*, another City of this Tract, standing near together, are called in *Livius* the Historian by the name of *Triopolis*. 13. *Hypata*, the Metropolis of *Theffaly*, so called by *Heliodorus* in his *Æthiopick History* before mentioned, who placeth it near the Bay called *Sinus Maliacus*, now *Golfo di Zium* and not far from Mount *Oeta*, bordering on the Province of *Doris*: upon which Mountain *Hercules*, being tortured with a poisoned Shirt sent by his innocent Wife *Dejanira*, is said to have burned himself; thence called *Hercules Gateus*. Of all which Towns, *Lamia*, *Pagafa* and *Ormetrinus*, are in the Region called *Phibiatis*; *Larissa*, *Doliche*, *Pythium* and *Azorum*, in that called *Pelasgia*; *Gomphi* and *Tricca* in *Isthiotis*; the rest in *Theffaly* properly and specially so named.

This Country, at first called *Æmonia* afterwards *Pelagias*, then *Pyrhaea*, from *Pyrha* the Wife of *Demetrius*, and finally *Theffalia*, from *Theffalus* one of the Companions of *Hercules*; by *Pliny* is called *Dryopis*, *Ephiat* by *Strabo*, *Pelagias* by *Diadotus*, and by *Homæ Argos*; being name of some chief City or particular Province being figuratively used for the whole. It was divided commonly into four parts, 1. *Theffaliotis*, 2. *Isthiotis*, 3. *Pelagiotis*, and 4. *Phibiotis*, the name of *Theffalia*, or *Theffalotis* in the end prevailing; and accordingly distributed into several Governments, united finally in the person of *Philip*, the Father of *Alexander*, who partly by Force, but specially by Art and Practice, made himself Master of the whole. Continuing in a mixt condition betwixt free and subject under the *Macedonian Kings* of the 2. Race, it became subject with that Kingdom to the state of Rome; first

reckoned

reckoned as a part of the Province of *Macedon*; after a Province of it self, when *Macedon* was made a Diocese, part of which it was. But from a Province of that Diocese, and a Member of the Eastern Empire, it was made a Kingdom; given with that Title to *Eusebius* Marquis of *Montserrat* in exchange for *Caesarea*, together with the City of *Theffalonica*, and some part of *Peloponnesus*, at the Division of that Empire amongst the *Latines*; which Title he affected, in regard that *Reiner*, the Brother of *Boniface* his Grandfather, had formerly been whose Daughter *Cyri-Maria* (or the Lady *Mary*) he had took to Wife: In him as it began, so this Title ended; *Theffalonica* falling to the State of *Venice*, *Theffaly* reverting to the Empire when the *Greeks* recovered it: from whom it was subdued, and added to the Turkish Empire, in the Reign of *Amurath* the second, Anno 1432.

2. *MACEDON* specially so called is bounded on the East with *Mygdonia*, on the West with *Albania*, on the North with Mount *Hæmus*, on the South with *Theffaly*. The Country is for the most part fruitful as before was said, but not surfeiting with Delights as to make the people wanton or effeminate in their course of life; they being naturally good Soldiers, exact observers of military Discipline, and inured to Hardness, which their many signal Victories do most clearly evidence both in *Greece* and *Asia*.

The *Greeks* in the pride of their own wits reckoned them amongst the barbarous Nations; and yet, by a strange kind of contradiction, ascribe unto their Country the Seats of the *Muses*. For in this Country was Mount *Pimpla*, with a Fountain of the same name at the Foot thereof, both consecrated to the *Muses*, from hence called *Pimplides*. Here also was the Hill *Lubastrus*, and the Province of *Pieria*; from whence the *Muses* had the names of *Libethriades* and *Pierides*; by this last called more frequently than by any other name whatever, especially by the *Greeks* themselves. But the Birth of *Aristotle* in this Country doth more convince the *Græcians* of this foolish Arrogance than all the *Muses* in the world. A man so admirable in the general course of Learning, so universally comprehensive of all Arts and Sciences, that the best witted *Græcians* might have been his Scholars, and thought it Children to be tutored by him.

The principal Rivers hereof (besides *Erigon* and *Alacmon* spoken of before) are, 1. *Asius*, at present called *Vardari*, rising out of the Hills *Scardus*, a Branch of Mount *Hæmus*, and passing through the whole extent of this Country into *Sinus Thermaicus*; or the Gulf of *Theffalonica* as it is now named: the fairest River of these parts; and of sweetest water; but such as maketh all the Cattle black which drink of it. 2. *Chabrus*, 3. *Echedorus*; both rising out of the mid-land Countries, and both falling into the same Bay also. Besides which there are other three fair and capacious Bays ascribed to *Macedon*, though two of them belonging properly to *Mygdonia*; that is to say, *Sigeticus*, now *Golfo di monte santo*, and *Toronacis*, now the Gulf or Bay of *Aioniana*, and the third common to *Thrace* also, which is *Sinus Strymonicus*, now the Bay of *Comela*.

Towns of most observation in it, according to the several Regions and parts hereof, were for the *Alonops*; 1. *Horna*, called afterwards *Selenia*; 2. *Europus*, of which name there were four in *Macedon*; 3. *Aspladus*, Of *Simica*, 4. *Trifolus*, 5. *Paracopolis*, 6. *Garijura*, there being many others of that name in *Greece*. In *Edonis*, bordering toward *Thrace*, 8. *Sotijia*, 9. *Berga*, 10. *Am-*

phipolis, on the River *Strymon*, with which it is encompassed, whence it had the name; seated so close on the edge of *Thrace*, that it is questionable to which of them it belongs of right; once garrisoned by the *Athenians*, and from them taken by *Philip the Macedonian*, in the first and rise of his Fortunes. 11. *Crenides*, bordering on *Thrace* also, and by some Writers laid unto it; but I think erroneously: repaired and beautified by *Philip* before mentioned; by whom it was called *Philippi*; and situate in a Country so rich in mines of Gold, that the said *Philip* drew hence yearly 10000 Talents, which make 600000 *French Crowns* or 140000 *l.* of our *English* money. Afterwards made a *Roman Colony*, and accounted the chief City of *Macedonia*, as appeareth *Act. 16. 12.* to the People of which *S. Paul* wrote one of his Epistles. Next in *Æmethia* we have 12. *Tyrissa* in the Mid-lands, bordering upon *Theffalia*; now called *Ceresi*, 13. *Adipsa*, called afterwards *Jegæa*, and now *Vodena*; the first Town of all this Country taken by *Caranus*, the Founder of the first Race of the Kings of *Macedon*. 14. *Berea*, on *Sinus Thermaicus*, honoured with the preaching of *Paul* and *Silas*; the Citizens whereof by *S. Luke* commended for their readiness in receiving the Gospel. 15. *Pella*, on the same Bay also; the Birth-place of *Alexander the Great*, from hence called *Juvænis Pellæus*. 16. *Pydna*, upon the same Bay, at the Influx of the River *Alacmon*; in which *Cassander* besieged and took the *Olympian* the Mother, *Roxane* the Wife, and *Alexander* the Heir apparent of *Alexander*, all whom he barbarously murdered. This Cruelty he committed, partly to revenge himself of *Alexander*, who had once knocked his head and the Wall together, and partly to cry quit with *Olympus*, who had before as cruelly murdered *Aridæus* the base Son of *Philip* and *Eurydice* his Wife, with whom *Cassander* was supposed to be over-familiar. Memorable also is this Town for the great Battle fought near it betwixt *Perseus* the last King of *Macedon* and *P. Æmilius* the Consul, in which *Perseus* having humbly deserted his Army, lost both the Battle and his Kingdom, with no less than 20000 of his foot, which were therein slain; the *Romans* having so cheap a Victory, that it cost them not above an hundred or sixscore men. 17. *Dium*, not far from the Hill *Olympus*, and about a mile from the Sea, of which mile the River *Helicon*, becoming there a Lake, and called *Bæphyrus*, taketh up one half. It is situate in the Borders towards *Theffalia*; the way unto it out of *Tempe* being straight and narrow, and almost impassable, by reason of the Spurs of the Mountains running overthwart it; which, had it been well defended by the *Macedonians*, would have kept their Country from the *Romans*, who that way attempted. But *Perseus* hearing that the Enemy had got into *Tempe*, only took care to get his treasure out of *Dium*, and so abandoned both the Passage and the Town together. 18. *Phylace*, more within the Land; as is 19. *Eribæa*. But these four last are in that part hereof which is called *Pieria*.

3. *MYGDONIA* hath on the East the *Ægean Sea*, on the West *Macedon* properly and especially so called, on the North *Edonis* and *Sinus Strymonicus*, on the South *Sinus Thermaicus*, or the Gulf of *Theffalonica*; so that it is almost a *Peninsula*, environed on three sides with Water.

Here is in this Country the Hill *Actos*, standing in a *Peninsula*, (the *Isthmus* being once cut through by *Xerxes* but since closed again) laid to be 70 miles in circuit, 3 days journey long, half a day's in breadth, resembling the shape of a Man lying with his Face upwards: the highest point whereof, covered perpetually with Snow, is said to cast a Shadow as far as *Lemnos*. It is exceeding fruitful both in Grains, Fruit, Oil, and Wine, and wondrous

plentiful in Hares, according to that of Ovid.

Quot Lepores Atho, quot Apres palantur in Hybla.
How many Hares on Athos feed,
What swarms of Bees on Hybla breed?

It is inhabited only by Greek Monks, whom they call *Caliores*, of the order of *S. Basil*, to whom the Hill commonly called the *Holy Mountain*, hath been long since dedicated: the place being so privileged by the Grand Seigneur, that neither *Turk*, nor *Gracian* may inhabit in it, except such *Gracians* only as profess this life. Of these there are about 6000, dispersed in 42 Monasteries, built after a military manner, for fear of Thieves and Pirates, wherewith they were much infested in times past: frequented with great Concourse of People coming thither to behold and adore some Reliques, (for which they are of much esteem;) the free Oblations of those Pilgrims, and some Benevolence from the *Turks*, which do much respect them, being the chief means of their Subsistence. The manner of their life is like that of the ancient Eremites: poorly clad, their Shirts of Woollen, which they both spin and weave themselves; none of them idle at any time, doing fill somewhat for their Livelihood, and the advancement of the House of which they are, as dressing fynes, felling Timber, yea and building Ships. Few of them give themselves to Study, and some of them are of too gross an Ignorance, that they can neither write nor read. They are bound by their Order to lodge and entertain such Strangers as have occasion to pass that way, according to their rank and calling; and that of free cost too, if he be desired.

Towns of most note, according to the several Regions and parts hereof, are, for *Argydenia* specially and properly so called, 1. *Antigonia*, so called from *Antigonus* a King of *Macedon*, the first Founder of it. 2. *Xylopolis*. 3. *Terpilius*. 4. *Phlyco*. 5. *Afforus*; all mentioned by *Ptolemy*, but not else observable. 6. *Apollonia*, for distinction sake called *Apollonia Mygdonia*, to difference it from *Apollonia in Albania*, then a part of *Macedon*: famous for the Studies of *Angustus Cesar*, who here learned the Greek Tongue. For *Amphaxitris*, there was 7. *Aretusfa*; 8. *Sagaria*, now called *Nicalidi*, renowned for the Birth of *Aristotle*, hence named *Stagiritis*. 9. *Thessalonica*, situate on the bottom of *Sinus Thermaicus*, now called the Bay of *Salomichi*, by the name of the Town. Anciently the Metropolis or Head-City of *Macedon*; the Seat of the *Præfatus Prætorio* for *Ilyricum*, after the removal thereof from *Sirmium*; as also of the Primate of the Greek Church, who resided here. To the people of this City did *S. Paul* write two of his Epistles. It continued in great power and credit till the Fall of the *Constantinopolitan* Empire into the hands of the *Latines*: at which time it was bestowed first on *Boniface Marquis of Montferrat*, the new King of *Thessaly*; after whose death it fell upon the State of *Venice*, who held it till the year 1432, when it was forced by *Amurat* the 2 to become *Turkish*. Which notwithstanding, it still preserves the reputation of a beautiful and wealthy City, inhabited by rich Merchants, who drive here a great Trade, especially for the commodities of the *Indies*, for beauty, Riches and Magnificence, little inferior unto *Naples*: and though the *Turks* and *Jews* make the greatest number of Inhabitants, yet here are reckoned 30 Churches for the use of Christians. As for the *Jews*, they swarm here in such great abundance, that in this City and that of *Constantinople* only there are reckoned 160000 of them; but generally hated and contemned by all sorts of People. 10. *Siderocapla*, of old called *Chryseis*, remarkable for its Mines of Gold and Silver: so beneficial to the *Turks*, that he received hence monthly 18000, and sometimes 30000 Crowns of *clara*. Next for *Chalcidie*, there was 11. *Panormus*, a Port-

Town. 12. *Stratonica*, in the Peninsula of Mount *Athos*. 13. *Abho* or *Abosfa*, in the same Peninsula, with a Promontory of the same name, high which it stood. 14. *Acambus*, now called *Erifso*, on the Bay of the Holy Mountain. And finally in *Paræcia* we have 15. *Amphipolis*, 16. *Torona*, giving name to the Bay adjoining called anciently *Sinus Toronicus*, now *Golfo di Afonana*. 17. *Cassandria*, on the Sea-side, so called from *Cassander* King of *Macedon*, who repaired and beautified it; being before named *Potidea*. 18. *Derris*, 19. *Merville*. 20. *Pallene*, situate in the Cherfonese or Demil-Iland called *Palæne*, and by some *Paladia*: formerly consecrated to the *Muses*, but before that infamous for the War which the Giants are said to have made here against the Gods; at what time it was called *Phlegra*, the Fields adjoining *Campi Phlegrei*, in which this great Battle is supposed to be fought. The occasion of the Fable was (as both *Theogenes* and *Endoxus* do expound the fable) that the Inhabitants hereof in those elder times, being men of a most impious and insolent Life, got the name of Giants; whom when *Hercules* endeavoured to subdue and reduce to Reason, it happened that there fell a great Tempest of Thunder and Lightning, by which they were constrained to flee and submit themselves. Hence the Report that those Giants made War against the Gods. Others have placed these *Phlegrean* Fields in *Thessaly*, and perhaps more probably. Certain I am, that some place nearer to the Hills of *Fethion*, *Offa* and *Olympus*, both agree best with it: if at least *Ovid* were not out in his narration, who makes those Mountains to be heaped upon one another, for their better reaching to the Skies, and fighting upon even ground, as the saying is. For thus that Poet;

Afflatæ ferunt regnum caeleste Gigantes,
Altaque congestos fronsæ ad sidera Montes.
At pater omnipotens missi persequi Olympum
Fulmine, et excussis subjecerunt Pelion Olie.

Which may be Englished in these words;

The Giants once the throne of Heaven affected,
And Hills on Hills unto the Stars erected:
Till Jove with Thunder high Olympus brake,
And Pelion did from under Offa take.

But from those Fables to proceed to more real Stories. This Country was first peopled by *Citium*, the Son of *Javan*, passing over out of *Asia minor*; in memory whereof there was not only a Town called *Citium*, spoken of by *Livie* l. 42. but the whole Land of *Macedon* is in the Book of *Maccabees* called the Land of *Cethium*, i. *Maccab.* 1. 1. and the Inhabitants hereof called *Citians* in the 8. Chapter of the same Book, v. 5. Spreading in tract of time from one Sea to other, from the *Ægean* to the *Adriatick*, some Colonies of them passed from hence to *Italy*, and first inhabited that Country, as hath there been said. Such as continued in those parts, divided into several Tribes, as in all parts else, became in time to be united in the name of *Macedons*. A People not much taken notice of in former times, living a poor and painful life, Goatherds and Shepherds for the most part, scarce able to defend their own Mountains from the next invader, much less to dream of conquering either *Greece* or *Perfia*: And therefore *Alexander* told them, and not much unfitly, (though by him spoken in passion, and to their Disgrace) that his Father *Philip* had first made them *Gentlemen*. For *Philip* having learned the Rudiments of War under *Epanimondas*, (being then an Hostage with the *Thebans*) and by that means becoming acquainted with the Temper and State of *Greece*, not only freed his own Kingdom from the *Ilyrians*, *Thracians*, and other barbarous Nations, who had gained upon it; but taking advantage of the Factions raised amongst the *Gracians*, (whence he knew how to feed and cherish for his own improvement)

ment) brought them at first wholly to rely upon him, and after to be subject to him. Inasmuch that never any Monarchy had a swifter Growth, nor a more speedy Dissolution: there passing not full 40 years from the first of *Philip* to the last of *Alexander*, in which space it was both begun, perfected, and broken to pieces. For the Foundation being laid in Murder, Perjury, and Treason, as at first it was, was never likely to be blessed with a long Continuance.

The Kings of MACEDON.

A.M.		A.M.	
3155	1. Caranus. 28.	3560	13. Orestes. 3.
3182	2. Camus. 12.	3563	14. Archelaus II. 4.
3195	3. Trymas. 38.	3567	15. Pausanias. 1.
3223	4. Perdiccas. 51.	3568	16. Amyntas II. 6.
3284	5. Argens. 38.	3574	17. Argem II. 11.
3322	6. Philipps. 38.	3575	18. Amyntas III. 1.
3360	7. Europ. 26.	3594	19. Alexander II. 1.
3386	8. Alceas. 29.	3595	20. Alorites 4.
3415	9. Amyntas. 50.	3599	21. Perdiccas III. 4.
3465	10. Alexander. 43.	3605	22. Philip II. 23.
3508	11. Perdiccas II. 28.	3629	23. Alexander the Great.
3536	14. Archelaus.		24. Arideus. 6.

Of these 24 Kings only 6 are famous viz. 1. *Caranus*, the first King, originally of *Argos*, of the Race of *Hercules*, and by an Oracle commanded to lead a Colony into this Country, and to follow the first Flock of Cattel he saw before him. Being here arrived in a tempestuous stormy day, he espied a Herd of Goats flying the fury of the Weather: These Goats he followed unto *Aedæa*, into which, by reason of the darkness of the Air, he entered undiscovered, won the Town, and in short space became Lord of all the Country. On which occasion as the Goat afterwards became the Arms and Ensign of the Kings of *Macedon*, so by that Beast those Kings were figuratively designed in the Holy Scripture: of which see *Dan.* 8. 5. 21. 2. *Perdiccas*, the fourth King, who at *Æga* built a Burial-place for all his Successors, assuring his People, that as long as their Kings were there buried his Race should never fail; and so it happened. For the Kingdom of *Macedon*, after the death of *Alexander* the Great, who was buried at *Babylon*, was translated to the Sons of *Demetrius*. 3. *Europus*, who in his infancy was carried in a Cradle against the *Ilyrians* his Enemies, and returned victorious: This the *Macedons* did, either because they thought they could not be beaten, their King being preserved from perishing himself, that there was none so void of Honour and Compassion as to abandon an Infant, no way able to save himself from Destruction but by the Valour and fidelity of his Servants. 4. *Alexander*, the Son of *Amyntas*, famous for a notable Exploit on the *Perfian* Embassadors, who, being sent from *Megabyrus*, requested a view of the *Macedonian* Ladies. No sooner were they entred, but *perdiccas* *en* *Perfis* *conterehantibus*, as *Justine* relateth the Story, they were called back by this *Alexander*, sending in their steads young Springalls maidly attired; who, upon the like Indignities offered flew these effeminate *Assaus*. After which he behaved himself so discreetly, that the *Perfian* Monarch gave him all *Greece* between *Hæmus* and *Olympus*. 5. *Philip*, Father to *Alexander*, who governed first as a Guardian to *Amyntas*, the Son of *Perdiccas* his elder Brother; but afterwards took unto himself both the Kingdom and Title of King; which he continued in the Deposition of his Nephew and natural Sovereign, the Murderer of the rest of his Brethren, and the Destruction of all such as oppos-

ed his practice. But, being otherwise a man of approved Abilities, he cleared his own Country of the *Ilyrians*, subdued *Achaia*, *Thrace*, and a great part of *Peloponnesus*, and was chosen general of the *Greeks* against the *Perfians*. But as soon as he had made all things ready for this expedition, he was slain by one *Pausanias*, a young Gentleman whom he had formerly aided in the heat of his unnatural Lust. 6. *Alexander*, the Son of *Philip*, who recovered such parts of *Greece* as on the death of his Father had befooled themselves with a hope of Liberty. He subdued *Darius* the great King of *Perfia*, *Taxiles* and *Porys* Kings of *India* founded the Monarchy of the *Gracians*, and in the height of his Successes was poisoned at *Babylon* (as it is conceived) by *Cassander*, one of his great Captains: his Revenue at the time of his death amounting to 300000 Talents yearly. After his death his new-got Empire was much controverted in the point of Succession, he himself dying without lawful Issue, and having at his death bequeathed it to him who was thought most worthy by his Army: and his Soldiers, according to their several affections and Relations, thought their own Leaders most deserving. At last the Title of King (and in effect nothing but the Title) was by consent of the Commanders cast on *Arideus*, a Bastard of *Philip*, to whom *Perdiccas* was appointed to be Protector, (for *Arideus* was a little crazed in his Brain) and to be General of the Army: by whose design he was also married to *Eurydice*, Daughter to *Amyntas*, whom *Philip* had before disposed of that Kingdom. As for the Provinces, they were assigned unto the Government of the chief Commanders, viz. *Egypt* to *Ptolemy*, *Syria*, to *Laomedon*, *Cilicia* to *Phloras*, *Media*, to *Pytho*, *Cappadocia* to *Eumenes*, *Pamphylia*, *Lycia* and *Phrygia* major to *Antigonus*, *Caria* to *Cassander*, *Lydia* to *Menander*, *Pontus* and *Phrygia minor* to *Leonatus*, *Affria* to *Selenus*, *Perfis* to *Pausanias*, *Thrace* to *Lysimachus*, and *Macedon* it self unto *Antipater*: the other parts of the *Perfian* Empire being left to them to whom whose hands they were committed in the time of *Alexander*. But this Division held not long: for *Perdiccas* being once slain by *Ptolemy*, and *Eumenes* made away by *Antigonus*, these two became quickly too great for the rest; *Ptolemy* adding *Syria* and *Cyprus* to the Kingdom of *Egypt*, and *Antigonus* bringing under his Command not only all *Asia minor*, but *Affria*, *Media*, and almost all the Eastern parts of the *Perfian* Empire. *Antipater* in the mean time, succeeding in the Protectorship, banished *Olympias* the Mother of *Alexander* out of *Macedonia*, as bearing but a Step-dame's love unto *Arideus*. But he being dead she returned out of *Epirus*, (the place of her banishment) into *Macedonia*, where raising a strong Party amongst the People, he put *Arideus* and his Wife *Eurydice* to death, proclaiming *Alexander* the Son of *Alexander* by *Roxane*, both slain not long after by *Cassander* the Son of *Antipater*, who, to make sure work, murdered also with the like Cruelty *Hercules*, the Son of *Alexander* by *Bastine*, (another *Perfian* Lady, as *Roxane* was) the last Survivor of that House. And so the Royal Family being rooted out, *Antigonus* took unto himself the Title of King: as did *Selenus*, who had now recovered all the *Perfian* Provinces beyond *Euphrates*. The like did *Ptolemy* in *Egypt*; and *Cassander* in *Macedon*.

The second Race of the MACEDON Kings.

- A. M.
3643 1. *Cassander* Son of *Antipater* supposed to have been the Poisoner of *Alexander*, rooted out the Blood-royal of *Macedon*. His Reign was full of Troubles and Difficulties. 19.
3667 2. *Alexander* and *Antipater*, Sons to *Cassander*, but.

but not well agreeing, called unto their Aid *Lyfimachus* and *Demetrius*, by whom they were both in short time murdered. 4.

3671 3. *Demetrius*, Son to *Antigonus*, the powerful King of *Asia*, after he had in one Battle against *Selenus* lost both his Father and all his *Asian* Dominions, settled himself in *Macedon*: but being there outed by *Pyrrius*, he fled to *Selenus*, and with him died. 6.

3677 4. *Pyrrius*, King of *Epirus*, was by his Soldiers, voluntarily forsaking *Demetrius*, made King of *Macedon*: but after 7 months the Soldiers revolted to *Lyfimachus*, as being a *Macedonian* born. 1.

3678 5. *Lyfimachus* King of *Thrace*, being thus made King of *Macedon*, was in the end vanquished and slain by *Selenus*, the last Survivor of *Alexander's* Captains. 7.

3685 6. *Ceraunus*, or *Ptolemy Ceraunus* Son to *Ptolemy* of *Egypt*, having traiterously slain his Friend and Patron *Selenus*, seized on *Macedon*: but lost it, together with his Life, unto the *Gauls*, who then plagued these Countreys. After whose death this Kingdom, being distracted amongst many Competitors, settled at last upon

3687 7. *Antigonus Gonatus*, the Son of *Demetrius*, who, for his Valour shewn in expelling the *Gauls*, was made King of *Macedon*. And though for a while he gave way to *Pyrrius*, then returning from *Italy*, yet after the death of *Pyrrius* he again recovered his Estate, but was outed once again by *Alexander* the Son of *Pyrrius*. 36.

3723 8. *Demetrius* II. Son of *Antigonus*, recovered *Macedon* from the power of *Alexander* the Son of *Pyrrius*. 10.

3733 9. *Antigonus* II. surnamed *Dofon*, left by *Demetrius* as Protector to his young Son *Philip*, usurped the Kingdom. He diverse times vanquished and crueld the *Gracians*, beginning then to cast off the Yoke of *Macedon*. 12.

3745 10. *Philip*, the Son of *Demetrius*. 42.

3787 11. *Perseus*, the Son of *Philip*, the last King of *Macedon*.

The Subversion of which Estate was first begun in the time of his Father, who had not only warred upon the *Ætolians* and other of the *Greeks* whom the *Romans* had taken into their Protection, but sided with *Hannibal* against them. Upon which grounds they sent first *Titus Qu. Flaminius*, on of their Consuls, by whom *Philip* was vanquished at the Battle of *Cunefephalos*, and his Kingdom made Tributary unto *Rome*. After which picking a Quarrel against *Perseus* also, managed with variable Success by *Licinius*, *Martius*, and others of their Commanders, they dispatched *Paulus Æmilius* with an Army into *Macedon*, to bring him to absolute Subjection. Who sped so well, that *Macedon* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and *Perseus* led captive unto *Rome*, Anno 3789. In which Triumph, besides the Pomp of leading a Captive King in Bonds, *Æmilius* caused the ready Money which he brought out of *Greece* to be carried in 750 Vessels, every Vessel containing three Talents; which made so infinite a Sum, that the *Roman* people were free for many years after from all Taxes and Impositions. A. M. 3789.

Macedon, thus made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and afterwards divided into three parts or Provinces, that is to say, *Macedonia Prima*, *Macedonia Secunda* or *Salutaris*, and *Prævalitana*, in the new Modell of *Constantine* became a Diocefe, the Diocefe hereof containing the Provinces of *Crete*, *Asiatic*, *Old and New Epirus*,

Macedonia Prima, and the greatest part of *Salutaris*; the residue of *Salutaris* and *Prævalitana* (which makes up the Country now called *Albania*) being laid to the Diocefe of *Dacia*. It continued part of the Eastern Empire till towards the last fatal dissolution of it; though many times harraied and depopulated by the *Salavarians*, *Bulgarians*, *Rosses*, and other of the barbarous People, at their several Invasions of it. Finally, it was conquered by the *Turks*, first, under the Conduct of *Bajazet*, their fourth King, taking *Nicopolis*, a Town hereof bordering on *Thrace*, and lying North of *Sinus Strimonius* now the Bay of *Contesa*; and after under *Amurath* the second their sixth King, making themselves masters of *Thessalonica*, the chief City of it, and therewith of all the Country. By reason of which many Invasions and last Decolation by the *Turks*, there is scarce one of all those many Cities before mentioned now of any eminence, except *Thessalonica* only; the rest being miserably destroyed. And for the Country itself, it is governed by a *Turkish Sanzack*, under the *Beglerbeg of Greece*; his annual Revenue being but 8000 Crowns, nor any thing else required of him then to maintain 100 Horse in ordinary pay for defence of his Province, and to find 400 Horse on extraordinary occasions, as the Grand Seigneur shall command him.

6. T H R A C E.

THRACE hath on the East *Pontus Euxinus*, *Propontis*, and the *Hælefont*, on the West *Mædon*, on the North the Hill *Hæmus*, on the South the *Ægean* Sea and part of *Mædon*. It is a very large and goodly Province, extending 20 days journey in length, and 7 days journey in breadth, and in relation to the Heavens, reaching unto the 44. Degree of the Northern Latitude; so that the longest Day in Summer is about 15 hours, three quarters.

By several men, according to the times they lived in, it hath been called by divers names: by *Sithaphan Asia*, by *Suidas Odrisia*, by *Lycophron Cretosmia*, by some Writers, *Scythia* by *Josephus* the Hebrew *Thyras*. But generally it is called *Thrace*, or *Thracia*, and that, as some from *Thras* the Son of *Mars*, as others, from *Thracian*, an Inchantress: more probably from the Ferity and barbarous condition of the first Inhabitants, the name in the Original *Greek* bearing that construction: most likely from *Thyras*, the Son of *Japhet*, who first planted here, in memory of whom it did retain the name of *Thyras* in the time of *Josephus*; besides many other footsteps and remembrances of him in the names of many of their Towns, and some of their Princes; of which we have already spoken in our general Preface. Finally, by the *Turks* it is called *Romania*; either from the many *Roman* Colonies which were planted here, or because *Constantinople*, the chief City of it, was anciently called *Novæ Roma*: and by that name it is now called in most modern Writers.

The Country generally is neither of a rich Soil nor a pleasant Air: the Corn and other Fruits, by reason of the coldness of the Climate, leisurely ripening; the Vines yielding more Shade than Juice, and the Trees for the most part more Leaves than Fruit: yet in some parts there be many large and goodly Plains, where they reap good floor of Corn, but of Pulse especially; and towards the Sea-side they have plenty of Wine, which *Pliny* much commended both for strength and goodness.

The People anciently were very bold and valiant, and called by some *Avoripus*, because every man was a Law to himself. So that it was truly said by *Herodotus*, that if they had either been all of one mind, or under one King, they

they had been invincible: Of Manners they were rude and savage somewhat near to Brutishness; buying their Wives, and selling both their Sons and Daughters, as in open Market: in that since imitated by the *Turks*, who possess their Country. The men were more courageous than comely, wearing Cloaths according to their Conditions ragged and unfeemly. The Married-woman were in love to their Husbands so constant, that they willingly sacrificed themselves at their Funerals. The Virgins were bestowed not by their own Parents, but the common Fathers of their Cities. Such as brought neither Beauty nor Virtue for their Dowry, were put off according to their Money; most times sold as other Cattel in the Markets. In matters of Religion they worship *Mars*, *Bacchus*, *Diana*, *Mercury*, as did other Gentiles: swearing especially by the first, from whom they bragged themselves to have been descended. But their chief national Deity was one *Zanoxes*, sometimes a Native of this Country, who, having been brought up under *Pythagoras*, and returning home, prescribed them good and wholesome Laws; assuring them that, if they did observe the same, they should go unto a place when they left this World in which they should enjoy all manner of Pleasure and contentment. By this means having gotten some opinion of a Divinity amongst them, he abetted himself; and after was worshipped as their God. Upon these Principles, when any one was born amongst them, his Parents and other Friends, sitting round about him, lamented bitterly his coming into the World, ripping up all the Miseries and Afflictions whereto he was to be exposed in this present Life, and deplored his condition as absolutely miserable and unhappy. But, on the contrary, when any one chanced to die, they buried him with all Joy and Alacrity, highly rejoicing that by this means he was freed from the Crocicks and Disasters of this wretched world. Which is expressed thus bricly (after his wonted manner) by my Author, *Lugentur Pierperia; natique defensor; Emera contra Festis sors; et cunctis Sacra canu iugis celebrantur*. A Piece of such fond and orthodox Divinity, that I wonder how they hit upon it in those times of Darkness; and favouring very much of the Primitive Pity, by which the *Obits* of the Saints were kept as Festivals, no notice being taken of the day of their Births. According to that of the good old Writer, *Non Nativitatem sed Mortem, Sanctorum Ecclesiæ pretiosam & sanctam judicant*.

Here lived the Tyrant *Polymestor*, who villanously murdered *Polydorus*, a young son of *Præmians*: for which fact *Hecuba*, the young Prince's Mother, scratched him to death. Here also lived the Tyrant *Tereus*, of whom before in *Phœcia*: and *Diomedes*, who, using to feed his Horses with Man's flesh, was slain by *Hercules*, and cast unto his Horses. And, finally, here reigned King *Corys*, of rare Temper both in maitering and preventing Passion. For when a Neighbour Prince had sent him a Present of Glasse of the purest Metal, and no less accurate in the Workmanship or Fashion of them, (having dispatched the Messenger with all the due Complements of Majesty and Gratitude) he broke them all to pieces; left if by mishap any of his Servants should do the like, he might be stirred to an intemperate Choler.

Chief Mountains in this Country, besides *Hæmus* spoken of already, are 1. *Rhodge*, the highest next Mount *Hæmus* in those parts of the World; craggy and rough, and the Top thereof continually white with Snow: memorable for the Fate and Fable of *Orpheus*, who in a melancholic humour (having lost his Wife) betook himself to these Mountains, where with his Music he affected both Woods and Beasts, who are said to have danced unto

his Music: from this place of his Abode called *Rhodopis*, from his Country *Thracian*, *Non me carminibus vincit nec Thracius Orpheus*, &c. as the Shepherd boasteth in the Poet. The truth is that he was a man of an heavenly Muse, and by his Dictates and good Council, laid down in Verse, first of all civilized this People, and weaned them by degrees from their Betaility. Hence the occasion of the Fable. But for Mount *Rhodge* it self, it is in the middle of this Country, thwarting it from Mount *Hæmus* towards the West; which, with the Spurs and Branches of it, and the Plains adjoining, lying betwixt the River *Nessus* on the West, and *Alas* or *Niger* on the East, made up that Province of the Empire called *Rhodge*, by the name of the Mountain. 2. *Pangæus*, rich in Mines of Silver. 3. *Melapus*, shooting towards the Sea, full of Rocks and Cliffs. And 4. *Orbelus*, lying towards *Macedon*, where there is a little Region from hence called *Orbelia*.

Principal Rivers hereof, besides *Strymon* (spoken of before), the Boundary in some places betwixt this and *Mædon*, are, 1. *Nessus*, by the *Gracians* now called *Æstro*, by the *Turks* *Charafon*, which rising out of Mount *Hæmus*, falleth into the Sea near the Isle of *Thessia*. 2. *Athyra*, in which name the memory of *Thyras* the Son of *Japhet* seems to be preserved; which, rising in Mount *Hæmus* also, loseth it self in the *Propontis*; as doth 3. *Bathynius*, another River rising from the same Mount *Hæmus*. 4. *Hebrus*, the most noted River of all this Country, rising out of *Rhodge*, and falling into the *Ægean* near the Isle of *Samos*: whence a River of so slow a Course, that it is not easy to discern which way it goeth; but memorable in the Poets for the Fate of *Orpheus*, who, being thrown into it by the *Thracian* Women, had his Limbs thrown into it by those Furies. 5. *Thermod* good against the Scab both in man and beast, issuing out of 30 Fountains, some hot, some cold; with the pleasantness of whole Waters. *Darius* the King of *Perfia* was so delighted; that he erected a Pillar in honour of it.

The chief Towns were, 1. *Abdera*, now called *Prosylo*, situate not far from the Fall of the River *Nessus* into the *Ægean*; the Birth-place of *Democritus*, who spent his whole Life in laughing at the Follies of others. 2. *Perrida*, of old a Colony of *Abdera*, from whom it revolted, and submitted to the State of *Corinth*. But the *Abderians*, not enduring the Altrant, beleaguered it, and after two years Siege, and the expence of 2000 Talent, could not recover it again but on Composition: 3. *Ænos*, on the *Ægean* Sea; a Town of great Strength and Safety; and therefore used by the latter *Constantinopolitan* Emperours for the securing of great persons. For hitler *Michael Palæologus* sent *Jambates*, the *Turkish Sultan*, flying to him for Aid; and hitler *Mahomet* the Great, *Demetrius*, Prince of *Poloponnesus*, when he yielded up his Country to him: both under colour of providing for their ease and Safety; but in plain terms to keep them in honourable Prisons. 3. *Lyfimachia*, on the Sea-shore; once of great importance, built by *Lyfimachus*, who after *Alexander's* death laid hands on this Country: afterwards garisoned by *Philip* the Father of *Perseus*, on the withdrawing of whose Forces, for some other Service it was taken and raised to the ground by the barbarous *Thracians*, and all the People of it carried into Captivity; but by *Antiochus* the Great re-edified and new-peopled again, moved thereunto by the convenient situation and former glories of the place. 5. *Philippopolis*, so called from *Philip* King of *Macedon*, the Father of *Alexander*, who built and fortified it as Abride to hold in the *Thracians*; called also *Trimonium*, from three Hills on which it was situate: beautified in the time of the *Romans*, with a goodly Amphitheatre, continuing entire and whole till this

these latter days, and might have lasted longer by many Ages did not the *Turks* daily take away the Stones thereof, which are all of Marble, to make money of them. Here are also many other ancient Monuments, though the Town be much wasted and destroyed, the *Seylions* at one time killing in it above 100000 persons: which notwithstanding it is populous and well-frequented by reason of the convenient situation of it on the River *Hæbrus*, which they now call *Mariza*. 6. *Trajanopolis*, so called from the Emperor *Trajan*, by whom it was either founded or repaired; indifferently well-peopled, and still preserving its old name. 7. *Selymbria*, on the Coast of the Propontic Sea; beautified with a commodious Port for recit of small Vessels, and many Bays adjoining capable of greater: by *Ptolemy* called *Selybria*, and *Olybria* by *Strabo*: 8. *Asopolonia*, upon *Pontus Euxinus* or the Black Sea, now *Sissopolis*. 9. *Phinopolis*, on the same Sea also. 10. *Nicopolis* at the foot of the Mount *Hæmus*, there being another of that name near the River *Nessus*. 11. *Perinthus* on the Propontic Sea, near the influx of the River *Asius*. A Town of great note in the ancient Builings of Greece; of great strength, and peopled formerly with men of such resolutions, that they maintained their Liberty against *Philip of Macedon*, after almost all the rest of *Thrace* had submitted to him. 12. *Hærulea*, at first a Colony of the *Thebans*; and afterwards of much request in the time of the *Romans*, as being beautified with the Palaces of *Vespasian*, *Domitian*, and *Antoninus*, Emperours of Rome, as also with an Amphitheatre cut out of one entire Marble, and accounted one of the World's seven Wonders; and, finally, made the Metropolitan City of the Province of *Europe*, one of the Provinces of the Diocese of *Thrace*, whereof more anon. 13. *Olynthus*, called by *Xenophon* the greatest City of *Thrace*, as possibly enough it was in Power and Riches, though not in greatness of Extent. A Colony of the *Athenians*, rich in Trade, and Mistress of a fair and goodly Territory adjoining to it: the People whereof had been malicious Enemies to the Kings of *Macedon*, which principally induced *Philip* spoken of before, to set upon them. In which Attempt he sped so well, that what he could not get by Force he obtained by Money, bribing some of the principal Officers to betray it to him. For the recovery whereof *Demothens* oft moved the People of *Athens*, in those elaborate Orations called the *Olynthiaks*. 14. *Sefus*, in the *Thracian* Chersonese, which, being a Peninsula abutting over against *Troas* on the *Asian* side, is now called *Saint George's Arm*. Opposite wherunto on the other side of the Water, is the Town of *Abydus*, remarkable for the Tragical Loves of *Hero* and *Leander*, celebrated by *Musæus*, an old Greek Poet. 16. *Callipolis*, on the Northern Promontory of this Chersonese, the first City of note that ever the *Turks* possessed in *Europe*; taken by *Solyman*, the Son of *Orchan*, the second King of the *Ottoman* Race, Anno 1358; from whence they calify and in little time spread themselves all over the rest of *Thrace*: the ordinary passage of late times between *Europe* and *Asia*, by reason of the convenient Harbour and safe Anchorage. 16. *Cardia*, seated on the Western side of it, opposite to the Isle of *Lemnos*; the Birth place of *Emmetus*, who, being a poor Carrier's Son, attained to such an ability in the Art of War, that after the death of *Alexander* the Great, under whom he served, he seized on the Provinces of *Cappadocia* and *Paphlagonia*, and siding (though a stranger to *Macedon*) with *Olympias* and the Blood Royal against the Greek Captains, vanquished and slew *Crimæus*, and divers times drove *Antigonus* (afterwards Lord of *Asia*) out of the Field. But being by his own Soldiers betrayed, he was by them delivered to *Antigonus*, and by him slain. 17. *Sardica*, situate towards Mount *Hæmus*, memorable for the

Council there held against the *Arians*, Anno 351. 18. *Adrianople*, seated near the midst of *Thrace*, called anciently *Uladama*; but got this name from *Adrian* the Emperour, who repaired and beautified it: made subject to the *Turks* by *Bajazet*, Anno 1362: from the first taking of it made the Seat of the *Turkish* Kings, till the taking of *Constantinople* by *Mahomet* the Great; by whom it was removed unto that City. 19. *Pera*, opposite to *Constantinople*, on the farther side of the Water, (as the word doth signify in the Greek;) by some called *Galata*; once peopled by a Colony of *Genoese*, as the Mart and Factory of that State, taken by *Mahomet* the Great, An. 1453, but still replenished, for the most part, with Christian Merchants and Artificers.

But the chief glory of this Country, and of all the East, is the renowned City of 20. *Constantinople*, seated in so commodious a place for Empire, that it overlooks both *Europe* and *Asia*, and commands not only the *Propontic* and *Bosporus* but the *Euxine* Sea. First founded by one *Byzas*, and from him named *Byzantium*; but being taken by the *Persians* and from them recovered by the *Spartans*, (unwilling that the *Persians* should grow strong in *Europe*) it was repaired and fortified by *Paulinias*, one of their Commanders, 663 years before the Birth of our Saviour. In vain it was besieged by *Philip of Macedon*, and of great strength in the Flourish of the *Roman* Empire. The Walls were of a just height, every Stone whereof was so joined with Couplets of Bricks, that the whole seemed but one entire Piece; adorned besides with Towers, Bulwarks, and other Arts of Fortification. Siding with *Niger* in his War against *Severus* the Emperour, it endured a Siege of three years against all the Forces of the *Romans*: during which time the people were so distressed by Famine, that men meeting in the Streets would draw and fight, the Conquerour feeding on the Vanquished. For want of *Constantinople*, seated in the Allaislands, they cast down upon them whose Statues made of Bricks, and the like curious Imagery Houses they pulled down to get Timber for Shipping; the Women cutting off their Hair to inch out their Tackle: and having thus patched up a Navy of 500 Sail, it was lost all by one Tempest. Compelled to yield by this Misfortune, the principal of the Nobility were put to the Sword, the Wealth of the Inhabitants given for a Prey to the Soldiers, the Walls thereof dismantled, and the Town left in rubbish. Yet there appeared so much of Majesty and Beauty in the very Ruins, *Ut miraris virtutem eorum qui primi destruxerant, vel eorum qui deinceps sunt demoliti, vires sine potiores, as Herodian* hath it. Re-edified afterwards by the Emperour *Constantine*, he honoured it with his own name, and made it the chief Seat of the *Roman* Empire. The City was finished May 11. Anno 325; and, being so finished, was endowed with all the Privileges of Rome, an equal number of Senators, one of the Annual Consuls, and all other Officers of State, chosen out of both; the Citizens of the one being free of the other, and capable of all places of most Trust and Power. For that cause it was called *NOVA ROMA*, in some following times. This City he adorned also with magnificent Buildings, curious Statues, and such like Ornaments, transported hither from Old Rome: which City he spoiled of more costly Pieces than any twenty of his Predecessors had brought unto it. At this day the chief Buildings are the *Turk's Seraglio* and the Temple of *Saint Sophia*; which as they differ not much in place and situation, so as little in Magnificence and State. The Temple of *Saint Sophia* was, if not built, yet re-edified, by the Emperour *Justinian*. It is built of an Oval form, surrounded with Pillars of admirable workmanship, adorned with spacious and beautiful Galleries, roofed all over with

with *Mosaic* work, and vaulted underneath; very strong for the Fabrick, and pleasing for the Eye. The Doors are very curiously wrought and plated; one of which by the Superstitious people is thought to have been made of the planks of *Noah's Ark*. And yet this Temple is little more than the Chancel of the Ancient Church, which contained in length 260 foot, and 180 in breadth; and yet to our Saint *Paul's* in *London* may seem for the bigness to have been but a Chappel of Ease. But what it wants in Greatness, it hath gained in Beauty, and in the Elegancy of the Building, wherein it is thought to exceed all the Fabricks in the whole World. The Sides and Floor are all flagged with excellent Marble; and before the Entrance is a goodly *Portico*, or Porch, in which as well the Christians, who visit it out of Curiosity, as the *Turks*, who repair thither for Devotion, are to leave their Shoes. By *Mahomet* the Great, after the taking of the City, it was converted to a *Turkish* Mosque, as it still continueth; frequented by the Grand Seigneur almost every Friday, which is the Sabbath of that People. Near hereunto standeth the Palace or *Seraglio* of the *Ottoman* Emperours, on the North-East Angle of the City, where formerly stood the ancient *Byzantium*, divided from the rest of the City by a Wall containing three miles in Circuit, and comprehending goodly Groves of Cypress trees intermixed with Plains, delicate Gardens, artificial Fountains, and all variety of Pleasures which Luxury can affect or treasure compass. The Palace it self, enjoying a goodly prospect in the Sea, was first built by *Justinian* the Emperour, afterwards much enlarged by the *Ottoman* Race, containing three great Courts one within another: the Buildings yielding unto those of *France* and *Italy*, for the neat contrivances, but far surpassing them for Cost and Curiousness.

As for the City it self, it is said to be 18 miles in compass, and to contain 700000 living souls; yet would be more populous then it is, if the Plague, like a cruel *Terminus* fortified towards the Land with three strong and high Walls, the one higher than the other, the outermost highest of them all towards the Sea with one Wall only, built after the old Fashion with many Towers, which both the Town and Chersonese in which it standeth were defended from the Incursions of the barbarous people by a strong Wall built on the very *Isthmus* of it, some ten miles from the City, reaching from one side to the other: the work of *Andronicus* who succeeded *Zeno*, Anno 494. A City which a far off gives to the Eye a most pleasing object, so it seems a City with Gardens and beset with Trees, that it intercepts a City in a Wood, but being entered, it much deceiveth the expectation which it promised, the Builders of it being mean, if not contemptible. The Streets for the most part are exceeding narrow, but raised on each side for the greater Cleanliness: the Houses but of two Stories high, some of rough Stone, & some of Timber, without any outward Grace or exterior Garnishings; in many places nothing but low Sheds or rows of Shops; and in some places long dead Walls belonging unto great stone Houses. The principal Beauty of the whole, next to the Tombs or Sepulchres of some of the *Ottoman* Kings, which are very sumptuous, are the Mosques or Temples of the *Turks*, about eight thousand in number; and the Port or Haven, so conveniently profound, that Ships of great Burthen may safely lay their Sides Liding; and so commodiously seated on the *Thracian Bosporus*, that there is no Wind, whatsoever it be, which brings not in some Shipping to it. But that which gives

the greatest Pleasure to the sight from the Hills adjoining is the Situation of it on seven Mountains, most of them crowned with Magnificent Mosques, built all of white Marble, round in form, and finished on the top with gilded Spires, reflecting the Sun-beams with a marvellous Splendour. On the first whereof standeth the Ruines of *Constantine's* Palace, exceeding itately to behold. On the second, a fair *Turkish* Mosque, built on the Palace anciently belonging to the Greek Patriarch. On the third stands a stately Mosque, the Sepulchre of *Mahomet* the second; and a very large Hospital, for entertainment of Pilgrims and relief of the poor: the Annual Reus whereof are valued at 200000 Chequens. On the fourth and fifth the Sepulchres of *Selim* the first, and *Bajazet* the second. On the sixth the Mosque and Sepulchre of *Solyman* the Magnificent, numbered amongst the present wonders of the World. And on the seventh the Temple of *Saint Sophia*, and the *Turk's Seraglio*, spoken of by *Nicetas*, *Urbs typicall* by *Paulus Diaconus*; and so acknowledged to be by *Ysaïus Doulos*, *Phinias Morison*, *G. Sandys*, and other of our modern Travellers, the Eye-witnesses of it. So that if there be any Mystery in the number of Seven, or that the sitting of the great Whore on a seven-headed Beast, be an affixed direction to find out the *Antichrist*; we may as well look for him in *Constantinople*, or *Nova Roma*, where the Great *Turk*, the professed Enemy of *Christ* and the Christian Faith, hath his Seat and Residence, as amongst the seven Hills of Old Rome, where the Pope resideth. Or, if his sitting in the Temple of God shews us where to find him; we may as well look for him in the Temple of *Saint Sophia*, now a *Turkish* Mosque, as in Saint *Peter's* Church at *Rome*, still a Christian Temple.

But to return again unto *Constantinople*. As it was made by *Constantine* the Imperial City, and consequently the chief City of the East in all Civil matters; so it came in little time to have a great sway in Affairs of Religion. The Christian Faith is said to be first prebided in *Byzantium* by Saint *Andrew* the Apostle, the first Bishop of Churches thereof being regulated by many Bishops, the chief Preeminence in matters which concerned those Churches was given unto the Bishops of *Heraclea*, *Thrace* being at that time the Metropolis or principal City of the Province. But after that *Constantinople* was built by *Constantine*; and made the Imperial City, as before was said, it did not only over-top *Heraclea*, and draw unto it self the Metropolitan Dignity, but stood in Competition with the other Patriarchal Churches for the supreme Power; inasmuch as at the second General Council holden in this City it was unanimously decreed, that the Patriarch thereof should in degree of Honour be next unto the Bishop of Rome, and above those of *Antioch* and *Alexandria*; the same Decree being confirmed in the Council of *Chalcedon* also. By which not only all the Churches in the Diocese of *Thrace*, but also of *Nesia*, or *Asia minor*, (except *Cilicia* and *Iauria*, which remained to the Patriarch of *Antioch*) containing no less than 28 of the *Roman* Provinces, were made subject to him. And though Pope *Leo* the first, pretending only the preservation of the Privileges of those two great Churches, but indeed fasting left New Rome might in the end get the Precedency of the Old, did oppose this Act; and yet they were forced in the end to give way unto it, especially after the Emperour *Justinian* had by his Imperial Edict confirmed the same; by whom it was finally ordained, *Seniores Romæ Papæ primum esse omnium Sacerdotum, beatissimum autem Archiepiscopum Constantinopolitano*.

nopolens, *Novæ Romæ*, secundum habere locum, that is to say, That the Pope of *Rome* should have the first place in all General Councils, and the Bishop of *Constantinople*, or *New Rome*, should have the second. Encouraged wherewith, and with the countenance and favour of the Emperor *Mauritius*, John Patriarch of *Constantinople*, in the time of *Gregory* the Great, took to himself the Title of *Universal or Oecumenical Bishop*, the Pastor-General (as it were) of the Church of *Christ*. And though Pope *Boniface*, by the Grant of that bloody Tyrant *Phocas*, got that Title from him: yet the Patriarchs of *Constantinople* made good their ground; never submitting either themselves or their Churches to the Pope's Authority; being for that cause specially accounted by the Church of *Rome* for Schismatics, and accordingly reviled and persecuted with all kind of Indignities. How it succeeded with these Patriarchs in the times ensuing, and by what means their Jurisdiction was extended over all *Greece*, *Moscovia*, part of *Poland*, and many other Churches in the North and East, hath been said already. Certain it is, the constant Residence of the Emperours from the time of *Constantine* gave great ground unto it: of whom I should here add the names, but that I must first sum up the affairs of *Thrace* before the Building of this mighty and predominant City, and take a brief view of the rest of those Provinces which we have comprehended under the name of *Greece*.

Concerning which we are to know, that the ancient Inhabitants of it had the names of *Strymonis*, *Bardis*, *Doloni*, *Sapais*, *Sai*, and some others, united by most Writers in the name of *Thracians*. They were governed at first by the Kings or Princes of their several Tribes, as most Nations else; distinguished from the common People, as in other Pomps, so most especially by their Gods, which their Kings had to themselves apart, and were not to be worshipped by the best of their Subjects. These notwithstanding well together for the common good, it gave the *Athenians*, *Spartans*, *Thebans*, and other Nations of the *Greek*, a good opportunity to invade their Country, to seize on the Sea-Towns thereof, and plant Colonies in them: the Country in those times being meanly peopled, and consequently giving that advantage unto the *Gracians*, as the *Indies* in these latter times have to the *Spaniards*, *Portuguezes*, *English*, *Hollanders*, and all other Adventurers. Such of them as lay next to *Macedon*, proving bad Neighbours thereunto upon all occasions, at last provoked *Philip* the Father of *Alexander*, to put in for a share, who being chosen Arbitrator betwixt two Competitors for that Kingdom, (drawn at last into fewer hands) came not unto the Council with such poor Attendants as Justice and Piety, but with a great and puissant Army, wherewith having vanquished and slain the two Pretenders, he pronounced Sentence for himself, and made *Thrace* his own, compelling the Inhabitants to pay him the tenth part of their Revenue for his yearly Tribute. After the death of *Alexander* this Country was seized on by *Lysimachus*, as his part of the Spoil, who here built the City *Lysimachia*; from hence invading *Dacia*, *Macedon*, and the neighbouring Regions: and he being dead, the *Thracians*, now accustomed to a foreign Yoke, were either Subjects, or at least Tributaries, to the *Macedonians*. Aiding then in their Wars against the *Romans*, they incurred the displeasure of that People; who, having settled their Affairs in other places and repulsed the *Cimbri*, thought it fit time to call the *Thracians* to account for their former Actions: but sped so ill in the Attempt, that *Porcius* Camo lost his whole Army in the On-set, cunningly intercepted in their Woods and Fastnesses. *Didius* the *Prætor*, coming in whilst the *Thracians* were buile in the Chafe, gave them such a stop, that he de-

ferred a Triumph for it, and made the Victory more calce to *Mædellus*, who succeeded *Cato* in that Charge, and triumphed also over them; as also did *Lucullus* on another Victory *A. U. C.* 680. Broken with so many ill Successes, they were finally subdued by *Piso* in the time of *Augustus*, and became so obsequious to that fortunate Prince, that *Rhemenacles*, a great and puissant King hereof, aided him with a strength of Horie against the *Pannonians* and *Ilyrians*, who had then rebelled. Afterwards being made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, in *Constantine's* new Model it became a Diocese under the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*; *Thrace* it self being callt into four Provinces, that is to say, *Thrace* specially so called, *Hæmimontum*, *Rhodope*, and *Europa*; *Scythia* and the Lower *Mædis*, spoken of before, being added to it: of which the Presidents of *Rhodope* and *Hæmimontum* were not to be appealed from to the *Præfectus Prætorio*, as the others were, but only to the *Præfect* of *Constantinople*, the Imperial City. But as *Alfonso* King of *Castile*, furnished the Wife, was once heard to say, (never the wiser for so saying) That had he stood at the elbow of *Almighty God* when he made the World, he would have shewed him how some things might have been better ordered: to give leave to play the fool, and to say this here, that had I stood at *Constantine's* Elbow, I would have Counseled him to lay the Diocese of *Thrace* to the *Præfect* of *Ilyricum*, who had originally only the Dioceses of *Macedon* and *Ilyricum* under his Command; and not have placed it under the *Præfect* of the East, who had both *Asia's* and all *Aegypt* under his Authority. For being that there lay Appeals from the *Vickers* and *Lieutenants* of the several Dioceses to their several and respective *Præfects*, how great a trouble must it be to the Subjects of *Thrace* on every occasion of Appeal to go to *Antioch*, there to complain unto the *Præfect* of the Orient, when *Serminum* and *Thephalonica*, the ordinary Residences of the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Ilyricum*, were so hard at hand? But *Constantin* was an absolute Prince, and might do what he listed. He had not else removed his Seat so far towards the East, and left the Western parts of the Empire open to the Barbarous people, out of a Fancy only to preserve the Eastern. For that it was a Fancy only the event did shew: the *Persians* for all this prevailing more than ever formerly; and *Thrace* it self, though honoured with the Imperial City, and planted with so many *Roman* Colonies, so ill inhabited, that a great part thereof lay wast and desart many Ages after. Infomuch as the *Goths*, being by the *Huns* driven over the *Danow*, were by the Emperours *Aurelianus* planted in this Country, (the Emperour having a content to use them in his following Wars; where not designed with the Portion allotted to them, they did fair for all, waiting the whole Province, taking divers Towns, and endangering *Constantinople* it self, from whence they were not driven (Valens himself being killed in the War against them) but by the coming of some *Saracens* to the Aid of the Citizens. Nor could the Residence of the Emperours so protect this Country, but that it was continually harried and depopulated by the *Slavens*, *Bulgarians*, *Rosses*, *Saracens*, and other Barbarous people falling in upon it; nor hinder one *Byronius*, in the time of *Michael* *Ducas* and *Nicophorus* *Bryennius*, from assuming to himself the Title of King of *Thrace*; nor finally prevent the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Race from getting ground every day on the lesser *Asia*, incroaching upon *Thrace* it self, and in the end obtaining the Imperial City.

And here perhaps it is expected, considering the *Turks* are now possessed of *Thrace* and the rest of *Greece*, that we should make relation of the Nature of that People, their Customs, Forces, Policies, Original, and Proceedings. But

But the discourse thereof we will defer till we come to *Tricomina*, a Province of *Asia* from whence they made their first Inundations, like to some unrefillible Torrent, into *Pessia*, and after into the other parts of the World now subject to them. And therefore leaving that alone till another time, we will proceed to our Description of the rest of *Greece*, confining of the Islands scattered in the *Pontick*, *Propontick*, *Ægean*, *Cæcan*, and *Ionian* Seas; leaving out such as properly belong to *Asia*, till our Description of that Country, though otherwise *Greek* Islands, and so accounted both for their Language and Original.

7. The Islands of the PONTICK and PROPONTICK Seas.

Before we come to the Descriptions of these Islands, we must first look upon the Seas in which they lie; beginning with the *PONTICK* first, because the Waters unto all the rest. A Sea made up originally of the Confluence of those mighty Rivers (the greatest in those parts of the world) which do fall into it, that is to say, the *Danow*, *Boristhenes* and *Tanais*, filling out of *Europ*, besides many other fair and large Rivers, (though of lesser note) to the number of at least an hundred, which pay Tribute to it: the whole compass of it being 2700 miles, in form by some resembled to a *Scythian* Bow when it is bended. A Sea not so salt as many others, and therefore much annoyed with Ice in Winter; seldom remitted in the Spring on the Northern Shore. The Traffick of it is wholly in a manner engroffed by the *Turk*, who is Master of all the Sea-coast of it, save what belongs to the *Polonian* and *Crim-Tartar*, at first it was called *Ægæus* from the *Insipiditableness* of the neighbouring People, which being brought to some Conformity caused the Sea to be called *Ægæus*. By *Florus* it is called *Mare Sinistrum*, because in the way from *Rome* to *Asia* minor it lay upon the left hand, as the *Mediterranean* did upon the right. It is commonly called at this time *Mare Maggiore*, Mists thence arising. Others not unprobably affirm that it is called the *Black Sea*, from the dangerous and black Shipwrecks here happening; for it is a very dangerous ison the top of an high Tower a Lantern, in which there is a great Pan full of Pitch, Rosin, Tallow, and the like, in dark nights continually burning, to give warning to Mariners how near they approach unto the Shore. This Sea, being the biggest of all those parts, gave occasion to them which knew no bigger to call all Seas by the name of *Pontus*; as *Ovid*, *Omnia pontus erant*, deinde quoque *litora pontus*; and in another place of the doublets of the name, than that of the Etymologists are *Pontus*, *quæ pontus caret*. Of this Sea the chief Illes are *Thymaria*, and *Eubœia*, little famous.

From thence the Sea binding Southwards is brought into narrower Bounds, not being fully a mile broad, and is called the *Thracian Bosporus*; *Thracian*, for its Site nigh *Thrace*; and *Bosporus* is, for that Oxen have swam over it with a very strong Calf. That on the *Asian* side, being the elder and the lesser, is by the *Greeks* called *Asiæcapus*, by the *Turks* named *Acchibis*; the other, just opposite to it, is by the *Turks* called *Genuibis*, by the *Greek* named *Necæstron*, or *New castle*. This last was the name of *Mahomet* furnished the Great, in the beginning of his Reign; in bigness not inferior to a little City, built by him in or near the place of the ancient *Dynamis*,

environed with a Wall 22. foot broad, and containing three great Towers, their Wall exceeding 10. yards in thickness; exceedingly well stored with all sorts of Ordnance and Ammunition. By the *English* they are commonly called the *Black Towers*; partly because seated at the Entrance of the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*, and partly because they seldom are discharged thence till released by death.

This Straight, having continued 200 miles in length, openeth it self into the *Propontis*, 300 miles in compass; confined with *Thrace* on the one side, and with *Bithynia* on the other; so as they which fall in the middle may descry the Land on all parts. Now called *Mar di Marmora*, from the Island *Marmora*, which, formerly called *Proconnesus*, hath for its abundance of Marble purchased this new name. The Soil is apt for Vines, and not destitute of Corn; yielding also Good Pasturage for Goats, wherof there is plenty, with an incredible number of Partridges amongst the Rocks: the Country of *Asiæ*, Anciently it had in it two Cities of the same name with the Island, called the *Old* and *New Proconnesus*; the former first built by the *Misians*, an *Asian* People; the latter by the *Natives* of this Island. But both these being long since decayed, it hath now only a small Village towards the North, with an Haven to it, inhabited by the *Greeks*, as is all the rest of the Island: such Christian Slaves as are in great numbers employed here by the *Turks* in digging Marble for their Mosques and other Buildings being only Sojourners, not House-keepers, and therefore not accounted amongst the Inhabitants. Here is also in this *Propontick* Sea the Life of *Cyclops*: but being it is on *Asia* side, we shall there speak of it.

The Sea having gathered her waters into a lesser Channel is called *Hellepont*, from *Helle*, Daughter of *Atthæus* King of *Tiber*, who was here drowned. Over this famous Straight did *Xerxes* according to *Herodotus*, make a Bridge of Boats to pass into *Greece*: which when a sudden Tempest had shrewdly battered, he caused the Sea to be beaten with 300 Stripes, and cast a pair of Fetters into it, to make it know to whom it was subject. *Xerxes* in this Expedition wasted over an Army consisting of two millions and 164.710 fighting men, in no less then 2208 Bottoms of all sorts. When all the *Persians* forthed the King in the unconquerableness of his Forces, *Artabanus* told him that he feared no Enemies but the Sea and the Earth; ther not yielding sufficient subsistence for so multitudinous an Army, but his return over this *Hellepont* was as dejected as his passage magnificent; his Fleet being so broken by the Valour of the *Greek* and the fury of the Sea, that, for his more speedy Flight he was compelled to make use of a poor Filher-boat. Neither yet was his Passage secure: for the Boat, being overbattered, had not saved the Life of their King. The loss of which noble Spirits so vexed him, that having given the Steermain a golden Coronet for preserving his own Life, he commanded him to Execution as a Co-author of the death of his servants. It is now called the *Castles*, or the *Sea of the two Castles*; which two Castles stand one on *Europe*, the other on *Asia* side, in the Towns of *Sefos* and *Ayudus*. These Castles, commonly by the *Turks* called *Dardanellis*, are exceedingly well built, and abundantly furnished with Munition. They search and examine all Ships that pass that way; they receive the Grand Seignior's Customs, and are in effect the principal Strength of *Constantinople*. At these Castles all Ships must stay three days; to the end that if any Slave be run away from his Master, or Thieves have stolen any thing, they may be in that place purged

and apprehended. So that these Castles are as it were the Out-works of *Constantinople*, to defend it from all Invasions, and from any Forces which may come unto it by Sea out of the *Mediterranean*; as for the Safety thereof from such as may find passage out of the *Euxine*, there are situate at the very entrance of the *Thracian Bosphorus* two strong Castles, the one above *Constantinople* on *Europe* side, the other on the *Asian* Shore, which before we speak of. No *European* Isle of note is in either of the Straights. And therefore we pass on unto

8. The Islands of the *Ægean* Sea.

Hellspont, after a forty miles course, expatiateth its waters in the *Ægean* Sea: so called either from *Ægeus*, the Father of *Theseus*, who, misdoubting his Son's life return from the *Minotaur* of *Crete*, here drowned himself; or, secondly, from *Ægæa*, once a principal City in the prime Island *Eubœa*; or, thirdly, because that the Islands lie scattered up and down like the Leaps of a wanton Goat, from the Greek *αἶγες*.

The chief Islands of it are, 1. *Samos*, 2. *Thasos*, 3. *Imbros*, 4. *Lemnos*, 5. *Eubœa*, 6. *Salamis*, 7. *Ægina*, 8. the *Cyclades*, 9. the *Sporades*, and 10. *Cybara*: all which especially from *Eubœa* Southwards, are called the Islands of the *Arches*; the Sea being by the *Greeks* called the *Archipelago*, in regard of its greatness compared unto the narrow Seas which lie about it.

1. *SAMOTHRACE* is a small Island opposite to the Coasts of *Thrace*, where the *Hebrus* falls into the Sea; so called quasi *Samos* *Thracie*, to difference it from the *Asian Samos*, bordering on *Jonia*. Formerly it was called *Dardanis*, from *Dardanus* the *Trojan*, who fled hither when he carried the *Palladium* thence. But *Aristotle*, writing of the Commonweal of these *Samothracians*, telleth us that it was first called *Leucospia*, and afterwards *Samus*, from *Sus* the Son of *Mercury* and *Rheny*, the letter *M* being interposed. It is now called *Samandraci*, and is plentiful in Honey and Wild Deer, and better stored with commodious Harbours than any other in these Seas. It hath a Town of the same name with the Island, situate on an high Hill on the North part thereof overlooking a capacious Haven; of late, by the Pirates frequent infesting of these Seas, wholly in a manner, desolate.

2. *THASSUS*, another little Island on the same Coast, opposite to the Influx of the River *Nessus*, lying betwixt that and *Athos* in *Macedonia*, at the Mouth of the *Strymonian* Bay: by *Pliny* called *Æria* and *Æthria*, by *Ptolemy* *Thalassia*, at the present *Tasso*. It is in compass betwixt forty and fifty miles, sufficiently fruitful, well replenished with Woods, and yielding good store of the best Wines; mountainous in some places, but those Mountains fraught with Quarries of excellent Marble, which the *Romans* called *Thasian*, from the Island, and in the times of *Philip* and *Alexander* the Great so rich in Mines of useful Metals, that those Kings received yearly 80 Talents for their Customs of them. It hath one Town of the same name with the Island, situate on a large Plain in the North part of it, bordering on a goodly Bay, which serves for an Haven to the Town: and on the South parts where the Country is more mountainous and hilly, there are two Towns more, each of them situate on an Hill, but the names thereof occur not amongst my Authors.

3. *Imbros*, another small Island, now named *Lembo*,

is situate betwixt *Samothrace* and the *Thracian* Cherfone, in compass about thirty miles, but more long than broad, stretching North and South, and distant from *Samothrace* about ten miles. The Island is mountainous for the most part, except towards the West; where it hath some pleasant and well-watered Plains: in it is a Town of the same name, situate at the foot of the Mountains once sacred unto *Mercury*, but not else observable.

4. *LEMNOS*, an Island of more note, lieth betwixt *Thrace* and *Macedon*, not far from *Imbros*; memorable amongst the Poets for the fabulous Fall of *Vulcan*, who, being but an homely Brat, hardly worth the owning, was by *Juno* in great Passion thrown out of Heaven, and, falling on this Island, came to get his Healing. Howsoever, he was anciently worshipped by the People hereof, and from hence called *Lemnius*. It is in compass about an hundred miles, but more long than broad, extended from the East to the West; on every side well furnished with convenient Creeks and some pretty Havens, by which the want of Rivers is in some sort recompened.

The Country is for the most part plain, if compared unto the adjacent Islands, but otherwise fiewled with rising Mountains; the interposed Vallies being very fruitful of Wheat, Pulse, Wine, Flesh, Cheek, Wool, Flax, Linnen, and all other necessities; only *Wine* is wanting. And though here be no Rivers, as before was said, yet have they good Fishing on the Sea-coast for their use and sustenance; and in some parts hot Baths for Health and Medicines. But the chief Riches of this Island is in a mineral Earth here digged, of excellent virtue for curing of Wounds, stopping of Fluxes, expelling Poisons, a Preservative against Infections, and the like; called *Terra Lemnia*, from the place, and *Terra Sigillata*, from the Seal or Character imprinted on it. For being made up into small Pellets, and sealed with the *Turk's* Character or Signet, it is then (not before) sold unto the Merchants; by whom it is dispersed over most parts of the Christian World. Upon the sixth of *August* yearly they go to gather it; but not without much Ceremony; and many religious Preparations, brought in by the *Venetians*, when they were Lords of this Island, and still continued by the *Greek* Monks or *Caloires*, who are the principal in the work. There is one Hill only where it groweth, the Top whereof being opened, they discover the Vein, resembling the calling up of Worms; and having gathered as much of it that day as the Priests think fit, it is cloied again; certain Bags of it being sent to the Grand Signior yearly, the residue sealed up, and sold to the Foreign Merchant.

But to return to the Topography of the place. The Eastern parts hereof are said to be fat and fruitful, the Western very dry and barren: in both containing 7 Towns and Villages, all of them inhabited by the *Greeks*, except only three, and those three garrisoned by the *Turks*, who, being Lords of the whole Island, have new named it *Stalimene*. In former times, from two prime Cities in it, it was called *Dipolis*. Of which the first was called *Lemnos*, by the name of the Island, as large and well-peopled now as ever formerly, but of no great estimation when it was at the best, seated upon an high Hill looking over the Sea, with a handsome Market place, on which Mount *Athos* casts a Shadow, though distant 87 miles from it. It was formerly by another name called *Myrina*; but that held not long, the name of *Lemnos* still remaining. 2. The second of the two Cities was then called *Hephæstias*, memorable for the Temple of *Vulcan*, hence called *Hephæstides*; since desolate and destroyed,

stroyed, and a new Town built in the place of it, being called *Cochino*. This Town is not great, but of a reasonable strength, memorable for the stout Resistance that a notable *Pirago*, named *Marmala*, made against the *Turks* in the time of *Mahomet* the Great, the *Venetians* then being Lords of the Island. For suddenly landing, when they were not looked for, with a purpose to surprize this Town, they found more Resistance at the Gates than they did expect: none being more commended than this Maiden, who, seeing her Father slain, took up such Weapons as lay by him, and manfully made good the place, until the rest of the Citizens, awakened with the Alarm, came unto her Rescue, and forced the Enemy to retire. Near herunto is the Hill on which *Vulcan* is said to have fell, more eminent for the Mineral carth here only gathered. And not far hence *Pliny* reports a Labyrinth to have stood in the days of old, little inferior unto those of *Crete* or *Ægypt*; the Ruines of it being so decayed, that *Bellonius*, who took great pains in it, was not able to trace them. 3. The third place of note is *Scira*, though an ordinary Village, yet memorable for the Chappel in which the *Greek Caloires* begin their Orisons on the sixth day of *August*, before their gathering of the Earth so often mentioned. In this Country anciently reigned *Thoen*, the Son of *Bacchus* and *Ariadne*, during whose time the Women of the Island upon some displeasure murdered all the men, the King only excepted, preserved by *Hyppolyte* his Daughter, whom they made their Queen, and by whom *Jafon* with the *Argonauts* were so kindly entertained for two years together, that they had almost forgot their intended Expedition for the Golden Fleece; she her self being got with Child by *Jafon* at his being there, the other Women probably following her Example. Following the Fortune of the other parts of *Greece*, it came at last under the power of the *Constantinopolitans* or Eastern Emperours. In the Substitions (of which more hereafter) it fell to the share of the *Venetians*, who held it till the year, 1463, or thereabouts.

Besides these on the Coast of *Thrace*, there are also some of less note on the Shores of *Macedon*. The principal whereof are, 1. *Peparethus*, as *Ptolemy*, *Euromus*, as called *Saragino*, as *Cassiodorus*, or *Lemene*, as *Niger* hath it; fortified on the Eastern part with a Castle built upon a Rock. Others of less note are, 2. *Scyathor*, now *Sciathos*, 3. *Scopelos*, 4. *Halonissus*, 5. *Cyrenethus*, now *Pontico*, and 6. *Draconus*: of which little memorable. All which, together with those formerly described on the Coast of *Thrace*, being but the Accessories of the several Continents upon which they border; followed the Fortune of the principal, and were conquered in them.

5. *EUBOEÆA*, known to the Ancients by the names of *Maecia* and *Abantia*, to the Moderns by that of *Negropont*, frontiereth all along the Coast of *Achaia*, parallel to which it is in Fertility; one part hereof being torn away from it by an Earthquake, and lying still so near unto it, that between the Island and the Continent is only a little *Eurippus*, which ebbs and flows seven times in one day. The reason of which when *Aristotle* with these words, *Quia ego non capio te, tu capies me*. In this Island is the Promontory *Caphereus*, where *Nauplius*, the Father of *Palamedes*, placed his false Fires, to the Destruction of so many *Greeks*. For understanding how his Son *Palamedes*, whom he deemed to have been slain by the hand of *Paris*, was treacherously circumvented by the Policy of *Ulysses* and *Diomedes*, he conceived such

a Displeasure against the whole Host of the *Grecians*, that he intended their general Destruction. To this end he caused Fires to be made on the tops of the most dangerous and unaccessible Rocks in this whole Island: which the *Greeks* taking (according to the Custom of the time) to have been the Marks of some safe Haven, made thitherward, and were there most miserably cast away, there perishing 200 Ships, and many thousand men. But when *Nauplius* understood how *Diomedes* and *Ulysses*, whose Ruine he principally intended, were escaped, he drowned himself for very Vexation in this very same place. *Palamedes*, that of his Son's Soit, is said to have invented four of the *Greek* Letters, viz. *β*, *γ*, *ε*, *φ*, to have first instituted Centinels in an Army, and to be the first Inventor of the Watch-word.

It is in length 150 miles, stretched out from the North-west to the South-east; in breadth not above twenty, where it is broadest; the whole compass 365 *Italian* miles. It is the Queen of the *Ægean* Sea, not only for Greatness, but for Fertility and Strength; plentiful in Corn, Wine, Oyl, Fruit and Wood fit for Shipping; enriched with many fair Harbours and capacious Bays, and those well fortified; watered also with the Rivers of *Cireus* and *Melae*, two Rivers of so strange a nature, that if a Sheep drink of the former, his Wool turneth white, but coal-black, if he drink of the latter. For the credit whereof I refer the Reader unto *Syrabo*. Here is also found to be a Stone called *Asiaticus*, which is drawn into thread like Hemp, and good Cloth made of it; which, when it is stained, in stead of being sent unto the Fullers, is thrown unto the Fire and so cleaned. But whether this be so or not, (for I put it only upon hearsay) certain it is that it was once enriched with Mines both of Brals and Iron, though those now decayed; and likewise with Quarries of pure Marble, which continue still.

The Island, before it was conquered by the *Turks*, was very populous, but the people most delighted to live in Villages; the Cities and walled Towns being only three. 1. *Carystos*, anciently *Caryssus*, with little or no variation, but by *Pliny* called *Ægea* and *Chironia*; memorable for its marble Quarries, of which were made the Pillars called *Columnæ Caryssie*. 2. *Chalcis*, now *Negropont*, by the *Turks* named *Erivus*, seated on a Plain near the Water's side, there growing into a fair and goodly Bay called the Gulf of *Negropont*; a populous, strong and wealthy City, so fortified with Walls and Bulwarks, that in the judgment of most men it was held invincible when the *Turks* first fate down before it. Nor was it purchased by the *Turks* (though *Mahomet*, who had took *Constantinople*, undertook the business) at a lower price than the loss of forty thousand men, who were sent upon it; but taken at the last, and the people put unto the Sword, without consideration of Sex or Age. A Town in former times of so great Wealth and Power, capital Region of the which was hence called *Chalcidica*; a strong Influence on the Affairs of *Achaia* also, as being situate so near the Continent, that it was joined to it by a Bridge. When it was in the hands of the Kings of *Macedon*, this Town, together with *Demirius* in *Thessaly*, and the Castle of *Acerocimbis*, were called the *Fasters of Greece*: inasmuch that when the *Roman* Senate commanded *Philip*, the Father of *Perseus*, to let the *Grecians* at liberty; the *Grecians* made answer, that their vains was their Liberty restored them, unless these three Towns were first dismantled. Permitted by the *Romans* to live according to their own Laws, in memory of that Benefit they refused to declare against them.

in behalf of *Antiochus*, who thereupon made himself Master of the Town, and consequently of the Island. But forced to leave the place upon the loss of the Battle at *Therapolya*, it became free again; till finally made subject unto *Rome* with the rest of *Greece*, and with it made a part of the Eastern Empire. In the Division whereof amongst the *Latines* it fell to the share of the *Venetians*; who from hence used with their Gallies to infest the Shores of *Turkey*, and disturb their Trade. Provoked wherewith especially with their taking of *Amus*, a City of *Thrace*, under the Conduct of *Nicolas Canalis*, the *Venetian* Admiral, who in that Enterprize had taken 2000 *Turks*, which he carried with him into this Island, *Mahomet* the Great resolves upon the Conquest of it, and with a puissant Army sets before the Town. And though it cost him dear, yet at last he got it, and therewith all the Island also, which depended on the Fortunes of it, *An.* 1471.

6. *SALAMIS*, is high unto *Megaris*, one of the Provinces of *Achaia*; famous for the Overthrow of the populous Navy of *Xerxes* by the *Athenians* and their Confederates. What was the number of the Soldiers and Gallies of the *Perfian* side hath been already declared. The whole *Græcian* Fleet consisted of no more than 270 Vessels, whereof 127 were rigged and set forth at the charge of the *Athenians* only, the rest by the Associates. Yet was the Admiralty committed to *Emybiades* a *Lacedæmonian*; the *Athenians* preferring the main care of the common Safety before an unreasonable contention for Priority. The *Spartans*, seeing the inequality of Forces, intended not to have hazarded the Battle, but with full sail to have retired to *Peloponnesus*, into which Country the *Perfians* had made Incursions; respecting more the Welfare of their own Country yet defensible, than the desperate estate of *Attica*. This Design was by *Themistocles* (as careful for the estate of *Athens* as they for *Sparta*) signified to *Xerxes*; who, getting between them and home, compelled them to a necessity of fighting, but to his own Ruine. For in the Conflict more than 200 of his Ships were sunk, and most of the rest taken; the Confederates having lost of their Navy forty only. Between the *Athenians* and the *Megarenses* were many Contentions for this Island; the Fortune of the *Athenians* in the end prevailing. It hath in it a City of the same name, the Royal Seat of *Telamon*, the Father of *Ajax*, so famous in the War of *Troy*; more memorable for giving Birth to *Solon* the Legislator of *Athens*, one of the seven Wise men of *Greece*.

7. *EGINA*, now called *Engia*, an Island situate over against *Sium* *Saronicus*, being that Bay of *Corinth* which openeth into the *Ægean*, hence called *Golfo di Engia*; the Realm of *Æacus*, made for his Justice and Integrity one of the three Judges of Hell, the other two being his Brother *Rhadamanthus*, and *Minos* the King of *Crete*. It had formerly been called *Oreone*, and *Oenge*; but took this name from *Ægina*, the Daughter of *Alopus* a King of *Boeotia*, on whom *Jupiter* is said to have begot both *Æacus* and *Rhadamanthus*. The people heretofore were properly called *Æeginenses* and *Æeginæ*, much spoken of in the Wars of *Athens*, from which they are distant about 12 miles. The ground hereof is very stony, but good for Barley, of which it is very plentiful: inhabited in former times by a laborious and thriving People, to whom they gave in those days the name of *Myrmidones*, (the Island being also called *Myrmidonia*) quod Formicarum more Terram foverent, because Emmet-like they digged up and under the Earth, to make it the more fit for Tillage; who dwelt at first in Caves without any Houses. Hence the occasion of the Fable of turning Emmets into Men at the prayer of *Æacus*. Both Tale and People after

(I know not how) were carried into *Theffaly*, where before we found them.

8. The *CYCLADES*, so called because they lie in a Circle round about *Delos*, are in number 53. They are also called the *Islands of the Arches*, because they are in the Sea called *Archipelago*. They stand so close together, that in a clear day a man may see 20 of them at a time; for which cause it is with good reason accounted to be a dangerous place for Sailors in a Storm. The chief of these *Cyclades* are, 1. *DELOS*, quasi *Δῖος* signifying *apertum*; because when all the Earth had abjured the receipt of *Latona* at the request of *Juno*, this Island, then under water, was by *Jupiter* erected aloft, and fit to receive her; and in it was the delivered of *Apollo* and *Diana*: of which thus Ovid;

Erratica Delos

*Errantem accipit, tunc cum levis Insula nava.
Illic incumbens sub Palladis arboræ, Palmæ,
Eddidit invicta geminis Latona novæ.
Unsettled Delos floating on the Wave,
A little Land entertainment gave
To wandering Laton, spight of Juno's Head,
Under Minerva's Palm-tree brought to Bed.*

Notable also is this Island for the Temple of *Apollo*, and a Custom, neither permitting men to die, or Children to be born in it; but sending sick Men and great bellicose Women to *Rhene*, a small Island, and not much distant. By a more ancient name it is called *Orygia*; and by that name mentioned in many of the Poets, both *Greek* and *Latin*. The chief Town of it, called also *Delos*, is situate on a Plain environed with Rocks, near the Hill called *Cynthus*, whence *Apollo* had the name of *Cynthus*, and *Diana* of *Cynthia*; as of *Delius*, and *Delia*, from the Island. In this Town had *Apollo* both his Temple and Oracle, delivered here more plainly than in other places, whence (as some say) it was called *Delos*; the word in *Greek* signifying manifest or apparent: made famous by the resort of people from all places thither, especially from the neighbouring Islands, who sent yearly multitudes of men and troupes of Virgins to celebrate his Solemnities with Herds of Sacrifices. More wealthy afterwards by the removing of the Trade of *Corinth* thither; that Town being utterly destroyed by the *Romans*, and this made choice of by the Merchant; partly by reason of the Immunities of the place, but principally in regard of the convenient situation between *Europe* and *Asia*. It continued in great Wealth and Power till *Mithridates* laid it waste; and at last, on the ceasing of the Oracles, was utterly forsaken, both Town and Island are now called *Solies*. By which name also *Rhene*, an adjoining Island, (before mentioned) is at this day known; chained to the other by *Polyrates* the Tyrant of *Samos*, and now united to it, at the least in name.

2. *TENOS*, by *Aristotle* called *Hydruntia*, by some *Ophiusa*, by the Moderns *Tina*. The chief Town of it is of the same name, so called from one *Tenes* the Builder of it, and giving name to the Island: memorable for a Fountain called *Dipnosus*, of which *Aristotle* and *Athenæus* do both affirm, that the Waters will not mix with Wine: the only Island of this Sea which remaineth under the power of the State of *Venice*, the rest being subject to the *Turks*; deserving therefore the first place in our Description of those Islands that encompass *Delos*, though anciently.

3. *ANDROS*, (prima inter *Cyclades*), was reckoned the chief amongst the *Cyclades*, or first at least in order, because next to *Delos*: originally called *Cænus*, afterwards *Antandros*, and at last *Andros*; from *Andrus* the Son of *Eurimachus*, who founded the chief Town of it, of the same name.

same name also. Memorable for a pleasant Fountain mentioned by *Pliny*, the waters whereof on the Nones of *January* yearly had the taste of Wine. It still retains the name of *Andro*, or *Andri*.

4. *NAXOS*, now *Niesia*, one of the biggest of the Pack, as being about 80 miles in compass. In ancient times it was called *Veneris Insula*, or the Island of *Venus*; afterwards *Dionysia*, by reason of its abundance of Wine, and the goodnefs of those Wines together, consecrated to *Bacchus*, whom the *Greeks* call *Dionysius*. From its wonderful plenty of Wheat called by some *Sicilia minor*, or the Lesser *Sicily*; but at last *Naxos*, from one *Naxus*, who had the Conduct of a Colony of *Carians* thither. But notwithstanding this new name, *Bacchus* did still retain the honour to be worshipped in it, in regard of his love unto the place; marrying here *Ariadne*, (as the Poets fable) whom *Theſeus* had left upon the Rocks: whose Coronet or Chaplet, being by his means made one of the heavenly Constellations, is by *Columella* called *Ardor Naxius*, by the name of the Island; though commonly by Astronomers *Corona Ariades*, from the name of the Lady. The Women of this Island are said by *Pliny* to be delivered generally in the eighth month, as *Bacchus* was born within that term. But it is most certainly famous in true Story for the Beauty and Fertility of it, and for a kind of excellent Marble called *Ophites* or *Serpentinus*; the ground whereof is green, diapered with blew or purple Spots, in much esteem amongst the *Romans*. When these Islands fell to the *Venetians*, they conferred this on one *John Quirino*, a Patrician or Gentleman of that City, (as they did divers of the rest on other undertakers) from whom it came to the Noble Family of the *Crispi*, who held it till the year 1572, when *James* the last of that House sold it to *Selymus* the second.

5. *GTAROS*, a little Island, into which the *Romans* used to banish Delinquents. Hence that of *Juvenal*, cited by *G. Sandys*.

*Ande aliquid brevibus Gyariis vel carcere dignum,
Si vis esse aliquid: Probitas laudatur, & auge.
If thou intend'st to thrive, do what deserves
Short Gyares or Gyves: praise'd Virtue starves.*

6. *PAROS*, now *Pario*, by some of the Ancients, called *Patiya*, by others *Minoa*; but it obtained this new name from *Parus*, a Son of *Jesafon*: memorable for Quarries of the whitest Marble, of which commonly the Statues of the Gods were made, called from hence *Marmor Parium* by the *Latines*. It is in compass about 50 miles, running in a long Plain from East to West, having once a Town of the same name seated in the North, once famous, but now utterly ruined. The Inhabitants heretofore were noted to be very careless of keeping their Promises, and Contracts: whence *Æschylus* grew into a Byword, applied to those who made no reckning of their Promises. There is now a Town in it called *Cephala*, but it is of no great note.

7. *SCYROS*, opposite to *Magnesia* in *Asia Minor*, famous for the Birth of *Neoptolemus* or *Pyrrhus*, and that it was the Lurking-place of *Achilles*. For his Mother *Thetis*, being forewarned by an Oracle that he should be slain in the *Trojan* War, sent him to *Lycomedes* King of this Island, where he was brought up in Woman's Attire amongst the King's Daughters, and deemed a Virgin till by getting *Pyrrhus* on *Deidamia* the King's Daughter it was proved to be otherwise. Others relate that *Ulysses* discovered him by a Wife, who, coming thither like a Pedler or Peti-merchant with Arms and other Ware, to avoid distrust, exposed his Merchandise to the view of the Damsels when the other Ladies falling on the Tires and Laces, *Achilles* took into his hand the Spear and Shield. Which when *Ulysses* had observed, he made him leave that

Company, and away for *Troy*. The handiwork of the fraud take from *Ovid*, thus:

*Conscia venturi Genitrix Nereia Fati
Disimulat Cæcum Natum; & deceptæ omnes
(In quibus Ajax) sumptæ fallacia P'p'itis.
Arma ego feminis animam motura virilem
Mæcibus infero, &c.*

Thus Engliſhed by *G. Sandys* in his Translation of the *Metamorphoses*.

The whole Design in order to relate:

Thetis, force-knowing great *Achilles* Fate;
Disguis'd her Son, so like a Virgin drest,
That all milktook, and *Ætas* with the rest.
When Arms with Womens Trifles, which might blind
Suspect, I brought to tempt a manly Mind.
Yet was the *Heros* Virgin-like array'd;
Who taking up the Shield and Spear, I said,
O Goddeſs-born, for thee the Fate of *Troy*
Her Fall reserves: why doubtst thou to destroy.
Great *Pergamus*? then made him d'off these Weeds,
And sent the Mighty unto mighty *Deeds*.

There is another of this name betwixt *Neopatria* and *Lafbor*, which *Ortelius* conceives to be the Scene of this Action: but the general opinion is for this, (though that be the greater life) to which the situation of it amongst the rest of those Islands where reigned so many of the *Greek* Kings interreſt in the War of *Troy* seems to give good countenance; the name and power of *Greece* not reaching in those days so much towards the North.

8. *MELOS*, situate betwixt *Creta* and *Peloponnesus*, and equally distant from them both. The Promontories of *Seyllene* in the one, and that of *Dalymnium* in the other, shooting out against it. Inhabited in former times by a Colony of *Phœnicians*, who coming out of *Byblus*, a Town of that Country, gave that name unto it: being called *Melos* afterwards by the *Greeks*, from its abundance of Honey. The Birth-place of *Diagoras* the Philosopher, hence famous *Melites*, but more properly *Asæth* or the *Albist*, the first who in those dark times of Ignorance absolutely denied that there was a God. Protagoras *Deos in dubium vocavit*, *Diagoras excelsit*, faith *Lactantius* of him. It is now called *Milo*, round in form, and containing 30 miles in compass. The Soil is sufficiently fruitful in Corn and Oyl, but defective in Wine. Here is great plenty of Marble, curiously bespotted, and no small store of Milstones; as also great quantities of Pitch and Brimstone, and some Sulphury or hot Springs good for many Diseases. The chief Town of it is called *Milo* also.

9. *SERIPHUS*, 20 miles from *Delos*, memorable of old for the Education of *Perfius* the Son of *Danae*. It is reported of this Island, that the Frogs bred there are naturally mute; but such as are brought from other places keep their natural tone: from whence, Proverbially, silent and stillen persons were called *Rane Seriphe*. It is now called *Serphus* or *Serphone*, a stony and rocky Island, and hath a Town of the same name.

10. *CIA*, by some called *CEOS*, and now *Zea*, opposite to the Promontory of *Achaia* called *Sunium*, in compass about 50 miles; made towards the West, in fashion of a Crescent or half-Moon; mountainous and hilly, except towards the North; by *Pliny* said to have been torn from *Eubœa*, by a sudden violence of the Sea, many men perishing in the waters. Of old times it was beset with three fair Towns; 1. *Julis*, 2. *Carthæa*, and 3. *Careſtus*: of which there is nothing now remaining.

Others there are whose names occur amongst the Ancients: as 11. *Miconus*, now called *Mitoe*; 12. *Cylinus*, now *Cavro*; 13. *Siphnus*, now *Siphano*; 14. *Theraſia*, now *Santorini*; 15. *Cimolia*, called formerly *Echinusa*, but now *Pelino*; 16. *Oliarus*, now *Quinimio*, 17. *Sicætes*.

cetus, now *Sicino*; 18. *Polyeros*, now *Falconara*; 19. *Amorgos*, now *Morgo*, one of the biggest of them all, but not else observable.

9. The *SPORADES* are so called from *σπάρσας*, *spargo*, *ex quod in Mari ipse sunt*, & non in Circulo *circulo*, because they lie dispersed and scattered, not formed into a Circle, as the *Cyclades* are. They are in number twelve. viz. 1. *Anaphe*, so called by the *Argonauts*, and the *Argonauts* *Argonauts*, because the Moon did suddenly, and beyond her natural course, appear unto them, then grievously distressed by Tempest. *Apollo* worshipped here is hence called *Anapheus*. It is now usually called *Namfo*. 2. *Atypalea*, now *Stam-palia*, in compass 88 miles, by some of the Ancients called *Thou Trapeza*, or the Table of the Gods. In *Atypalea*, the chief Town of it, was *Apollo* worshipped, from hence sometimes called *Atypalea*. 3. *Helene*, so called from that fair *Greek Dame*, whom *Paris* is here said to have first deflowered; now called *Macronisi*. 4. *Los*, fifteen miles from *Naxos*, where *Homer* is said to have been buried: But others find his Grave at *Naxos*, and some at *Chios*; the difference being almost as great about the place of his Burial as the place of his Birth. Then are 5. *Lagusa*, 6. *Phocusa*, 7. *Phacusa*, 8. *Phloeandros*, 9. *Schinia*, 10. *Strybia*; of little note either in Poetry or Story. And finally, 11. *Thera*, not far from *Agina*, before mentioned, formerly called *Calistis*, but named thus by *Thera* a *Theban* Gentleman, the Son of *Ariston*, conducting thither a Colony of *Spartans* and *Mycians*, (these last of *Thessaly*) cast out of *Lemnos* by *Peleus* in memory of whom, as the Founder of their Name and Nation, the Islanders used to celebrate an annual Feast. A Sedition after happening amongst this People, the weaker party, under the Conduct of one *Battus*, admonished so to do by the Oracle of *Apollo*, passed over into *Africa*, and there built *Cyrene*. The Birth-place of the Poet *Callimachus*, who ascribes his Original to this Island, as himself thus witnesseth,

Καλίδος ἀπογενέσθαι, τὸ δ' ὕψος ἔστω ὅσον
Μήτρον δ' ἴσθαι πατρὸς ἐκ ἡμετέρου.

That is to say,

Caliste, which men *Thera* now do call,
Of my dear Country the Original.

10. *CTTHERA*, now called *Cerigo*, lieth in the bottom of the Sea, not above five miles distant from *Capo Madio* in *Polopemus*; formerly called *Porphyria*, from the abundance of Marble, wherof the Island yields good plenty. It is in compass about 60 miles, enriched with a delightful Soil, and having many Heavens; but those small and unsafe, and very difficult of entrance. It is environed on all sides with Rocks, of themselves inaccessible, by which it is defended from the *Turks*, who hitherto have suffered the *Venetians* to enjoy it, to whom it fell in the division of the Spoil amongst the *Latines*, so often spoken of before. It had a Town of the same name: some two furlongs from the Haven stood the Temple of *Venus*, (the ancientest dedicated to that Goddess which the *Grecians* had) and therein her *Statua* in complete Armour, like another *Pallas*. Out of this Temple (the Ruines wherof are still to be seen) was *Helen*, the Wife of *Menelaus*, willingly ravished by *Paris*, the Son of *Priam*, but not enjoyed by him, till he had brought her to a small Island of the *Sporades* by her name called *Helene*, as before is said. From the Devotions of this People paid so duly to her, did *Venus* get the Adjunct of *Cythera*, by which she is often called in the Poets. Thus, for one, in *Virgil*,

Parce metu, Cytheraea, matrem immota iuvam
Fata tibi.

That is to say,

Drive Fear, fair *Cythera*, from thy mind;
Thou thy Son's Fate immovable shalt find.

And so I pass from the *Aegean* to the *Cretan* Sea, observing this only by the way, that most of the 69 Kings which accompanied *Aegaeon* in the War of *Troy* were Kings only of these small Islands; or else of other places as inconsiderable for wealth and Potency: every small Town and Territory having in those early times amongst the *Grecians* (when Ambition had not taught the Great ones to devour the less) a peculiar King.

9. The Islands of the CRETAN Sea.

THE *CRETAN* Sea is properly that part of the *Aegean* or *Ionian* Sea which lieth about the Shores of *Crete*, and formerly was under the Command and power thereof: as in those times, the Sea about *Carpathus*, another Isle of the *Aegean* had the name of *Carpathian*; and that about *Icaria*, the name of *Iarian*; though situate in the *Aegean* also. The Isles herof are, 1. *Crete*, 2. *Claude*, 3. *Dia*, and 4. *Letoo*; for *Milio* and *Cimolia*, named by *Ptolemy* against the Islands which adjoin on *Crete*, having been already spoken of amongst the *Cyclades*, in the account wherof they pass by consent of Writers.

1. *CRETA*, now *Candie*, hath on the East the *Carpathian* Sea, on the West the *Ionian*, on the North the *Aegean*, on the South the *African* or *Libyck*. In form it extendeth East and West with three Points or Promontories: wherof that towards the East, called anciently *Santonium*, is now called *Capo di Salomone*; that on the South-west, looking towards *Africa*, formerly named *Hermæa*, is now *Capo Gabrassa*; and finally, that on the North-West, towards *Polopemus* of old called *Cimaris*, is now called *Capo Chelfin*. This last is directly opposite to *Malea*, a Promontory of *Laconia*; the Sea betwixt them being so troublesome & tempestuous especially on *Laconia* side, that at last it grew into an ordinary Caveat, *Maleam praterire vis obviscatum que sunt domi, viz.* that he which was to sail by the point of *Malea*, should lay aside the care of all other matters, and attend his present Safety only.

It hath in several Ages and in several Authors obtained several names. By *Homer* and *Aeschylus* it is called *Hecatomplis*, from the number of an hundred Cities then contained in it: by *Pliny* and *Solinus*, *Macaros*, and *Macaronia*; that is to say, the happy Island from the goodness of the Soil and Temper of the Air: by *Stephanus*, *Ida*, from *Ida* a famous Mountain of it: by *Giraldus*, *Telchinni*, from the *Telchinni*, the Priests of *Cybele*, who was here had in great request. At the present it is called *Candia*, either *Candore*, from the Whiteness of the Rocks wherewith it is environed; or from *Candia* the Metropolis or chief Town thereof. But the general name which hath prevailed most in all sorts of Writers is that of *Crete*, so called *quæ Curæ*, by a Syncope or Abbreviation, from the *Cureti*, the first Inhabitants herof, who, together with the *Corymbæes* and *Telchinni*, where the Priests of *Cybele* the principal Goddess of this Island: and they so called *in his nuptiis* from their *Tonsure* or *Shaving* of the Head. A Custom much in use amongst the Priests of some of the *Pagan* Deities, and possibly enough from their transmittal to the Church of *Rome*: And to this Etymology I do rather incline, than either to derive the name from *Crete*, the Son of *Jupiter*, or the Nymph *Ida*, or from *Crete* the Daughter of *Hesperus*, though both these have their Authors also. Nor dare I to reject the Conceit of *Baccharius*, who,

who, fetching the Etymons of most people from the *Panck* Language or Original, will have the *Cretans* to be descended from the *Cerebites*, a Nation of the *Philistines*, well known in Scripture; the word *Cereb* being abbreviated into *Cretb*, from which into *Crete* and *Cretans* is no difficult passage. But in my mind his Conjecture is better than his Proof. For though it may be granted without inconvenience that the chief Arms of the *Philistines* that the *Cretans* anciently were experts at those Weapons 1. *Sun. 3. 1. 3.* and also: yet this concludes no more that the *Cretans* are of the Race of the *Philistines*, than that almost all Nations the ordinary Weapons of most People formerly, till Custom and Experience trained them up to others of a later date; as he himself acknowledgeth in many places of his excellent and elaborate *Tractates*.

In reference to the Heavenly Bodies it is situate under the beginning of the fourth Climate, so that the longest Day in Summer is no more than 14 hours and a quarter: and in relation to the Earth, set in the middle of the Sea, at so even a distance from *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*, as if it naturally designed to be what *Aristotle* hath pleased to call it, *Lady and Mistress of the Sea*. For it is distant from *Polopemus* an hundred miles, as many from *Africa* the less, and not above 150 from the Shores of *Africa*: so verifying that of *Virgil*,

Creta Jovis magni medio iacet Insula Ponto.
Jove's Birth-place *Crete*, a fruitful Land,
In the middle of the Sea doth stand.

It is in length 270, in breadth 50 miles, in compass about 590. The Soil is very fruitful, especially of Wines which we call *Muscadels*, of which they transport yearly 12000 Butts, together with Sugar-Candy, Gums, Honey, Sugar, Olives, Dates, Apples, Oranges, Limons, Raisins, Melons, Citrons, Pomegranates. Yet, as other Countries of the like hot nature, it is not a little deficient in Corn; the most or greatest part of which is yearly brought thither from *Polopemus*.

The Island is very populous, inasmuch that it is thought that upon any sudden occasion the Signioury of *Venice* can raise in it 60000 men able to bear Arms. The people have formerly been good Sea-faring men, a Vertue commulated with many Vices, which they yet retain, as Envy, Malice, and Lying: to which last they are so infinitely addicted, that an horrible Lie was called proverbially *Cretensis mendacium*. This fault was aimed at by the Poet *Epi-venides*, a Native of this Island, whose words are thus cited by *S. Paul* to *Titus*, Chap. 1. v. 12.

Νήπιος δ' Ἀφρτάς, καὶ δόκλει, γότρους ἀέσει.
The *Cretans* always Liers are,
Unruly Beasts of Labour spare.

To which this Proverb may be added, viz. *Tela kátrou nó-ten*, that is to say, There are three Nations whose names begin with the letter *K* worse than any other, viz. *Kátrou*, *Kátrou*, *Kátrou*, the *Cappadocians*, *Cretans*, and *Cilicians*: though some, I know, apply this Proverb to the Cities of *Corinth*, *Capua*, and *Carthage*, beginning all with the same Letter, and all conceived to be very dangerous to the State of *Rome*. At this day they are hick of their old Difficacies, as great Liers and as Idle as ever formerly; Covetous withal, and very subtle, impatient of Labour, and not caring to learn any Science perfectly: only well practised in Shooting, to which they are accustomed from their youth, and therein thought more expert than the *Turks* themselves.

The Language generally spoken is the *Greek* Tongue; though the Gentlemen and Merchant, by reason of their Dependence on the State of *Venice*, speak *Italian* also. Both Languages are used also in Divine Offices: the people

being generally of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*; but the *Latin* Service is used also in many places, since the Subjection of this Island to the *Venetians*. They were converted first into the Faith by *S. Paul* the Apostle, who, having planted the Gospel of Life amongst them, left the watering of it unto *Titus*, whom he made Bishop of this Isle; recommending unto him the Care of the Churches there: with power of Ordination and Ecclesiastical Censure: as appears clearly by the Text. Which power that it belonged to *Titus* as Bishop, and not as their Evangelist only, is affirmed expressly not only by the Subscription of the said Epistle, where he is plainly called *ὁ Κρητικὸς ἐπίσκοπος*, *ἐπίσκοπος*, the first Bishop of the Church of the *Cretans*; but by the concurrent Testimonies of *Enseb. Eccl. Hist. 1. 3. c. 4. S. Amb. in Prefat. ad Tit. S. Hieron. in Tit. c. 1. v. 5.* and in his *Tract de Script. Ecclesiasticis*, *Theodoros*, cited by *Oecumen. in Prefat. ad Ep. Tit. Oecumenius* himself in *Tit. 1.* and finally by *Theophylact* in his Preface to the same Epistle. All which in plain terms call him *Bishop*, and the Bishop of *Crete*; according to that sense and meaning of the word *ἐπίσκοπος*, as it was used in their times, distant from *Presbiteriarches*, which whilst wholly under the *Greek* State of *Venice*, there is but one Archbishop, which is he of *Candia*, the chief City; and eight Bishops only, besides the titular Patriarch of *Constantinople*, who hath there been always honoured with that empty Title ever since the Recovery of that City from the Western Christians.

Famous was this Island amongst the Ancients for many things memorized both by the Poets and old Historians. For here reigned *Saturn* in the first Ages of the World, Father of *Jupiter*, who was born here, and secretly nursed in the Hill called *Ida*. For seeing that, by the Compact betwixt *Saturn* and his Brother *Titan*, *Saturn* was to enjoy the Kingdom for his own Life only, but all his Male-children to be murdered as soon as born; *Jupiter*, by the care of his Mother *Cybele*, was conveyed away, and secretly nursed in Mount *Ida*, as before was said: the Crying of the Infant being drowned by the noise of loud-sounding Cymbals, purposely used by his Rockers to avoid Discovery. Whence afterwards by his Rockers to avoid of *Cybele*, used in her Sacrifices the like musical Instruments, continually sounding, and withal flaking of their Heads, (like Fiddlers) in an antick and ridiculous manner. Alluding whereunto thus the Poet *Claudian*;

Non te progenium Cybeleus *Aure canoro*
Lustravit Corybas.

That is to say,

No *Cybelian* Corymb that day
That thou was born did on his Cymbal play.

Here also lived *Minos* and *Rhadamantus*, whose Law were after imitated in the prime Cities of *Greece*, and who, for their Equity on Earth, are feigned by the Poets to be (together with *Aeneas*) the Judges in Hell. In this Island also lived the lewdly-lustful *Pasiphae*, Wife of *Minos*, who is fabled by the Poets (if it be a Fable) to have doated on a white Bull, who, they say, begat on her the *Minotaur*. *Dadalus* having framed for her an artificial Cow, into which the conveyed her self, and by that means obtained her desire. The Fable is thus expounded, that *Pasiphae* was in love with *Taurus*, one of *Minos*'s Secretaries: whose company by the Pandarism of *Dadalus* the enjoining, was delivered of two Sons, one called *Minos*, the other *Taurus*, and whereas it is said that the *Minos*

Taur was slain by *Theseus*; like enough that the annual Tribute of 7 Children, which the *Athenians* paid to *Minos*, was laid up in some Prison, *Minos* and *Taurus* being the Keepers or Gaolers. As for the action of *Pasiphaë*, I think it not altogether impossible to be true, considering how *Dionysius*, to verify the old relation, exhibited the like beastly Spectacle in his Amphitheatre at Rome: for thus faith *Marialis*.

Justulus Pasiphaen Dictæo, credite Taurō
Jedimus; accipit Fabula prisca fidem.
Nec se miratur Cæsar longæva Vestustas:
Quicquid Fama canit, donat Arena tibi.
The Fable's prov'd a truth, our eyes did see
The Cretan Bull port with *Pasiphaë*.

What cause hath then Antiquity to glory?
We saw it done, the only heard the Story.

Finally, here was the so-much-celebrated *Labyrinth*, made by *Dædalus* for the including and safe-keeping of the *Minotaurus*; so full of various Windings and turnings, that when any one was got to the end thereof, it was impossible for him to come out but by the help of a Clew of thread. By his *Minotaur* (half a Man, half a Bull) the Children of the *Athenians*, paid yearly to *Minos* in way of Tribute, are said to be murdered, till he was killed by *Theseus*, Son of *Aegæus* King of *Athens*, with whom *Ariadne* the Daughter of *Minos* falling in love, taught him a means to kill the Monster, and gave him the Clew of thread, before spoken of, to conduct him out again: the Moral or History whereof hath been shewn before. Nor must it be forgotten, that *Sirabo* the Geographer, who flourished in the time of *Tiberius Cæsar*, was of *Cretan* Parents, (though born in the City of *Anafira* in the Realm of *Pontus*;) which adds unto this Island as much true Renown as any of the Fictions or Stories (be which they will) of former times.

Things most observable at the present are these that follow. 1. That it breeds no serpents, no venomous Worm, or ravenous or hurtful creature; so that their Speech grew very securely without any Shepherd. 2. If a Woman bite a Man any thing hard, he will hardly be cured of it: which if true, then the last part of the Priviledge foregoing (of breeding no hurtful creature) must needs be false. 3. They have an Herb called *Alimos*, which if one chew in his mouth he shall feel no Hunger for that day, if *Quade* may be believed, who speaks it. 4. Here is (besides many other medicinal Herbs) that called *Diklammum*, or *Diklamum*, of special virtue against Poison, either by way of Prevention or present Cure, peculiar only to this Island: it affordeth great store of *Laudanum*, a Juice or Gum forced with incredible labour out of a certain Tree called *Cissus*, of which the Mountains yield abundance; good to cause Sleep, if moderately or carefully taken; but if not very well prepared and taken with moderation, it brings the last Sleep upon a man, out of which he is not to be awakened till the Sound of the last Trumpet raise him.

Chief Mountains of it are, 1. *Ida*, now *Pyloritis*, situate in the midst of the Island, begirt about with many fair and pleasant Villages, sheltered by it from the violence of Wind and Sun; the Hill being so high, that from the Top hereof both sides of the Island may be easily seen. Here *Jupiter* is said to have been secretly nursed, from hence called *Idæa*. And at the bottom of it the *Cretans* use to shew some tracts of the ancient *Labyrinth*, being indeed no other then the Ruines of some larger Quarry: the *Labyrinth* made by *Dædalus* being so decayed in the time of *Pliny*, that he knew not where to find any Ruines of it. 2. *Dictæ*, now called *Selvia*, in some places *Luffs*, so high, that all the Winter long it is covered with Snow; yet all the sides thereof are garnished with Cypress-trees: a Mountain of such fame, that the whole Island sometimes had the name of *Diklæa*, the City *Diklæa*, the Promontory

Diklæum, and the Herb *Diklammus*, all seeming to take name from hence. 3. *Lenæi*, a long Chain of Hills, so named from the Whiteness of them, now called *di Madara*, and by some *La Spachia*.

Rivers of any eminence here are few or none. The principal of those that be, are, 1. *Nilopotamus*, 2. *Scaphius*, 3. *Epicedmus*, and, 4. *Divoiro*, towards the North; 5. *Populinar*, towards the East; and 6. *Limen*, towards the West: none of them navigable; or capable of Ships of Burthen, scarce of little Barks. But that defect is supplied by the neighbouring Sea, which affordeth many Creeks and Bays, some capacious Havens, and great force of Fish, among which a kind of bearded Mullet, reckoned among the Delicacies of the ancient *Romans*. By the convenience of which Harbours, their Fish-trade, and the situation of it in the midst of the Sea, the People anciently were esteemed so good Sea-faring men, that when the people of those times did tax a man with any incredible report, they used to say, *Cretensis nefcis Pelagus*, meaning thereby the matter to be as improbable as for one of *Crete* to be no Sailor.

In former times there were reckoned in this Island a hundred Cities, whence it was called *Hecatropolis*; of which about 40 were remaining in the time of *Ptolemy*, for so many of their names he gives us. Those of most note were, 1. *Gnosus*, the Seat-royal or Court of *Minos*, whence *Ariadne* the Daughter of *Minos* had the name of *Gnosia*, in former times called *Ceratus*, from a little River or creek there running not far off. 2. *Cydon* or *Cydonia*, a rich City, (as the former) memorable for an excellent kind of Apples, which the *Latines* called *Poma Cydonia*, amongst them they were in great request, as they are at this day (though by the name of *Adam's Apples*) amongst the *Turks*: the most ancient of all the Cities of *Crete*, many of which were at first Colonies of this; for which reason it was called commonly *Mater urbium*. 3. *Eleuthera*, as *Ptolemy*, *Erythræa*, as the printed Copies of *Florus* corruptly call it; one of the first Cities taken here by the *Romans*. 4. *Miletum*, mentioned by *Strabo*, though omitted by *Ptolemy*; the place in which *S. Paul* left *Timotheus* sick, as it is mentioned 2 *Tim.* 4. 20, which happened when the Apostle hovered over that Coast, as is said *Act.* 27. 7, 8, &c. For that it could not be that *Miletum* to which he congregated the Elders of *Ephesus*, appears by his being at *Hierusalem*, *Act.* 21. 17. and other circumstances of the Story. 5. *Gorynia*, nigh to which stood the *Labyrinth* made by *Dædalus*: memorable also for a Reed, growing on the River *Lenæus*, (near to which it stood) of which they made their strongest Arrows, by *Virgil Aeneid.* 11. called *Spicula Gorynia*; as for a light Garment much used by Hunters, which *Claudian* calls *Gorynia vestem*, apprelling *Diana* the great Huntress with it. 6. *Diklammum*, as *Ptolemy*, or *Diklæa*, as *Pliny* calls it; so named from the Hill *Diklæa*, near to which it is situate: one of the chief Cities of the North part of this Island; as 7. *Ampeles*, so named from its plenty of Vines, was upon the South. 8. *Minoa*, a Port-town, (now *Ameria*) so named from *Minos*, in the East; and 9. *Corymbæ*, on a Promontory of the same name, in the West side of it.

But these, and almost all the rest spoken of by *Ptolemy*, being so destroyed by Time and Wars that the ruins of them are hardly visible, we must behold it in the present condition and estate thereof; divided into four parts or Provinces, according to the names and number of the four chief Cities; that is to say, 1. *Sittia*, 2. *Candis*, 3. *Retimio*, and 4. *Canea*.

In the first part, called *SITTIA*, lying towards the East, are 74 Villages, and but 17 Parishes, of which fix only are of the Church of *Rome*, the residue: hold-

ding the Communion of the Church of *Greece*. The principal whereof are, 1. *Sittia*, or *Cytia*, conceived by some to be the *Cyrene* of *Ptolemy*, a small Town but populous, and very well fortified. 2. *Gierapetra*, betwixt *Sittia* and *Candia*, situate on the Sea-side, on a lofty Rock, at the bottom whereof is said to be a dangerous Whirl-pool, supposed to be the *Panorua* of *Ptolemy*. 3. *S. Alacra*, the dwelling-place of one of the Bishops of the *Latines*. 4. The second part hereof, called the Territory of *CANDIA*, lying directly West of *Sittia*, are reckoned 465 Towns and Villages, making up amongst them 99 Parish Churches, whereof 77 are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, the other 22 only of the Church of *Rome*. Of these the principal are, 1. *Candia*, an Archbishop's See, the Metropolis or Head City of the Island, which takes name from hence. It is situate on the North-coast hereof towards the *Aegean*, beautified with a safe and commodious Haven, and fortified so strongly, that it seems impregnable, affirmed by some to be the *Mætinum* of the Ancients; but I find no such place in *Ptolemy*, or in *Orelinus* his *Thesaurus*. The City is fair and large, built for the most part of Free-stone, with low Roofs, after the manner of *Italy*, the Streets broad and spacious from whence a fair and pleasant plain leadeth to a place called the Cave of *Minos*, reported by the common people to be the Sepulchre of *Jupiter*. 2. *Malsifin*, 3. *Themene*, 4. *Cafel novo*, 5. *Bonifacio*, 6. *Belvedere*, 7. *Mirabello*; of which little memorable.

3. In the third part, being the Territory of *RETI-MO*, formerly *Rhibymina*, lying North-west of the Territory of *Candia*, are accounted 265 Towns and Villages, making up 44 Parishes, whereof 36 are *Grecians*, and but 8 of the *Latines*. The chief of which are, 1. *Retimo*, on the Shore of the Northern Sea, as *Candia* is, well fortified, and a Bishop's See; but not else observable. 2. *Milopotamus*, an Episcopal See also, so called of the River *Milopotamus*, on which it is seated. 3. *Agistiman*, 4. *Mandrus*, 5. *Lap-pa*; hardly worth the naming.

4. In the fourth and last part hereof, being the Territory of *CANEA*, taking up all the West of the Island, are contained 240 Towns and Villages, distributed into 47 Parishes; of which 33 are of the *Greek* Church and the 14 remaining of the Church of *Rome*. Those of most note are, 1. *Canea*, built by a Colony or Plantation of *Venetian* Gentlemen, on the North coast also, supposed to stand in the same place where once *Cydon* did; second to none but *Candia* for Wealth and Beauty, but far before it for the commodiousness of the Port, commonly called *Porto della Suda*, capable of more than a thousand good Gallies at a time; and therefore strongly fortified with two Cittadels or Castles, on each side of the Haven one, as the Door and Entrance of the Country. 2. *Chiflano*, in *Latine* called *Cissano*, old and decayed, the Walls thereof only holding good against the Ruines of time; situate in a low Moorish place towards the *Aegean*. 3. *Selino*, built upon a Hill on the Sea-side, opposite to *Chiflano*. 4. *Spachia*, or *Spachia*, situate at the foot of the Mountains of old called *Lenæi*, now *della Spachia*, from this Town: unvalled, but fortified with a Castle; built for a place of Refuge against the Incursions of such Pirates as annoyed the Coasts, in which the Governour for this part hath his chief Abode. By which account it will appear that in the whole Island there are no more than 1044 Towns and Villages, and 207 Parish Churches of which there be but 48 which are accounted Members of the Church of *Rome*, the residue, 159 in number, retaining their Communion with the Church of *Greece*.

As for the Story of this Island, we can ascend as high as the times of *Saurus*, for his Antiquity affirmed to be the Son of *Uranus* and *Phæa*, or of Heaven and Earth;

who, better favoured by his Mother obtained the Kingdom of *Crete*, his elder Brother *Titan* being quite excluded. Hereupon Wars arising betwixt the Brethren, it was ordered thus, That *Saurus* for his own Life should enjoy the Kingdom, which after his decease should return to the *Titans*; and for the performance of this Contract, the Sons of *Saurus* were to be strangled as soon as born. But *Cybele* the Wife of *Saurus* unawares to her Husband, preserved first *Jupiter*, and after other of her Sons, which coming to the knowledge of *Titan* and his Sons, they made War against *Saurus*, but in conclusion were subdued by the Aid of *Jupiter*: whence grew the Fable of the *Titans* warring against the Gods, *Saurus* and *Jupiter* his Son being after reckoned in that number. The *Titans* being vanquished, a new War arose betwixt *Saurus* and *Jupiter*, occasioned only (as many unnatural Wars since these times have been) by *Envy* and *Jealousies*: which ending at the last in the Flight of *Saurus*, *Jupiter* became sole King of *Crete*, reigning there in great power and honour till the time of his death; and dying was interred at *Gnosus*, with this Inscription or Epitaph in old *Greek*, *Saurus*. After his death he was worshipped by the blind Gentiles as the chief of their Gods, and honoured frequently with the Title of *Idæus* *διδώτης* *τῶν δούτων* the Father both of Gods and Men: though most incongruously and absurdly, as *Lactantius* noteth, there being many thousands living in and before the times of *Saurus*, when *Jupiter* was yet unborn. But to proceed; he being dead, *Minos*, begotten by him on *Europa*, succeeded here; who, wisely taking the advantage which the convenience situation of the Island gave him, made himself Master of the Seas, and afterwards enlarged his Dominions by the Conquest of the *Ægean* and *Athenians*, upon which last he imposed, amongst other hard Conditions, a Tribute of seven Male Children yearly to be kept as Hostages, which determined after three years by the Valour and good Fortune of *Theseus*. But *Minos* being slain in *Sicily* and his Posterity extinct, the *Cretans* would no longer of a Commonwealth or Free State: The Laws and Ordinances whereof, first devised by *Minos*, were of such esteem that they were much imitated by *Lycurgus*, and are at large described by *Aristotle* in the 2. Book of his *Politics*, ch. 8. Under the Government it continued till the *Romans*, having taken in all the rest of *Greece*, picked a Quarrel with them. For though it was pretended that they had been aiding unto *Mithridates* in his War against *Rome*; yet *Florus* states the matter rightly, affirming that the War was undertaken on no other ground, but *sola nobilitas Insularum vicendi cupiditate*, out of a covetous desire only of subduing such a wealthy Island. And to this War they went with so proud a Confidence, that *M. Anthony*, who commanded in it, carried more Chains with him to bring home his Prisoners then Arms to conquer them. An Infolence which he paid right dear for, his Navy being vanquished by the *Cretans*, the bodies of his slain Souldiers hanged upon the Masts, and himself perishing in the Action by a fit of Sickness. *Antyllus*, who succeeded him in that charge, went on more successfully, first taking *Gnosus*, *Eleuthera*, or (*Erythræa*, as *Florus* calls it) and *Cydon*, their principal Cities, and not long after all the Island; using the vanquished Islanders with such Inhumanity, that most of them poisoned themselves to avoid his Cruelty: rewarded with no other Honour for so great a Victory, than that he got the surname of *Creticus*; his Triumph being denied by the Faction of *Pompey*, against which he had put himself upon that Service. This being added by the *Roman* Empire, it was after united unto *Cyrenica* by *Augustus Cæsar*.

both making up one Province only, governed by a Proconsul till the death of *Nero*; afterwards separated from it, but the time I find not. During the Reign of *Constantine*, in 36 years between there fell no Rain, so that this Island was in a manner wholly defoliated. But *Helena*, the Mother of *Constantine*, having obtained Rain for it by her prayers to God, it was again new peopled by several Colonies brought out of *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Greece*, and the parts adjoining. By *Constantine* made a Province of the Diocese of *Macedonia*, it continued a Member of the Eastern Empire till the time of *Michael Palaeologus*, when it was subdued by the *Saracens*; from them recovered by the more fortunate conduct of *Nicephorus Phocas*, who came unto the Empire, Anno 963. In the division of the Spoil amongst the *Latines*, it was first given to *Boniface* Marquis of *Monferrat*; by him surrendered willingly to the State of *Venice*, who had a mind to be possessed of all the Islands of that Empire: he being recompensed with the Kingdom of *Thessaly*, the fair and wealthy City of *Thessalonica*, and many Towns and Territories in *Peloponnesus*. Under that State it still continueth, in vain attempted by *Selinus* the second in the year, 1571, at what time he invaded and conquered Cyprus and gallantly defended for this year last past against all the Forces of *Turkey* the late Grand Scignior. What the Success of this War will be, we shall see hereafter.

For the Defence hereof against the Injurments of the Inhabitants, who did at first ill brook the *Venician* Government, there are some standing Forces kept in constant pay; besides such as are maintained in several Garrisons, the City of *Canea* having in it no fewer than six Companies of Soldiers, *Candia* 2000 Soldiers, and the lesser Cities proportionably: over which there is set forth a Guard, that a Natural *Cretan* is not permitted to enter weaponed into any of them. And for the preservation of their Interest in it from foreign Power, they have furnished the Island with 70 or 80 Gallies for the defence of the Shores; and have exceedingly fortified the Haven of *Suda* with two strong Castles, this Haven being capable of more than 100 Vessels, and therefore meritoriously reputed the Door and entry into the Country. It is reported that the King of *Spain*, *Phillip* the second, did offer unto the *Venicians* for this Haven money more than enough; but it could not be accepted. For though the *Spaniards* seemed only to intend the Retreat and relief of his own Navy when he should undertake any Expedition against the *Turk*; yet the *Venicians* saw, that by this Haven he might at all times awe, and when he listed surprize, the whole Country.

II. The other Islands of this Sea; as of lesser note, will be pass'd over in few words. The first of which is called *CLAUDE*, mentioned *Ald.* 27. 16. situate on the South-west of *Crete*, by *Mela* called *Gaulos*; wherein in *Pliny's* time was a Town or City named *Gaudos*, now called *Gozo*, with the Island. 2. *DIA*, now *Standa*, a very small Island, and of little note. 3. *LETOA*, on the South-east of *Crete*, now called *Christina*. And 4. *AGILIA*, or *Regidia*, by *Pliny* *Agilia*, mer: in the Sea towards *Peloponnesus*; now called *Ceceri*; so by *Sophianus*. Of which and others of less note (if less may be) there is no more to be said, but that they have always followed the Fortunes of *Crete*, on which they seem to have their principal Dependence.

10. The Islands of the IONIAN Sea.

THE IONIAN Sea is so called either from *Ionia*, the Son of *Dryobachius*, whom *Heracles* having ignorantly killed threw into this Sea, giving that name unto it to preserve his memory, as *Diodorus* is

of opinion, or from *Ionia* a Region in the Extremity of *Calabria*, as *Solinus*; or from *Io*, the Daughter of *Jacchus*, as *Lycophron* the Poet hath it. It containeth all the part of the *Mediterranean* which lyeth from the *Argolis* or *Cretan* Seas unto the *Adriatick*, from which it is parted about *Epidamnus*, (otherwise called *Dyrrhachium*): as is said by *Protemy*; or rather at the footing out of the *Alpevranian* Hills, as is affirmed by *Pliny* and other Writers; and so along the shores of the two *Calabria's* to the Isle of *Sicily*. Chief Isles whereof which pertain in the account of *Greece* (for the thereof lying on the Coast of *Italy* we have spoken elsewhere) are, 1. the *Strophades*, 2. *Zacynthus*, 3. the *Echinades*, 4. *Cephalenia*, 5. *Corcyra*, and 6. *Ithaca*.

1. THE STROPHADES are two small Islands, now called *Strivadi*, lying against *Misene* in *Peloponnesus*, famous for nothing but the *Harpyes*, ravenous Birds, affirmed to have the faces of Women, but the Talons of Vultures, sent by the offended Gods (as the Fable goes) for the punishment of *Phineas* King of *Arctia*, who had put out the Eyes of his Sons by a former Wife at the instigation of their Stepdame: For which he was so plagued by these *Harpyes*, that he could sit no Meat on his Table wherefore he was, but these ravenous creatures first devoured it, and then bewrayed the Dishless which it was. Much pitted by the *Argonauts*, when he had courteously entertained, they sent *Zethus* and *Cadmus*, the winged Illite of *Boreas* and *Oribylis*, who drove them thence, and having pursued them to those Islands, turned back again: whence the name of *Strophades*. Under which Fable was conveyed the sad condition of ignorant or unhappy Princes, devoured by Flatterers, Informers, and false Accusers, by whom their name and Government was made distastful, till by good Council they had purged their Courts of such ugly Monsters: concerning which *Alphonsus* King of *Naples* was used to say, that these *Harpyes* had left the *Strophades* and dwelt at *Rome*. They are inhabited only by some few *Greek* Fishers: and in one of them there is a Spring of Fresh Water, which hath his Fountain in *Peloponnesus*, and passing under the Sea riseth here. The *Greek* Priests are called *Caloires*, quasi καλοὶ ἱερεῖς boni Sacerdotes; about 30 in number. They wear long Hair, never cut Filch, and but seldom Filch, feeding usually on Herbs, Olives, Oyl, and the like. They never go out of the Islands, neither do they on any occasion permit Women to come amongst them. They all labour for their Sustainance, some in Tillage, some in Vineyards, some in Fishing; so that among very many of them, three or four only can read. But of these somewhat hath been said elsewhere already.

2. ZACYNTHUS, or *Zant*, is 60 miles in compass, and distant from *Peloponnesus* 20 miles, so called of *Zacynthus*, Son to *Dardanius*. The Country is wonderfully stored with Oyl, Wines and Currants: of which last they made yearly 150000 Zecechins for their own Coffers, and 48000 Dollars which they pay for Customs to the Seigniorship of *Venice*. They were a very poor people when the *English* used to traffick there first; but now they grow rich and proud. At our Merchants first frequenting the Country, they much marvelled to what end they bought so many Currants: and demanded whether they used to dye Cloaths or fat Hogs with them, for so they themselves did: but now they have learned a more profitable use of them. Here are also very good Salt-pyres, Fresh water plenty, but little or no Wood, and less Corn: their ground being husbanded, as the case stands with them, to their better advantage; but to

that many times they are ready to starve, if either the Wind or the Sea prove crofts unto them, and hinder them from fetching their Provisions both of Flesh and Corn out of *Peloponnesus*, in which respect they are fain to hold fair Quarter with the *Turks*, considering how easie it is for him to distress them for want of Victual. The Island is much troubled with Earthquakes, commonly once a week, in regard whereof they build their Houses very low; and when they perceive them coming, the Priests are to ring the Bells, to stir the people to Prayers. They have a Custom here at Weddings to invite many young men, whom they call *Compeers*, of which every one giveth the Bride a Ring: which done, it is accounted as detestable a Sin as Incest for them to accompany her in any carnal kind: and therefore they chuse such to be their *Compeers* who have formerly been suspected of too much Familiarity with her.

The Island is very populous and well inhabited, but the people of a spiteful and vindictive nature, not to be reconciled, if angered. It containeth in it 48 Towns and Villages, the chief whereof, which passeth by the name of a City, is called also *Zant*, stretched out about the length of a mile on the foot of a mountain, but in breadth not answerable; beautified with a fair and convenient Haven opening towards *Greece*, safe from the danger of Pirates, though not of Winds, capable of great Fleets of shipping both for bulk and number, and so frequented from all parts, that he who hath a mind to go out of it need not stay for a passage. Yet, notwithstanding this great Concurrence and resort of Strangers, the Town is rather rich than well-built or beautiful; the Streets hereof being uneven and rugged, and the Buildings by reason of the often Earthquakes, very low. On the East side of it, on a round steep Mountain, standeth a very strong Castle, a little City of it self, well garrisoned, impregnable fortified, and of a very difficult Entrance: which commandeth not the City and Harbour only, but a great part of the Sea adjoining. Upon the Wall thereof continually stands a Watchman, to descry what Shipping is at hand, and hangeth out as many Flags as he discovereth Vessels. And over the Door of the Town-Hall (the better to instruct the Magistrates in their publick Duty) it is said these Verses are inscribed:

His locus 1. odii, 2. amari, 3. punis, 4. conservati, 5. honorati, 1. Nequitiam, 2. Pæcem, 3. Crimina, 4. Jura, 5. Probos.
Thus Enlightened by *George Sandys*, whence I had the *Latine*. This place doth 1. hate, 2. love, 3. punish, 4. keep, 5. requite, 1. Voluptuous Riot, 2. Peace, 3. Crimes, 4. Laws, 5. the Upright.

In matter of Religion, the people, being generally *Greek* both in Birth and Language, are for the most part of that Church also; but some adhere unto the *Latine*, each party having their own Bishop: of which the *Greek* Bishop hath his Cathedral in the Church of *S. Nicholas*, near unto the Haven which it gives name to, and therein a Monastery of *Caloires*, or Monks of *Basil*; the *Latine* Bishop hath his Residence and Cathedral within the Castle, and therein a Convent of *Franjiscans*. The Jews have in this Town their Synagogue also; but there are not many of them, if not lately increased. In Civil matters they are subject to the State of *Venice*, the Governour hereof (whom they call the *Providore*) having his Residence in the Castle, assisted by a Chanceller and two Counsellors (all Gentlemen of *Venice*) whom they change every third year. The Fortunes of this Island in former times, and by what means it fell to the *Venicians*, we shall shew anon.

3. The ECHINADES are certain little Islands, or rather great Rocks, now called *Cmzolari*, famous for

nothing but the great Battel of *Lepanto*, fought nigh them betwixt the *Venicians* and the *Turks*; the *Turks* having in their Navy 207 fail of Ships, the *Venicians* and their Confederates but 145 of all sorts. But it pleased God to give the Victory to the weak: the Issue of it being such, that the *Turks* lost 29000 men who were killed in the Fight, 29000 more which were taken prisoners 140 of their Gallies, 400 pieces of Ordnance, and 200 Christian Captives which were then redeemed: the Christians buying abouts; too great a price, could it have been purchased with a less. A Victory obtained not far from the point of *Allium*, wherein *Augustus* overcame the Navy of *Marcus Antonius*, and thereby got the Empire to himself alone, of which before he was but Joint-tenant with his Adversary. So that this place seems to be marked out for a Stage of eminent Actions; and that this latter Naval fight was but the second part of the first.

But to return unto these Islands. They stand just against the Mouth of the River *Achelous*, of which stands the Poet, *Tibulds* object at *Achelous* Echinas exuv.

Fierce *Achelous* with the Sea is mixt

Where the *Echinades* (great Rocks) are fixt: These Islands are in number five, feigned by the Poets to be fo by many *Naiades* or Sea Nymphs, whom *Achelous* the River-God upon some displeasure metamorphosed into these Rocky Islands. But the truth is; that they were caused by the Dirt and Mud which this River carried with it into the Sea, where at last is settled to firm Grounds. Of which himself faith thus in *Ovid*,

Fluctus nostrigque marique

Continuum deducti humum, pariterque revelis
In totidem mediis quo cernis Echinas undas.
The fury of the Sea-waves and mine own Continual heaps of Mud and Earth drew down; Which, parted by the inter-running Seas, Made, as thou seest, these five *Echinades*.

5. CEPHALENTIA, the most populous Island of this Sea, is situate over against *Acarnania*, part of the Province of *Epirus*; having on the South-east *Zant*, on the North-west *Corcyra* or *Corfu*; in length containing 80 miles, 40 in breadth, the whole compass being reckoned at 160. Once called *Tetrapolis*, from the number of four Cities in it; but three of them were decayed in the time of *Protemy*, who takes notice of no more but one, and that of the same name with the Island. It is woody and mountainous in most places, but the Mountains intermix with Valleys and the Woods with Campain: plentiful in Wheat, Honey, Currans, Manne, Oyl, incomparable, though not long-lasting, Muskadeles; as also in Cheefe, Wool, Turkeys, and Powder for the dying of Scarlets. So deftitute of Water, as having no River; and not many Fountains, that when their Cattel would drink, they gape both morning and evening to receive the Dew distilling insensibly from the Clouds.

The People are for the most part *Greek*; some few *Italians*, naturals of the Seigniorship of *Venice*, being intermixt: the whole number of the Inhabitants computed at 6000 Families, the number of the Towns and Villages to 200 or thereabouts. The principal whereof are, 1. *Cephalenia*, now *Cefalonia*, fortified with good Works, and a very strong Castle. 2. *Argosoli*, a Haven-town, distant six miles from *Cefalonia*: the Port whereof is capable of a sufficient Navy. 3. *Sidra*, another Port-town also, lying towards the South.

As for the Fortunes of this Island, it was first called *Melana*, after *Telebo*; and being known by that name was made subject to *Thebes*, by the Valour and good Conduct of *Amphitryo*, the *Theban* General, by whom

Pteridates, the King thereof, was slain in Battell. During which War, and the Stay of *Ambrosius* in this Island, it happened that *Cephalus*, a noble *Athenian*, having by misadventure killed his Wife *Procris* with an Arrow which he shot at a Deer, not daring to abide in his own Country, fled unto *Ambrosius* his old Friend, then newly victorious over the *Teleboans*; who, pitying his case, made him the Governour of this Island, since, from his name, called *Cephalonia*. Having continued for some time in the power of the *Teleboans*, it passed, together with *Zant* and some other Islands, into the hands of the *Macedonians*; from whom, in the declining of their Affairs, the *Athenians* got the Isle of *Zant*, and the *Ætolians* *Cephalonia*. But long they had not held them when the *Romans* began to look towards *Greece*, who under colour of setting the Continent at liberty, made themselves Masters of both the Islands, that so they might at leisure possess the whole, as in fine they did. In the Division of the Empire they fell, as parts of *Greece*, to the *Constantinopolitans*: and on the taking of that City by the Western Christians, they fell, with almost all the rest of the Islands, to the State of *Venice*, the Governours whereof, retaining *Corfu* and some other of most Importance in the hands of the Seignior, permitted these (as many other of less note) unto private Adventurers. At the conclusion of the Peace between *Mahomet* the Great and the State of *Venice*, these two, with *Neritos*, or *Leucas*, (spoken of in *Epirus*) were seized on by that Tyrant in despite of that Treaty or Conclusion, as belonging unto private persons, not to the Republick: but were recovered afterwards by the *Venetians* in the Reign of *Bajazet* the second, in the name of the State; and as parts thereof are still governed and defended by them.

5. *CORCYRA*, (now *CORFU*) more anciently was called *Phœcia*; but took this latter name from a Nymph so called, whom *Neptune* is reported to have here deflowered. It is situate over against *Epirus*, from thence 12 miles distant, stretched out from East to West in the form of a Bow, the length thereof being 54 miles, 24 the breadth; and so it is the biggest of the 7e Seas. Communionly seated for the Trade and Estate of *Venice*, as the Centre of their Dominion and Command by Sea.

The Southern parts hereof are mountainous and defective in Water, much subject to be blown with Southernly Winds; and therefore they grow little Corn, and plant less Fruits. The Northern parts are level and delightful, adorned with whole Groves of Limons, Oranges, Fig-trees, Olives, and Pomegranates; enriched with plenty of Grain, abundance of Wines, great store of Oyl and Olives, and much excellent Honey; blest with a very temperate and healthful Air, made odoriferous by most pleasant and sweet-smelling fruits, which grow most plentifully in each part hereof. *Alcinous*, who to court-cousily entertained *Ulysses* after his Shipwreck, was once King of this Iland; whose Gardens, answerable to the natural Delights and Sweetness of it, are so much celebrated by the Poets. One of which thus

Quid bifera Alcinoi referam Pomaria, vosque

Which may be *Englisht* in these words,

Why should I name *Alcinous* fertile Ground,
 A Tree which never without Fruit are found?

And Trees which never without Fruit are found?
Towns of most note and strength herein are, 1. *Pa*

gipoli, 2. *Castello S. Angelo*, of good esteem in respect of many others, but far short of 3. *Corfu*, the chief and strongest of the Island, which the *Turks* have found by their frequent Repulses to be impregnable. For it is situated at the foot of a Mountain, on the top of which are built two inaccessible Fortresses, as being strongly fenced

with a natural Rock; the one called the *old Forts*, and the other the *New*: justly effected the chief Bulwarks of *Venice*, whose Trade and Power would soon decay should their Forts be lost. For which cause the two Governors (for each Fort hath one) are sworn before the State of *Venice*, never to hold Intelligence with one another by word or writing; lest by the Treachery of the one, the other might be wrought also from his Faith and Duty. Neither is their Command here for more than two years; their Commission then terminating, and new Successors being sent them. The Town is inhabited for the most part by *Gracians*, as is all the remainder of the Island; united with one of the most commodious Havens in all the *Adriatick*, and the Residence of an Archbishop. A Town of free publick Consequence, in regard of the Strength and Situation, that it is accounted of as the Key of *Europe*, and one of the strongest Bulwarks of *Christianity*, against the Encroachment of the *Turks*. The Story of it since dismembered from the Eastern Empire, at the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latines*, we have said before.

6. *ITHACA*, now called *Val de Comps*, lieth on the North-east of *Cephalonia*, being in compass 50 miles: most famous for the Birth of *Ulysses*, the Son of *Laertes*, of which thus the Poet ;

Effugimus scopulos Ithacæ Laertia Regni,
Et terram alticem savi exscramur Ulyssis.
 From th' Ithacan Rocks *Laertes* Realm, we fled,
 And curs'd the Land which dire *Ulysses* bred.

It was also called *Dulichium*, or else there was some other Island of that name, not far from *Ithaca* whereof *Ulysses* was also King, who is hence called *Dulichium Heros* among the Poets : and in this Taunt of *Ajax* to him, *Dulichium* signifies the Head of *Ulysses*.

Sed neque Dulichius sub Achillis casside, Vertex

Pondera tanta ferat.
 Achilles Helm's too great a weight, I trow.

*Achilles Helm's too great a weight, I trow,
For weak Ulysses' Head to undergo.*

But as weak a man as *Achilles* thought him, he was the Master-Wit of *Greece* for the times he lived in, and one that did as good Service in the War of *Troy* as the best Sword-man of them all. A War to which he went foremost unwillingly, as fearing the bad Consequences and evils thereof; inasmuch that he feigned himself mad, ploughed the Shore, and sowing Salt instead of Corn. But *Protesilaus*, to make trial whether this was real, or but counterfeited only, cast young *Telemaclus*, the Son of *Odysseus*, before the Plough, which he observing, either drove the Plough besides him, or lifted it over him. Discovered by this means, and engaging with the rest in the *Trojan War*, he found out the Design of *Thetis*, and brought *Achilles* to it also: in the course whereof by his Wit and Courage, he did very good Service; associated with *Dionides* in the action against *Rhesus* King of *Thrace*; and with *Palamides* in foraging the Country for Provisions. By his Policy was the *Palladium* stoln out of *Troy*, and consequently the City taken and destroyed, whose Fate depended on the preservation of that fatal Relick. After the ending of the War, which held out ten years, he was withheld from *Iliaca* ten years longer by Winds and Tempests and the Displeasure of the Gods which favoured *Troy*; in which he lived himself from the Incantments of the *Sirens*, the Allurements of *Circe*, the Cruelty of *Phryxiphenes*, and after many Dangers came home in safety. A man of so compleat a Virtue, that *Homer* maketh him the Pattern of a Temperate and Prudent man in the Books called *Odyssey*, (by his name, as the *Greeks* pronounce it;) as he doth *Achilles*, in his *Iliads*, of a courage and perfect Soldier.

The

The Country is generally very rocky and barren, exceeding plentiful of Goats, but no Hares live in it; inhabited for the most part by Pirates and Exiles, men banished out of civil Society, and willingly acknowledging no Superior over them; but subject, if to any, to the State of *Venice*, which hitherto hath maintained these Islands against the *Turks*, though many times attempted by them in the most prosperous times of their Arms and Victories. For the *Venetians* being gratified, at the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latin*es, with almost all the Islands of the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas, (as being a People strong in Shipping, and so most able to preserve the Possession of them) some of the greatest and most considerable, either for their Riches or commodiousness of Situation, were furnished with convenient Garrisons in the name of the State. The rest they left below on the better sort of Citizens, to be defended and made good at their own Cost and Charges; who accordingly possessed themselves of one, two, or more of them, as they were of ability to fet out their Gallies for the keeping of them: the *Seigniority* having nevertheless a Care of all, and to that end keeping a Fleet at Sea continually under one of their Admirals; whereby they did not only preserve those Seas from the *Genoa* Pirates, but for a long time defended all their Islands also, as well against the *Greeks* as the *Turkish* Emperours. But all the Isles of the *Ægean* being lost to the *Turks*, except *Cythera* and *Tenos* on the *European*, and *Carpobos* or *Scarpanto* on the *Asian* side; they have now only *Crete* with the Isles adjoining, and those of the *Ionian* Sea under their Command, and these (but specially the Isle *Crete*) endangered at the present by the *Turkish* Tyrant.

Thus having taken a view of the several Provinces and Isles which belong to Greece, according to the ancient and present state of each particular : let us next take a view of the *Græciæ* Emperours, who have had their principal Residence, and possessed the whole (though for a while their Empire was extended over all the East) as they here follow in this ensuing Catalogue of

The *CONSTANTINOPOLITAN*,
GRÆCIAN, or Eastern Emperours.

331 1. *Constantine*, surnamed the Great, having reigned 12 years in *Rome*, translated his Imperial Seat to *Constantinople*, which himself had founded.

241 2. *Constantinus*, the second Son of *Constantine*, in the Division of the Empire, had for his Partage *Thrace*, *Constantinople*, and all the Provinces of the East. After the death of his two Brethren he remained sole Emperour, but refused for the most part in the East; a great Patron of the *Arians*, and as great a Persecutor of the Orthodox Christians.

366 3. *Julian*, surnamed the Apostate, Son of *Constantinus* the Brother of *Constantine* the Great; at first a Christian, afterwards a professed Enemy of the Gospel: fortunate in his Wars against the *Almans*, *Franks*, and other *Transalpine* Nations, whilst he was a Christian; prodigiously slain in the *Persian* War, When become a Persecutor.

368 4. *Jovian*, or *Jovinnian*, chosen by the Army, a Religious Prince, made Peace with the *Persians*, and settled the Affairs of the Christian Church: who being dead, *Valentinian*, one of mean Birth, but great Abilities in War,

369 5. *Valens*, the Brother of *Valentinian*, made Partner in the Empire with him, ruled in *Constantinople* and the East; *Valentinian* taking more delight in *Rome* and the Western parts. A great Patron of the *Arian* Faction, and the first who brought in the *Goths* on this side of the *Danube*, whom he placed in the desert parts of *Thrace*; to the Destruction of the Empire, and himself to boot.

382 6. *Gratian*, the eldest Son of *Valentinian*, succeeded his Father in the West, and his Uncle *Valens* in the East, after whose death he left *Italy* and the *Wetito* *Valentinian* his younger Brother. Disfellowed by the *Goths*, he made *Theodosius* Partner in the Empire with him, and was treacherously murdered by *Andragathus*, at the appointment and command of the Tyrant *Maximus*.

383 7. *Theodosius*, a *Spaniard* born, revenged the death of *Gratian* on the Tyrant *Maximus*, and of *Valentinian* the 2. on the Traitor *Engenius*. He vanquished the *Goths*, utterly suppress the Pagan Superstitions, which till his time continued even in *Rome* it self, and strengthened the Church of *Christ* with good Laws and Ordinances.

399 8. *Arcadius*, the eldest Son of *Theodosius*, succeeded his Father in the East, as his Brother *Honorius* did in the West: the *Roman* Empire after this last Division of it being so distracted and torn in pieces, that it was never since united.

412 9. *Theodosius* II. Son of *Arcadius*, made Peace with the *Goths*, whom he employed against the *Huns* and *Persians*; his more dangerous Enemies, and caused the *Ephesine* Council to be called against *Nestorius*.

454 10. *Mariannus*, Lieutenant to *Theodosius*, succeeded his Master, and married with *Pulcheria* his Master's Sister. He called the Council of *Chalcedon* against *Dioscorus*.

461 11. *Leo*, a *Thracian* born, elected by the joint consent of the Senate and Soldiery, sitting in the Council of *Chalcedon*; the Acts whereof he approved and ratified.

478 12. *Zeno*, the Son-in-law and Lieutenant of *Leo*, sent *Theodorick* and the *Goths* into *Italy* against *Odoacer*. A Tyrant and a great Drinker; in one of his Drunken Fits buried quick by his Emperors. In his time *Constantinople* was almost wholly destroyed by Fire; in which perished, amongst other things, 120000 Volumes of good Manuscripts.

497 13. *Anastafius*, a mean Officer of the Court, by the power and favour of the Emperors created Emperor: a great Patron of *Euseyche*, yet fortunate in his Wars against the *Persians* and *Arabians*. In his time *Constantinople*, besieged by the *Scythians*, was likely to have fallen into great Diftress, if *Proclus*, a Famous Mathematician, like another *Archimedes*, had not fired their Gallies.

514 14. *Justin*, the Son of a *Thracian* Shepherd, and Captain of the Guard unto *Anastafius*; a Catholic Prince, and Patron of the Orthodox Clergy, whom he called from Banishment.

528 15. *Justinian*, the Sister's Son of *Justinus*, with whom he was at first Consort in the Empire, recovered *Africa* from the *Vandals* by his

- rius, and Italy from the Goths by *Narjes*; and finally reduced the Laws of *Rome* into form and method.
- 566 16. *Justin II.* Nephew of *Justinian*, intreated the Exarchate of *Ravenna*, and lost a great part of Italy to the *Lombards*. Unable of himself to oppose the *Persian*, he chose
- 577 17. *Tiberius*, one of his chief Commanders, to be Confort with him, who afterwards succeeded in the sole Command.
- 584 18. *Maurice*, a Cappadocian born, fortunate in his Wars against the *Persians*, from whom he recovered *Mesopotamia* in the time of *Tiberius*, by whom at his return he was married to *Constantina* his Daughter, and declared his Successor. Refusing to ransom some of his Soldiers, taken Prisoners by *Caganus* King of the *Avars*, he lost the Affections of his Army.
- 604 19. *Phocas*, a common Soldier, in a military Tumult chosen Emperor, murdered the Emperor *Mauritius*, with his Wife and Children, and made Pope *Boniface* Supreme Bishop or Head of the Church: slain in a popular Tumult by the Common people for his Lufts and Cruelties.
- 611 20. *Heraclius*, a Nobleman of *Constantinople*, chosen by the general consent, repaired the Ruines of the Empire, vanquished the *Persians*, recovered *Hierusalem* out of their hands: and brought home the Cross unto *Constantinople* in triumphant manner; whence the Feast called *Exaltatio Crucis*, September 14. In his time *Mahomet* began to disperse his Dorages.
- 641 21. *Constant*, or *Constantine II.* Son of *Heraclius*, unfortunate in his Wars against the *Saracens*, who prevailed in all places. Picking a Quarrel with the *Romans*, he defaced *Rome*, robbing it of all the choicest Ornaments which the *Goths* and other barbarous people had left; and ransacking the Isle of *Sicily*, was there slain by the Women.
- 670 22. *Constantinus III.* Son of the former *Constantine*, from his long or early Beard surnamed *Pogonatus*, repulsed the *Saracens* from *Constantinople*, but could not hinder the *Bulgarians* from passing over the *Danov*.
- 687 23. *Justinian II.* Son of *Constantine* the 3. subdued *Mesopotamia*, *Armenia*, and some part of *Persia*, forcing the *Saracens* to sue for Peace, and become his Tributaries. Against whom *Leontius* on the one side, and *Aspasmus* on the other, severally taking Arms; were declared Emperours. *Justinian*, taken by *Leontius*, hath his Nose cut off, and his person committed to Custody: but making an Escape, by means of *Trebellin* King of the *Bulgarians*, recovered his Imperial Dignity; and being too violent in the pursuit of his Revenge, was finally murdered at the Altar by the command of
- 713 24. *Philippus Bardanes*, Admiral of his Navy, elected Emperor by the Soldiers, a great enemy of Images, which he caused to be cast out of the Church, thereby incurring the Displeasure of
- 715 25. *Anastasius II.* called also *Artemius*, his principal Secretary, who thrust himself into the Empire; forced to relinquish it by that Army which he had raised against the *Saracens*: in

which Tumult the City of *Constantinople* was sacked and spoiled.

- 717 26. *Theodosius III.* made Emperor in this Tumult by the Soldiers, hearing of the Approach of *Leo*, Commander of the Eastern Armies, resigned the Empire, and took Orders to preserve his Life.
- 718 27. *Leo Isaurus*, in whose time *Caliph Zuleiman* besieged *Constantinople* the space of three years, and when by Cold and Famine 30000 of the *Saracens* were destroyed, they desisted. At this Siege was that Fire invented which we, for the violence of it, call *Wild-Fire*; and the *Latines*, because the *Greeks* were the Authors of it, *Græci ignis*: by which the *Saracens* Ships were not a little molested. He was also a great Enemy to Images, and for this cause hated by the Pope and Clergy of *Rome*, who gave him thereupon the Nick-name of *Iconomachus*.
- 741 28. *Constantinus IV.* Son of *Leo*, surnamed *Copronymus*, for that when he was baptized he bewrayed the Font, followed his Father's Zeal in removing Images, which created him much Trouble, one *Artabardus* being chosen Emperor against him, but at last defeated.
- 777 29. *Leo III.* Son of *Constantine Copronymus*, honoured with the Adjunct of *Porphyrogenitus*, but commonly called *Leo the 4.* (*Leontius* the Usurper (as I conjecture) being reckoned for one;) an enemy to Images, and fortunate in his Wars against the *Saracens*.
- 782 30. *Constantine V.* the Son of *Leo* and *Irene*, first governed the Empire with his Mother, by whom at last supplanted, and deprived of Sight, he died of Melancholy.
- 798 31. *Irene*, Wife of *Leo the 3.* first Confort with *Constantine* her Son, and afterwards sole Empress of *Constantinople*: for her better support in which Estate she sided with the Popes of *Rome*, and called the second Council of *Nice* for defence of Images. In her time *Charles*, surnamed the great, was by the Pope and People of *Rome* created Emperor of the West, for the Popes, knowing their own Greatness to grow out of the Ruines of the Temporal Power, committed the Empire of the West unto the *French* Princes: whereby the *Greek* Emperours became much weakened; and the *French*, being the Pope's Creatures, were in tract of time brought to their Devotion. In following times, when *Fredrick Barbarossa* was by Pope *Alexander* the 3. pronounced non-Emperor, *Emanuel* of *Constantinople* sued for a Re-union of the Empires: but the crafty Pope returned this Answer, *Non licere illi conjungere que majores ejus de industria disjunxerunt*: Let no man presume to joyn what the God of *Rome*, the Pope, hath put asunder.
- 803 32. *Nicephorus* a Patrician, made Emperor by the Soldiers, persuaded that *Irene* had made choice of him to be her Successor: slain in a pitch Field against the *Bulgarians*.
- 812 33. *Michael*, surnamed *Cyropalates*, from his Office, (the *Adior* of the *Palace*, as it were) Husband to *Procopia*, the Daughter of *Nicephorus*, assumed the Empire, which, siding his own Weakness, he did soon relinquish, and betook himself unto a Monastery.

814

- 814 34. *Leo V.* surnamed *Armenius*, from his Country, General of the Horse to *Michael*, demolished the Images; which his Predecessors had set up. He was slain in the Church during the time of divine Service.
- 821 35. *Michael II.* surnamed *Baltus*, having murdered *Leo*, assumed the Empire, unfortunate in his Government, and died of Madness.
- 830 36. *Theophilus*, the Son of *Michael Baltus*, an enemy of Images, like his Father, and as unfortunate as he; losing many Battels to the *Saracens*, at last he died of Melancholy.
- 842 37. *Michael III.* Son of *Theophilus*, first ruling with his Mother *Theodora*, who took unto herself the supreme Command; and after of himself sole Emperor, his Mother being made a Nun.
- 866 38. *Basilus*, surnamed *Macedo*, from the place of his Birth, made Confort in the Empire by *Michael* the Son of *Theophilus*, whom he basely and treacherously murdered; killed casually by a Stag.
- 886 39. *Leo VI.* for his Learning surnamed *Philosophus*, the Son of *Basilus*, a vigilant and provident Prince: most of his time, with variable Success, was spent against the *Bulgarians*.
- 912 40. *Constantine VI.* commonly called the VII. Son of *Leo Philosophus*, first under his Uncle *Alexander*, next under *Zoe* his Mother, and after under *Romanus Lacapenus*, governed the Empire; by which last he was so miserably depressed that he was fain to get his livelihood by Painting, but *Lacapenus* being deposed and turned into a Monastery by his own Sons, *Constantine* at last obtained his Rights, and restored Learning unto *Greece*.
- 961 41. *Romanus*, the Son of *Constantine*.
- 963 42. *Nicephorus*, surnamed *Phocas*, first Governor or Protector of the young Emperor *Romanus*; after whose death, created Emperor by the Army, he recovered *Antioch*, *Cilicia*, and the greatest part of *Asia minor*, from the power of the *Saracens*: slain in the night by *John Zimisces*, his Wife *Theophania* being privy to it.
- 971 43. *John Zimisces*, Emperor in the place of *Nicephorus Phocas*, governed the Empire better than he did obtain it, vanquishing the *Bulgarians*, *Rosses*, and others of the barbarous Nations; and left it at his death to the Sons of *Romanus*.
- 977 44. *Basilus II.* surnamed *Porphyrogenitus*, as many of the Emperors had been before him, in regard that at their Births they were wrapped in Purple, (which the *Greeks* call *Porphyrie*) the Imperial Colour: he subdued the *Bulgarians*, and made them Homagers to the Empire.
- 1027 45. *Constantine VII.* or VIII. Brother of *Basilus*, and with him Partner in the Empire: after whose death he governed three years by himself, but did nothing memorable.
- 1030 46. *Romanus II.* for his Prodigality surnamed *Argyrolus*, Husband of *Zoe*, the Daughter of *Constantine* the 8. drowned in a Bath by the Treason of his Wife and her Adulterers.
- 1035 47. *Michael IV.* surnamed *Papilago*, from his Country, first the Adulterer and afterwards the Husband of *Zoe*; but died very penitent.
- 1042 48. *Michael V.* surnamed *Calaphates*, a man of
- obscure Birth, adopted by *Zoe*, whom he deposed from the Government, and turned into a Monastery. Out of which being again taken in a popular Tumult, he put out the Eyes of *Calaphates*, and, being then 60 years of age, belittowed both the Empire and her self upon
- 1043 49. *Constantine IX.* surnamed *Momonachus*, formerly Husband to a Niece of *Romanus* the 2.
- 1055 50. *Theodora*, Sister unto *Zoe*, after the death of *Constantine*, managed for two years the Affairs of the Empire with great Contentment of all people. But grown in age she surrendered it to
- 1057 51. *Michael VI.* surnamed *Stratioticus*, an old, but military man, deposed within 3 years by
- 1060 52. *Isaacius*, of the noble Family of the *Comneni*; valiant, of great Courage, and diligent in his Affairs: which having managed for two years, he left it at his death, with consent of the Senate and people, to
- 1063 53. *Constantine X.* surnamed *Ducas*, a great Justiciar and very devout, but exceeding covetous, whereby he became hated of his Subjects and contemned by his Enemies.
- 1071 54. *Romanus III.* surnamed *Digenes*, married *Eudoxia*, the Wife of *Constantinus Ducas*, and with her the Empire. Taken Prisoner by the *Turks*, and sent home again, he found a Faction made against him; by which *Eudoxia* was expelled, himself at his return deposed, and so died in Exile.
- 1075 55. *Michael VII.* the Son of *Constantinus Ducas*, surnamed *Parapinatus*, by reason of the Famine which in his time happened, made Emperor in the aforesaid Tumult. But being found unable for so great an Honour, (the *Turks* prevailing in all places) he was deposed again, and put into a Monastery.
- 1081 56. *Nicephorus II.* surnamed *Broniates*, of the House of *Phocas*, succeeded in the place of *Parapinatus*; deposed within three years by the *Comneni*.
- 1084 57. *Alexius Comnenus*, Son of the Emperor *Isaacius Comnenus*, obtained the Empire: in whose time the Western Christians with great Forces prepared for the Recovery of the *Holy Land*: of whose purposes being very jealous he denied them passage through his Country; but was in the end forced to find them Victuals and other Necessaries.
- 1113 58. *Calo-Joanner*, the Son of *Alexius*, had a good hand against the *Turks*, from whom he took *Ladicea* and some other places of Importance. He also vanquished the *Seythians* or *Tartars* passing over the *Ister*, most of which he either slew in Battel, or sold as Captives; permitting the remainder to abide on this side that River. He also conquered the *Servians* and *Bulgarians*, transporting many of them into *Bulgary*.
- 1142 59. *Mannel*, or *Emanuel*, the younger Son of *Calo-Joanner*, an under-hand enemy to the Western Christians, and an open enemy to the *Turks*; by whom being intrapped in the dangerous Straights of *Cilicia*, and his Army miserably cut off, he was on honourable terms permitted to return again.
- 1180 60. *Alexius II.* Son of *Mannel*, deposed and barbarously murdered by *Andronicus*, the

Confin-german of his Father, with his Wife and Mother.

- 1183 61. *Andronicus Comnenus*, confined by *Mamul* to *Oennu* in *Paphlagonia*, by reason of his dangerous and ambitious practices, after his death, pretending to reform the State, came unto *Constantinople*: first made Protector, afterwards Comfort in the Empire with young *Alexius*: whom having barbarously slain and got the Empire to himself, he was not long after cruelly torn in pieces in a popular Tumult.

- 1185 62. *Isaacus Angelus*, a Nobleman of *Constantinople*, and of the same *Comnenian* Race, dignified to death by *Andronicus*, was in a popular Election proclaimed his Successor; deposed by *Alexius* his own Brother and his Eyes put out.

- 1195 63. *Alexius Angelus*, deprived his Brother, and excluded his Nephew from the Empire; but it held not long.

64. *Alexius Angelus* II. Son of *Isaac Angelus*, who being unjustly thrust out of his Empire by his Uncle *Alexius*, had recourse to *Philip* the Western Emperor, whose Daughter *Mary* he had married, who so prevailed with Pope *Innocent* the 3. (upon a promise for subjecting the Church of *Greece* to the See of *Rome* (that the Army prepared for the *Holy Land* was employed to restore him. On the approach whereof *Alexius* the Murderer fled, *Alexius* the young Emperor is seated in his Father's Throne, and not long after slain by *Alexius Ducas*. In revenge whereof the *Latines* assault and win *Constantinople*, make themselves Masters of the Empire, and divided it amongst themselves: allotting to the *Venezians* *Candia*, many good Towns of *Peloponnesus*, and most of the Islands; to *Boniface* Marquis of *Montferrat* the Kingdom of *Thessaly*; to the others of the Adventurers other liberal Shares; and finally to *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders* the main Body of the Empire, with the Title of Emperor. The Seat of the Empire of the *Greeks* being transferred unto *Nice*, a City of *Bythinia* in the Lesser *Asia*, by *Theodorus Lascaris*, Son in-law to *Alexius*, the Usurper, continued there till the regaining of *Constantinople* by the *Greeks* again, after it had been 60 years possessed by the Western Christians.

Emperours of the *LATINES* in *CONSTANTINOPLE*.

- 1200 65. *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*, first Emperour of the *Latines* reigning in *Constantinople*, taken in fight by *John* King of *Bulgaria*, coming to aid the *Greeks*, and sent Prisoner to *Ternova*, where he was cruelly put to death.
- 1202 66. *Henry*, the Brother of *Baldwin*, repulsed the *Bulgarians* out of *Greece*, and died a Conquerour.
- 1215 67. *Peter*, Count of *Auxerre* in *France*, the Son of *Peter*, youngest Son to *Lewis* the Gros of *France*, and Husband of *Toland* the Daughter of *Henry*, succeeded in the Empire after his decease. He was cunningly entrapped by *Theodorus Angelus*, a great Prince in *Epirus*, whom he had besieged in *Dyrrbachium*: but of an Enemy being persuaded to become his Guest, was there murdered by him.
- 1220 68. *Robert*, the Son of *Peter*, having seen the miserable usage of his beautiful Empress, whom a young *Burgundian*, formerly contracted to her, had most spitefully mangled, cutting off

both her Nose and Ears, died of Heart's grief as he was coming back from *Rome*, whither his Melancholly had carried him to consult the Pope in his Affairs.

- 1227 69. *Baldwin* II. Son of *Robert* by a former Wife, under the Protection of *John* de *Breime*, the titular King of *Hierusalem*, succeeded in his Father's Throne: which having held for the space of 33 years, he was forced to leave the City of *Constantinople* being regained by the *Greeks*, and the poor Prince compelled to sue in vain for Succours to the *French*, *Venezians*, and other Princes of the West. And though both *Philip* the Son of this *Baldwin*, and *Charles* of *Valois*, Father of *Philip* de *Valois* the French King, in right of *Catherine* his Wife, Daughter of that *Philip*, did sometimes please themselves with the Title of Emperours of *Constantinople*, yet neither of the two had ever any footing or possession there.

The Empire restored unto the *GREEKS*.

- 1260 70. *Michael* VIII. surnamed *Palaologus*, extracted from the *Comnenian* Emperour, Emperour of the *Greeks* in the City of *Nice*, most fortunately recovered *Constantinople*; the Town being taken by a party of 50 men secretly put into it by some Country-Labourers under the Ruines of a Mine. Present in person at the Council of *Lions*, at the persuasion of the Pope he admitted the *Latine* Ceremonies into the Churches of *Greece*; for which he was greatly hated by his Subjects, and denied the honour of Christian Burial.

- 1283 71. *Andronicus* II. vexed with unnatural Wars by his Nephew *Andronicus*, who rebelled against him.

- 1328 72. *Andronicus* III. first Partner with his Grandfather, afterwards Sole Emperour.

- 1341 73. *John* *Palaologus*, Son of *Andronicus* the 3. In whose Minority *Constatinus* his Protector usurped the Empire, and held it sometimes from him, and sometimes with him, till the year 1357, and then retired into a Monastery, leaving the Empire unto *John*, during whose Reign the *Turks* first planted themselves in *Europe*.

- 1384 74. *Andronicus* IV. the Son of *Joannes* *Palaologus*.

- 1387 75. *Emanuel* *Palaologus*, the Son of the said *John*, and Brother of *Andronicus* the 4. In whose time *Bajazes* the sixth King of the *Turks* did besiege *Constantinople*; but found such notable Resistance, that he could not force it.

- 1417 76. *John* II. Son of *Andronicus* the 4.

- 1420 77. *John* III. Son of *Emanuel* *Palaologus*, in person at the Council of *Florence* for reconciling of the Churches in hopes thereby to get some Aid from the Western Christians, but it would not be.

- 1444 78. *Constantinus* *Palaologus*, the Brother of *John* the 3. In whose time the famous City of *Constantinople* was taken by *Mahomet* the Great 1452, the miserable Emperour, who had in vain gone from door to door to beg or borrow money to pay his Soldiers, (which the *Turks* found in great abundance when they took the City) being lamentably trod to death in the Throng. Now concerning this Empire of the *Greeks*, we may observe some fatal Contrarieties in one and the same name. As first, that *Philip* the Father of *Alexander* laid the first

four-

Foundation of the *Macedonian* Monarchy, and *Philip* the Father of *Persius* ruined it. Secondly, that *Baldwin* was the first, and *Baldwin* the last Emperour of the *Latines* in *Constantinople*. Thirdly, that this Town was built by a *Constantine*, the Son of *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch; and was lost by a *Constantine*, the Son of a *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch also. And fourthly, the *Turks* have it by a *Mahomet*. So *Augustus* was the first blighted Emperour of *Rome*, and *Augustulus* the last emperor, the Son of *Hydraspes*, the Restorer; and *Darius*, the Son of *Arfamis*, the Overthrower of the *Persian* Monarchy. A like note I shall hereafter tell you of *Hierusalem*. In the mean time I will present you with a fatal Observation of the letter *H*, as I find it thus verified in

Not superstitiously I speak, but *H* this letter still Hath been observed ominous to *England's* Good or Ill. First *Hercules*, *Hesperie* and *Helen* were the cause Of War to *Troy*; & *Aeneas* Seed becoming so Outlaws. *Humber* the *Hun* with foreign Arms did first the *Brites* invade:

Helena to *Rome's* Imperial Throne the *British* Crown conveyed.

Hengist and *Horfus* first did plant the *Saxons* in this Isle: *Hugor* and *Hubba* first brought *Danes*, that swayed here long while.

At *Harold* had the *Saxon* end, at *Harde-Canute* the *Dane*. *Hicorius* the first and second did restore the *English* Reign.

Fourth *Henry* first for *Lancaster* did *England's* Crown obtain.

Seventh *Henry* jarring, *Lancaster* and *York* unites in Peace.

Henry the eight did happily *Rome's* Irreligion cease.

A strange and ominous Letter, every Mutation in our State being as it were ushered by it.

What were the Revenues of this Empire since the Division of it into the East and West, I could never yet learn.

That they were exceeding great may appear by three Circumstances. 1. *Zonaras* reporteth that the Emperour *Basilus* had in his Treasury 200000 Talents of Gold, besides infinite Heaps of Silver and other Monies, 2. *Lippus* relateth, how *Benjamin* a Jew in his discourse of *Europe* saith, that the Custom due to the Emperours out of the Victuals and Merchandize sold at *Constantinople* only did amount to 20000 Crowns daily. 3. We find that at the Sack of *Constantinople* there was found an invaluable mass of Gold, Silver, Plate, and jewels, besides that which was hid in the Earth. For so the *Learned* Citizens chose rather to employ their Wealth, than afford any part of it to the Emperour, who with Tears in his Eyes went from door to door to beg and borrow Money, wherewith he might wage more Soldiers for the defence of the Town.

The Arms of the Empire were *Mars*, a Cross *Sol* between four *Greek* Beta's of the second: the four Beta's signifying (as *Bodin* saith) *Basilus*, *Bambur*, *Bambler*, *Bambur*.

It may perchance be expected that we should here make an additional Catalogue of those *Turkish* Emperours who have reigned in *Constantinople* since the taking of it; and, being they are possessed of *Greece*, and do now inhabit it, that we should here also speak of the *Turks* themselves, their Customs, Forces, Policies, Original, and Proceedings. But the discourse of those things we intend to reserve for *Turcomania*, a Province of *Asia*, and afterwards into other parts of the World now subject to them, the only Province which retains any thing of their name. And though the *Peninsula* called anciently *Taurica Cherfoneus* (now part of *Tartaria Preconensis*) be within the Bounds of *Europe* also; yet we will defer the description and story of it till we come to the Affairs of the *Tartars*, and will here conclude our Discourse of *Europe*, and prepare for *Asia*.

And so much for *GREECE*, the last of the Provinces of *EUROPE*.

Yyy 2

A TA

T A B L E

OF THE
LONGITUDE and LATITUDE of the chief TOWNS
and CITIES mentioned in this BOOK.

	Long.	Lat.		Long.	Lat.		Long.	Lat.
A			G			P		
A Amsterdam	27.39	52.40	G radest	56.30	51.30	P assau	42	53.48
A Antwerp	24.30	51.48	G aunt	30.20	50.40	P resburg	40	48.26
A Athens	46.10	40	G nefna	42	52.10	P lescow	59.10	59
A Augspurg	32.30	48.20	G roeningen	32.10	53	P echora	66.50	67
A Aulona	51.20	41.30				P ernaw	53.30	58.40
A Arras	24	51	H			P lockow	57.30	57.40
A Anflo	36.30	59.20	H aderstede	35.5	60.50			
			H allar	3	67.14	R		
B			H alberstadt	32.40	52.10	R ab	40.35	48.50
B amberg	39.15	50.10	H eidelberg	28	49.35	R agusi	44.40	42.30
B elgrade	45	47.40	H amburg	30	54.30	R egenfburg	32.15	48.59
B ergen	34.16	61.25				R offock	34.18	54.20
B ern	29.45	46.25	I			R yftow	72.50	57
B randenburg	35.30	52.36	I ene	34	42	R ügen	40.20	55.10
B reme	30.20	53.23	I ngolfstadt	32.10	48.40	R iga	53.30	58
B riges	24.36	51.30	I npruck	32.50	44.55	R egimont	49.10	55.30
B runfwick	32.40	52.30	J					
B runzells	26.42	51.24	J uliers	27.30	52			
B uda	42	47.20				S		
B oden	52.30	45.50	L			S altzburg	35.40	47.40
B ornholm	40.50	55.30	L ariffa	70	33	S chalbott	3. 14	65.42
			L eige	22	50.50	S chleffadt	28.6	47.21
C			L eo poles	52.50	49	S chwick	31.20	55.15
C leve	29.35	41.58	L epzick	30.30	51.20	S pires	27.40	49.20
C onftantinople	56	43.5	L ubeck	31.20	54.48	S trctm	37.40	54
C onftantuz. Or Coblentz	27.30	50.30	L ucern	29.53	46.42	S trackholn	42	60.15
C onftance	28.30	47.30	L unden	32.18	53.27	S ibior	69.20	59.30
C openhagen	34.50	56	L uxemburg	26	53	S lowada	86.30	58.50
C orinth	27.40	51		28	50	S traesburg	27.50	48.44
C olen	42.40	50.12	M			S tagera	55.30	43.30
C racow	52	38.30	M agdeburg	37.50	52.18			
C efaloms	96.10	35.10	M arpurg	30.10	51	T		
C afan	42	39.30	M entz	27.30	50.30	T heffalonica	53.40	44.20
C orfu			M etz	27.40	49.9	T riers	26	49.30
			M iddleburg	25	52	T rent	33.40	45.20
D			M inden	31.30	52.58	T ubing	30.30	48.40
D antzick	45	54.50	M unchen	32.50	48	T uwer	68.10	57.10
D everter	53.25	51.50	M unfter	29.10	52			
D irfchaw	63	48.40	M onts	26	51	U		
D ort	26	52	M ofco	70.30	55.40	U lmen	26.29	50.10
D oway	25	51	M olwin or Elbing	48	54.50	U lm	32.30	48.20
D resden	36	51.3				U ltra	37.45	48.20
			N			U ltra	54.30	55
E			N ancie	28.45	49.20	U ltra	40.30	60.52
E mden	28.26	53.34	N orwigen	33	49	U ltra	79.30	61.30
E rfurd	34.30	51.10	N uremberg	31.30	49.30	U ltra	27.33	52.10
E lfeneur	36.30	57	N imwegen	28	52	U ltra	61.30	51.30
			N ovogrod Mag.	62.50	60.30	U ltra	31.30	51.30
F			N ovogrod Infer.	80	55.20			
F lenfburg	36.40	55	N icopolis	56.30	40	W		
F rancfky	27	54	N egrapont	56.10	41	W arldbuis	50.30	70.30
F rancford ad Marnum	30	50.30	S. Nicolas	69	64	W iborg	55.58	63.6
F rancford ad Odram	24	52.30				W ittenburg	35.10	50.55
F riburg	20	48.1	O			W ifmar	33.30	54.14
			O lmuntz	41	40.30	W ologda	74.30	60
G			O fnuburg	29.36	52.29	W ormes	28	49.45
G logaw	43.50	51.25	O clandt	43.30	57	W urtzburg	30.10	49.57
G ran	42.30	48						
G raz	34	48	P			Z		
			P rague	39.15	50.10	Z ara	46.25	45.40
			P reflaw	46	51.10	Z elma Nova	83.30	74

The end of the second Book.

COSMOGRAPHY, The Third Book,

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY
OF THE
LESSER and GREATER

A S I A,

AND ALL

The Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles, thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN.*

JUSTIN. HIST. l. i.

*Imperium Assyrii qui postea Syri dicti sunt, annos MCCC tenuerunt.
Imperium ab Assyriis ad Medos Arbaces transfert.*

SENECA EPIST. 17.

*Omnes quæ usquam rerum potiuntur urbes, ubi fuerint aliquando quæretur;
& vario exitii genere tollentur.*

L O N D O N,
Printed in the Year MDCLXXXII.

COSMO.

ASIE
Descriptio Nova
Imperialis
PHILIPPI CHETWIND
1666.



COSMOGRAPHY, The Third Book,

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY
OF THE
LESSER and GREATER

ASIA,

AND ALL
The Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles, thereof.

Of ASIA.



ASIA is bounded on the West, with the Mediterranean, and Egean Seas, the Hellespont, Propontis, Thracian Bosphorus, and the Euxine Sea, the Palus Maotii, the Rivers Tanais and Duina, a Line being drawn from the first of the two said Rivers unto the other, by all which parted from Europe; on the North, it hath the main Seybick Ocean; on the East, the Straits of Anian (if such there be,) the Indian Ocean, and Mare del Zur, by which separated from America; on the South, the Mediterranean, or that part of it which is called the Carpathian Sea, washing the shores of Anatolia, and the main Southern Oceans, pulling along the Indian, Persian, and Arabian Coasts: and finally, on the South-West, the Red-Sea or Bay of Arabia, by which parted from Africk. Environed on all sides with the Sea, or some Sea-like Rivers, except a narrow Isthmus in the South-West, which joyns it to Africk and the space of ground (whatsoever it be) betwixt Duina and Tanais, on the North-west, which unites it to Europe.

It took this name, as some will have it, from Asia, the Daughter of Oceanus and Thetis, the Wife of Iapetus, and (by him) Mother to Prometheus: as others say, from Asius the Son of Atis, a King of Lydia, from whence that Country first, afterwards all Anatolia, or Asia minor, and finally, the whole Continent had the name of Asia. Others again (but more improbably) derive the name from Asius the Philosopher, who gave the Palladium unto the Trojans; in memory whereof that Country first, and after the whole Continent did receive this name: But these Originations being very uncertain, Bochartus (out of his great affection to the Phœnic or Phœnician Language) will have it called so from Asia, a Phœ-

nician word, signifying Medium, or the middle; because Anatolia, or the lesser Asia, which gives name (as he conceiveth) to the Greater also, lieth in the middle, as it were, betwixt some parts of Europe and Africa. And so far the Conjecture doth find countenance from some ancient Writers, that Asia is said by Pliny to be inter African & European, to be betwixt Africa and Europe; by Mela, medium noster, is aquoribus excipit, to be embraced in the middle of the two seas (he meaneth Pontus Euxinus, and the Mediterranean,) and finally, by Eustathius (conceive them all of Anatolia, or the Lesser Asia) μέσος ἀφ' ὧν ἔξω δέξιν, to have a middle situation betwixt Europe and Africa. But by what name, and on what grounds soever it be called by the Greeks and Latines, it is otherwise, and with better reason called in Holy Scriptures by the name of Semia; as being that portion of the world, wherein the whole Posterity of Sem had their seats and dwellings, if the observation of Magims be of any weight.

It is situate East and West, from the 52 to the 169 degree of Longitude, and North and South, from the 82 degree of Latitude, to the very Equator; some only of the Islands lying on the South of that Circle: so that the longest Summers day in the Southern parts, is but twelve hours only, but in the most Northern parts hereof, for almost four whole months together no night at all. And for a measurement by miles, it stretcheth in length 5200, and in breadth 4560 miles.

This Country hath heretofore been had in especial honour, 1. For the Creation of Man, who had his first making in this part of the world; 2ly. Because in this part of it stood the Garden of Eden, which he had for the first place of his habitation; 3ly. because here flourished the four first great Monarchies of the Assyrians, Babylonians, Medes and Persians; 4ly. Because it was the

Scene of almost all the memorable actions, which are recorded by the Pen-men of the Scriptures; 5ly. Because that here our Saviour **CHRIST** was born, here wrought he most divine Miracles, and here accomplished the great Work of our Redemption; 6ly. And finally, Because from hence all Nations of the World had their first beginning on the dispersion which was made by the Sons of *Noah*, after their vain attempt of *Babel*.

The chief Mountains of this great Continent, not limited within the bounds of any one Province (for of those we are to speak in their several places) are 1. Mount *Taurus*, which having its beginning in *Lycia*, a Province of *Anatolia*, passeth directly Eastward to the *Indian* Ocean, and reckoning in its several windings and turnings, and by its spurs and branches every way, is said to be 6250 miles long, and 357 miles broad. This Mountain, or rather ridge of hills, divideth the *Greater Asia* as the *Aequator* doth the *World*, into North and South: memorable for three different passages from the one to the other; the first out of the reit of *Anatolia* into *Cilicia*, called *Pyle Cilicæ*; the second out of *Sybia*, or *Tartary*, into *Thercomania*, called *Caucasæ Portæ*; and the third out of *Sybia* into *Persia*, called *Porsæ Cypsiæ*. Of which, and of the whole course of this Mountain, more at large hereafter. 2. *Imaus*, which beginning near the shores of the Northern Ocean, runneth directly towards the South, divideth the *Greater Asia* (as the *Meridian* doth the *World*) into East and West, and crossing Mount *Taurus* in right Angles, in or about the *Longitude* of 140. This on the North of *Taurus* hath no other name among the *Latins* than *Imaus* only; and by that name divideth *Sybia*, into *Sybia intra Imaum*, and *Sybia extra Imaum*: but by the *Tartars* is called *Altay*, by some Writers *Belgian*. And on the South-side of that Mountain is known in *Ptolemy* by the name of *Bitigis*, extending from Mount *Caucasus*, or some other Branch of the *Taurus*, to the Cape of *Comari*, in the Southern Ocean: supplied by some to be mount *Sephar*, mentioned *Gen.* 10. 30. of which we shall say more also when we come into *India*.

The estate of *Christianity* in this vast Continent is in ill condition, discountenanced and oppressed, though not quite extinguished. For all the great Princes and Commanders of it being either *Mohometans*, or *Pagans*, the most that can be hoped for of the Christian Faith, is a *toleratio* or connivence; and that not found but with an intermixture of such afflictions, as commonly attend discountenance and dilgraced Religions. Yet is not *Christianity* so over-powered either by *Mohometism*, or *Paganim*, but that in *Asser*, the *Laffer*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, and *Armenia*, a great part of the Inhabitants do retain the *Gospel*, under their several Patriarchs and *Metropolitans*: differing in some few points from one another; but in many from the Church of *Rome*, with which they hold neither correspondence nor *Communion*. Nor want there many *Christian Churches* in the Empire of *Persia*, nor in those of *Tartary*, *China*, and the *Indies*, anciently planted in those Countries; besides the late increase thereof in the *Eastern Islands*: by the diligent preaching of the *Jesuites*, and some late *Fatheries* there settled by the *English* and *Hollanders*: of all which I shall write in place convenient.

In reference to the *Roman Empire*, whose Dominion did not often extend beyond the River *Euphrates*, this Continent contained only three *Dioceses*, or *Jurisdictional Circuits*; that is to say, the *Diocese of Pontus, Asia* properly so called, and the *Oriental*: which with the *Dioceses of Thrace and Egypt*, were under the Command of the *Præfatus Prætorii Orientis*, the greatest Officer of power and jurisdiction, next to the Emperours them-

elves, in the Roman Monarchy. And these three *Dioeceses* contained in them to the number of thirty seven Provinces, viz. the Provinces of *Bithynia*, 2. *Helenopolis*, 3. *Pompe Polemoniacus*, 4. *Galatia prima*, 5. *Galatia Salutaris*, 6. *Honorius*, 7. *Euphlogonia*, 8. *Cappadocia prima*, 9. *Cappadocia secunda*, 10. *Armenia prima*, and 11. *Armenia secunda*, contained in the *Dioecese* of *Pontus*, and governed by the *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant thereof, 11. the Provinces of *Pamphylia*, 2. *Lycia*, 3. *Caria*, 4. *Pyssidia*, 5. *Lycomania*, 6. *Lydia*, 7. *Phrygia Pacatiana*, 8. *Phrygia Salutaris*, 9. *Asia* (specially to be called), 10. *Hellas*, and 11. the *Isles* of *Anatolia*, making up the *Dioecese* of *Asia*: whereof the three last were governed by a peculiar Officer, called the *Proconsul* of *Asia*; the others by the ordinary Lieutenant, or *Vicarius*. III. The Provinces of *Iscaria*, 2. *Cilicia prima*, 3. *Cilicia secunda*, 4. *Cyprus*, 5. *Phoenices*, 6. *Phoenices Libani*, 7. *Syria*, 8. *Syria Salutaris*, 9. *Palestina prima*, 10. *Palestina secunda*, 11. *Palestina Salutaris*, 12. *Euphratensis*, 13. *Ofoene*, 14. *Mesopotamia*, and 15. *Arabia*, constituting the *Dioecese* of the *Orient*, under the *Comes Orientis*. The rest of *Asia* subject unto the *Parthian* or *Persian* Kings, besides those of *India* (and of many Regions and Countries not then discovered) was never conquered by the *Romans*; and therefore not within the compass of this distribution.

At this time *Asia* stands divided amongst fix great Monarchs; that is to say, the *Turks*, commanding all thofe parts and Provinces, which anciently belonged to the *Roman* Empire. 2ly. The *Perfian*, ruling in all the Provinces beyond *Euphrates*, poffeffed by the *Perfian* Kings in the time of *Alexander the Great*, or the *Alcide*, or *Parthians* in the times of the *Romans*. 3ly. The *Great Cham* of *Tartary*, commanding over all the North parts of *Asia*, anciently known by the name of *Scythia*. 4ly. The King of *China*, governing in that large and populous Country. 5ly. The King of *Barmæ*, whose Dominion comprehends all or the greateft part of *Indæ* beyond the River *Ganges*. And 6ly. The *Great Mages*, whose Empire is extended over all *India* on this fide of that River. And fome there be who in the defcriptions of this great Country, follow this divifion. But for our parts, for the better understanding of the *Greek* and the *Roman* Stories, and the eftate of the *Affirians*, *Babyloni* and *Perfian* Monarchies, to which the holy Scriptures do fo much relate; we fhall confider it as divided into the Regions of 1 *Anatolia*, or *Asia Minor*: 2 *Cyper*. 3 *Myria*. 4 *Palefine*. 5 *Arabia*. 6 *Chaldæe*. 7 *Affirya*. 8 *Mefopotamia*. 9 *Turcomania*. 10 *Media*. 11 *Perfia*. 12 *Tartaria*. 13 *China*. 14 *India*. And 15 *The Oriental Iflands*.

ANATOLIA, or ASIA MINOR.

ANATOLIA, or ASIA MINOR is bounded on the East, by the River Euphrates, by which parted from the greater *Asia*, on the West, with the *Thracian Bosphorus*, *Propontis*, *Hellepont*, and the *Aegean Sea*, by which parted from Europe: on the North, with *Pontus Euxinus*, called also the *Black Sea*, and *Mare Maggiore*; and on the South, by the *Rhodian*, *Lycian*, and *Pamphylian Seas*, several parts of the *Mediterranean*. So that it is demy-Iland, or *Peninsular*, environed on all sides with waters, excepting a small *Isthmus* or neck of Land extending from the head of *Euphrates* to the *Euxine Sea*, by which joyn'd to the rest of *Asia*.

It was anciently called *Asia minor*, to difference it from the residue of this great *Continent*; afterwards *Anatolia*, and *ἡ ἀνατολή*, from the more Eastward situation of it, in respect of *Greece*; and now *Natalia*.

by the *Turks*, with little deviation from the former name. But here is to be observed, that as this *Lesser Asia* was part of the greater; and the *Diocese of Asia* a part of the *Lesser Asia*: so was *Asia* properly and especially so called, but a part only of the *Asian Diocese*; the *Lydian Asia*, a part of the *Asian Diocese*; the *Proconsular Asia*, but a part of that. The limits of the *Lesser Asia*, and the several Provinces contained in the *Asian Diocese*, have been shewn already. And as for that part hereof which had the name of *Asia* properly and especially so called, it containeth only the two *Phrygias*, both the *Asylus*, *Helis*, *Ionis*, *Lydia* and *Caria*, which falling into the *Romans*, by the last Will and Testament of *Attalus*, the last King of *Pergamum*, whereby they made into one Province, and called *Asia*, after the name of the whole *Continent*, this being as it were the earnest penny, to make sure the rest. So witnesseth *Strabo*, where he saith, *Ποσειδωνι στρατηγας ἀνέδωκεν ἡ γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἀποκαλεσόμεθα, ἡνίκαν τῆς ἡμετέρας, Lib. 13.* And for the *Lydian Asia*, that contained only so much of the *Roman* or proper *Asia*, as anciently did belong to *Lydia*; that is to say, *Lydia* it self together with *Helis*, and *Ionis*, and some parts of the Greater *Asia* adjoining to it. Which as it had originally the name of *Asia*, from *Asapa* chief City of it near the foot of Mount *Tmolus*, which both *Suidas*, and the Great *Erymologist* have taken notice of, before that name became to be communicated to the greater *Continent*: so it retained that name to it self several distinct both from the Greater and the Lesser *Asia*; as also from the *Asia propria* of *Phoeny*, and others of the ancient Writers. And of this *Asia* only it is, which the Scriptures speak; both in the books of the *Acts*, and the *Revelation*: the seven Churches mentioned in the one being found in this *Lydian Asia*, and the passages in the other concerning *Asia*, not to be understood of any, but of this alone. For whereas it is said *Acts* the 16, that when they had gone throughout *Phrygia*, and the Region of *Galatia*, and were forbidden of the Holy Ghost to preach the Word in *Asia*; after they were come to *Asyria*, they assayed to go into *Bithynia*, and came down to *Troas*: most clear it is, that neither *Galatia*, nor *Bithynia*, though Regions of the Lesser *Asia*, nor *Phrygia*, *Asyria*, or *Troas* all Regions of the proper *Asia*, were any part of that *Asia* which the Scripture speaks of. So also where it is affirmed, that upon St. *Pauls* preaching and disputing for two years in *Ephesus*, all they which dwelt in *Asia* heard the Word of the Lord, *Acts* 19. 10. it is not to be meant of any but the *Lydian Asia*, whereof *Ephesus* at that time was the principal City. So also *Acts* 19. 22, 26, 31 and *Chap.* 20. 18. Finally, for the *Proconsular Asia*, which together with *Hellespont* and the *Helis*, made up a Government apart, exempt from the Command of the *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant of the *Asian Diocese*, it contained only *Helis*, and *Ionis* with the South part of *Lydia*, or the Countries lying about *Ephesus*. So witnesseth St. *Hierom* from the *Christian Writers*. So witnesseth St. *Augustine*. That although all the whole *Penninsula* have the name of the Lesser *Asia*, *Specialiter* his *Ephesus* *Civitas* est, *Asia vocatur*; yet more particularly the parts adjoining unto *Ephesus* have the name of *Asia*. And this appeareth by the distribution of the Provinces before laid down, where *Lydia* is reckoned for a Province of the *Asian Diocese*, distinct from the *Proconsular Asia*, which we now insist on.

So having cleared our way in regard of the name, proceed we next unto the Region, or place thus named, according to the notion in the largest latitude, extending from the *Helleſpont* to the River *Euphrates*, and from the *Euxine* Sea to the *Mediterranean*. By which account

it reacheth from the 51 to the 72 degree of *Longitude*, and
from the 36 to the 45 degree of *Latitude*: the length
hereof from the *Hellpoint* to the River *Euphrates*, being
estimated at 530 miles; the breadth from *Sinns* lying
in *Cilicia*, to the City of *Trabesond*, 210. As for the
situation of it, in reference to the *Heavenly Bodies*, it is
lyeth almost in the same position with *Italy*, extending
from the middle *Parallel* of the fourth *Clime*, to the
middle *Parallel* of the fourth *Clime*, to the
merry day in the Southern parts, is about fourteen Sum-
mers day and a half, and one hour longer in those parts which lie
most towards the North.

The Temperature of the Air is exceeding found, and the foil generally exceeding fruitful, abounding in most excellent pastures, which breed a notable race of Horfes, of very good service in the Wars, if backed with *European* Riders; it being a by-word amongst the *Turks*: That the Horfes of *Asia*, and the Horsemen of *Europe* are of greatest action. It was anciently very plentiful of all fruits both for use and pleasure, as still it would be, were it cultivated as in former times. Once very populous, and replenished with goodly Cities, now in a manner waste and desolate, lamenting the destruction of 400 Towns: some of them destroyed by *Earthquakes*, (the falling-sickness of most great Cities in the East) but most by *Wars*, and have little now to boast of but the commodiousness of the Havens, which are very many; though most of them but meanly traded, as in a Country ill manured, and of little *Manufactures*.

The people anciently, for little Manufactures, originally, and the Nations bordering on the *Euxine*, were very warlike and industrious : the rest, especially the *Lymanians*, and those of the greater *Phrygia*, as idle and effeminate, wholly addicted to their pleasures. All of them that the *Turks*, (unless compelled thereto by extreme necessities) never inrol their Children in the number of the *Christian* Faith, but overpowered by *Macchabean* Church of *Greece*, and subject all (except those of *Illyria* and *Cilicia*) to the Patriarch of *Constantinople*. And retain the *Greek Liturgies* for Sacred Offices; not so well understood amongst them as in former times, when it was more generally spoken there than it is at the present: now over-topped in most places by the *Turkish* and *Sclavonian* Tongues. And though in former times, by reason of the many *Greek Colonies* planted in this Country; the Conquest of it by *Alexander the Great*, and the subjection of it to the *Syrian* Kings of the *Macedon* Race, that Language became generally understood amongst them; inasmuch as three of the *Greek Dialects*, viz. The *Doric*, the *Ionian*, and the *Æolic*, were spoken here; yet did it never so prevail, as to become the Vulgar Language of the people, or to extinguish any of the *Vulgar* Tongues. For it is said of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, that he understood two and twenty Languages, without any *Interpreter*; which were no other than the Languages of so many Nations subject to himself, whose Dominion was contained for the most part within *Asia*.

Principal Mountains of this Country, are *Hermione* in *Pontus*, *Argæus* in *Cappadocia*, *Ida* in the *Lesser Phrygia*, *Olympus* in *Mysia*, *Idolus* in *Lydia*, *Amanus* in *Cilicia*, and finally *Antæranus*, and *Serdaricus* in *Armenia Minor*: Out of which, for the most part, flow the chief Rivers thereof, that is to say, 1 *Iris*, (now *Casimach*) 2 *Thermodon*, 3 *Halkis*. (now *Ottomanschi*).
 4 *Parthenius* (now *Dilop*). 5 *Sangerius* (now *Sangry*).
 Z z

All of them falling into the Euxine Sea. 6 *Acanthus*. 7 *Rhyndacus*. 8 *Asiapus*, and 9 *Graecus*, passing into the Propontis. 10 *Simois*. 11 *Scamander*, called also *Xanthus*, ending their short course in the Hellespont. 12 *Caicus*. 13 *Hermus*. 14 *Cystrus*. And 15 *Meander*, losing themselves in the *Ægean*. 16 *Calpis*. 17 *Xanthus*, called also *Lycus*. 18 *Limicus*. 19 *Catarelus*, discharging into the Mediterranean. and 20 *Melus*, adding to the waters of the great River *Euphrates*. Of most which we shall speak more particularly in their several places.

In reference to the State of *Rome*, it contained the whole Diocese of *Pontus*, except *Armenia* the Greater, the *Asian* Diocese intirely, without any exception; and the peculiar jurisdiction of the *Troas* of *Asia*, together with the Provinces of *Iuonia* and *Cilicia*, parts of the Diocese of the East. But because the names of many of those Provinces were of new invention, and some of them as so short continuance, we will consider it according as it stood divided anciently, and before the *Romans* had made any conquests in it, into the Provinces of 1 *Bithynia*. 2 *Pontus*. 3 *Paphlagonia*. 4 *Galatia*. 5 *Cappadocia*. 6 *Armenia Minor*; which (together with *Armenia Major*) made up, though in other names, the *Pontic* Diocese. 7 *Phrygia Minor*. 8 *Phrygia Major*. 9 *Mysia* the greater and the lesser. 10 *Asia*, especially so called, comprehending *Æolis* and *Ionis*. 11 *Lydia*. 12 *Caria*. 13 *Lycia*. 14 *Lycania*. 15 *Pisidia*. 16 *Pamphylia*. 17 The Province of the *Rhodes*, all comprehended under the command of the *Vicarius* and *Proconsul* of *Asia*. 18 *Iuonia*. 19 *Cilicia*, parts of the Diocese of the East, as before was said.

BITHYNIA.

BITHYNIA is bounded on the East with *Pontus*, and the River *Sangarius*; on the West, with part of the *Euxine*, and *Thracian Bosphorus*, and part of the *Propontis*; on the North, wholly with the *Euxine*; and on the South, with *Mysia*, and *Phrygia Minor*: Formerly called *Bebyria*, afterwards *Myrdania*, and at last *Bithynia*, and that as some say from *Bithynius*, once a King hereof, more probably from the *Thyni* a people of *Thrace*, who passed over the *Bosphorus*, and subdued it, called therefore by some Writers *Thracia Asiatice*. So witnesseth the Poet *Claudian*, saying:

Thyni Thracæ erant, quæ nunc Bithynia ferunt.

By *Justin* the Historian it is called by the name of *Metropontus*, by reason of its neighbouring to the *Euxine* and the *Pontic* Regions.

The Country naturally rich, and in those parts hereof which lie next the *Bosphorus*, opposite to *Constantinople*, so plentifully enriched with fruitful hills, and pleasant Orchards, when kept by the more curious *Christians*, that it was thought not to be inferior to the so much celebrated *Tempe*: now robbed of all those former beauties by the carelessness of the *Turks*, who affect neither art, nor sumptuousness, in their retirements and delights.

Chief Rivers hereof are 1 *Phyllis*. 2 *Sangarius*, now called *Sagris*, both falling into the *Euxine* Sea; this last arising from Mount *Dindymus*, in the furthest parts of *Phrygia Major*; and making two long reaches in his journey thither. 3. *Acanthus*, which rising also in *Phrygia Major*, but more near the borders of this Country, fallth into the *Propontis*, making the Bay called *Sinus Acanthus*; which with a Lake in the same Country, called *Lacus Acanthus*, doth plainly manifest, that the *Bi-*

thynians are derived from *Askenaz*, the Son of *Gomer*, and grand-son of *Japhet*.

The principal Towns hereof are 1 *Scutari*, over against the Haven of *Constantinople*, called anciently *Chrysopolis* for that there the *Persians* received their tribute from the other Cities of all these parts of *Asia Minor*. An ample Town, well garriioned with, and surrounded round about with most pleasant Orchards, and honoured with the neighbourhood of a Royal *Seraglio*. Not far off is a Tower, called the *Maiden-Tower*, serving both for a Fort and Watch-Tower, and being furnished for defence with 20 Pieces of Ordnance. 2 *Chalcedon*, on the same shore also, a Colony of the *Megarenses*, called blind by the Oracle, for neglecting *Byzantium*, and choosing the less convenient place for their habitation. And yet did *Constantine* the Great resolve upon the same place also for his *Regal City*; but changed his resolutions on a kind of miracle: it being observed, that when his workmen began to draw the Platform, some Eagles conveyed away their Lines to the other side of the *Bosphorus*, and let them fall directly upon *Byzantium*. Memorable after that for the fourth *General Council* there assembled by command of the Emperour *Martianus*, for repressing the Heresie of *Nestorius*; in which were 530 Bishops: now so decayed, that it can only show some few of the ruins of it; *Scutari* being risen on the fall thereof. 3 *Nicomedia*, so called from *Nicomedes* King of *Bithynia* (the Son of *Ziper*, and Grandchild to that *Bithynian* King, who so valiantly defended his own and his Countries liberty against *Celantus*, one of Great *Alexander's* Captains) by whom founded: Situate on the top of an Hill, environed with a pleasant and delightful Plain, honoured with the Seat and Residence of many of the *Roman* Emperours, when their affairs called them into the East, before the building of *Constantinople*; on that occasion made the Throne on which many of Gods Saints received the Crown of *Martyrdom*, especially in the Persecution under *Dioclesian*. In those times wealthy, and of fame, now much decayed; but notwithstanding well inhabited both by *Greeks* and *Turks*, for the commodiousness of the fresh Springs which are thereabouts. 4 *Libussis*, betwixt *Nicomedia*, and the River *Acanthus*; memorable for the death and sepulture of the famous *Annibal*, who to prevent his being made prisoner to the *Romans*, when *Prusus* King of *Bithynia* intended unworthily to betray him, here made away himself by poison. 5 *Prussa*, founded by another *Prusus*, whose name it beareth; a large and wealthy City as most in *Asia*: honoured for a long time with the residence of the *Turkish* Kings, till the removal of their Seat to *Adrianople*, by *Mahomet* the first; and still ennobled with the sepulture of the Princes of the *Ottoman* Race, except the Emperours themselves. By the *Turks* called *Bursas* *Nica* or *Nicea*, by the *Turk* called *Neichia*, but most commonly *Ischias*, situate near the Fens of the River *Acanthus*, occasioned by the frequent overflowsings of that River: by some affirmed to be the *Metropolis* of *Bithynia*; but I think *Nicomedia* hath more right to claim that honour. First named *Antigonis*, from *Antigonus* the founder of it; and afterwards *Nicea*, by the name of *Nice*, Wife unto *Lysimachus*: both of them Captains of the Great *Alexander*; which last had the happiness to survive the overthrow of the former, and was the longest liver of those Great Commanders. Sufficiently famous both in Ecclesiastical and Civil Story, for the first *General Council* there holden by the appointment of *Constantine* the Great, Anno 324. for settling the peace of the Church, then miserably distracted by the *Arian* Heresie. The number of Bishops there assembled, no more than 318. yet of such high esteem for Learning and Piety, that

that never Council hath been held in so great an honour. Here was also held the Council by the Emperess *Irene*, for establishing the veneration of Images; that passing by the name of the *Nicean* Council, the Acts thereof might be of greater reputation amongst ignorant men. In which it was decreed by such doubtful Arguments, as *Let us make man after our own Image*, once mainly insisted on by a *Legate* of the Eastern Churches, that they should be revered and adored in as ample and religious manner, as the blessed Trinity it self. This City was also the Imperial City of the *Greek* Emperours, after the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western *Christians*, and there continued till the expulsion of the *Latins*, under these

Emperours of the GREEKS residing at NICE.

A.C.H.
1200 1 *Theodorus Lascaris*, Son-in-law to *Alexius Angelus* the Usurper, upon the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latins*, passed over into *Asia*, and fortifying the City of *Nice*, made it the head City of this Kingdom, containing *Bithynia*, both the *Phrygia*, both the *Mysia*, *Lydia*, *Æolis*, and *Ionis*.

1223 2 *John*, surnamed *Ducas*, the Husband of *Irene*, Daughter of *Theodore Lascaris*, succeeded his Father-in-law in the Empire; to which he added *Pontus*, most of the Isles of the *Ægean*, and not a few places of importance in *Thrace* it self.

1256 3 *Theodorus II.* the Son of *Ducas*.

1259 4 *John II.* the Son of *Theodore* the second, an Infant of about six years old, supplanted first, and after cruelly deposed and deprived of sight.

1259 5 *Michael Palaeologus*, descended from the Imperial family of the *Comneni*, first took upon him as *Protector* of the Infant-Emperour, and afterwards as his *Assessor* in the Empire: in which confirmed by many fortunate successes, as well against the *Latins*, as some *Greek* Usurpers in *Thessaly* and *Peloponnesus*, especially the taking of *Constantinople*, he deprived the young Emperour of his sight, made himself sole Emperour, and left it unto his posterity, who held it with a great deal of trouble and continual disquiets, till the year 1452, when conquered by *Mahomet* the Great, as before was said. But this recovery of *Constantinople* was the loss of *Nice*, taken not long after the removal of the Imperial Seat, by *Sultan Ottoman*, Anno 1299, who presently thereupon took off himself the style of King, from which before he had obtained.

As for the fortunes of *Bithynia* it self, I look upon the *Bithynians* as a *Thracian* people, whom both *Strabo* and *Herodotus* speak of, as the founders of the name and Nation. Of such a King of theirs as *Bithynius* I find some mention in my Authors; and possibly it may be he who had the leading of the *Thymi*, or *Bithyni* in this expedition, proper Family. But for the line of Kings which held out till the flourishing of the *Roman* greatness, they began to reign here some few generations, before the time of *Philip*, and *Alexander*, the *Macedonians*: by which last, having other employment, and lying out of the road towards *Persia*, they were little troubled. *Celantus*, one of *Alexander's* Captains, made an expedition into their Country, and was vanquished by them; and afterwards they had to do with one of the Lieutenants of *Antigonus*, (one of *Alexander's* greatest Princes) who though he humbled them for the present, yet got he neither title nor possession by it. And thus they held it out till the time of *Prusias*,

so shuffling with the *Macedonian* and *Syrian* Kings, that betwixt both they still preserved their own estates. This *Prusias*, when the *Romans* became so inconsiderable, as that no danger need be feared from *Crete*, or *Syria*, picked himself with them; and having aided them in their wars against *Philip* and *Antiochus* both, and most unworthily promised to deliver *Annibal* (who had fled to him for succour) unto their Embassadors, made all fire to this side. His son and successor *Nicomedes*, being outed of his Kingdom by *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, and reformed again unto it by the power of the *Romans*, held it as their *Fendatary*, as did *Nicomedes* his next Successor, surnamed *Philometor*: who dying without issue in the time of *Augustus*, gave his whole Kingdom to the *Romans*. By them, with the addition of that part of *Pontus* which lay next unto it, it was made a Province of their Empire, by the name of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, continuing to till the division of that Empire into the Eastern and Western; when falling to the share of the *Constantinopolitans*, and with them to the power of the *Turkish* Tyrants, who do still possess it.

2 PONTUS.

PONTUS is bounded on the East, with *Colchis*, and *Armenia*; on the West, with *Bithynia*, and the River *Sangarius*; on the North, with the *Euxine* Sea; and on the South, with *Phrygia Major*, *Paphlagonia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*. So that it taketh up the whole length of *Anatolia*, or *Asia Minor*, from *Bithynia* to the River *Euphrates*, which parts it from *Armenia Major*, but not of unanswerable breadth; and gives name to the Sea adjoining, a *Ponto regione illi adjacentis ita appellari*, as *Orellius* hath it, called from hence *Pontus* by the *Latins*, the adjunct of *Euxinus* coming on another occasion, which we have spoken of before. A Country of a large extent, and therefore divided by the *Romans* (when Matters of it) into three four parts, viz. *Metropontus*, or *Pontus* specially so called, 2 *Pontus Galaticus*, 3 *Polemoniacus*, and 4 *Pontus Cappadocius*.

1 *PONTUS*, especially so called, or *Metropontus*, bordering on *Bithynia*, and bounded on the East with *River Parthenius*, which divided it from *Paphlagonia*, had for the chief Cities thereof, 1 *Claudiopolis*, so called in honour of *Claudius*, the *Roman* Emperour; 2 *Flaviopolis*, in honour of *Flavius Vespasianus*; and 3 *Julianopolis*, in honour of the *Julian* Family; all midland Towns. 4 *Diopolis*, on the *Euxine* Sea, so called from a Temple consecrated to *Jupiter*, of great report. 5 *Heraclea*, a Colony of the *Phocians*, called for distinction sake (there being many of that name) *Heraclea Pontis*: memorable of late times for being the seat and residence of a branch of the Imperial Family of the *Comneni*; when at the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western *Christians*, *David* and *Alexius Comnenus* fled into these parts: the first fixing here his Royal residence, commended over this part of *Pontus*, and *Paphlagonia*; the other possessing himself of *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, made *Trebizonde* his Regal or Imperial City. But these two Empires, though of the same date, were of different degrees, that of *Heraclea* and *Pontus*, being partly conquered by the *Greek* Emperours residing at *Nice*, and partly seized on by the *Turks* in the beginning and first fortunes of the *Ottoman* Family; the other keeping up the Majesty and State of an Empire, till the year 1461, when subdued by *Mahomet* the Great. 6 *Phyllura*, at the mouth or influx of the River *Phyllis*, upon which it is seated. 7 *Amasria*, the farthest Town of this part towards the East, on the Sea-side also, once of great strength; but taken by *Lucullus*, together with *Heraclea*, *Synope*, *Amisus*, and other Towns, in the war against *Mithridates*, the great King of *Pontus*.

2 East-ward of *Pontus*, specially so called, or *Alta-pontus*, as *Justin* the Historian calls it, lyeth *PONTUS GALATICUS*, so named, because added to *Galia* in the time of the *Romans*. The chief Cities wherof were 1 *Synope*, pleasantly seated on a long point or *Promontory*, shooting into the main, remarkable in ancient story for the birth and sepulture of *Mithridates*, after mentioned; and in the latter times for being the chief seat of the *Isfendians*, a noble family of the *Turks*, who had taken it with the rest of his Tract from the *Comnens*, and held it till the same year in which the Empire of *Trabzon* was subdued by *Mahomet*. First built by the *Milians*, and continuing in a free estate, till taken by *Pharnaces*, a King of *Pontus*, and made the Metropolis of that Kingdom. 2 *Cassanopia*, the head City of the Principality of the *Isfendians*, before mentioned; preferred by them for strength and convenience of situation, before *Heraclea*, or *Synope*. 3 *Themiscyra*, now called *Favagaria*, seated on a spacious Plain near unto the Sea, and anciently giving name to the Province adjoining. 4 *Amasia* the birth-place of *Strabo* the Geographer, remarkable in the Ecclesiastical Histories for the Martyrdom of St. *Theodore*, and of late times for being the residence of the eldest Sons of the *Grand Signior*, sent thither as soon as circumcised, never returning back again till the death of their Father. Accompted now amongst the Cities of *Cappadocia*, and the chief of that Province: a midland Town, as also is *Cabira* called afterward *Diopolis*, memorable for the great defeat which *Lucullus* gave there unto *Mithridates*, more for the trick which *Mithridates* there put up on *Lucullus*. For being well acquainted with the covetousness of the *Romans*, he saw no better way to save himself and the rest of his forces after the defeat, than to scatter his treasures in the way which he was to take; that by that means his enemies might slacken the pursuit to collect the spoils, and he preserve himself to another day; and so accordingly it proved. 6 *Comana*, to difference it from another of that name, called *Comana Pontica*; to which other, being of *Cappadocia*, or *Armenia Minor*, *Mithridates* came in safety by the trick aforesaid, and thence escaped unto *Tigrinus* the *Armenian* King, with 2000 horse.

3 East-ward of *Pontus Galaticus* lies *P O L E M O N I A C U S*, so called by the *Romans* either from *Polemonius* a chief Town of this tract, or from *Polemo* the last King hereof, after whose death this Kingdom came unto the *Romans*. Places of most importance in it. 1 *Polemonium* on the Sea-side, spoken of before. 2 *Hirmanassa*, a Sea-Town also. More in the land. 3 *Neo-Cesarea* (now *Nisaria*) the Metropolis of *Polemoniacus*, when made a Province of it. 4 *Zela*, enlarged by *Pompey*, and called *Megalopolis*; by *Constantine* laid unto the Province of *Helenopolis*. 5 *Sebastia*, so called in honour of *Augustus*, whom the *Greeks* called *Sebastos*, a place of great strength, and one of the first Towns in the Lesser *Asia*, which held out against *Tamurlane*: in revenge wherof, when he had took it, he caused 12000 men, women, and children, to be most cruelly buried alive in some hollow pits, which he had digged for that purpose. Nigh to this City is Mount *Stella*, where *Pompey* gave *Mithridates* his fatal overthrow: where also *Tamurlane* with an Army of 80000 of his *Tartars*, encountered with *Bajazet* the *Turk*, coming to the relief of *Sebastia*, with an Army of 50000 fighting men. The issue of which fight was this, that *Bajazet* having lost 20000 of his souldiers, was himself taken prisoner, and carried by the insolent Conquerour in an iron cage, against the bars wherof he beat out his brains. 6 *Barbassia*. 7 *Megalopolis*. 8 *Gozalicia*, &c. not much observable in story.

In this part of *Pontus* is the rise and fall of the River

Thermodon, on the banks wherof the *Amazons*, a sort of warlike women, are said to dwell; so called either *quasi audax*, because they used to cut off their right paps, that they might not be an impediment to their shooting; or from a *word*, *fine paps*, because they used not to eat bread; or from *audax*, because they used to live together. They were originally of *Scythia*, and accompanied their husbands to these parts, about the time of the *Scythians* first irruptions into *Asia*, in the time of *Solystir* King of *Aegypt*. The Leaders of this people into *Cappadocia* were *Plinos* and *Scolypthus*, two young men of a great house, whom a contrary faction had banished. They held a great hand over the *Themiscyrii*, who inhabited this Region, and the Nations round about them. At last they were by treachery all murdered: But their wives now doubly vexed, both with exile and widowhood, and extremity of grief and fear producing its usual effect, despatched, they set upon the Conquerours under the conduct of *Lampedo* and *Marpessa*, and not only overthrew them, but also infinitely enlarged their Dominions, and for some time continued in great reputation: the names of whom, or of so many of them at least as occur in story, we shall here subjoin.

The Amazon Queens.

1 *Lampedo*, First Queen of the *Amazons* in these parts.

2 *Otrara*.

3 *Antiope*, whose Sisters *Hippolite* and *Mendippe*, challenged *Hercules* and *Theseus* to single combat, and were at last hardly vanquished, to their eternal credits.

4 *Penthesilea*, who came with a troop of brave *Virgo's*, to the aid of *Prianus* King of *Troy*: she invented the *Battle-Axe*, and was at last slain by *Pyrrius*, son to *Achilles*. Long after her death reigned *Thalefria*, who came to *Alexander*, being in *Hircania*, and plainly told him that she came to be his bedfellow; which done he returned: and at last by little and little this female Nation was extinct. They used in matters of copulation to go to their neighbouring men thrice in a year; if they brought forth Males, they sent them to their fathers; if females, they kept them, and trained them up in all discipline of war and courage. Of these more elsewhere.

4 The most Eastern part of *Pontus* called *C A P P A D O C I U S*, for that it bordered on that Province, and for a time was added to it by the *Romans*; extended from *Polemoniacus* to *Colchis*, and the River *Euphrates*, the utmost boundaries of this Country. Places of most consideration in it, 1 *Pharnacia*, built by *Pharnaces*, a King of *Pontus*. 2 *Cerasus*, by *Constantine* laid unto the Province of *Polemoniacus*, from whence *Cherries* were brought first to *Rome*, An. V. C. 680. called therefore *Cerasia* by the *Latines*; first brought into Italy by *Lucullus*, at the end of his war with *Mithridates*, no less deservng for that service to be made a God (as wittily *Terrullian* stiffs it) than *Bacchus* was for his transplanting of the Vine from the Eastern Countries. 3 *Scopolis*, on the *Euxine* Sea, as the others are. And so is also, 4 *Trapesus*, now *Trabzon*, the Imperial City of the *Comnens* here reigning over *Cappadocia*, *Gallatia*, and these parts of *Pontus*. An Empire founded first by *Alexius Comnenus* (Nephew of the great Tyrant *Andronicus Comnenus* by his son *Emmanuel*) who at the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western *Christians*, fled into these parts, which willingly submitted unto his command, Anno 1200. Here his posterity flourished in great prosperity, preserving the Majesty of the Empire in a better measure, than the *Constantinopolitans* themselves, till the time of *David* the last Emperour; in whose reign the City of *Trabzon*, and therewith all the whole Dominion belonging to it, was taken by *Mahomet the Great*; the

the poor Emperour led prisoner unto *Greece*, and there cruelly murdered. A famous Empery, and specially for the trade of fish, caught by the people on the shores of the *Euxine* Sea here salted, and from hence transported in great quantities to *Constantinople*, *Cassia*, and other places. And for the better help herein, it is said that there is a Mountain not far from this City, affording a black stone, which being beaten in a Mortar serves instead of salt, wherewith they season the fish which they send abroad. A City honoured heretofore with the residence of the Lord Deputies, or Lieutenants of the *Græcian* Emperour, for defence of the out-parts of the *Euxine* against the *Persians*; and now the Station of such Gallies as are the *Black-Sea*, and secure their trade. More in the land others named in *Ptolemy*, but not else observable.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were called *LEUCOSTRIS*, or *White Syrians*, governed by a race of Kings descended from the Royal house of *Archevmen* of the seven Competitors for the *Persian* Kingdom, on the death of *Cambyses*. But that honour falling on *Darius* (of which more hereafter) he seated himself in these remote parts of *Asia Minor*; the Ancestor of many great and puissant Princes, but none more memorable than one of his own name, *Regum Orientis post Alexandrum Magnum Maximus*, the most potent King of all the East since the time of *Alexander the Great*, as my Author hath it. A Prince of great abilities both in war and counsel, and one who longer held it out against the *Romans*, than *Phryrius*, *Antibal*, and the great Kings of *Macedon*, and *Syria*, had done together. This was that famous *Mithridates*, who being once a friend and confederate of the *Romans*, took their part against *Aristonicus*, who would not consent to the admission of the *Romans* unto *Pergamum*, according to the will of *Attalus*. Afterwards conceiving an ambitious hope to obtain the Monarchy of *Asia*, in one night he plotted and effected the death of all the *Roman* Citizens dispersed in *Anatolia*, being in number 150000: in like manner, as in after times the *English*, taught perhaps by this example, murdered all the *Danes* then resident in *England*; and the *Sicilians* massacred all the *French*, inhabiting *Sicilia*, as we have formerly declared. He dispossessed *Nicomedes*, son to *Prusias*, King of *Bithynia*; *Ardoxanes*, King of *Cappadocia*; and *Philumenes*, King of *Paphlagonia*, of their estates; because they persisted faithful to his enemies of *Rome*. He excited the *Greeks* to rebel, possessed himself of *Athens*, and dislured all the Isles, except *Rhodes*, from their obedience to the *Romans*. And finally, having disturbed their victories, and much shaken their estate, for the space of 40 years, he was with much ado vanquished by the valour and felicity of *L. Sylla*, *Lucullus*, and *Pompey* the great; three of the greatest Soldiers that ever the *Roman* Empire knew. Yet did not the *Roman* puissance so much pluck down his proud heart, as the rebellion of so much *Pharnaces*, against him; which he no sooner heard, but he used his body to a kind of poyson allay, (which from some could not work upon him, he flew himself. He is said to have been an excellent Scholar, & to have spoken perfectly the Languages of 22 Nations; & to have spoken for many Nations which were subject to him. But neither those common miseries, which ordinarily attend a falling greatness, And so ended this long and tedious war, exceeding troublesome to the *Romans*, but withal very be-

neficial. For under colour of having given aid to *Mithridates*, they took in *Crete*, *Gallatia*, *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and *Taurum pennis Orientem & Septentrionem involvit*, that in his heed; after his death the Kingdom continued unto his *Nero*: when *Polemo* the last King hereof dying without issue, it was cantoned and divided into many parts, and laid unto the Provinces of *Bithynia*, *Gallatia*, and *Cappadocia*, only that part of it which was called *Polemoniacus*, And so it remained till the reign of *Constantine the Great*, who changing the names, lessening the bounds, and increasing the number of the Provinces, left only the Province of *Pontus* and *Bithynia* in the state he found it. And for the rest, he cast it into two new Provinces, that to the old *Polemoniacus*, whereto were the Cities of *Tramæus*, *Neo-Cesarea*, *Cerasus*, *Comana Pontica*, *Palemoniacus*, and *Petræorum Civitas*, called afterwards *Justinianus*; of which *Neo-Cesarea*, was the Metropolis. That towards the East, separated from the Province of *Pontus* & *Bithynia*, by the River *Parthenius*, he caused to be called *Helenopolis*, by the name of *Helen* his Mother: and it, *Ibora*, *Euchaïta*, *Zela*, *Andrapsus*, *Agæum*, *Climachus*, *Sinope*, *Amisus*, and *Leontopolis*. But this division held not long, both being united into one, and called *Helenopolis*, by *Justinian*, continuing after that a member of the *Roman* Empire, till the coming of *David & Alexius Comneni* from *Constantinople*; wherof the one reigned in *Heraclea*, and the other in *Trabzon*, as before is said. But their estates being overthrown, it remains wholly to the *Turks*, who do now possit it.

The Arms of the Emperours of *Trabzon*, the greatest Princes of these parts, till the *Turks* subdued them, were Or, and Eagle volant *Gules*.

3. PAPHLAGONIA.

PAPHLAGONIA is bounded on the East, with the River *Hydris*, by which parted from *Cappadocia* on the West, by the River *Parthenius*, which parted from the Province of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, on the North, with that part of the Kingdom of *Pontus* which was named *Gallatius*; and on the South, with *Phrygia Major*, & *Gallatia*. So called of *Paphlago* the Son of *Phineus*, esteemed in it by his Father, who had newly conquered it.

The Country was but small, and of little power; and consequently the Cities were not very many, and of no great note. The principal of such as were, were 1 *Gangra*, times, Anno 339. commonly called *Synodus Gangrensis*. 2 *Conica*, or *Coniata*, so for convenient a situation, that it was entrenched and fortified by *Mithridates*, when he was Master of this Country. 3 *Romæopolis*, raised out of the foundation of some lesser Town, by Pompey the Great, and by him so named. 4 *Gerymanopolis*, 5 *Xoand*. 6 *Andrapa*, called afterward *Novia Claudiopolis*, to difference it from another City of that name in *Pontus*.

This Province, though but small in circuit, was heretofore the seat of four different Nations, viz. 1 *The Tiberians*, of whom it is said that they never waged war on any of the time and place of their fight. 2 *The Hephæstians*, 3 *The Mysians*, both which were a people so heathily and shameless, that they used to perform the work of generation in public; not knowing that *Multa sunt hominum*

factu, que sunt curpia visis. And 4 The *Heteti*, to whom the *Phoenicians*, as we have already said, do owe their first original. The Kings which ruled in this Country, derived themselves from *Philonemus*, who assisted *Prianus* King of *Troy* in his defence against the *Greeks*; in memory of whom, this Region for a while was called *Philonimia*. Applying themselves unto the times, they were always favourable to the strongest, serving the *Persian*, and submitting to *Alexander* as he passed that way; and so maintained their estate without much molestation, till the time of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*: who finding them firm unto the *Romans*, then growing to great power in the *Leffer Asia*, depriving *Philonemus*, then King hereof, and took the Kingdom to himself, fortifying the chief Towns and places of it. Restored again unto his Kingdom by the power of the *Romans*, he gave it to them at his death. But the Country being very much wasted, and most of the Cities of it destroyed and desolate in the course of that War, it was not thought worthy a particular care, and therefore laid into *Galatia*. Not reckoned a distinct Province in the time of St. *Peter*, who writing to the *Hebrews*, dispersed in *Pontus*, *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, *Asia*, and *Bithynia*, takes no notice of this *Paphlagonia*, nor was it otherwise esteemed than as a member of *Galatia*, in the time of *Proculus*. Afterwards it was joined to *Pontus*, by the Emperor *Constantine*; part of it after that, with some parts of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, being made into a new Province by the Emperor *Theodosius*, and called *Honorius*, in the honour of his Son *Honorius*, whereof *Claudiopolis*, a City of *Pontus* properly so called, was made the Metropolis. But by *Justinian* the name of *Honorius* being abolished, and that of *Paphlagonia* revived again, the whole Country, as before limited, was governed by an Imperial Officer, whom he called *Prætor Justinianus*: continuing under the command of the *Constantinopolitani*, till the taking of that City by the *Latines*. After which made a Member of the Empire of *Trabzon*, till the conquest of it by the *Turks*, by whom called *Rom*.

4 GALATIA.

GALATIA is bounded on the East, with *Cappadocia*; on the West, with the River *Sangarius*, and some part of *Pontus* specially so called, or *Mesopotamus*; on the North, with *Paphlagonia*, on the South, with *Lycania*. So called from the *Galls*, who having ranged over *Greece*, passed into *Asia*, and brought a great part of it under their command: but being broken by *Antiochus* King of *Pergamus*, and drove out of *Mysia* and the lesser *Phrygia*, were at last confined to this Country. It was also called *Gallo-Græcia*, from that mixture of *Galls* and *Græcians*, who uniting into one body when they came for *Asia*, were commonly called *Gallo-Græci*. By *Suidas* *Græco-Galli*, and the Country futable *Græco-Gallia*. Which mixture of *Græcians* notwithstanding, the *Galls* (being both the greater and prevailing Party) not only preserved their own Language, but in short time made it the common Language of the whole Country. And it continued so till *S. Hieron's* days, who telleth us in the Preface to his Commentaries on St. *Paul's* Epistle to this people, that it was *Sinitina Treverensium*, a language like to that of the *Treveri*, or people of *Triers*. A sure and certain Argument of their first Original.

The Country very plentiful of all manner of fruits, even unto voluptuousness; and providently provided of the stone called the *Ameihs*, which is said to preserve from drunkenness the man that weareth it. The name doth signify as much, derived from a *privatio*, and *amē*, which cometh from *amē*, signifying wine.

The people had a custome in their public funerals, to cast letters fairly written, into that last and fatal fire, wherein the dead body was to be burned, supposing that their friends should read them in the other World. Much given to *Sacrifices*, in the number and frequency whereof they excelled all Nations: inasmuch that *Athenius* telleth us of one *Artemides*, a rich *Galatian*, that he feasted the whole Nation for a year together with these *Sacrifices* of Bulls, Sheep, Swine and other Provisions, boyled in great Chaldrons made for that purpose, and distributed amongst them in Tents and Booths erected for that entertainment. A brave flash of vain-glorious hospitality.

Rivers of note here are not any, but what are common unto them with their neighbouring Nations, as *Haly*, *Sangarius*, and some others. The Towns of most consideration in it were, 1 *Ancyra*, on the banks of the River *Sangarius*, the chief City of the *Tetragages*; a *Gallic* Nation, and the Metropolis of the whole Country; memorable in Church-story for a Synod held here in the Primitive times, Anno 399. called *Synodus Ancyranæ*, but of most note at the present for the making of *Chamlets*: now called *Angauri*. 2 *Oleum*. 3 *Agrinina*, Cities of the same people also. 4 *Tavium*, or *Tanum*, (for I find both names) the chief City of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmi*, where was a brazen Statue of *Jupiter*, whose Temple there was a privileged Sanctuary. 5 *Androsia*. 6 *Pharvæna*, Cities of that Nation also. 7 *Therma*, a Roman Colony, so called of the hot Baths there; the chief City of the *Tolistobigæ*, *Proly*, or *Tolistobogæ*, as *Strabo* nameth them. 8 *Talachobocra*, belonging also to that people.

Besides the Nations above-named, here dwelt also the *Byceni* and *Profliginitæ*; who had also their peculiar Cities, mentioned by name in *Proculus*, but of little or no observation in the course of story. Of all which Nations, only the *Tetragages*, were of the *Gallic* Original; who with others of their Country-men under the conduct of *Belgus* and *Brennus*, having ravished *Pannonia* and *Illyrium*, fell at last into *Macedon*; where having tyrannized a while, and laid waste the Country, they were at last vanquished and expelled by *Antigonus* *Gonatus*. After this overthrow, under the conduct of *Lamproia*, and *Laurium*, they ferried over the *Hellepont*, and subdued almost all *Asia Minor* on this side the *Taurus*; employed there by those petty Kings and States against one another: their reputation grown so great, that no Prince thought himself secure without their alliance, or able to make war without their assistance. The very *Switzers* of that age; as mercenary, but more faithful unto those that hired them. But being over-rigorous in compelling their neighbouring Princes to become their *Tributaries*, and too severe in the exacting of their *Tributes*, they informed *Alexander* King of *Pergamus*, by whose favour they had settled about the *Hellepont*, to become their enemy. Vanquished by him, they were constrain'd to contain themselves within the bounds of this Province, which from them in the following times was called *Galatia*, and *Gallo-Græcia*. Here for a while they kept their ancient courage and estimation, molesting many times their neighbours; and sometimes setting themselves to hire in the wars of others: but in the end they lost both courage and esteem, and were *Galls* only in name, retaining little in them of their Ancestors valour. For as most plants and trees lose full of their virtue, being transplanted into another soil: so these men lost their native courage, strength and hardiness, being weakened by the *Asian* pleasures and delicacies. And as *Tully* faith, for a man to be good in other places, is no mastery; but in *Asia* to lead a temperate life, is indeed praise-worthy: so might one have said to the *Galls*, that to be courageous & patient of travel amongst the mountains,

rains, was no whit to be admired, but to have continued so amidst the delights of *Asia*, had been indeed meritorious in them. But these men were so far from afflicting the *Romans* in the *Capitol*, that they lost their own Country to *Manlius*, a Roman General. A war which *Manlius* undertook for no other cause, but that they had been aiding to *Antiochus* against the *Romans*; nor was there any memorable act performed herein; but that of the *Chioniæna* the Kings Wife, who being ravished by one of the *Roman* Captains, took her advantage whilst he busied cut off his head, which he presented to her ransom, to *Manlius* got little honour by his success, not being well comed with a *Triumph* at his coming home, according to the *Roman* custom, because he undertook the war of his own accord, without Commission from the *Senate*. And yet the *Senate* was content to enjoy the fruits of it, keeping the *Galatians* as their Subjects, and the Kings their time I find *Deiotarus*, by content of the *Romans*, to reign here as King: who siding with *Pompey* in his war against *Cæsar*, incurred the anger of the Victor; and had died for it, had not *Tully* pleaded his cause, and obtained his pardon. But he being dead, his Country in the time of *Augustus* was made a Province of the Empire; *Lollius* *Pallinus* being the first President or Governor of it; enlarged afterwards with the addition of *Paphlagonia*, and some part of *Pontus*, from whence called *Galaticus*. Reduced to its first bounds by the Emperor *Constantine*, and divided into two Provinces by *Theodosius*, the one called *Galatia Prima*, the other *Salutaris* from its medicinal waters. Of both which *Ancyra* remained the Metropolis. In the falling of the *Eastern* Empire, it was partly seized on by the *Turks*; not totally come into their hands, till the subverting of the Empire of *Trabzon* upon which it depended. By the *Turks* at this day called *Chianger*.

5 CAPPADOCIA.

CAPPADOCIA is bounded on the East, with *Armenia Major*, and some part of *Armenia Minor*; on the West, with *Galatia*; on the North, with *Pontus*, *Polemoniacus*, and *Cappadocia*; and on the South, with *Lycania*, and the rest of *Armenia Minor*. So called of the River, as *Pliny* telleth us, which runneth betwixt it, and *Galatia*.

The Country very plentiful of wine, and most kind of fruits, rich in mines of Silver, Brass, Iron, and Allom; affording also besides a mean sort of *Alabaster*, good store of wealth heretofore its breed of Horses infinite almost in this is universal in all parts of the Country, but not the very barren, especially about the furs and branches of the *Antitaurus*, which is a chain of hills, thrusting out on the edges of this Country, and the two *Armenias*. Here is also in this Country the mountain *Argæus*, said to be of so great an height, that from one of the summits or tops thereof, a man of peripetuous eyes may discern the *Euxine* on the one hand, and the *Mediterranean* on the other.

The People of this Country in the time of the *Romans* were of ill report, so vicious and lewd of life, so monstrous addicted to all kind of wickedness; that besides the share they had in the old *Greek* Proverb, of *Trochæus* and *Andrus*, they had some Proverbs to themselves, *Kawachius* and *Kawachius rizes*, that is to say, a man

of *Cappadocia*, and a *Cappadocian* Monster, being used proverbially, to signify a man most extremely wicked. The story of *George*, the *Asian* Patriarch of *Alexandria*, if either stand him rightly. And they made good the Proverb in *Alexandria*, *Auxentius*, *Asterius*, *Euthasius*, principal Pastors of the *Arians*, and that Arch-heretic *Eunomius*, *Christianity*, where once entertained, that this lewd disposition of the *Cappadocians* was to be corrected and reformed, and that this Country afforded as many godly Prebends, and courageous Martyrs, as any other whatsoever. Highly commended for it by *Nazianzen* before remembered, who with *Gregory Nyssen*, and St. *Basil*, all learned amongst many Martyrs of great faith and constancy. St. *George*, a noble *Cappadocian*, Collected or Tribune of Solboth East and West, than any other Saint in the Churches, the blessed Apostles and Evangelists excepted only, and for that reason made Patron of the Order of the *Saints* by *Edward* the Third. Finally, it is reported of these *Cappadocians*, that they were not only morally wicked, but naturally venomous also; inasmuch that if a Serpent did bite any of them, the mans blood was a poyson to the Snake, and killed him.

Principal Rivers of this Country, were 1 *Haly*, spoken of before, which had here its Fountain and Original; the end of *Cræsus* Empire both in site and fate, the utmost bounds of his dominions on that side: the utopian to pass over in his way to *Media*, which he intended to invade, he was encountered with, and vanquished by *Cyrus* the great King of *Persia*. 2 *Iris*, which a part of *Pontus*, dischannelled it self, as the other doth, in the *Euxine* Sea.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Mazaca*, beautified and enlarged by the Emperor *Tiberius*; after the uniting of this Province to the *Roman* Empire; and in honour of *Augustus* *Cæsar*, by him called *Cæsarea*, the Metropolis of *Cappadocia*, and the Episcopal See of renowned St. *Basil*. 2 *Nyssa*, the See of *Gregory*, famed *Nyssen*, the brother of *Basil*. 3 *Nazianzen*, the Episcopal See of another *Gregory* famed *Nazianzen*; three men, which as for the theoplicity of their conversation they were not equalled in those times: so for their admirabilities in all kind of learning, nothing more admirable to the most eminent of the ancient *Græcians*. 4 *Tyana*, the Metropolis of *Cappadocia* secondarily, the subdivision of it by the *Emperors*. 5 *Archelaus* in the Prefecture of *Quadratus*, founder or repaire of it. 6 *Comana*, for distinctions sake that name in *Pontus*, by *Proculus* placed, I know not one. Memorable in old times for a Temple consecrated to *Bellona*, whose Priests and other inferior Officers of both Sexes, amounted in the time of *Strabo* to 6000 and the Revenue of the Region next adjoining to it, in hundreded also. 7 *Diocæsarea*, called formerly *Cabira*, as we find in *Strabo*. 8 *Eusitopolis*, so called in honour of *Faustina*, wife of the Emperor *Antoninus*. 9 *Andresia*, 10 *Ptochæ*. 11 *Salambria*. 12 *Compe*, spoken of by *Proculus*, with many others so obscure, and not worth the naming. Of more note, though not found in the ancient Writers, is 13 *Ezerion*, situate on the very confines of the

the Greater Armenia for that cause made the *Rendezvous*, or place of meeting for the Turkish Soldiers when there is any expedition in hand against the Persians; at which place also after the ending of the War for the present year; they are disbanded and sent home to their several quarters. And 14 *Pertium*, not named in *Ptolemy*, but memorable for the great Battle fought in fight thereof, between *Cresus* King of *Lydia*, and *Cyrus* of *Persia*, in which *Cresus* having lost the field, and with it his Kingdom, found the Oracle true (though not in the sense that he expected) that *Cresus* passing over the River *Haly*, should overthrow a great estate, as indeed he did; but it was his own, and not the Persians.

That the Cappadocians are derived from *Tosayma*, the Son of *Gomer*, hath been so fully proved already in our General Preface, that we shall not trouble our selves to repeat it here; Nor shall we need to say more in confuting of their opinion, who would fetch *Caphroim* out of *Aegypt* from the rest of his brethren, to plant him in this Country, than hath there been said. Their fortunes in the former times I find little of: subjected by the Persians, with the rest of *Asia Minor*, after the overthrow of *Cresus*, who before had given the Law unto it, as to the Phrygians, Paphlagonians, Bithynians, Mysians, and others of the neighbouring Nations. By *Cyrus* given together with *Atossa* his Sister, to *Pharnaces* a Noble Persian, who had saved him from the fury of a ravenous Lion running upon him with full mouth, as he was hunting. A noble loyalty, and no less royally rewarded. From him descended *Artabanus* King herof in the time of *Alexander the Great*, continuing steadfast in his duty to the Crown of *Persia*, when almost all the rest of the Kings of *Asia* yielded to the Enemy. Nor did *Alexander* call him to account in his march for *Persia*. But after his decease, *Perdiccas* having the command of the Army, set upon him, vanquished him, and most cruelly crucified him, together with as many of his kindred as could be found. One of his Sons, who fortunately had escaped this slaughter, eluding his time when the Macedonians were at wars amongst themselves, recovered his estate again, and passed it over to his off-spring: continuing in his line, without any subjection, till the time of that *Artabazanes*, who by *Mithridates* was deprived of his dominion, as was told before. Restored again unto his Kingdom by the power of the Romans, he became their Homager, holding, as did his Successors, by their courtesy only: Continuing yet in Rate of Kings, till the death of *Archelaus* the last King herof, who having angered *Tiberius* for not attending on him when he lived at *Rhodes*, during the life time of *Augustus*, as did others of the Tributary States and Princes, was by him then possessed of the Empire, cited unto *Rome* under colour of projecting somewhat against the State. Where the old Prince, even spent with age, the Gout, and some other Difinances, had without question been condemned by the servile Senate, but that one of the witnesses depoted, that he had said, That if ever he went back into Cappadocia, *Tiberius* should find, quales nervi sibi essent, what a man he was. Which moved such a laughter in the Senate, the old King being neither able to sit nor stand, that he was dismissed; *Tiberius* thinking that he could not punish him more effectually, than to let him live. A favour which the old King construed to the best, and in the way of gratitude bequeathed his Kingdom at his death to the Empire of *Rome*. Being added to the Roman Empire, it was exceedingly enlarged by the addition of the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Pontus*: and so it stood in the time of *Ptolemy*, who reckoneth *Pontus Galaticus*, *Cappadocia*, and *Polemoniacus*, as parts and Members of this Province. Divided besides those into these eight *Prefectures*

that is to say, *Clamianensis*, *Sargavanensis*, *Gardicranensis*, *Cilicia*, *Tyavidis*, *Lycania*, *Antiochiana*, and *Cataonia*. But *Pontus*, *Lycania*, and *Antiochiana* (he means *Pisidia* as I take it) being made Provinces of themselves, by the Emperor *Constantine*, it returned unto its natural bounds, and made one Province of the Empire, of which *Cæsaria*, as is said before, was the Metropolis; and so remained, till the Emperor *Valens*, a great Patron of the Asian faction, of purpose to depose St. *Basil*, who opposed that Heretic, created another Province out of it, called *Cappadocia Secunda*, whereof the Metropolis was *Tyana*. After this it continued part of the Eastern Empire, till the erecting of the new Empire of *Trapezond*, together with which it fell into the hands of the Turks; by whom the whole Province, with the addition of *Pontus*, is now called *Anatolia*, after the name of that City, which the *Beglerbeg* of *Anatolia* honoureth with his residence, and is said to yield yearly to the Grand *Seignior* 60000 Ducks.

ARMENIA MINOR.

ARMENIA MINOR is bounded on the East, with *Euphrates*, which parteth it from *Anania Major*; on the South, with Mount *Taurus*, which separates it from *Cilicia*; on the West, and North, with a long chain of Hills, called *Mts Scordiscus*, by some called *Mts Amanus*, by others *Anti-Taurus*, according to the change of places; by which divided from *Cappadocia*. Of the reason of the name hereafter.

The Country of the same nature with *Cappadocia*, before described; in some parts overgrown with Mountains, by which, and by the River *Euphrates* so inclosed and fenced, that it is difficult of entrance: in others pleasant and delightful, well watered with sweet fountains, and some fair Rivers issuing out of the Mountains, the principal whereof is *Aras*, so called from the blackness of the water thereof, which falleth into the *Euphrates*.

Divided in the time of the Romans, into these four Regions; that is to say, *Loviana*, *Aravena*, *Armenie*, lying on the *Euphrates*; *Armenia* more within the land towards *Cappadocia*, each of which had their several Cities, whose names are to be found in *Ptolemy*. The principal *Armenie*, the chief City of the Region so called, and the Metropolis of the lesser *Armenia*, called afterwards *Molania*, and now *Szur*; the Territory thereof abounding in Oyl and Wine, not inferior to the best of *Greece*. The City said by *Onuphris* to be a Colony of the Romans, much spoken of by *Eusebius*, and other Writers of Ecclesiastical story, for the piety of the Christians there inhabiting in the fiery times of *Persecution*. 2 *Nicopolis*, and 3 *Orontodanus* in the Mountain Countries; the former built by *Pompey*, in memory of his victory there obtained against the forces of *Tigranes*, King of *Syria*, and both *Armenia's*. 4 *Garnace*, a well-fortified Town, mentioned by *Tacitus* in the twelfth book of his *Annals*, and by him called *Gurneus*, 5 *Cuculus*, and 6 *Arabsis*, memorable for the Exile of St. *Chrysothome*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, confined unto these places by the power and malice of the Empress *Eudoxia*, by whom hated for his Orthodoxy in points of faith; who dying afterwards at *Comana* of *Cappadocia*, was there interred.

This Country was once part of *Cappadocia*, till the Armenians by their incursions and Colonies possessed themselves of it, and gave unto it the name of *Armenia Minor*; continuing part of their estate till the war of *Mithridates* against the Romans; who being discomfited by *Lucullus*, fled with two thousand Horse to the Court of *Tigranes* the Armenian, who had married his daughter. By whom at first neglected, and not suffered to come into

his presence; but afterwards on the apprehension of the common danger, more esteemed and set by: in somuch that his royal entertainment there, and the refusal of *Tigranes*, to yield him up when required by the Romans, occasioned *Lucullus* to bring his forces into these parts, Victories being seconded by *Pompey*, and confirmed by *Augustus*, this Country was made a Province of the Roman Empire; the greater *Armenia*, lying on the other side of that River, though conquered also in that war, not being taken into the account of the Roman Provinces, till the time of *Trajan Augustus*, thinking it an high point of wisdom (as no doubt it was) not to extend the Empire beyond those banks. After this it continued Roman, till the declining times of the Eastern Empire, when wasted by the Persians, and subdued by the Turks; by whom called *Genech*, or as some say *Pegia*.

And so much of the Provinces of the Pontic Diocese, lying within *Anatolia*, or *Asia Minor*; converted to the Christian faith by the two great Apostles of the Jews and Gentiles, as appeareth by St. Paul's Epistle to the Galatians, and St. Peter's to the Strangers dispersed in *Pontus*, *Galatia*, *Cappadocia*, *Asia*, and *Bithynia*.

7. ASIA PROPRIA.

Come we now to the ASIAN Diocese, and first to that part thereof which *Ptolemy* and others for the reasons spoken of before (call *Asia Propria*. Anciently the most rich and flourishing part of all this Peninsula; and so affirmed to be by *Tully*, who calleth us, that the Tributes which the Romans had from other places, hardly sufficed to defray the publick charges for defence thereof, *Asia vero tam opima est & fertilis, ut & uberius agrorum, & varietate fructuum, & magnitudine passionis, & multitudine earum rerum quae exportentur, facili omnibus terris antecellit*. But as for *Asia* (saith he) it is so fertile and so rich, that for the fruitfulness of the fields, variety of commodities which were brought from thence, it very easily excelled all other Countries. The fortunes of the several Provinces we shall see anon. Brought under the command of the Persians, they continued subject to that by the Grecians, under the prosperous Ensigns of victory divided amongst his Captains, *Asia* fell to the share of *Antiochus*, whose Son *Demetrius* seized on the Kingdom of *Asia*, and left *Asia* to *Seleucus Nicator*, King of *Syria*, and the East, being also one of Alexander's heirs. The sixth from this *Seleucus*, was *Antiochus* called the Great, who waging war with young *Ptolemy Philopater*, King of *Egypt*, committed by his father to the protection of the Romans, and otherwise practising against their estate, from his Asian victories) *Asiaticus*, against him; who finally took into their possessions, which the Romans pretended to the present estate of their Affairs, (the Kingdom of *Macedonia* standing in their way) to make further use of *Eumenes* King of *Pergamum*, and the people of *Rhodes*, who had been aiding to them in the former way, they gave unto *Eumenes*, the Provinces of *Lycania*, *Phrygia*, *Mysia*, *Ionis*, *Lydia*; *Lycia* and *Caria* to the *Rhodians*, knowing full well, that they could easily take them back again, when they saw occasion. More herof in the story of the Kings of *Pergamum*, on the decease of *Attalus*, the last King thereof; these Provinces returning fully to the power of the Romans.

It contained only after the account of *Cicero*, the Pro-

vinces of *Phrygia*, *Mysia*, *Caria*, *Lydia*, as he reckoneth them up in his Oration for *Flaccus*: computing the two *Asia* and *Ionis*, under that of *Lydia*. But for our more punctual and particular proceeding in it, we will consider it as divided into 1 *Phrygia Minor*. 2 *Phrygia Major*. 3 *Mysia*. 4 *Aolis* and *Ionis*, or *Asia* more especially so called. 6 *Lydia*, and 7 *Caria*.

8. PHRYGIA MINOR.

PHRYGIA MINOR, is bounded on the East, with *Mysia*, interpoling betwixt it and the Greater *Phrygia* on the West, with the *Hellespont*; on the North, with the *Propontis*; on the South, with the *Aegean Sea*, Called *Phrygia* from *Phryx*, a River in the Greater *Phrygia*; or as some say, from *Phryxus*, the son of *Atamas* of his Mother-in-law, did here eat himself. Minor was added to it to distinguish it from the other *Phrygia*, which being the bigger of the two had the name of *Major*. It was also called *Phrygia Hellespontica*, after its situation on that *Strait*, and *Troas*, from *Troas* the chief City of it, by which name it occurth in the book of the names I find not, except it came from the *Epistates*, a people dwelling on the East parts of *Bithynia*, and consequently near this place.

Chief Rivers of it *Scamander*, on whose Banks stood the renowned City of *Troy*, honoured by *Hesiod* with this Title of *Divine Scamander*: in which the Virgins of *Asia* took a little before they were to be married, used to bath themselves, and to say these words, *Scamander mi Virginitate auguras*, that is to say, Take O *Athenian* taking, clapped a Coronet of Reeds upon his head, like a River god; and so bestowed *Callisto* a no by the Virgin, then betrothed to another, occasioning there called *Xanthus* by the Poets, *Xanthusque bibissim*, as in *Virgil*, and watered a little Region called *Lycia*, whence *Trolemus* Lycian *tepefecerat hantem* (Sanguine *Jan* Spear. But of this more anon in the greater *Lycia*. 2 *Asopos*, passing this little Region from the Lesser *Mysia*, the boundary of it on the North, as the Promontory called *Lebium*, is the furthest point of it towards the Hellespont, 3 *Simois*, now called *Shores*, falling into the (convenient for the Statue and Sepulchre of *Ajax*, ybut which *Paris* (being by his Father exposed to the fury of wild Beasts) judged the controversy of the golden Ball in favour of *Pentus*; respecting neither the great Riches of *Imo*, nor the divine delight of *Pallas*, but transplanted with a sensual delight, fatal in the end to the whole Country.

Cities of most observation in it, 1 *Dardannus*, or *Dardania*, the Town and Patrimony of *Atreus*, 2 *Assor*, mentioned *Attili* 20. 13. by *Pliny* called *Apollonia*; who it will suffice me that earth about it is of such a nature, that it will consume a dead body in forty days. 3 *Trojanopolis*, the Sea-side, opposite to the title of *Leibos*, destroyed by *Trojan* war, and the Greek in the first beginnings of the the Lady *Briseis*, relieved by *Achilles* to himself for his part of the booty, and after taken from him by *Agamemnon*, which caused such a deep displeasure in him, that he would not go into the field till she was restored.

5 *Sigamum*, the Port-town to *Troy*, near a noted Promontory of the same name. 6 *Troy*, situate on the River *Scamander*, the beauty and glory of the East, called *Ilium*, and *Pergamum*, for the reason to be shewn anon. A famous Town, from the people whereof, all Nations desire to fetch their original. The beauty of it may be (as I have written) yet seen in the ruins, which with a kind of Majesty entertain the beholder: the walls of large circuit, consisting of a black hard stone cut four-square; some remnants of the Towers which stood on the walls, and the fragments of great Marble Tombs and Monuments of curious workmanship. But certainly these are not the ruins of that *Ilium*, which was destroyed by the *Greeks*, but 7 *Troas*, or *New-Troy*, built some four miles from the situation of the old by *Lysimachus*, one of *Alexander's* Captains, who peopled it from the neighbouring Cities, and called it *Alexandria*, or *Troas Alexandri*, in honour of *Alexander the Great*, who began the work, but lived not to bring it to any perfection. In following times called *Troas* only, and by that name mentioned, *Acts* 20. 6, then the *Metropolis* of this Province, now a ruin only; but every day more ruinous than other by the *Turks*, who carry daily the stones and Pillars of it to *Constantinople*, to adorn the houses of the *Bassas*. 7. *Scamandria*, a strong piece, but of latter foundation, cunningly surprised by *Ottoman* the first King of the *Turks*, in the time of a Funeral. Now concerning old *Ilium*, the buildings, glories, and fall of it, take this story with you.

The KINGS of TROY.

- A.M.
2487 1 *Dardanus*, son to *Corimbis* King of *Corinth*, having killed his brother *Asius*, fled into this Country, where he built this City, calling it *Dardania*; according to that Verse of *Virgil*, *Dardania* Illice primus pater urbis, & autor. Both of *Troy* Town, and *Trojan* race, *Dardanus* the first founder was.
- 2518 2 *Erichonius*, of whom little memorable. 75.
- 2593 3 *Tros*, the son of *Erichonius*, who so much beautified and enlarged the City of *Dardania*, that from thenceforth it was called *Troja*, and the people *Troes*. By supporting the unnatural malice of *Saturn* against his son *Jupiter*, he lost his own son *Ganymedes*: who being taken prisoner by *Jupiter*, who carried the *Eagle* for his Ensign, is by the Poets said to have been snatched up to Heaven by an *Eagle*. 60.
- 2653 4 *Ilus*, the son of *Tros*, who built the Regal Palace called *Ilium*; and did withal so enlarge the City, and added so much Ornament and beauty to it, that it is frequently called *Ilium*, and the People *Iliaci*. The many Towers and Towers of it, were of his erection, which being by the *Greeks* called *ἰλίος* and sometimes *ἰλίου* occasioned the whole City to be called *Pergamum*. 54.
- 2707 5 *Laomedon*, who new built *Troy*, which afterwards *Hercules* and the *Greeks* (justly conceiving duplicity against the treacherous King) twice took and defaced; *Laomedon* himself being slain the latter time. 36.
- 2743 6 *Prianus* who re-edified *Troy*, but giving leave to his son *Paris* to ravish *Helen* wife to *Melenas* King of *Sparta*, forced the *Greeks* to renew their ancient quarrel: who, after a ten years siege, forced the Town, having lost of their own men 860000, and killed 666000 of the *Trojans*, and their Associates,

A. M. 2783. so as that of *Ovid* was most true,

*Jam feges est ubi Troja fuit rescandaque falce
Luxuria Phrygio laqueine pinguis humus.*
Corn fit for *Ithaca* now grows where *Troy* once stood. And the soil's fattened with the *Phrygian* blood. Concerning the taking of this Town, two things are to be considered. First, whether the *Greeks* in these ten years lay continually before it; and it seems they did not; but rather that they did beat up and down, waisting the Country, and robbing the Seas for the first nine years; and in the tenth only laid a formal siege. This is the more probable, because that in the tenth year of the war, *Prian* is recorded by *Homar* in the third of his *Iliads*, to have fate on a high Tower, and to have learned of *Helen* the names and qualities of the *Greek* Commanders, which he could not be thought ignorant of, if they had so long together lain in eye-reach. Secondly, by what means the Town was taken: and here we find a difference. For some Historians tell us, that *Aeneas* and *Antenor*, being either weary of the war, or discontented that it was not managed by their sole advice, or otherwise corrupted by the *Greeks*, betrayed it to the Enemy: but this *Virgil* could not brook, as prejudicial to his *Aeneas*, whom he intended to make the pattern of a compleat Prince. He therefore telleth of a *Wooden-horse*, wherein divers of the *Greek* Princes lay hidden, which by *Sidon* one of the *Greeks*, was brought to *Troy* gates; and that the people desirous of that monument of the Enemies flight, made a breach in their walls, the gate not being high enough to receive it. And that this fiction of *Virgil* might be grounded on History, it is thought by some, that over the *Scenae* Gate where the *Greeks* entered, was the portraiture of a large and fately Horse: and by others that the walls were battered by a *wooden Engine*, called an *Horse*; as the *Romans* in after ages used a like Engine called a *Karr*. Neither of which is much improbable; but with me perfwade not the integrity of *Antenor* or *Aeneas*, for whose fakes the fable of the *wooden Horse* was first invented.

The City being thus destroyed, the *Trojans* who remained in the Country, when *Aeneas* and *Antenor* had forsaken it, began to think of some other place for their habitation, which having often shifted, they fixed at last by advice of an Oracle, some four miles from the former, giving it the name of *Ilium*. A poor and sorry Village when *Alexander* came thither, who in the Temple of *Minerva*, (the only one they had, and a mean one too) offered up his own shield, and took down another, which he used after in his fights against the *Persians*, honouring it with gifts, and promising the People to rebuild and enlarge their City. But what he lived not to make good, was performed by *Lysimachus*, who gave it the name of *Alexandria*, next called the *Alexandrian Troas*, at last *Troas* simply. A free City it continued till the war of *Antichrist* against the *Romans*; in the course whereof *Fimbria* a *Roman* Quæstor having seditiously slain the Consul *Valerius Flaccus* in *Bithynia*, and made himself Master of the Army, being refused entrance here as a Thief and a Rebel, besieged the City, and in the space of eleven days took it. And when he boasted that he had done as much in eleven days, as *Agamemnon* and the *Greeks* could do in as many years, one of the *Ilians* tartly answered; *That they wanted an Hector to defend them*. Afterwards *Julius Caesar*, emulous of *Alexander's* attempts, and descended from *Julius* of *Trojan* race, restored them to their liberty, and enlarged their Territories: a Colony, and an University of the *Romans* of no mean esteem. But time and war, and the barbarity of the *Turks*, have brought it unto rubbish, as before was said.

In the distributing of the Provinces of the *Roman* Empire,

Empire, this little Region, with that of *Mysia* *Hellepontica* adjoining to it, made up the Province called by the name of *Hellepontus*, subject with *Æolis*, *Ionia*, and the *Asian* Isles, to the exempt Jurisdiction of the *Proconsul* of *Asia*. Following the fortunes of *Constantinople* till the taking of that City by the *Turks*, it became then subject to the *Greek* Emperours residing at *Nicea*, conquered not long after by the *Turks* of the *Seldassian* family. In the devolution of whole Empire on the death of the second *Murad*, the whole Province of *Hellepontus*, with part of the greater *Mysia* and *Æolis* adjoining to them, and of some parts of *Lydia*, were seized upon by *Carafius*, a man of great power amongst the *Turks*, who here erected a small Kingdom, called from him *Carafius*, or *Caraf-illi*; long since swallowed up by the *Ottoman* Race, in the time of *Orchanes*, Son of *Ottoman*, and the second King of that house.

8. PHRYGIA MAJOR.

PHRYGIA MAJOR is bounded on the East, with *Galatia*; on the West, with *Mysia*, interposed *Maratonus*, and the *Lesser Phrygia*; on the North, with *Maratonus*, or *Pontus* specially so called; on the South, with *Lydia*. Called *Phrygia* for the reasons before laid sake, because the greater of the two.

The People of this Country were anciently more superstitious than the other *Asians*, as appeareth by the rites used in the Sacrifices of *Cybele*, and some other Goddesses: said to be also the Inventors of *Augury*, and other kinds of *Divination*. And yet for the most part men of afterwits, and all for had I wife, whence the Proverb, *Serò jam Phryges*, applied to those who wanted foresight, and off; and used not to bethink themselves of what would follow, till it was too late. A people noted for effeminacy and lightness of conversation; and for fear they should not of themselves be wanton enough, their very *Musick* was so fitted as to dispose them to lasciviousness. Whereby the ways I find three sorts of *Musick* spoken of amongst the Ancients: the first, that which *Aristotle* calleth *ἰνδική*, because it fettered and composed the affections; and *Boetius*, the *Lydian Musick*, because much used by that people, before corrupted by long ease and ill example. It consisted principally of long notes or *Spondees*, such as is that supposed to be which *Elitha* called for, *1 Kings* 3. 15, to invite the Spirit of prophesie to him; and was played by *David* before *Saul*; to drive away the ill Spirit from him. And of this sort was the *Church-Musick* of the Primitive times, fitted to calm mens passions, and raise their devotions. Or per oblectamenta aurium (as *St. Augustine* hath it) *assurgens animus ad pietatis affectum*, that by the pleasure of the ears the passions might be calmed, and the Soul inflamed with pious and devout affections. The second sort was that which *Aristotle* calleth *ἡρώδης*, or *ἡρώδης* (as the other *ἰνδική* or *moral*) commending it stirring them to action; consisting of *Dactyles*, or more long notes; and two short notes, by him and *Boetius* both called *Dorian*, as most peculiar to that people: The third and last by the Philosopher called *ἑυδαίμωνος*, or ravishing to lascivious gestures, and wanton thoughts: consisting of three notes or *Tribachies*. *Boetius* terms it *Phrygian*, on; such as the *French Musick* in our age. A sort of *Musick* forbidden to be used by *Aristotle*, but upon the Theatre, for contentation of the rude and unpolished people by reason of that influence which it had upon

mens behaviours. *Musica Mithica* (saith the *Orator*) *mutatur & mores; Curandum itaque in Musica quædam gravissima & sedatissima retinenda*, that is to say, the change of *Musick* maketh an alteration of manners; care therefore is to be taken in the Common-wealth, that the *Musick* be composed and grave: and such only out of the way how this fiddling humour hath led me out of the

The Country very rich and pleasant, well watered with the Rivers *Sangarius* and *Marfias*. Of which the former hath its Spring or Fountain in this Country, but his fall in the *Euxinus*, on the banks whereof standeth the City *Gordium*, and many others of good note. The latter was so called from one *Marfias*, who striving with *Apollo* for prebeminence in *Musick*, was by himhead, which tears of the mourners grew this River. The chief Towns 1 *Gordium*, the seat of *Gordius*, who from a Plowman being raised and chosen King of this Kingdom, placed the furniture of his Wain and Oxen in the Temple of *Apollo*, layed in such a Knot, that the Monarchy of the world was promised to him that could untie it; which when Alexander had tried and could not undo it, he cut it with his Sword. 2 *Midas*, the seat of *Midas*, son to *Bacchus*, that what ever he touched should be turned into gold; which Petition granted, he was almost starved, his wife; and afterward for preferring *Pan's* Pipe before *Apollo's* Harp, his head was adorned with a comely pair of Asses ears. 3 *Coleffe*, where dwelt the *Coleffians*; to whom *St. Paul* wrote one of his Epistles. 4 *Pessinus*, *Dea Pelinnia*, The *Romans* were once told by an Oracle, that they should be Lords of the world, if they could get this Goddess into their possession. Hereupon they lend to the *Phrygians* to demand it. The *Phrygians* willing to please a potent neighbour, especially the *Romans*, being their Country men, as descended from *Aeneas*, decds is shipped away for *Rome*. But behold the unluckiness of fortune: The Ship, Goddess and all made a stand in *Tiber*; neither could it be advanced forwards by force of Art: it hapned that one of the Vestal Virgins, named her self upon this experiment and fasting her girdle to the Ship, prayed to the Goddess, that if she were cause, which was no sooner heard than granted, *Claudia* draw people wondering at the miracle, as well they might. But to return unto the City, it stands in the borders of *Galatia*, and is by some made to be the City of *Gordius*, and the *Gordian Knot* placed in it also; but neither rightly. The City, in which the Priests of *Cybele* had their usual residence, thence called *Dindymene*. 5 *Apamea*, situate not far from the banks of *Meander*, anciently a most flourishing Emport, and the *Metropolis* of the whole Country, till *Constantine* divided it into the two Provinces of *Salutaris*, and *Pactiana*: making 6 *Synada*, the *Metropolis* of the first. 7 *Hierapolis*, and 8 *Lusidæa*, two noted Cities in those times, the principal of the other Province. 9 *Tiropolis*, and 10 *Tiberiopolis*, so called from the Emperour to whose honour dedicated. 11 *Doxyram*, &c. Not known unto the ancient Writers, but of more note in modern stories; are 1 *Syngia*, the habitation of *Ereclus*, Father of *Ottoman* the first King of the *Turks*. 2 *Choras-chis*, by the *Greeks* called *Melanopygia*, or the Black Tower, 3 *Cilicene*, 4 *Eimeiol*, places

places of consequence and importance, taken by the said *Ottoman* from the *Christians*, in the first rise of his fortunes.

As for the *Phrygians*, they descended (as was shewn before) from *Gomer* the eldest Son of *Japhet*, and *Askenaz*, the eldest Son of *Gomer*: of which *Gomer* first placed himself in the mountainous Countries of *Albania*, and afterwards in the more pleasant Plains of the *Greater Phrygia*, where the City of *Cimmerius* (the posterity of *Gomer* being generally called *Cimmerians*) did preserve his memory. And as for *Askenaz*, he first took up his dwelling in the *Lesser Phrygia*, and the banks of the *Hellepont*; where was anciently a City and Territory called *Ascania*, some times adjoining called *Insula Ascania*, the name of *Ascanius* also very frequent in *Troy* itself. An ancient people they were doubtless, esteemed the ancientest of the World by *Psemiticus* King of *Egypt*, upon this Experiment. Desirous to inform himself to what Nation the privilege of greatness Antiquity did right belong, he caused two children to be kept in a fold, where they were suckled by Goats: all mankind being prohibited upon very great penalties to have recourse to them. All the language which the children learned from their speech & Nurses, was no more than *Bec*, which in the *Phrygian* language significeth bread; and being of no signification at all in any other which was then known to the *Egyptians*, gave up the *Verdict* on their side: But other Nations of the world not yielding to this sentence, by a *Writ of Error*, or an *Ad melius inquirendum*, impeach'd a new *Jury*; wherein it was pronounced on the *Scythians* side, *Scythianum gens semper antiquissima*. Where by the way, *Goropius Becanus* makes the like use of this experiment, to prove the *High Dutch* to be the Original or Mother-tongue of the world; because *Becquer* in that language significeth, as with us, a *Baker*, or a maker of *Bread*. In this Country reigned *Niobe*, who preferring herself before *Latona*, the mother of *Phobus* and *Diana*, had her children slain before her face by an unseen means, and was her self turned into a stone, as the Poets fable. Here also reigned *Tantalus*, who being rich, and wanting wisdom to make use of it, is feigned to stand in Hell up to the chin in water; and that too under a tree whose fruit toucheth his lips: yet both the one and the other lie from him, when he offereth at them. Of which thus *Ovid*.

—Tibi Tantalus mille

Dependunt aquae, quaeque imminet, effugit arbor,
In English thus,

Thou canst not, *Tantalus*, those waters taste;
The tree just at thy lips, flies off as fast.

But this race of Kings being worn out by the Tyranny of time or war, the *Phrygians* were made subject to the Kings of *Lydia*; continuing under their command till the Conquest of *Lydia* by the *Persians*, with which they fell together to the Crown thereof, not made the fronger by the accession of effeminate Subjects. Gained from them by the Sword of *Alexander*, they fell unto *Antiochus* one of his great Captains, and on his overthrow at the battle of *Issus*, to *Seleneus* the Conqueror, the first King of that race: following the same fortune after that with the rest of *Asia*, till they came to be possessed by the *Romans*, and made a Province of that Empire. But *Constantine* laying to the *Greater Mysia*, made two Provinces of it; the one called *Salutaris*, from some miraculous cures there wrought by the *Arch-Angel Michael*, as was then generally believed; the other called *Pactiana*, from *Pactianus*, who in the time of the said *Constantine* was *Præfect* for the *Prætorium* of the East; and divers years before had begun his honours with the *Lieutenanship* of *Britain*. In the declining of the *Constantinopolis-*

tians, it became a prey unto the *Turks* of the *Selaccian* Family; possessed by them till the death of *Aladin*, the last King of that race: when seized upon, together with the *Greater Mysia*, and those parts of *Lydia* which lay next unto it, by *Aidin*, a great *Turkish* Prince, and made a peculiar Kingdom, called by his name *Adinidia*, or *Adinili*; extorted shortly from his heirs by the house of *Ottoman*.

9. MYSIA.

Interposed betwixt the two *Phrygias* lyeth the Country of *MTSIA* A bounded on the East, with *Phrygia Major*; on the West, with *Phrygia Minor*, and the *Ægean* Sea; on the North, with parts of *Bithynia*, *Propontis*, and the *Hellepont*; and on the South, with part of *Lydia*, *Æolia*, and the *Ægean*. So called from the *Mysians*, the Inhabitants of it.

Whether these *Mysians* were originally a *Phrygian* Nation, or some interlopers which thrust in afterwards amongst them, I find not determined. Most probable it is, they were natural *Phrygians*, being as superstitious in the worship of their several *Deities*, as any *Phrygian* of them all; and that they had this name given them by the *Lydians*, from the abundance of *Beech-trees* which grow amongst them, by them called *Mysia*. A people of so base & contemptible quality, that it grew into a common Proverb to call a fellow of no worth, *Mysiorum posterum*.

The principal Mountain of this Country is that called *Olympus*, situate in the North parts hereof bordering towards *Bithynia*: which as it is called *Olympus Mysia*, to difference it from *Olympus in Greece*; so the people of the *Greater Mysia*, where this Mountain is, are called *Olympeni*, to difference them from the *Mysii* or *Mesi* of *Europe*. And as for Rivers, those of most note besides *Ægeus*, parting it from *Troas*, or the *Lesser Phrygia*, are 1. *Caius*, on whose banks stands the City of *Pergamus*, and from thence passeth into the *Ægean* Sea, at the Bay of *Elaia*; and 2. the famous River of *Granicus*, which hath its fountain in *Mysia Major*, and passing through *Mysia Minor*, falleth into the *Propontis*. A River memorable for the Victory which *Alexander* obtained on the banks hereof, in his first essay against the *Persians*, by whom upon the first noise of his preparations he was so flighted, that *Darius* King of *Persia*, gave command to his Lieutenants residing in *Asia Minor*, that they should take him alive, whip him with Rods, and so convey him to his presence. A notable example of the pride and folly of the *Persians*. But *Alexander* soon taught them another Lesson. For though the *Persians* were possessed of the higher banks of the River, with an intent to stop his passage; yet he resolved to charge them in the face of their strength, knowing full well, that if he could beat them on a place of so great advantage, he should not only lessen them in point of reputation, but beget an opinion of himself that he was invincible. And so accordingly it proved, the *Persians* being vanquished by him, and all the Kingdoms and Provinces of this *Asia* submitting to him on the noise of the Victory (as an enemy not to be resisted upon equal terms) some few Towns excepted. And therefore it was wisely advised by *Machabiel*, that he who takes upon him to defend a passage, should with his ablest forces oppose the *Assailants*, because in all Invasions where the Nations invaded have been beaten upon a great advantage of place, as defence of Rivers, Straights, and Mountains, they do not only dishearten their Soldiers from dealing afterwards on even ground with that Enemy, but leave no hope unto their fellows and partakers, of being succoured and defended by such weak Protectors. Which caution if the *Persian* commanders had observed either here, or at *Pylæ*

Cilicia

Cilicia, spoken of hereafter, *Alexander* had not so easily subverted the *Persian* Monarchy. But the fatal period of it was now drawing on, and the men either naturally Cowards, or else prodigiously befotored.

It is divided commonly into *Mysia Minor*, or the *Lesser Mysia*, which lying on the West towards *Troas* and the *Hellepont*, is called sometimes *Mysia Hellepontica*; and joyned unto *Troas* by the Emperor *Constantine*, made up that Province which he called the *Consular Hellepont*: and *Mysia Major*, called from *Olympus* which was in it, *Mysia Olympica*, and the Inhabitants *Olympeni*; which joyned by that Emperor to the Western parts of *Phrygia Major*, made up that Province which he called to be called *Phrygia Salutaris*, for the reason formerly delivered.

Places of most observation in the *Lesser Mysia*, were 1. *Aydus*, standing on the narrowest of the *Hellepont*, opposite unto *Sefor* in *Thrace*; first built by the *Adilems* with the consent of *Gyges* King of *Lydia*, to whom the Country then belonged; Memorable both in the ancient and modern stories. In ancient story for the famous resolution of the Inhabitants, when besieged by *Philip* the father of *Persus* King of *Macedon*. For being brought by him into some distress, and hopeless of good conditions from him, the young men of the Town who had bound themselves by oath to die rather than fall into his hands, set fire thereof, and barbarously flew themselves, with as many of the women and children as could be met with. Which news being brought to *Philip*, moved so little compassion, that he said he would give the *Aydians* three days leisure to die; and therefore would not suffer any of his soldiers to enter the Town, then set open to him, either to take the spoil thereof, or hinder this bloody execution, till the three days end. In Modern story no less memorable for the taking of it by the *Turks*, in the reign of *Orchamus* the son of *Ottoman*, through the treason of the Governours Daughter: who bewitched with the person and valour of *Alderach-men*, a young *Turkish* Gallant, whom she had beheld from the Towers of the Castle, threw a Letter to him as he drew near the wall, wherein he manifested her affection, and promised to make him Master of that Fortress, if he would persuade his General to raise the siege, and come to receive it from her, which was done accordingly. The Town continuing ever since in the power of the *Turks*, the well fortified, and one of the two Castles spoken of before, which defend *Constantinople* on that side from all Island of the same name also, but so near the Continent, that it joyned to it by two bridges. The *Metropolis* of *See* in the prosperous times of Christianity; as were all other Cities or *Metropoles* of their several Provinces. A known to the *Romans*, called therefore by *L. Florus*, the *civitas nobilis civitas, arce, manibus, porru, turribusque munita* *Asia*; *plaga littora illustrat*, that is to say, that the noble City of *Cyzicus* by the excellency of the Walls, Bulwarks, Haven, and Towers of Marble, doth beautify and illustrate the shores of *Asia*. Honoured amongst many other goodly and magnificent buildings, with a glorious Temple, the Pillars whereof being 4 Cubits thick, and 50 Cubits high, were each of one entire stone only; the whole Fabrick all of polished Marble, every stone joyned unto the other with a line of Gold. In vain besieged by *Mithridates* in the time of his war, who lost before it by the Sword, Pestilence, and Famine, no fewer

than 300000 men, and yet could not force it. Afterwards, ruined by an Earthquake, the *Falling-sciency* of the former lustre: the very ruins of it daily made more ruinous, by transporting the Stones and Marbles to *Constantinople*, for the embellishing of that City. 3. *Lampsaenus* on the *Propontis*, in which the beauly God *Præpus* was worshipped in as beauly a figure: *Quem non desudo* (as wittily *Lactantius* scoffeth) *ne quid appareat risu detum;* supposed to be the same with the Syrian or Phœnician *Baal*, so often mentioned in the Scriptures. For this and on some other reasons, *Alexander* had conceived against it such an high displeasure when he was in *Asia*, that he resolved to raze it to the very ground. And seeing *Anaximenes* coming to him as an Embassador from the Town to obtain his favour, commanding him to hold his peace, and swear as by way of prevention, that he would deny whatsoever he requested of him: whereupon *Anaximenes* entreated him to destroy the City, which now for his Oaths sake he could not do, and so this wicked City at that time escaped. 4. *Parium*, so called, as this wicked City from *Parium* the son of *Jafon*, a Colony at first of the only two Roman Colonies in all the Province. By *Homæ* called *Adraestia*; as *Lampsaenus* in the same Author, is called *Pityusa*. More in the land, are 5. *Seppis*, 6. *Hirathene* both mentioned by *Pliny*, but of more antiquity

Chief Cities in *MTSIA MAJOR* or *OLYMPIA* are 1. *Dainia*, in the North parts, not far from *Olympus*, 2. *Apollonia*, near a large Lake sacred to *Apollon*, in the same parts also; 3. *Pala Seppis*, or *Seppis Vetus*, on a Bay of the *Ægean* Sea, joyning upon *Troas*, or the *Lesser Phrygia*, 4. *Adranthium*, mentioned *Acts* 27. where *St. Paul* took ship to go to *Rome*, 5. *Antandrus*, on the same Sea also, now called *St. Dimiri*, named at first *Cimmeria* from the *Gomerites* or *Cimmerians* here inhabiting (which sheweth that *Asyianus* was a part of *Phrygia*) afterward *Edonis*, and at last *Antandrus*, and that either because built or repaired rather by the men of *Andros*, an Island of the *Ægean*, spoken of before, among the *Cyclades*, or because the *Grecians* having taken *Polydorus* the son of *Priam*, from the King of *Thrace*, received this City for his ransom, or rather in exchange for him as the word doth intimate. 6. *Protaeleus*, on the same coast also. More in the Land, 7. *Prepenissus*, 8. *Tragæopolis*, 9. *Aydus*, of which little memorable. 10. *Pergamus*, the Regal City of this tract, situate in a goodly or Fortified with a stately City by the Kings hereof, and beautified with an excellent Library containing 200000 Volumes; for the writing or transcribing whereof, *Pavement* was here first invented, which from hence to this day is called *Pergamenum*. Here also were those costly hangings first invented, which we now call *Tapestry*; by the *Romans* called first *Aulen*, from *Aula*, signifying a Hall; the Hall of *Attalus* King hereof (by whom invented) being the first room furnished and adorned herewith. Here was born *Galen* the famous *Physician*, living very healthfully to the age of 140 years: his health preserved to so great age, by these means especially. 1. Never eating or drinking his fill. 2. Never eating any thing that was raw. 3. 24. Always carrying about him some sweet Perfumes. Finally, this was one of the seven Churches to which *St. John* writ his *Revelation*. For near unto the borders of *Lydia*, it was reckoned as a City of *Lydian Asia*; within the limits whereof those seven Churches were all comprehended.

As for the Kings hereof which flourished here for some

Some ages in such wealth and splendor, they came but from a poor and obscure original. The first of them one *Phileteus*, an *Eunuch*, belonging to *Antigonos*, one of the Great *Alexander's* greatest Captains; and after his death to *Lysimachus* King of *Thrace*, by whom trusted with his money and accounts. Fearing the fury of his Master then grown old and tyrannous, he seized on the Cattle of *Pergamus*, and therein on 90000 Talents which he offered with his service unto *Selucus*, the first King of *Syria*. But both *Lysimachus* and *Selucus* dying shortly after he kept the money to himself, and reigned in this City as an absolute King; leaving the Kingdom at his death to his brother *Eumenes*, no better man than a poor Carter, till raised by the fortunes of this *Eunuch*. *Eumenes* furnished with money, though of no great territory, was able by the *Galls* and other Mercenaries, not only to preserve himself against the *Syrian* Kings, who laid claim to his City, but also to enlarge his bounds as he saw occasion. But the main improvement of this Kingdom hapned in the days of *Eumenes* the second, the son of *Attalus*, the brother and Successor of this *Eumenes*: who being useful to the *Romans* in their wars against *Philip* of *Macedon* and *Antiochus* the Great, King of *Syria*, was liberally rewarded by them with the Provinces of *Lydia*, *Phrygia*, *Æolia*, *Jonis*, *Troas*, and both the *Myasias*; which they had taken from *Antiochus* in the end of that war. The rest of the affairs hereof, till it fell in fine unto the *Romans*, take here in this short Catalogue of

THE KINGS of PERGAMUS.

- A. M.
3668 1 *Phileteus*, the first King of *Pergamus*, of whom before 20.
3688 2 *Eumenes*, brother, or as some say, the brothers son of *Phileteus*, vanquished *Antiochus*, surnamed *Hierax*, in a light near *Sardis*, and awed *Selucus* *Calinicus*, both Kings of *Syria*. 22.
3710 3 *Attalus*, brother of *Eumenes*; restored *Ariathes* the *Cappadocian* to his Kingdom, and discomfited the *Galls*, compelling them to keep themselves within the Country since named *Galatia*. A Confuldiate of the *Romans*, and by them much courted.
3754 4 *Eumenes* II. son of *Attalus*, gratified by the *Romans* with the spoils of *Antiochus*. He was an hereditary Enemy to the Kingdom of *Macedon*, which he laboured with the *Romans* to destroy, as in fine they did; and thereby finding no more use of these *Pergamon* Kings, began to grow to less liking with them.
3782 5 *Attalus* II. Brother of *Eumenes*, to whom the Kingdom was offered by the *Romans*, in the life of his Brother, then less gracious with them; but he most gallantly refused it to the great indignation of the *Roman* Senate.
3792 6 *Eumenes* III. Brother of *Attalus* the second, and Tutor or Protector to his Nephew *Attalus*, in whose minority he governed the Estate, as King.
3813 7 *Attalus* III. son of *Attalus* the second, succeeded on the death of his Uncle *Eumenes*, and having held the Kingdom but five years only, deceased without issue, and bequeathed it by his last Will unto the *Romans*. But before the *Romans* had possession of so great a Legacy *Aritonicus* the base son of *Eumenes*, made himself Master of *Mindus*, *Colophon*, *Samos*, and many other Towns and Estates hereof. Against whom the

Romans making war were aided by the greatest part of the *Asian* Kings; not seeing their own danger and destruction to draw near unto them, by letting such a potent neighbour come amongst them, to undo them all. But the *Romans* got little by this war, though they had the better of it. For being now made Masters of the Riches and Sweets of *Asia*, they took with them their Vices also: growing thereby to great riot, and unparalleled luxury; which overcame the rigour and severity of their former discipline, and made them apt for Faction, and those bloody quarrels, which proved the ruin of their State. So truly was it laid by *Jyslin*, Sic *Asia facit Romanorum cum quibus suis vicia quoque sua Romanorum transmissit*. This Kingdom, taking it in the largest extent thereof, being thus subdued and settled as a *Roman* Province, had the name of *Asia*, according to the name of the Greater *Cominens*; by *Protony*, and others, called *Asia Propria*: continuing under the subjection of the *Roman* Emperors, till the translating of the Imperial seat unto *Constantinople*; as after that unto the Emperours of the East, till conquered piece-meal by the *Turks* of the *Seluzian* family. Which being ended in the person of *Mulidne* the second, those parts hereof which lay next *Troas*, made up the Kingdom of *Carasus*, or *Carasus* III; as those which had been laid to the Greater *Phrygia*, made up the *Adianian*: both of them swallowed up long since by the *Ottoman* Kings, the *Accessories* running the same fortune as the *Principals* did.

IO. ASIA SPECIALIUS DICTA.

BESIDES the *Propria Asia* spoken of before, containing all the Provinces of the *Pergamon* Kingdom, there was one part hereof which anciently had the name of *Asia*, before it was communicated to the greater *Cominens*, or this whole *Peninsula*. This for distinctions sake the *Romans* called the PROCONSULAR ASIA; because committed to the government of one of their *Pro-consuls* (who had his residence in *Ephesus*, the principal City of this Province) together with the *Consular* *Hellespont*, and the Province of the *Isles of Asia*. This we have spoken of before, as also how the Country lying about *Ephesus*, had more specially the name of *Asia*, than any other: so specially, that *Erasmus* thereupon interteth, that by *Asia* in the *New Testament*, (but more particularly in the *Acts*) is meant that part of *Asia* only in which *Ephesus* standeth.

This being agreed on for the name, we shall bound it on the East with *Lydia*, whereof it was anciently a part; on the West, with the *Ægean* Sea; on the North, with *Myfia*; and on the South, with *Caria*. And having so bounded it, we shall divide it into the two Regions of *ÆOLIS*, and *IONIA*: that of *Æolia* lying on the North, towards *Myfia*; as *Ionis* doth upon the South, towards *Caria*: policed both of them by *Greek* Nations, and of whom so named.

Principal Towns in *ÆOLIS*, are 1 *Acarne*, over against the *Ile of Lesbos*, the Royal Seat sometimes of the Tyrant *Hermias*, who being once a Scholar of *Aristotle*, but unworthy of so good a Master, seized on this City, and here committed to great cruelties; that: last he was taken by the People, sewed in an Oxes hide; 2: baited to death. 3 *Pirane*, on a little River so named, falling into *Caicus*, not far from the influx or fall thereof into the *Ægean*; in which Town they had an Art of making *Brieks* which would swim on the water. 4 *Elea*, on the mouth of *Caicus*, the Port-Town to *Pergamus*. 5 *Myrina*, afterwards in honour of *Argus*, called *Sesepodium*. 6 *Cene*, by *Strabo* called *Cane*, by *Mela*, *Canna*, not far from a Promontory of the same name. 7 *Cuma*, the principal

and greatest of all *Æolis*, the Birth-place of *Ephorus* a Learned man of Elder times; and the habitation of *Sibylla*, surnamed *Cumaica*, to difference her from *Sibylla Cumaica*, so named from *Cuma*, a City of the Realm of *Naples*. 7 *Phocæa*, a Colony of the *Athenians*, so named from the multitudes of Sea-Calves (the *Greeks* call them *Phoca*) which thrust themselves ashore at the building and impatience of so great servitude as was laid upon them, forsook their Country, binding themselves by a fearful Oath, never more to return unto it: and after many and long wanderings came at last into *Gaul*, where they founded the famous City of *Marseilles*.

The Inhabitants of this little Region are by *Josephus* said to be descended of *Elisba* the son of *Javan*, who therefore called them by the name of *Elisai*. And it is possible enough that so it was, *Elisba* being planted in *Greece*, where he gave name to *Elis*, one of the Provinces of *Peloponnese*; from whence some of his Race in succeeding times might pass over into *Asia*, and possess those Coasts. For that they were a *Greek* people, is confessed by all; the *Æolic* Dialect or phrase of speech, taking name from hence. Not otherwise much mentioned in the course of story, than as partakers of the same fortunes with the rest of their *Asian* Neighbours before related, and so not necessary to be now repeated.

IONIA, as a larger tract, requires a more particular and punctual description. For here the River *Lycus* falleth into the *Meander*, and here *Meander* and *Cassius*, two of the most famous Rivers of *Asia Minor* (of which more hereafter) fall into the *Ægean*. Here is the renowned City of *Ephesus*, honoured with one of the worlds seven wonders, the long abode of St. Paul, and the death and sepulture of St. John; the Promontory *Trogyllum*, with a little Isle adjoining of the same name, mentioned *Acts* 20. 15.

Principal Cities of this tract, are 1 *Myas*, on an arm of the Sea, allyed by *Ariarxes*, together with *Lampsaena*, and *Mænesia*, to *Themiocles*; when being banished his own Country, he fled to his greatest Enemy for entertainment; and there met with more safety than *Athenis* would, and more honour than it could afford him; So that he might well say (as he often did) *Periiston nisi perissem*. And on the other side, the King was so overjoyed at his coming to him, (as having now on his side the man who had moit hindered him in the Conquest of *Greece*) that many times in his sleep he was heard to clap his hands, and say, *Habes Themioclem Atheniensem*. In brought forth such an innumerable number of Fleas, that the Inhabitants were fain to forsake the City, and with their Bag and Baggage to retire to *Miletus*; nothing of *Panjanis*. 2 *Erythra*, memorable for the habitation of one of the *Sibylls*, from hence called *Sibylla Erythraea*; of which Prophetesses we shall speak more when we come to *Africa*. 3 *Lebedus*, of most note in the elder times, for those publick Plays which were here annually held in the honour of *Bacchus*. 4 *Clazomenæ*, situate on a small Islet, near unto the shore, of much esteem amongst the *Romans* for the wines there growing; and no less honoured by the *Asians* for a beautiful Temple of *Apollo* seated seven *Wissens* of *Greece*. 6 *Ipsus*, renowned for the great Battle betwixt *Antigonos* and *Selucus*, two of *Alexander's* chief Commanders; the Victory whereof falling to *Selucus*, with the death of his Adversary, obtained him in all the Conquests of his Master, except *Agypt* only. 7 *Tous*, the birth-place of his Master, except *Agypt* only. 7 *Tous*, the birth-place of *Anacreon*, that lascivious and drunken Poet, hence surnamed *Teius*; the *Ovid* of

the *Grecians* both for wit and wantonness; of both which it may well be doubted, whether the smoothness be the more predominant. 8 *Smyrna*, a fair and ancient City, on a Bay, thence named the Bay of *Smyrna*: the greatest part whereof lay towards the Sea, but the fairest on the side of an hill overlooking the waters. Destroyed by the *Lydians*, it was re-edified by *Antiochus* and *Lysimachus*, two of *Alexander's* great Commanders; of good account in the time of the *Romans*, and one of the seven *Asian Churches*, to which St. John inscribed his *Revelation*. Much traded and frequented to this very day, especially for *Chamlets*, *Grograins* and such stuffs, especially for the most part at *Ancyra*, the chief Town of *Galatia*, and here vend to the foreign Merchant. For government of the Trade whereof, and of other commodities of these parts, the *English* Merchants have an Officer called the *Consul* of *Smyrna*. In old time there was in it, amongst us, a goodly Temple dedicated unto *Homer*, said to be born in this City, and to have writ his Poems in a Cave hard by. 9 *Colophon*, most memorable for the Inhabitants of it, so skilled in Horse-manship, that the side on which they served in War was sure of Victory; whereupon *Colophonem* addere, to put a good end to any business, grew into a Proverb. It was also another of those Cities, which so ambitiously contended for the birth of *Homer*; of which there were seven in all, as the old Verles tell us, saying,

Septem urbes certant de stirpe insignis Homeri
Smyrna, *Rhodus*, *Colophon*, *Salamis*, *Chios*, *Argos*, *Athens*.
Whether *Homer* purposely concealed his Country, that all places might challenge him for theirs, I am not able to say; but sure I am, that *Paterculus* speaketh it in the commendation of *Ephesus* the next *Greek* Poet after him in course of time) that he had specified his birth-place: *Qui ut ait vitare in quod Homerus incidit, parvam Cyprianæ refertur esse*. 10 *Ephesus*, the *Metropolis* of the *Dioecæ*, and the seat of the Primate of the *Asian* for being the Episcopal See of *Timothy* the Evangelist, the first Bishop thereof: 2ly. In that St. Paul directed to al of St. John the Apostle, who by some learned men of the elder times, is said to have gone alive into his Grave, and that he is not dead, but sleeping; building that thought upon that saying which went abroad among the Brethren, That that disciple should not die, *Joh. 21. 23*. And no less memorable amongst the Gentiles for that sumptuous and magnificent Temple here consecrated to *Diana*, which for the largeness, furniture, and workmanship of it, was accounted one of the Wonders of the World. The length thereof said to be 425 foot, 220 foot in breadth; supported with 127 Pillars of Marble, seventy foot in height; of which twenty seven were most curiously engraven, and all the rest of Marble polished. The Model of it contrived by one *Cresiphon*, and that with so much Art and curiosity of Architecture, that it took up two hundred years before it was finished. When finished, only to get himself a name, the last time by *Erostratus*, night in which *Alexander* the Great was born, gave occasion to that weighty but witty Scoff, that *Diana* (he was attend the preservation of her Temple, being then builded at the birth of so great a Prince.

As for those *Ioni*, or *Ionians*, they were no doubt the descendants of *Javan*, the fourth son of *Japhet*, as hath been shewn before in our general Preface: but whether they came either out of *Gracia*, or passed from hence into that Country, hath been made a question. The *Athenians* boasting

3357 8 *Halyattes* II. of whom before.
3406 9 *Cresus*, the last King of *Lydia*, subdued *Doris* and *Æolis*; after which Victories, he was overcome by *Cyrus* King of *Persia*: in which Battle, a son of *Cyrus* who had been dumb from his Cradle, seeing a Soldier ready to kill his Father, suddenly broke out into these words, *Res cæci, cave ne occidas*. After his overthrow, and the Captivity of *Cresus* (one of the richest Kings that ever was of old) *Lydia* was made a *Persian* Province, *A.M.* 3420.

The *Lydians* after this rebelled, but being again subdued, *Cyrus* bereaved them of all their horses of service, dispoiled them of all their Armour, and trained them up in all manner of loose and effeminate living; weakening by this means a powerful Nation, which before that time had not only maintained its own liberty, but awed all the Provinces adjoining. After this they continued *Persian* till the Conquest of *Asia* by the *Macedonians*, in the division of whose spoils they fell to the portion of *Seleucus* and the Kings of *Syria*: following the common fortune of the rest of this *Asia*, till they came under the power of the *Romans*. Made by them one of the Provinces of their Empire, it had the *Lower Mysia*, or *Mysia Olympea* annexed unto it; by means whereof the limits of each became so confounded, that the Towns and Cities of the one, are many times ascribed to the other. In the falling of the Eastern Empire it was made (as all the rest of *Anatolia*) a prey to the *Turks*: that (as all of it which lieth next to *Æolis*, subject to the *Carpathian* Family; as the other parts towards *Phrygia Major* were to the *Aidian*.

12 C A R I A.

CARIA is bounded on the East, with *Lycia*; on the North with *Lydia* and *Jonis*; on the West, with the *Icarian* or *Bægean* Sea; and on the South, with the *Carpathian*. So called from *Cares*, the son of *Phoroneus* King of *Argos*, once the Lord hereof, who is said to have invented the Science of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, called *Augury*; though others ascribe it to the *Phrygians*, and others unto other Nations, all alike uncertain.

In this Country is the Hill called *Lamus*, the dwelling, or rather retiring place of *Endymion*, who being much addicted to the study of *Astronomy*, found out the changes and courses of the Moon, and is therefore by the Poets supposed to have been her Paramour. Others add, that *Jupiter* hid him in a Cave under this Hill, and cast him into a deep sleep; (which notwithstanding, the defended sometimes to kiss him) whence came the old By-word, of *Endymionis somnum dormit*. Here is also in this Country the River *Salmacis*, said to infect all fish as either drink of it, or bathe in it: from whence the Poets raise the fiction of *Salmacis* and *Hermaphroditus*, described by *Ovid*; and the Proverb of *Salmacida spolia sine sanguine & sudore*, mentioned by *Tully* in his Book of *Offices*, and there used for effeminate and wanton exercises.

Places of most note in it, 1. *Miletus*, not far from the hill *Lamus*, the birth-place of *Thales*, one of the seven Wise-men of *Greece*, from hence called *Milesius*; and the Mother of no fewer than 75 (or as *Pliny* saith of 80 Colonies, dispersed in several places of *Greece* and *Asia*: described by the Oracle of *Apollo*, sirnamed *Didymus*, whose Temple being burnt by *Xerxes*, was again rebuilt by the *Asyians*, to be to wait a greatness, that I remained without roof, compassed about with a Grove, and dwelling houses, and sumptuously set out with costly

workmanship. This is that *Miletus* mentioned *Act.* 20. to which *St. Paul* called together the Bishops of *Ephesus*, and of other the adjoining Cities, *Ad Epheso & reliquis proximis Civitatibus*, saith *St. Irenæus*, the renowned Bishop of *Lions*, lib. 3. cap. 14. Anciently it was called *Legia* and *Anatolioria*. 2. *Mindus*, which being but a small Town, had so great Gates, that *Diogenes* the *Cynick* cried out, and said, *Te men of Mindus, take heed that your City run not out at your Gates*. 3. *Halicarnassus*, so called because situate at the foot of that Mountain, to difference it from many others of that name. 4. *Borgylus*, or *Borgylus*, as *Pliny* calleth it, where anciently *Diana* had another Temple, though not to be compared with that of *Ephesus*. 5. *Milasa*, in old times famous for two Temples sacred unto *Jupiter*; the way to which for 60 furlongs was paved with stone for the easier travelling of *Pilgrims*, and the better ordering of Processions; the principal of the Citizens serving there as *Priests*, which office they held unto their death. 7. *Primasus*, memorable for the Stratagem by which it was taken by *Philip of Macedon*, the Father of *Persius*. Who meaning to force it by Mines, and finding the earth so stony that it would not work, commanded the *Pioneers* notwithstanding to make a noise under the ground, and caused great Mounts of *Rubbish* to be raised secretly in the night, at the mouth of the Mine, as if the work went very well forwards; At last he sent word unto the Townsmen, that two parts of their wall stood only upon wooden props, to which if he gave fire, they should find no mercy; which heard, the Citizens yielded up the Town unto him. So useful in the Art of War is a piece of Wit, that it prevails sometimes more than Mines or Batteries.

In the South-West of the Province, thrusting it self into the Sea like a spacious Promontory, stands the Country of *DORIS*, so called of the *Dores*, a *Greek* people, who there inhabited. The principal Cities whereof were 1. *Cnidus*, not far from a Foreland or Promontory of the same name, famous of old times for the Marble Image of *Venus*, called hence *Dea Cnidia*. 2. *Cressa*, a noted Haven-Town in the time of *Ptolemy*. 3. *Halicarnassus* (now called *Ness*) the birth-place of *Herodotus* and *Dionysius*, named hence *Halicarnassus*, two famous Historians, and the seat-Royal of *Artemisia* Queen of the *Carians* (called from hence sometimes the Queen of *Halicarnassus*) who in the honour of her husband *Mausolus*, built a stately Monument, accounted one of the Worlds seven Wonders, of which thus *Martial*, speaking of the *Roman Amphitheatre* erected by *Domitian*,

*Aere non vacuo pendens Mausolea
Laudibus immo dicis Cares ad aspera ferant.*

That is to say,

Mausolus Tomb filling the empty Air,
Let not the *Carians* praise beyond compare.

That the *Carians* were so called from *Cares*, the son of *Phoroneus*, King of *Argos*, hath been said before. But *Bochartus* will rather have them so called from *Cer*, which in the *Phœnician* Language signifieth a Sheeps Ram; with numerous flocks whereof he did once abound. And this may seem more probable, in regard that the *Ionians* next neighbours to *Caria*, borrowing this word from the *Phœnicians*, called sheep by the name of *Cares*, *Καρες τας αρεις*, saith *Hesychius*, the old *Grammatician*. From whomsoever they had their name, certain it is, they were a very warlike people. *Es amicum pugnaculo amantes*, (saith *Pomponius Mela*) *in aliena arma bella appetere*, who when they had no wars at home, would seek out for action. A little before the time of *Xerxes*, *Mausolus* reigned here, whose wife *Artemisia* (late mentioned) aided that King in his undertakings against *Greece*. Afterwards, in the time of *Alexander* the

the *Great*, we met with *Ada* Queen hereof, who aided him against the *Persians*; adopting him for her son and it followed the same fortune with the rest of these Provinces, till the defeat of *Antiochus* near *Magnesia*: in incorporated of whose spoils it was given to the *Rhodiens*, made a Province of the Empire. Wreathed from the miltythe greatest part hereof, on the death of *Aladine* II. *reft*, so called from *Mendos* (or *Mindus*) by the name of *Mendia*; the residue being laid to the *Carmanian* Kingdom, both long ago subdued by the *Ottoman* Family: that of *Menesia* by *Alabomer* sirnamed the *Great*, who dispoiled *Elias* the last Prince thereof, Anno, 1451.

13. LYCIA.

LYCIA is bounded on the East, with *Pamphylia*, on the West, with *Caria*; on the North, with parts of *Lydia*, and *Phrygia Major*; on the South, with the *Meander* Sea. Environed on three sides with the above mentioned, by consequence naturally strong, and not very accessible: the Sea for the space of 20 miles shuttles this, there was a little Region of the same name, not either old or new, but mentioned sometimes by the *Poëts*, *Xanthique fluenta Descrii*, &c. *Qualis ubi bybernæ Lyciam* of the *Phrygian*, or *Trogan Lycia*, the word *lyberna* being this. Of this somewhat hath been said before in *Phrygia Minor*. In which also that there was a River called *Xanthus*, appears not only from these words of *Virgil* which unto *Paris* no less and evident.

The people hereof were sometimes called *Xanthi* from *Xanthus* the chief River hereof, which rising in two Springs from the foot of Mount *Cadmus*, passeth by a Town called *Xanthus* also, and falleth into the Sea. But from *Lycus* the son of *Pandion* King of *Athens*; who amongst them, or did some memorable act, which deserved that honour.

The principal Mountain of this Country, and indeed in this Province, extending Eastward to the great already, and more is to be said hereafter, when these hills are grown unto the great.

One of the branches of it, and the most notable in this like *Sicilian Ætna*: the bottom whereof was fire with *Serpents*, the middle parts grazed upon by *Goats*, and the higher parts made dangerous by the dens of *Lions*. Hence by the Poets made a Monster, having the head of a Lion, the body of a Goat and the tail of a Serpent; according unto that of *Ovid* in his *Metamorphosis*: *Pellus & ora Leo, caudam Serpentis habebat*. In English thus,

Chimera from a Goat her mid-part takes,
From *Lions* head and breast, her tail from *Snakes*.
This dangerous Mountain was first planted and made habitable by the care of *Bellerophon*, a noble *Grecian*, who is therefore fabled by the Poets to have killed this Monster; employed upon this business by *Jobares* the King of

Lycia, to whom he had been sent by *Praxus* King of *Argos*, who was jealous of him, and sent his Letters to rebuke that King to kill him. Whence came the saying, *Bellerophonis literas portare*, applied to those, who were employed to carry Letters tending to their own destruction: such as those carried by *Urial* to *Joad* the General, by command of *David*.

This Country was so populous, that anciently there thirty remained in the time of *St. Paul*, now nothing left were 1 *Myra*, the *Metropolis* of *Lycia*, when a *Roman* Province; by consequence an Archbishop See, when *Chri*stive times is said to have been a great Patron of *Scho*lars; his Festival annually holden on the sixth of *Decem*ber; and still in some Schools here in *England* (as in breeding and my birth) for a feast and a play-day. Of this City there is mention *Act.* 27. 5. 2. *Telme*si, the Inhabitants whereof are famous for *South saying*, and accounting the first Interpreters of dreams, 3. *Patara*, or *Haven*, and many Temples (one of them dedicated to *Apollo*, with an Oracle in it, for wealth and credit equal unto that of *Delphos*. 4. *Phaselis*, on the Sea-side also, a whom then haunted and enriched, as *Alger* is now: but *Pompey* scoured the Seas. And unto the *Pirates* of this town the former ages were indebted for the first invention of those swift Vessels, which the *Romans* called *Pha*bricantines. 5. *Cragus*, with the Mountain of the same name, thrusting out eight points or Promontories near to the *Chimæra*. 6. *Rhodis*, or *Rhodopolis*, as *Pliny* calleth *Rhodians*. 7. *Solyra*, on the borders of the neighbouring *Lycia*, the people of which were hereof towards *Pis*ta *Lycia* by the sword of *Bellerophon*, whom *Jobares* with employed in that service. 8. *Corydalla*, near the Mountain called *Mausolus*, the *Majestic* of *Phrygia*. 9. *Podalis*, two little Regions in this Country.

The *Lydians* were in former times a puissant people, extending their power upon the Seas, as far as *Italy*. Subjected to the *Persian* not without great difficulty; the some of them being belleged by *Harpagus*, Lieutenant their wives, children, servants, and richer, in a common whom put all into the sword. To *Alexander* in his our any resistance. After whose death they fell with the rest of these parts into the hand of *Seleucus*. On the de to the *Rhodiens* at the battle of *Myndus*, it was given verved as a free Estate by a Common Council of 14 Sena tors, elected out in their principal Cities: over whom they called one chief President, or Prince of the Senate, whom the sole power of imposing taxes, making War and all things appertaining to the publick Government, under the *Romans*, and a shadow only: the Supreme power being no longer in the Senate of *Lycia*, but in that

of Rome. Nor had their *Lyciarchus* any thing but an empty name, and the vain privilege of ordering and disposing the publick Games, wherein by his Office he presided. When made a Province of the Empire, it had the same fortune as the others had, till it fell into the power of the *Turks*; after the death of the second *Aladine* made a part of the Kingdom of *Carannania*; of which more anon.

14 LYCAONIA.

LYCAONIA is bounded on the East with *Armenia minor*, from which parted by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*; on the West, with the *Greater Phrygia*; on the North, with *Cappadocia*; and on the South, with *Pisidia*. So called from the *Lycæones* a People of *Lycia*, or from the *Lycæonians*, Inhabitants of *Lycæonia*, a Town of *Phrygia Major*; who enlarging themselves into these parts, gave this name unto it. Either of which I should prefer before their conceit, who derive it from *Lycæon* King of *Arcadia*, dispossessed by *Jupiter* of that Kingdom; or think that *Lycæon* was a King of this Country, and not of that.

Places of note herein, 1 *Iconium* (now *Cogni*) the *Metropolis* hereof when a *Roman* Province: A place of great strength and consequence, situated advantageously in the Mountains for defence and safety, and therefore chosen for the Seat of the *Turkish* Kings in *Lesser Asia*, at such time as they were most distressed by the *Western Christians*, who under the command and presence of the Emperor *Conrade* did in vain besiege it, forced to depart thence with great loss both of men and honour. Afterwards made the Seat-Royal of the *Aladine* Kings, the former Race being extinguished by the *Tartars*; and finally of the Kings of the house of *Carannan*, whose Kingdom called the Kingdom of *Carannania* contained all the South part of the *Lesser Asia*, that is to say, part of the Province of *Caria*, all *Lycia*, *Pamphylia*, *Isauria*, *Cilicia*, *Pisidia*, and this *Lycæonia*. 2 *Lycra*, the birth-place of *Timothy* the Evangelist; where *Paul* and *Barnabas*, having miraculously healed a Cripple, were adored as Gods; and not long after, on the infligation of some *Jews* which came down from *Antioch* and *Iconium*, most despitefully treated: *Paul* being stoned into the bargain, though it pleased God to raise him to life again, *Acts* 14. v. 19, 20. Such was the divine pleasure of Almighty God, that he that did consent to the stoning of *St. Stephen* the *Protomartyr*, and took charge of the cloaths of his Executioners, should suffer in the same kind wherein he had trespassed, and feel some smart remembrance of his former Actions. 3 *Derbe*, honoured by the preaching of the said Apostle. 4 *Laranda*, so called by *Protonius*, and still preserving its old name, the second place for reputation next unto *Iconium*. 5 *Adopissia*. 6 *Paraliss*. 7 *Camia*. 8 *Caratha*, with others named by *Protonius*, but not else observable.

Nor indeed were the *Lycæonians* themselves, from whomsoever they descended, of any great note or observation in the former times: Subject to *Cappadocia* when it was a Kingdom, and reckoned as part of it in the time of *Protonius*, when made a Province of the Empire. Disembred from it by some of the following Emperours, either to create new Offices and Perquisites for some Court-Favourites, or to satiate the ambition of some pretence, aspiring to the dignity of a *Metropolitan*, it was made a Province of it self. Torn from the Empire by the *Turks*, it was at first a member of the *Saluzzian* Kingdom, as afterwards of the *Carannanian*. Which last founded by *Carannan* a great Prince of the *Turks*, on the death of *Aladine* the second, the last King of the

Saluzzian Family, was a great eye-force unto those of the House of *Ottoman* from the time of *Anwarat* the first, who first warred upon it, to the Reign of *Bajazet* the second, who in fine subverted it, Anno 1486, as shall be shewn hereafter, when we come to *Cilicia*, the last of the Provinces of that Kingdom, in the course of this Work.

15 PISIDIA.

PISIDIA hath on the East, *Armenia Minor*; on the West, some parts of *Lycia* and *Phrygia Major*; on the North, *Lycæonia*; on the South, *Pamphylia*, and some part of *Cilicia*; and from which parted by the main body of Mount *Taurus*. So called from the *Pisides*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reason of their name I find not amongst my Authors.

The Country small, but furnished with great plenty of all provisions, as appeareth by that passage of *Livius*, where speaking of the Expedition of *Manlius* into these parts, he telleth us that he came into the Fields of *Sagalassa* (one of the Cities hereof) being of a rich soil, and plentiful of all manner of Fruit, *Idem* *ventum est* (saith he) *in agrum Sagalassarum, ubi ubi fertilemque omni genere frugum*: But this is to be understood only of the Plains and Champaign, the Mountainous parts hereof being (like others of that nature) poor and barren.

Towns of most observation in it. 1 *Antioch*, the *Metropolis* hereof, when a Province of the *Roman* Empire, called for distinction sake *Antiochia Pisidia*; mention of which is made *Acts* 4. and of the *Jems* Synagogue therein, honoured by *St. Paul's* preaching, the sum of whose divine Sermon is there repeated. Built by *Seleucus*, the first King of *Syria* of the *Macedon* Race, and by him so called in honour of his Father *Antiochus*. 2 *Seleucia*, the foundation of the same *Seleucus*, called also, to distinguish it from others of that name, *Seleucia Pisidia*. 3 *Lysimnia*, on the borders hereof towards *Phrygia*. 4 *Selge*, a Colony of the *Lacedæmonians*. 5 *Sagalassa*, situate in the most fruitful part of all this Country, as appears by that of *Livius* before mentioned. 6 *Crenæa*, which only had the honour of a *Roman* Colony. 7 *Ternessus*, strongly situate in the *Streights* of the Mounts, the hilly Country about which hath the name of *Milyer*. 8 *Olbanissa*. 9 *Platanessus*, of which little memorable.

As for these *Pisides*, they were originally defended of the *Solyms*, Inhabitants of the Borders of *Lycia*. A valiant people, and so affirmed to be by *Livius*, who calleth them *longè optimos bellos*. Nor did he speak it without cause, this small *Nation* holding out against the *Persians*, and not conquered by them, when their great neighbours were subdued. Against these, *Cyrus* the brother of *Ariarxes* *Mithran* King of *Persia* did pretend a Quarrel, as if they had trespassed on the borders of his Province. Which though perhaps they had not done, yet this gave him good occasion to levy an Army, proceeding revenge on them; but intending to dispossess his Brother of the *Persian* Monarchy: But *Tijepheres* Lieutenant to the King in *Asia*, seeing greater Preparations than were sufficient to oppose the weak *Pisidians*, made the King acquainted with his suspicions, who accordingly provided for resistance. The Army of *Cyrus* consisting of 12000 *Grecians*, and 10000 *Persians*; the Kings Forces were no fewer than 90000 fighting men. They met at *Cumæa*, not far from *Babylon*, where *Cyrus* lost both the Victory and his Life. The *Grecians* who had made their side good, and stood in honourable terms of Composition, being by *Tijepheres* betrayed, lost the best of their Country. The rest under the

the conduct of *Xenophon*, made safe retreat home in despite of 200000 men which followed at their heels. This *Xenophon* was an Agent in, and the Historian of this war them the *Macedonians* first, and after the Conquest of *Persia*. But to return to these *Pisidians*, they fell, with others of their neighbours, under the Dominion of *Seleucus*, and were made part of the will of the *Romans*, and settled in obedience by the Military progress of *Manlius*, spoken of before; they were of. Afterwards made a distinct Province of it self, and continued till those parts of the *Eastern* Empire were subdued by the *Turks*: first part of the *Saluzzian* and *Aladine* Kingdoms, after of the Kingdom of *Carannania*; whereof more anon.

16 PAMPHYLIA.

PAMPHYLIA is bounded on the East, with *Isauria* and *Cilicia*, on the West, with *Lycia*, from which parted by a branch of the *Taurus*; on the North, with *Pisidia*, separated from it by the main body of that Mountain; and on the South, with the *Mediterranean* Sea, which in those parts which lie next to it, is called *Mare Pamphylia*. The reason of the name I find not, unless we think with *Metaphrastes*, that it was so named, *quod ex omnibus gentibus conflata* est, that it was inhabited by a mixture of many Nations; for so *Pamphylia* in the *Greek* Tongue doth expressly signify. And probable enough it is, that lying near unto the Sea, and with an open Shore, opposite to *Greece*, near *Syria*, and not far from *Greece*, several Nations from those Parts might repair unto it; and from thence the Name.

The Country for the most part is very Mountainous, over-run with the branches of Mount *Taurus*; but these branches feed great store of Goats, of whose hair they made abundance of *Charlets* and *Grainins*, not inferior unto Silks for fineness. Towards the Sea, which for the space of an hundred and fifty miles coasts along this shore, more pleasant, populous, and fruitful; well watered, and as well planted. The principal Rivers hereof, being 1 *Cataractus*. 2 *Cefrus*, and 3 *Euric*. Captain General of the *Albanian* Army, overthrowing one day both the Sea and Land Forces of the *Persians*. In the manner thus: Having by plain force broken their Navies, and three thousand Gallies, he fowed the *Persians* wearing the colours of the *Persians* in the tops of their prepared to entertain their victorious Countrymen, and all the *Greeks* once in, suddenly put them to the Sword, and took twenty thousand of them Prisoners.

Principal Cities of it, 1 *Atalia*, founded by *Protonius* *Philadelphus* King of *Egypt*, and for long time the well fenced, and most flourishing City of all this Province; on a very fair Bay, now called *Golfo di Satalia*, by the *Romans* did confer the honour of the *Metropolitan* point of Riches, and is to this day a wealthy and well-known here made. Of this Town there is mention in *Acts* 14. v. 25. 2 *Pegea*, famous in old times for a Temple of *Diana*, and the yearly Festivals there held in honour of her, from hence called *Diana's Pegea*; and

more famous in the fulness of time, for *St. Paul's* Preaching in it, mentioned *Acts* 14. v. 25. 3 *Syde*, renowned in times of *Gentilism*, for a Temple of *Pallus*. 4 *Mas*, an in-land Town, but strongly situate, made the *Metropolis* of the Province in the time of the *Romans*: re- one hand both held their Harps and plaid upon them, the Proverb of the other free for more gainful uses; whence by which they signified a Thief. The Town first founded by the *Argives*, the Colony sent thither being led by *Mopsus*, from whom the Country hereabouts had the name of *Mopsia*. 6 *Olbia*, not far from *Atalia*. 7 *Caraceni*, and 8 *Colobrasia*, two of the Towns of that part hereof which had the name of *Cilicia aspera*; as 9 *Cretopolis*, and 10 *Macedonius*, of that part which was called *Carabalia*.

Of these *Pamphylia*ns there is little to be said in point of story, but that they were for the most part on the suffering hand, subject from time to time to those mighty Princes, who would not let their neighbours rest in quiet by them. Being on the same side of *Taurus*, and of easy access, they became first Vassals to the *Syrian*, and after to the *Persian* Kings. When *Alexander* passed Sea-Towns of it: The whole brought under with the *Seleucus* the great King of *Syria*. In the expiration of whole Line, this people and their neighbours of *Cilicia*, his faction, began to be troublesome on the Seas, and proved notable *Pirates*, and were the first Authors or an hundred and sixty Oars apiece; which the *Italians* call from hence by the name of *Pamphylis*. But forced *Romans* with great Forces both by Sea and Land (a full conclusion of that War, they lost that liberty which they unto *Rome*. Afterwards made a Province of the *Asian* due by the *Turks*: and at the death of *Aladine*, were done; of which we shall hear more when we come to *Cilicia*. And so much for the Provinces of the *Asian* more anon) converted to the *Christian* Faith by three great Apostles; but most especially by *St. Paul*, of whose Travels through most Cities and Regions of it, And that Saint *Peter* and Saint *John* had also their parts Epistle of the other: *Paul* planting, *John* and *Peter* watered; but God himself giving the increase. Pass we on next Provinces of the *Dioecesis* of the *Orients*, were parts of the *Carannanian* Kingdom: of which having taken a Survey; and to cleared our selves of this *Pamphylia*, we will then fall about such Islands as make up the remainder of the *Asian* *Dioecesis*.

17 ISAURIA. IS CILICIA.

These two, though distinct Provinces, I have joyned together, because the first was only a part of the last; *Cilicia* anciently comprehending both: The fortunes of both being the same also in point of story, which makes the conjunction the more natural.

ISAVRIA, a mountainous and hilly Province, seated on both sides of **Taurus**, hath on the East and South, the rest of **Cilicia**, whereof anciently it was a part; on the North, **Pisidia**; on the West, **Pamphylia**. So called from **Isaurus**, the chief City of it, when first made known unto the **Romans**; which being taken by **Servilius** the **Proconsul**, employed by **Pompey** in that Service, reduced the conquered Country under the command of **Rome**, and gave unto the Conquerour the name of **Isauricus**.

The quality of the Soil, and whole Estate of this small Province, take thus from **Ammianus Marcellinus**, who had seen these Countries. *Cilicia lateri dextro annexa Isauria, ubi palmitis ciret, & frugibus multis; quam mediam, flumen navigabile Calicadnus intersemit, &c. i. e.* "On the right hand of **Cilicia** lieth **Isauria**, a Province of a wealthy Soil, plentiful of Vines, and much other Fruits, which the River **Calicadnus** parteth in the very midst. Beautified, besides many Towns, with two principal Cities. 1 **Selenia**, founded by **Selenus**; and 2 **Claudiotopia**, into which **Claudius** the Emperor brought a **Roman** Colony. For as touching 3 **Isaurus**, heretofore a walled City, and of most esteem, it hath been long ago destroyed, as yielding too secure a Refuge to the neighbouring Rebels; inso much that now there are scarce any visible Tracts of its former greatness. And not much after, *He due Provincia bello quondam Piratico ceteris mixta Predomum*, a **Servilio** **Proconsule** missis sub jugum, fissa sunt vestigalia. i. e. "These Provinces (**Cilicia** and this) heretofore in the **Piratical** War joyning with those Robbers, were brought under by **Servilius** the **Proconsul**, and made subject to the State of **Rome**. And here we have in brief the nature of the Country, the names of the chief Rivers, and the principal Cities, with so much of the story as relates to the first subjugation of it. What further doth concern it we shall hear in **Cilicia**, upon the which it did depend.

2 **CILICIA** is bounded on the East with **Syria**, or rather that part thereof which is called **Comagena**, separated from which part by a branch of the Mountain **Taurus**, called **Amnus**; on the West, with **Pamphylia**; on the North, with **Isauria**, and **Armenia Minor**; on the South, with the **Mediterranean**, and **Syria**, specially so called. It was thus named, as the old tradition was, from **Cilice** the Brother of **Cadmus** the **Phœnician**, a near neighbour to it: but as **Bochartus** (of whose humour I have told you often) from **Calkinim**, a **Phœnician** word signifying Stones, *quia lapidosa est Regio*, because in some parts, especially in that which is called **Cilicia Trachea**, or **Cilicia Aspera**, it was very stony. It is now called **Caramania**, as the last Province of the **Caramanian** Kingdom, which held out for those falling Princes, when the rest was conquered by the **Turks** of the **Ottoman** Race.

The Country said by **Marcellinus** to be *terra d'aves omnibus bonis*, wealthy and fruitful of all necessities. Which Character holdeth good, chiefly in the Eastern parts, which heretofore had the name of **Cilicia Campestris**: the Western parts lying towards **Pamphylia**, formerly called **Cilicia Aspera**, being rough and stony. But generally where the Lands lie in fœval, and are duly cultivated, it answereth to the former Character; being also very well watered, and having a fair and large Sea-coast for the space of three hundred miles and upwards. Notwithstanding it is not much traded, and but meanly inhabited; a great part of the Country lying in large and common Fields, to which none can lay any proper claim, and therefore planted only with Goats and Sheep: out of which the Commoners on all sides raise good profit by Cheese and Butter, by their

Fleeces chiefly. Here is also a good breed of Horses, of which fix hundred yearly are called out for the special Service of the **Grand Signior**. But as they have some profitable and useful Creatures, so they have others as dangerous and hurtful to them; especially those which the vulgar **Greeks** call the **Squillachi**, of a mixt making betwixt a Dog and a Wolf; which go in troops, and are so bold, and thewily wital, as they never let to fet upon a man as he is asleep, and leave him neither Hair, Cloak, nor Fardel, nor any thing they can conveniently get from him.

Chief Rivers hereof are, 1 **Pyramus**, now called **Malmsira**, which rising on the North side of the **Taurus**, and forcing his passage through that Mountain, makes such a noise in falling down the precipices and rocks thereof, as resemblanceth at a great distance a clap of Thunder. 2 **Orymagus**, 3 **Calicadnus**, spoken of before. 4 **Cidnus**, which riseth in the **Anti-Taurus**; a River of a violent course, and so cold a water, that as **Pliny** writes, it cureth the Gout: the waters of which proved very dangerous to **Alexander** the Great, the coldness of them striking violently into his stomach; and deadly to **Frederick** the first Emperor of the **Germans**, as he here bathed himself, the violence of the stream tripping up his heels, and he not able to recover, was presently drowned.

Of their chief hills I need add nothing, having already said that the Country is parted by **Amnus** from **Syria**, and by **Taurus** it self from **Pisidia** and **Armenia Minor**; not ease of entrance by the first, but very difficult by the last: the **Streights** thereof called **Pila Cilicia**, or the Ports of **Cilicia**, being indeed so freight, and almost impassable, that had they been guarded or regarded by the **Persians**, as they should have been, the Progress of **Alexander's** Victories might have ended there. But **Asiaticus**, who had the charge of them, durst not stand his ground, and so left them open to the Enemy, whom by those Ports he put into the possession of the Kingdom of **Perfia**. With better faith, though no better fortune, did the Souldiers of **Persennius niger** make good their **Streights** against the Emperor **Severus**; the Monarchy of the World lying the second time at the stake, and to be tried for in this Cock-pit. For the **Perrians** possessed of these **Streights** and Entrances courageously withstood the **Severian** party; till at last a sudden Tempest of Rain and Thunder continually darting in their faces (as if the very Heavens had been armed against them) they were fain to leave the passage, and therewith the Victory to the adverse Faction: having lost that at the loss of 20000 of their own lives, which **Alexander** had the happiness or the hap to buy for nothing.

In the borders of this Country towards **Pamphylia**, lived a Tribe or Nation called the **Soli**, originally of **Attica**: but in long tract of time diffused from converse and communication with their Countrymen, they spoke that Language so corruptly, that from their barbarous manner of pronunciation, and as rude expression, came the word **Solacianus**. Yet amongst these were born three men of eminence; note, that is to say, **Chrysippus** the Philosopher, **Philemon** and **Aratus** the Poets; out of the Writings of which last **St. Paul** vouchsafed so use this passage. *7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100* *offspring, Act. 17. v. 28.* That blessed Apostle thought himself never the worse **Preacher**, for being brought up in humane Learning at the feet of **Camallid**, nor held it any disparagement to the influences of the Holy Ghost, to make use of it in his **Sermons** and divine Discourses: and therefore to prevent those **Excell**, which ignorance or misprision might chance to make in times succeeding, he hath

hath thrice vouchsafed the words and testimony of the **Heathen Writers**; viz. of **Epenides**, **Tit. 1. v. 12.** of **Alexander**, **1 Cor. 15. v. 33.** and that of **Aratus** before mentioned. So lawful is it in this kind, for those of the **spirited** Isaid to rob the **Egyptians**; and to make this **Isaur** serviceable to her **Mistress Sarah**.

Principal Cities of this Province, 1 **Sole**, the habitation of the **Soli**, before remembered; by some said to be built by **Solos** the **Athenian**; but generally affirmed to have been planted by those of **Rhodes** and **Attica**: mistakenly called **Etiopolis**; by **Qu. Curtius**, which is as much in **Sole** as **Solis Civitas**, or the City of the Sun. On the site heretofore then decayed and ruinous (the Town having been destroyed by **Tigranes** the **Armenian** King in his late Wars against the **Romans**) did **Pompey** build his City of **Pompeopolis** after his victory over the **Pirates**; who not only Lorded it over the Seas, and consequently obstructed Trade and Merchandize, but wasted and spoiled the Villages of **Italy** it self. **Pompey** being Victor, and having inflicted exemplary punishment on the King-leaders, with the rest, peopled this new Town, and the Country adjoining, allowing them competent possessions, lest want and necessity should again enforce them to the like courses. An action truly commendable, and worthy to great a Captain, rather to take an occasion of offending from the people, than after offence done, to punish them. **Hythlodius** in the **Utopia**, somewhat bitterly though perhaps not unjustly, inveigheth against the Laws of **England**, for ordaining death to be the punishment of theft. *Chm multo potius providendum fuerit, ut aliquis esset proventus vitæ; ne cuiuspiam sit tam dira furandi primum, deinde perendi necessitas.* Whereas (saith he) the Laws ought to make provision for putting men into some orderly course of life, and not let them run upon the necessity of stealing first, and then being hanged for it.

2 **Tarsus**, the birth place of **St. Paul** the Apostle; for that sufficiently famous, were there nothing else to commend it to consideration: But it was a Town wital of great note and consequence, the **Metropolis** first, of all **Cilicia**, and after the division, of **Cilicia Prima**. The Inhabitants whereof had the Privilege of **Roman** Citizens. In Situate in a goodly Plain on the banks of the **Cydanus**, and by some said to be the work of **Sardanapalus** the last King of **Assyria**; it being engraven on a Monument erected to him, that in one day he had built this **Tarsus**. And 3 **Anchiala**, another City of this Country, near the Sea-side, and not far from the Promontory **Zephyrium**. Of the same date (if the said Monument speak truth), but neither of the same fortune nor continuance, that being utterly decayed, but **Tarsus** still remaining of great wealth and strength. Much spoken of in the Wars of the Holy Land, and in the stories of the **Caramanian** and **Ottoman** Kings. And though the **Turks** to ingratiate themselves with **Julius Cesar**, would needs have their Country called **Julopolis**, yet the old name survived the new, and it is to this day called **Tarsus** or **Tarsus** by the vulgar **Greeks**: not but **Hania** by the **Turks**, as **Belonius** telleth us. 4 **Adana**, the **Adana** of **Proton**, a large Town, Castle Situate in a fruitful soil, both for Wine and Corn, wherewith the Town is always furnished for the use of take in here three days provision. 5 **Epiphania**, the birth-place of **George** the **Arian** Bishop of **Alexandria**; thrust into the world of late by some learned men (but of more tyr. 6 **Mopsuestia**, as famous, or infamous rather, for giving title to **Theodorus Mopsuestenus**, Bishop heretofore, and a great Patron of the **Nestorian** heretics, in the time of **St. Chrysostome**. The City otherwise of good note, and

of great consequence, in the course of the **Roman** Wars, described at large by **Ammianus Marcellinus**, 7 **Isfus**, upon an spacious Bay, called hence **Sinus Isficus**, near the borders of **Syria**: memorable for the great battle here fought betwixt **Alexander** and an handful (in comparison) of his **Macedonians**, and that vast Army of **Darius**, (himself there in person) consisting of 600000 untill the dead bodies seemed to have buried the ground; who chose to ill a place to fight in, that they could make minations of the **Asian** Souldiers, unable to endure the charge, there fell that day no fewer than 200000 of them the **Wives** and Daughters of **Darius**, and not above 1000 of the **Alexandrians**, if **Qu. Curtius** be not partial in his former purchases, and opened a way unto the rest: the **Persians** not being able to make head again, till he had pierced into the bowels of their Empire, and added **Syria**, and **Egypt** to his former Conquests. Offo great of a Kingdom. This Town it self now called **Ainzoo**. 8 **Alexandria**, built by command of the Conquerour near the place of battle, commodiously for Trade, upon the Sea, but otherwise in a Fenny and Boggy soil, which makes the air there to be very unwholesome to men not used to it: little now remaining, but a few houses on the Sea-shore built of straw and mud, hardly affording it the reputation of a sorry Village, and would not continue such, but that it is the nearest Haven to the Town of **Aleppo** (whereof more in **Syria**) which draweth unto it the resort of some **Christian** Factors, whose houses are of Clay and Timber; but of them not made full, diminished first to **Alexandretta**, now called **Sev**, so named in memory of his great Victory before mentioned. 10 **Anaverra**, a City of great Antiquity in the time of **Sarab**, and the **Metropolis**, of the Province of **Cilicia Secunda**. 11 **Heraclea**, mentioned by **Belonius**, Plain, at the foot of Mount **Taurus**; a fair and large Town, Northward about three days journey. But I find no such Town in **Sarab**, or **Proton**, or any other of the Ancients. 12 **Scandaro**, a City of **Cilicia Aspera**, or that Part of the adjoining Territory governed as a State distinct from all the rest of this Country was under the Kings of **Caramania**: against whom the Prince heretofore being a of the Knights of **Rhodes**, and the Kings of **Cyprus**. And when the **Caramanian** Kingdom was subdued by **Bajazet**, he made so good conditions for himself, that he had other lands and estates in the **Lesser Asia** assigned to him in exchange for this; and so surrendered this to the will of the Conquerour.

The first Inhabitants of this Country were of the Progeny of **Tarsish**, the son of **Javan**, by whom, or some of his Posterity, to preserve his memory, the City of **Tarsus** was first built. Increased in tract of time by some new Colonies out of the neighbouring parts of **Syria**, it followed for the most part the fortunes of **Syria**, it successively together subject to the **Assyrians**, **Persians**, and **Macedonians**. In the declining fortunes of the house of **Selenus** they began to stand upon their own legs; and might have continued longer in so good a posture, had they not hearkened

hearkened to ill Councils. Tempted by *Mithridates* to join with him against the *Romans*, of whose greatness all the Eastern States were grown very jealous; and being naturally good Sea-faring men, they began together with the *Pamphylia*, to infect the Seas. At first they ventured no further than the shores adjoining. But after emboldened with success, and finding that the *Romans* were sufficiently employed in domestic troubles, and a sharp war with *Mithridates*, fell upon the Coasts of *Greece*, and in fine of Italy it self; *Publius Servilius* the *Proconsul* first employed against them, gave them an overthrow at Sea; and following his good fortune, set upon them in their Harbours and retiring places, in which pursuit he not only took from them *Phaselis*, a strong Town in *Lycia*, one of their *Reveries*, and others of their best and strongest *Receptacles*; but wasting the whole Country of *Cilicia*, fell upon *Isauria*, the most defensible Town thereof, which he took and ransacked. No sooner was *Servilius* departed home, but they broke out more violently than before; filling all the Creeks and Ports of the Eastern Seas with their Frigates, *Brigantines* and other light *Piratical* Vessels, in such manner that *Pompey* himself thought it to be an action not unbecoming his greatness to undertake the War against them. And he pursued it to such purpose, that having armed 500 sail of all sorts, and stored his ships with 130000 men, he set upon them all at once; and in the space of one sole month made an end of the War. An action not sufficiently to be wondered at, if we consider either the speediness of it, done in so little time as a month; or the cheapness of the Victory, purchased without the loss of one Roman Vessel; or finally, the importance and consequence of it, the Pirates from that time not daring to infect the Seas; and all *Cilicia* subjected to the State of *Rome*. How they were afterwards disposed of hath been shewn already. After this they did very good service unto *Pompey* in his War against *Cæsar*; of whom thus *Lucan*, reckoning up his Allies and Aids.

Atque Cilix iussu, nunc non Pirata, cavinda.
And the renowned Cilician now
No Pirate, in his fleet did row.

Nor were they pliant unto him only, as unto their Conqueror; but generally to tame and tractable in the time of *Cicero*, one of the first *Proconsuls* or Lord Deputies which were sent to govern them; that he writ merrily to *Rome*, that he found all quiet in his Province: save that the *Panthers* (some of which, one of his Friends had prayed him to send to *Rome*, for the adorning of his triumph) were for fear of him fled into *Pamphylia*. At the first conquest by the *Romans*, it was divided only into *Campisphren* and *Trachean*, as was said before; of which *Campisphren* was reduced immediately to the form of a Province. *Aspera* or *Trachea* was a while continued under the Government of Kings, till the time of *Vespasian*, and then made a Province as the other. By the succeeding Emperours, on some reasons of State (if not those intimated in *Lycaonia*) the number of Provinces being increased (though the bounds of the Empire were no larger than they had been formerly) the whole was divided into three: that is to say, *Cilicia prima*, taking up all *Campisphren* wholly; *Cilicia secunda*, containing the *Maritime* parts of *Cilicia Aspera*; and *Isauria*, taking up the Mountainous part of this last division. Laid by the Emperor *Constantine* to the *Diocese of the Orient*; and consequently subject in spiritual matters to the Patriarch of *Antioch*, where the *Presbiterio Orientis* had his usual residence. In the falling of the Eastern Empire, it was conquered by the *Saracens* in the time of *Muharran* or *Muavi*, the sixth Caliph. Continuing under their command till their declination, it was recovered by the

Greek or Eastern Emperours, and from them conquered by the *Turks* in the course of their victories. But the first race of *Turkish* Kings being worn out by the *Tartars*, and the *Aladinian* Kings ending in *Aladine* the second, it was part of the new Kingdom of the *Caramanians*, continuing theirs till the destruction of that line by *Bajazet* the second, Anno 1486. by whom incorporated with the rest of the Ottoman Empire.

Thus having made out progress over all the Provinces of the Lesser Asia, and shewn how every one of them was made subject to the *Turkish* Tyranny: we must next draw down the succession of such *Turkish* Kings as have reigned herein, till it was wholly conquered by the Princes of the house of Ottoman. Concerning which we are to know in the way of Preamble, that the *Turks* having made themselves Masters of the Kingdom of *Perfia*, and following their successes into Syria also, fell to a breach amongst themselves. For making up whereof it was defended unto by *Axen*, the then *Perfian* Sultan, that *Alloch* and *Duena*, two of his discontented Kinmen, should be infeoffed in the Cities of *Alleppe* and *Damascus*, and their several Territories, with whatsoever they could conquer from the Caliph of *Egypt*, possessed at that time of most part of Syria, *Cilicia*, and some of the adjoining Provinces. It was also then agreed upon, that a third but nearer Kinman, called *Culu Moset*, another of the Leaders of the opposite faction, should have leave to conquer for himself, whatsoever he could win from the *Christian* Princes: And he being furnished with a competent Army, subdued the Provinces of *Media* and *Armenia* in the Greater Asia, with *Cappadocia*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia* in Asia Minor. Which, and the rest of their affairs, take here in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Turkish Kings in Asia Minor of the Selzucian Family.

1075. 1 *Culu Moset*, Nephew to *Tangrolipix*, the first *Perfian* Sultan of the *Turks*, won *Media*, part of *Armenia Major*, *Cappadocia*, *Pontus* and *Bithynia*.
- 2 *Solyman*, son of *Culu Moset*, for a while dispossessed of most of his estates by the *Western Christians*, in their first passage towards the Holy Land; the Northern parts of which by those Christians were restored to the *Grecian* Empire, never recovered afterwards by the Kings of this house.
- 3 *Mabomet*, the son of *Solyman*, recovered some part of his estates in the Lesser Asia; but ousted of them, and subdued by
- 4 *Musfat*, Sultan, or Lord Deputy of *Iconium* for the Kings of *Damascus*; but of the same *Selzucian* Family, who was thereby dispossessed of all the *Turkish* Provinces in the Lesser Asia.
- 5 *Calisfatlan*, the son of *Musfat* (to whom his Father left *Iconium*, with the adjacent Provinces) wrested *Amasia*, and *Ankyra*, from his brother *Jagupasan*; *Sebastia*, and *Cassius*, from his brother *Dodime*: which with their several Territories were bequeathed unto them, by the will of their Father. He overthrew the Emperor *Emanuel Comnenus*, and united *Phrygia* to his Kingdom.
- 6 *Reucratine*, the third son of *Calisfatlan*, having dispossessed his three brethren, *Musfat*, *Campisphren*, *Caicosphos*, of the estates left them by their Father, became sole Monarch of all the *Turkish* Provinces in the Lesser Asia. In the latter end of whose reign, *Oceanus* the

Tartarian Chah having driven the *Turks* out of *Perfia*, many of them under the conduct of *Aladine*, a Prince of the same *Selzucian* Family, joined themselves to their Countrymen here, with whose help they won *Cilicia* from the *Grecian* Emperours, who in the reign of *Culdo Johannes*, (the *Turks* being then employed by the *Western Christians*) had not long before regained it; and after the death of *Reucratine*, advanced him to the whole estate.

The Turkish Kings in Asia Minor, of the race of Aladine.

- 7 *Aladine*, descended in a direct line from *Cusfane*, the last *Turkish* Sultan in *Perfia*, having with many of his Nation seated himself in *Cilicia*, first made *Sebastia*, one of the Cities thereof, his chief seat or residence: which after the death of *Reucratine*, he removed to *Iconium*, as the ancient Regal City of the former Kings.
- 8 *Azalide*, by some called *Aladine*, eldest son of *Aladine*, waited the most part of his reign in wars with his brother *Jathatine*, whom at last he forced into exile.
- 9 *Jathatine*, on the death of his brother possessed the Kingdom, slain afterwards in single combat by *Theodorus Lascaris*, Emperor of the *Greeks*, at *Nice*.
- 10 *Jathatine* II. Son of the former, driven out of his Kingdom by the *Tartars*, and died in exile: the *Turks* becoming Tributaries and Vassals unto the *Tartarian*.
- 11 *Musfat*, and *Cei-cubades*, of the same *Selzucian* Family (but whether the sons of the second *Jathatine*, I am not able to say) substituted in his place; as Tributaries to the conquering *Tartars*.
- 12 *Aladine* II. son of *Cei-cubades*, succeeded his Father in the Kingdom, but as Vassal and Leigeman to the *Tartars*. After whose death, leaving no issue of his body, the great Princes of his Family, divided amongst them his Dominions. To *Sarachen* fell *Æolis*, *Ionis*, and part of *Lydia*, from him named *Sarachen*, *Sarachen*, or *Saracha-Illi*; to *Aidin* the rest of *Lydia*, *Phrygia Major*, and the greatest part of the Greater *Myssia*, from him called *Aidin*, or *Aidin-Illi*; to *Carafan*, the Lesser *Phrygia*, with the rest of *Myssia*, the *Lesser Phrygia*, or *Carafan-Illi*; to the Family of the *Isfendiar*, the Cities of *Heraclea*, *Sinope*, and that part of *Pontus* which lieth next to *Bithynia*. There were also lesser *Troarchies* or subdivisions, from whence we find a Prince of *Smyrna*, a second of *Amasia*, a third of *Amisus*, a fourth of the Estate was seized by *Caraman*, who for his share had of the whole Provinces of *Lycia*, *Lycaonia*, *Pisidia*, *Pamphylia*, *Isauria*, *Cilicia*, with the Regal City of *Iconium*, the Prince of part of *Caria*, (the rest of it appertaining to the Prince of *Ademissia*), with part of *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*, and some Towns in *Phrygia*, continuing in his Family for as many descents (as either of the former had held before) in great power and lustre, under

The Turkish Kings in Asia Minor, of the house of Caraman.

- 13 *Caraman*, the first raiser of this Family, Contemporary with Ottoman the first King of that race.
- 14 *Aladine* son of *Caraman*, and Son-in-law of *Amrath*, the first of the house of Ottoman, by whom subdued, but pardoned and resto-

red unto his Estate, on the humble entreaties of his wife.

- 15 *Aladine* II. son of the former, subdued by *Bajazet* the first, and hanged by *Tertumages*, one of *Bajazet's* great Commanders.
- 16 *Mabomet*, son of *Aladine* the second, recovered his Kingdom on the death of *Bajazet*, vanquished and led captive by the mighty *Tamerlane*. Afterwards warred upon and vanquished by *Abdomet* the son of *Bajazet*, redeemed his peace, by yielding up unto him many of his principal Towns; and was finally slain at the siege of *Atalia*.
- 17 *Ibrahim*, the son of *Mabomet*, and son-in-law of *Amrath* the second, against whom unadvisedly raising War, he was forced to submit and become his Tributary: after whose death, rebelling against *Mabomet the Great*, he was then also vanquished, and a reconciliation made betwixt them.
- 18 *Ibrahim* II. by some called *Pyramus*, the son of *Ibrahim* the first, supported *Zimus*, the brother of *Bajazet* the second in his War against him; for which *Bajazet* having settled his affairs, invaded and subdued the Kingdom of *Caramania*, killed the unfortunate King in batel, and so united that state unto the rest of the Dominions of the house of Ottoman. The strange success of which house, from the first rising of it to these present times, shall be deferred till we come unto *Turcomania*; from whence this Nation first attempted and achieved the conquest of *Perfia*, and which only of all their large possessions doth retain any thing of their name. In the mean time we will survey the Islands of this Lesser Asia, and so proceed to their possessions in the Greater, as they lie before us.

19 The Province of the ASIAN ISLES.

The Province of the *ASIAN ISLES* comprehendeth all the Islands in Asia Minor, from the mouth of the *Hellepont* to the *Rhodes*, reckoning that for one: united first into a Province by the Emperor *Vespasian*, next reckoned as a part of the *Asian Diocese*; and afterwards, together with the Province of the *Hellepont*, and that of *Asia* properly and specially so called, making up the peculiar or exempt jurisdiction of the *Proconsul of Asia*. Those of most consideration are, 1. *Tenedos*, 2. *Lesbos*, 3. *Chios*, 4. *Samos*, 5. *Cos*, 6. *Icaria*, 7. *Tanios*, 8. *Clarus*, 9. *Carpathos*, 10. *Rhodes*. Others of less note, having nothing memorable but their names, are scarce worth the naming.

1. *TENEDOS*, is situate at the mouth of the *Hellepont*, over against the noted Promontory called of old *Trom*, or now Cape *Janizarie*: a Promontory of above five miles. The Isle it self in circuit no more than ten; swelling with a round Mountain towards the North, in other parts level; in both producing as good Wines as the best of *Greece*. It took name, as the general Tradition was, from *Tene*: the son of *Cygnus*, King of a little City in the Lesser *Phrygia*, who being falsely accused by his Stepdame for soliciting her to that incestuous mixture which he had violently importuned, and he as piously refused, was by the command of his Father put into a chest, exposed to the mercy of the Sea; and here miraculously preserved. Here for a time he is said to reign, with great commendation for his justice; and afterwards going to the aid of the *Trojans*, to have been slain by the hand of *Acchilles* of whom therefore it was not lawful to

make mention in any of the Sacrifices offered in the Temples thereof. But *Bocharius* calling off all this as an old Wives Fable, will have it fo called from *Tin-edum* a Phœnician word, signifying *Red-clay*, which the Potters made use of in their Earthen Vessels. A Town it had of the same name with the Island, in which a Temple facred to *Apollo Smintheus*; and another called *Asterion* situate near a little River well stored with *Crab-Fish*, whose shells were made in the form of an Ax or Hatchet. From which Town as the Islanders have in some Authors the name of *Astieris*, fo from the other circumstance, they are said to have the stamp of an Hatchet on their Coin or Money. Memorable for an Old Custom observed amongst them which was, That at the back of the Judge there always stood a man with an Axe advanced; as well to terrifie the Witnesses from giving false Evidence to the Judge, as the Judge from pronouncing a false Sentence upon the Evidence: Whence the Proverb, *Tenedos ienris*. More memorable for the final destruction of *Troy*, which was plotted here; the *Græcians* withdrawing their Forces hither as if gone in earnest: but from thence setting fail again to surprize the Town, when they saw their plot had took effect. And fo I leave it with that Character which the Poet gives it:

*Est in conspectu Tenedos, nostrissima famâ
Insula, dives opum Priami dum Regna manebant:
Nunc tantum sumus, & statio male-fida carinis.*

In English thus;

In sight of *Troy* an Island stands, well known,
Call'd *Tenedos*: rich, and of great renown,
Whilst *Trian's* Kingdom flourish'd; now (they say)
Grown a poor Road, for Ships an unsafe Bay.

2 *LESBOS*, the largest of these *Asian* Isles, is distant from the main Land of *Troas* about seven miles, 168 in compass: reckoned the seventh in bigness of the *Mediterranean*, which *Aristotle* in his Book de *Mundo* ranketh in this order following, 1. *Ægeus*, 2. *Ægeus*, 3. *Ægeus*, 4. *Ægeus*, 5. *Ægeus*, 6. *Ægeus*, 7. *Ægeus*, 8. *Ægeus*, 9. *Ægeus*, 10. *Ægeus*. That is to say, The most considerable of these, are *Sicilie*, *Sardinia*, *Corsica*, *Crete*, *Eubœa*, *Cyprus*, and *Lesbos*. And though both *Seylex* in his *Periplus*, a nameless Poet in *Eusebius*, *Diodorus Siculus*, *Strabo*, and others of the Ancients, vary in ordering of the rest, according as their information or phancies led them; yet *Lesbos* comes in the seventh place constantly, without change at all. Upon which ground *Bocharius* will have it called *Lesbos* from *Eubœus*, a Phœnician word signifying seven: contracted first to *Eshu*, by leaving out the last syllable of it; and then by changing *hu* to *ho*, and prefixing *L* to the beginning. Far enough fetch'd; and were it but as dearly bought, would be good for Ladies: this Island being reckoned in the seventh place for no other reason, but because it lay furthest off, and most North from *Sicilie*, from whence they ordered their account, and not any mystery in the name thereof.

It had then the name from *Lesbos* the chief City of it, as that from *Leibus* the son of *Lapylus*, who married *Methymna* the daughter of *Macarinus*, Prince hereof from which *Macarins*, it had sometimes the name of *Macaria*; as that of *Mitylene*, by which it is now commonly called, from *Mitylene* another of the Daughters of the said *Macarins*. And that the memory of the whole Family might be preferred in this Island, *Methymna* also had a City called by her name, one of the principal of the Country.

The Country towards the West and South, reported to be mountainous and somewhat barren; the rest level and fruitful. Plentiful of excellent Corn, and abounding in delicious Wines, compared by *Athenens* to *Ambrasia*, the Liqueur of the Gods, as the Poets fable; affording also plenty of Sheep, and store of Horfe, these

last courageous and strong, though but low of stature. More memorable for the eminent Persons which it hath produced, as 1. *Sappho*, an Heroick Woman, whose invention was the *Sapphick Verse*; and therefore called the *10th Muse*. 2. *Pittacus*, one of the *Seven Wisemen of Greece*. 3. *Theophrastus*, that notable Physician and Philosopher. 4. *Alcaeus*, the successor of *Orpheus* in the excellency of *Lyrical Poetic*; and 5. *Arion*, the Musician, who was so perfect on his *Harp*, that being cast into the Sea playing on that Instrument, a *Dolphin* took him on his back, and wafted him safe as far as *Corinth*, where he related the whole Story unto *Periander*, attested by the Mariners who had thrown him overboard. And though this be by some rejected as a Poetical Fiction; yet past all doubt, the man was not only an excellent Musician, but an eminent Poet, the first Inventor of *Tragedies*, a chief *Lyrick*, and the Author of the Verse called *Dithyrambick*.

Principal Towns herein, 1. *Lesbos*, as the whole Island had the name of *Lesbos*. 2. *Methymna*, so named from *Methymna* one of the daughters of *Macarins*, spoken of before. 3. *Mitylene*, so named from the other daughter, and wife of *Leibus*, now the chief City of the Island; seated on a *Peninsula*, looking towards the main Land, strong by Nature, and fortified by Art: enjoying on either side a commodious Haven, that on the South most fit for Gallies, the other capable of Ships of burden. Beautified heretofore with magnificent Buildings, and sweetened with variety of delights and pleasures. Little now left of it since subdued by the *Turke*, but a strong Castle manned with an able Garrison, and a well-stored Arsenal for Gallies, kept here in readiness to preserve those seas from Pirates, with which much infested. But the two first long since decayed and grown out of knowledge, though the name next *Mitylene* are. 4. *Vassica*, 5. *Theodori*. 6. *Cassiderea* all of late days; and therefore of no observation in point of story.

The Island was first inhabited by the *Pelasgians*, conducted hither by *Zantus* the son of *Triopus*, whence named *Pelagisia*: afterwards by some *Ionians*, and people of sundry Nations, planted here by *Macarins* (the father of *Mitylene* and *Methymna*) who by his providence, and the reputation of his Justice, obtained a kind of Sovereignty over the neighbouring Islands. *Leibus* the son of *Lapylus* arriving here with his Family, married *Methymna*, and had the Island for her Dowry; though *Mitylene* had the hap to have the predominant City, and the Island consequently called by her name. Made subject to the State of *Athens*, in the time of the *Peloponnesian War* (when almost all Greece banded against that City) they revolted from it, and were so faithfully besieged by *Paches*, an *Athenian* Captain, that they submitted unto mercy. The General sends to *Athens* to know what should be done with the *Mitylenians*: Answer was sent, That he should put them to the Sword. But the Senate on the morrow after, repenting of that cruel Decree, sent a countermand. These latter Messengers made no stay, but eating with one hand, and rowing with the other, came to *Mitylene* just as *Paches* was reading the former Order, by this speed prevented. So near were these miserable people to a fatal destruction. Subdued by the *Romans* with the rest of Greece, they fell together with it to the *Constantinopolitan* Emperours: from whom taken, with *Chios*, *Samos*, *Andros*, and some other of these Isles, Anno 1124, by the State of *Venice*, upon a quarrel betwixt them and the *Greecian* Emperour. Confirmed unto that Signerity by the Emperour *Baldwin*, and all the rest of the *Ægean* added

added to their portion; those above-named were again recovered by the valour and good fortune of *John Ducas*, the *Greek* Emperour then residing at *Nice*. Afterwards in the year 1335, the Emperour *Calo Johannes* gave it to *Franciscus Cavalinus*, a Noble Gentleman of *Gema*, with one of his Sisters, for her Dowry. By whose Posterity enjoyed, till the year 1462, when *Mahomet* the Great incensed against *Dominicus Catalufus* the then fil and Tributary of his Empire: (these Princes paying for the *Turken* annual Tribute of 4000 *Ducats*) but more him in *Mitylene* his principal City, which in 27 days (for therewith all the Island also. Some of the chief Families State, the main Body of the People were permitted to remain here to till the Land, and fo continue to this day, with some few *Turks*, inconsiderable for their strength or numbers, intermixed among them.

3 *CHIOS*, the next to *Lesbos* both in site and bigness, lieth opposite to the Shore of *Ionis*, from which distant not above four Leagues, is in compass about 126 Miles. So called, as some say, from *Chione* a fair Nymph here- of, much fought after by many Suters: as others say, from a *Greck* word signifying *Snow*, wherewith the Mountains of it are sometimes covered. And some again will have it take name from *Chios* the chief City of it, which that name unto it itself, and afterwards did communicate to the whole Island. *Isidore* in his *Origines* gives another signifying *Mastick*, wherof there is plenty in this Isle. *Chios Insula* (saith he) *Syrâ lingua appellatur, eo quod ibi* there is it, that *Chios* in the *Syrick* did signifie *Mastick*, this Island being more furnished with that Commodity; than any place in the World besides. A Gum it is, growing out of the *Lemick Tree*, which in the Months of *July* and *August* the Inhabitants force out of those Trees, by making with sharp Instruments a deep incision into the Barks of them; out of which the Juice dropping, is afterwards hardened like a Gum, and in the September following gathered. A Commodity which yieldeth yearly to the Inhabitants 18000 *Sulantes*, every *Sulante* being valued at the rate of a *Zechine* of *Venice*: and therefore the felling of the *Lemick Tree*, at the time of the distilling of this precious Juice, interdicted, on the penalty of losing the right hand of him that doth it.

Other Commodities of this Island are Corn and Oyl in indifferent plenty, some *Quarries* of most excellent Marble, a certain green Earth like the rust of Brass; some Silks and Cotton-wool, but short in worth to that of *Smyrna*, and other places; Honey as good as any the World affordeth, and a vein of most delicious Vines, those specially which grow on the Mountain *Arvis*, now called *Amisus*. Of which *Pliny* gives this commendation, *In summa gloria fuerit Thaliu, Chionique, ex Chio, quod Arviliu vocant*. Of all Wines (saith he) those of *Thasus*, and *Chios*, are of best esteem; and of those of *Chios*, the *Arvillian*, *Strabo* extolleteth hereof, in the *superiorem* degree, and calleth the Wine of *Greece*. And *Plutarch*, speaking of an *Epicurean*; or voluptuous *Plutarch*, affirms, that he conceived it the Supreme felicity, *hæc de arviliæ, et autem in hæc, et in his Lais, et drink these Arvillian Wines*. Here are also infinite store of Partridges, of a red colour,

kept tame, and fed in flocks like Geese, in the Streets and *Greenyards* of their Villages; some little Boy or Girl driving them to field, and calling them home again with a *Whistle*, when the night comes on.

The Island divided commonly into two parts, the higher, called *Apanomera*, lying towards the North and West, hilly and rough, but intermixt with fruitful Vales and pleasant Rivers: the lower, opposite unto it, Hills, on which growth the *Lemick*. The whole inhabited by *Grecks* intermixt with *Genoese*, and (since their Conquest by that People) some few *Turks* amongst them. Which mixture with the *Genoese*, tempereth the levity of the *Grecks* with *Italian* gravity; the better sort of the People both in Apparel and Manners coming near the *Genoese*, once the Lords of this Island; the common sort continuing their old *Greck* humour of mirth and jollity (not sensible of the *Thurk* Thralldom under which they suffer) with as much licentiousness as ever. And though this intermixture hath so corrupted their Language, that neither the *Greck* nor the *Italian* be here rightly spoken, but a compound Tongue made up of both; as if they had never known another.

Here are reckoned in it fix and thirty Towns and Villages, the principal whereof are, 1. *S. Elier*, in the North. 2. *Pigirne*, in the midst hereof; and 3. *Chios* itself, now called *Sio* (as is all the Island) one of the Sepulchre they pretend to shew in an old Castle near the Mount and Town of *S. Elier*, (which were it his, for his Birth.) The Town situate in the most pleasant and fruitful part of the Country, to which both Industry and Art have given great Advantage; there being few Houles with Orchards of excellent Fruits, as Oranges, Lemmons, Pomegranats, Citrons, and kind of Figs, much praised for their quickness of taste by the *Romans*. It standeth on the East-side, opposite to the Shores of *Asia*, stretched along the bottom of the Haven, and on the West-side backed with a rocky Mountain, upon which it formerly did stand. The Buildings ordinary, the Streets narrow, and the Haven every day decaying; though otherwise secure, once entered: and for directing of the entrance, a Lanthorn advanced by the *Genoese* (when Lords hereof) to give Light by night, and serve for a Land-mark in the day. Fortified on the North-side by a large and strong Castle, environed with deep Ditches, well furnished with Munition, and a *Turkish* Garrison. And because the Island is on all parts accessible: not naturally fortified with Rocks and dangerous Precipices, as many others; besides this Castle, they have all along the Coast small Watch-Towers, which with smoke by day, and fire by night, give notice unto one another of such Vessels as they see approaching: the *Guards* about the Castle being so intent also about their Charge, that every minute of the night there goeth a word about the Walls, to declare their vigilancy.

The *Chians* were at first a *Free People*, governing themselves as a Common-wealth; and by reason of their many Harbours, able to furnish out a Navy of 80 Sail, by the *Rhodians*. Besieged by *Philip* the Father of *Perseus*, with his utmost Power; who when he could not get it by force, proclaimed freedom to the Slaves (of which here were many) and liberty to marry with their Masters. And when this policy would do it, the Town being held out with greater heat of indignation, he

gave over the Siege. At last they became subject to the Romans with the rest of Greece, and followed punctually the same change of fortunes, as did those of Lesbos, which we have spoken of before; till given by *Andronicus Palæologus*, one of the last Greek Emperours, to the *Justinians*, a noble *Genesian* Family, affilant to him in his wars. Under them it continued as *Tributaries* to the *Turks* (after the *Turks* had made themselves Masters of *Constantinople*) to whom they annually paid eighteen thousand *Ducats*, till the year 1566. When *Solyman the Magnificent* picking a quarrel with them for some suspected correspondence with the Knights of *Malta*, commanded *Pial*, one of his greatest *Bassas*, to seize the Island. And he accordingly presenting himself before the City, with a strong Fleet of eighty Gallies did so alomn and amaze the Inhabitants of it, that without any other summons than the sight of the Navy, they surrendered themselves unto his disposing, upon *Easter-day* being the same day he came before it. Since that time it hath continued *Turkish*, all save their Religion, enjoyed by them with like liberty, as in former times.

4 *SAMOS*, is on the South-east of *Chios*, distant above five miles from the shores of *Jonis*, about eighty, or eighty seven in compass; environed for the most part, especially in the North-west, with inaccessible rocks, but beautified with a fair and capacious Haven; of little use by reason of *Pirates* which infested those Seas. The soil sufficiently enriched with most kind of fruits, abundantly plentiful of Oyl and Olives, but of *Vines* altogether unfurnished; which is the more to be admired, in regard all the Islands and shores about it, produce them in so great a plenty. It stretcheth from the East to the West: and on the South part it stood the City of *Samia*, near unto the Haven before spoken of. In former times populous, and well inhabited, as was the rest of the Island, now wholly desolate in a manner, because of the *Pirates*, and in most places very much over-grown with woods: becoming thereby very useful to those public enemies, who find here Timber enough for Shipping, and can upon the sudden put a ship to Sea, for pursuit of their *Robberies*. The chief commodity it affordeth besides those above, is a medicinal Earth, useful for *Chirurgery* and *Physick*: of which in former times were those Vessels made, called *Vasa Samia*, in great request amongst the *Romans*.

Anciently it had the names of *Drynisa*, *Anatemesusa*, *Melampylis*, and *Cyparissa*; out-worn by that of *Samos*, which it still retaineth. Memorable in old times for the birth of *Juno*, of one of the *Syblis*, hence called *Samia*; and finally of the wife-man *Pythagoras* (a wiser than any of the seven wise Men) so renowned amongst them) who first brought Philosophy into Greece, and from thence into Italy. Once a free Commonwealth of no small esteem, the infinites whereof are mentioned by *Heraclides*, in his Books of the several Commonwealths then being: afterwards made subject to the Tyrant *Polycrates*, a man so fortunate, that for a long time he never fell into any mischance. Fearing lest such a long calm would bring on a tempest, he let fall into the Sea a most precious Ring, by him deviously esteemed, that so it might be said he had some mis-fortunes. Which after he had found again in the belly of a fish, brought accidentally to his Table, he was overcome by *Orantes a Persian*, and brought to a miserable death. Leaving a notable example, that fortune is certain in nothing but uncertainties; and like a Bee with a sharp sting, hath always some misery following in the train of a long concatenation of felicity. From this time forwards it ran the same fortune with the rest of these Islands; subject successively to the great Monarchies in former times, as of late times

to the *Venetians*, *Greeks*, and *Turks* who do now enjoy it.

5 *ICARIA*, (now called *Nicæra*) lyeth not far from *Samos*, to the West-ward of it, narrow, but extended out in length; the whole compass seven and thirty miles: neighboured by two great Rocks, or little Islands, of old called *Melambii*, now the *Fernæes*; formidable at all times to Mariners, in the night especially. Meantly inhabited at the present, though abounding in pasturage, and yielding sufficiency of corn; Havenless, and therefore the less frequented, yet that defect supplied by commodious Roads. In former times called *Doliche*, then *Macris*, after *Ishisafa*: which name it held till the flight of *Dadalus* out of *Crete*, who justly fearing the anger of *Minos*, for being *Pandor* to his wife in her loves with *Taurus*, secretly with *Icarus* his son, fled out of that Island. And because he would be sure to out-trip the *Rovers* who pursued him, he added fairs unto his Boat, which it is said he first invented. But *Icarus*, coming after in another Bark, delighted with the new device, clapped on too much Canvass, and bearing too great a sail, was here cast away. Hence the new name both to this Island, and the Seas adjoining to it, and the occasion of the Fable of *Dadalus* putting wings upon his shoulders when he fled from *Crete*; and of his flying too high, whereby the wax melted which his wings were fastened with, and so he perished in the water. Of which thus *Ovid*.

*Dum petis infirmis nimium sublimis pennis
Icarus, Icaris nomina fecit aquis.*

In English thus,

Whilst *Icarus* gave wings too high did soar
He fell, and gave name to the *Icarian* shore.

9 *PATMOS*, now called *Palmosa*, is situate on the South of the other two; A little Island, not above 30 miles in compass. Mountainous, but indifferently fruitful, especially of wheat and pulse; of other commodities, and fruits, not to well provided. On one of these Mountains stands a Town of the same name with the Island; having on the top thereof a Monastery of *Greek Caloires*; and on the bottom a fair haven (I mean in reference to the Island.) Forty sail of Ships are said to belong unto it; by the trading whereof they bring in those provisions which the soil affordeth not: the soil about the Town being so incomparably barren, that nothing groweth on or near it, but on such earth as is brought thither from other places. Unto this Island (as to others in other parts of the world) did the *Roman* Emperours use to confine offenders. A punishment laid by *Dominian* on *St. John the Divine*, who in this place wrote his Revelation to the Churches of *Asia*. So much the Text affirms for certain, as to the writing of it in this Island. And the Inhabitants by tradition point unto an house on the North-side of the Town, in which it was written, and not far off the Cave where it was revealed. Both places equally honoured by the *Greeks* and *Latines*. They also shew a dead mans hand, which they affirm to be his, the nails whereof grow again as oft as cut. But the *Turks* (faith *Maginus*) claim it for the hand of one of their Prophets. Let them dispute the controversy, whilst we halt to.

7 *CLARO*, another Island not far off, containing about 40 miles in compass. Well stored with commodious Harbours, but very mountainous; some of whose hills of such an height, that from the tops thereof, the City of *Ephesus* in *Jonis*, (though distant at least eighty miles) may be easily seen. It is now called *Calano*. Neighboured by *Lero* (of old called *Ileoron*) a little Island not above eighteen miles in circuit, but very populous, inhabited both by *Greeks* and *Turks*, and furnishing the neighbouring Countries

Countries with some store of *Aloe*. Sacred in former times was *Claros* to *Apollon*; reckoned by him amongst his honours, in his brags to *Daphne*: where he declares,

Mibi Delphica relis,

Et *Claros*, & *Tenedos*, *Patareque Regia seruit.*

That is to say,

The folk of *Delphos*, *Tenedos*, and *Clare*,

And Royal *Patare*, my Vassals are.

8 *COOS*, *COS*, or *COVS*, for by all these names it was called of old, is situate over against *Caria*, in the very bottom of the *Aegean*, that is to say, in that part thereof which is called *Mare Myrtoum*, the *Myrtoan* Sea. A Sea so called, as some say, from one *Myrtilus*, Coachman or Charioter of *Oenomaus*, who having betrayed his race with *Pelops*, and importunate for his reward, was by *Pelops* precipitated into this Sea. *Pliny* left probably conceived that it took name from *Myrtos*, a little Island not far from *Eubœa*, a little too far off to extend its name to the shores of *Caria*. And therefore considering that *Lydia* anciently was called *Myrtus*, and that in those times *Æolis*, and *Jonis*, lying on this Sea, were accounted but as parts thereof, I think we may resolve with more probability, that it derived this name from that *Lydian Myrtus*.

In this Sea stands the Isle of *Coos*, now called *Lange*, affording Sayers as they pass by a most beautiful prospect, lying for the most part flat and level, but swelling towards the East with some graceful Mountains, out of which issue many sweet and pleasant springs to refresh the Island which maketh it more than ordinary fruitful. Productive of *Cypress* trees, *Turpentine*, and sundry others, both delightful and medicinal; but most especially celebrated for those rich wines, which the Good Fellows of *Rome* so much loved to quaff, called *Vinum Cos*. It is in the suburbs whereof stood anciently the Temple of *Asclepius*, famous and rich with the offerings of those, who having by his assistance (as they supposed) recovered health, came hither to make payment of their vows, and express their gratitude. It is now fortified with a strong Castle, held by a Garrison of *Turks*; and besides this, two Villages only in the Island, and both inhabited by *Greeks*.

In elder times it had the name of *Merope*, *Caria*, and *Nymphæas*, and at last *Coos*. Memorable in being the Country of many famous men who were here born: viz. of *Hippocrates*, the Reviver of *Physick*, then almost decayed, who is hence called *Hippocrates Cos*. 2 *Sinuis*, a Physician also. 3 *Ariston*, a Peripatetic Philosopher, for a time oppressed the liberty of this people. And 6 of *Apelles*, the famous Painter; who to express his Art in assembled together all the most beautiful women of the Island, uniting in that piece their divided perfections. Which famous piece being afterwards hanged up in the Temple of *Stondimene*, one of the principal of this Island, was thence conveyed to *Rome* by *Augustus*, and there dedicated to *Cæsar*, as the mother of the *Julian* family: the *Coans* in regard hereof, being eased of a great part of their annual tributes. Not much less memorable much in use amongst the chief Ladies of *Rome*; who at once shewed them clothed and naked. *Periculi non vestire, ita, ut nuda conspicui possint*, as my Author is. so often mentioned by the Poets, especially in their *Amatoria*; as *Con pulvis Vestis*, in *Tibullus*; *Indue me Co* so in *Propertius*; *Sive eris in Cois*, faith the Poet *Ovid*. here. I pass to

9 *CARPATHOS*, situate on the South of *Caria* in the *Mæderranean*, from this Island, called hereabouts the *Carpathian* Sea. A rugged and unpleasant foil, full of difficult Mountains, but those Mountains stored with quarries of most excellent Marble. In circuit about 60 miles, extending more in length than breadth. Hereabouts beautified with four Cities, and thence named *Tetrapolis*. But three of the four Cities are long since perished, that of *Carpathor* being still remaining, and still the principal of the Island; both now called *Scarpanto*. Some other Towns it hath all along the shore, and every small, and for the most part very unsafe. Situate in the middle as it were betwixt *Crete* and *Rhodes*. It hath continued hitherto in the possession of the State of *Venice* (if not taken from them very lately:) to whom being given with other of the Islands of these *Grecian* Seas, at the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western forces, it had all the residue were subdued by the *Turks*. The people *Greek*, of the communion of that Church, notwithstanding their subjection to a state of Italy.

10 *RHODES*, situate in the *Rhodian* or *Carpathian* Sea, lyeth over-against the coast of *Lycia* in *Asia Minor*, from which distant about 20 miles. Formerly called *Ophisa*, *Aleria*, *Eubœa*, *Tynachia*, *Pæsis*, *Corymbia*, *Atabyria*, and at last *Mascaria*; it settled finally and fortunately in the name of *Rhodes*. So named by the *Grecians* from the abundance of *Roses*, which the soil produceth, *Rhodes* in that language signifying a *Rose*, the Isle of *Roses*, as it were: but as the Poets say, of *Rhoda*, a Nymph of these Seas, here declared by *Apollon*, or rather of *Rhoda*, one of the daughters of *Apollon* begot on *Pennus*, For so one of them thus declared it,

Insula Diis Rhodos, de Sole & Cypride nata est.
Rhoda, from whom this Isle took name,
Of *Pennus* and *Apollo* came.

The Island 140 miles in compass, enriched with a most temperate air, and a fertile soil, producing fruits in very great plenty, full of excellent pastures, adorned with trees which always do continue green: and in a word, so blest with the gifts of nature, that it gave occasion to the Fable of those *Golden Showers*, which were once said to have fallen upon it. The *wines* hereof so excellent, and so rich of taste, that by the *Romans* they were used in their second courses, or reserved for the sacrifices of the Gods, as too good for mortals, as affirmed by *Virgil* in the *Georgicks*. The cause of which perpetual flourishing, and fluences of *Rose*, is to be ascribed to the powerful influence of the *Sun*, so dearly cherishing this Island, of so much in love with it, that it is constantly affirmed, that no day passeth wherein he shineth not clearly on it, be the air in all other places never so much over-cast with clouds, or obscured by mists. Feigned for that cause to have been naturally a meir Marish, altogether inhabitable, if not covered with waters; till loved by *Phœbius*, and erected above the waves by his vigorous influences.

Of the People we shall speak anon; Look we in the mean time on the places of most observation. 1 *Lindus*, now *Lindo*, a petty town but formerly of more esteem: of note in those times for the Temple consecrated to *Athena*, by *Danaus* King of *Ægypt*, landing here when he fled out of that Kingdom. As also for the birth of *Chæres*, the Architect of the huge *Colossus*, whereof more presently; but specially for the nativity of *Cleobulus*, one of the seven wise-men of Greece: the other fix being *Solon* of *Athens*, *Periander* of *Corinth*, *Chilon* of *Sparta*, *Bim* of *Priene*, *Thales* of *Melinus*, and *Pittacus* of *Mytæne*. Seven men of whom the *Grecians* most immenly bragged, as if the World

World could neither afford them equals, or an equal number: for which derided handsomely by *Lallantius*, an old *Christian* Writer, who scoffs their paucity, and calleth it a miserable and calamitous age, *In quo septem soli fuerint qui hominum vocabula mererentur*; in which there were no more than seven who deserved to be accounted men. 2. *Rhodes*, anciently, as now the chief City of it, the Island from hence taking name, and formerly, as well as in latter times, depending on the fortunes and strength hereof. No place in elder times held superiour to it, for the convenience of the Haven, magnificent buildings, delightful Orchards, and other excellencies. Situate on the East part of the Isle, on the declining of an hill, and near the Sea, where it enjoyeth a safe and common Haven: treble walled, fortified with thirteen Turrets, and five strong Bulwarks, besides divers Scences, and other out-works; this Town, and *Famagusta* in the Isle of *Cyprus*, being conceived to be the two strongest holds in the *Turkish* Empire. In former times, one of the principal Universities of the *Roman* Empire; this *Rhodes*, *Marfilius*, *Tarlus*, *Athens*, and *Alexandria*, being reckoned the old Academies of that Monarchy. And to this Town, as a most noted place of Study, *Tiberius* (afterwards Emperor) did withdraw himself, when *Augustus* had declared his two Nephews *Lucius* and *Caius*, for his Heirs: pretending only a desire to improve himself in the ways of *Literature*; whereas the true cause was his envy at their preferment. Honour'd in those times with that huge *Colossus*, one of the seven Wonders of the World, made by *Chares* of *Lindum*, before mentioned. Composed of Brass, in height seventy Cubits, every finger of it being as great as an ordinary man; and consecrated to the Sun, as the proper Deity of the Island. Twelve years in making, and having stood but 66 years was pulled down in an Instant by an Earthquake, which terribly shook the whole Island. The *Rhodian*s being forbid by an Oracle to erect it again (or possibly pretending such an Oracle to save that charge) yet held the brass and other materials of it (in a manner) sacred. Not meddled with, nor sacrilegiously purloined till *Mauroas*, the General of *Osman*, the *Mahometan* Caliph, finding in himself no such scruple of conscience, (after he had subdued this Island) made a prey hereof, loading nine hundred Camels with the very brass of it. From this *Colossus* was the Island sometimes called *Colossa*, and the people *Colossians*: not those *Colossians* (as some have very vainly thought) to whom *St. Paul* writ his Epistle, those being of *Colosse*, a Town of the *Greater Phrygia*, as hath there been noted. Here was also in this City anciently a Temple of *Bacchus*, enriched with many presents both of *Greeks* and *Romans*; of both which People the *Rhodian*s were then held in a fair esteem; but the God and the good Wines in greater. Town of less note, are 3. *Villanova*, 4. *Kullisware*, and sometimes others, but as little memorable.

This Island was first peopled by *Dodanim* the son of *Javan*, and the Grand-child of *Japhet*, whom the *Greeks* call commonly, but corruptly, *Rhodian*; mistaking the Hebrew Letter *Daleth* for that of *Reh*, letters so like as easily it might draw them to that mistake. Finding this Island too narrow for him, he left here a Colony, and with the main of his people passed into *Greece*; where he planted the Country of *Epirus*, as hath there been said. Those which staid here being mistakingly called *Rhodian*s (or called so by the *Greeks*, not looking with too curious eyes into their Antiquities, from the abundance of *Roses* here growing) making the best use of their Haven, and other the advantages of their situation, became so expert in maritime affairs, that by *Florus* they are styled *Populus nauticus*, and not only in the way of Trade and Merchandize, but of power and govern-

ment: holding for many years the command of these Seas, and prescribing Laws for the Reiglement of Navigation. Which being called the *Rhodian* Laws, became the general Rule for deciding marine causes, and ordering the affairs of Sea, in all the parts and Provinces of the *Roman* Empire: and so continued till supplanted in these Western parts by the Laws of *Olerou*. Fearful of falling under the *Macedonian*s, they applied themselves unto the *Romans*, whom first they aided in their wars against *Philip*, the Father of *Perseus*; and afterwards in that also against *Antiochus*. Rewarded for this last service with *Lycia* and *Caria*, two of the *Asian* Provinces, which *Antiochus* was to leave on his composition; they became so faithfully affected to the State of *Rome*, that when all the other Islands of the *Mediterranean* and *Aegean* Seas revolted to *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, this only adhered unto the *Romans*. Proud either of their strength at Sea, or of those good offices, they began to take upon as *Mediators*, and thought themselves fit men to advise their Masters. Grown troublesome by their frequent interpositions, and losing much of their esteem by *fact impertinencies*, they began to grow jealous of the *Romans*, and incline to *Perseus* King of *Macedon*; whose Father they before oppos'd with their utmost power. A change which *Paterculus* exprest with some admiration. *Rhodii ipsi fidelissimi amica Romanis, ubi iam fide promissas in Regis partes vixi, tur, as his words there are.* But yet they held for them against *Mithridates*, as before was said, and served their turn on all occasions, until insensibly they betrayed their liberty to the power of their friends; and of *Consuldrates* and *Allies*, became the *Vassals*. Made by *Vespasian* into a Province with the rest of the Isles, the Governour or President of that Province fixing here his residence, as the chief of those Islands; which gave the title of *Metropolitan* to the Bishop of *Rhodes*. Under that Empire it continued (or under that of *Constantinople* after the division) till the year 1124, when taken from the *Grecians* by the State of *Venice*; again recovered by the *Greeks*, in the time of their Emperor *John Ducas*, then residing at *Nice*. Won from the *Grecians* by the *Turks*, the Knights of *St. John* of *Hierusalem*, being utterly driven out of *Asia*, possessed themselves of it, by the favour of *Emanuel* the then Emperor, who aided them in the conquest, Anno 1308. Afterwards proving bad neighbours to the *Turkish* Tyrants, whom they ceased not to insult upon all occasions, they were many times in vain invaded; *Mahomet* the Great, famous for taking *Constantinople*, and the Empire of *Trebezond*, spending some time before their City, with both loss and shame. At the last Anno 1522. it was again besieged by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Lilladamas Villier* being then great Master, who did as much in defence hereof as policy and puissance could extend unto. But multitude in the end prevailed and upon *Christians* day, the *Turk* entred *Rhodes* as Conquerour; though possibly he might have said (as *Pyrrhus* once said of a Victory against the *Romans*) that such another Victory would have quite undone him. Since that a Province of the *Turks*, by whom, and by some *Jews* banished out of Spain, the City of *Rhodes* is wholly inhabited: the *Christians* which are licenced to dwell in the Country, and have leave to trade there in the day time, not suffered upon pain of death to stay there all night. And so we pass from the Islands of the *Asian* Diocese, to the Isle of *Cyprus*, a near neighbour unto *Anatolia*; and no member of it: the rest of that Diocese, and those Seas, as 11 *Paphlagonia*, 12 *Arcepsus*, 13 *Bugades*, 14 *Minyas*, 15 *Sinu*, 16 *Ceph*, and the rest, yielding but little matter of observation besides their names.

OF

OF CYPRUS.

CYPROS is situate in the *Syrian* and *Cilician* Seas, extended in length from East to West two hundred miles, in breadth fifty; the whole compass reckoned five hundred and fifty. Distant about sixty miles from the rocky Shores of *Cilicia* in *Asia Minor*, and about an hundred from the main Land of *Syria*; towards which it shooteth it self out with a long sharp Promontory, extending heretofore to the main Land, from which rent in former time by a violent Earthquake, as is laid by *Pliny*, and worn unto this narrowness by the continual working of the Sea upon it.

No place hath oftner changed his name, or at least had more names on the by than this. Called at first *Cebin*, or *Cebinia*, from *Kevin* the son of *Javan*, who first planted it. 2. *Cerastis*, from the abundance of Promontories, thrusting like Horns into the Sea, (as the word intimates in the *Greek*) 3. *Amathusia*, 4. *Paphia*, 5. *Salamina*: These three last from the principal Towns in those parts hereof. 6. *Macaria*, from the fruitfulness and felicity of it. Besides these, it hath in some times had these By-names also; as, 7. *Aperia* from the roughness of the Soil. 8. *Collina*, from the frequency of Hills and Mountains. 9. *Eroisa*, from the Mines of Brass, which abound therein. 10. And finally, all those forgotten and laid by, it settled at last in the name of *Cyprus*. So called, say some, from the abundance of *Cypres* Trees, with which most plentifully provided; as others, from *Crypsos* a *Greek* word, signifying Concealed, or hidden, because sometimes concealed by the Surges from the eye of Sailors; but most improbably said by City of *Aphrodisia*; whereas indeed six hundred years before *Cypris* his Birth, we find it by this name in *Homer*. More rightly *Stephanus*, who deriveth it, *Σει Κύπρις* *Κυπρις* *Κυπρις*, from *Cypris* daughter of *Cinyras*, one of the Kings hereof, living before the *Trojan* Wars: though in my mind the first comes nearest to the truth, the *Cypres* Tree not only growing here in so great abundance, but being anciently peculiar in a manner to this Island only.

But on what ground soever it was called *Cypris*, certain I am it had the name of *Cerastis* upon very good reason; no Island or Region that I know of (for the biggness of it) thrusting out so many sharp Promontories. For on the West there is, 1. The Promontory called *Acamas*, now *Capo S. Pafano*. 2. *Drepanum*, now *Trepano* and *Malechia*. 3. *Zephyrum*, or *Caput Calidonis*, now *Punta Malata*. On the South, 4. *Phrynum*, now *Capo Bianco*. 5. *Cyrtus*, or *Capo della Catre*. 6. *Gades*, or *Capo di S. Throni*, or *Capo Pila*. On the East, 8. *Pendulium*, now *Capo di Griego*. 9. *Clides*, now *Capo S. Andrea*. And on the North, 10. *Coromyn*, now *Capo Cor-nazietti*, besides some others of less note. Some of the

Poets give another reason of this name, as that *Venus* of *Guccis*, should turn them into horned Cattel, *Unde virum nomen traxere Cerastra*, as it is in *Ovid*, but that merely fabulous; somewhat of kin unto the Legend of *Thomas Becket*, and the *Kentish-long-tails*. Yet so far called *Cerastis*, but that the People were also called *Cerastis*, and that there wants not proof from some other that name being altogether worn out of use, and no other that of *Cypris* given it in common Speech. Nor is called so by the *Grecians* from its abundance of *Cypres* Trees, anciently and originally peculiar to this Island, as before was noted: than that the same *Grecians* should from its great plenty of *Roses*; or to the neighbouring Continent the name of *Phoenicia*, from its great plenty of *Palm-trees* the word so signifying in that Language.

It is situate under the fourth Climate, so that the longest day in Summer is no more than fourteen hours and a half; and for that cause the Air in Summer time exceeding hot and foultry: The Soil moistned with some few Brooks, meriting rather the name of Torrents than Rivers, which being generated for the most part by rain-water, are not seldom dried up by the heat of the Sun; inso much that in the Reign of *Constantine* the Great, this Island was for 36 years together almost utterly forsaken, no rain falling all that time. These inconveniences notwithstanding, it is stored with such plenty of all things, that without the help of any Foreign Nation, it is of it self able to build and rig a tall Ship from the Keel to the Top-sail, and to put it to Sea furnished with all things needful for a Voyage, or a Sea-sight. It also aboundeth in Wine, Oyl, Coriander, Cotton, Honey, Wool, Turpentine, and Almond, Verdegreece, all sorts of Metals, store of Salt, Grograins, and other Commodities, whereupon this Island was once called *Macaria* (i. e. Happy.) By reason of which wonderful affluence of all necessities, and that afforded, it was anciently consecrated unto *Venus*, who is hence called *Venus Cypris*, and *Dea Cypr*: Sic te dicunt *Cypri* in *Huore*; and in *Ovid*, *Effusa dies Veneris; tota celebrissima Cypro*, Venerat; ipsa Jussu aderat *Venus* *aurica fessis* *Venus* *Ecstas* hallowed through all *Cypris* came, and *Venus* with her presence grac'd the same.

The People hereof are war-like, strong, and nimble; of great civility and hospitality to their Neighbours, and love to Strangers of all Nations, *Jews* only excepted. For in the Empire of *Trajan*, the *Jews* inhabiting *Ægypt* and the adjoining Countries, drew themselves to gether, and chose one *Alexander* for their Captain and r whose conduct

conduct they entred into this Island, and laid it desolate, killing in it 240000 Persons of all Sexes and Ages; not without much bloodshed vanquished and slain by *Lucius* the Emperours Lieutenant. Since which time the *Cypriots* permit no Jew to enter into the Island; but come heither voluntarily, or by force of Tempelt, they lay hands on him, and lead him presently to Execution. A hated Nation, that neither innocence can protect, or equity relieve from that cruel custom.

The Women in former times much noted for their Unchastity, to which their worshipping of *Venus* was no small incentive; it being the custom of these Women to prostitute themselves on the Shores, to the passers by: their very *Virgins* not refusing to be handled there, before their Marriage; either to raise their Portions by the sale of their Bodies, or else to please their Goddes with such beastly Sacrifices. And if *Polaterranus* may be credited (as I think he may) the Ladies which attended on Queen *Carotide*, when she came to *Rome*, to seek for aid against *Jamas* the Baffard, who had dispossessed her of this Kingdom, shewed themselves little chaster than the most ancient *Cypriots*. Somewhat more fortunate in the Men: 1. *Aesclapides*, the Author of the Verse so named; 2. *Xenophon*, an old Poet; 3. *Zeno*, and 4. *Apollonius*, the Philosopher; 5. *Ephraimus*, the learned Bishop of *Salamis*; and 6 above all, Saint *Barnabas* the dear Associate of Saint *Paul*, being all natives of this Country.

The Christian Faith was first here planted by Saint *Paul* and *Barnabas*, as the very first fruits of their Apostleship after they had been separated to the Work of the Ministry by the imposition of hands, as appeareth *Acts* 13. v. 4. &c. The Church hereof, by reason of the Antiquity of it, and the honour of this joint Foundation to privileged in the best Ages of Christianity, that the Archbishop of this Island had all Prerogatives of a *Primate*; consecrated by his own Suffragan Bishops and acting in all Sacred and Ecclesiastical Affairs, without dependance on, or relation to the See of *Antioch*, whereunto all other Bishops in the Eastern *Dioceses* were either subordinate or Subject. Which Privilege being questioned in the Council of *Ephesus*, was by the Fathers there assembled, on a full hearing of the Cause, approved and ratified; confirmed by the Civil Sanction of the Emperour *Justinian*, whose Wife was a Native of this Island; and by the name of *Jus Cyprianum*, the Privilege or Exemption of the *Cyrian* Church, transmitted to the Prelates of succeeding times. Which notwithstanding, they continued in good correspondence with the Eastern Churches of the *Greek Communion*, and officiated all Divine Acts after the Rites and Forms thereof, till the *Venitians* became Lords of it, who brought in the *Latin* Service into some of their Churches, and appointed Bishops and other Ministers of the *Papal* party, for execution of the same. And for the Government of these Churches, they had at first fourteen Bishops and Archbishops; to gratifie Queen *Alice*, (who had a mind to enrich her friends with some of the Spoils of them) reduced by *Innocent* the third to four only, that is to say, the Archbishop of *Nicosia*, the Bishopsricks of *Famagusta*, *Paphos*, and *Amathus*; but each See furnished with two Prelates, the one for the *Greeks*, the other for the *Latins*: of which the Bishops for the *Latins* have all the Lands, and Annual Revenues which of right belong to those Cathedral, the *Greek* Bishops living upon Stipends levied on the Priests and Deacons of their Jurisdiction.

Rivers, as formerly was said, here are very few; and of those few, the principal are called *Lycu* and *Lapithu*; the first running towards the South, the last towards the North; both not seldom so dried up, that

they leave their empty Channels without any water. Both also have their Source from the Hill *Olympus* (the highest Mountain of the Island) garnished with Trees and Fruits of all sorts; in compas about eighteen Leagues (which make four and fifty Italian miles) and at the end of every League a Monastery of *Greek Monks*, or *Caloires*, and a Fountain of fresh water for the use of the House. Here are also two other little Rivers, the one called 3 *Bodeni*, the other 4 *Tolius*; but of the same nature as the former.

By *Prology*, or in his time, divided into four parts or Provinces; but since it fell into the hands of the *Lufinian* Family, distributed into twelve Counties or *Centredes*; most of them called by the names of their principal Towns: viz. 1 *Nicosia*, 2 *Famagusta*, 3 *Paphia*, 4 *Andima*, 5 *Limissa*, 6 *Maforum*, 7 *Salina*, 8 *Messoria*, 9 *Cryfocum*, 10 *Pentalia*, 11 *Carpafia*, 12 *Cerines*. The whole containing, besides the Cities and great Towns, 805 Villages or thereabouts, which they called *Caflets*, whereof the one half anciently belonged unto the *Crown*, the other half divided betwix the *Lay Nobility*, and the *Ecclesiasticks*; the Patrimony of these last being computed at 80000 Crowns of Annual Rents, besides Casualties, and the Vails of the Altar. But because the tracing out of these *Centredes* will be very difficult (as a way which none have gone before me) I will adhere to the division made hereof in the time of *Prology*, into the Provinces of 1 *Paphia*, 2 *Amathus*, 3 *Lapethia*, and 4 *Salamine*.

1 *PAPHIA* so called of *Paphos* the chief Town thereof, taketh up the West part of the Island; in which the Towns of most importance and observation are, 1 *Paphos*, on the Sea-side, by *Pliny*, called *Parpaphos*, or old *Paphus*, built, as some say, by *Cymrus*, the Father of *Myrrha*, and so named in memory of *Paphus* his Father; but, as others say, by *Paphos*, the son of *Pygmalion*, King of *Phoenicia* and *Cyprus*: to which last *Ovid* doth agree, who speaking of *Pygmalion's* Statue, turned into a Woman by the power of *Venus* (or rather of his beautiful Wife, fabled, for the surpassing whiteness of her skin, to be made of *Ivory*) he adds this of her,

Illa Paphium genus de quo tenet insula nomen.

She *Paphus* bare whom from the name

Of *Paphio* to the Island came.

Here *Venus* had her so much celebrated Temple, hence the name of *Paphia*; and here her *Votaries* of both Sexes in their natural nakedness, did perform her Sacrifices. Both Town and Temple ruined by a fearful *Earthquake*; or as the Legends have it, by the prayers of St. *Barnabas*; or the ruins of it fill remaining. 2 *Prophos Nova*, or *New Paphos*, now called *Rafu*; five miles from the old, built by *Apapenur*, one of the Nephews of *Lycurgus* the Spartan Law-giver, after the Sack of *Troy* forced hither by a violent Tempelt; consecrate to the same impure Goddes, and much frequented, but without injury to the other; those which here offered not thinking they had done her sufficient service, unless they went in a solemn manner of Procession, and paid their Vows also at the other. 3 *Asifone*, situate betwixt both; built by, or called so in honour of *Asifone*, daughter of *Ptolemy* the first King of *Aegypt*, and Lord of *Cyprus*, of that House. 4 *Drepanium*, now called *Trepam*, under the Promontory so named, a well-traded Port, but miserably defaced by the *Turks*, when they took this Island. 5 *Comedia*, one of the richest of the Island, by reason of the plenty of Sugar and Cotton-wool, growing thereabout. Built in the place of 6 *Cithera*, dedicated to *Venus* also, but differing from the Island of that name in the *Aegean* Sea, rather in

pronunciation than the purity of her oblations; the last syllable have one, in the name of that Island, being short in verse, but this of *Cyprus* founding long, as in this of *Virgil*,

Est Amathus, est celsa mihi Paphos, atque Cithera.
Cithera and *Amathus* divine,
And lofty *Paphos* are all mine.

2 On the South-East of *Paphia* lieth the Province or *District* of *AMATHUSIA*, taking up the South-parts of the Island which look towards *Aegypt*. Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Amathus*, giving name unto this division, then of most note, and much frequented for the annual sacrifices made unto *Adonis* the darling of *Venus*, who had here another of her Temples: the ruins of both hardly now discerned. Built, as some say, by *Amasis*, King of *Aegypt*, when he conquered this Island; but as others say by some of the *Anabites*, descended from *Anab* one of the sons of *Canaan*. 2 *Catium*, or *Cittium*, (for I find it called by both names) the birth-place of memorable for the death of *Simon* the *Athenian* General. 3 *Town*, is most anciently preferred. 4 *Epifepio*, one of the chief of all the Island, built on the place, or out of the decay of 4 *Curias*, not far from the Promontory of the same name, founded by the *Argives*, where *Apollo* had both a Grove and a Temple, by the name of *Apollo Hy-lar*; his Altars in those times held so sacred, that whosoever presumed to touch them, was thrown into the Sea from the Promontory or rocks adjoining. 5 *Salinae*, or chief Towns of this part, and giving name to one of the twelve *Centredes*, into which the whole is now divided.

3 *LAPETHIA*, the third part of the Island, lyeth on the North thereof, opposite to *Cilicia* in *Asia*. Minority of the Kings, the See of the Archbishop, and the chief of the Island: anciently called *Ledronis*, and *Lemains*; but those names long ago laid by. Situate in the midst of the life, and in a plain and champain Country, abundantly fertile and delightful. Environed with a fair wall, so exactly round as if it had been drawn with a pair of Compasses; in circuit about five miles, and both for situation, numbers of People, and magnificent buildings of all sorts both publick and private, compared by some to the most beautiful City of *Florence*. Fortified by the *Venetians*, when in their possession, with new walls, deep ditches, and eleven strong Bulwarks, with three great Out-works, all of them built according to the Art of modern Fortification. But notwithstanding all these works, and the help of 250 pieces of Canon planted on the walls, and about the City, it was by the *Turks* taken at the second or third assault, Sept. 9. Anno. 1570. So evident a truth it is, that Fortifications are more strengthened by the gallantry and courage of the Defendants, than the Defendants are by their Fortifications. 2 *Cerines*, situate near the Sea, strong by Art and Nature, and furnished with all things necessary to endure a Siege; but yielded to the *Turks* by *Alphonfus Palaius* the unwearied Governor, terrified with the great slaughter made at the sack of *Nicosia*, before the Enemy came near it. At first great *Perfian* King, when he first subdued the nine Kings hereof, and united the Island to that Crown; blest with a more temperate and wholesome air, than any other in the Country. 3 *Tremis*, the birth-place of *Spirdidion*, Bishop of the *Primitive* times, renowned for miracles; in many of which reported by *Sosomen*, lib. 1. chap. 10. and

other Ecclesiastical Writers. Wholly decayed, the ruins of it much contributing to the rise of *Nicosia*, a *Lapithus* (by *Pliny* called *Lapero*) on the banks of a small Riveret of that name, of so great note in former times, that it gave to this Division the name of *Lapethia*; in that part I standeth the hill *Olympus*, (now the Mountain of the holy Cross) described before.

4 *SALAMINE*, the fourth and last Province of this Island, taketh up the whole East-parts hereof: So named from 1 *Salamis*, once the chief City of the Isle; and the See of the *Primate*, or *Metropolitan* hereof in the *Primitive* times. Destroyed by the *Jens* in the reign of *Tyrtan*, and re-built again; but being after that taken, sacked, and razed unto the ground by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Heraclius*, it never could again recover the *Metropolitan* See after that subversion, being removed to *Nicosia*. It was sometimes, and by some Writers, called *Constantia* also; but that name could give it no more perpetuity than the other of *Salamis*. Memorable whilst it stood for the founder of it, being *Tenar* the Son of *Telamon* King of *Salamis* an Isle of the *Aegean* Sea; banished his Country by his Father, and settled in this Island by the power of *Belus* King of *Phoenicia*: as also for a famous Temple sacred unto *Jupiter*, hence called *Salaminus*. Out of the ruins hereof arose, 2 *Famagusta*, now the prime City of these parts; built as is said by *Coffa* the Father of St. *Catharine*; but that uncertain. Situate at the East end of the Island, in a plain and low ground betwixt two Promontories, the one called the *Cape of St. Andrew*, and the other *Cape di Griego*, or the head of *Greece*. In compas not above two miles, in form four-square, but that the side towards the East stretcheth out more in length than the other three. On two parts beaten on with the Sea, the other parts towards the Land defended with a Ditch not above fifteen foot in breadth, an old stone wall, and certain Bulwarks. The Haven (opposite to *Tripolis*, a Town of *Syria*) openeth towards the South-east, defended from the injury of the Sea by two great Rocks, betwixt which the Sea cometh in at a narrow passage not above forty paces broad, but after opening wider and wider; maketh a convenient Harbour, rather safe than large, secured both by the difficult entrance and a chain crooked over it. The whole Town, when the *Turks* appeared before it, but meanly fortified, the works of it of the old fashion, generally decayed except one Bulwerk, which was but according to the modern Arts of Fortification, with *Galifadours*, Curtains, Casemates, and all other Advantages: most gallantly defended by *Bragadine* the noble General, to the wonder and envy of the *Turks*, who spent no less than 18000 great shot upon it; and at last yielded upon honourable terms, had they been as punctually performed. 5 *Aphrodisium*, so named of *Venus*, whom the *Greeks* called *Aphrodite*, who had here another of her Temples. 4 *Asifone*, built also by one of the *Asifones* Queens of *Aegypt*, there being two others of this name, and the same foundation, now called *Leferre*, and anciently renowned for the Groves of *Siphier*. 5 *Tamafius*, as afterwards for an abundance of *Perlegrace* and *Perid*, found plentifully in the fields adjoining. 6 *Iadiumneur* a Mount of the same name, so called by accident. For he should fear himself, and build a City, where he first law the rising Sun: one of his followers, seeing the Sun begin to rise, cried out *Ida Idus*, that is to say, Behold the Sun. Which *Omen* taken by *Chalco*, he heth built this City. But whether this were so or not (as for my part I build not very much upon it) certain it is, that *Venus* had here another Temple, neighboured by the *Adian Groves* so memorized and chanted by the ancient Poets. So strong

an influence had lust and sensuality on this wretched People, that every corner of the Island was defiled with those brutish Sacrifices, which day by day were offered to that impure deity: though to say truth, it was no marvel if having made their *Belly their God*, they made in the next place their *glory their Name*.

The first Inhabitants of this Island were the posterity of *Cittim* the son of *Javan*, and grand-son of *Japhet*: who having seen his brother *Turkish* settled in *Cilicia*, (where his memory is still preserved in the City of *Tarsus*) planted himself and his retinue in this opposite Island. The City of *Cettium*, as *Ptolomy*, or *Cittium*, as *Pliny* calleth it, one of the ancientest of the Island; taking name from him: which with the authority of *Josephus*, and others of the ancient Writers, put it out of question. But being this Island was too narrow to contain his numbers, and willing to seek further off for a larger dwelling, he left here so many of his followers as might serve in time to plant the Country; and with therewith passed into *Macedon*, where we have already spoken of him. Made tributary first to *Amasis* King of *Ægypt*, from which distant about three or four days sailing, subjected afterwards to the *Phœnicians*, a near neighbour to them, who being a Sea-faring people, made themselves Masters of the Sea-coasts and maritime places. *Cyprus* the Father of *Myrrha*, (by whom both Father and Grand-Father to *Adonis*) is said to have been King of both. The like affirmed of *Belus* one of his Successors, who is said to have been the founder of the City of *Cittium*, named so (if not rather repaired than new built by him,) with reference no doubt to *Cittim*, the first Progenitor of this People. By the power and favour of this *Belus*, *Tencher*, the son of *Telamon*, banished his Country, accompanied with many followers from *Salamis*, *Athens*, and *Arceadia*, was settled in the East parts here; where the City of *Salamis*, by him built, was his first Plantation. Yet so that the *Phœnicians* kept their former hold; it being evident in Story that *Eulenes* one of the Successors of this *Belus*, (but a King of *Tyre*), and a Co-temporary with *Salmassar* King of *Affria*, passed over into *Cyprus* with a puissant Navy to reduce the *Citians* to obedience, who had then rebelled. The Island at first coming of *Tencher* hither so infinitely overgrown with woods, that the people were not able to till the Island. Inso much, that notwithstanding the great waste made of them, both in building ships, and casting metals, a Law was made, that every one which would should fell them, and take as much ground in severality for his own inheritance, as he could overcome and make fit for tillage. Encouraged herewith the natural *Cypriots*, together with the Colonies of *Grecians*, *Phœnicians*, *Ægyptians*, so belirred themselves that at last they brought it unto *Champan*: parcelled out in succeeding times, amongst nine Kings, for so many *Cyrm* the great *Perfian* Monarch found at his coming hither. But *Cyrm*, though he did subdue all those petty Princes, yet he took not from them their Estates or Titles: contented with the conquest of it and an annual tribute. For after this, in the time of *Artaxerxes Menemon*, we find *Eucagrat*, and *Nicolet*, to whom *Iscrates* inscribed two of his Orations, to be Kings hereof. And in the time of *Alexander the Great*, *Cittium* it self (such was the honour born unto the Mother-City) had a King apart, not subject unto any other. The King whereof to incard himself with the Conqueror, gave to him a sword, *μυχαγενε σωαυδης*, *Smith Plutarch*, an admirable sword, both for colour and lightness, which he after used in all his fights. And after the death of *Alexander*, his great Commanders cantoning his estates amongst them, the Princes and People of this Island were in great distractions, not knowing to whom they might

submit for their best advantage. But *Ptolomy*, who had seized on *Ægypt* for his part of the spoil, being strong in shipping, fettered them by a personal visit; and fortifying some of the best pieces in it, assured the Country to himself. To him and his posterity it continued subject till the time of *Ptolomy Auletes*, the ninth King of this Line in our Account, who gave it for a portion to one of his Brethren: in whose time, the *Romans*, without any colour or pretence of quarrel, but only to enrich themselves with the spoil of the Island, sent *Porcius Cato* to subdue it. And he at first assayed to get it with the Kings consent, offering him in the name of the *Roman* Senate, the Priest-hood of the Temple of *Paphos*, being a rich and gainful Office, and of high esteem among that people. But when *Ptolomy* for fear of worse mischief had made away himself by poison, *Cato* without more ceremony takes possession of it. And because *Amminius Marcellinus* the Historian, hath so significantly expressed this business, and withal described so punctually the Estate of this Island; we will add this discourse from him, though somewhat be repeated which was said before. *Cyprus insulam procul à Continente distantem, & portualem, &c.* "The Isle of *Cyprus*, far distant from the Continent, and well stored with Harbours, is famous, besides many Municipal Towns, for two principal Cities, that is to say, *Salamis*, and *Paphos*; the one sacred to *Jupiter*, and the other to *Venus*. An Isle so admirably fruitful, and with all things furnished, that without the help of any foreign Nation, it is able of itself to build and rig forth a ship, from the very keel unto the top-sail, and trim it with all tackle necessary for a present voyage. Nor do I flatter to say, that with greater Avarice than Justice, the *Romans* did invade this Island, King *Ptolomy*, our old Confederate and Ally, being unworthily proscribed for no other reason, but that our Treasury was bare, our Exchequer empty. And he no sooner had prevented this dishonour by a quick and voluntary death, making away himself by poison, but the Island was forthwith made tributary, and the riches of it, *Vetus hostiles exuvie classis impo- sita & in urbem adducta per Catonem*, as the spoils of some conquered enemy, were brought on Ship-board, and conveyed by *Cato* unto *Rome*. So far, and to this purpose he.

I know there is another cause alledged for the sending of *Cato* on this Errand, viz. that *Clodius* who was then Tribune, and spied the *Edict*, might have opportunity by his absence to revenge himself on *Cicero*, and some others of the opposite faction: but the main business was the money, as before was said; the prey amounting to 7000 Talents, which comes to two Millions, and one hundred thousand Crowns of Coin now current. Which money and moveables, amounting unto so vast a sum, he fearing to lose by Sea, divided it into many small portions, which he put into several Boxes, viz. in every Box two Talents and fifty Drachms. At the end of every Box he fastened a long rope with a piece of Cork; by which, floating above the water, the money, if by Shipwrack lost, might be espied again: which was not much unlike the boys which Mariners fasten by long ropes to their Anchors, that they may be sooner found. We see by this, that the pretence of the *Romans* to this Country was very weak: *Avaricie magis quam justis sumis essent*, are the words of *Sextus Rufus* also. But being made a *Roman* Province, it was in the division of the Empire assigned to the *Constantinopolis* Emperours, under whom it suffered, as all other parts of the Empire did by the violent invasion of the *Saracens*, who spoiled and ransacked it in the time of *Confiance* the second, destroying then the City of *Salamis* or *Constantia*. But that tempest

being over-blown, they returned again unto that Empire, governed by a succession of Dukes, till the year 1184. At which time *Andronicus Comnenus* usurping the Greek Empire, compelled *Isaacius Comnenus*, one of the blood Royal, to lift for himself: who seizing on this Island made himself King thereof, and ruling till the year 1191. when *Richard* the first of *England*, being denied the common courtesy of taking in fresh water, and seeing his Souldiers abused by the *Cypriots*, not only took the King Prisoner, but subdued the whole Island. And as *Paterculus* telleth us, that when *Marcus Antonius* had captivated *Artamides* King of *Armenia*, *Catenis*, *sed ne quid honoris deesset, aureis vincit*; So did our *Richard* keep a *Decorum* towards this Prisoner, binding him not in bonds of Iron, but Silver. King *Richard* having thus possessed himself of this Country sold it for ready money, (which for the managing of his intended wars against the *Turks*, he most needed) unto the *Templers*: and taking it, upon I know not what discontent, again from them, he bestowed it on *Guy of Lusignan*, the titular and miserable King of *Hierusalem*; receiving in way of exchange, the title of that lost and shipwrecked Kingdom, with which title he and some of his Successors for a time were honoured.

In the posterity of this *Guy*, this Island continued free and absolute, till the year one thousand four hundred twenty three; when *Melechella* (or *Melchiasar*) Sultan of *Ægypt*, invaded this Country, took *John* King hereof Prisoner, ransomed him for 150000 Sultanies, restored him to his Kingdom, and imposed on him and his Successors the yearly tribute of 40000 Crowns. This *John* was father to another *John*, whose two children were *Carlote* a legitimate Daughter, and *James* a bastard Son. *James* after the death of his father, dispossessed his sister *Carlote* of the Crown, by the consent and help of the Sultan of *Ægypt*; and the better to strengthen himself against all opposition, he took to wife *Catharine Cornaris*, daughter by adoption to the *Venetian Senate*: whom at his death he made his heir, if the child he went withal (having then none by her) should die without issue, as it did, not long after it was born; and the seeing the factious Nobility too head-strong to be bridled by a female authority, like a good child resigned her Crown and Scepter to the *Venetian Senate*, Anno 1473. These defended it against all claims, (paying only as tribute to the *Ægyptian*, and afterwards to the *Turkish Sultans*, the 40000 Crowns before mentioned) till the year 1570. when *Mustapha*, General of the *Turks*, wrested it from the *Venetians*, to the use of his Master *Suliman* the second, who pretended title to it as Lord of *Ægypt*. The Governor of the *Venetian* Forces at the time of this unfortunate loss was *Signior Bragadino*, who as long as hope of succours, means of resistance, or possibility of prevailing continued, with incredible valour made good the Town of *Ramagusa*, in whose defence consisted the welfare of the whole Island. At last he yielded it on honourable conditions, had they been as faithfully kept, as punctually agreed on. But *Mustapha* the *Turkish* General inviting to his Tent the principal Men of worth in the Town, caused them all to be murdered: and as for *Brigadin* himself, he commanded his ears to be cut off, his body to be head alive, and his skin stuffed with straw, to be hanged at the main yard of his Gally. The chief of the prisoners and spoils were in two tall ships, and one Gallion sent unto *Salimus*; but he never saw them. For a Noble *Cyprian* Lady, destinated to the lust of the violence whereof both the vessels and the booty in them were in part burned, in part drowned. A famous and heroic act; inferior unto none of the *Roman* *Dames*, so

much commended in their Stories, though more to be commended in a *Roman* than a *Christian* Lady. Thus having summed up the affairs of this Island from the first plantation of it, till this last said conquest, I will lay down the succession of the *Cyprian* Kings of the Noble *Lusignan* Family, in this ensuing Catalogue of

The **KINGS** of **CYPRUS**.

- 1 *Guy of Lusignan*, the titular King of *Hierusalem*, elected in the Kingdom of *Cyprus*, by *Richard* the first of *England*.
- 2 *Americus*, the brother of *Guy*.
- 3 *Hugh*, the son of *Americus*.
- 4 *Henry*, the son of *Hugh*.
- 5 *Hugh II.* son of *Henry*.
- 6 *Hugh III.* son of *Hugh II.* the second.
- 7 *John*, son of *Hugh* the third.
- 8 *Henry II.* the brother of *John*.
- 9 *Hugh IV.* son of *Guido*, the younger brother of *John*, and *Henry* the second.
- 10 *Peter*, the son of *Hugh* the fourth.
- 11 *Petrinus*, the son of *Peter*.
- 12 *James*, younger brother of *Peter*, and Uncle to *Petrinus*.
- 13 *James*, the son of *James*, made Tributary by *Melchiasar*, to the Kingdom of *Ægypt*.
- 14 *John II.* the son of *James*.
- 15 *Carlote*, sole daughter and heir of *John* the second, first married to *John* the Prince of *Portugal*, and after to *Lewis* Prince of *Savoy*; outed of her Estate and Kingdom, by
- 16 *James II.* the bastard son of *John* the second, who by a strong hand seized upon it; and by help of the *Venetians* kept it during life.
- 17 *James III.* born after the decease of his father, whom he survived not very long. After whose death, being the last of this Family, the *Venetians* possessed themselves of *Cyprus*: which they invaded with no better title, than the *Romans* had done in former times; not likely to be blest with a long fruition, of that which they had so unjustly got into their hands. But of that already.

And here is to be observed, that these *Cyprian* Kings retaining the title of *Hierusalem* (towards which they sometimes cast an eye) bestowed upon their greatest Subjects, and deservng Servitors, both titles of honour and Offices of State, belonging anciently to that Kingdom. So that we find amongst them a Prince of *Antiochia*, a Prince of *Galilee*, a Count of *Tripoli*, a Lord of *Sarea*, and a Lord of Mount *Tabor*; a Seneschal of *Hierusalem*, a Constable, Marshal, and high Chamberlain of that Kingdom also. With better reason, though no doubt with as little profit, as the Pope gives Bishopsricks and Archbishopsricks in *Greece*, or *Ægypt*. But those titular Offices are now quite extinct, though possibly some of the Titles of honour which were took from thence, may be still remaining.

But to return unto the *Turks*; having thus taken *Famagusta* and *Nicosia*, on which the whole Island did depend, all other Cities of it, and the whole by consequence, were forced to submit to the *Turkish* Tyranny.

The Noblemen, and Citizens of principal quality, either most cruelly massacred in the Sack of those Towns; or banished for ever their Native Country, as men whose living there might possibly endanger their new Conquest. But the Country people, Artificers; and Pe-

amongst themselves, and a devout invocation on the Name of God, to direct them in it. The word *Xpianoi* used in the Original, importeth somewhat of *Oracular* and *Divine* direction. And certainly it standeth with reason that it should be so. For if upon the giving of a name to *John Baptif*, there was not only a consultation had of the Friends and Mother, but the dumb Father called to advise about it; and if we use not to admit the poorest child of the Parish into the Congregation of Christ's Church by the door of *Baptif*, but by the joynt invocation of the Name of God for his blessing on it: with how much more regard of Ceremony and Solemnity, must we conceive that the whole body of Christ's people were baptized into the name of *Christians*? And there is some proof of it too, besides *probability* and *conjecture*. For *Suidas*, and before him *Johannes Antiochenus*, an old *Cosmographer* do expressly say, that in the days of *Claudius Caesar*, ten years after the *Ascension* of our Lord and Saviour, *Eudius* received Episcopall consecration, and was made Patriarch of *Antioch* the Great in *Syria*, succeeding immediately to *St. Peter*: then addeth, that at that time the *Disciples* were first called *Christians*. Τὴν δὲν ἑταίρειαν τοὺς πρώτους ποικίλους ὁ δόξας, ὡς διδόντες αὐτῶν τὸ ὄνομα Χριστοῦ, &c. i. e. *Eudius* their Bishop calling them to a Solemn Assembly, and imposing this new name upon them, whereas before they were called *Nazarites* and *Galileans*. A people so hated by the *Heathens*, that they could not so slander them from the first beginning. For as concerning this *Self* we know that it is every where spoken against, said the *Jews* of *Rome* to the Apostle, *Acti* 28, 22. *Tacitus* a *Roman*, but a *Gentile*, goes yet further with them, calling them *Homines per fugitios invidios*, & *novissima meritis exempla*: the calumny in this time being thorough and general, that at their private meetings they devoted Infants, and had carnal company with their Mothers and Sisters. Which defamations notwithstanding, they grew in few years to so great numbers, that they were a terror to their Enemies; though grievously afflicted, tortured, and put to several kinds of death, under the ten *Famous Persecutions*, raised against them, by *Nero*, Anno 67, 2 *Domitian*, Anno 96, 3 *Trajanus*, Anno 110, 4 *Marcus Antoninus*, Anno 167, 5 *Severus*, Anno 195, 6 *Maximinus*, Anno 237, 7 *Decius*, Anno 250, 8 *Valerianus*, Anno 259, 9 *Aurélianus*, Anno 278, 10 By *Dioclesianus*, Anno 293. All, but this last especially, to extremely raging, that (as *St. Hieron* writeth in one of his Epistles) that there martyred 5000 for every day in the year, except the first of *January*, on which they used not to shed blood. But *Sanguis Martyrum*, *Semen Ecclesie*. This little grain of Mustard-seed, sowed by God's own hand, and watered by the blood of so many holy men, grew to great a Tree, that the branches of it spread themselves over all the world; and got such footing even in the *Roman Army* it self, (Men commonly not of the strictest kind of Religion) that when *Julian* the Apostate had vomited out his Soul, with *Verbis* tandem *Galilee*, they elected *Jovinian*, though a *Christian*, for his Successor, with this acclamation, *Christiani omnes sumus*. We are also *Christians*. But see how the baptizing of God's people by the name of *Christians*, in the City of *Antioch*, hath drawn me out of my way, I return again, both to the place, and to the Author. In whose evidence, besides what doth concern the imposition of the name of *Christian*, upon the body of the faithful, we have a testimony for *St. Peter's* being Bishop of *Antioch*, the first Bishop thereof (of the Church of the *Jews* therein at least) as is said positively by *Engelb* in his *Chronology*, *St. Hieron* in his Catalogue of Ecclesiastical Writers, *St. Chrysostom* in his *Homilie* de translatione *Ignatii*, *Theodore* Dialog. 1. *St. Gregory* Epist. lib. 6. cap. 37. and before any of them by *Origen*, in his sixta

Homily on *St. Luke*. With reference whereunto, and in respect that *Antioch* was accounted always the principal City of the East-parts of the *Roman Empire* (the *Presbiter* of the East for the most part residing in it) the Jurisdiction hereof in the first Ages of Christianity, had Jurisdiction over all the Churches in the East; as far as the bounds of that Empire did extend that way. To which by *Constantine* the Great the Provinces of *Cilicia* and *Phoenicia*, with those of *Mesopotamia* and *Osfroene* were after added, containing 15 *Roman* Provinces, or the whole *Dioecesis* of the Orient. And though by the subfracting of the Churches of *Palestine*, and the decay of *Christianity* in these parts by the Conquests of the *Turks* and *Saracens*, the Jurisdiction of this Patriarch hath been very much lessened; yet *William* of *Tyre*, who flourished in the year 1130. reciteth the names of 13 *Archiepiscopals*, 21 *Metropolitans*, and 127 *Episcopals* Sees, yielding obedience in his time to the See of *Antioch*. Since which that number is much diminished, *Mohometism* more and more increasing, and *Christianity* divided into *Sects* and *Factions*; inasmuch that of three sorts of *Christians* living in these Countries, viz. *The Maronites*, *Jacobites*, and the *Melchites*, only the *Melchites* are subordinate to the Church of *Antioch*, the others having Patriarchs of their own Religion.

And first for the *Melchites*, who are indeed the true and proper Members of the Church of *Antioch*, and the greatest body of *Christians* in all the East; they are so named in way of scorn, by the *Jacobite* and *Maronite* *Schismatics*, supposing without just cause from their Communion. The name derived from *Melchi*, signifying in the *Syriack* Language a King or Emperor; because adhering to their Primate, they followed the Canons and Decisions of preceding Councils, ratified by authority of the Emperor *Leo*, by whom subscription was required to the Acts thereof: and were in that respect (as we use to say) of the Kings Religion. Conform in Points of Doctrine to the Church of *Greece*, but that they celebrate Divine Service as solemnly on the *Saturday*, as upon the *Sunday*: Subject to the true and Original Patriarch, who since the destruction of *Antioch* doth reside in *Damascus*; and on no terms acknowledging the Authority of the Popes of *Rome*.

Next for the *Maronites*, they derive that name, either from *Maron*, one of the principal Villages where they first inhabited; or from the Monastery of *St. Maron*, mentioned in the first Act of the Council of *Constantinople* holden under *Mennas*, the Monks of which called *Maronites*, were the head of their Sect. Some Points they hold, in which they differ from all *Orthodox Christians*; others in which they differ only from the Church of *Rome*. Of the first sort, 1 That the Holy Ghost proceedeth from the Father only, without relation to the Son. 2 That the Souls of men were created all together at the first beginning. 3 That male Children are not to be baptized together, but at several times by one and one. 4 That *Heretics* returning to the Church are to be re-baptized. 5 That the Child is made unclean by the touch of his Mother till her Purification; and therefore not baptizing Children till that time be past, which after the birth of a Male-child must be forty days, of a Female eighty. 6 That the *Eucharist* is to be given to Children presently after Baptism. 7 That the fourth Marriage is utterly unlawful. 8 That the Father may dissolve the Marriage of his Son or Daughter. 9 That young men are not to be ordained Priests or Deacons, except they be married. 10 That nothing strangled, or of blood may be eaten by *Christians*. 11 That Women in their Monthly courses are not to be admitted to the *Eucharist*, or to come into the Church. 12 And finally (which was indeed their first

diffi-

discrimination from the *Orthodox Christians*) that there was but one will and action in *Christ*; the Factors of which opinion had the name of *Monoblastes*. Of the last kind, 1 That the Sacrament of the Lords Supper was to be administered in both kinds. 2 And in Leavened bread. 3 That bread to be broken to the Communicants (and not each man to have his Wafer to himself) according to the first Institution. 4 Not refusing that Sacrament. 5 Nor carrying any part of the consecrated Elements to sick persons in danger of death. 6 That Marriage is nothing inferior to the single life. 7 That no man entrench the Kingdom of Heaven till the General Judgment. 8 That the *Saturday*, or old *Sabbath* is not to be fasted. 9 Nor the Sacrament upon days of fasting to be administered till the Evening. They withdrew themselves from the See of *Antioch*, and set up a Patriarch of theirs own, many ages since (but the certain time thereof I find not) conferring on him for the greater credit of their Schism, the honourable title of the Patriarch of *Antioch*. His name perpetually to be *Peter*, as the undoubted Successor of that Apostle in the See thereof Disperfed about the furs and branches of Mount *Libanus*, where they have many Townships and scattered Villages, of which four are reported to retain in their common speech the true ancient *Syriack*; that is to say, 1 *Eden*, a small Village, but a Bishops See, by the *Turks* called *Acherah*, 2 *Hatchath*, 3 *Sherry*, 4 *Bolos*, or *Bloufa*, little superior to the rest in bigness or beauty, but made the seat of their Patriarch, when he comes amongst them. At such time as the Western *Christians* were possessed of these parts, they submitted to the Church of *Rome*; but upon their expulsion by the *Turks* and *Saracens*, they returned again to the obedience of their own Patriarch, on whom they have ever since depended. His residence for the most part at *Tripolis*, a chief Town of *Syria*; but when he came to visit his Churches, and take an account of his suffragan Bishops (who are nine in number) then at *Bloufa*, as is said before. Wrote to the Papacy again by *John Baptif* a Jesuite, in the time of Pope *Gregory* the thirteenth, who sent them a Catechism from *Rome* Printed in the *Arabian* Language (which is generally spoken by them) for their instruction in the Rudiments of that Religion; yet so that their Patriarch still retains his former power, and the Priests still officiate by the old Liturgy of those Churches, in the *Syriack* tongue. So that this reconciliation, upon the matter, is but a matter of complement on the one side, and ostentation on the other; without any increase of Power or Patrimony to the Pope at all. And for the *Jacobites*, though dispersed in many places of this Country; yet since they are more intirely settled in *Mesopotamia*, where their Patriarch also hath his abode or residence, we shall there speak of them.

The Language vulgarly here spoken is the *Arabick* Tongue, continued here ever since the subjugation of these Countries by the *Saracens*. But anciently they spake the *Syriack* and *Phoenician* Languages. Of which, the first (for of the other we shall speak when we come to *Phoenicia*) was the very same with the *Chaldaean*, (as the learned *Brewood* hath observed) either originally so, or else received by them when first conquered by the *Babylonians*. In which respect the *Jews*, when they returned home from their long Captivity, gave to the Language which they brought with them, the name of *Syriack*, being a compound of the *Hebrew* and *Chaldaean* tongues; *Chaldaean* for a great part of it, as to the substance of the words: but *Hebrew* as to the notation of Points, Conjunctions, Affixes, and other properties of their former and original speech. And of this more hereafter also, when we come to *Palestine*. But whatsoever their language was in

former time, it is now so overtopped by the *Arabick*, that it is spoken in four Villages of the *Maronites* only in all these Countries; the *Arabick* being generally used ill all the rest, as was said before.

Principal Rivers of these parts are, 1 *Chorasan*, called *Chisbon* by the *Hebreus*, which hath its fountain in *Palestine*; but his fall in *Phoenicia*, not far from Mount *Car-mel*. 2 *Orontes*, now called *Saladin*, and by some Writers *Jordan* the 1st, ariseth out of the hills called *Pieria*, not far from Mount *Libanus*; and after a while running nader the ground, breaketh forth again about *Amamia*, and passing by the great City of *Antioch*, falleth into the Sea not far from it. It was first called *Tiphon*, and took this name from one *Orontes*, who built first the Bridge over it, as we find in *Strabo*. 3 *Eleutherus*, which riseth out of some part of *Libanus*, and glideth with a speedy course thorow a strangely intricate Channel, into the *Mediterranean* Sea: Cully of the death of the Emperor *Fredrick Barbarossa*, who falling from his horse as he pursued the *Infidels*, and oppressed with the weight of his Armour, was here drowned, and lyeth buried at *Tyre*. It is now called *Casmer*, 4 *Singus*, by whom said to be called *Marfus* also, which arising in the mountainous parts of *Comagene*, and passing by the City of *Aleppo*, falleth into the *Euphrates*. 5 *Euphrates*, the most famous River of the East; of which more hereafter.

Chief Mountains of it, 1 *Carmel*, which being properly of *Phoenicia*, we shall there speak of. 2 *Pieria*, out of which the River *Orontes* hath its first Origin. 3 *Casius*, not far from *Antioch*, said to be four miles high perpendicularly. 4 *Libanus*, famous for its multitude of Cedars growing thereupon; affording materials unto *Solonon* for the holy Temple. Besides which it affordeth such store of *Frankincense*, that some derived the name from *Albas*, signifying *Frankincense* in the *Greek*; and so replenished with Honey falling from the Heavens; and hanging on the Boughs of the Trees; that the Husbandmen used to sing (as *Galen* telleth us) that God rained honey; and yearly filled their Pots and Vessels with the sweets thereof. This the most famous and greatest Hill of all these parts, extending in length 150 miles, that is to say, from *Sidon*, a City of *Phoenicia*, to *Suwayna*, one of the Cities of *Carlo-Syria*; and taking seven hundred miles in compass. Inhabited wholly in a manner by the *Maronite* *Christians*, who to keep that dwelling to themselves without the intermixture of *Mohometans*, do yearly pay to the Great *Turk* 15000 *Sultanies* a man, for every one above twelve years of Age; each *Sultany* being reckoned at seven fillings & six pence of our money. And yet those *Maronites*, though intire, without intermixture are held to be the smallest *Sect*, for numbers, in all the East; not estimated to exceed twelve thousand households, by reason of the indispotion of this Mountain, in most places unfit for habitation. For besides the craggy cliffs and steepness of it, which makes many parts hereof to be inaccessible; the higher Ridges of it are in a manner perpetually covered with snow, not melted in so hot a Climate at the nearest approaches of the Sun. And thence no doubt it took this name; the word *Liban*, in the *Hebrew* and *Phoenician* Language, signifying *White*, of *Whiteness*; even as from the like *whiteness* of snow, the highest part of the *Pyrenean* hills had the name of *Camus*; and that perpetual Ridge of Mountains, which parts Italy from *France* and *Germany*, had the name of *Alpes*. 5 *Anti-Libanus*, opposite to the former; and for that so called, a rich, but little Valley only being interposed; out of which Valley the *Orontes* hath its Spring or Fountain, the hill *Pieria* there beginning to advance it self. Some make but one Mountain of them both, divided into two great Ledges or Chains of Hills. Of which the main body

lying

lying towards the North, hath the name of *Libanus*; that on the South, being but a branch or exension of it, called *Anti-Libanus*. And to this the Scripture gives some hint, in which both pass for one, the name of *Lebanon*.

The whole Country was anciently divided into these six parts, viz. 1 *Phœnicia*. 2 *Palestine*. 3 *Syria* specially so called. 4 *Coenagene*. 5 *Palmyrene*. And 6 *Celestia-Syria*, or *Syria Coena*. But *Palestine*, coming under a more distinct consideration, we shall now speak only of the rest.

1 PHOENICIA.

PHOENICIA is bounded on the East and South, with *Palestine*; on the North, with *Syria*, properly and specially so called; on the West, with the *Mediterranean Sea*. So called by the *Grecians*, from the abundance of *Palm-trees* therein growing, the word *phœnix* in that language signifying a *Palm*. And for a further proof hereof, (for I know there are other *Etymons* and Originations pretended for it) the *Palm* was anciently the special *Cognisance* or Ensign of this Country; as the *Olive-branch*, and *Corn of Spain*, the *Elephant of Africa*, the *Camel of Arabia*, and the *Crocodile of Egypt*, being peculiar to those Countries. And in an old *Coin* of the Emperor *Vespasian*'s, stamped for a memorial of his conquest of *Judea*, the Impress is a Woman sitting in a sad and melancholic posture, at the back of *Palm-trees*, with these two words, *Judea Capta*, inscribed thereon; in which, no question may be made, but that the desolate Woman signifieth the Land of *Judea*, and the *Palm Phœnicia*; *Phœnicia* being seated immediately on the North, at the back of *Jewry*.

But it was thus first called by the *Græcians* only, the *Latins* and other People after them taking up that name. For by themselves, and the people of *Israel* their next Neighbours, they are called *Canaanites*, or the Posterity of *Canaan*, five of whose sons, viz. *Zidon*, *Heth*, *Avdai*, *Senari*, and *Chamath*, being planted here: the other six inhabiting more towards the South and East, in the Land of *Palestine*. For further evidence hereof we may add these reasons; first, that the same Woman which in *St. Matthew*'s Gospel, Chap. 15. 22. is named a *Canaanite*, is by *St. Mark*, Chap. 7. 26. called a *Syro-Phœnician*. Secondly, where mention is made in the Book of *Josueh*, of the Kings of *Canaan*; the *Septuagint* (who very well understood the History and Language of their Country) call them *Βασιλεις των φοινικων*, or the Kings of *Phœnicia*. Thirdly, the *Pœni* or *Carthaginians*, being beyond all dispute a *Tyrian* or *Phœnician* Colony, when they were asked any thing of their *Original*, would answer that they were *Chamei*; meaning (as *St. Augustine* that Countryman doth expound their words) that they were Originally *Canaanites*, of the flock of *Canaan*. And lastly, from the language of it, which was anciently the old *Hebrew*, *Canaanish*, or the Language of *Canaan*; spoken both here and in *Palestine* also, before that Country was possessed by the House of *Jacob*: as appears plainly by those names, by which the places and Cities of *Canaan* were called, when and before the *Israelites* came first to dwell amongst them, which are merely *Hebrew*. And so much as to the Language is acknowledged by *Bochartus* also, who in the entrance of his Book inscribed *Canaan*, declares what profit may ensue from that undertaking to the *Hebrew* Tongue; *Cujus Phœnicia lingua dialecta fuit*, of which the *Phœnician* language was a dialect only.

The Country of it self not great, extended in a good length, from the further side of Mount *Carmel*, where it joins with *Palestine*, to the River *Volanus* on the North,

by which parted from *Syria*: but which so narrow, that it is little more than a bare Sea-coast, and therefore very rightly called *Terræ unguisfina* by a modern Writer. Rich rather by the benefit and increase of trade (to which no Nation under Heaven hath been more addicted) than by the natural commodities which the land afforded: yet for the quantity thereof, no place could be more plentifully furnished with *Oyl*, *Wheat*, and the best sort of *Balm*, and most excellent *Honey*; the lower part hereof being designed for the feast of *Asaph*, of whom *Moses* prophesied, *Dent. 33. 24.* that he should dip his foot in *Oyl*. So that the Country generally, was well-conditioned, lovely to look upon, populous, and adorned with more beautiful Cities, than such a span of earth could be thought to hold. Of which thus writeth *Ammianus*, *Acrois monti Libano Phœnicia Regio, plena gratiarum & omnifatis, urbium decorata magnis & pulchris, &c.* It falling from Mount *Libanus*, lyeth the Country of *Phœnicia*, full of all graces and elegancies, adorned with great and beautiful Cities, of which the most renowned for the fertility of their soil, and the fame of their achievements, are *Tyre*, *Sidon*, *Berytus*, &c.

The People anciently, by reason of their *Maritime* situation, were great *Adventurers* at Sea, trading in almost all the Ports of the then known World, and sending more Colonies abroad upon foreign Plantations than any Nations in the Earth. An active and ingenious people, laid to have been the first *Navigators*, the first builders of Ships, the first inventors of Letters, (of which hereafter more on some other occasion) and the first Authors of *Astrimerick*, the first that brought *Astronomy* to an Art or Method, and the first makers of *Glasses*. Defamed in holy Scripture for their grofs *Idolatry*, by which they laid a stumbling-block at the feet of the *Israelites*; (*Arab* (or *Assure*) the Goddess of the *Sidonians*; but whether *Juno*, *Venus*, or some other, I dispute not here) being so highly prized amongst them, that *Solomon* himself, when he fell from God, made this one of his Idols. One yearly, as *Eusebius* telleth us, they sacrificed some of their Sons to *Saturn*, whom in their Language they called *Moloch*; and in the inmost retreats of *Libanus* had a Temple to *Venus*, defiled with the practice of most filthy lutes, intemperately using the natural Sex, and most unreasonably abusing their own. Nor could the purity and piety of the *Christian* Faith prevail so far, as to extinguish these ungodly rites, till *Constantine* finally destroyed both the Temples and Idols, and left not any thing remaining of them, but the flame and infamy. *St. Augustine* addeth, that they did prostitute their Daughters unto *Venus*, before they married them: and it is most likely to be true. For the *Phœnicians* and *Cyprians* being so near neighbours, and subject for a time to the same Princes also, could not but impart their impure Rites and Ceremonies unto one another.

Rivers of note there can be none in so narrow a Region but what are common unto others, and shall there be spoken of. Most proper unto this is the River of *Adonis* (now called *Canis*), so named most probably from *Adonis* the Darling of *Venus*, whose Rites are here performed with as much solemnity, as they be in *Cyprus*. His Obsequies celebrated yearly in the month of *June*, with great howlings and lamentations, *Lucian* fabling that the River usually streameth blood upon that Solemnity; (as if *Adonis* were newly wounded in the Mountains of *Libanus*) to give the better colour to their Superstitions. But the truth is, that this redness of the water ariseth only from the Winds; which at that time of the year blowing very vehemently, do thereby carry down the stream a great quantity of *Minium* or red Earth, from the sides of those hills, wherewith the waters are discoloured.

discoloured. Such use can *Satan* make of a natural Accident, to blind the eyes and captivate the undisciplined of bested People.

Chief Mountains of this Country are, 1 *Libanus*, spoken of before, which hath here its first advance or rising. 2 *Carmel*, which *Proton* placeth in this Country, of which it is the utmost part upon the South, where it joyneth with *Palestine*. Walked on the North-side with the Brook *Chifon*, on the West with the *Mediterranean Sea*; steep of ascent, and of indifferent altitude; abounding with several sorts of Fruits, Olives, and Vines in good plenty, and stored with Herbs both medicinal and sweet of smell. The Retreat sometimes of *Elías*, when he fled from *Jezabel*, whose Habitation here, after his decease, was converted to a *Jewish* Synagogue. To this place (being then in the possession of the Kings of *Israel*) did that Prophet ascribe the Priests of *Baal*; and having by a miraculous Experiment confuted their *Idolatrous* follies, caused them to be cut in pieces on the Banks of the River *Chifon* near adjoining to it. Upon this visible declaring of the Power and Presence of the Almighty, the *Gentiles* grew persuaded that *Oracles Carmelus*. Where speaking of *Vespasian*, who had then newly took upon him the Imperial Dignity, he addeth, *Apud Judeam Carmeli Dei Oracula consistentem ita confirmaverunt, &c.* That consulting in *Judea* with the Oracle of the God *Carmelus*, he was assured that whatsoever he undertook should succeed well with him. In after-times the Order of the *Priests Carmelites*, as Successors unto the Children of the Prophets left here by *Elijah*, had their names from hence: a Cave or Chapel, said to have been the lurking place of that Holy Prophet, in the time of his troubles.

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Ptolemais*, now nothing but a ruin of what it hath been, but formerly of great strength and consequence. Named *Ace* at the first, a Refuge for the *Persian* Kings in their Wars against *Aegypt*: Enlarged, or rather new built by *Proton*, the first of that Race, by whom called *Ptolemais*, which name still continued, though *Claudius Cesar* planting there a *Roman* Colony, would fain have had it called *Colonia Claudia*. After the Conquest of it by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Omer* the great Caliph, it returned towards its first name, and was called *Acon*, or *Acre*: both names still remaining in vulgar speech, as that of *Ptolemais* amongst *Latin* Writers. Situate in the flourish of it on a flat or level, in the form of a triangular Shield; on two sides neighboured by the Sea, which comes up close to it; on the third looking towards the *Champaign*: environed with a double Wall, to each Wall a Ditch, fortified on the outside with Towers and Bulwarks; within the Walls so strongly fortified, as if the whole Town had been a Conjunction of Fortresses, and not ordained for private dwellings. In the midst of the City was one Tower of great strength and beauty, which had sometimes been the Temple of *Belzebub*, and was therefore called the *Castle of Elias*; like the *Pharos of Egypt*, to give comfort and direction in the night to such Mariners as made towards this Port. Took from the *Christians* by the *Saracens* in the time of *Omer*, and from them wrested by the *Turks* in the time of *Syria*. It became *Christian* again Anno 1004. in the Reign of *Baldwin* the first, Brother of the famous *Gudfrey of Bouillon*, and second King of *Hierusalem*, by the help of the *Genoese*; who for their pains had the third part of the City assigned unto them. Recovered by *Saladine* to the *Turks*, and from him taken again by

the *Western Christians*, under the conduct of *Philip of France*, and *Richard* the first of *England*, Anno 1191. It continued in the possession of the Kings of *Hierusalem*, *Malta* till the year 1291. When besieged by an Army of an hundred and fifty thousand *Turks*, it was forced to yield, though lost by inches; and the *Turks* fearing left the *Christians* would again attempt it, razed it to the ground, demolishing the large Walls and Arches of it, which lie like mally Rocks on their old Foundations Memorable in those times for the brave service here done by the *Christians* of the Western parts, of which done more renowned than those of our *Richard* the first, and *Edward* the first. This latter here treacherously wounded by an Infidel, with a poysoned Knife, the vehemence whereof could by no means be allayed, till his most virtuous Wife (herein proposing a most rare Example of conjugal affection) sucked it out with her mouth. And for the former, he became so terrible and redoubted among the *Turks*, that when their Children began to cry, they would say, *Peace*, *King Richard is coming*; and when their Horses started, they would spur them, saying, *What you fadest, do you think that King Richard is here?* By the *Mamelukes*, when Lords of *Syria*, it was patched together, and made fit for habitation rather than defence: not peopled by above 300 Inhabitants, nor would it have so many, but for the Haven adjoining; which though a small Bay, and of very ill anchorage, is much frequented by the Merchants of our Western World, trading here for their Cotton Wools; with which the neighbouring Country is abundantly furnished. I have said the longer in this place, by reason of the great fame and importance of it, as being the last Hold which the *Christians* had of all their Conquests; with the loss whereof, they laid aside all thoughts of those *Holy Wars*. 2 *Tyre*, seated in a rocky Island, about seven fathoms from the main Land; well built, and circular of form, as well by Art as Nature impregnablely fortified. A Colony of the *Sidonians*, and therefore by the Prophet *Isa. ch. 23. v. 12.* called the *Dagbiter of Sidon*: but by them built upon an high Hill, the Ruins whereof, by the name of *Palatyrus*, or old *Tyre*, are remaining still. Removed unto the Islands by *Agassius* King of the *Phœnicians*, and by him named *Sor*, or *Tyros*, from the rocky situation of it (as that word importeth.) Mollified by the *Greeks* to *Tyrrus*, and from them taken by the *Latins*, though known to them also by the name of *Sarra* (the *Tyrian Purple* being by *Virgil*, *Ossurn*:) and now at last returned to its first original name, vulgarly at this time called *Sur*. A City in elder times of great Trade and Wealth: as the Prophet *Isa. ch. 27. v. 8.* calling the Merchants thereof *Princes*, and his Chapter the *Nobles of the World*. Excelling all others of those times both for Learning and Manufactures, specially for the dying of *Purple*, first here invented; and that as *Julius Pollux* said, by a very accident; the Dog of *Hercules* (or if not his, some Dog of other) whose lips by eating of the Fish called *Cochylis*, or *Pharura*, had been made of that colour. Grown to great pride, by reason of the Wealth and Pleasures, her destruction was fore-signified by the holy Prophets, accomplished in God's own time by *Nebuchadnezzar*; who with great industry and toil joynted it to the Continent. But his Works being demolished by the fury of the Sea, and the labour of the *Tyrians*, it was after seventy years again re-edified; and having flourished after that for two hundred years, by *Alexander* the Great was again demolished, to whose indefatigable perseverance nothing was impossible. For having filled the Channel with the

Stones and Rubbish of old Tyre, and rammed them in with huge Beams brought from Libanus, he made a passage for his Army; and having once approached the Walls, so over-topped them with Towers and Frames of Timber, that at last he made himself Master of it, putting to the Sword all such as resisted, and causing two thousand of them to be hanged in cold blood, all along the shore, for a terror to others. This Rendition of the Town was divided by the *Sooth-Tellers*; who followed the Camp of Alexander, upon a dream which he had not long before; For dreaming that he had disported himself with *Satyrs*, the Diviners only making of one word two, found that *Σατυρ* was no more than *Σα Τυρ*, that is, *The Tyre*; and it happened accordingly. Recovering once again both her Riches and Beauties, she became a Confederated of the Romans in the growth of their Fortunes; endowed by them with the Privileges of their City, for her great fidelity. Made in the best times of Christianity the Metropolis for the Provinces of Phœnicia, the Bishop hereof having under him fourteen Suffragan Bishops. Subjected to the Saracens in the year fix hundred thirty and six, and having groaned under that yoke for the space of four hundred eighty and eight years, was at the last regained by *Gharimund* Patriarch of Hierusalem, in the Reign of the second Baldwin, the Venetians contributing their assistance to it, Anno 1124. In vain attempted afterwards by victorious Saladin; but finally brought under the Turkish thralldom, Anno 1289, as it still continueth. Now nothing but an heap of Ruins; but the very Ruins of it so fair a Prospect, as striketh both pity and amazement to the beholders, shewing them an exemplary pattern of our humane frailty. Subject at the present to the Emir or Prince of Sidon, and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, one of the best of the Levant, but of no great trading. 3 *Sarepta*, by the Hebrews called *Sarphat*, situate on the Sea-coast betwixt Tyre and Sidon. Memorable in Holy Writ for the Miracle here performed by the Prophet *Elijah*, in raising the poor Widows Son; in Heathen Writers for the purple Wines, little inferior unto those of *Falerum* in Italy, or Chios in Greece: of which thus the Poet;

*Vina nubi non sunt Gazetice, Chii, Falerina,
Quæque Sarcapæo palmite missa bibas.*

In English thus;

Have no Chian or Falerian Wines,
Nor those of Gazæ or Sarcapæi Vines.

4 *Sidon*, the ancientest City of all Phœnicia, and the most Northern of all those which were assigned for the Portion of the Sons of *Affir*; beyond which the Country of Phœnicia having been hitherto nothing but a bare Sea-coast, beginneth to open towards the East in a fine rich Valley, having *Libanus* upon the North, and the *Anti-Libanus* on the South; once closed up from the rest of Syria with a very strong Wall, long since demolished. It was so called from *Zidon*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, who first planted here; not (as some say) from *Sida* the Daughter of *Belus*, once a King hereof; this City being mentioned in the Book of *Ysaias*, when no such *Belus* was in being. Situate in a fertile and delightful Soil, defended with the Sea on one side, and on the other by the Mountains lying betwixt it, and *Libanus*, from whence descended those many Springs with which they watered and enriched their most pleasant Orchards. The Inhabitants hereof are said to be the first makers of *Chrystal Glasses*, the Materials of the Work brought hither from the Sands of a River running not far from *Prolemais*; and only made fusible in this City. And from hence *Solomon* and *Zorobabel* had their principal Work-men, both for Stone and Timber, in

their several Buildings of the Temple. The People hereof so flourishing in Arts and Trades, that the Prophet *Zacharias*, chap. 9. v. 2. calleth them the wife *Sidonians*. A City which at several times was both the Mother and Daughter of Tyre; the Mother of it in the times of *Heumenism*, Tyre being a Colony of this People; and the Daughter of it when instructed in the Christian Faith, acknowledging the Church of Tyre for its Mother-Church. The City in those times very strong both by Art and Nature, having on the North-side a Fort or Citadel mounted on an inaccessible Rock, and environed on all sides by the Sea; which when it was brought under the command of the Western Christians, was held by the Order of the *Dutch Knights*; and another on the South-side of the Port, which the Templars guarded. Won by the Turks, with the rest of this Country, from the Christians, and ruined by those often interchanges of Fortune, it only sheweth now some marks of the ancient greatness; the present *Sidon* standing somewhat West of the old, and having little worth a particular Description, in respect of what it was in her ancient Glories. The Haven at this time decayed, or serving at the best for Gallies; with a poor Blockhouse, rather for show than service: the Walls of no great strength, and as little beauty, and the Buildings ordinary; but that the Mosque, the *Bannia* of Bathes, and the *Cane* for Merchants, are somewhat fairer than the rest: yet gives a Title at this time to the Emir of Sidon, one of the greatest Princes of all this Country, of whom more hereafter. 5 *Berytus*, originally called *Gerys*, from *Gerys* the fifth Son of *Canaan*, took this new name from *Berith*, a Phœnician Idol here worshipped; and now called *Barnis*. Destroyed by *Tyrion* in the Wars of the Syrians against the Jews, it was re-edified by the Romans, by whom made a Colony, and honoured with the Privileges of the City of Rome. By *Herod* and *Agrippa* Kings of the Jews, much adorned and beautified; and of no mean esteem in the time of the Christians, when made an Episcopal See under the Metropolis of Tyre. Being a place of no great strength, nor aimed at by every new Invader, it hath sped better than the rest of these Cities (though stronger than this) retaining still her being, though not all her beauties; well stored with Merchandise, and well frequented by the Merchant. Nigh to this Town is a fair and fruitful Valley, which they call *St. Georges*, in which there is a Castle, and in that an Oratory of the same name also: All sacred to *St. George* the Martyr, who hereabouts is fabled to have killed the Dragon, and thereby delivered a Kings Daughter; but what Kings I know not, nor they neither. 6 *Biblis*, sometimes the Habitation of *Hevi*, the fourth Son of *Canaan*, and then called *Heva*. Afterwards made the Regal Seat of *Cinyras*, Father and Grandfather of *Adonis* by his Daughter *Myrrha*; whereof we have already spoken when we were in Cyprus. Of such esteem in the Primitive Times of Christianity, that it was made a Bishops See; desolate and of no repute since it lost that honour, and became thrall unto the Turks. 7 *Ortobofa*, called also *Anaradus*, because opposite to *Aradus*, another old City of this Tract; but in after-Ages called *Toriosa*, and by that name well known in the Histories of the Holy Wars, undertaken by the Western Christians: To whom it made such stout and notable resistance, that though besieged on all sides with united Forces (the whole Army formerly divided, sitting down before it) yet after three Months hard sieges, they were fain to leave the Town behind them, and content themselves with spoiling the adjoining Country. 8 *Tripolis*, seated in a rich and delightful Plain, most fruitful

fruitful than can be imagined; one of which Fruits they called by the name of *Ammeza Franchi*, i. e. *Kill Frank*, because the Western Christians whom they call by the name of *Franks*, died in great numbers by the intemperate eating of them. A Valley which is said to have yielded yearly to the Counts of *Tripolis* no less than two millions from the Sea, at the foot of Mount *Libanus*; ties, that is to say, *Tyris*, *Sidon*, and *Aradus*. Of no great note among the Romans, for ought I can find, till bishop of Tyre in the Primitive times. But thriving by the Western Christians warred in the Holy Land: When chieftly, or Capital Cities for the four Quarters of their *Comagene*, or *Mesopotamia*, *Antioch* for Syria, and this the custody of *Raymond* Earl of *Tholouse* in France; Title of Earls of *Tripolis*. A City, which I know not by what good hap, hath sped better than any of those parts, retaining still as much in strength and beauty as ever it had, if not grown greater by the ruin of all the rest. Situate two miles from the Sea, as before is said; but not above half a mile from the Haven, which lieth upon the West side of it: Compelled with a Wall, and fortified with seven Towers, of which the fourth is commonly called the Tower of Love, because built by a Turkish Woman, for which he had forfeited his life, if not thus redeemed it. Before the Haven is an ill-neighbour and nearer to it; by which every day growth greater which faith it shall be quite soaked: On both sides of it, and Shops to sell them: the way from hence unto the City, having on both sides very pleasant Gardens, The Town it self stretched out in Length from South Libanus, conveying a Brook into the Streets, and many which, and in those towards the Haven, and on other sides of the Town, the Inhabitants keep great flocks of Silk-worms, selling their Silks raw unto the *Italians*, and buying them again of them in the Stuff or Manufacture. Their Buildings generally low, and the Streets fair and open. Over the Brook, at the East-side of the City, are built two Bridges; and on the South-side a strong Castle mounted on an Hill, built by the French for the Grand Signior with two hundred *Garnizaries*. At this time it is looked on as the Metropolis or chief City of Phœnicia, honoured with the residence of the Patriarch of the Maronites, for the most part dwelling in of *Scanderone*, or *Alexandrette*, removed thither some forty years ago by the Turkish appointment; that Haven lying unenclosed, and more open to Pirates.

That the Phœnicians were descended of the Sons of *Canaan*, hath been proved already. And being descended of them, by the Chiefs of their Families, whom they honoured (as most Nations did) with the Title of Kings. But by *Ysaias*, *Agenor* a stout and prudent man, one

of those many Kings, which commanded in those parts of the Country, seeing how impossible it was to relict had his Breeding, to make good the Sea-coasts of his Country; in which the *Philystines*, who interposed upon thole Coasts betwixt him and *Aegypt*, concurred also with him. By which alliance, and by the fortifying of Cities of this Country that were then in being, he did not only preserve his own Estate from the present danger, but left it so allured to the Kings succeeding, that neither *Solonon*, nor *David*, nor any of the Kings of *Israel*, durst attempt upon them. To *Agenor* succeeded his Son *Phœnix*, (*Cadmus*, his elder Brother, going into Greece in search of his Sister *Europa*, ravished by *Jupiter*, where he built *Thebes*, and therein reigned till his death) from whom, as some conceive, this Country had the name of *Phœnicia*. And though I have declared myself for another reason of this name, which I like much better; yet I shall rather yield to this, or to any other, than to that of *Bocharus*, who will have it derived from *Ben-Anak*, or the Sons of *Anak*, (as if the old Phœnicians were such Giantly men) which must first be contracted in *Bemach*, then by the *Grecians* turned ed and extorted *Phœnix*. Such far-fetched notions touching the first Originals of Names and Nations, where there is not very pregnant Reason to persuade me otherwise, than strain my self so far for a for what cause forever they were named *Phœnicians*. But tain it is, they were a very active and industrious people, trading in most parts of the *Mediterranean*, and *Bochar*, *Nola* in Italy, *Gades* in Spain; *Orica*, *Lepus*, in *Carthage* in *Africk*, were of their foundation. Nay, if we may believe *Bocharus*, there was no Island or Sea-coast in the *Mediterranean*, or on the *Cantabrian*, *Gallick*, or *British* Ocean, wherein they did not keep some Factory, or erect some Colony. What Kings succeeded *Phœnix* in a constant and continued course, I can no where find. Most like it is, they were not under the command of any one Prince; and that besides the Kings of *Sidon*, where *Agenor* reigned, there were some others who called themselves Kings of Phœnicia also, as well *Pigmalion*, who had their Regal Seat at *Biblis*, and Lord gave some part of that Isle to *Tencar*, as is said before. There is also found mention of one *Phœnix*, a Phœnician term him none, till the subjugation of this Country by the *Babylonians*; *Taramesset*, *Tennes*, and *Strato*, mentioned in succeeding times, being Tributaries to the *Perfians*, and no absolute Princes. Whether it were that the that the Kings thereof did nothing to preserve their memory, I am not able to determine. Certain it is, that the Kings of Tyre came in a short time to be of very great repute, and to possess themselves of the Coasts of Syria and Phœnicia, and a great part of Cyprus; whereby, grew rich and powerful, and of great consideration in Affairs of the World. The Names and History of whom I shall here subjoin, in this ensuing Catalogue of

THE KINGS OF TYRE.

A. M.

1 Abibalas, as *Isaias*. *Alexander*, as *Theophrastus*.

gining of the Wars for the *Holy Land*. 6 *Hierapolis*, of great renown in those dark times of Ignorance and Idolatry for the *Syrian Goddess* therein worshipped; from whence it had the name of *Hierapolis*, or the *Holy City*; being formerly by the *Greeks* called *Callinice*; by the *Syrians*, *Magog*; one of the first seats of *Magog* the Son of *Japhet*, and from him denominated. The *Goddess* so esteemed of in those wretched times, that from all parts, *Affrica*, *Babylonia*, *Arabia*, *Cilicia*, *Cappadocia*, and indeed what not, they brought her many rich gifts and costly offerings. *Nero* himself, who scoffed at all Religions else, being for a while a great Votary of this *Syrian Idol*, though afterwards he grew weary of her, and defiled her with urine. The Temple built by *Stratonice*, the wife of *Seleucus*, in the midst of the City, compassed with a double wall, about the height of 300 fathom: the roof thereof inlaid with Gold, and made of such a fragrant and sweet-smelling wood, that the cloaths of them which came thither retained the scent thereof for a long time after. Without the Temple there were places inclosed for Oxen, and Beasts of sacrifice; and not far off a Lake of 200 fathom in depth, wherein they kept their sacred fishes: the Priests attending here for their several Offices, amounting in number to three hundred, besides many more subservient Ministers. The tricks and jugglings of these Priests to deceive the people, he that list to see, may find them copiously described in the *Metamorphosis of Apuleius*: which, changing both the names and times, may serve for a relation of those gulleries and Arts of *Leger-de-main* which the *Friars* and *Pardoners* have practised in the Church of *Rome*. 7 *Chelybanus*, whence the parts adjoining were called *Chalybanicus*; conceived by *Pofellus* and some others to be *Chalpinum*, or *Alpe*, but on no good ground; this City having one degree less of Northern Latitude, than *Berza* had. 8 *Barbaricis*, in the same subdivision, near the banks of *Euphrates*. 9 *Chalcis*, the principal of that part of *Syria Propria*, which is called *Chalcidice*, but not otherwise memorable. 10 *Telmaddis*, another Town of the same division, and as little famous. 11 *Selucia*, so named from the Founder of it, the first Eastern Monarch of that Race, and the greatest Builder of the World, founding nine Cities of this name, sixteen in memory of his Father *Antiochius*, six by the name of *Laodice* his Mother, and three in honour of *Apantia* his first Wife; besides many others of great note in *Greece* and *Asia*, either new built, or beautified and repaired by him. From this, the Country hereabouts had the name of *Selucia*. 12 *Laodicea*, one of the Cities founded by *Seleucus*, in honour of *Laodice* his Mother, from which the Region adjoining is called *Laodicea*: built by him in the place where formerly stood the City *Rhamnus*, so called from a certain Shepherd, who being struck with a flash of lightning, cried out amazedly *Rhamnus*, that is to say, *Dem ab excelso*; before which time it had been named *Lenca Alie*, from the whiteness of the Sea-cliffs near to which it is situate: the Country round about commended anciently for the best Wines, and choice of very excellent Fruits. 13 *Apamea*, so named in honour of *Apantia*, the Wife of *Seleucus*; which together with *Laodicea* and *Selucia* before mentioned, having the same Founder, and maintaining a strict League of amity with one another, were commonly called the Three Sisters. From this the Country near is called *Apamene*. 14 *Emefa*, (now *Hanf*) the Episcopal See of *Enfibus*, hence called *Enesius*, who flourished in the time of *Constantinus*, the Son of *Constantine*: in whose name are extant certain Homilies, justly conceived to be of a later date. The City seated in a spacious and fruitful Plain of *Apamene*, watered with many pleasant and cheerful Rivereets: once of great note, as may

easily be conjectured from the walls herof, which are still perfect and entire, built of polished stone, and of very large circuit; but the dwelling-houses so decayed, that it affordeth nothing worthy observation. 15 *Epiphania*, in the Cantred or subdivision of *Casotis*, called at first *Hamath*, from *Hamath* a Son of *Canaan*, the founder of it; and upon that account mistaken by *St. Hieron* for another Town of the same name, in the Tribe of *Naphthali*; so indifferent from this place both in Longitude and Latitude (as we shall shew hereafter when we come to *Palestine*) that they can by no means be the same. But that old Town being gone to ruin, it was repaired, if not re-edified by *Antiochus Epiphanes* King of *Syria*, who thereupon commanded it to be called *Epiphania*; obeyed therein as *Josephus* telleth us, by the *Macedonians*, though the *Syrians* still called it *Amath*, as in former times, *Antiq. l. 1. c. 7.* 16 *Larissa*, which still preserveth its old name being now called *Laris*; much mentioned in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, especially for the death of *Baldwin* the first, Brother of *Godfrey of Bouillon*, and second King of *Hierusalem*, Anno 1118. 17 *Gabal*, the *Gabala* of *Proton*, and others of the ancient Writers, situate on the South of *Laodicea*, about which twelve miles distant; mentioned *Psalm. 83.* as a confederate with *Tyre*, and other uncircumcised Nations, in their hatred and designs against the *Israelites*: at this day called *Gaballa* (with little difference from the old name of it) and by that name remembered in the Stories of the *Holy Wars*. 18 *Albaria*, distant two days march from *Antioch*, remembered also in the Wars of the *Holy Land*. 19 *Aradus*, one of the Co-founders of *Tripolis*, situate in a rocky Island of a mile in compass, directly opposite to the mouth or influx of the River *Eleutherus*, and distant from the Continent about twenty furlongs. So called from *Aradus*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, and mentioned by that name in the Prophet *Ezek. 27. 8, 11*. This oncea Kingdom of it self, containing not this Island only, but some part of the Continent; especially about *Antaradus* (so called because built over against it) situate on the Northern banks of the River *Eleutherus*, of which we have spoken in *Phoenicia*. 20 *Daphne*, about five miles from *Antioch*; but afterwards by the continual enlargements of that City, accounted as the Suburb to it; so named of *Daphne*, one of the Mistresses of *Apollo*, who was here worshipped by the name of *Apollo Daphneus*, and had here his Oracle and his Groves, with other Additions appertaining unto those Idolatries; as much esteemed of, but more suspicious than those of *Delfos*. The Grove about ten miles in circuit, environed round with *Cypresses* and other trees, so tall and close to one another, that they suffered not the Sun to enter in his great heats: the ground perpetually covered with the choicest Tapestry of Nature, watered with many a pleasant stream, derived from the *Cassilian* Fountains as it was given out; and yielding the most excellent Fruits both for taste and inclosure, to which the wind and air participating, the sweetneets of the place did add a most delightful influence.

A plate devised for pleasure, but abused to lust: he being held unworthy of the name of a man, who transformed not himself unto a Beast, or trod on this unholy ground without his *Curse* on, inasmuch as they which had a care of their good names, did forbear to haunt it. A fuller description of it he that lists to see, may find in the first Book and eighteenth Chapter of *Salomon's Ecclesiastical History*, who is copious in it. The Temple said to have been built by *Seleucus* also, renowned for the Oracle there given, by which *Adrian* was foretold of his being Emperor; and therefore much resorted to by *Jarlan* the *Apollatus*, for that purpose also. But the body of

Babylus

Babylar the Martyr and Bishop of *Antioch*, being removed thither by the command of his Brother *Gallus*, then created *Cesar* by *Constantinus*, the Devil and his Oracles were both frightened away, as the Devil did himself confess to *Julian*; who being desirous to learn here the success of his intended Expedition into *Persia*, received this Answer, That no Oracle could be given so long as those Divine Bones were to near the Shrine. Nor was it long after, before the Idol and the Temple were consumed by a fire from Heaven, as was avowed by those who observed the fall of it; though *Julian* did impute it to the innocent Christians, and in revenge caused many of their Churches to be burned to ashes. 21 *Antioch*, situate in that part herof which is called *Casotis*, first built, or began rather by *Antigonus*, when Lord of *Asia*, by whom named *Antigonia*; but finished and enlarged by *Seleucus*, after he had overthrown and slain him at the Battle of *Issus*. Built near the place, and partly out of the Ruins of an ancient City, in the second Book of *Kings* called *Riblah* in the Land of *Hamath*, *Hamath the Great*, in the sixth of *Amos*; by *Josephus* and the *Syrians*, *Reblan*, Memorable in those days for the Tragedies of *Jehothas* and *Zedechias*, Kings of *Judah*, the first of which was here deprived of his Crown and Liberty, by *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Aegypt*, 2 *King. 23. 33.* the other of his Eyes and Children, by the command of *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, as was said before. In following times it was by some Greek Writers called *Epiaphne*, from the nearness of it to that Grove: as *Trolois*, or the City of God; either from the many Miracles there done in the Primitive time, or from the great improvement which the Christian Faith did here receive, where the *Disciples* first obtained the name of *Christians*. The Royal Seat for many Ages of the Kings of *Syria*; and in the flourish and best fortune of the *Roman* Empire, the ordinary Residence of the *Prefect* or Governour of the Eastern Provinces; next, of the intendency over the *Dioecesis* of the *Orient*, though that large enough, but also of the *Dioecesis* of *Aegypt*, *Asia*, *Pontus*, *Thrace*, extending to his Jurisdiction into all the parts of the then known World. Honoured also with the Residence of many of the *Roman* Emperours, especially of *Vernus* and *Valens*, who spent here the greatest part of their times; and from the first dawning of the Gospel with the seat of the *Patriarch*. A Title of such eminency in all times of the Church, the second in account to the See of *Rome* (till *Constantinople* being made the Imperial City, got precedence of it) that there are at this time no less than four great Prelates which pretend unto it; that is to say, the *true Patriarch*, governing the *Christians* of those parts, whom they call *Syrians* or *Melchites*; the *Pseudo-Patriarch* of the *Jacobite* and *Maronite* Sectaries, both which, for the greater credit to their *Schisms*, do assume this Title; and finally, a titular *Patriarch* nominated by the Pope, who since the time that the *Western Christians* were possessed of these Eastern Countries, hath assumed a power unto himself of nominating *Patriarchs* for *Alexandria*, *Hierusalem*, and this City of *Antioch*.

The City seated on both sides of the River *Oronter*, about twelve miles distant from the Shores of the *Mediterranean*; the River *Pharfar* passing on the South-side of it. By Art and Nature fortified even to admiration; compassed with a double Wall, the outermost of which was of Stone, the other of Brick, with four hundred and sixty Towers in the Walls, and an impregnable Castle at the East-end thereof; and on the other side defended with big broken Mountains, whereunto was

adjoining a deep Lake coming out of the River *Pharfar*, before-mentioned. Adorned in former times with many sumptuous Palaces and magnificent Temples answerable to the Reputation of so great a City; till taken by men careles of all State and Beauty in their fast City, it began to grow unto decay. Recovered by the *Western Christians* from the power of the *Turks*, after a Siege of seven Months, June 3. Anno 1098. confirmed in their possession by a great and memorable Victory, got in the very light hereof within few days after (June 28.) obtained against *Corbanus*, Lieutenant to the *Persian Sultan*, in which, with the loss of four thousand and two hundred of their own, they slew a hundred thousand of the Enemy. The Town and Territory given by the Conquerors to *Bohemund* a Noble *Norman*, and Prince of *Tarentum*; who by practising with one *Pyrrhus*, who had the command of one of the chief Towers thereof, afterwards called *St. Georges* Tower, was secretly let into the City, and so made way for all the rest. *Bohemund* left it to *Bohemund* his Son about ten years after; succeeded in this Principate by *Tancred* and *Rogers*, Princes of great renown in those *Holy Wars*; which last unfortunately slain by the *Turks*, not far from *Alappa*, in the year 1120. *Baldwin* the second having revenged his death by a signal Victory, joynted this Estate to the Kingdom of *Hierusalem*. Betrayed above sixty years after this, that is to say, in the year 1188, it came into the Power of *Saladin*, the victorious King of *Aegypt* and *Damascus*, and therewithal no fewer than five and twenty Cities which depended on the fortunes of it: the glories of this famous City so declining after this last Tragedy (but whether laid desolate of set purpose, or destroyed by the injury of the time, I am not able to declare) that it is grown the Sepulchre of what once it was, and lieth buried in its own laid Ruins, hardly preserving the repaire of a forry Village. Such is the infatigability of all worldly Glories. Some other Towns there are in this part of *Syria*, but not to be remembered the same day with *Antioch*.

As for the Story of his Province, as a State distinct, we find it had a King of its own, called the King of *Hamath* (the Kingdom of *Toi* or *Tou* before remembered) who together with the King of *Arphad*, commanded in this part of *Syria*, and the Isles adjoining, Vassals in time succeeding to the Kings of *Tyre*, who had great Influence on the Islands also. And it continued in this State till the *Affrian* Kings began to turn their Forces Westward; when added to that Empire by *Tiglah Pileser*, after the subversion of the Kingdom of *Damascus*; or by *Salmanasser*, after the destruction of that of *Israel*. The proud but dreadful vaunt which *Sennacherib*, the Successor of those mighty Monarchs, made to *Hezekiah*, viz. *Where are the Gods of Hamath and Arphad?* shews clearly, that those Kingdoms had been conquered not long before; and therefore needs by *Salmanasser* or *Tiglah Pileser*. Afterwards, in the struggles betwixt the *Babylonians* and *Aegyptians*, for the chief Command, it was a while at the devotion of the King of *Aegypt*, it being at *Zablabah* in this Province, that *Jehoaahaz*, King of *Judah* was put into Bonds, by the command of *Pharaoh Necho*, as was said before. But *Necho* being not long after vanquished by *Nabuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, it returned again to that Crown, and after followed the same fortunes with the rest of *Syria*.

3 COMAGENA.

COMAGENA is bounded on the East with the River *Euphrates*; by which parted from *Mesopotamia*; on the West, with the Mountains called *Ananias*, which divided from *Cilicia*; on the North, with *Taurus*, by which separated from *Armenia Minor*; on the South with *Palmyrene*. Called also *Euphratenfis* and *Euphrastia*, when a Roman Province, by reason of its situation, bordering on the River.

The reason of the name I find not amongst my Authors; but find that many Learned men conceive it to be that part of *Syria*, which the Scriptures call *Syria Maachab*, mention whereof is made 1 *Chron. cap. 19. ver. 6.* gain-fayed by others, because they find a place called *Maacha* in the Tribe of *Manasse* but with no great reason as I take it. For being it is joyned (in 1 *Chron. 19. v. 6.* above mentioned) in the same action with *Mesopotamia*, and *Syria Sobab*; and not so only, but placed between them in the Method of that holy Penman, I dare not think but that they were all very near neighbours, and ranked according to the natural situation of them. Which agreeth very well with the site of *Comagena*, having *Mesopotamia* on the East, and *Aram-Sobab* on the South. Nor is it any stronger proof unto the contrary, that *Maacha* is a Town of the Tribe of *Manasse*: than if a man should say, that there is no such Province as *Manfield* in *High Germany*, because there is a Town of that name in *England*; or no such place as *Savoy* amongst the *Alpes*, because there is a House of that name in *London*.

As for the People herof, besides what they have common with the rest of the *Syrians*, they were of old much given unto *Divination*, and for that cause derided thus in the Sixth *Saty* of *Juvenal*.

*Spondet amatores tenerum vel divitis orbi
Tysanum unguis, calidae pulvisque Columbe
Tricrato, Armenius ubi Comagenae Aruspex.
Pectora pulchrum rimabitur, exita Castellis,
Interdum & pueri. Faciat quod desera ipse.*

Thus Englished by my honoured Friend

Sir Robert Stapleton.

A childless rich mans Legacy, or young Love,
Are found it? Light of a warm trembling Dove,
By *Comagene* South-fayers; they look into
A dead Chicks breast, the fame the *Armenians* do,
They view the Entrails of a Dog, and reach
A Child perhaps? They do it, and then preach.

Chief places of this part, 1 *Samosata*, the *Metropolis* or Head City of it, when a *Roman* Province, situate near the Banks of *Euphrates*, over which it had a Bridge for passage into *Mesopotamia*. Unfortunate for being the Birth-place of *Lucian*, that profane Scoffer of *Christianity*, though otherwise a man of a quick Wit, and of great Abilities: as also of *Paulus Samosatensis*, Patriarch of *Antioch*, condemned of *Hereticks* in a Council holden in his own City, Anno 273. (by the great and most Learned Bishops of that Age, there assembled together) for teaching, That our Saviour was no other than a natural man; but neither God, nor the Son of God, as the Scriptures testify. 2 *Germanicia* (by some called *Germanicopolis*) on the other side of the Country near the Mountain *Ananias*; no less unfortunate than the former, in being the Birth-place of *Nestorius*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, who troubling the Peace of the Church with *Heterodoxie*, and impertinent nicities about the blessed Mother of *Christ*, as also about the Nature and Person of *Christ* himself, was thereupon condemned of *Hereticks* in the Council of *Ephesus*, Anno 435. In for-

mer times called *Adana*, as some write *Adapa*; but took this new name from *Germanicus Caesar*, in honour of whom it was made a *Roman* Colony by *Augustus*, testified by this Inscription extant in *Onuphrius* viz. *COLONIA JULIA GERMANICIA, S. A. C. R. A. V. G. V. S. T. A. F. O. E. I. X.* 3 *Singa*, so called from the River upon which it is situate. 4 *Antiochia penes Taurum*, so called because seated at the foot of that Mountain, to differ it from the other of this name in *Syria*. 5 *Pinar*, one of the Chief Cities of that part which is called *Pieria*. 6 *Doliche*, a small Town, but made an Episcopal See in the best times of the Church, as appeareth by the Acts of the Councils of *Antioch* and *Constantinople*, in which there is some mention of the Bishops of it. 7 *Aleppo*, now the principal of all the Country, supposed by some to be the *Sepharvaim*, mentioned 2 *King. 17. 24.* It was thus called, as some say, from *Halep*, which in the Language of those parts signifies Milk, afforded liberally by the Rich Pastures round about it: as others more improbably from *Aleph*, the first Letter of the Hebrew Alphabet, because the first in estimation of the Cities of *Syria*: Most probably from *Alepius*, Lieutenant here in the time of *Julian* the *Apostata*, who did here many notable Exploits, and amongst others, in or near the Ruines of some old Town of these parts, not yet agreed on (in case it be not *Sepharvaim* before mentioned) advanced this City. Situate on the Banks of the River *Singus*, which rising out of the Hill *Pieria*, with many windings and turnings, runneth through *Comagena*, and there falleth into *Euphrates*. Destroyed by *Hadrian*, King of the *Tarst*, at such time as the Western Christians were possessed of this Country, and the Holy Land: but being repaired and re-peopled, became by reason of the commodious situation of it, to be much frequented by Merchants from all parts of the World. Situate in the midst betwixt *Tripolis*, *Beritus*, and *Alexandretta*, the three prime Ports of *Turkey* on the one side, and the *Persian* Territories on the other: it was made choice of for the Staple of the Eastern Commodities, brought to *Euphrates*, and then boated to this Town by the River *Singus*. A City of great Trade at present, the English Merchants (amongst others which frequent the same) disposing here three Houses for the Storage and halving of their Commodities, and a chief Office of *Superintendent* over the whole *Factory*, whom they call the *Consul* of *Aleppo*. But greater was the Trade heretof in former times, before the *Portugals* found out a way by Sea to those Eastern Countries, since followed by the *English*, *Hollanders*, and other Nations. The building of it, but of one Roof high (as in most Towns of *Syria*) with a plain top plaistred to walk upon; and with Arches before their doors or Houses: as well to passy under them in time of Rain, as to shew their Wars. Pleasantly seated amongst Gardens, with the sweet fennels whereof very much refreshed; the ordinary residence of a Turkish *Besla*; safe rather in the remoteness of it from any Enemy, than the strength of the place, as being nothing less than well fortified. Near one of the Gates they shew a Sepulchre, by them affirmed to be Saint *George's* (whom of all the *Christian* Saints they only worship) before which they maintain a Lamp which burns continually. 8 *Amn*, in the way betwixt *Tripolis* and *Aleppo*, supposed by some to be that *Hamath*, mention whereof is made 2 *King. chap. 17. 12.* A City of a large circuit, pleasantly seated on two Hills, which give it a fair prospect over six of the neighbouring Villages; a thing not to be boasted of, as the World now goeth, by many of the *Syrian* Cities. On a third Hill once stood a Castle, now decayed, ruinous, beneath

4 PALMYRENE.

PALMYRENE is bounded on the East, by the River *Euphrates*; on the West, by *Syria* properly and specially so called; on the North, with *Comagena*; and on the South, with Mount *Libanus*, dividing it from the Province of *Calo-Syria*; and part of *Arabia Deserta*.

It took this name from *Palmyra* the chief City of it. When conquered by the *Romans*, and made a distinct Province of it self, it had the name of *Syria Secunda*, and *Salutaris*: called *Syria Secunda*, to distinguish it from *Syria* specially so called, which by them was named *Syria Prima*; and *Salutaris*, in regard of the medicinal waters springing in many places of it. But before it had any of these names, it was in the Scriptures called *Arenvix*, as we read 2 *Sam. 8. 3.* and 1 *Chron. 18. 3.*

The Country destitute of Rivers fit for Navigation, save that it bordereth on *Euphrates*; but liberally furnished with those hot Springs good for many Diseases, writeth *Marcellinus*, lib. 14. In his *traditibus navigantibus natura calentes emergunt, ad usum aqua multiplicem medelantur*. So he: The fens whereof we had before.

Places of most observation, are 1 *Palmyra* seated in a *mon* in the *Wildernefs*, mention of which is made 1 *King. 9. 17, 18.* this *Palmyra* being supposed to be that City *Latin*. The cause for long time of much contention betwixt the *Parthians* and the *Romans*, as situate in the heart, till that they had subdued *Zenobia*, then the Queen was called *Hadrianople*, but it held not long; the old 3 *Bethloron* the upper. And 4 *Bethloron* the nether; said to be fenced Cities, with Walls, Gates, and *Towers* ledged, or called by new names in the time of *Proclus*; doth intimate, by some of the *Adada* Kings of this Country towards the River *Euphrates*, in the *Notitia*, called repaired, or made a Colony by the Emperor *Vespasian*, pitcopal See also in the times next following, as appeareth on the Acts of the Council of *Constantinople*. 8 *Alamath*, lawful for me to criticize upon my Author, if it were conceived to be *Hamath* of the Scriptures, which is prevailed 1 the mistake from *Camatha* to *Alamath*, be that passage in 2 *Chron. 18. 3.* where it is said, that *David* went to establish his Dominion by the River *Euphrates*: By the *Camatha* or *Alamath* of *Proclus* is said to do: And to be the chief Seat of those Kings, and the principal City of this Kingdom: the word *Sobab*, being added to But if the judicious Reader approve not this criticism, I should next think that this *Alamath* of *Proclus* were

FFFF

that

that *Alema*, or *Helaus*, next unto which *Dau d* discomfited that great Army of the *Mesopotamians*, mention whereof is made 2 Sam. 10. 16. 17. 9. *Rafaphis*, a Town of note in the time of *Prology*; but of greater in the Holy Scripture, where it is represented to us by the name of *Refeph*, *Ila*. 3. 20. *Refeph Civitas Syria*, as Saint *Hieronym* hath it: and if a Town of Syria, then most like this. 10 *Betab*, and 11 *Berobai*, two other Cities of this Kingdom, taken by *David* in his War against *Hadad-ezar*, 2 Sam. 8. 8, the last supposed to be the *Barabene* of *Prology*, though placed by him among the Towns of *Arabia* the *Desart*, to which it seems it was allotted in the change of time.

This part of Syria, as the rest, was once a distinct Kingdom of itself, by the name of the Kingdom of *Sobab*, or of *Aram-Sobab*. The first King thereof, whose name occurs in Holy Scripture, being *Rehob*, the Co-temporary of *Saul* King of *Israel*, by whom discomfited in battle, as is said 1 Sam. 14. 47. But *Adad-ezar* the Son of *Rehob*, a Prince of greater power and valour than his Father was, having brought all the neighbouring Kings under his command (as is said 2 Sam. 10. 19.) conceived himself a fit match for *David*, and thereupon opposed his passage, as he went to recover his border at the River *Euphrates*. In which Action though he lost a thousand Chariots, and twenty thousand Foot, and seven hundred Horse, yet would he not end the war: but first with the Syrians of *Damascus*, and after with the *Ammonites* and their Confederates; and finally by the aid of the *Mesopotamians*, renewed the Quarrel. But being discomfited also in this last enterprise with the loss of forty thousand and seven hundred men, and his life to boot, the Kingdom of *Zobah* was brought under by the Kings of *Damascus*. The story of this war we have in 2 Sam. ch. 8. v. 10. in 1 Chron. ch. 18. and 1 King. 11. 23, 24, yet were not the Kings of *Damascus* so well fedled in it, but that *David* had possessed himself of *Betab* and *Berobai*, and other places of importance: the Regal City of *Hamath-Zobah* being won by *Salomon*, and many of the best Towns of it built by him to assure his Conquest. But the Kingdom of *Salomon* being rent in pieces in the next Succession, the Kingdom of *Zobah* fell unto those of *Damascus*: and so continued till *Damascus* it self was conquered by the Kings of *Affria*: unless perhaps that *Hamath*, which *Jeroboam* the second is said to have subdued (together with *Damascus* it self) to the Crown of *Israel*, 2 King. 14. 28. were this *Hamath-Zobah*, as perhaps it was.

After this nothing memorable in the affairs of this Country, till the time of *Gallienus* the Roman Emperor: during whose reign, amongst the rest who *cantoned* that Empire betwixt themselves, commonly called the Thirty Tyrants) *Odenatus* a man of great power and virtue assumed the Imperial habit, and took unto him the command of these parts of Syria, together with *Mesopotamia*, and some other Provinces, which he had conquered from *Sapor* the King of *Perfia*, against whom he had so good an hand, that he discomfited him in battle, seiz'd upon his Treasures, and took many of his Nobles, and most of his Concubines. For which great acts admitted partner in the Empire by *Gallienus*, he was not long after slain by *Aeoni* his Cousin German. Who by that murder hoped to obtain the Principality of *Palmyrene* (for by that name it was so called) but in that deceived. For after his death, *Zenobia* his unfortunate Widow, a most masculine Lady, not only preserved the Principality of *Palmyrene* for the use of her Children; but took upon her both the Purple habit, and the command of his Army: which she managed with great wisdom and gallantry, the rest of the time of *Gallienus*, all the reigns of *Clau-*

dus, and *Quintilianus*, his two next Successors. But vanquished and took Prisoner by *Aurelianus* (who had the happiness to undo the broken limbs of that Empire into as strong a body as ever formerly) she was led in triumph through Rome. The terror of her name, and the unreasonableness of the fight, so generally heightening the expectation; *Ut ea specie nihil unquam esset pompabilius*, faith *Trebellian* Pollio. That never any shew was esteemed so glorious. A Lady of so strong a virtue, and of such command upon her self, that she is said never to have made use of her husbands company when she perceived her self with child. After this nothing singular in the story of *Palmyrene*, but when all the rest of Syria was subdued by the Christians of the West, this Province and the next only was made good against them by the Turkish Sultans of *Damascus*.

COELO-STRIA.

COELO-STRIA is bounded on the East with *Palmyrene*, and *Arabia Deserta*; on the West, with *Palmyrene*; on the North, with *Palmyrene*, and some part of *Syria Propria*, from which divided by the interposition of Mount *Libanus*; on the South, with *Ituraea*, and *Arabia Deserta* also.

This is the Syria so much mentioned in the Books of Kings and Chronicles, called by the Greeks, *Caelo-Syria*, i. e. *Syria Cava*, because partly situate in the hollow Valleys interjected betwixt *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*; and sometimes also *Syro-Phoenicia*, from the intermixture of those people; the *Phoenicians* which went with *Dib* into *Affrica*, were called *Libo-Phoenices*. By the *Romans* when made a distinct Province of that Empire, it had the name of *Phoenice Libani*, or *Phoenicia Libanensis*, to distinguish it from the other *Phoenicia*, which they call *Martima*. But before all this by the Hebrews named *Aram-Damasci*. *Syria Damascena* in the Latin, from *Damascus* the chief City of it: unless perhaps we should rather say, that *Aram-Damasci* contained only that which lay betwixt the Mountains of *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*, the rest being added by the *Romans*, out of the neighbouring parts of *Palmyrene* and *Arabia Deserta*, as perhaps it was.

Chief Rivers hereof are 1 *Abana*, and 2 *Pharfar*, the Rivers of *Damascus*, as the Scripture calleth them, 2 King. 5. The one of which is thought to be the River *Adonis*, spoken of already; the other that which *Prology* calleth *Chryssorhoas*, or the golden Flood; which rising in the Hills of this Country, passeth by *Damascus*, and so together with the other into the *Mediterranean* Sea. Chief Mountains of it, 1 *Adamanus*, by the Phoenicians called *Syrius*, by the *Amorites*, *Samir*; a ridge of Hills which beginning at the East-point of *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly Southwards, shutting up to that side the Land of *Israel*, whereof more in *Palmyrene*. 2 *Hippus*, a ledge of Mountains in the South parts of this Province, where it bordereth on *Arabia Deserta*.

Towns of most consideration in it. 1 *Heliopolis* so called from an Image of the Sun there worshipped in the time of *Paganism*; now *Belbeck*, or (as some say) *Balbec*. 2 *Chalcis*, more Eastward toward *Damascus*, which gave the title of a King to *Prology* *Meneus*, and his Son *Lysanias*, the Kingdom then extending over the City of *Abila*, and the whole Province of *Ituraea* in *Palmyrene*. But that Family being either expired or grown out of favour, and *Abila* with *Ituraea* otherwise disposed of, the title of the King of *Chalcis*, with the Town and Territory, was given to *Herod*, brother of *Agrippa* the first King of *Jewry*. Erroneously supposed by some Learned men to be that *Chalcis*, from which the Country called

Chalcidica

Chalcidice takes denomination; that *Chalcis* being placed by *Prology* a degree and a half more East than *Damascus*, and two degrees more towards the North; whereas this *Chalcis* lieth on the West of that City, in the shades of *Libanus*, and in the very same degree of Northern Latitude. 3 *Abila*, seated at the foot of *Libanus*, betwixt *Heliopolis* and *Chalcis* from whence the Country round about it is called *Abilene*; given to *Lysanias*, the Son of the former *Lysanias*, King of *Chalcis*, with the Title of *Tetrarch*. Mentioned Luke 3. 1. with those other Princes which shared *Palmyrene* amongst them. Not that he was the Son of *Herod*, as anciently *Beda* and *Euthymius*, and of late times some very industrious men have been of opinion: but partly because to those of the Tribe of *Naphthali* (though never conquered or possessed by them) and to be accounted a part of *Palmyrene*; and partly because the *Tetrarchy* of *Abilene*, when Saint *Luke* wrote that Gospel, was possessed together with the rest by King *Agrippa*. Restored (as it seemeth) to the former Family, after his decease; for known it was by the name of *Abila Lysania* in the time of *Prology*. 4 *Adida*, memorable for the Victory against *Aretas* King of *Arabia* obtained near unto it, then lying open as a prey to the next invaders. 5 *Hippus*, or *Hippone*, as *Pliny* calleth it, not far from the Mountain of that name. 6 *Capitolias*, now called *Suena*. 7 *Gadara*, 8 *Scythopolis*. 9 *Gersa*, and 10 *Philadelpia*, reckoned by *Prology* as Cities of *Coelo-Syria*; but of right belonging unto *Palmyrene*, where we mean to take notice of them. 11 *Eden*, at the foot of Mount *Libanus*, now a Town of the *Maronites*; and anciently of such esteem that the whole Country of *Damascus* was called *Beth-Eden*, *Amos* 1. 5. 12 *Damascus*, situate in a large Plain environed with Hills, and watered with the River *Chryssorhoas*, which with a great noise descendeth from the Mountains, and so abundantly serveth the City, that not only most of the Houses have their Fountains of it, but their Orchards and Gardens have some Rivulets conveyed into them. The Country round about abundantly enriched with plenty of most excellent Wines (the Vines hereof bearing Grapes all the year long) and great store of Wheat; as *Damasceni*, (or *Prima Damascena*, as the Latins call them) coming first from hence; as also our *Damask* Roses, but infinite sort of their natural sweets, by the transplantation. A place so surfeited of Delights, so girt about with odoriferous and curious Gardens, that the vile impostor *Mahomet* was never perwaded to come into it, for fear (as himself was used to say) lest being ravished with the ineffable pleasures of it, he should forget the business he was sent about, and make there his Paradise. But *Muhavias*, one of his Successors, having no such scruple, removed the Regal Seat unto it, where it continued (for the most part) till the building of *Bagdat* by *Ingisfer* the twentieth Caliph, about an hundred years after this Removal: the Regal Seat before that time being at *Meca*, *Cufa*, or some other of the best Towns of *Arabia Felix*. The chief Buildings of it, of late times (till destroyed by the *Tatars*) were a strong Castle, in the opinion of those times held to be impregnable; and not without great difficulty forced by *Tamurlane*, whom nothing was able to withstand: as was Majestical a Church, garnished with forty sumptuous Porches, and no fewer than 3000 Lanthorns of Gold and Silver; which with 30000 people in it (who led thither for a Sanctuary) was by the said *Tamurlane* most cruelly and unmercifully burnt, and pulled down unto

the ground. Repaired by the *Mamlukes* of *Aegypt* when Lords of *Syria*, it hath since flourished in Traue, the People being industrious, and celebrated for most excellent Artizans; the branching of Satins, and fine amongst many others, one of their Inventions. Renowned in the Old Testament for the Kings hereof, and the birth of *Eliezer*, *Abraham's* Steward (so honourably ancient was this City;) and in the New, for the Conversion of St. Paul, who first preached the Gospel in this place, and here so narrowly escaped the snares of his Enemies, that he was fain to be let down out of the House in which he was, by the help of a Basket.

But ancient and honourable though this City of *Damascus* was, we find nothing of the Story of it, till the time of *David*; the Kings thereof until those days, being conceived to have been Homagers and Tributaries to the Kings of *Zobah*. The first Exploit ascribed unto him in the Holy Scripture, is their coming to the aid of *Adad-ezar*, upon his first defeat by *David*: in which action having lost 22000 men, they were so broken, that they did not only suffer *David* to put Garrisons in Servants, and brought presents to him, 2 Sam. 8. 5, 6. The name of this unfortunate Prince not made known in Scripture, is by *Josephus* affirmed out of *Nicolaus Damascenus*, to have been *Adad* (a name much cherished and assumed by the Kings Successors) who keeping constant to the party of *Adad-ezar* in his following Wars, was at last slain with him, in that great discomfiture v. 18. In which Text the Scripture telleth us nothing of the death of those Kings, that being supplied to us by *Josephus* out of their Records; who also added, That *Rezin*, one of the chief Commanders of *Adad-ezar*, taking his advantage, not only usurped his Masters Kingdom, but made himself Master of the Kingdom of *Damascus* also. From this time forward the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Syria*. Nor is this the Tradition of *Damascus* only, but founded plainly on the Scriptures, of which see 1 King. 11. v. 23, 24. the Scriptures after this taking no notice of any other Kings of *Syria* (by the name of Kings of *Syria*) but of those that reigned in *Damascus*; who in short time had swallowed up the petty Kingdoms of *Gesser*, *Ish-tok*, *Rehob*, besides that of *Sobab* before mentioned.

The KINGS of STRIA or DAMASCUS.

- 1 *Adad*, the Friend and Confederate of *Adad-ezar* King of *Sobab*, in whose quarrel he was vanquished and slain by *David*.
- 2 *Rezin*, of whom the Scripture saith, in the 2. of *Chron*. that when *David* slew them of *Sobab*, he fled from *Adad-ezar* his Lords, and gathered men unto him, and certain Captains over a Band, and went to *Damascus*, and dwelt therein, and reigned in *Damascus*.
- 3 *Adad II.* an *Adman*, supposed to be of the Family of *Adad-ezar*, but rather as I think of *Adad*, for fear of *David* fled to *Aegypt*, where he married *Tapines* the Queens Sister; and hearing that both *David* and *Joab* were dead, returned again into his Country, and as some write, expelled *Rezin* out of *Damascus* and reigned there as King.
- 4 *Hezion*, Successor unto *Adad*.
- 5 *Tharimon*, the Son of *Hezion*, as is said 2 King. 15. 18.
- 6 *Ben-medad*, the Son of *Tab-mon*, hired by *Azi* King

King of Judah, to aid him in his Wars against Baalsh of Israel.

7 Ben-hadad II. Son of the former, twice invaded Israel in the reign of Ahab; but both times notably repulsed: the first time by a Sally of 700 men, at the Siege of Samaria; the next at Aphek, where with the like number in effect, he was taken Prisoner and his Army routed.

8 Hazael, Captain of the Host to Ben-hadad, anointed King of Syria by the prophet Elisha, whom God appointed so to do, that by his hands he might avenge himself on Ben-hadad, whom Hazael slew; but he proved as ill a neighbour to the Kings of Israel, as those before him. He attempted upon Judah also in the time of Joas, but bribed with the Treasures of the Temple, he withdrew his Forces.

9 Ben-hadad III. Son of Hazael, discomfited in three set Battles by Joas King of Israel.

10 Ben-hadad IV. Son of Ben-hadad the third.

11 Ben-hadad V. Son of Ben-hadad the fourth.

12 Ben-hadad VI. Son of Ben-hadad the fifth, in the time of one of which three Kings, but which one we find not for a certain, Jeroboam the Son of Joas King of Israel subdued both Chamath, and Damascus; of which see 2 King. 14. v. 18.

13 Rezin II. Son of Ben-hadad the sixth, and the last King of Damascus, who joining with Pekah King of Israel, against Abaz King of Judah, enforced him to call unto his aid Tiglath Pileser King of Assyria; by whom Rezin was taken and beheaded, and the City of Damascus won; the Kingdom of Syria by that means united to the Assyrian Empire.

After this time, the Syrians continued subject to the Babylonian and Assyrian Monarchs; and in the overthrow of that Empire by the Medes and Persians, became a part of their Estate: remaining till the first Battle betwixt Alexander and Darius, fought near Issus in Cilicia. The Victory wherein falling to the Macedonians, gave him without more trouble than the Siege of Tyre, the possession of Syria and Phoenicia. He dying not long after his Conquest of Persia, this Country lay as it were at stake betwixt Ptolemy King of Egypt, and Antigonus the chief Lord of Asia: but the possession of it, together with the rest of the Persian Empire, in both Asia, fell into conclusion to the share of Seleucus, for his many great and signal Victories surnamed Nicator; a man strangely preferred. For being at the first Governour of Chaldaea only, he was forced to leave Babylon, and to forsake his Province for fear of Antigonus, then dreadful to all the Macedonian Captains; and to fly into Egypt, where he became Ptolemy's Admiral. After which Ptolemy fighting at a pitched Field with Demetrius, Son to Antigonus, took Seleucus with him, and having won the Battle, gave him aid and licence to recover his former Government. Seleucus, well beloved of the People, soon made himself Master not of Chaldaea only, but of all the Persian Provinces beyond Euphrates: and not long after (being seconded by his good Friends Ptolemy, Cassander, and Lysimachus) he encountered Antigonus at Ipsus in Ionia, where Antigonus himself was slain, and his whole Army routed. This Victory made Seleucus Lord of all Asia, from whence passing over into Europe, he vanquished and slew Lysimachus: Seven Months after which Victory, he was slain by Ptolemy Ceraunus, whose Patron and Protector he had formerly been; being yet the last Saviour of all Alexander's Princes, and the only Possessor of all the Dominions which his Master had, by the way of Con-

quest, Egypt excepted. His Successors, although they were Lords of all Asia, yet since in Syria they kept their residence, to the end that they might the better furnish themselves with Soldiers out of Greece upon all occasions, as we said before, they were commonly called the Kings of Syria. But long they held not in that greatness of Estate and Power, which Seleucus left them; though being a full-bodied Tree, and of several Limbs, it endured the lopping off of many Branches, and many a sad blow at the very Root of it, before it fell. For in the time of Seleucus Callinicus, the fourth of this House, Arsaces a Noble Parthian recovered from it all the Provinces of the Persian Empire lying on that side of Euphrates; and erected the so much celebrated Parthian Kingdom, whereof more in Persia. And in the Reign of Antiochus Magnus, so called for his Victories in Egypt, Judaea, and Babylonia, the Romans extorted from it all the Asian Provinces on this side Mount Taurus, not wanting many provocations to incite them to it: for he not only had made War against Ptolemy Philopater King of Egypt, whom the Romans had taken into their Protection; but stirred up the Cities and States of Greece against them: invaded Lycimachus, and some other parts of Europe, in defiance of them, and had received Amibab the Carthaginian, and Thua the Aetolian, their most mortal Enemies, into his Dominion, governing his Councils by the influences which they had upon him. Nor may we think but that Ambition and Avarice, to add to their Fame and Empire by the overthrow of so great a Prince, did persuade much with them. So that the point being brought too ready issue, they pleaded it on both sides in the Battle of Magnesia, a City of Lydia, to which Antiochus brought an Army of 300000 Foot, and as many armed Chariots, besides more or Elephants, if the Roman Writers be not over-lavish in their Reports. But rejecting the advice of Amibab, and committing his Affairs wholly to Evil Counsellors, he was vanquished by no more than four Legions of Enemies, and for his Peace compelled to quit all his Asian Provinces on that side of Taurus, and to pay 15000 Talents in ready money for the charge of the War. The rest of his Estate they were content he should enjoy for a longer time, Et libentius quod tam facile cessisset (as Florus handsomely says it on him) because he had so easily relinquished that. Afterwards in the civil Broils among themselves, about the Succession of the Kingdom, Alexander King of the Jews took from them many of their best Towns in Palestine, as Joppa, Gaza, Ambedon, Azotus, Rhinocorra, almost all Samaria, and Gaudonitis, with Sychar, Gadara, and many other strong Towns in Galilee Syria. Finally, when they had consumed almost all the Royal Race, and changed their Kings no less than ten times in forty years (a sure sign of a falling and expiring Kingdom) they were fain to cast themselves upon Tigranes the King of Armenia, a puissant and successful Prince, till engaged in the Quarrel of Mithridates against the Romans: by whom stripped of all his Estates on this side Euphrates, he was fain to content himself with his own Armenia, leaving Syria to the absolute disposal of Pompey, who presently reduced it to the form of a Province. This laid, we have not much more to do with the House of Seleucus, but to lay down their Names, and times of their several Governments, till we draw towards the last end of

The MACEDONIAN KINGS of STRIA.

A. M.
3654. 1 Seleucus Nicator, the first King of this House. 31.

3685 2 Antiochus, surnamed Soter, or the Saviour; memorable for nothing so much, as marrying with Stratonice his Father's Wife, in his Father's life-time.

3704 3 Antiochus II. by his flattering Courtiers surnamed Theos, or the God; but being punished by his Wife, he proved a Mortal.

3719 4 Seleucus II. surnamed by the like flattery Callinicus, or fair Conquerour, because shamefully beaten by the Parthians.

3739 5 Seleucus III. called for the like reason Ceraunus, or the Thunderer; the eldest Son of Callinicus.

3742 6 Antiochus III. surnamed Magnus, the younger Son of Callinicus, a Prince that embraced great Actions, and was fortunate in his Successes beyond Euphrates: he plagued the Jews, but lost all Asia Minor unto the Romans.

3778 7 Seleucus IV. called Philopater, the Son of Antiochus, who first began to cast his Eye upon the Riches of the Temple at Hierusalem.

3790 8 Antiochus IV. surnamed Epiphanes, or the Illustrious; but more truly Epimanes, or the Mad. The great Scourge of the Jews, Brother of Seleucus Philopater, with whom begetteth the Story of the first Book of the Maccabees.

3802 9 Antiochus V. called by the name of Eupator, the Son of Epiphanes; who by Lysias his Captain tyrannized over the poor Jews, for the little time that he reigned; as did also.

3804 10 Demetrius, surnamed Soter, Son of Seleucus Philopater, by the hands of Nicator: having possessed himself of the Diadem, by the death of Eupator, slain in his favour by the Soldiers who revolted from him. He was afterwards deposed for a time by Alexander Bala, pretending himself to be the Son of Eupator, supported herein by the Antiochians.

3814 11 Alexander Bala, discomfited in his first Battle by Demetrius, whom he slew and vanquished in the second; married Cleopatra Daughter of Ptolemy Philomator, by whose aid he was victorious. But a Quarrel breaking out between them, Ptolemy invaded Syria, and caused himself to be crowned King of it; Alexander being slain by some of his Soldiers.

3819 12 Demetrius II. surnamed Nicator, Son of Demetrius the first, recovered his Fathers Kingdom, a Friend of the Maccabees, but too cruel to his own People, that he was driven out of his Kingdom by Tryphon General of his Armies.

3821 13 Antioch VI. surnamed Embes, the Son of Alexander and Cleopatra, advanced unto the Throne by Tryphon, and after slain by him to make way for himself unto the Diadem.

3824 14 Tryphon, called also Diodorus, having driven out Demetrius, and slain Antiochus, made himself King.

3827 15 Antiochus VII. surnamed Soter, Brother of Demetrius, having overcome and slain Tryphon, succeeded him in the Estate; for a while victorious against the Parthians; but afterwards overcome and slain by them.

After whose death Demetrius Nicator (having lived in Parthia since the loss of his Kingdom) was restored again unto the Throne; which having held about four years, he was again dispossessed and slain by

3843 16 Alexander II. surnamed Zebema, an Egyptian of mean birth, set up by Ptolemy Evergetes, and pretending himself to be the adopted Son of Antiochus, afterwards vanquished and slain by

3845 17 Antiochus VIII. from the crookedness of his nose surnamed Gryphus, Son of Demetrius, aided herein by the Egyptians, with whom reconciled: having reigned about eight years in peace; embroiled him in war with his half Brother Antiochus surnamed Cyzicus; which with variable successes on both sides, continued till the time of his death, having reigned 29 years in all.

3874 18 Seleucus V. Son of Antiochus Gryphus, in the beginning of his reign overcame and slew his Uncle Cyzicus: but being vanquished by Antiochus surnamed Eusebes or Pius, one of the Sons of Cyzicus, he fled into Cilicia, and was there burnt in his Palace.

19 Antiochus IX. surnamed Eusebes, having first vanquished Seleucus, and afterwards Antiochus, another of the Sons of Gryphus, was crowned King of Syria; but slain not long after in the Persian wars.

20 Philip, and Demetrius III. surnamed Eucerus, younger Sons of Gryphus, jointly Kings of Syria; but reigning in their several parts. Of which Demetrius intending to dislize his Brother, was himself vanquished, and forced to fly into Parthia; leaving the whole Kingdom unto Philip. During which amongst themselves Syria was invaded, and in part conquered by Artaxas King of the Arabians, and Alexander King of the Jews.

3884 21 Tigranes King of Armenia, during these dissensions was by the Syrians chosen King, and Arabians: the most puissant Prince that reigned in Syria, since the time of Antioch the Great, as being King of Syria by election, of Armenia by succession, of Media by conquest. But engaging himself with Mithridates (whose Daughter he had married) against the Romans, was vanquished by Lucullus: who with the loss of five tenths to have slain of his Enemies above 100000 men. Finally, being again broken and vanquished by Lucullus, he yielded himself to Pompey (who being appointed Lutatius War) and retaining to himself Armenia only, he left all Syria to the Romans, having reigned eighteen years. And though Antiochus Comagenus, the Son of Eusebes, petitioned Pompey for a restitution to the Throne of his Ancestors, yet it would not be granted: Pompey replying, That he would not trust the Country into such weak hands as were not able to defend it against the Arabians, Parthians, and the like Invaders; and so reduced it presently to the form of a Province. The government of this Country under these new Lords, was accounted to be one of the greatest honours of the Empire: the Prefect hereof having almost regal jurisdiction over all the Regions on this side Euphrates, with a superiority over Egypt, Niger, the concurrent of Severus was Prefect here; and on the strength hereof presumed on that competition. So also was Cassius Syrus, who became

ing a Native of this Country, and well-beloved by reason of his moderate and plausible demeanour, had almost tumbled *M. Antonius* out of his Throne. On this Occasion it was enacted by the Senate, that no man hereafter should have any *military* or *legal* command in the Province where he was born: Left perhaps supported by the natural propension of the People to one of their own Nation, and heartened by the powerableness of his Friends, he might appropriate that to himself, which was common to the Senate and People of *Rome*. But this was when it was entire, and passed but from one Province only, *Phoenicia* being taken also into the account; which made the *Antiochians* so proud and insolent, that *Adrian*, in his time intended to subduet *Phoenicia* from it, *Ne tot civitatum Metropolis Antiochia crederetur* (saith *Gallicanus*) that *Antioch* might not be the chief of so many Cities. But what he lived not to accomplish, was performed by *Constantine*, by whom *Phoenicia* was not only taken off, but *Syria* it self divided into four distinct Provinces, as was shewed before, each of them having its *Metropolis* or Mother City, but all subordinate to the command of the *Comes*, or *Præfekt* of the East, as he to the command of the *Præfektus Prætorii Orientis*, the greatest Officer of the Empire, of whom we have often spoke already.

For the defence hereof as well against all Foreign invasions as the insurrections of the Natives (a wavering and inconstant People) the *Romans* kept here in continual pay four Legions, with their aids, and other additaments. For so many *Murians* had here in the time of *Galba*; and by the strength and reputation of those Forces, was able to transfer the Empire upon *Vespasian*. And though the *Constantinopolitan* Emperors to whose share it fell, in the division of the Empire, rather increased than diminished any part of this strength: yet when the fatal time was come, and that Empire was in the declination, the *Saracens*, under the conduct of *Hamer* their third *Caliph*, Anno 636, possessed themselves of it, *Heraklius* then reigning in *Constantinople*. And it continued in their power till *Tangolipix* the Turk, having conquered *Persia*, and the Provinces on that side of *Euphrates*, passed over the River into *Syria*, and made himself Master of a great part of that also. A quarrel falling out betwixt him and the nearest Kinsmen, and thereby a great stop made in their further progress, was thus composed, by the mediation of the *Caliph* of *Babylon*, in the time of *Ascor* his Successor. To *Cutlu Moses* was assigned a convenient Army, to be by him employed against the *Christians*, with Regal power over the Provinces by him gained, without relation or subordination to the *Persian* Sultan: of whose successes and affairs hath been spoke elsewhere. To *Melich* and *Ducar*, two others of his discontented Kinsmen, but all of the same *Selzucian* family, he gave the fair Cities of *Alippo* and *Damascus*, and those parts of *Syria*, with whatsoever they could conquer from the *Caliph* of *Egypt*, who then held all *Phoenicia*, and the Sea-coasts of *Palestine*: to be held in fee and vassalage of the Crown of *Persia*. To these two Brethren then we are to refer the beginning of the Turkish Kingdom in *Syria*: who, with their Successors, by reason that here they held their residence, caused themselves to be called

THE TURKISH KINGS of DAMASCUS.

1075 1 *Melich* and *Ducar*, the first Turkish Kings of *Damascus*, by the gift of *Ascor*, the second Sultan of the Turks in *Persia*, added to their Dominions all the rest of *Syria*, together with part of *Cilicia*, and some

neighbouring Provinces in the *Leffer Asia*.
2 *N. N. Sultan* of *Damascus*, at such times as the *Christians* of the West won the Holy Land: against whom he notably defended the City and Territories of *Damascus*; and in a fat battel discomfited and slew *Roger* the Norman Prince of *Antioch*.
3 *Noradine*, (the Son of *Sanguin*) General of the Armies, and Son-in-law to the former King, succeeded him in the estate. A noble Prince memorable amongst other things for a gallant answer made to his Commanders, when they perswaded him to take the advantage on the death of *Baldwin* the third, and to invade *Hierusalem* whilst the *Christians* were buſie in solemnizing his Funerals. He so, saith he, *Compassion* and regard is to be had of the just sorrow of those *Christians*, who have lost such a King, as could not be equalled in the world.

1175 4 *Melchisala*, Son of *Noradine*, contemned by reason of his youth, by his Nobles, and the Souldiery, who made choice of *Saladine* for their King; by whom dispossessed first, and after vanquished.

1176 5 *Saladine*, the Turkish Sultan of *Egypt*, having vanquished the *Persians*, or *Parthians*, coming under the conduct of *Cacobed*, Uncle to *Melchisala*, to restore that Prince to his estate, remained King of *Damascus*; and by the puſsance of his Armies, recovered from the *Christians* all *Syria*, and the Holy Land, with the City of *Hierusalem* also.

1199 6 *Eladel*, or *E. Appzel*, the eldest Son of *Saladine*, succeeded in the Realm of *Damascus*; which he exchanged for that of *Egypt* with his Brother *Elaziz*.

7 *Elaziz*, the second Son of *Saladine*, succeeded upon this exchange in the Realm of *Damascus*; murdered not long after by his Uncle *Saphradine*.

8 *Saphradine*, the Brother of *Saladine*, having barbarously murdered eight of the Sons of *Saladine*, (the youngest called *Saphradine* escaping only, who was after Sultan of *Alippo*) possessed himself of the Kingdom of *Damascus*, left at his death to *Corradine*, his Son or Nephew.

9 *Corradine*, Son or Nephew to the Tyrant *Saphradine*, was by him at his death left Sultan of *Damascus*; to which all *Syria* and *Palestine* were then made *Provincials*. But the treacheries and murders of *Saphradine* crying loud for vengeance, *Haadon* the *Tartar*, in the year 1262, having taken the King of *Damascus* Prisoner (but whether *Corradine*, or some other, I am not able to say) brought him before the walls of the City, threatening to kill him in the sight of the people, if they did not deliver it unto him. Which the Citizens refusing to do, the wretched King was torn in pieces, and the City taken by assault: the Kingdom taken by the Conquerors conferred upon *Agab* the Son of *Haadon*. And so ended the *Selzucian* Family of the Kings of *Damascus* in the person of *Corradine*, or the Son of *Corradine*, most miserably murdered by the *Tartars*; as it had done in *Egypt* 17 years before, in the person of *Melchisala*, and *Elmurran*, the Son of *Melchisala*, so villainously deposed and murdered by the *Mamelucks*. So slippery is the foundation of those Kingdoms that are laid in blood.

Nor did this Kingdom hold long in the hands of the

T. 1. 1. 1.

Tartars, recovered from them in short time by the *Mamelucks*, then Kings of *Egypt*: from them once more regained by the furious *Tamurlane*: who in the year 1400 besieged *Damascus* with an Army of 1200000 men, (if the number be not mistaken, and one Cypher added more than should) in pursuit whereof he filled up the ditches with his Prisoners, put all the people to the Sword; and with great Art raised three Towers as the Trophy of his victory, built with the heads of those up of vice and virtues, that it is hard to say which had the predominancy. But the violence of this tempest being overblown, the *Mamelucks*, from whom he had also conquered the Kingdom of *Egypt*, recovered *Syria* by de-

grees, and repaired *Damascus*, continuing in their power till the year 1516, when *Selim* the first discomfited *Campſon Gaurus* the *Egyptian* Sultan in the fields of *Alippo*. Upon the news whereof the Citizens of *Damascus*, fearing the spoil of their rich City, then of very great trading, set open their Gates unto the *Visitors*; as did all the other Cities and Towns of *Syria*, by their example. By means whereof, without any more blows, the *Turks* became Lords of this Country; as the next year of *Egypt* also, by the vanquishment and death of *Tonambesin* who succeeded *Campſon*: so rooting out the name and government of the *Mamelucks*, and adding those rich Kingdoms to the Turkish Empire.

Aid fo much for *Syria*.

MOUNT HERMON.

ON our passage out of *Calo-Syria* into *Palestine*, we must cross Mount *Hermon*; a ledge of Hills; which beginning at the East point of the *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly South: in different places, and by several Nations called by divers names. By the *Phoenicians*, *Syrians*; and by the *Amorites*, *Samir*; by the Book of *Plalms*. But *Alfadamus* they are called only where they border upon *Calo-Syria*. Where they begin to part the Region of *Trachonitis* from *Arabia Deserta*, they are called by *Moser* and the Scriptures *Hermon*, part of the Kingdom of *Oz*, the King of *Basan*, as is said; *Iſhmael*, chap. 12. 6. *Syrian* by the *Sidonians*, as is affirmed *Deut.* 3. 9. Running further after this unto the South, they are called *Gilead* or *Galaad*; by *Strabo*, *Trachonitis*, after the name of the Region along which they pass, and are conceived to be the highest part of all Mount *Libanus*, or rather of that long ridge of Mountains which there take beginning. And so we are to understand the words of the Prophet *Jeremy*, saying, *Galaad tu mihi Caput Libani*, as the *Vulgar* readeth it. That is to say, that as the head is the highest part of a man; so these Hills, or this part of them, was the highest of all the branches, or spurs of *Libanus*, called *Galeed* by *Jacob*, from that heap of stones which was there laid by *Laban* and *Jacob*, to be a witness of the Covenant which was made betwixt them, *Gen.* 31. 27, the word signifying in the Original, *An heap*

of Witnesses. And *Laban* said, *This heap is a Witness betwixt me and thee this day*; therefore was the name of it called *Galeed*, ver. 28. By these Hills, and the main Body of the *Anti-Libanus* Lying on the North, and the Mountains of *Phoenicia* and *Idumea* on the West, the Land of *Palestine* is so shut up on every side, that no Fortresses can be the passages in some parts so narrow, as hardly to afford passage for a single person. *Clauditur undique montibus, hinc abruptis rupibus, & profundis vallibus concussa Torventium, inde altis & implexis anfractibus sic contractis, ut per angustos colles vix patet transitu viatori*, as my Author hath it. I had almost forgot to add, that that part of these hills, which is commonly known in Scripture by the name of *Hermon*, is in one place thereof called *Sihon*, as *Deut.* 4. 48. where it is said, that the *Israelites* possessed the Land from *Aroer* on the bank of the River *Arnon*, even to *Mount Sihon*, which is *Hermon*. As also that one of the highest tops or Summits of it, had the name of *Anania*, alluded to by *Solomon* in the fourth of the *Canticles*; by some mistaken for *Amanus*, a branch of *Taurus*, which divides *Syria* from *Cilicia* in the *Leffer Asia*, with which *Solomon* had but small or no acquaintance. And so having cleared our selves of so much of this Mountain, as lay before us in our way, we pass over to *Palestine*: where we shall meet with it again, (or rather with the Western parts and branches of it) under the names of *Gilead* and *Trachonitis*, as a part of that Country.

from whence the divers opinions touching Christ our Saviour, *Mat. 6. 14.* are supposed to spring; as if his Body had been animated with the Soul of *Eliab*, *John the Baptist*, *Jeremy*, or some other Prophet. 2. They adhered so tenaciously to unwritten Traditions, that in comparison of them they Neglected the written Law; as either insufficient or impertinent: And 3. ascribed so much sanctity upon frequent washings, especially when they came from Market, *Mark 7. 4.* (where possibly they might meet with some unclean persons) and before their sitting down to Meat, *Mat. 15. 2.* that if they came unto a place where there was not water enough both to drink and wash, the *Pharisee* would rather chafe to wash than drink, though he died for thirst. More of them he that list to see, may find it copiously set down in the four and twentieth Chapter of Saint *Matthew*; and thither I refer the Reader, by means of which pretensions to so great a sanctity, and some other Arts they had to abuse the People, they grew so strong, and had such store of followers and dependants on them, that they became formidable in short time to their Kings and Princes. Inasmuch that *Alexandra* durst not enter on the Government in her Childre's nonage, as *Josephus* telleth us, *Antiq. lib. 13. cap. 23.* until she had permitted all things unto their disposing; *ἡ βασις δὲ τὸν δαδὸν ὑποτάσσοντες*, &c. and promising to do nothing without their advice. And this she did by the direction of King *Alexander*, her dying Husband: whose Government, as she found by too sad experience had in many things proved unsuccessful, *ὅτι τὸν δαδὸν καὶ αὐτὴν*, because he had put some scorn upon them, and otherwise offended that prevailing Faction. A Faction so predominant amongst the People, faith the same *Josephus*, *Antiq. lib. 19. cap. 18.* *ὅτι ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀνέβητο; ὡς καὶ Ἀρχιερεῖς*, &c. that whatsoever they pleased to spread abroad, either of the *High Priest*, or the King himself, how false or scandalous soever, it was received for truth without more dispute, or any inquiry made into it.

4. But of the *Pharisees* enough, of the *Scribes* anon. Proceed we now to the *Herodians* and the *Gaulonites*, whom I look not on, as either the Authors or Promoters of any Sect of Religion in the *Jewish* Church; but as the names of two opposite Factions in the Civil State. The first were such who depending upon *Herod's* Fortune, as he did on the pleasure of the *Roman* Emperours, solicited the paying of Tribute to the *Romans*; and earnestly pressed upon that point, that *Herod* might be thereby the more endeared to his Masters of *Rome*, and they to him. Upon this ground nick-named *Herodians* by the People, as men that more endeavoured the greatness and Estate of *Herod*, than the prosperity and liberty of their Native Country. And possible enough it is, that some amongst them seeing the Magnificence of *Herod's* Palace, and experimentally knowing his Power, might fancy him to be the *Messiah* so long looked for, and thereby own this name with a better Title, than the others did. Opposite unto these, were those called the *Gaulonites* (we may call the one the Court-Faction, the other the Faction of the Country, or Common people): so named from one *Judas a Gaulonite*, as *Josephus* calleth him, from the place of his birth; a *Gaulanite*, as *Gamael* calleth him, *Act. 5. 37.* from the place of his abode or habitation. By him the *Jews* were practised with to deny this Tribute, telling them that it was a manifest token of their servitude, and that they ought to know no Lord, but the Lord of Heaven; in which Actions he and his Adherents perished, and were brought to nothing. Most of his fol-

lowers were of *Galilee*, though he had some Disciples in *Hierusalem* and *Samarita* also: and of these *Galileans* were those poor men, whose blood *Pilate* is said to mingle with their Sacrifices, *Luk. 13. 1.*

The Language of this People, by them called the *Hebrews*, was naturally and originally the same which *Abraham* found the Land of *Canaan*, at his coming thither; as hath been shewn before when we were in *Phoenicia*. Used by them constantly till their subjugation by the *Babylonians*, when being led captive to that Country, and conforming themselves to the Speech and Dialect of it; they came at last to speak a kind of broken Language, neither true *Chaldee*, nor good *Hebrew*, but one made of both. *Chaldee* as to the main body of it; but *Hebrew* as to the affixes, points, and Conjugation: being the same with that which we now call the *Syriack*. And at their coming home, after seventy years, had so far lost the knowledge of their Mother-Tongue, that they were not able to understand the words of the Holy Scripture, when *Ezra* read it in their hearing; inasmuch that he was forced to employ some learned in that Tongue to expound it to them. To this the *Scribes* so often mentioned in the New Testament, must refer their original: there being no such Office heard of till the time of *Ezra*, though long before that time the Law had ordinarily been read unto them in the Feast of Tabernacles. For this cause they were called *Scribes of the Law*, *Ezra. 7. 6.* *Doctores of the Law*, *Luk. 5. 17.* and simply by the name of *Lawyers*, *Luk. 7. 30.* as men whose office was to expound the Law, and make it intelligible to the People. These we may best resemble to the Canonists in the Church of *Rome* or the Divinity-Reader in some School or College: and grew to such great estimation in the *Jewish* State, that it was hard to lay at last whether the *Pharisees* or they were the better men. For what the *Pharisees* gained on the common people by pretence of Sanctity, these got more justifiably by their zeal to the written Word, which they endeavoured to preserve from the common dangers both of corruption and contempt. And though I look on those men especially, as the name of a Faction, not a Sect: yet being they held so close to the *Pharisees*, and concurred with them in most of their Superstitions, as appeareth *Mat. 23.* I consider them as a strong and potent Faction, of great authority and influence in affairs of moment.

For matters of Religion, the People of this Land were privileged above all others, had they had the grace to make good use of it: the Law being given to them by God the Father, the Gospel preached amongst them by God the Son, and that Gospel countenanced and confirmed before their eyes. By the miraculous Operations of the Holy Ghost. The Government of that Church in the time of the Law, by a subordination of Priests and Levites to their several Heads; the Priests divided by King *David* into twenty four Ranks or *Classes*, each *Class* serving in their turns at the Holy Temple: the Chiefs or Heads of which several *Classes*, made but that Body of men which are called *Principes Sacerdotum*, or Chief Priests, so often mentioned in the Writings of the Holy Evangelists. Over all which there was one Supreme, whom they called *Summus Sacerdotum*, or the High Priest, descended lineally from *Aaron*, till the *Romans* out of avarice and Reason of State made the Office saleable. And because possibly the High Priest might be under some pollution, and so incapable by Law to perform his Office, he had his *Suffragan* (or *Sagan*) to discharge it for him. Of which sort was *Zephaniah*, the *Sagan* or second Priest to *Semibab*, mentioned *Jer. 52. 24*. And of this sort is *Annas* thought by some to have been

to *Caiaphas*; and for that cause the title of High Priest to be given to both, *Luk. 3. 2.* though others think that *Annas* was High Priest in right, and the other in fact; the one being deposed by the *Romans*, and the other super-induced into the place. In time of Christianity they were governed as in other Churches, by a subordination of Priests to Bishops. The first Bishop said to be *St. James*, the Son of *Alphaeus*, commonly called the *Lord's Brother*, affirmed by *Ignatius*, Scholar to the Apostle, in his Epistle ad *Trallianus*; by *Egeffippus*, who lived in the Apostles times, as *St. Hierom* and *Eusebius* cite him; as also by *Clemens of Alexandria* cited by *Eusebius*, *Hist. l. 1. c. 14.* by *Cyril of Hierusalem*, *Catechesis 4. 4.* *Epiphanius*, *Hæres. 78. n. 7.* *St. Ambrose* in *Gal. 1. St. Chrysostom* on the last of *St. John's* Gospel; *St. Hierom* in his Catalogue of Ecclesiastical Writers; *St. Augustine* com. *Crescon. l. 2. c. 37.* To whom there may be added the joyful consent of 289 Prelates assembled in the sixth General Council holden at *Constantinople*, affirming *James the Lord's Brother* to be the first Bishop of *Hierusalem*: all of them, with the Fathers before mentioned, taking the word *Bishop* in that sense, in which it generally passed for the times they lived in. His Successors subject at the first to the Bishop of *Cæsarea*, as their *Metropolitans*; though privileged in their own Diocese, with the rights of *Patriarchs*, as appears evidently by the Acts of the *Nicean* Council. But afterwards for the greater honour of the Holy City, wherein our Saviour wrought the work of our Redemption, it was ordained at *Chalcedon*, that the Bishop of *Hierusalem* should have as well the jurisdiction as the name of a *Patriarch*; the three *Patriarchs* (for *Constantine* had before divided it into so many Provinces) being subducted from the power of the See of *Antioch*, to make up his *Patriarchate*. So stood it in elder times, but now by the inroad of *Mahometanism* the Christian faith is obscured, and the beauty of it so eclipsed, that were it not for some Sects of Christians dwelling in Mount *Sinai*, and about *Hierusalem*, it might be said without any manifest untruth, to be quite extinguished.

But to look back upon the Country, it cannot be described more fully and significantly, than *Moses* hath done it to our hands, in *Deut. 8.* Where it is said to be a Land of Brooks and Waters, of Fountains and Depths, that spring out of the Valleys and Hills: a Land of Wheat and Barley, and Vines, and Fig-trees, and Pomegranates; of Oyl-Olive, and Honey: a Land, wherein man bread, without scarceness; a Land whose stones were as Iron, and out of whose Hills one may dig Brass. An ample commendation; and a Country, which did not only consist in this flourishing plenty, but the perpetuity of its fruits: it being on record in the Epistles of the Emperor *Julian* (surnamed *the Apostate*) that the Fig-trees, and other fruit-trees herein, were seldom or never without fruits; the old not falling off, till the new come on. Which his report, if true, (as certainly he did not love our Saviour so well as to flatter the Country for his sake) we have then an answer to the difficulty, which hath so much perplexed all Commentators of former times; and that is, why our Saviour should curse the Fig-tree for not bearing fruit, when *Mar. 14. 13.* For though the time for new fruits was not yet come; yet come it being then but early Spring; yet our Saviour being hungry might expect to find some of the old, and this solution of the doubt discountenanced, (rather much try, as it stands at present; naturally adorned with beautiful Mountains, and luxurious Valleys, the Rock

affording excellent Waters, and the air never pinched with colds, nor scorched with heats. And though either by the negligence of the Inhabitants, or some curse laid upon the Land, far short of that fertility with which it flourished; Yet still *Figs*, *Olive*, *Pomegranates*, *Wine*, with *Oranges*, and the *Apple of Paradise*, which agrees very well with that of *Julian* (spoken of before) as with Goats, Swine, Hares, Quails, and Partridges; and also pestered so in many places with Rats and Mice, that if it were not for certain Birds, which feed upon them, it were not possible for the people to have any Harvest. But what they had anciently, not now. Nor any Nuts, Pears, Plums or Cherries, but what are brought thither from *Damascus*.

Principal Rivers of this Country, are 1. *Chisbon*, the *Chorlens* of *Proteny*, which riseth out of Mount *Tabor* in *Galilee*, and falleth into the *Mediterranean* Sea, not far from Mount *Carmel* in *Phoenicia*. 2. *Cedron*, a Torrent Mount of *Olive*; but more remarkable for many notable actions, than many others of a greater both name and course. For over this Brook did *David* pass when he fled from *Achish*; and over this our Saviour, the Son of *Bethsaida*, did *Asa* the King of *Judah* burn his Mothers *Idols*, 1 *King. 15.* as *Joshab* did the Vessels whith were made for *Baal*, 2 *King. 23.* 3. *Zared*. And 4. *Naphthali*, which arising out of the hills of the Tribe of *Issachar*, which hath his spring in the *Mediterranean*, 5. *Arnon*, his course in the *Mare Mortuum*. 6. *Jordan*, oft mentioned in the Scriptures; which issuing out of the Mountains of *Galaad*. And 7. *Hermon*, which springing from the hills so named, lose themselves in *Jordan*. 8. *Jordan*, so called from *Jor* and *Dan*, two neighbouring Fountains, out of which he seems to take his source; though they do also fetch their spring from *Phinias*, a round deep Well at the foot of *Anti-Libanus*, about twenty four miles from these Fountains, into which he maketh his way like a *Mole* under ground. A River of more fame, than length; breadth, or depth, running from North to South, almost in a straight line to the *Dead Sea*, where he endeth his course; not navigably deep, nor above 10 yards in breadth, where broadest; shadowed on both sides with *Poplars*, *Tamarisks*, and *Reeds* of many several sorts, of some of which the *Arabians* make *Darts* & *Quarrels*, of others *Arrows*, & some again they fashion into Pens to write with. Passing along it maketh two Lakes, the one in the *Upper Galilee*, by the Ancients called *Sannachonitis*, dry for the most part in Summer, and then covered with shrubs and sedge; not mentioned in the holy Scriptures: the other in the *Lower Galilee*, about an 100 furlongs in length, and about forty in breadth; called the *Sea of Galilee* from name on the banks thereof, & for the like cause called also the *Lake of Genesareth*. And here it is to be observed, that the River passeth thorow this Lake with so swift a current, that it preserves it self distinct from the waters of it both in taste and colour, as is affirmed of *Nilus* for a long time in the *Mediterranean*, and other great Rivers in their falls. Finally, having run thorow the Plains of *Hiericho*; it is fifteen it's course at last in the *Mare Mortuum*, or *Dead Sea*. Honoured with the name of a *Sea*, because salt; and large, seventy miles long, and sixteen broad; & furnishing with Salt the whole Land of *Jerry*, but called the *Dead Sea*, either because it had no visible efflux into the *Ocean*; nor is it at all increased with the waters of this River, and

many other *Torrents* which fall into it; or because no living Creature is nourished in it, suffocated with the *Bisuminous* favour which it fendeth forth, from the abundance of which matter it is also called *Lacus Asphaltites*. Nigh herunto stood the once famous Cities of *Sodom* and *Gomorrab*, with three others more, whence the Valley had the name of *Pentapolis*, destroyed for their abominations by a fire from heaven: now fruitful in flow only, but not in substance; the fruits here growing, being very fair unto the eye, *Sed levi tactu pressa in aqum fassitum pulverem*, but if touched, moulder into ashes, as *Solinus* hath it.

Chief Hills and Mountains of it, besides *Anti-Libanus*, and Mount *Hermion*, spoken of already, which be only borderers, are 1 Mount *Sion*, memorable for the Tower of *David*, which was built upon it, called frequently the Holy Hill of *Sion*. 2 Mount *Moriab*, famous for the intended Sacrifice of *Isaac*, and the Temple of *Solomon*. 3 Mount *Calvary*, on which *CHRIST* suffered, supposed to be the burial-place of our Father *Adam*. 4 Mount *Tabor*, on which our Saviour was transfigured. 5 Mount *Oliver*, from which he ascended into Heaven. 6 Mount *Gazizim*, whercon stood the *Samaritanians* Temple, their ordinary place of Worship, mentioned *Joh. 4. 20.* 7 The Mountains of *Saron*, stretching with intermixed Valleys from the Sea of *Galilee* to the *Mediterranean*, not far from *Tyre*, there ending in a white cliff, and for that cause called *Capo Bianco* by the Sailer. The whole Mountain pleasantly enriched with the fragrant smells of *Rosemary*, Sweet *Marjoram*, *Hyslop*, *Bayes*, and other Odoriferous Plants which do grow there naturally; but for that, destitute of any other Inhabitants than *Leopards*, *Boars*, *Jaccals*, and such Savage Creatures. 8 The Mountains of *Gilboa*, the highest on the West of *Jordan*, as 9 those of *Bajan*, celebrated for their height in the Book of *Psalms*. And 10 those of *Abarim* on the East-side of it: from one of the Summits of which last called *Nebo*, by some Writers *Pigab*, the Lord gave *Moses* a Survey of the Land of *Promise*.

As for this whole Country comprehended in the name of *Palestine*, it hath had divers divisions, according to the quality of the people, or the will of those who have been formerly Masters of it. Divided first betwixt the *Philistines*, *Perazites*, *Hittites*, *Jebusites*, and others of the Sons of *Canaan*, on this side *Jordan*; the *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Midianites*, and *Amorites*, dwelling on the other. When conquered by the Sons of *Jacob*, it was divided into twelve Tribes, of 1 *Judah*, 2 *Benjamin*, 3 *Simeon*, 4 *Dan*, 5 *Aser*, 6 *Nephthali*, 7 *Zabulon*, 8 *Issachar*, 9 *Gad*, 10 *Reuben*, 11 *Ephraim*, and 12 *Manasseh*. When that great breach was made by *Jeroboam*, in the Kingdom of *David*, it was broken into the two Kingdoms of *Judah* and *Israel*; of which the first contained only the two Tribes of *Judah* and *Benjamin*, the latter comprehending the other Ten. When the *Israelites* were led Captive into *Affrya*, and a new set of People planted in their rooms, those new-comers from *Samarria*, their Capital City, had the name of *Samaritians*: and when the men of *Judah* were released of their long captivity, and came back from *Babylon*, they took to themselves the name of *Jews*. After which time, the whole Country of *Palestine* anciently possessed or subdued by the seed of *Abraham*, was divided into 1 *Peraz*, 2 *Ituraea*, 3 *Galilee*, 4 *Samarria*, 5 *Judea*, and 6 *Idumea*. When conquered by the *Romans*, all these were joynted into one Province, which for a time was reckoned as a part of *Syria*, or at least subordinate. But *Constantine* not liking of the one or the other, went a way by himself, and cast it into three Provinces, viz. 1 *Palestina*

Prima, 2 *Palestina Secunda*, and 3 *Palestina Salutaris*; the Metropolis of the first being *Casarea Palestina*; of the second, *Samarria*; of the third, *Hierusalem*. But this division of *Constantine's* growing out of use, we will adhere unto the former: Beginning first with those parts herof which lay on the other side of *Jordan*, because first conquered and possessed by the house of *Israel*; who at that Gate found entrance into all the rest; and coming round to *Idumea*, which last of last these Provinces was added to the State of *Jettyry*. In the *Chorography* wherof, I must confess my self a Debtor to *Sir Walter Rowligh*, whose industry heren hath saved me a great deal of search, though sometimes I make bold to differ from him, and add to him, as I see occasion.

1 PERAZ.

PERAZ, is that part of *Palestine*, which lyeth betwixt the River *Jordan*, and the Mountains of *Armon*, (which divide *Palestine* from *Syria* and *Arabia*) East and West; and reacheth from *Pellain* the North, to *Petra* the chief Town of *Arabia Petraea*, in the South. By *Pliny* it is made to bend more towards *Aegypt*, who describes it thus: *Peraz Judea pars est ulterior, Arabia, & Aegypti proxima, apertis dispersis montibus, & acatis Judæis, Jordane amne disiecta.* *Peraz* (saith he) is the furthest part of *Judea*, neighbouring *Arabia* and *Aegypt*, interperfed with rough and craggy Mountains, and parted from the rest of the *Jews* by the River *Jordan*. So called from the Greek word *παρα*, in regard of the situation of it on the other side of that River; and not improperly might be rendered by *Trans-Jordania*. Blessed with a rich soil, and large fields beset with divers Trees, especially of *Olives*, *Vines*, and *Palms*. The habitation in times past of the *Midianites*, *Moabites*, and *Ammonites*, as also of the two Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*. Of all which I shall speak in order, beginning with the *Midianites*, and the Children of *Lot*, as the first occupants heresof, upon the knowledge of whose affairs, the State and Story of the *Israelites* hath so much dependence.

And first the *ADIANITES* inhabited on the South-East of the *Dead Sea*, at the very entrance of the Country; descended from one or more of the five sons of *Madian*, the son of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, mentioned *Gen. 25. 4.* who leaving the rest of their brethren to seek themselves new habitations, more towards the Banks of the Red Sea, and the Deserts of *Arabia Petraea*; continued near unto the place of *Abraham's* dwelling; and mingling with the *Moabites* and *Canaanites* in blood and marriages, came in short time to lose all the knowledge of the true God, and to worship idols, as the rest of their neighbours did.

Their chief Cities were 1 *Recome*, built by one of the five Kings of the *Midianites*, which was slain by *Joshuah*, afterwards called *Sebab*, 2 *King. 14. 7.* accounted at that time a City of the *Edomites*; next of the *Israelites* or *Arabians*, and by them called *Hogaz*. Best known unto the *Greeks* and *Romans*, by the name of *Petra*, and by that name we shall take further notice of it when we come to *Arabia*. 2 *Midian*, on the Banks of the *Dead Sea*, the ordinary residence of their Princes, absolute of themselves at first, as in other places; but at the time when *Moses* and *Joshuah* led the People into their possessions, subjected unto *Sihon* King of the *Amorites*; whose Dukes their five Kings and Princes are said to be, *Joh. 13. 21.* A People whom the *Israelites* had neither Commillion or intent to make War upon, if they had not causlessly provoked them, at the request of the *Moabites*, by sending amongst them (as *Balaam* the false Prophet had advised) the most beautiful of all their women,

not only to entice them to prohibited mixtures, but to allure them to the worship of their Idols also. A mischievous and successful plot, but alike dangerous to both parties: God sending a fierce Plague amongst the *Israelites*, which cost them the lives of 24000 persons; besides such as perished by the sword; and giving a command to *Moses*, to avenge him of the *Midianites*, who had so provoked him. On Which Commillion *Moses* called out 12000 men, and sent them under *Phineas* against the *Midianites*: by whom all their Princes were slain, their Cities and goodly Castles burnt with fire, their men, women and male-children put unto the sword, as is related in the one and thirtieth Chapter of the Book recovered their former power, if not a greater; and after the death of *Barak* the Judge of *Israel*, did for the space of four years so afflict that people, that they were fain to hide themselves in the *Caves* and *strong holds* of the mountains, as is said *Judg. 6. 2.* their enemies having left them *v. 4.* But *Gideon* being raised up by God for their deliverance, encountered with their four Kings, and put them to flight: of which four *Oreb* and *Zeeb* were taken and slain by the *Ephraimites* at the passage of *Jordan*; *Zeba* and *Zalmunna* taken by *Gideon* himself, and War there are said to have perished of this people and which so weakened that we hear no more of them from name and Country being first incorporated into that of the *Edomites*, and after into that of the *Israelites*, and of the Inhabitants of *Arabia Petraea*.

The *MOABITES* possessed all the Country, from the *Midianites* in the South, as far as to *Esbon* in the North, on both sides of the River *Arnon*: having *Jordan* on the West, and the Hills of *Abarim* on the East. Possessed at the first by the *Emmins*, a race of these being vanquished and broken by *Chedorlaomer* and his Associates, of which see *Gen. 14. 5.* their former fears were taken up by the *Moabites*, descended from *Moab*, one of the sons of *Lot*; who lived here in great prosperity till the time of *Yabeh*, Grand-father unto *Balaam*, the son of *Zippor*; from whom *Sehon* King of the *Amorites* had taken all the parts of *Moab* on the North of the River *Arnon*, and made that River, which before was the middle of *Moab*, to be the North Bound or border of it. In which estate it stood in the time of *Moses*.

Chief Cities of it at that time, were 1 *Rabbat*, the Regal seat of *Balaam* the King of *Moab*, the *Rhabmabum* of *Ptolemy*. 2 *Diblatam*, destroyed with the rest of *Moab*, by *Nebuchadnezzar*, as is said *Jer. 48. 22.* 3 *Gallim*, the Principality of *Phadai* the Son of *Lasib*, to whom *Saul* gave his Daughter *Michal*, formerly married unto *David*, 1 *Sam. 25. 44.* 4 *Muthana* and 5 *Nababiel*, thorough called *Beer*. 6 *Banath*, where *Moses* was encamped when he sent to *Sehon* to demand a passage through his Country, *Numb. 21. 19.* &c. 7 *Mispah*, the City of Refuge troubles under *Saul*, the Mother of *David*, in the time of his meddled with by *Moses* in his march this way, the Lord himself forbidding him to touch upon it, or distress it, because it had been given by him for an inheritance to the children of *Lot*, *Deut. 2. 9.* Which prohibition was not only for this place particularly; (though this Territory then in their possession) but for all the Lands and chief note for the barbarous and inhumane fact of *Michal*

the *Moabish* King, who being besieged herein by the Kings of *Judah*, *Israel*, and *Edom*, without hope of escape, sacrificed his own Eldest Son on the wall thereof; forsook the King of *Israel* whole the quarrel was. So the siege was raised, 2 *King. 3. 17.*

Now as *Moses* did not at the present disobey God's Order, in leaving the *Moabites* in quiet; so neither did the *Moabites* on their parts provoke him to any hostile act, giving him a free and open passage in his march for *Canaan*; out of an hope that when the *Amorites* were subdued, they should be put into possession of their lost Estates. And though they were deceived of that expectation, the *Israelites* looking on that Country which they had conquered, as the spoils of the *Amorites*, and giving it for a possession to the Tribe of *Reuben*: yet durst they not do any thing in the way of arms, but sent for *Balaam* the false Prophet, to call them by his Curses and Incantations into some Disasters; whereby their strength and courage might be taken from them. *Balaam* the son of *Zippor* was at this time King. After whom we find not the name of any other, till we come to *Egdon*, who with the help of *Ammon* and *Amalek*, overmastered *Israel*, and for the space of 18 years tyrannized amongst them: when slain in his own House, and afterwards 10000 of his people by the hand of *Egdon*. But this indignity was in the times succeeding that; but more by *David*, who subdued them, and made them Tributaries: and not only, but subjected them to the vilest Offices as is imagined in that form of Speech, *Moab is my wash-pot*, *Psal. 68. 8.* Taking their opportunity, they withdrew themselves from the House of *David*, and put themselves under the command of the Kings of *Israel*, to whom they paid for Tribute in the time of *Abah*, 100000 Lambs, and 200000 Rams, with their fleeces on: but quickly weary of those payments, and revolting from the House of *Abah* also, they were invaded by *Yehoram*, aided herein by the Kings of *Judah* and *Idumea*; by whom being vanquished, *Michal* their King was slain: so shut himself up in *Kir-hazareth*, as was said before. After this joyning with the *Ammonites* and the *Idumeans* or sons of *Edom*, they invaded *Jehoshaphat* King of *Judah*, to whom God gave a memorable and signal Victory, without blood or Battel: the *Ammonites* first setting upon the *Edomites*, and after upon one another, till they were almost all destroyed, 2 *Chron. 20. 23.* From this time we hear nothing of them; but probably they recovered some part of their former Dwellings, when that two Tribes and a half on the East of *Jordan* were carried away captive by *Tiglah Pileser*. Possessed herof, and of other their habitations, till the reign of *Zedekiah* King of *Judah*; when vanquished, with the rest of these Nations, by *Nordin* we any mention of them in the Ages following; the name of *Moab* being forgotten, or grown out of use: the South parts of their Country laid to *Arabia Petraea*, as the East parts were to that of *Arabia Deserta*; and all the rest, as well as that which had been conquered by the *Jews*, swallowed up in the general name of *Palestina*.

3 The *AMMONITES* inhabited on the North-East of the River *Arnon*, and possessed all that Tract from *Arnon*, on the Head of the River, to the City of *Rabbah*; and on both sides of the River *Jabor*, as well within the Mountains of *Galaad* as without the Sea. The Seat in elder times of the *Rephaim*, and *Zamzummim*, a Giant-like Race of men, as the *Emmins* were; but vanquished also, as the others, by *Chedorlaomer*.

Chedor-Neuser, *Ashurath* and *Heth* being then the principal of their Habitations. Succeeded too in their desolate and forsaken dwellings, by the children of *Ammon*, the other Son of *Lot*, and the Brother of *Moab*; both Houses running the same fortune; These *Ammonites* being conquered, and deprived of the best part of their Country on the South-side of *Jabob*, by *Og* King of *Basan*; as the *Moabites*, at the same time, of theirs by *Sehon*. A Monument of which subjection was the Bed of *Og*, found in the City of *Rabbah*, the chief City of *Ammon*, there to be seen when *Moses* had subdued the Kings of the *Amorites*, as appeareth in *Deut. 3*.

Chief Cities at such time as the *Israelites* first conquered the Land of *Canaan*, were 1 *Rabbah*, the Regal City of their Kings; taken by *Og* of *Basan* as is said before; but again quitted as it seemeth on the coming of *Moses*, that he might be better able to keep the Field. Memorable in succeeding times for the death of *Uriah*, slain here by a design of *David's* when belied by *Joab*. Who having brought it to terms of yielding, sent for the King to come before him, that he might have the honour of taking a place so defensible, environed in a manner with the River *Jabob*, and therefore called the City of *Waters*; 2 *Sam. 12. 27*. Afterwards repaired and beautified by *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, King of *Egypt*, who having made himself Master of those parts of *Arabia*, which lay near unto it, and liking the conveniency of the situation, honoured it with the name of *Philadelphia*; 3 *Darbema*, supposed to be *Rishma*, by the Learned *Junius*, mentioned *Numb. 33. 18*. (the Hebrew Letters *D* and *A* being much alike) a place of great strength among the *Ammonites*. 3 *Mimeth*, in the South Border, and 4 *Abel-vinorum* in the East Border of *Ammon*; both mentioned in the pursuit of that People when subdued by *Jephthe*. 5 *Mispa*, sometimes one of the Cities of the half Tribe of *Manasse*, and at that time honoured with the residence of *Jephthe*; but afterwards recovered by the Children of *Ammon*; in whose hands it was, when utterly destroyed and burnt by *Judas Maccabeus*, 1 *Macc. 5. 35*. 6 *Magog*, and 7 *Bor*, two other strong places of the *Ammonites*, there also mentioned; but said to be in the Region of *Galaad*, by which name, or by that of *Gileadites*, all the Country of the *Ammonites* lying on this side of the Mountains was at that time called.

As for those *Ammonites*, they had nothing at all to do with *Israel* as they passed towards *Canaan*; neither provoking them, nor being provoked by them, to any acts of hostility. Afterwards not well pleased that they were not reforested to the possession of those Lands which had been taken from them by *Og* of *Basan*, (conferred by the Decree of *Moses* on the Tribe of *Gad*) they joined with the *Midianites* in their Expedition. But wearied by the pusillane and good fortune of *Gideon*; they lay still a while, till stirred up by some secret motion from Almighty God, to avenge him on that sinful and Idolatrous People, who by worshipping the gods of the Heathen, had provoked him to anger. Prosperous in it for a time, till his wrath was pacified; who having made use of them to chastise his People, delivered up his Rod to be burnt by *Jephthe*, vanquished and driven home by him with a very great slaughter. Not so much crushed by the unsuccessfulness of this attempt, but that in the time of *Saul* they brake out again and besieged *Jabesh Gilead*; *Nababli*, a cruel Tyrant, being then their King, who having brought the City into great extremity, would give them no other conditions than the loss of every man's right eye: to the end that using to carry a great Target on their left Arms, where-with the eye on that side was wholly shadowed, they

might by this means be disabled from all future service. But *Saul* came time enough to save them from that shame and loss; from that cause so offensive to *Nababli*, that to despight him, he shewed friendship to *David* in the time of his trouble. A courtship which *David* was so mindful of, that he sent Embassadors to *Hanan* the Son of *Nababli*, to make acknowledgment of it, and to confirm the amity which he had with his Father: but found so ill requital from him, that instead of thanks and kind acceptance, his Messengers were despitfully handled, their Beards half shaven, and their Garments cut off by the knee. Incensed therewith he sent *Joab* against them; by whom the Country was laid waste, and *Rabbah* their chief City taken; their Kings Crown weighing a Talent of Gold, set on *David's* head, and all the Prisoners executed with great severity, some of them being cast into Lime-kilns, and the rest torn in pieces with Saws and Harrows. Quiet a long while after this, we hear no great news of them till the reign of *Jehoshaphat*, against whom confederated with the *Edomites* and *Moabites*, they made open War; but fell by one another's Swords, as was said before. Not well recovered of this blow, they were subdued and made Tributaries by *Ozias* King of *Judah*, and so continued in the time of *Joatham* his Son; who so increased the tribute laid upon them by his Father, that it amounted to an hundred Talents of Silver, ten thousand measures of Wheat, and as many of Barley. Taught by this Lesson how to value the Kings of *Judah*, they continued either quiet Neighbours, or obedient Subjects, though much improved in power and reputation, by regaining the greatest part of their ancient Dwellings, on the removal of the two Tribes and an half, on the East of *Jordan*, to the Land of *Affria*, by *Tiglah Pilser*. For after this (with reference to the common danger) *Baalis* their King was so strict a Confederate with *Zedechias*, that when *Nebuchadnezzar* had taken *Zedechias* with him unto *Babylon*, and left *Gedaliah* as his Deputy to command the Country, *Ismael*, one of the blood of the Kings of *Judah*, was sent by *Baalis* to slay him. But he paid dear for his attempt; his Country being shortly conquered by the *Babylonians*, and the name of *Ammonite* forgotten: changed by the *Gracians* when they came to Lord it over them, to those of *Gileadites* and *Philadelphia*; according to the new name of their Principal City; and the old one of the Mountains and Hills adjoining.

4 The *REUBENITES* took name from *Reuben*, the eldest of *Jacob's* Sons by *Leah*; of whom, in the first Muster which was made of them at Mount *Sinai*, there were found 46000 fighting men; and 43700 at the second Muster, when they passed over *Jordan*. Their dwelling was on the East of that famous River, having the *Gadites* on the North, the *Desart Arabia* on the East, and the Land of *Moab* on the South, from which parted by the River *Arnon*.

Places of most observation here, *Abel-Sittim*, seated in that part of the Country which is called the Plains of *Moab*; the last incamping place of *Moses*: afterwards by the *Jews* called simply *Sittim*: Memorable for the Wood so often mentioned in the Scriptures, of which the *Ark of the Lord* was made. In after-times by some Greeks and Romans it was called *Abila*, mistook by some for that *Abila* or *Abilene* wherof *Lysanias* was Tetrarch: that Town and Territory, as *Josaphus* doth ascribe expressly, being situate amongst the spurs and branches of *Libanus*, far enough from hence. 2 *Beth-barah*, or *Beth-Bara*, where *John* baptized, and *Moses* made his last and most Divine exhortations to the Tribes of *Israel* contained in *Deuteronomy*. 3 *Macbarn*, the strongest

in-land City and Castle in those parts of the World, standing aloft upon a Mountain every way unaccessible: first fortified by *Alexander Jannaeus* King of the *Jews*, as a frontier Town against the *Arabians*; and afterwards demolished by *Gabinus*, one of *Pompey's* Lieutenants, in the War against *Antipater*. Unfortunately remarkable for the death of *John Baptist*, where murdered by the command of *Herod* the Tetrarch of *Galilee*, and Lord of this Country of *Perea*. 4 *Lafsa*, or *Lejab*, of which *Gen. 10. 19*: by the Greeks called *Callirhoe*, by reason of the fair Fountains rising from the Hills adjoining, out of which issue Springs both of hot and cold Waters, as also bitter and sweet; all which soon after joined into one stream, make a wholesome Bath, especially for Convulsions and contraction of Sinews. 5 *Medeba*, famous for the defeat given to the *Syrians* and *Ammonites* by the conduct of *Joab*, 1 *Chron. 19. 7*. In the time of the Greeks laid with some other Towns of this Tract unto *Cela-Syria*; but in the declining times of the *Seleucian* Family, regained unto the Crown of the *Jewry* by *Alexander*, the second King of the Race of the *Maccabees*; and finally, with eleven others in those parts, delivered by *Antipater* the Father of *Herod* into the hands of *Aretas* King of the *Arabians*, hoping thereby to gain him to the side of *Hyrcanus* the Son of *Alexander*, whose cause *Antipater* most favoured. 6 *Bor*, or *Bozra*, a City of *Refuge*, and one of those that were assigned unto the *Levites* on that side of the Water. 7 *Livias*, a Town new built by *Herod*, in honour of *Livia*, the Mother of *Tiberius Caesar*: different from that which the Geographers call *Libia* (though by some confounded) the same with *Laban*, mentioned *Deut. 1. 1*. 9 *Kedemoth*, another City of the *Levites*, giving name unto the adjoining Desert, from whence *Moses* sent his Ambassage to *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*. 10 *Banath-Baal*, the chief City of the Worshipers of *Baal*, to which *Balaam* was brought by *Balaac* to curse the *Israelites*. 11 *Heshbon*, the Regal City of *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*. 12 *Adam*, or the City over *Jordan*, opposite unto *Gilgal* in the Tribe of *Benjamin*. Within this Tribe is the Mountain *Nabo*, from which *Moses* took a view of the Land of *Canaan*: an eth towards *Jericho*, is called *Pisgab*: that which looketh toward *Moab* being called *Hur*. Here is also a high shipped also, who hath hence the addition of *Baal-Peor*.

5 The *GADITES* were so called from *Gad* the seventh Son of *Jacob*, begot on *Zilpah* the Hand-maid of *Leah*; of whom were found at the first Muster hundred and fifty fighting men; and at the second, when they entered the Land of *Canaan*, forty five thousand bearing Arms. Their situation was betwixt the *Reubenites* on the South, and the half Tribe of *Manasse* upon the North; the River *Jordan* on the West, and the Mountains of *Arnon* on the East; by which last parted from the dwellings of the Children of *Ammon*. Cities of most observation; 1 *Aroer*, on the Banks of the River *Arnon*, the principal City of the *Gadites*. 2 *Dibon*, more towards *Jordan*; of great note in the time of *Josiah*, and of no small account in the time of *Saint Hierom*. 3 *Beth-nimrah*, of which *Esey* prophesied that the Waters thereof should be dried up; feared upon the *Arnon* also. 4 *Natowah*, more in the body of the Tribe. 5 *Beth-haram*, mentioned by *John*, chap. 13. v. 27. by *Josaphus* called *Betaramphus*; new built by *Herod Antipater*, and called *Livias*, in honour

of *Livia* the Wife of *Augustus Caesar*, translated into the *Julian* Family; who also laid out its fourteen Villages, to make it of the greater Power and Jurisdiction. 6 *Beth-zabab*, by *Josaphus* called *Vatcedra*, the habitation of *Miriam*, who in the Siege of *Jerusalem*, when destroyed by *Titus*, was compelled by Famine to eat her own Son. 7 *Succoth*, not far from the River *Jordan*, so called from the Tents or Booths which *Jacob* set up there, in his passage from *Mesopotamia* to the Land of *Canaan*: the People of which Town having denied relief to *Gideon*, as he followed the chase of *Zebah* and *Zalmunna*, were by him miserably tortured at his return, under a *Tribulum* or *Threshing-Car*, wherewith he tore their flesh, and bruised their bodies. 8 *Jabaz*, another of the Regal Seats of *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*; first taken by *Moses*, after recovered by the *Moabites* (as appeareth *Isa. 16. 8*) then possessed by the *Ammonites*; and finally from thence regained by *Judas Maccabeus*, 1 *Macc. 5. 8*. *Maonaim*, so called from the Army of *Angels* which appeared to *Jacob* (*Gen. 32. 2*) as ready to defend him against all his Enemies, the word very great strength and safety. A place of very great strength and safety, and therefore made by *Abner* the Seat Royal of *Israhel*, the Son of *Saul*, during the War he had with *David*; as afterwards the retiring place of *David*, during the Rebellion of his Son *Abishalom*. 10 *Regelim*, the City of *Barzillai* the *Gileadite*, so faithful to *David* in that War. 11 *Ramoth*, or *Ramoth Gilead*, so called from the situation of it near the Mountains of *Gilead*; a Town of special note in the Book of *Rod*: particularly, for the Facilitation here made between *Jacob* and *Laban*; for the death of *Abah* King of *Israel*, who lost his Life in the recovery of it from the hands of the *Syrians*; and finally, for the Election of *Jehoi* to the Crown of *Israel*. Anointed at the Siege hereof, by a Son of the *Prophets*. 12 *Penuel*, so called from the interview which the Lord pleased to bestow there on his Servant *Jacob*, at his return out of *Mesopotamia*, the place of the face or vision of God: defaced by *Gideon* for their churchful usage of him, when he craved relief of them against the *Midianites*; to whom, together with pertaining to these two Tribes, did once belong. But King of the *Amorites*, it came by the overthrow of those to the Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*, for their habitation. Continuing theirs till the fall period of the Kingdom of *Israel* began to approach; at what time these two Tribes, with the half Tribe of *Manasse* lying on the East of *Jordan*, being carried captive unto *Affria*, by *Tiglah Pilser*, the *Moabites* and *Ammonites* recovered a great part of their ancient dwellings. Of which possessed, till their subversion by the *Babylonians*. Afterwards this whole Country coming into the hands of the Kings of *Syria*, had the name of *Perea*, for the reason formerly delivered. And being won piece-meal by the *Maccabees*, came with the rest of the Kingdom of *Judah*, to the possession of *Herod the Great*; by whom bequeathed at his death unto *Herod Antipater*, one of his Sons, who held, together with both *Galilee*, under the name of Tetrarch of *Galilee* and *Perea*, as *Josaphus*; or of *Galilee* only, as *Saint Luke*; who being dead, it was bestowed on *Agrippa* King of the *Jews*, of whom more hereafter.

2 ITURÆA.

ITURÆA hath on the East and North, *Calo-Syria*; on the West, the River *Jordan* and on the South, *Peera*. So called from *Itur* one of the sons of *Ymael*, seated in this Tract; though lost by his Posterity to the *Ammonites*; and by them made the Patrimony of the Kings of *Basan*. The Race of which King ending in *Og*, the wealthiest and best parts hereof, were given by *Moses* to the half Tribe of *Manasse*; such parts of it as lay towards *Damascus* being seized on by the neighbouring *Aramites*, and made a Kingdom of it self, called the Kingdom of *Gessur*; and the more mountainous and unpleasant left to the first Inhabitants, as not worth the conquering. But both the Kingdom of *Gessur*, and those of the half Tribe of *Manasse*, shifting from one Lord to another, till they came into the hands of the *Greeks*; the name of *Ituræa* revived again and grew into very good esteem: the *Ituræans* being reputed for good Soldiers, especially at his Bow and Arrows; of which thus the Poet in his *Georgicks*, lib. 2.

—Ituræas raxi torquentur in Arcus.

Of the best Bows that can be had

The *Ituræan* Bows are made.

The whole Country in the times of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, divided into *Trachonites* and *Ituræa*, specially so called: this last again being subdivided into *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, *Auranitis*, and *Pamæa*. For whereas it is said in *St. Luke's* Gospel, that *Philip* the Brother of *Herod* was *Tetrarch* of *Ituræa*, and the Region of *Trachonitis*; and by *Josephus*, that for his *Tetrarchy* he had the Provinces of *Trachonitis*, *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, *Auranitis*, and *Pamæa*: it must needs be that the four last mentioned Provinces make up that one, which by *St. Luke* is comprehended in the name of *Ituræa*, distinct from that of *Trachonitis*, though a part thereof. Inhabited in the time of *Josephus*, as in those of *John* and *David*, both by *Jews* and *Syrians*; the *Syrians* dwelling in the mountainous and more barren parts, the *Jews* in that which was assigned them in the time of *Moses*; the whole not yielding unto *Galilee* for extent of ground, but far inferior to it for wealth and fruitfulness; not well inhabited where best, and in some places which are desert and very barren, hardly inhabited at all, or bearing any thing but wild fruits. Such was it in the time of *Josephus*, and not bettered since.

TRACHONITIS is that mountainous and hilly Country, which beginning at the borders of the *Ammonites*, where the Hills are called the Mountains of *Gilead*, extendeth it self Northwards as far as *Libanus*: the Hills in those parts being by the *Jews* called *Galeed*, *Syrian*, and *Hermon*; but by the *Greeks*, for the craggy and roughness of them, by the name of *Trachones*. The people mischievously bent and much given to Witchcraft, as we find in *Strabo*. *Montanum regimen incolum* *Iurel* & *Arabes, malefici omnes*. So he, or his Translator rather, for I have not the original by me. Where by *Arabians* he meant those of *Trachonitis*, which every where he maketh to be the same with *Ituræa*, though differing from it as the *Cotivold* Countries do from the rest of *Gloucestershire*, or as a part doth from the whole, because united by that name into one Estate, at the time he lived in. *Solet* & *Trachonitis* *Ituræa nomine appellari*, faith the learned *Grotius*, according to the general consent of the ancient Writers. A people generally addicted to spoil and robbery, living especially on the spoil of those Merchants which traded to and from *Damascus*: till with some difficulty restrained to a more orderly life by

Herod, on whom *Augustus Cæsar* had bestowed the Country, to the end that by the strong hand he might hold them in.

The People and the Country by *Josephus* are thus described. "The *Trachonites* (faith he) have neither Towns, nor Lands, nor Heritage, nor any other possessions, but only certain Retreats and Caves under the ground, where they lived like Beasts: and having made abundant provision of water and victuals, were able to hold out a long time against any Assailant. For the doors of their Caves were made so narrow, that they could be entered but by one at once; and the way to them not direct, but full of turnings and windings, not possibly to be found out but by the help of a Guide: The whole Country naturally consisting of craggy Rocks.

The passages of the Caves once entered, they were found to be very large and spacious; sufficient to contain great multitudes of those Thievish people, who when they had not opportunity to spoil their Neighbours, would rob one another, and omitted no kind of wickedness, being so accustomed to theft, that they could not live otherwise. So he. But I conceive this is not meant generally of all the people, but only of some body of Thieves or Out-laws, which possessed themselves of the streights of the Mountains; and from thence issued to assault and spoil the Passengers. For it is afterwards expressed, that revolting upon the news of *Herod's* death, and committing new outrages; they no sooner heard of his recovery but they fled the Country, and betook themselves unto a strong Castle in *Arabia*, where they increased to the number of a 1000 persons, so that there is no question to be made at all, but they had Villages & Lands, and Heritages, in the more civil parts hereof, though not amongst those Mountainers which *Josephus* speaks of. And amongst those, I reckon, 1. *Gerra*, 2. *Elera*, 3. *Nalasa*, 4. *Adrama*; all named by *Ptolemy*, and all placed by him in the Longitude of 70 degrees or upwards: more towards the East than well agreeeth with the position of this Country, or with any part of *Batanea*, lying more towards the West than *Trachonitis*, though to the part of *Ituræa*, by him ascribed. Hither also I refer the City of *Ysbythe*, the Country of old *Tobit*, and of the Prophet *Elihu*. 6. *Tob*, where *Japheth* lived in exile, when oppressed by his brethren, till the necessities of his Country called him to the publick Government. 7. *Hippus*, at the foot of those Mountains, reckoned amongst the Cities of *Calo-Syria*, differing in soil as well as Etymology from another of the same name in *Batanea*: this being so named from the Mountain *Hippus*, under which it standeth; that from a Garrison of Horse there placed, as shall there be shewn. 8. *Bathina*, on the borders of this Country towards *Batanea*, built there by *Herod*, and planted with a Colony of the *Jews* which came thither from *Babylon*; the better to suppress the infolencies, and prevent the Robberies of this thievish people, accustomed (as before is said) unto spoil and rapine.

BATANEÆ is that part of *Ituræa* which anciently made up the best and greatest part of the Kingdom of *Basan*, whence it had this name: the changing of *S*. to *T*. as *Assyria* into *Atyria*, and the like, being usual among the *Greeks*. But that Kingdom being brought to an end by *Moses*, it was given to the half Tribe of *Manasse*, so called of *Manasse* the son of *Joseph*; of whom there were found at the first muster near Mount *Sinai*, 32200 men able to bear arms; which though consumed in the Deserts, yet were they of such a swift increase, that there were found 52700 fighting men of them, when they passed over *Jordan*. Their Territory on that side of the River, stretching from *Jacob* on the South, to the Realm of *Gessur* on the North; and from the Mountains unto

unto *Jordan*, East and West, was exceeding fertile: replenished with all sorts of Cattel, and adorned with the goodliest woods in that part of the world, the Oaks of *Basan* being celebrated in the holy Scriptures.

It had in its fixty fenced Cities when first conquered by those of this Tribe. The principal of which, 1. *Pella*, formerly called *Buith*, but being rebuilt by *Selaucus*, the great King of *Syria*, was by him called *Pella*; with reference to a City of that name in *Macedon*, the birth-place of *Alexander*, to whom *Selaucus* owed his greatness and whole estate. Destroyed by *Alexander* *Jannæus* King of the *Jews*, because not willing to admit of the Law of *Moses*; it was afterwards restored by *Pompey* to its former lustre. Memorable in Church story for the Admonition or premonishment, given by a voice from Heaven, to the Christians dwelling at *Hierusalem*, to remove thence and dwell at *Pella*, that so they might escape that destruction, which the *Roman* Army under *Titus* was to bring upon it. 2. *Edrey*, the Seat-rory of the Kings of *Basan*. 3. *Carnaim*, on the banks of *Jaboc*, taken by *Judas Macabæus*, who set fire on the Temple of the idols there, and burnt therein all such as fled thither for Sanctuary. 4. *Ephron*, a strong City upon *Jordan*, taken and burnt by the same *Judas Macabæus*, for refusing to give a passage to his Army. 5. *Japheth Gilead*, more near unto the Mountains, whence it had that Adjunct; memorable in the Scriptures, for the siege of *Nabab* King of the *Ammonites*, the raising of that siege by *Sand*, and the gratitude of the people towards him again, in taking down, emfons, which the embombing the bodies of him and his on the walls of *Bethlaim*. 6. *Ashtaroth*, a City of great note in the elder times: the seat of the *Rephaim*, a Giant-like Race of men, of whom defended *Og* of *Basan*, from whence the Country adjoining had the name of the Land of *Giant*. 7. *Ashtaroth*, the Goddesses of the *Sidonians*, had here her Worshipers. 8. *Gadon* sometimes possessed by *Og* of *Basan*, and afterwards made one of the Cities of Refuge; of such esteem in the times of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, that the North part of *Bataneæ* or *Batanea* was called *Gaulonitis*; divided into *Superiour* and *Inferiour*, so often mentioned by *Josephus*. And of this City or Country was that *Judas* of *Galilee*, spoken of in the fifth of the *Acts*, the Founder of the *Gaulonites*, or *Anti-Herodians*. 8. *Gannala* in the lower *Gaulonitis*, so called because the Hill upon which it stood was fashioned like the back of a Camel: invincibly situate, strengthened both by Art and Nature; and at the last with so great difficulty and hazard of *Peppab*'s person, stormed by *Titus*, that the *Roman* in the heat of the execution, spared neither Women fled, except some few women which had hid themselves. 9. *Gadara*, after ten months siege, taken and destroyed by *Alexander* *Jannæus* King of the *Jews*; repaired by *Pompey*, and by *Gabinus* made one of the five Seats of Justice for the whole Country of *Palestine*: the other four being *Hierusalem*, *Jericho*, *Hamath*, and *Sypharab*. 10. *Gese*, or *Gese*, the chief City of the *Gese*, the people whereof on the loss of their Swine intreated our Saviour to depart out of their Coast, as *St. Matthew* hath *Gadara*. Not that the Cities were both one, or the Evangelists at odds in their Relation; but because they were two neighbouring Cities, and their fields lay in common *pour cause de voisinage*, as our Lawyers phrase it; and so far from the River *Jordan*, so called from a Garrison of *Hippus*, as some suppose, which is too far off to have any influence upon it. 12. *Julias*, built by *Philip* the *Tetrarch*

of *Ituræa* in the Southern border of his estate, in imitation of the like work of *Herod* the *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Tiberias Cæsar*. 13. *Abel*, by *Josephus* called *Abel Machaba*, besieged by *Joab*, and the City brought into some danger, had his head cut off, and thrown over the Wall, at the periwallow of a wife Woman of the Town. So the rebellion ended, and the City was saved.

North of *Bataneæ*, or *Batanea*, lieth the Kingdom of *GESUR*, by a latter name called *AURANITIS*, from *Hawan*, a Chief City of it, mentioned by the Prophet *Ezechiel*, chap. 16. 18. "A Kingdom spoken of by *Moses* as the Northern bound of the half Tribe of *Manasse* on that side of *Jordan*, *Deut.* 4. 14. by *Josephus* as the Northern border of the Kingdom of *Basan*, *Chap.* 12. 5. but reckoned as a part of *Syria* because held by the *Aramites*, 2 *Sam.* 15. 8. "A Kingdom though of no great Territory, yet of some consideration in the eye of the World: *David* effecting the alliance of the Kings hereof of some use unto him; and therefore marrying he had *Abisalom* the daughter of *Talmi*, King of *Gessur*, by whom he had *Abisalom* and *Tamar*. And to this King it was three years as the story telleth us.

Conterminous to this, or at least not very much distant from it was the petty Kingdom of *Ik-tob*, which sent 12000 men to the aid of the *Ammonites* against *David*: and not far off, but more towards *Palmire*, or *Aram-Zobab*, that of *Beir-Rehob*, Confederate in the same War also with the other *Syrians*, mention whereof is made in the second Book of *Samuel*, *Chap.* 10. 6. Which whether is they belonged to *Syria*, or to those North parts of *Ituræa*, is of no great certainty, and as little consequence. For news of them, I swallowed up not long after (as it seems) by the Kings of *Damascus*.

To return therefore into *Gessur*, as more certainly lieth in the limits of *Palestine*, the places of most observation in it, were 1. *Gessur*, then the chief City of it, and giving name unto the whole. 2. *Mahaneh*, or *Macut*, as some call it: conceived to be that *Mancha* mentioned in *Chron.* 19. 6. But of this we have already spoken in *Comagend*. 3. *Chauran*, or *Hauran*, mentioned by the Prophet *Ezechiel*, *Chap.* 47. whence these Northern parts of *Palestine* were called *Auranites*. 4. *Chastar-Herem*, there mentioned by that Prophet also. 5. *Ys*, near the borders of *Damascus*, the first habitation of *Ys* the son of *Aram*, and Grand-child of *Sem*, by whose name so called: supposed to be the Founder of *Damascus* also, and that more probably, than that the Country thereabouts should be the Land of *Hus* ennobled by the dwelling and story of *Job*. 6. *Sutera*, mentioned by *Bochart*, and by some conceived to be the habitation of *Baldad*, firnamed the *Shuabite*, one of *Job's* three Friends, mentioned in that story: but both of him, and *Job* himself, and the Land of *Hus*, we shall speak more at large when we come to *Arabia*. More certainly remarkable for a Fort of great strength and use, for the commanding of the Country; recovered from the *Turks* in the time of *Baldwin* the second, by digging with incredible labour through the very Rock upon which it was seated.

As for the fortunes of this part, after the Tribes on that side of *Jordan* were led captive into *Assyria*, and the Kingdom of *Damascus* subverted by *Tiglab-Pileser*; it followed the fortune of the *Babylonian* and *Persian* Empires; together with which it came to the *Macedonian* Kings of the Race of *Selaucus*. In the declining of which House it was conquered (or at least the greatest part thereof) by *Alexander* the second, King of the *Jews* of the

Place of the *Maccabees*; but lost again for the most part in the time of *Hircanus* the Son of *Alexander*; yet afterwards made up the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Chalchis*, possessed by *Ptolomy* the Son of *Meneus*, in the beginning of *Herod's* greatness: who dying left it to *Lysanias* his eldest son, murdered about seven years after by *Marc*. Antony on the suggestions of *Cleopatra*, who presently seized on his Estates, but *Antony* and *Cleopatra*, having left the Stage, *Lysanias* a son of the murdered Prince entereth next upon it, by the permission of *Augustus*. During whose time *Zenodorus*, Lord of the Town and Territory of *Panais*, farming his Demefies, and paying a very great rent for them; not only suffered the *Trachonites* to play the *Robbers*, and infect the Merchants of *Damascus*, but received part of the booty with them. *Augustus*, on complaint hereof, giveth the whole Country of *Trachonitis*, *Batanea*, *Golanitis*, and *Auranitis*, to *Herod the Ascalonite*, before created King of *Jenny*; that by his puilliance and power he might quell those *Robbers*, and reduce the Country into order: Leaving unto *Lysanias* nothing but the City of *Abila*, (of which he was the natural Lord) whereof and of the adjoining Territory, he was afterwards created *Tetrarch*, by the name of the *Tetrarch of Abilene*, mentioned *Luke* 3. Nor did *Herod's* good fortune end in this. For presently on the death of *Zenodorus*, not long after following, *Augustus* gave him also the District of *Panais* (of which we shall speak more when we come to *Galilee*;) which with the Countries formerly taken from *Lysanias*, made up the *Tetrarchy* of *Philip* his youngest Son; affording him the yearly Revenue of 100 *Talents*, which make 37500 *l.* of *English* money. On *Philip's* death, his *Tetrarchy* was by *Caius Caligula* conferred on *Agrippa* the Nephew of *Herod* by his Son *Archibolus*; whom he had also dignified with the title of King: after whose death, and the death of *Agrippa Minor*, who next succeeded, his estates ccheated to the *Romans*, and have since had the same fortune with the rest of *Palestine*.

3 GALILEE.

GALILEE is bounded on the East, with *Batanea*, and part of the half Tribe of *Manasse* on that side of *Jordan*; on the West, with the Sea-coast of *Phoenicia*, on the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Anti-Libanus*; on the South, with *Samaria*. So called as some say, from *Gallath*, a *Phoenician* word signifying as much as borders; because the bordering Country betwixt them and the *Jews*.

The Country not so large as that on the other side of the River, but far more fertile; naturally fertile of it self, every where producing excellent fruits without much pains to the Husbandman, and so well cultivated in old times, that there was hardly any waste ground to be found in it. Thick set with Cities, Towns, and Villages, in the time of *Josephus*, and those so populous and rich, that the smallest Village in it is affirmed by that Author, to comprehend no fewer than 15000 Inhabitants. A number beyond all parallel, if reported rightly, and not mistaken in the transcripts. The people from their childhood very stout and warlike, not daunted for fear of want, or dread of penury: which seconded by their valour and almost incredible numbers, made them experimentally known for a tough piece of employment when subdued by *Titus*. And this, together with their zeal to the *Jewish* Religion, makes it more than probable, that there was something in them of the ancient *Israhelites*; and that they were not merely of an *Affryan*, either stock or spirit, but intermixt with such remainders of the Tribes as had saved themselves, either by flying to the Mountains

or hiding themselves in Caves and Defarts, or otherwise were inconsiderable for strength and numbers, in the great transplantation of them made by *Salmannasser*. And in this I am the more confirmed by their speech or language, which was the same with that of the natural *Jews*, differing no otherwise from it than in tone, and dialect; as our Northern *English* doth from that which is spoke in *London*: as appeareth by the communication which the *Damofel* had with *St. Peter*, in the High-Priests Hall; in which the plainly understood him, but so, that the pronounced him for a *Galilean*. For had the Transplantation been so universal, as some think it was, and that both sick and sound, old and young had been carried away, and none but Colonies of the *Affryans* to fill up their places; it must needs be that those *Norcomers* would have planted their own language there, as the *Saxons* did on the extirpation of the *Britons*, on this side of the *Severn*. The like may be affirmed of the other Tribes on this side of *Jordan*, especially *Simeon* and *Dan*, which either bordering upon *Judah*, or having their Lands and Cities intermingled with it, continued in great numbers in their former dwellings, under the Patronage or subjection of the Kings thereof.

Divided it was anciently into the *Higher* and *Lower*. The *Higher* so called from its situation more amongst the Mountains, had also the name of *Galilee Gentium*, or *Galilee of the Gentiles*; and that either because it lay betwixt the *Gentiles* and the rest of the *Jews*; or because a great part of it had been given by *Solomon* to the Kings of *Tyre*. But for what cause soever it was called so first, certain it is, it held this name unto the last; known by it in the time of the Apostles, as appeareth by *St. Matthew's* Gospel, *Chap.* 4. 15. The *Lower Galilee* is situate on the South of the other, memorable for the Birth and Education of our blessed Saviour, whom *Julian* the Apostate called for this cause, in scorn, the *Galilean*: as for the same, the Disciples generally had the name of *Galileans* imposed upon them, till that of *Christians*, (being a name of their own choosing) did in fine prevail. Both, or the greatest part of both, known in the New Testament by the name of *Decapolis*, or *Regio Decapolitana*, mentioned *Mat.* 4. 25. *Mark* 7. 31. So called from the ten principal Cities of it, that is to say, 1. *Cesarea Philippi*. 2. *Afr.* 3. *Cedes-Niphtalim*. 4. *Seiphet*. 5. *Chorazin*. 6. *Capernaum*. 7. *Botphida*. 8. *Togata*. 9. *Tiberias*. And 10. *Seythopolis*. By which account it stretched from the *Adiditramen* to the head of *Jordan*, East and West; and from *Libanus* to the hills of *Gilboa*, North and South; which might make up a square of forty miles. With reference to the Tribes of *Israhel*, the whole *Galilee* was to be disposed of, that *Aser*, *Nephthali*, and a part of the Tribe of *Dan*, had their habitation in the *Higher*; *Zabulon*, and *Issachar* in the *Lower*: according to which distribution we will now describe them.

The Tribe of *NAPHTHALI*, was so called from *NAPHTALI* the sixth Son of *Jacob*, begotten on *Bilhah* the hand-maid of *Rachel*; of whom at their first multer were found 53400 fighting men, and at the second 44540 able to bear arms. The Land allotted to them lay on the West side of the River *Jordan*, opposite unto the Northern parts of *Issachar*; where before we left: having on the West, the Tribe of *Aser*; and that of *Zabulon* on the South. Within which Tract were certain Cities which they never conquered; and one which we pertained to the Tribe of *Dan*: the chief of those which were with-held by the *Gentiles*, being *Chalcis*, *Abila*, *Heliopolis*, Cities accounted of as belonging to *Celestia*; where they have been spoken of already.

That which had appertain to the Tribe of *DAN* lay on the North-East part hereof, confronting the most Northern

Northern parts of *Issachar*, as before was said; where the *Danites* held one Town of moment, besides many other of less note. And it seemed destined to this Tribe by some old Prefage; the Eastern Fountain of *Jordan* (which hath its original in this Tract) being called *Dan*, at the time of the defeat which *Abraham* gave to *Chedorlosomer* and his associates, hundreds of years before this Tribe had ever a possession in it. Of which see *Gen.* 14. 14. The Town of moment first called *Lehem*, by some Writers *Laish*: afterwards subject or allied to the Kings of *Sidon*, and upon strength thereof made good against those of *Naphthali*; but taken by some adventurers of the Tribe of *Dan*. Of whom it is said *Josh.* 19. 47. That finding their own Country too little for them, they went up and fought against *Lehem*, which they took, and called *DAN*. Accompted after this exploit, the utmost bound Northward of the Land of *Canaan*, the length thereof being measured from *Dan* in the North, unto *Beerseba* in the South: was remarkable for one of the Golden Calves which was placed here by one of the for the two spring heads of *Jordan*, rising near unto it. When conquered by the *Romans* it was called *Panais*, from a Fountain adjoining of that name: which with the Territory about it, after the death of *Zenodorus*, was held it of the *Roman* Empire, as before was said, was given by *Augustus* *Cesar* unto *Herod* the Great: and by him at his decease to *Philip* his youngest Son, with the *Tetrarchy* of *Issachar* and *Trachonitis*. By him repaired and beautified, it was called *Cesarea Philippi*, partly to curry favour of his own name: partly to preserve the memory of other *Cesarea* situate on the shore of the *Mediterranean*, and called *Cesarea Palmyra*: and being so repaired by him, it was made the *Metropolis* of that *Tetrarchy*. Mentioned by that name, *Mat.* 16. 13. when *St. Peter* made that confession or acknowledgment of his Lord and Master, that he was *CHRIST* the Son of the living God. By King *Agrippa*, who succeeded him in his Estates, in honour of the Emperor *Nero*, it was called *Neronia*. But that, and the Adjunct of *Philippi*, were of no continuance: the Town being called *Cesarea Panais* in the time of *Ptolomy*, and simply *Panais*, as before, in the time of *St. Hierom*. Of this *Cesarea* was that Woman whom our Saviour cured of the bloody Flux, by touching but the Hem of his Garment: who in a pious gratitude of so great a mercy, erected two Statues in this place, representing *CHRIST*, and her self kneeling at his feet; remaining here entire till the time of *Julian* the Apostate, by whose command it was cast down, and a Statue of his own set up in the place thereof, miraculously destroyed by a fire from Heaven. The City being at that time, and long before, an Episcopal See. Of less note there were, 1. *Haleb*, and 2. *Recabath*, both situate in the confines of it. And not far off the strong Town and Castle of 3. *Magdala*, (the habitation, as some say of *Mary Magdalen*) where the *Pharisees* desired a sign of our Saviour *CHRIST*, as is said *Mat.* 15. 39. & 16. 1. reporting the same part of the Story called *Dalmatiana*, *Chap.* 8. 10. 11. But whether this Castle did anciently belong to these *Danites*, or to those of *Naphthali*, or to the half Tribe of *Manasse* beyond the River, I am not able to determine.

Of those which were in the possession of the Tribe of *NAPHTHALI*, the Cities of most eminent observation were, 1. *Hazor*, or *Azor*, by *Yunus* and *Tremilium* called *Chazar*, the Regal City and *Metropolis* of all the *Canaanites*: memorable for the *Rendezvous*, of 24 *Canaanite* Kings in the War with *Joshua*; by whom it was taken notwithstanding, and burnt to ashes. But be-

ing afterwards rebuilt, it became the Regal Seat of *Jabin* the King of the *Canaanites*, who so grievously for the space of 20 years, afflicted *Israhel*; till vanquished by *Deborah* and *Barak*. Destroyed in that War, and repaired by *Solomon*, it continued in so good estate in our Saviour's time, that it was then one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*; it being so still, but known by the name of *Asiopolis*, 2. *Capernaum*, seated on the River *Jordan*, where it falleth into the Sea of *Galilee*; of which Country it was accounted the *Metropolis*, in the time of our Saviour, with whose presence and preaching often honoured, and one of the principal of the *Decapolitan*. Some marks of its former greatness it retained when *St. Hierom* lived, who conselleth it to be a Town of some good capacity, but so decayed in the time of *Breidenbach* and *Brochardus*, that it consisted but of six poor Fishermen houses, 3. *Hamat*, so called from *Hannabi* the Son of *Canaan*, planted in these parts; a Town of such esteem in the elder times that it was reckoned to be one of the Gate of the Land of *Canaan*; and therefore called in Scripture, *Introitus Hamathi*, or the entrance of *Hamat*; as *Numb.* 34. 8. *Josh.* 13. 5. *Judg.* 3. 5. &c. Mistaken by *St. Hierom* for another of the same name in *Syria*, by the Greek and *Roman* writers, called *Epiphania*. And in this I lay he is mistaken; *Epiphania* being placed by *Ptolomy* two degrees more Eastward than *Cesarea Philippi*, the most Eastern City of all *Galilee*; & two degrees more North than that, though the most Northern City of all *Palestine*. The ground of *Damascus*, it was again recovered to the Crown of *Israhel*, by *Jeroboam* the second Son of *Jon*; and after added by the *Romans* (as were *Seythopolis*, *Tella*, *Gadara*, and some others of this tract) unto *Celestia*, 4. *Kadshi*, to difference it from others of the same name, called *Kadshi-Naphtolim*, high seated on the top of an Hill, as is said, *Josh.* 20. 7. The King whereof being taken and slain by *Joshua*, it was made one of the Cities of Refuge, and given to the *Levites*. Most memorable for the Birth of *Jabin* before mentioned, in the infancy of the *Jewish* State; one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, in the time of the *Romans*; and an Episcopal See in the first ages of Christianity, 5. *Riblah*, watered with the fountain of *Danphais*, a little Rivulet, which hereabouts falleth into *Jordan*: so which City, as some say (but I think erroneously) *Zedechias* the unfortunate King of the *Jews* was brought Prisoner unto *Nebuchadnezzar* who caused his children to be slain before his face, & then put out his eyes. But this I look on as an Error in them that say it. The scene of this Tragedy being by *Josephus* laid in *Riblah* (or *Riblah*) a City of *Syria*; the same which in succeeding times had the name of *Antioch*. And certainly *Josephus*, who for so long was Governor of both the *Galilees*, cannot be conceived to be so ignorant of the State of this Province, as to transfer that bloody execution to a City of *Syria*, if it had been acted in this Country. Nor can I think that this *Riblah*, none of the greatest Towns in the Tribe of *Naphthali*, should be capable of the Court and Train of that mighty Monarch; especially for so long a time, as he is said to have attended in that place, the success of his forces then before *Hierusalem*, and the disposal of the State when the Town was taken. 6. *Sopet*, another of the *Decapolitan* Cities, strongly if not impregnable seated; one of the strongest Fortresses of the Western Christians, as it was after their expulsion of the *Turks* and *Saracens*; who from hence watched and subdued all the neighbouring Country, as far as to the very Sea. The only place, not of this Country only but of all the East, in which the *Jews* (who possessed a third part of this Town) have any shew or shadow of a Common-

Common-Wealth. 7 *Bethlehem*, mentioned *Jos. 19. 38.* made tributary unto those of this Tribe; though otherwife possessed by the *Canaanites* who held out against them. 8 *Carthar*, or *Kiriathaim*, situate near the Mountain; which in following times was called *Mont Chirif* because much frequented by our Saviour; who here made choice of his Apostles, as is said *Mark 3. 13.* and where he made also that Divine Sermon, recited in the *5. 6.* and 7. Chapters of *St. Matthew's Gospel.* 9 *Masothoth*, a place of a great strength, but forced by *Bacchides*, General of the Armies of the Kings of Syria, in the time of the *Maccabees.* 10 *Cimmereth*, a strong City, after called *Gensafareth*; whence the Lake or Sea of *Tiberias*, neighbouring near unto it, is sometimes called the Lake of *Gensafareth*, as *Luke 5. 1. &c.*

2 The Tribe of *ASER*, was so called from *Aser*, the eighth Son of *Jacob*, begotten of *Zilpah* the Handmaid of *Leah*; of whom at their first Murther when they came out of *Egypt*, were found 41,500 persons able to bear arms, all above twenty years of age; and at the second Murther when they entered the Land of *Canaan*, 53,400 fighting men of the new increase. The portion of the Land allotted for their habitation was plentiful in Wine, Oyl, and Wheat, with great store of Balsam; extending from the Coast of *Sidon*, to *Prothomai*, thirty miles in length; and from the *Mediterranean* Eastward to the Tribe of *Nephthali*, some twelve miles in breadth. And though they never were of power to reduce the maritime Cities of *Prothomai*, *Tyre*, *Sarepta*, and *Sidon*, under their command; yet had they in this narrow compass many beautiful Cities and Towns of note; which they were quietly possessed of, till their subjugation by the King of *Affria*.

The principal of those, and others which have since been founded, 1 *Aphok*, memorable for the great slaughter there made of the *Syrians* when besieged by *Ben-hadad*; of whom 100,000 were slain by the *Israelites* under the leading of *Ahob*, and 27,000 killed by the fall of a Wall. 2 *Gabala*, mentioned by *Prothomy* amongst the mid-land Cities of *Phoenicia*; but belonging properly to this Tribe: one of those twenty which were offered by *Solomon* unto *Hiram*, and upon his refusal peopled by the *Israelites*. Fallen to decay, it was afterwards rebuilt and strongly fortified by *Herod* the Great. 3 *Gifala*, a Town of Great strength and consequence; the birth-place of *John* or *Jehocanan*, one of the three seditious in *Hierusalem* when besieged by *Titus*, where he did more mischief than the Enemy. Attempting to betray this City to the power of the *Romans*, he gave the *Tyrians* an opportunity to be Masters of it, by whom it was burnt unto the ground. But being rebuilt by the authority of *Josaphus*, then Governour of *Galilee* for the *Jews*, it was afterwards yielded to *Titus* upon composition. 4 *Cana*, for distinction sake called *Cana-Major*, to difference it from another of that name in the *Lower Galilee*, affirmed for the dwelling of that Woman, whose Daughter *Christ* delivered of an evil Spirit; called by *St. Matthew* a Woman of *Canaan*, chap. 15. a *Syro-Phoenician* by *Saint Mark*, chap. 7. the *Syro-Phoenician* of this Tract, being originally of the Race of *Canaan*, as was said before. 5 *Herblin*, or *Cerblan*, the furthest City of the North; as 6 *Misfat*, or *Malsab*, to the South, of the Tribe of *Afer*. Of later date there are 7 *Thoron*, a strong piece, built by the *Christians* on the Hills near *Tyre*, to hinder the excursions of the *Turks*, when they held that City. Situate in a pleasant and fruitful Soil, of great importance in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*, and giving name to the Noble Family of the Lords of *Thoron*; one of which being Confitable to King *Baldwin* the third, lieth buried

in the Chappel adjoining to it, a curious piece of workmanship, and dedicated by the name of the Blessed Virgin. 8 *Belford*, so named from the strength and beauty of it; seated on the high grounds near the River *Nabar*, and memorable for the great repulse which *Saladin* the victorious King of the *Turks* received before it; being forced to raise his Siege with dishonour and loss, on the coming of the *Christians* Armies. Some others Forts here are of the same erection, as 9 *Mount-fort*, and 10 *Mount Royal* (or *Capitium Regium*) belonging to the *Dutch* Knights (of whom more hereafter) and by them valiantly defended against the Infidels.

3 The Tribe of *ZABULON*, was so called from *Zabulon* the tenth Son of *Jacob*, by his Wife *Leah*; of whom there mulctured near *Mount Sinai* 57,400 able men; and 65,000 at their second Murther, when they came into *Canaan*. Their Territory lay on the South of *Afer* and *Naphthaim*, and the North of *Zabulon*, extending from the Lake of *Tiberias* to the *Mediterranean*.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Johnham*, the King, whereof was slain by *Josaphab*, and the City given unto the *Levites*. 2 *Zabulon*, or the City of *Men*; a stately and magnificent City, till burnt to the ground by *Cestius* a *Roman* president. 3 *Cana-minor*, so called to difference it from the other in the Tribe of *Afer*, the birth-place of *Nathaniel*, and as some say of *Simon Zelotes*: memorable for the Marriage at which our Saviour wrought his first Miracle, of turning Water into Wine: Called in *Saint John's Gospel* *Cana of Galilee*. 4 *Bersabe*, standing in the Border between both *Galilee*, and therefore strongly fortified by *Josaphus* against the *Romans*. 5 *Dabban*, where *Josaph* found his Brethren as they fled their flocks; and where the Prophet *Elisha* strook blind the *Syrians*, who besieged him in it. 6 *Beh-Jaida*, situate on the Sea of *Galilee*, one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, the birth-place of *Peter*, *Andrew*, and *Philip*; but most renowned for the Miracles and Preaching of our Lord and Saviour. 7 *Nazareth*, now a small Village, seated in a Vale between two Hills, not far from *Ptolemais* or *Acon*; upon one of which two Hills it was formerly built, where still are to be seen the ruins of many Churches here founded by the *Christians*; it being in the flourishing times of Christianity an Archbishop's See. Of great esteem for being, if not the birth-place, yet the habitation of the Virgin *Mary*; who was here saluted with those joyful tidings by an Angel, as the fate in her Chamber. Of which Chamber it is said in the Popish Legends, That it was after the Virgin's death had in great reverence by the *Christians*, and remained in this Town till the *Holy Land* was subdued by the *Turks* and *Savacens*, Anno 1291. Then most miraculously transported into *Scalovania*; but that place being unworthy of the Virgin's divine Presence, it was by the Angels carried over into the Sea-coast of *Italy*, Anno 1294. That place also being infested with Thieves and Pirates, the Angels removed it to the little Village of *Loretto*, where her Miracles were quickly divulged; insumuch that *Paul* the second built a most stately Church over this Chamber, and *Xistus* the fifth made the Village a City. And thus we have the beginning of our famous Lady of *Loretto*. Here did our blessed Saviour spend a great part of his Life before his Baptism; from whence both he and his Disciples had for many years the name of *Nazarenes*. 8 *Jocopana*, strongly seated on the top of a Mountain near the Lake of *Gensafareth*, fortified by *Josaphus* in the War with the *Romans*, but after a long Siege taken by *Vespasian*, and in it *Josaphus* the Historian, chief Governour of the City, and of both the *Galilees*. 9 *Tiberias*, raised out of the

the ground by *Herod* the Tetrarch, and named thus in honour of *Tiberius Cæsar*. Situate in a fruitful Soil, on the edge of the Lake, which afterwards took the name of the Lake or Sea of *Tiberias*; This City being held to be the greatest of the *Lower Galilee*, and the Metropolis of the *Decapolis* Region. In this City it was that our Saviour *CHRIST* called *Saint Matthew* from the Receipts of the Custom-house; and near unto it, that he raised the Daughter of *Jairus*. 10 *Bethulia*, more within the Land, seated on an high Hill, and of very great strength, as appears by the story of *Judith* and *Holofernes*. 11 *Japha*, a place of like strength, but forced by *Titus*; who in the fury of the storm slew in it above 15,000 persons, and carried away with him 2000 Prisoners. 12 *Sepphoris*, or *Sippora*, the habitation of *Jochan* and *Anna*, the Parents of the blessed Virgin; fortified with strong Walls by *Herod* the Tetrarch, who made it his Regal Seat for the *Lower Galilee*. Before that time, it had been made by *Gabinus*, one of the five juridical Reforts for the *Palestinians*: after that not without great difficulty forced by *Vespasian*; and is nothing now but a Castle known by the name of *Zaphet*, or *Saffet*. The ordinary Residence, for the most part, of the *Turkish* Sanziak who hath the Government of this Province; and lately, if not still, of the Emirs of *Sidon*; *Faccardine* the late Emir having been made the Sanziak of it, before his falling off from the *Turks*. Not far off is *Mount Tabor*, famous for the transfiguration of our Saviour; for a sumptuous Chappel built on the top of the Hill in memory of it, by the Empress *Helen*, Mother of *Constantine* the Great; and for the Fountain of the Brook *Chifon*, which presently divided into two Streams, runneth Eastward with the one to the Sea of *Tiberias*; and Westward with the other to the *Mediterranean*.

4 The Tribe of *ISSACHAR* is so called from *Issachar* the ninth Son of *Jacob*, by his Wife *Leah*, of whom were found at the first Murther 54,400 fighting men, and 64,900 at the second Murther. Their Lot, in the partition of the Land amongst the Tribes, fell betwixt *Zabulon*, and the half Tribe of *Manasse* on this side *Jordan*, North and South; extending from that River to the *Mid-land* Sea. A Territory not so well replenished with strong and eminent Cities, as was that before; nor yielding so much matter of observation in the course of business.

Those of most note in it, 1 *Tarichæa*, on the side of the Lake, about 8 miles from *Tiberias*, of great strength both by Art and Nature; as witnessed the notable resistance which *Vespasian* found when he besieged it, by whom taken with great difficulty and incredible slaughter. 2 *Cishion*, a City of the *Levites*. 3 *Remeth*, called also *Jarmuth*, another City of the *Levites*; where the Hills of *Gilboa* take beginning, and thence range as far as the *Mediterranean* Eastward, and the City of *Tyre* towards the East. 4 *En-hadda*, near which *Saul* being discomfited by the *Philistines*, flew himself for grief; or else for fear of falling into the hands of those merciless Enemies, against whom he had so often returned victorious. 5 *Naim*, on the Banks of the River *Chifon*, where *CHRIST* raised to life the Widow's Son. 6 *Ephraim*, or *Aphraim*, on the banks of the same River also. 7 *Endor*, of chief note for the Witch with whom *Saul* consulted; and the discomfiture of the *Midianites* by *Gideon*, who perished at *Endor*, and became as the dung of the Earth, saith the Royal Psalmist. 8 *Dabarath*, one of the Cities of *Refuge*. 9 *Arbelat*, not far from the Cave of the two Thieves, which so greatly infested *Galilee* in the time of *Herod*. And 10 of a later date the Castle of *Pilgrims* (*Capitrum*

Peregrinorum in *Latine* Writers) built by *Raymond* Earl of *Tholouse*, and after fortified by the *Templars*; for the security of such as travelled to the *Holy-Land*; and for long time the Magazine or Store-house of the Western *Christians*, now called *Tortora*. Situate on the Shores of the *Mediterranean*, near a spacious Bay; on the North-side whereof *Mount Carmel*, described already.

As for those *Galileans* which succeed in the place of these Tribes, they were for the most part originally such as were sent hither by *Salmanassar* to inhabit there, when the *Israelites* were led away into endless thralldom, but intermixed with some Remainers of the ten Tribes, as was said before. And yet as if they had been wholly of the same extraction, with the rest of the *Samaritan* Nations, they were as much despised by the *Jews* (as witnesseth that scornful by-word, *Cân there any good came out of Galilee?*) as the others were: though these as Orthodox in Religion as the *Jews* themselves. In which he zealously affected, that neither threats nor force could make them offer Sacrifice for the health of the *Roman* Emperours, whom they looked on as the Enemies of their Law and Liberty. Brought under the command of the King of *Jewry* by the *Maccabæans*; and with the rest of that Kingdom bestowed on *Herod* by the *Romans*. Left by him at his death to *Herod* surnamed *Antipater*, the second of his Sons then living with the Title of *Tetrarch*, which he joined till the death of our Saviour; and on his deprivation (being banished to *Lyons* in France by the Emperor *Caligula*) bestowed upon *Agrippa* his Brothers Son, the first King of the *Jews* so named. Under him, and his Son *Agrippa* the second, it continued till the general Revolt of the *Jewish* Nation. Subjected by the Sword of *Titus* to the Power of the *Romans*, it hath since followed the same Fortune with the rest of *Palestine*.

4 SAMARIA.

SAMARIA is bounded on the East with the River *Jordan*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the North, with *Galilee*; and on the South with *Judea*. So called from *Samaria*, the chief City of it: of which more hereafter.

The Country interchangeably composed of Fields and Mountains, excellent good for Tillage, and full of Trees; yielding variety of Fruits: watered both with the Dew of Heaven, and many fresh Springs which the Earth affords it; occasioning thereby abundance of Grass; and consequently of Milch-beasts exceeding plenty. Heretofore very wealthy, and no less populous; but now famed for neither.

The People for the most part were originally the descendants of those *Affrians* whom *Salmanassar* sent hither to possess the dwellings of the captive *Israelites*: Gentiles at first, till better instructed by the *Lyons* whom God sent amongst them, and after by the Priest sent hither by the Kings of *Affria*; they entertained the five Books of *Moses*, and out of them learned the manner of the God of the Land, 2 Kings 17. Further than this they would not go, rejecting all the rest of the Sacred Canon; and no strict Observers of this neither. And though at first they so embraced the Worship of God; as that they still adhered to the gods of the Nations where before they dwelt, as *Nergal*, *Ashmah*, *Nibhaz*, *Tarshak*, and the rest of that rabble, mentioned 2 Kings 17; yet were soon taken off from those impieties, and became zealous in the worship of one only God: enormous chiefly in the place which was destined to it. The wicked policy of *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*, was

as natural to them, as if they could not have possessed his Estates without it; and therefore would no suffer their people to go up to *Hierusalem* to worship, as the Law required. More pious in this than their Predecessors, that they erected no Golden Calves in *Dan* and *Bethel*, or any other parts of their Dominions: though to divert the People from the Temple of God, they would have a Temple of their own. Mount *Garizim*, and the Temple there (of which more anon) as sacred unto them, as that of *Solomon* to the Jews. Schismatical enough in this, but not Idolatrous and Schismatical too as the others were; yet so conceited of themselves, and their own perfections, that they imagined themselves defiled by any company but their own. If therefore they had visited any of their neighbour Nations, at their return they used to sprinkle themselves with Urine: but if by negligence, or the necessity of business, they had touched any not of their own Sect, they drenched themselves, cloaths and all, in the next Fountain. But in this the Jews cried quittance with them, not so much as eating or drinking with them, nor having with them any kind of commerce or dealing, as appeareth *John* 4. 9. but loading them, on the other side, with all the bitterness of reproach and hatred. There are two manner of people (saith the Son of Sirach) which mine heart abhorreth, and the third is no people: they that sit on the Mountains of Samaria, the Philistines, and the foolish People that dwell at Sichem, *Eccles* 50. And this continued to the times of our blessed Saviour, whom when the Jews endeavoured to reproach with their heaviest calumnies, they could find out none so great, as to say that he was a Samaritan, and (which they thought came all to one) a man that had converse with Devils and familiar Spirits.

Of these there were some Sects also, as amongst the Jews. 1 The *Dofibians*, so called from *Dofibius* or *Dofibai*, supposed to be the first Priest who was sent thither by the King of *Affria*: agreeing with the Jews in Circumcision, and the Sabbath, and the Doctrine of the Resurrection, (in which last they differed from the common Samaritans, who was a Sadducee in that point) but differing from them in some points of as signal consequence. For they rejected the Writings of all the Prophets, as not *divinously* inspired by the Holy Ghost; they ate of nothing that had life, like the *Pythagoreans*; abstained from Marriage like the *Essenes*; and in the point of Sabbath-keeping out-went the *Pharisees*; it being resolved upon amongst them, That in what posture soever a man was found on the Sabbath day morning, in the same he was to continue without alteration the whole day after. 2 The *Servians*, so called from *Servus*, or *Servaius*, one of the Companions of that *Dofibai*; who though they kept all the publick Festivals, as the Jews and the other Samaritans did, yet they kept them not at the same time: transferring the *Passover* to *August*, the *Pentecost* to *Autumn*, and the Feast of *Tavernacles* to the time of the *Passover*; not suffered for that cause to worship in the Temple of *Garizim*. 3 The *Garibians*, who kept the same Festivals, and observed the same times of those Solemnities, as the Law required; but kept only one of the seven days of those great Festivals, and laid by the rest, as days of ordinary labour. In other points not differing from the other Samaritans, who though at first possessed of all the Land belonging to the Ten Tribes of *Israel*, were yet reduced at last to a narrower compais: shut up betwixt *Galilee* and *Judaea*, within the ancient Territories of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, and the other half Tribe of *Manasse*, on this side of the Water.

1 The half Tribe of *MANASSES* on this side

of *Jordan*, was situate betwixt *Issachar* on the North, and the Tribe of *Ephraim* on the South; extending from the *Mediterranean*, to the Banks of that River. In which the places of most consequence and consideration, 1 *Beth-jan*, environed almost with the Land of *Issachar*, situate near the Banks of *Jordan*, where it beginneth again to frighten and be like it self, having been almost lost in the Sea of *Galilee*; first called *Nissa*, and so called by *Bacchus*, or *Liber Pater*, the Founder of it, in memory of his Nurle there buried; but the Children of *Manasse* not being able to expel the Natives out of it, as in other places, gave it the name of *Beth-jan*, or the House of an Enemy. Afterwards when the *Scythians* invaded those parts of *Asia*, and compelled some of the Jews to serve them against the rest (whom notwithstanding their good Service they put all to the Sword) they new-built this City: called therefore by the *Greecians*, *Scythopolis*, or the City of *Scythians*; and by them reckoned as a City of *Celo-Syria*. Memorable in the Old Testament for the hanging of the dead bodies of *Saul* and his Sons on the Walls hereof, by the barbarous *Philistines*; in the time of our Saviour, for being the greatest of all the *Decapolis* Region; as afterwards in the flourishing times of Christianity, for being the See of an Arch-bishop: now nothing but a desolate Village and an heap of Rubbish, out of which many goodly Pillars, and other pieces of excellent Marble, are often digged. 2 *Terzah*, used by the Kings of *Israel* for their Regal Seat, till the building of *Samaria*, and the removal of it thither. 3 *Acrabata*, the Territory whereof called *Acrabata*, was afterwards made one of the *Trochades* of *Judaea*. 4 *Thebes*, not far from *Samaria*, where the *Bastard Abimelech* was wounded with a Stone, which a Woman threw at him from the Wall; and perceiving his death to be drawing on, commanded his Page to slay him, that it might not be said he perished by the hands of a Woman. 5 *Ephra*, or *Hophra*, in which *Gideon* dwelt: near whereunto there stood an Altar consecrated to *Baal*, defaced by *Gideon*: and not far off the fatal Stone on which *Abimelech* flew 70 of his Brethren. An Heathenish cruelty, and at this day practised amongst the *Turks*. 6 *Asphon*, an ignominious Village, made famous only for the great and notable defeat which *Ptolemy Lathurus* here gave to *Alexander* the King of the Jews: which Victory he used with so great barbarity, that he slew all the Women as he passed along, and caused young children to be sold in *Calderas*. 7 *Bezek* the City of the bloody Tyrant *Adram Bezek*, whose Story (touched upon before) see at large in *Judges*, chap. 1. By *Josephus* it is called *Bala*, and seemeth to be the place in which *Saul* assembled the chief strength of *Israel* & *Judah*, to the number of 33000 men, for the relief of *Jahel-Gilead*, then distressed by the *Ammonites*. 8 *Jezreel*, the Royal City of *Ahab*, and the Kings of his Race, situate on the foot of the Mountains of *Gilboa*: so near unto the Borders of *Issachar*, that some have placed it in that Tribe. Memorable in sacred Story for the stoning of *Naboth* by the procurement of *Jezabel*, and the breaking of *Jezabel's* neck by the command of *Jehu*. A City which gave name to the Plains adjoining, called the Valleys or Plains of *Jezreel* (but by the name of *Campus Magnus* in the Book of *Macabees*, lib. 1. cap. 10.) extending from *Scythopolis* to the *Mediterranean*: famous for the great and many Battels which have been fought in it; as namely, of *Gideon* against the *Midianites*, of *Saul* against the *Philistines*, of *Ahab* against the *Syrians*, of *Jehu* against *Jehoram*; and finally, of the Christians against the *Saracens*. 9 *Megiddo*, unfortunately observable for the death of the good King *Josiah*, slain hereabouts in a Battel against

against *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Aegypt*; and before that of *Ahabaz* King of *Judah*, who received his death-wound at *Gaber*, a Town adjoining, when pursued by *Jehu*. 10 *Dora*, or *Dor* as the Scripture calls it, on the *Mediterranean*, not far from the Castle of Pilgrims in the Tribe of *Issachar*. A very strong and powerful City, and therefore chose by *Tryphon* for his City of Refuge, who having first treacherously taken, and barbarously murdered *Jonathan* the *Macabean*, after he had received 200 Talents for his Ransom; and no less villainously slain *Antiochus* the sixth of *Syria*, his Lord and Master whom he succeeded in his Throne, was by *Antiochus* the seventh, with an Army of 120000 foot, and 8000 horse, besieged in this City, and most deservedly put to death.

11 *Cesarea*, anciently called the Tower of *Siraton*, from *Siraton* a King of the *Zidonians*; newly built by *Herod*, and by him not only beautified with a large Theatre and Amphitheatre, both of polished Marble, with a fair and capacious Haven; which with incredible charge and pains he forced out of the Sea. And having in twelve years brought it to perfection, in honour of *Drusus Caesar*, Son-in-law of *Augustus*, he caused one of the chief Towers thereof to be called *Drusus*, the City it self to be called *Cesarea Palestine*. The stateliness and magnificence of which City (when same described at large by *Josephus* the Jew, in the 15th Book of *Antiq. cap. 13*. In this City was *Cornelius* baptized by St. Peter: Here did Paul plead in defence of Christianity before *Festus* then the Roman President: and finally, here *Herod Agrippa* was smitten by an Angel, and devoured by Worms, after his Rhetorical Oration, which his *Parasites* called the voice of God, and not vice only; as afterwards of *Palestina prima*, when by three: the first Bishop hereof being said to be that *Cornelius*, whom Saint Peter here initiated in the Faith of CHRIST, 12 *Antipatris*, another City of *Herod's* building, in the place where *Kapharsalama*, mentioned 1 *Macab*. 7. 31. had sometimes stood; who in honour of his Father *Antipater*, gave it this new name. Near hereto did *Judas Macabeus* overthrow a part of *Onias* the Steward of *Ahab* hid the hundred Prophets, whom he preserved against the fury of *Jezabel*: Finally, to this City it was that Saint Paul was conveyed by the command of *Lysias* to save him from the Jews, wholay in wait to destroy him.

2 The Tribe of *EPHRAIM* was so called from *Ephraim*, the second and youngest Son of *Joseph*; of men, and 32500 in the Land of *Canaan*; lighting Lot fell betwixt this half Tribe of *Manasse*, on the North; and the Tribes of *Dan* and *Benjamin*, upon the South, extending from the River *Jordan* to the *Mediterranean*.

Places of most consideration, 1 *Saron* on the *Mediterranean*, to the South of *Antipatris*, mentioned *Acts* 9. 35. and giving name unto that fruitful Valley which reacheth from *Cesarea Palestine*, as far as *Joppa*. 2 *Lydda*, upon the same shores, where Saint Peter (virtute Christi, non sua) cured *Aneas* of the Palsy. By the Gentiles it was called *Difopolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; but by the Christians, in the time of the Holy Wars, it had the name of Saint George's; partly from a magnificent Temple which the Emperor *Justinian* there erected to the honour of that blessed Martyr; but principally from an opinion which they had amongst them, that he suffered Martyrdom in that place. An opinion founded

on mistakes, first of a *Cenotaphium*, or an empty Monument erected in this City to preserve his memory, for the Grave in which he was interred; the other, in the place of his suffering, which is meant only of the Story or Celebration. But howsoever they entitled it by the name of Saint George's, as was said before, and made it on that account also an Episcopal See. 3 *Ramatha*, or *Arimatea*, a City of the *Levites*, supposed to be the dwelling of *Joseph*, who begged of *Pilate* the Body of CHRIST. 4 *Feloz*, or *Ajalon*, a City of the *Levites* also; by some placed, and perhaps more truly, in the Tribe of *Dan*, and there we shall hear further of it. 5 *Themath-Cares*, given by the *Israelites* to *Josiah*, who enlarged the fame, and made it a strong and goodly City; honoured with the Sepulchre of that brave Commander, one of the Nine *Warriors* of the World; and afterwards made one of the *Presbiteries* of *Judaea*, by *Judas Macabeus* with 3000 Jews overthrew the Army of *Nicanor*. 7 *Jeftri*, called otherwise *Pelchi*, which gave name and birth unto the *Peletites*, part of *David's* Guard, under the governance of *Benaiah*. 8 *Silo*, situate on the top of a lofty Mountain; the receptacle of the Ark, till taken and carried thence by the *Philistines*. 9 *Micmash*, the habitation of *Jonathan*, one of the *Macabeans* Brethren, situate in the middle way from *Samaria* to *Hierusalem*, now called *Byra*. 10 *Naiath*, where *Saul* prophesied, 11 *Bezonon*, a City of the *Levites*, beautified by *Solomon*, but made more famous by the great and notable overthrow which *Judas Macabeus* here gave to *Lysias*, 12 *Pirhaton*, on the Mountain *Amele*, the City of *Abdon* the Judge of *Israel*. 13 *Sichem*, called also *Siclor*, the habitation in the old times of *Sichem* the Father of that *Hamor*, who defoured *Dinah* the Daughter of *Jacob*; the City for that cause destroyed by *Simeon* and *Levi*; repaired again, and afterwards by *Abimelech* levelled with the ground; a third time re-edified by *Jerobam* the Son of *Nabat*, & a third time ruined by the Kings of *Damascus*: yet notwithstanding these blows, it was of good esteem in the time of our Saviour, who abode in it two days; and converted many. Memorable for *Jacob's* Well, which was very near it; more for his neighbourhood to Mount *Garizim*, where the blessings were to be read to the people (of which see *Deut.* 11. 27. and *Josh.* 8. 23.) and where afterwards was built a magnificent Temple for the use of the *Samaritan* Nation, at the cost and charge of *Samballai*, a great Prince amongst them. Who having married his daughter to *Manasse*, brother of *Jaddai* the High Priest of the Jews; and fearing he would put her way, to avoid the sentence of Excommunication, which he was involved in for that Match, promised him, that if he would retain her, he would build a Temple answerable to that of *Hierusalem*, and make him the High Priest thereof, which was done accordingly. But this Temple had not stood above two hundred years, when destroyed by *Hircanus* the *Macabean*; the place remaining notwithstanding a place of worship, as appeareth *John* 4. 20. As for the City of *Sichem*, or *Siclor*, it was by the *Greecians* called *Nicopolis*, afterwards made a Colony by the Emperor *Vespasian*, who caused it to be called *Flavia Cesarea*: of which Colony was that renowned *Justin Martyr*. 14 *Samaria*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom of *Israel*, founded by *Omri* one of the Kings thereof, on the top of the Mountain *Samron* (which overlooketh all the bottom as far as the Sea-coast) whence it had the name. A stately and magnificent City, conjectured by *Brocardus*, who had traced the ancient Ruins of it, to be bigger than *Hierusalem*. Destroyed by the *Affrians* when they carried

carried away the Ten Tribes; but afterwards repaired again, and again beaten to the ground by the Sons of *Hyrcanus* above-mentioned. But *Herod the Great*, who was pleased with the situation of it, did again re-erect it, in more stately manner than before; as appeareth by the great store of goodly Marble Pillars, and other carved Stones, in great abundance found amongst the rubbish: and having rebuilt it to his mind, inclosed it with a strong wall, and beautified it with a goodly Temple; in honour of *Augustus Caesar*, whom the *Greeks* call *Sebastos*, he caused it to be called *Sebaste*. Memorabie after this new erection from the Sepulchre of *John Baptist*, and being made the *Metropolis* of *Judaea Secunda*, (by consequence an Archbishop's See) now nothing but a few cottages filled with *Grecian Monks*.

Nor were the *Samaritans* themselves (so called from this their principal City) left subject to the vicissitudes and change of fortune, than the City was. Defended for the most part from the *Assyrians*, and such other Nations as were sent thither to fill up the empty places of the captive Tribes: but called *Cathene* by the *Jews*, either because most of them were of *Cath*, a Region of *Perfians*, as *Josephus* telleth us, which is now called *Chuzestan*; or else by way of scorn, for *Chusites*, as being of the Posterity of the accursed *Cham*, by *Chus* his son. Having embraced the Law of *Moses*, they began to think better of the *Jews* than the other Nations, but fitted their affections to the change of times: it being the observation of the said *Josephus*, that as often as the *Jews* were in any prosperity, then they called them *Cozins*, and would be of the same Nation with them; but when their fortunes were on the declining hand, then they were strangers which came thither out of foreign Nations, and no kin at all. Nor doth he wrong them in this Character. For when *Alexander the Great* had granted the *Jews* a release of the seventh years Tribute, the *Samaritans* desiring the like exemption, pleaded for themselves *Ἐγγιστοὶ αὐτοῖς* &c. that they indeed were very *Hebrews*, though it pleased the *Sidonians* to call them *Sichemites*. But when *Antiochus* raged against them with fire and sword, the *Samaritans* sent Letters to him, disclaiming all relation to those of *Judah*, and challenging their descent from the *Medes* and *Perfians*. Nor were they content only to disclaim all kindred with the *Jews*, in the times of trouble, when any persecution rose against them for the Law of God; but did them also all ill Offices, and joined with their Enemies to their destruction: especially after the *Jews* had refused to admit of their assistance, in the re-building of the Temple; which after that they hindered with great malice, and no less perverseness. But the fortune of the *Jews* did at last prevail, the whole Nation being subdued by *Hyrcanus the Maccabean*, who destroyed their Schismatical Temple also, and levelled *Jamaria* it self to the very ground. After this, subject to the *Jews*, who possessed themselves of most of their Cities, and contracted them into a narrow compass than they were in formerly: but still so hated and contemned, that nothing was able to appease that inveterate malice, which they had conceived, till both Nations were extirpated in the time of *Adrian*, and made to seek their dwellings in other Countries. Made afterwards a Province of the *Roman Empire*, by the name of *Palestina Secunda*, successively subject with the rest to the *Perfians*, *Saracens*, and *Turks*, who do now possess it.

JUDAEA.

JUDAEA is bounded on the East with the *Dead Sea*, and the River *Jordan*; on the West with the

Mediterranean; on the North with *Samaria*; and on the South with *Idumea*. So called from the *Jews*, or people of the Tribe of *Judah*, who after their return from the captivity of *Babylon*, communicated the name of *Jew* unto all the Nation, as they did that of *Judaea* to this part of the Country.

The Soil of the same nature with that of *Samaria*, before described; but that it is more swelled with Hills, and more stored with Rivers, though of no great fame. And therefore we shall say no more, as to the general character and description of it; but look on the particular parts as it stood divided betwixt the *Philistines*, the Tribes of *Dan*, *Simeon*, *Judah* and *Benjamin*.

And first, the *PHILISTINES* commanded all the Sea-coasts from the South of *Phoenicia*, to the North of *Idumea*; or from the Castle of *Pilgrims*, to the City of *Gaza*, taking both into the accompt. But *Jeppa*, and all the Towns on the North of that, being taken in by the *Israelites*, they held no more than six Towns of any importance, with the Countries and Territories adjoining to them: but those few populous and strong, that by their own power, and the assistance of the *Edomites*, and the rest of their Neighbours, not well affected to the Tribes, they kept them under terms, and lay more heavy on them than all the *Canaanites* together; as will appear when we sum up the story and success of their affairs.

In the mean time let us survey the Country which was holden by them, notwithstanding all that could be done against them by the Kings of *Israel*: and therein we shall find worth our observation, 1. *Gath*, or *Gathy*, the birth-place of the huge Giant *Goliath*, slain by *David*; as also of many others of the like Gigantine proportion, slain by *David's* Worthies. Destroyed by *David*, or rather slighted and dismantled, it was rebuilt by *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*; but again razed by *Ozias King of Judah*, who found the *Philistines* there garrisoned but ill neighbours to him, and finally laid waste by *Hazael* the King of *Syria*. Not much regarded after that, though it kept the name of *Gath* in *St. Hieron's* time; till in these last ages *Fulk* the King of *Hierusalem* erected there a new Castle, from the ancient ruins. From hence, as I conceive, the *Idol Dagon*, so much worshipped by these *Philistines*, was by the *Syrians* and *Phoenicians* called *Ater-Gath*; and not from *Gath* a *Syrian Queen*, as is said by many. 2. *Accaron*, on the South of *Gath*, of great wealth and power, and one that held out notably against the *Danites* and *Judeans*. Much spoken of in the holy Scriptures, but for nothing more than their Idolatrous worship of *Idolzebub*, that is to say, the Lord of *Flies*: so called by the *Jews*, either in contempt of the Idolatrous Cities committed to him, or because of that great multitude of Flies which attended his Sacrifices, whereof some say, the Temple of *Hierusalem* was wholly free. But whatsoever he was, or for what cause so named, certain it is that he was held in special honour, and therefore called in Scripture the god of *Accaron*: and thither *Abimelech* the King of *Israel* sent his Messenger, to enquire of this Idol, concerning his health. 3. *Asdod*, (by the *Grecians* called *Asoton*) memorable in Holy Writ for the Temple of *Dagon*, into which the Ark of the Lord was brought; that Idol falling down before it, as not able to stand up when the Ark bore near. Near to this Town was *Judas Maccabeus* overcome & slain by *Bacchides*, Lieutenant to *Demetrius* the King of *Syria*; and not long after the Town itself was taken by *Jonathan* the brother of *Judas*, who put the Citizens to the sword, and burnt all such as fled to the Temple of *Dagon*, together with the very Idol, consumed in the same fire with the Idolaters. Rebuilt by *Gabinus* a *Roman* General, in the times of *Christ's* infancy it

was:

was made an Episcopal See; and continued a fair Village till the days of *St. Hieron*. 4. *Asdalon*, on the Sea-side also, said to be built by *Asdalon* a noble *Lydian*, employed by his King in a war against the *Syrians*; but this very uncertain. One of the chief and strongest Cities of the *Philistines*, of great note amongst the Gentiles for a Temple dedicated to *Diretus*, the Mother of *Semiramis*, here worshipped in the form of a Mermaid: & for another of *Apollo*, wherein *Herod* the Father of *Antipater*, and Grand-father of *Herod the Great* (from his birth in this City called *Herod the Asdalonite*) is said to have served as the Priest. It had in the first times of Christianity an Episcopal See; and in the course of the holy Wars by *King Richard* the first, & *Gaza*, more within the Land, on the River *Bezor*; a fair and strong Town, formerly called *Asht*, from whence perhaps the name of *Gaza* was derived by the Heathens; or else it was so called by the *Perfians*, in regard that *Cambyses* here laid up the Treasure which he had provided for the War of *Egypt*, the word *Gaza* in the *Perfian* Language signifying Treasures. Of which *Cambyses* it is said by *Pomponius Mela*, *Cum armis Egyptum pereret, hic belli opes & pecuniam inibi aravit*. After which it was made the Receipt of Treasury, in which the *Perfians* laid the Tribute of the Western Provinces, whence all riches had in time the name of *Gaza*. Once *Caleb* took it, but not able to hold it against the *Philistines*, he again deserted it. Destroyed by *Alexander the Great*, and re-built again, it made notable resistance against the *Maccabees*; till at last forced by *Simon* the brother of *Judas*, who liked the place so well that he intended to have made it his place of residence: not so decayed in length of time, but that it was a goodly City in the days of *Brochardus*, and it is still the best of all this Coast, built on an hill encompassed with rich and pleasant Vallies; the buildings low and mean, as in other places: but some of them adorned with pillars of fair *Parian Marble* digged out of the remaining ruins. 6. *Maïma*, the Port Town of *Gaza*, but made a City of it self by *Constantine*, by whom called *Constantia*: but re-holden again by *Julian* unto those of *Gaza*, and by him commanded to be called *Gaza Maritima*.

These were the chief places holden by the *Philistines*, a strong and Giantlike race of men, such as the Scripture calls by the name of *Anaks*, or the Sons of *Anak*. Originally descended from *Casubim* and *Caphorim*, of the race of *Mizraim* the Son of *Cham*: as appeareth both by the common consent of ancient Writers, and plain Texts of Scripture, *Jer. 47. 4.* and *Amos 9. 7.* These being settled first in the borders of *Egypt* and *Idumea*, where the *Casubim* gave name unto the Province of *Casotis*, and the Mountain *Casius*; proceeded Northwards and subdued the *Avims*, a *Canaanitish* people, planting themselves in their habitations, as is said expressly *Deut. 2. 23.* Here *Abraham* found them in his time, and here they were when *Isaac* went down to *Gerar*. Governed at first by one *Kin*, whom they called always by the name of *Abimelech*, as the *Egyptians* theirs by the name of *Pharaoh*; sometimes by five, according to the number of their principal Cities; but still united in the times of approaching dangers. Too strong to be subdued by the Tribes of *Israel*, they made head against them, and mazzing over them, till broken by *Samsophon*, and for a time the *Israelites* in the time of *Saul*, whom they discomfited, and hanged his dead body barbarously on the walls thereof. But *David*, a more fortunate Prince, overthrew them in many set battels, and at length took the Town of *Gath*, one of the strongest Towns they had;

and by that means so weakened them, that they durst not stir all the time of *David*, nor a long while after. Beginning to be troublesome in the days of *Ozias* King of *Judah*, they were warred on by him, their Army overthrown, *Isa* and *Amcia*, two of their strong Forts, took in the time of the Idolatrous *Achaz*, allocating with the *Edomites*, (who evermore attended the destruction of *Judah*) they brake out again; took *Bethsames*, *Ajalot*, *Prisoners*, and slew much People: But the good King *Ezekiah* made them pay dear for it, taking from them, Which notwithstanding, they recovered to so great esteem, that the whole Country had from them the name of *Philistia*. But broken by degrees by the *Maccabees*, they lost both their power and reputation, passing in common estimate as a part of *Jewry*; the fortunes of which it followed for the time succeeding.

2. The Tribe of *DAN* is so called from *Dan* the fifth Son of *Jacob*, by *Bilhah* the Hand-maid of *Rachel*, of whom were muliered at Mount *Sinai* 62700 fighting men; and 66400 at the second mulier, in the Land of *Canaan*: where their lot fell betwixt *Ephraim*, on the North, *Simeon* on the South, the Tribe of *Benjamin* on the East, and the *Mediterranean* on the West.

Places of most note in it, 1. *Joppa* (now called *Jaffa*) once a famous Mart-Town, and the only Haven of *Judaea* in foregoing times: the Town where *Jonah* took ship to fly unto *Tyr* and *Tarsish*, where *Peter* raised *Dorcas* from death to life; & where he lying in the house of one *Simon* a Tanner, was in a Vision taught the conversion of the Gentiles. This City they report to have been built before the flood. And here they say reigned *Cephus*, whose Daughter *Andromeda* was by *Perseus* delivered from a Sea-monster, some of whose bones the people used to shew to strangers, even to the flourishing of the *Romans*. Just as our citizens of *Coveentry* and *Warwick* shew the bones of the *Din-Cow* of *Dunstan* heath, and the bones of I know not what Giant, slain by *Gay* Earl of *Warwick*. In the time of the *Maccabees* it was garrisoned by the *Syrians*, who having in the Port a Fleet of good power & strength, invited 200 of the chief citizens to go aboard with them, & there drowned them all: for which their Fleet was fired by *Judas*, and such as did escape the fire, fell upon the sword. Twice taken by the *Romans*, & the second time burnt unto the ground: new walled, and fortified with Towers by King *Lewis* of France, in the year 1250. the holy Wars then drawing to their final end. Now nothing standing of it but two little Towers where are certain Harquebuses for defence of the Haven, none of the best; defended from the South & West winds with eminent Rocks, but exposed to the fury of the North; which makes it more unsafe than the open Seas when enraged by Tempests. Nor much frequented by the Merchants, who trade here but for Cottons only, & hold their Factory not far off in a Town called 2. *Ras*, by the *Moors* called *Ramula*, situate in a sandy plain, on the rising of a little Hill; built of Free-stone, but more beautiful in the ruins of some Christian Churches, and a Monastery built by *Philip* the Good of *Burgundy*, where the House of *Nicodemus* stood, than in any of the remaining Edifices. 3. *Jamnia*, near *Jeppa*, where *Judas* burnt the rest of the *Syrian* Fleet, the flame whereof was seen to *Hierusalem*, 240 furlongs off: mentioned by *Ptolomy*, and in the times of Christianity an Episcopal See, now not discernable in the ruins. 4. *Cedar* or *Cedron*, fortified against the *Jews* by *Cendeban* one of the Lieutenants of *Antiochus*, who hercabouts was overthrown

thrown by the *Maccabees*. 5 *Modin*, a small Town, but honoured with the birth and Sepulchre of those *Maccabees*; the Sepulchre being seven Marble Pillars of so great an height, that they served as a mark for Sea-men. 6 *Gibbethon*, in the Country called *Makatz*, a City of the *Levites*, but afterwards possessed by the *Philistines*, at the siege whereof *Nadab*, the Son of *Jeroboam* King of *Israel*, was slain by *Baalha*, who succeeded; and *Omri* chosen King on the death of *Zimri*. 7 *Carthiathurim*, where the Ark of the Lord was kept for 20 years, in the house of *Amiadab*; that is to say, from the sending it home by the *Philistines*, till brought to *Hierusalem* by *David*. 8 *Beth-Jemes*, to which the Ark was brought by a yoke of Kine, turned loose by the *Philistines*: for irreverent looking into which there were slain by the immediate hand of God, no fewer than 50070 persons of this City. 9 *Tzarah*, near which is a Fountain, called the Fountain of *Ethiopia*, because *Philip* there baptized the *Ethiopian* Eunuch. 10 *Capfen*, taken with great laughter by *Judas Maccabeus*. 11 *Lachis*, remarkable for the death of *Amaziab* King of *Judah*. 12 *Ajalon*, a City of the *Levites* also, touched upon before in the Tribe of *Ephraim*; in the borders whereof we find it situated; and therefore by some Authors reckoned to the same Tribe, and by some to the other, in the Valley whereof the Moon is said to have stood still at the prayers of *Johshua*, as the Sun did over the City of *Gibeon*: the motion of the Heavens being staid, that he might have the more time for execution on the Kings of the *Canaanites*. To this Tribe also belonged the Town and Territory of *Dan*, or *Lehem*, afterwards called *Cafarna Philippi*, in the Tribe of *NEPHTHALI*M, whereof we have there spoke already.

3 The Tribe of *SIMEON* was so called from *Simon* the second Son of *Jacob* by his first Wife *Leah*: of whom were found at the first muster 59300 able men, and but 22200 at the second muster, when they came into *Canaan*. Where they enjoyed but a small Territory to themselves, their Lot falling amongst the *Philistines*, whom they were not able to expel: and therefore they were taken into the Tribe of *Judah*, where they were permitted to enjoy some Towns and Villages, intermixed with that more potent Tribe. Afterwards in the reign of King *Hezekiah*, some of them possessed themselves of *Gedar*, belonging to the Children of *Ham*; and others passing South-wards into *Idumaea*, smote the *Amalekites* which inhabited in the mountains thereof, & dwelt in the places by them conquered. But for all this, wanting room for themselves and their children, many of them undertook the Office of Scribes or Scriveners, and dispersed themselves amongst the rest of the Tribes, teaching their Children to write, and giving themselves to the employment of Publick Notaries: God herein verifying the Curse which *Jacob* had denounced on *Simon*, that he should be divided and scattered in *Israel*. But for their fixed habitation which fell to them by Lot, it lay betwixt *Dan* upon the North, and *Idumaea* on the South; the Tribe of *Judah* on the East, and the *Philistines* upon the West.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Gerar*, the Royal Seat of the two *Abimelechs*, Kings of the *Philistines*, with whom *Abraham* and *Isaac* had to do; and probably of some other of their Kings and Princes, till subdued by the *Israelites*. Situate in the South border of *Canaan*, not far from the Wilderness of *Beerseba*, but in a very healthful air: called therefore *Regio Salutis* in the times succeeding. 2 *Sieclez*, or *Ziglag*, belonging to the *Philistines* till the time of *David*, to whom given by *Achish* King of *Gath*, for his place of retreat, when persecuted by *Saul*, from whom flying he lodged here all his goods

and carriages; sacked by the *Amalekites*, but the booty recovered from them speedily by the diligence and good fortune of *David*. 3 *Hain*, a City of the *Levites*. 4 *Cariah-Sepher*, that is to say the City of Books, feared within the bounds of *Simon*, but belonging to *Judah*: which some hold to be the University or Academy of old *Palestine*. A City of the *Levites* also, and at first possessed by the Sons of *Anak*, or men of a Gigantic stature, but taken by *Ornuid* the Son of *Konan*; on the promise and encouragement which was given by *Calab*, that whoever took it should have his Daughter *Aschab* to Wife. Afterwards it was called *Debir*, Judg. 1. 11. known in the time of St. *Hieron* by the name of *Daana*, 5 *Choraz*, conceived by some to be that place mentioned Num. 14. 45. to which the *Canaanites* and *Amalekites* pursued those of *Israel*. 6 *Beerseba*, or *Putens juramenti*; so called of the Well of waters, and the Oath which was there sworn betwixt *Abraham* and *Abimelech*, Gen. 21. 31. Memorable in the Scripture for the Grove which *Abraham* there planted, the wandering of *Hagar* thereabouts, when he was cast out of *Abraham's* household with her young Son *Ismael*; and the dwelling of *Isaac*, for which cause called the City of *Isaac*. Situate in the extreme South border of the Land of *Canaan*, the length whereof is often measured in the Scripture from this Town to *Dan*; and for that cause well fortified by the Western *Christians*, when they were possessed of this Country; as standing on the borders of *Idumaea*, and the Defarts of *Arabia*, in the way from *Aegypt*.

4 The Tribe of *JUDAH* was so called from *Judah* the fourth Son of *Jacob*, by his Wife *Leah*: of whom there were numbered at the first general muster taken near Mount *Sinai*, 76600 fighting men; and no fewer than 76500 at their entrance into the Land of *Canaan*. The greatest Tribe, and therefore answerably fitted with the largest Territory, bordering on the Dead Sea, East upon *Simon* West; the Tribe of *Benjamin* on the North; and the *Idumaeans* on the South. Comparatively large, with reference to the other Tribes; but otherwise unable to contain or feed those infinite multitudes, without the extraordinary providence of Almighty God, which are recorded to be in it: King *David* murthering 47000 fighting men of this Tribe alone; which was more than half the number found in the rest of the Tribes. A Tribe which had a native Sovereignty over all the others; the Scepter, the Legislative power, and the World's *Messiah* being all promised to them.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Anak*, situate in the entrance of *Judaea*, in the way from the Wilderness of *Edom*. 2 *Hebron*, one of the ancientest Cities of *Canaan*; the Seat of the Giants called *Anakim*, or the Sons of *Anak*. This word *Anak* signifieth a Chain worn for Ornament, and it seemeth that this *Anak* enriched with the spoils of his enemies, wore a Chain of gold, leaving both the custom and name to his posterity. We read the like of *Adanias Torquatus* in the *Roman* Histories. This Town did *Abraham* buy for a burial-place for his dead; in which his Wife *Sarah* was first buried, and after her four of the Patriarchs. Adjoining to this Town is the Plain of *Manure*, where *Abraham*, the Father of the Faithful, sitting in his Tent, was visited from Heaven by God in the shape of a man. Here *David* kept his Court before the winning of *Hierusalem*, to this place came the Tribes to anoint him King over *Israel*; and hither came *Abraham*, under the pretence of paying his vows, to usurp the Kingdom of his Father. 3 *Tecoa*, the City of *Amor* the Prophet; and also of that Woman, who by the words which *Joab* put into her mouth, persuaded the King to call *Abraham* from exile. In the Wilderness of this *Tecoa* there absembled the Inhabitants of *Moab*, *Ammon*, and

Mount

Mount *Seir*, to overthrow *Judah*. But the Lord being appealed by the publick Feast, proclaimed and kept by *Jehoshaphat* and the people, fowed diffusions amongst them: So that the children of *Ammon* and *Moab* stood up against the Inhabitants of Mount *Seir*, utterly to slay and destroy them; and when they had made an end of the Inhabitants of Mount *Seir*, every one helped to destroy one another. 1 *Cariorh*, or *Caripih*, the birth-place of *Judas*, hence surnamed *Scario* (or the man of *Cariorh*) who betrayed our Saviour. 5 *Jeber*, or *Tater*, in the North border of this Tribe, towards *Eleutheropolis*, a City anciently of the *Levites*, and called in St. *Jerom's* time *Tzabira*, and then altogether replenished with *Christians*, now nothing but the name remaining. 6 *Maresa*, the native Soil of the Prophet *Micah*, near whereunto first *Asa* King of *Judah* discomfited the vast Army of *Terah* the *Arabian* or *Ethiopian*, consisting of above 4 Million of men; and afterwards *Gorgias* was overthrown by *Judas Maccabeus*. 7 *Emaus* (after called *Nicopolis*) memorable for the third overthrow which *Judas* gave to the said *Gorgias*; for our Redeemers shewing himself after his resurrection to *Cleophas* and another of his Disciples; and for the hot Bathes hereabouts, which gave the name of *Salutaris* to this part of *Palestine*. The Sovereign vertue of which Waters *Socorum*, a *Christian*, attributes to the washing of *Christ's* feet in them, as he passed by at that time; but *Josephus* a Jew, ascribes (as is most likely) unto natural caldres. 8 *Hafor*, or *Chasfor*, one of the frontier Towns towards *Idumaea*. 9 *Odala*, or *Hadullan*, an ancient & magnificent City taken and destroyed by *Joabna*, and long after much enlarged and beautified by *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabees*. 10 *Ceila*, or *Keila*, where *David* sometimes hid himself when he fled from *Saul*; by him delivered afterwards from the assaults of the *Philistines*. 11 *Eleutheropolis*, or the Free City, not far from *Hebron*; a City of later date than any of *Judah*, mentioned by *Prologus*, and much remembered by St. *Hieron*. 12 *Azela*, not far from *Emaus*, to which *Joabna* followed *Dabir* the King of *Eglon*, and his four Associates, whom he discomfited in the cause and quarrel of the *Gibonites*; molested by them for submitting to their common Enemy. Seized in the Valley of *Terebim*, and of very great strength; presuming upon which, it revolted from *Joram* King of *Judah*, at the same time that *Libna* and the *Edomites* had revolted from him. 13 *Beth-Sur*, or (*Beth-Sora*) that is to say, the house on the Rock, so called from the situation on a rocky hill, one of the strongest places of *Judah*: Fortified first by *Rehobam* the Son of *Solomon*, after by *Judas Maccabeus*; and finally made impregnable by his Brother *Simon*. 14 *Adram*, bordering on the Dead Sea, beautified also by *Rehobam*. 15 *Zoar*, in former times called *Bela*, but took its name from the words of *Lot*, alleging that it was but a little one. Gen. 19. 20. as the word *Johor* does import, in whose escape it was preserved, being otherwise one of the five Cities of the Region called *Pemopolis*, doomed unto destruction; the other four *Sodom*, *Gomorrah*, *Adama*, and *Seboim*, being at the same time destroyed by fire and brimstone. 16 *Masfada*, frequently mentioned by *Josephus*, as a place of great strength both by art and nature, and as it is by him described (in the seventh Book de *Bello Jud. cap. 28.*) to be thought impregnable; and therefore made by *Ezerod* (in the time of his troubles) the place of refuge, in which he disposed of *Marianne* his betrothed Wife, her Mother *Alexandra*, with divers honourable Ladies; and where they were preserved in safety against all his Enemies, till he came armed with power from *Rome*, to dislodge their Forces, which was done accordingly. First built by *Jonathan* the brother of *Judas Maccabeus*, as a sure place of Refuge against the *Syrians*; and afterwards

so esteemed by *Herod* for the reason above mentioned, that he not only much enlarged it, with all the requisite additions of strength & beauty, but built within the square thereof a magnificent Palace. The whole environment with a wall of 7 furlongs compass, 12 cubits high, & 8 Mountain broad, built of white stone, and situate on a high place called *Collis Asblita*, wallied on the East-side by the Dead Sea, or *Lacus Asphaltites*, and by that secured; on the other sides fenced with such deep ditched that it was a terror to any man to look down into them: besides which natural situation; it was fortified by *Herod* with 27 Turrets, who left therein as in a place impregnable and inaccessible, a Magazine of Arms and all warlike furniture for an Army of 10000 men, all sorts of Victuals to sustain them, and ground enough within the Walls to yield corn sufficient, when time and a long siege should consume those Victuals. A place of such strength and so great concernment, that it held out against the *Romans* (when *Vespasian* and his Son *Titus* managed that great War) after all the rest of *Judaea* had been conquered by them. 17 *Libna*, a strong City seated in a corner of *Judaea*, running between the Tribes of *Dan* and *Benjamin*. This City revolted from *Joram* King of *Judaea* at the same time the *Edomites* did, and continued a Free State, even as long as *Judaea* continued a Kingdom. 18 *Ziph*, in the Wilderness, wherein *David* hid himself from the fury of *Saul*. Hither, when *Saul* pursued him, *David* came into his Camp (the Watch being all asleep) and took thence his Spear and a Cruise of Oyl, and departed. *Abishai* indeed would fain have killed him: but *David*, though he knew that *Samuel* had by God's command abdicated *Saul* from the Kingdom, and that himself was appointed in his stead, would not touch him; but left him to the judgment of the Lord; who anointed he was. 19 *Bethlehem*, or (to distinguish it from another of this name of *Zabulon* so called) *Bethlehem-Judaea*, where *Christ* was born; and the *Innocents* suffered for him before he had suffered for them. In this general Massacre of young Children, a son of *Herod's*, which was at nurse, was also slain; which being told unto *Augustus*, he replied, *He had rather be Herod's Swine than his Son*. His Swine being safe in regard the Jews were forbidden hog-meat; but his Sons frequently made away, upon fears and jealousies. A Town for this cause had in great respect by the primitive *Christians*, beautified by *Helena* with a stately Temple, which yet standing entire, by the Lady *Paula* (much extolled by St. *Hieron*) with some goodly Monasteries, in one of which the body of that Father lieth; and by the Western *Christians*, with a See Episcopall. On the Frontier of this Country towards the *Philistines*, was that strong Castle which *Herod* repairing, called *Eleutherodim*, seated on a Hill, the ascent into which was made with 200 steps of Marble, exceeding fair and large. In this Country also are the hills of *Engaddi*, in a Cave of which *David* cut off the Lap of *Saul's* Garment; and all along the bottoms whereof were the Gardens of *Balsamum* or *Oydalamum*, the trees of which were by *Cleopatra* (at such time as she governed *M. Antony* and the East) sent for to be replanted in *Heliopolis* of *Aegypt*; and *Herod*, who durst not deny them, plucked them up by the roots, and sent them to her.

5 The Tribe of *BENJAMIN* took name from the twelfth and youngest Son of *Jacob*, by *Rachel* his best beloved Wife, who dyed in that Child-birth: of which at the first muster near Mount *Sinai*, were numbered 35000 able men; and at the second muster, when they entered the *Promised Land*, there were found of them six for Arms 45600 persons. A Tribe in great danger to have been utterly cut off, by the folly of the men of

Gibeon, all Israel arming against it as one man. For besides those that perished in the former Battels, there fell in one day 25000 men that drew the Sword: the fury of the Conquerors after that great Victory sparing neither man nor beast, nor any thing that came to hand, and burning down all their Cities also which they came unto. So great an havoc was there made of innocent Maidens, that when the edge of this displeasure was taken off, there were not Wives enough found for those young men who had escaped: The other Tribes having bound themselves by a solemn Oath, not to bestow their Daughters on them: inasmuch that they were fain to provide themselves of Wives of the Daughters of *Jabesh-Gilead*, a Town of the *Manassites* beyond *Jordan*, whom they took by assault; and of the Daughters of *Shilo*, whom they took by stratagem. The whole Story see at large in the Book of *Judges*, c. 19, 20, 21.

The Territories of this Tribe lay betwixt those of *Ephraim* on the North, and *Judah* on the South; having the *Dead-Sea* to the East, and the Tribe of *Dan* to the Westward of them. The chief of their Towns and Cities were, 1. *Michmas*, the incamping place of *Saul*, 1 Sam. 13. 2. and the abiding place of *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabean* Brethren, 1 Macc. 9. 73. 2. *Misphah*, famous in being the ordinary place of assembly for the whole body of the People, in matters of War and Peace: as also in that standing in the midst of *Canaan*, it was (together with *Gilgal*) made the Seat of Justice, to which *Saul* went yearly to give Judgment to the People, 3. *Gebah*, the North border of the Kingdom of *Judah* toward *Israel*. 4. *Gebath*, the Country of *Saul*, the first King, where the abusing of the *Levite's* Wife by the young men of this Town, had almost rooted the Tribe of *Benjamin* out of the Garden of *Israel*. 5. *Asi*, a great and strong City, in the Siege of which the *Israelites* were first discomfited: but when by the death of *Achan*, who had sinned the accursed thing, the Camp was purged, *Jehovah* by a warlike Stratagem surprised it. 6. *Gibeon*, the mother-City of the *Gibeonites*, who prefiging the unrefutable Victories of the *Israelites*, came to the Camp of *Jehovah*, and by a wile obtained peace of him and the People: Employed by them in hewing Wood, and drawing Water for the use of the Tabernacle, after the fraud was made known unto them, called *Nethinims*, Ezra 4. 3. from *Natham*, which signifies to give, because they were given to the service of the Tabernacle first, of the Temple after. *Saul* about four hundred years after, slew some of them, for which fact the Lord caused a Famine on the Land; which could not be taken away till seven of *Saul's* Sons were by *David* delivered unto the *Gibeonites*, and by them hanged. This Famine did God send, because in killing those poor *Gibeonites*, the Oath was broken which *Jehovah* and the Princes swore concerning them. In defence of those *Gibeonites* it was that *Jehovah* waged War against the Kings of the *Canaanites*, and stayed the motion of the Sun by his fervent Prayers. 7. *Jericho*, destroyed by the found of Rams-Horns, was not only levelled by *Jehovah* to the ground, but a Curse inflicted on him that should attempt the re-building of it. This Curse notwithstanding, at the time when *Abab* reigned in *Israel* (which was about five hundred years after the ruin of it) *Hiel a Bethelite*, delighted with the pleasantness of the place, re-edified it. But (as it was foretold by *Jehovah*) as he laid the foundation of the Walls, he lost his eldest Son; and when he had finished it, and was setting up the Gates thereof, he lost also the younger. It may be *Hiel* when he began this Work, minded not the Prophecy, it may be he believed it not: peradventure he thought the words of *Jehovah* not so much to proceed from the spirit of Pro-

phesy, as from an angry and vexed heart; they being spoken in way of wifdom, or execration. And it is possible, it may be, he chose rather to build the eternity of his name on so pleasant and beautiful a City, than on the uncertain lives and illuses of two young men. 8. *A-mahobah*, the birth-place of the Prophet *Jeremy*, and the Patrimony of *Abiathar* the High-Priest, sent hither by the command of *Solomon*, as to a place of his own, when deposed from his Office by that King. 9. *Nob*, called 1 Sam. 22. 19. the City of the Priests, destroyed by *Saul*, for the relief which *Abimelech* the High-Priest had given to *David*; the Ark of the Lord then residing there, 10. *Gilgal*, upon the bank of *Jordan*, where *Jehovah* did first eat of the Fruits of the Land, and kept his first *Paschover*; where he circumcised such of the People as were born during their wandering in the Wilderness; and high to which he set up twelve Stones, for a Memorial to Posterity that the Waters of *Jordan* did there divide themselves, to give passage to the twelve Tribes of *Israel*. Here *Agag*, King of the *Amalekites*, was hewn in pieces by *Samuel*, and here *Samuel* once every year administered Justice to the People. For being seated in the middle of the Land of *Israel*, betwixt North and South, and on the East-side of the Country near the Banks of *Jordan*, it served very fitly for that purpose: as *Misphah* also did, which stood in the same distance, in regard of the length of the Land of *Canaan*, but situate towards the West-Sea, near the Land of the *Philistines*: used therefore interchangeably for the ease of the People. 11. *Bethel*, at the first called *Luz*, but took this new name in remembrance of the Vision which *Jacob* saw here, at going towards *Mesopotamia*, as is said Gen. 28. 19. It signified the House of God, and was therefore chosen by *Jeroboam*, for the setting up of one of his golden Calves; though there (as the Prophet said) he made it to be *Beth-aven*, the House of Vanity, Hof. 3. 15. & 10. 5. For then it was a part of the Kingdom of the ten Tribes, and the Southern border of that Kingdom on the Coast of *Ephraim*: but taken from it by *Abijah* the King of *Judah*, and after that accounted as a member of his Kingdom, till the destruction of it by the *Chaldeans*. Called with the rest of those parts, in the time of the *Maccabees*, by the name of *Apharema*, which signifieth a thing taken away; because taken away from the ten Tribes, to which once it belonged, 1 Macc. 11. 34. where it is said, to have been taken from the Country of *Samaritis*, and added unto the borders of *Judea*. 12. *Ramath*, another place there mentioned, and said to have been added to the Realm of *Judah*, having been formerly the South border of the Kingdom of *Israel*; and therefore strongly fortified by *Basaiha*, in the time of *Afa* King of *Judah*, 13. *Chadai*, or *Hadid*, one of the three Cities (the other two being 14. *Lod*, and 15. *Om*) which were inhabited by the *Benjaminites* after the Captivity. Destroyed in the Wars with the Kings of *Syria*, and afterwards re-built by *Simon* the *Maccabean*.

But the chief Glory of this Tribe, and of all the rest, and not so only, but of all the whole World besides, was the famous City of *Hierusalem*; seated upon a rocky Mountain, every way to be ascended with steep and difficult Ascents (except towards the North) environed on all other sides also with some neighbouring Mountains, as if placed in the middle of an Amphitheatre. It consisted in the time of its greatest flourish of four parts, separated by their several Walls, as if several Cities; we may call them, the *Upper City*, the *Lower City*, the *New City*, and the *City of Herod*: all of them but the *Lower City*, seated upon their several Hills. Of these, that which we call the City of *Hierusalem*, had formerly been beautified with the Houses of many of the Prophets as

in our Saviours time with that of *Mary* the Mother of *John Mark*, mentioned Acts 15. 37. converted to a Church by the *Primitive Christians*: the Western part whereof was wholly taken up by the Palace of *Herod*, (a wicked but magnificent Prince) for cost excellent, and for strength invincible; containing Gardens, Groves, Fillpounds, places devised for pleasures, besides those for exercise. Fortified with three Towers at the corners of it. That on the South-East of the Wall, fifty Cubits high, of excellent workmanship, called *Marianne's* Tower, in memory of his beloved but insatiable Wife, rashly murdered by him. Opposite to which, on the South-West corner, stood the Tower of *Phasaelus*, so called by the name of his Brother, seventy Cubits high, and in form resembling that so much celebrated *Aegyptian Pharos*: and on the North Wall, on a high Hill, the Tower of *Hippick*, exceeding both the rest in height, by fourteen Cubits, and having on the top two Spires; in memory of the two *Hippick*, his very dear Friends, slain in his service in the Wars.

2. On the South-side stood that part which was called the *Old City*, possessed if not built by the *Jehusites*, and therein both the Mountain and Fore of *Sion*: but after called the City of *David*, because taken by him; who thereon built a strong and magnificent Castle, the Royal Court and Mansion of the Kings succeeding. In the Palace built by *Herod*, the one part whereof he named *Agrippa*, and the other *Cesar*, composed of Marble; and every where interlaid with Gold; and not far off, the House of *Anna* and *Caphana*, to which the Conspirators led our Saviour to receive his Trial.

3. That which was called the *Lower City*, because it had more in it of the *Valley*, was also called the *Daughter of Sion*, because built after it, and did in Majesty and greatness exceed the Mother. For therein upon Mount *anion* and betwixt it and Mount *Sion*, on another part of *Aegypt*; and that which he founded for himself, Temple, stood hereof, on a lofty Rock over-looking the City, stood the Royal Palace of the Princes of the *Maccabees*, re-edified and dwelt in by King *Agrippa*, *Herod's* building, adorned with admirable Pictures, expressing the many Victories and Triumphs of *Augustus Caesar*. In this part stood also Mount *Acra*, and on that once a Citadel built by *Antiochus* King of *Syria*; but razed by *Simon* one of the *Maccabean* Brothers, because it over-topped the Temple; the House of *Helenus* Queen of *Adiabene*, who converted from *Paganism* to *Judaism*, had herer dwelling, and here died: and finally, *Herod's* Amphitheatre, capacious enough to contain Shows and Spectacles, as were in use amongst the *Romans*. And in this part also, on a high and craggy Rock, not far from the Temple stood the Tower of *Barris*, wherein the same *Herod* built a strong and impregnable Citadel, in honour of *Mark Antony*, whose Creature he first was, called by the name of *Antonias*, having a fair and large Tower at every corner, two of them fifty Cubits high, and the other seventy; afterwards garrisoned by the *Romans*, for fear the *Jews* presuming on the strength of the Temple, might take occasion to rebel.

4. As for the *New City*, which lay North to the City of *Herod*, it was once a Suburb only unto all the rest; inhabited by none but mechanical persons, and the meanest Tradesmen; but after incamped by *Agrippa* with a Wall of 25 Cubits high, and fortified with ninety

Turrets. The whole City fenced with a wonderful circumvallation on all parts thereof; having a Ditch cut out of the fame Rock, as *Josaphus* an eye-witness writeth, sixty foot deep, & no less than two hundred and fifty foot in breadth. First built, say some, by *Melchisedech* the King of *Salem*; by the *Jehusites* themselves say others: by whomsoever built, called at first *Jehusalem*, afterwards *Jerusalem*, with the change of one letter only: enlarged in time, when made the Royal Seat of the House of *David*, to the magnificence, and greatness before described, till it attained unto the compass of sixty furlongs, or seven miles and an half. Unconquered for the first four hundred years after the entrance of the Children of *Israel*; and when *David* attempted it, the people presumed so much on the strength of the place, that they told him in the way of scorn, that *the blink and the lame* which they had amongst them (as the Text is generally expounded) should defend it against him. But as I think, the late learned Mr. *Gregory of Christ's Church in Oxon*, hath found out a more likely meaning of the Text than this, who telleth us, That the *Jehusites* called *Blind and Lame* (as they knew well what the *Tutelar Idols*, on whose protection they relied (as the then the meaning must be this, Those gods whom you of *Israel*, can blind and lame, shall defend our Walls. Why else should *David* say, (had they meant it literally) that his foul hated the lame and the blind? 2 Sam. 5. 8. to say, That the blind and lame should not come into the House (or the Temple of God) were it meant no otherwise? But notwithstanding their vain hopes, the Town was carried under the conduct of *Joab*, that fortunate and courageous Leader; and made the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Judah*.

Proceed we now unto the Temple built by *Solomon*, in providing the Materials whereof there were in *Lebanon* Month, 70000 Workmen, which wrought by 10000 every 80000 Quarry-men, that hewed Stones in the Mountains; and of Officers and Overseers of the Work, no less than 3300 men. The Description of this stately Fabric, we have in the first of Kings, cap. 6. 7. In the year of the World 2350. it was destroyed by *Nebuchadnezzar* at the taking of *Hierusalem*: re-built again after the return from the Captivity; but with such opposition of the *Samaritans*, that the Workmen were fain to hold their Tools in one hand, and their Swords in the other, to repulse if need were, those malicious Enemies. But yet this Temple was not unanswerable to the magnificence of the former; so that the Prophet *Haggai* who had good occasion to lay to the People, chap. 1. ver. 3. *Glory? is it not in your eyes as nothing, in comparison of it?* Nor fell it short thereof only in the outward Structure, but some inward Additaments: For it wanted, 1. The *Por of Manna*, which the Lord commanded *Moses* to lay up before the *Tefimony* for a memorial, Exod. 16. 32, &c. 2. The Rod of *Aaron*, which only budded of all the Rods of the Princes of *Israel*, and was commanded to be kept before the Ark of the *Tefimony*, for a token against *Corah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, Num. 17. 10. 3. The Ark of the Covenant, the making whereof we have Exod. 25. 10. and the placing of it in the Oracle, or *Sanctum Sanctorum*, 1 Kings 6. 19. 4. The two Tablets of the Law, writ by God's own finger, and by *Moses* laid up in the Ark of the Covenant; Exod. 40. 20. and Deut. 10. 5. And 5. The Fire of Sacrifice, which came down from Heaven, mentioned Lev. 9. 24. 2 Chron. 17. 1. which

which by the Priest, was to be kept continually burning never to go out. This second Temple, partly because it was grown ruinous, partly because it seemed not magnificent enough, but principally to curry favour with the Jews, Herod the *Apolonite* pulled down, and set up another in the place; making it not much inferior (if at all) unto that of *Solomon*, but far superior to the other *Annea's opulentia Templum*, as *Tacitus* most truly called it. And this was it to which our Saviour did sometimes vouchsafe his presence.

But here we are to understand, that by the Temple it is not meant the Fabric only, or the House it self; but also all those several Courts with which encompassed, being four in number. That is to say, *Atrium Sacerdotum*, or the Priests Court, which was next unto the Temple; wherein stood the Brazen Altar for the daily Sacrifice, and the Laver for the washing of the Priests and the Sacrifice also: into which Court might none enter but the Priests alone. 2. Then there was *Atrium Populi*, or the Peoples Court, separated from the other by a Wall of three Cubits height; to which the People did repair to perform their Sacrifices, to say their prayers, and to make payment of their vows. In the middle of this Court, did *Solomon* make a brazen Scaffold for the Kings his Successors, 2 *Chron.* 6. 13. and afterwards in imitation of his Porch built before the Temple, were many Porches built about it for the people to repair in rainy weather; which gave to this whole Court the name of *Solomon's Porch*, whereof see *John* 10. 23. *Acts* 3. 11. Without that stood *Atrium Faminarum*, or the Womens Court, divided from the other, as is collected out of 2 *Chr.* 20. 5. in the time of *Jeioaphat* King of *Judah*; in which stood the Treasury, or poor mens Box, mentioned in the one and twentieth Chapter of *St. Lukes* Gospel: from whence this whole Court had sometimes the name of Treasury, as appeareth *John* 8. 20. where it is said, that *these words spake* JESUS *in the Treasury*, that is to say, in the Womens Court, where the Treasury or Alms-box stood. Betwixt these last was an ascent of 15 steps, on which the *Levites* used to sing those 15 Psalms, which do immediately follow the hundred nineteenth Psalm; upon each step one: from whence they had the name of *Psalm Graduales*, or *Cantica Graduum*, i. e. the Psalm or Songs of degrees. And so far all was counted *holy ground*, upon which none might tread but either natural Jews, or circumcised Proselytes, whom they called *Proselyti fidei*, as before was said; or of such of the other Sex (not natural *Jews*) who having received all outward initiations, had bound themselves unto the observation of the Law of *Moses*. 4. So was it not with the fourth and last Court, called *Atrium Gentium*, or the Court of the Gentiles, designed for the use of those Gentiles, whom they called *Proselyte Porta*, bound only unto the keeping of the Precepts given to the Sons of *Noah*, for in that, as unanctified ground (though counted part of the Temple also) did they permit a Market of Sheep and Oxen, the Sale of Doves and Pigeons, and the Tables of Money-changers, for the Oblations of the People: stabling the poor Gentiles amongst their Cattle, and ranking them with the worst of them. And out of this Temple, or Court of the Temple did CHRIST our Saviour call the buyers and sellers and overthrow the Tables of the money-changers; asserting it to its primitive original use, which was to be an house of Prayer for all Nations. This last Court separate the other by a wall of three cubits height, adorned with certain pillars of equal dimension, bearing this inscription, *Μη δει διαβαιναι οψη*; *Thou shalt not pass over*, i. e. *Let no Alien* (or one that is no Jew) enter into the Holy place: and to this wall it is that the Apostle alludeth, saying, *He hath broken down the middle-wall*

of partition between us (i. e. between the Jews and Gentiles) making one of twain, *Ephes.* 2. 14. 15. inferring hereupon, that the Gentiles are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellow-Citizens with the Saints; and of the *humble* of God, v. 9.

But to go forwards with the Temple, having continued in the glories of which Herod brought it, not above 83 years, it was finally destroyed by *Titus* the Son of *Vespasian*, in the 69 year of *Christ's* Nativity. At what time the Temple of *Delphos* was utterly overthrown by Earthquakes and Thunderbolts from Heaven; neither of them ever since repaired, though much endeavoured. The concurrence of which two Miracles evidently sheweth, that the time was then come in which God would put an end both to the Jewish Ceremonies and Heathen Idolatries, that so the Kingdom of his Son might be all in all. For this destruction of the Temple of *Hierusalem* I may call a miracle, in regard it was done against the command of *Titus*; who was not only careful to preserve it, before his Soldiers had put fire to it, but did all that possibly might be to quench it. His reason was, *Παυλος ος ενος η βαβυλων*, as *Josephus* hath it, because thereof would redound so highly to the prejudice, of the Roman Empire, in being deprived of such a glorious and magnificent structure. But do he what he could with his utmost industry, there was no quenching of it till it was consumed. And it adds somewhat to the marvel, that this should happen on the tenth day of *August*, on which day the first Temple had been burnt by *Nebuchadnezzar*. And certainly it is worth the noting (I hope I shall not be accounted superstitious for this observation) to see how happy or unfortunate, one or the same day had been found unto divers persons. In the Wars betwixt the French and Spaniards for the Realm of *Naples*, Friday was observed to be very lucky to that great Captain *Gonsalvo*; he having on that day given the French many notable overthrowes. Wednesday is said to have been fortunate to Pope *Sixtus* the Fifth, for on that day he was born; on the same made a Monk; on that day created General of his Order; on the same day made a Cardinal, then chosen to be Pope; and finally on the same inaugurated. To Henry the Seventh of England, Saturday was observed to be very fortunate in all his actions; as was the 24. of February unto *Charles* the Fifth, on what day forever: for on that he came into the world, and in that he took the King Francis prisoner at the Battle of *Pavia*, and on the same received the Imperial Crown. But to return unto the Temple, we find that on the Sabbath, or Saturday, it was taken by *Pompey*, on the same day by Herod, and on that also by *Titus*.

But go we forwards to *Hierusalem* as now it standeth, it lay in rubbish and unbuild (after the destruction of it by *Titus*) till repaired by *Adrian*: and then the Temple not so much as thought of, till out of an ungodly policy, in the Reign of *Julian*, that Politick Enemy of the Church; who to diminish the infinite number of Christians by the increase of the Jews, began again to build this Temple. But no sooner were the foundations laid, but a terrible Earthquake cast them up again; & fire from Heaven consumed the Tools of the Workmen, together with the Stones, Timber, and other materials. As for the City it self after the desolation in it which was made in *Titus*, it was re-edified by the Emperor *Alis Adrianus*, who named it *Adia*, gave thence the Jews, and gave it to the Christians. But this new City was not built in the place of the old. For within this, Mount *Calvary* is comprehended, which was not in the old before. As on the other side, a great part of Mount *Sion*, part of the City of Herod, and the foyl where the New City stood, are left out of this: the ruins of the other still remain-

ing

ing visible, to shew the ancient greatness and magnificence of it. To look upon it then as it stands at present, it is now only famous for the Temple of the Sepulchre built by *Helena* (whom most report to have been daughter to *Constantine* a British King) Mother to *Constantine* the Great. Much ado had the good Lady, to find the place where the Lords body had been laid; for the Jews and Heathens had raised great hillocks on the place and built there a Temple of *Venus*. This Temple being plucked down, and the Earth digged away, she found three Crosses, whereon our blessed Saviour, & the two Thieves had suffered. To know which of those was the right long visited with sickness, and now lay at the point of death. The Crosses of the two Thieves did the weak woman no good, but as soon as they laid her on the Cross to her former health: the occasion of the Festival on the third of *May*, by the *Latins* called *Inventio sancte Crucis*. This Temple of the Sepulchre called *Inventio sancte Crucis*, was highly revered and esteemed by the Christians of these parts. And even until our days, it is much resorted to, both by Pilgrims from all the parts of the *Romish* Church, who fondly and superstitiously hope to the merit by their journey; and also by divers Gentlemen for curiosity, partly for love to the antiquity of the place, and partly because their generous spirits imitate the sight of this Sepulchre, payeth nine Crowns to the *Grand Seigneur*, to use this tribute only is worth to the other building generally very mean and poor, if not con-high; flat on the top for men to walk on, and fenced with Battlements of a Yard in height to preserve them where they repose themselves in the heat of the day. Some houses near the Temple of *Solomon*, and the Palace of Herod, adorned with Arches toward the Street; where many such, nor any thing but the ruins left of the ancient buildings. The whole circuit of it reduced to two or three miles; and yet to those that take a survey thereof from some Hills adjoining, where the ruins are not well discerned from the standing edifices, it affordeth to the eye no unpleasing prospect. And as the place is, such is the people, inhabited for the most part by Artizans of the meanest quality, gathered together of the Cum of divers Nations: the greatest part consisting of *Moor*, and *Arabian*; a few poor Christians, of all the Oriental Sects, which dwell there for devotion; and some *Turks*, who for the profit which they make of Christians, are content to stay in it. Inasmuch that when *Robert Duke of Normandy*; being then not cured of his wounds, was carried into this City on the backs of some of this rascal people, he called to a Gentleman of his, who was going for England, and bad him, say, that he saw Duke *Robert* carried into Heaven on the backs of Devils.

Come we now to the Tribe of *LEVI*, though indeed not reckoned for a Tribe, because not planted close together as the other were, nor had whole Provinces to themselves, but mingled and dispersed amongst the rest of the people, having forty eight Cities assigned them for their habitation, proportionably taken out of the other Tribes. So was it ordered by the Lord, partly that they place to instruct the people, and partly to fulfil the Prophecy which he had spoken by *Isaiah*, who had fore-signified to *Levi* at the time of his death, that he should

be divided in Jacob, and scattered in Israel. The like fortune he had prophesied of *Simons* also. The accomplishment whereof, so far as it referred to the dispersion of this Tribe, we have spoken before. Now to make up the number of the twelve Tribes, *Joseph* was divided unto *Ephraim* and *Manasse*; and the *Levites* were reckoned to belong unto that Tribe, within whose Territory, that City which they dwell in, stood. Their maintenance was from the Tenth or Tithes, the first Fruits, Offerings, and Sacrifices of the people: and as it is in *John* 11. 17. The Priests of the Lord were their Inheritance. There were of them four kinds: 1. *Punies* or *Tyrones*, which from their childhood, till the five and twentieth year their age, learned the duty of their Offices. 2. *Graduates* called, which having spent four years in the study of the Law, were able to answer and oppose in it. 3. *Licentiate*, *apostol*, who did actually exercise the Priestly Function. And 4. *Dollors* (*Rabins* they use to call them) who were the highest in degree. For maintenance of whom, they had (as before is said) the Tithes, the first Fruits, and Offerings of all the rest of the People be-lift, with the several Territories appertaining to them, which extending every way for the space of two thousand cubits, seem to have been a greater proportion of it self, than any of the other Tribes, with reference to the small number of *Levites* had in their possessions. Then for the Tithes, there was not only a full tenth part of all kinds of increase, but such an imposition laid upon all sorts of grain, as came to more than a sixth part of the Crop it self. For first, out of six thousand bushels (and so accordingly in all after that proportion) a sixtieth part at least, (and that they termed the *Therimah*, or the evil eye, or the *miggards* first tithes) was to be set forth as the first of the threshing floor; which was an hundred in the total. Out of the residue being five thousand and nine hundred bushels, the first Tithes paid unto the *Levites*, came to five hundred and ninety bushels; and of the residue, being five thousand three hundred and thirty bushels, five hundred thirty and one were paid for the second tithe, unto the Priests, which ministered in the holy Temple; yet so, that such as would decline the trouble of carrying it in kind unto *Hierusalem*, must pay the price thereof at the Priests own estimate. Lying which sums together, it appears demonstrably, that of six thousand bushels (or six *sesteris*) there will accrue one Priests and *Levites*; and one bushels to the hundred twenty and nine to the Lord or Tenant; which is the first born of mankind, and all unclean beasts, redeemed not fully a sixth part, as was said before. Then had they a certain rate, and all unclean beasts, redeemed Wool; the first fruits of the dough, and of the firstlings and the fat offered for a burnt offering; the flesh remained unto the Priests. They had also the meat-offerings, the heave-offerings, the shake-offerings, the Eucharistical Sacrifices the breast and the shoulder; of others the shoulder, the two cheeks, and the inward; besides the free Gifts of the People, appearing thence yearly before the Lord: and all this brought in them without charge or trouble. Which makes it evident, that they were far more liberally provided for, than the rest of the Tribes, though they had no whole Country allotted to them, as others had. And so much for such parts of the Land of *Palestine* as were possessed in part, or wholly by the Sons of *Jacob*; & proceed we now to the Inheritance, of the Sons of *Esau*.

Jehophat: and instead of a Vice-Roy sent unto them from the Court of *Hierusalem*, set up a King of their own Nation; never returning after that to the House of *David*. For though *Soram* made War presently upon them, and got the Victory; yet he did not prostrate it unto any effect, nor beat them out of any of their strong Holds, nor reduce any of their Cities unto his obedience: as if he had got honour enough in the eye of the world by being Master of the Field; or shewing his abilities in command of a greater Army, than the *Edomites* could bring against him. The like error was committed by *Amaziah*, who by a vast Army of 300000 fighting men, did no greater wonders than the killing of 10000 and the taking of as many *Edomites*; but neither left Garrisons in any of their defensible places, nor reduced any part of their Country under his obedience. And for the latter part thereof, it was as punctually fulfilled in the time of *Antipater*, an *Idumean*, *Herod* the *Afcalonite*, his Son, and their Successors; who in the decrepit age of the House of *Jacob*, became King of the *Jews*, and Lorded over them with infolence and contempt enough.

Mean time to look upon the intermediate passage of their State and Story. It seemeth that at first they were governed by Dukes, each having the command of those several Families, of which they were the Heads or Princes. But as Ambition and Power did prevail among them, the more potent having vanquished or awed the rest, took to himself the name of King: which by the names of their Fathers, and their several Cities in which they reigned, seem to have been chosen by Election; or otherwise to come in by strong hand, as the Sword could carry it. The names of which are thus set down in the Book of *Genesis*.

THE KINGS OF EDOM.

- 1 *Bela*, the Son of *Beer*.
- 2 *Jehobab*, the Son of *Zerah*.
- 3 *Husham*, of the Land of *Temaim*.
- 4 *Hidada*, the Son of *Bedad*, who warred against the *Midianites*, and vanquished them in the Fields of *Moab*, Gen. 36. 35.
- 5 *Samlab*, or *Mafseckh*.
- 6 *Saul* of *Rebubah*, by the River *Euphrates*.
- 7 *Bahab-Hanan*, the Son of *Abbor*.
- 8 *Hadar*, the Son perhaps of *Baal-Hanan*, for I find no mention of his Father. After whose death the Heads of the several Families resumed the Government again; ruling over their own Tribes, without any one Sovereign or Supreme. And all these Kings had before them reigned any King in *Israel*, Gen. 36. 31. that is to say, before any form of Supreme Government was established amongst them in the person of *Moses*, called by the name of a King in the Book of *Deuter.* chap. 35. v. But this distracted Government did not long continue, the *Edomites* being under a King again, at such a time as the Children of *Israel* came out of *Egypt*: for it was unto the King of *Edom* that *Moses* sent Messengers from *Kadesh*, to desire a passage thorow his Country. Which being denied, and the *Edomites* in Arms to defend their Passes, *Moses* forbore to force his way, though the nearest for him: partly because he had no mind to spend those forces in fighting with Hills and Deserts, which were designed for the conquest of another Country; but principally, because God commanded him not to meddle with them, or to take so much as a foot of their Country from them, *Deut.* 2. 5. But *David*, upon whom lay no such obligation, having vanquished the *Syrians*, and other Nati-

ons round about him, followed his fortunes unto *Edom*, whom he overcame, and put Garrisons into all their Cities, and the *Edomites* became his Servants. Governed from thenceforth by a Deputy or Vice-Roy (as is said before) till the time of *Soram* the Son of *Jehophat* King of *Judah*; in whose Reign they revolted, as before was said. Never regained to that Crown, and but twice endeavoured; that so the Word of God might be all in all. Only the *Simoonites* in the Reign of *Hezekiah*, wanting Pasture for their Cattel, and room for themselves, seized on the parts that lay nearest to them, destroyed the Inhabitants thereof, and dwelt in their Habitations; because there was pasture for their Flocks, 1 *Chron.* 4. 39. Provoked wherewith, and with the natural Antipathy which was between them, no People were more michievously bent against *Judah*, than these *Edomites*: no men so forward of themselves, to assist *Nebuchadonzer* against *Hierusalem*, none that so vehemently cried, *Down with it, down unto the ground*, none half so ready to set fire unto the Holy Temple. But they got little by this Service to the *Babylonians*, their own thralldom following close upon that of *Judah*, with whom made fellow Subjects to the *Chaldeans*; as afterward to the *Persians*, and Kings of *Syria*, of the Race of *Selencus*. In the declining of that House, subdued by *Elyseus* the Son of *Simon*, the fourth of the *Maccabaean* Princes; by whom they were compelled to be circumcised, and to receive the Law of *Moses*: not only reckoned after that, as a Province of the *Jewish* Kingdom, but as natural *Jews*. Which notwithstanding, and after the setting of that Crown on the head of *Herod* and his House, being originally *Idumeans*, might in all reason have extinguished their inveterate malice: yet was their hatred of that Nation as great as ever. Forgetting therefore how they had been rewarded by the *Babylonians* they would needs aid the *Romans* against them also: putting themselves into *Hierusalem*, when besieged by *Titus*, only of purpose to betray it; joyning with the seditious there, doing more mischief in the City than the Enemy had done without; and finally, setting fire to the second Temple, as they had done unto the first. Subjected afterwards by the *Romans*, they followed the same fortune with the rest of *Palestine*.

Having thus gone thorow with the story of those neighbouring Nations which encompassed *Canaan*, it will be seasonable to look on the affairs of the *Canaanites* first, and after on the House of *Jacob*, who possessed their Country. First for the *Canaanites*, they descended from *Canaan* the Son of *Cham*, who with his eleven Sons were here settled immediately after the Confusion of *Babel*. Of those twelve (taking in the Father) five planted in *Phoenicia*, and the Coasts of *Syria*; that is to say, *Sidon*, *Harky*, *Arvad*, *Semari*, and *Hanathi*: the other seven in those parts which we now call *Palestine*, though not all of that; the *Edomites*, *Moabites*, *Midianites*, *Amorrites*, and *Iuwans*, being Occupants or Tenants with them. And of those seven came those seven Nations which by Gods appointment were totally to be rooted out, viz. the *Canaanites*, the *Amorites*, the *Hittites*, the *Jebusites*, the *Eivites*, the *Gergeshites*, and the *Perizzites*. But from which of the Sons of *Canaan* these last descended, is not agreed on; unless perhaps they were descended of the *Shinites* (not otherwise reckoned in this Muller) and got the name of *Perizzites* on some new occasion. Governed at first by the chieftest of their several Families, with the names of Kings; the number of which increased, as their Families were subdivided into smaller Branches: inasmuch as *Jeshub* founded 31 Kings of the *Canaanites* only, besides what might descend from those who were settled in *Phoenicia*, and the Bor-

ders of *Syria*.

ders of *Syria*. The most potent of these Nations were the *Amorites*, the *Jebusites* and the *Canaanites* properly so called. Of which the *Amorites* had not only enlarged their Borders beyond *Jordan*, but in the Reigns of *Or* and *Sihon*, ruling at the same time at their several parts, had thrust the *Iuwans*, *Amorrites*, and *Moabites* out of most of their Countries; and so restored the same again to the Race of the *Emmins* and *Zanzunims* (of which line *Or* and the Kings of *Basan* were.) These vanquished in the time of *Moses* and their Labitations aligned over to the Tribes of *Reuben*, *Gad*, and the one half Tribe of *Manasse*. The *Canaanites* properly so called, as they were the first which fought with the House of *Jacob*; so they were the last of all with them under the Conduct of *Arad* their King, the Enemy in another mans Country, than to expect farts of *Moab*; and having cut off some of the out-parts home again. But *Jabin*, under whom they make their second on-set, went to work more resolutely, and taking for vengeance, so prevailed against them, that he tyrannized over them for the space of twenty years. After the time of *Deborah*, *Sifra*, his great Captain, slain by *Jael* the Wife of *Heber* the *Kenite*, and most of his Cities taken and possessed by the *Isralites*, he perished himself in the clove of that War; for it is said, That they prevailed against *Jabin* the King of *Canaan*, till they had destroyed him, *Judg.* 4. 24. As for the *Jebusites*, they were grown so formidable (at the time of the coming of the *Hebrews*) to the rest of their Neighbours, that their King *Adonibezek* bragged, that he had cut off the Thumbs and great Toes of 70 Kings, and made them eat the crumbs which fell under his Table. But being vanquished by *Judah*, he was served in the same kind himself by *Judah* and *Simoon*, and carried to *Hierusalem*, where he died: the whole Country of the *Jebusites*, and the City of *Hierusalem* it self, the Fortrefts of Mount *Zion* excepted only, being made a prey unto the Victor. And though yet being they were only on the defensive side, and made *naamites* as the last which did contend with them for the chief Command.

The *Canaanites* thus conquered and for the most part worn out of the Country, the *Isralites* succeeded in their Possessions; according to the promise of God, *Jacob*. Governed after the death of *Moses* and *Jeshub*, by the Congregation of the Elders, as appears by many pure calleth them (not being the ordinary Magistrates, pose, according to the exigence of their affairs, Car of *Rome*. So that the Government at first was an *Ar* as the Fathers call it; that is to say, a Government wherein G O D preided more immediately, than in o- to *Samuel* to have a King, God said unto him, *Hearken unto the voice of the People, for they have not re- vored them; I Sam.* 8. 7. God was their King, and he had mightily reigned over them since they came out of *E-*

Egypt; but they desired to have a King like other Nations, to go in and out before them, and to fight their Batrels; a King whom they might fee with their bodily eyes, and converse with him in such manner as the People did, which dwelt round about them. And so came in the confirmed in *David*; the first a *Benjaminite*, the second of the Tribe of *Judah*; of which *Jacob* had foretold at the time of his death, that the Kingdom of his People should be vested in it. But there were only three in all, reckoning *Saul* for one, who had Dominion over the whole House of *Israel*; the Kingdom after *Solomon's* death, being rent in twain: ten of the twelve Tribes revolting unto *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*; and only *Benjamin* and *Judah*, and so much of the Tribes of *Dan* and *Simoon* as lay intermingled with and in the Tribes of *Judah*, remaining firm to *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*, who misgued by some evil Counsellors which breach that could never be soldered nor made up again, notwithstanding the fair opportunities which were after offered of uniting *Judah* unto *Israel* (for so the two joyning *Israel* to *Judah*, in the time of *Jos*; & reuniting offered to *Asa* King of *Judah*, for regaining the fallen out amongst them, by several Factions; each chad- lenging the privilege of making a King unto it self: *Nab* of *Basila* murdered by *Zimri*, *Zimri* deposed by *Omri* the Father of *Abah*, and *Tibni* a Competitor against *Omri* also, During which time, as the People must needs suffer many great oppressions, which might make them think of their Allegiance to the House of *David*: (had he made his best use of them) of working on that But there were two reasons which prevailed more to invite them to it. First, the imperiousness and arde- death, without formality of Law, those that did dis- nish, in the days of *Solomon*: and raising on the Sub- ject what fums they pleased, though more for offensa- the State. Of which exactions *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon* was so far from promising a release or some miti- gation at least, that he threatened to make them more than double to what they had been formerly: And how knew they but that *Asa*, and all such as descended from him, might be of the same temper also, and act accord- ing to those Principles which their Fathers left them. Whereas the Kings of *Israel* holding by no other Title than the love of their People, and the moderate and regular form of their Government over them, had put- ty, and made them so much Masters of their own Lib- Lives and Fortunes, that *Naboth* durst deny his Vine- yard to *Abah*, though offering full compensation for it; *Abah* durst not question full compensation for it; suborning Witnesses to accuse him of Blasphemy. So by the change and violent death of so many Kings one after another, being only temporary, and not likely to continue long, were no persuasions unto them to accept of *Asa*, and much less to offer themselves unto him who conceived all adversity to be far more tolerable, than the weighty Scepter of that House. And there was something also of preceding profit, which swayed the

business. The people were obliged by the Law of *Moses* to make three chargeable Journeys yearly to *Hierusalem*, to worship there in the Holy Temple; and to pay a double Tenth yearly out of their Estates (besides Offerings and other Casualties) to the *Priests* and *Levites*. *Jeroboam* out of an ungodly policy, fearing these frequent Journeys unto *Hierusalem* might be an occasion of reducing them to the House of *David*, released them of that charge and trouble, by setting up a new form of Worship, erecting golden Calves for them in *Dan* and *Bethel*; and leaving every man unto the liberty of his own opinion, so it tended not to the Establishment of the old Religion. And on the other side, the *Levites* which dwelt amongst them, and received their Tithes, not willing to conform to these new impieties, and finding that their Ministry was no longer useful, withdrew themselves into the Kingdom of *Judah*, and left the ancient places of their Habitations: by means whereof, the people were released of those payments also. If they returned again to their old obedience, and accepted *Asa* for their King, they must return again also to their old Religion; the golden Calves of their own Imaginations and Inventions, must no more be worshipped: and (which no doubt prevailed most on the common people, who like that Religion best which costs them nothing) the ancient payments to the *Priests* and *Levites* must come up again. Rather than so, they were resolved to suffer yet a little longer, to please themselves in expectation of more fated times: and so no falling off to *Asa*, though as moderate & religious a Prince as they could have wished for, had they had power of fashioning a King to their own desires. Now as this opportunity of rejoicing *Israel* unto *Judah*, proved unsuccessful unto *Asa*; so did the like of uniting *Judah* unto *Israel*, prove as unprofitable unto *Joas* the Son of *Jehoshaphat*, and Grand-child of *Jehon King of Israel*, who being provoked by *Amaziah* King of *Judah*, made War upon him; and not only discomfited him without Battel, and took him Prisoner without blows, but led him captive to the very Wall's of *Hierusalem*; and by his Authority got the Gates thereof to be opened to him. But not contented with this honour (greater than ever had befallen to the Kings of *Israel*) he caused 400 Cubits of the Wall to be broken down; through which breach he entered triumphantly in his Chariot, carrying the unhappy Prince before him: and being entered, sacked both the Royal Palace and the Holy Temple. This was the opportunity which was given to *Joas*, of uniting *Judah* unto *Israel*; and this the loss of it. For the People, otherwise like enough to have accepted him for their King, as a Prince of whose noble acts they had heard much speech, were so exasperated by these rash and unseasonable outrages, that they looked upon him as a *Sacrilegious Church-Robber*, whom the Holy Altars were not safe from; and as a covetous and ungoverned Tyrant, not able to conciliate the fulness of his own prosperities. If he were thus unfatiable in his covetousness, and unsupportable in his pride, when he was a *Candidate* for their Kingdom; when in all common prudence he would have fought their love, and insinuated into their good opinions, by easing them of former Taxes, and shewing them fair hopes of his moderate Government: what must they look for when their Towns were filled with Garrisons, *Hierusalem* stuffed with armed Troops, and all the Princes of the House of *David*, from whom they might expect Redemption from cruel Bondage, destroyed or banished, or otherwise made unable to afford them succours? Rather than so, they were resolved to rise as one man against him, and let him see, that neither their Army was so scattered, nor themselves

so cowed, but that they durst adventure it to a further trial. The fear of which made *Joas* sensible of the loss of his opportunity: and so content with Hostages for his safe retreat, he returned home again without other benefit of his Victory, than the spoil and honour. And that this possibly might be the motive of his going back, without putting the success of the affair to a further hazard, may be made probable by the like occurrence in the Story of *Guicciardine*, which in brief is this; *Peter de Medici* had very weakly opened the Gates of *Naples* to *Charles* the Eighth, then in his passage towards *Naples*. *Charles* entrench himself triumphantly as a conquered City, armed in compleat manner, and his Lance on his Thigh; his whole Army with him. Many insolencies being committed by the *French*, the Citizens prepare to fight in defence of their Liberties. *Charles* willing to go forwards on his march towards *Naples*, propounds Conditions in writing: but so intolerable, that *Peter Capponi*, one of the chief Citizens, catching the Papers out of the King's Secretaries hands, and tearing them before his face, *Do you (faith he) found your Trumpets, we will ring our Bells, and see what will follow*. Which stout and peremptory dealing did so daunt the *French*, that they descended upon very easie terms to abandon the City, and restore all the places appertaining unto their Estate, which were then in his power. The like consideration probably might prevail with *Joas*, as did then with *Charles*; and prompt him not to fight with an enraged multitude in the streets of a City, where he could make no use of his Horle; and where he might be more galled with Women and Children, throwing Stones or Darts out of their Windows, and from the tops of their Houses; than with an armed Enemy in the open Field. Nor wanted *Joas* an example of this kind, in the times before him; even that of *Abimelech*, in the Book of *Judges*: who having taken the Town of *Thebes*, and forced all the Men and Women into the Cattle, was slain there by a piece of Mill-stone, thrown at his head from one of the Towers of it by the hands of a woman.

To proceed further in the Story of these several Kings or recapitulate the sum of their principal Actions (as in other places we have done) may be thought unnecessary: the Scripture being in the hands of all sorts of persons, in which their Actions and Successions are at large contained. So that I only shall subjoin their names, with the time of their Reigns, and the year of the World in which they did begin their Empire: leaving the rest unto industry and search of the Christian Reader, of whose acquaintance with the Scriptures I dare make no question. This only I premise as concerning the *Judges*. That the time of their continuance in that authority, is not to be measured from the time of their coming to it, till the entrance of the next Successor, as in that of the Kings: these being occasionally raised by Almighty God, for some present Service, and no standing or established Magistrates; except *Moses* and *Joshua* only, who held the Government during life, and managed it as absolute Princes.

The Judges and Captains of the HEBREWS.

- A.M.
2454 1 *Moses*, a *Levite*, the Law-giver of the *Hebrews*, brought by him out of the Land of *Aegypt*. 40.
2494 2 *Joshua*, an *Ephraimite*, who led them in the Land of *Canaan*. 33.
2526 3 *Othniel*, of *Judah*, by whom they were delivered from the *Misopotamians*.

2530

- 2530 4 *Ehud*, a *Benjamite*, who rescued them from the hand of *Eglon* King of *Moab*.
2610 5 *Deborah* the Prophetess, and *Barack* the *Naphthalite*, who discomfited the Host of *Jabin* King of the *Canaanites*.
2650 6 *Gideon*, a *Manassite*, who ransomed them from the power of the *Midianites*. 40.
2690 7 *Abimelech*, the base Son of *Gideon*. 3.
2693 8 *Tola*, of the Tribe of *Issachar*. 23.
2716 9 *Jair*, a *Gileadite*. 22.
2760 10 *Jephthah*, a *Gileadite*, by whom the people were redeemed from the hand of the *Ammonites*.
2766 11 *Ishai*, of *Bethlehem*. 7.
2773 12 *Eli*, a *Zebulonite*. 10.
2783 13 *Adon*, an *Ephraimite*. 8.
2790 14 *Sansun*, a *Danite*, the avenger of the people upon the *Philistines*.
2809 35 *Eli*, the High-Priest, in whose time the Ark was taken by the *Philistines*.
2849 16 *Samuel* the Prophet, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*,

in the latter end of whose Government, the People being weary of the Command of their former Rulers, desired to have a King to go in and out before them, like other Nations.

The Kings of the HEBREWS.

A.M.

- 2878 1 *Saul*, of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, the first King of the *Hebrews*, and an unlucky one to begin withal. 17.
2890 2 *David*, the Son of *Jesse*, of the Tribe of *Judah*, the most Victorious King of the *Hebrew* Nation. 40.
2930 3 *Solomon*, the Son of *David*, renowned for building of the Temple. The Kingdom afterwards divided into

JUDAH and ISRAEL.

The Kings of JUDAH.

A.M.

- 2971 1 *Rehoboam*, the Son of *Solomon*, the first King of *Judah*. 17.
2988 2 *Abijah*, the Son of *Rehoboam*. 3.
2991 3 *Asa*, the Son of *Abijah*, discomfited the numerous Army of *Zerab*, the *Ethiopian* or *Arabian* King.
3031 4 *Jehoshaphat*, the Son of *Asa*, a great Reformer of the State, both Ecclesiastical and Civil. 35.
3056 5 *Jehoram*, the Son of *Jehoshaphat*. 8.
3064 6 *Abaziah*, the Son of *Jehoram* by *Abthalia* his Wife, the Sister of *Ahab* King of *Israel*. 1.
3065 7 *Abthalia*, the Daughter of *Omri*, and Sister of *Ahab*, having destroyed the Regal Race of the House of *David*, usurped the Kingdom for seven years.
3072 8 *Joash*, the only surviving Heir of the House of *David*, restored by *Jehoiadab* the Priest, to the Throne of his Ancestors. 40.
3112 9 *Amaziah*, the Son of *Joash*, vanquished by *Jorab* King of *Israel*, and a breach forced throw the Walls of *Hierusalem*. 29.
3141 10 *Azariah*, the Son of *Amaziah* called also *Uzziah*; smote with a Leprosy by the Lord. 52.
3192 11 *Jotham*, the Son of *Azariah*, or *Azariah*. 16.
3208 12 *Ahaz*, the Son of *Jotham*, in whose time, and on whose occasion, the Kingdom of *Damascus* was ruin'd by *Tiglath Pileser* King of *Affryia*, and the Tribes on the farther side of *Jordan* led into Captivity. 16.
3224 13 *Hezekiah*, the Son of *Ahaz*, a Religious Prince; in whose time the Kingdom of the ten Tribes was destroyed by the *Affryians*, and that of *Affryia* by the *Babylonians*.
3253 14 *Manasseh*, the wicked Son of the good King *Hezekiah*, restored Idolatry, and put to death the Prophet *Isaiah*, for opposing his irreligious courses. 55.
3308 15 *Amon*, the Son of *Manasseh*, and as bad as

The King of ISRAEL.

A.M.

- 2971 1 *Jeroboam*, the Son of *Nebat*, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, the first King of *Israel*. 22.
2993 2 *Nadab*, the Son of *Jeroboam*. 2.
2995 3 *Baasha*, of the Tribe of *Issachar*, having slain *Nadab*, reigned in his stead. 24.
3019 4 *Eli*, the Son of *Baasha*. 2.
3021 5 *Zimri*, a King of 7 days only, the murderer of *Eli*, and his own Executioner.
3026 6 *Omri*, the Captain of the Host, who removed the Regal Seat from *Tirzah* to *Samaria*. 8.
3029 7 *Ahab*, the Son of *Omri*, and Husband of *Jezabel*, a *Phoenician* Princess.
3051 8 *Abaziah*, the Son of *Ahab*. 2.
3053 9 *Jehoram*, the Brother of *Abaziah*. 12.
3065 10 *Jehu*, the Captain of the Host, vanquished and slew *Jehoram*, reigning in his stead. 28.
3093 11 *Jehoshaphat*, the Son of *Jehu*. 17.
3110 12 *Joash*, the Son of *Jehoshaphat*. 16.
3126 13 *Jeroboam II*, the Son of *Joash*. 41.
3178 14 *Zachariah*, the Son of *Jeroboam* the Second, after an Interregnum of eleven years, succeeded in the Throne of his Father: slain at the end of six Months by
15 *Shallum* who at the Month's end was slain by
3178 16 *Atenahem*, the Son of *Gadi*. 10.
3188 17 *Pekahiah*, the Son of *Menahem*, slain by
3190 18 *Pekah*, the Son of *Remaliah*; served in the same kind, after a Reign of twenty years, by
3210 19 *Hosiah*, the Son of *Eli*; in the fifth year of whose Reign, and the eighteenth year from the death of *Pekah*, *Salmannasser* King of *Affryia*, having by a Siege of three years carried the City of *Samaria*, destroyed the Kingdom of *Israel*, and led the greatest part of the people into Captivity.

he was slain by a Conspiracy of his Servants, when he had reigned but two years only.

3310 16 *Jofabab*, the Son of *Amor*, a right godly King; unfortunately slain by *Pharab* *Necho* King of *Egypt*, at the Battel of *Megido*. 31.

3311 17 *Jehobabaz*, the Son of *Jofabab*, a King of three months only; depofed and fent Prifoner by *Pharab* *Necho*, to *Riblah* in the Land of *Hamath*, fince called *Antiochia*.

18 *Jehoiakim*, the Son of *Jofabab*, and half Brother of *Jehobabaz*, advanced unto the Throne by *Necho*, who changed his name from *Eliakim*, by which he formerly was called, into that of *Jehoiakim*. 11.

3351 19 *Jehoiachin*, or *Jehoniab*, the Son of *Jehoiakim*, at the end of three Months led captive unto *Babylon*, with his Wives and Mother, and the Great Officers of the Realm, by *Nebuchadnezzar*.

20 *Zedekiah*, another of the Sons of *Jofabab*, and Brother by the whole blood of *Jehobabaz*, made King by *Nebuchadnezzar* in the place of *Jehoiachin*, or *Jehoniab*; his name being changed from *Mattaniah*, by which called before. But rebelling againft his Benefactor, contrary to the counfel of the Prophet *Jeremy*, he was taken Prifoner in the eleventh year of his Reign, *Hierufalem* destroyed, the Temple ruined, and the People carried captive to the Land of *Babylon*, *A. M.* 3362. where they lived in exile 70 years. Which time expired, *Cyrus* the King of the *Persians* gave them leave to return to their Country, and to re-edifie their City and Temple. Which work being finifhed, by the encouragement of *Ezra*, *Nehemiah* and *Zorobabel*, and the Nation again fetled in fome part of their old Poffeffions, they were after governed by their High-Priefts, and the Council of their Elders, which they called the *Sanhedrim*, the High-Priest bearing the chief ftroke, and being looked on as a man of the greateft Power. And therefore I will here fubjoin the Catalogue of fo many of them as governed the Affairs of this Country, from the Return of the People from the Captivity of *Babylon*, till the time of the *Maccabees*; who managed the Elitae thereof both as *Priefts* and *Princes*, till their Subjection by the *Romans*.

The High-Priefts of the *J E W S* after the Captivity.

A. M.

- 3427 1 *Jofubab*, the High-Priest at the time of the Return, affiftant to *Zorobabel* in re-building the Temple, which he lived not to finifh; though continuing (as fome fay) in the Government 100 years. But I believe rather, that the Names of his Successors being loft, the whole time is afcribed to him.
- 3330 2 *Jehoiakim*, faid to be the Son of *Jofubab*, in whole time, by the diligence of *Ezra* and *Nehemiah*, the Temple was finifhed, and the Worship of God reftored.
- 3380 3 *Jonathan*, or *Johanan*. 30.
- 3610 4 *Jaddus*, who entertained *Alexander* the Great coming to *Hierufalem*, (of whom more anon) the Brother of that *Manaffes*, for whose fake, and on whose occafion, the Temple on Mount *Gerizim* was built by *Sanballat*, with the leave of *Alexander*. 20.
- 3630 5 *Anan* fucceeded *Jaddus*, as *Jaddus* had done *Jonathan*; not by Birth (as formerly) but by Election of the People.

- 3651 6 *Simon*, firnamed *Jufim*. 9.
- 3660 7 *Eleezer*, the Brother of *Simon*. 32.
- 3692 8 *Menelaus*, the Brother of *Eleezer* and *Simon*.
- 3718 9 *Onias* II. 14.
- 3732 10 *Simon* II. 10.
- 3742 11 *Onias* III. the Son of *Simon* the 2d.
- 3787 12 *Jafon*, the Brother of *Onias* the 3d.
- 3789 13 *Menelaus* II. the Brother of *Jafon*, in whose time the Temple was prophaned by the *Syrians*, at the Command of *Antiochus* *Epiphanes*.
- 3794 14 *Alcimus*, under whose Government the *Maccabees* began to appear in defence of their Country and Religion, by whom fucceeded in the Office of High-Priest, after his deceafe. Among these none of greater note than *Jaddus*, High-Priest at fuch time as *Alexander* the Great having conquered *Syria*, marched towards *Hierufalem*, and was encountered by this *Jaddus* in his Prieftly Veftements; affuring him in the Name of the Most High God, and making it demontftrable from the Prophecie of *Daniel*, That he fhould prosper in his Enterprize againft the *Persians*. An hope which *Alexander* did embrace with the greater confidence, b.cause (as he affirmed to *Parnenio* his chief Commander) he had once at *Din*, a City of *Macedon*, feen in a Dream or Vifion fuch a Perfon as *Jaddus* was, fo habited, and profelling the fame one God; by whom he was encouraged to purfue the Action which he had in hand with affurance of Victory. And upon this the *Jews* were fo much favoured by him, that he gave them leave to live according to their own Laws, and to enjoy with Freedom their own Religion. But it held only for his own time: For fhortly after his deceafe, they were on both fides plagued by the Kings of *Egypt* and *Syria*, who ransacked their Cities, flaugtered their People, made havock of their Goods, and compelled many of them both to eat of forbidden Meats, and offer Sacrifice unto Idols. At the laft God raifed up *Mattathias* (defended from *Simon* a Priest of the rank of *Jearib*) and his five Sons, to refist these Infolencies; who in the Reign of *Antiochus* *Epiphanes* King of *Syria*, undertook the Protection of the People, and gave unto the *Syrians* many notable overthrows; infomuch that the *Jews* made choice of *Judas* firnamed *Maccabaeus* (the eldeft of the five Brethren) for their Prince or Governor.

The *AS MON E A N* Princes of *J E W R T*.

- A. M.*
- 3799 1 *Judas* *Maccabaeus*, the third Son of *Mattathias* above-mentioned, one of the nine Worthies, vanquifhed three great and puiffant Armies of the *Syrians*, conducted by *Apollonius*, *Gorgias*, and *Lysias*, men of great renown, being Commanders of the Forces of *Antiochus* *Epiphanes*, before mentioned.
- 3803 2 *Jonathan*, the Brother of *Judas*, vanquifhed the Forces of *Bacchides* and *Alcimus*, Captains of *Demetrius* King of *Syria*; and after many notable exploits and deeds of Arms, was treacheroufly murdered by *Tryphon*, afpiring at that time to the *Syrian* Diadem.
- 3823 3 *Simon* the elder, brother of *Judas* and *Jonathan*, fubdued the Cities of *Gaza*, *Joppa*, and *Jamnia*, and cleared *Judea* of the *Syrians*; perfidiously flain in the course of his fortune, by his Son-in-law *Ptolemy*. 8.
- 3831 4 *Johannes* *Hircanus*, the third Son of *Simon* (his two

two other Brethren being in the power of *Ptolemy*) fucceeded in the Government. He destroyed the Temple on Mount *Gerizim*, conquered *Assanania*, and fubdued the *Idumeans*, compelling them to be *Circumcised*; transferred the War into *Syria*; and dying, left the Sovereignty to his eldeft Son *Aristobulus*.

The *AS MON E A N* Kings of *J U D A H*.

- 3862 1 *Aristobulus*, caufed himself to be Crowned, and was the first King of *Judea* after the *Babylonian* Captivity; he ftarved his Mother, and flew *Antigonum* his Brother.
- 3863 2 *Alexander*, the Brother of *Aristobulus*, exceedingly enlarged the Kingdom of *Jury* by the conquest of *Iurra*, and fome parts of *Syria*; but was wital fo great a Tyrant, that he caufely flew of his own Subjects fifty thousand in Battel; and commanded 800 of his principal enemies to be hanged before his face. He left behind him two fons, *Hircanus* who was at laft flain by *Herod* after all his troubles, leaving no Ifue Male behind him; and *Aristobulus* the father of *Alexander*, and of *Antigonum*, of whom more anon: of which two *Alexander* was the Father of another *Aristobulus*, the most beauful Prince of all his time, and of *Mariamne* the wife of *Herod*, by whose command they were most villainoufly murdered.
- 3890 3 *Alexander*, by fome called *Salome*, the wife of *Alexandra*, and following the counfel of her husband at the time of his death, committed her self and her Children into the hands of the *Pharifees*, then in great power and credit amongst the people; by means whereof the procured an honourable burial for her husband, obtained the Kingdom for her self, and finally left it to her Children, whose difagreements caufed the ruine of this famous Family.
- 3899 4 *Aristobulus* II. the younger Son of *Alexander*, an active Prince, and beloved of the Military Men, having prefently after the death of his Mother poffeff himself of the greateft part of the Ports and Castles, by the forced confent of *Hircanus* his elder Brother fucceeded in the Kingdom and High-Prieft-hood alfo; both which he held with great trouble and opposition both from his Brother and the *Romans*, whom most imprudently they called in to decide the Controverfie. By Pompey fent Prifoner unto *Rome* (with *Alexander* and *Antigonum* his two Sons) he efaped thence and raised a new Army for the recovery of this Kingdom; but being forced to yield himself to *Gabinus* one of *Pompey*'s Lieutenant, he was fent back again to *Rome*, where he died in Prifon, having reigned three years and fix months.
- 3903 5 *Hircanus* II. a Prince of weak parts, and not fit for Government, was made High-Priest in the first year of his Mothers reign, but difpoffeff of that dignity by *Aristobulus* his younger Brother. Restored again by the favour of *Pompey*, he was again difturb'd in his poffeffion by *Alexander* the eldeft Son of *Aristobulus*; who efaping out of *Rome*, had raised fome Forces; and began to difpute the Forces with him: but was

foon after difcomfited by *Gabinus* afore-mentioned, and flain by *Scipio*, another of *Pompey*'s Captains. After the death of *Aristobulus*, which hapned in the year 3903, *Hircanus* was lookt on by the People, not only as their High-Priest, but as their Prince and King, commonly called fo by *Jofephus* in the course of his History. His affairs managed for the most part by *Antipater* (an *Idumean* born, and the Father of *Herod*) his conftant and most faithful friend in all his troubles, who governed the Elitae with great care and prudence. But he being made away by Poifon, *Antigonum* the younger Son of *Aristobulus*, fet on foot his Title to the Kingdom, and drew in an Army of the *Parthians* to make it good; by whose aid, having treacheroufly inflamed *Hircanus*, he cut off his ears (to make him incapable of the Priefthood for the time to come) and fent him Prifoner to *Babylon*; taking upon himself the Title of King, though never acknowledged for fuch by the Jewish Nation. But long he did not please himself with that Title neither, for being befieged in *Jerufalem* by *Herod*, then newly created King of the *Jews* by the *Roman* Senate; and by him taken Prifoner in the fack of that City, he was fent in bonds to *Mark* *Anthony*, and by him beheaded. As for *Hircanus* the rightful Prince of his Country, he remained Prifoner for a time amongst the *Parthians*, till hearing of the death of *Antigonum*, he returned into *Jewry*, and lived contentedly under the Government of *Herod*, of whose greatness he had laid the first foundation, and was by him in fine wickedly murdered.

The *Idumean* Kings and Princes of *Jewry*.

A. M.

- 3940 1 *Herod* the *Idumean*, firnamed the Great, Son to *Antipater* the *Idumean*, was by the power of *Mark* *Anthony* created, and by *Aurelius* confirmed King of *Jewry*; under whom that Kingdom was more enlarged, and in greater fplendor than ever it had been in fince the time of *David*. A Prince of great Magnificence, but of greater Vices. During his reign, the *Scripter* being now departed from *Judah*, the Lord *C H R I S T* was born.

A. Christi.

- 2 *Archelaus*, eldeft Son of *Herod* at the time of his death, fucceeded with the Title of King; but in Truth and reality poffeffed only a *Tetrachy*, or fourth part of the Kingdom, though the best and largeft of the four, containing *Judea*, *Samarita*, and *Idumea*. The reft of *Herods* Kingdom was divided into three other *Tetrarchies*, i. e. the *Tetrarchy* of *Galilee* and *Petrea*, given to *Herod Antipas*; Secondly, That of *Iurra*, given to *Philip*, another of the Sons of *Herod*; And thirdly, that of *Abilene*, conferred on *Lysanias*. Banifhed unto *France*, his *Tetrachy* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; governed by *Pontius* *Pilate*, at our Saviour's Paffion.
- 16 3 *Herod* II. firnamed *Antipas*, *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Petrea*, on the banifhment of *Archelaus*, fucceeded him, as chief of the *Herodian* Family, but not in his *Tetrachy*; and at laft followed him in his banifhment alfo. This is he who murdered *John* *Baptift*, and in whose time *C H R I S T* fuffered.
- 40 4 *Herod* III. firnamed *Agrippa*, in honour of *Agrippa* the Son-in-law, and most truly Favorite of *Augustus* *Caeſar*, Nephew to *He-*

rod the Great, by his Son *Aristobulus* begotten *Maridime* of the Race of the *Asmonets*, was by *Caligula* first invested in the *Tetrarchy* of his Uncle *Philip*, with the Title of King; and next, in that of *Asipar allos*; and finally by *Claudius*, in that also of *Lysanias*, some part of the *Tetrarchy* of *Archelaus* being added unto his Dominions. This was the man that murdered *James*, and imprisoned *Peter*; and in the end was stricken by an Angel, and devoured by Worms.

- 47 5 *Agrippa Minor*, Son of *Herod Agrippa*, was he before whom *St. Paul* pleadeth in defence of the Gospel; and the last which had the Title of King of the *Jews*: for in his time the City of *Jerusalem* was destroyed by *Titus*, and the whole Kingdom made a Province of the Roman Empire Anno 73.

And here it is to be observed, that when *Salmanassar* had subdued and captivated the ten Tribes of *Israel*, he sent new Colonies of his own to plant this Country; that so fruitful and well-situate a part of his Empire might yield its full tribute, and not lie open to the fury of the next invader. But the Romans not having (it seemeth) so much policy or providence as those whom they counted barbarous; having laid the Country desolate, left it unfurnished of new Colonies: whereby the *Perfians*, next the *Saracens*, and after them the *Turks*, entering the Roman Empire at this door, have successively driven the Romans out of the whole house. Now that we may the better perceive how the Romans had weakened and almost utterly rooted out the Jewish Nation, we will relate some of their particular *Misdeeds*, which were not more cruelly inflicted on them by the Enemy, than justly deserved by themselves; they willing though (I suppose) not desiring, that the innocent Blood of our Saviour should be on them and their Children. First then the Inhabitants of *Cesarea* slew of the *Jews* in one day, about 20000, and such as fled were took and imprisoned by *Florus* the Roman Lieutenant of *Judea*. To revenge this slaughter, the *Jews* set upon the *Syrians*; in which skirmish 13000 of them were slain. The people of *Alexandria* put 50000 of them to the sword; the people of *Damascus*, 10000; *Antonius*, a Roman Captain, slew in *Afcalon* 10000 of them, and *Cestius* another Captain, 80400 persons. Now to come to the Wars here managed by *Vespasian*; This *Vespasian* in the siege of *Abdela*, slew by *Vespasian*, 17150 persons; in *Samaria*, 11600 persons; in *Isotopata*, 42200 persons; in *Yappa*, so many killed and drowned themselves, that the sea threw up again 4200 dead bodies; and the rest so totally perished, that there remained none to carry tidings unto *Jerusalem* of the loss of the Town. In the City of *Tarichea*, were slain, and made captives, 45000 persons, besides those which were given to the King *Agrippa*. In *Gamala* there perished 90000, and none left alive but only two women; in *Cesarea* 5000 men died by the Sword; in the City of *Gadara* there were slain 32200, besides an infinite number which had drowned themselves. In *Jerusalem* itself, there died 100000 of them, partly by the Sword, and partly by the Famine; the worse Enemy of the two; there were found 2000 in Privies and Sinks; and 9700 taken prisoners; inasmuch that 30 *Jews* were sold for a Penny. So punctually was the Divine Justice in retaliaing to this wretched people, according to the measure of their Iniquities that they who bought their Saviour for 30 pence, should be sold at thirty for a penny in the open Market.

Now that *Jerusalem* was able to contain such a num-

ber of people, is evident, in that when *Cestius* was Lieutenant of *Jewry*, the High-Priest did at his request, number the People which came thither to eat the *Paschal Lamb*; and found them to be two millions and seven hundred thousand living Souls, all found and purified: For to Lepers, or men having a flux of Seed, or women in their monthly terms, or to strangers, it was not lawful to eat of it. And when *Titus* laid Siege to the City, it was in the Feast of the *Paschever*, when most of the People were there assembled; God (as it were) having thus imprisoned them. All these Maltresses, besides divers others which I have omitted, and infinite numbers which were slain in the Fields and Villages, which drowned themselves, & which were privately made away, amounting all to almost 2000000 of people, happened in the compass of four years; beginning at the 12th of *Nero*, and ending at the 2d of *Vespasian*; yet was not the whole Nation rooted out, till the year 136. For then this miserable people having stirred two notable rebellions; the one under *Trajan*, and the last under *Adrian* the Emperors, were generally banished their native Country; and never again permitted to inhabit it, otherwise than as strangers. After this dissolution, the *Jews* were dispersed all over the World, and especially in *Spain* where *Adrian* commanded many of them to dwell; yet they found every where so little favour, that having divers times been put to grievous mulcts and ransoms, they were at last thrust out of most of the Kingdoms of *Europe*. They were banished out of *England* by *Edward* the first, Anno 1290. Out of *France* by *Philip* the Fair, 1307. Out of *Spain* by *Ferdinand* the Catholicus, 1492. Out of *Portugal* by *Emmanuel*, 1497. Out of *Naples* and *Sicily*, by *Charles* the Fifth, 1530. Yet are they found in great numbers in the *Romish* parts of *Germany* and *Poland*; in most Cities of *Italy*, especially *Rome* it self, where are no less than 15000 or 20000 of them; and also in the *Popes* Country of *Avignon*. The reason why they are permitted to live thus under the *Popes* nose, is pretended to be an expectation of their Conversion, which is a mere pretence indeed; the true reason being the benefit here arising to his Holiness Coffers; the hopes of their Conversion being very small, and the means less. For besides the scandal, *Datum & acceptum*, by the *Papists* for worshipping of Images, so peremptorily contrary to the first Table of the Law: they are not permitted to see any Book of Christian Religion, no not so much as the New Testament. And (which worketh much upon men of their metal) because at their Conversion they must quit all their goods unto the Church, as being ill gotten, and by consequence the works of the Devil, which in their Baptism they promise to renounce. They have also a Synagogue at *Amsterdam*, and are pretty thick spread over the Dominions of the *Turks*: who, notwithstanding so hate them for crucifying of *CHRIST*, that they used to say in the detestation of a thing, *I would I might dye a Jew*. Neither will they permit a *Jew* to turn *Turk*, unless he be first baptized. And though their multitudes be so great both in *Theffalonica* & *Constantinople*, that it is conceived they do amount to the number of 160000 persons; yet they are not only contemned but hated: but there, and in all other places of their habitation, upon every tumultuous assembly of the Common people, and constantly every *Easter*, whereforever they be, in danger of death. Inasmuch that if a *Jew* do but stir out of doors betwixt *Munday* Thursday at noon, and *Easter* Eve at night, the *Christians* of the *Balk* amongst whom they dwell (though far fewer in number) will be sure to stone them; because at that time, they were detested, and in fine, crucified their Saviour. Hated in all the parts of the *Turk* Dominions, because employed as *Publicans* in gathering and

enhancing

enhancing the publick tributes, which they exact with all severity that may be, and improve unto the moft. And no less hated in all parts of the *Christian* world, as Enemies to the *Cross* of *CHRIST*: so unclambly addicted to their ancient *Judaifms*, and so abhorring from the conversation of other men; that it is not possible they should reap any other harvest, than contempt and scorn from those amongst whom they dwell.

To give you their Character in brief; They are a people which know how to comply with the times, and the condition which they live in; especially if their profit be concerned in it: reviled like Dogs, and used like Slaves, yet never shew so much as an Angry countenance. A Nation which will thrive whereforever they come, but most by *Usury* and *Brokeage*; not lending any thing but on pawns, and those once forfeited, never more redeemable. The best of both Sexes said to have an unfavourable rank, not incident (if not caused by slothfulness) to other people: from whom as different in their habits, as in their Religion. And as for that, they retain still *Circumcision*, as the badge and cognizance of their Nation; but mingled with many Ceremonies not prescribed by the Law, nor observed by the Ancients: placing a void Chair for the Prophet *Elias*, whom they believe to be present, so detested, that they conceive the Female Sex incapable of eternal life, because not capable of *Circumcision*; and therefore use to name them with no other Ceremony, up the Cradle with the Child in it, which she standeth at the head, giveth the name unto. Of their *Sabbath* so extremely doating, that they have added to the *Jepsefians* left them by the *Pharisees*: And herein they are so precise, that if a *Jew* travel on the *Friday*, and in the Evening fall so short of his Journeys end, that it amounts to more than 2000 Cubits, or six Furlongs, which they account a *Sabbath-days* journey, there must he fit him down and keep his *Sabbath*, though in a wood, or field, or the high-way side, without fear of wind or weather, of Thieves or Robbers, and without taking order for meat or drink: *Periculo latrum pradamque omnis periculi item omni cibi priusque neglectis, as Rustoribus* hath it. And so far have they gone in despite of *Christ*, as to declare it unlawful to lift the Ox or Ass out of a ditch; permitted in the strict times of *Pharisaism* and drink, that they will by no means sit at the Table with other men, and so precise in the dressing of it, that they will eat of no flesh but of their own killing; and that too with such fustian customs and reservations, that if any of the entrails be corrupt or dislocated, they will fill the whole beault to the *Christians* for a very trifle. Beneficial in that only to the neighbouring *Christians*. Wine they forbear except it be of their own planting, not so much out of dislike of that Liquor, for they are generally good fellows, and love their bellies, as for fear the Wine should be baptized: a Ceremony much used in the Eastern parts. Of the coming of their *Messiah* so full of hopes that there is no great Warriour stirring, but they look upon him as the man; till some sad Tragedy or other, their error promising to themselves whensoever he cometh, a restitution of their Kingdom: and such felicities therein, in the literal sense of some Texts of Scripture, which carry in them a more mystical and sacred meaning, made part good time (but Gods, not theirs) they shall be do speak of, is both the hope and wish of all pious men; who cannot chuse but grieve to behold the natural branches, so long dismembered and cut off from the tree of life.

And this they neither hope nor wish for but on some fair grounds, presented to them by *St. Paul*: who said expressly, that when the *fulfms* of the Gentiles is once come in, that then all *Israel* shall be saved, *Rom. 11. 25, 26*. The words are so plainly positive that they need no Commentary. Or if they did, we have the general consent of the Ancients, besides the constant current of most modern Writers; who cherish the glad hopes of their conversion to the Gospel; which the Apostle doth there aim at. *Origen*, *Abrahamus*, *Elerius*, *Augustine*, *Chrysostome*, for the primitive times; *Beda* and *Flugdo Cardinalis*, in the times succeeding; *Gorran*, and *Thomas Aquinas*, for those of *Rome*; *Calvin*, *Beza*, *Bullinger*, and *Peter Martyr* for the *Reformed Churches*; besides divers others of great note, to expound that Text. Not want there other Texts of Scripture to affirm as much; which he that doth desire to see, may find with the Expositions of most *Christian* Writers, in a Book writ by *Doctour Wiler*, Entituled, *De generali & novissima Judaeorum vocatione*; and thither I refer the more curious Reader. Out of all I shall take these words of *Peter Martyr*, written on that passage of *St. Paul* to the *Romans*, viz. *Non ita Judaei perierunt ut nulla de illorum salute spes superest*. The *Jews* (saith he) are not so wholly fallen from the favour of God, but that there still remains some hopes of their salvation. Of their *Salvation* the Gentiles is once come in, we conceive good hopes: but whether there be any of their restitution to their temporal Kingdom, is a further question; and not so clearly evidenced in the Book of God, though there be some opinion offering restored to the *Messiah*, so that Temporal power which was taken from them by the *Romans*, rest of the *Jews*, is, I take it, clear enough in the holy Gospel: In such a Kingdom, and no other, did the two Sons of *Zebedee* desire to sit on both hands of their Master; and the same was it, and no other, which all of them expected, as appeared by the words of *Chaplain*, *Luke 25. 21*. that *Christ* should have restored unto them. We thought, said he, that this would have proved the man, that I should have redeemed *Israel*. Redeemed *Israel*? From what? from sin and Satan, or the curse and bondage of the Law? not so. *Non sed ut videremur liberari* but from the yoke of *Vassallage*, which the *Romans* had so lately imposed on them, say the Fathers rightly. Touching the same it was that they moved him, saying *Luke*, wilt thou at this time restore again the Kingdom of *Israel*, *Acts 1. 6*. In answer whereunto, our Saviour makes them no denial, as unto the thing, nor tells them that they never must expect such a *resurrection*; but only puts them off as unto the time, and bids them rest themselves on the pleasure of God the Father, in whose hands the disposing of all Kingdoms was: it is not for you (saith he) to know the times and seasons, which the Father hath in his own power, ver. 7. By which answer (as it seems to me) there is a possibility of restoring them to their Kingdom also; though not in the *present* at that very instant when they were most desirous to have it done, or at any other time fit for them to know; that being a secret, which the Father hath referred to himself alone.

But leaving these Speculations of a Restitution of the Throne of *Israel*, and the great Power and Privileges it may then enjoy, let us look back on the Estate in which it flourished in the former times; when the Forces and Revenue of it were at the height. And first for the *Revenues*, they amounted in the time of *Solomon* (as is said *2 Chron. 9. 13*.) to 600 Talents of Gold; besides the benefits of his Customs and Impositions; which

cometh to 2997000 pounds of yearly income. A vast Sum for such a little Kingdom. Nor can we reckon them at less, if it is aswered, 1 Chron. 22. 14. That David; of whom it is aswered, 1 Chron. 22. 14. That he left to Solomon 100000 Talents of Gold, and he left to Solomon Silver towards the building of the Temple, besides 5000 Talents of Gold, and 7000 Talents of Silver, formerly deposited for that purpose, as is said 1 Chron. 29. 4. Which if it be computed at the ordinary rate of a Jew's Talent, reckoning a Talent of Gold at 4500 pound, and a Talent of Silver at 375 pound, will amount in our money to 840125000 pounds. So vast a Sum; that it had been sufficient to have built a Temple of pure Gold and Silver, far greater than the Temple of Solomon, without other Materials. I conceive therefore with our learned and industrious Brerewood, that by the Talent in those places we are to understand a far lesser Sum than the ordinary Hebrew Talents; which whether it doth there signifie a Sicle only, which is half a Crown of English money, as Epiphanius, cited by Eusebius, was of opinion; or that every Talent of Gold came to three Golden Crowns of Athens, which maketh forty five shillings of English money, as Julius Pollux hath it in his Onomasticon, I am not able to determine. But measuring it by the last estimate, which I more approve of, it will amount to two millions and two hundred ninety and five thousand pounds: a vast Sum for a King to leave in ready money, which was always exercised in war. And though I do not find expressly what the Revenues of Judah might amount unto after the division: yet by one circumstance I find them to be very great. For it is written 2 Kings 18. 14. that the yearly tribute imposed upon Hezekiah, by the King of Assyria, was three hundred Talents of Silver, and thirty Talents of Gold: amounting (according to the ordinary Hebrew Talent, which questionless is there intended) to two hundred forty seven thousand and five hundred pounds of English money: and therefore probably his ordinary Revenue must be thrice as much, above that tribute; Else the Assyrian had not left him a subsistence for a King to live on. Nor can I think that the Revenues of this Crown were less to Herod, than formerly to Solomon, or David; considering his vast expences, the many and magnificent Structures which he brought to perfection, the immeasurable donatives bestowed upon Augustus, Livius, and the Court of Rome, together with the large Legacies he gave at the time of his death: not parallel'd by any King before or since, though of a more large and more ample Territory than he itood possessed of.

What forces the Kings of the Hebrews were able to bring into the field, may be best climated by the Muster which David made, when he numbred the People; the enrolment of such as were able to bear arms, and fit for service, coming in all to five hundred thousand fighting men, in Judah only, and eight hundred thousand men in the Tribes of Israel. 'Tis true that David never brought into the field so vast a multitude; but when the Kingdoms were divided, and was denounced betwixt Jeroboam and Abijah, we find almost the whole number brought into the field: that is to say, 800 thousand on the side of Jeroboam the King of Israel, and four hundred thousand by Abijah, the King of Judah. After this, out of that small Kingdom, Asa the Son of Abijah, being invaded by Zardu the Arabian or Ethiopian, advanced an Army of five hundred and eighty thousand men, which was more than the enrolment made in the time of David. An infinite proportion for so small a Kingdom; and were it not avouched in the holy Scriptures, far above belief, had not that God who said to Abraham, that his Seed should be as

the Stars of Heaven for multitude, been able to have made it good.

As for the story and affairs of this Country since the time of Adrian, the Jews being all expelled their native Soyl, and Christianity in fine prevailing over all those parts, it was inhabited as the rest of the Empire was, by men of that Religion only: in this Country so advanced and countenanced, that Helena the Mother of Constantine, is reported to have built in it no less than two hundred Temples and Monasteries, in places of most note for the Miracles of Christ our Saviour, or the dwelling of some of his Disciples. In the year 615, the Persians, under the Conduct of Chosroes their King, became Masters of it; and possessed themselves of Hierusalem also: expelled thence by the valour and good fortune of the Emperour Heraclius, who recovering the Crofs on which Christ suffered, out of the hands of the Pagans, carried it with as great a Triumph into Constantinople, as David once did the Ark into Hierusalem, occasioning thereby the annual Festival on the fourth of September, called *Holy-Croft-day*, or *Exaltatio Sancte Crucis*. But this glory and rejoicing did not long continue. For within twenty years after the recovery of this City from the power of the Persians, it was again conquered and subdued by Homer, or Aunur, Caliph of the Saracens, Anno 637. Under this yoke the captivated Christians had long suffered, when they changed the Tyrant, but not the tyranny, the Turk about the year 1079. overcoming the Saracens, and domineering in their stead. Twenty years did the Christian languish under this oppression, when one Peter an Hermit, travelling for devotion to the holy Land, and being an eye-witness of the miseries under which they groaned; at his return, made his addresles to Pope Urban the second, acquainting him with the sad conditions of the poor Christians in those Countries. A Council thereupon is called at Clermont in France, where the Pope (willing to employ the Christian Princes farther off, that he might the better play his game at home,) did so effectually advance and endear the business, that no fewer than three hundred thousand fighting men, under several Leaders, undertook the service. And it prospered so well with them in the first beginning, that having beaten the Turks out of Asia Minor, taken the great City of Antioch, and most of the strong Towns of Syria, they incamped before Hierusalem, and in short time took it. Anno 1099. after it had been four hundred years and upwards in the power of the Infidels. The City being thus gained, was offered with the title of King, to Robert Duke of Normandy, Son of William the Conquerour: but he upon hopes of the Kingdom of England, refused that honour; never prospering, as it was observed, after that refusal. Godfrey of Bouillon, Duke of Lorrain, had the next offer of it, which with a Religious joy he accepted of; though on the day of his inauguration he refused the Crown: affirming that it was not fit for a Christian Prince to wear in that City a Crown of Gold, where the Redeemer of the World wore a Crown of Thorns.

The Kings of Hierusalem.

- 1099 1 Godfrey of Bouillon Duke of Lorrain.
- 1100 2 Baldwin of Lorrain, brother of Godfrey, won Ptolemais, and many other Cities of Syria.
- 1118 3 Baldwin II. surnamed of Bruges, Cousin of Godfrey, and Baldwin, the Former Kings, and overcame the Sultan of Damascus; and enlarged his Kingdom by the addition of Tyre.
- 1131 4 Fulk, Earl of Anjou, having married Millicent the daughter of Baldwin the second, succeeded

succeeded after his decease; unfortunately killed with a fall from his Horse.

- 1142 5 Baldwin III. Son of Fulk, and Millicent, fortified Gaza against the Caliph of Egypt; and recovered Panadé from the King of Damascus.
- 1164 6 Americus, the Brother of Baldwin the third, to disrelieve the great Caliph of Egypt; that he was forced to call in the Turks to aid him; by whom slain, and his Kingdom transferred on Saracem the Turkish General.
- 1174 7 Baldwin IV. Son of Americus, overthrew Saladin the victorious King of the Turks in a Fight near Ascalon, and valiantly defended his Dominions.
- 1185 8 Baldwin V. Son of Sybil the Sister of Baldwin the fourth by William Marquess of Montferrat; unnaturally poisoned by his own Mother, having reigned only five Months, to make way for her second Husband, called
- 1185 9 Guy of Lusignan, the last King of Hierusalem, that had the possession of the City: during whose time Saladin the Sultan of Egypt won that Kingdom, Anno 1187. which his Successors defended against all invasions, till the year 1517 in which Selim the first, Emperour of the Turks, added the Holy Land, together with Egypt, to his Empire. When Hierusalem was taken by the Christians, it is said that the German Emperours name was Frederick; the Pope's Urbanus; the Hierosolymitan Patriarch, Heraclius; and that so also were they called, when the Christians again lost it. This is the conceit of Roger Hooften, in the Life of Henry the Second; but how it canagree with Chronology, I do not see.

After the taking of Hierusalem by Sultan Saladin, the Christians retired their Forces into some of the other Towns of the Holy Land; which they made good against the Enemy, and defended them under the Government of these three Kings following, viz.

- 10 Conrad Marquess of Montferrat, Husband of Isabel the Daughter of Americus, King of Hierusalem.
- 11 Henry Earl of Champagne, second Husband of Isabel.
- 12 John di Brenne, Husband of Mary, or Yolanda as some call her, Daughter of Conrad and Isabel, the last Christian King that ever had possession in Syria or Palestine: inhabited ever since by Moors and Arabians; few Christians, and not many Turks but such as be in Garrisons only. Yolanda the Daughter of this John di Brenne, was Wife to Frederick King of Naples, who in her right intitled himself King of Hierusalem: and so now do the Kings of Spain, as Heirs unto and Possessors of the Kingdom of Naples. Concerning which Title, it would not be amiss to insert this Story. When the Wars in Queen Elizabeth's time were hot between England and Spain, there were Commissioners of both sides appointed to Treat of Peace. They met at a Town of the French Kings, and first it was debated in what Tongue the Negotiations should be handled. A Spaniard thinking to give the English Commissioners a shrewd gird, proposed the French Tongue as most fit; it being a Language which the Spaniards were all skilled in: and for these Gentlemen of England, I suppose (saith he) that they cannot be ignorant of the Language of their fellow-Subjects; their Queen is Queen of France, as well as of England. Nay in faith my Masters, replied Doctor Dale (a Civil Lawyer, and one of the Masters of Requests) the French Tongue is too vulgar for a business

of this secrecy and Importance, especially in a French Town: We will therefore rather treat in Hebrew, the Language of Hierusalem, whereof your Matter is King; and I suppose you are therein as well skilled, as we in the French. And thus much for this Title.

The Arms of the Christian Kings in Hierusalem was Luna, a Crofs Crost crost, Sol; which was commonly called the Hierusalem Crofs. But for their Forces and Revenues, I cannot see how any estimate may be made hereof, in regard they subsisted not by their own proper strength, but by the Purfes and the Forces of the Western Christians more or less active in that Service, as zeal, or emulation, or desire of glory, were predominant in them.

Chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom, after the Recovery thereof from the power of the Turks, were,

1. Of the Sepulchre, said to be instituted originally by Queen Helena. The Mother of Constantine the Great, by whom the Temple of the Sepulchre was indeed first built: but more truly, by Philip King of France, Anno 1099. at such time that Temple was regained from the fore blasphemous, representing the five Wounds of our Saviour C H R I S T. At the first conferred on none but Gentlemen of Blood and Fortune; now saleable to any that will buy it of the Pater-Guardian, who with a Convent of Franciscans doth reside near that Temple.

2. Of Saint John of Hierusalem, begun by one Gerard, Anno 1114. and confirmed by Pope Paschal the second. Their Badge or Cognizance is a white Crofs of eight points. Their duty, to defend the Holy Land, relieve Pilgrims, and succour Christian Princes against the Infidels. They were to be of noble Parentage and Extraction; and grew in time to such infinite Riches, especially after the suppression of the Templars (most of whose Lands were after given unto this Order) that they had at one time in the several parts of Christendom, no fewer than 20000 Manours; and of such Reputation in all Christian Kingdoms, that in England the Lord Prior of this Order, was accounted the Prince Baron in the Realm. But now their Revenue is not a little diminished, by the withdrawing of the Kings of England, and other Protestant Princes, from the Church of Rome: who on that change seized on all the Lands of this Order in their several Countries; and either kept them to themselves, or disposed them to others as they pleased. Of these we shall speak more when we are in Malta where they now reside: advertising only at the present, that their first Great Master, was that Gerard by whom they were founded; the last that had his residence in the Holy Land, one John de Villiers, in whose time being driven out of Palestine, they removed unto Cyprus, and in the time of Fulk de Villaret, Anno 1309, to the Isle of Rhodes; Out of which expelled by Soliman the Magnificent, Anno 1522, they removed from one place to another, till at last by the magnificence of Charles the fifth, Anno 1530, they were settled in Malta: and there we shall speak further of them.

3. Of the Templars, Instituted by Hugh of Payen, Anno 1113, and confirmed by Pope Eugenius. Their Ensign was a Red Crofs, in token that they should shed their blood to defend Christ's Temple. They were bared crofs-legged, and wore on their backs the figure of the Crofs; for which they were by the common people called Crofs-backs, or Crouch-backs, and by corruption Crook-backs. Edmund Earl of Lancaster, second Son to our Henry the third, being of this Order, was vulgarly called Edmund Crook-back; which gave Henry the fourth a foolish occasion to feign, that this Edmund (from whom

he was defended) was indeed the eldest Son of King Henry the third; but for his crookedness and deformity, his younger Brother was preferred to the Crown before him. These Knights had in all Provinces of Europe their subordinate Governours, in which they possessed no less than 16000 Lordships: the greatness of which Revenue was not the least cause of dissolving the Order. For Philip the Fair, King of France, had a plot to invest one of his Sons with the title of King of Hierusalem, and hoped to procure the Pope the Revenue of this Order, to be laid unto that Kingdom, for support of the Title: which he thought he might the better do, because Clement the fifth then Pope, for the love he bore to France, had transferred his Seat from Rome to Avignon. But herein his hopes deceived him; for this Order being dissolved, the Lands thereto belonging were given to the Knights Hospitallers, or of St John. The Crimes ob-

jected against this Order were, First, Their Revolt from their professed Obedience unto the Patriarch of Jerusalem, who was their Visitor: Secondly, Their unpeachable Pride: and Thirdly, their sins against Nature. The House of our Law-Students in London, called the Temple, was the chief House of the Knights of this Order in England; and was by the Knights of St. John, whose principal Mansion was in Smithfield, sold unto the Student of the Law, for the yearly Rent of 10*l*. about the middle of the Reign of Edward the third.

These three Orders Mr. Selden (and deservedly) putteth not in his *Titles of Honour*, in that they were prohibited to kiss a Woman; honourary Knight-hood, and the Love of Ladies, going together like Virtue and Reward.

Thus much for Palestine.

OF

ARABIA.



ARABIA hath on the East Chaldaea, and the Bay or Gulph of Persia; on the West, Palestine, some part of Egypt, and the whole course of the Red-Sea; on the North the River Euphrates; with some parts of Syria and Palestine; and on the South, the main Southern Ocean. But at some times the name extended somewhat further. Pliny enlargeth it as far as Comagena, the North part of Syria; in regard that many Arabian Colonies had been there planted by Tygranes; and Xenophon comprehended in it the greatest part also of Mesopotamia; because situate on the West of the River Tigris, and consequently the Western part of the Assyrian Empire, as the word Ereth doth import, from whence some derive the Erymon, and name herof. Which notwithstanding, in the general effect of Authors, it is bounded only as before.

As for the Name, there be some that derive it from Arabus, a supposed Son of Apollo and Babilonia; others from three supposititious Sons of Jannes Pater, one of the pretended Grand-sons of Cham, who is fabled to have sent his Son Arabus into Arabia Deserta; Peretrius, into Arabia Petraea; and Sabus, into Arabia Felix, the dwelling place of the Sabaeans. And for this trim conceit, we are beholden to the Berosus of Friar Amnius. More probable is their conjecture, who derive the name from the Hebrew, Arab, signifying black; by reason of the swarth or tawny complexion of the Inhabitants who are inter nigrum & fulvum, as Petronianus an eye-witness hath informed us of them; on the same reason as one of the Provinces of Africa, is commonly entituled the Land of Negroes. But the most likely origination of it, as I conceive, is from Harabi, which signifieth in all Ages has been known to be. According unto that of the Prophet Jeremy: *In the ways thou hast fate for them, as an Arabian in the Wilderness*, as our English reads it: *Tanquam Lairo insidians in solitudine*, saith the Vulgar Latin, Jer. 32. St. Hierom, though he render it quasi

Lairo, as the Vulgar doth, yet in his Commentary he informs us, that the word doth also signifie an *Arabian* quia gens latrocinis dedita usque hodie incusat Palestine, fines, &c. which being addicted to Theft and Robbery, do to this day (saith he) infect the Coasts of Palestine which border near them, and lay in wait for those which had any occasion to travel thither. Agreeable hereunto is the observation of Martin del Rio; *Adso latrocinii infames sunt, ut Hebreis Arabi latronem denotat, sicut Chanaan Mercatorem, Chaldaeus Mathematicum; i. e.* So infamous were they for their Theft and frequent Robberies, that it was familiar with the Jews to call a Thief by the name Arabian, as by Chanaanite to signifie a Merchant, or to use the word Chaldaean for a Mathematician. In the same sense they came in the succeeding times to be called Saraceni, from Sarak, or Saraks, an Arabian word, which signifieth to steal; whereof more anon: No otherwise than one of the American Islands had the name of Ladrone, or Insula Latronum, given by Magellan, from the thieveliness of the Inhabitants, who had stoln his Cock-boat.

I have staid the longer on the Name, because it doth exprefs so much of the Character of the People also; living for the most part upon Spoil and Robbery, as if that travel that way know by sad experience. Of men features, raw-boned, tawny or swarth complexioned, having feminine voices; of swift but noisefull gate, and upon you ere you are aware. Of no set-dwellings (except only in Arabia Felix) living in Tents, which they remove like walking Cities, for the benefit of Pasturage, and hope of Booty; for this last cause hanging about the skirts of more habitable Countries, and having robb'd, retire with a marvellous speed, Mounted on Dromedaries for that purpose, a Beast of most incredible swiftness, furnished with little Food, though without Water to it, and will easily carry a man an hundred miles a day, without any refreshing. Nor are such Horfes as they have, though but poor and lean, of less speed, or less patient of travel; whom they feed twice a day with the Milk of Camels, and think them not a worth keeping, if not able to out-go an Ostrich. As now,

now, so formerly, all Horsemen, and but ill appointed; sifter to rob and spoil than to deal with Souldiers; as riding stark naked, and trusting rather to the swiftness of these Horfes, than any other resistance, where they were opposed.

Their Language is the Arabicke, so called from this Country; but not proper to this Country only: Spoken in all places where Mahometanism hath got any footing: The Achaean being written in it, the publick Offices of their Religion performed in it, and the Tongue taught in Schools as generally as with us the Latin; but made the natural Language in Mesopotamia, Syria, Palestine, the three Arabias, Egypt, and all Barbary, except the Kingdom of Morocco.

A great extent, but short of that which some give to it, who will have it spoken in two parts of the whole habitable World.

The Christian Faith was first here planted by S. Paul, of whose being in Arabia, after his Conversion he telleth us Gal. 1. 17. to which the coming in of the Saracens gave a great increase, in the time of Claudia the Queen, during the Empire of Valentinian the first, Moser, a man of exemplary piety, and famed for many Miracles, being created their first Bishop; after more generally propagated over all the Country, by the King Alamandarus, Anastasius then reigning in the East, but long it had not been received, when supplanted by Mahometanism, which had its first beginning here; and hath so universally overspread the whole face herof, that now there are no Christians left in all the Country, except only in Eltor, a Port Town in the Bay of Arabia Felix; in Arabia Petraea, the chief City of Arabia Petraea, and in two small Monasteries about Mount Sinai.

It is in circuit about 4000 miles, but of so unequal and heterogeneous composition, that no general Character, can be given of it: and therefore we must look upon it, as it stands divided into 1 Arabia Deserta, 2 Arabia Petraea, 3 Arabia Felix, and 4 The Arabick Islands.

1 ARABIA DESERTA.

ARABIA DESERTA (called Beriara by the Turks) is bounded on the East with Babylonia; on the West with parts of Palestine, and Arabia Petraea; on the North, with Palmyrene and Mesopotamia, which last it is parted by Euphrates; and on the South, by some parts of Petraea, and Arabia Felix.

It hath the name of Deserta, from the vast Deserts which are in it, and the inhabiteness thereof; called also by Aristotle, Aspera, from the roughness; by Servius, inferior, or the lower, in regard of the situation of it more towards the River; by Lucian, from the frequent bottoms and Vallies in it, Arabia Cava; and the finally by the Jews it was called Kedar, from the blackness or swarthinness of the People, the word in Hebrew signifying as much as Sun-burnt; whence the People are by some Writers called Kederani, and by Ptolemy, Cedreai.

But the common and most usual name of it, is Arabia Deserta, agreeable to the nature of it, being generally a sandy Country, full of vast Deserts, in which all such as travel, use to carry their provisions with them, and to guide themselves in their Journey by the course of the Stars, though in some parts which lie near the Euphrates, and the Mountains of Arabia Felix, it hath some few Towns, and those resorted to by Merchants. But this is only in those parts; the residue of the Country being so desolate and waste, that one who had travelled in it, doth describe it to be so wild a place, *Ut ne homines nec bestia videantur, nec aves; imo, nec arbores, nec gemina aliquot, sed non nisi montes saxosi, altissimi*.

simi, asperissimi: A Country, saith Guiliandinus Melchior, where are found neither Men, nor Beasts, nor so much as Birds or Trees, nor Grass; nor Pasture, but only flocks, and most craggy Mountains.

The People for the most part used to dwell in Tents, alluded to by David, Psal. 120. v. 5. which they removed from place to place, as the Pasture for their Cattel failed them, taking no other care for Houses, than the Boughs of Palm-trees, to keep them from the heat of the Sun, and other extremities of Weather. Hence by the Ancients called Scimitae, or men dwelling in Tents; in which respect the Jews call the Kartariani Kedariani, from the like course of life which these Ledariani or Arabians lived; but the name reaching into the other parts of Arabia also, where they use the same kind of living: Of whom more anon.

Yet notwithstanding most memorable is this Country in sacred Story, both for the dwelling-place of Job, and the habitation of those Wise-men, who came out of the East unto Hierusalem, to worship Christ, the new-born King of the Jews. That Job was an inhabitant here, appareth by the situation of his dwelling, being in the East, as is said in the Story of him, chap. 1. v. 3. that is to say, the Country lying East to the Land of Canaan, as this part of it doth; and therefore called simply by the name of the East, as Judg. 6. 3. where by the Children of the East, are meant expressly the Inhabitants of Arabia the Desart, who together with the Midianites and Amalekites oppressed those of Israel. Secondly, by the ill neighbourhood which he found from the Sabaeans, who inhabited in this part also; and of the Chaldeans, mentioned v. 17. the next Borderers to it: and thirdly, by the inconsequencies which needs must follow, if we place him, as some do, in the Land of Uz, near unto Damascus. For how improbable must it be for the Sabaeans, of the Red Sea, or the Persian Gulf, or the Chaldeans dwelling on the Banks of the River Euphrates, to fall upon Job's Cattel grazing near Damascus, the Countries being disjoined by such vast Deserts, and huge Mountains, that it is impossible for any Strangers to pass them, especially with any numbers of Cattel. In respect of those large Mountains, deep Sands, and the extreme want of Water in all that passage? And how impossible must we think it, that the Pen-man of the Story of Job, who certainly was guided in it by the Holy-Ghost, should be so mistaken as to place Job's dwelling in the East, if the Land of Uz, wherein he dwelt, bordered on Damascus, which lay not on the East, but the North of Canaan? A City called Uz, or Uz there was, situate near Damascus, so called from Uz, the Son of Aram, Gen. 10. 23. A Land of Uz also amongst the Edomites, spoken of in the Lamentations of the Prophet Jeremy, c. 4. v. 21. so called from Uz, one of the Posterity of Esau, mentioned Gen. 36. 28. And finally a Land of Uz, or Uz, so called from Hus the Son of Nachor, the Brother of Abraham, mentioned Gen. 22. 21. which is that situate in this Tract, the Habitation and Possession of that righteous man: the Country hereabouts being called Aushia, and the People Aushite; though by mistaking in the Transcripts, we find them named Aduas or Aushie; in the fifth of Ptolemy. The like I say also of the Wise-men, or Magi, who came to Hierusalem from the East, That they dwelt in this Country, where the said Ptolemy placeth the City of Saba; according unto that for-signified by the Royal Psalmist, That the Kings of Arabia and Saba should bring their Gifts, Psal. 72. 10. Confirmed herein by the situation of the Country, lying East of Canaan; the Authority of those Fathers who lived nearest to the time of our Saviour's Birth, Justin Martyr; Tertullian; Cyprinus; and by the testimony of Guiliandinus Melchior.

Iudinus Melchior above mentioned, affirming on the credible report of the people hereof, that they came neither out of *Mesopotamia*, or *Arabia Felix*, as many wily-men do believe, but out of *Saba* in *Arabia* the *Deserts*, which City (saith he) when my self was there, was, as I judged, called *Semifalae*.

Cities of note, in a Country so desert and uninhabited, we must look for few; yet some there are, inhabited by a more civil sort of people, whom they call by the name of *Moors*, giving that of *Arabian* to those only, who live roving and robbing up and down. *Ptolemy* gives the names of forty Cities and Villages in it (Civitates & vicus, saith the *Latine*) the memory of most of which is now utterly perished. Those of most observation, 1 *Sabe* or *Saba*, the habitation of the *Sabeans* who pillaged *Job*; so called from *Sheba*, the Grand-son of *Abraham* by *Keurab*, mentioned *Gen. 25. 3.* of whom, and of the rest of that Line, it is said, in the sixth verse of that chapter, that *Abraham* gave them gifts, and sent them away from *Isaac* Eastward, unto the East Country: now called *Semifalae*, as is thought by *Melchior*. 2 *The-man*, which possibly may be the Country of *Eliphaz*, the *Themanite*, one of the *Visitants* of *Job*. As 3 *Shubab*, on the North hereof, was probably of *Bilad*, another of them, hence firnamed the *Shuite*. 4 *Tharican*, by *Pliny* called *Aphipolis*. 5 *Zagmuis*, near the *Persian* Gulf, in the Country of the *Raubeni*, supposed to be descended from *Mishma*, the fourth Son of *Ismael*. 6 *Phuntun*, the 36th. 7 *Oboth*, the 37th Mansion of the Children of *Israel*. 8 *Rheganna*, another of those named by *Ptolemy*, in the Greek Copies called *Beganna*. Of any Town of note now being, more than *Semifalae* before-named, I find nothing certain.

The first Inhabitants of this Country, of whom there is any certain Constat, were the Posterity of *Huz*, the Son of *Nabor*, and the Sons of *Abraham* by *Keurab*; of whose being settled in these parts, we had before good testimony from the Book of *God*: and intermix'd with them lived some of the Descendants of *Ismael* also. For if the *Adubeni*, whom *Ptolemy* calleth the *Agubeni*, fetch their original from *Adabel* the third, and the *Raubeni* from *Mishma* the fifth Son of *Ismael*, as some say they do, I see no reason but the whole Country might be called *Kedar*, from *Kedar* the second Son, as well as from the tawny complexions of the people of it. From them descended the Tribes or Nations spoken of by *Ptolemy*, that is to say, the *Orchemi*, *Chauabeni*, *Anista*, *Maloni*, *Materni*, and *Agrai*, besides the *Adubeni*, and *Raubeni*, already specified. But being a dis-jointed People, nor under any settled form of Government, nor possessed of any thing worth looking after, they were either held not worth the conquering, in regard of their penury; or else unconquerable, in respect of their Country, impassable for great Armies, by reason of the rolling Sands, and want of all things. Yet I conceive, that lying so near to the *Chaldeans*, they followed the fortunes of that mighty monarchy: Subjects unto it whilst it stood, and after 'Tributaries unto those who successively possessed themselves of the Supreme Power. Not looked at by the *Romans*, or regarded by them, who aimed at wealth as well as Honour in their Expedition: nor otherwise subject to the *Turks* at this present time, than as they make use of him, and his protection in their frequent Robberies: but counted of as a part of the *Turkish* Empire, because the more civil *Arabians* are indeed his Subjects.

2 ARABIA PETRÆA.

ARABIA PETRÆA (now called *Barrab* and *Barthabab*) hath on the East *Arabia Deserta*,

and part of *Sinus Persicus*, or the Bay of *Persia*; on the West, the *Isthmus* which joyneth *Africa* to *Asia*, and part of the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*, on the North, *Palestine*; and on the South a long Ridge of Mountains, which divide it from *Arabia Felix*.

It had this name either from the rockiaefs of the Soil hereof, or more properly from *Petra*, the chief City of it, called also by *Æthiopi*, *Sicaria*, but I know not why: by the *Hebrews*, *Chus*, generally translated *Æthiopia*; by *William* of *Tyre*, *Arabia secunda*, *Felix* being reckoned for the first. By *Srabo*, *Ptolomy*, and *Pliny*, it is called *Nababab*, which name it had from *Nabaiab*, the eldest of the twelve Sons of *Ismael*; though properly that name belongeth only to those parts of it which lay next *Judea*: fruitful, though joyning to the *Deserts*: and thus remembered by the Poet, as an Eastern Country.

Eurus ad Auroram, Nabababque regna receffit.

Eurus unto the East did flie,

Where fruitful *Nababab* doth lie.

The Country much of the same nature with the other, but in some parts thereof more fertile, if well manured: and in the time of *Marcellinus*, affirmed to be a rich Land, flourishing with variety of Trade and Traffick. But for the most part full of untravellable *Deserts*, except to those which carry their provisions with them for fear of starving, and go in great Companies, or *Caravans* for fear of robbing: and yet much travelled by Merchants who traffick into *Egypt* and *Babylonia*; the Commodities whereof they lay on Camels, which are the Ships of *Arabia*, as their Seas, the *Deserts*. For upon one of the Camels, they will lay ordinarily 600 and sometimes 1000 pound weight: yet not afford him water above once in four days, not often in fourteen, if there be occasion. So that the Camel carrying so great a burden, and seldom fewer than 500 going in one Voyage, the Merchant, if he capeth robbings, makes a rich return. Of these *Deserts*, the most memorable are those of *Sin* and *Pharan*, in which the *Israelites* so long wandered: not beautified with Grass, nor adorned with Trees, the Palm only excepted; nor furnished with Water, but by Rain or Miracle.

The People of it for the most part, descended of the Sons of *Chus* and *Ismael*, intermixed with the *Madianites*, descending from *Abraham* by *Keurab*, and the *Amalekites*, descended probably from *Amalek*, the Grand-son of *Elsau*, mentioned *Gen. 3. 6.* but all united at the last in the name of *Saracens*. This name derived, as some think, from *Sarra*, signifying a *Desart*, and *Saken* which signifieth to inhabit, because they live for the most part in these desert places: as others say, from *Sarak*, signifying a Thief or Robber, agreeable to that of *Arabia*, before delivered. This last most suitable to their nature, and best liked by *Scaliger*. *Saraceni a vicini dicuntur ab Elsarac. i. e. proximo viciis suis, quod rapini videntur.* So he, in his second Book de *Emend. Temp.* A People not reckoned in the former times, till made remarkable by their Conquest of a great part of the World, but always counted warlike and Martial men. Of whom take this Character out of *Marcellinus*. "The *Saraceni* (saith he) whom we are neither to wish for, nor our Friends nor Enemies, are a Martial People, half naked, clad as far as the groin with painted Callocks, ranging up and down on Camels and swift Horses, as well in peace as troublesome times. Not used unto the Plough, to plant Trees, or get their living by Tillage; they wander from one place to another, without house or home, or any constant dwelling-place, or the use of Laws; nor can they long endure the same either Air or Soil, the manner of their living being always flucting,

"flitting like ravenous Kites; which if they chance to spy a prey, snatch it up in their flight: or if they chance to fall on it as it lyeth on the ground, they make no long stay. Their food is chiefly upon Venison, and Horse of Milk, herbs which they gather from the ground, and birds which they get by fowling; but altogether ignorant of Corn and Wine. Their Wives they only hire for a time, though for a shew of Matrimony they present their Husbands with a Spear & a Tent, as in way of Dowry; but they part with them when they please. Both Sexes most extremely given to carnal luits, the women as rambling as the men, married in one place, and brought to bed in another; leaving their Children where they fall without more care of them. So far, and to this purpose he.

Rivers of note here are not many. The principal are, 1 That called *Trajanus amnis*, or the River of *Trajan*, which passing through this Country endeth his course in the *Red Sea*. 2 *Rhinocorura*, called in Scripture the torrent of *Egypt*, which rising this Country, and passing by the borders of *Idumæa*, hath its fall in the Lake of *Sibon*, and together with the waters thereof, joyneth it self at last in the *Mediterranean*.

With Mountains it is better stored, and those of eminent observation, as 1 Mount *Sinai*, famous in all Ages for the promulgation of the Law; and of late times, for a Monastery of *Maronites* on the top thereof. The Hill so high, that both shores of the *Red Sea* may be thence seen, but easie of ascent, by reason of steps cut out of the rock: which notwithstanding, he that beginneth to go up it at the break of day, will hardly overcome the top of it till the afternoon. The Monastery made an Episcopal See, and formerly very well endowed, as appeareth by the Letters of *Eugenius* Bishop thereof, to the Arch-Duke *Charles*, Anno 1569, complaining that the *Turks* had sold all their Land, and that himself and the Monks were fain to pawn their holy Vessels, and take up money on Usury. Here is also a *Mesque*, or *Mosque* of *Turks*, who resort in pilgrimage to this hill as well as the Christians. 2 Mount *Horeb*, where the *Israelites* worshipped the Molten Calf, about a mile and a half distant from Mount *Sinai*, but not so high: on the top of which is a Church also; and a Monastery of *Coloires*, or Greek Monks, at the bottom, exceeding hospitable to Strangers, whom they entertain of free cost and cheerfully shew them all the places worth observation, which the Scripture mentioneth in that tract. Both hills by *Ptolomy* called *Adelani*, or the Black Mountains; the last now called *Oreb*. 3 Mount *Hori*, bordering on *Idumæa*; and memorable for the death of *Aaron*.

Places of most observation, 1 *Petra*, the name given to this part, at first called *Reccen*, and at that time belonging to *Adian*: afterwards called *Sala*, when pertaining to the *Idumæans*. But falling under the power of the *Arabians*, it is now called *Cyat*. Best known in holy Scriptures by the name of *Sela*, before mentioned, which signifies the same with the *Latine Petra*. A City of great note and strength in all times foregoing, taken by *Amaziah* the King of *Judah*, 2 Kings 14. 7. and by him called *Jock-beel*; but in vain beleagued by *Scaurus*, a Roman General, who finding the place to be impregnable, was content by the persuasion of *Antipater*, to take a sum of money and raise the siege. Nor did the Emperor *Trajan* speed much better at it, his Souldiers being still beat off in all their Assaults, the very next man to him slain with a Dart, and himself forced to cast away his Imperial habit, and flie for his life; the heavens themselves, if *Dion* (who is never sparing of the like prodigies) may be believed, fighting against the *Romans* with thunder, lightning, whirlwinds, and tempests, as often as they made any ap-

proaches to it: But in the end subdued with the rest of the Country. In such esteem, by reason of the strength of it, by the Souldans of *Egypt*, that they kept here her choicest treasures; and in the course of the Holy Wars, much aimed at by the *Turks* and *Christians*, as the Key that opened the Gates of *Palestine*, on the South border thereof, not far from Mount *Hori*, before-mentioned, the Town is situate. The Metropolis of the Province when first under the *Romans*; and made the Seat of a *Latine* Bishop, when the Christians of the West were the Lords thereof. 2 *Bofra*, said to have been built by *Augustus Caesar*, because by him repaired, when decayed and ruined; afterwards by *Alexander Severus* made a Colony of this *Romans*. This last most certain, and for such testified by this ancient Inscription, in an ancient Coyn, COL. POSTRAINT. R. ALEXANDRIAN. Memorabile also for the birth of *Philip* the Emperor, one of that *Alexander's* next Successors, by whom it was caufed for a time to be called *Philippi*; for the Metropolitane dignity removed hither from *Petra* somewhat before the time of *Tyberian*, but by whom I find not; and for being the Episcopal Sec of *Tium* (hence firnamed) *Bofrenis*, a reverend Father of the Church in the time of *Julian* the Apostate. A City of as great antiquity as the most that be, mentioned *Gen. 36. 33.* though there accounted of as a City of *Edom*, to which at that time it did belong; and is still remaining, & well known by the name of *Boghrat*, 3 *Elama*, on a bay of the *Red Sea*, called hence *Sinus Elamiticus*. 4 *Phara*, reckoned by *Ptolomy* for a chief Town of this Tract, from whence the Wildernesse of *Paran* seems to take its name. 5 *Berenice*, so called from some of the Queens of *Egypt*, but better known by the name of *Ezion-geber*, one of the Stations or Incampings of the Children of *Israel*, and made by *Salomon* the ordinary Harbour for his Ships, which failed to *Ophir* in the East-Indies. 6 *Sur*, the chief City of the *Amalekites*, giving name to the Wildernesse or Desert of *Sur*, coming close up to it: remarkable for the first incamping of the 17 Tribes of *Israel* after their miraculous passage over the *Red Sea*; and the defeat which *Saul* gave to the *Amalekites*, whom he smote from *Havilah* to this place. 7 *Havilah*, so called from *Havilah* the son of *Chus*, being the furthest border of these *Amalekites*, & *Ismaelites*, on the Gulf of *Persia*, as *Sir* was on the *Red Sea* or Gulf of *Arabia*. 8 *Madian*, so called of *Madian*, the son of *Abraham* by *Keurab*, situate towards the *Red Sea* also; the City of *Jethro*, whose Daughter *Zipporah* was the wife of *Moses*: who flying from the Court of *Pharaoh* King of *Egypt*, was by *God's* secret providence directed hither: that keeping the Flocks of *Jethro* in the *Deserts* adjoining, he might acquaint himself with the ways and passages, through which he was after to lead the house of *Israel*. 9 *Rephaim*, the encamping place of *Moses*, where he discomfited the *Amalekites*; and to which the said *Jethro* came to him with his Wife and Children, advising him to ease himself of some part of that burden, which the Government of so great a People would esse bring upon him. 10 *Kadish-barnea*, the station of the Tribes, when the Spies which were sent to discover the Land of *Canaan* returned back unto them: memorable for the death of *Miriam* the Prophetess. And 11 *Thara*, no less memorable for the mutiny and punishment of *Corah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, the place remembered *Numb. 33. 27.* But others will have 12 *Akkabath*, mentioned v. 25. of that Chapter, to be the Stage of that action, the Scriptures being silent in this particular. The rest of their encamping places, being most of them in this part of *Arabia*, I omit of purpose, as obvious in the Scripture unto every Reader: as I do also some of the Cities of *Moab* and *Ammon*, accounted of by *Ptolemy*

aided *Mithridates* and *Tigranes*, in the War against them, submitted themselves unto *Lucullus*, being then no nearer to *Armenia Major*. The like they did to *Pompey* also, being then in *Judaea*. First vanquished by *Albius Gallus* in the time of *Augustus*; but the Victory not improved to an absolute Conquest, till the time of *Trajan*, when partly by his personal preference, and partly by the valour and good fortune of *Palmas*, his Lieutenant, they were fully vanquished, and brought in to the form of a *Roman Province*: but so, that they had Kings of their own (*Vassals and Fiefdoms* of the Empire) as in former times; continuing in that condition till the rise of *Mahomet*. Of which more hereafter.

3 ARABIA FELIX.

ARABIA FELIX, is bounded on the East, with the *Persian*, on the West, with the *Arabian Gulf*; on the North with a long ridge of Mountains, which part it from *Dejefra* and *Perrea*; and on the South with the boundless Ocean. Environed on three parts with the Sea, on the fourth with rough, impassable Mountains; in situation and figure much resembling *Italy*.

It had the name of *Arabia Felix* from the fertility and happy condition of it, being esteemed the most fruitful & pleasant Country in all *Asia*, abounding with *Myrrhe*, *Balsamum*, *Frankincense*, *Gold*, and *Precious Stones*: by *Curtius* called *Odorum fertilitate nobilis Regio*, from the abundance of *Frankincense*, wherewith enriched beyond all others. Concerning which there goeth a story, that when *Alexander* in his Adolescence or Boyage, was sacrificing to the Gods, and cast into the fire with both hands great store of *Frankincense* and *Myrrhe*, *Leontidas* his Governour, bid him be more sparing of those precious and dear Commodities, till he was Master of the Country in which they grew. Which *Alexander* remembering, when he had brought almost all the East under his obedience, he sent unto *Leontidas* a Ship laden with *Frankincense*, bidding him from thenceforth to serve the Gods more liberally. But as well for the reason of this adjunct, as a more perfect character and description of it, take along this of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who describes it thus: "On the East and South hereof (saith he) are the Happy *Arabians*: so called, because so rich in Corn; as well as pteous in Cattel, Vines, and Odoriferous Spices of all kinds; shut up betwixt the Red Sea, and the *Persian Gulf*, and so acquainted with all blessings, which either Element can afford: well furnished with Roads, and quiet Harbours for Shipping, the Towns of Trade and Merchandise standing very thick; the retiring Houses of the Kings, passing neat and sumptuous. Besides most wholesome Fountains of medicinal waters, they enjoy divers Brooks and Rivers very clear and pure, and a temperature of Air exceedingly healthy; so that whosoever considereth all things aright, may well conclude, that there is nothing wanting to the accomplishment of his felicity in the highest degree. So *Ammianus Marcellinus*. To which we need add nothing more to set forth its happiness, than that *Danet* in his Comment on *St. Augustin's Enchiridion ad Laurentium*, is persuaded that it was the local place of *Paradise*. *Dicitur* (saith he) *Paradisi terræ Regio pars quadam esse Arabiæ, quæ nunc dicitur Felix*. But it hath other names besides this of *Felix*. By the *Arabians* themselves called *Yaman*, and *Al-jaman* (*Ayaman* corruptly by the *Turks*) which in that tongue signifieth the South, or Southern Region. By *Virgil* it is named *Panchaia*. *quasi tota debilitans*, because of the many chops and stinks which the ardour of the Sun makes in the Sands

thereof, though by him much extolled also for its plenty of *Frankincense*.

Totaque thurisæ Panchala pitguis arena.
Famed are the whole *Panchalian Lands*,
For rich and Incense-bearing Sands.

The People anciently, though more civil than the rest of the *Arabians*, had yet many strange and barbarous customs. Adultery amongst them was punished with death as in other places; but only he was held an Adulterer, which enjoyed any that was not his own kinswoman, be she his Sister or his Mother; and so they kept themselves in their own Families; Community of wives or women was esteemed no crime. And of this there is a Tale in *Strabo*, that the King of this Country had fifteen Sons, and but one Daughter, who according to the Customs hereof, was the common wife of all her brethren; every of which had a Staff of like making, which when he went in unto his Sister he did leave at the door; and by foding did forbid entrance unto the rest, till it was removed. The young Lady, wearied with a continual excess of dalliance, secretly procured a Staff like unto the rest, which when she was desirous to prohibit their access to her, she left at her Chamber-door, and by that means did many times enjoy her desired privacy. At last it happened that all the Brothers being together, one of them departed towards his Sisters Lodgings, where finding a Staff before the door, and knowing that he had his Brethren in one place together, he accused her of Adultery: but the truth being made known, the Lady was acquitted, and their visits afterwards restrained. Of dead Bodies they took no care, not so much as of their Chiefs or Princes; but left them to the custody of the next dung-hill. They bragged much of their descent from *Jupiter*; and neglected all Sciences & Arts, as dilparagements to so great Nobility. Commendable only in the keeping of their faith and promises, and in that most punctual. Much of the same condition are the present Inhabitants, save that less faithful in their Contracts; and by their Law restrained from meddling with the wives of others, permitted many of their own. Some there are of them which apply themselves to the grazing of Cattel, and the rest to Merchandize, wherein very cautious and cunning; but hating to this day all Mechanical Arts. A Nation from the beginning unmixed with others, till the coming of the *Turks* amongst them, of which but few, and those disposed of in Garrisons: boasting of their Nobility, and glorying in nothing more than their greatest shame, namely that the false Prophet *Mahomet* was their Country-man; whose impieties are here generally embraced, and followed.

Amongst the rarities of this Country, some account the *Phoenix*, which growing old burneth her self in a nest of Spices, and from thence a young one ingendered; one of them only at a time, which after a life of five or six hundred years, thus reneweth her kind. But this tradition, questioned in former times by *Pliny* & some others, is now proved a Fiction; contrary both unto divinity & natural reason: though some of the Fathers made use of it as an argument to prove the Resurrection against the Gentiles, by whom the tradition was believed. More common, but of no less observation, is the *Ostrich*, a Bird which swalloweth all it findeth, be it Stones or Iron. They delight chiefly in the *Desarts*, in the sands whereof they lay their Eggs, and then forgetting where they left them, sit on those they meet next. In that respect accounted for a simple Fowl, though otherwise of wit enough to preserve themselves; keeping in Rocks, and oftentimes with their fearful shrieces affrighting Passengers, to whom they do appear afar off like a Troop of Horsemen. Their wings, too little for their bodies, serve them not

for flight, but to run more speedily; and by that means not easily caught, though much laid in wait for, for their Skins, which the People sell unto the Merchant with their Feathers on their Nor of less note is the *Frankincense*, though of common use; almost peculiar to this Country, and here but to those parts thereof which were formerly possessed by the *Sabai*: the Wood miles long and so broad, gathered only in *Spring* and *Autumn*. More of this anon.

The Country is much commended by *Ammianus* for plenty of Rivers, the principal whereof are, said by *Proton* to be, 1 *Betius*, 2 *Priton*, 3 *Harman*, 4 *Lar*; but the modern names thereof I find not. Many fair Lakes, and store of large capacious Bays on each coast of the Sea, 1 *Sinus Elaniticus*, 2 *Sachalites*, 3 *Leantes*, 4 *Sinus Magorum*, 5 *Sinus Ichthyophagorum*, 6 *Messanites*, 7 *Sacer Sinus*, or the Holy Bay; and 8 The road or Naval Station called *Negilla*. Mountains of most note, 1 Those which are called *Melanes*, at the entrance of the *Persian Gulf*, 2 *Cabubutbra*, at the entrance of the Red Sea or Gulf of *Arabia*, 3 *Hippus*, 4 *Priomont*, not far from the River *Prion*, from whence so denominated, 5 *Climax*, 6 The Mountains called *Diadymi*, &c.

Towns of good note in ancient times it had very many, no Region affording unto *Proton* the names of more; and amongst those many commodious Ports for Traffick, the Sea begirting it for the space of 3000 miles and upwards. Of most importance and observation in those times were, 1 *Zebrum*, 2 *Badeo*, 3 *Rhabana*, 4 *Carnan*, 5 *Manambis*, 6 *Sabe*, 7 *Are*; the Royal Seats of so many several Kingdoms, and therefore honoured by *Proton* with the Title of *Regie*. Then there are, 1 *Maecusinos*, 2 *Meara*, 3 *Negara*, 4 *Sabatana*, 5 *Alapha*, and 6 *Sabar*, which he called *Metropoles*; as being the head-Cities of some several Nations. Amongst the Ports he reckoneth, 1 *Soffimus*, 2 *Tralles*, 3 *Treos*, 4 *Cryptus*, 5 *Isamor*, and 6 *Mofcha*. Amongst the most noted Empories or Towns of traffick, 1 *Musfa*, 2 *Oceanus*, 3 *Arabia*, 4 *Cane*. Besides which there are some which do preserve the memory of their first Plantations, as 1 *Saphia*, upon the *Persian Gulf*, so from *Saba*, the first Son of *Chus*. 2 *Rhegama*, or *Regina* (as the Greek Copies of *Proton* have it) so named from *Regina* or *Raana* the sixth Son; on the same Gulf also. 3 *Sabe*, on the Shores of the Red Sea. And 4 *Sabe Regia*, more within the Land, so named from *Sheba* the eldest Son of the same *Chus*, from which the rich and potent Nation of the *Sabaens* are to be derived. Out of all which, and many others by him that follow. 1 *Musfa*, a noted Port on the entrance of the Red Sea, frequented anciently by the *Ethiopian* and *Egyptian* Merchants: to whose laded their Ships with this Country, bringing in, in exchange thereof, Saffron, Corn, Wine, Ointments, Purple Dyes, &c. 2 *Sabe*, the Regal Seat of the Kings of the *Sabaens*, particularly of that Queen so memorized in holy Scripture; called in the Old Testament the Queen of *Sheba*, from her Country and place of dwelling; in the New Testament the Queen of the South, because of the Southern situation of it in respect of *Judaea*: said there to come from the furthest parts of the World, because there was no part of the World which lay South to the Country of the *Sabaens*, over which she reigned. Situate on a little Mountain, affirmed by *Agatharides* to be *more nobilis* *et* *magis* *Agathar*, the most beautiful by far in all *Arabia*, and the Metropolis of the rich and potent

Nation of the *Sabaens*: rich in all the excellencies of Nature, especially in *Frankincense*, a Gum peculiar to them only, and growing here in a Wood of about 100 miles long, and so broad; not gathered but in the Spring and Autumn, nor then without great care, and many ceremonies. The Country hereabouts from hence called *Thursira*, and this sweet Gum appropriated solely to it. *Sabai Arabum propter thura clarissimi*, as we find in *Pliny*; *Solis est thura virga Sabæis*, as it is in *Virgil*; and finally, --- *Thursira*, *Judeica Sabæis*, as *Sabos*, in the *Argonauicks of Valerius Flaccus*. It was called also *Mariaba*, and by that name occurth in some ancient Writers. 3 *Saphar*, more towards the *Persian Gulf*, on the South-side of the Mountain *Climax*, the chief City of the *Homerite*; adorned in times of Christianity with a beautiful Temple. 4 *Sabatana*, or *Sabota*; as *Pliny* calleth it, seated about the midst of the Country, on the top of an high and lofty Hill, from whence it had a gallant prospect on the Fields adjoining: anciently large and populous, and strongly fortified, having no fewer than 60 Temples within the Walls; the principal consecrated unto *Sabai*, the God of their Nation, to whom they offered the Tythe of their *Frankincense*, *ubi decimus Deco quem Sabini vocant, mensura non pondere capunt Sacerdotes*, as we read in *Pliny*.

But the chief and almost all the rest being grown out of knowledge, there have risen in their rooms, 1 *Egra*, on the Shores of the Red Sea, near the Bay called *Sinus Eulves*; *Agia*, by *Proton* called *Agia*, by the *Arabians* themselves; *Agia*: the Port-Town to *Medina*, from which about three days Journey distant, 2 *Jatrib*, or *Jatrib*, in the way betwixt *Agia* & *Medina*, the birth-place of *Mahomet*; by whom fortified with a mud-wall, as his place of retreat in the first beginning of his Forraunes. 5 *Medina*, commonly called *Medina Talmabi*, corruptly for *Medina thababi*, that is to say, the City of the Prophet, so called from the Sepulchre of *Mahomet*, that vile Impostor, which is there to be seen; although not in such an Iron Collar, nor drawn up to the roof of the Temple by virtue of an *Adamant* there placed, as some deliver. The Town situate in a desolate and barren place, bordering on *Arabia Petraea*; but of great Trade, rich, and well inhabited: the Sepulchre of that false Prophet drawing thither a continual resort of Pilgrims. The Temple gorgeous, having 3000 Lamps in it, which burn continually. The Sepulchre or Tomb enclosed with an Iron Grate, but of no magnificence or beauty: covered with a Carpet of green Velvet, which is sent hither yearly by the *Grand Signior*; the old one being taken off, and cut into innumerable shreds or pieces, and sold for Relicks by the Priests (so such as come in Pilgrimage thither) to their great enriching. 4 *Cufa*, the ordinary Residence of the first *Caliphs*, till the removing of the Imperial Seat to *Damasus* in *Syria*; and after that the usual place of meeting for consultation in Affairs of State, relating to the peace of this Country, and the Common Interest of this People; as memorable for the Sepulchre of *Moriss Hali*, the Progenitor of the *Persian Sophies*, as *Medina* is for that of *Mahomet*. 5 *Meccha*, supposed to be the *Mechara* of *Proton*, situate in the like barren Soil, not far from *Medina*, but of far greater refore and traffick: the whole wealth in a manner of this Country, together with the Commodities of *Persia* and *India*, being first brought hither; and from hence on Camels backs transported unto *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, and other parts of the *Turkish Empire*. Unwalled, and either for that cause, or for concealment of their popperies for the eyes of Christians, it is made death for any Christian to come within five miles of it. Utterly destitute of water, but what they keep in Cisterns, from one show of salt

to another, or else brought thither with great charge; otherwise pleasantly seated, rich, and containing about 6000 Families: Every year visited with three Caravans, or Troops of Merchants and Pilgrims, from *India*, *Damascus*, and *Grand Cairo*; who having done their business and devotions there, go afterwards in Pilgrimage to *Medina* also, to the great enriching of both places. 6 *Ziden*, the Haven-Town to *Mecca*, from which distant about 40 miles, situate on the *Red Sea*, in a sandy soil, unwall'd, and much expost to wind and weather; but wealthy, well-built, and of great resort. 7 *Zebir*, now the Metropolis of the Country, situate about half a days Journey from the *Red Sea*, in a large plain, between two Mountains; a Riveret of the same name passing by it: well-traded for Sugars, Spice and Fruits: the ordinary Residence of the *Turkish Beglerbeg*, by whom taken not long after *Eden*, *Elzor*, a Port Town of this Country, and the only Town where the Christians are suffered to inhabit. 8 *Aden*, on the very entrance of the *Red Sea*, near the Straights called *Babel Mandel*; supposed by some to be the *Madage* of *Protonomy*, but more agreeing in situation with the famous Empory by him called *Arabia*. The fairest Town of the whole Peninsula, of great strength, both by Art and Nature: well-traded, and well-fortified, having a large capacious Haven, seldom without good store of Shipping, and containing to the number of six thousand persons. Once a distinct Kingdom of it self, but treacherously surprized by the *Turks*, Anno 1538. and therewith all the rest of the Country: was made afterwards the Seat of a *Turkish Beglerbeg*, under whom, and him of *Zebir*, are supposed to be no fewer than 3000 *Timariots*. 10 *Oran*, the Lock and Key of the Southern Ocean. 11 *Thema*, or *Theman*, the same, I take it, which our later Travellers call *Zeman*, situate more within the Land: affirmed by *Benjamin the Jew*, surnamed *Tundelensis*, to be a Town of 15 miles square, but to have within the Walls thereof great quantity of Ground for Tillage. 12 *Zarval*, a retiring place of the *Caliphs*, when they lived in this Country. 13 *Hor*, on the point or Promontory called *Chorodemu*, a Garrison not long since of the Kings of *Ormu*. 14 *Alukibat*, on the *Persian Gulf* near the point of Land called *Cape Rozelgate*: opposite to *Surrat* in the *East-India*, and possessed by the *Portugals*, who have fortified it with a well-built Castle, for defence of their Ships and Frigots which frequent those Seas. Of no great note till the taking of *Ormu* by the *Persians*, many of the Inhabitants whereof were since settled here. Of the Affairs of this Country we shall speak anon; having first took a brief view of the Islands which belong unto it.

4 THE ARABICK ISLANDS.

THE ISLANDS which lie round about the Shores of *Arabia Felix*, and have been anciently accounted as parts thereof, are dispersed either in the 1 *Red Sea*, 2 *Southern Seas*; or, 3 the Gulf of *Persia*.

I. THE *RED SEA* (called also by the Ancients *Sinus Arabicus*, and now *Golfo di Mecca*) is that part or branch of the Southern Ocean, which interposeth it self betwixt *Aegypt* on the West; *Arabia Felix*, and some parts of *Peiræa*, on the East; the North-East bound of it touching upon *Idumea*, or the Coast of *Edom*. Extended in length from the Town of *Sues*, anciently called *Arifno*, in the bottom of it, to the Straights of *Babel Mandel*, where it openeth into the Southern Ocean, for the space of one thousand and four hundred miles: in breadth, for the most part, but one hundred, but in

some places almost two; the Streights themselves not being above a mile and an half, anciently chained by the Kings of *Aegypt*, as is said by *Strabo*; but now left open by the *Turks*, who is Lord hereof. A violent and iniquit Sea, full of Sands and Shelves; inasmuch as they who pass in and out, are fain to make use of Pilots which dwell thereabouts, and are experienced in the channel. Sufficiently famous in all times and Stories, for the miraculous passage of the Children of *Israel*, and the drowning *Pharaoh* King of *Aegypt*.

It took the name of the *Red Sea*, as some conceived, from the redness of the Sands; as others have delivered, from the redness of the Waters: but latter observations have discovered the weakness and absurdity of these *Etymologies*; the Sea and Sands being coloured here in other places. By the *Græcians* it was called *Erythraum*, which in that Tongue signifieth *Red* also, not from the colour either of the Sands or Waters, but from one *Erythras*, supposed to be the Son of *Perfius* and *Andromeda*, who commanded the Eastern forces hereof. And these come nearer to the mark than the others did. For the truth is, it was originally called the Sea of *Edom*, because it took beginning on the Coasts of that Country: which word in the Hebrew signifying *Red*, as appeareth *Gen. 25. 30.* first given as a nick-name to *Esfau*, and from him afterwards to *Mount Seir*, or the Land of *Edom*, *Gen. 36. 31.* was by the *Greeks* rendered *Erythraum*, and *Mare Rubrum* by the *Latins*. Whence the name of the *Red Sea* became known to all, but the reason of the name to few.

Of the great traffique which was anciently driven up this Sea, we shall speak hereafter, when we are in *Aegypt*, on the other side of it. Look we now on the Islands which belong to *Arabia*, as they all generally do, known in the times of *Protonomy* by the names of 1 *Adami*, 2 *Abi*, 3 *Are*, 4 *Cardamine*, 5 *Combita*, 6 *Danumum*, 7 *Hieracum*, or the Isle of *Hanks*, 8 *Madian*, 9 *Polybi*, 10 *Socrati*, 11 *Timagis*, and 12 *Zygema*. But by what names now called, and of what note then, is a thing I do doubtful, that I dare not offer a conjecture. Late Travellers report almost all of them to be small, desolate, or but meanly inhabited, described by them under other names. One there is of indifferent largeness, said to be an hundred twenty and five miles long, though but twelve broad, called *Dalacqua*; with a City in it of that name, where they gather Pearls. 2 Then there is *Camaran*, most extremely hot, of most note for the many spoils there made by the *Portugals*. 3 *Xamoa*, the Earth whereof is said to be *Red* (perhaps to countenance the vulgar Tradition, of calling this the *Red Sea* from the colour of the Sands or Shores) and the King a *Moor*. 4 The *Samaritan Islands*, spoken of by *Scaliger*, inhabited by a remainder of that people, who as soon as they saw any Stranger land upon their Coasts, would most religiously desire him not to touch them. Such other Islands as lie upon the opposite Shores, and seem to appertain unto *Æthiopia* shall find their place in our Description of the *African* Islands.

II. THE SOUTHERN OCEAN, comprehendeth that vast body of Waters, which from the Eastern Banks of both *Æthiopia's*, coast along on the South of *Arabia Felix*, and so directly Eastward, to the furthest *India*: in this regard called by some Writers *Oceanus Indicus*, by others *Mare Austral*, from the situation; and by some also *Mare Rubrum*, or the *Red-Sea*, from *Erythras* a great King (as they suppose) reigning hereabouts, and giving name not only to the *Red-Sea* (or Gulf of *Arabia*) strictly and specially so called, but to all the Sea coasts also, from the opening of the Bay of *Arabia*, to the Coasts of *India*, by them called *Mare Erythraum*. In

In this vast Ocean *Protonomy* placeth many Islands which belong to *Arabia*, but of little note, viz. two Islands by the name of *Insula Agathoolis*. 2 Three more by the name of *Cocconati*. 3 *Dioforis*, by *Pliny* called *Disfurnis*, with a City of the same name in it. 4 Seven others in the Bay called *Sinus Sachalites*, by the name of *Zembi*. 5 *Organa*, by *Strabo* called *Tyrinna*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *Erythras* before-mentioned, by a great Hill planted with Trees. 6 *Serapia*, by *Ammianus Marcellinus* called *Turgana*, famed for a Temple of *Serapis*, the *Egyptian* Idol. None of them now of any credit, nor formerly of any great note, the two last excepted.

III. On the East-side of *Arabia Felix*, betwixt it and *Persia*, lieth another large Arm of the Southern Ocean, anciently called *Sinus Persicus*, or the Bay of *Persia*, now *Golfo di Elkatifis*. A turbulent and unruly Sea, the Southern Ocean breaking in at the one end, and the River *Euphrates* at the other: the continual combating or clashing of which two great waters, make it so unquiet. *Protonomy* placeth in this Bay (but as parts or members of *Arabia*) 1 *Tylus*, which *Arianus* sets at the mouth of *Euphrates*, *Solimus* in the *Indian* Seas, affirming it to be well stored with Vines and Olives: another of this name being placed by *Theophrastus* in the Bay of *Arabia* (but probably the place mistaken) affording good Materials for Shipping. 2 *Apfana*. 3 *Thav*, 4 *Ichara*; of which nothing memorable. To these some late Travellers have adjoined two others, if not to say, 5 *Bayen*, and 6 *Gonfar*, where they take the best Pearls in the world, in beds of Oysters. Other Islands of this Bay (if any) belong to *Persia*; where, if occasion so require, we shall speak more of them.

To return therefore to the main Land of *Arabia Felix*, the first Inhabitants thereof were the Sons of *Chus*, and the Families which they brought with them. Their memories preserved in the names of some of the chief Towns and Nations, till the days of *Pliny*, *Protonomy*, and some other of the ancient Writers. Divided afterwards into the several Tribes or Septs of the *Cassanites*, *Cinadopolites*, *Homerites*, *Adramites*, *Elasari*, *Sachalites*, *Anarites*, *Geraï*, *Agai*, *Sabei*, *Minaï*, *Leamites*, *Cattabani*, *Abuceni*, and divers others: each governed separately and apart by their several Chiefs; whom they honoured as in other places, with the name of Kings. One of which spoken of by *Justin*, named *Hieratimus*, is said to be the Father of 500 Children. Easie to have been overcome, because so divided, if any potent Neighbour had attempted the Conquest of them: as it is wondrous strange they did not, considering the richness of the Country, and the many temptations which they had to invite them to it. More worthily deserving the name of *Felix*, in that never conquered, than in all the other *Rarities* and Delights thereof. By *Alexander* once designed for the Seat of his Empire, who probably had endeavoured the Conquest of it, having finished his War against the *Persians*, had he not died in *Babylon* at his coming back. Nor did the *Romans* ever extend their Empire beyond *Petræa*, though once *Augustus* did attempt it; employing in that Action *Largus*, his Lieutenant in *Aegypt*: one *Samus* being then King of those parts which lay nearest to him. The *Romans* at their first entry found no resistance: but when by the extraordinary heat of the air, and drinking salt waters, they began to grow sickly and diseased, the *Arabians* fell lustily upon them, and made them return back both with loss and shame. After this nothing done by the *Romans*, to disturb their quiet; nor much done by the Christians to advance their glories: the whole divided

into almost as many Religions, as Principalities and Eldkates. Most of them Gentiles, but circumcised, as the *Ismaelites*, and other *Arabians* had been of old; many Jews intermingled with them, and some store of Christians, but those divided also into Sects and Factions. And in this state it stood, when *Mahomet* first began to obtrude his blasphemous doctrine. By birth of *Jahrip*, an obscure Village then not far from *Medina*: his Father called *Abdalla*, an idolatrous Pagan; his Mother named *Hemima*, as perverse a *Jewess*. Deprived of both his Parents when but two years old, he was left unto the care of an Uncle: who not able to give him education, nor willing to beat the charge to keep him longer, sold him at sixteen years of age to the *Ismaelites*; by whom exposed to sale in the open Markets, he was brought by one *Abdalmulissif*, a wealthy Merchant. By him employed at first in Drudgery, and servile Offices, till noting his great wit, and fitness for better Services, he at last used him as his Factor: sending him with his Camels and Loads of Merchandise into *Syria*, *Persia*, *Aegypt*, and other places, wherein he did behave himself with such deservity, that he much encreased his Master's wealth, and his own estimation. Of person he is said to be low, and withal scald-headed; but otherwise comely to the eye, and of good aspect. Much troubled with the Falling Sickness, which infirmity he made good use of afterwards, affirming that those Fits were nothing but heavenly Raptures, in which he did converse with the Angel *Gabriel*. He is said to have been also well skilled in Magic; by which he taught a white Pidgeon to feed at his ear, which gave out to be the *H. Choft*, by whom he was instructed in the Law which he was to publish: but this not till afterwards. By Sorceries, conjuncts of *Magick*, and the great knowledge which he had in his Master's business, he gained so far on the affections of his Mistress, that on the death of *Abdalmulissif*, she made him her Husband. Possessed of all his Master's Wealth, he affected ease: and being till then of no Religion or at best a Pagan; he began to hearken unto *Sergius*, a *Nestorian* Monk: who flung out of *Syria* for fear of punishment (the Heretics of *Nestorius* being newly both revived and censured) came into *Arabia*; where he found entertainment in the House of *Abdalmulissif*, him a fit Instrument for the Devil to work on, he began to entertain the thoughts of hammering out a new Religion which might unite all Parties in some common Principles, and bring the *Christians*, *Jews*, and *Gentiles* (into which the World was then divided) under one Profession. Resolved on this, he retired himself unto a Cave not far from *Mecca*, as if he there attended nothing but Meditations: *Sergius* in the mean time sounding in the ears of the People, both his Parts and Piety. The People being thus prepared to behold the *Pagan*, out comes the principal Actor with some parts of his *Alcoran* (pleasing enough to sensual minds) which he professed to have received from the Angel *Gabriel*. And finding that this edified to his expectations, he next proclaimed Liberty to all Slaves and Servants, as a thing commanded him by God, by whom the Natural Liberty of Mankind was most dearly tendered: which drew unto him such a rabble of unruly people, that without fear or opposition, he dispersed his Doctrines, reducing them at last to a Book or Method.

The Book of this Religion he calleth the *Alcoran*, that is to say, the Collection of Precepts: the Original whereof they feign to be written on a Table which is kept in Heaven, and the Copy oft brought to *Mahomet* by the Angel *Gabriel*. A Book so highly revered by the *Mahometans*, that they writ: upon the Cover

- 947 30 *Egypt, Palestine*, with great part of *Syria* and *Mesopotamia*. 12.
- 657 40 *Osman*, the third of *Mahomet's* Great Captains, Husband of *Zeineb*, his second Daughter; succeeded under that pretence, and added all *Barbery* to his Empire. Distressed by the Faction of *Hali*, and besieged in his own house, he flew himself in the eighty seventh year of his Age, and the tenth of his Reign.
- 660 43 *Hadi*, the Kinsman and next Heir of *Mahomet*; and the husband of *Fatime* his eldest Daughter, succeeded on the death of *Osman*: murdered by the procurement of *Muhavias*, near *Cufa*, in *Arabia Felix*.
- 681 64 *Muhavias*, having murdered *Hadi*; his Son *Hajem*, or *Osman*, and eleven of the Sons of that *Hajem*, the twelfth only escaping with life (from whom descended the Family of the *Alavies*, and the *Persian Sophies*) assumed the Government as rightful Successor to *Osman*, whose Widow, the Daughter of *Mahomet*, he had took to Wife. He conquered *Rhodes*, *Cyprus*, and a great part of *Asia Minor*, and was the Founder of the Family of *Aben Humeia*.
- 685 68 *Gizid*, the Son of *Mahuvias*, more skill in Poetry than in Arms.
- 707 90 *Habadda* and *Marwan*, Competitors for the Supreme Dignity; but carried at last by *Marwan*.
- 716 99 *Abimelech*, the Son of *Marwan*, established the begun Conquests of *Armenia*, and *Mesopotamia*. 22.
- 719 102 *Ulidor Ulit*, under whom the *Saracens* or *Moors* first conquered *Spain*. 9.
- 721 104 *Zuleimin*, Brother to *Ulit*, whose Captain *Mulfamus* besieged *Constantinople*, till his Ships were burnt, and his Men consumed with the Plague. 3.
- 725 107 *Homar*, or *Haumar* II. Son of *Ulidor Ulit*. 2.
- 743 125 *Isid*, or *Gizid* II. the brother of *Haumar*, with whom during his life he was joint Caliph, and after his decease enjoyed it wholly to himself.
- 744 126 *Eusid*, by some called *Ischam*, in whose time *Charles Martel* made such havock of the *Moors* in *France*, Anno 734. their General then named *Aberamen*. 18.
- 745 127 *Gizid* III. the son of *Gizid* the second.
- 752 134 *Hyez*, by some called *Ibrahim*, the brother of *Gizid* the third, slain by *Marwan*.
- 756 138 *Marwan* II. the last of the House of *Ben-humeyr*, slain by *Abdalla*, of the house of *Fatime* and *Hali*.
- 777 156 21 *Abdalla*, of the house of *Alavies* or *Alabeci*, descended from *Hali* and *Fatime*, the eldest daughter of *Mahomet*; called also the Family of *Abar*, because of their descent from *Abar* the Uncle of *Mahomet*, and perhaps Father unto *Hali*.
- 777 156 21 *Abdalla* II. surnamed *Bugiafer*, or *Abugefer*, who built the City of *Bagdet*, made from that time the constant seat of his Successors till their fatal period.
- 777 156 21 *Mahadi*. 9.
- 786 168 22 *Musa*, or *Mosjes*. 1.
- 787 169 23 *Aron*, or *Arachid*, who compelled *Irene* Empress of *Constantinople*, to pay him tribute. 23.
- 810 193 24 *Mahamad*, or *Mahomet* III.
- 825 198 25 *Abdalla* III. who took and spoiled *Cyrene*, and overthrew the *Greeks*; he also spoiled *Sicilia*, *Sardinia*, and *Corfica*. 17.
- 832 215 26 *Mahomet* IV. wasted *Italy*, burnt the Suburbs of *Rome*, and harried the forenamed Islands. 40.
- Others reckon these Caliphs to have succeeded *Mahomet* the second.
- 815 198 25 *Mamon*. 12.
- 827 210 26 *Mutezam*. 8.
- 835 218 27 *Wack*. 4.
- 839 222 28 *Mahucal*. 12.
- 851 234 29 *Momacer*. 1.
- 852 352 30 *Abul Hanet*. 6.
- 858 241 31 *Almazet*. 4.
- 863 245 39 *Motadi Bila*. 7.
- After whose death, the *Egyptians* withdrew themselves from their obedience due to the *Babylonian* Caliph, and chose one of their own, to whom all the *Arabians*, and those of the *Mahumetan* Religion, in *Africa* and *Europe*, submitted themselves. Of the *Egyptian* Caliphs, when we come into that Country. Take now with you the names only of the *Syrian* and *Babylonian* Caliphs; for story of them I find little or none, the power being totally in the hands of the *Sultans* of the several Provinces, and nothing left unto the Caliphs but an airy title, the shadow of that mighty Tree, which formerly had spread itself over most part of the World.
- The *Babylonian* Caliphs after the division.
- A.C. A.H.
- 870 251 1 *Mutemah*. 21.
- 891 273 2 *Mutezad*. 8.
- 897 281 3 *Muchetapi*. 8.
- 907 389 4 *Muchtedar*. 24.
- 931 313 5 *Elkgher*. 1.
- 932 314 6 *Ratze*. 7.
- 939 321 7 *Mutade*. 4.
- 943 325 8 *Mustapha*. 2.
- 947 324 9 *Mavin*, and *Tain*. 44.
- 989 361 10 *Kadar*. 41.
- 1030 412 11 *Kaim*. 5.
- 1035 417 12 *Mutadi*. 60.
- 1095 477 13 *Mustetaher*. 22.
- 1117 499 14 *Mustafschad*. 18.
- 1135 517 15 *Raschid*. 25.
- 1160 542 16 *Musteneged*. 9.
- 1169 551 17 *Mustaki*. 10.
- 1179 561 18 *Narzi*. 39.
- 1218 597 19 *Taber*.
- 20 *Mustammar*.
- 1255 638 21 *Mustammar*, the last Caliph, or High Priest of the *Saracens* of *Bagdet*, or *Babylon*, living in the account of a Prince or Emperor; or looked on as the Supreme Lord of the *Saracen* Empire: starved in his Castle of *Bagdet*, and his whole posterity rooted out by *Alan*, or *Haslon* the *Tartar*, in the first year of his reign. Yet there is still remaining a carcass of the old body, one whom they call *Caliph*, at whose hands the neighbour Princes use to receive their *Diadems* and *Regalities*; for so we find that *Solyman* the magnificent after his conquest of *Chalda*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Affrica*, to have been by one of these poor titular *Caliphs*, Crowned King of *Babylon*, Anno 1513.
- This unwieldy body of the *Saracen* Empire, having thus two heads, began apparently to decline: losing to the Kings of *Orus* and *Nagawer*, a great part of *Spain*; to the *Genoise*, *Sardinia*, and *Corfica*; to the *Norman*, *Naples*, and *Sicily*; and finally most of their Empire, with their very names, to the *Turks* and *Tartars*. For *Alan*, or *Haslon*, a *Tartarian* Captain, starved *Mustammar* the *Babylonian* Caliph, in his Tower of *Bagdet*, and rooted out all his Posterity, (as before was said:) and *Sarracon* the first *Turkish* Caliph of *Egypt*, brained the last *Egyptian* Caliph with his *Hoifemans* Mace; leaving not one of Issue or Kindred surviving. The office of the *Caliphs* (as to matters which concern their irreligion, and the supreme determination of the doubts and controversies which occur therein) being now executed in the *Turks* Dominion, by the *Musfy*, or Chief Priest of the *Turkish* *Mahometans*.
- As *Mars* shewed himself a friend unto those *Saracens*, in their wars and triumphs; so also did *Phabus* pour down no less *Cœlestiall* Influence, on such as addicted themselves to Scholarship. *Bagdet* in *Chalda*, *Cairoan*, *Fefs*, *Morocco*, in *Barbary*, and *Corduba* in *Spain*, were their Universities: out of which came the Philosophers, *Avicene*, and *Averroes*; the Physicians, *Rhasis*, and *Mosius*; the Geographers, *Leo* and *Abisfada*; and almost all the *Lexicaries* and profound Writers, (as *Hali*, *Algazel*, *Alhamecar*, &c.) in *Astronomy*, from whom a great part of our *Astronomical* and *Astrological* terms are borrowed.
- There is now no Kingdom, Island, or Province which acknowledgeth the Empire of the *Saracens*, but the Kingdom of *Fefs* and *Morocco* only: *Arabia* it self, the very first seat of their power, acknowledging a subjection to the *Turkish* Empire. For first *Persia*, and *Deserta*, being subdued by the *Turks*, when they conquered *Persia*, or otherwise following the fortunes of the present Victor, were afterwards accounted of as subject unto the *Mamlucks* of *Egypt*, who out of that Country and all *Syria*, had by degrees dislized the *Selencian* Family. And as the Vassals of that Crown, though but Subjects at will, they more molested *Selimus* in his march towards *Egypt*, by falling on his Rear, and terrifying him with their night-Alarms, than all the Forces of the *Mamlucks*, in the field against him. But *Egypt* being subdued, and the *Mamlucks* utterly destroyed, some of their Chiefs being gained by money, and the rest by promise of preferment; the whole Nation of these wild *Arabs* swore allegiance to him: continuing in account as subject unto his Successors, but in effect doing what they list; governed as formerly by the Chiefs of their several *Clannes*, and in their Robberies taking no more notice of the *Turk* than they do of the *Christians*. And as for *Felix*, it continued also in a free condition, in respect of any foreign power; till of late times the *Turks* and *Portugals* entrenched upon them. For in the year 1538. *Solyman Bassa*, Admiral of the *Turkish* Fleet against the *Portugals*, who had diverted the trade of the *Red Sea*, and otherwise given offence to *Solyman* the magnificent, by aiding the *Persians*, went with a strong Army to take possession. But being unable to effect it, at his coming back he called in at *Aden*, one of the best traded Ports of *Arabia Felix*, invited the King thereof aboard, most treacherously hanged him, and surprized the City. The like he also did to the King of *Ziber*, the Port Town to *Mecca*: and by that means got possession of all the Coasts of this Country, bordering on the *Red Sea*, or *Masters*, of which the *Turks* still continue *Persian* Gulf, of no power at all; not suffered to travel up and down without a *Passe*, from some of the *Arabian* Chiefs; or if they do, in danger to be set upon by which lie next unto the life of *Ormus*, made one Kingdom with it; but the Kings originally of this Country, by whom the City of *Ormus* was first builded: and so continued till the taking of *Ormus* by the *Portugals*, Anno 1622. who since the taking of that Isle by the King of *Persia*, hold *Musghat*, and some other pieces upon this Continent. The residue of the Country, cantoned amongst a company of petit Princes, as in former times; before ambition taught them to devour one another.
- And so much for *ARABIA*.

to have been by one of these poor titular *Caliphs*, Crowned King of *Babylon*, Anno 1513.

This unwieldy body of the *Saracen* Empire, having thus two heads, began apparently to decline: losing to the Kings of *Orus* and *Nagawer*, a great part of *Spain*; to the *Genoise*, *Sardinia*, and *Corfica*; to the *Norman*, *Naples*, and *Sicily*; and finally most of their Empire, with their very names, to the *Turks* and *Tartars*. For *Alan*, or *Haslon*, a *Tartarian* Captain, starved *Mustammar* the *Babylonian* Caliph, in his Tower of *Bagdet*, and rooted out all his Posterity, (as before was said:) and *Sarracon* the first *Turkish* Caliph of *Egypt*, brained the last *Egyptian* Caliph with his *Hoifemans* Mace; leaving not one of Issue or Kindred surviving. The office of the *Caliphs* (as to matters which concern their irreligion, and the supreme determination of the doubts and controversies which occur therein) being now executed in the *Turks* Dominion, by the *Musfy*, or Chief Priest of the *Turkish* *Mahometans*.

As *Mars* shewed himself a friend unto those *Saracens*, in their wars and triumphs; so also did *Phabus* pour down no less *Cœlestiall* Influence, on such as addicted themselves to Scholarship. *Bagdet* in *Chalda*, *Cairoan*, *Fefs*, *Morocco*, in *Barbary*, and *Corduba* in *Spain*, were their Universities: out of which came the Philosophers, *Avicene*, and *Averroes*; the Physicians, *Rhasis*, and *Mosius*; the Geographers, *Leo* and *Abisfada*; and almost all the *Lexicaries* and profound Writers, (as *Hali*, *Algazel*, *Alhamecar*, &c.) in *Astronomy*, from whom a great part of our *Astronomical* and *Astrological* terms are borrowed.

There is now no Kingdom, Island, or Province which acknowledgeth the Empire of the *Saracens*, but the Kingdom of *Fefs* and *Morocco* only: *Arabia* it self, the very first seat of their power, acknowledging a subjection to the *Turkish* Empire. For first *Persia*, and *Deserta*, being subdued by the *Turks*, when they conquered *Persia*, or otherwise following the fortunes of the present Victor, were afterwards accounted of as subject unto the *Mamlucks* of *Egypt*, who out of that Country and all *Syria*, had by degrees dislized the *Selencian* Family. And as the Vassals of that Crown, though but Subjects at will, they more molested *Selimus* in his march towards *Egypt*, by falling on his Rear, and terrifying him with their night-Alarms, than all the Forces of the *Mamlucks*, in the field against him. But *Egypt* being subdued, and the *Mamlucks* utterly destroyed, some of their Chiefs being gained by money, and the rest by promise of preferment; the whole Nation of these wild *Arabs* swore allegiance to him: continuing in account as subject unto his Successors, but in effect doing what they list; governed as formerly by the Chiefs of their several *Clannes*, and in their Robberies taking no more notice of the *Turk* than they do of the *Christians*. And as for *Felix*, it continued also in a free condition, in respect of any foreign power; till of late times the *Turks* and *Portugals* entrenched upon them. For in the year 1538. *Solyman Bassa*, Admiral of the *Turkish* Fleet against the *Portugals*, who had diverted the trade of the *Red Sea*, and otherwise given offence to *Solyman* the magnificent, by aiding the *Persians*, went with a strong Army to take possession. But being unable to effect it, at his coming back he called in at *Aden*, one of the best traded Ports of *Arabia Felix*, invited the King thereof aboard, most treacherously hanged him, and surprized the City. The like he also did to the King of *Ziber*, the Port Town to *Mecca*: and by that means got possession of all the Coasts of this Country, bordering on the *Red Sea*, or *Masters*, of which the *Turks* still continue *Persian* Gulf, of no power at all; not suffered to travel up and down without a *Passe*, from some of the *Arabian* Chiefs; or if they do, in danger to be set upon by which lie next unto the life of *Ormus*, made one Kingdom with it; but the Kings originally of this Country, by whom the City of *Ormus* was first builded: and so continued till the taking of *Ormus* by the *Portugals*, Anno 1622. who since the taking of that Isle by the King of *Persia*, hold *Musghat*, and some other pieces upon this Continent. The residue of the Country, cantoned amongst a company of petit Princes, as in former times; before ambition taught them to devour one another.

And so much for *ARABIA*.

N n n n

CHALDEA

6 CHALDEA. 7 ASSYRIA. 8 MESOPOTAMIA.

THese Provinces, which properly and originally constituted the Assyrian Empire, I have joyned together in the Title, because united in the Story and Affairs thereof; though severally to be considered in the Description and Chorography of them.

6 CHALDEA.

CHALDEA is bounded on the East, with *Susiana*, a Province of *Persia*; on the West, with *Arabia Deserta*; on the North, with *Mesopotamia*; and on the South, with the *Persian Bay*, and the rest of *Deserta*. Originally called *Chesedim* from *Chesed* the fourth Son of *Nachor*, the brother of *Abraham*. *Chesed quoque quartus est, à quo Chesedim, id est, Chaldei postea vocati sunt*, as *St. Hierome* hath it. But why the *Chaldeans* should derive their name from *Chesed*, being a People long before *Chesed's* birth, I am not able to determine: unless he taught them the first Principles of the Art of *Astronomy*; or was the Author of some signal benefit unto them, which we know not of. It was called afterwards *Babylonia*, from *Babylon* the chief City of it; and at this day by *Bellonius*, *Assyria*; by the *Arabians*, *Keldan*; by the *Turks*, *Cudifan*.

But the name of *Chaldea* sometimes went beyond those bounds, taking in some part also of *Mesopotamia*, as appeareth by that passage of *St. Stephen*, saying, *Acts 7. 2, 3, 4.* That the *God of glory appeared to our Father Abraham*, when he was in *Mesopotamia*, before he dwelt in *Charran*; and said unto him, *Get thee out of this Country, and from thy Kindred, and come into the land which I shall shew thee. Then he came out of the Land of the Chaldees, and dwelt in Charran, &c.* Where clearly that part of *Mesopotamia*, which lay next unto *Assyria*, where then *Abraham* was, is included under the name of *Chaldea*, or the Land of the *Chaldees*. Which I desire the Reader to take notice of, because I must make use of this observation in another place.

The Country by *Herodotus* said to be so fruitful, that it yielded ordinarily two hundred, and in some places three hundred fold; the blades of Wheat and Barley being (as he affirmeth) four fingers broad. By *Pliny* it is said of the *Babylonians*, that they mowed their Corn twice, and seeded it a third time, or else it would be nothing but blades: and yet so, that the work of the Land yielded fifty, and their best an hundred-fold increase. Nor is the nature of the soil so altered in long tract of time, but that (as late Travellers have observed) it would in all likelihood attain to its first fertility; if it were ordered with like care and diligence, as in former times. But what need more be said as to the natural fruitfulness and delights of this Country, than that it pleased God almighty to make choice of some part hereof for

the *Terrestrial Paradise* or *Garden of Eden*, in which he placed our Father *Adam*, at his first Creation. For there that *Paradise*, by men both skilled in Divinity and Geography, is affirmed to have stood. Yet amongst all sorts of Writers we find different opinions. Some make *Paradise* to be a place of pleasure; and the four Rivers to be the four Cardinal Vertues; but these Allegories on the Scripture are unwarrantable. Others place it in the air, under the Circle of the Moon; and tell us that the four Rivers in the Scriptures mentioned, fall down from thence, and running all under the Ocean, rise up again in those places where they are now found: but this is so vain a foppery, that I will not honour it with a confutation. Such as make *Paradise* local, are divided also into three ranks (for I omit the rest) whereof some place it under the *Æquator*; but this agreeth not with the bounds prescribed by the Holy Ghost. Some conceive the four Rivers to be *Tigris*, *Euphrates*, *Nilus* and *Ganges*; and that *Paradise* was the whole world; but this cannot be: for then when *Adam* was driven out of *Paradise*, it must follow that he was driven out of the world, which were most absurd. Those of the soundest judgments place it here, in an Island which is made by the Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, and some branches running from them both: the uppermost of which is called *Pison*, (falsely rendered *Ganges*) which watereth the Land of *Havilah*, or that part of the Land of *Havilah*, which is now called *Chistan*, or *Susiana*, a Province of *Persia*; and the lowermost is named *Gibon*, (improperly by some translated *Nilus*) which compasseth the East parts of *Arabia Parva*, by the *Septuagint* for the reasons above mentioned, rendered *Ethiopia*. And this agreeth both with the position of this Country, and the course of those Rivers. For that *Tigris* and *Euphrates* (which the *Hebrew* Text called *Hiddekel* and *Perath*) do here joyn their streams, is confessed on all sides. Then as for *Pison*, it is no other than that River by *Ptolemy*, called *Basilia*, or *Regius*; by *Curtius* more nearly *Piso-Tigris*, or *Pasi-Tigris*. *Perveni ad fuvium, Pasi-Tigris incolæ vocant*, as his own words are. A little stream which watereth the Land of *Havilah*, or the Country of the *Chenelei*, or *Chauslei*, or *Chaudates*, (for by these several names they are called amongst the Ancients, who place them betwixt the *Babylonians*, and the *Nabatheans* and *Arabian* people) pourth it self into the *Tigris*, and falls together with it into the Gulf of *Persia*. And finally for *Gibon*, by *Ptolemy*, called *Mauræes*, and by others *Maryvus*, it is no other than a branch of *Euphrates*, which watereth the Land of *Chus*, or *Ethiopia Aethiaca*, take which name you will, loseth it self at last in the Lakes of *Chaldea*.

But though in general the Country was extremely fruitful, yet in some places was it covered with a slimy matter, whose overflowing of the waters, and the nature of the soil together, did bring forth abundantly. Used by them in their buildings, instead of Mortar, than which

more

more durable and binding; and therefore chosen for the Cement of the Tower of *Babel*, *Gen. 11. 3.* Some also tell of a Cliff, which opening fendeth out such a stink, that it killeth Birds as they fly over it; and others, of a like open place near a Town called *Atir*, which continually throweth out boyling Pitch (named therefore *Hell-mouth* by the *Moors*) filling therewith the adjoining Fi.lds; and that herewith the people use to pitch their Boats. But this in some places only, the Country generally being both healthy and delightful, as

The People anciently were much addicted unto Sooth-saying and Divinations, and no less noted for being Authors of the first Idolatry that ever was practised in the World. Induced unto the last perhaps by the Power of their Kings, who would needs confer Divine Honours upon some of their Ancestors. But to the first inclined by their own disposition, and the situation of their Country, yielding a fair sensible Horizon (for the Rational is alike in all places, both in Hills and Vallies) and consequently profitable to the observation of the rising and setting of the Stars, whether *Helinacal*, *Acrinacal*, *Mantine*, or *Vesperine*, as the Artists phrase it. Whereunto may be added the length of Life in those elder climes, furnishing them with the greater measure of experience, concerning the distinct Motions of each several Orb, and the full period of the courses of each several Planet. Certain it is that they grew so noted in this Art that at the last every *Astrologer*, or Figure-miner translateth, *qui sese illius sapientia specie venditabant*, as *Beza* hath observed in his Annotations. For giving too much credit to them, the People thus flouted by the *Savvyrit*.

*Chaldaei majorem erit fiducia quiescunt
Dixerit Astrologus, credent à fonte relatum
Ammonius, &c.*

That is to say,

Joves Oracles no greater credit have,

Than Sooth-sayings of a *Chaldee* cozening Knave. The Language which was spoken here, had the name of the *Chaldee*, or *Chaldean* Tongue; of great antiquity, and sanctified by the Holy Ghost, some Chapters of the Prophecy of *Daniel* being written in it. So different from the *Hebrew* in its primitive purity, that the *Jews* Officers of *Hezekiah*, 2 *Kings* 18. 26. desiring *Rabshakeb* to speak to them in the *Chaldee* Tongue, that the common people of the *Jews* might not hear his Blasphemies. A further proof may be, That a man may have some knowledge in the *Hebrew*, and yet be ignorant of the *Chaldee*; as many are, no doubt, at this present day. But whatsoever it was in its primitive purity, it altered afterwards when the *Jews* came to live amongst them, during the Captivity: out of whose long commerce with them, both Nations lost their proper Languages, and fell upon a third, made out of both, which was called the *Syrinac*. Of this we spake before, when we were in *Syria* and *Palestine*. And this is now the natural Language of this Country, and its neighbour *Assyria*; but with a little mixture of the *Greek* and *Arabick*: Not vulgarly spoken elsewhere, for ought I can find; but used by many others in their Sacred offices, by whom not commonly understood. For in this Language, all the Sects of the Eastern Christians do associate their Publick Liturgies; that is to say, the *Nestorians*, *Jacobites*, *Maronites*, (for I reckon not the *Melchites*, who use the *Greek* Liturgy, amongst the Sectaries.) The like do also the *Indians* or Christians of *Saint Thomas*, the *Coptics* or Christians of *Egypt*, and the poor remainder of the *Chri-*

tians in the Isle of *Zocataria*, an Island on the Coast of *Africk*. Used to those Liturgies, when the Language was more understood amongst them; though now worn out of vulgar knowledge, by the overspreading of the Prelates of these Churches having fallen into the great error of the Church of *Rome*: and without taking notice of those alterations, hapning in the vulgar Tongues of those several Nations, which are united under them into one opinion, keep up a Language in their Liturgies which they understand not; as if the capacities of an People could be sooner raised to the understanding of an unknown Language, than the publick Liturgies be fitted unto their capacities. The ancient Piety of the Church and the modern Languages of God's People, are not inconsistent; though out of private ends some have taught us otherwise. But I fear this error (as some others) will not be so easily remedied, as apprehended. From the Tongue in which they celebrate the Divine Offices of their Religion, pass we to the Religion it self, whose Sacred offices are so celebrated.

The Christian Faith was first preached in this Country by *Saint Peter*, of whose being in *Babylon* (the chief City hereof) himself assureth us in the last words almost of his first Epistle: and other business he had none here, but to preach the Gospel. Much persecuted by the *Persians* (who were then possessed of these parts) it prevailed at last; Christianity growing up the faster for the cutting down. The patriarchal See, originally planted in *Seleucia*, succesor unto *Babylon* in repute and greatness, if not also in name; the Bishop thereof, by order of the *Nicene* Council, had the Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction of those parts, with the name of *Catholicus*; and the next place in Session, at all publick Assemblies of the Church, next after the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*. And besides this, the *Indians* or Christians of *Saint Thomas* acknowledge him for their Primate or Metropolitan; as they did afterwards in his right, the Patriarch *Mmal*. At this present here are some remainders of Christianity; part of them *Jacobites*, but the most *Nestorians*; of whom more anon.

Of the chief Rivers hereof we have spoken already; and Mountains there are none to hinder us in our passage forwards: So that without more delay, we may take a view of their principal places. And in the first place, famous for Confusion of Languages which here happened. For immediately after the Universal Deluge; *Nimrod* the Son of *Chus*, the Son of *Cham*, perwaded the People to secure themselves from the like after-claps, by building some stupendous Edifice, which might resist the fury of a second Deluge. This Counsel was generally embraced, *Hebr* only and his Family, as tradition goeth, contradicting such an unlawful attempt. The major part prevailing, the Tower began to rear a head of Majesty, 5,146 paces from the ground; having its basis and circumference equal to the height. The passage to go up, went winding about the outside; and was of an exceeding great breadth; there being not only room for Horses, Carts, and the like means of Carriage, to meet and turn: but Lodging for Man and Beast; and, as *Vespergan* reporteth, Grains and Corn-fields for their nourishment. But God beholding from an high this fond attempt, sent amongst them (who before were of one Language) a confusion of Tongues; which hindered the proceeding of this Building, one being not able to understand what his fellow called for.

2 *Babylon*, on the Bank of *Euphrates*, the antientest City in the World on this side of the Flood; first built by *Nimrod*, in the place designated to the raising of the Towers

Tower of Babel, and by him made the Seat of his Kingdom: afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*, one of his Successors; and finally, much encreased both in bulk and beauty by *Nebuchadnezzar*, who therefore arrogated to himself the whole glory of it, saying in his pride, *Is not this the great Babel that I have builded?* Dan. 4. 30. A City of great fame and fate, accounted one of the Worlds nine wonders, and deserv'dly too.

The compass of the Walls 365 furlongs (or 46 miles) according to the number of the days in the year; in height fifty Cubits, and of so great breadth, that Carts and Carriages might meet on the top of them; finished in one year, by the hands of 200000 Workmen, employed daily in it. Situate on both sides of *Euphrates*, over which there was a sumptuous Bridge, and at each end of that Bridge a magnificent Palace: beautified also with the Temple of the Idol *Bel*, and famous for the *Pensile Gardens*, made with great charge, and born up with most stately Arches. In a word, to great and vast it was, that *Aristotle* saith, That it ought rather to be called a Country than a City: adding withal, That when the Town was taken, it was three days before the furthest part of the Town could take notice of it. Which taking of the Town must be understood of the surprize hereof by the *Medes* and *Persians*; and not of the taking of it by the *Macedonians*, as *Pet. Ramus* (as great a Clerk as he was) in his marginal Notes upon the Politics of that Author, hath most vainly told us. Which, whether it were that there were Gates at the end of every Street, which made it to be so long in taking; or that the *Babylonians* were not wakened from their drunken Feast, in the time whereof it was surprized, I determine not. Revolving in the time of *Semiramis*, the news came to hegas he was ordering her Hair: whereupon leaving her head half-dressed, she went and besieged it; never ordering the rest of her Hair, till she had recovered it. How it fell into the hands of *Cyrus*, we learn out of *Xenophon's Cyri-pædia*, which was in this manner. The River *Euphrates* ran quite thorow the Town, round about whose Banks the Politick Prince cut many deep Channels; into which when the *Babylonians* were securely merry at a general Feast, he suddenly drained and emptied the River, conveyed his own Forces into the Town all along the dry and yielding Channel, and in a little time made himself Master of it. From the *Persians* it revolted in the Reign of *Darius Hystaspes*, and that Suffiance might not be wanting to the Men of War, they frangled the most part of the Women, being thought in Actions of this quality, not so much as necessary evils. When they had for twenty months fo obstinately defended the Town, that the *Persians* had less hope than ever of prevailing; *Zophyrus*, one of *Darius* Captains, mangling his body, and disfiguring his face by cutting off his nose and ears, fled to the *Babylonians*, complaining of the tyranny of his King. They crediting his words, and knowing his prowess, committed the charge of the whole Army unto him, as a man to whom such barbarous usage had made the King irremediable. But he taking the best opportunity, delivered both the Town and Souldiers into the hands of his Sovereign, which made *Darius* often say, That he had rather have one *Zophyrus*, than twenty *Babylons*. Here did *Alexander* the Great, after whose death the *Grecian* Captains, regardless rather of their own ambitions, than the common Loyalty, divided the Empire among themselves; leaving the body of the King eight days unburied. A wonderful change of fortune, that he who living thought the World too small for his Valour, being dead should find no place big enough for his Body. After this taking

of it by the *Macedonians*, the Glories and Magnificence hereof began to decline; leftened unto a fourth part in the time of *Qu. Curtius* the Historian; in *glutindum redacta*, reduced to desolation in the days of *Pliny*; and being turned into a Park, in which the Kings of *Persia* did use to hunt, in the time of *Saint Hieron*. That wondrous change occasioned partly by the injury of the time, partly by the neglect of the *Macedonians*, who removed the Seat-Royal of their Empire more towards *Greece*: but principally by *Selenus Nicator*, who offended with the *Babylonians*, built the City of *Selencia*, the second City of note in all this Country, situate in a place more commodious and healthy, near the meeting of *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, and about forty miles more North than *Babylon*; out of which he drew 500000 persons for the peopling of it. Nor did this new City rob the old only of its power and greatness, but also of its very Name; being called *Babylon* in some of the ancient Authors, *Βαβυλων* in others, *Μετρώπολις* Ζαλαβία καλαμάρια (as for one) by *Stephanus*. In the Primitive times of Christianity, the Bishop of this See was accounted for the Primate of the *Chaldaean*; with a superintendency over the *Christians* of *India* also, as before was said. But this Supplanter was in time brought to ruin also. And

4 *Bagdad*, a new City raised from the ruins of it: built near the Foundations of *Selencia* by *Bugisfer* the 20th Caliph of the *Mahometans*, at the expence (as some write) of eighteen Millions of Crowns; which, because of the many Gardens contained in it, had the name of *Bagdad*, the word so signifying in the *Arabic* Tongue. First built upon the Western Bank of the River *Tigris*, near to its confluence with *Euphrates*; but in the year 1095. removed to the other side of the River, by *Muhtashers*, the 4th Caliph of the *Saracens*, because less subject to the Inundations of that furious River. But it was reckoned still for the same City, as if built by *Bugisfer*: by whom being made the Seat of his Royal Residence (whose successors were hence called the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*) it flourished in great pride and splendor: till taken and sacked by *Alan*, or *Hadon*, a *Tartarian* Captain, who here starved *Muscarazem*, the last Caliph of it, and rooted out his whole Posterity; as if the *Caliphate* and the City were to end together. But the Town revived again, though the *Caliph* could not; continuing to this day a City of great Wealth and Traffick, but nothing comparable unto what it was both for beauty and bigness, being not above seven miles in compass, and having nothing in the Buildings to be justly bragged of. Taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent with the rest of the Country, it became subject to the *Turks*; from them recovered by *Abas* the King of *Persia*, Anno 1625. and again recovered by the *Turks* about the year 1640. In which changes it can be no marvel, that the hath lost much of her former splendour. Maintained especially at the present by the Trade of *Alleppe*, to which, besides such Goods as go up the Water, there pass yearly many Caravans or Troops of Merchants, each of them having in it some hundreds (if not thousands) of Camels laden with commodities. For whose sake Lodgings, as they pass (the ways being generally ill provided for Travelers in those Eastern Countries) there are some Houses of Receipt built at the publick charge, or by some special Benefactor, to preserve his memory: most of them strong, and many very fair and lovely, which in the Dominions of the *Persians*, they call *Caravans* *Ramers*; in the *Turks*, *Cams*. And for communicating the success of their business unto the place from whence they came, they make use of Pigeons, which is done in this manner. When the Hen-Pigeon sitteth, or hath any young, they take

take the Cock, and set him in an open Cage; whom when they travelled a days Journey, they let go at liberty, and he straight flieth home to his Mate. When they have trained them thus from one place to another, and that there be occasion to fend any Advertisement, they tie a Letter about one of their necks, which at their return home is taken off by some of the Houfe, advertised thereby of the Estate of the Caravan. The like is also used betwixt *Ormus* and *Balsora*. But of this enough.

5 *Ctesiphon*, on the River *Tigris*, not far from *Selencia*, by whose fall it rose; occasioning the decay thereof, as that did of *Babylon*. So *Pliny*, speaking of the fall of *Babylon*, by the building of *Selencia* so near unto it; then adding, *invicem ad hanc exhauriendam*, *Ctesiphon* built faith *Marcellinus*, by *Vardanes*, a *Parthian* King; and by him made the Seat-Royal of the *Persian* Kingdom. Many times besieged and assaulted by the *Roman* Emperors; but most commonly without success: and amongst others, by *Julian* the Apostle, that bitter enemy of the Gospel, who here breathed out his Soul to Satan in these dying words, *Viciisti tandem Gallias*. But *Vardanes* (whoever he was) cannot of right be called the first Founder: this City being the fame with that which *Ezek*, 27. 23. and *Ezekiel*, *Canneh*, Gen. 11. and built in *Chalantide*, or the Region of *Chalne*.

6 *Sippurum*, remarkable for the great Trench made near it, to receive the overflowsings of *Euphrates*, which otherwhile might have annoyed the City of *Babylon*; in compass 1280 Furlongs, or 160 miles; in depth 20 fathoms. A vast and expenceful work; but that nothing was to be admired, when *Babylon* it self was up and in full prosperity.

7 *Apamea*, a City of *Selencus's* foundation also, situate at the fall of *Pylon* into the River *Tigris*.

8 *Vologesias*, placed by *Ptolemy* amongst the Cities of *Chaldaea*, but by *Marcellinus* in *Assyria*: built or repaired by one of the *Vologeses*, Kings of *Persia*, and from him denominated.

9 *Borsippa*, by *Ptolemy* called *Borsica*, memorable for the great Victory which *Cyrus*, the first *Persian* Monarch, obtained hereagainst *Nabonidus* the King of *Babylon*, by whom having vanquished, he pardoned him (as he saith) his life, and gave him the Government of *Carmania*.

10 *Balsora*, a Port-Town to *Babylon*, situate at the fall of *Euphrates* into *Sinus Persicus*, and consequently of great wealth and trading: the Riches of *Arabia*, *Persia*, and some parts of *India*, being landed here, and carried to *B A B T O N*, and thence up the Water to *Alleppe*. Supposed to be the City of *Thiodorus*, mentioned by *Ptolemy*; built or repaired by *Nebuchadnezzar*, and not long since taken from the *Turk* by *Abas*, the *Persian*.

7 ASSYRIA.

ASSYRIA is bounded on the East with *Media*, *thraz*; on the West, with *Mesopotamia*, from which divided by the River *Tigris*; on the South with *Susiana*; and on the North, with some part of *Thracomania*: So called from *Assur* the Son of *Sem*, by whom first inhabited. But having long since lost that name, as to vulgar speech, it is by *Niger* called *Adria*; by *Mercator*, *Sab*; by the *Turks*, *Arzenum*.

The Country very plain and level, exceeding fruitful and abounding in Rivers. For besides *Tigris*, which washeth one whole side thereof, *Ptolemy* ascribed to this Country the Rivers of 2 *Lycus*, 3 *Cyprus*, and 4 *Gorgus*; tributary Streams, the greatness of *Tigris*.

The People were anciently great Warriors, and together with the *Babylonians* or *Chaldeans*, commanded a great part of the East; extending their Dominion from the *Mediterranean* Sea, to the River *Indus*; in compass that not the People of this Province only, but of all the Provinces almost of this spacious Empire, had the name of *Assyrians*. The men for all this exceeding formal in their Habit, wearing long Robes which trailed on the very ground, their Hair long, their Hats or Caps Pyramidal, like the *Persian* Mithers; not stirring out of doors but perfumed with Musk, Rings on their fingers, and a Scepter in their hands: and very frequent in their walkings, especially after copulation. As for the Women, it was an ancient custom with them, to expose the fairest unto Sail in the open Market; and the money not so aimable. And hence perhaps the Fathers of our times have learnt this Lesson, of giving less Portions with such Daughters as will sell themselves; but greasing the fat Sow (as the saying is) with the addition of some hundreds: which made the merry fellow say, *That the money were a good mace, if the Wenches were away*.

The *Christian* Faith was first here planted by *Saint Jude*, and took fuch deep root in that Plantation, that it could never be pulled up; notwithstanding the cruel persecution raised against it, by the Kings of *Persia*: by violence, attempted in the next place to corrupt it with Heresie. And to that end, as also to revenge himself upon the Emperor *Heracleus*, as Great Champion of the Orthodox Belief against *Nestorius*, *Choraz* the great King of *Persia*, enforced all the *Christians* of his Empire condemned, permitting none who were counted Catholics within his Dominions. By means whereof, and afterwards for want of Preachers to instruct them otherwise (the *Saracens* having conquered the *Persian* Empire) *Nestorianism* prevailed so far, that it extended over all the Countries East of *Tigris*, as far as *India*; more hereafter. Governed by their own Patriarch, who resided at *Mesit*, now the chief City of this Country; and honoured by his people with the Title of *Jacobi's* but given anciently to all Orthodox Prelates.

The Opinions held by them as *Nestorians*, were, 1 That there were two Persons in our Saviour, as well as two Natures; but yet confessing that *C H R I S T* was from the first instant of his Conception, was both God and Man: 2 That the Blessed Virgin ought not to be called *Quædam* or the Mother of God; but yet acknowledging her to be the Mother of God the Son. 3 That *Nestorius* condemned for their Opinions in the third and fourth General Councils, was a holy man; for whose sake they condemned *Saint Cyril* his professed Antagonist; and all those Councils wherein any Censure was laid upon him. In other points, though differing from the Church of *Rome*, they are right enough (their rejecting Episcopical Confirmation excepted only. As 1 In celebrating the Sacrament of the Lords Supper with leavened bread. 2 Communicating in both kinds. 3 Enjoying no necessity of *Auricular* Confession. 4 Contracting Marriages in the second degree of Consanguinity. 5 Permitting second and third Marriages unto men in Orders, after the death

of their first Wives. 6 Not praying before the Cross, nor giving religious worship to the Crucifix, or other Images. So much for these *Nestorian* Sectaries, if so named aright, considering the qualifications added unto their opinions; now (but corruptly) called *Nestorians*: the greatest Sect of *Christians* in all the East.

The Solemnities which these *Christians* use in contracting Marriage, because not very usual, I will here relate: Their wives they never see till the day of their marriage, but hearing a good report of the young Woman, negotiate with her Parents for her. Agreed upon the business, they meet in the Chancel of the Church, wherein there is a partition with an hole in it: the Bridegroom and his friends standing on the one side; the Bride and her kindred, on the other. When there the *Casside*, or Churchman biddeth the Bridegroom to put his hand thorough the hole into the Partition, and to take his Bride by the hand, which he doeth accordingly: the Mother of the Bride, with a sharp pointed instrument, made of purpose, pricking the Bridegrooms hand over all, with sufficient eagerness. If when he feeleth the smart, he lets go her hand, they take it for a sign that he will not love her; but if he hold her fast, and wring her hand till he cry again, they take it for a very good Omen, and are glad they have so well bestowed her. After the Marriage is consummated, if a Male-child be born unto them, the Father loseth his own name, and is called by the name of his eldest Son: so as if the Fathers name be *Moses* and his Sons name *Joseph*, the Father is no more called *Moses* but *Abba Joseph*, or the Father of *Joseph*. So highly did they reverence Marriage, and the fruit thereof, Posterity.

It was anciently divided into these six parts, 1. *Arphaxathiis*, bordering on *Armenia Major*; so called for *Arphaxaditis*, or the plantation of *Arphaxad*, the Son of *Sem*. 2. *Adiabene*, bordering on *Mesopotamia*, so called, quasi *Adiabene* for inaccessible: because fenced with such unfavorable Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, that there was no ease coming to it *Adi Suryckys* *rwid* *Suldan*, as it is in *Suidas*: or rather for *Adiabene*, from *Diavus* and *Adiavus*, the chief Rivers of it (the same which *Ptolemy* called *Lycus* and *Caprus*) as in *Marcellinus*. 3. *Calacene*, and *Sitacene* from *Sitace*, and *Calach*, two chief Cities of it; of which more anon. 4. *Abelites*, and 6. *Apollonates*, from *Apollonia* and *Arbela*, two other of the principal Cities.

Here then we have four of the Cities of *Affria* brought unto our hand, 1. *Calach*, one of those four which *Nimrod* built in the Land of *Affria*, *Gen*. 10. 11. and one of them to which the Ten Tribes were transplanted by *Salmanassar*, 2. *Kings* 17. 6. and 18. 11. of such esteem in those elder days, that *Calacine* as *Ptolemy*, or *Calachene* as *Sirabo* most rightly calleth it, did take name from hence. 2. *Sitace*, situate about twomiles from the banks of *Tigris*, in the way from *Babylon* to *Susa*. A City when it gave name to the parts adjoining, both great and populous; well seated in a fruitful Soil, and well shaded with trees of several sorts; supposed by the situation of it to be that *Acad*, (or rather built in or near the place of it) which was one of the first four Cities of *Nimrod's* Kingdom. 3. *Arbela*, on the banks of the River *Caprus*, built as some say by *Belus* (or *Belochus*) *Trifens* an *Affrian* King, whence it had the name. Near unto which there is a place which *Sirabo* calleth *Konaghoron*, or *Conaghoron*, conceived by some to be the place where *Noah* framed the Ark. 4. *Apollonia*, built after the *Macedonian* conquest, as appeareth by the name, which is wholly *Greek*: not otherwise observable, but for giving the name of *Apollonates* to the Country adjacent. Add unto these, 5. *Gegumelis*, situate in the middle space betwixt *Lycus*,

and *Caprus* memorable for the last and greatest battle betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius* the King of *Persia*, who had he made good the Eastern banks of the River *Tigris*, might easily have hindered the *Macedonians* from coming over the River being so extremely swift and violent, that the *Macedonians* were not able to pass it, but by linking their hands and arms together, and making one entire body to oppose the Current; and therewithal of so great depth, that the footmen were fain to hold their Bows and Arrows over their heads, to keep them from being moistened and made unserviceable. But having unavailably lost this opportunity by the cowardice of *Mazens*, who had the keeping of this Pass, he was enforced to venture all upon a Battle; drawing unto this place an Army of 50000 Horse, 200000 Foot, in their account who speak least of it (for *Strabo* makes it above a Million) opposed by *Alexander* with no more than 40000 foot, and 7000 horse of his *Europeans*; but these victoriously successful: 40000 of the *Persians* slain, (but *Diocorus Siculus* speaks of 90000) with the loss of 300 *Macedonians* only, as is said by *Curtius*. In memory of which notable victory, a Mountain near the place of the Battle, which by *Alexander* called *Nicator*, known by that name to *Sirabo*, and some other Ancients. 6. *Rheboth*, another of the four Cities, which *Nimrod* is said to have built in *Affria*, by some supposed to be *Birhan*, an ancient City upon *Tigris*, and bordering so near unto *Mesopotamia*, that by *Ptolemy* it is placed in it. Of which more anon. 7. *Rhefen*, another of the Cities of *Nimrod's* building, seated by *Moses* between *Calach* and *Nimve*, *Gen*. 10. 12. and there commended for a great City. Which Character with the site thereof, have induced some learned men to think it to be the same which by *Xenophon* called *Larissa*; seated by him on the River *Tigris* much about this place, and said to be a City of such strength and greatness, that there was no less than two *Parasangs*, or four miles in compass: the Walls in height a hundred foot, twenty five in breadth; so strongly cemented, that *Cyrus*, who besieged it, could never have taken it, if a casual Eclipse of the Sun had not discouraged the defendants. * But whether this conjecture be good or not, we have here *Larissa* for another of the principal Cities. 8. *Nimve*, by the *Greeks* and *Latines* called *Ninus*; first built by *Nimrod*, and called *Nimve* with relation unto *Ninus*, his Son or Nephew, after the example of *Cain* whose steps he followed; of whom is said, that he built a City, and called it after the name of his Son, *Enoch*, *Gen*. 4. 17. I know the building of this City is by some ascribed to *Affir*, grounding themselves on that of *Moses*, *Gen*. 11. Out of that Land went forth *Affir*, and built *Nimve*, &c. But I like better of their judgment, who take *Affir* in this place for the name of the Country, and not of the man; making the Text to speak of *Nimrod*, and to say of him, *Exgressus est in Affir*, &c. that is to say, And he went forth to Affir or the Land of Affria, and there built *Nimve*, *Rheboth*, and the rest there named. A City so enlarged by some of the succeeding Kings, that it came at last to be bigger than *Babylon*, in compass 480 furlongs, or 60 miles; and therefore said in the Book of *Jonah*, to be a City of three days journey, in circuit, as indeed it was: accounting 20 miles for a days journey, according to the common estimate of those elder times; as also of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, in the times succeeding. Nor was that of less strength than greatness, the walls an hundred foot high, and so broad that three Carts might go abreast on the top thereof: and the whole walls 1150 Turrets, each of 200 feet in height: So strong, that it was thought to have been impregnable, especially because of an ancient Prophecy, which signified that the Town should never be taken, till the River became an enemy to it. A Prophecy which

which induced *Sardanapalus* to make it the seat of his war against *Babylon*, and *Arbaces*, then in arms against him; who having besieged it three years without hope of success, at last the River overflowing, carried before it twenty furlongs of the Wall. Which accident so terrified the effeminate King, that he burnt himself in the midst of his treasures, and left the Town to the Besiegers. Threatened destruction by the preaching of the Prophet *Jonah*, it escaped then upon repentance. But the people going on in their wicked courses, it was destroyed by *Assyges* King of the *Medes*, that it might no longer be an encouragement to the *Affrians* to rebel against him, as formerly against some of his Predecessors: and so destroyed, that in the time of Saint *Cyril of Alexandria*, as himself affirmeth in his Comment on the Prophet *Nahum*, *et non erat ibi* *urbis* *Assyges* *habeat* *urbem* *quod* *non* *erat* *scire* *discerni* *in* *what* *place* *it* *stood*. 9. *Musal* at this time, and for long since, the chief of *Affria*; seated on the *Tigris*, and raised out of the ruins of *Nimve* of most note for being the ordinary abiding place of the *Nestorian* Patriarch, who either in this City it self, or the Monastery of St. *Hermes* near adjoining to it, hath his constant residence. The *Nestorians* in this City so considerable, both in power and number, that though it be in the hands of *Mohometans*, either *Turks* or *Persians*; yet there are numbered in it fifteen *Christian Churches*, and at least 40000 Souls. A Self so maligned by the Pope, (whom they commonly call the *Reprobate Bishop*) for the greatness of the jurisdiction which this Patriarch hath: that not contented to withdraw the *Indians* from him, (whereof more hereafter) Pope *Julius* the third, set up an *Anti-Patriarch* against him, to whom he gave the title of the *Catholic of Musal* also; to whom the *Nestorian* some Writers of the *Papal* Party may be believed) do submit themselves. 10. *Arzeris*, of greater strength than *Musal*, though of less antiquity than *repute*; from which the whole Province of *Affria*, is now called *Arzerum*. And 11. *Scheberwad*, at this time of the greatest note, as being the ordinary residence of the *Turkish Beglerbey* or *Begler*, who hath 10000 *Timariots*, under his command, to defend this Country, and be ready for any service, as occasion is.

8 MESOPOTAMIA.

MESOPOTAMIA, is bounded on the East, with the River *Tigris*, by whom parted from *Affria*; on the West, with *Euphrates*, which divideth it from *Comagena*, a Province of *Syria*; on the North, with Mount *Taurus*, by which separated from *Armenia Major*; and on the South, with *Chaldea*, and *Arabia Deserta*, from which last it is parted by the bendings of *Euphrates* also.

In the Scripture it is called most commonly by the name of *Padan Aram*, that is *Syria Culia*; but that name *Syria*, because inhabited originally by the *Arames*, the fruitfulness and riches of it, exceedingly plentifully necessary for the life of man; in that regard by *Sirabo* called *Mesopotamia Felix*. The Southern parts hereof being barren and full of Deserts, not having by *Sirabo* in them, *et non erat ibi* *urbis* *habeat* *urbem* *quod* *non* *erat* *scire* *discerni* *in* *what* *place* *it* *stood*. 9. *Musal* at this time, and for long since, the chief of *Affria*; seated on the *Tigris*, and raised out of the ruins of *Nimve* of most note for being the ordinary abiding place of the *Nestorian* Patriarch, who either in this City it self, or the Monastery of St. *Hermes* near adjoining to it, hath his constant residence. The *Nestorians* in this City so considerable, both in power and number, that though it be in the hands of *Mohometans*, either *Turks* or *Persians*; yet there are numbered in it fifteen *Christian Churches*, and at least 40000 Souls. A Self so maligned by the Pope, (whom they commonly call the *Reprobate Bishop*) for the greatness of the jurisdiction which this Patriarch hath: that not contented to withdraw the *Indians* from him, (whereof more hereafter) Pope *Julius* the third, set up an *Anti-Patriarch* against him, to whom he gave the title of the *Catholic of Musal* also; to whom the *Nestorian* some Writers of the *Papal* Party may be believed) do submit themselves. 10. *Arzeris*, of greater strength than *Musal*, though of less antiquity than *repute*; from which the whole Province of *Affria*, is now called *Arzerum*. And 11. *Scheberwad*, at this time of the greatest note, as being the ordinary residence of the *Turkish Beglerbey* or *Begler*, who hath 10000 *Timariots*, under his command, to defend this Country, and be ready for any service, as occasion is.

the River (*Euphrates*), of which see 2 *Sam*, 10. 16. But generally in the Hebrew it is called *Aram*, *Narabojin*, Country in the middle of Rivers: environed by *Tigris* on the East, and *Euphrates* on the West and South; the *Latines* generally call it by the same name which the *Greeks* had given it; *Priscian* only to shew his faculty in *Grammar*, calling it *Medanum*; By the *Turks* it is now called *Diarbect*.

As is the Country, such the People, the most *Adjective* of any we have met with hitherto; able at no time to stand by themselves, but still requiring the addition of some neighbour Nation to be joyned unto them. No Language, nor their Country. Beholden for their Name in the North, to *Syria*; in the South, to *Arabia*: the *Chaldeans* also putting in for a share, and challenging those parts which lye next *Affria*, to belong to them. Their Language anciently the *Syriack*, at this day the *Arabick*. Their Country successively subjected to the *Babylonians*, *Affrians*, *Medes* and *Persians*. From them first conquered by the *Romans*, under the conduct of *Pompey*; *Trajan*; more fully settled and confirmed by *Aurelianus*. But being recovered by the *Persians*, they fell together into the power of the *Saracens*, and are now commanded by the *Turks*. Never appearing of themselves on the Stage of action, but when once God shewed his mighty power in their many weaknesses; and raised them up to be a Scourge to the house of *Israel*, of which see *Judges* 3. 8. Hired afterwards by *Adadecar King* of *Syria* *Zobab*, in his war against *David*; by whom most shamefully defeated, 2 *Sam*. 10. 16. 18. Yet notwithstanding memorable in the Book of God, for the birth of *Abraham* and *Rebecca*; the long abode of *Jacob*, and the birth of his Children, in that respect affording an Original to the Hebrew Nation.

The *Christian* faith was first preached here by St. *Thaddaeus*, one of the 70 Disciples; Anno 43. upon this occasion. *Abgarus* the *Teparch*, or Prince of *Edessa*, one of the chief Cities of this Country, having been long afflicted with an incurable infirmity, and hearing of the fame of *JESUS*, beseeched him by a special message to come and help him: whereunto our Saviour made this Answer, *That he could not visit him in person, the things he was to do, whilst upon the earth, being to be performed only in the Land of Canaan; but that he would take care of his health in convenient time*. Accordingly, not long after his ascension, St. *Thomas* the Apostle, by immediate revelation from our Saviour, sent *Thaddaeus* thither; by whom the Prince was cured, and the Gospel preached, and many of the Nation converted to it. The *Alis* from *Abgarus* to *CHRIST*, and from *CHRIST* to him, preserved in the *Archives* of *Edessa*, were by *Eusebius* translated out of the *Syriack*, and inserted into the body of his *Ecclesiastical History*, lib. 1. cap. 14. Once planted, it found good increase, continuing in the purity of it till about the year 530. at what time one *Jacobus Syrus* (so called from his birth and abode in *Syria*) took upon him the defence of the Errors of *Eusebius*, touching the unity of natures in *CHRIST* our Saviour. Whole followers finding the Patriarchs of *Antioch* too vigilant over them, removed for the most part further off, settling themselves in *Babylonia*, and *Mesopotamia*, where they continued in great numbers. Governed by their own Patriarch, to whom the *Jacobites* in *Syria* are also subject, who takes unto himself the Title of Patriarch and *Antioch* and is successively called *Ignatius*, as if the undoubted Successor

Successor of that Saint and Martyr, superior in that regard to the Patriarch of Hierusalem, who is also a Jacobite. The Patriarchal See, fixt in the Monastery of Saphran, near the City of Mardin; but the residence of the Patriarch is for the most part, at Caracalla. The number of Christians under his obedience, computed formerly at 160000 Families, reduced since unto 50000. That which they hold as Jacobites, distinct from all other Christians is, 1 The acknowledgement but of one nature, one will, and one operation (as there is but one person) in Christ our Saviour. 2 In signing their Children before Baptism, in the Face or Arm, with the sign of the Cross imprinted with a Burning Iron. 3 Retaining Circumcision, and using it in both Sexes. 4 Affirming the Angels to consist of two substances, Fire and Light. And 5 Honouring the memory of Dioscorus (of Alexandria) and Jacobus Syrus, condemned by the ancient Councils. The points wherein they differ from the Church of Rome:

1 Not enjoying the People the necessity of Confession to a Priest, before they admit them to communicate.

2 Not admitting Purgatory, nor Prayers for the Dead.

3 Administering the Sacrament of the Eucharist in both kinds.

4 Allowing the marriage of Priests; And

5 Teaching that the Souls of men deceased, are not admitted presently to the Vision of God, but remain somewhere in the Earth, to expect Christ's coming. In which last, (setting aside the determination of the place) as they have many of the Fathers concurring with them; so to the first (touching the unity of natures in our Saviour Christ) they have of late added such qualifications, as possibly may make it capable of an Orthodox sense.

Chief Rivers of this Country (besides Tigris and Euphrates of which more hereafter,) 1 Chaboras, which rising in Mount Masius, passing directly South, then into Euphrates; as also doth 2 Singarus, by Pliny, called Masica, arising out of the Mountain Syngarus; which is but the more Western part of the said Mount Masius, which names of Masica, Masius, and the Maseni (being the name of a People dwelling thereabouts) shew plainly that they go upon very good grounds who place Masica, or Maseni, one of the Sons of Aram, in these parts of the Country.

It was divided anciently into, 1 Anthemusia, 2 Chalcedon, 3 Caudanitis, 4 Acedene, 5 Anceuritis, and 6 Ingine: each part containing several Cities or Towns of note. These fix when conquered by the Romans, reduced unto two Provinces only, viz. 1 Mesopotamia, lying on the South of Mount Masius, or the head of Chaboras; and 2 Ofhene, on the North: This last so named from one Ofhsen, the Prince or Governour of these parts: in the time of the Persians, as Procopius telleth us.

Chief place of the whole, 1 Edessa, the Metropolis of Ofhene, situate on the River Scirtas, which runneth thorow the midst of it, not far from the fall thereof into Euphrates. Memorable for the Story of Abgarus, before related, amongst Church-Historians: and in the Roman Histories, for the death of the Emperor Caracalla, slain here by the appointment of Macrinus, Captain of his Guard. The occasion this. The Emperor conscious to himself of his own unworthiness, employed one Martianus to enquire amongst the Magicians in the Empire, who was most likely to succeed him: by whom accordingly advertised, that Macrinus was to be the man; The Letters being brought unto Caracalla, as he was in his Chariot, were by him delivered with the rest of the

Packets to the hands of Macrinus, (who by his Office was to be attendant on the Emperours person) that he might open them, and signify unto them the contents thereof at his better leisure. Finding by this the danger in which he stood, he resolved to strike the first blow; and to that end intrusted Mariadus, one of his Centurions, with the execution; by whom the Emperor was then killed, as he withdrew himself, Levando viscera gratis, as my Author hath it. So impossible a thing it is to avoid ones Destiny; so vain a thing for any Prince to think of destroying his Successor; and therefore it was very well laid to Nero in the times of his tyranny, Omnis licet occideris, Successorem tuum occidere non poteris, that though he caused all the men of eminence to be forthwith murdered; yet his Successor would survive him, and escape the blow. But to return unto Edessa, in following times it was made one of the four Terrarchies of the Western Christians, when they first conquered Syria, and the Holy Land; the two first Governours or Terrarches, successively succeeding Godfrey of Bouillon in the Kingdom of Hierusalem. But in the year 1142. it was again recovered by Sangin the Turk, Father of Noradine Sultan of Damascus; and by the loss thereof, no fewer than three Archbishops withdrawn from the obedience of the See of Antioch.

2 Cologenbar, another strong piece adjoining, besieged on the taking of Edessa, by the same Sangin, who here was stabbed in a drunken quarrel by one of his familiar friends; and the Fort saved for that time.

3 Nisibis, situate some way to the East of Mount Masius, called also Antiochia Mygdonia, from the River Mygdonius, which runneth thorow it; and afterwards Constantia, from Constantius the Son of Constantine. A City of great note in those elder times, a Roman Colony, and the Metropolis of the Province of Mesopotamia, properly and specially so called: which being besieged by Sapor the King of Persia, (Constantinus ruling in the East) and in no small danger to be lost, was gallantly defended by James the then Bishop of it, whom Theodosius calls not only, Episcopus Civitatis, sed Principem & Ducem, not the Bishop only of the City, but the Prince and Captain of it, lib. 2. cap. 31. So little inconsistency was there found in those early days, betwixt the Episcopal Function and civil business, that the Bishops were not interdicted from the Acts of war, when the necessities of the State did invite them to it. The City not long after most unworthily delivered to the said Sapor, by the Emperor Julian; which drew along with it, in short time, the loss of the Province.

4 Ur, seated on the East of Nisibis, betwixt it and Tigris; and so placed by Ammianus who had travelled this Country. Conceived to be the Birth-place of Abraham, and called Ur of the Chaldees, Gen. 11. 28. either because the Chaldees were in those days possessed of the place, or because the name of Chaldees did comprehend also those parts of this Country which lay towards Tigris; was shewn before. For that the place from which Terah the Father of Abraham did return to Haran in Mesopotamia; was rather situate in this Coast where Ur is placed by Ammianus, then betwixt the Lakes of Chaldaea and the Persian Gulf, where most Writers place it, may appear probable for the reasons which are here subjoined. 1 Because it is said Job 14. Chap. 12. That Terah the Father of Abraham, and the Father of Nachor, dwell on the other side of the Flood; that is to say on the further side of the River Euphrates, and that too as the Septuagint; ab initio, as the Vulgar Latine, in the first beginning. Which cannot be understood of any Ur, placed on or near the Lakes of Chaldaea, those being on this side of that River. 2 Because all the rest of Abraham's

ban's Ancestors from Phaleg downward, were seated in the Northern parts of Assyria, and Mesopotamia; and it were strange that Terah should be planted so far from the rest of his kindred. 3 Because from Ur in Mesopotamia, near the banks of Tigris, the way to Canaan (to which Terah did intend to go) was directly by Haran: whereas if he had dwelt (as some say he did) by the Lakes of Chaldaea, his way had been directly West thorow Arabia Deserta, and not to leave travelled, with his family to far North as Haran, and then to have fallen back as much Southward, as he had gone Northward, crossing Euphrates twice with his Herds and Cattel. 4 Haran, the place to which Terah did remove, when he went from Ur; and from which Abraham did remove, when he went towards Canaan, so named in memory of Haran the son of Terah: but called afterwards by the name of Carra, and by that name well known to the Roman writers for the death of Crassus, that wealthy Roman. Whose estate (besides the tenth which he offered to Hercules, and three months corn distributed amongst the poor) amounted to 7100 Talents, which comes in our money to one Million, 33,250 £. But all his wealth could not preserve him from the slaughter, slain near this City with the routing of his Army also, by Herodes King of Parthia: of which briefly Lucan,

— miserando fume Crassus

Assyrias Latio maculavit sanguine Carros.

Which may be Englished to this purpose,

By a defeat lamed Crassus stains

With Roman blood the Assyrian Carra Plains.

Called the Assyrian Carra by Poetical licence, because the Assyrians formerly had been Lords thereof. And no less memorable was it in the times foregoing, for a famous Temple of the Moon, worshipped here (but in no place else) under both Sexes: some honouring it as a female Deity, then called Dea Luna; and others in the shape and dress of a man, and called Deus Lunus. But with this fortune and success, as faith Spartianus, qui Lunam feminio nomine putabat nuncupandum, is mulieribus saepe interservit; that they who worshipped it in the form of a Woman, should be always subject to their Wives (I trow there were but few of that Religion) qui vero Marem deum crederet, is uxori dominaret; but he that worshipped it as a Man, should preserve the Mastery. 6 Amida, near the River Tigris, the Metropolis of Mesopotamia, when one Province only, and before it fell into the hands of the Romans; much beautified by Constantinus the son of Constantine, by whom named Constantina. But that new name dying with him, the old revived: of great strength, as a frontier Town against the Persians, and by them much aimed at. Honour'd of late times with the Residence of the Patriarch of the Jacobite Christians, as the chief City of this Province; for this cause also made the dwelling of the Pseudo-Patriarch of the Nestorians (or Nigranes) of the Popes erection; and the chief Seat also of the Bassa or other officer, governing this Country for the Turks, by whom called Caranis, or Rara Amida, that is to say, Amida the black; because it was walled with black stone. 7 Phalga, or Phalga, at the meeting of Chaboras with Euphrates: not far from Carra, mentioned by Stephanus, and Ariamus; and by Ptolemy mistakenly called Pharga: the seat or first plantation of Phaleg, one of Abraham's Ancestors. Sarg, another of them giving name to 8 Sarg, about a days journey off from Haran, spoken of by some latter Writers. 9 Syngara, on the River so named, a fortified City in the times of Ammianus, by whom mentioned lib. 20. to Bebedade, mentioned by the same Author, by whom said to have been a very strong Fort, seated on a

pretty high hill, and bending towards the banks of Tigris, before whose times it had anciently been called Phenicha. 11 Vota, supposed to have been the work of Alexander the Great, circled with Walls, environed with Half-moons and Bulwarks, and made unaccessible, in vain besieged by Sapor the Persian King, after the taking of Bebedade. The same perhaps with the Birtha of Ptolemy. 12 Mardin, not far from which in the Monastery of Saphran, is the Patriarchal See of the Jacobite Sectaries.

The first Inhabitants of these Countries, though united from the first beginning under the same Princes, in form of Government, came from several Families: all the three sons of Noah concurring as it were in this Plantation. From Nimrod, Havilah, and others of the Posterity of Chus the son of Ham, came the Babylonians; with whom Chesed the son of Nachor, of the House of Sem, intermingling families: or being the Author of their Language, or of some other signal benefit, gave to them the name of Casmim, whence came that of Chaldeans. From Assur, Arphaxad, and those of Arphaxads's Posterity, intermingled with the sons of Mash, the son of Aram, came the Mesopotamians and Assyrians. And that Phetys also and his Children may put in for a part, the neighbourhood of the Medes, and Abnase, descended from him, makes it somewhat probable.

But whatsoever Parents they descended from, Nimrod, the son of Chus, made to bold with them, as to bring them under his command: planting in Chaldaea, the Cities of Babylon, and Calne; in Assyria, Nimive, Reschem, and Calach; and finally Belus (it that were Birtha, as some think it was) in Mesopotamia. By these Iron Fists he curbed the Native, and assured his power; bringing the first that altered the Paternal form of Government, and drew unto himself the Government of several Nations, not having any dependence upon one another. The foundation thus laid by him, his Successors soon raised the building to a wondrous height; advancing the Assyrian Empire, from the Mediterranean Sea, to the River Indus, and that too in a shorter time than could be imagined, but that the world was then divided into petit States, not cemented together with the ligaments of power and policy. For though there be little found of Belus the Son of Nimrod, but that he spent most part of his time in draining the Marishes, and making firm ground of those vast Fens which lay near to Babylon, which were works of peace: yet by those and the like works of peace, he so settled his affairs at home, that he gave his Son Nimus the better opportunity to look abroad: who mightily improved his Empire; and was the greatest and most powerful of all that Line; extending his dominions from the River Indus, to the Mediterranean; and from the Caspian Sea, to the Southern Ocean. His Successors we shall find in the following Catalogue of

The Assyrian Monarchs.

A. M.

1798

1 Nimrod, called by some Saururus Babylonius, the son of Chus, and Nephew of Cham, was the first who altered the Paternal Government, and usurped dominion over others; making Babylon his Imperial City.

1845

2 Belus or Jupiter Babylonius, the son of Nimrod, whose Image was worshipped by the old Idolaters under the name of Bel and Baal. 62.

1907

3 Nimus, the son of Belus, conquered Armenia, Syria, Media, Bactria, and the Persian Provinces; and removed the Imperial Seat to Nimive, by him much beautified and enlarged. 52.

- 1959 4 *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus* subdued the *Arabians*; but invading the *Indians* also, she was vanquished and slain by their King *Staurabates*. Of this great Lady it is said, that she was born in *Acadon*, a Town of *Syria*, and exposed to the fury of wild beasts. But being born not to die so ingloriously, she was brought up by shepherds, and at full age presented to the *Syrian* Vice-roy, who gave her in marriage to his only Son. Going with him to the wars, she fell in acquaintance with *Ninus*, who liking her person and spirit, took her to his bed. This bred in him a greater affection towards her, so that he granted her at her request, the command of the Empire for five days; making a *Decree*, that her Will in all things should be punctually performed: which boon being gotten, she put on the Royal Robes, and (as some Writers do report) commanded the King to be slain. Having thus gotten the Empire, she exceedingly enlarged it, leading with her an Army consisting of one hundred thousand Chariots of war, three millions of Foot, and half a million of Horse. A woman in whom there was nothing not to be honoured or applauded, but her insatiable lust: in which, if the *Greek* Writers say true (as we have no reason to believe it of so gallant a woman) she was very guilty.
- 2001 5 *Ninus* II. the Son of *Ninus* and *Semiramis*.
2039 6 *Arius* 30.
2069 7 *Arabis* 40.
2109 8 *Belus* II. 30.
2139 9 *Amantirites*.
2177 10 *Belochus Prifcus* 35.
2212 11 *Belochus Jun.* called also *Belus* 52.
2264 12 *Altades* 32.
2266 13 *Manitus* 30.
2356 14 *Mancalus* 30.
2326 15 *Spherus* 20.
2376 16 *Mancalus* II. 30.
2406 17 *Sparatus* 40.
2446 18 *Ascatades* 40.
2486 19 *Amirus* 45.
2511 20 *Belochus Jun.* 45.
2556 21 *Bellocapus* 30.
2586 22 *Lampides* 22.
2618 23 *Safares* 20.
2638 24 *Lampides* 45.
2668 25 *Scamas* 19.
2713 26 *Perrus* 30.
2732 27 *Mitrus* 27.
2759 28 *Taxares* 32.
2791 29 *Taxes* 40.
2831 30 *Tinex* 30.
2861 31 *Dereillus* 40.
2901 32 *Eupates* 38.
2939 33 *Loasines* 45.
2984 34 *Pyriabides* 30.
3014 35 *Ophrates* 20.
3084 36 *Ophragemus* 50.
3084 37 *Aferlapes* 24.
3126 38 *Sardanapalus*, by *Eusebius* called *Tonofocus*, the last King of this Race. Of which, being 38 in all, there is scarce any thing remaining but the very names: registered in this order by *Berosus*, or rather by *Frier Amian* a Monk of *Pestierum* in *Tuscany*, who hath thrust upon the world, the fancies of his own brain, under the name of that ancient Historian. The chief Kings

of note after *Semiramis*, were,

1. *Ninus*, or *Zamis* her Son; who by his Deputies and Lieutenants subdued the *Arrians*, *Bairians* and *Cassians*; but was otherwise a man of effeminate and unkingly carriage. And therefore is conceived to be the elder *Bacchus*, so much celebrated amongst the *Grecians*.

2. *Belus* the second, who recovered that Country which afterwards was called *Judea*, to the *Assyrian* Empire, from which it had revolted in the time of his Predecessor, (on the defeat of *Amraphol*, one of his Lieutenants, by the Sword of *Abraham*;) and subdued many other Nations.

3. *Belochus Prifcus*, the tenth King, who by some Writers is said to be the author of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, called *Auspicium*. For of sooth-faying there were in all four kinds.

1. This *Auspicium*, quæst *Avipicium*, taken from the flight of Birds, either on the right hand or on the left; (and hence the Proverb cometh, *Avi finitira*, good luck, because in giving, the right hand is opposite to the receivers left) or from the number of Birds, whence *Romulus* had promised to him the Empire before his Brother, because he had seen the double number of Vultures: or lastly, from the nature of them, whence the same *Romulus*, seeing the Vultures, was (saith *Florus*) *spei plenus urbem bellatricem fore, ita illi sanguini & præda assuetæ avipolicebantur*.

2. *Avipicium*, ab *Aris* inspiciendo, in which the Sooth-fayers observed whether the Beast to be sacrificed came to the Altars willingly, or not: whether the entrails were of natural colour, exacerate, &c. or whether any part were wanting. All Histories afford variety of examples in this kind; I need give no particular instance. A kind of *Divination* said to be practised first by the *Tuscan*, or *Hetrurians*; instructed in the knowledge thereof by one called *Tygers*, who appearing to certain Phylax-men out of a Furrow, taught them this mystery, and so vanished.

3. *Tripudium*, so called quæst *Terripudium*, and *Terrivium*, from the trembling or shaking of the Earth, was a conjecture of future successes, by the rebounding of crumbs cast unto Chickens. We have an instance of this in the life of *Tiberius Gracchus*, who being seditiously busy in promoting the Law *Agria*, was fore-warned by the keeper of his Chickens to desist from that enterprise; because when he had thrown the crumbs to the Coop, there came out but one of the Chickens only, and the same without eating went back again; which was taken for a sign of ill luck, as the greedy devouring of them had been good. But *Tiberius* lighting the advertisement, and pursuing his design, was the same day slain.

4. *Augurium*, so called ab *augur garrin*, was a Prediction from the chirping or chattering of birds; as also from the found and voices heard they knew not whence, nor on what occasion. In which latter kind the death of *Cæsar* was divined from the clattering of Armour in his house, and the Poisoning of *Germanicus* by the founding of a Trumpet of its own accord. In the former, an Owl screeching in the Senate-house, was deemed ominous to *Augustus*; and a company of Crows following *Scipio* to his house, with great noise and clamour, was judged to be fatal to that great favourite: and so it proved.

4. *Manius*, the thirteenth King; who revived again the ancient Discipline, corrupted by the sloathfulness and effeminacy of his Predecessors; and by the terror of his name awed the *Egyptians*.

5. *Alcades*, the eighteenth King, more absolute in *Syria* and the Western parts, than any of the Kings before him.

6. *Sardan*

6 *Sardanapalus*, the last King of this Race, who being wondrous effeminate, and utterly unable to govern so great an Empire, gave opportunity to *Arbaces*, his Lieutenant in *Media*, to conspire against him. By whom, allied by *Belochus* Governour of *Babylon*, he was besieged in the City of *Ninive*; and there reduced unto such extremities, that gathering his Treasures all together, he burnt himself and them in one funeral pile, *Ex solum factu virum imitatus*, as is said by *Justine*. The Treasure which he is said to have burnt with him, amounted to one hundred Millions of Talents of Gold, and a thousand Millions of Talents of Silver: which in our *English* Money comes to twenty thousand and five hundred Millions of pounds. A Mass of Money, which as it must be long in gathering, so probably it had not seen the Sun in many years, and therefore grown rusty might require a fire to purge it. This *Sardanapalus* afforded it, it may be, to end his life with that, in which he placed his *Summum bonum*. It may be in spite into his enemies, and it is possible it might be in policy, that to great a treasure not falling to the possession of his Foes, might so much the more disable them from making resistance against, or detaining the Empire from his next rightful Successors. For it is of all things most foolish, both to lose our Treasure, and with it to enrich our Adversaries. On which consideration the *Spaniards* fired their *Indian* Fleet at *Gades*, and the *Genoese* theirs at *Tripolis*, that their Lading might not come into the possession of their enemies, the *English* and *Mohometans*. After the death of this *Sardanapalus*, *Arbaces* took *Media*, & *Persia*, with the confining Provinces; *Belochus* strengthened himself in *Assyria*, *Chaldea*, and the adjacent Regions, his Kingdom being called the new Kingdom of *Assyria*.

The new Kings of *Assyria*, and *Chaldea*.

A.M.
3146

1 *Phul Belochus*, the beginner of this new Monarchy, or Race of Monarchs.

3194

2 *Phul Arphar*, destroyed *Galilee*, and subdued the Kingdom of *Damascus*; the same who is called *Tiglah Pileser* in the Holy Scriptures.

3217

3 *Salmanassar*, who destroyed *Samaria*, and ruined the Kingdom of *Israel*, and carried the ten Tribes to perpetual Captivity. This is the *Nabonassar* of the Chronologers.

3227

4 *Sennacherib*, whose blasphemous Host was vanquished by Angels from Heaven, and he himself murdered by his two Sons, *Adramalech* and *Sharezer*.

3233

5 *Asarhaddon*, who revenging his Fathers death on his Brothers, was deposed by his Deputy of *Chaldea*, and the Seat-Royal transferred from *Ninive* to *Babylon*.

3243

6 *Merodach Baladan*, Governour of *Babylon*, succeeded his Master in the Throne, conceived by some, to be the *Mardocapades* of *Ptolemy*; by others, to be also the same King, who by his Captain *Holofernis* did so plague *Judea*.

3283

7 *Ben Merodach*, the Son of *Merodach Baladan*.

3304

8 *Nabopolassar*, who vanquished *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Egypt*.

3339

9 *Nabuchodonosor* the great, by some called the *Hercules* of the East, who conquered *Egypt* in the life of his Father; with whom he reigned for a time, and mightily enlarged the City of *Babylon*. He joyed also with *Alyages* King of *Medes*, in subverting the

proud City of *Ninive*; and in the eighteenth year of his Reign destroyed *Hierusalem*, and carried the people captive unto *Babylon*. But in the last seven years of his Reign he was so distracted, that he lived not much unlike the Beasts of the Field; according to the Word of God spoken by *Daniel*, Chap. 4. during which time his Son *Evilmerodach*, his Daughter *Nictoria*, with *Nightsat* her Husband, and *Laboraroradach* their Son, governed his Empire as Protectors; and therefore are by some reckon'd as Kings. Finally, *Nebuchadnezzar* having recovered his senses, was again restored unto the Throne; and died, when he had reigned in all 44 years.

3383 10 *Evilmerodach*, the son of *Nebuchadnezzar*, slain by *Alyages* King of the *Medes*.

3409 11 *Balthassar*, son of *Evilmerodach* (the *Nabonidus* of *Berosus*) a Prince of a dissolute and cruel nature, was in the latter end of his reign assailed by *Cyaxares* the son of *Alyages* (whom the Scriptures call *Darius Medus*) and by *Cyrus the Persian*: by whom he was slain in the seventeenth year of his Reign, and the Empire of the *Babylonians* was transferred to the *Medes* and *Persians*.

A. M. 3426.

That this was the end of *Balthassar*, is the common opinion. But *Joseph Scaliger* in his learned and industrious work, *De emendatione temporum*, maketh him to be slain in a tumult by his own people: who elected into the Empire a Nobleman of the *Medes*, called in prophane stories, *Nabonidus*; in Divine, *Darius Medus*, who after a 17 years reign was slain by *Cyrus* King of the *Persians*. But by the leave of so worthy a man, this cannot hold good. For the Lord by his Prophet *Jeremy*, *Nebuchadnezzar*, and his son, and his Sons *Joh*; whereas *Nabonidus* was a Prince of strange blood, and so the Nations were not to serve him: and in *Balthassar*, the sons of *Nebuchadnezzar*, was this word accomplished. But let us examine his argument, and withal the fables, which very prodigally he bestoweth on such as maintain the contrary opinion: *Natio Chronologorum*, the whole rout of Chronologers; *boni & diligentes viri*, good simple meaning men; & *addam alia nihil veriora*, are his first Compliments. *Ut igitur quod Chronologorum est, omnes respiciant*, &c. therefore that they may repent their ever being Chronologers, he bringeth in *Berosus*, cited by *Josephus*, in his first Book against *Apion*. But *Berosus* there maketh *Nabonidus* (to whom he saith the Kingdom of *Balthassar* was by the People delivered) to be a *Babylonian*, and not as *Scaliger* would have him say, a Nobleman of the *Medes*; neither can the authority of *Berosus* countervail that of *Daniel*, who in Chap. 6. telleth *Balthassar*, that his Kingdom should be divided amongst the *Medes* and *Persians*. His second argument is drawn from the nature of the word, *avaßero* & *avaßero* 8 *Medus* *avaßero* *avaßero* is it, in the same Chapter, and *Darius* the *Mede* took the Empire, by which word took, is implied (saith he) not a forcible invasion, but a willing acceptance of the Empire offered. To this we answer, that *Darius* indeed took the Empire quickly and willingly, being offered unto him by *Cyrus*, and his Army consisting of *Medes* & *Persians*, who according to the Word of God, had taken it from *Balthassar*, *Darius* being then absent. *Quid si probovero* (saith he) *cum cognominatum fuisset Medum*? He hath yet one trick more than all these; and *Medus* must not be the National name

name, but the surname of *Darius*, which he proveth out of a fragment of *Megasthenes*, cited by *Eusebius*, in his work *De Preparatione Evangelica*, where he is called *Mihne*, *avalri* & *Vri Mihne*, &c. an argument of all others the most slight and trivial. For besides that *Mihne* may there as well be the name of his Nation, as of his Family; and besides that, it thwarteth the places of *Jeremy* and *Daniel*, already quoted; it is Diametrically opposite to another place of the same *Daniel*, in his ninth Chapter, where he is called, *Darius*, of the seed of the *Medes*. Of this *Darius* more anon when we come into *Media*. As for *Nabonidus*, questionless he was the same with *Balthassar*. For besides that *Josephus* and *Berosus* attribute to either of them the reign of 17 years, the same *Josephus* (who might best know the truth in this case) telleth us that *Balthassar* was by the *Babylonians* called *Nabonidel*, a name not so great a stranger to *Nabonidus*, as *Seuiger's Darius*, or *Herodotus's Labinitus*. But in this we must pardon *Joseph*. Scorn and contradiction was a part of his offence. For had he not been in some things singular, in all, peremptry, he had neither been a *Sealiger*, nor the Son of *Julius*.

But leaving *Joseph* to the singularity of his own conceits, we find nothing done by the *Affyrians* or *Chaldeans* after this subjection, which might denote them to have been once the Lords of so great an Empire. Successively invaded by the *Medes*, *Persians*, and *Macedonians*; then by the *Persians* again, afterwards by the *Saracens*, next by the *Turks*, a third time by the *Persians*, once again by the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Family, unto whom now subject: never endeavouring to assert in the way of war, or opposition, either their ancient reputation, or their native liberties; but suffering themselves to be won, lost, fought for, and again recovered by their quarrelsome Masters, as if they had not title to their own Country, but were born to follow the fortunes of all Pretenders. The reason of which is principally to be ascribed to the form of Government used amongst the *Persians*, which was so Despotical and absolute, if not tyrannical, that they held all the people conquered by them in the nature of slaves, not suffering any to grow great in a state of inheritance, or to enjoy any place of power and profit under them in the conquered Provinces, but at the pleasure of the Prince; as it is now used amongst the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Empire. By means whereof, the great men having no alliance amongst themselves, and as few dependants amongst the people, were never able to make head against the Conquerors; *Turks*.

but in the fall of the present Prince fell together with him: it being a good rule of *Machiavel*, that where the ancient Nobility is in good regard, linked in alliances with themselves, and well respected by the common and inferior people; there it is difficult for the Invader, though a Conqueror, to win a Country, and harder to keep it being conquered. But on the other side, where the Nobility is quite worn out, and the Prince doth hold his Subjects in the nature of slaves, there both the Conquest will be eafie, and soon assured. For to what purpose should the Subjects resist the Conqueror, or stand any longer to their King, than he stands to himself, when they are sure the Conqueror can lay upon them no heavier burdens, than they were accustomed to before, and have withal a flattering hope, that their new Masters may be gentler to them, than their former were? It fares no otherwife with them than with *Eloph's* *Ais*, which refused to take the opportunity of an escape from the hands of the enemy, by which he was taken, because he knew it was not possible they should lay more load upon his back, than his old Master made him bear. To which condition the *Chaldeans* and *Affyrians* being brought by the *Persians*, and never accustomed to the taste of a better fortune, have followed the same success as the *Persians* did, falling together with them from one hand to another: the particular account of whose estate we shall find in *Persia*, taking this only for the close, That when *Solyman* the *Magnificent* had discomfited *Tamas* King of *Persia*, and taken the great City of *Bagdat*, *Caramit*, *Azerdin*, and the rest both in *Affyria*, *Chaldæa*, and *Mesopotamia*, submitted to him without any resistance, and received his Garrisons. And for a confirmation of his Estate, he received at the hand of the *Caliph* of *Babylon* (who by an old Prerogative had the nomination, or confirmation, at the least, of the Kings of *Affyria*, and the Sultans of *Egypt*) the Royal Ornaments and Ensigns, Anno 1534. incorporating by that means those Regions into his Estates, and making them Provinces of his Empire; in which he left a *Beglerbeg* at *Bagdat* to command in Chief, and divers *Sarizacks* in their several and respective Provinces. And though the *Persian* Kings have since taken, and are still possessed of some places of importance in them; yet I account them in regard of the said investiture, and the long possession following on it, for Provinces of the *Turkish* Empire: as I do *Media* of the *Persian*, though *Taurus*, and some other pieces of it be possessed by the

MOUNT

MOUNT TAURUS.



MOUNT TAURUS is a constant and continual ridge of hills, which extend from the *Mediterranean* to the *Indian* Seas; running thorow the whole length of *Asia* from West to East, and dividing it, as the *Aquator* doth the *Globe*, into north and South. It was called *Taurus* from the word *Tur* or *Taur*, which in the *Syriac* and *Chaldean* signifies a Mountain; the common name of all high Mountains being made peculiar unto this, by reason of its greatness and continued length: yet so, that it had other names also in some parts thereof, according to the Regions and Nations by which it passed, and on which it bordered. The course whereof is thus set down by Sir *Walter Raleigh*: premising only, that it beginneth in the Province of *Lycia*, a Region of *Asia* Minor, near the *Mediterranean*. These Mountains (saith he) which sunder *Cilicia* from the rest of *Asia* the less, on the North thereof are called *Taurus*; and where they part it from *Comagena* a Province of *Syria*, they are called *Antanus*. On the East side of the River *Euphrates* (which forceth it self away thorow it) it sometimes resumeth the name of *Taurus*, as in *Ptolemy's* three first Tables of *Asia*, and sometimes taking the name of *Niphates*, as in the fourth: retaining that uncertain appellation, so long as they bound *Armenia* from *Mesopotamia*. After the River *Tigris* hath also cut them asunder, they continue the name of *Niphates* altogether, until they separate *Affyria* and *Media*, but then they call themselves *Coarras*: although between the upper and lower *Media*, they appear not always, but are seen discontinued, and broke in pieces: such parts of it as are found in the middle of that Country, being called *Orontes*; those which lie more towards the East being named *Coromus*, out of the Southern parts whereof issueth the River of *Bagradus*, which divideth the ancient *Persia* from *Caramania*. Continuing further Eastward by the name of *Coromus*, they give unto the *Parthians* and *Hyrcanians*, their proper Countries; and afterwards change themselves into the Mountains of *Scripi*, out of which risseth the River *Mourgu*. And now beginning to draw towards the end of their course, and they first make themselves the South border of *Babylonia*, and are then known by the name of *Barapamisus*; and after take unto themselves the name of *Caucasus*, where the famous Rivers *Indus*, *Hydaspes*, and *Zaradus*, have their first beginnings. In this point do they hold their heads exceeding high, to equal the Mountains of *Imani*; whom they encounter within the 35, 36, and 37 Degrees of Latitude, and the 140 Degree of Longitude: known by no other name than this, till finally they terminate their course in the *Indian* Seas. So far, and to this purpose, that noble Gentleman. It may be added herunto, that though the ancient Writers could

trace the course of this Mountain, no further than the meeting of it with *Imani*; yet later observations follow it to the wall of *China*: the parts beyond *Caucasus* being not known by the names of *Delangur*, and *Nangroos*. But this is to be understood only of the main body of these Mountains, which hold on in an even course from West to East; not of those spurs and branches of it, which shoot either to the North, or South: such as are the *Anti-Taurus* in some parts of the *lesser Asia*; the *Gordian* hills, and the *Mounts Moschici*, with those which *Pliny* calleth *Pariedri*, others *Parvadrin*, in *Armenia Major*; and that of *Caboras*, which sheweth it self on the North-east of *Affyria*, with divers others.

In such a continual course of Mountains it must needs be that many fierce Nations did inhabit in former times, not easily subdued, nor so soon reduced unto civility as such who were possessed of places less defensible, and fitter for commerce and traffic with the rest of mankind. And they continued in these late times, the last which were brought under by the *Turk* and *Persian*, the mightiest Monarchs of those parts; though bordering on, or totally environed with their dominions. Two Kingdoms they afforded of long continuance: one towards the West, where it closeth with the Mountains of *Anti-Taurus*, and divideth *Syria* *Comagena* from *Armenia Major*; the other towards the East, separating *Media* from *Hyrcania*. For want of other names to describe them by, we will call the first the Kingdom of *Aladenler*, and the last the Kingdom of *Bahman*; according to the names of the two last Kings.

The Kingdom of *ALADEULES* contained that part of this Mountainous tract, which beginning in or about *Anti-Taurus*, extended it self as far towards the East, as to the banks of the River *Tigris*, where they part *Mesopotamia* from *Armenia Major*. Inhabited by a people naturally very fierce and warlike, more famous for nothing than their want of all things; who as men dwelling in a rough and barren Country, could little profit themselves by husbandry: and therefore gave themselves to grazing, breeding on their pastures some store of horse and Camels, which they sold to others, but especially maintaining themselves and their families by hunting & stealing. Supposed to come originally from the *Cappadocians*, and *Armenians* of the *lesser Asia*, which by long and continual wars in the former Ages, were forced to forsake their dwellings and for safety of their Lives to fly to these unpeopled and desolate Mountains. Where searching every hill and dale, and following the opportunity of Springs and Rivers, but chiefly the mildest Temperature of the Air; and most cheerful aspect of the Sun, they built in many places poor Villages, and afterwards some better Towns. The principal of which is named *Haras*, so called as it is conceived from the River *Masius*, which rising out of the Mountain *Calen*, passeth

falleth by the fame, and not far off falleth into the River *Euphrates*.

When it was made a Kingdom first, it is hard to say, the Kings hereof being mean and inconsiderable in the eye of the world, not worth the conquering; and wanting power to conquer others & enlarge their territories: nor indeed worthy any King but one of their own, who could content himself with reigning over Rocks and Mountains. The last was *Aladules*, so much spoken of in the *Turkish* Histories and by them called the *Mountain King*. Conceived by some Writers to have been the Author of such a *Paradise*, as we shall find described when we come to *Drangiana*, a Province of *Persia*; and by that means grown formidable to his neighbouring Princes. But that which made him most really and truly known, in the stories of the former times, was the stout opposition which he made against the *Turks*, in their wars with *Persia*. He had before given no small check to the proceedings of *Bajazet* the second, in his conquest of the *Caravanian* Kingdom; and no less troubled *Selimus* the Son of *Bajazet*, in his *Persian* wars, impeaching what he could the greatness of the *Ottoman* Family: Fought with by *Selimus*, he made good his ground with a great deal of courage, till betrayed by *Alis Beg*, General of his Horse, and seeing his Army terrified by the shot of the *Turks*, he was fain to flee. But being at last taken, and put to death by the command of *Selimus*, his Kingdom was converted to a *Turkish* Province, Anno 1515. and so continued to this day.

2 the Kingdom of *BAHA MAN* was situate more towards the East amongst the Mountains which divide *Media* from *Hycania*, as before was said. The Mountains in those parts so high, that Travellers at the end of a two days journey, may discern the middle Region of the Air to be beneath them: exceeding troublesome to ascend, about 50 miles in height when once got to the top, but more dangerous by reason of the Rocks and *Precipices*, in the going down: full of inhospitable streights, and so cold and barren, that were not *Sovereignty* a temptation above all resistance, no man would take upon him the command of so poor a Kingdom. And yet in this extremity of height and cold, there is great

quantity of *Sulphur*, which makes it sparkle in the night, like the hill *Vesuvius*, in *Italy*, by means whereof here are many *Hot-Bathes*, three of them walled about, two open; to which resort unfound & decrepit people, in very great multitudes. The chief Town of it *Larry-Joon*, in the ordinary Road or Pass betwixt *Omaet*, the Last Town of *Hycania*, and *Damoon* the first of *Media*. But the Kings Seat was in a Village called *Reyna*, where he had a Castle so built upon the best advantages of Art and Nature, that it seemed invincible; adorned above, with gardens, flowers, and most pleasant fruits; and furnished beneath with a Rivulet of purest water, which pleasantly passing thorough the Castle, fell into the *alleys*. A Castle of so large a circuit, that besides the Kings Family or Court, it was able to admit a garrison of 10000 men.

The last King heretofore was the forefaid *Bahaman*, derived from a long descent of Royal Ancestors comparing for antiquity with the *Persian Sophies*: who though neighbouring on both sides, by the *Tartarian* on the one, and the Kings of *Persia* on the other; yet had they with great fortune, policy, and valour, maintained their *Royalities* against all pretenders. But *Abas* the late *Persian Sophy*, having either conquered or reduced *Hycania*, picked a quarrel with *Bahaman*; pretending that by the opportunity of his situation he might rob his *Caravans*, hinder his progress towards the *Hycanian* Sea, and turn into other Channels all the Streams or Rivers, which rising from Mount *Taurus*, watered and enriched his *Persian* Territories. And though *Bahaman* never had attempted any of the things objected; yet it was cause enough of quarrel that he might do so: and therefore is besieged in his Castle of *Reyna*, with an Army of 30000 men. Finding no possibility to prevail by force, the General of the *Persians* proceeds by *treachery*, invites the old King into his Camp under Colour of Parley, and by this means drew his two Sons out of the Castle to the Parley also. Whom having got into his Power, he first caused their heads to be cut off; and after making use of their Seals and Signets, obtains a surrender of the place: and with it the possession of this mountainous Kingdom, Anno 1601. or thereabouts, united ever since to the Crown of *Persia*.



OF TURCOMANIA.

TURCOMANIA is bounded on the East, with *Media*, and the *Caspian* Sea; on the West, with the *Euxine* Sea, *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*; on the North, with *Tartary*; and on the South, with *Mesopotamia*, and *Affrica*. So called from the *Turcomans* or *Turks*, who from hence made their first expedition for the conquest of *Persia*, and after spread themselves over all those parts of *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*, now in their possession. A Country which consisteth of four several provinces, each Province having to its self its particular story; and therefore we must look upon it as it is now divided into those four parts, that is to say, 1 *Armenia Major*, or *Turcomania* properly & specially so called; 2 *Colchis*, now called *Mengrelia*; 3 *Iberia*, now named *Georgia*; and 4 *Albania*, which they now term *Zuiria*.

1 ARMENIA MAJOR.

ARMENIA MAJOR is bounded on the East, with *Media*, and some part of the *Caspian* Sea; on the West, with the River *Euphrates*, which parteth it from *Armenia Minor*, in the lesser *Asia*, on the North, with *Colchis* or *Mengrelia*; and on the South, with *Mesopotamia*, and some part of *Affrica*.

It was called *Armenia*, as some say, *quasi* *Aram-Mini*, or the *Mimi* of *Syria*; but as others say, *quasi* *Har-Mini*, that is to say *Mons Mini*, or *Montana Miniadis*: the *Mimi*, or *Minni*, being a Region of this tract, mentioned by *Jeremy the Prophet*, Chap. 51. 27. and by him placed betwixt *Arava* and *Ashkenaz*, which shew the situation of it to be hereabouts. *Major* which added to it for distinction sake, to difference it from *Armenia Minor*: and now it is called *Turcomania*, as the first fell in which the *Turcomans* or *Turks* did fix themselves, after their eruption out of *Scythia*.

The Country in the most part overspread with hills, branches of those huge mountain of *Taurus*, and *Anti-Taurus*; but intermixt with fertile and delightful Valleys, liberally furnished with Cattel, and good store of Fruits, though much subject to deep snows, which do much annoy it. The Riches of it not to be better estimated than by the frankness of *Tigranes*, once King heretofore. Who being lined by *Pompey* at 6000 Talents, not only very readily laid down that sum; but added of his own accord to every *Roman* Souldier 50 *Drachmas* of Silver, 1000 *Drachmas* to each Captain, and to every Colonel a Talent. For though *Tigranes* had added some part of *Media*, and the whole Kingdom of *Syria*, unto his Estate: yet those being new Acquaints, and not fully settled, were not much likely, for the present, to enrich his Coffers: a new conquered Provinces being for the most part more chargeable than beneficial to the *Victor*.

The people are generally great bodied, of comely personage, and patient of all kind of labour; good Archers; when put to it, but careless of honour got by war; merry; desirous to be at ease, and apt to be soothed. The women tall, but homely, of a manly look, most of them skillful at their Bow, or some other weapon. Their Families for the most part great, the Father, and all his Posterity to the third and fourth generation, living under a roof; after whose death the eldest, whether Son or Brother, hath the chiefest Rule. In diet and cloathing all alike; and in most places they are said to be very industrious; painful in tillage, and well seen in *Mansfactures*, especially rich *Tapestries*, *Grograins*, and watered *Chamlets*: with which they traffick into most Cities of the *Turks* and other *Mahometans*: privileged, as they say, by a Charter under *Mahomet*'s own hand, above other *Christians*, and upon that occasion more dispersed in the Eastern Countries than any Nation in the world, the *Turks* excepted.

They have a Language of their own, which they call the *Armenian*, not only used amongst them in common talk, but in sacred offices: the Scriptures being translated into that language also; and that, as the people do affirm by the hand of *St. Chrysostom*, at such time as (on the solicitation of the Emperors *Eudoxius*, his most eager enemy) he was confined to the lesser *Armenia*, by the Emperor *Acadius*: to whom also they ascribe the invention of the *Armenian Characters*, or Letters, still in use amongst them.

They received the *Christian* Faith by the preaching of *St. Bartholomew*, and were anciently of the jurisdiction of the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, as a Province of the *Pontick Diocese*; which together with the *Asian Diocese*, and that of *Thrace*, were by the Council of *Chalcedon* laid unto that *Patriarchate*. But falling into the opinion of *Eutyches*, touching one nature only in *CHRIST* Our Saviour, they withdrew themselves long since, from the communion of the *Greeks*, whom they hold in greater detestation than all other *Christians*, and chose two Patriarchs of their own, of whom more anon. Other opinions which they hold besides those of *Eutyches*, (which yet they labour to make capable of an *Orthodox* sense;) and those wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*, as 1 Denying *Purgatory*, and prayers for the dead. 2 Admitting none to be made *Priests* except those that be married. 3 Denying the body of *Christ* to be really under the *species* of bread and wine. And 4 *Rebaptizing* such as come to their Communion from the *Latine Churches*. Are these that follow, in which they differ also from most Churches else, *viz.* 1 In receiving *Infants* to the *Lord's Table*, immediately after *Baptism*. 2 In abstaining from *unclean beasts*. 3 In fasting on *Christmas*'s day. And 4 In holding their Children over the fire, as a necessary circumstance in *Baptism*; because *John the Baptist* told the people which followed him, that *CHRIST* would baptize them with the *Holy Ghost*.

and with fire; in which place he meaneth not material fire, but the lively purgation of the Holy Ghost, according to the nature of fire. The Church of this Sect is governed by two *Patriarchs*; whereof the one hath under his jurisdiction this *Turcomania*, comprehending 15000 Families, besides very many *Monasteries*; and the other hath under him the two Provinces of *Armenia* the Lesser and *Cilicia*, comprehending 20000 Families, or thereabouts: The first residing anciently in *Sebastia*, the Metropolis of the greater *Armenia*; the second originally at *Melitene*, the Metropolis of *Armenia Minor*, but of late at *Sis*, a small City, not far from *Tarsus* in *Cilicia*. Both honoured with the title of *Catholiques*, and having under them to the number of 30 Bishops.

Chief Rivers of this Country, 1 *Araxes*, which rising out of Mount *Abos*, an *Armenian* Mountain, first runneth Eastward as far as *Media*, and then bendeth itself towards the Northward after a long course is divided into two Branches; whereof the one falleth into the *Caspian* Sea, the other into, 2 *Cyrrus*, another great River of this Country. The fountain of this last in Mount *Caucasus* in the furthest North of *Turcomania*, and falling into a Lake, there meeteth with, 3 *Cambyses*, another great River of these parts, and so together hasten to the *Caspian* Gulf. 4 *Euphrates*, by the *Turks* called *Frat*, by the *Hebrews*, *Perab*, famous in Scripture for its watering the Garden of *Eden*, hath its fountain in the hills which they call *Niphates*, as it is said by *Strabo*. A River of great length and swiftness. For having forced it self a Passage through the Mountains of *Taurus*, it runneth in the West of *Mesopotamia*, with a stream so violent, that they who go by water from *Bir* to *Birrah*, a Town on the North-west of *Mesopotamia*, to the City of *Bagdad*, are fain to come back again by land, felling those boats for eight Crowns which they bought for 50. At *Arania*, a City of *Chaldea*, it is joyned with *Tigris*, with which the greatest branch of it passeth thorow the City of *Babylon* and so into the *Persian* Gulf: the rest of it being cut into many *Channels*, for fear it should overflow and drown the Country, are quite lost in the *Lakes of Chaldea*. 5 *Tigris*, a swifter stream than that, whence it had the name, the word in the *Median* Tongue signifying an Arrow. A River of so strong a course, that it passeth thorow the Lake *Thonitis*, without mixture of Waters, and affordeth the *Armenians* an easie Passage to *Bagdad*: who on a few *Rafis* born up with Goat-skins blown full of wind, and boards laid upon them, make their voyage thither. It is called *Hiddakeh* in the Scripture, one of the four Rivers which watered the Garden of *Paradise*; situate in an Island made by the embracement of this River and *Euphrates*, with their several Branches, rising originally out of the Lake of *Thelphis*, in *Armenia Major*, where now we are. It is presently almost swallowed by the gaping Earth; and passing under the huge bulk of *Taurus*, breaketh forth again; and compelling the East parts of *Mesopotamia*, which it divides from *Affria*, meets with *Euphrates*, as before. Of which its first and second birth thus the Poet *Lucan*,

At Tigrin subito tellus absorbet hiatus,
Oculoque regis cursum; rursusque renatum
Fons novo flumen pelagi non abnegat undas.

That is to say,

Tigris, soon swallowed by the thrifty earth,
Finds there a burial where it had its birth:
But breaking out at anew spring, vouchsafes
With the salt Seas to mix its sweeter waves.

Mountains of most note, are, 1 *Abos*, glorying in the fountains of the great River *Araxes*. 2 *Periades*, or *Perianges*, as *Ptolemy*, *Parides*; as *Pliny* calleth it, a branch or spur of the great Mountain *Taurus*. 3 *Udacepes*, another

branch of that great Mountain. 4 Some part of *Ani-Taurus*. 5 The Mountains called *Montes Moschici*, more towards the North, abutting upon *Cappadocia*, and the *Euxine* Sea; which name they took from *Mesech*, or *Mosech* the Son of *Japhet*, preserving the remembrance of his planting there. 6 *Niphates*, one of the spurs of *Taurus*, out of which the famous River *Euphrates* is said to issue. 7 The *Gordian* Mountains, conceived by many learned men to be the Mountains of *Ararat*, on one of the tops whereof called *Bairi*, the Ark of *Noah* is most generally affirmed to rest. Affirmed by many ancient Writers of the Christian Church, and countenanced not only by *Josephus*, and some others of the Elder Historians; but by the *Septuagint* themselves: who in the 37 Chap. of *Isa. v.* 38. and 2 *Kings* 19. 37 have rendered *Ararat* by *Armenia*. And be it so, let *Ararat* be *Armenia*, and consequently the Mountains of *Ararat* be *Armenian* Mountains: yet doth it not follow hereupon, that the Ark rested on the *Gordian* Mountains, or any other of this Country, as they would conclude. We may infer as *Logically*, for ought I can see, that the Garden of *Eden* must be looked for in *Armenia* also; because situate in the circlings of *Euphrates*, and *Tigris*, two *Armenian* Rivers. Those Rivers have indeed their fountains in *Armenia Major*, but compass not the Garden of *Eden*, till after a long course they encounter each other in the spacious Plains of *Babylonia*. And so those Mountains, though they have the name of the Mountains of *Ararat* or *Armenia*, because there first grown to a discernable and super-eminent height above all the Mountains of those parts, became not the resting place of the Ark, till after a further course towards the East, they were grown to their fullest height; which is in those parts of it betwixt *Scythia* and *Persia*, which are called Mount *Caucasus*: not that Mount *Caucasus* which lieth on the North of *Coldis*, and *Iberia*, out of which the River *Cyrrus* is said to rise; but that which lieth on the East-side of the *Caspian* Sea, where Mount *Taurus* and *Imaus* do cross each other. But of this elsewhere.

It was divided heretofore into many Provinces, the principal whereof had (I grant) its name from the *Gordian* Mountains, called in some Writers, *Cordias*; from whence the Province had the name of *Gordiana*, but most commonly called *Corduene*, bordering on *Affria*. The Kingdom once of *Zarbiemus*, who siding with *Lucullus* against *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, was by *Tigranes* murdered with his Wife and Children; but honoured by *Lucullus* with a stately and magnificent funeral. 2 The second Province of note is called *Cotacene*; near the *Montes Moschici*. 3 *Togrene* bordering on the River *Cyrrus*. 4 *Colchene* on the banks of *Araxes*. 5 *Sophene*, near the curvings of the River *Euphrates*: mistook by some industrious and knowing men, to be the *Syria Soba* of the Holy Scriptures. 6 *Bassine*, on the North west, near the Springs of that River. But what Cities did belong to each, I find no where specified.

Those of most consequence in the whole, 1 *Artaxata*, by *Florus* called *Capu Gentis*: of most esteem in those times, and the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Armenia* from its first foundation. Built by *Artaxerxes*, one of the Progenitors of *Tigranes*, at the persuasion of *Amidath*, whilst he abode in this Country; who liking the situation of the place drew on it the model of a strong and gallant City, according to which Plat-form it was presently built. Taken and sacked by the *Romans*, as a daughter of *Carthage*, by *Corbulo* in the time of *Nero*, it never could revive again to its former splendour. In the middle ages called *Eschia*, and at this day *Coy*, or *Caim*; if not built rather out of the ruins of it. A City memorable for two great battels near unto it; the first between *Lucullus* on

the one side, against *Mithridates* and *Tigranes* on the other; wherein the *Romans* were Victors: the second between *Selimus* Emperor of the *Turks*, and *Hysmael* the *Persian* Sophy; wherein the *Turks* were Conquerors. Anno 1514. A Victory which he bought with the loss of 30000 of his best men, and such a terror to the whole Army, that the *Turks* to this day call it the only day of doom. The fields adjoining to the Town wherein this cruel battel was fought, called the *Chalderan* fields. 2 *Sebastia*; now *Shassia*, seated on *Euphrates*, where it meeteth with the Mountain *Taurus*; the residence of the Patriarch of the *Armenians*, at their first separation from the See of *Constantinople*; the Metropolis at that time of all *Armenia*: so named in honour of *Augustus*, whom the *Greeks* call *Schastus*. But of late divelled of that dignity, the Patriarchal See, by reason of the fierce wars taking in this Country, betwixt the *Persians* and the *Turks*, being removed to the Monastery of *Eomeacian*, near the City of *Ercan* in *Persia*, in the dominions of which King these *Armenian Christians* live in great abundance, by the name of *Sephelians*. 3 *Tigranocerta*, beautified and enlarged, if not first founded, by *Tigranes* above mentioned; by whom replenished with people of several Nations, whose Countries he had taken from them, and enriched in a manner with the wealth of all his Kingdom: there being no *Armenian*, either Prince or Peasant, who sent not somewhat towards the adorning of it. But taken by *Lucullus* without great resistance, and therein besides other Treasure, no less than 8000 Talents in ready money. The City situate near a River, which *Tacitus* call *Nedrosius*. 4 *Aspsamata*, by *Pliny* called *Aspsinet*, on the banks of *Euphrates*. 5 *Cholina*, so called in memory of *Hul*, or *Chul* the Son of *Aram*, one of the first Planters of this Country. 6 *Barazae*, by which the new name of *Leontopolis*, and for a while *Barazae* the Metropolis of the Province. 7 *Asarat*, by *Strabo* called *Aracata*. 8 *Theodosopolis*, built on the foundation of some of the more ancient Cities, by the Emperor *Theodosius*, and of him thus named. 9 *Colonia*, the strongest and most defensible City heretofore, when possessed by the *Romans*. 10 *Clamassum*, a strong Town on the banks of *Euphrates*, taken by *Selimus* the first in his way towards *Persia*, and therewith *livory & sijn* of the rest of this Country, since wholly conquered by his Successors. 11 *Charr*, not far from the same River also, supposed to be the *Chorfa* of *Ptolemy*, of which not long since the ruins only; but in three weeks so repaired and fortified by the *Turks* Anno 1579. that it is thought to be impregnable. 12 *Thephis*, giving name of old to the Lake *Thephitis*, and to the Region called *Thephitis*; but now not in being. 13 *Armining* now of greatest name, and esteemed the Metropolis of this Country: situate in that part of the Lake of *Vassan* the *Martianus palus* of the ancient Writers) which lieth next to this Country: and by that well fortified: the only City of *Armenia* Lake, of which more hereafter. 14 *Van*, both for natural situation, and the works of Art, accounted by the *Turks* for their strongest Bulwark in these parts against the *Persians*; and for that cause well garrisoned, and as well munitioned.

This Country was first planted by *Hul* or *Chul* the Son of *Aram*, and by *Mesech* one of the Sons of *Japhet*, who with their Families or Colonies possessed the same: the one leaving the remainder of his name, in the *Montes Moschici*; the other in the Town called *Cholina*, and the Region called *Colchene* by *Ptolemy*, *Cholabane* by *Stephanus*. Advanced to the honour of a Kingdom as soon as

any, that of *Babel* excepted: *Ninus* the third from *Nimrod* finding *Barzanes* King heretofore, whom he forced to acknowledge his superiority, and to aid him in his wars against *Zorog* the King of *Babylonia*. Kings of most note in times succeeding, (for we have no constant Catalogue of them) were, 1 *Araxes*, who being warred on by the *Persians*, was promised victory by the Oracle, on the sacrifice of his two fair Daughters: Willing to satisfy the Gods, and yet spare his Children, he sacrificed two of the daughters of *Misafelus*, a Nobleman of this Country: by whom in revenge hereof his own daughters were slain, and himself so closely followed, that swimming the River then called *Helmut*, he was therein drowned, and thereby gave unto that River the name of *Araxes*. 2 *Artaxata*, the founder of the great City *Artaxata*; spoken of before. 3 *Tigranes*, the most mighty King that ever reigned in *Armenia*, to which he added by his prowess, *Galatia*, and a great part of *Cilicia*, in *Asia Minor*, the whole Countries of *Media*, *Syria*, and *Phoenicia*: But siding with *Mithridates*, whose daughter he had married, against the *Romans*, he was by *Lucullus* overthrow in two great battels, and outed of the greatest part of his dominions. Hearing that *Pompey* had succeeded *Lucullus* in command of the Army: and trusting more unto his goodness than a wife man would, he put himself into his power: by whom condemned in a great sum of money for the charge of the War, and stripped of all the rest of his Estates, he was suffered to enjoy *Armenia Major*, *Syria* being made a Province, *Sephel* given to *Artabazanes* King of *Cappadocia*, *Media* left unto it self, and the lesser *Armenia* conferred on one of his Sons, who being found guilty of some practice with the King of *Parthia*, was carried prisoner into *Rome*, and his Country brought into the form of a Province. 4 *Artavasdes*, circumvented by *Marcus Antony*, who led him prisoner to *Rome*, but (as *Cicero* in his *quid honoris ejus desisset aurore*, as the Historian tells us of him) it was in Chains of Gold for his great Honour; giving *Armenia* to one of the Sons of *Cleopatra*. And though, 5 *Artaxias* recovered his Fathers Kingdom, yet he and his Successors held it but as Vassals of the *Roman* Empire: the Senate after that confirming, and sometimes nominating the *Armenian* Kings. Continuing in this Estate till the time of *Trajan*, it was by him reduced to the form of a Province (made after that a part of the *Pontick Diocese*) who adding *Mesopotamia* also unto his Dominions, made *Tigris* the Eastern border of his Empire, which *Augustus* thought fit to limit with the banks of *Euphrates*. But long it held not in that form, being governed by its own Kings, as it was before *Trajan's* time, in the reign of *Constantinus Julian*, and the Emperours following; whom they acknowledged and revered as their Lords in chief, till the time of *Justinian* the second (he began his Empire Anno 687.) when subdued by the *Saracens*. Recovered by that Emperor, but soon lost again. Continued subject to the *Saracens* till the breaking in of the *Turks*, Anno 844. of whom more anon. The greatest part of the *Turks* employing themselves into *Persia*, and other Countries which they took from the Eastern Emperours; the Christians of *Armenia* began to take heart again, and to have Kings of their own, by whom governed, till again subdued by *Occidan*, or *Hocatan* the Son of *Cingis*; the first Cham of the *Tartars*. Nor did the *Tartars* make so absolute a conquest of it, as to extinguish either Christianity, or the race of the Kings, *Haitban*, surnamed *Armenius*, reigning after this, and going in person to *Mongo*, the great Cham of *Tartary*, 1257. And in our own *Chronicles*, in the Reign of King Richard the Second, we find mention of one *Leon* an *Armenian* King, who came hither to sue for aid against the *Turks*; by whom

then dispossessed of his Estates. By *Ussan Cassanes*, one of the Princes of this Country, (of whom more hereafter) who had the fortune to obtain the Crown of *Perfia*, Anno 1472. it was made a Province of that Kingdom: and so continued till the year 1515. when conquered by *Selimus* the first, and by him made a part of the *Turkish* Empire; more fully settled and assured in the Reign of *Amurrah* the third, who by causing many Forts and Garrisons to be planted in it, made the conquest absolute.

The Arms of this Kingdom, when a Kingdom, governed by Princes of its own of the Christian faith, were *Gules*, three heads of a Buck, *Argent*, Crowned Or.

2. COLCHIS.

COLCHIS is bounded on the East, with *Iberia*; on the West, with the *Euxine* Sea, and part of the *Tartars* *Preopenses*; on the North, with *Tartary*, from which parted by those vast hills, which the *Romans* called *Caucasus*; and on the South, with *Armenia Major*, from which separated by the *Montes Moschici*.

The reason of the name I find not. Nor can yield unto *Bochartus*, who fetcheth the original of the name and Nation from *Callubim*, one of the Sons of *Mizraim*, the Son of *Cham*, the *Etymology* of the name being too much wrested and *Egypt* too far off to give a being to *Colchis* in those early days; though possibly in times succeeding, the *Aegyptians* hearing by the *Greeks*, of the wealth of the Country, might send Colonies of their people thither, as to other places. It is now called *Mengrelia*.

The Country said to be very fruitful, if the care of the husbandman were not wanting. Their Vines they plant at the feet of great trees, which twining about the arms thereof lead them full of Grapes: with which, and other fruits rising from the Earth, they used of late times to furnish the Store-houses of their Kings, for want of ready money to fill his Coffers, their tributes being paid in such commodities. Formerly of great fame for abundance of Gold, found in the sands of their Rivers issuing from the *Caucasian* Mountains. The thing affirmed by *Appianus* in his *Mithridatica*; *χρυσόοφις δ' ἐν τῇ Κανδακίᾳ πρὸς τὴν Ἰβηρίαν ἀρκαίη*. Many of their Springs, faith he, which come out of *Caacasus*, carry veins of Gold. The like faith *Strabo* also, and some other Ancients. With which, and out of their rich Mines both of Gold and Silver, the Kings thereof were so well furnished with those Metals, that the furniture of their Chambers were all of Gold, and the beams of their Lodgings were made of Silver. But now so destitute of both, that the people for want of money to buy and sell with, are enforced to barter their commodities, and change one for another.

The people at the present very rude and barbarous; so inhumane and void of natural affection, that they sell their children to the *Turks*. The better sort of them much given to belly-cher, dancing, and singing loose Sonnets of love and dalliance, using much wine in their entertainments, which the more their guests drink, the better welcome; inflamed wherewith they offer them for a cooler their Wives or Sisters, with charge to yield them all content, esteeming it no small credit to them if it be accepted. Nor are the women much averse from the entertainment, whether to please themselves, or obey their husbands, let them tell that can.

The Christian Faith was first here planted in the time of the Emperour *Justinus*, by whose persuasion *Taurus* Prince of the *Colchi*, then at the Court in *Constantinople*, became a Christian; and being baptized, was returned back into his Country with the title of King. But *Ca-*

bades, the King of *Perfia*, much offended at it, proclaimed war against him; which hindered the further progress of the Gospel, till the year 860. About which time *Methodius* and *Cyril*, two reverend men, were by the Patriarch of *Constantinople* employed in this service; which they successfully effected. In that regard they hold to the communion of the Church of *Greece*, and belong to the jurisdiction of that Patriarch, to whom conform in most dogmatical points of their Religion, and in many practical. And though they have a distinct language of their own, which hath no affinity with the *Greek*, yet do they celebrate Divine Offices in the *Greek* Tongue, and follow the *Rituals* of that Church; which few of them understand any better than the *Vulgar Papists* of *France*, *Spain*, or *Germany*, do the *Latine* Service. Whether it be that they have no learned men amongst them, either to translate their old Liturgy, or to compose a new; or that they hold all alterations in Religion to be matters of danger; or that ignorance is the best mother of devotion (as is thought by others) I am not able to determine.

The chief Rivers of this Country are, 1 *Hippus*, 2 *Cyanus*, 3 *Charisius*, all rising out of the *Caucasian* Mountains, and falling into the *Euxine*. 4 *Phasis*, the principal of all, rising out of the *Montes Moschici*, or *Armenian* Mountains, and there called *Boas*: Navigable with smaller Vessels a great way up into the Country, and with great ships 18 miles from the Sea. Memorable amongst the Ancients for the landing of the *Argonauts* in the mouth thereof; and those delicate Fowl called from hence *Phasides*, or *Phasiani* (*Phasians*) which they brought with them into *Europe*.

As for this expedition of the *Argonauts*, being the most remarkable action in those elder ages of the world, when Piracy and depredations were accounted for *Heroical* virtues; it was no other than the adventure of some noble *Gracians*, for the Gold of *Colchis*. The age wherein it happened, was about the 11 year of *Gideon*, the Judge of *Israel*. The chief Adventurers, *Jafon*, Orpheus the famous Poet, *Cassor* and *Pollux* the sons of *Tyndarus*, *Italamon* and *Peletus*, the sons of *Æacus*, and Fathers of *Ajax* and *Achilles*, *Læertes* the Father of *Ulysses*, *Amphiaraus* the South-sayer, *Heracles*, *Theseus*, *Meleager*, with many others of like note. These moved with the great noise of the wealth of *Colchis*, and the riches of *King Etes*, then therein reigning, resolved upon a voyage thither, embarked in a ship called *Argo*, (whence the name of *Argonauts*) wherof one *Tiphys* was chief Pilot. Passing the *Hellepont*, *Propontic* and *Thracian Bosporus*, they came into the *Euxine* Sea: and after many difficulties and strange Adventures (which *Knights Errants* could not chuse but encounter with) they landed in the River *Phasis*, and came to the Kings Court, and there were kindly entertained. But finding the Kings Treasures to be too well guarded to be took by force (said by the Poets to be kept by a *Dragon* always waking) they practised with *Medea*, the daughter of *Etes*, to assist them in robbing her Father. Who being in love with *Jafon*, on promise of marriage with him assented to it: by whose Artifices (which the Poets call *Magical* Charms) the *Guardians* being circumvented, and the treasure gotten, they all, together with *Medea*, embarked again, and after a long and dangerous voyage returned into *Greece*. This is the substance of the Story; which being the greatest and most notable voyage which the *Gracians*, in those early days had undertaken, occasioned the Poets to advance it to the highest pitch, and to disguise it with many Fictions, and ingenious fancies: But not without some ground entitled to the *Golden Fleece* (which they make the end of the design.) For the Rivers

Rivers as before was said, having Golden sands, which fell down from the Mountains (as in many other parts of the world they are found to have) it was the custom of the people to lay many Fleeces of wool in the descent of those Rivers, in which the grains of Gold remained, though the water passed through; which *Strabo* witnesseth to be true.

But leaving these Adventures to pursue their fortunes, let us go forward to survey the *Colchian* Cities; the principal whereof, 1 *Diocuria*, a Town of great wealth and trade, founded by *Amphius*, and *Teuchius*, two *Spartans*, the Charloters of *Cassor* and *Pollux*, and so named in honour of their Masters, whom the *Greeks* call *Διοκωρη*; which two *Spartans* passing further East, were afterwards the founders of the Nation from them called *Hemochi*, or the Charlot-drivers. A Town of such resort by Merchants from most parts of the world, that here were spoken 300 different Languages; inasmuch that the *Romans* (as *Pliny* faith) were fain to maintain here 130 Interpreters for dispatch of business, and negotiating with those Merchants. 2 *Sylbaris*, the Seat-Royal of the *Colchian* Kings, about nine miles from which was the Temple of *Mercur*, to which *Medea* is reported to have brought the *Argonauts*. 3 *Siganum*, near the mouth of the River *Cyanus*: as is also, 4 *Æa*, by *Ptolomy* called *Æapolis*, an *Aegyptian* Colony, planted here by *Sesoftris* (in the time of *Reboam* the Son of *Solomon*) at what time he attempted, but without success, the conquest of *Colchis*. 5 *Neapolis*, so called from the newness or foundation of it, when that name was given. 6 *Phasis*, so called from the River upon which it is situate, retaining both the site and name to this very day: the ordinary residence of the *Turkish Beglerbeg*, by whom called *Phasim*. 7 *Avanti*, a well fortified place. More in the Land are placed by *Ptolomy*, 8 *Mechelissus*. 9 *Sirace*. 10 *Zadris*. 11 *Sivium*, &c. not much observable in old Story, nor now known at all.

The first Inhabitants of this Country, most probably, came out of the neighbouring *Armenia*; and therefore the posterity of *Hud* or *Chud*, from whence perhaps the name of *Colchis*, to whom in tract of time some Colonies out of *Egypt*, (a Sea-faring people) moved with the great fame of the riches and wealth thereof, did adjoin themselves: the *Colchians* on that ground, (or from some part of his Army left there by *Sesoftris*, being laid by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, to be the ancient off-spring of the *Aegyptians*). The most ancient of their Kings was *Etes*, spoken of before; who entertaining *Phrygius* flying out of *Greece* from the fury of his Stepdame *Iyo*, with great store of treasure, occasioned the *Argonauts*, as well in way of revenge, as in hope of booty, to make that famous expedition for the Gold of *Colchis*, disguised under the fiction of the *Golden Fleece*. Of most note after him, *Selaneus*, and *Euboeus*, who first discovered the rich Mines of Gold and Silver; of which Metals they made all their wherewith drew thither *Sesoftris*, the great King of *Egypt*, who being vanquished in the field, was fain to lay aside all those hopes which he brought with him thither, and return back to *Egypt* in worse state than he came; but that he left behind him an *Aegyptian* Colony in the City of *Æa*, which after occasioned others of that Country to repair thither also. Living in peace and unmolested from this time forwards, they were unhappily engaged by *Tigranes* of *Armenia*, to side with him against the *Romans*; and in his overthrow gave such advantage to the Victor, that *Orodes* the King of *Colchis* was fain to submit himself to *Pompey*, to dismiss his Forces, leave his faithless, and finally to redeem his peace, by sending to him a Boddred of purest Gold, and many other rich Presents. After this, the *Romans* had here their Agents,

and received hence some annual profits, but never brought it to the form of a Province. Disaffected between the *Perfians* and *Constantinopolitans*, they had much ado to stand upright; though betwixt both they kept themselves in a kind of liberty: as of late times, betwixt the *Perfians*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*, their too potent Neighbours. But at the last, Anno 1579. *Amurrah* the third, to make the later passage for his Forces into *Georgia*, sent *Ulucates* his Admiral, with a great Fleet into the *Euxine* Sea: who coming up the River *Phasis*, took the City of *Fassius*, fortified it, and laid so certain a foundation of future conquest; that though the *Mengrelians* did not long after demolish some of his fortifications: yet they were afterwards repaired, and *Fassius* made the seat of a *Turkish Beglerbeg*, as it still continueth.

3. IBERIA.

IBERIA is bounded on the East, with *Albania*; on the West, with *Colchis*; on the North, with the *Caucasian* Mountains; and on the South, with the *Montes Moschici*; by the first mountains parted from *Sarmatia Asiatice*, and by the last from *Armenia Major*.

It was so called from the River *Iberus*, which running thence, it falleth at last into the more noted River *Cyrius*: But is now called *Georgia*; and that as some say from *St. George* the *Cappadocian Martyr*, whom here they have in very great reverence as their tutelary Saint and Patron; as others say, from *George* a *Cappadocian* Bishop, by whose preaching they were brought unto *Christianity*, and some again will have them called properly *Gordians*, and corruptly *Georgians*, from their near neighbourhood to those mountains: But the most probable opinion is, as I conceive, that they took this name from the *Georgi*, whom *Pliny* reckoneth amongst other of the *Caspian* Nations. Though to say truth, the name of *Georgia* extendeth somewhat further than that of *Iberia*, as comprehending also that part of *Armenia Major* which lies next to *Media*, and the whole Country of *Albania*, if I guess aright.

The Country, for the greatest part, is covered with Mountains, Woods, and Thickets; and in that regard unconquerable for the difficulty of the mountainous passages: yet notwithstanding it is very fruitful in many places, having many fertile Plains, and wealthy Valleys, well watered, and of greater increase to the Husbandman, if he be not wanting to himself in care and industry.

Of the old *Iberians* it is written, that they were a very warlike Nation, and used to set as many Pillars about the grave of a dead man, as he had slain Enemies in his life: as also that those of the same Tribe or Family had all things common, he being the Ruler, which was eldest: and that some of them did derive themselves from the Children of *David* begotten on the wife of *Uriah*, for that cause never marrying out of their own kindred. The present *Georgians* very warlike, strong of body, and valourous in fight, for a long time defended themselves and Country from the *Turks* and *Perfians*, with great prudence making use of the one against the other; but overpowered by the vast multitude of *Turks* breaking in upon them, they have lost many of their best Forts, and much of their liberty.

The Christian Faith was first here planted in the time of *Constantine the Great*, by means of a Christian captive woman (such extraordinary ways doth God find out to promote his Gospel) who being of a most devout life, and exemplary piety, had by her Prayers to *CHRIST* restored a young child to health, which was thought past cure: and healed the Queen hereof of a desperate malady, when no help of *Physick* would prevail. Whereupon

Thus having taken a survey of all the Provinces of the Turkish Empire, both in Europe and Asia, and touched upon the means by which they are possessed of Egypt, whereunto all the rest of their hold in Africa, serves but for an accessory, we will now look upon the story of this people, their first original, the great success of their affairs, the Princes under whose command they have made these conquests: Which having done, we will proceed to a Description of the Persons, Manners, and Conditions of the Turks themselves, their power and policy, with other things considerable in so great an Empire.

And first for the original of the Turkish Nation, they were most probably the descendants of those *Turcs*, whom *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela* place about the Fens of *Maeotia*. Of whom thus *Mela*, speaking of the *Galani*, a Scythian people, *Justa* Thyragetæ, *Turceque, quæ sita sunt occupant, alim unque venando, &c.* Next unto them (saith he) live the *Thyragetæ*, and the *Turcs*, possessed of vast Woods, and maintained by hunting; and then a rough and desert Country with continual rocks, as far as to the *Arymæians*. And *Pliny* murthering up the barbarous Nations of those parts, joys the *Tussageta* (or *Thyrasgeta*) with the *Turks*, and placeth them next the *Arymæians*, as *Mela* doth, *usque ad Jaltugis solitudines vallibus asperis*, spreading themselves unto the rough deserts and woody Valleys. Not known by action (though by name) till the time of *Tiberius* the second, who began his Empire Anno 577, when pressing hard on the *Avares*, a neighbouring Nation, they compelled them to forsake their seats, and pass into Europe; where they made themselves Masters of *Pannonia*, now called *Hungary*. In the time of *Heraculus*, we find them, with other barbarous Nations, at the Siege of *Constantinople*, but under the command of the *Persians*. After which they began to set up for themselves, and in the year 763, made a road into those Countries which we last described, and loading themselves with prey and booty, returned home again. But liking better of these parts than their own poor dwellings, in the year 844, they brake once more thorow the *Caspian* Streights; and passing through *Iberia*, seized on *Armenia Major*, and there fixed themselves, giving it the name of *Turcomania*.

In which wide and spacious Country they roamed up and down, without any certain habitation, removing their herds and families from one place to another, as they had formerly been used to do in the fens of *Maeotis*; and as they lived, a poor and contemptible Nation, till *Mahomet* the Sultan of *Persia*, rebelling against his Lord and Master, the *Caliph* of *Babylon*, called in these *Turks* unto his aid, and by their help obtained a signal Victory. The Victory obtained, the *Turks* desire their Wages, and a fair dismissal; but could speed in neither, the *Sultan* being loth to part with such a necessary mischief, till his Affairs were better settled; and therefore shutting up the passages of the River *Araxes*, which he before had opened for them. Provoked wherewith, under the conduct of *Tangrolipix*, their principal Leader, they began to spoil and waste the Country; a multitude of needy people, and some of the discontented Souldiers, coming daily to them. Assaulted by the *Persians*, in the first battle they not only got a notable Victory, but such store of Armour, Horses, and other necessities, as made them able to encounter with the *Sultan* himself: whom having overthrown and slain in the second fight, *Tangrolipix* is by both Armies proclaimed *Sultan*, or King of *Persia*, in the year 1030, or thereabouts.

There were at this time amongst the *Turks* two most noted Tribes; the *Selzucian*, and the *Oguzian*. Of the

Selzucian, *Tangrolipix*, *Cutlu Mofes*, *Melach* and *Ducat* were the Heads; of which, *Tangrolipix* as the chief of that *Clan* or Family, was settled in the Throne of *Persia*: *Cutlu Mofes*, furnished with an Army against the Christians, possessed himself of a great part of *Asia Minor*: *Melach* and *Ducat*, by the like favour of their Cousin the *Persian* Sultan, were vested into the Cities of *Alippo* and *Damafcu*, with their several Territories. But the Line of *Tangrolipix* and the rest being all wore out, as hath been shewn in our descriptions of *Syria*, and *Anatolia*, the man of most Nobility amongst the *Turks*, was *Ottoman* the chief of the *Oguzian* Family; Nephew of *Solyman* Prince of *Machyr*, a small Territory in the Realm of *Persia*. Which *Solyman* flying the fury of the *Tartars* when they conquered *Persia*, was drowned in crossing the River *Euphrates*, as he passed with his few Subjects towards *Asia Minor*, the best place of refuge for his Nation; leaving the chief-ship of his Tribe to *Ethrogul* his Son, who obtained of the last *Aladin* of the *Selzucian* Family, the Village of *Saguna* in *Bythynia*, for himself and his small handful of people. To him succeeded his Son *Ottoman*, in the year 1280, who to revenge some injuries done unto his people by the improvident Christians, took from them Castle after Castle, and in the end possessed himself of the City of *Nice*, not long before the Imperial Seat of the *Gracian* Emperours. Emboldened with such great Successes, and hearing of the death of *Aladin* the second, whom he acknowledged for his Lord, he took unto himself the Title of *Sultan*, Anno 1300, from which before he had obtained. To this time, and these small beginnings we must reduce the first foundation of the Ottoman Empire; increased unto its present greatness, by the courage and good fortune of these Princes following.

The Kings of the Turks of the Oguzian, or Ottoman Family.

- 1300 1 *Ottoman*, or *Osman* the Son of *Ethrogul*, the first Turkish Sultan of this Line, added to his small Territory the greatest part of *Phrygia*, *Bythynia*, and some part of *Pontus*. 28.
- 1328 2 *Orchane*, took the City of *Prusa*, and made it his residence; and was the first that had footing in Europe, where he got *Kalipolis*, and other pieces.
- 1350 3 *Anurath*, won the *Thracian Chersonese*, the strong City of *Adrianople*, with the Countries of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*; where he was slain by a common Souldier in the fields of *Coslova*. 43.
- 1373 4 *Bajazet*, made himself Master of a great part of *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Achaia*. He was taken Prisoner by *Tamurlane*, and brained himself in an Iron Cage, in which the insolent Conquerour used to carry him. 26.
- 1399 5 *Solyman*, the eldest Son of *Bajazet*, succeeded in the peaceable possession of the Turkish Provinces in Europe; but passing with an Army into *Asia*, for the recovery of those parts thereof usurped by *Mahomet* his youngest Brother, he was forced again into Europe, to make head against *Musa Bajazet* his third Son (employed by *Mahomet* in that diversion) who having there vanquished and slain him, Anno 1406, succeeded for a time in the Throne at *Adrianople*.
- 1404 6 *Mahomet*, the youngest Son of *Bajazet*, a vigilant and active Prince, first wrested from his Brother *Isa* (*Bajazet*'s second Son then living)

living) the City of *Prusa* with the Dominions thereunto belonging, thereupon taking to himself the Title of King or Sultan, by degrees recovered all which his Father had lost unto the *Tartars*: Afterwards making use of *Asia*, for the supplanting of *Solyman*, he followed him presently into Europe, where he fought with him, vanquished and slew him, about the year 1416. Thereby uniting his own Person the whole Turkish Kingdom, which he enlarged with the more absolute Conquest of *Dacia*, part of *Scalonia*, and the rest of *Macedon*. 17.

- 1416 7 *Anurath* II. subdued from the *Constantinopolitane* Empire, all *Adonia*, *Thessaly*, *Epirus*, he shook the State of *Hungary*, and died before the Walls of *Croy*. 34.

The Ottoman Emperours.

- 1450 8 *Mahomet* II. surnamed the Great, and first Emperour of the Turks, conquered the Two Empires of *Constantinople* and *Trabezond*, Twelve Kingdoms, and Two hundred Cities. 31.
- 1481 9 *Bajazet* II. subdued the *Caramanian* Kingdom, and part of *Armenia*, and drove the *Venetians* from *Moræa*, and their part of *Dalmatia*. 31.
- 1512 10 *Selimus*, having paysoned his Father, subverted the *Mamelukes* of Egypt; bringing it, together with *Palestine*, *Syria*, and *Arabia*, under the yoke of the Turks. 7.
- 1519 11 *Solyman* II. surnamed the Magnificent, surprized *Rhodes*, *Belgrade*, *Buda*, with a great part of *Hungary*, *Babylon*, *Affyria*, *Mesopotamia*. 48.
- 1567 12 *Selimus* II. an idle and effeminate Emperour, by his Deputies took from the *Venetians* the Isle of *Cyprus*, and from the *Moor*s, the Kingdom of *Tunis* and *Algiers*. 8.
- 1575 13 *Anurath* III. took from the disaffected *Persian*, *Armenia*, *Media*, and the City *Taurus*; and the Fort *Guarino* from the *Hungarians*. 20.
- 1595 14 *Mahomet* III. took *Agria* in *Hungary*; which Kingdom in all likelihood had been lost, if he had pursued his Victory at the Battle of *Kerensure*. Never but then in any Battle, and then so frightened, that he durst never see the face of an Army afterwards.
- 1603 15 *Achmet*, who the better to enjoy his pleasures, made peace with the *German* Emperour, and added nothing to his Empire. 15.
- 1618 16 *Musapha*, Brother to *Achmet* succeeded, which was a novelty, never before heard of in this Kingdom; it being the *Grand Seigneurs* common policy to strangle all the younger Brothers: howsoever this *Musapha* was preserved, either because *Achmet* being once a younger Brother, took pity on him; or because he had no issue of his own Body, and so was not permitted to kill him.
- 1618 17 *Osman*, or *Ottoman* II. succeeded, his Uncle *Musapha*; and being unsuccessful in his War against *Poland*, was by the *Janizaries* slain in an uproar, and *Musapha* again restored: yet long enjoyed he not his Throne; for the same hand that raised him plucked

him down again, and seated young *Anurath* in the place.

- 1623 18 *Moræa* (or *Anurath* the IV.) Brother of *Osman*, of the age of 13 years, succeeded on the second deposition of his Uncle *Musapha*, who proved a stout and masculine Prince, and bent himself to the reviving of the ancient Discipline. To the great good of *Christendom*, he spent his stomach on the *Persians*, from whom he recovered *Babylon*.
- 19 *Ibrahim*, the Brother of *Moræa*, preferred by the *Sultans*, his Mother in his Brothers life; and by her power deposed again for interdicting her the Court. He spent a great part of his Reign in the War of *Crete*, against the *Venetians*; but without any great success.

- 1648 20 *Mahomet* IV. Son of *Ibrahim*, now reigning: Lord of all this vast Empire, containing all *Dacia* and *Greece*, the greatest part of *Scalonia* and *Hungary*, the Isles of the *Aegean* Sea, and a great part of the *Taurian Chersonese* in Europe; of all the Isles, and Provinces which we have hitherto described in *Asia*; and in *Africa*, of all Egypt, the Kingdoms of *Tunis* and *Algiers*, inferior to no vast an Empire, *Solyman* thus styling himself in his Letter to *Villerius*, Great Master of the *Rhodes*, at such time as he intended to invade that Island: i. e. *Solyman* King of Kings, Lord of Lords, most high Emperour of *Constantinople* and *Trabezond*, the most mighty King of *Syria*, *Syria*, *Arabia*, and the Holy Land, Lord of Europe, *Asia* and *Africa*; Prince of *Meccha* and *Aleppo*, Ruler of *Jerusalem*, and Sovereign Lord of all the Seas and Isles thereof.

As for the persons of the *Turks*, they are generally well-complexioned, of good stature, proportionally compacted, no idle talkers, nor doers of things superfluous; hot and venerous, fervile to their Prince, and zealous in their Religion. They nourish no hair upon their Heads, except it be a Tuft on the top of their Crowns, by which they think that *Mahomet* will snatch them up into Paradise at the day of Judgment. For this reason they keep on of all sides, though never lo poor, accounting it an opening, when they dislike of any thing which they see, or hear, familiar salutation they lay their hands on their bosoms, and a little incline their Bodies; but when they accost a Person of Rank, they bow almost to the Ground, and kiss the hem of his Garment. Walking up and down they never use, and much wonder at the often walking of Christians. *Biddulph* relateth, that being at his ambulatory Exercise with his Companion, a *Turk* demanded of him whether they were out of their way, or their wits? If your way (quoth the *Turk*) lay toward the upper end of the Cloister, why come you downwards? If to the nether end, why go you back again? Shooting is their chief Recreation, which they also follow with much laziness, sitting on Carpets in the shadow, and sending some of their Slaves to fetch their Arrows. They prefer, as they pass the streets, the left hand before the right, as being thereby made Master of his word with whom they walk. As they shave their heads, so they wear their beards long, as a sign of freedom; but their Slaves keep theirs shaven and close cut.

The Women are of small stature, for the most part ruddy, clear, and smooth as the polished Ivory; as neither afflicted with the Weather, and often frequenting the Baths: of a very good Complexion, seldom going abroad, and then masked; lascivious within doors, pleasing in matters

matters of incontinency, and they are accounted most beautiful which have the greatest Eyes, and are of the blackest hue. Every Turk is permitted to have four Wives, and as many Slaves as he is able to keep; yet are they to meddle with none but their own, the offending woman being drowned, and the man dismembered. These Women live in great awe and respect of their Husbands, never sitting with him at the Table, but waiting till he hath done, and then withdrawing into some Room. If their Husbands hath been abroad, at his coming in they all rise from the stools whereon they sat, kiss his hand, and make an obeysance, and stand as long as he is in presence. The Children which they have, they carry not in their arms, as we do, but alstride on their shoulders; they live immured from the sight of the World: and permit not their Male Children, nor not their own Sons, to come among them, after they are twelve years old. From their Husbands they cannot be divorced, but on special occasion: but the Husbands may put away their Wives, or give them to their Slaves, when and as often as they list. Far better it is with the Sisters or the Daughters of the Sultan; to whom when her Father or Brother becometh her on one of the *Bassies*, he giveth her a Dagger, saying, I give thee this man to be thy Slave or Bedfellow; if he be not Loving, Obedient, and Dutiful unto thee, I give thee here this Canzharre or Dagger, to cut off his head. When they are married, their Husbands come not to bed unto them, till they are sent for, and then also they creep in at the beds feet. That ever any of their Ladies make use of their Daggers, I could never read. Only I find, that *Luziz Bassa*, the chief man of the Empire next the Sultan himself, and of him very much beloved, having given his Wife, which was Sister to *Solyman* the Magnificent, a box on the Ear, was upon complaint by her made, thrust from all his honours, banished into *Alexandria*; and had doubtless been slain, if the Emperours love, and his own merits had not pleaded for him. And this is all the Prerogative of the Sultan's Daughter; her Sons being accounted as meer and ordinary Turks only, and never being preferred above the rank of a common Captain, for fear they should be apt to harbour some aspiring thoughts.

The better sort of the Turks use the *Scythian* Tongue, the Vulgar speak the *Turkish* Language, which being originally the *Tartarian*, borrowed from the *Persians* their words of State; from the *Arabic*, their words of Religion; from the *Grecians*, their words or terms of War; and from the *Italians*, their terms of Navigation.

They were formerly Idolatrous Pagans, and were first initiated in *Mahometanism*, when they got the Sovereignty of the *Persian* Scepter. The degrees in their Religion are, 1. The *Saffi*, or Novices. 2. The *Calfs*, or Readers. 3. The *Hogi*, or Writers of Books; for Printing they use not. 4. The *Napi*, or young Doctors. 5. The *Caddi*, whereof there is at least one in every City to judge of offences. 6. The *Mudroffs*, who use to oversee the *Caddis*. 7. The *Medlis*, or principal Church-Governors under the *Mufti*. 8. The *Cadefcuffs*, whereof there are only three; one of Greece, the other for *Anatolia* there for *Aegypt* and *Syria*; and these fit with the *Bassies* in the *Divans*, to determine of temporal suits. 9. The *Mufti*, whose Sentence in Law and Religion is uncontrollable. He abateth not himself to fit in the *Divan*, nor affordeth more Reverence to the Emperour, than he doth to him.

His forces are either for the Sea, or the Land. His Sea-forces are great in regard of his spacious Sea-coasts, vast Woods, and number of Subjects. He never suffered but one memorable defeat, which was that at *Lepanto*; yet the next year he shewed his Navy whole and entire. Gallies are his only Vessels, which being unable to cope

with Ships of any bigness, were not only the occasion of that overthrow, but also have heartened the *Florentines*, with six great Ships of War only to swagger in the Seas; so that for more safety, the tribute of *Aegypt* is of late sent to *Constantinople* by Land. The Captain *Bass*, or Admiral, notwithstanding, with a Navy of 60 Sail, makes a yearly progress about the Seas and Sea-Towns, to annoy the enemy, suppress Pirates, collect his tributes, and to redress the abuses committed in the maritime Towns, belonging to the *Admiralty*. Which annual circuit is begun in *May*, and ended in *October*.

Their Land-forces are either Horse or Foot. They which serve on Horse-back, are either the *Spahi*, or *Asapi*; these latter serving to weary the Enemies, and dull their Swords with their multitudes; of whose Bodies the *Janizaries* use to make Mounts, whereon to assault the Wall of a beleagued Town; and are by them so contemned, that a *Janizary* once sold two of them for a sheep-head. As for the *Spahi*, they, till they are enrolled into pay, are of the same Original and Education with the *Janizaries*; and called by the same name, *Azmozglans*. Their pay is ten Aspers a day. The Turk is able and doth maintain 150000 Horse at little or no cost, which no other Prince can do with 14 Millions of Gold. For whereforever any parcel of Land is conquered, it is divided into divers parts, and committed to the manuring of divers men, whom they call *Timariots*. These are to pay unto the Emperour certain Rents; and at their own charges, to fend to his Wars for many Horse, excellently appointed for the field: and which is the chief point of their service, to keep in awe the subjects, in all parts of his Empire. For being, as they are, dispersed in all quarters of his Dominions, the people can no sooner fly, but there will be assembled, and fall upon them. These *Timariots* are in all accounted 719000 fighting men, whereof 257000 have their abode in Europe, and 402000 in Asia and Africa. Were it not for these *Timariots*, as the Turks saying is, no Grass would grow where the *Grand Seigniors* Horse had once let his hoof; for if the care of manuring the ground were committed to the Peasants, and not to Military men, the greatest part of this Empire would grow waste and desolate. These *Timariots* were instituted by *Ottoman*, the first Turkish King of this Family; and a curse by him laid on them that should annihilate the Institution. The name is derived from the Turkish word *Timay*, signifying a stipend.

But the Nerves and Sinews of this warlike Body, are the *Janizaries*; who by Original being Christians, are chosen by the Turkish Officers, every five years, out of his European Dominions; and so distributed abroad to learn the Language, Customs, and Religion of the Turks; afterwards according to their strength, will, or disposition, placed in divers Chambers. They of the first Chamber are preferred, some to be *Chianfess*, such as go on Embassies, and execute Judgments; others to *Sanzackis*, or Governors of Cities; some to be *Bassies*, or Commanders of Horsemen; and others to be *Beizierbegs*, (id est, Lord of Lords) to command the rest in general. They of the other Chambers, are the *Janizaries*, or *Prætorian* Soldiers of the Guard; to whose Faith and Trust the care of the Emperours Person is committed. The tithing of these young Springals is, as we have said, every fifth year; and often times, as occasions serve. By which means he not only disarmeth his own Subjects, and keepeth them from attempting any tir; or innovation in his Empire: but spoileth all the Provinces he most feareth, of the Flower, Sinew, and Strength of their People; choice being made of the strongest Youths only, and fittest for War. These, before they are enrolled in pay, are called *Azmozglans*, and behave themselves with much sub-

missiveness towards their Seniors and Governours: but when once they are honoured with the title of *Janizaries*, they grow by degrees into an intolerable pride and haughtiness. Till of late they were not permitted to marry, neither can any of their Sons be accounted any account the basest) the eldest only excepted: to whom this privilege was granted by *Amurath* the third, when he came to the Crown. They are in number 40000, of which 16000 are always resident in *Constantinople*. In this City they are diversly employed, being as Constables to see the peace kept; as Clerks of the Market, to see to the weights and measures; as Officers, to arrest common Offenders; as Wardens, to look to the Gates, to guard the Houses of safety; in which charge they are very faithful. Their pay is but five Aspers a day, and two Gowns yearly; neither are their hopes great, the command of 10, 20, or 100 men being their greatest preferment: yet are they very obsequious to their Captain or *Aga*, who is in place inferior to the meanest *Bassa*, though in power perhaps above the chiefest. For the crafty Turks joyn not Power and Authority; and if they observe the *Janizaries* to love and respect their *Aga*, they quickly deprive him of Life and Office. The Founder of this Order was *Amurath* the first, Anno 1365, their greatest Establisher, *Amurath* the second: the name signifieth young Souldiers.

Now concerning these *Janizaries*, we will further consider, 1. The way they bear in designing the Successor. 2. Their Infidelity towards the Emperour and his Officers. 3. Their behaviour in the vacancy of the Throne. 4. Their Punishments.

1. Concerning the first, I never find any particular way the *Janizaries* carried, in the designation of their Emperour, till the death of *Mahomet* the Great: when the *Bassies* having chosen *Corum* the Son of *Bajazet*, were over-ruled by the *Aga* and his *Janizaries*, who more inclined to *Bajazet* his Father, and Son to *Mahomet*, who more I am not ignorant that when this *Mahomet* succeeded in the Throne, the joyful acclamations made by the Souldiers, was accounted the chiefest sign of his secure and perpetuated Establishment. But the chief Instance of their power herein, was the intronizing of *Selimus* the First, who being but the Seventh Son of this *Bajazet*, was not only preferred by them before his Brethren in his Fathers time; and by their aids also he severally mastered Examples, even of late, Anno 1622, they slew the young Emperour *Osman*, drew his Uncle *Mustapha* out of Prison, and established him in the Royalty.

2. As for the next, the first Example in which I find them peccant toward their Prince, was at the beginning of the Reign of the above-mentioned *Bajazet*; when hearing of the intended death of *Achmet Bassa* whom they loved, they broke open the Court Gates, and told the Emperour, They would reach him, like a Drunkard, a Bagd, and a Rasel as he was, to his Great Place and Calling with more Sobriety and Discretion. Not long after, conceiving further displeasure against the said *Bajazet*, they shook their Weapons against him, and refused to take him into the midst amongst them; and were not, without great and vile submission on his part, appeased. Against *Selimus* the first they also mutined; when being resolved to winter in *Armenia*, for the better pursuit of his victories against the *Persian*, he was by them forced to turn home unto *Constantinople*. Against *Solyman* they refused, his chief *Bassa* or Favorite. Against *Amurath* the

third, for placing over them a new *Aga*, they so strongly opposed themselves, that first they set fire on *Constantinople*, and burnt therein, besides Shops and Ware-houses, twenty five great Inns, seven Temples, and 15000 Houses; and in the end constrained him to give them money; and to yield also into their hands two of his chief Counsellors, by them supposed to be their Adversaries, whom they drew about the streets. Finally, (to omit the tumult 1622. above-named) in the year 1600, they grew so discontented with *Mahomet* the third, that they not only threatened to destroy the principal Officers of the Court, and the banishment of the *Sultane* his Mother; but the depouing of himself also.

3. Now for the third, I find it to have been the custom of these *Janizaries*, between the Death of an Old Emperour, and the Beginning of a New, to commit divers Infidelities; as the rifling of the Houses of the *Jews* and *Christians*, among whom they dwell; the murdering of the *Bassies* and principal men about the Court, whom they suspected not to have favoured them; and a number of the like outrageous mischiefs. Of these we find frequent mention, as after the death of *Amurath* the second, and *Mahomet* the Great: at which last time the Merchants at *Constantinople*, being natural Turks, escaped not their ravenous hands; neither could *Murad-Bassa* avoid the fury of their Swords. This spoil they took for so certain a due, that if they were disappointed of it, they would presently raise Commotions both in Court, Field and City; unless some present Satisfaction were made them. To this end, *Achmet* distributed among them two millions and a half of Ducats; *Selimus* the first, two millions; others made an encroach of their daily pay. But *Selimus* the second, distributing among them 100000 his *Seraglio*, till he had enlarged his bounty; and the *Great Basses* were wrapped about the Pate with their Carriers, for perfwading them to quietness. Now to prevent of the Empire was usually committed, the Death of the old Emperour was with all secrecy concealed, till the arrival of the new. To omit others, I will instance in the deaths of *Mahomet* the first, and *Solyman* only. This *Solyman* died at the Siege of *Sigha* in Hungary, which was so cunningly concealed by *Mahomet-Bassa* the space of twenty days; that before the *Janizaries* knew of it, his Son *Selimus* had possessed himself of *Constantinople*, and came also to their Army then in retreat homewards. For this *Mahomet* privately strangled the Physicians and Apothecaries, which knew of his death; commanded the Souldiers to go on in their siege; and divers times shewed them the Emperour sitting in his Horse litter, as (being troubled with the Gout) he used to do: and when the City was taken, marched home with his dead Body, sitting still in the same manner. So after the death of *Mahomet* the First, the *Bassies* of the Court called their *Divanes* as formerly they used; gave order for the levying of an Army, as if some War were intended; and the Physicians went up and down with their Potions; as if they had still in cure. But the Pensioners and *Janizaries* misdoubting the matter, with all eagerness desired to see him; which when the *Bassies* durst not deny, they appointed the next day for their visit. The next day, the body was apparelled in Royal large Robes; placed in a Chair at the end of a long Gallery, and a little Boy cunningly set behind him, to move the Kings hand to his head as if he should stroke his beard, as his manner was; which signs of life and strength the Souldiers seeing, held themselves contented and so was his death concealed the space of 41 days.

4. As for the last, These insolent and unfufferable
Q999
pranks

pranks, committed so commonly by these masterful slaves, to exceedingly stomached Bajazet the second, that he secretly purposed with himself, for curing so dangerous a disease, to use a desperate remedy; which was to kill and destroy suddenly all the Janizaries. It is like that this Bajazet, being a Scholar, had read how Constantine the Great had called the Praetorian Soldiers, and destroyed their Camp, as men that were the cause of all the fits in his Empire, and whose pride was come to an intolerable height: and having the same cause to destroy his Janizaries, hoped to have done it with as much ease and safety as the other did. But they having notice of the Plot, for the time continued founded and linked together, that he durst not then attempt it; and afterward siding with his Son Selimus, call him out of his Throne into his grave. Since which time the Emperours never durst punish them openly; but when any of them proved delinquent, he is sent privately in the night-time to Pera over against Constantinople: where, by the way he is drowned, and a Piece of Ordinance shot off, to signify the performing of the Sultans command.

Now for the Emperours themselves, we will consider them in matters of pleasure, in matters of Ceremony, and in matters of State; the last being considerable in three main points, which are, the murdering of their Brethren, the removing of their Sons, their Revenue, and therein a touch of their Government. To these we will add, what apparent symptoms may be observed to prognosticate the standing, decreasing, and increasing of this puissant Monarchy.

1. For the first, he hath not so few as 500 (sometimes 1000) choice Virgins kept in a *Seraglio* by themselves, all Slaves born of Christian Parents, and indeed the Rarest Beauties of his Empire. When he is disposed to take his pleasure with any of them, they are all ranked in a Gallery; and he is by the *Agâ* of the Women prepared for his Bed, to whom he giveth his Handkerchief. She that beareth him the first Son, is honoured with the title of *Sultans*, (Queen-Mother we may call her) neither can he make any of them free, unless he marry them. When the *Sultan* dieth, all his Women are carried into another *Seraglio*, where they are strictly looked to, and liberally provided for; and not seldom times are bestowed by the succeeding *Sultan*, on his Great *Bassas*, and such as he chiefly favoureth, which is a principal honour. They are attended on by Women and Eunuchs; these being not gelded only, but deprived of all their Genitals, and supplying the uses of Nature with a Silver Quill, which inhumane custom was brought in among them by *Selimus* the second, because he had seen a Gelding cure a Mare.

2. These Ceremonies are either performed by them, which is for the most part the building of a *Mosche* only to help to the Salvation of their Souls; or towards them by others, which are most apparent in the entertainment of Embassadors. For when such come to his presence, they are led between two of these Courtiers, and coming before the Throne (on both sides whereof the *Bassas* sit with admirable silence, resembling rather *Statues* than men) they bow themselves to the ground with all humility: laying their hands on their breast, but never uncovering their heads, which (as was noted before) is counted an undecency. When they are to depart, they go all backwards; it being accounted very irreverent to turn their back-parts toward a Prince so glorious. The reason why they are thus brought in between two, is said to be for their greater honour: but is indeed a fear they have, lest the *Grand Seigneur*, under the pretence of a Salutation, or the delivery of an Embassy, should be stabbed. Which wariness they have used, ever since the time that *Alies*

Cobeltiz, a *Servian*, scrambling from among the slain at the battle of *Cassova*, and being admitted to the speech of *Amurath* the first, the Author of that overthrow, flabbed him into the belly with his Dagger.

3. Amongst all the Fears and Discontents that be, none have been with more Unkindness begun, or more Eagerly prosecuted, than those of Brothers; and that not only in private Families, but in the Stems of Princes, the multitude of Pretenders, being the Original of most *Civil Wars*. To prevent these publick Emotions, the Emperours of *Havassia* use to immure up all their younger Children in the Hill *Amara*; the *Persians* do put out the Eyes of their younger Brothers, and the *Turks* do murder them. Strange and horrid courses, whereby to avoid the fear of a War in the State, they stir up a War in their own Bowels. The first amongst the *Turks* that began this barbarous cruelty, was *Bajazet* the first, on his Brother *Isaac*; whom immediately after his Fathers death, he strangled with a Bow-string: this being the only instrument of their *Fratricide*, because thereby none of the blood-royal of *Ottoman* is spilt on the ground. After him, *Mahomet* the Great caused his young Brother, then at nurse, to die the death; and was not without much ado persuaded from being the Executioner himself. *Amurath* the third, caused his five brethren to be at once strangled before his face; and *Mahomet*, his Son no fewer than nineteen in one day. By this course they imagine their own Estate to be infinitely secured, as knowing that *Musapha* a younger Son, stirred a Rebellion against *Amurath*, and *Zemet*, against *Bajazet*, both the second of those names: that *Solyman*, *Musa*, and *Ist*, severally afflicted *Mahomet* the first; and *Corcut*, *Selimus*, the first of these names also. But yet they will not know, that nothing sooner putteth their younger Brothers into these acts of Hostility, than an inevitable certainty of a violent and unnatural Death: whereas were they but free of Life, and a Liberal and Princely Maintenance, it is more than probable, they would rest content, as in other Kingdoms the younger Princes do. And notwithstanding their barbarous Policy, they are not quite free from fear, as knowing the *Counterfeits* have heretofore much disturbed the quiet of their Predecessors: for thus we find *Amurath* the second to have been vexed by one, that took upon him the name of *Musapha*, elder brother to *Mahomet* then late deceased; who was much furthered and aided by the *Greek* Princes. This hath been one of the vulgar policies of Princes to kindle flames of Fidelity in their neighbours Countries. In the infancy of the *Roman* Empire we find a counterfeit *Agrippa*, after that a counterfeit *Nero*; and before them, two counterfeit *Alexanders* in *Syria*. But never was Realm so often troubled with these *Mock-Kings*, as *England*: a counterfeit *Richard* the Second, being made in the time of *Henry* the Fourth; a counterfeit *Mortimer*, in the time of *Henry* the Sixth; a counterfeit Duke of *York*, a counterfeit Earl of *Warwick*, under *Henry* the Seventh; and a counterfeit *Edward* the Sixth, under *Queen Mary*. To prevent these walking Spirits, *Mahomet* the Third laid out the dead Bodies of his Father and nineteen Brethren, as a common Spectacle for all that passed by, or would come to behold them. Of late indeed the *Grand Seigneur* *Musapha* miraculously escaped the Bow-string twice; 1. When his Brother *Isaac*, and 2. When *Osmen* his young Nephew were made *Sultans*; and was the first in this Empire that ever did succeed in the collateral Line, as *Israhim* the late *Sultan* was the second on the death of *Murat* or *Amurath* the Fourth, his elder Brother.

4. The removing or the young Princes is done for three Reasons: 1. To wean them from the pleasures of the Court. 2. To train them up in Arms, and inure them to hard-

hardness. 3. And principally to avoid the danger of a Competitor, whereof old Princes are especially jealous. The common places delinuated to this Princely exile, are like Towns of *Natolia*. Neither do the old *Sultans* by such a great distance think themselves secure altogether; but carry a vigilant eye over their Sons Actions, and have suspicion being cause sufficient to destroy them. So we find *Musapha*, Son to *Solyman*, the hopefulllest branch that ever sprang from the *Ottoman* tree, to have been shamefully strangled by the command of his Father; upon a negotiated with the *Persian* King's Daughter. When these Princes are once settled in their Government, it is a crime and come unto *Confiscation*, before their Fathers Death, or unless they are by their Fathers sent for. Of this we have a Tragical example in *Mahomet*, a Prince of great hope, Son to *Bajazet* the second: who desiring to see the face of his Fathers Court, left *Magnesia*, to which he was by his Father confined; and attended by two or three Gentlemen, came in the habit of a Sea-faring man turned to his charge. This strange action being quickly divulged abroad, and by divers variously interpreted, stirred such jealousies in the suspicious head of his old Father, that he took order not long after to have him secretly poisoned.

5. As for the ordinary revenue, it consisteth either in money received, or money saved. The money saved, is first by the *Tartars*, of whom he commands continually 60000 to attend him in his wars, without any pay but the Spoil of the Enemy. And secondly by the *Timariots*, who nourish and bring into the Field more Horse, than any Prince in Christendom can keep (as we have already said) for 14 Millions of Gold. The money received (according to *Boternus*) is only 15 millions of *Sultans*, which is nothing in respect of so great an Empire. The chief reason whereof is the tyrannical government of the *Turks*, which deterrs men from tillage, merchandize, and other improvements of their estates; as knowing all their gettings to lie at the *Grand Seigneur's* mercy. His Embassage cometh before him empty-handed; no man is Master of his own wealth, further than it stands with the Emperours liking; so that his great *Bassas* are but as sponges, to suck up riches till their Coffers swell; and then to be squeezed into his Treasury. These men, as he advanceth without envy, so can he destroy without danger: no man here hoping for partakers, if he should resist, as not being ignorant that one mans fortune is built upon the desired overthrow of another. Such riches as they Coffers, who giveth only what he pleaseth to the Emperours dren of the deceased. These *Bassas* have in their particular Province, their *Divans*, or Law-Courts, where justice hath been administered formerly with great integrity such as miscarry in their right, shall without delay know Emperour, are sure to die for it. Over these *Bassas* (the Council) preside two *Beglerbegs*, one for *Greece*, the other for *Natolia*.

6. Concerning the present state of the Empire, many judge it to be rather in the wane, than the increase; which are the chief.

1. The body is grown too monstrous for the head, the

Sultans since the death of *Solyman* never accompanying their Armies in person (except *Murat*, or *Amurath* the fures at home.

2. The *Janizaries*, who have been accounted the principal strength of this Empire, are grown more factious in the Court, than valiant in the Camp; corrupted with ease and liberty, drowned in prohibited wines, enfeebled with the continual converse of women, and fallen from their former austerly of discipline.

3. They have of late given no increase unto their Dominions; and as in the paths of virtue, *Non progredi est regredi*, so in Empires, by violence gotten, when they cease to be augmented, they begin to be diminished.

4. Rebellsions have in these later times been in this Empire strangely raised, and mightily supported, which commotions the former *Sultans* were never acquainted with.

5. The greatness of this Empire is such, that it laboureth with nothing more than the weightiness of it itself; that it must in a manner needs decline, *Pondere pressa sua*, al body, a surfeit killeth more than fasting; for as in a natural Politick also, too much extent of Empire doth sooner draw on a ruine, than either too little or a mediocrity.

6. The Sons of the *Grand Seigneur*, whose bravery of mind is ever suspected by their Fathers, are nursed up contrary sometimes to their natural inclinations (in all effeminate; which once rooted in them in their youth, doth Biddious pleasures.

7. They have lost much of that fear and terror, which formerly their very name did carry with it: inasmuch that not the *Venetians* only have by Sea often mated, and once overthrown them; the *Hungarians* without their great forces, for the space of 200 years, by land; the *Poles* forced them to dishonourable retreat and sometimes discomfit in the field; the *Transylvanians* did divers times discomfit them, with the death of many of their trade; and the poor *Emir* of *Sidon* held it out against them many years together.

8. By the avarice and corruption reigning in the Court, all Peace and War, all Councils and Informations, all Injuries and Favours being now made saleable. And

9. It is visible and apparent, that their Empire was long since at the highest: *Et naturaliter quod procedere non potest, recedit*, as *Vellius* hath it, when an Empire can ascend no higher, by the ordinary course of nature it must have a fall. All these are more than probable Prognosticks any of these, that is to say, the present state of Affairs. The young Emperour *Mahomet* the fourth, now reigning, is but a weak Staff to support so vast an Empire, considering not only the infinite casualties, to which children are naturally subject: but the dangers which he may justly fear from a Rebellious Souldiery, and a Factious Court. Who by the murder of one Emperour, and the deposition of two, have made themselves so formidable, but withal so odious in the sight of the Imperial House, that there is no way left to save them from a merited vengeance, but to translate the Empire to some other Family; though by the rooting out of this. Which whenever it shall happen, either by the natural death or unnatural destruction of the present *Sultan*, it will draw with it an extermination of the *Ottoman* Race, except by miracle. Supposing then the Line of *Ottoman* to fail (as it is most probable that it will) what will become of this vast Empire? Three there will be to offer

at it, viz. the *Crim-Tartars*, the *Janizaries*, and the *Bassas*. And first the *Crim-Tartars* may plead a composition, made by his Ancestors, with the Princes of the *Ottoman* Family; which is, that he supplying them with 60000 men at his own charges, when their occasions so require, should on the failure of the heirs males succeed in this Empire. Besides which, he may hope for no small succours, not only from the rest of the *Tartarian* Princes, but even from the *Great Chan* himself, to recover his Estate herein, if withholden from him: thereby to add to the present greatness and renown of the *Tartars*, the access of such a spacious Empire. 2. The *Bassas* may conceive no small possibilities of dividing this great Empire among themselves, partly by the example of *Alexander's* Captains, who after their Masters death (there being yet some of the Blood Royal remaining) parted amongst themselves not only the new gotten Provinces, which they had conquered from the *Persians*; but even the Kingdom of *Macedon*, his old inheritance: partly by an example in their own Histories, by which it appeareth, that after the death of *Aladine* the second, *Caraman*, *Saracban*, *Cnidin*, *Carajus*, and the rest of the more powerful Commanders, divided among them the whole *Turkish* Kingdom in the *Lesser Asia*: and partly by the opportunity which they have as Governours in their several Provinces, and having so many bands of Souldiers under their command; which may easily invest them as Proprietaries in those Estates, of which they have already such a fair possession. And so we find the *Sultans*, or Provincial Governours, or the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*, to have done before them. 3. The *Janizaries* may also build their hopes on as fair foundations, as being the Sword and Buckler of the *Ottoman* Empire; got, and maintained by their valour chiefly. Who to excite them to the enterprize, have the example of the *Pratorian* Guards of the *Roman* Empire (a body far more Politick and better compacted than this is,) who out of their own company created the far greater part of the *Roman* Emperours, neither the Provinces or Senate daring to oppose them in it. But above all examples, that of the *Mamluks* of *Egypt* doth make fairest for them; who were born of Christian Parents, as these are; purposely entertained and inured to the Wars, to take from the natural Subjects, the use of Arms, as these are; men of approved Valour, and the chief Bulwark of that Kingdom against the Christians,

as these are; and then why may they not be like them in this last attempt, for sitting in their Masters Throne, as these *Mamluks* did? Add hereunto, that they are already (in a manner) possessed of *Constantinople*, the head Town and heart of the Empire; and their hopes are not vain. For my part I hold them to be the men most like to carry it, unless the Princes of Christendom laying aside private malice, joyn all in arms to strip this proud Peacock of his feathers: and (upon so blessed an advantage) to break in pieces with a rod of Iron, this insolent and burdensome Monarchy. A thing rather to be desired than expected. But this by way of supposition, and as in a dream, I awake again.

The Ensign of this Empire (or Arms of it) is the *Croissant*, or half Moon; but how Blazoned I cannot tell you: nor are the Learned yet resolved on the beginnings of that bearing. Some derive it to them, from the Eastern Gentiles, who worshipped the Moon under both Sexes, as we learn in *Spartianus*. Some make it common to them with the other *Mahumetans*; and they derive it from a pretended miracle of *Mahomet*; who to shew his power, is said to have made the Moon fall into his lap in two pieces, and to have restored her whole again to the heavens. Others are of Opinion, that it was taken by the *Grand Seigneur* at the winning of *Constantinople*; *Ut signum victæ gentis penes Orientis imperium esset*. And of this mind is *Justus Lipsius*, born in some old *Byzantine* Coins. A pretty plausible conceit; and therefore till we have a better, may pass as current as the money.

And thus much I thought convenient to insert in this place, concerning the original, proceeding, and continuance; the natural dispositions, policies, and forces of the *Turks*: this being as the only Province which retaineth their name; so both the first they were possessed of, and the last which they have fully conquered, of all their Dominions. Which said, we must here take our leave of the *Turkish* Empire, and once again of the *Roman* also, of which the River *Tigris* and the *Caspian* Sea were the utmost bounds; not meeting again with either of them, unless by accident (or some unprofitable expeditions) till we come to *Egypt*, and there we shall hear farther of them.

And thus much for *TURCOMANIA*.



O F

MEDIA and PERSIA.



Here I have joyned together also, because the affairs thereof have been so united, in making up the second of the four great *Monarchies*, and running the same fortunes ever since; that they are hardly to be parted in course of story, though each must have unto it self a distinct *Chorography*. First then, we begin with *MEDIA*.

MEDIA is bounded on the East, with *Parthia*, and some part of *Hyrkania*, Provinces of the *Persian* Empire; on the West, with *Armenia Major*, and some part of *Assyria*; on the North, with the *Caspian* Sea, and those parts of *Armenia Major*, which now pass in the account of *Georgia*; and on the South, with *Persia*. So called from *Madai* the Son of *Japhet*, by whom first planted and possessed, after that general dispersion made at *Babel*. Known by this name amongst the Ancients, both *Greeks* and *Romans*; but at this time *Shirvan* by the *Turks* and *Persians*: the word signifying in the language of this Country, a *Milke-Plain*.

The Country of a large extent, and of so different nature, as one would think it not the same. The North parts lying betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the *Hyrceanian* Sea, very cold and comfortless: so barren, that for the most part they make their bread of dried *Almonds*, and their drink of the juice of certain herbs. Fruit-trees they have but few, and those but of Apples; nor any droves of tame Cattel, as in other places, their food being generally on *Venison*, or the flesh of wild beasts took in hunting. But on the South-side of the *Taurus*, the soil is very rich, and the Country pleasant, plentiful both of Corn and Wine, and all things necessary; full of fat Pastures, some of them so large in compass, that 50000 Horses do graze upon them.

The people anciently great Warriours, as those who ruined the great Empire of the *Babylonians*; and laid upon themselves and their own virtue, the foundation of the second *Monarchy*. But being not long after incorporated into the same Empire with the *Persians*, have not only ever since followed the same fortunes with them, but participate of their nature also: and therefore we shall hear more of their Character, when we come to *Persia*. Polygamy anciently amongst them, so far from being esteemed a sin or an inconvenience, that it was a punishment for the common *Villager* to have less than seven Wives; or the Woman, if of noble birth, fewer than five Husbands. In their Wars they use commonly to envenom their Arrows with an oyl or liquor, made of a venomous water called *Naphra*, whereof there is great plenty both here, in *Persia*, and *Assyria*. The oyl called *Oleum Mediacum*, from this people only, because their invention; and by them most milchievously used. The Arrow which was annotated with it, being shot from a backer Bow, (for a swift and strong motion took away

its vertue) did burn the flesh wherein it fastned, with so great a violence, that nothing but dust could mitigate the fury of it; water increasing rather than diminishing that malignant flame.

The *Christian* Religion was first here planted by St. *Thomas*, but never had the happiness to be so universally embraced, as in other places, always opposed and suppressed, either by *Paganisms*, in the time of the old *Persian* Kings; or by *Mahometanism*, since the first conquest of this Country by the power of the *Saracens*. Some *Christians* yet there be amongst them either of the *Armenian*, or *Nestorian* Sects, (as in all other parts of the *Persian* Empire) the specialties of their Religion have been elsewhere spoke of. Here live also very many *Jews*, indulged the free exercise of their Religion: many of which are Defendants of those *Triber*, which were transplanted hither by *Salmanasser*. But the Religion generally embraced and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*, according to the *Sophian* or *Persian* Sects; the Language of which Nation they do also speak, though they had a Language of their own, different from that of the *Parthians*, *Elamites*, or *Persians*, as appeareth *Acts* 2. 9. where they are reckoned as distinct.

Mountains of chief note, 1. *Orontes*, 2. *Corumus*, 3. *Chaboras*, the boundary betwixt *Media* and *Assyria*, 4. *Jafonim*, 5. *Lagous*, all of them (except *Chaboras* only) the disjointed branches of Mount *Taurus*: which is here more broken and divided, than in any part of his course besides.

Out of these flow their principal Rivers, 1. *Amandus*, 2. *Strates*, and 3. *Carindus*; of greatest eminence in this Country, in the time of *Prolomy*, but otherwise of no great account or observation. 4. *Cane*, the Divider of this Province from *Armenia Major*, but whether any of the former under this new name, I am not able to affirm. Add hereunto the great Lake, now called *Argis*, (by the *Persians* *Vashtan*) but by *Sirabo* named *Marianna Palmu*, situate in the Confines of *Assyria*, *Media*, and *Armenia*; of the Fish whereof dried by the Sun and wind, and sold into divers other Countries, the people of these parts raise a great commodity.

In former times it was divided into many Provinces, the principal of which 1. *Tropatene*, 2. *Choromabrene*, 3. *Daricus*, 4. *Marciane*, 5. *Amaratene*, and 6. *Syro-Media*: these and the rest reduced to two in the later reckonings, viz. *Atropatia*, and 2. *Media Major*.

1. *ATROPATIA* is that part hereof, which lieth betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the *Caspian* Sea. So called from that *Atropatus*, Governour of these parts in the time of *Darius*, the last *Persian* Monarch; who so valiantly held out against the *Macedonians*. The *Tropatene* (as I take it) of the ancient Writers. A barren, cold, and unwholesome Country, as before described; and for that cause allotted for the dwelling of many of the Captive *Israelites*, brought hither by *Salmanasser*, when he conquered that Kingdom: their numbers being found so great

great in this Northern Region, that Benjamin the Jew, reckoned no fewer than 5000 of them in one City only, which he calleth by the name of *Maddai*. And that great numbers of them were transplanted hither, appeareth by that passage, 2 Kings 17. 6. where it is said, that they were placed in *Halab* and *Habor* by the River of *Gozan*, and in the Cities of the Medes. Now *Halab* or *Chalab* seems most probably to be that Region of *Affrya* which *Prolomy* calleth *Chalacene*, in the North of that Country, towards *Media*, *Habor*, or *Chabor*, to be that Mount *Chabernus*, which parteth this Country from *Affrya*, in which Mountainous tract there was in those times a City of the same name also. Betwixt which City and the banks of the *Caspian* Sea, 1100 miles of the Northern Latitude: in which there are apparent footsteps of the name of the River *Gozan*, upon whose banks it was most likely to be seated.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Hamadum*, by Benjamin the Jew called *Madai*, replenished in his time with families of the captive *Israhelites*. 2. *Gauzan*, another dwelling of those Tribes, spoken of before. 3. *Mandagarsis*, of which nothing extant but the name. 4. *Celan*, inhabited by *Gels* of the Ancients, whom the Greeks call *Cadusii*. 5. *Bechu*, more towards the *Caspian* Sea, hence called *Mars de Buchu*. 6. *Eres*, a place of great strength, but possessed by the *Turks*, and made the residence of some of their principal Officers: taken by *Mithras* General of the *Turk*ish Forces, in the time of *Amurath* the third, and by him fortified as the Gate and entrance of this Country. 7. *Shumachia*, or *Shamak*, betwixt *Eres* and *Dervent*, taken by *Osman* Bassa, at the same Anno 1578 and made the residence of a *Beglerbeg*, Anno 1583. Conceived to be the *Cynopolis* of *Prolomy*, by the *Persians* called *Cyrekchah*; bearing the name of *Cyrus* the great *Persian* Monarch, by whom built or beautified. Remarkable at the present for a Pillar of Flint-stones, inter-woven with the heads of many of the *Persian* Nobility, most barbarously slain by one of the late *Sultans*, and this Pillar here erected for a terror to others.

2. MAJOR MEDIA, or MEDIA specially so called, is that part hereof, which lieth on the South of the Mountain *Taurus*. Commended by the Ancients: for one of the goodliest Countries in all *Asia*: the fields (saith *Ammianus*) yielding abundance of Corn and Wine, for their fatnels and fertility very rich, and no less pleasant for fresh Springs and clear veins of water: where one may see plenty of green Meadows; and in them a breed of generous Horses, which they call *Nisai*, mounted by as valiant and generous Riders, who with great jollity use to go unto the Wars, and charge furiously upon the Enemy. The men commended by *Polybius* (ἐξ ὧν ἀνδράς ἀνδρῶν, &c.) as well as the Country.

Cities of most note in it, 1. *Ecbatana*, of as great antiquity as *Babylon*; for we find that *Semiramis* the wife of *Ninus*, in a War made against the *Medes*, who had then rebelled, taking an affection to the place, caused water-conduits to be made to it from the further side of the Mountain *Orontes*, digging a passage through the hills, with great charge and labour. Destroyed by the injury of time, it was re-edified by *Deiotes* the sixth, King of the *Medes*; and afterwards much beautified and enlarged by *Selucus Nicanor*, successor unto *Alexander* in his *Asian* Conquests. For beauty and magnificence little inferior to *Babylon*, or *Ninive*, before described. In compass 180 or 200 Furlongs, which make about 24 Italian miles. The walls thereof affirmed in the Book of *Judith* to be 70 Cubits high, 50 Cubits broad, and the Towers upon the Gates 100 Cubits higher; all built of hewn and po-

lished stone, each stone being six Cubits in length, and three in breadth. But this is to be understood only of the innermost wall, there being seven in all about it; each of them higher than the other, and each distinguished by the colour of their several Pinnacles, which gave unto the eye a most gallant Prospect. From which variety of colours, it is thought to have the name of *Aghabab*, or *Aghababana*. In former times, the ordinary residence of the Monarchs of the *Medes* and *Persians*, in the heats of the Summer; as *Susa* (the chief City of *Sassania*) in the cold of Winter. The Royal Palace being about a mile in compass, was built with all the cost and cunning that a stately Mansion did require: some of the beams thereof of Silver; and the rest of Cedar; but those of Cedar strengthened with Plates of Gold. Said by *Jofephus* to be built by the Prophet *Daniel*. Which must be understood no otherwise in the truth of Story, than that he overlaw the Workmen, or contrived the Model; appointed to that office by *Darius Medus*, to whom the building of the same is ascribed by others. Neglected by the Kings of the *Parthian* Race, it became a ruine. 2. *Tauris*, situate in or near the place of *Ecbatana*, out of whose rubbish it was built. Distant 150 miles from the *Caspian* Sea, under the shadow of *Orontes*, now called *Baranus*; but opening Southwards, towards a large and spacious Campagne, in compass about six miles, and beautified on the South-west within a large and pleasant Garden, the work of *Sultan Tamas*, who resided here often: the buildings for the most part of Brick, with flat Roofs, (as generally in the East) well peopled, as containing 200000 persons of all sorts and Sexes. Of great trading, ill subdued by the *Turks*, by whom it was thrice taken within very few years, viz. by *Selimus* the first, Anno 1514. by *Solyman* the Magnificent, Anno 1530. and by *Osman* Bassa, General of *Amurath* the third, Anno 1585. But this last finding it too chargeable always to be guarded, and not otherwise tenable but by force, pulled down the Walls, and built a large and spacious Citadel: both Town and Citadel recovered by *Emir-Han* Mirza, Prince of *Persia*, and Father of *Sultan Sophy*, Anno 1614. after it had been for an hundred years a continual prey unto the *Turks*. 3. *Arfatia*, so named by *Prolomy*, and by the name conjectured to be built by some of the *Parthian* Race. Ruined long since, but more beautifully revived than ever in the present. 4. *Cabvin*, raised from the ruins of that Town. Situate in a fair and open place on the banks of a little River, which serveth it for household uses, but not for traffick. Exceedingly enriched by the removal of the Court from *Tauris* hither, in the time of *Tamas*; partly invited thereunto by the richness of the soil, and the commodiousness of the place; but chiefly that he might without danger attend the *Turks*, who began to encroach on his Dominions. In compass about seven miles, beautified with a large Market-place, many stately *Mosques*, and the *Sultans* Palace: this last adjoining to the first, convenient enough, but neither of great state nor beauty. 5. *Rager*, or *Raga*, mentioned in the Book of *Tobit*, so called from *Reu* or *Ragan* the son of *Phaleg*, the founder of it: situate near the spacious Plain, memorable for the great breed of Horses spoken of before; and therefore in that Book called the *Plain of Rages*. Repaired afterwards by the *Greeks*, it was named *Eucarpus*, and so stands in *Prolomy*. 6. *Nassivan*, supposed by some to be the *Arifasta*, more probably the *Najvana*, of the Ancient Writers: a place much aimed at by the *Turks* in their *Persian* Wars. 7. *Ardoosin*, or on near the banks of the great Lake *Arghis*, spoken of before: the birth-place and chief Seat of *Guine*, and *Aider*, the first Authors of the *Sophian* Sect; and the burial place of *Sultan Hysmah*, the first *Persian* Sultan of that Line. 8. *Sul-*

tania, about six days journey from *Tauris*, environed with high Mountains; the tops of which continually covered with Snow, may be seen far off: founded by *Alypini*, the eight King of the Sixth or *Tartarian* Dynasty, and by him made the Royal Seat of the *Persian* *Sultans*, whence it had the name. But ruined by the *Tartars*, it retaineth nothing now of its former splendor, but the *Mosques*, or Temples (one of them, the fairest in the East) which the *Tartars* spared. 9. *Troyan*, in the Territory of *Sultania*, situate in a large Plain, but not far from the Mountains, beautified with a fair Market-place, many pleasant Gardens of private men; and one belonging to the King, environed with a Wall of greater circuit than the City. 10. *Turcoman*, in the middle way betwixt *Tauris* and *Cabvin*. 11. *Damoon*, at the foot of *Taurus*, a Town of 200 houses, not here considerable but for the signification of the name; which is said to signify a Second Plantation: and being situate at the foot of so high a Mountain, occasioned some of the *Jews* to think that the *Ark* rested not far off, as perhaps it did. 12. *Mauros*, in the Extremity of the Country, but of lesser note.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the Posterity of *Madai*, as before was said; *Ragan* the son of *Phaleg* taking up those parts, which lay next *Affrya*. Divided in long tract of time into several Tribes, as the *Cadusii*, *Amariachi*, *Margassi*, *Sagarii*, *Dehyees*, *Tapyri*, and some others. Governed by Kings immediately from the first Plantation; for we find that *Pharnus* King hereof, was overthrown and slain by *Ninus* the Grand-son of *Nimrod*. After this made subject to the *Affryans*, their Kings were only *Tiular*, at the best but *Honagers*, perhaps no better than *Provincial* Governors, under that great Monarchy. Of most esteem amongst them was that *Arseus*, who with an Army of 800000 men (if the number be not mistaken) encountered the *Cadusii*, by whom discomfited and slain. But the *Cadusii* so broken, that they were fain to put themselves under the power of the *Persians*; and so continued till the time of *Arbaces*, the last of these *Provincials*, and the first Monarch of the *Medes*. He living in the time of *Sardanapalus*, had the chance to see his Lord and Master in a woman's dress, spinning among his Concubines, and otherwise behaving himself in a brutish manner; which he moved him, that he resolved to be no longer subject to so vile a Monster. Communicating his thoughts unto *Bolochus*, Governor of *Babylon*, and well seen in *Astrology*, he was encouraged to proceed; and sped so well, that having made themselves Masters of *Ninive*, the Imperial City, (though *Sardanapalus* for a time put them thredway to it) they divided betwixt them his Estates. To *Bolochus* fell *Affrya*, and *Babylonia*, with the Provinces on the West of *Tigris*: To *Arbaces*, *Media*, and the rest, which now make up the Kingdom of *Persia*. But being a mild Prince, and desirous by fair and gentle means to assure his Empire, he confirmed the *Persian* *Satrapes* in their former Governments; reserving nothing to himself but a titular Sovereignty. Of whom and his Successors more, when we have taken in the rest of the Provinces.

PERSIA.

PERSIA is bounded on the East, with *India*; on the West, with *Media*, *Affrya*, and *Chaldea*; on the North, with *Tartary*; on the South, with the main Ocean. So called from *Persis* the predominant Province of it, that which gave Law to all the rest: as that is said to do from *Persis*, the son of *Jupiter* and *Danae*; affirmed by the *Grecians* to have conquered these Eastern Countries, and to have left his name to this. Of which thus

Isidore, *Persæ populi à Persico Rege sum vocati, qui à Grecis in Asian transiens ibi barbaras gentes gravi diuturnaque bello perdomuit, & victor nomen subavit. Gentis impoliti*. In the Scripture it is constantly called *Elam*, till the time of *Daniel* the Prophet, from *Elam*, the son of *Sem*, who was planted there. But after that the *Medes* and *Persians* had subdued *Babylon*, and transferred the supreme Monarchy to themselves, we find this people called by the name of *Paras*, (whence the name of *Persian* seems to come) the word *Paras* (or *Pharus*) signifying as much as Horseman. Given therefore to this Nation, as it is supposed, from an Edict of *Cyrus*, who not only taught them the art of Horsemanship, but let forth a Law, that it should be a reproach to any man to go on foot, *Sive milium sive parum itineris esset conficiendum*, whether the journey that he had to go were long or little. Called sometimes also *Achemenides*, from *Achemenides* the son of *Perses*, one of the first known Kings hereof; and by that name, (*Non tot Achemenides ardentur Sula Sagittis*) they occur in the second of *Propertius*. Where by *Achemenia Sagitta*, he means *Persian* Arrows.

It is of very great extent, stretched out in length from the 82 degree of Longitude, to the 120, being 38 degrees in all; and in breadth from the 23 degree of Northern Latitude, to the 43, being 20 more. According unto which position, with reference to the heavenly bodies, we shall find it seated under the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth Climates: the longest Summers day in the Southern parts, being thirteen hours almost three quarters; and fifteen hours one quarter in the parts most Northwards.

The Country not alike in all places, as it is impossible it should in so great a compass. But generally it is of a pure and whole some air, the high hills shading it on the one side from the heat of the *Cline* under which it lieth; and the warmth of the Sun, wherewith encompassed, cherishing a great part thereof. And so it is affirmed to be by *Quintus Curtius*, *Regio non alia in tota Asia salubrior habetur; temperatum cælum; hinc perpetuum jugum opacum & umbrifolium, quod æstus levat; illinc mare adjunc tum, quod modico tepore terras fovet*. Then for the Earth, it is by reason of the great heat of the Sun, very dry and sandy, in many places destitute of water; in the South parts thereof few Rivers, and not many Lakes; by consequence neither well peopled, nor manured, for the greatness of it: men loving to inhabit (and I cannot blame them) where they may have the use of water. Which notwithstanding, it is furnished with all necessities both for life and pleasure; one part affording that which the other wanteth, as shall be shewed in the description of the several Provinces.

The people anciently were trained up to the Wars, but chiefly unto *Archery*, from their very childhood. Indulged the liberty of having as many Wives as they pleased; they never saw the children begotten of them, until five years old. At that age sent unto their Fathers, they were taught presently to handle the Bow and *Arms*. Upon this ground we find the Bow of *Elam* mentioned by the Prophet *Jeremy*, Chap. 4. and the Quiver of *Elam* by the Prophet *Isaiah*, Chap. 22. 6. as the *Arms* peculiar to that Nation, or most used amongst them. They were good *horfemen* also, and well skilled at their Dart and Slings, till wealth and ease, and the pride of so great an Empire, made them wholly feminine: depriving them of those abilities both of mind and body, wherein they did excel most Nations in their harder times. In all their fortunes very obsequious, if not servile, to their Kings and Princes; in whose preference it was a crime to spit: but to deny obedience unto his Commands an offence so heinous, as was not to be punished with less than the

the loss of life, and want of burial. In this observance of their Kings followed, if not out-stripped, by the modern *Persian*. A race of men, affirmed to be *cunctarum hominum mitissimii*, the most meek or patient of the world, especially compared with those of the same Religion, the *Turks* and *Tartars*. Not haters of Learning, as the *Turks*; but studious, many of them in *Physick* and *Astrology*; most of the better sort much delighted in *Poetry*, which they give their minds to. For the most part addicted to *hospitality*, magnificent in expence, Lordly in their complements, fantastical in their Apparel, maintainers of *Nobility*, and desirous of peace. Such as apply themselves to *Trades*, and *Mechanic Arts*, prove excellent in the making of Silks, and Cloth of Gold: those which betake themselves to War, proving very good Soldiers, as the *Turks* have found unto their cost, who by their long Wars against them have got nothing but blows. The women said to be neat and cleanly, truly loving, gorgeous in Attire, and delightful in the liquefactions of pleasure.

Their Religion at the first was *Paganism*, wherein directed principally by their Priests or *Magi*, Men of a strict austere life, forbidding outward ornaments, and the use of Gold; making the ground their bed, and the herbs their food; their whole time spent in offering to the Gods the Prayers and Sacrifices of the people, as if they only might be heard; or else in Divinations, and fomenting of things to come; from whence the name of *Magic* and *Magician* are derived unto us. Studious in the knowledge of God and Nature, and therefore called by *Suidas*, not only *Philosophi*, lovers of Wisdom; but *Philolatri*, the lovers of God. Of such esteem, that as *Cicero* telleth us, the *Persian* Kings were not admitted to the Throne, till they were trained up in the Discipline of the *Magi*; and of such power and intimacy in the Royal Court, that one of those *Magi*, on the death of *Cambyses*, possessed himself of the *Persian* Monarchy. In a word, such as the *Druides* were to the *Galls* and *Britains*, the *Gymnosophists* or *Brachmans* to the ancient *Indians*, and the *Chaldeans* in the Empire of *Babylon*; the same, if not of greater sway in affairs of moment, were the *Persian* *Magi*. And *Persians* they must be if *Magi*; none but the Natives of that Country being to be admitted of that Society; though by a *Metaphor*, applied to the Professors of the same Arts, though of other Countries, as those which came from the East to worship *Christ*, are by *St. Matthew* called *Magi* (*Mat. 2. 1.*) though they came from *Arabia*.

The people then were *Gemiles* as to their Religion; and besides other Gods which the *Gemiles* worshipped, they were great *Idolaters* of the *Fire*; which they offered Sacrifice unto in time of peace, and carried it with them as their *Tuncular Deity*, in the time of War. At what time (especially if the King were there in person) it was born in the very front of their Army, attended on by their *Priests*, and followed by a train of Boys all clothed in Scarlet, to the number of 365, according to the number of the days of the year. In this equipage, with a great deal of pomp besides, did *Darius* set forwards to fight with *Alexander*, at the battle of *Issus* in *Cilicia*. A superstition derived from them to the *Medes* and *Affrians*, their next neighbouring Nations, and not extinguished to this day in some parts of this Country; in which many of those *Fire-worshippers* are still remaining. But from a God, it grew in time to be a *Gentleman* *Usher*, and to attend on Kings and persons of greatest eminence: used to be born before the Emperours of *Rome*, as a point of *State*. Inasmuch that *Commodus*, though fallen out with his Sister *Lucilla*, permitted her notwithstanding to enjoy her Seat in the publick Theatre, *sed ante personam*

2078, a fire to be born before her, as in former times, as we are told by *Herodian*.

The Christian Faith was first planted in the Provinces of the *Persian* Kingdom, by *St. Thomas* the Apostle, and held in all points answerable to those of the *Catholic* Church; till *Sapor* to despight the Emperor *Valerianus*, a right *Orthodox* Prince, commanded that all the Christians in his Dominions should conform themselves to the opinions and tendries of the *Æthiopian* Sect, by that means universally spread over all these Provinces. With whom here live now intermingled some *Armenian* Christians, who with their Patriarch removed thither, when their own Country was made the seat of a long and miserable War betwixt the *Persian* and the *Turk*; but found not here so safe a dwelling as they did expect: 1200 of them being slain by *Abas* the late *Persian* Sultan, on a suspicion that they went about to reconcile themselves to the Pope of *Rome* (whom he held to be more inclinable to the *Turk* than to him) in the year 1609. Which notwithstanding (so miserable a condition do these Christians live in) he suffered two Convents of *Augustine* and *Carmelite* Friars, to be settled at the same time, even in *Spawm-bain* it self, and many *Jesuits* to live peaceably up and down the Country, which serve for little else than to give intelligence. Here are also many *Jews* dispersed over all the Provinces of this Empire, allowed their *Synagogues*, and Publick Places of Assembly. But the Religion publicly authorized and countenanced, is that of *Mohammed*, imposed on this Country by the *Saracens*, when by them subdued: differing in some points from the *Turks*, especially about the true Successor of that false Seducer (of whom more anon;) the cause of the long Wars betwixt those Nations.

As for the *Persian* Language, it is very ancient, supposed to be as old as the Confusion at *Babel*: some words whereof, by *Daniel* and *Ezra* which lived in the *Persian* Court, have been made use of in some parts of the holy Scripture. A Tongue which still hath left some remainders of it, in the Language of the modern *Persian*, (as those of judgment in this tongue have delivered to us) notwithstanding so long tract of time, and the conquest of this Country by the *Greeks*, *Arabians*, *Turks* and *Tartars*. Not spoken only in this Country, nor limited within the Provinces of the *Persian* Empire; but used also in the Court and Camp of the *Great Mongul*, and some parts of *Zagathay*; and were not vulgar unto all, studied and understood by persons of more eminent fort, as the *Latin* by the Gentry of these Western parts. Inasmuch as he that hath this Language, may travel over all the East without an Interpreter.

Rivers in the South parts there are but few, as before was said, and those few not navigable; by consequence of little note or estimation. The principal of that be, are 1 *Eulani*, the chief River of *Susiana*, emptying it self into *Sulmas* *Persicus*: a River of so pure a stream, that the great *Persian* Kings would drink of no other water. The Northern parts more plentifully stored with that commodity, as having in it the famous Rivers of 2 *Ochi* in *Bactria*, a River of the greater note amongst the Ancients, because it was navigable, opening with a fair Channel into the *Caspian* Sea; to which it hathness from *Mount Taurus*: and so doth also, 3 *Oxi* in *Margiana*, a fatal bound to these great neighbours. A River which the *Persians* have seldom passed to enlarge their Dominions, but they received some notable overthrow at the hand of the *Scythians*; and when the *Tartars* made over it under the conduct of *Saba* the Chan of *Zagathay*, for the invasion of *Persia*, they were shamefully beat back again by *Elymas* *Sophy*. Nor is it less memorable in old stories, for the famous passage of *Alexander* over it, in pursuit

pursuit of the murderers of *Darius*. For having followed *Bessus* to the banks of this River, and not knowing how to pass over his men, there being neither Ships upon it, nor timber near at hand to build them, he caused a great number of bags and bladders to be stuffed with straw, and so in three days transported his Army. So that I may truly say with his own Historian, *Quoniam Consilium quod necessitas iussu erat, init*; Necessity is the best Author of fine inventions. 4 *Ziobris* in *Hyracania*, which rising out of the same mountainous tract (as the two last mentioned) after a long course above ground in the open light, hideth himself again for the space of 38 miles, and then breaketh out at a new Fountain, and And this *Alexander* the Great found to be true, by calling two oxen into the River *Ziobris*, which by the current of the stream were carried under the ground, and brought to light where the River had its rise again. 6 *Hidaro*, by what name known unto the Ancients I am not able to say, but of great note amongst modern Travellers, for the fall thereof into the Sea: so steep and strong, that the people are said to sacrifice or banquet under the fall thereof, the stream so violently shooting over their heads that it never wetted them.

Mountains of most note, are those which pass by the name of *Taurus*; which having left *Medi* on the West, passeth thorough the Northern Provinces of the *Persian* Empire, dividing *Parthia* from *Hyracania*, and *Paropamisus* from *Bactria*, and *Arta* from *Margiana*. Known by the names of *Coronus*, the *Seriphan* hills, *Paropamisus*, *Caucasus*; whereof more as occasion serveth in their proper places.

It is divided into the Particular Provinces of 1 *Susiana*, 2 *Peris*, 3 *Ormus*, 4 *Carmania*, 5 *Gedrosia*, 6 *Drangiana*, 7 *Arachosia*, 8 *Paropamisus*, 9 *Arta*, 10 *Dardania*, 11 *Hyracania*, 12 *Margiana*, 13 *Bactria*. Which we will severally survey in the *Geography* and story, till we have joyned them all together in the *Persian* Monarchy; and then pursue the History as conjunct and fashioned into the body of one Empire.

1. SUSIANA.

SUSIANA is bounded on the East, with *Persia*; on the West, with *Babylonia*, or *Chaldaea*; on the North, with *Affrica*; on the South, with a branch of the River *Tigris*, and some part of the Gulf of *Persia*.

It was so called quasi *Cusiana*, or the Land of the *Chusites*, from *Chus* the eldest Son of *Ham*, and the Grandson of *Noah*, by whose Son *Havilah* it was first peopled; and therefore called in Scripture the Land of *Havilah*, this being that Land of *Havilah*, which the River *Pison* is said to encompass, in the Book of *Genesis*. The difference betwixt them is, that that Land of *Havilah* lay on both sides of the River *Euphrates* (which the Country of *Susiana* doth not) and was the Eastern bound of the *Ismaelites*, *Amalekites*, and other Nations intermingled in those parts of *Arabia*. For whereas *Saul* is said in 1 *Sam. 15. 7* to have smitten the *Amalekites* from *Sur* to *Havilah*, that is to say, from the Red Sea to the Gulf of *Persia*, it must be understood of *Havilah* in the first extent; but neither of *Havilah* in the East Indies (so called from a Son of *Jockan* or of that part of *Havilah* which lay on the East side of *Euphrates*, and is that *Susiana*, in which now we are: it being no where found that *Saul* was so great a Traveller as to see the *Indies*; or of such pitchiness as to force a passage through the Countries of the *Chaldeans* and *Babylonians*. But the name of *Havilah* being lost; that of *Cusiana* or *Susiana* did still remain; preserved to this day in that of *Chusistan*, by which now called.

The Country memorable in the Scriptures for Gold, *Bdelium*, and the *Omyx*-stone; which doth abundantly set forth the richness and commodities of it: *Bdelium* being a Tree (for of the other two nothing need be said) about the bigness of an *Olive*, yielding a certain Gum very sweet to smell to, but bitter of taste; which in time hardneth to a Pearl as *Engubim* and *Berodius* have delivered to us.

Divided anciently into many particular Regions, or at least known by several names in its several quarters. For where it bordereth upon *Tigris*, it was called *Melitic*; *Cabandone*, where it touched upon *Persia*; where it continued on the *Elymaeus*, it had the name of *Cistia*; and near the Wall or Ditch called *Vallum Pisoni*, it was called *Characene*. Watered besides *Eulani*, and *Tigris* before spoken of, with the Rivers *Orontes* and *Masius*; with that branch of the River *Tigris* which *Protony* calleth *Bajilem*, *Curtum*, *Pasi*, *Tigris*, and the Scriptures, *Pison*.

Chief Cities herof, 1 *Aracca*, spoken of by *Protony*, the same which the Scriptures call *Erech*, and one of the four which *Nimrod* built in the first beginning of his Empire, *Gen. 11*. Remembered by *Tibullus* for the Fountains of *Napha* (of which the *Medians* made their Oyl spoken of before) a bituminous liquor, easily taking fire, but not easily quenched. Of which thus the Poet;

Arcti Arecaeis aut unda perhospita Campis.

Where by *unda perhospita*, he meant that bituminous liquor called *Napha*, issuing from the fields of *Erech*, as the learned *Salmasius* hath observed in his Notes on *Solin. 2 Sals*, the *Shusan* of the Book of *Hester*, and *Nehemiah* honoured with the residence of the *Persian* Monarchs in winter, as *Ecbatana* in Summer. Situate on the River *Eulani*, by the prophet *Daniel* called *Uai*. Built, as some say, by *Memnon* the Son of *Tiribao*, slain by the *Thessalians* in the Trojan Wars: the walls whereof, as *Cassiodorus* hath reported, cemented with Gold. But howsoever, it was doubtless a magnificent City, and of infinite wealth *Alexander* finding in it 50000 *Talents* of Gold uncoined, besides Silver wedges, and Jewels of inestimable value. Memorable for the great feast here made by *Abasurnus*, of 183 days continuance, for his Lords and princes: imitated by the *Persian* Sultans to this very day, who with a Royal Feast of the like continuance, do annually entertain their Nobles. Now nothing but a ruine, and perhaps not that. 3 *Elymas*, the chief City of the *Elymai*, by *Protony* (unless his Copies be corrupted) mistakingly called *Eldamas*. Situate on the banks of *Eulani* also, near the border of *Persia* (the Nation of the *Elymaies* or *Elymai* taking part of both Provinces.) Of great Note anciently for a sumptuous Temple of *Diana* sacrilegiously ransacked by *Amrochus*, of which see *Isa. 6. 2.* and of such wealth, by reason of the concourse of *Pilgrims* thither, that *Severus* *Sulpicius* calleth it *Oppidum opulentissimum*, a most opulent City. 4 *Sela*, on the banks of *Eulani* also, reckoned by *Ammianus* amongst the most eminent of this Province: so named from *Sela*, the Son of *Arphaxad*, who first planted there. To whom the building of the City of *Susa* is ascribed by *Eusebius*, in his *Hexameron*, *2024 ad 3. 2024*, are that Authors words; perhaps more truly than to *Memnon*: and unto whom the Original of the *Coffai*, whom *Protony* placeth in this Tract, is referred by *Eusebius*. 5 *Sarfasna*, another of the Cities mentioned by *Ammianus* (who takes notice only of the chiefest,) the name no doubt which *Protony* calls *Tariama*, and joyns next to *Sela*. 6 *Agra*, upon the Banks of *Tigris*, not far from *Erech*. But there is little left of these, but what is to be found in the ancient Writers; now hardly visible in

their Ruines. The Towns of most note now remaining, being 7 *Jaanoe*, inhabited for the most part by *Jems*, of which here are no fewer than a thousand Families; supposed to be the descendants of those whom *Salmanassar* transplanted out of the Kingdom of *Israel*. 8 *Sann*. 9 *Cafsa*, of which little memorable.

The first Inhabitants heretofore were the *Chusites* of the house of *Hevathai*, the Son of *Chus*; an evident footstep of whose name we have in the *Chavilei*, whom *Pliny* placeth in this Tract, by other Writers called the *Chalotai* & *Chaulafsi*, as before was noted, with whom were joyed in the first plantings of this Country, the *Coffai* and the *Sufiani*, descended from *Sala* the Son of *Arphaxad*; and the *Elymai*, the posterity of *Elam* the Son of *Sem*. Betwixt the two last Nations long and frequent Wars, till the Kings of *Babylon* or *Affria* composed the differences, by making both subject to their Empire. After this, nothing memorable in the story of it, till the transplanting of the ten Tribes into the Regions of *Affria*, and the Cities of *Media*. At which time, as many of the *Israelites* were removed hither; so many of this Nation were sent out (with others) to possess themselves of the void places of those Tribes. Called *Cubians* by the *Jems*, because the most considerable number of them came from this Province, called in the Scriptures *Cush*, by *Josephus* *Cutha*; and by him reckoned for a Region of *Persia*, as indeed it was, the time when he lived considered; different only in the Dialect or form of speech: that Country which the *Hebrews* called *Chus*, being named *Cub* by the *Chaldeans*; by the *Persians*, *Chusestan*; that name continuing to this day.

2. PERSIS.

PERSIS hath on the East, *Carmania*; on the West, *Sufiana*, on the North, *Mediana*; and on the South, some part of the *Persian* Bay, or *Sinus Persicus*, which took name from hence. The reason of the name we have had before; this being the predominant province which in fine gave both Name and Law to the rest of this Empire. It had anciently been called *Cephene*, but now most commonly by the name of *Fars*, or *Pharssien*; more near to *Pharaz*, the old name of it, both in the *Arabic* and *Hebrew*.

Such parts heretofore as lie towards the North are cold and hilly, not apt to bear either Fruit or Corn, in any plenty. Some *Emeralds* they find there, but not very clear. Those parts which lie towards the *Persian* Gulf, or as bad a nature, though of Different quality; sandy, and hot, and beareth little fruit but *Dates*, and few trees but *Palm*. But betwixt both there lieth a rich and pleasant Country, abounding with Corn, Fruit, and Cattel; great store of Roses, of Rose-water consequently; where-with, and with those skins which we call commonly by the name of *Cordovans* from another occasion, they use to furnish all the adjoining Provinces. And to make up the Character of a happy Country, to which nothing wanteth, it is well stored with Lakes and Rivers; the chief whereof are, 1. *Bagradas* which divideth this Province from *Carmania*. 2. *Rhogomanes*, by some called *Araxes*, now *Bindimiri*, on whose banks stood the renowned *Persepolis*. 3. *Orontes*, dividing *Persis* from *Sufiana*, where it falls into the Bay. 4. *Brisana*, ending its course in the same Sea also.

Mountains of note I find not any, but those which part this Region from *Sufiana*. Not known by any special name (for ought I can find;) but of sufficient note for the difficult passages out of one Country into the other, called *Pyle Persida*, defended by *Ariobarzanes*, a Noble *Persian*, against *Alexander the Great*, who was here

very handsomly beaten, and forced to give himself by a close retreat. And though *Alexander* was shewed a By-path afterwards, whereby he fell on *Ariobarzanes* ere he was aware; yet he was taught by this hard Lesson, that if those who kept the Straits of *Cilicia*, and the banks of *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, had made little resistance, he had not bought the *Persian* Monarchy in so cheap a Market.

It was divided anciently into 1. *Paraticene*, bordering on *Media*. 2. *Mardiene*, joyning on the Gulf or Bay of *Persia*. 3. *Misda*, lying betwixt both. Each of which, with the several Nations intermingled here as in other places, had their several Cities. The chief whereof 1. *Ausina*, seated on the Bay betwixt the mouths of *Bagradas*, and *Brisana*. 2. *Jonacopolis*, on the same Bay also, near the influx of *Rhogomanes*, or *Araxes*. 3. *Acinina*, more within the Land, now called *Lansila*. 4. *Marrasium*, 5. *Ovroaris*, or *Orebatis*, as some Copies have it. 6. *Pajaracha*, in the Greek Text of *Prology* called *Pafagada*, and *Pafagada* by *Qu. Curtius*. Memorable for the Sepulchre of *Cyrus* the first *Persian* Monarch. Which violating by a Souldier of *Alexander*, in hope of finding some rich booty, he met with nothing but this modest Inscription, *Cyrus ego sum qui Perlicum regnum constitui: quicunque ades mortalium, ne mihi tantulum telluris invideas, qua corpus meum obtegitur*. The Sacrilegious Souldier, though a *Macedonian*, put to death by *Alexander*. 7. *Persepolis*, the chief City of this Province, and of all the East, called therefore *Regia Orientis* by *Qu. Curtius*, situate near the banks of the River *Araxes*, and built for the most part of *Cyrus* work, the walls of the houses being made of Marble, digged out of an adjoining Mountain. Affirmed by *Diodorus Siculus*, who at largeness describes it, to be the richest and goodliest City in all the world. And well we may believe him for the richness of it, *Alexander* finding here 120000 *Talents* in ready money for his own share, after the Souldiers had made what spoil they listed of Coin, Plate, Bullion, Images of Gold and Silver, and Jewels of unpeakeable value. But the chief beauty of it was the Royal Palace, built on a Hill, environed with a treble Wall, the first of 16 Cubits height, the second of 30, and third of 60, all of them of black polished Marble, with stately Battlements, and in the Circuit of the whole Palace an hundred Towers; which gave to the beholders far and near a most goodly Prospect. Nor was the inside of less beauty, than the outside of Majesty: the Roof thereof shining with Ivory, Silver, Gold, and Amber; and the Kings Throne being wholly composed of Gold, and the richest Pearls. But rich and stately though it were, and one of the greatest Ornaments of the Eastern world, it was by *Alexander* in a drunken fit consumed with fire; the insatiation of *Lais* that infamous Strumpet; as in revenge for so many Cities of the *Greeks*, which the *Persians* formerly had burnt in the *Greeks* Wars. And though *Alexander* in his sober sense did repent him of it, and gave order that it should be re-edified; yet did it never rise to its former height, the Conqueror dying shortly after, and that purpose with him. So Ruined in the Age of *Qu. Curtius*, (who lived in the time of *Claudius Cæsar*) that he professedly, *vestigium ejus non inveniri nisi Araxes amnis offenderet*, that no footsteps of it had been found, if not heathen and pointed out by the River *Araxes*, on whose banks it stood. But by the fall thereof rose *Shiraz*, now the chief City of this Province, situate in a fair large Plain hemmed about with Mountains, under one of which it is pleasantly seated; in compass about nine miles, well built and beautified with fair Gardens and magnificent Mosques: two of which larger than the rest, are made more eminent by the addition of two *Spires* or Steeples

Steeple covered with a painting of *Gold* and *Azure*; the Fabricks for the most part of *Mosnick* work, as light also by night as day, by reason of a thousand Lamps burning nightly in them. A City (as is said by a modern Traveller) which for good Wine, pretty Women, pleasant Fruits, and a gallant People, may hold comparison with the best in *Persia*. 9. *Moymon*, on the North-east of *Shiraz*, delightfully situate amongst the Woods and fruitful Pastures, and blest not only with good Wine, but wholesome Waters; of which last, few parts of *Persia* have much cause to brag. 10. *Bannaram*, on the South-west of *Shiraz* towards *Carmania*, chiefly remarkable for the ruins of an ancient Castle, situate on the top of a lofty Mountain. 11. *Goyuam*, a Town of a thousand houses. 12. *Berry*, of no great bigness, but of most esteem, by reason of a fair Mosque, a School for the *Arabic* Tongue, and the Sepulchre of one of their false Prophets; of which the *Persians*, besides *Mahomet*, and *Mortis-Ali*, do acknowledge many.

The first Inhabitants here were of the posterity of *Elam* the Son of *Sem*, and such who under his conduct were settled here; called from hence *Elamites*, in the usual file of holy Scriptures by the *Greeks* and *Latines*, *Elymai*: who spreading themselves into *Sufiana*, and by degrees also into other Provinces, became so considerable, that the name of *Elamites* and *Elam* were of great renown, having a language to themselves distinct from that of the *Medes* and *Parthians*, as is apparent *Alt* 2. and Regions, as appears plainly in the adjoining *Daniel*, where *Susa* is said to be in the Province of *Elam*. How the name was charged into that of *Persia*, hath been shewn before. Such as continued in this Province, divided into the Tribes of the *Mesabata*, *Rassfi*, *Hippopagis*, *Susai*, *Megore*, and *Stabai*; were at first under the command of their own Princes only: amongst which *Chordolaozer* is of greatest fame, who having the conduct of some Adventurers of this Nation, associated himself with *Amraphel* the Leader of some *Affrian* Troops: and by the name of the Kings of *Elam* and *Affria* invaded *Palestine*, subdued the City of *Sodom*, took *Lot* prisoner, and in the end were overthrown by the Forces of *Abraham*. Of no Note after this Expedition, till the time of *Perjes* the Father of *Achæmenes*, who being Provincial Governour of these Countries under *Sardapalus*, joyned with *Arbaces* and *Belochus* in the War against him: and by the victory, got for himself the dominion over those Estates, which he had formerly ruled for the *Affrians*; with reference to the Kings of *Media* as the Supreme Lords. Those Successors, till the time of *Cyrus*, take in order thus:

The KINGS of PERSIS.

1. *Perjes*, from whom perhaps the name of *Persis* may be more properly derived, than either from *Persus* the Son of *Danhe*; or the Son of *Persus* by *Andromeda*.
2. *Achæmenes* from whom the *Persians* had the name of *Achæmenis*, and the succeeding Kings were called *Achæmenides*.
3. *Cambyses*, in some places of *Herodotus* called also *Darius*.
4. *Cyrus*, from whose second son named *Taispius*, descended that *Darius*, the son of *Hystaspis*, one of the seven *Persian* Princes, who got the Kingdom on the expiration of the present Line, and the extirpation of the *Magi*; of which more hereafter.
5. *Cambyses* II, the Son of *Cyrus*.

6. *Cyrus* II. firnamed the Great, son of *Cambyses*, and of *Mandane* the daughter of *Affysar* King of *Media*: who joyning with *Cyaxares*, or *Darius Medus*, overthrew the *Babylonian* Empire; and translated thereby the Supreme power to the *Medes* and *Persians*. Of which more hereafter.

3. CARMANIA.

CARMANIA is bounded on the East, with *Ge-drosia*, and some part of *Asia*; on the West, with part of *Persis*, and the Gulf of *Persia*, from hence called also by the name of *Sinus Carmanicus*; on the North, with *Parthia*; and on the South, with the main Indian Ocean. So called from the *Carmani*, a chief people of it; but the reason of that name I find not. It is now generally called *Chyman*; those parts of it which lyenext to *Parthia*, which *Prology* calleth *Carmania Deserta*, being now named *Mingia*, and by some *Duliciana*.

The Country for the most part barren, and but ill inhabited. That part which *Prology* calleth *Carmania Deserta*, being truly such; a Wilderness or very *Desart*, having in it neither Town nor Village, but some scattered houses, and those but ill provided of food and necessities, full of unprofitable Sands, destitute of Water, and of a very hot and unhealthy Air. And though the other part heretofore which lieth towards the Ocean, hath a Sea-coast of above 200 Leagues in length, and many Rivers emptying themselves into it, yet are they not the rivers small; by the shores being full of Rocks, and the Rivers small; so that they neither have good Port, nor safe coming to it. The best Commodities heretofore (besides *Minerals*) are *Dates*, *Myrris*, *Asiatica*, some few Mines of Silver, more of Brass and Iron, and good store of *Alabaster*. The Inhabitants heretofore were anciently called *Chathyphagi*, because they lived wholly upon *Fish*, *man* *he veste ac fruge, sine pecore ac sedibus, piscium carne vescuntur, præter capita ratorum corpore hisisti*. The *Carmani* (saith *Pomponius Mela*) have cleath themselves with the skins, and feed themselves with the flesh of Fishes; hairy, not only on their heads, but over all their bodies also. Where by their way, *Ammianus Marcellinus* must be out in his informations, who telleth us of these very *Carmani*, that their Country, though far less than that of *Arabia Felix*, and far more obscure, was well replenished with Rivers; and for fertility of soil not inferior to it. But we must understand one of the best parts of *Carmania*; the other of *Deserta* only.

Amongst the Rivers which he reckoneth of greater name than the rest, he mentioneth, 1. *Sagamis*, 2. *Sagareus*, and 3. *Hydracius*. Of which *Sagamis* only is named by *Prology*, the other Rivers, or the same under divers names, being 1. *Dara*, 2. *Andanius*, 3. *Cabrupis*, 4. *Abiadania*, 5. *Salarus*, (the *Sagareus*, as I take it, of *Ammianus*) 6. *Candriacis*, 7. *Zorambia*, and 8. *Sandacæ*, most of them falling into the Gulf of *Persia*, few Navigable, or of any use in the way of Trading.

Mountains of most note, 1. that called *Semiramis* from some exploit of that great Lady; 2. *Strongilus*, so named from the roundness of it; and, 3. a continued ridge of Hills, dividing this Country from *Ge-drosia*.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Camboris*, 2. *Agri*, 3. *Tysa*, honoured by *Prology* with the names of Cities; 4. *Cyrcæ*, and 5. *Gocharta*, two Port-Towns; 6. *Alexandria*, bearing the name of that great Conquerour, who here or hereabouts kept his *Bacchanalia*, whereof more anon.

ation. 7 *Portospana*, by *Ammianus* called *Ortospana*, and by him reckoned amongst the fairest and richest of all the Country. 8 *Armuzia* (or *Armuzium*, as *Pliny* calleth it,) on the shore of the Gulf, giving name to a Promontory near adjoining, and to the noble Isle of *Ormus*, of which more anon. 9 *Gumbroon*, not long since a poor Village; but since the fall of *Ormus* (from which not above nine miles distant) grown a populous Town, consisting at the least of a thousand houses. 10 *Jafques*, at the opening of the *Persian Gulf*, into which it looketh, whence the Promontory of it, called *Carpella*, is of late named *Capo di Jafques*. 11 *Carmania*, the Metropolis or mother City of the Province, in former times of good esteem; and now of passing good repute both for Cloth of Gold, and the making of the best *Seymitars*. A weapon (whereofever made) of such value amongst the *Chometans*, and so esteemed by the *Turks*, that at the overthrow of the Navy at the battel of *Corfu*, Anno 1574. most of them who were taken Prisoners, threw their *Seymitars* into the Sea, for fear the *Christians* should be masters of such excellent weapons. It is now called *Chyrmam*, by the name of the Province, as in former times; with very little difference from the ancient name. 12 *Lar*, more within the Land towards *Persia*, seated in a barren and inhospitable Country, full of huge heaps of Sand, both loose and dangerous, moved and removed as the wind sitteth, into Plains and Mountains: without Grass, Water, Herbs, or any other necessary for the use of Travelers; the City being served with rain-water only, entertained with great joy when it falleth, and kept in Cisterns. The City notwithstanding large, and of good capacity, containing not long since to the number of 5000 houses: of which the greatest part, in the year 1590. were thrown down by an Earthquake: now most remarkable for a fair Market-place, adorned with 180 paces square, a goodly *Mosque*, adorned with *Mosack* work, and a strong Castle seated on the top of an hill, furnished with great plenty of Ordnance brought hither from *Ormuz*. This once a Kingdom of it self, or the head City of a Kingdom, acknowledging no subjection to the *Persian Sophies*: till conquered to that Crown by *Emangoli Chahm* Duke of *Shiras*, who sent hence as much treasure as was laid to load 700 Camels; and put to death the poor King with his whole Posterity, Anno 1604. or thereabouts. 13 *Tecoa*, or *Dea-chom*, a Town of the jurisdiction of *Lar*, not far from which is a huge Wall cut out of the solid Rock by incredible labour, which served formerly both for the boundary and defence of that sandy Kingdom against the *Persians*.

The ancient Inhabitants thereof, were the Posterity of *Sabta*, the Son of *Chus*, who wanting room on the Coast of *Arabia Felix*, where they were first planted, passed over into *Sabta* (from them so named) an Island of the *Persian Gulf*, and afterwards into the main Land of *Carmania*, where they built and gave name unto the City of *Sabta*, which we find in *Protony*. Divided in some tract of time into the several Nations of the *Sacota*, *Ara*, *Chavadra*, *Chelomphagi*, *Cabidina*, and *Palagarda*.

Neither the People nor the Country memorable in the way of *History*; but by Accident only: it being here that *Alexander* being returned out of *India*, kept his *Bacchanalia*, an imitation of *Bacchus*, who first conquered that Nation. Night and day he was continually feasting with his friends, on a Scaffold drawn with eight horses; his Companions following in their Chariots: some adorned with Purple and Silk; others with Flowers and green Boughs; themselves wearing Garlands on their heads, and carrying their carousing Cups in their hands. In this Army there was neither Helmet, Sword, Arrow, or Buckler seen: all their Armour was Cups, Barrels, and

Flacons; their Skirmishing, Eating, Drinking, Laughing, and Singing. Attended they were by Minstrels, playing on their Flutes; by Women dancing, Boys shouting, all playing the drunken fools most naturally. Thus march they through the Country of *Carmania*, in as great dissoluteness as if *BACCHUS* himself had indeed been there, and led the Mummy; and for seven whole days this foolishness continued. So that *Curius* well observeth, *Si quid vixit saltem adversus comestantes animi fuisset, mille hercule viri, modo & sobrii, septem dierum crapula graves in suo triumpho capere potuerunt*: a thousand Persians, sober and well provided, had their hearts been answerable to go good an opportunity, might have destroyed this drunken Army, and redeemed at once the honour of their Country, and their own liberty.

4. ORMUZ.

ORMUZ, not so much memorable for the greatness, as the wealth, and the convenience of the situation of it, is an Island situate in the entrance of the *Persian Gulf*: commanding not long since, over some part of the continent of *Carmania*, and some few Towns of *Arabia Felix*, and most of the Islands of the Bay. And therefore before we come to speak of the Isle it self, we must take a brief survey of the Sea or Bay called *Sinus Persicus*, according to our method in other places.

SINUS PERSICUS, the Gulf or Bay of *Persia*, so famous, so full of Islands, and so much frequented, (I use the words of *Ammianus Marcellinus*) beginneth at *Harmozonta*, (the same which *Protony* calls *Armoz*, a Cape or Promontory of *Carmania*: from which unto a Cape or Foreland of *Arabia Felix*, which the Inhabitants call *Maer*, the passage is so strait and narrow, that one may very easily see to the opposite shore. The Strait once passed, the Bay beginneth to open and enlarge it self, as far as the City of *Teredon* (now called *Balfora*) where *Euphrates* after many downfalls is lost in the Sea. The whole Gulf measured by the shores, of Orbicular form, in compass 20000 Furlongs, (or 2500 Italian miles) in all the Coasts and sides whereof the Villages and Towns stand exceeding thick, affording frequent passage to and fro for shipping. So far, and to this purpose he. To which description of his, so exact and punctual, our late Navigations have not added much: but the change of names: the whole Bay being now called *Maer Elkeriff*, and the entrances thereunto the Straits of *Balfora*: these last so called because they opened the way to the Town of *Balfora*, the most noted Empory of those parts in the times foregoing.

Chief Isles hereof, besides those on the *Arabian* shore, of which we have already spoken, are 1 *Taxiana*, on the Coast of *Susiana*. 2 *Tabiana*, 3 *Sophina*, and 4 *Alexandria*, or the Isle of *Alexander*, on the shores of *Persia*. Of which that which is called *Sophia*, seems to take name from *Sabta* the Son of *Chus*, planted upon the opposite shore of *Arabia Felix*; and therein giving name to the City of *Sabta*, which we find in *Protony*: And finally joining to *Carmania*, there are the Islands called, 5 *Sagdana*, the chief Town whereof was anciently named *Miltus*; and 6 *Vorochba*, situate at the very mouth of the Straits, now called *ORMUZ*, by the name of the Town and Promontory of *Armozia*, in *Carmania*, near adjoining to it, and unto which it did in former times belong.

This Island situate as is said at the mouth of the Gulf or Bay of *Persia*, is in compass about 20 miles, stony, and full of Rocks, in a manner barren of all necessaries except

except salt wherewith their very rocks are covered, and of salt-stones many houses built. So destitute of all things fitting for the life of man, that the Inhabitants had all their victuals, even the very water which they drank, from some of the adjoining Countries. Their hot in time of Summer, that the people rest themselves in Caves covered over with wood, where they stand or sit in water up to the chin; and have loop-holes in the tops of their houses to let in the wind. Which notwithstanding, in regard of the situation, it was of late one of the richest Empories in all the world; the wealth of *Persia* and *East-India* being brought hither, and conveyed hence up by water to the River *Euphrates*, and so by Boats, or on Camels backs to *Alippo*, *Alexandretta*, *Tripoli*; from whence dispersed into all the Countries on the *Mediterranean*, and to some beyond.

The people hereof in their persons, habit, and Religion, participate somewhat of the *Arabians*, but most of the *Persians*. *Abdomenians* for the most part, of the *Sophian* Sect: the rest, but few in number, of the *Christians*: to which converted by the preaching of Father *Gaspar*, a *Portugall Jesuit*, since the settling of that Nation there.

The chief and only City was of the same name with the Island, founded some seven hundred years ago by one *Mahomet Dranky*, descended from the Kings of *Saba* in *Arabia Felix*: who with many Families of the *Sabaans*, passed over the Straits into *Carmania*, and the Isles adjoining, and liking the situation of this Island, built this City in it; which he called *Ormus*, or *Armozium*, according to the name of the Town and Promontory, upon which it lieth. The City seated at one end of the Isle, about two miles in compass, well built, and adorned with a fair Market-place, some Churches, and a well fortified Castle furnished with all necessities to maintain a Siege. By reason of its wealth and resort of Merchants, grown to such esteem, that it gave occasion to this Distich;

*Si terrarum Orbis quaque gentis annulus esset,
Illius Ormuzium gemma decusque foret.*

That is to say,

Were all the World a Ring, this Isle alone
Might of that Ring be thought to be the Stone.

It was first under its own King, whose Dominion extended also into some part of the Continent on either side, and over all the rest of the Islands within the Gulf. His Revenue of no great yearly value till the coming of the *Portugals* hither, by whom it was discovered under the conduct of *Albuquerque*, Anno 1506. Who having fortified some part of it for their own defence, and made it the Staple of their Trade for the *Indian Merchandise*, so enriched the same, that the Revenues of those Kings (though *Pajals* and Tributaries to the *Portugals*) amounted to 1400000 *Seriffs* yearly. In this flourishing state it stood till the year 1622. when *Abbas* the Sultan of *Persia* having received some affront at the hands of the *Portugals*; or desirous to remove the Trade of *Ormus*, to some Port of his own, gave order to *Emangoli Chahm*, the Duke of *Shiras*, to lay siege unto it, with an Army of 15000 men. Who seeing no hopes of mastering it by his Land-forces only, furnished himself with the Ships and Cannon of some *English* Merchants, to whom he promised many things which he never performed. For being once Master of the City, he destroyed it utterly, removing the Ordnance to *Lar*, the wealth thereof to his own Treasury of *Shiras*, the materials of the houses to *Gumbroon*, spoken of before: the *Portugals* and *Christian* Natives passing over into *Machabur*, in *Arabia Felix*. Since which time though the *English* Captains that ventured in it, were disappointed of the spoil which they did expect; yet so much honour hath been given by the

King of *Persia* to the *English* Nation, that their Agent who resideth at *Gumbroon*, takes Custom of all Strangers which do traffick thither.

S. GEDROSIA.

GEDROSIA is bounded on the West, with *Carmania*; on the East, with *Cambala* or *Guzarat*, a Province of *India*; on the South, with the main *Indian Ocean*; on the North, with *Drangiana*, and *Arachofia*. The reason of the name I find not. Now by *Mercator*, called *Gefz*; by *Cassaldus*, *Circan*.

The Country desolate and barren; like the worst part of *Carmania*, much destitute of fresh water, and covered over with loose sands, dangerous to the native and stranger both. Some rain they have, but not sufficient to allay the heat and drought which they suffer under; and yet by reason of that heat it affordeth in some places *Nard* and *Myrre*, with some other Spices. Some Brooks here are, or rather Torrents, which falling from the hills do somewhat qualify the indispotion of the soil, and make it habitable: The chief of which was called *Arhim* anciently; the chief Mountain, *Betius*.

Towns of most name in it, 1 *Rhagiana*, honoured by *Protony* with the name of a City; and, 2 a Port or Harbour called *Mulieren Portum*, or the Haven of *Women*, 3 *Arbis*, upon the banks of the River *Arbis*, presented to us also by the name of a City. 4 *Mafiana*, the chief of the *Mafarne*, a chief Tribe of this Country: 5 *Parsis*, or rather *Eafis*, as the *Greek* Text hath it, the Metropolis of the whole Province in the time of *Protony*. 6 *Gefz*, the chief City at the present; but for nothing memorable.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Mafarne*, bordering on *Arachofia*, the *Pasira* towards *Carmania*, the *Rhame* on the borders of *India*, and the *Orbis*, or *Arbis*, on the shores of the Ocean: The Country of no note in preceding times, till made famous by the follies of *Alexander*: Who finding by the hard bout which he had with *Perus*, that there was little hopes of the Conquest of *India*, would needs make a fruitless voyage to see the Ocean. And having satisfied himself with the sight of that furious Element (as if his very seeing it had sufficiently subdued it to him) landed his Army on this Coast. Where in his march, for want of Victuals, water, and other necessaries, he lost more men in the vast and uncomfortable Defaris of this Country, than in all the military Services he had put them to; the Army which he carried with him into *India*, amounting unto 15000 Horses, and 120000 Foot; whereof hardly the fourth part came back to *Babylon*. So dearly did he pay for his indiscretion.

6. DRANGIANA.

DRANGIANA hath on the South, *Gedrosia*; on the North and West, bounded with *Arria*; on the East, with *Arachofia*. So called from *Drangium*, now *Ilumet*, the chief River of it; the modern name thereof being *Siegfan*, from *Sigs*, the now principal City.

The Country very hilly, and do clofed with Mountains; that the River above named is scarce able to force its passage thorow them. Of no great beauty to invite, or reward a Conquerour, yet with the rest, brought under the great *Persian* Monarch, the fortunes of which Crown they have always followed. So meanly planted, that *Protony* findeth in it but ten Towns of name; the chief whereof, 1 *Araspe*, mistook perhaps for *Agriaspae*, and if so, then the Mother-City of the *Agriaspae*, whom *Curius* placeth in this Tract. 2 *Prophasia*, by some of the

tinal Forests; and those fo intricate and thick, that it is a matter of no small difficulty to find passage thorow them. Full, as most other Forests are in these Eastern parts, of Panthers, Leopards, Lions, Tigers: in these last of such an horrible fierceness, that it grew into a Common Proverb used of cruel men, that they had sucked an Hyrcanian Tiger, *Hyrcanæque admodum ubera Tigres*, as it is in *Virgil*.

Principal Rivers of this Country, 1 *Ziobris*, spoken of before. 2 *Mavera* or *Mazeras*, mentioned by *Phny*, *Ptolomy*, and *Ammianus*. And 3 *Secanda*; all falling into the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. A Sea which had the names of *Caspian* and *Hyrcanian*, from the *Caspis* and *Hyrcani* bordering next unto it; now from the 1 own of *Bochu* in *Atropatia*, called *Mæve di Bochu*. Fashioned in an Oval form, the length thereof from North to South 700 miles, and 600 miles from East to West. Stormy and troublesome, by reason of those many great Rivers which fall into it from all the Provinces adjoining: which notwithstanding it hath no visible commerce with the *Ocean*, nor doth it at any time overflow its banks, finding some passage under ground to discharge it self of those vast streams of water: which are poured into it. Well traded by the *Moscovite* Merchants, who having the command of the River *Volga* (which with 70 mouths doth open into this Sea) sail over it, and Land at *Farabant*, or some other of the Port Towns, where they trade for silks. Some Islands here are in it, but not many, or of any great Fame; but only that they served the Nations which lay near it for a place of retreat, in time of the *Tartarian* tumult under *Tamerlane*; as the Ilits of *Peacide* did to the *Indians*, at the coming of *Attila*.

Places of most consideration, 1 *Hyrcania*, once the Metropolis of the Province, and so called by *Ptolomy*, still extant, but of less esteem, and still called *Hyrcan*. 2 *Tambrace*, in old times of the greatest strength, and most defensible; but taken by *Antiochus Magnus* in the War against *Arfaces* the *Parthian*, for the recovery of those Countries then revolted from him. 3 *Adaspia*. 4 *Masaca*. 5 *Anarofa*. Of which we find the names, amongst others, in the ancient Writers. 6 *Atharaffe*, two miles from the Sea, in a spacious Plain, containing about 2000 Houses; and now of most reputation of all this Province, by the long Residence therein of *Abas*, the late *Persian* Sultan, who build there a magnificent Palace, and another two miles off at a place called *Abassabat*. The furniture whereof besides costly Carpets, in Plate and Jewels, at such time as Sir *Dodmore Corron* was there Embassador, is said to have been valued by a knowing Merchant, at 20 millions of pounds. But I fear the Merchant had more skill in Silks than Jewels; such a vast fun to be expended on the furniture of one Palace only, being beyond the possibility of the Revenue of the *Persian* Sophy; hardly amounting towards all charges to five millions of Crowns. 7 *Farabant*, on a navigable Arm of the *Caspian* Sea; for beauty, wealth, and greatness, of most note in this Country. Well traded from all parts of this Inland Sea, especially by the *Russian* Merchants, as before is said, whose ships come hither in March, and return in July, it being from hence to *Attrabach* but ten days sail. Beautified with goodly Gardens, a Royal Menfion of the Kings, and a spacious Market-place. 8 *Chiacoporo*, near the Sea also, but on the banks of a River; the water whereof is said for eleven months to be fresh and sweet, and for the twelfth month very salt. 9 *Barfufubde*, twelve miles from the Sea, well furnished with wood and water. 10 *Omadi*, a Town of about 3000 houses, seated on the North side of the *Taurus* in a pleasant and fruitful soil; resorted to by the people of so many Nations, that several Languages are there commonly spoken. Once larger, as

appeareth by some ruins, than it is at the present; by some conceived to be the *Nabarra* of the Ancients, honoured in those times with an Oracle. 11 *Sirava*, a Town of great Traffic, for raw Silks especially. 12 *Mefandra*, whence the whole Province (or rather the parts adjoining to it) hath the name of *Alexandrium*.

The old Inhabitants hereof, besides the *Caspis*, were the *Mazeres*, *Adabenti*, *Chirindi*, and the *Asstefes*, united in the name of *Hyrcani*, in the time of the *Persians*, and by that name well known at the coming of *Alexander*. Against whom they fo defended themselves, by tying the boughs and twigs of their trees together, that it was impossible for him to come at them; till with incredible pains and labour he had caused their Woods to be cut down: at sight whereof the people, who supposed the King had too much other business, and of more importance, than to put himself unto that trouble, did submit unto him. Falling to the share of *Seleucus*, they were the first people that were gained by *Arfaces*, and joined with him in recovering their former liberty; though they got nothing by the bargain but the change of their Master. In all times since, they have been looked upon as Members of the *Persian* Empire, till the conquest of it by the *Tartars*; in the distractions of whose great Empire after *Tamerlane's* death, it fell to some Princes of his House, who governed here under the vassalage and protection of the *Tartars* of *Zagathay*. Recovered not long since from their old obedience by Sultan *Abas*, who for the better settling the affairs hereof, Removed the Seat Royal from *Spahav*, to which before he had transferred it from the City of *Casbin* to *Atharaffe*, then a small Town, now the chief of this Country.

12. MARGIANA.

MARGIANA is bounded on the West, with *Hyrcania*; on the East, with *Bactria*; on the North, with part of *Tartary*, from which severed by the River *Oxus*; on the South, with *Arta*, divided from it by the Mountains. So called from the River *Margus*, which runs thorow the Country: but is now named *Tremigen*.

The Country environed with Mountains, and in most places of it full of sandy Deserts. But where it is watered with the Rivers *Aria* and *Margus*, it is very fruitful, stretching it self into a large and spacious Plain, containing in the circuit near 200 miles. The Plain once compassed with a Wall by *Antiochus Soter*, King of *Syria*; more memorable for the huge flocks of *Vines* which are said to be in it, as big in bulk as two men can fathom, and sometimes bearing branches of Grapes two Cubits long. The more to be admired, in regard there is no other place near unto it, where the vine will grow. And if the *Ark* rested on the top of Mount *Casius*, as it is most probable it did; why may not this be some of the remainder of that first *Vineyard* which was planted by *Noah*, when he descended from these Mountains, as is affirmed by the constant tradition of the people which inhabit hereof?

The People mixt of *Scythian* and *Persian* breed, partaking of the fierceness of the one, and the behaviour of the other, conform unto the *Persians* in Religion, Language, and Apparel; distinguished from them in the colour of their *Turbans*; only, which are commonly *Green*: and therefore by the *Persians* called *Jeslbas*, or *Green-Caps*; the *Turbans* of the *Persians* being always red.

Chief Rivers of this Country are, 1 *Margus*, the peculiar River of it, which rising out of the foot of the Mountains, & passing thorow the middle of the Province, receiveth

receiveth into its Channel the River. 2 *Aria*, hastning out of *Aria*, and so together lose themselves in 3 *Oxus*, dividing the *Margians* from the *Tartars*: Out of the joynt streams of which several Rivers, is made a large Lake now called *Sabacamber*, but anciently *Palus Oxiana*, from the principal River.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Alexandria*, or *Alexandria Margiana*, for distinction sake; one of the six Towns built by *Alexander* for defence of this Country: called afterwards *Seleucia* from *Seleucus* next *Antiochia* from *Antiochus Soter*, King of *Syria*, by whom fortified with a very strong Wall. It is now called *Indion*, and esteemed for the chief of the Country. 2 *Tafonius*, seated on the confluence of *Margus*, with a nameless River issuing from the *Seriphan* Mountains. 3 *Nigæa*, as the Printed Books of *Ptolomy* call it, but mistook for *Nissa* or *Nysæa*. 4 *Argadina*. 5 *Rhea*, of which nothing memorable. 6 *Moran*, near to which *Imael* the first of the *Sophian* Race, discomfited the Forces of *Saba* the *Cham* of *Zagathay*.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Maffagætes*, and the *Paris*, taking up the mid-lands; the *Derbices* bordering upon *Oxus*; and the *Capyri*, dwelling towards the East. United by the name of *Margians*, they were subdued by the Kings of *Persia*, from whom won by *Alexander* to his Empire: who to assure himself hereof, built fix Cities in it, two towards the South, and four towards the East; all situate on the tops of hills, and built to such convenient nearness that they might afford succour to each other, as occasion served. After this nothing singular in the story of them; involved in the same fortunes with the rest of *Persia*, till *Persia* was conquered by the *Tartars*. Since which time, though the rest of the *Persian* Provinces were freed from the *Tartarian* yoke by *Cempsus*, the Soldan of *Parthia*, and King of *Persia* for a time; yet part of this Province, and of *Bactria*, are still subject to them.

13. BACTRIA.

BACTRIA or **BACTRIANA** is bounded on the West, with *Margiana*, on the East and North South, with *Paropamisus*, from which parted by the hills so named, and the mountain *Caucasus*. It took this name from *Bactria*, the Chief City of it; and is now called *Choras*, but by some named *Bactar*.

The Country towards the River *Oxus*, is for the most part well manured, and affordeth plenty of Wheat, and all sorts of Fruits, excepting Olives; Rich Metals, and some pretious Stones, as *Emeralds*, *Chrysolites*, and *Jacinths*. Plenty of pastures there be also, well stored with Cattel, and those of bigger bulk than in other places. But the greatest part hereof to the South and West, is nothing but a sandy Desert; and by reason that the sands are driven up and down by contrary winds, no track or beaten way is to be discerned: in such as Travellers rest all day, and take their journey in the night, that they may guide themselves by the course of the Stars, as upon the Sea; not without great danger of being lost or buried, whilst alive, in that sandy Ocean.

The people heretofore a puissant and warlike Nation, not without great difficulty conquered by the *Affrians*, nor with less by the *Persians*, always in Arms, cruel, and resembling the *Scythians*, whose near neighbours they were: and (which may very well pass for their greatest virtue) *Atium* & *Perlarum luxu abhorretes*, abhorring naturally from the *Persian* Luxuries. But withal unnatural to their Parents, whom when old they cast unto their dogs, kept for that purpose, and called *Came Sepulchrales*,

or burial dogs. The women gorgeous in Apparel, and proud of Gettiture, but prodigal of their bodies to their inconstant flouters; but hard betwixt the *Persians* and the *Tartars*, who severally pretend a dominion over them.

No Province of the *Persian* Empire hath so many Rivers. The principal of which are 1 *Araxius*, and 2 *Zariasses*, mingling streams together, as do also 3 *Ochus*, and 4 *Orgomanes*; all four contributing their waters to the River *Oxus*. Of *Oxus*, being rather a boundary betwixt the *Persian* and the *Tartar*, than rightly proper unto either we have spoken already.

Towns of most observation in it, 1 *Bactria*, the Metropolis, or the chief City of it, situate at the foot of the Mountain *Sogdii*, giving the name of *Bactria* unto all the Province. It is now called *Bachor*, and fill keeps the dignity of the Metropolis: the seat of the Chief Priest or Bishop of the *Mohamets* of *Zagathay* (to which this City, and great part of the Country also doth now belong) having here his residence, in power and reputation equal to the King himself. Well fortified, and stored with all military Provisions: the birth-place (as *Magnus* faith) in these latter Ages of *Atium*, that learned Philosopher and Physician; and in the first Ages, of *Zoroaster* the more learned *Astronomer*. 2 *Eufusmi*, once the Regal seat, and therefore honoured by *Ptolomy* with the title of *Regia*. 3 *Zaripe*, or *Charipe*, the chief City of the *Charispe*, a great Tribe of this Country. 4 *Charracharta*, mentioned by *Ptolomy* and *Ammianus*; these two, upon the River *Oxus*. 5 *Eucratides*, built or repaired by the *Macedonians*, as the name, being merely *Greek*, doth seem to imitate. 6 *Alidora*, as ancient as the rest, but of no great note in the course of business. 7 *Ispahan*, of a later date, but of greater beauty than any of those before spoken of: superior to *Bachor* in Elegancy, State, and greatness, though not in Dignity; and held by some to be the pleasantest of the East.

This Country was as soon peopled as any since the general Deluge. It had not old be possible that *Zoroaster*, King hereof in the time of *Ninus*, and by him assaulted, should bring into the field an Army of 400000 men of this, and perhaps some other of the neighbouring Provinces, as most credible Writers say he did. Encountering *Ninus*, with this Army he prevailed at first, and slew of the *Affrians* near an hundred thousand. But *Ninus* having better opportunities of recruiting his Forces, invaded him a second time with an Army of 1700000 Foot, and 20000 Horse (the greatest on record in all Ages since that time, except that of *Semiramis*;) with which he overcame *Zoroaster*, slew him in the field, and united *Bactria* to his Empire. Unto this *Zoroaster* is ascribed the invention of *Astronomy*, but on no good ground; that Art or Science being studied before the flood, (if *Seth's* Pillars, mentioned by *Josephus*, be of any credit;) and therefore probably no otherwise to be ascribed to *Zoroaster*, than as to the *Reverier* of it, or because he first committed that unto writing, which he had received by tradition; or because he brought those confused notions which he had received from others, into rule and method. He being slain, and *Bactria* his chief City taken by the wit of *Semiramis*, then the wife of *Menon*, (but on the merit of that service made the wife of *Ninus*) the *Bactrians* became subject unto the *Affrian* Kings, after to the Monarchs of the *Medes* and *Persians*. In the expiring of which great Monarchy, *Bessus* a fall; and cruel Traytor, did command this Province: and having villainously slain *Darius*, his Lord and Master, assumed unto himself the title of King of *Persia*, under the name of *Alexandereus*. But being betrayed by *Spitamenes*, one of his

Confederates, by him delivered unto *Alexander*, and by *Alexander* put to a cruel death: the *Bactrians* became subject to the *Macedonians*, and in that right unto *Selencus* and the Kings of *Syria*. But long it held not in that State, one *Theodatus*, who formerly had the government of it for the *Syrian* Kings, taking unto himself the title of King, and the possession of the Country, about the same time that *Asiaces* and the *Parthians* made the like revolt. Wrefted from his posterity by one *Eutlydemus*, the recovery of it was attempted by *Antiochus Magnus*: and the whole cause put to the trial of a battel. In which, though *Antiochus* had the better, and shewed more personal valour in it than any time after, yet he was glad to come to a composition, and left to *Eutlydemus*, both the Crown and the Country. Made not long after an accession to the *Parthian* Kingdom, it continued part thereof whilst that Kingdom stood; and in the time of *Ptolemy* (as long time before) had for the chief Tribes or Nations of it, the *Salutaris*, and *Zorastis* towards the North; the *Contani*, or *Comani* (as *Pliny* calleth them) dwelling in the South, the middle parts being taken up by the *Thocari*, said to be *gens magna*; the *Scorde*, *Savadii*, *Marica*, *Tambyz*, *Anaristae*, and others of as little note. In the often changes and alterations of the *Persian* State, one of the last Nations which submitted to the new Pretenders: and at this time so neutral betwixt the *Persians*, and the *Cham* of *Tartary*, that it is not wholly under the power of either. More averse from the *Persian* Government, since the alteration of Religion made there by *Hysnuel*, and the rest of the Sect of *Mortis Heli*: these *Bactrians* being of the old Race of *Mabometans*, which adhered to *Hauman*, *Ofman*, and *Abubeker*, as the true Successors of their false Prophet, and therefore ill-affected to the *Sophian* Faction, whom they call commonly *Caphers*, or *Hereticks*, for the innovations by them made in the Law of *Mabomet*.

Thus having taken a survey of those several Provinces, which constitute the *Persian* Empire, and shewn by what means they were first united into one Estate, we must next look upon the names and actions of those mighty Monarchs, who have successively, and from time to time enjoyed the Sovereignty. By what good chance *Arbaces* from a Deputy or Lieutenant of *Medias*, obtained the Diadem for himself, we have shewn before: and we have shewn how liberally he encoined the *Vice-Roy*s of the several Provinces (which in the division made betwixt him and *Belochus*, fell unto his share) in the propriety and command of those Countries, which before they held. Nothing reserved unto himself, and his Posterity, but the title only; and perhaps some acknowledgments made to them, as the Lords in chief. Nor left he left liberty to his own *Medians*, than to the rest of the Provinces; which turning to licentiousness was so hurtful to them, that they were glad at last of that whollome severity, which *Deioeces*, a more Lordly King, began to exercise: who taking to himself a guard, building the Royal City of *Ecbatana*, and fortifying some other places of importance, first brought the people under the command of Law; in that regard not unfitly called by *Herodotus*, the first King of the *Medes*.

KINGS of the MEDES.

- A. M.
3146 1 *Arbaces*, at first Governour of the *Medes*, under *Sardanapalus* the *Assyrian*; but joining with *Belochus*, overcame his Master, and was the first Founder of the *Median* Monarchy.
3174 2 *Mandanes*, the son of *Arbaces*. 50.
3224 3 *Sisarmus*. 30.

- 3254 4 *Medidus*, by some called *Artyras*. 25.
3279 5 *Cadiceus*, whom some call *Arbaces*. 13.
3292 6 *Deioeces*, the Founder of *Ecbatana*, and the Legislator of the *Medes*, whom he first brought under the command of Law and a Regal Government; the former Kings having left the reins so loose on the necks of the people, that they seemed to reign by curtesie only; and had no more authority amongst their Subjects, than any of the mean Lords had upon their Vassals.

- 3303 7 *Phraortes*, a man of great prowess and fortune: He made all *Asia* stand in fear, and compelled the *Persians* to be his Tributaries; but was after overtopped by the *Scythians*. 22.

- 3331 8 *Cyaxares*, united to his Empire the *Saraceni*, and the *Parthians*. The King was so overlaid by the *Scythians*, who in the reign of *Phraortes*, had broke into *Media*, that he was little better than their Rent-gatherer. But having endured them for above two years, he plotted their final extirpation, and committed his design to the Nobles, who willingly gave ear to it. One night they invited the chief of the *Scythians* to a banquet; where having well liquored them, and put them all to the sword, the safer fort willingly returned home-wards. 40.

- 3371 9 *Astyages* the son of *Cyaxares*, who having married his daughter *Mandane*, to *Cambyses* the Tributary King of *Persia*, dreamed that he had made as much water as drowned all *Asia*: hereupon he commanded *Harpagus*, one of his Noble-men, to see the Child killed; but he loathing so cruel a fact, committed the charge of executing the Kings Commandment, to *Mithridates* the Kings Herds-man. He preserved the life of the young Infant, to whom he gave the name of *Cyrus*, whose fortune at last lifted him up to the Kingdom of *Persia*: when abhorring his Grandfather for that intended cruelty, he both bereft him of his Kingdom, and confined him to *Hycania*; when he had reigned thirty five years, A. M. 3406.

- 3406 10 *Cyaxares* II. in the Scripture called *Darius Medus*, son to *Astyages*, at the age of 52 years succeeded his Father. For *Cyrus*, pretending no quarrel to his Uncle who had never wronged him, left him the Kingdom of *Media*, and took unto himself the Sovereignty of *Persia*, which before was Tributary to the *Medes*; not making any other alteration in the State of *Media*.

At this division of the *Median* Empire, as *Tornellus* in his *Annals* (and that not improbably) is of opinion, it was also agreed on, that *Cyrus* should take the daughter and only child of *Cyaxares* to wife; that they should both joy together, in subduing of their neighbours; that whatsoever they won, should belong to *Cyaxares*, (who was even then an old Prince) during his life; and that *Cyrus* should be his heir. In the twentieth year of their several reigns, they took *Babylon*, slew *Babylus*, and destroyed the Empire of the *Chaldeans*. This action the Scriptures attribute wholly to *Cyaxares*, who is by them called *Darius Medus*; whereof S. Hieron allegeth three reasons: 1. *Ordo atatis*. 2. *Regni*. 3. *Propinquitate*. 1. *Darius* was the elder. 2. The Empire of the *Medes* was more

more famous than that of the *Persians*; and 3. The Uncle ought to be preferred before the Nephew. We may add to these three, the composition above mentioned, made between these Princes, at the beginning of their Reigns on the death of *Astyages*. The *Greek* Writers attribute the Victory only to *Cyrus*, and that on three reasons also. The *Persians* desirous to magnifie *Cyrus* their own Country-man, gave him all the glory of the action; and from the *Persians* the *Greeks* had it. Secondly, *Cyrus* was only employed in the Siege, *Darius* then being absent; and by his valour and conduct was the Empire of the *Chaldeans* ruined. And thirdly, *Darius* lived not fully two years after this great Victory; so that before remote Nations had taken notice of the conquest, *Cyrus* was actually in the Throne. *Josephus* only in the 11 Chapter of his Book, cutteth the thread even between these two Princes; and telleth us that *Darius*, with *Cyrus* his Allies, destroyed the Estate of the *Babylonians*. That this *Darius Medus* of *Daniel*, is the *Cyaxares* of the *Greeks*, is more than manifest. For *Josephus* in the place above cited, telleth us, *ὅτι τὸ ἑσθλὸν αὐτοῦ ἐστὶν ὅτι ἐργαζόμενος ἐκείνῳ ἐκάλειτο θυμῶν, ὅτι οὗτος ἄστυαγος υἱὸς αὐτοῦ καὶ ἄλλω ὀνόματι καλεῖται*. Thus he was *Astyages* Son, and is otherwise called by the *Greeks*: now ask the *Greeks* what was the name of the Son of *Astyages*, and *Xenophon* will tell you, that it was *Cyaxares*. As for the name of *Nabonidus*, which *Joseph Scaliger* in spite of reason, and the whole world of Chronologers, would thrust upon this *Darius Medus*, we have already refuted it: though we are not ignorant that *Heliectus* and *Calvisius*, two most worthy Writers, have followed him, as in all his *Canon*, so also in this particular Error. But to proceed unto the course of the *Persian* History; after the death of this *Cyaxares*, *Cyrus* succeeded in his Throne, and the Empire of the *Medes* was incorporated into that of the *Persians*, (as it hath ever since continued) if not subject to it.

The first Dynasty, or Race of the Persian Monarchs, of the House of Achemenes.

- 8406 1 *Cyrus*, who having vanquished *Astyages*, united to the Empire of *Persia* the whole Kingdom of *Media*; the Countries of *Armenia*, *Phrygia*, *Lydia*, some part of *Arabia*, and all the Provinces possessed by the *Babylonian* and *Assyrian* Monarchs. After which Victories, he was slain by *Tomyris* a Queen of the *Scythians*, as some writers say; others affirming, that he escaped alive (but wounded) out of the Battel, died in his own Kingdom, and was buried at *Pasagarda*, a Town of *Persia*. This *Cyrus* is magnified by *Xenophon*, as *Aeneas* by *Virgil*, and *Ulysses* by *Hommer*. 29.
8434 2 *Cambyses*, the Son of *Cyrus*, subdued *Pammius* King of *Aegypt*, which Country he united to his Empire. Having a mind to marry his own Sister, he was told by his Lawyers that they knew no Law which admitted such Marriages; but that there was a Law that the *Persian* Kings might do what they listed. This King was a very bloody Tyrant.

The Inter-regnum of the Magi.

Cambyses, at his Expedition into *Aegypt*, constituted *Patzites*, one of the *Magi*, Vice-Roy in his absence. He hearing of the Kings death, conferred the Kingdom on his own Son *Smerdis*, making the people believe, that he was the brother of *Cambyses*: A matter of no difficult

ty, considering, how retirement from the publick view, was a chief point of the *Persian* Majesty. But the Nobles either knowing the true *Smerdis* to be slain, or suspecting the overmuch reticence of the new king, began to search out the matter, *Oranes* had a Daughter, which was one of the Kings Concubines: Her he commanded when the King took next his pleasure with her, to feel whether he had any Ears; for *Cambyses* (in I know not what humour) had cut off the Ears of this *Astius*. This commandment the obeying, found out the falsehood. The seven Princes informed of this imposture, joy'd together, and slew this *Pseudo-Smerdis*, in the eight month of his Reign. This done to avoid contention, they agreed among themselves, that the seven Princes, meeting on the Palace-green, should acknowledge him for King, whose Horse before the rising of the Sun first neighed. The evening before the day appointed, the Horse-keeper of *Darius* the Son of *Hydaspes*, brought his masters Horse into the Green, together with a Mare, which the horse then covered. In the morning the Princes met; and *Darius* his Horse knowing the place, and longing for his Mare, neighed loudly: on which the Princes presently acknowledged *Darius* for their King.

The restoring of the Kingdom.

- 3443 3 *Darius Hydaspes*, one of the seven *Persian* princes, descended from *Cyrus* the fourth King of the *Persians*, thus elected King, took *Babylon* (which had revolted) by the ingenious fetches of *Zopyrus*, and over-ran all *Asia*, and some part of *Greece*, where he was overthrowen at the Battel of *Marathon*. 36.
3479 4 *Xerxes*, to revenge the overthrow of *Marathon*, attempted to subdue the *Greeks* by whom he was overthrowen in the Naval Battel of *Salamis*; and that famous and honourable exploit of the *Gracians*, at *Thermopyla*. 21.
3500 5 *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, was he who sent *Efdrus* to re-build the Temple of the Lord; and received *Themistocles*, being banished from *Athens*. This also was he, as some would have it, whom the Scriptures call *Ahasuerus*, the Husband of *Esther*; though others chiose rather to place that story in the time of *Xerxes*. 44.
3544 6 *Darius* II. surnamed *Nothus*, in whose time the *Aegyptians* revolted, and chose a King of their own. 19.
3563 7 *Artaxerxes* II. from the greatness of his memory surnamed *Mnemon*; under whom hapned that famous retreat of *Xenophon*, with an handful of his *Gracians*, through most of the provinces of this Empire; by which they shewed the way to the *Macedonians*, how eassie a Conquest they might make of that mighty Empire. 6.
3599 8 *Ochus*, a great Tyrant, but a valiant prince, recovered *Aegypt*, subdued *Syria*, *Cyprus*, and some part of *India*, and was at last slain by *Bagoas*, one of the *Eunuchs* of his Chamber.
3625 9 *Artes*, the Son of *Ochus*, most villainously murdered by the same *Eunuch*, for fear he should revenge the death of his Father.
3629 10 *Darius* III. Governour of *Armenia*, and Cousin-German of *Ochus*, before his coming to the Crown named *Codomanus*, by the means of

of the said *Bagas* made sole Monarch of *Persia*. But being vanquished by *Alexander the Great*, in the three Battels of *Granicus*, *Cilicia*, and *Arbela*, the Empire of the *Persians* was transferred to the *Gracians*, *A. M.* 3635.

The certain Revenues of this great Monarchy, seem to have been 14560 Talents; for so much the late *Darius* received yearly. But what the casual and extraordinary *Intrado* was, is not easy to say; though manifest it is, and demonstrable by many strong and evident reasons, that they far exceeded the certain. For first, the *Persian* Monarchs were Kings of 127 Provinces. Secondly, *Darius* offered to *Alexander* for the Ransom of his Mother and two Daughters, 30000 Talents of Gold. Thirdly, *Alexander* found in the Treasury of *Damascus*, 2600 Talents; in that of *Susa*, 50000 Talents of Gold uncoined; in that of *Pasargades*, 60000 Talents; in that of *Ecbatana*, 26000 Talents; in that of *Persepolis*, 120000 Talents; in all 204600 Talents; besides the infinite riches of the Treasury of *Babylon*, yielded into his hands by *Bagophanes*, and other places of note, not particularly specified: An huge and most unspeakable sum! Fourthly, in that the Gold and Riches which *Alexander*, now a Conqueror, sent from *Persia* to *Macedon* and *Greece*, (besides which every Captain and common Soldier had provided and laid up for his own maintenance) loaded ten thousand Mules, and five thousand Camels.

After this overthrow of the *Persian* Monarchy, the *Persian* Nation lay obscure 535 years, viz. from the 3635 year of the world, to the 228 year of *CHRIST*: of which time they were 83 years under the *Syrian* Successors of *Alexander*; and 452 years under the *Assyrian* Kings of *Parthia*. *Μακρὸς γὰρ Δαπνῶν*, &c. as *Herodian*. "For after *Darius* had lost his Kingdom to *Alexander the Macedonian*, and after the Victor himself was dead also, the more potent Captains divided *Asia* among them. But disorders often arising, and the *Macedonians* puillance, by these often broils, not finally broken, *Arfaces*, one of the *Parthian* Nobility, persuaded the barbarous people of the East, and among them the *Persians*, to cast off the *Greek* yoke, and stand for their Liberty: he himself taking upon him the Title of King, and investing himself with a Diadem, *A. M.* 3718. The *Persians* by this revolt got little or nothing, having indeed not changed the *Tyranny*, but the *Tyrant* only: these *Parthian* Princes Lorded it with as high an infolency, as ever the old *Persian* Monarchs, or the Kings of *Syria* did before. From this *Arfaces*, all the rest of his Successors, and those too of the Family of *Artabanus*, or second Race of *Parthian* Kings, took that name upon them: as the *Roman* Emperours that of *Cæsar*, or the old *Ægyptian* Kings the name of *Pharaoh*. Their usual Style was *Rex Regum*, or *King of Kings*: and by that Style with arrogance and infolence enough, *Vologes* thus inscribed his Letters to *Vespasian* the *Roman* Emperour, viz. *Arfaces*, *Rex Regum*, *Flavio Vespasiano*: giving himself the Title of *King of Kings*, but the other nothing but his bare names only. To which, *Vespasian* without taking notice of the *Parthian's* pride, returned his answer to him with this Superscription, *Fl. Vespasianus Regi Regum Assyriæ*: whether with more scorn or modesty, it is hard to say. They also called themselves the Brethren of the *Sun* and *Moon*, which were the chiefest Gods they worshipped. Great Princes questionless they were, and kept the *Romans* harder to it, than all the Kings and States in the world besides: whose names and acts occur in these following Catalogues of

2. The *Assyrian* or *Parthian* Race of the Kings of *Persia*.

A. M.

3718

1 *Arfaces*, the Founder of the *Parthian* Family.

3741

2 *Mithridates*, or *Arfaces* the second, assaulted by *Antiochus Magnus* with an Army of 120000 men, but without success.

3761

3 *Pampanius*.

3773

4 *Phraortes*, the Son of *Pampanius*.

3783

5 *Mithridates* II. Brother of *Phraortes*, subdued the *Medes*, and extended his Empire to *Euphrates*.

6 *Phraortes* II. slain in a War against the *Scythians*.

3857

7 *Artabanus*, Uncle to *Phraortes* the second.

8 *Pacorus*, the Son of *Artabanus*.

9 *Mithridates* III. Brother of *Pacorus*.

3903

10 *Horodes*, Brother of *Mithridates*, whom he overcame, and caused to be slain in his own fight. He also vanquished *M. Crassus*, and slew 20000 *Romans*; and because *Crassus* was reported to be wondrous covetous, he caused Molten Gold to be poured down his Throat. A miserable death, but in respect of the Divine Providence, a most just Revenge upon him for his Sacrilege, in Robbing the Temple of *Hierusalem*, as he marched towards the *Parthians*. The overthrow, and the disgrace which thereby hapned to the *Romans*, was not long afterwards recompensed by *Ventidius*, one of the Lieutenants of *Mark Antony* the *Triumvir*, who slew great numbers of them, in a pitched Field, and amongst others, *Pacorus* the Kings Son: the day of the Battel being the same, in which *Crassus* had before been vanquished. After this Victory, for which *Ventidius* had the honour of a *Triumph* (and the first *Triumph* that ever the *Romans* had held for a *Parthian* Victory) he was in a fair way to have ruined this Kingdom, to have threwly shaken it at the least, had not *Antony* in an envious humour called him from that service. Finally, *Horodes* was slain by his Son *Phraortes*.

11 *Phraortes* III. a valiant Prince; but wicked and cruel, as the Murder of his own Father and many of his Brethren doth clearly evidence. Against him marched *Marcus Antoninus* with a populous Army, which wanted little of an absolute overthrow; of 16 Legions, scarce six returning home in safety. This King submitted himself and Kingdom unto *Antoninus*, restoring the *Roman* Ensigns, and freeing the Captives taken at the defeat of *Crassus*. The only mark of the *Parthian* Subjection, was their receiving Kings at the appointment of the Senate and Emperours of *Rome*; which also was of no long continuance.

12 *Phraortes* IV. Son of *Phraortes* the third, whom he slew and succeeded.

13 *Horodes* II. Son of *Phraortes* the fourth, slain in a conspiracy.

14 *Voron*, substituted in the place of *Horodes*, but ousted by

15 *Tiridates*, who was also dispossessed of his life and

and Kingdom of *Artabanus*, the people flocking to him as a man of courage, and being offended with the two last Kings, because they either had received the Kingdom, or at least the Confirmation in it, from the *Roman* Emperours. Which *Artabanus*, though defended either from a Female, or some of the Collateral line of the former Family; yet being not direct Heir thereof, he is looked on as a stranger to the Blood of the *Assyrian* the Family of *Arfaces*, giving place to that of this *Artabanus*, of which Family we have the names of twelve Kings successively Reigning: the most considerable of them being *Chosroes*, the eighth King of this Line, from whom the Emperour *Trajan* gained *Armenia*, and *Mesopotamia*, adding them to the *Roman* Empire. Members whereof they did continue till regained to the *Persian* Crown, by *Sapor* the ninth King of the next *Persian* Dynastie. But for those twelve Kings of this house, they are these.

The third Dynastie of the Kings of *Persia*, and the second of the *Parthian* Race.

1 *Artabanus*.

2 *Barabades*.

3 *Goteses*.

4 *Vonones*.

5 *Vologes*.

6 *Artabanus* II.

7 *Pacorus*.

8 *Chosroes*.

9 *Parthaspates*.

10 *Vologes* II.

11 *Vologes* III.

12 *Artabanus* III. the last King of this new Race of the *Parthians*, whose overthrow by the valour of *Artaxerxes* the first *Persian* King of the fourth Dynastie, occasioned the Translation of the Diadem to the natural *Persians*; after it had continued in two *Parthian* Families for the space of 470 years. Which Translation, as it was wrought by the unreluctant power of God, who only hath the disposing of Crowns and Scepters, so in the way of second causes it may be principally referred to the Barbarous Massacre of this people, by *Antonius Caracalla* the *Roman* Emperour; who having negotiated a Marriage with the Daughter of this *Artabanus*, and going (as he gave it out) to solemnize the Nuptials, was met by the old King accompanied with the flower of his Nobility, and the choicest of his Soldiers, and other Subjects, in *Triumphal* Ornaments. Which honourable Train was no sooner come near his Army, but he commanded his Soldiers (on a Watch-word given) to put them all to the sword, the King himself hardly escaping with his life. *Caracalla* being dead, and *Macrinus* succeeding in the Throne, the *Parthians* set upon him to Revenge that slaughter. But understanding after a long fight of three days continuance, that *Macrinus* had slain *Caracalla*, they made Peace with him; but were so weakened and unable to hold their own, that it made the *Persians* once more think of recovering to their own Nation, the *Regal* power. For *Artaxerxes*, a noble and generous *Persian*, (his name perhaps suggesting some high thoughts unto him) did so well husband the opportunity, that he slew *Artabanus* the last King of the *Parthians*, and once more brought the *Royal* Seat into *Persia*. Yet was not this so easily effected, the *Parthians* notwithstanding their former losses, maintaining another cruel fight for three days together; so difficult was it to vanquish that Nation, when their Forces were broken; impossible when they were entire. *Artaxerxes*, proud of this success, sent a peremptory Embassy to *Alexander Severus*, the then *Roman* Emperour, to have all the Provinces of *Asia*, which had

formerly belonged to the *Persian* Monarchy, re-delivered to him: a matter not so easily granted as demanded. For *Severus* to suppress so insolent an Enemy, marched towards *Persia* with an Army *Romany* appointed; which, parts: whereof the first was to march into *Media*, the second into *Persia*, the third himself Led in the mid-way between both, to succour both; or be succoured by both, as occasion required. But his device succeeded not happily; for his two Armies being by the *Persians* broken, he with much danger and halt retired back with the third. This was a good beginning for the *Persian* Kingdom; the Establishment followed not long after: *Valerianus* the Emperour being vanquished, and taken Prisoner by *Sapor*, the second King of this Race. So that now the name of the *Persian* grew so terrible to the *Romans*, that *Constantine* the Great transplanted many of the Colonies and Garrisons of the North-west parts of the Empire, into the East, to keep the *Persian* from growing too far upon the *Roman* Provinces; and removed also the Seat of the Empire higher unto them, from *Rome* to *Constantinople*. And thus having shewn the beginning and Establishment, the Foundation and Building of the new Kingdom of the *Persians*, take along with you the Catalogue of their Kings, until they once more lost the Sovereignty of their own Nation, and became Slaves again to more barbarous Masters.

The fourth Dynastie, or Race of the *Persian* Kings.

228

1 *Artaxerxes* 15.

229

2 *Sapor* 31.

243

3 *Ormisdates* 1.

275

4 *Vararanes* 3.

278

5 *Vararanes* II. 16.

294

6 *Vararanes* III.

294

7 *Narjes* 7.

302

8 *Misdates* 7.

310

9 *Sapor* II. 70.

380

10 *Artaxerxes* II. 11.

391

11 *Sapor* III. 5.

396

12 *Vararanes* IV. 10.

406

13 *Isdigerdes* 21.

427

14 *Vararanes* V. 20.

447

15 *Vararanes* VI. 17.

464

16 *Perozes* 20.

484

17 *Valens* 4.

488

18 *Cabades*, dispossessed by

499

19 *Lanabases* 4.

503

20 *Cabades*, again restored.

533

21 *Cosroes Magnus* 48.

581

22 *Hormisdas* 8.

589

23 *Cosroes* II. 39.

628

24 *Siroes* 1.

629

25 *Adbesir*.

26

Sarbanus.

27

Bannavus.

630

28 *Hormisdas* II. the 28 and last King of the Race of *Artaxerxes*, or the fourth Dynastie: of whom besides the two first Kings, whose Acts are spoken of before, the most remarkable were, 1 *Vararanes* the second, in whose time *Caracalla* the Emperour passing over *Euphrates*, and laying Siege to *Ctesiphon*, was there slain by a Thunderbolt. 2 *Narjes*, the Son of *Vararanes*, who first diminished *Galerius*, one of the *Cæsars*, in the Empire of *Dioclesian*, and totally ruined his Army: for which *Galerius* being forced to Lacquey it by the Emperour's Chariot in his Purple Robes, was so highly shamed, that to recover his credit he set upon *Narjes* once again, routed him, and took Prisoners his Wives and Children.

3 *Sapores*

3 *Sapores* the second, the Son of *Misdates*, who began his Reign before his Birth. For his Father dying without Issue, left his Wife with Child : which Child the *Mayi* having signified by their Art to be a Male, the *Persian* Princes caused the Crown and Royal Ornaments to be set upon his Mothers belly, acknowledging him thereby for their future King. A great and puissant Prince he proved, holding continual War with *Constantine*, and his Successors till the Death of *Valens*; and gaining from them the best parts of *Mesopotamia* : but withal a great Persecutor of the *Christians*, of whom no fewer than 20000 are said to have fullered in his time. 4 *Adigerres*, a Prince so esteemed of by *Arcadius*, the Eastern Emperour, that he made him Protector of his Empire, during the minority of his Son *Theodosius* : which trust he Royally performed, and was a great friend unto the *Christians* in his own Dominions. 5 *Cabades*, first outed of his Kingdom by *Zanusher*, and restored again, was the first *Persian* King who permitted the free exercise of the *Christian* Religion. He slew *Zelobes*, a King of the *Huns*, coming to his Aid against the *Romans*, because he had before promised to assist the Emperour; and vooed the *Manichean* Sect out of his Estate. 6 *Cosroes* the Son of *Cabades*, firamed the *Great*, a constant Enemy to the *Romans*, from whom he Conquered a great part of *Syria*, and took and sacked the City of *Antioch*. But finding the War brought home to his own door, by *Murruis*, who was afterwards Emperour, and his own Countries in a flame, he took much thought of it, that he died of a Fever. 7 *Cosroes* the second, as great an Enemy to the Emperour *Heraclius*, from whom he took all that was left of *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*, with the City of *Hierusalem* it self; most of it recover'd by *Heraclius* : in despite of whom he caused all the *Christians* in his Kingdom to turn *Nestorians*. 8 *Hormisdas* the second, the last of the *Dynasty*, who being first weakened by Civil and Domestick dissensions, was vanquished by *Hummar* and his *Saracens*, Anno 634. burying to the glory of this renowned Nation in the grave of oblivion, or at least subjection.

The *Saracemical* Caliphs, having added this Kingdom to their large Empire, appointed here their Deputies, whom they honoured with the name of *Sultans*; not one Supreme for the whole Kingdom, but several Governours or *Sultans* for each several Province: called by new names, and muddled into many *Toparchies*, as *Chorasan*, *Mouzenabur*, *Uzbek*, and I wot not what; the *Sultans* acting of themselves, and warring upon one another, as their humours led them, without relation to the *Caliph*, or Lord in chief. During which buffles it so hapned, that *Mabomet*, the *Sultan* of *Persia* (so called because he was the chief Command and Power) picking a quarrel with his Neighbour the *Sultan* of *Babylon*, (*Pisafiris* he is called in some *Christian* Writers, by whom taken or mistaken for the *Caliph* himself) made War upon him. But finding him countenanced and supported by the Power of the *Caliph*, invited the *Turks*, then possided of some part of *Armenia* Major, to come to his Aid : by whose means he overthrew the *Caliph's* Forces, and might have got the Sovereignty of *Persia* unto himself, if he had used his Victory and his Friends, with any tolerable discretion. But denying to pay the *Turks* their Wages, and send them home, he occasioned them to make head against him, under the Conduct of *Tangrolipix*, their principal Leader; to whom being once in Arms, several discontented persons of the natural *Persians*, did unite themselves. Encouraged with which addition, and being furnished with Horse and Armour, and other necessities, by the Spoil of the Country, they gave Battle to the *Sultan* himself : whom having vanquished, and slain, *Tangrolipix*

by the joynt consent of both Armies is made King of *Persia*, the Founder of

The fifth *Dynasty*, or the *Turkish* Race of the Kings of *Persia*.

- 1030 1 *Tangrolipix*, of whom sufficiently before.
2 *Axon*, the Son of *Tangrolipix*, by whom *Cutlu Moset*, his near Kinsman, was sent with great Forces against the *Christians*; whom he dispossest of a great part of *Asia Minor*.
3 *Babek*, *Sultan* of *Persia*, in the beginning of the Wars in the *Holy Land*, undertaken by the Western *Christians*; against whom he is reported to have sent his Forces. Of whose Successors I find nothing till the time of
1198 4 *Cassanes*, the last King or *Sultan* of the *Turks*, vanquished in the year 1202. by the *Chau* of *Tartary*. Which makes me very apt to think, that after the death of *Axon*, or his next Successor, the *Turks* lost the Sovereignty of *Persia*, though they kept the possession of some parts of it; the Sovereignty thereof being recovered by the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*: and that it was so held by both, till the *Tartars* dispossest the one, and destroyed the whole Progeny of the other, as before was noted. And this I find to be the opinion of *Benjamin Tadelensis*, a Learned *Jew*, who had Travelled most part of the East, to whose judgment herein I subscribe, as most found and rational.

The sixth *Dynasty*, or the *Tartarian* Race of the Kings of *Persia*.

- 1260 1 *Haalon*, or *Ulab-Kubkan*, by *Oecana* the great *Chau*, made King of *Persia*; exterminated the whole Race of the *Caliphs* of *Bagdad*.
1266 2 *Habkukighon*, the Son of *Haalon*.
1282 3 *Nicador Oglan*, by *Haaton* call'd *Tangador*, who made himself a *Mabometan*, and was named *Hamed*, the Brother of *Habkukighon*.
1284 4 *Argon-Kbon*, the eldest Son of *Habkukighon*.
1292 5 *Genotukbon*, Brother of *Argon-Kbon*.
1295 6 *Budukbon*, the Uncle of the last, of which three there is little memorable.
1296 7 *Gazun*, the Son of *Argon-Kbon*, who made *Cubbin* his Imperial See.
1305 8 *Alyaptu*, who transferred the Court to *Tauris*, and is said to have been the Founder of *Sultania*, a chief City of *Media*; the Brother of *Gazun*.
1317 9 *Abusaid*, Son of *Alyaptu*, the last of the Race of *Haalon*, that reigned in *Persia*. After whose death, Anno 1337. (being the 736 of the *Mabometan* *Hegira*) the more potent Princes of the *Tartars* seized on the several parts and Provinces of it; every one calling himself King of that part or Province, which he was possided of. And amongst them *Gempas* the *Sultan* or *Soldan* of *Parthia*, (though a *Persian* born) put in for a share, and made himself Master of his own Province, and some parts adjoining : made on that ground by some of our *Christian* Writers (who very imperfectly have transmitted to us the affairs of this Country) the sole King of *Persia*. In this confusion it continued till the coming of *Tamerlane*, who like a furious Whirlwind, driving

driving all before him, composd the differences, by getting all unto himself. But as Philosophy doth teach us, that no violent motion is of long continuance; so the course of business and the success of actions may intrude us also, that a Kingdom forced to bow under the command of a prosperous Army, is not so well allured to the Victor, but that fury of the War once past, it may return again to its former liberty, or open a more easie passage to some new invader. And so it fared with the Conquests and Successes of *Tamerlane*, whose Issue quickly lost this Kingdom, and almost all the rest of his other Purchases, leaving but little memory of their names and actions. For partly by his own imprudence, in cantoning his Estates amongst his Children; and partly by the weakness of his Successors in the Realm of *Persia*, this Kingdom did relapse immediately to the same confusions in which he found it; having almost as many Sovereign Kings as Provinces. Most of them Homagers perhaps to the Kings of the House of *Tamerlane*, and those who afterwards succeeded in the Title of Kings of *Persia*, of the *Turcoman* or *Armenian* *Dynasty*: not yet reduced unto this Crown, notwithstanding the great and prosperous success of the *Sophian* Family. But for the Kings of the Race of *Tamerlane*, who only in their times had the honour to be called Kings of *Persia*, (and well enough content with that :) such as they were, we find them in this order following :

- 1405 10 *Mirza Cheroock*, the fourth Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded in his appointment in the Realm of *Persia*.
1447 11 *Olegbegh*, Son of *Mirza Cheroock*, vanquished and slain by his own Son.
1450 12 *Abdalatif*, slain not long after by his own Souldiers.
1451 13 *Abdulla*, the Son of *Olegbegh*, and Brother of *Abdalatif*, vanquished by
1453 14 *Abusaid II.* descended from *Morancha*, the third Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded on the death of *Abdulla*.
1461 15 *Zeuses*, whom some call *Jooncha*, others *Ma-lanchres*, discomfited and slain in battle by *Ussan-Cassanes*, Anno 1472. which was about 70 years from the death of *Tamerlane*.

The seventh *Dynasty* of the *Turcoman*, or the *Armenian* Race of the Kings of *Persia*.

- 1472 1 *Ussan-Cassanes*, by some called *Asymbeins*, by others more truly *Ozem-Azambock*, was the Son of *Tracheton*, one of those poor *Armenian* or *Turcoman* Princes, dispossest by *Bajazet* the first, and restored by *Tamerlane*. Encroaching on his Neighbours, he was warned to desist by *Zeuses* last *Persian* King; with whom encountering in a pitched Field, he overcame him, and got that Kingdom by the Victory.
1478 2 *Jacib*, the second Son of *Ussan-Cassanes*, having put by his elder Brother, attained the Throne, and repulsed the *Mamelucks* out of *Mesopotamia* and *Assyria*, which they had invaded. He was after Poysoned by his Wife.
1490 3 *Julawar*, a Kinsman of *Jacib's*, succeeded him in the Estate, which he held only three years, and then left it to
1493 4 *Baisinger*, a Prince of the same Blood; who living in Adultery with the Wife of *Jacib*, had conspired his death. 2.

1495 5 *Ruffan*, assaulted by *Alder*, or *Secander*, of the *Sophian* Faction, who then began to be of power.

1498 6 *Alamart*, or *Hageret*, the last King of this *Turcoman* or *Armenian* Race; first vanquished *Secander* at the Battle of *Debernt*, and cut off his head : but was after overthrown and slain by *Hyfmael* the Son of *Alder*, upon the quarrel and occasion which here followeth.

Mabomet the Impostor and first Emperour of the *Saracens*, by his last Will and Testament, bequeathed the succession unto that Estate, to *Hali* his near Kinsman, and Husband of *Fatime* his eldest Daughter. But *Abuchazer*, *Hammar*, and *Osman*, three powerful men, and the successively followed one another in the Supreme Dignity. After their death, *Hali* enjoyed that honour for a little while, supplanted first, and afterwards vanquished and slain by *Mubassias*, a great man of War, who succeeded in it : and to secure himself therein, slew *Hafse* or *Osman*, the Son of *Hali*, and eleven of the Sons of that life. From him descended lineally one *Guine*, the Lord of *Arduville* in *Media*; who considering that there had been no *Caliph* in long time before, began to plot the establishing of that high honour in his own Family; as the right Heirs to it. A man of so great reputation among the people, that *Tamerlane* having made a Conquest of *Persia*, thought it no dishonour to his Greatness to bestow a friendly visit on him. Dying, he left hisopes and projects to his Son, called *Alder*, who afterwards for the Purity of Religion pretended by him, had the adjunct of *Tzophy*; the word so signifying in that Language : who also proved of such esteem and power with all sorts of men, that *Ussan-Cassanes*, the first King of the *Armenian* or *Turcoman* Race, thought fit to make him husband unto one of his Daughters. But on the contrary, *Jacub* the Son of *Ussan*, and some of his Successors, seeing him grow unto such power and estimation with the common people; and fearing what he could do, and not what he might be. Which he not able to remedy, as the case then stood, practised to add unto his Party under the popular pretence of reforming things that were amiss in their Religion; and grew so powerful in the end, that he gave Battle unto *Ruffan* and *Alamart*, the two last Kings of the former Race. But *Alamart* having got the Victory, caused him to be slain; and delivered *Hyfmael* and *Solyman* his two Sons, into the hands of *Amazar*, a chief Commander of his own, by him to be kept in perpetual Prison. But *Amazar*, a man of a more ingenious disposition, afforded them not only liberty, but also good Education : inasmuch that *Hyfmael* *Sophi*, a towardly young Gentleman, undertook Revenge for the death of his Father, which work he fulfilled, having overcome and slain King *Alamart*, and his Son *Elwan*. After this Victory, he being Crowned King or *Shah* of *Persia*, altered the form of Religion : making *Hali*, and himself the true Successors of *Mabomet*, but condemning *Abudazer*, *Hammar*, and *Osman*, with the *Turks*, as Rebels and *Schismatics*.

Hence proceeded the blood Wars, which to they *Persians* Iols, have hapned between them and the *Turks* : the *Persians* burning whatsoever Book or Monument they find concerning those three; and the *Turks* holding it more Meritorious to kill one *Persian*, than seventy *Christians*: *Surim* in his Commentaries, writing purposely of the acts of *Hyfmael*, *Lieth*, that the *Jews* on some fond conceit, were perfwaded that he was the *Messiah* they had

Amazur Tett had

had so long looked for : But it proved quite contrary, there never being Prince that more vexed and grieved them.

The eighth Dynasty, or Sophian Race of the Kings of Persia.

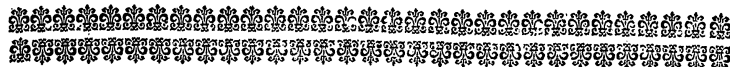
- 1505 1 *Hysmael Sophi*, the Founder of this Family, overthrown by *Selimus* the first, in the *Calderan* Fields. 20.
- 1525 2 *Tamas*, the Son of *Hysmael*, vanquished by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, who took from him the Countries of *Chaldaea*, *Affrya*, and *Mesopotamia*, with some part of *Media*. 53.
- 1578 3 *Aider*, the second Son of *Tamas*, obtained the Kingdom, imprisoning his elder Brother ; but his cruelty being much feared, he was made away by the practice of *Periancona*, his own Sister, having only reigned 15 days.
- 4 *Hysmael II.* eldest Son of *Tamas*, restored unto his Father's Throne ; but murdered with the privacy of his Sister also, who found him of too rough a nature for her to Govern ; having reigned near two years.
- 1579 5 *Mahomet Codaabanda*, advanced unto the Throne by his Sisters Faction, (as being of a milder and more tractable nature) at his first entrance caused her to be Beheaded for the former Murders. During his time, not fully settled in the State, *Amurath* the third, by his Lieutenants won from him almost all *Armenia*, *Media*, and great part of *Georgia*. 7.
- 1585 6 *Abas*, the second Son of *Mahomet*, having treacherously practised the death of *Mirza*, his elder Brother, succeeded his Father, recovered almost all which the *Turks* had gained, and added the Kingdoms of *Ormus*, *Heri*, *Candabor*, and *Hyrcania*, to the Crown of Persia.
- 7 *Sophy*, the Nephew of *Abas* by his Son *Mirza*, (whose Eyes he caused to be put out on a false suspicion) at the Age of fifteen years succeeded : committed by his Grandfather during his Minority to the Protection of *Emangoli*, *Chann*, or Duke of *Shiraz*. A Prince, who since he came to Age, hath had a good hand against the *Turks*; attempting the recovery of *Bagdad* and other places, which had been taken from them in time of *Abas*.

The Government of these *Persian* Kings, though it be despotical and severe, hath a great deal less of the Tyranny in it, than any other of the *Mahometan* Kings or Princes : these cherishing their Brethren, maintaining *Nobility* amongst them, and encouraging Industry ; which makes them to be better served than the *Turks*, or *Tartars*:

to both whom they are far inferiour both in power and Treasure. Their Officers of State, and men of principal Employment, for the most part *Eunuchs* (as generally in all the Empires of the East) such persons being thought most trusty, because abstracted from the obligations of Wife and Children, they study more the Princes Service than their own Advantages. Their Forces consist mult of *Horse*, to which they are inclined more generally, than to serve on *Foot*, and yet the greatest Body of *Horse* which they have brought at any time into the Field, came not to above 30000 ; but those well furnished and appointed, maintained on Lordships and Estates after the manner of the *Turkish* *Timariots*. The *Foot-Soldiers* of his own Countries, but poor and raw, and very seldom stand their ground ; that defect being for the most part supplied by *Mercenaries*. The inconvenience of which being found by *Sultan Abas*, he served himself of Children bought of *Christian* Parents near the *Euxine* Sea (from whence the *Egyptian* *Sultans* had their *Mamlukes*) whom they call by the name *Cocaz-Basars*, or *Red-Caps*, so named from the colour of their *Turbants* : trained up by them in their Religion and Warlike Discipline, as the *Turks* their *Tamariots* ; yet far inferior to the *Turks*, against whom if they have prevailed since the time of *Abas*, they may ascribe the greatest part of their good fortune to those Divisions and Rebellions, which in these late times have been frequent in the *Turkish* Empire. And as for their Sea-Forces, they are inconsiderable. For though they have large Sea-coasts both on the *Persian* Bay, the *Caspian* Sea, and the Southern Ocean ; yet are they very poor in Shipping : suffering the *Muscovite* to ingross the Trade of the *Caspian* Sea ; the *Portugals*, to manage that of the Southern Ocean ; as formerly that also of the *Persian* Bay, till the taking of *Ormuz*.

The Revenues of this Kingdom in the time of *Hysmael* the first *Sophy*, were exceeding great : inasmuch that *Tamas* his Successor, to ingratiate himself with all sorts of people, released them of all kinds of Customs imposed on Merchandise, either imported or exported. And this they say amounted to the sum of 90000 *Tomans* yearly : which, reckoning every *Toman* at 20 Crowns, made up a Million and 800000 Crowns of annual Income. Which notwithstanding, his Revenue was computed at four or five Millions of Crowns yearly ; raised out of *Domain* Lands, the tenth of Fruits, the profit of *Mines*, and the *Fine* paid by every Subject when he sets up Shop. But *Tamas* finding this not to be sufficient to maintain his Royalty, doubled the value of his money, and thereby for the present his Revenue altho' since that they have been much impaired by the Conquest made upon them by the *Turks*, who had got from them so much Land as maintained 40000 *Timariots*, and yielded to the *Grand Seigneur* one Million of yearly Income : whether improved again or not to their former height, I am not able to determine.

And so much for Persia.



OF TARTARY.



TARTARIA is bounded on the East, with *China*, the *Oriental* Ocean, and the Straights of *Anian*, (if such Straights there be) by which parted from *America* ; on the West, with *Russia*, and *Podolia*, a Province of the Realm of *Poland* ; on the North, with the main *Scythick* or *Frozen* Ocean, and on the South, with part of *China*, from which separated by a mighty Wall, some part of *India*, the River *Oxus*, parting it from *Bactria*, and *Margiana*, two *Persian* Provinces, the *Caspian* Sea, which separates it from *Media*, and *Hyrcania* ; the *Caucasian* Mountains interposing betwixt it and *Turcomania* ; and the *Euxine*, which divideth it from *Anatolia*, and *Thrace*. So called from the *Tartars*, a pusilliant and mighty people now posessed hereof, the reason of whose name we shall shew hereafter.

It containeth all those great and spacious Provinces, which the Ancients called *Seres*, *Scythia extra Tanum*, *Scythia intra Tanum*, *Saca*, *Sogdiana*, the greatest part of *Sarmatia Asiatice*, and part of *Sarmatia Europaea* : extending it self the whole length of *Asia*, from the River *Tanis*, to the *Eastern* Ocean ; taking in *Taurica Cherfoneus*, and some other parts of *Europe* also. So that if we measure it by miles, it is said to contain 5400 from East to West, and 3600 from North to South : a greater quantity of ground than the *Turkish* Empire, but of less fertility and account.

In measuring by the way of Degrees, it reacheth from the 4th Degree of *Longitude*, to the 195th, which is 145 Degrees from West to East : and from the 40th Degree of Northern *Latitude*, unto the 8th, which is within 10 Degrees of the *Pole* it self. By which account it lieth from the beginning of the sixth *Climate*, where the longest day in Summer is 15 hours, till they cease measuring by *Climates*, the longest day in the most Northern parts hereof, being full six months ; and in the Winter half of the year, the night as long.

The Country lying under such different *Meridians*, and such distant *Climates*, must needs be such, as no general Character can be given of it ; and therefore we shall defer that, with the names of the Rivers, and chief Mountains, to the description of the several and particular Provinces. But for the people, being much of the same nature in every part, we may take the measure of them here. Affirmed to be of square Stature, broad faces, hollow eyes, thin beards, thick lips, flat noses, ugly countenances, swart of complexion, not so much by the heat of the Sun, (which keeps far enough off) as their natural fluttliness. Barbarous every where in behaviour, especially in those parts which they call *Asiatica*, and *Antiqua* : but withall very strong of body, swift of footmanship, vigilant in time of service, and patient of all extremities both of cold and hunger. The women suitable to the men,

scorning or wanting Ornaments to set themselves out ; or when they do, they seldom go beyond Copper, Feathers, or such precious *Gem-gems*.

In behaviour they are rude and barbarous, as before was said ; eating their *Enemies* when they take them, as in way of Revenge ; first letting out their blood, which they receive into *Cups*, and use it as Wine unto the feast. Though swift of foot, yet generally they love to ride, though it be but on Oxen ; about whose necks, as about Horses, when they Travel, they use little Bells, with which *Musick* they are much delighted. Their speech, even in their common talk, is a kind of whining, and their singing little better than the howling of Wolves. They eat commonly with unwashed hands, the dirt and grease about their fingers serving as a sauce for their meat, which they devour greedily, and with little chewing ; and for their ordinary drink use *Marcs* milk. Homely of habit, made of the coarsest stuff, and reaching no lower than the knee : and if they go to the charge of Furs, contrary to the custom of other people, they wear the hairy side outwards, and the skin next their own bodies ; only to shew the richness of their Apparel. And yet so proud in this beggary, that they account the *Christians* but as Dogs, condemn all the rest of the world, and think their *Cham* the only considerable Prince ; by whose name they swear, as by their Gods.

In matter of Religion it is hard to say, whether *Mahometanism* or *Paganism*, be of most extent : some parts hereof being wholly *Pagan*, some wholly *Mahometan*, and some mixt of both. But of the two the *Pagan* is the better *Gentleman*, as being of the elder house, and of more Antiquity : the Sect of *Mahomet* not being entertained amongst them, till the year 1246.

And yet these have not so prevailed, as to extinguish the remainders of *Christianity*, of which there are amongst them many several Churches. The *Christian* Faith first planted amongst the *Scythians*, by the preaching of *S. Andrew*, and *S. Philip*, two of the Apostles. Overgrown in these latter Ages by the Sect of *Nestorians*, either by the diligence of their Preachers, or for want of others to instruct them in more *Orthodox* Tenets. Before the prevailing of the *Tartars*, besides the *Christian* Christians, of whom more anon, there are in the most remote parts of *Tartary*, whole Kingdoms of that Religion ; as namely that of *Tendur*, then the chief of all : besides some numbers of them in *Tangut*, *Cauchin*, *Calgar*, *Samerchan*, *Kartum*, *Suehair*, *Erginul*, and *Cavaim* ; where in the year 1270, they lived intermingled with the *Pagans*. Not so diminished since the Conquest of those Countries by the *Tartars*, but that they are of a considerable number, especially in *Cashay* it self : where they are said to have a *Metropolitan* in the City of *Cambatu*, (the principal City of that Empire) and he is honoured by the

Great Cham, that for a time they receive their Crowns from no hands but his.

As for the *Tartars*, they are by the Chronologer *Genebrard*, said to be the off-spring of the *Ten Tribes*, whom *Salmanassar* led away Captive; and that especially for three reasons. The first is, that the word *Tartari*, by which name (with he) they ought rather to be called, than by that of *Tartari*, signifieth in the *Syriack* and *Hebrew* Tongues, a *Remnant*. But unto this it is answered, that the name of this people is derived from the River *Tartar*, as some; or from the Region called *Tartar*, where they first dwelt, as most think: and again, that though the *Hebrew* word *תרת* signifies a *Remnant*, yet can it not properly be applied to the *Tartars*; who so infinitely exceed the *Jews*, that they cannot be thought to be a remainder of them. Secondly, he alledgeth for proof hereof, that this people use *Circumcision*, the Character of the *Jewish* Nation. And hereunto it is replied, the *Circumcision* was common to many people, besides that *Jews*, as to the *Egyptians*, *Ethiopiens*, &c. and that rather as a National Custom, than a Religious Ordinance; and again, that the *Tartars* cannot be proved to have received *Circumcision*, before they received *Mohametanism*. Thirdly, there is brought to confirm this Opinion, a place of *Esdra's*, cap. 13. lib. 2. where it is said, that the *Ten Tribes* (that they might the better keep God's Statutes) passed over the River *Euphrates*; and after a journey of one year and a half, came into a Country called *Asurach*. To reveal which, those of the contrary Opinion find no better course, than by shewing the impossibilities of it. For the *Tartars* (when their name was first known) were meer Idolaters, had no remembrance of the Law, observed not the Sabbath, nor any other point of *Jewish* Religion: and so the *Ten Tribes* retired not hither to keep God's Statutes. Secondly, *Euphrates* lyeth quite West from *Affrica*, and those places to which *Salmanassar* transplanted the *Israelites*; and so it could not be passed over in a journey towards the North. And thirdly, it is very improbable, that the *Ten Tribes* should either be so simple, as to leave *Affrica*, where they were peaceably settled, or so Valiant, as to force a passage through those Countries of *Scythia*, which neither *Persians*, *Greeks*, or *Romans* were able to withstand in the best of their Fortunes.

To let pass therefore all imaginations of a Foreign Pedegree, the truth is, that they were no other than a Ruder and more Northern brood of *Scythians*; who pressed by want, or otherwise oppressed by the King of *Tender*, unto whom they were subject. Armed themselves against him, obtained a memorable Victory, and settled *Cingis* their chief Captain in the Royal Throne, Anno 1162. After which, growing of more power, and enlarging their Dominions further, they united in the name of *Tartars* all the *Scythian* Nations; as *Mahomet* did those of the three *Arabias*, in the name of *Saracens*; or as in former times, the many several Tribes of the *German* Nations, were united in the names of *Franks*, or *Almans*. Not known in *Europe* by this name, till their many great and signal Victories had made them formidable; which was about the year 1212. within very little of which time they had made themselves Masters of a larger Empire, than that of *Macedon*, or *Rome*, in their greatest glories. But being of a hasty growth, it decayed as suddenly; the greatest part of their *European* purchases, being conquered from them by the *Dukes of Anjou*, and the *Kings of Poland*, as their acquies in *Asia*, and *Affrick*, by the *Turks* and *Persians*. Yet still are they possessed of so large a Territory, that were they not distracted into several States; or did those several States depend upon one *Supreme*, that one *Supreme* might

very easily give Law unto all his Neighbours, and make the *Turks* and *Persians* Tributaries, as in former times. But laying aside these speculations of what they might do if united under one command, let us now look upon them as they are divided into these five parts, that is to say, 1. *Tartaria Precopensis*, 2. *Asiatica*, 3. *Amiqua*, 4. *Zagathay*, and 5. *Cathay*.

1. TARTARIA PRECOPENSIS.

TARTARIA PRECOPENSIS is bounded on the East, with the River *Tanais*, now *Dan*; on the West, with the River *Borysbene*, now called *Nippr*, by which last parted from *Podolia*, a Province of *Poland*, on the North, with part of *Russia*; and on the South, with some part of the *Euxine* Sea: by this accompt lying totally within *Europe*.

It had the name of *Precopensis* from *Precopia*, a chief Town thereof. By some called *Tartaria Adinar*, to distinguish it from the greater body of that People: the Inhabitants hereof most commonly passing by the name of *Crim-Tartars*, from the Town of *Crim*, in which their *Chau* or Emperor doth reside most usually. The Country by them now possessed, part anciently of *Sarmatia Europaea*, was inhabited by a Warlike Nation, called the *Tauri*: from whom those parts hereof which lyeth betwixt the Empire of *Russia*, and the two Rivers *Tanais*, and *Borysbene*, were called *Tauro-Scythia*; that which shooteth out into the Sea, encompassed with the *Euxine* on the one side, and *Palus Maeotis* on the other, being called *Taurica Cherfoneus*. In the Description whereof at this place and time, as formerly I made hold with some part of *Asia*, to lay together the Estate of the *Russian* Empire: so now to satisfy for that trespass, I shall make bold with part of *Europe*, to lay together the discourse and affairs of *Tartary*.

The whole Country plentiful of Fruits, and the Soil indifferently disposed to Tillage and Grazing, though more accustomed unto the last: the people more delighting in their Herds of Cattel, than in the fulness of their Garners. Camels, Horfe, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats they have plenty of; great store of delicate Fowl, and abundance of Fish, bred in the large Fens of *Maeotis*: and in their Forests plenty of all sorts of Venison. Which *Charakter* as it belongeth generally to all the Country, so most especially to the *Cherfonese*, or *Demy-Island*. United to the main Land with so narrow an *Isthmus*, that the *Tartars* once went about to dig it thorow; from whence some say they had the name of *Precopensis*, *Precopia* in the *Slavonian* Tongue, signifying a deep Trench, or digging through. In length not above 24 *German*, or 96 *Italian* miles; in breadth but 60 of the one, or 15 of the other. Brest with a very temperate Air, and a gentle Winter: which beginning with the last of *December*, ends the first of *March*. Never extreme; and when the frosts are at the sharpest, but of short continuance. Divided in the midst with a Chain of Hills, extended from the East to the West; the boundary of the Dominions of the *Turk* and *Tartar*.

The people of the same complexion and composition as the rest of the *Tartars*; and not much different in manners. Their Diet, Roots, and Cheese, Garlick, & the poorer sort, for the most part Horfe-flesh, (none but the better sort presuming upon Beef or Venison, though of both abundance) which they eat without Bread, or any thing else: and therefore when they go to the Wars, every Souldier takes two Horfes with him, the one to serve upon, and the other to kill. And yet for all this havock which they make of Horfe-flesh, there are few years in which they sell not 40 or 50 thousand in the Fairs of *Mosco*.

Mosco. Towns they built none, scarce willing to maintain those which were built by their hands. Nor have they (except men of Trades and Manufactures) any standing houses; removing up and down with their Droves of Cattel, moving their houses with them (which they build on Wheels) from one place to another. Of Money they make no esteem, preferring Brafs and Steel before other Metals; because more useful to them for Swords and Knives. Good Souldiers for the most part, especially at the Bow and Arrow; to which lo accustomed from their childhood, that they can shoot as readily backward as forward. Trained also of late times to the *Harguebuse*, well skilled in handling the *Turkish* *Scymeters*, and their Horsemens Staves. Not to be vanquished but by death, as men that are resolved rather to die than be taken Prisoners: and if victorious, more intent upon taking Captives (especially young Boys and Girls, whom they sell to the *Turks*) than upon any other booty or spoils of war.

The Religion most embraced and countenanced is that of *Mohomet*, mingled with some of their old Principles of Christianity: for they confess that CHRIST shall be the Judge both of the quick and dead in the day of Judgment; and punish those that speak irreverently of him. In that regard more favourable to the *Christians* than other *Mohometans*; which makes great store of *Greecian* and *Armenian* Christians to dwell amongst them. The Language which they speak is their own *Tartarian*, but intermixt with much of the *Arabicke* and *Turkish* Tongues, and when they write, they use either *Chaldean*, or *Arabian* Characters.

Rivers of most note in it are 1. *Borysbene*, and 2. *Tanais*, which though they have their spring-heads in the Empire of *Russia* (as was there declared) have their falls in this: the first in the *Euxine*, in the 57th, the other into *Palus Maeotis* in the 67th degree of Longitude; by which we may conjecture somewhat of the length of the Country, 3. *Hipanes*, 4. *Carcinitis*, falling into the *Euxine*. 5. *Acaris*, and 6. *Byer*, which lose themselves in the Fens of *Maeotis*, so do also 7. *Paphagur*, 8. *Genus*, 9. *Lycus*, from the main Land; and 10. *Istrianus* from the *Taurian Cherfonese*. By the confluence of which waters, and many others falling into the *Asian* side, the Lake or Fens of *Maeotis* are of great extent, in compass at least a thousand miles; well stored with Fish, and still retaining somewhat of sweetness of those many Rivers which are emptied into it. So called from the *Meate*, who formerly inhabited on the banks hereof; and giving name to all excellent kind of Fish which were called *Meotides* by the Ancients. At this day generally called *Mar delle Zabze*, by the *Italians* commonly *Mar della Tana*, the Sea of *Tanais*, and sometimes also *Mer Bianco*, or the *White Sea*, to difference it from the *Euxine*, which they call the *Black*, for the reasons formerly delivered. Passing directly towards the South, it is freighted by a narrow Channel, not above four miles in breadth, though about 24 in length, called anciently by the name of *Bosphorus Cimmerius*; *Bosphorus*, because Oxen did use to swim over; *Cimmerius* from the *Cimmerii* who possessed the adjoining Country, on the *Asian* side: but known at this day by the name of *Stretto di Caffa*, from the City *Capha* near unto it; and by the Inhabitants, *Pöpolo*, more near the Original. Out of this Straight that confluence of waters which do meet in the *Meotick* Fens, do make their way into the *Euxine*, according to that of *Lucan*.

Quaque Frænum currus Maeotidas egerit undas.

Where the *Meotick* Pool at last

Thorow a narrow Straight make haf.

Chief Cities of it at the present, 1. *Capha*, or *Cassa*, in

the *Cherfonese*, not far from the Straight called hence *Stretto de Caffa*; a flourishing Empery, and furnished with a large and capacious Haven. Heretofore possessed by the *Genoese*, who by the benefit of this Port, and the Plantation which they had in *Perah* on the North side of *Constantinople*, engroined into their own hands the whole Trade of the *Euxine*. Taken by *Mahomet the Great*, Anno 1475. it became subject to the *Turks*, and drew into that thralldom all the Southern parts of the *Cherfonese*, which depended on it: deprived thereby of the greatest part of its former lustre, the *Christians* Churches being destroyed, the Towers and public buildings razed; the houses of *Genoa* Merchants which were fair and beautiful, destroyed and ruined; yet still the principal of this *Island*, or *Demy-Island*; and anciently better known by the name of *Theodosia*, and by that name remembered in *Ammianus*. 2. *Precopia*, in *Latine* called *Precopia*; a Town and Castle situate in or near the place, where stood the *Eupateria* of the Ancients, called also *Pompeopolis*, *Heraclaea*, and *Abdulla Cursum*. 3. *Corinthus*, the *Cherfonese* of *Polony*, anciently a *Greck Colony*; and then accounted for the chief of the whole *Peninsula*: rich, populous, and well-traded, by reason of the Haven which was safe and large; and of great beauty and magnificence, as the ruins testify. By the *Turks* at this day called *Sari-Germanum*, or the *Yellow Tower*, the foyl about it being of a *Saffron* colour. 4. *German* or *Crim*, the ancient Seat of the *Chams*, or Princes of these *Tartars*; and at that time the fairest and greatest of this *Island*: Situate in the midst hereof, and fortified with a strong Castle, for the height of the Walls, and depth of the ditch esteemed impregnable: supposed to be the *Taphra* of *Pliny*, or the *Taphros* of *Polony*: Mentioned by *Florus*, as then lately taken by some *Roman* Emperor, and so most likely to be *Trajan*, the first that ever extended the *Roman* Empire beyond *Danubius*, and the *Euxine*: Situate in the very *Isthmus*, and so commanding both the *Euxine*, and the Lakes of *Maeotis*; as *Corinib* betwixt the *Regeni* and *Ionian* Seas. 5. *Panticapeum*, situate on the very *Bosphorus*, and now called *Pöpolo* by the Natives: the ancientest City of this *Peninsula*, and said by *Ammianus* to be the mother of all the *Greck Colonies*, which were planted in it. 9. *Tanais*, the *Tanais* of *Polony* and other Ancients, because situate on the mouth of that River; or rather betwixt the two mouths of it, distant from one another a degree of Longitude. A Town of great Trade, and well frequented by the Merchants of all those Countries, which border on the *Euxine* Sea: but subject to the *Turks*, who have there a Garrison, and by them called *Azac*. 10. *Ingermannum*, situate on a large and lofty Mountain, and fortified with a Tower or Castle of stone, under which there is a Church, with great Charge and Art cut out of the Rock: formerly of great wealth and fame, now decayed and ruinous. 8. *Famuloli*, by some called *Belachini*. 9. *Macropia*, by the *Turks* called *Mangutan*. 10. *Crim*, all boasting of their several Castles. 11. *Oczakow*, or *Oczakovia*, situate near the influx of the great River *Borysbene*, into the Bay of *Carcinitis* and so most likely to be built in the place of that, which *Polony* calleth *Olbia*; *Pliny*, *Olbiopolis*: Honoured of late times (since the taking of *Taurica* by the *Turks*) with the residence of the Great *Chan*: from whence these *Tartars* are by some called *Olscenses*. 12. *Metropolis*, as *Polony*, or rather *Melitopolis*, as *Pliny* calleth it, a Colony in old times of the *Melitians*, not far from *Olbia*. Besides all which, and many others mentioned by the ancient Writers, of which there is nothing now remaining; the Court of the Great *Chan* in Summer time makes a movable City, built upon *Wheel-houses*, and transported from one place to another, as occasion serveth; which houses at every station

station are orderly disposed of into Streets and Lanes, and by the *Tartars* are called *Agara*, or a Town of *Carts*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were of *Scythian* Race; for by that name do elder Writers call not only the true and proper *Scythians*, lying on both sides of *Imam*: but even the *Sarmatians* also; and those not only of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, bordering next unto them: but even such *European* Nations, as lived on the Northern banks of *Isther*, and the *Euxine* Sea. And so they are affirmed to be by *Pliny* himself, though otherwise more exact than any, in distinguishing *Sarmatia Europaea*, from *Asiatica*, and *Asiatica* from the *Scythians*. For speaking of the Nations of *Sarmatia Europaea*, inhabiting on the *Palus Maeotis*, he ranks them thus, *βαλ αση δελω τω πανεσθι & Μαδοις*, &c. i. e. And all along the Coasts of *Maeotis*, dwell the *Jazyges* (distinct from those called *Manassae*) and the *Rhoxolani*; and more within the Land, the *Hamasobii* and *Alani*, *Scythians*. More towards the banks of the *Euxine*, and in the *Chersonese* it self, dwell the ancient *Tauri*, subdivided into the several Nations of the *Sinchi*, *Napai*, and *Arimchi*. by the said *Pliny* included in the general name of *Tauro-Scyths*. To none but these, of all the *European* *Sarmatians* doth he give this name. And therefore I conceive them to have been those *Scythians*, against whom *Darius* King of *Persia* made his fruitless war. Picking a quarrel with this People, because their King had denied to give him one of his Daughters to Wife; or to revenge, as others more probably say, the inroad which the *Scythians* formerly had made into *Asia*, he drew together an Army of 700 thousand. Passing over the *Thracian Bosphorus*, he came at last to the banks of *Isther*, where it parteth *Moldavia* and *Bulgaria*; and there for the passage of his men caused a Bridge to be Built, to the keepers whereof he left a Cord of 60 knots, commanding them every day to untie one knot; and if he came not back before all were untied, to return to their houses. This done, he marched towards his Enemies, who filled before him; leading him into the most desert and uninhabitable parts of their Country, and when they had brought him into a strait, sent Embassadors to him with a *Bird*, a *Moose*, a *Frog* and an handful of Arrows, willing the *Persians*, if they could, to expound that *Riddle*. *Darius*, willing to hope the best of his design, conjectured that the *Scythians* did submit unto him, by delivering into his hands their *Air*, *Earth*, *Water*, and *Animals*; symbolically signified in their Present: But *Coburn*, one of their seven Princes, made this Exposition, That is the *Persians* could not say like a *Bird* throw the *Air*, or like a *Moose* creep under the *Earth*, or like a *Frog* swim over the *Water*, they could by no means escape the *Scythian* Arrows. And to say truth, this Commentary best agreed with the *Text*. For these *Scythians* following close upon him, or rather driving him before, and vexing him with continual skirmishes, forced him to make such haste to get over the River, that he lost 80000 of his men in fight and flight. This was the only memorable Action of these *European* *Scythians* in those elder ages: more memorable in the times succeeding for their horrid cruelty, than any argument of their valour. For it is said of these *Tauri*, or *Tauro-Scyths*, that for the pleasing of their Gods, especially of *Diana*, whom they called *Orystoe*, they used to sacrifice all such strangers as they could lay hands on; and with their heads most barbarously adorned the Walls of her Temples. An inhumanity with which the *Christian* Advocates of the Primitive times did much use to upbraid the *Gentiles*; taunting them with the Sacrifices of *Diana Taurica* (so named from hence) as inconsistent with the nature of a God or goodness; most

rightly giving them this brand or censure, that they were not *Sacra*, but *Sacrilegia*. *Et proptat profanus esse quum sit religiosus*. Better it was to be of no Religion, than of one so cruel.

But to go forwards with the story, In the actions of the *Greeks* and *Romans* we hear nothing of them, unless it were that the Emperor *Trajan* (as *Florus* seems to intimate) took the City of *Tyber*: Which if he did, he added by that action somewhat to his own honour, but nothing to the *Roman* Empire: this people being never reckoned amongst the Provinces. Nor hear we any thing by name of their inflicting the *Roman* Territories (as the other barbarous Nations did:) except they passed in the account of the *Goths*, *Alani*, *Huns*, *Avars*, or other of the *Scythian*, or *Sarmatian* People; by which the Majesty of that Empire was trod under foot. But what the *Persians*, *Greeks*, and *Romans* were not able to do, was with ease effected by the *Tartars*: who in the time of *Juchata*, or *Hocata*, the next to *Cingis*, under the conduct of *Batu*, or *Roydo*, one of their most renowned Commanders, subdued all these parts; together with *Russia* on the North, *Bulgaria*, and *Hungaria* on the East. Subject at first to the Command of the Great *Chan* of *Cathai*, as the rest of the *Tartarians* were, they came at last to have a Prince of their own; one *Lochtan Chan*, descended from the aforesaid *Batu*, and (as it was pretended) of the blood of *Cingis*. They grew at last of great power, by conquering the *Asiatic* *Tartars* which lay nearest to them, that *Mahomet* the Great thought fit to keep them down before grown too strong for him: and therefore under colour of taking in the City of *Capra* then possessed by the *Genoese*, made himself Master of the greatest part of the *Taurian* *Chersonese*, and the Port of *Tenais*, thereby commanding both *Maeotis* and the *Euxine* Sea. In the time of *Selimus* the first, who had married a Daughter of this *Crim-Tartar*, (for so they call him) and was aided by him with an Army of 15000 men against his Father, the *Turks* and these *Tartarians* grew into a League. The chief conditions of it were, that the *Tartar* should aid the *Turk* upon all occasions, with 60000 horse, if it were required; that they shall not make war with any of their neighbours, (except the *Moscovite*) without leave of the *Turk*; that they shall pay yearly to the *Grand Seigneur* in the way of Tribute 300 *Christians*; that the new *Chan*, upon the death or deposition of his Predecessor, shall receive from the Great *Turk* a Royal Banner, in token of his Confirmation in that estate; that in reward of these services, the *Crim-Tartar* shall have yearly from the *Grand Seigneur* 500 *Ducats*, in the way of Pension; and succeed finally in the *Turkish* Empire, if ever the late Issue of the House of *Ottoman* should chance to fail. According unto this agreement, the *Tartars* have been aiding to the *Turks* from time to time, against the *Persians*, *Palanders*, *Hungarians*, *Moldavians*, and indeed whom not? and that with great and puissant Armies; the great *Chan* sometimes arming 150000 of his own Subjects (leaving but one man in an house to attend their Cattel, and sometimes adding 50000 *Circassians*, and others of the *Asian* *Tartars*. And for the *Moscovite*, he hath had to hard an hand upon him, that in the year 1571. they pierced as far as to the City of *Moscow*, and set fire on the Suburbs: which flaming into the City built most of wood, and then reckoned to be 30 miles in compass, within the space of four hours burnt the greatest part of it; and therein no fewer than 800000 of all sorts of people. A quarrel not to be composed; the *Tartar* not only laying claim to the Kingdom of *Casim*, and *Astrachan*, which the *Russ* possessed; but even to *Moscow* it self, as hath there been shewn.

shewn. Nothing so punctual is the *Turk* on his part, to perform the contract; who not content to have the *Tartar* for his friend, or at the worst his *Homager*, hath of late times attempted to make him his slave or *Vassal*. For *Amurat* the third, quarrelling *Mahomet* the *Crim-Tartar* for a design to intercept *Osman-Bassa*, in his way from *Persia* to *Constantinople*, authorized the said *Osman* to war upon him: by whom the poor *Crim* and his two Sons, betrayed by some of his own Councillors (corrupted with *Turkish* Gold) were strangled with a Bow-string; *Iskan* a Brother of the *Crim*, first sworn a *Vassal* to the *Turk*, put into the place; and over him a *Turkish* *Beglerbeg* or *Bassa*, to command in chief. What hopes he hath of succeeding in the *Turkish* Empire, if the house of *Ottoman* should fail, hath been already taken into consideration, in our discourse upon that subject.

What the *Revenue* of this Prince is, it is hard to say; his Subjects having little Money, and living most upon the bartery of their Cattel. But besides what he hath in Lands or Customs, and the 5500 *Ducats* yearly which he receiveth yearly from the *Turk*, he hath the rent of all the spoils which are got in the wars, and a *Checkin* for every Captive, for some two or three (whosoever taketh them) according unto their estates.

As for his power, what he can do in Horse, we have seen already; as for Foot, and Ammunition, and other necessities, he is supplied with them by the *Turk*, (who doth sometimes espouse his quarrels:) by whose alliance they have brought the *Moscovites* to some extremities. And upon confidence of the favour and protection of the *Grand Seigneur*, the *Chan* then being, upon the death of *Stephen Babori*, (whom *Amurat* the third, commended to the Crown of Poland) sent Embassadors to negotiate his Election to that Kingdom; and to induce them thereto, promised them in his Letters amongst other things, that their *Pope* should be his *Pope*, their *Luther* his *Luther*: and that rather than put them unto any charge to find his Table, he could live with Horse-flesh. His Embassy entertained with *Langhters*, as it well deserved.

2. TARTARIA DESERTA.

TARTARIA DESERTA is bounded on the West, with *Precoopsis*, and the Empire of *Russia*; on the East, with *Antiqua*, and *Zagathay*; from which last parted by the River *Syne*, which falleth into the *Caspian* Sea about the middle of it, and with the great Lake of *Kizay*, from East to West; on the North, with the *Scythic* or frozen Ocean; and on the South, with part of the *Euxine* Sea, the *Caucasian* Mountains, and some part of the *Caspian*.

It took this name from the many *Deserts* which are in it; and is called also *Asiatica*, to difference it from *Precoopsis*, which is wholly in Europe: or because it taketh up the whole continent of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, according to the bounds thereof laid down by *Ptolemy*, except some part hereof incorporated to the *Russian* Empire.

The Country of it self sufficiently fruitful, if well manured; and were it in the hands of a laborious and industrious people, would yield large increase: as appears by the ill-husbandry of the *Tartars*, who sow nothing on it but *Mill* and *Panicum* (grains unknown to us) and yet without giving it any tillage, receiving very plentiful returns of both. But the *Tartar* being a nation that hateth Agriculture, and laugheth at *Christians* for living on the tops of *Reeds*, (so they call our bread) neglect all that which is not of a rank Pasture for their Herds and Cattel: moving from one place to another, as the *Grafs*

faileth them; which maketh it so full of *Deserts*, and so empty of Towns as to deserve the name of *Tartaria Deserta*.

The People or Inhabitants of it are of several sorts, derived from three several Originals, and disposed of in three several parts. 1. The *Samoyeds*, dwelling towards the Northern Ocean, who are wholly Idolaters, now reckoned as a part of *Zagathay*, and where we shall hear further of them. 2. The *Circassians*, bordering on the *Euxine*, for the most part *Christians*; and 3. the *Tartars*, planted betwixt both, being all *Mahometans*. These again subdivided into several Tribes, which they call their *Hordes*; of which the most considerable are, 1. the *Nagajon Tartars*, 2. the *Zavolhenfes*, 3. the *Tumenenfes*, 4. the *Kirgessies*, besides the *Hordes* or Kingdoms of *Casim*, and *Astrachan*, added unto the Empire of *Russia*, where described already; and others of inferior note, not here considerable.

But before we come to speak with these people in their several places, we must first look upon the whole Country, as presented to us under the name of *Sarmatia Asiatica*; bounded by *Polony* as before, say that it did extend more Westwards; and was unknown to him, in the Northern parts of it: now possessed by the *Moscovite*. So populous in the time of that Author, that he giveth us the names of forty several Nations which did then inhabit it, and of about as many Towns of good estimation. Of which there are but few or none remaining; and for the names of some of the principal of them, we shall have them presently.

Rivers of most note in it, 1. *Marabius*, 2. *Rombitis*, the Greater, and 3. the less; 4. *Anticis*, 5. *Theophrastus*, 6. *Platibis*, 7. *Theysis*, 8. *Corax*, and 9. *Varadanes*; all of them falling into the *Euxine*, and *Moscow* Fens. 10. *Vidoni*, 11. *Anara*, and 12. *Rha*, paying their tributes to the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. Of these the principal is *Rha*, by the modern Latines called *Volga*; by the *Tartars*, *Edi*; rising in *Russia*, not far from the City of *Moscow*, where we have described it. Most memorable, besides the seventy Mouths or Channels, wherein it openeth into the *Caspian*, for a Medicinable and wholesome root growing on both sides thereof, which the Physicians call *Rha*, by the name of the River; and for Distinction sake, *Rha-Pomick*, to difference it from *Rhubarb*, or *Rha Barbarum*, as of a different nature from it; this last being purgative, and the other more apt to bind. 13. *Ob*, a River unknown to *Ptolemy*, rising out of the Lake of *Kizaya* Lake in bigness like the Sea, and full of many little Islands (most of them inhabited.) Which River at its first parting from this Lake, is said to be of 8 miles breadth; and growing still bigger and bigger, emptieth it self at last in the Northern Ocean: the present boundary betwixt the *Russian*, and the People in the North of this Country.

Principal Mountains of this part, 1. *Corax*, giving name unto the River issuing out of it. 2. *Montes Hippici*, extended towards the *Caspian* Sea. 3. *Montes Ceramii*, lying in the furthest parts hereof (then known to my Author) to the North and East. 4. *Caucasus*, or *Caucasus Montes*, extended from the *Euxine* to the *Caspian* Seas; and parting *Sarmatia Asiatica* from *Colechia*, *Iberia*, and *Albania*; a Chain of Hills of which *Aristotle* saith, *Aennine* & *Latitudine omnium maximam*, &c. that for height and breadth they are the greatest of the East; the tops whereof are lightened by the Sun beams in midnight till almost day-break, when it is dark night in the valleys beneath. Not passable for horse or foot (except they creep along by the *Euxine* shore) but at one place only, called *Sarmatia Pylo*, or the Gates of *Sarmatia*; by others named *Caucasus Porta*, from the Hills adjoining. Situate in the 81 degree

of *Latitude*; and not far from the *Caspian Sea*: but that so intricate and narrow, that very small force may keep it against strong Armies. So carefully did Almighty God in his Heavenly Providence, shut up this fierce and barbarous People, from the rest of Mankind, by such unfathomable Waters, and unpassable Mountains: not to be freed out of this Prison, till he thought good to use them, as the Executioners of his wrath and vengeance, for the punishment of sinful and impenitent Nations. This said, we will consider those particular Nations, which before we named, and are now posited of it in their several places.

1. Opposite to the *Preopenses* lie the *CIRCASSIANS*, extended from the *Cimmerian Bosphorus* and the Fens of *Meotis*, towards the Eastern shores of the *Euxine Sea* for the space of 500 miles; and reaching 200 miles towards the North. The name imposed on them by the *Tartars*, which as before they were called by *Pliny*, *Zige*, by some Writers, *Zichy*, conceived to be the *Zinchi* of *Pliny*.

The Country very fitly seated for Trade and Merchandise, having a fair and large Sea-coast, with many Rivers opening into it (nine of those spoken of before, passing thorough these Tracts): and not a few capacious Bays, and commodious Havens. Of which the principal were *Sinus Cerceticus*, or the Bay of *Cereeti*, *Synada*, and *Bata*, two known Havens, and specified by my Author with the adjunct of *Portus*. But these conveniences not much looked after by the present Inhabitants, who are more inclined to the Wars, than to Trades, or *Merchandise*. A Stout and Military People, trained to their Weapons from their Childhood, and sold as soon as trained to it by unnatural Parents. For from these parts did the *Mamelukes of Egypt* fetch their first *Originals*, and from hence supply themselves with a perpetual *Seminary* of Slaves and Souldiers, raised by degrees unto the highest dignities of that slavish Empire; And from these parts the *Persian Sophies* are supplied with their *Cossack-Soldiers*, disciplined and instructed by them like the *Turkish Janizaries*.

The *Christian Faith* was here planted in the year 860. or thereabouts, by the Ministry of *Cyrill* (or *Chiril*) and *Methodius*; employed in that Service by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*. In which respect their Churches are of the *Greek Communion*, conforming thereto in Rites and Doctrine, and of the jurisdiction of that Patriarch: but differing from them very much in matters *practical*. For it is ordinary with these *Christian*, not to baptize their Children till eight years old; to hear Divine Service standing without their Churches, into which they very seldom enter (especially the Gentlemen) till the fortieth, or (as some say) the sixtieth year of their age: dividing the whole course of their life betwixt *God* and the *Devil*, in dedicating their youth unto Theft and Robbery, their old age (when they can no longer commit those villanies) to the difficult business of repentance.

Places of most observation amongst the Ancients, 1. *Cimmerium*, a Town and Promontory, so called from the *Cimmerii*, once the chief People of these parts, of whom more anon; situate on the very shore of the *Bosphorus*, from hence denominated. 2. *Phanagoria*, in old times a well traded Empory; situate on a little Island raised out of the Sea, by the care and industry of the *Greeks*, who had here a Factory. 3. *Apaturgia*, by *Pliny* called *Apaturum*, memorable for a Temple of *Venus* (named *Apaturia* (which name the gave unto this place), because (saith *Sirabon*) when the Giants assailed her, she craved help of *Hercules*, who slew them all one after another. 4. *Genufa*, by *Pliny* honoured with the title of

Civitas, the *Gargara* of *Diodorus*, now called *S. George's*. 5. *Oenuntia*, near the mouth of the River *Thestis*, 6. *Araza*, more within the Land, which with 7. *Amphica*, hath the name of a City also. The names of their chief Havens we have seen before. But few of these, or any other mentioned by the Ancient Authors, being now visible in their ruins: the chief of those which are now extant, are 1. *Lecoppa*, 2. *Comice*; but of no great note.

The People anciently though divided into the several Tribes of the *Thiragetae*, *Zige*, *Turca*, the *Hunt*, *Auere*, and *Meota*, all noted Nations; besides the *Coaxtra*, *Zinchi*, *Tyramba*, *Pelii*, and others as obscure as they, were better known by the name of *Cimmerians*, in which those several Tribes concentrated. Descended in right of that common original, from *Gomer* the Son of *Japhet*, first planted in the Mountainous places of *Albania*: his Posterity known by the name of *Gomerii*, afterwards *Cimmerii*, left there a memorial of themselves in the Mountains called *Cimmerii*. But that Country proving both too barren, and too narrow for them, some of them passed into *Phrygia Major*, where they built the City *Cimmeris*, not unknown to *Pliny*, in whose time it was extant; and others in some Tract of time, keeping the *Euxine* on their left hand, fixed themselves in these parts, here giving name to the Town and Promontory *Cimmerium*, to the *Cimmerian Bosphorus*, and generally to all the people defended of them. From these particularly, as the stout and valiant Nation of the *Cimbri*, do derive their Pedigree; so from these and the Children of *Alfoch*, *Mayog* and *Tubal*, the *Sarmatians* both of *Europe* and *Asia*, the *Moscovites*, and perhaps the *Scythians*, are to fetch their Original: all of them great and puissant Nations, and all involved promiscuously in the name of *Scythians*. Renowned for no other action more than the memorable Expedition, which they made into *Media* in the *Greater*, and *Lydia* in the *Lesser Asia*: the *Cimmerians* by themselves alone, or by them as principal; the rest of these *Sarmatians* in a body together as a *Scythian* People. Distressed with want, or to disorder their small Country of superfluous multitudes, these *Cimmerii* in the time of *Nabulassar*, or *Salmanassar*, King of *Assyria*, communicating their design with the rest of the *Scythians*, to enlarge their quarters; holding along the coast of the *Euxine Sea*, and passing thorough the Country of *Colchis*, first seized on some parts of *Pontus* and *Paphlagonia*. Where having fortified the Promontory on which *Sinope* was after built; and leaving there their Carriages, and the weakest of their Train with sufficient guards, they marched into *Lydia*, reputed (as it was indeed) for a wealthy Region. There they possessed themselves of *Sardis*, the Royal City; and after of the rest of the Country, or the most part of it, *Ardes* the Son of *Giger*, who then reigned in *Lydia*, not being able to withstand them. Both sides being wearied with long War, and grown more pliant by degrees unto one another (as in like case betwixt the *Saxons* and the *Danes*) it proved no difficult matter for *Halysates*, the Grand-child of *Ardis*, to compound the business: assigning to the *Cimmerians* all those parts of his Dominions, which lay beyond the River *Halys*; and settling his *Lydians* in the rest. By this transaction there were so good correspondences betwixt the Nations, that when *Cyxares*, King of the *Medes*, invaded the Country of these *Cimmerians*, under colour of the invasion which the *Scythians* had made in *Media*, *Halysates* did espouse the quarrel, and appeared in their aid. In following times, growing into confidence of one another, and mixt in Marriages and Blood, they became one People; or at least passed not under the account of two strangers, or the name of *Athens*. Such end had this most

notable

notable expedition of these *Cimmerians*; not much remembered after this, for the like undertakings. Yet here they held their own, though in other names, governed by many petty Princes, but all associated with *Mithridates* against the *Romans*: that King being so great amongst them, that his Son *Machabes* having married into some of their Families, was made King of *Bosphorus*. But *Machabes* having made his peace with *Lusullus*, the *Romans* never looked this way. Nor hear we much of them in succeeding times, till the invasion of the *Tartars*; by whom subdued, they acknowledge as first the Great *Cham* for their Sovereign Lord: whose power declining, they have successively been subject to the *Crim-Tartar*, the *Turk*, and *Moscovite*, but most commonly to the *Crim-Tartar*, as their nearest neighbour, and most able to hurt them. And him they furnished on command with 50000 horse for the *Grand Seigneur's* Service. yet so that they supply the *Persian* with his *Cossack-Soldiers*, and sometimes serve under him for pay, as they do under any which several *Commonwealths*: yet so, that every *Commonwealth* hath some principal man (which the *Swissers* have not, whom they call *Morisy*, (that is Dukes) to direct and order them.

2. Betwixt these and the River *Volga* dwell the *ZAVOLHENSES*, one of the greatest *Hords* or Tribes of all the *Tartars*; and therefore called *Horda Magna*. Of these the *Crim*, or *Preopenses* were a *Casting* only; proceeding out of this great Swarm or Nest of Hornets, though afterwards they became their Masters. Of the Country or People we say nothing here, having sufficiently spoken of both already. Their chief Town hath the name of *Bolgar*, situate on the River *Volga*, and from thence so named: *Volgar* and *Bolgar* differing but little in *Orthography*, and not much in sound.

This Country, as I take it by the situation, should be that which *Pliny* calleth *Mithridatis Regio*: whether so called in honour of him by the Princes of the neighbouring *Cimmerians*, with whom he had contracted allegiance: or that he had made any *Conquest* there; or from some other Prince of the same name, I determine not. And in this Tract were those two Pillars, advanced unto the honour of *Alexander*, in *Phlomy* called *Columna Alexandri*, in whose time they stood without defacement: there being *Altars* erected to him, or in memory of him, near the Banks of *Tanaïs*, occurring in the same Author by the name of *Ara Alexandri*. Which probably occasioned the error of *Qu. Curtius*, who brings *Alexander* in pursuit of the *Scythian Wars*, as far as *Tanais*: whereas it is apparent by the course of his Actions, that he never got beyond the River *Jaxartes*; distant from *Tanais* no less than 2000 miles.

This Tribe first governed by its own King, whom they called *Ulu-Cham*, or the Great *Cham*, was in the year 1506. subdued by the *Crim-Tartar*, and made subject to him. Afterwards conquered by *Basilin* the Great Duke of *Moskovy*, who thereupon assumed the Title of King of *Bolgar*: which his Successors still preserve, with the Town itself well garrisoned to keep open the whole course of the River *Volga*, by which they manage the great Trade of the *Caspian Sea*. But for the main body of this People they returned again to their obedience to the *Crim*, as being a Limb of the same body with him; and are subjected unto his Commands: though by reason of their neighbourhood to the *Moscovite*, and commerce with that Nation, they frame themselves both to their language, habit, and behaviour.

3. East of the *Zavolbenst*, on the other side of the *Volga*, dwell the *NOIHACENSES*, or *NOAGAIANS*, spreading as far as the borders of *Zagabay*,

and declining Southward towards the *Caspian Sea*; and the *Montes Hippici*: Accompanied the best men of war of all the *Tartars*; but more fierce and cruel than the rest; void of all Arts, not having, or contemning Money, or the use of Corn. *Horse-flesh* and *Mares milk* their best diet: the flesh either roasted by the Sun, or heated by continual hanging at the Saddle-bow. And with such cheer (not worse nor better) did *Azim Can*, one of the Princes of this Tribe, entertain *Jenkinson* and other *English* men in their travels to the *Caspian*, from the River *Volga*. Their chief Town, if possibly it deserve that name, is called *Scharayirick*, the Residence of one of their Princes; and the next, *Selishure*, where the said *Jenkinson* found the *Cham*, as in the prime place of his abode. The Government is by several *Morisy*; the Heads or Chiefs; no doubt, of their several *Clans*; agreeing well enough together against the *Moscovite*; whom they infect with frequent inroads, and put him to the charge of continual Garrisons, at *Casim*, *Alfranch*, and *Vianka*. Their Wars for the most part only *Pradatory*, rather to get some present booty, than out of any hope to enlarge their Dominion; and therefore commonly pacified, and sent home with Presents. The Great Duke is so good a Statesman, as to think the expense of Money cheaper than that of Blood; especially when he hath to deal with such an Enemy, who hath neither any Town of consequence, nor fix place of dwelling, and consequently nothing to be got but blows. Their *Morisy*, formerly more in number, were of late times reduced unto three; of which he is *Scharayirick* was the chief: to whose direction and appointment (especially in matters which concerned the publick) the other two do commonly submit themselves.

4. Betwixt these the *Nagians*, and the *Circassians*, lie those Tribes which they call the *KIRGESSIANS*, spreading as far as to the mouths or influx of the River *Volga*; but intermixt with the *Heslites*, and *Tajchurides*, two other of the *Tartarian Tribes*, but of less power. Their life, for the most part in continual motion, removing with their Wives and Families from one place to another; and governing themselves in their removes, by the sight of the *Pole-Star*. Partly *Mohometan*, partly *Gentile*; but the *Gentiles* make the greater number; not burying their dead bodies, as in other places, but hanging them upon a Tree, though they flink again: certain enough that they will be devoured or sweetened, before they return back to the same Station. Much reverence yet they give their *Priests*, by whom sanctified and besprinkled in their publick meeting, with a certain mixture compounded of Blood, Milk, Earth, and Cow-dung, a most sweet Confession, but good enough for them that desire no better. And yet with these the *Moscovite* is fain to hold fair compliance, and to send them every year some Presents for fear they should join with the *Nagians*: or otherwise disturb him in his *Caspian Trade* down the River *Volga*.

5. The *THUMENSES* or *THUMEN TARTARS* lie more North than any of these *Tartarians*; having on the South, the *Zavolbenst*, and the Territory of *Vianka* in the Empire of *Russia*. A warlike People, and living near a dangerous neighbour; for which cause they do not straggle far abroad in petty companies as the others do, but keep together in great bodies: For the most part much delighted in *Negromancy*, and *Conjurations*. In which the Devil befools them that, he suffereth them to raise Tempests; and sometimes, by *Diabolical* illusions, to defeat their Enemies. The only *Hord* of all *Deserta*, which still continue in obedience to their natural Lord, the Great *Cham* of *Carhay* (if such *Cham* there be.) And unto these we may adjoin the

V v v v

Molmogno.

Molgomozans, all *Gemiles*, and the most barbarous of all living in Caves, and feeding upon Worms, and Mice, and Serpents, and such other vermines would be poyson unto any but such *Molgomozans*, who are more poysonous than those Creatures.

These *Hords*, together with the Kingdoms of *Casim*, and *Afrachan*, and such of the *Russian* Provinces as lie on the East of *Tanis*, and the River of *Dniwa*, make up that Country which anciently passed under the name of *Sarmatia Asiatica*: inhabited originally by the Descendants of *Gomer*, *Mefech*, *Tubal*, *Magog*, the Sons of *Japhet*, spreading themselves more Northwards as they grew in numbers, out of *Albania*, *Iberia*, *Colchis*, and the *Pontick*, or *Cimerian* Nations. Divided into the Tribes or Families of the *Olanda*, *Gerri*, *Sarmocochi*, *Socani*, *Seci*, *Scimmita*, *Agarita*, *Mardi*, *Canapfeni*, *Chenides*, *Ballicci*, *Hyperborei*, *Hippophagi*, and others of as little note: these last I called from their eating of Horses, which diet they have left unto their Successors. So like in manners and conditions, to the neighbouring *Sophians*, that they passed commonly by that name; and by that name are memorable for the great expedition by them made into *Asia* the Greater, at such time as the *Cimmerians* fell into *Asia Minor*. For passing without opposition thorow the *Sarmatian Straights*, where they might have been easily kept out; and leaving behind them the more barren Country of *Albania*, they fell into *Media*: where they were encountered (but victorious) by *Phraortes*, then King of the *Medes*: Who finding that he was not able to remove them by force, assayed it by cunning; and first persuaded them to look towards the South, as into richer Countries, and more like to yield them full content. Hereupon, full of Prey and Presents, they marched towards *Egypt*, but were met in *Syria* by *Psammetichus* the *Egyptian* King, who heard of their coming; and thought it best to entertain them on the way, and not to bid them welcome at home to his great cost. Out-vying the *Median* (as of the two the richer Prince) he loaded them with gifts and treasures, and so sent them back again into *Media*, from whence they came: for many years they afflicted that People and the neighbouring Provinces, doubling their Tributes, and using all kind of Infolencies: till in the end, *Cynaxares*, the Son and Successor of *Phraortes*, acquainting some of his most faithfull Subjects with his design, caused the better part of them to be plentifully feasted, made them drunk, and slew them; recovering thereby the possession of his whole Estate. Afterwards imitated by the *English* in their *Flock-Tide* slaughter. Such of them as escaped this blow and were not willing to be subject to the Kings of *Media* (as many of them were) were suffered to return home by the same way they came; where at their coming, they found foul work made by their Wives & their Slaves, the story whereof we had when we were in *Russia*. After this we hear nothing of them in the stories of the *Greeks*, and *Romans*, unless those *Amazons*, who attended their Queen *Tibaltis*, when the belstowed a visit on *Alexander*, were rather of these *Sarmatian Amazons*, than of those of *Pentus* and *Thermodas*, as I think they were: the nearness of their dwelling to *Hyrcania*, in which place they found him, inducing me to this opinion. But possible enough it is, (though it be not certain) that some of these *Sarmatian* Tribes, though by other names, hearing of the successes of the *Huns*, *Avares*, and other barbarous Nations, which made havock of the *Roman* Empire, might join themselves unto them, and make up their numbers: those Nations being else too small to compound such Armies, as by them were brought into the field against the *Romans*, without such like helps. What their Estate hath been since subdued by the *Tartars*, hath been shewn already.

3. ZAGATHAT.

ZAGATHAT is bounded on the East, with the Mountain *Imau*, by which it is parted from *Cathay*; on the North, with the main *Scythic*, or *Frozen Ocean*; on the West, with *Tartaria Deferta*, from which separated by the River *Sone*, and the Lake of *Kitar*; and on the South, with the *Caspian* Sea, and the River *Oxus*, by which divided from the Empire of *Persia*. So called from *Zagathay*, a brother of one of the Great *Chams*, on whom it was conferred for his better maintenance; and the *Scythia intra montem Imaum* of the ancient Writers.

The Country spreading out so far, on all sides, as before appeared, comprehendeth all those Provinces and tracts of ground, which anciently were called, 1. The Country of the *Saca*, 2. *Sogdiana*, with 3. *Zagathay*, specially so called, and 4. *Turcheistan*, included anciently in the name of *Scythia intra montem Imau*; and 5. the *Terra Incognita*, which *Protony* makes to be the Northern boundary of that part of *Scythia*. By taking a survey of all which Particulars, we shall find the temper of the whole.

1. *SACA*, or the Country of the *Sacae*, is bounded on the East, with the Mountain *Imau*; on the West, with *Sogdiana*; on the North with *Zagathay*, properly and specially so called; on the South, with the River *Oxus*, by which parted from *Bactria*. So called from the *Saca*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reason of their name I find not.

The Country anciently either barren, or ill manured, full of vast Forests, wide Deserts, and the like uninhabitable places, few or no Cities in it, and not many Villages (*Civitates autem non habent* as my Author hath it) the People living most part in Caves, or otherwise wandering up and down with their droves of Cattel: Called for that reason *Nomades* by some ancient Writers. The name not proper to these only, but common to all those who followed the like roving life, as the *Sarmatians*, wild *Arabians*, *Saracens*, and the Inhabitants of *Lydia* and *Nimidia* in *Africa*. Only one fortified place they had, which from the materials of it had the name of *Turris Lapidea*, (*ῥῆμα λίθος*, in the *Greek*) or the Castle of Stones; Part hereof being peopled for the most part by *Camels*; or travelling only with those Creatures, had the name of *Camelorum Regio*.

Divided it was anciently into many Tribes: the *Caratai*, and *Comari*, near the River *Jaxartes*; the *Maffages*, and *Gomedes*, near the hills called *Afcatanai*; the *Sylae*, and *Grynei*, more within the Country. All joined in one by the name of *Saca*; and by that name made a very fortunate Progress into *Armenia* (to which they had an eafie passage by the Northern Banks of the *Caspian* Sea) and therein gave name unto the Province called *Sacafena*. But proceeding into *Cappadocia*, and there slain by the *Persians* in the midst of their Feastings, they left there also some resemblance of their name, in an annual Festival called *Saca*; celebrated by the *Persians*, in memorial of their good success in the war against them. Such as it is here, being overcome by *Cyrus* the first *Persian* Monarch, did do good service to that Prince, that *Amorges* the King of these *Saca*, is said to have rescued him from the hands of the *Scythians*, by whom otherwise he had been slain, or taken Prisoner. In the declining of that Kingdom, they were subdued by *Alexander* at the end of his *Scythian* and *Sogdian* wars; who hereabouts, by *Cohortanus* a noble *Persian*, was presented with a Brevy of Beautiful Ladies; one of which was that *Bastini*, whom he made his Wife, and had by her that

Hercules,

Hercules, whom *Polysperchon* and his Faction proclaimed King of *Macedonia*. Not memorable in the following times for any thing which they did or suffered; as they have been made by the opinion or mistake of others; who building *Cassles* in the *Air*, will needs derive the *Saxons* (our famous Ancestors) from this Original: as if they were called *Saxons*, quasi *Saca* *Sancti*, or the Sons of the *Saca*. Afancy in my poor conceit, of no ground at all. For either the number of these *Saca*, when they left these parts, must be great, or little. If little how can we conceive it possible, they should force their way through those valiant Nations of both *Sarmatia*, who to the last maintained their Liberties and Estate against the *Romans*? If great enough to force their passage (for stout and provident Nations use not to give passage to great Armies, but they pay dear for it) how can we think it possible they should be shut up in a corner of *Germany*, betwixt the River *Albia* and the *Cimbrick Chersonese*? The *Saxons* then, whatsoever they were, were no Sons of the *Saca*; and what in likelihood they were, hath been elsewhere shewn.

2. *SOGDIANA* hath on the East, the *Saca*; on the North and West, *Zagathay* specially so called; on the South, the River *Oxus*, parting it from *Margiana*. So called from a chain of Mountains named *Montes Sogdi*, being the chief of all this Country, though of themselves a spur or branch of the Mountain *Caucasus*.

The Country indifferently fruitful, and very rich in Pasture, because very well watered. For besides *Oxus*, and *Jaxartes*, which are common unto them and others; they have many Rivers of their own. The principal of which, 1. *Dymus*, and 2. *Araxes* both navigable, and capable of very good Ships; both also running down the hills with a headlong course, and passing through the Champion Country, empty themselves at last in the Lake called *Oxiana*; as is affirmed by *Ammianus*; but as *Protony* saith, into *Jaxartes*.

Places of most consideration are, 1. *Drepfa*, the *Metropolis* or Mother-City of this People. By *Pliny* called *Panda*, by *Solinus* *Daraps*, situate on the River *Oxus*. 2. *Oxiana*, on the same River, and from thence denominated. 3. *Marcuca*, on the same River also. 4. *Alexandria*, called for distinction sake, *Alexandria Oxiana*, which name declarerth both the founder and the situation. 5. *Alexandria*, for the same cause of distinction, named *Alexandria uliana*: either because the last City which he built in these parts; or because it lay furthest off on the borders of the *Scythians*, against whose invasions or irruption it was said to be built. 6. *Tribarra*, one of the chief hereof in the time of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. 7. *Cyroschena*, more memorable, and not less ancient than any of those named before, by *Qu. Curtius* called *Cyropolis*, built by *Cyrus*, to fortifie his borders against the *Scythians*. It held out against the great *Macedonian*, a long time; and he himself coming nigher to the Walls than discretion would permit an ordinary General, had such a blow on the neck with a Stone, that he fell to the ground, his Eyes swimming in his head, and his whole Army giving him for slain: but reviving he took the Town by a Mine, and level'd it with the ground, in revenge of so great a danger.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Oxydrace*, and *Candari*, dwelling at the foot of the *Sogdian* Mountains; the *Oxiani*, and *Cherofinii*, near the banks of *Oxus*; the *Jassi*, and *Tachori*, near the River *Jaxartes*; the *Drepfiani* in the East parts bordering on the *Saca*; whose chief City was *Drepfa*, defended from their several roots but all called *Sogdians*. Conquered by *Alexander*, not without danger to his own person, as before was said; at the solicitation of *Spitamenes* a noble *Persian*, it

rebelled again. Who being suppressed, and the Country in some measure quieted, *Arimazes*, a Native of the men, encamped upon the top of an hill, in a place of such notable advantage, that *Alexander*, whether by force or not, such words, could get him out of it. He therefore dealt with 3000 of his youngest and most active men, on the promise of great reward, to climb the hill; and without any noise to lew themselves at the back of the Enemy: Which having performed with the loss of 30 of their company, *Alexander* sent one *Copbes* to *Arimazes*; to let him know that, the whole Army of *Macedon* was at his back; who terrified with what he saw, more with what he feared, gave up the place, and was scourged and crucified for his labour. So necessary in the Act of warfare is a piece of wit. After this time, it ran the same alterations and change of fortunes, as the *Persians* did; till they were conquered by the *Tartars*, unto whom still subject.

3. **ZAGATHAT** specially so called, is bounded on the East, with *Cathay*; on the West, with *Turcheistan*, and part of the *Caspian* Sea; on the North, with the Country of the *Samoyeds*, the *Terra Incognita* of the Ancients; on the South, with the *Saca*, and *Sogdiana*. Anciently part of *Scythia intra montem Imau*; and took this new name from *Zagathay*, the first Prince hereof since the time of the *Tartars*.

The Country reasonably fruitful, but not so rich in the natural temper of the Soil, as the induriosities of the people, more civil far than any other of the *Tartars*, studious of good Letters, lovers of Arts, as well ingenious as *Mechanick*; well skill'd in *Mansfield* works, and very seldom without the confluence of foreign Merchants, Populous, and well-stored with Towns and Villages; both for their own more handsome dwelling and the entertainment of others.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *Jaxartes*, now called *Chesht*, the principal of all this Country: great of it self, but made much greater by the waters of 2. *Dais*, another River of good note, rising out of the Mountain called *Norofus*, and falling with many others into *Jaxartes*; mixt with those streams they are ditched in the *Caspian* Sea. 3. *Jartus*, 4. *Polytimetas*, falling into *Oxus*. Others there are whose names I find not in my Authors, descending from the Mountains of this Northern Region, which are great and many: As viz. 1. *Norofus*, spoken of before. 2. *Afpiti*, on the North of that. 3. *Toporus*, more unto the North. 4. The Mountains called *Sychi*, more Northward still. 5. Those called *Anarai*, besides 6. *Imau*, of most name, but common unto *Cathay*, as well as *Zagathay* and there we shall hear further of it.

Cities of most observation in it, 1. *Alabota*, the only Town ascribed by *Protony* to this Country, and by him honoured with the title of *Civitas*. 2. *Zabaspia*, of less antiquity, but of greater estimation at the present time, situate on the mouth of the River *Oxus* (now called *Alia*) on the brink of the *Caspian*; and much frequented by the Merchants of foreign Countries, chiefly from *India* and *Cathay*. 3. *Marachanda*, ancient, and of some, but placed by *Protony* (why I know not) among the Cities of *Bactria*: differing herein from the common and received opinion of other Authors, by whom this City is affirmed to be on the North side of *Oxus*, and consequently not within that Province. Made good by *Spitamenes* (who having delivered the Traitor *Bessius* into the hands of *Alexander*, revolted from him) against the *Macedonian* Army; by which besieged under the command of *Menedemus*. But *Menedemus* being slain, with some of his Soldiers, *Spitamenes* escaped hence to *Bactria*, where he was slain by his own Wife, and his head presented

ferent to the Conquerour. Here was it also that *Alexander*, being then Master of the Town, in a drunken fit flew his dear friend *Cyrius*, who at the battle of *Granicus* had saved his life, by receiving a blow which was aimed at him. It was afterwards called *Samarchand*, the Seat-Royal of *Tamerlane*, by whom enriched with all the spoils and treasures he got in the Wars, there being brought hither from *Damascus* only (and by that one instance we may guess at the rest) 8000 Camels laden with the choicest movables. Still the chief Residence of the *Chans* of *Zagathay*, but far short of that magnificence which once it held. 4. *Bikend*, of no Antiquity, nor of such great name as the Regal *Samarchand*, but at this time of greater wealth: situate somewhat in the mid-land, but populous, and a well-traded Town.

5. *Azara*, memorable for being made the Rendezvous of that mighty Army, which *Tamerlane* raised against the *Turks*, consisting in the total of 1200000 fighting men when it was at the biggest. 6. *Maranin*, from which place the said *Tamerlane*, having received his aids from *China*, began his march.

These *Tartars*, called *Zagathayans*, by the name of their Country, are of a different government from that of the Great *Chan* of *Cathay*, though subject to him at the first, and have to be even ever since the time of *Zaichan* or *Barbu*, the third great *Chan*; who gave it unto *Zagathay*, a younger Son, whence it had the name. To *Zagathay* succeeded *Og*, by some called *Zain Chan*; (the Father of *Tamerlane*) a peaceable and quiet Prince, who rather studied to preserve than enlarge his Empire. But *Tamerlane* being of a fierce and more warlike nature, made the first proof of his valour and good fortune against the *Moscovites* (for spoiling a City which had put it self under his protection) whom he overthrew with the slaughter of 23000 Foot, and 15000 of his Horse. Moved with this notable exploit, and the hopes of greater, *Giso Chan*, the Great Emperor of the *Tartars*, gave him to Wife his only Daughter, and therewithal declared him his Heir apparent. Encouraged and enabled with this advancement, he first brake down the Wall of *China*, encountered with the King thereof, overcame him in battle, and imposed on him the sum of 300000 Crowns of yearly Tribute. Having left things quiet at his back, and taking with him a great part of the Forces of *China*, he advanced forwards against *Bajazet*, the fourth King of the *Turks*; of the greatness of whose growing Empire he began to be jealous. Passing along the left hand shores of the *Caspian* Sea, and through *Albania*, and the rest of the Provinces which lay in his way (which he took and conquered as he went) he came at last into *Asia Minor*: where near the City of *Sebastia*, he encountered with *Bajazet*: vanquished him, slew 200000 of his men, and carried him away captive in an Iron Cage. Retorted those Princes dispossessed by *Bajazet* unto these Estates, and taking to himself all the *Turkish* Provinces in *Anatolia*, he bestowed a private visit on *Constantinople*: which soon he marched towards *Syria*, subdued both that Province and the Kingdom of *Egypt*, then possessed by the *Mamelucks*; visited *Hierusalem*, and did honour to the Holy Sepulchre; returned by *Babylon*, and won it, and with it the whole Countries of *Babylonia* and *Assyria*. And taking *Perfia* in his way impatronized himself of that Kingdom also; and such parts of *India*, as either lay near *Perfia*, or his own Dominions; now made the Sovereign Lord of all the Regions and Kingdoms in both *Asia*, excepting *India*; for which the rich Kingdom of *Egypt*, may be put in balance. Come home at last to *Samarchand*, he there died in peace. A Prince of strong body, but lovely lineaments, his eyes bearing in them thick rays of Majesty, that ordinary men could scarce endure

to look upon them. His Hair long contrary to the custom of the *Mahometans*, (for the most part shaved on their heads) for which he pretended a descent from *Saumpson*. Perfect in the *Arabian* Learning, and a lover of all learned men, a hater of *Idols*, and *Polytheism*, and a great friend to the *Christians*. More fortunate in the conquering of so many Kingdoms, than in laying any sure foundation to maintain his conquest. For by holding his Seat-Royal in *Samarchand*, *Cambala*, and others the chief Cities of *Cathay*, he gave the remote Provinces the opportunity of returning to their former Governours; and parceling his Estates amongst his Children, and Kindred, this mighty flood which had so quickly overflowed both *Asia*, returned in very little time within its own proper and original banks. Even *Zagathay* it self divided from the Empire of *Cathay*, had its King apart (hardly acknowledging the great *Chan* for the Lord in chief) the most considerable of whom was that *Saba*, who in the new beginnings and unfeelingness of the *Sophian* Empire, invaded *Perfia*; but instead of recovering that Kingdom into the power of the *Tartars*, he lost some Provinces of his own: *Hyrcania*, *Margiana*, and some part of *Bactria*, being since subdued by *Ashut* the late *Sultan*. Nothing since memorable, that I meet with, in the affairs of this part of the Empire of *Tartary*.

4. *TURCHESTAN* is bounded on the East, with *Zagathay* specially so called; on the West, with the River *Zeaxe*, parting it from *Deserta*, on the North, with those deserts which *Ptolomy* blindesth under the name of *Terra Incognita*; and on the South, with the *Caspian* Sea. So called from the *Turks*, some of which people when they left their first Seats near the Fens of *Maotia*, settled in this Country, and here still continue.

The Country as desert and ill planted, as the rest of *Tartary*, nor so much out of any defect in the soil it self, as in the humour of the people: who though originally *Turks*, yet do compose themselves unto the lives of the *Scythian* or *Tartarian* Nomades, neglecting tillage, and abiding in no place longer than in that place affords them pasturage for their Cattel: huge herds of which they keep as their greatest treasure, but more to cloath their backs with the skins, than to fill their bellies with the flesh.

Amongst the Rivers of most note we may reckon, 1. *Rhymanus*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*, which by the position of it in the 91 degree of Longitude, seems to be of this Tract. It riseth out of the Mountains called *Montus Rhymanicus*, giving name to the River, or taking name from it. 2. *Ardox*, not known by that name amongst the ancients, and whether known at all or not, I am not able to say. Shaping its course towards the North, and weary of so cold a Clime, and such barbarous people; after a long and swift course of a thousand miles, it hideth it self under the ground for five hundred more: but breaking out again, and finding little or no hope of a better fortune, loseth it self for ever in the great Lake of *Kiay*.

To look for Towns amongst a people which delight not in settled houses, were a labour lost: yet some I find ascribed unto them, the principal, but of no great note, 1. *Calba*, and 2. *Oceria*. Then there is 3. *Crustina*, situate on or near the Lake of *Kiay*, never without the company of *Russian* and *Tartarian* Merchants: the *Russians* sailing to it by the River *Ob*; and the *Zagathayans* *Tartars* travelling to it by Land. By these two Nations more people, to maintain their Traffick, than by the *Turcomans* themselves, in whose Land it standeth.

These *Turcomans* are of the Posterity of some of those *Turcs*, who wanting Room, or otherwise oppressed with want, forsook their ancient dwelling near the Fens of

Maotia

Maotia, and the Coasts of the *Euxine* Sea, to seek new seats, Anno 844. That their whole body settled here, and from hence made their conquest of *Perfia*, as some very indolent men are of opinion, by no means grant. For when the *Sultan* of *Perfia*, having by the means of *Tangrolipix* and those Mercenary *Turks* whom he invited to his aid, obtained the Victory; and thought it fit for his affairs to detain them longer in his Service: it is said he shut up the River *Araxes*, to hinder them from returning to their habitations. The shutting up of which River, and fortifying against them all the passages and bridges of it, had not served his turn, if the *Turks* had come from this place, for then he must have manned against them the River *Oxus*, and such as lay betwixt them and him in the common road. Nor is it probable, that the *Turcomans* dwelling in this Province, on the East side of the River *Volga*, would undertake the fording of that dangerous and violent Water; and force themselves a way thorow *Albania* and *Armenia*, with no greater numbers, than 3000 men, which was the whole strength that they carried with them. So that it is not to be doubted, but that they came first into *Perfia* out of *Turcomania*, and not out of *Turchestan*: and probable enough, that when they first left their own abode, and came into the Northwest shores of the *Caspian* Sea, they might there divide themselves. Some of which leaving that Sea on the left hand, and passing thorow the *Sarmatian* or *Albanian* Strights, made their way into *Armenia*, and those parts of *Iberia*, which from them are now called *Turcomania*. The residue keeping that Sea on the right hand, and crossing the *Volga*, where they found the passage most easie for them, settled themselves in these parts of *Syria* which they found less peopled, now from them named *Turchestan*. Some of which hearing of the good success of their Country-men in the Conquest of *Perfia*, might afterward join with them to assure that purchase. Governed since their first coming hither, by the Chiefs of their several Clans, whom they honour with the title of *Chans*; but all of them Tributaries and Vallalls of the *Chan* of *Zagathay*.

5. That part of the Kingdom of *Zagathay*, which anciently passed under the name of *TERRA INCOGNITA*, and was accounted the Northern limit of *Scythia intra Imaum*, hath on the South, *Turchestan*, and part of *Zagathay*, strictly and specially so called: extending Northwards to the *Scythick* or *Frozen* Ocean, and bounded on the West with the River *Ob*.

The Inhabitants of this Northern Tract are now called by the name of *Sarmyeds*; neither the people nor the Country known to the ancient *Romans*: and indeed neither of them worth the knowing. The men black-haired, naturally *Beardless*, and not to be discerned from women, but that the women wear a long lock down to their ears. Clad from the head to the feet in *Deer-skins*, or *Seilskins*, with the hairy side outwards; (nothing more wife in that than the other *Tartars*.) Their kind of life more rude than theirs, if more rude may be, ranging from place to place, without any propriety of house or dwelling, the leader of each company their Priest, whom they call their *Papa*, who at every one of their removes is to offer Sacrifice. *Idolaters* they are all, and most of them *Wiches*; especially such as live most towards the East, and furthest off from the *Moscovites*, who many times destroy their Idols, and rob them of the skins of *Bevers*, black *Foxes*, and *Sables*, wherewith these Idols are set forth to the publick view: but bestow on them greater heats in a good Fire, into which they commonly use to cast them.

These *Zagathayan* Provinces, with those of *Margiana*, and *Bactria*, before described, made that part of *Syria*,

which anciently was called *Scythia intra montem Imaum*: though in the time of *Ptolomy*, when *Margiana*, *Bactria*, *Sace*, and *Sagadiana*, were reckoned of as Provinces of the Kingdom of *Perfia*, this *Scythia* was restrained within narrower bounds, and comprehended only *Turchestan* and the Special *Zagathay*. Inhabited besides the several Nations dwelling in the four *Perfian* Provinces, by many fierce and savage Tribes, as the *Alani*, *Alamoi*, *Sunbeni*, and *Malsai*, towards *Terra Incognita*; the *Tillages*, and *Astori*, near the Mountain *Imus*; the *Jaxaria* on the banks of the River so called; and the *Mologene*, not far off, the *Zarata*, and *Sufones*, near the Mountains *Alani*; the *Galaophagi*, or Milk-eaters, more towards the East; the *Tarpoci*, and the *Syebi*, by the hills so named: and many others not material to be here remembered. All now united under the general name of *Tartars*, by whom first subdued.

And now we are at last come to *Scythia*, truly so named; *Sarmatia Europaea* and *Asiatica* being called so only by way of participation and resemblance; because the Inhabitants thereof had so much in them of the manners and conditions of these natural *Scythians*. Here therefore we intend to speak something of them, their Name, Antiquity, Dispositions, Customs, &c. the most memorable Actions relating to them, as far as we can go by the light of story.

First, for the name, the *Gracian* Fables have derived it from one *Scythes*, the Son of *Hercules*, begotten by him on a Monster, half Woman, half Viper. The *Grammaticians* say *Σκυθία*, signifying to be fierce and angry; whence it is said of the Jewish *Paritans*, who *sisted to be fien of men* *Σκυθωνιστάριον*, that they looked with a fierce, severe, and disgraced Countenance. *Grosopius* because those derivet rather from the Dutch word *Schutren*, signifying to shoot: agreeable enough to the custom and exercise of the *Scythians*, who are observed by *Herodotus*, *Pliny*, *Lucian*, and other of the ancient Writers, to be very good Archers. But that the word *Schutren* signifieth the lame in the ancient *Scythick*, or that the *High-Dutch* was originally the Tongue of the *Scythians*, will not so easily appear.

Letting that pass therefore as a matter not to be defined, let us look on the Antiquity of these *Scythian* Nations: and we shall find it to be great, if not greatest of all. *Scytharum gens semper antiquissima*. That the *Scythians* were of all others, the most ancient people, was received for an Oracle, in the elder ages of the world; and so resolved by way of Verdict, when the great Controversie touching the Antiquity of those Nations, was to be determined, betwixt the *Aegyptian* and the *Scythian*, who contended for it. And this hath passed with such a general approbation, that it is not now to be disputed. In which regard I am so far of the judgment of *Bezanus* in that particular, as to conceive that the Countries lying on the North of the Mount *Caucasus* (on which the *Ark* is thought most probably to have rested) were peopled by the Sons of *Noah* before they travelled towards the West, or set themselves on building the Tower of *Babel*. We had else no doubt heard somewhat amongst the Antiquaries, of the settling of some of those *Adventurers* in these Northern Regions; when giving off that enterprise, and falling upon new Plantations, they either went themselves, or sent forth their Colonies into all places of the world. But of any such Plantations, we cry quidam, not one word say they. Nor can it probably be supposed that *Zoroaster*, the King of *Bactria*, could have raised 400000 fighting men out of that one Province (though some of the adjoining Provinces were took into the reckoning) in those early days, in which he did encounter *Ninus* the

great

great Affyrian; had the *Babryans*, and the rest of these *Scythian Nations*, been but a *Cafling* as it were of some second swarm, and not co-eval with the rest. But besides these presumptions we have other proofs: viz. An old and constant tradition on this side the Mountains, that the greatest *Wineyard of Marjanna* was of *Noah's* plantings; and 2. the affirmation of *Portius Cato*, (though one of the Writers of *Frier Amius*) in *Scythia Sagaramatum morale genui*, that mankind was repaired in these parts of *Scythia*, so called from *Sabarius Saga*, an *Armenian King*, whose Dominions did extend thus far. So that I look upon it as a matter of strong presumption, if not demonstrably conclusive, that these people were of the first Plantation which was made after the Flood; before the rest of the world was peopled by the Confusion of Languages: *Scythiarum gens semper antiquissima*, could not elude hold good.

As for their dispositions, and natural inclinations, they are said by *Trogus*, and his Epitomator *Justinus*, to be *Gens laboribus et bellis aspera*. A Nation patient of labours, and fierce in War; of bodily strength immense; and valiant; yet so full Malvers of their affections, that they made no further use of their greatest victories than the augmentation of their fame. Theft they esteemed the greatest crime, and that they punished so severely, that their flocks and herds might and did safely wander from one place to another, without fear of stealing. In them they placed their greatest wealth, feeding themselves with the Milk thereof, and making their Rayment of the Skin. Silver and Gold they contemned as much as it was coveted by others; there being no desire of Riches where there was no use. *Mum*, and *Tum*, those common *Barbarians*, and authors of debate amongst other men, were not known amongst them: and therefore did not care for tillage, or made any inclosures, nor troubled themselves with the care of building. But putting their Wives and Children upon Waips, or Waggon; covered with Hides against the weather, they removed from one place to another, no longer staying upon one than they found grass and herbage to sustain their Cattel. So just in all their actions that they needed not the restraint of Laws; and had attained to such an eminent degree of humane perfection, as not to covet. In a word, that moderation which the *Greeks* endeavoured to attain unto by the help of Learning and Philosophy, was to these so natural, that the ignorance of Vice did as much contribute to their Welfare as the knowledge of Vertue. Such are the ancient *Scythians* affirmed to be. And being such, it was a wonder that the great Monarchs of the world, who had wealth at will, should make war upon them; amongst whom there was nothing to invite an Army, or reward a Conqueror. Yet either on desire of glory, or to add unto the former multitudes over whom he reigned, they were first invited by *Cyrus* the great *Persian Monarch*: who quarrelling with *Tomyris* Queen of the *Masagetes*, a warlike Nation, inhabiting on both sides of the River *Oxus*, discomfited her Army, and slew her Son *Sparagapises*, who commanded it. In revenge whereof, the Queen having in a second battle obtained the Victory, and took *Cyrus* prisoner, is said to have cut off his head, and cast it into a bowl of blood, with this scornful taunt, *Satis te sanguine quævisisti*, Now drink thy fill of blood which thou hast so thirsted. But others tell us otherwise of the success of this fight. By whom it is reported that the Horse of *Cyrus* being disordered on the sight of some *Elephants*, which came from *India* to his aid, and himself dangerously wounded, the *Scythians* had won the victory but for the coming in of *Amorges* King of the *Sacians*, (who of a conquered enemy was be-

come his confederate:) by whom he was rescued, and by the 20000 fresh men which he brought with him, obtained the honour of the day; though long he lived not to enjoy it, dying not long after of the wounds he had received. with *Alexander* they are said to begin the war, as loath to be behind-hand with him; arming themselves upon the building of *Alexandria ultima*, so near their borders, which they conceived rather intended for a curb to hold them down, than for a bridle to keep them in. But being repulsed, and wise enough to suffer what they could not hinder, they sued for peace, and had it granted. *Alexander* being called away by the revolt of the *Babryans*; a matter of more consequence than these *Scythian* troubles. With *Alexander's* Successors they had nothing to do, not with the *Persian Kings* of the *Parthian Race*; the *Parthians* being their Allies, and of *Scythian* breed. And for the *Romans*, it is well observed by the *Historian*, *Romanorum arma audire magis quam sentire*, that they had heard much of their valour, but never felt it. Remaining undisturbed in their honest poverty, till the *Tartars*, an obscure and beggarly people brake out of their Prison, & carried out the whole World before them.

As for their Kings, I find some of their names laid down, but without any note of time in which their reigns might be supposed to begin or end. Nor can I think that the Kings occurring in that Catalogue, did either reign in the same place, or over the same Nations; or that they succeeded one another. Howsoever we will take their names as they come before us, in this list of

The Kings of Scythia.

- 1 Scythas.
- 2 Napis.
- 3 Phitra.
- 4 Sagillus.
- 5 Targitanus.
- 6 Plinus.
- 7 Scolopethus.
- 8 Panaxagora.
- 9 Tanais.
- 10 Iddathysus.
- 11 Saulius.
- 12 Sparagapises.
- 13 Tomyris.
- 14 Arapethis.
- 15 Seles.
- 16 Othmades.
- 17 Lambinus.

the last of all those *Scythian Kings* who are conceived to have the Government of these warlike Nations. But for my part I dare not say that every one of these Kings did command the whole people generally; each Tribe or Nation having their particular Kings; as in other places not reduced into form and order. And therefore for those Kings, if such Kings there were (as for some of them I durst venture to swear the contrary) they must be such as in their several Countries were of greatest fame, most taken notice of in the world, or employed in the conduct of their joint and united forces; and so conceived to be the Kings of the whole *Scythian Nation*: as *Cassibelanus*, King of the *Trinovantes*, and perhaps not that, is by some Writers said to be the King of the *Britains*; because he had the conduct of their forces against *Julius Cæsar*.

4. CATHAY.

CATHAY is bounded on the West, with *Zagathay*, from which parted by the Mountain *Imau*; on the East, with the *Oriental Sea*, and some part of *China*;

China; on the north, with *Tartaria Antiqua*; and on the South, with part of *India*. So called from the proper or special *Cathay*, the principal Province of the whole, the other parts into which it is commonly divided being 2. *Altay*, the Countries of the *Eastern Tartars*.

1. *CATHAY*, more properly and specially so called, is bounded on the East, with *China*; on the West, with the Mountain *Imau*, by which parted from *Zagathay*; on the North, with *Altay*; and on the South, with *India extra Gangem*: So called from the *Chata*, an old *Scythian* people, who having conquered the *Seres*, and the rest of the neighbouring Nations, gave their own name unto the whole, according to the Custom of victorious people.

This Country is exceeding long, if it be measured by the Scale, and Rules laid down by *Protonius*, who placeth *Auxacia*, the most Western Town of *Scythia extra montem Imau*, in the Longitude of 144 degrees, and *Sera* the Metropolis and most Eastern City of *Seria* in the Longitude of 177 degrees and 15 Minutes; as on the other side he placeth *Sera* the most Southern Town of *Scythia extra montem Imau*, in the Latitude of 35 degrees, and 20 minutes, and *Damma* the most Northern Town of *Seria* in the Latitude of 51 degrees, and 40 minutes. By which account, supposing these four Towns to be placed in the very extremities and out-parts of this Country, it must extend from North to South 960 miles and somewhat upwards, and about 1500 miles from East to West in the length thereof, which as it sheweth the dimensions and extent of it to be very great, so it may probably infer that the Country is not in all places of the like fertility; the West parts of it being very mountainous and barren, and consequently not very fruitful, as being overgrown in most places with the spurs and branches of *Imau*. But in those parts thereof which lie towards the East, it is said to be abounding in Wheat, Rice, Wool, Hemp, Silk and Musk; Great store of that medicinal Root called *Rhubarb*, or *Rho-Barbarum*, to difference it from the *Rho-Pontick*, growing on the banks of *Volga*. They have also very great Herds of Camels, of whose hair they make those stuffs which are hence called *Camelots* or *Chamlets*; and such an infinite breed of Horses, as besides those which they preserve for their own use, they furnish the whole Realm of *China* with such multitudes of them, that at one time there were sent no fewer than 80000 for a present to the King of that Realm by the Princes of these Western *Tartars*, as the *Chinese* call them; of which he that writ the Book called *Belium Tartaricum*, affirmeth himself to have been an eye-witness, and to his credit I refer it, that the great *Cham* feedeth yearly 10000 white Mares, which he keeps for their Milk. Some of their Rivers are reported also yield *Golden Sands*; but whether it be so or not, certain it is, that it is so well provided of all things both for necessary use, and the pleasures of life, that it is thought to be inferior to few Countries of *Europe*. The Air indeed not so temperate, as in many places; the Summer-times extremely hot, and in Winter miserably cold: the thunders and lightnings being here so terrible, that in Summer many men die for fear, when they hear it. The winds no less violent than the thunder, do sometimes tear up trees by the roots, and beat men from their horses; but seldom bring with them any storm of rain: the greatest showers which they have, hardly wetting the ground.

The people are generally very warlike, strong of body, quick of action, fearless of the greatest dangers, patient both of want and labour: of mean stature, little eyes; sharp sight, and thin beard. Indolent they are in several *Manufactures*; of a good wit for dispatch of busi-

ness: more honourable than the rest of the *Tartars*, as loving to dress themselves gorgeously, to air sumptuously (if there be occasion) to live in handsome houses and to frequent the most populous and best-traded Cities. All which civilities or effeminacies, call them which you will, together with the greatest part of their Arts and Manufactures, they first learned of the *Chinese*, during the time that the *Chinese* lived as Subjects under the great *Chen*, & the Nations had continual intercourse with one another. They account not any for a Wife till she bear them Children, nor till then do they meddle with their Dowries; but repudiate them at a certain time, if they find them barren. They reverence their *Cham*, or Emperor, even to Adoration; not suffering any Stranger to come in his presence, except he be first purged: If any otherwise presume, it is present death.

The Religion publicly allowed and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*; but so that they retain the *Pentateuch* of *Moses*, and observe many things therein commanded. It was much laboured by Pope *Innocent*, and King *Lewis* of *France*, that they should receive the *Christian Faith*; and they found some inclinations in the People, and chief Princes to it. But finding by the *Mahometan* Agents, who then laboured to bring them to their *Superstition*, that *Mahomet* allowed of many Wives, and other things more agreeable to their fleshly lusts, they conformed to that: Yet so, that there are many *Idolaters* in *Cathay* it self (I mean *Cathay* strictly so called) and some *Christians* also; the state of whose affairs we have shewn before.

Chief Rivers of the whole. 1. *Polyanga*, which falling into the Eastern Ocean is navigable up to the City of *Cambalu*, to which it is a means of conveying great store of Merchandise. 2. *Caramorum*, so broad and deep that no Bridge can be made over it. 3. *Quian*; one of the greatest in the world; in length about an hundred days journey; for breadth, in most places six miles, in many eight, and in some ten. 4. *Quianum*, about half a mile over, and well stored with fish: of all which we shall speak more fully when we come to *China*. Here are also very many Lakes, both large, and useful, as 1. the Lake of *Cambalu*, in which are said to be so many Pearls as would make them of no value, if every man might have leave to fish for them; which is therefore interdicted (without special licence) upon pain of death. 2. The Lake of *Carami*, about an hundred miles in circuit, and so full of fish, as might suffice for all the Country, did they love to eat of it. The Mountains we shall climb over in their several places.

Principal Cities of the whole at this present time, under the notion of *Cathay*, are 1. *Cambalu*, supposed to be the *Ibedon* *Seria* of the Antients, and like enough to be that City of the *Cathayans* which made the notable resistance unto *Cingis* the first King of the *Tartars*, in his first attempts upon this Country, of which more anon. Made afterwards, in regard of the pleasantness of the situation and extreme fertility of the soil, the chief Seat of his Empire; and being exceedingly enlarged and beautified had the name of *Cambalu*, that is to say, the Seat or City of the *Cham*, in the same sense as the chief City of *China* had the name of *Pekin*, signifying in that Language the Court or City of the King. Built of *Free-stone*, and situate in the midst of the Country, as the heart and center to the rest. It is situate on the River *Polyanga*, honoured with the Great *Cham's* residence, and enriched with a mighty confluence of Merchants of all sorts. Besides other Merchandises there are every year 10000 Carts loaded with Silk sent thither from *China*. Affirmed to be in compass 28 miles besides the Suburbs, in which, besides other Inhabitants of all sorts, are said to be

be 50000 Astrologers or rather Fortune-tellers. 2 *Xaindu* the Royal Palace of the Emperour, of a four-square figure, every side extending eight miles in length: within this Quadrant is another, whose sides are six miles long, and within that another of four miles square, which is the Palace it self; between those several Walls are Walks, Gardens, Orchards, Fish-ponds, places for all manner of exercise, and Parks, Forests, and Chafes for all manner of Game. 3 *Caraua*, where the women are said to guild their Teeth. 4 *Gonca*, a fair City and a great, adorned with many Idol Monasteries. 5 *Carensu* near which there groweth an herb called *Chiny-Cathey*, of admirable effect against many Diseases, and so esteemed of by the Natives, that they value an ounce of this at a pack of *Rhubarb*. 6 *Segis*, the residence of a *Negorian* Bishop.

Having thus took as good a view of the present face of this Country, as the time affords us, we will next look upon it in those integral parts, which it specially consisteth comprehending (as before was intimated) those two long and ample Provinces, which the Ancients called, 1 *Serica*, and 2 *Seybia extra montem Imaum*, according to those Bounds and Characters which are given us of them.

1. *SERICA*, hath on the East, some part of *China*, on the South, *India extra Gangem*, and some part of the Country then inhabited by the ancient *Sina*; on the North, *Altay*; on the West *Seybia* beyond the Mountains of *Imaum*. In which I follow not the bounds laid down by *Ptolemy*, who for want of that knowledge in their remote Countries which these latter Ages have afforded, is fain to shut it up on the North and East with a *Terra Incognita*. At the present it is called *CATHAY*, and that most probably from the *Chata*, a *Seythian* People, who subduing the old Inhabitants, became Masters of it.

But for the name of *Serica*, it was derived originally from *Sera* the chief City of it; whence the people had the name of *Seres*, very industrious in their times, and amongst other things in the making of *Silks* (made of a fine wooll growing on their leaves of Trees) from hence named *Serica*. Of great esteem amongst the *Romans*, as is said by *Pliny*, *Tam multiplici opere, tam longinquo orbe petitur, ut in publico matrona translucent*; being far fetched and dear bought, they were good for Ladies. Nor were they industrious only, but chaste and temperate. The names of Thieves and Whores were not known amongst them. They eat not any unclean flesh, nor used the company of their Wives either after Conception, or during their Menstrual Purgations. So moderate of diet, that they lived commonly to the age of 200 years; the quietness & mildness of their disposition helping much thereto. Of yellow hair, watcher or Sea-green eyes, and good complexion. Men of few words, but very just in all which they said or did. Governed by a Common Council of 5000 men, every one of which was to find an Elephant for the use of the State.

If you will take the Characters both of the Country and People from *Ammianus Marcellinus*, he will give it thus. "First of the Country, that it is plentiful and large, circled about with a chain of Mountains, the two famous Rivers *Orecharides*, and *Bambisus*, with a still and slow stream running thorow the middle of the inclosed Plain, spaciouly stretched out to the sides of the precipices: in one place large and open, in another lying flat and low with an easie descent; in which regard they have abundance of Corn, thore of Cattel, and plenty of Orchards. The temperature of the Air pleasant & wholesome, the constitution of the weather clear and pure, the blowing of gentle winds most com-

modious, and the Woods with a pritty glimmering of light, both within and under them: from whence the people with much sprinkling of water, softening that which the Trees bring forth like a kind of *Fleece*, keamb a most fine and tender matter, which they spin into *Silk*, serving in former times for the Nobility & Gentry, now become common to those also of inferior rank. Then for the People, he saith, that they are a frugal Nation, lovers of quiet, not troublesome unto their Neighbours, without the use of Arms, and the knowledge of battels, declining the company of Strangers, and so far from covetousness, or curiosities, that when any Merchants come unto them to buy their *Silks*, without much beating of the price, they let them have such things as are bred amongst them, without looking after the Commodities of other Countries. So he. And if he did over act the *Pangyriss* (as I see no reason why he should) never were people happier in the place of their dwelling, nor Country happier in its people.

Chief Mountains of it (and Mountains they had very many) were 1 the *Montes Casii*, and 2 *Aucacia* towards the East. 3 The *Amnia*, environing a great part of the Country. 4 The *Almarai*, 5 and those called *Seriei*, near the City *Sera*. 6 *Taygur*, 7 *Emmodorus*, and 8 *Ottocorum*: but all of them probably the furs and branches of the Great Mountain *Imaum*; but by what names now called it is hard to say, and no less hard to say how to accommodate the names of the Rivers spoken of before to those which we find mentioned in the ancient Writers; the principal of which all flowing out of these great Mountains are, 1 *Orecharides*, by *Pliny* called *Chambis*, issuing out of the *Montes Aucacia*; 2 *Pitarai*, issuing out of the *Almari*. 3 *Bautis*, whose Fountain is in the *Montes Casii*. And 4 *Lanos*.

Towns of chief note amongst them, 1 *Sera*, which gave the name of *Serica*, and *Seres*, to the Province and People. 2 *Ottocora*, near the hills so called; whence it had the name. 3 *Iffedon*, for distinction sake called *Iffedon Serica*, to difference it from another of that name in *Seybia*, called *Iffedon Seybica*; the chief City of the *Iffedonets*, gens magna, one of the greatest Nations in all the Country, as is said by *Ptolemy*; and like enough to be that City of the *Cathayans*, which made that notable resistance unto *Cingis* (which before I spoke of) in his first attempts upon this Country. 4 *Orefans*, 5 *Drofach*, 6 *Daxana*, of which little memorable. Some other Cities there were in it (about Nine more being named by *Ptolemy*) of which we find nothing but the names, and therefore I shall pass them over without further mention.

But here it is observed, 1 That *Ptolemy* gives unto this Country, & to some of the Towns or Cities of it, such a Northern Latitude (ranging the furthest parts thereof in the same Parallel with the life of *Tibet*) as cannot possibly agree with that fertility of soil, and delightful temper of the Air, which is given to *Serica*. 2 That he tells us of a Promontory called *Taihu*, situate in *extrema Terra*, in the extremities of the Country between North and East, which I cannot but extremely wonder at, considering that he shuts up this Country on the East and North with a *Terra Incognita*, and extends not any part thereof towards the Sea, rendering it thereby incapable of any such Promontory. 3 That some of our late Writers, both in their Table and their Maps, have placed the Regal City of *Cambalu* so far towards the North, as very ill agreeth with that pleasantness and sweetness of situation, which induced the great *Chams* to make choice thereof for the Seat Royal of their Empire. But as we may easily pardon these mistakes of *Ptolemy* in places so far

far distant from him, and then but little known to the *Greeks* and *Romans*; so we may as easily pardon these of the later times, who grounding on the authority of so eminent an Author, have in some things been misguided by him: it happening very many times (which I find somewhere mentioned on the like occasion) *Magno errore, magnorum virorum auctoritate, transmissi*; that great errors are often entertained upon the credit of their authors.

The old Inhabitants hereof, in those parts which lay next the *Seythians*, are said to have been *Autrophaghi*, or Man-eaters, most probably a *Seythian* Nation, that Custom being so abhorrent from the mildness of the *Serican* temper. Or else, we must correct the Copies of *Ptolemy*, by the History of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who instead of *Autrophaghi*, placeth the *Alitrophagi* in the self-same Tract. The other Nations not distained with the like Reproaches, are the *Sixages*, and *Audis*, not far off the *Auracian* Mountains; the *Piale* near the River *Orecharides*; the *Gerandi*, and *Rhabbani*, their nearest neighbours; the *Turoani* dwelling towards the *East*, the *Bate* and *Ottocorani* more towards the *South*. These with the residue, Governed by a Common-Council of 5000 men, every one of which was to find an Elephant for the service of the Common-wealth, as was said before. And more than this we hear not of them in the way of Story; the Natives never going abroad with their Wares, and having little speech with Strangers, when they come amongst them. Being vanquished by the *Chata*, a *Seythian* Nation, from whom it is like that it took the name of *CATHAY* (for in this we go but by conjecture) they continued under Kings of their own, till subdued by the *Tartars*, against whom they made such stout resistance, being beleagued by *Cingis* in their principal City, that when they wanted stones to cast out of their Engines, they supplied that want with molten Silver; and held it out so long, that *Cingis* finding Victuals to grow short in his Camp, commanded that every tenth man should be eaten. But at the last being undermined, the Town was taken, the Citizens massacred, and their King or Emperor (as some call him) slain, after whose death, and not before, *Cingis* assumed the Title of the *Cham*, or Emperor. The residue of their Story we shall have hereafter.

SCYTHIA EXTRA IMAUM was bounded on the *East* with *Serica*; on the *West* with *Imaum*; on the *South*, with *India extra Gangem*; and on the *North*, with the Countreys comprehended in the name of *Altay*, which *Ptolemy* hath given us in the notion of the *Terra Incognita*. Called *Seybia*, because planted by a brood of the *Seythians*. *Extra Imaum* was put to it, to difference it from that part of *Seybia* which lay on the *West* side of that Mountain, nearest unto the *Greeks* and *Romans*. But now the Mountain, and the Countrey, have the name of *Altay*.

To look upon it as it standeth by the name of *Seybia extra Imaum*, we find not any thing delivered of the Rivers or Mountains of it, but what is common unto them with the neighbouring Nations: the Mountains called *Aucacia*, and *Casii*, and *Emmodorus*, being common unto this with *Serica*; as *Imaum* jointly to both the *Seythians*, which it divided anciently the one from the other though now this last be reckoned to belong to *Cathay* alone, because the *Tartars* on both sides of it profess themselves subject to that *Cham*. This the most famous Mountain in the *East* of *Asia*, beginning at the shores of the *Seybick* or Frozen Ocean, and extending thence directly Southwards unto Cape *Comari*, a Promontory of the Southern or Indian Seas. By which account it divideth the greater *Asia* into *East* and *West*, as *Taurus* doth into

North and *South*, which Mountain it crosseth in right Angles, about the Longitude of 140. as before was said. That part hereof which lyeth on the *South* of *Taurus*, was by the Ancients called *Babig*; and by the modern is named *Gates*: of which we shall speak more when we come to *India*. That on the *North* of *Taurus*, called *Imaum* properly, was anciently most memorable for dividing the vast Countreys of the *Seythians*, into *Seybia intra Imaum*, and *Seybia extra Imaum*; a division much observed by the old Geographers: now chiefly memorable for being the Sepulchre of some of the *Chams* of *Tartary*; most generally known by the name of *Altay*, but by some called *Belgian*.

Chief Towns hereof were 1. *Aucacia*, at the foot of the hill so named. 2. *Chaurana*, the chief City of the *Chauranici*. 3. *Sata*, 4. *Iffedon Seybica*, so called to difference it from the other of that name in *Serica*. These with the rest, and all the Country as far as it was known in the days of *Ptolemy*, inhabited by the *Alitrophaghi*, or Horic-eaters, a diet still used by the *Tartars* or modern *Seythians*. 2. The *Iffedonets*, who are said by *Pomponius Mela* to make caroling cups of their Fathers heads, first trimmed and gilded. 3. The *Cauranici*, and 4. the *Chata*, who being (as it seemeth) the most potent Nation, caused all the rest to be called by the name of *Cathay*, communicating that name also to the conquered *Seres*. Besides the polleitions of which Tribes, there was also the Regions of *Abassii*, *Chisa*, and *Aucania*; these last so called from the Mountains upon which they stand. More than this we have not to say of this Country by the name of *Seybia*, there being nothing memorable of it in the course of Story, or worth the observation in the way of Chorography.

ALTAY is bounded on the *South*, with *Cathay*, especially so called, and part of *China*; on the *North*, with *Tartaria Antiqua*; on the *West* with the great Mountain *Imaum*; and on the *East*, with the Nations or Countreys of the *Eastern Tartars*. So called from its neighbourhood to that mighty Mountain, which the *Tartars* in their Language call by the name of *Altay*.

The Country utterly unknown to the Ancient Writers, and not much canvassed or travelled by our Modern Pens. In which respect I shall now trouble my self no further, than by giving a brief touch upon the several parts of it. Of which the most that can be said, will be but little for the information of the judicious Readers; who are not to be bettered by the names of places, if there be not something in them of further use. Now for these Provinces, the Principal of them are, 1 *Casfar*, 2 *Chishmurs*, 3 *Lop*, 4 *Cannu*, 5 *Tainfu*, 6 *Caidu*, 7 *Caracau*, 8 *Candadan*, 9 *Erginul*, 10 *Tangulu*.

1. *CASCAR*, bordering on the North-West of *China*, a *Mohometan* Country, but admitting of some Christians also; the largest Kingdom in all *Altay* except *Tangulu* only, and furnished with many Towns or Cities both of Trade and Note, the Principal whereof are 1 *Hiachan*, the Royal City of this Countrey, a Mart famous for concourse of Merchants; and variety of Merchandises. 2 *Cadie*, the chief Town of a Province or Kingdom so named, but subject to the King of *Casfar*, who in the year 160. was called *Mohomet Chan*, a Prince of credit in those parts, but neither equal in Port or Power to the King of *Tangulu*. The people generally rude and barbarous, in so much that some parts here of both Sexes do indulge themselves this mutual privilege, that if the Husband or Wife be absent above twenty days, the other party is at liberty to marry again.

2. *CHESMUR*, the Inhabitants whereof are generally both *Idolaters* and *Inchermans*, causing the dumb *Idols* to speak, the winds to rise, and the Sun to be

darkened. For studying which *Black Arts* (if they come to them by study) they have many *Monsasteries*, in which the *Hermites* or *Monsiacks* live a strict kind of life, and are very abstemious.

3. *L.O.P.*, memorable for a great Defeat of thirty days journey; so true a Defeat, that whosoever doth not mean to be starved, must carry all his Victuals with him. Dangerous to Travellers, if not beforehand made acquainted with their danger: the evil Spirits using to call men by their names, and make them go astray from their company, where they perish with Famine, or are devoured with wild Beasts. The chief Town herof called *Lop*, giving name to both.

4. *C.A.M.U.L.*, an Idolatrous Country, the People whereof account it a great honour to them to have their Wives and Sisters at the pleasure of such as they entertain. From which brutish Custom when restrained by *Mango Cham*, they Petitioned him at three years end to be restored again to their former liberty; protesting which could never thrive, since they left that custom. Which desire of theirs was at last granted, and is still in use.

5. *T.A.I.N.F.U.*, more civil than the rest, the people being very industrious, and good Artificers; making the most part of the Arms which are used by the *Chams*; and some also which they sell to Merchants.

6. *C.A.I.N.D.U.*, with a Town in it of the same name, of great report by Merchants (such as we commonly call *perit Chapman*) for *Womens Veils* here made, with very great Art, of the Barks of Trees. And it is well that they have Veils to hide their shamefulness, the Women of this Tract being prostituted to every Traveller.

7. *C.A.R.A.Z.A.N.*, inhabited by a Barbarous and Savage people, who in the day time live in Dens for fear of Serpents, with which (and some of them 10 paces long, and ten spans in thickness) they are much infested, and in the night go forth to prey upon Wolves and Lions. They have an use that when any stranger cometh into their Houses, of an handsome shape, to kill him in the night: not out of desire of Spoil, or to eat his body; but that the soul of such a comely body might remain amongst them.

8. *C.A.R.D.A.N.D.A.N.*, near *Carazan*, and as Savage as that. The people whereof draw black lines on their Bodies, which they count for the greatest Ornament. In case of Sickness they send not to the *Physitian* but the next *Incubators*, who taking Counsel of the Devil, apply some remedy; or if they think the man past cure they tell him that his offences are grown too great to admit of help, and so put him off.

9. *E.R.G.I.M.U.*, Possessed by an Idolatrous people, but mixed with some *Mahometans*, and *Nesforian Christians*. In which Country they have certain *Bulls* as big as *Elephants*, with Manes of fine white hair, like silk, some of which they tame; and betwixt them and their Kine engender a Race of strong and laborious Beasts, not inferior in that kind to Oxen. Here is also found a Beast of an exquisite shape, but not bigger than a Goat, which at every Full Moon hath a swelling under the belly; which being cut off by the Hunters, and dried in the Sun, proveth to be the best *Musk* in the World.

10. *T.A.N.G.U.T.H.*, the greatest and most potent of all the rest, bordering on the North of *Cathay*, especially so called, and (like to that) inhabited by an industrious and laborious people, amongst whom the art of Printing is said to have been extant a thousand years. Blessed heretofore with a great increase of *Christianity*; but now the *Gentiles* or *Idolaters* make the greatest part, with some

Mahometans amongst them. And for the serving of these Idols, The have not only many large and beautiful Temples, built in the manner of Christian Churches, and capable of 4. or 5000 persons: but also many fair *Monasteries* for the use of their *Potaries* and *Religious*. They are possessed of many Towns, most of them well fortified, and planted with good store of Artillery. The chief of which, a *Sachian*, bordering on the Defeat of *Lop*, inhabited by some of all three Religions; in which it is affirmed that they first used the Art of Printing. 2. *Campion*, the *Metropolis*, or Mother City of this Country; where the Christians in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, had three fair Churches: now over numbered by the *Gentiles*, who have here many *Monasteries* for the use of their *Idols*, and many Religious persons dedicated to their Service only. Who though they live more honestly than the rest of their Order, and hold it an impiety to tempt a Woman to the act of Lust; yet if the Woman make the offer, they hold it no small sin to refuse her enticement. 3. *Santa*, a Town in the middle way betwixt *Campion* and *Succuair*, as being five days journey from the one, and six dayes journey from the other; by which we may conjecture at the long extent of this Kings Dominions. 4. *Succuair*, situate among Mountains clothed with *Rubbarb*, from whence conveyed by Merchants over all the World; but so neglected by the Natives, that did not the Foreign Merchant bring it into request, they would soon to gather it. This once a Kingdom of it fell, made subject afterwards with *Tangut*, to the *Cham of Cathay*, or the great *Cham of Tartary*. But the fury of this *Tartarian* Tempest, being overblown, the Kings of *Tangut* did not only recover their ancient Royalty; but by degrees possessed themselves of the most part of the rest of *Altaey*, and perhaps part of *Cathay* also, being looked on at the present as the greatest and most puissant Prince betwixt the Mountains of *Imaus* and the *Eastern Tartary*, to the description of whose Countries we next proceed.

The Countries of the *Eastern Tartars* are bounded on the West, with *Altaey*; on the East, with the *Oriental Ocean*, on the North, with *Tartaria Antiqua*; and on the South with *China*; so called from their Eastern situation, in regard of those of *Cathay* and *Altaey*, which by the *Chineses* are called commonly the *Western Tartars*.

The Country not very fruitful, because ill cultivated, so that the chief Commodities which they send abroad are the root called *Ginseng*, so much esteemed amongst the *Chineses*, and all sorts of precious skins, as those of *Castor*, *Marron*, and *Zibellins*; and also Horse-hair, of which the *Chineses* make their Nets, and the men (though madly) use it in tying up their hair, as the handiwork drest they can appear in. With these Commodities they traffick into *Leatong*, a Province of the North East of *Chamania* (from which they are parted only by an Arm of the Sea) where commonly they make good Markets, their Merchandise being thence dispersed into all parts of the Kingdom. The people are generally of broad Faces, their colour white, but their nose is not so flat, nor their eyes so little as the *Chineses* are, sparing of speech, and somewhat pensive, but neither so unfriendly as their neighbours of *China*, or so barbarous and rude as the *Tartars of Europe*. They have both the head and the beard, referring on the *Mustaches*, which they extend to a great length, and in the hinder part of their head they leave a Tuft, which being curious woven and platted they let hang down carefully below their shoulders; they have a round and low Cap, which is always garnished round with some precious skin three fingers broad, of *Castor* or *Zibellins*, and serveth to defend their Temples, Ears, and Foreheads from Colds, and other Tempests. That which appears

appears above the skin being covered over either with curious red Silk, or else with black and purple Horse-hair, which they dye and drest most curiously; so as their apparences being handfully joined together makes the Cap both commodious and handsome. Their Garments are long Robes falling down to the very foot, but their Sleeves are not so long and large as the *Chineses* use, but rather such as are used in *Poland* and *Hungary*, only with this difference, that they fashion the extremity of the Sleeve ever like a Horses hoof. At their girdle there hangs on either side two hankerchiefs to wipe their face and hands, besides there hangs a knife for all necessary uses; with two Purfes, in which they carry *Tobacco*, or such like Commodities. On their left side they hang their Scymiters, but so as the point goeth before, and the handle behind; and therefore when they fight they draw it out with the right hand behind them without holding the Scabbard with the other. They seldom wear Shoes, and no Spurs to their Boots, which they make either of Silk or of Horse-skin very neatly drest; but they often use fair Pattens, which they make three fingers high. In riding they use Stirrups, but their Saddles are both lower and broader than ours. In matters of War they are very nimble, never carrying any Baggage with them, nor taking care for Provision, but filling themselves with what they find; yet commonly they eat Flesh, though half washed or half boiled: and if they find none, they fall upon their Horses and Camels. The Earth covered with their Horse-cloth is their Bed, for they care not for Houses and Chambers; but if they be forced to dwell in Houses, their Horses must lodge with them, and they must have many holes beaten in the walls to let in their; but yet their Tents are most beautiful, which they fix and remove with such art and dexterity, as they never retard the speedy march of an Army.

They inhabit amongst many other Provinces, those of *Sundambia*, *Tanis*, *Gupi*, *Nulban*, and *Ninche*; of which I am able to say nothing in the way of *Geography*, or of the four first in way of *History*; only I find that those of *Nulban* were aiding to the King of *Ninche*, in the Conquest of *China*: and of the *Gupi* it is written, that they are so called, by reason they make their Coats of defence or Breast-plates of Fishes Skins, which grow (as is affirmed) in a manner impregnable. None of which Nations count themselves originally of *Tartarian* Race. Yet either terrified by the noise of their great successes, or willing to partake of some part of their fortunes, they not only aided them in their Wars on that side of *Imaus*, but were content to take their very name upon them. Never invaded nor subdued till the time of *Hanbu* King of *China*, who having driven the *Western Tartars*, then Lording it over that Kingdom, from one part of it to another, compelled them finally to betake themselves unto those parts and Provinces of the *Eastern Tartars*, which now make up the Kingdom & Province of *Ninche* where the War followed after them also, till by little and little they became more quiet; compelled to beg their Peace of the Conquering Enemy; divided into seven *Hords* or Tribes, and Governed for a long time by their several *Chiefs*, they became at last united into one Kingdom called the Kingdom of *Ninche*, Anno 1550 or thereabout. Oppressed by the *Præfets* of *Leatong*, in the way of their Trade, and suffering amongst many other indignities the death of their King, whom those *Præfets* had entrapped and murdered, they make complaint of these outrages to the King of *China*; and finding no remedy at his hands, put themselves into Arms, invade the Province of *Leatong*, take the City of *Leatong*, and having besieged the King himself in the Royal or Imperial City of *Peking*, they returned home (find-

ing no hope of taking it at that time) with the spoil and plunder of all those parts through which they marched. The War thus first begun was managed for many years with great loss on both sides, the *Tartars* having got nothing by it, but the *Eastern* parts of the Province of *Leatong*, and the honour of having showed themselves twice more at the Walls of *Peking*, till in the year 1644. being invited into *China* by *Unguenis* to support the then falling fortune of the Royal Family, they husbanded the opportunity so well, as to make themselves the absolute Masters of that mighty Kingdom. The whole *Story* and Successes of this notable action, we shall sum up in brief when we come to *China*. In the mean time take here the Catalogue of

THE KINGS of NIUCHE.

- 1550 1, 2 *N. N.* advanced into this Kingdom after the reducing of the several *Hordes* into one main Body, and Father of the King succeeding, who was slain at last by the treachery of the *Præfets* of *Leatong*, as before was said.
- 1616 3 *Thieimungus*, who to revenge his Fathers death, invaded *China*, took the City of *Leatong*, & braved the great Emperor at the walls of the Regal City, and having enriched himself with the Spoils of the Country returned home again.
- 1627 4 *Thieimungus*, the Son of *Thieimungus*, followed the War with the same Fortune as his Father did, both of them growing greater in Renown and Riches than in Power and Patrimony.
- 1636 5 *Zunguis*, the Son of *Thieimungus*, secretly brought up amongst the *Chineses*, by means whereof he grew not only acquainted with the conditions of that people, but their weaknesses also; and consequently was the better prepared to lay the Foundation of that greatness to which the *Tartars* have attained by the Conquest of it. Called into *China* by *Unguenis*, as before is said, he possessed himself of the City of *Peking*; and though he died as soon as he was Master of that City only: yet left he such Instructions to his Brothers, and thereof of his Council, that very easily and speedily they possessed themselves of all the Kingdom.
1644. 6 *Xunibus* the Son of the former, of the age of nine years only at the death of his Father, the management of his affairs both for War and Peace being committed to, his Uncle, but chiefly unto *Anavangis* the eldest of them, by whom so prudently conducted, that within the space of four years he was quietly settled in that Throne, all opposition and pretenders to the Royal succession, being beaten down, of which more hereafter.

S. TARTARIA ANTIQUA.

TARTARIA ANTIQUA hath on the South, *Altaey*, and the Countries of the *Eastern Tartars*; on the West and North, the main *Seybick Ocean*; on the East, the Straights of *Anian*, (if such Straights there be) by which parted from *America*. So called, because the first habitation of the *Tartars*; who from this Den of Coast,

Goal made their first eruptions, and have since overgrown so much of Asia.

The Country cold and comfortless, as lying under the Polar Circle, and in part beyond it; not fit for any but such as can live no where else: yet heretofore a receptacle of many Christians (though those of the Nestorian Sect) who here enjoyed that liberty of their Religion which the Persians and Saracens denied them in more pleasing Countries. It containeth many Regions, some not considerable. Those of most note are 1 *Thebet*, 2 *Tabor*, 3 *Tenduc*, 4 *Barbu*, 5 *Anian*, and 6 *Tartar*.

1. *T H E B E T*, a Fenny Region, and full of Woods, rich in Coral, which they find on the Sea-shore, and use it instead of Money. So named from the chief City of it, the ordinary seat of the *Abassies*, or Pope of this Idolatrous People; much revered, and having in his power the disposing of all Offices, which concern the Service of their Idols. They have also good store of Musk, and abundance of wild Beasts which are bred in their Forests: But no Beasts wilder than the People, who in times past (if not at the present also) used to bury their Parents in their own Bowels, and to make drinking Cups of their Skulls; for fear left in the midst of their jollity they should forget their Progenitors. Yet not more Barbarous than Immodest; it being contrary to their Custom to take a Wife that is a Virgin. And therefore the Mothers use to prostitute their Daughters to the Merchant Strangers, who having had their pleasures of them, gratify them with a Jewel, or some other present, which they wear on their Wedding day, the being the most acceptable Bride to her Husband who bringeth the greatest Dowry with her of those base rewards. It contained once several Petit Kingdoms, (*Homagers* to the Kings of *Tenduc*) with many Cities; but now laid desolate by the *Tartar*.

2. *T A B O R*, Once a distinct Kingdom also. One of the Kings thereof in the Year 1540. came to the Courts of *Charles* the Fifth, and *Francis* the First; where he found Princely entertainment. But upon proof that he was a Factor for the Jews, and secretly solicited many unto that Religion, by the command of *Charles* he was burnt at *Montau*.

3. *T E N U C*, A populous Kingdom of it self, but greater in name and power; the Kings hereof commanding all these *North-East* parts, as far as the borders of *Cathay*. Christians in Religion, till the Conquest of it by the *Tartars*, though according to the *Nestorian* tendries: but now *Mohometans* for the most part, with some remainders, and but few of Christianity. Divided into many large and spacious Provinces, as *Chincinates*, *Cerguth*, *Ergigata*, *Cerchans*, and others of less note; so called according to the names of their Principal Towns, or having some Towns in them of the name of the Provinces.

Those of most note in *Tenduc* it self, 1 *Coras*, the ordinary Sepulture of the Kings of *Tenduc*, before it was subdued by the *Tartars*, and since that also. 2 *Cavacoras*, where *Cingis* was first honoured with the title of King, the Kings hereof bearing the port of Kings, and the Office of Priests, were anciently called by the name of *Prefbyter Johannes*, or *Prefser John*: a title now erroneously conferred by some on the Emperor of the *Abassines*, or *Ethiopian* in *Africa*. Concerning which it is a wonder, that *Joseph Scaliger*, a man of such infinite reading, should be so deceived: and by the authority of his judgment deceive so many. For finding that there was a *Prefbyter Johannes* in the North of *Asia*, and hearing vulgarly that Title given to him in *Africa*, he fell upon a fancy that this *Abassine* Emperor was formerly of so great power, as to extend his Empire over *India*, and the North of *Asia*; and in this last, for the assurance of his

Conquests to hold his residence. A monstrous, and undefensible fancy! For besides that, all Histories, even those of the *Abassines* themselves, are silent in it: how improbable is it, that a King Reigning in the heart of *Africa*, should subdue the most remote parts of *Asia* and there keep his Court, so many great States and potent Nations being interposed; or that so memorable an exploit should be buried in silence, and found in no Record but in *Scaliger's* Head! Besides it is well known, and generally granted, that the *Prefbyter John* of *Asia*, was by Sect a *Nestorian*; but he that is so called in *Africa*, of the Sect of the *Jacobites*: and further, that the *Christians* of *Athiopia* are circumscribed, which never was reported of those of *Asia*.

Letting this pass therefore as an unwarrantable, and ill grounded fancy, we are to know that formerly this Province of *Tenduc*, was under the old Kings of *Cathay*, till the time of *Cin Cham*, the King thereof. After whose death a certain *Nestorian* Shepherd (that is to say, the Master of great Flocks of Sheep) being Governor of the *Taymans*, a People of *Tenduc*, took to himself the Title of King of *Tenduc*, whom they called by the name of *Pref John*, or Prince *John* (the same word in their Language, as in the Hebrew, signifieth both *Priest* and *Prince*). Dying he bequeathed his Estate and Flocks to his Brother *Um Cham*, (commonly called in one word *Umcham*) a greater Sheep-Master than he; whose Flocks ranged over all the Pastures of the *Moles*, or *Mongul Tartars*, though dwelling fourteen days Journey off, whom he had in subjection: the Title of *Pref John*, or *Prefbyter Johannes*, going along with the dignity and Royal estate. And though afterward this *Umcham* was subdued by the *Tartars*, yet his Posterity for long time were suffered to enjoy the Title of Kings and *Prefbyters*: (but *Vassals* and *Homagers* to the great *Cham*) the great *Cham*, in regard of their Nobility and Royal Parentage, bestowing their Daughters on them in Marriage; as is laid by *William de Rubruquis*, who travelled in these Countries, Anno 1253, the King hereof being then named *George* (the fourth from *Umcham*) but commonly called *Prefbyter Johannes*, as his Fathers were.

4. *B A R G U*, on the extrem North-West, bordering on both those sides the cold *Seychick* Ocean, situate under the North-Star; of the same nature, both for the Soil and People, as that of the *Tartars*. And

5. *A N I A N*, on the North-East, opposite unto it, giving name unto the *Streights* of *Anian*, lying betwix *Tartary* and *America*; which *Streights* (if any such *Streights* there be) the *Tartars*, and some other of the *Northern* Nations, are thought to have passed over, and to plant that Country.

6. *T A R T A R*, so called of the great River *Tartar*, the principal of this *Northern* Tract, and giving name unto the *Tartars*: this being their Original Country, where they lived like Beasts, having neither Faith, nor Letters, nor Habitation, nor the use of Arms, nor any Reputation amongst their Neighbours. In matters of Religion, the worst sort of Gentiles, Worshipping the Sun, Moon, Fire, and the very Earth: to which they offered in the Morning fasting, the first of their meats and drinks.

Their Idols made of Fels, and placed on both sides of the doors of their Tents or Booths, as the preservers of their Cattle, and the Authors of Milk. Divided into five Clans or Tribes, denominating so many Towns and Territories in which they dwelt, that is to say, 1 *Mongis*, 2 *Teka Mongul* (Or the great *Mongul*), 3 *Somomungul*, or the *Water-Mongul*, 4 *Mercat*, 5 *Meriri*: each of them Governed by its Chief as commonly it is amongst Barbarous Nations; though all those Chiefs subordinate

to some higher power. Oppressed by *Umcham*, or *Umcham*, the King of *Tenduc*, who invaded their Pastures, and compelled them to pay unto him the tenth of their Cattle; with joynt consent they removed somewhat further off, and denied their *Tribute*. This opportunity was taken by *Cingis*, one of the Tribe of the *Teka-Monguls*, and so well husbanded, that they admitted him for their King. For publishing abroad amongst the credulous people, that an armed man appeared to him in his sleep, with a white horse, and said, O *Cingis* or *Cingis*, it is the will of immortal God, that thou be Governor of the *Tartars*, and free them from bondage and paying *Tribute*, he found a general belief, especially amongst those of his own Clan, who joyning themselves to him, followed him as their King-leader, in all his actions. Thus backed and strengthened, he made War against the *Somomunguls*, slew their Commander, and subdued them: and by their help successfully assaulted the *Mercats*, and *Meriris*, whom he also vanquished. And having thus subdued all the Clans of the *Tartars*, and added the Estates of *Thebet* and *Tanguth*, unto his Dominions, he was by the consent of the seven Princes, or Chiefs of their Clans, (*Thebet* and *Tanguth* being added to the former number) placed on a Seat on a piece of Fels, (the best Throne they had or could afford) and saluted King, with as great Reverence and Solemnity as their State could yield. And first to make trial of his Power, and their Obedience, he commanded the seven Chiefs, or Princes, to surrender their places, and each of them to cut off the head of his eldest Son: which was done accordingly. Had *John* of *Leyden* been a *Scholar*, as he was but a *Barber*, I should think he had studied the Acts of *Cingis*, and proceeded by them. Allured by their Fidelity and Obedience, he set upon the *Naymans*, a People of the Kingdom of *Tenduc*, whom he overcame. And now conceiving himself fit for some great Alliance, he sent to *Umcham*, and demanded one of his Daughters for his Wife; which *Umcham* with some threats, but more scorn, denying, he Marched against him, slew him in the Field, and possessed his Daughter, and with her also his Estate. Proud with this good success, and encouraged by so great an increase of Power, he invaded the Kingdom of *Cathay*, pretending for that also the authority of an Heavenly Vision, in the name of the Immortal God: in which attempt, discomfited at first with a very great overthrow, but at last victorious; conquering the several Nations of it one by one, till in the end he brought the War to the chief City of that Kingdom, which at last he took, and therewithal the Title of *Cham* or Emperor. Continuing this Dignity for the space of six years, and every year adding somewhat to his Dominions, he was at last wounded in the Knee at the Castle of *Thargins*; of which wound he dyed, and was honourably buried in Mount *Altay*.

This is the best account I am able to give of the beginning of this great Empire, the Original of this spreading Nation, and the description of the Country of their first habitation. They that have Christened some of the most Northern parts of it, by the means of the Tribes of *Dan* and *Naphthalim*, and accordingly placed them in their Maps, might with more Credit have supply'd those vacant places which they knew not otherwise how to fill, with the Pictures of wild Beasts, or monstrous Filthes; which might well enough have pleased the eye, without betraying the Judgment of the looker on. Of his Successors I am able to make no certain Catalogue: their names being doubtfully delivered, and the Succession much confounded amongst our Writers: the names of the Provincial Sultans being many times imposed upon us, instead of those of the *Chams* themselves. But we will wade through

those difficulties as well as we can, and exhibit as perfect a Catalogue of them as the light of Story will direct me: first adding (what should have been before remembered) that it is recorded, that *Cingis* before he joyned Battle with *Umcham*, consulted with his *Drummers* and *Afflogers* of the luccas. They taking a green Reed, cleft it asunder; writ on the one the name of *Cingis*, and *Umcham* on the other: and placed them not far asunder. Then the Reed fell fighting in the fight of the whole Army, *Cingis* Reed overcoming the other: whereby they foretold the joyful news of Victory to the *Tartars*, which accordingly happened. And this was the first step, by which this bale and beggarly Nation began to mount unto the Chair of Empire and Sovereignty, whereas before they lived like Beasts, having neither Letters, nor Faith, nor Dwelling, nor Reputation, nor valor, nor indeed any thing befitting a man, as before was said.

The Great CHAMS of the TARTARS.

A. C.

1162

1. *Cingis*, *Cingius*, *Zingis*, or *Changius*, was made King or Cham of the *Tartars*; he subdued *Tenduc*, and *Cathay*, changing the name of *Seythians* and *Seythia*, to *Tartarians* and *Tartaria*. 6.

1168

2. *Jochulan Cham*, or *Hocana*, succeeded. In his time the name of *Tartar* was first known in Europe, Anno 1212. in which year they drove the *Polepacie* from the Banks of the *Euaxine* Sea. By his Captain *Batu*, or *Roldo*, he subdued *Moscovia*, or *Russia*; planted his *Tartars* in *Taurica Cherfonesus*, walked *Hungaria*, *Bosnia*, *Servia*, *Dulmania*; and by his other Captains took *Persia* from the *Turks*.

3.

Zuincham, *Batu*, or *Barcham*, ruined the *Turk* Kingdom of *Damascus*, and *Asia* the less.

4.

Gino Cham, whose Daughter conveyed the Empire unto her Husband *Tamerlane*, or *Tamurlane*.

1370

5. *Tamis-Culu*, *Lamis Cham*, or *Tamerlane*, a great Tyrant, but withal an excellent Soldier. It is thought that, he subdued more Provinces in his life time, than the *Romans* had done in 800 years. Of whose Acts we have spoke at large. Dying, he divided his great Empire amongst his Children, as *Persia* to *Mirza Chabarok* his fourth Son, *Zagathay* to another, (perhaps unto *Sauvchus* his eldest Son) and so to others.

1405

6. *Lurochin*, the second Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded in *Cathay*, though the eldest was at first proclaimed, which his Father had before prognosticated: who when his Sons came to him before his death, laid his hand on the head of *Sauvchus*, who was the eldest but lifting up the Chin of *Lurochin*, who was the second. He lived not long succeeded to by

7.

Allan, who added little to his Estate. 8. *Mango Cham*, to whom *Haider an Armenian* Prince (and the chief Compiler of the *Tartarian* History) went for aid against the *Caliph* of *Bagdar*. By whose persuasion the said *Mango Cham* is said to have been Christened; with all his Household, and many Nobles of both Sexes.

9. *Cublay Cham*, the Son of *Mungo*.
10. *Tamur Cham*, the Nephew of *Cublay* by his Son *Cingis*.

11. *Demyr Cham*, the great *Cham* of *Cathay* in the year 1500 or thereabouts. What the names of the *Chams* are who have since reigned, we cannot learn; nor what memorable Acts have been done among them. The great difference of Conquests, and difficulty of the Journey, have hindered further discoveries. For the Great *Cham*, and his next Neighbour the King of *China*, will neither suffer any of their Subjects to travel abroad, nor permit any Foreigners to view their Dominions, or enter into them: unless their Ambassadors or Merchants, and those but sparingly, and under very great restraints, to avoid all giving of intelligence touching their Affairs; saving that in these latter times the *Jesuits* have found some footing in *China*, by whom notwithstanding, we have received little or no Intelligence in matters which concern this Country.

The Government is Tyrannical, the Great *Cham* being Lord of all; and in his tongue (besides which, they have almost no Laws) consisteth the Power of life or death. He is called by the simple vulgar, *The shadow of Spirits*, and Son of the Immortal God: and by himself is reputed to be the Monarch of the whole World. For this cause every day as soon as he hath dined, he causeth his Trumpets to be sounded; by that sign giving leave to the other Kings and Princes of the Earth to go to Dinner. A fine dream of Universal Monarchy. At the death of the *Cham*, the seven chief Princes Assemble to Crown his Son; whom they place on a black coult Cloath: telling him, if he live well, Heaven shall be his reward; if ill, he shall not have so much as a corner of that black cloth to rest his body on: then they put the Crown upon his Head, and killing his feet, swear unto him Fealty and Homage. And at the Funeral of these great Monarchs, they use to kill some of his Guard Soldiers, whereof he hath 12000 in continual pay, saying unto them, *He & domino nostro servite in alia vita*. *Paulus Venetus* reporteth, that at the obsequies of *Alung Cham*, no fewer than 10000 were slain on this occasion.

These *Chams* are for the most part severe Justicers, and punish almost every small fact with sudden death; but theft especially: Insomuch that a man in *Cambalu* taking a Pail of Milk from a Womans head, and beginning to drink thereof, upon the Womans out-cry was apprehended, and cut asunder with a sword; so that the blood and the Milk came out together. Nor are *Adultery* or *Lying* punished with less than death, and so ordained to be by the Laws of *Cingis*, their first Emperor. A wiser man, than possibly could be expected from so rude a Country, and of so little breeding, in the knowledge of Books or Business; the *Tartars* being utterly without the use of Letters, till the Conquest of the *Huyri*, a *Cathayan* Nation but of Christian Faith.

What Forces the Great *Chams*, in the height of their Power, were able to draw into the Field, may be conjectured at by the Army of *Tamerlane*, consisting of 120000 Horse and Foot, as was said before. And looking on them as confined within *Cathay*, we shall find them not inferior to the greatest Princes. For *Cublay Cham*, long after the division of this great Estate, which was made by *Tamerlane*, had in the Field against *Naim* his Uncle, and one *Caidas*, who had then rebelled, an Army of 100000 Foot, and 300000 Horse: there being 500000 Horse on the other side; which made almost a Million of men in both Armies. And this is probable enough, if report be true touching the *Chams* of *Zagabay*, and those of *Turkestan*, (before reduced under the obedience of the other) of which the first is said to have been able

to raise 300000 Horse, and the last an hundred thousand more. For standing Forces, he maintains 12000 Horse, distributed amongst four Captains, for the Guard of his Person; besides which he hath great Forces in every Province, and within four miles of every City, ready to come upon a call, if occasion be; so that he need not fear any outward Invasion, and much less any homebred Rebellions. But on the other side, admitting this for truth which before is said, we find him of no power at Sea, without which great Princes are exposed most commonly to the Invasions and Affronts of such as are strong in Shipping: For either the *Eastern Tartars* interpolated betwixt him and the main Ocean, whereby he is Landlocked (as it were) from all Trade at Sea; or if he have any Port in the North-East parts of this long Country; where it joyneth on *Tartaria Antiqua*, it is so far off, and so much out of the way, that it adds nothing to his Power, and not much to his profit.

Of the Revenues of the *Cham*, I can make no estimate, but may conclude them to be what he list himself: he being the absolute Lord of all, the Subject without any thing he can call his own. But that which ordinarily doth accrue unto him, is the tenth of Wool, Silk, Hemp, Corn, and Cattle. So then doth he draw into his own hands all the Gold and Silver which is brought into the Country; which he causeth to be melted, and preserved in his Treasury: Imposing on his people instead of Money, in some places *Cattle-shells*; in other a black Coin, made of the Bark of Trees, with his stamp upon it. And besides this he hath to himself the whole Trade of *Pearl-fishing*, which no body upon pain of death dare fish for, but by leave from him. So that his Treasury is conceived to be very rich, though his Annual income be uncertain, or not certainly known.

Hitherto I have prosecuted the affairs of this mighty Monarch upon the common credit of approved Authors, yet much confess I am not very well satisfied in the truth and reality of the thing it self; it being rather my opinion, that there is no such man at this present time as a *Cham*, with Sovereign Power and Jurisdiction over all the other Members of that vast body; but that this Empire being broken in pieces by the Sons of *Tamerlane*, the Conquered Countreys did by little and little return again to their former Governments, or else were seized on by the *Ypsi Chams* or Governors of the several Provinces. For first I consider it as impossible that there should be such a mighty Monarch, of such absolute authority, such an infinite power, and such unlimited Revenue; and yet that for the space of an hundred years and more, we should hear neither tale nor tidings of them, no not so much as of their names, especially in an active age, and when this great building of the World hath such Castles in it. For it must needs seem strange to a rational man, that neither *Jehonjan* who passed into *Perfia* by the *Caspian* Sea, nor Sir Robert *Shurley* who spent much time in the *Persian* Court, nor Sir *Thomas Roe*, or Sir *Dodmore Cotton* (the first Embassador to the Great Mogul, the other to the *Persian* Sophy) should tell us any thing of this Prince, if such Prince there be; or that the Travellers of our Nation who have rambled over all parts of *India*, the next neighbouring Country, should bring us home no tidings of him; or the *Jesuits* with all their diligence should not find him out. Secondly, I consider it as a thing improbable, that if there were any such mighty Prince, keeping his Royal Court in the City of *Cambalu*, so near unto the Kingdom of *China*, he should permit the beggarly Nations of the *Eastern Tartars* to Conquer that Rich and Mighty Empire in so short a time, he in the mean season sitting still as a dull spectator, neither considering his own danger, nor putting in

for a share of so great a Booty. Thirdly, I observe that in the treating of a Marriage between *Xuchim* the great King of the *Eastern Tartars*, now reigning in *China*, with a Daughter of the King of *Tangub*, the King of *Tangub* is called Prince of the *Occidental*, or *Western Tartars*, by which name the *Chineses* call all the *Tartars* inhabiting the vast Countries of *Altaie* and *Cubay*, especially to called, (as being *Westward* of themselves, and the *Eastern Tartars*.) which Title the King of *Tangub* had not merited or durst have assumed unto himself, if there had been any such great *Cham* then reigning in *Cubay*, and residing in *Cambalu*, as our Authors speak of. And fourthly, I observe it as a matter probable, that as at the breaking of this Empire into pieces upon the death of *Tamerlane*, the *Precoepes*, or *European Tartars* submitted to a Prince of their own Nation, under the power and Government of whose Successors, they do still continue: and much of the *Africk Tartary* being subdued by the *Moscovites*, the neighbouring *Tartars* did return to their ancient Government by *Hordes* or Tribes; that so the

Kings of *Tangub* might not only recover their own Inheritance, but by degrees possess themselves of the greatest part of all *Altaie*, if not of some part of the *Proper Cathay* also. And therefore that some of the late great *Chams* mentioned in the former Catalogue, are no other than the Kings of *Tangub*, or the *Chams* of *Zagabay*, in whom (if any where) remaineth the Succession of the House of *Cingis*.

From these Premises I conclude, that all which hath before been spoken touching the great power, Authority, and Revenue of the great *Chams* of *Tartary*, must either be referred unto the times of their greatest glory, when their Empire was intire, or not much dismembred; or else relate, with some qualifications, to the *Chams* of *Zagabay*, or the Kings of *Tangub*. But these my observations and considerations, with the conclusion issuing from them, I willingly submit unto better Judgments.

And thus much for *TARTARY*.

OF CHINA.

CHINA is bounded on the North, with *Altaie*, and the *Eastern Tartars*, from which separated by a continual chain of hills, part of those of *Ararat*; and where that chain is broken off, or interrupted, with a great wall extended 400 Leagues in length; built, as they say, by *Tiamzan*, the 17th King hereof; on the South, partly with *Cambin-China*, a Province of *India*, partly with the Ocean; on the East, with the *Oriental* Ocean; and on the West with part of *India*, and *Cathay*; from which no otherwise separated than by such natural bounds, and Ramps, as commonly divide great Countries from one another.

The Northern parts hereof were utterly unknown unto the Ancients, both *Greeks* and *Latines*; But for the Southern parts hereof, they make up that Country which *Ptolemy* called *Sina*, or *Sinarum Regio*, by which name the whole Country is called at the present by our modern *Latins*; and from whence that of *China* seems to be derived, by *Paulus Venetus* called *Mangi*, by the neighbouring Countries *Sanglat*, by the Natives *Taine*, and *Taybin*: to which last, signifies no other than a Realm; or by way of excellence, the Realm. By the *Arabians* it is called *Tzin*; and the Inhabitants call themselves by the name of *Tangis*.

It is said to contain in circuit 69516 *Dies* of *China* measure, which reduced to our *European* measure, will make a compass in the whole of 3000 Leagues: the length thereof extended from the Borders of *India*, to the most Northern Provinces of this Continent, 1800 Leagues. But they that say so, speak at random. For besides that 1800 Leagues in length must needs carry a greater compass than 3000 Leagues, they make it by this reckoning to be bigger than *Europe*, which I think no sober man will grant. And answerable to this vast compass, it is said also to contain no fewer than 15 Provinces, every one of which is made to be of a greater Continent than the

greatest Realm we know in *Europe*: Yet not a Continent of vast ground, or fill of uninhabitable Deserts, as in other places; but full of goodly Towns and Cities. The names of which Provinces, and the number of their Towns and Cities, I have thought fit once for all, to lay down in this Diagram following.

The Provinces, Cities, and Towns in *China*.

Prov.	Cit.	Towns.
1 Canton	37	190
2 Foquien	33	99
3 Olam	50	130
4 Sijnan	44	150
5 Tolenechia	51	155
6 Cansy	24	122
7 Minchian	25	20
8 Obian	19	74
9 Houan	20	102
10 Pagnia	47	150
11 Taitan	47	78
12 Quichen	43	113
13 Chaguan	43	94
14 Sijnan	41	105
15 Quinsy	31	114

By which it doth appear, that in these fifteen Provinces there are 591 Cities; 1593 walled Towns; and besides them 1154 Castles, 4200 Towns unwall'd; and such an infinite number of Villages, that the whole Country seems to be but one City only. But here we are to understand, that these great Provinces are divided into many lesser, and some of them presented to us (in late stories) under other names, according to the Languages and Appellations of those several Nations, which either have recourse unto them, or do traffique with them; which the Reader may take notice of with less doubt.

or wonder, in regard that the main Country of *China* itself is called by so many several names, as before was shewn.

It reacheth from the 130th to the 160th Degree of *Longitude*: and from the *Tropic of Cancer*, to the 33d Degree of *Latitude*. So that it lieth under all the *Climes* from the third to the ninth, inclusively: the longest Summers day in the *Southern* parts, being thirteen hours, and forty minutes; increased in the most *Northern* parts, to sixteen hours, and three quarters. Enjoying by this site an air somewhat of the *hottest*, especially in those parts which lie under the *Tropick*; but withal very found and healthy, and fit for the production of the choicest fruits.

The Country very rich and fertile, inasmuch that in many places they have two, and in some three Harvests in a year: well cultivated, and sowed with all manner of Grain, and planted with the best kind of Fruits; which do not only come to speedy maturity, but to more excellency and perfection than any of these *Western* parts. The like is also said of their *Pearls* and *Beads*; fairer and of greater virtue than those of *America*, or any other part of the World besides. Particularly it aboundeth with Wheat, Barley, Rice, Wool, Cotton, Olives, Vines, Flax, Silk, all kind of Metals, Fruits, Cattle, Sugar, Honey, Rubarb, Camphire, Ginger, all kinds of Spices, medicinal wood, called *China wood*, by the name of the Country, Musk, and Salt: the Customs for which last in one City only, which is that of *Canton*, amounteth to the yearly value of 180000 Crowns. It yieldeth also an *Fish*, out of which they press a delicate juice, which doth not only serve them instead of Wine, but preserveth their health, and freeth them from many of those inconveniences which the immoderate use of Wine doth breed to others. Such store of Poultry of all sorts, but of Ducks especially, that in the Town of *Canton* only before mentioned, it is thought there are 12000 eaten every day, one day with another.

The people are for the most part of swarth complexion, but more or less according to their nearness to the heat of the Sun, short nosed, black eyed, and of very thin beards. They wear their Garments very long, with long loose sleeves, and their hair much longer than their neighbouring *Tartars*, who wear their hair exceeding short, and their cloaths much closer; to which two Fashions I do add, that more of them took up Arms for their Hair and habit when required to conform to those particulars to the will of the Conqueror) than had done either for their King, or their common Liberty. So much delighted with their own Fashion and Composure, that as the *Negrees* use to paint the Devil white, as a colour contrary to their own: so when these *Chinois* use to draw the picture of a deformed Person, they set him forth in a short Coat, broad eyes, long nose, and a bushy Beard. They are much given unto their Bellies, and eat thrice a day, but then not immoderately: drink their drink hot, and eat their meat with two-forks of Ivory, Ebony, or the like, not touching their meat with their hands at all, and therefore no great foulers of Linnen. The use of Silver Forks with us, by some of our spruce Gallants taken up of late, came from hence into *Italy*, and from thence into *England*. Their Marriages they celebrate most commonly in the *New Moon*, and many times put them off till *March*, when the year beginneth with them as it doth with us: In which solemnity they spare for no cost nor charge, Musick and Stageplays, and good cheer many days together. Yet doth not this take them off a jot from their natural industry, and their proficiency in *Musick* and *Mechanic* Arts. For the Son is bound to follow his Fathers occupation: which Law,

preventing the roving about of idle people, and exciting in each breast an emulation in every Art, maketh the Inhabitants excellent Artificers. In giving Alms they are bountiful to the maimed, and the lame; but reject the blind, as being sufficiently able to get sustenance for themselves by corporal labour, as grinding of Corn, &c. They have long enjoyed the benefit of *Printing* before it was known in *Europe*, but print not as we do, from the left hand to the right; nor as the *Jews*, from the right hand to the left; but from the top of the leaf downward to the bottom. *Guns* also have been used among them time out of mind: whence they are so well conceited of themselves, that they use to say, they themselves have two eyes, the *Europeans* one, and the rest of the people of the World not one. A pretty flourish of self-praising. Now that Guns were in use in these *Eastern* Countries, and consequently also amongst them, even when *Bacchus* made his Expedition into *India* (which was some three or four years before, or after the departure of *Affra* out of *Aegypt*) Sir Walter Raleigh seemeth to affirm: because *Philistratus*, in the life of *Apollonius Tyanicus*, telleth us how *Bacchus* was beaten from a City of the *Oxydrace*, by Thunder and Lightning; which he interpreteth to be the *Canon*. But certainly himself in another place of his most excellent book, acknowledgeth this *Philistratus* to have written fabulously; and therefore so fit foundation for a conceit so contrary to probability, and the opinion of all times. Besides, whereas *Dion* telleth us, that by the benefit of Thunder and Lightning from Heaven, *Severus* discomfited *Pescennius Niger*; and by the same means, was himself repulled from the Walls of *Petra* in *Arabia*: we may (if this interpretation hold good) as easily maintain, that *Severus* had great Ordinance in his Camp; as the *Arabians* in their Town. As for *Printing*, whether *John Gutenberg* learned it of the *Chinois*; or whether good inventions, like good wits, do sometimes jump, I dare not determine: sure I am that he first taught it in *Europe*; and as some say, in the year 1440. At *Harlem* a Town of *Holland*, it was first laid to be practised; and at *Menz* perfected. Now whereas it is by some doubted, whether the Art of *Printing* be available to the proficiency and advancement of Learning, or not; I must not herein be both a Judge and a Party: but must leave the decision of the point to men uninterested. Only this I dare boldly say, that this most excellent invention hath been much abused, and prostituted to the use of every foolish and idle paper-blurder: The Treasury of Learning being never so full, and yet never more empty; overcharged so with the froth and scum of foolish and unnecessary discourses. In which (though all Nations have their share therein, and we of late as much as any) the *Dutch* have been accounted the most blame-worthy: who not content to scatter their poor conceptions amongst themselves, and print them in their own Tongue only (as our *English Paper-blurders* do) publish them in the *Latin* to the eye of others, and send them twice a year to the publick *Marts*, though neither worth the Readers eye, nor the Printers hand. *Scriptorum plus est hodie quam mularum olim cum caeteris maxime*; the complaint once of an old *Comedian*, was never truer than at the present.

But not to dive too deep into this dispute, the people, as before was said, are good Artificers, ingenious and excellent in all things which they take in hand: the *Porcellain* Dishes, curious Carvings, and the fine painted Works which we have in Tables, Leather, Stuffs, being brought from thence. Effeminated with much ease and pleasure, they are not much given unto the wars, which make them the more easy prey to the Neighbouring *Tartars*, whose very name hath bred more terrors in them, than their

Arms

Arms or Conquests. Inasmuch that when *Osuguein*, requested Aid of *Zangzue* King of the *Eastern Tartars*, against *Lyewfien*, and his rabble of Rogues, which sacked the City of *Peking*, and placed himself in the Throne Imperial; the *Tartarian* leaving but few men in readiness, advised him to array a good part of his own Soldiers with the Arms and Colours of the *Tartars*, that on the Terrors of that light he might obtain the cheaper, and more certain Victory; which prudent Council was pursued, and it proved accordingly: but what they want in courage, they supply with Wit, being laid to be a politic and judicious people; but withal very jealous of their women, and great Tyrants over them, not suffering them to go abroad, or sit down at the Table if any stranger be invited, unless he be some very near Kinsman. A Tyranny or restraint, which the poor women give no cause for, being laid to be very honest and much relieved, not so much as shewing themselves at a window for fear of offence: and if they use painting, as most of them do, it is rather to preserve themselves in the good affections of their Husbands, than for any other low respects. For the fit about their heads with Ribbands of Silk, and garnished with Pearls and precious Stones. Near in their drefs, and very costly in their apparel, with reference to their estates, and the degree of their Husbands: the richer sort wearing Satin striped with Gold, and interlaced with very rich Jewels, the poorer in Serge, and razed Velvets. They have most of them little feet, which they take great pride in, and for this cause bind them up hard from their very infancy; which they endure patiently though it be very painful, because a small foot is accounted for so great a much from their own curiosity, as from the jealousy of the men, who have brought it in, to the end that they and that going with it a grace, and so little ease, they should have no desire to sit much abroad. A custom so Ancient and received, that it hath got the force of Law; and if any Mother should do otherwise in breeding their infancy, they would undergo some censure or mark of infamy. If a desire to see their Parents get them the freedom of a visit, they are carried to them in close Chairs, and attended by so many waiters, that it is not possible for any man either to see them, or hold any discourse with them.

Of both Sexes it is thought that this Country containeth no fewer than 70 Millions. Which though it seem to be a number beyond all belief; yet it is knowingly averred, and may be thought probable enough, if we consider the spaciousness of the Country. 2 The secret goodness of the Stars, and temperature of the Air. 3 The abundance of all things necessary to life. 4 That it is not lawful for the King to make any war, but merely defensive, and so they enjoy perpetual peace. 5 That it is not lawful for any *Chinois* to go out of the Country. And 6 That here the Sea is as well peopled as whole Provinces elsewhere. For the Ships do resemble a City, in which they buy, sell, are born, and die. And on the several Rivers which water the Walls of *Nankin*, and the *Pekin*, for no less than 300 Leagues, the Ships are laid to be so thick ranked, that it seemeth to be a continual Street.

The people hereof in matters of Religion, are generally all *Gentiles*, and conceive thus of the Creation; viz. That there was one *Taine*, who created *Panzen*, and *Panzina*, whose Posterity remained 90000 years; but they for their wickedness being destroyed, *Taine* created *Luitzani*, who had two horns; from the right came men, from the left came women. When any of them dieth,

they cloath him in his best apparel, all performed, set him in his best Chair, and there all his nearest Kintred Kinsmen, before him, take their leave with tears. When he is set by him a Table full of viands and good cheer, and Candles continually burning on it. Not much unlike to which Cerimonies we find, how whilst the funeral was preparing for *Francis the French King*, his Statue was raised in Royal Robes, with the Crown, Scepter, &c. was laid on his Bed; whither Dinner and Supper was daily served in, with the like State and Solemnity as when he was living. But to return again to my dead *Chinois*; when he has lain, as is above said, fifteen days, he is carried forth to his Funeral, the place whereof is in the Fields; for to be buried within the Walls, were a thing of all others the most wretched. Hither, were a thing of the manner of a procession, come, they burn his body, and with it Men, Cattel, and other provision, for his attendance and subsistence in the other world: as they use in the Funerals of *Tartary*. As great *Idolaters* as any, sacrificing to the very Devil, and that upon the same reason, sooth he is a wicked and mischievous creature, and would otherwise hurt them.

Yet in the middle of this darkness there appeareth some light, whereby we may perceive that Christianity believe, that *God* is an immortal Spirit, that by him the first man was made of nothing; that the Soul dieth not in another life, according to the works it hath done in remains of the light of nature, (the learned men amongst the Ancient *Greeks* and *Romans*, having so much that the *Idol* must, without the Gospel) we may here add, that with three heads looking one on another; signifying as themselves affirm, that they have all but one will, which makes some think they had been Anciently instructed in the Doctrine of the Holy Trinity. They have also the Picture of a very fair *Woman* holding a Child in her Arms, who, as they say, was Daughter of some great King; and that she was delivered of that Infant when she was a *Virgin*. And as some add, they have portraits of the *Apollites*, (as usually painted in some part of the *Christian Church*;) of whom they are able to say nothing, but that they were great Philosophers who lived virtuously here, and were therefore made Angels in Heaven. And finally estated in an eminent degree of Happiness, who in their times exceeded others in knowledge, industry, or valour, or lived an austere life without wronging any man; or otherwise deserved nobly of the Common wealth, as the Authors of some signal benefit unto their Country. These I conceive to be some evident remainders of Christianity, or the Remembrances rather of that Christianity, which formerly was known amongst them: first planted here (as may be probably collected) by St. Thomas, or some of his Disciples, an Ancient Breviary or Liturgy of the Indian Churches, giving good hint to it: Where it is said, Per D. Thomam regnum calorum volavit, & ascendit ad Sinas; i. e. that by St. Thomas the Kingdom of Heaven was Preached unto those of *China*. Some *Chatterers* here were also of it, in the time of the *Tartars*, though now obliterated, and not visible but in these defacements; And in this fate it stood till the time of our Fathers, in which the *Jesuits* (commendably industrious in the propagation of the *Christian Faith*) not without great danger to themselves, have endeavoured, and in

part affected, their *Conversion*. For though they have gained but few *Profligates*, (in regard of those infinite numbers of people which are said to live here) yet some *Converts* they have made among them; and thereby sown their seeds of that saving Truth, (though mingled with some *scum* of their own) which may in time increase and spread over all the Country. For at the present they have not only got footing in the Ports and Sea-Towns; but also in many mid-land Cities, and in some also very far distant from the Sea; in all of which, they have both Churches for their followers, and Cells or Monasteries for themselves; and finally, have gained so far upon the Court, as not only to have their doings well approved of by Authority Royal; but have also gained unto the Faith, the Mother, Wife, and eldest Son of *Jumby* the late declared Emperour of the *Chinefes*, which eldest Son they have Baptized (and he is a *happy* *Omen*, for the good of Chritendom) by the name of *Constantine*.

Hills of great Note here are not many, here being but one Mountain touched upon by *Ptolemy*, in his description of the Country called *Sinarum Regio*, which we conceive to be the Southern part of this *China*: agreeable unto the observation of Modern Writers, by whom it is affirmed to be so plain and level, and so unswelled with hills at all; that they have Carts and Coaches driven with Sails as ordinarily as drawn with Horses, in these parts. Nor the less destitute of Rivers for this want of Mountains, *Ptolemy* naming in it, 1. *Alphanta*, 2. *Senu*, 3. *Abysinus*, and 4. *Cotiaris*; all which had here their fount and fall: and yet he knew the our-skirts of the Country only. But because the Country of the *Sina*, of which *Ptolemy* speaks, make but a South part of this great Country, and the Rivers which before we mentioned in *Serica*, paise in to it also, it's possible enough, that we may find them all, amongst the chief Rivers of this Country, whensoever we shall come to have a more perfect Chorography hereof than former times have given unto us. In the mean season we may know, that the names by which the principal Rivers are now called are 1. *Talo*, which rising in the North east parts of the Country, and passing by the Southern skirts of *Leaoang*, falleth into the Ocean over against the Island of *Corea*, making a little life at the influx of it, fortified with a strong Castle called *Kaimgba*, to secure that entrance. 2. *Croccus*, which arising in the West borders thereof, first bendeth its course to the North-east, watering the City of *Kiaungcheu*, and after passeth directly Southward, till it falls at last into the *Talo*. 3. *Polyfang*, which issuing out of some of the branches of Mount *Imau*, first passeth by the great City of *Cambalin*, and falls at last into the mighty Lake of *Quinjay*, and finally again contracted to its proper Channel, doth either lose it self in the Eastern Ocean, or in the great River of *Kiang*, of which more anon. 4. *Cacamancan*, another of these great Rivers which falleth into the Lake of *Quinjay*, and possibly may be the same which the *Charayan Tartars* call by the name of *Cavomoram*, 5. *Kiang*, (or *Quam*, as the *Tartars* call it,) which having its original from Mount *Imau*, and passing thorow the whole breadth of *Cathay*, cutteth thorow the middle of this Country, which it divideth (like an Equator) into North and South, watering therein the stately Cities of *Nanquin* and *Casung*, where it is no less than 4 miles broad, encreasing more and more in breadth by the falling in of other principal Rivers, till it come at last to be 10 miles over, and calling up such Mountains of Water, that the *Chineses* call it not undeservingly, *The Son of the Sea*. 6. *Giamharg*, the same (I think) which the *Tartars* call *Quianut*, which rising out of some other spurs or branches of the Mount *Imau*, falleth at last into this Country, and passing by the goodly City of *Hangchen* on the North,

and the fair Town of *Xaaking* on the South, endeth its course at Jalt in the Eastern Ocean. *7. Queira*, a River of the Southern parts, but not much observable. Here are also many great *Lakes*, not inferior to some Seas in bigness; so plentiful in Fish, as if they contended with the foyl, which should be most profitable: and yet so fivelled with winds (though the winds many times blow strongly) that both upon these *Lakes*, and on the Rivers and Sea-coasts, they pass up and down in small Barks, with no other Sail than a Bough set up an end in the midst of them; by the help whereof they make good speed in their Navigations. Nor do these *Lakes* or Rivers use to overflow their banks, or damage the Country: but when they do, it brings home fatal ruine with it; as in the year 1327, when the *Lake* of *Sarexy* breaking out, overwhelmed seven Cities, many Towns and Villages, almost infinite numbers.

Towns of molt: Nor amongst the *Sins*, though not-
 2. and but the names be remaining of them, 1. *Branna*,
 3. and 2. *Rhanna*, honoured with the title of *Civitate*.
 3. *Aphira*, 4. *Abuta-a*, more within the Land; but a-
 4. four under some degree of Northern Latitude. 5. *Thine*,
 5. the Metropolis of the Country, by some called *Sins*.
 6. *Sarata*, 7. *Castoranguara*; these on the South side of
 the Line. But in this *Ptolemy* was mistaken; it being
 found by the more certain observations of our later
 Writers, that no part of *China* comes within 20 degrees
 of the *Equinoctial*; and is not capable of having any
 Towns or Cities of a Southern Latitude. Here was also
 a large Bay called *Sinarum Sins*; a Promontory named
Noisum, in the fourth degree of Northern Latitude; and
 another named *Sayurum*, lying under the *Equinox*.
 More than this of the Cities of the ancient *Sins*, I have
 nothing to say, which I defer to the Reader.

nothing to say, which I dare not do. But to behold them as they are presented to our view in the Modern *China*, it hath been said, that for number there are no fewer than 501 Cities; and those so uniformly built, so conformable to one another, that they differ not in form and fashion, but in quantity only. Much like the Cities of *Utopia*, mentioned by Sir Thomas More, *Idem situs omnibus; eadem, quantum per locum licet, virent facies*; so near resembling one another, that he who knoweth but one of them, may conjecture at all. And this is the manner of their building. Most of their Cities have the benefit of some navigable River, near which they stand: the waters whereof serve them both for Navigation, and domestic uses. Two great Streets crossing one another in the very midst, so broad, that ten horsemen may ride a breik in the narrowest of them; so freight, that a man fending in the middle, may fee either end; each end being shut up with a Gate of great strength and beauty; and those Gates fortified and strengthened with thick plates of Iron. Generally greater and more stately than those of *Europe*; but defective in that point of elegance, which the *Magnificent* Churches, and more sumptuous buildings for the dispatch of publick businesses, in these parts abound with. Their private houses for the most part are also low, and destitute of Porches. Windows, Galleries, the principal ornaments and graces of *Architecture*. Nor are their Cities built only for resort, or trade, but for strength and safety, environed with deep and broad ditches, the Walls of brick or stone, strong above belief, planted with Ordnance and Artillery in convenient places: and every night the Gates not only locked, but sealed; not to be opened till unsealed by the principal Magistrate. So like they are to one another, that we may say with *Ovid* on the like occasion;

————— *Facies non omnibus una,
Nec diversatamen, qualem decet esse sororum.* Which

Which I find thus Englished by *G. Sandys*.
 Amongst them all no two appear the same,
 Nor differed more than Sisters well became.

But not to rest our selves on this general Character, let us take more particular view of some of the principal. And in that list we find, 1. *Quinsay*, called *Sunnan* by the Natives, situate somewhat towards the South, on the Western borders of this Kingdom, where it conflicteth on *Cathay*, of this Town many things are reported beyond all belief, as namely, that it contained once in circuit hundred miles, and had in the middle of it a *Lake* of 30 miles compass; in which *Lake* were two goodly Islands, and in them two magnificent Palaces, adorned with all necessities, either for majesty, or convenience; in which are celebrated the publick Feasts, and the marriages of the better fort. The *Lake* nourished with divers Rivers, the chief being *Polyngan*, and *Cacacamaran*; on which *Rivers* 12000 Bridges are said to have lifted up their itately heads: and under whose immense Arches, great Ships with Sails spread abroad, and *top* and *top gallant*, might and did usually pass. It is also said to have had ten Market-places, each of them four miles asunder, and every one in form *quadrangular*, the sides thereof half a mile in length. Here were said also to be twelve Companies of Tradefolmen or Artizans, each Company having 12000 Shops, and in all a million and 600000 Families. But whatsoever it was in the former times, certain it is that at this time (if it hath at this time any being at all) partly on the removal of the Court from hence to *Cambalu* by the *Tartars*; and since to *Nanquin* and *Pekin* by the Princes of the House of *Hambu*, and partly the fury of Wars, and partly by the violence of Earthquakes, it hath lost no small part of her ancient beauty and renown. 2. *Yuguen*, famous for the abundance of Sugar there made. 3. *Nanquin*, seated 4 Leagues from the Sea, on the great River of *Kiang*, whereon ride for the most part no fewer than 10000 of the Kings Ships, besides such as belong to private men. The Town in compass 30 miles, being girt with three fair brick walls, having large and itately Gates. The streets in length two Leagues, wide and paved; the number of houses is about 200000; so that it may equal four of the fairest Cities of *Europe*. 4. *Pekin*, or *Pagnia*, in the middle of the Province fo named, (being one of the four Northern Provinces, which take up the whole breadth of this mighty Kingdom) where the King continually resideth; and that, either because the Air herof is more healthful and pleasant, than any of the other, or because it lieth near unto the *Tartars*, with whom the *Chinois* are in perpetual War: so that from hence the dangers which may by their Invasions happen unto the Country, may with more convenience be either prevented, or resisted. The City said to be inferior to *Nanquin* for bulk and beauty, but to exceed it in multitude of Inhabitants, Soldiers, and Magistrates, occasioned by the Kings abode. Environed on the South with two Walls, of fo great breadth, that twelve horsemen may run abreast upon them; on the North with one Wall only, but that is strong and vigilantly guarded, that they fear as little annoyance on that side as they do on the other. But the greatest Ornament hereof is the Royal Palace, compassed about with a triple Wall, the outwardmost of which would well environ a large City; within which space, besides the many Lodgings for *Eunuchs*, and other Courtiers, are Groves, Hills, Fountains, Rivers, and the like places of pleasure, larger in circuit, but not comparable for the Arts of *Architecture* to the Royal Palaces of *Europe*: First built by some of the *Tartar* Kings of this Country in imitation of the Royal Palace of *Xaindu*, mentioned in *Cathay*, honoured sometimes with the residence of the *Chams* themselves, which

as it gave unto the City the name of *Feng-tai*, that is to say, the Court or City of the King, in the Language of *China*; so gave it occasion unto some Writers to make this and *Cambala* the same, both names being of the same signification, though in divers Languages. 5. *Canton*, supposed to be the *Cattigara* of *Ptolemy*, by the Chinese called *Quamchee*, the seat of the *Metropolis* of Cities of this Country, but beautified with many Triumphant Arches, a Navigable River, large Streets, and many goodly Bridges. Fortified with deep Trenches, 83 Bulwarks, and lated in rich soil, both for Fowl and Cattle, that here are said to be eaten daily 6000 Hogs, and 10000 Ducks, besides proportionable quantity of other victuals. If this be one of the least of their *Metropolis*, what may we fancy of the greatest? A Town in which the *Portugals* drive a wealthy Trade, being permitted in the day-time to come within the City so far as might be excluded, and forced to find lodging in the Suburbs. By reason of which refrain they have settled their Mart at *Macao*, the Port-Town to this, where they have their Factor, and many Families; the Town being almost wholly peopled by them. 6. *Leatong*, the chief City of *Leatong*, (another of the four Northern Provinces) and the fifth Town taken by the Eastern *Tartars* in their attempts upon this Kingdom, by this door making themselves an entrance into all the rest. 7. *Ningwen*, made the *Metropolis* of *Leatong* after the taking of *Leatong* by the Eastern *Tartars*. 8. *Sigau*, or *Sungau*, the chief City of *Xenfi*, another of the four Northern Provinces, and honored sometimes with the Kings residence. 9. *Xaoking*, on the South side of the River *Chenlong*, one of the fairest Cities of *China*, so environed with sweet waters, as a man may contemplate its beauty, as rounding it in a Boat; consisting of large and fair Streets, paved on both sides with white square stones, and in the middle of them all runs a Navigable Channel whose fides are garlished with the like ornament; and of the same stone there is also built many fair Bridges, and Triumphant Arches; the Houses being all of the same stone also, which render it the nearest (though not the biggest) City in this mighty Kingdom. 1. *Szechuan*, about two days journey from the Sea, seated in Marishes like *Venice*, but more commodiously, because those Marishes are of fresh water; the streets and houses founded upon Piles of *Pine-tree*; with many Bridges, and conveniences for passage both by Land and Water. Well Traded, as the fittest Court for dispersion of Merchandise from all the other Ports of the Kingdom: by the multitude and frequency of Ships, almost denying Faith to the Eyes, which would think all the Ships of *China* to be here assembled. So infinitely rich, that the small Region whereof it is the Head, containing but eight Cities more, payeth 12 millions to the King of yearly income. 11. *Hanfsi*, or *Hanchen*, on the North side of the River *Chenlong*, out of which furnished with a Channell of great length and breadth, by which it trades into the Northern parts of this Kingdom; the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Chequan*, about two days journey from the Sea; in compals less than *Ninguen*, but better builded: no places in it taken up with Gardens, Orchards, or other pleasures; but all employed for Shops, Houses, and other Edifices. So beautified with *Triumphant Arches*, erected to the honour of deserving Magistrates, that in one Street there are 300 of great mals, of workmanship. The Temples magnificent and many; the bank-sides of the Channels watering every Street, beset with Trees of shade, and most excellent Fruits; and in the middle of the City a prospect high Mountain, which gives the Eye a gallant prospect into every Street. And not far off a pleasant Lake of great breadth and length, the banks whereof are beautified with Groves and Gardens, and the Water

which as they were pleading to the Victor, so they were not destructive to the vanquished. By means hereof it came to pass, that such a long communication in affairs of State, having passed between *China* and *Cathay* (those of *China* in old times holding it over part of the *Cathayans*, as the *Cathayans* in late times did over the *Chineses*) there grew a great resemblance between both Nations, in Manners, Conditions, Arts and Manufactures, as before is said, which circumstances layd together, may afford some reason why in some Writers, easily misled by such probabilities, *Norad* and *China* have been reckoned to be one and the same. Nor did the Empire of the *Chinois* extend in old times only over part of *Scythia*, but also over part of *Lidia*, and some of the *Oriental Islands*. But the Princes of the House of *Hombu*, finding their own Kingdom large enough to content their desires, abandoned all the Accessories and Out-parts of their Dominions: prompted thereto not only by their own moderation, but by some misfortunes which befel them. For as we find that the *Romans* having by the fury of two violent tempests, lost no fewer than 206 of their Ships and Gallies, resolved to abandon (and for a long time did forbear) the *Seas*, which had used them so unkindly. So the *Chinois* having received a great overthrow, and loss of 800 Ships, near unto *Zelus*, they freed all the Islands from obedience unto them, and contented themselves with the bounds which Nature had bestowed on them. And of their moderation herein we have a very rare example. For when the people of *Corca*, a small Island abutting on the Confines of *China*, were invaded by the *Japonites*, they submitted themselves unto the King of *China*; who having repulsed the enemy, and thereby freed his own Country from danger, presently re-delivers over unto the *Corcans*, their Town and Liberty. A rare fact of a contented people. Which whether it favoured of greater moderation or magnanimity, I am not able to determine. In this Family hath the Realm continued under 15 Kings, for the space of 266 years and upward, reckoning from *Hombu* unto *Bong*: who being the twelfth of this Line, succeeded his elder Brother, unfortunately slain with a fall from an Horse. Reported for a Prince of good disposition, great judgment, and a severe Judiciary. This *Bong* (otherwise called *Vanley*) began his Reign, Anno 1573. Governing this Kingdom in great prosperity and glory for the space of 40 years and upwards; when calling the Christian Subjects and the *Jesuites* their Converters to be hardly dealt with, and denying Justice to the *Eastern Tartars* for the many wrongs done them by his Prefects in the Province of *Leatong*, he drew that people into Arms, as if marked out for Executions of Divine displeasure. Stript by them in the year 1618. of a part of *Leatong*, and braved by their Forces within sight of *Peking*, he contracted some melancholic distempers, of which he died about two years after, leaving the Crown to his Son *Taichangus*, who having held it but four months, left it, and all the troubles of it to his Son *Theinibus*, a valiant Prince and fortunate against the *Tartars*, but of short continuance. For dying in the year 1627. he was succeeded in that Kingdom by his Brother *Zuchinius*, a Prince of contrary disposition, cruelly bent, a great Oppressor of his Subjects, and for these causes ill beloved; yet they continued in obedience (though for fear rather of the *Tartars*, than for love of him) until the year 1640. or thereabouts. At what time the people in many places oppressed with Taxes, and in the Northern parts with Famine, arose in 8 Companies of Armies, which growing wanton by success, and warring upon one another, they are at last reduced under two chief Leaders, that is to say, *Lycungus* and *Chungchinchungus*.

These two being come to an agreement took their several ways, the last of them falling into *Suchuen*, whose villanies and deserved destruction we have there related. *Lycungus* the more fortunate villain, in the year 1641. beieged *Chifang* the chief City of the Province of *Honnu*, a place of great strength, but far greater riches, on the ruin whereof by the Kings improvidence, and his subduing the whole Province of *Xenfi*, he took to himself the Title of King, and would be called *Lycungus* the *Prosperous*; and not long after easing the people of the Taxes which the avaritious King had imposed upon them, putting the Tax-masters to death, and gaining upon all sorts of men by his courteous usage, he took unto himself the name of Emperor. *Zuchinius* succeeds his Brother, hindered by Factions in the Court, from sending seasonable Forces against the Rebels, who pulling over the great River *Croesus* without any resistance prevailed in all places where they came, even to the taking of the great City of *Peking*, and the Palace Royal; at the hearing whereof, the Emperor seeing no way to escape their hands, hanged himself in his own Orchard, Anno 1644. his example therein followed by the Emperors and his principal servants. The body of the Emperor cut in pieces, his two younger Sons beheaded, the principal Magistrates murdered, and that great City sacked by command of the Victor. Forced to remove back again to *Xenfi* by *Ulanquius* Commander of the Army in *Leatong*, who called in the *Tartars* to revenge those Outrages, the Rebels taking with them all the Wealth and Treasure which the Emperors of the *Tamngian* Family had amassed together in the space of 260 years and upwards. *Zungus* the King of the *Tartars* having thus got the City of *Peking*, died presently after, leaving his Son at nine years old to succeed him in that glorious fortune. By him commended to the care and protection of Uncles, who very faithfully discharged the trust reposed in them; infinite numbers of *Tartars* thronging into *China* upon this occasion, and those not only of the Eastern but the Western Nations.

By these the Infant-King was proclaimed Emperor of *China*, by the name of *Xauchibus*, styling the new Imperial Family by the name of *Tailing*, the eldest of the Uncles whom the *Tartars* called *Amavangus*, having the chief conduct of Affairs.

Ulanquius by the *Tartars* not long after is declared King of *Xenfi*, out of which he shortly drove the Rebels, and possessed himself of it; *Lycungus* being either killed in the fight, or else otherwise lost. *Huanguangus* Nephew to *Vanley*, and Cousin German to *Zuchinius*, is opposed herein by one that pretended himself to be the eldest Son of *Zuchinius*; which division gave the *Tartars* a notable victory over all their Forces, and the great City of *Nanquin* in reward thereof.

The new Emperor being shortly after betrayed into the hands of the *Tartars* is by them hanged on the Walls of *Peking*; which death the *Tartars* count most noble. The pretended Son of *Zuchinius* discovered, and served in the same fate also. And though *Loangus* first, and afterwards *Jungly*, and *Lu. Regulus*, were chosen and declared Emperors by their several parties, Anno 1648. yet nothing could prevail against the fortune of the *Tartars*, *Loangus* being forced to put himself into their power, *Jungly* to fly into the Mountains, and *Lu. Regulus* to secure himself in the Isle of *Chensan*.

What hath succeeded since that year, future times will show.

The Government of this Kingdom is merely tyrannical; there being no other Lord but the King, no Title of dignity or nobility ever known amongst them; nor Toll or Duty

Duty paid unto any but to him: the younger Princes of the blood being maintained by *Stipends*, and *annuities* *Penfions*, large enough to support their Trains, but without any Lands or *Tenants*, for fear of drawing on them any great dependencies. The King alone is the general Landlord, and him the Subjects do not only reverence as a Prince, but adore like a God. For in the chief City of every Province, they have the Kings portraiture made of Gold, which is always covered with a Veil: and at every New-moon, the Magistrate and other inferior Officers use to kneel before it, as if it were the King himself. By these and other Artifices of like contrivement the Common people are kept in such awe and fear, that they are rather Slaves than Subjects: calling their King the *Lamp of the World*, and *Son of the everlasting Sun*, without whose light they were able to see nothing.

In every Province, except *Pequin* and *Talenchia* only, he hath his Deputies or *Vice-Roy*s, maintained by liberal stipends from the publick Treasury: but those he governeth by himself. Some Laws they have, and those affirmed to have been written 2000 years since, as is like enough they were. So frongly do they favour of the ignorance and *Abjections* of the darkest times: the manner of life by them allowed, most *offensive* and *shameless*; their *Idolatries* most gross and palpable; their *Exorcisms* ridiculous, and the profusions of their *Virgins* most abominable; and the variety of sensual prophanations, to an illuminated mind most base and contemptible. In a word, nothing commendable in their course of life (notwithstanding the brags which they make of themselves) but their Arts and Industry.

The Forces which this King is able to draw into the Field must needs be infinite, considering that incredible number of Subjects under his command. For whereas *France* is thought to contain 15 millions of people, *Italy* with the Isles, as many; *Germany*, with the *Switzers* and *Belgick* Provinces, about that proportion; *Spain* not above seven millions; and the Kingdom of *England* about four: this Country only is computed at 70 millions; which is more by 15 millions than all together. Proportionably his Levies must be so much greater, than can be ordinarily raised out of those Countries. But because it may be thought that his Subjects, though more in number, may be less trained to the wars than those of *Europe*; the contrary is affirmed by such as have taken an estimate of the Forces, which every Province is bound to entertain in continual readines. And by that estimate it appeareth, that in the year 1557. (though a time of peace) there were dispersed in the fifteen Provinces of this Realm, to the number of five millions, 845,500 Foot, and 948,500 Horse. Which notwithstanding it may be said, and not unjustly, that he is able to bring into the field, amongst such multitudes of men, but few good Soldiers, the people being generally unwilke, and of no great courage, as was before observed of them in that general Character. Nor is he less powerful for *Sea-services*, having continually great *Fleets* for the guard of his Coasts, in continual attendance, and many more ready to set out when there is occasion: inasmuch that the *Chinois* use to say in the way of a Proverb, That their King is able to make a Bridg of Ships from *China* to *Malacca*, which are 500 Leagues asunder. Some of these Ships (whereof the King hath above a thousand of his own, besides those of his Subjects) of great magnificence and beauty: the Officers and Soldiers in all which are exceedingly well paid, and rewarded unwarily to their merits. And as this King is able to raise greater forces than any, from his own Estates; so doth he also do *facto* do it, when the urgency of his affairs doth require it of him: his ordinary flint being 300000 Foot, and 200000 Horse,

without which compleat number (not only in the *mugger-rolls*, but in bodies of men) he vouchsafes not to go into the field.

Unwarily unto these great Levies of men, must be his *Revenue*: which they who have travelled in this search, if they tell us true, and do not build upon an hope of not being confuted, (as for my part I fear they do) affirm to be 123 millions of Crowns, answered unto him out of the profits of the *Mines* of Gold, Silver, and other Metals: the *taxes* of all commodities which the Earth brings forth; the *tolls* imposed on that unspeakable quantity of Merchandise, which passeth on so many navigable Rivers from one Town to another; the *Customs* taken of all those rich wares which are brought into *Europe*, and the *Gabel* laid on Salt in all parts of his Kingdom. Out of which sum, the payment of his Fleet discharged, the entertainment of his Soldiers satisfied, and his Court decayed, there remaineth 40 millions of Crowns *de claro* to be disposed of, either in his treasury, or private pleasures, or the works of magnificence and ostentation.

And thus far also according to the general current of received opinions have I followed the descriptions and affairs of *China*, as a distinct Country from *Cathay*; not ignorant that there are many probable reasons which might incline us to believe them to be one and the same; for first it is alledged in favour of this opinion that it is neither new nor strange, for one and the same Country, to be called by divers names, according to the languages and fancies of several Nations; that country which we call *Germany*, being by the Natives called *Daniel-Land*, not long since known most commonly by the name of *Almaine*; that part of *Britain* which we call *Wales*, being by the French called *Galler*, and *Cambria* by the *Latine* Writers; those mountainous people which the *Kemans* know by the name of *Blacai*, being by some of our Northern *Latinites* called *Confederati Gotti*, *Gampi Camici* by *Amianus Marcellinus*, *Graumpunier* by the neighbouring *Dutch*, and finally *Grisons* by the French, which four last names do carry all the same sense and signification, though in different words; that *China* it self, is by the Natives called *Tschino*, *Tzynn* by the *Arabians*, *Mangi* by *Paulus Venetus*, and by the neighbouring Nations *Sanglei*; that as it cannot be inferred from the like diversity of appellations that *Almain*, *Germany*, and *Dutch-Land*, make three several Countries, (*Sic fide ceteris*) so neither can it be concluded on the same grounds that *China* and *Cathay* make two several Empires. In the next place it is alledged that since by later Voyages and Navigations, this mighty Kingdom hath been discovered and made known unto us of *Europe* by the name of *China*, the name and Empire of *Cathay* hath grown out of knowledge. For proof whereof they bring in the *Itinerary* of *Benedictus a Goes*, a *Jesuite* who in the year 1605. crossing from the Northeast parts of *Perfia* to the Realm of *China*, and naming all the several Countries and Towns of any note which lay in his way, makes no mention of any such Country as *Cathay*; nor any such Prince as the Great *Cham* thereof: telling us also that *Martin Martinus*, who had lived long in *China*, in his Books entitled *Bellum Tartaricum*, comprehendeth all the Countries betwixt *China* and Mount *Inas*, under the general Name and Notion of Western *Tartars*, nor taking notice of any such Country as *Cathay*; nor of any greater Prince amongst them, than the King of *Tangut*; and that *Ramusius* in his notes on *Paulus Venetus*, reporteth some conference which he had with *Chagginemet* a *Persian* Merchant, who told him that he had been *Campion* and *Succor* Cities of *Cathay*, in the reign of *Demercan*, which must be understood of *C. hay*

in the general Notion, as it comprehendeth all the *Tartari* in Countries beyond *Imus*, it being well known that *Campius* and *Succin* are two Cities of *Tangut*, and not of the proper *Cathay* or *Cabay* specially called. In the third rank of proofs they instance in the similitudes or resemblances betwixt both Countries, and both People, which are so great & visible in the temperature of Air, fertility of Soyl, and pleasantness of Situation, in Customs, in Ingenuity, Arts and Manufactures, as may be thought to carry an Identity, or sameness with them; which sameness or Identity they do also find in *Pequin* the chief City of *China*, and *Cambala*, the supposed chief City of *Cathay*, being two words of the same sense and signification, though of divers sounds; for *Pequin* signifieth the Court or City of the King in the *Chinian* Language, and *Cambala* signifieth the Court or City of the *Chan*, in the Language of *Tartary*. The like they also have observed of the Royal Palaces, adjoining to the said two Cities, so like in the vast greatness and extent of the outer Walls, the Parks and Forests intermingled, the magnificent form and structure of the inner Palaces, with all the rest of the particulars before-recited, that a man might very well conclude them to be one and the same, adding withal that such an immense, and unparalleled work, as the great *Chan's* Palace called *Xaindu*, must needs require more hands and a longer time, than the great *Chans* (considering their continual wars, and little intervals of leisure) could bestow upon it. But their four head-proofs, which seem indeed to be the strongest, they derive first from the Testimony of *Benedict a Goer* above-mentioned, who without taking notice of any such Country as *Cathay*, in so long a journey, telleth us that at *Cader* a City of the Kingdom of *Cascar*, and not far from *China*, he was first informed that *Cathay* and *China* were the same, 2ly. From the Testimony of an old *Mahometan* Pilgrim, who returning from *Mecca* by *Labor* (the Royal Seat and City of the great *Mongul*) affirmed there that he had lived long in *Cambala*, the chief City of *Cathay*, which Kingdom had in it one thousand and fifty Cities, the King thereof being a very mighty Prince, and having a strength of 400 Elephants brought thither from *Milaca* and *Pegu*, and that much Merchandize was brought into the Country by Sea: which if it be not meant of *China* (to which the story may agree in all particulars) must needs be one of the loudest lies that ever came from the mouth of a *Mahometan*, or a *Pilgrim* either, our Geographers finding very few Cities or Towns of note in *Cathay* specially so called, no access thither by Sea for any Merchandize, nor any way to bring those Elephants from *Pegu* and *Malaca*, whence the Pilgrim dreamt of, 3ly. A clearer Testimony of some other *Mahometans* repairing to *Pequin* every fifth year, either as Merchants or Embassadors, or as both together; by whom the Jesuits there living were informed, that in the dominions of the *Persian*, and the great *Mongul*, from whence they came, the Kingdom of *China* was called by no other name, than by that of *Cathay*, they knowing no other Country of that name, but *China* only. And 4ly. as from the allowance of *Pantogia*, another *Jesuite*, who in his Letters dated from *Pequin* much blamed our ordinary Maps for placing *Cathay* next to *China*, whereas (saith he) *China* or *Sinai* is *Cathay* as this *Pequin* where we now are is the City of *Cambala*, which two last evidences coming from the Pen of one who had lived many years in *China*, and not conducting any way to the advancement of the *Catholic* cause, must needs be thought to carry some great credit and authority with them.

These reasons if they be of force and moment to the point in hand, we must then act *Pentelope's* part unraveling all the Web which before was woven, *Atque iterum*

in *lunas omne redidit opus*, in the Poets Language; which that we may the better do, and with as little defacements to the whole piece as possibly we can, I shall thus proceed. First then it is to be conceived that *Cathay* specially so called, was an aggregate body, containing many several Kingdoms, and distinct Estates, though Homagers to the Kings of *Cathay*, or dependents on them: as anciently in the Realm of *France* besides the Kings of *France* themselves, there was a King of *Burgundy*, a King of *Metz*, a King of *Soissons*, a King of *Orleans*; and after that a Duke of *Normandy*, a Duke of *Bretagne*, a Duke of *Aquitain*, an Earle of *Campanie*, an Earle of *Thoulouze*, all absolute and uncontrollable in their own Estates. And then the Kingdom of *Tangut*, which he placed in the Southern parts of *Altay*, must be made one of the Kingdoms of *Cathay*; and *Demerean*, whom we ranked in the Catalogue of the *Chans* of *Tartary*, must be brought a peg lower, and looked on as a King of *Tangut* only, and no more than so. 2ly. It must be taken for granted, that the *Tartars* having conquered the Realm of *Cathay*, and afterwards, by the help of that people, subdued *China* also, caused all the Northern parts of *China* to be called *Cathay*, as being in the same Latitude and Parallels with it, and much of the same nature and complexion, both for Soyl and Air; giving unto the Southern parts (which was the true and proper Country of the *Sin*) the name of *Mangi*, transferred afterwards by some Authors to the Country generally; and having thus extended the Name and Territory of *Cathay*, the first foundation of their greatness, they fixed their Royal Seat in the City of *Pequin*, which by a new *Tartarian* name (but of the same sense and signification) was from thence called *Cambala*. Thus in the first place the French Kings of the *Caroline* Family, communicated the name of *France* (East *France* it was most commonly called) to the greatest part of *Germany*, then conquered by them; the *Castilians* of *Spain* extended the name of *Castile* on every side, as they got ground upon the *Moors*, till it became the largest Province of any one name in all that Continent; and *Roger* Earl of *Sicily*, having conquered the Eastern parts of *Italy* (which now make up the Kingdom of *Naples*) commanded it to be called the further *Sicily* and himself to be crowned King of both, by the name of King of both the *Sicilies*. And in the second place, the Dukes of *Zweibrucken* in high *Germany* are by thy French called *Dukes De Deux ponts*, by the late *Latine* Writers *Duces Bipontani*, all in the same sense and signification; the Town of *Sherzogen Bofch* is by the French called *Bois le Duc* by the *Latine* Writers *Sylva Ducis*; and here at home the Military Towns or Stations of *Leicester*, *Colonia*, *Presidium*, *ad Lapidem*, and *Fortus Magnus* were turned by the conquering Saxons (the former significations being still retained) into *Bedford*, *Colchester*, *Warwick*, *Stonham*, and *Portsmouth*, commonly now called *Portsmouth*, *Castrum Alatum* into *Edinburgh* by the *Picts* or unconquered *Britains*. 3ly. We may take it for a truth unquestioned, that *Hombu* having expelled the *Tartars* out of *Mangi*, or the Southern parts, and fixed the Royal Seat at *Nanguin*, on the South side of the River *Kiang* (though paying both fine and tribute to victorious *Tamerlane*) did afterwards on *Tamerlane's* engagements beyond the Mountains and the Cantonizing of that great Empire amongst his Children, expell them out of the North parts also; his Successors thereupon removing the Court to *Pequin* (from henceforth known again by its true, proper, and *Chinian* name) the better to attend the motion of that dangerous Enemy. *Jerusalem*, commanded to be called *Elir* by the Emperor *Adrian*, and *London* named *Augusta Triumphantis* by some of the *Roman* Emperours; returned to their old

names

names again, as soon as that authority failed which imposed the new. And 4ly. as from this time forwards the Northern parts of *China* might still retain the name of *Cathay*, and being most traded by the *Persian* and *Indian* Merchants, might be best known by that name in their several Countries: so by dividing this great Empire into so many parts, removing the Imperial Seat to *Samerand*, on the other side of the Mountains, erecting many new Estates out of the ancient Prefectures, and Governments of *Cathay* it self, and parceling the remainder of it between the Kings of *Tangut*, *Cascar*, and such other Princes of the *Tartars*, as were not wanting to themselves in those opportunities, the true *Cathay* might lose

that name by little and little, which formerly it had communicated to those parts of *China*. Thus the *Burgundians*, *Lombards*, *Vandals*, *Hungars*, lost those names at home, in their ancient and native habitations, which still remain unto those Countries that were conquered by them. Their reasons and considerations I willingly submit to the Readers Judgment, being my self so great a *Sceprik* in this point that I dare determine nothing positively on either side. It is enough that I have laid the cards open without partiality, or bysling on either hand, before the Jurors; let them give up their verdict in it as they like the evidence.

OF INDIA.

INDIA is bounded on the East with the Oriental Ocean, and some part of *China*, or as some others say, with a great Country called *Mange* (not much known unto us of *Europe*) interjected betwixt it and *China*; on the West, with the *Persian* Mount; on the North, with some branches of *Tamoor*, which divideth it from *Tartary*; and on the South, with the *Indian* Ocean. So called from the River *Indus*, the nearest of esteem and note in all the Country, towards these parts of the world.

It is conceived to be the largest Country, of any one name in the world, except *China* and *Tartaria*; affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, to be of such a great extent on the Seacoasts of it, that it was as much as a ship could sail in 40 days. Extended from 106, to 159 degrees of Longitude and from the *Equator* to the 44th degree of Northern Latitude. By which account it lieth from the beginning of the first, to the end of the sixth *China*: the longest Summers-day in the Southern parts being 12 hours only, and in the parts most North, 15 hours and a half.

Concerning the monstrous Fables which the Ages foregoing have delivered to us of this Country, give me leave to say, that as the Poets used of old to fill up the times of which they were ignorant, with strange Fictions, and prodigious *Metamorphoses*; or as our modern Geographers, in the Maps of the World, fill up those unknown parts thereof, of which they can give us no certain description with strange Pictures and uncouth shapes of Beasts and Trees, so also the Writers in former Ages have filled the more remote Countries, of which they knew little, with such incredible and incredible relations. Hence there have been attributed to this *India*, the Fables of men with dogs heads, of men with one leg only, yet of great swiftness; of such as live by the feet of men that had but one eye, and that in their foreheads; and of others, whose ears did reach unto the ground. It is reported also that this people by eating a Dragons heart and liver, attain to the understanding of the languages of beasts; that they can make themselves, when they list, invisible; and that they have two tubs, whereof the one opened yields wind, the other rain, and the like. But these relations, and the rest of this strain, I doubt not but the under-

standing Reader knoweth how to judge of, and what to believe. For my part I am of the mind with *Carvius*, *Plura equidem transcribo quam credo; nec enim affirmare ausus sum quia dubito, nec subducere sustinere quia accipio*: I may perhaps relate some things which I do not credit, but shall not let them pass without some censures, that so I may neither impose any thing on the Reader's belief, nor defraud him of any thing conducing to his contentation.

The Country (to report no more of it than it doth deserve) enjoyeth an exact temperature of the air, two Summers, (or one as long as two) and a double increase, blest with all things which are either necessary to the life of man, or of convenience and delight; particularly with Mines of Gold and Silver, and with precious Stones; with Spices of all sorts, and Clivets; with the best medicinal Drugs; Metals of all kinds, except *Copper* and *Lead*; abundance of all sorts of Cattell, except Horses. Somewhat defective also in Wheat and Vines, that so this Country might be beholding unto others, as well as others to this. Famed also for abundance of Camels, Apes, Dragons, Serpents, *Rhinoceros*, Elephants, These last more favouring of reason & humane ingenuity, or else more tractable and docile, than any brute creature whatsoever. Of this we have a fair instance in the Stories of the Acts of *Alexander*. The Elephant which King *Porus* lay upon, finding his Matter strong and luffy, rushed boldly into the thickest of the Enemies Army: but when he once perceived him to be faint and weary, he withdrew himself out of the Battel, kneeled down and into his Trunk received all the Arrows which were directed at his Matter. The greatness of the Creature makes it yet more admirable that either he should have soul enough of his own, to aduate so vast a body; or being of such strength and bigness, should submit himself to the instructions of another; some of these *Indian* Elephants, as *Albians* hath affirmed, being nine Cubits high, and as many long; and in breadth or thickness about five Cubits. Nor doth the Sea afford less plenty or variety, than we find on shore: yielding abundance of the richest and fairest Pearls, whose fibres of silk, and amongst them the Whale or great *Leviathan*; exceeding the proportion of that Land-monster the Elephant. For though the ordinary dimension of the Whale be but 40,

Zzz z

Cubits

Cubits in length, and eight in thickness: yet *Nearchus* in *Arrianus* is said to have measured one, in these *Indian Seas*, which was of the length of 50 Cubits, and of breadth proportionable: not to say any thing of that incredible report of *Pliny*, who speaketh of some *Indian Whales*, which were nine hundred and threecore foot, or four Acres long.

The people are of five sorts, and as many Religions; that is to say the Natural *Indians*, derived from the Original Inhabitants of it. 2th *Moors*, or *Arabians*, who more than two hundred years ago, possessed themselves of some Sea Towns, driving the Natives up higher into the Country. 3th *Jews*, scattered and dispersed (as in other places) into all parts of it. 4th *Tatars*, in those Parts and Provinces which are under the Great *Mongul*. And 5th *Portuguez*, who have many Colonies and *Factories* in the Ports and Islands, but brag as if they had made a conquest of all the Country. Which notwithstanding, considering that the natural *Indians* are by far the greatest number, we must relate to them only in the Character which is made of this people. Affirmed to be tall of stature, strong of body, and of complexion inclining to that of the *Negroes*: of manners civil and ingenious, free from fraud in their dealings, and exact keepers of their words. The common sort but meanly clad, for the most part naked, but with no more covering than to hide their shame. But those of greater Estates and Fortunes (as they have amongst them many Ancient and Noble Families) observe a Majesty in both Sexes, both in their Attendants and Apparrel, sweetening the last with Oyls, and Perfumes, and adorning themselves with Jewels, Pearls, and other Ornaments befitting. They eat no flesh, but live on Barley, Rice, Milk, Honey and other things without life.

The Women not of much fairer complexion than the men, yet of lovely countenances, wear their hair long and loose, but covered with a thin Veil of *Calico Laven*. Their ears hung with many rings, so great and heavy, that they are torn, and stretched to much disproportion; their noses also ringed, and beaming with Jewels according to their estate and quality. Servilely obsequious to their husbands, whose affections they divide amongst them without jar or jealousy: the men allowed here, as in all the East, the use of many wives, whom they buy of their Parents for a yoke of Oxen; and may marry as often as they list. In which they have too great a privilege above the women, who after the decease of their common husband, do either burn in the same flame with him, or else are forced to doom themselves to perpetual Widowhood. But of this we may speak more hereafter, when we come to the particulars.

The Christian Faith was first planted in these Countries by St. Thomas, from whom the remainders of Christianity take denomination; and unto whom the Records and Monuments of that Church do ascribe their conversion. For in one of their *Breviaries* written in the Chaldean Tongue, and translated into Latine by Father *John Maria Campanin* a Jesuite, we find it thus, Per D. Thomam evangelii error Idolatriam Indis, &c. i. e. by St. Thomas the errors of Idolatry vanished out of the *Indies*; by St. Thomas, they received the sacrament of Baptisme, and the Adoption of Sons; by St. Thomas, they believed and confessed the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost; by St. Thomas, they kept the Faith received of one God; And finally, by St. Thomas, the splendor of saving Doctrine did appear to all *India*. His body, as they say, is entombed in the City of *Maliapar*, upon the Coast of *Choromandel*; the truth of which tradition I dispute not here. But this Plantation of the Gospel by the hand of St. Thomas, was not universal over all the Country, but

in some Parts and Provinces only: or else was forced to give ground a while to prevailing Heathenism. For in the Reign of *Constantine*, we read how the *Indians* living on the further side of the River *Ganges* (for I understand the *Indi interiores* of my Author) were converted to the Faith by the Ministry of one *Eumenius*, of the City of *Tyre*; who having spent the greatest part of his time amongst them, was employed in that service, and consecrated the first Bishop (for those Churches) by the great *Alexandus* of *Alexandria*. But being the foundation of this building was laid by St. Thomas, the remainder of *Christians* here being, ascribe the whole work to him; called therefore *Christians* of St. Thomas. Governed originally by their own Bishops, subordinate to an Archbishop of their own also, residing at *Guagame* fifteen miles from *Cochin*, one of the chief Cities of this Country; who for a long time acknowledged obedience to the Patriarch of *Musul*, by the name of the Patriarch of *Babylon*, as by these *Christians* of *India* he is still termed. The number of the *Christians* computed at 15 or 16 thousand families; or at 70000 persons in the account of others; inhabiting for the most part in that large tract of ground, which beginning at the out-lets of *Indus* and *Ganges*, stretcheth unto the Cape or Promontory called Cape *Comari*. The Points wherein they differed from the Church of *Rome*, 1. Their administering the Sacrament of the Eucharist in bread seasoned with salt; 2. Administering in both kinds, but using instead of Wine (which is scarce, or not at all to be had in this Country) the juice of Raisins softened in water over night, and so pressed forth; 3. Not baptizing Children until 40 days old except it be in danger of death; 4. Permitting no images in their Churches, but that of the Cross; 5. Allowing one marriage to their Priests, but debarring the second; 6. In painting God with 3 heads on one body to denote the Trinity; 7. Denying the life of *extremus Unctionis*; And 8. not acknowledging the Popes Supremacy; but besides these remainders of those ancient *Christians*, there are some others now of late of a new Plantation, by the pains and travel of the *Jesuits*, though not with such success here, as they found in *China*; many of the Inhabitants, partly by the diligence of the *Arabians*, and partly by the Power of the great *Mongul*, having embraced *Mahometanism*; and being consequently less inclinable to admit the Gospel, than when they were in the condition of their natural *Gentilism*. Yet have they made such good progress in it, that *Ezra* the *Mongul*, not only founded a fair Church for the use of the *Christians* in the City of *Agra* (the Regal City of that Empire) but committed to the care of the *Jesuits* the Education of two Princes of the Regal Family. And possibly they might have made a great increase of *Christians* before this time, had they not been opposed therein by Sultan *Curroon*, a bitter Enemy to their proceeding in the Reign of his Father, and no great favourer of them since. Inasmuch that hearing a *Jesuite*, called *Francisco Crois*, report unto his Father how miraculously a wooden Cross of his had escaped the fire, he was very urgent with his Father to have a great fire presently made, and the same Cross to be thrown into it, upon these conditions, that if the Cross consumed not, his Father and himself would become *Christians*; but if it did, the *Jesuite* should be burned in the same fire with it. A fiery trial which the poor *Jesuite* had much ado to put off, and preserve his credit. Howsoever by their practicing amongst the old *Christians* they have gained one point of very great consequence and importance to the Church of *Rome*. For in the year 1599. by the solicitation of the *Jesuits* and others, the *Indian Christians* renounced their obedience to the Patriarch of *Musul*, and submitted their Churches

Churches to the Jurisdiction of the Pope of *Rome*, in a National Synod held at *Liamper*, not far from *Adilaper*, by the Arch-bishop of *Coast* the Primate of the *Portugels* in those Parts) not only rejecting all opinions contrary to the Roman Tenets, but delivering all their Books and Liturgies to be altered and refined by the said Archbishop, according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*, which was done accordingly.

But these comparatively to the rest, come not to a handful; the main Body of the People wallowing in their *Gentilism*, and still retaining many of those ancient Customs, which they used of old: as viz. 1. Not knowing their Wives after they had born them two children: Nor keeping them, if after five years cohabitation they can raise no issue by them, but then exchanging them for others: 2. Rewarding none for any military exploit, if they bring not with them in their hands the head of an Enemy: 4. Killing their Friends, before they were withered or decayed by Age, or Sickness. To these they have since added others of a later invention, perhaps more barbarous; of which we may have opportunity to speak anon. Their Priests or Learned men in the time of old were called *Brachmans* from one *Brachman*, the precriber of their Rites and Laws, by whom instructed in the Rudiments of their Philosophy; some of which, from their going naked, had the name of *Gymnosophists*; who were to them as the *Chaldei* to the *Affrians*, the *Magi* to the *Perfians*, and the *Druides* to the ancient *Britains*. Had in great Reverence by the People, and living for the most part an austere and solitary life, in Caves, and Deserts, feeding on herbs, poorly apparelled, and for a time abstaining from all carnal pleasures; but that time past, they may indulge themselves more liberty, and admit the company of women. Others of them live together with the common people, as being their ordinary Priests. Of these, the great *Alexander*, when he was in this Country surprized ten, one of them called by the name of *Calanus*, with whom he had a great deal of communication: propounding to him many strange questions, and receiving back to many of them; (as himself confessed) some not unsatisfying, though strange answers. To these *Gymnosophists*, or *Brachmans*, the *Bramines* do now succeed, both in place and authority; but differ from them most extremely in point of Learning, and the civilities of their lives: these *Bramines* being the most impure, libidinous, and sensual beasts in all the Country; privileged with the first nights lodging of every Bride, which when sated with their filthy lust, they sell, or traffick with, to strangers, serving as Stallions to old men, and as *Panders* to young; so fleshed in wickedness, and ignorant of all good Letters, that they have nothing of a man but the voice and shape. *Mahometanism* is also entertained in a great part of the Country; first brought in by the *Tartars*; and neighbouring *Perfians*, unto whom conterminous; but much increased by the Victories of the great *Mongul*: who being originally a *Tartar*, and of that Religion; hath caused it to be propagated in most Parts of his large Dominions.

Mountains of most note in it, besides *Caucasus*, and some other of the branches of *Taurus*, or *Ararat*, common to this, and the *Tartarian* and *Perfian* Empires, 1. *Sardanis*, full of Mines of those precious Stones which are called after the name of the Mountain. 2. *Vindius*, 3. *Bittigo*, 4. *Adisatras*, 5. Those called *Apocpi*, and 9. Those named *Orodii*. And on the further side of *Ganges*, 7. *Bopyrrhus*, 8. *Mendarius*, 9. Those called *Danush*, and 10. *Sanambius*; part of this last extending also unto *China*. All of them very fruitful in the production of Mines, and Rivers, as will appear by looking over the particulars when we come unto them.

But the Mountain of chief note of all, is that which *Ptolemy* called *Butico*, and is now named *Comari*; the Southern Part of the great Mountain *Imaus* spoken of before, extended from Mount *Caucasus*, where it crooketh the *Taurus* in right Angles, to Cape *Comari*, a known Promontory of *Indus*, or the latter *Indus*; (which it divideth into East and West) for the space of 400 Leagues and upwards. Conceived by *Ptolemy*, a Learned Writer, to be that Mount *Seiphar*, mention whereof is made in the tenth of *Genesis*, where it is said to be the utmost Eastern limit of the Sons of *Jokan*, Gen. 10. 30. With probability enough, for ought I can see; the Sons of *Jokan* being settled in these Parts of *India*, and the Provinces of the *Perfian* Empire which lie nearest to them. And so far *Stephanus* doth concur with *Ptolemy*, as to affirm of this Mount *Seiphar*, that it is *Mont India*, an *Indian* Mountain: both of which grounding on St. Hieron, who expressly faith, *Sephara* *Montis Orientis* in *India*, *juxta quam habitaverunt filii Joctan*, i. e. That *Seiphar*, or *Sophar*, is the name of a Mountain of the East in *India*; near to which dwelt the Sons of *Jokan*. More probably, without doubt, than that we should transfer it into *America*, as I see some do, and make it there to be the great Mountain of the *Andes*; which runneth the whole length of *Peru*, from one end to the other, and thence, as some will have it, to the Straits of *Magellan*. Which should we grant, we must not look for *Jokan*, or the Sons of *Jokan*, either in *Arabia Felix*, where *Bacharus* placeth them; nor in the Eastern Parts of *Asia*, where most probably they may be found; but we must cross the vast Oriental Ocean, and look for them in a place where they never were; besides, that granting this for true, we must allow *America* to have been known in the time of *Moses*, which no Author that I ever met with, did so much as dream of.

Rivers of most note are, 1. *Indus*, which ariseth out of that part of *Taurus*, which the Ancients called *Pareopamisus*, the Moderns, *Nangroet*; and having received into it 19 other Rivers, after a course of 500 miles, falleth into the Ocean at seven Months, that is to say, 1. *Sagapara*, being the most Western; 2. *Sinhu*, 3. *Aureum*, 4. *Cariphi*, 5. *Sappara*, 6. *Sabalasis*, 7. *Lombar*, the most Eastward. But five of those being choaked with Sands, or drawn into the neighbouring Channels, there now remains but only two: A River famous in Records and ancient Stories, for giving name unto the Country and that to celebrated voyage of *Alexander*, who failed down it towards the *Indian Ocean*: the voyage holding above five months, of which there is said to have passed no day wherein he failed not 15 miles, or 600 Furlongs. 2. *Ganges*, which riseth, as some say, from the Mountain *Imaus*, right upon it, and falling headlong down the Rocks, is first collected into a Lake or Pool, (supposed by others for the fountain and original of it) whence with a gentler pace it passeth towards the Ocean; taking in by the way, as is said by *Pliny*, 30 navigable Rivers. In the narrowest place of eight miles breadth, in the broadest 20, seldom so shallow but that the depth thereof is 100 fathoms, or 20 Geometrical paces. Parted into five great Channels it falleth at last into the Sea; the first of which most towards the West, is called *Cambulium*, 2. *Magnum*, 3. *Conceyebius*, 4. *Pseudostomum*, and 5. that which lieth furthest towards the East, called *Autobis*. This River erroneously supposed to be that *Pisum* which watered *Paradise*: and to encrease the reputation of the error, we find it countenanced by *Josephus*, and other no less eminent names; and also backed by some traditions of the people which inhabit near it. By whom it is affirmed, that one of the *Bengalan Kings* sent men up the River, who came

at last to a pleasant place, blest with a fragrant Earth, sweet air, and quiet waters; beyond which they could go no further. The truth and reality whereof doth so poffess them, that at the mouth of this River called *Ganges*, such as are weary of this world use to cast themselves into the Current, and are presently devoured by a Fish, called *Sca-de-ga*, by whom they hope to find a quick passage to *Paradise*. The occasion of which error among the Ancients, proceeded from those words of the Scripture, in which it is affirmed of *Pisón*, that it compassed the Land of *Hevilath*: which granting that it did, inferreth not that either this River must be *Pisón*, or that *India* is intended by that *Hevilath*. For besides *Hevilath* the Son of *Jachin*, planted in some part of *India*, there was another *Hevilath* the Son of *Chus*, settled in the Land of *Hevilath* or *Confiana*, not far from *Babylon*: this last indeed watered by the River *Pisón*, and the first by *Ganges*; too far asunder, and divided by too many Nations, to be taken or mistaken one for another. But no less famous, because none of those which neighboured the Garden of *Eden*, perhaps of greater fame than any of those which did. For this River do the superstitious *Indians* make their solemn Pilgrimages, vainly conceiving that they shall be sure of their Eternity, if at the time of their death they may drink of this water. To the overflowings of this River do the people ascribe the fertility of the Countries adjoining, as the *Egyptians* do to *Nilus*. And finally, by this River was the whole Country anciently, and at this present is, divided into two main parts, (each subdivided into many particular Provinces) viz. 1. *India intra Gangem*. 2. *India extra Gangem*. Of each of which we will first take a brief survey, with reference to the state and story of it in preceding times; and then consider them with reverence to the present Age.

1. INDIA EXTRA GANGEM.

INDIA EXTRA GANGEM is bounded on the East, with the River *Gange*, till the fall thereof into the Sea; and after that, with that large and spacious Bay, called anciently *Sinu Gangeticus*, now the Gulf of *Bengala*; on the West, with *Parapanisus*, *Arachosia*, *Gedrosia*, Provinces of the Persian Empire; and part of the Arabian Seas; on the North, where it is broadest, with Mount *Taurus*, branched into *Parapanisus*, *Caucasus*, and other Parts; and on the South, where it endeth in a sharp Point or Promontory, by *Ptolemy* called *Commaria extrema*, but now Cape *Commar*, with the Indian Ocean. So named from being situate on the side of *Ganges*; by the Moderns, *Indofan*.

The Country of the same nature formerly, as it is at the present, not altered but by changing of the Channels of *Indus*; which being shifted by an Earthquake, turned a great part of the once neighbouring Region to a sandy Desert: *Indus* (as many other of the Indian Rivers) fattning and enriching all the Land which it overfloweth. The people of those elder times, much like the *Sybarites*, especially in their course of life, living without Cities, Temples, Houses, in their movable Tents; their food the bark of a Tree, called *Tala*, which served for bread; and the flesh of Bucks, Does, and other Venison, with the skins whereof they made their Garments. All of them *Free-men*, but no *Slaves* to be found among them. Less warlike than the *Sybarites*, but as great contemners of death as they, the very women contending eagerly amongst themselves, which should accompany their Husband (one Husband having many Wives) to his Funeral Pile. Of which thus *St. Hierom*, *He igitur contendunt de amore viri, & ambizio summa certantium esse ac testimonium castitatis, dignum morte censeri*. A Custom still retained

amongst them; of which somewhat hath been said already, and more is to be said in another place.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1. *Hydaspes*, by *Ptolemy* (and by him only) called *Budipes*, one of the furthest bounds of *Alexander's* Conquests. 2. *Sutafus*, 3. *Cox*, 4. *Acefines*, very memorable in the Gifts of *Alexander*. 5. *Saudabith*, 6. *Zaradrus*: all coming from the Northern Mountains and all falling (*Hydaspes* with three other Rivers first received into it) into the great bed of *Indus*. 7. *Dianna*, 8. *Sorabius*, and 9. *Soa*, falling from the like Northern Mountains, into the main Channel of *Ganges*. 10. *Navagom*, issuing from Mount *Vindus*. 11. *Bait*, from *Bitiggo*. 12. *Chaberis*, from *Adisubris*. 13. *Tindis*, from the Hill called *Uxentius*: and 14. *Tina*, from the *Orodian* Mountains, with many others of less note. By what names called at the present, I determine not; nor find any which have dared to adventure on it. But doubtless to be found in 1. *Cavamil*, 2. *Cebcha*, 3. *Ria*, 4. *Chenar*, 5. *Rebth*, all Tributaries unto *Indus*, which is now called *Schind*. 6. *Taphi*, 7. *Harwada*, 8. *Chumbel*, 9. *Jamena*, which empty their waters into *Ganges*; the which, with such others of the principal Rivers as are now known by name to us, shall occasionally be touched on in that which followeth. Besides which Rivers, here is a famous Lake mentioned in the Gifts of *Alexander*, (but the name occurth not) not much above a mile in circuit, but exceeding pleasant, shaded on every side with woods, memorable for the great refreshment which it gave to *Alexander's* Army, when even pined with thirst.

The Country so exceeding populous in the time of *Ptolemy*, that it affordeth him the names of more noted Cities, than any one Country in the World. Of which 1. *Catiara*, 2. *Nigana*, 3. *Sagoda*, 4. *Karallia*, 5. *Maspele*, and 6. *Pindara*, are honoured with the name of *Metropoles*; as being the head Cities of their several and respective Nations. 7. *Ozmer*, 8. *Sora*, 9. *Pallibatra*, 10. *Gange*, 11. *Batana*, 12. *Hippocura*, 13. *Carata*, 14. *Madura*, 15. *Orthura*, and 16. *Malanga*, mentioned as the Royal Seats of several Princes, by the name of *Regia*. 17. *Bardaxema*, 18. *Tyddis*, 19. *Argari*, 20. *Cumula*, 21. *Chaberis*, on the River so called, 22. *Palura*, on the shores of the Gulf of *Bengala*, and 25. *Palura*, on the banks of *Cambysum*. 24. *Tilegramocum*, marked out above therewith the name of *Civitates* (Cities) and therefore probably of more note than others not so distinguished. And finally, 25. *Alongissum*, 26. *Simyila*, near a Promontory of the same name, 27. *Nitra*, 28. *Maxiris*, 29. *Elancorum*, 30. *Colchi*, 31. *Salur*, 32. *Sobura*, 33. *Podica*, 34. *Melange*, 35. *Maliarcha*, 36. *Contacissylla*, 37. *Nolyge*, 38. *Barygaza*, specified as the most noted and celebrated Empories; besides 39. *Chabysur*, 40. *Stathum* and 41. a Road opposite to *Corybus* two commodious Stations or Roads for shipping. The names and situation of these Places is the most we find of them, which makes me pass them over with a bare recital, only to show how populous and well planted this Country was in the time of my Author.

Of less name, but of more note in the course of story, 1. *Nysa*, built by *Bacchus* at the time of his *Indian* Conquest, and called thus by the name of his *Nymphs*, to preserve her memory, his Mother dying in Child-birth of him. Remplished by him with his sick and wounded Soldiers, whose Posterity continued here till the time of *Alexander*, who spared the City and the People for his love to *Bacchus*, who was therein worshipped in a Temple of his own foundation, planted about with Bays, Vines, and Ivy, whose shady branches covered the roof of it. In the midst thereof an Image, with all the Instruments belonging to a plentiful *Vintage*, all of Gold or Silver.

Silver. 2. *Taxilla*, or *Taxiala*, as *Ptolemy* calleth it, seated betwixt *Indus* and *Hydaspes*, in the Region called *Persia*, and built most probably by *Taxiler*, a puissant King of *India*, in the time of *Alexander*. Adorned in elder times with a Temple dedicated to the Sun, and therein with an Ivory Image of *Ajias*, a Golden Statue of *Alexander*, and the portraiture of a King *Porus* made in Copper. The floor of *Musical* work powdered with Pearls, made it shine a far off, like a fall of lightning. 3. *Nagara*, called also *Diarysopolis* in memory of *Bacchus*, who was also called *Diarys*, and *Liber Pater*. 4. *Adorne*, by *Diadorus* called *Aornus*, and *Avermus* by *Strabo*; so strongly seated on a Rock, that *Hercules* was not able to force it: which made *Alexander*, (imitating and there-in out-going the Acts of *Hercules*) assault it with the greater force and at last he carried it. 5. *Bucephala*, built by *Alexander* on the banks of *Hydaspes*, and named thus in memory of *Bucephalus*, his beloved horse, which had served him in all the course of his Fortunes, and dyed hereabouts, being then thirty years old. 6. *Pireta*, another of his foundations, so called by the name of his Dog whom he dearly loved. 7. *Alexandria*, on the banks of *Indus*, another of his foundations also. 8. *Mazea*, on the West of *Indus*, one of the first Towns of *India*, taken by the *Macedonians*, though garriſoned within, and environed without with an Host of 300000 men: but yielded after some resistance, with the use of her own body, by *Cleopha* the Queen thereof, who received it back with other favours, from the hands of the Conqueror. 9. *Nova*, a strong City on the same side of *Indus*, taken by *Polyperchon*, one of his Commanders. 10. *Samus*, on the banks of the same River, taken by *Alexander* in the course of his Navigation down that Sea of waters; the Inhabitants whereof fought against him with poisoned Arrows, with one of which *Ptolemy*, (afterward King of *Egypt*) was dangerously wounded, and cured with an herb which *Alexander* dreamt he had seen in the mouth of a Serpent. 11. *Oxydraca*, the chief City of the the first that (scaled the Walls, and the last that could do so, the Ladder breaking as soon as he was at the top. Standing thus alone as a mark to all their Darts, he was he in a daring *bravado* leaped into the Town among his Enemies: where it was not only his good hap to light upon on his feet, but to have an old Tree at his back to defend him behind. In this posture he is said to have maintained the fight a long time, against all the Soldiers of the Town; killing two of them with his own hands, and till being wearied, and dangerously wounded, he was forced to leave his feet, and commit the weight of his body to his knees. In this case *Leonatus*, *Pencestes*, and some other of his Captains came to assist him; who defended their dying Master, till the whole Army entered the Town, and put all the people to the sword, in revenge of their King, whose life they had little hope to enjoy: though he with much danger did afterward recover. For my part I give little or no credence to this story, ranging it in the same Catalogue of truth with the Adventures of *Danzel del Phabo*, *Rosfleer*, *Belianis*, *Amadis*, and the rest of the rabble of *Knights Errant*. Neither is this the first time that *Curtius* hath disgraced the soundness of *Alexander's* Judgment, and the truth of his Actions, with the like idle and impossible Fables: though indeed in that particular, he saith that it was *multo magis ad temeritatis quam de gloria famam*. And 12. *Nicaa*, built by *Alexander* on the banks of *Acefines*, in memory of his many great and signal Victories. Not far from which,

finding how willing his Soldiers were to pass further East, he purposed to leave behind him some Monument of his great Exploits, and to make his fame immortal amongst the *Indians*. And to that end he caused the form of his Camp to be enlarged, and the *Cabbin* to be made bigger than sufficed for his men to lodge in; the Mangers to be set higher than his horses could reach; *Armour* and *Bills* for horses of too great a size (made not for use, but ostentation of his might) to be scatter'd up and down the Camp, for the savage People to wonder at in the times to come. By means whereof he got nothing amongst knowing men, but suspicion that his Actions were intended less memorable, than they are reported to have been; since he so vainly laboured to have them thought greater indeed than they were.

The old Inhabitants thereof, were the *Indo-Scythe* inhabiting on the North-West of *India*, the *Maceae*, *Sadani*, *Prattae*, *Lameyee*, *Aii*, the *Soringi*, *Arvuri*, *Oxydraca*, *Mollae*, and *Lambatae*, the *Gaudarides* or *Gangarides*, near the mouth of *Ganges*, the *Caspirae*, under the shades of Mount *Vindus*. The *Musfiani*, *Chazizae*, *Polinde*, *Phyllite*, *Bitigii*, *Chadramotici*, *Pezuri*, *Adisubri*, *Manadus*, *Dryphite*, *Sabare*, *Pandiani*, with many others, to the number of 122. several Nations, if *Megasthenes* be not out in his reckoning, too many and too impertinent to be numbered here.

Originally descended from the Sons of *Noah*, before they left the Eastern parts to go towards the unfortunate Valley of *Shinar*. We could not else have found this Country so full of people in the days of *Semiramus*, the Wife of *Nimur*: who leading an Army composed of several Nations, to the number of four millions and upwards (if *Ctesias* and *Diodorus Siculus*, who reports it from him, be of any credit; but certainly the greatest Army that ever was raised) was encountered by *Sinobates*, a King of *India*, with greater force made up of natural *Indians* only; by whom the was vanquished and slain. A matter beyond all belief, though neither Army could make up a fourth of that number, if the *Indians* had been no other than some one of those Colonies, which were sent from *BABEL*; or rather a second or third Swarm of those former Colonies, which went thence under the command of the first *Adventurers*; For that any of the first *Adventurers*, who were present at the building of the Tower of *BABEL*, travelled so far East, is not affirmed by any who have laboured in the search of their Plantations. So that I take it for a matter undeniable, that the Plantation of *India* preceded the attempt of *BABEL*; though by whom made, there is nothing to be said for certain: Yet if I have liberty to express my own conceptions, I am inclinable to believe that all the Eastern parts of *Persia*, with *China* and as went not with the rest to the valley of *Shinar*. For otherwise I can see no reason, that the Posterity of *Japhet* should plant the greatest part of the lesser *Asia*, and the whole continent of *Europe*, with the Ills thereof; and that the Sons of *Cham* should spread themselves over *Babylonia*, *Palestina*, the three *Arabias*, and the whole continent of *Africa*: the Posterity of *Sem* being shut up in a corner, the Greater *Asia*, hardly so big as some one of the Provinces taken up by the other *Adventurers*. And therefore that I may allow to the Sons of *Sem* an equal Latitude, I think it not improbable to fix them in these Eastern Countries; spreading themselves this way as they grew in numbers, before the rest of the *Adventurers* went to seek new fortunes at the Tower of *BABEL*. And being that Country was large and wealthy, and might have room enough to spare for some second comers (especially descending from the same root with them,) I doubt

doubt not but place here all the Sons of *Jokan*, *Havilah*, *Chetarmarech*, *Saba*, *Arnimil*, who have left here some tract or monument of themselves, as, hath been shewen at large in our GENERAL PREFACE; and as concerning *Ophir*, shall be shewed hereafter. To proceed therefore to our story, the next who made any invasion on this Country, after that of *Semiramis*, was *Bacchus*, or *Liber Pater*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Semele*, accompanied with *Hercules Asgyptus*, not much more fortunate than he: the forces of *Bacchus* being defeated and *Hercules* forced to throw away his Golden Shield. But what they could not do by Arms, they effected by Arts, *Bacchus* intruſting them in the use of *Wine*, *Oyl*, *Sacrifices* and the Art of *Architecture*, and drawing them into Towns and Cities, for that cause honored as a GOD. To *Hercules* they ascribe the Nation of the *Pandionis*, proceeding from a Daughter of his called *PANDION*: the memory of both preserved in Statues and Pillars erected by them.

After this, unattempted till the time of *Alexander*, who having made a full Conquest of the *Perſian* Empire, invaded *India* with an Army of 120000 fighting men. Beginning with *CLEOPHE*, Queen of the *Magaza*, a people of *Indo-Scythia*, he brought her to conformity, possessed himself both of her Person and Estate; on whom he begat a Son called *Alexander*, who is said to have succeeded in her Dominions. Being passed over the River *Indus*, *Taxiles* (by some called *Omphis*) a prudent Prince, whose Kingdom is affirmed to be bigger than *Egypt*, submitted of his own accord: offering his Service and assistance to promote his Conquest, and presenting him with a Crown of Gold, and 80 Talents of ready money. This King made welcome, but his money not so much as looked on, the *Macedonian* being so far from fingering of this *Indian* Gold, that he gave him a thousand Talents of his own Treasure. Encouraged by this Royal dealing, *Abdagares*, another puissant Prince of the opposite Faction unto *Taxiles*, submitted also, and was as graciously received. *Porus*, whose Kingdom lay on the other side of *Hydaspes*, would not be so conquered and therefore mulctureth up his Forces, and valiantly made good the banks of the River. But vanquished at last, not without much difficulty, he was made a Prisoner to the Victor, who honouring the man for his brave resistance, gave him his liberty and Kingdom, with a great enlargement. The Conqueror had a great desire to go further East, but the Soldiers would not be persuaded: sufficiently taught by *Porus*, what they were to look for, if the *Indians* should unite their forces. Unable to prevail, he erected in the place twelve Altars, as high as Towers; where he observed many solemn Games and Sacrifices: and having sacrificed to *Hydaspes*, *Indus* and *Aceſines*, he sailed down *Indus*, towards the Southern Ocean; which seen at a distance, he turned towards *Gedroſia*, and thence to *Babylon*, where he dyed.

After his death *Eumenes* raised some part of his Forces hence, but the *Macedonian* being plunged in a Civil War, one *Abracottus* stirred up the *Indians* to recover their freedoms, making himself at first their Captain, but at last their King. Possessed of all that had been conquered by the *Greeks*, he was encountered by *Selenus*, who had then got the command of *Aſia*: against whom he brought an Army, of 60000 fighting men. Frightened wherewith, *Selenus* made peace with him, and contracted a solemn League betwixt them, continued with the interchange of friendly Offices amongst their Posterity; and more confirmed by an interview betwixt *Antiochus* the Great and *Saphagesenus*, one of the Successors of *Abdracottus*; by whom *Antiochus* was presented with 150 Elephants, and the promise of some treasure to be

sent after him. By the Posterity of *Abdracottus* was the Kingdom held, till the prosperity and full height of the *ROMAN* Empire. The power whereof though they rather knew by report than tryal, yet was it not unſuit to entertain a potent, though a remote Statute, in terms of amity. Therefore they sent Embassadors unto *Augustus*, who presented him with a number of *Tigers*, (which Beasts, *ſaith Dion*, till then, the *Roman* people had never ſeen) and which was most pleasing, a little Boy born without Arms, who with his feet could bend a Bow, shoot, and play on wind-inſtruments, as exactly as others with their hands. *Trajan* the Emperor had a great desire to ſee this Country, but was diverted from that purpose by matters of more necessary importance to the ſtate of his Empire. Moved with the fame of *Antoninus* the *Roman* Emperor, they sent a solemn Embaſſie unto him, making him Umpire in ſome Controversies which they had with the *Bactrian*: from which Embaſſadors it is probable that *Ptolemy* the Geographer who then lived, might receive his informations of the ſtate of this Country. The like they did to *Julian* the *Apoſtate* alſo, then ſetting forwards on his Expedition againſt the *Perſians*, deſiring his friendſhip and alliance. How it was with them in the time of *Conſtantine* and *Juſtinian*, hath been ſhewen already. After theſe times by little and little, Hiſtories have in a manner been ſilent concerning the affairs hereof, but for ſome Conquests made on the parts next *Perſia*, by the *Caliphs* of *Bagdes*. For notwithstanding that there was continual traffick from the *Red Sea* hither; and between the *Perſians*, *Turkiſh*, and *Indian* Merchants for Spices, and the other Commodities of this Region: yet were not theſe Merchants acquainted with the ſtate of the Country, becauſe they entred not into it; but were met by the *Indian* Merchants at *Samarcand*, being as it were the common Empory. Neither did the *Egyptians* at all enter into *India*, but were met by the *Indians* at *Ormus*, or ſome other Iſland, even as now the *Chinois* make ſome of the *Philippine*, the Staple of their trade with the *Spaniards*, whom they licence not to come into the *Cominas* among them. But our modern Travelers and Navigators have withdrawn this mask of obſcurity, and ſhew us here lively portraiture in as lively colours. One of the firſt which brake the Ice, and gave us any certainty of their affairs, was Sir *John Mandeville*; accompanied at his coming back for the greateſt Fabler in the World: ſo incredible ſeemed his reports of the magnificence of thoſe Kingdoms, and the wealth of their Countries, and the many rarities which he found amongst them. But better thought of by our neighbours, he obtained a Monument in a Convent at *Leige* (where he ended the long courſe of his Life and Travels, 1372.) the Friars of which keep ſome things of his, *Comme pour honnorable memoire de ſon excellence*, for an honourable memorial of his Excellence. Many of his Relations ſince confirmed by the *Portugals*, who under the conduct of *Vaſquez de Gama* firſt diſcovered this Country, by the new way of the Cape of Good Hope, Anno 1499, or thereabouts. For ſo it happened, that the *Portugals* having diſcovered all the Coaſts of *Africk*, as far as to Cape *Verde*, by the encouragement, and at the charge of *Henry Duke of Viſco*, one of the younger Sons of King *John* the firſt, began to think upon ſome way to the wealth of *India*, and getting into their own hands the rich trade of that Country. To which end it was firſt thought, that *Pedro de Camanilla*, and *Alphonſo de Padua*, ſhould make a journey into the Eaſt parts, to learn the certainty of the Spice trade, and make report of ſuch other Commodities as theſe Countries yielded. Being come at laſt by long journeys to the City of *Calicut*, and having ſatiſfied themſelves in the inquiry which they came about, they prepare for their

return

return to *Portugal*. *Padua* dying in the Journey, and *Camanilla*, though detained by the *Habſſine* Emperour (commonly, but corruptly, called *Prefter John*) ſends home a full relation of his ſuccellies, inflamed with which, King *John* the ſecond ſends out *Bartholomew Diaz*, Anno 1587, to find out a way into the *Indies* by the back of *Africa*: who having failed as far as the Cape of good Hope, without giving end to the Adventure, returned back to *Portugal*. Undertaken with better fortune 10 years after, at the command of King *Emanuel* by *Vaſquez de Gama*, above mentioned; who doubling the Cape, and ſailing Northward, all along the ſhores of *Africk*, as far as the Kingdom of *Melinde*, received from the King thereof both Pilots and inſtructions to bring him to *Calicut*, where he found all true which *Camanilla* had before reported. Full of good news at the end of 26 Months from his firſt ſetting out, he returns to *Liſbone*, received for the preſent with joy and triumph, and about two years after (that is to ſay 1502.) furniſhed with 13 Ships and three Caravels, he ſets forward again, followed by *Stephen de Gama* the ſame year with 5 Ships more, by which great ſtrength he made himſelf Maſter of ſome Ports; and by that means laid the foundation of that great Command, which the *Portugals* have attained unto in theſe Eaſtern Countries. Seconded in this great enterprize by *Ferdinando de Almeda*, and *Alphonſo de Albuquerque*, and other noble Adventurers of the Realm of *Portugal*, as after them by ſuch of the *European* Nations aſhamed the benefit and trade of the *Western* Ocean.

If it be asked, why the *Catholians*, or *Spaniards*, being ſtrong in ſhipping, bent not themſelves to the diſcovery of theſe wealthy Countries? it may be answered, 1. That they were buſied at the ſame time in the diſcovery and conqueſt of the *New World*, which they looked on as a nearer, and no leſs profitable booty than this of *India*. 2. The Commodities of this Country, being brought home by the *Portugals*, were fold to them at far cheaper rates, than they could have fetched them in their own bottoms. 3. And chiefly becauſe by the definitive ſentence of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth, both the *Catholians*, and the *Portugals*, were ſo limited in their Navigations, that the *Catholians* might not intermeddle in the Eaſtern, nor the *Portugals* in the diſcovery or Conqueſt of the *Western* parts, beyond the bounds which he had ſet to thoſe ſeveral Nations before-mentioned; and by ſome latter obſervations who have been informed, that in this part of *India* were no fewer than 47 Kingdoms, whereof ſome few have till their own natural Kings, the reſt all ſubject to the power of the Great *Mongul*, contracted into a leſſer number by joyning many leſſer Territories into one Division. We ſhall look on it as diſtributed into 15 Provinces. Some have reduced them unto five, but give us neither the bounds nor extent of any of them. And others in the deſcription of their travels, ramble up and down with ſuch uncertainties (moſt of them being men of Trades and ignorance) that though they tell us where they lodged, and what entertainments they did meet with, yet we ſhall hardly know by them (for I think they did not know themſelves) in what Province they were, or to what part the ſeveral Towns, thorow which they paſſed did of right belong. So that our paſſage throw theſe Countries (having ſuch blind guides to follow) will be full of difficulty, and not ſo ſatisfactory to the Reader as he might expect. However, I deſire him to bear me company, whiſt I take the beſt ſurvey I can of theſe 15 Provinces, to which the whole may be moſt handſomely reduced: that is to ſay, 1. *Dulſinda*, 2. *Pengab*, 3. *Mandao*, 4. *Dely*, 5. *Agra*, 6. *Sanga*, 7. *Cambai*, 8. *Decan*, 9. *Canara*, 10. *Malabar*, 11. *Naranga*, 12. *Orifſan*, 13. *Bosamer*, 14. *Pantemaw*, and 15. *Bengala*.

I. DULSINDA.

DULSINDA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Indus*; on the Weſt, with *Parapamiſus*, and *Arachothia*, two *Perſian* Provinces, but for the moſt part under the command of the Great *Mongul*; on the North with *Caucasus*, by whom parted from *Tartary*; on the South, with the Kingdom of *Cambai*. So that it taketh up all the Northern parts of this Eaſt, which lye upon the Weſt of the River *Indus*; from which River called by the Natives *Sinda*, moſt probable it is that it took this name: and therefore I have written it with an *f*, *Dulſinda*, and not *Dulcinda* with an *c*, as I ſee ſome do, but on no good reaſon, for any thing that I am able to underſtand.

The Country, by the reaſon of the Northern ſituation of it, more temperate, but leſs fruitful than the reſt of *India*. The Seat, in ancient times, of the *Muzage* and *Indo-Scythia*, when ſubdued by *Alexander*. Made up at preſent, of many leſſer Kingdoms, and ſmaller Provinces; denominated, for the moſt part, from the Principal Towns and Cities of them, as in other places.

Amongſt which thoſe of the moſt eſteem are 1. *Caximir*, *Caximur*, or *Cheſimur*, (for by all theſe names it is called) the chief of a Kingdom once, unto which it gave name, till ſubdued by *Echabar* the *Mongul*; who in a pleaſant Iſland, (in the midſt of a great and deep Lake, about three Leagues off the City) beſet round with Trees, built a Royal Palace: which he honoured ſometimes with his Court, removed hither from *Labor*, partly the better to ſecure this new conquered Kingdom; but principally becauſe his Palace of *Labor*, and therein an infinite deal of Treasure, had but newly been conſumed by fire. The City it ſelf ſituate in the moſt healthy Country of all *India*, encompassed with high Mountains, covered for the moſt part of the year with Snow, the reſt a delicate, goodly plain, diverſified with Paltures, Woods, and Corn-fields, Meadows, Parks, Gardens, and Rivers, even to admiration. The Air hereof, and of the Country round about, by reaſon of the Northern ſituation of it, and the ſnowy Mountains, very cool and temperate. The ſoyl abundantly Productive of Wheat, Rice, and Vines, which laſt they plant at the foot of the Mulberry tree, which ſeemeth by this means to bear double fruits. Both Town and Kingdom ſubdued by *Echabar*, the *Mongul*, about the year 1597, their own diſſentions more conducing to that ſubjugation, than any viſible force which he brought before it. 2. *Roree* a Fort of the *Monguls* towards *Parapamiſus*; but bordering upon the Country of *Multan*, to which people it properly belongeth: Garriſoned not ſo much for fear of the *Perſians*, (for *Parapamiſus*, now called *Cabal*, is his ancient Patrimony,) but to preſerve the People from the ſpoil of Thieves, who always hang about the Mountains. 3. In the moſt Northern parts hereof, ſtood the *Nagara* of *Ptolemy*; miſtook by ſome for the modern *Agra*, of which more anon. 4. *Seſſan*, the chief City, as I take it, of the Kingdom of *Rebat*; ſituate on the Eaſt of *Caximir*, betwixt it and the *Indus*: in the ſame Latitude with that, but not of ſo temperate an air; the ſnowy Mountains much conducing to the temperature of the Realm of *Caximir*. 5. *Multan*, a great and ancient City, and the chief a Kingdom, on the South of *Caximir*, or *Cheſimur*; and about three French Leagues from the banks of the River *Indus*. The ordinary thorow-fare of the Caravans in the way from *Labor* to *Spaban*, (the chief Seat of the *Sophy* or King of *Perſia*) forced to abide three divers days, ſometimes ten or twelve to enrich the Town: which of it ſelf is of no great trading, nor otherwiſe able to ſubſiſt but by this device;

device; famed most especially for many excellent Bows and Arrows made in it. The Bows made of Horn, excellently glewed and put together; the Arrows of small Canes or Reeds, both of them set off by rich *Paint* and *Farnish*. They which are made here being more neat and good than in any part of *East India* besides. There is another Town or Kingdom of or near this name on the other side of the River *Indus*, of which we shall speak more in its proper place. 6. *Duckee*, a Fort or Garrison, situate in the Straits of the Mountains to secure the *Caravans*, and protect other Passengers from the danger of Robbers, hovering in these Hill-Countries, the out-parts of this Empire.

2. P E N G A B.

Opposite to *Dulfinda* on the Eastern side of the River *Indus*, but more inclining towards the South lies the Country, or division rather, which my Author calleth by the name of *P E N G A B*: bounded on the West, with *Indus*, which divideth it from *Dulfinda*; on the South, with the Kingdom of *Mandao*; on the North, and East, with those many Kingdoms, which we have comprehended under the name of *Batavier*.

The reason of the name I find not, nor any thing memorable of the Country; but that it was divided in the time of *Ptolemy*, into the Provinces of the *Lambate*, *Caspiria*, *Cylindrine*, and *Sausfene*: subdued by *Alexander* in his Expedition into *India*: the famous River of *Acesines* and *Hyadspis* (but by what names now called I find not) having here their source. So that it seemeth to have been a part of the Kingdom of *Porus*, or that the Kingdom of *Porus* was a part of this.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Labor*, on the Eastern banks of *Indus*, affirmed to be the fairest and most ancient City in both the *Indies*; of most esteem for wealth and greatness. In compass about sixteen miles, and honoured for a while with the ordinary Residence of the Great *Mongul*; till on the burning of his Palace, spoken of before, he removed his Court to *Cashimir*, from thence to *Fatipore*, and at last to *Agra*. Since that time made the Seat of the eldest Son, or Heir apparent, sent hither for avoiding all occasion of Factions, which their living in the Court might breed. A City of exceeding Trade, as being the chief Staple for the Spices in these parts, and other commodities of *India*, from hence transported into *Persia* by the way of *Candahar*, the principal Town of *Arachosia*; and to *Spain*, the chief City of the *Sophian* Empire; where they are sold, by reason of so long and chargeable a journey, for excessive rates. It is said that 12000 Camels at the least, pass every year thorow it with their lading; besides what is ferried down the River, and brought up by the *Portugals*, who therewith traded unto *Ormuz*, till that Town was Taken. By this we may conjecture at the wealth hereof, but more by that great mass of Treasure which a late Governor hereof did leave behind him. At whose death *Echebar* the *Mongul* (for the *Mongul* is the Heir General unto all mens Wealth) found in his Coffers three millions of Gold ready coyned, great quantity of Gold and Silver uncoyned, and some sort of Jewels; besides Horses, Elephants, Household-furniture, and other goods almost invaluable. 2. *Sultan-pure*, of more antiquity than beauty; yet of good esteem. 3. *Abice*, in the common Road from *Labor* to *China*, reported in the description of the Travels of *Benedictus a Goer*, a *Portugall Jesuite*, to be a months journey from *Labor*, and yet in the same Province with it. Which if it be true, either the Province must be large, or his journeys short: or if not true, we must remember that we had it from the Pen of a *Jesuite*. And yet as great as this

Province or Division is affirmed to be, we do not find the names of any more Towns of confideration, which may be said with confidence to belong unto it; unless perhaps we may reduce under this Division the Kingdoms of *Haiacan* and *Buchor*, of which last the chief City is called *Bucurjucor*, enriched by the neighbourhood of the *Indus*, but not else observable.

3. M A N D A O.

THE Kingdom of *M A N D A O* is bounded on the North, with *Pengab*; on the South, with the Realm of *Agra*; on the East, with *Delly*; and on the West, with the River *Indus*. So called from *Mandao*, the chief City of it.

The Country more Mountainous and rugged than the rest of these Provinces, by reason of the many branches of Mount *Bittigo* (the Southern part of the *Imas*) which do over-run it: in other things partaking of the riches of *India*. The men, as most of those who live in such Mountainous Tracts, of a warlike temper, comparatively with the rest of the *Indians*: the women here anciently as valiant as the men in other places: riding a horse, and practised in the Arts of Horsemanship; for that cause called *Amazons*; some of which are said to be still remaining. Inasmuch as it is written in the stories hereof, that the King of this Country not long since going to the wars, was accompanied by the Queen his Wife, marching in the Front of two thousand women all well mounted and prepared for service.

Chief Cities hereof, 1. *Mandao*, seated on the banks of the River *Mandago*, (the *Mandao* of *Ptolemy* and the Ancients) whence it had the name. A City of great note, said to be 30 miles in compass; yet so well fortified and furnished with all manner of necessaries for defence and resistance, that it held out twelve years against *Mirumandus*, or *Merhamed* the Great *Mongul*, who then besieged it. Surrendered at the last, and with it the Kingdom. Memorable for the great battle fought before it: betwixt the said *Merhamed* then coming to the relief thereof, and *Badurins* King of *Cambaija*, who had then distressed it: in which *Badurins* lost his Tents and Treasures, and was fain to fly disguised unto *Diu*, to crave aid of the *Portugals*. 2. *Moltan*, which being mistaken for another Town, or of near the same name, on the Western side of the *Indus*, is by some Writers, said to have been once the chief City of a Kingdom, or a Kingdom rather of it self, but of no great note: the women whereof, though not so good soldiers as their Ancestors of the Female Sex, yet to come as near them as they can, use boots and spurs when they take a journey, and do fitted fit afield the saddle. 3. *Sacruin*, on the River so called of more antiquity than greatness, as is also, 4. *Polyborhis*, the *Polyborhis* of *Ptolemy* and others of the ancient Writers; then the chief Town of the *Palibothri* (by *Pliny* and *Strabo* called *Prasii*) a people of great authority and power as in *India*.

This once a Kingdom of it self of great power and wealth, till *Badurins* King of *Cambaija* having conquered the Realm of *Chior*, and therewith a great part of *Sanga*, made an attempt upon this also. *Galgat*, then King of *Mandao*, finding himself too weak for so strong an Enemy, craved aid of *Merhamed* (or *Mirumandus* as *Chambul Latines*) the *Mongul Tartar*, then reigning in *India* also or *Arachosia*, and possessed of some parts of *India* also since the times of *Tamerlane*. Who compounding an Army of his own Subjects, some mercenary *Persians*, and a great body of *Zagathian Tartars*, from whom originally descended, came in accordingly: discomfited the vast Army of *Badurins*, consisting of 150000 Horse and

and 50000 foot, in two set bartels, the first at *Doret*, the next at *Mandao*, and following his blow, possessed himself of the whole Kingdom of *Cambaija*. But not content with that success, quarrelled the *Mandao* King in whose aid he came; besieged him in his principal City, which at last he won and therewithall the Kingdom also: the wretched King shewing hereby both a fair evidence and example to succeeding Ages, that the easiest way for a Prince to ruin his own Estate, and endanger his neighbours, is to admit a Foreign power into his own Dominions; which he cannot as easily thrust out, as he hath brought them in.

4. D E L L Y.

D E L L Y is bounded on the West, with *Mandao*; on the East, with the Kingdom of *Batavier*; on the North, with the Eastern parts of *Pengab*; on the South, with the Eastern parts also of the Kingdom of *Agra*. So named from *D E L L Y*, the chief City of it, by some called *Delin*.

The Country, besides what is common to it with the rest of *India*, is said to be more abundantly stored than any other part of it, with Horses, Elephants, and *Dromedaries*. Of the people nothing singular, Except it be that many of them taking more delight in thievery than honest trades live for the most part upon spoil; but those especially whom they call by the name of *Belemi*, being such of the Nobility or better sort, who since the Conquest of their Country by the Great *Mongul*, have lived like *Out-law* on the Mountains. Of the same temper with the *Resbitas* in *Cambaija*, and the *Agyans* in *Sanga* and *Dulfinda*; who rather than submit themselves to a Foreign yoke, (as they count that of the *Mongul*) chuse to forsake their proper dwellings, and all honest ways and means of living.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Delly*, a City not only honoured heretofore with the residence of the great *Monguls*, who from hence pass in common appellation, by the names of the Kings of *Delly*, and that amongst their most knowing Subjects; but beautified with many Sepulchres of their ancient Kings, whose Funerals and Coronations were herein celebrated. And though deserted of late times, by the Great *Mongul*, moving their Courts from place to place; as they enlarged their Empire, and increased their Conquests: yet still a great many of the Nobles, and not a few Captains and Commanders, do frequent the same, and have their houses of pleasure & retirement into it. 2. *Tremel*, upon the Western side of the River *Mandao*; but not much observable. 3. *Doret*, memorable for the great battle fought near unto it, in which *Merhamed* the *Mongul* overthrew the forces of *Badurins*, and thereby opened a fair way to the Realm of *Cambaija*.

This Country governed a long time by its natural Princes, was at last conquered by some *Maois*, or *Saracens* coming from *Persia* and *Arabia*, but I find not which; who grew to so great power and wealth, that *Samsafadine* a *Mahometan*, one of their *Descendants*, dreamt of no less than the conquest of all *India*, if not of the whole continent of *Asia* also. Having about the year 1300 (memorable for beginning of the *Ottoman* Empire) subdued by little and little all the neighbouring Princes which made head against him; he pierced at last into *Canora*, now called *Decan* and conquering a great part of it, returned back to *Delly*. The pursuit of his Victories he left unto one *Abdalla* his Lieutenant there, who added the rest of that Country to his Masters Territories, but kept the possession to himself; confirmed therein by *Samsafadine*, with the title of *Regent*: But *Samsafadine* dying in a

War against the *Persians*, left for his Successor a Son so unlike his Father, that the conquered Provinces revolted from him into other *Masters*, more able to govern and protect them. Confined unto its former bounds, it remained notwithstanding of sufficient power to preserve it self, from any of their equal neighbours, till the rising of the Great *Monguls*: whose puissance being unable to withstand, it submitted at the last to *Adabar*, the Son of *Merhamed*, the second Emperor of this line: who to allure himself of the peoples loyalty, and conquests, settled his Court a while at *Delly*, the chief City of it; from whence removed on the next prosperous emergency, as before was noted.

5. A G R A.

THE Realm of *A G R A* is bounded on the North, with *Delly* and *Mandao*; on the South, with *Sanga* and *Cambaija*; on the West, with *Indus*, which parteth it from the Province of *Sinda*, a part of the Kingdom of *Cambaija*, on the East, with *Orissa*, or *Orisa*. So called from *Agra* the chief City of it, and the Seat-Royal of late times of the Great *Monguls*.

The Country said to be the best and most pleasant of *India*, plentiful in all things, and such a delicate even piece of ground, as the like is hardly to be seen. Well watered as with other Rivers, so most especially with those of *Tamlico* and *Jemena*, which last runneth thorow the middle of it, North and South; or rather from the North-west to the South east, from whence bending more directly Eastwards, it falleth at last into the *Ganges*, or that which is supposed to be *Ganges*, for the head of that great River is not certainly known. The people for the most part *Gentiles*, *Mahometanism* coming in with the Great *Monguls*, and generally inclining somewhat to the *Pythagorean*. For such as live upon the banks of the River *Jemena*, neither eat flesh, nor kill any thing. The waters of which River they seem to sacred, that thereof they usually make their Temple, and lay their Prayers therein, but naked (in which posture they both dress their meat and eat it) lodging upon the ground, being inopied by them as penance, and so conceived.

Places of most esteem herein, 1. *Fatipore* or *Fattibbari*, on the West side of the River, a very fair and goodly City, once beautified with a Royal Palace here built by *Echebar* (after the removal of his Court from *Cashimir*), with many spacious Gardens belonging to it; but much decayed, since the fixing of the Court at *Agra*, to which most of the stones are carried, and no small quantity of Corn sowed within the Walls. 2. *Agra*, on the North bank of the River *Jemena*, inferior to *Labor* for wealth and greatness, but far more populous: the constant residence of the Court here in these latter times, drawing to it great resort of all sorts of people. By some supposed to be the *Nagara* of *Ptolemy*, but such a supposition as is built on no better ground, than some resemblance of the names. For *Ptolemy's* *Nagara* is by him placed on the Western side of *Indus*, in the Latitude of 33, whereas this *Agra* standeth on the East of the River *Jemena*, five degrees more Southwards, in the Latitude of 28. But what it is loth in antiquity, it hath got in honour: the Town and Territory being a peculiar Kingdom, till *Echebar* the *Mongul* subdued it, Anno 1508. in his passage from *Labor* to *Decan*. But it lost nothing by the hands; for *Echebar* delighted in the situation of it, and that which it stood in the middle of his Kingdoms; made it the Seat-Royal of his Empire; fix there, for the most part ever since: by means whereof exceedingly increased in wealth, beauty, and greatness, the very Castle in which the *Mongul* usually resided, being two miles in compass,

Aaaa

invironed

invironed with most high and unfcaleable Walls, and fortified with great store of Ordnance. The whole space betwixt it and *Fatipore*, being 18 miles, beautified with many *Mohometan* Temples, and with one also built by *Echobar*, for the use of *Christian* as had been gained unto the faith, by the care and diligence of the *Jafutes*. For the supply hereof with Victuals, and other necessary provisions, and the security of such as resort unto it, affirmed to be a continual market : and all the *Interval* from hence to the Town of *Labur* (from which distant 400 miles towards the South) adorned with continual Rows of Trees on both sides of the ways, most of them bearing a kind of Mulberry ; and at every ten miles end, houses erected by the King or some of the Nobles, for beautifying the way to the Regal City, for preserving their own memory, and the safe lodging of Passengers, in danger otherwise by night, of Thieves and Cut-throats.

3. *Hondie*, a Town more towards the South, beautified with a fair Castle of the Kings, cut out of the main Rock, and wrought with carved work round about ; fortified with 35 Pieces of Ordnance, and thought impregnable ; for that cause made a Prison for great Persons. Here are also two Hospitals for such Captains, and Captains only) as are maimed in the Wars. 4. *Biani*, twelve course or 18 miles from *Batipore*; the most noted place for *Indies* in all the *Indies* ; for the making whereof they have here twelve Mills. Which *Indies* by the way growth on a small shrub like our Gooseberry bushes, bearing seed like a Cabbage seed : which being cut down are laid in heaps for half a year, and when rotten, brought into a Vault to be trodden with Oxen from the Talks, and being ground small and fine at the Mills, is last of all boyled in Furnaces, refined, and sorted, and so sold to the Merchants.

To this division also we may reduce the Kingdom of *Gwalior*, so called of *Gwalda* : the chief City, where the *Mongol* hath a very rich Treasury of Gold and Silver, kept in a strong Castle, wherein his Prisoners are secured likewise ; and for those reasons, continually guarded by a strong Company of stout and well appointed Souldiers.

6. SANGA.

SANGA is bounded on the North, with the East parts of the Realm of *Agra*, on the South, and West, with *Cambai* ; from which parted on the West, by the Mountain Gate ; and on the East, with *Orissan*. The reason of the name I find not : this Country being too far South to be so called from *Sangaleffa*, a Town of chief note near the Fountaines of *Indus*, where Placed by *Arimus* lib. 5.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Acimere* or *Agimer*, 180 miles from *Agra*. At the end of every course (each course a mile and a half) a fair Pillar erected, and at every tenth course a fair *Seraglio*, (such as we call Inns) for the entertainment of Travellers. All built by *Echobar*, who wanting children, is said to have gone in pilgrimage on foot from *Agra* to *Acimere*, saying his Prayers at the end of every course, and lodging all night at the tenth. 2. *Chior*, the chief City of *Sanga*, and most magnificently built on the middle way betwixt *Surat*, a known port of *Cambai* and *Agra* spoken of before, and most magnificently built on the top of a rocky-hill, to which the passage is so narrow and so well fortified, (there being in it three Gates, at the top, the middle, and the bottom) that thereby, and by other advantages of *Art* and *Nature*, it was thought impregnable. Affirmed to be 12 miles in compass, beautified with many good buildings both publick and pri-

vate ; but once more glorious than it is ; here being to be seen the ruins of 100 Temples, and above 100000 houses, either demolished by the Wars, or suffered to decay by the *Great Mongul*, who would not willingly have any thing in the *Indies* of more Antiquity than themselves ; and therefore are rather inclined to build new Cities, than uphold the old. The greatness and antiquity of it have made some men think, that it was the Royal Seat of *Parus*. Others affirm the same of *Delly*, but neither rightly : the Kingdom of *Parus* lying more towards the River *Indus*, and not so far South. Governed not long since by a Queen called *Cremetina*, not more fair than valiant, who revolting from *Baduric* King of *Cambai*, to whom the formerly had paid tribute, was dispossessed of the Town of *Chior*, where she had fortified her self with 30000 Foot, and 2000 Horse : the People in a desperate resolution, laying all their Treasure on a heap, which they burnt together with themselves ; in which flame it is said that there perished 70000 persons. But the *Cambaians* did not long enjoy his Victory, for not long after both the City and a great Part of the Country was conquered by the *Great Mongul* ; the mountainous parts hereof being held against him by *Ramee*, the Son or Successor of Queen *Cremetina* : till seeing himself destitute of all better help, he put himself into the hands of one of the Sons of the late Sultan, by whom reconciled unto his Father. Some other Towns there are in this Province and in the rest before mentioned ; and those of good esteem perhaps amongst the Natives : but of no observation or importance in the course of business. Under this name we may also comprehend the Kingdom of *Nagragh*, so called of the chief City of it and that most memorable for a rich and sumptuous Chappel, ciled and paved with Plate of pure Silver, much curiously inlaid over-head in several figures, which they keep exceeding bright ; with often rubbing and continual burnishing. *Mahway*, another of these Kingdoms, for its near neighbourhood to *Chior*, may be placed here also affirmed to be a fruitful Province, and the chief City of it to be called *Ranipore*.

7. CAMBAIA.

CAMBAIA hath on the East, *Delly*, and part of *Mandao* ; on the West, *Gedrosia*, a Province of the *Persian* Empire ; on the North, *Dulfinda*, and the rest of *Mandao*, on the South, the main Ocean, and some part of *Decan*. It lieth on both sides of the *Indus*; and is so called from *Cambai*, the chief Province of it. The whole divided into 1. *Sinda*, 2. *Guzarate*, and 3. *Cambai*, especially so called.

1. **SINDA A.** (by some called the Kingdom of *Tutta*, from *Tutta* the chief City of it) hath on the East, the River *Indus*, by which separated from *Mandao* ; on the North, that part of *India* which is called *Dulfinda*, on the West, part of *Gedrosia* and *Guzarate*, and on the South, the rest of *Guzarate* only : coasting along the Western banks of the River *Indus*, whence it had the name ; that River being now called *Schind*, as was said before. And for this reason, as I take it, the Western part of *India* lying North of this took the name of *Dulfinda*, and not *Dulcinda* (with a C) as most commonly written.

The Country for the generality very rich and fertile, but in some places nothing but a sandy *Desart*, inhabited for the most part by wild *Asiis*, *Foxes*, *Deer*, and some wilder beasts ; but none so wild as the *Calies*, a robbing Nation, so numerous whith, that they sometimes rob whole *Caravans* as they pass that way ; notwithstanding the

the many Forts and Castles built of purpose to secure those passages.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Tutta* (*Gum Naga* *Tutta*) on the banks of *Indus*, a Town of great Trade, but most frequented by the *Portugals*, who here receive *Indian* Commodities as come down the water from *Jabor*, returning Pepper in exchange, which the ybring up the River from their other *Factories*. 2. *Lawribander*, at the mouth of the out-let of *Indus*, three days journey from *Tutta*, the Port Town unto which it is, notwithstanding that distance. Supposed to be situate in or near the place of that *Alexandria* which *Alexander* built in memory of his Navigation down this River to the *Indian* Ocean. An Haven much frequented, because free from Worms ; which at *Surat*, and other Havens on these Seas, so infect the Ships, that without much cost and care bestowed upon them, they make them unable to return. 3. *Gallyada*, memorable for the *Tenure*, as given by *Echobar* the *Mongul* to a company of women and their posterity for ever, to bring up their Daughters to dancing, and more wanton exercises. 4. *Redempore*, a great Town with a strong Castle, seated on the edge of the *Desarts* : thorough which those that are to pass, use here to provide themselves of water and other necessities for their journey. 4. *Naragumire*, a pretty Town on the further side of the *Desarts*, esteemed a *Paradise* by such as have passed thorough those uncomfortable and dangerous Sands, for the space of ten or twelve days journey. 6. *Sarrama*, a large Town, twenty miles from *Tutta*, the Center in which all *Sindae* meet ; and from whence distances of all Towns of *Sinda* are accountably measured.

The Country anciently subject to the King of *Cambai*, and in the right of that Crown to the *Great Mongul* ; but the people for the most part so untamed and masterful, that except in some of the greater Towns, they pay no Tributes ; and in some places, even within half a days journey of *Tutta*, will acknowledge no King, but rob and spare whom they please. If at any time the *Mongul* sends a force against them, (as he doth sometimes) they fire their houses, made like a *Bee-Hive* of Straw and Mortar, which are soon rebuilt, and retire themselves unto the Mountains. Yet one good quality they have amongst many ill ones : When they have robbed a Traveller, took money of him in the way of Toll or Custom for his passage by them, they will conduct him honestly to the end of the *Desarts*, lest any should rob him but themselves.

2. **GUZARATE** hath on the North, *Sinda* ; on the South, the main Ocean, the River *Indus* on the East ; on the West, *Gedrosia*, which the *Indians* call *Nawatacor*, but the *Persians* *Cercan*.

The Soil of the same temper and fertility with that of *Cambai*, especially so called ; and there we shall speak further of it : The Common people whom they call *Guzarates*, of the same disposition generally with the rest of the *Indians* ; but the greatest part of the Country is possessed by the *Reluties* or *Rabooches*, the ancient Inhabitants of this Tract. Who when their Country was subdued by the *Moors* or *Saracens*, retired unto the Mountains or Fastnesses of it, standing upon their guard ; and were never yet subdued by the *Great Monguls*. Who though possessed of the Sea-shores, and most Towns of consequence, are fain to leave the in-land parts and open Countries to the power of the *On-laws* ; who either prey upon the people, or force them to compound for their peace and quiet at uncertain prices. Their Arms most commonly a Sword, Buckler and Lance, well horfed and resolute in any thing which they undertake ; which made one of the *Monguls* say of them, *That no man in the world knew to dye, but they*.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Diu*, in a Peninsula looking towards *Persia*, but on the East side thereof, near the mouth of *Indus*. Possessed by the *Portugals*, and by them fortified with a strong and impregnable Citadel, built with the leave and liking of King *Beduric* ; thereby to buy their aid against *Acherban* the *Mongul*, who had newly vanquished him. A matter of fish consequence to the Crown of *Portugal*, that *John Barctius*, confined to *India* for some crimes by him committed, undertook (in hope by the merit of that service to obtain his pardon) to carry the first news of it in a small Vessel, not above 18 foot long, and about 6 foot broad (the belt which of the present could be provided) : Which with great courage he performed, and through that large, wide, and tempestuous Ocean came in safety with his news to *Lisbon*, to the great joy of the King ; but greater admiration of all sorts of people. Scarce let in their new possession, when besieged by *Solyman Bassa* Admiral to *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, with a Fleet of 80 Ships and Gallies, Anno 1537, offended with the *Portugals* for aiding the King of *Persia*, more for diverting the Spice-trade from *Alexandria*. In which he had so ill success, that having assaulted it in vain with his Land Forces, he was fain to raise his siege in such halt and tumult, that he left his great Ordnance behind him. 2. *Sauran*, a Town and Castle of the *Reluties*, spoken of before, and by them held against the power of the *Great Mongul*. 3. *Boldra*, a very fair and beautiful City, but of no great Compass. 4. *Ardovar*, not far from the banks of the *Indus*, on the North of this Region towards *Sinda*. 5. *Madabat*, by some called *Amadabat*, affirmed to be both for wealth and greatness the chief of *Guzarate*, near as big as *Lond* ; well walled, and situate on a Plain near the River side : situate without Merchants of all Religions, *Tews*, *Gentiles*, *Christians*, *Moores*, some of all and neither 6. *Spawing*, 7. *Persico*, 8. *Sherkoffe*, this last remarkable for the Sepulchres of the old Kings of *Cambai* ; fair, and well kept, and visited from all parts of the Kingdom.

Nothing considerable in this part of the Country as to point of Story, but what is common to them with the rest of *Cambai* ; but that the *Reluties*, or *Rabooches* still remain unconquered. Possessed not only of the Hills and Mountains, but of some strong holds ; and governed by the heads of their *Casts* or Tribes, all which acknowledge the *Mongul* for their *Superiour*, in regard of his power, but none of them obey him as their Lord or Sovereign ; conceiving it to be some abatement of their own authority, if they admit him as an *Umpire* to compose their differences, which they sometimes do.

3. **CAMBAIA** specially so called, hath on the North, *Mandao* ; on the South, the main Ocean, and some part of *Decan* ; on the East, *Swat*, from which parted by a ridge of Mountains ; on the West, the main Ocean, with some part of *Guzarate*. It standeth on the East sides of the out-lets of *Indus*, running along the Sea-shore for 500 miles, and took this name from *Cambai*, the chief City of it.

The Country said to be the most fruitful of all *India*, abounding in Rice, Wheat, Sugar, Spices of all sorts, and choicest fruits : of Silk and Cotton so great plenty, that they fraught yearly forty or fifty Ships with those commodities. In the Mountains they find *Diamonds*, *Chalcodones*, and a kind of Onyx stone, which are called *Cornelins*, and corruptly *Cornelians*. Amongst the rarities hereof, they reckon the *Abder*, a great beast, twice as big as a Bull, having on their snouts a little horn, and the Hide so hard, as no man can pierce it with a thrust, which is the *Rhinoceros* of the Ancients.

The people eliminate and unwarlike, and therefore not much used by the *Monguls* in a war of consequence ;

to supply which defect he furnisheth himself with Soldiers out of *Perfia*, of which his standing bands consist; most of their Sultans and Commanders of that Nation also. More given to Merchandize than War, and therein thought to be as cunning (if not deceitful) withal; as any people in the World: treacherous in their trust, proud in their carriage, boldly upon advantage, and much given to *Vouerie*; ignorant of Letters, but well practiced in *Mechanical Arts*. In matters of Religion for the most part *Gentile*, not knowing, or contemning the Law of *Mahomet*; but very punctual in their own heathenish superstitions. The *Bamians* in this Country, being natural *Indians*, nuzzled in Paganism, and so wedded to their old Idolatries, that no persuasions can prevail with them, make the greatest number; and seem to be all *Pythagoreans* in some opinions, for they eat not any thing that hath blood or life, but feed on Rice, Roots, Plants, and such natural fruits: paying a large Revenue yearly to the *Great Mongul*, that no Oxen may be killed amongst them. And because that new opinions should not grow amongst them, they marry in their own Tribes only, and never out of their own Trades; secure thereby as they conceive from all innovations.

Cities of most observation in it, 1. *Cambaia*, three miles from the *Indus*, and as many in compass, one of the noblest and best built in all the East. So populous withal, that it is thought to contain 130000 Families; and is therefore called the *Caire of the Indies*. Of most esteem in all this Kingdom (though far less than *Madabat*) to which it doth impart its name. 2. *Barache*. Southwards of *Cambaia*: on the top of an hill, with a fair River underneath it; well walled and noted for the best *Calicus* (a kind of Linen Cloth so called from the City of *Calicut*, where it was first made) not to be matched in all the *Indies*. 3. *Swayley*, still more unto the South, and about a mile from the Sea-shore; but giving name unto a large and capacious Bay, where the ships ride that trade at *Surat*. 4. *Surat*, about ten miles from the Bay of *Swayley*, from whence the River navigable but by Boats and Shallops, fortified with a Castle of stone, well stored with Ordnance. The houses for the most part of Sun-dried Bricks, very large and lasting: built with flat Roofs, but battlemented on all sides for fear of falling; and beautified with goodly Gardens of Pomgranates, Melons, Figs, and Limons, entrelaced with Riverets and Springs. Made of late years a Factory for the *English Merchants*, who have heretofore President, and a magnificent House for their reception, and staple of their Commodities. 5. *Neriland*, a great Town, and as remarkable for the making of *Indice*, of the matter and making whereof we have spoke already, when we were at *Biani*, a Town or City of the Kingdom, or Division of *Agra*; as memorable for that Commodity as this *Neriland*, or any other of *India*. 6. *Daman*, upon the Sea-side over against *Diuz*; and possessed as that is by the *Portugals*. A beautiful land pleasant Town, fortified with a strong Castle at the North end of it, of white chalky stone, well planted with Ordnance: opposite whereunto on the South side of the Town a goodly Church, edged on the top with white. Which with the houses for the most part of the same colour also, afford a pleasant prospect to the Sailors by 7 *Campanels*, situate on the top of an high Mountain, and environed with a seven-fold wall, once the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Cambaia*. 8. *Dacaiote*, a place of high strength, that the *Great Mongul* could never get it by force. Rendred at the last upon composition, conditioned they should still be governed by a King of their own. 9. *Natherby*, a great Market of Brazen ware, Beasts, and Armour. 10. *Bardara*, 11. *Tamai*, &c.

This Kingdom taking in *Guzarate* and *Sindit*, as parts

hereof is extremely populous; said to contain 60000 Towns and Villages, very well inhabited: but the people not accustomed to, or unfit for wars. Anciently governed by Kings of their own, it was first subdued by the *Arabians* or *Moors*, Anno 1425. under the conduct of one *Mahomet* or *Machmut*; who having forced the *Rebates* or *Naturals* of the Country to betake themselves unto the Mountains, was made King hereof. To him succeeded his Son *Mamudus*, one of no great action. But what he wanted was supplied by his Son *Badrinus*, who having conquered the Kingdom of *Citor*, invaded that of *Mandas* also. His Army for that war consisted of 50000 Foot, 15000 Horse, 1000 great Pieces of Ordnance, 500 Wagons loaded with Powder and Shot, and as many Wain-loads of Gold and Silver to pay his Army. But being discomfited in two great Battels by *Merbaned* the *Mongul Tartar*, whom *Galgoe* the *Mandao* King had called in to his aid, he shaved his beard, and fled in a disguise to *Diuz*, then possessed by the *Portugals*; whom he licensed in that distress to build the *Citadel*, slain afterwards by a mean Mariner, as his return from the *Portugal Vice-Roy*, whom he had visited on ship-board. And though *Mamudus* his successor endeavored to free his Kingdom from both pretenders; yet weakened with the loss of so great an Army, he was not able to effect it. First driven from *Diuz*, which he had besieged both by Sea and Land, to his great dishonour; and after vanquished in battle by *Adabar*, the Son of *Merbaned*, not far from *Serkys*, the ancient burial-place of the Kings of *Cambaia*, but then the Sepulchre of the Kingdom; which by that victory fell to the *Great Mongul*, who have since enjoyed it.

4 DECAN.

DECAN is bounded on the East, with *Nasfinga*; on the West, with the *Indian Ocean*; on the North, with *Cambaia*; on the South, with *Malabar* and *Canara*. The reason of the name we shall have anon.

It lieth along the Sea-coast for the space of 250 miles betwixt *Aligaand Bate*, two noted Rivers; extending East, as far as the Mountain *Gates*, and afterwards thrusting into the North betwixt *Cambaia* and those Mountains till it meet with *Cambaia*. The soil much of the same nature with the rest of *India*, but not so flourishing as *Cambaia*. The people for the most part *Mahometans*, which Religion was first planted there by the Conquests of *Sanojardine*, 350 years ago; yet not without some intermixture of their ancient *Gentilism*.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Bider*, the Seat-Royal of *Mamudus*, once sole King of this Country; who to beautifie and adorn this City, commanded every one of his *Presbys*, or subordinate Governors, being eighteen in number, to build here a Palace, and to reside therein certain months in the year: each one to leave a Son there in perpetual hostage. Situate in the most Northern parts of the Country more near the borders of *Dely*: from the King whereof *Mamudus* had then newly revolted; and therefore would make sure of this place, as most in danger. 2. *Vilapore*, bordering on *Cambaia*, the Princely Seat of *Indalcan*, one of the Kings of *Decan*, after it was dissembred into several Kingdoms. 3. *Danager*, confining on *Canara*, a beautiful and flourishing City, once the chief Seat of *Nizamocous*, or *Nizamocous*, another of the Kings hereof, after that division. 4. *Decan*, so called by the name of the Province; of which the chief City next to *Bider*, the Imperial Seat. Six miles from which there is an hill encompassed with an high wall, and kept by a strong Garrison, because of the great store of *Diamonds* which are digged out of it. The Town so wealthy, that

that the people generally are attired in silks, or the purple *Tifany*. 5. *Sintacra*, on the mouth of the River *Aliga*, where it falleth into the Sea. 6. *Goa*, a Sea Town also, situate in a little but most pleasant Island, called *Ticavrum*, fifteen miles in compass; opposite to the mouth or one lct of the River *Mandao*. A noted Empory, and one of the chief keys which unlock the *Indies*; for number of Inhabitants, magnificent buildings, and Pleasantness of situation, one of most note in all this Country. Possessed by the *Portugals*, who have there their *Asenal*, and harbour for their *Indian Fleet*; by which they do command these Seas. So strongly fortified withal, that though beleaguered by *Idalcan* (of whom before) with 35000 Horse, 6000 Elephants, and 250 Piece of Ordnance, Anno 1573, yet he could not force it. Made in regard of the convenient situation and strength thereof, the ordinary Residence of the *Portugal Vice-Roy*, who hath here his Council, Chancellour, and other Officers, for the government of such parts of *India* as belong to that Crown: as also of the Arch-bishop or Primate of the *Indian Churches* planted by that Nation, who is hence called the Arch-bishop of *Goa*, 7. *Chaul*, a Sea-Town, in the hands of the *Portugals* also, and by them well fortified: Inasmuch as *Nizamocous* assaulting it at the very same time with a very great Army, was fain to leave it as he found it. 8. *Balgante*, in the Up-lands or Hill-Country, whence it had the name: *Bala* in the *Persian Language* signifying a top or summit of a Mountain; and *Guate* an Hill. 9. *Brampore*, once the chief Seat of another Kingdom, called the Kingdom of *Chandis*, now the chief City of those parts of *Decan* which are subject to the *Great Mongul*. Situate on a great River in the midst of a spacious Plain, beautiful, and of very great Trading; in greatness equal unto *Paris*, yet yielded to *Echebar* the *Mongul*, without any resistance Anno 1600. *Miram* then the King thereof forsaking it and betaking himself to 10 *Syca*, a strong Hold both by Art and Nature, situate on the top of an hill, which is in compass five Leagues, and environed with a triple Wall: furnished with Victuals, and all other necessary Provisions, sufficient to maintain 60000 men many years; 3000 great Pieces of Ordnance planted on the Walls. Besieged herein by *Echebar* with an Army of 200000 fighting men, he held out against him: till overcome by promises of fair correspondence, drawn out of his Hold (some of his Counsellors being bribed to persuade him to it) he was detained by the *Mongul*: and the Commanders won by rewards and hopes yielded up the Fort, and therein all the Princes of the Royal Family, accustomedly kept therein when the Throne was full; which vacant, the next Heir was taken hence, to succeed unto it. Of the same nature, as it seemeth, with the hill *Anara* in *Asiopia*, or the *Abessin* Empire.

The Country formerly inhabited by a people called *Venazarari* by Religion *Gentile*, and held by them till the year 1300, when overcome by *Sa Nofardine*, a *Mahometan*, and King of *Dely*: who driving the Inhabitants into the Hill-Countries, possessed himself of a great part of it, compelling them to submit unto his Religion. The residue hereof subdued by *Abdissa*, whom *Sa Nofardine* left here to pursue the war, was by him governed with great Justice for 20 years, when dying he left his Government to his Son *Mamudus*, confirmed by the Successor of *Sa Nofardine* in his Fathers Regency, on the payment of an annual Tribute. *Mamudus* soon finding that the young King was of no great spirit, not only refused to pay the Tribute imposed on him, but took unto himself the title of King of *Decan*, giving this name unto the Country (before called *Canara*) in regard that he had filled it with a Mongrel body of *Christians*, *Mahometans*,

and *Gentile*, acknowledging no common Parent, nor agreeing in Language, Customs, or Religion; the word *Pagan* signifying in that Tongue. As much as illegitimate brood, or a body of Balafrats. Out of these he made choice of twelve (others say eighteen) whom he appointed Governors of so many Provinces: not daring to trust any of the old Nobility, or of the Natives of the Country; and hoping that these *Slaves*, so promoted by him, would be more subject to command. But here his silly hopes deceived him. For these *Slaves* either governed by their Masters example, who had done the like unto the Son and Heir of *Sa Nofardine*; or presuming on their own strength, and some Foreign Aids, left to their Master nothing but an empty Title; each one becoming absolute in his several Province. Nor did his Successors for any long time enjoy that Title: *Daquem*, the last of them, being taken at *Bider* his chief City, and thereupon the name of King usurped by every one of those petit Tyrants, reduced at last into fewer heads. Such of them as were left, became considerable Princes, as appeareth by the great Army raised by *Idalcan* for the siege of *Goa*: But in the end, distressed on the one side by the *Portugals*, who embarrased their Trade, and invaded on the other side by the *Great Mongul* with most puissant Armies, *Melic* entitled King of *Decan*, and *Miram* King of *Brampore*, were in fine subdued by *Echebar*, about the year 1600. Against whom and his Successors, though the *Venazarari* still hold out, as the *Refutes* or *Raf-boches* do in the Realm of *Cambaia*; and that the King of *Andanager*, perhaps some other petit Princes, are not yet brought under: yet we may look on the *Mongul* as the Lord of this Country, the residue of these *Regent*, and petit Princes (if any of them be remaining) being *Homagers* or Vassals to him. Against whose farther Progress to the Cape of *Comari*, which *Echebar* so greedily aimed at, the puissant Kings of *Nasfinga*, and those of *Malabar* have opposed their power; whose Kingdoms aid Estates we must next survey, before we take a view of those other Provinces which are now under the command of that mighty Monarch.

9 CANARA.

CANARA is bounded on the North, with *Decan* (whereof formerly it was a part;) on the South, with *Malabar*; on the East, with *Nasfinga*, from which separated by the Mountain *Gates*; on the West, with the Ocean. The reason of the name I find not, nor much worth the searching.

The Country hath a fair Sea-coast, with many capacious Harbours in it, which cannot but add much to the wealth thereof; as liberally furnished in the in-land parts with Rice, Figs, and Sugars: but destitute of Wheat, Pulse, and Barley. Nor much the poorer for that want, the people either not knowing, or not regarding the use of bread; but living on such fruits as the earth produceth of it self, without the charge or care of the husbandman. In other things but little differing, if at all, from the rest of the *Indians*: their Religion for the most part *Paganish*, but intermixed with *Mahometans*.

Principal Towns and Cities of it, 1. *Melinde* a commodious Haven. 2. *Onor*, a Port Town of good note, sometimes held by the *Portugals*. 3. *Baticula*, situate in the richest part of all this Country; never possessed by the *Portugals*, but under contribution to them. 4. *Margalor*, a Town of great wealth and trade; fortified with a strong Castle, once destroyed by the *Portugueses*, but recovered and repaired by the King of *Nasfinga*, who is Lord of this Country. 5. *Moyndre*, more within the Land. And so is also, 6. *Lispor*, famous for her Quarries of Adamant.

Adamant. 7 *Salsette*, in a Peninsula of 20 miles compass, containing 36 Villages, and 80000 Inhabitants; the Town about 9 miles from *Goa*, and subject with the whole Peninsula to the *Portugals*.

This Country is now subject to the King of *Narvinga*, but formerly under the command of its own Princes: the name of *Canara* comprehending in those times all that Country, which is now called *Decan*. Conquered by *Sa Nofaradine* and *Abdelia*, and by *Mamunda* canonized into many *Presbiteres*, this part reverting to its old name, fell to the *Narvingans*, who taking his advantages in the Minority of some of their Princes, became Master of it. And when *Idalcen* (for I take that not so much for the name of a man, as a Title of dignity) quarrelled his possession of it, as appertaining properly to the Kingdom of *Decan*; *Chisamarao*, then King of *Narvinga*, brought a powerful *Advocate* to defend his right; that is to say, an Army of 606000 Foot, 26650 Horse, and 537 Elephants; every Elephant having a Tower on his back with four men in it. With which strong Argument the *Idalcen* being confuted in the Schools of War, with much difficulty saved himself though he lost his cause; the *Narvingans* ever since continuing quiet in the possession of this Country, except only some of the Sea Towns in the power of the *Portugals*: Who in the year 1567 destroyed in those few places by them possessed, no fewer than 200 of their *Idol Temples*, with many of their *Pagodes*, or *Idols* in them, converting the Rents and Lands which belonged unto them, with the *Revenues* raised from the several Ports which they hold herein, to the maintenance of a College of *Jesuites* in *Salsette*, and other Religious houses founded by them, in their other Cities.

10 MALABAR.

MALABAR is bounded on the North, with *Canara*, from which parted by the River *Gungerraco*; on the East, with the great Mountain *Gates*; which divided from the Realm of *Narvinga* South-east; on the West and South, with the main Indian Ocean. On the Coast whereof it doth extend for the space of 300 miles; that is to say, from the River *Gungerraco* to the Cape *Commari*; which I conceive to be the *Commuria Extrema* of *Ptolemy*, though others take it for the Promontory by him called *Cory*. But the breadth hereof is nothing answerable to the length, not above 50 miles where broadest, and ending towards the Cape in a point or *Comis*.

The Country more populous, for the bigness, than any in *India*, enjoying a very temperate Air, and a fruitful soil; well watered and indented with many Creeks: unfit for Corn, but plentiful in Rice, and all manner of Spices, as Ginger, Cinamon, *Cassia*, Pepper, and most excellent Fruits. Amongst their Trees there is one whose name my Author speaks, which bears Dates like unto the Palm; out of which they have not only Wood for fuel, but they draw from it Wine, Sugar, Oyl, fine Cloth, and Cordage; another Tree, which beareth Cotton, and Cyprès or Cobweb-lawn, of the Leaves whereof they make a fine stuff like to *Satin* or *Taffeta*. They have also great store of Apes, and Monkeys, Parrats, Parakeets, and other Creatures not known in these parts but from thence: not to say any thing of their Lyons, Elephants, Bears, Búgles, common to them with others of their Indian Neighbours. The flowers there always in their *Verdure*, and the Trees perpetually green, by reason that the Air is so sweet and temperate.

The people are of coal-black colour (differing therein from the rest of the *Indians*,) swarth and complected

(like the *Olive*) well limbed, wearing their hair long and curled: about their heads an handkerchief wrought with Gold and Silver; and about their middle a cloth which hangeth down to conceal their nakedness. Of manners treacherous and bloody, more properly to be termed desperate than stout and valiant; and for more fury in their Wars they use poisoned Arrows, as they do also in their thieving both by Sea and Land, to which more addicted. In Religion for the most part *Gentiles*, and more besetted generally on their Idolatries, than the rest of these Nations.

The *Pagode*, or Idol which they worship, seated upon a brazen Throne, and Crowned with a rich Diadem; From his head issue out four horns; from his mouth four tusks; his eyes fiery like a Glow-worm, his nose flat, and ugly, his visage terrible; his hands like claws, his legs and thighs like those of a Lyon. In a word, we cannot paint the Devil in a more ugly figure than they do their God. Unto this *Pagode* or his *Priest*, they offer the Virginity of all their Daughters: the *Pagode* having in the place of his privy parts a *Baskin* of Gold or Silver, upon which the *Bride* (married most commonly at ten or twelve years of age) is forcibly set; the sharpness of it being such, that it forceth out the blood in great abundance: and if the prove with child that year, it is said to be of his begetting, and more esteemed. Others with more humanity, instead of torturing their daughters on this wretched *Idol* (parallel almost to the offering of their Sons to *Moloch* amongst the *Syrians*) present them to the *Bramini*, or *Idol-Priest*, to be deflowered the first night of the Wedding; and without one of these two handshells no man is suffered to enjoy the use of his Wife, nor their Kings themselves. More privileged yet than many women neighbouring on them, in that they are not compelled to burn themselves with their Husbands bodies; but may have many husbands either successively or at once, as they list themselves: and if at once, the sends her children to that husband (as we know who did) who she thinks to have the best right to them.

The Country very well watered, as we said before, and parted by large Rivers into many Provinces; as if intended naturally to be cut into many Kingdoms. Divided at present, and long since, into those of 1 *Comonor*, 2 *Calicut*, 3 *Cranganor*, 4 *Cochin*, 5 *Cai-Culam*, 6 *Conlan*, and 7 *Travancor*.

C O N O N O R joyneth to *Canara*, extending Southward on the shore about 20 miles, where it bordereth on the Kingdom of *Calicut*. The chief Cities of which 1 *Comonor*, giving name to the whole Kingdom, well built and beautified with a very fair Haven no more false than spacious, capacious of the greatest Vessels; and for that cause much frequented by foreign Merchants; but especially by the *Portugals*, who for the alluring of their trade have here a *Citadelle*, erected and well garrisoned with the Kings Consent. 2 *Cota*, not far from *Cuigeraco*, the border betwixt this and *Canara*. 3 *Peripatan*, on the Confines of *Calicut*. 4 *Marabita*. 5 *Tromapan*. 6 *Main*, intermediate Towns, but not much observable.

2. **CALICUTE**, South from *Comonor*, extending on the Sea-shore 25 Leagues, and situate in the most pleasant and fruitful part of all *Malabar*. Chief Towns whereof, 1 *Pandarane*, on the Skirts of *Comonor*. 2 *Tanor*, a retiring place of the Kings; 3 *Paravangal*, 4 *Chintia*, on the borders of *Cranganor*. 5 *Chala*, a strong place, once in the hands of the *Portugues*; but in the year 1601, recovered by the King of *Calicut*, who had besieged it with an Army of 90000 men. 6 *Capacote*, the Haven of *Calicut*, 7 *Calicut*, the chief City of the Kingdom, to which it gives name, in length upon the Sea three miles and a mile in breadth; containing about 6000 houses, but

but standing some of them far asunder; mean and low built, few of them exceeding the height of a man on horse back; the soil being so hollow and full of water, that it is not capable of the foundation of an heavier building; for that cause unvalued. Inasmuch that Merchants houses are here valued but at 20 Crowns, those of the common sort at no more than ten. Which notwithstanding, of great trading, and much frequented by *Arabians*, *Persians*, *Syrians*, *Indians*, yea the very *Tartars*; these last from the furthest parts of *Carbay* (taking *Carbay* in that general sense as comprehendeth all the Countries of the *Tartary*, between the mount of *Imaur*, and the Eastern Ocean) being 6000 miles distant from it, inasmuch that it is said by some of the *Spanish* Writers, that when *Vesques di Gama*, the first discoverer of the way to the East Countries by the Cape of Good Hope, first arrived in this Haven, he found in it no fewer than 1500 Merchants Ships of all sorts, but without Anchors and the Compass, few of them lit for a Sea-fight, not able to sail (in regard they had not the use of the Compass) but by four winds only. The common Staple in those times of all Indian Merchandise, till distracted into several Ports by the power of the *Portugals*: who being more indolent, and better *Architects*, have forced a foundation on the Shore for a very strong Castle; by which they do command the Haven, and receive Custom of all Merchandise going in and out. The inconvenience whereof being found by the King of *Calicut*, he besieged it with 100000 men, and though the *Portugals* held it out a whole Winter together, yet in the end they were fain to quit it; but first demolished it to the ground, that it might not be made useful to those of *Calicut*. A City of exceeding wealth, and of no less wantonness; the men here using to exchange Wives with one another, to confirm their Amities; and the women spending their whole time in adorning themselves with Rings and Jewels about their ears, necks, legs, arms, and upon their breasts, though going naked for the most part, one would think that a little dressing might suffice them. If covered, it is only with a Smock of *Calicut*, a kind of linen cloth here made, and from hence so called: and that now used but by those of the better sort.

3. **CRANGANOR** lieth on the South of *Calicut*, a small Kingdom, and affording little worth the speaking of; but that a great part of the Inhabitants of it are of those old *Christians*, whom they call *Christians* of *St. Thomas*. *Cranganor*, the chief City, which gives name to the whole, affirmed to be so full of them, that they amount unto the number of 70000; vexed and exposed to publick scorn both by the *Idolaters* and *Mahometans*, amongst whom they live. The City rich, commodiously built for trade, at the mouth of a River, which watering with his crooked streams the most part of the Country, makes it fat and flourishing.

4. **COCHIN**, more South than *Cranganor*, extended on the shore for the space of 40 leagues; and therein many *Christians* of the first Plantation, besides some *Converts* made of latter times by the *Jesuites*. Towns of most note herein 1 *Augamale*, the Arch-bishops See of those ancient *Christians*, fifteen miles from *Cochin*. 2 *Cochin*, a Bishops See, but of later erection, and the chief City of this Kingdom, which takes name from hence. Situate on the mouth or out-let of the River *Mangar*, by which almost encompassed like a *Denny Island*. Of great trade in regard of its Haven, very safe and spacious; as also by the friendship of the *Portugal* Nation. By whose power and favour they have not only freed themselves from the King of *Calicut*, nor whom before they did acknowledge some subjection, but drawn from thence a great part of the traffick also: this King permitting them to erect a Castle on

the Haven, to secure their trade, which the other on good reasons of State forced them to destroy. The King hereof in some respect *superior* unto them of *Calicut*, when a *Vasal* to him: this King being the *Pope*, or chief *Bishop*, as it were of all the *Bramines*: for which cause revered by all the Kings of *Malabar*, (as the *Pope* by many Princes of these Western parts) who look upon him as the head of their *superstition*, and pay him many annual duties.

5. **CALCUTTA** lieth on the South of *Cochin*, with which agreeing both in temper of the Air, and fertility of the Earth; which notwithstanding, the King hereof is not so rich as his other neighbours. Here live also many of the old *Christians*, taking name from *St. Thomas*: but those so destitute of *Priests* and Ministers to instruct them in the Principles of Christianity, that once in three years there came some formerly from the *Patriarch* of *Antioch* in *Asyria* to baptize their Children. Better I hope provided for in these latter days, since their emboldening and reconciliation to the Church of *Rome*. Their chief Town of the same name with the Country, hath a very fair Haven in the fallow of a *Semi-Creeke*, well traded till destroyed by the *Portugals*, but since that re-edified. Of less note there are many both Towns and Villages, but such as do deserve here no particular mention.

6. **COULAN**, upon the South of *Cai-Culam* extended 20 Leagues more Southwards upon the Shores, is said to be destitute of Corn, but plentiful of *Pepper*, and most sorts of Spices. So stored with *Hories*, and fix *Riders* to serve upon them, that the King hereof keeps 20000 *Hories* in continual readiness either for invasion or defence. This Kingdom as the rest before, takes name from the chief City of it, which is called *Conlan* 24 miles from *Cochin*, and once a Member of that Kingdom; of great report for foreign Merchant, by reason of the fair and commodious Haven. In former times the ordinary seat of the *Cobritin*, or chief *Priest* of the *Bramines*, till moved to *Cochin*; and held to be the Metropolis Mother City of all *Malabar*, the rest being thought to be but Colonies of this. Both in the City and the Country there are many *Christians*, as well of the original foundation of Christianity, as of the late improvements which are made by the *Jesuites*.

7. **TRAVANCOR**, called also *TRANCA-NOR* reacheth from the Kingdom of *Conlan*, to the Cape of *Comari*, and turning towards the East, bendeth again unto the North, as far as *Cai* in the Kingdom of *Bijagar* or *Narvinga*. By which account it hath the benefit of the Sea on all sides except towards the North: reaching in breadth from the West Seas unto the East about 90 miles. The Country as the rest before, inhabited by many with the name *Christians*; if they may be called so which want *Sacraments*: the condition of these *Thomasian* Christians in former times being so unhappy, that in 50 years before the coming of the *Jesuites*, (if the *Jesuites* may be believed from whom we have it) they had seen no *Priest*, nor other Minister of the Gospel. Chief Towns hereof, (for of those many others of less note I shall make no mention) are 1 *Travancor*, the chief City, which gives name to the Province, but neither well built, nor of very much trading. 2 *Quilane*, the head City of a Signory, but held of the King of *Travancor*, as their next and immediate Lords; though all those Kings also *Enduaries* of the Crown of *Narvinga*. And were that the worst *Town* by which they hold, it might be tolerable; but there is a matter of worse consequence which attendeth these beset Princes. The Kingdom here is but a pomp of 12 years continuance, and then endeth in a sad *Catastrophe*. For at the end of those twelve years, the King repairs to *Quilane*, prayeth before the *Idol* above-mentioned, then mounteth

mounteth on a Scaffold covered with Silk or Tapestry; and in the sight of all his People, gathered together to behold this strange solemnity, cutteth off his nose, ears, lips, and other parts, which he calls towards the *Idol*, and in conclusion cuts his own throat for his final Sacrifice: his designed Successor being present at this bloody Sacrifice, who at the twelve years end is to do the like. Never was *Seceper* bought at so dear a rate. For though all *Cronus* be lined with *thorns*, yet here the pomps of Sovereignty be less lasting than in other places; the entrance full of tears and the end of horrors.

These Kingdoms heretofore but one, till the year 900 or thereabouts, were branched and canonized into three: seven by *Srama Perimal*, the sole Monarch. He by the solicitations of some *Arabians*, trading to his Ports, became *Mahometan*; and therein so devout, that he resolved upon a Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, there to end his days. At his departure he divided his Estates into three: seven parts, distributing them amongst the nearest of his Kindred; assigning unto him of *Culam* the preeminence in sacred matters: and the Imperial dignity unto him of *Calicut*, with the title of *Samin*, that is so say, *Chief Emperor*, or as some write, a God on Earth. He only privileged with the right and power of *Coinage*, the rest to be subordinate, if not subject to him. From *Perimal*'s setting forwards to the City of *Mecca*, the *Malabars* accompt their reckonings, and begin their years; as the *Christians* from the birth of their Lord and Saviour. And for a time his Helts were punctually observed. But the Kingdom of *Calicut* being weakened by the power of the *Portugals*, the other Kings began to free themselves from that subjection; and in the end cut off all relation to him, and to his *Predecessors*. Yet still he is esteemed of more Power and Majesty than any of the rest of the Kings of *Malabar*; and looked on with more reverence than any of them. The certainty of his *Revenues* have no firm met with, but conjecture them to be very great; where in regard of that infinite trading which is managed from most parts of the World in this Port of *Calicut*, the Customs and Imposts upon which must needs be of exceeding value; and secondly in reference to the wealth of private Merchants, many of which are said to equal some Kings in *Africa*; and the Dukes in *Europe* not a few.

Quid Domini faciant? autem cum talia Fures,

And if the man such Riches have,

Then what must he that keeps the Knave?

What *Fores* he is able to raise may be fully seen by that which hath been said before; wherein we find him with an Army of 90000 men besieging and taking in the Forts of *Chalen*, with another of 100000 beleaguering the Castle which the *Portugals* had built near the City of *Calicut*. And when the said *Portugals* stirred up the King of *Cochin* to make head against him, he fell upon them suddenly, both by Sea and Land, with 60000 Land-Soldiers, and 200 good Vessels of War for his Service at Sea. Sufficient force to reduce the rest of these petty Kings to their old acknowledgments, but that some of them to avoid the danger, have put themselves under the *Vassalage*, or protection at the least, of the *Great Monarch*: others by suffering the *Portugals* to build Forts in their Kingdoms, have engaged them in defence of their Estate against this pretender. His Forces consist most of Foot, Horse being unserviceable in these Countries, by reason of these many Rivers which interlace it, and these Foot are compounded most of *Gentry*, which they there call *Nairs*, trained to their Weapons when they are but seven years of Age; every one to that Weapon which he most delighteth in, which makes them very expert and nimble at them; much privileged for that cause by the

Laws of the Country, and so esteemed of by the King, that out of them his Sisters chuse what men they please to their *Husbands*, some of them by that means bring made the Fathers of the King succeeding.

Nothing else memorable touching the affairs of *Calicut*, but the way of succession to the Kingdom; the Crown descending upon none of the Kings Children, but on the son of his eldest Sister, or nearest Kinwoman. For being that one of the *Bramins* hath always the maiden-head of his Queens, and that some of these *Stallions* are continually allowed to keep them company, it is presumed, or very probably supposed, that the Queens Children are the *Bramins*, and not the Kings.

8. NARSINGA

NARSINGA is bounded on the South, with *Tra- vancor*, on the West, with the Mountain *Gates*; on the North, with *Orissan* or *Orissa*, on the East, with the Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Narsinga* the chief City of it, and the Royal Residence of the King.

The Country is said to be in length 600 miles, or as some say, of as much extent as can be travelled in six months, plentiful in the same Commodities which the rest of *India* doth afford, except Pepper and some other Spices which are proper to *Malabar*. Not so well furnished with Rivers as some other places: which want is liberally supplied by water falling from the Mountains and received into trenches, meers, and *Lakes*, which do wonderfully cool, moisten and enrich the Land, causing the Corn and Cattel to prosper above all imagination. Most destitute in this kind is the Province of *Choromandel*, in which if any year passeth without rain, they fall into such extremities, that they are fain to fall their children.

The people in Religion, *Gentiles*, so worshipping one God, as the Lord of all, which is taught them by the light of nature, that they joy in the *Devil* or their *Pagods* in Communion with him, whereto induced by the persuasion of their beauly *Bramins*, who thereout suck no small advantage. Some *Christians* there are intermixt of the old *Plantation*; especially in *Malapur*, and the Region of *Choromandel*; but not so well instructed in the Principles of their own belief, as to be able to convince or convert the *Gentiles*, nor to diswade them from the use of some *Heathenish* Customs though barbarous, inhumane, and against all reason; nor used in any place, but amongst the *Indians*. Amongst which I reckon for most savage, the forcing of poor women to burn themselves with their husbands bodies; the women kindred, not the husbands, thrusting them on these hard conditions; who reckon it a disgrace to their Family, if he should refuse. And because they will be sure not to have that infamy stick upon them, they have ordered that the woman who shall so refuse; must shave her head, and break her Jewels, and not be suffered to eat, drink, or sleep, or company with any body till her death. A life more miserable than the Flames which they seek to shun. This makes them leap into the fire with joy and greediness, and to contend which shall be foremost; the being thought to have been most loving during his life, which is now most willing to accompany him in his death, and offer her self to his *Mans*, at the Funeral Pile: wherunto thus alluded the Poet:

*Et certamen habent, lesbi, qua viro sequatur
Conjunctio; pudor off non licuisse mori.
Arden vinctricis, & prebent pectora flamma;
Imponuntque suis ora perissa viris.
A flame 'tis to die; they therefore strive,
Who may be fain'd to follow him alive.*

The

The *Victor* burns, yields to the flame her brest;
And her burnt face doth on her husband rest.

Chief Cities of this Country, 1 *Cal*, on the borders of *Tra- vancor*, belonging anciently to the Kings of *Culam*, now to those of *Narsinga*, the people wherabout called *Paravi*, are a kind of *Christians*, who live for the most part by fishing for *Pearls*; which they sell to the *Portugals*, and *Bengalan* Merchants. 2 *Golkonda*, the chief City of the Province called *Mysul-patan*, the Lord whereof is a *Moor*, of the *Sophian* Sect; but a Vassal to the Kings of *Narsinga*. 3 *Chamagrin*, one of the Seat-Royals of *Narsinga*, four miles from *Chamagrin*, memorable for a yearly Feast here celebrated in honour of *Perimal* (once sole King of *Malabar*) reckoned for a Saint at least in these parts of *India*: the offerings at which accountably amount unto 200000 Crowns. 5 *Chadamaram*, the Mother-City of those *Pagan* Solemnities, which are done to *Perimal*, who hath here a Temple endowed with 30000 Ducats of Annual Rent, all consumed by the *Bramins* belonging to it, who pretend to have been born out of *Perimal*'s head. 6 *Madura*, honoured with the residence of the *Chuchananda*, or the chief that in this Town, and the Territories of it only, are thought to be no fewer than an hundred thousand. The seat also of one of three *Nabibs*, or Tributary Kings of the Crown of *Narsinga*, the other two residing at 7 *Gingi*, and 8 *Tanajo*, the chief Towns of their Principality, but not else observable. 9 *Malapur*, called also *St. Thomas*, from an opinion that the body of the *Apostle* was here interred: martyred here by the *Idolaters Indians*, whose Posterity in other things like unto other men, are said to have one leg and foot as big as an *Elephant*: a punishment inflicted on the whole Generation for the sin of their Ancestors. How true this I cannot say, but sure I am that *Dorothus* faith, that he rested at *Calamina*, where he was slain with *Dart*. However the *Portugals*, to make some use of the old Tradition, removed some bones from this place, which were said to be his, and enshrined them in *Goa*, their own City; much visited by profitable *Pilgrims*, to their great enriching. The City once so large and populous, that it contained 330 Temples, for the use of divers Nations which reformed thither. In these latter days desolate and forlorn, inhabited only by some old *Christians*, till the *Portugues* began to people it with new Colonies. 10 *Choramandel* giving name to a large Sea-Coast, lying on the West-side of the Gulf of *Bengala*. 11 *Casta*, a Town of *Choramandel*, in which the woman is not burned with her Husband, as in other places of this Country, but buried quick in the same grave with him. 12 *Nagapatam*, in the same Region, inhabited for the most part by *St. Thomas Christians*. 13 *Tarnasari*, once the chief City of a Kingdom so called, the King whereof was able to bring into the field 100000 Horse and Foot, and 100 armed Elephants, but now subject to the King of *Narsinga*. The people black, but so out of love with their own colour, that they willingly prostitute their Wives or Daughters, to any people of a whiter and more clear complexion. 14 *Bijnagar*, once the chief City of this Kingdom, whence the King is sometimes called the King of *Bijnagar*. In those times 24 miles in compass, with nine Gates in it, (amongst others) continually guarded with Soldiers; and a magnificent Palace, not elsewhere equalled. In the year 1565, sacked by four of the *Mahometan* Kings of *Decan*, who with their joyned Forces had invaded this Kingdom; it became desolate and forsaken; and the Court removed to *Tenagard*, eight days journey within the Land (*Bijnagar* being seated on the borders of *Decan*) but long it had not staid there when removed to 16 *Narsinga*, where

it hath ever since been fixed, which is now the chief City of this Kingdom, unto which it gives name; though the King many times calls himself by the name of that City where he resideth for the present.

Of the Antiquity of this Kingdom I have little to say, these Eastern parts not being known at all till these later times, not well known in these. About the year 1550 their King then reigning, was imprisoned by three of his Captains or Commanders, who showed him only once a year to his Subjects, paying the power and government amongst themselves. He being dead, and his Son kept in the like restraint, *Romavago* the first Captain ascended the Throne, *Timarago* managed the Estate, and *Bengale* commanded the Army. But these Officers being overthrown by the Kings of *Decan*, in the year 1565, *Timarago* the Survivor took the charge of all; whose Son, to make himself sure of the Kingdom, murdered his imprisoned Sovereign (the life & liberty of Kings being much of a date) when followed many broils and troubles touching the succession, till settled in the person of *Christinam*, the undoubted Heir: who did not only restore peace and quiet to *Narsinga* it self, but recovered *Camara* out of the hands of the *Idalcan*, who had before endangered his estate therein. Of the great Army which he led against this *Idalcan*, we have spoke already; adding here only, that before he went upon this enterprise (called the journey of *Rachol*) he sacrificed in nine days 2036 Beasts to the Country Idols, the flesh whereof he caused to be distributed amongst the poor. Routed at first, and being 100000 by some about him to go out of the field, he is said to have made this Noble Answer, *That he had rather the Idalcan should boast that he had slain him, than vainglorious him*. And thereupon leaping into the thickest of his Enemies, and well followed by the valiantest of his Friends, he obtained the Victory. But this vast Army of 600000 Foot, 30000 Horse, 537 Elephants with necessaries answerable to such infinite multitudes, speaks only what he can do on extreme necessity, or when he had some long time of preparation, as he had in that Action. The power of Kings is better measured by their standing Forces, than by necessitated *Levies*. And herein this Prince comes not much short of his greatest Neighbours: his standing Bands consisting of 40000 *Nairs*, or Gentlemen of his own Kingdom, which serve on foot; 20000 Horse, who are either *Persians* or *Arabians*, and 200 Elephants, well paid, and kept in continual readiness; his Foot defrayed out of his *Revenues*, his Horse maintained like the *Turks Timariots*, out of certain Lands distributed amongst his Captains (some of which are said to have a million of Crowns per annum) to furnish him with these stable Bands of Horse and Elephants.

As for his *Revenue*, it is reckoned at 12 millions yearly, out of which he is thought to lay up three; defraying with the rest the expence of his Household, and the entertainment of his Foot. This Sum amassed together out of the Lands, Mines, and Forrefts of the Country, which are wholly his; and the waters of some Rivers (sold by him to his Subjects) which he monopolizeth, the common people having nothing but their Arms and Labour. Of which, the Mines, Forrefts, & one third of the Lands, he retaineth to himself; the other two being divided amongst his Captains. So that it is no marvel if so rich a Country yield him such an income, considering it is all his own. I do rather wonder (of the two) it should yield no more.

9. ORISTAN.

ORISTAN or **ORIXA**, is bounded on the South, with *Narfinga*; on the West, with *Dely* and *Saugas*; on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Botanter*; on the East, with the Gulf *Bengala*, and part of *Patanaw* or *Patanu*, so called from *Orissa*, the Chief City of it.

The Country hath plenty of Rice, cloath of Cotton, and a fine stuff like silk, made of grass, and there called *Tervu*; with which, together with *Long Pepper*, *Ginger*, *Marabolum*, and other Commodities here growing, they use to load 25 or 30 Ships from the Haven of *Orissa* only. The people so well governed, or so hating their, that in the time of their own Kings, before they came under the *Monguls*, a man might have travelled with Gold in his hand without any danger. In other points, of the same temper and religion with the rest of the *Indians* subject to that Prince.

It is generally well watered, and interlaced with many Rivers, which do much moisten and refresh it, but none so beneficial to the Kings hereof as the River *Guanga* (of old called *Chiberis*) the waters whereof esteemed sacred by the Kings of *Caliente* and *Narfinga*, and much used by them in their sacrifices and superstitious purgations, are wholly ingrossed by this King, who selleth them to those Princes at exorbitant rates. Besides which Rivers it is watered with a fair Sea-coast, of 350 miles in length; that is to say, from *Cape Guadurino* in the South, which divides it from the Realm of *Narfinga*, to *Cape Legorra* in the East, which parts it from *Bengala*. But for all that not very much traded, because not so well provided of commodious Havens, as many other *Indian* Provinces of a far less Territory.

Towns of most note herein, 1. *Orissa*, on the Sea-side or not far from it, the best traded Port of all this Kingdom; to which the name thereof is to be ascribed, as the Head City of the Country. 2. *Careba*, six days journey within the Land, the ordinary residence of their Kings: before it was subdued by the *Great Mongul*. 3. *Angeli*, a well frequented Port, at the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; from whence many Ships are yearly laden with *Indian* Wares. 4. *Bacoli* or *Bacola*, more within the Land, and once the head City of a Kingdom, but a very poor one. 5. *Simergan*, where they held it an impiety to eat flesh, or kill any beast. 6. *Senerpate*, of which little memorable. Nor do I find any thing which deserves much memory in the affairs of this Kingdom, but that the Kings hereof were *Gentils*, subdued not many years since by the King of *Patanaw*; and both grown weaker by that War, by *Echebar*, the *Great Mongul*.

10. BOTANTER.

BOTANTER (under which name I comprehend all those Petit Kingdoms which are crowded together in the North and North-East of this part of *India*) hath on the South, *Orissan* and *Patanaw*; on the West, the River *Guanga* or *Chiberis*, by which parted from the Realms of *Pengab*; on the North, the *Zagabian Tartars*, divided from it by some branches of Mount *Tartars*; on the East the famous River *Ganges*. So called from *Boria*, the principal City of *Botanter*; which is the chief of these small Kingdoms.

The Country great, of three months journey in extent, full of high Mountains, one of which may be seen five days journey off: in which are said to dwell a people with ears of a span long or more, without otherwise those of the Valleys count as *Ases*. In those parts which are next

Pengab, they are white, and *Gentils*; in others, more inclined to the *Olive* colour. Their garments they wear close to their bodies, so freight that one cannot see a pleat or wrinkle; and those they never put off by night nor day whilst they are able to hang on: nor do they walk at any time, for fear of defiling so pure a Creature as the water. Contented with one Wife (deferred to be held a miracle in these Eastern parts) and yet *cobhis* not with her after two or three Children. When any of them die, the *Soub-fayer* is to tell them what to do with his body, according to whose direction (first consulting his books) they burn, bury, or eat it. Few Towns of note there are amongst them. The principal, 1. *Butia*, the Metropolis of it. 2. *Clamur*, of which little memorable. 3. *Kakres*, the second Kingdom of this rank, large, but exceeding mountainous, as being over run by the branches of Mount *Causalis*, which divides it from *Tartary*. So named of *Kakres* the chief Town thereof, by some called *Negavrit*, their Staples for the sale of their cloth (most of the people being *Weavers*) bought of them by the *Chimoy*, and *Tartarian* Merchants, who resort frequently to those Markets. This is a distinct Kingdom of its self, the Kings whereof are called *Dermian*, but *Vasals* to the *Great Mongul*. And so is he of 3. *COUCHE*, another Kingdom of this Tract, fronting upon *Cachin-China*, beyond *Ganges*, so called from *Couche*, the chief Town of it. The Country rich, by reason that it may be drowned, and dried up again, when the people will: full of good pastures by that means, and those well stored with Sheep, Goats, Swine, Deer, and other Cattel; though the people neither kill nor eat them, but on the contrary build Hospitals for them, in which when lame and old, they are kept while they die. Yet many times they eat their money, and I cannot blame them; their small money being *Almonds*.

4. *GOUREN*, the most Northern Realm in this general division, so called of *Gor*, or *Gren*, the chief Town of it. The Country in some parts mountainous, out of which springeth the River *Sinly*, one of the Tributaries unto *Ganges*, the rest a kind of a Desert or unpeopled Country, joyneth close to *Couche*, in which are few Villages, grass (or reeds rather) longer than a man, and therein many *Buffs*, *Tigers*, and other wild Beasts; none wilder than the Thieves, who frequent the Wildernesses.

In this Tract also are the Kingdoms of 5. *RAME* and 6. *RECON*, joyning upon *Zagabath*, or inclining towards it; possessed by the *Mongul Tartars* from the time of *Tamerlane*, if not before: but *Fendataries* to the Kings of *Chadul* or *Aracholia*, who commanded in the North-East of *Persia*, and these North parts of *India*; and from those places drew his Army or the greatest part of it, when called unto the aid of *Galgae*, the King of *Manda*. Here is also the Kingdom of 7. *TIPPURA*, naturally fenced with Hills and Mountains, and by that means hitherto defended against the *Mongul Tartars*, their bad Neighbours, with whom they have continual wars. But of these Northern Kingdoms lying towards *Tartary*, there is but little to be said; and that little of no certain knowledge, those parts being hitherto so untravelled, that they may pass in the Account of a *Terra Incognita*.

11. PATANAW.

PATANAW or **PATANAW**, is bounded on the North with the Realm of *Botanter*; on the East, with *Ganges*; on the West, with *Orissan*; and on the South, with the Kingdom and Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Patanu* the chief City of it. There is another Kingdom

Kingdom of this name in the further *India*: but whether it were so called because a Colony of this; or from some resemblances in the nature of the several Countries, or from the signification of the word in the *Indian* Language, I am not able to determine. Certain I am, that though they have the same name, yet they are under several Governments, and situate in far distant places: no otherwise agreeing than in some resemblances, as *Holland* in the *Low-Countries* doth with *Holland* in *Lincolshire*.

The Country yieldeth veins of Gold, which they dig out of the pits, and walk away the earth from it in great Bolls. The people tall, and of slender making, many of them old: great Praters, and as great dillblers. The women be so bedecked with Silver and Copper, especially about the feet, that they are not able to endure a shoe. Both Sexes use much walling in the open Rivers, and that too intermix together in their natural nakedness, especially such as live near the banks of the River *Jamena* (esteemed more holy than the rest) which from *Agra* passing thorow this Country falleth into *Ganges*.

Chief Towns herof, 1. *Patanu*, a large Town and a long one, built with very broad streets, but the houses very mean and poor, made at the best of earth and hurdles, and thatched over head. The Metropolis of this Kingdom, because the ancientest, and that which gives the name unto it. 2. *Banaras*, a great Town on *Ganges*, to which the Gentiles from remote Countries use to come in *Pilgrimages*, to bath themselves in the holy waters of that River. The Country betwixt this and *Patanaw*, very fair and flourishing, and beautified on the Rode with handsome Villages. 2. *Siripur*, the chief Seat of one of the old Princes of this Country; not yet subdued by the *Great Mongul*. 4. *Candecan*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; the Seat of another of their Kings. One of which memorable for a trick put upon the *Jeisus*, when blamed by them for the worship of so many *Pagodes*, as contrary both to the Law of God and Nature; For causing them to rehearse the *Decalogue*, he told them that he did offend no more against those commandments in worshipping so many *Pagodes*, that they themselves in worshipping so many *Saints*. 3. *Satagan*, a fair City (for a City of *Moors*) once part of *Patanaw*, since ascribed to *Bengala*.

The people of this Country properly called *Patanaw*; but corruptly *Partians*, were once of great command and power in these parts of *India*. Lords, for a time, of a great part of the Kingdom of *Bengala*, into which driven by *Behurca*, the *Mongul Tartar*, the Father of *Emmampada*, and Grandfather of *Echebar*. Their last King being slain in that war, twelve of their chief Princes joyned in an *Arbitracy*, and warring upon *Emmampada* had the better of him. After this, their Successors attempted *Orissan*, and added that also to their Estate, but they could not long make good their fortunes, subdued by *Echebar* the *Mongul*, and made subject to him. Three of them, viz. the Prince of *Siripur*, the King of *Candecan*, and he whom they call *Majadadim*, retain, as yet (for ought I can learn unto the contrary) as well their ancient *Paganism* as their natural liberty. The other nine, together with *Mahometanism*, have vassalised themselves to the *Great Mongul*, now the Lord Paramount of the Country.

12. BENGALA.

BENGALA is bounded on the North, with *Patanaw*; on the East, with the Kingdoms of *Pegu*; on the South and West, with the Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Bengala* the chief City of it. It containeth

in length on the Gulf and River 366 miles, and as much in breadth into the Land. A country stored with all things necessary to the life of man, great plenty of *Wheat*, *Rice*, *Sugar*, *Ginger*, and *long Pepper*. Such abundance of *Silk*, and *Cotton*, and of flesh and fish, that it is impossible that any Country should exceed it in those commodities. And which crowns all, blest with so temperate and sweet an Air, that it draws thither people of all sorts to inhabit it. Here is also amongst other rarities, a Tree, called *Mofes*, which beareth so delicate a fruit, that the *Jews* and *Mahometans* who live here, affirm it to be the fruit which made *Adam* to sin.

The natural Inhabitants for the most part are of white complexion, like the *Europeans*, subtil of wit, and of a curious disposition; well skilled in dealing in the world, much given to traffick, and intelligent in the way of Merchandise, if not somewhat deceitful. Not ignorant of other Arts, but with some smattering in *Philosophy*, *Physick*, & *Astrology*. Stately and delicate both in their Diet and Apparel: not naked, as in others of these *Indian* Provinces, but clothed in a shirt or smock reaching to their feet, with some upper Garment over that. The women of an ill name for their unchastity, though *Adultery* be punished with cutting off of their noses. Neat, if not curious and too costly in this one custom, that they never seeth meat twice in the same Pot, but for every boiling buy a new one. In Religion, for the most part *Mahometans*, especially on the Sea-shores, which lay most open and commodious to the *Arabians*, by whom *Mahometanism* was planted many Ages since.

Of Rivers we need take no care, having spoken of *Ganges*; that with its many channels may abundantly serve to water so small a Province. But herof more anon in a place more proper. Proceed we now unto the Cities. The principal whereof, 1. *Bengala*, which gave name to the whole Kingdom, situate on a branch of the River *Ganges*, and reckoned for one of the most beautiful Towns of all the *Indies*. Exceedingly enriched by trade, but more by *Pilgrimages*, by reason of the holiness and divine operations ascribed by the *Indians* to the waters of it: there being few years in which not visited by three or four hundred thousand *Pilgrims*. 2. *Gowro*, the Seat Royal of the ancient Kings. 3. *Caigan*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*, a well-traded Port. 4. *Taxda*, once a Town of great traffick, and situate in those times on the banks of *Ganges*, now by the changing of the channel (occasioned by the frequent over-flowing of it) above a League off from the River. 5. *Porto Grande*, and 6. *Porto Pequeno*, two Towns of the *Portugals*; but without Forces for defence, or rules for Governments. Places like the *Ashim*, which was built by *Romulus*: whereunto such as dare not stay in their own Countries, or any well regulated Cities, use to make their resort; privileged here to live in all kind of licentiousness.

Here is also in the North parts of this Province, or adjoining to it, the City and Kingdom of *ARACHAN*: lying along the banks of *Ganges*, but so remote from the Sea, that it is 50 miles distant from the nearest branch of it. Wealthy, and populous withal; governed heretofore by a King of its own, so wallowing in wealth and sensual pleasures, that he had in this City, and the parts adjoining twelve Royal palaces or *Sragios*, all stowed with women for his lust. Now subject with *Bengala* and *Patanaw*, betwixt which it lyeth, to the Empire of the *Great Monguls*.

There are some small Islands in the Gulf of *Bengala* which I account unto that Kingdom. 1. *Baracata*, now called *Basse*. 2. *Barassa*, of which name there are five in *Ptolomy*, three of them by *Mercator* said to be *Mindanao*, *Cailon*, and *Sibus*. 3. Two, called the Islands of *Good* Bbbbb 2 *Fortique*.

Fortune, by him placed under the *Aquator*, and said to be inhabited by *Anthropophagi*, or man-eaters; as also were three more which he calls *Asadadibez*, now named *Caiman*, *5* *Isufite Satyrorum*, or the Isles of *Satyr*s, three in number, the people whereof were reported to have tails like Satyr's. And 6 those called *Mamiole*, in number ten, (now *Isles de Procel*) reported by *Ptolemy* to be so stored with *Adamant* bones, that they violently drew to them any ships or vessels which had Iron in them; for which cause they which used these Seas fastened the planks of their Ships with wooden Pins. But our later *Navigators* find no such matter, unless perhaps it may be in the exploits of *Sir Han of Bourdeaux*, where indeed we meet with such an Island, in the course of his *Errantrie*.

But to return again to the Kingdom of *Bengala*, we find it of different constitution from the rest of the Kingdoms of these parts. Not governed by a Family of Successive Princes, descended from the Stem of a Royal Ancestry, as others are. Chance, or necessity, had brought thither many *Habassins*, or *Ethiopi*ans, who made a Conquest of the Country; and chose a King out of themselves. To keep what they had gotten, and perpetuate the Regal honour to the *Habassin* Nation, they procured thence yearly thirty thousands of *Slaves*, whom they trained up unto the wars, advanced unto the highest commands in *Civil* and *Military* service; and out of them elected one for their Lord and Sovereign; as the *Mamlucks* in the Kingdom of *Aegypt*, whom herein they followed. By some *Arabians* trading with them, they came in time to admit *Mahometanism*, amongst them; on the Sea-coasts especially. Dispossessed first of some part of their Kingdom, lying about *Satagan*, by the *Patanians*, when driven to seek new dwellings by *Babur*, the *Mongul Tartar*; and of their whole Kingdom, by the valour and good fortune of *Echebar*, who added it unto the rest of his Estate.

Thus have we drawn together all the *Indian* Provinces on this side of *Ganges* (the Kingdoms of *Malabar* and *Narsinga* being left a *Parentless* in the construction of this sentence) into the hands of the *Mongul*. So called for his descent from the *Mongul Tartars*, one of five great Tribes or Nations into which that people were divided. Derived originally from the famous and mighty *Tamerlane*, who having added almost all the Greater and Lesser *Asia* unto his Estates, left *Persia*, with the parts of *India* which lay nearest to it on the North, to *Myrza Charok*, his fourth Son. But his issue failing in *Abdalla*, the fourth of that Line, those Estates fell to *Abusaid*, descended from *Murouchka*, the third Son of *Tamerlane*: Whose Son and Successor called *Zeuser*, by some *Mahometans*, being dispossessed of the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Persia*, by *Ussun-Cullines*, the rights of all, with the possession of *Arachusia* (now called *Cabul*) and *Paropamisus* (now *Candahor* or *Sablestan*) together with so much of *India* as was held by those Princes, remained in *Hamed*, one of the younger Sons of *Abusaid*: whose Posterity laying hold on such opportunities as were offered to them, have made themselves Masters in few years of this mighty Empire. Whose Successors and their achievements we shall here present.

The Great Mongul.

1473 1 *Hamed*, the son of *Abusaid*, of the Race of *Tamerlane*, after the Conquest of *Persia* by *Ussun-Cullines*, succeeded in *Cabul*, *Candahor*, and the parts of the Realms of *India* subject to the *Tartars*.

1500 2 *Babur* or *Baburax*, in danger to be dispossessed of most of his Estates by the neighbouring

Uzbekes, living upon the borders of *Persia*, *Tartary*, and *India*, whom at last he quieted, enlarging his dominions by the Conquests of some part of *Patanians*, and other Kingdoms in the North.

1532 3 *Hameey*, the Son of *Babur* or *Baburax*, commonly called *Emanpaxda*, vanquished by the *Parthians* or *Patanians*, and their confederates, craved aid of *Tamas*, the second *Persian* Monarch of this Line, on promise to conform to the *Sophism* Self: and by that aid confirmed and settled his affairs; but held himself to the Principles of his *Irreligion*.

4 *Merhamed* or *Miraminudin*, Son of *Emanpaxda* called in by *Galgee* the King of *Mandao*, against *Badurius* the *Cambian*, vanquished the *Cambian* King in two pitched fields; and conquered the Kingdoms of *Mandao*, and *Balssia*, with some other Provinces.

5 *Adabar* the Son of *Merhamed*, added the Realms of *Delly* and *Cambai*, unto his Dominions.

1550 6 *Mohomet Seladdin*, commonly called *Echebar*, brother of *Adabar*, the most fortunate and victorious Prince of all his Family, subdued the Kingdoms of *Caximier*, *Agra*, *Decan*, *Orissa*, *Bengala*, *Patanians* and divers others of less note.

1605 7 *Selim*, surnamed *Jangheere*, the Son of *Echebar*, who added nothing that I hear of, to his Fathers Conquests.

1627 8 *Blockie*, the Grand-child of *Selim* by his eldest Son, (wickedly murdered by the practice of *Curroon* or *Agra*) proclaimed King on the death of his Grand-Father; but shortly after made away by *Asaph Chawn*, so to make room for

1627 9 *Curroon*, the third Son of *Selim* or *Jangheere*, and Son-in-law unto *Asaph Chawn*, having by his own Ministers, and the hands of his Father-in-law, murdered the proclaimed King, his Nephew, and all the other Princes of the Royal blood succeeded into the Estates, and was Crowned at *Agra*. A wicked and bloody Prince, still living for ought I hear to the contrary.

To look a little on these Princes, their estate and power; in matters of *Religion* they have generally been *Mahometans*, that *Religion* being long since embraced by the *Tartars*, from whom they originally descended. But not so scrupulous or precise in that profession, as to endeavour the suppressing of any other opinions: both *Echebar* and his Son *Jangheere*, being so inclined unto *Christianity*, that they permitted the *Jesuits* to build Colleges and Churches in *Agra* it self, the Imperial City, and many other chief Cities in his Dominions. Of *Echebar* it is reported, that being doubtful what *Religion* to adhere unto, he caused 30 Infants to be so brought up that neither their Nurses nor any body else should speak unto them; relolving to addit himself to the Religion of that Country, whose Language should be spoken by them, as most agreeable to nature, and he did accordingly. For as those Children spake no Language, so was he positive and resolved in no Religion: able to see the vanities of *Mahometans*, and the horrible impieties of the *Gentiles*, but not willing to conform unto the strictness of *Christianity*. And though *Selim* who succeeded, to content his *Mahometan* Subjects declared himself for that *Religion*, yet his affairs being once settled, and his Throne confirmed, he became as *Neutral* as his Father: Sultan *Curroon* now Reigning,

Reigning, of the same *Neutrality*, and 'tis well he is so; there being no Religion so impure and bloody, which he would not dishonour by his known ungracious acts.

The Language spoken by these Princes, and their natural Subjects the *Mogores*, or *Mongul Tartars*, is said by some to be the *Turkish*. But I think rather, that it is some Language near it, than the very same: And that the Language which they speak is the ancient *Scythian* or *Tartarian*, from which the *Turks* (a *Scythian* people) differ but in *Dialect*, a sprinkling of the *Persian* intermixt amongst them. A mixture not to be denied in regard of their long dwelling in that Country, the intercourse which their Subjects of those parts have with those of *India*; and that the greatest part of their Soldiers, Officers, and Commanders are supplied from thence.

Their Government is absolute, if not *Tyrannical*, the Great *Mongul* being Lord of all, and heir to every man's estate which is worth the having: the Persons and Purses of his Subjects at his sole disposing; so that he may amass what Treasures, and raise what Forces for the Wars his need requireth; or the *Avarice* or *Ambition* of his Ministers call suggest unto him. First, for his Treasures, it is conceived that his Revenue doth amount yearly to fifty Millions of Crowns; and there are reasons to persuade that it may be more. The Country very rich, and notably well traded from all parts of the world, the *Impost* upon which, is of infinite value; besides the vast sums of money brought into his Dominions from all Countries whatsoever, which hold traffick here; their Commodities not being to be parted with but for ready Coyne. The whole Land being also his, he estates it out for no term certain, retaining a third part of the profits to himself, and leaving two thirds to the *Occupants*, to be held by them during pleasure. Who if they thrive upon their bargains, they thrive not for themselves, but him: it being in his power, if he want patience to expect the Incumbents death, to enter on the whole estate of the *Tenant* by the way of *Echebar*: but if he tarry till the death of the *Occupant*, it falls to him of course, the Wife and Children of the deceased being fairly dealt with, if he content himself with the personal estate, and leave the Land to them to begin a new; for Instance, of those huge sums which in so rich a Country may be had this way, it is said, that when the *Viceroy* of *Lahor* dyed, he left to *Echebar* three Millions of Gold, besides Silver, Jewels, Horfes, Elephants, Furniture and Goods almost invaluable. And of one *Raga Gagner*, another of his great Officers, that at his death the Great *Mongul* seized of his into his hands 3300 pound weight of Gold, besides Plate, and Jewels. Besides these means of heaping Treasure, all the Mines of the Country are wholly his, and the *Presents* given by all sorts of *Suters*, hardly to be numbered; none being admitted to his presence which comes empty handed. Finally if *Badurius*, which was King of *Cambai* only, could bring into the field at once 500 Tun of Gold and Silver to pay his Army; and after the loss of all that treasure, advanced upon the sudden the sum of 600000 Crowns, which he lent to *Solyman* the *Magnificent* to come to succor him; both which it is well known he did: What infinite Treasures must we think his Prince to be Master of, who hath more than four times the estate of the King of *Cambai*, and far more trading now than in former times?

By the like Parallel we may conjecture somewhat at his Forces also; *Badurius* the *Cambian* brought into the field against *Merhamed*, and the King of *Mandao*, as was partly touched upon before, 150000 Horfe, 500000 Foot, 2000 Elephants armed, 2000 Pieces of brass Ordnance, of which were 4 *Bastisks*, each of them drawn with 100 yoke of Oxen; and 500 Carts loaded with Powder

and Shot. What then may we conceive of this Prince, who is Lord of so much a greater Estate than he, but that his *Levies* may be raised proportionably to so great Dominions? But because possibly *Badurius* did extend himself to the utmost of his power, and having lost two Battels, would do but in great extremities: It is conceived that the *Mongul*, without running any such hazards on the loss of a Battell can in an instant raise 50000 Elephants, 300000 Horfe and Foot proportionable; and yet have flock enough for an *After-game*, if that he should chance to lose the first. But it is seldom that he hath advanced to so high a *Myfter*. For in his action upon the Kingdoms of *Decan*, he had but an hundred thousand men; and a thousand Elephants for fight; though possibly of all sorts of people there might be more than double that number. For in his ordinary removes in times of *Progress*, it is said that his followers of all sorts amount unto two hundred thousand; and that his Tents do usually take up as much ground as the City of *London*. Yet notwithstanding this great power, the fortunes of this Empire hath not only been at a stand, since the death of *Echebar*; but the *Rajpootes* in *Cambai*, the *Venazarris* in *Decan*, and other pusillat Rebels in other parts of his dominions, hold out still against him; some of them being said to command as much Land as a pretty good Kingdom, and to have always in readines 20000 horfe, and 50000 foot, to make good their Mountains. Nature, or Divine Providence hath given to Empires, as to Men, a determinate growth, beyond which there is no exceeding.

2. INDIA EXTRA GANGET.

INDIA EXTRA GANGET is that part of the great Continent of *India*, which lieth on the further side of the River *Ganges*, from the spring or fountain of it, whosoever it be, to the fall thereof into the Sea by the fifth and last mouth thereof, which is called *Antiboli*: The other four being reckoned into the other part of *India*, on this side of that River: From hence extended Eastward as far as *China* and the *Oriental Ocean*, on other parts bounded as before.

The Country in those elder times so renowned for wealth, that one *Traff* of it hath the name of *The Silver Region*, and another of *The Golden Chersonese*: this last supposed to be the *Ophir* of *Solomon*, of which more hereafter. The people of the same nature and disposition, in the elder times, as those which did inhabit on the hither side of the *Ganges*; not so well known to the *Greeks* or *Romans* as the others were, by reason of the remoteness of their situation; nor so well discovered at the present. So that the best account we shall be able to give of it (though that lame enough) will not be so exact and punctual as that of before, with reference either to the state thereof in the times of the *Ancients*, or the affairs of it in these daies.

Mountains of most note in it, 1 *Beppyrus*, 2 *Meandrus*, 3 *Sennathinus*; and 4 those called *Danag*, touched upon before, in our general discourse of *India*: Out of which, and from other springs, flow these following Rivers, 1 *Candada*, 2 *Barnasta*, 3 *Sadus*, 4 *Temalis*, 5 *Bosynaga*, 6 *Chrysaoras*, 7 *Polandus*, 8 *Antabas*, the three last in the part hereof called the *Golden Chersonese*, 9 *Danabas*, and tenth *Dorias*, rising out of the Mountains called *Danag*. Others there are whose names I meet with in my Author, but of no great note: by what names any of them now distinguished it is hard to say. Nor find I any who have dared to adventure on it.

Of the chief Towns 1 *Balanga*, 2 *Citratha*, 3 *Tafale*, 4 *Tagma*, and 5 *Mahiburas* have the name of being the *Metropolis*, of their several Nations, *Triglyphon*, only honoured

honoured with the name of *Regia*: more memorable perhaps for the *white Crowns*, and *bearded Hens*, which are said to have been thereabouts, than for being the Seat-Royal of some petty Prince. After these 1 *Sada* on the banks of the River *Sadu*. 2 *Samba*, 3 *Sabara*, 4 *Coly*, 5 *Zabe*, and 6 *Sinda*, have the name of Cities. 7 *Barna*, 8 *Be-domni*, 9 *Bebinga*, 10 *Tucola*, 11 *Sabana*, and 12 *Thibonshus*: are marked out for the most noted Empories, or Towns of Trade: the memory of *Sabana* being still preserved in the Frith of *Sabaui*, betwixt this *Cherfoel* and *Sumatra*. Others there are not noted by those special Adjuncts, of which 1 *Cocconagara* and 2 *Balones*, in the Golden *Coeurfonse*. 3 *Rhandamaracotta*, in the Midlands. 4 *Pentapolis*; near the mouth of *Ganges*, called *Antibolum*; 5 *Aganagara*, near the Bay called *Sinus Magnus*; and 6 *Corygaza*, one of the principal Towns of the *Maranda*, may be some of the chief.

The old Inhabitants hereof, besides the *Maranda* last spoken of, were the *Ganigides*, and *Gangeni*, inhabiting on the banks of *Ganges*; the *Tacrai*, bordering on the Mountain *Bebinga*; as the *Tilade* on *Meandrus*; and the *Animache* and *Gubee*, near the hills called *Danast*. The *Bafade*, said to be crooked, short, and thick; but of a cheerful aspect, and clear complexion: of which composition also the Inhabitants of the *Golden Cherfoel* were observed to be: the *Barr* and *Odura*, on the Bay called *Sinus magnus*; the *Lessori*, a thievish and pyrratical people, who lived in Caves, and were affirmed to be of so hard a skin, that it was not penetrable by an Arrow. These with the rest too many to be here recited, the issue in most likelihood of *Cavilab* and *Saba* the Sons of *Jockan*; of whom we find so many footprints in *Sabara Civitate*, *Sabara*, *Siam*, *Sabana* Emporio, *Sobanus Fluvio*; and in the Countries now called *Ava*, and the Kingdom of *Cavellan*. Of any of their actions we find little in ancient stories, or of the power of any of their former Kings, but that it was given out in the time of *Alexander*, that beyond the *Ganges* lived a Prince called *Agaymenes* (the most powerful King of all those Countries) able to bring into the field 200000 Foot, 20000 Horse, 3000 Elephants, and 2000 armed Chariots. With which report though *Alexander* was the more inflamed to try Matters with him; yet his Soldiers were so terrified with it (remembering the hard bout which they had with *Porus*) that no persuasions might prevail with them to go further Eastward. Nor hear we much of them after this, unless the conversion of the *Indians* in the time of *Constantine*, may be applied to those on that side of the River, as perhaps it may.

As for the latter observations and discoveries of it we find it (as most barbarous Countries else till reduced to order) dismembered and subdivided into many Estates; almost as many Realms as Cities, and distinct governments amongst them, as Tribes and Nations. Most of them Gentile in Religion, with whom the name of *Christ* and *Christianity* not so much as heard of, till the coming of the *Jesuits* thither; who have not only obtained leave but some Invitations, for the promoting of the *Gospel*. And for *Mahometanism*, though it had got some footing on the Sea-coasts of the Gulf of *Bengala*, lying most convenient for the trade of the *Arabian Merchants*: yet on the North, and midland parts, and those towards *China*, and the *Oriental Seas*, it was as little heard of as *Christianity*. But for the Kingdoms of this part, I mean the chief of them, to which as many of the rest who are worth the looking after are to be reduced, they are those, 1 *Brama*, or *Barna*, 2 *Cauchin-China*, 3 *Camboia*, 4 *Jangoma*, 5 *Siam*, and 6 *Pegu*.

1. BRA MA.

THE Kingdoms of *BRA MA* or *BARMA* have on the West, the River *Ganges*; on the North part of *Cambay* in *Tartary*; on the East, *Cauchin-China*, and on the South, the Kingdom of *Pegu*. So called from the *Brachmanes*, *Bramas*, or *Brames*, possessed for many Ages past of these North-West Countries. By the transcribing of a Letter, they are now called the Kingdoms of *Barna*.

The Country of these *Brames* or *Bramanes*, extendeth Northwards from the nearest of the *Peguan* Kingdoms, for the space of 150 Leagues, but far more from West to East: watered with many great remarkable Rivers, issuing from the Lake *Chianna*, which though 600 miles from Sea, and emptying it self continually into so many Channels, contains four hundred miles in compass, and is nevertheless full of waters for the one or the other.

By the overflowing of which Rivers, and the confluence of the Lake, the Country is wonderfully enriched, as *Egypt* by the overflows of *Nilus*. Which notwithstanding, there are in it many huge Forests, in the West especially; and therein many Lyons, Tygers, Quinces, Serpents, and other Creatures of a mischievous and hurtful Nature.

The whole Country containeth the Kingdom of 1 *Calam*, 2 *Prem*, 3 *Melina*, 4 *Aranda*, 5 *Bacau*, 6 *Tangu*, 7 *Ava*, and 8 *Brama*.

Of 1 *MELINT AY*, and 2 *MIRANDA*, I find little written, but that they were conquered with the rest, by the Vice-Roy of *Tangu*, in the first rising of his fortunes; becoming the foundation of his following greatness. Of 3 *BACAM*, it is said, that it is plentifully enriched with Mines both of Gold and Silver. In 4 *CAVILAN*, commonly and contractedly called *CAVILA*, we find apparent foot-steps of the name of *Cavilab* the son of *Jockan*. Of the rest more is to be said, not much.

5 *PROM*, though it be a little Kingdom is exceeding populous, and stored with a warlike people. Given by the second King of *Pegu* of the *Tangum* Race, to a younger Son; who being by his father commanded to the siege of *Marmalan*, which had then revolted, not only did decline the service, but rebelled against him, and by the strength of this small Kingdom held it out three years. But seeing his Fathers fortunes in a manner desperate, he repented of his disobedience, and went unto his aid with an Army of 50000 men of his Natural Subjects. Treacherously poisoned on the way by his chieftest Counsellor, for fear the Crime of his Revolt would be charged on him.

6 *TANGU*, is the name of one of these *Braman* Kingdoms, so called from the chief Town thereof: formerly subject with the rest of the Kings of *Pegu*, and governed by their several Vice-Roys. One of which taking his advantage of the wars between the Kings of *Pegu* and *Siam*, began to set up for himself; and husbanded his affairs so well, that he became sole Lord of these *Braman* Kingdoms; as afterwards of all the rest in this part of *India*. Not long enjoyed by his Successor, when dispossessed and slain by one whom he married to his Sister, and made Governor of this very Province. In which he bore himself so stiffly, that being sent for by his King to aid him against some of his Rebels, and to bring all the Inhabitants of the Country with him: he answered that he would fend one half; to fend all, unreasonable. Incensed with which denial, the King armed against him; but he put the Leaders to the sword, and seized their followers. After this being now in Arms, and despairing

despairing of reconciliation, he took upon himself the Title of King of *Tangu*; and to secure himself therein, joined with the King of *Arachan* against his Sovereign: whom he most barbarously slew (after he had put himself into his hands) with his Wife and Children. Neither enjoyed he long the fruits of this villainy, subdued not long after, with the rest of these *Indian* Princes, by the King of *Barna*: of which more hereafter.

7 *AVA*, another of these Kingdoms, and one of the Plantations of *Cavilab* also, is liberally furnished with all things necessary for the life of man. It affordeth also store of *Rubies*, which they dig out of the Mountains, a certain creature which breeds *Mush*, together with great plenty of Horle and Elephants. Their chief City is called *Ava*, which name it giveth to the River upon which it is built, issuing out of the Lake of *Chianna*, and communicates the same to the whole Province. Subject for many Ages past to the King of *Pegu*, till conquered by the Vice-Roy of *Tangu*, as before is said; and by him given, with the Title of King, unto one of his brothers. Who rebelling against the Son and Successor of his Benefactor, and by him slain in single Combat, this Kingdom was conferred on a Son of the Conqueror. A Prince of more vertue than his Brother, and one which grew at last unto so great power, that in the bustle or combustions of the Kingdom of *Pegu*, he surprized or forced the Fort of *Sirachun*, formerly given unto the *Portugals* by the King of *Arachan*, slew all the Soldiers, and spitted *Philip de Britto*, who commanded it. After which, gathering together the dispersed *Peguan*, and repairing part of the City for them, he was likely to have made himself a good bargain by it; if the sudden coming of the King of *Barna*, had not spoiled his markets.

8 *BRA MA* or *BARMA*, the most Southern of these *Braman* Kingdoms, the King whereof was *Fendatari* to the Kings of *Pegu*, or of their appointment. Of no account when the *Portugals* came first acquainted with *India*, nor in many years after; now of most renown. For fitting fill when all the rest of their neighbours were employed in wars, they gathered to much power and strength, that in the end, one of the later Kings hereof observing how the Forces of his neighbouring Princes were consumed, and their Treasures wasted, levied an Army of 300000 fighting men, 40000 Elephants, with all things suitable. And with this power subdued the Kingdoms of *Macin*, and *Arachan*; conquered the Cities of *Pegu* and *Odin*, (the two chief Cities of these parts) invaded the Kingdom of *Siam*, and possessed himself of it: making in little time all the lesser Princes to become his *Tributaries*, as they still continue.

2. CAUCHIN-CHINA.

CAUCHIN-CHINA is bounded on the West, with the Kingdoms of *Brama*; on the East with part of the great Realm of *China*; on the North, extending towards *Tartary*; on the South, bordering on *Camboia*.

The Country aboundeth with Gold, Silver, *Aloes*, and great store of Silks, of which the Inhabitants make *Tafetas*, and other Ruffs. It affordeth also plenty of *Porcellane* earth, which being made into Cups, Dishes, and other Utensils of household, is sold by the name of *China-ware*; well counterfeited of late amongst us, by putting a white cruft on our *Porters* earth, as neat for use and few as the natural *China*.

The people very stout and warlike, especially for Foot-service; though they have many horses here, and those fit for War. Well practised on their *Pieces* also, on which they spend great store of powder, but not so much in War,

as in Sports and Triumphs: yet making much more than they spend, the earth in some parts yielding very fit materials for that commodity. Trained up to *Adventures*, especially to the making of Powder, Silks, and *Porcellane*, which they sell to the *Chinese*. *Idolaters* for the most part, as are those of *China*, whole Characters and Language they also use: but to that there appear some inclinations unto *Christianity*, in many of them; who have erected many *Crosses*, and do admit the Pictures of the *Bluffed Virgin*, and the final Judgment. Men not unlikely to have made a further Progress in the Gospel, if they had met with better Teachers than those *Laymen* Books.

The chief City hereof is called *Cauchin-China* by the name of the Province, situate on a River coming out of *China*, and passing hence into the bottom of a large and capacious Bay. The whole Country divided into three Provinces, and as many Kings; over which one *Paragon*: but he and they the tributaries of the Kings of *China*. Belonging hereunto is a little Island called *Amau*, ten miles from the Land, where the Inhabitants have a great trade of fishing for *Pearls*. The only province of the *Indies*, which is wholly subject to the power of a Foreign Prince; the *Portugals* holding in this Continent many Towns and Cities, but no whole Provinces.

3. CAMBOIA.

CAMBOIA is bounded on the North, with *Cauchin-China*, on the East and South, with the Ocean; on the West, with parts of the Kingdom of *Siam*, and the Realm of *Jangoma*. So called from *Camboia*, the chief City of it. Divided commonly into the Kingdom of *Champa*, and *Camboia* specially so called.

1 *CHAMPA*, the northern part hereof, bordereth on *Cauchin-China*; and is liberally provided of all necessities: besides which, there is plenty of Gold, and of the Wood called *Lignum Aloes*, prized at the weight thereof in Silver, much used in *Babes*, and at the Funerals of great persons. This a distinct Kingdom of it self, but subject with the rest to the King of *Barna*. The chief City of it, called by the name of *Champa*, which it communicates to the Country, is situate near the Sea-side, and of very good traffick.

2 *CAMBOIA* specially so called, lyeth South of *Champa*, a very great and populous Country, well stored with Elephants and *Rhinoceros*, which last the *Indians* call *Abades*. It yieldeth also great plenty of Sweet-wood, which they call *Calamba*; as precious and as much esteemed of as the wood of *Aloes*, (if not the same, or some Species of it as I think it is) together with abundance of Rice, Flesh, and Fish; well watered with the River *Mecon* which issuing out of *China*, and having received many lesser streams falleth first into a great Lake: 200 miles compass, and thence into the *Indian Ocean*; making betwixt the Lake and that an hundred leagues. By the overflows of this River the whole Country is enriched (as *Egypt* by the like overflowing of *Nilus*) the Inhabitants at those times beaking themselves to their upper Rooms, and passing altogether by boats from one place to another.

The people are conceived to be strong and warlike; though more inclined to Merchandise and Navigation, than to deeds of Arms. *Idolaters* of the worst kind, esteeming Mea and Beasts of a like condition in regard of any future Judgment: of late, beginning to set up, and adore the *Cross*, which is (it seems) the first Principle of Religion in which the *Friers* are wont to instruct their *Converts*. Not weaned as yet by these new Teachers, from burning the women with their Husbands, common to them with many other *Indian* people, nor from burning their

their Nobles with the King, used any here; but voluntarily to express their loves, not upon constraint.

The chief Towns of it, *Camboia*, one of the three prime Cities of this part of *India*; the other two being *Odia* and *Pegu*, of which more anon. Situate on the River *Mecon* before it was destroyed: where it hath its fall into the Sea. Well traded, as the Staple for all this Country, the Commodities whereof are brought hither, and here sold to the Merchants. 2 *Cudumuch*, twelve Leagues from *Camboia*, on the same River also. 3 *Toul*, on the Sea-side in the very South-west Angle of all the Country. The Kings whereof once absolute, and at their own disposing, till invaded by a vast Army of the neighbouring *Laos*: in which their King being slain, and his forces weakened, his Son and Successor was constrained to become a Vassal to the Crown of *Siam*, But fearing the loss of his Estate, when the Kingdom was made subject to the Kings of *Pegu*, in the year 1598, he applied himself unto the *Portugals*, offered them a *Peninsula* (part of his Dominions) extending three Leagues into the Sea; and sent to the *Jeisutes* for some of their Society to live and preach amongst the people. Not able for all these honest Policies to preserve himself from being made a *Fendatory* of the King of *Burma*.

4. JANGOMA.

JANGOMA, or the Country of *LAOS*, is bounded on the East, with *Camboia* and *Champa*, from which parted by the River *Mecon*; on the West, with the River *Pegu*, by which divided from that Kingdom; on the South, with the Realm of *Siam*; on the North, with *Burma*.

It took its name from *Jangoma* the chief Province of it; the other two (for there be three of them in all) being those of *Lavea*, and *Curroy*. All of them joined together called the Country of *Laos*, by the name of the people. A mighty Nation and stout, by Religion *Geniles*, naked from the middle upwards, and trussing up their hair like a Cap. Their Country very rich and level but very ill neighboured by the *Gueoni* (*Paulus Venetus* giveth them the name of *Gangigi*) who possess the Mountains; whence falling in great companies to hunt for men, whom they kill and eat, they commit cruel butcheries amongst them. Inasmuch as this people, not able to defend themselves against their fury, or rather wanting good Leaders to conduct and order them (for it is said that they can make a Million of men) were fain to put themselves under the protection of the King of *Siam*, whom they obeyed no further than the humor took them.

Towns they have none of any note, except those three which give name to the several Provinces, and those of no note neither but for doing that. The people for the most part live on the banks of their Rivers, where they have Cottages of Timber, or else upon the Rivers in Boats and Shallops as the *Tartarians* of the Defarts in their Carts or Wheel-houles. One of their Rivers (commonly called River of *Laos*) said to extend 400 Leagues within the Land, as far as *Tartary*, and *China*; and from *July* to *September* to invert its course, and flow back strongly towards its Fountain. Not governed by any certain rule or order, till they submitted to the Patronage of the King of *Siam*; and then no other than they listed: though for their fakes, that King engaged himself in a War against the *Cambials*, their most deadly Enemies, accompanied with 20000 Foot, 20000 Horse, and 10000 Elephants. Secured by his protection from the teeth of those *Cambials* (of whom otherwise they had been devoured) in the year 1598, they defended the River in great multitudes, to the number of 200000; and fell in to the Realm of

Camboia: but they made an unprosperous adventure of it. For though the King of *Camboia* lost his life in the Battel, yet he gave them such a fatal Blow, that they were almost all slain, drowned, or captivated in the fight. Weakned wherewith they became an easie prey to the *Vice-Roy of Tangha*, when he first made himself *Mezlor* of this part of *India*. Who giving to his Brother the Kingdom of *Ava*, and leaving to his eldest Son the Kingdom of *Pegu*, with the Sovereignty over all the rest, conferred this Country, with the Title of King of *Jangoma*, on a younger Son. But he, begotten on a Daughter of the King of *Pegu*, and born after his Father had attained this whole Empire, was easily perverted by the *Talapoies*, (so they call their Priests) that his Title was better than that of his Elder Brother, who was born before it. Prevented in his claim by the Kings of *Arrachan* and *Tangha*, by whom that King was slain, and his Kingdom waited. How he fared afterwards I find not: But probable it is, that he submitted with the rest to the King of *Burma*.

5. SIAM.

SIAM is bounded on the North, with *Jangoma*, and a part of *Pegu*; on all other parts, with the wide Ocean, save that it toucheth on the East, with a part of *Camboia*; and on the West with a Point of *Pegu*. So called from *Siam* the chief of all those Kingdoms which pass under this name, as that from *Siam* the chief City of it.

The Country of greater length than breadth, stretcheth itself Southwards into the Sea many hundred miles, in form of a *Peninsula* or *Demy-Island*, called anciently *Aurea Chersonesus*, or the *Golden Chersonese*: one of the five famous *Chersones* or *Peninsulas* of the elder Writers; the other four being *Peloponnesus* in *Greece*, the *Thracian Chersonese* near *Propontis*, the *Taurian Chersonese* in the *Euxine*, and the *Cimbrin Chersonese* in the North of *Germany*; now part of *Denmark*. It had the name of *Aurea*, or the Golden, superadded to it, from its plenty of Gold, for which much celebrated by the Ancients, both *Greeks* and *Romans*, (and therefore not improbably thought by some to be *Salomon's Ophir*) still famous with the rest of the Countries of the Kingdom of *Siam*, for abundance of Gold, Silver, Tin, and other Metals; great quantity of Pepper yearly thence, with store of Elephants, and Horses. The whole Country very fat and fertile, well stored with Rice, Corn, Grains, and all other necessaries.

The people generally much addicted to pleasures, if not to Luxury; delighted much in Music and rich Apparel: and such as stand much upon their honour. For their instruction in good Letters they have publick Schools, where their own Laws, and the Myteries of their own Religion, are taught them in their natural Languages: all other Sciences in strange Tongues understood by none but by the Learned. To tillage they can frame themselves, and are painful in it; but by no means will follow any *Mechanical Arts*, which they put over to their *Slaves*. In Religion for the most part *Geniles*, worshipping the four Elements amongst other Gods; to each of which as they are severally affected, so are their bodies to be disposed of: either burnt, buried, hanged, or drowned, after their decease; as in their lives they were most devoted to the Fire, Earth, Air, or Water. Some Christians here also in and about the parts possessed by the *Portugals*, but more *Mohometans*; who possessing two hundred Leagues of the Sea-coasts of this Country, have planted that Religion in most part of the Country now by them possessed.

It containeth in it many Kingdoms some of little note; Those of most observation, 1 *Malacca*, 2 *Pattane*, 3 *Jor*, 4 *Muanay*,

4 *Chamney*, and 5 *Siam*, properly and especially so called. Of which *Malacca* is now in the hands of the *Portugals*, *Jor* and *Pattane* are possessed by the *Arabians* or *Senecens*, the other two have followed the fortunes of the Kings of *Siam*.

1. The Kingdom of *MALACCA* taketh up the South part of the *Golden Chersonese*, extended towards the North from the Cape or Promontory which *Polemey* called *Malaccasus*, in the extreme South point hereof near unto *Sabana*, then a noted *Empory* for the space of 270 miles. So called from *Malacca* the chief City of it, of old times called *Musicaem*, or built very near it; from whence this Tract is called by *Strabo*, *Musicaem Terra*. The City seated on the banks of the River *Gaza*, which is here said to be 15 miles in breadth; by the frequent overflows whereof, and the nearness of it to the *Line*, (being but two degrees in the North) the Air hereof and all the Territory belonging to it, is very unwholesome; and for that cause the Country but meanly populous. In compass it is said to be 20 miles; of great wealth, because of almost infinite trading; for Spices, *Unguents*, Gold, Silver, Pearls and Precious Stones, the most noted *Empory* of the East. Inasmuch that it is said by *Ludovico Barthelemi*, who was there before the *Portugals* knew it, that it was traded by more Ships than any one City in the world; more by far since the coming of the *Portugals* to it, than it was before. The people (as in all this Tract) of an Allicolour with long hair hanging over their faces, bloody and murderous; especially when they meet one another in the Night. Few other Towns of any note, in a place so unhealthy, except 2 *Sinacura*, situate East of *Malacca*, near the Promontory of old called *Megum*, supplied by some to be the *Ziboe* of *Polemey*: and that more probably, than that it should be his *Palura*, as *Magnus* would have it, *Palura* being a City of the *Himer India*, and different at the least 20 degrees of Longitude from any part of this *Chersonese*. But whatsoever it was called in the former times, it was in thic late Ages the mother of *Malacca*, the greatest part of the Trade and people being removed from thence to this newer foundation: before which time it was the best frequented *Empory* in these parts of the East. 3 *Pala Zambilan*, 120 miles on the West of *Malacca*, from whence to *Sinacura*, coasting about the Southern Cape (now called *Lape Liampo*) we have a Sea-shore of 270 miles, as before was said. No other habitation of any reckoning, but a few Sheds upon the shore for the use of Fishermen, and some scattered Villages in the Land: the people dwelling most on Trees for fear of Tygers.

This Tract in former times possessed by the Kings of *Siam*, about the year 1558, became a Kingdom of it self; founded by *Paramisra*, and some other of the *Javan* Nobility, who flying the tyranny of their own King, came into this Country; where they were lovingly received by *Sanggeja*, then reigning under the *Siamite* in *Sinacura*. Him they perfidiously slew, and invaded *Paramisra* in his Dominion. Outred of which by the King of *Siam*, he was forced to seek a new dwelling; and after two or three Removes, fell upon the place where *Malacca* now standeth: which City, pleased with the commodiousness of the situation, he is said to have built. The trade of *Sinacura* in short time removed thither also, which so increased the wealth and power of the Kings hereof, that joining with the *Moors*, who began to plant themselves on the shores adjoining and receiving withal the Law of *Mohomet*, they began to cast off all subjection to the Kings of *Siam*, to whom the Son and Successor of *Paramisra* had submitted his new-railed Kingdom, and became their *Honorer*. Incensed wherewith, the *Siamite* about the year 1500 sent out an army of 200 Sail to distress it by Sea; and an

Army of 30000 men and 400 Elephants to besiege it by Land. But before he was able to effect any thing, hindered by tempests, and the infidelities of some of his Souldiers, the *Portugals* in the year 1511, under the conduct of *Albuquerque* had possessed themselves of it, who built there a Fortrefs and a Church. And though *Abdullah* the Son of the expelled King (whose name was *Mahomet*) endeavoured the regaining of his Estate, and that the *Saracens*, *Hollanders*, and the Kings of *Jor*, and *Achen* (two neighbouring Princes) envying the great fortunes of the *Portugals*, have severally and successively laboured to deprive them of it: yet they still keep it in defiance of all opposition which hath been hitherto made against them.

2. North unto that of *Malacca* lyeth the Kingdom of *JOR*, *JOR*, or *JOHOR*, so called of *Jor*, or *Johor*, the chief City of it. Inhabited for the most part by *Moors*, or *Saracens*, *Mohometans* by their means prevailing on the Natives of the Country also. A Kingdom of no great extent, but of so much power, that joining his Land-forces with the Navy of the King of *Achen*, he belieged *Malacca*, and built a Royal Fort before it; in which when taken by *Paul de Lima* by the defeat of this King, were found 900 Pieces of Brass Ordnance. After this picking a quarrel with the King of *Poham*, he burnt his Houses, Barns, Provisions, and the Suburbs of the City it self; but in the course of his affairs was interrupted by the King of *Achen* (one of the Kings in the Isle of *Sumatra*) his old Confederate; who after 29 days siege took the City of *Jor*. What afterwards became of this King or Kingdom, I am not able to resolve. In former times it did acknowledge him of *Siam* for the Lord in chief.

3. More Northward yet lyeth the Kingdom of *PATAN*, *PATAN*, or *JOHOR*, so called of *Jor*, or *Johor*, the chief City of it: but different from *Pattane* in the other *India*, as *Cleveland* in *Yorkshire* from *Cleveland* in *Germany*; or *Holland* in the *Low-Countries* from *Holland* in *Lincolnshire*, as hath been fully shewn before. The City made of Wood and Reed, but artificially wrought and composed together; the *Asquij* only (most of the people being *Mohometans*) is built of brick. The *Chinese* make a great part of the Inhabitants of it, inasmuch that in this small City there are spoken three Languages, viz. the *Chinese*, used by that people; the *Malayan* (or Language of *Malacca*) which is that of the Natives; and the *Siam*, to the King whereof this small Crown is *Vassal*. Built of such light stuff and combustible matter, it must needs be in great danger of fire; and was most miserably burnt in the year 1613 by some *Javan* Slaves in revenge of the death of some of their fellows: at which time the whole City was consumed with fire, the *Beliquit* the *Queens* Court, and some few houses, excepted only. The Country governed of late years by *Queens*, who have been very kind to the *English* and *Hollanders*, granting them leave to erect their *Factories* in *Pattane*. Not memorable for any great exploit by them performed, but that a late Queen a little before that dismal fire, offended with the King of *Pam* or *Pahang*, who had married her Sister, and reigned in a little Island not far off, the sent against him a Fleet of 70 Sail, and 4000 men; by which compelled to correspond with her desires, he brought his Queen and her Children with him to make up the breach.

4. The Kingdom of *Siam*, strictly and specially so called, is situate on the main Land (the rest before described being in the *Chersonese*) betwixt *Camboia* on the East, *Pegu* on the West, the Kingdom of *Adumay* on the North, and the main Ocean on the South. The chief Cities of it 1 *Sacotai*, memorable for a Temple made wholly of metal 80 spans in height, raised by one of the Kings; it being the custom of this Country; that every King at his first

coming to the Crown, is to build a Temple; which he adorned with high Steeples, and many Idols. 2 *Quedoo*, renowned for the best Pepper, and for that cause very much frequented by foreign Merchants. 3 *Tavay*, upon the Sea-coast where it joyneth to *Pegu*. Whence measuring along the shores till we come to *Chimpa* before mentioned, being all within the Dominions of the King of *Siam* (not reckoning the *Cherfone* into this Account) we have a Sea-coast of the length of 600 Leagues. 4 *Luger*, upon the Sea-side also, near that little *Shumun*, which joyneth the Sea-side to the Land; from whence to *Malaca*, is 600 miles fall all along the coast. 5 *Calantan*, the head City of a little Kingdom but subject to the Crown of *Siam*. 6 *Siam*, the chief City of this part of the Kingdom, which it giveth this name to. A goodly City, and very commodiously seated on the River *Menam*, for Trade and Merchandize. So populous and frequented by foreign Nations, that besides the Natives, here are said to be thirty thousand households of *Arabians*. The houses of it high built by reason of the Annual deluge, during which time they live in the Upper-rooms; and unto every house a Boat for the use of the Family. Those of the poorer sort dwell in little sheds, made of Reed and Timber; which they remove from place to place for the best convenience of their Markets: And yet so strong, that being besieged by the *Tangan* Conquerour, then King of *Pegu*, Anno 1567, with an Army of fourteen hundred thousand fighting men, for the space of 20 months together, it resolutely held good against him: not gained at last by Force, but Treason, one of the Gates being set open to him in the dead time of the night, and by that means the City taken. The people hereof are thought to be inclining to Christianity; but hitherto so ill instructed in the Principles of it, that they maintain amongst many other strange opinions, that after the end of 2000 years, (from what time I know not) the World shall be consumed with fire; and that under the ashes of it shall remain two Eggs, out of which shall come one man and one woman, who shall people the World anew.

5. *MUANTAY*, the last of these Kingdoms, lieth between *Jangana* and *Siam*, memorable for nothing more than the City of *Odia*, or *Odie*, the principal of all the Kingdoms of *Siam*; and the usual residence of those Kings. Situate on the banks of the River *Caipumo*, and containing in it 400000 Inhabitants, of which 50000 are trained to the Wars, and in continual readiness for present service. For though this King be Lord of nine several Kingdoms, yet he lieth none of them in his Wars but the natural *Siamites* and those of this City, and the rest of his Subjects of *Muantay*. It is said that for the use of this City only (being seated like *Venice* upon many little Islands, not bridged together) there are no fewer than 2000000 Sciffs, and Shallops; serving to waite the people from one place to another. By means hereof of great strength, and almost impregnable. But being beleaguered by the *Tangan* or *Bramin* Conquerour with ten hundred thousand fighting men (an Army big enough to have buried a greater City than this, if every man had but cast a shovell full of earth upon it) it was won at last.

The Government of these Kings of *Siam*, was absolute heretofore, if not tyrannical, he being sole Lord of all the Land in his Kingdoms; which he either gave to his Nobles, or Farmed out to Husbandmen, during life or pleasure, but never passed over unto any the right of Inheritance. And these he grants unto his Subjects, besides rents in money upon condition to maintain a determinate number of Horse, Foot, and Elephants: thereby enabled without further charge unto the Subject, to levy 20000 Horse, and 250000 Foot, for present service;

besides far greater numbers out of the residue of his people, if occasion be. And for his ordinary Guard he was said to keep 60000 Souldiers, and 200 Elephants, of which Beasts he is reported to have 30000, of which every tenth Elephant is trained up to the War. By reason of so great a power he became Master of the Realms of *Cambodia* and *Campa*; held those of *Malacca*, *Sor*, *Paham*, and *Patan*, as his Vassals and Tributaries; with that of *Jangana* and the *Laos*, under his protection. But when the fatal time was come, and that his City of *Siam* was betrayed to the King of *Pegu*, he poysoned himself upon the news, his Son becoming Tributary to the *Peguan* Victor. This Son of his too much a Prince to be a Subject, revolted from a Son of the *Peguan*, a vitious and tyrannical King, degenerating from the gallantries of so worthy a Father; by whom he was besieged in *Siam* with 900000 fighting men. Unable to resist his Army if he had presently declared such a resolution, he entertained the King with Treaties, and promises of delivering the City to him, till the third month after, (which was *March*), when ordinarily the River was to overflow all the Country, for 120 miles about: by which sudden and violent inundation and the Sword together (the *Siamites* waiting diligently for the opportunity) there perished all of this great Army, except 70000. After this blow, the conquering *Siam*, Anno 1600, besieged and endangered the City of *Pegu*, of which more anon; and dying in the year 1605, left his Estate unto his Brother. Whose Son succeeding, settled a *Factory* in *Siam* of the *English* Merchants, Anno 1612, and was in a fair way of obtaining the Sovereignty of *Pegu*, then destroyed and wasted; if the violent and unreluctant coming of the King of *Burma* had not crossed him in it: to whom now subject with the rest of the *Indian* Princes, on that side of the River.

6. PEGU.

PEGU is bounded on the East, with *Jangana*, and a part of *Siam*; on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Brama*; on the West and South, with the Kingdom and Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Pegu* the chief City, as that by the name of the River upon which it standeth. Divided commonly into the Kingdoms and Estates of 1 *Verma*, 2 *Macin*, 3 *Oracham*, 4 *Martavan*, and 5 *Pegu*, specially so called.

1. *VERMA* is the name of a small Kingdom bordering upon *Bengala*; and so denominated from *Verma*, the chief Town thereof. A Kingdom which hath no Port or Haven at all; and therefore wholly freed of *Moors* and *Mahometans*, which can be said of no other of these *Indian* Kingdoms.

The people black, naked above the Waite, and covered beneath it only with a Veil of Cotton; in matter of Religion, *Gentiles*; and in war right valiant. This last appeared by the long and frequent Wars which they had with the *Pegans*; to whom made tributary in conclusion, but not fully conquered.

2. *MACHIN* so called from *Macin* the chief City thereof, is another of these *Peguan* Kingdoms. Of final esteem, but for the great quantity of the Sweetwood, by the *Latines* called *Lignum Vita*, by the Natives *Calambai*, so much in use for Funerals and Batches, (as was said before) held also by the *Indians* for a sovereign and unparalleled *Medicine* against many dangerous diseases; great quantities hereof are brought hence yearly by the Merchant. One of the first Kingdoms which was conquered by the King of *Burma*, (upon whom it bordereth) in the beginning of his Fortunes.

3. *ORACHAN*, or *Aracham*, lieth on the West of *Macin*, and the South of *Verma*; environed round with

with Mountains, and impassable Woods. Chief Towns whereof, 1 *Dianga*, taken and destroyed by the *Portugals*, in the quarrels between them and the King of *Arracham*, Anno 1608. 2 *Sundica*, situate in an Island unto which it giveth name, six Leagues off from the Continent of *Bengala*, to which it formerly belonged. Subdued by the *Portugals*, Anno 1602. and from them taken by this King about two years after, and made a member of his Kingdom. The Island 50 Leagues in compass, very strong, fruitful; and the Town well fortified. 3 *Aracham*, the head City, which gives name to all, distant from the Sea 45 miles, but seated on a large and capacious River. The King and Kingdom of no note, till the ruins of *Pegu*, to the Crown whereof it once pertained. In the Desolation of which State the King hereof combining with him of *Tangu*, besieged the second *Peguan* King in the Castle of *Mecau*; and had betwixt them the whole Pillage of that wealthy City, together with the possession of the best Towns of it. After this victory, he returned to *Aracham* in triumph, leading with him the *White Elephant* of the King of *Pegu*, sumptuously adorned; the Brother and two sons of the *Peguan* following in the *Pageant*. A solemn and magnificent entry. The better to assure himself of his new Dominions, this King bestowed upon the *Portugals* the Fort of *Sirirangh*, on the River *Pegu*. For which favour, ill-requited by the *Portugals*, who had taken his Son, and put him to a grievous ransom, they brake out into open Wars. In the pursuit whereof, after many losses, the King recovered from them the Isle of *Sundica*; and manning out a Fleet of 1200 Sail (of which 75 were of so great burden, as to carry every one twelve Pieces of Ordnance) and in that Fleet 30000 Souldiers, 8000 hand-guys, and 3500 great Pieces, besieged the Fortresses, assisted in that action also by the King of *Tangu*. And though he failed in his design, yet like enough he had prevented the King of *Ava*, who took it in the year 1613, as before is said, had he not been out in the mean time of his own Kingdom by the King of *Burma*: of whose great rise, the conquering of the Realms of *Macin* and *Aracham* were the first foundation.

4. *MARTAVAN*, the richest of these Kingdoms, lieth South to *Aracham*; a little turning towards the West. The soil so fertile, that it yieldeth three Harvests in a year; and sent annually fifteen Ships to *Cochin*, and as many to *Malacca*, laden with Rice. Rich also in Mines of Iron, Lead, Steel, Brass, Silver, Gold and *Rubies*; and very liberally provided of Springs and Rivers. The Forts are well fortified with Harbours, Boreas, and Bufflers; store of Pines and Palms: the Woods with *Sugar-Cane*, many excellent fruits; the ordinary herbs and shrubs either medicinal or odoriferous. The principal City of it called also *Martavan*, situate on a Haven open at all times of the year, and not choaked with Sands, as usually other Havens are in the *Indian Winter*: of great trading, much splendour, and a temperate Air. Faithful unto the last to the Crown of *Pegu*, to the Kings whereof their own were subject, and in that constancy they twice repelled the King of *Siam*, who then had conquered the most part of the Kingdom of *Pegu*. Angry whereat, the *Siamite* caused two of his cowardly Captains to be cast into a Caldron of scalding Oyl; and at the third Assault became Master of it. *Bambalau* the old King hereof (99 years old) with his heir apparent, and 200000 of his Subjects being compelled to hide themselves in the Woods and Defarts.

5. *PEGU*, the most Predominant Kingdom, lieth like a *Recess* or Half-Moon on the Gulf of *Bengala*; extending on the coast from *Negrais* unto *Tavan*; the next Town of *Siam*, for the space of three hundred miles; and upwards, but little less in breadth, if not quite as much.

So called from the River *Pegu*, which runs through the midst of it, and gives this name also unto *Pegu* the most noted City.

The Soil hereof exceeding fruitful, by reason of the annual overflows of the River, which do yearly fatten it, fit to bear Wheat, and of Rice yielding an incredible quantity. It affordeth also many *Rubies*, great numbers of *Civet-Cats*, plenty of *Lacca*, (a Gum there made by *Ants*, as here Bees make Wax) store of Elephants, and abundance of Parrots, which speak plainer, & are much fairer than in any place else.

The people of a mean stature, somewhat corpulent, and naturally beardless. If any fragling hair thrust forth, they always carry Pincers with them to pull them out. Nimble and strong, but yet not very fit for Wars; spending too much of their strength in the love of women; to which most passionately addicted. They black their Teeth, because they say that dogs teeth be white, and wear no cloaths but on their heads and about their nakedness. Said by the *Jews* to be descended from some of the *Tribe of Israel*, confined hither by *Solomon*, but by the *Pegans* themselves, to be begotten of a Dog and a *China* woman, which were saved here upon a Shipwreck. By Religion for the most part *Gentiles*, imagining innumerable Worlds one after another, and a determinate number of Gods for every World: more *Orishados*, in assigning after this life according to the merits of the party deceased, one place of *Torments*, and another of *Delights* and Pleasures, if they had not added a third also for *Indiscretion*.

Chief Cities of this Kingdom, 1 *Cosmi*, seated in a Territory full of woods, as those Woods of *Tigers*, *Wild Bores*, *Apes*, and *Parrots*; the houses made of *Canes*, which serve here for Timber, (some of them being as big as Hogheads) covered over with *Thatch*. 2 *Jocedel*, a great walled City on the River *Pegu*. 3 *Dian*, on the same River also, where they make Barkers or Vessels as big as *Galasses*, which serve both for Trade and Habitation. 4 *Colan*, a City four square, and each square four miles. 5 *Lamagan*, a pleasant Town, and full of *Palm-trees*. 6 *Dalis*, in which were the Kings Stables for his ordinary Elephants his four *White Elephants* (for so many he had) being always kept about the Court, not taken abroad, but in great solemnities, when trapped in Furnitures of Gold; and no less honoured by the people, than the King himself: called therefore King of the *White Elephant* by the neighbouring Princes. 7 *Silvampede*, where many victualling Barks are made to serve for dwelling on the Sea. 8 *Mecau*, where they use to unload such goods, as are to pass by Land to *Pegu*. Neighbouring by the strongest Castle in all this Kingdom, and therefore chosen by the King for his place of Retreat, when distressed by the Kings of *Aracham*, and *Tangu*. To the last of which making choice to yield up his Person, with his Wife and Children, because he had married him to his Sister, he was by him perforce and basely murdered. 9 *Sirang*, a strong piece on the mouth of the River, given by the King of *Aracham* to the *Portugals*, and by them committed to the keeping of *Philip de Brito*, in the year one thousand six hundred, or thereabouts. Who having made it good against him, and the King of *Tangu* his associate for the space of thirteen years together, was at last forced to yield himself Prisoner to the King of *Ava*, by whom cruelly tortured on a Spit. 10 *Pegu*, the glory of these parts, great, strong, and beautiful: Divided into two Towns, the Old and the New; the Old inhabited by Merchants, the New by the King and his Nobility. The Houses made of Wood but covered with Tiles; a *Coco-Tree* before every house yielding a comfortable shade; and a pleasant shew. The streets as freight as any line, and so broad that ten or twelve men may ride a bridle in the

the narrowest of them. In figures square, each square having five Gates, besides many Towers, all of them beautifully gilded. The whole well walled with Walls of stone environed on all sides with great Ditches; and in the midst the Royal Palace, walled and ditched about, most sumptuously gilded; but especially the Temple or *Idol-chappel*, the walls whereof were hid with Gold, the Roof tiled with Silver.

In this magnificent Palace lived the *Peguan* Kings, in as much pomp and pleasure as the World could yield: his Empire not extending only over these Kingdoms now described, but over all the Provinces or Kingdoms of the *Bramin* also; which he governed by his several *Vice-Roy*s, or rather *TRIBUTARIE* Kings. A happiness too great to continue long. For in the year 1567 the *Vice-Roy* or *Tributary* King of *Tangu*, by the aid of his Faction, and reputation of his Virtues, entered into rebellion; and slaying the Nobles of the Land, usurped that Kingdom. After this he subdued the Cities and Kingdoms of *Calam*, *Melintay*, *Prom*, *Miranda*, and *Ava*, inhabited all of them by the *Brames* or *Bramines*, and therefore taking to himself the Title of the King of *Brama*, because his fame & fortunes took their rise from his victories over them. Following the course of his successes he first assayed the Cities of *Odia*, and *Siam*, but repulsed with loss. To make amends for which misfortune, he beleaguered *Pegu*, and subdued it, and by thereupon which he got in that action, returning to the siege of *Siam*, had it yielded to him. Dying, he gave the Kingdom of *Ava* unto one of his Brothers; that of *Prom*, to one of his Grand-sons, the Kingdom of *Tangoma* to a younger Son, but born after the time of his obtaining the Crown of *Pegu*; and finally that of *Pegu*, with the Sovereignty over all the rest, to his eldest Son, a Prince of a vicious and tyrannical nature: and not more cruel to his Subjects, than they disobedient to him. Whereupon preparations are made on both sides, the people, to defend their liberty; the King, to preserve his Royalty. During their civil discords, the titular King of *Siam*, whose late overthrow was not yet fully digested, came violently into the Country of *Pegu*; burning Corn, Grains, and Fruits, killing Man, Woman, and Child: and having satisfied his Fury, returned to his home. This spoil of the Fruits of the Earth, was but a prologue to an unsupportable Famine, which consumed

all the Inhabitants of this flourishing Kingdom, except such whom the *Garamies* of the City of *Pegu* preferred Anno 1568. For here the Fathers devoured their Children, the stronger preyed upon the weaker, not only devouring their more fleshy parts, but their entrails also: nay they broke up the skulls of such as they had slain, and sucked out their brains. This calamity incited another *Tributary* Prince of *Tangu* to make his best advantage of his neighbours affliction; though made his Brother-in-law, and advanced to great honours by his Father. For justly fearing the displeasure of his angry Prince to whose aid he had refused to come, when sent for by him, he joined himself with the King of *Arracan*, belied his Lord and Sovereign in the Fort of *Mecco*. Brought to extremities, the unfortunate Prince, thought best to put himself into the hands of his Brother of *Tangu*, who assaulted and entered *Pegu*: where he found as much Treasure as 600 Elephants, and as many Horses, could conveniently carry away. This havock being made, he villainously murdered the King, Queen, and their Children and departed; leaving the gleanings of his spoil to the King of *Arracan*: who, Anno 1600, was expelled by the King of *Siam*, who enjoyed it not long. For the King of *Bama* having with an Army of an hundred thousand fighting men, and forty thousand Elephants, subdued the Kingdoms of *Macin*, and *Arracan*, followed the currents of his Victories; conquered *Siam*, drove the King thereof from *PEGU* where he hath built a most magnificent Palace: and is now the sole Monarch of the Twelve Kingdoms of this India.

A more particular relation of this King, and his new settled estate, we cannot yet understand: what his Revenues are, what his Government, what his Forces. Merchants, whose iniquity into the State-Matters of other Princes, is dangerous to their trading, cannot give us any full satisfaction: *Scholars* and *Statists* are not permitted to observe; and such of the Natives as could give us the most light, are not suffered to travel. Only we may conjecture by the great wealth of those several Princes, and the vast Armies by them raised in their several Territories; that his Annual Revenues, Casualties, and united Forces must be almost infinite.

And so much for INDIA.

O F



O F

The Oriental Islands.

THE ORIENTAL ISLANDS, so called from their situation in the Oriental, or Eastern Seas, may be divided into the Islands of 1 *Japan*, 2 the *Philippine*, and Isles adjoining, 3 the Islands of *Baniam*, 4 the *Molucces*, 5 those called *Sinda*, or the *Celebes*, 6 *Borneo*, 7 *Java*, 8 *Sumatra*, 9 *Ceylon*, and 10 certain others of less note.

1. JAPAN.

JAPAN is an aggregate body of many Islands, separated by small Gulfs, Streights, and Turnings of the Sea; but taking name from *Japan*, the chief of all. Some reckon them to be 66 in all; others ascribe that number to 70 many Kingdoms, into which these Islands (be they in number more or less) use to be divided. But whatsoever the number be (the certainty whereof I can now where find) there are three only of account, to which the several petty Kingdoms are now reduced, that is to say, 1 *Japan* specially so called, which containeth 53 Kingdoms, of which 26 are under the King of *Meaco*, 12 under the King of *Anagunee*, the other 15 under other Princes of inferior note. 2 *Ximo*, which containeth in it nine Realms, the principal whereof are those of *Bungo* and *Figit*. 3 *Xicomo*, which comprehendeth four only of these petty *Seignories*.

JAPAN, the chief of all these Islands, to which the residue may be accounted of but as *Appurtenances*, is situate over against the Streights of *Aniam* (if such Streights there be) towards which it looketh to the North: distant from new Spain on the East 150 Leagues, or 450 English miles; and 60 Leagues from *Canton*, a Province of *China*, opposite to it on the West. On the South it hath the vast Ocean, and those infinite shoals of Islands which are called the *Philippine*, and the Isles neighbouring upon them. Extending in length from West to East 200 Leagues, but the breadth not proportionable thereunto: in some places not above 10 Leagues over, and in the broadest part but 30.

The Country Mountainous and barren, yet a very healthy air, if not too much subject unto cold, yet in some places they have Wheat ripe in the Month of May; but their Rice, which is their principal sustenance, they gather not before September. The surface of the Earth, clothed with Woods and Forests, in which some Cedars of so tall and large a body, that one of them only is sufficient to make a Pillar for a Church: the bowels of it stored with divers Metals, and amongst others with such inexhaustible Mines of Gold, that *Paulus Venetus* reporteth some of the Palaces of their Kings to be covered, in his time, with sheeps of Gold, as ours in Europe are with Lead. But I find no such matter in our latter Travellers. Their Fields and Meddows full of Cattel, and hitherto not made acquainted with the making of Butter; their

Fens much visited by wild Ducks, as their house-yards with Pigeons, Turtles, Quails, and Pullen.

The people for the most part of good understanding, apt to learn, and of able memories; cunning and subtle in their dealings. Of body vigorous and strong, accustomed to bear Arms until 60 years old. Their complexion of an *Olive-Colour*, their beards thin, and the one half of the hair of their heads shaved off. Patient they are of pain, ambitious of glory, incapable of suffering wrong, but can withall dissemble their resentments of it till opportunity of revenge. They reproach no man for his poverty, so it come not by his own unthriftiness, for which cause they detest all kinds of gaming, as the waives of ill-husbandry; and generally abhor *Slander*, *Theft*, and *Swearing*. Their mourning commonly is in white, as their feasts in black; their teeth they colour black also, to make them beautiful: they mount on the right side of the horse, and sit (as we are used to ride) when they entertain. In *Play* they eat salt things, sharp, and raw; and in their *salutations* they put off their shoes. The very *Antipodes* of our world in customs though not in site, and the true Type or Figure of the old *English Puritan*, opposite to the *Papists* in things fit and decent, though made ridiculous many times by that opposition. In other things they do much resemble those of *China*, if not the more ceremonious of the two: washing their infant children in the nearest River, as soon as born, and putting off their shoes when they go to meat.

The People have but one Language, but those so intermingled with the words of other Nations, that it seems rather to be many Languages than one. They have long used the Art of *Printing*, which probably enough, they might have from *China*: the Characters whereof are a kind of *Brachygraphy*, and signify not only Letters, but some whole words also. In matters of Religion, *Gentiles*, adoring anciently the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven; and giving divine honor to wild beasts, and the Stags of the Forests: but specially worshipping some of their deceased Priests and Princes; by the names of *Fotoques* and *Ganers*; to the first of which they use to pray for goods of the other world, and to the last for *Temporal* blessings. Their Priests they call by the name of *Bonzes*, settled in goodly *Convents*, and endowed with very large Revenues: who though divided into eleven different (if not contrary) Sects, do well enough agree in denying the Providence of God, and the Immortality of the Soul. Of late times by the care and diligence of the *Jesuits*, *Christianity* hath begun to take footing here; whether with such a large increase as their Letters called *Epistola Japonica* have been pleased to tell us, I am somewhat doubtful. They tell us there of some Kings of these Islands, whom they have converted and baptized, that within 50 miles of *Meaco* they had 50 Churches, 200 at the least in all, and that in the year 1587, the number of their Converts were two hundred thousand. Of this, if

the one half be true, we have great cause to praise God for it, and to give him the commendation of their pains and industry; not letting pass the memory of the first *Adventurer*, who was Father *Xavier*, one of the first foundation of this *Society*, (employed in this business by *Ignatius*, the first foundation of it) who landed here about the year 1556.

Rivers of note I find not any, though the Island be generally well watered, more memorable for two Mountains in it, than for all the Rivers. One of which called *Figueniana*, is said to transcend the clouds in height; the other (but without a name) useful to cast forth dreadful flames, like *Sicilian Ætna*: on the top whereof the *Devil*, environed with a white and shining cloud, doth sometimes show himself unto such of his *Votaries*, as live about this ill-famed abominable life, like the ancient *Hermities*.

Chief Cities of the whole Islands, 1. *Meaco*, seated in Japan, and the chief of that Island, formerly 21 miles in compass, but now by reason of their wars, scarce a third part of it: The ordinary residence of the *Triumvirs*, or three principal Magistrates, which sway the affairs of all these Islands: of whom the first, entitled *Zaxa*, hath the chief care in sacred matters; the second, named *Voo*, doth preside in Civil; and the third, called *Cabacansa*, manageth the concerns of Peace and War. At this time it is used for the common Empory of the trade of *China*, that people not permitting Merchants to come amongst them, but bringing to this place their Merchandise, as the common *Staple*; where they are lure to meet Chapman to buy it of them. 2. *Offucay*, a great and renowned City, conceived to be the richest in all the East; of so great trade, that every ordinary Merchant is said to be worth 30000 Crowns. 3. *Veniana* or *Figueniana*, at the foot of the hill so called, and about nine miles from *Meaco*. An University of *Bonzes*, for whose convenience and study, one of the Kings of *Japan* is said to have founded in this Town, and about that Mountain 3800 *Convents*, and to endow it with the third part of the Revenues of the Kingdom of *Vorn*. These Colleges or *Convents* now reduced to 800 only: but still the University of high fame and credit, that they give not the command or government of it unto any but the Kings Son, or his nearest Kinsman. 4. *Banoun*, another of their Universities, where they give degrees; affirmed to be as big as *Paris*. 5. *Bongo*, the Chief of all that Province, in which the *Jesuits* have a College; the *Japanes* learn the *Portugall* Language; and the *Europeans* that of *Japan*. 6. *Coia*, the Sepulture of their Princes, or some part of them: it being anciently ordained, that if their whole bodies be not here interred, they must at least send one of their Teeth. 7. *Fingo*, about 18 Leagues from *Meaco*, the subject of many great misfortunes. Destroyed in part by *Nabunanga*, one of the Kings of this Island, who lived Anno 1550, that which he left, terribly scattered by an Earthquake Anno 1596, most of the ruins of it since consumed by fire. 8. *Amangafaqi*, five Leagues from the Sea, much as big as *London* with the Suburbs. 9. *Edoo*, much fairer than that, and the chief Seat of one of their Kings. 11. *Firando*, a Seat-Royal also of some other King, where in the year 1613, there was a *Factory* established for the *English* Merchants. 12. *Ochinsamansu*, one of their most noted Havens. 13. *Tofa*, or *Toufa*, giving name to one of the Islands.

These Islands utterly unknown to the Ancients, were first discovered by *Antonio Mata* a *Portugall*, in the year 1542. I know *Mercator* taketh it from the *Aurea Chersonesus*, spoken of by *Ptolemy*; and I cannot choose but wonder at it: The situation of it so far distant from that of the *Chersonesus*, that either *Mercator* must be grossly out in his conjecture; or *Ptolemy* as much mistaken in

his informations; which no man hitherto can justly accuse him of. But passing by the improbability of *Mercator's* fancy, we are to know, that in former times these Islands were subject to one Prince, whom they obeyed and revered with great affection: which government continued, as themselves report, 1600 years in great State and Majesty. But in the end, the *Dairi*, (so they call their King) adding himself wholly unto pleasures, and laying the burden of Government upon other mens shoulders; his Deputies, or other inferior Officers, usurped *Regal* power, plumed themselves with the Eagles Feathers, used in their style the name of *Jucatar*, or Kings, and in a word, left nothing but the name of *Dairi* to their Lord and Sovereign. His Issue to this day do enjoy that Title, but little else: the Princes bordering on *Meaco*, once his Royal Seat, hardly allowing him sufficient means to find himself Victuals and Apparels: but otherwise beseeching him with as glorious Titles, as if he were possessed still of his ancient power. Only they let him execute the place of an *Herald*, in giving Arms, and settling Dignities and Honours; which brings him in the greatest profit he hath to trust to. Of all these Kings, he which can make himself Lord of *Coguinai* (which are the five Realms about *Meaco*) is called Prince of *Tenza*, and esteemed Sovereign of the rest. Which height of dignity, *Nabunanga*, before mentioned, in his time attained to; after him *Faxiba*, and since him *Taicusuma*: that Sovereignty being now in a like way to become hereditary.

For *Faxiba* having brought under his command most of these small Kingdoms, transported the vanquished Kings, and the chief of their Nobles out of one Country into another: to the end that being removed out of their own Realms, and among strange Subjects, they should remain without means to revolt against him: a merciful and prudent course. Having reduced into his power at least 50 of these petty Kingdoms, he divided the greatest part of the conquered Territories amongst his own faithful friends and followers, binding them to supply him with certain numbers of men upon all occasions. By which, and other politic courses he so fasted himself in those Estates, that *Taicusuma* his Son succeeded without opposition, who, had he lived, would have abolished the vain title of the *Dairi*, or took it to himself, as he had the power; solicited thereto by the King of *China*. But dying in or about the year 1607, *Fereitfama* his Son succeeded, and may be still alive for ought I can learn.

What the Revenues of this King are, it is hard to say. I guess them to be very great, in regard he maketh two millions of Crowns yearly, of the very Rice which he reserveth to himself from his own Demesne. The store of Gold and Precious Stones which these Islands yield, being wholly his, must needs add much unto his Coffers. And for his power, it is said that *Faxiba* was able to raise so good an Army out of the Estate demised by him to his faithful followers, that he revolved once on the Conquest of *China*: and to that end caused Timber to be felled for 2000 Vessels for the transporting of his Army. And had he lived a little longer, 'tis probable enough he might have shaken that great Kingdom, the *Japanes* being so much the better Soldiers, that a small party of them would defeat a good Army of *Chinses*. The fear whereof made the King of *China*, after his decease, correspond so fairly with his Successor.

2. THE PHILIPPINÆ, and Isles adjoining.

South of *Japan*, lyeth a great fry of Islands, which are now called *PHILIPPINÆ*, in honour of *Philip* the second King of *Spain*; in whose time discovered by *Legaspi*, a *Spanish* Captain Anno 1564. Strangely mistaken

by *Mercator* for the *Ravisi* of *Ptolemy*, those being placed by him in the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*, five degrees South of the *Aquator*, these situate on the East of *China*, in 13 or 14 degrees of Northern Latitude: those being only five in number, these reckoned at above ten thousand.

The Air in all of them generally very mild and temperate, especially in the mid-land parts; that on the shores somewhat inclining unto heat. The soil abundantly fruitful of all Commodities both for necessity and delight; that is to say, Rice, Pulse, Wax, Honey, Sugar-Canes, many pleasant Fruits, the fairest Figs of all the world, plenty of Fish, variety of Birds and Beasts, as well wild as tame, great store of Cotton-Wool, some Mines of Gold, and of other Metals great abundance.

All these Islands there are one only forty in possession of the King of *Spain*, belonging properly to *Asia*, but by him placed under the Government of *New Spain* in *America*, became discovered by *Legaspi*, at the infatigation or procurement of *Don Lewis de Velasco*, who was then Vice-Roy of that Province. In these forty Islands there are thought to be at the least a million of people, subject to that Crown; many of which have been converted by the *Friers* and *Jesuits* unto *Christianity*. Of these the principal in account are, 1. *LUSSON*, affirmed to contain in compass 1000 miles; beautified by the *Spaniards* with a fair City, seated on a commodious Haven, which they call *Manilla*: in which resides the Deputy or Lieutenant Governor for all these Islands, and the Bishop of the *Philippines* for ordering all affairs of those Churches. 2. *MINDANAO*, 380 Leagues in compass; in which are many good Towns, as 1. *Cailan*, 2. *Pavador*, 3. *Sabun*, 4. *Dapivo*, and some others. 3. *TANDIUM*, more fruitful than any of the rest, and of good extent, 100 Leagues in Circuit, more especially called *Philippina* because first discovered and so named. 4. *PALLLOHAN*, as much mistaken by *Mercator* for the *Buzacata* of *Ptolemy*.

These with the rest, subject in former times to the Kings of *China*, till they did voluntarily abandon them and confine their Empire within the Continent. On this relinquishment the people fell into Civil Wars, every man getting what he could for himself and the stronger preying on the weaker: which factions and divisions gave great help to the *Spaniards*, in the conquest of those few which are under their power. Islands of more importance to the *Spaniards*, than is commonly thought; and therefore furnished by them at their first Plantations with Bulls, Kine, Horses, and Mares, which before they wanted, and do now reasonably abound with. For besides the abundance of victuals, and some plenty of Gold, which they find therein, the situation is very fit to subdue the rest of the neighbouring Islands, to settle the commerce between *China* and *Mexico*, to bring on a continual Trade betwixt the Islands of this Sea, and of those of *America*; and finally, to prevent the *Moors* or *Arabs* from planting their *Mahometanism* any further Eastwards.

Not far from these, on the South of *Japan* bending towards the West, is another great heap of Rocks & Islands. Some of them rich in Gold, and furnished with very choice fruits, and other necessaries; and peopled with a stout and warlike breed of men, well skilled in *Archery*. The chief whereof have the names of 1. *Leguin Major*, 2. *Leguin Minor*, 3. *Hermosa*, 4. *Reix Magu*, &c. of which little memorable, but that *Hermosa*, as the *Spaniards*, or *Formosa* as the *Latines* call it, hath lately got the name of *New-Holland*; because not long since taken, planted and strongly fortified by some Adventurers of that Country. And not far off are those called 4. *Cumabon*, in which is said to be a *Plain-animal* or fennible tree.

6. *Mataru*, unfortunately remarkable for the death of *Magellanus*, slain there in a battel of the Natives, in favour of the King of 7. *Schar*, an adjoining Island; by the King whereof he had been kindly entertained: and who by his persuasions he had gained to the *Christian* Faith, and baptized him by the name of *Charles*, in honour of *Charles* Emperor and King of *Spain*, under whom he served in this Present voyage. But long this miscreant King (*Hanabar* he was called before his Baptism) continued in this good opinion; treacherously killing *John de Serran* a chief Pilot of *Magellanus's* small Navy, with about 70 of his men, and probably relapsing to his former *Gentilism*.

3. The Isles of BANDAN.

THE Isles of *BANDAN* are in number seven, that is to say 1. *Mira*, 2. *Rofolargium*, 3. *Atia*, 4. *Rom*, 5. *Norra*, 6. *Gannap*, the last of all, continually burning; and for that cause deserted of its Inhabitants: 7. *Bandan*, bigger than any of the rest, and therefore giving name to all. Situate South of the *Philippines* in the seventh degree of Southern Latitude. More fruitful of *Nutmegs*, than any other of all these parts; for which cause never without the concurrence of foreign Merchants from *Java*, *Malacca*, and *China*: and of late times from the Northern Countries of *Europe* also. Where by the way, the *Nutmeg-tree* is like a *Peach*, or *Peach-tree*, the innermost part whereof is the *Nutmeg* it self, covered over with a thin film or coat, which we call by the *Arabian* name of *Amira*, or *Alace*, and over that the fruit it self, as it is in *Peaches*, *Malacocorns*, and such fruits as those.

The People barbarous & rude, slothful, of weak bodies, and dull of wit; living consiliously together without rule or order. Some of them still continue in their ancient *Paganism*; but the greatest part are thought to be *Mahometans*: in which Religion very zealous, and so devout, that they will not go unto their work or worldly buisnesses, till they have visited the *Mosquies*, and done their devotions. A flame or pattern shall I lay in this, unto many *Christians*! All of them bloody and revengful: but yet so far from wronging the body of a Dead Enemy that they use to bury it with sweet Odours.

Some Towns they have, of which the principal, 1. *Nera*, and 2. *Loutore*, joyed in a League against the rest; the quarrel rising from the cutting down of certain trees proceeding to the butchery of one another, and ending in the loss of their common liberty. Subject in few to the King of *Borneo*, one of the *Molucces*, but too much at their own disposing. They had not elc elcted into quarrels with one another. Which opportunity being taken by the watchful *Hollanders*, they did not only little four *Factories* there; but for the security of their Trade, and to awe the Natives, they have built three Forts. They had also turned one of their *Mosquitos* to a *Fortress*; whereat the people were so incensed that they promised liberty to their *Slaves*, to get them out of it, who falling desperately on, fired it over their heads, and killed every man of them. The *English* Merchants have some trading also in these Islands, more acceptable than the other; because not so insolent, and grounding their pollution on a better title: the people of *Loutore*, voluntarily submitting themselves to the protection of King *James*, the first Monarch of the *British* Islands, and to his use giving possession of their Country to Captain *Robert Hayes*, Novemb. 24. 1620. The like done at the same time by the Inhabitants of *Wayre*, and *Refugien*, two other Islands which, if they be not the same with those of *Mira*, and *Rofolargium*, spoken of before, are probably some better Islands, neighbouring to *Polevorn* and *Poolaway*, of which more hereafter.

There

There is not far off another Island, not in this account, called *Tinian*, situate in the tenth degree of Southern Latitude; the chief of many little Islands which lie round about it: but not else observable, except it be for that abundance of *Sanders* both white and yellow, which growing there, is greedily exchanged by the Inhabitants for Iron, Hatchets, Swords, Knives, and the like commodities.

4. THE MOLUCCOES.

THE *MOLUCCOES* are in number many; the King of *Ternate* which is one of them, being said to have Dominion over 70 Islands: but the determinate number of them I do not know. Situate on both sides of the *Aequator*, and consequently of an hot and intemperate air: the soil is dry and spongy, so that it sucketh up the greatest shower of rain that doth fall amongst them, before it can pass into the Sea. Not very well furnished with necessaries for the life of man, but that defect supplied with the abundance of Spices which are growing here, *Cinnamon*, *Ginger*, *Nutmegs*, *Alfick*, *Alces*, *Pippin*, and the like commodities; for which, the Merchants bring them all things that the Country wants. But 'tis the *Clove*, which is the great Riches of these Islands, and peculiar in a manner to them. A Spice, which groweth on Trees, like Bay-trees yielding blossoms, first white, then green, (at which time they yield the pleasantest smell in the world) and last of all red and hard, which are the *Cloves*. Of nature so extreme hot that if a Pail of water should only stand in the room, in which they are cleaned and sorted, the *Cloves* in two days would dry it up. Of which nature the unspeakable Silks of *China* are allured to be.

The People for the most part *Idolaters*, intermix with some *Mahometans* dwelling on the shores; and of late time with *Christians* in their several *Factories*. Of several *Originals*, and different Languages, but all in general fraudulent, perfidious, treacherous, inhumane, and of noted wickedness. Few of them clothed, nor much caring to hide their shame. Not civilized by the cohabitation of more modest and civil Nation. Pity such ill condition should be lodged in such handsome bodies: the people being said to be better proportioned than the other *Indians*, and for strength and valour not followed by any of them.

Of all the *Islands* which pass under this name, there are not above five or six of any reckoning: that is to say, 1 *Ternate*, 2 *Tidor*, 3 *Macin*, 4 *Rachian*, 5 *Machian*, and 6 *Borneo*: None of them above six Leagues in compass, many not so much; the whole cluster of them thronged together in a girdle of no more than 25 Leagues in the Circumference: of such consequence and importance, that the two famous voyages of *Americus Vesputius*, and *Ferdinand Magellan*, the first employed by *Emmanuel King of Portugal*, the other by *Charles the Emperor*, and King of Spain, were undertaken only to find out the next way unto them.

Of the rest, *Machian* and *Tidore* have their proper Kings; so hath *Borneo* also, if that be one of them: the King whereof had anciently some title and authority over those of *Banda*, *Macin*, and *Machian*, are subject to the King of *Ternate*, who is a *Mahometan* in Religion; and said to be the Lord of 70 Islands. This the most puissant Member of this scattered body; and for that cause most aimed at by all Competitors, the *Spaniards* having here one Fortress, and the *Hollanders* three. Both Nations hated by the Natives, whom they consume and waste in the wars betwixt them; but of the two the *Spaniards* looked on by the people as the more a Gentleman, the other stomach and despised for their sordid dealings.

Nothing else memorable in the story of *Geography* of them, but that they were discovered by the conduct of *Magellanus*, in the Reign of *Charles the Fifth*, who employed him in it, Anno 1519. and that there is in *Ternate* a Prodigious Mountain, in height above the Clouds of the Air, and in Nature agreeing with the Element of Fire, which it seems to mount to: huge flames whereof, with dreadful thunders, and dark smoke, it sends forth continually. Reckoned by some amongst these Islands, but howsoever neighbouring near them, are those of *Poleone*, and *Poolaway*, the first more plentiful of Cloves, the second more proper for the Nutmeg, but both acknowledging the Sovereignty of the Kings of *England*; for *Poleone*, by the general and voluntary Act of all the chief men of the Country, was surrendered into the power of *King James*, the possession of it being given for his Majesties use to Captain *Cortop*, Decemb. 25. Anno 1616. no other Nation at that time having any interest in it, or Pretensions to it: which notwithstanding it was not long after seized on by the insolent and ungrateful *Hollanders*, who being to restore it upon composition, cut down all the *Clove-Trees*, to deprive the *English* of the benefit of them. *Poolaway* made the like surrender at the same time also, declared by setting up the *English Colours* on the top of their Castle, giving to *Cortop* a green turf (whereby as by *Livery* and *Sessin*) to take possession of the Country, promising the annual tribute of a branch of *Nutmegs*; and that they should sell neither *Mace* nor *Nutmeg* to any, but to those of the *English Nation*. The *Indians* do at or near the same time by *Wayne* and *Refuge*, two other Islands of these Seas; which if they be not those two of *Banda*, pointed at before, must needs be brought within the number of this scattered Company.

5. THE SINDA or SELEBES.

NEAR the *Moluccoes*, and almost intermingled with them, are a few of Islands which *Protony* call *SINDA*; and the Moderns *SELEBES*; many in size, but not above four of any weight; that is to say, 1 *SELEBES*, 2 *Gilolo*, 3 *Ambuin*, 4 *Macassar*; of which the two first are situate under the *Aequator*, and the last somewhat on the South of it: all of them in the time of *Protony* inhabited by *Anthropophagi*, and along time after; in whom as the Kings of the *Moluccoes* did use to send their condemned persons into these Islands, there to be devoured. Which said in general, we will take a more particular view of them, as they lie before us.

1. *SELEBES*, which gives name to the rest, and hath under it many lesser Islands, is large and rich. The soil thereof exceeding fertile, the people tall and comely, and of colour, not so much black as ruddy. Much given to *Piracy*, and all *Idolaters* till of late. Governed by many Kings or petty Princes, the cause of much contention, and many quarrels: three of which are said to have been converted to Christianity; and for that cause much hated by their heathenish Subjects, who thereupon rebelled against them. It is situate West of the *Moluccoes*, and hath therein a Town called *Sina*, honoured with the abode of one of their Christian Kings; but possibly not so called until their conversion; the proper name thereof being *Chan*. 2. *Nibou*, in the South, and 3. *Torelli* in the North parts of it.

2. *GILOLO*, called also *Batachina*, is one of those Islands, which our late Navigators conceive to be half name of *Del Moro*. Of large extent, conceived to be as big as *Italy*. By that account (the truth whereof I do very much doubt) greater than *Zellu* is in compass, its though of less reputation: That being Governed by its own Prince; This subject for the most part to the King of *Ternate*.

Ternate. Situate East of the *Moluccoes*, exceeding plentiful of Rice, well stored with wild Hens, and on the shores provided of a kind of shell-fish, which in taste much resemble Mutton. A tree they have which they call by the name of *Sagu*, of the pith whereof they make their bread; and of the sap or juice of it they compose a pleasant drink, which serveth them instead of Wine. The air intemperately hot, the people well proportioned, but rude and savage; some of them *Gentiles*, some *Mahometans*, of which last Religion is their King. The chief Town of it is *Batbame*, or *Batachina*, (whence the new name unto the Island) in which the *Hollanders* have a Fort to defend their Factory.

3. *AMBOINA*, South of the *Aequator*, and the third of the *Sinde*, hath many Islands of less note, which depend upon it, and do communicate in the name. In compass about five hundred miles, said by *Magnus* to be extremely rough and barren; which must be understood with reference to some kinds of Grain. For otherwise it is very fertile, abundantly productive of Rice, Citrons, Lemons, Oranges, *Coco-nuts*, *Sugar-Canes*, and other fruits and very plentiful of Cloves; which last, as it makes some to reckon it amongst the *Moluccoes*, so may it be a reason why the Island is defective in such fruits as require much moisture: the *Clove* being of so hot a temper, as before was noted, that it draweth to it all the moisture of the Earth, which is near unto it.

The people much given to *Piracy*, wherewith they do infect all the neighbouring Islands, defamed for *Cannibals* or Man-eaters: it being here a constant custom, that when their parents are grown old, or sick of any incurable Disease, they give them to one another to be eaten by them. They have one Town of more note than other, which they call *Ambuin*, by the name of the Island. First, taken by the *Portugals*, and by them secured with a strong Fortress: during whole power here, the *Portugals*, who had in it their several Residences, converted many to Christianity. But in the year 1605, the Island and the Fort both were conquered by *Stephen of Hagan*, for the Sates of the United Provinces: who having cleared the Country of the *Portugals* Forces, possessed themselves of it. Received by the Natives at their first coming with Joy and Triumph: but they got little by the change, as they found soon after: their new Masters being more burdensome and insufferable, than the old had been. For claiming it the right of Conquest, and think they may oppress the Natives by the Law of Arms; and ingross all trade unto themselves as the true *Proprietaries*. Infamous even amongst the rude and savage *Indians* for their barbarous inhumanity executed upon some of the *English* (the greatest patrons under God which they have in the world) whom in the year 1618, they most cruelly tortured, and most wickedly murdered; under colour of some plot to betray their Fortresses: but in plain truth for no other reason but because they were more beloved by the Inhabitants, and began to gain upon their trade.

4. West of *Ambuin* and South-West of *Seleber*, lieth the fourth of these Islands, called *MACASSAR*; said to contain from East to West 600 miles; plentiful of Rice, Flesh, Fish, Salt, and Cotton-Wool; not destitute of Gold and Pearls, and well stored with *Sandar* (*Sandalum* it is called in *Latine*) a medicinal wood, growing like a Nut-tree: of several colours, white, red, yellow, but the red, the best: the fruit in making like a Cherry, but of no esteem. In some parts overgrown with wood, in which certain *Fery Fles* make nightly such shining light, as if every twig or bough were a burning Candle. In the middle covered with high Mountains, out of which flow many navigable Rivers.

The people for the most part *Gentiles*, intermix with the

Sea-coasts with some *Mahometans*. Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Sanderem*, the Kings Seat situate near a large Lake, very commodiously for traffick. 2 *Macassar*, an *English Factory*, so called according to the name of the Island.

Near to these Islands, and somewhat North to *Batachina* are some other Isles, plentiful of all things necessary for the life of man, but inhabited by a thievish and *Piratical* people: the principal of which, 1 *Terrao*, 2 *Sanguin*, 3 *Solor*, 4 *Morabay*, in which last they eat *Batata* Roots instead of bread; besides some others of less note. Most of the people *Christians*, except those of *Sanguin*, the King whereof being gained to the Christian Faith, by some of the *Jesuits*, hath brought many of his Subjects to the same Religion.

6. BORNEO.

WEST of these *Selebes*, lieth *BORNEO*, of more note and greatness, than any hitherto described, in these *Indian Seas*. In compass, after their account, we speak most sparingly, 2200 miles; but as some say, no less than three months sail about. Situate under the *Aequator*, which parteth the Dominions of the King of *Borneo*, and the King of *Lau*: opposite on the North to *Cambogia*, on the South, to *Java*, on the East, to *Seleber*, on the West, unto the Isle of *Sumatra*.

The Country said to be provided naturally of all things necessary; yet said withal to be unfurnished of *Alles*, *Oxen*, *Herds of Cattel*, except only *Horses*, and these but small of stature neither: the greatest riches of it being *Campfire*, *Agrick*, and some Mines of *Adamant*; erroneously conceived by *Mercator* to be the *Isola bona Fortune*, spoken of by *Protony*; that being seated opposite to the outlets of *Ganges*, in the Latitude of a hundred forty five Degrees, and fifteen Minutes; this Eastward some degrees of the *Golden Chersonese*, and consequently twenty Degrees distant at the least from that Island in *Protony*.

The people generally more white than the rest of the *Indians*, of good wits and approved integrity, though all *Mahometans*, or *Gentiles*. Divided betwixt two Kings, and two Religions; the King of *Borneo* and his subjects being all *Mahometans*; those of *Lau* still remaining in their ancient *Gentilism*. These think the *Sun* and *Moon* to be man and wife, and the *Stars* their children; ascribing to each of them divine honours, to the *Sun* especially; whom they salute at his first rising with great Reverence, saying certain Verses. Their publick businesses are treated of commonly in the night, at which time the *Confessors* of *Star* meet, and ascend some tree, viewing the Heavens till the *Moon* rise, and then go to the *Senate-House*. The same Apparel generally of both Religions; but thin, by reason of the great heat of the Air: a shirt of Silk; or of *Calico*, or some such light stuff, worn more for modesty than for warmth.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Borneo*, situate in the North-West part of the Island near a goodly Bay, but in the middle of the Pens like the City of *Venice*, and seated as this is, on *Files*; the building sumptuous, of hewed stones, covered with the leaves of the *Coco-tree*. The Town so large as to contain 2500 Families. 2 *Taipura*, 3 *Tamaratata*, 4 *Malano*, all of them noted for fair Cities, or commodious Havens. 5 *Sagadana*, a Factory of *English*. 6 *Lavi* on a large Bay in the South-East part of the Island, the ordinary Seat of the King of *Lau*. 7 *Poro*, on another capacious Bay, not far from *Lavi*, and directly opposite to *Borneo*: that being seated on the North-West, and this on the South-East of the Island. Betwixt these two Kingdoms is the whole divided; but so that he of *Borneo* hath the greatest part of it, and therefore keeps

Dddd d

lib

the greater State : not to be spoken with, but by the mouth of some of his own *Interpreters*; and in his Palace served by no other Attendants, than *Maid*s or *Women*.

7. JAVA.

Opposite to *Borneo* towards the South lie the Isles of *JAVA*, two in number, both situate South of the *Equator*, both of great Circumference, and commonly distinguished into *Major* and *Minor*, or the greater and the lesser *JAVA*.

1. *JAVA MAJOR*, the More Northward of the two, and by much the bigger, is said to be in compass 2000 miles; and that by them who reckon elsewhere *Borneo* for the biggest of these Seas. But the truth is, that the South parts of this Island not being perfectly discovered, make the amasurement thereof to be very uncertain. Conceived most properly to be the *Abadis* of *Ptolemy*, the most Northern part whereof is placed by him in the eight degree of *Southern Latitude*: said by him to afford much Gold and Silver, to be exceeding fruitful of all other necessaries; and finally, that the name did signify *we gods view* or the Island of *Barly*. All which agreeeth punctually with the present Island, the word *Jabadi*, signifying a kind of grain much like our *Barly*; and *Diu* in the *Persian* and *Indian* Tongues signifying an Island. And so in *Jabadiu*, we have found the Island of *Java*, the mutation of *B*. into *V*. being ordinary.

Then for the riches and fertility of it, it is said to yield great plenty of Fruits, and Corn, but of *Rice* especially; itself of all sorts, silted and sent from hence into other Countries; great store of Fowl, both wild and tame, plenty of Gold, some precious Stones, and great quantities of Pepper, Ginger, Cinnamon, and some other Spices. In a word, so befriended by the bounty of Nature, that *Scaliger* calleth it *Epitome Mundi*, or the whole World contracted in a lesser Volume. But withal it is much exposed unto storms and tempests, from which seldom free.

The people of a middle stature, corpulent, and of broad Faces, most of them naked, or covered only with a slight silken stuff, and that no lower than the knees; accompanied the most *Civil* people of all the *Indians*, as fetching their descent from *China*: but withal treacherous, very proud, much given to lying, and very careless of their words, to which is used, that they count it not amongst their *Fautes*. And therefore when a King of theirs had broke promise with the *Hollanders*, and was challenged for it, he answered, that his tongue was not made of bone. Cruel they are also said to be, and implacable, if once offended: accustomed of old to eat the bodies of their friends: accounting no burial so honourable, nor obsequy so applause. This also a custom amongst many of the rest of the *Indians*, and so hath it been ever since the beginning of the *Persian* Monarchy. *Herodotus* reporteth how *Darius Hytaspes* understanding of this custom; and withal knowing how the *Grecians* use to burn their dead, sent to the *Greeks*, that it was his pleasure they should eat the bodies of their dead: But they used all means of perswasion and intreaty, not to be forced to so brutish and barbarous a custom. Then commanded he the *Indians* to conform themselves to the fashion of the *Grecians*; but they all more abhorred to burn the dead, than the *Greeks* did to eat them. So impossible it is for a custom either to be suddenly left off, or to seem undecent and inconvenient if once thoroughly settled.

In matter of Religion they are all *Mahometans*, or *Gentiles*, according to the fancy of their several Kings, whereof in this Island there are very many; one for every great Tribe, or more powerful Family Zealous in their Religion

whichsoever it be, as appears by the sad story of the Daughter of the King of *Ballambua*, murdered by her Husband the King of *Pasfarva*, the second night after her Wedding, with all her Attendants; because they would not be *Mahometans*, which was his Religion. Yet in some common Principles they agree well enough, punishing *Adultery* with death; in which case the woman chooseth her nearest Kinsman for her *Executioner*: but otherwise spending the Day and Night in much Sloth and Dalliance. Of the two, *Gentilis* is the more diffused, because most ancient; the Sect of *Mahomet* not being introduced till the year 1560. though of a very swift growth, and of a great increase for so short a time.

Their chief Towns, 1. *Panarucan*, near a burning hill, which in the year 1580. brake forth exceedingly, oppressed infinite numbers of men, & cast great stones into the City for three days together. 2. *Jortan*, a Town of 1000 Households, the Inhabitants whereof are *Gentiles*, and have their Temples in the Woods: the Chief-Priest of whose superstition hath his dwelling here, of great authority and power over all the Island. 3. *Ballambua*, 4. *Pasfarva*, 5. *Taban*, 6. *Matara*, 7. *Dannia*, 8. *Taggal*, 9. *Surabaya*, 10. *Gataban*: the seats of so many of their Kings: some of them also furnished with convenient Havens.

11. *BANTAM*, the seat also of a King, but of most trade in all the Island, seldom without the company of *English*, *Portugals*, and *Hollanders*; the principal Factory of the *English* in all the *Indies*, though they have many besides this. The Town unwholly seated in a moorish ground, and much subject to fire. 12. *Sunda*, situate in a place abounding in Pepper. 13. *Agacran*, a convenient Port; Here was also in the time of *Ptolemy* a Town called 14. *Argyropolis* or the Silver City, long ago destroyed. And now here is, 15. *Sura*, a new Town in the Territories of the King of *Bantam*, built by some of the Subjects of the King of *Pasfarva*, who being oppressed by their own King, came into this part of the Country, where they got leave to build this City. The people whereof live quietly according to their own Laws, follow their Husbandry abroad, but never marry; and yet do not want a constant Succession, adopting some of the other *Javans* into their Society, as they find their number to diminish.

Of the story of this Island I can say but little. Divided into many petty and inconsiderate Kingdoms; and those divided too by Mountains, crossing the Island in the middle from West to East, which cut off all commerce and correspondence betwixt one another. Some of these Kings *Mahometans*, some *Gentiles*, as before was said; all subject or homagers at least to one of the Kings of the *Gentiles*, who hath his dwelling in the midst of the Island. Next him, the King of *Tuban* was conceived to be richest, and the King of *Ballambua* of the greatest Territory; whose Family after long war and bloodshed, begun in the murder of his Daughter, is said to be wholly rooted out by the King of *Pasfarva*. These Kings much revered by their subjects, and so well obeyed, that whatsoever they command, is done, be it never so dangerous.

2. *JAVA MINOR*, situate on the South of the other, is said to be 2000 miles in compass, and to be very near the firm Lands of *Terra Australis Incognita*, or the Southern Continent. Not very well known to any of our late *Adventurers*; but generally affirmed (not so much on certain knowledge as uncertain conjecture) to be of the same nature and condition with the greater *Java*. The Inhabitants hereof in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, who had travelled in it, reported to be *Cannibals*, *Idolaters*, devourers of their Parents and dearest friends; and to worship all day whatsoever they lay first in the morning. Divided then into eight Kingdoms, distinguished by

by the names of their principal Towns. Six whereof he had seen, which are these that follow. 1. *Felch*, where the Townsmen were *Moors*, and the Peasants, *Gentiles*. 2. *Bajma*, which did acknowledge the *Great Cham* of *Tartaria* for Lord in chief; but without paying of any tribute. 3. *Samara*, where none of the *Norib-flurs* could be seen. 4. *Sambri*, in which some men were said to have tails like Dogs. 5. *Fanfirs*, in which they have a Tree, the wood whereof put in water, will sink like Iron; of which they use to make *Lances* that will pierce an Armour. And 6. *Dragorins*, of which there is nothing memorable or prodigious; but that the people of it use to eat their nearest Kinsmen; and that no *Prodigie* at all, because used by others.

To these two we may join *MADURA*, on the North of the greater *Java*, fertile of *Rice*, but otherwise of so waterish and moist a Soil, that men and Cattel use to go knee-deep when they sow it. The chief Town whereof is called *Arosbay*. And on the East the same *Java* the Island *Bali*, exceeding populous for the bigness, supposed to contain 600000 Inhabitants; and very well provided of *Bulls*, *Buffals*, Goats, Horses, Swine, many kind of fruits, and some store of metals.

8. SUMATRA.

SUMATRA lieth on the North of the greater *Java*, betwixt it and the *Strait* of *Singapur*, the most Southern Town of the *Golden Chersonese*. The *Strait* in that place so freight and narrow, not above a Musket-shot in breadth, that some conceive this Island to have been formerly joyned unto it by some little *Isthmus*, since worn away by the violence and working of the Sea; and that this Island, and not the Land of *Malacca*, was that *Golden Chersonese*, which we find in *Ptolemy*. More probably far than that we should run after it to the Isle of *Japan*, situate on the East of *China*, so far from any part of *India*, where it is placed by the Author of the *Atlas Minor*.

The length hereof, extended from the North-west to the South-east, is said by some to be 900, by others but 700 miles; the breadth 300; and the whole compass 2100. Strangely affirmed by some Writers to be the biggest of all the East; who yet assign a greater circuit unto *Java*, and as great to *Borneo*. Situate under the *Equator*, which divideth it into two parts, very near an equality: that on the North-side reaching unto five degrees, that on the South-side but to seven degrees from the line it self. By which account there is little difference betwixt the length of a day and a night; both much at one in all times of the year whatever.

The air hereof by consequence must be very hot, but withal unwholesome: not so much in regard of the extreme heats, as by reason of the gross vapours drawn from the many Fens and Rivers which are found to be in it; and the thick Woods which intercept the free course of a purging wind. The Soil not capable of such grain as in other places, except *Rice*, and *Millet* (for I know not otherwise how to render the *Latine*, *Millium*) but yielding Ginger, Pepper, *Cumprine*, *Agarick*, and *Cassia*, in great abundance. It affordeth also great plenty of Wax and Honey, store of Silks and Cottons, rich Mines, not only of Tin, Iron, Sulphur, and other Minerals, but of Gold such quantity, that some conceive this Island to be *Solomon's Ophir*. And if *Pedrunks Sirie*, one of the Kings of this Island, in a Letter Written to King *James* did not brag too impudently; it may be probable enough. For by that Letter it appeareth that all the furniture of his house, and trappings of his Elephants and Horses, with all his Armour, were of pure Gold, and

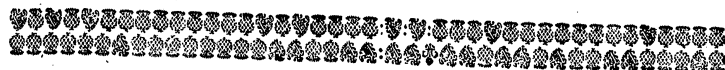
that he had in his Dominions a whole Mountain of Gold; King of which *Golden Mountain* he entituled himself in his *Regal Stile*.

The Inhabitants are many of them good *Artificers*, cutting *Merchants*, or expert *Mariners*. All of them *Gentiles* till about two hundred and thirty years since, at what time by the diligence of some *Arabian* Merchants trading to this Island, *Mahometanism* began to spread upon the Coasts. But in the In-land parts of the Country they are *Gentiles* still, and still retain amongst them their old barbarous custom. The most loving men unto their Enemies that were ever known; for otherwise they would never eat them. Having eaten, they use their skulls instead of Money, which they exchange or barter for such necessities, as their wants require: and he is thought to be the wealthiest man amongst them, who hath most of this coyn. Those of the other Religion, though in most points and customs they agree with the rest of the *Mahometans*, have this one singular to themselves: which is, that once every year on a certain day they go solemnly unto their *Mosques* to see if *Mahomet* be come, leading a spare horse for him to ride upon: which (milling him) is mounted, at their coming back, by the best man in the company. Of any great Progress that *Christianity* hath made here, I have no good evidence.

That there are many and great Rivers, hath been said before, but their names I find not. Here are also many Mountains, and those great and high; that of most note called *Balawams*, said to burn continually. Out of which, or not far off do arise two Fountains, of which the one is said to run pure Oyl, and the other the best *Balsamum*: which I find no need to believe, but such as have seen it.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Achen*, the Seat-Royal of that Kingdom, beautified with the *Royal Palace*, to which they pass thorow seven Gates one after another, with green Courts between the three outermost; those three continually guarded with women expert at their weapons and using both Swords and Guns; the only ordinary guard that he hath for his person. The materials of this Palace mean, but the furniture costly, the Walls whereof being hanged commonly with *Velvet* and *Damask*, and sometimes with cloth of Gold. 2. *Pedjar*, 3. *Pacom*, 4. *Cambar*, 5. *Menemabo*, 6. *Aura*, and 7. *Andragide*, the seats of so many of their Kings. 8. *Pasjaman*, a Town of great Trade, but situate in a Moorish and unhealthy place, found so experimentally by too many of the *English*, who have there their Factory. 9. *Priamoon*, and 10. *Tecoo*, of a more healthy air, but not so commodious in their Havens as is that of *Pasjaman*: these three Towns standing in that part of the Country where the *Pepper* groweth.

All that we know touching the story of this Country, is, that the *Portugals* when they first came hither, found in it nine and twenty Kings; reduced since to a smaller number. For *Abraham* sometimes a Slave, afterwards King of *Achen*, having turned *Mahometan*, by the help of the *Turks* and *Achians*, subdued the Realm of *Pedjar* and *Pacom*. *Aladine* who succeeded him, being once a *Fiberman*, and grown famous for his exploits at Sea, was by this King preferred to the marriage of one of his Kinswomen, made his Lord *Admiral*, and by him entrusted with the protection of his Son and Heir: of whom instead of a Protector he became a murderer, and usurped the State unto himself. When King, he added to his Crown the Kingdom of *Aru*, or *Aura*, and *Minnebo*, and almost all the rest on the North part of the Island. In this Kings time, the *English* were first settled in their Factory there. Grown old (a hundred years at the least) he was imprisoned by his eldest Son, impatient of a longer stay, alleging that his age had made him unfit for



A T A B L E

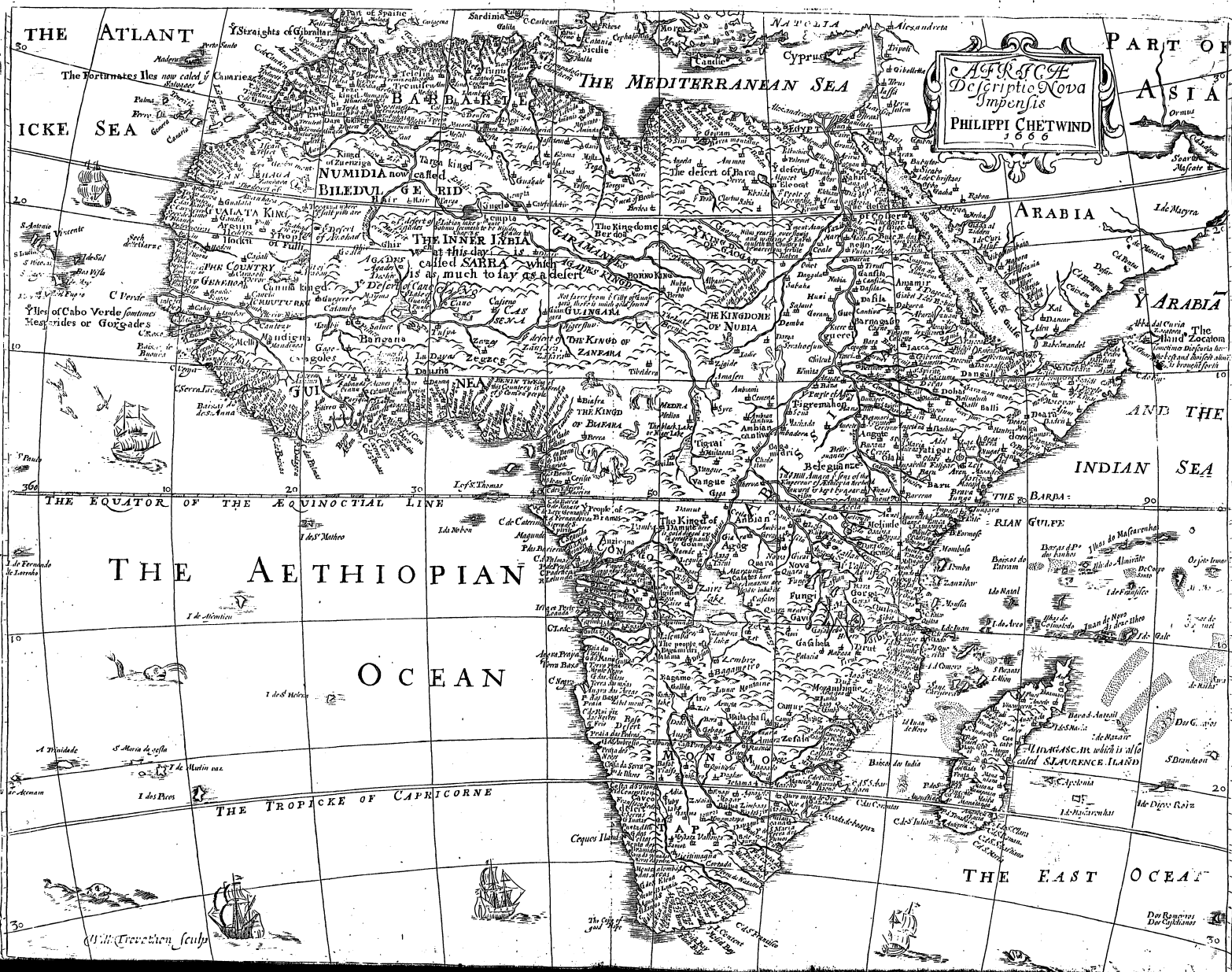
Of the *Longitude* and *Latitude* of the Chief *Towns* and *Cities* Mentioned in this Book.

		Long.	Lat.			Long.	Lat.
A	Chem	132.30	3.40	Cochin		114.0	9.40
	Aden	82.0	13.50	Colombo		117.30	6.40
	Agra	118.10	44.0	Comori		115.10	7.10
	Aleppo	72.30	38.0	Conlan		114.30	7.10
	Amboina	162.50	4.20	Cantan		149.	25.
	Amodabat	169.50	23.10	Chant		109.40	17.30
	Antioch	72.30	39.0				
	Apamos	61.30	43.40	D			
	Aracban	129.10	10.24	Damascus		74.30	35.0
	Ardovat	140.50	25.0	Decan		113.20	44.0
B	Arminig	76.	41	Delly		114.0	19.10
	Avaas	142.30	27.50	Derbent		84.53	42.20
	Amastro	66.30	44.30	Din		108.0	20.30
				Dornate		137.50	7.50
	Babylon	82.20	33.0	E			
	Baccu	88.50	42.	Ephefus		60.30	39.40
	Balsora	82.40	31.10	Eres		87.40	40.50
	Banda	164.0	4.50	Ergimul		150.0	58.20
	Baricalla	111.30	12.40				
C	Bengala	125.10	21.20	F			
	Bethlehem	65.45	31.50	Famagusta		69.20	30.30
	Bijnagar	114.20	14.10	Fusfo		57.50	45.40
	Bulgar	86.30	54.40				
				G			
	Cabul	212.20	31.0	Gabara		80.50	36.10
	Cainda	137.30	47.40	Gaza		70.50	39.10
	Calecut	112.40	10.30	Gest		107.30	26.30
	Cambalu	161.10	51.40	Gilolo		161.30	1.10
	Cambota	342.20	11.40	Goa		112.20	14.40
D	Campion	148.0	57.30				
	Cananor	112.50	11.0	H			
	Condabor	110.40	33.40	Heri		99.53	30.0
	Capha	68.50	46.0	Hormar		165.25	35.10
	Calamines	149.0	9.0	Hierusalem		72.20	33.0
	Cauchin China	140.30	20.0				
	Cranganor	113.0	9.40	I			
	Cerafo	73.0	44.40	Fesli		94.40	32.0
	Choromandel	115.20	22.30	Indio		105.40	38.0
	Chesmur	115.10	3.0	Fericho		73.	33.0
E	Chianfu	147.30	27.30	Foppa		71.30	34.0
	Chirman	98.30	27.30	Ifigias		110.30	39.40
	Cincapara	136.43	1.20				
				L			
				Laquin Major		165.0	28.0

An Advertisment to the Reader touching the ERRATA of this PART.

IN the first place the Reader is to be advertised that Fol. I have adventured to prove the Aalmatha of Ptolomy to be the Chamath, or Hamath-Sobab, of the Holy Scriptures, The place ill pointed, but the judicious Reader will easily find out the scope and meaning. Yet if this shall not be approved of, I should then think it to be that Elam or Helam where David discomfited the Army of the Melopotamians; mention whereof is made 2 Sam. 10. 16, 17. In the next place he is to know, that Fol. within the compass of five lines, the Victory which Asa King of Judah obtained against the numerous Army of Ethiopians, is twice repeated: in the first place ascribed to Jethir, in the next to Marefha, (though the other also hath good Authors) let that of Jethir be supplied in this manner following. 5. Jethir or Jerthir, in the North Border of this Tribe toward Eleutheropolis: a City anciently of the Levites, in St. Hierom's time called by the name of Jethira, and then replenished altogether with Christians: now nothing but the name remaining. 6. Marefa, &c. And finally, whereas Ajalonp. is placed in the Tribe of Ephraim, and p; in the Tribe of Dan, the reason is, because being situate in the Borders of both Tribes, it is by some Writers ascribed to Dan, and by others to Ephraim. The like may be also said of Michpas, mentioned also in two Tribes according as it is disposed on by several Authors.







Africa
Descriptio Nova
Impensis
PHILIPPI CHETWIND
1666

THE AETHIOPIAN
OCEAN

THE MEDITERRANEAN SEA

THE TROPICKE OF CAPRICORNE

THE EQUATOR OF THE EQUINOCTIAL LINE

THE EAST OCEAN

COSMOGRAPHY, The Fourth Book.

PART I.

CONTAINING THE CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY OF

AFRICK,

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

OF AFRICK.

AFRICK is bounded on the East by the Red-Sea, and Bay of Arabia, by which parted from Asia; on the West by the main Atlantick Ocean, interposing betwixt it and America; on the North by the Mediterranean Sea, which divides it from Europe and Anatolia; and on the South, with the Ethiopick Ocean, separating it from Terra Australis incognita, or the Southern Continent. Parted from all the rest of the World, except Asia only, to which joyned by a narrow Isthmus, not above 60 miles in length, and memorable for the great design which Cleopatra the last Queen of Egypt had upon it, which in brief was this. When Mark Anthony was encountered by Augustus in the Naval Battel of Actium, Cleopatra fearing the success, fled through the midt of all his Fleet, with the 60 Gallies which were appointed for her Guard. Being come to the North part of this Isthmus, she gathered together all her portable Treasures, and intended to hoist her Shipping out of the Mediterranean, and hale them over the Land to the Red-Sea, from whence she had purposed to take Sail, and together with her Sweet-heart Anthony, and some other choicest Friends, to seek out some other place of dwelling far enough from the Romans. But from this, Anthony who fled after her,

and vainly hoped for a change of fortunes, did at last dissuade her.

The Form hereof is like a Pyramid reversed; the Basis of which, from Tanger on the Strait of Gibraltar, to the point where it joyneth unto Asia, is reckoned at the breadth of 1920 Italian Miles, the Comus of it very narrow. But from the Comus or Pyris to the most Northern part of the Basis, it extendeth it self the space of 4155 Miles, being much less than Asia, and far bigger than Europe.

By the Grecians it is called most commonly Libya, (of which more hereafter) part of it taken for the whole: by the Ethiopians, Alkebu-lam; by the Indians, Beseatib. But the most noted name thereof is Africa, which Josephus out of Cleodemus and Polyhistor, deriveth from Epher or Apher one of the Nephews of Abraham by Midian the Son of Kenurab. The Arabians, by whom it is called Ifrichea, derive it from the Verb Faruch, signifying to divide; because more visibly divided both from their own Country, and the rest of the World, than any other part thereof which was known unto them. Some of the Greek Fablers fetch it from one Asra, a companion of Hercules, whom he attended unto Spain. Some fetch it out of Apher an Hebrew word, signifying Dust, agreeable to its sandy and dusty Soil. Festus an old Grammarian, from a Privativum, and the Greek word φεισιν, which imports

ports a country void of cold, as suitable to the fiery temper of the Air. By *Barbatus*, who brings all from the old *Phoenicians*, it is said to be derived from *Petrus, Spica*, an ear of Corn, which mollified into *Petrie*, came at last to *Africa*, that is to say, a Country plentiful in Corn. Which Etymology of his may receive little countenance from that great plenty of Corn which was bred in this Country: especially in those parts hereof which the *Romans* called the *Proper Africa*, whereof we shall speak more when we come to *Barbary*: the whole Continent taking from that Province the name of *Africa*. But in my mind, (if that from the Hebrew *Epher* or *Aphar*, be not worth accepting,) I should prefer the Etymon of *Fefus* before any other, unless we might be sure that *Carthage* anciently was called *Africa*, as *Suidas* telleth us it was; for then without all peradventure we would feel no further. For other more particular names by which it hath been called in some elder Writers, i. e. *Olympia, Oceanica, Efbatica, Coryphe, Ammanis, Hesperia, Orygia*, and perhaps some others, it is enough to our design to take notice of them.

It is situate for the most part under the *Torrid Zone*, the *Aequator* crossing it almost in the very middle: and for that cause supposed by many of the Ancients not to be inhabited at all, or but very thinly, in the middle and more Southern parts of it; or if at all, with such fierce people, as hardly did deserve to be counted men. *Pomponius* among others was of this opinion, guessing the inward parts thereof to be taken up by such strange Brutes as the *Cynophanes*, who had heads like dogs; 2. The *Selapodes*, who with the shadow of their foot could and did hide themselves from the heat of the Sun; 3. The *Ganapheutes*, a naked people, ignorant of the use of Weapons, and therefore fearfully avoiding the sight of men; 4. The *Blemmyes*, who being without heads, had their eyes and mouths in their Breasts; 5. The *Beripani*, who had no other humane quality to declare them to be men, but the shape and making of their bodies. These people (as they thought) possessed some small portion of the mid-land parts of this great Country; the rest they knew not, or conceived to be uninhabitable, in regard of the great heats thereof. But late discoveries and navigations have found the contrary; the Country proving in most parts to be well inhabited, and the coolness of the nights, by mists, dews, and gentle gales of wind, to mitigate the heat of the day.

*Quodque dei Solis vehementi exarduit aesti,
Humida nos refecit, paribusque refrigerant horis.*

That is to say,

What the Sun burns by day, the Night renews,
And doth as much refresh with moistning Dews.

For notwithstanding that it be in some places full of sandy deserts, a disease incident to some parts of *Arabia*, *Persia* and other Countries of a more Northerly situation; yet it is said by some, who speak it upon knowledge, that the greatest part of those Regions which lie under the Line or near it, (both in *America*, and here) have fo many goodly Fountains, Rivers, and little Brooks, such abundance of Cedars, and other stately Trees of shade, so many forts of delicate Fruits ever bearing, and at all times beautified with blossoms; as may make them hold comparison with any others, supposed to be of a more temperate situation.

But as was said before, the Ancients knew not much of this Country, and therefore spoke upon conjecture, or more doubtful hear-say. For though *Hanno* a noble *Carthaginian* employed by that State, discovered much of the

Western Shores of this great *Peninsula*, yet he ventured not so much into the Land: nor did his *Journal* (either suppressed by the *Romans*, or not much took notice of) give any great light to other Nations to pursue those Voyages; being writ in the *Carthaginian* Tongue, but since translated into Greek and published at *Basil* by *Stephanus Gelenus*, Anno 1533. As little credit did it find in former times, that some *Phoenicians* in the days of *Pharao Nebo*, sailing down the *Red-Sea*, should sail about the Coasts of Africa to the Straits of *Gibraltar*; and so return again to *Egypt* by the *Mediterranean*; as we find in *Herodotus*, that they did. But what those Ages disbelieved or esteemed impossible, is now grown ordinary; the *Circumnavigations* about this Country being very frequent, since first performed by *Vesputius de Gama*, an adventurous *Portugal*, in the year 1647. being 80 years after, or thereabout, from the time that the *Portugals* first attempted the discovery and circumnavigation of the Coasts of *Africa*, which at the last, to the no small glory of their Nation, was accomplished by them. For so it happened, that having extended their dominions as far as they could upon the Continent of *Spain*; and having withal a large Sea-coast and fit for Shipping, they turned their Forces on the *Moors* which dwelt in *Africa*, from whom they took many of their best towns which lay along upon the Shores of the main *Atlantic*. Encouraged by this good success, *Henry Duke of Viseu*, one of the younger Sons of King *John* the first, resolved to spend his purse and credit upon new discoveries. And to that purpose, having had some conference with some persons of knowledge and experience in Cosmography, he drew together the best men of Action, both in *Spain* and *Italy*. By their means, and his own good fortune, he first discovered the Isle of *Madera*, Anno 1420. The Isle of *Fo*, Anno 1428. The Islands of *Cape Verde*, Anno 1440. the Maritime parts of the Land of *Guinea* Anno 1482. which fair foundations being laid, and the way opened to those great discoveries which after followed; that glorious Prince deceased in a good old age, Anno 1463. leaving this Character behind him, that he was the first that made the *Portugals* in love with the Sea; discontinued after his decease above 20 years, it was resumed again by King *John*, the second of that name, who by the conduct of *Diego Can*, Anno 1486. discovered the Realms of *Angola* and *Congo*, with the life of St. *George*, and thereupon resolves in the next year following to try his fortunes for compassing the whole Coast of *Africa*, thereby to find a way to the wealth of *India*, in which he employed Captain *Bartholomew Diaz*, who passing beyond *Cape Verde*, discovered first the *Princes* Island, and sailing from thence Southward to the furthest Promontory (since called the *Cape of good Hope*) returned home again; either discouraged by cross Winds, or unruly Seas, or the untractableness of his Mariners, or by all together. The man to whom the honour of this Enterprize was reserved, was that *Vesputius de Gama* above mentioned, employed in this service by King *Emmanuel*, Anno 1507. who having in his way discovered the Islands of St. *Fames*, and St. *Hellen*, and after doubled that terrible Cape, which *Bartholomew de Diaz* durst not pass, gave it the name of *Cabo di Buena Esperanza*, or the *Cape of good Hope*, because of the good hope it gave him of finding the desired way to the Trade of *India*; and having so doubled this Cape, and got *Africa* on the left hand of him, he kept his course on towards the North, till he discovered the Countries of *Quilao*, *Mosambique*, *Mombaza*, and *Melinde*, with the King of which last he contracted an especial friendship, and by his favours and directions, found the Port of *Cald*, and in *East-India*, from whence with infinite joy and honour he returned to *Lisbon*, Anno 1500. The design followed

followed the next year by *Alvarez Capralde*, furnished with 12 ships 1500 Souldiers; but he being called upon the Coasts of *Brasil*, and diverting wholly in a manner on the discovery of that large Country, it was pursued the next year with greater strength, by *Vesputius*, and his Brother *Stephen*, afterwards by *Ferdinand de Olmeda*, and *Alphonso de Albuquerque*, and divers others of that Nation, and finally by the *English*, *Hollanders*, Merchants almost of every Country, which have any Trade upon the Ocean. By means whereof the latter Ages are better instructed in the particulars of it than the former were; who knew not much beyond the limits of the *Roman* Empire, and some parts adjoining upon *Egypt*, more than the strange beasts and more strange reports which they had from hence; occasioning hereby the By-word, *Africa semper aliquid apparat novis*.

Touchoing the state of *Christianity* in this great Continent, it is very weak; most of those Regions which *Christian* Religion had once gained from *Idolatry*, *Mohometanism* having since regained from *Christianity*: Inasmuch that not only the North part of *Africa*, near the *Mediterranean*, from *Spain* to *Egypt*, where the Gospel once so exceedingly flourished; that three hundred Catholic Bishops were at one time banished thence by *Genfericus* King of the *Vandals*; is at this present utterly void of *Christians*, (except some few Towns belonging to the King of *Spain*;) but even in this vast Country, thrice as big as *Europe*, there is not any one Region entirely *Christian*, but the Kingdom of *Habassia* only, and perhaps not that; none where the *Christians* are intermingled with *Mohometans*, but only *Egypt*; nor where mingled with *Idolaters*, but in *Congo* and *Angola*, and some few Towns upon those Coasts in the hands of the *Portugals*. So little benefit have those Nations gotten by our late discoveries; it being *Gains*, not *Gadlins*, which the Merchant aims at.

The Nations inhabiting this Country, or dispersed in it, may be reduced to *Africans* properly so called, *Egyptians*, *Habassians*, *Arabians*, *Jews*, and some *European* *Christians* only in their Forts and Garrisons; the *Jews* in all the good Towns where Trading is stirring; the *Arabians* chiefly on the Sea-coasts bordering on the *Red-Sea*; but wandering in great hords or companies all about the Country with their Wives and Children: the *Habassians* and *Egyptians* in their several Kingdoms: The *Africans* again subdivided into *Moors* and *Cafers*; of which the *Moors*, are wholly under the Law of *Mohomet*, the *Cafers* dwelling in the in-land and more Southern parts, not discovered anciently in their wonted Gentilism. Accordingly, the Languages herein spoken are different also. The *Portugal* or *Spanish* being used by the *European*; 2. The *Chaldee* or *Syrack*, by the *Jews*; 3. The *Arabic* by those of that Nation, and in all *Barbary* except *Morocco* Kingdoms; 4. The *Habassian*, and 5. the *Egyptian* in those Kingdoms: 6. That called *Aguel-amarig*, or the Noble Language, supposed to be the natural and original language of the *Roman Africans*, intermixed with some *Arabian* words, and spoken generally in *Morocco*, and so amongst some of the Inhabitants of *Barbary*, nearest to Mount *Atlas*: 7. That named *Sungai*, used in *Tombutum*, *Guinea*, and others of the people of the Land of *Negroes*; and 8. That called *Gubee*, spoken by those of *Libiopia inferior*, and such of the Land of *Negroes* as lie next unto it.

In reference to the state of the *Roman* Empire, it contained only the *Dioecsis* of *Egypt*, *Africa*, and part of the *Dioecsis* of *Spain*. The *Dioecsis* of *Africa* subdivided into the Provinces of 1. *Libya superior*, 2. *Libya inferior*, 3. *Thebais*, 4. *Aegyptiaca*, 5. *Arcadia*, and 6. *Egyptus*, especially so called, distinguished by other names in the *Nicene* Council: That of 1. *Africa Tripolitana*, 2. *By-*

zacena, 3. *Zengitana*, 4. *Numidia*, 5. *Mauritania Caesariensis*, 6. and *Mauritania Sitifensis*; the other part of *Mauritania*, called *Tingitana*, being laid to the *Dioecsis* of *Spain*. The rest of this *Peninsula*, as they never conquered, so it never was much taken into confederation. But being more perfectly discovered now than in former times (though not so perfectly, as that I can be able to promise an exact account of it) it is divided commonly into these seven parts. 1. *Egypt*, 2. *Barbary*, or the *Roman Africa*, 3. *Numidia*, 4. *Libya*, neither of which the same with those of the ancient *Romans*; 5. *Terra Nigritarum*, 6. *Libiopia superior*, and 7. *Libiopia inferior*. Such of the Islands as do not properly belong unto any of these shall make up the eighth. In the descriptions whereof we will follow the Method of *Plantations*, and begin with *Egypt*, as being peopled and possessed before all the residue.

OF EGYPT.

EGYPT is bounded on the East with *Idumea*, and the Bay of *Arabia*; on the West with *Barbary*, *Numidia*, and part of *Libya*; on the North with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the South with *Libiopia superior*, or the *Habassian* Empire.

This Country in the Holy Scripture is called *Misraim*, from *Misraim* the Son of *Chus*, and Grandson of *Cham*, by whom first planted after the Flood, the Footsteps of which name do remain among the *Arabians*, who still call it *Misra*. Named in the same regard in some of the sacred Offices of the old *Egyptians* where (as *Plutarch* witnesseth) it was called *Chemia*, for *Cham* no doubt; as that from *Cham* or *Ham*, the first flock of their Nation. In prophane Authors it hath had the several names of 1. *Aeria*, from the fertility of the Air, which is never clouded; 2. *Potamia*, from the propinquity of the Sea, walking two sides of it; 3. *Oxygia*, from *Oxyges*, a supposed King thereof; 4. *Melampodius*, from the black colour of the soil; 5. *Osiria*, from their God *Osiris*, here in high esteem; 6. and finally, it was called *Egyptus*, which in the end prevailed over all the rest, either from *Egyptus* the Brother of *Danais* once King hereof (in the stories of his Nation better known by the name *Ramefis*;) or from *Aegyptus*, the old name of the River *Nile*, by whose annual overflowsings made both rich and famous; and of the soil and rubbish which that River brought with it from the higher Countries, it was by some supposed to have been raised into firm land, and gained out of the Sea. Called therefore in some Writers by the name of *Nili domus*, or the gift of *Nile*. Yet some there be who would have it called *Aegyptus* for *Aegyptus*, and that derived from *Ad Copus*, which signifies the Land or Country of *Copus*, that being supposed to have been anciently the chief City of it. And some again will have the name derived from *Chioch*, by which the *Egyptians* call themselves to this very day.

It containeth in length from the *Mediterranean* to the City of *Afina*, or *Syene*, bordering on *Ethiopia*, 562 Italian Miles: in breadth (exclusively of *Cyrene* and *Libya*) from *Rofoetta* unto *Damietta*, or from the most Westerly branch of *Nile* to the farthest East, 160 of the same miles; to which the adding of those two Provinces makes a great accession: situate under the second and fifth Climates, so that the longest day in Summer is but 13 hours and a half.

By reason of this Southerly situation of it, the Air is here very hot and offensive, so that to avoid the insupportable heats thereof, and to have the benefit of some fresh wind, the inhabitants are accustomed to build high Towers

ers in all their Towns, on which they use to solace and refresh themselves. The soil made fruitful by the overflowing of Nilus (whereof more anon) is so exceeding plentiful of all sorts of Grain, that it was called *Horreum Populi Romani*, the Granary or Store-house of the People of Rome: which City it did annually furnish with four months provision, inasmuch that it was said by *Pliny*, that the greatness of the Roman Empire could not long continue without the Corn and Wealth of Egypt, the plenty or famine of that City depending wholly on this Country. It abounds also with rich Pastures, in which they feed great store of Camels, Horses, Allies, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats, greater of growth than usually in most places else; and by reason of the moorishness of the Country, they have great store of Fowls. Of Poultry they have also good numbers about their houses, hatched in a different manner from all other Countries, not by the stirring of the Hen, but by the heat of Furnaces, or Ovens; in which their Eggs are orderly laid in dung, and by a gentle heat brought to animation. It is also liberally furnished with great plenty of Metals, some precious Stones, good Wines, and the choicest Fruits, as Limons, Oranges, Pomgranates, Citrons, Figs, Cherries, and such as these, excellent both for taste, and colour. Of Palm-trees also great abundance, of which though we have spoke before yet we shall here more fully declare the nature & strange properties of them. They grow in couples, Male and Female, both thrust forth Cods full of Seed, but the Female is only fruitful, and that not, except growing by the Male, and having his Seeds mixt with hers. The pith of these Trees is an excellent Salad, better than an *Artichoke*, which in taste it more fully resembleth. Of the branches they make Bed-steds, Lattices, &c. of the leaves, Baskets, Mats, Pans, &c. of the outward husks of the Cod, Cordage, of the inner, Bruishes. The Fruit it bears best known by the name of Dates, are in taste like Figs: and finally, it is said to yield whatsoever is necessary to the life of Man. It is the nature of this Tree, though never so ponderous a weight were put upon it, not to yield to the burthen, but still to resist the heaviness of it, and to endeavour to lift and raise it self the more upwards. For this cause planted in Church-yards in the Eastern Countries, as an Emblem of the Resurrection: in stead whereof we use the Ewe-tree in these cold Regions. For the same reason given to *Conquerors* as a token of Victory, It being the Emblem or Hieroglyphick of a Soldier's life. Hence figuratively used for Precedency, as *Henricus equidem consilio Palmam dedit*, in *Terevex*, sometimes for the victory itself, as *Non avarius tamen hanc Palmam*, in *Pliny*; & *Plurimarum Palmam homo*, for a man that had won many Prizes in the Fence-school, as in *Tully pro Republica*, more naturally for the sign of Victory, as in that of *Horace*;

Palmaque nobilis
Terrarum dominus evexit ad Deos.

That is to say;

The Palm, of Victory assign,
Equals men to the Powers Divine.

The People, though the Country lye in the same Climate with *Barbary*, are not black, but tawny, or olive-coloured, affirmed by *Pomponius Mela* to weep and mourn over the bodies of their dead, daubed over with dung; to have held it a great impiety to burn or bury them, but having embalmed them, to lay them in some inward Room of their Houses: the men to keep themselves at home, for the household business, the women to follow Merchandise and

affairs abroad; the men to carry burthens upon their heads, and the women theirs upon their shoulders, *Amipodes* in these last to most other Nations. But certainly they were a witty and ingenious people, the first Inventors of *Geometry*, *Arithmetic*, *Physick*, as also of *Astronomy*, *Necromancy*, and *Sorcery*. They first taught the use of Letters to the neighbouring *Phoenicians*, by them imparted to the *Greeks*. Accustomed at the first to express their conceits in the Shape of Birds, Beasts, Trees, &c. which they termed *Hieroglyphicks*, of which two or three Examples out of *Orus* will not be impertinent. For *Eternity* they painted the Sun and Moon, as things which they believed to have had no beginning, nor were likely to have any end. For a Year, they painted a Snake, with his tail in his mouth, to shew how one year succeeding another, kept the world still in an endless circle. For a Month, they painted a Palm tree, because at every new Moon it fendeth forth a new branch. For God, they painted a Falcon, as well for that he soareth so high, as that he governeth the lesser Birds. For Integrity of life, they painted Fire and Water, both because these Elements are in themselves most pure, and because all other things are purified by them. For any thing that was Abominable to the Gods, they painted a Filth, because in their Sacrifices the Priests never used them, and the like. From this manner of exprelling ones self, the invention of Letters is thought to have had its original (though learnt by them no question of the children of *Israel*, when they lived amongst them.) the History whereof take briefly, and word for word, out of *Tacitus*. *Primi per formas animalium Egyptii*, &c. "The Egyptians first of all expressed the conceptions of the mind, by the shapes of Beasts; and the most ancient Monuments of man's memory, are seen graven in stones; and they say, that they are the first inventors of Letters. Then the *Phoenicians*, because they were strong at Sea, brought them into *Greece*, and so they had the glory of that which they received from others: For there goeth a report, that *Cadmus* sailing thither in a Phœnician Ship, was the Inventor of that Art among the *Greeks*, when they were yet unexperiend and rude. Some report, that *Cecrops* the *Athenian*, or *Livius* the *Thuban*, and *Palamedes* the *Grecian*, did find out sixteen Characters at the time of the Trojan War; and that afterward *Simonides* added the rest. But in Italy the *Etrurians* learned them of *Demaratus* the *Corinthian*; and the *Aborigines* of *Etruria* under the *Aræadian*. So far *Tacitus*. That the *Phoenicians* were the first Inventors of Letters, I dare not affirm; and as backward am I to refer the glory hereof to the *Egyptians*; for certainly the *Hebrews* were herein skilled before either: yet that the *Phoenicians* were herein School-masters to the *Greeks*, I think I may with safety maintain, having *Lucan* in consent with *Tacitus*.

Phœnices primi (fame scelerditur) ausi
Mansuram rudibus vocem signare figuris.

Phœnicians first (if fame may credit have)
Dar'd in rude Characters our words engrave.

Of this mind also is *Isidore of Sevil*, in the first Book of *Originationes*, who also addeth, that for that cause the Fronts of Books, and the Titles of Chapters were written in red Letters, as it is by some still in use. *Hinc est quod & Phœnicio colore librorum capita describuntur, quia ab ipsa littera initium habere*, cap. 3. As for the leivall Letters, which the *Latins* call *Cypres*, and whereof every exercised States-man hath peculiar to himself; they were first invented by *Julius Cæsar*, when he first began to think of the Roman Monarchy, and were used by him in his

his Letters to his more private and tried Friends, that if by misfortune they should be intercepted, the contents of them should not be understood; *εἰς τοὺς φίλους καὶ γρηγορήματα*: *Ne ultra litterarum lectio cuiusvis esset*. *Augustinus*, one of the greatest Politicians of the World, had another kind of obscure writing, for in his Letters of more secrecy and importance, he always used *τὸ ὁμότροπον καὶ σὺν ἑστίῳ*, to put the Letter immediately following in the order of the Alphabet, for that which in ordinary writing he should have used. As for *Brachygraphy*, or the Art of Writing by short Characters, so useful for the taking of a Speech or Sermon as it is spoken: I find in *Dion*, that *Mæcenas*, that great Favourite of *Augustus Cæsar*, and Favourite of Learning, did first invent them, *ad celeritatem scribendi*, for the speedier dispatch of Writing; *καὶ πρὸς ὁμιλίαν γεγραμμένων τῶν* (they are the very words of my Author) *πρὸς τοὺς καὶ ἑστίῳ*. *Isidor* in the second Chapter of this Book above mentioned, ascribeth it to *Aquila*, the *Liberius* or Freed-man of his *Mæcenas*, and to *Tertius Persianus*, and *Philargius*, who added to this Invention. Yet had all they their chief light in it from *Tullius Titus*, a Freed-man of *Cicero's*; who had undertaken and compassed it in the Propositions, but went no further. At the last it was perfected by *Seneca*, who brought this Art into order and method; the whole Volume of his contractions consisting of 3000 words. *Deinde Seneca contra omnium disceptat & aucto numero, opus effect in quinque milia*.

So eminent in Arts and Learning were the old Egyptians, that from them *Pythagoras* and *Democritus* learnt their Philosophy; *Lycurgus*, *Solon*, and *Plato*, their forms of Government; *Orpheus* and *Homer*, their Poetical fictions of the Gods. Particularly here flourished 1. *Arifarchus*, the famous & learned Grammarian; 2. *Herodian*, a diligent Student and Searcher into curious Arts; 3. *Ammonius*, the Master of *Plotinus*; 4. *Didymus*, surnamed *Calceutæres*, for his indefatigable Industry in several Sciences; 5. *Marathon*, an old Historian, of whom we have nothing but some fragments; 6. *Appianus*, an Historian of a later date, whose works are extant; 7. *Didymus* the Grammarian; 8. *Cl. Ptolemaeus* the Geographer; 9. *Achilles Statius* the Poet; 10. And before all, the profound Philosopher *Mercurius*, surnamed *Trismegistus*. And after their Conversion to the Faith of Christ, 1. *Pantenus*, the first Reader of Divinity in the Schools of *Alexandria*; 2. *Origen*, and 3. *Clement Alexandrinus*, both skilled in the Universality of Learning; 4. *Dionysius*, 5. *Athanassius*, and 6. *Cyril*, all three Bishops of *Alexandria*, and the glories of their several times.

This notwithstanding, their Religion before the embracing of *Christianity*, was the worst of *Gemilisms*; these people not only worshipping the Sun, Moon, & the Stars of Heaven, Creatures of greatness of life and Glory; nor only sacrificing to *Jupiter*, *Hercules*, *Apollo*, and the rest of the Gods, (many of whom were Authors in their several times of some publick benefit to mankind) as did other *Gemilists*; but attributing Divine honours to Crocodils, Snakes, Serpents, Garlike, Leeks, and Onions. For which, as worthily condemned by the *Christian* Fathers, so most deservedly exposed unto publick scorn, by the Pens of the Poet.

Torrum & capo nefas violare, & ladere morsus;
Felicis populi, quibus hæc nascuntur in Hortis
Nimium! — Quis nescit qualia demum
Ægyptii portenta colat, &c.

Which may be rendered to this purpose;

To bite an Onion or a Leek, is more
Than deadly sin. The Numen they adore
Grows in their Gardens. And who dares not know
What monstrous Shapes for Gods in Egypt go?

But the Gods most esteemed by them, and by all sorts of the Egyptians the most adored, was *Apir*, a coal-black Ox, with a white star in his forehead, the Effigies of an Eagle on his back, and two hairs only in his tail. But it seemeth his Godship was not so much respected by strangers. For *Cambyses* when he conquered Egypt, ran him with his sword through the Thigh, and caused all his Priests to be scourged. And *Augustus* being here, would not vouchsafe to see him, saying, *quis dñi pectus regardat?* *Isidore*; that the Gods, and not the Oxen of Egypt were the object of his Devotions. A speech most truly worthy to brave an Emperor.

But it is time we should proceed to a survey of these Egyptians, as they stand at the present, much differing from the ingenuity and abilities of their Predecessors; nothing but Ignorance and Barbarism to be found amongst them. For such as have observed the nature of the Modern Egyptians, affirm them to have much degenerated from the worth of their Ancestors; prone to Innovations, devoted to Luxury, cowardly, cruel, addicted naturally to cavil, and to detract from whatsoever is good and eminent. In their dealing with other men, more observant than faithful, of a wit much inclining to craftiness, and very eager on their Profit. Of person, of a mean stature; tawny of complexion, and spare of body, but active and quick of foot. Such as inhabit in the Cities, apply themselves to *Merchandis*, grow rich by trading, reasonably well habited, and not much differing from the *Turks* in dress and fashion. Those in the Country, who betake themselves to *Husbandry*, affirmed to be a savage and nasty people, crusted over with Dirt, and stinking of smocks; fit company for none but those of their own condition. Nothing now left amongst them of the Arts of their Ancestors, but an affection which they have unto *Divination*, to *Fortune-telling* great pretenders; by which, and some cheating-tricks in which very well practised, great numbers of them wander from one place to another, and to get their livelihood, occasioning the *Vagabonds* and Straglers of other Nations, who pretend unto the same false arts, to assume their names. The whole body of the Inhabitants now an *Æthiop* or Medly of many Nations, *Moors*, *Arabians*, *Turks*, the natural Egyptian making up the least part of the reckoning.

The women of the same complexion with the men, but well formed and featured, did not they too much affect a seeming *Corruptency*; which if they cannot get in Flesh, they will have in Cloaths. Very fruitful in Child-bearing, and quick of dispatch when they are in labour: some of them having three or four children at a Birth; those that are born in the eighth month living to good Age and not in danger of death, as in other Countries. Such of them as dwell in Cities cover their faces with black *Cypres*; bespotted with red; their arms and ankles garnished with Bracelets and hoops of Gold, Silver, or some other Metal. Those in the Country for a Vail, use some dirty clout, having holes only for their eyes, which little is too much to see & abstain from loathing. Both in the City and the Country, contrary to the custom in all places else, the women use to make water standing, and the men crouching on their knees.

The *Christian* Faith was here first planted by *S. Mark*, whom all Antiquity maketh the first Bishop of *Alexandria*. His

His Successors, till the time of *Heraclius* and *Dionysius* chosen continually out of the *Presbiteri* or Cathedral-Clergy; afterwards out of the Clergy at large. Their Jurisdiction fettered by a Canon of the Council at *Nice*, over all the Churches in the whole *Dioecesis* of *Egypt* (taking the word *Dioecesis* in the Civil notion) containing *Libya*, *Pentapolis*, and *Egypt* specially so called; to which, though *Epiphanius* adds *Ilebaia*, *Maractica* and *Ammoniac*, yet he adds nothing in effect; *Thebaïs* and *Maractica* being parts of *Egypt*, as *Ammoniac* was of *Libya*. Afterwards the *Ethiopian* or *Abassine* Churches became subject to this Patriarch also, and do acknowledge to this day some relation to him. By the coming in of the *Saracens* and the subjugation of this Country, *Christianity* fell here into great decay; languishing so feebly since those times, especially since the Conquest of it by the *Turks*: that whereas *Bocharius* in his time reckoned three hundred thousand *Christians*, in the last estimate which was made of them, they were found to be fifty thousand. This small remainder of them, commonly called *Coptis*, either from the Greek word *κοπτα* to *Scind*, because they retained the use of *Circumcision* with their *Christianity*; or from *Coptus* a chief Town in *Egypt*, in which many of them did reside, or finally by *Abbreviation* from *Egypti*, corrupted from *Egyptus*, their own National name. They are all *Jacobites* in Sect, from whom they differ notwithstanding in some particulars, in some from all *Christian* Churches, in many from the Church of *Rome*. The points most proper to them, 1. Using *Circumcision* with their *Baptism*, but rather as a National than Religious custom; though in that sense also laid aside, as is said by some, by the persuasion of some *Legates* from the Pope of *Rome*, in a Synod held in *Cairo*, Anno 1583. 2. Conferring all sacred Orders under the *Priesthood*, on Infants immediately after *Baptism*; their Parents, till they come to sixteen years of age performing what they promised in their behalf, viz. Charity, fasting on Wednesday and Friday, and four Lenten of the year. 3. Repeating *Baptism* not to be of any efficacy, except ministrated by the Priest in the open Church, in what extremity soever. 4. And yet not baptizing any Children till the fortieth day, though they dye in the interim. 5. Giving to Infants the Sacrament of the *Eucharist*, as soon as Christened. 6. Contracting Marriages even in the second degree of Consanguinity, without dispensation. 7. Observing not the *Lords day*, nor any of the *Festivals*, except only in *Cities*. 8. And in their Liturgies, reading the Gospel written by *Nicodemus*. The points wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*. 1. Administering the Sacrament of the *Lord's Supper* under both kinds. 2. Administering in leavened bread. 3. Admitting neither *Extreme Onction*, nor the use of the *Eucharist*, to those that are sick. 4. Nor *Purgatory*, nor Prayer for the dead. 5. Nor using Elevation in the act of Administering. 6. And 6. Reckoning the *Roman* Church for *Heretical*, and esteeming no better of the *Latins*, than they do of the *Jews*. In these Opinions they continue hitherto against all Opponents and persuasions. For though *Baronius* in the end of the sixth Tome of his *Annals*, hath registered an Ambassage from *Marcus* the then Patriarch of *Alexandria*, to Pope *Clement* the 8. wherein he is said to have submitted himself and the Churches of *Egypt* to the Pope of *Rome*; yet upon further search made, it was found but a *Chimera*; devised to hold up the reputation of a finking cause. The Patriarch of *Alexandria* still adhereth to his own Authority; though many of late, by the practice and solicitation of some bulle *Frays*, have been drawn to be of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*, and to use her Liturgies.

Among the *Rarities* of this Country, some were the works of Nature, and some of industry and magnificence.

Of this last kind I reckon the *Labyrinth*, the *Pyramids*, and the *Pharos*; all of them admirable in their several kinds, the envy of the Ages past, and the astonishment to the present. Look we first on the *Pyramids*, many in number, three more celebrated, and one the principal of all; situate on the South of the City of *Memphis*, and on the Western banks of *Nilus*. This last, the chief of the *Worlds seven wonders* square at the bottom, is supposed to take up eight Acres of ground. Every square 300 single Paces in length, ascended by 255 steps, each step above three foot high, and a breadth proportionable; growing by degrees narrower and narrower till we come to the top, and at the top consisting but of three Stones only, yet large enough for 60 men to stand upon. No Stone so little in the whole as to be drawn by any of our Carriages, yet brought thither from the *Arabian* Mountains. How brought, and by what Engine mounted, is an equal wonder. Built for the Sepulchre of *Cheops*, an *Egyptian* King (as were theretofore others of those mighty Princes) who employed in it day by day twenty years together, no fewer than 366000 men continually working on it. The charges which they put him to, in no other food than *Garlick*, *Raddishes*, and *Onions*, being computed at a thousand and eight hundred *Talents*. The next to this in bulk and beauty, is said to be the work of a Daughter of *Cheops*, enabled (as *Herodotus* writeth) both to finish her Fathers undertaking, and raise her own unto the height, by the prostitution of her body, requiring but one Stone towards the Work from each one of her Customers; but the Tale unlikely. Nor is it of a greater truth, though affirmed by *Josephus*, and supposed by many good *Divines*, that the *Druidery* put upon the *Israelitish* concern these *Pyramids*: the Materials of these works being *Stone*, their employment *Brick*. But put all doubt, advanced by those considerate Princes upon good advice, and not for ostentation only of their power and glories. For by this means they did not only eternize their memory to succeeding Ages, but for the present kept the Subject from sloth and idleness; who being a people prone unto *Innovations*, were otherwise likely enough to have fed that sin in the change of Government, if not thus prudently diverted.

As for the *Labyrinth*, it was built by *Psammithicus* on the banks of the River *Nilus*, situate on the South of the *Pyramids*, and North of *Asinoe*, or the City of *Crocodiles*. It contained within the compass of one continued Wall a thousand Houses and twelve Royal Palaces, all covered with Marble; and had only one entrance, but innumerable turnings and returnings, sometimes one over another; and all in a manner invidious to such as were not acquainted with them: the building more underground than above: the Marble stones laid with such Art, that neither Wood nor Cement was employed in any part of the Fabrick; the Chambers so disposed, that the doors upon their opening did give a report no less terrible than a crack of Thunder. The main entrance all of white Marble, adorned with stately Columns, and most curious Imagery. The end at length being attained, a pair of Stairs of 30 steps conducted into a gallant *Parade*, supported with Pillars of *Theban* Stone, which was the entrance into a fair and spacious Hall (the place of their general Conventions) all of polished Marble, set out with the Statues of their Gods. A work which afterwards was imitated by *Daddus*, in the *Cretan* Labyrinth; though that fell as far from the glories of this, as *Minos* was inferior unto *Psammithicus* in Power and Riches.

Next unto these, I place the Isle and Tower of *Pharos*, the Island opposite unto *Alexandria*, once a mile distant from this Land, but joynted to the Continent by *Cleopatra*, on the occasion. The *Rhodians*, then Lords of the Sea,

Sea, used to exact some tribute or acknowledgment out of every Island within those Seas, and consequently out of this. Their Ambassadors sent unto *Cleopatra* to demand this Tribute, she detained with her seven days, under colour of celebrating some solemn Festival; and in the mean time, by making huge dams and banks in the Sea, with incredible both charge and speed, united the Island to the shore; which finished, she sent the *Rhodians* away empty-handed, with this witty Jeer, telling them, That they were to take Toll of the Islands, and not of the Continents. A Work of great Rarity and Magnificence, both for the bigness of it, taking up seven furlongs of Ground, and for that cause called *Elephasdium*; and that incredible speed wherewith it was finished. As for the *Watch-Tower*, called in Greek and *Latine* *Pharos*, by the name of the Island; it was built by *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, for the benefit of Sailors, (the Seas upon that coast being very unsafe, and full of Flats) to guide them over the Bar of *Alexandria*. Deferrevely esteemed another of the *Worlds seven Wonders*, the other five being, 1. the *Mausoleum*, 2. the Temple of *Ephebus*, 3. the Walls of *Babylon*, 4. the *Colossus* of *Rhodes*, and 5. the Statue of *Jupiter Olympicus*. This *Watch-Tower*, or *Pharos* was of wonderful height, ascended by degrees, and having many Lanthorns at the top, wherein Lights burned nightly, as a direction to such as sailed by Sea. The Materials were white Marbles, the chief Architect *Solstratus* of *Gnidus*, who engraved on the Work this Inscription: *Solstratus* of *Gnidus*, the Son of *Dexiphanes*, to the Gods *Protectors*, for the safeguard of Sailors. This Inscription he covered with *Plaster*, and thereon engraved the Name and Title of the King, the Founder: to the end that the Kings Name being soon wasted and walked away, his own, which was written in Marble, might be eternized to posterity as the Founder of it. Nigh unto this *Pharos*, *Cesar* pursuing *Pompey* into *Egypt*, and having discontented the King thereof, by demanding pay for his Soldiers, had his Navy which here lay at Anchor, assaulted by *Achilles*, one of young *Ptolomy's* Servants, *Cesar* himself being then in *Alexandria*. Hearing of the Skirmish, he hastened to the *Pharos*, meaning to succour his Navy in person: but the *Egyptians* making towards him on all sides, he was compelled to leap into the Sea, and swim for his life. And though (to avoid their Darts) he sometimes ducked, yet held he still his left hand above the water, and in it divers Books, which he carried safe unto his Ships, and animating his men, got the Victory. It is said that *Egypt* hath only two doors, the one by Land, which is the strong Tower of *Peleusium* or *Damietta*; the other by water, which is this *Pharos*: *Tota Egyptus maritimo accessu, Pharos pedestre vero, Pelusio, veluti clausura maris excelsissima, fatis Opus*.

Amongst the *Rarities* of Nature, we may reckon those three, i. e. the *Crocodile*, the *Ichneumon*, the *Hippopotamus* (or Sea-horse) the *Asse*, and many several sorts of Serpents. To speak of which particularly were a Work more proper to a Natural History, than a Geographical. And yet the *Crocodile*, more proper unto *Egypt* than all the rest, cannot be parted with in silence: A Creature of a strange nature, hatched of an Egg no bigger then that of a *Turkie*, and increasing to the length of thirty foot; his tail as long as all the rest of his Body, with which he is accustomed to chain his prey, and draw it into the River; his Feet armed with Claws, and his Back with impenetrable Scales, his Mouth so wide (of which he moveth only the upper Jaw) that he is able to swallow a Heifer; equally used to both Elements, but better sighted in the Water, then on the Land; Cowardly, though a Creature of prey, and such as usually flies from those which dare set upon him; and easily vanquished by the *Dolphin*,

who swimming under the water woundeth him in the belly, where assailable only. Whether he easily destroyed by the *Ichneumon* (a kind of Water-Rat) skipping into his mouth, and gnawing his way out again, as old Writers say, hath of late been questioned.

Of less dispute, but not less Rarity in Nature, are these that follow: 1. That in all this Country it never raineth; or if a Cloud do sometimes happen to dissolve upon them, it bringeth on their Bodies innumerable Sores, and strange Diseases. 2. The annual overflowing of the River *Nilus*, and the many memorable things which are said to follow on the fame. Of which it is thus said by *Lucanus*,

*Terra suis contenta bonis, non indiga Mercis,
Aut Jovis, in solo tam aesti fiducia Nilo:*

*The Earth content with its own Wealth, doth crave
No Foreign Mart, nor Jove himself, they have
Their hope alone in Nilus fruitful Wave.*

This *Nilus* from the 15 day of June, swelleth above his Banks, for the space of 40 days; and in as many more, gathereth his waters again to their proper bounds. If it flow not to the height of fifteen Cubits, then the Earth is deficient in her abundance of increase, for want of moisture: and if the waters situmout the superficies of the Earth, more than seventeen Cubits, then likewise a drunken man, it cannot produce its natural operation, as having his stomach (as it were) overlaid and surcharged with too much Liquor: but if the Mean be granted, there is no Country which can brag of the like Fertility, the Corn being all housed before the 30th of May. During this Inundation, they keep their Beasts and Cattle on the tops of such little hills, which either the Providence of Nature, or the Industry of Man hath prepared for them; where they abide till the decrease of the Waters: and on these Hills also stand most of their Towns and Villages, appearing in the time of the Flood like so many Islands; and holding a Commerce and continual Traffick by the entrance of Boats and Shallops, by which they do transport their Marketable Commodities from one place to another. And if it chance at any time, that the River doth not thus overflow the Country, it is not only the fore-runner to a following dearth, but prognosticeth some insuing mischief to the Prince and State: Confirmed by the testimony of good and credible Authors, who have told us that in the 10th and 11th years of *Cleopatra*, the River increased not at all: that it was noted as a Fore-teller of the Fall of those two Great, but Unfortunate Princes, *Cleopatra* and her Sweet-heart *Antonius*. A second Commodity which ariseth from the overflowsings of *Nilus*, is health, which it bringeth with it in most parts of the Country; the Plague, which oftentimes miserably rageth upon the first day of the Flood, abating instantly: inasmuch that whereas 500 may die of that Disease in the City of *Cairo* but the day before, there dyeth not one of it on the day following. A third wonder in this River is, that keeping its waters united in a Body together, after it falleth into the Sea, it changeth the colour of the *Mediterranean*, further than any part of it can be seen from the shore. Add unto these, the many living Creatures which the River thereof engendereth, on the withdrawing of the flume to its natural Channel: whereof *Ovid* thus;

*Sic ubi desinit madidos Septembris agros
Nilus, & antiquo sua flumina redditis avos,
Plurima Cultores versus Animalia glebis
Invenimus.*

Which I English thus:

*So when the September Nile the fields forsakes,
And to his ancient Channel him betakes,
The Ploughmen many living Creatures find,
By turning up the Mud that's left behind.*

Amongst which Creatures so engendered, are said to be such innumerable heaps of Frogs, that if Nature, or Divine Providence rather, did not furnish this Country with a proportionable number of *Storks*, by whom they are greedily devoured, the *Plague of Frogs* would come a second time upon them to their utter destruction.

On the Banks of this River also grew those sedge Weeds called *Papyrus*, of which Paper was made in former times, which I reckon amongst the *Rarities of Egypt* also, but a Rarity of Art and Nature mixed. They divided it into thin flakes, (into which it naturally parteth) then laying them on a Table, and moistening them with the glutinous waters of the River, they pressed them together, & after dried them in the Sun. By means of which invention, Books being easier to be transcribed and reserved than formerly, *Ptolemy Philadelphus* made his excellent Library at *Alexandria*; and understanding how *Atalus* King of *Pergamus*, by the benefit of this Egyptian Paper, strived to exceed him in that kind of Magnificence, prohibited the carrying of it out of *Egypt*. Hereupon *Atalus* invented the use of Parchments, made of the Skins of Calves and Sheeps from the Materials called *Membrane* and *Pergamena* from the place where they were invented. The convenience whereof was the cause, that in short time the Egyptian Paper was worn out of use; in place whereof succeeded our Paper made of Rags, the Authors of which excellent Invention, our Progenitors have forgotten to commit to memory. Before the use of these Papers and Parchments were first made known, I observe three ways of Writing amongst the Ancients. (I hope I shall be pardoned this short digression.) 1. On the inward side of the Bark of a Tree, which is in *Laine* called *Liber*; and whence *Poets* have the name of *Liberi*. 2. On Tables framed out of the main body of a Tree, which being called *Caudex*, gave the *Laines* occasion to call a Book *Codex*. 3. They used to cover their Tables over with Wax, and thereon to write what they had to signify, from whence a Letter-Carrier was named *Tabellarius*. The Instrument wherewith they wrote, was a sharp pointed Iron, which they called *Stylus*; a word now signifying (the Original derived from hence) the peculiar kind of Phrase which any man useth; as *Negligens stylus*, in *Quintilian*; and *Exercitatus stylus*, in *Cicero*. I should have also noted, that they used sometimes to write in *Leaves*; that the *Sibyls* Oracles being to written and scattered abroad, had the name of *Sibylla Folia*; and that from thence we have the phrase of a *Leaf of Paper*. But of this Argument enough.

Now to these Rarities of Nature, and Magnificent industry, most of them run the River Nile, or relating to it we are to add another of far greater moment, and such as plainly seemeth to be supernatural, which is that above five miles from the City of *Caire*, there is a place, in which, on every Good Friday yearly, there appear the Heads, Legs, & Arms of Men rising out of the Ground, to a very great number: which if any man draw near unto them, or touch any of them, will shrink again into the Earth. Supported by some to be an *Imposture* of some *Water-Men* only, who stick them over-night in the Sands, and keeping them secret to themselves, obtain thereby the ferrying over of many thousands of people to behold the sight. But *Stephen Duplais*, a sober and discerning man

in the opinion of *Goulartius*, who reports it from him, conceived otherwise of it: affirming soberly that he was an Eye-witness of the wonder that he had touched divers of these rising Members; and that (as he was once for doing to the head of a child) a man of *Cuire* cried out unto him *Kali, Kali, matris materale*, that is to say, *Hold, hold, you know not what you do, A strange Forerunner* if it be of undoubted credit; of the Resurrection of the whole Body, presented yearly, in the Rising of these several parts.

Having thus done with the *Rarities* concerning *Nilus* & that great increase of wealth which accrued thereby to all the Country, in the improvement of the natural commodities of the Earth: let us next look on the *Red-Sea*, and the Riches which that brought unto this Kingdom, in the way of Trading. A Sea whereof we have spoken already, as to the reason of the name, the extent thereof, and the several Islands contained in it, and therefore shall not need to repeat it here. That which is proper to this Country, and to this alone, is the same it hath for the miraculous passage of the *Israelites* through it as upon dry-land, and the drowning of *Pharaoh's* Chariots and all his people, at large commemorated in the Books of Holy Scriptures; as also for that through it the Spices of *India* and *Arabia*, were brought to *Alexandria*, and thence by the *Venetians* dispersed through all *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Asia*. I suppose I shall not do amiss to set down Historically out of *Galaano*, a relation of the beginning continuance, & period of the Traffick through this Sea, by which all *Europe* formerly received so great Commodity. Known then (saith he) that *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, 277 years before the Incarnation, was the first that set on foot this Navigation: *Cosir* (of old called *Myos*, *Hormos*) on the Sea side being the ordinary Haven out of which they boisted Sail for *India*; and into which they returned full fraught with their Commodities. From hence they were by Land conveyed to *Coptus*, and so down the Nile to *Alexandria*, by which Traffick the City grew exceeding Rich inasmuch that the Custom-house there yielded *Ptol.* Auletes 7. Millions and in half of Gold yearly. The Romans being Lords of *Egypt*, enhanced the Customs to double that sum: they sent into *India* every year (as *Pliny* witnessed) 120 Ships, whose lading was worth 120000 *Crown*s; and there was made in return of every *Crown* 100. When the *Vandals*, *Lombards*, *Goths* and *Moors* had torn in pieces the Roman Empire, all Commerce between Nations began to cease. At last perceiving the inconvenience, they began anew; conveying the Indian Commodities partly by Land, partly by Water, unto *Capha* in *Taurica* *Cheroneus*, belonging to the *Genoeve*. *Neus Trapezond* was made the *Mari-Town*, then *Sarmachand* in *Zagatale*, where the *Indian*, *Turkish*, and *Perfian* Merchants meet to barter Wares: the *Turks* conveying their Merchandise to *Damascus*, *Barutti*, and *Aleppo*; from whence the *Venetians* transported it to *Venice*, making that the common Emporium of *Christendom*. Once again, viz. Anno 130. the *Soldans* of *Egypt* restored the Passage by the *Red-Sea*; which having continued more than 200 years, is now discontinued by the *Portugal*, *Spaniard*, *English* and *Dutch*, which bring them to their several homes by the backside of *Africa*: So that not only the Traffick of *Alexandria* is almost decayed, and the Riches of the *Venetians* much diminished; but the *Drugs* and *Spices* have lost much of their *Vertue*, as impaired by too much moisture in so long a Voyage. So much faith he, touching the course and alteration of this Trading: to which I shall take leave to add, that for the better and more quick return of such Commodities as were usually brought into this Sea; some of the *Kings of Egypt* attempted formerly to cut a main Channel from it to the River *Nilus*, passable by Ships of great burden; the marks of whose proud attempts are remaining still. *Sesoftris* was the first who designed the work, having

before

before with good success cut many Trenches from the River, and some Navigable, into many places of the Country; by which unprofitable Marishes were drained, the Country strengthened, Trade made ealie, and the People better furnished with water than in former times. *Darius* the great *Perfian* Monarch, seconded the same Project; so did one of the *Ptolomies*. The like is said of a *Capricious Portugal* in these latter times. But they all gave it over on the same consideration; which was a fear, lest by letting in the *Red-Sea* they might drown the Country, and perhaps make a second Deluge in the parts of *Greece* and *Asia Minor* which lay nearest to them: that Sea being found to be much higher than the *Mediterranean*, and the flats of *Egypt*.

But here we are to understand, that all which hitherto hath been spoken concerning *Egypt*, relates to *Egypt* strictly, and specially so called; containing only so much of the Country of *Egypt* as lieth upon the Banks and Channels of the River *Nilus*; and not to all that tract of ground which lay betwixt the *Red-Sea* and the borders of *Libya*, which was reckoned in the compass of the Kingdom of *Egypt*, much less as comprehending *Libya* and *Cyrene* also, though now accounted Members of that Body, and anciently parts or Provinces of the *Dioceses* of it. For *Egypt*, in the largest sense and acception of the word, may be, and generally is divided into these three parts, viz. 1. *Egypt*, in the general Nation, or the Kingdom of *Egypt*, extended on the *Mediterranean* from the borders of *Idumea* to the *Roman Libya*, or *Marmarica*, lying Westward of the mouth of *Nilus*, called *Heraclotium*; and on the borders of *Aethiopia Superior* from the said *Red-Sea*, to the Country of *Libya Interior*. 2. *Libya* or *Marmarica*, lying betwixt *Egypt* properly so called, and the Province of *Cyrene* or *Pentapolis*. And 3. *Cyrene* or *Pentapolis*, reaching from that *Libya* to the greater *Syria*, where it bordered with that part of the *African Desert*, which is now called the Kingdom of *Tunis*. And in this first acception of it we shall now proceed to a Survey of the Mountains and chief Cities; which done, we shall describe the other in their proper places; and then unite them all in *General Story*.

As for the Mountains of this Country, there are very many: there were no living else for the people in the time of the overflowing, of the River. The principal of those, 1. Those called *Montes Libyici*, lying in a long Chain on the West of *Nilus*; 2. *Alabastrinus*; 3. *Prophyrus*; 4. *Troicus*; 5. *Balsaminus* on the East thereof. Betwixt these Hills the course of the River is so hemmed in on both sides, that at the upper part of the Stream, where it first entereth into *Egypt*, the space betwixt the Mountains is not above four miles broad; enlarging afterwards, to eight, then about *Cairo* to thirty seven; then opening wider and wider, till we come to the breaches of the *Delta*, as the Country doth increase in breadth. On these and other of the Mountains and lesser Hills, stand most part of the Towns and receptacles of the Country-people in the time of the Flood, rising when least, to fifteen *Cubits*, or seven yards and an half.

Rivers of Note here are none but *Nilus*, nor indeed any one but that; that being sufficient of it self to enrich this Country, which otherwise would be nothing but a *Sandy Desert*. The head thereof not in the Mountains of the *Mon*, as was once supposed, but in the Lake *Zemire* in *Aethiopia interior*; passing from thence through the *Higher Aethiopia*, or *Habassine* Empire, till it falls at last into this Country; and running in one continual Channel (excepting where it brancheth into little Islands, as it sometimes doth) before its influx into the Sea, is divided into seven great streams, opening into the Sea with so many mouths. Namely; 1. *Heraclotium*; 2. *Boloticum*; 3. *Schamiticum*; 4. *Paiticum*; 5. *Mendicum*; 6. *Caminum*; 7. *Pelopiacum*. The first and last of these Currents

(which are the only two now left) being far distant from the other, & growing into one at the first point of the River's division, make that part of *Egypt*, which is called *Delta*, because to such as come to this Country out of *Greece*, *Italy*, or *Anatolia*, it resembleth that Letter in the *Greek Alphabet*. Now because *Nilus* to runneth in its certain Channels, that the People have no other water to make use of for all necessities; there are many by-trenches and deep Ditches cut in convenient places (by the Care and Munificence of their Kings) to receive its Waters, and to communicate them to the people who know almost no other drink then the Waters thereof, and indeed they need not, the Waters of this River being of such excellent, both taste and virtue, that when *Piscennus Niger* saw his *Souldiers* murmur for want of Wine; What (saith he) do you grumble for Wine, having the Water of Nile to drink?

But beside the Waters of this River, and the Trenches of it, the people are supplied with that Commodity by Lakes and artificial Channels, which serve for watering their Cattel, tempering of Mortar for their Buildings, and other such inferior uses; sometimes perhaps for drink for the poorer sort; who cannot be conveniently furnished with the waters of Nile. Amongst the Trenches (which were many, as before was said) those of most estimation were the Works of *Ptolemy*, and the Emperor *Trajan*, the first falling into that branch of the Nile, which maketh the Nile called *Heraclotus*: the other into the main body of it not far from *Caire*. These two, by reason of the many fresh Springs which fall into them, have the name of Rivers in old Authors: and betwixt these was feasted the Land of *Goshen*, extending from *Nilus* to the *Red-Sea* on the East and West. The chief of Note amongst the Lakes; were those called, 1. *Marotis*, not far from *Alexandria*, by *Phly* called *Arapses*, *Maria*, by *Ptolemy*; all which names are now lost, and changed into that of *Lago di Antacon*, from a Town of that name near unto it. 2. *Lacus* supposed to be the same which in the Book of *Maccabees* is called *Asphar*, 1. cap. 9. And 3. *Moris*, now called *Bacharia*, more memorable than the rest. In compass 3500 furlongs, 50 fathom deep, in the midst whereof were two *Pyramides*, 50 fathoms above the water, and as much beneath it: the Fifth of this Lake for one fix months in the year, is said to be worth twenty of their pounds a day to the Kings Exchequer; for the other six, each day a Talent. 4. The Lakes called *Anari*, into which the Trench, or River called *Ptolomus*, doth discharge its waters, conveyed from thence into the *Red-Sea*.

The whole divided anciently into two parts only. 1. That called *Delta*, betwixt the two extrem branches of the River *Nilus*, the form of which Letter it resembleth to him who standing on the Sea-shore, could take a view of it, as before was said. 2. That called *Thebais* from *Thebe*, the principal City of it, comprehending all the rest of the course of that River, shut up on both sides with the Mountains spoken of before. But this division leaving out all those parts hereof, which lay on the East-side towards the *Arabian Gulf*, and on the West, as far as to the borders of *Libya Marmarica*: the *Macedonians* laying it all together, divided it into 18 *Centuries*, or *Districts*, by them called *Nomis*; increasing in the time of *Ptolemy* the Geographer, to 46. *Ortelius* out of divers Authors hath found 20 more. When conquered by the *Romans*, and made a *Diocesi* of the Empire: it was divided into four Provinces (not reckoning *Marmarica* and *Cyrene* into the account) that is to say, 1. *Egyptians*, specially so called, containing all the *Delta*, and the *District* or *Nomus* of *Mareotica*, bordering on *Marmarica*: 2. *Aegyptiaca*, so called from *Angustus Caesar*, on the East of the *Delta*, betwixt it and *Arabia Petraea*: 3. *Arcadia*, so called from the Emperor *Arcadius*, in whose time it was taken out of

FFFF 2

Thebais,

Cities of most note in the Province of *Thebes*, 1. *Panopolis*, the *Panos* of *Antoninus*, one of the greatest of this part. 2. *Ptolomais*, the foundation of one of the *Ptolomies*, and the goodliest City of this Province, succeeding unto *Thebe* both in power and greatness. 3. *Sais*, a fair and large Town, six days Journey from *Cairo*, going up the water; but by what name called amongst the Ancients, I do not where find. Affirmed (erroneously, I think) to be the dwelling-place of *Joseph* and *Mary*, when they fled with *CHRIST* our Saviour from the fury of *Herod*. Beautified with a goodly Temple, but now somewhat ruins, of the foundation of *Helen* the Mother of *Constantine*. This City much resorted to (on the strength of this Tradition only) by many aged *Christian* *Coptics*, who desire to die there. 4. *Diopolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; all of them on the banks of the River. 5. *Temyra*, in a little Isle so called, made by the circlings of the Nile: The Inhabitants whereof were the only men who durst encounter the *Crocodiles*, A Creature of a terrible name, but a cowardly nature; of which it is said by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, that it assaileth those which flee from it, and fleeth from those who do assaile it: In that point very like the Devil, of whom it is said by the Apostle *James* 4. 7. that if he be resisted, he will flee from us, Or as the good old Poet hath it,

Eti *Scio*, si fugias; si stat, quasi *Muscæ* recedis.

Give ground, a Lyon he will be;
Stand to it, and away flies he.

6. *Coptos*, upon the head of a Trench or Water-course, which fallth into the Nile, on the South of *Temyra*, but on the other side of the River; in old times, a most noted Empory for *Indian* and *Arabian* wares: from whence not only the Christians of this Country are thought to have the name of *Coptics*; but the whole Country to be originally called *Aegyptus*, from *Ac-Coptus*, or the Land of *Coptus*.

7. *Thebe* the residence and foundation of that great Tyrant *Bustris*, in compass 140 furlongs, or 17 miles and an half; called also *Hecatompia*, from the number of an hundred Gates, which were said to be in it. So beautified with Colosses, Temples, Palaces, the Sepulchres of the old Egyptian *Pharaohs*, and other Ornaments of State, that it was thought *μνηστέριον ὡς τὸ Ἰλιον* ἢ το *κεκοσμημένον* to be the *Nonesuch* of the world. Decayed on the removing of the Court of *A Memphis*, it became a ruine so long since, that there was nothing left of it in the time of *Juvénal*, as he telleth us, saying,

Atque vetus Thebe centum jacet obruta portis.

Old *Thebe* yielding to the Fates,
Lies buried with his hundred Gates.

8. *Ahyda*, now called *Amich*, once the Seat-Royal of *Mennon*, from thence called *Mennonius*, renowned for the Temple of *Osiris*; more for the Statue of *Mennon*, which though made of stone, did at the rising of the Sun yield a vocal sound. 9. *Elephantis*, on the banks of Nile, neighbored by *Chryphi* and *Mophi*, two sharp Rocks, betwix which the River falling down with a violent current, makes the Lesser *Cataract*; of which, and of the greater, we shall speak more fully in *Aethiopia*. The City seated in an Island of the River Nile, on the borders of *Aethiopia* sub *Agypto*, (as the Ancients called it) known unto *Ptolemy* by the name of *Elephantina*, but to our Ecclesiastical Writers by the name of *Tahenna*. Memorable in times of Heathenism for the Town and

Temple of *Onuchis*, wherein stood the *Nilometrum* or standing Pillars, by which they did observe the increase of the River, removed since to the Castle of *Michia*, two miles from *Cairo*: in times of Christianity, for the dwellings of infinite numbers of Monks and Hermits, called from this place *Tahensitas*. 10. *Syene*, (now *Ajina*) a little North of *Elephantis*, situate directly under the Tropick of *Cancer*, and memorable for a deep Well there digged by some astronomers, which when the Sun entered into the sign, was wholly enlightened with his beams, without any shadow, so perpendicularly did the body of it stand over the pit. This the last City of *Egypt* towards *Aethiopia*.

And now I shall proceed, according to my Method in other places, to the Story of *Egypt*: but being that *Libya* and *Cyrene*, are now accompted Members of it; the fortunes whereof they have also followed in all or most of the mutations of State and Government: I shall first take a view of them as the limbs of this body, and shew you how they were united under that one Head, by which now directed.

2. MARMARICA.

LIBYA or MARMARICA, hath on the East, *Egypt*, properly so called; on the West *Cyrene*, on the North, that part of the Mediterranean Sea, which was hence called *Mare Libyæum*, and sometimes *Parthenium*; and on the South, some part of *Aethiopia* Superior.

It had the name of *Libya*, from the old Greek word *Λιβύος* signifying Black, agreeable to the complexion of the people, which is black and swarthy; *Λιβύς*, antequa lingua *Græca* niger, saith a learned Writer: or possibly enough from *Lub*, an *Arabian* word signifying Thirst; as futable unto the nature of the soil, which is dry and sandy, in which respect called by the Greeks *Xero-Libya*, or *Libya Sicca*. From hence the South-wind, blowing from these Coasts towards *Greece* and *Italy*, had the name of *Lybi*, and the Promontory in *Sicily* opposite unto it, that of *Libyæum*. It was also called *Marmarica*, perhaps from the *Marmaride*, a chief people of it, though placed by *Ptolemy* in *Cyrene*; and sometimes *Barca*, from *Barce* a chief City in it; of late times *Barca Marmarica*, by both names united.

The Country for the most part very dry and barren, & but meanly peopled; in somuch as *Alexander* passing thorough part of it towards the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*, in the space of four days, saw neither Man, Beast, Bird, Tree, nor River. Covered over in most places with a thick light sand, which the winds remove up and down continually, turning Vallies into Hills and Hills into Vallies. Found by *Cambyses* to his cost, who as basely esteeming of the Gods as he did of his subjects, sent part of his Army into this Country to destroy the Temple above-mentioned; but in the passage towards that prohibited place, fifty thousand of them were overwhelmed and smothered in a storm of Sand; the rest with much ado escaping. Called therefore *Xero-Libya*, or *Libya Sicca*, as before was noted; and *Libya sitientis*, thirstily *Libya*, (— per calidas Libyæ sitientis arvas) in that verse of *Lucan*.

The people, Neighbours unto *Egypt*, and consequently, much of the same condition. Said by *Herodotus* (by whom they were called *Adrynachide*) to be governed by the like Laws and Customs as the *Egyptians* were; but do differ from them in their habit. Of colour dark, and black; of constitution, lean and dry, and inclining to Melancholy; angry on every little occasion, very litigious, and eager prosecutors of their dues. By an old Observation

among themselves, they abstained both from Beef and Hog-meat. So obstinate in denying their accustomed Tributes, that he who could not shew the marks of his sufferings for it, either Black or Blew, was accompted no body. And so, referred to conceal any thing disagreeable to them, that if any of them were apprehended for a Robbery, no torment could compell him to tell his name. At this time little differing in person, temper, or condition, from the *Egyptians*, *Moors*, and *Arabes* intermixt amongst them.

Converted to the Faith of *Christ*, with, or not long after the rest of *Egypt*, of which then reckoned for a Province, it became part of the Patriarchate of *Alexandria*; whose Jurisdiction over it was confirmed by the Council of *Nice*: to the calling of which famous Council, this Country occasionally concurred, by bringing into the World that wretched *Arius*; who with his *Heterodoxies* and contentious *Cavils*, had disturbed the Church. His *Heresie* condemned in that famous Council; but his Person, by the Divine Justice of God, referred to a more remarkable punishment: Being sent for by the Emperor *Constantine* to make a Recantation of his former *Heresie* he first writ out a Copy of his own Opinions, which he had in his Bosom; and then writing out the Recantation expected from him, took Oath that he did really mean as he had written: which Oaths the Emperor referred to the Recantation, he to the Paper in the Bosom. But God would not be cozened, though the Emperor was. For as he passed in Triumph through the streets of *Constantinople*, he drew aside to a private house of ease, where he voided his Guts in the Draught, and sent his Soul as an Harbinger to the Devil, to make room for his Body.

Not more infamous for the Birth of this *Miscreant*, who denied the Divinity of *Christ*; than famous for the Birth of one of the *Sibyls*, hence furnished *Libya*, by whom the flame had been fore-shewn. Which *Sibyls* seem to have taken denomination from *Διὸς ἑβλάη* i. e. *Jovis consilium conficiæ*. They were in number Ten viz. 1. *Perfica*, 2. *Libyca*, 3. *Delphica*, 4. *Cumæa*, 5. *Saminia*, 6. *Hellepontica*, 7. *Tiburina*, 8. *Albæa*, 9. *Erythraea*, and 10. *Cumæa*; which last is affirmed to have written the nine Books of *Sibyls*. They were all presented by an old Woman to *Tarquinius Superbus*; but he not willing to pay for great a sum of Money as was demanded, denied them; whereupon the old Woman burnt three of them, requiring as much money for the other six, as for all: which being denied, she also burnt another three, asking as much for the three remaining, as for the rest; which *Superbus* amazed gave, and the old Trot vanished. These Books contained manifested tokens of the Kingdom of *Christ*, his Name, his Birth & Death. They were burned by the Arch-Traitor *Stilico*. So that those Prophecies of theirs, which are now extant, are for the most part only such as had been extracted out of other Writings, where their Authority had been quoted. Concerning which, though *Cassiodorus*, & some other of our great *Philologists*, conceive them to be spurious, composed of purpose by the Fathers of the Primitive Times, to win credit to the Faith of *CHRIST*: yet dare I not so far disparage those most godly Men, as to believe they would support so strong an Edifice with so weak a Prop, or borrow help from Falshood to evict a Truth. Or if they durst have been so impudently venturesome, how could it be their learned Adversaries, *Porphyrus*, *Julian*, and the rest of more eminent note, to have detected the Imposture, and silenced the Christian *Advocates* with reproach and scorn? But of this enough here, more at large elsewhere.

Rivers of Note I find not any. 'Tis well, if in a Country full of Sands, there be any at all: some *Lake* I

meet with in my Authors; the principal of which, 1. *Lacus*, 2. *Lacus Lacomedis*, now *Lincano*, 3. *Cleurtus*; sufficient to preserve their few Cattel from the taint of thirst. The Mountains of most note, 1. those called *Anganabri*, 2. and that named *Azur*, this last extended West and East in a straight line from the 51 degree of Longitude, to the 53; 3. *Alphus*, 4. *Ogdonus*, 5. *Tmoder*, 6. *Alpis*. not much observable, but that they serve for Land-mark to discover the Country.

Towns of note there are none now in it. Of most esteem in former times, 1. *Barrachus*, by some called *Meneaus*, an Haven-Town, 2. *Phibia*; and 3. *Anesiphra* two Port-Towns also. 4. *Tetracygia*, so called from its four Towers, the *Amipygius* of *Ptolemy*, 5. *Meluchis*, more within the Land, 6. *Mazacilla*, another mid-land Town. 7. *Chareola*, mentioned amongst the chief Cities of this Tract by *Ammianus*, 8. *Paratanium*, now *Porto-ralla*, which with *Pelufium* are by *Florus* called the two Harms of *Egypt*; which whosoever held fast, would be sure to master it. By some old Writers it had formerly been called *Ammonia*, as we read in *Stephanus Strabo*; from the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*, seated very near it. So anciently honoured with an Oracle, (if that were any honour to it) that *Semiramis* is said to have come hither to enquire of her death, *Porsus* and *Hercules*, touching their adventures. The like, but not long after, was done by *Alexander* the Great: but the Oracle by that time had learnt to flatter, and puffed him up with a proud conceit of being the Son of that God whom he came to worship. The Temple seated in the middle of a vast plain, *Desert*, environ'd with a pleasant and delightful Grove, about six miles or more in circuit; watered with wholesome Springs, refreshed with a temperate Air, and shaded with fruit-bearing Trees, which carried in their leaves a perpetual Spring. Fortified with a Triple-Wall, within the first whereof was a Royal Palace of the Kings, within the second a *Seraglio* for his Women, in the third Lodgings for the Officers of Court: The Oracle sitly placed (so the Priests would have it) near the *Seraglio* of the Ladies; before the entrance a fair Fountain, wherein the Oblations were first washed, then offered. A place of great repute in sacred and civil estimate: all the adjoining Country taking hence the name of *Ammonica*, and by that name reckoned amongst the Provinces of the Patriarchate of *Alexandria*. 9. *Amiphra*, on the East border of it towards *Alexandria*. 10. *Barce*, called afterwards *Ptolemais*, by the name of one of the *Ptolomies*, by whom repaired and beautified. Of such account, that from hence the whole Country had the name of *Barca*, and the Inhabitants of *Barce*, (— *Lateque surrentes Barce*) as in that of *Virgil*.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Libyarchæ* and *Balsachite*, in the North; the *Ogdoni*, *Buzes*, and *Adymachide*, in the South; the *Goniatæ* and *Prospidæ*, in the midland parts, the *Libyægyptii*, bordering nearest unto *Egypt*, with the people whereof so intermingled, as to make up betwixt them but one name and Nation. Others there were of Iels, or as little note, but all descended properly of *Naphthum*, the Son of *Ismael*, from whom the Name of *Nephtis*, originally a *Libyan* City, seems to be derived: yet so that *Lehabis* his Brother must come in for a share, the Founder, as it is conceived, of the *Libyægyptii* before mentioned. Being then of the same original with those of *Egypt*, they followed the same fortunes also, till the times of the *Ptolomies*, by whom sometimes given for portion with the title of a Kingdom, to their younger Children. By the last Will and Testament of *Apion*, the last King hereof, a Bastard-Son of *Ptolemy* surnamed *Euergetes* the seventh King of that House, bequeathed unto the Senate and people of *Rome*. By whom

first suffered to live under them, as a *Free-state*, till the Conquest of Egypt; then reckoned as part of that, and so accordingly described by *Pholomy*: where *Libya*, *Marmarica*, and *Ammoniac* occur amongst the *Nomi*, or *Divisions* of it. Afterwards made a distinct Province of that *Dioecesis*, and governed by a *Lord-President*, under the *Præfectus Augustalis*, or supreme Commander of the Emperours.

2. CYRENE.

CYRENE is bounded on the East, with *Marmarica*, on the West, with *Africa propria*, or the Realm of *Tunis*, and some part of the *Mediterranean*, and the Greater *Syria*; on the North, with the *Mediterranean* wholly; on the South, with *Libya Inferior*, or the *Deserts* of *Libya*.

It took this name from *Cyrene*, the chief City of it, from whence sometimes also called *Cyrenapolis*; by *Pliny* and some other Roman Writers it is called *Pentapolis*, from five chief Cities which were in it, viz. 1. *Cyrene*, 2. *Polopoli*, 3. *Asioto*, 4. *Darnice*, 5. *Berenice*: by *Ammianus* for the same reason *Libya Pentapolis*, the name of *Libya* extending over many of these Roman Provinces. And finally, at the present, it palleth with that last described by the name of *Barca*, or *Barca Marmarica*: the whole extent whereof in length from the Greater *Syria* unto *Agave*, is no less than 1300 miles, but the breadth not above 200.

The Country in the South parts desolate and barren, stored with few Towns, and not many Villages; the people living up and down in scattered houses, and at such a distance, as if it were in so many islands. Desolate not of Springs and Rivers only, but of Rain-water too, the Clouds not very often dropping, if any fell, it was dried up presently by the Sands. But within fifteen miles of the Sea, indifferently fruitful and well inhabited.

The people in old times were said to have been utterly ignorant of buying and selling, of fraud and stealing, not knowing, or not caring for the Use of Money: content with little, not superfluous in their Cloths or Buildings; their houses for the most part (except only in their greater Cities) made of Olive-Twigs. Much altered in the first part of their Character since the coming of the *Arabians* hither; now a Thieving Nation, given wholly to Robbery and Spoil. So lazy, that they will not Manure or Till their Land, but provide themselves with Corn from *Sicily*, laying their Children to pawn for it, till by their Thieving they can raise a sufficient sum to discharge the Debt.

One only River I find in it, but of fame enough to serve for many; by *Pliny* called *Luthon*, by *Pliny Lethon*, by the Poets *Labe*. Swallowed by the Earth not far from its first original, it riseth up again about *Berenice*; raised therefore by the Poets to come from *Hell*, and to create *forgetfulness*, in all them that drink of it; it being the occasion of the dead to remember nothing. Thence the occasion of the fancy. Some Lakes I find also in it, whereof one occasioned by this River, not far from the Sea; another more within the Land (where indeed more necessary) near *Palturus*. With Mountains better stored (though not much better for them) the principal whereof, (I think) called *Herculis Arena*, the Sands of *Hercules*, thwarting the Country East and West, 2. *Bacchicus*, on the South of those: and 3. *Vulpius*, along ridge of Hills, bordering upon *Africa Propria*.

Cities of most note in it, 1. *Apollonia*, in the East parts near the Promontory called *Zephyrium*, in the Confines of *Libya*, or *Marmarica*, 2. *Cyrene*, in the West of that; once of high power, that it contended with *Carthage* for some preeminences: Then the chief Lady of this Tract;

which it gave this name to. The birth-place of *Erastophanes* the Mathematician, *Callimachus* the Poet, and of that *Simon* of *Cyrene*, whom the *Jews* compelled to carry out *Saviour's* Cross. 3. *Protonotus*, betwixt *Cyrene* and *Asioto*; built or repaired by *Protonotus Philadelphus*; the Episcopal City of *Synnesus*, a learned and religious Bishop of the Primitive times, as appears by his Epistles extant. 4. *Asioto*, on the East-side of the River *Luthon*; so called in honour of *Asioto*, the Sister of *Philadelphus*, and Wife of *Magus*, once King of this Country. 5. *Berenice*, on the Western Bank of the said River, so called from *Berenice* the Mother, or (another of the same nature) the Daughter of *Magus*: The furthest Town of all this Country, bordering on the Promontory called *Boreum*, and the Greater *Syria*. This last a Quick-sand very dangerous to *Mariners*, in compass 635 miles, and by them carefully avoided. 6. *Palturus*, more within the Land, but on the borders of *Libya* or *Marmarica*; South to *Apollonia*. 7. *Apollinis*, now *Lunggiari*, by *Pliny* called *Apudici Fanum*. 1. *Herculis Turris*, the Tower of *Hercules* near the Greater *Syria*; erected in the honour of *Hercules*, his killing of the Dragon, and robbing the Orchards of the *Hesperides* of their golden Apples. Those *Hesperides* said to be *Aegle*, *Arethusa*, and *Heperethusa*, the three Daughters of *Atlas*; their Orchard placed by *Protonotus* betwixt this Tower and *Palturus*; by *Pomponius*, in the *Atlantic* Islands; by *Virgil*, in *Mauritania Tingitana*; by *Pliny*, both in *Mauritania* and this *Cyrene*; and possibly in all alike. 9. *Zephyrium*, 10. *Acabitis* in the mid-lands; all worn out of memory. 11. *Fassan*, of greatest name now, though scarce worth the naming.

The old Inhabitants of this Country, were the *Abas* on the East, the *Barcia* near the Greater *Syria*, the *Macæ* and *Leganici* near the Mountains of *Hercules*; all probably descended from *Naphthim* the Son of *Mizraim*, of whom there still remain some foot-steps in *Apudici Fanum*, the Fane or Temple of *Apudicus*. This *Apudicus*, by some mistakingly called *Anuchus*, and by the *Grecians* said to be the Son of *Cyrene*, and the Brother of *Arifanus*: who being sent out to seek their Fortunes, *Arifanus* fell into the life named *Cæus*; and *Apudicus*, or *Anuchus* into *Libya*, both by them first planted. *Naphthim*, the Deity of this Country, by the *Egyptians* called *Nephtim*, seems to come from *Naphthim*; most highly worshipped by this People, because he first taught them the Art of drawing the Chariot, the Art of training Horses to the Coach or Chariot; in which the *Cyrenians* after grew so expert, that they could drive their Chariots in a round, or circle, and always keep their Chariot-wheels in the self-same track. Of no great power, till *Batus* a noble *Spartan*, landing in this Country, had built the City of *Cyrene*, and founded it in so good a course of Life and Discipline, that in short time it came to have Dominion over the most part of this Country; and to contend with *Carthage* about their Territories. Warred on by *Apyres* King of *Egypt*, they fled unto the *Greeks* for aid, and by their assistance overcame him. Long after which falling at odds among themselves, they craved aid of *Protonotus* the first of that Race, by whom they were finally subdued. Left by him at his death to *Magus*, a Son of his last Wife by a former Husband, whom he had married to *Asioto*, one of his Daughters; it came again to the Crown of *Egypt*, by the marriage of *Berenice*, the Daughter and Heir of *Magus*, with the Son of *Protonotus Philadelphus*. Alienated from which Crown again, for the preference of some of the younger Princes; and in the end given by one of the *Ptolomies*, the last King thereof, to the people of *Rome*. Reduced into the form of a Province by *Augustus Cæsar*; by whom united in one Government with the Isle of *Crete*: but

but made a Province of it self by the following Emperours, never since separated from the fortune and affairs of *Egypt*, to which now we hasten.

That the Kingdom and Nation of *Egypt* was of great Antiquity, is not a matter to be doubted; the question in this point, betwixt them and the *Syrians*, being not easily decided. Whether it were so ancient, as the *Egyptians* say, may perhaps be controverted. By them it was affirmed, that they had the memory and story of 13000 years; and a succession of 330 Kings in the time of *Amasis* the second, who was contemporary with *Cyrus*. Which number of years, if understood of *Solar* years, measured by the course of the Sun, must not be allowed of; because it maketh them many thousand years older than the Creation: but if of *Lunary*, which is most agreeable unto the account of the *Egyptians*, who reckoned their years by months; it will amount unto no more than to 1000, or 1100 years, and so fall answerably to the times following after the Flood. But for their Kings, 330 in their reckonings, and those of 24 or 25 several *Dynasties*, the matter is not so soon made up. For either those Kings, must not be all Kings or Supreme Lords of *Egypt*, as the *Pharaohs* were; but their several *Regents* or *Vice-regents*, armed with Regal power, those *Dynasties* not the successions of so many Regal Families, but of their Substitutes and Lieutenants, many of which might live successively under one *Supremacy*: or else we must needs look on *Egypt* as distracted in those times into several Kingdoms, amongst the Princes of those *Dynasties* before remembered; or finally, we must look for some of those Kings and Princes before the Flood. By either of these ways, the business may be well agreed. For if that most of them were but the names of several *Regents*, (as probable enough it is) there might be many such in the Reign of one King; according to the King's fancy, the merit of particular persons, or the necessities of State: Changes of great Officers, especially if grown too great, are not new nor strange. If they were all Kings, or Supreme Rulers, (as it is also probable) we find not any thing of moment to perfwade the contrary, but that many of them lived and reigned in their several parts (as in other Countries in those times) till the greater had devoured the less. Or if they were the names of such sovereign Princes, as had the sole command of *Egypt* before the Flood, (as some think they were,) they might amount in all to so great a number, and so many *Dynasties*; the iniquity of those times, the ambition of great persons, and consequently the short lives of the Kings being duly pondered. That *Egypt*, and most part thereof, was peopled before the Flood, had been already proved in our General Preface. If peopled, then no question under some form of Government: the names of which Governours (call them Kings or Rulers, or what else you please) might be preserved in *Egypt* on Pillars of Brass or Stone; or otherwise transmitted by tradition unto *Cham* the Father of *Mizraim*, by whom this Country was first planted after the Confusion of *Babel*. But that old stock of Kings and People being destroyed in the general Deluge, the Children of *Mizraim* succeeded next in their desolate dwellings: yet so, that the posterity of *Chus* and *Lubim*, two others of the Sons of *Cham*, had their shares therein. From the first of which descended the Inhabitants of those parts of *Egypt*, which lay along the shores of the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*: in which re-

spect, not only one of the *Nomi*, or divisions bordering on the *Isthmus*, had the name of *Arabia*; but the people dwelling on those shores were called *Arabes*, divided into the *Arabes Acævi*, and *Arabes Adæi*. And from the other came that mixture of Nations, called *Liby-Egypti*, or *Libyans* and *Egyptians* intermixt together, inhabiting in *Mædæcia*, and the Western parts. But though these people were derived from several Ancestors, they made one Nation in the total: subject to *Mizraim* as their Chief; and after his decease, unto his Successors in the Kingdom of *Egypt*. Concerning whom we may observe, that in *Cham*, our greatest Antiquaries find the name of *Jupiter Hammon*: *Mizraim* they guess to be *Osiris*, the great God of *Egypt*. To him succeeded *Typhon*, not by right of blood, but by Usurpation; who dispossessed by *Luchim*, the brother of *Mizraim* (whom the *Greeks* call *Hercules Egyptius*) the Kingdom was restored to *Orus*, the Son of *Osiris*. During the time of these few Princes, happened all those things which are recorded in the Scriptures concerning *Egypt*; from the first going down of *Abraham* in the time of *Osiris*, to the advancement of *Joseph* in the Reign of *Orus*, in which there passed the 15, 16, and 17: *Dynasties* of Regal Vice-Roys; Lieutenants only, as I take it, to those mighty Princes. The Kings themselves called generally by the name of *Pharaohs*, though they had all their proper and peculiar names: as afterwards their Successors here had the name of *Ptolomy*, and the *Roman* Emperours, that of *Cæsar*. Few of them famous in the stories of other Nations, or of renown for their Achievements and Exploits abroad, contenting themselves with the Revenues of their own Dominions, and spending the surplussage thereof in building Cities, draining the Marshes of the Nile, or other works of Ornamentation and Magnificence. Only *Sesofstris* is of fame for his undertakings, though when he had cast up his account, he got nothing by them: of whom it is reported, that being a King of great wealth and puissance, he had brought under subjection all his neighbouring Princes whom he compelled in turns to draw his Chariot. It happened that one of these unfortunate Princes cast his eye many times on the Coach-wheel and being by *Sesofstris* demanded the cause of his so doing, he replied; That the falling of that Spoke lowest, which but just before was the highest in the wheel, put him in mind of the instability of Fortune. The King deeply weighing the Parable, would never after be so drawn in his Chariot. He was also the first that encountered the *Syrians* in Battle, having already in conceit conquered them, before he led his Army against them. The *Syrians* much marvelled, that a King of such great Revenues would wage war against a Nation so poor, with whom the fight would be doubtful, the Victory unprofitable; but to be vanquished a perpetual infamy and disgrace. For their parts they resolved to meet him as an Enemy, whose overthrow would enrich them. When the Armies came to joys, the *Egyptians* were discomfited, and pursued even to their own doors by the Enemy. But the *Syrians* could not enter the Country, because of the Fens, with whose passage they were unacquainted; and so they returned. Which said without troubling our selves with their many *Dynasties*, we will lay down the Succession of their Kings, as well as we can; the disagreement of Historians and Chronologers, touching this Succession, being irreconcilable.

The PHARAOHS, or KINGS of EGYPT of Egyptian Race.

A. M.

- 1 Mizraim, the Son of Cham, by the Grecians called *Ofiris*: in whose time Abraham went into Egypt.
- 2 Typhon, an Ufurper.
- 3 Orus, the Son of *Ofiris*, restored unto the Kingdom by his Uncle *Lehahim*; the Advancer of *Joseph*.
- 2207 4 Amasis, *Themosis*, or *Amos*, in whose time Jacob went down into Egypt. 25.
- 2233 5 Chebron. 12.
- 2245 6 Amenophis, or Amenophis. 21.
- 2246 7 Amasis, the Sister of Amenophis. 22.
- 2288 8 Memphis. 12.
- 2300 9 Memphis. 25.
- 2325 10 Themosis, or Thuthmosis. 10.
- 2335 11 Amenophis II. supposed to be Memnon and the Vocal Statue. 31.
- 2366 12 Orus II. the *Euphris* of the Grecians, a bloody Tyrant; who commanded the male-children of *Israel* to be slain. 37.
- 2403 13 Aenechere, by some called *Thermutis*, the Daughter of Amenophis the second, and afterwards the Wife of Orus; who preferred *Asotis*, and survised her Husband. 13.
- 2416 14 Rabsigs, the Son of Orus. 6.
- 2422 15 Aenechere. II. 12.
- 2429 16 Cenechere, by some called *Arenasis*; Bacchoris by others; famous in the Red-Sea, with his Horses and Chariots. 16.
- 2453 17 Acherrer. 8.
- 2462 18 Cherret. 10.
- 2472 19 Armais, by the Grecians called *Danaus*, whose 50 Daughters being married to the 50 Sons of his Brother *Egyptus*, murdered their Husbands; for which cause *Danaus*, being forced out of Egypt, passed into Greece; where attaining to the Kingdom of *Argos*, he gave unto the Grecians the name of *Danai*.
- 2575 20 Ramessis, surnamed *Egyptus*, the Brother of *Danaus*.
- 2580 21 Amenophis III. 10.
- 2590 22 Sethos, or Sefosis. 55.
- 2643 23 Rhopsaces, or Ranses. 66.
- 2711 24 Amenophis IV. 40.
- 2751 25 Ramessis II. 26.
- 2777 26 Thoris. 7. After whose death succeeded a Race of twelve Kings, called the *Dispolitani*, who held the Kingdom for the space of 177 years. Their names we find not, but that one of the latest of them whose Daughter *Solomon* married was called *Paphra*; and perhaps *Ogdoas*, who removed the Royal Seat from *Thebes* to *Memphis*, might be another, and the eighth, as his name importeth.
- 2961 39 Smendes, the Sife of the Scriptures, who made War upon *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*; conceived to be the *Sesoftris* of *Herodotus*, and others of the ancient Writers, of whom sufficiently before.
- 2987 40 Ptoemert, conceived to be the *Cheops* of *Herodotus*, Founder of the vast *Pyramid*: before described. 41.

A. M.

- 3028 41 Nopher-Cherres. 4.
- 3032 42 Amenophis V. 9.
- 3041 43 Ophchon, the *Aphis* of *Herodotus*.
- 3047 44 Pannuchas. 9.
- 3056 45 Pseucens II. 14.
- 3070 46 Sefosis. 21.
- 3091 47 Ufhoron. 15.
- 3106 48 Takelottis. 13.
- 3119 49 Patabosiz. 40.
- 3159 50 Oserchon, the second *Hercules* *Aegyptius*, as some will have it. 8.
- 3167 51 Pannis. 15.
- 3183 52 Bochoris, called by the name of So, 2 Kings 17. 4. taken and burnt by *Sabacan* the King of *Ethiopia*. 44.
- 3229 53 Sabacan King of *Ethiopia*. 8.
- 3238 54 Sevacus Son of *Sabacan*. 14.
- 3252 55 Taracan, falsely supposed to be the *Zerah* of the Scriptures. 10.
- 3270 56 Stephinates. 7.
- 3277 57 Niclusis, after whose death followed an Aristocracy of 12 Princes who having governed 15 years, were dethroned by one of their own number, called
- 3288 58 Panniticus, who first made the Grecians acquainted with Egypt, whom he invited to his aid against the *Syrians*: the Founder of the famous *Memphis* before mentioned, and no less memorable for his prudent preventing of the *Syrians* from breaking into his Country of which we spoke before, when we were in *Tartaria*. 54.
- 3335 59 Necho, who slew *Josiah* at the battle of *Mejido*. 25.
- 3360 60 Pannis. II. 44.
- 3366 61 Apries, called *Hophra*, Jer. 44. subdued by *Nebuchadnezzar*, and deposed by *Amasis* 25.
- 3391 62 Amasis II. 44.
- 3435 63 Panniticus or Panniticus II. a King of six months only; vanquished by *Cambyses* the second Monarch of *Persia*, who united Egypt to that Empire, under which it continued till the time of *Darius*; the sixth King of the *Medes* and *Persians*: in the 2d. year of whose Reign it revolted from him, and became a Kingdom of itself as in former times.
- 3555 64 Amyrtus, the first King after the Revolt. 6.
- 3561 65 Nephites. 6.
- 3567 66 Achoris. 12.
- 3579 67 Panniticus III. 1.
- 3580 68 Nephites II. a King of two months only. 69. Nectanebos 18.
- 3598 70 Teos or Tachos, deposed by
- 3600 71 Nectanebos II. the last King of the natural Egyptian Race, that ever governed Egypt by the name of a King. For in the 18th. of the

Reign of this King, Egypt was again recovered by the valor of *Ochus*, the eighth Emperor of *Persia*. And when *Alexander* had overthrown *Darius*, he came, and without blows won this fertile Kingdom; which yielded him

him during his life the yearly value of 6000 Talents. After his death this Kingdom fell to the share of *Ptolemus* the Son of *Lagus*, from whom all the subsequent Kings of Egypt were called *Ptolemies*.

The Second DYNASTY, or the PTOLOMEAN Kings of Egypt.

A. M.

- 3461 1 Ptolemy, one of *Alexander's* Captains, reputed the Son of *Lagus*; but supposed to be the Son of *Philip* of *Macedon*, half-brother to *Alexander*. 40.
- 3681 2 Ptol. Philadelphus, who filled the Library of *Alexandria* with 700000 Volumes, and caused the 72 Interpreters to translate the Bible.
- 3717 3 Ptol. Evergetes the Son of *Philadelphus*, vanquished *Selenus* *Callinicus* King of *Syria*, and probably had subdued the Kingdom, if not called back by Domestick dissensions. 26.
- 3743 4 Ptol. Philopater, a cruel, voluptuous and incestuous Prince, cruelly slew *Cleomenes* the last King of *Sparta*, who had fled to his Father for relief, in the time of his exile. 17.
- 3760 5 Ptol. Epiphanes, at the age of five years succeeded his Father; protected by the *Romans* against *Antiochus* the Great of *Syria*, who had an aim upon his Kingdom. 23.
- 3784 6 Ptol. Philometor, the Son of *Epiphanes*, by *Cleopatra* the Daughter of *Antiochus*; protected in his nonage by the *Romans* also: caused himself to be Crowned King of *Syria*, but again relinquished it. 35.
- 3829 7 Ptol. Evergetes II. for his deformity called *Physcon*, the Brother of *Ptol. Philometor*, a wicked Prince, and one that spent the greatest part of his Reign in a cauleis war against *Cleopatra*, his Wife and Sister. 29.
- 3858 8 Ptol. Lathargus reigned 16. years with *Cleopatra* his Mother, by whom dispossessed of his Estate for the space of ten years; after her death was sole Lord of Egypt. His Brother *Alexander* being taken by the Queen-mother as her Associate, in the time of his deprivation, and passing in the account of the Kings of Egypt.
- 3892 9 Ptol. Antioch, the Son of *Lathargus*, surnamed also *Dionysius*, whose Brother being settled by him in the Isle of *Cyprus*, was most unjustly stripped of it by the power of the *Romans*: and he himself ousted of Egypt by his own Subjects, but restored by the aid and love of *Pompey*.
- 3922 10 Ptol. Dionysius, called also *Junior*, or the younger, together with *Cleopatra* his Wife and Sister, succeeded *Antioch* in the Throne, which they held together by the space of three years. In the last of which, *Pompey* was barbarously slain on the shores of Egypt, by the command of *Achillas* the young Kings Governor; and the young King himself unfortunately slain in the *Alexandrian*

A. M.

- 3925 11 Cleopatra, the Wife and Sister of *Dionysius* restored to the Crown of Egypt by the bounty of *Cesar*, of whom exceedingly beloved for her wit and beauty. After which she governed Egypt 19. years in her own sole right, with great pomp and splendor: when being imbarqued in the bed and fortunes of *Marc Anthony*, she killed her self not long after his fatal Overthrow at the Battle of *Actium*, that she might not be led in triumph through *Rome*.

These *Ptolemaean* Princes of Egypt, were for the most part in Wars with the Kings of *Syria*, in which they were by turns victorious, and vanquished; neither Prince having cause to boast of his bargain. After the death of *Cleopatra*, whose life and love with *Marcus Antonius* I will not now relate, this Country fell to the share of the *Roman* Emperours, and was by them highly prized, and warily looked into. The Governour thereof was but a Gentleman of *Rome*, no *Senator* being permitted to come into it; being a Maxim of State, not to suffer men of great Houses to come into that Country, whose revolt may endanger the whole Empire. Of this nature was Egypt. For besides the natural situation of the place, very defensible, and besides the abundance of Money with which it was stored; this Country alone furnished the City of *Rome* with Corn, for four Months yearly. Whence *Pepsius* being chosen Emperor by the *Syrian* Legions, and hearing of the defeat of his concurrent *Vellutius*, hastened hither: to this end only, that detaining the ordinary provision of Victuals, he might by famine compel the City of *Rome* to stand at his devotion: *Ut ubi quoque externa opus indigam fame urgeret*, as the Historian hath observed. When made a Province of that Empire, it was counted as the Emperor's sole Peculiar: afterwards made (as well it might) an entire Diocess of it self, subordinate to the *Præfatus Prætorio Orientis*. In the division of the Empire allotted to the *Constantinopolitans*; whose Government being thought to be insupportable by this wayward people, they called in the *Saracens*, by whom the *Greek* Garrisons were cast out, and the Country made subject to *Hammar* the third of the *Caliphs*. Afterwards weary of them also, they would have a *Caliph* of their own, revolting totally from the *Caliph* of *Bagdad*. So that from this time forwards we shall meet with two *Caliphs* at a time; the one residing at *Cair* in Egypt, to whom the *Saracens* or *Moors* of *Spain* and *Africa* did submit themselves: the other at *Bagdad*, who Lorded it over all the rest at least as to the Supremacy Title, and some chief Prerogatives; though the main power was centred and disposed of among these Sultans.

The Third DYNASTY, or the CALIPHS of EGYPT.

A.C.	A.H.	
870	247	1 Achmetes, or Achmat, 10.
880	257	2 Tolen, 3.
883	260	3 Hamar, 20.
903	280	4 Abarn, slain by <i>Musaphi</i> , the Caliph of Babylon, 37.
940	317	5 Achid Muhamid, the Son of Tangi, 3.
943	320	6 Abigud, the Son of Achid, 27.
970	347	7 Meaz, Ledin, Illabi, of the race of Phatime and Hali, 5.
975	352	8 Aziz, the Son of Meaz, 21.
996	373	9 Elbachin, 23.
1019	396	10 Etaber Leazidin Illabi, 16.
1035	412	11 Mustafazer Billabi, 60.
1096	472	12 <i>Musfeale</i> , 5.
1100	477	13 Elamir Babacan Illabi, 35.
1135	512	14 Elhapit Ladin Illabi.
		15 Etzabar.
		16 Elphaziz.

The Fourth DYNASTY, or the Race of the TURKISH KINGS or CALIPHS of EGYPT.

- 1163 1 *Afereidin*, surnamed *Shirachoch*, called *Sarracoon*, by the Christian Writers; the first of the *Turks* which reigned in Egypt; of the Noble Family of *Ainb*.
- 1186 2 *Zeli-haddin*, called *Saladine* by the Christian Writers; the Son (or as some say, the Nephew), of *Sarracoon*, or *Shirachoch*; confirmed in his Estate by the *Chaliph* of *Bagdet*, under whose jurisdiction he reduced the *Egyptian* Schismatics. He obtained also the Kingdom of *Damascus*, conquered *Mesopotamia* and *Palestine*; and in the year 1190, regained the City of *Hiersusalem*. A Prince who wanted nothing to count him to succeeding Ages, nor to glorify him in the Kingdom of Heaven, but the saving knowledge of CHRIST JESUS.
- 1199 3 *Elaziz*, the second Son of *Saladine*, succeeded in the Realm of Egypt; which he exchanged afterwards with his Brother *Eladi* for the Kingdom of *Damascus*.
- 4 *Eladi*, or *El-Aphazel*, by the Christian Writers called *Melchisedech*, succeeded upon this exchange in the Kingdom of Egypt; and overcame the *Christians*, without the loss of a man, at the siege of *Cahir*, by letting loose the Sluces of *Nilus*, which drowned their Army, and forced them to covenant with him at his own pleasure.
- 1210 5 *Elchammil*.
- 1237 6 *Melch Affalch*, by the Christian Writers called *Melchisedech*, the Son of *Elchammil*, who overcame *Lewis* the 9th. of France; and going with that King towards *Damiatna*, was slain by the Souldiers of his Guard, called *Mamelucks*.

17 *Etzar Ledin Illabi*, the Son of *Elphaziz*, the last Caliph, or King of Egypt, of the race of *Phatime*: the *Turks* succeeding after his death in this opulent Kingdom. Concerning which we are to know, that *Elphaziz*, the Father of *Etzar*, being overpowered by *Almericus* King of *Hiersusalem*, craved aid of *Norradine* the Turkish Sultan of *Damascus*; which he received under the conduct of *Sarracoon*, or *Shirachoch*, a right valiant and stout Commander: who taking his advantages, not only cleared the Country of *Almericus*, but got the whole Kingdom to himself, dashing out the brains of *Elphaziz* with his Horseman's Mace. And though *Etzar* his Son assumed for a while the Title of Caliph, yet the destruction of himself, and the whole *Phatimean* Family rooted out by *Sarracoon*, soon put an end to that Claim, and left the Kingdom in the peaceable possession of the Turkish Sultans.

1242 7 *Elmutan*, the Son of *Melch Affalch*, succeeded for a time in his Fathers Throne. But the *Mamelucks* being resolved to obtain the Kingdom for themselves, enforced him to lie to a Tower of Wood, which they set on fire; the poor Prince, half burned, leaping into a River (which ran close by it) was there drowned, and the *Mamelucks* settled in the Kingdom, An. 1245.

The *Mamelucks* were the Off-spring of a People on the banks of the *Euxine* Sea, vulgarly called the *Circassians*: whom *Melchisedech* either bought of their Parents, or (at the second hand) of the *Tartars*, then newly Masters of those Countreys, to supply the want of valour in the idle and effeminate people of Egypt, and out of them selected a choice Band of men, for the Guard of his Person. Knowing their strength, and finding their opportunity, they treacherously slew *Melchisedech* their Lord and Master; appointing one *Azedin Uluk*, a *Turcoman* by Nation, and therefore by most Christian Writers called *Tarquimennius*, (one of their own number) a man of great spirit and valour, to succeed in the Throne. Unwilling to re-give the Supreme Authority into the hands of the *Egyptians*; and not permitting their own sons to enjoy the name and privilege of *Mamelucks*; they bought yearly certain numbers of *Circassian* slaves, by them committed to the keeping of the *Egyptians*, and the Law of *Mahomer*. Being thus fitted for Employment, they were taught the Discipline of War, and by degrees advanced into the highest Offices of Power and Trust, as now the *Tartars* are in the Turkish Empire: in choice and ordering of whom, as the *Ottoman* *Turks* were preceded by those of Egypt, so it is possible enough that the *Tartars* may make as great a Change in the Turkish Empire,

as the *Mamelucks* did in the *Egyptians*. So unsafe a thing it is for a Prince to commit the sole guard of his person, or the defence of his Dominions, to the hands of such, whom not the sense of a natural Duty, but the hopes of Profit or Preferment may make useful to him. For thus we find, that *Constantinus*, a King of the *Britains*, was murdered by his Guard of *Pilts*: most of the *Roman* Emperours, by the hands of those whom they intrusted, either with the guard of their persons or the command of their Armies. And I think no man can be ignorant, how many times the Princes and Estates of Italy have been brought into the extremest dangers, by trusting too much to the honesty of mercenary Souldiers and Commanders. Take we for instance the proceedings of *Giacopec Piccinno*, who with his Followers first took pay of *Ferdinand* the first of Naples; left him, to fight for his vowed Enemy, *John Duke of Calabria*, the Son of *Rene* Duke of Anjou, whom he also forsook in his greatest need. The like we find of *Francisco Sforza*, first entertained by the Duke of *Millain*, from whom he revolted to the *Florentines*, from them to the *Venetians*; and being again received into the pay of the State of *Millain*, made use of their own Army to subdue that City. Nor can I speak better of the *Switzers*, or their dealing in this kind with the *French* Kings, the *Sforzas*, Dukes of *Millain*, and with whom not, (to say the truth) that ever trusted or employed them?

Now as it is unsafe for a Prince to commit the custody of his Person, or the defence of his Estates to the Faith of Foreigners; so it is dangerous to him to call in such Aids, and to commit his Fortunes either wholly, or principally, unto their Fidelity. A moderate supply of Men, Money, or Munition, from a confederate King, is, I confess, in most cases convenient, in some necessary: as well to save their Natives from the Sword, as to try a Friend, and interest an Ally in the same cause. But to invite to great a number of Succours, as from *Helpers*: may become *Masters*, and oppress the people whom they came to defend; is that Rock on which many *Realms* have suffered shipwreck, and which a good Pilot of the State should with all care avoid; for as in the sickness of the body natural, it is hurtful to a man's health and life to take more *Physick*, than it may (after the effect thereof be wrought) either digest, or put out again; so in the body Politick, it is a perilous matter to receive more Succours, than what (after they have done the deed they were sent for) we may either with convenience reward and settle with us, or at liberty expell. Of all succours, this of Foreign supplies is most incurable; and *Ne quid nimis*, if in nothing else true, is in this case Oracle. There is no Kingdom (I am verily persuaded) under the Sun, which hath not been by this means Conquered; no Common-wealth, which hath not been by this means ruined. To relate all examples, were infinite and tedious; to infer some pleasing to the Reader, and to illustrate the point, not unnecessary. To begin with former times, *Philip* of Macedonia, called into Greece to assist the *Thebans* against the *Phocians*, brought all that Country, in a manner, under his command. The *Romans*, by aiding the *Sicilians* against the *Carthaginians*, possessed themselves of that flourishing Island; by assisting the *Hedus* against the *Segunians*, mastered *Gallia*; by succouring *Androgius* against *Cassibelan*, seized on Britain; by siding with the *Aetolians* against *Perseus*, united to their Empire all the Kingdom of Macedonia; and by the same course what not? In after-ages, the *Britains* called in the *Saxons*, and were by them thrust out of all; the

Irish called in the *English*, by whom they were in process of time totally subdued; and the *Indians* called in the *Mongol-Tartars*, who now Lord it over them. These Foreign Supplies are invited, or let into a Country, commonly in four cases. First, when some one man upon discontent, or desire of revenge, openeth them a way into a Country: upon which motives, *Nurfi* invited the *Lombards* into Italy; and Count *Julian* brought the *Moor* into Spain, the one to be revenged on the Empress *Sophia*, who had despitely reviled him, the other to revenge himself on King *Roderick*, who ravished his Daughter. Secondly, when the weaker Faction makes way for them, to maintain their cause against a stronger. On which ground, the Duke of *Burgundy* being oppressed by the faction of *Orleans*, made way for *Henry* the fifth to pass into France, and the *Leaguers* drew the *Spaniards* in, to hold up their declining cause against *Henry* the 8th. Thirdly, when an Ambitious Prince makes use of a foreign power, to stir up upon the rights of another man. And for that cause *Ludowick Sforza* persuaded *Charles* the 8th. to undertake the Conquest of the Realm of Naples; that by the countenance of his Arms, he might appropriate to himself the Dukedom of *Millain*. Fourthly, when a King overburdened by a foreign or domestic Force, which he is not able to resist, requires the help of a foreign Friend: in which case, *Plus a medico quam a morbo mali*, the *Physick* proves many times worse than the Disease. For thus the Kings of Naples of the house of *Aragon*, being in danger of the French, drew in the Aids of *Ferdinand* the *Catholic*, the Cousin-German once removed of the King then being; and the Caliphs of Egypt, not able to withstand the Forces of *Almericus*, craved aid of the *Turks*: by which means, both those Kingdoms were made a prey to their foreign friends, and by avoiding *Scylla*, fell into *Charybdis*. Nay, many times it so happeneth, that these foreign Succours joyn in design with those, against whom they were called, and divide the conquered State between them. And so we find, that the *Burgundians* being called by *Stilico* into Gaul, to prevent the breaking of the *Frank*s, or French, joyned with them in a common League against the *Romans*, whom they dispossessed at last of all that Country. Only amongst so many examples to this purpose, we find the Low-Country-men to have prospered by these foreign aids; who by the assistance of the *English* ransomed themselves from that yoke of bondage which was intended to be put upon them by the King of Spain. This I acknowledge to be true, and look upon it as a great argument of the integrity and honesty of the *English* Nation; although it is as true withal, that the *English* never had such an Army there, as to be able to subdue them. But give me such another instance, I will quit the cause: for the same Low-Country-men found it otherwise with the Duke of Anjou, Brother to *Henry* the 3d. of France, whom they created Duke of *Brabant*, and their Governor-General, permitting him to bring in as many of the French, as either his Authority, or their own moneys were able to raise: who was no sooner settled in that command, but he made it his chief business to seize upon their strongest Holds, and to be a more absolute Prince amongst them, than ever the *Spaniards* or *Burgundians* had been before. So that I think I may conclude, that these foreign Succours are the last to be tried, and the least to be trusted, of any remedies in State: But it's now more than time to return to the *Mamelucks*; and in them to

The Fifth DYNASTY of the EGYPTIAN KINGS, or the Race of the MAMALUCKS.

- A. Ch.
1255 1 *Turquimencius*, who being promoted to the Kingdom, released King *Lewis*, whom *Melechsal* his Predecessor had taken Prisoner, but performed not half the conditions agreed upon.
- 2 *Claber* (by some called *Elmutabaz*) taking advantage of the Miseries of the *Turks*, then distressed by the *Tartars*; seized on the greatest part of *Syria* and *Palestine*.
- 1260 3 *Bundocader* perfected the begun Conquests of *Claber*, and took from the *Christians* the strong City of *Antioch*; carrying on his Armies as far as *Armenia*, where he did much spoil.
- 4 *Melechist*, or *Melechfaret*, restored the power of the *Mamalucks* in *Syria* and *Palestine*; where it had been much impaired by *Edward* the Son of *Henry* the 3d. of *England*, and *Henry* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, &c.
- 1286 5 *Elpis*, or *Alphis*, recovered from the dissenting *Christians* the strong Cities of *Tripolis*, *Berytus*, *Tyre*, and *Sidon*; all which he raised to the ground, that they might not be any more serviceable to the affairs of the *Christians*.
- 1291 6 *Avapbus*, or *Eufrephus*, by birth a *German*, released *Henry* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, after he had been Prisoner 26 years. He rooted the *Christians* out of *Syria*, took *Ptolomis* the last Town they there held; and so raised it; that he made it fit to be ploughed.
- 7 *Melechesar*, when he was Lieutenant to *Arabis*; was discomfited by *Cassius*, a great Prince of the *Tartars*; with the loss of 40000 *Egyptians*: but *Cassius* being departed, he recovered again all *Syria*, and destroyed *Hierusalem*; for which Service he was afterwards made Sultan of *Egypt*.
- 8 *Melechadeh*, who I suppose to be that *Sultan* that governed *Egypt* when *Tambrlane* with unrelentable violence conquered it; but of this I am not certain: neither can I meet with any constant and continued series (which I dare rely on) of his Successors in this Kingdom, till I come to
- 9 *Melechella*, or *Melechisar*, who in the year 1423, subdued the Isle of *Cyprus*, and made the Kings thereof to be from thenceforth Tributaries to the *Mamaluck* Sultans.
- 1465 10 *Carlbeyus*, who much reformed the State of *Egypt*, and was a professed Enemy of *Bajazet* 2d. the 8th. King of the *Ottomans*.
- 1498 11 *Mahomet* the Son of *Carlbeyus*, deposed by the *Mamalucks*, for fear the Kingdom might by him be made hereditary; it being against their usual custom, that the Son should succeed his Father, in the name and privileges of a *Mamaluck*.
- 1499 12 *Campfon* *Chiafistius*, succeeded on the deposing of *Mahomet*.

- 13 *Zamballar*, who dethroned *Campfon*, and not long after was deposed by
- 1500 14 *Thombeius*, ousted of his Estate by the joynt-consent of the *Mamalucks*, so to make way for *Campfon* *Gawrus*.
- 1501 15 *Campfon* II. surnamed *Gawrus*, reformed the disordered and factious Estate both of Court and Country; and for the space of 16 years governed very prosperously. But siding at the last with *Hyfmael* the *Persian* *Sophy*, against *Selimus* the first of that name the 3d. Emperour, and tenth King of the *Ottoman* Family; he drew his Kingdom into a War, in which his Armies were overthrown, and himself slain in battle.
- 1517 16 *Tombeius* II. succeeded *Campfon* *Gawrus*, both in his Kingdom and misfortunes: vanquished in his first year by the said *Selimus* the first, *An*. 1517. Who having conquered this rich Kingdom, was used to say, *That he had gotten a Farm to feed his Gemoians, or young Soldiers*. So *Egypt* became a Province of the *Turkish* Empire, as it still continueth.

What the *Revenues* of it were in the time of the *Pharaohs*, I am not able to affirm. Great they must be, beyond the proportion of belief, or else they could never have been Masters of such sufficient Treasure to finish those vast Structures which they undertook. Twelve thousand and five hundred *Talents* they amounted annually unto, in the time of the *Ptolomies*; which of our Money makes the sum of two Millions, and 347750 pounds. Which *Sum Augustus Caesar* (appropriating this Province to himself) is said to have doubled; but whether he had it all in Money, or part hereof in Money, and the rest in Corn I determine not. Certain it is, that there was yearly shipped hence for *Rome*, in the time of that Emperour, Two hundred thousand Measures of Wheat, every Measure weighing Twenty hundred pound weight; which cometh to Seven Millions, and an hundred forty thousand of our *English* Bushels; sold by him, or distributed gratis amongst the Poor, as he saw occasion. So that there might be very well some abatement in Money, considering that the Corn amounted to so great a Sum. Nor were they much less, if ought at all, when the *Mamalucks* ruled in this Country. For *Campfon* *Gawrus*, at his coming to the Throne, gave no less than Ten Millions of *Ducats*, at one clap, amongst his Soldiers. But the *Turks* at this day, partly through their Tyrannical Government, and partly through the discontinuance of the usual Traffick through the *Red Sea*, receive no more than Three Millions of Crowns; one of which is hoarded in his own Coffers; the second is appropriated unto his Vicegerent *Bashaw*; for support of this Charge, the third is distributed among his Garrison Soldiers, and such of them as by Land guard his own Million to *Constantinople* by Sea he dares not venture it, for fear of the *Florentines*, who with a few Ships Lordeth it in the *Mediterranean*.

And so much for *Egypt*.

Of



O F

B A R B A R Y.

BARBARY, is bounded on the East, with *Cyrenica*, on the West, with the *Atlantic* Ocean; on the North, with the *Mediterranean*, the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and some part of the *Atlantic* also; on the South, with Mount *Atlas*, by which separated from *Libya* inferior, or the Desarts of *Libya*.

It containeth in it the whole *Diares* of *Africa* and part of the *Diares* of *Spain*: subject in former times to the Commonwealth of *Carthage*, and the great Kings of *Mauritania*, and *Namidia*. When conquered by the *Romans*, they gave to that part of it, which they won from the *Carthaginians*, the name of *Africa*; calling that Province by the name of the whole *Peninsula*, and afterwards extended it over all the rest of the Country, on the North of *Atlas*. Which name it held till the subjugation of it by the *Saracens*, by whom called *B A R B A R Y*: either from *Barbar*, signifying in their Language an uncertain murmur, such as the speech of the *Africans* seemed to them to be; or from the word *Bar*, signifying a *Desart*, which doubled, made up first *Barbar*, and after *Barbary*.

It is situate under the third and fourth *Climates*: so that the longest Summers day in the parts most South, amounted to thirteen hours three quarters, increased in the most Northern parts to fourteen hours and a quarter. In length extended from the *Atlantic* Ocean to the greater *Syria*; for the space of 1500 miles; in breadth from Mount *Atlas* to the *Mediterranean*, where narrowest, 100 miles; but towards the Straits, where the broadest, almost three hundred.

The Country, in such parts as lie nearest to the *Mediterranean*, is full of Hills covered with Woods, and stored with plenty of Wild-beasts; provided reasonably well of most sorts of Fruits, but unfit for Wheat, inasmuch that most of the Inhabitants live of *Barly-bread*. Betwixt which and Mount *Atlas* is a Champaign Country, watered with many pleasant Rivers issuing from that Mountain, and liberally furnished with Cherries, Figs, Pears, Plums, Apples of all kinds; abundance of Oyl, Honey, Sugar; some Mines of Gold, and that for purity and fineness no where to be bettered. Here are also besides, large Herds of Cattel, some Elephants, Lyons, Dragons, Leopards, and others of the like savage nature, and of Apes great multitudes; Horses good store, of excellent both strength and beauty. But taking it in the best parts, it fallest extremely short of that infinite fertility, which is ascribed to it by the Writers of elder times. For besides the miracle of five hundred Ears of Corn growing on the stalk, (whereof more anon) *Pliny* reporteth, that not far from the City of *Taape*, in the way to *Lepcis*, a man might see a great Date-tree overhadowing an Olive, under the Olive a Fig-tree, under that a Pomegranate, under that a Vine, and under all, Pease, Wheat, & Herbs, all growing & flourishing at one time. It is affirmed also by the same Author, that the Vine beareth twice a year, that some fruits or other are gathered in it at all times of the year; and that

piece of ground of four cubits square, was usually rented out; at so many *Denarii*; by which account, (as the learned *Budens* doth compute it) an Acre of that ground must be worth yearly, 12800 of the *Roman* *Sesterii*, which make 320 Crowns. An infinite and unparallel'd increase of the Fruits of the Earth; if the Author were not out in his valuation.

The people are of a dusky colour, but inclining to blackness: much of the same nature with the *Arabians*, by whose numerous Families formerly they were overspread, but the *Africans* of the two the better: active of body, well skilled in Horsemanship, but impatient of labour, covetous of honour, inconstant, crafty, and unfaithful: studious in matters of their Law, and in some of the *Liberal* Sciences, especially *Philosophy* and the *Mathematicks*, of which in many parts of the *Mahometan* Countreys they are admitted to be Readers. They are also said to be stately of gate, exceeding distrustful, in their hate implacable, and jealous of their Women beyond all compare. The Women of a comely body, and well featured, beautiful in blackness, of delicate soft skins, and in their habit and apparel beyond measure sumptuous: so drest, to make themselves more amiable in the eyes of their Husbands; for otherwise not permitted to stir abroad, and seldom to see any body but those of their own houses.

The Language spoken at the present in most of the *Mauritane* Towns, except those of *Fesse* and *Morocco*, is the *Arabic* Tongue. In those two Kingdoms, and most part of the Country Villages, the *Punic*, or old *African*, the ancient languages of the Countrey: the *Punic* spoken in all places where anciently the *Carthaginians* were of any power; the *African* (whatsoever it was) in the parts of *Mauritania*, not subject to them. Of the *Latine* there is no remainder, which though it was the language of the *Roman* Colonies, yet never could it spread so far as to extinguish or suppress the old natural Tongues: and in the Colonies themselves so much degenerated in a short time, so barbarously and imperfectly spoken; that a Sister of the Emperour *Severus*, who lived in *Lepcis*, a *Roman* Colony, coming to *Rome* to see her Brother, spoke it so incongruously, that the Emperour was ashamed to hear it. And though the Sermons of *St. Augustine*, an *African* Bishop, were preached in *Latin*, because preached in *Hippo* his *Episcopal* See, which was then a Colony of the *Romans*; yet he confesseth, that he was sometimes fain to use such words as were not *Latin*, to be the better understood of his Congregation.

The *Christian* Faith was first planted in that part hereof which was called *Africa Propria*, by *Evaristus*, one of the 70 Disciples; by *Dorotheus* in his *Synopsis*, affirmed to be the first Bishop of *Carthage*: in *Admainia*, by *S. Simon* the Apostle, surnamed *Zelotes*, *Metaphrastes* addeth, that *S. Simon Peter* preached here also, when by the Decree of *Claudius Caesar* he was forced from *Rome*, and

and

and at his going hence, left *Cresens* his Disciple to promote the work. But by whomsoever planted first, it found good increase, and was so propagated in short time over all this Country that in the year 250, or thereabouts, there were in it above 90 Bishops; for so many were assembled in the Synod of *Lubellum*: and in the year 398, when the faction of the *Donaus* was of greatest power, we find no fewer than 214 *Catholic* Bishops met together in the Council of *Carthage*. Which as it is an argument of the great increase of *Christianity* in those parts of *Africa*, so it shews also, that the Church was in ill condition; so overpowered by the violence of that mighty faction, who had at least 270 Bishops of their own Opinion; that the *Orthodox* party was necessitated to increase the number of Bishops for fear of being over-balanced by the contrary side, if ever the difference should come to be examined in a public Meeting. These Bishops ranked into six Classes, according to the number of the *African* Provinces: the Bishops of each Province subject to their own *Metropolitan*, who in this *Dioecesis* (contrary to the usage of all other Churches) had the name of *Primates*: but all of them subordinate to the *Primate* of *Carthage*, originally invested with *Patriarchal* Jurisdiction over all these parts. *Latius ipsa est nostra Provincia; habet enim Numidianam, & Mauritaniam duas sibi coherentes*, are *S. Cyprian's* words. Which shew, that *Leo Africanus* was a better Geographer, than an Historian or Divine. He would not else have told us in such positive terms, that those of *Barbary* remained in their old *Idolatry*, till 250 years before *Mahomet's* birth; at what time they received the Gospel, and not before. But the good man mistook the reviving of the *Orthodox* Faith in the time of *Justinian*, after it had been long suppressed by the *Vandals*, of the *Arian* faction (who at one time banished hence 300 *Catholic* Bishops) for the first planting of the Gospel, otherwise not to be excused. But after this *Reviewer*, it held not long, when suppressed by the *Saracens*, and so suppressed, that except it be in some few Towns possessed by the King of *Spain*, and the Crown of *Portugal*, there is no tract of *Christianity* to be discerned in all this Country, *Mahometanism* being elsewhere universally embraced amongst them.

Amongst the men of most note for Soldierly, which have been born in this Country, we may reckon 1. *Amilcar* the *Carthaginian*, and his three Sons: 2. *Amibal*, 3. *Asdrubal*, and 4. *Mago*, men hardly to be parallel'd in any Ages: 5. *Masinius*, King of the *Numidian*, one of their Contemporaries; and in the following times, 6. *Septimius Severus*, the Roman Emperor. Amongst those addicted to the Muses, those of most note, 1. *Terence*, 2. *Apuleius*. But for Divines, no Region in the world afforded men of more eminent note, not better deserving of the Church. 1. *Tertullian*, 2. *Cyprian*, 3. *Julius Africanus*, 4. *Arnobius*, 5. *Lactantius*, 6. *Viktorinus Afer*, 7. *Optatus Milevitanus*, 8. *Viktor Vitenensis*, 9. *Fulgentius*, 10. *Primasius*. And above all, the most learned and divine *S. Augustine*, a man of such admirable abilities, and indefatigable industry, so constant a defender of all *Orthodox* Doctrines against the *Heresies* of those times, that he deservedly got the name of *Malleus Hæreticorum*.

Principal Mountains of this Country besides Mount *Atlas*, (of which hereafter by it self) 1. *Phœrea*, 2. *Hypidiphus*, and 3. *Atlas minor* in *Mauritania Tingitana*; 4. *Cinnaba*, 5. *Garras*, 6. *Madelabudatus*, 7. those called *Garripis*, in *Cæsariensis*; 8. *Thambet*, 9. *Mansurarius*, 10. *Ufaleus*, and 11. *Zachabatus*, in *Africa Propria*. Of which, and others, we may speak more, if occasion be, in our description of the Provinces, in which they are. And for the Rivers of most note, though none

of any long course in so narrow a Country, we have in *Tingitana*, 1. *Sala*, falling into the *Atlantic*, out of *Atlas minor*; 2. another of the same name, and the same exit also, but far more to the North, towards the Strait of *Gibraltar*; 3. *Melchab*, mollified by *Satell* the Historian into *Melchab*, and by him placed betwixt the *Numidians* and the *Moors*; 4. *Melva*, the boundary at this day betwixt the Kingdoms of *Efse* and *Algiers*; 5. *Phibub*, of more fame than any, of which more anon: in *Cæsariensis*, 6. *Nafubab*, 7. *Sifris*, and *Sorbetus* in *Africa Propria*, or the Kingdom of *Timis*; 8. *Rubricatus*, which issuing out of Mount *Thambet*, falleth into the *Mediterranean* near *Hippo Regius*, 9. *Triton*, which issuing out of the Hill called *O-Jaletus*, and making the great Fenn called *Trionia Palus*, endeth its course also in the *Mediterranean*; and finally, 10. *Bagradas*, the greatest in all this tract, which rising out of Mount *Atlas*, first runneth towards the East, and then receiving from the Hill called *Mansurarius* the addition of another Stream, palleth directly Northward to the City of *Utica*, and there ends his course.

Having thus laid together the chief Metes and Landmarks, I should now proceed to the description of the several Provinces hereof, as in other places. But because each part almost hath had for these later times its particular History, and that it is divided at the present into several Governments, and under the command of several Princes: I will here lay down so much of the Story of it as concerns the whole, before such division; and afterwards pursue the History and Geography of the several parts. And for the whole we are to know, that this Country was first peopled by *Phut* the third Son of *Cham*: who leaving his Brother *Misraim* well settled in the Land of *Egypt*; passed towards the West; and leaving *Leban* his Nephew betwixt him and *Misraim* possessed himself of all the rest from the greater *Syria* to the Ocean. Remainers of whose name we find in the River *Phut*, (by *Ptolomy* called *Phibub*), with but little difference, save that it favoureth more of the *African* roughness) near which *Josephus* findeth a Region called the Country of *Phut*, a Nation called the *Phutians*: seconded herein by *S. Hieron*, who speaking of this *Regio Phutensis* in *Mauritania*, where the River *Phibub* is placed (by *Ptolomy*) voucheth in general terms the testimony of old Writers, both *Greek* and *Latine*. So that of this there is no question to be made. Such Nations as defended this Plantation, shall be hereafter spoke of in their several Provinces. Governed at first by the Chiefs of their several Families; but in the end, reduced under the Command of the Kings of *Mauritania* and *Numidia*, and the State of *Carthage*. The two first, Natives of this Country, of the Race of *Phut*: the last descended also of the Seed of *Cham*, their common Parent, by the line of *Canaan*: who on the Conquest of their Country by the Children of *Israël*, forced to seek new Dwellings, and having store of Ships to transplant themselves and their Families, settled in the maritime parts of *Mauritania*, and *Africa*, properly so called. For, that the people of those parts, though lost into other Names and Families, were anciently of a *Canaanitish* or *Phœnician* Race, may be made apparent, 1. By the nearness of their Language, the *Punic* or *Phœnician*, and old *Hebrew* Tongue, differing only in the Dialect and Pronunciation. Secondly by the name *Puni*, or *Phani*, little differing from that of the *Phœnicians*. 3^d, By this testimony of *S. Augustine*, who telleth us in the Comment on *St. Paul's* Epistle to the *Romans*, begun, but not finished by him; *Interrogati Russici nostri quid finem respondent, Punicum Channani*; that is to say, That when any

of the Inhabitants of this Country (he himself was one) were asked what they were, they answered, *Canaanites*. 4th, We find in *Hærodotus*, how *Cambyses* had totally conquered *Egypt*, intending a War against the *Carthaginians*, who were then a State (it seemeth) of some power: But the *Phœnicians*, being the only Sea-faring men *Cambyses* then had, absolutely denied to be employed in that Service; they being sprung from the same Tree that the *Carthaginians* were. 5th, We read in *Procopius*, (out of which it is cited by *Evagrius Scholasticus*) how on two Marble-Pillars, situate high upon *Tingis*, or *Tanger*, there was in the *Phœnician* Language and Character engraved *Nos fugimus a facie Jolhuah pradamus, filii Nave*; that is to say, We flee from the face of that Robber *Jolhuah* the Son of *Nun*. The settling of this people there, a great incitement questionless unto *Dido* to come thither also: who feared as much danger from her Brother *Pygmalion* King of *Tyre*, whose hands had been imbrued in the blood of her Husband, as the others did from the Sword of *Jolhuah*. Gathering together all her Treasures, which were every great, accompanied with her Brother *Bæca*, and her Sister *Anna*, the set sail for *Africk*; and landing in the Bay, where after stood the City of *Carthage*, she obtained leave to build a Fort of no greater bigness than the could compass round with an Oxen hide. This the beginning of that City; hence the name of *Byrsa*, which at World 3079, which was about 144 years after the building of *Solomon's* Temple, 143 years before the building of *Rome*, and about 290 years from the destruction of *Troy*. By which account (Note this only by the way) it is find her called) *Dido*, or *Eliza* (for by both these names we it were in picture, or imagination; and therefore as impossible she should either fall in love with him, or be got with Child by him; or finally kill her self on her being forsaken. All which being delivered by *Virgil* in his excellent Poem, did for long time obtain a general belief with most sorts of men. Hereunto consenteth *Aulus*, who honouring the Statue of his abused Princess with an Epigram of 18 Verses, among others, gives us these four.

*Invida cur in me stimulas? Mula Maronem,
Fingeret ut nostræ damna pudicitie?
Vas magis Historicis (Lectores) credite de me;
Quam qui furta domus, concubitusque canum.*

Why didst thou stir up *Virgil*, envious *Mase*,
Falsely my name and honour to abuse?
Of me let *Histories* be heard, not those,
Who to the World *Jove's* thefts and lusts expose.

Credible it is, *Æneas* being driven on the Coast of *Africk*, was by some Prince there courteously entertained, as a man whose fame had been his *Harbinger*: but why the story should be fastned on *Dido*, I see not. Perhaps the unfortunate death of this Queen, who laid violent hands on her self, gave occasion to the Poet to feign, that it was for the love of *Æneas*; Whereas, it was indeed to avoid the lust and fury of *Larbas*, a potent King of the *Gæti*, a powerful Nation neighbouring those parts of *Africa* in which *Carthage* stood, who violently desired to have his pleasure on her.

But to proceed, This City thus founded in a place commodious for Trade and Merchandise, in short time grew exceeding wealthy. And having wealth enough to hire *Mercenary* Soldiers (of which the needy *Mauritanians*, and *Numidians*, did afford good store) they conquered all the Sea Coasts from *Cyrene* to the Straights of

Hercules (now called the Straights of *Gibraltar*) and so much also towards the South as was worth the conquering; within which space possessed of 500 Cities. Grown to such height, that all the *African* Kings and Princes, and amongst them the Kings of *Numidia* and *Mauritania* were at their devotion: They began to cast their eyes on *Sicily*, a wealthy Island, lying near unto their Coasts, which questionless they had possessed, if the *Romans*, envious of their greatness, and fearing their Neighbourhood, and under that pretence got some footing in it. The end the driving the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicily*; their abandoning all the Islands betwixt them and *Italy*, and the payment of 3200 *Talents*, amounting to about two Millions of Crowns. And such end had the first *Punic* War, managed for the most part in *Sicily*. During which time, and the first War there managed by the *Carthaginians*, *Africk* it self was twice invaded; first by *Agathicles* Tyrant of *Syracuse*, (or so commonly called) and afterwards by *Regulus* a Roman General, but with no other great success than the Spoil of the Country. The second followed not long after, but the Scene was altered; begun in *Spain*, prosecuted in *Italy*, and ended in *Africk*. Begun by *Annibal* the Son of *Amilcar* descended from *Bæca* the Brother of *Dido* or *Eliza*: who having conquered a great part of *Spain*, and thereby both increased his reputation and experience, conducted his victorious Army through *Gaul*, and over the *Alpes*, into *Italy* it self; defeated the Armies of the *Romans*, and slew some of their Consuls. So prosperous in the Battle of *Cunæ*, where the whole strength of *Rome* was broken, that had he followed his good fortune, and made use of his Victory, he might within four or five daies after have dined in the *Capitol*. Having for 18 years together held them work in *Italy*, he was called home to defend *Africk* from the Forces of *Scipio*; who having driven the *Carthaginians* out of *Spain*, had very prudently translated the War to *Carthage*. The issue was, that on the loss of the battle of *Nadagara*, the *Carthaginians* were necessitated to submit themselves to the will of the Conqueror; that is to say, to deliver up all their Elephants, together with all their Ships and Gallies excepting ten; to make no War without leave of the *Romans*, to pay for the Charges of the War 10000 *Talents*; and such other extremities. So ended the second *Punic* War, A. U. C. 602. And the third followed not long after, not any way occasioned by those of *Carthage*, but out of the inveterate hatred of the People of *Rome*, who would not think themselves safe whilst that City stood: and therefore first another *Scipio* to lay siege unto it. By whom after a long and stout resistance, it was at last taken and destroyed. The Treasure which was found in it, notwithstanding their former losses, and the low estate it was reduced to, besides what was consumed by fire, and reformed by the Soldiers, amounting to 470000 pound weight of silver, which cometh to a Million, four hundred and ten thousand pounds of our English Money.

Such end had *Carthage*, and therewith all the rest of the States of *Africa*, who though in hatred to the *Carthaginians* they had armed against her, and aided the *Romans* in these Wars; yet they soon found their own Fortunes buried in the self-same Grave. Subverted one after another, as occasion was, they became all subject unto *Rome*; their Kingdoms and Estates turned to Roman Provinces. Of these were reckoned seven in all, that is to say, 1. *Africa Propria*, called also *Leptiniana*, and *Proconfularis*; 2. *Byzacena*, 3. *Tripolitana*, 4. *Numidia*, 5. *Mauritania Cæsariensis*, 6. *Sittensis*, 7. *Tingitana*. Of which the last (I know not why) was laid to the *Dioecesis*

of Spain, called therefore *Hispania Transfretana*, Spain on the other side of the Sea, by some elder Writers: the other fix made up the *Dioecesis Africæ*, subordinate to the *Præfectus Prætorio* for Italy, who had here his *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant. In this condition it continued, till subdued by the *Vandals*, a German Nation, inhabiting beyond the Elb, on the Coast of the Baltic, where now lie the Dukedoms of *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania*. Their memory still retained therein the stile of those Princes, who call themselves *Duces Vandalorum*, and in the Confederacy of the *Hanse-towns*, called by some *Latine* Writers, *Civitates Vandaliæ*. A Nation of great power, and numbers, (the *Burgundians* being only a part of these) one of the five into which *Pliny* doth divide the *Germans*: In the 11th. year of the Empire of *Arcadius* and *Honorius*, they were invited into *Gaul*, by the trea-

cherous practices of *Stilico*, Lieutenant of the Western Empire; and after an abode of three years, passed into Spain, together with the *Suevi*, and *Alani*, their Associates. But after 18 years, the *Goths* made that place too hot for them also. So that they could not but willingly accept the offer of *bonifacius*, the Emperor's Vice-gerent in *Africa*: who flattered to see his Office bestowed on *Cassius*, an unworthy man, and his enemy, betrayed the Country to these *Vandals*, in the last year of the life and reign of *Gundericus*, an *Arian* in Religion, as were the rest of the Nation, to which induced by their Neighbourhood and acquaintance with the *Goths*: Which Hereafter as they brought with them into *Africa*, driving thence all the *Orthodox Christians*, so they continued in it till their extirpation.

The Vandal Kings of AFRICA.

- A. C.
412 1. *Gundericus*, who first invaded *Gaul*, Spain, and *Africa*, 16.
428 2. *Genfericus*, who at the request of *Eudoxia*, the Widow of *Valentinian*, invaded Italy, and sacked the City of *Rome*, the Spoil whereof for fourteen days he gave to his Soldiers: but at the request of *Eudoxia*, whom he afterwards married, he did not burn it. This *Eudoxia* was Wife to the Western Emperor *Valentinian*; Who having a mind to a Lady of *Rome*, the Wife of one *Maximus*, he cunningly slipped the Ring of *Maximus* off his finger, and by that token sent for the Lady to the Court, and when he was come, ravished her. To revenge this disgrace, *Maximus* flew *Valentinian*, made himself Emperor, and forced *Eudoxia* to be his Wife. But the flaming a Match so unequal to her high Birth, and having some inclining of her Husbands death sent for *Genfericus* into Italy. This *Genfericus* conquered *Carthage*, and *Hippo*, and reigned 48 years.
476 3. *Honorius* Son of *Genfericus*. 7.
484 4. *Gundebundus*, Son to *Genzo*, the Brother of *Honorius*. 15.
499 5. *Trasimundus*, Brother to *Gundebundus*. 24.
523 6. *Hildericus*, the Son of *Honorius*, deposed by
530 7. *Gilimer*, the Son of *Genzo*, one of the Descendants of *Genfericus*; overcome by *Belisarius* a worthy and politic Leader, whom the Emperor *Iustinian* employed in that Service.

And thus ended the Kingdom of the *Vandals* (having continued in Spain and *Africa* 146 years) by the valour of *Belisarius*. Who after this good Service was employed by *Iustinian* against the *Goths*, then reigning in Italy; against whom he proceeded very fortunately: but being as I know not what envy, called to *Constantinople*, his eyes were put out, and he was forced to beg his Bread at the Gate of the Temple of *St. Sophia*. A bad reward for so good a Servant. But to go on, *Iustinian* having regained *Africa*, to honour his new Conquest, exempted it from the command of the *Prætorio-Præfectus* of Italy, to which formerly subject; and increasing the number of the *African* Provinces by the addition of the Isle of *Sardinia*, made it a *Præfecture* of its self: appointing his *Præfectus*

Prætorio Africa to reside in *Carthage*, as the chief City of his Charge; which he then also raised to a *Consular* Province, having in former times been *Proconsular* only. But long it held not in this state: For in the year 647, the *Romans* were finally expelled by *Hueba* a famous Leader: whom *Osien*, the third *Caliph* of the *Saracens*, had designed to this Service. *Africa*, from that time forwards, reckoned amongst the Provinces of the *Saracenic* or *Mohometan* Empire. But in the end, the Authority of the *Caliphs* growing less and less, and every one of their *Sultans* or *Provincial* Officers, getting what he could for himself: this Country was distracted in many Kingdoms and Principalities, but all at last reduced to four of most consideration: that is to say, the Kingdom of 1. *Tunis*, 2. *Tremefen* or *Algiers*, 3. *Teffe*, and 4. *Morocco*. To the Geography and History whereof we do now proceed; adding hereto in the sixth place, the Isles of *Barbary*.

1. TUNIS.

THE Kingdom of *TUNIS* (in *Latine* called *Regnum Tunitanum*) hath on the East, *Cyrene*; on the West, the Kingdom of *Algiers*, or *Tremefen*; on the North the *Mediterranean*; on the South, Mount *Atlas*. So called from *Tunis*, the chief City of it; extended all along the Coast of the *Mediterranean* for the space of 800 miles or thereabout, but the breadth not answerable.

The Country towards the East, barren and destitute of water; but in the Western parts, sufficiently plentiful of Corn and other Fruits, and generally well set with Trees. The People more patient of labour than the rest of *Barbary*, and for that cause perhaps more healthy: but questionable of so good constitution, that they live commonly to great age, unless a violent death prevent them; and are not much afraid of Sickness, or much troubled with it.

It contains in it the two whole Provinces of *Africa Propria* (or *Africa Minor*, as some call it) and the *Numidia* of the *Romans*; called since *Numidia Antiqua*, to difference it from the present *Numidia*, lying on the other side of Mount *Atlas*. The principal Mountains of which Countries, besides those spoken of already, were, 1. *Adrida*, 2. *Buzara*, 3. *Cinua*, 4. *Dia*, or the Hills of *Jupiter*, 5. *Gillini*, by some named *Gigion*, and 6. those called *Thizibi*. Rivers of most esteem with them, though not much with others, besides those mentioned before

before. 1. *Ampfage*, now called *Collo*, and by some *Sat Gemar*, which divideth this Kingdom from that of *Tremefen*; 2. *Cattada*; 3. *Gynibur*, issuing from the Hills called *Zuchabarus*, and falling into the Sea; not far from *Triopolis*. Besides which, there were some great Lakes; the chief whereof, 1. *Hippomiter*, near Mount *Cinua*; 2. The Lake of *Palla*, or that called *Palus Tritoniana*, where *Minerva* was said to have showed her self the Inventress of Spinning and of Oyl, and for that much worshipped by this people; 3. *Sylura*, another great Lake; but not so famous as the former, because not honoured by a Goddess.

The whole divided by the *Romans* into these four parts, viz. 1. *Africa* especially so called, lying on the Sea, from the River *Ampfage* to the lesser *Syrtis*; 2. *Tripolitana*, from the lesser *Syrtis* to the greater; 3. *Numidia*, lying on the West of *Zengiana*, or *Africa Propria*: And 4. *Byzacena*, so called from *Byzacium*, or *Byzacina*, a chief City of it; the Territory whereof so extremely fruitful, that 400 Ears of Corn were sent to *Rome* in the time of *Augustus*, and 300 in the time of *Domitianus Nero*, growing on one stalk. But this division being long since worn out of memory, it is divided at the present into the Provinces of 1. *Ezzab*, 2. *Tripolis*, 3. *Tunis*, 4. *Constantina*, 5. *Bugia*.

1. *EZZAB*, is that part of this Kingdom which lieth next to *Cyrene*: A small Region, and not very fruitful; yet the Inhabitants hereof are conceived to be rich (the richer, in regard they are free from *Tributes*): their wealth not rising from the Commodities of their own Country, which affordeth them little else besides *Dates* and *Olives*, but from such Merchandise which they buy of the *Venetians*, and sell to the *Numidians*. The richest, those of *Mefrata*, (a little Province of this Tract) which lieth near the Sea. Towns it hath some, but none of note: the chief of which, 1. *Mefrata*, 2. *Silena*, both upon the Sea; of which the first gives name unto that little Province spoken of before. Of more note in former times was *Phileni Villa*, situate on the greater *Syrtis*, near the Promontory then called *Hippi*, but now *Cabo de Surta*; memorable for the adjoining *Altars* called *Phileni Ave*, erected by the *Carthaginians* upon this occasion. Some Controversies being grown betwixt those of *Carthage* and *Cyrene*, about their Bounds; it was agreed, that two men at a set hour should be sent out of each City towards the other; and where they met, there to be fixed the *Meer-Pole* of their several Territories. The *Phileni*, two Brothers nominated for *Carthage*, were so quick of foot, that they had gotten a good way into the Country of the *Cyrenenses* before they were met; wherewith the *Cyrenians* much enraged, put them to this choice, either to go so much back again, or to die in the place. This last accepted by the *Phileni*, who preferred the common good of their Country before their own, for preservation of whose name and honour to succeeding Ages, the grateful *Carthaginians* did erect these *Altars*.

2. West of the Province of *Ezzab*, lieth that of *TRIPOLIS*, which together with *Ezzab*, made that Province which the *Romans* called *Tripolitana*. Not much more fruitful than the other, except in *Barley*, but more commodiously seated in regard of the Sea, which is here more safe for Navigation; the former lying wholly on the greater *Syrtis*. Chief Towns herof, 1. *Lepcis Magna*, so called, to distinguish it from another, but of less note, and therefore called *Lepcis Parva*, situate in the (now) Province of *Tunis*. A Town of so great wealth and Trade, that it was worth a *Talent* daily to the *Car-*

thaginians. 2. *Euphranta*, called also *Pyrgos Euphranta*, from some strong Tower in it on the Western bank of the greater *Syrtis*. 3. *Conferna*, on the Eastern side of the River *Cyniphus*. 4. *Cabis*, the utmost City of this Province Westward; the same which *Ptolemy* calls *Tacepa*, situate at the fall of the River *Triton* into the lesser *Syrtis*. 5. *Sabrabas* and 6. *Hevas*, not else observable, but that together with *Lepcis Magna* they made up that one City, which the *Romans* called from thence *Tripolis*. 7. *Tripolis*, founded by the *Romans*, and by them peopled with *Colonies* from those three Cities before mentioned. A City of great Name and Riches, till destroyed by the *Saracens*. By whom rebuilt, adorned with many fair Temples, Colledges, and Hospitals; and flourishing in much Wealth and Lustre, it became a Kingdom of its self, but subject to the King of *Tunis* till taken by the *Genese* with a Fleet of 20 Sail, and by them fold to the King of *Fesse*. Recovered not long after by the King of *Tunis*, it came once more to have a King of its own; till by the valour of *Peter of Navarre*, it was conquered for *Ferdinand the Catholic*, the first Monarch of Spain: whose Nephew *Charles the 5th.* conferred it on the Knights of *St. John of Jerusalem*, thence expelled from *Rhodes*: whom the *Turks* under *Sinan Bassa* General of *Selimus* the Second, dispossessed by force, *An. 1551*. Since that the ordinary Rebellion of the *Turkish Beglerbegs*, for these *African* Provinces; and made an usual retreat for *Pyrati*, who infect these Seas, and do much mischief to the Coasts of *Sicily*, *Italy*, and others of the *Christian* Countries.

3. The Province of *TUNIS* lying Westward to that of *Tripolis*, taketh up so much of this Kingdom, as anciently contained the Province of *Byzacena*; and so much of the *Roman Africa*, as lieth on the East of the River called *Guadilbarbar*, the *Hippomites Locus* of the ancient Writers. The Country anciently so fruitful, that it yielded usually an increase of an hundred and fifty fold. For proof of which, besides the testimony of approved Authors, the wonderful, if not prodigious Ears of Corn, which before we heard of, may serve sufficiently. Now indigent, and so unprovided of all Grain for the use of their Families, that they are fain to furnish themselves of other places: the people not daring to manure or sow their Land, for fear of the *Arabians*, who ever and anon fall into these parts, and spoil what they meet with.

Places of most note in it, in the elder times 1. *Admetum*, or *Adramythus*, now called *Machometta*, once a *Roman* Colony, and the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Byzacena*; by consequence, in the times of *Christianity*, an Archbishop's See: walled and repaired by the Emperor *Iustinian*, and by his Command called *Iustiniana*. 2. *Zama*, the incamping place of *Annibal*, before his battel with *Scipio*. 3. *Nadagara*, memorable for the great battel betwixt the two renowned Generals of *Rome* and *Carthage*; not parallel'd since their own times, not in those before them. In which the great Controversie between those Cities being to be tried, the fortune of the day fell unto the *Romans*: For though *Annibal* shewed his singular judgement in ordering his Soldiers, as *Scipio* could not but acknowledge; yet being far the weaker in Horse, and by an Order of the Senate of *Carthage*, constrained to fight in a place of disadvantage, he could do no marvels: The *Romans*, with the loss of no more than 1500 of their own men, killing 20000 of the *Carthaginians* in the Fight and Chase. 4. *Silena*, the first place took by *Scipio*, after the landing of his Army. 5. *Urica*, a *Tyrian* Colony, beautified with an Haven capable of the greatest Ships; much spoken of in the Wars of *Carthage*.
H h h h h 2

and memorable for the death of *Cato* (hence surnamed *Utricus*) who here flew himself, for fear of falling into the hands of *Cæsar*. It is now called *Biserta*. 6. *Byzacium*, seated in a liberal and fruitful soil, as was shown before; whence the Province had the name of *Byzacena*. 7. *Ruspium*, made by *Cæsar* the feat of his War in *Africa*, against the Sons and Faction of *Pompey*; as memorable in the times succeeding, for being the Episcopal See of *St. Fulgentius*. 8. *Thyffrus*, remarkable for the Tragedy of *Gordianus*: Of which the Father in this City was saluted Emperor by the Souldiers, in hatred to *Maximian* then their Emperour, whose *Procurator* they had slain in a tumult: but his party being discomfited by *Capellianus*, whom *Maximian* sent against him, and his Son killed in the defeat; but upon the hearing of the News, he here hanged himself. 9. *Hippagreta*, on a great Lake betwixt *Carthage* and *Utica*; one of the Towns which held it out longest for the Mercenaries, in their desperate Rebellion against the *Carthaginians*; by which the Estate of that great City was in danger of ruine, at the end of the first *Punic* War. 10. *Carthage*, once the Lady and Mistress of *Africa*, situate in the bottom of a safe and capacious Bay, the entrances whereof were very strongly fortified both by Art and Nature, environed with the Sea, except upon one side only, where joined unto the Land by a narrow *Isthmus* about two miles and an half in breadth, in compass 24 miles but measuring by the outward Wall, it was 45, for without the Wall of the City it self there were three Walls more, betwixt each of which there were three or four Streets, with Vaults underground of 50 foot deep, wherein they had place for 300 Elephants and all their Fodder, with Stables over them for 4000 Horses, and all their Provender, and Lodging in those out-forts for the Riders of the said Horse, and for 20000 Foot besides, which never came within the City to annoy or pester it. On the South-side stood the Castle called *Byssa*, which took up two miles and an half in compass: First built by *Dido*, on that ground which she obtained of the *Libyans*, when she got leave to buy only so much Land of them, as she could compass round about with an Oxes Hide. In that the sumptuous Temple of their ancient Deities, *Juno*, *Apollo*, *Aesculapius*, *Belus*. On the West side a standing Pool made of the Sea-water, let into it by so narrow a passage, that there was but 70 foot open for the Sea to enter: On which they had a stately *Arsenal*, with their Ships and Gallies riding by it. Of the Foundation and Affairs of this mighty City we have spoke already. The Government of it first by Kings, those *absolute* enough at first, afterwards limited by the *Senates*; and finally made merely titular by the power of the people: which unproportionable mixture is much condemned by *Aristotle*, in the 2. of his *Politics*. Their Territories, before the second *Punic* War, when they were at the greatest, extended on the Sea-coasts of the *Mediterranean*, from the Greater *Syria* to the *Straghts*, and unto the River *Iberus*, for the space of 2000 miles in length: their *Revenues* answerable, and readily brought in, by reason of their infinite Trading. Which made the *Roman* People think themselves unsafe, whilst this City stood. Resolved on the destruction of it, they sent against it *L. Marius*, and *M. Manlius*, their two *Consuls*, with a puissant Army: to whom the *Carthaginians* willingly delivered up their Arms and Shipping, contracting only for the preservation of the City it self, which was faithfully promised. But when they had withal given up the Sons of their Principal men to be sent to *Rome* for Pledges of their future Loyalty; they were told that a City consisted not in Walls, but in Laws and Government. Thence, with the Corporation, should remain as formerly; the Town to be removed ten miles further off, where there was

no Sea to thrive and grow rich upon. Enraged herewith, it was resolved to abide the utmost: but they wanted necessities for resistance. That want supplied for want of iron to make Arms with Gold and Silver; the Houfics pulled down to furnish them with Timber to build a Navy; the noble Ladies cutting off the Hair of their Heads, to make Ropes and Cordage, 25000 Women lifted to defend the Walls. But the fatal moment being come, a second *Scipio* is sent thither to dispatch the Work; by whom at last the Town was taken; and for 17 days together consumed with fire: The Queen and multitudes of the People burning themselves in the Temple of *Aesculapius*, because they would not fall into the hands of the *Romans*, re-edified by *Julius Cæsar*, and made a Colony, it recovered some part of her former lustre; but so, that her chief glory was rather to be fought for in her ancient, than her present Fortunes. *Populi Romani Colonia, olim Imperii ejus pertinax amula, & priorem excidiorum, quam opo prelesium clarior, was her Character in the times of Pompeianus Mela*. But in the last estate, accounted for the Metropolis of the *Dioecesis of Africa*, the Residence of the *Victarius* or Lieutenant-General, and the See of the chief *Primate of the African Churches*; who had 164 Bishops under him in that one Province wherein *Carthage* stood. Destroyed in the succeeding time by the *Vandals*, and after that by the *Saracens*; it revived again, and had the reputation of a City of no mean importance, till the year 1270, at what time being forced by the *French*, under *Lewis* the 9th. and thereupon deserted by its old inhabitants, it began to languish, and was at last reduced to nothing but a few scattered Houfics, not above five and twenty Shops, one Temple; all the rest a ruin. So truly said the ancient Poet:

Sic patet exemplis Oppida posse mori:

*Thus by Examples do we see,
That Towns may die as well as we.*

Of chief note at the present, 1. *Tunsh*, supposed to be the *Themisa*, or *Thumisa* of *Ptolemy*; of small account till the last destruction of *Carthage*, by whose fall it rose. Situate not far from the Ruines of that famous City, in compass above five miles; and in that compass laid to contain 10000 households. Of great Traffick, and well frequented by the Merchants of foreign Nations; chiefly *Italy Wars*, for the Sieges and Succesles of two of our *English Princes*; that namely, of *King Edward* the First, in his Fathers time; and that of *Henry* the Fourth, then Earl of *Darby*; by both which (though the last served only under the Command of the *French*) the City was compelled to a Composition; *Lewis* the 9th. commonly called *St. Lewis*, dying at the first Siege of it. 2. *Galesra*, a strong Fort, built for defence of the Haven of *Tunis*, in a demy-Island, divided from the main Land by two narrow passages, but so that it commands them both. Taken, but not without extreme difficulty, by *Charles* the 5th. *An*. 1535, together with the *Turkish* Navy riding in the Lake fall by it; but again recovered by the *Turks* about 40 years after, *An*. 1574. 3. *Cairoan*, built by *Hachus* who first conquered *Africa* for the *Saracens*, in a sandy Desert, about 100 miles from *Tunis*, and 36 from any of the Sea, to secure himself from any invasion, which the commodiousness of the Sea might bring upon him. Adorned by the first Founder of it, with an admirable Temple raised on Pillars of Marble; who placed also in it a College of Priests, and made it the chief Residence of his Posterity for the space of 170 years, who reigned here under the great *Caliphs* as the *Sultans* of *Africa*. Destroyed

froyed by the *Arabians*, in the 424 year of their *Hegira*, but regained from them by the King of *Morocco*, and still of such esteem amongst these *Mohometans*, that their chief men are brought hither to be buried from all parts of the Country, hoping by the Prayers of those Priests to find a shorter way to Heaven, than in other places.

4. More Westward yet lies the Province named *CONSTANTINA*, so called from *Constantine* the chief City of it. Extended from the Lake *Hippomies*, now named *Gualdharbar*, to *Constantine* a Mountain bordering on *Bugia*, which I conceive to be the fame with *Mont Audus* in *Polomy*. The soil hereof said to be very rich and fruitful both for Corn and Cattel, yielding abundance of Fruits, and great store of Butter. *Rubricatus*, by *Orisius* called *Ordalio*, now *Ludog*, the chief River of it.

Principal Cities of this Province, 1. *Tabraca*, on the East; and 2. *Hippo Regius*, on the Western bank of *Rubricatus*: both *Roman* Colonies, but this last most famous, in being the Episcopal See of renowned *St. Augustine*. 3. *Bona*, the birth-place of that Father, built by the *Romans* about a hundred miles from the Sea; but situate in a large Plain, containing 40 miles in length, 25 in breadth: so Rich and Fertile, that the Town flourisheth to this day; adorned with a sumptuous Mosque, and never without the Company of Merchants coming from *Genoa*, *Tunis* and the Isle of *Zerby*, for their Fruits and Butter. 4. *Thuburnica*, another Colony of the *Romans*. 5. *Sicca Veneria*, another Town of the same nature; by *Solimus* called *Veneria* only, and by *Pliny*, *Sicca*. 6. *Cilena*, another of the *Roman* Colonies, by the *Moors* now called *Cucina*, but *Constantina* by the *Latines*, and most Nations call, now the chief City of this Province, situate near a Mountain of the same name, near the edge of *Bugia*. An ancient City, but containing still 8000 Families, many sumptuous Buildings; amongst which a large Temple, two Colleges, and three or four Monasteries: frequently visited by the Merchants, every Trade having here its peculiar Street; their chief Commodities Wool, Cloath, Silks, Oyl, and some sorts of Fruits, which they exchange for *Dates*, or *Slaves*, who are here good Merchandise. The City for the most part fenced about with high craggy Rocks; and where those want, with strong walls, of a great height, and most exquisite workmanship, declaring the antiquity of it. A further Argument whereof may be a fair *Triumphal Arch* not far from the City, and some Hot Baths, after the manner of the *Romans*.

5. Most Westward lieth the Province of *BUGIA*, extended from Mount *Constantine* to the River *Amphyl*, now called *Chello*, or *Sef-Gemar*: which with so much of *Constantina*, as lieth on the West side of *Rubricatus*, made up that province which the *Romans* called by the name of *Namidia*. The length hereof 150 miles on the *Mediterranean*, the breadth not above half so much. Narrower than *Mauritania*, as is said by *Pliny*; *Sed ditior & magis culta*, but the richer of the two, and the better peopled. The Country of a fat soil, plentiful both in Fruits and Corn, but most fit for Pasturage, to which the people were so addicted, that many of them cared not

for building Houfics, (instead whereof they used the Hold of a ship with the Keel turned upwards) but removed from one place to another, as their Pastures failed them. From thence called *Nomades* by the *Grecians*, *ἀνὸς τὰ νομά*, signifying to feed or graze. The people of good meat, swift of Foot, and well skilled in Horsemanship: but better in the Onset, & to give a Charge, than in standing to it; such as the wild *Arabians* are now said to be.

Chief Towns hereof (besides *Thuburnica*, *Cilena*, *Bona Hippo*, spoken of before, belonging to *Namidia* though not to *Bugia*) 1. *Bugia*, built by the *Romans* on the side of a lofty Mountain looking into the Sea; by some conceived to have been the *Thubuncho* of *Ptolemy*, now the chief City of this Province, adorned with many sumptuous Mosques, some Monasteries and Colleges for Students in the Law of *Mohamet*, and many fair Hospitals for relief of the Poor, fenced also with a strong Castle. Secured by the strength whereof, and growing rich by the fruitfulness of the situation, the Citizens began to grow proud and wanton, working much mischief to the *Spaniards* by their Gallies; which they had at Sea; till taught more modestly by *Peter of Navary* a *Spanish* Captain, *An*. 1508, by whom the Town was taken, and the people plundered. 2. *Chello*, upon the Sea-side, the *Golophis Magna* (as I take it) of *Ptolemy*, reported for a wealthy City. 3. *Nicasus*, seated towards Mount *Atlas* in a pleasant and delightful Country: which though interlarded with many Hills, yet being those Hills are clothed with Woods, yield them good store of Goats and Horses, and feed the Vallies with fresh Springs, which do issue from them; they rather add than detract any thing from the pleasures of it. 4. *Madawra*, by some called *Madurum*, the birth-place of *Apuleius*. 5. *Tumudromis* another of the *Roman* Colonies. 6. *Cirta*, or *Cirta Julia*, the Metropolis of *Namidia*, when a *Roman* Province, and formerly the Seat-Royal of *Syphax* King of the *Masseyis*, within whose Country it was reckoned in former times, though afterwards laid unto this Province. Situate near the mouth of the River *Amphyl*, and memorable for the Tragedy of *Sophonisba*, the Daughter of *Astribat* of *Carthage*, a Lady of most exquisite beauty, and yet carried more Charms in her Tongue than in her Eyes. Employed first unto *Masiniissa* King of the *Namidiens*, but after, upon the Reason of State, married unto *Syphax*; who being took Prisoner by his Rival, and brought to *Cirta*, the Lady upon hopes of liberty and honour both, bestowed her self on her first Lover: but *Scipio* fearing lest that marriage might withdraw *Masiniissa* from the *Roman* party, caused the Lady to be seized on; which *Masiniissa* not being otherwise able to prevent or remedy, sent her a Cup of Poyson, which the drank, and died.

Of these *Namidiens* there is much mention in the Stories of *Rome* and *Carthage* employed by this last City in all their Wars, both in *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Sicily*. Siding at last with *Scipio* against that State, they did good Service to the *Romans* in the weakening and destruction of that City, whose fall they did not long survive: first conquered in the War of *Jugurtha*; after the death of *Juba*, made a *Roman* Province. Their Kings, as far as I can trace the succession of them, follow in this Order.

The Kings of the NUMIDIANS.

1. *Gala*, the Father of *Mafniffa*.
2. *Deflees*, the Brother of *Gala*, according to the Law of the Country, which gave the Crown unto the Brother, not the Son of the former King, (like the Law of *Taniffry* in *Ireland*) succeeded *Gala*.
3. *N. N. Son of Deflees*, in the absence of *Mafniffa*, then serving under the *Carthaginians* in the Wars of *Spain*, possessed himself of the Throne: slain not long after by a Rebel.
4. *Mafniffa*, Son of *Gala*, recovered the Kingdom of his Father; but again ousted by *Syphax* and the *Carthaginians*, betwixt whom and *Mafniffa*, touching *Sophonibus*, there was deadly feud. Aided by *Scipio* and the *Romans*, with whom associated against *Carthage*, he not only recovered his own Kingdom, but was gratified with the greatest part of that which belonged to *Syphax*. A professed Enemy to *Carthage*, (the final ruin whereof he lived to see) till the time of his death, being then ninety years of Age.
5. *Miciffa*, the Son of *Mafniffa*, of whom nothing memorable.
6. *Jugurth* the Son of *Mafniffa*, one of the brethren of *Miciffa*, having wickedly made away the two Sons of *Miciffa*, usurped the Kingdom, and manifestly withstood the *Romans*, whose attempts sometimes by force, sometimes by subtlety, but chiefly by money and bribes, he overthrew and made frustrate: *Et suis in Jugurtha (saith Florus) quod post Annibalem timeretur*. At last being broken by *Metellus*, vanquished by *Marinus*, and by *Bochus* delivered into the hands of *Sylla*, he was by *Marinus* led in Triumph to *Rome*. In this Triumph was carried 3700 pound weight in Gold; in Silver-wedges, 5775 pounds weight; and in ready Coin, 28900 Crowns: it being the custom of the *Romans* in their Triumphs, to have carried before them all the Riches and Money, which they had brought out of the conquered Countries, to put into the common Treasury.
7. *Hiempsal*, Son of *Bochus* King of *Mauritania*, gratified for his Fathers treachery in betraying *Jugurth*, with the Kingdom of *Numidia*, Relieved *Marinus* in his exile.
8. *Hiarbas*, another of the *Maurian* faction, preferred to the *Numidian* Crown, but vanquished and deprived by *Pompey*, at that time one of *Sylla's* Captains.
9. *Hiempsal* II, preferred by *Pompey* to this Kingdom.
10. *Juba*, the Son of *Hiempsal* the second, who siding with *Pompey* against *Cesar* in the Civil Wars, gave a great Overthrow to *Curio*, one of *Cesar's* Lieutenants; *Curio* himself slain, his whole Army routed, such as were taken Prisoners murdered in cold Blood. But being discomfited by *Cesar*, after *Pompey's* death, *Numidia* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire.

Thus by the Fall of *Carthage*, and the death of *Juba*, came the whole Provinces of *Africa Propria*, and *Numidia* (containing the now Kingdom of *Tunis*) into the power of the *Romans*. Of which the Nations of most note were the *Nigritini*, on the Eastern parts of the *Mediterranean*; the *Machini*, near the lesser *Syria*; the *Lybia*

Phoenices, and *Medini*, bordering upon *Carthage*; the *Joni*, *Navarra*, and *Cerefsis*, taking up all the Sea-coasts of *Numidia*. Such as inhabited more Southwards on the back of these, not so much considerable: None of them to be said upon, but the *Liby-Phoenices*, a mixt people of the old *Lybians*, and new *Phoenicians*, as the *Liby-Egyptis* were of the said *Libyans* and the neighbouring *Egyptians*. The memory of all of them so defaced by the violent inundation of the *Arabians*, that there is scarce any tract, or footsteps of them in all the Country. When conquered by the *Saracens*, they were at first subject to the *Caliphs*, or *Sultans of Cairo*: after the spoil whereof by the *Arabians*, subdued by *Abdul Mumen* King of *Morocco*, and by him added to that Kingdom. In the distractions of that State, made a peculiar Kingdom by some one of the Relicks of the Stock of the *Amsheds*, who took unto himself the Title of King of *Tunis*, that City being his chief Seat. By him transmitted unto his Posterity, till the days of our Grand-Fathers; when *Muleaffes*, one of the youngest Sons of *Sultan Mahomet* having first murdered *Maimon* his eldest Brother, and put out the eyes of twenty of the rest, usurped the Sovereignty. *Rafetta*, the only one of those Princes who escaped this Malice, upheld awhile by the *Arabians*, and by them deserted, was fain to put himself into the hand of *Barbarossa*, King of *Algiers*, and Admiral of the Turkish Navy; by whom he was carried to *Constantinople*, and so presented to *Solyman*, who under colour of restoring him to the Throne of his Fathers, conquered that Kingdom for himself; ousted thereof not long after by *Charles* the Fifth, appearing in favour of *Muleaffes*. An. 1535. but the Tyrant did not long enjoy his ill-gotten Sovereignty, when his eyes were also put out by his own Son *Amylea*, and so committed to close Prison: Nor did *Amylea* enjoy it long, dissatisfied by *Adhamlech* his Fathers brother. To *Adhamlech* *Mahomet* his Son succeeded, who being a Child, and his Affairs ill governed by his Tutors, and other Ministers of State, gave opportunity to *Amylea* to regain the Kingdom. During which broils the *Turks* again recovered footing, possessed themselves of a great part of the Country, and forced *Amylea* into exile, who flying to *Don John of Austria*, then newly victorious at *Lepanto*, invited him to the Conquest of *Tunis*, but he got little by the bargain, for *Don John* having subdued the Kingdom, conferred the same on *Mahomet* the Brother of *Amylea*, and carried *Amylea* in bonds to the Isle of *Sicily*, where he after died. Nor did *Mahomet* enjoy it long; for the next year the *Turks* besieged and took the City of *Tunis*, with the strong Fort of *Galeata*, with all the other Forts and Holds of that Kingdom, made ever since a Province of the Turkish Empire; the poor King being carried prisoner to *Constantinople* at the end of the War, which was in the year 1574. and the last of *Selimus* the Second.

2. TREMESEN, or ALGIERS.

The Kingdom of *TREMESEN* is bounded on the East with the River *Amaga*, (now called *Major*) by which parted from the Kingdom of *Tunis*; on the West, with the Kingdom of *Fessa* and *Morocco*, from which separated by the River of *Maluba*, or *Malva*. So called from *Tremesen*, or *Teluseine*, the chief City of it. Called also the Kingdom of *Algiers*, from the City so named, sometimes the Seat-Royal of their Kings.

In the flourish of the *Roman* Empire, it had the name of *Mauritania Cesariensis*: *Mauritania*, because of the Kingdom of *Juba* King of *Mauritania*, of which more anon; *Cesariensis*, from *Cesarea* the chief City of it, as that is called in honour of *Augustus Cesar*, on whom the King heretofore depended. More anciently the Kingdom of the *Mafsyli*, one of the most powerful Nations in all this tract, over whom reigned *Syphax* before-mentioned, called therefore by *Strabo* *Mafsyliya*, with good propriety; and corruptedly, *Maffilia*.

The Kingdom extended in length from East to West, for the space of 380 miles, but of breadth not answerable; is generally of the same nature (as to the Soil and Air) with the rest of *Barbary*: sufficiently fruitful towards the Sea, more barren and uncomfortable in Southern parts. But meanly peopled, by reason of the continual Spoils made by the *Arabians*, who possess the *Deserts*; and the Cities of it much wasted by continual Wars. Nor have the People any peculiar Character, but what belongeth to others of these *African* also.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Gugayda*, inconveniently seated, as paying their accustomed Tributes to the King of *Tremesen*, their natural Prince; and contribution to the *Arabians*, who are here so numerous and powerful that the Kings themselves of this small Kingdom were fain to buy their peace of them at exorbitant rates. 2. *Tigeden*, sometimes famous, and abounding with men of learning; now almost forsaken, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of these *Arabians*. 3. *Tebocrit*, inhabited for the most part by Weavers. 4. *Brefch*, the Inhabitants whereof use to paint a black Cross on their Cheek, and another on the Palm of their hands: the reason of which Custom they are ignorant of, but some conceive it to be a remembrance of their Christianity. 5. *Ned-Roma*, built, as the people do pretend, by the ancient *Romans*, as an Epitome, or Abridgement of that mighty City to which it is said to have some resemblance; and that imported by the name, which signifieth in their Language, *Like to Rome*. Perhaps the same which *Ptolemy* calleth *Nosum Oppidum*, or the New-Town, then a *Roman* Colony. 6. *Baba*, once a great City, since decayed by Wars. 7. *Oras*, a noted Haven on the *Mediterranean*, said to contain no fewer than 10000 Families. Powerful at Sea, and much infesting with their Gallies the Coasts of *Spain*; till taken from *Ferdinand* the Catholic by *Peter of Navarre*, An. 1506. since which time peopled and possessed by the *Spaniards*: in vain besieged by the said *Turk*, An. 1562. 8. *Mafalquivier*, a fair and spacious Haven on the same Sea also, and taken by the said *Peter of Navarre* about the same time. 9. *Harefjol*, in former times of much esteem amongst the *Moor*, but being destroyed by the King, or *Sultan* of *Cairo*, it is bequeathed its greatness unto *Tremesen*, which after grew into renown. 10. *Tremesen*, once adorned with many beautiful *Mosques*, and five sumptuous Colleges, curiously wrought with *Mosque* work. So populous, that there were reckoned in it 16000 Families; and so well fortified, that it held out seven years against *Joseph* the great King of *Fests*: not taken after that, though they were very much weakened by *Abulhasan*, or *Abulhasen* his Son and Successor, under a siege of 30 Months. By those, and the succeeding Troubles it hath undergone, exceedingly impaired both in strength and beauty. More ancient, 11. *Siga*, an African City, and a *Roman* Colony; the retiring place of *Syphax* and *Bochus*, sometimes Kings of this Country. 12. *Artenaria*, another Colony of the *Romans*. 13. *Jol*, the Seat-Royal of King *Bochus*, after such time as this Country was conferred upon him by the *Romans*, on the taking of *Jugurth*: called afterwards *Cesarea*, in honour of *Augustus Cesar*, whose *Fendatarius* the Kings heretofore were

then accounted; or as some say, in honour of *Claudius Cesar*; by whom made a Colony: the *Metropolis* of it also when a *Roman* Province, which from hence was called *Cesariensis*. Situate in, or near the place where *Oran* now stands, which seemeth to have risen out of the ruins of it. 14. *Sulda*, a *Roman* Colony also out of whose ruins rose *Algiers*. 15. *Algiers*, by the *Arabians* called *Gecris*, now the chief City of this Kingdom, situate near the Sea, in the form of a Triangle, with an Haven to it; but neither great, nor safe from the North-winds, which do much annoy it. The buildings very beautiful; the publick Inns, *Bathes* and *Mosques*, exceeding sumptuous; every Trade having a several place, or Street by it self. But that which is the greatest grace of it, is the situation of the Houses standing in even streets one above another, upon the rising of a steep Hill; so that the Windows of one Street, or row of Houses do all along over-look the tops of the other next beneath, which yieldeth to the Sea a most pleasant Prospect. A City not so large, as strong; and not so strong, as famous. Famous for being the receptacle and retiring place of the Turkish Pirates who do minceur so infinitely over the *Mediterranean*, to the great damage of the Merchants of all Nations that frequent those Seas. Famous also for the Shipwreck which *Charles* the Fifth here suffered who besieged this Town, lost in the Haven of it one Tempest, besides an infinite number of Karvals and small Boats, divers strong Gallies, 140 Ships, a great many excellent pieces of Ordnance; such a number of gallant Horfes, that in *Spain* the race of Horfes for Service had like to have been lost for ever; and above half his Men. *Homagers*, or Tributaries to the Kings of *Tremesen*, (till first, and that an irreparable Breach in the Government. So *Selimus*, to strengthen his side, implored the aid of *Hadraeus* *Barbarossa*, a noble Pirate, who taking his bait himself in the Kingdom: which he had scarce made warm, when he left it to *Hadraeus* *Barbarossa* his Brother, An. 1514. This *Hadraeus* drove the *Spaniards* out of *Buzia* and was so renowned for Martial prowess, that *Solyman* the *Magnificent* made him Lord High-Admiral of his Fleet: which Office, when to the prejudice of *Christendom* he had fortunately and for long time undergone, he died lamented, and made the *Turk* the Heir of his Kingdom; the Kingdom of *Tremesen* being made subject to the *Turk* much about that time. 16. *Tennan*, and 17. *Sargel*, situate Westward of *Algiers*; Towns of Trade and Piracy.

The old Inhabitants of this Kingdom, when a *Roman* Province, were the *Herpidiani*; *Taladisti*; *Tanussii*; *Malchabii*; *Macevri*; *Chineis*, and others of as little note; the most predominant Nation being the *Mafsyli*, over whom (and in that over all the rest) reigned *Syphax*, spoken of before, unfortunately famous for his tragical love to *Sophoniba*: For whose sake, siding with the *Carthaginians* against the *Romans*, he was vanquished and sent Prisoner to *Rome*. His Kingdom given to *Mafniffa* King of the *Numidians*, continued in his Line till the death of *Jugurth*, and then bestowed upon the Kings of *Mauritania*, part of whose Kingdom it was reckoned in the following times, till made a province of the Empire by the Emperor *Claudius*. Won from the *Romans* by the *Pandals*, and then by the *Saracens*; it followed the fortunes of these many Diffractions, and every *Sultan*, or Provincial Governor shifting for himself, it became a Kingdom, under the title and name of the Kingdom of *Tremesen*. The Majesty of it much impaired by *Abulhasan*, or *Abulhasen* King of *Fests*, who brought it not long after under his

Command. Recovering after some short time its former liberty, it became a Kingdom; once again, and so continued till the time of *Abuchemen*, who incurring the hatred of his People, because by his supine neglect the *Spaniards* had surpris'd and taken *Oran* and *Masfaluiver*, their two best Havens, made an easie passage for his Brother *Abuziden* to the Regal Diadem. *Abuziden* scarce well settled lost it to *Alvairine Barbarossa*, An. 1515, and he to *Charles* the Fifth, by whom *Abuchemen* was restored, becoming *Honourer* and *Tributary* to the Crown of Spain. But his Succellor *Abdulla*, weary of the Spanish Servitude, put himself under the protection of *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, as a Prince of his own Religion; to whom at his decease, he left the possession of his Kingdom also: ever since subject to the *Turks*; whose *Beglerbeg* or Supreme Officer for these *African* Provinces, reside for the most part in *Algiers*, and hath 4000 *Timariots* under his Command.

3. F E S S E, and M O R O C C O.

These Kingdoms I have joyned in title, because united for the most part in the story and affairs thereof, and of late times making but one entire Estate under the *Xeriff* of *Morocco*; and therefore handled both together in the point of History, though of a different consideration in the way of Geography.

They contain in them the whole Country of *Mauritania*, truly and properly so called; divided anciently into *Tingitana* and *Siisensis*; *Cæsariensis* being naturally a *Namidian* Region, the *Masfaly* and the rest of the Inhabitants of it, of *Namidia* breed, not laid to *Mauritania*, nor accounted any part thereof till the death of *Jugurth*, when given to *Bocchus* King thereof, in regard of his Treason, for betraying that unhappy Prince into the hands of the *Romans*.

It took this name from the *Mauri*, the Inhabitants of it, when that name was first given; the word *Tania*, signifying a Nation, being added to it; as in *Britania*, *Lusitania*, *Aquitania*, and perhaps some others; and the name of *Mauri* given them $\alpha\mu\tau\tau\sigma\mu\alpha\upsilon\sigma$ which signifies amongst other things *obscure* or black, by reason of the darkness of their Complexion. Accompted in their times as hardy, but a bloody people; careless of life, fearless of death; implacable if once offended, their thirst of Revenge not to be quenched but by Blood. *Mauri* sunt genus hominum sũpbe natura cedis avidissimum, nihilque non facile audens; & desipatis similes, contempti, viz. mortis & periculorum. A Character given of them in *Herodian's* time; and it holds good still: notwithstanding the intermixture of *Gabir* and *Saraceni* incorporated into the same Nation with them, and passing by the same name in the Writers of the middle time. *Post hæc Mauri totum Hispaniam & Provinciam Burgundiam &c. Dominio suo manciparunt*, as my Author hath it; where by *Mors* we are to understand the *Saraceni*, which came out of *Africk*.

Chief Mountains of this Country, 1. *Atlas minor*, so called, to difference it from the greater Mountain of that name, from which it is seven degrees more North, but shooeth, as that doth, with a Point or Promontory into the main *Atlantic* Ocean, on the South of *Salla*. 2. *Durdur* extended also into *Cæsariensis*. 3. *Diur*. 4. *Pheora*, of which little memorable. Rivers of most note, 1. *Sala*. 2. *Salur*. 3. *Zila*. 4. *Phub*. 5. *Diur*. 6. *Cufa*, all falling into the *Atlantic*: The last the same as I conjecture, which our Modern Writers call *Ommirabili*. And for the rest, we must find amongst them, 1. *Sisfemel*, 2. *Tensiff*, 3. *Niffi*, the names of the chief Rivers, as at this time called.

The old Inhabitants hercof in the time of the *Romans* were the *Metagenia* near the Streits, giving name unto *Metagenitis* an adjoining Promontory, the *Succesi*, *Verbia*, *Neliberes*, *Vacatis*, *Poli*; and on the East-side the *Mauri*: These last participating of that common name, in which all united. Called by the *Gæines*, *Mauri*; by the *Greeks*, *Mauri*; by the *Etymology* as before. Their descent originally from *Phut*, the Son of *Cham*: whose memory preferred here in the River *Phut*. To that, the coming of the *Canaanites*, of the same extraction, served but as an *Accessory*. From those two Mountains sprang the whole Nation of the *Mauri*. Governed by Kings: the most considerable of which, when first known to the *Romans*: was that *Bocchus*, who betrayed *Jugurth* his Friend and Son-in law, into the hands of the *Romans*: gratified for that Treachery with the Country of the *Masfaly*, (reckoned for part of *Mauritania* from that time forwards) as *Hiempsal* one of his Sons was, not long after, with the Kingdom of *Namidia*. The whole estates of *Bocchus*, *Syphax*, and *Masfaly*, united by this means in the person of *Juba*, one of his Posterity, the most potent Prince of all these Parts: who falling in the *African* War against *Julius Cæsar*, *Namidia* was forthwith made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; *Crispus Salsus* being made the first Governour of it. But *Mauritania*, extending at that time from the Ocean to the River *Ampagus*, he gave to *Bocchus* and *Bogud*, two of his Confederates, but defended of the old Regal Family. *Bogud* unluckily taking part with *Mark Antony* against *Augustus*, was by *Bocchus*, who declared for the other side, dispossessed of his part, (that which now makes the Kingdom of *Fesse*) in which confirmed for his good Service, by the conquering Emperor. *Juba*, the Son of the former *Juba*, grown famous for his eminent learning, was of a Prisoner made a Prince: invetted after the death of *Bocchus* in all the Dominions of his father, except *Namidia*: and by the bounty of *Augustus*, a great Patron of Learning, advanced to the Marriage of *Selene*, Daughter of *Anthony* and *Cleopatra*. After whose death, and the death of *Ptolemy* their Son, murdered by *Caligula*, *Mauritania* was by *Claudius* added to the Patrimony of the *Roman* Empire: divided into two Provinces, viz. *Cæsariensis*, betwixt the two Rivers *Malva* and *Ampagus*, now the Kingdom of *Tremesen*; and *Tingitana*, from the River *Malva* to the Western Ocean. This last divided into *Tingitana* and *Siisensis*, (the River now called *Ommirabili* being the Boundary betwixt them) by the Emperor *Constantine*: who leaving *Siisensis* to the Diocess of *Africk*, laid *Tingitana* (why, I know not) unto that of *Spain*. Gained from the *Romans* by the *Gabir*, after by the *Saraceni*, they became Members of those Empires; in the declining of the last, divided into the two Kingdoms of *Fesse* and *Morocco*, to the Description and History whereof, we now proceed.

3. M O R O C C O.

The Kingdom of *MOROCCHO* hath on the East, the River *Malva*, by which parted from *Tremesen*; on the West, the *Atlantic* Ocean; on the South, Mount *Atlas*, and on the North, the Kingdom of *Fesse*, so called from *Morocco*, the chief City of it, in former times known by the name of *Mauritania Siisensis*, from *Siis*, in those times the principal City, as *Procopius* telleth us.

The Country said to be fruitful of all things necessary to life, pleasing to the sight, and sweet to smell: to particularly well stored with Grain and Pulse, plentiful of Oyl, Honey, and Sugar, liberally furnished with Dates, Grapes, Figs, Apples, Pears, and all sorts of Fruits: exceedingly

exceedingly well stocked with Cattel, but with Goats especially; whose skins afford a very excellent kind of Leather, and of their fleece materials for the finest Chambers, which are here made in most of their Cities.

The whole Country divided commonly into these seven parts viz. 1. *Guzcula*, 2. *Sis*, 3. *Morocco*, specially so called. 4. *Hes*, 5. *Hajora*, 6. *Ducada*, and 7. *Tedra*.

1. *GUZCULA*, the most Southern Province of this Kingdom, hath on the East, some part of *Tremesen*; on the West, *Sis* or *Sista*, from which parted by a ridge of Mountains called *Ida*; on the South, Mount *Atlas*; and on the North, part of the Territory of *Morocco*, and the rest of *Sista*. The Country rich in Mines of Brails, Iron and other Metals, of which are made many *Ustensils* for domestick uses, exported hence into other places.

The People Barbarous and rude, not easily acknowledging Subjection to the Kings of *Morocco*, and at continual Wars amongst themselves, except only for two months in the year; which being the time of their publick Marts, and then much visited with Strangers from other Countries, they lay aside their private quarrels, and cheerfully entertain such Merchants as repair unto them. Walled Towns here are not any, but some very great Villages: the chief whereof, 1. *Guzcula*, on the Northern bank of the River *Sis*, whence the name of the Province. 2. *Tagressa*, not far off, but on the other side of the water towards the foot of Mount *Atlas*, 3. *Tedra*, inclining rable.

2. West of *Guzcula*, lieth the Province of *SUS* or *SUSA*, so called from the River *Sis*, (with which well watered) or giving name to it. Rich in Gold-Mines, the cause of continual Wars amongst the people: well stored with *Sugar*, *Cases*, which the Inhabitants know neither how to boil or purifie; and on the Sea-shores, furnished with great plenty of *Amber*, bought by the *Portugals* of the people at an eafie rate. Chief Towns hercof, 1. *Cape D'Ajuz*, on a Promontory so called a place of so great importance to the *Portugals*, that the taking of it by *Mohamed* then King of *Sus* (after of *Morocco* also) made them quit all the Forts which they had in this Country. 2. *Tegaviff*, a rich and wealthy Town; the greatest in the Province, and situate in a large Plain near the foot of Mount *Atlas*; 3. *Teffen*, situate in a spacious Plain also, but on the Banks of the River *Sis*, divided into three parts, each a mile from the other which joyned together, make the exact figure of a Triangle. 4. *Messa* or *Missa* seated at the influx of the said River on the Promontory called *Cape Gilon*; three Towns in one; not much the better for the Sea, and but ill befriended by the Land, as seated in a barren and unpleasant soil; remarkable for a fair Temple, the Beams and Rafters of which are made of the bones of *Whales*, which usually are left dead on the shore. 5. *Taradani*, a large Town built by the *Africans*, before the conquest of this Country by the *Gabirs* or *Saraceni*: the Residence of the Vice-Roy for the Kings of *Fesse*, when the Lords of this Kingdom, but more enriched of late by the Merchants of *France* and *England*, who have here a Staple for their Sugars. By this Commerce, the people made more civil than in other parts of this Province: the whole number of them thought to amount to 3000 Families. 6. *Tedra*, more within the Land, bigger than *Taradani*, but less wealthy; the chief Ornament of it being a fair *Mohometan* Temple, liberally furnished with Priests and Readers of that Law, at the common charge. Not far from hence the Hill *Anchifa*, where it snoweth at all seasons of the year, and yet the people go extreme thin in the harpelt Winter. Nothing else memorable of this Province, but that a little before the *Xeriff* made himself King of *Morocco*, it had the title of a King-

dom; and gave the title of King to *Mohamet* the second *Xeriff*, made King of *Taradani*, or *Sus*, before he dispossessed his Brother of the Crown of *Morocco*.

3. Northward of *Sus*, lieth the Province of *MOROCCHO*, specially so called, the most fruitful and best peopled part of *Barbary*; not much unlike to *Lowndry* in wealth and pleasures; the very Hills thereof as fruitful as the Valleys in other places. To which fertility of the soil, the Rivers, 1. *Tensiff*, 2. *Affimad*, give no small advantage; though much defaced by frequent incursions of the *Portugals*, who have extremely spoiled this Country. Places of most observation in it, 1. *Delgu-maba*, built upon a very high Mountain, and environed with many other Hills; at the foot whereof the Fountain of *Affimad*. 2. *Elgimbla*, a small, but ancient Town on the River *Sissou*. 3. *Tedra*, a small Town upon *Affimad*. 4. *Imizim*, situate on a Rock, spacious and seated near the entrance of a narrow way leading in to *Guzcula*. 5. *Tamessa*, an old Town but very well fortified. 6. *Agnet*, upon the River *Tensiff*, all ruined except this Fort, and some scattered houses: formerly second unto none but *Morocco* (from which distant 24 miles) the Hills and Valleys about it adorned with pleasant Gardens, fruitful Vineyards, a fair River, and Fields so fertile, that they yield a fifty fold increase. 7. *Sess-nella*, an *Heretical* Town, differing in opinion from the Tenets, that they challenge all their Opposites to a Disputation. 9. *Hamara*, very full of Jews. 10. *Morocco*, situate in or near the place where once stood the *Bacchant* Cities of *Ptolemy*. Once reckoned amongst the greatest in the World at what time it was said to contain 100000 Families: since so defaced and wasted by the depredations of the *Arabians*, and the removal of the Seat-Royal to *Fesse*, when that Kingdom was in the *Affimad*, that it is hardly a third part so great as formerly. The Founder of it *Joseph*, surname *Tefimna*, the second King of the House of the *Almoravides*; but much enlarged and beautified by *Abdul-Minne*, one of his successors. The principal Buildings in it, are the Church and the Castle: the Church or *Mesque*, one of the greatest in the World, adorned with many sumptuous Pillars brought out of Spain, when the *Moors* had the possession of that Country: and beautified with a stately Scepter, in compass at the bottom an hundred yards, and of so great height, that the Hills of *Acari* one of the branches of the lesser *Atlas* being 130 miles distant, may be thence easily discerned: the Castle very large and strong, on a Tower whereof stands three Globes made of pure Gold, weighing 130000 *Barbary* Ducats: which divers Kings have gone about to take down, and convert into money, but all defisted in regard of some cross accident or other which befell them in it; in such that the common people think them to be guarded with Spirits.

4. North of *Morocco*, on the further side of *Tensiff* and *Affimad*, is the Province of *H E A*: rough, Mountainous, and Woody, yet watered with many pleasant Rills, and would be plentiful enough in all commodities, if the Industry of the people were not wanting to it. A Fort of People little better than merely barbarous, without all *Artists*, either Ingenious or Mechanick; except some *Chyrrurgians*, whom they keep to curewiff their Children, and some few Teachers of their Law, which can hardly read. Their Food a Pap, made of Barley-meal, which in stead of Spoons, they claw with their Fingers, the Ground they eat on, serving for Table, Srools and Napkins.

Napkins. At endless feud with one another, yet so kind to Strangers that in one of their chief Towns, called *Tedneft*, the Gentlemen used to cast lots who should entertain them. A Town of good esteem in former time, situate in a large plain on the River *Teffe*; but in the year 1514, almost wholly abandoned, upon a rumor, that the *Arabians* had a purpose to fill it to the *Portugals*, 2. *Teculeth*, seated on a good Port, and once very well traded, there being in it at that time 1000 Families, some Hospitals, and a beautiful Mosque, in the year 1514, destroyed by the *Portugals*, 3. *Tevent*, a Sea-Town in the hands of the *Portugals*, 4. *Elmurriden*, a strong piece, as the name importeth, the word signifying the *Disciples Fort*, so called, because a certain *Heretic* in the Law of *Mahomet* (whereof this Kingdom yields good plenty) retired hither with his *Disciples*, fortified it, and defended it against the King of *Morocco*, 5. *Quilinguigul*, seated on the top of all, and fortified by the Country-people (or old *African Moors*) against the *Arabians*, 6. *Teflime*, beautified with a pretty Haven, but not capable of any great shipping, 7. *Teglefs*, a den of Thieves and Cut-Throats, 8. *Tefgdeli*, as courteous and civil, as the other barbarous; At the Gates whereof a Guard is set for entertainment of Strangers, whom, if they have no acquaintance there, they are to provide of Accommodation in some Gentlemen's house, where it costs them nothing but thanks, and some kind acknowledgement.

5. Northwards of *Hea*, stands the Province of *DUCALIA*, bounded on the West, with the main *Atlantic*; and on the North, with the River *Ommirabili*, by which parted from the Kingdom of *Fesse*. Of three days journey long, about two in breadth; thrusting into the Ocean with a craggy Promontory, which some of the Ancients called *Ulagim*, others the Promontory of the *Sim*, but by the *Christians* of Europe called the Cape of *Cannin*, by the *Moors*, *Gebelulundic*. Populous enough the quality of the men considered, ignorant both of Letters and all good manners: Yet not so populous as it hath been in former times, much of the Country being abandon'd for fear of the *Portugals*, who have taken all their best Towns on the Sea-coasts, and destroyed the rest. Amongst these, 1. *Azafi*, at the foot of the Hill so called; surprised by the *Portugals*, under colour of making a Storehouse for their Merchandise. 2. *Azame*, seated at the mouth of the River *Ommirabili*, the furthest Town of this Kingdom towards that of *Fesse*; the people whereof were extremely addicted unto *Sodomy*, till subdued by the *Portugues*, 3. *Elmedina*, once the Metropolis of this Province, but now for fear of those Invaders, in a manner desolated. 4. *Cute*, of the foundation of the *Gabes*. 5. *Tic*, built by the old *African Moors*, but possessed by the *Portugals*, 6. *Suibis*, 7. *Teneracoff*, 8. *Cempis* 9. *Terga*, 10. *Culshian*; all sacked and ruined by the same people, when they took *Azamor* (the Key of this Province) which was in the year 1513. At which time it is said, that *Mohomet King of Fesse* passing through this Province with an Army, to repress these insolencies, at every *Albar* (whereof there are many in the Roads) kneeled, and said unto this effect: *Lord, thou knowest that the cause of my coming into this wild place, is only to free this people of Duccala from the rebellious and wicked Arabians, and their cruel enemies the Christians, which purpose, if thou dost not approve of, let the punishment fall upon my Person, but not upon my Followers, who deserve it not.* With greater piety than could be looked for from a blind *Mahometan*.

6. Eastward of *Duccala*, along the banks of *Ommirabili*, lieth the Province of *HASCORA*, a fruitful

Country, intermixt of rich Fields and pleasant Gardens, furnished with most sorts of choicest fruits; and amongst others Grapes of such extraordinary greatness, that they are said to be as big as a Pullets Egg. Good food of Honey it hath also, and some Mines of Iron. Inhabited by a more civil people than any of the rest, and consequently more desirous to be rich a foil. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Eza*, an old town, situate on a lofty Mountain. 2. *Elvinnia*, of a later erection. 3. *Almedine*, conquered for the King of *Fesse* by a Merchant, whose Paramour the Prince or Governour hereof had taken from him. Situate in a pleasant, but little valley, but begirt with Hills, and well inhabited by Gentlemen, Merchants, and Artificers, 4. *Togedast*, on the top of an Hill, environed with four others of equal height.

7. More East, betwixt *Hafsora* and the River *Malva*, is the Province of *TEDES*, bounded on the East with the Kingdom of *Temesen*; and on the North, with that of *Fesse*, from which last parted by the River *Servi* which on the North-east border of it meets with *Ommirabili*. The whole Province in form Triangular, of no great either length or breadth, but sufficiently fruitful, and well inhabited for the bigness. Some Towns it hath, and those not meanly populous for so small a Province, the chief whereof, 1. *Tefza*, built by the old *African Moors*, and beautified with many *Mahometan* Mosques; the Walls of which made of a kind of Marble, which they here call *Tefza*, whence the name of the Town. 2. *Efsa*, seated on the River *Ommirabili*, where it receiveth that of *Deyme*, which rising out of *Atlas Mofa*, and passing by *Tefza* last mentioned, doth here lose its name, 3. *Chybita*, renowned for the stout resistance, which it hath made from time to time against those of *Fesse*, abounding in all sorts of Victual.

These Provinces make up the Kingdom of *Morocco*: infested miserably while it remained subject to the Kings of *Fesse*, by the *Portugals* on the one side, and the wild *Arabians* on the other. Concerning which last people we are to know, that when the *Saracens* conquered *Africa*, they contented themselves with the Command, and left unto the *Naivies* the possession of it, forbidding the *Arabians* (with whose course of life they were well acquainted) to pass over *Nilus*. *Elcain*, the last of the Successors of *Hucha* in the Kingdom of *Cairovan*, having subdued the rest of *Africa*, and added it unto his Estate, passed forwards into *Egypt*, which he had conquered also; assuming to himself the title of *Caliph*: But in his absence, the Lieutenant, whom he left in *Africa*, rebelled against him; and acknowledging the *Caliph* of *Bagdad* for his lawful Lord, received of him for his good Service, the Kingdom of *Africa*: *Elcain* thus dispossessed of *Africa*, despairing to recover his lost Estate, and yet not willing that it should be useful unto his enemies, licenced the *Arabians* for a *Duca* aman, to pass over the Nile with their Tents and Families. On which agreement, almost half the Tribes of *Arabia Deserta* and many of *Arabia Felix*, went into *Africa*, where they sacked *Tripolis*, *Cairovan*, and the rest of the principal Cities; tyrannizing over all *Barbary*, till restrained at last by *Joseph* the Founder of *Morocco*, (of whom more hereafter.) Since which time, though they lost their unlimited Empire, yet they fill swarm like Locusts over all the Country, and neither apply themselves to Tillage, or building Houses, or any civil course of life; nor suffer those to live in quiet, who would otherwise manage and improve the Country. The rest of the Story of these Kingdoms we shall have anon, when we have taken Survey of the Kingdom of *Fesse*.

4. FESSE.

4. FESSE.

The Kingdom of *FESSE* is bounded on the South with the Realm of *Morocco*; on the North, with part of the *Atlantic*; and *Mediterrenean*; on the East, with *Malva*, parting it from the Kingdom of *Temesen*; and on the West, with the *Atlantic* wholly.

It takes this name from *Fesse*, the Chief City of it. Known to the ancients by the name of *Mauritania Tingitana*, so called from the City of *Tingis* (now *Tanger*) then of greatest note. Called also *Hijpania Fretatana*, Spain on the other side of the Sea, because a part of that *Dioecesis*: and by some (Pliny, amongst others) *Begudiana*, from *Begud* one of the Kings hereof, to whom given by *Cesar*; by others *Ampelsia*, from its abundance of Vines. The Inhabitants of it, by the *Spaniards*, now called *Alarbes*.

The Country of good temperature in regard of the Air, if not in some places of the coldest: but very unequally disposed of in respect of the Earth; here being in it many Deserts and large Forests, not well inhabited; but intermixt with many rich and delightful Fields. So that taking the estimate in the gross, it may be said to be a rich and flourishing Country, hardly inferior unto any. The particularities of which are to be considered in the Characters of the several Provinces, into which it now stands divided, that is to say, 1. *Temesen*, 2. *Fesse*, specially so called, 3. *Elchaba*, or *Chana*, 4. *Garet*, 5. *Algara*, 6. *Er-riffe*, and 7. *Haba*.

1. *TEMESN* A hath on the South, the River *Ommirabili*; on the West, the Ocean; extendeth in length from West to East 80 miles, and in breadth 70. A Champaign Country, very level; and once so populous, that it contained 40 Cities, and 300 Castles; most of them ruined by the Wars, and the wild *Arabians*, the greater destroyer of the two. The principal of those remaining, 1. *Teyger*, near the River *Ommirabili*, once of greater note, but now inhabited only by poor people, and a few *Smiths* compelled to live there for the making of Iron Instruments to manure the Land. 2. *Thapia*, on the course of the said River; much visited by those of *Fesse*, for the Sepulchre of an holy Prophet, who was there interred; the *Fessans* going thither in Pilgrimage with such numbers of Men, Women, and Children, that their Tents seem sufficient to lodge an Army. 3. *Adendum*, more towards the Sea, but on a small River called *Gurila*; well walled, and fenced on one side by a Lake or Pool. 4. *Ansa*, on the shore of the *Atlantic*, once of great Trade, and well frequented, both by the *English* and the *Portugals*, by which last destroyed. 5. *Munfor*, destroyed in like manner by the wild *Arabians*. 6. *Nuchaida*, situate in so fertile and rich a soil, that the Inhabitants would have given a Camels burden of Corn for a pair of Shoes. Nothing now left of it but one Steeple, and a piece of the Wall. 7. *Rabur*, or *Rubur*, built by *Manfor*, or *Almanfor*, a King of *Morocco*, near the mouth of the River *Burruget*; and by him made one of the best peopled Towns in *Africa*; built after the model of *Morocco*; but now so wasted that there are not in it above 500 Families; most of the ground within the Walls being turned into Meadows, Vineyards, and Gardens. 8. *Fanzara* on the River *Saba*, the *Salut* of *Ptolomy*, falling not far off into the other. 9. *Mohomara*, in the same tract also, once possessed by the *Spaniards*; near which the *Portugals* received a great defeat by the King of *Fesse*, for want of good intelligence betwixt them and the *Casilians*. 10. *Salla*, the *Salut* of *Ptolomy*, by the Inhabitants called *Zale*, or ordinary Maps by mistake, *Calé*; at the mouth of the River *Rebato*, which the ancient Writers called *Sala*, as they named

the Town. Beautified by King *Almanfor* (who is here interred) with a stately Palace, a goodly Hospital, a fair Temple, and a Hall of Marble, cut in *Abuluc*, works intended for the burial-place of his Posterity. A Town much traded formerly by the Christian Merchants of *England*, *Flanders*, *Genoa*, and the Gulf of *Venice*. Took by the *Spaniards*, An. 1287. and within ten days lost again; and of late times made a nest of *Pirates*, as dangerous to those which failed in the Ocean, as the *Pirates* of *Algiers* to the *Mediterranean*. Whole insolencies the King of *Morocco* not able to suppress for want of shipping, desired the aid of his Majesty *Charles*, King of *Great Britain*; by whom the Town being blocked up by Sea, and besieged to the Landward by the King of *Morocco*, it was at last compelled to yield; the works thereof dismantled, the *Pirates* executed, and 500 Christian Captives sent unto his Majesty, to be by him restored to their former Liberty; to the great honour of his Majesty, and the *English* Nation, An. 1632.

As for the Fortunes of this Province, they have been somewhat different from the rest of this Kingdom: trained by a falcious Prophet to revolt from the King of *Fesse* and *Morocco*, whose estate they very much endangered; sending an Army of 50000 men to the Gates of *Morocco*. But being discomfited by *Joseph*, surnamed *Telephus*, he followed them into their own Country, which he wasted with great cruelty for ten months together; consuming above a Million of them, and leaving the Province to the mercy of Wolves and Lions. Repopulated afterwards by *Almanfor* with *Arabian* Colonies: Given about fifty years after that, by the Princes of the *Marine* Family, to more civil Inhabitants; by whom the *Arabians* were expelled, and the Province consequently reduced into some good order.

2. Westward of *Temesen* lieth the Province of *FESSE* properly and specially so called. Extended in length from the River *Burruget* to the River *Isavia*, for the space of 100 miles. A very fruitful Province, well stored with Cattel, and exceeding populous; the Villages hereof as big as the better sort of Towns in other places, but contrary to the custom of other Countries, better inhabited on the Hills than among the Vallies; the people making choice of the Mountains for their habitation, as places of defence and safety, but husbanding the Vallies which lie nearest to them. Places of most consideration in it, 1. *Macarnada*, on the River *Isavia*, in a goodly plain, but in a manner all ruined, except the Wall. 2. *Gualiti*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *Idris*, the first Founder of *Fesse*, 3. *Paira Roffa*, where they have some Lions to fame, that they will gather up bones in the Streets like Dogs, without hurting any body. 4. *Agla*, where they have brought their Lions to so strange a cowardice, that they will run away at the voice of a child; whence a *Brachadachia* is called proverbially a Lion of *Agla*. 5. *Psharas*, by reason of the name thought by the vulgar to be founded by some King of *Egypt*; but the *Livine* Inscriptions therein found, declare it to have been some work of the ancient *Romans*. 6. *Maquille*, of more antiquity than note. 7. *Fesse*, the Metropolis of this Province, and the chief of the Kingdom, supposed to be the *Vulvibis* of *Ptolomy*, but much enlarged and beautified by some new Accessions. Situate for the most part upon little Hills, and watered by a pleasant and gentle River (derived by *Aqueducts* and Conduits into all parts of the City) which they now call the River of *Fesse*, conceived by some learned men to be that which was anciently called *Phub*, from *Phut* the first Planter of the *African* Nations. A City so beautiful and well seated, as if Nature and Art had plaid the Wantons, and brought this forth as the fruit of their Dalliance. The Founder, or enlarger

of it, one of the Race of the false Prophet *Mahomet*, his name *Idris*, who built on the East-side of the River; that on the West-side, being the Work of one of his Sons: both for increasing, than that last they were joined together. To these the Suburbs being added, have made a Third. The whole called *Fesse*, from *Fez*, an Arabic word signifying Gold, whereof great quantity was found, when they digged the Foundations. Divided into three parts by the River, all of which contain 28000 households, and 700 Mosques, or Saracenic Temples: the chief of which is *Carven*, or *Carven*, being a mile and a half in compass. It hath 31 Gates, great and high, the Roof 150 yards long, and 80 broad: round about, divers Porches, containing 40 yards in length, and 30 in breadth; under which, the publick store-houses of the Town. About the Walls are Pulpits of divers forts, wherein the Masters of their Law read unto the people such things as they think to pertain to their Salvation. The Revenue hereof is 200 Ducats a day of the old Rents: for so it was, An. 1526. when *Leo Afey* wrote. The Merchants have here a Court, or Exchange, inclosed with a strong Wall, with 12 Gates, and 15 Streets. There is also a Colledge called *Amoradoc*, a most curious and delicate Building. It hath three Cloysters of admirable beauty, supported with eight square Pillars of divers colours; the Roof curiously carved, the Arches of *Mosque* work, of Gold and Azure. The Gates of Brass, fair wrought; and the doors of the private Chambers of inlaid work. This Colledge did cost the Founder, King *Abuchenn*, or *Abu Henen* 380000 Crowns. Here are finally laid to be in it many Hospitals, little inferior to the Colleged in building and beauty, all very liberally endowed; and about an hundred *Hot Baths* well built, with four Halls to each, and certain Galleries without, where they put off their Cloaths when they go to bathe themselves: and besides these 200 Inns, built three stories high, each of them having 120 Chambers in it, with Galleries before all the doors for their Guests to walk in.

3. Eastward of the Territory of *Fesse*, lieth the Province of *CHAVUS*, extended in length from the River *Gurgurgut*, or *Gurgurgut*, by which parted from *Tremesen* and *Fesse*, to the borders of *Tremesen*, for the space of 190 miles, and 170 miles in breadth. So that it is thought to contain one third part of the whole Kingdom; but meanly populous for the bigness, the Country being poor and barren, and the Inhabitants fierce and warlike, more given to prosecute their quarrels, than to Trade, or Tillage. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Han Lifan*, a Town built in the more Mountainous parts of the Country, by the old *Africans*. Famous for the Temple of an Idol here worshipped; to which at certain times men and women resorted in the night, where, after their devotions ended, and the *Candle* put out, every man lay with the woman he first touched; the exact platform of the Family of *Love*, if all be true which is told us of them; and anciently, but fallly, charged on the *Primitive* Christians. 2. *Texza*, adorned with three Colleged, many Baths and Hospitals, and some beautiful Temples; one of them larger, though not fairer than that of *Fesse*; in both Towns men of the same Trade have a Street by themselves, for greatness, wealth, and numbers of people, esteemed the third City of this Kingdom. 3. *Dubdu*, an ancient Town, but not much observable. 4. *Iweri*, seated on the top of an Hill, in the midst of a Plain, but compassed about with *Deserts*. 5. *Beni Jessor*, neighbored by Iron Mines, in which their greatest bravery and wealth consisteth: the women here wearing Iron-Rings for Ornaments to their Ears and Fingers. 6. *Texvugui*, subject to the *Arabians*. 7. *Adagga*, the most Eastern Town of all the Region; situate in a Peninsula made by the confluence of *Iduliso* and

Malva. In this Country is the head of the River *Sebur*, which rising out of a great Lake in the Woods of the Mountains *Seligu*, and receiving many lesser waters, with a large and Navigable stream falleth into the Ocean.

4. Northwards of *Chau* lieth the Region called *GARET*, extended thence as far as the *Mediterranean*, and reaching East & West, from the River *Malva*, where it bordereth on *Tremesen*, to that of *Necbor*, where it toucheth on *Errif* and *Afara*. The length hereof 25 Leagues, the breadth but twenty. The soil in most places dry and desert, like the Sands of *Numidia*; especially all along the banks of the *Malva*, near unto which from the *Mediterranean* to *Chau*, it is wholly *Desert* and unpeopled, not well inhabited in the most fruitful parts of it, being full of Mountains, the worse for the ill neighbourhood of the *Spaniards*, possessed of 1. *Chesfite*, and 2. *Medola*, two chief Towns hereof. 3. *Pemon De Vele*; by some called *Vele De Gomera*, situate on the shore of the *Mediterranean*, betwixt two high Mountains: built by the *Africans* or *Goths*; but now in the possession of the *Spaniards* also. 4. *Jafferin*, situate on the Sea also, founded by the *Mahometans* of the *Marine* Family. 5. *Texzara*, standing on an Hill, to which there is but one passage only.

5. Westward of *Garet* lieth *ASCARA*, extended from thence unto the Ocean: Shut up on the South-East-side with the great Mountains *Zalaga*, *Zaron*, and *Gomara*, out of which last runneth the River *Luccu*, called *Lix* by *Pyromy*. The Air hereof very temperate, and the soil as fertile; supplying with the over-plus of its Commodities the Mountainous parts of *Fesse*, and the *Deserts* of *Garet*. Once full of Towns, till ruined and destroyed by the wars. A Monument whereof, 1. *Giunba*, built by the ancient *Africans*, of which remains nothing but the Ditches. 2. *Larache*, in *Laine Larissa*, the *Lix* of *Pyromy*, situate at the mouth of the *Lix* or *Luccu*, and furnished with a good Port, but of difficult entrance, garrisoned when possessed by the *Moor* with 300 Light Horle, and 300 *Harcubusters*; but better fortified than before, since possessed by the *Spaniards*, unto whose hands it was put by *Muley-Sheck King* of *Morocco* and *Fesse*, when wrought by *Muley Sidan* his younger Brother, in the beginning of the Civil Wars betwixt them. 3. *Cisfor Eleabir*, given by *Almanfor* to a poor Fisher who had entertained him unknown, one night in his Cottage, when he lost his Company in hunting: Adorned with many Temples, one Colledge of Students, and a stately Hospital.

6. On the North of *Afara* is the Province of *EL-HABAT*, or *HABAT*, coasting along the *Atlantic* Ocean to the mouth of the *Streits*, in length 100 miles, about 80 in breadth. The Country very plentiful of all manner of necessities, and very well peopled: the Mountains which are here of a great height, being well inhabited. In former times replenished with many Cities, both of the Foundation of the *Goths*, *Romans* and old *African Moors*, now much diminished by the Wars. Those of most note, 1. *Azagen*, the Inhabitants whereof by ancient privilege granted by the King of *Fesse*, were licenced to drink wine, though prohibited by the Law of *Mahomet*. Situate on a Mountain near the River *Omaga*, about 35 Leagues from *Fesse*; and garrisoned with 400 Horle for fear of the *Portugals*, who sometimes make their excursions thither. 2. *Bajra*, once a walled Town, and the walls still standing, but very little or no Town in them. 3. *Homar*, sometimes well peopled, but now little inhabited, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of the *Portugals*, who command that Coast. 4. *Bairrendin*, in a manner deserted for the same reason. 5. *Alcazar*, to distinguish it from another of this name, called *Alcazar Guer*, taken together with *Arzilla* and *Tanger* by *Alonso* the fifth of *Portugal*, Anno 1470. Nigh to which Town the three Kings

Kings, *Sebastiao* of *Portugal*; *Mohamet* and *Adelmelch*, Competitors for this Kingdom were slain in a day. There was also slain at the same time, the great *English* Rebel *Stinckley*, who fled out of *Ireland* to *Rome*, Anno 1570. Where he was lovingly entertained by the Pope then being, as a good Son of the Church; by whom appointed for the Conquest of *Ireland*, and for that end furnished with 800 Souldiers paid by the King of *Spain*, and by his *Holiness* created Marquis of *Lansier*, Earl of *Wesford* and *Catherlugh*, Viscount *Mawragh*, and Baron of *Roff*. Thus furnished, he began his Journey towards *Ireland*, Anno 1578. but hearing of these Wars, and desirous to make a party in them, he lost all his honour with his life. 6. *Arzilla* a Sea-Town, 70 miles distant from the *Streits*, now possessed by the *Portugals*. 7. *Tanger*, a great Town, and very ancient, distant from the *Streits* about 30 miles, belonging to the *Portugals* also. In former times it was called *Tingis*, a Colony of the *Cananites*, and by them built at their first coming thither, when they fled from the Sword of *Jehusaphat*, testified by the two Pillars erected near this City, which before we spoke of: and from that name caused all this part of *Mauritania* to be called *Tingiana*. Made afterwards a Colony by the Emperor *Claudius*, who named it *Ts adulla Julia*; but the old name prevailed, and out-lived the new. Near to this Town, it is said, that *Hercules* overcame *Ameus* a monstrous Giant of 64 Cubits high, as his Legend telleth us. And not far off was an high Mountain called *Abyla*, opposite to which in the Coast of *Spain* was another called *Calpe*, on which the said *Hercules* placed his so famous Pillars. 8. *Septa*, or *Senia*, situate on, or near that Mountain, unfortunately memorable for giving the title of an Earl to *Julian*, who first brought the *Saracens* into *Spain*; beautified in the following times with many Temples, Colleged, and Learned men: taken by the *Portugals* with the help of the *English*, An. 1415. and now in the possession of the King of *Spain*. The only Town of all the *Elstates* of *Portugal*, which in the late revolt of that Kingdom doth remain unto him. 9. *Julia Constantia*, so called, and made a Roman Colony by *Augustus Caesar*. 10. *Laxu*, a Roman Colony of the plantation of *Claudius*, in old times said to have been the Court or Palace of the Giant *Ameus*. Not far from whence (that *Ameus* might not dwell alone) the old *Geographers* have placed the habitation of *Geryon*, as proper a Gentleman as himself, in a small Island of the *Streits*, called *Geryonis Insula*, and by some *Erythia*.

7. Eastward of *Habat* is the Province of *ERRIF*, extended from the mouth of the *Streits*, where it joyneth to *Habat*, as far as to the River *Necbor*, (supposed to be the *Melochath* of the Ancient Writers) by which parted from *Garet*: A Mountainous and cold Country in respect of the rest of *Barbary*, full of Woods and Forrests; but plentiful enough of Vines, Figs, and Olives; and not without some herds of Goats, though otherwise not well stored with Cattel. In length 140 miles in breadth 40

only; inhabited by a race of valiant men, but excessive *Drunards*. The Towns hereof not many, though full of Villages. The chief of which, 1. *Mazagon*, near unto the *Streits*; a very strong Town, and of great importance, but possessed by the *Portugals*: in vain besieged by *Abdalla* the first, with an Army of 200000 men, An. 1562. 2. *Mecenne*, seated on a Mountain. 3. *Beni Jersa*, of like situation, once beautified with a goodly Colledge for the Professors of the *Mahometan* Law, who here publicly taught it, as in an University; the Inhabitants whereof were in that regard freed from all exactions. Destroyed together with the Library of it, by some wicked Tyrant, An. 1509 the books therein being valued at 4000 Ducats. 4. *Terga*, 5. *Togassa*, 6. *Gebbes*, of which little memorable.

Thus having looked over the particular Provinces of these two Kingdoms, we must next look upon them also in the general story, from the time of the *Saracenic* conquest; first let into this Country by the Treason of *Julian*, and for a while subject to the great *Caliph*, or Successor of *Mahomet*: afterwards to the King, or *Caliph*, of *Cairoon*, who extended his Empire to the Ocean. But that Kingdom being overthrown by the coming in of the *Arabians*, these Provinces which the rest were afflicted by them till the rising of the Kingdom of *Fez*; begun in the person of *Idris*, of the blood of *Mahomet*, by *Hali*, and his Daughter *Fatima*, commonly called the Family of *Alawecis*; who persecuted by the opposite Faction, fled into *Mauritania*, where he grew into such reputation, that in short time he got both Swords into his hands. Dying about the 18th year of the *Hegira*, he left his power unto his Son, of the same name with his Father, the first Founder of *Fesse*. Opposite whereunto on the other side of the water, one of his Sons (but his name I find not) built another City, which in time grew into emulation with it; and raising by that means a faction in the house of *Idris*, which occasioned the subversion of the Kingdom of *Fesse*, after it had continued in the Family of the *Alawecis*, for the space of 270 years. The estate hereof first weakened by *Abu Tefin*, or *Texifin*, of the house of the *Amoravides* or *Lautunes*, and so weakened, that he thereby gave an opportunity to *Joseph Aben Tefin*, or *Telephine*, his Son and Successor, then famous for bridling the *Arabians*, and founding the City of *Morocco*, to suppress that Family: Who killing the Princes of that Line, and 3000 of their Subjects, brake down the Walls which parted the two Cities from one another, united them by Bridges, and so made them one. Drawn into *Spain* by the dissention of the *Saracens* there amongst themselves, he added all which they held in that Kingdom unto his Dominions, being by his Successors, as long as they were able to hold *Morocco*: the Catalogue of which Princes, called the *House* or Family of the *Amoravides*, with that of the Race of the *Almohades* is this which followeth.

The Kings or Miramomolims of MOROCCO.

A. Ch.

1668

1. *Tefin*, *Texifin*, or *Telephine*, the first of the *Amoravides* that reigned in *Africk*.
2. *Josph*, surnamed *Tefusim*, the Son of *Tefin*, founded *Morocco*, subdued the Kingdom of *Fesse*, and added the Estate of the *Moors* in *Spain* unto his Dominions, An. 1091.
3. *Hali*, the Son of *Josph*.
4. *Alto-Hali*, the Son of *Hali*, supposed to be the Publisher of the works now extant in the name of *Avicenna*, compiled at his command

by some of the most learned *Arabian* Doctors: vanquished and slain by

5. *Adelmon*, or *Abdel-Ammer*, the first of the *Almohades*; of obscure Parentage, but raised to so great power by the practices of *Almohade*, a juggling Prophet of those times, that he overthrew the King, and obtained the Kingdom of *Amoravides* both in *Spain*, and *Africk*, An. 1150. to which he also added the Realm of *Tunis* and *Cairoon*.

6. *Joseph II.* or *Aben Joseph*, the Son of *Abdelmoh.*
7. *Jacob*, or *Aben-Jacob*, surnamed *Almanzor*, a pusilliant and prudent Prince, of whom much before: Son of *Joseph II.*
8. *Mahomet*, surnamed *Ensefer*, or the Green, the Brother of *Almanzor*. Discomfited by the *Christians of Spain*, at the Battel of *Sierra Morena*, An. 1214. lost his Dominions, there being slain in this Battel 20000 of the *Moors*; as some Writers say, who add, that the *Spaniards* for two days together burnt no other Fuel but the Pikes, Launces, and Arrows of their slaughtered Enemies, yet could not consume the one half of them.
9. *Caid Arrax*, Nephew of *Mahomet Ensefer*, by his Son *Buxaf*: slain at the Siege of *Tremez-zir*, a Castle of *Tremefin*, which was held against him.
10. *Almoracada*, a Kinsman of *Caid Arrax*, outed of his Estate, and slain by *Budebuz*, of the same house of the *Almohades*.
11. *Budebuz*, the last of the house of the *Almohades*, feted in his estate by the aid and valour of *Jacob Aben-Joseph* the new King of *Fesse*:

but dealing faithfully and ungratefully with him, he was warred on by the said *Jacob Ben-Joseph*, vanquished and slain in battel; the sovereignty by that means translated unto those of the *Marine Family*, An. 1270. or thereabouts.

But before I do proceed further with this *Marine Family*, I must again look back upon *Mahomet Ensefer*, whom I conceived the computation of the time being so agreeable to be the *Admiralium Marmelium* mentioned by *Mathew Paris*, to whom our King *John*, An. 1214. is said to have sent such a degenerate and unchristian Embassage. Which strange name of *Admiralium Marmelium*, was by that good Writer unhappily stumbled at instead of *Africanomolun* (which also is corrupted from *Amir Elnumoulin*, that is to say, *Principis Fidelium*.) An Attribute which the great Kings of the *Saracen-Moors* did much affect, and retained it long time amongst them. The Story this, King *John* being overlaid by his *Barons Wars*, and the invasions of the *French*, sent Embassadors to this great Prince (then ruling over a great part of *Spain* and *Barbary*) for aid against them offering to hold his Kingdom of him, and to receive wthal the Law of *Mahomet*. The *Moors* exceedingly offended at, told the Embassadors, that he had lately read the Book of *Paul's Epistles*, which he liked so well, that were he now to choose a Religion, he would have embraced *Christianity* before any other: But every man (saith he) ought to die in his own Religion; the greatest thing which he disliked in that Apostle, being (as he said) the changing of the *Faith* in which he was born. This said, he called upon him *Robert of London Clerk*, one of the Embassadors (a man ill chose for such an Errand, if the tale be true,) of whom he demanded the Form of the *English Government*, the situation and wealth of the Country, the manners of the People, the life and person of the King: in which being fatished, he grew into such a dislike of that King, that ever after he abhorred the mention of him. This is the substance of the story in *Mathew Paris*: But you must know he was a Monk, to which brood of men King *John* was held for a mortal Enemy, and therefore this Relation not to pass for Gospel.

But whatsoever opinion King *John* might have of the power of this King to whom 'tis possible enough he might send for aid, certain it is, that he was grown to low in his

Reputation, after the loss of that great Battel in *Sierra Morena*, that not only the *Spanish Moors* withdrew their Obedience from him (as a Prince unable to support them, but those of *Africk* did revolt also from the Crown of *Morocco* extremely weakened by that blow after his decease. For *Gomarrana Aben Zein* of the house of *Abdallad*, seized upon *Tremefin*, in the time of *Caid Arrax* his Successor; as *Buxaf Aben Merin* of the noble *Marine Family* (descended from a *Christian Stock*) did the like at *Fez*. Settled in his estate by the vanquishment of *Almoracada the Africanomolun*, he left it to his Son, under the Governance and protection of a Brother of his called *Jacob Ben-Joseph*. But the young Prince dying shortly after, left his new Kingdom to his Uncle; who aiding *Budebuz* (before mentioned) dispossessed *Almoracada* of the Realm of *Morocco*: and afterwards having just cause of quarrel against this *Budebuz*, invaded his dominions, overcame and slew him; and once again transferred the Imperial Seat from *Morocco* to *Fez*. In him began the Empire of the *Marine Family*, who held their Residence in *Fez*, as the first Seat of their Power; *Morocco* being governed by an under-King, the rest of the Provinces of that Kingdom Committed unto several States; the Sea-coasts in some tract of time being gained by the *Portugals*. And in his Line (but with great confusions) the Royal Dignity remained till the year 1500, and somewhat after. Three only were of note in the course of business, that is to say, 1. *Jacob Ben-Joseph*, the Advancer of the *Marine Family* to the Realm of *Morocco*; the Establisher thereof in that of *Fesse*; and of great power and influence in the affairs of the *Moors in Spain*, where he held *Algariz* and *Tariffe*, Towns of great importance: slain treacherously by one of his familiar Friends, at the siege of *Tremefin*. 2. *Aben-Joseph* the second, a younger Son of the first *Joseph* (the issue of *Bucalo* his elder Brother being quite extinct) succeeded after *Abortane*, the sixth of the *Marine Family* in the Throne of his Father; and had added therunto the Realm of *Tremefin*, if not diverted by the revolt of *Abubali* his eldest Son, continually in Arms against him. 3. *Alboacen*, the Son of this *Aben-Joseph*, and the eighth of the *Marine Family*, who after a siege of 30 months took the City of *Tremefin*, and with that the Kingdom. But not so fortunate in his Wars against the *Christian Kings of Spain*, against whom he led an Army of 100000 Foot, and 70000 Horse, with all other necessities: but vanquished by the two Kings of *Castile* and *Portugal*, with far lesser Forces; (their Army consisting but of 25000 Foot, and 14000 Horse) at the River of *Salado*, not far from *Tariffe*, An. 1340. Deposed soon after his return by his Son *Alboacen*, who lost all which his Father and the first of the *Aben-Josephs* had gained in *Spain*; their Empire after this declining, even *Africk* it self, the Kingdom of *Tremefin*, and the greatest part of the now Kingdom of *Tunis*, withdrawing themselves from their obedience in the East parts of *Barbary*, as the *Portugals* prevailed upon them in the West. The Kingdom of the *Marines* thus approaching near its fatal Period, it fortuneed about the year 1508, that *Mahomet Ben-Amet*, a Native of *Dara*, in the farther *Numidia* or *Biledulgerid*, pretending a Descent from their Prophet *Mahomet*, caused himself to be called *Xeriff*, the name by which the Kindred and Successors of that *Impostor* use to call themselves; and being a poor Hermit only (with which *Mounechism* and the high opinion of their Sanctity, these people have from time to time been extremely fooled) plotted to make his Sons the chief Princes of *Mauritania*. To this end he sent them in Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, whence they returned with such an opinion of Sanctity, that *Mahomet* King of *Fesse*, made *Amet* the second of them Governor of the famous

famous Colledge of *Amadurach*, the youngest called *Mahomet*, Tutor to his Children; the eldest named *Abdel*, staying at home with his Father, to expect the issue, slain afterwards in the War undertaken by the other two against the *Portugals*. In those days the *Portugals* grievously infested the Provinces of the Realm of *Morocco*; to repress whose incursions, *Mahomet* and *Amet* obtained Commillion, though much opposed therein by *Muley* the Kings Brother, who told him how unsafe to trust to an armed hypocrite: assuring him, that if they once came unto any power (which under colour of Religion they might quickly raise) it would not be eafie to repress them. But this good counsel was rejected, & the War

went forward. Furnished with an Army, they discomfited *Lopez Barriga*, Commander of the *Portugal* Forces under King *Emanuel*, compel that King to abandon all his footing there; they subdued *Ducala*, *Sus*, and *Hea*, three Provinces of the Realm of *Morocco*; enter that City, poylon the tributary King, and salute *Amet* King thereof by the name of the *Xeriff of Morocco*, investing *Mahomet* the other Brother in the Kingdom of *Sus*. In the career of their Successes died the King of *Fesse*; and *Amet* his Successor, an improvident young Prince, confirms his *Quondam* Tutors in their new Estates, conditioned they should hold of him as the Lord in chief, and pay him the accustomed Tributes.

The Xeriffs of MOROCCO.

- A.C. 1. *Amet* denied both Tribute and Superiority to the King of *Fez*, whom he overthrew in a set Field; and was after vanquished and dispossessed of his Kingdom, (upon some quarrel breaking out) by his Brother *Mahomet*.
- 1544 2. *Mahomet* King of *Sus*, having got the Kingdom of *Morocco*, united *Fesse* unto it also by the vanquishment of *Amet* the King thereof; slain after all his Victories by the *Turks* of his Guard.
- 1557 3. *Abdalla*, the Son of *Mahomet*.
- 1572 4. *Abdalla II.* Son of the former, had twelve Brothers, of which he slew ten, *Hamet* being spared by reason of his supposed simplicity, and *Abdelmelech* escaping to the *Turks*.
5. *Mahomet II.* Son of *Abdalla* the Second, expelled by *Abdelmelech* and the *Turks*, fled to *Schafian* King of *Portugal*, who together with the two Competitors were slain in one day at the battel of *Alcazar Guer*, Anno 1578.
- 1578 6. *Hamet II.* the Brother of *Abdalla* the 2d. who added parts of *Libya* and *Numidia* to the Realm of *Morocco*, not absolutely subdued before.
- 1603 7. *Muley Sheek*, the eldest Son of *Hamet*, opposed in his succession by *Boferes* and *Sidan*, his two younger Brethren, in which war he died; as did also *Boferes* his Brother. From whom *Abdalla*, the Son of *Muley Sheek* had regained *Morocco*.
- 1607 8. *Sidan* the third Son of *Hamet*, immediately on the death of his Father, caused himself to be proclaimed King of *Fez*. (where he was with his Father when he died) and having won

Morocco from *Abdalla*, the Son of *Muley Sheek*, became Master of that Kingdom also. Stripped afterwards of *Fesse* and *Morocco* both, by the opposite Factions, distressed by *Hamet Ben Abdalla* a Religious Hermit, who hoped to get all for himself; and aided by *Side Hean* one of like hypocritical, who seemed to aim but at a Limb of that great Estate, by whose assistance he was once more possessed of *Morocco*. These tumults on the Land being pacified in long tract of time, and the Country brought to some degree of peace and quietness, (though never absolutely reduced under his Command, as in former times;) a Rabble of Pirates nest themselves in *Salla*, a Port-Town of the Realm of *Fesse*: creating thence great mischief to him both by Sea and Land; and not to him only, but to all the Merchants of other Countreys, whose business led them towards those Seas. Unable to suppress them for want of Shipping, he craved Aid of King *Charles of England*: by whose assistance he became Master of the Port, destroyed the Pyrates, and sent Three hundred *Christian* Captives for a present to his Sacred Majesty, An. 1632. Nor staid he here; but aiming at the general good of Trade, and Mankind, he sent a Letter to his Majesty to lend him the like Aid against those of *Algiers*, who did as much infect the *Mediterranean*, as the Pirates of *Salla* did the *Ocean*. The tenor of which Letter, as favouring of more piety than could be possibly expected from a *Mahometan*, and much conducing to the honour of his Sacred Majesty, I have here subjoined.

The Letter of the King of MOROCCO to the King of ENGLAND.

When these our Letters shall be so happy as to come to your Majesties sight, I wish the Spirit of the righteous God may so direct your mind, that you may joyfully embrace the Message I send, presenting to you the means of exalting the Majesty of God, & your own Reward amongst men. The Regal power allotted to us makes us common Servants to our Creator; then, of those People whom we govern: So that observing the duties we owe to God, we deliver Blessings to the World, in providing for the Publick good of our States, we magnify the honour of God, like the Celestial Bodies, which though they have much veneration, yet serve only to the Benefit of the World. It is the excellency of our Office, to be Instruments whereby happiness is delivered unto the Nations. Pardon me Sir, This is not to instruct, (for I know I speak to one of a more clear and quick sight than myself) but I speak this, because God hath pleased to grant me a happy Victory over some part of those rebellious Pyrats, that have so long molested the peaceful Trade of Europe; and hath presented further occasion to root out the Generation of those who have been so pernicious to the good of our Nations: I mean, since it hath pleased God to be so auspicious, to our beginnings in the Conquest of Salla, that we might joy and proceed in hope of like success in the war against Tunis, Algier, and other places (Denns and Receipts for the inhuman Villanies of those who abhor Rule and Government.) Herein whilst we interrupt the Corruption of malignant Spirits of the World, we shall glorify the great God, and perform a duty that will shine as glorious as the Sun and Moon, which all the Earth may see and reverence: A work that shall ascend as sweet as the perfume of the most precious Odours; in the Nostrils of the Lord; A work grateful and happy to man. A work whose memory shall be revered so long, as there shall be any that delight to hear the Actions of Heroick and magnanimous Spirits; that shall last as long as there be any remaining amongst men that love and honour the piety and virtue of Noble minds. This Action I here willingly present to you, whose piety and virtues equal the greatness of your power, that we, who are Servants to the Great and Mighty GOD, may hand in hand triumph in the glory which this Action presents unto us. Now because the Islands which you govern, have been ever famous for the unconquered strength of their Shipping, I have sent this my trusty Servant and Ambassador, to know whether in your Princely wisdom you shall think fit to assist me with such Forces by Sea, as shall be as serviceable to those I provide by Land: which if you please to grant, I doubt not but the Lord of Hosts will protect and assist those that fight in so glorious a Cause. Nor ought you to think this strange,

that I, who much reverence the Peace and accord of Nations, should exhort to a War. Your great Prophet CHRIST JESUS was the Lion of the Tribe of JUDAH as well as the Lord and Giver of Peace: which may signify unto you, that he which is a lover and maintainer of Peace, must always appear with the terror of his Sword, and wading through Seas of blood, must arrive to Tranquillity. This made JAMES your Father, of glorious memory, so happily renowned amongst all Nations. It was the most noble fame of your Princely virtues, which rejoined to the utmost corners of the Earth, that persuaded me to invite you to partake of that blessing, wherein I boast my self most happy. I wish God may bestow the riches of his Blessing on you, increase your happiness with your days, and hereafter perpetuate the greatness of your Name in Ages.

Such was the Letter of that King; whose motion in all probability might have took effect, had not the Troubles, which not long after broke out in Scotland, put off the design. And therefore laying by the thoughts of his future purposes, let us take a view of the Revenues and Forces of this mighty Empire; before the late distractions made it less considerable. And first for the Revenues of it, the *Xeriffs* are the absolute Lords of the whole Estate, and of his Subjects Goods and Bodies. The tenth and fifth Fruits of all sorts of Fruits, Corn and Cattel, he demands of course; though many times contented in the name of the first fruits, with one in twenty. The fifth part of a *Ducat* he receiveth for every Acre of Land throughout his Dominions; the other four parts for every Fire, & as much for every Head, whether Male or Female, which is above fifteen years of age. In Merchandise he receiveth of every native two in the hundred, of an Alien ten; and hath a large Impost also upon every Mill. When any of his greater Officers or Judges die, he is sole Heir of all their Goods; and yet advanceth great sums by the sale of those Offices. And in the levying of such Taxes as are extraordinary, he useth to demand more than he means to take; that the People finding him content to abate somewhat of his Due, may think themselves to be fairly dealt with.

As for their Forces, it is evident in matter of Fact, that *Abdulla* the first, at the siege of *Mazagon*, a Town held by the *Portugals*, An. 1562. had no less than 200000 men; and that *Abdel-Melech* at the Battell of *Alcanar Guez*, against King *Sebastian*, had 40000 Horse, and 80000 Foot, besides Voluntaries, and wild *Arabians*; it being supposed that he might have raised 30000 Horse more (notwithstanding the strong part which was made against him) had he thought it necessary. It is said also that *Abdalla* kept in constant pay 60000 Horse of which 15000 were quartered in the Realm of *Sus*, 25000 in *Morocco*, and the other 20000 in the Kingdom of *Fess*: out of which he called 5000 of the best and ablest for the guard of his person, well mounted, and as richly furnished. Besides these he had bodies of Horse in continual readiness, maintained according to the manner of the *Turks*.

Timariots: and by Pensions given amongst the Chiefs of the *Arabians*, who live like Outlaws in the Mountains, and up and down in the Skirts of this Country, is furnished at his need with Supplies from them. Well stored with Ammunition also, there being 40 Quintals of Gunpowder laid up monthly in his famous Arsenal at *Morocco*; and yet not able to stay long (not above 3 months) upon any action, in regard that all his Souldiers live on his daily allowance; which maketh them, when his Provisions are consumed, to dissolve and scatter.

The ISLES of BARBART.

The ISLES of BARBART, which make up the fifth and last part thereof, are situate near the African shores of the Mediterranean, allied by *Protony* to the Province of *Africa Propria*. In number sixteen: 1. *Hydrus*, 2. *Calabre*, 3. *Dracovitis*, now called *Chelbi*, 4. *Aegymus*, by *Strabo* called *Egymus*, and now *Guetta*, 5. *Larunisia*, now *Mallium*, 6. *Lapedusa*, now *Lampedusa*, 7. *Misyris*, 8. *Pontia*, 9. *Gaius*, all of little note. 10. *Insula Glauconis*, with a City of the same name in it, now called *Gozza*, and subject to the Knights of *Malta*. 11. *Athusa*, by some called *Aguila*, and consequently mistaken for *Aegres*, which lieth near *Sicily*. Of more note are the five that follow: *Viz.*

1. *COSTRA*, now called *Pamalaria*, equally distant from *Africa* and the Isle of *Sicily*, 60 miles from each. In length about thirty miles, and in breadth not above ten: Mountainous for the most part, and full of black kind of Stone, the soil not very proper for Corn, and void of Rivers; but plentiful of Figs, Melons, and Cotton-Wool; well stored with Kine and Oxen, but without Horses. The people Poor; by Religion *Christians*, and subject to the King of *Spain*: very good Swimmers of both Sexes, and in their speech and habit coming near the *Moors*. It hath a Town in it of the same name with the Island, situate on the Sea-side in the Northern part of it defended with a very strong Castle.

2. *CERCINA*, now with little difference called *Carchana*, situate near the Coast of *Africa*, at the entrance (as it were) of the lesser *Syris*: in length twenty five miles, in breadth half as much, but in some places not above five. Exceeding fruitful in old times, able to furnish (as they did) the wants of *Cesar* and his Army, when he warred in *Africa*; *Magna frumenti numero Cercinae invento, naues onerarias, quantum his facta magna copiam, complet, atque in castra ad Caesarem mittit*, are the words of the History. It hath a Town of the same name. Of no great note in way of Story, but for a handsome piece of Wit here shewed by *Ambasis*; who flying from *Carthage*, met here some Merchants of that City, who had there some shipping in the Haven; and standing in some doubt, left by their discovery of his flight, he might be pursued, pretended a Sacrifice to *Hercules* the *Tyrian* Deity, to which he invited all the Sailors, and borrowed all their Sails to set up a Tent for their Entertainment; which having got into his hands, and leaving them asleep, he made on for *Asia*; secure enough not to be pursued, until out of danger.

3. *LOTOPHAGITIS*, now called *Zerby*, and by some *Gerbe*, is situate in the bottom of the Bay of *Tripolis*, divided from the Main Land by a narrow Ford. The Island full of Bogs and Marishes, without other Water, and in the midst of it somewhat hilly, indifferently fruitful, yielding Dates, Olives, Barly, Mill, and the like Commodities inhabited by 30000 men, dwelling in

low Cottages, and but simply apparelled: it had in it anciently two Cities, 1. *Aminis*, which sometimes gave name unto the Island, called *Mennis*; by some other Writers. 2. *Gerrapolis*, both now destroyed: infested whereof there is now one of more note than the rest, called by the same name with the Island, and fortified with a very strong Castle. Subject unto the *Turks*, but governed by a poor King of its own. Both Fort and Island taken by the *Christian* Fleet, in the year 1550. for the King of *Spain*, to whom *Caravans* the King thereof did submit himself, conditioning to pay the yearly Tribute of 6000 Crowns, one Camel, four Ostriches, four Sparrow-Hawks, and four Faulcons. But the *Christians* were scarce warm in their new possession, when besieged in the Castle by *Pial Bassa*, to whom after some extremities they were fain to yield; there perishing in this unfortunate Action, by Sword, Famine, and Sicknesse, 15000 *Christians*.

4. *GAULOS*, or *GAUDUS*, by the inhabitants called *Gaudica*, is distant about five miles from the Isle of *Malta*; to the Knights whereof it doth belong: given to them by the bounty of *Charles* the fifth. The Island 30 miles in compass, well watered, and very fruitful. So great an Enemy to Serpents, and all venomous Creatures, that they neither breed here, nor will live here, brought from other places. The People *Christians*, but they speak the same Language with the neighbouring *Saracens*. The chief Town is of the same name with the Island, beautified with a spacious Haven, lying betwixt the West and South, and strongly fortified. Cruelly pillaged by the *Turks* in the year 1551. who carried hence 3000 Souls into endless Thraldome.

5. *MALTA*, the chief of the *African* Islands, lieth betwixt *Tripolis* in *Barbary*, and the Isle of *Sicily*: distant from this last about 60 miles, and from the other 180. In circuit about 60 miles, in length 20, and in breadth 12. Situate in the Beginning of the fourth Climate, and eight Parallel; so that the longest day in Summer is but 14 hours.

Anciently it was called *Melire*, and by that name occurth not only in *Protony* and other Writers, but also in the Book of the *Acts*, in the Story of *St. Paul's* Shipwreck; this being the place where he and all his company were cast on Land; in memory whereof was built a little Chappel in the place of his Landing. So called most probably, *αὐτῶν τῶν μελῶν*, from the abundance of Hony which it yielded in former times; *Cicero* charging it on *Verrus*, that he came home loaded with 400 measures of Hony, and store of *Melitenian* Raiments; *Tam non quero unde 400 amphoras mellis habueris, unde tantum Melitenium Vestium*, faith that famous Orator. The joyning of which two together, declare that he had robbed the same place for both; this Island being a near Neighbour of *Sicily*, which *Verrus* governed then as *Prætor*. Nor is it strange, that an Island of the Coast of *Africa*, and using for the most part the *Phœnician* or *Punic* Language, should borrow its Appellation from the *Greek*; many of that Nation coming hither from the Isle of *Sicily*, and inhabiting here, and the whole Island sometimes subject to the power of *Sicilian* *Greeks*, though for the most part under the command of the State of *Carthage*.

It is situate wholly on a Rock, being not above three foot deep in earth; by consequence of no great fertility, the want of which is supplied with the plenties of *Sicily*. Yet have they here no small store of *Pomegranates*, Citrons, Oranges, Melons, and other excellent Fruits, both for taste and colour. They have also great abundance of Cotton-Wool (*Cossypium* the *Latins* call it) which they sow as we do our Corn; the growth and ordering of

which Wool, hath been shewn already, when we were in Syria. For the commodity of this Wool, and the Cloth made of it, the *Roman* had this Island in great esteem, thinking themselves happy when they gained it from the *Carthaginians*.

The natural Inhabitants of it are said to be churlish and uncivil: of the *African* Language and complexion, but followers of the Church of *Rome*, the Religion whereof these Knights are sworn to defend. The Women fair, but hating company, and going covered. The whole number of both Sexes, supposed to be 20000, possessed of 50 Villages, and four Cities. Places of note, 1. *Malta*, so called by the name of the Island, in the middle of which it is situate; built on an hill, but counted of no great importance, the strength and safety of the Island lying in the defence of the Shores and Havens. 2. *St. Hermes*, a strong Castle at the point of a long *Langnet*, or tongue of Rock, thrusting out betwixt the two belt Havens, both which it notably defendeth. Took by the *Turks*, Anno 1553, but at no cheaper rate than 2000 shot of Cannon, and the loss of 10000 of their men. 3. *Valette*, situate on the same *Langnet*, not far from the Castle of *St. Hermes*, (or rather lying close unto it) extended the whole breadth of the said *Langnet*, from the one Sea to the others, and commanding both the Havens. Built since the departure of the *Turks*, impregnable fortified, and called thus by the name of *Valette* the Great Master, who so gallantly repulsed their Fury. In this Town the Great Master hath his Palace, and the Knights their several *Alberges* or Seminaries; all very fair and handsome Buildings. 4. *Burgo*, a little Town or City on another *Langnet*, lying in the Eastern Haven; at the extremity of which Promontory in a demy-Island stands the strong Castle of *St. Angelo*, built on a Rock, opposite to *Valette*, on the other side of the Haven, and found impregnable by the *Turks*; who in vain besieged it. 6. *Iola*, a small City, and better deserving the name of a Town, situate in another Promontory on the South of the other, defended on the West-side by a strong Platform, at the point of the *Foreland*; and on the East-side by the impregnable Castle of *St. Michael*; in vain assaulted by the *Turks*, who on their ill success at the Siege hereof, gave over the Enterprize, and sailed home.

The People of this Island originally were a *Tyrian* or *Phœnician* Colony, but intermixt in tract of time with some *Greek* Plantations, coming hither out of *Sicily*, as before was said. For the most part dependant on the Fortunes of *Carthage*, afterwards of *Rome*, till subdued by the *Saracens*: by the *Spaniards* taken from the *Moors*, and by *Charles* the Fifth given to the Knights of *Rhodes*, not long before expelled thence by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, An. 1522. These Knights are in number 1000; of whom 500 are always to be resident in the Island. The other 500 are dispersed through *Christendom*, at their several Seminaries in *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Germany*; and at any Summons are to make their personal appearance.

These Seminaries (*Alberges* they call them) are in number seven, viz. one of *France* in general, one of *Auvergne*, one of *Provence*, one of *Castile*, one of *Aragon*, one of *Italy*, and one of *Germany*; over every one of which, they have a *Grand Prior*, who in the Country where he liveth, is of great reputation. An eighth Seminary they had in *England*, till the suppression of it by *Henry* the Eighth; yet they have some one or other, to whom they give the title of *Grand Prior of England*. Concerning the original and riches of these Knights, we have spoken when we were in *Palestine*; now a word or two only of their places, and the Election of their Great Master. None are admitted into the Order, but such as can bring a Testimony of their *Gentry* for six Descents: and when the Ceremonies of their admission (which are many) are performed, they swear to defend the Church of *Rome*, to obey their *Superiors*, to live upon the Revenues of their Order only, and withal to live chastly. Of these there be 16 of great Authority (*Councillors* of State we may fitly call them) called the *Great Crosses*, out of whom the Officers of their order, as the *Marshal*, the *Admiral*, the *Chancellor*, &c. are chosen: and who, together with the Master, punish such as are convicted of any Crime, 1. By degrading him, 2. By strangling him. And 3. By throwing him into the Sea. Now when the Great Master is dead, they suffer no Vessel to go out of this Island till another be *Elected*, lest the *Pope* should intrude on their Election, which is performed in this manner: The several Seminaries nominate two Knights and two also are nominated for the *English*: these 16 from amongst themselves choose eight; these eight choose a Knight, a Priest, and a Friar-servant; and they three, out of the 16 *Great Crosses*, elect the Great Master. The Great Master being thus chosen, is styled (though but a Friar) The most Illustrious and most Reverend Prince, The Lord Prior N. N. Great Master of the Hospital of *S. John* of Jerusalem, Prince of Malta, Gauls, and Goza. Far different I assure you, from that of the first Masters of this Order, who called themselves only Servants to the poor Servitors of the Hospital of Jerusalem; or that of the Master of the Templers, who was only entitled, The humble Minister of the poor Knights of the Temple.

This Island is conceived to yield to the Great Master the yearly Rent of 1000 *Ducats*, the greatest part whereof is seth out of Cotton-wool: besides which, he hath towards the maintaining of his Estate, the tenth part of the prizes which are won from the *Turks*, and certain thousands of Crowns yearly out of the Treasure of the Order, which is great and rich; and one of the best Commanderies in every Nation. And for the scouring of the Seas and securing of their Harbours, they have many good Gallies each of them able to contain 500 Souldiers, and to carry 16 pieces of Ordnance, with which they make Excursions many times to the Coasts of *Greece*.

And so much for BARBART.

MOUNT

MOUNT ATLAS.

IN our way from *Barbary* to *Libya Interior*, we must pass over *Mount Atlas*, a ridge of Hills of exceeding great height, and of no small length. So high, that the top, or Summit of it is above the Clouds, at least so high, that the eye of man is not able to discern the top of it. *Extra in hoc Marti mons cui nomen Atlas* (*Saib Herodotus*) *ita sublimis, ut ad illum verticem oculi mortalium pervenire non possint*. Yet notwithstanding, it is always covered with Snow in the heats of Summer. Difficult of ascent, by reason of the sharp and craggy precipices, which occur in many places of it; the rest were plainer and more even, of such wondrous steepness, that the precipices of the Rocks seem the safer way. Full of thick Woods, and yielding to the Countries on the North-side of it, the greatest part of the Rivers which refresh and moisten them: and where it bordereth on the proper, or *Roman* Africa, of such self-fertility, that it affordeth excellent fruits of its natural growth, not planted, grafted, or inoculated by the hand of man. The beginning of it on the shores of the Western Seas, which from hence have the name of the *Atlantick Ocean*, in the 26 Degree and 30 Minutes of the Northern Latitude: and passing on directly Eastward, draw near unto the Borders of Egypt, part of *Marmarica*, or the *Roman Libya*, only interposing. It is now called *Achusia*, and *Monte Clari*: And took the name of *Atlas*, from *Atlas* King of *Mauritania*, who dwelt at the bottom of this Mountain; feigned by the Poets to be turned into this Hill by *Persus*, and the head of *Medusa*. Of the Daughters of this King, their golden Fruit, and the famous Gardens of the *Hesperides*, we have spoke already, though some remove the place of their habitation more into the West (then by us disposed of) and others into certain Islands of the Western Ocean, which we shall meet withal hereafter. He was said to have been a man of such wondrous height, that the Heavens rested on his Shoulders, of which, when weary, he discharged his burthen on the Shoulders of *Hercules*; the ground of the fiction is either taken from the height of the Mountain, the top whereof seemeth to touch the Sky, or from his extraordinary knowledge in *Astronomy* (as the times then were) whereby he came to be acquainted with the motions of the Stars and Planets, in which Knowledge he instructed *Hercules*, when he came unto him. But for the more Authentick description of it, take it thus from *Virgil*:

—*Janus volans apicem & latera ardua cernis*
Atlantis duri, Cælum qui vertice fulcit;
Atlantis, cunctum assidue cui mibilibus arvis
Pimferam caput, & vemo pulsant & imbr.
Nix humeros infusa regit, tum flamma memento
Præcipit Jentis, & glacie riget horrida barba.

Which may be Englished in these words:

Then flying, he the top and sides descrites
 Of *Atlas*, whose proud head supports the Skies,
Atlas, whose Piny head with Clouds inclosed,
 Is to the Storms of Wind and Rain exposed.

Now hides the Snow his Arms, now tumbleth down
 Upon his Chin; his Beard with Ice o'er-grown.

OF LIBYA INTERIOR.

LIBYA INTERIOR is bounded on the North, with *Mount Atlas*, by which parted from *Barbary* and *Cyrenæica*; on the East with *Libya Marmarica*, interposed betwixt it and *Egypt*; and part of *Æthiopia Superior*, or the *Habassin* Empire; on the South with *Æthiopia Inferior*, and the Land of the *Negroes*; and on the West with the main *Atlantick Ocean*.

The reason of the name we have seen before, given to this Country in regard of its contiguities and resemblance to the other *Libya*; or else because descended from the Children of *Lehahim*, by which that Country was first planted. For of King *Lybi*, or Queen *Libya* (the Daughter of *Epphus*, and *Cestrops*) and other the like fictions of the *Greeks*, I shall take no notice. Distinguished from the other by the addition of *Interior*, as lying more within the main Land of *Africa*, the other being partly a *Maritime* Country.

Of the nature of the Soil and people we shall speak anon, when we come to take a view of its several parts. Look we on it now as it stood in the time of the *Romans*, when, though not so well travelled, or discovered, as in these late times: yet have we more particulars of it, as to the names and situation of the Rivers, Mountains, and chief Towns, than any of our late Writers have preferred to us. The Rivers of most note, 1. *Salathus*, 2. *Cyrenus*, 3. *Ophiodus*, 4. *Noius*, 5. *Mafsa*, 6. *Sabus*, 7. *Dardanus*, 8. *Stachiris*, and 9. *Matibulus*; all of them paying tribute to the Western or *Atlantick Ocean*. Mountains of most note, 1. *Mandrus*, out of which floweth the River *Salathus*, 2. *Sagapala*, which gives being to the River *Sabus*, 3. *Rysadina*, from whence *Stachiris*, 4. the Mountain called *Deorum Curvus* (of which more anon) whence *Matibulus*, and *Mount Capus*, out of which *Dardanus* have their first Originals. Then there are, 5. *Mount Ujragala*, and 6. *Mount Girgiris*, from the first of which the River *Bagradus*, and from the last that of *Cyrenus* do derive their waters: and passing through the breaches of *Atlas* (of which these Mountains seem to be some dismembered Limbs) cross the whole breadth of the *Roman Africa*, to make themselves a way to the *Mediterranean*. Besides these, more within the Land we find the famous Rivers of *Gir* and *Niger*: of which the first maketh the two great Lakes of *Nabia* and *Chelindus*; the second those as great, or greater, called *Nigritus*, and the Lake of *Libya*. Which makes me wonder by the way, that in a Country so well watered as this seems to be, our Modern Writers should complain of such want of water: as if there were neither Spring, nor River, nor Pond, nor Lake, nor any thing to moisten and refresh the Earth, but the dews of Heaven, or some pits of salt and brackish water not worth the tasting. *Pisomy* must either be mistaken, which I hardly think; or our late Travellers not so punctual in their observations, which I rather credit: or else the Rivers which were here in the time of my Author, in his ætænavum vastitatis dispendium, must be dried

Kkkkk 2

up and swallowed in these sandy Defarts, as *Magnus* telleth us; or finally there hath happened some later conflagration than that of *Phaeton*, to which the want of water may be better attributed than it was to his. Of which thus the Poet:

*Hinc facta est Libya, rapta humoribus aestu,
Arida—Which Geo. Sandys thus rendereth;
A Sandy Defart Libya then became,
Her full veins emptied by the thirsty flame.*

Places of note and name in those elder times, 1. *Salathis*, on the River so named, 2. *Bagaxi*, 3. *Jarziba*, and 4. *Babiba*, all honoured with the name of Cities. 5. *Gamara*, 6. *Gira*, and *Nigira*, the Metropoles of their several Nations. Then there were two Havens of some good esteem, the one called *Magnus Portus*, the other *Portus Perphobis*, besides 43 other Towns and Cities (twelve of these on the banks of the River *Niger*) whose names and situation do occur in *Pliny*, which shews the Country not to be so uninhabitable and void of people, as was pretended by some other (but less diligent) Writers.

Nations of most note in it in the former times, were 1. the *Gentis*, on the back of *Mauritania*, a resolute and unconquered people, *Genus insuperabile bello*, as we find in *Virgil*; 2. the *Garamantes*, dwelling South of *Cyrenica*, and giving name to a large and spacious Territory, called *Vallis Garamantica*, supposed to be the most remote Nation towards the South; as the *Indians* were towards the East; whence we have *ultra Garamantas & Indos*, in another Poet. 3. the *Pyrribi*, an Ethiopic Nation, on the South of the River *Gir*; 4. the *Nigriti*, originally *Ethiopi* also, inhabiting on the North of the River *Niger*; 5. the *Odrangili*, of the same original extraction, possessing the Country between the Mountains *Capha* and *Thala*; 6. the *Perorifii*, dwelling near the Hills called *Deorum Curia*; 7. the *Meinai*, at the foot of Mount *Thala*; 8. the *Nabe*, on the West of *Vallis Garamantica*; 9. the *Deribici*, dwelling on the West of the Hill *Aranga*; and 10. the *Pysii*, placed by *Pliny* amongst the Inhabitants of *Cyrene*; but so near the Borders of this Country, and so far from the Civilities of those Nations which converted either with *Rome* or *Carthage*, that they may more properly be thought to belong to this. Of a Nature so venomous, that they could poison a Snake. Infomuch, that when their Wives were delivered, they would throw their Children amongst a bed of Serpents, supposing that child to be born of an adulterate bed, the very smell of whose Body would not drive away a whole brood of the like poisonous Vermin. Others there were of less note, which that Author calleth *Minores Gentes*; many in number, of small fame, and therefore not material to be here inserted, those of most note, the *Africantes*, (whom some Authors call the *Gampaphumens*) honoured with the Attribute of *Gens Magna*, the greatest as it seems of those lesser Nations. None of these of much note in the way of Story, except they were these *Libyans*, which are so famous in *Herodotus*, for an expedition they made against the *South-Wind*. For when this Wind blowing abroad the Hills and Defarts of Sand, had dried up those many pools and waters they had among them; they to revenge this injury, by common consent armed themselves, and went to fight against him. But they took not the *South-Wind* unprepared. For he mustered up his forces, and encountered them with such a brave volley of Sand, that he overwhelmed and slew them all. A better Friend was the North-Wind to the Citizens of *Rhegium* in Italy, and better was he rewarded for it: for having scattered a mighty Fleet, which *Dionysius* prepared against them, he was by the Common-

Council made free of their City. That part of *Cæsar's* war which was managed here, we shall hereafter meet with on another occasion.

Thus having took a view of the state of this Country, as it stood of old; we will next look upon it in its present condition; as comprehending the whole Provinces of 1. *Biledulgerid* or *Numidia*, 2. *Libya Deserta*, or *Saraceni*, and 3. a great part of that Country which is now called *Terra Nigritarum*. But because the greatest part of this last Country is to come under another Account; we will here only take the two first into consideration.

1. NUMIDIA.

NUMIDIA, is bounded on the East, with *Egypt*; on the West, with the *Atlantic Ocean*; on the North, with Mount *Atlas*, which parteth it from *Barbary* and *Cyrene*; on the South, with *Libya Deserta*.

It was thus first called by *John Leo*, an *African* Writer, to whose description of all *Africa* we are much beholding, because of that resemblance which the people of it have to the old *Numidians*; which is after the custom of the *Nomades*, living without Houses, under their Wagons and Carts, as *Lucan* testifieth of them, thus:

*Nulla domus planities habitant, migrare per arva
Mos, atque errantes circumvolitare Penates.*

They dwell in Wains not Houses, and do stray
Through Fields, and with them lead their Gods
each way.

And worthily may they owe their Names to them, from whom they borrow so much of their nature, for the People to this day spend their lives in hunting, and stay but three or four days in a place, as long as the Grafs will serve the *Camels*. This is the cause why this Country is so ill peopled, the Towns so small in themselves, and so remote from others. An example hereof is *Tesser*, a great City in their esteem, which yet containeth but 400 households, and hath no neighbours within 300 miles of it.

The Country aboundeth with *Dates*, whence it is called *Dattylorum regio*, and in the Arabic *Biledulgerid*, which signifieth also a *Date-Region*. These *Dates* (to speak properly) the fruit of the Palm-Trees, usually growing in the hot Countries, of which some are male, some female; the first bringing forth only flowers, the other fruit; and yet the male so beneficial to the increase of the *Dates*, that unless a flower bud of the male be ingrafted into the female, the *Dates* never prove good, in case they beary *Dates* at all, as before was noted. This fruit is the chief diet of the people; but this sweet Meat hath lower Sauce, for it commonly rotteth their Teeth betimes. As for the Stones of these *Dates*, they feed their Goats with them, whereby they grow fat, and yield store of Milk. The Air hereof, of so found a nature, that if a man be troubled with the *French Diseste*, he shall there, without any course of *Physick* find a present Remedy.

The natural Inhabitants of this Country are said to be a base & vile people, Thieves, Murderers, Treacherous, and ignorant of all things; feeding most commonly on *Dates*, Barley, and Carrion; accounting Bread a Diet for their Festival days. But the *Arabians*, who are intermingled with them, in most part of the Country, affirmed to be (comparatively with the Natives) ingenious, liberal and civil. The Garments of these *Numidians*, of the coarsest Cloth, so short, that they cover not half the Body: the richer sort, distinguished by a *Tacket* of *Blow Cotton* with wide Sleeves. Their Steeds are *Camels*, which they ride on without *stirrup*, or so much as a *saddle*; a leather, thrust

through an hole made in the nose of the *Camel*, serves them for a *Saddle*; and to save the charge of *Spur*, they make use of a goad. Their Religion, *Mahometism*, to which perverted *Christianity* having once had some footing here in the year 710, the *Armaghi* and other people of those parts then subdued by the *Saracens* who held them for a Nation of little reckoning, that noman of account amongst them would defend so low as to be their Prince; but left them to be ruled as in former times, by the Chiefs or Heads of their several *Clans*.

The chief River which is left, hath the name of *Dara*, and possibly enough may be the *Daradus* of *Pliny*. The rest which are mentioned in that Author, rising out of Mount *Atlas*, and falling headly this way, finding these barren Wildernesses to afford them the readiest Channels, are trained along by the allurements of the Sands, and are either swallowed up in great Lakes; or being too liberal to the thirsty Sands in their way to the Sea, die at the last for thirst in the midst of the *Deserts*.

The Principal of their Provinces (if capable of a distinction into better and worse) 1. *DARA*, more cultivated than the rest, because of the River running thorough it, whence it hath its name: 250 miles in length, indifferently fruitful, where the River doth overflow and water it; and of so different a nature from all the rest, that here the country people have some scattered Villages, the better for their several *Castles*. 2. *PESCARA*, so called from the chief Town of it: exceedingly infested with Scorpions, the thing whereof is present death. 3. *FATHIGI*, so called from the chief Town also; inhabited by an industrious and witty people (in respect of the rest) some of which betake themselves to merchandise; some to the study of the Law, which they study at *Fesi*, and grow rich upon it. 4. *TEGORARIN*, a large Region, and well inhabited, better than any except *DARA*; as having in it 50 *Castles* or Gentlemens Houses, and 100 Villages. The People wealthy, in regard of the great Trade which they drive with the *Negroes*; and pretty good Husbands in managing their land, on which they are forced to lay much foil; and will therefore let some of it *Rent-free* to strangers, reserving only the dung of themselves and their Cattel. 5. *BILEDULGERID*, specially so called, abundantly fruitful in *Dates*, whence it had the name; but destitute of Corn, by reason of the extreme driness of the soil; and yet hath in it many Towns of good note among them. Of less note, 6. *Tesser*, 7. *Segelmessi*, 8. *Zeh*, 9. *Thelbezi*, and 10. *Fessen*, so called from the chiefs of their Towns and Villages.

Towns of most note both now and in former times, besides those spoken of before, 1. *Timmedin*, in the Province of *Dara*, the birth-place of *Mahomet Ben Amer* and his three Sons, the Founders of the *Christian* Empire. 2. *Tassilata*, in the said Province, to which place *Mahomet* the second of these Sons, and second King of *Morocco*, of that family, confined his elder Brother *Amer*, having took him prisoner, Anno 1544. 3. *Tesser*, a great Town of 400 houses, but so poorly neighboured, that there is no other inhabited place within 300 miles of it; but of that before. 4. *Tachort*, the inhabitants whereof are very courteous to strangers, whom they entertain at free cost; and choose rather to marry their daughters to them, than to any of the Natives. 5. *Eleonchi*, the most Eastern Town in all the Country, distant about 100 miles from the Borders of *Egypt*. 6. *Debris*, one of the chief Cities of the *Garamantes*, of great renown in former times for the Wells or Fountains of the *Sau*: The Water whereof being lukewarm at the Sun rising, cooled more and more till noon, and was then very cold, and so continued until midnight; afterwards by degrees growing hotter and hotter; as if it had a natural Antipathy with the Sun, hottest when that

was furthest off; and cold when nearest. 7. *Maheche*, seated on a Rock, garrisoned by *Jugurth* for a place of refuge, but taken by *Marius* in the prosecution of that War. 8. *Capsa*, the chief City of all this Tract, said to be built by *Hercules*; but questionable of very great strength; *aniquis arcifque vallata*, made inaccessible (saith the Historian) by the thick Sands, and multitude of *Serpents* which were harboured in them; but easily forced by *Marius* in his wars with *Jugurth*, and utterly destroyed by *Cæsar* in his war against *Juba*.

It seems by this, that those people neighbouring Mount *Atlas*, were much at the disposal of the Kings of *Mauritania*, in the times foregoing, and so they have been also in these latter times. For though neglected by the *Romans*, who thought it an high point of wildom not to extend their Empire beyond that Mountain; yet the *Saracens* had not long possessed themselves of those parts of *Barbary*, which was in the year 698; but within twelve years (*An. 710*.) they subdued this Country, and planted their Religion in it, though not themselves. Nor was *Amer*, the first *Xeriff* of *Morocco*, warm in that estate, when he thought it best for him to secure himself in it by the conquest of this: to whose Successors, the Chiefs of the Tribes heretofore render some acknowledgements.

2. LIBYA DESERTA.

LIBYA DESERTA, is bounded on the North with *Numidia*, or *Biledulgerid* towards the South, with the Land of *Negroes* wholly; and on the West with *Gualata*, another Province of these *Negroes*, interposed betwixt it and the *Atlantic*.

The reason of the name of *Libya* we have before. To which *Deserta* was added upon very good reasons, as well to differenciate from the other *Libya*, a Province of *Egypt*, as to express the barren and sandy condition of it, in which respect by the *Arabians* called *Sarra*, signifying in their language a rude and uninhabitable *Desart*, as this Country is. So truly such, that men may travel in it eight days together without finding Water, or seeing any tree, and no grafs at all. The water which they have is drawn out of Pits, exceeding brackish; and many times those Pits so covered with the Sands, that men die for thirst; the Merchants therefore carrying their water with them on the backs of *Camels*; which if it fail, they kill their *Camels*, and drink a water which they wring out of their guts. And yet as dangerous and uncomfortable as these *Deserts* be, they are very much travelled by the Merchants of *Fels* and *Tremesen*, trading to *Agades* and *Tombumun*, in the Land of *Negroes*.

The People differ not much from the *Numidians* in shape or qualities; but if a worse quality, it must be the *Libyan*. They did once worship a God called *Pasaphon*, who when he lived, taught divers Birds which he caught, and then set at liberty, to say these words, viz. *Pasaphon is a great God*, which the simple people hearing, and admiring at it, afforded him Divine honours. Converted at last to the *Christian* Faith, they remained a while in the profession of the Gospel: exterminated by the *Saracens*, about the year 710, who having added *Numidia* or *Biledulgerid* to their former conquests, planted their *Superstitions* in this Country also.

This Country is divided (as others into Provinces) into five great *Deserts*, to which those of less note are to be referred.

1. *ZANHAGA*, beginning at the Borders of *Gualata* (interposed betwixt it and the *Atlantic Ocean*) and extending Eastward to the Salt-pits of *Tegazet*, having on the South *Gualata* and *Tombumun* in the Land of *Negroes*; so destitute of water, that there is one pit only at the end

end of each hundred mile, brackish and unwholſom; and in the *Deſarts of Azoad and Aram*, which are parts of this, but one in a 150 or 200 miles riding.

2. *ZUENZIGA*, extended from the Salt-pits of *Tegaza* Eaſtward, to the *Deſart of Targa*: bounded on the North with *Segheſſe* and *Iſchelat*, *Namidian* Provinces; and on the South, with the *Deſart and Ghir and Gubor*. So void of water, (eſpecially in that part thereof which is called *Gaguden*) that in Nine days Travel there is not ſo much as one drop to be ſeen, but what they carry on their Camels.

3. *TARGA*, extended Eaſtward to the *Deſart of Ighidi*, and reaching from *Tegerarin* in the North, to the *Deſart of Agadez*, in the South, the beſt conditioned part of all this Country, well watered, of a temperate Air, and a Soyl reaſonably fruitful. In length from North to South 300 miles, and liberally ſtored with Manna, which they gather into little Velleſs, and carry to *Agadez*, to ſell. Mingled in water, or with Portage, it is very cooling, and drank of in their Feaſts, as a ſpecial diſh.

4. *LEMBT A*, extended from the *Deſarts of Ighidi*, unto that of *Bordea*.

5. *BORDEA*, which reacheth to the borders of *Nubia*. Of theſe two there is little to be ſaid in ſeveral, but that this laſt was lately diſcovered by one *Hmar*, a guide to a *Caravan* of Merchants, who blinded with the Sands, wandered out of his way, and cauſing Sand to be given him at every twenty miles end, found by the ſmell at laſt that they began to draw nigh ſome inhabited place; and told them of it forty miles before they came to it.

Cities of Note we hope for none, where we find no

Water. Of ſuch as go for Cities here, the moſt conſiderable, 1. *Tegaza*, rich in veins of Salt, reſembling Marble; which the inhabitants, being twenty days diſtant from any habitation, and conſequently many times in danger to die for famine, exchange for Victuals with the Merchants of *Tombutu*, who come hither for it. Much troubled with the South-wind, which doth ſo drive the Sands upon them, that it cauſeth many of them to loſe their fight. 2. *Hnaden*, or *Hoden*, a known reſting place, and a great reſreſhment to the Merchant in the midſt of theſe *Deſarts*. 3. *Guargata*, on the brink of a Lake, fed by a River of hot Water; affirmed to be a Town of elegant building, and inhabited by a wealthy people. 4. *Toberaum*, of little note, but that it ſerveth for a Stage or halting-place to the weary Traveller. Of which kind there are ſaid to be others at the extremities or ends of each ſeveral *Deſart*; the Havens of ſuch men as ſail in thoſe Sandy Seas; but not eſe observable.

Nor is there much, if any thing obſervable of them in the way of Story, but that not looked after by any of the great Conquerors, either Greeks or Romans, much of the Country poſſeſſed by Arabian Colonies, (men fit enough to plant in ſuch barbarous Nations) at ſuch times as the *Saracens* planted their Religion here. The Government of the Country ſince, as it was before, by the Chiefs of their ſeveral Clans or Families, who as they know no Law themſelves, ſo do the people theſe as much ignorance of it in their lives and actions, diſterring but little from brute Beaſts, more then in ſhape and ſpeech.

And ſo much for *LIBYA INTERIOR*.

OF

TERRA NIGRITARUM.

TERRA NIGRITARUM, or **THE LAND OF NEGROES**, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Ethiopia Superior*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantic Ocean*; on the North, with *Libya Deſerta*; and on the South with the *Ethiopic Ocean* and part of *Ethiopia Inferior*. So called from the *Nigritæ*, the chief of the Nations here inhabiting in the time of *Prology*, and they ſo named from the River *Niger*, of which more anon.

The Country very hot by reaſon of its ſituation under the *Torrid Zone*; yet very well inhabited, full of people, and in ſome places always green: well watered, and exceeding fruitful, eſpecially in thoſe parts which lie within the compaſs of the overflowsings of the River *Niger*; and on the further ſide of the River *Sangha*: abundantly well ſtored both with Corn, Cattel and Garden-ware for the uſe of their Kitchens; well Wooded, and thoſe Woods well furniſhed with Elephants and other Beaſts, both wild and tame. Their greateſt wants (but ſuch a want as may be born with) is the want of *Fruit-Trees*, few of which they have; and thoſe they have, bear one kind of fruit only, which is like the *Cheſnut*, but ſomewhat bitterer. Rain here doth neither hurt nor help; their greateſt well-

fare conſiſting in the overflowsings of *Niger*; as that of *Egypt* in the inundations of *Nile*. In ſome parts liberally enriched with Mines both of Gold and ſilver; very fine and pure: ſo that had not the *Portugals* affected the honour of diſcovering *New Worlds*, as much as *Weſt*, they might have made as rich a *Facility* here, as at the *Indies*.

The Inhabitants, till the coming of the *Portugals* thither, were for the moſt part ſo rude and barbarous, that they ſeem to want that uſe of Reaſon which is peculiar unto man; of little Wit, and deſtitute of all Arts and Sciences, prone to Luxury, and for the greateſt part Idolaters, though not without ſome ſmall admixture of *Mahometans*. When the *Portugals* firſt failed into theſe Coaſts, the People hereof took the Ships for great Birds with white Wings; and after, upon better acquaintance, they could not be brought to believe, but that the *Ships* which were caſually painted on the Beaſts of the Eyes were the Eyes by which they ſaw how to direct themſelves in their courſe. *Guns* ſeemed to them, for their hideous noiſe, to be the work of the Devil; and for *Bag-pipes*, they took them to be living creatures; neither when they had been permitted to feel them, would they be perſwaded but that they were the work of God's own hand. The very

ry Nobles (if ſo noble a name may without offence be given to ſuch blockiſh people) are ſo dull and ſtupid, that they are ignorant of all things which belong to Civil Society: and yet ſo reverent of their King, that when they are in his preſence, they never look him in the face, but ſit flat on their buttocks, with their elbows on their knees, and their hands on their faces. They uſe to anoint their hair with the fat of Filhes, which makes them ſink more wretchedly than they would do otherwiſe. Of Complexion they are for the moſt part Cole black, whence the name of *Negroes*; but on the South-ſide of the River *Sangha* they are only Tawny: the Blacks ſo much in love with their own complexion, that they uſe to paint the Devil White; which I find thus verified:

*The Land of Negroes is not far from thence,
Never extended to the Atlantick Main;
Wherein the Black Prince keeps his reſidence,
Attended by his Jetty-coloured Train:
Who in their Native Beauty moſt delight,
And in contempt do paint the Devil White.*

They have tried all Religions, but agree in none. Idolaters at the firſt, as others the Deſcendants of *Cham*: Afterwards it is ſaid, that they received the *Rites* and Religion of the *Jews*, (but the time and occaſion of it I do now where find) in which they continued very long: But that being worn out at the laſt, *Chriſtianity* prevailed in ſome Kingdoms of it. In the year 973, *Mahometiſm* began to get ground amongſt them, by the diligence and zeal of ſome of the Preachers of that Law: the firſt who were leduced that way, being thoſe of *Melli*; after which *Tombutu*, and then *Gualata*, were infected with the ſame poiſon alſo. In the end, all the reſt of this Country followed their example, except the Kingdom of *Borneo*, ſome part of *Nubia*, and the Coaſts of the *Atlantic Ocean* which continue in their ancient *Gentiliſm*; *Chriſtianity* being confined to a corner of *Nubia* (if ſtill there remaining) and ſome few Garrifons belonging to the Crown of *Portugal*. And as they are of different Religions, ſo are they alſo of ſeveral Languages: thoſe of *Gualata*, *Guinea*, *Tombutu*, *Melli*, and *Gugoni*, ſpeaking the Language called *Sungai*; the *Guborio*, *Canonet*, *Cheſene*, and *Gangayetes*, &c. that called *Guber*: *Gualata*, a language of its own; and thoſe of *Nubia*, once reſembling the *Arabic*, *Chaldean* and *Egyptian*.

Mountains of moſt note in it, in the former times, were thoſe of 1. *Arvaltes*, and 2. *Arangu*, and 3. that called *Deorum Currus*; this laſt ſuppoſed to be the ſame which is now called *Punta de Lopes Gonſales*, but that more probably, which they now call *Cabo de Sierra Leona*, a large Promontory, thruſting it ſelf into the Sea; diſcerned afar off by the Sailer and the Country people, as well by reaſon of his height, reaching to the Clouds as the continual Lightning and Thunders which do illuſe thence.

Rivers of moſt note, beſides *Nile*, which watereth it on the Eaſt, 1. *Sengha*, or *Canaga*, which riſeth out of the Lake of *Gunga*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame which *Prology* calleth *Lacum Chelodum*. And if ſo, then muſt this be the River *Gir*, of which he ſaith, that having fallen into that Lake, and there ſwallowed up itſelf, Produced another River, whoſe name he telleth not; little inferior unto *Nile*, for the length of its courſe, the variety of ſtrange Creatures which are bred therein, or the diſtinction which it maketh in the face of this Country; the people on the one ſide very barren, on the other fruitful. In the end, having run his race, he falleth into the *Atlantic* by two great Outlets. 2. *Niger*, a River better known to *Prology* by name than nature, now found to have its riſe

from a great Lake, within two degrees of the *Equinoctial*; whence running Northwards for a time, he hideth himſelf under ground for the ſpace of 60 miles together: when riſing up again, and making a great Lake called the Lake of *Borneo*, he bendeth his courſe directly Weſtward; and taking in many Iſls *Chamels*, he careth the Earth into many Iſlands, and at laſt falleth into the Sea. Of ſas long courſe, and the ſame wondrous nature, as the River *Nile*. For from the ſixteenth day of June it overflowseth all the adjacent fields, the ſpace of 40 days together; and in ſo many more, recolletheth his Waters into their proper *Chamels*: the whole Country being indebted to theſe inundations for its fertility, which otherwiſe could be but ſmall, ſince the drincks of the Soil can afford no *Exhalations*, whereby Clouds may be generated, and the Earth reſreſhed with moiſtures, or revived with dews.

Chief Cities of this Country in the time of *Prology*, 1. *Nigira*, the Metropolis of the Country, 2. *Panagra*, 3. *Malabath*, 4. *Ayngab*, 5. *Thimoudacana*, 6. *Suliers* and others, to the number of 17 in all; ſituate all along the courſe of the River *Niger*: Of all which we have nothing now remaining but the ſituation and the names, which that Author giveth us. So that the memory of all the ancient Towns and people being quite deſaced, we muſt look upon it now as it ſtandeth divided at this time into ſeveral Kingdoms, 25 at the leaſt in all, (ſome ſay many more) the chief of which are theſe that follow.

1. *ORA ANTEROSA*, a large Tract of Ground on the Weſtern Ocean, extended from *Cape Blanco* to the River *Caranga*, ſandy and barren, but reaſonably well peopled. The Inhabitants hereof called *Azanbays*, were accuſed formerly very rude and barbarous; much civilized ſince the *Portugals* and other *Chriſtian* Nations began to trade there; of middle ſtature, complexioned between black and alſe colour; great liers, very treacherous, poor, and perſimmonious, and very patient in extreams both of heat and hunger. The chief Towns, 1. *Porta di Dio* (we may call it *Gods Port*) and 2. *Porto del Riſcava*, two frequented Havens, thus named occaſionally by the *Portuguezes*, at their firſt coming thither. 3. *Arquin*, a ſtrong Fortreſs of the *Portugals*, ſituate on or near the Promontory now called *Cape Blanco*, and giving name unto ſome Iſlands, five or ſix in number, lying near unto it, called the Iſles of *Arquin*; inhabited by a barbarous people, named the *Azanbays*, but of no great note. Theſe Coaſts diſcovered firſt by the *Portugals*, Anno 1482. under the Conduct of Prince Henry, Son of *John* the firſt, or by his encouragement and directions.

2. *GUALATA*, diſtant from the Ocean 100 miles (the Province of *Ora Anteroſa* being interpoſed) is but a ſmall Country, though a Kingdom; containing in it but three Burrough-Towns, with ſome Territories of ground and petty Hamlets belonging to them. Fruitful only in Dates, Mill, and Pulſe; but of theſe two laſt no great abundance. The Inhabitants Cole Black, hoſpitable towards Strangers to their power, but poor and miserable, without Laws, ſetled form of Government, Gentry and judges.

3. *AGADEZ*, bordering on *Targa*, one of the five *Deſarts of Libya*; the people of it generally given to graving; their houſes made of green Boughs, which upon every change of Paſture they carry with them. So that we are to look for few Towns amongſt them, but theſe morable Villages. One of good note it hath, called *Agadez*, by the name of the Country, inhabited for the moſt part by Merchant Strangers, who drive a great Trade betwixt this and *Tremefen*. The Town well walled, the Houſes of a better building than the Country promiſeth; the people

people civiler, and more fair conditioned than the rest of the *Negres*; seated commodiously on a River which falleth into the *Senaga*; and by that means hath correspondence with the Ocean also. The King hereof a Tributary to the King of *Tombuto*, payeth him 15000 Crowns of Annual Tribute.

4. *CANO*, a large Province on this side of the River *Canaga*, full of Woods, Mountainous, and in some parts Defart; but plentiful enough of Corn, Rice, Citrons and Pomegranates, with good store of *Cotton-Wool*. Well watered, besides that great River, with some lesser Streams. Sufficiently populous, and stored with good Towns and Villages, the habitations of the Shepherds and Husbandmen, as the chief Town called *Cano* is of wealthy Merchants. This the Seat Royal of their King, a Tributary also unto him of *Tombuto*, environed with a Wall, built of a Chalk-stone, as most part of the Houses are.

5. *CASENA*, on the East of *Cano*, but less fruitful far; the Country over-grown with vast Woods, and the soil untractable, affording only Mill and Barly, but of that good plenty. The people as black as any Coal, with great Noses and most prominent Lips. Their Houses very poor and mean, and their Towns accordingly, none of them numbering more than 300 Families.

6. *SANAGA*, lying on the other side of that River, from which thus named; extendeth to the *Atlantic* Ocean, as far as to the Promontory which by *Ptolemy* named *Asinuatium*, is now called *Cape-Vert*, or *Caput Viride*. The Country full of rich Pastures, goodly Trees, and most sorts of Fruits; plentiful enough of Mill and Pulse, but ill provided of other Corn, and no Grapes at all. Well watered both with Lakes and Rivers. No name Beasts about their Fields, but Goats, Cows, and Oxen; of Lyons, Leopards, Wolves, and Elephants, too great a plenty. The people extreme black, much given to lying, treacherous, very full of talk, excessively vengeous, and extreme jealous. A King they have, but such as one as holdeth but by Courtesy only, having no certain Rents or Revenues, but what is given by his Nobles.

7. *GAMBRA*, or *GAMBEA*, a small Kingdom on the River so named, but bordering in some places on the *Atlantic*. In those parts very pleasant, the Trees always flourishing, the Air very hot; in other parts of the same nature with *Sanaga*, but that this affords good store of Rice, which the other doth not.

8. *TOMBUTUM*, on the further side of the River *Sanaga*: exceeding plentiful of Corn, Cattel, Milk, and Butter. Definite of Sale, but what they buy of foreign Merchants at excessive rates; and small store of Horses. Well watered by a Branch also of the River *Niger*, and many Wells of purpose made to receive such Waters as by Artificial Dikes and Channels are derived from both. The people courteous, rich and pleasant, spending whole days and nights in singing and dancing. Their food, Fish, Butter, Milk, and Fish, which they mingle together, and make it neither toothsome nor wholesome. The chief Towns, 1. *Tombuto*, which gives name to this Kingdom, situate about twelve miles from a branch of the *Niger*, and founded by the *Saracens* or *Arabians* in the 610th year of their *Hegira*. The Houses all of mud and thatch, except one fair Church, and the King's Palace, both of Lime and Stone. Inhabited by wealthy Merchants, who manage a great Trade betwixt this and *Poffe*. 2. *Gago*, the residence of the King, large without Walls, the Buildings very poor & mean, except such as belong unto the King, or the chief Nobility. The Merchants rich, and their Wares sumptuous and precious, but excessive dear. The Town about

400 miles distant from *Tombuto*, situate in a fruitful Country, for Rice, Fruits, and Fish, and well replenished with fresh water. 3. *Cabra*, a large Town, but unwall'd, and of no better building than the other two.

9. *MELLI*, lying on the East of *Tombutum*, is a spacious and fruitful Province, situate all along on a Branch of the River *Niger*, in breadth 300 miles, and abundantly fertile, especially in Corn, Cattel, and *Cotton-Wool*: the people generally very wealthy; of greater wit, civility and industry, than the rest of the *Negres*. The chief Town of it is called *Melli*, unwall'd, but large, as containing in it 600 Families: furnished with many Temples, Priests, and Readers of the *Mohometan* Law, which those of this Country did first unhappily admit of. This the Seat-Royal of their Kings, who are very courteous unto strangers; but *Homagers* and Tributaries to the King of *Tombutum*.

10. *GHENEOA* situate betwixt *Gualata*, *Tombutum*, and *Melli*, but so, that it bordereth in one place on the Ocean also, is a wealthy Country: but hath neither Town or Cattle in it, except that wherein the King resideth, who is a Vassal also to the King of *Tombutum*. That Town the residence also of their Priests, Doctors, and Merchants, of which the Priests and Doctors are apparelled in white, but all the rest in black or blew *Cotton*. The people have great Traffick with the Merchants of *Barbary*, and though made very rich by the overflowings of *Niger*, and the wealth of the Country, they have great store of Gold uncoined; yet in buying and selling at home they use Iron-money.

11. *GUBER* lieth on the East of the former Provinces, of the same length, and naturally well fenced with lofty Mountains. Exceeding populous, and thick set with Villages, in which dwell their Husbandmen, and Shepherds; rich in their numerous herds of all sorts of Cattel, as also great quantities of Rice and Pulse: the people very industrious and good Artificers. Their Principal Town is called *Guber* also, a Town of 6000 Families, the usual residence of their King, full of wealthy Merchants, and rich in *Mammoth*.

12. *GLALOFI* lieth betwixt the two great Rivers of *Sanaga* and *Gambia*. The people whereof are of such admirable dexterity, that they can leap upon an horse when he is in his full Gallop, stand in the Saddle when he runneth fastest, turn themselves about upon his back, and suddenly down, that their Country I find little, of their Story nothing, but that *Bemoin* one of their Kings, being overlaid with Civil Wars, in the year 1489, went for Aid to the King of *Portugal*, and gave great promises of his conversion to the *Christian* Faith. But being shamefully murdered by *Petro de Vaz*, the *Portugal* General, the hopes of *Christianity* in these parts fell together with him.

13. *GUINEA*, is a Sea-Coast Country, extended from *Sierra Leona* so called from the *Lyon*-like roaring of the Waves beating on that Promontory in the 10th. degree of *Longitude*, to the Borders of *Benin* in the 30th. But the *Portugals* comprehend under this name the whole Sea-Coast of *Africa* from *Cape Blanco* and the Country of *Ora Anselosa*, to *Angola* and *Congo*, inclusively, in the *Lower Ethiopia*. But take it in the proper sense, as before limited, and we shall find it to be rich in Gold, Ivory, Rice, Barly, *Cotton-Wool*, and a sort of Pepper, which the *Portugals* call *Pimenta del Cabo*, the Natives *Melagena*, and we *Guiny-Pepper*, of double the efficacy of the Pepper which comes from *India*, and therefore forbidden to be sold by the King of *Portugal*, for fear their *Indian*-trade should be discontinued. Well stored with Sheep, Poultry, and of *Dates* good plenty. All other fruits which

which they want, or care for, are brought higher from *Gualata*. Birds in abundance, and of Elephants and Apes too many. A Tree they have, by them called *Mignolo*, the Bark whereof being cut, doth afford a most excellent Liquor, more pleasant, strong and nourishing than the choicest Wines, which they drink of in their great Feasts, even to drunkenness. The people of both Sexes very rude and barbarous, as well in their habit as their manners; yet amongst many barbarous Customs, they have one most commendable, which is the breeding of their *Maidens*. When Marriageable, they place them in a house levered from the rest of their Cities, like a *Cloyster*, or *Monastery*, where for a space they are trained up by some old man of best estimation. At the years end they are brought out well apparelled, with *Musick* and *Dances*; where the young men please themselves in the choice of their Wives: for whom having bargained with their Parents, they satisfy the old man for his care and pains in their Education. They keep one day of rest weekly, but there differ from all Nations of the World besides, that they keep their Sabbath upon the *Tuesday*. Distracted into as many Kingdoms as great Tribes or Families; the Kings thereof subordinate unto one another, as they lye more within the Land, till they end all in a subjection to the King of *Mandinga*, Places of most note. 1. *Songui*, the principal of *Mandinga*, about 100 Leagues Eastward from the *Cape of Palmes*. 2. *Budamel* the chief Town of the Kingdom so called. 3. *Uxo*, in the Centre of all the Country. 4. *Mina*, a strong hold of the *Portugals*, situate near the *Cape* called *Cabo de trois pontas*, the three pointed *Cape*; named sometimes also *S. George de Mina*, by the name of the *Cappadocian* Martyr, and the *Mines of Gold*, which they hoped to find there: By which, and by the Fort of *Arguin*, which they have upon *Cape Blanco*, in the North part of this Land of the *Negres*, they command all the Countries which they call by the name of *Guinea*. This Town not built until the year 1486, in the beginning of the Reign of *John* the Second, though the discovery of these Coasts had been made before, Anno 1482, under the Conduct of Prince *Henry Duke of Viseu*, Son of *John* the First. By whose encouragement the *Portugueses* did first imploy themselves in Foreign Discoveries, and became enamoured of the Seas. For in this interval, the *Portugals* being more covetous of new Discoveries, than of fortifying and securing the old, gave opportunity to the *Castilians* to look after this Country, who having took a view of it in the year 1477, purified the Enterprise the next year with a Fleet of 35 Ships, under the Command of *Pedro de Caboto*, who brought thence great quantity of Gold: but in the year 1479, by an Agreement, or Capitulation between those Princes, the Trade hereof was again left free to the *Portugals*, who thereupon discovering the ill use of *S. George*, and finding it a fit place to secure and command the rest, built in it the strong Fort or Castle of *Mina*, which before we spoke of.

14. *BENIN* lieth directly East of *Guinea*, by the *Portugals* reckoned for a Province, or Kingdom of its, the King whereof is said to have 600 Wives, with all which twice a year he goeth out in Pomp. The Gentlemen (if I abuse not the name) have most of them 80 Wives, some more; he that is poorest ten or twelve, and the more the merrier. The people hereof do cut and raise their skin with three lines drawn to the Navel, esteeming it necessary to Salvation. They use all, both men and women, to go naked till they are married; and then to be clothed only from the waist to the knees; so that had our Sir *Thomas Moor* lived in these parts, he had in some measure had his desire. For he amongst other strange Plots in his *Utopian* Commonwealth, telleth us, how there it is the Custom for some Reverend *Old Sir* to bring in naked the young

man; and some hoary *Old Matron* to present naked the young woman, between whom a Marriage is propounded. For, faith he, in buying a Horse, the Chapman not only vieweth his naked Carcass, but taketh off all his trappings and fiddle, left under them some Blain or Ulcer might be hidden: why then in chusing of a Wife should we take care, of whom we see no more than the Face (*Uinus Palus spectamus*) and perhaps scarce that? The learned and ingenious Author of the *New Atlantis*, though he dislike of Marriages made upon such uncertainties, yet he would have this discovery made by some friends of the Parties, not by them themselves; it being, as he faith, very inconvenient: that after such a plain and familiar light of each others Person, there should be a refusal on either side. But the new *Project* I refer to your modest censure.

15. *GUANGARA* lieth on the North of *Benin*, a wealthy and well-peopled Country, but their Towns and Villages very mean, except that called by the same name with the Country, where the King resideth, which is somewhat better than the rest, well traded and full of rich Merchants. The King hereof, of so great Revenues, that he keepeth seven thousand Archers, and five hundred Horse in continual pay; but *Homager* and Tributary to the King of *Bornum*.

16. *BORNUM*, a large and opulent Country on the West of *Guangara*, is there extended to the length of 500 miles. Distinguished equally in a manner into hills and valleys: the hills inhabited by Neat-herds and Shepherds, breeding great Flocks and Herds of Cattel, with Mill, and many other fruits to us unknown; the Valleys replenished with many Market Towns, and as full of Corn. The people are of no Religion, but live like Beasts; without propriety so much as in their Wives, or Children: nor are they differentiated by names, as in other places, but by some mark upon their bodies: Which though it seem strange to us of this present Age, yet was it thus in part with our *Saxon Ancestors*. Whence have we the names of *White, Brown, Black, Grey, Green, and Tawny*; or those of *Long, Short, Low, Curly, Crisp*, and others, but from such *Originals*? not to say any thing of the names of Trades and Occupations, so familiar with us. The name of their chief City is *Borno*, where the King resideth. A potent Prince, who keepeth in continual pay 3000 Horse, and great numbers of Foot, and yet is said to have no other Revenue, than what he getteth by strong hand from his Enemies. Which if it be true, those Kings must needs be good Warriors, and have great success also in their undertakings: it being also said of these Kings of *Borno*, that all the Furniture of their Houses, all the Dishes, Cups and Platters which they eat or drink in, the very Chains for his Dogs, were of the finest Gold.

17. *GAOGA* lieth betwixt *Borno*, and the Deserts of *Nubia*: the Country almost square, each side thereof extended 500 miles. The people ignorant, rude, uncivil, but especially those which dwell in the Mountains: their houses built most of boughs and leas, which once dry, easily take fire; but the best is, they are soon repaired: their greatest wealth is in their Cattel, which they keep most tenderly. About the year 1420, they were brought into subjection by a *Negro Slave*, who having slain his Master, by the help of his wealth grew strong enough to inchoat on his Neighbours; and filling fish Captives as he took for Horses of *Egypt*, became King of *Gaoga*, and in fine very gracious with the *Mamuluck* Sultans. His Successors have since so enlarged their Territories, that they are second unto none but the Kings of *Tombutum*.

18. *NUBIA* hath on the West *Gaoga*, bounded on the North with *Egypt*, extended Eastward unto *Nilus*, by which parted from *Ethiopia Superior*, or the *Habessin* Empire, so called from the *Nubæ*, an ancient and potent people

people of this Tract, spoken of by *Ptolomy*: the great Lake, anciently called *Nuba Palus*, being hence denominated. A distinct people from those of the same name, dwelling on the shores of the *Red-Sea*, near unto *Sinus Aduletis*, who from the horns of their stature passed in account for *Pygmies*: *Núba* Πυγμαίοι, faith *Hesychius* an old Grammarian: these being a strong and potent Nation, and well skilled in Wars. Infomuch, as *Cyriacus* once a King hereof, understanding of some prestures laid upon the *Christians* of *Egypt*, is said to have raised 100000 Horse for their aid and succour; but by the perswasions of the *Patriarch* of *Alexandria*, went back unfought with. For at that time the Country was wholly *Christian*, and had been so from the very days of the *Apostles*; but are now fallen off again to their former *Idolatries*, or become *Mahometans*, for want of Ministers to instruct them. It is recorded by *Alvarez*, the Writer of the *Ethiopic* History, that at his being in the Court of the *Abissine* Emperour there came Ambassadors out of *Nubia* to intreat a supply of *Palors* to instruct their Nation, and repair *Christianity* amongst them; but were unchristianly rejected.

Here is a *Payson* in this Country, of which the tenth part of a Grain will dispatch a man in a quarter of an hour, and is sold for ten Ducats an ounce; the Custom for which unto the King, is as much as the price unto the Merchant. But for this one ill Commodity they have many good; that is to say, Corn, Sugar, Civet, Sanders, Ivory, all in great abundance; some store of Gold, and other Metals. The Country naturally sandy, but well refreshed with Lakes and Rivers which do much enrich it, infomuch as the people generally are very wealthy, and manage a great Trade with the Merchants of *Chire* and *Egypt*. Their chief City is called *Dangala*, large and well frequented; said to contain no fewer than 100000 Families, but their Houses built of nothing but Thatch and Mortar. In other parts, especially towards the River *Nilu*, they have many Villages, few or none of them worth the naming.

There are many other Kingdoms in this Land of *Negroes*, besides these in *Guinea* but of lesser note; as 19. *BITO*. 20. *TEMIANO*. 21. *ZEGZEG*. 22. *ZANFARA*. 23. *GOTHAN*. 24. *MEDRA*. 25. *DAUM*. Of which there is nothing to be spoken, but of their Poverty or Riches, Blessings or Curses, common to them with the rest of these Nations, and therefore I purposely omit them.

The Country, or a great part of it, was anciently accounted part of *Libya Interior*, inhabited besides the *Nubae*, and *Nigrita* spoken of before, by the *Nababira* dwelling about the Hill *Aravater*, the *Aronea*, near the Hill *Arangus*, the *Agargina*, *Xylines*, and *Alcalabines*, *Ethiopic* Nations. Not much considerable in the business of former times; not much discovered (not very perfectly at this time) till the year 973, at what time certain *Mahometan* Preachers, out of a superstitious zeal to pro-

pagate their Sect, first opened the way into these Countries: the people then living like brute beasts, without King, Law, or any form of Government, scarce knowing how to sow their Lands, clad in the skins of as many beasts as themselves, and challenging no propriety in Wives or Children. First conquered by *Joseph* King of *Morocco*, of the race of the *Amohades*; and after that by the Five Nations of *Libya Deserta*, who divided them into fifteen parts, every one of those Five Nations possessing three of them. One of the Kings of these *Libyans*, named *Soni Heli*, being slain by *Ahuaci* *Ischia*, General of his Forces, and the rest terrified with that blow, Anno 1526, the *Negroes* once again recovered their long lost liberty, and instituted divers Kings of their own. Amongst them, *Ischia* was most deservedly made King of *Tombutun*, who managing his Affairs so well, that he conquered the Kings of *Gubber*, *Azadez*, *Cano*, *Melli*, *Zanfara*, *Zegzeg*, *Ghenaou*, *Gamben*, and *Casena*, which he made his Tributaries. So that his Successors are now the greatest of those five Kings who have the supreme power over all the rest. The other four, 1. the King of *Mandinga*, lording it over the Realm of *Benin*, *Giolesi*, and the Kings of *Guinea*, 2. the King of *Borneo*, the only one that is defended of the *Libyan* Race, in greatness of command next to him of *Tombutun*, 3. the King of *Gualata*, whose Kingdom is confined within that one Province, but therein absolute and supreme; and 4. the King of *Ganga*, Paramount over all the rest of these Provinces.

But because the greatest power is in the hands of the King of *Tombutun*, who possibly enough may in short time bring all the rest under his command, we will take a more particular view of his Estate affirmed to be the richest Prince in these parts of *Africa*, and to have many Plates and Scepters of Gold, some of which weigh 1300 pound weight. When any of his Subjects do appear before him they kneel on both their knees, and bowing their heads unto the ground, cast sand over their shoulders and upon their head, going forward fill upon their knees. His Court he keeps in a royal manner, continually guarded with 3000 Horse, but with many more Foot, all armed with Bows and empoyned Arrows. To the *Jews* a very bitter Enemy, whom he admitteth not to trade in his Kingdoms, and confiscate the goods of all such of his Subjects as hold traffick with them. Zealous of the *Mahometan* Law; and liberal in stipends to the Doctors and Professors of it. Of greater power than any other beyond *Alex*, but the *Habissine* Emperour. And though *Amet* the Xeriff of *Morocco*, in the year 1589, had some hand upon him, and conquered a great part of this Kingdom even as far as *Gago*, extending his Empire six months Journey, by Camels, beyond *Morocco*, yet it held not long: this King again recovering what was taken from him; and being since that time in as eminent power, as ever in any times before.

And so much for *TERRA NIGRITARUM*.

OF ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR

ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR is bounded on the East with the *Red Sea*, & the *Sinus Barbaricus*, on the West with *Libya Interior*, the Realm of *Nubia*, in the land of the *Negroes*, & part of the Kingdom of *Congo* in the other *Ethiopia*, on the North with *Egypt*, and *Libya Marmarica*, and on the South with the Mountains of the *Moos*, by which parted from the main body of *Ethiopia Inferior*.

It was first called *Ethiopia*, and afterwards *Atlantia*, as *Pliny* telleth us. In the end, the *Grecians* gave it the name of *Ethiopia*, from the Greek words *Al-Su*, signifying to burn, and *El*, a Countenance, because the violent heats of the Sun had so scorched the Countenances of the Inhabitants. The additions of *Sub Egypto*, *Superior* and *Inferior*, serve only to distinguish it from the other *Ethiopia*, which lyeth further off from *Egypt*, on the outside of this. It is called also *Regnum Abyssinorum*, from the *Absini*, or *Abyssini*, a people of *Arabia Felix*; who passing over the *Red Sea*, (not above seven miles broad in the narrowest place) came and settled here. And in the Scripture it is styled by the name of *Ludim*, from *Lud* the son of *Miscraim*, who first planted it, as hath been proved by many strong and concluded Arguments in our *General Preface*.

It is situate on both sides of the *Equinoctial*, extending from the South *Parallel* of seven Degrees, where it meeteth with some part of the other *Ethiopia*, to the Northern end of the Isle of *Moroc*, situate under the fifth *Parallel* on the North of that Circle. And though by this account it fall short of the dimensions assigned by some, who extended it from one *Tropic* unto the other, yet is it of a very great length, no less than 1500 miles; the breadth about half as much, the whole circumference amounting to 4300 miles. Yet so, that this vast Tract of ground, is not to be understood of that part of the Country which is under the command of the *Abissine* Emperour, commonly but mistakingly called *Prefect John*; but of the whole Country of *Ethiopia*, as before limited and extended, containing besides his Estate, the Kingdom of *Adel & Adoa*, & the provinces of *Quilao* and *Melinda*; which two last are now reckoned of as parts of *Ethiopia Inferior*. The Isle of *Moroc* in the North is possessed by *Mahometans*, the most bitter Enemies of this King: all on the West of *Nilu*, betwixt it and the South-east of *Nubia*, inhabited by the *Anziebi*, an *Idolatrous* and man-eating Nation, subject to a great Prince of their own; and all the Coasts of the *Red-Sea*, as well within the *Streights* of *Babel Mandel*, as without, except the port of *Erecco* only, enjoyed by *Arabians* and *Moors*, who do acknowledge no subjection unto his Commands, but are under the Kings of *Adel* and *Adoa*; before mentioned.

But taking in the largest signification and extent hereof (according unto which we must here describe it) it comprehendeth the three Countries called anciently *Ethiopia Sub Egypto*, *Trogloditica*, and *Regio Cinnamomifera*.

Of these, the two last are by some reckoned but as parts of the first; though certainly the *Troglodites* were a different Nation from the *Ethiopi*. For past all doubt the *Troglodites*, were originally an *Arabian* People, so called *quia troglodytes subterranei*; from their living in Caves and dens, in which respect their part of this Country had the name of *Arabia Trogloditica*, in *Disparides*, and some others of ancient Writers. Of this it is affirmed by *Temponius Mela*, that they were not the Masters of any wealth, and that their speech was rather a gnawing of the teeth, than any articulate and intelligible Pronunciation. *Nihilarum opum Domini sunt Troglodites frident magis quam loquuntur*. As for their houses, they were (faith he) no better than Caves, and their food than Serpents. With whom concurteth *Pliny* also for their dwelling in Caves, and consequently for the reason of the name, laying positively, *Troglodites speluncas excavant*. Called for the same reason in the holy Scripture, *Ch. Ch. 12. 1.* by the name of *Succhi*, the word *Succhi* (whence that name derived) not only signifying in the Hebrew, Tents, or Tabernacles, but Caves and Dens; and so translated *Ps. 10. v. 5.* and *Job 28. v. 40.* As for that part hereof which was called *Regio Cinnamomifera*, taking up the southern parts in the time of *Ptolomy*, it took that name from the abundance of *Cinnamon*, which was then growing in it; now not a tree of it to be found in all this Country, as the *Portugals*, who have look'd narrowly for it, have affirm'd unto us. Shipp'd at *Abyssin*, a noted Emport, placed by *Ptolomy* in the ninth degree of Northern Latitude; it was thence transported into *Egypt*, and other Countries; as is said by *Pliny*, *Portus Mossilitum quo Cinnamomum devehitur*: the Spice in some Authors being called *Mossilum*, by the name of the Town. *ἄριστον ἢ τὸ λεγόμενον μέσολον, τὸ ἀπὸ μέσολος ἡδύος*. Of *Cinnamon* the best is that which is call'd *Mossilum*; because brought from the City of that name in *Ethiopia*, faith *Simeon Sethi* in his Tract de *Facultatibus Ciborum*. As for this *Cinnamon* (I note this only by the way) it is the inner bark of a Tree as big as an Olive, with Leaves like Bay-leaves: the drying of which maketh it roll together, and every three years is renewed, and stripped off again. Some think it came first from the *Sine* or the Country which the *Romans* called *Sinarum Regio*, the *Moderns China*; and that it was so called, *quasi Sina Anomum* the *Anomum* of the *Sina*: *Anomum* being the name of a sweet perfume growing in *Affrica* and *Armenia*. But then it should be written *Sinamomum*, and not *Cinnamomum*; yet to give the greater credit to the former opinion, they of *Ormus* called *Bar-Chine*, or the wood of *China*. But of this enough.

To go on therefore unto *Ethiopia* it self; The people of it in old times were said to have been great *Astrologers*, the first ordinaries also of sacred Ceremonies, and in both to be Tutors to the *Egyptians*. They were also noted to be very good *Archers*, and to draw the longest and strongest Bows of any Nation: the *Persian* Bow (though those the greatest of all *Asia*) being only three cubits long; but these of *Ethiopia* four. *Ότιοντι ετιαν Εθιοπες quatour Cubi*.

torum arcibus, as we read in *Strabo*; the like is said also by *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*. Their *Arrows* finally, but strong, for the most part poynted, *Æthiopum geminata agmina unguera*, as we find in *Claudian*; and for that inhumanity very much condemned. But not to spend our time too much upon these particulars, *Pliny* reciteth two strange things of this Country: 1. That the air and Ground are so parching hot, that the people not only dare not go out of doors without hoods, but that they roast their meat also by setting it in the Sun. 2. That there is a Lake whose waters are thrice a day, and thrice a night, exceeding salt and unpleasing; but at all other times most sweet and delicate to the Palate.

This Country being as big as *Germany*, *France*, and *Italy* laid together, is but meanly populous, the *disfemurature* of the *Climax*, and the dry barrenness of the ground, not admitting a multitude. For this cause *Africk* is by *Strabo* compared to a *Leopard's skin*, the distance of whose Spots sheweth the dispersedness of the Towns and habitations in those torrid Countries. A Country scarce in Wheat, but sufficiently plentiful in Rice, Barly, Beans, Pease, and the like; they have abundance of Sugars, Minerals of all sorts, and infinite herds of Oxen, Sheep, Goats. Finally, there is no Country under Heaven fitter for increase of Plants, and Living Creatures, if industry were not deficient. But in regard of this defect, they are destitute of many necessary things, which otherwise the natural commodities of the Country would supply them with. For they have here great store of *Flax*, but make no Cloth; plenty of *Vines*, yet make no *Wine*, except it be to serve the Palaces of the King and *Patriarch*; abundance of *Sugar-Cane*, and mines of *Iron*, but know not how to make use of either unto any advantage. Rivers and Brooks in many places, but will not take the pains to dig Channels or trenches, to drive their waters to the rest of the land which want them; those Rivers almost choaked with *Fish*, their Woods crammed with *Venison*, which they trouble not themselves to catch.

By this we may conjecture somewhat of the people also: Lazy and given unto their ease, ill clothed and not better housed; extremely inclined to *Barbarism*, destitute of all learning; not to be credited unless they swear by the life of their Emperours; they hate a *Smith* equally with the Devil: their colour is generally Olive-tawny, excepting only their King himself, who is always of a white complexion; a wonderful prerogative, if true. This blackness of their bodies, by the Poet attributed to the burning of the world by *Phœton*.

*Sanguis tum erigunt in corpora summa vocato,
Æthiopum populus nigrum transiit colore.*

Which may be Englished thus.

Their blood (it's thought) drawn from the outward part, The *Æthiops* grew to black and swart,

But the true cause hereof, whatsoever it be, may perhaps be looked upon hereafter, when we come to *America*.

The *Christian* Faith was first made known in this Country by the *Eunuch* of *Queen Candace*, who was baptized by *Philip* the *Evangelist*, and one of the *Seven*; more generally embraced by the pains and preaching of *S. Matthew* the Apostle hereof, but not totally propagated over all this Empire, till the reign of *Abraham*, Anno 470. who in his life entituled himself the Defender and Propagator of the Religion of *CHRIST*, and after his death was generally honoured as a *Saint*. Suppressed in part by the coming in of the *Abassins* and other *Arabi*ans, it was again revived and more universally received than in former times, in the reign of *David* King of the

Axumite *Æthiops*: who in a War against *Dannus* King of the *Homerties* in *Arabia Felix* solemnly vowed to the God of the *Christians* to become one of his Followers, if he got the victory; and so accordingly he did, sending his Ambassadors to the Emperor *Justinian*, for some Bishops and other learned men to instruct his people. The particulars of the purity of the true Religion, they have since corrupted the purity of the true Religion, I find thus registered. 1. They use to circumcise their Children, both males and females; 2. They baptize the males 40, and the females 18 days after their circumcision; 3. After the receipt of the Sacrament, they are not to spit till Sun-set; 4. They profess but one Nature and one Will in *CHRIST*: 5. They accept only the three first General Councils; 6. Their Priests live by the labour of their hands, for they allow them nothing, and permit them not to beg; 7. They baptize themselves every Epiphany day in Lakes and Ponds, because that day they suppose *Christ* to have been baptized by *John* in *Jordan*; 8. They eat not of those Beasts, which in the old Law are reckoned for unclean; 9. They keep the *Saturday* or *Jewish Sabbath*, equally solemn with the *Lords Day*; 10. They administer the *Eucharist* to Infants presently after Baptism.

11. They teach that the Reasonable soul of man is deriv'd from their parents by *menstrual Propagation*; 12. That Infants dying unbaptized, are sanctified in the womb, by virtue of the *Eucharist* received by the Mother after her Conception. And finally, they shew a Book of eight Volumes, writ, as they say, by the Apostles at *Jerusalem* for that purpose, the Contents whereof they observe most solemnly. These are the most material points in which they differ from the Tendencies of the *Catholic* Church. And there are other Points in which they differ only from the Church of *Rome*, viz. 1. Admiration in both kinds; 2. Without either Elevation, or Relevation; 3. Rejecting *idol* Images; & 4. *Extreme* Unction; 5. Allowing the first marriages to their Priests and Bishops; and 6. In renouncing all relation to the Church of *Rome*, who to the business of these Churches is a very stranger; & so hath been from the very first foundation of them. For it appears by the Canons of the *Nicene* Council, extant in the *Arabick*, and translated into *Latine* by *Pisani*, that the Patriarch (or *Abuna* as they called him) of these *Abassine* Churches, was in those times subordinate to the *Alexandrian*, confirmed in that Supremacy by the Fathers, which there were allowed; & constantly ever since approved and practised by these Churches; in the Liturgies whereof, the name of the *Alexandrian* is remembered before their own. To this Patriarch, by an ancient privilege belongeth the seventh place in the Sessions of all General Councils; the Archbishop of *Selucia* (or *Babylon*) only interpoling betwixt him and the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*. Elected by the *Abassine* Monks of *S. Antonia's* Order remaining in *Jerusalem*, and confirmed by the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, (of which Order, & of whose jurisdiction he must always be) he is sent into this Country to take his charge: where in some points of *Civil* nature, he hath equal privilege with the Emperor himself, and in *Spiritual*, hath the sole power of excommunicating an obdurate sinner. All other Ecclesiastical Dignities from the Bishoprick to the lowest Benefice, are conferred by the Emperor only.

The Principal Mountains of it in the former time, had the names of 1. *Primotus*, 2. *Jusus*, 3. *Monaditylus*, 4. *Gaurus*, and 5. *Mont Satoryum*, all of them in that part which was called *Trogloditica*: 6. *Garbale*, 7. *Elphas*, and 8. *Masse*, in the Isle of *Meroe*: the rest of the Country flat and level, or the hills not eminent. Rivers of most note, 1. *Abissus*, (now *Albani*) arising out of a great Lake called *Coloe*, now the Lake of *Barcena*, 2. *Asaborus*, now *Tacasse*;

Tacasse; both falling into the River *Nilus*. 3. *Nilu*, of which before when we were in *Egypt*, whose Spring unprofitably fought for in the elder times, is now said to be out of the Lake *Zembe* in the other *Æthiopia*, eleven Degrees beyond the *Aequator*; whence passing through spacious *Deserts*, large Lakes and many great Kingdoms he at last entrench into this. Here in some places struggling amongst broken Rocks, and less free passages, he falleth with such a wonderful noise into the Vallies beneath, that a Colony planted by the *Persians* near one of these *Cataracts*, (so they call those huge falls of his) were so dulle and deafened with the noise, that they were fain to abandon their habitations. Nor doth it only dull and deafen the neighbouring people, but the very hills do seem to tremble at the noise it maketh. Of which thus the Poet,

*Cuncta tremunt undis, & multo murmure montis,
Spumens invictis abscis fluctibus amnis.*

Which may be Englished in these words;

The noise the mountains shakes, who roar for spite
To see it unvanquish'd Waves cloath'd all in white.

Of the *Cataract*: here are two most noted: the one called *Cataract Major*, in the borders of this Country towards *Egypt*, but South of both the Cities of *Phila*, and *Felcis*, *Æthiopian* Cities the other called *Cataract Minor*, not far from *Elephantis* a City of *Egypt*, neighbouring to *Syene* the last City of that Country towards this. So turbulent is this River amongst the Hills. And yet as terrible as these Falls are supposed to be, one may divers times see the Country people in a little Boat not able to contain above two persons, to venture down them without fear appearing after they have been long tossed in the water, a great distance off, as if they had been shot out of an Engine. Nor is he of such quick passage in the open Countries, but that the Inhabitants of this Kingdom are fain to cut many Ditches, Sluces, and By-channels to receive his waters, which if not curbed and lessened by such ways as these, might by some sudden overflowing much endanger *Egypt*: in respect whereof the *Sultans* of *Egypt* have paid for a long time to the *Abassine* Emperours an annual tribute. Which when the *Great Turk*, supposing it a needless charge, had once denied: this people, by the command of their Emperour, did open their Sluces, and brake down the Dams; whereby the water fell so violently and so fast into *Egypt* that the *Turk* was not only glad to continue tribute, but to give them great sums of money to make up their works. But others say, that this acknowledgment was paid by the *Egyptian* Kings, not so much for keeping up the waters from drowning *Egypt*, as for fear the *Abassine* Emperours should divert the Stream, and so deprive that Country of the benefit of it. But I incline rather to the former. Here are also said to be some Lakes of that poysonous nature, that whoever drinketh of them doth either immediately fall mad, or else is troubled for long time with continual drowsiness. Of which thus *Ovid*:

*Æthiopique Lacus, quos squis fœvitibus hausit,
Aut fœris, aut patitur mirum gravitate soporem.*

Which may be paraphrased in these words:

Who doth not know the *Æthiopian* Lake?
Of which whoever drinks, he thirns to slake,
Either grows mad, or doth his life oppress
With an unboard of drowsiness.

To look upon the State as it stood in the former times we find in it besides the Lakes and Rivers before mentioned, three capacious Baysthai, is to say, 1. *Sinus Adulicus*, 2. *Sinus Audites*, and 3. *Sinus Barbaricus*; the two last neighboured by the now Countreys of *Adel* and *Melinde*. Havens of note and Rodes for shipping, there were five in all, viz. 1. *Babue*, or the deep Haven; 2. *Diofcorus* *Forum*, or the Haven of *Cayor* and *Pollux*; 3. *Theon Soterum*, or the Haven of the *Saviour-Gods*; 4. *Portus Evangelicorum*, *Gospel-Port*, or the Port of Good News; and 5. *Serapionis*, the Port of *Serapion*, with a Promontory of the same near adjoining to it. For other Promontories which in so long a tract of Sea must needs be many; the Principal were, 1. *Bajsum*, 2. *Mucium*, 3. *Dimeris*, 4. *Aspis*, 5. *Ara Ameris*, 6. *Colobon*, 7. the Promontory of *Saitum*, 8. *Moslen*, with a noted Empery of the same name; 9. *Aromata* near another well frequented Empery of the same name also; and 10. that of *Noticum*. Then for the Towns of greatest Trading, besides those last mentioned, we have, 1. *Avulites*, 2. *Mado*, 3. *Mudi*, 4. *Cube*, and 5. *Acane* in the Bay of *Avulites*, 6. *Opone*, in the Bay of *Barbaria*, 7. *Ejfine*, on the South of the *Aequatorial*. Then for their Cities, we have amongst many others, the names of 1. *Epitharia*, by *Ptolemy* called *Ptolemias Ferrarum*, 2. *Adulis*, and 3. *Avulites*, giving names unto their several Bays; 4. *Rapta*, the Metropolis of that part of this Country which was called *Barbaria*, lying along the shores of the *Sinus Barbaricus*; which as it taketh name from the River *Rapta*, upon which it is situate; so they do both agree in communicating it to the Promontory called *Rapum*; 5. *Meroe*, the chief City of the Isle so called; 6. *Sabab* in the Bay of *Adulis*, which possibly might be some Colony of the *Sabeans*, in *Arabia Felix*; by *Pliny*, called *Tolan*, not far from the great Lake so named. 7. *Cambusis*, by *Ptolemy* called *Cambysis* *Ærarum*, from some treasures laid up here by *Cambyses* the *Persian*, in his invasion of this Country. 9. *Axumti*, the chief City of the *Axumites*, a most potent people of these parts, and the Seat Royal of the old *Æthiopian* Kings. 10. *Napata*, as *Ptolemy*; but by most others called *Tamra*: of old the residence of the *Æthiopian* Emperours, sacked and ruined by *Petronius*, President of *Egypt*. For when *Candace* (the Predecessor, I believe, of her whose *Eunuch* was baptized by *Philip*) had ranacked and wasted *Egypt* with Fire and Swords, *Petronius* Lieutenant to *Augustus*, drove them home, harried the whole Country, put this City to the spoil; and to prevent the like inroads, fortified the Frontiers of his Province. 11. *Phila*, upon the borders of *Egypt*, Garrisoned by the *Romans* till the time of *Dioclesian*; and by him abandoned. Of some of these, and others not here mentioned, we may have opportunity to speak more hereafter, in the survey of some of these particular Provinces, into which this Country stands divided at this present time.

And for the Provinces comprehended at this time within the bounds and limits of this *Æthiopia*, as before laid down, they are said to make up 70 Kingdoms; most of them subject to the *Abassine* Emperour. The principal of which are, 1. *Gaugere*, 2. *Tigremant*, 3. *Angot*, 4. *Anuna*, 5. *Damir*, 6. *Gajiani*, 7. *Bagamedum*, 8. *Barasagilum*, 9. *Adel*, 10. *Adia*, 11. *Danpali*, 12. *Dobai*, 13. *Patigari*, 14. *Xoa*, 15. *Barau*. Concerning which I must premise, that I find the Relations of them to be very imperfect, many times disagreeing, sometimes false: so that I must profess myself to be less satisfied in the description of this Country, than in any of the rest which have gone before. Such as it is, I here present it to the Reader.

I. GUAGERE.

GUAGERE containeth only the Island of *Meroe*, an Island of much note and fame among the Ancients; made by the confluences of *Nilus* and *Ashabura*, the two chief Rivers of this Country. The length hereof 350 miles, the breadth 125, abundantly plentiful of Gold, Silver, Brass, Iron, Ivory, Precious Stones, and an excellent kind of Mineral Salt. Well stored with most sorts of Beasts, both tame and wild, and of the last fort with Lyons, Leopards, Rhinoceros, Elephants, and Dragons.

The people are of the same nature & complexion with the rest: *Mahometans* by Religion, and the professed Enemies of the *Abessinian* Emperor against whom they do not only defend themselves, by the advantages and benefit of their situation; but confederating with the *Turks* and *Arabians*, fill many times with great Forces into his dominions. It is said by *Pliny* of the Inhabitants of this Island, that twice a year, viz. when the Sun is in the 16 degree of *Taurus*, and the 14 of *Leo*, they have the Sun fo perpendicular above their heads, that he casts the Sun fo perpendicular above their heads, that he casts no shadow. More anciently memorable for their long lives, than their great exploits, attaining ordinarily to 123 years of Age; and therefore called *Metroviti* by the old Greek Writers. The women said to be of such great breasts in the former times, that they did suckle their children over their shoulders (as some women are now said to do near the *Cape of Good Hope*;) the Dug being bigger than the Child. Of which thus *Juvenal*,

In Metoc crasso majorem Infante mamillam.

In *Meroe* the Mothers Pap
Is bigger than the child in lap.

The Principal Cities hereof. 1. *Meroe*, which gave that name unto the Island, but took the same from *Meroe*, a sister of *Cambyses* King of *Persia*, or as *Eusebius* faith, from *Merida*, the mother of *Cenebris*, a King of *Egypt*. *Josephus* telleth us, that in former times it had been called by the name of *Sabonon* authority of whose mistake it hath been made the *Regal City* of that Queen of *Sheba* (the Queen of *Egypt*, and *Æthiopia*, as *Joseph* calleth her) who came to *Soloman*. An opinion fo received amongst these Islanders, that the name of *Meroe* being laid by, they have reformed the name of *Saba* to this City, as of greater eminence. The City said by some to contain about 5000 houses, great and sumptuous, the streets thereof be large and spacious, with Galleries on each side before the doors of their houses, where men walk safe from all extremities of heat, or rain. Beautified with four chief Gates, (besides others of inferior note) built of *Alabastr* and *Jasper*, wrought with *Anick* works: the doors belonging to those Gates of *Cedar*, curiously wrought; the ways which lead unto them, for the space of two leagues, beset with Palms, Orange trees, Cedars, Cypresses, and others no less useful both for shade and fruit. In the place where the four streets going from the Gates, do cross each other a goodly Arch erected upon stately pillars, fairly wrought and gilded, with the Statue of *St. Matthew* made of brass, but gilded, on the top thereof. Such it is said to be by some. Others think there is no such City; it may be not fo beautiful, as some have made it. The other Towns of note and name in it, in former times, 2. *Sacole*, 3. *Darvum Vicus*, 4. *Ejer*, of which we have little but the name.

This Island was once a peculiar Kingdom; he being chosen for their King, who excelled the rest in strength,

perfon, or in stock of Cattel, but those Kings fo subject to their *Priests*, that by a Messenger, or *Herald*, they were sentenced by them unto death, and others advanced unto the Throne. And thus it stood till one of the more provident Kings, forcing the Temple with his Armed Soldiers, slew all these *Priests*; and freed himself and his successors from fo great a slavery, afterwards made a Province of the Kingdom of *Æthiopia*, honoured for the most part with the Seat of those Kings; and memorable in those times for the Table of the Sun: which was a place near the City of *Meroe*, always furnished with variety of roasted meat, set there by night at the charge and command of the King (much taken as it seemeth with this costly vanity) and eaten in the day time by all that would; called therefore the Table of the Sun, because ascribed unto his bounty by the ignorant people. In the declining of this Kingdom, occasioned by the inundation of the *Saracens* and other *Arabians*, this Island was seized on by that people, and hath been ever since kept by them together with the rest of the Country, lying betwixt it and *Egypt*, in which are contained, as some write, the Kingdoms of *Damata*, *Sua*, and *Jafculum*, anciently belonging to this Empire, now dismembered from it: not much observable, but for being a thoroughfare to great troops of *Pilgrims*, which every *Lem* pass by them out of the *Abessinian* Dominions, to the *Sepulchre* and other like places in and near *Jerusalem*.

2. TIGREMAON.

TIGREMAON, hath on the North, *Guagere* and the River *Marcho*, by which last parted from *Bartagasso*, on the South, the Realm of *Angote*; on the West, *Nilus*. On the East it is said to extend to the *Red-Sea*, but the Sea-parts thereof possessed by the *Turks*, and the adjoining Coast by the *Moor* and *Arabians*; the In-land parts peculiarly inhabited especially more towards the Sea, by *Christians* and *Ethiops*. Divided into many inferior Regions, the principal whereof, 1. *Sabian*, 2. *Torrates*, 3. *Baldado*, so called perhaps from the chief Towns of them, and 4. *Tigra*, the most large and ample of all these subordinate Provinces, as containing in it 17 great Tracts under fo many Lieutenants, which rule all Affairs both of peace and War. The people black of colour, deformed of shape in condition miserable, of conditions wicked. Some Rivers they have, but dried up in Summer; yet so, that with a little digging they find water in them. Their chief City *Gaxumo*, or *Calsumo*; supposed to be the same which *Ptolemy* calleth *Ancume*; *Stephanus*, *Acomites*; *Procopius*, *Anzomide*: by all of them esteemed the *Metropolitan City* of *Æthiopia*, and the Seat Royal of their Kings. In witness whereof are many ancient buildings yet remaining, some Pillars which resemble the *Egyptian Obelisks*, admirable for their height and workmanship: 60 foot high and full of Characters, or Letters engraven on them, which now none can read. The *Æthiopian Ancumites*, the most potent Nation of this Country, had their name from hence; more probably conceived to be the regal Seat of *Candace*, (mentioned in the *Acts*) than any other in the Kingdom; and still affirmed to be honoured with the Court of their Emperours. Others I know have fixed his Court in *Beimalechi*, but I know not in what part to find it: some in a Royal Palace near the lake of *Zembra*, built in the year 1570, by some *European Architects* sent hither by *Francis Duke of Florence*: and many will allow him no fixed Seat at all; but tell us that he moveth with his Tents in a Royal Progress from one place to another; which wandering Court, or moving City is said to be no less than ten miles in compass, when the

Pavilions

Pavilions which belong to it, are disposed of into Rank and Order.

This Kingdom is governed by a Prince of its own, but one who is an *Homager* and Tributary to the *Abessinian* Emperor; to whom he payeth yearly 200 Hories of the best *Arabian* breed, infinite quantities of *Silks*, great store of *Cotten-Wool*, and abundance of Gold; but the determinate proportion I have nowhere met with.

3. ANGOTE.

ANGOTE is bounded on the North with *Tigre*, on the West with *Nilus*, on the South with the Kingdom of *Anara*, on the East with *Dancalia*, and both extremely fertile, productive of Hills and Vallies, and great Herds of Cattle. The people eat but once in the nights their diet raw Venison, or smoked Beef: the Money most in use amongst them, Salt, Pepper, and Iron. Which custom of using Salt, Pepper, and the like, instead of money, was in former times amongst most people the only barter, or way of exchange. So in *Homers* *Glauco's* Golden Armor was valued at an 100 *Kine*, and *Diomedes's* Armor at 10 only. Afterward in Justice Commutative, it was deemed convenient to have some common Judge, or valuation of the equality or inequality of goods: the Invention of which, the *Jews* attributed to *Cain*; the *Grecians* to *Hermodeus* the Wife of *Midias*, the *Romans* to *Janus*. It is called *Nimmus*, or *vupus*, because it was ordained by the Law: *Pecunia*, either because in elder times the chief of their wealth consisted in Cattle, as now among the *Irish* or from a Cow (*Pecus*) which was stamped on it; and *Adonera*, 2. *monendo*, as *Suidas* saith, because when the *Romans* stood in need of money, *Janus monens*, *Janus* admonished them that they should use Justice, and there should be no want of money. To this Goddess, *Dea Pecunia*, the *Romans* erected a Temple, and worshipped it in the figure of a Woman, holding a pair of Scales in one hand, and *Cornucopia* in the other: by the Poet called *Regina Pecunia*, and not unfully, the greatness of her power considered.

But to return again to *Angote*, I find not much spoken of the Country in the way of story; nor meet I with the names of any of their Towns, or Cities; unless that 1. *Angote* it self, as also 2. *Avugana*, 3. *Giamamara*, two of the principal Provinces of it, may possibly be so called from their principal Towns, as perhaps they are.

4. A M A R A.

A M A R A hath on the North *Angote*; on the South *Damut*; on the West it stretcheth towards the *Nile*, and on the East, bounded with the Realm of *Xoa*. The Country very plain and Champaign, little swelled with hills, sufficiently fruitful, and well stored with all sorts of Cattle. The chief City of it called *Anara*, by the name of the Province, situate in the middle of the Empire, and though not much distant from the *Æquator*, it not plainly under it, yet blessed with such a temperate Air, such a fruitful Soil, such ravishing pleasures of all sorts, that some have taken (but mistaken) it for the place of *Paradise*. So strangely Heaven, Earth, Nature, and humane Industry have joyntly their helps together to enrich and beautify it.

But that which is the greatest Ornament of this Province, and indeed of the whole Empire of *Æthiopia*, is the Mountain *Anara*, situate in a large and delightful Plain: the bottom of the Hill in Circuit 50 miles, and a days journey high; the Rock fo smooth and even (but

less and less towards the top) that no wall can be more evenly polished: the way up to it is cut out within the Rock, through which are divers holes forced to let in the lights fo cause of ascent, that one may ride up with great pleasure, and in the middle of the Ascent a spacious Hall, as it were to rest in: the top it self is a large Plain, 20 leagues in circuit, compassed with an high wall, to the end that neither man nor beast fall down upon any chance, beautified towards the South with a rising Hill, out of which issueth a sweet Spring, which watering the several Palaces and Gardens of it, unitteth it self into a Lake for the use of Cattle: the Plain enriched with all sorts, both of fruit and grain; adorned with two magnificent *Manseries*, in each of which are found 1500 Knights of the Order of *St. Anthony*, a Religious *Militia*; and honoured with 34 Palaces, in which the younger Sons of the Emperor are continually inclosed, to avoid Sedition. They enjoy there whatsoever is fit for delight, or *Princely Education*; and from hence some of them, who is most hopeful, or best liked, is again brought out, if the Emperor die Son-less, to be made Successor. This Mountain hath but one ascent up, as before was said, which is impossibly fortified; and was deftinate to this use, *Amo* 460, or thereabouts, by the Emperor *Abraham Philip*, advised hereunto, as he gave out, by an Heavenly Vision. In one of these Palaces is a famous Library, wherein are said to be many Books, which with us are either in part or totally lost, as the Oracles of *Enoch*, which the Myteries which escaped the Flood, being by him engraven on Pillars; the whole Works of *Livy*, and others. Which being heretofore translated by the *Saracens* into the *Arabic Tongue* (when having plundered all the most famous Libraries of the East and West, they burnt the Originals; out of a Plot to make that Language as Renowned, and as generally studied, as the *Greek*, or *Latin*) are said by some good fortune to be here preserved.

5. D A M U T.

D A M U T hath on the North *Anara*, on the West *Bagamudrum*, on the South *Gaiany*; and on the East, the great Lake of *Bareena*, and some part of *Zangubar*, one of the Provinces of *Æthiopia Exterior*. The Country plentifully furnished with Gold, Ginger, Grapes, Fruits, and living Creatures of all sorts. For none more famed than for their *Slaves*, sold in great numbers into *Arabia*, *Egypt*, *Persia*, *India*; and much esteemed by them who buy them, for their abilities in War, dexterity in business, but specially for their fidelity in all things which they undertake. For this cause placed in Offices of great Trust and power, by many of the *Eastern Princes*, who using a tyrannical form of Government, and not daring to trust the Sword into the hands of their Subjects, or to advance them unto places of Court, or Council, do for the most part arm these *Slaves*, and trust them also with the Conduct of their chief Affairs. A trust in which they never falsified, or failed in a true discharge, but when presuming on their power, and those advantages which fo great a Trust and Power had presented to them, they got into their hands the Kingdom of *Buzgala*, and kept it many years in a Succession of the *Abessinian Slaves*, wherewith they still made up their numbers, till outed not long since by the *Great Mongul*.

The Oxen of this Country are said to be near as great as Elephants; their Horns so large, that they serve as *Tankards* to carry, & as *Barrels* to keep either Win or water. Here is also said to be a kind of Unicorn, very fierce and wild, fashioned like an Horse, butto bigger than an Ass; but we must think these *Unicorns* to be but *Rhinoceros*, or else we shall very much mistake the truth of the matter. And for the

11. ADEL.

ADEL is bounded on the North with some parts of the *Ealt*, and the *Red-Sea* on the South, with *Aden* on the East, and the *Indian* or *Arabian* Ocean on the East, with *Fatigar*: extended on the Sea-Coast from the Cape of *Ducum*, to the Cape of *Guardafiu*, conceived most probably to be the *Arumata* of *Ptolomy*, a noted Promontory in his time.

The Country plentiful of Flesh, Honey, Wax, Corn, Gold, and Ivory; great flocks of Sheep, and many of those Sheep of such burdensome Fleeces, that their tails weigh 25 pounds. Some Kine they have, which have horns like a Stag: others but one horn only, and that in the forehead, about a foot, and an half long, but bending backwards. The people inhabiting on the Sea-coasts are of *Arabian* Parentage, and of the *Mahometan* Religion: those towards the in-land Countries, of the old *Æthiopic* Race, and wholly *Gentiles*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Zila*, a noted Port-Town, situate in or near the place where *Ptolomy* placeth *Avdites*: stored with variety of Merchandise, and yielding some representation of Antiquity in the building thereof, being Lime and Stone; materials not much used amongst them in these latter times. Or great both beauty and effect, till the year 1516, when sacked and burnt by the *Portugals*, before that time the most noted Empory of all *Æthiopia* for the *Indian* Trade. 2. *Barbara*, seated on the same Sea-Coast, well frequented by Merchants, and possibly may be the *Mund* or *Miso* of *Ptolomy*, neighboured by a lofty Promontory, which they call Mount *Fellez*. 3. *Mette*, another of the Sea Towns near the Cape of *Guardafiu*, supposed to be the *Acone* of the Ancient Writers. 4. *Assam*, 5. *Selr*, and 6. *Bidar*, on the Sea coasts also. 7. *Arar*, the principal of the Kingdom, more within the Land, and about 18 Leagues from *Zila*.

This Country, formerly a member of the *Æthiopian* Empire, is of late grown to so great strength and reputation, that the Kings herof have freed themselves from all liens of subjection to that Crown, and think themselves the mightier Princes of the two. Advanced to this repute and power by *Gradenma*, or *Gradaneth*, who reigned here in the year 1540, by whom *Claudius* the *Negus*, was so overlaid, and his Country so destroyed by continual Incurfions, that he was forced to abandon his Frontiers, retire himself into the heart of his Estates, and crave Aid of the *Portugals*. And though by their assistance, and the help of their Shot, he was twice victorious; yet in the third battle he was vanquished, and in the fourth, *Anno* 1559, slain upon the place. This King accounted for a *Saint* by the *Moors* and *Saracens*, in regard of his continual Wars against the *Christians*, did so establish the Affairs of his little Kingdom, and left it so well served unto his Successors, that the *Abassine* Emperor hath ever since left it out of his Titles; though many other of those small Kingdoms are reckoned in the *Imperial* *Stile*, in which he hath as little power as he hath in this. It is said also, That in the battle wherein *Claudius* was slain, and his Army routed, consisting of 6000 Foot, 5000 Horie of his own Subjects, besides the *Portugals*, the King of *Adel* got into his possession the greatest mals of Coin and Treasure that was ever seen. A Victory obtained as well by Policy as Force: the *Abassines* being feldom fought with, or their Country wasted and depopulated by the Kings of *Adel*, till by the strict observance of their *Lenten* Fast, they were grown so weak, that they were not able to discharge their domestick business, and therefore most unable to resist a prevailing Enemy.

12. ADEA.

ADEA, or **ABEX**, as some call it, hath on the North the Kingdom of *Adel*; on the South and West, some parts of the *Abassine* Empire; on the East, the Sea. Extended from the Cape of *Guardafiu*, where it joyneth with *Adel*, along the greatest part of the Bay, called of old *Sinu Barbaricus*; of the reason of which name hereafter.

The Country plentifully fertile, shaded with Woods and spacious Forrests, and those Woods liberally furnished both with Fruits and Cattel: the *Champagne* Country not less fruitful in Wheat, Barley, and other necessaries, besides a great store of Hories. The people of an *Olive-colour*, in some places more inclined to black: not clothed, but from the Girdle downward; nor very well armed in the time of War, but with poisoned Arrows, *Mahometans* in Religion, *Arabians* by original Extraction, whose language they retain with some little difference in pronunciation.

Places of most observance in it, 1. *Ades*, which gives name to the whole Kingdom, because of the old residence of Kings. 2. *Carfu*, upon the Sea-Coast, sometimes called *Opone*, then a noted Empory, and situate near the Promontory called *Zingis extrema*. 3. *Arum*, and 4. *Zazelle*, supposed to be the *Esfina* and *Tonica* of the Ancient Writers. 5. *Magadaza*, a petit Kingdom of it self, a wealthy and well traded Town, situate in a fruitful and delightful soil, and neighbored by a safe and capacious Haven: much traded by the *Portugals*, who bring from *Aden* in *Arabia Felix*, and *Cambai* in *India*, their Spices, Silks, and other *Indian* Commodities, which here they barter and exchange for Honey, Wax, Gold, and *Abassine* *Slaves*, which last they value as the chiefest Merchandise which this Country yieldeth. First built by some *Arabian* *Moors*, who flying from the King of *Laca* their Mortal Enemy, under the Conduct of seven Brethren, came in to these parts, where they founded this City, and that of *Brava* in the Province of *Barus*, of which more hereafter.

The Inhabitants are originally of *Arabia*, as before was said; who many hundred years ago became Lords of all the Sea-Coasts of both *Æthiopia's*, as far as to the Cape *Des Corrientes*, which is somewhat to the South of the *Tropic* of *Capricorn*. The Kings herof in former times *Vassals* to the *Abassine* Emperor, to whom they paid a yearly tribute, this Kingdom still remaining amongst his Titles: but since the taking of *Magadaza*, made so obnoxious to the power and command of the *Portugals*, that the Estate of the *Abassine* in it is but merely titular.

13. FATIGAR, and 14. XOA.

FATIGAR hath on the East *Adel*, and some part of *Ades*, on the West, the little Realm of *Xoa*, on the South, *Barus*, another Province of this Empire. The Country *Champagne*, sufficiently fruitful of Corn and Cattel, not meanly furnished with pleasant and delicious Fruits. Most memorable for a Lake of twelve miles in compass, on the top of a Mountain, well stored with Fish: from whence and from the rest of the Mountain issue many Rivers, which much enrich the Vallies and Fields adjoining. The chief Town hereof (if any one be better than another) I conceive to be *Fatigar*, giving this name unto the Kingdom, or so called from it.

Westward of *Fatigar*, lieth the little Realm of *XOA*, bordering West on *Anara*; Southward upon *Damir*; furnished with great store of Corn and Cattel, but much

much beautified with Towns of any consideration. Nothing observable in the History or description of it, but that together with *Fatigar*, and others of the Mid-land Provinces, it hath continued constant in obedience to the *Abassine* Emperors, notwithstanding all those misadventures which have hapned to that Empire in these latter days.

15. BARUS.

ON the South-East of *Ades*, lieth the Province of *BARUS*, extended Eastward to some part of *Sinu Barbaricus*, and touching at the Western Point upon that of *Fatigar*. The soil and people much of the same condition with the rest of *Æthiopia*. *Mahometans* upon the Shores, but *Christians* for the generality in the Mid-land parts. Those *Christians* subject (as the rest) to the *Abassine* Emperor; but he hath neither place of strength or consideration in all the Country; those of most note 1. *Brava*, once a Free Town and governed after the manner of a *Commonwealth*, by twelve Aldermen or *Common-Counsellors*, defended from the Seven *Arabian* Brethren, by whom first built; the Founders of *Magadaza* also, as before was said. But now, together with 2. *Pate*, and 3. *Gogai*, all upon the Sea, made subject to the *Portugals*, by whom taken under the Conduct of *Yvifran* de *Cugna*.

Besides these, there are many other Kingdoms mustered in the *Stile Imperial*, (the swelling vanity whereof, we shall see anon) but of so little observance in the course of business, and so obscure in the esteem of such as have spoken of them, that it is enough to tell you where to find their names: and having found their names, to bid you not to seek for more; there being nothing else in them which is worth the knowing.

As for the Body aggregated of those several Members, it was first planted as is noted and proved elsewhere, by *Ludim* the Son of *Mizraim*, and the Nephew of *Cham*: from whence this Nation in the Scripture hath the name of *Ludim*. A Nation not much taken notice of in the first Ages of time, but by an Error of *Josephus*: who giving too much credit to some *Talmudical* Tales, or willing to advance the reputation of the *Jews* to the highest pitch, telleth us a story, how the *Æthiopians* invaded and endangered *Egypt*, how they were beaten back by *Moses*; the City of *Meroe* besieged and taken by him, or rather delivered to his hands by *Tharbis*, the Daughter of the King, who had fallen in love with him, and on the betraying of the City was married unto him. All this not only questioned but rejected by discerning men, as a Jewish Fable; that hath no ground to stand upon in true Antiquity. With little better fortune, and as little truth do the *Æthiopians* tell the story of their own Original. By whom we are informed, that *Chus* the Son of *Cham*, first reigned in this *Æthiopia*; to whom succeeded his Son *Regma*, and next after *Dedan*; that from the death of *Dedan*, till the reign of *Aruch* (the certain time whereof they tell not) the people lived in Caves and holes digged under the ground; as did the *Tragelodites*, an ancient Nation of this Country, in the times long after: that *Arac* first built the City of *Arumata*, and by that Pattern taught them the use of Towns and Cities. But the main part of the Legend, is the story of *Magadaza* a Queen hereof, and fourth from *Aruch*, whom they will have to be the Queen of *Sheba*, famous in both Testaments, for the Royal *Vifit* which she bestowed upon *Solomon*. Of whom they tell us, that being got with Child by *Solomon* when she was in the Court, she was delivered of a Son, whom she caused to be called *Milech*, or *Milech*; and at the age of 20 years to be sent to his Father. By whom instructed in the Law, and circumcised, and called by the name of *David*; he was returned into

his Country, with *Azarius* the Son of *Zadok*, the Priest, who had stolen the two Tables of the Law, and carried them with him into *Æthiopia*; where the old Queen recalled *David*, till *Ludim* (as they call him) the Eunuch Prince by the name of *Philip*. This is the substance of the Legend, as related by them in their own Chronicles (but we know that they are no Gospel); That *Chus* planted in *Arabia*, hath been hewn already, as also what absurdities must needs arise from supposing the Land of *Chus* to be this *Æthiopia*. Therefore most probable it is, that this Country was first peopled by the Child: of *Ludim*, as before was said. To whom the *Abassines* coming out of *Arabia Felix*, might be after added; and in some tract of time be of such great power as to put their name upon the Country. For that the *Abassines* were originally an *Arabian* people, appears by *Stephannus*, one of the old *Geographers*, who out of *Strabo* (an ancient Author than himself) hath told us this, *Ἀβασσῖνοι Ἰσραήλ*. Another *Stephannus*, and he a very learned Grammarian, Lexicographer, hath, as he thinks decided the Controversie, by making *Sheba* the Son of *Chus*, the Progenitor of the *Arabians*; and *Sheba* the Son of *Regma*, the Father of the *Æthiopians*; and for this cause hath fitted us with this pretty Criticism, that *Sheba* when it is written with *Samech*, must be rendered *Æthiopia*; and *Arabia*, when writ with *Shin*. But this by no means will be found to agree the controversy; it being evidently clear that both *Sheba* the Son of *Chus* and *Sheba* the Son of *Regma*, were originally settled in *Arabia*, as hath been hewn; though I deny not, but that some of the posterity of *Chus* in those elder times, (before the coming over of the *Abassine* Nations) might either out of too much Populosity, or desire of Change, cross over the *Arabian* Gulf, and take up such part of this Country as the *Ludims* had not fully peopled, with whom conjoint at last, both in name and government. And for *Maquda* (supposing that to be her name) she was doubtless Queen of the *Sabaeans* in *Arabia Felix*; not of the *Æthiopians* in the waste of *Africk*. For besides the longfomness of the way, too much for a Woman and a Queen to travel; it is very probable, that the Son of *Solomon* in this *Lady*, would never have suffered *Egypt* to have lain in quiet, whilst *Sefuc* the King thereof made war upon *Rehoboam*, the Son of *Soloman* also, and so by consequence his half Brother. But to leave these uncertain Fables, the first action of moment which we meet with in unquestioned Story, touching those *Æthiopians*, is that which hapned betwixt them and *Cambyses* the *Persian* Monarch; who having by force of Arms united *Egypt* to *Persia*, conceived it to be worth his labour to unite *Æthiopia* unto *Egypt* also. Upon this resolution he sent Embassadors to that King to search into the passages of his Country, and discover his strengths; and by them sent a Tun of Wine, some Bracelets, a Purple Habit, and a Box of sweet Ointments to present him with. Which Presents being tendered to him, he looked upon the Unguent and the Purple Robe, as too slight and effeminate: the Bracelets he conceived to be Bonds, or Fetters, and openly laugh'd at them, as too weak to hold in a Prisoner; but with the Wine he was very well pleased, and forwarded that his Country yielded no such Liquor. But understanding well enough what his *Vifit* aimed at, he gave the Embassadors at their parting (amongst other Gifts) an *Æthiopian* Bow of great length and strength; requiring them to tell their Master, That until every *Persian* could bend that Bow (the *Æthiopian* Bows being a foot longer than the *Persian*, as before was noted) it would be no safe warring upon his Dominions; and that he had good cause to thank the Gods for giving the *Æthiopians* so

contented minds, as not to think of conquering their Neighbours Kingdoms. Lying far off, and parted from Egypt by vast Mountains, we find them not looked after by the Macedonians. Nor had the Romans meddled with them, had they not been provoked by Candace, the Queen herself, during the Empire of Augustus: who having made a War on Egypt, was by Ptolemy, Governor of that Province, brought to such conformity, that she was fain to sue for peace, and to purchase it with the loss of some part of her Country. To keep them quiet for the future, Philo an Ethiopian City, but on the borders of Egypt, is made a Garrison by the Romans, and the Seat of their Deputy for these parts: held by them till the Empire of Dioclesian, and by him abandoned, because the charge of keeping it did exceed the profit. After this, growing into power and reputation, the Ethiopian Kings were reckoned of as friends to the Roman Empire: in whose time Justinian sent unto Helibius, as Junius his Successor did unto Archelus, the then Kings of Ethiopia, to crave their brotherly assistance against the Persians.

Of their Conversion to the Faith in the Reign of a second Candace, (unless as Pliny thinketh, Candace was the general Name of all their Queens,) we have spoken already. To which the Ethiopians add, that after the baptizing of their first Philip (the Son of that Candace) by the hands of the Eunuch, the Emperours succeeding had the name of Philip, till the Religious life of John, a Contemporary of the Emperour Constantine, honoured as a Saint after his decease, made them take his name. Some building upon this Tradition, have to the name of John, prefixed that of Presbyter, because (as they affirm) he executed as well the Sacerdotal as the Regal Office; *Residem hominum, Droumque Sacerdos*, the very *Amis* of the Poet. And this is commonly received, that he is vulgarly called by the name of Presbyter John, and his Estate, the Empire of Presbyter John, with no truth at all. Others more probably conceive that this vulgar name of Presbyter John, is but a corruption, or mistaken for Preteagion (or Precious John) and that the word Prete (by which his Subjects call him) importeth no less. And yet I more incline to those, who finding that the word Preteagion signifieth an Apostle, in the Persian Tongue; and Preteagion an Apostolical man; do thereupon infer, that the title of Padescha Preteagion, an Apostolick King, was given unto him for the Orthodoxy of his Belief. Which not being understood by some instead of Preteagion; they have made Priest John in Latin Presbyter Johannes: as by a like mistake, one Preteagion, or Preteagion, (as the French pronounce it) Commander of some Gallies under Lewis the XII. was by the English of those times called Prior John. Preteagion then, not Priest John, is his proper adjunct, contractively, but commonly called the Prete, by the Modern French, who usually leave out *J* before a Consonant. Their Empire greater heretofore than it is at the present, shrewdly impaired of late times by the Turks & Arabians; Of which the first have taken from him all his Country, from the Nile of Meroe unto Egypt, with all the Sea-coasts of Barabass; the latter is much encroaching on them, on the rest of the Maritime parts of his Dominions. But from none have they suffered more than the Kings of Adal, who have divers times laid waste their Country, committed some of them in the open Field, and in the year 1538. slain their King in battell: nor cured of those wounds to this very day. For Adam, who succeeded Claudius that was slain in battell, was so far from being able to revenge the death of his Predecessor, that being suspected to incline to Mahometanism, he was defeated by the under-King of Barnagallo. Since which time they have so languished by intestine dissensions, that though Alexander the Third (if there were ever such a King, which I find much doubted) is said to have settled his Affairs by the aid of the Portuguese, and that

some strange successes have been since reported of a later Emperour: yet the truth is, that the Estate hereof hath been so imbroiled in Civil Wars, and so many of their Emperours successively murdered, that the power and reputation of it is exceedingly weakened, and the Country made a prey to impudent Enemies. For in the year 1603, the Emperour Meleh Godad, who succeeded in the Throne by the deposition and imprisonment of his Predecessor, (under colour of Baltardy was not long after slain by one Zezelacseu; and James or Jacob, advanced unto the Empire: James not long after vanquished and slain in the fields of Guera, by one Sazimofus (contractively by some called Sufneaz) his three Sons being forced to fly to provide for safety. What became of the two Eldest, I have no where found. The youngest called Zaga Christor, after many hazardous wanderings and accidents, arriv'd at last into Italy, and thence he came to Paris, Anno 1638. where he was entertained in the quality of a Prince, but without hope of being re-erected to the Throne of his Fathers; for Sazimofus, or Sufneaz, immediately upon the victory, had possessed himself of the whole Empire; though for a time so terribly disquieted with Treasons and Conspiracies, that in the year 1607, he was fain to flee for aid to the King of Spain, and tender a submission of the Abissine Churches to the Pope of Rome. But the Spirit of Rebellion being conjured up, could not so easily be laid down, though there followed a long calm between (but that it broke out again within a few years after) (that is to say, about the year 1628,) more violently than it did before: a powerful Rebel starting up, who followed by an Army of 50000, had questionless dispossest the Prete of his whole Dominions, if not prevented and difcomfited beyond expectation. For it happened, that one Vermelle, a Frenchman, a Jeweller by Trade but exercised in the wars of Holland, understanding that the Abissine Emperors was much delighted with the Rarities and Jewels of France, found means to convey himself into the Court, where understanding the great danger which that great Emperour was in, and the ignorance as well of the good Subjects, as of the Rebels, in the Arts of War, he got leave to have the disciplining or training of 8000 men, with which small Army, he utterly difcomfited & routed that vast body of Rebels, and was thereupon deservedly made Commander in Chief of all the Forces of the Empire. This is the last News of any certainty that hath come from thence; (it being Anno 1634. in which that Victory was obtained) but that there hath been a report of some new Commotions, Anno 1648, the particulars and truth whereof, must be sought elsewhere. Yet notwithstanding these disasters, these later Emperours have still preserved their Majesty among their Subjects whom they hold in Servitude enough, though they keep not such a distance as in former Ages, when the Prete was honoured as a God, and used to shew himself but thrice in a year, viz. on Christmas, Easter, & Holyday-day: by which retiredness it was thought that he made his presence more acceptable; some holding nothing to be more derogatory from the Majesty of a King, than to make himself too common an object for the eye of the Vulgar. The like kind of State was once kept by those Kings of France of the fifth Merovingian line; who withdrawing themselves from all publick Affairs, used only to shew themselves (as we have already said) on May-day: A greater retiredness than this, was that which Pelleday Queen of the Tenthire, (a people of the Rhine) is reported by Tacitus to have used; for when the rest of the Germans then in Arms, sent Ambassadors to her to inform her of their Victory against the Romans, they were prohibited either to speak to her, or to see her: *Arcebanus aspectu, quo venerationis plus instet.* Such a keeping of State the Politick Prince Tiberius used, when the German Legions mutinied; for he deigned not himself

himself to see them pacified, but sent his Son; the reason was, *quia majestati major è longinquo reverentia.* And no doubt, the same keeping of distance swayed much with him, when he forsook Rome, and kept Court privately at Caprea: though I deny not, but a propension to follow his unnatural pleasures the more securely, together with his deformities on his face, had also their powers upon his resolution.

The Title of this great and mighty Emperour, (but neither so great or mighty in power as title) runneth thus: *N. N. Supream of his Kingdoms, and the beloved of G O D, the Pillar of Faith, spring from the Stock of Judah, the Son of David, the Son of Solomon, the Son of the Column of Sion, the Son of the Seed of Jacob, the Son of the hand of Mary, the Son of Nahn after the flesh, the Son of St. Peter & Paul after the Spirit; Emperour of the Higher and Lesser Ethiopia, and of the most mighty Kingdoms, Dominions and Countries of Xoa, Goa, Caffares, Fatagar, Angotz, Baligotz, Adera, Vangne, Goyami, where are the fountains of Nile, Amara, Bangiamedron, Ambea, Vanguam, Tigreman, Sabaim, the birth-place of the Queen of Saba, Barnagallum; and Lord of all the Regions under the Canopies of Egypt.*

It seemeth by this Title, that these Ethiopian Emperours, however the truth of Story agree, conceive themselves to be sprung from Solomon and Maqueda, (or Nizante, as Joseph nameth her) the Queen of the South. For better confirmation whereof, it is by some reported, that the Arms of this Kingdom are the same with those of the Tribe of Judah, which are a Lyon Rampant in a Field: and that the Motto of them is to this effect, viz. *The Lyon of the Tribe of Judah shall overcome.* But Bara, an expert Herald, giveth this Prince no such Coat-Armour; his Arms, according to him, being Luna, a Cross Portate Mars, charged with a Crucifix Sol, between two Scourges of the Second. And yet not altogether to discredit the old Tradition so generally received amongst them; it may be probable enough, that when the Abissine came into Ethiopia, some of the Sabians their next Neighbours, came along for company, and amongst them some of the Royal Race of the Queen of Sheba; with some of which, by reason of their great Nobility, some of the Abissine Emperours might think fit to match. Nor is it any matter of impossibility, but that Solomon (considering his course of life) might get a Son upon the body of that Queen, from whom the Ethiopian Princes might be thus descended.

As for the Government of these Emperours, it is absolutely Regal, or at best, perfectly Despotical: it is the people being treated by them more like Slaves than Subjects; taking away *Seigniories*, and giving them unto whom he pleaseth, the deprived party not daring to express the least discontent. By them so revered, that it was anciently a custom, if the King were blind, or lame, or maimed, for the Subject to inflict on his own body the like Impression. Still had in so much honour by the greatest Subject, that his share nameth they bow their bodies, and touch the ground with one of their fingers; and reverence his Pavilion as they pass by though he be not in it. He on the other side seldom appeareth to his Subjects, but with his Crown upon his head, and a Silver Crucifix in his hand; his face then covered with a piece of Watchet-Lassata, which he lifteth up and putteth down, according as he is minded to grace the party with whom he talketh.

As for his Forces and Revenues, some of our late Observators speak nothing but wonders. Some say his Empire reacheth from the Red-Sea to the Atlantick Ocean, and from one Tropick to the other. Some, that he is so great

Riches, that he is able to purchase a moiety of all the world, if it were to be sold others, that he is able to raise for and present service a Million of Men. And he himself is faine to have offered to the Portuguese one million of money, and another of Men, if they would employ it in a war against the Infidels. But notwithstanding these great brags, I cannot think this Emperour to be such a Miracle as some of these reports have made him. For they that speak most knowingly of his Revenue, affirm that the ordinary expences of his Court and Army being discharged, he collecteth up but three Millions of Crowns per annum; which is no great matter: and upon extraordinary emergencies of War and Trouble, will be easily waisted, or brought into a narrower compass. And yet to make up this Revenue, besides the Crown-Lands, or Domain Imperial, he layeth some Tax or other upon every house, receiveth the Tenths of all that is digged out of their Mines; and leviech on the great Lords the Revenue of any one of their Towns, which he pleaseth to chuse, if it be not that in which the Lords themselves inhabit.

This, though it be no great Inroad, considering the large extent of his Dominions, and Form of his Government; yet it is greater in proportion than his Forces are. For notwithstanding the report of Alvarez, and his own great brag of raising a Million of Men for present service; it is well known, that he was never able to advance half that number in his greatest necessity; and amongst those whom he can raise, there are but few who can deserve the name of Souldiers. For the People being poor and beggarly, and brought up in a servile and base condition, are naturally destitute of that courage & alacrity of spirit which should be in men professing Arms, or fit for Noble Undertakings, and are besides on certain jealousies of State, so diffident in War, that they know not how to use their Weapons, when there is occasion. So that for my part, I consider him as a weak and Impotent Prince, of no authority or influence out of his Dominions; nor able to defend himself from the continual Incurfions of his Neighbours (some of them mean and petty Princes) which lie nearest to him. Landlocked on every side from Traffick and Commerce with the Seas; incroached upon Northwestward by the Turks; confronted on the West by the King of Borneo, who possesseth not a tenth part of the Land of Negroes; on the East, continually harassed and baffled by the King of Adal, sometimes a Vassal of his own; and on the South with the Galles, a barbarous Nation of the other Ethiopia, who lay all waste before them wherever they come; and finally in the later time by his own Subjects, injuries not to be endured, had he power to help it.

But the chief stay of this Estate, is an Order of Knights, entitled by the name of St. Anthony, to which every Father that is of the degree of a Gentleman, is destitute one of his Sons, if he have above two, but not the eldest, and out of these they call about 12000 Horle, which are to be the standing Guard of the Emperour's person: their Oath is, To defend the Frontiers of the Empire, to preserve Religion, and to make head against the Enemies of the Faith. The Abbots of this Order (for it is partly Religious, partly Military) live in the Mountain of Amara, where they have two Monasteries, as well for the training up of these Knights in the time of their youth, as their retirement when grown old, and discharged from service:

The Arms of this Empire we have seen before.

And so much for ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR.

OF ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR

ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR is bounded on the East with the Red Sea, (that name extending from the bottom of the Gulph of Arabia to the Southern Ocean) on the West, with the *Æthiopic* Ocean; on the North with Terra *Nigritarum*, and the *Higher Æthiopia*; and on the South, where it endeth in a point or *Comu*, with the Main Ocean, parting it from the Southern undiscovered Continent.

It was called *Æthiopia* for the reason before delivered; *Inferior* was added for distinction sake, because somewhat of a lower situation than the other is. By Ptolemy called *Æthiopia Interior*, because lying more within the Land, and remote from knowledge, than the nearer did: and by late Writers, for the contrary reason, called *Æthiopia Exterior*, because situate without and beyond the other.

It comprehendeth all Ptolemy's *Æthiopia Interior*, part of his *Æthiopia sub Ægypto*, and all those Lands to him unknown, which he giveth us under the name of Terra *Incognita*. The Country so little discovered in those elder times, that we find mention only of some eminent Mountains, as 1. *Ganclius*, 2. *Lon*, 3. *Ziphia*, 4. *Barditis*, 5. *Mofchi*; one only Region known by name, called *Agilimba*, and that nothing but the name, and that it was a Province of that Country. The People not distinguished here as in other places, by their Tribes and Families; but only by their kind of diet; some of them being called *Anthrophagi*, from their living on fish. Of these, the first inhabited on the Eastern shores, near the Bay of *Barbaria*, the principal of which had the name of *Rapiti*: the last on the shores of the Western Ocean, near *Magnum Sinu*, or the Great Bay; called also from their Western situation, by the name of *Hesperii*. Nothing else told us of these parts by the Ancient Writers, but that the Lakes or Fens of *Nilus* were occasioned by the great abundance of Snow, which fell from the Mountains of the Moon; and that in many parts hereof, there were *Rhinoceros*, Tygers, Elephants, but these last all white.

Such was the face of this Country in those elder days. The Character of it at the present, generally and in brief, is thus given by *Ambanus*, viz. That it is *Mountainous* in the West, *Sandy* in the midst, and *Desart* towards the East. But for the several qualities of the soil and people being of very different tempers; we shall give the better description of them in their several *Incoignites*, then as presented thus in common. In the mean time to take a view of the Hills and Rivers of most reckoning in it; the principal of their Mountains are, 1. those called *Cambaberes* in the Province of *Angola*; 2. *Luna Montes*, formerly accounted for the boundary of both *Æthiopia*'s, now found to belong to this alone. A Chain of Hills, but known by no particular name, lying under the Tropick of *Capricorn*, full of sharp Rocks, of an incredible height, and inhabited by a barbarous and savage people, the Vallies underneath of so great a *deyle*, that they seem to emulate the Mountains.

In this Country is the Lake of *Zembre*, so much renowned for giving birth to the greatest Rivers of the World, though it felt but 50 miles in compass. For out of the abundance hereof flow the famous Rivers, 1. *Nilus*, which passing through some part of this Country, and traversing the whole length of the *Abassine* and *Egyptian* Empires, endeth its long course in the *Mediterranean*. 2. *Zaire*, the greatest of all *Africk*, but unknown to the Ancients, which running Westward through the Kingdoms of *Manicongo*, and taking in the lesser Streams of 1. *Pamba*, 2. *Barbola*, 3. *Cambaza*, 4. *Lelunda*, makes many Illands in his way, and at the last by a mouth of 28 miles wideness, disgorgeth his full compass in the Western Ocean. 3. *Chama*, which making his passage towards the East, and much increased by the addition of six great Rivers, after a long course of 200 miles (in all which it is Navigable) loseth it self in the Indian or Arabian Ocean; and 4. *Fluvium Spiritus Sancti*, or the River of the Holy Ghost, which shaping a course opposite unto that of *Nilus*, endeth it in conclusion in the Southern Seas. It is divided most properly into these four parts, that is to say, 1. *Zanguebar*, 2. *Monomotapa*, 3. *Cafra*, 4. *Manicongo*. Some also add the Country of *Aden*, subdivided into the two Kingdoms of *Adel* and *Aden*. But these we have ascribed with better reason to the other *Æthiopia*, within the Bounds whereof they are wholly situate.

1. ZANGUEBAR.

ZANGUEBAR, or **ZANZIBAR**, is bounded on the East with the Red Sea, or the Indian Ocean, on the West with the Kingdoms of *Manicongo*, and part of the other *Æthiopia*; on the North with the *Higher Æthiopia*; only, on the South with *Monomotapa*. The reason of the name I find not.

It containeth in it the great Province of *Agilimba*, placed by the old Writers in *Æthiopia inferior*, and is so much of the other also as lieth on the South of the River *Rapiti*; now called *Quilimanci*, by which parted from the Kingdoms of *Adel* and *Aden*. The Country on both sides of that River, known in old times by the name of *Barbaria*, giveth to a large adjoining Bay the name of *Sinu Barbaricus*, and was much famed in those Elder Times for the best sort of *Myrrh*: by the *Myrrha Trogloditica*, and *Myrrha Barbarica*, or *Barbarica*, being noted for the same by some of the Ancients, because the *Troglodites*, and the people of this *Barbaria* joynd on one another. Here was also in those Elder Times a good Race of *Ginger*, of which faith *Discolerides*, *Indus* φλοι 824 *νομίζεσθαι* ἐν τῇ νῆσῳ, That it is the Bark of a Tree brought out of *Barbaria*. Where by the way, the *Schoolists* upon that Author, and *Pliny* in the 12. Book, have been much mistaken: of which the first takes this *Barbaria* or *Barbaria* for some part of the *Indies*; the other thinketh, that the *Myrrha* of these parts had the name of *Barbara*, from the drossiness and coarseness of it, as if so called

led only because unrefined. The principal Town hereof called *Rapiti*, by the name of the River, seated not far from the Sea; and by reason of the great Trade of it, esteemed the *Metropolis* of *Barbaria* in the time of *Ptolemy*. A noted Promontory of the same name was not far from hence.

To come again to *Zanzibar*, as it is now called; The Country is affirmed to be low and fenny, and very much overflown with unruly Rivers; and withall so full of Woods & Forrests, that for want of passage for the wind, the Air is generally (as in all Fenny Countries of the like obstruction) exceeding pestilent. The People of Complexion black, and of curled hair; *Adonometan* on the Sea-Coasts; in the inland-parts *Idolaters*; extremely given to Witchcraft and Divinations. Naked above the Waile, and beneath covered only with the skins of Beasts or some such mingled colour stuff, as the *Scotish* Plaid. The Moors which dwell on the Sea-coasts, use to adventure on the Seas in little Vessels, slow'd together with leathern thongs, and called with Gum; having no other Sails in them than the leaves of Palm-trees. Boats of as slight making as those used anciently by the *Britans*, whereof thus the Poet:

*Primum cana salix, madefacto vimine parvum
Texitur in puppim; casaque induta juvenco
Vestris patens, tumidum supererat Annem.*

Which I find thus rendred to my hand:

The moistest Ofser of the hoary Willow
Is woven first into a little Boat;
Then cloath'd in Bullocks Hides; upon the Billow
Of a proud River lightly doth it float.

It containeth in it to the number of 15 Provinces, that is to say, 1. *Melinde*, 2. *Bombaraza*, 3. *Quilao*, 4. *Amfimbies*, 5. *Sofala*, all along the Coasts, 6. *Monchabanga*, 7. *Corova*, 8. *Calen*, 9. *Anzanga*, 10. *Mozambique*, 11. *Badin*, 12. *Mambara*, 13. *Mombasa*, 14. *Embroce*, and 15. *Macao*, more within the Land. Of the nine last, not being perfectly discovered, and therefore likely to yield nothing of note and credit, we shall now be silent. But the first six lying upon the Shores, or near it, and consequently better known to Merchants, Travellers, and the like Adventurers, shall be survey'd in order as they lie before us.

1. *MELINDE* is the name of a little Kingdom, on the South of the Realm of *Aden*, in the *Higher Æthiopia*, from which parted by the River *Rapiti*, now called *Quilimanci*: so named from *Melinde*, the chief City of it, well walled, and seated in a fruitful and delightful Soil; abundantly productive of Rice, Mill, Fleish, Limons, Citrons, and most sorts of Fruits; but not well furnished with Corn, the greatest part whereof is brought out of *Cambaba*, a Province of *India*. The Houses built of Lime and Stone, after the manner of Europe. The Inhabitants on the Sea-Coasts of Arabian breed, and of that Religion; those of the inland, which are of the original Natives, for the most part *Heathens*. Most of them of an *Olive-colour*, but inclining to white; the Women generally of as white complexion as in other places; but they have some black people also: and all of them more civil in their habit, course of life, and entertainment in their houses, than the rest of this Country. Great Friends to the *Portugals*, and befriended by them, ever since the kind entertainment which they gave unto *Alfons de Gama*; whom they furnished with Pilots to Direct in his way to *India*, when first discovered by that people, Anno 1497.

2. *MOMBAZA* is the name of another of these petty Kingdoms, of the same nature for the temper of the soil and people that *Melinde* is. So called from *Mombasa*, the chief City of it, situate from *Melinde* about 20 miles, in a little Island of 12 miles compass; but of great importance on some part of the Continent also. The little City said to have some resemblance unto the *Rodas*. The Town about a league in circuit, environed with a Wall, and fortified with a Castle, the Streets thereof very narrow, but well built, most of the Houses being *Heathen*, and the Mosques capacious. The King hereof *Alfonso de Gama*, as are most of his Subjects, and a bitter Enemy of the *Christians*. For which cause, and upon some discourtesies received from them, the Town was taken by *Vasques de Gama*, Anno 1500. but abandoned again by reason of the unhealthy Air, not well agreeing with the constitution of the *Portugals*. Afterwards, having taken in *Albez*, and five Turkish Gallies, the better to enable themselves against the *Portugals*; the Town was taken and runneth by *Thomas de Caeiro*, sent thither Anno 1589 by the *Portugall* Vice-Roy residing in *Goa*, there being taken at that time (besides the 23 of the City all the Turkish Gallies, and in them 32 greater, and as many lesser Pieces of Ordnance. Such of the *Turks* and *Christians* as escaped the slaughter, and had the opportunity of coming to them, yielded themselves into their power, to avoid the fury of the *Inimici*, a man-eating people, who had before besieged the City; and gathering up such gleanings as were left by the *Portugals*, devoured the King, and as many of the principal Citizens as they could get into their hands: 2. *AMPARAZA*, the second Town of note, was taken by the *Portugals* about two years after.

3. *QUILLOA* lieth on the South of *Mombaza*. The Country rich and pleasant, the Inhabitants for the most part of Arabian Ancestry; of complexion near unto a white; their Women comely, lumpsious in Attire, and of civil carriage; neat in their houses, which are generally well built, and richly furnished. Touching the ordering of this Sex (of whose honour they are very tender) the people of this *Quilao* are said to have a strange custom amongst them, more to be mention'd for the rarity than the decency of it: which is the fowling up of the private passages of Nature in their Female Children, leaving only a small vent for their Urine. Thus fowled they keep them carefully at home, till they come to be married. And that is by her Husband found to want this sign of her perpetual Virginity, is with all kind of ignominy sent back to her Parents, and by them as disgracefully received.

It took his name from *Quilao*, the chief Town hereof, situate in a little Island, but near the Shore, from which parted by a narrow *Eryth*, opposite to the mouth of the River *Coova*, by some called *Quilao*. Full built in the 400 year of the *Hegira*, by *Ali*, the Son of *Sultan Ischen*, who not agreeing very well with his other Brethren, because their Mothers were *Persians*, and his an *Abissine*, sought new Adventures in these parts, and bought this Island. His Successors grew rich and powerful by the trade of *Sofala*, extended their Dominions far within the Land, and so adorned *Quilao*, the chief Town of their Kingdom, that for sumptuous and magnificent buildings, there were few like it in those parts. Proud of this many good Successes they provoked the *Portugals*, by whom under the conduct of *Vasques de Gama*, Anno 1500, the City it self was taken, the King made a Tributary, and with his leave some Fortresses erected by them in convenient place. Secure and wanton by this means, they pick a quarrel with *Abdallan*, then the King of this Country; whom in the year 1505, they deposed from his Kingdom and placed another in his Throne, under the colour of not paying

paying the conditioned Tribute. For which the *Arabians* role in Arms, displaced their new King, demolished their Fortifications, and sent them to learn better moderation in their prosperous Fortunes, *An. 1509.* The business coming after to a composition, the *Quilao* covenanted for the yearly Tribute of 1500 Marks of Gold paid unto the *Portugals*, to live in Peace, and quietly enjoy his own without further trouble.

4. *MOSAMBIQUE* lieth on the South of *Quilao*. So called of *Mosambique* the chief City of it, situate in a little Island, the principal of three; opposite all of them to the mouth of the River *Moghincas*: and bordering on the Promontory of old called *Prassim*, spoken of by *Protony*, and by him made the furthest known place of all this Coast. In the Island there are said to be Sheep, whose tails are 25 pound weight, as in other places of these Countries, and some parts of *Syria*; Hens, black in Feathers, Fleh and Bone; and if foddren, make the water as black as Ink, but yet sweeter in taste than any other. Of *Pork* good store, the more, because the people are for the most part of the Law of *Mahomet*, by which all Hog-meat is forbidden. The In-land parts more barren, but very populous: so ignorant and rude when the *Portugals* first came among them, that for a Shirt, a Razor, and a little Bell, they fold fifteen Kine, and then sell out among themselves, who should have the Bell. The Town conveniently seated on a large and capacious Haven, and fortified with a very strong Castle, in the hand of the *Portugals*; who in their going to the *Indies*, and returning back, use to call in here, and fit themselves with all things necessary to pursue their Voyage. A Town of so great wealth and trading, that the Captain of the Castle in the time of his Government (which continueth only for three years) is said to lay up 300000 Ducats for his lawful Gains, out of the Gold that cometh from *Sofala*, a Gain so great, that at the end of his three years, he is to serve for three years more at some place or other of the *East Indies*, at his own charge, without any allowance from the King or State of *Portugal*, and then permitted to return into his native Country. Such that the Nation as are suffered to inhabit here, are enjoyed to be married, to the end the Island should be well peopled, and as well maintained, which otherwise perhaps might have few else in it but the Garrison-Souldiers, and the Factors of particulars Merchants.

5. *SOFALA* lieth on the South of *Mosambique*, from which parted by the River *Cuama*, the greatest River of those parts, and thence extended to the Mountains which they call *Manica*, by which separated from *Monomotapa*: So called from *Sofala*, the chief City of it, situate in a little Island (as the former are) but with great influence on the Land adjoining. Both Town and Island subject unto the power of the *Portugals*, who have a Fort, the better to secure the *Factory* by them here erected, one of the richest in the World; the People bringing in higher great quantity of Gold, of which they have most plentiful Mines, which they exchange with them for their Cloth & other Commodities. It is supposed that the Gold brought into this Town amounteth to two Millions yearly. The supposition so agreeable to all other circumstances, that little question need be made of the truth thereof. Info-

much as this Country for its abundance of Gold and Ivory, is by some thought to be that Land of *Ophir* to which *Solomon* sent. And of this Opinion *Orelin* in his *Hisfaurus* was the first Author; but in my mind, upon no probable conjectures, and against very strong presumption. For first, *Ophir* the Son of *Jathan*, of whom mention is made *Gen. 29. vers. 10.* and from whom the Land of *Ophir*, in all likelihood took its name, is in the next verse said to have planted in the East; whereas this *Sofala* is situate South-west from *Childea*, in which the confusion of Tongues, and dispersing of the people began. And secondly, it is impossible for the Navy of *Solomon*, which lay at *Exian-Giber*, in the Bay of *Arabia*, to have spent three years in coming hither and returning; which we find to have been the usual time of finishing the Voyage to *Ophir*, 1. *Kings*, 10. *Ophir* then is some part of *India*, but whether it were the Island of *Samatra*, or that of *Zelan*, or one of the *Molucces*, or the Land of *Malaca*, called by the Ancients *Aurea Chersonesus*, I dare not determine; considering what worthy men maintain these several Opinions.

6. *MOENHEMAGE*, or *MONOEMUG*, the only Inland Province of any note, hath on the East *Mombaza* and *Quilao* on the West, the famous River *Nilum* on the North, some part of the Dominions of the *Abissine* Emperors on the South, *Mosambique*. The Country very plentiful of Mines of Gold, yet the people use it not for Money, but barter it in exchange with the *Portugal* Merchants for Silks and Taffates, with which they use to clothe themselves from the Girdle downwards. Instead of Money they make use of Red Counters, much resembling glass. Governed by a King of their own, who holds confederacy with the Kings of *Mombaza* and *Quilao*, for the better ordering of their Trade. To whom are also subject a wild and cruel people, called *Agag*, inhabiting on the Lake *Zembre*, and the Banks of the *Nilum*, dispersed about the Fields in their homely cottages, black, *Cannibals*, & of an horrible aspect; more horrible than otherwise they would be, by drawing lines upon their Cheeks with an Iron-Instrument, and forcing their Eye-lids to turn backwards. By the assistance of this people, the King of *Moenhemage* hath hitherto preserved his Estate against the King of *Monomotapa*: and they themselves by some of their own Leaders did so distrust the King of *Congo*, that they forced him to retire to a small Island, where he hardly escaped a violent and untimely death, most of his people being starved. Of which more hereafter.

Touching the rest of these Provinces, we can say but little, and that little of no great note or certainty; but that they differ for the most part from one another, both in speech and behaviour; each Village under a several King, and each in a continual quarrel with its next Neighbours, whom if they overcome, they eat. At leisure times they live by hunting, and the flesh of Elephants. And amongst these, but more upon the borders of the *Abissine* Empire, I place the *Callapa* Nationless Nation as it were, without house or dwelling, without Law or Government; as barbarous and horrid as the *Agag* (whom some call *Jage* or *Guacqui*) are affirmed to be, who watching their advantages, & joined together in some Arts of doing mischief, have made of late such Desolations in the Countries of the *Prester-John*.

2. *MONOMOTAPA*2. *MONOMOTAPA*

MONOMOTAPA, *BENOMOTANA*, or *BENOMOTAXA* (for by all these names it is called) is bounded on the North, with the River *Cuama*, by which and the Mountain of *Magnice*, it is parted from *Zanzibar*, on the West, and South by the River of the *Holy-Ghost*, by which separated from *Caffraria* and on the East, by the main Ocean. So that it is almost an Island; said to contain in compass 750 Spanish leagues or 3250 Italian miles.

The Air hereof is said to be very temperate, and the Country very good and pleasant, yet full of Forrefts. Well watered, besides the two great Rivers before mentioned, with the Streams of 1. *Tanani*, 2. *Luanga*, 3. *Arruga*, 4. *Mangano*, and certain others, which carry gold with them in their hands. By means whereof it hath not only abundance of Corn, but great store of Pasturage: on which they breed infinite Herds of Cattel, and other Beasts very large and great, such store of Elephants, that they kill 5000 yearly for no other reason, but to make Merchandise of their Teeth: Their Gold-Mines, great and small, reckoned to 3000; some in the hills of *Magnice*, others in the Province of *Matuca* and *Boro*, the places where the Mines are, known without further art in the discovery of them by the dryness and barrenness of the soils; as if Nature could not hoord up gold in her spacious bosom, but the must needs be barren of all good works.

The People are of mean stature, & black complexions; but strong and active, courageous, and of such footmanship that they out-run Horses. Their apparel Cotton-Cloth, which they make or buy from some other place: their Diet Fleh, Fish, Rice, Mill, and an Oyl called *Sufman*. Their Religion, *Paganism* for the most part; yet they worship not Idols, but believe in one God only, which they call *Moximo*; and seem not much averse from the *Christian* Faith, to which one of their Kings was once converted. They punish nothing more severely than *Witchcraft*, *Adultery*, and *Theft*: and in the punishment of *Delinquents* they use no Prisons, but execute them as soon as apprehended, which is the reason that the Vulgar have no doors to their houses, that being a privilege for the Nobles. They may have as many wives as they will, but the first the principal, and her Children only to be heirs: the women here very much respected (as a second *England*) the Emperor himself, if he meeteth any of them in the streets, he giveth them the way. Not to be married till their *Menftra* or Natural purgations testify their ability for conception; and therefore they solemnize the first Flux thereof with a liberal Feast.

Provinces of most note in it, and adjoining to it, but reckoned as Members of his Empire are, 1. *Matuca*, rich in Mines of Gold, the Inhabitants whereof are called *Boroghi*; who though they dwell between the *Line* and the *Tropic*, have in the winter such deep snows on the tops of their Mountains, that if they come not speedily down, they are frozen to death.

2. *TORRA* or *BUTUA*, extended from the mouth of the River of the *Holy Ghost*, or *di Spirito Santo*, to *Cabo Corrientum* (*Caput Currentium* in the *Latines*) wealthy in fat pastures, and great herds of Cattel; more in her inexhaustible Mines of Gold. Mines memorable for a large, & in those times an impregnable Fortrefs, built formerly by some foreign Prince to secure the Mines; built of square stone, and every stone of marvellous greatness,

without any sign of cement or other mortar: the walls hereof 25 spans thick, but the height not answerable; over the Gate certain characters written, which the most learned of the *Moors* could never read. Perhaps the work of some of the *Abissine* Emperours, when their power and Empire was at the height. By the Inhabitants who conceive it to be a work beyond humane power, it is thought to have been built by Devils: but by those who take *Sofala* for the Land of *Ophir*, ascribed to *Solomon*, though situate 510 miles more Westward than *Sofala*, by their own account. The Air here very cold, by reason of the sharp blasts coming from the *Pole-Antarick*, so much the colder, in that they have no wood, or other fuel, but what they make themselves of the dung of their Cattel.

3. *BORO*, and 4. *QUITICUI*, both furnished with Gold also in their Mines and Rivers, but not so pure as that of *Torra* and *Matuca*; yet such as serves their turn so well, as to spoil all industry: the people here being very careless in providing necessities, which they presume the *Moors* (I mean the *Arabian Moors*) will bring them in exchange hereof.

5. *INHABAN*, governed by a King of its own; but Vassal and Tributary to the Emperor of *Monomotapa*, the King whereof in the year 1500. was Chriftened by *Constantine* his Queen baptized by the name of *Mary*: but I find nothing of the further progress of *Christianity*. Touching 6. *Matuca*, 7. *Melemba*, 8. *Bimbube*, 9. *Berbeca*, and 10. *Baqaqi*, five other Provinces of this Empire, I can meet with little but their names.

Cities of note here are not many, hardly Towns or Villages; the houses being here so thin, that from the border of *Sofala* to the Port of *Torra*, being 510 miles, as before is said, there is no sign of any building either old or new. The Principal of those that be, 1. *Tanganu* in the Province of *Inhaban*, and the Seat-royal of those Kings: memorable for the baptism of the King and Queen, which was there performed. 2. *Simbu*, supposed to be so called from the *Agifymba* of *Ptolemy*, the chief Town of the Province of *Torra*, or *Bueri*, distant from *Sofala* one and twenty days journey, and neighbored by the remains or ruins of the old Fortrefs before described. 3. *Benomotaxa*, where the King or Emperor makes his usual residence, giving this name to the whole Kingdom, but taking it from the King himself, whom they call *Benomotaxa* or *Monomotapa*, the word in their language signifying a King or Emperor.

The King hereof accounted one of the greatest of *Africk*, hath under his command, besides the Provinces described, some part of *Caffraria*. Of great Riches in regard of his Mines of Gold, which so abundantly supply all the Royal occasions, that he exacteth no kind of Tribute from his Subjects, but some certain days service in his Works; and from his Nobles Gifts and Presents, without which none of them are to come before him. His Forces great, the multitudes of men considered; but weak for want of skill to train them, and Arms wherewith to fit them for modern service; the Arms they most use being only Darts and Targets. For which cause, (and in regard the people of the subject Kingdoms are so prone to *Rebellions*, that he is fain to keep the Heirs of the *Tributary* Kings as Hostages of their Fathers Loyalty) he wagers mercenary Souldiers of other Nations whom he distributeth abroad in his several Provinces: and amongst these it is affirmed, that he hath a strong Battalion of *Amazons*, a Warlike Race of Women, who inhabit about the Lake of *Zambre*, and the out-skirts

of *Zanzibar*, compared by some for their fidelity and Prowess, to the *Turkish Janizaries*. And yet not trusting wholly to the faith of these *Mercenaries*, it is said that he keeps 200 *Majors* for the Guard of his person. Much revered by his Subjects, by whom he is served upon the knee; and when he cougheth or drinketh, all those that are about him make such a shout, that the Town rings of it. In one particular they differ from most Nations else, which is, That such as are admitted into his presence, are bound to sit down, in token of reverence to stand before him, being a sign of the greatest Dignity which can be afforded unto any. Once in a fair way to have advanced *Christianity* in his Dominions, when in the year 1560. the King hereof was baptized by *Gonsalvo* the Jesuit, by the name of *Sebastian*, that being the name of the King of *Portugal* then reigning. But afterwards on the suggestions of some *Arabians* then in great place about him, having caused the *Jesuit* to be slain, he was warred upon by the King of *Portugal* with an Army of 1600 men, under the conduct of *Francisco Barreto* to whom he offered very honourable amends for the injury done: But *Barreto* having in hope swallowed all the Gold in the Country, would not admit of any peaceable agreement, but referred the business to a battle; in which being overcome himself, and his whole Forces not long after consumed by sickness, the hopes of *Christianity*, and the *Portugals* interest in that Kingdom, fell together with him.

3. CAFRARIA.

CAFRARIA is bounded on the East with *Rio di Spirito Santo*, or the River of the Holy Ghost; on the South and West, with the main Ocean; on the North, extended to some parts of *Manicongo*, and the Province of *Zanzibar*. So called from the word *Cafra*, which in the *Arabian* tongue signifies an *Heretic*, a name by them given to *Christians*, *Heathens*, and those of their own Religion also, which differ in Opinion from them; but given to this Region by some late Writers, because destitute of another name.

The Country, for so much of it as hath been discovered, is said to be full of great Herds of Cattel and flocks of Sheep, abundance of Deer, *Antilopes*, *Baboons*, Foxes, Hares, Ottriches, Pelicans, Herons, Geese, Ducks, Pheasants, Partridges, In a word, all things necessary for the life of man, were it somewhat better stored with Corn. Exceedingly well watered, and as liberally stored with Woods and Forests: the Hills thereof intermix with grassie Vallies, that pity tis so beautiful and rich a Country should be inhabited by so barbarous & rude a people, who being utterly unprovided of Towns and Houses, live in Woods like Beasts. Of colour black, thick lips, flat noses, long shaped heads, most monstrous ears, extended far beneath their shoulders, by hanging in them iron chains, Glass, Bullets, Bells, and such ponderous baubles. These ornaments common to both Sexes, who also use (for their greater beauty) most hideously to stain themselves in all parts of their bodies, even their very bellies; as if no lace could better fortify their Naked skins; with which only, except some flap of an Hide or other leather to hide their privities, they are here apparelled.

Their best habits for the most part are the Hides of Beasts, unrefined, unfashioned, just as they tear them from the flay; but when they cloath themselves with Sheep-skins, they have so much witas to wear their fleeces next to their bodies in cold weather, which at other times they expose (with no small pride and glory) to the open view. Their voice so inarticulate, that it is hard to be distinguished

into words and syllables, which being compared with that brutishness, which commonly appeareth in all their actions, makes it hard to say, whether the people generally may be thought to be men in the skins of beasts, or beasts created in the likeness and shape of men. But they make a greater use of their Cattel, than for Garments only; their raw flesh serving them for food, and the Guts for Ornament, which hang about their Necks uncleaned, and with all the filth in them, in as great a bravery as Ropes of Pearl, or Chains of Gold in more civil Countries. Gold here so vilified that they exchange it gladly for Brass, or Iron, and that not only quantity for quantity, and weight for weight, but in such senseless disproportion, as render Brass and Iron the more excellent metals.

But amongst all the several Nations which inhabit this most flourishing Country, none are more barbarous than those whom they call the *Imbians*, dwelling not far from the Cape of *Good Hope*; tall, square, and strong, addicted always to War and Rapine, and feeding on the flesh both of their conquered Enemies, and their dying Friends, whose death they hasten for the *Shambles*; The Skulls of whom they use for their drinking Cups. Their Weapons poisoned Arrows, and Poles burnt at the end: And in their Wars they always carry Fire before them, menacing thereby to roast or boyl all such as they overcome. Their King (if such a sacred Name become such an impious Monster) they account for Lord of all the Earth; as the *Portugals*, of all the Seas: and he with the old Giant-like Arrogance, not only threatneth the destruction of Men, but shooteth his poisoned arrows against Heaven it self, as often as the rain or heat offends him. In the year 1580, about 80000 of them made an irade into *Zanzibar*, laid desolate all the Country as far as *Mombaza*, which City they besieged, sacked and devoured the people of it; which Tragedy we have heard before, in our description of *Mombaza*, a Realm of *Zanzibar*.

Towns here are none, scarce so much as Houses; and those few mean, that they deserve not to be so called: except it be some sheds on the Sea-sides, for the use of Saylor. Of most note in it, is *Soldania*, a large and capacious Road, about fifteen or sixteen Leagues on the North-West from the Cape of *Good Hope*; not so much noted for the buildings adjoining to it (if there be any such) as the Bay it self; environed on all sides with a pleasant Country, enriched with variety of Herbs, not only pleasing to the sense, but very Medicinal for many diseases, especially for those that are troubled with the *Scorbute* (or *Scurvy*, as we use to call it), the Hills adjoining stored with great multitudes of Cattel, both Sheep and Cows, though less in size than those in these Northern parts; great heaps are to be seen in their Eastern Voyages; for here such as are to sail towards the *Indies*, use to take in fresh water, and make provision of things necessary for so long a Voyage. I have heard that some of our *English* ships in their return from the *East-Indies*, seized on two Savages, living near this Bay, whom they brought on Ship-board, with an intent to carry them into *England*, to the end that having learned the *English* tongue, we might be more particularly informed by them of the Estate and Affairs of this Country. One of these which was called *Goore*, being brought to *London*, for the other died upon the way) was dieted and clothed according to the *English* fashion, graced all with brass Rings, Beads and such other things, by which they thought they might gain upon him to affect the change of his condition. But *home is home*, though it be but *home*, as the saying is. For this poor wretch having learned so much *English* as to bemoan his own misfortunes, would throw himself upon the ground, and cry out with great anguish and vexation of spirit, *Goore home go, Soldania go, Goore home*

home go; out of which unquietness of humour, when they could not get him, they sent him back in the next Ships which were bound for the *Indies*. After which time, as oft as he saw any Ship with *English* Colours, he would joyfully make towards the Bay with Guts and Garbage hanging about his neck (as their custom is) and readily perform all good offices towards them; yet so, that it was found withal, that by discovering to the Natives how low esteem the *English* had of Brass and Iron, they thenceforth raised the value of those richer Metals, which formerly they had parted with for such forry trillies, as have been spoken of before.

But that which is of most consideration in all this Country, is the Cape it self, discovered by the *Portugals*, under the Conduct of *Bartholomew Diaz*, in their first *Indian* undertakings by whom, for the continual Tempests which he found about it, was first called *Tormentosa*. But afterwards the *Portugals* having doubled the Cape, and by finding good hopes of a prosperous voyage, they caused it to be called *Cabo di Buena Esperanza*, or the Cape of good Hope: *Alfonso di Gama*, the first discoverer of this way to the wealth of *India*, being then their *Admiral*, Anno 1597. It consisteth of three great points of headlands, of which that which is nearest us, is the Cape of good Hope: the middlemost hath the name of *Cabo Falso*, because mistaken for the other, by some of the *Portugals*, returning homewards; the third called *Cabo della Gagliard*, or the Cape of Needles, by reason of those sharp points which floor towards the Sea. On the top of the Cape, is a large and pleasing Plain, adorned with great variety of flowers, and covered with a Carpet of grass: it is called the Table of the Cape, and yieldeth a large prospect over the Sea on all sides. The Sea here is very rough and tempestuous, and hath to the *Spaniards* proved oftentimes very unkind: whereupon a *Spanish* Captain being forewarned with a storm, expostulated with GOD, why he suffered his good *Catholic* to endure such torments; and permitted the *English* *Heretic*, and Blasphemers, to pass so easily.

The Country is not subjected to any one Prince, the Natives being governed by the Chiefs of their several Clans; nor had I hitherto that either *Portugals* or *Spaniards*, have took possession of any one part of it, in the name of the whole. So that for ought I know, the best title to it doth belong to the King of *England*; for whom possession was taken of it in the Reign of King *James*, by one Captain *Fitz Herbert*, who called the *Ascent* unto the Table King *James his Mount*. But whether this Act of his beget any good title, or whether the title of a Country lying so far off be held worth the owning, I leave to be determined by *Lawyers* and *Statesmen*.

4. MANICONGO.

MANICONGO is bounded on the South with *Casraria*, and the Mountains of the *Moony* on the West with the *Æthiopic*, or *Atlantic* Ocean; on the North with the Realm of *Bein*, and other parts of the Land of the *Negrees*; and on the East with *Zanzibar* and some part of the *Alstine* Empire. So called from *Congo* or *Manicongo*, the principal of those many Kingdoms which are united in this Name.

The Air hereof so temperate, that their Winter is like the *Autumn* in *Rome*, inasmuch as the people do not use to change their garments, or to make more fire than at other times: the tops of the Mountains free from cold, and the nights so equal to the days: that for the greater part of the year there is little difference; the Country being situate under the *Equator*, though more of it on

the North than the South thereof. Not over-hot nor withstanding in the heats of Summer, by reason of the cool winds which then blow continually, and the great dews, which falling in the night make some compensation for the extremity of the day. The Soil so exceeding fruitful in the production of herbs, plants, fruits, and flocks of Pasturage; that they have here great herds of Cattel, large flocks of sheep, plenty of Cows, Stags, Deer, Hares and Conies: Elephants of that bigness, that their teeth weigh 200 pounds; and Serpents of so vast a bulk, that they will eat a whole Deer at once; nor to say any thing of their *Fowls*, both wild and tame, which they have here in great abundance.

The people of mean stature, black of complexion, thick lips, and having the apple of the eye of divers colours, which makes them ghastly to behold; strong and long-lived, with very little hair on their heads, but that all naturally curled. In Religion for the most part *Heathens*, the Mother and Nurse of all things; and some again, wild Beasts and Serpents. So populous, that without any sensible diminution of their infinite numbers, it is supposed that they sell 20000 *Slaves* to the *Portugals* yearly: by whom they are sent into *Brasil*, there to work in the Mines and Sugar-houses. The *Christians* in faith admitted in some few of their Provinces, but specially in that of *Congo*; where first preached, in the reign of *Jubai* the II. King of *Portugal*, Anno 1490. by *Gonsalvo de Sully*, who having converted and baptized the King's Uncle and one of his Sons, prevailed so far upon the King, that in the end he and his Queen, and many of his principal Subjects, did embrace the Gospel. Received there by the people with such infinite joy, that when their first *Bishop* came to live amongst them, they caused the ways from the Sea-side to the City of *Banza* (being 150 miles) to be covered with Mats; and offered to him all the way as he went, Lambs, Chickens, Kids, Partridges, Fowl, Venison, and other necessaries, to tellify their rejoicings in that happy change. And though many of the Subjects, in the other Provinces were baptized accordingly, and for a time embraced the Faith; yet after some small trial of it they relapsed to their former *Heathens*; either unable, or not willing to conform to so strict a Rule.

Principal Rivers of this Country. 1. *Bengo*, 2. *Congo*, 3. *Dande*, 4. *Babelo*, 5. *Anbeto*, 6. *Lora*, 7. *Zuie*. This last the greatest of them all, if not of all Africa also: Of which though we have spoke already, we shall add this here, That it falleth into the *Æthiopic* Sea with so great a violence, that for ten miles commonly, for fifteen sometimes, the waters of it do retain their natural sweetness; nor intermingled nor corrupted with the salt Sea-waters. Nor can the people fly above five miles against the stream, by reason of the *Cataracts*, or huge falls which it hath from the Mountains; very terrible and turbulent than those of *Nile*. And for the Mountains of most note, they are, 1. *Sierra camphir*, or the long Mountain; 2. *Monte Crystalli*, or the *Crystalline* Mountain, so called from the abundance of *Crystall*, which is found therein; 3. *Sierra de Sol*, the Mountain of the Sun, of excellent height; 4. *Montes Sal-Nissi*, so called from their abounding in that kind of Mineral; and 5. the Mountains of *Cabambo*, rich Mines of Silver.

It containeth in it many large and ample Provinces, of which we have this general notion in the stile imperial; wherein their King, calleth himself King of *Congo*, *Banza*, *Sango*, *Sambo*, *Bengo*, *Barri*, *Pemba*, *Abundi*, *Mutema*, *Quimola*, *Angola*, and *Cicango*; Lord of the *Congues*, *Amozale*, *Loungungu*, *Ausimbhi*, *Cuechi*, and *Zonghi*. Many of these not so well discovered, as to afford us any matter

matter fit for our discourse, the principal of those that be are,

1. **ANGOLA**, bounded on the South with *Cafra-ria*; on the North, with the Provinces of *Bamba* and *Pemba*; on the East, with some part of *Zanzibar*; on the West, with the main Atlantic Ocean. The Country rich in Mines of *Silver*, and most excellent *Copper*; some store of *Kine* and *Horses* brought out of *Europe*, which they kill rather for their tails, (the wearing whereof is held for a special ornament,) than keep for any other use: their chiefest diet being *Dogs*, which they fat for the *Shambles*; and to that daintily affected, that at the first coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would give 20 slaves and upwards for a good large *Dog*. By this we may conjecture somewhat at the nature of the people, who besides this are said to be much given to *sovereign* and *divinations* by the flight of *Birds*; Skilful in medicinal herbs and poysons, and by familiarity with the *Devil*, able to tell things to come. Permitted as most *Pagans* are, to have as many wives as they will; who with the rest of the women, whether maids, or widows, use at the first sight of every *New-Moon* to turn up their bare bums in defiance of her, as the cause of their troublefome purgations.

In this country are the Mountains called *Camabaries*, rich in Mines of *Silver*; but those Mines not suffered to be digged, for fear of drawing some unnecessary war upon them: so that they use *Glass beads* for money, and therewith also to adorn the persons of greatest eminence. Their principal City called *Cabacca*, is about 150 miles from the Sea, and the Royal residence of their Kings; but not else observable.

This Country was first discovered by the *Portugals*, under the conduct of *Diego Can*, Anno 1486. The King hereof at that time *Vassal* unto him of *Congo*, and so continued till that King did embrace the Gospel: whereupon revolted from him, and have since subsisted of themselves without such dependance. At first they held good correspondency with the *Portugals*, and allowed them free Traffic in their Dominion; but after their revolt from the King of *Congo*, with whom the *Portugals* were in league, they put to death as many as they found in *Cabacca*, An. 1578. Under colour of some pretended treason. To be revenged of this foul murder, *Paul Diaz*, Governour of these parts for the King of *Portugal*, arming such people as he had, with two Gallies and some other Vessels passed up the River of *Camara*, waiting the Country on both sides. Against whom the King of *Angola* raised an Army of a Million of men (as some Writers tell us); but amongst those multitudes of men, there were few Souldiers, that an handful of the *Portugals*, aided with some of the Forces of the King of *Congo*, gave him a notable defeat, An. 1582. Since that, the Trade with *Portugal* was revived again, and the King hereof hath expressed some good affections unto *Christianity*, sending unto the King of *Congo* for some *Priests* to instruct him in it, but obtained them not; the state of *Religion* in that Kingdom being then declining. The *Portugals* having thus gotten the upper hand, built, or repaired a strong Fort, situate near a convenient Bay, by which they did not only secure their Trade, but command a great part of the Country, till dissipated thereof by the treachery and falsehood of the *Hollanders*, An. 1640. or thereabouts: For the *Portugals* having withdrawn themselves from the Crown of *Spain*, a Cessation from all Hostility, with them was proclaimed in *Holland*, and not long after firm peace made between the Nations; in the Articles whereof it was conditioned, that this peace should not begin in the *East-Indies*, till the end of the year, nor in *Brasil*, till the end of half a year from the making thereof. Which being obtained, they gave order to their Fleets and Forces

which were abroad, to make themselves Masters of any thing then belonging to the *Portugal*, which they could lay hold on, who following these instructions, and Anchoring near the Fort of *Angola*, were by the *Portugals* received with joy into the Castles as their special friends, which presently they polluted themselves of, turning the poor *Portugals* in a very weak Bark to seek new adventures. But of this more hereafter in the Isle of *St. Thomas*.

To this King belongeth the two Provinces of *Matana* and *Quissima*, though both used in the titles of the King of *Congo*; of which the first lying towards the Sea, is said to be of a wholesome air, and a fertile soil outwardly furnished with fruits, and inwardly with mines of *Crysal* and other metals; but not very rich, for want of some convenient Haven to bring on commerce. The other lying towards a great Lake called *Aque Lumda*, was once governed after the manner of a *Common-wealth*, but tributary at that time to the King of *Congo*, as of later times to the Kings of *Angola*, by whom brought under this new yoke by reason of the aid they had given the *Portugals* in their wars against him.

2. **BAMBA** hath on the South the River of *Coanza*, by which parted from *Angola*; on the North, the River *Ambriza*, by which divided from *Songo*; on the East, *Pemba*; on the West, the *Abiopic* or *Atlantic* Ocean. The Country rich in Mines of *Silver*, well stored with Beasts and Birds, as well tame as wild. Amongst the Birds, *Parrots* both green and grey, and many which are taught to sing, not much inferior for their music to the birds of *Camarie*. Amongst the Beasts of most note, is that called the *Zebra*, shaped like a *Mule*; but from the ridge of the back to the belly so streaked with lines of white, black, and yellow, and those streaks so naturally set in such even proportion, as yieldeth to the eye a most pleasing object. But wild, and of so swift a foot, that *velox ut Zebra*, to be as swift as a *Zebra*, is grown into a Proverb amongst the *Portugals*. The men so strong, that it is said of them, that at one blow they will cut off the head of an Ox, or strike a slave quite thorow the middle, into two pieces; and to be able to carry in their arms a Vessel of wine, weighing 325 pound weight, containing the fourth part of a Butt; and hold it so till it quite bedrawn out. It containeth in it many *Seigniories*, most of them called by the names of their principal Towns. The chief of which, 1. *S. Paul*, situate on the Sea-side, opposite to the Isle of *Loango*, inhabited for the most part by *Portugal* Families. 2. *Bamba*, which giveth name to this Province, and is situate about 100 miles from the Sea, betwixt the Rivers of *Lofe* and *Ambrizi*.

3. **PEMBA** hath on the West, *Bamba*; on the East, the Lake *Zombre*, and the River *Barbela*; on the North, *Batta*; and on the South, *Angola*. Esteemed to be the richest and most pleasant Country of all *Mamcongo*; the Fields in all parts thereof beifer with *Palm-trees*, but intermixt with other fruit-trees, which are always green. The water of so good a nature, that it never burthen any that drink of it: the Air exceeding wholesome, and earth as fruitful, productive of all sorts of grain; but specially of that which they call *Luco*, in form like *mustard-seed*, but bigger, which they grind in an hand-mill, and make thereof a Bread not inferior to *Wheat*. The people much reclaimed from their ancient *Barbarism* since the coming of the *Portugals* thither; whom they imitate both in behaviour and apparel. So well skilled in the virtues of Medicinal herbs, that every one is his own *Physician*, *Chirurgion*, and *Apothecary*. Anciently clothed with Mats, and trimmed up with Feathers; retained still by

by the *Villagers* and poorer sort, in some part of the Country. Their chief City formerly had the name of *Banza*, so called, because the King's Court (as the word doth signify) but since the receiving of the Gospel it is called *S. Savinius*: distant from the Sea 150 miles, beautified (since it became *Christian*) with a Bishops See, and a fair Cathedral, in which are 28 *Canon*, with other Officers and Ornaments accustomed belonging to the like Foundations. The Town it self situate on the side of a large and lofty Mountain; on the top whereof is a spacious Plain, two Dutch miles in compass, full of Villages, Burroughs, and scattered houses; which are thought to have 100000 persons, most of them *Portugals* and their Servants.

4. **BATTA** hath on the West and South, *Pemba*; on the East, the Mountains of the *Sun*, and those called *Salmitir* on the North, *Pango*. Of the Soil and People there is nothing fular to be said, but that the Inhabitants hereof are more Military, and better furnished for the Wars than the rest of these Provinces: necessitated thereto by the ill neighbourhood of a fierce and savage people, dwelling about the spurs and branches of the Mountains before mentioned, whom they call *Jaggos* or *Giacchi*. These naturally and originally of the Land of *Negros*, abandoned the parts about *Sierra Leona*, where before they dwelt, and to the number of 120000 fell into the Mountainous part of this Region, under the Conduct of one *Elemba*, where they are since grown into a people, and become a terror to their Neighbours. Greedily devourers of mans flesh, which they prefer before that of Bees or Mutton; not yet so qualified by the change of their Country, as to build houses, sow or plant, or to breed up Cattle, finding it by the easier life, to maintain themselves by the labour and spoil of others. And which is yet most strange of all, though they have each of them many Wives, ten or twenty a piece, yet they have no Children, but strangle them as soon as born, lest they should be an hindrance to their own wandings. But as *Pliny* once said of the *Ægypti*, *Quis ægypti off in qua nemo nascitur*: so we may also say of these, that they do not want success, though they breed no children: selecting out of their Captives and stolen Children, some of either Sex, (but neither steal nor take them captive, under twenty years old) to the Seminary (as it were) of a new posterity. Against these *Monsters* those of *Batta* are armed continually, not otherwise able to defend themselves, their Wives and Children, from their hands and teeth: inasmuch as this one Province, though none of the biggest, is able to raise 70000 men, well armed, and fit for any service. The principal of their Towns is *Batta*, which gives name to the Province situate on the Banks of the River *Lelanda*; and the Seat of the *Vice-Roy*, who is always of the *Blood Royal*, honoured sometimes with sitting at the King's own Table, which none else may do; and of so great authority in all *Confutations*, that no body dares to contradict him.

5. **PANGO** is bounded on the South with *Batta*; on the East, extended to the Mountains of the *Sun*, which close up this Country: on the North with *Sunda*; and on the West, with parts of *Pemba*, and *Sengo*. Of the people, little singular of the Country left. Neighbourhood on the North-East towards *Sierra de Crysal*, with the *Langueloni*, supposed by some to be the *Ethiopes* *Hesperii*, spoken of by *Pliny*; a barbarous Nation, but of considerable power; that they are found amongst the rest in the *Sile Imperial*. This once a Kingdom of it self not subject till of late times to Kings of *Congo*. The chief Town of it called *Pango*, is seated on the Western Bank of the River *Barbele*, the ordinary resi-

dence of the *Vice-Roy*, and the name-giver to the whole Province.

6. **SUNDA**, is bounded on the South with *Batta*; on the North with the great River *Zaire*: on the East with *Barbele*; and on the West with part of *Songo*. The Country, rich in several Metals, but the Inhabitants prefer Iron before any other, because it doth afford them *Materials* for Swords, Knives and Armour; well furnished also with *Marrons*, *Sables*, and other Furrs of great esteem among *Forrein Merchants*. This is the best *Region* of this and the River of *Zaire*: not much more in length. Their chief City hath the name of *Sunda*, which it communicates to the whole.

7. **SONGO**, is bounded on the East with *Batta* and *Anzichana*; on the West with the *Abiopic*, or *Atlantic* Ocean; on the North with the Kingdom of *Loango*; and on the South with the River *Ambriza*, by which parted from the Realm of *Bamba*. It lieth on both sides of the great River *Zaire*, which is here so turbulent and broad, and so full of Islands, that the one part of it hath little or no commerce with the other. The chief Town hereof called *Songo*, gives this name to the Country; in which is nothing singular for the Soil or People.

8. **ANZICHANA**, hath on the West, part of *Songo* and *Loango*; extended thence unto the East, as far almost as the Lake of *Zembre*, on the North, some part of the Land of *Negros*; on the South, the *Zaire*. So called from the *Anziqui*, the Inhabitants of it: The cruellest *Cannibals* in the World; for they do not only eat their Enemies, but their Friends and Kinsfolk. And that they may be sure not to want these Dainties, they have *Shambles* of mans flesh, as in other parts of *Beef* or *Mutton*. So covetous whilst, that if their *Slaves* will yield but a penny more when fold joint by joint, than if sold alive; they will cut them out, and sell them so upon the *Shambles*. Yet with these barbarous qualities they have many good. Affirmed to be so cunning at the Bow and Arrows that they will discharge 28 Arrows for so many do their *Quivers* hold) before the first of them falls to the ground; and of so great fidelity to their Masters, and to those which trust them, that they will rather chuse to be killed, than either to abuse their trust, or betray their Masters: for that cause more esteemed by the *Portugals*, than their other *Slaves*. And for the same, and that only, of *Copper*, & very plentiful of *Sanders* both red & gray, to be a certain remedy against the *Pox*; as the *smoak* or none at least of any reckoning, which deserve place here.

9. **LOANGO** hath on the East *Anzichana*; on the West the *Abiopic* or *Atlantic* Ocean; on the North *Benin*, one of the Realms of *Guinea*, in the Land of *Negros*; and on the South, the Province of *Songo*, from which parted by the River *Loango*, whence it hath its name. The Country very hot, as lying under the Line, but well peopled, indifferently fruitful, and more stored with Elephants, than any other of these parts; stretching in length 200 miles within the Land and for the most part very well watered. The Inhabitants whom they call *Bramas*, by Religion *Heathens*, but of old accustomed (as the *Anziqui* and others of the barbarous *Africans*) unto *Circumcision*. Governed by a King of their own, once subject to the King of *Congo*: but of late time, both he

and the King of *Anziqui* (for they are also under the command of our *Sovereign Prince*, have freed themselves from that subjection; though still the King of *Congo* be called King of both. Their King they call by the name of *Mani Loanga*. Their Towns of note, 1. *Panga*, the Haven to the left. 2. *Mombaba*, 30 Leagues more Northwards and within the Land; the Inhabitants of which Towns being more civil than the rest appear themselves with the leaves of *Palm-Trees*; but not so well skilled in the use of that excellent Tree, as the more civilized people of the Realms of *Congo*, who out of the leaves thereof well cleaned and purged, draw a fine long thread, of which they make *Velvets*, *Damasks*, *Sattins*, *Taffataes*, *Sarcenets*, and the like fine Stuffs.

10. Having thus looked upon the chief Provinces of this Kingdom seated on the Continent, let us next look upon the Islands. The principal of which *LOANDA*, a situate over against the Town of *S. Paul*, in the Province of *Bambila*, laid to be first made out of the lands of the Ocean, and the mire of *Coma*, call into an heap, and at last made into an Island. Now beautified with a very fair Haven, of the same name with the Island, possessed by the *Portugals*. The Island deficient of Rivers, but so well furnished with waters, that every where within less than half a yard digging, they find sweet and good Waters, so contrary to the Sea from whence they come, that when the Sea ebbs from it, they be late and brackish, when it floweth towards the Island, then most fresh and sweet. But most remarkable is this Island for the *Cockle-fishing*, which the Women going a little into the Sea, take up together with the sands, in baskets, and part them from the sand,

as they lye on the shore, the *shells* of which being naturally distinguished into divers colours, serve over all the Kingdom of *Congo*, instead of money, which is a matter of such moment unto this King, that he entertains a Government in the Island for no other reason, but to take care about this fishing.

Besides this, there are many Islands in the River of *Zaire*, now subject to the Kings of *Congo*, but heretofore in continual Wars against them, fighting in Boats which they made of the bodies of a Tree, by them called *Licende*. The Tree so big, that two or three men or more are not able to fathom it: Insumach that many times a Boat is made of one of the largest of them, able to contain 100 men. Upon the shores of these Islands, and in other of their *Bays* and *Creeks*, they have to great numbers of *Anchovies*, that in Winter time they will leap upon the Land of their own Accord.

Compacted of those several Members, and of the rest expressed in the *Stile Imperiali*, is the Realm of *Congo*: so called from *Congo* the chief Province, but now distinguished from the rest by the name of *Pemba*, which being of more power, or better fortune, than any of the other, or of all together, hath given both Law and name unto them. Discovered by the *Portugals*, under *Diego Chan*, An. 1486. at what time these Kings were at the greatest: called by their Subjects *Mani Congo*, or the Kings of *Congo*, the word *Mani* signifying in their Language a Prince or Lord; the name communicated since to the Kingdom also. Of their affairs before this time there is nothing certain. What hath since happened in this Kingdom, may best be seen in the ensuing Catalogue of

The KINGS of CONGO.

1486. 1. *John*, not so called till converted to the Faith of *Christ*, and then Baptized by this name, in honour of *John* the Second King of *Portugal*, Anno 1490. in whose Reign this discovery and Conversion hapned.
2. *Alphonso*, eldest Son of *John*, zealous in the advancement of the *Christian Faith*, and for that opposed by *Pamfi Aquino* his younger Brother: whom with a very small Army, he is said to have vanquished. A Prince, who during his long Reign of 50 years did seriously promote the *Gospel*, and caused all Idols in his Kingdom to be overthrown: and Churches to be built, and furnished in convenient places.
3. *Pedro*, the Son of *Alphonso*, in whose time was founded the College of 28 *Canons*, in the Cathedral Church of *S. Crispe*, in the Town of *S. Savinours*.
4. *Francisco* the Son of *Pedro*, who reigned not long.
5. *Diego*, or *James*, one of the Kinsmen of *Francisco*, in whose time Religion growing into discredit, by the scandalous lives of some of the *Secular Clergy*; *John* the Third, King of *Portugal*, sent four *Jesuits* thither: who are said to have converted in five months 5000 persons, and to build three Churches.

6. *Henry* the brother of *Diego*, after a sharp War touching the Succession, in which were slain all the *Portugals* of *S. Savinours*, except the *Priests*, at last succeeded: not long after slain in battle against the *Anziquis*.
7. *Alvarez*, the Son of *Henry*, forced by the *Jaguers* or *Giaccis* to abandon *Congo*, and betake himself, together with the *Portugal Priests*, to an Island of the River *Zaire*: where he continued, till restored to his Crown by the Aid of *Sebastian King of Portugal*, after by Famine he had lost almost all his company.
8. *Alvarez II.* Son of *Alvarez*, the first, who much solicited *Sebastian* and *Henry Kings of Portugal*, to send him a new supply of preachers, the old store being wasted in the Islands of *Zaire*.
9. *Alvarez III.* Son to *Alvarez* the Second, not being born in Lawful Wedlock, was opposed by one of his Sisters and a younger Brother, both of Lawful birth, whom he overthrew, Anno 1587. and in the place of the Victory founded a Church in honour of the *Virgin Mary*.

Touching the Forces and Revenues of these Kings of *Congo*, I am able to say nothing certain; but that he is a Prince of great Power and Riches. His Riches visible by the great Treasures which he draweth from the Mines of Silver

Silver, and of other Metals in his Kingdom; from the Trade of *Cockle-shells*, the only Money of his Realm, which he keeps wholly to himself: the great gain which he makes by *Slaves*, and from Elephants Teeth, the Presents which he hath in way of Tribute from the King of *Angola*. And though it be not easy to say what he layeth up yearly, because he hath not his Revenue in Coin, as most Princes have, yet it is thought that he is as rich and well furnished with all things as any Monarch in *Africk*.

As for his Forces, they consist most in the multitudes of his Subjects; which were they well armed and used to the Wars, would make him formidable to the rest of the *African Princes*. And though he hath no Garrisons or Towns of War, but must trust, if once invaded, unto *Cables of Bones*; yet he doth rest secure enough from all

fear of danger, except out of *Europe*: being able to raise against his *Rebels*, or any of his invading Neighbours, 400000 men out of *Bamba* only, all armed according to their manner, and 70000 men at least, well exercised in Wars against the *Jaguers*, from the Province of *Batta*: besides what may be drawn from his other Provinces.

The Arms of this King are *Mars*, five Swords meeting in Base *Sul*: which Coat was taken by *Alphonso*, the second King in this Catalogue, because in the Battle which he fought against *Pamfi Aquino*, he and his Souldiers saw (or supposed they saw) such a number of shining Swords hanging in the Air, with their points turned directly upon the Enemy.

And so much for *ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR*;

OF The ISLES of AFRICK.

IN tracing out the Isles of *AFRICK*, we must observe another course than that which we have taken in *Europe* and *Asia*: these Islands not belonging to any part of the Continent, nor under the command of any great Prince in *Africk*, in the account of whose Estates they might be considered; but being all of them independent and *sui juris*, and therefore to be handled by themselves apart. In our *Chorography* of which and the stories of them (as far forth as my Authors will direct me in it) I am now to travel, beginning first with those that lie in the *Red-Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, and so proceeding by the *Cape of Good Hope*, through the main *Atlantic Ocean*, to the Straits of *Hercules*: that from thence we may have the shorter passage into *America*, and there our *Sight* will conclude our journey. These then we will consider either joyn't or separate, as delivered to us by the names of 1. The *Æthiopiack Islands*. 2. *Socotara*. 3. *Madagascar*. 4. *Moholia*. 5. *Mauritius*. 6. *St. Hellens*. 7. *Ascension*. 8. *St. Thomas*. 9. The *Princes Island*. 10. The *Island of Annobon*. 11. The *Gorgades*, or *Islands of Cape Verde*. 12. The *Camaris*, or the *Fortunate Islands*. 13. *Madera*. 14. The *Island of Holy Port*, and 15. The *HESPERIDES*; of all which, the four first only are dispersed in the *Red-Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, (for by those scattered up and down in the main *Atlantic*, on this side of the famous Promontory, called the *Cape of Good Hope*.

1. The ÆTHIOPICK ISLANDS.

THE *ÆTHIOPICK ISLANDS*, so called because they lie upon the Coast of *Æthiopia Superior*, together with all those which lie on the further side of the *Cape of Good Hope*, or scattered, or dispersed in the *Red-Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, (for by those names these mighty Oriental Seas, are most commonly known) of which we have spoke more at large when we were in *Arabia*, and therefore shall say nothing here

which concerns the same, but for the Islands of those Seas, such as we comprehend here under the name & notion of *Æthiopiack Islands*, which were only known unto the Ancients, they are more in number than in weight, some of them situate within the Straits of the *Red-Sea*, or the Gulf of *Arabia*; others without those Straits, in the open Ocean.

1. Of those within the Straits, not reckoning such as lie upon the shores of *Arabia Felix*, of which we have already spoken; there is 1. *Astarte*, or *Astrata*, now called *Causa*. 2. *Arx Palladis*, so called from some Altar of that Goddess which was there erected. 3. *Cypri*, by *Pliny* called *Cypri*, but *Gysiu* in *Justinian's Code*, renowned in former time for its plenty of metals. 4. *Macaria*, or the *Fortunate Islands*, so called from the fertility and pleasures of it. 5. *Orneon*, or the *Isle of Birds*, from the great plenty of Birds which was found therein. 6. *Daphni*, by *Pliny* called *Daphni*, opposite to a famous Port-Town of the same name in the Continent. 7. *Bacchia*, so called from *Bacchus*, unto whom consecrated. 8. *Anti-Bacchia*, so named, because opposite to it. 9. *Acanthin*, supposed by some to be now called *Angolina*. 10. *Insula Diadori*, conceived by the Learned to be the same which is now called *Babel Mandel*, and given name unto the Straits, or entrance of the Bay of *Arabia* now called the Straits of *Babel-Mandel*. 11. *Isidis Insula*, memorable for a Temple dedicated to the Goddess *Isis*; and for a well frequented Port called *Portus Isidis*, the same which is now called *Pasana*, as *Bel Forest* thinketh. 12. *Munda*, an Island in the Bay of *Avallites*, opposite to a noted Empery of the same name on the shores of that Bay. Besides all which, we find in *Pliny* two Islands by the name of *Thursides*; two more called *Chelonides*, or *Cutivata*, two others passing by the name of *Gomados*; together with the Isles of *Myron*, *Pan*, and that called *Insula Magorum*: which make up one and twenty in all, but of no note or observation in the course of business, or the conduct of humane affairs.

Those of most Note in the open Ocean, which still preserveth the name of the *Red-Sea*, and is sometimes called the

the Indian, sometimes the Arabian Ocean, and by a particular name *Pelagus Hypadis*; are but four in number, that is to say, 1. *Africa*, by the Translator of *Ptolemy* called *Myfias*; 2, 3. Two Islands called by the name of *Mena*, a degree more Northwards than the other; and 4. *Amicula*, as *Stephanus*, or *Amici Infula*, as called by *Ptolemy*, the most north of all; which I conjecture to be that which is now called by the name of *Socotara*, the most noted Island of this Sea. I know that many Learned men will have this Island to be that, which *Ptolemy* and others of the Ancients call *Diofcoridis*: but because *Diofcoridis*, by all those Ancients, is made to be an Island of Arabia Felix, and *Socotara* by all the Moderns affirmed to be an Isle of Africa; I can by no means yield unto it. Again it is affirmed by our best Modern Geographers, that *Socotara* lieth over against Cape *Guardafui*, (the *Aromas* of *Ptolemy*, as before is said) from which distant not above 30 leagues: which life and distance fort well with *Amicula*, but can by no means be applied unto *Diofcoridis*, *Amicula* being placed but two degrees on the East of that *Promontory*, in the Longitude of 85. whereas *Diofcoridis* is situate from it almost four degrees, in the Longitude of 16, and 40 Minutes; besides as great, or greater difference in their several Latitude. So that supposing for granted that *Socotara* is that Island which was anciently called *Amicula*; and having cleared my way far, I now proceed to the Description and Affairs thereof.

2. SOCOTARA.

SOCOTARA, the greatest Island of these Shores, is situate, as before was said, against Cape *Guardafui*, from which distant about 30 Leagues, *Adensu* a small Island lying in the midst, that is to say, 15 Leagues from the Cape, and 14 from the Island. The length hereof 60 miles, 25 in breadth, divided in the middle by craggy Mountains of great height; the top of which are for the most part covered with sands. The Island extremely vexed with Winds, and molested with dryness, inasmuch as it is destitute of most things necessary for the life of man; affording nothing towards it of the growth of the Earth, but some small quantity of Mill, Dates, and some kind of Fruits. Provided notwithstanding of some good Pastures for the breed of Cattel, and liberally furnished with Medicinal Drugs, as *Cinnabar*, *Dragon Blood*, which is a red Gum issuing from the bark of a Tree; and the best Aloes in the World, from hence called *Aloes Socotrina*.

The People of an *Asi* colour, very rude and barbarous; their bread for the most part of Dates; the rest of their food being milk and butter, their hair long, and their cloathing only enough to hide their nakedness. The Women as good Soldiers as the men, and countenancing, or occasioning the tradition of the Arabians, that they came from the *Amazons*. And the better Husbands of the two, governing all Affairs both within and without. All of them by profession *Christians*, governed by a Bishop of their own, with some few Priests; but ignorant enough of all things which concern Religion. More generally Circumcised than *Christened*, though both used among them; *Jacobites* in Sect, as the *Abissines* their Neighbours are; and zealous worshippers of the Cross, which they always hang about their Necks. So pertinaciously addicted unto *Magick* and therein so expert, that they bring incredible things to pass, not to be weaned from those black Arts, though the Bishop excommunicate all such as use them. They hold opinion, That *S. Thomas* suffered shipwreck upon their Coasts, as he failed towards *India*; and that his Ship being drawn to land, was turned into a Church:

but it appeareth neither by their life, or Doctrines, that any *Apollitical* man hath set foot amongst them.

They live for the most part in Caves or Cabins, of no other stuff than the boughs of Trees, so that we are to look for few Towns among them. The principal, 1. *Zacotara*, giving name to the Island, the place of the Kings residence, and a Bishops See. 2. *Tamarind*, and 3. *Deliba*, two Port-Towns, and reasonably well traded, in the hands of the Natives: as 4. *Cro*, and 5. *Benin*, two other Ports, possessed and garrisoned by the *Portugals*. The King thereof a Vassal to the King of *Farac*, one of the petty Princes of Arabia Felix, not far from *Aden*, in Habit and Religion Turkish; attended on when the *Relator* was there, Anno 1614, by five Camels and five Horses only, yet those all in the Island.

Nigh hereunto are two Islands, (those possibly which *Ptolemy* calleth *Manna*) the one inhabited by men only, and the other by women, who do meet at their accustomed times to preserve their kind, but make no long stay; the Air of the one being found unhealthy for the constitution of the other Sex. The other Islands of these Coasts, scattered up and down in the Bay of *Barbaria*, (but not known by any name in the time of *Ptolemy*) as 1. *Don Garcia*, 2. The Three Brethren, 3. *St. Brandon*, 4. *Francis*, 5. *Mafcedema*, 6. *Comoro*, and many others of as small note, are not worth the speaking of.

3. MADAGASCAR.

MADAGASCAR, the greatest of the world, is situate over against *Mosambique* in *Ethiopia Inferior*, supposed to be the *Memubias* of *Ptolemy*, the only Island by him named on the Coast of that Country; but by the *Portugals* called the Isle of *St. Lawrence*, because discovered by them on the day of that Saint, An. 1506. The length hereof affirmed to be 1200 miles (which is longer than *Italy*) and 4000 in compass: the middle part hereof opposite to the Promontory, which *Ptolemy* calleth *Proslum*, now the point of *Mosambique*, from which distant 170 miles: in reference to the Heavenly bodies, situate from the 17 Degrees of Southern Latitude, to the 26th.

The Country plentiful of all things necessary for the life of man, particularly of Mill, Rice, Honey, Wax, Cotton-wool, Sugars, Stags, Goats, Deer, and other Creatures both wild and tame; Limons and other cooling Fruits, some store of Ginger, Cloves, but little different from those of *India*, red Sanders, Saffron, Amber, and some Mines of Silver, Iron, Gold, and Copper: not to say any thing of their Bees and Muttons, so large and good, and so good cheap, that for a two-penny Bead, or some such trifle, they will sell bees and Sheep of good taste and bigness; such numbers of Elephants, that they send thence yearly great store of Ivory. And amongst other rare Fruits, they have plenty of those which they call *Cocos*, or *Cocorns*; a kind of Date as big as a Cabbage: the Liquor in it, about the quantity of a pint, tastes like Wine and Sugar; the Kernel big enough to content two men: and like good Ale, it affords not only meat and drink, but cloathing; as also furniture for their houses, tackle for their ships, fowl for the fire, and timber for building; the body of the Tree being strait and high, and towards the top diversified into many branches. A Country far too good for so bad a people.

For they, as Travellers report, and most Writers testify, are treacherous, inhospitable, ignorant both of Prayers and Festivals; destitute of the distinction of time into years and months, not knowing any proper names for the days of the week, nor able to reckon above ten; naked,

except

except their privities, which they cover with Cotton; *Idolaters* in the mid-land parts, and *Mahometans* upon the Shores. Commendable only for their hate to Polygamy, and restraining themselves to one Wife; the detestable of the marriage-bed severely punished: but otherwise so eager upon copulation, that their Boys at the age of twelve years, and their Girls at ten, think they stay too long if they keep their Virginitie any longer: some of them, like *Quarilla* in *Petronius Arbiter*, begin so early, *in nuptiis meminisse se Virgines fuisse*, that they remember not the time when they lost their Maidenheads. Of colour they are black, and of strong composition; their Breasts and Faces cut and Pinkt, to appear more beautiful. Much given unto the Wars, well armed according to their Country manner, and exceeding good Archers. Amongst them there are some white people, said to come from China.

It hath in it many fair Rivers, but their names I find not: and at the mouths of those Rivers some convenient Havens, into which they admit the Foreign Merchants, but suffer none to come on Land; which the Merchant hath no cause to be sorry for, finding himself not safe on Shipboard from their treacherous practices. So that we can give but small account of their Towns and Cities, except it be the bare recital of their Names: as, viz. 1. *S. Anguine*, on a fair Bay in the South-West point; as 2. *Gargamar*, in the North-East of it. 3. *Antidofia*. 4. *Point Angoil*. 5. *Sante Jacobo*. 6. *Mutama*. 7. *Angoda*. 8. *Herendo*. 9. *Andro-wea*, and 10. *Roma*, or *New-Rome*, so entitled by some zealous *Romans*, in hope to have it thought that the *Pope* of Rome have got some footing in this Island.

This Island known, but very imperfectly in the time of *Marcus Paulus Venetus*, who telleth us many strange things of it: but none more strange than that of the bird called *Ruck*, of such incredible strength and bigness, that it could snatch up an Elephant as easily as a Kite doth a Chicken. Discovered by the *Portugals* in the year 1506, as before was said; and since frequented by the *English* and *Holland* Merchants: by whom we are informed no further touching the Estate and Affairs thereof, but that it is divided into four parts, under so many Kings, each of them in continual Wars against one another, but well enough agreed to defend themselves against the coming in of Strangers. Yet, as some say, they would be well enough content with an *English* plantation: either in love to our Nation, whom they acknowledge to be more courteous than the *Portugals*, and not so covetous as the Dutch; or else by the strength of our Shipping, and the reputation of our merchandise in it, to keep off all others.

4. MOHELIA, and S. MAURITIUS Island.

ADjoining to *Madagascar*, and as it were attending upon it, I find divers Islands; and some on the North-west we have, 1. *Motroy*, 2. *Chamroe*. 3. *MOHELIA*, and 4. *Joanna* Island; on the East, 5. The Island of *Mauritius*, and 6. *England* Forrest. Of these *Mauritius* is the greatest, but *MOHELIA* the best inhabited.

MOHELIA, situate on the North-west of *Madagascar*, is about 20 miles in length, and 16 in breadth: abounding in Goats, Hens, Coco-nuts, Limons, Fish taken on the shores, and other necessities. The People of complexion black, of composition large and strong; courageous affable, less treacherous than their Neighbours of *Madagascar*. Of the same Language and Religion with those of *Arabia*, from whence they seem to have descended; but by reason of their commerce and

intercourse with the *Portugals*, they speak that Tongue also. The Women of the like complexion, to amend which, and seem more lovely, they Pink their arms and Faces in several places. Both Sexes no otherwise apparelled than their natural Garments, with some *Flamine* Leaves about their middle to hide their shame.

Their Religion that of *Mahomet*, as before is said, their Priests in great esteem among them; so their Temples also: which they keep clean and neatly matted; not suffering any man to enter with his Shoes on his feet. Their chief Town *Mariangua*, at the West end of the Isle, strong and well Garrisoned. Heretofore under the command of one King alone; of late divided into two Principalities; one of the last Kings leaving two daughters, the one married to a Native, the other to an Arabian Lord.

5. Larger than this, on the East of *Madagascar*, is the Isle of *MAURITIUS*, so called by the *Hollanders* in honour of *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, in whose time they first set footing in it; but by the *Portugals* called *De Cerne*, and by some *Cygnus*. In compass about 100 miles; well stored with Bees, Hogs, Goats, most sorts of Fish: and liberally endowed with all the blessings of Nature, sweet Waters, most delicious Fruits, Woods fit for any use both of food and building; plenty of Ebony of all colours, but the best coal-black. Yet altogether destitute of humane Inhabitants: inasmuch as we may say of this, as the Poet of the World, before man was made;

Sæclius his Animal, mentisque capaxius alce,
Deerat adunc, & quod domum in cetera posset.

Which may be Englished in these words:

But yet the Chief, with supream Power posselt,
Was wanting, he that should command the rest.

Of the ATLANTICK OCEAN, and
The Isles therein.

HAVING thus looked upon such Islands as lie upon the Eastern side of Africa in the Indian Ocean, let us come homeward by the Cape of Good Hope, into the main Atlantic the greatest body of Waters, which is given unto by one name in any of our Cosmographers, either old or new: a name peculiar to that part of the Western Ocean, which lieth between the Straights of *Gibraltar* and the Land of *Negros*; to which Mount *Atlas* lieth with a cloudy top, and gives name to the Seas adjoining, but generally communicated to all that vast Region of Waters which lieth between *Spain* and *Africa* on the one side, and the New World, or *America* on the other side. Extended further by *Strabo*, and some other of the ancient Writers; who not knowing anything of the interposition of *America*, carry the name of the *Atlantic* to the Shores of *India*, which they make to be terminated by this on the East and South. *Macrobius* goeth farther in it, affirming positively, *omnem terram, que à nobis editur, Atlantici mari (quod Occanum appellamus) circumfusi*; that the whole habitable compass round about with the *Atlantic* Ocean. The like affirmed by *Julius Firmicus*, also by *Aristotle* in his Book *De mundo*, and by others, who have took it upon their Authority. And though some parts hereof, which the Western Shores of *Ethiopia Inferior*, be called the *Ethiopic* Ocean; yet that it doth derogate no

more from the great extent that is given formerly to the main *Atlantic*, than that some parts of the *Mediterranean* should be called *Ancientum*, *Sardum*, *Tyrrhenum*, *Creticum* according to the shores of those several places which it passeth by; which having said in general of the Sea it self, according to our method in other places, we next proceed unto the rest of the *African* Islands, which we named before, but could not meet with but in this Sea and this side of *Africa*.

6. St. HELENS, and 7. the Isles of ASCENSION.

AND the first Isle we meet with in this side of *Africa* is, 6. the Isle of *St. Helens*, situate on the west of the Cape of *Good Hope*, and in the 16 degree of the Southernly latitude, no other Island interposing betwixt *Madagascar* and it, except those of *Don Alvarez*, and of *Tristram de Acunha*, near the Cape it self; but of little note, as not worth the naming. The Island very high and hilly, and mounting from the Sea with so steep an ascent, that the Mariners have amongst them a merry saying, that a man may choose whether he will break his heart going up, or his neck going down.

It was thus called, because discovered by the *Portugals* on *St. Helens* day; but then inhabited, nor since; the King of Spain suffering none to dwell there, because it had been an unlawful *Keelplace* for unseasoned Goods: where by he lost exceedingly both in power and profit. Stored by the *Portugals* at the first discovery, with Goats, Hogs, Hens, and other Creatures: as also with Figs, Limons, Oranges, and the like Fruits, which there thrive exceedingly, and grow all the year long. Intended by them for a Stage in their going and coming to and from the *Indies*: in which they might refresh themselves, and bestow their flock, whence they are taken off by the next years Fleet. Used for the same purpose by the *English* and *Hollanders*, who for dominion about the Island, that the *Portugals* dare not Anchor near it, or own their property, if they see any shipping in the Road. No buildings in it but the ruins of a little Chappel, destroyed by the *Hollanders*; and some fragments of a little Village begun by some *Portugal* Mariners, but demolished by the King of Spain.

7. North-west from hence is the Isle of *Ascension*, so called, because discovered on *Ascension* day, but not inhabited, nor any use at all made of it for ought I can find. Of the same bigness with *St. Helens*, 30 miles in compass, and about 700 *English* miles distant from it.

8. St. THOMAS, 9. The PRINCES Island, and 10. the Isle of ANNIBON.

THE Island of *St. THOMAS*, is situate directly under the *Equator*, of Orbicular form, the Diameter being 60 miles, by consequence the Perimeter or compass 180, and just to many from the shore of the Realm of *Congo*. At the first discovery nothing but a continual Forest: now very well inhabited both by *Portugals* and *Negues*: these last brought hither from the opposite Continent: with whom the Air agrees so well, that they attain generally to 110 years of Age, few of the *Portugals* unto fifty. The Air is so vehemently hot, that it forthwith with the constitution of the *Europæans*.

The Country destitute of wheat, which if sown here turneth all to blude, and brings forth no Ear: nor will

any fruits here prosper, that have any stone in them: but to abound in *Sugar-Canes*, and well stored with *Sugars*, that 40 Ships are hence loaded yearly with that one Commodity; for making which, they have here 20 *Ingenios*, or *Sugar-houses*, and in each of them 200 *Slaves*, in some 300, which belong to the *Works*. Six days in seven these *Slaves* work for their masters, and the seventh for themselves; which they spend in sowing and planting their seeds, Fruits, and Provisions. Where, by the way these *Sugar-works*, or *Ingenios*, are a late Invention; the boiling and baking of *Sugar* (as it is now used) not being above 200 years old; and the refining of it more new than that: first found out by a *Venetian* in the days of our Fathers, who is said to have got above 100000 Crowns by this Invention, and to have left his Son a Knight; who (though he was no Knight of the post) in very little time brought it all to nothing. Before which Art of boiling and refining *Sugars*, our Ancestors not having such luxurious palaces, sometimes made use of rough *Sugar*, as it came from the *Canes*; but most commonly pleased themselves with *Honey*, more wholesome because more natural than these forced Inventions. But to proceed in the description of this Island, in the midst thereof is said to be a woody Mountain, overshadowed continually with Clouds: which do moisten the Trees that grow there in a great abundance, that from thence falleth a sufficient quantity of waters to refresh their fields, and feed their *Sugar-canes*, notwithstanding the extreme heat of the Climate and Air.

The Religion here allowed of, is the *Christianity* only, first preached here by the *Portugals*, or brought hither with them. The Church hereof governed by a Bishop, his Title, the Bishop of *St. Thomas*; but his Charge extendeth all over all the Churches in the Realm of *Congo*. The principal City of it hath the name of *Praça Nova*, a Colony of *Portugals*, consisting of 700 Families, or about that number: situate on a fine River, and a pleasant Haven: seldom without the company of *Portugal* Merchants, who bring hither in exchange for *Sugars*, wheat, wine, cheese, Hides, and other things more necessary than those *Sugars* for the life of Man. Took by the *Hollanders* in the years 1509, but again recovered, or abandoned, and since possessed again by fraud and falsehood, at the same time, and by the same dishonest Arts by which they made themselves Masters of the Castle of *Angola*, before mentioned. And though the *Portugal* Ambassador presented his injuries dealing to the States of *Holland*, yet all the answer he could get at the present, was, that their people had done nothing but what was justified by that clause of the Article, that both sides might take and keep whatsoever they could within such a time: and though the Ambassador replied very rationally in behalf of his Country, and pressed the restitution both of this Island, and that Castle by all honest arguments, yet he could then get no reason from them: and whether they have done the *Portugals* any Justice since as to those particulars, I am not able to determine.

9. THE PRINCES ISLAND, (*Insula Principis* in the *Latine*) so called, for that the Revenues of it were allotted to the Prince of *Portugal*: is situate in three degrees of the Northern Latitude. The Country very fruitful for the bigness of it; but not much observable, except it be for being taken for the *Hollanders* by *Julian Cle. Chapman*, Anno 1598, abandoned not long after to the former Owner. Attended as is fit for a *Princes* Island, by a *Deft* of *Chaplains*, viz. 1. the Isles of *St. Matthew*. 2. *St. Croix*. 3. *St. Paul*, and 4. *St. Christopher*.

ception; and waited by seven servants (so many Islands near *Cape Verd*) all in Coats of *Green*, called by one common name, *Barbacane*. But because the former four yield no matter of *Histroy*, and these last seven have no other Inhabitants but *Birds*; we may be thought, having said thus much of them, to have said enough.

10. South-west hereof, but on the other side of the Line lieth the Isle of *Amboina*, (*Insula Amboina*, as the *Latins* call it.) So named, because discovered upon the New-years-day. Inhabited and of very good filling all along the Coasts of it; but that filling made unlawful by *Crocodiles*, and other venomous and hurtful Creatures, which are said to be about the shores in great abundance.

11. The GORGADES, or the Isles of CAPE VERD.

THE GORGADES, or the Islands of *Cape Verd*. (*Insula Capitis Viridis*, as the *Latins* call them) are nine in number, called by the last name, because situate over against *Cape Verd* (*Promontorium Capitis Viridis*) in the Land of *Negrees*. Their Names, 1. *Saint Anthony*. 2. *Saint Vincent*. 3. *Buenavista*. 4. *Saint Lucies*. 5. *Insula Salis*, the Isle of Salt. 6. *Del Fogo*, or the Isle of Fire. 7. *Saint Nicholas*. 8. *Maggio*, or *Majo*. 9. *Saint Jago*. Some add to these a tenth, called *Brava*. Discovered all in the year 1449, by a *Genoise* called *Azonio de Noli*, employed therein at the charges and direction of *Henry Duke of Viso*, one of the younger Sons of King *John of Portugal*, the first of that name. Of the most little to be said. The principal, and indeed the only ones which are now inhabited, are *Majo*, *Del Fogo*, *St. Jago*. 1. *Majo*, is of most repute for a Lake of two Leagues long; the Waters whereof are by the heat of the Sun turned into Salt, which is here made in great abundance. 2. *Del Fogo*, is called from the flakes of fire which it sends forth usually; and fell so thick upon the Ship of *Sir Anthony Sherley*, when he took the Island, Anno 1596, that one might have writ his name in the ashes on the upper Deck, with the top of his finger. 3. The principal of all, *St. Jago*, yet but 7 miles long; Rocky and Mountainous, but full of very pleasant Valleys and well inhabited. The chief Town of it called *Ribiera*, or *Ribiera la Grande*, a Colony of *Portugals*; situate on a fine River and a beautiful Haven: taken and sacked by *Sir Francis Drake*, in the year 1585. and after by *Sir Anthony Sherley*, Anno 1596.

The names of *Gorgades*, as the more ancient of the two, is almost forgotten. Given to those Islands, as supposed (but I cannot see upon what Grounds) to be the seat of the *Gorgons* the proper habitation or dwelling place of *Medusa* and her two fair Sisters. This *Medusa*, said or rather fabled by the Poets to have been a Woman of great beauty; who either for suffering her body to be abused by *Nepheus*, in one of the Temples of *Pallus*, or for preferring her self before *Pallas*, had by the said Goddess, her hair turned into *Snakes*; and this property annexed unto that, who whoever looked on her, should be turned into *Stones*: which quality was retained after she was slain, and beheaded by *Perseus*. Thus and far more fabulously the Poets. The Historians (for as some think, *omnis fabula fundatur in historia*) relate how this *Medusa* was indeed a Lady of such exceeding beauty, that all men that saw her were amazed; and of such a wife and subtle brain, that for that cause only men attributed unto her a *Serpents* head. She abounding in

wealth, and by *Piracy* molting the Seas of *Europe*, was invaded by an Army of *Griecians*, under the leading of *Perseus*, who in a single combat slew her. *Perseus* when he plucked off her Helmet, admiring that beauty which he had destroyed, cut off her Head, and carried it unto *Greece*: where the people beyond measure wondered at the rare composure of her face, and the exceeding beauty of her hair; and are therefore said to have by her head been metamorphosed into *Stones*. *Pausanias* in his *Cerimbiacks* so reports the Story.

12. THE CANARIES.

THE CANARIES are in number seven, situate over against the Coast of *Libya Interior*; so called from *Canaria*, one of the principal of the number. By *Pliny*, *Ptolemy*, and other of the ancient Writers, they were called *Insula Fortunata*, the *Fortunate Islands*: and amongst them of greatest note, for being made the fixed place of the first Meridian, removed since to *St. Michaels* one of the *Azores*. But those Ancients knew but fix of them by name, and in the naming of those six do not well agree. By *Pliny*, whom *Sokinus* followeth, they are said to be 1. *Ombria*, 2. *Junonia Major*, 3. *Junonia Minor*, 4. *Capraria*, 5. *Nevaria*, and 6. *Canaria*. By *Ptolemy* thus reckoned, 1. *Aproditus*, 2. *Hera*, (or *Junonia*), 3. *Plutania*, 4. *Cassida*, 5. *Canaria*, and 6. *Pinearia*. Where we may note also to our purpose, that though these Authors disagree in all the rest of the names (*Junonia* being added by the Translator unto *Ptolemy's* *Hera*) yet they agree in making *Canaria* to be one: which sheweth that one to be of eminence enough, to give the name of *Canary* Islands unto to all the rest, called *Fortunate*, from an opinion which the ancients had of their fruitfulness, and other excellencies; in which respects several Countries in those times had the names of *Macaria*, *Felicia*, *Fortunate*. Now better known by the new names of 1. *Canary*. 2. *Palma*. 3. *Tenariffe*. 4. *Goмера*. 5. *Ferro*. 6. *Lanzarote*, and 7. *Fuente Ventura*.

1. CANARIA, or *Canaria Major*, because the biggest of the Cluster is said to be 60 miles in compass, and to contain 9000 persons: plentiful in Barley, Honey, Wax, *Sugar-Canes*, Goats, Kine, and Camels; of which and their Cheese & the skins of Beasts, they raise great profit: but from nothing more than from their Woold (whereof they have very great abundance) aided by the Cloth for the well-colouring of his Cloth. From hence and from the other of these Islands which bear this name, come the fine singing-Birds, called *Canary-Birds*, and so do also those rich Wines, (the fruit of the *Rhemish-Grape* transplanted) which we call *Canaries*. A sort of Wine, if too head, please the palate more, and better help the nature to the weakness of a cold stomach (if moderately and difference in such abundance to supply our luxury, that 100 less than 3000 Tuns hereof are vendid yearly into *England* and the *Netherlands* only.

2. PALMA, one of the least in circuit, but as rich as any; fruitful in Wine and *Sugars*, abundantly well stored with Cattel, and great plenty of Cheese; and therefore made the victualing place of the Spanish Fleet: as they pass to *Brazil* and *Peru*. This Island, together with *Canary* and *Tenariffe*, make up the Bishoprick of the *Canaries*. One of the Bishops whereof was that *Melchior Camus a Dominican* Frier; whole works now

extant in defence of the Church of Rome, shew him to have been a moderate and learned man, and Master of a perfect *Ciceronian* stile. The residue of the Islands are of the Dioceses of *Madera*.

3. *TENARIFFE*, somewhat less than the *Grand Canary*, but of the same fertility and condition with it, is most remarkable for a Mountain of great height, that it may be seen 90 Leagues at sea, in a fair clear day. Some reckon it 15 miles high, others 15 leagues, and some advance it to 60 miles, but with little credit. With truth enough most of our Travellers and Geographers hold it to be the highest in the whole world. The Form *Pyramidal*, in shape agreeing to those Prodigious of Art and Wonder, the Egyptian Pyramids. The top wherof ending in a sharp point, called the *Pike of Tenariffe*, is said to be seldom without Snow; and therefore probably conceived to be the *Nivaria* of *Pliny*.

4. *HIERO*, or *FERRI Isula*, so called from the *I-on Miner* therein, is by some thought to be the *Plutalis*, by others the *Agrostis of Ptolomy*; and some again more probably the *Ombria* of *Pliny*, if this and *Protonis Plutalis* be not one and the same, as for my part I think they be. And it might possibly have those names in the *Greek* and *Latin*, because it hath in it no fresh waters but what they do receive in showers and preserve in Cisterns: it being added by later Writers (which the Ancients knew not) that these showers do daily fall upon them from the leaves of a Tree, which always covered with a Cloud doth distill these waters, preferred in a large Cistern underneath the Tree, for the use of Man and Beast throughout the Island.

5. *GOMERA*, now as civil and well cultivated as any of the rest, was the most barbarous of all, when first discovered: it being here and here only, the ordinary sign and evidence of their Hospitality, to let their friends live with their wives, and receive theirs in testimony of reciprocal kindness: for which cause here, as in some places of the *Indies*, the Sister's Son did use accustomedly to inherit.

6. *LANSAROTE*, the first of those Islands which was made subject to the Crown of *Castile*, discovered by some adventurous *Esquians*, An. 1393 by whom spoiled and pillaged, and the poor King and Queen thereof, and 170 of their Subjects of better quality brought away Prisoners into *Spain*. On this discovery the Kings of *Castile* challenged a propriety in all these Islands; of which more anon. In this of *Lansarote* there was an Episcopate See erected by *Pope Martin* the fifth, removed unto the Isle of *Canary* in the time of *Ferdinand* the Catholic.

7. *FUERTE VENTURA*, of the same nature with the rest, supposed to be the *Capraria* of *Pliny*, and the *Cepheria* of *Ptolomy*, but not else observable. Near unto these, but not within the name and notion of the *Fortunate* or *Canary* Isles, are certain others of less note, that is to say, 1. *Graciosa*, 2. *St. Clara*, 3. *Roca*, 4. *Lobos*, 5. *Algarveira*, and 6. *Isferno*, small and of no account, nor yielding any matter of observation.

The knowledge of these Islands being lost with the *Roman* Empire, they lay concealed and undiscovered till the year 1330, or thereabouts, when an *English*, or as some say, a *French* Ship, distressed by tempest, did in

that misfortune fall upon them. Notice whereof being given in the Court of *Portugal*, in the Reign of King *Alphonso* the Fourth, *Lewis de O* was designed for the Conquest of them. Who being repelled at *Gomera*, An. 1334, gave the enterprise over, though on this ground the *Portugals* building their first claim unto these Islands. But the news spreading by degrees to the Court of *Rome*, *Clement* the sixth thought fit to make a grant of them to Prince *Lewis* of *Spain*. Son of *Alphonso de la Cerda* the right heir of *Castile*, by the old name of the *Fortunate Islands*; and to assist him in the Conquest, caused Levies of Soldiers to be made both in *France* and *Italy*. Which coming to the Ears of the *English* Ambassadors in the *Pope's* Court, they feared that some transport had been made of the *British* Islands, (than which they thought that none could better deserve the name of the *Fortunate Islands*) and in all haste dispatched a Post to the Court of *England*, for the preventing of the danger.

The people at the time of this first discovery, were so rude and ignorant, that they did eat their flesh raw for want of fire, and killed or rather turned up the Earth with the Horns of Oxen for want of Ploughs, or Tools of Iron, their Beards they shaved with a sharp Flint and committed the care of their children to the nursing of Goats. To kill a beast was conceived to be the basest office that could possibly be put on them, and therefore commonly imposed on Prisoners and condemned persons; who being thus made the common *Slughter-men*, were to live separate from the rest. Their Government by Kings in each Island one, whom at their deaths, they set up naked in a Cave, propped against the Wall with a Staff in his hand, and a Vessel of Milk fast by him, the better to enable him for his journey to the other World, and leaving him in the Grave with these solemn words, *Depart in peace, O thou blessed Soul*. The like Funeral they bestowed also on the chief of their Nobles. Yet was not the Government in those times so purely *Regal*, but that they had a Common Council (as it were) out of all the Islands, consisting of 130 persons: who did not only direct in *Civil* matters, but in *Sacred* also, prescribing to the people both their Faith and Worship; and for their pains were privileged with the first nights lodging with every Bride, which the Husband was to offer to some one of them.

But to return unto the Story, nothing being done by *Lewis de la Cerda*, in pursuance of the *Pope's* Donation, it happened in the year 1393, that some Adventurers of *Biscay*, setting out certain Ships from *Sevil* to seek their Fortunes at Sea, fell amongst these Islands. And having pillaged *Lansarote*, as before was said, and observed the number, greatness, and situation of all the rest, returned into *Spain* with great store of Wax, Hides, and other Commodities, with which those Islands did abound: extremely welcome to King *Henry*, who then reigned in *Castile* and did intend from that time forwards to possess himself of them. By *Katherine* one of the Daughters of *John Duke of Lancaster*, the Dowager of this King *Henry*, during the minority of *John the Second*, the conquest of them was committed to *John de Betancourt*, an adventurous *French-man*, (conditioned he should hold them under the Sovereignty of the Crown of *Castile*) by whom four of the Islands were subdued, though he himself perished in the Action. An. 1417. Young *Betancourt* the Son, not able to subdue *Canary*, to which most of the Islands had retired, fortified himself as well as he could in the Isle of *Lansarote*, and took unto himself the Title of King; which he left not long after to one *Alonzo*; in whose time the Islands under his command

command received the Gospel, and had a See Episcopally in the Isle of *Lansarote*. But this new King making money by the sale of his Subjects, (as well of the new *Christians*, as of the old *Idolaters*) complaint was made of him in the Court of *Castile*; and *Pedro Bivarde Campos* with three Ships of War is sent against him: with whom unable to contend, with the good leave and liking of the King of *Castile*, he held his interest in these Islands to one *Fernando Perera* Knight of *Sevil*, by the wealth and power of that City made good his purchase, and left it unto his Successors. But we must know, that the Posterity of this Prince enjoyed the four lesser Islands only; *Canary* it fell, *Tenariffe*, and the Isle of *Palmis*, being under the command of their own Kings. And so continued till the reign of *Ferdinand* the Catholic, who in the year 1483 under the Conduct of *Alphonso of Mexico*, and *Pedro de Vera*, two Noble Captains became Master of them; and translated the Episcopate See from *Lansarote* to the great *Canary*. So that although the *Portugals* claim these Islands in right of the first discovery, yet the possession hath gone always with the Crown of *Castile*. Divided at the present into two Estates, (but the one subordinate to the other) *Gomera*, *Lansarote*, and *Hiera*, being in the hands of some private Subjects; those which belong unto the Crown, being *Canary*, *Palma*, *Tenariffe*, and *Fuerte Ventura*, are said to yield yearly to the King 50000 *Ducats*; the Seat of Justice being fixed in the Isle of *Canary*, unto which all the rest resort as they have occasion.

13. MADERA, and

14. HOLY-PORT.

13. *MADERA*, the greatest Island of the *Atlantic* situate in the Latitude of 32. over against the Cape of *Cannin* in *Morocco*; in compass 140 Miles, some add 20 more. So called of the Wilderness of Trees there growing, when first discovered, the *Portugals* naming that *Madera*, which the *Latins* call *Materia*, and we *English* Timber: with which the Isle was so over-grown, that the best way to clear it and make it habitable, was by consuming them with fire; which raged so horribly for the time, that the people employed in it were fain to go far into the Sea to refresh themselves. But the Husbandry was well bestowed, the Askes making it good compost to enrich the Soil, (as burning the Turf of barren Lands and ploughing the Ashes of it, on some grounds with us) that at the first it yielded forty-fold increase. And though the first virtue of that experiment be long since decayed, yet still it yieldeth thirty-fold in most places of it; fruitful withal of a kind of Plant used in dyeing Cloathes, which is hence called *Adars*; and of *Sagapanum* in such a wonderful manner, that for a time the fishers of the *Sagars* herein made amounted yearly to 60000 *Arbors*; now not half so much. The Isle wonderfully fruitful also of Honey, Wax, rich Fruits, and the choicest Wines, the Ships whereof were brought from *Candy*, bringing forth here more Grapes than Leaves, and Clusters of two, three and four spans long. The Hills well stored with Goats, the Plains with numerous Herds of Cattle, the Woods with Peacocks, Thrushes, Pigeons: these last so ignorant of the injury which Man might do them, that at the first coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would suffer themselves to be taken up, but now have wit enough to keep out of danger.

The whole Island in all parts well watered, having besides many pleasant Springs, eight hand some Rivulets, wherewith the Earth refreshed and moistened, yields the sweeter Herbage, which otherwise by reason of the heat of the Air (never very cool) might not be so nourishing.

The chief City of it hath the name of *Ponchial*, the See of an Archbishop, and the Seat of Justice: known to the *Romans* by the name of *Jannus*, or *Avala*, as many learned men conceive, and again forgotten; it was 62 later times discovered by one *Alcibiades*, an *English* man, who was cast upon it by a tempest, An. 1344. who burying there his wife, or some other woman which he had in his company, wrote on her Tomb his name, and coming thither, with the cause thereof, which gave the *Portugals* occasion to look further after it. Desolate and unpeopled at the first discovery, now exceeding populous; and of no small advantage to the Crown of *Portugal*, to which first united, An. 1419. under the conduct of Prince *Henry* before mentioned.

14. *INSULA PORTUS SANCTI*, or the Isle of *HOLY-PORT*, is distant from *Madera* about 40 miles; neighbouring the Coasts of *Mauritania Tingitana*, and therefore probably conceived to be the *Cerne* of *Ptolomy*. So called because discovered by some *Portugals* Mariners (by the direction and encouragement of the said P. Henry) on *Alballos* day, An. 1428. Desolate and uninhabited at the first discovery, but now very well peopled. In compass about 15 miles; but now very well stored with Corn and Fruits, great shoals of Fish upon their shores, plenty enough of Bees and Goats; but such abundance of Conies (bred of one *Doe* Coney brought thither when great with young) that the Inhabitants were no less pestered with them in later times, than the *Baltics* were of old; inasmuch that they were out of hope to withstand the mischief, or repair the damages sustained by them. A little Island not far off, breedeth nothing else.

The chief Town of it *Porto Santo*, or *Holy-Port*, seated on a convenient Rode, but a sorry Haven, was taken by Sir *Anias Pesson*, in our Wars with *Spain*, An. 1598. but being sacked and spoiled, was again abandoned. In former times called *Cerne*, as before was said, and reckoned for the most remote Colony which the *Carthaginians* or *Phoenicians* had in the Western Ocean; beyond which they conceived the Sea to be unmeasurable, (proved otherwise by *Hanno's* voyage, choked with mud and weeds. Called therefore *Cerne ultima* (i. *Episcopus populus ultimum Cernae*) by *Festus Rufus*, and others of the Ancient Writers.

15. THE HESPERIDES.

THE *HESPERIDES*, by *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela*, are said to be two in number, situate in the *Atlantic* Seas; but we find not where. Much memorized and chanted by the ancient Poets, for giving a safe and pleasant habitation to the Daughters of *Atlas* (which they call by the name of *Hesperides* also); the curious Gardens by them planted, and the Golden Apples of it which were kept by the Dragon, and took hence by *Hercules*. But the *Hesperides* remove these Gardens out of the Sea, into the main Land of *Africa*, and fix them in *Cyrene*, where already spoken of. Which notwithstanding it is granted that there were anciently some Islands in the *Atlantic* Ocean, noted by this name, and said to be exceeding fruitful of their own accord; and therefore probably the same which *Plutarch* in the life of *Sertorius* call *Insulae Atlanticae*, and describes them thus: *Αἱ δὲ νῆσοι αὗται, λέγοντο παντὶ ἀνακαταπεμπόμενα θανάτῳ, καὶ οὐκ ἐπὶ τῇ πενήνῃ, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ τῇ πενήνῃ, καὶ οὐκ ἐπὶ τῇ πενήνῃ, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ τῇ πενήνῃ*. They are (saith he) two Islands parted by a narrow Strait of the Sea, distant from the main Land of *Africa* 10000 furlongs, which in our account cometh to 1250 miles, called also the

"Isles of *Blessed Souls*, and the *Fortunate Islands*. They
 "have rain there very seldom, but a fine sweet Dew,
 "which makes the Earth exceeding fruitful both for til-
 "lage and planting Fruits, which sometimes grow with-
 "out any care or labour of the Husbandman; sufficient
 "by their plenty and sweetness to maintain the people,
 "much given to ease, and hardly troubling themselves
 "with any business. The Air for the most part very
 "temperate, never extreme in any changes of the Sea-
 "son; the rigour of the Northern and Eastern Winds,
 "being by so long a passage thither very much abated;
 "as on the other side the Western and South-Eastern
 "Winds, do much refresh it with such Mists as they bring
 "from the Sea, to the great comfort of the People. A
 "place so generally sweet, that the Barbarous people in
 "it have a constant and approved opinion, that these

"should be the *Elysian Fields*, the seats of the blessed
 "Souls departed, described by *Homer*: with the report
 "whereof *Sextorius* was so highly taken, that he intended
 "to have given over the pursuit of the *Civil Wars*; and
 "there to spend the rest of his days in peace and happi-
 "ness; which he had done, if the *Cilicians*, men accu-
 "stomed unto spoil and rapine had not took him off. So
 "far, and to this purpose *Plutarch*. But what these Islands
 "are, and where now to be found, (for in regard of their
 "great distance from the Coast of *Africk* they cannot be the
 "*Fortunate Islands* spoken of before.) I cannot easily deter-
 "mine: unless we should conjecture, as *Ortelius* doth, that
 "they are the Islands of *Cuba* and *Hispaniola* on the Coasts
 "of *America*; to the story and Chorography whereof we
 "are now to hasten.

And so much for the Isles of *Africk*.

A Table

A		Long.	Lat.			Long.	Lat.
<i>Gades</i>		39 20	25 30	<i>Malta</i>		46 0	45 30
<i>Alexandria</i>		67 0	31 20	<i>Manicongo</i>		47 20	7 0 A.
<i>Algiers</i>		33 0	35 20	<i>Morocco</i>		20 0	30 30
<i>Amara</i>		63 30	5 0 A.	<i>Melinde</i>		71 20	3 20 A.
<i>Angola</i>		45 10	7 0 A.	<i>Merroe</i>		68 20	16 15
<i>Ans</i>		66 30	25	<i>Mezzata</i>		47 40	30 40
<i>Azamor</i>		18 30	32 40	<i>Mina</i>		28 50	6 20
<i>Aquin</i>		11 10	20 20	<i>Mopbaza</i>		72 0	4 50 A.
<i>Armetum</i>				<i>Mosambique</i>		70 20	14 40
				<i>Memphis</i>			
<i>Babel Mandel</i>	B	80 01	12 50	<i>Nubia</i>	N.	60 0	17 40
<i>Bagamedrum</i>		62 36	6 0	<i>Oran</i>	O.	29 40	35 0
<i>Barca</i>		62			P.	6 20	28 0
<i>Benin</i>		41 0	7 40	<i>Palma</i>		59 40	1 20 A.
<i>Bona</i>		37 10	35 40	<i>Pascar</i>			
<i>Borneo</i>		44 30	17 10	<i>Quiloa</i>	Q.	69 50	8 56
<i>Brava</i>		74 30	0 30	<i>Rameses</i>	R.	68 30	30 30
<i>Budomel</i>		10 20	14 30		S.	68 20	8 40
<i>Bugia</i>		34 30	35 10	<i>Sabaim</i>		22 0	35 40
<i>Babylon Egypt</i>				<i>Septa</i>		72 40	18 40
<i>Caire</i>	C	67 30	30 0	<i>Snachim</i>		27 30	
<i>Cyrene</i>		53 30	32 0	<i>Sus</i>	T:	30 50	35 0
<i>Canaria</i>		9 30	27 20	<i>Tangier</i>		16 10	30 0
<i>Carthage</i>				<i>Tegnit</i>		27 40	28 10
<i>Cirta</i>				<i>Teient</i>		17 0	30 30
<i>Damiata</i>	D.	60 0	32 40	<i>Tenariffe</i>		8 10	27 30
<i>Damut</i>		51 0	11 20	<i>Theffet</i>		20 0	29 10
<i>Dancali</i>		65 0	17 30	<i>Tellesine</i>		29 0	34 10
<i>Dars</i>		66 50	12 0	<i>Tigremmaon</i>		65 0	6 0
<i>Docono</i>		78 20	12 30	<i>Tombuto</i>		20 50	15 0
	E.			<i>Tunis</i>		40 0	36 0
<i>Fatigar</i>		74 0	2 40 A.	<i>Thebes in Egypt</i>			
<i>Fesse</i>		21 50	32 50		V.	77 0	13 0
<i>Fierro</i>		6 20	26 30		Z.	88 0	12 50
<i>Forte ventura</i>		11 0	28 0	<i>Vella</i>		36 40	14 40
<i>Fouchial</i>		8 10	31 30	<i>Ulrica</i>		80 0	11 20
	G.			<i>Zacatera</i>		45 50	40 50
<i>Gamba</i>		64 49	70 30 A.	<i>Zimbaus</i>		59 0	25 20 A.
<i>Guoga</i>		55 0	22 0				
<i>Goyami</i>		57 0	14 0 A.				
<i>Gualata</i>		13 30	23 30				
<i>Guber</i>		29 20	10 40				
	H.						
<i>Iloly Port</i>		10 0	32 30				
	I.						
<i>Lanjarote</i>		11 40	29 30				
	M.						
<i>Madagascar</i>		77 0	19 0 A.				
<i>Midazo</i>		46 0	5 10				

A. is the mark of a Southern Latitude.

The End of the First Part of the Fourth Book.

COSMOGRAPHY, The Fourth Book.

PART II.

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY
AND
HISTORY
OF
AMERICA,
AND ALL THE
Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Islands of it.

By PETER HETLYN.

MATTH. XXIV. XIV.

*Et predicabitur hoc Evangelium regni in universo orbe, testimonium omnibus
Gentibus: & tunc veniet consummatio.*

S. Hieronym. in locum.

*Signum Domini adventus est Evangelium in toto Orbe predicari, ut nullus sit excusabilis:
quod aut jam completum, aut brevi cernimus complendum.*

L O N D O N,
Printed in the Year, MDCLXXXII.



COSMOGRAPHY, The Fourth Book.

PART II.

CONTAINING THE CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY OF AMERICA,

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

OF AMERICA.

AMERICA, the fourth and last part of the World, is bounded on the East with the *Atlantick Ocean* and the *Vergilian Seas*, by which parted from *Europe* and *Africa*, which Seas the Mariners call *Mare del Noords*, on the West, with the *Pacifick Ocean*, by the Mariners called *Mare del Zur*, which divides it from *Asia*; on the South, with some part of *Terra Australis Incognita*, from which separated by a long but narrow *Streight*, called the *Streights of Magellan*: the North bounds of it hitherto not so well discovered, as that we can certainly affirm it to be *Island* or *Continent*.

It is called by some, and that most aptly, *THE NEW WORLD*: New for the Late Discovery; and *World*, for the vast greatness of it. The most usual, and yet somewhat the more improper name, is that of *America*; because *Americus Vesputius*, an adventurous *Florentine*, discovered a great part of the Continent of it. But since the first light he had to find out those Parts came from the Directions and Example of *Columbus*, who first led the way; and that *Sebastian Cabot* touched at many places which *Americus Vesputius* never saw, it might as properly have been called *Columbana*, *Sebastianiana*, or *Cabota*.

The most improper name of all, and yet not much less used than that of *America*, is the *West-Indies*: *West*, in regard of the Western situation of it from these parts of *Europe*; and *Indies*, either as mistook for some part of *India*, at the first Discovery, or else because the Sea-men use to call all Countries, if remote and rich, by the name of *India*.

Many are of opinion, but rather grounded on conjectural Presumptions, than demonstrative Arguments that *America* was known long before our late Discoveries, Their Reasons drawn, 1. From the Doctrine of the *Antipodes*, which being maintained by many of the Ancient Writers, inferreth (as they think) a knowledge of these parts of the World which are opposit to us. But unto this it may be answered, that the knowledge of the *Antipodes* amongst the Ancients was by Supposition, at the best by Demonstration only, & not in fact: or thus, that it was known, 1. that there were *Antipodes*, but the *Antipodes* were not known. 2. It is said that *Hanno*, a Noble *Carthaginian*, discovered a great Island in the Western Ocean, & after a long Voyage returned home again, not wanting Sea-room, but Victuals, as he told the Senate. But he that writ the actions of *Hanno* in this famous Voyage, (which some conceive to be *Hanno* himself) inform us that he sailed not West-

wards, but more towards the South : and therefore this *Great Island*, whatfoever it was, (whether *Madera*, or some one of the *Fortunate Islands*;) determine not) could not be *America*. 3. It is alleged that *Plato* in his *Timæus* speaks of a great Island of the *Atlantic Ocean*, *Libyam & Africam adæquans*, (as out him *Terrallian* hath it) as big as *Libya* and *Africa*, properly so called: which he confesseth to be drowned long before his time, and therefore possibly never extant but in some mens fancies. 4. That *Aristotle* in the Book *de mundo*, if that Book be his) speaks of an Island very fruitful, and full of Navigable Rivers, discovered by the *Carthaginians*, and by them forbidden to be planted upon pain of death. Which Island being affirmed by that Author to be *Maltorum dierum itinere a Gadibus remota*, hath made some men conceive it to be this *America*, or some of the great Islands of it. As if it might not as well be one of the *Azores*, or perhaps *Madera*, or some other of the Islands in the Road of *Huma's* Voyage. Certain I am, that one of the best Friends the *Phœnicians* have, who would not gladly lose such an opportunity of embellishing their performances in Navigation, (could any thing be built upon it) doth wave the whole Relation as of doubtful credit; and knoweth of no such place as is there described by that Author, whosoever he were. 5. Some have produced these Verses of *Seneca*, to infer a knowledge of this Country amongst the Ancients, viz.

Venient amicus scula feris,
Quibus Oceanus vincula rerum
Laxat, et ingens pateat Tellus,
Nevoque Typhus detegat Orbem,
Nec sit Terris ultima Thule.

Which we may English in these words:

In the last days an age shall come
Wherein the all-devouring Foam
Shall lose its former bounds, and shew
Another Continent to view,
New Worlds, which Night doth now conceal,
A second Typhus shall reveal,
And frozen Thule shall no more
Be of the Earth the farthest Shore.

But this Argument can bring no necessary, nor so much as a probable inference, of any such Continent as this, then known to *Seneca*: the Poet in that *Chorus* shewing as well the continual dangers as the possible effects of Navigation; that there might be, not that there were, more Lands discovered than those formerly known. 6. Some hold this Country to be the Land of *Opbir*, to which *Solomon* is said in the holy Scriptures to have sent for Gold. But *Ezior-Geber*, which is there also said to be the station where his Navy lay, was situate in the bottom of the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*: whereas if he had sent this way, his shipping must have lain at *Tappa*, or some other Port of the *Mediterranean*, and from thence set forwards through the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and so plainly Weltward. 7. Finally in the History of *Wales*, writ by *David Powel*, it is reported that *Madoc* the Son of *Owen Gwynedd* Prince of *Wales*, of purpose to decline engaging in a Civil War raised in that Estate, in the year 1170. put himself to Sea, and after a long course of Navigation came into this Country: where after he had left his men, and fortified some places of advantage in it, he returned home for more Supplies, which he carried with him in ten Barks; but neither he nor they looked after the rest of that Nation. To which some add, that there is still some smattering of the *Welsh* or *British* tongue to be found amongst them; as that a Bird with a white head is called *Penguin*,

and the like: in which regard some sorry States-men went about to entitle *Queen Elizabeth* unto the Sovereignty of these Countries. Others more wisely dissuaded from that vain Ambition, considering that *Welsh-men*, as well as others, might be cast upon these parts by force of *Tempest*, and easily might learn some few words of their own among the People there inhabiting. And though I must needs say for the honour of *Wales*, that they have more grounds for what they say, then those which look for this New World in the *Atlantis* of *Plato*, the *Atlantic* Islands of *Aristotle* and *Plutarch*, or the Discoveries of *Hæmæ the Carthaginian*: yet I am not so far convinced of the truth thereof, the use of Mariners Compaſs being not so ancient, (without which such a Voyage could not be performed) but that I may conclude with more satisfaction, that this Country was unknown to the former Ages.

But now, as *Mela* the Geographer said once of *Britannia* then newly conquered by the *Romans*, *Britannia qualis sit, qualesque progenies, mox certiora & magis explorata dicentur*: quippe jam dum clausam aperit ecce Principum maximus, (he means *Claudius Cæsar*) nec indomitarum modis sed & incognitarum ante se Genitum Victor: so may we say of *America*, and these late Discoveries. What kind of Country it is, and what men it produceth, we do and shall know more certainly then in former times; since those puissant Kings of *Spain* have laid open almost all the parts thereof, inhabited not only by unvanquished, but even unknown Nations. For God remembering the promise of his Son, that his Gospel before the end of the World should be preached to all Nations, stirred up one *Christopher Colon*, or *Columbus*, born at *Nerby* in the Seignoury of *Genoa*, to be the Instrument for finding out those parts of the World, to which the sound of the Gospel had not yet arrived. Who being a man of great abilities, and born to undertake great matters, could not persuade himself (the motion of the Sun considered) but that there was another World to which that Glorious Planet did impart both his Light and Heat, when he went from us. This World he purposed to seek after, and opening his design to the State of *Genoa*, Anno 1486. was by them rejected. On his repulse, he sent his Brother *Bartholomew* to King *Henry* the Seventh of *England*; who in his way happened unfortunately into the hands of *Pirates*, by them detained a long while, but at last enlarged. As soon as he was set at liberty, he repaired to the Court of *England*; where his Proposition found such a cheerful entertainment at the hands of the King, that *Christopher Columbus* was sent for to come thither also. But GOD had otherwise disposed his rich purchase. For *Christopher*, not knowing of his Brothers imprisonment, nor hearing any tidings from him, conceived the offer of his Service to have been neglected; and thereupon made his desires known at the Court of *Castile*: where, after many delays, and six years attendance on the business, he was at last furnished with three Ships only, and thence not for Conquest, but Discovery. With this small treasure he sailed on the main Ocean more than 60 days, yet could find no Land, so that the discontented Spaniards began to mutiny; & partly out of scorn to be under the Command of a Stranger, partly desirous to return, would not go a foot forwards. Just at that time it happened that *Columbus* did discern the Clouds to carry a clearer colour than they did before: & probably conceiving that this clearness proceeded from some high habitable place, refrained the time of their expectation within the compass of three days, passing his word to return again, if they did not see Land within that time. Towards the end of the third day, one of the Company, called *Rodrigo de Triano* (he deserves to have his name recorded, being no otherwise rewarded for such joyful News) descried Fire, an evident Argument that they

they drew near unto some shore. The place discovered was an Island on the Coast of *Florida*, by the Natives called *Gualanami*; by *Columbus* S. *Savonius*; now counted one of the *Lucania*. Landing his men, and cutting a Tree to be cut down, he made a Cross thereof, which he erected near the place where he came on Land; and by that Ceremony took possession of this NEW WORLD for the Kings of *Spain*, Octob. 11. Anno 1492. Afterwards he discovered and took Possession of *Hispaniola*, and with much Treasure and Content returned towards *Spain*. Preferred for this good Service by the Kings themselves, first to be Admiral of the *Indies*; and afterwards to a Coat of Arms with this Inscription, *For Castile and Leon Columbus hath gotten a NEW WORLD*; and in conclusion unto the Title of Duke *De la Vega*, in the Isle of *Jamaica*. News of this fortunate Discovery being sent to *Pope Alex. 6.* by the Kings of *Castile*, he very liberally bestowed upon them all those Countreys which they already had, or should afterwards discover in the Western World, advising them to use their Diligence and Endeavors for converting these people to the Faith: which was done accordingly. For the next year *Columbus* being furnished with 18 Ships for more Discoveries, & his Brother *Bartholomew* made Governor of the Countreys discovered by him, they took along with them one *Buyl*, a *Benedictine* Monk, as the *Popes* Vicar-Gener. accompanied with the learned Clerks which were to be Assistants to him in the converting of that People to the Christian Faith. In this second Voyage he discovered the Islands of *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, and built the town of *Isabella* afterwards better known by the name of *Domingo* in *Hispaniola*; from whence, for some Severities used against the mutinous *Spaniards*, he was sent prisoner into *Castile*, but very honourably entertained, & absolved from all the Crimes imputed to him. In the year 1497. he began his third Voyage, in which he discovered the Countreys of *Paria* and *Cumana*, on the firm Land, with the Islands of *Cubagua* and *Margarita*, with many other Islands, Capes, and Provinces, which shall be touched upon particularly in their several places. In the year 1500 he began his 4th. and last Voyage, in the course whereof coming to *Hispaniola*, he was unworthily denied entrance into the City of *Domingo*, by *Nicolas de Ovando*, the then Governour of it: after which, scouring along the Sea-coasts as far as *Nombre de Dios*, but adding little to the fortune of his former Discoveries, he returned back to *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, and from thence to *Spain*, where about six years after (that is to say, Anno 1506.) he departed this Life, and was honourably interred at *Sevil*, where in this day remaineth this Epitaph on his Tomb, bald in it self, and otherwise exceeding short of so great a Merit. Of which I must tell you by the way, that the *Philip* whom the *Versifier* (I do not say the Poet) called *Philippus Hispanus*, should rather have been called *Philippus Africanus*, or *Philippus Burgundus*, as being meant of that *Philip of Austria*, Duke of *Burgundy*, who had then married *Joan*, sole Daughter and Heir of the King of *Spain*, and after the death of *Isabella* succeeded in the Realm of *Castile*: or else, the *Epitaph* must be written long after his death, and meant of *Philip* the II. Son of *Charles* the Fifth, who was nor born until the year 1527. and came not to the Crown above twenty years after. Now for this *Epitaph*, such as it is; it is this that followeth:

Christophorus; hinc quem Genoa clara Columbus,
(Namine perculsit quo nescio) primus in altum
Dependens Pelagus, Solem versisque cadentes
Direxit cursum, nostrum hactenus addita Mundo
Litora detexit, Hispana pariter Philippo;
Addenda hinc alii plura & majora reliquimus.

Which may be Englished in these Words:

I Christopher Columbus, whom the Land
Of Genoa first brought forth, first took in hand,
I know not by what Deity incited,
To fear the Western seas, and was delighted
To seek for Countreys never known before.
Crown'd with Success, I first descried the Shore
Of the NEW WORLD, then desir'd to justify
The sume of *John* Lord of *Spain*,
And yet I greater matters left behind,
For men of more Means, and a braver Mind.

Dying he left two Sons behind him, of which the youngest, called *Ferdinand*, died unmarried; the eldest, called *Diego*, succeeded his Father in the Admiralty of the *Indies*, and the Dukedom of *Vega*, and married *Mary of Toledo*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* Duke of *Alva*; but having (as it seemeth) no issue by her, he spent the greatest part of his Estate in founding the Library at *Sevil*, spoken of before, which he furnished with 12000 Volumes, and endowed with a liberal Revenue to maintain the same. But though his family be extinct, yet his Fame shall live, renowned to all posterities, as the first discoverer of this new world, and consequently the greatest and most fortunate Advancer of the Spanish Monarchy; though in his life time so malign'd by most part of the *Spaniards*, that *Bobadilla*, being sent into those Parts for redress of Grievances, loaded him with Irons, and returned him Prisoner into *Spain*. Nor did they only stick after his death to deprive him of the honor of this Discovery, (attributing it to I know not what *Spaniard*, whose charts & Descriptions he had seen) but in his life would often say that it was a matter of no such difficulty to have found these Countreys; and that if he had not done it when he did, some body else might have done it for him. Whose Peevishness he confuted by this modest Artifice, desiring some of them, who insolently enough had contended with him touching this Discovery, to make an Egg stand firmly upon one of its ends, when they could not do so upon many Trials, he gently bruising one end of it made it stand upright; letting them see without any farther reprehension, how easie it was to do that thing which we fee another do before us.

But to proceed, *Columbus* having thus led the way, was seconded by *John Cabot* a *Venitian*, the Father of *Sebastian Cabot*, in behalf of *Henry* the Seventh of *England*; who in the year 1497. discovered all the North-East Coasts hereof, from the Cape of *Florida* in the South, to *Newfoundland*, and *Terra di Labrador* in the North, calling the *Royalests* to turn Homagers to that King, and the Crown of *England*. Next after him succeeded *Americus Vesputius*, an adventurous *Florentine*, employed therein by *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*, Anno 1501. on a design of finding out a nearer way to the *Indies*, than by the Cape of *good Hope*, who though he sailed not farther than the Cape of *S. Auguftine* in *Brazil*, without so much as having a sight of the Great River *de la plata*, which waleth the South Parts of that Country, yet from him (to the great Injury and Neglect of the first Discoverers) the Continent or Main Land of this Countrey hath the name of *America*; by which it is still known and most commonly called. Followed herein by divers Private Adventurers and Undertakers out of all Parts of *Europe* bordering on the Ocean, *Ferdinand Magellan* was the first that compassed the whole World, and found the South Passage, called *Fretum Magellanicum* to this day: followed herein by *Drake* and *Circenish* of *England*, *Frobisher* and *Davis* attempt'd a Discovery of the North-west Passage: *Willoughby* and *Burroughs* of the North-east.

east. So that, according to that elegant saying of the learned *Vernanius* in his *Advancement of Learning*, this Great Building, the World, had never through-Light made in it, *untill these our days*; by which, as almost all parts of Learning, so in especial this of Navigation, and by consequence of Cosmography also, hath obtained an incredible Proficiency in these later times.

For in the Infancy and first Ages of the World, (pardon me, I beseech you, this short but not unprofitable Digression) men lived at home, neither intent upon any foreign Merchandize, nor inquisitive after the Lives and Fortunes of their Neighbours; or in the Language of the poet,

*Nondum caesa fuit, peregrinum ut viseret Orbem,
Mentibus, in liquidis Pinus, descenderat undas.*

The Pine left not the Hills on which it stood,
To seek strange Lands, or rove upon the Flood.

But when the Providence of God had instructed *Noah* how to build the Ark, for the preservation of himself and his children from the general deluge, the posterity which descended from him, had thereby a Pattern for the making of Ships and other Vessels (perfected in more length of time) whereby to make the Waters passable, and maintain a necessary intercourse betwixt Nation and Nation. 'Tis true, the Heathen Writers, which knew not *Noah*, attribute the invention of Shipping to sundry men, according to such Informations or Traditions as they had received: *Strabo* to *Minos* King of *Crete*; *Diodorus Siculus* to *Nepheus*, who was therefore called the God of the Seas; and *Tibullus* to the people of *Tyre*, (a town indeed of great wealth and Traffick; and the most famous Empory of the elder times) saying,

Prima Ratem venit credere docti Tyrus.

The *Tyrians* first the Art did find
To make ships travel with the Wind.

And questionless the *Tyrians*, and the rest of the *Phoenicians*, enjoying a large Sea coast, and many safe and capacious Havens, being in these times most strong at Sea, & making so many fortunate navigations into most parts of the then known World, might give the Poet some good colour for his affirmation. From the *Phoenicians*, the *Egyptians* (their next Neighbours) might derive the Art of Navigation; tho' being an ingenious people, they did add much to it. For whereas the first Vessels were either made of the body of some great Tree, made hollow by the art of Man, or else of divers rods or twigs fashioned into a Boar, and covered with the skins of beasts, (which we have spoken of before, when we were in *Sanguibar* and which are still in use amongst these *Americans*) the *Phoenicians* brought them first into strength & form; but the *Egyptians* added decks unto them. By *Danuis* King of *Egypt*, when he fled from his brother *Ramefis*, the use of shipping was first brought amongst the *Grecians*, who before that time knew no other way of crossing their narrow Seas, but on beams or Rafters tied to one another, *Nave primis ab Egypto Danauis adventi; ante enim Ratibus navigabatur*, as it is in *Pliny*: where we may see the true and genuine difference betwixt *Ratis* and *Navis*; though now both be used indifferently for all sorts of Shipping. Amongst the *Grecians*, those of *Crete* were the ablest Sea-men; which gave occasion to *Aristotle* to call *Crete* the Lady of the Sea; and to *Strabo*, to make *Minos* the Inventor of Ships. In following times the *Carthaginians*, being a Colony of *Tyre*, were most considerable in this kind, and by the benefit of their Shipping much distressed the *Romans*. But so it

happened (as all things do and must concur to) Gods publick Purposes in the alteration of Estates; that a Tempest separating a *Quinquagena*, or Gally of five banks of Oars, from the rest of the *Carthaginian* Fleet, cast it on the Shore of *Italy*; by which accident the *Romans* learning the Art of Ship-wrights, soon became Masters of the Sea. That *France* and *Spain* were taught the use of Shipping by the *Greeks* and *Phoenicians*; is a thing past questioning; *Mar-Jailes* in the one being a *Phoenician*, and *Gades* in the other a *Tirian* Colony. As for the *Belgians* and the *Britains*, it is Probable that they first learnt it of the *Romans*, (tho' formerly they had some way to transport themselves from one shore to the other) for *Cesar* telleth us of the *Belgae*, *Ad eos Mercatores minime commeant*, that they were not at all visited by foreign Merchants. And the same *Cesar* found the Seas betwixt *France* and *Britain* so ill furnished with Vessels, that he was fain to make Ships to transport his Army: *Singulari militum studio circiter sexcentas & duodeviginti Navas invenit*, as his own words are.

Having thus brought Navigation to the greatest height which it had in those days; let us look back again on the Inventors of particular Vessels, and the Tackle unto them belonging. That the *Phoenicians* first invented open Vessels, and the *Egyptians* Ships with Decks, hath been said before, and unto them also is referred the Invention of Gallies, with two banks of Oars upon a side; which kind of Vessels grew so large in the course of time, that *Protonius Philopater* is said to have made a Gally of Fifty Banks. Great Ships of Burthen called *Circenae*, we owe to the *Cypriots*; Cock-boats, or Skiffs (*Scaphas*) to the *Ilyrians*; or *Laburnians*; Brigantines, (*Cleoces*) to the *Rhodians*; and Frigots or light Barks, (*Lembos*) unto the *Cyrenians*. The *Phœlii*, and *Panoplyi* (which we may render men of War) were the Invention of the *Pamphylians*, and the Inhabitants of *Phœliis*, a Town of *Lycia*, in *Asia Minor*. As for Tackles, the *Bœotians* invented the Oar; *Dædalus*, and his Son *Icarus*, the Masts and Sails: Which gave occasion to the Poets to feign, that flying out of *Crete*, they made Wings to their Bodies; and that *Icarus*, soaring too high, melted the Wax which fastened his Wings unto his Shoulders, and thereby perished: the truth being, that presuming too much on this new Invention, he ran himself upon a Rock, and was cast away. For *Hippagines*, Vessels for transporting of Horse, we are indebted to the *Salimianians*; for Crapling-hooks, to *Anacharsis*; for Anchors, to the *Tuscans*; and for the Rudder, Helm, or Art of Steering, to *Tiphys*, the chief Pilot in the famous *Argo*, who noting that a Kite when he flew, guided her whole body by her Tale, effected that in the devices of Art, which he had observed in the Works of nature. By these helps some great Voyages were performed in the elder times; the greatest, those of *Jafon*, *Ulysses*, and *Alexander*, with the Fleets of *Solomon* and the *Egyptian* Kings. Of these, *Jafon* and his Companions failed in the Ship called *Argo*, through the *Enxine* Sea, and part of the *Mediterranean*; *Ulysses*, through the *Mediterranean* only; final Gallies, if compared with the Ocean. *Alexander's* Journey, so famous, and accounted then so hazardous, was but falling down the River *Indus*, and four hundred furlongs into the Ocean. And for the Fleets of *Solomon*, and the Kings of *Egypt* it is very apparent that they went with great leisure, and crawled close the Shore-side: otherwise it had been impossible to have consumed three-hundred years in going from *Ezion-Geber* into *India*, and returning again; which was the usual times of these Voyages, as appeareth in *1 Kings*, 10. 22. After the fall of the *Roman* Monarchy, the most potent States by Sea in the *Mediterranean* were the *Genoese* and *Venicians*; in the Ocean the *English* and the

the *Hanse-Towns*, neither of which ever attempted any great Discoveries.

But in the year 1300, one *Flavio* of *Malpigi* in the Realm of *Naples* found out the Compass, or *Pysis Nautica*, consisting of 8 Winds only, the four principal, and four collateral; and not long after, the people of *Bruges* and *Antwerp* perfected this excellent Invention, adding 24 other subordinate Winds or points. By means of this excellent Instrument, and withal by the good success of *Columbus*, the *Portugals* Eastward, the *Spaniards* Westwards, and the *English* Northwards, have made many glorious and fortunate Expeditions: which had been utterly impossible to have been performed, and had been foolishly undertaken when that Help was wanting. I know there hath been much pains taken by some Learned men to prove the use of the Mariner's Compass to be far more ancient than is now commonly pretended. *Fulter*, a very learned and industrious man, but better skilled in the Hebrew Tongue than the Philology of the *Greeks* and *Latines*, will have it known to *Solomon*, and by him taught unto the *Tyrians* and *Phoenicians* (the most famous Sea-men of old times): but he brings no Argument of weight to make good the cause. Nor is it possible that such an Excellent Invention, so beneficial to the common Good of all Mankind, should have been forgotten and discontinued for the space of more than 2000 years, if ever the *Tyrians* and *Phoenicians* had been Masters of it; who could not possibly conceal it (had they been so minded) from the common Mariners, or they not have communicated it for Gain, or desire of Glory, to the *Greeks* and *Romans*, under whom successfully they lived. As little moment do I find in some other Arguments; as that the *Lapis Heraclius* of the ancient Writers, or the *Verfioris* of *Plautus*, should be by them intended of the Mariner's Compass. For plainly the *Verfioris* of *Plautus* is no other than that piece of Tackle which our Mariners now call the *Bohm*; by which they use to turn their Sails, and fit them to the change of every Wind. And so much doth appear by the Poet himself, in the Comedy which he calls *Mercator*, saying, *Hinc ventus meus secundus est, capto modo Verfiorum*. So called from *Verfo*, to turn often, or from *Verfium* the first *Supine* of *Verbo*: whence *Velum vertere* is a common phrase amongst the *Latines*, used for the shifting of the Sail as the Wind doth vary. As for the Load-stone, it is called indeed *Heraclius Lapis*, *Ἡρακλῆος λίθος*; by the *Greeks*; not because *Heraclius* *Tyrus* whom the *Phoenicians* invoked when they were at Sea, had first found out the Virtue of it, as our *Fallax* thinketh; but because first found near *Heraclaea* City of *Lydia*; *Ἡρακλῆας πόλις ὅπου ἡρῶν ἡ λίθος*, saith *Hesychius*, the old Grammarian. Called for the same reason *Magnus*, by the *Writers* both *Greek* & *Latine*; because first found in the Territory of *Magnesia* a City of *Lydia* also, whereof *Heraclaea* was a part. So *Suidas* telleth us of the *Greeks*, *Ἡρακλῆος λίθος τινὲς ἐν μαγνησίᾳ ἀπέδωκεν, διὸ τὸν Ἡρακλῆος λίθον μαγνησίαν ἀπέδωκεν*, *quidam* *Magnesium reddiderunt, quia Heraclaea pars est Magnesia*. Called for the very same reason *Lydius Lapis* also, but by them known only as a Touchstone. Thus old *Lucretius* for the *Latines*,

*Quem Magneta vocant parvo de nomine Graii,
Magnetum quia sit parvis de finibus ortus.*

Which Stone the *Greeks* do *Magnes* name,
Because it from *Magnesia* came.

But I have rambl'd farther than I did intend, drawn by the virtue of the Load-stone too much out of my way. It is time now to return again into *America*, where the

Spaniards at their first arrival found the People without all manner of Apparel, nought skilled in Agriculture; making their Bread either of a Plant called *Maize*, or a kind of Root called *Tuca*: a Root wherein is a venomous Liquor, not inferior to the most deadly Poysons; but having first squeezed out this Juice, and after dried and prepared the Root, they made their Bread of it. They worshipped the Devilish Spirits, whom they called *Zemes*; in remembrance of whom they kept certain Images made of Cotton-wool, like our Childrens Babies; to which they did great Reverence, as supposing the Spirit of the *Zemes* to be in them: and to blind them the more, the Devil would cause these Puppets to seem to move, and to make a noise. They stood also in so great fear of them, that they durst not displease them: for if their wills were not fulfilled, the Devil straight executed vengeance upon some of their Children; so holding this infatuated People in perpetual Thralldom. So ignorant they were of all things which they had not seen, that they thought the Christians to be Inimortal: wondering exceedingly at the Sails, Masts, and Tacklings of their Ships; themselves knowing no Ships or other Vessels, but huge Troughs made of some great bodied Tree. But this opinion of the Christians Immortality (in the sense they meant it) did not long continue, for having taken some of them, they held their heads under the Water till they had quite choaked them, whereby they knew them to be mortal, like other men. Quite delitute of all good Learning, they reckoned their time by a confused Observation of the course of the Moon: and strangely admired to see the *Spaniards* know the Health and Affairs of one another, only by reading of a Letter. Of plain and honest nature, for the most part they were found to be; loving and kind in their Entertainments, and apt to do good Offices, both private and publick, according to their Understandings: encouraged thereunto by an opinion which they had, that beyond some certain Hill (but they knew not where) those which lived honestly & justly, or offered up their Lives in defence of their Country, should find a place of everlasting Peace and Happiness. So natural is the knowledge of the Souls Immortality, and of some *Ubi* for the future Reception of it, that we find some *Tract* or other of it in most barbarous Nations. And as for Gold and Silver, which the new come Christians so adored, they esteemed them no otherwise than as dross; though many times they adorned themselves therewith for the colour's sake; as they did also with Shells, Feathers, and the like fine Gew-gaws.

Of Complexion most of these *Americans* were reasonably fair and clear, little inclining unto Blackness: notwithstanding that a great part of this Country lieth under the same parallel with *Abiopia*, *Lybia*, and the Land of *Negrees*. So that the extraordinary heat of the Sun is not (as some imagine) the Cause of that Blackness, though accidentally it may turn the skin into such a Colour; as we see in many Country-Lasses, even in colder Climates, whose Faces are continually exposed to the Sun and Weather: Others, more wife in their own Conceits, (but in no bodies else) will have the natural Seed of the *Africans* to be black of Colour; contrary both to Sense and Reason, Experience and true natural Philology being both against it. And some will have this Blackness laid as a Curse on *Cham*, (from whose posterity the *African* Nations do derive themselves) because, forsooth, he had carnal knowledge of his Wife when they were in the Ark: a Fancy as ridiculous as the other false. So that we must refer it wholly to Gods secret pleasure; though possibly enough the Curse of God on *Cham* and on his posterity (though for some cause unknown to us) hath an Influence on it.

Touching the Original of this People, it is most probable that they descend from the *Tartars*; for which there are some Arguments of special weight. For first it may be proved in the way of Negation, that they came not from *Europe*; as having no remainders of the Arts, Learning and Civilities of it. And secondly, that they came not from *Africa*; in regard they have no Black men amongst them, except some few which dwell on the Sea-Coasts over against *Guinea* in the Land of the *Negroes*, from whence they are supposed to have been brought hither by some Tempest or other. Thirdly, that they have not the least token or shew of the Arts and Industry of *China*, *India*, or any civil Region on that side of *Africa*. The Affirmative Arguments prove first, That they came from *Asia*, next in particular from *Tartary*. That they came out of *Asia*, is more than manifest, in that the West side of the Country towards *Asia*, is far more populous than the East towards *Europe*; of which there can be no other reason assigned, than that these parts were first inhabited, and that from hence the rest was peopled. Next, the Idolatry of this People, and the particularities thereof, their Incivility and barbarous qualities, tell us that they are most like the *Tartars* of any. Thirdly, the West-side of *America*, if it be not Contiguous with *Tartary*, is yet disjointed by a very small Streight, as may be perceived by our Maps and Charts, as also in the Description of these Countries: so that there is thence into these Countries a very quick and easy passage. And fourthly, The People of *Quivira*, which of all the Provinces of *America*, is the nearest unto *Tartary*, are said to follow, in the whole course of their Life, the Seasons and best pasturing of their Cattel, just like the *Scythian Nomades*, or *Tartarian Herds*: an evident Argument of their Original Descent.

But from what Root soever they did first descend, certain it is, that they had settled here many Ages since, and overpread all the parts and quarters of this spacious Continent; there being no place which the *Spaniards*, or any other Adventurers, found desolate or waste, and without Inhabitants. But their numbers are much diminished since these late Discoveries; the *Spaniards* behaving themselves most inhumanly towards this unarmed and naked People, killing them up like Sheep appointed for the Slaughter, or otherwise consuming them in their Mines and Works of Drudgery. And had not *Charles* the Fifth ordained with most Christian Prudence, that the Natives should not be compelled to work in the Mines against their will, but that the *Spaniards* should provide themselves of Slaves elsewhere, the Natives in a little longer time had been quite exterminated, to the great reproach of Christianity and the Gospel. For so exceeding barbarous and bloody were they at their first coming thither, that *Herny*, a Nobleman amongst them, being persuaded to embrace the Christian Faith, demanded first what he should get by being of that Religion? and was answered, That he should get Heaven and the Joys thereof. Then would he know what place was destitute to such as died unbaptized; and was answered, That they went to Hell, and the torments of it. Finally, asking unto which of these two places the *Spaniards* went, and being told they went to Heaven, he renounced his Baptism: protesting that he would rather go to Hell with the Unbaptized than to live in Heaven with so cruel a people. The rest were driven unto the Font, like so many Horses to the watering place, and received into the Church of *Christ* without any Instruction: inasmuch that one old Friar (as himself confessed to *Charles* the Fifth) had Christened 70000 of them, and another of that rank 300000; never acquainting them with any of the Articles of the Christian Faith, or points of Religious Conversation, (except

it were to be obedient to their Pastors and Teachers.) Yet here I must confess, (for I am loath to defraud any man of his due) there hath been made a great improvement of Christianity: the number of Christians in this Country being thought by some learned men of the Church of *Rome*, to equal all those of the *Latine Churches* in *Europe*. And though perhaps contricted at first unto it as a new Religion, and of a stricter Rule than that which before they had; yet by long time and Education it is now grown more plausible and familiar to them. The Church here is governed by the four Archbishops of 1. *Mexico*, 2. *Lima*, 3. *S. Foy*, and 4. *Dominico*, who have under them 25 Suffragan Bishops, all liberally endowed and provided for.

When this New World came first acquainted with the Old *Isabel Queen of Castile* would not permit any other Husband *Ferdinando's* Subjects to be planted here, viz. *Aragonians* or *Valentinians*, but licensed the *Castilians*, *Andalusians*, *Disenians*, and the rest of their own people only, envying the Wealth hereof to the rest. When she was dead *Ferdinando*, licensed generally all the *Spaniards*, excluding only the *Portugals*. But so rich a Prize could not so farily be fenced, but that the *Portugals*, *French*, *English*, and now of late the *Low-Country-men* have laid in their own Barns part of the *Spaniards*'s Harvest; who well hoped to have had a Monopoly of so wealthy a Region, & to have enjoyed without any Rival or Competitor the possession (I cannot say the Love) of a Country so abundantly fruitful. For though some of the Kings of *Spain* have been used to say, that they loved the *East-Indies* as their Mistresses only, in whose favour they could patiently endure enmity, but esteemed *America* as their Wife, in whose Love they could not brook a Competitor without a foul dishonour: yet by his leave (or without it rather) some of his Neighbours have made bold with his Wife in these later times, though in the affections of his Mistresses they have greater interest. But these Attempts of the *English* and *Hollanders* have been an occasion of great strength to the whole Country. For whereas in our first wars with *Spain*, in Queen *Elizabeth's* time, our private Adventurers found the Sea-coasts almost naked of Defence, and thereupon made many a rich and prosperous Voyage to these parts: the *Spaniards*, upon sight of that weakness and disadvantage, so strongly fortified their Havens and Sea-Towns, that towards the later end of the Reign of that Queen we were not able to accomplish that with great and Publick Forces, which before had been performed by small and Private. Which caused our Captains and adventurers, failing oftentimes in their Designs upon the Continent to take up their Market on the Seas in the return of *Spanish Navies*, as they yet do.

This New World is very fruitful of Spices, Fruits, and such Creatures which the Old World never knew; stocked with such store of Kine and Bulls, (brought hither out of *Europe* since the first Discovery) that the *Spaniards* kill thousands of them yearly for their Tallow and Hides only: blest with such abundance of Gold, that they found in many of their Mines more Gold than Earth: a Metal which the *Americans* met not regarding it, greedily exchanged for Hammers, Knives, Axes, and the like Tools of Iron; for before they were wont to make their Canoes or Boats plain without, and hollow within, by the force of Fire. Other particularities shall be specified in the particular Descriptions of the several Countries. I shall now only take a brief View of such of their Beasts and Fowls as either this Old World did not know, or knew not in such shapes and qualities as are there presented. Their Lions less in greatness than those in *Africa*, are said to be of colour gray, and so nimble as to climb Trees; their

Dogs

Dogs snouted like Foxes, but deprived of that property which the Logicians call *Proprium quatuor modo*, for they could not bark; their Hogs with Talons sharp as Razors, and the Navil of their Bodies on the Ridge of their Backs: their Stags and Deer without Horns; their Sheep (they call them *Lamas*) not only profitable, as with us, for Food and Raiment, but accustomed to the carrying of Burdens, some of 150 Pound weight. Amongst such strong Beasts as this Old World knew not, we may reckon that deformed one (whose name I find not) whose fore-part resembleth a Fox, the hinder-part an Ape, except the Feet only, which are like a man's: beneath her Belly a receptacle like a purse, where she keeps her young, till they be able to shift for themselves; never coming thence but when they suck, and then in again. The *Armadilla* is in form like a barbed Horie, seeming to be armed all over, and that with artificial (rather than natural) plates, which do shut and open. The *Vengue* resembleth a Goat, but greater and more profitable; of the Fleeces whereof they make Rugs, Coverings, and Stuffs; and in the Belly find the Bezoor, sometimes two or three, a sovereign Antidote against Poisons and venomous Diseases. A kind of Hare, resembling a Wren in his Feet, and a Cat in his Tail; under whose Chin nature hath fastned a little bag, which the hath also taught him to use as a Store-house; for in this, having filled his belly, he preserveth the remnant of his provision. The *Pigrita*, a little Beast, (not so named for naught) which in fourteen days cannot go so far as a man may easily throw a stone. Then for their Birds, they have them there in such variety of Colours, that the *Indians* will perfectly represent in Feathers whatsoever they see drawn with Pencils: inasmuch as a Figure of *S. Francis* made of Feathers was presented to Pope *Sixtus Quintus*; whose Eye could not discern them to be natural Colours, but thought them Pencil-work, till he made trial with his Fingers. One called the *Taminejo*, of all Colours, so little, that it seems no bigger than a Bee or butterfly, the mouth thereof no bigger than the eye of a Needle, yet yielding not to the Nightingale in the sweetness of its Note and Melick; the Bird and Nest, put into Gold-Scalps not weighing above 24 Grains, yet beautified with Feathers of so many Colours especially in the Neck and Breast, that the *Indians* make great use of them in their Feather-pictures. Others as big as these are little. The *Condore* of such strength and greatness, that they will fall upon a Sheep or Calf, open it and eat it. Like Miracles of Nature have they in their Fruits and plants, more proper unto natural History than to this Discourse; and many medicinal Drugs of rare operation, which I leave to the consideration of the Learned Herbalists. I am too much a Fool to be a Physician, and therefore will not deal in such things as are out of my Element. Yet somewhat of this kind we may chance to meet with in the Description and Survey of the several Provinces into which this New World is divided.

The whole is naturally divided into two great *Peninsula's*; whereof that towards the North is called *Mexicana*, from *Mexico* the chief City and Province of it, supposed (for the most Northern parts of it are not yet discovered) to contain 13000 miles in compass. That towards the South hath the name of *Peruana*, from the great Country of *Peru*; the Circumnavigation whereof is reckoned to 17000 Italian miles. The *Isthmus* which joineth these two together is very long, but narrow; in some places not above 12 miles from Sea to Sea, in many not above seventeen. By the *Spaniards* it is called the Streight of *Darien*, from a River of that name in *Peruana*, near unto the *Isthmus*; and is so small a Ligament for so great a Body, that some have thought of turning these two

Peninsula's into perfect Islands. Certain it is, that many have motioned to the Council of *Spain*, the cutting of a navigable Channel through this small *Isthmus*, so to shorten their common Voyages to *China* and the *moluccas*. But the Kings of *Spain* have not hitherto attempted it, partly, because if he should employ the *Americans* in the work, he should lose those few of them which his people have suffered to live; partly, because the *Slaves* which they yearly buy out of *Africa*, do but suffice for the Mines and Sugar-houses, but principally, lest the passage by the Cape of *Good Hope* being left, those seas might become a receptacle of Pirates. Which doubtless was a very prudent and politic consideration. Many times I have read of the like attempts begun, but never of any finished. *Sesibris* King of *Egypt*, *Darius* of *Persia*, one of the *Peronians*, and a late capricious Portugal had the like Plot, to make a passage from the Red Sea to the *Mediterranean*. So had *Cesar*, *Caligula*, and *Nero*, Emperours of *Rome*, upon the *Corinthian Isthmus*. Another of the same nature had *Charles* the Great, to let the *Rhene* into the *Danube*: the like had *Lucius Verus*, to join the *Rhene* and the *Rhone*: all which, in their peculiar places, we have already touched. *Nicemur* also, King of *Syria*, intended to have made a Channel from the *Caspian* to the *Euxine* Sea an infinite Project. But neither he nor any of the rest could finish these works: God, it seemeth, being not pleased at such proud and haughty Enterprises. And yet perhaps the want of Treasure hath not been the least cause why the like Projects have not proceeded: besides the dreadful Noises and Apparitions, which (as we have already said) continually affrighted the Workmen.

Not less observable than this Great, but unsuccessful, Design of cutting a passage through the *Isthmus*, from one Sea to the other, was that notable, but alike fruitless Attempt of *John Oxenham*, an adventurous Englishman, in a passage over it by Land. This man being one of the Followers of Sir *Francis Drake*, arriving in a small Bark, with 70 of his Companions, a little above *Nombredy Di*, the chiefest Town of all the *Isthmus*, drew his Ship on Land, covered it with Boughs, and marched over the Land with his Company, guided by *Negroes*, till he came to a River. There he cut down Wood, made him a Pinnace, entered the South-Sea, went to the Isle of *Pearls*, where he stayed ten days; intercepted in two *Spanish* Ships (who feared no Enemy on that side) 60000 pound weight of Gold, 200000 pound weight in bars of Silver, and returned in safety to the Land. And tho by the mutiny of some of his own Company, he neither returned into his own Country, nor unto his Ship: yet it is an Adventure not to be forgotten, in that never attempted by any other, and by the *Spanish* Writers recorded with much admiration.

But to return to the Division of this Country, and the two main parts thereof which this Streight uniteth. *Mexicana*, or the Northern *Peninsula*, may be most properly divided into the Continent, and Islands; the Continent again into the several Provinces of 1. *Espariland*, 2. *Nova Francia*, 3. *Virginia*, 4. *Florida*, 5. *California*, 6. *Nova Galicia*, 7. *Nova Hispania*, 8. *Guatimala*; each of them branched into many Subdivisions and lesser Territories. *Peruana*, or the Southern *Peninsula*, taking in some part of the *Isthmus*, as before we did, hath on the Continent the Provinces of 1. *Castilla Aurea*, 2. *Nova Granada*, 3. *Peru*, 4. *Chile*, 5. *Paraguay*, 6. *Brazil*, 7. *Guiana*, and 8. *Paria*, with their several Members, Parts, and particular Regions. The Islands which belong to both, dispersed either in the Southern Ocean, called *Mar del Sur*; where there is not any one of note but 1. Those called *Las Ladrones*, and 2. The Islands of *Santon*: or in the Northern Ocean, or *Mar del Norte*,

reduced unto, 3. the *Caribbees*, 4. *Porto Rico*, 5. *Hispaniola*, 6. *Cuba*, and 7. *Jamaica*, in the Survey of which Particulars we will begin with those which lie on the North-east of this great Continent, not Possessed by the *Spaniards*; and passing through the Plantations of such

other Nations as have any footing in the same, come by degrees to the Estates of the King of Spain, that we may lay them all together without interruption: beginning with *Estotiland*, the most Northern Part, and that which (as some say) was discovered first.

O F

ESTOTILAND.

ESTOTILAND, as under that name we comprehend those Regions of *Mexicana* which lie most towards the North and East, hath on the East the main Ocean: on the South, *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*; on the West, some unknown Tract not yet discovered; and on the North, a Bay or Inlet of the Sea, called *Hudson's Straights*, and called so from *Henry Hudson* an English man, who by this way endeavoured to find out a more commodious and quick passage to *Cathay* and *China* than had been formerly discovered. It comprehends,

1. *Estotiland*, specially so called, 2. *Terra Corterialis*, 3. *New-found Land*, and 4. the Isles of *Bacalaos*.

1. And first *ESTOTILAND*, specially so called, is the most Northern Region on the East side of *America*, lying betwixt *Hudson's Straights* on the North, and *Terra Corterialis* on the South. The Soil sufficiently enriched with natural Endowments, is said to have in it Mines of Gold, and other Metals: but I doubt it lyeth too much North for Gold, whatsoever it may do for Brass and Iron. The People rude and void of goodness, naked, notwithstanding the extreme cold of the Country; not having either the wit, or the care, to cover their Bodies with the skins of those Beasts which they kill by Hunting, though their bellies teach them to keep life by the flesh thereof: said by the first Discoverers to sow Corn, to make Beer, or ale, and to have many herds of their own with which they traded into *Greenland*; as also to have many Cities and Castles, some Temples consecrated to their Idols, where they first sacrificed Men, and after eat them. The Language which they speak is expressed in Characters of their own; but some knowledge of the *Latin* Tongue there hath been amongst them, and *Latin* Books in the Library of one of their Kings, understood by few.

Such were the Reports made of this Country by the first Discoverers, who were certain Fishermen of *Freezland*, cast by a Tempest on this coast about the year 1350. Six of them only got on Land, where all died save one; who after a long wandering from one prince's Court to another, found means to return into his own Country: the King whereof, called *Zichumi*, being a great Adventurer in the fears of Arms, prepared for the further Discovery and Conquest of it. Animated thereunto by the opportune coming of *Nicolo* and *Antonio Zeni*, two noble Gentlemen of *Venice*, who desiring to see the Fashions of the World, furnished a Ship at their own Charges, and passing the Straits of *Gibraltar* held their course Northward, with an intent to see *England* and *Flanders*. But driven by Tempest on this Island, Ann. 1380, they were kindly welcomed by the King, then newly prosperous in a War against those of *Norway*, who liked *Nicolo* so well, that he gave him a command in his Navy, and under his

good conduct won many Islands, discovered *Greenland*, and provided for the Conquest of *Estotiland* also. But *Nicolo* in the mean time dying, the business was pursued by his Brother *Antonio*, the King in Person making one in the Undertaking; who liked the Country so well, being once Possessed of it, that he built a City in it, and there determining to spend the rest of his days, sent back *Antonio* unto *Freezland*, with the most of his people.

This is the substance of the Story of the first Discovery published long since by one *Francois Marco*, out of the Letters of the *Zeni*: which had they been considered of as they might have been, we had not so long wanted the acquaintance of this part of the world. But whether it were that their Reports were esteemed as fabulous by the States of *Europe*, or that the time was not yet ripe for this great Discovery; there was nothing done in pursuance of it: *Zichumi* never going back to his own Country, and *Freezland* not long after conquered by the Kings of *Norway*. So that the knowledge of it was quite lost again, till these later days. Said, in the Letters of the *Zeni*, to be well stored with Fowl, and the Eggs of Birds, which they found there for their refreshing; the Haven where they landed to be called *Cape Trin*: the people to be of small Stature, fearful, and to hide themselves in Caves at the sight of the *Freezlanders*: that there was a Mountain always burning, or casting smoke; together with a certain Spring, whence issued a water as black as Pitch; but no fish Cities, Forts, and Temples, as the Fishermen spoke of. The Country West from *Freezland* 1000 miles.

To give you the Face of it as it stands at the Present, it is said to be well cultivated, fruitful of all Necessaries for the life of Man, and rich in Metals, but extreme cold; watered with four Rivers, which rising out of an high Mountain in the midst of the Country, disperse themselves over all parts of it. The people said to be more ingenious, of better judgments, and more skilled in most Mechanick Arts, than the rest of the *Americans* were at the first Discovery; which argueth some more Civil people to have been formerly amongst them. Their Garments of the skins of Beasts, or Sea-Caves, with which also they covered the outside of their Boats, to keep out the water, and make them able to endure the Sea. What towns they have, and whether the name of *Cape Trin* be still remaining, I am not able to discover; this Country lying still for the most part hidden in a Northern Mist. All we can say is, that some English names have been imported of late on some Capes and Promontories lying on the Northern Shores hereof towards *Hudson's Straights*, by *Hudson* and such others of the English Nation who pursued that Enterprize. Of which sort are Prince *Henry's Foreland*, towards the East, almost

most at the entries of those Straights; & then proceeding towards the West, *Cape Charles*, *Kings Foreland*, and last of all *Cape Walsingham*, at the end thereof, where these Straights open unto a large and capacious Bay, called *Hudson's Bay*. But of these more particularly in another Place, where we endeavour the Discovery of such parts of the World as are yet unknown, and so within the compass of a *Terra Incognita*.

2. *TERRA CORTERIALIS* hath on the North *Estotiland*; on the South *Canada*, or *New-France*. So called from *Calpar Corterialis*; who in the year 1500 left his name unto it. It is called also *Terra di Labrador*, both from the pains required of the Husbandman, and the great Recompence which it gives him: in the same sense as *Campania* in the Realm of *Naples* is named *Terra di Lavoro*. By the French, who succeeded in the Possession hereof after the *Spaniards* had forsaken it, it was called *New-Bretagne*, with reference to *Bretagne* in *France*, their own natural Country.

The people at the first coming of *Corterialis* were found to be barbarous enough, well coloured, swift of Foot, and very good Archers: their clothing of Beasts-skins; their Habitations Caves, or some sort of Cottages; their Religion *Paganism*, or none; their Directions Sooth-saying, Not so forgetful of the Law which Nature had planted in them, as not to know the necessary use of marriage; but extremely jealous. Better conditioned at the Present than in former times, by their near neighbourhood to the French, and commerce with Foreigners: affirmed to be very well disposed, to feed most generally on fish, and to adorn themselves with Bracelets of Brass, or Silver. Their chief Towns, 1. *Brest*, 2. *Santa Maria*, 3. *Cape Marso*, of which little memorable.

The Country first discovered by *Sebastian Cabot*, the Son of *John Cabot*, before mentioned: who in the year 1497, at the Charges and Encouragement of King *Henry 7*, setting sail from *Brissol*, first made the Discovery of these parts as far as to the Latitude of 67 and an half, (which brings *Estotiland* within the compass also of his Discoveries.) The Land which he first saw he called *Prima Vista*; an Island lying before it he called *S. John's*, because discovered on the day of *S. John Baptist*. They found upon the Country plenty of White Bears, Stags greater than ours. Scut-fishes of a yard long, and such store of Cod-fish (which the Inhabitants called *Bacalaos*) that their multitudes sometimes stayed his Ships: hence the occasion of their name. Returning home, he found great Preparations for War in *Scotland*; so that nothing else was done in this Discovery by the English Nation. But three years after, *Calpar Corterialis* a Portuguese, setting sail from *Lisbon*, fell upon these parts of *Cabot's* Discoveries, which since bear his name: from whence he brought the piece of a gilded Sword of *Italian* workmanship; left there most probably by one of the *Cabots*. Returning again the next year, he was no more heard of; drowned in the Sea, or slain by the Savages on the Land as was his Brother *Michael* in the year next following. Neglected after this, till the French having planted in *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*, cast an eye upon it; who gave the name of *Brest* to a town hereof, (according to the name of a noted port in *Little Bretagne*;) but whether they settled any Colony in it, or only did resort unto it in the way of Trading, I am not able to determine.

3. *NEW-FOUND-LAND*, (*Terra Nova*, as the *Latines* call it) is a great Land, lying on the South of *Corterialis*, from which parted by a Frith, or Strait, called *Golfo del Castenau*. So called from the late discovery of it, when discovered first, though it be some scores of years ago: as *Wickham's College* in *Oxford* hath the

name of *New College*, though founded divers years past; because it was the Newest when that Name was given.

The dimensions of the Country I have no where met with. But for the quality hereof, it is said to be better inhabited in the North-part, than in the South; though the South the fitter of the two for Habitation. Furnished upon the Sea-Coasts with abundance of Cod-fish, as also with Herrings, Salmon, thornbacks, Smelts, Oysters, & Mussels with pearls in them. Within the Land a goodly Country, naturally beautified with Roses, fown with pease, planted with itely trees, and otherwise diversified both for pleasure & profit: the Air hereof never very extreme, more temperate in the depth of Winter than with us in *England*, the Brooks being never so frozen over, that the Ice is able to beat a Dog; and those little Frosts but seldom holding three nights together. The people of reasonable Stature, full-eyed, broad faced, but headless, their Faces coloured with Oker; their Houses, poles set round meeting together in the top, & covered over with skins, an Hearth, or Fire-place in the midst: their Boats of Bark, twenty Foot long & four in breadth, not weighing above 100 pounds weight; every of which will carry four men, and is by them carried to all the places of their Removals.

Places of most importance in it, are the several Havens (of which it is conceived to have more and more commodious, than any one Island of the World for the big-ness of it;) not beautified with Towns or Buildings, but yielding very safe stations to the greatest Ships. The chief whereof, 1. *Remosa*, or *Raignse*, on the North of the promontory called *Cape de Raz*, the South-east Angle of the Island: of much repute for Fishing, from several Countreys. 2. *Portus Formosus*, or *Fair-Haven*, three Miles North of the other: capable of great Ships, and bearing into the main Land above 40 Miles: situate in the Latitude of 40, and 40 minutes. 3. *Thornby*, by the *Portugals* named *Enfada Grande*. 4. *Trimy Bay*, on the North of *Cape S. Francis*, by the *Portugals* called *Bahia de la Concepcion*: a large Bay, five miles broad in the narrowest place; yet safe withal, and of very good Anchorage. 5. *Bona Vista*, the name of a port & promontory. 6. *White-Bay*, or *Bay-Blanch*, (as the French call it) safe and capacious, on the North of the promontory of *S. John*. Betwixt which and *Cape de Raz*, on the North-east Angle of the Island, is no port of Note. Then on the South side of the Island, and the West of *Cape de Raz*, is 7. *Port Treppellex*, 8. *Port Prefenza*, and 9. *Port des Bassins* (or the *Biscain Haven*;) and on the West side, having doubled the *Cape de Raz*, in the South-west Angle of the Island, there is 10. *S. George's Bay*: all of these safe, capacious, and of great repute.

4. Before the Island, at the distance of 25 Leagues from *Cape de Raz*, lyeth a long bank or ridge of Ground, extended in length many hundred Leagues, in breadth 24 Leagues where broadest, in other places but fifteen: and all about it certain Islands, which *Cabot* by one common name called *BACALAO S*, (that name peculiar now unto one alone) from the great multitude of Cod fish (by the Natives called *Bacalaos*) which swarmed hereabouts so numerous, that they hindered the passage of his Ships, as before was noted, and lay in such Shoals upon the coasts, that the Bears caught them with their Claws, and drew them on Land. The Government at that time by Kings, before whom the people in the most formal expressions of Duty and Reverence used to rub their Noses, or stroke their Foreheads: which if the King observed, or accepted of, and meant to grace the party which had so adored him, he turned his head to his left Shoulder, as a mark of Favour.

The first Discoverers of this Country (but not known

then to be an Island) were the two *Cabots*, *John* and his Son *Sebastian*, employed herein by *Henry* the 7. 1497. as before was noted. The business being laid aside at his coming back, was afterwards revived by *Thorn* and *Eliot* two of *Bristol*; who taking a more Perfect view of it than was took by the *Cabots*, ascribed to themselves the Discovery of it, and animated *King Henry* the 8. unto the Enterprize, which was done Anno 1527, but with ill success. In the mean time the *Normans*, *Portugals*, and *Britains* of *France* had resorted to it, and changed the names which by the *English* had been given to the Bays and Promontories. But the *English* would not so relinquish their pretensions to the premier Seisin. And took possession in the year 1583, *Sir Humphry Gilbert* took possession of it in the name of the Queen of *England*, in-

terdicted all other Nations the use of Fishing, and intended to have settled there an *English* Colony. But being wrecked in his return, the tending of the Colony was discontinued till the year 1608, when undertook by *John Guy* a Merchant of *Bristol*, who most successfully performed it; the Colony so prospering in a little time, that they had Wheat, Rye, Turneps, Coleworts, of their own sowing, some probability of Metals, a certainty of Sables, Musks, and other precious Commodities, besides their Fishing; though that the great occasion of their settling there. Such plenty is there found of Ling and Cod-fish all about the Coasts, that ordinarily our men take 200 or 300 of them within four hours space, which they convey from hence to all parts of *Europe*.

O F

CANADA.

CANADA is bounded on the North with *Cortierialis*; on the South, with *New England*; on the East, with the Main Ocean: the Countreys lying on the West either not yet discovered, or not perfectly known. So called from the River *Canada*, the greatest, not of this Province only, but of all this *Peninsula*. A River which hath its Fountain in the undiscovered parts of this Northern Tract: sometimes enlarged into great Lakes, and presently reduced to a narrower Channel, with many great Windings and Reaches in it. Having embosomed almost all the rest of the Rivers of this Country, it emptieth it self into the Great Bay of *St. Lawrence*, over against the Isle of *Assumption*, being at the Mouth 40 Leagues in breadth, and 150 Fathom deep.

It is also called *Nova Francia*, from the *French*, who following the Tract of *Cabot* and *Cortierialis*, made a further Discovery of these parts, and planted several Colonies in them. The Business first undertaken by *Jacques Cartier*, Anno 1534, received here gladly by the Natives with Singing, Dancing, and exprelling much sign of Joy: pursued by *Monsieur Roberval*, sent thither in the year 1542, by *King Francis* the first, nor only to discover the Country, but to plant some part of it, who built there a fair Fortrefs for his greater safety; followed therein by divers others of that Nation, in their several times.

The nature of the Soil, and People, we shall best discover in the several parts of it, each differing from one another, and so not easily conformed to a general Character. Look we now only on the principal Rivers of the whole. 1. *Canada*, of which before, 2. *Pemegonet*, or *Norumbegue*, as some call it, of which more hereafter. 3. *Quimbegne*, falling into the Ocean as the others do, 4. *Rio S. Johns*, ending its course in a large Bay called, *Bay Francoise*, interposed betwixt *Nova Scotia* and the rest of this Country. 5. *Les Trois Rivières*, which rising far North, and passing through two great Lakes, falleth into the *Canada*. 6. *Saguenay*, of the same Original, Course, and Fall. A River of it strong a Current, that it suffereth not the Sea to flow up its Channel; so deep; that

in many places it attaineth to 100 Fathoms; and though but narrow at the mouth, yet groweth it broader and broader upwards, and having received many lesser streams, loseth it self last, where the other doth.

It containeth in it several Regions, 1. *Nova Francia* specially so called, 2. *Nova Scotia*, 3. *Norumbegue*, and 4. the *Isles* adjoining.

1. *NOVA FRANCIA* specially so named is situate on the South of *Cortierialis*, and on the North of the great River of *Canada*, towards the East; but on both sides of it, in the Western and more In-land parts. The Country is naturally full of Stags, Bears, Hares, Martens and Foxes, whose flesh the people did eat raw, (till more civilized) having first dried it either in the smoke or Sun as they do their fish. They have also store of Conies, Fowl and Fish great plenty; one Fish more memorable than the rest, which they call *Adolmel*, whose Body and Head is like that of a Grey-hound. But their greatest Jewels are their Chains of *Espergne*; a Shell-fish of the whitest colour, excellent for the staining of Bloud: which they fashion into Beads and Bracelets, and so wear, or sell them. Not very plentiful of Fruits, or fit for Tillage, yet it breedeth some Corn, of Pulse good plenty. The Air more cold then in other Countreys of like height, partly by reason of the greatnels of the River, which being wholly of fresh Water, and so large without all chilleth the Air on both sides off; partly because of the abundance of Ice, and those hills of Snow which the North-wind passeth over in the way to this Country.

The People, when the *French* first discovered them, were very rude and barbarous; few of them furnished with Houses, but removing from one place to another, as their Food decayed; and carrying all their Goods with them (a thing easily done) upon those removes. Such as lived toward the Sea, or the greater Rivers, somewhat better housed. For in the day-time they fish in their Boats, which they draw unto the Land at night, and turning them upside down, sleep under them. As ill apparelled as housed; for they went all naked, except a little piece of skin before their Privities. Some of them had their heads quite shaven, excepting one Bush of hair on the

top

top of the Crown, which they suffered to grow to the length of an Horfes Tail, tied up with Leather-strings in a knot. Each man allowed his two or three Wives apiece; and they so content to their Husband, that they never marry after his death, but keep themselves continually in a mourning habit, a Vizard, as it were, made of Grease and Coal-dust, which they spread over all their bodies. The women labour more than the men, both in fishing and husbandry; digging the ground instead of ploughing, with certain pieces of wood, where they sow their Maiz, (a Plant of which they make their bread in most parts of *America*.) Idolaters in general before the coming of the *French*, as they are most of them at this day: the *French* and others which have planted in these Northern parts having added little more unto Christianity, than by the Colonies they brought with them. Yet in the midst of this darkness they saw so much light, as to believe that when they dyed they went immediately to the *Savrs*, from thence conveyed to certain green and pleafant fields, full of flowers and fruits. Plain Evidence that they believed the Immortality of the Soul, & that there was some place appointed for reception of it.

The chief Towns of it at that time, 1. *Hochelaga*, round in figure, compassed about with three Course of timber Ramparts, one within the other; sharp at the top about two Rods high, with one Gate only to give entrance, and that well fortified (in their kind) with Piles & Bars. It had in it 50 great houses, in the middle of every one a Court, & in the middle of that Court a place which they made their fire on. Situate far within the Land, about six or seven Leagues from the banks of the River *Canada*, in the most pleafant part of the Country; and therefore made the seat of their King whom they highly revered, & carried him on their shoulders sitting on a Carpet of skins. 2. *Stadaec*, or *Standacome*, and 3. *Quebecque* which the *French* call *S. Croix*, on the course of the same River also; this last a Colony of the *French*. 4. *Tadoussac*, a safe but small Haven, not capable of above 20 ships, at the mouth of *Saguenay*. 5. *France-Roy*, a Castle built by *Monsieur Roberval*, when he came first into this Country. 6. *S. Lewis*, designed for a *French* Colony by *Monsieur de Champlain*, Anno 1611, but never came to great effect: yet so much *Champlain* got by the undertaking, that he left his name to a great Lake of this Country (full of little Islands) in the Lands of the *Oroquebi*, inhabiting on the South of the River *Canada*, into which it emptieth it self at the last.

2. *NOVA SCOTIA*, containeth that part of the Countreys of *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*, which the *French* call *Acadie* or *Cadie*, (being a *Peninsula* or Demy-Island) with so much of the main Land as lieth between the River *Canada*, and the large Bay called *Bay-Francoise*, from the River of *S. Croix* upon the West, to the life of *Assumption* on the East. So called by *King James*, in the Grant of these Countreys to *Sir William Alexander*, after Lord Secretary of Scotland, and by *King Charles*, for his approved fidelity, most deservedly created Earl of *Sterling*. The Letters-Patents of which Donation bear date Anno 1621. What time the *French* having been outed of their holds here by *Sir Sam. Argal*, Governour of *Virginia*, had abandoned the South-parts of *Canada*, and betook themselves more into the North, and the higher parts of the Course of that River. And in pursuance of this Grant, the said *Sir William Alexander* in the year 1622, sent a Colony hither: and having procured a New Map to be made of the Country, caused the *Peninsula*, lying on this side of the *Bay Francoise*, to be called *Nova Caledonia*, that on the North thereof, to be called *Nova Alexandria*, giving new names also unto most of the Ports and Promontories. For the better accomplishment of which business, he obtained also a Patent for advancing a certain

number of persons to the hereditary dignity of *Baronets*, or Knights of *Nova Scotia*, as we call them commonly, distinguished from others by a Ribon of *Orange-Lamoy*, the money raised upon which Patent was to be wholly employed towards this Plantation. But being unable with those helps (as certainly Plantations are of too great burden for a private person) or willing to employ his money to more profit, he sold *Port-Royal* to the *French*, and after discontinued his endeavours in it.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Port-Royal*, in *Acadie* or *Nova Caledonia*, on the *Bay Francoise*, once a Colony of the *French*, by *Monsieur de Mont*, Anno 1604, continued with much difficulty till the year 1613, when destroyed by *Sir Sam. Argal*, then Governour of the *English* Plantations in *Virginia*, by reason that the *Jesuits*, whose neighbourhood he liked not of, had begun to nest there. Sold since again unto the *French*, as before is said, by whom still possessed. 2. *S. Lukes Bay*, by the *French* called *Port au Monton*. 3. *Gaspé*, a noted Port in *Nova Alexandria*, opposite to the life of *Assumption*. 4. *Capeche*, on a fair Bay in the same Coast also.

3. *NORUMBEGA* hath on the North-East *Nova Scotia*, on the South-West, *Virginia*. The air is of a good temper, the soil fruitful, and the people indifferently civil; all of them, as well men as women, painting their faces. The men are much affected to hunting, & therefore never give their daughters to any unless he be well skill'd in that game also. The Women are here very chaste, and so well love their husbands that if at any time they chance to be slain, the widows will neither marry, nor eat flesh, till the death of their husbands be revenged. They both dance much, and for more merriments, sometimes stark naked. The Sea upon the Coasts so shallow & so full of Sands, that it is very ill falling all along these shores. The Towns or habitations rather, so differently called by the *French*, *Portugals*, and *Spaniards*, that there is not much certainty known of them. Yet most have formerly agreed upon *Norumbegue*, or *Arampac*, as the Natives call it; said to be a large, populous and well-built Town, and to be situate on a fair and capacious River of the same name also. But later observations tell us there is no such matter; that the River which the first Relations did intend is called *Pemegonet*, neither large nor pleafant; and that the place by them meant is called *Agencia*, so far from being a fair City, that there are only a few Sheds or Cabins, covered with the barks of Trees or the Skins of Beasts. However I have let it stand on the first reports, it being possible enough that Town might fall into decay, deserted on the coming of so many several Pretenders, and that the Sheds or Cabins which the last men speak of may be only the remainders of it.

4. Adjoining unto these Countreys of *Canada*, are several Islands, not joyed in any common name, but yet deserving some consideration in this place and time. The principal whereof, 1. *NATISCOTEC*, called the life of *Assumption*, situate in the very mouth of the River, was first discovered by *Jacques Cartier*, Anno 1534, in length 35 leagues, seven or eight in breadth. The Island very plain and level, of a fruitful Soil, beautified with Trees of several sorts, replenished with great plenty both of Fowl and Fish, and furnished with convenient Roads, though with no good Havens. Not hitherto inhabited for ought I can find. 2. *RAMEA*, a Irie of little Islands in the great Gulf of *S. Lawrence* on the South of *Natiscotec*, first found out or frequented by the Citizens of *S. Malo* in *Bretaigne*, Anno 1590, of great resort for the *Morse* fishing, used upon the Coasts, which is here so gainful, that a *French* Bark in a very little time kill'd 1500 of them. These *Morses* (take this by the way) are a kind

a kind

a kind of Sea-Horses, or Sea-Oxen; with two Teeth of a foot long growing downwards out of the upper Jaw, fold clearer than Ivory, because effected a foveraign Antidote against poisons. They have also four Feet, no Ears, the Horns about half an ell in length; the skin, when dressed twice as thick as that of a Bull; their flesh, when young, as sweet and tender as Veal. So fat and unctuous, that with the bellies of five of them, there is made usually an Hogs-Head of Train oil, as good as that of the Whale, 3. *BRITON*, a small Island on the South of the *Ramee* about two leagues in length, and as many in breadth; of a rich soil, fair pasture, well shaded with tall and lofty Trees; and neighboured by a smaller Island called *Ile Blanche*, of the like fertility. 4. *BRITON*, (*Insula Britonum*) so named from *Jaques Briton* a French-man, in the time of *Francis* the first, called also the Island of *S. Lawrence*, is situate on the South-East of the Isle of *Brion*: in form triangular, in compass about 80 leagues; pleasant & fruitful, though for the most part swell'd with great Arms of the Sea, well stored with shell-fish; and in the midst thereof a great Lake full of little Islands: the Woods replenished with plenty of Deer, black Foxes, and a Bird called *Penguin*. Inhabited by the Natives only, though the *Portugals* did sometimes endeavour a Plantation in it; but finding the air too cold for them, they again deserted it. The chief Haven is by the *English* called now *Newport*; by the *French* *Port aux Anglois*, from the great resort of the *English* to it, in regard of their fishing. 5. *ISLE DE SABEL*, by the *French* so called from the Sands which lie high about it; distant from the *Briton* Isle about 30 leagues to the South; 15 leagues in compass, but more long then broad, and of unsafe landing. The planting of it, in regard of the

safety of the place, attempted twice by the *French* and once by the *Portugals*, but without success. 6. Others of less note, as *Mengo*, and *Les Isles des Oseaux*, I pass over purposely, there being nothing, or but little to be spoken of them.

So it appears by this account, that though the *French* have given the name of *Nova Francia*, to all these Countries; yet they never had the honour of the first discovery, wherein the *English* and *Portuguese* had precedence of them: nor are possessed of any considerable part thereof, the *Scots* putting in for a large share; the *English* Masters of the best Ports, and all the Islands of the Country in the hands of the Savages. Of these some great and powerful Nations over-throw the rest. The chief whereof are the *Troquois*, on the North-East of *Norumbega*, neighboured by the *Ochataquins*, the *Albionnigins*, and the *Nebicrines*, the *Souriquis*, and *Erechimis* of *Acadie* and *New Alexandria*; the *Momagnets*, and the *Antogouantans*, on the banks of the *Canada*. All of them stout and hardy people, false of their words, treacherous in their practices, and merciless in their revenges. So well acquainted with the Factions and divisions of *Europe*, that they know how to make use of one Nation against another, and by that means to keep themselves in their first estate, without being subject to any. So that the footing which the *English*, *French*, or *Scots* have obtain'd amongst them, serves rather to secure themselves in the way of their Trading then to entitle them to any possession and command in the Country: the *French* being shut up in a few weak Forts on the North of the *Canada*; the *Scots* pretending only to a Bay or two in the South of *Acadie*; and the *English* being only *Tenants* at the will of the Natives, for such convenience of fishing as they have in the adjoining Islands.

OF

VIRGINIA.

VIRGINIA hath on the North *Canada*; on the South, *Florida*; on the East, *Mare del Noiri*; the Western boundaries not known, or not well discovered. So called in honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, that Virgin Monarch; when discovered (to any purpose) by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1584. By the natural Inhabitants called *Apalchen*, from a Town of that name, one of the chief in all the Country.

The Inland parts hereof are mountainous and barren, full of thick Woods, a Receptacle for wild Beasts, and wilder Savages. Towards the Sea more plain and fruitful; as will appear by the Survey of its several Provinces; premising first, that *Virginia* in the full latitude thereof extendeth from the 34 degree, where it joyns with *Florida*, unto the 44, where it quartereth on *Norumbega*.

The first Discovery hereof by the two *Cabots*, Father and Son, Anno 1497, did first entitle the Crown of *England* to this Country. The Design after seconded by Mr. *Hare*, bringing thence certain of the petty Kings or Princes hereof, who did Homage to King *Henry* the 8. then sitting in his Royal Throne in the Palace of *Westminster*: but no

thing farther done in pursuance of it. And though *John Verazzani* a noble *Florentine*, at the encouragement and charge of King *Francis* the first, Anno 1524, discovered more of the Country then *Cabot* did; yet the *French* too much in love with the pleasures of *France*, or intangled in Civil wars amongst themselves, looked no farther after it. Infomuch that the Country lying thus neglected, was re-discovered, by the charges and direction of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, then Captain of the *Guard*, and in great power and favour with Queen *Elizabeth*, Anno 1584, who sending Master *Philip Amadas*, and Master *Arthur Barlow* upon this employment, did by them take possession of it in Queen *Elizabeth*'s name, in honour of whom he caused it to be called *Virginia*. The next year he sent hither a Colony, under the conduct of the noble Sir *Richard Grenville*, who not supplied with necessaries for their subsistence, returned home again. In the year 1587, a second Colony is sent hither, but as successful as the first: the business being undertaken only on a private Purse, not owned as the Interest of the State, or of publick moment, till the year 1606. In the mean time the North parts of this Country being more perfectly discovered by Captain *Bartholomew Gosnell*, Anno 1602. and the

the middle parts being taken up by the *Hollanders* not long after, that is to say, in the year 1609, the whole became divided into these three parts; 1. *New England*, 2. *Nova Belgium*, 3. *Virginia*, strictly and specially so called. To which the likes of the *Bermudz* shall come in for a fourth.

NEW ENGLAND hath on the North East *Norumbega*, and on the South-West, *Nova Belgium*. So called by the Adventurers by whom first planted, not so much because opposite to *Nova Albion*, as some men conceive, as an intimation of the like adjuncts of distinction given by the *French* and *Spaniards* to *Nova Francia*, *Nova Hispania*, *Nova Gallia*, *Nova Granada*, and the like.

The Country situate in the middle of the Temperate Zone betwixt the degrees of 41 and 44, equally distant from the Arctick Circle and the Tropick of Cancer; by consequence, naturally of the same degree of heat with *France* or *Italy*. But by reason of the thick-mists which arise from the Seas adjoining, those heats so moderated, that the Air is found to be exceedingly agreeable to an *English* body. The Soil not only fruitful of such Commodities as grow there naturally, but also of all sorts of Grain which were brought from *England*. Great store of Woods and Trees, both for fruit and building; plenty of Deer within the Woods, of Salt and Fish upon the Shores; & as for Turkeys, Partridges, Swans, Geese, Cranes, Ducks, Pigeons, such a full variety, as serves not only for necessity, but for Pride and Luxury. The Commodities of most note for maintaining of Traffick, rich Furs, and many sorts of Fish, some Amber, Flax, Linnen, Iron, Pitch, Masts, Cables, Timber fit for Shipping; in a word, whatsoever comes to *England* by the way of the *Sound*, might at better rates, and with far less trouble be supplied from hence; at least if we believe the Relations of it, published in the year 1622.

The people for the most part well enough disposed, if not roughly handled, hospitable and more civil than the rest of their Neighbours. So tractable and docile in matters of Religion, that liking well the Rites and Ceremonies of the *English*, at their first settling there, Anno 1608, they would use to say, that King James was a good King, and his God a good God, but their *Tanto* naught. Which *Tanto* was an evil Spirit, which did haunt & trouble them every Moon, and therefore they worshipped him for fear. Which notwithstanding, I find not any great increase of Christianity among the Natives: our *English* Undertakers thinking it sufficient, if they and their household serve the Lord, without caring what became of the Souls of the wretched people, which hitherto have sat in darkness and the shadow of death, notwithstanding those New Lights which have shined amongst them. And as for those New-comers which have planted there, all *English*, though some immediately out of *Holland*, I cannot better tell you of what strain they were, than in the words of *John de Laet*, Nov. O. his lib. 3. cap. 8. where he observeth, *Primum hos Colonos, ut & illos qui postea accesserunt, paucissimum aut omnino fuisse ex eorum hominum Sectis, quos in Anglia Brownistas & Puritanos vocant, quales non pauci & in Belgium superiorem omnes se receperunt, & hinc ad Jocos sunt profecti.* They were (saith he) either for the most part, or altogether of that Sect which in *England* are called *Brownists* or *Puritans*; many of which had formerly taken themselves to *Holland*, but afterwards went thence to joyn with their Brethren in *New-England*.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1. *Tamscot*, where our men found Outlets of nine Inches long. 2. *Nayfick*, a River of the *Tarentines*, one of the chief Nations of this Tract. 3. *Sagadahoc*, of most note and deservedly too, a mile and half broad at the mouth or influx, and 70

upwards for the space of a days journey, where it maketh a large Lake three days journey broad, with six Islands in it; nourished with two large Channels, the one from the North-East, the other from the North-West, each of them rising from a Lake, the least of which being four days journey long, two broad, the other doleth it. Of less note, 4. *Apamavpeske*, 5. *Ranaffick*, 6. *Albamutrago*, &c.

The Country on the Sea-side full of notable Havens, populous, and very well inhabited, infomuch as Captain Smith reckoned in the space of 70 miles above twenty Havens, some of them capable of 500 or 1000 sail; most of them sheltered from the fury of Winds and Sea, by the interposition of some Islands, of which about 200 lie upon that Coast. In the space of 70 miles he reckoned 40 Villages of the Barbarous people; the chief of which are, 1. *Macaduct*, 2. *Sagocket*, 3. *Pemmaguid*, 4. *Nisconcus*, 5. *Kennebecque*, &c. all being called by the name of some Brook or water, upon which they were seated. Since added by the *English*, 1. *S. George's Fort*, the first Plantation of the *English*, built by them at the mouth of the River *Sagadahoc*, in a Demi-Island, Anno 1607. 2. *New-Plimouth*, seated in a large and capacious Bay, at the first building (Anno 1620.) consisting of nineteen families only, but in short time improved to an handsome Town: which as it was the first Town, so it was the Church which was settled there, modelled according to the form of Mr. *Robinson's* Church in *Holland*, (that notorious Separatist,) and after made a pattern to the rest of these Churches: each absolute and independent in it self, without subordination unto any superior. For my part, I behold Episcopacy as the Primitive Government of the Church of Christ. But if there were no other Pretenders to it than *Presbytery* and *Independency*, I should as soon look for the Scepter and Throne of Christ (as they please to phrase it) in the *Coordination* of *New-England*, as in the *Presbyteries* of *Geneva*, or the *Kirk* of *Scotland*. 3. *Briflow*, upon the Seaside also, but more North than *Plimouth*. 4. *Barnstable*, so called with reference to a noted Sea-Town of that name in *Devonshire*; as 5. *Boston*, with like reference to as noted a Sea port in *Lincashire*. 6. *Quillipack*, on the Bay of *Masachusetts*, a Town of an old name, but a new Plantation.

This part of *Virginia*, first discovered by Captain *Gosnell*, Anno 1602, and the next year more perfectly surveyed by some of *Briflow*, was by King James Anno 1606, granted unto a certain Corporation of Knights, Gentlemen, & Merchants, to be planted and disposed of for the Publick: Sir *John Popham*, then Chief Justice of the Common Pleas, being one of the chief also in that Commission. By his encouragement, and principally at his Charge, a Colony was sent thither, Anno 1607, under the Presidency of Captain *George Popham*, and *Raleigh Gilbert*, who built the Forts of *S. George* at the mouth of *Sagadahoc*. But the President dying the next year, and not long after him the Chief Justice also, the Colony, despairing of good success returned home again. Successfully again attempted Anno 1614, the Undertakers were resolved to make farther trial of his fortune; and in the year 1626, sent out eight Ships more: but it never settled into form till the year 1610, when by the building of *New-Plimouth*, and some encouragements sent thence to bring others on, it grew in very short time to so swift a growth, that no Plantation for the time ever went beyond it. The growth of *Old Rome* and *New-England* had the like foundation; both Sanctuaries, *Ad qua turba omnis exsultavit gentibus novarum rerum cupida confusio*; as *Livy* telleth us of the one, referred to by such of the Neighbouring Nations as longed for Innovations in Church and State.

2. *NOVUM BELGIUM*, or *NIEUW-DEER*.

DER LANT, hath on the North-east *New-England*; on the South-west, *Virginia* specially so called. So named from the *Netherlanders*, who began their Plantation in it Anno 1514. the Country being then void: and consequently open to the next Pretender, according to that Maxime in the Civil Laws, *qui nullius sunt in bonis, dantur occupanti*. And yet they had some better title than a bare *Infringion*, having bought *Hudson's* Charts and Maps, and otherwise contented him for the charge and pains of his *Discovery* *An. 1609.* of which more anon.

This part of the Country extended from the 38. degree and an half to the 41. 19. of a good temperature both of Air and Soil: fruitful of those things which the Earth brought forth of its own accord; abundance of wild Grapes, Nuts, and Trees of great height and bulk for shipping; plenty of Herbage, store of Plants, the effects of nature; and where the people did their part, such increase of *Maize* (a plant of which they make their Bread) as shewed their care and industry to be well bestowed. Since the planting of the *Hollanders* there, abundantly well furnished (within their command) with Wheat and other sorts of Grain, as also with Flax, Hemp, and such other Commodities as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The Woods replenished with Deer, and the Plains with Fowl; the Rivers not inferior to any in *Sturgeon*, *Salmons*, and other the best sort of Fish which can swim in the water.

The people, though divided into many Nations, and of different Languages, are much of the same disposition with the other Savages, clad in Beasts-skin, for the most part without certain dwellings; dwelling together many Families of them under one poor roof, made of Poles meeting at the top, and covered with the bark of Trees. Their Household-stuff a Tobacco-Pipe, a wooden dish, and an Hatchet made of a broad flint; their weapons, Bow and Arrows, but their Arrows made or headed with the bones of Fishes. Their Religion Idolatry, or worse; their chief God the Devil, with which they worship under the name of *Menento*; but with less Pomp and Ceremony than is used in *Africk*. Of manners, fearful and suspicious, (not without cause) wonderfully greedy of revenge; but, if well used, tractable and obedient unto their Superiors; sickle, but very faithful unto those who trust them; conceived to be inclinable to the Christian Faith, if they had fallen into the hands and command of those who had studied Godliness more than Gain.

Rivers of note they have not many. That want is supplied by many large and capacious Bays, all along the Coast. The principal of those that be, 1. *Mahabates*, by some called *Nassauin*, but by the *Dutch* commonly *Norfolk River*, which falleth into the Sea at *May-port*, so called by *Cornelius May*, the Master of a Ship of *Holland*, at their first Plantation: another Channel of it, which from the noise thereof they call *Hell-gate*, emptying it self against an Island called the life of *Nut*. The River about 15 or 16 Fathom deep, at the mouth thereof affordeth a safe Road for shipping, but of difficult entrance. 2. *Zuid River*, so called, because more Southerly than the other; as fair as that, but hitherto not so well discovered.

Towns here are few either of the old or new Plantations. The natural Inhabitants live together in Tribes, many Families of those Tribes under one Roof, as before was said; but those Families so remote from one another, that their Habitations are not capable of the name of a Town, and hardly of a scattered Village. Nor do I find, that either the *Hollanders* or the *English* (who now divide the whole among them) are much given to building: the Title of the *Dutch* being subject unto some disputes; and the possession of the *English* not confirmed and sealed. *Hudson* an *English-man* had spent some time in the Discovery of this Country, and given

his name to one of the Rivers of it. With him the *Hollanders*, Anno 1609. as before is said, compounded for his Charts and Maps, and whatsoever he could challenge in the right and success of that his Voyage. But they were hardly warm in their new Habitations, when Sir *Samuel Argall*, Governor of *Virginia* specially so called, (having dispossessed the French of that part of *Canada* now called *Nova Scotia*, Anno 1613.) disputed the possession with them; alleging that *Hudson*, upon whose faith they claimed that Country, being an *English-man*, and licensed to discover those Northern parts by the King of *England*, could not alienate or dismember it (being but a part or Province of *Virginia*) from the Crown thereof. Hereupon the *Dutch* Governour submits himself and his Plantation to his Majesty of *England*, and the Governour of *Virginia* for and under him. But a new Governour being sent from *Amsterdam* in the year next following, not only failed in paying the conditioned Tributes, but began to fortify himself, and entitle those of *Amsterdam* to a just property. To which end he gave unto the Country the name of *New-Netherland*, conferred new Names on all the Bays and Rivers of it, and possessed himself of a little Island near that Branch of the *Noord River* which themselves called *Edel-gat*; where he laid the foundation of a Town called *New-Amsterdam*; and built a Fortrefs by the name of *Orange Fort*, which he garrisoned, and planted with five pieces of Canon. Complaint whereof being made unto King *Charles*, and by him represented to the States of *Holland*, it was declared by the said States in a publick Instrument, that they were no ways interested in it, but that it was a private undertaking of the *West-Indian* Company of *Amsterdam*; and so referred it wholly to his Majesty's pleasure. Which being declared, a Commission was forthwith granted to Sir *George Calvert*, Lord *Baltimore*, to plant the Southern parts thereof, which lie next *Virginia*, by the name of *MARYLAND*: the like not long after to Sir *Edmond Pleydon*, for planting & possessing the more Northern parts, which lie towards *New-England*, by the name of *New Albion*. And though the *Hollanders* did then seem willing to be gone, and leave all they had there for the Sum of 2500 l. yet taking advantage of the Troubles which not long after followed in *England*, they have not only raised their demands to a greater height, but furnished the Native *Indians* with Arms, and taught them how to use their Weapons. A most mischievous and wicked Act, not only tending to the damage and discouragement of the present Adventurers, but even unto the extirpation of all Christians out of all these Countries. But the best is, they were the first that smothered by it. The Savages thus armed and trained fell foul upon them, destroying their Farm-Houses, and forcing them to betake themselves to their Forts and Fastnesses. What hath been since done, (for the giving of new names to some of the old places, I look on as a thing of nothing) either in getting out the *Dutch*, or planting Colonies of the *English*, I can hardly say: but I fear that little will be acted, or to little purpose till it be made a work of more publick interest.

3. *VIRGINIA*, specially so called, hath on the North-East, *New-Netherland*; on the South-west, *Florida*: the name restrained to this part only, since the two last Plantations, which before was common to the whole. The Country lieth extended from the 34. to the 38. degree of Northern Latitude: and by consequence the Air is inclined unto heats, if not refreshed and moderated by a constant gale of Eastern winds, which they call the *Breeze*, and the blasts driving on it from the open Seas. Diversified most pleasantly into Hills and Valleys; the Mountains clothed with woods, and the Fields with fruits. The Soil so fruitful, that an Acre of Land well ordered will

return

return 200 Bushels, 25 Quarters, of Corn. Said also to be rich in veins of Allon, as also pitch, Turpentine, store of Cedars, Grapes, Oil, plenty of sweet Gums, several sorts of Plants for the Dyer's use, some Mines of Iron and Copper, of Timber: Trees almost infinite numbers; as also great abundance of Cattle, Fish, Fowl, Fruit, and of Maize no scarcity. Some Crystal is found amongst the Mountains, on the shore some Pearls. Nothing deficient either in the Soil, or Air, for the encouragement and reward of a thriving Nation.

The People are but few in number for so large a Country, and those as different in size as in speech or manners. Some of them whom they call *Sagoyes-hanoxi*, of so vast a greatness, that in comparison of the *English* they seem as Giants: clad with the skins of Bears and Wolves in so strange a manner, that the Head of the Beast hung before their Breasts instead of a Jewel; their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and a Club. Some on the other side, whom they call *Wigeocomaci*, of so low a stature, that in relation to the other they appear as Pygmies. But generally they are all of tall stature, well limbed, for the most part without Beards, and the one half of the Head kept shaven; clothed in loose Mantles, made of the skins of Deer, with an Apron of the same to hide their nakedness; the rest of their Bodies painted over with figures of Serpents, or of some other Creature of as horrid shape. Strong and accustomed to the cold, which they patiently endure, or feel not: wavering and inconstant, crafty, and somewhat more industrious than the rest of the Savages, but given to anger and as greedy of revenge as any. Gods they have many, for they worship all things (and them only) which are like to hurt them; as Fire, Water, Lightning, Thunder, &c. So that it may be said of them, as once *Lactantius* said of the ancient *Romans*, (did not the ignorance of these poor Wretches render them excusable, and make them fitter objects for our Prayers and pity, than our Scorns) *Dignissimi homines qui Deos suos temper habere presentes*. One Devil-God above all the rest, (they call him *Oke*) whom they worship, as themselves confess, more for fear than love. Not yet converted from these horrible and gross Idolatries by the long neighbourhood of the *English*; accused in that respect most justly by those of *Rome*.

No Country for the bigness of it can be better watered, or yield fairer Rivers. The principal of which are 1. *Powhatan*, (so called by the name of that petty *Royale* whose Territory it passeth through) which having run a course of an hundred miles, and navigable all that way by smaller Vessels, is at his fall into the Sea about three miles broad. 2. *Apamattuck*, 3. *Namsumund*, and 4. *Chickahaminy* all Tributaries to *Powhatan*. 5. *Pamunkey*, fourteen miles more North than *Powhatan*, but of lesser note. 6. *Tophamock*, navigable 130 miles. 7. *Patawomeke*, passable by Boat 140 miles, and six or seven miles broad where it falleth into the Sea; increased by many lesser streams which come out of the Mountains, and generally well stored with Fish. 8. *Pawmuntux*, of a shorter Race, but a deeper Channel, then most of the former (16 or 18 fathom deep) and of more choice of Fish than the others are.

Along the Banks of these Rivers dwell their several Tribes, scarce any one of which make up an hundred men, (that of *Patawomeke* excepted, which is able to arm after their manner 160) many not yielding above 30, and some not so many. Their habitations not containing above ten or twelve houses apiece, but in those houses sundry particular families, are for the most part covered with the Barks of Trees so placed that the common Market-place standeth in the midst, at an equal distance: the houses of their *Weroances*, (or the Chiefs of their Tribes) & that

which serveth them for a Temple, being somewhat finer than the rest. And of these habitations some are pre-called to us by the names of 1. *Onanoke*, by the *English* my Author to be *Croatan ampla*, a large City; but we must understand him with Relation to the rest of this Country. 4. *Chowanah*, 5. *Secotan*, 6. *Marraken*, 7. *Wepomoke*, 8. *Yllococonek*, said to be inhabited by none but Women. 9. *Chipawo*, 10. *Musmannoke*, both upon the Sea: most of them called by the name of those several Tribes which inhabit in them.

In reference to the *English* and their Plantations, we are to know that they made choice of the South-side of a large and goodly Bay for the place of their dwelling. A Bay which thrusting it self a great way up into this Country, and receiving into it many of the Rivers before mentioned, is by the Natives called *Cheapeake*; and yieldeth the only safe entrance into this part of the Country: that on the Southern point being called *Cape Henry*, and the other *Cape Charles*, according to the names of the two either since built, or frequented by them, 1. *James-Town*, (*Jacobopolis*) so named in honour of King *James*, on the South-side of that Bay not far from the River *Chickahamania*: first founded in the year 1606. at what time it was treached about, and some Ordinance planted on the Works. 2. *Henric's Town*, (*Henricopolis*) so named in honour of Prince *Henry*, the eldest Son of King *James*, built in a convenient place more within the Land, 18. miles from *James-Town*. 3. *Dales-gift*, so called, because built and planted at the charge of Sir *Thomas Dale*, Anno 1610. 4. *Bermuda*, an open Burrough five miles from *Henricopolis*. 5. *Ketoughtan*, a noted and frequented Port in the Bay of *Cheapeake*, very much traded by the *English*. *Wicocomaco*, the chief Town of *Powhatan*, one of the *Royales* of this Country; much courted by the *English*, being sent him by King *James*, with many other rich Presents, the better to sweeten and oblige him; but for all that he proved a treacherous and unfaithful Neighbour.

The sum of the affairs of this last Plantation is, that the business being resumed in the year 1606, and a Commission granted to certain Noblemen and Merchants to advance the work, they fell in hand, by the Council and encouragement of Caprain *Smith*, with the building of *James-Town*, (having first fortified *Cape Henry*) in which Town he fixed a Colony of 100 men. There, being almost next year recruited with 120 more, brought by Captain *Norport*: but a Fire having casually consumed their Houses, once again discouraged them. But the Houses being re-edified, and a Church added to the Houses, by the industry of *Smith* their Governour, the Colony began to flourish, and to increase in reputation among the Savages especially having made (as they believed) a friend of *Powhatan*. In the year 1609, the Lord *De la Ware* was appointed Governour, and *Smith* commanded to return; who left here 490 persons, (and of them 200 expert Soldiers) 3 Ships, 7 Boats, 24 great Guns, 300 Muskets, with Victuals and Ammunition necessary; and 39 of their *Weroances*, or Petty Kings, Tributaries, and Contributors to the *English*. Sir *Thomas Gates* and Sir *George Summers*, sent thither with 9 ships and 500 men, lost a great part of their numbers in the Isle of *Bermuda*: the rest not well according with the old Plantation, were at the point of returning home, when happily the Lord *De la Ware* arrived with three ships more, Anno 1610. But falling into a desperate sickness, and come home to *Eng-*

land

land, he recommended the Estate of the *English* there to Sir *Thomas Dale*, who furnished them with Men, Cattel, and other necessities: after whom came Sir *Thomas Gates* with 300 men, and some heads of Cattel. And then the Government hereof being conferred on *Henry Earl of Southampton*, the Affairs here began to settle in a prosperous way: when unexpectedly in the year 1621. the Savages falling on them (fearing no such treachery) kill'd 340 of their men; & had then also surpris'd *James Town*, if one of the Savages who had received the Christian Faith, had not discovered their intention. Since that, recovered of that Blow, it went happily forwards, and might by this time have been rais'd to some power and greatness, if the *English* by diverting on some by-Plantations, and by employing indigent and necessitous persons in so great a work had not discouraged the design. For certainly one might say of this Plantation, as the Scripture doth of the *Camp of David* in the time of *Saul*, that few or none were sent unto it (except the principals) but such as were in distress, or debt, or some way or other discontented; men never likely to advance & pursue a business of such publick interest. Commendable howsoever in this particular, (though perhaps that commendation do belong to their Governours) that being here, they kept themselves constantly to those *Forms of worship* which were established and observed in the Church of *England*.

As for the Natives of the whole, they were divided, as was said, into several Tribes, every Tribe under the command of their several Chiefs: which Chiefs, though many in number, and of little power, knew well enough how to keep their State unto their Subjects, and to shew it also unto Strangers. For when *Powhatan* was pleased to give audience unto Captain *Newport*, and the rest of the *English* sent from *Smith*, they found him upon a Bed of Mats, his Pillow of Leather, imbrodered with white Beads and Pearl, attired with a robe of Skins like an *Irish* Mantle: at his head and feet an handsome young woman; on each side of the room twenty others, with their necks and shoulders painted red, and about their necks a great Chain of Beads: his principal men sitting before them in like manner. Yet notwithstanding this great State, (and great it was indeed for such petty Princes) he and the rest became so subject to the *English*, that in *Smith's* time they did not only pay their Tributes, or Contributions, but at his command would send their Slaves and Subjects to *James Town*, to receive correction for wrongs done to the Colony, And it is probable enough that those of *New-England*, being the greater and more powerful Plantation, (as followed with the *bravest* zeal, and carried on by the united purses of a prevalent Faction) were of like influence also amongst the Natives, though I find it not expressed in so many particulars.

4. The Isles of *BERMUDAZ*, many in number, (some say 400 at the least) are situate directly East from *Virginia*, from which they are distant 500 *English* miles; 3300 of the same miles from the City of *London*. So called from *John Bermudez*, a Spaniard, by whom first discovered. Called also the *Summer Islands*, from the shipwreck of Sir *George Sommers* upon that Coast; so much delighted with the sadnels of the misadventure, that he endeavored

what he could to settle a Plantation in it.

That of more fame and greatness than all the rest, to which the name is now most properly ascribed, is situate in the Latitude of 32 and 30 minutes. Well stored, when first discovered, with plenty of Hogs, divers Fruits, Mulberries, *Palmiers*, Cedars; as also of Silk-worms, Pearls, and Amber and such rich Commodities: of Fowl so infinite an abundance, that our men took a thousand of one sort as big as a Pigeon, within two or three hours. The Air hereof very sound and healthy, found by experience (the best argument in such a point) to be agreeable to the body of an *English* man; yet terribly exposed to Tempests of Rain, Thunder and Lightning. For which, and for the many shipwrecks hap'ning on the Coasts thereof and want of other Inhabitants to be said to own it, the Mariners have pleased to call it the *Island of Devils*. The soil assisted to beas fertile as any; well watered, plentiful in *Maize*, of which they have two Harvests yearly: that which is sowed in *March* being cut in *July*; and that which is sowed in *August* being mowed in *December*. No venomous Creature to be found in all the Island, or will live brought hither. And besides these Commodities, of so safe a being, so fenced about with Rocks and Illets, that without knowledge of the passages, a Boat often Tuns cannot be brought into the Haven; yet with such knowledge there is entrance for the greatest ships. The *English* have since added to these Strengths of nature such additional helps, by Block-houses, Forts and Bulwarks in convenient places, as may give it the title of Impregnable.

It was first discovered (but rather accidentally then upon design (by *John Bermudez*, a Spaniard, about the year 1522. & thereupon a Proposition made in the Council of *Spain*, for settling a Plantation in it, as a place not to be avoided by the *Spanish* Fleets, in their return from the Bay of *Mexico*, by the *Streights of Bahama*: Neglected notwithstanding, till the like accidental coming of Sir *George Sommers*, sent to *Virginia* with some Companies of *English* by the Lord *De la Ware*, Anno 1609. Who being shipwrecked on this Coast, had the opportunity to survey the Island which he so well liked, that he endeavored a Plantation in it at his coming home Anno 1612. The first Colony was sent over under *Richard More*, who in three years erected eight or nine Forts in convenient places, which he planted with Ordinance. Anno 1616. a new supply is sent over under Captain *Daniel Tucker*, who applied themselves to sowing Corn, setting of Trees brought thither from other parts of *America*, and planting that gainful weed Tobacco. Anno 1619. the business is taken more to heart, and made a matter of the Publick, many great Lords and men of Honour being interested in it; Captain *Bent* sent thither with 300 men; the life divided into Tribes or *Camareds*, to each Tribe a Burroughs the whole reduced to a settled Government both in Church and State, according to the Law of *England*. After this all things so succeeded, that in the year 1623. here were said to be three thousand *English*, ten Forts, and in those Forts fifty pieces of Ordinance; their numbers since increasing daily, both by Children born within the Island, and supplies from *England*.

OF FLORIDA.

FLOIDA is bounded on the North-East with *Virginia*; on the East with *Mare del Nord*; on the South, and some part of the West, with the Gulf of *Mexico*; on the rest of the West, with part of *New-Galicia*, and some Countries hitherto not discovered. Extended from the River of *Palm* in the 25 degree of Latitude, to *Rio de Secco* in the 34. which evidently speaketh it for a Country of large Dimensions.

It was first discovered by the *English* under the Conduct of *Sebastian Cabot*, Anno 1479. afterwards better searched into by *John de Ponce*, a Spaniard, who took possession of it in the name of that King, Anno 1527. and by him called *Florida*: either because he landed there upon Palm-Sunday, which the Spaniards call *Pascua di Flores*, or *Pascua Florida*; or else quia *Florida erat Regio*, by reason of that fresh Verdure and flourishing Estate in which he found it. But by the Natives it is said to be called *Jaguafu*.

This Country lying parallel to *Casile* in *Spain*, is said to be of the same temper both for Air and Soil, but that is abundantly more fruitful: the heart of the ground not being here worn out by continual Tillage, as perhaps it may be in the other. For here they have great abundance of *Maize*, (the natural Bread-corn of the Country) which they sow twice a year: viz. *March* and *June*, and reap in the third month after, laying it in some publick Barns, and thence distribute it to the Necessities of particular persons. Well stored with several sorts of Fruit, as Mulberries, Cherries, Chestnuts, Grapes and Plums, of both excellent taste and colour: Beasts wild and tame, of all kinds which these Countries yield, and of like sorts of Fowl. The Woods and Forrests full of the largest Oaks, and the loftiest Cedars; some Cypress Trees and Bays, of a large proportion: with great plenty of that Wood, which the Inhabitants call *Pavane*, and the French name *Sassafras*, the Bark whereof is Medicinal against some Diseases; and another Tree which we call *Equis*, affirmed to be a Sovereign and present Remedy for the French Disease. It is also said to be enriched with some Mines of Gold and Silver; neglected by the Natives, till the coming of the Spaniards: and French put a price upon them; and to have in it Emeralds of great worth and beauty, with many Turquoises and Pearls. Others report, that all the Gold and Silver which they have amongst them came from some Ships which had been wrecked upon those Coasts: contrary whereunto it is said by the Natives, that in the Hills which they call *Apalata*, there are found great Veins of a reddish Metal, which the French concluded to be Gold, though they wanted time and opportunity to search into them.

The people are of an Olive colour, great stature, and well proportioned; naked except their Privities, which they hide with the Skins of Stags: their Arms and Knees stained with divers paintings, not to be washed off; their Hair black, and hanging down as low as their Thighs. Gunning they be, and excellent in the Arts of Dissimula-

tion. So stomachful, that they do naturally love War and Revenge; inasmuch that they are continually in War with one or other. They are crafty also, and very intelligent, as appeareth by the Answer they gave to *Ferdinando Soto*, a Spaniard, who was here amongst them, Anno 1594. For when he went to persuade the people that he was the Son of God, and came to teach them the Law, Not so, replied a *Florida*; for God never had thee to kill and murther, and work all kind of mischief against us. The Women when their Husbands are dead, use to cut off their Hair close to their Ears, and strew it on his Sepulchre, and cannot marry again till their Hair be grown long enough to cover their shoulders. *Hermaphrodites* are here also in great plenty, whom they use as Beasts to carry their luggage, and put them to all kind of drudgery. They have all a gross belief of the Souls Immortality, but are otherwise Idolaters.

Mountains this Country hath not many, as being generally plain and level; the chiefest, those called *Apalata*, beforementioned, supposed by the Inhabitants to be rich in Mines of Gold. Rivers of most note; 1. *Rio Secco*. 2. *Rio Grande*. 3. *Serrevashi*. The two first named so by the Spaniards, and the last by the Natives. 4. *Guruma*. 5. *Ligeris*. 6. *Azona*. 7. *Sequana*; and 8. *Cherente*, so called by the French, according to the names of the best Rivers in *France*: both French and Spaniards having had severally and successfully the possession of it. Here are also 9. *Rio de Flores*, or the River of Flowers. 10. *Rio de Nieve*, or the River of Snow: And 11. *Rio de Spirito Santo*, or the River of the Holy Ghost; all of them falling into the Bay of *Mexico*. A particular description of these Rivers, their Rise, Course, and Greatness, I find not in any of my Authors. Only *Mercator* telleth us of a twelfth River called *Porte Riale*, reckon'd the chiefest of this Country, the Mouth whereof is three miles broad; where it openeth into the Sea betwixt two Promontories, the one towards the West, and the other pointing to the North. Some of these Rivers are affirmed to be haunted with Crocodiles; a Creature dangerous alike both by Land and Water.

The Country, not so well discovered and planted hitherto, as to be divided into Provinces, is commonly distributed into several Tribes, as were all Nations of the World at their first Discovery. The principal of these they reckon the *Queveners*, *Mariniers*, *Canagadi*, *Canoni*, *Avanares*, and *Malicomes*, the *Sajolu*, *Quimere*, and other names not usual unto us of Europe; though these more passable than many which have gone before; mollified perhaps by the French and Spaniards, and not presented to us in their natural roughness: all governed by their *Paracissis*, or several Chiefs, and those at deadly Feuds and continual Wars with one another. Some have adventured on the names of particular Provinces, as *Panuca*, *Avanares*, *Abardusia*, *Jaguafu*, *Apalata*, *Anthia*, *Sarmovia*, *Colu*; but they acquaint us neither with their Site nor Bounds; except it be that *Panuca* lieth on the borders of *Hispania Nova*, beyond the large and spacious Bay of the *Holy Ghost*; and *Colu* near the Cape called *Cabo di Florida*. Others distinguish it by the names of

the several Royleys; which varying with the change of the Person, makes that division to be very variable and uncertain also. But it is generally agreed, that the *Peninsula* which poineeth on the life of *Cuba* hath the name of *Tegefa*, or *Florida* specially so called; the name of *Florida* being first given by *John Ponce* upon this part only, though afterwards communicated unto all the rest of this Country. A Demy-Iland, stretching in length from the South to the North, 100 Leagues, in breadth, where broadest, 30 Leagues, and in some places 20 only. Well known by the Cape of *Maryrys*, looking into the life of *Cuba*, the River of the *Holy Ghost*, and three goodly Bays, the chief whereof, that intruded to S. *Jejeph*, all opening into the Gulf of *Mexico*, or the Bay of *New Spain*. The whole invironed about, save where it is joynted unto the Continent with Bars of Sands, and scattered Ilands, which serve unto it as the Out-works to some notable Fortrels.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *S. Hellens*, on or near a Promontory so named, where this Country bordereth on *Virginia*, once fortified and possessed by the *Spaniards*, but not long since abandoned. 2. *Fort de Charles*, *Ars Carolina* in the *Latine*, built by the *French* upon the Banks of the River *Maio*, and so called in honour of *Charles* the Ninth, in whose time the Conquest of this Country was undertaken; but ruined by the *Spaniard* in the War between them. 3. *Port-Royal*, a well frequented Haven, on the mouth of the River of that name; but whether there be any Town now remaining I am not able to say. More in the Land (for these lie all upon the Borders towards *Virginia*) *Apalache*, supposed to be a place of great consideration, in regard of the opinion which was had of the Wealth thereof, (but found to be a small Town, of but 40 Cottages); and therefore first attempted and took in by the *Spaniard*, in their Invasion of this Country under *Pamphilius de Narvaez*, Anno 1528. Recovered by the Natives after his departure. 4. *Ante*, an open Burrough, nine days journey from *Apalache*, where the Savages gave the *Spaniards* a sharp Encounter, and slew many of them; but being vanquished at the last, they forsook the Town, of it self not Tenable. 6. *Ondis*, an unwall'd Town, but consisting of 600 Sheds (for I dare hardly call them Houses) the chief of the Kingdom of *Acauera*. 7. *Ofachile*, the chief Seat of the King so called; and 8. *Vitacuechus*, a Burrough of 200 Cottages, the principal of the Kingdom of *Vitacuechus*; both taken by the *Spaniards* at the same time also. 9. *S. Matthews*, on the Eastern shore of the Demy-Iland above mentioned, possessed and fortified by the *Spaniard*. 10. *S. Augustines* on the same shore, but more South than the other, situate at the mouth of a small River so named, fortified by the *Spaniard* with many a strong Castle: but for all that taken by Sir *Francis Drake*, An. 1585, there being found in the Fort of *S. John*, in which the strength of the Town consisted, 28 Brais Pieces, and 20000 Florens in ready Money, for the pay of the Garrison. Repaired afterwards more strongly than ever formerly. The *Spaniards* have also Garrisons in two other places of this Country, viz. *S. Philip*, and *S. Jago*; but I cannot say distinctly in what part they are.

The Government of this Country is of one kind only though managed by several persons: the Supreme Power residing in the Chiefs of their several Tribes; at such continual Enmity with one another, that they very seldom joyn together in any Councils wherein the publick is concerned. So that the *Spaniards* may affirm of the present *Floridians*, as the Romans did of the ancient *Britains*; *Nec quicquam adversus validissimas gentes utilius nobis fuit, quam quod in communione non consuevit*; The not communicating of their Councils hastned on their Bon dage. Yet in the Government of these Chiefs there

was somewhat of the Parliamentary way used with us in *Europe*: For as in all matters of Concernment those Chiefs advised with their Council; so if it were a business which concerned the Publick, their Priests and others of most note for Gravity and Wisdom were admitted to the Consultation. But being feverally too weak for a strong Invader, and never joyned together to defend themselves, they made themselves an easie prey to the *French* and *Spaniards*, *Et sic dum singuli pugnant, universi vincuntur*; by trusting to their single Forces, they were all subdued. For in the year 1512. *John Ponce*, a Native of *Leon in Spain*, setting sail with three Ships from the Iland of *Porto Rico*, on *Palm-Sunday* fell on the *Peninsula* before described; and for that cause, or from the flourishing Verdure of it, called it *Florida*; but did no more than scour along upon the Coasts, and give new names to such of the Promontories and Rivers as he had discovered; and having only a slight Skirmish with some of the Savages, returned back again. The business eight years after was again revived by *Vajques de Ayllon*, who setting sail from the Haven of *Plata*, in *Hispaniola*, attained unto the North-east parts of this Continent, bordering on *Virginia*, where he left names unto the Promontory of *S. Helen*, and the River of *Jordan*: and having treacherously inflamed some of the Natives, (whom he had invited to a Feast) prepared for *Spain*; where he obtained the Kings Patent for a new Plantation. But his perfidiousness could not prosper: For in the year 1524. coming with his Ships upon this Coast, one of them perished on the Rocks, and 200 of his men being killed at their landing, he gave over the Enterprize: the *Spaniards* hitherto making no more use of these Discoveries, than wickedly to enrich themselves by stealing men, whom as wickedly they sold for Slaves. Nor had the Voyage of *Pamphilius de Narvaez*, Anno 1528. any better end; though undertaken with a band of 400 Foot, and 80 Hovs. For having took possession of the Country in the name of his Sovereign *Charles* the Fifth, finding some hopes of great Treasures to be had at *Apalache*, (distant above a Months Journey from the place of his Landing) he would needs march thither. In which Action, though he got that and some other Towns, yet he lost himself; few of his men returning safe into their Country, and yet not knowing what became of their General. As fruitless, but more famous, was the Enterprize of *Hernandes de Soto*, begun in the year 1538. and continued till 1543. who with a little Army of 350 Horse, and 90 Foot, over-ran a great part of the Country, and brought many of the Petit Princes under the Command of *Spain*. But making only a depredatory War of it, to enrich himself, and waste the Country, without settling any Colony, or building any Fortifications in it to make good his gettings, the Action ended with his Life, which he lost by a Fever: the remnant of his Souldiers, whom the War had spared, under the Conduct of *Ludovico Mufcota di Alvarado*, recovering *Mexico* not without great difficulties.

And so the *Spaniards* leave the Stage, and the *French* enter; sent on this Voyage by *Gaspar Coligni*, Admiral of *France*, Anno 1562. under the Conduct of *Ribault*: who falling on that part of the Continent which lieth on the East-side of the *Peninsula*, gave the first Promontory which he touched at the name of *Cape Francois*; and after running Northward along that Coast, new-named the Rivers thereof by the names of the *Seine*, the *Loire*, the *Somme*, the *Garonne*, and others of most note in his own Country. Coming as far North of the great River of *Porto Royal*, he there built a little Fortrels, which he called *Fort-Charles*, where he left 26 of his men to keep possession, and returning for *France*: his Souldiers

Souldiers following not long after, as well as they could; destitute of Supplies from home, and not able with so small a number to command them there. The Action reinforced about two years after, under the Conduct of *Londonier*, who had accompanied *Ribault* in the former Voyage: by whom some farther progress was made in this Undertaking, and a little Town built on the Banks of the River *Maio* (so called by *Ribault*, because in that Month discovered by him) which he named *Charles Fort*, *Ars Carolina* in the *Latine*. But a Murther happening amongst his men, and some Complaints made of him in the Court of *France*, he was called home, and *Ribault* sent again to pursue the Enterprize: who entering on his Charge in *August*, Anno 1565, was presently set on by the *Spaniards*, both by Sea and Land: his Ships forced violently upon the Rocks, the new Town sacked, the Colony put unto the Sword, very few escaping: *Ribault* himself murdered in cold blood by the Enemy, after Faith given him for his life. It was thought that above 600 *French* hopes in *Florida*, the King being then preparing for a new Civil War, and loth to engage himself against the *Spaniard*, till the year 1627. when at the charge of *Dominicus Gurgius*, a private person, out of an honest zeal to the honour of his Country, and to cry quittance with the *Spaniards* for their treacherous cruelty, it revived again. And though he found the *Spaniards*, after the defeat of *Ribault*, had repaired and fortified *Ars Carolina*, and raised two Castles more on the Banks of the *Maio*, which they had furnished with such pieces as they took from the *French*, and garrisoned with 400 Souldiers; yet giving a courageous Onset, by the aid of the Savages, (to whom the name and Neighbourhood of the *Spaniards* was exceeding odious) he forced them also, demolished the Works, and hanged all such of the Souldiers as the Sword had spared, and so returned into *France*; where instead of honour and reward for so great a service, he was in danger of losing both his life and Fortunes, compelled to lurk among his Friends till the times were changed. The *Spaniard* after this, to keep some kind of possession, though not finding in it Riches answerable to their greedy desires, fortified *S. Matthews*, and *S. Augustines*, on the East-side of the Demy-Iland, with the Castles of *S. Philip*, and *S. Jago*, in other parts of the Country towards the North-East; thinking himself so strong in the Gulf of *Mexico*, that no Foreign Forces durst appear on that side of the Country. So that it seems he plays the part of *Aesop's* Dog in the Manger, neither resolved to plant there himself, nor willing that any others should.

Having thus taken a Survey of the Main Land of *Florida*, let us next take a view of such Ilands as lie dispersed up and down in the Seas adjoining; called by one general name *LUCAIOS*, or *LOCCALOE IN SUEVIC*, many in number, but reducible to these three Heads: 1. The *Tortugas*; 2. The *Maryries*. And 3. The *Lucaios* specially so called.

1. The *TORTUGAS* are seven or eight little Ilands, lying on an heap at the South-West point of the *Peninsula*, called the Cape of *Florida*, in the height of 25 Degrees; distant from the Port of *Havana*, in the life of *Cuba* (opposite unto which they lie) about six Leagues. Well known among the Sailors, because much avoided, or rather avoided because known; the danger of their Company making their farther Acquaintance shunned.

2. The *MARTTRES*, called also the *Caios*, are

three great Rocks rather than Ilands, covered with a white Sand, and full of Bulbes: the middlemost of the three the greatest: situate over against the South-East promontory of the said *Peninsula*, called from hence *Cabeza de los Maryries*; or, *The Cape of Maryrys*. Denominated thus by *John Ponce* the *Spaniard*, in his first Discovery of this Country, because they seemed afar off to have some resemblance to men impaled upon Staks, as many of the *Maryrys* were in the Primitive times. Infamous for the many Shipwrecks which have since there happened; but of great observation amongst Sea-faring men, because they know by leaving these Rocks or Ilands on the left hand of them, that they are already entered in the Streights.

3. The *LUCAIOS*, specially so called, lie dispersed on the East of the *Peninsula*, many in number, and so called from *Lucaineque*, the greatest and most Northern of them, situate in the 27 degree of Latitude; of more length than breadth, but hitherto known by name only. Of greater note, though not so big, is that called 2. *Bahama*, in the middle way betwixt *Lucaineque* and the *Peninsula*; in length 13 Leagues, and eight in breadth; memorable for giving name to the violent Current interpoling betwixt it and the Demy-Iland, called the Streights of *Bahama*; yet not so straight, but that they are 16 miles in breadth, though of so forcible a Course, that many times neither Wind nor Oars can prevail against it. 3. *Guanabani*, the most famous of all these Ilands, because the first that was discovered by *Columbus*; being then almost out of hope of proceeding farther; who thereupon caused it to be called *S. Savinius*. Well shaded at that time with Trees, full of fresh Springs, and very plentiful of Cotton, now overgrown with shrubs and Bulbes. 4. *Guanima*, by *Columbus*, when first discovered, called *S. Maria de Concepcion*, which first discovered the Rocks and Quick sands, but otherwise of a pleasant and fruitful Soil, full of delicate Springs. Others thereat, to the number of 24, or thereabouts, whose names occur in many of our larger Maps: but being we find nothing of them but their very names, I shall not trouble my self with the Nomenclature.

Of all in general it is said, that they obeyed their King so strictly, (for a King they had) that if he commanded them to leap down from a high Rock, they performed the same; though he gave no reason but his Will. The Women of so perfect Beauty, that many of the bordering Nations forsook their own Countries to enjoy their Loves: their Shape and Beauty the more discernable, in regard not suffered to wear any thing till their purgations; nor after that, but Nets of Cotton filled with Leaves of Herbs. But now, and long since, there are neither Men nor Women to be found in any of them: the people being long since wasted by the *Spaniards* in the Mines of *Cuba* and *Hispaniola*, or consumed by Famine and Difeases, or otherwise made away in prisons, and by several Torments, to the number of a Million and two hundred thousand, as some have told us. And so we pass unto the other side of those Northern Countries, opposite to *Nova Francia*, *Virginia*, and the Main Land of *Florida*; that when we fall into the Countries now possessed by the *Spaniard*, we may not wander out of them till this Work be finished, except it be to take a progress into some of the Ilands, which cannot otherwise be visited, but by such a Start.

O F

CALIFORNIA.

CALIFORNIA, in the large and general acceptance of it, containeth all those provinces of *Mexicana*, which lie on the West-side of that Northern Peninsula, beyond *Nova Galicia*, and new *Spain*: though in the stricter, limited to that Province only which lyeth on the other side of a long and spacious Gulf, called *Mer Vermiglio*, and from hence the Bay of *California*. But taking it in the largest sense, it hath on the West New *Spain*, and New *Gallicia*, and so on to those undiscovered parts which lie farthest North, to the Straights of *Anian*. So witnesseth *John de Laet*, lib. 6. cap. 11. *CALIFORNIA communiter dicitur quicquid terrarum Novæ Hispaniæ atque Galliciae ad Occidentem obijcit, ad extremos America Septentrionalis terminis, & Fretum quod vulgo Anian vocant*. Limited in the stricter sense and acceptance of it to an Island (as it is now generally conceived to be) extended in a full length from North to South, on the West hereof. So that for our more regular proceeding in the Chorography and Story of it, we must divide it into the Continent, and the Island: the Continent subdivided into the two large Provinces of 1. *Quivira*, and 2. *Cibola*; the Island into 3. *California*, specially so called; and 4. *Nova Albion*.

And first the Continent of this part which we call *California*, hath on the East some parts of *Nova Galicia*; and besides that, those vast and undiscovered Countries which lie on the West-side of *Canada* and *Virginia*, on the opposite shore: bounded on the North with the unknown parts of this *Mexicana*; on the North-west, with the Straights of *Anian*, if such Straights there be; on the West, with the Sea interposing betwixt it and the Island, called *Mer Vermiglio*; and on the South and South-west, with the rest of *Nova Galicia*, from which parted by a great River called *Rio del Noard*. A River which rising in the 40 degree of Northern Latitude, first parteth *Tigues*, a Province of *Quivira*, from that of New *Mexico*, one of the Provinces of *Nova Galicia*; and after a long course falleth into the Sea, called *Mer Vermiglio*, above *Cibola*, another of the Provinces of that Division. Divided, as before was said, into the two great Provinces of 1. *Quivira*; and 2. *Cibola*.

1. *QUIVIRA*, taking up the most Northern parts of this side of *America*, is said to be very plain and level; of few Trees, not many Houses, nor much stored of people; quite desolate of Fruits and Corn, and yielding nothing for Mans life but the flesh of Beasts, which they eat raw, and swallow down in great bits without any chewing. The men apparelled in Bulls skins from the head to the feet, the women, though in a cold Country, with no other Garment than their Hair, which they wear so long, that it serveth them instead of a Veil to hide their nakedness. They live in Hoords and Companies, like the Hoords of the *Tartars*, not having any certain dwellings, (except some chief men) but remove from one place to another, like the ancient *Nomades*. Neighbouring unto *Tartary*, from whence (not being much

distant from it) it is supposed that the Inhabitants first came, and from hence by degrees peopled all *America*.

The Countrey, being full of herbage, breeds great flocks of Cattle, differing not much in bigness from those of *Europe*, but that they have an high Bunch betwixt their shoulders; bristled upon the back like Boars, with somewhat which resembleth the Mane in Horses, and the Beard in Goats; their Legs short, and clad with Fetlocks, their Horns short, but sharp: the whole Beast of an aspect so horrid, that an Horse will not venture near them, till well acquainted. Yet in these Beasts lie all their Riches, these being to this people, as we say with us of our Ale to Drunkards, Meat, Drink, and Cloth, and more too. For the Hides yield them Houses, or at least the covering of them; their Bones, Bodkins; their Hair, Thread; their Sinews, Ropes; their Horns, Maws and Bladders, Vessels; their Dung, Fire: their Calves-skins, Budgets to draw and keep water; their Blood, Drink, and their Fleth, Meat. There is thought to be some Traffick from *China*, or *Cubay*, thither: for when *Vasquez de Coronado* conquered it, he saw in the farther Sea certain Ships, not of common making, which seemed to be well laden, and did bear in their Prows the figure of Pellicans; which could not be conjectured to come from any Country but one of these two. I know, some place this Country more within the Land; and others are so far from letting it look towards any part of the Sea, that they have laid it close unto the back of *Virginia*. For my part, I have laid it along the Coast, upon good Authority, though I deny not but that some parts hereof may be more remote. Or else to reconcile the difference, it may thus be ended; that the Maritime parts being known by other names, the In-lands might retain more specially the name of *Quivira*, as we have seen in many other Countries before described.

And this I am the rather inclined to think, because I find mention of three Provinces on the North of *Cibola*, but in the way unto *Quivira*; the one called *Seio*, the other called *Cenic*, and the third *Tigues*, which I look upon as the Maritime parts of the same one Country, but better peopled and frequented than the Islands are, because lying in the way of Traffick. The principal Towns of which Provinces are: 1. *Aus*, or *Aenco*, a small Town, but situate in a strong and defensible place, about which growth some store of Cotton, which from the place the Natives call by the name of *Aenco*. 2. *Tigues*, on the Banks of a River so called; inhabited by a stout and courageous People; who being resolved not to fall alive into the hands of the *Spaniards*, when besieged by *Vasquez de Coronado*, after they had held out above six weeks, laid all their Household-stuff and Treasure in a heap together, which they set on fire; and taking their Wives and Children into the midst of their Ranks, made a desperate Sally on the Enemy. A Resolution worthy a better Fortune, most of them being slain in the Fight, and the rest trod under the Horses Feet, or drowned in passing over the River. Yet would not those few which were left give up the Town, till it was

fired about their ears, and no longer Tenable: the *Spaniards* buying this Victory (notwithstanding the great odds of their Arms) with the loss of most of their Horses, the death of eleven of their men, and the wounding of 80. 3. *Cenic*, a small Burrough, but the chief of that Province, four days journey from *Tigues*; from whence the whole way unto *Quivira*, specially so called, being 90 miles, hath in it neither Stone nor Tree, nor any Land-mark, in which as the *Spaniards* were fain to make heaps of Cow-dung to serve for their direction in their coming back.

The first discovery of this Country is to be attributed to the diligence of *Antonio de Mendoza*, Vice-Roy to *Mexico*, who desirous to get Wealth and Honour by some new Adventures, employed in the discovery of these Northern parts *Fryer Marco de Niza*. By him, and by a *Negro* which he had for his Guide, there was some light gotten of *Cibola*, the next Province to this; but so discoloured in lies, and wrapt up in Fictions, that that light was little more than darkness. Yet by that glimmering, *Francisco Vasquez de Coronado*, in the year 1540, undertook the business; and sped so well, that having made his way through *Cibola*, he took the Town of *Tigues*, as we heard before, and laid his way open to *Quivira*. Moved to a farther journey by the report of the *Savages*, (who desired to hasten him out of their Country) telling him of the Wealth of *Tatarax*, who reigned in the In-land parts of *Quivira*, a bearded Man (those of this Country wearing none) of a white Complexion, and one who in his Chappell worshipp'd a Cross, and the Queen of Heaven; on went the *Spaniards* towards *Quivira*, and found out the *Tatarax*, a poor naked Prince, Master of no more Treasure than a Brazen Plate hanging on his Breast, and without any such sign of Christianity as they did expect. So frustrated of all their hopes, and having got nothing but their labour for their pains, and the Honour of a new discovery, with the loss of many of their men, they returned to *Mexico*, Anno 1543. Some *Fryars* made bold to flag behind, but were all slain by the people of *Quivira*, except only one, who like *Job's* Messenger was left to carry news of the Murder, the *Spaniards* never looking into these cold Countries where nothing else was to be gotten but Blows and Hunger.

2. *CIBOLA* hath on the North *Quivira*; on the South and South-east parts, New *Gallicia*; from which divided by the River called *Rio del Noard*, as before was said; the West-side of it walled with the *Mer Vermiglio*, interposed betwixt it, and the Island, or *California* specially so called. By the Natives it is called *Zimo*.

The Air herof indifferently temperate, if not too much subject in the Winter to Frosts and Snows. The Country for the most part level, rarely swelled with Hills, but those very Rocky. No Trees that bear them any Fruit; few Trees at all, except it be a Wood of Cedars, from which abundantly supplied both with Fuel and Timber. Plenty of Maize, and small white Peas, which they make their Bread of; great store of Venison, but they kill it only for the skin: some quantities of Sheep, known for such by their Fleeces only, but otherwise as big each of them as an Horse, or Oxe, some of their Horns weighing fifty pounds. Of Lions, Bears, and Tygers, so great a number, that they have more than enough for themselves, and could well spare them to their Neighbours.

The people generally well limbed, and tall of stature, ingenious in respect of some other *Savages*; and though naked except their privities only, or covered only with a Mantle, yet those Mantles wrought in divers colours; which, with some quantity of Cotton which they have

amongst them, (none of it growing in their Country) shew them to be an industrious Nation, and to maintain a course of Trade with some of their Neighbours. A farther Argument of which is those painted Skins which they have from *Cenic*, or some other Country which lies towards the Ocean, my Author telling that they travel for them eight days journey towards the North: ties which the Inhabitants of the Maritime Provinces of *Quivira* do receive from *Cubay*, or *Cuma*, with which they are supplied to Traffick, as before was said. Like industry is noted in the Women also, one of which will grind and knead more Maize in a day, than the Women of *Mexico* do in four. In other things not differing from the rest of the *Savages*.

This Country was first made known to the *Spaniards* by the Travels of *Frier Marco de Niza*, employed on new Discoveries by *Antonio de Mendoza*, as before was said. Leaving *Culiacan*, the most Northern Province of New *Gallicia*, he overcame a tedious Desert four day journey long; at the end of which he met some people, who told him of a pleasant Country four days journey farther, unto which he went. And staying at a place called *Pimcapa*, he dispatched the *Negro*, whom he took with him for his Guide, to search towards the North; by whom he was advertised after four days absence, that he had been informed of a large and wealthy Province called *Cibola*, a Months journey thence; wherein was seven great Cities, under the Government of one Prince, the Houses of which were built of Stone many Stories high, the Limits of their Doors adorned with Turquoises; with many other Riches. But neither the *Fryer* nor the *Negro* had the hap to see it; the *Negro* being killed on the very Borders, and the *Fryer* so terrified with the news, that he thought it hard some Fiction, than put himself upon the danger of a further journey. To that end he enlarged and amplified the Report which the *Negro* sent him, gave to the *Deserts* in his way the names of the Kingdoms of *Tomeac*, and *Marata*; ascribed unto this last a great City called *Aucoa*, once well inhabited, but at that time destroyed by Wars; to the other a more civil and well-clothed People than in other places. Inflamed with which Reports, *Vasquez de Coronado* undertook the Action, but found the *Fryer* to be a *Fryer*; nothing of moment true in all his Relations: the Kingdom of *Marata* to be found only in the *Fryers* brains; *Tomeac* to be nothing but a great Lake, on whose Banks had once been many Cottages now consumed by Wars. And as for the seven Cities of such Wealth and bigness, he found them to be seven poor Burroughs, all situate within the compass of four Leagues; which made up that so famous Kingdom which the *Fryer* dreamt of. The biggest of them held about 500 Cottages; the rest of them not above half that number. One of them, left he might be daid to return without doing something he besieged and took, but found it such an hot piece of service, that he was twice beaten down with stones as he scaled the Rampiers; but having taken it at the last, he found in it great plenty of Maize to refresh his Army, and caused the Town (consisting of 200 Houses, or thereabouts) to be called *Granada*, for some resemblance which it had to that City in Spain. Such as have since endeavoured the Discovery of these North-west parts, and sailed along the shores hereof on *Mer Vermiglio*, have added hereunto the names of some Points or Promontories, known in the Maps by the names of 1. *Porto de S. Clara*, not far from the Mouth or Influx of *Rio del Noard*. 2. *Las Platas*. 3. *S. Michael*. 4. *Rio de Teron*. 5. *Laguna del Oro*, bordering on *Qui-*

vira, and 6. *Rcy Coronado* . on the East of that.

Betwixt this Region and *Quivira*, specially fo called, lieth a Country, which the said *Valguez* names *Tucayan*, memorable for the famous River of *Huachu*; on the Banks whereof, for the space of 20 Leagues, stand 15 Burroughs well built, and furnished with Stores, (if he hath not in this part of the Story out-lid the Fryer) as in other cold but more civil Countries, against the extremities of Winter. This Region, stretching seven days journey to the River of *Cuenick*, I reckon to belong to the North-east parts of *Chibola*. As I do also the fruitful Valley of *Avia* from *de Corazon*, which they passed in their way hither from *Couliac*; with the Town and Territory of *Chibitica*, and the Valley of *Nuebra Senora*, or our *Ladies Dale*, in the South parts of it: not knowing otherwise what Province to refer them to.

Proceed we now unto the Island, the other general part of this Division, parted from *Chibola* and New *Gallicia* by a narrow Sea called *Mer Vermiglio*, and by some the Gulf of *California*; environed on all other parts by the Main Ocean. Extended in a great length from the 22 degree of Northern Latitude to the 42, but the breadth not answerable. The most Northern point hereof called *Cabo Blanco*, of which little memorable. The most Southern, called the Cape of S. *Lucas*, remarkable for the great prize there taken from the *Spaniards* by Captain *Cavendish*, in his Circumnavigation of the World, Anno 1587. Supposed in former times to have been joynt in the Northern parts of it, above the Latitude of 27, to the rest of the Continent; and so described in most of our later Maps, till the year 1626. and after that in the Chart or Map of *John de Laet*, Anno 1623. which I wonder at; himself affirming, that in many of the old Maps it was made an Island, lib. 6. cap. 11. and that he had seen a fair Map in Parchment, a very fair and ancient Draught, *Que Californiam, in ingentis Insula modum a Continente divideret*, in which it was exprest for a spacious Island, lib. 6. cap. 17. The reason of the Error was, that those who first endeavourd the discovery of it, failing up the Sea of *Mer Vermiglio*, found it to grow narrower and narrower towards the North, till it seemed to be no bigger than some mighty River; but that of such a violent Current, that no Boat was able to pass upwards with Wind or Oar, unless haled up with Cords by the strength of men. And taking it to be a River, they gave it the name of *Rio de Bona Guia*, known by that name, and continued in that Opinion of being a River, till the year 1626, or thereabouts. At what time some Adventurers beating on these Coasts, fell accidentally upon a straight, but violent passage, on the North hereof, which brought them with a strong Current into the Waters falling into that Sea, and that accident, that the Waters falling into that Sea was not a River, as formerly had been supposed, by consequence, that this part of *California* was not a Demi-Island, or *Peninsula*, but a perfect Island. And looking on it as an Island, we have divided it into *Nova Albion*, and *California*, specially fo called.

And first, 3. *CALIFORNIA*, specially fo called, containeth the Southern parts hereof, as far as to the Latitude of 38. where it bordereth on *Nova Albion*. Of which Country, though so near to New *Spain* and New *Gallicia*, and though discovered so long since, we yet know but little: the *Spaniards* either wanting men for new Plantations, or finding small encouragements here to invite them to it. Furnished on the Sea-Coasts with great plenty both of Fish and Fowl, which they find in great Islands of Weeds floating on the Seas; and more within the Land, with a kind of Beast-haired like a Goat, and with Teats like a Cow, but otherwise resembling

Deer, which they kill with their Dogs. Some Mountains in it are said to cast Fire-ashes, which the *Spaniards* for that reason call *Cacafogo*. The people are numerous, and thick set, insomuch that on the Banks of the supposed River of *Bona Guia* were numbered three and twenty Nations of all several Languages. In their persons like the rest of the Savages, but of different Dresses. Some of them painting their Faces all over, some half way only, others with painted Vizards, resembling Faces: Holes in their Noftrils for their Pendant; & the tips of their ears loaded, if not over-loaded with the bones of Fishes hanging at them; a Girdle about their Waist, to which they fasten a bunch of Feathers that hang down behind them like a Tail: the Women using the like Bunches before them also. Their chief God the Sun, (as that of *Chibola* is the Water) which they most affectionately worship, as the cause of the increase of their Fruits and Plants. Joynt in communion with which God, they were taught by *Alarcon* a *Spaniard* to worship a wooden Crofs (the more irrational-Idolatry of the two) which he caused to be erected at his coming away, with instructions to kneel before it every morning, at the first rising of the Sun: so teaching them to worship their two Idols at once, or translate their Devotions from the Sun, a Creature of God to a plain Wooden Crofs (of which they knew nothing but the form) the work of a Carpenter. It is also told us of this People, that each Family is ordered by the Father of it, without other Government: yet so well managed, that they allowed but one Wife to a man, and punished Adultery with death: the maids not suffered to converse or talk with men before their Marriage. but to abide at home and work: the Widows not to marry again, till they had mourned at least half a year for the death of their Husbands. Matters more favouring an Utopian Common Wealth, than a *Californian*.

Places of most observation in it; 1. The Capes of S. *Clara*, and S. *Lucas*: the first on the South-east point of the Island, towards new *Gallicia*; the other on the South-West, towards *Asia*. 2. S. *Goffes*, (S. *San Crucis*) a capacious and convenient Haven near the Cape of S. *Clara*; so called, because discovered upon Holy-Rood day 3. *Cabo de las Plaisas*, more within the Bay, so named, because the thore shewed in little Hillocks, without Grass or Shrubs: the Spanish word signifying as much, 4. *Cabo Bousu*, towards the bottom of the Gulf, (from whence the Land on the other side may be easily seen) in the Latitude of 29. 5. S. *Andrews*, a convenient Haven, and not far off an Island of the same name, with some Cottages in it. 6. S. *Thome*, an Island of 25 Leagues in compass, at the mouth of the Gulf; rising towards the South in an high Mountain, under which is a convenient Road for shipping, the Sea being thereabouts 25 fathoms. Then on the other side towards the Sea, we have 7. S. *Abad*, a convenient Haven, surrounded with a Country which seemed rich and pleasant. 8. *Cape Trinidad*, a Promontory well known to Sea-men. 9. *Cape de Cedro* so called from the Cedars growing near it in the Latitude of 28 and 15 minutes; with an Island not far off of the same name also. 10. *Cape Enganno*, in the Latitude of 31. 11. *Puebla de las Canoas*, so named from the Multitude of Boats (by themselves called *Canoes*) which the people used four degrees more Northward than that Cape. And 12. *Cabo de Galera*, so named from the resemblance which it had to an Hat, in the Latitude of 36. But these two are placed by *John de Laet* within the Country of *Seyo*, one of the Provinces of *Quivira*. Understand here, that these are only the names of Places, not of Towns nor Villages (for whether there be any such, I am yet unsatisfied:) and that there are many other Promontories, Bays, Rivers, and Islands on both sides of this Region, which I find no names

The first Discovery of this Country we owe to *Ferdinando Cortes*, (of whom more hereafter) who in the year 1534, furnished out two Ships from the Haven of S. *Jago*, on the Western Shores of *Hispania Nova* to search these Seas: who making some small progress in it, encouraged him the next year to pursue it in person; and passing up the Gulf, as high as to the River of S. *Peter*, and S. *Paul*, (so called, because discovered on the 29 of June, the Annual Feast of those Apostles) for want of Victuals and other necessary Provisions, he returned back again. The business having slept a while, was in the year 1539. awakened by *Francisco de Olloa*, one that had accompanied *Cortez* the time before: who did not only search to the bottom of the Gulf, but having thoroughly canvassed all the Eastern Shores, he turned his course, and made as fortunate a Discovery also of the Western Coasts. Landing, he took possession of the Country with the wonted Ceremonies, for the King of *Spain*; and in the place set up a Crofs to serve as a Remembrance of his being there. After him followed *Ferdinando de Alarcon*, who discovered many Leagues up the course of the supposed River of *Buena Guia*; where *Naguaruco*, one of the Chiefs of their Clans or Tribes, did submit unto him: advancing so far towards the North, that at the last he heard News of *Chibola*; but was unprovided at that time for a Journey thither. And on the other side, *Roderico Cabrillo*, in the year 1642. coasting along the Western Shores of this Country, discovered two small Islands beyond *Cape Galera*; the one of which he called S. *Luke's*, and the other the Island of *Poffession*, and beyond them a fair Haven, which he called *Sardinia*. But yet not finding what they looked for, which was Gold and Silver, and hungry Honour yielding but a poor subsistence; the farther Search of these Countreys was quite laid aside, almost as little known now, as before *Columbus* first set sail upon new Discoveries.

4. *NOVA ALBION*, formerly conceived to be a part of the Continent, hath of late times been found to have taken up but some part of this Island; lying about the 38 degree of Latitude, and so Northwards as far as to *Cape Blanco*, as they call it now. Discovered by Sir *Francis Drake* in his Circumnavigation of the world Anno 1577. and by him named *Nova Albion*, in honour of *England* his own Country, which was once called *Albion*.

The Country is abundantly replenished with Herds of Deer, grazing upon the Hills by thousands: as also with a kind of Conies, in their Feet somewhat like a *Wau*, & on each side a Sack, where they keep such Victuals as they cannot eat. The Fleth of these Conies serves the people for Food; and of their skins the Kings or Chief of their several Tribes make their Royal Robes. The men go quite naked, the Women with a piece of Mat instead of an Apron or chaste, and obedient to their Husbands. Their Houses made of Turf and Oiler, so wrought together, as serves to keep them from the cold in the midst whereof

they have an Hearth where they make Fire, about which they lie along upon Beds of Bull-rushes. What Towns they have, or whether they have any or not, and by what names called, if they have any, must be referred to a farther discovery; there being nothing to that purpose delivered hitherto. And yet not feared so far North, but that it may be capable of a farther light, if any *Noble Undertakers* would adventure on it.

The *English* were no sooner landed, but the Inhabitants presented themselves before the General with presents of Feathers, and Cauls of Network made of Bull-rushes; which he received, & requited with great humanity. The News of their Arrival being carried farther, one of their Kings thought fit to bestow a visit on them: A person of a goodly stature, attired in Cony-Skins, with many tall men attending on him, one going before him with a Mace, at which hanged three Crowns, with as many Chains; the Chains of Bone, but the Crowns of Kait-work, made of Feathers, very ingeniously composed. After him followed many of the common sort, every one having his Face painted white, black, and some other Colours; and every one with some prefer or other in their hands, even the very Boys. Being brought into the General's Presence, the Mace-Bearer made a long Speech, which might be well meant, though not understood; and that being ended, the King caused the Crown to be put upon the General's head, and the three Chains about his Neck; the common people offering Sacrifices about the Field in great solemnity. Not to be interdicted those Superstitions, though the *English* (whom they took for Gods) seemed to be offended at them. Finally, after much kindness expressed on both sides, the General promising in the name of the Queen of *England* to take them into his Protection, he caused a Pillar to be erected in the place; on which he fastened the Arms of *England*, the Queen's name, and his own; and so returned unto his Ships but the Country lying so far off, that no benefit could redound by it to the *English Nation*, but the honour of the first Discovery; the name of *Nova Albion* by little and little was forgotten, and at last quite left out of the Maps or Charts; only a Point or Promontory, by the name of *Po. de Francisco Draco*, being left unto us to preserve his memory. And though we have caused the name of *Nova Albion* to be restored unto the Maps, as it was before; yet we must let the Reader know, that the name of *New Albion* hath been given lately with as much propriety, but more hopes of profit and advantage, to that part of *Virginia* which lyeth betwixt *Mary-Land* and *New-England*, as before was noted.

Opposite to *Cape Blanco*, and the extrem North parts of *America*, the supposed Kingdom of *ANIAN*, from whence the Streights of *Anian*, which are thought, by some to part *America* from *Asia*, do derive their Name, is conceived to lie. Supposed, and supposed only, for not certainly known: the very being of such a Kingdom, and such Streights, being much suspected.

S s s s s

OF

O F

NOVA GALLICIA.

NOVA GALLICIA is bounded on the East and South with *Nova Hispania*, or *New Spain*; on the West, with *Mer Vermiglio*, better known heretofore by the names of the River *Buena Guia*, and the Gulf of *California*; the Countreys beyond it on the North not discovered hitherto. So called because of some resemblance which it was thought to have to *Gallicia*, a Province of *Spain* in *Europe*; the word *Nova* being added to it for distinction sake.

It is situate between the 18 and 20 degrees of the Northern Latitude, which measured from the Port of the *Nativity*; (by the *Spaniards* called *Natividad*, and contractedly *Navidad*) where it confineth on *New Spain*, to the most Northern border of *Cinola*, makes 300 Leagues: the breadth hereof, for so much as is possessed by the *Spaniards*, being but an hundred onely. But taking in *New-Biscay* and *Nova Mexicana* into the Account, the breadth will be greater then the length.

The Air hereof is generally very temperate, but more inclined to heat then cold; many times subject unto Thunders and great Storms of Rain, but for the most part of so found a Constitution, that the Inhabitants attain to a good old Age; contagious Diseases seldom known amongst them. The Ground by consequence somewhat of the driest, if not moistened with the morning Dewes, which fall very frequently; and whether by the temperature of the Air, or Soil, apt to produce a kind of Gnat, (which the *Laines* call *Cimicer*) affirmed to be as big as a Bean, which by their stings do very often plague the people, and raise Blisters on their Bodies as big as Wallnuts.

The Countrey more Mountainous than plain, and in most parts Sandy. Quarries of Stone in many places, but little Marble, or any other Stone of value. Good store of Mines of Brass and Silver, few of Gold or Iron; and amongst all their Metals a great mixture of Lead. The Soil so rich, that it yields 60 measures of Wheat for one; and for one of Maize, above two hundred: The Rivers plentiful of Fish, and the Woods of Beasts: great store of Bees without Hives, which make their Honey in the Forests without other Hives. And as for Apples, Pears, Citrons, Figs, Malacatons, and other *European* Fruits, they thrive better here than they do in *Spain*, except the Cherry and the Olive; of which the last is most an end undermined by Emmets; and the first thrives out such a Harvest of Leaves, occasioned by the natural Rankness of the ground, that they seldom come to their perfection.

The People are wavering and inconstant, apt upon any discontent to forsake their Houses, betake themselves unto the Woods, and many times to return to their Ancient Barbarism: crafty, and docile even in matters which Concern Religion; but slothful and impatient of any labour, to which not to be hired but for very great wages. Much given to singing, Dancing, and sometimes to Drinking; and were it not that they loved their Liquor, few of them would betake themselves to the cares of Husbandry. Of stature reasonable tall; their Garments for the most part a Shirt of Cotton, with a Mantle over it, fastned with two

Buckles about their Shoulders. They dwell in Villages and towns, according to the greatness of their several Tribes: those Tribes commanded by their Chiefs, who succeed hereditarily; but subject to the Judges and other Officers of the King of *Spain*. As for the *Spaniards* who here dwell, they betake themselves generally to Merchandize, and the search of Metals; some few to Husbandry and grazing, but make not the best use which they might of the Countrey: for though here be great plenty both of Sugar-Canes and of Coghineel, yet they neglect to refine the one, or to attend the ordering of the other; finding perhaps an easier or a greater profit in the other Commodities.

The Mountain of most note in all this Countrey is that betwixt *Guadaluara* and *Zacatecas*; a League in height, but of such a Precipice withal, that no Horse nor Cattle can ascend it: their other Hills rocky, but clothed with Woods full of vast Pines, large Oakes, and great store of wolves. The River of most name is that called *Bacania*, which, rising out of the Lake of *Mechuacan* in *Nova Hispania*, falls down a Cataract about four Leagues from *Guadaluara* of Ten Fathoms deep, and so tumbeth into *Mare del Zur*: in no place fordable, nor having any passage over it but on Reeds and Rafts, on which the passenger sitteth with his commodities, his Horse swimming by; not safe at any time, and at most times dangerous. Some Lakes here be of 12 Leagues compass: environed with rich pastures on every side. Those of less note shall be remembered in their proper places.

It comprehends the provinces of 1. *Cinola*, 2. *Cuiliacan* 3. *Xalisco*, and 4. *Guadaluara*, on the Western Shores: 5. *Zacatecas*, 6. *New Biscay*, 7. *Nova Mexicana*, more within the Land. Of all these somewhat shall be said, though of each but little.

1. *CINALOA* is the most Northern province of *New Gallicia*, bounded upon the West with the supposed River of *Buena Guia*, and some part of the Bay of *California*; on the East, with a long chain of Mountains, called the Hills of *Tepicacan*; on the North, with the South parts of *Cinola*, on the South with *Cuiliacan*.

The Air for the most part clear and healthy, the Soil fat and fruitful, productive of Maize, Pulse, a sort of long Pease, which the *Laines* call *Phefio*, but we have no Proper English name for, of which abundantly plentiful. Great store of Cotton-wool, wherewith both Sexes are apparelled. Well watered with the Rivers, 1. *Petalan*, 2. *Tamechala*, 3. *Eufelona*, 4. *Taquim*; of no long course, all of them rising from the Hills of *Tepicacan*, and those but 30 leagues distant from the Sea shores. By reason of these Rivers, here are very rich Pastures, which breed great store of Kine, Oxen, and other Cattle.

The People are generally tall, higher than the *Spaniards*; by an hand-breadth, warlike and strong; not conquered by the *Spaniards* without great difficulty: their Arms a Bow and poisoned Arrows, with great maffly Clubs. Their Garments for the most part of Cotton-wool; their Hair nourished to a great length, which the men tie up in a

Knot,

Knot, but the Women suffer to hang down to the full length of it. Both sexes, at the first coming of the *Spaniards* thither, without Cloaths at all, but to hide their shame; most miserable poor; worshippers of the Sun, and not a few Cannibals amongst them.

Chief Towns hereof 1. *S. Philip* and *Jacob*, situate on the Bank of a River, about 42 Leagues from the Town of *Cuiliacan*, but of no great note. 2. *S. Johns de Cinola*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, Planted here long since, and re-inforced by a Supply brought thither in the year 1554 by *Francisco de Tharva*; scarce able to defend themselves from the old Inhabitants, who ever & anon disturb them with a fresh Alarm. Besides these, here are onely some scattered Villages, and those not many: the *Spaniards* finding only 25 old Forts in all the Countrey, when they first made themselves Masters of it, under the Conduct of *Nomez de Guzman*, Anno 1542. People everywhere submitting without any resistance, or if they gathered to an Head, soon dispersed again. For what could naked men do against an Army?

2. *COULICAN*, or *CULUCAN* lieth on the South of *Cinola*, coasting along the Bay of *California*, which it hath on the West, and part of *New Biscay* on the East. The Countrey well provided of Fruits, inferior unto none for ever found out by the *Spaniards*. The chief Rivers of it, 1. *Rio de Mucheras*, or the River of Women, in the North Part of the Province; so called; because the *Spaniards* found there more Women than Men, occasioning the opinion that it was inhabited by *Amazons*, 2. *Rio de Sal*, a goodly River, both sides whereof are very well peopled. 3. *Piafla*, more towards *Xalisco*.

The People not much different from the rest of *Gallicia*; save that their Women were more handsome, both for Dreß and Personage: all clothed in Garments of Cotton Wool, when first known to the *Spaniards*; and yet the men not free from the sin of *Sodom*. Their Houses neatly thatched with Straw, and over the Lintels of the Doors some Paintings, as shameless as the very foulest of *Arcine's* Pictures. Ignorant of Gold, which they had no Mines of; but of late times acquainted to their craft with Silver, which they are compelled to dig and refine for the *Spaniards*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Piafla*, on the River so called, about a days Journey from the Sea, well built, and artificially contrived in respect of others; never recovered of that blow that it had from the *Spaniards*, who in the Conquest of this Countrey walked all before them. 2. *Quinola* near *Rio de Mucheras*, 3. *Quarabarris*, an old Town, now named by the *Spaniards*, because it consisted of four parts. 4. *El Leon*, an old Burrough, which from a Lion there found had this new name also. 5. *Cuiliacan*, on a River so named, once the chief of this Province. 6. *S. Michal*, on the River of Women, built by *Nomez de Guzman*, in the Latitude of 25; but afterwards deserted, or Valley of *Harroba*, two Leagues from the Sea, in a flourishing and wealthy Soil both of Corn and Pasturage. The whole Countrey conquered by the *Spaniards*, Anno 1531. under *Nomez de Guzman*, most barbarously burning down the Towns, and destroying the people; as if they came not to subdue, but root out the Nation.

3. *XALISCO*, or *GALESCO*, as some Writers call it, hath on the North *Cuiliacan* on the South, *New Spain* on the East, the Province of *Guadaluara* on the West, the large Bay of *California*. So called from *Xalisco*, the chief Town of it, when subdued by the *Spaniards*.

The Soil hereof very fit for Maize, which it yields good store of, but not often. Herbage good for Cattel, which is reckoned for their great want. The North parts called *Chiamela*, of the two most fruitful; and better peopled; having in it store of Wax and Honey, with some Mines of Silver. The people formerly, Man eaters, and much given to quarrel; from which reformed since their Conversion to the Gospel. Tenacious still of one of their ancient Customs, which is, to carry the smallest Burthen upon their Shoulders, and not under their Arms; which to do, they think very much misbecoming.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *S. Sebastian*, 2. *Rio de Spiritu Santo*; and the great and famous River of *Barania*, spoken of before. Upon the Banks of which are situate their most principal Towns, viz. 1. *Xalisco*, giving name to the whole province, and to a large Promontory, called by the *Spaniards* *Sierre de Xalisco*, thrusting it self into the Bay of *California*, over against the Islands called *The Three Maries*: the City taken and destroyed by *Nomez de Guzman*, Anno 1530. 2. *Compellita*, now the chief City of the Countrey, and a Bishops See, founded by the said *Nomez de Guzman*, Anno 1531, when he had *Spaniards*, and by him called *Del Spiritu Santo*. But founded in so ill a place, and so bad an Air, destitute of food for Men, and Grass for Horses, as plainly shewing him to have better judgment in Souldiery than in Architecture. 3. *Purification*, a small Burrough on the Sea-side and in the extremity of this Countrey towards *Nova Hispania*, near the port of *Natividad*. 4. *S. Sebastian* in *Chiamela*, on the River so called, first built by *Francisco de Tharva* above mentioned; who having found hereabouts some rich Mines of Silver, brought thither in the year 1554, a new *Spanish* Colony, and building Houses for his Miners in convenient places, occasioned the whole Tract to be called *Tharva*.

4. *GUADALAIARA* hath on the West, *Xalisco*, on the East and South, some parts of *Nova Hispania*; on the North, the province of *Zacatecas*. Well watered with the river *Barania*, which runneth through the midst thereof, some of his by-streams moistening the other parts. The Countrey very wealthy in Mines of Silver, plentiful of Maize, and fortunate in the production of wheat, and such other fruits as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The Character of the People we have before, applied in general to all the natives of *New Gallicia*, but most Peculiar unto these.

Chief towns hereof, 1. *Guadaluara*, so called with reference to a Town of that name in *New Castle*, and giving name unto the province, situate on the Banks of the River *Barania*, or some branch thereof, in a sweet Air, and a most rich and pleasing Soil; there founded by *Nomez de Guzman*, Anno 1531. when he had perfected his Conquest; better advised in the choice of the place, then in that of *Compellita*, before mentioned. A City of so good esteem, that it passeth for the Metropolis of all *New Gallicia*, honoured with the Courts of Judicature, the Residence of the Kings Treasurers, and a Bishops See, removed hither from *Compellita*, Anno 1570. Beautified on this last occasion with a fair Cathedral, a Convent of *Franciscans*, and another of *Augustine* Friars. 2. *Del Spiritu Santo*, built by the said *Nomez*, in that part of this Countrey which is called *Tepique*; but not else observable. 3. *Santo Maria de los Lagos*, built by the same Founder, 30 leagues on the East of *Guadaluara*; and the best defence of all this Province against the *Chichimecas*, a barbarous and untamed people on the North and East parts of this Countrey, who harbouring themselves in the thickest of the Woods, and some unknown Caves;

do many times prey upon the Country; which they would utterly destroy, if they were not thus repressed.

5. *ZACATECAS* is bounded on the South with *Guadalupe*, on the North, with *New Biscay*; on the West, with *Calcutta* and some part of *Xalisco*; on the East, with *Panuco*, one of the Provinces of *New Spain*.

The Country is of a different nature. In the West parts, called properly *Los Zacatecos*, rich in Mines of Silver (no one province more) but destitute of Wheat, Maize, Water, and all other provisions; as if it were designed for some wealthy Miner, who could live upon the light of Treasure. The Eastern parts, properly called *Uxitiap*, not so well furnished with Silver, but more abundantly provided with all sorts of fruits; their Woods replenished with Deer, their Fields with Corn, and every Tree giving Entertainment to some Bird or other: In a word, nothing wanting in it either for Necessity or Pleasure. Of the people I find nothing singular, but that they are affirmed to be more industrious than the most of their Neighbours, whether by force or nature, (the *Spaniards* compelling them to drudge in their Silver-Mines) I determine not.

Chief Towns herof, 1. *Los Zacatecos*, neighboured by most wealthy Mines, 40 Leagues on the North of *Guadalupe*, inhabited by about 500 *Spaniards*, who have here a Convent of *Franciscans*. 2. *S. Martin*, 27 Leagues from *Zacatecas*, the Mines whereof were first opened by *Francisco de Tharra*, before mentioned; who with many Slaves, & all things necessary for a War, was sent upon that Errand by *Lewis de Velasco*, then Viceroy of Mexico, Anno 1554. The town inhabited by a Colony of 400 *Spaniards*, besides Women and Children. 3. *S. Luke*, and 4. *De Avim*, built amongst Mines as wealthy as those before, by the same *De Tharra*: as also 5. *Erena* a small town, but the same Estate for Silver; distant from *Zacatecas* 25 of the same Estate towards the North-west. 6. *Nombre de Dios*, in the most Northern parts of this Country, 68 Leagues from *Guadalupe*, the foundation of the same *De Tharra*. Who having conquered the Natives, and quieted them after some rebellions by gentle usage, built this Town in a pleasant and fruitful Soil: and having got the Government of the Country, which he had discovered, drew hither for many of the *Spaniards* and chief men of the Natives, by granting them the property of some silver Mines, that it became the chief and best-peopled Town of all this Province. 7. *Durango*, in the Valley of *Guadiana*, about 100 Leagues distant from *Nombre de Dios*, Peopled by a Colony of *Spaniards*, conducted thither by *Alonso Pacheco*, at the appointment of *De Tharra*, to whom the *Spaniards* are indebted for all this Treasure. 8. *Xeris de Teran*, first built for the repressing of some of the Savages, who use to infect the Borders towards *Guadalupe*, during the Regency of the Marquises of *Villa Manrique*, who then commanded in *New Spain*.

As for *UXITIA*, it belonged once unto the Province of *Panuco*, subdued by *Lopez de Mendoza*, employed therein by *Nomez de Guzman*, Anno 1529, at that time Governour of that province. Disinherited from it since the Conquest of *Zacatecas*, and made a member of the Prefecture of *New Galicia*. The chief Town of it is called *S. Lewis* built in a pleasant Valley by the said *Pacheco*, and by him peopled with a Colony of *Spaniards*: The Town not distant from *Panuco* above twenty Leagues.

6. *NOVA BISCALIA*, or *New Biscay* hath on the South *Los Zacatecos*; on the West, *Cinola*; on the North, *Novo Mexicana*; the Country towards the East not discovered hitherto. So called by *Francisco de Tharra*, by whom it is subdued, from the near Neighbourhood which it had

unto *Novo Galicia*, of which it hath been always since reckoned for a Part.

The Country is subject in the Winter to great Frosts and Snows; but notwithstanding well provided of all things necessary, and wonderfully enriched with Mines of Silver. They have also some of Lead, which serve very fitly for the melting and purifying of the other, used to this purpose not alone in these Mines of *New Biscay*, but in those also of *New Spain*. The people resolute and stout, not conquered at the first Attempt, nor won so much by Force, as by fair Persuasions.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *S. Barbara*, and 2. *S. John*'s, about three Leagues distant; built only for the benefit of the Mines adjoining. 3. *Eade*, the farthest Town which the *Spaniards* have towards the North, of whom a Colony was there planted by reason of the adjoining Mines) by *Roderico del Rio*, who did also fortify it by the direction of *De Tharra*, under whom a Colonel. Distant from *S. Barbara* and *S. John*'s about 20 Leagues, and 120 Leagues from *Los Zacatecos*. More North by 70 Leagues at least, and within this Region, but not within the power of the *Spaniards*, are said to be those four great Towns which the *Spaniards* call *Los Quatro Generales*: but I have nothing of them certain.

This Country was first subdued by *Francisco de Tharra*, who after he had built *Durango* in the North parts of *Los Zacatecos*, & assured that Province, advanced with a troop of 130 Horse for the Discovery and Conquest of his Northern Neighbours. Encountered at the first more with hunger & thirst than with any opposition of the Inhabitants; inasmuch that they were fain to eat their Horses: and afterwards by the Rebellion of the Natives, who killed the greatest part of such Horses as were left un eaten. But not discouraged herewith, nor being compelled to hew his Passage through the Woods by the Swords of his Soldiers, he prevailed at last; and having settled it in peace, returned by the way of *Cinola*, which he also conquered, and planted there a Colony in the Town of *S. John*'s, as was laid before.

7. *NOVA MEXICANA* is bounded on the South with *New Biscay*; on the West, with *Quivira*; the Country on the North and East, not discovered hitherto, though some extend it Eastwards as far as *Florida*. Extended 250 Leagues from the Town and Mines of *S. Barbara*, and how much beyond that, none can tell; the Relations of this Country being so uncertain, and indeed incredulous, that I dare say nothing positively of the Soil or people, but much less of the Towns and Cities which are said to be in it. So named by *Antonio de Espejo*, a Citizen of Mexico in *New Spain*, by whom discovered and subdued.

For first, they tell us of the People, that they are of great Stature, and that like enough; but not so Probable that they have the Art of dressing Chamoro and other Leather, as well as the best Leather-dresser in all *Flandres*; or that they have Shoes and Boots so well fashioned and soled, that no Shoe-maker in all *S. Martin* could do it better. Then for their Towns, that they are very fair and goodly, the Houses well built of Lime and Stone, some of them four Stories, & in most of them Stoves for the Winter season. The Streets even, & ordered in an excellent manner. Particularly, they tell us of a Town called 1. *Chia*, one of the five chief Towns of the Province of *Chama*, which is said to contain eight Market-places, and all the Houses to be plaitered and painted in most curious manner. 2. Of *Acoma*, that it is situated on the top of a Rock, a great Town, yet no way unto it but by Ladders; and in one place a pair of stairs, but exceedingly narrow, hewn out of the Rock; exceedingly well for-

fortified by Nature, (they say true in that, if any things are true which they tell us of it) and all their Water kept in Cisterns, (but no body can tell from whence they have it.) 3. Of *Cinola*, on a Lake so called, the City seven leagues long, two broad; (a second *Nimrod*) but the Houses fearfully built amongst Hills and Gardens, which take up a great deal of the Room: Inhabited by a People of such strength and courage, that the *Spaniards* only faced it, and so went away. Much of this stuff I could afford you, but by this Talk we may conjecture of the rest of the Fable.

The Country was first discovered by *Augustino Royce*, a *Franciscan* Friar, Anno 1580. who out of zeal to plant the Gospel in the North accompanied with two other Friars of that Order, and eight Soldiers, undertook the Adventure. But one of the Monks being killed by the Savages, the Soldiers played the Poltrons, and gave over the Action. On their return, *Beltram*, a Friar of the same Order (from whose mouth we must have the former Fictions) desirous to preserve the Lives of his Fellows which staid behind, encouraged one *Antonio de Espejo*, a Native of *Cordoba*, but a Citizen of Mexico, to engage in such an holy Cause: who raising a Band of 150 Horse, accompanied with many Slaves and Beasts of Carriage, undertook the business. I omit the many Nations of the *Conchi*, *Fajungates*, *Tobosi*, *Patarabyes*, *Tarrabumares*,

Tepoanes, and many others as hard names, which he passed through in his way. But coming at the last to a great River which he called *Del Nord*, there he made a stand; caused the Country on both sides of it to be called *Novo Mexicana*, and a City to be built which he called *New Mexico*, situate in the 37 degree of Northern Latitude, and distant from *Old Mexico* five hundred Leagues: the name since changed to that of *S. Fe*, but still the Metropolis of that Province, the Residence of the Governour, and a pretty Garrison consisting of 250 *Spaniards*. Some other Towns he found at his coming thither, viz. 2. *Sacrau*, so called by the *Spaniards*, because of that Succour & Relief they found there for their half-starved Bodies. 3. *Seneca*, 4. *Pilabo*, and 5. *Sevilleta*; old Towns, but new Christened by the *Spaniards*, when the Inhabitants thereof did embrace the Gospel; each of them beautified with a Church. 6. *S. John*, built afterwards in the year 1599, by *John de Onate*, who with an Army of five thousand followed the same way which *Espejo* went, and having got a great deal of Treasure, laid it up in this place, that it might be no incumbrance to him in his advance. This is the most I dare rely on for this Country. And this hath no such Wonders in it, but what an easy Faith may give credit to: Though I had rather believe the Friar's whole Relations, then go thither to disprove any Part thereof.

OF NOVA HISPANIA.

NOVA HISPANIA is bounded on the East with a fair and large Arm of the Sea, called the Bay of *New Spain*, and the Gulf of Mexico; on the West, with parts of *Novo Galicia*, and *Mare del Zur*; on the North with the rest of *New Galicia*, some part of *Florida*, and the Gulf; on the South with *Mare del Zur*, or the South-Sea only. So called with relation to *Spain* in *Europe*, as the chief Province of that Empire in this *New World*, with reference to which the Kings of Spain call themselves *Reges Hispaniarum*, in the plural number.

It extendeth from the 15 degree of Latitude to the 26 exclusively, i. e. measuring it on the East-side by the Bay of Mexico to the North of *Panuco*; but six degrees less measuring it on the West-side to the Port of *Nauvoldad*, where miles, it is in breadth from *Panuco* unto *Mare del Zur*, 200 much on the other side. The length hereof, from the East point of *Jucuman*, to the borders of *Gallicia Nova*, 1200 *Italian* miles, or 40 leagues; which is just double to the breadth.

The Air exceeding temperate, though situate wholly under the Torrid Zone; the heats thereof much qualified by those cooling Blasts which fan it from the Sea on three sides of it; and by those frequent Showers which fall continually in June, July, and August, the hottest seasons of the year. Abundantly enriched with inexhaustible Mines of Gold and Silver, some of Brass and Iron; plenty of Coco-

Nuts, of which we have spoke before; great store of *Cassia*, such a wonderful increase of *Cochineal*, that 5070 *Arrobas* of it (each *Arroba* containing 25 Bushels of our English measure) have been shipped for *Europe* in one year. Where by the way this *Cochineal* groweth on a small Tree or Shrub having very thick Leaves, which they call a *Tuna*; planted and ordered by them as the *French* do their Vines: our of the Seed whereof ariseth a small Worm, at first no bigger than a Flea, and the greatest not much bigger than our common Lady-Cows, which they much resemble; which feeding on the Leaves, and over-spreading all the ground in which they are, are gathered by the Natives twice a year, stifled with *Alees*, or with Water, (but this last the best) dried to a powder in the shade, and so transported into *Europe*. Here is also great plenty of Wheat, Barley, Pulse of all sorts, and of all such Plants and Roots as we set in gardens for the Kitchen; Pomegranates, Oranges, Limons, Citrons, Malacatons, Figs, and Cherries, even to superfluity; Apples and Pears in less abundance; few Grapes, and those few they have, not fit for Wine: plenty of *Muske*, and other plants unknown in *Europe*. Birds and Beasts wild and tame of all sorts, and of each no scarcity. Not thus in all places of it, nor in all alike; but some in one, some in another, according to the constitution of the Soil and Air: which is so different in this Country, that in such parts hereof as are hot and dry their Seed-time is in April or May, their harvest in October; but in such places of it as are low and moist, they sow their Corn in October, and reap in May: thus having two Harvests in a year, and yet but one.

The People more ingenious than the rest of the Sava-

ges, exquisite at some Mechanick Arts, especially in the making of their Feather-Pictures; and so industrious withal, so patient both of Thirst and Hunger, that they will sit at an whole day without meat or drink; turning every Feather to the light, upwards and downwards, every way to see in which posture it will best fit the place intended to it. No better Goldsmiths in the World, nor men more expert any where in refining Metals; curious in painting upon Cotton whatsoever was presented to the Eye. But yet so barbarous withal that they thought the Gods were pleased with the blood of men, which sometimes they sacrificed unto them. So ignorant, that when they first saw the *Spaniards* on Horle-back, they thought the Horle and Man to have been one Creature; and would ask what the Horle said, when they heard them neigh. So careless of the worth of Gold, that they would part with great quantities of it for Knives, Glasse Beads, little Bells, and such petty Trifles. But whatsoever they once were, is not now material: the *Spaniards* having made such havock of this wretched People, that in 1 years they destroyed above six millions of them, roasting some, plucking out the Eyes of others, confounding them in their Mines, and mercifully calling them amongst wild Beasts, where they were devoured. As for those who do remain, besides their own natural ingeniosities, they have since learned the Civilities and Arts of *Europe*. What else concerns this Soil and People, we shall here more particularly, if we find it necessary in their proper places.

Amongst the Rarities of this Country, (though there be many Plants in it of a singular nature) I reckon that which they call *Maguey*, or *Meli*, said to be one of the principal: A Tree which they both plant and dress, as we do our Vines. It hath in it 40 kind of Leaves fit for several uses. For when they be tender, they make, of them Conerves, Paper, Flax, Mantles, Mats, Shoes, Girdles, and Cordage: upon them there grow certain Prickles so strong and sharp, that the People use them instead of Saws. From the top of the Tree cometh a Juice like Syrup; which, if you seeth it, will become Honey; if purified, Sugar: they may make also Wine and Vinegar of it. The Bark of it roasted maketh a good Plaster for Hurts and Sores; and from the highest of the Boughs comes a kind of Gum; which is a sovereign Antidote against Poysons.

Nor is it a less Rarity, though less useful to the good of Mankind (except it be to keep them in continual mind of the Fires of Hell) that they have a Mountain in this Country called *Propeacumpeche*, (situate in the Province of *Mexico*) which vomiteth Flames of Fire like *Etna*: and another in the Province of *Guaxaca*, which sendeth forth two burning Breasts, the one of red Pitch, and the other of black; a fire resembling of those Fountains of Fire and Brimstone. Though they have many other Mountains yet these are most memorable. And as for Rivers, though very well provided of that watery Commodity; yet here are none remarkable for length or greatness; but *Panuco* only, of which more presently. The want thereof is supplied by some famous Lakes, & the Neighbourhood of the Gulf of *Mexico*. Amongst the Lakes, the principal are those of *Mexico*, (whereof more anon) and that of *Chapala*, bordering upon *Galicia Nova*; and which is its greatness hath the name of *Mare Chapaleum*, out of which there is made yearly great abundance of Salt. But that which is of greatest beauty is the Gulf of *Mexico*, the greatest and goodliest of the World: in form completely Circular, in compass no less than 900 miles; environed with the main Land, the *Peninsulas* of *Florida* and *Jucatan*, and the Isle of *Cuba*. Two only pallasses in and out, and both well fortified: the one betwixt the point of *Jucatan* and the Isle of *Cuba*, where the Tide with a violent

Current entreth; the other betwixt the said Island and the Cape of *Florida*, where it makes as violent an Exit: the Sea so heady in the midst, & yet so calm enough that ships are not so full in it directly forwards but must bend either towards the North or South, as their Journey lieth. Upon this Gulf the King of *Spain* hath always some Ships in readiness, by which he more allures his Estates in this part of *America* than by all his Garrisons.

It comprehendeth the Provinces of 1. *Panuco*, 2. *Mechuachan*, 3. *Mexicana*, 4. *Tlafcala*, 5. *Guaxaca*, 6. *Jucatan*. Some others of less note but reduced to these.

1. *PANUCO*, the most Northern Province of all *New Spain*, by some called *Guaftecan*, is bounded on the East with the Gulf of *Mexico*; on the West with *Uxiatapa*, a Member of the Province of *Zacatecas* in *New Galicia*; on the North with *Florida* and some Countries not yet discovered from which parted by the River of *Palmu*; on the South-west, with *Mechuacan*; and on the South with *Mexicana*. So called from *Panuco* the chief River of it, which rising out of the Hills of *Tepejuan*, bordering upon *Cinaloa* and *Coulican*, and dividing *New Bifeyan* from the Province of *Zacatecas*, passeth through the middle of this Country, and so at last into the Gulf.

The length hereof is reckoned to be 50 Leagues, and the breadth as much. Divided into three Provinces. That towards *Mexicana*, called *Atotzucan*, of a fruitful Soil, and not without some Mines of Gold; once very populous till in the year 1522. dispeopled in a manner by *Ferdinando Cortez* in his War against them. The other called *Chila*, less fruitful, but possibly for want of people to improve the Land: for being formerly of a stout courageous nature, and trusting overmuch to their Fens and Fallnefs, they put the *Spaniards* to such trouble when they warred upon them, that the Conquerors, to secure themselves from all future dangers, endeavoured to root them out, and destroy them utterly. The third lieth towards the River of *Palmu*, inclined to barrenness, and unpleasant: but the name I find not.

Chief Towns hereof, at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither. 1. *Las Casas*, 2. *Ticuyana*, 3. *Nachupatan*, 4. *Taquimite*, 5. *Tuxteco*, desolate and laid waste by the cruel *Spaniards*. Of most note now, 6. *Tanehipa*, and 7. *Tamecpala*, two small Burroughs in the Province of the River of *Palmu*, (for so I call it) inhabited by the Natives only. 8. *S. Kallap*, another small Town, but in the Province of *Chila*, inhabited by a few Christians, with a Convent of *Augustinian* Friars: sacked by the Savages in the year 1571. 9. *Tampier*, or *S. Lewis* de *Mexico*, a Colony of the *Spaniards* situate on the North Banks of the River *Panuco*, and at the very mouth thereof where it hath a very large Haven, but so barred with Sands, that no Ship of great burthen can make use of it: the River otherwise so deep, that Vessels of 500 Tun might fill 60 Leagues at least in it against the Stream. 10. *S. Steven* del *Puerto*, on the Southern side of that River, in the Latitude of 23, about 65 Leagues on the North of *Mexico*, from the Sea eight Leagues; now the Metropolis, and Town of greatest Trade in all this Country. Built by *Ferdinando Cortez*, in the place where formerly had stood *Panuco*, once the chief City of the Province, but by him destroyed. Opposite hereunto, on the other side of the River lie great flocks of Salt-pits, out of which the people of this Town raise their greatest profit. 11. *S. Jago de los Valles*, or *S. James* in the Valles, 25 Leagues Westward (but inclining to the South wital) from *S. Steven* del *Puerto*; situate in an open Country, and therefore fenced about with a Wall of Earth: To the Inhabitants whereof (all *Spaniards* as in that before) the King of *Spain* hath granted many fair possessions, to defend those

those parts (then being the borders of his Estates) against the Savages.

This Country first attempted by *Francisco Garza*, but the Conquest of it finished by *Cortez*, as before is said: each striving, as it seemeth, who should most deface it, and be enrolled for the greatest Man-slayer of the two. But having carried on the course of their Victories almost as far as to the River of *Palmu*, they desisted either because already glutted with humane Blood; or that the conquest of those parts would not quit the charge. Inasmuch as in all that Country, from the River of *Palmu* to the Cape of *Florida*, there lying all along on the Gulf of *Mexico*, the *Spaniards* have not one foot of ground: secure enough, because it lieth all along that Gulf, that no other Nation can possess it.

2. *MECHUACHAN* lieth on the North-East *Panuco*, on the East, *Mexicana*, on the South part of *Tlafcala*, on the west, the main Ocean; and on the North, the Province of *Xalisco* in *New Galicia*. So called from the abundance of Fish, which their Lakes and Rivers did afford them; the word in their own Language signifying *Locum Piscium*, or a Country of Fish.

The breadth hereof on the Sea-coast is 80 Leagues, in the borders towards *Mexicana* but sixty only. The length I find not yet agreed on. Blest with an Air so found and sweet, that sick Folks comethither out of other Countries to recover their Health. Well stored with Rivers, some Lakes, innumerable Springs of Running Water, and here and there some hot Baths issuing from the Rocks. The Soil so plentifully productive of all sorts of Grain, (even to seed) that in some parts hereof four measures of Seed have brought forth 600 measures of the same Grain in the following Harvest. Well wooded, and by reason of its Springs and Rivers, full of excellent Pastures, and yet not yielding unto any part of all *America* for Medicinal Herbs and Plants, of very sovereign nature for the Good of Mankind. It affordeth also store of Amber, Mulberry-Trees, Silk, Wax, Honey, and such other things as chiefly serve for Pomp and Pleasure.

The people tall of Stature, but strong and active: of a good Wit, and skilled in many excellent Manufactures. They speak four Languages of their own; but that most generally used is by the *Spaniards* called the *Tascanan* Tongue; which though it be an elegant and copious Language, yet most of them speak the *Spanish* also. More plaintiff to the Manners and Apparel of that Nation, than the rest of *New Spain*, (the *Mexicans* excepted only;) and fo inclinable to the Gospel, that they are almost all gained from their old idolatries. Inasmuch that the whole Country being divided into fifty Parishes, every Parish hath its several Priests and inferior Ministers, who in the Language of the place do instruct the people in which they preach to them and hear their Confessions: besides many Convents of *Dominicans* and of *Augustine* Friars.

It containeth in it upwards of 150 Towns or Burroughs, besides scattering Villages, ninety of which have Free Schools in them, and almost every one a Spittle for relief of the Sick. The Principal thereof, 1. *Zimacua*, the Seat of the old Kings of *Mechuacan*; in the first Times of Christianity in this Country made a Bishop's See, till removed to *Pascuar*. The first Bishop *Alvarez de Quirga*, 2. *Pascuar*, of no great note at present, but that the Bishops See was removed thither because nearer to *Mexico*; from which distant 47 Leagues. 3. *Valledolid*, now the chief City of this Province, and the Bishop's See, removed thither from *Pascuar*, and here finally seated in a Fair Cathedral, Anno 1544, situate near a large

Lake, said to be bigger than that of *Mexico* which doth not only afford the City great force of Fish, but yieldeth them the opportunity of several pleasures, which they take in Boats upon the Water. The Lake & City by the Natives called *Guayangaroo*. 4. *S. Michael*, in the way from *Mexico* (from which distant about 40 Leagues) to the Silver Mines of *Zacatecas*. First built by *Lewis de Velasco*, then Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, to defend the People of this Province from the *Chichimechos*, a barbarous and hitherto an unconquered People, who terribly molest the Nations upon whom they border. 5. *S. Philips*, built at the same time by the said *Velasco*. 6. *Conception de Saylla*, 17 Leagues from *Valledolid*, 35 from *Mexico*, of the foundation of *Martin Enriquez* the Vice-Roy, Anno 1570, to be a Stage for Travellers in their Journeys Northwards. 7. *Guasmatu*, bordering on *Panuco*, and not far from *S. Jago de los Valles*, rich in Mines of Silver. Then on the Sea we have, 8. *Acatlan*, on the borders of *New Galicia*, 20 miles from the Ocean; a Town of not above 30 Houses, with a little Church; but neighboured by a large and safe Road for Shipping, (by the *Spaniards* called *Malacca*) which makes it seldom without the company of Sailors. 9. *Natividad* (or *Portus Nativitatis*) a noted and convenient Haven, from whence they commonly set sail to the *Philippine* Islands; pillaged and burnt by Captain *Cavendish* in his Circumnavigation of the World. 10. *S. Jago*, (or *S. Jago de Buena Esperanza*) a little on the South of *Natividad*; the Shores whereof are said to be full of Pearls: 11. *Culimaten* Leagues from the Sea, but more South than the other; built in the year 1522, by *Conradus de Sandoval*. 12. *Zacatlán*, by the *Spaniards* called *Concepcion*; situate on the Banks of a large (but nameless) River, which rising about the City of *Tlafcala*, passeth by this Town, and thence with two open mouths runneth into the Sea.

This Province, at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither was a distinct Kingdom of it self, not subject nor subordinate to the Kings of *Mexico*, as were most of the Princes of these parts: the Frontiers of the Kingdom fenced with Stakes of Wood like a Palizado, to hinder any sudden incursion of the *Mexican* Forces. The last King, called *Tanzagayon Bimbicha*, submitted of his own accord to *Cortez*, Anno 1522, and willingly offered himself to Baptism. But the *Spaniards* were not pleased with either, because deprived thereby of the Spoil of the Country. But at last, *Nanvez de Guzman*, then President of the Courts of Justice in *Mexico*, picked a Quarrel with him, accused him falsely (as is said by the very *Spaniards*) of some practices against his King, burnt him alive with most barbarous and unheard-of Cruelty, and so confiscated his Estate.

3. *MEXICANA* is bounded on the East with the Gulf of *New Spain*; on the West, with *Mechuacan*; on the North with *Panuco*, and some part of *Novia Galicia*; on the South, with *Tlafcala*, and part of the Southern Sea. So called from *Mexico*, the chief City, not of this Province only, but of all *America*.

It is in breadth from North to South, measuring by the Bay of *Mexico*, 130 Leagues; thence growing narrower, in the midland parts hardly above sixty; and on the Shores of *Mare del Zur* not above seventeen. The length hereof extendeth from one Sea to the other; that is to say, from the Point of *Lobos* in the Province of *Papantla*, on the Gulf of *Mexico*, to the Haven of *Acapulco* on the Southern Ocean: but the determinate number of Miles I do not where find. But measuring it from 17 degrees and an half of Latitude, unto the 23, and allowing something for the slope, we may conclude it to be much of the same length as it is in breadth, that is to say, about one hundred and thirty Leagues.

OF

GUATIMALA.

GUATIMALA, is bounded on the North by *Jucatan* and the Gulf of *Honduras*; on the South, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, (or the South-east rather) with *Castella Aurea*; on the West, with *New Spain*. Extended 300 Leagues in length, upon the Coasts of *Mare del Zur*; but measuring by a strait line, not above 240. the breadth thereof 140 leagues where broadest; in most places narrower. So called from *Guatemala* the chief Province; as that from the prime City of it, honoured with the Seat of the Governour, and the Courts of Justice.

The nature of the Soil and People (if differing in any material thing from those before) we will consider in the View of those several parts into which this Country is divided. The principal whereof, 1. *Chiapa*, 2. *Verapaz*, 3. *Guatemala*, specially so called, 4. *Honduras*, 5. *Nicaragua*, 6. *Veraguas*. The rest of Iles not easily reduced to these.

1. *CHIAPA* hath on the West *New Spain*; on the East, *Verapaz*; on the North, part of *Jucatan*; and *Mare del Zur* on the South. Extended 40 leagues in length, not much less in breadth, and anciently inhabited by four Nations all of several Languages.

The Soil not very natural for Corn or fruits, though Pot-herbs brought from *Spain* thrive well, as do Beans and Lentils; yet Vines and other richer Fruits seldom come to good. Wood-Vines they have, which yield a very pleasant Pulp, and, if well ordered, might be brought to afford more profit. Their Trees most of them greater than in other places, as Pines, Oaks, Cedars, and the Cypress; whole Woods of Walnuts, but the Nut not so big as those of *Europe*. Some of their Trees yield Rosin, some such precious Gums as in other places are not usual; and some there are whose leaves being dried unto a powder, afford a sovereign Plaster for excruciate Sores. And they have need too often to make use of these Plasters, the Country being full of Snakes & other venomous Creatures, (some of the Snakes no less than 20 foot in length) whose poison being strong & deadly, doth require such helps. Of the People nothing singular that I have met with, but that they are more musical and exact in Painting than the rest of the Natives.

Towns of most note in it, 1. *Covidad Real*, built by the *Spaniards* in the Country of the *Chiapenses*, at the foot of an Hill; situate in a round Plain, encompassed about with Mountains like an Amphitheatre; afterwards made a Bishops See, and privileged by the Kings of *Spain* to be governed by such City-Magistrates as they call *Alcaldes*. 2. *Chiapa*, of most note in this Province, yet still before it in regard of its situation, this Valley being better fraught with Pears, Apples, Wheat and Maize, than all the rest of the Countrey. 3. *Tecapalan*, once the chief of the *Zoque*, possessed of 25 Villages in this Province; now beautified with a Monastery of *Dominican* Friars. 4. *Capanwatzila*, the principal Town of twenty five which the *Quelenes* held in this Tract; remarkable for nothing but a Convent of the same *Dominicans*. 5. *Bur-*

tholomeus, another Town in the Territory of the same *Quelenes*; near which is said to be a great Pit, or opening of the Earth, into which if any man cast a stone, though never so little, there presently followeth a loud and fearful noise like a clap of Thunder. 6. *Guevetlan*, built by *Pedro de Alvaradi* when he was Governour of these parts; the Chief Town of a little Province called *Socumfco*. 7. *Cajapulesa*, a small Burrough, but memorable for a Well in the Fields adjoining, the Waters whereof are noted to rise and fall as the Ocean doth flow or ebb, and at equal distances of time. Of thirteen Townships which the *Zeltales* were possessed of, I find no one named; though painted all of them, and set forth to the Eye of the Traveller, with *Cochineel*, of which their Territory hath good plenty.

And now I am fallen upon the Rarities of Nature, I cannot but take notice (though somewhat out of my Method) of a River by the *Spaniards* called *Rio Blanco*, which turns Wood to Stones: of a Spring in the *Centred* of *Tajicua*, which in the Summer is full of water, in the Winter dry, of another in the fame *Camred*, which for one three years, though it rain never so little, is full of water, and the next three years hath none at all; and so successively by turns: and finally, that the chief River of the Province, having received into it many lesser streams, is swallowed up near a Village of the *Chiapenses*, called *Olxumun*, never after seen. None of them famed for Golden Sands, as are those of *Guaxaca*, though it be thought there be some Veins of Gold and Silver, but hitherto neglected for want of Slaves to work in the Mines.

2. *VERAPAZ*, is bounded on the West with *Chiapa*; on the East, with *Guatemala* and *Honduras*; on the North, with *Jucatan*; and on the South, with the Territory of *Socumfco*. In *Latino* called *Provincia Vera Pacis*, by the *Spaniards* *Verapaz*, because not conquered by the Sword, but won to the obedience of the King of *Spain* by the preaching of the *Dominican* Friars.

The Country is 30 leagues in length, and as much in breadth, full of high Hills and deep Valleys, but no fruitful Plains; generally overgrown with Woods, very large and thick, which so hinder the free passage of the Winds, that the Air hereof is very showry: infomuch that for nine months in the year they have always rain, not altogether free from it in the other three. By reason of this moisture much annoyed with *Mosquitos*, a kind of Gnats very injurious to their Fruits, which otherwise (as with Fish and other necessaries) they were well provided. No Mines of Gold or Silver discovered hitherto though the *Spaniards* have many times vainly attempted it. In stead whereof some of their Trees drop a kind of Amber, which they call *Liquid Amber*, some *Ma-Pick*, and some other Gums: they have also many Medicinal Woods, as *Sarzaparilla*, that called *China-Wood*, and many others.

The people tractable and conform to the Spanish Government, except the *Lacandones* and *Pachutecs*, some Remains of the ancient *Savages*; who, keeping in the Mountains and craggy Rocks of this Country, have hitherto

thereto retained both their native Freedom and their old Idolatries. No Towns herein possessed by the *Spaniards*, and but fourteen Villages in all, in which they live mingled with the old Inhabitants. The principal of these *S. Azultitlan*, not so much memorable in it self, as for the neighbourhood of a Cave betwixt two Mountains from which the Rain descending turns into Alabaster, naturally fashioned into Pillars and other Pourtraitures into which also many Springs do convey their waters, which there being joynted into a body makean handsome River, able almost at the first appearance to bear a Boat. A port they also have at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo Dulce*: but of so little use and trading, that I find no name for it, unless it should be that *Tzapala* which *Herrera* speaks of, by whom it is placed in *Guatemala*.

3. *GUATIMALA* specially so called, is bounded on the West with *Verapaz*, from which parted by the River *Xicalapa*; on the East, with *Nicaragua*; on the North, with *Honduras*; and on the South, with *Mare del Zur*, or the *Pacific* Ocean. Extended 30 leagues from the North to the South, and on the shores of *Mare del Zur* not above seventeen. But reckoning in *Tzelcos*, *Chaluteca*, and *S. Savours*, three adjoining Regions, by some made Provinces distinct, the dimensions of it must be much greater both for length and breadth.

The Countrey is Mountainous, but withal very full of Rivers, by consequence commodious both for Fishing and Hunting. Fruitful of Wheat, Maize and other Provisions, but those Fruits not lasting. Not so much subject unto rain as they are in *Verapaz*, but more troubled with Winds. Full of rich pastures, and those Pastures of great Herds of Cattle: good store of Cotton-wool, some *Balsamum*, and other medicinal liquors; also of the best Sulphur, and many Apothecaries Drugs, which I have no skill of. The People pusillanimous, and fearful, greater proficient in Christianity and Civility than most of the *Savages*; but so that it is thought they would relapse again to their ancient Paganism, and revive again their old barbarous Customs, if not held in by the bridle of Fear and the curb of Power. The men affirmed to be good Archers, and the Women good Spinners.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *Guacapa*, a River of a course but of 13 leagues, yet of great depth, and navigable half the way, which falleth into the *Mare del Zur*. 2. *Lempas*, watering the Burrough of *S. Savours*; which hath its rise from a great Lake, and his fall into the same Sea also. Here is also said to be a Lake near the Village of *Tzicpeque*, of the Waters whereof are made both Sulphur and Alum. And here is said to be a *Volcano*, or burning Mountain, which though it hath vomited no Fire of late, the matter of it being spent, yet the sad Monuments of his Furies do remain among them: another not far off which still casts out smoke.

Towns of most note, 1. *Guatemala*, or *S. Jago de Guatemala*, the chief Town of the Province, situate on a little River betwixt both *Volcanos*, by one of which most terribly wasted, Anno 1541, by being re-edified, it hath since exceedingly flourished, by reason of the Bishops See, the residence of the Governour, and the Courts of Justice. 2. *S. Salvador*, 40 leagues Eastward from *Guatemala*, by the Natives called *Guztilan*; situate on the River *Guacapa*, seven leagues from the Sea, and neighbored by a great Lake of five leagues compass. 3. *Acaxula*, at the mouth of the same River, the Port Town to *S. Savours*. 4. *S. Trinidad*, by the Natives called *Santamaria*, the most noted Empory of this Country: the Place of Bartery betwixt the Inhabitants of *New Spain* and those of *Peru*. 5. *S. Michael*, two leagues from the Bay of *Fonseca*, which serves unto it for an Haven. 6. *Xerxes de la Fomera*, the chief Town of the *Centred* of *Chou-*

lutean, (by which name it was formerly known) situate on the Frontiers towards *Nicaragua*, and to the South east of the Bay of *Fonseca*. That Bay is named in honour of *Roderico Fonzeca*, Bishop of *Bruges*, and President of the Council for the *Indies*, Anno 1532, by *Giles Gonzales de Avila*, who first discovered it. About and in this Bay are ten little Islands, four of them inhabited, and plentifully furnished with Wood, Water and Salt.

4. *HONDURA* hath on the South *Guatemala*, specially so called; on the West, the Bay, or Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo Dulce*, by which parted from *Verapaz*; on the North and East, the Sea called *Mare del Noord*: on the South-east, *Nicaragua*; on the South, *Guatemala* specially so called. In length from East to West by the banks of that Sea 150 leagues, and about 80 leagues in breadth from North to South. The name of *Honduras*, or *Honduras*, imposed upon it from the depth of the Sea about the principal Head land of it, called the Cape of *Honduras*.

The whole Countrey is either Hills or Valleys, little Champain in it; fruitful of Maize and Wheat, and of very rich Pasture; made so by the conflant overflows of chier Rivers about *Mechalmas*, which do not only foil their Grounds, but water their Gardens. The principal of them, 1. *Hingera*, 2. *Chamalucan*, 3. *Ulna*; all neighbored by fertile Fields & pleasant meadows. Some Mines of Gold & Silver are conceived to be here, but not yet discovered; the people being so lothful and given to idleness, that they rather live on Roots, than take pains in tilling of their Land; and therefore not eagerly contented to toil for others, but where necessity and strong hand do compel them to it.

Towns of most note, 1. *Valladolid*, by the Natives called *Comayagua*, 40 leagues distant from the Sea, situate in a pleasant and fruitful Valley, on the banks of the River *Chamalucan*; and honoured with a Bishops See, fixed here about the year 1558, but built near the place where once *Francisco de Monte*, Governour of this Province, had planted a Colony of *Spaniards*, Anno 1530, by the name of *S. Maria de Comayagua*. 2. *Gracias de Dios*, 30 leagues Westward of *Valladolid*, built by *Gabriel de Rojas*, Anno 1530, to be a place of defence for those who worked in the Mines against the *Savages*. But finding himself unable to make it good, he defaced and left it. Re-edified again by *Gonzalo de Alvarado*, and since well inhabited. 3. *S. Peters*, eleven leagues distant from the Port of *Cavallon*, but seated in a most healthy Air; and therefore made the dwelling-place of the Farmers of the Kings Customs, who have their houses in this Town, and follow their business in the other, as occasion is. 4. *Porto de Cavallon*, so called from some Horses thrown overboard in a violent Tempest: the most noted Haven of these parts, and strong by natural situation: but so ill guarded and defended, that in the year 1591, it was pillaged by Captain *Christopher Newport*, Anno 1206, by Sir *Anthony Sherley*. Deserted on those spoils, and not since inhabited. 5. *S. Thomas de Castille*, 18 leagues from *Cavallon*, naturally strong, and fortified according to the Rules of Art: to which, as to a place of more strength and safety, *Alphonso Briado de Castilla*, President of the Sessions of *Guatemala*, removed both the Inhabitants and Trade of *Cavallon*. 6. *Taxavilla*, seated on the rising of a little Hill betwixt two Rivers, (one of them that which is called *Haguera* distant from *Cavallon* 40 leagues to the East, and 60 leagues to the North of *Valladolid*), surprized and pillaged by the *English*, Anno 1576. Not far hence towards the North-east lieth the Cape of *Honduras*, from hence the shore drawing inwards till it joyn with *Jucatan*, makes up a large and goodly Bay, called the Gulf of *Honduras*. 7. *S. George*

de Olancho, so named from the Valley *Olancho*, in which it is feated; a Valley noted heretofore for some Gloden Sands, which *Guisajapa*, a River of it, was then said to yield.

5. *NICARAGUA* is bounded on the North with *Honduras*; on the East, with *Mar del Noorde* and the Province of *Veragua*; on the South, with *Mar del Zur*; on the West, with *Guatimala*. By *Didaco Lopez de Siles*, who first subdued it, it was called the *New Kingdom of Leon*; but the old name by which they found it called at their coming thither would not be so lost.

The Country is delitute of Rivers, except that part hereof towards *Veragua* called *Cofsa Rica*, reckoned a Province of it self. The want hereof is supplied by a great Lake, or a little Sea, called the *Lake of Nicaragua*, 120 Leagues in compass, ebbling and flowing like the Sea; upon the Banks of which stand many pleasant Villages and single Houses. A Lake well stored with Fish, but as full of Crocodiles: and having made its way by a mighty Cataract, emptieth it self into the Sea about four Leagues off. Not very rich in Corn, (most of which is brought them from *Peru*) but well stored with Cattle: level and plain, and shadowed with frequent Trees; one amongst others of that nature, that a man cannot touch any part of it, but it withereth presently. Affirmed to be as full of Parrots as *England* of Crows, stored with great plenty of Cotton-Wool, and abundance of Sugar-Cans. In a word so pleasing generally to the eye, that the *Spaniards* call it by the name of *Mohomer's Paradise*.

The people for the most part speak the *Spanish* Tongue, and willingly conform themselves to the *Spanish* Garb, both of behaviour and apparel: well weaned from their old barbarous Customs, retained only by some Mountaineers, whom they call *Chontales*. All of good Stature, and of Colour indifferent white. They had before they received Christianity a settled and politick form of Government. Only as *Solon* appointed no Law for a man's killing of his Father, so had this people none for the killer of a king; both of them conceiving that men were not so unnatural as to commit such Crimes. A Thief they judged not to death, but adjudged him to be a Slave to that man whom he had robbed, till by his Service he made satisfaction. A course more merciful and not less just than the loss of Life.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Leon*, or *Leon de Nicaragua*, situate on the Lake aforesaid, the Residence of the Governor, and the Bishop's See; built in Sandy Soil, and begirt with Woods, 2. *Granada*, on the same Lake, sixteen Leagues from *Leon*; beautified with a fair Church and strong Castle, both founded by *Ferdinando de Cordova*: the City seated in a liberal and wealthy Soil, well furnished with Sugar-Canes; for the refining of which there are many Work-houses, which they call *Ingenios*. 3. *Segovia*, distant from the former about 30 Leagues, rich in Vines of Silver. 4. *Jame*, (all called according to the names of some Towns in Spain) situate at the end of the Lake aforesaid; from whence by a long and narrow Channel it disembogues into the Sea near the Port of *S. John S. Realto*, about a League distant from the Port of *Porfission*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees and 40 minutes inhabited for the most part by Shipwrights and Mariners. 6. *Nicoya*, giving name to a little Territory, within the bounds whereof standeth, 7. *Aurinas* also. 8. *Cartago*, 40 Leagues from *Nicoya*, equally distant from both Seas, on each of which it hath a convenient Port: this Town is the Principal of that part which is called *Cofsa Rica*.

6. *VERAGUA* hath on the West *Cofsa Rica*; on the East, bounded with the District of *Panamá*; washed on both other sides by the Sea: extended 50 Leagues in

length from West to East; not above 25, where narrowest, from one Sea to the other. The name given to it from the River *Veragua*, of great note in it at the first Discovery.

The Soil hereof is Mountainous and exceeding Barren, not fit for Tillage, and less useful in feeding Cattle; sufficiently provided of Maize and Pot-herbs, but else of little necessary for the life of man, unless the people could eat Silver, or drink *Aurum Potabile*. Of both which Metals, but especially of Gold, here are such never-perishing mines, that the *Spaniards* think them able to supply all Wants, and cure all Diseases. Once being asked what made them so greedy of that Metal, it was answered, That they were much troubled with Grief of Heart, for which Gold was a most sovereign Medicine. And as the Country, such the People, hardy, courageous, and warlike, and such as bear the *Spanish* Yoke with great impatience: the stoutest and most untameable people being bred most commonly in Mountainous and woody Countreys.

Chief Rivers of this little Province, 1. *Veragua* which gives name unto it. 2. *Belen*, by the old Inhabitants called *Tebra*; at the mouth of which *Columbus* purposed to have settled a *Spanish* Colony, for the better transporting of his Gold. But finding that the Channel, on the ceasing of some Rain which had fallen before, was become so shallow that no Ship could go in or out, he gave over that purpose. 3. *La Trinidad*, 4. *La Concepcion*, all falling into *Mar del Noorde*. Their Chief Towns, 1. *Concepcion*, upon the mouth of that River, the Seat of the Governour. 2. *La Trinidad*, on the banks of that River, near the Port of *Belen*, and six Leagues Eastwards of *La Concepcion*. 3. *S. Fe*, (Oppidum *S. Fidei*) twelve Leagues from *Concepcion* on the South; where the *Spaniards* melt and cast their Gold into Bars and Ingots. 4. *Carlos*, not far from the Shores of *Mar del Zur*. 5. *Philippina*, on the West of *Carlos*. Each seated on a large and capacious Bay. Before which Bay lie a Frig of Islands, which the *Spaniards* call *Zebaco*, from the chief amongst them. Thirty in all; the principal, *Zebaco*, *Cabao*, *S. Marie*, *S. Martha*, inhabited in former times, now not much frequented; the people being dragged into the Continent to work in the Mines.

This Countrey oweth its first discovery unto divers men according to the several members and Divisions of it. The last in order being the first that was discovered, but the last that was conquered had the honour to be visited by *Columbus* himself. Who driving up and down these Coasts in the year 1502, hit on the entrances of the River, which afterwards he cauled to be called *Belen*, where, hearing that there was plenty of Gold in the Mines of *Hurira* not far off, he intended to fortifie. But the River failing him, as was said before, and finding nothing fit to sustain his men; he bent himself, though unwillingly, to a farther search. He had before touched upon *Honduras* also, but I find not that he landed on it: the settling of these Countreys being designated to a nother hand. Twenty years after this the most fortunate *Cortez*, having fully quieted and composed the affairs of *Mexico*, resolved to make his Master Lord of the rest of *America*; and to that end sent out his Officers and Commanders into several Parts. By *Pedro de Alvarado* he subdued *Guatimala*; *Hondura*, by *Christopher de Olid*; *Veragua* and *Nicaragua* by *Gonzales de Cordoba*. But fearing lest the conquered Provinces might revolt again, he resolved to visit them in Person. Attended by a choice Band of 150 Horse, and as many Foot, and 3000 *Mexicans*, he began his journey in October 1524, and held on his Progress as far as to *Traxillo*; where finding that *Gonzales de Cordoba* had so

Play'd

Plaid his Game as there was no necessity of going farther, he made a stand, having marched above 400 leagues with his little Army. Returning back another way, in April 1526. he came home to *Mexico*: with whole return we

conclude also our Survey of the Northern Peninsula, containing all *America Septentrionalis*, or *Mexicana*.

And so much for *MEXICANA*.

PERUANA.

PERUANA, the other of the two great Peninsulas, into which the vast Continent of the NEW WORLD doth now stand divided, hath the form of a Pyramid reversed; more auferable thereunto than *Africa*, though that be so resembled. Joyned to the other by a Strait and narrow Isthmus, called the *Streights of Darien*, whereof we shall have opportunity to speak more anon: which looks but like a Stone millaid in so great a Building; or the first step by which we are to climb the top, as in other *Pyramids*.

The name is derived from *Peru*, the chief Province of it: the Circumnavigation said to be 1700 miles. Nothing else to be said in the general, but what will serve more fitly for Particular Places; except it be the description of some Prime Mountains and Principal Rivers, which being of too long a course to be reckoned unto any one Particular Province, may more properly deserve place here. Of these chief are, 1. *Orellana*, or the River of *Amazons*: called by the first name from *Francisco de Orellana*, a *Spaniard*, who first discovered it; by the second, from the *Amazons*, a kind of stout and warlike Women who are said to have inhabited on the Banks thereof. The Fountain of it in *Peru*, the Fall in the North Sea, or *Mar del Noorde*. A River of so long a course, that the said *Orellana* is reported to have failed in it 5000 miles, the several windings and turnings of it being reckoned in: and of so violent a Current, that it is said to keep its natural salt and Colour above 30 miles after it falleth into the Sea; the Channel of it of that breadth, where it leaveth the Land, that it is accounted 60 leagues from one Point to the other. 2. *Orenque*, navigable 1000 miles by Ships of burthen, and 2000 miles by Boats and Pinnaces. Having received into it an hundred Rivers, it openeth into the same Sea with 16 mouths, which part the Earth into many Islands, (some equal to the life of *Wight*;) the most remote of those Channels 300 miles distant from one another. By some it is called *Rialana* from Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who took great pains in the Discovery and Description of it; or rather in discovering it so far as to be able to describe it, 3. *Maragon*, of a longer course than any of the other, affirmed to measure at the least 6000 miles from his first rising to his fall; and at his fall into the Sea to be no less than 70 leagues from one side to the other. More properly to be called a Sea, than many of those great Lakes, or largest Bays, which usually enjoy that name. 4. *Rio de la Plata*, a River of a

less course than the other, but equal unto most in the World besides: in length from its first Fountain 2000 miles, in breadth at his fall into the Sea about 60 leagues; and of so violent a Stream, that the Sea for many leagues together altereth not the taste of it. All these, as they do end their race in the *Atlantic*, so they begin it from the main body of the *Andes*, or at least some spur or branch of that body.

But before we venture farther on more Particulars, we are to tell you of these *Andes*, that they are the greatest and most noted Mountains of all *America*; beginning at *Timana*, a Town of *Papayan*, in the new Realm of *Granada*, and thence extended Southwards to the *Streights of Magellan*, for the space of 1000 leagues and upwards. In breadth about 20 leagues, where they are at the narrowest; and of so vast an height withal, that they are said to be higher than the *Alps*, or the head of *Caucasus*, or any of the most noted Mountains in other parts of the World. Not easie of ascent, but in certain Paths, by reason of the thick and unpaffable Woods, with which covered in all parts thereof which lie towards *Peru* (for how it is on the other side, or by what People it is neighboured, is not yet discovered;) barren and cragged too withal, but so full of venomous Beasts and poisonous Serpents, that they are said to have destroyed a whole Army of one of the Kings of *Peru*, in his march that way. Inhabited by a People as rude and savage as the place, and as little hospitable. The most noted Mountain of *America*, as before was said, and indeed the greatest of the World. Of some sufficient of themselves, not to be treated by the addition of impossible Fictions, or improbable Fictions. Amongst which last I reckon that of *Abraham Ortelius*, a right learned man, who will have these Mountains to be that which the *Scripture* calleth by the name of *Sephar*, Gen. 10. 30. and there affirmed to be the utmost Eastern limit of the Sons of *Japhet*: the vanity and inconsequences of which strange conceit we have already noted, when we were in *India*.

Proceed we now unto the particular Descriptions of this great Peninsula, comprehending those large and wealthy Countries which are known to us by the names of 1. *Cassila Awea*. 2. The new Realm of *Granada*. 3. *Peru*. 4. *Chile*. 5. *Paraguay*. 6. *Brasilia*. 7. *Ghana*, and 8. *Paria*, with their several Islands. Such other Isles as fall not properly and naturally under some of these, must be referred unto the general Head of the *American* Islands, in the close of all.

CASTELLA del ORO.

CASTELLA del ORO, Golden Castile, (*Aurea Castella*, as the *Latines*) is bounded on the East and North with *Mare del Noird*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*, and some part of *Veragua*; on the South, with the new Realm of *Granada*. Call-

ed by the name of *Castile*, with reference to *Castile in Spain*, under the favour and good fortune of the Kings whereof it was first discovered: *Aurea* was added to it, partly for distinction sake, and partly in regard of that plenty of Gold which the first Discoverers found in it. It is also called *Terra Firma*, because one of the first parts of *Firm Land* which the *Spaniards* touched at, having before discovered nothing but some Islands only.

The Soil and People being of such several tempers, as not to be included in one common Character, we will consider both apart in the several Provinces of, 1. *Panama*, 2. *Darien*, 3. *Nova Andaluza*, 4. *S. Martha*, and 5. the little Province *De la Hacha*.

1. *PANAMA*, or the District of *Panama*, is bounded on the East with the Gulf of *Uraba*, by which parted from the Land of this large *Peninsula*; on the West, with *Veragua*, one of the Provinces of *Guatimala* in *Mexicana*, washed on both the other sides with the Sea. So called of *Panama*, the Town of most esteem herein, and the Judicial resort of *Castilla Aurea*.

It taketh up the narrowest part of the Straight or *Isthmus*, which joyns both *Peninsulas* together: not above 7 or 8 Leagues over in the Narrowest place, betwixt *Panama* and *Porto bello*, if measured by a straight line from one Town to the other; though 18 Leagues according to the course of the Road betwixt them, which by reason of the Hills and Rivers is full of turnings. Of some attempts to dig a Channel through this *Isthmus*, to let one Sea into the other, and of the memorable expedition of *John Oxenham* over it by Land, we have spoken already.

The Air hereof is foggy, but exceeding hot, and consequently very unhealthy, chiefly, from *May* unto *November*: the Soil either Mauntainous and barren, or low and miry; naturally so unfit for Grain, that it yieldeth nothing but Maize, and that but sparingly, better for Pasturage, in regard of its Plenty of Grain, and the goodness of it: so full of Swine at the *Spaniards* first coming hither, that they thought they never should destroy them; now they complain as much of their want, or paucity, as for the Inhabitants, whatsoever they were formerly is not now material: most of the old stock rooted out by the *Spaniards*, and no new ones planted in their room; so that the Country in all parts, except towards the Sea, is almost desolated, or forsaken.

The Country, as before was said, of little breadth, and yet full of Rivers: the principal whereof, 1. *Chagre*, by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de Legartos*, or the River of Crocodiles, (many of which are harboured in it) which falleth into *Mare del Noird* betwixt *Nombre de Dios* and *Porto Bello*. 2. *Sardinilla*, 3. *Savaina*, 4. *Rio de Colubor*, or the River of Snakes, and 5. *Rio de Comagre*, all falling into the same Sea. Then on the other side, 6. *Ghepe*, whose Sand in former times yielded plenty of Gold.

7. *Rio de las Balsas*, on the Banks whereof groweth great store of Timber for the building of Ships. 8. *De Congos*, emptying it self into the Bay of *S. Michael*.

Towns of most note, 1. *S. Philip*, seated on a safe and strong Haven, called *Porto bello*: built in this place by the appointment of King *Philip* the second, but by the Council of *John Baptista Antonelli*, to be the Staple of the Trade betwixt *Spain* and *Panama*, partly, in regard of the unhealthyness of *Nombre de Dios*, where it was before; but chiefly, because that Town was found to have been too open to the Invasions of the *English*. Fortified with two strong Castles; (on each side of the Haven one,) but for all that surprized and pillaged by the *English* under Captain *Parker*, in the year 1601. 2. *Nombre de Dios*, conveniently seated in the upper Sea for a Town of Trade; and for that reason made the Staple of such Commodities as were trucked betwixt *Pernu* and *Spain*, which brought from *Spain*, and landed here, were from hence conveyed over the Land to *Panama*, and there shipped for *Pernu* or brought from *Pernu*, and landed at *Panama*, were by Land brought unto this place, and here shipped for *Spain*. It took this name by *Didaco Niquefa*, a Spanish Adventurer, who having been distressed by Tempests was driven in here, and hid his men go on shore in *Nombre de Dios* in the name of God. In reference herunto by the *Latines*, borrowing a Greek word, it is called *Theonymia*. Of great Trade once, on the occasion before mentioned: but in the year 1581, the Trade was removed unto *Porto bello*, by the council of *Antonelli* before named; and some years after that, the Inhabitants also. To hasten which, the taking of this Town by Sir *Francis Drake* served exceeding fitly. 3. *Acla*, on the Coast of the same Sea also, but on the South-east of *Nombre de Dios*. 4. *Nata*, or *S. Jago de Nata*, situate on the lower Sea on the Borders of *Veragua*, about 30 Leagues on the West of *Panama*. 5. *Panama*, the chief City of *Castella Aurea*, the Residence of the Governour and the Courts of Justice, honoured with a Bishops See, a Suffragan to the Arch-bishop of *Lima*, and beautified with three fair Monasteries, and a College of Jesuites. Seated in the 9. degree of Northern Latitude; and so near the Sea that the waves come close unto the Wall. A Town through which the Wealth of *Spain* and *Pernu* passed every year; yet not containing above 350 Houses: the number of the Soldiers greater than that of the Citizens. 6. *S. Cruz la Real*, a League from *Panama*, inhabited totally by *Negroes*, brought out of *Guinea*.

This Province was the first of those on the *Firm Land* which were discovered by *Columbus*. But I find not that he left any name unto it, or to any River or Promontory of it, but only to a little Island lying on the Shore near *Porto bello*, which he caused to be called *Los Bafismientos*, because being cast hereon by chance, he found good store of maiz and other Provisions, called *Bafismientos* by the *Spaniard*. But the chief Islands of this Province are those which *Columbus* never saw, called the *Islands of Pearls*, situate in the Southern Sea, opposite to *Panama*, from which distant 17 Leagues, or thereabouts. In number above twenty, but two only inhabited, the one called

led *Tararequi*, the other *Del Rio*; the rest of them rather Rocks than Islands. Much famed not only for the abundance, but the excellency of the Pearls there found; fairer than those of *Maraguita* and *Cabagua*, so much commended. Once very profitable to the *Spaniards*, till by their cruelty and covetousness they unpeopled the Islands and destroyed the Pearls. Inhabited now only by a few *Negroes*, and some Slaves of *Micragua*, who live here to attend the grazing of their Masters Cattle in the Fields and Pastures.

2. *DARIEN* hath on the North the District of *Panama*; on the South, *New Granada*; on the East, the River of *Darien*, whence it hath its name, and the Gulf of *Uraba*; and on the West, the main Southern Ocean.

The Country is of a temperate Air, and a fruitful Soil: so happy in the production of Melons, and such other Fruits, that within twenty days after they are sown they are fully ripe. With like felicity it bringeth forth Grapes and other Fruits; either natural herunto, or brought hither from *Europe*. A Tree here is called *Hovo*, not elsewhere known; the shade of which is conceived to be so wholesome, that the *Spaniards* seek them out to sleep under them. Out of the Blossoms of it they distill a perfumed Water, of the Bark a Bath or Lavatory good for the opening of the Pores, and redress of Weariness; and from the Roots they draw a Liquor, which they use to drink of. Of Beasts and Fowl great Plenty, whether wild or tame; and some of them not heard of in other places.

Principal Rivers hereof, 1. *Darien*, whence it hath the name. A clear Water, and much drank of, but of a slow course and a narrow Channel; able to bear no bigger Vessels than those of one piece of wood, used among the Savages, we may call them Troughs. But with this flow current it falleth at last into the Gulf of *Uraba*, a large arm of the Sea, which pierceth far into the Land, and at the mouth is said to be eight Leagues over. 2. *Rio de las Redas*, and 3. *De la Trupadera*; both emptying themselves into the Gulf of *Uraba*. 4. *Corobaci*, on the same side of the Country also. 5. *Beri*, a River of the South Sea, not much observable, but that some have laboured to derive the Etymology of *Pernu* from thence.

Towns of most note, though few of any, 1. *Darien*, on the Bank of the Gulf of *Uraba*; oftentimes so unhealthy by the Mists which do thence arise, that the Inhabitants use to send their sick people to the fresh Air of *Corobaci* to revive their spirits. By the *Spaniards* it was called *S. Maria Antiqua*, afterwards the *Antique* of *Darien*, being new built by one *Enciclus* a Spanish Adventurer, Anno 1510, and grew so suddenly into Wealth and Reputation that within four years it was made an Episcopal See. But being built too near the banks of the *Darien*, in a moorish and unhealthy place, both the Episcopal See and the chief Inhabitants were removed to *Panama*. Some other Colonies of the *Spaniards* have been planted here; but either forsaken by themselves, or destroyed by the Savages; so that now from *Acla* to the bottom of the Gulf of *Uraba*, the *Spaniards* have not in their own hands either Town or Village. Nothing but some few scattered houses in all that Tract, for the use of the Natives; who formerly made their Nests like Birds on the tops of Trees. 2. *Bizu*. 3. *Los Anadefes*; two small Villages on the other side of the Country, possessed by the Savages. Besides these, and some sorry Sheds here and there dispersed, all the rest is a Desert. So that not being able to maintain the reputation of a distinct Province, the Government hereof hath of late been devolved on the Prefect of *Panama*.

3. *NOVA ANDALUZIA* hath on the West the River *Darien*, and the Gulf of *Uraba*; on the East, the Province of *S. Martha*; on the North, the main O-

cean; and on the South, the *New Realm of Granada*. So called with reference to *Andaluza*, a Province of *Spain*. Called also by some Writers *Carthagena*, from *Carthago* now the chief City of it.

It is in length, from the Gulf of *Uraba* to the River of *Magdalen*, 10 Leagues, and near upon as much in breadth. Mountainous, and very full of Woods, but in those Woods great store of Rosin, Gums, and some kinds of Balsams. Here is also said to be a Tree which whosever toucheth, is in danger of poisoning. The Soil, by reason of the abundance of Rain which falls upon it, very moist and fenny; inasmuch that few of our *European* Fruits have prospered in it. Few Veins of Gold in all the Country, except only in that part hereof which is called *Zona*; where the *Spaniards* at their first coming found great store of Treasure. But it was taken out of the Graves and Monuments of the Dead, not found in Mines, nor digged for, as in other places: such being the Reputation of that Territory in former time, that the Nations far and near did carry the Bodies of their Dead to be buried in it, with great quantity of Gold, Jewels, and other Riches. The Natives very fierce and stout, whilst they were a People; But giving the *Spaniards* many overthrowes before fully conquered, they have been so consumed and wasted by little and little, that there are not many of them left.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *Rio de las Redas*, and 2. *Rio de los Anades*, both falling into the Bay of *Uraba*. 3. *Zadu*, which passing through the Province above-mentioned, to which it gives name, falleth into the Ocean over against the Island *Fuerte*. 4. *S. Martha*, of long course and much estimation. For rising in the most Southern parts of the *New Realm of Granada*, near the *Equinoctial*, it passeth through the whole length of that Kingdom, and at last minglesh its stream with that of the River *Magdalen*, not far from *Aposol*. By the Natives it is called *Cauca*. And as for Mountains, those of most note are a continual ridge of Hills, by the *Spaniards* called *Coradilla*, by the Natives *Abibe*; craggy and difficult of ascent; in breadth affirmed to be 20 Leagues, but the length uncertain, the farthest ends of them towards the South not discovered hitherto.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Carthagena*, situate in a sandy *Peninsula*, ten degrees distant from the *Equator*: well built, and for the bigness of it of great Wealth and State; consisting of 500 Houses, or thereabout, but those neat and handsome. Beautified with a Cathedral Church, three Monasteries, and one of the best Havens of all America. Well fortified on both sides, since the taking of it by Sir *Francis Drake*, who in the year 1585 took it by Assault, and carried thence, besides inestimable sums of money, 240 Bras pieces of Ordnance. 2. *Tolu*, by the *Spaniards* called *S. Jago*, twelve Miles from *Carthagena*: memorable for the most sovereign Balsam of all these parts, called the Balsam of *Tolu*; little inferior, if at all, to the Balsam of *Egypt*. 3. *Mopox*, or *Santa Cruz de Aposol*, near the Confluences of the Rivers of *Martha* and *Magdalena*. 4. *Baranca de Melambo*, on the Banks of the River *Magdalen*, fix Leagues from the Ocean, where such Commodities as are brought by Sea for the *New Realm of Granada* use to be unshipped, and carried by Lighter or small Boats up to the River. 5. *Schiffia de Buenavista*, built by *Alonso de Ordez*, Anno 1508, in the first Attempt upon this Country, situate on a rising ground, near the mouth of the Bay of *Uraba*, a League and a half from the Sea. 6. *Villa de Maria*, 30 Leagues South of *Carthagena*, but of no great note.

4. *S. MARTHA* hath on the West *Nova Andaluza*; on the East, *Rio de la Hacha*; on the North the main Ocean; on the South the *New Realm of Granada*: about 70 Leagues in length, and as much in breadth.

breadth. So called from *S. Martha* the chief City of it. The Country is Mountainous and barren, not fit for Pasturage or Tillage; productive notwithstanding of Limons, Oranges, Pomegranates, and such other Fruits as are brought hither out of *Spain*. The Air on the Sea-coasts very hot and scalding, and in the mid-land parts as cold, because of the neighbourhood of some Mountains always covered with Snow. The principal of those Mountains, a long ridge of Hills, by the *Spaniards* called *Las Sierras Nievadas*, or the Snowy Mountains; discernable by the Mariners 30 Leagues at Sea, by whom called the Mountains of *Tairona*, from a Valley of that name beneath them, the Inhabitants whereof, by the advantage of those hills, have hitherto preserved their liberty against the *Spaniards*. The rest, though subject to the *Spaniards*, have their several Kings, affirmed to be an arrogant and ill-natur'd people, made worse perhaps than indeed they are, by reason of their hate to the *Spaniards*, whose Government they live under with great unwillingness.

Chief Rivers of this Province are, 1. *Rio Grande de la Magdalena*, which hath its Fountain in the Hills of the *New Realm of Granada*, not far from the *Equator*, but its fall into the Ocean betwixt *Cartagena* and *S. Martha*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees; where dividing it self, it maketh an Island of 5 Leagues long, and after openeth into the Sea with two wide mouths; discernable for ten Leagues space from the rest of the Main by the taft and colour of the Water. 2. *Rio de Cayze*, which falleth into the *Magdalen*; as doth also 3. *Cefn*; by the Natives called *Pompator*; which having its Fountain near the City of *Kings*; in the Vail of *Upur*, passeth directly towards the South; till it meet with 4. *Ayumar*, another River of this Tract; accompanied with whom he runneth Westward for the space of 70 Leagues, and endeth in the great River of *Magdalen*, as before is said, near the Forest of *Alpuerte*. 5. *Bubia*. 6. *Piras*. 7. *Don Diego*. 8. *Palamini*. 9. *Gayza*, falling into the Ocean.

Towns of most observation. 1. *S. Martha*, situate on the Shores of the Ocean, in the latitude of ten degrees and 30 minutes: neighboured by a safe and convenient Haven, defended from the Winds by an high Mountain near unto it, and honoured with an Episcopall See. Small, and ill built when it was at the best; not well recovered of the Spoil it suffered by Sir Francis Drake, Anno 1595. and by Sir Anthony Shirley, the next year after. 2. *Tenariffe*, on the banks of the *Magdalen*, 40 Leagues from *S. Martha*. 3. *Tenalamague*, by the *Spaniards* called *Villas de las Palmas*, 20 Leagues to the South of *Tenariffe*. 4. *Ciudad de los Reyes*, or the City of Kings, situate in the Vale of *Upur*, on the Banks of a deep and violent River, called *Guataperi*, which not far off falleth into the *Cefar*: ill neighboured by the Inhabitants of the Vale of *Tairona*, not hitherto reduced under the command of the Kings of *Spain*. 5. *Ramada*, by the *Spaniards* called *New Salamanca*, in the same Valley of *Upur*; as liberally furnished with Veins of Brass, as it is with Stones. 6. *O-*

cama, on the Western Reach of the River *Cefar*, equally distant from its Confluence with *Ayumar*, and its fall into *Magdalen*.

5. *RIO DE LA HACHA* is the name of a little Province lying on the North-east of *S. Martha*, environed on two sides with the main Ocean, and on the third (which is that of the East) with a large and spacious Arm of the Sea called *Golfo de Venezuela* the extremities hereof of North-west, called *Cabola Vela*; on the North-east, *Cabo di Coguibocoa*.

It took this name from the Town and River of *La Hacha*, a small Town, confisting of no more than an hundred Houses, but big enough to give name to so small a Province; built on a little Hill about a Mile from the Sea: the Haven inconvenient, and exposed to the Northern Winds, but the Soil about very rich, fruitful of all such Plants as are brought from *Spain*, well stored with Veins of Gold, excellent Salt-wiches and some Gems of great worth and virtue. Distant eight Leagues from *New Salamanca*, and 18. Leagues from the *Cape la Vela*: surprized and sacked by Sir Francis Drake, Anno 1595. 2. *Rancheria*, fix Leagues on the East of *De la Hacha*, inhabited for the most part by such as get their living by Pearl-fishing. 3. *Topia*, five Leagues from *La Hacha*, and almost as much from the Sea: the fields whereof lying betwixt the Town and *New Salamanca* were terribly wasted by the English in the year afore said, because the Governor of *New Salamanca*, with whom they had contracted for 4000 Ducats not to burn that Town, would not stand to his Bargain.

These Countries, discovered by *Columbus*, and by him called *Terra Firma*, as before was said, were afterwards brought under the power of *Spain*, by two several men, employed in the subduing of their several parts, Anno 1508. To *Didaco Niquefa* was allotted the Government and Conquest of those parts hereof which lie on the West of the Bay of the *Orubas*, containing the Prefectures of *Darien* and *Panama*, by the name of *Castilla del Oro*; and to *Alfonso Oidea*, all that lay on the East of that Gulf, by the name of *Nova Andalusia*. But these two finished not the work, though they first began it: *Enicifus* discovering farther on the River of *Darien* than *Niquefa* had done before him; and *Balboa* finding out the way to the South-Sea, where *Panama* and the best of their trading lieth, which neither of the other had thought upon. Both afterwards joyned into one Province, the Prefectures of *S. Martha*, and *Rio de la Hacha* (when conquered and subdued by the *Spaniards*) being added to it. One of their last Kings which held out against the *Spaniards* was called *Abibela*, who had his Palace on the top of a Tree, (as most of his Subjects had their Houses;) from which when *Rhetoricus de Vasquez*, a *Spanish* Captain could by no other Rhetoric win him to defend, he laid his Axe to the Root, and began to fell it: which seen, the poor Prince was fain to come down, and compound both for his Life and Palace at the will of his Enemies.

OF

NOVA GRANADA:

NOVA GRANADA, or the New Realm of *Granada*, is bounded on the North with *Castilla Aurea*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, with *Venezuela*. The Countries lying on the South, are not yet discovered, shut up with vast Hills, and impassable Mountains, except only in those Parts which lie near the Sea, where the way lieth open to *Pernu*. Thus called by *Gonsalvo Ximenez*, the first Discoverer; who, being a Native of *Granada* in *Spain*, gave this name unto it.

It is in length 130 Leagues, and as much in Breadth; reckoning *Papayana* for a part of it, though by some made a distinct Government. So that we may divide the whole into these two parts, 1. *Granada* specially so called, lying on the West; and 2. *Papayana*, lying towards *Mare del Zur*.

1. *GRANADA*, specially so called, hath an Air for the most part well tempered betwixt heat and cold; with little difference (if any) betwixt Summer and Winter, and not much in the length and shortness of dayes. The Country is full of Woods, but of great fertility, well stored with Corn and Pasturage, many Herds of Cattle, some Veins of Gold and other Metals, and in that part hereof which is called *Tunia*, great plenty of Emeralds: and amongst their Woods, that called *Guaicum*, medicinal for the French Disease, grows in great abundance. The People are tall and strong of Body, not very indolent, the greatest part of their time being spent in Songs and Dances. The Women of a white and more clear Complexion than any of their Neighbours, and more handsomely habited, apparelled in black or Parti-coloured Mantles girt about their middles, their Hair tied up, and covered most an end with Chaplets intermixt with Flowers, and artificially combed.

Rivers of note I find not any, but those of *S. Martha* and *S. Magdalen*, described before: nor any distinction of it into several Provinces; but by the names of *Tunia*, *Bagota*, *Panchez*, *Colyme*, and *Adusi*, by which the Savages were distinguished when first known to the *Spaniards*; with reference to which the Principal of their Towns are by some described.

Towns then of greatest note, 1. *S. Foy de Bagota*, but commonly *S. Foy* the Metropolis of this new Realm, the See of an Archbishop, and the Seat of the Governor. Built by *Gonsalvo Ximenez de Quisada*, at the foot of the Mountains, not far from the Lake of *Guatavita*, on the banks of which they used to sacrifice to their Idols. The Town inhabited by 600 Families of *Spaniards*, besides those of the Natives; and situate in the fourth degree of Northern Latitude. 2. *S. Michael*, 12 Leagues on the North of *S. Foy*, a well traded Market. 3. *Toycama*, in the Territory of the *Panchez*, a barbarous and man-eating People, till reclaimed by the *Spaniards*; and Masters of the richest part of all the Country. The Town is about 15 Leagues from *S. Foy*, toward the North-east; and seated on the banks of *Paiti*, a little River, which not far off is swallowed up in the

O F.

body of *Magdalen*. 4. *Tudela* in the Country of the *Musi* and *Colyme*, two warlike Nations; situate on the banks of the River *Zarbi*, and made a Colony of the *Spaniards* at their first coming hither; but deserted by them not long after, for fear of the Savages, though the want of Provisions was pretended. 5. *Trinidad*, on the same River, but somewhat lower, and more remote from the Savages, by them notwithstanding much annoyed: the Fields thereof full of Veins of Crystal, Emeralds, Adamants, and Chalcedonies. 6. *La Palma*, built by the *Spaniards* in the same Territory of the *Musi* and *Colyme*, Anno 1572. 7. *Tunia*, so called according to the name of the Tribe or Province in which it is situate; built on the top of an high Hill, that it might serve for a Retreat and Fortrefs against the Savages; now a well-traded Empory, and very wealthy, the Inhabitants being able to impress 280 Horse for present service. 8. *Pampelona*, 60 Leagues from *S. Foy*, toward the North-east, rich in Mines of Gold, and Herds of Cattle. 9. *Merida*, on the North of *Pompiana*, the farthest Town of all this Province, on the North-east towards *Venezuela*: as 10. *S. John de las Platas*, or *S. John* upon the Plains, is in the South-east, 40 Leagues from *S. Foy*, and seated in a corner full of Veins of Gold.

2. *POPAYANA* lieth on the West of *New Granada* strictly and specially so called; from which parted by the River *Martha*, which hath its original in this Country: on the North bounded with *Nova Andalusia*, or *Cartagena*; and with *Mare del Zur* upon the West. Extended in length from North to South 130 Leagues at the least; and from the River to the Sea betwixt 30 and 40.

The Country over-cloy'd with Rain, breeds but little Maize, less Wheat, and almost no Cattle; though in some places richer then it is in others. The People anciently Man-eaters, and as rude as any; now more industrious and affable than the other *Americans*, especially about *Papayana*, where the Soil is also better tempered then in other places. The Rivers of most note, beside that of *S. Martha*, which we have spoken of already, and some lesser streams which fall into it are 1. *Rio de S. Juan*. 2. *Rio de Cedros*. 3. *Rio de S. Jago*; all falling into *Mare del Zur*.

Cities and Towns of greatest note, 1. *Papayana*, called by the name of the King hereof, when first known to the *Spaniards*; situate on a nameless, but pleasant River, in the midst of a Plain, of great Wealth and healthy Air in two degrees and 30 Minutes of Northern Latitude; the ordinary residence of the Governor, and the See of a Bishop. The Building fair unto the Eye, but slight; excepting the Cathedral, and a Monastery of the Friars called *De Mercede*, which are strong and lasting. 2. *Atriocha*, (or *Santa fides de Antiochia*) on the borders of *Nova Andalusia*, 100 Leagues distant from *Papayana*; Seated upon a little River which falls into the *Martha* from which twelve Leagues distant. 3. *Caramanta*, on the *Martha* it self. 4. *Paiti*, in a pleasant Valley, on the banks of a small River, but of excellent water. 5. *S. Anne*,

U u u u u 2

in

in the *Centred of Anzerman*, by which name it is sometimes called: built on a little Hill betwixt two sweet Rivers, and compalled round about with a Grove of most pleasant Fruits. 6. *S. Jago de Armas*, the chief Town of the *Centred of Armas*, situate on a Territory very rich in Gold, but otherwise unprovided of all manner of necessities; fifty Leagues to the North-east of *Popayan*. 7. *Caribage*, in the Province of *Quimbria*, 22 Leagues from *S. Jago de Armas*; seated in a Plain betwixt two Torrents, seven Leagues from the River of *S. Mariba*. 8. *Cali*, a League from that River, but on the Banks of another, in the Latitude of four degrees: neighboured by a vast and mighty Mountain, at whose feet it standeth; there built by *Sebastian de Betalcazar*, the first Discoverer of this Countrey. 9. *Bonaventura*, on a Bay so called in the Southern Ocean; a small Town, but of great use for the ready conveyance of the Commodities of *New Spain* unto *Popayan*, and to other Towns of this Province. 10. *Timana*, 80 Leagues from *Popayan* towards the East; at the foot of that vast ridge of Mountains called the *Andes*; which hereabouts taking their beginning, extend as far Southwards as to the Straights of *Magellan*. 11. *S. Juan de Pajto*, situate in a pleasant Valley, but one degree from the *Equator*. 12. *Sebastian de la Plata*, so called from its Silver Mines in the South-east confines of the Province. 13. *Almagra*, on the sides of a Plain, but barren Mountain. 14. *Madrigal*, by the Natives called *Chapait Chien*; in a barren Soil, were not Gold a Supplement of all wants, which is there found in some abundance.

To this Province belong also some Islands in the Southern Ocean: that is to say, 1. The Isle of *Palmer*, South of the Cape of *Corientes*, so called from the abundance of Palms which are growing in it. 2. *Gorgona*, opposite to the mouth or Outlet of *Rio de S. Juan*, an Island of three Leagues in compass; the Hills so high, the Valleys so extremely low, the Sun so little seen amongst them, and the Woods so dark, that some have likened it to Hell. Not much observable, but that it did afford a lurking-place unto *Francis Pizarro* in his attempts upon *Peru*, when repulled from landing on that Coast. 3. *Es-Gallo*, a small Island, not a League in Circuit, on the South of *Gorgona*.

This whole Country thus divided into two Prefectures, but both subordinate to the Juridical Reform in the City of *S. Foy de Bagota*, is indebted for its first Discovery to two several persons. *Granada* specially so called

was first discovered by *Gonsalvo Ximenez de Quesada*, employed therein by *Ferdinando de Lugo*, Admiral of the *Canary Islands*, Anno 1536. who passing up the River of *Magdalen* without molestation (more than the difficulties of the ways through Fens and Forrefts) as far as the *Centred of Bagota*, was there encountered by that King, whom he easily vanquished, and waiving all his Territories, carried with him thence great quantity of Gold, Emeralds, and other Treasure. The residue of those Petit Princes, which then Governed in their several Tribes; either submitted to him without opposition, or else were vanquished at the first rising. Having discovered and subdued every several Province, and miserably murdered *Sangia* the last King of *Bagota*; of whom he had made use in subduing the *Pancheti*; he caused it to be called the *New Realm of Granada*, for the reason formerly laid down: and summing up the Spoils he had gotten in this case War, he found them to amount to 18000 Emralds, 191294 *Pezos* of the finest Gold, 35000 of a coarser and inferior Allay. In his return, he heard the news of *Sebastian de Betalcazar's* marching on the other side of the River of *S. Mariba*; who having at the same time discovered and subdued the Province of *Popayan*, was beating out his way towards the North-Sea, and from thence to *Spain*. This *Betalcazar*, being by *Francisco Pizarro*, the Conquerour of *Peru*, made Governour of the Town and Province of *Quito*, and having secured all the Country to the very Sea, resolved to open a way homewards through those Regions, which lay betwixt his own Province and *Mare del Noord*. And this he did resolve the rather, in regard that he had been informed, that a rich Countrey, full of Gold, was to that Tract Possessed by *Popayan* and *Columbax*, two petit Princes, but yet the greatest in those parts. Encountred in his march by the Royelets of *Paia* and *Pajto*, he soon made them weary, and retire themselves into the Woods and impassable Mountains; and passing slowly on, came at last to *Popayan*. Where, though the Savages entertained him with some frequent Skirmishes, yet they grew quieter by degrees; giving the *Spaniards* leave to possess themselves of their best Towns, and to build others in such place as they thought convenient. But this was after the first Conquest, according to the coming over of succeeding Colonies. The first Conquest being finished Anno 1536, when the *New Realm of Granada* was subdued by *Ximenez*.

O F

P E R U.

PERU is bounded on the East with that vast ridge of Mountains which they call the *Andes*; on the West with *Mare del Zur*; on the North with *Popayan*, an Appendix of the *New Realm of Granada*; on the South, with *Chile*. So called from the River *Peru*, which being one of the first of

Note which the *Spaniards* met with in this Country, occasioned them to give that name to the whole.

It is in length from North to South 700 Leagues, but the breadth not equal. In some Places 100 Leagues broad, in others 60, in the rest but 40; more or less, ac-

ording to the windings of the Seas and Mountains. Divided commonly into three parts, all of so different a nature from one another, as if they were far distant both in Site and Soil. These parts are, the Plains, the Hill-Countries, and the *Andes*; the Plains extend on the Seashore, in all places level without Hills; the *Andes*, a continual ridge of Mountains without any Valleys; the *Sierra*, or Hill-Countries, composed of both. Each part stretcheth out from North to South, the whole length of the Country: the Plains from the Sea-shore to the Hill Countries, for the most part ten Leagues broad, in some places more; the Hill Countries 20 Leagues in breadth, where

where narrowest, and as much the *Andes*. In the Plains it never raineth, on the *Andes* continually in a manner; in the Hill Countries it raineth from September to April, being after that fair weather. In the Hill-Country the Summer beginneth in April, and endeth in September; in the Plains their Summer beginneth in October, and endeth in April. So that a man may travel from Summer to Winter in one day, be frozen in the morning at his setting forth, and scorched with heat before he come to his journey's end. Some other differences there are: as that the *Andes* are covered with Woods and Forrefts, whereas the Hill-Countries are bare and naked; the Plains, where there are store of Rivers, and the benefit of the Sea besides, fuddy and dry, and in most places destitute both of Fruits and Corn: in some parts of the Hill-Countries, where there are no Rivers, and Rain but seldom, plenty of Roots, Maize, Fruits, and all other necessities. In the Plains there never bloweth any but the Southerly Wind, though it bring no Rain with it, and in the Hills Winds from every Coast, and of every nature; some bringing Rain, some Snow, some claps of Thunder, and others fair Weather at the heels of them. Inso much that it is observed, that such of the Inhabitants of the Plains as go up to the *Sierra*, or Mountains, do find such pains in the Head and Stomach, as Freshwater Soldiers when first Sea-sick.

Not to pursue these differences any further in the several parts, we will look upon the whole in grofs; which we shall find but mealy furnished for the bigness with those Commodities which so large a Country might afford: inso much as many of the people live most on Roots, here being little Wheat, and not such quantities of Maize (the ordinary Bread-grain of the Americans) as to serve their multitudes. Nor find I, that the Cattel of *Europe* have been either brought higher in any great numbers, or are grown to any great increase. Instead of which they have in their Woods and Pastures infinite numbers of Beasts, somewhat like wild Goats (which they call *Picagones*) and great store of a kind of Sheep, by them called *Pacos*, profitable both for Fleeces and Burthen; as big as a small breed of Horses, but in taste as pleasing as our Mutton and no less nourishing. A Creature so well acquainted with its own abilities, that when he findeth himself over-loaded, no blows or violence shall make him move a foot forwards, till his load be lessened; and off so cheap a Diet, that he is content with very little, and sometimes passeth three whole days without any water. The Camels of these parts are not much unlike them.

This, as it is by some accounted for a Creature proper to this Country only, (though in that mistaken) so may it pass among the Rarities hereof: many of which it hath both in Beasts and Plants, and in inanimate Bodies also. Among their Plants they have a Fig-tree, the North-part whereof, looking towards the Mountains bringeth forth its fruits in the Summer only, the Southern part looking to the Sea, fruitful only in Winter. Some as deservedly do account the *Coca* for a Wonder, the Leaves whereof being dried and formed into Lozenges, (or little Pellets) are exceeding useful in a Journey. For melting in the mouth, they satisfy both hunger and thirst, and preserve a man in strength, and his spirits in vigour; and generally are esteemed of such sovereign use, that it is thought that 100000 Baskets full of the leaves of this Tree are sold yearly at the Mines of *Potosi* only, each of which at the Markets of *Cusco* would yield 12 pence or 18 pence a piece. Another Plant they tell us of, but I find no name for it, which if put into the hands of a sick person, will instantly discover whether he be like to live or die. For if on the pressing of it in his hand he look merry and cheerful, it is an assured sign of his Recovery: as

on the other side, of Death if sad and troubled. Amongst their Beasts, besides those spoke of before, they reckon that which they call the *Huanaco*: of which it is observed, that the Males stand Sentinel on the Mountains, while the Females are feeding in the Valleys; and if they see any men coming towards them, they set out their throats, to give their Females notice of some danger near; whom, when they come up to them, they put in the Front of the Retreat, interposing their own bodies betwixt them and their Enemy. Nor want they Rarities of Nature even in things inanimate: here being said to be a round Lake near the Mines of *Potosi*, whose water is so hot, though the Country it self be exceeding cold, that they who bathe themselves are not able to endure the heats thereof, if they go but a little from the Banks; there being in the middle thereof a boiling of above twenty foot square. A Lake which never doth decrease, though they have drawn a great stream from it to serve their Metal-Mills.

More profitable, though less rare, are those Metals which those Mills are made for; and not less profitable, one of those Vulgar Plants, I mean Tobacco, growing more abundantly here than in other Countries of *America*: for which cause, and the resemblance which it hath to *Hembane* in form and quality, it is called the *Hembane of Peru* by *Gervard*, and some other of our Modern Herbalists. A Plant, which (though in some respect, being moderately taken, it may be serviceable for Physick, yet) besides the consumption of the purse, and impairing of our inward parts, the immoderate, vain and phantastical abuse of this stinking Weed, corrupteth the natural sweetness of the breath, stupifieth the Brain; and indeed is so prejudicial to the general esteem of our Country-men, that one faith of them; *Anglorum corpora, qui hinc plenis tantopere indulgent, in Barbarorum naturam degenerasse videntur*. The two chief Virtues ascribed unto it, (pardon me I beseech you this short Digression) are, that it voideth Rheum; and is found to be a sovereign Antidote against *Lues Venerea*, that loathsome Disease of the French Pox. For this last, like enough it is, that so unclean a Disease may be helped with such an unfavourable Medicine. But for the first, it may perhaps consist more in Opinion than truth or reality; the Rheum, which it is said to void, being no more than what it breedeth at the present. We may as well conclude, that Bottled Ale is good for the breaking of Wind, (which effect we find commonly to follow on the drinking of it) though indeed it be only the same Wind which it self conveyeth into the Stomach. But Tobacco is by few now taken as Medicinal; it is of late times grown a good fellow, and fallen from a Physician to a Complement. An Humour which had never spread so far amongst us, if the same means of prevention had been used by the Christian Magistrates, as was by *Morabasso* amongst the *Turks*; who commanded a Pipe to be thrust through the nose of a *Turk*, whom he found taking Tobacco, and him to be carried in derision all about *Constantinople*. It is observed, that the taking of Tobacco was first brought into England by the Mariners of Sir *Francis Drake*, Anno 1583, and that it happened not unfitly in the way of an Antidote to that immoderate use of Drinking, which our Low-Country Soldiers had brought out of the *Netherlands* much about that time, Anno 1582. Before which time, the English of all Northern people were deemed to be most free from that Swinish vice, wherein it is to be feared, that they have much out-gone their Teachers, the *Dutch*. Certain it is, that it is taken so excellently by both these Nations, that I may justly say with a learned *Flaming*, *Herba ejus, non dicam usus, sed abusus, non modo in Anglia, sed in Belgio, & alibi, insensum in modum jam adolevit*.

But the greatest Riches of this Country is most out of sight

fight, hid in the Bowels of the Earth, but found in those never-decaying Mines of Gold and Silver, more eminently abounding in this one Province than in all *America*. For instance whereof we may take the Silver-Mines of *Potosí*, discovered in the year 1545, the fifth of which, payable into the King's Exchequer, amounted in forty years to 111 Millions of *Pezos*, every *Peso* being valued at six shillings and six pence: and yet a third part of the whole was discharged of that payment. By this one we may guess somewhat of the rest, as by the proportion of one member the Dimensions of the whole Body may be probably aimed at: unless the riches of these Mines be beyond conjecture; of which it is affirmed by some knowing men, that they yield in many places more Gold than Earth. Upon which ground it is conceived by *Arim Mamama*, and some other very learned men, that this *Peru* is that Land of *Ophir* to which *Solomon's* Navy went for Gold; induced thereto by that Text of the *Chronicles*, *lib. 2. cap. 3. vers. 6. That the Gold was the Gold of Parvaim*. A fancy not of so fandy a Foundation as many others of that kind, if *Peru* had been the old name of this Country, and not newly given it by the *Spaniards*. By means whereof, not only *Spain* but all *Europe* also is better furnished with Gold and Silver than ever formerly. For in the first Ages of the World our Ancestors, the *Britains*, (I must digress here once again) had no other money than Iron-Rings and Brass-Rings, which they used for Instruments of Exchange; and in the *Roman* Provinces, we read that the most usual materials of their Coin was most times Brass, and sometimes Leather. *Corium formâ publicâ percussum*, as it is in *Seneca*. Of which last sort we find, that *Frederick* the Emperor made use at the Siege of *Milain*, and the *English* in the time of the Barons Wars. And why not so? considering that no longer since than in the year 1574, the *Hollanders* being then reduced to some Extremities made money of Pall-board. But this happeneth only in cases of Necessity, the two Metals of Gold and Silver having for many hundred years (though not in such abundance as in later times) been the chief Instruments of Exchange and Barter betwixt man and man, and questionless will so continue to the end of the World. I know *St Thomas More* in the second Book of his *Utopia*, preferreth Iron before Gold, because more necessary for all uses; *Ut sine quo non magis quam sine igne aqua vivere Mortales queant*: and that he giveth us there a Plot to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, telling us how the *Utopians* use to employ those Metals in making Chamber-pots and Vessels of more unclean necessities, eating and drinking for the most part in Glais or Earth. He telleth us also how they make Chains and Fetters of Gold to hold in their rebellious Slaves and Malefactors; how they Punish infamous Persons by putting Gold-Rings upon their Fingers, Jewels of Gold in their Ears, and Chains of Gold about their Necks: how they adorn their little Children with precious Jewels, which Gayeties, when they come to Age, and see them worn by none but such little Children, they use to cast away of their own accord; as with us our elder Boys, leave off without constraint, their Babies, Cobnuts and other *Crepundia*. He farther telleth us, how the Ambassadors of the *Anemoli*, (a confederate State of the *Utopians*) coming amongst them richly and gloriously attired, were took for Slaves, by reason of their Golden Chains, and the meanness of their followers thought to be the Ambassadors, as the elder Boys derided the Strangers for wearing Jewels, as if they had been Children still; and how the people laughed at their Chains of Gold, as being too weak to shackle such sturdy Fellows. Now though it pleased that wise State to have any Gold or Sil-

ver at all amongst them, it was not (as he telleth us) out of any esteem which themselves had of it; but therewith to provide themselves of Foreign Aids, and pay their Armies, when the necessities of their Affairs or other reason of State did require the same. How this Device would fort with the humours of those People whom *Lucian* anciently did fable, and some of later times more really do fancy, to have their dwelling in the Moon, I am not able to say, as having hitherto had no Commerce nor correspondence with the Inhabitants thereof: though possibly I may endeavour it in the end of this Book, and find it to fort well enough with their Condition. Certain I am, this sublimary World of ours will never brook it. And so I leave it, and look back again on the Mines of *Peru*: the extraordinary plenty of Gold and Silver, which those and the rest of the *New World* have furnished the Old World withal, being conceived by many knowing and judicious men to be the cause of the dearth of all Commodities at the present times, compared unto the cheapness of the times foregoing. For where much is, there will be greater prices given than in other places. And yet there want not some that add also other causes of the high prices of our days, *viz.* Monopolies, Combinations of Merchants and Crafts-men, Transportation of Grain, pleasure of great Personages, the excess of private men, and the like: but these last I rather take to be Con-causes, the first being indeed the principal. For (as that excellent Sir *Henry Savil* hath it in the end of his notes on *Tacitus*) the excessive abundance of *τὸ νέμειν ὅντα*, things which consist merely on the Constitution of men, draweth necessarily *τὸ φθίνειν ὅντα*, those things which Nature requireth, to an higher Rate in the Market. *Capit ab Augusto Alexandria, (faith Orsius)* *Roma intantum opibus ejus crevit, ut dupla majora quam antebac rerum venditionum pretia statueretur*. As for that Question, Whether of the two Kingdoms be happier, that which supplieth it self with Money by Traffick and the works of Art, or that which is supplied by Mines growing as the gift of Nature; I find it by this Tale in part resolved. Two Merchants, departing from *Spain* to get Gold, touched upon part of *Barbary*, where the one buying *Moor*s to dig and delve with, the other fraughteth his Vessel with Sheep, and being come to the *Indies*, the one finding Mines for his Slaves to work; and the other happening in grassy Ground, put his Sheep to grazing. The Slaves grown cold and hungry call for Food and Cloathing; which the Sheep-master by the increase of his stock had in great abundance: so that what the one got in Gold with toil, charges, and hazard both of life and health, he gladly gave unto the other in Exchange or Bartery, for the continual supply of Victuals, Clothes, and other Necessaries for himself and his Servants. In the end the Mines being exhausted, and all the money thence arising exchanged with the Shepherd for such Necessaries as his Wants required, home comes the Shepherd in great Triumph with abundance of Wealth, his Companion bringing nothing with him but the Tale of his Travels. But I dare not take upon me to determine this point. Only I add, that the *English* and *Hollanders*, by the benefit of their Manufactures and continual Traffick, did in conclusion weary the late King of *Spain*, King *Philip* the Second, and outwitted him (as it were) in Wealth and Treasure; notwithstanding his many Mines of Gold and Silver in *Barbary*, *India*, *Mexicana*, *Guinea*, some in *Spain* and *Italy* and thence of *Peruvia* which now we handle, and which have given occasion unto this Discourse, or Digression rather.

It is now time to take a view of the People also, affirmed to be (for the most part) of great simplicity yet some of them (those specially which lie near the *Equa-*

tor) to be great dissemblers, and never to discover their conceptions freely. Ignorant of Letters, but of good courage in Wars, well skilled in managing such Weapons as they had been used to, and fearless of Death: the rather prompted to this last by an old opinion held amongst them, that in the other world they shall eat, and drink, and make love to Women. And therefore commonly at the Funeral of any great person, who was attended on in his life, they use to kill and bury with him one or more of his Servants, to wait upon him after death. In the manner of their living much like the *Jews*, but not in Habit: conforming therein to the other Savages, but that those cover their upper parts with some decent Garment, and leave the other members bare. But this is only near the *Aequator*; both Sexes elsewhere wearing Mantles to their very Heels. Habited in one fashion over all the Country, except the dressing of their Heads, wherein scarce any one doth agree with another, but hath his Fashion to himself. The Women less esteemed here than in other places, treated as Slaves, and sometimes cruelly beaten upon slight occasions: the men (as *S. Paul* faith of the ancient Gentiles) leaving the natural use of the Woman, and burning in their lust towards one another. For which, if God delivered them into the hands of the *Spaniards*, they received that recompence which was meet.

Rivers of most note, 1. *S. Jago*, on the borders towards *Papayana*, a River of a violent course, and so great a depth, that it is 180 Fathoms deep at the influx of it. 2. *Tombes*, opening into a fair and capacious Bay, over against the Isle of *Puna*, on the further side of the *Aequator*, an Island of twelve Leagues in compass, and exceeding fruitful. 3. *Guayaquil*, of a longer course than any of the other two, and falling into *Mare del Zur*, on the South of *Tombes*, over against the Isle of *Lobos*. No Island after this of note upon all this Coast. If any come in our way which runneth towards the East, we shall meet with them in view of the several Provinces; and so we shall with the Hills or Mountains which are most considerable: the *Andes* having been already touched on. Take we now notice of the great Lake of *Titicaca*, in which twelve Rivers are reported to lose themselves; in compass 80 Leagues, and usually navigable with Ships and Barks. The Waters of it not so salt as those of the Sea, but so thick that no body can drink them; yet on the banks of it many Habitations as good as any in *Peru*. By a fair Water-course or River it passeth into a less Lake, which they call *Alajaga*; and thence most probably findeth a way into the Sea, or else is swallowed in the bowels of that thirsty Earth: but the first more likely.

It is divided commonly into three Juridical Reforms; *viz.* of 1. *Quito*, 2. *Lima*; and 3. *Charcos*; each having under it many several & subordinate Provinces, too many & of too small note to be here considered. We will therefore look upon the chief, and of greatest reckoning: 1. *Quito*, 2. *Los Quixos*, 3. *Lima*, 4. *Cuzco*, 5. *Charcos*; and 6. *Collao*; three on the Sea, and the other three in the mid-lands; to which the Islands of it shall be joyned in the close of all.

1. *QUITO*, is bounded on the North with *Papayana*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the South, with the Province of *Lima*; and on the East, with that of *Los Quixos*. So named from *Quito*, the chief Town and Province of the first Division.

The Soil is as fertile, and as fit for the Fruit of *Europe* as any other in *Peru*: well stored with Cattel, especially the *Paco's* or *Peruvian* Sheep; and plentifully furnished both with Fish and Fowl. In many parts great store of Nitre, of which they make most approved good Gunpowder; and in some Rivers, especially that of *S. Barbara*, many veins of Gold. The People generally in-

dustrious, especially in making of Cloth of Cotton, equal almost to Silks for fineness: of constitution strong, and healthy, but given to lying, drinking, and such other Vices; with which they are so much in love, that though they are conceived to be apt of Learning, yet not without great difficulty brought to the Christian Faith, not willingly reclaimed from their ancient Barbarism. Extremely punished with the Pox, an hereditary Disease amongst them; the very Girls and untouched Virgins so infected with it, that neither Tobacco, *Guaicuma*, nor *Sarsaparilla*, all which this Country doth afford in a great abundance, is able to preserve them from it.

Towns of most observation in it, 1. *Caracogen*, a large and sumptuous Palace of the ancient Kings; so named, because situate in the Territory of the *Caracogen*, a barbarous, bloody, and man-eating People, subdued by *Guaynacapa*, one of the most mighty of the Kings of *Peru*; from whom revolting and withal killing many of his Ministers and Garrison Soldiers, they were upon a second Conquest brought to the banks of a great Lake, into which 20000 of them being killed were thrown. The Lake from thenceforth called *Lagunacocha*, or the Lake of blood. 2. *Oravallo*, another Palace of the Kings, but far inferior to the other; yet giving name unto the *Comrad* in which it standeth. 3. *Quito*, the chief of this Reform and once the Real Seat of its proper Kings, (till made Subject by *Guaynacapa* before mentioned) the Ruines of whose Palace are now remaining. By the *Spaniards* it is called *S. Francisco*: built on the declivity of an Hill, not above 30 minutes from the *Aequinodial*; well fortified, and as well furnished with Ammunition, as inhabited by about 500 *Spaniards*, besides the Natives. The Streets thereof strait and broad; the Buildings decent: the principal of which, the Cathedral Church, the Courts of Justice, and two Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciscan* Friars. The Town and Territory much annoyed by a flaming Mountain, or *Volcano*, which in the year 1560, cast off such abundance of Cinders, that if Rain had not happened beyond expectation, had made great spoil upon the place. 4. *Tacunga*, fifteen Leagues from *Quito*; and 5. *Rhiabamba*, in the Territory of the *Purvasiti*, 40 Leagues from that: each of them honoured with another of those ancient Palaces. 6. *Thomebamba*, neighboured by another of the King's Palaces, but more magnificent than the former, situate in the Country of the *Camaris*, amongst whom anciently the Women tilled the Land, and did all without doors, whilst the men sat at home and spun, and attended Housewifery. 7. *Cuenca*, 64 Leagues from *Quito*, on another Road, situate in a Country full of Gold, Silver, Brass, Iron, and Veins of Sulphur. 8. *Loxa*, sixteen Leagues Southward of *Cuenca*, situate in the fifth degree of Southern Latitude, and in a sweet and pleasant Valley called *Guxibamba*, between two fine Rivelets. The Citizens well furnished with Horse & Armour, but not otherwise wealthy. 9. *Zamora*, twenty Leagues on the East of *Loxa*; and 10. *Jaca*, 35 from that: both situate in the Province of *Quichimayo*, and both so called in reference to two Cities of those names in *Spain*. Then on the Sea-coasts there are, 11. *Portu Vetus*, (*Puerto Viejo*, as the *Spaniards* call it) not far from the Sea-side, but in full an Air, that it is not very much frequented. Said to be one of the first Towns of this Country possessed by the *Spaniards*, who digged up heretobes the bones of a monstrous Giant whose Cheek-teeth were four fingers broad. 12. *Mamta*, the Port-Town to *Porto Viejo*, from whence the Trade is driven betwixt *Panama* and *Peru*; the Town it self situate in a rich Vein of Emeralds. 13. *Guayaquil*, or *S. Jago de Guayaquil*, called also *Galathea*; seated at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, near the influx of the River *Guayaquil*, a noted and much frequented

ted Empory. 14. *Cafiro*, a Colony of *Spaniards* planted Anno 1568, in that part of this Country which they call *Provincia de los Esmeraldas*, bordering on *Papayan*. 15. *S. Michiel*, by the Old Natives called *Puma*, the first Colony which the *Spaniards* planted in *Peru*, but otherwise of no estimation. 16. *Paya*, a small Town, but neighboured by the safest and most frequented Haven of all this Country, as guarded from the Wind by the Cape of *S. Filles* on the North, and *Punta Pirina* on the South, two eminent Promontories. The Town burnt, Anno 1587, by Captain *Cavendish*, who at the same time pillaged the life of *Puma*, the most noted Island of this Tract, situate in the Bay of *Tombes*, as was laid before. Fruitful of all things necessary to the life of man; Parrots for pleasure. *Saraparrilla* for his health. The people in preceding times to stout & warlike, that they maintained a long War with those of *Tombes*, till in the end composed by the mediation of the King of *Peru*, to whom the King heretofore (for a King it had) became an Homager, as since their embracing of the Gospel, to the Kings of *Spain*.

2. **LOS QUIXOS** lieth on the East of *Quito* and the West of *El Dorado* (one of the *Camreds* of *Guiana*, so called from its abundance of Gold:) little different in the nature of the Soil and People from the Province of *Quito*; but that this is somewhat the more barren, and less stored with those rich Metals which the *Spaniards* come for. The People have also a distinct Tongue of their own, though they both understand and speak the *Peruvian* Language.

Chief Towns heretofore, 1. *Baeza*, built in the year 1559. (which was within two years of the first Discovery of this Region) by *Giles Ramirez de Avila*; 18 Leagues from *Quito* towards the East: now the Seat of the Governour. 2. *Archidona*, 20 Leagues on the South-East of *Baeza*. 3. *Avila*, on the North of *Archidona*; so called with reference to *Ramirez de Avila* before mentioned, or to a Town of that name in *Spain*. 4. *Sevilla del Oro*, a Colony of *Spaniards*, as the others are.

On the East of this Province lieth the *Centred* of *Camelam*, inhabited by a blockish and ignorant people, and destitute of all things necessary for the comforts of Life. Most mercifully tormented, and cast to Dogs to be devoured, by *Pizarro*, because they could not show him the readiest way to some richer Country than their own; this being the most barren Region of that part of *Peru* which they call *La Sierra*, or the Hill-Countries. More Eastward yet, in that part which they call the *Andes*, lie the *Centreds* of the *Bracmoris*, commonly called *Judan de Salinas*, by the name of the first Discoverer of it. A Country not inferior unto many for the quantity of Gold; superiour to any for the pureness of it. Chief Towns of which, 1. *Palladill*. 2. *Loiba*, by the Natives called *Combinama*. 3. *S. Jago de las Montañas*, (or *S. James of the Mountains*;) all *Spanish* Colonies; and all of the foundation of *John de Salinas* at *Loiba*, once the Pro-Prefect of the Province; by whom first thoroughly subdued to the Crown of *Spain*.

3. **LIMA**, called also **LOS REYES**, is bounded on the North with *Quito*, on the South, with *Charcas*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, with *Colloa*, and the Province of *Cusco*. So named from *Lima*, or *Los Reyes*, the chief City of it. Extended from the sixth to the sixteenth degree of Southern Latitude: or measuring from the Promontory of *Ayuda* North, to *Arquipa* on the South, it reacheth to 250 Leagues. The Soil is of the same nature with that of *Quito*, but more distributed into Valleys, and better peopled.

Places of most observation, 1. *Miraflores*, in the Valley of *Zamu*, 110 leagues on the North of *Lima*, and a-

bout 5 leagues distant from the Sea; on which it hath an Haven belonging to it called *Chonepen*. The Town is well fenced, and inhabited by a wealthy People, made such by the abundance of Sugar-canes in the neighbouring Valley. 2. *Truxillo*, in the rich and flourishing Valley of *Chimo*, on the banks of a small but pleasant River, and about two Leagues from the Sea, where it hath a large but unsafe Haven, which they call *El Azcuse de Triguillo*. The Town it self situate in the seventh degree and 30 minutes of Southern Latitude; well built and rich, one of the principal of *Peru*; inhabited by 1500 *Spaniards*, besides the Natives, and beautified with four Convents of several Orders. 3. *La Parilla*, in the Valley of the *Santa*, in which it standeth, and by which it is furnished with a safe and convenient Road for Shipping: 20 Leagues Southwards of *Truxillo*, and neighboured by rich Mines of Silver, not long since discovered. 4. *Armedo*, seated amongst Vineyards in the Valley of *Chacay*, ten Leagues North of *Lima*. 5. *Lima*, by the *Spaniards* called *Guadalupe de Las Reyes*, or the City of Kings, situate in the Valley of *Lima*, the most fruitful part of all *Peru*, in the Latitude of twelve Degrees and an half. Built with much Art, for all the chief Streets answer to the Market-place; scarce any private House which hath not water conveyed into it from the River; environed round about with sweet Fields and most pleasant Gardens. The Founder of it *Francisco Pizarro*, who laid the first stone on *Twelfth-day*, (which the *Spaniards* call the *Fest of Kings*) whence it had the name, Anno 1535. A Town of greater Wealth than Bigness, the Riches of *Peru* passing yearly through it; well housed, whether we respect the private or publick Edifices: the Cathedral Church made after the model of that of *Sevil*, the Convents of Religious Orders, the Courts of Justice, and the Palaces of the Archbishop and Vice-Roy, being all fair and goodly Buildings: the Cathedral Church so well endowed, that the Revenues of the Archbishop do amount yearly to 30000 Ducats, besides what belongeth to the Canons and other Ministers. 6. *Colloa*, the Haven Town to *Lima*, from which two Leagues distant; a Town of 500 Families, for the most part Seamen: every House having free Cellar in it for the storage of Wine, Tobacco, Cables, Pitch, &c. for the use of Mariners; besides those publick Ware-houses for the several Commodities which pass from *Lima* higher, or from hence to *Lima*. Unfortified till the year 1579, when sacked and spoiled of infinite Treasures by *San Francis Drake*, since that time strengthened by two Bulwarks and a Wall of Earth, with 30 pieces of Brass Ordnance planted on the Works. 7. *Pachacama*, in the Valley so called, but four Leagues on the South of *Lima*: memorable for a Temple, in which *Pizarro* found above 900000 Ducats of Gold and Silver, not reckoning in those infinite Treasures which the Soldiers had laid hands on before his coming. 8. *Guarco*, a Colony of 500 *Spaniards*, sixteen Leagues on the South of *Pachacama*, environed with the best Fields for Wheat in all *Peru*. 9. *Valverde* in a Valley of the same name, so called from the perpetual Greenness of it; well furnished with Vines, and those abounding the best Wines of all this Country. A large Town, consisting of 500 *Spaniards*, besides Women and Children, and other Inhabitants of the Country, well Traded, considering its distance from the Sea, (*Puerto Quemado*, the Haven to it being Six Leagues off) and beautified with a fair Church, & Hospital, three Frieries, and the handsomest Women of these parts. Distant from *Lima* 35 Leagues. 10. *Cafiro Verreyne*, in the Valley of *Chocococha*, 60 leagues from *Lima*, enriched with Mines of the purest Silver, digged out of a dry and barren Hill always covered with Snow; and standing in so sharp an Air, that the *Spanish* Women will not be de-

vered

vered in it, but are carried farther off to be brought to bed. From hence, as I conjecture, comes that *Vein* of Tobacco, which our Good fellows celebrate by the name of the right *Vareinas*. 11. *Arquipa*, in the Valley of *Quila*, 20 Leagues from *Lima*, a pleasing and delightful Town; which, situate at the Foot of a flaming Mountain, (from which in the year 1600 it received much harm) enjoyeth a fresh and temperate Air, and a Soil always flourishing. The Silver of *Plata* and *Pofo* passeth through this Town, and is shipped for *Panama*, at an Haven belonging to it situate at the mouth of the River *Chile*. (upon which *Arquipa* standeth) but distant from the Town about 14 Leagues. 12. *Casamalca*, more within the Land, but more towards the North, heretofore beautified with a Royal Palace of the Kings of *Peru*; memorable for the imprisonment and murder of *Atahualpa*, or *Atahualpa*, the last King of this Country, vanquished nor far off by *Francisco Pizarro*. 13. *Chachapoya*, in the *Centred* so called; the best inhabited of any one *Centred* of those parts, supposed to contain in it 20000 of the natural Inhabitants, which pay Duties to the King of *Spain*; and is esteemed for beautiful Women, that from hence the Kings were anciently furnished with their Concubines. 14. *Leon de Guano*, (the addition given it from the Province in which it standeth) a Colony of *Spaniards*, rich, sweet and very pleasantly seated: beautified heretofore with a most magnificent Palace of the Kings; as now with some Religious Houses, a College of Jesuits, and the dwellings of many of the Nobility. Many other midland Towns there are, but of no great note; and therefore purposely passed over.

4. **CUSCO** comprehendeth, as the chief, of all those several Provinces of the Hill-Countries, and the *Andes* which lie Southwards of the Province or *Centred* of *Guano*. Blest with a sweet and temperate air, not over scalded with the Sun, nor dulled with the dampness of the Evening mists: the Country full of fresh Rivers, notable good Pasturage, and great Herds of Cattle; well stored with *Coca*, which is gathered here in some abundance, and most excellent Venison.

Places of most repute in it, 1. *Bombon*, in the same Latitude with *Lima*, neighboured by a Lake called *Laguna de Chibche*, coasts ten Leagues in compass, begirt about with pleasant Hills, and built upon with many rich and as pleasant Villages: out of which runneth the River *Mayan*, one of the greatest of these parts, supposed by the Inhabitants to end his course in *Mare del Noordi*. 2. *Parece*, once beautified with a regal Palace, seated on the top of a little hill and begirt about with craggy Mountains. 3. *Guamanga*, by the *Spaniards* called *S. Juan de la Victoria*, situate under the 13. degree of Southern Latitude, on the banks of a fresh and pleasing Stream, well built, the Houses being all of Stone, and tiled or slated; three Churches, one of them a Cathedral, besides divers Convents. 4. *Bicar*, supposed to be built in the very Centre of *Peru*; where still remain the ruins of a sumptuous Palace. 5. *Guancabellica*, a new Town, or but newly raised into esteem, supposed to contain at the present 2500 *Spaniards*, and double that number of the Natives. Increased, since the year 1566, from a beggarly Village to this greatness, by the Mines of Quick-silver then discovered: Mines of such Riches that the Kings part out of them amounteth yearly to above 40000 *Pezos*, which is not all the benefit he receives from them neither; that Mineral being found so necessary for the purifying and speedy extraction of their Gold, that it is not laid out on cause by the Chymists, that *Quick-silver* gives the matter to Cold, and Sulphur the form. 6. *Cusco*, in the Latitude of 13 Degrees and 30 minutes, about 130

Leagues on the East of *Lima*, and situate in a rugged and unequal Soil, begirt with Mountains, but on both sides of a pleasant and commodious River. Once the Seat, beautified this City, commanded every one of the Nobility to build here a palace for their continual abode. Still of most credit in this Country, both for beauty and bigness, and the multitudes of Inhabitants; here being thought to dwell 5000 *Spaniards*, and 10000 of the Natives, besides Women and Children. The Palace of the King, advanced on a lofty Mountain, was held to be a work of so great magnificence, built of such huge and massive Stones, that the *Spaniards* thought it to have been the work rather of Devils than of men. Now miserably decayed, most of the Stones being tumbled down to build private Houses in the City: some of the Churches raised by the Bishop's Palace and Cathedral, whose annual Rents are estimated at 20000 Ducats. Yet did no this vast Building yield more lustre to the City of *Cusco*, than a spacious Market-place, the Centre in which those Highways did meet together, which the *Inga* had caused to be made cross the Kingdom, both for length and breadth, with most incredible charge and pains for the use of their Subjects. Of which more hereafter. 7. *S. Francis de la Victoria*, at the foot of the *Andes*, a *Spanish* Colony, and about 20 Leagues from *Cusco*. 8. *S. Juan del Oro*, in the Valley of *Cinavay*, neighboured with rich Mines of the purest Gold, whence it had the name; a Colony of *Spaniards* also. Beyond the *Andes* lie some Countries, much famed for Wealth; the Discovery whereof hath often been attempted by the *Spaniards*, sometimes with loss, not seldom with some hopes of a better fortune, but hitherto without success.

5. **COLLA** lieth on the South of those Provinces which we have comprehended under the name of *Cusco*; having on the West the rest of *Lima*: on the South, *Los Charcos*; on the East, those unknown Countries beyond the *Andes*. Shut up on the East and West by two Mountainous Ridges, which keeping in one main body till they come beyond the City of *Cusco*, do there divide themselves, and grow wider and wider, nor to meet again.

The Country is plain and full of Rivers, well stored with rich Pastures, and those Pastures with great Herds of Cattle, barren of Corn, and not well furnished with Maize; instead whereof they make their bread of Root called *Papa*, dried in the Sun and bruised to powder: of which the *Spaniards* make great gain at the Mines of *Potosi*. Yet notwithstanding this great want, it is thought to be the most Populous part of all *Peru*: the soundness and temperature of the Air (which is here very much commended) as much conducing to the populosity of a Country, as the richness and plenties of the Soil. The People are also of a clearer & more solid Judgment than these of *Peru*, and so well skilled in the observation of the Course of the Moon, that the *Spaniards* at their coming hither, found the Year distinguished into Months, Weeks, Days, for each of which they had a proper and significant name. The famous Lake of *Titicaque* is within this Province.

Places of greatest note in it: 1. *Chinquaga*, naturally strong and almost inaccessible, environed either with unfordable Waters, or impassable Mountains; one Cause only leading to it, which for the space of three Leagues is laid to be capable but of one at once. 2. *Ayavire*, ennobled with many fair and costly Buildings, especially with Monuments of the dead, which exceed the rest both in cost and number: for that cause by the *Spaniards* called *Las Sepulchras*: The Inhabitants of this

X x x x

Tac

Tract were much waisted by the Civil Wars which the Spaniards had among themselves. 3. *Huancalla*, the Metropolis or chief Town of this Province, as the name doth signify: not far from which the famous River *Cavayay*, famous for the abundance of Gold in the sands thereof, had its first original. 4. *Chiquita*, a Colony of the Spaniards, on the Banks of the Lake of *Trinica*: a Town of so great Trade and Riches, that the Governor hereof is named immediately by the King; his place being estimated at the worth of 50000 Ducats yearly. 5. *Tiazumaco*, at the mouth or out-let of that Lake; supposed to be the most ancient Burrough of *Peru*: now most remarkable for the Ruines of certain great and stupendous Buildings, some of the stones whereof are said to be 30 foot long, fifteen foot in breadth, and six in thickness; not to be brought thither without the help of Iron Engines (which this people had not till of late) but by some strange Arts. 6. *De la Paz*, or *Nuestra Señora de la Paz*, by the Spaniards called *Alto Puclo Nuevo*, and by the Natives *Chiquibdo*, according to the name of the *Curved* in which it standeth, is situate at the foot of a little Mountain, by which defended from the injuries of Wind and Weather, but over-looking a large Plain of great fertility, well watered, and well wooded both for Fruits and Fowell. 7. *Chilone*, 8. *Acos*, 9. *Pomata*, 10. *Cpita*: and some others of as little note.

6. *LOS CHARCAS* on the North is bounded with *Lima* and *Colloa*; on the South, with *Chile*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*, on the East, with some Countreys not well discovered, interposed betwixt it and the Province of *Rio de la Plata*. This is also called by the name of *Plata*, according to the name of the chief City of it.

The Country extendeth in length from North to South but 300 Leagues, but measuring by the sea-shores, above 400. Not very rich in Corn or Cattle, though in many places furnished with good Pasture-grounds; but for the inexhaustible Mines of Gold and Silver, not less equalled in *Peru*. Of these the principal are those of *Porco* and *Potosi*, but these last the chief: out of which comes that Mass of Silver which yieldeth the King so much profit yearly, as before was mentioned. The Mine 200 Fathoms deep, to which they do descend by Ladders made of raw Hides, 800 steps: some of the workmen see not the Sun for many months together; many fall down with their loads of Silver on their backs, pulling others after them, and many die in the works for want of Air. For the refuising of this Silver there are 52 Engines, or Silver Mills, upon a River near unto it; 22 more in the Valley of *Tarapia* not far off, besides many which they turn with Horses. The Poets words never more literally verified then in these deep Mines, where speaking of the Iron Age, he describes it thus.

*Nec tantum segetes alimenque debita divas
Postulat humis, sed tum est in cuncta terra;
Quaque recedunt Stygiæ adnoverat Umbri,
Effuditur opes, irritamenta malorum.*

Which I find thus rendered by *George Sandys*:
Nor with rich Earth's just nourishments content,
For Treasures here her secret Entrails rent.
That powerful evil, which all power invades,
By her well hid and wrapt in Stygian Shades.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Plata*, so called from the rich Mines of Silver found in Mount *Porco* near adjoining; well emptied by the ancient *Ingas*, but searched out again by *Francisco Pizarro*, who (it is thought) might have raised hence 200000 Ducats of yearly Income, if hopes of greater at *Potosi* had not took him off. The Town is commodiously seated in a fruitful Soil

in the 10. degree of Latitude, and 180 Leagues distant from the City of *Cusco*, honoured with the seat of the Governour and the Courts of Justice, and beautified (besides many religious Houses) with a fair Cathedral, the See of the best endowed Bishoppick in all *Peru*; his Revenues being estimated at 8000 Ducats of yearly Rents. By the Natives it is called *Chiquisica*. 2. *Orpella*, twenty Leagues from *Plata*, built by *Don Francis de Toledo*, when Viceroy here, in the rich and pleasant Valley called *Cochabambá*, Anno 1505. 3. *Potosi*, neighbored by those wealthy Mines already mentioned. Discovered first in the year 1545, before which time this Town was but a sorry Village; now the best peopled and frequented in all the Province: said to be constantly inhabited by four or five thousand Spaniards, many more of the Natives: not so few as 30000 workmen appearing to it, but lodged in the Villages adjoining: besides the infinite resort of Merchants in pursuit of profit, and idle Gallants, who come hither for their lusts and pleasures. Situate in the 21. Degree and 40 Minutes of Southern Latitude, in a cold and very barren Soil; yet plentifully furnished with all commodities both for Necessity and delight. For as the money is, so is the Market always. 4. *Misqa*, a small Town, but one which furnisheth *Potosi* with good plenty of Wine: as 5. *Lagunilla*, and 6. *Tarisa*, do with Wheat, Maize, Sugar, and choice of Fruits. 7. *Arica*, the most noted Haven of this Country, in the Latitude of 19 degrees, and 80 Leagues, or thereabouts from the Mines of *Potosi*; the wealth whereof, brought hither on the backs of their Sheep is here shipped for *Lima*. The truth hereof was experienced by Sir F. Drake, who seized here on three Spanish Ships, in one of which was 57 Bars of Silver, each of them twenty pound weight apiece. Few other Towns, if any, upon all this coast, which is altogether Rocky, barren, and unfit for Habitation; accordingly but little peopled, or not at all.

Come we now to the *Peruvian* Story, which we shall sum up with as much brevity as we can. The People are generally governed by the chief of their Tribes, as in all Countreys else, where neither the Arms of Eorinners nor the Ambition of some few of the Natives had diminished any thing of those natural Rights. Not subject to any one Supreme till these latter times; the *Ingas* or Monarchs of *Peru* growing unto their greatness but little before their fall. Their Territory at the first so small, that it was not above five or six Leagues in compass, situate in that part of the Country where the City of *Cusco* now standeth. Opposed at their first Encroachments by the *Cumarecs*, a valiant Nation, and likely to have had the better, if the *Ingas* had not helped themselves by a piece of Wit; giving it out, that their Family had not only been the Seminary from which Mankind came, but the Authors of that Religion also which was then in use; particularly that the whole World had been destroyed by a Flood, except only seven, (so far they hit upon the truth) which seven had hid themselves in a Cave, called *Paticambo* where having lived in safety till the fury of the Water had been allwaged, they came abroad at last and re-peopled the Country; that *Viracocha*, the Creature and great God of Nature, had appeared to one of them, and taught him how and with what Rites he would be worshipped, which Rites were afterwards received over all *Peru*; and finally, that the same *Viracocha* had appeared lately to the chief of their Family, advising him that he would aid him with invisible Forces against all their Enemies. This Tale soon gained belief amongst those Barbarians, and that belief drew many to take part with the *Ingas*, by that Aid victorious. This is supposed to have happened 400 years before the Spaniards put

an end to this flourishing Kingdom, which was in the year 1532. Within which time they had brought all this Country which we now call *Peru*, and many of the adjoining Provinces, under their Dominion. Their Kings were called *Ingas*, as the *Egyptians* Pharaohs, the *Tartars* Cham; the word *Inga*, signifying an Emperour, as *Casa Inga* (by which they sometimes called them) the only Emperours. Much revered by their Subjects, and so faithfully served, that never any of their Subjects were found guilty of Treason: Nor wanted they good Arts whereby to incense their Subjects, and keep them out of leisure to foment new Factions. The way of inditement, by the fair and satisfactory distribution of the spoils gotten in the Wars, whether Lands or Goods; all which they divided into three parts: allotting the first unto the service of the Gods; the second for the maintenance of the King, his Court, and Nobles; the third, to the relief of the common people. A distribution far more equal than that of *Liengui*, or the *Lex Agraria* of the *Romans*. But when there was no cause of wars, they kept the people busied in the works of Magnificence; as building Palaces in every one of the conquered Provinces, which served not only as Forts to assure the Conquest, but were employed as Store-houses to lay up Provisions, distributed amongst the People in times of dearth. But that which was the work as of greater trouble, so of chiefest use, was the Crofs ways they made over all the Country, the one upon the Mountains, and the other on the Plains, extending 500 Leagues in length: a work to be preferred before any both of *Rome* and *Egypt*. For they were forced to raise the ground in many places to the height of the Mountains, and lay the Mountains level with the flattest Plains; to cut through some Rocks, and underprop others that were ruinous; to make even such ways as were unequal, and support the Precipices, and in the Plains to vanquish so many difficulties, as the uncertain foundation of a sandy Country must needs carry with it. Kept to these Tasks, the people had no leisure to think of Practices; yet well content to undergo them, in regard they saw it tended to the publick benefit. And for the *Cueiques*, (so they call the Nobility) the *Inga* did not only command them to reside in *Cusco*, to be assured of their persons, but caused them to send their Children to be brought up there, that they might serve as Hostages for the Fathers Loyalty. They ordered also, that all such as repaired to *Cusco*, the Imperial City; should be attired according to his own Country fashion; so to prevent those Leagues and Affociations which otherwise, without any note or observation, might be made amongst them. Many such Politick Institutions were by them devised, which had little of the Barbarous in them; and clearly shewed that there were other Nations which had Eyes in their Heads besides those of *China*. What else concerns the Story of them, offereth it self in the following Catalogue of

The Kings of PERU.

1. *Mango-Capac*, defended of the chief of the first seven Families, the first who laid the foundation of this puissant Monarchy: he subdued the *Cumarecs*, and built the City of *Cusco*.
2. *Sinchi-Rocha*, eldest son of *Mango*, subdued a great part of *Colloa*, as far as *Chancara*.
3. *Longue-Tupanqui*, the son of *Sinchi*, conquered *Chiguito*, *Ayaviri*, the *Cumus*, and the Inhabitants about *Ticacocha*: the first Advancer of the service of *Viracocha*, from whom he did pretend to have many Vides.
4. *Moya-Capac*, the son of *Tupanqui*, subdued all the rest of *Colloa*, the Provinces of *Chugchapa*, and a great part of the *Chacaca*.

5. *Capac-Tupanqui*, or *Tupanqui II.* the son of *Moya*, enlarged his Kingdom Westward unto *Ancash Zur*.

6. *Rocha II.* of *Ticcha-Rocha*, eldest son of *Tupanqui* the second, enlarged his Kingdom towards the North, by the Conquest of the great Province of *Antabuyallam*, and many others.

7. *Jahuar-Huacac*, Son of *Rocha* the second, added to his Estates (by the Valour of his Brother *Mayta*) all the Southern parts from *Arequipa* to *Ticamam*. Deposed by the practice of his son.

8. *Viracocha*, the son of *Huacac*, having settled and enlarged his Empire, raised many great and stately Works, and amongst others many *Aqueducts* of great use, but charge. For fear of him, *Atacabuta*, King of the *Chimuc*, with many thousands of his people, forsook their Country.

9. *Pachacutec-Inca*, son of *Viracocha*, improved his Kingdom by the Conquest of many Provinces lying towards the *Andes* and fourth-sea, with that of *Caxamallas* Northwards.

10. *Tupanqui III.* or *Ticcha-Tupanqui*, son of *Pachacutec*, subdued the *Chenches* and *Maves* with some part of *Chile*.

11. *Tupanqui IV.* or *Ticcha-Ticcha Tupanqui*, Son of *Tupanqui* the third; extended his Dominions as far as *Quito*.

12. *Huayna-Capac*, or *Guaynacapa*, son of *Tupanqui* the fourth, the most mighty Monarch of *Peru*, conquered the whole Province of *Quito*, and is supposed to be the Founder of those two great Roads spoken of before.

13. *Huascar*, or *Guafchar-Inca*, the eldest Son of *Guaynacapa*, after a Reign of five years deposed and slain by his Brother.

14. *Atahualpa*, or *Atabaliba*, the third Son of *Guaynacapa*, by the Daughter and Heir of the King of *Quito*, into which Kingdom, he succeeded by the Will of his Father. Commanded by his Brother to do Homage for the Kingdom of *Quito*, he came upon him with such power, that he overcame him, and so gained the Kingdom. Vanquished afterwards by *Pizarro* at the battle of *Caxamallas*, he was taken Prisoner. And though he gave him a ransom for his Life and Liberty, an House Piled up on all sides with Gold and Silver, valued (as some say) at ten Millions of Crowns; yet they perfidiously slew him.

15. *Mango-Capac II.* the second Son of *Guaynacapa*, substituted by *Pizarro* in his Brothers Throne, after many vicissitudes of Fortune, was at last slain in the City of *Cusco*; and so the Kingdom of the *Ingas* began and ended in a Prince of the same name, as it happened formerly to some other Estates.

Let us next look upon the birth and fortune of that *Pizarro*, who subdued this most potent and flourishing Kingdom, and made it a Member of the Spanish Empire. And we shall find that he was born at *Tiriglo*, a Village of *Navarra*, and by the poor Whore his Mother laid in the Church-porch, and so left to God's Providence; whose direction (there being none found that would give him the Bread) he was nourished for certain days by sucking a Sow. At last one *Gonzales* a Soldier, acknowledged him for his son, put him to Nurse, and when he was somewhat grown, for him to keep his Swine: some of which being strayed, the Boy durst not for fear return home, but betook himself to his heels, ran unto *Sevil* and there shipped himself for *America*; where he attended *Alonso de Orell*, in the discovery of the Countries beyond the Gulf of *Orubay*, *Balboa* in his Voyage to the South-sea; and *Pedro de Ayala* in the Conquest of *Par*

U. S. M. Grown rich by these Adventures, he associated himself with *Diego de Almagro* and *Fernando Lopez* a rich Priest; who betwixt them raised 220 Soldiers, and in the year 1525. went to seek their Fortunes on those Southern Seas which *Balboa* had before discovered. After divers Repulses at his landings, and some hardship which he had endured, *Pizarro* at the length took some of the Inhabitants of *Peru*, of whom he learnt the wealth of the Country; and returning thereupon to Spain, obtained the Kings Commission for the Conquest of it; excluding his Companions out of the Patent, but taking in *Almagro* of his own accord. Thus furnished and landed in *Peru* again, at such time as the Wars grew hot betwixt the two Brethren for the Kingdom, and taking part with the Faction of *Gusman*, marched against *Ambaliba*; whom he met within the Plains of *Caxamalen*, but rather prepared for a Parley, then to fight a Battle. *Pizarro* taking this Advantage, picked a Quarrel with him, and suddenly charged upon him with his Horse & Ordnance, slaying his Guard without resistance; and coming near the Kings person, (who was then carried on mens shoulders) pulled him down by the Cloaths, and took him Prisoner. With him they took as much Gold as amounted to 8000 Castellans, and as much Silver as amounted to 7000 Marks (every Mark weighing eight ounces) of his Household Plate; and in the spoil of *Caxamalen*, almost infinite Riches. This, with the Kings Ransom, came to so great a sum, that besides the fifth part which *Pizarro* sent to the Emperor, and that which *Pizarro* and his Brethren kept unto themselves, every Footman had 2500 Ducats; & every Horseman twice as much, for their part of the Spoil; besides what they had got in the way of plunder. How they dealt afterwards with the miserable King, their prisoner, hath been shewn already. Upon which Act though they put many fair pretences, yet God declared that he was not pleased with their proceedings; few of the great undertakers going to the grave in peace. For though *Pizarro*, in reward of so great a Service, was made the first Vice-Roy of *Peru*, and created Marquis of *Audulca*; yet having put to death *Almagro*, his chief Companion, who had raised a strong Faction in that State, he was after slain at *Lima* by some of that Faction, in revenge of the death of their Commander. The like unfortunate end befel all the rest: his Brother *Johan* slain by the *Peruvians*; *Martin* in *Lima* with himself; *Fernando* secretly made away in Prison; and

finally *Gonsales* the fourth Brother, with the Son of *Almagro*, severally executed for their Treasons and Infections, which they had acted in this Country against their King. So little Joy doth Wealth ill gotten bring along with it to the owners thereof. And here I am to leave *Pizarro*, whose strange both fortunes and misfortunes in the course of his Life are to be paralleld only with the like of *Simon*, a great Balla in the Court of *Salomon* the first, who being born of a base Parentage, as he (being a Child) was sleeping in the Shade, had his Genitals bitten off by a Sow. The Turkish Officers which usually provided young Boys for the Service of the Grand Seigneur, being in *Epirus*, (for that was *Simon's* Country) and hearing of this extraordinary an Eunuch, took him among others along with them to the Court: where under *Mahomet* the Great, *Bajazet* the second, and his son *Selimus*, he so exceedingly thrived, that he was made the chief Balla of the Court; and so well deserved it, that he was accounted *Selimus's* right hand; and was indeed the man to whose Valour especially the *Turky* owe their Kingdom of *Egypt*: in which Kingdom then not fully settled he was also slain.

But to return to *Peru*. No question but the Forces and Revenues of it were exceeding great. For, though we find no particular musters which they made of their men, or what great Armies they drew with them into the Field, yet by their great Successes and many Victories we may conclude them to be Masters of great Bands of men, and skilful in the Arts of Conduict. Nor can we otherwise conjecture at the greatness of their yearly income, but by the greatness of their Treasure; so infinite and almost incredible, that all the Vessels of the Kings House, his Table and Kitchen, were of Gold and Silver: Statues of Giants in his Wardrobe, together with the resemblances in proportion and bigness of all the Beasts, Birds, Trees, Plants and Fishes, which were found in that Kingdom, of the purest Gold: Ropes, Budgets, Troughs, Chests, all of Gold or Silver; Bills of Gold paid up together, as if they had been Bills of Wood cut out for the fire; three Houses full of pieces of Gold, and five full of Silver. All which, besides infinite other Treasures, fell into the hands of a few poor *Spaniards*: who grew so wanton hereupon, that they would give 1500 Crowns for an Horse, 60 Crowns for a small Vessel of Wine, and 40 for a pair of Shoes; consuming all upon their lusts, and sacrificing their Gods of Gold to their God the Belly.

OF

CHILE.

CHILE is bounded on the North with the Desert of *Alacama*, 90 Leagues in length, interposed betwixt it and *Peru*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the South, with the Straights of *Magellan*; and on the East, as far as to *Rio de la Plata*, with the main *Atlantic*; the Countries lying on the East betwixt it and *Paraguay* not well discovered.

This Country lieth wholly beyond the Tropick of Ca-

pricorn, by consequence in the temperate Zone, extended in length, from the borders of *Peru* to the mouth of the Straights, 500 Leagues; but the breadth variable and uncertain. Called *Chile* from the word *Chil*, (which in more Tongues then ours doth signifie as much as Cold) from the extrem coldness of the Air and Climate; so vehement here in our Summer Solstice, that many times both the Horses and the Riders are frozen to death, and hardened like a piece of Marble.

The Soil hereof in the midland parts Mountainous and unfruitful: towards the Sea-side level, fertile and watered

tered with divers Rivers flowing from the Mountains: Productive of Maize, Wheat, and most excellent Pasture: Plenty of Gold and Silver, abundance of Honey, store of Cattle and Wine enough for the use of the People; the Vines brought hither out of Spain prospering here exceedingly, as do also all the Fruits and Plants, which are sent from thence into this Country. The People very tall and warlike, some of them of a Gigantick Stature, affirmed (but believe it not) to be eleven foot high, yet well clothed in the Shade of their greatness, where not much Provoked. Their Garments of the Skins of Beasts, their Arms Bow and Arrows: white of Complexion, but as hirsute and shaggy-haired as the rest of the Savages.

Rivers of note there are not any but what will fall within the view of its several Provinces. Divided Commonly into 1. *Chile* specially so called, and 2. *Magellanica*.

1. *CHILE* specially so called is bounded on the North with the Desert of *Alacama*, on the South, with *Magellanica*, on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; and on the East, with some unknown Countreys, lying betwixt it and *Paraguay*, or the province of *Rio de la Plata*: not above 20 Leagues in breadth, but in length 300. The reason of the name, together with the nature of the soil and people, we have seen before.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1. *Rio de Copayapo*, giving name unto a Promontory near the influx of it in the Northern borders of this Province. 2. *Rio de Coghimbis*, 3. *La Legua*, 4. *Topocaima*, 5. *Cacapoel*, 6. *Cantari*, all falling into *Mare del Zur*. And besides these, a nameless, but more famous River, which in the day-time runneth with a violent Current, and in the night hath no Water at all. The reason of it is, because this River, having no constant Fountain, is both begun and continued by the Snow falling from the Mountains, which in the heat of the day, melted into water is precipitately carried into the Sea; but congealed in the coldness of the night yields no Water at all, whereby the Channel becometh empty.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Copayapo*, giving name to a fertile Valley in the most Northern Tract hereof, and neighbored by a small but commodious Haven. 2. *Serena*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, on the Sea-side; not far from the influx of *Rio de Coghimbis*, on whose banks it is seated, there built by *Baldovius*, the Conqueror and first Governour of this Province, Anno 1544. The Territory round about it is rich in Mines of Gold: The Town it self of 200 Houses, but so well Peopled, that at the landing of some of the English under Captain *Drake*, they presently sent out 300 Horse and 200 Foot to compel them back unto their Ships, which they did accordingly. 3. *S. Yago*, the chief of all this Province, (though not above 80 Houses in it) because the Residence of the Governour and the Courts of Justice; adorned with a Cathedral Church, and some Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciscan* Friars: situate in the 34. degree of Southern Latitude on the Banks of the River *Topocaima*, at the mouth whereof is the Haven of *Val Paraiso*, the best and most noted of this Country; out of which the English under *Drake* took a Spanish Ship, and there in 25000 *Pezos* of the Purest Gold, besides other Commodities. 4. *Concepcion*, 70 Leagues on the South of *S. Yago*, situate on the Shores of a large and capacious Bay, (by the Natives called *Penco*) by it and the Mountains on all sides so strongly fenced, that the Governour, when distressed by the Savages, (as sometimes they are) retireth hither for safety. Well fortified in such places as are accessible, and garrisoned with 500 Soldiers, besides the Townsmen. Opposite hereunto lieth the life of

S. Mary, so near the Shore, that it seems to have been rent from it by the force of the Sea: fruitful and very well provided of Swine and Poultry; but the people so in fear of the *Spaniards* dwelling in *Concepcion*, that they dare not kill or eat either, but by leave from them. 5. *Auracana*, (so I think they call it) a strong Fort in the Country of the *Auracans*, the most potent Nation of these parts; who weary of the Spanish Yoke, revolted against *Baldovius*, overcame him in a fat fight, and at last killed him: this Piece being thereupon forsaken, and of no more use. 6. *De los Confines*, built by *Baldovius* in the borders of the Country of those *Auracans*, to serve for a defence to the Mines of *Ongal* near adjoining; distant from the Sea shores about 18 Leagues, enlarged by *Garcias de Mendoza*, and by him called *Valle Nuevo de los Infantes*. 7. *Imperial* in the 38 Degree and 40 Minutes of Southern Latitude, situate on the banks of the River *Cantari*, an Episcopal See, and the best Fort in the *Spaniards* in all this Province. Fortified and made a Colony of *Spaniards* in the year 1551, and by *Baldovius* called *Al Imperial*, because they found an Eagle with two heads made in Wood on the doors of their houses: a Monument perhaps of some German who had here been shipwreck. A Town of so great Wealth and Power, before known to the *Spaniards*, that in a War betwixt them and the *Auracans*, spoken of before, they are said to have brought into the Field 30000 men. *S. Villa Rica*, another Colony of *Spaniards*, 16 Leagues from the South-East of *Imperial*, and 25 Leagues from the Shores of *Mare del Zur*. 9. *Baldovia*, the most noted Town of all these parts, situate in the Valley of *Guaadalupe*, in the Latitude of 40 Degrees, or thereabouts: adorned with a safe and capacious Haven, and neighbored by Mines of Gold of such infinite Riches, that *Baldovia* (by whom built for defence of those Mines) received thence daily by the labour of each single Workman 25000 Crowns a man, and sometimes more. Sacked by the Savages Anno 1599; since repaired by the *Spaniards*. 10. *Osorno*, on the Banks of the Bay of *Chilo*, (or *Ancud*, as the Savages call it) situate in a barren soil, but well stored with Gold, and thought to be more populous than *Baldovia* it self. 11. *Castro*, the most Southern Town of all this Province, in the Latitude of 44: built in a large and fruitful Island of the Bay of *Ancud*, said to be 50 Leagues in length, but the breadth unequal: in some parts nine, in others not above two Leagues. 12. *S. Juan de la Frontera*, on the farther side of the *Andes* towards *Paraguay*, or *Rio de la Plata*.

To this Province there belong also certain Islands lying on the coasts and shores hereof, 1. *S. Maria*, spoken of before. 2. *Mocha*, upon the South of that, 5 Leagues from the Continent, fruitful of Grain, and very good Pasturage, sufficient to Maintain the Inhabitants of it, who being the descendants of those *Americans* who fled hither to avoid the tyranny of the *Spaniards*, hitherto have made good their Liberty against that Nation: of which they are so jealous, that they would not suffer the English under *Drake* and *Cavendish* to land amongst them for fear they had been *Spaniards*, or some Friends of theirs. 4. *Castro*, which we have spoken of already.

2. *MAGELLANICA* is bounded on the North with *Chile*, and the Province of *Rio de la Plata*: on the South, with *Fretum Magellanicum*, or the Straights of *Magellan*, on the West, with *Mare del Zur*: on the East, with *Mare del Noordo*, or the main *Atlantic*. So called from *Magellanus*, by whom first discovered: of whom we shall speak more hereafter.

It is in length from the borders of *Chile* to the mouth of the Straights 300 Leagues in breadth: from one Sea to the other, where broadest, above 400 Leagues, in some

some but go only, and in others less, according as it draweth towards the point of the *Pyramit*. The inland parts of the Country not yet discovered: those on the sea side observed to be rocky and unfruitful, exposed for the most part to the sea to such bitter colds, that the Snow lieth always on the Mountains. The People said to be tall of stature, and some of them of a Gigantick bigness, reported to be ten or eleven foot high: and by the *Spaniards* for that reason are called *Pitagoras*. Both great and less sufficiently rude and barbarous, quite naked, and unfurnished of any Houses, notwithstanding the rigour of the Cold.

No Houles doth imply no Towns, and therefore we mult look for none in so rude a Country, as hath not hitherto conversed with more civil Nations. So that the most that we can do is to coast the Shores, and See what names of Ports or Promontories we can find therein. And first upon the Sea-coasts towards *Mare del Zur*, And place (beginning at the North, and so descending) 1. the Promontory called *Cabo de las Illas*. 2. The Port of *S. Stephen*. 3. The Valley of *Nuestra Señora*, or Haven of our Ladies Valley. 4. The Promontory called *Punta Delgado*. 5. *Porto de los Reyes*. 6. *Anchón Sinfali* on the banks of a semi-circular Bay, the receptacle of many Rivers, and not a few Islands. 7. *Cabo de la Victoria*, or the Cape of Victory, situate betwixt that Bay and the mouth of the Straights, so called from the name of the ship, in which some of *Magellan's* Soldiers did first compass the World. For *Ferdinand Magellan*, a noble *Portugal*, and well skilled in Navigation, at the Persuasion or command of *Charles* the fifth, to whom (upon some discounts received in the Court of *Emmanuel King of Portugal*) he had made offer of his service, undertook the finding out (if possible) a shorter cut to the *Moluccas* then discovered formerly. In the year 1510, he began his Voyage, his Fleet consisting but of 5 ships, whereof that called *S. Antonio* forsook him in some great displeasure, and returned to *Spain*; another of them being lost not long after in a storm. Keeping along the Coast to the South of *Rio de la Plata*, about the end of *October* he fell upon the Cape of *Virgins*, at the very entrance of this Strait, which on the doubling of this Cape he was fallen upon; and by the end of *November* (not before) was fully clear of these Narrow Seas, since called *Fretum Magellanicum*, and entered into *Mare del Zur*. Having refreshed himself in a little Island called *Juvagayava*, he passed into that also, but not far from the *Philippines*: the Prince whereof, called *Hamabar*, he persuaded to become a Christian, baptizing him by the name of *Charles*: and finally engaging in a Quarrel of his against the King of *Maman*, or *Marian*, an adjoining Island, he was there unfortunately slain, *Anno* 1521. After his death *Serran* chief Pilot of the Navy, together with 70 of his men, being treacherously slain by *Hamabar*, the other three ships departed with no more than 115 men aboard them, which put them to a necessity of burning one of their ships, that they might have men enough to make good the others. With these two Ships they came at last to the *Moluccas*, where being kindly entertained by the King of *Tidore*, they divided themselves: that called the *Trinity*, under Captain *Spinosa*, designed for *Panama* in New Spain, but from thence driven back by contrary Winds to the Isle of *Tidore*, was seized on and spoiled by *Antonio Briso*, a Captain commanding there a small Navy of the King of *Portugal*. The other ship, which by a happy Omen was called *Victoria*, having in her but 47 *Spaniards*, under the command of *Sebastian del Cano*, after a very long and dangerous Voyage, wherein it was thought that he had failed at the least 14000 Leagues, returned to *Spain* in safety, and

brought the welcom news of their good Success. We use to say that Sir *Francis Drake* was the first that failed round about the World: which may be true in a qualified sense, viz. that he was the first Captain or man of note that achieved this Enterprize, *Magellanus* perishing in the midst of it: and therefore he is reported to have given for his Device a Globe, with this Motto, *Tuprimus circumdedisti me*. This Navigation was begun *Anno* 1577, and in two years and a half with great vicissitude of fortune finished. Concerning which his famous Voyage, a Poet then living directed to him this Epigram,

*Drake, pererrasti novis quem terminus Orbis,
Quemque simul mundi vidit uterque Polus.*

*Si tacant homines, facient te Sydera notum,
Sol nescit comitis non memor esse sui.*

Drake, whom th' encompass'd Earth so fully knew,
And whom at once both Poles of Heaven did view,
Should men forget thee, Sol could not forbear
To Chronicle his fellow Traveller.

This *Fretum Magellanicum*, these *Magellan Straights*, are in the 52. degree, and are by Mr. *John Davis*, who professeth to know every Creek in them, thus described. "For 14 Leagues within the Cape of *S. Mary* lieth the first Strait, where it ebberth and floweth with a violent swiftness, the Strait not being fully half a mile broad, and the first fall into it very dangerous and doubtful. "Three Leagues this Strait continueth, when it openeth into a Sea eight miles long, and as much broad; beyond which lieth the second Strait, right West-South-West from the first, a perilous and unpleasant Passage, three Leagues long, and a mile in breadth. "This Strait openeth it self into another Sea, which is extended even to the Cape of *Victory*, where is the Strait properly called the Strait of *Magellan*; a place of that nature, that which waysoever a man bend his course, he shall be sure to have the Wind against him. The length hereof is 40 Leagues; the breadth in some places two Leagues over, in others not fully half a mile. The Channel in depth 200 Fathoms, so no hope of Anchorage; the course of the Water full of turnings and changing, withal so violent, that when a ship is once entred there is no returning. On both sides of it are high Mountains continually covered with snow, from which proceed those Counter-winds which beat with equal fury on all parts thereof. A place assuredly not pleasing to view, and very hazardous to pass. So far, and to this purpose Mr. *Davis*.

But to proceed: the way thus opened was travelled not long after, *Anno* 1525, by *Garcia de Loyafá*; next in the year 1534, by *Simon de Alcazar*, and four years after by three ships of the Bishop of *Panama* in *Spain*; but none of them had the hap or courage to adventure thro' till undertaken and Performed by Sir *Francis Drake*, *Anno* 1577, after which it grew more familiar amongst the Seamen. However, we are so much Debtors to the Attempts of others as that we owe to them the most part of the names of those Bays and Promontories which they discovered in the search: though many of them be since new named by the *English* and *Hollanders*. Those of most note, Proceeding from *Cabo de la Victoria*, are 1. *Cabo de Quada*, 2. *Cape Gallant*, 3. *Cordes Bay*, 4. *Cape Edwards*, being the very point or Conus of this great *Pyramit*. 5. *Porto Famine*, 6. A little Isle called *Elizabetha* Island, and at the exit of the Strait in *Mare del Zur*, the escape of *Virgins*. Then bending northward toward the great River of *Plata*, we find upon the Main Ocean 1. *Rio de la Cruz*, neighboured by a Promontory called *Cabo de las Barreras*, where *Angellan* flaid all September, and the greatest part of *October*, in expectation of an opportunity to discover farther, 2. The Bay of *S. Julian*,

out of which he set sail for this Adventure about the latter end of *August*, leaving there two of his Companions Condemned of Mutiny. 3. The Port of *Desire*. 4. A large Promontory, called the Cape of *S. George*. 5. The out-lets of a fair River, named *Rio de los Comenens*. 6. A goodly Haven, entitled *Puerto de los Leones*. 7. The Cape called *Punta de terra plana*. 8. The Bay of *Amegada*. 9. The Promontory called the Cape of *S. Andrevi*. And 10. the River of *S. Anna*, beyond which lieth the Province of the River of *Plata*. This is the most that I can say touching *Magellan*, as to the Havens, Rivers, Points, and Promontories; and this is nothing (as we see) but a *Nomenclator*; it mult be better peopled and more discovered before it can afford Discourse of more variety. All we can add is, that the Passage back again from *Mare del Zur*, to the *Atlantic* hath not been found so safe and ease, as from the main *Atlantic* unto *Mare del Zur*. Attempted first by *Ladrillero a Spaniard*, at the command of *Garcia de Mendoza*, Governor of *Chile*, and attempted only; performed not long after the Voyage of Sir *Francis Drake* by *D. Pedro Sarmiento*, employed therein by *Francis de Toledo*, Viceroy of *Peru*, with much difficulty, and no less danger: so much, that few have since endeavoured to return that way.

As for the Fortunes and affairs of the Province of *Chile*, to which we have made this an Appendix, we are to understand that it was first discovered by *Almagro de Alvarado*, one of *Pizarro's* chief Friends and Associates. But he having other designs in his head about *Peru*, which he intended for himself, and to out *Pizarro*, did discover it only; the Conquest of it being reserved for *Baldivia*, whom *Pizarro*, on the settling of his Affairs by the death of *Almagro*, had employed in that action. He, going Soldier-like to work, not only did subdue the People; but, as he gained ground, built some Fortresses, or planted Colonies of *Spaniards*. In convenient places, This done, about the year 1544, his ill luck was to meet with more stubborn and untractable people than either *Cortez* or *Pizarro* had done before him; who, quickly

wearied of the Yoke, besieged one of his Forts, encountered *Baldivia* himself coming with too small a power to relieve his people, vanquished and flew him in the Field. Some add, that they poured Gold into his Throat: as the *Parthians* are reported to have done to *Craffus* bidding him *suicide himself* with that which he so much thirsted after. After this blow given in the year 1551, The *Savages* recovered the rich Valleys of *Atacama*, *Tucapel*, and *Purene*; which they keep from them till this day. The Towns of *Los Confines* and *Pilla Rica*, both on the borders of those Valleys, were deserted also. Nor staid they there, though they took time to breath a little. For in the year 1599, (having provided themselves of 200 Corlets and seventy Muskets) they break out again, surprised and sacked the Town of *Baldivia*, forced *Imperiale*, after a whole years Siege to surrender without any Conditions, and in the year 1603, took *Oforno* by *Famine*. Of thirteen Cities which the *Spaniards* had possessed amongst them, they had taken nine: some of them since recovered, but the most demolished. As ill it thrived with them in *Magallania*, where *Pedro de Sarmiento* undertook the planting of two Colonies to command those Straights, *Anno* 1584. The one he settled near the mouth of the Strait, which he called by the name of *Nombre de Jesus*, and left therein 150 of his men: the other he intended on the narrowest place of the Strait, to be called *Covidad del Rey Philip*, which he reforted to fortifie and plant with Ordnance. But winter coming on, he left there other of his men, promising to relieve them shortly with all things necessary. But such was his unhappy fate, that after many shipwrecks and disappointments which befel unto him in the pursuit of his Design, he was at last taken by the *English*, under the command of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who was there in person; and his two Colonies, for want of timely Succors, either starved at home, or eaten by the *Savages*, as they ranged the Country.

And so much for *CHILE*.

O F PARAGUAY.

PARAGUAY is bounded on the South with *Magallania*; on the East, with the main *Atlantic*; on the North, with *Brasil*; on the West, with some unknown Countreys betwixt it and *Chile*. So called from the River of *Paraguay* (one of the greatest of the World) which runneth through it; the River of the Province both by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de la Plata*, from the great store of Silver they expected from it.

The Country (for so much as hath been discovered) is said to be of a fruitful soil, capable of Wheat and other of the Fruits of *Europe*, which thrive here exceedingly: nor do the Cattle encrease less which were brought from *Spain*, both Kine and Horses multiplying in a wonderful manner, Well stored with Sugar-Canes, and not unfurnished of Mines both of Bräis and Iron,

some Veins of Gold and Silver, and great plenty of *Amythists*. Of Stags great plenty, and of Monies almost infinite numbers; not to say any thing of Lions, Tigers and such hurtful Creatures, of which a few would be thought too many. Of the people there is nothing said but what hath been observed of other *Savages*.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *De la Plata*, whose course we have described already. 3. *Rio de Buenos Ayres*, so called from the chief Town, by which runneth. 3. *Zaracuan*, which riseth in the Country of the *Diagnitas*, and falling into a Lake at the end of his course, doth from thence pass into the body of *De la Plata*. 4. *Elera*, which rising in the Valley of *Chalacqui*, and passing through two great Lakes, meets with 5. the *Bernio*, and both together fall into *De la Plata* near the Town of *S. Foy*. 6. *Pilemayo*, which hath its Fountain near the Mines of *Potosi*, in the Province of *Charcas*; but his fall in the same River with those before. Then on the North side

of that River there is, 7. that of S. *Saviour*, or S. *Salvador*; 8. the *Rio Negra*, or the Black River, of a longer course, but buried in the end, as the other is, in the depths of La *Plata*. 9. *Iguazu*, and 10. several others, which united Streams make the great River *Parana*, the second River of fifteen in all this Country, but swallowed in that of *Plata*. Besides these, 11. *Rio de S. Martin*, and 12. *Rio Grande*, falling into the Ocean.

It comprehendeth the three Provinces of, 1. *Rio de la Plata*. 2. *Tucuman*, and 3. *S. Cruz de Sierra*. The rest not conquered by the *Spaniards*, or not well discovered cannot be properly reduced under any Method.

1. *RIO DE LA PLATA*, or the Province of *De la Plata*, lieth upon both sides of that River, ascending many Leagues up the Water, but not extended much upon either side. The reason of the name, the quality of the Soil and People, we have seen before.

Chief Towns herof, 1. *Buenos Ayres*, or *Nuestra Señora de Buenos Ayres*, by others called *Ciudad de la Trinidad*, located on the Southern Bank of the River of *Plata*, there built by *Pedro de Mendoza*, Anno 1535. Deferred by the Inhabitants, and again new-peopled by *Cabeza de Vaca*, Anno 1542. It was afterwards again abandoned, and finally, in the year 1582, re-edified and planned with a new Colony. Situate on the rising of a little Hill, in the 34. degree and 45 minutes of the Southern Latitude, and about 64 Leagues from the mouth of the River. Fortified with a Mud-wall and a little Castle, with some pieces of Ordnance: yet neither large, nor much frequented, containing but 200 Inhabitants. 2. *S. Fe*, or *S. Fidelis*, 50 Leagues up the River from *Buenos Ayres*, on the same side of the Water, near the confluence of it with the River *Efeco*: of the same bigness as the other, but somewhat richer; the people here being given to Cloathing, which Manufacture they exchange with the *Brasilians* for Sugar, Rice, and other necessary commodities. 3. *Nuestra Señora del Assumpcion*, but commonly *Assumpcion* only, higher up the River, from the mouth thereof 300 Leagues distant: situate in the Latitude of 25, and almost in the midst betwixt *Peru* and *Brasil*, well built, and very well frequented, as the chief of the whole Country. Inhabited by three sorts of men: first, natural *Spaniards*, of which here are accounted 400 Families; 2. the *Mestizos* begotten by the *Spaniards* upon the Natives, and 3. *Mulattoes*, born of the *Spaniards* and *Negroes*: of which two last here are thought to be many thousands. Not far off is a great Lake called *Tupumam*, in the midst whereof is an huge Rock, above 100 Fathom high above the Water. 4. *Ciudad del Real*, by the *Spaniards* called *Alto Onivero*, by the Natives *Guyra*, 80 Leagues North from the Town of *Assumpcion*, situate on the banks of the River *Parana*, in a fruitful Soil but a sickly Air, for which cause, and the frequent Insurrection of the Savages, but meanly peopled. 5. *S. Ame*, on the banks of the same River *Parana*. 6. *S. Salvador*, on a River of the same name. Besides these, there are up the River above *Assumpcion* three noted Ports. 7. *Puerto de Guaybiano*, 8. *Puerto de la Candelaria*, and 9. *Puerto de los Reyes*; but whether Towns, or only Havens on that River for discharging and bartering their Commodities, I am not able to say. The last have one memorable for the defeat of *John de Ayolas*, and the death of 80 of his men by the hands of the Savages.

2. *TUCUMAN* lieth on the West of *Rio de la Plata*, extending towards the Confines of *Chile*, through which they make their way unto *Mare del Sur*, as through the Province of *Rio de la Plata* unto *Mare del Noordo*; the exact bounds herof to the North and South not yet resolved on.

The Country, for so much herof as lieth towards

Chile, is well manured and fruitful, that towards *Magdalena* barren, untilled, and not well discovered. No Veins of Gold or Silver in it, though situate in a temperate and agreeable air. Watered by the two Rivers, of 1. *Salado*, so called from the brackishness and bitterness of its; and 2. *Del Efeco*, spoken of before, so named, because sometimes it breaketh out of his Banks. The Inhabitants now civilized both in manners and habit, in both which they conform to the Garb of the *Spaniards*.

Chief Towns herof, 1. *S. Jago del Efeco*, on the banks of that River, by the natural Inhabitants called *Parco*, the principal of that small Province, honoured with a Bishop's See and the Seat of the Governour, and distant about 180 Leagues from *Buenos Ayres*. 2. *S. Michael de Tucuman*, seated at the foot of a Rocky Mountain, but near a very fruitful soil both for Corn and Pasturage, distant 28 Leagues from *S. Jago*. 3. *Talavera* or *Nuestra Señora de Talavera*, but by the Natives called *Efeco*; situate on the River *Salado*, before mentioned, in a fruitful soil, and inhabited by an industrious People, grown wealthy by their Manufactures of Cotton wools, which grow hereabouts in great abundance, with which they drive a great Trade at the Mines of *Potosi*, from hence distant but 140 Leagues. 4. *Corduba*, in a convenient place for Trade, as Being equally distant from *S. Juan de la Frontera*, in the Prefecture of *Chile*, and *S. Fe*, in *Rio de la Plata*. 50 Leagues from each, and seated in a Road from *Peru* unto *Buenos Ayres*, much travelled consequently by those who go from *Peru* to *Brasil* or *Spain*. 5. *New London*, and 6. *New Corduba*; built at such time as *Garcias de Mendoza*, Son of the Marquess of *Camete*, and Vice-roy of *Peru*, was Governour of this Province: but both abandoned not long after. Besides these, 7. *Morata*, 8. *Chocoma*, 9. *Sococha*, and 10. *Calabima*; Towns belonging to the Natives.

3. *S. CRUZ DE SIERRA*, is the name of a little Territory lying towards *Peru*, on the North of the River *Guayay*, and in the Country of the *Chiquitos* and *Chiriguanoes*, two Tribes of the Savages. By some accounted to *Peru*, because under the Juridical Resort of *Charcas*, but so far distant from the nearest bounds of that Province, (100 *Spanish* Leagues at least) that I think fitter to account it to the Province of *Paraguay*, betwixt the banks of which River and that of *Guayay* it is wholly seated.

The Soil is abundantly productive of Maize and Wines, plenty of most sorts of *American* Fruits, which I can give no *English* name to; a kind of Palm, of whose Trunk they make great store of Meal, of good taste and nourishment. But neither Soil nor Air agreeable to the Fruits of *Europe*, which ripen slowly, and soon die. So defective of Rivers, that the Inhabitants were fain to make use of Rain water preserved in pits: the cause of no small Wants, and of many great Murders; the people either dying for thirst, or killing one another for some water to quench it.

Chief Towns herof, 1. *Santa Cruz*, situate at the foot of a great Mountain, whence the name of the Province; but situate in an open Field, enlarging it self into many Plains and thirly Valleys, neighboured by a Brook or Torrent, breaking from the Rocks, which four Leagues from the Town is become a Pond, and plentifully doth supply the Town with fish. 2. *Baranca*, 60 Leagues from the Mines of *Potosi*. 3. *Tomin*, 4. *Lagualla*, and 5. *Taxaria*, three Forts erected for defence of this Province against the Incursions and Alarms of the *Chiriguanoes*.

6. *Nueva Risio*, once a Colony of the *Spaniards*, but sacked and dispersed by the *Chiriguanoes*, when the Count of *Nueva* was Vice-roy of *Peru*: at what time *Nuestra de charas*, who in the year 1548 first discovered those parts

darts, was treacherously slain by one of the Savages. The principal Nations of this Country, when first known to the *Spaniards*, were the *Quaramas*, *Timbuet*, and *Caracares*, the *Chavet*, *Chimint*, *Guayay*, the *Guayay*, *Cacoret*, *Guaxarapi*, &c. on both sides of the River of *Plata*; the *Tucumanes*, *Jurist*, and *Diagnostas*, in the *Cañad de Tucuman*: more Northward, where the *Spaniards* have as yet no Hold, the *Chumfif*, *Xapessif*, *Xicoots*, and the *Xarayes*, great and powerful Nations, hitherto unconquered. The first Discovery of this Country is ascribed to *John Dias de Solis*, a *Spanish* Adventurer; who in the year 1515, passing up the River to the Latitude of 34 Degrees and 40 minutes, and unadvisedly landing with too small a power, was there unfortunately slain. The Design was after prosecuted by *Sebastian Cabot*, Anno 1526, who failed against the dream as high as the River *Parana*; at the reception of which, the great River, called till then by the name of *Paraguay*, begins to

be called *De la Plata*. Here built he the Fortresses called *Fort Cabot*, and 30 Leagues more up the River that called *S. Ame*, (both long since ruined) where *Diego Garci*, a *Portugal*, found him in the year next following. In the year 1535, the business was resumed by *Pedro de Mendoza*, who built the Town of *Buenos Ayres*, and sent *John de Ayolanto* to discover Northwards; of whose unhappiness we have heard before. Not fully settled till the year 1540, when *Alvarez Nomes*, commonly called *Cabeza de Vaca*, made a more full discovery of it, and planted Colonies of *Spaniards* in convenient places. Nothing since done for the farther planting of the Country, though some places have been marked out for new Plantations; here being little Gold and Silver, and consequently not much temptation to draw on the *Spaniards* to the work.

And so much for *PARAGUAY*.

OF

BRASIL.

BRASIL is bounded on the East with *Mare del Noordo*, or the main *Atlantic*; on the West, with some undiscovered Countries lying betwixt it and the *Andes*; to the North, with *Guiana*, from which parted by the great River *Maraguan*; and on the South, with *Paraguay*, or the Province of *Rio de la Plata*. The reason of the name I find not, except it came from the abundance of that Wood called *Brasil-wood*, which was found amongst them; as the famous Isle of *Cyprus*, from its plenty of *Cypresses*.

It reacheth from the 29 to the 35 Degree of Southern Latitude; or measuring it by miles, it is said to be 1500 miles from North to South, and 500 miles in breadth from the sea to the *Andes*: which must be understood with reference to the whole extent of it; for otherwise all that which is possessed by the *Portugals* under the name of *Brasil* is so short of taking up all the breadth herof, that they possess nothing but the sea-coasts, and some few Leagues (comparatively) within the Land; the greatest part of it being so far from being conquered, that it hath not hitherto been discovered.

The Country is full of Mountains, Rivers, and Forests, diversified into Hills and Plains always pleasant and green. The Air for the most part found and wholesome; them, there being all along the Coasts certain quick Winds rising from the South about 2 hours before Noon, which do much benefit the Inhabitants: yet in regard it is somewhat moist, it is held to be more agreeable to old men than to young. The soil is in most parts very fruitful, were it not too much loaded with Rain: but howsoever liberally provided of Sugar-canes, (no one Country more) for the refining of which they have their *Ingénios* (as they call them) or sugar-houses, in most parts of the Country, in which they entertain many thousand slaves, brought hither yearly from *Guinea* and *Congo*, and other Maritime parts of *Africk*. A Trade in which the *Portugals* are much delighted, and cannot blame them; there being few years, in each of which they bring not out

of *Brasil* to *Portugal* 150000 *Arrobes* of Sugar; every *Arrobe* containing 25 Bushels of our *English* measure: Here is also infinite quantities of that red Wood used in dying cloth, which we commonly call *Brasil-wood*; (but whether the Wood took that name from the Country, or the Country rather from the Wood, I determine not:) the Trees whereof are of that incredible greenness, that whole Families live on an arm of one of them, every Tree being as populous as the most of our Villages. In other Commodities, common to them with the other *Americans*, we need not give particular instance.

Amongst the Rarities herof are reckoned, 1. the Plant called *Capiba*, the Bark of which being cut doth send out a Balm, the sovereign virtue whereof is so well known to the very Beasts, that being bit by venomous Serpents, they resort unto it for their Cure. 2. The Herb called *Senida*, or *Viva*, which roughly touched will close the Leaves, and not open them again till the man that had offended it be gone out of sight. 3. A kind of Wheat in the Valley near unto *S. Sebastian*, which is continually growing, and always ripe; or never wholly ripe, because always growing; for when one Ear doth grain, another doth bloom; when one is ripe and yellow, another is green. 4. The Ox-fish, with Eyes, and Eye-lids, two Arms a Cubit long and at each an Hand with five Fingers; and Nails, as in a Man; under the Arms two Teats, like a Cow, in every Female. 5. A Creature found of late about the Bay of *All-Saints*, which had the Face of an Ape, the Foot of a Lion, and all the rest of a Man; of such a terrible Aspect, that the Soldier who shot him fell down dead. But this I rather look on as an Alteration of Nature, than a Rarity in her. 6. Beasts of such strange shapes, and such several kinds, that it may be said of *Brasil* as once of *Africk*, *Semper aliquid opportuna novi*, every day some new object of Admiration.

The People here are endowed with a pretty understanding, as may seem by him who lately blam'd the Covetousness of the *Spanish*, for coming from the other end of the World to dig for Gold; and holding up a Wedge of Gold, cried out, *Behold the God of the Christian*. But in

Y y y y
most

most places they are barbarous, the Men and Women go stark naked, and on high Festival days hang Jewels in their Lips. These Festival days are when a company of good neighbours come together to be merry over the roasted body of a fat Man, whom they cut in Collops, called *Boucan*, and eat with great greediness and much decoration. They have two vile qualities, as being mindful of Injuries, and forgetful of benefits. The Men Cruel without measure, and the Women infinitely lascivious. They cannot pronounce the Letters *L. F. R.* The reason of which, one being demanded, made answer, because they had amongst them neither Law, Faith, nor Rulers. They are able Swimmers, as well Women as Men; and will stay under Water an hour together. Women in Travel are here delivered without any great Pain, and presently go about their business belonging to good Housewives: the good man (according to the fashion of our kinder sorts of Husbands in England, who are said to breed their Wives Children) being sick in their stead, and keeping their Beds: for that he hath Broaths made him, is visited by his Gossips, or Neighbours, and hath Junkets sent to comfort him. And amongst these there are some Rarities, if not monstrosities, in nature: it being said of those which live towards the *Audes*, that they are hairy all over like Beasts, such as *Orson* is feigned to have been in the old Romes, and probably so ingendered; also that the *Guaynaries* disbowled women with Child, and roast the Children; and finally, that the Savage Nation of *Commenaria* have their Paps almost down upon their Knees, which they tie about their waste when they run, or go faster than ordinary.

Rivers of note I find not any till I come to *Maragnon*, though that be a Boundary rather betwixt this & *Guiana*, than proper unto this alone. If any chance to come in our way as we cross the Country, we shall not pass them over without some remembrance. And so proceed we to the Division of the Country, not into Provinces or Nations, as in other places, but into Prefectures, or Captainships, as the *Portugals* call them. Of which there are 13 in all, which we shall severally touch on as we trace the Coast, from the Province of *Rio de la Plata* unto that of *Guiana*; that is to say,

1. The Captainship of *St. VINCENT*, bordering on *Rio de la Plata*, inhabited by the most civil people of all *Brasil*, Chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Santos*, at the bottom of an Arm of the sea, capable of good Ships of burthen, but distant from the Main three Leagues. A Town of no more than 120 Houses, yet the best of this Prefecture; beautified with a Parish Church, and two Convents of Friars. Taken and held two months by Sir *Th. Cavendish*, Anno 1591; since that environed with a Wall and fortified with two Castles. 2. *S. Vincens*, better built, but not so well inhabited with an Haven, of about 90 Houses, and 100 Inhabitants. 3. *Itange*, and 4. *Cananea*, two open Burroughs, but capable of lesser Vessels. 5. *S. Paul*, upon a little Mountain, at the foot whereof run two pleasant Rivers, which fall not far off into the River of *Jamibui*. A Town of about 100 houses, one Church, two Convents, and a College of Jesuites; neighbored by Mines of Gold found in the Mountains called *Pernabiacaba*. 6. *S. Philips*, a small Town on the banks of *Jamibui*, where there begins to enlarge it self and passing thence falleth at last into the River *Parana*, one of the greatest Tributaries to *Rio de la Plata*.

2. OF *RIO DE JANEIRO*, or the River of *Janeiro*, so called, because entered into that month by *John Dias de Solis*, Anno 1515, neglected by the *Portugals*, it was seized on by the *French*, under the conduct of *Villemarin*, employed herein by Admiral *Chastillon*, a great friend of the *Hugonots*, to whom it was intended for a

place of Refuge, (as *New England* afterwards for the like) but within three years after their first coming thither. Anno 1538, regained by the *Portugals*, and the *French* put unto the sword. Places of most consideration in it, 1. *Collegina*, the Fort and Colony of the *French*, so named in honour of *Gaspard Colligny*, (commonly called *Chastillon*) by whose encouragement it was founded. Situate on the Bay of the River *Janeiro*, which the *French* called *Ganabara*. 2. *S. Sebastians*, built at the mouth of the same Bay by the *Portugals*, after they had expelled the *French*, and fortified with four strong Bulwarks. 3. *Angra des Reyes*, distant 12 Leagues Westward from the mouth of the Bay; not long since made a *Portugal* Colony. Besides these, there are two great Burroughs of the natural *Brasilians*, in which are said to be above 2000 Inhabitants.

3. OF the *HOLT GHOST*, (*del Spiritu Santo*) one of the most fertile Provinces of all *Brasil*; well stored with Cotton-wool, and watered with the River *Parayba*, large, and full of Fish. The only Town of note in it is *Spiritu Santo*, inhabited by about 200 *Portugals*. The chief building of it, a Church Dedicated to *S. Francis*, a Monastery of Benedictines, and a College of Jesuites: the chief convenience, a safe and commodious Haven capable of the greatest Vessels.

4. OF *PORTO SEGURO*, the secure Haven, so called by *Capralis*, who first discovered it, when being tossed at sea by a terrible Tempest, he had here refreshed himself. Chief Towns herof, 1. *Port Seguro*, built on the top of a white Cliff, which commands the Haven; of more Antiquity then Fame, of more fame then bigness, as not containing fully 200 Families. 2. *Santa Cruz*, three Leagues from the other, a poor Town with as poor an Harbour; the Patrimony & Inheritance of the Dukes of *Aveira* in the Realm of *Portugal*. 3. *Santo Amaro*, or *S. Omer*, once of great note for making Sugars, for which use here were five *Engenios*, or Sugar Engines; deserted by the *Portugals* for fear of the Savages, against whom they'd not power enough to make good the place, and the Sugars destroyed of purpose, that they might not come into the hands of the barbarous people.

5. OF *DES ILHEOS*, or of the Isles, so named from certain Islands lying against the Bay, on which the principal Town is seated, called also *Ilheos*, or the Island, (with like Analogy as a Town of good note in *Flanders* hath the name of *Insula* or *Lisse*): the Town consisting of about 150 or 200 Families, situate on a little River, but neighbored by a great Lake of 12 Leagues in compass, (out of which that River doth arise) full of a great, but wholesome Fish, which they call *Monsters*, some of which are affirmed to weigh 28 pounds. This Colony was much endangered by the *Guaymurs*, a Race of Savages more savage then any of their Fellows, who, being driven out of their own Country, fell into this Prefecture, which they had utterly destroyed, if some of *S. George's* Religions, as the Jesuites tell us (but I bind no man to believe it) sent by their General from *Rome*, Anno 1581, had not stayed their fury, and given the *Portugals* the better.

6. OF *OTODOS LOS SANTOS*, or *All Saints*, so called from a large Bay of that name, upon which it lieth, in breadth two Leagues and an half, 18 Fathoms deep, and full of many little Islands; but flourishing and pleasant, and well stored with Cotton-wool. A Bay in which are many safe Stations and Roads for shipping, and therefore of great use and consequence in those furious seas. Memorable for the hardy Enterprize of *Peter Heyns*, a Dutch man, Admiral of the Navy of the United Provinces; who, in the year 1627, seized on a Fleet of *Spaniards*, consisting of 26 sail of ships, (four of them being Men of War) all lying under the Protection of the Forts and Castles, built for the safety of that Bay. For thrusting in amongst them with his own Ship only (the rest

not

not being able to follow) he so laid about him that having sunk the Vice-Admiral, he took all the rest, conditioning only for their lives, notwithstanding all the shot which was made against him from the Ships and Castles and 42 pieces of Ordnance planted on the shore. Chief Towns herof, 1. *S. Salvador*, built on a little Hill on the North-side of the Bay by *Thomas de Sousa*, adorned with many Churches and Religious Houses, and fortified (besides the Wall) with three strong Castles; the one called *S. Anthony*, the other *S. Philip*, and the third *Lapeire*. Yet not so strong by reason of some Hills adjoining which command the Town, but that it was taken by the *Hollanders*, Anno 1624, recovered by the *Spaniards* the next year after, and since lost again. 2. *Paripe*, more within the Land, four Leagues from *S. Saviour's*. 3. *Serepippe del Rey*, a small Town, and seated on as small a River, but amongst many rich pictures, and some Veins of Silver.

7. OF *FERNAMBURGO*, one of the richest Prefectures for Tobacco, Sugar, and the great quantity of *Brasil*-wood which is brought hence yearly for the *Diers*, in all this Country; but destitute of Corn and most other necessities, which supplied from the *Canaries*, and sometimes from *Portugal*. Chief Towns herof, 1. *Olanda*, the largest and best peopled of all *Brasil*, containing above 2000 persons; not reckoning in the Church-men, nor taking the great number of Slaves which they keep for their Sugar-works into the account: for whose use they have here eight Parochial Churches, five Religious Houses, and some Hospitals. Situate near the Sea-side, but on 11 uneven piece of ground, as makes it not capable of a regular Fortification; the Haven being little, and not very commodious, but defended at the entrance by a well-built Castle, and that well planted with *Bras*-pieces. Which notwithstanding, in the year 1595, the *Castles* and the Suburbs along the Port (wherein they used to flow all their chief Commodities) were taken by Captain *James Lancaster* and some few of the *English*, who having tarried in the Haven above a month, brought home with him eight of his own Ships, four *French* men, and three *Hollanders* which came in by chance, all laden with the choicest Merchandise of *Brasil* and *India*. 2. *A-matta de Brasil*, ten miles from *Olanda*, the Inhabitants whereof live by selling the *Brasil*-wood. 3. *S. Lawrence*, a well-frequented Village, but as yet unwall'd, 4. *Poin-cur*, upon a River so named. 5. *Antonio de Cabo*, near the Cape of *S. Augustines*; both of good note for the great quantity of Sugars which are made in each. 6. *Gravata*, about five Leagues from *Olanda*, inhabited for the most part by poor and Mechanical persons, till the year 1632, when taken by the *Hollanders*, and planted with a people of higher quality. This Prefecture, belonging formerly to the Earls of *Albuquerque*, (a great House in *Spain*) is now wholly in the hands of the States of the *Provinces* united, the Town of *Olanda* being taken by them in the year 1620, the Port and all the Avenues unto it so strongly fortified, that they have hitherto enjoyed it.

8. OF *TAMARACA*, so called from an Island of that name, distant about five miles from *Olanda*, of no great note, but for the Haven, and an impregnable Castle on the top of an Hill for defence thereof. Which when the *Hollanders* could not take, they built a strong Bulwark at the mouth of the Port, and so blocked it up, that it hath since been of no use to the *Spaniards*. This is the least Prefecture in *Brasil*, but withal the ancientest; extended three Leagues only in length, and but two in breadth: the Patrimony of the Earls of *Montano* in *Portugal*, who received hence yearly, when entire, thirty thousand Ducats. But his Rents are much diminished, if not quite inverted, since the loss of the Haven.

9. OF *PARAIBA*, so called from a River of

that name (but by the *Spaniards* called *Domingo*) of most note herein, on the banks whereof standeth *Paraiba*, about 3 Leagues from the Main, but capable of pretty long ships to the very Town. The Town inhabited not long since by 500 *Portugals*, besides Slaves and *Negroes*. Not walled, till they began to stand in fear of the *Hollanders*, on the loss of *Olanda*; but more secured by a strong Castle on the Promontory called *Cabo Delo*, which the *Hollanders* have in vain attempted, then by any works within the Land. A Castle which acknowledged the fidelity of the Founders of it, who for a while were possessed of this Tract, and gave name to an adjoining Haven, called *Port Francois*, but ousted by the *Portugals*, Anno 1583, who have since held their footing in it, but with fear of the *Hollanders*; especially since their taking of a little Island lying over against them, called the Isle of *Noronha*.

10. OF *RIO GRANDE*, so called from the River *Patoing*, (as the Natives term it) which the *Portugals* call *Rio Grande*, or the great River; not made a Prefecture till of late. For lying open, as it were, to the next Pretender, some of the *French* began to fix here, Anno 1597. But the King of *Spain*, not willing to have any such thing thence, which was done accordingly. But then the Savages beginning to rise up in Arms, the Captain of *Paraiba* was fain to seek aid from him of *Fernambuck*; by whose help having slain five thousand, and took three thousand of them, the rest became Vassals to the *Portugals*, who built here an impregnable Castle, (which is all the footing they have in it) well manned, and furnished with Ammunition and all other Necessaries, very few *Portugals*, except those of the Garrison, being yet come over.

11. OF *S. IARA*, a late Prefecture also, in which the *Portugals* have no more than a Castle, with a dozen Houses, or thereabouts, besides that of the Governour adjoining to it. So named from an Haven called *S. Iara*, but of no great note, and capable but of little Vessels. Of some Trade in regard of the Crystal, Cotton-wool, and some precious Stones found in the Country hereabouts: and certainly would be of greater, if once the *Portugals* would be active and pursue the Conquest, here being great plenty of Sugar canes, but no Works to make it.

12. OF *MARACON*, an Island lying in the mouth of the great River so called, in the farthest parts of *Brasil* Northwards, and many Leagues distant from *S. Iara*, the last of their Prefectures: the Country intervening not yet discovered, or otherwise made known unto us, then by the names of the Ports and Promontories found upon the Coast. An Island of a fruitful Soil, if pains and Husbandry were not wanting; affording naturally Maize, and a root called *Manioc*, both which the Savages use for Bread; good Food of Cotton-wools, Saffron, *Brasil*-wood, and the best Tobacco; and in some places Balm and Amber. Watered with many fresh Rivers and pleasant Springs, well wooded both for Timber and Fuel (as in a word, blessed with so temperate an Air, (though dangerous for the Life of Man) The People strong of body, healthy and long lived, without any baldness, industrious in their Feather works and Manufactures of Cotton the Women curious in ordering their Hair, fruitful in Child-bearing, and that till 80 years old, and sometimes more. Both Sexes naked till their Marriage, and then apparelled only from their Waist to their Knees.

The Villages herof possessed by the Natives consisted of but four great Houses, each of them two or three hundred foot in length, and twenty or thirty foot in breadth.

Y y y y 2

breadth so placed as they resembled a quadrangular Cloyster; and in each Houfe so many Houholds, that commonly each of their Villages, or *Taves*, (for so they called them) contained three hundred persons, and some twice that number. Of these were twenty seven in all, whose names I hold myself to be multered here, the total estimate of the people when the French came thither amounting to 12000 Souls. For the French trading in this Island, and carrying themselves courteously amongst the Natives, found them not unwilling to admit a Colony of that Nation, if sent over to them, by whose Aid they might free themselves from all other Pretenders, and be instructed in the Gospel. Accordingly a Colony and four Capuchin Friars are sent over to them, Anno 1612. some Savages gained unto the Faith, and a strong Castle, called *S. Lewis*, commodiously built, and planted with 22 pieces of Ordnance; the effect of that Voyage. But long they had not rested there when defeated by the Portuguese, sent thither under the conduct of Hierome de Albuquerque, Anno 1514. Who to the Castle of *S. Lewis*, which the French had built, added those of *S. Mary*, and *S. Francis*, planted two Villages in the Island by the names of *S. Andrew*, and *S. Jago*, and ever since have held it without molestation.

13. Of *PARA*, the most Northern Prefecture of Brazil towards Guiana; so called from the River of *Para*, (supposed to be a branch of the River of *Amazon*) which runneth through it. The River at the mouth of it is two miles in breadth, and in the middle of the Channel fifteen Fathoms deep: on the banks whereof (but on an higher ground than the rest) the Portuguese have built the Castle of *Para*, in form quadrangular, and well-walled, except towards the River: the Country thereabouts being inhabited by 300 Portuguese, besides the Garrison.

Now for the Fortunes of the whole, it never did acknowledge any one Supreme. Divided into many Tribes and each Tribe Governed by their Chiefs, as in other Countries. These Tribes so many, and the Multer of their names so useless, that I now forbear it. In this estate they lived when discovered first; but by whom first discovered will not be agreed on. The Spaniards, to get some colour of a Title for the Crown of Castile, ascribe it to John Pinsonne and Diego de Lope, two of their own Coun-

try, who, as they say, had landed on it in the year 1500 before the coming of *Cipriano*, though the same year also. The Portuguese attribute the Discovery of it to *Pedro Alvarez de Cabral*, sent by their King *Emanuel* to the East-Indies; who being driven over hither from the Coast of Guinea, took possession of it, and as a Monument thereof, advanced a Cross, giving the name of *Santa Cruz*, for the Holy Cross, to this new Discovery. That name changed afterwards to *Brazil*, from the abundance of that Wood (as it is conceived) which was found amongst them. Notice hereof being given to the Court of Portugal, *Americus Vesputius*, a noble Florentine, Anno 1501. and after him *John de Empoli*, another of that Nation, in the year 1503, were by *Emanuel* employed in a farther Discovery. Who speeding fortunately in it, the Portuguese did accordingly send over some Plantations thither. But a great controversy growing betwixt them and the Spaniards, to whether of the two it of right belonged; the Spaniards was content to yield it to the Crown of Portugal, though by the Bull or Edict of Pope Alexander the sixth (by whom the whole undiscovered World was divided betwixt those two Kings) it seemed to fall within the Grant made to the Crown of Castile. Enjoyed by this *Emanuel*, and the Kings succeeding, till the death of *Sebastian*, (which *Sebastian* the Jesuites look on as the Founder of all their Colleges in this Country) and by the Spaniards since the death of *Henry*, (whose Reign continued but a year) though in the name and right of the Crown of Portugal; that Nation being so prudently jealous of their Interest in it, that they would not suffer any of the Subjects of Spain to grow great amongst them. By them possessed entirely without any Rivals, (I mean for so much of the Country as they had subdued) till of late years the Hollanders put in for a part, and got the Prefectures of *Fernambuck* and *Todos los Santos* (or the Bay) by the right of War. The rest with all the other members of the Crown of Portugal, in the late Revolt of that Nation from the King of Spain, submitting unto John the fourth, of the House of *Braganza*, whom the Portuguese had made their King, Anno 1639.

And so much for *BRASIL*.

OF

GUIANA.

GUIANA is bounded on the East with the main Atlantic; on the West, with the Mountains of Peru, or rather some undiscovered Countries interposed between; on the North, with the River *Orenoque*, and on the South, with that of the *Amazon*. The reason of the name I find not, unless it be called from the River *Wia*, of which more anon.

It is situate on both sides of the Line, extended from the fourth Degree of Southern to the eighth of Northern Latitude. The Air, notwithstanding this situation under the Equator, is affirmed to be temperate, the Eastern

winds (which they call the *Briezacs*) constantly blowing about Noon, and mitigating the extreme heats thereof by their cooler blasts. The Country towards the Sea-side flat and level, the inland parts more mountainous and swelled with Hills: in all places so adorned with Natures Tapestry, the boughs and branches of the Trees never uncloathed or left naked, (Fruit either ripe or green growing still upon them) that no Country in the World could be better qualified. The particular Commodities of it we shall see anon, when the particular parts hereof come into discourse.

Of the People it is said in general, that they have amongst them no settled Government, and though they acknowledge some Superiority in the Chiefs of their Tribes yet

yet it is only voluntary as long and as little as they please. Adultery and murder, which are only punishable, are not otherwise expiated but by the death of the Offender. The richer folk have two or three Wives, and sometimes more; the poor but one, and hardly able to keep her: they that have more, and they who have but one, alike jealous of them; and if they take them in Adultery, without any farther Ceremony or Formalities of Law they beat out their Brains. Their Wives, especially the elder, they use for Servants; and he which hath most such is the greatest man. Without Religion, or any notion of a Godhead; not so far onwards on the way to the worship of the true God as to be Idolaters: for though Idolatry be mistaken in the proper Object, it supposeth a Deity; and they who have this principle that there is a God, have learned one, and not the least, of the points of their Cacchism. Their Accounts amongst themselves they keep with a bundle of sticks, which they diminish or increase according to the times of their Contract. Their Funerals they solemnize with a Feast, but with such diversity in the department of both Sexes, that while the Women hold extremely, the men perform the Obsequies with singing and excellent drinking; the one as improper for a Feast, as the other for a Funeral.

Rivers of most note in it, besides 1. *Orenoque*, and 2. the River of *Amazon*, and those rather Boundaries betwixt this and the neighbouring Provinces, then proper unto this alone. 3. *Arrawary*. 4. *Conawini*. 5. *Culparough*, or *Culpari*, all falling into the same main Atlantic, betwixt the River of *Amazon* and *Wiapoco*: the last rising out of the Lake of the *Arachosi*, half a mile broad at the mouth or influx into the Sea, and but five spans deep. 6. *Wiapoco*, of which more hereafter. 7. *Wia*. 8. *Cajane*. 9. *Marwin*. 10. *Essequibe*, a River of twenty days journey long, betwixt *Wiapoco* and the River of *Orenoque*, or *Rallina*.

The whole divided commonly into these four parts: 1. *Rio de las Amazonas*, or the River of *Amazon*. 2. *Wiapoco*, or *Guiana* specially so called. 3. *Orenoque*. And 4. The Isles of *Guiana*.

1. *RIO DE LAS AMAZONES*, or the River of *Amazon*, containeth that part of this Country which lieth along the Tract of that famous River. The Soil is in some places dry and barren, in others fertile and Productive of the choicest Fruits, full of large Woods, and in those Woods most sorts of Trees which are to be found in America: One amongst others of most note, (and perhaps peculiar to Guiana) which they call the *Toucke*: a Tree of great Bulk, and as great a Fruit; this last as big as a mans head, and so hard withal, that when the Fruit grows ripe and ready to fall, the people dare not go into the Woods without an Helmet, or some such shelter over their heads, for fear of beating out their Brains. The kernels of it, for the most part ten or twelve in number, have the taste of Almonds, and are said to be provocative in point of Venery. Of which the Savages have this By-word, *Pigue sique in Saccome pingeon Toucke*; that is to say, Eat *Toucke* if thou wouldst be potent in the acts of *Venus*. Here are also Sugar-Canes in some places; and the Plant called *Pina*, the taste whereof is said to be like Strawberries, Claret Wine, and Sugar.

The Principal Inhabitants of this part of the Country, the *Taoes*, *Cockitunay*, *Patecui*, *Tockiamer*, *Tomoer*, and *Wackebaner*, dwelling on the Continent; the *Maraons* and *Aravianis*, possessed of the Islands. Towns of note I have met with none amongst them, though every house (most of them 140 feet in length, 20 in breadth, and entertaining at the least an hundred persons) might pass sufficiently for a Village. Yet they are later housed than so, for otherwise their Houses would afford them but lit-

tle comfort in the overflowsings of the River which drown all the Country: and therefore they betake themselves to the tops of Trees, and there remain like Birds, with their several Families, till the Waters be drawn in again, and the Earth become more comfortable for habitation. Yet I find some of these their dwellings called by proper Names: as, 1. *Mataner*. 2. *Rackey*. 3. *Amatracok*. 4. *Haaman*. 5. *Wenian*. 6. *Cogonyanne*. But I find nothing but their names, and enough of that.

The first Discoverer of this River and the parts adjoining was *Orellana*, the Lieutenant of *Gonsalves Pizarro*, whom his Brother *Francisco Pizarro*, then Vice-roy of Peru, had made the Governour of *Quito*. Moved with the noise of some rich Countries beyond the *Andes*, he raised sufficient Forces, and passed over those Mountains, where finding want of all things for the life of man, they made a Boat, and sent this *Orellana* to bring in Provisions. But the River which he chanced into was so swift of course, that he was not able to go back, and was therefore of necessity to obey his fortune in following the course of that strong water. Passing along by divers desolate and unpeopled places, he came at last into a Country planted and inhabited; where he first heard of the *Amazon*, (by whose Savages called *Comanayacas*) of whom he was bidden to beware as a dangerous people. And in the end, having spent his time in passing down the river from the beginning of *January*, to the end of *August* 1540, he came at last into the Sea, and getting into the life of *Cibagua*, sailed into Spain. The course of this Voyage down the Water, he estimated at 1800 Leagues, (or 5400 English miles) but found no *Amazon* in his passage, as himself affirmed; only some masculine Women shewed themselves intermixt with the Men, to oppose his landing; and in some places he found Men with long Hair like Women: either of which might make these parts believed to be held by *Amazon*. But to proceed, arriving at the Court of Spain, he got Commision for the Conquest of the Countries by him discovered; and in the year 1540, he betook himself unto the service. But though he found the mouth of the River, one of them at least, he could never hit upon the Chanel which brought him down, though he attempted often. Which ill success, with the consideration of his loss both in Fame and Fortunes, brought him to his Grave, having got nothing but the honour of the first Discovery, and the leaving of his name to that famous River, since called *Orellana*. The Enterprise was pursued, but with like success, by one *Pedro de Orsua*, Anno 1560, after which the Spaniards gave it over. And though the English and the Hollanders have endeavour'd an exact Discovery, and several begun some Plantations in it, yet they proved as unfortunate as the other; their Quarters being beaten up by the neighbouring Portuguese, before they were sufficiently fortified to make any resistance.

2. *WIAPOCO*, or *GUIANA* specially so called, taketh up the middle of this Country, on both sides of the River of *Wiapoco*, whence it hath its name. A River of long Course, but not palpable up the Stream above 16 miles, by reason of a Cataract or great fall from the higher Ground: in breadth betwixt that Cataract and the *Aethurium*, about the tenth part of a mile; at the *Aethurium*, or Influx, a whole mile at least, and there about two Fathoms deep.

The Country on both sides of this River very rich and fertile; so natural for Tobacco, that it groweth to nine handfuls long. Sugar-canes grow here naturally without any planting, and on the Shrubs great store of Cotton, and the Dye by some called *Orellana*. Plenty of Venison, in their Woods, and of Fish in their Rivers: their Fields well stored with Beasts, which themselves call

Ahyres

Moyers, in shape and use resembling Kine, but without any Horns. The people generally of a modest and ingenuous countenance, naked, but would wear cloaths if they had them, or knew how to make them. Their Bread is made of a Plant called *Cassio*, of which also being dried and chewed, and then strained through a Wicker Vessel, they make a kind of Drink, in colour like new Ale, but not so well tasted, and of less continuance. The greatest part of their Food is Fish, which they intoxicate with a strong scented Wood, and so take them up as they lie floating on the top of the Water. Much troubled with a Worm like a Flea, (by the Spaniards called *Niguis*) which get under the nails of their Toes, and multiply there to infinite numbers, and the no less torture to the Patient, without speedy prevention. No better Remedy found out, then to pour Wax melted hot on the place affected, which being pulled off when it is cold, draws the Vermin with it, sometimes 800 at a pull. The women have fish cake child-birth, that they are delivered without help, and presently bring the Child to his Father, for they have so much natural modesty as to withdraw from company upon that occasion, who waleth it with water, and painteth it with several colours, and so returneth it to the Mother.

Rivers of note here are very many; no Country under Heaven being better watered, nor fuller of more pleasant and goodly streams. The names of some of them on both sides of the *Wiapoco* we have had before: the chief of which I take to be *Wia*, affirmed to be of a long course, a goodly River all the way, and at the Mouth thereof to be large and broad, which passing through the heart of the Country, in the fourth Degree and 40 minutes of Northern Latitude, may possibly occasion both the whole and this part more specially to be called *Wiana*, and by the Dutch, who cannot pronounce the *W. Guiana*. Certain I am, that by the name of *Wiana*, I have found it written in approved Authors. But what need farther search be made after lesser Rivers, (which will offer themselves to us of their own accord) when we have a Lake to pass over like a Sea for bigness, (*Magnum, sanctum, & vastum, insularis maris*, as my Author hath it) by the *Tao* or *Tao* called *Rapovinnin*, by the *Caribes* (the old Inhabitants of this Country) *Parimim*, situate about a days journey from the River *Elisquibo*, and neighboured by the great and famous City *Manna*, which the Spaniards call *El Dorado*, (or the Golden City) from the abundance of Gold, in Coin, Plate, Armour, and other Furniture, which was said to be in it. The greatest City, as some say, not only of *America*, but of all the World. For *Diego de Ordaz*, one of the Companions of *Cortez* in his Mexican Wars, and by him condemned for a Mutiny, put into a Boat alone without any Victual, and so cast off to seek his Fortune, affirmed at his return; that being taken by some of the *Guianians*, and by them carried to their King, then residing at *Manna*, he entered the City at high-noon, travelled all the rest of that day, and the next also until night, before he came of their Kings Palace; but then he said that he was led blind-fold all the way. And therefore possibly enough this City might be no such Miracle as the story makes it; *Don Diego* being either abused by the Reports of the Savages, or willing to abuse the World with such empty Fictions. For though the Spaniards and the *English* have severally fought, and that with incredible diligence, to find out this City; yet none of them have hitherto had the fortune to fall upon it. So that I fear it may be said in the Poets Language.

—El quod non invenis nigram,
Esque nigram nigram.

1 hat which is no where to be found.

Think not to be above the Ground

Nor is their much more credit to be given unto his

Relations of the great Court kept here by one of the *Ingas*, who being, forsooth, one of the younger Brethren of *Abadibia*, the last King of *Peru*, at the Conquest of that Kingdom, with many thousands of his Followers, came into this Country, and subduing the *Caribes*, erected here a second *Peruvian* Monarchy. For, besides that *Abadibia* had no Brethren but *Guscar* and *Mango*, who both died in *Peru*, how improbable must it needs appear, that this *Guianian* King, knowing so well the thirst of the Spaniards after Gold, would either suffer him to return and disclose the Secrets of his State, or send him away loaded with Gold, as his said he did? Who sheweth his Treasure to a Thief, doth deserve to lose it. And therefore letting pass these dreams of an *El Dorado*, let us descend to places of less Magnificence, but of greater Reality. Amongst which I reckon, 1. *Caripo*, most memorable for a Colony of Spaniards planted by Captain *Robert Harcourt*, Anno 1600. situate on the banks of the *Wiapoco*, near the Mouth thereof, on the advantage of a Rock, and that Rock so difficult of access, that they feared no danger from an Enemy. The Air so found and agreeable to the constitution of an *English* body, that of 30, which were left there for three years together, there died but six, and those six rather by misfortune, and some Crois accident, then by any Diseases. 2. *Gomeribo*, on the top of an Hill, near the mouth of the Bay of *Wiapoco*, possessed a while by some *Hollanders*, but soon deserted. 3. *Moyman*, a Village of the *Paraguis*, on the banks of the River *Marimari*, 4. *Crevinay*, on the other side of the same River, possessed by the *Caribes*. The King of the first (for each Tribe had its several Princes) being named *Maperabai*, affirmed to be a virtuous man, and kind to Strangers, of the latter, *Minapa*. 5. *Tamparamen*, about an hundred Leagues from the mouth of that River; and 6. *Morileuco*, four days journey from the other: both possessed by the *Caribes*. The King or *Cacique* of these last, at Captain *Harcourt's* being there, (of which time we speak) was named *Areminta*; affirmed to have a skin like a piece of Buff.

The principal Families of this part, besides the *Tao* or *Tao*, and the *Maracans*, (spoken of before, who possess almost all the Sea Coasts of this Country, are said to be the *Arwaccas*, the *Sapayos*, the *Mayos*, and the *Aracouis*; of different Languages and Customs, though near neighbours unto one another. Originally Inhabitants of the Island of *Trinidad*, and the River of *Orenoque*; whence driven by the Spaniards, they came into this Tract, and becoming the old Inhabitants, whom they call by the common name of *Caribes*, higher into the Country, possessed themselves of the Sea shores and the parts adjoining; each Tribe or Family being Governed by its several Chief, as before was intimated. The *Netherlanders*, for a time had some footing in it, but they quickly left it; endeavouring nothing more in the time of their short stay amongst them, then to make the people disaffected to the *English*, of whose pretensions to these parts, and designs to plant them, they had good intelligence. And so much was confided by some of the Natives, when they had found by good experience and acquaintance how much the *English* were abused in those Misreports. Afterwards in the year 1604, Captain *Charles Leigh* fell sail from *Wadrich* on the *Thames*, and in *May* fell upon the River of *Wiapoco*, where he was kindly entertained, gratified with an House and Garden, and his Aid craved against the *Caribes* and their other Enemies. He took possession of the Country in the name of King *James*, and the Crown of *England*, and caused the River of *Wiapoco* to be called (by his own name) *Caraleigh*; but that name ended with his Life, and that shortly after, he dying in his return on Ship-board. The design went forwards not-

with-

withstanding, and in the year 1603 an *English* Colony is brought hither by Captain *Harcourt*, a new possession taken in the name of King *James*, the Colony planted at *Carpo* before mentioned, the Country farther stretched into by that noble Gentleman, then ever formerly by any or by many since. After three years, the Colony, wanting its Supply, returned home again; the Plantation never since purified, though by some projected. Yet so far are these Savages beholden to the *English* Nation, that they did defend them at their being there against the *Caribes*, so at their going off they taught them the use of Arms, and put them into a posture of defence, enabling them thereby to preserve themselves against all their enemies.

3. *Orenoque*, or the Province of the River *Orenoque*, comprehendeth the North parts of *Guiana*, lying upon and towards the banks of that famous River, of which we have already spoken. The Country is very rich and pleasant, consisting of large Plains many miles in compass, adorned with the Embroidery of Flowers and unknown Plants, exceeding pleasant to the Eye; and sometimes interlaced with Hills, reported to be furnished with rich Mines of Gold, and Silver. The Rivers liberally stored with Fish, and the Forrefts both with Beasts and Fowls. No Country in *America*, not *Peru* it self, said to be comparable to it for abundance of Treasure. Some affirm add a whole Mountain of Crystal to be seen afar off from *Winecapo*; and tell us (but in general terms) of more goodly Cities then else where in all *Pernama*; but neither the Spaniards nor the *English* could never see them, though they diligently searched into most parts of the Country. The People, as of several Nations, so of several Natures. The *Cacique* and *Macuroes*, for the most part Carpenters, live by making Canoes or Boats, which they sell into *Guiana* for Gold, and to *Trinidad* for Tobacco, in the immoderate taking whereof they exceed all Nations. When a *Cacique* or Commander dieth, they make great lamentation; and after the Flesh is purified and fallen from the Bones, they take up the Skeleton, and hang it up in the House where he dwelt, decking his skull with Feathers of all colours, and hanging Gold Plates about the bones of his Arms and Thighs. Of the *Tritivato*, dwelling upon some of the Northern Branches, it is affirmed by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, that they are a goodly and valiant people, and to have the most manly and most deliberate speech of any Nation in the World. A people which eat of nothing that is set or sown; the Children of Dame Nature, and therefore will not be beholden for their livelihood unto Art or Industry; using the tops of the *Palm*-Tree for Bread; Fish, Deer, and Swines-flesh for the rest of their sustenance. The *Awayay*, *Sayme*, *Wigiri*, and *Aracais*, affirmed to be as black as *Negroes*, but with smoother Hair; and to use Arrows dipped in so strange a poison, as doth not only bring death, but death with most unpleasable torments, especially if the wounded party be permitted to drink. Of the *Arwaca* of this Tract I find nothing singular; but that when any of their Kings or *Caciques* die, their Wives and nearest of the Kindred bear their Bones to powder, and mingle it with their drink, like Spice.

Places of most importance in it (for to speak any thing particularly of those many Rivers which fall into the *Orenoque* were an endless labour) are, 1. *Camelaba*, on the South of *Orenoque*, but somewhat distant, in which they keep some annual Fairs for the sale of Women. One of our *English* men, left by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1595, affirmed that he bought eight of them (the eldest not above eighteen) for a half-penny red-haired Knife, which he brought from *England*. But withal telleth us, for his credit, that he gave them to some Savages of his acquaintance. 2. *Moroguito*, a known Port upon some branch of

the *Orenoque*; of much use to the *English* in their first Discovery of these parts. 3. *Winecapo*, so called from another branch of that River bearing this name, from whence was shewed an high Hill, said to be of Crystal, but so far off, that it was thought better to believe then to go and see. Others report of this Mountain, that above it there is a mighty River, which, falling down this Cataract on the lower grounds, makes a terrible noise, as if a thousand Bells were knocked one against another. And possible enough it is, that this great fall of Water discerned far off by the help of Sun-shine) carry some resemblance of a Crystalline Mountain. 4. *S. Thome*, situate on the main Chancel of the River *Orenoque*, a Town of 140 Houses, stretched out in length for half a mile, but slighted a Parish Church in the midst of it, and at the West end a Convent of *Franciscan* Friars. The only Town of gainst the last coming of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1617, but taken by him at that time, and since that by the *Hollanders*, Anno 1620; though by both quitted not long after, it returned to the Spaniards.

The several Nations of this Tract have been named before. Discovered first by *Diego de Ordaz*, Anno 1531; the Fifth, but not hitting on the right Chancel, or otherwise, he returned to *Spain*, effecting nothing but the opening of the way to others. Followed herein by *Hieron* Cessed, Anno 1533, and after by *Herrera*, who proceeded farther then the others Anno 1536, and finally by *Gonsalves Ximenes de Quisada* and *Antonio Berres* with far better fortune; who beginning their journey from the *New Realm of Granada* in the search of *Guiana*, fell casually into this great River, as *Orellana* did before into that of the *Amazons*. But yet not perfectly discovered till the year 1595, in which Sir *Walter Raleigh* having taken Prisoner this *Antonio Berres*, and learning of him the success of his Expedition, resolved upon the Undertaking; River that far into the Country by the course of this business was some time since called it *Rafiana*. The business followed the next year (after his return) by Captain *Laurance Keymis*, employed by *Raleigh* in that Service, who at his coming found the Country possessed by the Spaniards, by whom 20 or 30 of the movable houses of the Savages had been taken together like a Town, and all the Natives, who wished well to the *English*, dispersed and scattered. So that without any other effect of his journey, then the finding out the true mouth of the *Orenoque* (which he first discovered) he fell sail for *England*. In the mean time it had been moved at the Court, that a Colony of *English* should be planted there, and some proportionable force sent over to make good the Action. But of the distance of it upon good advice rejected, first in regard and secondly, because the Spaniards, bordering near upon it, might easily call out small force, and make the enterprise dishonourable to the *English* Nation, who had then the better of him in the point of honourable Achievements. It was permitted notwithstanding unto private Adventurers to try their Fortunes on it, without engaging of the State; whereupon followed the Voyages of *Leigh* and *Harcourt*, before spoken of. But yet, not being able to go through with so great a business, let it fall again; And so it fell till the last unfortunate Voyage of Sir *Seal* to search into some Mines of Gold and Silver, which he was credibly informed of when he was in this Counters, that of them being persons of honour, and well attended: but so unfortunate in the issue, (the Spaniards being

being made acquainted with it before his coming, that at the taking of S. Thome he left his own Son, and a great part of his Forces, and after his return (not able with the residue to make good his ground against the enemy) was executed on a former Attainder in the Old Palace of *Welfmünster*, Octob. 29. Anno 1618. Of whom I cannot chuse but note what is said by Camden *Clarencieux* in his *Annals*: *Vix erat nunquam satis laudato studio & Regiones remotas detegendi, & Navalem Angliam gloriam promovendi.* And so I leave him to his rest in the Bed of Peace.

4. The ISLANDS which properly are accounted of as parts of *Guiana*, lie either scattered on the shore, or in the mouths or bodies of the greater Rivers; some of them not inhabited, others of no name, and none at all of any reckoning. Only the Isle of 1. *Trinidad*, and 2. *Tobago*, are of some esteem: which though somewhat farther off from the shores of this Country, yet being that of *Trinidad* lieth in the mouth of the *Orenoque*, and that both of them with *Guiana* pass but for one Prefecture, or Provincial Government, we shall describe them in this place.

1. *TRINIDAD*, or *Insula S. Trinitatis*, lieth at the mouth of the River *Orenoque*, over against *Paria*, from which separated by a Frith, or Strait, by *Columbus*, who first discovered it, called *Boca del Drago*, or the Dragons mouth, because of the dangerousness of the passage. Extended from the ninth to the tenth degree of Northern Latitude; the most Southern Angle of it called *Punta del Gallo*, as that on the North east *Punta de Galera*. The Frith, or Strait, but three miles over, yet made more narrow by the interposition of four or five little Islands, which the Sea breaketh through with great violence, leaving only two entrances for Shipping into the Gulf, called the *Gulf of Paria*. The length hereof 25 Leagues, the breadth 18. Of a cloudy and unhealthy Air, but a fertile Soil, abundantly well stored with such Commodities, as are of the natural growth of *America*, viz. Maize, Sugar-cane, Cotton-wool, and the best kind of Tobacco, much celebrated formerly by the name of a *Pipe of Trinidad*. Here is also a sufficiency of Fruits and Cat-

tel for the use of the Natives; and here and there some Veins of Gold, and other Metals: such store of Pitch, that innumerable Ships might be laden with it; but that it is conceived to be unfit for the calking of Ships, because it softneth in the Sun. The place in which it groweth is by the *Spaniards* called *Terra de Breca*, by the Natives *Pichen*.

The People of the same nature and disposition with the other *Americans*, distinguished into several Tribes, but most of them reduced under the power of two petty Princes. The Tyranny of the *Spaniards*, forsook their Country, and ferried over into *Guiana*, where before we found them. The chief Town of it called S. *Joseph*, situate on the South-side of the Island, on the banks of a little River which the Natives call *Carone*, the ordinary Residence of the Governour, who hath under him besides this Island the Provinces of *Guiana*, and *El Dorado*, (for so goes his Title) yet a small Town, consisting but of 40 Houses when it was taken, Anno 1597. by Sir *Walter Raleigh*; *Antonio Berrio* the Governour of it being then made Prisoner, who furnished his taker with many Notions (and some merely fabulous) towards the Discovery of *Guiana*.

This Island, first discovered by *Christopher Columbus*, in his third Voyage, Anno 1497. was by him called *La Trinidad*, it may be with some reference to the form hereof, floating into the Sea with three points or Promontories. Nothing else memorable in the fortunes and Story of it, but what is touched upon before.

2. *TABAGO* lieth on the North-east of *La Trinidad*, from which eight miles distant: full of safe Harbours for the bigness, watered with 18 little Rivers, and well stored with Woods; amongst which some *Palmist* Trees, some like that of the Brazil-wood, others not elsewhere to be found. Of Fowl and Fish sufficient to maintain it self. Now called *New Walcheren*, with reference to an Island of that name in *Zealand*, by some of the Low-Country men, who begin to plant there.

And so much for *GUIANA*.

O F

P A R I A.

PARIA is bounded on the East with *Guiana*, and the Islands in the mouth of the *Orenoque*, on the West, with the Gulf or Bay of *Venezuela*, and part of the new Realm of *Granada*, on the North, with the main *Atlantic Ocean*, or *Mare del Noordo*; the Countries lying on the South not discovered hitherto.

It took this name from a mistake of the *Spaniards*; (as *Peru* and *Yucatan* on the like) who asking, as all men do, the names of those new Regions which they discovered, and pointing to the Hills afar off, were answered, *Paria*, that is to say, high Hills or Mountains, (for here begins the Ledge of Mountains which are thence continued for the space of 3600 miles, to the Straights of *Magellan*;) and so hath it ever since held the name of *Paria*. By some writers it is called *Nova Andalusia*; but I adhere unto the former.

The nature of the Soil and People being very different, will be more properly considered in the several parts. The whole divided into the Continent and the Islands, which, with their Sub-divisions may be branched into these particulars, viz. 1. *Cumana*, 2. *Venezuela*, 3. *S. Margarita*, 4. *Cabagua*; and 5. the lesser Islands.

1. *CUMANA* hath on the East the Gulf of *Paria*, and the River *Orenoque*; on the West, *Venezuela*; on the North and South bounded as before. So called from *Cumana*, one of the Rivers of it; on the banks whereof some *Dominican* Friars (who first set footing in this Country) built themselves a Monastery; that name being communicated afterwards unto all the rest of this Tract.

It is extended East and West to the breadth of 110 Leagues; the length thereof, from North to South, said to be 400. But there is little of it known, and less of it planted by the Europeans; except some places near the sea: there being no part of all *America*, the description

ou

on whereof hath come so imperfectly to our hands, as it hath of this. For except it be the names of some Bays or Promontories, or of two or three most notable Rivers, there is not much that doth require our considerations.

The Country, for so much as hath been discovered, neither rich nor pleasant; and consequently the less looked after: covered with shrubs, and overgrown with unprofitable Briers and Bushes. Heretofore famed for Pearl-fishing all along the Coast: from the Gulf of *Paria* to that of *Venezuela*, called therefore *Costa de las Perlas*; but that gainful Trade hath long since failed. Now only of esteem for a Vein of most excellent salt, found near the Promontory of *Araya*, and the Bay of *Cariaco*, gathered and digged up thereabouts in great abundance, and never diminishing. The parts adjoining take from hence the name of *Salina*; the Promontory bordering on the Frith called *Boca del Drago*, the Title or Appellation of Cape *Salinas*. Of some strange Creatures in this Country, as the Beast called *Capa*, the soles of whose Feet are like a Shoe, a kind of Hog, which lives altogether upon Ants or Pill-mites, Parrots and Bats of more than ordinary greatness, I forbear to speak.

Of the people I find nothing singular, except it be, that having plenty of good Fruits as of Fish and Flesh, they use themselves to a far worse diet, feeding on Horse-leeches, Bats, Spiders, Grasshoppers, Worms, Lice, and such other Vermin: In other things they seem to have a mixture of all Customs used amongst the Savages of *Asia*, *Africa* and *America*: as multitudes of wives; prostituting these Wives for the first Nights Lodging to the *Picco* or Priests, and for any after, to their *Guirts*; taking great pains to black their Teeth, and putting strange colours on their Bodies instead of Garments; high-minded, treacherous, and revengeful; accustomed to the use of poisoned Arrows, which they envenom with Snakes Bile and other mixtures. In one thing only differing from the rest of their Neighbours, which is, the fencing of their Grounds or Orchards with a Cotton-thred, as high as ones Girdle; and an opinion which they have, that whoever breaketh it, or goes over or under it, shall die immediately. More safe in that persuasion than by brazen Walls.

Rivers of most note, though of little, 1. *Rio de Canavos*, 2. *Rio de Neveri*, 3. *Cumana* de *Bardones*. The chief Havens or Roads for shipping, 1. *Moxino*, 2. *S. Foy*, and 3. that called *Commenagot*. The places of most consideration, 1. *Cumana*, a Colony of *Spaniards* on the Bank of the river of that name; but distant about two miles from the sea, on which it hath a safe and convenient Harbour: the Town so hedged about with Woods, that no thing can be seen of it till one come into it, except it be the Governour's House, seated upon the top of a lofty Mountain: 2. *S. Jago*, a strong Fortrefs built by the *Spaniard* for defence of the salt Lake, or *Salinas*, in the year 1622, on some intelligence that the *Hollanders* had a purpose to take them from him; fortified by the Rules of Art, and planted with 30 pieces of Ordnance, the one half of brass. 3. *S. Michael de Neveri*, on the River fo called, a Fort of the *Spaniards*, 4. *Guaniba*, a Village of the Natives.

The Country first was discovered in the third Voyage of *Christopher Columbus*, but the possession of it was first taken by two *Dominicans*, who out of a Religious zeal to plant the Gospel in these parts, founded themselves a little Cell in the place where the Burrough of *Cumana* was after built, Anno 1513, and doubtless had sped very well in their holy purpose, if some covetous *Spaniards* had not treacherously seized upon one of the Chiefs of their Tribes; and carried him with his Wife and Train into *Spanish* bondage. For this the poor Monks suffered death;

I may call it martyrdom: which was revenged by *Alonso de Oueda*, Anno 1520, and he not long after slain by the Savages, who also at the same time destroyed two Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciscan* Friars, which had been founded in the year 1518. A second force sent thither under *Gonzalo de Ocampo*, wasteth a great part of the Country, beheads one of their Kings and hangs some of his people. But that strength being withdrawn or defeated also, *Diego de Castellon* is sent over by the Council resident in *Hispaniola*, to secure the possession of the Country; by whom the *Castle* first, and after the Burrough of *Cumana* was built and planted. Some other attempts there were for a farther Conquest, but they proved nothing but attempts; except the building of the *Castle* of S. *Michael de Neveri*, by *Hierom* of *Ortal*, and the Discovery of some of the inland Provinces, 150 Leagues from the sea-side, by *Antonio Sedeno*, Anno 1537, of which nothing followed, but the Registering of that tedious March.

2. *VENEZUELA* is bounded on the East with *Cumana*; on the West, with the Bay of *Venezuela*, the Lake of *Maracaybo*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. So called by *Alonso de Oueda*, one of the first Discoverers of it, Anno 1590. because he found a Burrough of some of the Savages situate in the midst of the waters, to which was no passage but by Boat: the word importing as much as *Little Venice*.

It is in length from East to West 130 Leagues; in breadth where broadest about 80. The Soil so plentiful of all sorts both of Fruit and Grain, the Country so replenished with all kind of Cattle, and excellent Pastures to maintain them, that the Neighbouring Nations call it by the name of the *Granary*. Such store there goeth from hence of Wheaten Meal, Bisket, Cheese, Hogs-flesh, Ox-hides, and Cloth of Cotton ready made, as very well deserves that Title. Here is also very great plenty of Fish, wild Beasts for hunting, Mines of Gold and other Metals: beside an infinite deal of *Sapaphrills* sent to *Europe* yearly. The people are of the same Nature and Disposition with those of *Cumana*, with whom they do participate in all points of that Character. The Women (which was there omitted) trained up to ride, run, leap, and swim, as well as the men to Till the Land; and look to the business of the house, whilst the men hunt or fish to bring in Provision. They count it a great part of Beauty to have very thick Thighs; which they effect by binding their Legs hard below the Knee from their very Childhood. Shameless enough till married, after more reserved; though rather for fear of a Divorce, than for love of Modesty.

Rivers of note I meet with none, instead of which are many convenient Harbours and capacious Bays. The chief that called *Golfo triste*, from some Shipwrecks, or the like misfortune happening to the Name of it. 2. The Bay of *Coro*, or *Venezuela*, large and spacious, which by the Frith or Strait of half a League over, receiveth the Tribute of 3. The great Lake called the Lake of *Maracaybo*, by the *Spaniards* called *Lago de Nueftra Señora*, or our Ladies Lake, in compass about eighty Leagues; on the Banks whereof dwell many Nations of the Savages, and into which there falleth a River from the Realm of *Granada*; by which the two Provinces maintain Commerce with one another.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Maracaybo*, the farthest Port upon the East, and one of the best on all this Coast, in which the *Spaniards* of *Cabagua* had once a Garrison, under colour of defending the Country against the Savages, but in plain truth to use it for an opportunity to seize upon their persons, and carry them away for Slaves. Those parts are hereby unpeopled, or but

Z z z z z

meanly

meanly populous. 2. *Venezuela*, the most Western Town of all the Province, commonly called *Coro*, situate in the Latitude of 11 Degrees; built on the sea, where it hath an Haven on each side; the one capacious but not safe, the other safe enough, but not very spacious. But being built in a sweet and healthy Air, and neighboured by the richest Soil of all the Country, it hath been long the ordinary seat of the Governour, and the see of a Bishop, (Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Domingo in Hispaniola*.) Once suddenly surprized by the English, Anno 1595, and burnt to ashes; but was suddenly repaired again, 3. *Caravalleda*, or *Nuestra Señora de Caravalleda*, 80 Leagues from *Coro* towards the East, seated upon the sea near an unsafe Haven, and defended from assault by the Castle of *Coracas*, so called from the name of the Tribe in which it standeth. Near unto which the Hills arise to so great an height, that they seem to equal the *Pike of Teneriff* so much talked of. 4. *S. Jago de Leon*, in the same Tribe of *Coracas*, taken by the English in the same year. 5. *Nova Valentia*, 25 Leagues from *S. Jago de Leon*, and from *Coro* 60. 6. *New Xeres* lately built, fifteen leagues on the South of *New Valentia*. 7. *Nova Segovia*, one league only from *New Xeres*; situate on the Banks of *Baraquemiti*, the most noted River of this Tract. 8. *Tucayo* in the Valley so called; not very large, but plentifully loaded with rich sugar-canes, for which fine sugar-works or Ingenios are here lately built. 9. *Tucillo*, or *Nuestra Señora de la Paz*, 18 leagues on the South of the great Lake of *Maracaybo*, on which the Inhabitants hereof have a Village which belongs unto it, where they hold a Factory for the sale of their Wares. 10. *Laguna*, on the bottom of the Lake it self; not else observable but for the Multitude of Tigers which do haunt about it.

This Country, discovered by *Columbus*, and named by *Alonso de Oeida*, as before is said, was first pretended to, for Neighbourhood sake, by the Spaniards planted in *Cobaguana*. Afterwards *Johannes de Ampere*, by order from the Council resident at *Domingo in Hispaniola*, was employed in the Discovery of it, Anno 1527. But *Charles* the Fifth, having taken up great sums of money of the *Vesperi*, a wealthy Family of *Augsburg*, pawned this Country to them, by whom *Ambrosius Alfinger* was sent with 400 Foot, and 80 Horse to take possession. But he and his successors in that Employment not minding so much the Conquest as the spoil of the Country, the Council of *Domingo* undertook the business once again; and in the year 1545, sent over one *Johann de Caravayal*, who treading in the steps of the *Germani*, or rather out-going them in all sorts of Rapine, was ousted on a second Order by one *Johann Perez de Tolosa*, by whom the province was reduced into some good order. In the year 1550. the *Negroes*, brought hither in great multitudes out of *Africa*, began to mutiny; but their design was discovered, and themselves all slain. Peace and contentment following after all these Troubles, the Country was in little time so thoroughly Planted, and the Natives so encouraged in their several Tribes, that notwithstanding the destructions made by the *Germani* and *Spaniards*, here were reckoned not long since above 100000 of the *Savages*; not numbering those above fifty, or under 18 years of age; who, by an Order of the Council of *Spain* for these parts of *America*, are exempt from Taxes.

3. *MARGARITA* is an Island situate over against the *Salina* or Salt-Lake in *Cumana*, from the main Land whereof it is distant above seven Leagues. So called from the abundance of Pearls which the *Spaniards* found at the first discovery, which the *Latinists* call *Margaritas*, and from them the *Spaniards*. Which though it signifie no other than the vulgar, or common Pearl, yet here were also store of those of the greater estimate, such as the *Ro-*

mans by the figure of *Amiphras* called *Uniones*, because they always grow in couples. *Nalli duo reperitur inditris, fatis illius; unde nomen Unionum felicit Romane impolure diligit.*

The Isle is affirmed to be 16 Leagues in length, and fix in breadth, situate under the 11 Degree of Northern Latitude. Well stored with Pearls upon the Shores, when first discovered; but even then, when most plentifully stored with that Commodity, she had not water of her own to quench her thirst, compelled to fetch it from *Cumana*. Otherwise plentiful enough both of Maize and Fruits, The people obsequiously servile to their Lords, the *Spaniards*; so long accustomed unto Bondage, that it is now grown another nature. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Monaster*, in the East corner of the Island; a Fort of the *Spaniards*, built for securing their rich Trade of Pearl-fishing, and to defend their Ships which lie there at Anchor: within the command whereof is a little Burrough, and the House of the Governour. 2. *El valle de Santa Lucia*, two leagues from the Sea, a *Spanish* Colony. 3. *Malgana*, the chief Village of the Natives.

This Island, first discovered in the third Voyage of *Columbus*, Anno 1498. grew suddenly into great esteem, by reason of the rich Pearl fishing which they found on the Shores thereof. And in regard the Natives were so ready to betray their Treasures, (of which themselves made little reckoning) they found more favour from the *Spaniards*, and obtained more Liberties from the King, than the rest of the *Savages*. Inasmuch that the *Spaniards* either could not, or would not compel them to dive into the Sea for Pearl; but bought *Negro* Slaves from *Guiana* and the Coasts of *Africa*, whom they inforced with great Torments to dive into the bottom of the Sea, many times seven or eight Fathom deep, to bring up the shells in which that Treasure was included: where many of them were drowned, and some maimed with Sharks and other Filbes. But that rich Trade is much diminished of late, if it fail not quite. The cause thereof to be imputed to the insatiable Avarice of the *Spaniards*, so greedily upon Pearl, that they destroyed the very Seed, and making gain of whatsoever they could meet with, for a little present profit, lost the hopes of the future. The Island is since less famous, and not much frequented. Visited to its cost in the year 1601. by the English under Capt. *Parker*, who received here 500 l. in Pearls for the ransom of Prisoners; and took a Ship which came from the Coast of *Angola*, laden with 370 *Negroes* to be sold for Slaves.

4. *CUBAGNA* is an Island lying betwixt *Margarita* and the Promontory of *Aroya* upon the Continent; from the first distant but one League, from the other six; it self in compass about three. Rich on the Shores by the abundance of Pearls which were found about them, but very beggerly on the Land. Destitute both of Grains and Water, by consequence of Cattle also, except only Conies, and but few of those. So that like many a Gallant, who spend all upon the Back, and nothing upon the Belly, he had her out-side laced with Pearls, but within nothing to be found but want and hunger. Their Bread and Water brought them out of other Countries, and their Fruits too, if they desired to have any; here being very few Trees, and those most of *Guaianum*. But so abundant in this treasure, that the Kings Fifths for many years amounted to 15000 Ducats yearly out of this poor Island.

In this respect it was presently reformed to and possessed by the *Spaniards*, who planted here a Colony, which they called *New Cadix*, and grew in short time unto so great power, that they made themselves Masters of the Port of *Maracayana* in *Venezuela*, one of the best upon those Seas. But in the year 1521. hearing that the *Savages* of *Cumana* had destroyed the Convent of *Franciscans*

cars on the opposite shore, they cowardly forsook the Island, and fled to *Hispaniola*. Sent back again by the Council there, under the Conduct of *James de Castellon*, by whom the Town was made more beautiful and strong then ever formerly. In great esteem as long as the Pearl-fishing did continue; now, with that, decayed. Yet still the Island doth deserve some consideration for a Fountain on the East part of it near unto the sea, continuing though the Pearls be gone, which yieldeth a Bituminous substance like Oil, medicinal for Diseases, and is found 2. or 3 Leagues off floating on the Sea: more profitable for the good of mankind, and more easily found, than the Pearls, which sunk unto the bottom, and maintained our Pride.

Four miles from hence, but appendent to it, lieth a little Island called *Coebe*, 3 miles in compass, but so abundantly stored with Pearls, that it hath been worth in that one commodity, for some months together, above a thousand pounds a month of our English money. First peopled upon that occasion, Anno 1529. but the occasion failing, the Plantation ended, the Isle being now unpeopled, as not worth the looking after.

5. The LESSER ISLANDS of this Prefecture, or Provincial Government, lie all along upon the Coast of *Venezuela*, from East to West. The Principal of which, 1. *Torunga*, 12. or 14. miles on the West of *Margarita*; four miles in length, hardly one in breadth; but yielding such good store of Salt, that three or four Ships are laden with it every year. Well furnished with Goats and *Guaianum*, but not else considerable; except for being naturally fenced about with Rocks, and yielding a convenient Harbour for the use of Mariners. 2. *Cacina*, by the English called *The Isle of Providence*, as the former is by the name of *Affection*; both which, being void of all Inhabitants and tame Beasts, were possessed by them about the year 1629; at such time as there was open War between England and Spain. After which, not being claimed by the *Spaniards* in making up the Peace ensuing, they were

granted by King *Charles*, by his Letters Patents under the Great Seal of England, to certain Noblemen and Gentlemen, and their Successors, who for the Space of 20 years, or thereabouts, have enjoyed them quietly; 3. *Bonaire*, opposite to the Bay of *Golfo Triste*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees; well furnished with Sheep and Goats, and other Cattle brought out of Spain, and peopled with some *Savages* out of *Hispaniola*, whom the *Spaniards* Christianized and sent thither: some *Spaniards* with their Governour intermix amongst them. The Island 15 miles in compass; not fruitful naturally, but in Trees, which are great and numerous. 4. *Curacao*, nine miles on the West of *Bonaire*, and as many in compass; of a more fertile Soil by far, and of very rich Pastures. The people are given to Grazing, and make good store of cheese, transported thence to other places; the Island having toward the North a convenient Harbour. *Aruba*, on the North-East of *Curacao*, from which 9 miles distant, in compass not above 5 miles, for the most part level. One Hill it hath (amongst some others) fashioned like a Sugar-loaf inhabited by few *Savages*, and fewer *Spaniards*.

The other Islands on this Coast, as 1. the *Tefiger*, lying Eastward of *Margarita*, 2. *Blanca*, 3. *Orchilla*, 4. *Rocca*, and 5. the *Ile des Aves*, or of Birds, interposed betwixt *Torunga* and *Bonaire*, some of them rather Rocks than Islands, few stored with any living Creatures for the use of men, and none of them at all with men to manure and dress them, I pass over here, and proceed from these Islands of the Province of *Paria*, to those which are subordinate to the Council of *S. Domingo*, and make a Province of themselves. But first we must go back, and bring up some of the Islands of *Mare del Zur*, which could not be reduced to any of the former provinces.

And so much of *PERUANA*.

Of the American Islands:

And first of those which are in

MARE del ZUR.

THE AMERICAN ISLANDS scattered up and down the Shores of this *New World*, are commonly divided into those of *Mare del Zur*, or the Pacific Ocean, and those of the *Atlantic*, or *Mare del Noordo*. The first so called by *Magellan*, the first Discoverer, who, passing through those troublesome and tempestuous Straights which now bear his name, found such a change upon his coming into the main, that he gave it the name of *Mare del Zur*, (quod a tranquillitate vocavit Mare del Zur, faith the Author of the *Atlas Minor*) from the calm and peaceable temper of it; by the *Latines* called *Mare Pacificum*, in the same regard: Called also the Southern Ocean, because of its situation on the South-side of *America*, in reference to some part of the Gulf of *Mexico*, and the Straights of *Adrian*.

Not known until the *Spaniards* till discovered

by *Nomius Valsquez de Balboa*, conducted hither by one of the *Caciques* or petty Kings of the Country about *Nombro de Dios*; who seeing the *Spaniards* so greedy after Gold, told them that he would bring them to a place where their thirst should be satisfied. Accordingly he brought them to the opposite shore, this *Balboa* being the chief man in that Adventure: who discovering farther on the Sea, opened the way unto *Pizarro*, and the rest that followed, to the golden Treasure of *Peru*. He was executed notwithstanding this good service, by *Dus Pedro de Avila*, within short time after. But the more full discovery of it is to be ascribed unto *Magellanus*, and some later Adventurers, though the *Spaniards* got nothing by the bargain. For formerly, as long as the Southern Sea was unknown to any but themselves, they conveyed their Gold and treasures from one place to another, from *Panama* to *Peru*, from *Peru* to *Panama*, without loss or charge, and thought their Ports upon that Shore to be unaccessible:

Z z z z z z But

But after the way unto this sea was found out by *Magellanus*, *Drake*, *Cavendish*, and the rest of our *English* Adventurers did lo scour these Coasts, that they left them neither Port nor ship which they did not ransack; as hath been evidenced before in some particulars.

As for the Islands of this sea, they lie most of them so near the Shores, as if placed there by Nature to serve as Outworks to defend the Continent. Many in tale, but few of consideration; and of those few, some of the chief have been described already in their proper places, as parts and members of the Province upon which they lie. The residue, which lie too far off to come under such consideration, must be mentioned here; and those reduced to these two Heads, 1. *Los Ladrones*, 2. The Islands of *John Fernandes*.

1. *LOS LADRONES* are certain Islands situate betwixt the main Land of *America* and the *Philippine* Islands, in the Latitude of 85; and the 4. Degree of Northern Latitude. So called by *Magellanus*, who first discovered them, because of the Thieveliness of the Inhabitants, (*Insula Latronum* is their name in *Latine*) who had stolen his Cock-boat, which he was forced by main force to recover from them. And they continue still both their name and nature. Found such by *Cavendish* and *Noort* in their several Voyages, to whom they came under colour of buying Iron, (a commodity which they highly prize) but either closely or openly stealing whatsoever they met with. The People tall of stature, brown of complexion, and inclining to corpulency; extremely active, and good Divers, continuing a long time under the Water, as if alike fitted to both Elements; inſomuch as the *Hollanders* then with *Noort*, to make trial of it, cast five pieces of Iron into the sea, all fetched out by one of them. The Women as good at it as the Men. Both Sexes given to filthy and promiscuous Lusts, for which branded (many of them) with the marks of their Incontinency, the Pox having eaten up both their Lips and their Noſes.

Their Religion is worshipping the Devil, whose Images they have in Wood on the Head of their Boats; the Chappel and the Saints fit for such Devotions. But for the nature of these Islands, and what subjection the Inhabitants of it yield to the King of Spain, I am yet to seek. But like enough they yield as little as some others do, which yet are reckoned by our Author to be parts of *America*.

2. The Islands of *John Fernandes* are two in number. So called from *John Fernandes*, the first Discoverer, Anno 1574; each of 5 or 6 miles in compass, and about 300 miles distant from the shores of *Chile*. Situate in the 33 Degree of Southern Latitude; rocky and barren, but well wooded, and those woods replenished with Goats, but their flesh not favourable as in other places. Some shore of Sanders there is in them, and of Palms no scarcity. Plenty of Fish upon the shores, for which cause visited sometimes by the *Spaniards* lying in *Peru*, and fitted with commodious Harbours and Roads for shipping, which makes them not neglected by other Nations as they pass this way. None else of note in all this sea, but such as lie upon the shores of their several Provinces; which we have looked upon already. And therefore passing through the Straights, and coming up unto the Islands of *Paria*, where before we left, we will now look on those of *Mare del Noort*, or that part of the *Atlantic* which washeth the Shores of this New World (the reason of which Names we have seen before) subordinate to the Council or Government of *S. Domingo*, viz. 1. the *Caribes*, 2. *Porto Rico*, 3. *Hipaniola*, 5. *Cuba*, and 4. *Jamaica*. The rest are already spoken of in their proper places.

1. The CARIBES.

THE *CARIBES*, or *Cannibal* Islands, are in number many; 27 of them known by their proper names; the rest of less note, (tho some of these of little enough) not yet to be distinguished. Called thus in general, because inhabited by *Cannibals*; or man-eating people (at their discovery) as the word *Caribes* imports. They lie extended like a Bow from the Coast of *Paria* unto the Isle of *Rico Porto* of different temper, as must needs be in such variety; & therefore not within the compass of a general Character. Some of the principal we shall consider more distinctly; and for the rest, 'tis enough to name them, or else we will pass them by.

1. *GRANADA*, the nearest of this crew to the Main Land of *Cumaná*, is situate in the Latitude of 20 Deg. and 15 Min. in form like a Crescent or half Moon, the two horns not a mile asunder, the whole length but 6. Shaded all over with thick woods, but notwithstanding of a rich and fruitful soil. A Haven in it of good use, but no Town of note. The people of the same ill condition with the other *Savages*; but more wit to hide it, most mischievously intended when they seem most kind; & then most to be avoided.

2. *S. VINCENT*, 18 miles on the North of *Granada*, is of so blessed a soil that it brings forth abundance of Sugar-canes without charge to the Husbandman; watered with many pleasant Rivers, and full of large and convenient Bays for the use of Mariners. In form Circular: the Diameter being 6 miles over; the circle by consequence 18. The people but of mean stature, slothful, and studious only for the Belly: their love to which makes them adventure in their small Boats, hewn out of the body of a tree, to pass into the Continent and return again without the help of a Compass, the distant from it, at the nearest, above 30 miles.

3. *BARBADOS*, on the North-east of *S. Vincent*, in the Latitude of 13 Deg. and 20 Min. Of an Oval form, 17 or 18 miles in compass. The soil in them like that of *England*, but far more fruitful. On the East-side thrusting out it self of Quick-sands, and unsafe for shipping; on the South furnished with a large and commodious Harbour. Not very the *English*, who brought thither from their own Country Swine and Kine, oranges and the like from others. The chief Commodity hitherto made of this Plantation comes by the planting of Tobacco, and by a kind of coarse Sugar called *Barbados Sugar*, which must be quickly spent, or it will melt to nothing. Were they in stock and not forced to make a quick return of their commodities, they might make here as good Sugars as in other places. Yet this Plantation is said to be worth all the rest which are made by the *English*, who (as I take it) are the sole Colony in the Island; but at the courtesy of the *Spaniards*, without whose leave and liking not of force to hold it.

4. *MANTININO* on the North-west of the *Barbados* by the *Savages* called *Mandanimm*, with little difference. Every where swelled with hills: of which 3 are most eminent for height: one of them, which way forever a man looks upon it, carrying the resemblance of an Hat. Inhabited in the time of *Peter Martyr* the Historian, with none but women; afterward with a more fierce & barbarous people than the rest of these Islands: but neither men or women to be seen of late: whether destroyed, or removed farther from the shores for fear of their destruction, is a thing uncertain.

5. *DOMINICA*, seated on the North of *Mantini-*

nino 12 leagues in length, exceeding fruitful of Tobacco, which they sell unto the *Europeans* for Hatchets, Knives, and other instruments of Iron. Famed for its Fountains of hot water, and a commodious Haven at the West-side of it, into which falleth a River 20 paces broad. The people as barbarous as yet, *Cannibals* or Man-eaters to this very day. At deadly enmity with the *Spaniards*, & to no man truly, but where they cannot hurt, or dare not. Both Sexes wear their hair long, & colour their bodies over with Oaker. Yet bloody & barbarous though they be, they are ruled by a King of their own, distinguished from the rest in his dress or habit, whom they most readily obey.

6. *DESEADA*, or the Land of *Desire*, on the North-east of *Dominica*, discovered by *Columbus* in his second Voyage, naked of Trees, and at the first sight afar off not unlike a Galley. Of great use to the *Spaniards*, who always take it in their way to the *Cadiz* to their Parts of *America*, and back again at their return.

The like use do they make of 7. The Isle of *GUARDALUPE*, parallel to this, but directly Westward: which the Fleets which come from *Spain* use to take fresh water, and there disperse themselves to their several Ports. Eight miles in length, and of good Anchorage in most parts of the Sea adjoining. North-east from hence lie

8. *S. Maria del Antigua*, commonly called *ANTIGUA* only, and by some mistakingly *ANTEGO*. Seven leagues in length and as many in breadth, difficult of access, and destitute of fresh water, but well replenished with Woods and provided of Fens. Of late times made a Colony of the *English*, who do still possess it.

9. *S. CHRISTOPHERS*, on the North-west of *Guadalupe*, in the Lat. of 17 Deg. and 20 Min. The length six miles, the breadth in many places four, and in some but two; much swelled with Hills, and towards the East provided of several Salt-wiches. The *French* and *English* had sometime in it several Colonies, by whom the Natives were destroyed, or otherwise compelled to forsake their dwellings; convict, as was pretended, of some manifest Treacheries. But the two Colonies did not long enjoy the sole possession; ejected by *Frederick de Toledo*, as he passed this way with his Navy; though suffered to return to their former dwellings, as rather profitable than dangerous to the Crown of *Spain*. Their chief Employment and commodity lies in their Tobacco, by some much commended. Joyning hereto, or but a league from it at the most, is

10. The Isle of *NEVIS*, which is affirmed to be five leagues in compass, well wooded, and as pleasantly watered; inſomuch as the Inhabitants of the Isle of *Dominica* used to come hither for their pleasures, but for hunting chiefly. Now famed for some Baths or Hot-waters, found out by the *English*, who, in the year 1680, placed a Colony in it. But whether subsisting of it self, or a part of their Plantation in *S. Christophers*, I am yet to learn.

11. *SANCTA CRUX*, by the Inhabitants called *Ayay* on the North-west of *S. Christophers*, and the South-east of *Porto Rico*, from which last distant 15 Leagues. Woody and Mountainous, not well provided of fresh waters; but on the west-side furnished with a safe and commodious Road, under the cover of the Mountains. Amongst their fruits are some that resemble a green Apple, which tailed, so inflames the Tongue, that for 24 hours it swelleth in so great extremity, as makes it altogether useless; but after that by little and little it abates again. The like happens also to the Face, if walked before Sun rising with their Fen-

waters, which are very frequent in this Island; & after the rising of the Sun, without any harm at all. In this there is a Colony of the *English* also, but of later standing than those of *S. Christophers* and *Barbados*.

Some of the principal of the rest are 1. *Anguilla* 2. *Barbuda*, 3. *S. Barbados*, 4. *S. Lucia*, 5. *S. Martins*, 6. *Monferrat*, 7. *Rotunda*, 8. *Saba*, 9. *Virgogorda*, and 10. *S. Sumbro*; of which we have little but the names: the rest, though known by several names, are not worth the naming. Only we are to add concerning the whole Nation of *Charibes*, once here inhabiting, that they did usually hunt for men, as men for Beasts, roving as far as *Porto Rico*, to seek after their prey; and what they caught was sure to go to the pot, in the worst sense too. *Columbus*, when he was at the Isle of *Guadalupe*, found 30 Captive Children which were referred to be eaten, and in their houses divers Vessels filled with Man's flesh, and some upon the Spit ready to be roasted. Nor had they laid aside this Diet till after the year 1564, but how long I know not: For at that time a Spanish Ship coming to water at the Isle of *Dominica*, they cut her Cables in the night, haled her to the Land, and devoured all that were in her. But the Islands have been of late times well cleared of those Monsters; some of them brought unto better order, but the most destroyed, as the common enemies of Mankind; the Islands where they dwelt being either totally deserted, or taken up by *Europeans*, and their several Colonies.

2. PORTO RICO and MONICO.

PORTO RICO lieth on the North-west of *Santa Cruz*, on as many from *Hipaniola*, 136 Leagues from the main Land of *Paria*, and not much less from the Cape of *Cocuiboco* in *R. de la Hacha*, a Province of *Castilla Aerea*. It was called this name from the chief Town and Haven of it, but was called by *Columbus* at the first Discoverer *S. Johannes Infula*, or the Isle of *S. John*, by the Natives *Borinquen*.

It is situate under the 18 and 19 Degrees of Northern Latitude, in form quadrangular, but of a greater length than breadth, such as the Geometricians call *oblongum*: the length hereof being 30 Leagues, and the breadth but 20. The Air hereof is very pleasant and temperate, not scorched with furious Heats in Summer, nor made offensive by the fall of continual Rains; exposed sometimes (chiefly in *August* and *September*) to the troublesome fumes of sudden tempests, called *Charivanes*. The soil is indifferently fruitful, though somewhat Mountainous: here being (besides other Hills of inferior note) a Ridge of high Hills which run cross the Country from the one end unto the other. Their chief Commodities are Sugar-canes, Ginger, *Cassia*, and great store of Hides: the *Europeans* Cattle having so abundantly increased, that they kill thousands for their Skins, leaving the flesh to be a prey unto Dogs and Birds. Some Mines here were of Gold and Silver, but consumed long since. And so are all the Natives also; of whom, in that respect, it is impertinent to give any Character.

Chief Rivers of the Island, 1. *Cutroben*, 2. *Boyanan*; of divers Fountains, and of several divided Courses. 3. *Luyña*, and 4. *Taa*; two Rivers growing out of one. The Spring of that one is in the Mountains of *Gueyamo*, whence running Northwards in one Channel 16 Leagues together, it afterwards divides it self into those two streams. 5. *Guanio*, 6. *Arceño*, 7. *Guadino*, of lesser note, but all of them, as well as all the rest before, concluding in one safe and capacious Haven.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Porto Rico*, the chief Town, built in a little Island, on the North-side of the greater

greater, but joyed into it with huge Piles at vast expences, by the command of *Philip the First*, Anno 1504, well built, with large Streets and convenient Houses, according to the Model of the Cities of *Spain*, and beautified with a fair Cathedral; the Bishop one of the Suffragans of the Archbishop of *S. Domingo in Hispaniola*. The Town unwall'd, but fortified with two strong Castles; the one of which secures the Haven, and the other the Town. In vain attempted, and with the loss of 40 or 50 men, by *Sir Francis Drake*, Anno 1595, but taken two years after by *George Earl of Cumberland*, who had a purpose to have peopled it with an *English* Colony. Discouraged from it by the death of 400 of his Men, by change of Air, and some intemperance of Diet, he set sail for *England*, doing no other hurt to the Town or Island, but the disfigurement of 70 pieces of Ordnance, and some part of their Treasure, which he brought home with him. 2. *S. Germain*, in the Western part of the Island but four Leagues from the Sea; once the chief of the Island, now both unfortified and small. 3. *Arzobis*, on the River so called. 4. *Luyfa*, the most noted Port of the Eastern parts, situate on the mouth of the River so named.

Eastward hereof, betwixt it and *Hispaniola*, lies the Island of *Mona* (might not this, think we, be so called by *Modoc* an *Owen Gwinedh* of whom before?) three leagues in compass, Rocky, and of a brackish Earth, but fit for the production of Limons, Oranges, and such kind of Fruit, which are here in plenty. Not far off but more towards the West, *Monico*, or *Monetta*, as our *English* call it; where they found thick infinite flocks of Fowl, that they flew over their heads as thick as Hail, and made them almost deaf with the very noise; their Eggs so thick upon the ground that they loaded two Boats with them in three hours, and could hardly pass forwards without treading on them.

But to return to *Porto Rico*, or the Island of *S. Johns*: it was touched upon by *Columbus* in his second Voyage, Anno 1493, but first inhabited by *John Ponce de Leon*, Anno 1510, who being courteously entertained by *Aiguabona*, the chief Prince thereof, planted a Colony of *Spaniards* in the North Part of the Island, which he called *Caparra*. The Colony 10 years after that removed to *Guaynaca*, and from thence to *S. German*: carrying with it the repute of the chief Town of all the Island upon every remove, till the building of *Porto Rico*, where it finally hath fixed. The Island very populous for the biggness of it when the *Spaniards* came to it: but the Natives were long ago consumed by several Butcheries; and, as some write, not above 1500 *Spaniards* are in all the Country. What else concerns the Story of it, we have seen before.

2. HISPANIOLA.

HISPANIOLA lieth on the West of *Porto Rico*, the distance we have seen already. By the Inhabitants called *Haiti*, and by some *Quisquoa*; but by *Columbus* it was honoured with the name of *Hispaniola*, or *Little Spain*, and of late times beginneth to be called *S. Domingo*, from the chief Town of it.

The form thereof is Triangular, extended in a sharp Angle, called *Cabo del Engenio*, towards *Porto Rico*; in the Western end fashioned like a Bay or Semicircle; the Northern point of which is named *S. Nicholas*, the Southern *Cabo de Donna Maria*. The length affirmed to be 150 Leagues, the breadth in some places 60, in some but 30, thence growing less and less, till it come unto the Eastern Angle; the whole compass estimated at 400. Situate betwixt the 18 and 20 Degrees of Northern Latitude. Of an Air much infested with Morning-fogs; but cooler in the Afternoon; by the constant blowing of a

Sea-Gale, which they there commonly call *Vivron*.

The Country is for the most part beautiful and flourishing; the Trees always in their Summer livery, and the Meadows green, as if it did enjoy a perpetual Spring. In many places well'd with high craggy Mountains, whence the name of *Haiti*, that word to signify in the natural Language of the Natives. Of such an excellent Herbage, that the Cattle brought hitherout of *Spain* have increased almost beyond Arithmetick; grown wild for want of proper owners, and hunted unto death like the Stags of the Forest, though only to rob them of their skins. The soil so fertile, that in the space of 16 days Herbs and Roots will grow ripe and fit to be eaten. So plentifully stored with Ginger and Sugar-canes, that in the year 1587, there were shipped hence 17500 pound weight of Ginger, and 500 Chells of refined Sugar; an evident argument of the richness and fertility of it. A farther proof hereof may be, 1. The rich Mines of Gold, in which they used to find Gold without mixture of dross or other Metals. 2. The great increase of Sugar, on Cane here filling 20. sometimes 30 measures. 3. The wonderful yield of Corn, amounting in some places to an hundred-fold. But the mines were long ago exhausted, inasmuch as the inhabitants are fain to use brass money: but instead of those of Gold, they have found out others of Brass and Iron, and some few of Silver; but not much searched into late, for want of Workmen.

The reason of that want is to be ascribed unto the Covetousness and cruelty of the Spanish Nation: who, out of an insatiable thirst for Gold, consumed the people in their mines; and out of the like thirst for Blood, killed for many of them, that in few years they destroyed three Millions of the Natives. And it is probably supposed, that had not *Charles* the Fifth restrained them by a penal Edict from compelling the Natives against their will to those works of servitude, there had not been one Native left in this Island, nor in any other part of their Plantations. Such are left are fain to be of a low stature, of black hair, and a complexion somewhat inclining to that colour: not differing in manners, Habit, or Religion, from the *Spaniards* there.

Rivers of most note are, 1. *Ozama*, on whose Banks stands *Domingo*, the chief Town of the Island capable of the greatest ships to the very Wharf. 2. *Nigua*, which passing through the rich Pastures, or making the Pastures rich by its secret virtue, runneth towards the West; as do also, 3. *Taquimo*, 4. *Nizao*, and 5. *Neyba*, 6. *Hayna*, of a contrary course to the other three. 7. *Taqui*, or *Jacho*, which falleth into the Northern seas. 8. *Nicayagu*, 9. *Cocitico*, 10. *Xaniqui*. These three last famous here, for their sands of Gold. Some speak of 3000 Brooks and Rivers which are found in this Country: two parts of which vast number had their Golden sands. A thing far beyond the charity of the strongest Faith, (though reported by a Grave and Reverend Author) that I know not what interpretation to put upon it, except every Water-course, Ditch, and Gutter, may be reckoned in.

The whole divided when the *Spaniards* first came amongst them into several Provinces or Kingdoms: as 1. *Higuey*, 2. *Jacaguana*, 3. *Samana*, in the Eastern parts: 4. *Taquimo*, 5. *Boarico*, and 6. *Xaragua*, towards the South; and 7. *Guahama*, and 8. *Cabana*, in the West; and in the North, 9. *Cibao*, rich in Mines of Gold, 10. *Marien*, the Landing place of *Columbus*, and 11. *Maguana* in the Centre of the Island, the King whereof in the time of *Columbus* was named *Canabo*, of greatest power of any of those petit Royalties. Another division of it hath been made by Nature, parting it by four Rivers, all rising from one Mountain in the midst of the Island, into four Divisions.

ons; 1. the River *Jacho*, running towards the North, 2. *Naimba*, halting to the South, 3. *Tima*, or *Jama*, towards the East, and 4. *Huibonico*, to the West. But these divisions being long since grown out of use, we will survey the chief of the Towns and Cities of it, as they come before us.

And they are, 1. *S. Domingo*, first built by *Bartholomew Columbus*, Anno 1494, on the East Bank of the *Ozama*; and afterwards (in the year 1502) removed by *Nicholas de Obando*, then Governor of the Island, to the opposite shore, situate in a pleasant Country among wealthy Pastures, and neighboured with a safe and capacious Haven: the Houses elegantly built, most of them of stone, and the whole well walled; beside a Castle, at the West end of the Peer to defend the Haven: enriched by the Residence of the Governour, the Courts of Justice, the See of an Archbishop, and (besides many Convents and Religious Houses) an Hospital endowed with 20000 Ducats of yearly Rent. Elsewhere of greatest trade and concourse of Merchants, till the taking of *Mexico* and the new reduced unto the number of 600 Families of *Spaniards*; the greatest part of the City, and all the Suburbs, inhabited by *Negroes*, *Mulattoes*, and other Strangers. Not yet recovered of the hurt it had by *Sir Francis Drake*, who in the year 1580 took it by force, and held it for the space of a month, burning the greatest part of the Houses, and suffering the rest to be redeemed at a certain price. 2. *S. Salvador*, 68 Leagues to the East of *Domingo*. 3. *Jaguana*, called also *Santa Maria del Porto*, from a safe and beautiful Haven adjoining to it; situate in the West part of the Island: of no great biggness, consisting of no more than 150 Houses when it was at the greatest; but made much less by *Captain Newport*, who, in the year 1591, burnt it to the ground. 4. *Cotoy*, in the North of the Island, opposite to *Santa Domingo*, from which distant almost sixty Leagues: a little Town, but formerly of great esteem for its Mines of Gold. 5. *Concepcion de la Vega*, the foundation of *Christopher Columbus*, for whose sake afterwards adorned with a See Episcopal. 6. *Porto de la Plata*, 40 Leagues from *Domingo* on the Northern shore, there built on a commodious Bay by *Nicholas de Obando* before mentioned, by him also fortified, the second Town of Wealth and Trade in all the Island. 7. *Ayua*, now called *Compostella*, a noted Haven, and resorted to for Sugars, which it yields abundantly.

This Island was first discovered by *Columbus*, (for he believed not that it was any of the Fortunate Islands which we read of in the life of *Seneca*) in the first Voyage which he made, conducted hither by some of the Inhabitants of the Isle of *Cuba*. Landing and gaining the good will of the Savages by gentle usage, he obtained leave of one of their Kings or Caciques to build a Fort in his Country, which he called *Natividad*, or *Nativity*, leaving in it 36 *Spaniards* to keep possession: whom he found both murthered and murdered at his coming back. Being now better furnished for a new Plantation, he built the Town called *Isabella*, (in honour of *Isabella* Queen of *Castile*) near the Mines of *Cibao*; which afterwards was deserted also, and the Colony removed unto *S. Domingo*: the *Spaniards* sending one Colony after another, till at last their number was increased to 14000, besides Women and Children. But having rooted out the Natives by their infinite cruelties, and exhausted the riches of the Country with as infinite Covetousness, they betook themselves to frether Quarters, abandoning the Island to devour the Continent. Once had the Islanders rebelled and fortified themselves in the Province of *Boarico*; a place so naturally strong, that there was little need of the help of Art. Not brought to leave that Falseness but on such Conditions as

made the *Spaniards* less insolent, and themselves less Slaves.

4. CUBA.

CUBA lieth on the West of *Hispaniola*, from which parted by a Frith, or narrow Channel, interposed betwixt the two Capes of *S. Nicholas*, and that of *Mexico*; and some part of the Frith of *Island* called the *Landed* towards the East to the extremity of the Foreland about 50 Leagues, and neighboured on the South with the Isle of *Jamaica*.

It is in length from East to West, that is to say, from *Cape Maxis* towards *Hispaniola*, to the Cape of *S. Anthony*, 230 leagues; in breadth where broadest hardly 40, but 15 in others. For the fertility of the soil contending with *Hispaniola* for the pre-eminence, but in the temperate of the Air a great deal before it. Liberally stored with Ginger, *Cassia*, *Maltick*, *Aloes*, *Cinnamon*, and Sugar; this with others such commodities as are common unto all of Fowl no scarcity. The Gold more drossie in the Mine than in *Hispaniola*, but the Brags more perfect. Hilly, and full of lofty Mountains; but those Mountains clad with divers Trees, some of which drop the purest Roin, and the Hills sending to the Valleys many notable Rivers, Pestered with many sorts of Serpents, not so much out of any ill condition of the soil and air, as by an old superstition of the Savages, in former times not suffered to kill them when they might, (this being a Dish reserved for the higher powers) not able afterwards to destroy them, when it would have been suffered.

What other Savage Rites they had, is not now material, the *Spaniards* having took an Order that they should not trouble us in that particular. Yet thus much may add in memory of the first Inhabitants, that an old man of 80 years, one of the *Caciques* of the Island, addressed himself unto *Columbus* at his first coming hither, advising him to use his Fortune with moderation, and to remember that the souls of men have two journeys when they leave this world, the one foul and dark, prepared for the injurious and cruel person; the other delectable and pleasant, for the men of Peace. It is laid also of them, they knew not the use of money, nor understood the niceties of *Meum* and *Tuum*; Tenants in common to the Blessings which the Earth brought forth, and Cohabitors of Nature.

Amongst the Rarities of this Island, they mention a Fountain out of which floweth a pitchy substance, which is found frequently on the sands into which it falleth, excellent for the caking of ships. Secondly a navigable river (but the name not told us) the waters of which were so hot that a man could not endure to hold his hand in them. They tell us also, thirdly, of a Valley 15 leagues from *S. Jago*, which produced Stones exactly round, as if made for pleasure; but yet merely natural. But there are no greater rarities than in other places, nor altogether so great as in *Hispaniola*. In which they tell us of a fair river whole waters are salt, and yet none but fresh streams fall into it. Of another Lake (three leagues in compass) on the top of the Mountains, into which many Rivers were known to run without any Exit. Neither of these so strange or rare as the *Cucuyo*, a kind of *Scarabe* or Beetle; the eyes and wings whereof, when opened, give so great a light in the darkest places, that a man may see to read and write by it, as well as by a Candle.

Rivers of most note, 1. *Canie*, much annoyed with Crocodiles, (a Beast not common in these Islands, nor elsewhere in this) exceeding dangerous to such as repose them

themselves on the Banks of the River. 2. *Arimao*, which disburtheneth it self near the Port of *Xagua*. 3. *Rio di Porco*, full of Rocks and Quick-sands at the entrances of it. 4. *Rio Escondido*, 'palling betwixt *Habana* and the Port of *Maracaos*. 5. *Marion*, and 6. *Tanne*, of less note. Besides these there is *Xagua*, a safe Station and Road for Shipping; of a narrow entrance, but large and spacious when once entered; above ten Leagues in length, and of breadth proportionable. So fenced on all sides from the Winds, that Ships lie here in safety without any Anchor. Some other Bays there be as useful, though not so considerable.

Towns of most consequence, 1. *S. Jago*, in the South part of the Island, situate about two Leagues from the Main, but in the bottom of a large and capacious Gulf, the most noted Port of all these Seas. Built by *Don Diego de Velazquez*, Anno 1514; afterward made a Bishop's See: beautified with a Cathedral, some Religious Houses: once not inferior unto any for numbers of people; though now few enough. 2. *Caracas*, 30 Leagues on the East of *S. Jago*; the same foundation as the other, and neighboured by great quantities of *Eben-wood*. 3. *S. Salvador*, by some called *Baymo*, according to the old name of the Province in which it standeth; built by *Velasco* in the most pleasant and richest part of all the Island, but not so fitly as the other for Trade and Merchandise. 4. *Porto del Principe*, an Haven-town in the North parts: not far from which is the Fountain of a pitchy or bituminous Liquor, spoken of before, which I conceive to be much of the same nature with the Fountains of *Naptha* in the East. 5. *Trinidad*, another of *Velasco's* foundations, nine or ten Leagues Eastward of the Port of *Xagua*: once well frequented, but now forsaken, and mere nothing. 6. *Havana*, in the North parts, opposite to *Florida*, a noted and well traded Port, so strongly situate and fortified both by nature and Art, that it seems impregnable. The Entrances defended with two notable Castles; a greater then either opposite to the mouth of the Haven; all so commodiously built and well planted with Ordnance, that they are able to keep out and scatter the greatest Navy. Near one of them standeth as high Tower, from the top whereof notice is given unto the Guards of every Ship that cometh within view of the Watchmen. The best assurance not only of this Island but the Bay of *Mexico*; and therefore honoured for the most part with the Seat of the Governour, and the greatest Trade of all these Seas, the Ships which are bound for *Spain* from all parts of the Gulf tarrying here for one another till all meet together, and setting sail from thence by the Straights of *Bahamas* amongst the Isles of the *Lucas*.

This Island was one of the first which was discovered by *Columbus*: who having first tired the *Spaniards* with the expectation, first fell upon the Island of *Guahani*, one of the *Lucas*, to which he gave the Name of *S. Saviour*. From thence he sailed to *Baracca*, on the North of this Island, which he called to be called *Fernandina*, in honour of *Ferdinand* the Catholic King of *Castile* and *Aragon*, at whose charge, and the encouragement of *Jhabella* his Heroick Queen, he pursued this Enterprize. Landing, he asked the people if they knew *Cipango*; (by which name *Poulus Venetus* calls the Isle of *Japan*): and they conceiving that he inquired after *Cibao*, (of great note for the richest Mines in *Hispaniola*) pointed towards *Haiti*; of some of them going with him to conduct him thither. *Cuba* was by this means laid aside, and all the thoughts of *Spain* unto *Hispaniola*, where they found many Golden Provocations to invite their stays: still hungering after more Gold, and some new Plantations, they passed over hither, and in few years, by the prudent conduct of *Velasco*, got such footing in it, and made that footing good

by so many Colonies, that their Title and possession was beyond dispute, and so continues to this day.

S. JAMAICA.

JAMAICA lieth on the South of *Cuba*, from which distant 20 Leagues, and as much, or very little more from *Hispaniola*. Discovered in the second Voyage of *Columbus*, by whom named *S. Jago*; that name changed afterwards to *Jamaica*.

It is in length from East to West about 50 Leagues, and in breadth 20; the whole compass estimated at 150; the middle of it under the 18 Degree of Northern Latitude. Of a rich soil, abundantly provided of all things necessary; well stocked with Cattle, and no less plentifully stored with most sorts of Fruits, which either industry or Nature have supplied it with. Greasifore of Cotton-wool, and such abundance of *Juca*, (a Root whereof the *Savages* once made their Bread) that it was deemed the Granary of the neighbouring Island. And were it not dis-furnished of convenient Ports, (which is all the want of it) it would be as much frequented by sea-faring men as any other in those parts. Once very populous, now destitute of all the natural inhabitants; this Island, and that of *Porto Rico*, losing in few years 60000 by the *Spaniards's* Cruelties. Cruelties which not only raged upon the Men, but destroyed Posterity: the Women, here and elsewhere, so abominating their sad condition, that they strangled their Children in Birth, to the end they might not live to serve such a cruel Nation.

Chief Towns hereof, (for though it be well watered it hath no great Rivers,) 1. *Sevilla*, in the North part of the Island, beautified with a goodly Monastery; the Abbot whereof hath all Episcopal Jurisdiction, and is privileged to wear a Mitre: in nothing more ennobled, than that *Peter Martyr*, the Historian (to whose Decades all succeeding Ages are beholden for the Chronography and History of these parts of the World) was once Abbot here. 2. *Mellilla*, a small Town, but memorable for the unfortunate Shipwreck of *Columbus* on the Shores adjoining. 3. *Orizaba*, on the South of the Island, fourteen Leagues from *Sevil*. 4. *De la Vega*, now a Ruine only; once a Spanish Colony; and of great fame for giving the Title of *Dukes* to *Christopher Columbus*, and his Brother *Bartholomew*. Since whole time nothing happened prejudicial to the state of this Island by the hands of any but the *Spaniards*, till conquered, but not held by Sir *Anthony Sherley*, Anno 1596.

Thus having took a short survey of the several parts of this great Body, we now briefly take a view of the Government and Forces of it. The Government is committed chiefly to two great Vice-Roys; the one of *Nova Hispania*, who resides at *Mexico*, the other of *Pichu*, who abideth at *Lima*, the principal Cities of those Kingdoms: The first hath Jurisdiction over all the Provinces of *Nova Galicia*, *Nova Hispania*, *Guatemala*, *Castilla*, *Arauca*, and the Provinces of the Mexican Islands; the other over those of *Peru*, *Chile*, *Rio de la Platte*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. Such scattered pieces as they hold in *Guiana*, *Paria*, and the *Caribbs*, with their Ports in *Florida*, being reduced to some of these. Of these the Vice-Roy of *Peru* is of greatest power, because he hath the nomination of all the Commanders and Officers within his Government; which in the other are reserved to the King himself. But that of *New Spain* is counted for the better preference, because of its nearness unto *Spain*, (in respect of the other) the Beauties of the City of *Mexico*, and the Civilities of the People. For the administration of Justice, and ordering the Affairs of the several Provinces, there are ten chief Courts, from which there liech

no appeal: that is to say, 1. *Guadalajara*, for *Gallicia Nova*; 2. *Mexico*, for *New Spain*; 3. *S. Domingo*, for the Province of the Islands; 4. *Guatemala*, for the Division so named; 5. *Panama*, for *Castilla Atrera*. Then for the other Government, 6. *Quito*, 7. *Lima*, and 8. *Charcas*, in the Realm of *Peru*, 9. *Imperial*, for *Chile*; 10. *S. Poy*, for the new Realm of *Granada*. From these though no appeal do lie in matter of Justice; yet both from them and the two Vice-Roys an Appeal may lie in affairs of State, or point of Grievance. And to this end there is a standing Council in the Court of *Spain*, which is called the Council of the Indies, consisting of a President, eight Counsellours, two Proctors Fiscal (which we call the Solicitors general) and two Secretaries, besides other Officers; to whom it appertaineth to take care of all matters which concern the Government of these Countries, to appoint the Vice-Roys, to dispose of all the great Offices (except those of the Government of *Peru*) and spiritual dignities, to appoint Visitors to go into those Provinces for the examining the actions of all Officers hearing the Grievances of the People, and to displace or punish as they find occasion, but with the Kings privacy and consent.

As for the Estates of private men, they which hold Lands or Royalties from the Crown of *Spain* hold them but for life, (except it be the Marquess of *Valla in New Spain*, of the race of *Cortez*,) after their deaths returning to the King again, who gives them commonly to the eldest son, or the next of blood; but so, that they receive it as a mark of his favour, and not for any right of theirs. And though they have many times attempted to make their Commanderies and Estates hereditary, and offered great sums of money for it, both to *Charles* the fifth and *Philip* the second, yet they could never get it done; the Kings most prudently considering, that these great Lords having the command of the Estates and Persons of their several Vassals, would either grind them to powder without any remedy, or upon any Inquisition into their proceedings take an occasion to revolt. Both dangers of no small importance; both by this uncertainty of their present Tenure exceeding happily avoided.

The Revenue which the King receiveth hence is said to be three Millions of Ducats yearly: most of it rising out of the Fifths of the Mines of Gold and Silver: the rest by Customs upon Manufactures and all sorts of Merchandise, and the Acknowledgments reserved upon Lands and Royalties. But out of this there go great Exits: that is to say, to the two Vice-Roys 12000 Ducats; to the President and Officers of the Council of the Indies in *Spain* 20000 Ducats; to the Judges and Officers of the several Courts of Judicature very liberal Penfions; to every

Archbishop and Bishop, of which there are 29 in all 2000 Ducats at the least, and to some much more, to mend their Benefices. Then reckoning in the infinite charges in maintaining Garrisons, and entertaining standing Bands both of Horse and Foot, in several parts of this Estate, and the continual keeping of a strong Armada to conduct his Plate Fleets to *Spain*; there must be made a great abatement, and the sum will bear it. For howsoever at the first his Revenue came from thence without any great charge, more then the keeping of a few Soldiers to awe the *Savages*; yet after he fell foul with *England*, and startled the *Hollanders* to Rebellion, he was compelled to fortify all his Havens, and secure his Ports, and to maintain a strong Armada at the Sea, to convey his Treasures. Before which time the *English* (as is instanced in several places) did so share in his Harvett, that they left him scarce enough to pay his Workmen; which if they should attempt again upon any Breach, they would find it very difficult, if not impossible, to effect any thing upon the Coasts as in former times; or indeed any other way, but by making themselves too strong for him at Sea, and they; by either intercept his Fleets, or hinder them from coming to him to supply his needs.

And so much for the *AMERICAN* Islands.

Having thus travelled over (with Gods Blessing) the Known Parts of the World, and failed through the most difficult Seas which embrace the same; we should now man our Barque again, and try what Discovery we can make of the Parts *Unknown*, or not fully known to us as the others are.

Quæ præparat, mea cymba? redi, satis ardua ponti
Nævius: ecce Ausler pluvias jam cogere nubes
Incipit, hic tutum non est (mibi crede) morari.
Dum leet, in Portum tendamus, nubila clartum
Reddiderim nbi pulsa diem, revocabit ab alto
Nos Triton Scœpius, atque iterum temebimus Æquor.

That is to say,
But whither goes my Bark? Return: for we
Have sli'd the Capering Brine enough: see, see,
The South-wind 'gins to gather Clouds apace;
'Tis no safe tarrying in so fierce a place.
Whilst thou hast time, retire, thou wearied Bark,
Into safe Harbour; when the Clouds which dark
The World's Bright Eye shall be dispell'd away,
And fining Phœbus make a lightsome day,
Triton's shrill Trump shall thee recall again,
From the safe Harbour to the foaming Main:
And we with all our Powers will boldly try
What of this UNKNOWN WORLD we can descry.

A a a a a

A T A

A TABLE of the Longitude and Latitude of the Chief Towns and Cities mentioned in this Second Part.

	Long.	Lat.		Long.	Lat.
A. Capico	276 0	18 0	Margarita	314 10	10 50
Almorla	274 15	20 0	Maricao	283 0	38 30
Anaco	281 0	6 20	Martha	304 20	16 40
Angadzi	295 0	50 0 A.	S. Michael	291 40	6 10
S. Anna Equinum	318 10	27 30 A.	S. Michael	227 10	47 20
Avigua	330 20	16 10	Monna	309 30	18 0
Autichia	300 50	6 40	Montfort	319 10	15 40
Atica	300 30	20 0 A.	Montreal	303 0	45 40
Atocua	353 20	18 50 A.	Mopoz	301 10	10 0
Atuato	298 10	1 30			
Ataxamil	289 30	19 0	Nauaca	300 20	17 10
S. Augustin	293 0	29 50	Nicola	284 30	10 40
			Nova	318 40	16 20
B. Bahama	296 30	27 0	Nombre di Dios	294 30	9 20
Barbados	323 0	13 0	Norumba	215 40	43 40
Bovinas	296 50	15 50			
			P. Paza	302 50	13 10 A.
C. Cayana	351 40	61 50	Pello	290 30	5 10 A.
Chigona	300 0	20 10	Penama	294 30	8 30
Cariboo	299 30	3 10	Penco	270 10	21 40
Cayamalca	298 30	11 30 A.	Pello	304 0	11 40 A.
Ch. Spiake	308 0	38 0	Pina	295 20	3 0
Chieffmilian	260 0	25 40	Plata	305 0	9 50 A.
Chile	299 0	36 30 A.	Pompan	297 20	1 50
Colima	267 20	19 50	Poffifina	241 30	32 20
Colles	300 0	16 0 A.	Potof	315 10	21 10 A.
Coquimbo	301 20	20 40 A.			
Cordoba	316 20	33 0 A.	Q. Qiscon	298 50	16 30 A.
Coono	219 40	31 0	Qisner	303 40	34 40 A.
Challacan	266 30	27 0	Qito	293 10	10 0
Infco	297 20	13 30 A.	Quivira	333 0	41 40
D. Darin	295 40	5 50	R. Roca	311 0	11 10
Diffida	310 0	15 20	Rouley	314 10	50 0
Dominica	359 40	14 0			
			S. Saba	317 30	17 10
E. F. Elade	305 10	47 40	Salinas	321 40	51 0
Fernambuck	311 40	9 20	S. Salvador	321 10	5 0
			Sante	294 40	9 30
G. Gorgona	295 10	3 20	Sanna	309 0	16 50
Granada	310 20	11 0	Serana	351 40	61 0
Gualeque	294 30	2 30 A.			
Guadalupahol	282 20	31 0	T. Tabaco	321 10	10 40
Guanape	294 50	8 10 A.	Ternco	270 15	24 40
Guadalofo	319 20	15 20	Tevuco	275 40	18 20
Guatimala	303 0	24 20	Tigico	316 10	11 0
			Tigico	293 40	1 50 A.
H. Hugueto	310 30	54 0	Tompanha	305 20	16 0 A.
Ilavona	291 10	20 0	Tiquiana	274 40	19 0
Hochlagz	300 50	44 10	Tachipe	303 50	20 20
Hundo	324 0	51 30	Turinga	248 40	36 0
			Tivontena	295 50	11 20
I. Tehaque	315 15	17 15	Tivontena	291 40	4 10 A.
S. Jago	298 10	30 10	Tumbez		
Isabella	305 20	18 50	V. W. Val parajo	300 0	31 0 A.
			Waco	242 10	30 30
L. Lempa	274 10	16 50	Wacha	297 20	7 30
Lima	296 40	23 30	Wacas	301 0	14 50 A.
Lixa	293 30	9 50 A.	Wocan	307 30	34 0
M. Malagana	306 0	23 40	Z. Zacatula	269 4	20 0
Malones	279 40	13 40			
Maratiqua	312 10	8 0			

A. is the Mark of Southern Latitude.

The End of the Second Part of the Fourth Book.

AN
APPENDIX
TO THE
FORMER WORK,
Endeavouring a Discovery of the
UNKNOWN PARTS
OF THE
WORLD:
ESPECIALLY OF
Terra Australis Incognita,
OR THE
SOUTHERN CONTINENT.

By PETER HEYLYN.

Horat. De Arte Poet.

Pictoribus atque Poetis
Quidlibet audendi semper fuit æqua potestas.

LONDON,
Printed in the Year MDCLXXXII.

AN APPENDIX TO THE FORMER WORK,

Endeavouring a Discovery of the
UNKNOWN PARTS of the WORLD.

AND here we are upon a new and strange Adventure, which no Knight Errant ever undertook before. Of things unknown, as there is commonly no desire, so less Discourse can probably be made upon them. By *unknown*, therefore we must understand *left known*, or not well discovered; and in that sense we may as well endeavour to say somewhat of them, as others with more pains and hazard to attempt the Discovery. And to say truth, even in the known parts of the World there is much unknown, as in the best and most flourishing Kingdoms of the Earth there is some vast ground, either not cultivated at all, or not so well inhabited as the rest of the Country. For besides many vast Tracts of ground in the North and North-west parts of *Tartary*, and such parts of *India* as lie North-wards towards *Delaguer*, *Angora*, &c.; the East parts of *Caucasus*, and the Realm of *Cathay*, it is conceived that the greatest part of the Midlands of *Africa* are undiscovered to this day, or the knowledge of them so imperfect as comes near a Nescience; and for *America*, not reckoning in the Northern Borders, (which are in part to be the Subject of this Enquiry) is in affirmed of the Midlands by *Johannes de Laet*, (who hath made the most exact description of it that ever was extant) *minima sui parte perillustratum esse*, that the least part of them hath been discovered hitherto to any purpose. Leaving these therefore as before without farther search, we will divide the UNKNOWN WORLD into these two parts: 1. *Terra Incognita Borealis*, and 2. *Terra Incognita Australis*: which with their subdivisions we will now pursue.

TERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS.

TERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS is that part of the *Unknown World* which lieth towards the North; and is to be considered in these three Notions. 1. As directly under the Pole, which for distinction sake we will call *Orbis Arcticus*; 2. as lying to the North-east on the back of *Europe* and *Asia*; or 3. on the North-west, on the back of *America*.

1. **ORBIS ARCTICUS** is that part of *Terra Borealis Incognita* which lieth under or about the *Arctic Pole*; the situations and dimensions of which being taken with the *Africulus* by an *Oxford Friar*, are by *Astronomer* thus described out of the Itinerary of *James Chace* of *Bols le due*, or the *Bosche*, a Town of *Brabant*.

"Under the *Arctic Pole* (saith he) is said to be a black Rock of wondrous height, about 33 Leagues in

"compass, the Land adjoining being torn by the sea into four great Islands. For the Ocean violently breaking through it, and disgorging it fel by 19 Channels, maketh four *Euripi* or fierce Whirl-pools, by which the Waters are finally carried towards the North, and there swallowed into the Bowels of the Earth. That *Euripus* or Whirl-pool which is made by the *Seybick Ocean* hath five lulets, and by reason of his freight passage and violent course is never frozen: the other on the back of *Greenland*, being 37 Leagues long, hath three lulets, and remaineth frozen three months yearly. Between these two there lieth an Island on the North of *Lappia* and *Hiarmia*, inhabited, as they say, by *Pigmees*, the tallest of them not above four foot high. A certain Scholar of *Oxford* reporteth, that these four *Euripi* are carried with such furious violence towards some Gulf, in which they are finally swallowed up, that no ship is able with never so strong a Gale to stem the Current, and yet that there is never so strong a Wind as to blow a Windmill: The like is reported by *Giraldus Cambrensis* in his Book *De mirabilibus Hibernie*. So far and to this purpose he. But *Blandevileur* Countryman is of another opinion, (as indeed who not?) neither believing that *Pliny* or any other of the *Roman Writers* came hither to describe this Promontory, or that the *Oxford Friar*, without the assistance of some cold Devil of the middle Region of the Air, (and consequently able to endure all Weathers) could approach so near as to measure these cold Countrys with his *Africulus*, or take the height of this black Rock with his *Jacob's Staff*. Leaving this therefore as more fit for *Lucian's* Dialogues than any serious Discourse: we will proceed to matters of more truth and certainty.

2. The **NORTHWEST** parts of *Terra Incognita Borealis* are those which lie on the back of *Esquiland*, the most Northern Province of *America*: by which it hath been much endeavoured to find out a passage to *Cathay* and *China*, and not to go so far about as either by the Cape of *Good Hope*, or the Straights of *Magellan*. Attempted first by *Schaffian Cabot*, Anno 1497, at the charge of *Henry the 7th of England*. But having discovered as far as to the 67. Degree of Northern Latitude, by the mutiny of his Mariners he was forced to return; when finding great preparations for a war with *Scotland*, that business for the present was laid aside. Resumed by *Gasper Corterialis* a *Portugall*, Anno 1500, and after by *Stephen Gomez*, a *Spaniard*, in the year 1525; but neither of them went so far to the North as *Cabot*. The *Spaniards* notwithstanding would not so give over, but with five Ships from the *Groyn*, and afterwards by two from *New Spain*, sent out by *Cortez*, pursued the Enterprize: which

proving

Proving as successful as the former had been, occasioned Charles the 5. then preparing for Italy, on the payment of 5000 Ducats by King John the third, to suspend the Prosecution of it. Followed with greater industry, but as bad success, by Sir Martin Frobisher, who made three Voyages for these parts, (the first of them in the year 1579.) and brought home some of the Natives, a Sea Unicorn's horn, (the first in the great Wardrobe of Windsor Castle) and a great deal of the Ore of that Country, found upon trial, when in England, not to quit the Coast. A great Promontory which he called by the name of Queen Elizabeth's Foreland, in whose name he took possession of it; and the sea running not far off he called Frobisher's Straights. The Seas full set with icy Islands, some of them half a mile about, and eighty Fathoms above Water: the People like the Samoes, the worst kind of Tartars, in their lives and habit. John Davies followed the design Anno 1585, at the encouragement of Sir Francis Walsingham, then principal Secretary of estate: and having in three Voyages discovered to the Latitude of 73, by reason of the many difficulties which he found in the enterprise, and the death of Mr. Secretary, he was fain to give over; leaving unto a narrow Sea on the North of *Esquimaux* land the name of *Fretum Davies*, in the Latitude of 65 and 20 Minutes, by which name it is still called. After him followed *Weymouth, Hall, Hudson, Buxton, Baffin, Smith*, all English. The result of whose Endeavours was the finding of some cold Isles and points of Land, which they named King James his Cape, Queen Ann's Cape, Prince Henric's Foreland, Saddle Island, Warren Island, Redge Island, Diego's Island; all of them betwixt 80 and 81: and the imposing on some passages and parts of the Sea the names of *Hackley's Headland, Smith's Bay, Hudson's Straights, Maudlin's Sound, Fair Haven*, and the like marks and monuments of their Undertakings. Nothing achieved of publick moment, but the Discovery of an Island called *Cherry Island* in the Latitude of 74, and the Shores of a large piece of the Continent, which they caused to be called King James his New Land, most commonly *Greenland*: where they found many white Bears, with white, gray and dun Foxes, Partridges, Geese, and some other Provisions. Sea-Unicorns Horns, great store of *Morfeus*, (or Sea-Horses) the Oil and Teeth whereof yield no small Commodity. But most considerable for the Trade of Whale-fishing, which our men use yearly upon those Coasts; of whose Oil, Bones and Brain (this last supposed to be the true *Sperma Ceti*, now used as Medicinal) they raised very great profit.

3. The NORTH EAST parts of *Terra Incognita Borealis* are those which lie on the North of *Russia* and *Tartary*, by which the like passage towards *Catay* and *China* hath been oft attempted; and hitherto with like success. Endeavoured first by *Sebastian Cabot*, the son of *John Cabot*, so often mentioned before, by him trained up in the Discovery of the North-east parts of *America*. His Employment failing here in England, he betook himself into the service of the King of Spain; and coming out of Spain, Anno 1549, was by King Edward the sixth made Grand Pilot of England, with an Annual Pension of 166 l. 13 s. 4 d. In the year 1553, he was the chief Dealer and Procurer of the Discovery of *Russia* and the North-east Voyages, undertaken, and performed by Sir *Hugh Willoughby, Chancellor, Burroughs, Jenkinson*, and after persecuted by *Peck and Jackman*. Some of which perished in the Action, and were frozen to death; their Ship being found the next year hemmed about with Ice, and a particular account of all things which had happened to them. Others with better fortunes found the way to *Russia*, (since that time made a common Voyage without dread or danger) and passing down the *Volga* to the Ca-

spian Sea, and by that to *Persia*, were kindly entertained in the Court of the *Sophy*. The *Hollanders* in the year 1594, and in some years after, tried their Fortune also, under the Conduct and Direction of one *William Barentson* their chief Pilot; but went no farther than the *English* had gone before them; yet gave new names unto all places as they passed, as if they had been the first Discoverers, with Pride and Arrogance enough. Nothing since done of any note or consideration for the opening of the North-east passage, or giving us any better account of the North of *Tartary*, or any Country beyond that, but what we had many Ages since out of *Paulus Venetus*: so that we are but where we were, in a *Terra Incognita*. And though I would not willingly discourage any noble Actions, or brave and gallant Undertakings, yet when I look upon the nature of those Shores and Seas, those tedious Winters of ten months, with no Summer following, the Winds continually in the North, and the main Ocean paved with Ice to long together; I cannot choose but rank the hopes of these Northern Passages amongst those Adventures which are only commendable for the Difficulties presented in them.

TERRA AUSTRALIS INCOGNITA.

With better hopes we may go forwards on the next Discovery, and try what may be done on *Terra Australis*, or the Southern Continent, though hitherto *Australis* also, almost as much unknown as the *Arctic* Islands, which none but my good Frier of *Oxon* had the hap to meet with. A Continent conceived by our Learned *Brevewood* to be as large as *Europe, Asia, and Africa*; and that upon such strength of Reason as cannot be easily overborn by any opposite. His Arguments in brief are these. 1. That as touching Latitude, some parts thereof come very near to the *Aequator*, if they are not also on this side of it: and as for Longitude, it keepeth along, though at several distances, the whole continual course of the other Continents. 2. It is clearly known, that in the other two Continents the Land which lieth on the North-side of that Line is four times at the least as large as that which lieth South thereof; and therefore, since the Earth is equally poised on both sides of the Centre, it must needs be that the Earth in answerable measure and proportion must advance it self in some places above the Sea on the South-side of the Line, as it doth in others on the North. By consequence, what is wanting in the South parts of the other two Continents to counterball the North-parts of them, must of necessity be supplied in the Southern Continent.

The Country being so large, so free from the Incumbrances of Frosts and Ice and endless winters, I have oft marvelled with my self that no further progress hath been made in Discovery of it: considering chiefly by the Site and Position of the Country, especially in those parts which lie nearest *Asia*, that there is nothing to be looked for else-where, either of profit or pleasure, but may there be found. Whether it be that there is some *Nihilum* put to humane endeavors, or that these people are not yet made ripe enough to receive the Gospel, or that the great Princes of the Earth think it no good Policy to engage themselves in new Discoveries, till the old be thoroughly planted and made sure unto them; or that the Merchant, who in matters of this nature hath a powerful Influence, thinks his hand full enough already, and being settled in so many and so wealthy Factories, will not adventure upon more: Which of all these, or whether all these together be the cause of this Stop, I am not able to determine. Certain it is, that here is a large Field, enough for Covetousness, Ambition, or desire of Glory,

to spend themselves in, enough to satisfy the greatest and most hungry appetite of Empire, Wealth and Worldly pleasure; besides the Gallantry and Merit of to brave an Action. Most which hath hitherto been done in it hath been by the encouragement of the Vice-Roys of *New Spain* and *Peru*: by the first of which we came acquainted with the Coasts of *Nova Guinea*; by the latter, with those Countries called the *Islands of Solomon*, but whether Continent or Islands, not yet fully known.

And yet we must not rob *Magellanus* of his part of the Honour, who, passing through the Straights which now bear his name, discovered those parts of it which, from the Fire thence seen, he called *Terra del Fuego*, found by the *Hollanders* of late under *James le Maire* to be an Island. Nor do the *English* or the *Dutch* want their parts herein, though what they did was rather accidental than upon Design. For in the year 1593, Sir *Richard Hawkins*, being bound for the Straights of *Magellan*, was by a cross wind driven on some parts of this Continent, to which he gave the name of *Hawkins his Maiden Land*; a Promontory of it shooting into the Sea with three Points he called *Point Tremontain*; and a pleasant life not far off by the name of *Fair Island*. Sailing along these Coasts in the 50. Degree of Southern Latitude, for the space of sixty miles and upwards, he found the Country as he passed to be very pleasant; and by the Fires which he saw in the night, to be well inhabited. By the like accident, Anno 1599, *Sibald de Weert*, a *Hollander*, in his return from the Straights of *Magellan*, fell upon some Islands of this Southern Continent, in the Latitude of fifty Degrees and forty Minutes, which he caused to be called *Sibald's Islands*. And besides these we owe to the *Portugals* the Discovery of such parts hereof as they fell on in their way to the Eastern Indies, of which we have little but the names as: 1. *Pistacorum Terra*, so called from the abundance of *Parrots* which they saw on the Coasts over against the Cape of *Good Hope*; 2. *Beach*, a Region yielding Gold, and possessed by Idolaters, with the two Kingdoms of, 3. *Luceach*, and 4. *Maleur*; all three against the Isles of *Java*, from which little distant.

But the greatest light we have to see by into this dark business is by the Voyages and Adventures of the *Spaniards*, employed by the two Vice-Roys of *Peru* and *Mexico*, as before was said. For in the year 1543, the Governor of *New Spain*, then being, *Villa Lobos* with a Fleet towards the *Moluccas*, who in that Voyage made a Discovery of a rich and flourishing Country, which he named *Nova Guinea*, by others since his time called *Terra de Picinocoli*: and in the year 1563, *Casbro* the Licentiate, then Vice-Roy of *Peru*, sent a Fleet from *Lima*, which under the Conduct of *Lopez Garcia de Castro*, discovered the Islands of *Solomon*. To which if we subjoin the success of the *Hollanders* in the discovery of *Fretum le Maire*, and the Land adjoining, the best Description we can make of this Southern Continent must be in the Chorography and History of their Adventures: viz. 1. *Terra del Fuego*, 2. *Isula Solomonis*, 3. *Nova Guinea*: beginning first with *Terra del Fogo*, because nearest to us.

1. *TERRA DEL FUEGO* lies on the other sides of the Straights of *Magellan*, heretofore thought to be a part of *Terra Australis Incognita*, or the Southern Continent, but is now discovered to be an Island by one *Jacob Maire* of *Amsterdam*, accompanied by *Cornelius Schouten* of *Hoorn*, both *Hollanders*. They began their Voyage on the 14th of June, Anno 1615, and on the 19th of January following they fell even with the Strait of *Magellan*. On the 24th of the same month they had the sight of another Strait, which seemed to separate this *Terra del Fuego* from the rest of the Southern Continent;

and on the 25 they entered into it. That part of the Land which (being entered into the Straights) they had on the West, they called *Terra Mauriti de Nassau*, thence on the East, *Statenland*, the Strait it self, *Fretum le Maire*. The entrance into the Strait they found to be in 55 Degrees of Southern Latitude and 30 Minutes; the water running into the North Sea with so violent an Eddy, as *adversum maris afflatus difficulter superare possemus*, faith he who in the way of Journal or Epitaphies hath described the whole course of this Voyage. In the whole course thereof nothing so much observable (besides the Discovery) as that they found that at their coming home they had lost a Day, (as must needs happen unto such as in so tedious a Voyage had travelled Westward) that being *Saturday* to them which was *Sunday* to the *Hollanders* and the rest of *Europe*; though they had calculated the Days line going out with all exactness. So that if there were any such Morality in the Sabbath as some men pretend, these men must either keep their Sabbath on a different day from the rest of their Countrymen, or otherwise to comply with them, must be guilty of the breach of the Sabbath all the rest of their lives. But of this more at large elsewhere. To return therefore to this Strait: it is said to be seven Dutch miles or 28 of ours in length, and of a fair and equal breadth; plentiful of good Fish, especially of Sea-Calves and Whales. About the entering of which Strait I into the third Edition of my Microcosm, I received a Letter at such time as the Parliament was held in *Oxon* Anno 1625, subscribed G. B. and a little under that, *Sub grandis floribus*, which whether it were the Gentlemen's Motto, or the Anagram of his name, I am not able to say, having never heard more of him from that time forwards, though his desire were satisfied in the next Edition of that Work. For my encouragement wherein he gave me this direction following. "The news (faith he) of this New Strait coming into Spain, pleased the King, in the year 1618, to send and search whether the truth were answerable unto the Report. And finding it to be much broader than the other, and not above seven Dutch miles long, he decreed, that being the more easie and commodious way for Navigators, and less subject to dangers, his Auxiliary Forces should be sent that way into the *East-Indies* to defend the *Philippine* and *Molucca* Islands, and the way by the Cape of *Good Hope* to be left. In regard that every such Voyage requirerth twice as much time; besides the variety of Winds, and often change of the Air, not only troublesome, but full of Diseases, consuming the one half of the men before they return. Whereas this way gaineth time (and, if need be, they may dispatch business in the West as they travel into the East) without any extraordinary danger or loss of men. So far the very words of my Letter. The Intelligence given me in this Letter I find confirmed in a Relation of the Voyage made by Captain *Don Juan de Mera*, Anno 1618, at the command and charge of the King of Spain, who presently arm'd and furnish'd eight tall Ships to send this new way unto his *Philippine* and *Molucca*; under the conduct of *Petrus Michaelis de Cordoba*, since it hath been found by experience that even from our parts to the *Moluccas* through this *Fretum le Maire*, is but a passage of eight Months, *fine uli usque novemium clade*, faith the Narrator. But of this Strait enough to satisfy my unknown Well-willers Request, and inform my Reader: being extremely sorry that his memory might have lived in these Papers, if they themselves be destin'd to a longer life.

Now for the nature of the Soil, it is said to be very full of Mountains; but those Hills apparelled with Woods

Woods, intermixed with Valleys; the Valleys for the most part full of little Brooks, which fall down from the Mountains, and afford good Pasturage; the Sea-coasts well provided with Bays and Roads, not unsafe for Shipping: though the Air every where, but chiefly near the Sea, be much subject to Tempests. As for the People, they are said to be of a white Complexion; but their Faces, Arms and Thighs, coloured with a kind of Oker of full Sature and well-proportioned, their Hair black, which they wear long, to seem more terrible. The Men mostly generally naked, the Women only shaded on their secret parts with a piece of Leather.

Towns they have none, nor any Habitations which deserve the name of Houses: so that the most which we can do is to coast the Island. In which we find towards *Mare del Noordo*, 1. A large Arm of the Sea called *Entrado de S. Sebastian*. 2. The Cape of *S. Joes*. 3. *Monte de S. Antonio*. 4. *Promontorio de Buen Suceso*, or the Cape of Good Success. Opposite whereunto in another Island is the Cape of *S. Bartholomew*, and betwixt them the Strait called *Fremus le Maire*. Then in the *New South-Sea*, as they call it, there are; 5. *Barneswell's* Island. 6. The Islands of *S. Hades*. 7. *Cape Flora*, on a fair Promontory, in the South-west Angle, which doubled the Country goes along with a straight Shore, on which I find some Bays and Capes, but no names unto them: till we come to the Western entrances of the Strait of *Magellan*, opposite unto *Cape Victoria*, is often mentioned.

2. *INSULES SOLOMONIS*, or the Islands of *Solomon*, are situate on the West of *Terra del Egipt*, 11 Degrees on the South of the Equinoctial. Discovered in the year 1567, by *Lopez Garcia de Castro*, sent by the Vice-Roy of *Peru* to find out new Countries. By him thus named, in hope that man would be rather induced to inhabit in them; imagining that *Solomon* had his Gold from these Lands of *Ophir*.

In number they are many, but 18 the principal: Some of which 300 miles in compass, others 200, and others of them less, till we come to fifty, and beneath that, none. All liberally furnished with Dogs, Hogs, Hens, Cloves, Ginger, Cinamon, and some Veins of Gold. The chief of these eighteen are; 1. *Guadalcanal*, supposed to be the greatest of them; upon the Coast whereof the *Spaniards* failed 150 Leagues, where they found a Town which they burned and sacked, because the people of it, by a sudden surprize, had killed fourteen of their men. 2. *S. Ithella* 150 Leagues in length, and 18 in breadth; the inhabitants some black, some white, some of brown Complexion. 3. *S. Nicholas*, 100 Leagues in compass, inhabited by a People which are black of hue, but said to be more witty than the other Savages. All of them situate betwixt the Straights of *Magellan* and the Islands of *Thieves*; and yet not well agreed upon amongst our Authors, whether to be accounted Islands, or a part of the Continent; the *Spaniards* having failed 700 Leagues on the Coasts hereof, and yet not able to attain unto any certainty. But being they pass generally in account for Islands, and by that name under the Vice-Roy of *Peru*, who appoints their Governors, let them pass for still.

3. *NOVA GUINEA* lieth beyond the Islands of *Solomon* in respect of us, proceeding, as we have begun, from the Land of Fire. Discovered, as before was said, Anno 1543, by *Villa Lopez*, (*Herrera* attributes the Discovery of it to *Alvarez de Saavedra*, and sets it higher, in the year 1527) more perfectly made known, if I guess aright, by *Ferdinando de Quir*, who being sent with two Ships to make a more full Discovery of the Islands of *Solomon*, and taking his course about the height of the *Magellan* Straights, discovering a main Land coming

upclose to the Equinoctial, on the Coasts whereof he failed 800 Leagues, till he found himself at last in the Latitude of 15 Degrees, discovering a large Bay into which fell two great Rivers, where he purposed to settle a Plantation, and to that end presented a Petition to the King of *Spain*. This Country I conceive, by the Site and Position of it, to be *Nova Guinea*, coming up close as that doth to the Equinoctial and after turning to the South towards the Tropick of *Capricorn*, where it joyneth with *Maleter*. And taking it for granted, as I think I may, I shall afford the Reader this Description of it, out of his Memorials, in which it is soberly affirmed to be a Terrestrial Paradise for Wealth and Pleasures. The Country is plentiful of Fruits, *Coco* nuts, Almonds of Aples, Pome-granates, Dates, Sugar canes and other Fowl, plenty of Swine, Goats, Hens, Partridges, and other Fowl, with some Kite and Buffals, Nothing inferior (as it seemeth) to *Guinea* in the Land of *Negrees*, and from thence so named. For as he saith, he saw amongst them Silver and Pearls, and some told him of Gold; the Countrys on the Coast seeming to promise much felicity within the Land. The Air he found to be wholesome & temperate, the Sea-shores to be full of Bays, Havens, and the Exits of Rivers, making shew of another *China*. The Inhabitants he affirmed to be innumerable, some white, some like the *Adulaters*, others like the *Negrees*; diversified in Habit as well as Colour. Their Bread made of three sorts of Roots: without Government, but not without Religion; for they had their several Oratories and places of burial, but neither King, nor Laws, nor Arts. Divided by that want, and in daily Wars with one another: their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and other Weapons, but all made of Wood. Of this Country, whatsoever it was (if not *Nova Guinea*) he took possession in the name of the Catholic King, and set up both a Cross and a Chapel in it; the Chapel dedicated to the Lady of *Loretto*.

The precise time of this Discovery I have now here found, but that the time spent about it is by him affirmed to be 14 years, though the small endamage of his Health and Fortunes. Nor do I find that any care was taken of his Petition, or any thing else done by others in pursuance of his Propositions. Whether it were on any of the Reasons before laid down; or that there was no credit given to his affirmations, I determine not. Nor find I that he gave any names to the Bays or Promontories were given before, or found not any thing worth the naming. And for such names as were given before; (hitherto *Ferdinando Quir's* new Country for *Nova Guinea*) we find a Promontory called *Cape Hermosa*, in the East parts hereof, near the Islands of *Solomon*, and not far from the *Equator*. 2. Another in the Western part, but as near the *Equinox*, called *Pont Primario*. 3. A third in the first bending of the Coast towards the South, called *Cape de Buen Desfada*, or the Cape of good Desire. 4. *Rio de Valcanes*. 5. *Rio de Lorenzo*. 6. *Rio de S. Angustine*, on the East of *Cape Hermosa*, towards the Straights. 7. The Rivers of *S. Peter*. 8. *S. Paul*. 9. *S. Andrew*, and 10. *S. James*, betwixt *Cape Hermosa* and *Primario*.

But being there is little certainty of these last Discoveries, and the greatest certainty we have of that little is nothing but a list of names without any thing observable in the state and story of the same, they may still retain the old name of *Terra Incognita*. And therefore I try my Fortune, and without troubling the Vice-Roy of *Peru* and *Mexico*, or taking out Commission for a new Discovery, will make a search into this *Terra Australis* for some other Regions, which must be found either here or no-where. The names of which are, 1. *Mundus alter idem*, 2. *Utopia*, 3. *New Atlantis*, 4. *Fairy Land*, 5. The

Painter's

Painter's Wives Island. 6. The Lands of *Coventry*, and 7. *The New World* in the Moon.

1. *MUNDUS ALTER ET IDEM*, Another world, and yet the same, is a witty and ingenious invention of a Learned Frenchman, writ by him in his younger days, (but well enough becoming the authority of the gravest Head) in which he distinguisheth the Vices, Passions, Humours, and all Affections most commonly incident to mankind, into several Provinces; gives us the Character of each, as in the description of a Country, People, and chief Cities of it; and lets them forth to the Eye in such lively Colours, that the Vicious man may see therein his own Deformities, and the well-minded man his own Imperfections. The Scene of this Design is laid by the Reverend Author in this *Terra Australis*, the *Deorum* happily preserved in the whole Discovery; the stile acutely clear, in the invention singular. Of whom and his *New World* I shall give you that Eulogy which the Historian doth of *Homer*, *Nec ante illum quem ille imitaretur, neque post illum qui cum imitari posset, invenimus est*.

2. *UTOPIA* is a Country first discovered by Sir *Thomas More*, after Lord Chancellor of England, and by him made a Scene of a Common-wealth, which neither *Salem*, nor *Lynguey*, nor any of the Legislators of former times did ever dream of; nor had been fabled by *Plato*, *Aristotle*, *Tully*, or any who have written the *Idea's* of a Form of Government, though not reducible to practice. Some of his Plots we have taken notice of already: viz. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt by making of those Metals Chains and Fetters for their Malefactors, Pans of Clove-roots, Chamber-pots, and Vessels of such unclean use; by imposing it as a penalty on infamous persons, to wear Gold-rings upon their Fingers, and the like devices: as also his device to prevent mistakes and dilikes in Marriages, by giving the parties a full view of each other naked. Many more projects of this nature, some of them possible enough, but so impracticable, beyond hope of being looked on in the modelling of a Common wealth, that we may reckon this device amongst those strange Fancies, *que nunquam antea se conceperat, sedus opera tentata erant*. The man indeed (considering the times he lived in) was of rare abilities; but this *Utopia* fitted only to the Meridian of this Southern Continent, this *Terra Australis Incognita*, in which now we are; and to no place else.

3. *NEW ATLANTIS* is an Island of this Southern Continent discovered by Sir *Francis Bacon*, the Learned Viscount of *St. Albans*; one of Sir *Thomas More's* Successors in the place of Lord Chancellor, but far before him in the excellency and fecibility of his Invention. It had this name with reference to *Atlantis*, an Island of the Western or *Atlantic* Ocean, mentioned in the Works of *Plato*, both alike invisible. But for his falling into this Island, his description of it, the City of *Besufora*, and the manner of his reception there, such handsome probabilities, and so fairly carried, that to one not acquainted with the state of the World it would seem a Reality. But above all things, the Inventions and Designs of *Solomon's* House; for perfecting the works of nature, or rather improving Nature to the best advantages of Life, and the benefit of mankind, are beyond comparison. The man I must confess had his personal errors, (I know none without them) of good and bad qualities equally compounded: *Mores ejus vigore & levitate mixtissimi, ac perentius uno fidei de Pilo*, not one amongst many thousand (to pursue that Character) *qui aut enim vultus diligit, aut facilius fufcipit negotio*. A man of a most strong Brain, and a Chymical Head, who, if he had been entertained with some liberal Salary, abstracted from all Affairs both of State and Judicature; and furnished with

sufficiency both of means and helps for the going on in his Design, would, I am confident, have given us such a Body of Natural Philosophy; and made it so subservient to the publick good, that neither *Aristotle*, or *Thesophrastus* amongst the Ancients, nor *Paracelsus*, or the rest of our later Chymists would have been considerable.

4. *FAIRY-LAND* is another part of this *Terra Incognita*, the habitation of the Fairies, a pretty kind of little Fiends or pigmy-Devils, but more inclined to sport than mischief; of which old Women, who remember the times of Popery, tell us many fine Stories. A cleaner and more innocent Cheat was never put upon poor ignorant People, by the Monks and Friars. Their habitation here or no where; though sent occasionally by *Oberon* and their other Kings, to our ports of the world. For not being reckoned amongst the good Angels, nor having malice enough to make them Devils, (but such a kind of midling Spirits as the Latines call *Lemures*, or *Larvae*) we must find out some place for them, neither Heaven nor Hell, and most likely this. Their Country never more ennobled then by being made the Scene of that excellent Poem called the *Fairy Queen*. Intended to the honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, and the greatest persons in her Court: but shadowed in such lively colours, framed by exactly by the Rules of Poetic, and presenting such *Idea's* of all Moral goodness; that as there never was a Poem more artificial, so can no Ethical discourse more fashion and enlame the mind to the love of Virtue. *Inserviam facilius aliquem quam imitatum, fialle be Spencer's* Motto; and so I leave him to his self.

5. THE *PAINTERS WIVES ISLAND* is an Island of this Tract, mentioned by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, in his *History of the World*. Of which he was informed by *Don Pedro de Sarmiento*, a Spanish Gentleman, employed by his King in planting some Colonies on the Straights of *Magellan*, (which we have touched upon before) who being taken Prisoner by Sir *Walter* in his going home, was asked of him about some Island which the Maps presented in those Straights, and might have been of great use to him in his Undertaking. To which he merrily replied, that it was to be called the *Painters Wives Island*, saying, that whilst the Painter drew that Map, his Wife sitting by, desired him to put in one Country for her, that she in her imagination might have an Island of her own. His meaning was, that there was no such Island as the Maps presented. And I fear the Painters Wife hath many Islands, and some Countries too upon the Continent in our common Maps, which are not really to be found on the strictest search.

6. THE *LANDS OF CHIVALRY* are such Islands, Provinces, and Kingdoms, in the Books of *Errantry*, which have no being in any known part of the World, and therefore must be sought in this. A gross absurdity, but frequent in those kind of Writers, who in describing the Adventures of their Knights, in disfigurement of Geography, (with which indeed they had no acquaintance) have not only disjoynted Countries which are near together, and laid together Countries which are far remote; but given us the description of many Islands, Provinces, and mighty Kingdoms, which as the ingenious Author of the History of *Don Quixote* merrily observeth, are not to be found in all the Map. Of this sort is the Isle of *Adamant*, in Sir *Honour of Burdeaux*; the Firm Island, in the History of *Amadis de Gaul*; the Hidden Island, and that of the Sage *Alvar*, in Sir *Palmerin of England*; the Islands of *Lindaraca*, and the *Droivish Fanno*, with the Kingdom of *Lyra*, (of which the *Amazonian* Lady *Archiflora* was the right In Queen) and many others of that kind, in the *Amour* of *Knyghthead*; and divers of like nature in *Palmerin de Oliva*, *Primaleton*, and *Selamio* of *Greece*, *Parisimus*, the *Re-*

B b b b b

A TABLE.

Alfenus, the son of *Gomer*, first settled in *Babylonia* and *Phrygia* minor, l. 3. 5-7

Apollonius *Citharista*, a proverb and the meaning of it, l. 3. 23

Ajfar, the son of *Sam*, where placed, l. 1. 11-15, the *Ajfarim* defended of him *ib*. why so easily conquered by all invaders l. 3. 124

Aibens l. 2. 189

Avata the *Hun*, why called *Flagellum Dei* l. 2. 156. his bloody end *ib*. his Coat of Arms 160

Aneur, and *Aruspeu*, how they differ, and whence they had their names l. 3. 120

Augustine Confession, why so called l. 2. 35, by whom, and where confirmed 63

St. *Augustin's* tart reply to an Atheistical demand l. 2. The Order of *Fryers* by him founded 99

Augustus, or an Elly of the Means and Councils, by which he reduced the Common wealth of *Rome* to the state of Monarchy l. 1. 38

Avi *seiftra*, what it meant, and the reason of it l. 3. 120

Aulæ, Tapestries, why so called, and by whom invented l. 3. 15

Aufrestia, what Provinces it contained, when first made a Kingdom l. 2. 56. the *lory* and Kings thereof *ib*.

Australis *Incegnia*, the vast greatness of it l. 4. 158. why not yet discovered *ib*.

B

Abel, the attempt only of some bold adventurers, and not of all the sons of *Noah* l. 1. 13. the languages occasioned there not 72 in number, as by some supposed 8. the stupendious greatness of the Project l. 3. 113. 114

Babylon *ibid*

Bacchus, called *Meonius* why l. 3. 18

Balaerus, why so called l. 1. 243

Baltick Sea, why so called l. 2. 110

why it doth not ebb and flow like other Seas *ibid*

Balher, not permitted by the Emperor *Adrian* to be used promiscuously by both Sexes l. 1. 141. the inconvenience arising from that intermixture *ib*.

Battle at *Matina*, and the success thereof l. 1. 127. between the *Sarmatians* & their Slaves l. 2. 132, 135 of *Kerefture* 155. of *Lapanto* 219 the last betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius* King of *Persia* l. 3. 151

Beldim, mentioned *Gen*. 2. 12. what conceived to be l. 3. 143

Beaufort, why made the surname of the Children of *John of Gaunt* l. 1. 169

Bel and *Bad*, whence the names derived l. 3. 119. why called *Belzebub* the Lord of *Flies* 74

Bellerophon *Liter*, a by-word, the occasion of it l. 3. 21

Belge, the valiantest of the *Gauls* in the time of *Cæsar*, and for what reasons l. 2. 23

Benedictines, or *black Monks*, by whom instituted l. 1. 100. their habit and increase *ib*.

Berrie, Abundantly stored with sheep. l. 1. 175. *Charles* the 7th. in derision called King of *Berrie* *ibid*

Becoor, the sovereign nature of it l. 4. 89. found in the belly of a beast, called the *Picague* *ib*. that of *China* and the East more excellent than that of *America* l. 3. 183

Bishop, of *Spalato*, his Levity, Apostacy, and death l. 2. 162

Bishops coeval with Christianity l. 1. 32, 146, 149, 257. l. 2. 105, 179 l. 3. 61. how, and why hated by the *Biscuits* l. 1. 215. and the ill consequences thereof *ibid*. *Bishops* not anciently interdicted from the acts of War l. 3. 60

Black Fryers, or *Dominicans*, by whom founded, and why so called l. 1. 99

Blind and *Lame*, mentioned 2 *Sam*. 5. 8. what they were most probably l. 3. 79

Bis in *Lingua*, a proverb the meaning and original of it l. 2. 189

Botelins his strange adventure l. 2. 201

Bracknams, what they were amongst the *Indians* l. 2. 193. their authority and course of life *ib*. succeeded in the first by the modern *Bramines* *ib*.

Brachygraphy, or the art of short writing, by whom first invented. l. 4. 5

Britain, from whence the name probably derived l. 1. 251. not from *Drusus* *ib*. that there was no such man, proved *ib*. Southern Parts thereof called *England* 252. its plenty and ornaments briefly set forth *ib*. plenty of Mines therein 254. and number of Parks *ib*. its Seas stored with fish 255. quantity of flesh spent in one City thereof 255. Christian faith planted therein by whom 257. first peopled out of *Gaul* 262. counterfeit Kings of *England* l. 3. 136

Buccanare l. 1. 125

Burgundians, why so called l. 1. 189 when first converted to the faith, *ib*. their affairs and story *ib*.

Biscuinners, some of their Customs l. 1. 218

C.

Cæsar, the name at first of the *Roman* Emperours l. 1. 52. after of the designed Successor *ib*. the unfortunate end of most of them 53

Cæsar Borgia, son of Pope *Alexander* the sixth, after divers changes of fortune where slain l. 1. 215

Calis taken by the *English*, and retaken by the *French* l. 1. 161

Calis taken by the Earl of *Essex* l. 1. 225

Caliph, the name of the Successors of *Mahomet*, and the succession of them l. 3. 109, 110

Calvores, what, and where seated, their number and manner of life l. 2. 202

Cambyses his present to the King of *Ethiopia*, with the Kings answer returned l. 4. 71

Campi *Caratamini*, where l. 1. 185

Canes *sepiolibræ*, what, l. 3. 153

Capuanæ *esse* *Canas* *Amibalis*, a by-word, and the occasion of it l. 1. 61

Capuchin Friars, by whom first instituted, and why so called l. 1. 100

Cappadocians generally so lewd, that they grew a by-word l. 3. 9. not only morally wicked, but naturally venomous 10

Caracalla the Emperor, slain by *Marcianus*, where, and upon what occasion l. 3. 113

Capbarim to be found in *Captus*, a Town of *Egypt* l. 1. 10. carried against all reason into *Cappadocia* *ib*. 84, 9

Cardinals, by whom first ordained, the Election of the Popes assigned to them only, and by whose authority l. 1. 92

Carmel, a Mountain of *Syria* l. 2. 45. mistook for the *Gentiles* for a God *ib*. the *Fryers* *Carmelites* thence named *ib*. l. 1. 100

Carthusian Monks, by whom instituted l. 1. 100. their strict kind of life *ib*.

Cassubum, more likely to be found in *Cassitis* than *Calchis* l. 1. 118

Centaurs, the fable of them, whence it took beginning l. 2. 199

Chaldeans, great Astrologers l. 3. 112

the name communicated unto who professed that *Artib*, so called from *Cheled*, the son of *Nachor* *ib*.

Charles the 8th. of *Navar* his strange death l. 1. 216

Chaos, or first matter of the world, exprest by *Moses* in the names of Heaven and Earth l. 1. 2. how described by *Ovid* *ib*

Chetsermaveth, the father of the *Chetromatites* an *Indian* people l. 1. 10

Cherubim, what they are, why so called, and how many of them l. 2. 106

Chimæra the Monster, what it was, & how named by *Bellerophon* l. 3. 21

Chorography, what it is, and how differeeth from *Geography* l. 1. 24

Christians, where first so called, and with what solemnity l. 3. 44. extremely hated by the *Gentiles* 45. their persecutions and increase *ib*.

Christmas sports in *Twelf-tide* by whom first instituted l. 1. 264

Chronologies, by whom they differ from History l. 1. 17. by whom best performed *ib*.

Clus, the Son of *Cham*, first planted in

in *Arabia* l. 3. 102. his posterity (the *Chusites*) why called *Ethiopian* *ib*. mistaken for the *Ethiopian* of *Africk* *ib*.

Chusites, why rendered *Ethiopian* in our English Bibles l. 3. 99. the Translation justified *ib*. the actions attributed unto them not possible to be understood of the *Ethiopian* of *Africk* l. 4. 71. the mistake laid on the Expositors l. 3. 100.

Cimmerians the posterity of *Gomer* l. 1. 12. 154. first settled in *Albania* and *Phrygia* Major *ib*. and gave name to *Bosphorus* *Cimmerius* l. 2. 38. In *Europe* better known by the name of *Cimbri*, the fame with the *Cimmerians* l. 1. 12. 1. 2. 38 the *Cimbri* *Chetserm* named from them l. 2. 106 their attempt upon the *Roman* Empire and overthrown by *Marius* l. 1. 187

Cimon in one day overthrew the Sea and Land Forces of the *Persians* l. 3. 23

Cimmam, what it is, where and how it grew, and from whence so called l. 4. 69

Ciphers, or private Characters for writing, by whom first invented l. 4. 4

Circassians where they dwell, their opinions and practice l. 3. 166

Circassians or *White Monks*, whence so called l. 1. 99. by whom ordained *ib*.

Cities by whom first built, and on what design l. 1. 5. the causes of the greatness and magnificence of them *ib*.

Citim, the son of *Japhet*, first settled in the Isle of *Cyprus* l. 3. 35. his posterity spreading into *Macedonia* l. 2. 199, 204. from thence into *Æolia*, and so into *Italy* l. 1. 32

Climax, what they be, how many and how distinguished l. 1. 10

Clover, where they grow most plentifully, and the nature of them l. 3. 22

Coa, and *Vestis* *Coa*, a light Garment much used by the Dames of *Rome* l. 3. 90 the *Coa* Wine (*vinum* *Coa*) as much cried up by the good-fellows of that City 31

Cocoonis, a most excellent fruit, and of several uses l. 4. 70

Cochinele, a precious Die, how, and where it groweth l. 4. 110

Codrus, his love to his Country l. 2. 190

Colonies, why planted by the *Romans* l. 1. 185. the number of them, and how distributed *ib*. whether more useful than a Fortrefs *ib*.

Colophonem addere, a Proverb, and from whence it came l. 3. 17

Colossus of *Rhodes* l. 3. 35

Commentaries what they properly are, and how they differ from History l. 1. 17

Constantine converted to the Faith, and

on what occasion l. 1. 53. his new Modelling of the Empire 55. of which one of the chief subverters *ib*. He caused the Precorian Guards *ib*. his Donation forged 94

Constance, the Council there holden l. 2. 58

Consuls, when first ordained in *Rome* l. 1. 35. who the first sole Consul *ib*. when the Office ended *ib*.

Copris, the name of the Christians of *Egypt*, whence to be derived l. 4. 5

their Tenets, in matters of Religion, and estate at the present *ib*.

Corybantes, the Priests of *Cybele* l. 2. 214

Cosmography defined l. 1. 24. the general Latitude of the Notion *ib*.

Corys his rare temper in maulering and preventing passion l. 2. 205

Cotton Wool, where it groweth, and how l. 4. 45. *Op* *Pajim* *alibi* l. 3. 47

Council of *Trent* l. 2. 67

Creation of the World, and the Motives of it l. 1. 1. the concurrence of each person to it 3. the matter of it, and the method *ib*. how long since done l. 1. 2

Cræte, things most observable there l. 2. 219

Cretenfe mendaciam l. 2. 217

Cretenfe *seifet* *Pelagus*, a Proverb, the occasion of it l. 2. 219

Crocodiles, their monstrous shape, and wheremost usual l. 4. 7

Careers, what they were, and from whence so called l. 2. 217

Cassians happy guests at the Arms of *Germany* l. 2. 104

Cyrian women their Unchastity l. 3. 34. the Heroick act of a *Cyrian* Lady 37

Cyzicum, besieged in vain by *Mithridates*, its glorious Temple l. 3. 15

D.

Dæyes observed as lucky, or unlucky unto divers men l. 1. 86

Damascus, how situated l. 3. 171 *Damascen* Plums *Damask* Roses, and *Damask* Linnen, thence so called 33

Daniata besieged and taken by the Christians l. 4. 9

Darius his fruitless Wars against the *Scythians* l. 3. 164

David George a monstrous Heretic, and what his Tenets l. 2. 3

Dadan the son of *Regema*, planted on the shores of the *Persian* Gulf l. 1. 12

Delinquents, how to be proceeded with l. 1. 63. gained more by favour than by rigour *ib*.

Despot, the title of their apparent in the Eastern Empire l. 2. 165, communicated to inferior Princes *ib*. the *Despots* of *Rassia* *ib*. of *Servia* *ib*. of *Bulgaria* *ib*.

Diaries, what they are, and how they differ from History l. 1. 2

Diætaros, what they were in state at *Rome*, a Catalogue of them l. 1. 38

Divination, by birds, and the kinds thereof l. 3. 122

Dioclesian depose himself and follows the Trade of a Gardner l. 1. 55

Dodanin the Son of *Javan*, first settled in *Rhodes* l. 3. 52. his posterity passing into *Epirus* l. 2. 197. and there naming the *Dodanin* Grove 298

Dos-fish, how taken l. 2. 3

Dofubicans, a *Samaritan* Sect. and their Superstitions l. 2. 72

Drake Sir *Francis*, how said to be the first that sailed about the World, by whom followed l. 4. 133

Drabimirs, their cruelty, swallowed alive l. 2. 77

Druides, what they were, and from whence so called; their chief seat in *France*, in *Britain* l. 1. 275

Drusum, what they are l. 3. 39. of their power and strength 53

E.

Eco la *Fico*, a scoll used amongst the *Italians* l. 1. 124

Edgar rowed over *Dee* by eight Kings l. 1. 276

Edward III. his claim unto the Crown of *France* mistaken in our common Chronicles l. 1. 153. not prejudiced at all by the *Salsine* Law *ib*.

Egypt flooded in probability before the Flood, some of the Dynasties of their Kings to have bin before it l. 4. 15

Elam the son of *Sem*, where planted

Election of Popes l. 1. 97. of the Dukes of *Venice* l. 1. 109. of the German Emperours l. 2. 103. of the great Master of *Malta* l. 4. 39. means for obtaining the Crown of *Bohemia* l. 2. 77

Electors of *Germany*, how many l. 2. 103. by whom ordained *ib*. their Officers and how performed *ib*.

Elephants their vast greatness and docile nature l. 3. 191

Elisba the son of *Javan* settled in *Eli* of *Peloponnesus* l. 1. 13. and after in the Isles of *Crece* l. 2. 182

Ezekel 27. 7. 15.

Emir of *Sidon*, what he is l. 3. 45

his power and strength

Endymionis *sonnum* *dermit*, a Proverb the occasion of it l. 3. 20

Enemies to be licenced flight l. 1. 177

how to be dealt withal when they are in our power l. 1. 63.

Enterprizes betwixt great Princes reckoned inconvenient l. 1. 119

Epanomondai slain at *Manitima* l. 2. 183

Efeurial l. 1. 232

Effeni, why so called, their opinions and *Dogmata* l. 3. 67

Erymologies

A TABLE.

Etymologies, ridiculous of *Europe* 1. 23. of the *Huguenots* 1. 1. 169. of the *Wallons* 1. 2. 3. of the *Lombards* 1. 2. 148
Ephesus, and the Temple there dedicated to *Diana* 1. 3. 17
Epoche, what it is in account of time 1. 1. 20. the several *Epoches* in *Italy* *ibid.*
Ennabys, why most employed by the Eastern Monarchs 1. 1. 160
Europe, whence so called 1. 1. 27. the Original languages fill in it.
Esau, what he was, and by whom ordained 1. 1. 81. his proper Territory *ib.* the Catalogue and fucellion of them. *ibid.*
F.
Fides Attica, a proverb, the Original of it 1. 2. 189
Fieds, a barbarous custom among the *Scots* 1. 1. 283. abrogated by King *James* *ibid.*
Fig tree, why cursed by our saviour 1. 3. 61
Fine, worshipped by the *Lithui* 1. 2. 143. and by the *Perfians* 1. 3. 142. carried in state before the *Romans* *ibid.*
Fleas drive the Inhabitants from the City *Myra* 1. 3. 17
Flight, to be permitted an enemy, and debarred a Souldier 1. 1. 177
Formalities of the homage done by *Edward III.* to the French King 1. 1. 184. at the Degradation of *Priest* 1. 2. 58. at the livillement of the Dukes of *Carinthia* 1. 2. 67. of *Maurice Duke of Saxony* 93. of *Albert Duke of Prussia* 137. of the Duke of *Moscovic*, 149. at the admitting the new *Du* of *Wurzburg*, and interring the old 1. 2. 72. at the marriages of the *Netherlands* 1. 3. 115. at the Coronation of the *Great Cham* 180. at the prefating of Ambassadors to the *Grand Signior* 136. at the Funerals in *China* 183
Foreign Guard dangerous to a Princes Person 1. 4. 18. as foreign Aids unto a Kingdom 19. on what occasions usually fought, and when most necessary *ib.*
Fornication and *Adultery* punished with death 1. 2. 153
Franks, or *French*, of what Nations they consisted 1. 1. 188. Their Actions and achievements *ib.* By whom converted to the faith, and on what occasion 1. 1. 150. their Character 16. the Antipathy between them and the *Spaniards* 153 the valstnes of their Empire, and the reasons of the decay thereof 190. 191. The name of *Franky* given by the *Turks* to all Western Christians 1. 3. 44
Frankincense, where it groweth, and how 1. 3. 104, 106. offered to the

Gods, *Frankincense* growing out of the Earth *ibid.*
Franciscans, or *Grey Friars*, why so called, and by whom founded, by the French called *Cordeliers* 1. 1. 100
Free Cities, what they are, how many and in what Estates 1. 2. 37
Friers, and their several Orders 1. 1. 100
Ge, in what esteem amongst the people 1. 1. 100
Geulstubs of *Rhefan* 1. 2. 133. and *Podolia* 144
G.
Gabriel, a Leprous kind of people in what parts they dwell 1. 1. 182
Galileans, of what flock they were 1. 3. 68. scorned by the *Jews* 69. Their zeal unto Religion, our saviour called a *Galilean* *ib.*
Gallican Church, the power and privileges of it 1. 1. 151
Gaulonites, what they were, for what cause named *Gaulonites* 1. 3. 60
Gentlemen of Venice, what they are and what esteem 1. 1. 109
Geography defin'd 1. 1. 16. the benefit thereof 19
S. George the Cappadocian, a famous Martyr 1. 3. 9. his *Cenobaphium*, at *Lidda* in the Holy Land 1. 3. 50 highly esteemed among the *Turks*, his bank in *Genoa* 1. 1. 120. made Patron of the most noble Order of the Garter 1. 1. 274
Germans, whence so named 1. 2. 32 how terrible at first to the *Romans* 1. 2. 39 their Original extraction *ib.* possessed of the Western Empire, the power of the Emperors impaired, and by what means now merely titular 1. 2. 102
Geter, the son of *Aram* planted in *Albania* 1. 1. 8. 1. 3. 130
Giffets, from whence they have both their names and feats 1. 4. 5
Gomer, the son of *Japhet*, first settled in *Albania*, also of his posterity, see *Commerians* 1. 1. 12. 1. 2. 38
Goths, their Original, and first seat 1. 2. 120. their Kings before they left the East 1. 2. 121. their successes and affairs in *Italy* 1. 4. 3. 4. 4
Grecians, in what they differ from the Church of *Rome*, by which maliciously and unjustly persecuted *ib.* their language not of such extent as in former times 1. 1. 179
Guelph and *Gibellines* whence so called and when, and the fancy of the *Elfs* and *Goblins* derived from thence 1. 1. 113. 1. 2. 76
Guelphian family, their Original 1. 2. 96
Guicciardine yielded by the Inquisition and the substance of him in that place 1. 1. 94
Guns where invented, and by whom

1. 2. 34. not used in *India* at the expedition of *Bacchus* 1. 3. 181
Gyger, how he came to be King of *Lydia* 1. 3. 19. whence said to have a Ring, by which made invincible *ib.*
H.
H A Letter Omnisious to the state of *England* 1. 2. 225
Hamelst, or the Land of *Hamelst* 1. 3. 46
Hanse-Towns, why so called, how many, and of what power at Sea 1. 2. 37
Harlots, whence used for the name a common prostitute 1. 1. 165
Harpyes, the fable and the Moral 1. 2. 128
Hatto, Archbishop of *Mainz*, devourer of Rats and Mice 1. 2. 49
Soalfo Popielus Duke of Poland 1. 3. 143
Havilah the son of *Chas*, first planted about *Babylonia* 1. 1. 10. called thence the Land of *Havilah* in the second of *Gen*. 1. 3. 143
Havilah, the son of *Jackson* first seated in *India* 1. 1. 10. the Kingdoms of *Ava* and *Chavilah*, so called from him. 1. 3. 112
Hebrew, not the primitive language 1. 1. 17. nor at all peculiar to the *Jews* *ib.*
Heigra, the Mahometan *Epoche* 1. 1. 18. from whence so called 1. 3. 109. the unsteadfastness of *Scaliger* about it 1. 2. 38
Hellenist, what they were, and why so called 1. 2. 179. 3. 51. in what differing from the other *Jews* *ib.*
Herveyian Forest; the beginning and extent thereof 1. 2. 38
Hermias the Tyrant sewed in an Oxes Hide, and baited to death 1. 4. 100
Herodians, what they were, and from whence detominated 1. 3. 58
Heterosii, what they are in *Geography* and from whence so called 1. 2. 22
Hieroglyphicks, what they were, and by whom first used 1. 4. 5. some particulars of *ibid.*
S. Hierome, a Father of the Church, where born 1. 2. 153. the Order of Monks by him instituted 1. 1. 99
History defined 1. 1. 16. 17. the necessary use of it, and to whom, how it differeth from *Annals*, *Commentaries*, &c. *ibid.*
Hock-tide sports, the Original of them, and from whence so named 1. 1. 271
Hollanders, their great strength at Sea, 1. 2. 20. the great benefit they make by fishing on the Coast of *England* 1. 2. 2. Their bafe cheat upon the *English* at *Polemane* 1. 3. 222. and bloody butchery at *Amboyna* 223
Holy Oyl of Rheims, in what state attended, not so ancient as the *French* pretend 1. 1. 159
Homers

Homers birth, how contended for 1. 2. 17. where born, and why called *Momides* *ibid.*
Humans, a strange beast, and the nature of it 1. 4. 125
Huguenots, whence so called 1. 1. 169. Their great power once, and present condition 1. 3. 151
Hul, or *Chul*, the son of *Aram*, in what parts first settled 1. 1. 81. 3. 127
Hydrography what it is, and by whom best written 1. 1. 26
I.
Iacobites, what they are, and where most numerous, their opinions 1. 3. 117. 118
Jacobites, their institution and number 1. 3. 134. their Office and power *ib.* their infolencies and punishments, 135. the likeliest men to carry the *Turkish* Empire, if the line of *Ottoman* should fail, 1. 3. 128
Japhet, how made partaker of the blessing of God, *Gen*. 9. 27. both in the literal sense, and the mystical 1. 1. 20
Japys, the name of the North-west wind, and why given unto it, 1. 6. 5
Jarab, the son of *Jackson*, more probably to be found in *Archeologia*, than *Isidore Hieronym*. 1. 1. 78
Javau the son of *Japhet*, the father of the *Janians* and *Abharians* 1. 3. 17
Jalousie, a predominant passion amongst the *Indians*, 1. 1. 59. as also amongst the *Moor*, and *Spaniards* 207. the *English* little subject to it, and the *Dutch* much less, 1. 1. 12.
Jesuites by whom first instituted, 1. 1. 100. their vow of *Mission* *ib.* grown formidable to the Pope, *ibid.* industrious in planting Christianity in the barbarous Nations, 1. 3. 183. Chief Factors for the King of *Spain*, 1. 1. 210. They and the *Presbyterians* or *Puritan* Preachers the greatest Incendiaries of *Chriftendom* 100. expelled *Georgia*, on what occasion 1. 3. 130
Jetur the son of *Ismael*, the father of the *Iuwans* 1. 3. 66
Jews not suffered to land in *Cyprus* 1. 3. 34. expelled out of *England*, *France* and *Spain* 94. in danger to be stoned every *Munday-Thursley* *ib.* The hopes and hinderance of their conversion, *ib.* the restitution of their Kingdom not denied by *Christ* 95
Jlands how caused, whether better seated than the Continent, 1. 1. 18.
Imperial Chamber, why erected, and where settled, 1. 2. 50. *Imperial Cities*, *Free* 1. 3. 115
Indians, or *Christians* of *S. Thomas*, what they hold in matter of Religion, 1. 3. 192. The submission of

their Churches to the Pope 193
Indice, where and how it groweth, 1. 3. 260
Influence of the Heavenly bodies on particular Countries 1. 1. 15
Inquisition, when, and why ordained, the manner of proceeding in it not admitted into many of the *Pal* Countries 1. 1. 210
Interim of *Germany*, what it was, and how ill liked of all parties 1. 2. 35
Invention of Clocks and Watches, 1. 2. 2. of Pictures in Glafs, and lying Colours in Oyl, of printing, 21. of Guns 34. Leather Ordnance 148. of Wild Fire 217. of Battle-ax 1. 3. 6. of Dice and Chefs 18. of Tragedies 28. of fail for Ships 30. of Arithmetick and Astrology 43. of Purple Die 44. of Crystal-glafs 45. of Palltrails, Hour-glalles, &c. 1. 2. 72. of Comedies 37. of Mariners Compais 62. of Tackle for Ships, *ib.* of Letters, and Cyphers, 1. 4. 4. of Brachygraphy *ib.* of Papers, 1. 4. 8
Ireland, why never Conquered till the reign of King *James* 1. 1. 206
Irisht their barbarous customs 1. 2. 187
Ishmael Games 1. 2. 187
Ishad and *Jadab*, when divided; the reasons why no more United, though some opportunities were offered 1. 3. 85
Italians derived from *Cittim*, the son of *Japhet*, so called from the *Etiolians*, by whom converted to the Faith, their scandalous lives, how punished, and by what instruments 1. 1. 33. 34. and 46
Italy the name at first of the East parts of the Country, only communicated after to the whole, the Kings thereof after the ruine of the Empire; abandoned by the Emperours and for what reasons 1. 1. 58. 59
Jean the Virgin, nota Witch, as the *English*, not miraculously sent as the *French* pretend, *ib.* what he was indeed 1. 2. 55
Jeksan, and his posterity settled originally in the East, 1. 10. 11. the improbabilities of their fixing in *Arabia Felix*, 10 greater of their transplanting into *America*, 3. 193
John Baptist head, how plentifully mangled by the Papists.
Julius Scaliger his censure of *Hesiodus* controverted by *Velleius* 1. 2. 192. his bafe character of the *English*, 1. 1. 255
Joseph Scaliger his singularity about *Nabonidus*, and *Darius Medus*, *ib.* His unsteadfastness about the *Heigra* 1. 3. 121
Julian the Apostate where he died 1. 3. 115
Judges of Hell, what, and who they were, and why so accounted of, 1. 2. 213. 216

Justus Lipsius his unjust Censure of *Cassius Commentaries*. 1. 1. 18
K.
Τητα Καντα υδωσα, a Proverb and of whom intended 1. 2. 115
Καντα υδωσα & *Καντα υδωσα* *Τητα* proverbially used for a wicked person 1. 3. 9
Kings called an Ordinance of man, and why, 1. 1. 216. who of them anciently anointed, how they take precedence 274. not to use their People to the wars, 1. 2. 30. the Legend of the Kings of *Colen*, 48. Kings but for twelve years, and then must sacrifice themselves. 1. 3. 206. Kings subject to Priests, where 1. 4. 62
Kings-Evil a disease, 1. 1. 130. the Cure thereof hereditary to the King of *England* 1. 1. 271
Knightbood vid. Orders.
L.
Labyrinth of *Egypt*, 1. 4. 6. imitated by *Mino*, in that of *Crete*, 1. 2. 216
Lachryma Christi. 1. 1. 118. the expression of a *Dutchman* thereon *ib.*
Lady of Loreto her Legend, 1. 3. 70. the sumptuousness of her Temple, 1. 1. 84
Lamiis thrown an Infant into the fishpond, found by King *Agilmond*, brought up in the Court, and after chosen King of *Longobards*, 1. 2. 156
Latines, the Inhabitants of *Latium*, and from whence so called 1. 1. 30
Latine tongue not the language of *Italy*. The reasons of the spreading and extent thereof *ibid.*
Lampsaenus, how saved by *Anaximenes* when threatened by *Alexander* *ib.*
Laws of Oleron 1. 1. 203
League between *France* and *Scotland*, 1. 1. 286. the condition thereof, *ib.*
Lechabim the Father of the *Lybi* *Egyptii* 1. 1. 10. 1. 4. 17
Lemmers an infectious beast, 1. 2. 114
Lemnia, or *Terra Lemnia*, the sovereign vertues of it, 1. 2. 210. how made and ordered, *ib.* why called *Terra Sigillata* *ib.*
Letters, the first Original, and History of them 1. 4. 4.
Levites why scattered and divided among the Tribes, 1. 3. 81. The liberal maintenance allowed them *ibid.*
Libanon, a famous Mountain, why so named, 1. 3. 41. the length, course and branches of it *ibid.*
Liberias Prophetas, what, and where most in use 1. 2. 139
Liberis the name of a light Vessel, 1. 2. 163. and of such Chairs as we call *Sedans*, *ib.* and from whence so named *ib.*
Lions, 1. 192. Its famous Mart. *ib.* in it a Temple dedicated to *Augustus*, *ib.* before whose Altar exercises instituted

A TABLE.

tured of the Greek and Roman Elo-
quence *ibid.*
Lomb a strange beast in *Bohemia* 1. 2.
77
Lombards their Original and first
Kings 1. 2. 156. their affairs in *Italy*,
the subversion of their Kingdom
there 1. 156.
Lord the son of *Sem*; the father of the
Lydians in *Asia minor* 1. 1. 1.
Ludm the son of *Micraim*, the father
of the *Ethiopiens* in *Africa*, 1. 1. 1.
improperly rendred *Lydians* in our
English Bibles, *Jer.* 46. 9. 12
Luther his birth, his first contention
with the Pope, 1. 2. 35. the success
and spreading of his Doctrine, *ib.*
and by what means especially, 37.
the Government of the *Lutheran*
Churches, *ib.* the condition of their
Minist'rs 38. the Rites and Cere-
monies not much different from
those in the Churches of *England*. *ib.*
Lyfians the Tetrarch of *Abylene*
whose son he was 1. 3. 53. why
reckoned, *Luke* 3. among *Herod's*
Children *ibid.*
M
Makkab his story 1. 1. 286
Madai the third Son of *Japhet*
1. 3. 139. the father of the *Medes*
1. 1. 13
Magi, what they were in *Perfia*, their
eleven and power 1. 3. 142
Magus, why used to signify the
Load-stone by the *Latine* writers
1. 4. 87
Magog the son of *Japhet* settled in *Sy-
ria propria*, and the borders of *Asi-
ria* 1. 1. 124. 3. 37.
Mahomet his birth and breeding, 1. 3.
107. his design to Coven a new Re-
ligion, *ib.* the causes of the great
growth and increase thereof, 109.
his success and victories *ibid.*
Maiors of the Palace, their institution
and authority, 1. 1. 149. the Cata-
logue and succession of them *ibid.*
Malfaktor, flying to *Geneva*, how
punished 1. 1. 138
Mam, why created unarmed and
naked, the Image of God in him
what it doth consist in 1. 1. 3.
Mam exercises allowed at *Geneva* on
the Lords day 1. 1. 138
Marcheta mulieris a barbarous custom
of the *Scot*, 1. 1. 283. whence named
and by whom abrogated *ibid.*
Mares, why used to battle among
some of the Ancients 1. 2. 176
Margaret Countess of *Humberg*, be-
lieved at one birth of 365 Child-
ren 1. 2. 22
Mariners Camps, by whom first in-
vented, and by whom perfected
1. 1. 62. erroneously ascribed to
Solomon 1. 4. 86
Moravites, whence so called, their Te-
nets and places of dwelling, 1. 3. 40.
Their reconciliation with the

Pope, but a matter of complement
1. 3. 41
Marnia her valour in preferring *Ho-
phias* from being surpris'd by the
Turks 1. 3. 211
Masfacer of the *Scythians* by the
Medes, 1. 3. 154. of the *Romans* by
Mithridates, 7. of the *Danes* by
the *English*, 317. of the *French* in
Sicily, 1. 76. of the *Kingoms* by the
French 150
Masick, what it is, where growing
and how gathered 1. 3. 29
Masiff Dogs, why called *Masoff*, by
the *Latines* 1. 2. 107
Mamalukes, their Institution, Office,
and power 1. 4. 18
Medusa the Fable, and true story
thereof 1. 4. 75
Melchiter, what they are, and from
whence denominated 1. 3. 40
Mered, an Order of Religious per-
sons, their institution and employ-
ment 1. 2. 197
Mefeb, the son of *Aram* planted a-
bout *Mont Masius* 1. 3. 118
Mefeb, or *Idolich*, the son of *Japhet*,
settled among the *Mount Melchies*
in *Armenia major* 1. 2. 127
Mefus, and *Mount Sphir*, mentioned
Gen. 10. in what place they were
1. 3. 118
Message of *Waldemar K.* of *Denmark*
to the Pope 1. 2. 105
Messene *Servitor*, a Proverb, the occa-
sion of it 1. 2. 183
Minotaur, the Fable, and true story
of it 1. 2. 215, 216
Mithridates, the Author of the Anti-
dote so named, the sum and sub-
stance of his story 1. 3. 7.
Miramomolins, what the word doth
signifie, the *Miramomolins* of *Ma-
recco* 1. 4. 35
Micraim the son of *Cham*, the father
of the Nation of *Egypt* 1. 4. 4
Monarchy the nearest form of Go-
vernment to that of God: the Mo-
narchs of *Spain*, 1. 1. 247. of the
English Saxons, 270. of the *Affri-
cans*, 1. 3. 119. of the *Medes* and *Per-
sians* 855
Monasick life, how accounted of in
former times 1. 1. 100. whether to
be preferred before a sociable
100
Money not only the instrument of ex-
change in ancient times, 1. 4. 35. by
what names called, and why *ib.*
made sometimes of Leather and
Patt-board 126
Monks their Original and increase, 1.
1. 100. by whom first brought un-
der certain rules *ib.* their several
and particular Orders 99. 100
Mongul, a Tribe of the *Tartars*, 1. 2.
179. The Title of the great Em-
perours of *India* 210. their Cata-
logue and Succession *ib.*
Monument of *John Duke of Bedford*,

with the answer of *Charles* the 8th
to a Courtier, who perswaded him
to deface it 1. 1. 164
Monstremorey, the Family extinct 1. 1.
157
Moors, the lust of *Roderick* occasioned
their coming into *Spain*, 1. 1. 213
and the lust of *Magnus* their ex-
pulsion thence 220. forced to
quit *Spain* 228
Morlet, or Sea horses, the description
and use made of them 1. 4. 93
Mosack work, what it is 1. 1. 107
Muscovites, by whom converted, and
of what opinions in Religion, 1. 2.
128. from what Original they come
135. their Government Tyrannical
140. the great Dukes habit and
Royal state 851
Musali, or *Misfrone*, a strange beast
1. 1. 120
Musick, the several sorts and effect
thereof, 1. 3. 13. used by the Pri-
mitive Christians in Gods publick
service *ibid.*
Myrrour *Mare*, where it was, and
from whence so named 1. 3. 32
Myrrour *Pogrenus*, a Proverb, and
the meaning of it 1. 3. 15

N.

NAMES fatal to some Kingdoms
1. 2. 224
Naplia the nature of it, and where
most used 1. 3. 140, 143
Naphuchin son of *Micraim*, where
first planted, 1. 4. 14. the name of
Nephtem, by some said to be thence
derived *ibid.*
National Animosities to what cause
ascribed 1. 1. 16
Navigation, the Original and story of
it, 1. 4. 86. what Nations most fa-
mous for it in former times, and
who at present 86
Nemans Games by whom first institu-
ted, and on what occasion, 1. 2. 187
Nehimius, what they were, and in
what employed 1. 3. 78
Neshurians, whence so called, 1. 3. 115
their Tenets in Religion *ib.* Solemn-
ities they use in contracting mar-
riage, *ib.* much hated of the Pope,
and why 117
Nimrod, the Founder of the *Babylonian*
and *Affryan* Kingdoms 1. 3. 119,
120
Ninive 1. 4. 116
Noah's seven Precepts, or the Pro-
cepts of the sons of *Noah* 1. 3. 58
Nomad, where they dwell, and from
whence denominated 1. 3. 103
Noradist gallant answer made to his
Commanders 1. 3. 56
Normans what they were Originally,
1. 1. 166. 1. 2. 114. their Actions
and Achievements. *ib.* when first
fixt in *France* 1. 1. 166
North East passage, by whom at-
tempted and purified, 1. 4. 158. of the
North-

North-West passage, *ib.* the little
probability of doing any good in
either *ib.*
Nuns, why so called, and by whom
first instituted, 1. 1. 101. their parti-
cular Orders, *ib.* of ill report for
their unchastity, *ibid.* Nunnery of
Valdivia in *Heinle* 1. 2. 9.
Nunages how they grow and where
most plentiful 1. 3. 222

O.

OBits of the Saints kept as Felli-
vals 1. 2. 205
Ocean, the collection of waters, 1. 1.
23. the causes of its ebbing and
flowing, *ib.* the Etymology of the
name, and vast greatness of it, 249
Offa's Dike 1. 1. 275
Oleum Medicum, see *Naplia*
Olympick Games, by whom first in-
stituted and restored 1. 2. 182. where
held, and who were Judges of them
ib. All the Victors at one time of
one City in *Italy* 1. 1. 56
Onquavich, a kind of Divination, an
experiment of it 1. 1. 56
Ophir not the Province of *Sephala* in
Ethiopia, 1. 4. 62. where it rather
was 1. 1. 10
Oracles which most famous, 1. 2. 103
their ambiguity and decay *ibid.*
Oratorians an Order of Religious
persons, by whom first instituted,
used for a counterpoise to the *Je-
suites* 1. 1. 99
Orders of Knighthood, of *Avies*, 1. 1.
230. *Alcantarab*, of the *Amman-
ica* 135. of *S. Andrew* *ib.* of *S. An-
thony*, 3. 113. of the Blood of the
Lord Jesus Christ, 1. 1. 126. of the
Bab 275. of *Banerets* *ib.* of the
Crescent 171. of *Calatrava* 234. of
Dutch Knights, of the *Par-glaive*,
1. 2. 151. of the *Dragon* 159. of the
Golden Fleece 28. of the *Gumet* 1. 1.
204. of the *Garret* *ib.* of the *Holy*
Ghost *ib.* of *S. Jago* 234. of *S. John*
1. 3. 97. Great Master how chosen,
his title 1. 1. 954. of *Jesus Christ*
239. of *S. Michael* 204. of *S. Mark*
111. of *Merced* 234. of *Montesa*
246. of *Nova Scotia* 274. of the
Pairrie, or twelve Peers 204. of the
Round Table 274. of the *Star* 204.
of *S. Stephen* 216. of the *Sepulchre*
1. 3. 97. of the *Templars*, of *S. Sa-
vian* 1. 1. 246. of the *Glorious Vir-
gin* 121. of the *Lilly* 217
Orbicular, what it was, whence called,
and with whom in use 1. 1. 282
Orfish Feathers, why, and how long
the Cognizance of the Princes of
Wales 1. 1. 281
Ovation, how differeth from a Tri-
umph, 1. 1. 35. from whence so cal-
led 1. 1. in what cases granted *ib.*
Ovid, why banished into *Pomus* 1. 2.
176
Owibham his adventurous attempt
1. 4. 89

Officers grow on *Trees* 1. 2. 164

P.

Paisants slavery in *Livonia* 1. 2.
140
Palms anciently used as a sign of vi-
ctory, yet by the Christians in
Church-yards, and for what reason,
ib. of the rare nature of the
Tree 1. 4. 41 45
Pampfly, what they were 1. 1. 118
Paper, where first invented, and why
so called 1. 4. 9.
Paradise, where it was indeed; the se-
veral fancies and opinions touch-
ing the particular 1. 3. 112
Paradise terrestrial of *Alidine* 1. 3. 148
Parichem in *Livonia* 1. 3. 16
Paris never taken by force, why 1. 1.
159
Pasphas how far the Fable of her may
be thought historical 1. 2. 10
Patrius first planted in the land of
Palbras 1. 1. 11
Parition wall, alluded to *Ephes.* 2. 14.
what, and where it was 1. 3. 80
Patriarchatus a new Order devised by
Constantine, and what it is 1. 52
Patribus, who, and why so called 730
Pellessus *visus*, a by-word, and the
meaning of it 1. 2. 181
Persepolis 1. 3. 144
Persepolis, what it was, and where most
in use 1. 1. 74
Peter-pence, by whom first granted to
the Pope 1. 1. 98
Perisiti and *Periaci*, what they are in
Geography 1. 1. 120
Phages, where probably first planted
1. 1. 8.
Pharisees, whence they had their name
1. 3. 59. Their *Dogmata*, and Au-
thority amongst the people 59
Pharos 1. 4. 8
Phelatus, whence so named 1. 3. 21
Phileus are 1. 4. 25
Philippicks given by *Tullius* for the
name of his Orations against *M.*
Ambony 1. 2. 195
Phur, the son of *Cham*, father of the
Moors, or *Mauritanians* 1. 4. 22
Phryges *Jeropamine* 1. 3. 13
Pifti, what they were, and the story
of them 1. 1. 285
Pigritia, a strange Creature in *Ame-
rica* 1. 4. 89
Pied piper, the story of him 1. 2. 168
Pigeons Letter Carriers 1. 3. 114
Pigro his birth, breeding, rise, and
death 1. 4. 132
Pledging one another, why first used
in *England* 1. 1. 271
Plume, why fancied by the poets for
the God of *Hell* 1. 2. 107
Pompey's successful War against the
Cilicians 1. 3. 34
Polycrates, for long time fortunate,
dies miserably 1. 3. 39
Pope or *Papa*, what it signifies, 1. 1. 90
C c c c c

common as first to other Bishop
ib. the opportunities those of *Rome*
had to advance their greatness
1. 1. 90. the means and steps by
which they did attain to their tem-
poral power 98 and still kept the
same 99. how easily to be made He-
reditary, Their Forces and Re-
venue

Portugals their Character their Anti-
pathy to the *Catholics*, *ib.* *Portugals*
Spaniards, *French*, *Italians*, com-
pared 1. 1. 239
Poultry hatched in *Ovens* by heat
1. 4. 3.

Pradition of the *Moors* conquering
Spain 1. 2. 213
Pratorian guards by whom instituted
and by whom cashiered, 1. 1. 53
Their power, the great Authority
of their Captains 1. 1. 45
Presbyter John, the name of the King
of *Tenduc* 1. 3. 178. erroneously as-
cribed by *Scaliger* to the *Abissine*
Emperour *ib.* The ground of the
mistake and right name of that
Prince 1. 4. 53
Presbyterian Discipline, by whom first
framed, 1. 1. 137. and how after pro-
pagated. The introduction of it
into the Seignoury of *Geneva*, and
the Realm of *Scotland*, 283. why so
importunately desired by some in
England 1. 1. 258

Priests of the *Jews* provided of a libe-
ral maintenance, 1. 3. 81. why they
were, whom they called the Chief
Priest 60. of the High Priest, and
when made a fableable Office, *ib.*
How *Amas* and *Capbar* were
High Priests at the same time, *ib.*
Their power and succession after
the captivity 93
Priming where first invented, and by
whom 1. 2. 21. how much abused in
these latter times, said to have been
long used in *China* 1. 3. 82
Promotions, why feigned to be tor-
nured by a *Valur* 1. 3. 149
Prophets, where first so called, and
why, 1. 1. 35, 36. 51. the whole story
of them 35. the causes of the great
increase of their Doctrines, *ibid.*
their principal over sight *ib.*
Pjams of *Degree*, how many, and why
so named 1. 3. 180
Pyramids of *Egypt* their vast gra-
neity, by whom built, and why, 1. 4. 6

Q.

Quivira, a strange beast there
which supplies them with most
necessaries 1. 4. 102

R.

Rain falling turns to *Alabaster*
1. 4. 17. Rain obtained by the
Prayer of *Helena* 1. 2. 218
Rarities in *Arabia Felix*, 1. 3. 104. in *Africa*
Egypt, 1. 4. in *America*, 89. in *Hispania*
Hispania

A TABLE.

Hispnia, l. 4. 10 in *Chlopa*, 118.
in *Pern* 129. in *Briffit* 136. in *Chlo*
Red-Sea, whence it had the name, how
far extended by that name, l. 106
Regna the son of *Chus* first planted on
the shores of the *Persian Gulf*, l. 10
Religion, naturally ingrafted in the
heart of man, l. 1. 27. 28. how it
standeth in relation to the parts of
the World, l. 1. 27. 28
Retireduci from the vulgar eye used
by divers Princes, l. 4. 58
Rex Romanorum, what he is, by whom
and for what cause ordained, l. 2.
103
Richard the first, terrible to the *Turks*
l. 3. 43. taketh *Cyprus* 37. his speech
concerning the Siege of *Peruville*,
l. 1. 165. is slain by a *Fort* from an
Arbustif, 178. the man that
shot him let at liberty and rewarded
ib.
Riphah the son of *Gomer*, found in
Phlegonia, l. 1. 10
Rivers, their use and conditions re-
quisite for Navigation, l. 1. 23. the
banks of great Rivers how defen-
sible, l. 3. 15
Rhubarb, or *Rhubarb*, where it groweth
l. 3. 173. 177
Rhamnusa, why given for an adjunct
unto *Nemefis*, and what *Nemefis*
was, l. 2. 189
Rhene, the fountain and course there-
of, l. 2. 45. the several branches
by which it falleth into the Ocean
4. 5
Rochel, l. 1. 179
Rhodes taken by *Solyman* the Magni-
ficent, l. 3. 3132
Rhodian Laws, the rule in former
times of all marine causes, and
for how long they so continued, l.
3. 32
Rome, of what circuit in her glory, l.
1. 87. 88. the number of its inhabi-
tants, the extent of her Dominions
53. once made a Goddess, and by
whom, l. 3. 19. Her Revenues com-
puted at 150. millions of Crowns,
l. 1. 53. Her Empire subverted by
Constantine, and how, l. 1. 54
Roman Emperors, the succession of
them, l. 1. 52. cut off by violent
deaths till the time of *Constantine*
and the cause thereof 53. their neg-
ligence and degenerate sloth 54
Rosmond wife to *Albanus*, King of the
Lombards procures her husband
to be murdered, why her death, l. 1.
57
Royd Toidot, a French by-word, the
meaning and occasion of it, l. 1. 165
S.
Sabbath-day not so moral as some
pretend, l. 4. 159
Sabians of *Arabia Felix*, from what
race they came, l. 3. 105
Sacrilege a crime unpardonable even
amongst Heathens, l. 2. 194
Sadducees whence they had their name
l. 3. 59. their opinions and dogmata
ibid.
Salique Law what it truly is, not so
ancient as the French pretend, not
at all as regarded by them, but to
serve the turns of some Usurpers,
the inconveniences, and injustice of
it, l. 1. 152. 153
Salmacida Spolia, a proverb, and the
meaning of it, l. 3. 20
Salvages lately found in *Spain*, l. 1. 231
Samia vase, what, and how highly
prized, l. 3. 30
Samaritans, what they were, their Re-
ligion, Tenets, and Sects, how hated
by the Jews, and why, l. 3. 71. 72
Saracens, why so called, their Char-
acter in former times, they resort
to *Mahomet*, their successes, victo-
ries, and Caliphs, l. 3. 98. 100
101
Sardanapalus an effeminate King
why he burnt his Treasure, l. 3. 121
Sardonicus Rictus, a Proverb, and the
meaning of it, l. 1. 78
Scava's valour, l. 3. 199
Scanderbeg his life and story, l. 3. 198
what became of his body, ib.
Scaves or *Scavians*, whence so cal-
led. Their affairs and story, ib. gi-
ven as a name to Bond-men, and
what occasion, l. 2. 165
Schola Salerni, by whom written, and
to whom dedicated, l. 1. 62
Scots, why so called, l. 1. 282. their
proceedings in their Reformation
28, their Kingdom held in Vassa-
lage to the Crown of England 289
Scribes, what they were, when institu-
ted, and of what Authority, l. 3.
71
Scythians, their Original, Antiquity
and Attchvements. Their expen-
dition into *Media*, and success in
Lydia, l. 3. 166. 171
Sebe the son of *Jookan*, planted upon
the River *Indus*, or the *Golden*
Chersonese, l. 3. 10
Seboians, l. 3. 72
Sela the son of *Arphaxad*, in what
parts settled, l. 3. 144
Selenus a great builder, l. 3. 48. his
strange rife and fortunes, l. 3. 54
Semiramis, l. 3. 120
Seminaries for the English, by whom
first erected, and where, l. 1. 160
Senece's happy memory, l. 1. 209
Seriphie Rana, an old proverb, the oc-
casion and meaning of it, l. 2. 213
Serpents worshipped by the *Samoitites*,
and *Lituanis*; the barbarous Cu-
stoms of those people, l. 2. 142
Sforza, his strange rife and story, l. 1.
124
Sheba, *Sabia*, and *Sabteca*, the sons of

Chus, all planted in *Arabia Felix*
and there the founders of the pul-
sant Nation of the *Sabians*, l. 140.
l. 3. 105
Sybil, what they were, how many and
where they dwelt, l. 4. 13. not coun-
terfeit by the Fathers, ib.
Sticula Gerra, l. 1. 72. *Vesperia Sicula*,
Sticuli Tyranni 76. three by-words
and the meaning of them, 75
Silke, why called *Serica* by the Latines,
l. 3. 174
Silver and Gold where most plentiful
l. 4. 126. the rich Mines of *Potosi*,
129. how vilified by the *Utopian*,
126. the causes of the darkness of
things in our days, 127. not so ad-
vantageous to a State, as Trade and
Merchandise, ibid.
Simeon the son of *Jacob*, how disper-
sed in *Israel*, as his father prophesie-
d, l. 3. 76
Solacismus whence, l. 3. 24
Solomon's Porch, mentioned, *John* 10.
23. where, and what it was, l. 3. 80
Somb-faying, how many kinds thereof
l. 3. 120
Souldiers and great Commanders un-
fortunate for the most part, and
why, l. 2. 189
Spa, Medicinal waters, where, and for
what most useful, l. 2. 19
Spaniards from whence they do de-
scend, l. 1. 211. by whom converted
to the Faith, 208. The dependance
of the Popes on the Crown thereof
210. their aim at the fifth Monar-
chy, ib. the greatness of their Em-
pire, and weakness of it 248. *Span-
ish* Nobility very serviceable to
their King, why 249. *Spaniards*
their cruelty towards the *Ameri-
cans*, l. 4. 88
Squonchi, a thievish beast, l. 3. 24
Sterling money, why so called, l. 1. 284
Streights of Mountains, not to be a-
bandoned by the Defendants, l. 3.
24. the losing of such Palles of
what fatal consequence, l. 14
Stukely, where and when slain, l. 4. 35
Styx, a River of *Greece*, the usual Oath
of the gods, l. 2. 182, 183
Sugars, when, and by whom first re-
fined, l. 4. 72. what used instead
thereof in elder times, ib. the great
quantities thereof sent yearly by
the *Portugals* from the Isle of *S.*
Thomas, ib. and from the *Sugar*-
works in *Brassil*, l. 4. 137
Syrian language, what it was, and of
what ingredients, l. 3. 41. when first
made vulgar to the Jews.
Syrian Goddess, what she was, l. 3. 48.
her magnificent Temple, ibid. the
deceits and juggling of her Priests,
ibid.
*Syrorum multa. Olera Syri contra Phoeni-
ces* two Proverbs, and the mean-
ing of them, l. 3. 47

T.

A TABLE.

T.
Tails of Sheep (and of no beast
else) why used in sacrifice, l. 3.
57
Tameline his Birth and Parentage
l. 3. 170 the sun and substance of
his story, ibid.
Tarbit the son of *Javan*, planted a-
bout *Tarbit* in *Cilicia*, l. 1. 13. not
in *Tarbit* as some say, ib.
Tartarians not the Progeny of the
Tribes of *Israel*, l. 3. 162. from
whom most probably defended ib.
their affairs and victories, 179
Taxus, a Tree so called, *Sec.* l. 1. 120
Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in
what it differeth from the former
l. 3. 80. repaired and beautified by
Herod, ib. the several Counts about
it, ib. all of them in the name of the
Temple, ib. Temple of *Sophia*, l. 3.
207
Tenedia Scemis, a By-word, the occa-
sion of it, l. 3. 28
Teniffoles banished by his Country
fies to, and is entertained by *Ar-
taxerxes*, l. 3. 17
Theocrata, or the Government of the
Jews by God himself, l. 3. 85
Thyras the father of the *Thracians*, by
some called *Thyrcians*, l. 2. 204
Sir Thomas Moor no friend to the *Fri-
ers*, l. 1. 101. his new Plot of woo-
ing not approved of, l. 4. 47. his de-
vice to bring Gold and Silver into
contempt, fit for none but *Uro-
pians*, l. 4. 126
Thracians their Customs, l. 2. 204
Tigranes his frankness, l. 3. 125
Timariots, what they be, their institu-
tion and number, l. 3. 135
Titus Bishop of Crete, l. 2. 214
Title of most Christian King, why
given unto the Kings of France
l. 1. 199. of Catholic King to the
King of Spain 247. of Defender
of the faith to England 273. of Defen-
ders of the Church, to the *Swissers*
143. of *Basilens*, to the Kings of
Bulgaria, l. 1. 176. of *Flagellum Dei*
to *Attila* the King of the *Huns*, l. 1.
185
Tobacco, where most plentiful, l. 4. 125
why called the *Henbane* of *Peru*
ibid. the fantastick use thereof
condemned, and the virtues ascrib-
ed unto it examined, ib. by whom
first brought into England, l. 4. 125
Togarmia, or *Torgama*, the son of *Gomer*,
founder of the *Treem*, or

Trogmades in *Cappadocia*, l. 3. 10
Trolojanum Aurum, a Proverb, the
meaning and occasion of it, l. 1. 183
Tominia, a bird in *America*, l. 1. 1006
Topographia, what it is, how it dif-
fereth from Geography, l. 1. 26
Tragick, and the story of its more
advantageous to a State then
Mines of Gold and Silver, l. 4.
126
Tredon how rewarded, l. 2. 155
Trebellius, by whom invented, l. 3. 25
Tree that withereth if touched, l. 4.
118
beneficial Trees in *India*, &c. l. 4.
121
Triumphs, their Original and Majesty,
in what they differed from an *Ova-
tion*, ib. in what casts denied a Con-
querour, when discontinued and
laid by, l. 1. 353, 36
Troy not besieged ten years together
by the *Greeks*, and at last how ta-
ken. *Embra's* boat of taking *Troy*
in eleven days partly answered, l. 3.
12
Tubal the son of *Javan* first planted
in *Iberia*, l. 3. 13. the *Spaniards* how
derived from him, l. 3. 130
Turks, their Original and Conquests,
l. 3. 132. their Kings and Emperors
133. their Persons, Customs, and
Religion, their Estate and power
l. 3. 135. 134.
V.
Vavod, the meaning of the word
l. 2. 169. the *Vavods* of *Trans-
sylvania*, ib.
Vandal, their first seat, l. 4. 23. their
affairs, story, and the succession of
their Kings, ibid.
Vandais, the same with the *Waldenses*,
l. 1. 193. their life and doctrines, ib.
Venus, whence called *Erycina*, l. 1. 74.
whence *Cythera*, l. 2. 214. whence
Dea Cypr, l. 3. 33. whence *Paphia*, ib.
whence *Dea Ovidia*, 20. the brutish-
ness of the *Cypriots*, both men and
women, in their Feasts and Sacrifi-
ces, l. 3. 33
Versoria in *Plantus* what it is, not used
there for the Mariners Compa's, as
by some supposed, l. 4. 36.
Victory of *Amibul* at *Canna*, l. 1. 68
Vidanes in France, how many and
what they are, l. 1. 162
Vingue, a strange but profitable Beest
among the *Americans*, and the na-
ture of it, l. 4. 89. the *Bezar* found
in the belly of it, ibid.

Vina Mastica whence so called, and
of what use, l. 1. 65
Virgil's Fable of *Dido* disproved, and
his *Aeneas* suspected, l. 3. 12
Visses travelled not so far as *Lidon*,
l. 1. 235. the sun and substance of
his story, l. 2. 230
Or, the birth place of *Abraham*, a
Town of *Mesopotamia*, l. 5. 116. that
it was not in *Chaldia*, as by most
supposed, 119
Ujory, the *Gowse* much added to it,
l. 1. 118. the faying of a merry fel-
low thereon, ib.
Uz, or *Hus*, the Country and dwelling
of *Job*, whereabouts it was, l. 3. 99.
W.
W, what they are, and why
so called, l. 1. 275. l. 2. 3.
Whales their dimensions, and vast
greatness, l. 3. 191. how driven from
the Coast of *Norway*, l. 2. 114
White-Friers, from whence so called,
and by whom first instituted, called
also *Carmelites*, and why, l. 1. 99.
109
Wolves destroyed in *England*, how,
l. 1. 254
World why created, l. 1. 1. how long
since 3. peopled before the gene-
ral Flood 5. East parts planted be-
fore the attempt at *Babel*, l. 4. 1.
195. called *Cosmos* by the *Greeks*,
and *Mundus* by the *Latins* for the
beauties of it, unequally divided
in respect of Religion, l. 1. 1. 28
Writing the Original of it, l. 4. 4. 8.
and the several forms, ib.
X.
Xeriff, why used for the Title
of the Kings of *Morocco*, the
catalogue and succession of them
l. 4. 3738
Xerxes his numerous Army, l. 2. 209
Y.
Y English Tree why planted in
Church-yards, l. 4. 3
Z.
Zaleucus his Laws, l. 1. 68
Zenobia a most masculine Lady
her story, l. 3. 52
Zopyrus his act, l. 3. 114

A TABLE.

A. *Computation of the Foreign Coins* herein mentioned with the
E N G L I S H.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
H ebrew Talent in Gold	4500		
Hebrew Talent in Silver	375		
Alexandrian Talent	375		
Egyptian Talent	250		
Babylonian Talent	218	15	
Attick Talent	187	10	
Sesterium of Rome	7	16	3
A Shekel	oo	2	6
Argentus, Mat. 26. 15.	oo	2	6
A Drachma	oo	oo	7ob
A Robble	oo	13	4
A Sultany	oo	7	6
A Ducat	o	6	8
A French Crown	o	6	6
A Xeriffe	o	6	o
A Rix Doller	o	4	8
A Floren	o	3	o
A Frank	o	2	o
A Liver	o	2	o
A Gulden	o	2	o
A Spanish Real	o	o	6
A Sous	o	o	19o
A Turkish Asper	o	o	19
A Maravides	o	o	14

血

An Alphabetical and Exact Table, wherein is set down, the Names (Ancient and Modern) of all the Kingdoms, Provinces, Countries, Inhabitants, People, Cities, Mountains, Rivers, Seas, Ilands, Ports, Bays, Capes, Forests, &c. of any Remark in the whole World, as they are described and contained in these Four Books of the incomparable Cosmographer, Dr. Heylyn.

[illegible]

The T A B L E.

[illegible]

The T A B L E

[illegible]

The TABLE.

[illegible][illegible][illegible]

Argiro Castle

[illegible][illegible]

[illegible]

75	
40	
52	W.
75	
195	
198	
112	
107	
149	
207	
6	
38	torum
171	
70	
211	
25	
194	
12	
4, 22	
108	
172	
145	
109	
85	
154	
107	
114	
165	
1, 165	
145	
215	
212	
101	
197	
4, 18	
194	
50	
75	
165	
77	
219	
16	
148	
30	
165	
167	
176	
35	
77	
29	
23	
60	
34	
112	
25	
112	
39	
67	
27	
80	
25	
18	
18	
32	
2	
6	
8	
2	
0	
2	
7	
1	

The TABLE

[illegible]

The TABLE

[illegible]

The T A B L E.

[illegible]

The **T A B L E**

[illegible]

The TABLE.

Grēdes u	25	Grodock u	145	Gerranopolis u	7	Gau ¹ l ² ^[dus]	39
Grēdand u	59	Groditz u	143	Sari-Germanum u	164	Gau ¹ l ² ^[dice] inf	
Grēmerfulch u	2	Groining pr u	26	German	166		
Gremunder Zec l	65	Grol u	26	Gerra u	163	Gaurus m	120
Grenappe u	19	Gronberg u	107	Gerrai p	67	Gayra m	51
Grenacke u	59	Gronfoldeit u	72	Gerru p	168	Gebbe u	35
Grenchieff u	209	Groytholu inf	110	Gerrus fl	168	Gebellhudic c	21
Grengrucl u	59	Gruhagen u	94	Gerus fl	163	St. Gernar fl	25
Gennep u	43	Grubin u	141	Gerufa u	68	St. George's ^{fl} p	133
St. Georges Arm c	205	Grunimlon u	90	Gerru p 67	68	De Nims	22
St. Georges u	171	Gruvau u	141	Gerru u	147	Olanco u	118
Geppp ng	72	Gruvcland pr	25	Getrara u	131	Gerbe inf	39
Gerbaviller u	55	Guelia u	148	Geth u	71	St. Germans u	150
St. Gersharit u	1	Guelic pr u	43	Gezer u	54	Capolis c	30
Germania infirior	1	Gurch u	61	Gibbetton u	88	Geryonis inf	46
Germania	2	Gurdichen u	83	Gibch u	ibid.	Getuli p	116
Germania	2	Gux p	112	Gibcon u	ibid.	Gevclian u	42
Germania	2	Gyarus inf	213	Gihon fl	110	Gezere u	28
Germany	32	Gyrgio pr	168	Gibboah m	63	Ghesuca pr	44
Gernia u	123	Gyones p	147	Gilead m	66	Ghir dth u	23
Gerno inf	116	Gylua u	155	Ramoth u	66	Gibel u	54
Gernat u	7			Gilgal u	78	Giachi p	63
Gers inf	89	Lib. III.		Gilolo inf	222	Gilof p	45
Gersfap u	75	Gabala u	70	Gingi u	207	Ginnemera pr	56
Gertrudenberg u	7	Gabela u	47	Gifala u	207	Gion	21
Gerult u	58	Gaber u	75	Giflica u	130	Gi ¹ l ² ^[clion] c	34
Gerulic u	58	Gad pr	63	Gifca u	203		
Gedudum u	65	Gades u	53	Gocha u	145	Git fl	145
Geduloria pr	122	Gadec u	59	Gocholda u	207	Gita u	ibid.
Gedern u	55	Gagapuelia u	171	Gonfist inf	107	Girgitu m	ibid.
Gehne u	55	Galaia pr	8	Gonza u	174	Giumba u	54
Gelandi u	116	Galtaris pr	9	Gordiaz u	126	Gluacianis inf	39
Glacialis Oceani u	116	Galle c	237	Gordene pr	126	Gleba rubra u	102
Glan fl	65	Gallie c	237	Gordium u	116	Goglen dth u	ibid.
Glatu u	81	Gallie c	237	Gorgas fl	115	Gogianu pr	57
Glogau u	109	Gallie c	237	Gornas u	11	Golia pr	54
Glockfeldt u	109	Gallun u	63	Gouren pr	209	Goletra fl	57
Gmnd u	59	Gallo Grecia m	68	Gouro u	209	Golio trecto f	63
Gmund u	65	Gammalla pr	68	Goyasam u	145	Gonadex inf	69
Gnoffas u	116	Galtii p	85	Gozalvia u	6	Gomara m	42
Goes u	120	Gammarras u	22	Gozan fl	141	Pilex de Gomercena u	42
Golgberg u	120	Gandes fl	216	Gozan fl	208	Gomero inf	74
Goldengen u	141	Gandaries p	105	Granicus fl	4	Gomerio u	145
Golo u inf	218	Gang	ibid.	Grande p	168	Gondare u	13
Gomerim p	39	Gangani p	106	Gudario c	168	God Hope c	6
Gomphy u	200	Gangerico fl	106	Gueuoc u	215	Gopiao u	13
Gorla u	65	Ganges fl	194	Gumbrose u	146	Prigo Gordae inf	14
Gorichom u	20	Gangra u	7	Gurpi u	215	Gordicis inf	7
Goritz u	65	Gargia u	166	Guth p	ibid.	Golfen p	12
Gorlitz u	86	Gartizin m	62	Gutia u	200	Gothan pr	4
Gofe fl	92	Garnace u	10	Guzarata pr	ibid.	Goza u	109
Gofia u	89	Gates m	176	Gwallari pr	ibid.	Granada u	109
Gofia u	89	Gath u	224				
Gofini p	81	Gatbabu u	224	Lib. IV.			
Gofiani p inf	170	Gatte c	50	Gamara u	42	Grande fl 99 134 p 12	
Gofiones	12	Gaulanis pr	118	Gatchepo e	93	Dr Grac	
Gogeburg u	109	Gaulon u	67	Gatin u	93	Gracias de dios u	13
Gogep u	109	Gaulonitis pr	140	Gau u	93	Grati c	
Gogouze u	20	Gaulon u	67	Gago u	46	Grieland pr	17
Gouda u	20	Gaulon u	67	Galca u	126	Grieland pr	17
Gouze u	80	Gaulon u	67	Galicho pr	108	Guadiabo fl	11
Graginglac u	72	Gaza u 215	fl 175	Galice p	108	Guadiabo fl	11
Gran u	154	Gazaca u	149	Gallicu Zec	131	Guadialira fl	11
Grammont u	178	Gebh u	78	Gallicu Zec	131	Guadacanal inf	11
Grandric f	134	Gebela u	199	Dal Galic inf 124 f 104	104	Guadallanguen u	11
Gransfontanum u	124	Gedrofa pr 145 147	147	Dambra Camberc p 11	11	Guadalepe fl	11
Grans f	124	Gegielma u	116			Guadallipharis l	11
Grave u	14	Gelan u	140	Gampophantis pr	42	Guasquil fl	11
Graveling u	6	Gedrech u	181	Gampophantis pr	42	Guaserc p	11
Gravola inf	154	Gedrech u l	181	Ganabra fl	138	Gugayda u	11
Greeco pr	118	Genonia u	75	Gangomgar u	71	Gulnaka u	11
Greenland inf	175	Genon u	128	Garga pr	72	Gulanmanit inf	11
Greck Wellimburg	116	Genon u	128	Garamites pr	74	Gulnara p	11
Griet	43	Genon u	128	Gara pr	74	Gulnara p	11
Griethulu u	43	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengengu u	43	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Grieffenhu u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben u	85	Gerar u	76	Garatu u	139	Gulnara p	11
Griengiben							

Guanares <i>pr</i>	129
Guanaranes <i>p</i>	136
Guedral <i>c</i>	55
Gueles <i>inf</i>	60
Gueguat <i>u</i>	38
Gueffanc <i>pr</i>	110
Guevapor <i>fl</i>	122
Gueispe <i>fl</i>	118
Gueres <i>u</i>	129
Guspi <i>fl</i>	136
Guatemala <i>pr</i> 116	117
Guatulo <i>u</i>	114
Guatun <i>pr u</i>	116
Guatun <i>pr</i>	110
Guaxarapi <i>p</i>	136
Guxocingo <i>u</i>	114
Guaya curoes <i>p</i>	136
Guayano <i>u</i>	150
Guayayaco <i>u</i>	111
Guayayul <i>u</i>	118
Guaybami <i>u</i>	138
Guaymiri <i>p</i>	135
Guazacaco <i>pr</i>	114
Guber <i>del p</i>	45
Guevelthan <i>u</i>	116
Guezaxala <i>pr</i>	114
Guey <i>u</i>	65
Di Bana <i>p</i>	140
Guaita <i>pr</i> 140	150
Guinea <i>pr</i>	39
Gueres <i>u</i> Nova	160
Gulra <i>fl</i>	46
Gulra <i>fl</i>	128
Gurga <i>l</i>	45
Gurgulian <i>pr</i>	33
Gurung <i>pr</i>	128
Guxinara <i>pr</i>	128
Guzclan <i>u</i>	117
Guzzula <i>pr</i>	31
Gyleris	42
Gyplis <i>inf</i>	19

H.	
Lib. L.	
Hab	148
Hagge <i>c</i>	198
Hagladie	267
Halifax	114
Hammie <i>c</i>	161
Han <i>u</i>	163
Harcure <i>pr</i> 262	260
Harcourt <i>u</i>	165
Harfew <i>u</i>	26
Hartford <i>pr u</i> 260	260
Hastings <i>u</i>	265
Hawthorn West	267
Havre de grace <i>le</i>	165
Hec	34
Hebuda <i>inf</i>	294
Hedul <i>p</i>	94
St. Helens <i>inf</i>	300
Helm <i>u</i>	28
Helvii <i>p</i>	184
Henci <i>p</i>	107
Herculean 72 <i>inf</i>	110
Herculanum	60
Hercules <i>inf</i> 79	242
Herculeum <i>frum</i>	301
Hercure <i>pr</i> 262	260
Hersford <i>u</i>	283
Heruli <i>u</i>	133
Hesperia	206
Hesna	297
Hetturia	117
Hewrepolis <i>pr</i>	251
Hexam	264
Hextold	164

1

Uly <i>u 297 inf</i>	224
Uberina <i>inf</i>	230
Ubrides <i>inf</i>	298
Ubriz <i>inf</i>	298
Uteracum <i>inf</i>	79
U. hiliary u	197
Unera <i>sf</i>	108
Urbini p	52
Urhila u	254
Utspanick	207
Ustria p	104
Uthelys	294
Uylyhead	269
Uylyth <i>sf</i>	290
St. Honorat <i>inf</i>	90
Uonleu u	165
Uuelia u	245
Uuene <i>sf</i>	162
Uuene u	85
Uumber <i>sf</i>	259
Uuntingron p	262 u
	250
Uurfi c	300
Uybiu u	73
Uydra <i>sf</i>	10
Uydrunum u	64
Uydra <i>sf</i>	73
	<i>Lit. II.</i>
Uabgy u	120
Uabcy u	110
Uadellave u	109
Uazimounon p	178
Uaznu u	177
Uaznu u	115
Uaffia u	116
Uaffenore u	116
Uagwan u	53
Uaghenleiw c	74
Uaghenleiw c	21
Uague u	72
Uabrum u	72
Uabrun u	74
Uabdeheim	74
Uabdeheim	74
Uabdeheim	74
Uaine <i>sf</i>	9
Uaine <i>sf</i>	9
Uainate pr	ib.
Ual u	76
Ualar u	115
Ualdelade <i>sf</i>	11
Uale u	89
Ualen pot u	141
Ualit u	145
Uali u	10
Ualidina p	110
Uallia pr	124
Ualliflade u	112
Ualmburg u	107
Ualmonen u	95
Ualmonen u	14
Ualmonon c	14
Uaneret p	109
Uania <i>sf</i>	9
Uannora pr	<i>ibid.</i>
Uannore u	24
Uannore u	24
Uannore u	24
Uannofim <i>inf</i>	109
Uardewick u	28
Uarlad p	141
Uarlad p	21
Uarlad p	21
Uarlagen u	89
Uarmarduri pr	89
Uartz u	11
Uarzholyim <i>inf</i>	110
Ude <i>sf</i>	101
Udeid u	49
Uaffe u	28
Uatereu u	45
Uatenu u	26
Uatenu u	26
Uavel <i>sf</i>	155
Uavelburg	83
Ueburuf <i>sf</i>	205
Ueckampolis p	214

[illegible][illegible][illegible]

β	117
elcages	39
	69
I.	
ib. I.	
ani 2	246
o k	241
	145
	24
	222
	213
	105
	64
	179
	206
us ii	211
inf	161
inf	28
	30
	100
inf	107
	100
	298
	145
	210
	244
	238
	217
	122
	161
	223
	215
	80
	242
	241
	169
	291
	264
	113
	129
	121
	63
Angeli	134
is	179
de	180
ns	197
de port	261
en x	284
	159
	80
re	33
	298
so 155	267
	290
	73
	73
niönium	80
thium	263
	68
	260
	197
	176
inf	261
	19
u ibid.	84
th	30

The TABLE.

[illegible]

The T A B L E.

[illegible]

mulches

The TABLE.

[illegible]

The TABLE.

[illegible]

The TABLE.

[illegible]

The T A B L E.

[illegible]

The TABLE.

Tale Ty ff	284	Triponium u	<i>ibid.</i>	Thermacius f	301	Trock pr	143	Zarachi u pr	127
Techo ff	242	Troya u 65	<i>inf.</i> 115	Thermopy	188	Trocholyte p	176	Zarati u	947
Tecologes p	18	Troto ff 60	91	Therius u	195	Trochonium antrum	192	Zarathia u	70
Tecro	140	Troys u	160	Therone u	7	Trochomani p	45	Zarba u	207
Tepi Telamon u	115	Trude u	222	Thielpis u	192	Trochop	114	Zarbus u	25
Temi ff	246	Tudea u	215	Thielopsis p	192	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Temos ff	253	Tudex u	285	Thielonica u	202	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tectum u	234	Tueis u	285	Thellay p	192	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tedera inf	234	Tules u	178	Thellay inf	213	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Terus ff	103	Turall u	226	Thellay inf	213	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tergelum u f	103	Turall u	226	Thellay inf	213	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Teryoy p	191	Turall u	226	Thellay inf	213	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tertacia u	114	Turall u	226	Thellay inf	213	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Terra de la vora	65	Turum u	174	Thellay inf	213	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Oranto	65	Turum u	174	Thellay inf	213	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Nora u	212	Turum u	174	Thellay inf	213	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tiamis	212	Turubabica u	182	Thella inf	196	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Thaet inf	300	Turi u	171	Thyamif ff	196	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Thel ff	242	Tufany pr	111	Thyand u	196	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Theo ff	217	Tufci p	111	Thybas pr	109	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Thetford	236	Tufulum u	86	Thyfla u	105	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tholone u	186	Tucale u	285	Thyfland u	102	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tholoua u	186	Tuwcad ff	251	Thylabus ff	133	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Thorney u	267	Tuwoonad ff	292	Thylam u	127	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Thours u	177	Tyrrhenum mare	92	Tiel u	25	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Thulcnf. inf	299	Tyvie ff	176	Tilmoat u	17	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tale Ty ff	<i>ib.</i>			Titragez p	89	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Thurles u	294			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Therfymene l	87			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tybur u	21			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tobis ff	32			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Ticlus u f	302			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tierafie p	166			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tilacremum ff	183			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Timavo ff	<i>ibid.</i>			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tigra ff	251			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tinciana pr	211			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tinorus u	211			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tinuerio u	211			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tinuo u	<i>ibid.</i>			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tiphendum u	85			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tirapery p	292			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tirconcil p	292			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tir-Oen pr	135			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tirols pr	130			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tiviale pr	86			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Toam u	294			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Toth u	85			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Toledo pr u	229			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tolceban	184			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tolofa u	218			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tolofre u	218			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Torcelia inf	104			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Torcelia inf	104			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Torces ff	231			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Torney ff	231			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Toro u	220			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Torofellus u	131			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Torofu u	261			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Touancy u	161			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tours u	161			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Toures u	194			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Toumontani p	77			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Trianum u	65			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Trapani u	74			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Travadele u	146			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Travadele u	146			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Tregugh u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treigah u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	128
Treihac u	167			Titofis p	131	Trochop	114	Zarur p	

1	Taraxis <i>n</i>	227
2	Taraxia <i>n</i>	143
3	Tarichia <i>n</i>	70
4	Tarichius <i>n</i>	79
5	Tarichus <i>n</i>	118
6	Tariffus <i>n</i>	216
7	Taritus <i>n</i>	15
8	Tarus <i>n</i>	198
9	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
10	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
11	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
12	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
13	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
14	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
15	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
16	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
17	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
18	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
19	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
20	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
21	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
22	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
23	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
24	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
25	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
26	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
27	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
28	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
29	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
30	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
31	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
32	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
33	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
34	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
35	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
36	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
37	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
38	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
39	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
40	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
41	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
42	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
43	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
44	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
45	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
46	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
47	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
48	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
49	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
50	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
51	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
52	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161
53	Taraxia <i>n</i>	161

[illegible][illegible][illegible]

104 Ventramiglio *n*
105 Ventraccia *n*
106 Ventrone *n*
107 Venences *n*
108 Venola *n*
109 Venosa *n*
110 Veraci *n*
111 Verbanus *n*
112 Verelli *n*
113 Veres *n*
114 Verine *n*
115 Verme *n*
116 Vermeille *n*
117 Vermet *n*
118 Vermeto *n*
119 Vermondais *n*
120 Veromen *n*
121 Verona *n*
122 Veron *n*
123 Vercal *n*
124 Vercato *n*
125 Vefna *n*
126 Vefini *n*
127 Vefulus *n*
128 Vefulus *n*
129 Vefus *n*
130 Vefus *n*
131 Vefus *n*
132 Vefus *n*
133 Vefus *n*
134 Vefus *n*
135 Vefus *n*
136 Vefus *n*
137 Vefus *n*
138 Vefus *n*
139 Vefus *n*
140 Vefus *n*
141 Vefus *n*
142 Vefus *n*
143 Vefus *n*
144 Vefus *n*
145 Vefus *n*
146 Vefus *n*
147 Vefus *n*
148 Vefus *n*
149 Vefus *n*
150 Vefus *n*
151 Vefus *n*
152 Vefus *n*
153 Vefus *n*
154 Vefus *n*
155 Vefus *n*
156 Vefus *n*
157 Vefus *n*
158 Vefus *n*
159 Vefus *n*
160 Vefus *n*
161 Vefus *n*
162 Vefus *n*
163 Vefus *n*
164 Vefus *n*
165 Vefus *n*
166 Vefus *n*
167 Vefus *n*
168 Vefus *n*
169 Vefus *n*
170 Vefus *n*
171 Vefus *n*
172 Vefus *n*
173 Vefus *n*
174 Vefus *n*
175 Vefus *n*
176 Vefus *n*
177 Vefus *n*
178 Vefus *n*
179 Vefus *n*
180 Vefus *n*
181 Vefus *n*
182 Vefus *n*
183 Vefus *n*
184 Vefus *n*
185 Vefus *n*
186 Vefus *n*
187 Vefus *n*
188 Vefus *n*
189 Vefus *n*
190 Vefus *n*
191 Vefus *n*
192 Vefus *n*
193 Vefus *n*
194 Vefus *n*
195 Vefus *n*
196 Vefus *n*
197 Vefus *n*
198 Vefus *n*
199 Vefus *n*
200 Vefus *n*
201 Vefus *n*
202 Vefus *n*
203 Vefus *n*
204 Vefus *n*
205 Vefus *n*
206 Vefus *n*
207 Vefus *n*
208 Vefus *n*
209 Vefus *n*
210 Vefus *n*
211 Vefus *n*
212 Vefus *n*
213 Vefus *n*
214 Vefus *n*
215 Vefus *n*
216 Vefus *n*
217 Vefus *n*
218 Vefus *n*
219 Vefus *n*
220 Vefus *n*
221 Vefus *n*
222 Vefus *n*
223 Vefus *n*
224 Vefus *n*
225 Vefus *n*
226 Vefus *n*
227 Vefus *n*
228 Vefus *n*
229 Vefus *n*
230 Vefus *n*
231 Vefus *n*
232 Vefus *n*
233 Vefus *n*
234 Vefus *n*
235 Vefus *n*
236 Vefus *n*
237 Vefus *n*
238 Vefus *n*
239 Vefus *n*
240 Vefus *n*
241 Vefus *n*
242 Vefus *n*
243 Vefus *n*
244 Vefus *n*
245 Vefus *n*
246 Vefus *n*
247 Vefus *n*
248 Vefus *n*
249 Vefus *n*
250 Vefus *n*
251 Vefus *n*
252 Vefus *n*
253 Vefus *n*
254 Vefus *n*
255 Vefus *n*
256 Vefus *n*
257 Vefus *n*
258 Vefus *n*
259 Vefus *n*
260 Vefus *n*
261 Vefus *n*
262 Vefus *n*
263 Vefus *n*
264 Vefus *n*
265 Vefus *n*
266 Vefus *n*
267 Vefus *n*
268 Vefus *n*
269 Vefus *n*
270 Vefus *n*
271 Vefus *n*
272 Vefus *n*
273 Vefus *n*
274 Vefus *n*
275 Vefus *n*
276 Vefus *n*
277 Vefus *n*
278 Vefus *n*
279 Vefus *n*
280 Vefus *n*
281 Vefus *n*
282 Vefus *n*
283 Vefus *n*
284 Vefus *n*
285 Vefus *n*
286 Vefus *n*
287 Vefus *n*
288 Vefus *n*
289 Vefus *n*
290 Vefus *n*
291 Vefus *n*
292 Vefus *n*
293 Vefus *n*
294 Vefus *n*
295 Vefus *n*
296 Vefus *n*
297 Vefus *n*
298 Vefus *n*
299 Vefus *n*
300 Vefus *n*
301 Vefus *n*
302 Vefus *n*
303 Vefus *n*
304 Vefus *n*
305 Vefus *n*
306 Vefus *n*
307 Vefus *n*
308 Vefus *n*
309 Vefus *n*
310 Vefus *n*
311 Vefus *n*
312 Vefus *n*
313 Vefus *n*
314 Vefus *n*
315 Vefus *n*
316 Vefus *n*
317 Vefus *n*
318 Vefus *n*
319 Vefus *n*
320 Vefus *n*
321 Vefus *n*
322 Vefus *n*
323 Vefus *n*
324 Vefus *n*
325 Vefus *n*
326 Vefus *n*
327 Vefus *n*
328 Vefus *n*
329 Vefus *n*
330 Vefus *n*
331 Vefus *n*
332 Vefus *n*
333 Vefus *n*
334 Vefus *n*
335 Vefus *n*
336 Vefus *n*
337 Vefus *n*
338 Vefus *n*
339 Vefus *n*
340 Vefus *n*
341 Vefus *n*
342 Vefus *n*
343 Vefus *n*
344 Vefus *n*
345 Vefus *n*
346 Vefus *n*
347 Vefus *n*
348 Vefus *n*
349 Vefus *n*
350 Vefus *n*
351 Vefus *n*
352 Vefus *n*
353 Vefus *n*
354 Vefus *n*
355 Vefus *n*
356 Vefus *n*
357 Vefus *n*
358 Vefus *n*
359 Vefus *n*
360 Vefus *n*
361 Vefus *n*
362 Vefus *n*
363 Vefus *n*
364 Vefus *n*
365 Vefus *n*
366 Vefus *n*
367 Vefus *n*
368 Vefus *n*
369 Vefus *n*
370 Vefus *n*
371 Vefus *n*
372 Vefus *n*
373 Vefus *n*
374 Vefus *n*
375 Vefus *n*
376 Vefus *n*
377 Vefus *n*
378 Vefus *n*
379 Vefus *n*
380 Vefus *n*
381 Vefus *n*
382 Vefus *n*
383 Vefus *n*
384 Vefus *n*
385 Vefus *n*
386 Vefus *n*
387 Vefus *n*
388 Vefus *n*
389 Vefus *n*
390 Vefus *n*
391 Vefus *n*
392 Vefus *n*
393 Vefus *n*
394 Vefus *n*
395 Vefus *n*
396 Vefus *n*
397 Vef

[illegible]

The TABLE.

[illegible]

The T A B L E

[illegible]

F I N I S.